COSMOGRAPHY
IN
FOUR BOOKS.
CONTAINING THE
Chorography and Hiſtory
OF THE WHOLE
WORLD,
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

With an Accurate and an Approved INDEX of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Iſlands, Forts, Bays, Capes, Foreſts, *&c.* of any Remarque in the whole World: Much wanted and deſired in the former, and now annexed to this laſt Impreſſion, Reviſed and Corrected by the Author himſelf immediately before his death.

Acts 17. 24. 26.

Deus qui fecit mundum & omnia quæ in eo ſunt;— fecit ex uno omne genus hominum, inhabitare ſuper univerſam faciem terræ, definiens tempora & terminos habitationis eorum.

Plin. in Proœm. l. 7.

MUNDUS, & in eo Terra, Gentes, Maria, Inſulæ, inſignes Urbes, ad hunc modum ſe habent.

LONDON,
Printed for *Philip Chetwind*, and *Anne Seile.*
MDCLXXIV.

Imprimatur,

January 1.
1664.

WILL. MORICE.

Whitehall, Jan. 26. 1664.

Let this BOOK be Printed.

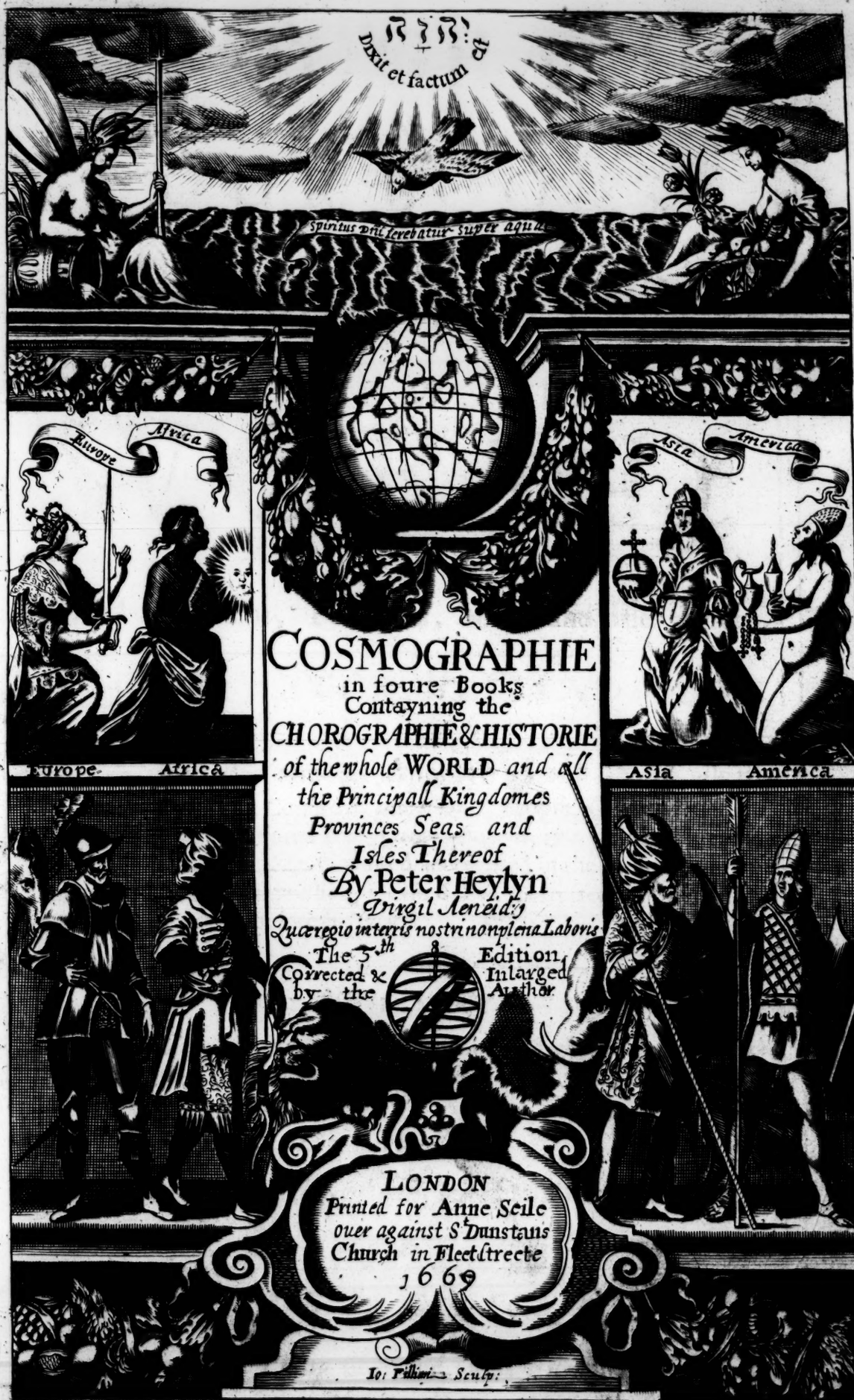
HEN. BENNET.

An Advertiſement to the *Reader* concerning this large and exact Table, much *wanted* and *deſired* in the *firſt* and *ſecond*, and now annexed to the *third* and *fourth Impreſſion* of this *Book*.

HOw well it is obſerved, *That Humane Induſtry cannot begin and finiſh any thing at one and the ſame time*, this famous Book may be an inſtance; whoſe *firſt Edition* was but the *Monogram*, and *rude draught*, to a more exact Compoſure; the ſecond adding much Matter and Method to the *firſt*; and the *third* and *fourth* adding Matter, Method, and a moſt Exact and full Table of both, to the *ſecond*; containing all the Provinces, Kingdoms, States, Principalities, Continents, Iſles, Promontories, Iſthmus's, Seas, Rivers, Havens, Mart-Towns, Cities, Strong-holds,, with their Longitudes, Latitudes, Scituations, Plantations, Inhabitants, Ancient and Modern Names; and the Book and Page where they are ſatisfactorily diſcourſed of.

A Table (that notwithſtanding every Methodical Book, ſuch as this is, is its own Index: Every Great Memory, like that of *Cæſar*, carrieth a Table of all Books, in his Brain; and every hopeful Student makes his own Table to all Claſſical Authors) that carrieth with it its own Commendation. 1. To thoſe that have not time to read Books, but Indexes. 2. To thoſe that have not patience to go through the whole *Body*, and yet curioſity to obſerve the Remarkable parts of Geography. 3. To thoſe that would recollect what they have forgotten of their reading, 4. To thoſe that upon any emergent occaſion, would ſee the Scituation, Rivers, Havens, Strong-holds, Garriſons, Longitudes, Latitudes, Commodities, Products, Curioſities, Inhabitants, Genius, Condition,and Hiſtory of any place in the World. 5. To thoſe that read any Ancient or Modern Hiſtories, or other Authors, and would be ſatisfied in the *Scene* of the Actions they read of, and the ſcituation of the places there mentioned. 6. To thoſe that aiming at exactneſs this way, would compare all the Ancient and Modern Geographers. And 7 to all the Peruſers of this Book that complained of the intolerable defects of former Tables and Indexes; of which number, the Learned Compiler, of this Table, who drew it up for his own ſatisfaction, and publiſheth it for the Publick, is one who wiſheth others as much benefit in the eaſie way of Peruſing it, as he had in the more toilſom way of Collecting it.

The Matter added to this Impreſſion, is much; and all under the Author's own hand, not long before he dyed; putting to it (as he ſaid truly to his Friend that was with him in the peruſal of it) his *laſt hand*.



COSMOGRAPHIE

in foure Books
Contayning the
CHOROGRAPHIE & HISTORIE
of the whole WORLD and all
the Principall Kingdomes
Provinces Seas and
Isles Thereof

By Peter Heylyn

Virgil Aeneid 9
Quæ regio in terris nostri non plena Laboris

The 5th Edition
Corrected & Inlarged
by the Author

LONDON
Printed for Anne Seile
over against S^t Dunstans
Church in Fleetstreete
1669

Io: Pilkington Sculp:

T.R.
910
H617C

467152

To the READER,

The AUTHOR *rendreth this Account of his Undertaking and Performance in the following Work.*

IT is a great complaint with many, That they want time, either to undertake great matters, or to accompliſh thoſe they have undertaken: Whereas it is more truly affirmed by *Seneca*, that we do not ſo much want, as waſte it. *Non parum temporis habemus, ſed multum perdimus*, as that Author hath it. We trifle out too much of our precious time, as he well obſerveth, *Aut malè agendo, aut nihil agendo, aut aliud agendo*; either in doing ill, or nothing, or elſe things impertinent: and then cry out, that we want things convenient to perform thoſe duties which are expected from us in our ſeveral places. Nor have we only time enough to ſpend, but ſome time to ſpare; ſome privacies and retreats from buſineſs; ſome breathing fits from the affairs of our *Vocations*: and even of them (thoſe times of leiſure and receſs) we are to render an accompt, in *Cato*'s judgment. *Otii reddendam rationem judicabat* Cato, as we read in *Tullie*. In which accompt, as all men generally are concerned, ſo am I intereſſed therein as much as any. For being, by the unhappineſs of my Deſtiny, or the infelicity of the Times, deprived of my Preferments, and diveſted of my Miniſterial Function, (as to the ordinary and publick exerciſe thereof) I cannot chuſe but ſay, I have leiſure enough; the opportunity of ſpending more idle hours (if I were ſo minded) than I ever expected or deſired. And though, perhaps, I could have ſpent thoſe times of leiſure, which the change of my affairs hath given me, with greater benefit to my ſelf, and more to the advantage of my private fortunes: yet that of *Cato* did ſo over-ballance me, that I was willing to do ſomewhat which might witneſs to enſuing-times, how I had paſſed away thoſe hours, and employed that leiſure. And when I was conſidering of ſome particulars within the compaſs of my power, and anſwerable to that ſmall ſtock of Books which I had recruited, (mine own being taken from me, and diſpoſed of, contrary unto publick Order) I was requeſted by ſome friends, of no common quality, to review my *Geographie*; to make it more compleat and uſeful to an *Engliſh Reader*: my vacancy from buſineſs, uſed by them as an Argument to induce me to it. A motion looked on, when firſt made, with neglect enough; my deſuetude from thoſe younger *Studies*, my great want of Books, the ſad complexion of the times, and the unhandſom entertainment which my Endeavours for the Publick had lately met with, ſeeming ſufficient to *diſſwade* me from the Undertaking. Little encouragement, God wot, to write Books for others, when I could not be permitted to enjoy my own; or to employ my ſelf in order to a *publick ſervice*, when not alone my private Fortunes, but the publick Patrimony of the Church, was deſtroyed and diſſipated. But afterwards, being preſſed unto it by ſome Members of Parliament, whom I found loth to be denyed, and by ſome others of great Rank, but ſuch different *Intereſſes*, that I wondred how they could all center upon the ſame *Propoſal*: I thought it, at the laſt, a more *Chriſtian* duty, to ſatisfie the honeſt deſires of ſo many men, than to ſacrifice any longer to my own privacy and retiredneſs, to which I had intended to devote my ſelf. So I reſolved to venture on it, though well I ſaw that my condition in ſo doing might be reſembled unto that of the *Iſraelites* in the Land of *Egypt*; of whom the *Task-maſters* did expect the full tale of *Bricks*, and yet denyed them their accuſtomed allowance of *Straw* and *Stubble*. My caſe, in this, not much unlike unto that of the Duke of *Alva*; Who being under the diſpleaſure of the King of *Spain*, in quality of a Priſoner, without the leaſt aſſurance of recovering the King's favour, or his own liberty; and yet employed, in that Conjecture, for the conqueſt of *Portugal*, was wont to ſay, *That he was ſent to conquer Kingdoms with his Fetters on.*

And here I cannot but remember a pretty accident which befel me in the Month of *January*, *Anno* 1640, at what time it had been my ill fortune to ſuffer under ſome miſapprehenſions which had been entertain'd againſt me, and to be before before the *Committee for the Courts of Juſtice* on the complaint of Mr. *Prynne*, then newly return'd from his confinement, and in great credit with the Vulgar. Heard by them, I confeſs, I was, with a great deal of ingenuous patience; but moſt deſpightfully reviled and perſecuted with exceſſive both noiſe and violence, by ſuch as thronged about the doors of that *Committee*, to expect the iſſue: it being as

natural to many weak and inconſiderate men, as it is to Dogs, to bark at thoſe they do not know, and to accompany each other in thoſe kinds of clamours. And though I had the happineſs to come off clear, without any cenſure; and to recover by degrees, amongſt knowing-men, that eſtimation which before had been much endangered: yet ſuch as took up matters upon truſt and hear-ſay, look upon me as a perſon forfeited and marked out for ruine. Amongſt others, I was then encountred, in my paſſage from *Weſtminſter* to *White-hall*, by a tall big Gentleman, who thruſting me rudely from the Wall, and looking over his ſhoulder on me, in a ſcornful manner, ſaid, in an hoarſe voice, theſe words, *Geography is better than Divinity*; and ſo paſſed along. Whether his meaning were, That I was a better *Geographer* than *Divine*; or, that *Geographie* had been a Study of more credit and advantage to me in the eyes of men, than *Divinity* was like to prove, I am not able to determine. But ſure I am, I have ſince thought very often of it; and that the thought thereof had its influence on me, in drawing me to look back on thoſe younger Studies, in which I was reſolved to have dealt no more: and thereto, in the Preface to my *Microcoſm*, had obliged my ſelf.

And it is poſſible enough, that, in reſpect of that general promiſe, I may lie under the cenſure of inconſtancy, and breach of *Covenant*, in that I had ſolemnly declared in the aforeſaid *Preface*, that the Reader *ſhould not fear any further enlargements, which might make him repent his* (then) *preſent Markets; that it had received my laſt hand; and that from thenceforth I would look upon it as a Stranger only.* But it was meant withall, and expreſſed accordingly, unleſs it were for the *amending of ſuch Errors, of which, by the ſtrength of mine own judgment, or any ingenuous information, I ſhould be convicted.* And *Errors*, I muſt needs ſay, I have found ſo many on this laſt peruſal, and thoſe not only *verbal*, but *material* too, as did not only free me from that *Obligation*, but did *oblige* me to a further *Review* thereof. For being written in an Age, on which the pride of youth, and ſelf-opinion, might have ſome predominancies; I thought it freer from miſtakes, than I ſince have found it. And thoſe miſtakes, by running through eight Editions (ſix of them without my peruſal or ſuper-viſing) ſo encreaſed and multiplyed, that I could no longer call it mine, or look upon it with any tolerable degree of patience. So that, in caſe the importunity of friends had not enforced me, in a manner, upon this Employment, the neceſſity of conſulting my own fame, and leaving the Work fair behind me, to ſucceeding times, would have perſwaded me, in the end, to do ſomewhat in it. Which, though the laſt, was not the leaſt of thoſe enducements which enclined me to the undertaking of this preſent Work.

Having thus plainly and ingenuouſly laid down the reaſons which did induce, though not encourage me unto this performance; it is now fit I ſhould declare what I have done in it, and what the *Reader* may expect from ſo great Enlargements. And firſt, the *Reader* is to know, that my deſign originally, was only to look over the former Book, to give it a *Review*, to purge it of the *Errors* which it had contracted; and not ſo much to make a new Book, as correct the old. But when I had more ſeriouſly conſidered of it, I found ſufficient reaſon to change that purpoſe, to make it new both in Form and Matter; and to preſent it to the World with all thoſe advantages which a new Book might carry with it. The greater pains I took about it, the greater I conceived would be the benefit by which might from thence redound to thoſe who ſhould pleaſe to read it. And I would willingly ſo far comply with all expectations, that the ſhort Taper of my life ſhould give light to others, in the conſuming of it ſelf. *Non nobis ſolùm nati ſumus*, may well become a *Chriſtian*'s mouth, though an Heathen ſpake it. But if all expectations be not ſatisfied in the compleatneſs of the Work, (as I fear they will not) I deſire it may not be aſcribed unto any neglect or fault of mine, but to the wants and difficulties which I was to ſtruggle with. Books I had few to help my ſelf with, of mine own; nor live I near ſo rich a *Clergie*, (moſt of the Benefices of theſe parts being poor and mean) as to ſupply my ſelf from them with ſuch Commodities. The greateſt helps I had, was from *Oxford Library*; which, though but nine or ten miles off from my preſent dwelling; yet the charge and trouble of the journey, with the loſs of time, made my viſits to that place leſs frequent; and conſequently, the Neighbourhood thereof leſs uſeful to me, than the generality of the Deſign might well comport with. So that when all things are conſidered as they ought to be, it rather may be wondred at, by an equal *Reader*, how I could come to write ſo much, with ſo little helps, upon a Subject of ſuch a large and diffuſed variety; than that in any part thereof, I have writ too little. And to ſay truth, the Work ſo proſpered in my hand, and ſwelled ſo much above my thought and expectation, that I hope I may, with modeſty enough, uſe thoſe words of *Jacob*, *Voluntas Dei fuit, ut citò occurreret mihi quod volebam*; The Lord God brought it to me, as the *Engliſh* reads it.

In the purſuance of this Work, as I have taken on my ſelf the parts of an *Hiſtorian* and *Geographer*; ſo have I not forgotten that I am an *Engliſh-man*; and, which is ſomewhat more, a *Church-man*. As an *Engliſh-man*, I have been mindful, upon all occaſions, to commit to memory the noble Actions of my Country, exploited both by Sea and Land, in moſt parts of the World; and repreſented on the ſame *Theaters* upon which they were acted. And herein I have followed the example of the great *Annaliſt*, *Baronius*,

ronius; Who pretending, in that great and laborious Work, a ſincere Hiſtory of the Church, and no more than ſo; yet tells the Pope, in his Epiſtle, that he principally did intend the ſame, *pro Sacrarum Traditionum Antiquitate, & Autoritate* Romanæ *Eccleſiæ*; to manifeſt therein the Antiquity of ſuch Traditions, and for defence of that Authority and Power, which at this day are taught and exerciſed in the Church of *Rome*. And ſo much I may alſo ſay of my ſelf in this performance, though without any by-deſign to abuſe the *Reader*, That though the *Hiſtory* and *Chorography* of the World, be my principal buſineſs; yet I have apprehended every modeſt occaſion of recording the Heroick Acts of my native Soil, and filing on the Regiſters of perpetual Fame, the Gallantry and brave Atchievements of the People of *England*; Exemplified in their many Victories and ſignal Services in *Italy*, *France*, *Spain*, *Scotland*, *Belgium*; in *Paleſtine*, *Cyprus*, *Africa*, and *America*, and indeed, where not? Nor have I pretermitted their great zeal and piety, in converting to the Faith ſo many of the *German* and Northern Nations, *Franconians*, *Thuringians*, *Haſſians*, *Saxons*, *Danes*, *Friſons*; as alſo, amongſt the *Scots* and *Picts*; together with thoſe of *Lituania*, and the people of *Norwey*: by that means more enlarging Chriſt's Kingdom, than they did their own. And as I have been zealous to record the Actions, ſo have I been as careful to aſſert the Rights of the *Engliſh* Nation: inherent perſonally in their Kings, by way of publick intereſs in the Subject alſo; as the whole Body doth partake of that ſenſe and motion which is originally in the Head. And of this kind I reckon the true ſtating of the Title of the Kings of *England* to the Crown of *France*; demonſtrating the Vaſſalage of the Kingdom of *Scotland* to the Crown of *England*; vouching the legal Intereſs of the *Engliſh* Nation, in right of the firſt Diſcovery of *Primier Seizure*, to *Eſtotiland*, *Terra Corterialis*, *New-found-Land*, *Novum Belgium*, *Guiana*, the Countreys near the *Cape of Good Hope*, ſeveral of the *Indian* Iſlands, and ſome other places, againſt all Pretenders: inſinuating the precedency of the *Engliſh* Kings, before thoſe of *Spain*; their Soveraignty and Dominion in the *Britiſh* Ocean: with the great benefit which might from thence ariſe unto us, invaded and almoſt ingroſſed by the *Hanſe* and *Hollanders*. And yet there is another thing which ſpeaks me more an *Engliſhman*, than all theſe together; which I ſhall fall on ſoon enough, and indeed too ſoon, the ſadnes of the ſubject being well conſidered.

Next, as a *Church-man*, I have taken more eſpecial notice of the ancient and preſent face of *Chriſtianity*, in all parts of the World; the planting and Government of Churches, the *Heterodoxies* and opinions of thoſe ſeveral Sects into which it doth now ſtand diſmembred. By which it will appear moſt clearly, amongſt other things, that the Doctrine and Government of the Church, were of equal ſtanding; that this Government was no other than that of *Biſhops*; and that whereſoever *Chriſtianity* did find any admittance, *Epiſcopacy* was admitted alſo as a part thereof: the Goſpel being in moſt places firſt preached by *Biſhops*, or growing to eſteem and ſtrength under their Authority. And it is found on theſe *Reſearches*, that as *Epiſcopacy* was coæval with the Church it ſelf, ſo the *Subordination* of *Biſhops* to their ſeveral *Primates*, and the *Co-ordination* of thoſe *Primates* among themſelves in the common Government thereof, was of ſuch antiquity (as being ſetled and confirmed in St. *Cyprian*'s time, who flouriſhed in the year 250) that it is hard to trace the beginnings of it. *Debere* Epiſcopos *in commune* Eccleſiam *regere*, is a noted *Maxim*, in St. *Hierome*; but practically true in the *Communicatoriæ*, and *Formatæ*, of the elder Ages: Which happy courſe, had it been preſerved, *Epiſcopacy* had been ſo far from being *made a ſtirrup for* Antichriſt *to mount into his Throne*, as the *Smectymnuans* falſly charge it; that it had ſerved rather as a *Martingal* to have kept him down from lifting up his head too high above the reſt of his Bretheren. And that this courſe was not preſerved, came not intentionally from the Popes, (for that by *Antichriſt* they mean the Popes of *Rome*, is a thing paſt queſtion) but from the Inundations of the barbarous Nations: though I confeſs the Popes were apt enough to make the beſt advantage of thoſe various Accidents, which the diſtreſſes of the Church did preſent unto them. For by the overflowing of the barbarous Nations, *Chriſtianity* was either quite extinguiſhed, or the Authority of the *Primates* trodden under foot; or that intelligence and commerce which had been anciently amongſt them, interdicted on good reaſons of State, by ſuch *Heathen* or *Mahometan* Princes, under whom they lived. And then, how eaſie was it for the Pope, in the new-planting of the Goſpel in theſe Weſtern parts, (done either by his Miniſters, or by his encouragement) to give unto the Biſhops, of his own appointing, ſuch a limited Power, as might make them more and more obnoxious unto his Commands, and afterwards to leſſen their Authority, as he ſaw occaſion, by granting large *Exemptions* to Monaſteries, Convents, and Cathedrals; with *Juriſdiction* over the *Parochial* Churches which belong'd unto them: So that it is moſt evident in the courſe of Story, that the Popes never came unto their height, nor could obtrude their Superſtitions and Novations on the Church of CHRIST; till they had weakned, by degrees, the *Epiſcopal* Power. Followed, in that deſign,

though on different ends, by *Wicliff*, and ſome others in the Ages ſince; who have driven on their private projects under the colour and pretence of a *Reformation*. *Epiſcopacy*, as it was coæval with the Church of *CHRIST*, ſo was it the beſt and ſtrongeſt Buttreſs in that Sacred Building. The weakning or ſubverting of which Primitive Order, did either proſtitute the Church to the Luſt and Tyranny of that proud Uſurper, or expoſe the Patrimony thereof unto ſpoyl and rapine; or finally, ſubject it to the *Anarchy* and licentiouſneſs of *Heterodoxies*, and confuſed Opinions. But I fear I have digreſſed too far in this ſpeculation.

As a *Geographer*, I have been punctual and exact in giving unto every Province its peculiar bounds, in laying out their ſeveral Land-marks, tracing the courſe of moſt of the principal Rivers, and ſetting forth the ſituation and eſtate of the chiefeſt Towns; and did once think of beautifying the Work with as many Maps as the ſeveral States and Kingdoms which are here deſcribed. But upon further conſideration, how much it would encreaſe the Book both in bulk and price, and conſequently make it of leſs publick uſe than I did intend it; I laid by thoſe thoughts, and reſted ſatisfied with the adding of four Maps for the four parts of the World: by which the *Reader* may diſcern how each Countrey lies unto the other, though he find not each particular Province, and much leſs all the Towns and Cities which are here expreſſed: and, on the other ſide, may meet with many Towns of inferior note, which are here omitted. And herein I have took ſome pains in ſearching out the firſt Inhabitants of each ſeveral Countrey, as far as I could ſee by the light of Letters, or go by probable Conjectures, in finding out the place of ſuch ancient Cities as are now decayed, not eaſily viſible in their Ruins; and adding to ſuch Cities as are now in being (if of any Antiquity) their Original Names. A thing as neceſſary to the underſtanding of the Hiſtories of thoſe elder times, as the knowledg of the preſent names is to the more deligthful reading of our Modern Stories. And though I have not pretermitted any Town of note, fit to be ſpecified and inſiſted on in a Work of this nature; yet would I not have the *Reader* look for ſuch a punctual enumeration and deſcription of them, as he may meet withal in thoſe who have written the *Chorography* of ſome Countrey only; or think himſelf unſatisfied in his expectation, if he find not here the ſituation and affairs of each Town of War, or the Quartering-place of every Company or Troop of Soldiers, which are preſented to him in the Weekly News-books. In all Countreys there are many places which either by the advantage of their ſituation, or ſome preſent exigency of affairs, are fortified and made Towns of War; or otherwiſe remarkable for ſome ſignal Battel, in theſe late buſtles and commotions of the Chriſtian World; of which no notice hath been taken in former times, and conſequently not within the compaſs of this Diſcourſe: and yet perhaps may grow as famous and conſiderable in the times to come, as many of the mightier Cities now decayed and ruined. He that ſhall think the Work imperfect (though I confeſs it, to be nothing but imperfections) for ſome deficiencies in this kind, may be likened to the Countrey-fellow in *Ariſtophanes*, (if my memory fail not) who picked a great quarrel with the Map, becauſe he could not find where his own Farm ſtood. And ſuch a Countrey-cuſtomer I did meet with once, a ſervant of my elder Brother's, ſent by him with ſome Horſes to *Oxon*, to bring me and a friend of mine unto his Houſe. Who having loſt his way, as we paſſed through the Forreſt of *Whitchwood*, and not able to recover any beaten Track, did very earneſtly entreat me to lead the way, till I had brought him paſt the Woods, to the open Fields. Which when I had refuſed to do, as I had good reaſon; alledging, that I never had been there before, and therefore that I could not tell which way to lead him: *That's ſtrange*, ſaid he; *I have heard my old Maſter, your Father, ſay, That you made a Book of all the World; and cannot you find your way out of the Wood?* Which being ſpoken out of an honeſt ſimplicity, not out of any pretence to wit, or the leaſt thought of putting a blunt jeſt upon me, occaſioned a great deal of merriment for a long time after: but I hope to meet with no ſuch *Readers*. The greatneſs of the Bulk, and conſequently of the Price, makes me ſomewhat confident, that none but men of Judgment and Underſtanding will peruſe theſe Papers: and ſuch as they, will look for no more particulars, than the nature of a general Diſcourſe will fitly bear. Perfection and Exactneſs is to be expected in each kind of Science, as is obſerved by *Ariſtotle* in his ſecond Book of his Ethicks, ἐφ' ὅσον ἡ πράγματος φύσις ἐπιδέχεται, as far forth as the condition of the Argument may be capable of it. And ſo much if I have attained unto, it is all which can with reaſon be expected from me. To look for more, were as improper and abſurd, (in the words of *Ariſtotle*) as for an *Artiſt* to expect Tropes of Rhetorick from a Mathematician, or Demonſtrations from an Orator.

Laſtly, as an *Hiſtorian*, I have traced the affairs of each ſeveral Countrey, from the firſt Inhabitants thereof, (ſuch as the *Latins* call *Aborigines*, and the *Greeks*, Αὐτόχθονες) till theſe later times. Which that I might be ſure to do on a good foundation, I have took more than common care, to ſettle all the firſt Adventurers (after the proud attempt at *Babel*) in their right Plantations; and that too in the way of an *Introduction*, that I might the better know where I was to find them, and to go on with their Affairs with

with the leſs diſturbance. The reſt of their *Occurrences*, I have ſummed into ſo ſhort an *Abſtract*, as may be uſeful to the Learned, in the way of a *Remembrancer*; to the leſs-knowing man, in the way of a Tutor: Brevity, in this kind, I have much endeavoured; but ſo as to avoid all obſcurity alſo. Nor have I only kept my ſelf to the ſtory of Kingdoms, or the greater *Signeuries*, Eſtates or Nations, which are or have been of the greateſt conſideration in the ſway of the World: but looked on the Eſtates of ſuch Dukes, Earls, and inferior Princes, as in their times have had the Government of thoſe parts which gave Title to them; whoſe Actions and Succeſſions are diſtinctly ſpecified, and all ſuch Alterations noted, as have hapned either in the ruin of ſuch Eſtates, or the tranſlating of them from one Houſe to another. The Catalogues and Succeſſions of which Royal and Illuſtrious Families, I have drawn down unto the year 1648; towards the expiring of which year, I began to ſet my ſelf upon this Employment. And there I fix, as on the top of ſome dreadful *Precipice*, which one can neither venture down without danger, nor look down without horror. Some things there are of ſuch a nature, that either to ſpeak of them, or to hold our peace, is alike unſafe. In ſuch a caſe it is beſt to keep at a diſtance. For though truth be the beſt Miſtreſs which a man can ſerve, (*Magis amica veritas*, ſaid the great Philoſopher) yet it is well obſerved withal, that if a man follow her too cloſe at the heels, ſhe may chance to kick out his teeth for his labour.

In this regard, as alſo out of that compaſſionate affection which a true *Engliſh-man* ought to bear his native Countrey, although in my approaches towards theſe preſent times, I have took notice, in ſome other places, of ſuch battels, ſieges, and ſucceſſes, in the chances of War, as have hapned in theſe later days: I have forborn to take the leaſt notice of thoſe Tragedies of Blood and Death which have been lately acted on the Stage of *England*. I cannot but with grief confeſs, that I might find variety of this kind enough, in the late Wars amongſt our ſelves: in which there have been more pitched-fields, more ſtrong pieces taken, more notable traverſes of State, and exploits of War, than all the World can parallel in an equal time. But I have too much *Engliſh* bowels to pleaſe my ſelf in the recital, or to look back on thoſe unfortunate Adventures, which I ſhould rather chuſe to cover with the *Act of Oblivion*, or bury in the grave of perpetual ſilence. How gladly I could have recorded theſe exploits of War, had they been exerciſed on a Subject more proper for them, my willingneſs to take notice, upon all occaſions, of the Actions and Atchievements of the *Engliſh* Nation, will bear witneſs for me. But the employing of that Valour againſt our ſelves, as if not to be conquered, but by one another, ſtrikes ſuch horror in me, that I cannot think thereof, without much affrightment; nor intimate thus much of it, without great *reluctancies*. I fear it may be ſaid too truly of our late embroilments, as the Hiſtorian of the Civil-Wars betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus Belli eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; that they were principally occaſioned by a ſurfeit of too much felicity. But if we were grown weary of our own proſperities; and that prayer and paſſage in the publick Liturgy (*Give Peace in our time, O Lord*) did not reliſh with us: how happy had it been, if we had found ſome other Field to have tryed our Valour in? and made ſome Forrein Countrey that *Aceldama*, which ſo fatally was made at home? The diſhonour which we ſuffered in the Iſle of *Rhee*, when beat thence ingloriouſly by the *French*; the forcible and long detention of the *Palatinate*, by the Power of the *Spaniard*; the barbarous Butchery at *Amboyna*; and the beating up of the *Spaniſh* Fleet within the protection of our Caſtles, by thoſe of *Holland*; the Inſolencies of the *Scots*; and the Rebellions of the *Iriſh*, might well have ſtirred ſome indignation in an *Engliſh* breaſt. And had we fought upon thoſe ſcores, or on none but them, our Victories had deſerved the honour of a ſolemn *Triumph*, denyed by the old *Roman* Laws to a Civil-war: But our infelicity (as it ſeems) was like that of *Rome*, in following thoſe unnatural Wars with ſuch animoſities; when the unrevenged death of *Craſſus*, the blood of ſo many thouſand of their ſlaughtered Citizens, and the ſhameful loſs of ſo many of the *Roman* Enſigns, ſhould rather have invited them to the conqueſt of the *Parthian* Empire. Of which, thus feelingly the Poet:

Cúmque ſuperba foret Babylon *ſpolianda Trophæis,*
Bella geri placuit, nullos habitura Triumphos.

(conſtrain'd
And when proud *Babylon* ſhould have been
To give us back our Enſigns lately gain'd:
We rather choſe ſuch Quarrels to purſue,
For which no *Triumph* could be juſtly due.

But ſuch is the condition and viciſſitude of human affairs, that there is nothing permanent, and much leſs of certainty. The greateſt Monarchies of the World, the *Babylonian*, *Perſian*, *Grecian*, *Roman*, have all had their *periods*, nothing remaining of them now, but the name and memory. And what is now become of thoſe mighty Cities of the Eaſt, *Ninive*, *Babylon*, *Ecbatana*, *Suſa*, with the reſt mentioned in the Scriptures, and in *Claſſical* Authors? Are not their very Ruins now become inviſible? Where are the puiſſant Families of the *Achæmenides* of *Perſia*, the *Seleucidæ* of *Syria*, the *Pharaohs* and *Ptolemies* of *Egypt*, the *Cæſars* of *Italy*, the *Merovingians* and *Carolovingians* of the Realm of *France*, and the *Plantagenets*

of *England*? Are they not all extinct and gone, not to be found but by the benefit of ſtory, and ſome ancient Monuments? And if it be ſo, as it is, with the greateſt monarchies, the moſt mighty Cities of the World, we muſt not think that ſmaller Kingdoms and Eſtates can either be ſo evenly ballanced, or ſo ſurely founded, as not to be obnoxious alſo to the ſame viciſſitudes. And, being that ſaying of *Optatus* is moſt undoubtedly true, *Eccleſia eſt in Republica*, that the Church is but a part of the Commonwealth, we muſt not hope to find it in a better poſture than the Civil-State in which it is, and under the protection whereof it ſubſiſts and flouriſheth. The Church muſt needs miſcarry in the ruin of the Civil-State; and may miſcarry, many times, although the Civil-State receive no ſuch alterations. Compared, for this reaſon, to the Moon, by the ancient Fathers who had obſerved her in her Prime, in her Encreaſes, and her Full; and finally, had not only ſeen her in the *Wane* alſo, but ſometimes too under ſome horrible *Eclipſes*. Which various condition of the *Militant* Church, the Scriptures and ſucceeding Stories have ſet forth ſo fully, that there need no better nor no clearer demonſtrations of it. The Ark of God taken by the *Philiſtins*, the Temple deſtroyed by the *Chaldæans*, and profaned by the *Syrians*, the Apoſtaſie of ten Tribes at once from the Law of their God, and the extermination of the other two in a ſhort time after, abundantly declare the frail condition and eſtate of the *Jewiſh* Church. And find we not the ſame for the *Chriſtian* alſo, in the removing of the *Candleſtick* from the *Aſian* Churches; and making them, together with thoſe of *Greece* and *Egypt*, and all the flouriſhing Churches in the Eaſt and South, to languiſh and decay remedileſly under the mercileſs encroachments of the *Turks* and *Saracens*? He muſt be more than blind that ſees not, more ſavage than thoſe mercileſs men, that grieves not at their ſad condition: but a dead Member, at the moſt, of *Chriſt's* Myſtical Body, who feels not in himſelf the ſuffrings of thoſe wretched *Chriſtians*.

If now we look into the cauſes of that deſolation which hath hapned in the Civil-State of thoſe mighty Empires; to what can we impute it, but their crying-ſins? the Pride of the *Babylonians*, the Effeminacy of the *Perſians*, the Luxury of the *Greeks*: and ſuch an aggregation of Vices amongſt the *Romans* (or Weſtern *Chriſtians*) before the breaking in of the barbarous Nations, that they were grown a ſcandal unto *Chriſtianity*. *In nobis patitur* Chriſtus *opprobrium, in nobis patitur lex* Chriſtiana *maledictum*, as the devout *Salvian* then complained. Thus alſo in reference to the Church, did not the Idolaters of the ten Tribes haſten in the *Aſſyrians*? The ſhedding of the Blood of ſo many Prophets by the other two, as much accelerate the coming in of the *Chaldæans* firſt, and the *Romans* afterwards? Do we not find the *Arianiſm* of the Eaſtern Churches to uſher in the inundation of the *Saracens*; the *Donatiſm* of the South, to have ſet open a wide Door to let in the *Vandals*? Did not the *Saxons* follow on the heels of *Pelagianiſm*, as ſoon almoſt as entertained amongſt the *Britans*? If ſo, as moſt undoubtedly it was in the days of old, why ſhould we think but that the Superſtitions and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, the Sacriledg and Faction of the Churches of the Reformation, ſhall at the laſt receive the like Retribution? Or, that the Divine Juſtice is ſo faſt aſleep, that our ſins muſt cry as loud as the Prieſts of *Baal* did unto their god, before it be awakened by us? Aſſuredly, we are no leſs ſinners than any of thoſe on whom the *Tower* of the Divine vengeance hath ſo heavily fallen; whoſe blood the *Pilates* of all Ages have mingled with their ſolemn and religious *ſacrifices*: and therefore have no cauſe to hope, but that *unleſs we do repent*, we ſhall likewiſe *periſh*.

The ſerious conſideration of all theſe particulars, hath made thoſe alterations both in Church and State, which have hapned here amongſt our ſelves, the leſs ſtrange unto me. For, is there any of theſe *things*, *whereof it may be ſaid*, Ecce hoc eſt novum, *Behold this is new*? *Eccl.* 1. 10. Have they not been already in the times before us? Do we not find it poſitively affirm'd by the wiſeſt man that ever was, *That which hath been, is now; and that which is to be, hath already been: Nihil enim novum eſt ſub ſole*, for there is no *new thing* under the Sun, *Eccleſ.* 3. 15. and 1. 11. And though I cannot tell what effect the reading of this following Book may produce in others, yet I can warrantably ſay thus much of my ſelf. That the obſervation of the fall of ſo many great and puiſſant Empires, the exſtirpation of ſo many mighty and renowned Families, the deſolation of ſo many flouriſhing *Chriſtian* Churches, as the compoſing of this Book did preſent me with, (though formerly no ſtrangers to me in the courſe of my Studies) did more conduce to the full humbling of my Soul under the mighty hand of God, than either the ſenſe of my own Misfortunes, or any other moral conſideration which had come before me. And I could wiſh, the Reader may receive ſo much benefit by it, (beſides the profit and delight which Books of this nature carry with them) that the Mighty man may learn hereby, not to glory in his greateſt Strength, nor the Wiſe to glory in his Wiſdom, or in the cunning carrying on of his great Deſigns. Let the great Leaders of theſe times, in the Art of War, conſider the ſad ends of *Joab*, the General of *David*'s Forces; and of *Beliſarius*, the Commander of *Juſtinian*'s Armies: whereof the one was ſlain ingloriouſly at the *Horns* of the *Altar*, after all his Services; the other forced to beg his bread at the *Gates of the Temple*. Let the great Maſters

sters of Wit, and *State-craft*, have before their eyes the unsuccessful ends of *Achitophel*, the *Oracle* of the times he lived in; and of *Cæsar Borgias*, proposed, by *Machiavel*, for the Pattern of a Politick Prince: of which, the one laid violent hands upon himself, because his *Counsel was not followed*; the other, after the defailment of his Projects, and a long imprisonment to boot, forced to flye his Country, and slain obscurely in an Ambush. Let all men lay unto their hearts the ebbs and floods, those alternations and vicissitudes, to which all Humane Power is subject; the slippery Foundations of that Might and Greatness which is not laid upon the Principles of Justice, and regulated by the *Maxims* of Christian Piety; and, that even those which have dominion over others, have a God too, above themselves, to whom they are to render an accompt of all their Actions. Not such a God as that of *Lewis* the 11th of *France*; of whom it is reported, that he wore a Leaden Medal in his Bonnet, in the form of a *Crucifix*: which, when he had caused any man to be killed, whom he feared or hated, he would take into his hands, and kiss it, desiring it to pardon him that one Murther more, and it should be the last which he would commit. Such mockeries as these may be well put on a *Leaden god*; but the God of Heaven and Earth, will not be so *mocked:* who being *totus oculus*, and *totum lumen*, as the Father calleth him, can easily discern our intents and purposes, notwithstanding those disguises which are put upon them; and see the nakedness of sin in its ugliest shape, though apparelled with the *Fig leaves* of the best pretences, which the self-deceiving Wit of Man can patch up together. God is the same God now, as in former times, *Primus ad extremum similis sibi*, Yesterday, and to day; and the same for ever; and will not put up those affronts which the Impieties of men do afflict him with: though in regard of his great patience, and long-suffering, they may flatter their poor Souls, and say, *Tush, God doth not see it.*

Lastly, I am to tell the Reader, that I have now no other *Patron* than himself, to whom to dedicate this Work, and from whom to receive protection and encouragement in it. The time was when I might have said with *Seneca*, *Unus mihi erat pro Populo*, that one Man was to me instead of all men: the Powers of all the *People* being virtually united in him. But now, as the case stands, I must be fain to invert those words, *Populus mihi est pro uno*; the Body of the *Nation* is to me, in this respect as the *Head* before. Unto them therefore I present it, and that not improperly: A General survey of all the World, the Government, Affairs, and Successes of it, requiring a more general *Patron* than particular Tractates. But because all the *People* in the Body *Collective* have not abilities to read, and much less to judge; and that many of those who can do both, may neither have the list nor leisure to peruse these Papers: I look on the *Nobility*, *Clergy*, *Gentry*, as their *Representatives* in this kind; to whose favourable and ingenuous acceptance I submit the same. Which if I can attain unto, it is all I aim at. And it will be no small comfort to me in the midst of so many sorrows as are round about me, that I have been useful to the publick, or added any thing by my Studies unto the Honour and Content of the *English* Nation: whose peace and happiness is heartily commended to Almighty God, by

The Author of these following Papers,

PETER HETLIN.

To my Brother the AUTHOR.

THY *firſt* preſt-Grapes *did yield approved* Wine,
Such as did praiſe it ſelf; *yet to endear*
Our Approbation, thou doſt here refine
Thoſe former Fruits; *and, for our better* Cheer,
Preſent'ſt us with a pure and ſtronger Vine:
Leſt, elſe, ſome curious taſte might it diſtaſte.
If ſo, What needs my ſecond Buſh? *'Tis* Waſte.

Yet well thy choice Minerva *merits this,*
This Ivie Garland, *everlaſting green*;
Which, like the Muſes *Cup, proportion'd is,*
Whereout thou drink'ſt, wherein their Liquors *been.*
Nor wouldſt thou ſcape the laſh of Nemeſis,
If, with Diogenes, *thou ſhouldſt refuſe*
To let the thirſty *drink there-hence.* *'Twere* News.

Thy Book's an Ark, *which all the* World *contains*;
And well may bear a ſhort Encomion.
'Tis ſlender Meed; *yet who ſuch Pay diſdains?*
Good Wine *may have a* Buſh, *though it* need none.
Nor let theſe Lines of mine ſeem partial ſtrains.
Thy Work *ingenious is*; *and* Vertue's *Brood,*
Like it, encreaſeth with due praiſe. *'Tis* Good.

Much Pains it coſt, much Coſt, and Labour more:
Fame's *breath is dear, 'tis hard to purchaſe* Praiſe:
The Muſes *Seat aſcends an Hundred ſcore:*
And Honour's *Journey lies not in plain ways.*
Who to Parnaſſus *high-crown'd top will ſore,*
Muſt with elaborate Quill climb up: and ſuch
Thy tender Genius *boaſteth thee.* *'Tis* Much!

Too much indeed it were, but that in part,
The Guerdon *of well-doing, is the doing.*
Fame, *and* Reward, *but wait upon thine Art*;
Which yet deſerves that in this Forward *going,*
Thy Fortune's *may even-ballance thy* Deſert.
But Fortune's *baſe, and ſells the* Wages *due*
To Worth, *unto her* Favourites. *'Tis* True.

The Earth *thy Ground-plot is,* Geographi'd;
Kings, *ſometimes, are thy Subjects, peopling it.*
Thy ſtory, Hiſtory *hath beautifi'd,*
Penn'd by the vigour of an Home-bred *Wit:*
Whoſe Art *hath travell'd all the World beſide,*
And can of every Country well *declare*
The Occurrents, Nature, Site, Bounds. *'Tis* Rare.

Thus, that the Earth, ſo young, thou compaſt haſt,
Is Rare, True, Much, Good, News, *and my* Buſh waſt.

Edw. Heylin, J. C.
è Soc. Int. Temp.

A GENERAL INTRODUCTION to the following WORK:

Containing the Creation *of the World by Almighty God, and the* Plantation *of the ſame by the Sons of Men; the neceſſary uſe of* Hiſtory *and* Geography, *as well for underſtanding the Affairs of the* Ages *paſt, as for converſe and correſpondence with the* Nations *preſent; together with a brief view of ſome* General Præcognita *which neceſſarily are required unto the Knowledge of each.*

WITH great both Piety & Prudence did the Apoſtles in their Summary of the *Chriſtian Faith*, join our Belief in *God the Father Almighty*, with that clauſe or Article of making or *Creating* the Heaven and Earth. For as the name of Father doth imply a making (*Is not he thy Father which hath made thee?* ſaith the Prophet *Moſes*, *Deut.* 32. 6) ſo, Who but an Almighty Father could by his meer Word, without any pre-exiſtent Matter, create that goodly Edifice of Heaven and Earth, which we behold with ſo much wonder and applauſe? A work ſo full of wonder to the ancient *Gentiles*, that ſome of them made the World a God. *Vis illum* (i.e. *Deum*) *mundum Vocare? non falleris*, as it is in *Seneca*: others more rationally conceiving God to be the Soul of the *World*, as giving animation or beginning to it. And though they erred, as well in making the *World* a God, as God to be the Soul of the *World*, yet might they very well have ſaid as one ſince hath done, That the World is nothing elſe but God unfolded and manifeſted in the Creature. *Nil aliud mundus univerſus, quam Deus explicatus*, as *Cuſanus* a late Cardinal hath it. For certainly the ſpecial motives which did induce God unto this great work, were a deſire and purpoſe to manifeſt his Power, to exerciſe his Providence, and declare his Goodneſs. Not that God needed to have made the *World* in regard of Himſelf; for the *World* we know was made in the beginning of Time, but God is Infinite and Eternal before all Times: but that it ſeemed good to Him to *create* it laſt, as a thing moſt conducible to his praiſe and glory; the *Heavens declaring the glory of God, and the Earth ſhewing his handy-work*, ſaith the Royal *Pſalmiſt*. Some, meaſuring the God of Heaven by their own affections, and finding nothing ſo agreeable to their own diſpoſitions as to be in company, conceive that God being at laſt weary of his own Solitude, did create the *World*, that he might have the company of the *Angels* in Heaven, and make a ſtart into the Earth (when he ſaw occaſion) to recreate himſelf with the Sons of Men. *Quæ beata eſſe ſolitudo quæat?* What happineſs (ſaid *Hortenſius*) can there be in Solitude? To which *Lactantius*, *Lib.* 1. *Cap.* 7. not being furniſhed with a better, doth return this Anſwer; That God cannot be ſaid to be alone; *habet enim Miniſtros quos vocamus Nuncios*, as having the ſociety of the *Angels*. But then *Lactantius* muſt ſuppoſe that the *Angels* were co-eternal with God himſelf, (which were to make all Gods, and no God at all; or elſe his Anſwer is no Anſwer, as to that Objection. How much more oppoſitely might he have thus replyed unto *Hortenſius*, That the ſupream contentment poſſible to Almighty God is by reflecting on Himſelf, and in Himſelf contemplating his own infinite glories: which being co-eternal with Himſelf, even from all Eternity, he needed no more company before the World was made, than he hath done ſince. *Lactantius* being himſelf a man of a very great reading, (though indeed a better *Humanitian* than *Divine*) could not but know thoſe ſweet delights which a man habited in Learning takes in Contemplation, and the good ſociety he hath of his own dear thoughts, when he is moſt retired from the ſight of men. And if the wiſe *Gentile* could affirm ſo ſadly, *Nunquam minus ſolus quam cum ſolus eſſet*, that he was never leſs alone than when he was by himſelf, what need can any rational man ſuppoſe in Almighty God, of having more company than Himſelf, to delight Himſelf in? If this ſuffice not for an Anſwer to that needleſs queſtion, *What God did before he made the World*; let him take that of *Auguſtine* on the like occaſion: who being troubled with the like curious and impertinent Caption, is ſaid to have returned this Anſwer; *Fabricaſſe inferos curioſis*, that he made Hell for all ſuch troubleſome and idle *Queſtioniſts*. Which reſolution of that Father is by *Sabinus*, a late *Dutch* Poet, moulded into this handſom Epigram.

Dum Chriſtum Libycis *Pater* Auguſtinus *in oris*
Aſſerit, & peragit munus in æde ſuum;
Dum miranda refert populo primordia mundi
Eſſe docens verbo cuncta creata Dei:
Impius aſſurgit, verbiſq; procacibus, Afer,
Ergo Opifex rerum quid faciebat? ait;
Aut, Quibus intentus fallebat tempora curis,
Mundus adhuc nondum cum fabricatus erat?

Præſul ad hæc Libycus, *Fabricavit tartara, dixit,*
His quos ſcrutari talia mente juvat.

Which may be Engliſhed in theſe words:

When Reverend *Auſtin* did in *Africk* preach,
And in Gods Houſe the ruder people teach,
As he the Worlds Creation prov'd and taught
That God made all things by his Word, of nought:
A ſawcy Swain upſtarting needs would know,
How God before that did his time beſtow:
And what to ſpend his thoughts upon, he had,
When neither Heaven, nor Earth, nor Seas were made:
To which the Father tartly thus; He then
Made *Hell* for thee, and ſuch audacious men.

But not to ſpend more time in anſwering ſo vain a caption, ſuffice it us to know, that it pleaſed God at laſt when it ſeemed beſt unto his infinite and eternal Wiſdom, to create the World, and all things viſible and inviſible in the ſame contained. A time it had, in which it firſt began to be, which before was not; This *Moſes* calls *Principium* a beginning ſimply. *In the beginning, God created the heaven and the earth*, in the firſt words of the Book of *Geneſis*: which is all one as if he had ſaid, the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that this unformed *Maſs* or *Chaos* which he entituled there by the name of *Heaven and Earth*, was the *beginning* or firſt draught of thoſe ſeveral things which after were created in their proper times; that is to ſay, the firſt in order of time, becauſe made before them, not in order of cauſality, as the cauſes of them. *Cœlum & terra, in principio*, i. e. *ante omnia facta ſunt*, ſaith *Simon Portius* in his *Scholies* on St. *John*'s Goſpel. So that whether we do expound thoſe words, that the Heaven and Earth had a beginning; or that *Moſes* by theſe words did mean, that out of that Matter which he calls *Heaven and Earth*, as out of the beginning, or firſt matter, all things were created, it comes all to one; becauſe it is thereby acknowledged that the firſt Matter was created by Almighty God, and therefore of neceſſity to have a *beginning*. And to this truth we have not only the authority and conſent of Scripture, but of the greateſt part of the old *Philoſophers*; guided thereto by this impoſſibility in nature, that any viſible work, whether it be *natural* or *artificial*, ſhould either give it ſelf a being, or have that being which it hath from no cauſe precedent. For from that Principle *Tully* argueth very rightly in his moſt excellent Book *De Natura Deorum*, that as a man coming into a goodly houſe, in which he found nothing but Rats and Mice, could not conceive that either the houſe had built it ſelf, or had no other maker but thoſe Rats and Mice which were neſted in it; ſo neither can it be imagined, that either this World ſhould be eternal, or a ſelf-exiſtency; or was compoſed by any natural Agent of what ſort ſoever. And this is that which is more briefly and expreſly ſaid by the Apoſtle, *viz.* That *every houſe is built by ſome man, but he that built all things is God*, *Heb.* 3. 4. It is true, that *Ariſtotle* being a very great enquirer into the works of Nature, conceiv'd the World to be eternal; and yet not always conſtant unto that opinion. But then it is as true withal that there was ſomething elſe that inclined him to it, than a meer admiration of the works of Nature. *Democritus* and ſome others had been of opinion, that the World was made in the beginning, *fortuitis atomorum concurſionibus*, by the accidental union or conjunction of thoſe ſeveral parcels, of which the Univerſe conſiſted; and that man himſelf was but *voluntaria elementorum concretio*, a voluntary mixture of all the Elements, as *Minutius* hath obſerved out of their Writings. To which abſurd opinion (as it was no better) though it found a general imbracement amongſt many of the old Philoſophers, when *Ariſtotle* knew not how to ſubmit his moſt exquiſite judgment; and yet was deſtitute of ſuch further light, as might more fully have inſtructed him in its true *Original*: he rather choſe to grant, the World to be eternal, than to be made of ſuch ridiculous, and unſound, though eternal *Atoms*. *Et maluit hanc pulchram mundi faciem ab æterno eſſe, quam aliquando ex æterna deformitate emerſiſſe.* *Valeſius* in his Book *de Sacra Philoſophia* ſo pleads the caſe in his behalf; and I thank him for it: who am (I muſt confeſs) a great friend of *Ariſtotle*'s, whom ſome account for the *Præcurſor* of our Saviour Chriſt *in rebus naturalibus*, as *John* the *Baptiſt* was *in divinis*.

Nor doth the Scripture and the light of Reaſon tell us only this, that the whole World had a beginning; but, by the help of Scripture, and the works of ſome Learned men, we are able to point out the time when it did begin; or to compute how many years it is preciſely from the firſt beginning, without any notable difference in the calculation. For though it be moſt truly ſaid, *Citius inter Horologias quam Chronologias*; that *Clocks* may ſooner be agreed than *Chronologers*, yet moſt *Chronologers* in this point come ſo near one another, that the difference is ſcarce obſervable. From the beginning of the *World* to the Birth of *Chriſt*, in the accompt of *Beroaldus*, are 3928 years; 3945 in the computation of the *Genevians*; 3960 in the eſteem of *Luther*; and 3963 in the calculation of *Melanchthon*: between whom and *Beroaldus* (being the leaſt and the greateſt) there is but 35 years difference, which in ſo long a courſe of time can be no great matter. Now if unto the Calculation made by *Beroaldus*, which I conceive to be the trueſt, we add 1648 ſince the Birth of *Chriſt*, the total of the time ſince the Worlds Creation, will be 5576 years, neither more nor leſs. A thing which I the rather have inſiſted on, becauſe that from this *Epocha* or *Æra* of the *Worlds Creation*, we ſhall compute the times of ſuch Kings and Princes, as reigned and flouriſhed in the World before the *Incarnation* of our Lord and Saviour.

It being then reſolved as a thing undoubted, that God made the World, and that He made it in ſuch time as Himſelf pleaſed; let us next look upon the *matter* and the *method* which it pleaſed the Divine Majeſty to make uſe of in this wondrous work.

Firſt, for the *matter*, out of which all things were created, I take it, as before was ſaid, to be that which *Moſes* in the firſt words of *Geneſis* calls the *Heaven and the Earth*, becauſe they were ſo *in potentia*; but after telleth us more explicitely, that that which he calleth *Earth*, was *inanis & vacua*, without form and void; and that which he calleth *Heaven* was but an overcaſt of darkneſs, or *tenebræ ſuperfaciem Abyſſi*, as the vulgar reads it. Of which *Chaos* or confuſed *Maſs* we thus read in *Ovid*, who queſtionleſs had herein conſulted with the works of *Moſes*, being before his time communicated to the learned Gentiles:

Ante mare & terras & quod tegit omnia Cœlum,
Unus erat toto naturæ vultus in Orbe,
Quem dixere Chaos, *rudis indigeſtaq; moles,*
Nec quicquam niſi pondus iners, congeſtaq; eodem
Non bene junctarum diſcordia ſemina rerum, &c.

Which I ſhall Engliſh from *G. S.* with ſome little change.

Before the Earth, the Sea, and Heaven were framed,
One face had Nature which they *Chaos* named;
An indigeſted lump, a barren load,
Where jarring ſeeds of things ill-join'd abode.
No Sun as yet with light the World adorns,
Nor new Moon had repair'd her waining horns:
Nor hung the ſelf-poiz'd Earth in thin Air plac'd,
Nor had the Ocean the vaſt Shores embrac'd.

Earth

Earth, Sea, and Air, all mixt; the Earth unſtable,
The Air was dark, the Sea unnavigable.
No certain form to any one aſſign'd;
This, that reſiſts; for in one body joyn'd
The cold and heat, the dry and humid fight,
The ſoft and hard, the heavy with the light.

Out of this *Chaos* or firſt matter, did God raiſe the World according to thoſe ſeveral parts and lineaments which we ſee it in, not as out of any pre-exiſtent matter which was made before, and had not God for the Author or firſt Maker of it; but as the firſt preparatory matter which himſelf had made, including in the ſame *potentially* both the form and matter of the whole Creation, except the Soul of man only, which God breathed into him. And therefore it is truly ſaid, that God made all things out of *nothing*; not out of *nothing* as the matter out of which it was made, for then that *nothing* muſt be *ſomething*; but as the *terminus à quo*, in giving them a real and corporal being which before they had not, and did then firſt begin to have by the meer force and efficacy of his powerful Word. And though it be a *Maxim* in the Schools of Philoſophy, *Ex nihilo nil fit*, that *nothing* can be made of *nothing*; that every thing which hath a being doth require ſome matter which muſt be pre-exiſtent to it, yet this muſt either be condemned for erroneous Doctrine in the Chair of Divinity, or elſe be limited and reſtrained to *Natural Agents* which cannot go beyond the Sphere of their own activity. *Inviſible* and *ſupernatural Agents* are not tied to Rules, no not in the production of the works of Nature; though Nature, conſtituted and eſtabliſhed in a certain courſe, work every thing by line and meaſure as a certain Rule. And ſo it was with God in the Worlds Creation; he did not only make the World but he made it out of *nothing*, by his word alone: *Dixit & facta ſunt*, He ſpake the word and they were made ſaith the royal *Pſalmiſt*, *Pſal.*33. *v.* 9. There went no greater pains nor matter to the whole Creation, but a *Dixit Deus*: And this not only ſaid by *Moſes*, but by *David* too, *Verbo Domini firmati ſunt Cœli, & ſpiritu oris ejus omnis virtus eorum*, *v.*6. *i.e.* By the Word of the Lord were the Heavens made, and all the Hoſts thereof by the breath of his mouth. In which it is to be obſerved, that though the *Creation* of the *World* be generally aſcribed to God the *Father*, yet both the *Son* and the *Holy Ghoſt* had their parts therein; *Verbo Domini*, by the word of the Lord were the Heavens made, ſaith the Prophet *David*. *In the beginning was the Word*; *all things were made by him, and without him was nothing made*, ſaith S. *John* the Apoſtle. The *Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters*, ſaith *Moſes* in the Book of the Law: *Et ſpiritu oris ejus* and by the breath (or Spirit) of his mouth were all the Hoſts of Heaven created, ſaith *David* in the Book of *Pſalms*, Made by his *Word*, and yet not made together in one inſtant of time. In the firſt day he laid the foundation and no more; in the five next, he raiſed the building: and this he did, to teach us men deliberation, in our words and actions; and to ſet forth withal unto us, both his Power and Wiſdom. His *Power* he manifeſted in the *Method* of the whole Creation, in that he did produce what effects he pleaſed, without the help of natural cauſes: as giving Light unto the World before he had created either Sun or Moon; making the Earth fruitful, and to bring forth Plants, without the influence or motion of the Heavenly bodies. And for his *Wiſdom* he expreſſed it in as high a degree, in that he did not create the very Beaſts of the field before he had provided them of fodder & ſufficient herbage; nor *made man after his own Image*, before he had finiſhed all the reſt of his works, fitted his Houſe, and furniſhed it with all things neceſſary both for life and pleaſures.

But all things being fitted and prepared for him, at laſt comes *Man* into the World: and he doth make his entrance with a greater pomp than any of the reſt of the Creatures which were before him. They came in with no other Ceremony, than a *Dixit Deus*; but in the Workmanſhip of *Man*, there was a Conſultation held by the bleſſed *Trinity*. It is there, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us make man; each Perſon contributing ſomewhat (as it were) to his compoſition. For God the *Father* as the chief Workman, or principal Agent, gave him form and feature; in which he did imprint his own heavenly Image. The *Son*, who is the living and eternal *Word*, gave him voice or ſpeech, that ſo he might be able to ſet forth Gods praiſes. The *Holy Ghoſt*, the *Lord and giver of Life*, (as the *Nicene* Fathers truly call him) *breathing into his noſtrils the breath of life*, whereby he became a living Spirit. In this one *Creature*, was amaſſed whatever thing was excellent in the whole Creation; the quantity or ſubſtance of Inanimate Creatures, the life of Plants, the ſenſe of Beaſts, and the underſtanding of Angels. In this one Creature did God ſhew the excellency of his power and wiſdom, in printing on him his *own Image*, and giving him dominion over all the *works of his hands*, which *Image of God* they look for it in a very wrong place, who hope to find it in mans Body, though of a gallant compoſition, and erected ſtructure. The Heathen Oratour was able in this point to enform ſome erroneous *Chriſtians*. *Ad Divinam imaginem proprius accedit humana virtus quam figura*, Man doth approach more near to the Image of God, in the endowments of his Mind, than in the ſtructure of his Body, as divinely *Cicero*. And as for that dominion which God gave him over the works of his hands, the Patent is at large laid down in the firſt of *Geneſis*. For God no ſooner ſaid, *Faciamus Hominem*, Let us make man after our own Image, but preſently he adds this Charter of Supreme Authority, *And let him have dominion over the Fiſh of the Sea, and over the Fowls of the Air, and over the Cattel, and over all the Earth*. A more particular explication of thoſe ſeveral points, wherein that *Image* and this *Power* do conſiſt eſpecially, I ſhall not take upon me or endeavour now; as being not of this place and purpoſe: Which only is to ſhew, that as man in the very act of his Creation participated more of the *Divine Image*, than all other Creatures: ſo was he by Gods ſpecial grant enfeoffed with a larger *power*, than any of the reſt could pretend unto. *Man*, though made lower than the Angels, is in this above them; that all the Creatures of the World were made to be his ſervants, and to attend upon his pleaſure. And yet this great and mighty Prince, this general Lord of all the World, and the Creatures in it (ſetting aſide the dignity of his firſt Creation) doth come into the world in a worſe condition, than any of the Creatures which were made to ſerve him, naked, and impotent, and ſpeechleſs, without uſe of reaſon; neither of power to help himſelf, or ask help of others. Whereof *Lactantius*, in my mind, gives a very good reaſon, who telleth us, that God ſends man into the world, *nudum & inermem*, naked, and weak, and undefenced againſt all violences and dangers; whereas all Creatures elſe, *munita indumentis naturalibus & armata ſunt*, are naturally both armed and cloathed, and able to relieve themſelves. And this he doth unto this end, that man being naturally deſtitute of thoſe outward helps, might make uſe of his inward faculties of judgment, wit and underſtanding, in furniſhing himſelf with that which he wants by nature. For hereunto the firſt original of all Manufactures and mechanick Arts is to be

referred, as is moſt plain and evident from the Book of God, in which we ſee, that preſently upon the procreation of Mankind, *Abel* betook himſelf to keeping ſheep, and *Cain* to husbandry; *Jubal* to handle the Harp, Organ, and ſuch Muſical Inſtruments; and *Tubal Cain* to work upon Braſs and Iron, two metals very neceſſary to moſt kind of Trades. The like may be ſuppoſed in all other Myſteries and Arts of living, though there be no expreſs mention of them in thoſe early days; except it be the Art of Building, or the Carpenter's Trade, which no queſtion is as old as any, as by the building of *Cain*'s City, and *Noah*'s Ark is moſt clearly evidenced. God made the World, and fitted it with all things neceſſary for the life of man, leaving man to provide himſelf of ſuch additions, as rather ſerve for comforts and conveniences in the way of his living, than the neceſſities of his life.

Here then we have the works of God, and the works of men to be conſidered, in purſuit of our preſent Argument. The works of God, in ſhadowing the Earth with *Trees* and *Foreſts*, interlacing it with Criſtal *ſtreams*, and capacious *Rivers*; inriching it with fruitful and *delicious Vales*, adorning it with lofty Mountains, and ſtocking both the Hills and Vales with all ſorts of *Cattel*. But nothing more ſets forth the Power and Wiſdom of Almighty God, as it relates to theſe particulars, than that moſt admirable intermixture of Want with Plenty, whereby he hath united all the parts of the World in a continual Traffick and Commerce with one another: ſome Countrys being deſtitute of thoſe Commodities, with which others abound; and being plentiful in thoſe, which the others want. Inſomuch, that as in the body of man, that *Microcoſm*, or little World, the Head cannot ſay, that it hath no need of the Foot, nor the Foot of the Hand, nor other members of the reſt: ſo neither in the Body of the World, can *Europe* ſay to *Aſia*, or *Spain* to *England*, I have no need of your Commodities; or am not wanting in thoſe things, whereof thou boaſteſt an abundance. Something there is in every Country which may be ſpared to ſupply the defect of others; and are accordingly vented in the way of Merchandiſe: Of which, thus *Du-Bartas* in his Colonies,

Hence come our Sugars from Canary *Iſles*;
From Candie, *Currans*, *Muſcadels*, *and Oyls*.
From the Moluccoes, *Spices*; *Balſamum*
From Egypt; *Odours from* Arabia *come*.
From India *Gums*, *rich Drugs*, *and Ivory*;
From Syria, *Mummie*; *black*, *red Ebony*
From burning Chus; *from* Peru, *Pearls and Gold*;
From Ruſſia *Furrs to keep the rich from cold*.
From Florence, *Silks*; *from* Spain, *Fruit*, *Saffron*, *Sack*;
From Denmark, *Amber*, *Cordage*, *Firrs*, *and Flax*,
From France *and* Flanders, *Linen*, *Wood*, *and Wine*;
From Holland, *Hops*; *Horſe from the banks of* Rhine.
From England, *Wool*. *All lands*, *as God diſtributes*,
To the Worlds treaſure pay their ſundry tributes.

This, as *Du-Bartas* ſpeaks of the preſent times, ſo queſtionleſs the ſame, or the like Commerce held good in the firſt Ages of the Worlds Creation; God furniſhing all Countrys from the firſt beginning with ſome *Staple-Commodities*, for the benefit of themſelves and others; for the maintaining of that intercouſe between Nation and Nation, which makes them link the cloſer in the bonds of Amity. And to this end alſo ſerve thoſe ſeveral *Manufactures* wherewith ſome Countrys do abound in reſpect of others; but looked on, in the preſent Book, as the works of men. And of this kind alſo are the ſeveral *Polities* and forms of Government. For, though all *Magiſtracy* in it ſelf be from God originally, and that the *Monarchical*-form comes neareſt to the Government uſed by God himſelf: yet being that ſome *Polities* are meerly but humane inventions, all *Government* or Magiſtracy is called an *Ordinance of man* in holy Scripture, 1 *Pet.* 2. *v.* 13. But thoſe particular works of men, which are the moſt conſiderable part of our preſent ſubject, are *Caſtles*, *Towns*, and *Cities* of moſt eminent note, which thrive and proſper in the World, according as they do partake of thoſe Conveniences, which conduce moſt to their Magnificence & Greatneſs. Of theſe *Boterus* gives us many (relation being had to the time he lived in) but of thoſe many we ſhall touch upon the principal only, paſſing by thoſe of leſſer note, as pleaſantneſs of Sight, fruitfulneſs of Soil, ſalubrity of Air, and ſuch like obvious Obſervations. Firſt then, there is required to the Magnificence and Splendour of Cities, a Navigable River, or ſome ſuch eaſie paſſage by Sea, which will bring thither a continual concourſe and trade of Merchants; as at *Venice*, *London*, *Amſterdam*. Secondly, ſome Staple-Manufactures or Commodities, which will draw the like reſort of Merchants, though the conveniency of Sea or Rivers invite them not; as in *Nuremberg* in *Germany*, a dry Town, but mightily Traded. Thirdly, the Palace of the Prince; For, *ubi Imperator*, *ibi Roma*, where the Court is, there will be a continual confluence of Nobles, Gentry, Merchants, and all ſorts of Trades: And by this means, *Madrid*, not long ſince a poor beggarly Village, is grown the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. Fourthly, the Reſidence of the Nobility, beautifieth a City with ſtately and magnificent Buildings; which makes the Cities of *Italy* ſo much excell ours in *England*; their Nobles dwelling in the Cities, and ours for the moſt part in their Country-houſes. Fifthly, the *Seats*, or *Tribunals* of juſtice, on which both *Advocates* and *Clients* are to give attendance; as in the *Parliamentary* Cities in *France*, and *Spires* in *Germany*. Sixthly, Univerſities and Schools of Learning, to which the Youth from all parts are to make reſort; which hath been long the chief cauſe of the flouriſhing of *Oxford*, *Cambridge*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and other Cities of good note beyond the Seas. Seventhly, Immunity from Tolls & Taxes; moſt men being moſt deſirous to inhabit there, where their In-come will be greateſt, their Priviledges largeſt, and their Disburſements leaſt: So *Naples*, *Florence*, *Venice*, having been deſolated by Plagues, were again ſuddenly re-peopled, by granting large Immunities to all comers-in. And laſt of all, the opinion of Sanctity, either for the *Reliques* of Saints, or ſome noted Shrines, or the reſidence of ſome famous man, or the Seat of Religion, is not the leaſt *Adamant* which draws people to it, to the great enriching of ſome Cities. And of this, *Rome* it ſelf can give us two moſt pregnant evidences: The one in reference to the *Popes*, and theſe latter times; that famous Town not otherwiſe ſubſiſting now, than by the conſtant reſidence of the *Popes* and *Cardinals*; whoſe abſence while the Papal Sea was kept at *Avignon*, had made it over-grown with Briars and Brambles, and buried it almoſt in its own ſad ruines. The other, in the perſon of *Titus Livius* the Hiſtorian; to ſee which man there came ſo many from the Coaſts of *France* and *Spain*, that St. *Hierom* elegantly ſaith, *Quos ad ſui contemplationem* Roma *non traxerat*, *unius hujus hominis fama perduxit*; *qui jam urbem tantam ingreſſi*, *aliud extra* Urbem *quærerent*.

Such are the cauſes of the Greatneſs and Magnificence of Cities, when they are once built; none of all which might poſſibly be looked at by the firſt builders of Cities,

I mean by *Cain* before the Flood, and by *Nimrod* after; who aimed more at the love of Empire, and self preservation, than at the general good of Mankind, or the particular wealth of those amongst whom they lived. Of *Cain* it is affirmed expressly in the Book of God, That being possessed with this fear, that *every one that found him would lay hands upon him and slay him*, in revenge of the blood of *Abel*; *He builded a City and called it by the name of his Son* Enoch. *Gen.*4.17. *Builded a City?* For what reason? To fortifie and secure himself against all revenge, as the Text doth intimate; or thereby to oppress his Neighbours, as *Josephus* witnesseth. Neither was this the only City of the first Ages, though none but this be mentioned in the Book of God. That which the Scripture saith of *Jubal*, that he was the *Father of such as dwell in Tents*, and of such as have Cattel; that is to say, he was the first of those which lived upon Pasturage, and followed their Cattel up and down with their moveable Tents, not having any certain home or habitations, as the wild *Arabes* now, and the ancient *Nomades*; is proof sufficient, that the residue of all Mankind lived a more civil kind of life in their Towns and Villages. And if *Pomponius Mela* be of any credit (as in these things, I think he is) he will inform us, that the City of *Joppa* was built before the Flood; that the King thereof was named *Cepha*; and that his name, and the name of his brother *Phineas*, together with the Grounds and Principles of their Religion, were found graven upon certain Altars of stone. But whether this be so, or not, certain it is, that as well *Canaan* in the West, whereon *Joppa* stood, as the *Land of Nod* on the East side of *Paradise*, where *Cain* built his City, were peopled long before the Flood; and so were most of the other parts of the *World* besides: And if well peopled in all, or most parts thereof, no doubt but they had Villages and Towns, yea and Cities too, as well for necessary habitation, as for strength and safety. Now that the World was throughly peopled before the Flood, seems clear to me by that great and universal Deluge, which God was pleased to bring upon the *Face of all the Earth:* For what need all the Earth be buried in that Sea of waters, if all the Earth had not been peopled, and all the people of it guilty of oppression, in the sight of God? Besides, it is expressly said in the holy Scripture, that in the time of *Abraham*, who lived about 350 years after the Flood in the largest account, and not 300 in the shortest; there were Kings of *Egypt*, and of the *Philistims*, Kings of the *Canaanites*, of *Shinaar*, *Ellasar*, *Ellan*, and of the *Nations* who questionless had their Lands well peopled: that both *Chaldea*, and *Mesopotamia*, in the time of *Abraham* had their several Cities; as *Ur* in the one, and *Haran*, or *Charan*, in the other; and that *Damascus* the chief City of *Syria* was then founded also: Not to say any thing of the building of *Babel*, *Erech*, *Accad*, and *Chalneh* in the Land of *Shinaar* (or *Babylonia*) nor of the building of *Ninive*, *Resen*, *Reboboth*, and *Chalah* in the Land of *Assyria*, mention whereof is made in the 10 of *Genesis*. And it is found in good and credible Authors, that *Ninus* the third *Assyrian* Monarch (who lived before the birth of *Abraham*) having subdu'd the Kings of *Media* and *Armenia*, invaded *Bactria* with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 200000 Horse, and 10600 armed Chariots; and was encountred by *Zoroaster* the King thereof with an Army of four hundred thousand. The credibility whereof, if it were disputed, might be affirmed by the like numerous Army brought by *Xerxes* against the *Greeks*, though in times long after following. And if we will give credit unto *Diodorus Siculus*, who voucheth *Ctesias* for his Author, *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, invaded *India* with an Army of three Millions of men and upwards; and yet was over-matched, and slain by an *Indian* King. If then within the space of four hundred years, we find the Eastern parts to be so well planted, so many Kings possessed of their regal Thrones, and many of them able to impress such infinite Armies; why may we not conclude, that in the course of 1656 years (for so long it was from the Creation to the Flood) the whole World was inhabited and planted in all parts thereof; especially considering the long lives of men, amounting to eight hundred, or nine hundred years; and consequently the long time they had to apply themselves to the act of Generation. And though I have no certain ground for it in the Book of God, yet I am apt enough to be of *Mercator*'s opinion; who placing the 16 Dynasty of the Kings of *Egypt* (where *Eusebius* begins to calculate the *Egyptian* times) at the first planting of that Country by the Sons of *Noah*; reckoneth the former fifteen to have been before the Flood, and to reach very near the times of the first *Creation*. That, *Misraim* the Son of *Ham* was possessed of *Egypt* within two hundred years after the Flood, is a truth undoubted. Nor see I any cause to doubt, but that in the like space of time from the first Creation, it might be planted also by the Sons of *Adam*: considering, as we ought to do, that in the Infancy of the World, when the bodies of men were most perfect, and of greatest vigour, they observed no degree of Kindred or Consanguinity, nor tied themselves so strictly to one woman, as they should have done. And for the names of all the Kings of those several Dynasties, either they might be left engraven upon Pillars, such as that of *Seth*; or upon Altars of stone, as in those of *Joppa*; or *Misraim* might have them by Tradition from the hands of *Noah*; and so deliver them by tale unto his posterity: the *Egyptians* being generally very good *Heralds*, and standing very much on their own Antiquity. And if this may be said of *Egypt* (as for my part I see no reason but it may) then may the like be said of all Countrys else, that they had their several Kings and Rulers, and set-Forms of Government: The Fathers of Families in those times, having the command and sovereignty over all that descended of them. Nor make I any question of it, but they had several Languages and forms of Speech, at least to the *Dialect* and pronunciation; although the *Radicals* of the Language might remain the same. But being there are no *Remainders* of this first *Plantation*, (unless we will give credit to some *Jewish* Fablers, who tell us of some Giants who saved themselves upon Mount *Sion*; or that of *Nicholus Damascenus*, who speaks of some that saved themselves on an high Hill called *Baris*, in some part of *Armenia*); I shall the less insist upon it. Nor had I stood so long upon these first Ages; which *Moses* passeth over with so short a Narrative; but that is affirmed by *Pererius*, a right learned *Jesuite*, that neither *Egypt* nor *Assyria*, nor the rest of the World was planted and inhabited before the Flood; and that upon no stronger reason, for ought I can find, but that it is affirmed in the last words of the tenth of *Genesis*, That, *by these* (that is to say, by the posterity of the Sons of *Noah*) *were the Nations divided in the Earth after the Flood.* Out of which words he thus concludeth, *Quo significatur, talem divisionem non fuisse ante Diluvium*; By which it doth appear (saith he) that in the times before the Flood was no such division.

'Tis true, that this division of the World by the Sons of *Noah*, hath the best evidence in Scripture, because there is expres Text for it, which is not for the first Plantations. But looking on the great encrease of mankind before the Flood, that Saying of *Berosus* will prove *tantamont* to a Text of Scripture, *Ad comparandas*

novas

novas ſedes neceſſitatem compuliſſe, that they were driven by neceſſity to ſeek new dwellings, the neceſſity of providing victuals for themſelves and their Families, being as ſtrong a motive unto ſuch diſperſions, as the *Confuſion of Tongues* was afterwards. The difference is, that that which ſuch *neceſſity* would have done in long tract of time, the *confuſion of Tongues* did in an inſtant: not only making thoſe proud *Builders* to give over the finiſhing of the Tower which they had begun; but to unite themſelves with ſuch, whoſe language came moſt near to that which themſelves were Maſters of. It was high time, no queſtion, to deſiſt from this proud Attempt, when the Labourer underſtood not what the Workman called for, but brought him things quite contrary to his expectation. But becauſe ſome Plantations had no reference to the *Confuſion of Tongues*, but were made before it, or on the ſending out of ſuch Colonies as were neareſt to the place where the *Ark* did reſt, I think it not amiſs to reſolve that queſtion touching the reſting of the *Ark*, on which the Plantations of the Eaſt have ſo great dependence. All that the Scripture telleth us of it, is, that the *Ark* reſted on the *Mountains of Ararat*: but where thoſe Mountains are, that it telleth us not. I know *Joſephus* and ſome other of more eminent note, (but ſuch as ground themſelves upon his authority) affirm, thoſe Mountains of *Ararat* to be the hills of *Armenia*. Which they do chiefly on theſe Reaſons: Firſt, becauſe *Armenia* is called *Ararat* in the Book of God, as it is confeſſedly; and ſecondly, becauſe of an old Tradition, countenanced by *Beroſus*, and ſome others of the ancient Writers cited by *Joſephus*, affirming, that on the *Gordiæan* Mountains in *Armenia major*, ſome of the reliques of the *Ark* were remaining in their times and uſed as a preſervative againſt Inchantments. Which notwithſtanding, I incline rather to the opinion of *Goropius Becanus*, (who amongſt many ſtrange whimſeys broached ſome notable truths) by whom the *Ark* is ſaid to reſt on the top of Mount *Caucaſus* in the Confines of *Tartary*, *Perſia*, and *India*. His Arguments are many, but I look on two as of greateſt conſequence: the firſt whereof is grounded upon evident reaſon; the ſecond on plain Text of Scripture. That which is grounded upon reaſon, is, the exceeding populoſity of thoſe Eaſtern Countries, into which none of thoſe by whom the World was planted after the *Confuſion* of Languages, are yet reported to have travelled with their ſeveral Colonies, by any who have took moſt pains in this diſcovery. Thoſe infinite numbers which *Staurobates*, one (and but one of many) of the Kings of the *Indians* brought into the field againſt *Semiramis*; and the vaſt army of *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, conducted out of that one Province againſt *Ninus*; are proof enough, that thoſe Countries were of an elder Plantation, than to be a ſecond or third *Caſtling* of ſome other *Swarm* ſetled in *Perſia*, or *Aſſyria* after the *Confuſion*. For *Ninus*, who was the Husband of *Semiramis*, was but the Grandchild of *Nimrod*; and I muſt needs look upon it, as a thing impoſſible, that thoſe vaſt Armies which *Semiramis* was able to raiſe out of all her Dominions, ſhould be encountred by one King with an equal force, and that of his own Subjects only; if that one King, and thoſe his Subjects had been ſome late Colony of thoſe new Plantations, and not poſſeſſed of a Country peopled and inhabited before that *Confuſion*. Nor was it but upon ſome good ground, that the *Scythians* (who inhabited on the North of Mount *Caucaſus*) were generally eſteemed the moſt ancient Nation in the World; and carried it away from the *Egyptians*, *Phrygians*, and all other Competitours with this publick Verdict, *Scytharum gens ſemper antiquiſſima*: which ground could be no other, but the neighbourhood of the *Ark* unto them (though perhaps that ground long ſince forgotten, was not ſtood upon) and the dwelling of *Noah* and his children near the place of the *Ark*, till numbers, and neceſſity compelled them to enlarge their Border. And in the enlarging of their Borders, I ſhall make no queſtion, but that ſuch parts as lay neareſt, were peopled and poſſeſſed before thoſe which lay furtheſt off; according to the method of Plantations in all Ages ſince. This, though it be to me a convincing Argument, yet it falls ſhort of that which comes from the Text it ſelf, both in authority and weight; where it is ſaid of the heads of thoſe ſeveral Families which afterwards joyned together in the building of *Babel*, that, *As they went from the* Eaſt, *they found a Plain in the Land of* Shinaar, *and there they abode*, *Gen.* 11. *v.* 2. If then they came from the *Eaſt* to the Land of *Shinaar*, as the Text ſaith plainly that they did; it might well be, that they came from thoſe parts of *Aſia*, on the South of *Caucaſus*, which lye Eaſt of *Shinaar*, though ſomewhat bending to the North; impoſſible they ſhould come from the *Gordiæan* Mountains in the greater *Armenia* (ſuppoſed to be the Hills which the *Ark* did reſt on) which lye not only full North of *Shinaar*, but many degrees unto the Weſt. For *Babylonia*, or *Shinaar*, is ſituate in the *Latitude* of 35, and the *Longitude* of 79, and 80. The *Latitude* of the *Gordiæan* Mountains, in 41, and their *Longitude* in 75. By which accompt thoſe Mountains are 6 Degrees more Northwards, and 5 Degrees more Weſtwards than the Land of *Shinaar*: by no means to be reckoned on the Eaſt of that Valley, except we make *Moſes* (whoſe hand God guided in his Books) to ſpeak God knows what, or, in plain terms, to ſpeak plain non-ſenſe. And though the Scripture be ſo clear, that it needs no commentary, yet the perplexities I find amongſt thoſe of the other opinion, in ſifting out of the authority of ſo plain a Text, do add in my conceit ſome moment and weight unto it. For ſome will have the Mountains of *Ararat* to be indeed on the North of the Land of *Shinaar*, but with ſome bending towards the Eaſt; which were it true, as nothing is more truly falſe, *Moſes* had never told us that they came from the *Eaſt*; but from ſome Countries of the *North*, which lay towards the *Eaſt*. Others will have a double progreſs of the heads of thoſe ſeveral Families: Firſt, from the Mountains of *Ararat*, or the Plains of *Armenia*, to the Fields of *Aſſyria*, and *Suſiana*; And ſecondly, from thence to the Land of *Shinaar*. But of this firſt journey, there is *ne gry quidem*, not ſo much as any one ſyllable in all the Scripture; beſides the needleſneſs of making them go ſo far about, and to croſs over the great Rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*; whereas they had a ſhorter, and an eaſier paſſage. *Capellus*, ſingular by himſelf quarelleth with the Tranſlation (received without diſpute by all other *Criticks*) and will not have the *Hebrew Kedem*, to be rendred *Eaſt*, but to ſignifie that Region, whatſoever it was, which was inhabited by *Kedem* the ſon of *Iſmael*, of whom we find mention, *Gen.* 25. 15. But then, beſides his quarrel with all other Tranſlations, he ſuppoſeth a former progreſs from the Mountains of *Ararat* to that Land of *Kedem*; and conſequently falleth into a part of the Errour before refelled. *Bochartus* finding (if not fancying) that the *Aſſyrians* called all thoſe parts of their Empire beyond *Tigris*, the Eaſtern, and thoſe on this ſide of it, the Weſtern; would thence conclude, that theſe Heads may be ſaid by *Moſes* to have come from the *Eaſt*, becauſe they came from one of the *Eaſtern* Provinces of the *Aſſyrian* Empire.

Every

Every way faulty in this point: For, beſides that the greateſt part of *Armenia* lieth on the North of *Tygris*, and the leaſt part of it on the Weſt, and therefore not within the compaſs of the Eaſtern Provinces; and that *Bochartus* hath not proved (nor indeed can prove) that this diviſion was in uſe in the time of *Moſes*; we may as rationally conclude, and with leſs abſurdity, that the firſt Inhabitants of *Britain*, might have been ſaid by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, or any Writer of that time, to come out of the *Weſt* (though he well knew they came from *Caul*, which is plainly *Eaſt* of it) becauſe *Gaul* in his time was a Province of the *Weſt* parts of the Empire.

Having thus fortified our opinion both with Scripture and Reaſon, the Arguments produced againſt us will be eaſily anſwered. For though *Armenia* be granted to be the Country of *Ararat*; yet the Mountains of *Ararat* may extend beyond the Country. That mighty Ridge of Mountains which beginning in *Aſia* the *leſs*, run as far as *India* (by the Ancients commonly called Mount *Taurus*) might very well be called by *Moſes* the Mountains of *Ararat*, becauſe that was the firſt Country of the greater *Aſia* by which they paſſed; and where they were of greater note than they had been formerly. Juſt as the *Adriatick* Sea took that name from *Adria*, then the chief Port of it, though it waſhed many Shores beſides: Or as ſome Hills with us are called *Malgern* Hills, becauſe they are higheſt near that Village, though they extend themſelves into other Lordſhips. And as for the Authority of Tradition, and the Teſtimony of humane Writers, which (as before was ſaid) are brought in for an help, touching ſome Reliques of the *Ark* to be ſeen on the *Gordiæan* Mountains; I look upon it as an Argument of no weight at all. For firſt *Beroſus* (followed herein by all the reſt) reports it only on the ground of uncertain hear-ſay; which is a weak ſtaff for ſo heavy a cauſe to rely upon. Secondly, to balance the Authority of *Beroſus* (if of any credit in this caſe) we have the teſtimony and authority of *Portius Cato*, as ancient almoſt as he, affirming poſitively, *In Scythia Saga renatum eſſe mortale genus*, that Mankind was repaired in that part of *Scythia*, which after was poſſeſſed by the *Sacans*: and they, we know, dwelt in thoſe parts of *Scythia* which lay next to *Bactria*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, and not far from the branches of Mount *Caucaſus*. And Thirdly, unto one *Tradition* to oppoſe another; thoſe of Mount *Caucaſus* do aver, that a large Vineyard in *Margiana*, near the foot of that Mountain, was of *Noah*'s Plantation: Of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Tartary*.

It is now time I ſhould go forwards with the Builders of *Babel*, and their wide diſperſions; for whom it was high time, to conſort themſelves with ſuch as they could underſtand; the neceſſity of diſcourſe and conference on that fatal Accident, making them lay aſide their old acquaintances, and joyn themſelves to others of their own new Language. I know that many Learned men according to the number of names laid down in the tenth of *Gen.* being 70, have made ſo many Languages to have been ſpoken upon that *Confuſion*: And that of thoſe, 26 being the Poſterity of *Sem*, diſperſed themſelves about *Aſia* the greater, 30 others of the loins of *Cham*, peopled *Africk*, *Arabia*, and *Syria*; and that the 14 which remain, being the iſſue of *Japhet*, withdrew themſelves towards *Europe*, and the leſſer *Aſia*. But this, as to the number of Languages, I take to be but a vain conceit; though many, more improbable, have paſſed for currant. It being plain, that *Canaan* and his Sons, eleven in all, had but one Language amongſt them, which was the *Hebrew*, or the Language of the Land of *Canaan*. And as for *Joctan* and his Sons, being 13 in number, conſidering that he was the younger brother of *Phaleg*, in whoſe time this *Confuſion* hapned; it is moſt probable, and avowed for a certain truth, that either none of them were born, or, if they were, yet they were all of them too young to have an hand in the deſign for the building of the Tower of *Babel*; and conſequently could not be within the curſe of confounded Languages. So, here is near a third part of the ſeventy to be taken off; as poſſibly might all the Sons of *Miſraim* be, if it were worth the while to inſiſt upon it. This then I take but for a fancy. And as for that, of the diſperſion into the ſaid three parts of the (then) known World, I take it to be true enough in long tract of time; but falſe enough, if underſtood of any preſent ſeparation of the Sons of *Noah* into parts ſo far remote and diſtant from one another. For what needed any ſuch remote Plantations be, as long as they had room enough to live one near another, and ſo enjoy that civil entercourſe, and mutual ſociety which the nature of Mankind doth moſt delight in? And therefore I conceive it to be far more probable, that they who met together for the building of *Babel*, joining themſelves to men of the ſame Language with them, did firſt ſet down upon the places near the Valley of *Shinaar*: and from thence propagated and diſperſed themſelves into further Countries, as either the neceſſity of providing of Victuals; or ſeeking better and more fruitful habitations for themſelves and theirs; or the deſire of being out of the reach of ſome potent Neighbours, whoſe yoak they found too heavy for their necks to bear, did enforce them to it. And being ſo ſetled to their minds, the addition of a few more years brought the like neceſſity of ſending *Colonies* further off, as they grew more or leſs populous in their generations: It being in Plantations of Men, as in that of Bees, amongſt whom one *Swarm* ſends out another, that begets a *Caſtling*, till the whole ground or Garden grow too ſmall to hold them. For thus (to ſeek no further for an inſtance of it) the *Gauls* firſt planted *Britain*, the *Britains Ireland*, the *Iriſh Scotland*, and the *Iſles*. Thus the *Helvetians* finding their old dwellings both too barren to ſuſtain, and too narrow to contain their multitudes, *anguſtos ſe fines habere arbitrantes*, as in *Cæſar*'s *Commentaries*, intended to plant themſelves in *Gaul*. And thus the *Syrians* and *Pœnicians* flying the dreadful ſword of *Joſhuah* the Son of *Nun*, ſought them out dwellings further off from the preſent danger, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. On the like motives and inducements did the firſt people after the Flood, diſtribute and diſperſe themſelves into ſeveral parts, as their poſterities have done ſince, and will do to the end of the World, in all probability: Giving their own names, or ſome names of their own impoſing, upon the Countries planted or diſcovered by them. And though the length, and conſuming nature of time, hath either changed or worn out the names impoſed by the firſt *Adventurers*, I mean the firſt *Planters* after the Flood: yet all the Footſteps of Antiquity are not ſo defaced, but that ſome Nations and Cities have preſerved the memory of their firſt Founders and true Parents. In the diſcovery whereof, as *Joſephus* in his Book of *Jewiſh Antiquities* did firſt lead the way, and gave good light to thoſe who have travelled in it; ſo a more notable proficiency hath been made therein by *Junius* in his Notes on the tenth of *Geneſis*, Sir *Walter Rawleigh* in his excellent Hiſtory, and lately by *Bochartus* a *French* Writer in his Book called *Geographia Sacra*. Out of whoſe learned labours, and ſome Animadverſions of mine own, I ſhall here ſay ſomewhat concerning the Plantation of the World by the Sons of *Noah*; leaving the more exact and punctual deſcription

deſcription of it unto the Hiſtory of thoſe ſeveral Lands and Countries which were planted by them.

Firſt therefore to begin with the poſterity of *Sem*, as thoſe who fixed themſelves in *Aſia*, without wandring further, we find *Sem* to have had five Sons, that is to ſay, *Elam*, *Aſſur*, *Arphaxad*, *Lud*, and *Aram*; of whom there is no iſſue on Record in holy Scripture, but only of *Arphaxad* and *Aram*; and of theſe two there are four Sons given to *Aram*, *viz*, *Uz*, *Hull*, *Gether*, and *Meſech*, and but one to *Arphaxad*, which was *Selah*. To *Selah* was born *Heber*; to *Heber*, *Phaleg*, the Anceſtor of *Abraham*, and *Jocktan*, the father of thoſe thirteen ſons, whoſe names we ſhall rehearſe hereafter, if occaſion be. From *Elam* who is firſt named, did deſcend the *Elamites*, a people bordering on the *Medes*, and therefore oft-times join'd together in the Sciptures, as, *Go up, O* Elam, *Beſiege O* Media, *Eſ.* 21,2. *And all the Kings of* Elam, *all the Kings of the* Medes, *Jer.* 25. 25. And in the ſecond of the *Acts*, *Parthians*, and *Medes*, and *Elamites*, march in rank and file, as being Nations bordering upon one another. The principal City of this people was called *Elymais*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond of *Macab. cap.* 6. *v.* 2 ſufficiently famous for the rich and magnificent Temple which was there conſecrated to *Diana*. A City ſeated on the Banks of the River *Euleus*, and neighbouring cloſe to *Suſiana*, which therefore is ſometimes included in the name of *Elam*, as *Dan.* 8. 2. *I was* (ſaith he) *in the Palace of* Suſa, *in the Province of* Elam: where *Elam* is not taken for the Province of the *Elamites* only, but as it gave denomination unto all thoſe Nations whom they after maſtered. The ſecond Son of *Sem* is *Aſſur*, of whom there is no queſtion made amongſt the Learned, but that he was the Father of the *Aſſyrians*, called *Aſſyres* in ſome old *Greek* Writers: Not of the whole people of that great and unweildy Empire, who ſometimes generally paſs by the name of *Aſſyrians*; but of the people of *Aſſyria* ſtrictly and properly ſo called, as it denotes the Country about *Ninive* (the Regal City of that Empire) which after was called *Adiabene*. *Juxta hunc circuitum Adiabene*, Aſſyria *priſcis temporibus vocata*, as in *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Lib*, 33. *Arphaxad* comes next after *Aſſur*, and him *Joſephus* makes to be the Father of the *Chaldæans*, called anciently *Arphaxadæi*, if he tell us true. But others tell us, and that more probably perhaps, that he planted in that part the *Aſſyria* which was firſt called *Arphaxitis*, afterwards *Arrapachitis*; by which name it occurreth in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. *Lud* the fourth ſon is generally ſaid to be the Father of the *Lydians*, a people of *Aſia* the leſs; the names of *Lud*, and *Lydi* (or Λύδοι as the *Græcians* call them) being much alike. And it is poſſible enough that ſome of the poſterity of this *Lud* might afterwards ſettle in thoſe parts, and call the Country by the name of *Lud*, their common Anceſtor; as the poſterity of *Abraham* took unto themſelves the name of *Hebrews* from *Heber*, one of the Progenitors of their Father *Abraham*. But that *Lud* ſhould in perſon go ſo far from the reſt of the Sons of *Sem*, I cannot eaſily imagine. For, *Aram* the fifth and laſt (as they ſtand in order of the Text) ſets himſelf down cloſe by his Brethren in the Land of *Syria*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Aram*, and from thence the name of *Aramites* was given to the Inhabitants of it. Of which, and of the ſeveral Provinces which were hence denominated, we ſhall hereafter ſpeak more fully, when we come to *Syria*. Only take now this teſtimony & acknowledgment from the pen of *Strabo*. *Quos nos* Syros *vocamus*, *ipſi Syri* Aramenios *&* Arameos *vocant*. Thoſe (ſaith he) which we now call *Syrians*, do call themſelves *Arameans*. or *Aramenians*. In, and about the ſame parts, did the four ſons of *Aram* ſet themſelves and their Families; *Uz* in that part of *Syria* which is called *Syria Damaſcena*, or *Aram Dammeſek*: the building of the great City of *Damaſcus* being generally aſcribed unto him: and the Land of *Uz*, bordering South upon *Damaſcus*, taking denomination from him. The like did *Hull*, or *Chull*, the next ſon of *Aram*, whom both *Joſephus* and St. *Hierom* ſettle in *Armenia*, or *Aramenia*, as in *Strabo*: and that not improbably, conſidering that there is a Region in *Armenia*, which *Stephanus* calls *Cholobetene*; and divers Cities in that tract, which ſtill preſerve the Radicals of *Hull*, or *Chull*, as *Cholus*, *Cholnata*, *Cholimna*, *Colſa*, and *Colana*, whereof mention is made in the Tables of *Ptolomy*. For, *Gether*, the third ſon of *Aram*; it is not yet agreed on where to find his dwelling. *Joſephus*, contrary to all reaſon, placeth him in *Bactria*; and *Mercer*, with as little, in *Caria*, a Province of the leſſer *Aſia*, and *Acarnania* of *Greece*. *Junius* ſets him down in the Province of *Caſſiotis*, and *Seleucis*, near his Father *Aram*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Gindarus*, and the Nations called by *Pliny*, *Gindareni*: *Bochartus* on the banks of the River *Centrites*, which divides *Armenia* from the *Carduchi*, as it is in *Xenophon*. Which River, if it were called originally *Getri*, as he conjectureth it might be, the controverſie were at an end. But being that we find in *Ptolomy*, a City of *Albania*, (which bordereth on *Armenia*) called *Getara*, and a River of the ſame Country called *Getras*; I ſee no cauſe why we ſhould ſeek further for the ſeat of *Gether*; though the *Greek* Copies (more ſubject to corruption in the times of ignorance, than the *Latin* were) inſtead of *Getara* read *Gagara*. But if this be too far to ſet him, we ſhall find *Mas* or *Meſch*, the laſt Son, planted nearer hand, even in the Northern parts of *Syria*, towards *Meſopotamia*, near the Hill called *Maſius*: at the foot whereof there is a people, which *Stephanus* called *Maſieni*; and thereabouts a River, which in *Xenophon* is named *Maſca*. Both which do evidently declare from what root they come.

Come we next to the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Sem*, derived from *Arphaxad*; whom we left ſetled in the Region of *Arrapachitis*, in, or near *Aſſyria*. Not far from which, in *Suſiana*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire, there is a City of chief note called *Sela*; mention of which is made both in *Ptolomy*'s Tables; and the 23 Book of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. Add unto this the authority of *Euſtathius Antiochenus*, who briefly thus, Σδλα ἀφ' ἧ Σουσιανοὶ, The People of *Suſiana* came from *Sala*. But this as I conceive, muſt be underſtood only of that part of this people, which lived in and about the City of *Sala*, and not of the whole Nation of the *Suſians*, or *Suſiani*, which borrowed their denomination from another root. To *Sela* was born *Heber*, from whom the people of the *Hebræi*, or *Hebrews*, do derive their name. And to him *Phaleg* his firſt born, who in all probability gave name to the Town called *Phalga*, ſituate on the River *Euphrates*, not far from *Seleucia*: Mention whereof is made by *Stephanus* in his Book *de Urbibus*, and by *Ptolomy* in his *Geography*; where it is placed right on the banks of *Euphrates*, where the River *Chaboras* mingles waters with it; but there corruptly called *Pharga*, inſtead of *Phalga*.

But the great increaſe of *Sem*'s poſterity came by *Jokctan*, the ſecond Son of *Eber*, the Father of no fewer than thirteen Sons, whoſe names are on record in the tenth of *Geneſis*, where it is ſaid, that *their dwelling was from* Meſha, *as thou goeſt to* Sephar, *a Mount in the Eaſt*. And here I muſt crave leave to differ from *Bochartus*, who hath thronged *Joktan* and his Sons into a little corner of *Arabia Fœlix*, where I can find no room for them, and leſs reaſon to place them. For being that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, and the Chiefs of his poſterity, eight in number, were planted in *Arabia*, as himſelf confeſſeth,

it

it must needs be, that they had spread themselves over all the Country, before any of the sons of *Joktan* were of age sufficient to be the Fathers of Families, and lead Colonies thither. *Joktan* is credibly supposed not to have been born when such of *Noahs* posterity as are mentioned *Gen.* 10. dispersed themselves into new Plantations; but it is evident from the Text, that none of his children were then born, if their Father were. And this *Bochartus* doth acknowledge in two several places. First, granting that neither *Phaleg*, nor *Joktan* were present at the building of *Babel*, *multo minus* Joktanis *filii post aliquot annos geniti*; much less the sons of *Joktan* begot many years after; *Lib.* 1. *cap.* 16. And secondly, affirming that *Joktan* and his children came not within the curse of *Confounded Languages*, *quia nondum erant geniti*, because then unborn, *Cap.* 15. Hereupon I conclude it to be very improbable that *Joktan* & his children should find room in the best parts of *Arabia Felix*, which *Chus* and his posterity had inhabited so long before. And as it is improbable that the sons of *Chus* would plant themselves in the worst part of the Country for so many Ages, and leave the best and richest of it for some new adventurers: So it is impossible that the sons of *Joktan* should either be removed so far from the rest of the house of *Arphaxad*, who were all planted on the East of the River *Tygris*, as was before shewed: or that they should be able, had they been so minded, to break through the whole Countries of the *Assyrians*, *Chusites*, and other Nations, to come unto the utmost corners of *Arabia Felix*. He that believes they did, or could, must have a stronger Faith than mine; but it shall never conduce any thing to his *justification*. Nor am I moved at all at that which seems to me to be his weightiest Argument, namely, that the *Arabians*, particularly *Joseph Ben Abdallatif*, and *Mahomet Ben Jacob*, two of their chief Writers affirm, that *Joktan* was the Founder of their Tongue and Nation; no more than I am moved to think that the *Saracens* are derived from *Sara* the Wife, and not from *Hagar* the Concubine and servant of *Abraham*; because that people so report it for their greater glory.

And for the several Nations of *Arabia Felix*, whose original he ascribes to the sons of *Joktan*, I see so many transpositions of Syllables, alterations even of *Radical* Letters, such and so many wrested *Originations*, as by the like liberty of making *quidlibet ex quolibet*, it were no difficult matter to find place for them in any Country whatsoever. For how extorted and unnatural are the derivations of the *Allnmæote* from *Almodad*, of the *Manitæ* from *Abimail*, of the *Jobarite* from *Jobab*? How impossible is it that *Jarech* should give name to the Isle which *Ptolomy* calleth Νῆσος Ἰερέκων, *Insula Jeracuma* or *Accipitrum*, as the *Latine* hath it, that is to say, the Isle of *Hawks*, from the abundance of *Hawks* which were therein bred: There being another Island of the same name near unto *Sardinia* (so called for the self same reason) and a Town called *Jerax* in *Hammoniaca* a Region of *Egypt*, to which *Jaraeh* might as well lay claim (if that would carry it) as to this *Jeracum*, or *Acciptrum*, in the Gulf of *Arabia*? How improbable that *Ophir* should give name to *Urphre*, a poor Isle of the *Red Sea*, *Obal* to *Sinus Avalites* in *Æthiopia*, on the other side of that Gulf? Or that *Dicla* must be fixed in *Arabia*, for no other reason, but because the word signifieth a *Palm-tree*, of which that Country yields good plenty, as if some other Countries did not yield as much? These and some other reasons hereafter following have made me bold to differ from that learned man in this particular, whose industry and abilities I do otherwise honour; and rather to look for *Joktan*, and his sons in the East part of the World, where the Scriptures place them; than in the South (with reference to the Wilderness, or Land of *Madian*, in one of which the Book of *Genesis* was written) where *Bochartus* placeth them. Yet so far I must yield to that learned man, that some of the Descendants of *Joktan* in long tract of time, moved with the rarities of the place, might come from *India*, and plant themselves upon the Sea-Coasts of *Arabia Felix*; as the *Arabians* at this day, moved with the Wealth and Trade of *India*, have possessed themselves of many of the Ports and pieces on the Shores thereof.

Now the Text telleth us of the Sons of *Joktan*, that *their dwelling was from* Mesha, *as thou goest to* Sephar, *a Mount of the East*; so that by these two boundaries, *Mesha* and *Sepher*, their habitation must be found. I know, *Bochartus* would have *Mesha* to be *Musa*, a noted Port-Town on the South-west of *Arabia Felix*, and *Sephar* to be the City of *Sephar* in the South-east of that Country; that City giving name to some Mount adjoining. But being they both lye directly South of the place in which *Moses* wrote, I cannot see how this position can agree with the word of Scripture; and therefore we must look for both in some other place. And first to find out *Mesha*, we need go no further than *Bochartus* himself, who maketh *Mesh*; the last of the Sons of *Aram*, the Son of *Sem* (according to the general opinion of most writers else) to be planted in the Mountainous tracts of *Mesopotamia*, from him called *Mons Masius*, more of which before. And then for *Sephar*, which the Text calleth a *Mount of the East*; if it be the Southern part of Mount *Imaus*, by *Ptolomy* named *Bitigo*, by the Moderns *Gates* extending from Mount *Caucasus* to the *Cape Comari* in the hither *India*, as *Postellus* a right learned man doth conceive it to be; We have without more difficulty found out the dwellings of the sons of *Joktan* according to the bounds laid down in holy Scripture. But for fear this may not satisfie, for want of some Seconds to *Postellus* (if Truth needs a Second) we have *Siphare* a City of *Aria*, directly East from *Mons Masius*, or the dwellings of *Mesh*; both in the East parts of the World, with reference unto the place in which *Moses* writ: *Mons Masius* being placed by *Ptolomy* in the 74 degree of *Longitude*, and the 37 of *Latitude*; and *Siphare* 36 degrees more toward the East, but with no more than two degrees of *Latitude* super-added to it. And this agreeth to the position assigned to the sons of *Joktan* by *Josephus*, *Eusebius*, and St. *Hierome*; the emendation of *Bochartus* coming in to help. It is affirmed by *Josephus* that the *Joktanites* possessed all that Tract, ἀπὸ Κωφῆνος ποταμοῦ τῆς Ἰνδικῆς, καὶ τῆς πρὸς αὐτῷ Συρίας τινὰ, which lieth about *Kophenus* a River of *India*, together with such parts of *Syria* as did border near it. These words being borrowed from *Josephus* both by *Eusebius* & S. *Hierome*; the first instead of *Syria* reads *Seria*, and the other *Jeria*, but neither rightly: there being no such place in the world as *Jeria*; and *Syria* & *Seria* (or the Country of the *Seres*) lying too far off to border on *Cophenus* a River of *India*. *Bochartus* therefore helps them out, conceiving (I think right enough) that for *Syria* we should there read *Aria*, and withal granting, as he may, that *Aria* in the largest latitude and extent thereof, comprehending *Parapomisus* & *Arachosia*, extendeth as far Eastward as the River *Cophenus*. So that we have found out a dwelling for the sons of *Joktan*, betwixt *Mons Masius* & *Siphare*, a Town of *Aria*: which probably might give name to some Mount adjoining, as *Saphar* by *Bochartus* is supposed to do to some of the *Arabian* hills bordering near unto it. And as these situations do agree exactly with the meaning of those antient Writers, so is it also very sutable to the other Plantations of the sons of *Arphaxad*. For this I look on as a matter out of all dispute, that *Phaleg* and *Joktan* being both too young to go upon any new Adventures, when so many of

the reſidue of *Noah*'s poſterity removed toward *Shinaar*; kept themſelves under the tuition of their Grandfather *Noah*; or at leaſt wandred not from the Plantation of their Father *Arphaxad*: till *Joktan*'s Sons, being grown to be Fathers of Families, were forced to caſt about for new habitations. And when neceſſity compelled them to ſeek new ſeats, I would fain know why they ſhould think of making to themſelves a way to *Arabia Felix*, through Countries peopled and poſſeſſed a long time before; when they had Elbow-room enough on the Eaſt of *Tygris*, and the unpeopled Countries of ſome parts of *India* lay ſo near at hand.

Nor want we as good evidence and as little forced for ſome of their Plantations in the Eaſtern parts, as *Bochartus* hath fancied for them in *Arabia*: For *Almodad* might probably be the Founder of *Almodena*, the *Metropolis* of *Meſopotamia*, not far from *Meſia* or *Mons Maſius* the Weſtern Boundary: and *Jarad* of the Nation of the *Arachoſians* inhabiting near *Siphare* the Eaſtern limit, aſſigned unto the Sons of *Joktan*. With what an eaſie change might *Obal* or *Chobal* be ſuppoſed to be the Father of the *Cabolites* of *Paropamiſus*? *Hadoram* of the *Orites*, an *Indian* people near unto the other? But theſe North-Eaſtern parts being peopled, or not very pleaſant, how many of the Sons of *Joktan* ſhall we find in the Southern parts of *India*? *Bochartus* himſelf confeſſeth that the Land of *Ophir* (another of the Sons of *Jocktan*) was a part of *India*, but whether *Sumatra*, *Taprobane*, or *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I diſpute not here. Like evidence there is for *Saba*, remembrances of whoſe name are found in *Sabalaſſa* one of the mouths of the River *Indus*, *Sabana*, a City of the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, a River in the ſame Tract named *Sabanus*, and a City called *Sabe*: beſides the whole Nation of the *Sabæi* mentioned by *Dionyſius* in his *Periegeſis*. And though ſome late Criticks read it *Siba* inſtead of *Sabæi*, (as that there was an *Indian* Nation called *Sibæ*, is confeſſed on all ſides:) yet ſeeing *Euſtathius* finds the *Sabæ* in this Country alſo, I cannot ſee but that there ſhould be room enough in *India* for both people to dwell in. For *Abimail* another of the Sons of *Joktan*; we find more evident footſteps of him in the *Mali* or *Malli* an *Indian* people, in *Maleta* & *Maliba* two Towns of *India*, in *Malæus* an *Indian* Mountain, and finally in *Malæi Colon* a Promontory of *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, than in the *Manitæ* of *Bochartus*. For it *Abimail* ſignifie the Father of the *Mali*, as he ſaith it doth; he was more like to be the Father of the *Mali*, commonly and literally ſo called, whom we find in *India*; than that we ſhould be forced to look for them in the *Manitæ*, or look for the *Manitæ* in the houſe of *Abimail*. If *Dicla* muſt be planted in *Arabia Felix* for no better reaſon, than becauſe the word ſignifieth a *Palm*, whereof there is plenty in that Country; I doubt not but to find as many *Palms* to plant by amongſt the *Indians*, as *Bochartus* doth among the *Arabians*. And finally, if *Chatramis*, or *Chatramatitis* an *Arabian* Region, have ſuch reſemblance to the name of *Chatſarmaveth*, as to take that Appellation from him, as *Bochartus* telleth us it did: we may conclude with equal, if not better reaſon, that the *Chadramatitæ* an *Indian* people, ſeated upon the mouth of the River *Indus*, upon whoſe ſtreams ſome of the reſidue of his Brethren had their habitations, had their firſt *Original* from that *Chatſarmaveth*. For *Havilah* or *Chavilah*; the Ancients generally ſet him in the *Indies* alſo, not far from *Saba* and *Ophir* two of his Brethren: to whoſe authority I ſubmit, becauſe I find a Province in the Golden *Cherſoneſe*, called the Kingdom of *Ava*, and thought to be ſo called from this very man. And I conceive the like alſo of the reſt of the *Joktanites* whoſe habitations might be found in *India*, or near *Meſh* and *Sepha*, if one would take that liberty of *Criticiſing*, altering and tranſpoſing letters, as *Bochartus* doth, only to fix them in a place where they never were. Suffice it that this ſhort Eſſay may inform the Reader, that *Bochartus* was too confident a lover of his own opinion, where he affirms, *Nec locum alium* Sephar *nomine, nec ulla poſterorum* Joktan *in* Aria *aut* India *veſtigia jam ſupereſſe*; that is to ſay, that there is no ſuch place as *Sephar*, nor any track or footſtep of the Sons of *Joktan* to be found in *Aria*, or the *Indies*. The contrary whereof is ſo clearly evidenced.

Theſe were the Generations and diſperſions of the Sons of *Sem*, contracted in a narrower compaſs than either the poſterity of *Cham* or *Japhet*: of whom the firſt, beſides the great footing which he had in *Aſia*, did poſſeſs all *Africk*, and the other, beſides his ſhare in the greater *Aſia*, filled almoſt all the leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe* with the Iſles thereof, with his fruitful Progeny. And firſt beginning with *Cham*, we find him the Father of four Sons, that is to ſay, *Cuſh*, *Miſraim*, *Phut*, and *Canaan*; of which, only *Phut* the third Son hath no iſſue aſſigned him. To *Cuſh* the eldeſt Son were born *Seba* and *Havilah*, and *Sabtah*, *Nimrod*, *Sabtecha*, and *Raamah*, who was the Father of *Sheba* and *Dedan*. And unto *Mizraim* the ſecond Son were born *Ludim*, and *Amamim*, *Læhabim*, *Napthuhim*, *Pathruſim*, *Caphthorim*, and *Caſluhim*, who was the Father of *Philiſtim*. Of *Canaan* and his iſſue we ſhall ſpeak of hereafter. In the mean time we will diſpoſe of theſe firſt branches of the ſtock of *Cham*, beginning firſt with *Chus* the eldeſt, and ſo deſcending to the reſt of this firſt Line. And firſt for *Chuſh*, though it be generally ſaid both by the *Greek* and *Jewiſh* Writers, that he was the Father of the *Æthiopians* in the heart of *Africa*; yet upon better ſearch he is found to have gone no further than *Arabia*, poſſeſſing himſelf of a good part of that which is called *Petræa*, and ſome part of *Arabia Felix*. For whereas *Zippora* the wife of *Moſes*, was daughter unto *Jethro* the Prieſt or Prince of *Madian*, *Exod.2.v.16*, *&c.* and yet is called an *Æthiopian woman*, in the 12. of *Num.v.1*. It muſt needs be, that by *Æthiopian* in the laſt place, muſt be meant an *Arabian*: for *Madian* doubtleſs was a City of *Arabia* near unto the *Red Sea*, as is apparent by *Joſephus* for the *Jews*, *Ptolomy* for the *Græcians*, and S. *Hierom* for the *Latine* Writers. But we ſhall canvaſs this more throughly in its proper place: the ſtrength of reaſon ſerving for a ſupplement of that one defect, which is, that there is no remainder of the name of *Chus* in any of the Cities, Promontories, Hills or Rivers of all that Country, by which his planting there might be made more evident. *Seba*, the eldeſt Son of *Chus*, ſets himſelf down on the ſhores of the *Red Sea*, , as near his Father as he could; becoming the Original of the great and wealthy Nation of the *Sabæans*: the ſo much celebrated City of *Saba*, memorable for abundance of the beſt Frankincenſe, being their *Metropolis* or head City. A Nation ſeated in the moſt Southern part of this *Peninſula*, ſubject in *Solomon*'s time to that famous Lady called in the old Teſtament from her Country, the Queen of *Sheba*; and in the new Teſtament from the ſituation of it, the Queen of the *South*: the holy Spirit in both places giving her an ample and remarkable teſtimony.

For *Havilah* or *Chavilah* the ſecond of the Sons of *Chuſh* moſt probable it is that he poſſeſſed himſelf of that part of *Arabia*, which lay neareſt unto *Babylonia*, and that he gave name to that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to encompaſs, *Gen.2.v.21*. Some footſteps of his name remain in the *Chaulotæi* of *Eratoſthenes*, the *Chaulaſii* of *Feſtus Avienus*, but more plainly in the *Chavelei* of *Pliny*; being all three but one people, though thus diverſly named; and all of them planted towards the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo to *Babylon*. On the ſame ſhore of the

the *Perſian* Gulf, we are to look for *Sabta* the third Son of *Chus*, where *Ptolomy* informs us of a City called *Saphta*, and of an Iſland in the ſame Gulf called *Sophta* alſo. From whence in probabillity ſome of this people might paſs over into *Perſia*, on the other ſide of the Gulf, and there give names to the *Sabtæi*, which by the tranſpoſition of the letter *T*, are by *Ptolomy* called the *Stabæi*. That *Nimrod* the fourth Son of *Chus* did firſt plant himſelf in *Babylonia*, the Scripture is ſo plain and poſitive, that nothing need be added to it. Of *Sabteca* the fifth Son, I confeſs I can find no track in any of the ancient Authors. For why we ſhould admit of ſo great a change, as firſt, of *B* into *M*, and then of *T* into *D*, (which could not eaſily be done by very careleſs Tranſcribers) and ſo find *Stabeca* in *Samidace*, a City or Country of the *Carmanians* on the *Perſian* ſide of the Gulf, I can ſee no reaſon: And therefore rather chuſe to mingle him and his Poſterity with the Son of *Sabta*, and the children of his brother *Regma*, all planted on the ſame ſhore of the *Perſian* Gulf. For that *Regma* (our *Engliſh* Bibles call him *Raama*) was ſetled on the banks of the Bay of *Perſia*, hath ſo good authority, that there is no diſpute to be made of that: *Ptolomy* placing there the City of *Regma* (*Regama* it is called in the *Latin* Tranſlation) by which name it occurreth in *Stephanus* alſo in his Book *De Urbibus*, Καὶ ῥῆγμα πρὸς τῷ Περσικῷ κόλπῳ. *And Regma, on the Perſian Gulf*, as his words there are. And not far from thence we are to look for his Son *Sheba*; both being joyned together in the Book of God; and both there are ſaid to buſie and employ themſelves in the Trade of Merchandizing; *The Merchants of* Shebah *and* Raamah (ſaith the Text) *they were thy Merchants; they occupied in thy Fairs with chief of all Spices, and with all precious Stones, and Gold*, Ezek. 27. 22. So that the Nations of the *Sabæans*, though deſcended at the firſt from ſeveral Parents, inhabited the lower parts of *Arabia Felix* from one Sea to the other; as evidently appeareth by thoſe words of *Pliny*; where he informeth us moſt truly, that the *Sabæans*, an *Arabian* people, well known for their abundance of Frankincenſe, *ad utraque maria porrectis gentibus habitare*, had ſpread themſelves over all the Country, even from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Perſia*. Finally, in the ſame track we find *Dedan* the other Son of *Regma*, and the laſt of all the Sons of *Chus*: there being on the mouth of the *Perſian* Gulf (but on the *Arabian* Coaſt thereof) not only a City, but a Province called by the name of *Dedan*, which both *Ortelius*, and ſome other late Geographers do take notice of. And more than ſo, the Prophet *Ezekiel* joyns him with his brother *Sheba*, and makes them both to follow the ſame trade of Merchandiſe; *The men of* Dedan *were thy Merchants*, Chap. 27. 15. Sheba *and* Dedan, *and the Merchants of* Tarſhiſh. Cap. 38. 13. *They brought thee horns of Ivory, and Ebony*, ſaith the Prophet in the former Text.

The head of the next houſe of the race of *Cham*, was *Miſraim*, the ſecond Son, of whom it is generally affirmed, that leaving his elder brother *Chus* and his poſterity, in the rich and delectable Countries of *Arabia Felix*, and the next parts to *Babylonia*, or the land of *Shinaar*, he went with his own Son and his brother *Phut*, into *Africa*, and there planted *Egypt*. Of this there is no queſtion amongſt the Learned, though all the tracks and footſteps of *Miſraim* be quite worn out: unleſs any thing of it were preſerved in the word *Meſori*, by which the *Egyptians* anciently called the firſt Month in the year; or in that of *Meſre*, by which name the *Arabians* call *Egypt*, to this day: But being *Egypt* is called *Miſraim* in the *Hebrew* Bibles, that only is ſufficient without further evidence. And therefore leaving him in *Egypt*, let us look after his Son *Ludim*, whom he ſent to people *Æthiopia*, the next Country to him. For that this *Ludim*, was the Father of thoſe *Æthiopians*, many good reaſons are alledged. Firſt, from the Texts of *Eſaiah*, Chap. 66. 19. and *Jer.* 46. 9. where *Lud* is ſaid to be very *skilful in drawing the Bow*; which agrees punctually with the Character given unto the *Æthiopians* by *Strabo*, *Herodotus*, *Diodorus Siculus*, and others of the ancient Writers. Secondly, from the joyning of the children or people of *Ludim* with thoſe of *Phul*, in the place of *Eſaiah* before cited: which *Phul* may very probably be the City which the *Græcians* call *Phylæ*, ſituate not far from *Syene*, on the very borders of *Æthiopia*, and antiently inhabited both by the *Æthiopians*, and *Egyptians*, as *Strabo*, and ſome others of the Antients witneſs. Thirdly, from the conjunction of the Children of *Lud* or *Ludim*, with thoſe of *Chus*, on the Gulf of *Arabia*, and thoſe of *Phut*, or *Lybians*, on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*, both next neighbours to them; as in *Ezek.* 30. 5. and that of *Jer.* above mentioned; (where our *Engliſh* very ſtrangely rendereth *Ludim* by the name of *Lydians*) which dwell too far off both from *Chuſh* and *Phut*, to be joyned together in one action. But of this, more than enough already, the Arguments being ſo ſtrong, and ſo moſt demonſtrative. I go on therefore to the next; only obſerving by the way, that the *Æthiopians* mentioned in the Texts of our *Engliſh* Bibles, are not theſe of *Africa*, but the *Chuſites* of *Arabia Fælix*; our Tranſlators always rendring *Chus* by *Æthiopia*. The *Anamim*, who come next, I know not where to find, or in what place to look for them, unleſs they were the ſame with the *Amantes* of *Solinus*, and the *Hammanientes* of *Pliny*, a people ſeated on the Sea-ſide near the greater *Syrtis*, to which the neighbourhood of the *Lehabim* may give ſome countenance; who ſeem to be the ſame with the people of *Lybia*, a Province ſeated betwixt *Egypt* and *Cyrenaica*, and were called *Lybiægyptii* by the old Geographers, to difference them from the Inhabitants of the greater *Lybia*, whereof more hereafter. For the *Napthuhim*, I am alſo at a loſs, unleſs we find them ſomewhere in *Cyrenaica*; and that ſome remnant of the name be in *Aptuchi fanum*, which occurrs in *Ptolomy*. But for the *Pathruſin*, I think no queſtion need be made, but that they were the people of that Province of *Egypt*, which in divers places of the Scripture is called *Pathros*, as *Eſai.* 11. 11. *Jer.* 44. 1. *Ezek.* 29. 14. and ſeems to be that part of *Egypt*, which is called *Thebais*, where *Ptolomy* placeth *Pathyris*, an In-land Town not far from *Thebe*, (And *Pathuris* the *Greek* or *Septuagint* term *that*, which in the *Hebrew* is called *Pathros*.)

Hitherto we have found the Nations which deſcended from the Sons of *Miſraim*, in *Egypt*, and the Countries adjoyining to it. And there, or thereabouts, we are to look for *Caphtorim*, and *Caſluhim*, the two Sons remaining. I know there hath been great pains taken to find the *Caſluhim* in *Colchis*, and the *Caphtorim* in *Cappadocia*, or *Pontus*, not far from *Trabezond*, where notwithſtanding there is no track of the names remaining. But this being ſo far off from *Egypt*, in, and near which both *Miſraim* himſelf, and all the reſt of his Sons were planted, I can by no means yield to it, though to content ſuch learned men as would fain have it ſo, I think it poſſible enough that ſome of the *Egyptians* in ſucceeding times, moved with the Fame of that great wealth which *Colchis* was ſuppoſed to yield to ſome Adventurers; might leave their native ſoil to inhabit there. And therefore I think rather, with the learned *Junius*, that the *Caſluhim* were firſt planted in the Region of *Caſſiotis* (not far from *Damiata*, a chief Town of *Egypt*) which retains ſomewhat of the name; and ſo doth *Coptus*, an old City of

Egypt, of the name of *Cophtorim*. Or if it did not, as it doth, why the name of *Cophti*, which at this day is given to the Chriſtians of *Egypt*, may not be thought to have its firſt riſe from *Cophtorim*, rather than that they are ſo called *quaſi Ægophti*, corruptly for *Ægyptii*, I muſt needs ſay I am not ſatisfied. Beſides, it being clear in Scripture, that the *Caſluhim* and *Cophtorim* dwelt near together, and that the *Philiſtins* are ſaid to deſcend from *Caſluhim*, if *Caſluhim* ſhould go for *Colchis*, and *Cophtorim* for *Cappadocia*, we muſt firſt carry them I know not how far off from the reſt of their Brethren, againſt the method of all Plantations; and then bring the *Philiſtins* back again from *Colchis*, to find a dwelling on the borders of the land of *Egypt*, from whence their Anceſtors and Allies were ſo far remote. Whereas by ſetling theſe two Nations amongſt the reſt of their Brethren, the journy of the *Philiſtins* unto *Canaan*, and ſetling themſelves in the poſſeſſions of the *Avim* (a *Canaanitiſh* people) whom they had ſubdued, *Deut.* 2. 25. is both eaſie and natural. But before we follow theſe *Philiſtins* further in their new Plantation amongſt the *Canaanites*, we will firſt ſee what became of *Phut*, the third ſon of *Cham*. And if we guide our ſelves in this *Labyrinth* by the clew of Antiquity, we ſhall find him ſetled Weſt of his Brother *Miſraim*, and ſo the *Atlantick* Ocean, the Lake of *Tritonis* parting their Dominions. Some Relicts of the name there were in the time of *Joſephus*, who telleth us of a River of *Mauritania*, which in his time retained the name of *Phut*: *Pliny* makes mention of it, alſo *Ptolomy* takes notice of a River in thoſe parts called *Pthuth*, which comes very near it. And ſo doth *Iſidore Origin l.* 2. But St. *Hierome* in my mind puts it out of doubt, whoſe words I ſhall put down, and ſo leave *Africa*; Phut *Lybiæ, a quo & Mauritaniæ fluvius uſque ad præſens* Phut *dicitur, omniſque circa eum Regio* Phytenſis; *cujus rei multi Scriptores tam Græci quam Latini teſtes ſunt.* Where we have not only a River, but a Province of the name of *Phut*, and many ancient Writers both *Greek* and *Latine* called to witneſs to it.

And now we ſhould proceed to *Canaan* and his Sons (eleven in all) being the fourth and laſt branch of the houſe of *Cham*. But being they all kept together in or near the land of *Canaan*, we ſhall find him there; or meet with them in ſuch Plantations and Colonies as they ſent abroad, under the title of *Phœnicians*. And therefore go we next to *Japhet*, whoſe *Tents* God promiſed to enlarge, as indeed he did; ſpreading his branches over *Europe*, the leſſer *Aſia*, and a great part of the geater alſo. To him were born ſeven Sons in all; that is to ſay, *Gomer* and *Magog*, *Madai* and *Javan*, *Tubal Meſech*, and *Thyrus*: Of which the iſſue of two only are upon record, *viz.* *Aſchenaz*, *Riphath*, and *Togarma*, the Sons of *Gomer*; *Eliſha*, *Tarſhiſh*, *Kittim*, and *Dodanim*, the Sons of *Javan*. And firſt for *Gomer* and his Sons, the firſt poſſeſſed themſelves of convenient dwellings in the *greater* and the *leſſer Aſia*: *Gomer* himſelf firſt planting in the mountanous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long retained his name; and after changing that unpleaſant and unfruitful dwelling for the Plains of *Phrygia*, in which the City *Cimmeris*, in the days of *Pliny*, did preſerve his memory. For that the poſterity and people of *Gomer*, called at firſt *Gomerians*, came to take the name of *Cimmerians*, as of *Cimbri* afterwards, is generally agreed upon amongſt the Learned. Now then, as *Gomer* fixt himſelf in the *Greater Phrygia*, ſo did his eldeſt ſon *Aſchenaz* in *Phrygia minor*, and the Country of *Troas*, ſpreading himſelf along upon the *Helleſpont*, and thoſe *Greekiſh* Seas, as far as *Bythinia*. In all which places there were left ſome memory of this Plantation. For in *Bithinia* there is a Bay called *Sinus Aſcanius*, together with a River and a Lake of the ſame name alſo. And in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, and the Country of *Troas*, there was both a City and a Province adjoyning, anciently known by the name of *Aſcania*; and the *Aſcaniæ Inſulæ* alſo on the coaſt thereof. Nor is it any thing unlikely, but that in honour of this *Aſchenaz*, the Kings and great men of thoſe parts, took the name of *Aſcanius*. Of which name, beſides *Aſcanius* the ſon of *Æneas*, we find a King mentioned in the ſecond of *Homers Iliads*, which came unto the aid of *Priamus* at the ſiege of *Troy*. In the ſame quarters of the World we find *Ripath* alſo, the founder of the *Riphei*, a people dwelling in the Eaſt parts of *Bithynia*, and ſpreading alſo over *Paphlagonia*: In both which Provinces there are ſome remnants of his name to be found amongſt the Antients. For, beſides that *Joſephus* ſaith expreſly, that the *Paphlagonians* antiently were called *Rephei*, there is mention in *Appollonius's Argonauticks* of the River *Rhebæus*, which riſing in *Bithynia*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Pontus Euxinus*, near to *Paphlagonia*; of which River *Pliny* alſo doth inform us: and *Stephanus* doth not only acquaint us with the River it ſelf, but tells us alſo of a Region on the ſame name, and of a people thereabouts, which are called *Rhebæi*. Nor need we look much further to find out the ſeat of *Togarma* the third ſon of *Gomer*, whom the Prophet *Ezekiel* not only joyneth with his Father as two neighbouring Nations, but makes both of them to lie Northwards of *Judæa*; Gomer *and all his bands, the houſe of* Togarma *in the North quarters, and all his bands*, cap. 38. 6. So that they do not gueſs amiſs, who place *Togarma* and his Progeny in *Cappadocia*: a Country not only bordering near to the Plantations of *Gomer*, and lying on the North of the land of *Canaan*, but very well ſtocked with an excellent breed of Mules and Horſes, as *Strabo* teſtifieth in the eleventh Book of his *Geography*; with which commodities they traded at the Fairs of *Tyre*, as the ſame Prophet tells us of them, *Chap.* 27. 14. But for a more evident proof of this, that *Togarma*'s dwelling muſt be found in *Cappadocia*; we muſt firſt know that the *Greek* Tranſlators call him generally by the name of *Togarma*; and then, that antiently there was a people in *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, whom *Strabo* calleth *Trocmi*, and *Tully Trogmi*; by *Stephanus* they are named *Trocmeni*, and *Trogmades* in the Council of *Chalcedon*, in which *Cyriacus* Biſhop of the *Trogmades* (Κυριακὸς Ἐπίσκοπος Τογμάδων) is often mentioned.

Having thus done with *Gomer*, and the ſons of *Gomer*, we will next purſue the reſt of the ſons of *Japhet*, except *Javan* only, whom with his four ſons we will keep together. And the next ſon of *Japhet* is *Magog*, concerning whom there hath been much diſpute and difference amongſt our *Antiquaries*, ſome making him the Father of the *Scythians*, and ſome of the *Goths*, and others finally of the *Tartars*; all of them thinking that ſuch terrible names as *Gog* and *Magog*, could not belong to any but ſuch terrible Nations. And poſſible enough it is, that ſome of his poſterity in ſucceeding times, finding their own ſeats too narrow for them, might remove further Northwards, and be the founders of ſome *Scythian* and *Tartarian* Nation; but that *Magog* himſelf in his firſt Plantation, ſhould wander ſo far out of the way from the reſt of his Brethren, when he had elbow-room enough amongſt them, I cannot eaſily imagine. When therefore I find a Region in *Stephanus* called *Gogarens*, betwixt *Iberia* and *Cholchis*; and read in *Pliny*, that the City of *Cœlo-Syria*, which the *Græcians* call *Hierapolis*, was by the *Syrians* themſelves called *Magog*; I ſhall not trouble my ſelf to look for *Magog* any where elſe, than in thoſe Countries where they have left ſuch evident

Land-

Land-marks to diſcern themſelves by. But this we ſhall the better ſee by looking out the dwellings of his two brethren, *Meſech* and *Tubal*, who being joined together with *Gog* and *Magog*, *Ezek.* 38. 2. and 39. 1. are very unlike to have their dwellings far aſunder: or that they could concur in any publick Action againſt the *Jews*, according to the ſcope and purpoſe of the holy Prophet. Now it is probable (if not more) that *Meſech*, whom the Antients named *Moſoch*, ſeated himſelf on the North and North-Eaſt of *Syria*, in the confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*, and ſo unto the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. For all along that Tract runs a ridge of Hills, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pomponius Mela* call *Montes Moſchici*, diſterminating *Colchis* from *Armenia*, and both from *Iberia*; and moſt like to be the dwelling of *Meſech* or *Moſoch*, and to take denomination from him. And this I am the rather induced to think, becauſe *Tubal*, whom the Scriptures generally join together with *Meſech*, is by moſt Writers ſaid to have ſetled himſelf in *Iberia*, the next Province to it. *Joſephus* alſo telling us, that antiently the *Iberi* were called *Theobeli*, though called *Iberians* afterwards on ſome new occaſion. And hereunto the conſtant tradition of the *Spaniards* gives ſome good authority, who boaſt of their deſcent from *Tubal*; which can no otherwiſe be granted, than as they were a Colony of theſe *Iberians*, from whence the Continent of *Spain* was once called *Iberia*; and where one of the principal Rivers is ſtil called *Iberus*. For *Madai*, the third Son of *Japhet*, it is moſt plain by the authority of Scripture (were there no proof elſe) that he was the Father of the *Medes*; who in the book of *Daniel*, and that of *Heſter*, are repreſented to us by no other name than that of *Madai*.

Thus having took a view of thoſe who fixt themſelves in either, or in both the *Aſia's*; let us look on *Thyrus*, *Javan*, and the Sons of *Javan*, who not contented with their dwellings in the *leſſer Aſia*, filled all *Europe* by degrees with their numerous progenies. And firſt beginning with *Javan* as the Elder Brother, moſt Authors make him the Original of thoſe *Greek* Nations which paſs under the general names of *Iones*; and there is very good ground for the aſſertion, conſidering that the *Greek* Tranſlators of the Bible inſtead of *Javan*, read *Jovan*, and that all thoſe who elſewhere ordinarily are called *Iones*, are by *Homer*, one of the ancienteſt of the *Greeks*, named *Ivones*. Now *Javan* and *Jaon* ſound ſo like each other, that one may very well conclude, that they were the ſame. A name not only proper to the *Athenians*, and their *Colonies*, (though probable enough firſt belonging to them of *Attica*) but comprehending the *Bœotians* and *Achæans* alſo; yea, and extending alſo into *Macedonia*, as appears *Dan.* 8. 21. where *Alexander* the Great, in the *Hebrew* is called King of *Javan*, which we Engliſh *Græcia*. Nor do we much diſ-joyn *Javan* from the reſt of that ſtock, by carrying him croſs the Seas into another part of the World; for he might go along with *Gomer* in his ſecond Plantation; and, leaving him well ſetled in the *greater Phrygia*, and his Son *Askenaz* in the *leſſer*; might then with very little trouble (and no improbability at all) paſs over the *Helleſpont*, and plant himſelf in *Attica*, called at firſt *Ionia*, ſaith *Plutarch* in the life of *Theſeus*. Or if any one notwithſtanding conceive this for too great a leap, and will rather think with *Hecatæus*, that the *Iones* came out of *Aſia* into *Greece* (as *Strabo* cites him to that purpoſe) I ſhall not much contend againſt that opinion; ſo it be alſo granted on the other ſide, that *Javan*, not having room enough on the ſhores of *Aſia*, paſſed over into *Greece*, as a Land unoccupied. With *Javan* went *Eliſha* his eldeſt Son, the Father of the *Æoles*, or *Æolians*, on the *Aſian* ſide, as *Joſephus* hath it; and the Founder of *Elis* in *Peloponneſus*, and Planter of the *Græcian* Iſles, which by the Prophet *Ezekiel* 27. 7. are called the Iſles of *Eliſha*. And it agrees exceeding well with the Iſles of *Græce*, what by the Prophet is affirmed of the Iſles of *Eliſha*; namely, that the Inhabitants thereof did trade to *Tyre* with *Blew* and *Purple* in which ſome of the *Græcian* Iſles were ſuch excellent Artiſans, that *Carpathus* had the name of *Porthyrie*, and *Cithera* was called Πορφυρέα; only from the abundance of *Purple*, which they had amongſt them. Not to ſay any thing of *Coos*, *Niſyrus*, and *Gyarus*, and ſome other of the *Cyclades*, renowned in good Authors, for that Commodity.

A ſhorter Journey, but withal a far ſhorter Territory, fell to the lot of *Tarſhiſh* the ſecond Son; whom *Javan*, when he travelled further upon new diſcoveries, left ſetled in *Cilicia*, a Province of the *leſſer Aſia*; where either he, or ſome of his Poſterity, in honour of him, built the City of *Tarſus*, the principal City of that Province. For that *Tarſhiſh* in thoſe early days ſhould go into *Spain*, and there build *Tarteſſus*, I take to be a ſtrange (if not idle) *Romance*; that Town being built by the *Phœnicians*, many Ages after, without relation unto *Tarſhiſh*, or his memory either. What Voyages or Plantations thoſe of *Cilicia* or *Tarſus* made in times ſucceeding, as I no where find, ſo it is not material to my preſent purpoſe; which principally is to ſettle the Sons of *Noah* in their firſt habitations. On therefore unto *Cittim*, the third Son of *Javan*, whom *Joſephus* ſetleth firſt in the Iſle of *Cyprus*, where he finds a City called *Citium*, the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, thence ſurnamed Κιτιεὺς. *Joſephus* is herein followed by St. *Hierom* in his Notes on *Geneſis*, in whoſe time (as *Pintus* telleth us in his Comment on *Ezekiel*) the Town of *Citium* was ſtill ſtanding; ſo do *Euſtathius* in his *Hexameron*, and divers others. The Author of the Book of *Maccabees* ſets him further off, giving the name of *Cittim* unto *Macedonia*. *After that* (ſaith the Author) Alexander *the Son of* Philip, *went forth of the land of* Chethim, *and ſhew* Darius *King of the* Perſians *and* Medes, *Cap.* 1. 1. And after in the 8. Chapter of the ſame Book, verſ. 5. *Perſeus* King of *Macedon* is called King of the *Cittims*. But this doth no way contradict that of his firſt planting in *Cyprus*, where it is very probable that he made his dwelling for a time, by reaſon of the neighbourhood of his Brother *Tarſhiſh* (*Cilicia* and the City of *Tarſus* lying near unto it;) But finding in time that Iſland to be either too barren, or too ſmall for his people; and that the other parts both of *Græce* and *Aſia* were taken up already by the firſt Adventurers, he might finally fix himſelf, or ſome of his poſterity, in *Macedonia*, as a ſpare place which no body could lay claim unto. That either he or any of his Sons did plant firſt in *Italy*, which I ſee *Bochartus* would fain have, were againſt the method of Plantations; and he muſt give them wings to fly that conveyeth them thither, when as yet Mankind was not taught the uſe of ſhipping, or not accuſtomed at leaſt to make long voyages. But that in courſe of time, as the World grew fuller, and that *Greece* was not able to contain its multitudes, ſome of the race of *Cittim* might paſs over into *Italy*, the paſſage thither from ſome of the Ports of *Greece* being ſhort and eaſie, I am apt enough to believe, and in its proper place ſhall declare my ſelf for it. Nor can I otherwiſe agree with him, as concerning *Dodanim*, whom againſt all right and reaſon he hath placed in *Gaul*; making the River *Rhodanus*, one of the principal of that Country, to be named of him; whom the *Greeks*, miſtaking the letter *Daleth* for that of *Reſh* (as indeed the letters are ſo like, that one may

may very eaſily be miſtook for the other) moſt commonly preſent unto us by the name of *Rhodanim*. Admitting which, it is more proper, in my mind, to ſettle *Rhodanim* for a while in the Iſle of *Rhodes*, lying ſo near the dwellings of his other brethren; till wanting room for the increaſe of his poſterity in ſo ſmall an Iſland, he might coaſt along the ſhores of *Peloponneſus*, and fix himſelf finally in *Epirus* by his brother *Eliſha*; where in the Province of the *Moloſſians*, we ſhall find a City called *Dodona*, without any ſuch miſtake or change of letters, as before is mentioned. For that the three furtheſt parts of *Europe* in reſpect of *Aſia*, ſhould be planted all at once by theſe ſons of *Javan*, is ſo incredible an imagination, that he muſt have a very ſtrong fancy or be of very light belief, which can entertain it. Finally as for *Thyras* the laſt ſon of *Japhet*. having accompanied his brother *Javan* to the ſhores of *Aſia*, and ſeeing him paſſed over the Seas to *Greece*, he took the opportunity of the next Strait or *Fretum* (ſince called *Thracius Boſphorus*) and fixed himſelf in *Thrace*, which Country he gave name unto, as moſt Writers teſtifie. Nor want there ſuch apparent footſteps of the name of *Thyras*, beſides the name of *Thracia* (as ſome ſpell the word) which may add good authority to this general teſtimony; there being both a River and an Haven-town not far from *Bizantium*, which *Pliny*, *Ptolomy* and *Mela* call *Athyras*; a River and Town called *Tyras* in the Province of *Moeſia*, bordering next to *Thrace*, whereof moſt of all the old *Geographers* have taken notice; and finally the *Thracians* calling their God, *Mars*, by the name of *Thyras*. Not to ſay any thing of *Tereus*, *Therops*, and ſome others of the Kings of *Thrace*, whoſe names come very near unto that of *Thyras*, as the firſt founder of their Nation.

Thus have we ſeen the ſeveral Generations and Diſperſions of the Sons of *Noah*, ſo far forth as their names are regiſtred in holy Scripture: theſe being the Heads and Leaders of thoſe ſeveral Tribes which joyned together in the project of the building of *Babel*, and afterwards diſperſed themſelves, as before was ſhewn. But that no more than theſe (I mean heads of Families) deſcended in ſo long a time from the loyns of *Noah*; that they ſhould have towards the new peopling of the world, in an hundred years (for ſo long it muſt be at leaſt from the Flood to the building of *Babel*) no more than ſixteen Sons in all; and ten of thoſe ſixteen go childleſs alſo to the grave, is not a thing to be imagined. Nor is it to be thought, that all the people which were born ſince the Flood till then, could meet together at one place as by inſpiration; or being met, would joyn together in a work of ſo little profit; or, that if *Noah* or *Sem* had been there amongſt them, they would not have diſſwaded them from that fooliſh enterpriſe. And therefore I ſhould rather be of their opinion, which think that *Noah* fixed himſelf in thoſe parts, which lay neareſt to the place where the Ark took land: and having planted as far Eaſtward as he thought convenient, ſent out the ſurpluſage of his people under the Conduct of one or more of theſe *Undertakers*; directing them perhaps to the land of *Shinaar*, where himſelf had dwelt before the Flood. Where being come, and deſtitute of graver and more ſober counſels, they fell upon that vain attempt, which became their ruin; and made them ſcatter and diſperſe themſelves into ſo many Companies. For in my mind Sir *Walter Rawleigh* pleads the point exceeding ſtrongly, that it muſt needs be that *Noah* was ſetled in the Eaſt, and had well peopled all thoſe parts which lay neareſt to him, before he ſent his Troop abroad upon new diſcoveries. For being it is expreſly ſaid in holy Scripture, that *as they went from the Eaſt, They found a plain in the Land of Shinaar*; it muſt needs follow without controverſie, that they came from the *Eaſt* Countries into *Shinaar* or *Babylonia*, and not from any part of *Armenia* (as the vulgar opinion is) which lay North thereof. Now that the Countries whence they came were not left utterly deſolate upon this remove, but very ſufficiently provided both of men and Cities, appeareth by thoſe huge Armies which *Zoroaſter* the King of *Bactria*, and *Staurobates* a King of the *Indians*, were able to bring into the field. Of whom the firſt being invaded by *Ninus* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, encountred him with an Army of 400000 fighting men; the other on the like occaſion out-vied *Semiramis* for numbers: and yet her Army did conſiſt, as we read in *Diodorus Siculus*, of three millions and a half of men, beſides 10000 armed Waggons; whereof if we believe but the third part, it may ſerve to prove that the Eaſt muſt needs be planted before this Expedition towards *Babylonia*. For conſidering that *Ninus* the husband of *Semiramis* was but the third in deſcent from *Nimrod*, (that is to ſay, the ſon of *Belus*, the ſon of *Nimrod*) it had been a moſt impoſſible thing that ſuch a vaſt increaſe ſhould be made only out of *Colonies* in ſo ſhort a time, as needs muſt be between the planting of the Countries before ſpecified, and theſe two great actions; unleſs God raiſed them out of ſtones, or by ſome ſuch miracle, to abate the pride of theſe Uſurpers over other Nations. Without a miracle of this nature (which I conceive no wiſe man would expect to find) it is, I ſay, a thing impoſſible that *Staurobates* ſhould exceed *Semiramis* in number of men, as *Diodorus* ſaith he did; he being but a Caſtling of a ſecond Swarm, and ſhe the great Commandreſs of that part of the world from whence he came upon a ſecond or a third Plantation. Add unto this, that thoſe who have recorded the Acts of *Alexander* the Great, aſſure us that he found more Cities, and ſumptuoſities in that little Kingdom of *Porus*, which lay ſide by ſide to the Eaſt of the River *Indus*, than in all his other travels and undertakings: And this may ſerve inſtead of a further evidence, that the Eaſt Countries were not planted after this diſperſion, but built, and peopled, and reduced under forms of Government, as ſoon as any in the World. Nor know I elſewhere to find either *Noah* himſelf, or *Sem* and *Japhet*, unleſs they ſtaid behind with their Father *Noah*, or were diſpoſed of by themſelves in their ſeveral quarters: there being none of thoſe, though moſt diligent men, who have writ of the Plantations of the World upon this diſperſion, that either ſpeak of any Nations planted by them, or of their ſetling in the Colonies of any one of their deſcendants. Which is to me a very ſtrong Argument that they came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, but tarried ſtill in thoſe Habitations wherein God had placed them.

Againſt this I can ſee but two Objections of any moment; one from the Text, the other from an old *Tradition* amongſt the *Jews*. That from the Text is gathered from thoſe words of *Moſes*, where having made his Catalogue of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, he adds, *And by theſe were the Nations divided in the Earth, after the Flood*, Gen. 10. v. *ult*. But theſe words, as I take it, do relate only unto that diviſion which was made upon occaſion of the *Confuſion* of *Languages*, when they were forced to give over their work, and ſort themſelves into ſeveral Companies: and not to ſuch Plantations as were made before: who being all of one tongue, though in divers dwellings, could not be looked upon as ſeveral and divided Nations. For the *Tradition* of the *Jews*, 'tis this, that from the beginning of the World to the building of *Babel*, that language which in after-times

was

was called the *Hebrew*, was the the common language of Mankind; and that it did continue uncorrupt in the houſe of *Eber*; (whence it had the name) becauſe he joined not with the reſt in that proud and ungodly undertaking. Hence it may poſſibly be objected, that if there were any others of the off-ſpring of *Noah*, which came not with the reſt to the Plains of *Shinaar*, and conſequently had no hand in that vain attempt, they could not come within the curſe of *Confounded Languages*, but muſt needs ſpeak the *Hebrew* Tongue, as well as thoſe deſcended of the Loins of *Heber*. But againſt this Tradition, and the conſequents of it, there are ſome things to be objected. For firſt it is but a Tradition, and therefore of no ſure foundation to build upon. And ſecondly, it is ſuch a Tradition as holds no good co-herence with the truth or ſtory; it being a moſt clear and demonſtrative truth, that the *Hebrew* Tongue was not the Language which *Abraham* brought with him out of *Chaldea* and *Meſopotamia*, but that which he found ſpoken in the Land of *Canaan* at his coming thither, to which both he and his Poſterity did conform themſelves. Or had it been the Language of *Heber*, as they ſay it was, (but moſt undoubtedly was not) yet, thirdly, had this been a priviledge conferred on *Heber*, that he and his Poſterity ſhould ſpeak the Original Language without alteration or corruption, it muſt have been extended to all thoſe of the houſe of *Jocktan*, which deſcended from him; as alſo to the houſe *Laban* in *Padan-Aram*, and to the *Moabites* and the *Ammonites* as the ſeed of *Lot*; and finally to the *Iſhmaelites* & *Idumeans*, deſcended of *Abraham* and *Eſau*; and not be limited and confined only to the houſe of *Jacob*. Either all theſe muſt be partakers of ſo great a priviledge, becauſe their Father *Heber* had obtained it for himſelf and his; or elſe it was not ſuch a priviledge, or given ſo univerſally and incommunicably to the houſe of *Heber*, as they ſay it was. So the *Tradition* falls to ground, as to this particular. And then admitting it for true, that thoſe who ſtaid behind with *Noah* ſpake the ſame Language which was common to the Fathers before the Flood, (be it the *Hebrew*, or what elſe ſoever it was) I ſee no reaſon to the contrary, but that it might in time be branched into ſeveral Languages or *Dialects* of the ſame one Language, by the commerce and intercourſe which they had with Nations of a different ſpeech; as well as thoſe of *Judah*, in ſo ſhort a time as the *Captivity* of *Babylon*, had loſt the purity of that Language which they ſo much brag of; and could not underſtand their own Bibles at their coming home, but by an *Interpreter*. Of which ſee *Neh.*8.7,8.

But to proceed: On this diſperſion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*, it came to paſs, that though they all deſcended from one common Root, yet by the ſituations of their ſeveral dwellings, they came to be of ſeveral tempers and affections; in which they were ſo different from one another, that it might ſeem they had been made at firſt out of ſeveral Principles, and not at all derived from one common Parent. Of which thus *Du Bartas*.

O ſee how full of Wonders ſtrange, is Nature!
Sith in each Climate, *not alone in ſtature,*
Strength, colour, hair; but that men differ do,
Both in their humours, and their manners too.
The Northern *man is fair, the* Southern *foul;*
That's white, this black; that ſmiles, and this doth ſcoul.
Th'one's blith and frolick, th'other dull and froward;
Th'one's full of courage, th'other a fearful coward, &c.

The ground or reaſon of which difference is to be attributed to the different tempers of thoſe Countries in which they live, and to the different influences of the Heavenly Bodies on thoſe ſeveral Countries which do continue ſtill the ſame, though many times the Countries do ſhift and change their old Inhabitants. *Hinc illa ab antiquo vitia, & patria ſorte durantia, quæ totas in hiſtoriis gentes aut commendant aut notant*, ſaith a Modern but judicious Author. Two or three evidences of this truth will make it clear and evident to a practical judgment, which otherwiſe might appear obſcure in the ſearch of cauſes. *Florus* hath told us of the *Gauls*, *Primum eorum impetum eſſe majorem quam virorum; ſecundum minorem quam fœminarum.* Which is the ſame which *Rob. Dallington* hath told us of the Modern *French*, That he begins an action like Thunder, and ends it in a ſmoke. *Ut ſunt* Gallorum *ſubita ingenia*, ſaith *Cæſar* of the ancient *Gauls*: and I believe the preſent *French* are altogether as raſh and hair-brain'd, as the other were. *Gallia fœcunda Cauſidicorum*, was part of the Character of the *Gauls* in the time of *Juvenal*; and it is told us of the *French* by ſome late Obſervers, that there are commonly more Law-trials amongſt them in one year, than have been in *England* ſince the Conqueſt. And yet the old *Gauls* in a manner are wholly rooted out of the Country, the ſeveral Nations of *Franks*, *Burgundians*, *Britans*, *Normans*, and *Goths*, being in poſſeſſion of their ſeveral dwellings. Thus alſo it is ſaid by *Tacitus* of the ancient *Germans*, *Diem noctemque continuare potando, nulli opprobrium*; that it was no diſgrace to any, to ſpend the whole day and night in drinking; and more than ſo, *De jungendis affinitatibus, de bello denique & pace, in conviviis conſultare*; that they conſulted over their Cups of their weighty buſineſs. Since which time though all *Germany* hath ſhifted almoſt all her old Inhabitants, and taken in new Colonies of *Swedes*, *Avarers*, *Thuringians*, *Danes*, *Sclaves*, *Hunns*, *Saxons*, and other Nations; yet ſtill thoſe ill cuſtoms are as much in uſe amongſt them, as ever formerly. To go a little further off; The old Philoſopher *Anacharſis* tells us of the ancient *Græcians*, that at the beginning of their Feaſts they uſed little Goblets, πλείονες δὲ ἐν μεγάλοις πίνωσι, and greater towards the end, when they were almoſt drunken: which cuſtom ſtill remains amongſt them, as *G. Sandys* obſerveth, notwithſtanding the great length of time, and all the other changes of ſtate and people, which have hapned ſince. I ſhall not ſpeak here of the effeminateneſs of the *Aſiatick*, or the cruelty or implacableneſs of the *African* Nations, being as great now as in any of the former times, notwithſtanding the great and numerous Plantations of the *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Vandals*, *Sarazens*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, ſucceſſively, and reſpectively in theſe ſeveral Countries. And therefore I conclude this point in theſe words of *Barclay*, *Hæret itaque in omni gente vis quædam inconcuſſa, quæ hominibus pro conditione terrarum in quibus naſci contigerit, ſua fata diviſerit.*

Nor is this all the conſequent of this diſperſion of the Families of the Sons of *Noah*; the ſeparation of their perſons producing, firſt, an alteration of affections, and that engendring natural *Animoſities*: which ſeconded by their ſeveral intereſſes and Reaſons of *State*, hath left almoſt no people without ſome ſuch enemy which doth particularly & perverſly croſs them in all their Counſels. Concerning which, take here the Obſervation of that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian, *Philip de Comines*: which though it be with reference to the *Meridian* of his own time only, yet it may be accommodated generally to all States and Ages, "*In rebus humanis ita comparatum eſt*, "*ut nullus fere ſit populus quem non æmulus aliquis exer-*"*ceat*, &c. It is (ſaith he) ſo ordered in the ſtate of "humane affairs, that there is almoſt no Nation without "a more particular Enemy. The *Engliſh* are enemies

"to

"to the *French*, the *Scots* to the *Engliſh*; the *Portugueze* "have the like inveterate hatred againſt the *Spaniards*. "The Princes of *Italy* enjoy great poſſeſſions without "any good title; but are continually oppoſed by the "more potent Cities of *Venice*, *Florence*, *Genoa*, and *Luca*. "The *Aragonian* Kings of *Naples*, have found perpetu-"al Enemies of the Dukes of *Anjou*; as have the Dukes "of *Millain*, of the houſe of *Orleans*. The Princes of "*Italy*, and the *Florentines*, have a ſtitch at *Venice*; as "the States of *Genoa*, and *Sienna*, have againſt the "*Florentines*. In *Germany* the animoſities have been "great and of long continuance, between the Houſes "of *Auſtria*, and *Bavaria*; the hatred grown beyond "all hopes of reconciliation which is between the *Swit-"zers*, and the *Auſtrian* Family. The Dukes of *Cleve*, "and *Gulick*, are always upon ill terms with their "Neighbours of *Gelderland*: and in the North, the "Cities on the *Baltick* Seas have their continual quarrels "with the Kings of *Denmark*. Nor are the enmities "any thing leſs, if they be not greater, which are "diſcernable amongſt the people of *Aſia* and *Africk*, "than thoſe that are above remembred. So far and to "this purpoſe ſaith that notable and judicious "Writer.

The conſideration of which points, if there were no other, were of it ſelf ſufficient to ſhew the neceſſary uſe of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as well for the underſtanding the affairs of the Ages paſt, as for commerce and correſpondency with the Nations preſent. For had no *Hiſtories* been written in the former times, in what dull ignorance had we lived of all thoſe occurrences which do ſo much concern the whole ſtate of Mankind, and are our principal directors in Life and Action? in which reſpect the Orator moſt truly calleth it, *Magiſtram vitæ*. For upon the credit of this *Hiſtory*, the examples of our Anceſtors, the grounds of civil prudence, and the fames of men do moſt eſpecially depend. And certainly to draw back the mind to the contemplation of Matters long ago paſſed; to ſearch out with diligence, and to deliver with faith, freedom, and the life of expreſſion, ſuch things as are found out on a diligent ſearch; to repreſent unto our eyes the changes of Times, the Characters of Perſons, the uncertainties of Counſels, and the Conveyances of Actions, the ſubtilties of Pretenſions, and the Secrets of State; muſt of neceſſity be a work of as publick uſe, as it is of great both pains and judgement. Beſides, it gives a kind of eternity to all ſuch men, who by their Counſels or Atchievements have deſerved nobly of thoſe Kingdoms, and Commonwealths, wherein they lived. And thereupon the *Orator* doth not only call it, *Magiſtram vitæ*, but *Lucem veritatis*, *Teſtem temporis*, *Nuntiam vetuſtatis*, *& Vitæ memoriam*. According to which Character I find theſe Verſes ſet before a Chronicle of ſome Kings of *England* (more worth than all the Book beſides;)

For though in theſe days Miracles be fled,
Yet this ſhall of good Hiſtories *be ſaid,*
They call back time that's paſt, and give life to the dead.

Nor want there other motives to endear unto us the uſe of *Hiſtory*, beſides the light it gives unto all the remarkable Actions of preceding times; and the *eternity* (if I may ſay ſo) which it conferreth on the *Actors* themſelves, by the preſervation of their names from the ruins of time, and the pit of Oblivion. For firſt, it ſtirreth men to Virtue, and deters them from Vice, by ſhewing forth the glorious memories of vertuous men and the ill ſavour which is left behind men of ungodly life; and eſpecially keeps perſons of moſt eminent place from letting looſe the reins unto all licentiouſneſs, by repreſenting this to their conſideration, That all their Actions ſhall be laid open one day to the view of the Vulgar. Secondly, it hath been a principal Conſerver of moſt Arts and Sciences, by keeping on Record the Dictates and Opinions of ſo many of the old *Philoſophers*; out of which, a perfect body of *Philoſophy*, and others of the Liberal Arts hath been collected and digeſted. Thirdly, it is the beſt *School-maſter* in the Art of War, and teacher of Stratagems; and in that can practically afford more punctual directions, than can be otherwiſe obtained; and is withal the beſt Aſſiſtant to the Stateſman or Politician, who from hence draw their Obſervations and Concluſions; and become thereby ſerviceable to their Prince and Country, though never travelled more than amongſt their Books. So *Archimedes* in his ſtudy, and *Demoſthenes* in his Orators Gown, endangered more the enemies of their ſeveral Countries, than the *Athenians*, or *Syracuſans*, did by dint of Sword. And laſt of all, beſides theſe civil benefits and conſiderations, and the great help which it affords in the way of diſcourſe; there is no particular branch of knowledge more uſeful for the true and perfect underſtanding of holy Scripture, than that of *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Profane* Hiſtory; or which gives clearer light to many dark paſſages thereof, eſpecially in the *Prophetical* Writings of either Teſtament.

This, as it ſhews the neceſſary uſe and benefit which redounds from *Hiſtory*, ſo doth it ſerve to uſher in that commendation which belongs to the ſtudy of *Geography* alſo; without ſome knowledge wherein, the ſtudy of Hiſtory is neither ſo pleaſant, nor ſo profitable, as a judicious Reader would deſire to have it. 'Tis true, *Geography* without *Hiſtory* hath life and motion, but very unſtable, and at random; but *Hiſtory* without *Geography*, like a dead carkaſs, hath neither life, nor motion at all, or moves at leaſt but ſlowly on the underſtanding. For what delight or ſatisfaction can any man receive from the reading of Story, without he know ſomewhat of the places, and the conditions of the people, which are therein mentioned? In which regard *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath deſerved very well of all his Readers; premiſing to the Actions of every Country ſome brief Deſcription of the place and chief Towns therein. For though the greatneſs of the Action doth ennoble and adorn the place; yet it is the knowledge of the place, which adds delight and ſatisfaction unto the reading of the Story, which conveighs it to us. *Hiſtory* therefore and *Geography*, like the two Fires or Meteors, which Philoſophers call *Caſtor* and *Pollux*, if joined together, crown our reading with delight and profit; if parted, threaten both with a certain ſhipwrack; and are like two Siſters dearly loving, not without pity (I had almoſt ſaid impiety) to be kept aſunder. So as that which Sir *Philip Sidney* ſaid of *Argalus* and *Parthenia*,

Her being was in him alone,
And ſhe not being, he was none;

may be as juſtly ſaid of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, as of thoſe two Lovers. And yet this is not all the benefit which redounds from the ſtudy of *Geography*, which is exceeding uſeful to the reading of the holy Scriptures, as in diſcovering the ſituation of *Paradiſe*, the bounds and borders of thoſe Countries which are therein mentioned; eſpecially with relation to the travels of the *Patriarchs*, *Prophets*, *Evangeliſts* and *Apoſtles*, yea of *Chriſt* himſelf; not otherwiſe to be comprehended and underſtood, but by

by the help of *Geographical* Tables and deſcriptions. Beſides this, it is uſeful to moſt ſorts of men, as to *Aſtronomers*, who are hereby informed of the different appearances of Stars in ſeveral Countries; their ſeveral influences and aſpects, their riſing and ſetting, according to different *Horizons*. Secondly, to *Phyſitians*, who are hereby acquainted with the different temper of mens bodies, according to the *Climes* they live in; the nature and growth of many *Simples*, and Medicinal Drugs, whereof every Country under Heaven hath ſome more natural and proper to it ſelf, than to any others. Thirdly, to *States-men*, who from hence draw their knowledge of the nature and diſpoſition of thoſe people with whom they are to negotiate; the bounds and borders both of their own Kingdoms, and the Neighbouring Countries, with the extent of their reſpective Dominions by Sea and Land; without the exact knowledge of which, there would be a perpetual Seminary of Wars and diſcord. Fourthly, to *Merchants*, *Mariners*, and *Souldiers*; the ſeveral Profeſſors of which kinds of life, find nothing more neceſſary for them in their ſeveral callings, than a competent knowledge in *Geography*; which preſents to them many notable advantages, both for their profit and contentment. Finally, by the ſtudy of *Geography*, a man that hath not opportunity nor means of travelling, may with as much benefit, but far leſs danger and expence, acquaint himſelf with the particular deſcriptions of Kingdoms, Provinces, Cities, Towns and Caſtles, with all things conſiderable in the ſame, together with the cuſtoms, manners, and diſpoſitions of all Foreign Nations: and that too in as full a manner, as if he had ſurvey'd the one, and obſerved the other, by a perſonal viſit of the places repreſented to him.

Such is the neceſſary uſe which men of ingenuous ſtudies, and profeſſions, do, and may make of *Hiſtory* and *Geography*, in the courſe of their callings and imployments. And there are ſome things alſo neceſſary to the knowledge of each, that we may ſtudy them with the greater benefit and contentation. To *Hiſtory*, it is only requiſite that it be defined, diſtinguiſhed from ſuch writings as do ſeem to challenge the name of Hiſtories; and that ſomewhat be premiſed of thoſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from which all people do begin their computations. But to *Geography* it is needful not only that we do define it, but that we explicate thoſe Terms, or ſecond *Notions*, which are not obvious to the underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt then for *Hiſtory*, if we conſult the name or *Quid nominis* of it, it is derived ἀπὸ τῦ ἱςορεῖν, *i. e. videre*; and therefore properly doth ſignifie a relation of ſuch remarkable actions at which the Author was an Eye-witneſs, if not an Agent, *Apud veteres enim* (ſaith *Iſidore*) *nemo ſcribebat* Hiſtoriam, *niſi is qui interfuiſſet, & ea quæ ſcribēda eſſent vidiſſet*. But now the cuſtomary uſe of the word hath taught it a more ample ſignification. *Hiſtory* being defined to be A *Perfect Relation of all Occurents obſervable, hapning in the State whereof it is written, deſcribed by the Motives, Pretexts, Conſultations, Speeches and Events; a ſpecial care being had both of Time and Place.*

As for the writings which do challenge the name of *Hiſtory*, but indeed are really diſtinguiſhed from it, they are *Commentaries*, *Annals*, *Diaries*, or *Journals*, and *Chronologies*. Firſt, *Commentaries* ſet down only a naked continuance of Events & Actions, without the Motives and deſigns, the Counſels, Speeches, Occaſions and Pretexts of buſineſſes. So that *Cæſar* with more modeſty than true propriety of ſpeech, applyed the name of *Commentaries* to the beſt *Hiſtory* in the World, A *Hiſtory* commended by King *James* to his Son Prince *Henry*, above all other prophane Authors, both for the ſweet flowing of the ſtyle, and the worthineſs of the matter it ſelf. *For I have ever* (ſaith he) *been of this opinion, that, Of all* Ethnick *Emperors or great Captains, he hath farthеſt exceeded both in his practice and in his precepts, for Martial affairs.* Which makes me the more wonder at the ſtrange and unjuſt cenſure of *Juſtus Lipſius* who calls them *Nudam & ſimplicem narrationem*, for being intituled *Commentaries*, they do (ſaith he) *nil polliceri præter nomen*; with pride and arrogance enough. 2. For *Annals* next; they are a bare recital only of the Actions happening every year, without regard had to the cauſes and pretexts, or any of the chief Ingredients required in *Hiſtory*. So that *Tacitus* had no other Reaſon to give the name of *Annals* to his excellent Work, than that it is diſtinguiſhed by the years of the Conſuls. Otherwiſe there is no great difference as unto the matter betwixt an *Hiſtory* and an *Annal*, the ſubject of them both, being matter of State; and not ſuch trival things as Triumphs, Pageants, and ſuch like, which ſtand not with the gravity and authority of Hiſtorical *Annals:* betwixt which and a *Diary*, the ſame *Tacitus* (ſpeaking of ſome magnificent ſtructures which were built that year) doth make this difference, *Res illuſtres* Annalibus, *talia* diurnis *Urbis actis mandari*, that matters of the greater moment were committed to *Annals*, and unto *Diaries* the Acts & Accidents of a meaner nature. 3. But *Diaries*, beſides this difference in point of matter are diſtinguiſhed from *Annals* alſo in point of time; a *Diary* or *Journal*, as the name imports, containing the Actions of each day; of which kind was the Chronicle called for by *Abaſuerus*, in which the Actions of his Court were referred to *Journals*, and in the which he found the relation of the treaſon intended againſt him by his Eunuchs. And of this kind was that of King *Edward* the ſixth, mentioned in the Hiſtory of his life, by Sir *John Hayward*. 4. Laſt of all for *Chronologies*; they are only bare ſupputations of times, with ſome brief touch upon the Actions therein hapning, ſuch as are thoſe of *Euſebius*, *Funcius*, *Calviſius*, and *Helvicus*; of which laſt I dare give that teſtimony which *Paterculus* affords to *Ovid*, *viz.* that he is *perfectiſſimus in forma operis ſui*; though he and all the reſt are debtors to *Euſebius* for the incredible pains taken by him in his excellent *Chronicon*. Out of theſe four, as out of the four Elements, the *Quinteſſence* of Hiſtory is extracted: borrowing from *Annals* time, from *Diaries* and *Commentaries* matter, from *Chronologies* conſent of time and co-etanity of Princes; and thereto adding of her own all ſuch other Ornaments in which theſe four are found defective.

That which remains is to premiſe ſomewhat of theſe ſeveral *Epoches*, from whence particular States, Nations and People, make their computations. Theſe have been very different in former times, according to the ſeveral occaſions took in ſeveral Countries. The *Jews* had ſeveral *Epoches* peculiar to themſelves alone, and one in common with their Neighbours. Thoſe which they had amongſt themſelves were firſt from the Creation of the World, or the beginning of time; Secondly from the univerſal Deluge, which hapned, *A.M.* 1656. Thirdly, from the Confuſion of Tongues, *A.M.* 1786. Fourthly, from *Abrahams* journy out of *Chaldæa* into *Canaan*, *A.M.* 2021. Fifthly, from their deliverance out of *Egypt*, *A.M.* 2453. Sixthly, from the firſt year of *Jubilee*, *A.M.* 2499. Seventhly, from the building of *Solomons* Temple, *An.* 2932. And laſtly, from the Captivity of *Babylon*, *An.* 3368. That which they had common with other Nations, was the *Æra* or *Epoche* of the victory of the *Greeks*, which took beginning on the firſt Victory which *Seleucus* had againſt *Antigonus*, which was in *A. M.* 3637. an Accompt much uſed by the *Jews*, *Chaldeans*, *Syrians*, and other Nations of the Eaſt.

But the *Chaldæans* alſo had their own *Epoche* or Accompt apart, reckoning their time from the firſt year of *Nabonaſſer* (*Salmonaſſer* he is called in Scripture) which being 438 years before this of *Seleucus*, muſt fall in *A.M.* 3201. Next for the *Græciani*, they reckon'd a long while by *Olympiades*, the firſt of which is placed in the year of the World, 3174 (of which more hereafter.) But this Accompt periſhing under the *Conſtantinopolitans*, they reckoned after by *Indictions* (an accompt diviſed by *Juſtinian*:) every *Indiction* containing 15. years, the firſt beginning *A. Chr.* 513. which amongſt *Chronologers* is ſtill uſed. The *Romans* reckoned firſt from the foundation of their City, which was *A.M.* 3213. and afterwards from the ſixteenth year of *Auguſtus* his Empire, (being that which is properly called the *Roman Æra*) *A.M.* 3936. An accompt uſed by the *Spaniards* (where it firſt began) till the reign of *Pedro* the fourth of *Aragon*, who abrogated it in his Dominions, *A. Chr.* 1350. followed therein by *John* the firſt of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1383. and then at laſt by the King of *Portugal* alſo, 1415. The *Chriſtians* generally do reckon from the birth of *CHRIST*, but this they did not uſe till the year 600. following in the mean time the Accompt of the Empire. And finally the *Mahometans* begin their *Hegira* (for ſo they call the time of their Computation) from the flight of their Prophet *Mahomet* from *Mecca*, when he was driven thence by the *Phylarchæ*, which hapned *A.Chr.* 617. Of theſe we ſhall make uſe generally but of two alone, thoſe namely of the Worlds Creation, and our Saviours Birth; and of the building of *Rome*, and the flight of *Mahomet*, in things that do relate to thoſe ſeveral States.

Next for *Geography* we will firſt define it, and after explicate ſuch terms or ſecond notions, as are not obvious to the underſtanding of every Reader. Firſt for the definition of it, it is ſaid by *Ptolomy* to be a *deſcription of the whole Earth*, or *the whole Earth imitated by writing and delineation, with all other things generally annexed unto it.* Ἡ γεωγραφία μίμησις ἐστι διὰ γραφῆς (and not διαγραφῆς, as it is commonly but corruptly read) τῆ κατειλημμένη τῆς ὑγῆς μέρους ὅλη μετὰ τῶν ὡς ἐπίπαν αὐτῷ συνημμένων, as his own words are. In which we look not on the Earth ſimply as it is an Element, for ſo it belongeth to *Philoſophy*; but as it is a *Sphærical* body proportionably compoſed of Earth and Water, and ſo it is the ſubject of *Geography*.

Firſt for the *Earth*, which is the firſt part of this body, it is affirmed by the beſt Writers to be 21600 miles in compaſs; which is demonſtrable enough. For being there are in every of the greater Circles 360 degrees, every degree being reckon'd at 60 miles: let 360 be multiplied by 60 and the *Product* will be 21600 as before is ſaid. So that if it were poſſible to make a path round about the Earth, an able Footman going conſtantly 24 miles a day, would compaſs it in 900 days.

The Earth is divided, In reſpect of men, into the right hand and the left; In reſpect of it ſelf, into parts Real and Imaginary.

To *Poets* which turn their faces towards the *Fortunate Iſlands* (ſo memorized and chanted by them) which are ſituated in the Weſt; the North is the right hand, and the South the left.

To the *Augures* of old, and in our days to *Prieſts* and men in holy Orders, who uſually in their Sacrifices and divine Oblations, convert themſelves unto the Eaſt; the South is the right hand, and the North the left.

To *Aſtronomers*, who turn their faces towards the South, becauſe that way the motions of the *Planets* may be beſt obſerved, the Weſt is the right hand, and the Eaſt the left.

Finally, to *Geographers*, who, by reaſon they have ſo much to do with the *Elevation* of the *Pole*, do turn their faces towards the North; the Eaſt is the right hand, and the Weſt the left.

The *Real* parts of the Earth are divided commonly into *Continents*, *Iſlands*.

A *Continent* is a great quantity of Land, not ſeperated by any Sea from the reſt of the World, as the whole Continent of *Europe*, *Aſia*, *Africa*; or the Continents of *France*, *Spain*, *Germany*.

An *Iſland* is a part of Earth invironed round about with ſome Sea or other; as the Iſle of *Britain*, with the Ocean; the Iſle of *Sicily*, with the Mediterranean: and therefore in *Latine* it is called *Inſula*, becauſe it is ſituate *in ſalo*, as ſome derive it.

Touching the *Continent* I have nothing in general to inlarge, till we come to the particular *Chorography* and deſcription of them. But for Iſlands (leaving the diſquiſition of their being, or not being before the Flood) there are four caſes to which they may be thought to owe their Original. 1. an *Earthquake*, which works two ways towards their production: Firſt, when by it one part of a Country is forcibly torn away from the other; and ſo *Eubœa* was divided from the reſt of *Attica*: and ſecondly when ſome vehement wind or vapour being ſhut up in ſuch parts of the Earth as be under the Sea, raiſeth the Earth above the Water; whereunto the Original of moſt of thoſe Iſlands, which are far remote from any part of the Continent, is probably to be referred. 2. Great Rivers at their entry into the Sea carry with them abundance of gravel, dirt, and weeds; which, if the Sea be not the more working, will in time ſettle to an Iſland. So the Corn which *Tarquinius* ſowed in the *Campus Martius*, being Cut down by the people and caſt into *Tiber*, ſetled together, and made the *Holy Iſland*. So the River *Achelous* cauſed the *Echinades*, as we ſhall more at large declare; and ſo the Iſland of *Loanda* in the Kingdom of *Congo*, is ſaid to have been made out of the Sands of the Ocean, and the Mire of the great River *Laanza*, caſt into an heap, and at laſt formed into an Iſland. 3. The Sea violently beating on ſome ſmall Iſthmus, weareth it through, and turneth the *Peninſula* into a compleat *Iſle*. Thus was *Sicily* divided from *Italy*, *Cyprus* from *Syria*, *England* from *France*, and *Wight* from the reſt of *England*. And 4. ſometimes as it eateth and worketh on ſome places, ſo it voluntarily leaveth and abandoneth others, which in ſome time grow to be *Iſlands*, and firm land under foot. So it is thought the *Iſles* of *Zealand* have been once part of the main Sea: and *Verſtegan* proveth it, becauſe that the Husbandmen in tilling and manuring the ground, find ſometimes Anchors here and there fixt, but very often the bones of huge and great fiſhes, which could by no accident come hither. To theſe kind of Iſlands, *Pythagoras* in *Ovid* alluding, ſaith,

——Vidi factas exæquare terras,
Et procul a pelago conchæ jacuere marinæ,
Et vetus inventa eſt in montibus anchora ſummis.

Oft have I ſeen that earth, which once I knew
Part of the Sea; ſo that a man might view
Huge ſhels of Fiſhes in the upland ground;
And on the Mountain-tops old Anchors found.

As concerning the ſituation of *Iſlands*, whether commodious or not, this is my judgment. I find in *Machiavel*, that for a City whoſe people covet no Empire but their own Towns, a barren place is better than a fruitful; becauſe in ſuch ſeats they are compelled to work

work and labour, by which they are freed from idleneſs, and by conſequence from riotouſneſs: but for a City whoſe Inhabitants deſire to enlarge their Confines, a fertile place was rather to be choſen than a ſteril, as being more able to nouriſh multitudes of people. The like I ſay of Iſlands. If a *Prince* deſire rather to keep than augment his Dominions, no place fitter for his abode than an Iſland; as being by it ſelf and nature ſufficiently defenſible. but if a King be minded to add continually to his Empire, an Iſland is no fit ſeat for him; becauſe partly by the uncertainty of Winds and Seas, partly by the longſomneſs of the ways, he is not ſo well able to ſupply and keep ſuch forces as he hath on the Continent. An example hereof is *England*, which hath even to admiration repelled the moſt puiſſant Monarch of *Europe*; but for the cauſes above mentioned, cannot ſhew any of her winnings on the firm land, though ſhe hath attempted and atchiev'd as many glorious exploits, as any Country in the World.

The Continent and Iſland are ſub-divided into *Peninſula*, *Iſthmus*, *Promontorium*.

Peninſula, *quaſi pene Inſula*, is a tract of land, which being almoſt encompaſſed round by water, is joined to the firm land by ſome little *Iſthmus*; as *Peloponneſus*, *Taurica*, and *Peruana*.

Iſthmus, is that narrow neck of land, which joineth the *Peninſula* to the *Continent*; as the Straights of *Dariene* in *America*, and of *Corinth* in *Greece*.

Promontorium, is a high Mountain which ſhooteth it ſelf into the Sea, the utmoſt end of which is called a *Foreland*, or *Cape*; as the *Cape of Good Hope* in *Africk*, *Cape Comari* in *India*, *&c.*

The *Imaginary* parts of the Earth are ſuch which not being at all in the Earth, muſt yet be ſuppoſed to be ſo, for the better teaching and learning this Science; and are certain Circles going about the Earth, anſwerable to them in Heaven, in name.

Theſe Circles are either the Greater, or Leſſer: in both which, there are 360 Degrees, which in the greater Circles are greater than thoſe in the leſſer; and every Degree in the greater is 60 miles.

The greater Circles are either Immutable, as the *Æquator*. Mutable as, as the *Horizon*, *Meridian*.

The *Æquator* is a great Circle going round about the Terreſtrial Globe from Eaſt to Weſt. It paſſeth through *Habaſſia*, *Sumatra*, *Guiana*, *&c.* The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Latitude* of any *Town*, *Promontory*, *&c.* Now the *Latitude* is the diſtance of a place South or North from the *Æquator*, or middle of the World; and muſt be meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees in the *Meridian*.

The *Meridian* is a great Circle rounding the Earth from Pole to Pole. There are many *Meridians*, according to the divers places in which a man liveth; but the chief and firſt *Meridian* paſſeth through the Iſland St. *Michael*, one of the *Azores*. The uſe of it is to ſhew the *Longitude* of any place. Now the *Longitude* of a *City*, *Cape*, *&c.* is the diſtance of it Eaſt and Weſt from the firſt *Meridian*, and is uſually meaſured on the Globe by the Degrees of the *Æquator*.

The *Horizon* is a great Circle, deſigning ſo great a ſpace of the earth, as a quick ſight can ken in an open field. The uſe of it is to diſcern the divers riſings and ſettings of the Stars.

The leſſer Circles either are noted with ſome name, as Tropical of *Cancer*, *Capricorn*; *Polar*, either *Artick*, *Antartick*; Noted with no diſtinct name, and are the *Parallels*.

The *Tropick* of *Cancer* (ſo called of the Cœleſtial Sign *Cancer*) is diſtant from the *Æquinoctial* 23 Degrees Northward, and paſſeth through *Barbary*, *India*, *China*, and *Nova Hiſpania*.

The *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, equally diſtant from the *Æquator* Southward, paſſeth through *Æthiopia inferior*, and the midſt of *Peruana*. And this is to be obſerved in theſe *Tropicks*, that when the Sun is in the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, our days are at the longeſt; and when he is gone back to the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, the days are at the ſhorteſt. The firſt they call the Summer, the laſt they call the Winter *Solſtice*; the firſt happening on, or about St. *Barnabies* day in *June*; the laſt on, or about St. *Lucies* day in *December*.

The *Artick* Circle (ſo called for that it is correſpondent to the Conſtellation in Heaven called the *Bear*, in *Greek*, *Arctos*) is diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Cancer* 45 Degrees, and paſſeth through *Norway*, *Muſcovy*, *Tartary*, *&c.*

The *Antartick* (ſo called becauſe oppoſite to the other) is as much diſtant from the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and paſſeth through *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*. The uſe of theſe four Circles is to deſcribe the *Zones*.

The *Zones* are ſpaces of Earth included betwixt two of the leſſer nominated Circles. They are in number five; one over-hot, two over-cold, and two temperate.

The over-hot, or *Torrid Zone*, is betwixt the two *Tropicks*, continually ſcorched with the preſence of the Sun.

The two over-cold, or *Frigid Zones*, are ſituate between the two *Polar* Circles, and the very *Poles*; continually wanting the neighbourhood of the Sun.

The two *Temperate Zones*, are betwixt the *Tropicks* of *Cancer*, and the *Artick*; and twixt the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*, and the *Antartick* Circles; enjoying an indifferency between heat and cold; ſo that the parts next the *Torrid Zone* are the hotter, and the parts next the *Frigid Zone* are the colder.

Theſe five *Zones* are diſpoſed according to the order of the *Zones* in Heaven; of which thus *Ovid Metamorph.* 1.

Utque duæ dextra cœlum, totidemq; ſiniſtra
Parte ſecant Zonæ, quinta eſt ardentior illis;
Sic onus incluſum numero diſtinxit eodem
Cura Dei, totidemq; plagæ tellure premuntur.
Quarum quæ media eſt, non eſt habitabilis æſtu;
Nix tegit alta duas: totidem inter utramq; locavit,
Temperiemq; dedit, miſta cum Frigore Flamma.

And as two *Zones* do cut the Heavens right-ſide,
And likewiſe other two the left divide,
The midſt in heat excelling all the reſt;
Even ſo it ſeem'd to the Creator beſt,
That this our World ſhould ſo divided be,
That with the Heavens in *Zones* it might agree.
The midſt in heat; the outward moſt excell
In Snow and Ice, ſcarce fit for men to dwell.
Betwixt theſe two Extreams, two more are fixt,
Where heat with cold indifferently is mixt.

Parallels, called alſo *Æquidiſtants*, circle the Earth from Eaſt to Weſt, and are commonly ten Degrees aſunder: Such are the *Parallels* which are ſet down in our Maps and Globes. But there are another ſort of *Parallels*, two of which go to a *Clime*. Theſe are called *Artificial Parallels*, becauſe they ſhew the difference of the *Artificial* days; and are of an unequal breadth, as we ſhall ſee in the *Table* following. The uſe of theſe leſſer *Parallels* is to ſhew the *Climates*.

Now a *Clime*, or *Climate*, is a ſpace of the Earth contained betwixt three *Parallels*, the middlemoſt whereof divideth it into two equal parts; ſerving for ſetting out the length and ſhortneſs of the days in every Country. For under the *Æquator* the days are of the juſt length of

12 hours; but afterwards they encreaſe the length of half an hour for every *Clime*, till they come to the length of 24 hours, without night at all; which length attained, they encreaſe no more by hours, but by weeks and months, till they come to the length of half a year. So that we are to reckon 24 *Climes* Northward, and as many Southward: Thoſe Northward known by the proper name of the place or City over which the middle *Parallel* of the *Clime* doth paſs, as *Dia Meroes*, *Dia Sienes*, &c. Thoſe on the South by the ſame names, with the condition of *Anti-Dia-Sienes*, *Anti-Dia-Meroes*, &c. 'Tis true, the ancient *Coſmographers* made but ſeven *Climes* in all; at the moſt but nine. Nor needed they to add more, as the cauſe ſtood with them; the extent of the habitable World towards each of the Poles, not being ſo fully known to them, as it is to us.

And here, becauſe thoſe *Climes* are not of equal breadth or extent of Latitude, but grow narrower and narrower towards each Pole; in which regard, it is impoſſible to deſcribe them under any Rule: I have thought fit to add this enſuing Table, partly framed out of the Commentaries of *Clavius* on the works of *John de Sacro Boſco* and partly out of *Hues* his Book, *Of the uſe of the Globes*. The whole divided into 7 Columes. In the firſt whereof is ſhewed what *Climes* are inhabited by the *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, and *Heteroſcii*, which terms we ſhall anon expound; in the ſecond, is ſet down the number of the *Climes* themſelves; In the third the number of the *Parallels*; In the fourth, the length of the days in Summer; In the fifth, the diſtance of every *Clime* and *Parallels* from the *Æquator*; In the ſeventh, the name of the Town or place, through which the middlemoſt of the three *Parallels* doth paſs in this manner following.

Here followeth the Table of the Climes.

A ſecond uſe of theſe *Parallels* and other Circles; is for diſtinction of men in their ſeveral dwellings, who are (according as they are treated of in *Geography*) divided in reſpect of their ſhadows into *Amphiſcii*, *Periſcii*, *Heteroſcii*; and in reſpect of their ſite and poſition, into *Antœci*, *Periœci*, and *Antipodes*. 1. *Amphiſcii* are ſuch as dwell between the two *Tropicks*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are both ways: ſometimes (when the Sun is North) to the South; ſometimes (when the Sun is South) to the North.

2. *Periſcii* are ſuch as dwell beyond the *Polar* Circles ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows are on all ſides of them.

3. *Heteroſcii* are ſuch as dwell in either of the two temperate *Zones*; ſo called, becauſe their ſhadows reach but one way; *viz.* in our *Zone*, to the North only; as in the other, to the South only.

4. *Antœci* are ſuch as dwell under the ſame *Meridian*, and the ſame *Latitude* or *Parallel* equally diſtant from the *Æquator*; the one Northward, the other Southward: the days in both places being of a length? but the Summer of the one, being the others Winter.

5. *Periœci* are ſuch as dwell in the ſame *Parallel*, on the ſame ſide of the *Æquator*, how diſtant ſoever they be Eaſt and Weſt: the ſeaſon of the year, and the length of days being to both alike; but the ones midnight, being the others noon.

6. *Antipodes* are ſuch as dwell feet to feet, ſo as a right line drawn from the one unto the other, paſſeth from North to South, through the Center of the World. Theſe are diſtant 180 degrees, which is half the compaſs of the Earth. They differ in all things, as ſeaſons of the year, length of days, riſing and ſetting of the Sun, with the like. A matter reckoned ſo ridiculous, and impoſſible (if not ſomewhat worſe) in the former times, that *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* hapning to ſee a Tractate written by *Virgilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg*, touching the *Antipodes*; and not knowing what damnable Doctrine might be couched under that ſtrange name, made complaint firſt to the Duke of *Bohemia*, and after to Pope *Zachary*, *An.* 745. By whom the poor Biſhop (unfortunate only in being learned in ſuch a time of ignorance) was condemned of Hereſie. But *Boniface* might the rather be excuſed, in regard that many of his betters fell alſo on the ſelf-ſame error. For venerable *Bede*, a man whoſe Books Arch. *Boniface* was not worthy to carry, eſteemeth the opinion touching the *Antipodes*, to be no better than a Fable; *neq; enim* Antipodarum *ullatenus eſt fabulis accommodandus aſſenſus*, in his Book *de Ratione temporum*, *cap.* 32. And yet the marvel is the leſs, conſidering that he lived in the darker times of the Church, when the ſtate of learning was in its declination; when S. *Auguſtine* and *Lactantius*, and ſome others of the Ancient Writers, who lived when learning was at the very height, condemns this point of the *Antipodes*, for an incredible ridiculous Fable: whoſe words I could put down at large, did I think it neceſſary. So that we of theſe Ages have very good cauſe (to uſe the words of the late L. *Verulam*) to congratulate the preſent times, in that the World in theſe our days, have *through-lights* made in it, after a wonderful manner; whereby we clearly ſee thoſe things, which either were unknown, or but blindly gueſſed at by the Ancients.

But to proceed, the ſecond part of the *Terreſtrial Globe* is the *Water*, which making but one *Globe* with the *Earth*, is yet higher than it. This appears, firſt, becauſe it is a body not ſo heavy; Secondly, it is obſerved by Saylors that their Ships move faſter to the ſhore than from it; whereof no reaſon can be given but the height of the water above the land. Thirdly, to ſuch as ſtand on the ſhore, the Sea ſeems to ſwell into the form of a round hill, till it puts a bound upon our ſight. Now that the Sea hovering thus over and above the Earth, doth not over-whelm it, muſt be aſcribed only to his Power and Providence, who, *hath made the waters to ſtand on a heap, who hath ſet them a bound that they ſhould not paſs, nor turn again to cover the Earth.* The other affections and properties of the Sea, as motion, ſaltneſs, and the like, I willingly omit, as belonging rather to Philoſophers, than this preſent Argument.

The *Sea* or *Water* is divided into 1. *Oceanus*. 2. *Mare*. 3. *Fretum*. 4. *Sinus*. 5. *Lacus*. 6. *Flumina*.

Of which and other *Waters* thus ſaid *Ovid* in his *Metamorphoſis*.

Tum Freta *diffudit*, *rapidiſq*; *tumeſcere ventis*
Juſſit, *& ambitæ circundare littora terræ*.
Addidit & Fontes, *&* Stagna *immenſa*, Lacuſq;
Fluminaq; *obliquis cinxit declivia ripis*, *&c.*

Which may be Engliſhed to this purpoſe.

He ſpread the *Seas*, which then he did command
To ſwell with winds, and compaſs round the Land:
To thoſe he adds *Springs*, *Ponds*, and *Lakes* immenſe,
And *Rivers*, which their winding Borders ſenſe.
Of theſe not few Earths thirſty jaws devour,
The reſt their ſtreams into the *Ocean* pour;
When in that liquid Plain with freer Wave,
The foamy Cliffs inſtead of Banks they lave.

And

A Table of the Climates belonging to the three ſorts of Inhabitants: Page 20.

Inhabitants belonging to ſeveral Climates.	*Climes.*	*Parallels.*	*The longeſt ſummer-day.* H. Scr.	*Latit. & Elevation of the Pole.* Deg. Sc.	*The breadth of the Climats.* Deg. Sc.	*The places by which the Climes paſs.*
	0	0	12 0	0 0		
		1	12 15	4 18	4 18	*The beginning from the Æquator:*
Amphiſcii.	1	2	12 30	8 34	8 25	Sinus Arabicus, *or the Red-Sea.*
		3	12 45	12 43		
	2	4	13 0	16 43	7 50	Meros *an Iſland of* Nilus *in* Egypt.
		5	13 15	20 33		
	3	6	13 30	23 10	7 3	Siene *a City in* Africa.
		7	13 45	27 36		
	4	8	14 0	30 47	6 9	Alexandria *in* Egypt.
		9	14 15	33 45		
	5	10	14 30	36 30	5 17	Rhodes *and* Babylon.
		11	14 45	39 2		
	6	12	15 0	41 22	4 30	Rome *and* Helleſpont.
		13	15 15	43 32		
	7	14	15 30	45 29	3 48	Venice *and* Millain.
		15	15 45	47 20		
	8	16	16 0	49 21	3 13	Podalio *and the leſſer* Tartary.
		17	16 15	50 13		
	9	18	16 30	51 58	2 44	Batavia *and* Witenberg.
		19	16 45	53 17		
	10	20	17 0	54 29	2 17	Roſtoch.
		21	17 15	55 34		
Heteroſcii.	11	22	17 30	56 37	2 0	Ireland *and* Muſcovy.
		23	17 45	57 34		
	12	24	18 0	58 26	1 40	Bohuſe *a Caſtle in* Norway.
		25	18 15	60 14		
	13	26	18 30	59 59	1 26	Gothland,
		27	18 45	60 40		
	14	28	19 0	61 18	1 13	Bergen *in* Norway.
		29	19 15	61 52		
	15	30	19 30	62 25	1 0	Wiburg *in* Finland.
		31	19 45	62 54		
	16	32	20 0	63 22	0 52	Arotia *in* Sweden.
		33	20 15	63 46		
	17	34	20 30	64 0	0 44	*The mouth of* Darecally *a River in* Sweden
		35	20 45	64 30		
	18	36	21 0	64 49	0 36	*Divers places of* Norway.
		37	21 15	65 6		
	19	38	21 30	65 21	0 29	Suecia, Alba Ruſſia.
		39	21 45	65 35		
	20	40	22 0	65 47	0 22	*With many Iſlands*
		41	22 15	65 57		
	21	42	22 30	66 26	0 17	*Thereunto adjoining,*
		43	22 45	66 14		
	22	44	23 0	66 20	0 11	*Wanting ſpecial names,*
		45	23 15	66 5		
	23	46	23 30	66 29	0 5	*And Landmarks.*
		47	23 45	66 30		
	24	48	24 0	66 31	0 0	*Iſland under the Artick Circle.*

		Meuſes.		
Periſcii.	*Here the Climates are accounted by the months, from 66 Degrees 31 Minutes where the day is 14 Hours unto the Pole it ſelf ſet at 90 Degrees, where the artificial day is ſix months.*	1	67 15	*Theſe Climates are ſuppoſed to paſs by divers Iſlands within the Artick Circle, as* Groenland *Iſland,* Greenland; *wherein, as yet, for the narrowneſs of theſe Climates coming near together, and the uncertainty of obſervation, no ſpecial places have been aſſigned, as to the other.*
		2	69 30	
		3	73 20	
		4	78 20	
		5	84 0	
		6	90 0	

And

And first *Oceanus*, the *Ocean*, is that general Collection of all waters, which encompasseth the Earth on every side. A point which *Ovid* hath determined right enough, but laught at by *Herodotus* in the former times; who counted it a gross absurdity for any man to relate or write, that the Earth was round, or encompassed about with the main *Ocean*. But Modern Navigations have found that to be true, which he held ridiculous; and which the most learned in those times knew rather by conjecture than by demonstration. Nor were those Ages so acquainted with those ebbs and flowings of the *Ocean*, and all those other Seas and Rivers which have intercourse with it, as the meanest Sailor at the present. The natural causes of the which seeming so full of difficulty to the best of the Ancients, Experience hath taught us to ascribe wholly to the *Moon*; at whose *Full* and *Prime* the *Tides* are ever highest, and the Sea most furious. For as soon as the Moon cometh forth from under our *Horizon*, the Sea beginneth to swell, and floweth towards the East, (as it were to wait upon her, or bear her company) till she come unto the height of our *Meridian*: after which till her setting or Western fall, the Sea abateth or decreaseth; which we call the *Ebb*. And when she passeth out of our *Horizon* towards the *Antipodes*; the *Ocean* begins to swell till the height of Midnight, and coming towards our *Hemisphere* doth again abate. In brief, from the *New Moon* till the first quarter the Sea decreaseth; from the first quarter to the *full* it is said to *spring*: from the *full* to the last quarter it is said to *nepe*; and from the last quarter to the *prime* it springs again. As for the uncertainty of the Tides, varying every day, it is not so perplexed and intricate, but that they which live on the Banks or Shores thereof know well when to look for it; the next days Tide coming for the most part, one hour ten minutes after the time it hapned on the day fore-going.

2. *Mare*, the *Sea*, is a part of the main *Ocean*, to which we cannot come but through some *Fretum* or *Straight*; as *Mare Mediterraneum*. And it takes name, First, either from the adjacent shore, as *Mare Adriaticum*, from the City of *Adria*; *Mare Terrhenum*, from the Coast of *Tuscany*: Or, Secondly, from the first Discoverer, as *Mare Magellanicum*, from *Magellanus*, who first found it; Or, Thirdly, from some remarkable Accident, as *Mare Icarium*, from the drowning of *Icarus*, the son of *Dædalus*.

3. *Fretum*, a *Straight* is a part of the *Ocean*, penned within narrow bounds, and opening a way into some Sea, or out of some Sea into the *Ocean*, as the *Straight* of *Hellespont*, *Gibralter*, *Fretum Davies*, *&c.*

4. *Sinus*, a *Creek* or *Bay*, is a Sea contained within a crooked or circling shore, wherewith it is almost environed; as *Sinus Persicus*, *Corinthiacus*, *&c.* and this is sometimes called a *Gulf*, as the *Gulf* of *Lepanto*.

5. *Lacus*, a *Lake*, is a great body or collection of waters, which hath no visible intercourse with the Sea, or influx into it; as the *Lake* of *Thrasymene* in *Italy*; the *Lacus Asphaltites*, or the *Dead Sea*, in the Land of *Canaan*, And of this kind properly is the *Mare Caspium*, though by reason of the greatness of it, it is called a *Sea*.

6. *Flumina*, or *Fluvius*, is a Watercourse continually running, whereby it differeth from *Stagnum*, or a standing Pool, issuing from some Spring or Lake, and emptying it self into some part of the Sea or some other great River; the mouth or out-let of which is called *Ostium*: *Tiberinaque longe Ostia*, as the Poet hath it. These are conceived in the Earth, and derive both their birth and continual sustenance from the Air; which piercing the open chinks or *Chasma's* of the Earth, and congealed by the extream cold of that Element, dissolves into water (as we see the Air in winter-nights to be melted into a pearly dew, sticking on our glass windows): and being grown to some quantity, will (like *Hannibal* in the *Alps*) either find a way, or make a way to vent its superfluity. Which beginning is seconded by the *Ocean*, which running through the hidden passages of the Earth, joineth it self with this aerial vapour, and continueth the begun current. This Sea-water (though in it self of a salt and brackish savour, yet) passing through divers windings and turnings of the Earth, is deprived of all unpleasantness; and by how much the spring-heads of Rivers are remote from the Sea, by so much usually are their waters affected with a delightful relish. Rivers having thus entred themselves into a good course, are never without the assistance of neighbouring springs and waters; by whose addition they augment their streams, till they dischanel themselves into the Sea. Now there is of Rivers a treble use: First, that out of them Drink may be afforded to man and beast; Secondly, that running through the Earth, as blood through the body, by interlacing it, and sometimes overwhelming it, it might make the Earth able to produce those fruits which are necessary for the life of man. The last use of Rivers, is, easiness and speediness of conduct; and hereto are required four conditions: First the *depth*, because deep waters sustain the bigger burdens, and on them navigation is more safe. Secondly, *pleasantness*, whereby the passage is easie both with the stream and against it: whereas in Rivers of a violent current or such as fall down by great *Locks* or *Cataracts*, the sailing or rowing up the water is as dangerous as laborious. Thirdly, the *thickness* of the water; for by how much the more slimy and gross a water is, by so much can it carry the heavier burdens. So *Tiber*, a River of more fame than depth, or breadth, is better for navigation, by reason of its fatness, than the pure and thin waters of the large and excellent River *Nilus*. Fourthly, the *broadness* of the Chanel, that Ships and other Vessels may conveniently winde and turn, and give way to each other. Some of the old *Philosophers* reputed this conduct so dangerous, that one of them being asked whether he thought the living or the dead were the greater number, would not declare himself, because he knew not in which rank to place such as were at Sea. And *Cato Major* thought that men never committed greater folly in their lives than in venturing to go by water, when they might have gone by land. I am none of that Sect, yet I cannot but hold with him that said, *Dulcissima est ambulatio prope aquas, navigatio juxta terram.*

The chief Rivers of *Europe*, are *Danubius*, and the *Rhene*; of *Affrica*, *Nilus*, and *Niger*; of *Asia*, *Ganges*, and *Euphrates*; of *America*, *Orenoque*, and *Maragnan*. Of which and others, more in its proper place.

Thus have we gone over these particulars both of *Earth* and *Water*, which are considerable in *Geography*, and come within the compass of those *Annexaries* of each which *Ptolomy* calleth τὰ συνημμένα: And having so done, may discover where the difference lieth between *Geography* and *Chorography*; which to some men, not rightly looking into the nature of both, seem to be the same. For howsoever a *Chorographer* doth describe a Country by the bounds, Rivers, Hils, and most notable Cities; yet it is still but the description of some place or Country, and not of the whole *Earth* universally, which is the proper work of a *Geographer*. So that *Chorography* differeth from *Geography* as a part from the whole: that being as *Ptolomy* doth very handsomly expres it, like the painting of an eye or an ear, or some other member; this, as the picturing of the head, or whole body of Man. But *Geography* in its full latitude comprehendeth not *Chorography* only, but *Topography* & *Hydrography* also.

Of

Of these the last is the delineation of the Sea by its several Names, Ports, Promontories, Creeks, and other affections; as also of great Lakes and Rivers: which is most necessary for the use of *Mariners*, and is best done by *Petrus de Medina*, *Peter Nonnius* in his *Regula Artis Navigandi*, and *Johannes Aurigarius* in his *Speculum Nauticum*; the chief Writers in the Art of *Pilotism*.

2. *Topography* is the description of some particular place or City; of which kind was the Book of *Stephanus*, περὶ πόλεων, or *de Urbibus*, among the Antients; and the *Theatrum Urbium* written by *Bruinus* in these later times; *Stows* Book of the *Survey of London*, the *French Antiquities de Paris*, and such as these. And of this kind is the description of the Vale of *Tempe*, in the greater *Ortelius*; and those of the *Elysian* fields, the gardens of *Alcinous*, and the *Hesperides* in the antient Poets.

3. *Chorography* (as before was said) is the exact description of some Kingdom, Country, or particular Province of the same; unless this last may fall more properly under the notion of *Topography*. Of this kind the description of the several estates of *Greece* written by *Pausanias*, is of most use & reputation of all the Ancients: as that of *Cambden Clarenceux*, for the Isle of *Britain*; of *Lewis Guicciardine*, for the *Low-Countries*; *Leander* for *Italy*, &c. are amongst the Modern.

4. *Geography*, finally is an aggregate of all these together, borrowing from *Hydrography* the description of Seas and Waters; From *Topography*, that of Towns, Cities, and particular places; and from *Chorography*, the delineations of Regions, Provinces, and Kingdoms, which brought into body, make up that Portraicture or Picture of the whole Earth, and every considerable part thereof, in writing; which, according to *Ptolom*'s definition before mentioned, is properly and truly called *Geography*. In the advancement of which studies, those which have took most pains, with the greatest benefit to Posterity, are the said *Ptolomy*, *Pliny*, and *Strabo* for the elder times; *Mercator*, *Maginus*, and *Ortelius*, for the later Ages. Of which the two first lived in the times of *Antonius Pius*, the *Roman* Emperor, *An. Chr.* 141: or thereabouts; the other in the reign of *Tiberius Cæsar*, the unworthy Successor of *Augustus*: the three last flourishing in the days of our Fathers, about some 80 years ago.

Thus have I briefly summed up those general *Præcognita*, which I conceive are necessary to the knowledge and understanding as well of *History* as of *Geography*. Out of which two compounded and intermixt, ariseth that universal Comprehension of *Natural* and *Civil* story, which by a proper and distinct name may be termed *Cosmography*. And this may well be reckoned amongst mixed stories; for it hath from *Natural History* or *Geography*, the Regions themselves, together with their Sites, and several Commodities; from *Civil History*, Habitations, Governments, and Manners; and from the *Mathematicks*, the *Climates* and Configurations of the Heavens, under which the Coasts and Quarters of the World do lie. Of the Utility and Excellency of which study I need say no more, than what hath been already spoken of the several parts, whereof this is only the Result, desiring pardon of the Reader, that I have Christened these imperfect and unworthy Papers by so noble a name; which I desire they may deserve, though I fear they will not. However I will give the venture, and make as speedy and as profitable a discovery, as the times enable me, of the whole World, and the most observable things therein; according to the best light which the reading of *Histories* and *Geographical* discourses hath supplied me with; beseeching him who made the World, and ordereth all the Governments and Affairs thereof as to him seems best, to bless me in the undertaking; and furnish me with fit Abilities both of strength and judgment to go through with it. *Ipse enim est qui operatur in nobis & velle & perficere*; as the Scripture hath it: And so on in God's name.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHY.

The First Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

ITALY, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the *ISLES* thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN*.

Florus in Procem. l. 1.

Populus Romanus *à Rege* Romulo *ad* Cæsarem Augustum *ita latè per orbem terrarum arma circumtulit, ut qui res ejus legunt, non* unius Populi, *sed* generis humani *facta discant.*

Velleius Patercul. Hist.

Quemadmodum Urbium Imperiorumque, *ita &* Gentium *nunc floret fortuna, nunc senescit, nunc interit.*

LONDON,

Printed by *J. Macock*, for *Philip Chetwind* and *Anne Seile*, MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY.

The Fifth Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

ITALY, the Seigneurie, FRANCE, SPAIN, and
BRITANY, with the ISLES thereof.

BY PETER HEYLYN.

LONDON,
Printed by J. Macock, for Philip Chetwind and
Anne Seile, MDCLXXIII.

THIS CHART WILL BE

APPEARING AT THE

L BE THE FIRST CHART
THE END OF THIS FILM

COSMOGRAPHY:

The First Book,

Containing the CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY of *ITALY*, the *ALPINE* Provinces, *FRANCE*, *SPAIN*, and *BRITAIN*, with the ISLES thereof.

OF THE

WORLD:

And first of

EUROPE.

OF the *Creation* of the World by Almighty God, and the *Plantation* of the same by the Sons of Men, sufficient hath been spoken already. We are to look upon it now, as perfected and peopled in all parts thereof, but all those parts united into one *Compositum*; called therefore by the *Græcians*, Τὸ Πᾶν, and Τὸ Ὅλον, because the *Summa Totalis*, and general comprehension of all things existent. In which respect 'tis called by the *Latins*, *Universum*, a name of multitude, but of a multitude united (*Universi qui in uno loco versi*, say the old *Grammarians*.) The great body of the World, like the body of Man, though it have many parts and members, is but one body only. A body of so perfect & exact a form, of so compleat a *Symmetry* in respect of the particular parts, and all those parts so beautified and adorned by the God of Nature; that from the elegancy and beauties of it, it was called Κόσμος by the *Græcians*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins*; both names declaring the Composure of it to be full of *Ornament*; and all those Ornaments conducting Mankind to the knowledge of God. For (as the *Christian Advocate* reasoneth very strongly), As he which comes into an house, and seeth all things in it ordered in a beautiful and comely order; *utrisus præesse crederet Dominum, &c.* must needs conceive, both that the house had some wise Lord and Master who had so contrived it, and that such Lord and Master of it was of more worth and excellency than the house and furniture: So (saith he) whosoever doth observe the most eminent beauties of the Heaven and Earth, must needs conceive there is some great and more glorious power who did first create it; disposing of all things therein in such excellent manner.

This Contemplation, together with the notions of a *Deity*, which naturally are ingrafted in the soul of man; hath trained up all men in the practice of some *Religion*, though few (comparatively) so happy as to be practised in the true. For though the knowledge and worship of the true God, by reason of some accessions in *America*, and the *Indies*, be more generally diffused than in former times; yet is the least part of the World possessed by them who make profession of that Worship. For dividing the whole World into thirty parts, it hath been found by such as have laboured in this search, that nineteen of them are inhabited by *Idolaters*, who either know no God at all, or worship stocks and stones for gods, even the work of mens hands. Of the 11 parts which are remaining, six are possessed by *Jews*, *Turks*, and *Sarazens*; who though they have the knowledge of the God that made them, yet abnegating, or not worshipping the Lord *that bought them*, they have no part or portion in the true *Religion*. Then for the five which are behind, two are conceived to be of the *Greek* Communion; the other three being divided betwixt those of the Church of *Rome*, and such as otherwise differing in some opinions, pass generally by the name of *Protestant* or Reformed Churches, Which as it sheweth how small a portion of the World is possessed by *Christians*, who only (though not all of them) have reason to pretend to the true *Religion*: So doth it shew (I note this only by the way) how falsly those of *Rome* make multitude of Professors to be a sign of the True Church; and then conceive themselves to be such a multitude, as corresponds unto that sign. Faulty, alike both in the *Position* and the *Application*. For if the multitude of Professors be a sign of the Church, the true Church should be found rather amongst the *Heathens* or *Mahumetans*, than amongst the *Christians*: or if they do restrain their meaning (as I hope they do) to those who make profession of the *Christian* faith: those of the *Greek* Communion, possessing two whole parts of five, will be found more numerous than the members of the Church of *Rome*, though possibly of less esteem in the eye of the World. So infinitely vain was that brag of *Bellarmine* (though otherwise more modest than the rest of the *Jesuits*) affirming positively and expressly, *Romanam Ecclesiam universum plane orbem possidere, i. e.* That the Church of *Rome* is fully of as large a latitude as the World it self. This I have noted by the way, intending to take a more special notice of the state of *Religion* in the several Provinces of the World, to which now I hasten; premising first this scheme of those several parts, into which it doth now stand divided.

The World is divided into two parts; *Unknown*, or not fully discovered; and is divided commonly into *Borealis* and *Australis*: the last taking up the whole *Southern* Continent; the other lying on the *North* of *Europe* and *America*; whereof we shall say somewhat at the end of this Work.

Known, either { Anciently, as { *Europe.* *Asia.* *Africa.* } Lately, as *America.*

Europe is joined to *Asia*, by that space of Earth which is between the heads of *Tanais* and *Duina*; *Asia* is joyned to *Africk*, by the *Egyptian Isthmus*; *America* is divided (as most conjecture) from all of them. *Europe* is separated from *Asia*, by a line drawn from the Bay of St. *Nicolas*, to the head of *Tanais*, from thence by that River it self all the length of his course; then by *Palus Meotis*, the *Euxine* Sea, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, the *Hellespont*, and the *Ægæan*. *Asia* is parted from *Africk* by the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: and *Africa* from *Europe* by the *Mediterranean*. *Africa* is greater than *Europe*, *Asia* than *Africk*, *America* than *Asia*.

They which have entertained a fancy of resembling every Country to things more obvious to the sight and understanding, have likened *Europe* to a *Dragon*; the head of which they make to be *Spain*; the two wings *Italy*, and *Denmark*. In like manner they have been curiously impertinent, in resembling *France*, to a Lozenge or *Rhomboides*; *Belgium* to a Lion; *Britain* to an Ax; *Ireland* to an Egg; *Peloponnesus* to a Plantane leaf; *Spain* to an Ox-hide spread on the ground; *Italy* (which indeed holdeth best proportion) to a mans Leg; with divers the like *Phantasms* of a capricious brain; these Countries no more resembling them, than pictures made when painting was in her infancy, under which they were fain to write, *This is a Lion, and this is a Whale*, for fear the spectators might have taken one for a Cock, and the other for a Cat.

EUROPE, though the least (as being in length but 2800, in breadth but 1200 miles) is yet of most renown amongst us. First, because of the temperature of the Air, and fertility of the soyl; Secondly, from the study of *Arts*, both ingenious and mechanical; Thirdly, because of the *Roman* and *Greek* Monarchies; Fourthly, from the purity and sincerity of the *Christian* Faith; Fifthly, because we dwell in it, and so first place it.

EUROPE is generally said to be so called from *Europa*, the daughter of *Agenor*, King of the *Phœnicians*, brought thence by *Jupiter* (as the Poets feign) in the shape of a *Bull*; or as some Histories say, by a *Cretan* Captain named *Taurus*: as others in a ship whose beak had the portraiture of a *Bull* upon it. But why the bringing of that Lady into the Isle of *Crete*, should give denomination to the whole Continent of *Europe*, whereof that Island is so inconsiderable, and so small a part, I must confess I see no reason. *Goropius Becanus*, who holds the high *Dutch* to be the primitive language, which was spoke in *Paradise*, and loves to fetch all names from thence; not thinking it convenient, that *Europe* being first inhabited by *Gomerians* or *Cimbrians*, should be beholding to the *Græcians* for its name; will have it called *Europe*, *quasi Ver-hop*, by the transposition of the two last letters; *Ver*, signifying excellent, and hop a multitude (whence we use to say, *as thick as Hops*) because *Europe* contains a multitude of excellent people. And on the other side, *Bochartus*, a *French* Writer, loving as much to bring all names from the *Phœnician* or *Punick* tongue, will have it called *Europe* from *Ur-appa*, which signifieth in that language, a *beautiful Countenance*, because the *Europæans* much excelled the *Africans* in whiteness of skin, and clearness of complexion. But in my mind *Herodotus* hath best determined of the controversie, who telleth us plainly, Ὁκόθεν τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, ἔτε ὅστις ἦν ὁ δόμενος, &c. That it is utterly unknown, both whence it had the name of *Europe*, and who first called it so. And yet considering there is a Province in *Thrace* called *Europe*, (whereof more hereafter) why might not the *Asiaticks* give the name of *Europe* to this part of the World, according to the name of that Province which lay neerest to them? as the *Romans* did the name of *Africk* to the other part of the World, after the name of that particular Province or part thereof, which they first brought under their obedience? Or as the *Europæans* gave the name of *Asia*, to the greatest of the three known parts of the World; which properly and originally belonged unto *Asia Minor* (as it since was called); or rather to those parts thereof which lay next to *Greece*; as shall be shewn hereafter in convenient place.

The first inhabitants of *Europe*, as hath been shewn in part already, and shall be shewn more fully in its proper place, were the Sons of *Japhet*; amongst whom, as the Scripture telleth us, *The Isles of the Gentiles were divided*, *Gen.* 10. 5. which includes all the Continent of *Europe*, and the Isles adjoining. For besides, that it is compassed about with the *Cyclades* and other Isles in the Seas of *Greece*, together with the Isles of *Candy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, the Isles of *Britain* and *Zealand*, with their young ones adjacent; *Europe* it self was formerly taken for an Island; as being invironed round with water, saving where it is joined on the North-East to *Asia* the great, which very few of the Antients were acquainted with. And what are the great Countries of *Anatolia*, *Greece*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, all which did fall to the posterity of *Japhet*, but so many *Peninsula's*, or *Demi-Islands*, invironed almost round with one Sea or other? Nor was the name and memory of *Japhet* so much forgotten by the Children which descended of him; but that the *Greeks*, who were the first of their *Europæan* Plantations, retained it a long time in their *Japetus*, whom they make to be the son of *Cœlum* and *Terra*, and the father of the wise *Prometheus*, whom *Ovid* therefore calleth *satus Japeto*, in the first Book of his *Metamorphosis*. So that we see how punctually the first part of Gods blessing was fulfilled upon him; which was, that he would *inlarge the borders of Japhet*, *Gen.* 9. 27. The second part thereof, that he *should dwell in the Tents of Sem*, though it was long before it came to the accomplishment, yet it came at last; and that both in the literal and mystical sense. First, in the *literal*, when the posterity of *Japhet*, both *Greek* and *Romans*, made themselves Masters of *Judæa*, or the Land of *Canaan*, and the Eastern parts, promised to, and possessed by, the seed of *Sem*: Next in the *mystical*, when God was pleased to break down the *partition-wall*, and to incorporate the *Gentiles* of the house of *Japhet*, into the body of the *Church*: which for a long time was restrained to the Line of *Sem*,

Europe may be considered as it stands divided into the *Continent*, and the *Islands*: the *Continent* lying all together; the *Islands* as they are dispersed in the *Greek*, *Ægæan*, *Cretan* and *Ionian* Seas, the *Adriatick* and the *Mediterranean*, and in the *British* & *Northern* Ocean. But in this work we shall discover them, and discourse of them in this following order, dividing *Europe* into 1 *Italy*, 2 the *Alps*, 3 *France*, 4 *Spain*, 5 *Britain*, 6 *Belgium*, 7 *Germany*, 8 *Denmark*, 9 *Swethland*, 10 *Russia*, 11 *Poland*, 12 *Hungary*.

gary, 13 *Sclavonia*, 14 *Dacia*, and 15 *Greece*; and ſpeak of the ſeveral *Iſlands*, as they relate to ſome or other of theſe greater Countries.

In all which Countries and Iſlands belonging to them, beſides the *Latine* Tongue which is now rather *Scholaſtical*, than *National*; and beſides the *Italian*, *French*, and *Spaniſh*, being but as ſo many corruptions of the *Latine*: and beſides the *Engliſh* which is a Compound of *Dutch*, *Latine*, and *French*; there are in all fourteen Mother-Tongues, which owe nothing at all to the *Roman*; that is to ſay, 1 *Iriſh*, ſpoken in *Ireland*, and the Weſt of *Scotland*; 2 *Britiſh*, or *Welch*, in *Wales*, and ſome parts of *Cornwal*; 3 *Cantabrian*, or *Baſquiſh*, in *Biſcay*, about the *Pyrenæan* Hills, and near to the *Cantabrian* Ocean; 4 *Arabick*, in the Mountains of *Granada*, called *Alpuxarras*; 5 *Finnick*, in *Finland* and *Lapland*, Provinces of the Crown of *Sweden*; 6 *Dutch*, (though with different Dialects) in *Germany*, *Belgium*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, *Swethland*; 7 *Cauchian*, which the *Eaſt-Friezlanders* (or *Cauchi*) ſpeak amongſt themſelves, though to ſtrangers they ſpeak the Common *Dutch*, 8 *Sclavoniſh*, in *Sclavonia*, *Poland*, *Hungary*, and almoſt all the parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire; 9 *Illyrian*, on the Eaſt ſide of *Iſtria*, and the Iſle of *Veggia*; 10 *Greek*, in moſt Provinces and Iſles of *Greece*, by the *Greeks* themſelves; 11 *Hungarian*, and 12 *Epirotique*, in the mountanous places of thoſe Countries; 13 *Jazygian*, on the North-ſide of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, and 14 *Tartarian*, in the *Taurca Cherſoneſus*, and other *Europæan* parts of that barbarous people. And this ſhall ſerve for *Europe* in the general notion. Deſcend we now to the particular Kingdoms, Regions, and Iſlands of it; beginning firſt of all with *Italy*, contrary to the uſage of moſt *Geographers*; who commonly begin with *Spain*, or *Ireland*, as being the furtheſt Countries Weſtward, and conſequently neareſt to the firſt *Meridian*, from whence the *Longitude* was reckoned. Which we ſhall do by reaſon of that great influence which the *Romans* had in moſt parts of *Europe*, and many parts of the World beſides, in matters as well *Civil* and *Eccleſiaſtical*, which much depended on the power of that Empire, formerly, and on the uſurpations of that Church in the later days.

OF

OF

ITALY.

ITALY once the Empreſs of the greateſt part of the (then known) World, is compaſſed with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tyrrhenian* Seas, except it be towards *France* and *Germany*, from which it is parted by the *Alps*; ſo that it is in a manner a *Peninſula* or *Demi-Iſland*. But more particularly it hath on the Eaſt, the lower part of the *Adriatick*, and the *Ionian* Sea, by which it is divided from *Greece*; on the Weſt the River *Varus*, and ſome part of the *Alps*, by which it is parted from *France*; on the North, in ſome part the *Alps* which divide it from *Germany*; and on the other parts the *Adriatick*, which divides it from *Dalmatia*; and on the South the *Tyrrhenian* or *Tuſcan* Seas, by which it is ſeparated from the main land of *Africa*.

It containeth in length from *Auguſta Prætoria* (now called *Aoſt*) at the foot of the *Alps*, unto *Otranto* in the moſt Eaſtern point of the Kingdom of *Naples*, 1020. miles: in breadth from the River *Varo*, which parts it from *Provence*, to the mouth of the River *Arſia* in *Friuli*, where it is broadeſt, 410 miles; about *Otranto* where it is narroweſt, not above 25 miles; and in the middle parts from the mouth of *Peſcara* in the *Adriatick* or upper Sea, to the mouth of *Tiber* in the *Tuſcan* or Lower Sea, 126 miles. The whole compaſs by Sea, reckoning in the windings and turnings of the ſhore, comes to 3038 miles; which added to the 410 miles which it hath by Land, make up in all 3448 miles. But if the Coaſt on each ſide be reckoned by a ſtraight Line, then it falls very ſhort of this proportion, amounting in the total, as *Caſtaldo* computes it, to no more than 2550 miles. The whole Country lyeth under the fifth and ſixth *Climates* of the Northern temperate *Zone*, which it wholly taketh up: ſo that the longeſt day in the moſt Northern parts is fifteen hours, and three fifth parts of an hour; the longeſt in the Southern parts, falling ſhort a full hour and no more of that length.

But theſe dimenſions muſt be underſtood of *Italy* in the preſent latitude, and extent thereof, and not as it was called and counted in the times of the *Romans*, neither in the growth nor flouriſhing fortunes of that State; the bounds of *Italy* on the Weſt, and North-weſtern parts being then the River *Rubicon*, which runneth into the *Adriatick*, not far from *Ravenna*, and the River *Arno*, which runneth into the *Tyrrhenian* Seas, by the Port of *Ligorn*. All that lay Weſt-wards towards the *Alps*, as it was poſſeſſed by the *Gauls*, ſo it had alſo the name of *Gallia*, and, for diſtinctions ſake, of *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina*, and *Togata*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Lombardy*. And it continued, (though a Province of the *Roman* Empire) diſtinct from *Italy*, until the Empire of *Auguſtus*; who dividing *Italy* for the better Government thereof into eleven Provinces or Regions, divided *Gallia Ciſ-Alpina* into ſeveral parts, (whereof more anon) and reckoned them as Provinces or Members of the body of *Italy*.

The names hereof ſo bounded as before, are ſaid to have been very many, according to their ſeveral Nations which were anciently of moſt power and authority in it; or to the ſeveral fancies of the Name giver: whereof ſome being the names only of particular Provinces, were by a *Metonymy*, taken for, and applyed to the whole. Of this laſt ſort, to omit others of leſs note, were *Latium*, and *Auſonia*; the *Auſones* being a people dwelling about *Cales* a Town of *Campania*; and *Latium*, that particular Province which lyeth on the Eaſt of *Tiber*, ſo called, as moſt Writers are of opinion, *a latendo*, from hiding; becauſe *Saturn* being driven from *Crete* by *Jupiter*, *hic latebat abditus*, did here live concealed;

——*Latiumq; vocari*
Maluit, his quoniam latuiſſet tutus in oris, as the Poet hath it

Nor was this *Virgils* fancy only, but a *Tradition* generally followed and allowed of by the greateſt Writers, as by *Eutropius*, and *Herodian* and by *Minucius Felix* alſo, though *Varro* pretending to more than ordinary knowledge in Antiquity, would have it called *Latium, quod lateat inter præcipitia Alpium & Apennini*, as *Servius* in his notes on *Virgil*, becauſe it lyeth hidden (as it were) under the Præcipices of the *Alps* and *Apennine* hills; which cannot poſſibly be ſaid of *Italy* properly and antiently ſo called, no part whereof came near the *Alps*. The more generall names of the whole Country, were, 1. *Heſperia*, from *Heſperus* the ſon of *Atlas*, as the Poets ſay, or rather, as *Macrobius* is of opinion, from *Heſperus* the Evening Star, as being ſeated Weſtward in regard of *Greece*. 2. *Oenotria*, either from the abundance and excellency of the Wines, Wine being called οἶνος by the *Grecians*; or, as moſt think, from *Oenotrius* an *Arcadian* King, one of the firſt Planters of the Country: And 3. *Italia*, the name at firſt of that part of this Continent which was afterward called *Calabria*; ſhut up firſt between *Golfo de Chilaci* (called antiently *Sinus Scylleticus*) on the South; and *Sinus Lameticus*, part of the Bay or Golf

Golf of *Tarentum*, on the south side of it, For so saith *Aristotle* in the seventh Book of his Politicks, Cap. 10. Τὴν ἀκτὴν ταύτην τῆς Εὐρώπης Ἰταλίαν τῷ ὀνόματι λαβεῖν, &c. That is to say, *That part of* Europe *which lieth between the Bay* Scylleticus *and the Bay* Lameticus, *took the name of* Italie, *the Golfs being distant from each other about half a days journey*. And this Tradition he received (as he there affirmeth) from the best Antiquaries of that Country. The like occurs in *Dionysius Halicarnassæus*, out of *Antiochus Syracusanus*, a more antient Author; the like in *Strabo*, lib. 6. So named from *Italus*, a chief Commander of some Nations; who first setled here, and by degrees communicated to the rest of this Continent. Of these three last, thus the Poet *Virgil*.

Est locus, Hesperiam *Graii cognomine dicunt*,
Terra antiqua, potens armis, atq; ubere gleba,
Oenotrii *coluere viri*; *nunc Fama, minores*
Italiam *dixisse*, *ducis de nomine*, *Gentem*.

Which may be *Englished* in these words;

That which the Greeks *Hesperia* call'd, a place
Great both in Arms and Wealth, first planted was
By the *Oenotrians*: since, if Fame not lie,
Was from their Chieftain's name call'd *Italie*.

Who and from whence this *Italus* was, we shall see ere long. Mean time we will take notice of the concent or harmony, which is betwixt *Aristotle* and this Poet: it being said by *Aristotle* in the seventh of his *Politicks*, cap. 10. that *Italus* having taught the *Oenotrians* the Arts of Husbandry, who before were wandring Shepherds only, he caused them by his own name to be called *Italians*. Let us next take a view of those honourary Attributes which have been given unto this Country, so denominated from him; by *Æthicus*, called *Regina Mundi*, the Queen or Empress of the World; by *Mamertinus* one of the old *Panegyrists*, *Gentium Domina*, the Mistress of the Nations; by others, *Paradisus Mundi*, the terrestrial Paradise. But what need more be said than is spoken by *Pliny*, who hath adorned *Italy* with this following Panegyrick? *Italia terrarum omnium alumna, eadem & parens, numine Deum electa quæ Cœlum ipsum clarius faceret; sparsa congregaret imperia, ritus molliret, tot populorum discordes linguas sermonis commercio ad colloquia distraheret, & humanitati hominem daret. Italy* (saith he) the Parent, and withal the Foster-child of all other Nations, was elected by the Providence of the Gods, to make (if possible) the very Heavens themselves more famous; to gather the scattered Empires of the World into one body, to temper the barbarous Rites of uncivilized people, to unite the disagreeing languages of so many men by the benefit of one common tongue; and in a word, to restore man to his humanity. A very high *Encomion* doubtless; and yet not much more than the place deserves, with reference to the times when the Author lived.

The People antiently, (and to this day they still partake somewhat of those qualities) were wary of behaviour, sparing of expence, and most greedy of glory, according unto that of *Tully*, *Semper appetentes gloriæ præter cæteras nationes sunt Romani*; by which he doth not mean those only who lived within the walls of the City of *Rome*, but also their *Italian* neighbours and associates, *Romans* by priviledge and freedom, though not by birth. They have twice given the Law to the fairest, and most puissant parts of the World; once by their *Valour*, when the greatest part of the (then known) World was brought under the obedience of the State of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Armies was principally compounded of *Italian* bands: And secondly by their *Wit*, by which they have subdued a great part of *Christendom*, to the obedience of the Pope and Court of *Rome*, the standing body of whose Council (though he have Ministers of all tempers and Nations) do specially consist of *Italian* Heads. In former times here lived the renowned Captains, *Camillus* the Sword, and *Fabius Maximus* the Buckler of *Rome*; the two *Scipioes*, one of which subdued *Africk*, and the other *Asia*; *Pompey* the great, who extended the *Roman* Empire Eastwards to the banks of *Euphrates*; *Cæsar*, the greater of the two, enlarging it Westward to the *British*, and the *Belgick* Ocean; besides infinite others of less note in respect of these, though most deserving in themselves. Here flourished also the famous Orators, *Cicero*, *Hortensius*, and *Antonius*; the renowned Historians, *Livy*, *Tacitus*, and *Salustius*; the memorable Poets *Virgil*, *Ovid*, *Catullus*, *Tibulus*, and *Propertius*; *Plautus*, and *Terence* the Comedians; the Satyrists, *Horace*, *Juvenal*, and *Persius*. So equally were they favoured both by *Mars* and the *Muses*, that it is not easie to determine whether they were most eminent in Arts or Arms. What men of special eminence it hath since produced, we shall see hereafter, when we are come to take a view of *Italy* as it stands at present; and to that place we shall defer our Observations of the Air, and disposition of the Soil, with such other particulars as have received little or no alteration in the change of times.

Italy was antiently divided, as most Countries else, into *Tribes* and *Nations*, as the *Latines*, *Sabines*, *Tuscans*, *Samnites*, *Campani*, *Picentini*, *Piceni*, *Ligures*, *Tarentini*, *Lucani*, and others of inferior note; whom we shall meet with in the description of those several States into which it doth now stand divided. But all those Nations being severally vanquished by the *Roman* puissance, and made up into one body, whereof *Rome* was the head; it pleased *Augustus* to divide it into eleven Regions, as before was said, that is to say, *Liguria*, *Hetruria*, *Latium*, *Campania*, *Umbria*, *Samnium*, the *Picenum*, *Gallia*, *Italia*, *Transpadana*, *Venetia*, and *Histria*. In the time of the Emperour *Antoninus*, the Provinces of *Italy* were encreased to sixteen, the bounds of the former Regions being somewhat altered; and the three Isles of *Sicily*, *Corsica*, and *Sardinia*, with the two *Rhetia*'s, first and second, added to the number. But this distribution also received some change in the time of *Constantine* the Great who altering both the names and bounds of the former Provinces, and adding one more to them, made seventeen in all, that is to say, 1. *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, 2. *Picenum Suburbicarium*, 3. *Campania*, 4. *Apulia* and *Calabria*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Samnium*, 7. *Lucania* and the *Brutii*, 8. *Sicily*, 9. *Corsica*, and 10. *Sardinia*, which made up the præfecture of the City of *Rome*; 11. *Flaminia* and *Picenum Annonarium*, 12, *Venetiæ*, 13. *Æmylia* 14. *Liguria*, 15. *Alpes Cottiæ*, 16. *Rhætia prima*, and 17. *Rhætia secunda*, which made up the Diocese of *Italy*, properly and especially so called, whereof *Millain* was first the *Metropolitan* City, *Aquileia* afterwards.

The Language heretofore was divers, according to the several Provinces and people of it. In *Apulia*, they used the *Messapian* tongue, in that which is now called *Calabria*, they spake the *Greek*; in *Hetruria*, they used the *Tuscan*; and the *Latin* in *Latium*: which last so altered in short time, by reason of the commerce they had with the conquered Nations, that the Articles of the Peace made between the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, at the expulsion of the *Tarquins*, could not be understood (as *Polybius* saith) by the best Antiquaries of his time. And yet the time between the making of those Articles, and the time of *Polybius*, who was contemporary

porary with *Scipio Africanus*, paſſed not above 300 years. That the *Latin* tongue was afterwards at any time ſpoke generally in all parts of the *Roman* Empire, or of *Italy* it ſelf, as I ſee ſome hold, I can by no means be perſwaded; it being by ſpecial favour granted to the *Cumans*, dwelling but an hundred miles from the Walls of *Rome*, that they ſhould uſe the *Roman* Language: which had been a meer mockery, and no mark of favour at all, if the *Italian* people dwelling out of *Latium* had uſed it formerly. And yet this hapned not above 140 years before the times of the Emperors, at what time the *Romans* were Lords of *Italy*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and a great part of *Spain*. It's true, the *Latin* tongue in ſucceeding times came to be underſtood in moſt parts of *Italy*, by reaſon of the *Roman* Colonies which were planted among them (being in all no fewer than 150) and their continual reſort to *Rome* on their ſeveral buſineſſes: it being a great point of the *Roman* State, not only to have their Laws written, and judgment pronounced by the *Prætors* for the ſeveral Provinces, in the *Latin* only; but to give audience in the open Senate to none who came thither from the ſubject Nations, ſave only in the *Latin* tongue, their own proper language. Yet for all this, it never grew to ſuch extent as to be the Language of the whole Empire, no nor of *Italy* it ſelf, no more than the *Engliſh* tongue is natural or national to the *Welch*, or *Iriſh*, though it be generally underſtood (for the very ſame reaſons) by all of the better ſort both in *Wales* and *Ireland*. In which regard I am not of their opinion, who think that the *Italian* (as the *French* and *Spaniſh*) are nothing but corruptions of the *Latin* tongues, occaſioned by the inundations of the barbarous Nations: But rather that the *Latin* words which occur therein, proceeded from that weak impreſſion which the *Latin* tongue had made amongſt them, whilſt they were under the obedience of that puiſſant Empire; and that the *Italian* tongue, as it is now ſpoken, could not receive ſo great a change from the Barbarous Nations, none of which tarried long amongſt them, but the *Goths*, and *Lombards*; nor they ſo long (the *Lombards* not at all in the Eaſtern parts) as to be either the occaſions or authors of the alteration. So that the preſent language of *Italy* is a decompound, made up epecially of *Latin* and the old *Italian*: ſome notions of the *Lombard* being mixt with it in the *North*, and *Weſt*, ſome of the *Gothiſh*, in the middeſt, about *Rome* it ſelf, and not a little of the *Greek*, in the Eaſt of *Naples*.

And as the Language ſo the *Religion* of the Country, hath received ſome change. The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt preached in *Rome* it ſelf, and in *Rome* firſt preached by Saint *Peter*, who came thither in or about the beginning of the Empire of *Claudius*. The two Apoſtles *Peter* and *Paul*, are generally ſaid by the antient Writers, to be the firſt who preached the Goſpel in that City. *A duobus Apoſtolis* Petro & Paulo, *Romæ fundata & conſtituta eſt Eccleſia*, ſaith the old Father *Irenæus*, Lib. 4. Cap. 3. To one of theſe, the firſt preaching of the Goſpel there is to be referred; both being Biſhops of that City: That is to ſay, St. *Peter* of the Churches of the *Circumciſion*; St. *Paul* of thoſe which conſiſted ſpecially of the *Gentiles*. Now that the Goſpel was preached there before *Paul*'s coming, is evident by his Epiſtle written to the *Romans*, at *Cenchrea* the Port-Town of *Corinth*, ſix years at leaſt before his being brought to *Rome*; in which he teſtified that their *Faith was famous over all the World*; and therefore could not count him who had never been there, for the planter of it: And as St. *Peter* was the firſt Preacher of the Goſpel at *Rome*, ſo ſent he his Diſciples to promulgate it in moſt parts of *Italy*. The *Roman Martyrologies* reckon up eight Biſhops of St. *Peter*'s making, for ſo many of the principal Cities of this Country: that is to ſay, *Epaphroditus* (not he whom St. *Paul* ſpeaks of in his Epiſtle to the *Philippians*) for *Terracina*, of old called *Anxur*, *Hirmageras* for *Aquileia*, *Paulinus* for *Luca*, *Apollinaris* for *Ravenna*, *Marcus* for *Atina*, *Proſdocimus* for *Padua*, *Marcianus* for *Syracuſe*, and *Pancratius* for *Tauromenium* in the Iſle of *Sicily*. But whether St. *Peter* planted it, or St. *Paul* watered it, certain I am that *GOD* only *gave it the increaſe*. It could not elſe have proſpered under ſuch a Tyranny, as many, if not moſt of the *Roman* Emperors did earneſtly endeavour to ſuppreſs it with. But *Sanguis Martyrum ſemen Eccleſiæ*; the watering of it with the blood of ſo many *Martyrs*, made it grow the faſter. And this ſmall grain of Muſtard-ſeed waxed ſo great a Tree, as over-ſhadowed all the Provinces of that mighty Empire; and did not only ſtand it out againſt all Tempeſts, but in concluſion did ſuppreſs that Superſtition and Idolatry, for whoſe ſake all thoſe Princes, till the time of *Conſtantine*, did more or leſs, labour to deſtroy it. How much it had receded ſince thoſe times from its primitive purity, and how it did degenerate into Worldy pomp, and Secular policy, by the deſign and arts of thoſe who boaſt themſelves to be Succeſſors to that great Apoſtle, ſhall be a little touched at, in the ſtory of the *Roman Papacy*. Suffice it in this place to ſay, that all the people of this Country, partly in reference to the Pope, partly for fear of the *Inquiſition*, and partly by being kept in ignorance of the *Proteſtant* Doctrine (of which they are taught to believe many monſtrous things) are all of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*.

But though the Fountains of the waters of Eternal life, have either been ſtopped, or elſe corrupted by the Popes of *Rome*; the Rivers which do water this moſt flouriſhing Garden, ſtill preſerve their beds, and run unmixed and uncorrupted in the ſame Chanels, as before they did. And of theſe *Italy* hath as many as any one Country, but none of any long courſe, by reaſon that all parts of it are ſo near ſome Sea; moſt of which riſing from the *Alpes*, or the *Apennine* Hills, by melting of the Snows in Winter and caſualty of Land-floods at other times of the year, do often overflow the Country, and for the moſt part leave an ill Air behind them. Thoſe of chief note are, 1 The River *Po* or *Padus* (the *Greeks* call it *Eridanus*) into which *Phaeton* is ſaid to have been drenched when he fell from Heaven. It ariſeth in the *Alpes*, runneth through *Lombardy*, which it divideth into *Ciſpadanam* and *Tranſpadanam*; and having taken in thirty leſſer ſtreams, falls with ſeven mouths into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Venice*. 2 *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*, anciently the North-bound of *Italy*; *Hic fluvius quandam Italiæ finis*, as it is in *Pliny*. It runneth into the *Adriatick* Sea not far from *Rimini*, or *Ariminum*, now the Port-town to *Ravenna*, the Haven of *Ravenna* being long ſince choked; but of this River more in another place. 3 *Arnus*, which riſing in the *Apennine* falleth in to the *Tuſcan* Sea, and anciently divided *Italy* on that ſide from the *Ciſalpine Galls*: on the banks hereof ſtandeth the fair City of *Florence*. 4 *Ticinus*, which gave name to the City of *Pavy* called of old *Ticinum*; it riſeth in the *Alpes*, and emptieth it ſelf into the Lake called *Lacus Verbanus*. 5 *Liris* now called *Gariglia*, ſtained with the blood of *French* and *Spaniards*, in their quarrels for the Realm of *Naples*, and no leſs unfortunatly memorable for the drowning of *Peter de Medices*. 6 *Cuique fuit rerum promiſſa potentia*, Tibris.

And Tiber, *unto which was given*
The power of all things under Heaven.

It

It riſeth from the *Apennine* Hills, not far from *Aretium* (now *Arezzo*) a Town of *Tuſcany* (which it parted from the *Roman Latium*, and the Land of the *Sabines*) and gliding gently near *Cita de Caſtello*, *Perugia*, and the old *Ocriculum*, paſſeth by *Rome*, and falleth into the *Tuſcan* or lower Sea, at *Oſtia*. Here is alſo, 7. The Lake of *Thraſymene*, near which *Annibal* defeated *Flaminius* the Conſul and his whole Army, opening thereby his paſſage to the gates of *Rome*; and 8. The famous River of *Metaurus*, where the *Romans* overcame *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and thereby made a way to the ruin of *Carthage*. Others of leſs note ſhall be mentioned in their proper places.

As for the Mountains of this Country, thoſe of moſt note are the *Alps*, and the *Apennine*, of which the reſidue in a manner are but ſpurs and branches. Of theſe the *Alps* being alſo appertaining to *France* and *Germany*, or rather containing many large and entire Provinces which belong to neither, deſerves a Tractate by it ſelf. The *Apennine*, being proper only to this Country, but ſo that it relates to many and particular Provinces of it, ſhall be ſpoken of here. A ledge of Hills which take beginning near *Savona*, a Town of the Commonwealth and Country of *Genoa*, ſituate on the *Mediterranean*, and fetching a little compaſs Northwards, extend to the furtheſt part of *Italy*, dividing it almoſt in the very midſt: that part thereof which lyeth towards the *Tyrrhenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea, being called *Ciſapennina*; *Tranſapennina*, that which lies towards the *Adriatick*. Paſſing in one entire body as far as *Aſcoli*, a Town of *Marca Anconitana* (a Province belonging to the Pope) where they are at the higheſt; it is there parted into two horns or branches, whereof one runs out to the mount of *Gargano*, and ſo unto the Land of *Otranto*; the other ſpreadeth it ſelf as far as *Calabria*, thoſe being the moſt Eaſtern Provinces of this noble Continent. Called the *Apennine* as ſome ſay, a *Penna*, by which word the *Latins* uſed to ſignifie the top or ſummit of an Hill; by reaſon of the height and ſharp points thereof; as others ſay, *quaſi Alpes Pœninæ*, becauſe firſt overcome by *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Roman* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*. The Inhabitants hereof by *Virgil* named *Apennicolæ*. But otherwiſe reducible to ſome of the neighbouring Provinces. Of this large Mountain moſt of the Hills of *Italy* from *Savona* Eaſtwards, are but the excurſions; which being of leſs note, ſhall be ſpoken of as they lie before us in the way.

To proceed now to ſo much of the Hiſtory of *Italy*, as concerns the general; we are to know that the firſt Inhabitants of it (not to ſay any thing of the fictions of Frier *Annius* under the name of *Beroſus*, who will needs have *Noah* himſelf come hither ſhortly after the Flood) were doubtleſs of the race of *Cittim* or *Kittim* the fourth ſon of *Javani*, one of the ſons of *Japhet*. Who being planted by their Father in that part of *Greece*, which was ſince called *Macedon*, and after ſpreading themſelves further as their numbers increaſed, peopled *Ætolia* and the Countries adjoining to it: From whence, deſirous of a warmer and more fertile ſoil, they came in tract of time to the Coaſts of *Dalmatia*, and thence to this Country ſince called *Italy*. That they did ſpring originally from the ſeed of *Cittim* (or *Kittim*, as the *Greek* pronounce it) wants not very good Authors. For thus *Euſebius*, Κίτιοι ἐξ ὧν Λατῖνοι καὶ οἱ Ῥωμαῖοι, that is to ſay, from the *Kitians*, or children of *Kittim*, deſcended the *Latins* and the *Romans*. The ſame occurs alſo in the *Chronicon* of *Alexandria*. So alſo ſaith *Cedrenus* in his *Annals*, but with more punctuality. *Telephus* (ſaith he) the ſon of *Hercules*, raigned in *Italy*, and after him his ſon *Latinus*, ἀφ᾽ οὗ τοὺς Κιτταίους ἐπωνύμασε Λατίνους, from whom the *Keteans* were named *Latins*. The ſame in other words ſaith *Suidas*. Nor want there ſome remainders of this name in approved Writers, beſides theſe authorities; there being a Town in *Latium* called *Ketea*, metioned in *Dionyſius Halycarnaſſeus*, and a River named *Ketus* not far from *Cumæ*, whereof *Ariſtotle* ſpeaketh in his book *de Mirabilibus*. And that they came immediately from the *Ætolians*, beſides the other Arguments which *Reinecceus* uſeth in this point, the nearneſs, or identity rather of the names doth ſeem to intimate. For *Ætolia* being written in the *Greek*, *Aitolia*, and the letter *O* being changed into *A* according to the *Æolick* Dialect, which was that uſed by the *Ætolians*; the alteration of the name from *Aitolia* and *Aitolians*, to *Italia* and *Italians*, will be thought very eaſie, if not natural; the rather in regard there is an Iſland near *Italy*, in the *Tuſcan* Sea, peopled originally by theſe very *Ætolians*, which in ancient times was called *Æthalia*. And if by ſuch an eaſie alteration of one Letter only, *Italy* may derive its firſt plantation from the *Ætolians*, as no doubt it may; then may that *Italus*, the Chieftain of whom *Virgil* ſpeaks, be no other than *Aitolus*, ſome man of principal mark and eminency, amongſt that People, who had the Conduct of this Colony, when they came for *Italy*. And this I ſhould believe much rather, than that this *Italus* was the name of a King of *Sicily*: It being more probable that *Sicily* ſhould borrow its firſt Planters out of *Italy*, than *Italy* ſhould borrow either Name or People from ſo ſmall a Kingdom; eſpecially conſidering that the name of *Aitolus* was famous in thoſe parts of *Greece*, ever ſince *Aitolus* the ſon of a King of *Elis*, was Founder of the *Ætolian* Kingdom. The way thus ſhewn, and the paſſages into *Italy* laid open, it was not long before the *Pelaſgi*, another *Greek* Nation, found the way into it: after whom *Saturn* out of *Crete*, and *Evander* out of *Arcadia*, with their ſeveral followers, came and ſetled there. Not to ſay any thing of thoſe ſeveral Colonies, which coming out of *Peloponneſus*, and the parts of *Achaia*, planted themſelves ſo thick in the Eaſt of *Italy*, now called *Calabria*, that of long time it had the name of *Magna Græcia*. So that the *Græcians* made the main groſs or body of the *Italian* people: to which the coming of ſome *Tuſcans* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, a Prince of *Lydia*, in *Aſia minor*, ſerved but as an *Acceſſary*, and altered nothing of the Principal. The laſt that ſetled here, were ſome of the Relicts of *Troy*, under the conduct of *Æneas*: who flying from their Native Country, and enraged Enemies, were firſt caſt upon the Coaſts of *Africk*; where having ſtaid a while to refreſh his Companies (we ſhall hereafter take an occaſion to conſider of the Fable of his loves with *Dido*) he ſet ſail for *Italy*, being the place aſſigned him by the Gods for his Seat and Empire, whither he came with fifteen Ships, which might contain, according to the rate which *Thucydides* alloweth to the Veſſels then uſed, to the number of 1200 men. And there he landed, as it proved in an happy hour: For he was no ſooner arrived, but he was lovingly cheriſhed and entertained by *Latinus* King of the *Latins*, or of *Latium*; whoſe chief City or Seat-Royal was then called *Laurentum*; who much eſteeming of this Stranger, as a man whoſe fame had been his Harbinger, thought he could neither manifeſt his love ſufficiently, nor bind him faſt enough unto him, but by betrothing him unto *Lavinia*, his only daughter. Hence grew the Wars betwixt *Æneas*, and *Turnus* King of the *Rutuli*, a former Suiter, which being ended in the death of the *Rutulian* Rival, confirmed *Æneas* and his *Trojans* in a ſure poſſeſſion. For now growing with the *Latins*, or *Laurentini*, into a more conſtant bond of Friendſhip, by many inter-marriages, and mutual kindneſſes, they built the

Town of *Lavinium*, called so in honour of their Queen, intending it for the Seat-Royal of the Princes of the *Trojan* line. But long it did not hold that state. For *Ascanius* the son of *Æneas* by his former Wife, to avoid all occasions of contention with his Mother-in-Law, left her (*Æneas* being dead) in possession of *Lavinium*, and built *Longa Alba*; which being surrendred by *Julus* the son of *Ascanius* to his half brother *Silvius*, became the constant habitation of the *Silvian* Kings, till the building of *Rome*, and final ending of the race of the *Latine* Kings. The names of whom (for there occurs little of their actions) we are next to shew; taking along with us those few Kings which reigned in those parts of *Italy*, before the coming of *Æneas*.

A. M. The Kings of *Italy* of the *Aborigines*.

2637. 1 *Janus*, the first King of the *Aborigenes*, who lived in the same time with *Boaz* and *Ruth*; He received *Saturn* flying out of *Crete* from *Jupiter*, and left him his Kingdom at his death. He is said to be the Founder of the City of *Genoa*, and to have given name to the Hill in *Rome* called *Janiculus*, on which it was supposed that he had his dwelling.

2 *Saturn*, who taught the people the use of dunging of their Lands, and for that cause was honoured by them as a God, under the name of *Stercutius*, as St. *Austine* hath it. He reigned first together with *Janus*, and afterwards by himself alone: the whole time of both their reigns was 33 years.

2670. 3 *Picus*, well skilled in divination by the flight and chattering of *Birds*, and therefore feigned by the Poets to be turned into a *Pye*. He entertained *Evander* and his *Arcadians*, giving them the Hill (called after *Aventine*) to build upon, 37.

2707. 4 *Faunus*, the son of *Picus*, and the Husband of *Fatua*, in whose time *Hercules* came into *Italy*, vanquished the Giants of *Cremona*, and killed the Giant *Cacus*, who had fled from him out of *Spain*, 44.

2751. 5 *Latinus*, the son of *Faunus*, who entertained *Æneas* coming from the Wars and destruction of *Troy*, and gave him his daughter *Lavinia* to wife; with his Kingdom after him in Dower, 36.

2787. 6 *Lavinia*, daughter to *Latinus*, and Queen of the *Latins* married to *Æneas* whom she outlived, he being slain in his Wars against *Mezentius*, the King of *Tuscany*; the son or successor of that *Mezentius* (an ungodly Tyrant) whom *Æneas* had before slain in his War with *Turnus* and the *Latins*, 7.

A. M. Kings of the *Latins* of the *Trojan* or *Silvian* Race.

2787. 1 *Æneas* the son of *Anchises*, and Husband of *Lavinia*, slain in his Wars against *Mezentius* King of the *Tuscans* or *Hetrurians*, as before is said, 3.

2790. 2 *Ascanius*, the son of *Æneas* by *Creusa* his former wife: for fear of whom, *Lavinia* being great with child, fled into a Wood, and was there delivered of a son called *Silvius*. He removed the Seat Royal from *Lavinium* to *Longa Alba*, a City of his own building, 38.

2828. 3 *Silvius Posthumius*, the son of *Æneas* by *Lavinia*, preferred to the Kingdom by the love of the people, before *Julus* the son of *Ascanius* (the Founder of the *Julian* Family) from whom all the Kings of this race had the name of *Silvii*; *Julus* being honoured with the chief Priesthood (an Office next in dignity to that of the King) which he translated afterwards unto his Posterity, 29.

2857. 4 *Æneas Silvius*, 31.

2888. 5 *Latinus Silvius*, 50.

2938. 6 *Alba Silvius*, so called because of his beautifying and repairing the City *Alba*, then in some decay: or probably, because there he had his birth, 39.

2977. 7 *Capetus Silvius*, 24.

3001. 8 *Capys Silvius*, said to be the Founder of the City of *Capua*; which shews that he extended his dominion farther than the Province of *Latium*, 28.

3029. 9 *Capetus Silvius*, 13.

3402. 10 *Tiberinus Silvius*, from whom the River *Tiber* derives that name, being formerly called *Albula*, 8.

3050. 11 *Agrippa Silvius*, 40.

3090. 12 *Alladius Silvius*, who to make himself the more terrible to his Subjects, studied a way to imitate the Thunder; but was killed at last by a real Thunder-clap from Heaven, 19.

3109. 13 *Aventinus Silvius*, who gave the name to the Hill *Aventine*, 37.

3146. 14 *Procas Silvius*, 23.

3169. 15 *Amulius Silvius*, the younger son of *Procas*, setting aside his Brother *Numitor*, obtained the Kingdom for himself; slain at last by *Romulus*, and *Numitor* setled in the Throne, 42.

3211. 16 *Numitor*, the 21 King from *Janus*, and the last King of the *Latins*, restored by *Romulus* to the Throne; and after the short raign of one year only, deprived by him both of life and Kingdom. After whose death the *Latins*, or *Albans*, had no more Kings, but kept themselves as a Free Estate till subdued to *Rome*, 1.

Concerning this it is to be understood, that *Amulius* having chased his eldest Brother *Numitor* out of the Country, and possessed himself of the Throne, caused his Brothers daughter *Rhea* (for preventing an issue by her) to be shut up in the Temple of *Vesta*. Where she proving the mother of two sons, was according to the Law buried quick, and her children by the cruel Tyrant cast out to be devoured of Wild beasts. They were found by *Faustulus* the Kings Shepherd, nurst by his Wife, for her infamous life called *Lupa* (whence came the Fable, that they were suckled by a Wolf) and being grown to mens estate, slew the Tyrant *Amulius*, placing their Grandfather *Numitor* in the Royal Throne; whom not long after they deprived both of life and Kingdom. Of these the eldest was named *Romulus*, and the younger *Rhemus*, who leaving *Alba* to the short possession of their Grandfather *Numitor*, laid the foundation of the most famous City of *Rome*; which *Romulus* first hanselled with the blood of his Brother *Rhemus*, who had disdainfully leapt over the Walls of his new City. This City he made an *Asylum* or place of Refuge for all comers, of what desperate estate soever, and having ranked them into order, made himself their King. A people of so base a nature, that their neighbours refused to give them any of their daughters in marriage: So they were destitute of wives, and consequently not like to continue a people long; till on a Proclamation made of some Plays and Pastims, many of the *Sabine* women flocked thither to behold the sports, whom the *Romans* seized on, and forced an unwilling consent from them, to become their Wives. From such a base and low beginning did this City rise to be the Empress of the World.

The

The Kings of *Rome*.

A. M.

3213. 1 *Romulus*, the Founder of *Rome*; he made peace with *Tatius* King of the *Sabines*, coming against him to revenge the raviſhment of their Women; incorporating him and his into his new City, and by that means adding thereto a fair and goodly Territory, 37.

3251. 2 *Numa*, the firſt Author of the *Roman* Ceremonies, 43.

3294. 3 *Tullus Hoſtilius*, who enlarged the borders of *Rome* by the Conqueſt of *Alba*, the mother City of the *Latins*, and vanquiſhed the *Fidenates*, 32.

3326. 4 *Ancus Martius*, who built *Oſtia* on the mouth of *Tiber*, to be an Haven to the City, 24.

3350. 5 *Tarquinius Priſcus*, who ſubdued many of the *Tuſcan* Nations, encreaſed the number of the *Tribes* and *Senators*, and added the *triumphal* Ornaments, 38.

3388. 6 *Servius Tullus*, who firſt cauſed the people to be *inrolled*, and brought into *cenſe* 44.

3432. 7 *Tarquinius Superbus*, ſon to the former *Tarquinius*. He vanquiſhed the *Gabii*, and took the Towns of *Ardea*, *Ocriculum*, and *Sueſſa Pometia*: but for his own inſolent behaviour, and a Rape committed on *Lucretia* the Wife of *Collatin* by his ſon *Sextus*, he and his whole Race were driven out of the Town, *Anno Mund.* 3457. *V. C.* 268.

After this, the *Romans* loathing the name of King, cauſed two Officers to be choſen out of the *Patricii*, or chief Citizens, to whom they gave the name of *Conſuls*, *a conſulendo*, from counſelling of, and conſulting the good of the Commonwealth, *ut conſulere ſe ſuis civibus meminerint*, ſaith the Hiſtorian, their name being a *Memento* of their charge or duty. And in this Office they reſolved to have always two, and thoſe but only for a year, *Ne vel ſolitudine vel mora poteſtas corrumperetur*. And though ſome had the fortune to be *Conſuls* two or three years together, yet every new year they were anew choſen, and ſo their Offices reckoned as ſeveral; neither do we find any to have been elected for leſs than a year, unleſs upon the death or depoſition of a former, until the Civil Wars. But then, *cum belli civilis præmia feſtinari cæperunt*, when the ſervices done in the Civil Wars required a quicker turn in requital, the *Conſulſhip* was given only for ſome part of the year, and ordinarily for two Months: the firſt *Conſuls* being named *Ordinarii*, in whoſe names the writtings made for the whole year were dated; the other *Minores*, or *Honorarii*, which only ſerved to make up a number. For ſo ambitious were the *Romans* of this honour, that when *Maximus* died in the laſt day of his Conſulſhip, *Caninius Rebilus* petitioned *Cæſar*, for that part of the day that remained: whence that ſo memorated Jeſt of *Tully*, *O vigilantem Conſulem, qui toto conſulatus ſui tempore ſomnum oculis non vidit!* And when *Cecina* was by the Senate degraded from this honour on the day in which he was to have reſigned it, one *Roſcius Regulus* obtained the Office from *Vitellius* for the day remaining: but as the Hiſtorian noteth, *magno cum irriſu accipientis, tribuentiſque*. Now as the *Romans* did thus exceed the firſt number of *Conſuls*, ſo ſometimes fell they ſhort of it. The firſt that was ſole *Conſul* was *Pompey* in the beginning of the Civil Wars, *viz. A. V. C.* 403. The next, one *Vitranes*, *V. C.* 410. This Office, from the firſt Inſtitution to the final period of it, continued at the leaſt in name (for the Emperors had of long time aſſumed the Power and Prerogatives appertaining to it) the ſpace of 1084 years though not without many intermiſſions of the name and Title, by the ſeveral interpoſings of the *Decemviri*, the *Dictators*, and the *Conſular Tribunes*; of which more anon. The laſt Conſul was one *Baſilius*, in the time of *Juſtinian*, *A. Chr.* 542. The two firſt, *Collatinus* the husband of *Lucretia*, and *Junius Brutus*, by whoſe inſtigation the people had took Arms againſt the houſe of the *Tarquins*. A man ſo zealous in defence of the common liberty, ſo reſoutely bent to make good what he had begun, and ſo extreamly oppoſite to the Royal Race, that he not only cauſed *Collatine* to reſign his Office within the year, becauſe he was of the blood of the *Tarquins*, but executed his own ſons for holding correſpondence and *intelligence* with them. But though the Government were changed, the old deſign was followed, which the Kings had laid for the enlarging of their Empire; but followed with ſo ſlow a pace, by reaſon of their factions and diviſions, that it was full 500 years before they could be Maſters of *Italy*. A matter not unworthy of our conſideration, that the *Italians* ſhould hold out ſo long a time againſt the puiſſance of the *Romans*; when in leſs then half that time enſuing, they did poſſeſs themſelves of almoſt all *Europe*, and many goodly Kingdoms and Provinces both in *Aſia* and *Africk*. So difficult a thing it was (as is ſaid by *Florus*) *dare caput Italiæ*, to contract the many limbs of *Italy* into one body, and unite them under one head.

But to proceed, after *Italy* was fully conquered by them, they fell upon the *Carthaginians*, as their neareſt neighbours; whoſe overthrow in the end of the firſt *Punick* War, *A. V. C.* 512. gave them the full poſſeſſion of *Sicily*, (except the State of *Syracuſa*) and the Iſle of *Sardinia*. After that being moleſted in their Trade by the *Illyrian* Pirates; and finding them countenanced therein by the Queen of that Nation, they made a fortunate War againſt her, and brought that puiſſant people to become their Tributaries, *A. V. C.* 525. The ſecond *Carthaginian* War, managed by *Annibal* in the bowels of *Italy*, had almoſt put a period to the glories of their Commonwealth. But that being alſo ended to their advantage by the conqueſt of *Spain*, they quarrelled *Philip* King of *Macedon*, who had aided *Annibal*, compelled him to accept of peace on their own terms, and after outed his ſon *Perſeus* of all his Dominions, making *Macedon* a Province of *Rome*, and all the reſt of *Greece* but their Tenants at will. Nor was it long before they picked a quarrel with *Antiochus* the great King of *Syria*, made him abandon his poſſeſſion of the *Leſſer Aſia*; and finally prevailed ſo ſucceſsfully in all their actions, that there was neither King nor Commonwealth that could ſtand in their way, until the State being burthened with its too much greatneſs, began to totter of it ſelf.

Two things there were, which much conduced to the advancement of the *Romans* to their power and greatneſs, beſides the Providence of God which had ſo diſpoſed it: which were the great encouragements which they gave their Souldiers, and the Triumphant manner of reception which they uſed to beſtow upon their *Generals* when they returned home with honour and victory. For when any of their *Generals* did ſo return, he was permitted to enter ſitting on a glorious Chariot, the ſpoils which he had got in War being carried before, the Priſoners he had taken following bound at the heels of his Chariot; his Souldiers compaſſing him about with their ſeveral Crowns according to the quality of their well-deſervings; and all the *Fathers* of the City, attended by the Prieſts and principal Ladies going out to meet him. The firſt begining of which cuſtom is aſcribed to *Romulus*, who in the War with *Acron* King of the *Ceninenſes* made

againſt him in revenge of the rape committed by the *Romans* on the *Sabine* women, ſeeing his people give ground, called for help to *Jupiter*, and vowed if he overcame King *Acron*, to offer up his Armour to him. *Acron* being vanquiſhed, the Conqueror cutteth down a fair young Oak and hangeth on it all the Armour of the vanquiſhed King: then girding his Gown cloſe unto him, and putting on his head a Garland of Lawrel, he laid the Oak upon his ſhoulders and marched towards the City, his Army following, and ſinging an *Epinicion*, or ſong of victory. To this we muſt refer the original and beginning of *Triumphs*. But, *Nihil eſt inventum & perfectum eodem tempore*, as the ſaying is. *Tarquinius Priſcus* long after *Romulus*, added hereunto the purple Robe, and the triumphant Chariot drawn with four horſes. The other pomps came afterwards, as they grew both in power and pride. Now of theſe *Triumphs* there were two ſorts; the Greater, which was properly called a *Triumph*; and the Leſſer, vulgarly called the *Ovation*, which differed from one another in many circumſtances. For, 1. The *Triumpher* made his entrance in a Royal Chariot, and was met only by the Senators in their Robes; but the *Ovator* made his entrance on foot, and was met only by the Knights and Gentlemen of *Rome*. 2. The *Triumpher* had a Laurel Crown, and entred with a noiſe of Drums and Trumpets; but the *Ovator* had only a Garland of Firr, with Flutes and Haultboys playing before him. 3. The *Triumpher* was attired in a Garment of State, which they called *Veſtis Trabeata*; but the *Ovator* in a plain purple Gown only. 4. In a *Triumph*, the Souldiers cried out, *Io Triumphe*; but in an *Ovation* they ingeminated only *O,O,O*, from the often doubling of which word, it had (as ſome think) the name of an *Ovation*. 5. And laſtly the *Triumpher* uſed to ſacrifice a certain number of Oxen; but the *Ovator* a Sheep only, from whence the name is properly to be derived.

Now there was three caſes in which the Conqueror was to be content with this leſſer Triumph. 1. If the number of the enemies whom the ſlew in battel exceeded not 5000 men; or that he had not ſo much overcome them by force, as by perſwaſion or ſubtilty. 2. If the War had been ſlight, curſory, or not lawfully managed. And 3. If it were againſt an Ignoble Enemy. And of this laſt we have a fair inſtance in *P. Rupilius*, who having got the victory in the *Servile* war, (a victory of great importance to the State of *Rome*) was yet content with an *Ovation*, *ne Triumphi dignitatem* Servili *inſcriptione violaret*, as it is in *Florus*. As for the greater *Triumphs*, they were indeed very full of magnificence; the pomp whereof, who liſt to ſee, may find it in the Triumph of *Paulus Æmilius* deſcribed by *Plutarch*; though by that which hath before been ſaid, we may conjecture ſomewhat at the glories of it.

And yet this Honour was not always vouchſafed to thoſe who had beſt deſerved it, there being many ways whereby it might be forfeited or denied in a factious State, and jealous of the over-greatneſs of the men of War. For, 1. Sometimes it was denied a victorious General, by the ſtrength of a contrary Faction; and ſo *Pompey* denied *Metellus* the honour of a *Triumph* for the conqueſt of *Crete*: 2. Sometimes the Conquerer himſelf is willing to decline it, for fear of envy: And ſo *Marcellus* in *Plutarch*, after his conqueſt of *Sicily*, having *triumphed* twice before, refuſed that honour: his reaſon was, ἡ φθόνον ἄχρι τρίτου θριάμβου, for fear his Third *Triumph* might become a matter of envy, 3. Sometimes the Souldiers, having been ill paid, or otherwiſe not well treated by their Commanders, oppoſed them in their ſuit for it: and this was the caſe of *Paulus Æmilius*, who queſtionleſs had miſſed this honour for not dividing amongſt them the ſpoils of *Greece*, as he once had promiſed if *Servilius* and others of the Senate, making it their own caſe, had not ſtickled hard for him with the Souldiers. 4. It was ſometimes denied, becauſe the General had born no publick Office in the Commonwealth: for ſo, in *Livy*, when *Lentulus* coming *Proconſul* out of *Spain* required a *Triumph*, the Fathers anſwered, that he had indeed done things worthy of that honour, but that they had no precedent for it, *ut qui neque* Conſul, *neque* Dictator, *neque* Prætor *Res geſſiſſet*, Triumpharet. 5. Sometimes the *Generals* themſelves omitted it for the furtherance of ſome of their other purpoſes: And ſo *Cæſar* coming towards *Rome* a Victor, at the ſame time the *Conſuls* were to be choſen, laid aſide his demand of the *Triumph* to ſue for the Conſulſhip; it being the cuſtom that ſuch as demanded the *Triumph* ſhould abide without the City, and ſuch as ſued for the Conſulſhip muſt of neceſſity be within. 6. Sometimes it was denied, when the War had been undertaken without the Command of the *Senate*: in which reſpect the *Triumph* was denied unto *Manlius* on the conqueſt of *Galatia* by him, to the great enlargment of their Empire, *quia cauſam Belli* Senatus *non approbavit*, becauſe he had no Commiſſion from the Senate for it. 7. There was no *Triumph* granted if the War had been Civil, becauſe in all ſuch Wars whoſoever was Conqueror, the Commonwealth was a loſer by it. And therefore *Pompey* and *Metellus* having vanquiſhed *Sertorius* and his party in *Spain*, would have it called a *Foreign*, nor a *Civil* War, becauſe they would not loſe their *Triumph*. *Externum magis id bellum quam* Civile *videri voluerunt, ut triumpharent*. 8. If the Victory had not been obtained without great loſs on the *Romans* ſide; in which regard *Valerius* after his conqueſt of the *Galls* was denied this honour, *quia magis dolor civibus amiſſis, quàm gaudium fuſis hoſtibus prævaluit*, ſaith *Alexander ab Alexandro*. 9. And laſtly, the *Triumph* was denied a *General*, if the ſervice had not been performed in his own Province: And ſo we find that when *Livius* and *Nero*, being Conſuls, had vanquiſhed *Aſdrubal*, *Livius* only had the *Triumph*, though *Nero* was the man that had won the day, becauſe the field was fought in the Province of *Livius*, to which *Nero* came but as an *Acceſſary*, or aſſiſtant to him.

And theſe are all, or at the leaſt the principal cauſes of hindering or omitting this great Honour, indeed the greateſt that the *Free-State* could be capable of. But after when the Commonwealth was changed into a *Monarchy*, it began to be laid aſide for altogether, as too great for ſubjects; and was firſt purpoſely neglected by *Veſpanius Agrippa*, the Eſtabliſher of *Auguſtus* in the *Roman* Empire, who when he had a *Triumph* decreed unto him, for quenching certain Rebellions in *Aſia*, and his quiet ſetling of that Country; to give Poſterity an example, refuſed to accept it. And this example being (as it were) a rule to others, occaſioned that this cuſtom was in ſhort time quite laid aſide; and that no man under the degree of an *Emperor* triumphed ſolemnly; all others from thenceforth, being content with the *Triumphal* Ornaments, μόναις ταῖς ἐπινικίοις τιμαῖς, in the words of *Dion*. And though *Beliſarius* having ſubdued the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, is ſaid (600 years after the death of *Agrippa*) to have had the honour of a *Triumph*; yet in propriety of ſpeech, it was nothing but an honourable preſenting of himſelf and his priſoners before the Emperor; and was ſo far from the magnificence of a *Roman Triumph*, that it wanted many of the ſolemnities uſed in an *Ovation*. Nor did the Emperors themſelves much affect this honour, either becauſe too popular, or too chargeable, or that they they thought it was beneath the *Imperial Majeſty*; the laſt (as I remember) that made uſe thereof to ſet forth his glories, being *Valerius Probus*, after his victo-

ries

ries over the *Germans*, and the *Blemyæ*, a people of *Africk*, in or about the year 284 of our Saviour's birth.

In the next place look we on the incouragements and rewards of the Common Souldiers: For, besides the setting out of Lands and dwellings for the poorer sort, in which they might rest themselves when they were past service; and besides the large *donatives* which the *General* in his *Triumph* did bestow upon them; they had their *mural Crown* for him that first scaled the Walls, a *naval Crown* for him that first boarded the Enemies ships, a *Camp Crown*, or *Corona Castrensis*, for him that had forced a way into the Tents or Camp of the Enemy; a *City Crown*, or *Corona Civica*, for him that had preserved the life of a *Roman* Citizen. Not to say any thing of those Chains and Bracelets which Souldiers of inferiour merit were adorned withal. By which encouragements, and the good conduct of their Counsels in the Senate, the *Roman* affairs succeeded so prosperously, and their Dominions were enlarged so immensly, that never any Common-wealth had so large a growth.

And yet the greatness of this State is neither totally, nor only to be attributed to the *Consular* Government. For though the Walls of this great building were raised by the *Consuls*, yet the foundation of the same was laid by the Kings, and the roof thereof laid on by the Emperours. Nay, be it spoken to the honour of *Monarchical* Government, whensoever any great and imminent danger did seem to threaten them, they were fain to lay aside their confidence in the rule of their *Consuls*, and betake themselves to the Command of one Soveraign Officer, whom they called *Dictator*. Of which, and other the changes hapning in the State of *Rome*, take this short abstract from *Corn. Tacitus*. "*Urbem* Romam "*a principio Reges habuere, &c.* "The City of *Rome* was "in the beginning governed by Kings. Liberty and the "Consulship *L. Brutus* brought in. The *Dictators* were "chose but for a time: The *Decemviri* passed not two "years, neither had the *Consular* authority of the *Tri*"*bunes* of the *Souldiers* any long continuance, nor *Cin*"*na's* nor *Sylla's* dominion. *Pompey* and *Crassus* quickly "yielded to *Cæsars* forces; *Lepidus* and *Antony* to *Au*"*gustus*. So *Tacitus* in brief of these publick changes: Of which, as to the *Decemviri*, which were instituted only on a particular occasion for the reforming of the Laws by those of *Athens*; and the *Military Tribunes* of *Consular Authority* ordained to divert common people from seeking after the *Consulship*; I shall here say nothing. But as for the *Dictators*, being Officers of a Supreme power, and such as made way for the Emperors in the close of all; I shall enlarge a little further. They were called *Dictators a dictando*, because they prescribed what they pleased unto the people; which they were bound to execute and not dispute. Hence that memorable jest of *Julius Cæsar*, who being told that *Sylla* had resigned his *Dictatorship* though by the decree of *Senate* made *perpetual* to him; returned this Answer, that *Sylla* was an unlearned man, *dictare nescivit*, and therefore knew not how to *dictate*; or to play the Dictator. They were also called *Populi Magistri*, or the peoples Masters, because from them lay no appeal unto the people (as did from all the rest of the *Roman* Magistrates) during the whole time of their Command, which ordinarily continued for six months; yet so, that if they did in the mean time settle the affairs of the Common-wealth, they resigned it sooner; if the necessities of the State required a longer continuence in it, they were chosen again. The names of as many of them as I have met withal, I have here subjoyned together with the services they did the Publick, in the time of their Office.

The *Dictators* of *Rome*.

A. V. C.		
253.	1	*Titus Largius*, chosen upon occasion of a general War made by the *Latins* upon *Rome*; the first that ever had this Office.
257.	2	*Aulus Posthumius*, chosen to pursue that War, Which he ended with the slaughter of 30000 of the *Latins*.
295.	3	L. *Quintius Cincinnatus*, chosen to this Office from the Plough, overcame the *Volsci*, chosen again *An. V. C.* 314. to supress the sedition raised by *Sp. Melius*.
318.	4	*Æmilius Mamercus*, overcame the *Veientes* and the *Fidenates*, and was thrice in eleven years called unto this Office.
338.	5	*Pub. Servilius*, who finally vanquished the *Fidenates* and the *Lavicani*.
354.	6	*Furius Camillus*, who finally destroyed the City of the *Veii*, and being chosen a second time, *A. V. C.* 362. preserved his Country from the *Galls*: thrice chosen after this upon new occasions.
375.	7	*Tit. Quinctius Cincinnatus*, chosen in the War against the *Latins*.
385.	8	*L. Manlius*, elected in the time of a grievous pestilence, to find a way for the appeasing of the gods.
396.	9	*C. Sulpitius*.
418.	10	*Martius Rutilius*, the first *Dictator* chosen out of the *Commons*.
	11	*L. Papyrius*, subdued the *Samnites*.
438.	12	*Cossus*, by whom the *Samnites* were again vanquished.
	13.	*Æmilius*, who also overcame the *Samnites*.
	14	*Lentulus*, who triumphed also over the *Samnites*.
451.	15	*L. Bubulcus*, who finally subdued the *Æqui* and the *Volsci*.
	16	*Corn. Rufinus*.
467.	17	*Q. Hortensius*, chosen for appeasing a difference betwixt the Senate and the Commons, who had fortified himself in *Janiculus*, one of the Hills whereon *Rome* stood.
505.	18	*Cl. Glizias*, forced to resign his Office to
	19	*Atilius Colatinus*, the first that exercised his Office out of *Italy*: he was chosen in the first *Punick* War.
536.	20	*Fabius Maximus*, chosen in the War against *Annibal*.
537.	21	*M. Junius*, chosen upon the great defeat which the *Roman* Forces had at the battel of *Cannæ*.
545.	22	*L. Manlius Torquatus*, chosen upon the death of *Marcellus* Consul slain by *Annibal*.
672.	23	*L. Sylla*, (descended from that *Corn. Rufinus*, who had been formerly in this Office) having by force of Arms suppressed the Faction of *Marius* and *Cinna*, made himself Master of the City, and caused himself to be chosen *Perpetual Dictator*, after the Office had been intermitted, for the space of 127 years: which Office having exercised with a great deal of cruelty, he resigned with as great a confidence.
707.	24	*C. Julius Cæsar* descended from *Julus* the son of *Ascanius*, who was the second King of the *Trojan*

Trojan race, having conquered *Britain*, and added all *Gaul Tranſalpine* to the *Roman* Empire; and finding himſelf unworthily requited by the Faction of *Pompey*, paſſed with his Army after him into *Greece*: and having vanquiſhed him in the fields of *Pharſalia*, and made himſelf abſolutely Maſter of the *Roman* Empire; took to himſelf the ſupreme Government thereof, under the Title of *Dictator*; which having managed for the ſpace of five years, he was murthered in the Senate-houſe by *Brutus* and *Caſſius*.

Before the time of theſe perpetual *Dictators*, the *Romans* having ſome enemies or other that oppoſed the progreſs of their fortunes, had not the leiſure to contend with one another in a publick way; or if they did, their differences and ſeditions were ſoon compoſed. But being grown ſo great as to fear no Enemy; and the Eſtate ſo vaſt, that it was grown too mighty for a *popular* Government; then they began to practiſe on the peoples patience, and to project the ſharing of the Empire amongſt the great Ones. Concerning which, take here this ſhort *Epitome*, which I find in *Tacitus*. "*Rebus modicis æqualitas facile habebatur, &c.* While (ſaith he) "our Dominions were but ſmall, Equality was eaſily "maintained among us. But after we had ſubdued "the World, and deſtroyed all Kings and Cities that "ſtood in our way, or might work our annoyance; "when we had leiſure to ſeek after Wealth without "peril, there aroſe hot contentions betwixt the *Nobility* and *Commons*. Sometimes the factious *Tribunes* carried it away, ſometimes the *Conſuls* had the better: "and in the City and common *Forum*, ſome little skirmiſhes (the beginning of our Civil Wars) were "ſometimes ſeen. Afterwards, *C. Marius* one of the "meaneſt of the Commonalty, and *L. Sylla* the moſt "cruel of all the Nobility, by force of Arms over-"throwing the *Free-State* reduced all to an abſolute Go-"vernment. To them ſucceeded *Cn. Pompeius*, a little "cloſer in his projects, but nothing better minded to "the Common-wealth: *Et nunquam poſtea niſi de Principatu quæſitum*; and never after that was any other "point debated, than who ſhould get the Soveraignty "unto himſelf. So *Tacitus*: and he ſtateth it rightly. For after *Pompey* had revived the controverſie, and had found *Cæſar* a better Diſputant than himſelf; *Auguſtus*, *Antonius*, and *Lepidus* (on the death of *Cæſar*) made good the Argument, attracting all power unto themſelves by the name of *Triumviri*: till *Auguſtus* having out-witted *Lepidus*, and vanquiſhed *M. Antony* at the battel of *Actium*, became ſole Soveraign of the State, by the name of Prince; *Et cuncta bellis civilibus feſſa, nomine Principis ſub imperium accepit*, as that Author hath it.

But touching thoſe great alterations in the State of *Rome*, the contentions for the chief command, and the Reduction of it to a *Monarchy* by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, I publiſhed a Diſcourſe in the year 1631. (but written many years before) under the title of *AUGUSTUS*, or *an Eſſay of thoſe Means and Counſels* whereby the *Commonwealth of* Rome *was altered, and reduced to a Monarchy*. Which being but ſhort, ſo pertinent to the Preſent buſineſs, and ſo well entertained when it came abroad; I hope it will not be improper or unprofitable to ſubjoyn it here. The Reader may either peruſe it, or pretermit it, as his phanſie guides him. And here it followeth in theſe words.

THey which have heretofore written of *Commonwealths*, have divided them into three Species: 1. The Government of the King, ſecondly, of the Nobles, and thirdly, of the People. Either of theſe is again ſubdivided into *good* and *evil*: The *evil* from being only the *good* corrupted; the *good* nothing elſe but the *bad* refined. So is the Government of a *King* divided into a *Monarchy*, and a *Tyrany*: Of the *Nobles*, into *Ariſtocracy*, and *Oligarchy*: Of the *People*, into a *Republick*, and *Democraty*. All theſe, as well in general, as in the ſeveral couplets, have a ſecret inclination to change the one into the other; and to make a *Pythagorical* tranſmigration (as it were) into each others Being. I need not ſtand on many inſtances. The Common-wealth of *Rome* (into whoſe ſtories whoſoever looketh, will judge them rather to contain the acts of the whole World, than a particular Nation) will ſerve for all. *Romulus* at the foundation of his City, reſerved unto himſelf the chief Soveraignty, leaving it entire to his ſucceſſors. *Numa*, *Ancus*, *Tullus*, *Tarquin* the Elder, and *Servius*, governed themſelves ſo moderatly, and the People ſo juſtly, that they affected not *Tyranny*, nor the Commons *Liberty*. They appeared more deſirous to fill the *Coffers* of their Subjects than their own *Treaſuries*: And when neceſſity compelled them to a Tax, they rather ſeemed to ſheer their ſheep than fleece them. But *Tarquin* the ſecond, commonly called *Superbus*, a man of inſupportable Vices, having by violence enthronized himſelf in that Chair of State, which (had not his ambitious ſpirit been impatient of delay) would have been his rightful Inheritance, made his government anſwerable to his entrance, cruel and bloody. How many men, eminent as well by their own Vertue, as their Parents Nobility, did he cut off? How many did he for no cauſe promote to make their fall the more remarkable? What part of the Senate was free from ſlaughter? What corner of the City from lamentations? Yet this was not all. The miſerable *Romans* were viſited with three Plagues at once; *Pride* in the Father, *Cruelty* in the Mother, and *Luſt* exorbitant in their ſon *Sextus*, a true *Copy* of the old *Originals*. Either of theſe had been more than enough to exerciſe the peoples patience. But meeting all at one time, it ſeemed that nothing could now be added to the wretchedneſs of the one, and the wickedneſs of the other. *Brutus* (a name fatal to Tyrants) did eaſily perſwade the *Commons* to ſhake off this yoke. For they, as well deſirous of *Novelties* as ſenſible of *Oppreſions*, had long ſince murmured at the preſent State; and wanted nothing but a Head to break out into actual Rebellion. So the *People* got the *Freedom*, and the *Kings* loſt the *Soveraignty* of the City.

2. *Brutus*, although he wanted no fair title to the Crown, yet either perceiving how odious the name of *King* was grown; or perhaps willing to be rather the firſt *Conſul* than the laſt *Prince*, inſtituted a new form of Government: Wherein the ſway of all was referred to the *Fathers* of the City; out of whom two were annually choſen as chief of the reſt. And herein certainly he dealt very adviſedly. For had he ſought to confirm himſelf in the *Kingdom*, what could men judge, but that not love to his Country was the cauſe that ſtirred him to take Arms, but deſire of Rule? Again beſides that ſecure *Privacy* is to be preferred before hazardous *Royalty*; What hope had he to keep the ſeat long, having by his own example taught the people both the *Theory* and *Practice* of *Rebellion*? Under this new *Ariſtocracy* the *Roman* affairs ſucceeded ſo proſperouſly, their dominions

were

were inlarged so immensly, that it may well be questioned whether the *Roman* Fortune caused their greatness, or their valour commanded their fortune. For the Governours not seeking wealth but honour, or not their own wealth, but the publick, did so demean themselves both in Peace and War, that there was between all a vertuous emulation who should most benefit his Country. An happiness which was too great to continue long. The people had as yet no written Laws: *Custom* bearing most sway, the rest of the *Law* locked up in the brest of the *Judges*. To avoid such inconveniencies as might hence ensue, there were some men, conceived to be as sound in judgment, as honest in their actions, deputed by a general Commission, to take an abstract of the *Grecian Laws*: according to the tenour whereof, the people were to frame their lives, the *Judges* their sentences. Here followed the *Oligarchy* or *Decemvirate State* of *Rome*, but long it lasted not. For these new *Lords* joining forces together, made themselves rich with the spoil of the people, not caring by what unlawful means they could purchase either profit or pleasure. *Appius Claudius*, one of the *Decemviri*, was the break-neck of this Government. He, unmindful of *Lucretia* and the *Tarquins*, lusted after *Virginia*, a woman though of low condition, yet such a woman in whom Beauty and Vertue strove for the preheminence. The issue was, that she (to save her honour) was slain by her own Father in an open Assembly of the People; *Appius* forced to make away himself in Prison; and the rest of that *Magistracy* abdicating their Offices, the *Consuls* were for a time restored.

3. The *People* fleshed with this victory, and calling to mind how their Ancestors had in like manner banished the *Kings*, began to know their own strength, and stomached it exceedingly, that they on whose shoulders the frame of the State was supported, should be so much under the command of others; that they who were *Lords* abroad, should be below the condition of *Slaves* at home. Hereupon they raise a tumult under the Conduct of their *Tribune*, *Canuleius*. Nor could they by any perswasions be induced to lay down Arms till they had obtained a Decree, That from thenceforth the *Nobles* and the *Commons* might promiscuously be married. And this was the first step to the *Republick*. The gaining this new *priviledge*, put them in possibility of obtaining greater. They now sue to be capable of the *Consulship*. The *Fathers* consulting of this demand, wisely foresaw, that to grant their Petition, or to deny it, was alike dangerous. For were it utterly dashed, it was to be feared the people would again forsake the City; and yet make their stay more insolent & insupportable, if it were granted. *C. Claudius*, one who by his honourable behaviour, was by both parties had in an equal degree of reverence, quickly proposed a middle course, whereby the fury of the multitude might be appeased, without blemish to the *Consular* dignity. He constituted six Annual Officers, equally chosen out of the *People* and the *Nobles*, calling them *Tribuni Militum Consularis potestatis*. This Office continued, but not without many *Interstitiums*, the space of 78 years. Which time expired, and some experience being had of the Peoples Government, the *Lords* of the Senate did decree, That one of the *Consuls* should from thenceforth be chosen by, and out of the Commons; that they should be capable of all *Magistracies*, yea, even of the *Dictatorship*. So that now *Vertue* was as speedy a Ladder to climb unto Honours, as *Nobility of Birth*; and a *Good* man as much respected as a *Great*. A rare felicity of the times.

4. The *People* being thus mixt with the *Nobles*, as well in Marriages as Honours; one would have thought that this *Common-wealth*, being thus equally poised, had been immortal. But as in the *Natural Body* there can be no exact and *Arithmetical* proportion of the humours and elements, without some *predominancy*; so in the *Body Politick* can there be no equal mixture of *Plebeians* and *Patricians*, without the supremacy of the one or the other. The *People* had, presently after the institution of the *Consuls*, raised a Commotion, and withdrew themselves into *Mount Aventine*. Nor could they be intreated to return into the City, till there were granted unto them peculiar Officers called *Tribuni Plebis*, or Protectors of the Commons. These being not long after by the Common-Council pronounced to be *Sacrosancti*, and inviolable, began to heave the *Popular State* too high, and thrust the *Aristocratical* too low; not regarding to lose the love of the one, so they might get the applause of the other. Insomuch, that matters of judgment were devolved from the *Fathers* to the *Commons*; and the authority of the *Senate* trod under foot by the *People*. Nay, they proceeded so far, that *Marius* being *Tribune*, threatned to send *Cotta* the *Consul* unto prison. And *Sulpitius* in the same *Office*, made the *Consuls* forsake the *Senate-house*, and slew one of their sons, whose heels were not nimble enough to flie away. And now were the *Romans* governed by that form of *rule*, than which there is no lower. So that as well by an inevitable necessity in *Nature*, as the ordinary course of *Policies*, there must be a reverting to the first, and *Monarchical* Authority. For questionless it fareth many times with a *Common-wealth* as with the *Sun*, which runneth through all the signs of the *Zodiack*, till it return to the place where its motion first began. And the *Platonick* year of reducing all things to the same beginning, continuance, and period, how false soever in the Books of *Nature*, is in some sort true in the change of Government.

5. The way down hill is easie and ordinary, but to ascend unto the top requireth both wit to frame the steps, and courage to give the attempt. So was it here also with the *Romans*: They had naturally, and almost insensibly faln from a *Monarchy* to a *Populacy*, or *Democracy*: But to ascend from a *Populacy* to a *Monarchy*, required many steps and degrees in many, much industry in all. *Marius* and *Sylla*, well skilled in feeding the humours of the *People*, were the first that attempted, and severally mounted to such a height of command, as never durst any promise to them, nor they hope for themselves. *Marius* was of an harsh and stern nature, equally cruel to the *Enemies* in War, and the *People* in Peace; one whose birth the *Romans* might have had just cause to curse, had he not saved them from the *Cimbri*. *Sylla* was one whose carriage none could enough commend before, or sufficiently condemn after his prosperity. A man whose *Peace* was far more bloody than his *Wars*; a better *Subject* than a *Prince*.

These two gave way each to other, and both to death. Next these, as well in factions and designs, as blood and alliance, succeeded *Cæsar* and *Pompey*: Two men never truly parallel'd since their own times. *Cæsar* had a wit to invent so pregnant, a heart to execute so stout, and to both a Fortune so favourable, that he durst undertake what no man dared; and his performances commonly were answerable to his undertakings. *Pompey*, a man greater than his own or his friends wishes, had triumphed over all the parts of the known World; and could he but have brooked an *Equal*, he had never met *Superiour*. Had these two lived in divers Ages,

or exercised their valour on the common Enemy, the World had been too little to yield them employment. But turning their forces one against the other, *Pompey* overthrown in the *Field*, was basely murthered in *Egypt*: and *Cæsar*, victoriously conqueror in *Thessaly*, was barbarously massacred in the *Capitol*. And though none of these four Worthies could settle the *Monarchy* in himself, yet this shall be to their eternal memory recorded, that they first opened a passage to others, and first moved the stone, which rowling along, tumbled the People out of the *Government*.

6. After the overthrow of *Pompey*, and death of *Cæsar*, the *Common-wealth* might have recovered *Liberty*, if either *Cæsar* had left no heir, and *Pompey* no children: or rather, if *Antonius*, a man of an unquiet and turbulent spirit, had not begun new troubles. For he knowing the affection of the *common people* unto young *Octavius*, *Cæsar*'s heir; and hearing the continual report of his approach to *Rome* for his inheritance, did by Decree of the *Senate* restore *Sextus* the son of *Pompey* to his blood and honours; Hoping that they two, inheriting their Fathers hatreds, would like Pellets in a Boys Pot-gun drive out each other; and so he might remain *Lord* of the whole. But young *Octavius* was too old to be so fetcht over, and had moreover more desire to revenge his Fathers death on *Brutus* and *Cassius*, than turn himself upon an Enemy that neither had done, nor could do him any hurt. At his first entrance into *Rome* he declared himself *Cæsars* heir, though some regarding more his welfare than honour, disswaded him from it. His retinue at his entrance was but small, his behaviour gentle and courteous, so that all had cause to love him, none to fear him. His first business was to *Antonius*, then possessed of all *Cæsar*'s estate. His words as modest as his Petition just. *Antonies* answer somewhat churlish, forbidding him to meddle in matters of *State*, adding that he was too young to take upon him the name of *Cæsar*, and so dismissed him unsatisfied, and with discontentments. *AUGUSTUS* (for by that name we mean to call him, though he was not yet so called) perceiving that *Antonies* answer, though in shew but a *delay*, was in effect a *denial*, insinuated into the acquaintance of *Cicero*, then potent among the *Senators*, and a capital Enemy of *Antony*; by whose means the *Lords* of the *Senate* began to cast great affection towards him. Next in a solemn Oration to the *People*, he let them know, how he intended to have distributed his Fathers wealth among them; and how *Antonius* did unjustly detain it from them both. Certainly, there is not any thing prevaileth sooner with the ignoble Man than hope of gain. No sooner had he finished his speech, and given away that to them, which he thought impossible to get for himself, but all was in a tumult. None was so sparing of his words, but he had some curse in store for *Antonius*: every one vowing the destruction of that man, whom they supposed to deprive them of *AUGUSTUS* donative.

7. In this hurly burly *Antony* quits the Town, and is by the general voice of the Houses declared an Enemy to the State. An Army is given to *Hircius* & *Pansa*, then *Consuls*: *AUGUSTUS*, aged but 18 years, being proclaimed *Imperator*, and made head of the League against the common Foe. *AUGUSTUS*, as he loved not to absent from a necessary war, so he always used to reserve himself from the dangers of it; and therefore he committed the whole enterprise unto the *Consuls*: well knowing that though the Officers & Souldiers took most pains to get the Victory, yet would the honour of it be referred to him, as *Imperator*; Whereas if any thing fell out to the Army not well, his being a *Non-agent* in the business, would bring his honour off without stain. The *Consuls* therefore proceeded in the War against *Antony*: who seeing little possibility of prevailing, resolved to sell the loss of his own liberty and his Souldiers lives at a dear rate. And indeed the fortune of the day was so equally shared, that as the *Consuls* might boast of the vanquishment of *Antony*, so *Antony* might triumph in the death of the *Consuls*.

AUGUSTUS had now as much as he could desire, more than he expected; a victorious Army at his service. He therefore applies himself so to them, that giving that among them which he had in present; and promising them greater favours, according as his fortune and their valour should advance him; he bound them unto him in an eternal bond of allegiance, and made them the first step by which he ascended the *Royalty*. The *Lords* of the *Senate* hearing of the young mans fortune, thought it best to strangle these hopes even in their Cradles, and to that end, decree the honour of overcoming *Antony*, not to belong to *AUGUSTUS*, but to *Decius Brutus*; for whose defence (being besieged by *Antony* in *Mutina*) their Army had been levied. Nor did they think this frost of unexpected unkindness, sufficient to nip the blossom of his hopes; but they denied him the *Consulship*. These harsh proceedings compelled *AUGUSTUS* (his honour now lying at stake) to enter *Rome* as *Conqueror*, and force the *Fathers* to grant him his desires. Having thus gotten what for the time he aimed at; he generally shewed himself grateful to all, and particularly to some of the Souldiers, paying them what was behind by promise, and openly protesting that without their aid he durst not have adventured into the *Capitol*. So by keeping his day with the *Military* men, and shewing his noble and generous nature in a thankful commemoration of their service; he added stronger bonds to such as were already his own, and won many daily to his side, which before were either *neutral*, or *adversaries*.

8. *Antony* in the mean time was not idle, but knowing that *Lepidus* was beyond the Mountains with a puissant Army, he posted thither, and so far prevailed with the Souldiers, that he was admitted into the Camp; where the *General* entertained him with all expressions of love and welcome. *Antony* perceiving the facile nature of *Lepidus*, soon perswaded him to lead his forces into *Italy*; promising him no less than the Lordship of the World; if he durst but shew his face to the *Romans*. *AUGUSTUS* having continual news of this combination, and fearing much the prowess of *Antony*, now strengthened; conceived no course so fitting and convenient to his ends, as to join friendship, and to enter into confederacy with them. And this he did, not for any good will to either, but because being destitute of means to resist them, and also to revenge the death of his Father *Julius*, which he much laboured; he might with their forces oppress *Cassius* and *M. Brutus*, and, as occasion fell out, deal with them being severed. This League was solemnly confirmed by a bloody *Proscription* immediately following. Wherein, to be revenged on their *Enemies* they betrayed their *Friends*. A lamentable and ruthful time; good and bad, rich and poor, being alike subject to the slaughter. Now was the time of *Julius Cæsars* Government thought to be the *Golden Age*; and every one began to curse *Brutus* and *Cassius* as the Authors of these present miseries; whom they but lately honoured as the Restorers of the Common liberty. Nay the very Kings were deemed tolerable, and such as lived in their days, happy. The poor *Romans* had not changed the

Tyranny,

Tyranny, but the *Tyrants*: Yea, they had three for one into the bargain. Such is the condition of us men, that we know not our own happineſs in the *fruition*, but the *want*. Two of theſe *Triumviri* glutted themſelves with blood, taking pride in hearing the lamentable cries and groans of the *People*. *Auguſtus* on the contrary, ſhewed himſelf much grieved at this barbarous cruelty; ſo that his conſent ſeemed rather forced than voluntary. But this *Proſcription*, though in it ſelf cruel and tyrannical, produced ſome good and profitable effects in the *Republick*. For when by this *Proſcription* and the enſuing Civil War, the ſtouteſt of the *Nobles* and *Commons* were made away, few being left which durſt endeavour to recover the old *Liberty*; *Auguſtus* did the more eaſily eſtabliſh his *Monarchy*, and reſtore peace to the City. Moreover the proſecution of this cruelty ſo incenſed the people againſt *Antony* and *Lepidus*, that *Auguſtus*, whom moſt held excuſable, found them always his faſt friends, if not for love to him, yet in ſpight to them.

9. But to proceed; *Antony* and *Auguſtus* leaving the guard of the City to *Lepidus*, with joint-forces march againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, both overthrown by *Antony*; whom *AVGVSTVS* did therefore put upon that ſervice, as well to diminiſh *Antonies* forces, as to keep his own entire. As for himſelf, either he in policy ſuffered himſelf to be driven out of the field by *Brutus*, to make *Antony* more work; or elſe indeed durſt not abide the Battel. Such end had *Brutus* and *Caſſius*, two men whom fortune ſeemed to be in love with on the ſudden, and did as ſuddenly forſake them. *Brutus* the more accompliſhed man; *Caſſius* the more expert Souldier. I paſs over *AVGVSTVS* Wars in *Italy*, *Antonies* in *Aſia*, the diſcontents between them, and their reconciliation by the means of *Octavia*, ſiſter to the one, and wife to the other *Emperour*. As alſo how joining forces together to oppreſs *Sextus*, then Lording it over the Sea, and proud with the conqueſt of *Sicilia*; they received him into the *Confederacy*, and joined the Iſland of *Sardinia* to his other conqueſts. To recompence which kindneſs, *Sextus* invited the two *Generals* aboard his *Admiral-Gally*: and after a bountiful entertainment, returned them ſafe to their Camps. I ſcarce have ever heard of ſo great an over-ſight among ſo many able Politicians. And much I marvel with my ſelf, upon what confidence *AVGVSTVS* and *Antony* durſt ſo far truſt their perſons to a reconciled Enemy: or on what reaſon *Sextus* having both of them in his power, would let ſlip ſo ſlightly that advantage, greater than which was never offered to a diſcontented and ambitious perſon. This I am ſure of, that he afterwards repented it, and could have wiſhed that he had hearkned to the voice of *Menas* his old ſervant, who had perſwaded him to make his beſt of that opportunity. The Kings of *France* and *Aragon*, of old Enemies made new Friends, had the like enterview at *Savonæ*: which that notable Hiſtoriographer and States-man *Guicciardine* deſcribeth with much wonder and commendation. Yet, in the like caſe, have many, and, as I think, worthily condemned *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy*, the Arch-politicians of thoſe days, in that *Lewis* at *Peronne* put himſelf into the hands of *Charles* his Enemy, who alſo after a ſhort reſtraint, diſmiſſed him.

10. Theſe ſolemn expreſſions of amity between the three *Generals* being thus ended, and *Antony* gone for *Egypt*, *AVGVSTVS* then began to contrive his eſtabliſhment in the *State*, though with the ruin of his *Colleagues*. He beginneth firſt with *Sextus*, having by gifts and promiſes drawn *Menas* unto his ſide; who by reaſon of his inwardneſs with his Maſter, knew moſt of his deſigns. By the directions of this *Menas*, and the aſſiſtance of *Lepidus*, he quickly overthrew *Sextus*; who flying death in *Europe* by the hand of *AVGVSTVS*, found it in *Aſia*, by the command of *Antony*. After this victory, *AVGVSTVS*, either having, or pretending a quarrel againſt *Lepidus*, entreth into his Camp, ſeizeth his perſon, and depriving him of all honours, confineth him to *Rome*. A man that half againſt his will, ſtumbling upon the Government, had beyond any deſert of his, enjoyed ten years continuance of Empire and proſperity. An action of a very high nature, and ſuch as *AVGVSTVS* durſt not have ventured on, if *Antony* had been in *Italy*. He therefore adviſedly removed him out of his way, before he would attempt the ſame. It hath been ever a chief *Maxim* in *Court-policy*, to remove that man out of the way, under pretence of ſome honourable charge, whom we intend either to caſt from his preſent honours, or elſe to make leſs potent with *Prince* and *People*. For which cauſe alſo *AVGVSTVS* perſwaded *Antony*'s abſence from the *City*, to bring him at the laſt into diſcredit and contempt. For well he knew that his dotage on *Cleopatra*, could not but draw him into many inconveniencies: neither could his neglecting the *State*, to riot with his *Lemman*, be other than diſtaſtful to the *Lords* and *People*. Next, he commanded his ſiſter *Octavia* to leave her huſband *Antony*'s houſe; yet privately he perſwaded her to live there ſtill, and bring up his children; that ſo the *Romans* ſeeing her noble demeanor and love to her huſband, might the more heartily deteſt him, who ſo ignobly and unkindly had rejected her. To add more fuel to this flame of hatred, he readeth *Antony*'s Will unto the people, in which many of the *Roman* Provinces were bequeathed to *Cleopatra*'s children, and other things ordained to the common prejudice. *Antony* likewiſe preferred many Bills againſt *AVGVSTVS*, as that he had depoſed *Lepidus* from the *Triumvirate*; that he had divided *Italy* among his own Souldiers only, that he had not reſtored the Ships borrowed to make War againſt *Sextus*.

11. Theſe diſcontents ſeconded with an ambitious hope of prevailing, made them both reſolute to refer all to the deciſion of a Battel. *Antony* had a Fleet conſiſting of 500 Ships, high built, and trimmed up rather for a Triumph than a Fight. His Land Forces conſiſted of 100000 Foot, and 12000 Horſe. *AVGVSTVS* had the like number of Horſemen, 80000 Foot, and 250 good *Men of War*, ſnug and cloſe, built more for uſe than oſtentation. The *Rendezvouz* is *Actium*, a place ſeeming to be marked out for notable deſigns: here being fought alſo in our Fathers days, that famous battel, wherein the *Venetians* gave the World to underſtand, that the *Turks* Forces by Sea were not invincible. *Antony* was on the Offenſive ſide, and therefore much doubted whether it were better to give the Onſet by Sea or by Land. *Cleopatra*, whoſe words were *Oracles*, perſwaded him to the Sea-fight; not that ſhe thought it more ſafe, but that, if *Antony* loſt the day, ſhe might with more facility eſcape. To this reſolution, when moſt of the Captains had for fear agreed; one of the old Souldiers thus bluntly gain-ſaid it. "What a miſerable ſecurity art thou poſſeſſed "with, moſt noble *Emperor*? Where is that ancient force- "fight wherewith thou haſt formerly prevented all diſa- "ſters, & turned the Enemies devices on their own heads? "Conſider with thy ſelf, moſt noble *General*, what un- "certain friends the *Wind* & *Sea* are? To how fickle an "Element thou doſt truſt thy fortunes? Let the *Egypti-* "*ans* and *Phœnicians*, old *Mermaids*, born and nurſt up in "the Sea, follow this kind of Warfare. But let us thy true "*Roman* ſpirits trie our valour on the firm Land, and "there fight for thy Empire, and our own Lives. Per-

"haps thou doſt miſtruſt our faith; Look here, *Anthony*, "(with that he opened his boſom) and thou ſhalt ſee "many an honourable ſcar got in thy ſervice. We are "now too old to learn new Treaſons: Alter therefore thy "reſolution, and, to pleaſe a woman, caſt not away ſo "many of thy faithful Followers. Certainly the unreſiſtable powers of Heaven when they decree a mans deſtruction, overthrow thoſe Counſels by which he ſhould eſcape it. *Antony* turns his deaf ear to this Souldier's wholeſome advice, and borrowing from *Cleopatra* two or three kiſſes (as if from the Fountain of her lips he had derived all his courage) without any more ceremony prepareth himſelf unto the battel.

12. *AUGUSTUS* on the other ſide, ſeeing a neceſſity of a Sea-fight, was yet in this comforted, that his Veſſels were more uſeful and better manned, though fewer than his Enemies: that his men to him were faithful, and, by reaſon of their many Victories, in good heart: From *Antony* were daily revolted ſome Kings and Captains of note, to the great encouragement of the one ſide, and diſheartning of the other. The whole charge of the War he committed to *M. Veſpanius Agrippa*; who failing in no duty of a good Captain, took from his Gallies whatſoever might be impediments to the valiant, or ſhelter for the cowardly; all that was cumberſom to his own men, or advantagious to the Enemy. Things thus ordered, and the battels ready to join, *Auguſtus Cæſar* ſtanding where he might ſee and be ſeen of all, is ſaid to make this or the like Oration. "Fellows & Companions in Arms, I ſup- "poſe it needleſs to hearten you, which never were ac- "quainted with fear; or bid you overcome, which never "yet knew what it was, not to vanquiſh. Conqueſt hath "always ſat upon the edges of your ſwords, and victo- "ry been written in your foreheads. Be not now back- "ward to add this one to your other Triumphs. When "after the death of my Father *Julius* of famous memo- "ry, I firſt dealt in matters of War, I rather found than "made you good Souldiers. And during this twelve "years ſervice under me, neither have you been wanting "in the duty of faithful followers; nor I (I hope) of a vi- "gilant and grateful Leader. Sure I am, I expreſſed my "ſelf as far as I could, and more I would, had I been able. "Let not the number, nor the greatneſs of the adverſe "Gallies any ways affright you. The hugeneſs of their "Bulks maketh them unapt for employment; and the "multitude, one clogging and hindring the others, may "as much further our Victory as theirs. They exceed us "in multitudes of *Men*, we them in number of *Souldiers*. "The meaning of the word *Pilot* is unknown among "them. And for their *Mariners*, the beſt of them are but "*Carters*, *Reapers*, and *Harveſt-men*, raked out of the field; "the reſt, the excrement of common Priſons, wherewith "their Veſſels are loaded, not manned. The *General* is in- "deed a fit *Captain* for ſuch a ſelected Company. It is "the ſame *Antony*, whom you once drave out of the field, "before *Mutina*. I verily perſwade my ſelf, that neither "he dares think of recovering, or you of loſing your "former glories. It is the ſame *Antony*, who being ſhame- "fully chaſed out of *Parthia*; only in that he was not "*vanquiſhed*, proclaimed himſelf *Victor*. It is the ſame "*Antony*, who intended to make *Rome* ſubject to the *E- "gyptians*; and to diſtribute the *Provinces* purchaſed with "the blood and vertue of our Anceſtors, amongſt *Iras* "and her fellow Chamber-maids. Nay indeed, it is not "*Antony* at all, but the ſhadow only of that ſubſtance, "which now is hid in *Cleopatra*'s Cabbin. Courage then "brave men of Arms; be, as you have ſtill been, *Conque- "rours*. To ſpeak more, were to detain you from victo- "ry. Only this, Call to mind your ancient valour. Re- "member that I am *Cæſar*, you *Romans*.

13. This ſpeech animated the new Souldiers, and confirmed the old; ſo that with a general acclamation they gave the aſſault. Death, wounds, and blows, diſhed in divers faſhions, and ſerved in by ſeveral men, were the beſt delicates prepared for theſe unwelcome viſitants. *Cleopatra* beholding the Battel, and doubting the ſucceſs, through the thickeſt of *Antonies* Fleet, made away with the 60 Gallies appointed for her Guard. This diſorder made the breach, at which the Victory entred. *Antony* ſeeing her flight, left his Squadron alſo; and being taken into her Gally, hoyſed ſail for *Egypt*: Herein playing the part of a cowardly Souldier, whilſt each of his Souldiers executed the office of a couragious *General*. For they ſo abſolutely perſiſted in the fight, that *AUGUSTUS* was fain to offer them mercy ſooner than they would demand it, and divers times before they would accept it. At laſt they all ſware allegiance unto him. The Victory being thus gotten, *AUGUSTUS* (no loſer of advantages) ſpeedeth into *Egypt*, which he reduceth into the form of a *Province*; making the people pay, for fine, twenty millions of Gold. By receiving this mony, he ſo weakned them that they had no ability to raiſe an after-war; and by diſtributing part of it among his Souldiers, he confirmed them in obedience. As for *Antony*, he ſeeing his fortunes deſperate, redeemed the honour loſt in his life, by a noble and heroick death. And *Cleopatra* ended her life not long after alſo. A woman more well-favoured, than fair; well-ſpoken, rather than either. *Antonies* Courtiers had ſeen many Ladies more lovely, none more prevailing; men being chained to her by the ears, rather than by the eyes.

14. I willingly omit *AUGUSTUS* entry into *Rome*, as alſo the ſtate and magnificence of his *Triumph*. His Victory he uſed ſo juſtly, that none felt the fury of the War, but ſuch as were ſlain in the *Battel*. To aſſure himſelf of *Antonies* adherents, was his firſt care: to which end he burnt in the *Common Forum*, the Coffers of *Antony*, unopened; wherein all his Letters from his friends in *Rome* had been incloſed: well-knowing that as long as any thought themſelves ſuſpected Adverſaries; they would never ſhew themſelves true Friends. To the *Senators* and *Magiſtrates* he made ſumptuous feaſts; to the *Common People* he exhibited magnificent and pleaſing Stage-Plays; and, with all variety of pleaſure, baniſhed from both, as well ſorrow for the old *Proſcription*, as fear of a new. But this was only as a preparation to his main deſign. There were two men moſt dear unto him, and privy to his Counſel, *Mecænas* & *Agrippa*; which in the object of their love, differed only in this; *Mecænas* was a lover of *AUGUSTUS*, *Agrippa* of the *Emperour*. *Mecænas* was of the rank of *Knights*, a man of good and bad parts equally compounded; when his buſineſs required care, vigilant and circumſpect; at leiſure time, exceſſively riotous. *Agrippa* was the firſt of his houſe; a man alike fit for Camp and Counſel; one neither careleſs of a good name, nor covetous of a great. For although he only was the man which vanquiſhed *Sextus*, and *Antony*; yet well skilled in the humours of Princes, he gave *AUGUSTUS* the honour of all his Conqueſts; making the vertue not the reward, the end of his actions. So by doing nobly, and ſpeaking modeſtly of it, he was without envy, but not without glory. With theſe two, *AUGUSTUS* withdrew into a private Cloſet, and then ſpake unto them in this ſort. He made firſt unto them a long diſcourſe of the Civil Wars; then added, "That "having by his fortune, and the valour of his Souldiers, "put an end to the troubles; he was unreſolved what "to do; Whether to reſign the *Empire* to the *People*, or "retain it ſtill in his own hands: That in a buſineſs of "ſuch

'such importance, he durst not relie altogether on his 'own wisdom; That he had made them his Judges, as 'men that could speak soundly, and durst speak freely: 'That he knew them to have more care of his honour, 'than profit; but of the *Common-wealth*, more than 'both: That his Counsels, which course soever he took, 'would not be by them eliminated. He therefore in- 'treated them to consider what was to be done, and to 'give up their opinions in it.

15. *Agrippa* after a short silence thus began. 'I know, 'thou canst not but marvel, O *Cæsar*, that I who under 'thine *Empire*, am sure to be beyond president exalted, 'should perswade thee to live private. But I esteem 'more thy honour, than my profit; the publick good, 'than my particular preferment. And yet perhaps my 'Counsel shall be as profitable, if not as plausible as the 'contrary. I know thee to be no way delighted with 'lies and flattery, and will therefore deal with thee 'freely and plainly. Thou hast indeed put a period to 'the *Civil Wars*, but to what end, unless thou dost re- 'store unto the *Common-wealth* that *Liberty* for which 'the Wars were raised? What benefit can the people 'reap from thy *Victory*, if thou dost use it only as an 'instrument, for their greater bondage? Dost thou think 'that the *Romans* having so many hundred years main- 'tained their Liberty, will now be willing to forgo it? 'No, *Cæsar*, no, Flatter not thy self with these hopes. '*Marius* the younger, and *Sertorius*, were quickly cut 'off, when their ends were once known; and *Julius* 'thy Father of happy memory, did not long live, after 'his actions seemed to bring the *Common liberty* in 'hazard. And shall we think that there is no true *Ro- 'man* spirit surviving? no *Brutus*, living to attempt the 'like against thee? Believe me, *Cæsar*, believe me, it 'is far better not to medle with the *Empire* at all, than 'to be forced to abandon it. But say, Divine Providence 'will so protect thee, that thou mayest out-live such 'pactices; shalt thou also not out-live thy glories? 'This present age perchance will not censure thine 'actions, because it dares not: But Posterity, free from 'all respects of love or hatred, cannot but call them 'into question, and brand thy enterprise with *Ambi- 'tion*, and perhaps *Tyranny*. If thy designs prosper they 'will judge thee to have risen unjustly; if otherwise, to 'have fallen deservedly. How much better then were 'it, now when thine honour is without blemish, and 'thy reputation unstained, to resign thy authority? In- 'deed when *Sextus* lorded it over the Sea, and *Antony* 'over *Egypt*, it might have been thought want of spirit, 'to have deposed thy self from the Government. But 'now to do it, when thou art without *Rival* in the 'Empire; now when thou art sole *Commander* of the 'Worlds Forces; now when the *People* and *Senate* lie 'prostrate at the feet of thy mercy; were to strike dumb 'detraction, and to make future Ages admire thy Tem- 'per. Thou art at this present the joy and comfort of 'the World; there is wanting to thee neither Wealth nor 'Fame. Here then fix thy foot. For go but one step be- 'yond this *Non ultra*, and thou wilt run into a boundless 'Ocean of perils, which have no end, but the end of thy 'life and reputation.

16. 'Not so excellent *Agrippa*, replyed *Mecenas*. I ne- 'ver heard good *Pilot* find fault with *Sea-room*, or of 'more vessels cast away in the *Ocean*, than in the '*Straights*, and narrow passages. Our *Republick* is a Ship 'fraught with divers Nations. She hath been long tossed 'on the waves of *Civil dissensions*, long driven up and 'down with the Wind of ambition; and there is now no 'place so fit for her safety, as the unlimited *Ocean* of one 'mans power. This *Empire* at first-riling, seemed not to 'require a *Monarch*; but it is now grown too unwieldy, 'to be without one. Take then upon thee, O *Cæsar*, this 'Empire; or, to say better, do not forsake it. I should ne- 'ver thus advise thee, did I conceive any possible incon- 'veniencies. The *Senate* doth allow thee a competent 'guard of valiant and faithful Soudiers; whom then 'shouldst thou fear? Nay, ill may I prosper, If I see any 'cause of fear, were thy Guard cashiered. Enemies thou 'hast none. For such as were, are either already slain by 'thy valour, or made thy fast friends, by thy bounty and 'clemency. To omit *Marius* and *Sertorius*, I will a little 'touch at thy Father *Julius*. He, too good a Souldier to 'be a *Statist*, was too heady and violent in establishing 'his government. Nor could he cunningly temporize, 'and suffer the *people* insensibly, and by degrees, to drop 'into bondage; but oppress them all at once. Again, he 'committed a great *Solœcism* in *State*, when discharging 'his *Guard*, he sought to retain that *Empire* by fair means, 'which he had gotten by violence. I know thee, O *Ce- 'sar*, to be of a more wary and cunning behaviour. Learn 'also to work out their own safety, by *Pompey's* misfor- 'tunes. He after the finishing of the *Pontick War*, at '*Brundusium*, disbanded his Army; and thereby merited 'to be accounted an honest and moderate man. Certain- 'ly, he showed himself in the course of this action, ra- 'ther vertuous than fortunate or politick. For presently 'he began to be contemned, and by his improvident 'weakning of himself, made an open passage to his own 'ruine. I commended his modesty, more than his brain; 'neither did he himself, on better considerations, ap- 'prove his own doings: and therefore he resolved, had 'he been Victor in *Pharsalia*, never to have committed 'the like oversight. So it is, and so it will fall out with 'thee, O *Cæsar*, if in this action thou propose him to be 'thy pattern. It is not safe, *Agrippa* saith, to take the 'Empire; less safe it is, to refuse it. A setled and inna- 'tive vice it is in man, Never to endure that any not 'above our own rank should over-top us. *Romes* second 'founder *Camillus*; *Scipio*, that scourge of *Carthage*, were 'disgraced; and *M. Coriolanus* banished by our Ancestors: 'only because their worth had lifted them above the 'ordinary pitch of Subjects. Do not thou hope to fare 'better than thy Predecessors. Heretofore, perchance, 'thou mightest have sought the *Empire*, to satisfie thy 'ambition: The *Empire* must now be thy refuge and 'Asylum. Credit me, The *Lords* of the *Senate*, after so 'many years of *Obedience*, know not how to *Govern*; 'neither canst thou, having so long been a *Governour*, 'learn *Obedience*. True it is, that in matters of domesti- 'cal business, a man may stop and desist where he will: 'But in the getting of an *Empire*, there is no mean be- 'tween the death of an *Enemy* and the life of a *Prince*. 'Thou hast already gone too far to retire. Now thou 'must resolve to be *Cæsar* or Nothing. To say more 'were superfluous. Thine own discretion will suggest 'unto thee better Arguments. Only this I know, 'that thou hast in thee too much *Julius*, not to be an 'Emperor.

17. *AUGUSTUS* seemed to incline to this latter o- pinion, whether moved with *Mecenas* Oration, especially his instance in *Pompey*, or that he was before resolved to follow that course, is uncertain. Howsoever, seeming with great attention to observe their speeches, and ga- thering their several reasons and motives together; he made this reply. 'A most hard thing it is, for a divided 'mind to make a well-joyn'd Answer. Divided I am, 'and troubled between your two opinions; loth to 'follow either, sithence in so doing I must offend 'one. Yet sithence there is a necessity of Resolution, 'I intend, though I like well of thy advice, *Agrippa*, to

" follow thine, *Mecenas*. In doing which, I am but an " inſtrument of the *Deſtinies*, to put their wills in exe- " cution. Often have I heard my Father *Octavius* re- " port, how *Nigidius*, famous for his skill in *Judiciary* " *Aſtrology*, told him once in open *Senate*, That he had " begotten an *Emperor* for the *Romans*. As alſo, how " *M. Cicero*, ſo renowned for Wit and Eloquence, drea- " med, that he ſaw *Jupiter* place me on the top of the " *Capital*, with a Whip in mine hand. Certainly, if the " Powers of Heaven promiſe me ſo great an *Empire*, I " will not be wanting to my ſelf; but will add by my " *induſtry*, to their *influence*. To further my deſigns, I " do deſire you, nay I conjure you both, that as you " have been ever ready in your Counſels; ſo you would " not now be backward in any neceſſary Aſſiſtance. This ſaid, they preſently enter into a new conference, how to manage a buſineſs of this weight; what *Senators* to acquaint with their intent; how to diſpoſe of the *Army*, not yet caſhiered: with what Plummet it were beſt to ſound the minds of the common people, and to oblige all ſorts unto him. This Conſultation ended; *AUGUSTUS* continued his affability to the *People*, and reſpect to the *Nobles*. An opportunity he had to expreſs himſelf to both. There was at that time a Famine, which ſhrewdly raged among the *Commons*. To the poorer ſort, he diſtributed Corn, *gratis*; to others, at a mean price. Riches and honours he communicated to both ſorts; the better to wipe out of their memories, the antient *freedom*. Such parts of the *City* as were deſtroyed by caſualty of fire, ruined by length of time, or defaced during the *Civil Wars*, he re-edified. Houſes of *Common-aſſemblies* he repaired, Temples, conſecrated to the gods, he ſpared no coſt to adorn and beautifie. And finally, ſo freely, diffuſed his bounty, that there was no part or member of the City which had not ſome taſte of it. Next, he diſmiſſed his Souldiers, aſſigning them Lands and habitations in divers parts of *Italy*: That ſo the *People* might conceive his *Reſignation* to be real; and yet, if need were, his forces might be quickly re-aſſembled. Nor were *Agrippa* and *Mecenas* wanting for their parts, to promote the cauſe; but carefully acquainted ſome of the *Senate* with it, who ſtood well affected to them; and cunningly prepared others, who had ſtood indifferent.

18. The foundation thus laid, and the *Senate* ſate; *AUGUSTUS* roſe from his ſeat, and ſpake to this, or the like effect. " When I conſider with my " ſelf the infinite extent of the *Roman* Empire; I " proteſt I ſtand at a maze: marvelling how ſuch, as " heretofore have raiſed combuſtions in the State, durſt " undertake the ſole adminiſtration of it. What Nation " in the World hath not either begged their Peace at " our Gates; or felt the fury of our Wars at their own? " What Countries have we not harried with Fire and " Sword; making the riſing and ſetting of the Sun " the bounds of our Dominions? It muſt queſtionleſs " proceed from an over-weaning conceit in them, of " their own abilities; who thought themſelves ſo fit to " undergo that burthen, which none but the immortal " gods can carry. Of my ſelf I will not ſay much: On- " ly, I hope I may ſay with modeſty, that I am not infe- " rior to *Cinna*, nor it may be to *Sylla*: Yet have I found " in my ſelf, by late experience, how unable I was to " manage the affairs of State, even then when I had " two *Co-adjutors*. There is no *Atlas* of ſtrength ſuffi- " cient to bear up this *Heaven*; No *Star* of influence " ſufficient, to animate this *Sphere*; Nor one *form* of " vertue ſufficient, to actuate this *matter*. Neither in- " deed is it fit, that the *Republick*, which ought to be " immortal, ſhould depend only on the life and welfare " of one man. There never was, ſince the beginning of " time, a City repleniſhed with greater ſtore of worthy " and able men, either to conſult or execute. Never " was there ſeen ſo grave and diſcreet a *Conſiſtory*; Ne- " ver ſo many of both ſorts, ſo fit to govern. I have " by your Directions, and the Valour of your Souldiers, " put an end to all home-bread quarrels. I have been " your inſtrument to reduce Peace internal and exter- " nal, to your City; and deſire now no other Guerdon " or recompence, for any former ſervices, than a quiet " and a private life; free from all ſuch dangers and in- " conveniences, as are inſeperably annexed to the Sove- " raignty. Now therefore, (and may my action be au- " ſpicious and fortunate to my Country) do I reſign my " authority; committing my ſelf, and the *Common-* " *wealth* into the hands of the *Senate* and *People* of *Rome*.

19. This Oration ended, there followed a ſoft and ſilent buzzing in the houſe. Some ſuppoſed this ſpeech not to have ſo much truth, as art and cunning; yet ſmothered their conceits for fear of after-claps. Others were creatures of his own making; and they hoping to *riſe* in the fall of their Country, would not hear of a Reſignation. Some few of the wiſer ſort thought it not expedient, to put the Reins again into the hands of the *Multitude*. The reſt out of a ſluggiſh and Phlegmatick Conſtitution, choſe rather the preſent eſtate with ſecurity, than to ſtrive to recover the old with danger. All therefore with a joint-conſent proclaim him ſole *Emperor*; and ſolemnly entreat him to ſave the *Common-wealth*, otherwiſe running to inevitable ruin. He for a while, as vainly denied to accept the Government, as they vainly perſiſted to deſire him. At laſt, wearied with the clamours of all in general, and importunity of ſome in particular; he by little and little yielded to their requeſts, taking upon him the *Empire* for ten years: with this Proviſo, That if before that time expired, he could fully ſettle and order the preſent State, he would give up his charge. This he gave out, not with a purpoſe of performance, (for at the end of every *Decenni-um* he renewed his Leaſe of the Government); But that the people ſeeing ſo nigh a poſſiblity of regaining their *Liberties*, might not practiſe againſt him. Whereas, had he for term of life received the ſupream Authority, he had no doubt haſtned his own overthrow. For well he knew, that not the Title of *Dictator*, but the Epithete *Perpetual*, was the deſtruction of *CÆSAR*: And yet a great reſpect was had alſo in the choice of the Title. The name of *King* he refuſed, as being odious unto the *Citizens*. Neither would he be called *Romulus*, though he much deſired it; leſt they ſhould ſuppoſe that he did affect the *Tyranny*. When the people called him *Dictator*, he rent his Garments; deſiring them to diſcharge him of a name ſo hated: and being once called Lord, (*Domi-nus*) he forbad all that Title by publick Edict. *Princeps Senatus* was the only Title he admitted: well knowing, that the like glorious attributes were heaped on his Fa-ther *Julius* by them which leaſt loved him, only to this end, that growing more and more into hatred, he might the ſooner be diſpatched. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Common People*, led more by appearances than truth, diſcerned names more plainly than execution: and that the only courſe to make greatneſs ſtand firmly, was to receive extraordinary power under a Title not offen-ſive. The name alſo of *AUGUSTUS* conferred upon him by the *Senate*, (as if there had been ſomething in him more than mortal) he refuſed not; as a Title ex-preſſing more dignity and reverence than authority. And having pleaſed himſelf in the choice of his Title, he next proceeded to the eſtabliſhment of his power, which he thus purſued.

20. When

20. When first at the hands of the *Lords* of the *Senate*, he had for ten years received the Government; there was appointed unto him two *Cohorts* of *Prætorian Souldiers* for the guard of his person; to whom the *Senate* allowed the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier, to make them move vigilant and heedful in their charge. Over these he appointed two Prefects or Governors, (*Captains of the Guard* we may best term them.) To commit the charge to one only, might breed danger; to more, confusion. *Agrippina*, to settle *Nero* in the *Empire*, prevailed with *Claudius*, to make *Burrus*, whom she had at her devotion, the sole Captain: and *Nimphidius*, fallen from his hopes of setting *Galba* besides the quishon; desired the command of the *Guard*, as the next step to Soveraignty. In choice of these Captains, he observed two Rules: First, he ever chose them, *ex ordine Equestri*, not *Senatorio*; lest that, so high a dignity joyned to so high a birth, might startle their resolutions to some designs against his quiet. Secondly, he made choice of two such, as were of contrary humours, and somewhat at odds; that so the ill intents of the one (if they should harbour any) might be thwarted and revealed by the other; and both, in a noble emulation, should contend to be most forward in his service. The next course which he took for his own security, was a law he made to curb the wills and attempts of the *great ones*. For whereas it hath been formerly unlawful to question a *Bondman*, in matters concerning the life and death of his *Lord*; *AUGUSTUS* passed an Act, that all such *Bondmen* should be first sold to him, or the *Commonwealth*. By means whereof he kept the *Lords*, before presuming on the secresie of their *slaves*, from all close and private Conspiracies against him. Having thus strengthened his person, he assumed to himself the *Imperial*, *Censorial*, and *Tribunitian* authority, together with the *Sacerdotal* dignity. As *Emperor* and *General* of the Men of War, he could press Souldiers, raise Taxes, proclaim Wars, make Peace; yea, and put to death the very best and stoutest of the *Senators*. As *Censor*, it was in his power to reform corrupt manners, enquire after mens carriages, to take in and put out of the *Senate* whom he listed; to place and displace the people from a more honourable Tribe, to a less honourable. Yet would he not be called *Censor* as a name too inferiour; but accepted the *Prerogatives* of it, after the surrendry of *Manutius*, and his Associate; two men so unfit for that *Magistracy*, that they could object no crime to old or young, of which themselves were not guilty. The *Tribunitian authority* enabled him to hinder any thing attempted against his liking. It preserved his person from all contumely and injury; giving him power to punish, as an execrable person, (yea, and without any formality of the Law) whosoever had offended him either in word or deed. As for the *Pontifical Dignity*, it made him a little more reverenced, not more potent. Only it added to his title the stile of *Pontifex Maximus*, or *Chief Bishop*; and made him of authority amongst the Priests, and in sacred matters, things that concerned *Religion*. The light of Reason taught him, that it was convenient for him, being a *Prince*, to have command on all his people; He had been else but half a *Monarch*, such as some Princes are with us; who quit their *Clergy* to be governed by a *Foreign Head*.

21. These several Prerogatives annexed together, seem not yet sufficient: and therefore he so cunningly dealt with the *Senators*, that they gave him a general Exemption from the *Co-active power* of the Law. Which once obtained, he seriously bends his thoughts to settle the Common-wealth; and so to settle it, that by uniting all parties, and giving satisfaction to all *Interesses*, it might not be obnoxious to such frequent and tumultuous alterations, as it had been formerly. But herein when he had consulted the ancient *Platforms*, he found no small difficulty. The form described by *Plato*, shewed rather how a City ought to be governed, than how it may be. *Aristotle*, though bred in the *Free States* of *Greece*, was a friend to *Monarchy*; but his discourses dark, and speculative, and not easily reduced to practice. *Solon* afforded the People too much Authority the Nobles too little, the King none. The old *Carthaginian Legislators* attributed too much to Riches, too little to Vertue. The *Persian* Law-makers indulged to the King too much, to the Subject nothing. And on the other side, *Lycurgus* in his modelling of the State of *Sparta*, ascribed too little to the King, and too much to the Senate. *Zaleucus* was rather the Author of some particular Laws, than the Framer of a Commonwealth. *Phaleas*, and *Hippodamus*, as unimitable altogether as *Plato*. Seeing therefore that none of the old *Patterns* did come home to his purpose; and withal considering with himself, that the unmixt Forms of Rule were not equally ballanced, and by consequence subject unto change: he resolved to frame his *Common-wealth* out of the perfections of the three good *Forms*, their imperfection being rejected; reserving to himself the Supreme Majesty, to the Senate eminent Authority, to the People convenient Liberty, all in a just and fit proportion. And to say truth, he did so mix the *Soveraignty* of one, with the *Liberty* of all; that both the Lords and People, without fear of bondage or sedition, enjoyed their accustomed *Freedoms*. The Consuls and Nobles of the City assembled as formerly they used; matters of State they handled by themselves; Ambassadors of foreign Nations they heard, and dispatched. The *Commons* did assemble in the *Comitia*, to enact Laws and elect Magistrates, as in the *free Common-wealth*; Yet so that nothing was done without the consent and privity of the *Prince*, who for the most part nominated the successive Magistrate, leaving the confirmation of him to the *people*. So that the change, as he contrived it, was not violent and at once, but by degrees, and by the silent approbation of both Estates, as seeming to consist more in the alteration of the *Magistrate*, than of the *Laws*.

22. But (to proceed more particularly) the first care he took, was to confirm *Religion* in the same state in which he found it. I mean *Religion*, as the *Romans* used the word, for those particular, though Idolatrous Forms of *Worship*, which to their several gods had been used among them. This, though he might have changed, as the *Pontifex Maximus*, or chief Bishop of the *City*; yet very wisely he forbare it. It is not safe for Princes that are setled in a long descent of *Government*, to be too active in such changes: But it is dangerous to attempt it in a *green State*, and in an *Empire* not well quieted, and inured to bondage. Men are more sensible of the smallest alterations in the Church, than greater changes in the State, and raise more frequent broils about it. The *Romans* specially were exceeding tender in this point. The ancient *Ædiles* formerly received it into their charge, that they permitted no external either *Gods* or *Ceremonies*, to be introduced into the City. And by *Æmilius* it was enacted for a Law, *That none should offer Sacrifice in any publick place, after a new and Foreign fashion.* Excellent therefore was the counsel which *Mecenas* gave him when he first undertook the *Empire*, *viz.* 'That he should follow constantly the *Religion* 'which he found established, and compell others also 'to do the like. For, Foreign and strange Rites (saith 'he) will offend the people, work many inconvenient

strange

" alterations in the Civil State; yea and most likely " will occasion many both seditions and conspiracies. Words which he spake not to the air, but to a Prince exceeding apprehensive of the best advice. Nor did *AVGVSTVS* ever shew himself more careful in any one *Art* of Empire, than he did in this. That which *Mecænas* noted, we find true in these later Ages; in times more skilful of obedience, than the most quiet hour of *AVGVSTVS* Government. No one thing more hath caused so frequent and so general *Rebellions* in the States of *Christendom*, than alterations of this nature. I cannot therefore but commend it, as a pious resolution in a late mighty Monarch: *Better some few corruptions should be suffered in a Church than still a Change.*

23. Religion thus established, in the next place the welfare of the whole *Empire* consisted chiefly in reforming of the *City*; from which, as from the heart, life was conveyed to all the Provinces abroad. And in the *City* the corruption was most apparent in the *Senate* it self. With them therefore he beginneth, well knowing that crimes in men of eminent place end not in themselves; but by degrees become diffused among their Clients and Followers. Now in the *Senate* were many and desertless men, who had been taken into it during the Civil Wars; as they could court the People, and humour such as were most potent. Of these he expelled none by his own power; but making a speech to them in the *Senate*, of the ancient order and present confusion of the house, he first exhorted them to look back on their former lives, and to judge of their own abilities and merits, for so honourable a room. Then he desired some of them to pick out such among them, as were in disposition *factious*, and in life *faulty*, but loth to conceive so ill of their own actions; which they did accordingly. Yet as it often happeneth, that *the great Thief leadeth the less to the Gallows*; and as *Commines* observeth, that after the Battel of *Montliberry*, Offices were taken from many for flying away, and conferred on such as ran ten miles beyond them: So remained many in the *Senate*, neither less vicious, nor less violent; only more potent to maintain their doings, than some others whom they had removed. *AVGVSTVS* therefore joyning to him *Agrippa*, proceedeth to a new review: And certainly it much concerned him in the setling of his affairs, that none should have a voice in that famous Council, but such as were of able judgments, honest repute, and well affected to his Service and the Common-wealth. An enterprise which he esteemed so dangerous, that he permitted entrance to no *Senator* till he were searched: himself wearing a *Brigandine* under his Gown; and being invironed with ten of the most couragious and best beloved of the whole company. Such as he found in either kind inexcusable, he discharged from their attendance; electing such in their places, which were either ennobled for their wisdom, or noted moderation, or otherwise strong in their dependants. Yet so that greatness of *Revenue* was esteemed neither a fit *Patronage* for any, if they were offensive; nor a just cause to challenge interest in the *house*. Such of them as were rich rather in the gifts of the mind, than those of fortune, he relieved with honourable Pensions; and finally he bestirred himself so resolutely, that all confessed that they had need of such a wise *Physician*, to cure that dull *Consumption*, whereinto the *Common-wealth* was fallen.

24. In other things he seldom did proceed against them, as of himself; but when that any of them had conspired his ruin, he referred them to the judgment of their fellows. And this he did partly to reserve unto the Court the ancient Prerogative; partly not to be Judge and Party in his own cause: but principally following the example of his Father *Julius*, who counterfeiting a wretchless contempt of his adversaries, used, when he was least suspected, under hand, and by publick Officers, to work their destruction. Many also of them whom the *Senate* had condemned he would freely pardon: Conceiving truly, that the questioning of men of high calling, would produce as much terror, though it argued not so much rigor as the punishment. Yet if extremity of law was used towards some few, it was to settle quietness in the whole; and as it were a particular blood-letting for the general health. Those who had followed the Factions of *Brutus* and *Antony*, he forgave freely. And not so only, but by manifesting his works by his deeds, and adding trusts and honours to his pardons; he made his Chair of State more setled, and immoveable. So *Cæsar*, by erecting the faln and broken Images of *Pompey*, made his own statues stand more firmly. But the chief Act by which he bridled the *Nobles*, was an Edict by him promulgated, forbidding any of them, his leave not granted, to travel out of *Italy*. For well he knew, that an Empire unsetled, and Provinces not quieted; the presence and authority of men of that rank, might raise greater troubles, than could be easily suppressed. Examples he wanted not, that especially of *Cato*; who after the overthrow of *Pompey*, stirred such a War against *Cæsar* in *Africk*, that he never bought Victory at a dearer rate. Yet not altogether to imprison them, he licensed them at their pleasure, to visit *Sicilia*, and *Gaul Narbonoyse*, Provinces close to the Continent of *Italy*, altogether unfurnished for Wars; and indeed such, as by reason of the variety of pleasures in them used, were more likely to weaken their minds, than to arm their bodies.

25. Now to give the *Senate* some sweet meat to their sowre sawce; he as much honoured and reverenced that *Order*, as ever it was in the *Free-state*: submitting himself to their Judgments and appearing of his own accord, at most of their days of Session. Out of those he chose fifteen alterable every half year, to be of his *Privy Council*; but then changing them for others: that so all of them might participate of that honour; and yet none of them be acquainted with too many of his Secrets. At his entrance into the *Senate*, he used courteously to salute the *Lords*; and so likewise at his departure. He knew full well that it was noted for great pride in his Father *Julius*, so much to sleight the *Lords* of that *House*, as he always did: never making to them any obeisance; no not then, when they came to tell him what honours were decreed unto him. This Reformation of the *great Ones*, soon made the *lower sort* more careful; both to observe good order, and to learn obedience. Yet did not *AVGVSTVS* refer all to *President*, but somewhat to *Precept*. The *Roman Knights* he enforced to yield an account of their lives; a course full of health and wisdom: Idleness being the root of all private vices, and publick disorders. To the *Commons* in their *Comitia* and other meetings, he prescribeth Laws and Orders as himself listed. The old authority of the *Tribunes*, dashed in the *Dictatorship* of *Sylla*, he would not restore. He suffered them to intercede for the *People*, but not to prefer or hinder any *Bill*, to the advancement or the prejudice of their *Estate*. Without this *Curb*, the *Common sort* would never have suffered him to sit fast in the *Saddle*. For had the people had their *Tribunes* and had the *Tribunes*, had their ancient dignity and power, which they had usurped; there had been little or no hope of altering the form of Government. So different are the ends of the *Common-people*, especially if nuzled in a factious Liberty, from the designs of Soveraign *Princes*.

26. The

26. The City thus reformed in the principal errors and defects of it; he again exhibiteth unto them divers pleasures; as shews of Fencers, Stage-plays, Combats of Wild beasts, publick Dancing, with variety of other delightful Spectacles. And this as well to breed in them a good conceit of the change; as fearing lest their cogitations, for want of other objects, would fix themselves upon his actions, and the old *freedom*. And therefore when some of his more severe and rigid Counsellors advised him to interdict all such publick pastimes, alledging, that the meetings of the people at those sports, and in so great numbers might at last end in some great tumult and sedition to the endangering of his person, and destruction of his whole Estate; it was thus over-ruled by *Mecænas* (his most trusty Favourite) *Expedit tibi, O Cæsar, plebem sic occupatam esse*, That it best agreed with his affairs, to have the minds of the people taken up with these sports and pastimes, by which being sweetned and appeased, they were the less sensible of the yoke he had put upon them. But as for Horse-races, Tilts, and Turnaments, as he gladly cherished them, so he permitted them only to the Inhabitants of *Rome*: That so that City being the Seat-Town of his Empire, might be stored with good Horses, and expert Riders. Such of the *Commons* as were behind hand, he relieved: and when that many of them had made him Heir to their goods, he well knowing that no good Father did appoint to his Heir any *Prince* but a *Tyrant*, presently restored to the Children of the deceased the whole Patrimony. An action truly worthy of *AVGVSTVS*; as true a *Guardian* of *Orphans*, as a Father of his Country. Such Princes as gape covetously after other mens possessions, seldom enjoy the benefit of their own. The Treasures of Kings are then greatest, not when their own Coffers are full only, but their Subjects rich. Yet one thing more he seemed to leave unto the people, which they thought most pleasing, *Liberty of Speech*: Wherein sometimes they were so licentious, that they spared not *Agrippa* himself, so potent with the *Emperor*. But he, good man, never using the Prince's favour to the prejudice of any, seemed not to mark their taunts and slanders; whether with greater moderation or wisdom, I cannot tell. Neither did *AVGVSTVS* scape their foolish *Pasquils* and infamous *Libels*. All which he winked at, knowing that contumelies of that nature slighted and contemned, soon vanish of themselves; but if repined and stormed at, seem to be acknowledged. A temper which he learnt of his Father *Julius*, who was perfect at it. And certainly it was a notable point of Wisdom in both of them. It is the misery of the best *Princes*, even when they do well to be ill spoken of. And therefore many times such follies are with more policy dissembled than observed, by the greatest *Kings*.

27. As for this lavishness of the *tongue*, it is a humour that springeth for the most part, rather from a delight in pratling, than any malice of the heart: and they which use it are more troublesom than dangerous. *Julius* feared not the *fat men*, but the *lean* and *spare*. And so *AVGVSTVS* thought, that not men liberal of speech, but silent, close and sparing of their words, were most likely to raise tumults. Moreover, as long as the *Common People* retained this *Liberty of Speech*, they were the less sensible of the loss of *Liberty in State*. Whereas in the days of *Domitian*, when not only they were prohibited to commune together, but even their secret sighs and tears were registred, then began they to look back with a serious eye on the old & *common Liberty*. *Neglect* is the best remedy for this *Talking vein*. When the humour is spent, the *People* will cease on their own accords: till then, no forces can compell them. *Tacitus* taxeth *Vitellius* of great folly, for hoping, by force to hinder the continual reports of *Vespasians* revolt; that being the only way to increase, not diminish the *rumour*. And as much he extolleth (I will not say how fitly) the Reign of Prince *Nerva*; wherein it was lawful for the Subject to think what he would, and speak what he thought.

28. These courses though he took to rectifie the Senate, and content the people, yet he stayed not here. There were too many of both sorts, dangerous and unquiet spirits, who stomached his proceedings; and under pretence of the *ancient Liberty*, were apt to any bold attempt, and sudden alteration. These as he winked at for the present, so he imployed them (as occasion served) in his foreign Wars. Wherein he followed the example of his Father *Julius*, who when his Souldiers had displeased him, in their *Mutinies* and *Tumults*, would lead them presently unto some desperate and dangerous service: So weakning both his *Foes* which lay next unto him, and punishing those Souldiers which had disobeyed him. For, though *AVGVSTVS* had thrice shut the Temple of *Janus*, and cherished Peace, no *Emperor* more, of so large a Territory; yet when he saw his times, and that mens minds were active, and their thoughts disquieted; he could find presently occasion for some new imployment. In this a *Body Politick* may be compared most fitly to the *Body Natural*. When we are full of blood, and our spirits boyling, there is not any *Physick* better than *Phlebotomy*. But if a vein be broken in us, and we bleed inwardly, our estate commonly is dangerous, and almost incurable. So *Princes*, when their people are tumultuous and apt to mischief; or that their thoughts are working, and hearkning after action: do commonly imploy them in some service far from home; that there they may both vent their *Anger*, and imploy their *Courage*. For let them stay at home to confirm their practices, and grow at last into a Faction; the State will suffer in it, if it be not ruined. We cannot have a fairer instance of this truth, than the proceeding of our fifth *Henry*, and the times next following: Whose foreign Wars kept us all quiet here at home, wasted those humours, and consumed those fiery spirits, which afterwards, the Wars being ended, inflamed the Kingdom.

29. But his main work was to content the Souldiers, and to make them sure. Some of which he dispersed as before I said, all about *Italy*, in thirty-two Colonies; as well for the defence of the *Country*, as for their more speedy re-assembly, if need should require. Abroad amongst the *Provinces* were maintained upon the common charge twenty-three Legions with their aids; besides 10000 of his Guard, and those which were appointed for the bridling and safety of the City. As to all of them he shewed an excellent thankfulness for their faithful services: so in particular to *Agrippa*, and to one other, whose name the Histories of that Age have not remembred. This latter had valiantly behaved himself at the battel of *Actium*: and being summoned to appear before the Lords of the *Senate*, in a matter which concerned his life, cried to *AVGVSTVS* for succour; who assigned him an Advocate. The poor fellow not contented with this favour, baring his breast, and shewing him the marks of many wounds; *These* (quoth he) *have I received*, AUGUSTUS, *in thy service never supplying my place by a Deputy*. Which said, the *Emperor* descending to the *Bar*, pleaded the Souldiers cause, and won it. Never did Soveraign *Prince*, or any that command in *Chief*, lose any thing by being bountiful of favours to their men of War. For this act quickly

spreading

ſpreading it ſelf over all the *Provinces*, did ſo indear him to the Military men, that they all thought their ſervices well recompenſed, in his graciouſneſs to that one man. And now were they ſo far given over to him, that the Honours conferred on *Agrippa*, could not increaſe their love; well it might their admiration. *Agrippa* was of a mean and common *Parentage*. But ſupplying the defects of his *Birth* with the perfections of his *Mind*, he became very potent with *AUGUSTUS*; who not only made him *Conſul*, but his *companion* in the *Tribunitian Authority*, and *Provoſt* of the *City*. So many titles were now heaped on him, that *Mecænas* perſwaded the *Prince*, to give him his Daughter *Julia* to Wife: affirming it impoſſible for *Agrippa* to live ſafe, conſidering how open new Creatures lie to the attempts of malicious men, unleſs he were ingraffed into the Royal Stem of the *Cæſars*. On which cauſe queſtionleſs, for the ſtronger eſtabliſhment of his new Honours; *Sejanus* afterward attempted, but not with the like ſucceſs, the like match with *Livia*, *Tiberius* Daughter-in-Law.

30. The *Senate*, *People*, and *Men of War*, thus ſeverally reduced to a Mediocrity of power and content, the next labour is to alter the old, and eſtabliſh a new Government of the *City* it ſelf. To effect which, he daſhed all former Laws, by which the *Allies* and *Confederates* of the State were made free *Denizens* of the *Town*. That he conceived to be a way to draw the whole *Empire* into one *City*; and by the monſtrous growth and encreaſe of that, to make poor the reſt. Therefore this priviledge he communicated unto a few only: partly that in the times of dearth, the City might not ſo much feel the want of ſuſtenance; and partly that ſo ancient an honour might not be diſ-eſteemed; but principally leſt *Rome* repleniſhed with ſo huge a multitude of ſtirring and unruly ſpirits, ſhould grow too headſtrong to be governed in due order. The greateſt and moſt populous Cities, as they are proneſt unto *faction* and *ſedition*; ſo is the danger greateſt, both in it ſelf, and the example, if they ſhould revolt. This provident courſe notwithſtanding there were in *Rome* men more than enough; and among them not a few male-contents, and murmurers at the preſent ſtate, ſuch as contemned the *Conſuls*, and hated the *Prince*. To keep theſe in compaſs, *AUGUSTUS* (it being impoſſible for him to be ſtill reſident at *Rome*, and dangerous to be abſent) conſtituted a *Provoſt* of the City for the moſt part choſen out of the *Senators*: aſſigning him a ſtrength of 6000 men, called *Milites Urbani*, or the *City-Souldiers*. To him he gave abſolute and Royal authority, both in the *Town* and *Territory* near adjoining, during his own abſence. To him were appeals brought from the other *Magiſtrates*; and finally to his *Tribunal* were referred all cauſes of importance, not in *Rome* only, but the greateſt part of *Italy*. *Meſſalla* was the firſt *Provoſt*; but proof being had of his inſufficiency, the charge was committed to *Agrippa*: who did not only ſettle and confirm the *City*, but did the beſt he could to free the adjoining parts of *Italy* from *Thieves* & *Robbers*; and ſtopped the courſes of many other troublers of the preſent State. And yet he could not with that power either ſo ſpeedily, or ſo throughly reform all thoſe miſchiefs; which in the late unſetled times were become predominant, as he did deſire.

31. It is recorded that in the Civil Wars of *Marius* and *Sylla*, one *Pontius Teleſinus* of the *Marian Faction*, told his *General*, That he did well to ſcour the Country, but *Italy* would never want Wolves as long as *Rome* was ſo fit a Foreſt, and ſo near to retire unto. The like might have been ſpoken to *Agrippa*; That he did well to clear the *common Rodes* and *Paſſages*, but *Italy* would never want *Thieves*, whilſt *Rome* was ſo good a place of *Refuge*. For though he did, as far as humane induſtry could extend, endeavour a general *Reformation* both within the City and without; yet neither could he remedy, nor foreſee all miſchiefs. Still were they many, and thoſe great diſorders committed in the night ſeaſon; when as no eye, but that to which no darkneſs is an obſtacle, could diſcern the *Malefactors*. For in the firſt *Proſcription*, many men uſed to walk the Streets well weaponed; pretending only their own ſafety, but indeed it was to make their beſt advantage of ſuch men, as they met either in unfrequented Lanes and Paſſages, or travelling as their occaſions did direct them, in the Night. To repreſs therefore the ſoul inſolencies of theſe *Sword-men*, *AUGUSTUS* did ordain a *Watch*, conſiſting of 7000 *Free-men*, their Captain being a *Gentleman* of *Rome*. In the day time, the *Guard* of the *Town* was committed to the *Provoſt*, and his City Souldiers; Theſe *Vigils* reſting in their ſtanding Camps. In the night ſeaſon, one part took their ſtations in the moſt ſuſpicious places of the City; another, in perpetual motion traverſed the ſtreets; the reſt lying in the *Corps du Guarde*, to relieve their Companions. By which means he not only remedied the preſent diſorders, but preſerved the City from danger of *Fire* alſo: Yea, and ſecured himſelf from all Night-tumults, which carry with them (though but ſmall) more terror and affrightment, than greater Commotions in the day. Never till now were the *common people* Maſters of their own, both Lives & Subſtance. And now was travel in the Night, as ſafe, though not ſo pleaſant, as at Noon.

32. The *People* and *City* thus ſetled, his next ſtudy is to keep the *Provinces* in a liking of the Change. But little *Rhetorick* needed to win their liking, who had long deſired the preſent form of *Government*: miſtruſting the *Peoples* Regiment, by reaſon of *Noblemens* factions, covetouſneſs of *Magiſtrates*, the *Laws* affording no ſecurity, being ſwayed hither and thither by ambition and corruption. Theſe *Provinces* when he firſt took the *Government*, he thus divided. *Aſia*, *Africa*, *Numidia*, *Betica*, *Narbonenſis*, *Sicilia*, *Corſica*, *Sardinia*, all *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia*, being quiet and peaceable *Provinces*, of known and faithful obedience, he aſſigned unto the *Senate*. But the new conquered *Regions*, ſuch as had not digeſted their loſs of liberty, with whom any Rebellion or War was to be feared; he retained under his own command. Such were *Tarraconenſis*, *Luſitanica*, *Lugdunenſis*, *Germany*, *Belgica*, *Aquitanica*, *Syria*, *Silicia*, *Egypt*, *Dalmatia*, *Myſia*, *Pannonia*, &c. And this he did, as he gave out, to ſuſtain the danger himſelf alone, leaving unto the *Senate* all the ſweets of eaſe: but the truth was, to keep them without Arms, himſelf always ſtrong, and in a readineſs. The notable effects of which Counſel did not diſcover themſelves only by the eſtabliſhment of the *Empire* in his own perſon during life, and the continuance of it in the houſe of the *Cæſars* (though men of moſt prodigious Vices) after his deceaſe: but in ſome of the Ages following alſo. For when the Family of the *Cæſars* was extinct in *Nero*, the *Imperial* Provinces being ſo ſtrong, and perceiving the *Conſular* ſo weak; aſſumed to themſelves the creating, and eſtabliſhing of the following *Princes*. Thus *Galba* was made Emperor by the *Spaniſh* and *French* Legions, *Vitellius* by the *Germans*, *Veſpaſian* by the *Syrian* and *Pannonian*: The *Conſular Provinces* never ſtirring, either to prevent their attempts, or to revenge them. And when they adventured once to advance *Gordian* to the Throne, all they could do, was but to betray the poor old man and all his Family to a *tragick* end. And yet he did not ſo appropriate thoſe Provinces to the *Senate*, but

but that they also (as well as those which he reserved unto himself) were specified particularly in his private Register. In which (the better to manage the affairs of the *Empire*) he had set down what *Tributes* every of them paid, what *Presents* they sent in, what *Customs* in them were levyed. That Book also comprehended the wealth of the publick *Treasury*, and necessary charge issuing out of it: What number of *Citizens* and *Allies* there were in Arms; what strength there was by Sea: with all other circumstances, the extent, strength, riches, and particulars of his estate. *William* of *Normandy* did the like at his first entrance into *England*, when he composed that *Censual Roll* of all this Kingdom, which we call *Doomsday Book*, or the *Roll of Winton*; according unto which, *Taxations* were imposed, and *Aids* exacted. The greatest *Princes* have not thought it a disparagement to be good Husbands; to know the riches of their Crowns, and have an eye to their *Intrado*.

33. *Britain* was left out of this *Bead-Roll*, either because from thence there neither was much hope of profit, nor much fear of hurt; or else because being more desirous to keep than inlarge the *Monarchy*, he thought it most expedient to confine it within the bounds appointed by Nature. *Danubius* on the North, Mount *Atlas* on the South, *Euphrates* on the East, and the main Ocean on the West, did both bound his Empire and defend it. Some *Kingdoms* have their limits laid out by Nature, and those which have adventured to extend them further have found it fatal. The *Persians* seldom did attempt to stretch their *Territory* beyond *Oxus*, but they miscarried in the action. And what was that poor River, if compared unto the Ocean? Many who loved *action*, or expected preferment by the Wars, incited him unto the conquest and Plantation of these Countries. Affirming, "That the barbarous people were naturally "bad Neighbours; and though for the present not ve-"ry strong, nor well skilled in Arms, yet might a weak "Enemy in time gather great strength: that he ought "to pursue the War for his Father *Julius* sake, who "first shewed that Island to the *Romans*: that it yielded "both refuge and supply to Malecontents of *Gaul*, and "Enemies in *Germany*: that he would lose the benefit "of a wealthy Country, stored with all manner of pro-"vision; and the command of a valiant Nation, born "(as it were) unto the Wars. That it was an apostasie "from honour, to lie still, and add nothing to the con-"quest of his Ancestors: That he was in all equity "bound, as far as in him was, to reduce to *Civility* from "*Barbarism*, so many proper and able men. But to these motives he replyed, "That he had already refused "to wage War with the *Parthian*, a more dangerous "Neighbour, and far worse Enemy than the *Britains*: "That he had waste & desert ground enough in his own "*Dominions*, for many a large *Plantation*, when he saw "it needful: That he had constantly refused, though "with great facility he might, to conquer any more of "the *Barbarous Nations*: That, as in the *Natural body*, a "surfeit is more dangerous than fasting; so in the *Body* "*Politick*, too much is more troublesom than too little: "That the *Roman* Monarchy had already exceeded the "*Persian*, and *Macedonian*; and to extend it further, was "the next way to make it totter and fall by its own "weight. That he had learned in the *Fable* not to lose "the *substance* by catching at the *shadow*. And finally, that "many puissant Nations lay in and about *Britany*, against "whom *Garrisons* must be kept, and he feared the *Reve-*"*nues* would not quit the *cost*. And so the enterprise of "*Britain* was quite laid aside.

34. For the assurance of the *Provinces* already conquered, he dispersed into them 23 *Legions*, with their *Aids*; whose pay only, besides provision of Corn, and Officers wages, amounting to five Millions and an half of our *English* pounds, and somewhat more, were so duly paid unto the *Armies*, that we read seldom in the Histories of that *Empire*, of any *Mutiny* amongst the *Souldiers*, for want of pay. An happiness, whereof these ages have been little guilty. For the amassing of this treasure, and defraying of this Charge, *AUGUSTUS* made not use only of his own Revenue. *Wars* which are undertaken, and *Souldiers* that are levyed for the common safety, ought in all reason to be maintained on the *Common purse*. The Grandeur and security of an *Empire*, concerns in all respects, as much the *People* as the *Prince*. For which cause he erected an *Exchequer* in the City, which was called *Ærarium militare*, or the *Souldiers Treasury*; whereto the twentieth part of every mans Estate was brought, according to the true and perfect valuation. This was esteemed an heavy burden at the first; and indeed it was, but that the people felt the sweetness and effects of it in the Common safety. In that respect, the *Interest* was greater than the *Principal*. *Subjects* that have a care either of the common peace or honour, will not repine at payments and taxations, though more than ordinary. It is a poor conceit to think that *Princes* either are able or obliged, to maintain the Wars without assistance from their people: or that the treasures which in these respects they give the *King*, they do not give unto themselves. I may perhaps repute him for a cunning *Sophister*, but never for a faithful *Subject* which coyns distinctions betwixt the welfare of the *King*, and the weal of the *Kingdom*. These *Legions* he employed as occasion was, either to curb the *Natives*, or secure the *Borders*. The *Roman Empire* seldom had such perfect peace, but that there were employments always for the *Souldiers*. If that they had in any place a short cessation from the Wars, yet they were not idle. *Idleness* doubtless is the greatest enemy to *Martial Discipline*. Therefore he kept them at such times perpetually busied, either in paving *Bogs*, or in draining *Marishes*. By means whereof, he made not only many of the *Barbarous Countries*, both fruitful in themselves, and profitable to the *Chequer*: but thereby also he secured his own affairs, and disarmed his enemies. For many times the *Barbarous people* trusting to such advantages, were apt too often to rebell; and having got themselves within those *Myres* and *Fastnesses*, stood on their *Guard*, as in some fashionable or defensible *Fortress*. The surest means to keep a conquered people from all occasion of revolting, is to lay waste their *Wood-lands*, and make all parts *passable*. The opportunity of a safe retreat, makes not more *Thieves* than *Rebels*.

35. Those whom he placed over his *Provinces* and *Armies*, he neither would remove under three years Government, nor yet continue after five. A longer stay might teach them too much cunning in practising on the dispositions of the people, and perhaps prompt them to work into the favour of the Natives, and the Men of War: and so at last establish in themselves a *Soveraignty*. *Cæsar*'s long stay in *Gaul*, (a second five years being added unto that which was first allowed him) made him so potent with the *People*, and gracious with the *Souldiers*, that in the end he brought the *Roman Empire* under his subjection. And on the other side, to take them from their charges under three years continuance were to have called them home, before they were well learned in the *Customs* and the nature of the *Provinces*; so making them unable to instruct their *Successors*: As for the men whom he employed in those commands, he culled them always out of the most valiant and upright in the *Camp* and *Senate*. A

Prince more willing and desirous not to imploy men likely to offend, than after the offence to punish and chastise them for it.

36. Besides his Forces by Land, he also maintained at Sea two invincible *Armadoes*. The one lay at Anchor near *Ravenna*, in the upper Sea, to awe and defend *Dalmatia*, *Crete*, *Greece*, *Cyprus*, *Asia*, &c. The other at *Misenum* in the lower Sea, to protect and keep under *Gaul*, *Spain*, *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, &c. Neither was this the only use of two such puissant *Fleets*, but in all probability they were to cleanse the Sea of *Pirates*; to have a care to the conducting of the *Tributes* and *Customs* into the *Exchequer*; and served also for transporting *Corn*, and other necessary provisions, for the sustenance and relief of the City. In the ensuing *Civil Wars*, these two Navies proved to be of great importance: The revolt of them giving as great a blow to the one side, as a comfort to the other. The principal assurance of *Otho* in his Wars, was the immoveable fidelity of the *Misenian* Fleet; and the siding of the other with *Vespasian*, brake the hearts of *Vitellius*'s best followers.

37. Now as he thus strengthened the *Provinces* in general, so he did cast an especial eye on three particulars, *viz. Italy*, *Gaul*, and *Egypt*. *Italy* founded *Rome* the *Metropolis* of the Empire; and therefore he ought to be well assured of its good faith and allegiance to him. Nor was he ignorant, that the *Bellum sociale* raised by the people of that Country, in the *Free State*, more shook and endangered the *Empire*, than the Invasions of *Pyrrhus* or *Annibal*. Therefore as formerly he planted in it two and thirty *Colonies*, of old and trusty Souldiers, to keep it sure unto himself; so now he did divide it into eleven Regions, each having peculiar *Magistrates* and *Under-Officers*. This not so much to ease the *City-Prætor*, although he had imployment enough at *Rome*; but because it was thick-set, and as it were overlaid with *People*, whose rising might endanger the *Common-wealth*. So by his *Colonies* he kept a Garrison upon them, as it were, that they could not revolt: and by his *Officers* and *Justiciers* (as I may call them) he set so strait a Watch about them, that they durst not *practise*.

38. *Gaul*, now called *France*, was both a large and fertile Country, stored with a people valiant in all attempts, and in many desperate. A people with which the old *Romans* fought rather to maintain their own liberty, than to increase their Dominions; a Tribe or Colony of which had sacked the City of *Rome*, and endangered the *Capitol*. A people finally, with whom the *Romans* durst not make War, till they had almost all the residue of the World in subjection. The remembrance of their ancient Reputation, and store of money, might occasion many desperate practices against the quiet of the *Empire*. The readiest way to keep them in obedience, was to keep them poor: for without wealth high *stomachs* may well feed on the hope of *Liberty*, but digest it never. *Licinius*, his *freed man*, was the fittest fellow for such an Office, who is presently made the *Task-master* of the *Province*. The *Gauls* used to pay a Monthly Tribute, which he much enhaunched (besides private and petty means of proling) by making fourteen Months in a year. The *Solicitors* of that people at *Rome* make complaint to *AUGUSTUS*. He sometimes yielded unto them, sometimes excused his *Freed-man*; some things he would not know, many he would not believe, others he dissembled. *Licinius*, to make up his peace, sent to the Emperour all his *Treasure*, and that huge Mass of Gold and Silver by those unlawful means heaped up together: which he not only willingly received, but his turn being served, and the *Gauls* not a little impoverished; he recalled *Licinius*, and sent *Tiberius* to settle the *Province*. So old and common a thing it is with great *Princes*, to suffer their *Vice-Roys*, and *Under-Officers*, to such like *Spunges*, the Wealth of the *Subject*, till they are quite full; and then to *squeeze* them into their own *Coffers*.

39. But the *Province* whose tuition and defence he principally regarded, was *Egypt*; not so much for the valour and courage of the Inhabitants, as the natural strength and situation of the place. *Alexander* of *Macedon* having annexed it to his Empire, never committed the entire Government and Jurisdiction thereof, to one man; fearing lest he presuming on the wealth of the *People*, and site of the *Country*, would settle the possession in himself. And so *AUGUSTUS* calling to mind as well the multitude, as the levity and inconstancy of the Natives; that it was very rich in coyn, and the *Roman Granary* (as serving the City four Months yearly with Corn) not only trusted not the rule thereof into the hands of any of the *Senators*, but expretly forbad any of that Order (without his special permission) to sojourn there. It is a principle in *State*, never to license men of great houses, and credit among the *People*, to have free access into that *Country*, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Wherefore it was a weakness doubtless in the Council of King *Henry* the sixth, to suffer *Richard* Duke of *York*, to pass at leisure into *Ireland*; where he had harbour and relief, and whence he brought supply both of Men and Money. But to return to *Egypt*, *Germanicus* entring once into *Alexandria*, only to see the *Antiquities* of it, and return; stirred such suspicions, and distractions in the jealous head of *Tiberius*, that he spared not sharply to rebuke him for it. *Vespasian* also being by the *Syrian Legions* chosen Emperour, first assured himself of *Egypt*, as the Key of the Sea and Land; with a small power, against a strong host easily defended. This place he resolved to make his *Sanctuary*, if his designs succeeded not luckily. And to this place he hastened, after the defeat of the *Vitellian* Army, that so detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by Famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his *devotion*. The Government of this *Province* was by *AUGUSTUS* always committed to some one of the *Roman* Gentry, as less able, by reason of his low condition, to work gainst the *Princes* safety. Neither would he allow his *Deputy* the glorious attributes of *Lieutenant*, *Legatus*, *Proconsul*, or *Prætor*: *Captain* or *President* of *Egypt* was their highest *Title*; there being even in *Titles* no small motives to *Ambition*.

40. *AUGUSTUS* having by these means reduced both the *City* and *Provinces* under his absolute command, and being now declining in strength, by reason of a sudden and violent sickness; began to call his wits to Counsel, how to dispose of the *Estate* after his decease. *Male-child* he never had any. His Daughter *Julia*, a woman of immodest carriage, never made further use of her fathers greatness, than that she satisfied her Lusts with the greater insolence. *Marcellus*, his Sisters son, and *Julia*'s husband, was a young man of an ingenious disposition, and seemingly capable of the fortunes which attended for him. Him, being yet young, *AUGUSTUS* preferred to the *Pontificial* dignity, and *Ædileship*: Yet once upon his sickness, he privately determined to choose another Successor in the Common-wealth, rather than his own Family; and not to leave the *Empire* to *Marcellus*, whom he held unable to undergo it, but to his companion in Arms, *Agrippa*, a man daunted neither with adverse, nor altered with prosperous fortunes. This, *Marcellus* afterwards so stomached, that he began to grutch at *Agrippa*'s greatness, and to bear a vigilant eye on his plots and actions. Contrarily, *Agrippa* unwilling to offend him, under whose future Government

he

he was in all likelyhood to end the reſt of his days, with much ado obtained leave to retire unto *Lesbos*: that ſo his abſence either might allay, or remove the diſpleaſure, conceived againſt him by the young *Prince*. An action full of wiſdom, and magnanimity. For though *AUGUSTUS*'s chief end was, to diſcountenance the popular dependencies of his *Son*, by the favours heaped on his *ſervant*: yet did *Agrippa* know, that a Favourite ought to have ſo much in him of the *Perſian* Religion, as to worſhip the *Riſing Sun* alſo; and that he ſhould reſemble old *Janus* with two faces, with th'one looking on the *King regnant*, with th'other on the *Prince ſucceſſive*.

41. *Marcellus* being dead, *Agrippa* returning, marryed his Widow, and on her begat two Sons, *Caius* and *Lucius*; whoſe actions afterward afforded ſuch variety for cenſure, that there was wanting neither much reaſon to commend, nor little to condemn them. On theſe two, or at leaſt one of them, *AUGUSTUS* now grown aged, reſolves to ſettle the Eſtate; and, if they failed, upon ſuch others, as by the liberty of the Laws, he might *adopt*: *Adoption*, in the eſtimation of the *Roman* Laws, being indeed *another Nature*. Poſterity, whether it be *natural*, or only *legal*, is the beſt *ſupport* of the *Arms Imperial*: Such as both fortifies the Prince, and aſſures the Subject. Yet this he did, not without much reluctancy, and a greater conflict in his mind. 'Sometimes 'his thoughts ſuggeſted to him, that the deſigned Succeſſors draw to them all the attendance and reſpect, 'from the *Prince* in *poſſeſſion*; that they have always a 'lingring deſire to be actually ſettled in the *Throne*; 'That they ſuppoſe the life of the preſent *Prince* too te'dious, not caring by what means it were ſhortned; 'That ſometimes it is pernicious, yea even to the ap'pointed Succeſſor himſelf alſo. On the other ſide his 'better thoughts prompted him to conſider, in what a 'miſerable diſtraction he ſhould leave the *Empire*, if 'ſudden death ſhould take from him an ability to nomi'nate his heir; The fear conceived in the whole City, 'at his laſt ſickneſs; That *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, was of all 'hands condemned, for leaving his Kingdom to the 'ſharpeſt ſword; That the Common-wealth faln into 'diſſenſions, could not be ſetled again without a lamen'table War, and a bloody Victory; That the people 'ſeeing him *childleſs* would not only contemn him, but 'perhaps endeavour to recover the old *liberty*, though 'with the ruine of the State; That it was the cuſtom 'of *Tyrants*, to deſire the eternizing of their deaths, by 'the downfal of their *Countries*. His mind thus di'ſtracted and perplexed, at laſt he brake in this man'ner. 'Thou haſt, *Octavian*, a Wolf by the ears, which to 'hold ſtill, or let go, is alike dangerous. Many incon'veniences may enſue, if thou doſt not declare thy Suc'ceſſor; more if thou doſt. The good of the *Republick* 'conſiſteth in knowing the future *Prince*, Thine own 'welfare dependeth on the *concealment*. The *Common* 'good is to be preferred before any *private*; Yet ought '*Charity to begin at home*. No, *Octavian* no; As thou haſt 'receiv'd, ſo ſhew thy ſelf worthy of the title of *Pater pa'triæ*. Yea, and perhaps this deſignation may ſecure 'thine own Eſtate. For what will it profit the people to 'conſpire againſt thee; when they ſhall ſee a Succeſſor 'at hand, either of thine own body, or thine own appoint'ment, ready to take thy place, and revenge thy wrongs?

42. Thus reſolved, he adopteth *Caius* and *Lucius*; deſiring, though he made ſhew to the contrary, they ſhould be *Conſuls elect*, and called *Princes of the Youth*. Yet wiſely forecaſting the dangers incident to himſelf, if they ſhould make their abode in *Rome*; he ſendeth them with honourable Charge into the Provinces abroad: as well to exerciſe them in *feats* of *War*, as to take away all cauſe of faction in the Court, and ſedition in the City. Which *myſtery* of State as it was anciently practiſed by moſt *Princes*, ſo at this day by the *Grand Seignior*: who always ſendeth his eldeſt Son unto *Amaſia*, as Governour thereof; from whence till the death of his Father, he never returneth. In theſe journeys, dyed the two young *Princes*; a misfortune which *AUGUSTUS* bare nobly; neither baniſhing grief, with a *Stoical Apathy*; nor ſpending the time in womaniſh lamentations. Having perfonned due rites to the dead, he adopted his Wifes Son, *Tiberius*. A man for the conveniency and ripeneſs of his *age*, not *unfit*; in *feats* of *Arms*, not *unexpert*; in *humane learning*, not *ignorant*; but withal ſuſpected to be cruelly given; and poſſeſſed with the hereditary pride of the *Claudian* Family. A ſtrange medley of vertuous and vitious qualities! *Tiberius*, ſuch was the will of his Father, to eſtabliſh the ſucceſſion with more ſtayes than one, adopted *Germanicus*, his Brother *Druſus* Son; then commanding over eight Legions in *Germany*: which done, he ſpeedeth to his charge in *Illiricum*. This man *AUGUSTUS* appointed to be his Succeſſor, as it was afterwards (and not improbably) conjectured, neither in care to the State, nor in love to the party; but to win honour to himſelf: and to make the *Roman* people again wiſh for him; when they ſhould ſee that infinite diſproportion in all Royal and Kingly qualities, between the old and new *Emperors*. A ſtetch, after imitated by *Tiberius*, in the adoption of *Caius Caligula*.

43. The laſt (though not the leaſt) help of the *Empires* eſtabliſhment, was the long life and reign of our *AUGUSTUS*: as having ruled the State 16 years before, and 34 years after his confirmation in the *Soveraignty*, by the *Senate* and people. All the young men in the City were born after the firſt *Decennium* of the *Monarchy*. Moſt of the old men, during the Civil Wars. Few had ſeen what was the ancient *form* of *Government* in the Common-wealth; many did not deſire it. For at the preſent, enjoying peace both at home and abroad; and hearing what ſad and tragical reports their Fathers made of the former troubles and *proſcriptions*: they contented themſelves with the new Government; as more eſteeming a ſecure and happy *ſubjection*, than a dangerous and factious *liberty*. By which long time of Empire and the policies already recited, beſides many others, which I can neither learn by relation, nor gather by preſumptions; did *AUGUSTUS* ſo firmly ſettle the *Roman* Monarchy, that it continued ſome hundred of years without alteration: though all his immediat Succeſſors were in a manner Monſters, incarnate Devils, and indeed any thing rather than Men. *Tiberius*, *Caius*, *Claudius*, *Nero*, *Galba*, *Otho*, and *Vitellius*, both by their own *Tyranies*, and their Bondmens *Extortions*, would have ruined any *Monarchy* not founded by *AUGUSTUS*.

44. To ſpeak concerning the Domeſtical affairs of this *Emperor*, is beyond my *Theme*. As either how far he ſuffered himſelf to be ordered by his Wife *Livia*; or whether he uſed variety of women, not ſo much to ſatisfie an inordinate appetite, as by ſo many women to fiſh out the ſecret deſigns of many men. He was too exact a Stateſman to be perfect in *Souldiery*; and in all his Wars was proſperous by Fortune rather than by Valour, or his *Captains* Valour than his own. The *Common-wealth* which he found weak and in *Rubbiſh*, he left *Adamantine*, and invincible. In behaviour he was affable and gracious; in his diſcourſe, ſententious; to the good, of a moſt ſweet diſpoſition; to the lewd and diſhoneſt, harſh and unpleaſant. *Friendſhip* he contracted with few, and that ſlowly; but to them whom he once

loved, constant and bountiful to the last. Finally such a one he was, of whom I will only say, what I find spoken of *Severus*; 'It had been an ineffable benefit to 'the *Common-wealth* of *Rome*, if either he had never *died*, 'or never been *born*.

Thus having drawn the picture of this puissant and prudent *Prince* (though I confess with too much shadow) I now proceed unto the Catalogue of the *Roman* Emperours: in which I shall take notice of such of their Actions only, as had relation to the Publick, either in the improvement or decrease of their Power and Empire; or point to any signal matter which concerns the *Church*.

The *Roman* Emperours,

A. M.

3918. 1 *Julius Cæsar* the last of the *Dictators*, and the first of the *Emperours*: in memory of whom the following Emperours were called *Cæsars*, till the time of *Adrian*; when it became the title of the heir apparent, or designed Successor; the first who had it in that sense being *Ælius Verus*, though he lived not to enjoy the Empire.

3923. 2 *C. Octavianus Cæsar*, to whom the Senate gave the name of *Augustus*; who added unto the *Roman* Empire the Provinces of *Noricum*, *Pannonia*, *Rhætia*, a great part of *Spain*, and the whole Kingdom of *Egypt*.

A. Chr. In his time the Lord *CHRIST* was born. 56.

17. 3 *Tiberius Nero*, the Son-Law of *Augustus*, subdued many of the *German* Nations, and added *Galatia* and *Cappadocia* to the Empire. In his time, *CHRIST* suffered. 23.

39. 4 *Caius Caligula*, the Son of *Germanicus* (Son of *Drusus*, the brother of *Tiberius* and of *Agrippina* Neece to *Augustus Cæsar*, by his daughter *Julia*. 3.

43. 5 *Claudius Cæsar*, Uncle to *Caligula*, Brother of *Germanicus*, and Son of *Drusus* by *Antonia* Neece to *Augustus* by his Sister *Octavia*; added *Britain*, and *Mauritania*, to the *Roman* Empire. 13.

57. 6 *Domitius Nero*, Son of *Ænobarbus*, and *Agrippina* Daughter to *Germanicus*, the last of the *Cæsars*. He made the *Cottian Alpes* a Province of the Empire, and brought the *Armenians* to receive their Kings from the *Roman* Emperours; and was the first that raised any publick persecution against the *Christians*. *An.* 67. 13.

7 *Sergius Galba*, chosen by the *French* and *Spanish* Legions.

8 *Salvius Otho*, made Emperour by the *Prætorian* Souldiers.

9 *Aul. Vitellius*, elected by the *German* Legions.

71. 10 *Flavius Vespasianus*, chosen by the *Syrian* and *Judæan* Armies, subverted utterly the *Common-wealth* of the *Jews*, by the valour and prowess of his Son *Titus*; and brought *Achaia*, *Lycia*, *Rhodes*, *Samos*, *Thrace*, and *Syria Comagene*, under the form of *Roman* Provinces. 9.

80. 11 *Titus Vespasianus*, the fortunate Conquerer of the *Jews*.

82. 12. *Fl. Domitianus*, who raised the second persecution against the *Christians*. *An.* 96. 15.

97. 13 *Nerva Coceeius*, a noble Senator, but no *Roman* born; as all the rest had been before him, but not many after him.

99. 14 *Ulpius Trajanus*, by birth a *Spaniard*, adopted by *Nerva*: he made *Dacia* a Province of the Empire, carryed the *Roman* Armies over *Euphrates*, subduing *Armenia*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*, and raised the third Persecution against the *Christians*. *An.* 110. 19.

118. 15 *Ælius Adrianus*, who utterly exterminated the *Jewish* Nation, and continued the Persecution begun by *Trajan*. 20.

138. 16 *Antoninus Pius*, whose friendship was sought by the very *Indians*. 24.

162. 17. *Marcus Antoninus*, surnamed the Philosopher, associated *L. Verus* in the Government, by whose valour he subdued the *Parthians*. He raised the fourth Persecution against the Church. *An.* 167. 19.

181. 18. *L. Antoninus Commodus*, Son to *Marcus*, the first Emperor that had been hitherto born in the time of his Fathers Empire. 13.

194. 19 *Ælius Pertinax*, made Emperour against his will.

20 *Didius Julianus*, who bought the Empire of the Souldiers.

195. 21 *Septimius Severus*, took *Ctesiphon* from the *Parthians*, subdued the Provinces of *Osroene*; and raised the fifth Persecution, *An.* 195. 18.

213. 22 *Bassianus Caracalla*, Son to *Severus*.

220. 23 *Opilius Macrinus*, made Emperor by the men of War.

221. 24 *Varius Heliogabalus*, the supposed Son of *Caracalla*.

225. 25 *Alexander Severus*, Cousen of *Varius*.

238. 26 *Maximinus*, a fellow of obscure birth; who being advanced to the Empire, raised the sixth Persecution. *An.* 237.

241. 27 *Gordian*, elected by the Senate against *Maximinus*. 6.

247. 28 *Philip*, an *Arabian*, supposed by some to be a Christian. 5.

252. 29 *Decius*, slain in War against the *Goths*; the Author of the seventh Persecution raised against the Church. *An.* 252.

254. 30 *Gallus Hostilianus*. 2.

256. 31 *Æmilianus* the *Moor*.

256 32 *Valerianus*, the Author to the eighth Persecution, *An.* 259. He was taken prisoner by *Sapores*, King of *Persia*, and made to serve him for a footstool.

33 *Gallienus*, Son to *Valerianus*, in whose time the 30 Tyrants ingrossed unto themselves several parts of the Empire.

271. 34 *Claudius* II. who after a short and troublesom time, left it to

272 35 *Quintillus* his Brother, who enjoyed the same but 17 days.

273. 36 *Valer. Aurelianus*, restored again the antient discipline, suppressed all the Invaders of the Empire, and vanquished the *Goths*; but was a great persecutor of the Church, *An.* 278. 6.

279. 37 *Annius Tacitus*, descended from *Tacitus* the Historian.

38 *Florianus*, an Emperor of two months only.

280. 39 *Valerius Probus*. 6.

286. 40 *Aurelius Carus*, together with his two Sons *Carinus* and *Numerianus*.

Diocletian,

288 41 *Diocleſian*, firſt aſſociated *Maximinianus* by the name of *Emperor*, or *Auguſtus*, and afterwards *Galerius* of *Dacia*, and *Conſtantius Chlorus*, by the name of *Ceſars*. He had continual Wars againſt the *Perſians*, and raiſed the tenth Perſecution againſt the Church, *An.* 295. Which held ſo long, and was ſo vehement withal, that as St. *Hierome* writes, there were 5000 ſlain for every day in the year, ſave the firſt of *January*. He afterwards reſigned the Empire, and lived in private at *Salona*. 20.

305 42 *Conſtantius Chlorus*, a friend to *Chriſtians*. 2.

310 43 *Conſtantine*, Son of *Chlorus*, ſurnamed *Magnus*, or the Great, the firſt *Emperor* that countenanced the Goſpel, and embraced it publickly; which he is ſaid to have done on this occaſion. At the ſame time that he was ſaluted Emperour in *Britain*, *Maxentius* was choſen at *Rome* by the *Prætorian* Souldiers, and *Licinius* named Succeſſor by *Maximinianus*, the aſſociate of his Father *Chlorus*. Being penſive and ſolicitous upon theſe diſtractions, he caſt his eyes up towards Heaven, where he ſaw in the Air a lightſom Pillar in the form of a Croſs, wherein he read theſe words, ἐν τούτῳ νίκα, *In hoc vince*; and the next night our Saviour appearing to him in a Viſion, commanded him to bear that figure in his Standard, and he ſhould overcome all his Enemies. This he performed, and was accordingly victorious, from which time he not only favoured the *Chriſtians*, but became a very zealous Profeſſor of the Faith and Goſpel. I know *Zoſimus* an Heathen Hiſtorian, partly out of malice to the *Chriſtians* in general, and partly a particular grudg to the Emperor *Conſtantine*, reporteth otherwiſe of the cauſes of his Converſion: But the authority and conſent of all *Chriſtian* Writers, who deliver it as before is told, is far to be preferred before the teſtimony of one ſingle Heathen, had he not been biaſſed (as he was) by his diſaffections.

Before this time it is obſerved, that few (if at all any) of the *Roman* Emperors died a natural death, as after they generally did. From *Julius Cæſar* unto *Conſtantine* there were 40 in all. Of which *Julius* was openly murdered in the Senate; *Auguſtus* made away by his wife *Livia*; as *Tiberius* afterwards by *Macro*; *Caligula* was ſlain by *Caſſius Chereas*; *Claudius* poyſoned by his wife *Agrippina*; *Nero*, and *Otho*, laid violent hands upon themſelves; *Galba*, and *Vitellus*, maſſacred by the Souldiers; *Domitian* by *Stephanus*, *Commodus* by *Letus* and *Electus*, *Pertinax* and *Julianus* by the Souldiers of their Guard; *Caracalla* by the command of *Macrinus*, *Macrinus*, *Heliogabalus*, *Alexander*, *Maximinus*, *Maximus*, and *Balbinus*, ſucceſſively by the men of War; *Gordianus* by *Philip*, *Philip* by the Souldiers; *Hoſtilianus* by *Gallus*, and *Æmilianus*; and they by the Souldiers; *Valerianus* died a Priſoner in *Parthia*; *Florianus* was the Author of his own end, *Aurelianus* murthered by his houſhold ſervants; *Gallienus*, *Quintillus*, *Tacitus*, and *Probus*, by the fury of the military men. And yet I have omitted out of this Accompt ſuch of the Emperors as were tumultuouſly made by the Army, without the approbation of the *Senate*; as alſo the *Ceſars*, or deſigned Succeſſors of the Empire; moſt of which got nothing by their deſignation and adoption, but *ut citius interficerentur*. Some of theſe were cut off for their miſdemeanors: ſome for ſeeking to revive again the antient Diſcipline; and ſome that others might enjoy their places. The chief cauſe of theſe continual maſſacres, proceeded originally from the *Senate*, and Emperors themſelves. For when the *Senators* had once permitted the Souldiers to elect *Galba*, and had confirmed that election; *Evulgato* (ſaith *Tacitus*) *imperii arcano, principem alibi quam* Romæ *fieri poſſe*: more Emperors were made abroad in the field by the *Legions*, than at home by the *Senators*. Secondly from the *Emperors* alone, who by an unſeaſonable love to their *Guard-Souldiers*, ſo ſtrengthened them with priviledges, and nuſled them in their licentious courſes, that on the ſmalleſt rebuke, they which were appointed for the ſafety of the Princes, proved the Authors of their ruin: ſo truly was it ſaid by *Auguſtus* in *Dion*, *Metuendum eſt eſſe ſine cuſtode, ſed multo magis a cuſtode metuendum eſt*. The laſt cauſe (be it *cauſa per accidens*, or *per ſe*) was the largeſs which the new Emperors uſed to give unto the men of ſerviee; a cuſtom begun by *Claudius Cæſar*, and continued by all his Succeſſors: in ſo much that the Empire became ſaleable, and many times he which bad moſt had it. As we ſee in *Dion*, when *Sulpitianus* offering twenty *Seſtertiums* to each Souldier, was (as if they had been bying a ſtock at *Gleek*) out-bidden by *Julianus*, who promiſed them five and twenty *Seſtertiums* a man. So that *Herodian* juſtly complaineth of this Donative; *Id initium cauſæ, militibus fuit, ut etiam in poſterum turpiſſimi contumaciſſimiq; evaderent, hæ ut avaritiæ indies, ac principum contemptus, etiam ad ſanguinem uſque proveherent*. That is to ſay; From this occaſion and beginning, the Souldiers every day grew more ſhameleſs, and leſs regardful of their *Prince*: ſo that their covetouſneſs encreaſing, and the contempt they had of their Emperors waxing more and more, ended at laſt in the frequent ſhedding of their bloods, in hope to have a better Market of the next Succeſſor: So as the Emperor *Conſtantine* wanted not good reaſon, beſides their ſiding againſt him for *Maxentius*, to caſhier theſe Guards, as grown more dangerous than uſeful to *Imperial* Majeſty. And ſo accordingly he did, levelling their *ſtanding Camp* to the very ground, disbanding the whole company, or putting them under other Officers, and to other Services, by means whereof they were not able to create the like diſturbances, or diſpoſe of the Empire as before. And for the Captains of theſe *Guards* which before were two (*Præfecti Prætorio* in the Latin) he encreaſed their number unto four (one for each quarter of the Empire) giving them a Civil Juriſdiction in exchange for the Military Command which they had before, and caſting them behind in place after the *Patricii*, an Order of his own deviſing.

As for the extent and latitude of the *Roman* Empire, whilſt it remained one intire Body (as it was before the time of *Conſtantine*, who at his death divided it among his Sons) it was in length about three thouſand miles; namely from the *Iriſh* Ocean Weſt, to the River *Euphrates* on the Eaſt; and in breadth, it reached from the *Danubius* Northward to Mount *Atlas* on the South, about two thouſand miles. And though the *Romans* had extended their Dominions ſometimes farther *Eaſt*, and *North*; yet could they never quietly ſettle themſelves in thoſe conqueſts. Nature (it ſeemeth) had appointed them theſe bounds, not ſo much to limit their *Empire*, as to defend it. For the enemies found thoſe Rivers, by reaſon of the depth of the Chanel, and violent current of the ſtream, as a couple of impregnable Fortreſſes, purpoſely (as it were) erected to

hinder

hinder them from harraſing the *Roman* Countries.

The Revenues of it *Lipſius* in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*, eſteemeth to be about one hundred and fifty millions of Crowns; and that they were no leſs, may be made more than probable by theſe reaſons: 1. It is affirmed by divers, and among others by *Boterus*, that the yearly Revenues of the King of *China* amount to one hundred and twenty millions of Crowns. And if this be true (as few queſtion it) we cannot in proportion gueſs the whole Empire of the *Romans* to yield leſs than one hundred and fifty millions; eſpecially conſidering what Arts-Maſters the *Romans* were, in levying and raiſing their Taxes and cuſtomary Tributes. 2. The *Legionary* Souldiers which were diſperſed over the *Provinces*, received in ordinary pay, (beſides proviſion of corn, apparel, and Officers wages) five millions, 516062 pounds and ten ſhillings of our money; which amounteth unto ſixteen millions of Crowns, or thereabout. In the City it ſelf were kept in continual pay, ſeven thouſand Souldiers of the Watch, four thouſand or ſix thouſand for the defence of the City? and ten thouſand for the Guard of the Emperor's perſon. The two firſt had the ſame wages, the laſt the double wages of a *Legionary* Souldier. Add hereto the expences of the Palace; and other means of diſburſals, and I think nothing of the ſum can be abated. 3. We read that *C. Caligula* ſpent in one year two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; how *Nero* moſt laviſhly gave away two millions and one hundred thouſand of *Seſtertiums*; and how *Vitellius* in few months, was nine hundred thouſand *Seſtertiums* in Arrearages; every *Seſtertium* being valued at ſeven pound ſixteen ſhillings three pence; all of them huge and infinite ſums. 4. When *Veſpaſian* came to the Empire, the Exchequer was ſo impoveriſhed, that he profeſſed in open Senate, that he wanted to ſettle the Common-wealth forty millions of *Seſtertiums*, amounting to three hundred and twelve millions of our *Engliſh* money: which Proteſtation (ſaith *Sueton*) ſeemed probable, *Quia & male partis optime uſus eſt*. Now unleſs the ordinary Revenues came to as much, or more than we have ſpoken; by what means could this extraordinary ſum be raiſed? 5. We may gueſs at the general Revenue by the moneys iſſuing out of particular Provinces; and it is certain, that *Egypt* afforded the *Ptolomies* twelve thouſand Talents yearly: niether had the *Romans* leſs, they being more perfect in inhancing, than in abating their Intrado. *France* was by *Cæſar* ceſſed at the yearly tribute of twenty millions of Crowns. And no doubt the reſt of the Provinces were rated accordingly. 6. And laſtly, the infinite ſums of money given by the Emperors in way of largeſs, are proofs ſufficient for the greatneſs of the In-come. I will inſtance in *Auguſtus* only, and in him, omitting his Donatives at the victory of *Actium*, and the reſt, I will ſpecifie his Legacy at his death: He bequeathed (by his Teſtament, as we read in *Tacitus*) to the common ſort, and the reſt of the people, three pound eight ſhillings a man; to every Souldier of the *Prætorian* bands, ſeven pounds ſixteen ſhillings three pence; and to every *Legionary* Souldier, of the *Roman* Citizens, four pound ten ſhillings ſix pence: which amounted to a mighty maſs of money.

The Arms or Enſigns of this Empire when it was up and in the flouriſh, was the *Eagle*: not born, as now in colours, and a banner; but in an Image or Portraicture on the top of a Spear, or other long piece of wood, to be fixed in the earth at pleaſure. This Enſign, Spear and Eagle together, they called the *Labarum*: *Quæ ſigna, quod quaſi labantia haſtis appenderentur* Labara *dixerunt*, ſaith *Lipſius*, *Epiſt. Quæſt. Ep.* 5. The uſe as of this, ſo of other ſtandards, *Lyra* giveth us in his Notes on the ſecond of *Numbers*, namely, *ut ad eorum aſpectum, bellatores dividantur & uniantur*, to call together, and diſtribute the Souldiers according to occaſions. And certainly for this end and purpoſe were thoſe Enſigns firſt invented. Afterwards they were applied to the diſtinguiſhing of *Tribes* and *Families*; and at laſt beſtowed by Kings and Princes as the honorary marks of well-deſerving: Thoſe which had been the Enſigns of War, ſo becoming the ornaments of Peace. At what time the form of this *Labarum* was altered, and began to be born in colours, I have not yet read. It is now an Eagle *Saturn*, in a Field *Sol*, which kind of bearing the *Heralds* call *moſt rich*. It was firſt born by *Ca. Marius* in his ſecond Conſulſhip, and in his Wars againſt the *Cimbri*; from him conveyed to *J. Cæſar*, who was allied to him in deſign and perſon; and ſo derived unto the Emperors, his Succeſſors.

But to proceed, *Conſtantine* having ſetled his affairs in peace, and caſhiered the *Prætorian* Guards, fell to new modelling the Empire; which he conceived to be too cumberſom and unwieldy to be governed by the former Polity; as indeed it was. And firſt of all, he augmented the *Roman* Provinces to the number of one hundred and twenty, or thereabouts; over every one of which he ordered a particular *Preſident*, that had his reſidence in the chief City of that Province. Then he reduced theſe Provinces under fourteen *Dioceſes*, (for ſo he called the greater diſtributions of his Empire) ſeven of which were in the *Eaſt* parts thereof, that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Egypt*, of the *Orient*, of *Aſia*, of *Pontus*, *Thrace*, *Dacia*, and *Macedon*: and as many alſo in the *Weſt*, *viz.* the *Præfecture* of the City of *Rome* (which I count for one,) the *Dioceſe* of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*, of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. Finally inſtead of the two *Præfecti Prætorio* which had the command of the *Prætorians*, he ordained four for the quarters of the Empire: that is to ſay, the *Præfectus-Prætorio Italiæ*, under whom were the Dioceſes of *Italy*, *Africk*, and *Illyricum*: *Præfectus-Prætorio Galliarum*, who had under him the *Dioceſes* of *France*, *Spain*, and *Britain*; 3. The *Præfectus-Prætorio Orientis*, who had commanded over the *Dioceſes* of *Egypt*, the *Orient*, the *Aſian*, the *Pontick* and *Thracian* Dioceſes; And 4. the *Præfectus-Prætorio Illyrici*, under whoſe ſuperintendence, beſides *Illyricum* it ſelf, were the *Dioceſes* of *Macedon* and *Dacia* only; each of theſe *Præfects* having a *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant in the ſeveral *Dioceſes* under his authority, who fixed their reſidence in the head City of the *Dioceſe*. And this I have the rather noted, becauſe of the relation which the *Polity* of the *Chriſtian* Church had to this Diviſion: it being ſo ordered in the beſt and pureſt times thereof, that in every City where the Emperors had an Officer, whom they called *Defenſor Civitatis*, the *Chriſtians* ſhould have a *Biſhop*; in every chief City of the Province a *Metropolitan*; and over every *Dioceſe* an *Archbiſhop* or *Primate*, from whom lay no Appeal unto any other. And ſo far *Conſtantine* did well; if at the leaſt the caſting of the Empire into ſo many Dioceſes was of his deviſing. But I have reaſon to believe, that it was more ancient: the Patriarchs or Primates of *Rome*, *Carthage*, *Alexandria*, *Antioch*, and other of the greater Churches, being ſettled in a preheminence of juriſdiction over the Provinces, and *Metropolitans* aſſigned to them long time before the Council of *Nice*, and conſequently before the Empire (nay the birth) of *Conſtantine*, who poſſibly might act no more in this great buſineſs, than the aſſigning of a *Præfectus-Prætorio* to each ſeveral quarter, and the allotting of the *Dioceſes* unto each *Præfectus*. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that he committed divers errors, which did more prejudice

judice the Empire, than any thing that had been done by his Predeceſſors. Firſt in tranſlating the Imperial Seat from *Rome* to *Byzantium*; by which tranſplantation, the Empire loſt much of its natural vigour: as we ſee by experience of Plants and Flowers, which being removed from the place of their natural growth, loſe much of their vertue which was formerly in them. On which reaſon, *Camillus* would not ſuffer the *Romans* to remove their Seat unto the City of the *Veii*, newly conquered by him: but to prevent them in it ſet fire on the Town, and ſo conſumed it, *ut nunc* Veios *fuiſſe, laboret Annalium fides*, as my Author hath it. A ſecond fault of this *Conſtantine*, was the dividing the Empire amongſt his Sons, which only concerned himſelf. For though it was quickly re-united in the perſon of *Conſtantius* (his brethren dying without iſſue); yet his example being followed by others, the Empire was after torn into many pieces to the deſtruction of the whole. 'Tis true, the former Emperors uſed ſometimes to aſſociate ſome partner with them; but ſo, that they did manage it as one ſole Eſtate: *Conſtantine* (if I remember rightly) being the firſt which parcelled it into ſeveral Soveraignties, each independent of the other, allotting to *Conſtantius*, *Greece*, *Thrace*, and all the Provinces of the Eaſt; to *Conſtans*, *Italy*, *Illyricum*, *Africk*; to *Conſtantine*, *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*. The third fault of this Emperor was his removing the *Legion* and *Colonies* which lay before on the Northern Marches, into the Eaſtern parts of his Dominions; pretending to uſe them as a Bulwark againſt the *Perſians*; laying thereby thoſe paſſages open, at which not long after the Barbarous Nations entred, and ſubdued the Weſt. For though inſtead of theſe *Colonies* he planted Garriſons and Forts in convenient places, yet theſe being filled with Souldiers, for the moſt part out of other Countries, fought not as in defence of their native Soil, (as the *Colonies* would and muſt have done) but on the firſt onſet of thoſe *Barbarians* abandoned them to the will of the enemy. So that *Zozimus* (though in other of his reports about this Prince he bewrayeth much malice) doth call him, not untruly, the firſt Subverter of that flouriſhing Monarchy. To theſe three we may add a fourth, which concerns the Emperors in general; namely their ſtupid negligence and degenerate ſpirits, which ſhewed it ſelf moſt viſibly in the laſt of

The *Weſtern* Emperors.

341 1 *Conſtans*, the youngeſt ſon of *Conſtantinus Magnus*, his brother *Conſtantine* being dead, in the third year of his reign, remained ſole Emperor of the Weſt. 13.

354 2 *Conſtantius*, the other of *Conſtantines* ſons ſucceeded *Conſtans* in his part, after his deceaſe; uniting the divided Empire into one Eſtate.

3 *Valentinian* Emperor of the Weſt, his brother *Valens* ruling in *Conſtantinople*, and the Eaſtern parts.

4 *Valentinian* II. youngeſt ſon of the former *Valentinian*.

399 5 *Honorius* the ſecond ſon of *Theodoſius* the Emperor, (his elder brother *Arcadius* reigning in the Eaſt) in whoſe time *Alarick* with the *Goths* invaded *Italy*, ſacked *Rome*, and made themſelves Maſters of the Country, which afterwards they left in exchange for *Spain*. 26.

425 6 *Valentinian* III. during whoſe time *Attila* and the *Hunnes* made foul work in *Italy*; and the *Vandals* ſeized upon *Africk*, as they did on *Italy* and *Rome* alſo after his deceaſe: Murdered by *Maximus* a *Roman* (whoſe wife he had trained into the Court, and raviſhed) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter on another occaſion. He was ſon unto *Conſtantius Cæſar* by *Placidia* ſiſter to *Honorius*, and Widow of *Anthaulfus* King of the *Goths*.

455 7 *Maximus* having ſlain *Valentinian* the third, ſucceeded in the Empire; but on the coming of the *Vandals*, whom *Eudoxia* the wife of *Valentinian* (who had ſome inkling of the manner of her husbands death) had drawn into *Italy*, he was ſtoned to death by his own Souldiers. 1.

456 8 *Avitus*, choſen Emperor in a military tumult.

457 9 *Maiorianus*. 4.

461 10 *Severus*. 6.

467 11 *Anthemius*, who at the end of five years was ſlain (as were the three before him) by *Recimer* a *Suevian* born, the chief Commander of the Armies; who had an aim to get the Empire for himſelf, but died as ſoon as he had vanquiſhed and ſlain *Anthemius*.

471 12 *Olybrius*, an Emperor of four months only.

472 13 *Glycerius*, another of as little note: As alſo was

14 *Julius Nepos*, depoſed by *Oreſtes* a noble *Roman*, who gave the Empire to his ſon, called at firſt *Momillus*; but, after his aſſuming the Imperial title, he was called as in contempt *Auguſtulus*.

473 15 *Auguſtulus*, the laſt of the Emperors who reſided in *Italy*, vanquiſhed by *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli* and *Turingians*. An ominous thing, that as *Auguſtus* raiſed this Empire, ſo an *Auguſtulus* ſhould ruin it.

But though *Auguſtulus* loſt the Empire, yet *Odoacer* was not ſuffered to enjoy it long: *Zeno* the Emperor of the Eaſt ſending *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, to expel him thence; and to poſſeſs himſelf of *Italy*, the reward of his valour. And this the Emperor did the rather, partly becauſe the *Goths* were Chriſtians, and in good terms of correſpondency with him: but principally to remove that active Nation ſomewhat further off, who lay before too near the borders of his own Dominions. And that he might diſmiſs them with the greater content and honour, he made *Theodorick* a *Patrician* of the *Roman* Empire; an honour firſt deviſed by the Emperor *Conſtantine*; and of ſo high eſteem from the firſt Inſtitution, that they who were dignified therewith, were to have precedency of the *Prætoria-Præfecti*, who before took place next to the Emperor himſelf. Nor did the famous *Charlemain* ſet upon it any lower eſtimate, in caſe he did not add much unto it; when to the Title of Emperor of the *Romans*, he added that of a *Patrician* in the ſtile Imperial. *Theodorick* thus authorized and encouraged, marches toward *Italy*; and having vanquiſhed *Odoacer*, ſecures himſelf in his new Conqueſts by divers politick proceedings; firſt by Alliances abroad, and then by Fortreſſes at home. To fortifie himſelf abroad he took to Wife *Adelheida*, daughter to *Clodoveus* (or *Clovis*) King of the *French*; marrying his ſiſter *Hemelfride* to *Thoriſmund*, King of the *Vandals* in *Africk*, *Amalaſunta* a ſecond daughter to *Eutharicus* a Prince of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Ammelberge* his Neece, to *Hermandfridus* King of the *Turingians*. Being thus backed with theſe Alliances with his Neighbour-Princes, (all equally concerned in the ſubverting of the *Roman* Empire) he built Towns and Forts along the *Alpes*, and the ſhores of the *Adriatick*, to impeach the paſſage of the barbarous Nations into *Italy*. His Souldiers and Commanders he deſperſed into moſt parts of the Country; partly to keep under the *Italians*, of whoſe wavering and unconſtant nature he was ſomewhat doubtful; partly to unite

unite both people in a mixture of Language, Marriages, and Customs; and partly that he might more easily in War command them, and in Peace correct them. *Italy*, which before was made a thorow-fare to the barbarous Nations, and quite disordered by the frequent inundations of Lust and Rapine; he reduced to such a peaceable and setled Government, that before his death they had quite lost the memory of their former miseries: instead whereof a general felicity had diffused it self over all the Country. Such Cities as had been formerly defaced, he repaired, strengthned, and beautified. In his Wars he was victorious, temperate in his times of Peace, and in his private carriage discreet and affable. Finally (as *Velleius* saith of *Morobodnus*) he was *Natione magis quam ratione Barbarus:* And went the most judicious way to establish his dominion in *Italy*, of any of the Barbarous Princes that ever had invaded the *Roman* Provinces, which he left thus confirmed & setled unto his Successors.

A. Chr. The Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*.

495 1 *Theodorick* of whom before; who to his conquest of *Italy* added that of *Illyricum*, as also the appendant Islands to both those Countries; and wrested *Provence* in *France*, from the *Goths* of *Spain*.

527 2 *Athalaricus*, Nephew to *Theodorick* by his daughter to *Amalasunta*, who in the minority of her son managed the affairs of the *Goths* in *Italy*. Fearing some danger out of *Greece*, she restored *Provence* to the *French*, and by their aid drove the *Burgundians* out of *Liguria*. A Lady skilful in the Languages of all those Nations which had any commerce with the *Roman* Empire, insomuch that *pro miraculo fuerit ipsam audire loquentem*, saith *Procopius* of her.

534 3 *Theodatus*, the son of *Hammelfride*, the sister of *Theodorick*, succeeded on the untimely death of *Athalaricus*. Who being in War with the *Romans*, (or rather with the *Greek* Emperors, endeavouring to recover *Italy* from the hands of the *Goths*) and desiring before hand to know his success; was willed by a *Jew* to shut up a certain number of Swine, and to give to some of them the names of *Goths*, and unto others the names of *Romans*. Which done, and going to the styes, not long after they found the Hogs of the *Gothish* faction all slain, and those of the *Roman* halt unbristled: and thereupon the *Jew* foretold, That the *Goths* should be discomfited, and the *Romans* lose a great part of their strength; and it proved accordingly. Which kind of Divination is called Οιωνεια, and hath been prohibited by a General Council. The loss of this battel (won by *Belisarius* Commander of the Armies of the Emperour *Justinian*) drew on the loss of *Rome*, and the East parts of *Italy*, (with the Realm of *Naples*) and occasioned the death of *Theodatus*, slain shortly after these great losses by the *Goths* themselves. 3.

537 4 *Vitiges*, chosen by the *Goths*, besieged and taken in *Ravenna* by the said *Belisarius*. 3.

540 5 *Idobaldus*, Governour of *Verona*, on the calling home of *Belisarius*, chosen by the *Goths*, and by them not long after slain. 1.

541 6 *Ardaricus*, of whom nothing memorable. 1.

542 7 *Totilas*, a right valiant Prince, recovered all which had been got from his Predecessors, and sacked *Rome* in the sight of *Belisarius*, then returned into *Italy*, as not able to hinder him. Vanquished and killed in fight by *Narses*, in the 11. of his Reign. 11.

553 8 *Teyas*, the last King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, who being vanquished by *Narses* in the fourteenth year of his Reign, submitted himself to the *Eastern* Emperours: but after breaking out again, he was finally discomfited, and slain by *Narses*, not far from the City of *Nocera*. *An.* 567. After which time, the *Goths* and the *Italians* mingled in Blood and Language, became one Nation.

But the miseries of *Italy*, and those Western parts were not so to end. No sooner had God freed them from the rod of his visitations, which he had laid upon them in the times of *Persecution*, formerly remembred; and giving them peace within their dwellings; but they became divided into *Schisms* and *Factions*: and after wallowed in those sins; which a continual surfeit of prosperity hath commonly attending on it. Insomuch that devout *Salvian*, who lived much about these times, complains of that high hand of wickedness, wherewith they did provoke the patience of Almighty God; the lives of *Christians* being grown so deplorably wicked, that they became a scandal to the Faith and Gospel. *In nobis patitur* Christus *opprobrium*, *in nobis patitur lex* Christiana *maledicium*, saith that godly Bishop. So that their sins being ripe for vengeance, God sent the barbarous Nations, as his *Executioners*, to execute his divine justice on the impenitent men; and made them sensible though *Heathens*, that it was Gods work they did, and not their own, in laying such afflictions on these Western parts. *Ipsi fatebantur non suum esse quod facerent, agi enim se & per urgeri divino jussu*, as the said godly Bishop doth inform us of them. On this impulsion the *Vandals* did acknowledge that they first wasted *Spain*, and then harried *Africk:* And at the same time, did *Attila* the *Hun* insert into his Royal Titles the stile of *Malleus Orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*; acknowledging thereby his own apprehension of some special and extraordinary calling to this publick service. Nay, as *Jornandes* doth report, some of these barbarous people did not stick to say, That they were put on this employment by some Heavenly visions, which did direct them to the work which they were to do. In prosecution of the which, in less time than the compass of 80 years, this very *Italy* (though anciently the strength and seat of that Empire) was seven times brought almost unto desolation, by the Fire and Sword of the *Barbarians*, *viz.* First by *Alarick*, King of the *Goths*, who sacked *Rome*, *Naples*, &c. 2. By *Attila* King of the *Huns* who razed *Florence*, wasted *Lombardy*, and not without much difficulty was diverted from the spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*. 3. By *Genfericus* King of the *Vandals*, who also had the sackage of *Rome* it self. 4. By *Biorgus* King of the *Alani*, in the time of the Emperour *Maioranus*. 5. By *Odoacer* King of the *Heruli*. who drove *Augustulus* the last Western Emperour out of his estate; and twice in thirteen years laid the Country desolate. 6. By *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, called in by *Zeno* Emperour of *Constantinople* to expel *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*. And 7. by *Gundebald* King of the *Burgundians*, who having ransacked all *Lombardy*, returned home again, leaving possession to the *Goths*. As for these *Goths*, being the first and last of those barbarous Nations who had any thing to do in the spoil of *Italy*, after they had reigned here under eight of their Kings, for the space of 72 years, they were at last subdued by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, two of the bravest

braveſt Souldiers that had ever ſerved the Eaſtern Emperors; and *Italy* united once more to the Empire, in the time of *Juſtinian*. But *Narſes* having governed *Italy* about 17 years, and being after ſuch good ſervice moſt deſpightfully uſed by *Sophia* (never the wiſer for her name) the wife of the Emperour *Juſtinus*, abandoned the Country to the *Lombards*. For the Empreſs envying his glories, not only did procure to have him recalled from his Government; but ſent him word, *That ſhe would make the* Eunuch (for ſuch he was) *come home and ſpin among her maids*. To which the diſcontented man returned this anſwer, *That he would ſpin her ſuch a web, as neither ſhe nor any of her minions ſhould ever be able to unweave*. And thereupon he opened the paſſages of the Country to *Alboinus* King of the *Lombards*, then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*; who coming into *Italy* with their Wives and Children, poſſeſſed themſelves of all that Country which anciently was inhabited by the *Ciſalpine Gauls*, calling it by their own names *Longobardia*, now corruptly *Lombardy*. Nor ſtaid he there, but made himſelf maſter of the Countries lying on the *Adriatick*, as afar as to the borders of *Apulia*: and for the better Government of his new dominions, erected the four famous Dukedoms, 1. of *Friuli* at the entrance of *Italy*, for the admiſſion of more aids if occaſion were, or the keeping out of new Invadors: 2. Of *Turlin*, at the foot of the *Alpes* againſt the *French*: 3. *Benevent*, in *Abruzzo*, a Province of the Realm of *Naples*, againſt the incurſions of the *Greeks*, then poſſeſſed of *Apulia*, and the other Eaſtern parts of that Kingdom: And 4. of *Spoleto*, in the midſt of *Italy*, to ſuppreſs the Natives; leaving the whole, and hopes of more unto his ſucceſſors.

A. Chr. The *Lombardian* Kings of *Italy*,

568. 1 *Alboinus*. 6.
574. 2 *Clephes*. 1.
Interregnum annorum. 11.
586. 3 *Autharis*. 7.
593. 4 *Agilulfus*. 25.
618. 5 *Adoaldus*. 10.
628. 6 *Ariaoldus*. 11.
639. 7 *Richaris*, or *Rotharis*.
655. 8 *Radoaldus*. 5.
660. 9 *Aribertus*. 9.
669. 10 *Gundibertus*. 1.
670. 11 *Grimoaldus*. 9.
679. 12 *Garibaldus*, *menſ*. 3.
679. 13 *Partaritbus*, 18.
698. 14. *Cunibertus*. 12.
710. 15 *Luitbertus*. 1.
711. 16 *Rainbertus*. 1.
712. 17 *Aribertus* II. 12.
723. 18 *Aſprandus*, *menſ*. 3.
723. 19 *Luitprandus*. 21.
744. 20 *Hildebrandus*, *menſ*. 6.
744. 21 *Rachiſius*. 6.
750. 22 *Aſtulphus* 6.
756. 23 *Deſiderius*, the laſt of the *Lombards*, of whom more anon. In the mean time, we will look into the ſtory of ſome of the former Kings, in which we find ſome things deſerving our conſideration. And firſt beginning with *Alboinus*, the firſt of this Catalogue: before his coming into *Italy* he had waged war with *Cunimundus*, a King of the *Gepidæ*; whom he overthrew, and made a drinking Cup of his Skull. *Roſamund* daughter of this King he took to Wife; and being one day merry at *Verona*, forced her to drink out of that deteſted Cup; which ſhe ſo ſtomached, that ſhe promiſed one *Helmichild*, if he would aid her in killing the King, to give him both her ſelf and the Kingdom of *Lombardy*. This when he had conſented to, and performed accordingly, they were both ſo extreamly hated for it, that they were fain to fly to *Ravenna*, and put themſelves into the protection of *Longinus* the *Exarch*. Who partly out of a deſire to enjoy the Lady; partly to be poſſeſſed of that maſs of Treaſure which ſhe was ſaid to bring with her; but principally hoping by her power and party there, to raiſe a beneficial War againſt the *Lombards*; perſwaded her to diſpatch *Helmichild* out of the way, and take him for her husband; to which ſhe willingly agreed. *Helmichild* coming out of a Bath called for drink, and ſhe gives him a ſtrong poyſon; half of which when he had drunk, and found by the ſtrange operation of it how the matter went, he compelled her to drink the reſt: ſo both died together. 2. *Clephes* the Second King extended the Kingdom of the *Lombards* to the Gates of *Rome*: but was ſo tyrannical withal, that after his death, they reſolved to admit of no more Kings, diſtributing the Government among thirty Dukes. Which diviſion, though it held not above twelve years, was the chief cauſe that the *Lombards* failed of being the abſolue Lords of all *Italy*. For the people having once caſt off the yoak of obedience, and taſted ſomewhat of the ſweetneſs of licentious Freedom; were never after ſo reduced to their former duty, as to be aiding to their Kings in ſuch Atchievements as tended more unto the greatneſs of the King, than the gain of the ſubject. 3. *Cunibert* the 14. King was a great lover of the Clergy, and by them as lovingly requited. For being to encounter with *Alachis* the Duke of *Trent*, who rebelled againſt him: one of the Clergy knowing that the Kings life was chiefly aimed at by the Rebels, put on the Royal Robe, and thruſt himſelf into the head of the Enemy, where he loſt his own life, but ſaved the Kings. 4. *Aribert* the 17 King, gave the *Coltian Alpes* containing *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dutchy of *Millain* to the Church of *Rome*: which is obſerved to be the firſt Temporal Eſtate, that ever was conferred upon the Popes, and the foundation of that greatneſs which they after came to. 5. The 19 King was *Luitprandus*, who added to the Church the Cities of *Ancona*, *Narnia*, and *Humana*, belonging to the *Exarchate*; having firſt won *Ravenna*, and the whole *Exarchy* thereof. *An.* 741. The laſt *Exarch* being called *Eutichus*. But the *Lombards* long enjoyed not his Conqueſts. For *Pepin* King of *France*, being by Pope *Stephen* the third, ſolicited to come into *Italy*; overthrew *Aſtulphus*, and gave *Ravenna* to the Church. The laſt King was *Deſiderius*, who falling at odds with *Adrian* the firſt, and beſieging him in *Rome*, was by *Charles* the great, Succeſſor to *Pepin*, beſieged in *Pavy*, and himſelf with all his Children taken priſoners, *An.* 774. And ſo ended the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having endured in *Italy* 206 years. *Lombardy* was then a Province of the *French*, and after of the *German* Empire: many of whoſe Emperors uſed to be crowned Kings of *Lombardy*, by the Biſhops of *Millain*, with an Iron-Crown: which was kept at *Modoetum*, now called *Monza*, a ſmall Village. This *Charles* confirmed his Fathers former donations to the Church; and added of his own accord, *Marca Anconatina*, and the Dukedom of *Spoleto*. For theſe and other kindneſſes, *Charls* was by P. *Leo* the Fourth on *Chriſtmas* day crowned Emperor of the Weſt, *An.* 801. whoſe Succeſſors ſhall be reckoned when we come to the ſtory of *Germany*. At this diviſion of the Empire, *Irene* was Empreſs of the Eaſt; to whom and her Succeſſors was no more allotted than the Provinces of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*, (the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Naples*) being then in poſſeſſion of the *Greeks*. To the Popes were confirmed or given by this Emperor and his Father, almoſt all the Lands which they poſſeſs at this day; though afterwards extorted from them by the

following Emperors, or under colour of their Title: by many ſeveral ways and means brought again unto them, as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in convenient place. The *Venetians*, in that little they then had, remained *ſui juris*. The reſt of *Italy*, containing all the other Provinces of the Kingdom of *Naples*, together with *Tuſcany*, *Friuli*, *Trevigina* and whatſoever is at this day in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes of *Milan*, *Mantua*, *Modena*, *Parma*, *Montferrat*, and the Duke of *Savoy* as Prince of *Piedmont*, together with *Liguria*, or the States of *Genoua*, was reſerved by *Charles* unto himſelf, and in his life-time given by him to *Pepin* his ſecond ſon, with the ſtile or title of King of *Italy*. But long it did not reſt in the houſe of *France*; the Princes of the *Lombards* wreſting it from the line of *Charles*, and after weakning and dividing it by their ſeveral factions; till in the end, inſtead of an united Kingdom, there roſe up many ſcattered Principalities, as ſhall hereafter be declared. But firſt we muſt proceed to the Kings of *Italy*, of which we ſhall endeavour as exact a Catalogue, as the confuſions of that State can be capable of.

The Kings of *Italy*, of the *French*, *Italian*, and *German* Lines.

1 *Pepin* ſon of *Carolus Magnus*, died before his Father.
2 *Barnard*, ſon of *Pepin*.
3 *Ludovicus Pius*, Emperor, and King of *France*.
841 4 *Lotharius*, Emperor, eldeſt ſon of *Ludovicus*. 15.
856 5 *Ludovicus* II. Emperor, eldeſt ſon to *Lotharius*. 20.
876 6 *Carolus Calvus*, Emperor, the youngeſt ſon of *Ludovicus Pius*. 2.
7 *Caroloman*, Nephew to *Ludovicus Pius*, by *Ludovicus* his ſecond ſon, ſurnamed the *Antient*.
8 *Carolus Craſſus*, or the Fat-Emperor, brother of *Caroloman*, the laſt King of *Italy* of the houſe of *Charles*, he died *Anno* 888.
888 9 *Guy*, Duke of *Spoleto*, contends with *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, both of the *Longobardian* Race, of the Kingdom of *Italy*; and in fine carrieth it againſt him.
894 10 *Lambert*, the ſon of *Guy*, crowned by Pope *Formoſus*.
11 *Ludovick*, ſon of *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, by ſome Writers called only Earl of *Provence*; upon the death of *Lambert* invadeth *Italy*; and is made King.
917 12 *Berengarius* Duke of *Friuli*, vanquiſheth *Ludovicus*, is made King of *Italy*; and at laſt overcom by the *Hungarians*; who having waſted the Country returned back again.
13 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy Tranſ-jurane*, called into *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*, reſigned it in exchange for the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy* to his Couſen.
926 14 *Hugh D' Arles*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, who held the Kingdom of *Italy* upon this reſignation; but after many troubles, was at laſt outed of it by *Berengarius*, and returned into *France*.
946 15 *Berengarius* II. ſon of the former *Berengarius*, on the retreat of *Hugh*, received by the *Italians* as Protector to *Lotharius* the ſon of *Hugh*; beſieging *Adelhais* the next heir of *Italy* (on the death of *Lotharius*) was taken priſoner by the Emperor *Otho*.
16 *Otho*, called into *Italy* by *Adelhais*, danger to *Rodolph* King of *Burgundy* and *Italy*; marrieth the Lady, and in her right is King of *Italy*.
974 17 *Otho* II. ſon of the former *Otho*, marrieth *Theophania* Neece to *Nicepherus Phocas*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and hath *Calabria* for her Dower. 20.
984 18 *Otho* III. Emperor, and King of *Italy*, in whoſe minority the Kingdom was uſurped by
19 *Harduicus*, a man of great power in *Italy*, who kept it all the time of *Otho*; till being broken with long wars by *Henry* the ſucceeding Emperor, he was forced to quit it.
20 *Henry*, the ſecond Emperor of that name, having thrice vanquiſhed *Harduicus*, got the Kingdom of *Italy*, and left the ſame unto the Emperors his Succeſſors: the Title of *Italy* after this time being drowned in that of the Empire; and the Country governed as a part and Member of the Empire, by ſuch Commanders and other Officers as the Emperors from time to time ſent thither. But long it ſtaid not in that ſtate. For the Popes of *Rome* knowing how much it did concern them in point of Polity, to weaken the Imperial Power in *Italy*, without which their own Grandeur could not be maintained; ſtirred up continual factions and wars againſt them; and by that means, and by the Cenſures of the Church which they denounced according as they ſaw occaſion, did ſo aſtoniſh and diſtract them, that in the end the Emperors began to lay aſide the affairs of *Italy*, by which they reaped more trouble than the profit came to. Inſomuch that *Rodolfus Habſpurgenſis*, a valiant and a politick Prince, finding the ill ſucceſs which *Henry* the 4. and 5. and *Frederick* the 1. and 2. Emperors of more puiſſance than himſelf, had found in their *Italian* actions and pretenſions; reſolved to rid his hands of that troubleſom and fruitleſs Province; and to that end made as much money as he could of that commodity, which he ſaw he was not like to keep. And yet he ſold good penny-worths too, to them that bought them; the *Florentines* paying for their Liberties but ſix thouſand Crowns, the Citizens of *Lucca*, ten thouſand; others as they could make their Markets. And being once required the reaſon, why he went not into *Italy* to look to the affairs thereof, as his Predeceſſors had done before him: he is ſaid to have returned for anſwer that conceit of the *Fox*, for his not going to attend (as other beaſts did) at the Lion's Den:

——— *Quia me veſtigia terrent,*
Omnia me adverſum ſpectantia, nulla retroſum.

That is to ſay,

I dare not go, becauſe no track I ſee
Of any Beaſt returning towards me.

Which faulty and improvident reſolution being followed by too many of his Succeſſors, not only gave the Popes the opportunity they looked for, of making themſelves the great diſpoſers of the affairs of *Italy*; but many petit Princes thereby took occaſion of getting all they could lay hold on for themſelves, and others. For by this means, the *Scaligers* made themſelves Maſters of *Verona*, the *Paſſarians* of *Mantua*, the *Carrarians* of *Padua*, the *Baillons* of *Bononia*, and by the ſame, the *Florentines* got *Piſtoia*, and *Ferrara* was poſſeſſed by the *Venetians*. And although *Henry* the 7. provoked by theſe indignities, made a journey thither, reduced many of the revolted Cities

Cities to their former obedience, and was crowned King at *Millain* with the Iron-Crown; as were also *Ludovicus Bavarus*, and *Charles* the 4. two of his Successors: yet found they in conclusion such small benefit by the enterprise, as did not quit the charge and trouble which it put them to. So in the end *Italy* was left wholly in a manner to the Pope's disposing, who gave away to others what they could not manage; or otherwise confirmed those men in their usurpations, whom they found already possessed of the Emperors Countries, and bound them by that means the faster to the See of *Rome*, of which they were to hold their estates in Fee; the Emperors having nothing left them but the empty Title, nor exercising the Imperial Power there any other way, than by changing Earldoms, into Marquisates, and Marquisates to Dukedoms, which they often did for ready money, or reward of Service, or to preserve some shadow of their ancient Interest.

And now we are to look on *Italy* as under a new face of things, not only in regard of several Principalities and forms of Government; but as replenished with new Colonies or Sets of people, differing from the old in manners as well as language. And though the Soil be now as it was before, yet hath that also found some change in the different production of the natural Fruits, as well as in the Manufactures and works of Art. For now besides their Corn and Wine, which anciently were the staple Commodities of this Country; they supply the rest of Christendom with Rice, Silks, Velvets, Taffaties, Sattins, Grograins, Rash, Fustians, Goldwire, Allom, Armour, Glasses, and such like commodities, which make their Merchants very wealthy; who being for the most part, Gentlemen of Noble-houses, not only lose not the esteem of their Nobility by following the Trade of Merchandise (as in other places;) but by reason that they are possessed of estates in land, which they manage by their Bailiffs and other Servants, they are become the wealthiest Merchants in all *Christendom*.

Nor do the Gentry come behind them in all manner of affluence, which can be possibly enjoyed in so rich a Soil. Their Lands they set not at a rent, but at thirds and halfs, according as the Soil is more or less fruitful; seldom abiding in the Country, but only for a month or two in the Summer times; but then they entertain themselves with their Musick and Mistresses under the fragrant Hedges and shady Bowers, in as much solace and delight as may be desired. The residue of the year they spend in Cities, and places of the most resort, for change of company. But, on the other side, the Country-Farmer lives a drudging and laborious life, liable to all the Taxes and Impositions which are laid on the Land; the Landlords part coming in clearly without any disbursements or defalcations; insomuch that it is proverbially, but most truly said, that *the rich men in* Italy *are the richest, and the poor men the poorest, in all the world.*

The people generally are grave, respective, and ingenious. Excellent men (said once an *Hispaniolized Italian*) but for these three things; that is to say, in their lusts they are unnatural, in their malice unappeasable in their actions deceitful. To which might be added, that they will blaspheme rather than swear, and murder a man sooner then slander him. But this perhaps may be the fault but of some particulars: it being observed by moderate and impartial men, that they are obedient to their Superiors, to Inferiors courteous, to their Equals full of all Civilities, to Strangers affable, and most desirous by all fair and friendly offices to win their loves. In apparel they are said to by very modest, in the furniture of their houses sumptuous, at their Tables neat, sober of speech, enemies of all ill reports of others; and of their own reputation so exceeding tender, that whosoever slandereth any one of them, if it come unto the parties ear, he is sure to die for it. Of money and expence he is very thrifty, and loves to be at no more cost, than he is sure to save by, or receive great thanks for: but otherwise for civil carriage and behaviour, surpassing all the Gentry of the World besides. Only in strictness to their wives, they exceed all reason, of whom they are so extreamly jealous, that they shut them up all day from the common view, and permit them liberty of discourse with few or none. The Lock used by a Gentleman of *Venice* to be assured of his wives chastity in the time of his absence, is so known a story that it needs no report. But touching the predominancy of this jealous humor in most Southern Nations, we shall speak more hereafter when we come to *Spain*. And yet if that be true, which is proverbially spoken of the women of *Italy*, the husbands have more reason for this strict restraint, than other Nations are aware of. For though they be for the most part witty in speech, and modest in the outward appearance, as much as any; yet it is said of them in the way of proverb, That *they are as Magpies at the door, Saints in the Church, Goats in the Garden, Devils in the house, Angels in the Streets*, and *Syrens in the Windows*, not wanting on this ground to set out themselves with all advantages of Art, there being few amongst them who use not *painting*, and other the sophistical helps to fallacious Beauty; and thereupon they have a saying, that *If God make them tall and fat*, (for the title of a *goodly woman* is much prized amongst them) *they will make themselves fair.*

The Language of both Sexes is very Courtly and fluant, all of them speaking the *Courtezan*, or Court-language; notwithstanding the diversity of Dialects which is amongst them. For though there be a remarkable difference betwixt the *Florentine* and *Venetian*, the *Millanese* and the *Roman*, the *Neapolitan* and the *Genoese*; yet it is hard to be discerned by the tone or pronunciation, what language any Gentleman is of. But generally it is best spoken in the great Duke's Country, in the Cities of *Florence* and *Sienna*, but in *Florence* especially; in which City, *Guicciardine* the *Historian*, *Boccace* the Author of the *Decameron*, and other great Masters of the *Italian* Language, did live and flourish in their times.

For other men of note both for Arts and Arms; *Italy* hath afforded many since the fall of the Empire, *viz.* *Æneas Silvius*, afterwards Pope, by the name of *Pius* the second; 2. *Marsilius Patavinus*, a stout defender of the Imperial Rights, 3. *Petrarch* a *Roman* born; 4. *Angelus Politianus*, the Restorer of polite Literature in *Italy*; 5. *Rodolphus Volaterranus*; and 6. *Picus Mirandula*, two great Humanitians; 7. *Guido Bonatus*, a famous Astrologer; 8. *Arioſto*, and 9. *Taſſo*, the most renowned Poets of their times, and the latter never fellowed since; 10. *Sixtus Senensis*, one of the best Antiquaries of the Nation, and a great Divine; 11. *Bellarmine*, and 12. *Baronius*, the Butresses and Pillars of the Church of *Rome*. And then for Arms; 1. *Ludovicus Conins*, the first Restorer of the honour of the *Italian* Souldiery; 2. *Forti Bracchio*, and 3. *Nicolao Picinino*, two of his training up in the feats of Chivalry; 4, 5. *Sforza*, the Father, and the Son; of which the Son attained by his valour, to the Dukedom of *Millain*; 6. *Christopher Columbus*, a *Genoese*; *Americus Vespucius*, a *Florentine*, and 8. *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, the fortunate Discoverers of *America*; 9. *Andrea D' Oria*, Admiral of the Navies to *Charles*

the fifth; and 10. *Ambroſe Spinola* (both *Genoeſe*) Commander of the Armies of *Philip* the ſecond, King of *Spain:* Which laſt being once upbraided by *Maurice*, Prince of *Orange*, as iſſued from a Race of Merchants, (though otherwiſe of a very ancient and noble Family) returned this tart and ſudden Anſwer, That *he thought it a greater honour to him, being a* Merchant, *to have the command of ſo many* Princes; *than it could be unto the other, though a* Prince *by birth, to be under the command of ſo many* Merchants.

The uſual Diviſion of *Italy* is into ſix parts, 1. *Lombardy*, 2. *Tuſcany*, 3. the Land of the *Church*, 4. *Naples*, 5. *Riviere de Genoa*; and 6. the Land of *Venice*: and of them there is paſſed this Cenſure according to the principal Cities, *i. e. Rome* for Religion, *Naples* for Nobility, *Millain* for beauty, *Genoa* for ſtatelineſs, *Florence* for Policy, and *Venice* for riches. But take it as it ſtands at the preſent time; and *ITALY* is beſt divided

into
- The Kingdoms of { *Naples.* / *Sicily.* / *Sardinia.* }
- The Land or Patrimony of the *Church.*
- The great Dukedom of *Tuſcany.*
- The Common-wealths of { *Venice.* / *Genoa.* / *Luca.* } { *Millain.* / *Mantua.* }
- The Eſtates of *Lombardy, i. e.* { The Dukedom of { *Modena.* / *Parma.* / *Montferrat.* } / The Principality of *Piedmont.* }

The Kingdom of NAPLES.

THE Kingdom of *NAPLES* is invironed on all ſides with the *Adriatick*, *Ionian*, and *Tuſcan* Seas, excepting where it joyneth on the Weſt to the *Lands of the Church:* from which ſeparated by a line drawn from the mouth of the River *Tronto* (or *Druentus*) falling into the *Adriatick*, to the Spring-head of *Axofenus*. By which accompt it taketh up all the Eaſt of *Italy*, the compaſs of it being reckoned at 1468. miles.

It hath been called ſometimes the Realm of *Poville*, from *Poville* or *Apulia*, a chief Province of it; the firſt poſſeſſion of the *Normans* (the Founders of this Kingdom) in theſe parts of *Italy:* but called moſt commonly the Realm of *Sicil*, on this ſide of the *Phare*, to difference it from the Kingdom of the Iſle of *Sicil*, lying on the other ſide of the *Phare*, or ſtrait of *Meſſana*. The reaſon of which improper appellation proceeded from *Roger* the firſt King hereof, who being alſo Earl of *Sicil*, and keeping there his fixed and ordinary reſidence; when he got the favour to be made a King, deſired (in honour of the place where he moſt reſided) to be created by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And that indeed is the true and ancient name of the Kingdom; the name or title of King of *Naples* not coming into uſe till the *French* were diſpoſſeſſed of *Sicil* by the *Aragonians*; and nothing left them but this part of the Kingdom, of which the City of *Naples* was the Regal Seat, called therefore in the following times, the Kingdom of *Naples*; and by ſome of the *Italian* Writers, the *Kingdom* only.

This is eſteemed to be the moſt fertil place in all *Italy*, abounding in all things neceſſary for the life of man, and in ſuch alſo as conduce to Delight and Phyſick; *viz.* Many Springs, and Medicinal waters, Baths of divers vertues, ſundry Phyſical herbs. It hath alſo an excellent breed of Horſes, which may not be tranſported but by the leave of the King, or at leaſt the *Viceroy*; great ſtore of Allom, Mines of divers Metals, and the choiceſt Wines, called anciently *Vina Maſſica*, and *Falerna*, frequently mentioned by the *Poets*. And as for Merchandiſe, to *Alexandria* they ſend Saffron, to *Genoa* Silks, to *Rome* Wines, and to *Venice* Oyl, *&c.*

The Noblemen or Gentry hereof, live of all men the moſt careleſs and contented lives; and like the Tyrant *Polycrates* in the elder ſtories, have nothing to trouble them, but that they are troubled with nothing. And there is a great number of them too, there being reckoned in this Realm in the time of *Ortelius*, 13 Princes, 24 Dukes, 25 Marqueſſes, 90 Earls, and 800 Barons; and thoſe not only Titular, as in other places, but men of great power and revenue in their ſeveral Countries; inſomuch that the yearly income of the Prince of *Biſignan* is ſaid to be an 100000 Crowns, one year with the other; the Princes of *Salerno*, and St. *Severine* being near as great. They are all bound by their Tenure to ſerve the King in his Wars, which gives them many priviledges, and great command over the common Subject: whereby as they were made the abler to aſſiſt the King, upon any foreign invaſion; ſo are they in condition alſo of raiſing and countenancing ſuch defections as have been made from King to King, and from one *Family* to another, as ſorted beſt with their ambitions & particular intereſſes. For not alone the *Nobles*, but in general as many of the common people as can be ſpared from husbandry; are more addicted to the Wars, than they are to Merchandiſe: The *Nobles* in purſuit of honour, and the *Paiſant* out of deſire of being in action; ſo that the greateſt part of the Forces which ſerve the *Spaniard* in the *Low-Countries*, are ſent from hence. To which, the humour which they have from the higheſt to the loweſt, of going bravely in Apparel, ſerves exceeding fitly. An humour which is ſo predominant in both ſexes, that though the *Paiſant* lives all the reſt of the week in as great ſervility and drudgery, as his Lord doth in pride and jollity; yet on the *Sundays* and *Saint-days*, he will be ſure to have a good ſuit to his back, though perhaps he hath no meat for his belly. And for the women, ſhe that works hard both day and night for an hungry living, will be ſo pranked up on the Sundays and other Feſtivals, or when ſhe is to ſhew herſelf in ſome publick place; that one who did not know the humour, might eaſily miſtake her for ſome noble Lady.

The principal Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1 *Sybaris*, 2 *Buſentus*, 3 *Peſcara*, 4 *Trontus*, 5 *Auſidus*, 6 *Salinellus*, 7 *Vomanus*, 8 *Salinus* and 9 *Gariglian*. The moſt famous of which, are *Auſidus* and *Gariglian*. The firſt as being the only River of *Italy*, which riſing South-ſide of the *Apennine*, forceth a breach through it to the upper Sea: but more for the great Battel fought on the banks thereof, called the Battel of *Cannæ*, of which more hereafter. The other no leſs famous for thoſe many Battels, which have been fought near it between the *French* and the *Spaniard*, for the Kingdom of *Naples*: eſpecially that famous Battel between the Marqueſs of *Saluzzes*, General of the *French*, and *Gonſalvo*, Leader of the *Spaniards*; the loſs of which Victory by the *French*, was the abſolute confirmation of the Realm of *Naples* to the *Spaniards*. More famous is this River for the death of *Peter de Medices*, who being baniſhed his Country at the coming of King *Charles* the 8. into *Italy*, and having divers times in vain attempted to be reimpatriate, followed the *French* Army hither, and after the loſs of the day, took Ship with others, to fly to *Cajeta*; but over-charging the Veſſel, ſhe ſunk and drowned them all. But moſt famous is it, in that *Marius*, that excellent, though unfortunate Captain, being by *Sylla*'s faction driven out of *Rome*, hid himſelf ſtark naked in the dirt and weeds of this River: where he had not lain long, but *Sylla*'s Souldiers found him, and carried him to the City of the *Minturnians*, being not far off.

Theſe

These men, to please *Sylla*, hired a *Cimber* to kill him, which the fellow attempting (such is the vertue of Majesty even in a miserable fortune) run out again, crying, he could not kill *C. Marius*. This River was of old called *Liris*; and towards its influx into the Sea expatiated into Lakes and Fens, called the Lakes of *Minturni*, from a City of that name adjoyning.

It is divided into the Provinces of 1 *Terra di Lavoro*, 2 *Abruzzo*, 3 *Puglia*, or *Apulia*, 4 *Terra de Otranto* 5 *Calabria Superior*, 6 *Calabria Inferior*, and 7 the Isles of *Naples*. Some of which have some smaller Territories adjoyning to them, which we shall meet withal as they come in our way.

TERRA di LAVORO is bounded on the North with *Abruzzo*, from which separated by the *Apennine* Hills, on the East with the River *Silarus*, which parteth it from the lower *Calabria*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenium* or *Tuscan* Sea, and on the West with *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*; from which divided by the River *Cariglian*; Called anciently *Campania Felix*, in regard of the wonderful fertility of it, and that it was the seat or dwelling of the *Campani*; by some modern *Latinists* called *Campania Antiqua*, to difference it from *Latium*, which they now call *Campagna di Roma*, or *Campania Nova*. And for the other name of *Terra di Lavoro*, or *Terra Laboratoris*, it was given to it, from the continual labour of the Husbandmen in cultivating the ground, and carrying in the fruits thereof; but neither the reason, nor the name so new, as some men suppose. But, I am sure, as old as *Pliny*, who calleth these parts sometimes by the name of *Laboria*, sometimes of *Campus Laborinus*; and gives this reason of the name, *quod ingens in eo colendo sit labor*, because of the great pains it requires to till it, and the great profit reaped by them who did till and manure it.

The Country is so exceeding fruitful in Wines and Wheat, that by *Florus* the Historian it is called *Cereris & Bacchi certamen*, and deservedly too. For in this noble Region one may see large and beautiful fields overshaded with rich Vines, thick and delightful Woods, sweet Fountains, and most wholsom Springs of running waters; useful as well for the restoring of mans health, as delight and pleasure: and in a word, whatsoever a covetous mind can possibly aim at, or a carnal covet.

Towns of note here were many in the elder times. The principal whereof, 1 *Cajeta*, seated on a fair and capacious Bay, from the crookedness whereof it is thought by *Strabo*, to have took the name; the word in the *Laconian* Language signifying *crooked*. Others will have it so called from καίω, *Uro*, with reference to the burning of the Fleet of *Æneas* by the *Trojan* Ladies; for fear of being forced again to go to Sea, where they had been so extreamly tossed in their former voyages. But why that Fact committed on the furthest coasts of *Sicil*, should be so solemnly commemorated here on the shores of *Italy*, I can see no reason: and therefore we may far more probably derive it from *Cajeta*, the nurse of *Æneas*, in memory of whom, being buried here, or hereabouts, *Æneas* is affirmed to have built this Town. Of which thus the Poet, *Æneid. lib.* 7.

Tu quoque Littoribus nostris, Æneia nutrix,
Æternam moriens famam, Cajeta, dedisti.

That is to say,

Æneas Nurse, *Cajeta*, by her death,
Did to these shores an endless fame bequeath.

But on what ground soever it first had this name, it is assuredly a place of great strength and consequence; and of so special importance for the Estate of this Kingdom, that (as *Comineus* hath observed) if King *Charles* the 8. had but only fortified it and the Castle of *Naples*, the Realm had never been lost. 2. *Naples*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom, a beautiful City, containing seven miles in compass. It was once called *Parthenope* and falling to ruine, was new built, and called *Neapolis*. Among other things, here is an Hospital, the revenues whereof is 60000 Crowns yearly, wherewith besides other good deeds, they nourish in divers parts of the Kingdom, 2000 poor Infants. In this City, the disease called *Morbus Gallicus*, or *Neapolitanus*, was first known in *Christendom*. This City is seated on the Sea-shore, and fortified with four strong Castles, *viz.* 1 Castle *Capodua*, where the Kings Palace was, 2 *Ermo*, 3 Castle *del Ovo*, or the Castle of the Egge, and 4 Castle *Novo*, or the new Castle. But nature hath not done much less to her Fortifications, than the hand of Art, the Town being for the most part environed by Sea, or Mountains not to be ascended without great difficulty and disadvantages. Which Mountains, as they serve on that side as a bank to the City, so do they furnish the Citizens with most generous Wines; and being once ascended yield a gallant prospect both for Sea and Land. A City honoured by the seat of the *Vice-Roy*, and the continual resort, if not constant residence of most of the great men of the Realm; which makes the private buildings to be very graceful, and the publick stately. And yet it had increased much more in buildings, than it is at present, if the King had not forbidden it by special Edict. And this he did, partly, at the perswasion of his Noblemen, who feared that if such a restraint were not laid upon them, their Vassals would forsake the Country to inhabit here, so to enjoy the priviledges and the exemptions of the Regal City: but principally upon jealousie and point of State, the better to prevent all revolts and mutines, which in most populous Cities are of greatest danger. 3 *Capua*, once the head of the *Campani*, seated in a delicious and luxurious soyl, and one of the three Cities which the old *Romans* judged capable of the seat of the Empire, the other two being *Carthage*, and *Corinth*. Being distressed by the *Samnites*, they were fain to cast themselves into the Arms of the *Romans*, who did not only take them into their protection, but suffered them to live according to their own Laws, as a Free Common-wealth; rather like a confederate than a Subject-State. Which freedom they enjoyed, till after the revolt to the *Carthaginians*; when being reduced to their obedience by force of Arms, they lost all their Liberties, and hardly escaped its fatal and final ruin: drawing the whole Nation of the *Campains* with divers lesser States, which depended on them, into bondage with it; *A. V. C.* 542. *Appius* and *Flaccus* being Consuls. The pleasures of this place was it which enervated the victorious Army of *Annibal*, who wintered here after the great defeat given to *Terentius Varro* at the Battel of *Canna*; whence came the saying, *Capuam esse* Cannas *Annibali*. 4 *Cuma*, a City once of great power and beauty, till *Campania* was subdued by the *Romans*; after which, it decayed in both. Near hereunto was the Cave or Grot of one of the *Sibyls* called from hence *Cumæa*, and not far off the Lake called *Lacus Avernus*, the stink whereof is said to have poysoned Birds as they flew over it; supposed by ignorant Antiquity for the entrance of Hell. And finally; from this place it was, that *Æneas* is fabled by the Poets to have gone down to the infernal Ghosts, to talk with his Father. 5 *Nola*, where *Marcellus* discomfited the Forces of *Annibal*, and thereby gave the *Romans* to understand, that he was not invincible. 6 *Puteoli*, a small Town

standing.

ſtanding on a Creek of the Sea, juſt oppſite to *Baiæ*, on the other ſide of it; from which diſtant about three miles and a half. Both Towns remarkable for the Bridge built betwixt them by *Caligula*, compoſed of ſundry Veſſels joyned together in ſuch ſort, that there was not only fair and large paſſage over it, but Victualling houſes on both ſides of it: Over which Bridge thus made, he marched and remarched in triumphal Robes, as if not only the Earth, but the very Seas were made ſubject to him. And this he did (as himſelf afterwards affirmed to ſome of his friends) to awe the Ocean; and imitate (if not exceed) the like acts of *Xerxes* and *Darius*, mentioned in the ancient Writers; as alſo to terrifie the *Britains*, and the *German* Nations, with the report of ſuch a notable exploit; or (as ſome thought) to fulfil the Propheſie of one *Thraſibulus* a fortune-teller of thoſe times, who had been often heard to ſay in the life-time of *Tiberius* (his next immediate Predeceſſor) that it was as impoſſible for *Caius* to ſucced in the Empire, as it was for him to ride on Horſeback from *Baule* to *Puteoli*. 7 Not far hence, on a Semicircular Bay, ſtands the City of *Baiæ* (whereof *Baule* before mentioned is a part) ſo called, as they ſay, from *Baius*, one of the companions of *Ulyſſes* in his Navigations. A City in the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire of five miles in length, and two in breadth; ſo wonderfully endued by nature, and adorned by Art, that no place in the world was thought comparable to it:

Nullus in Orbe locus Baiis *prælucet amœnis.*

Few places in the world there are
With pleaſant *Baiæ* to compare. As it is in *Horace.*

A City beautified with magnificent Temples, multitudes of *Baths*, or *Bannia*'s Imperial Palaces, ſtately buildings, and the adjoyning Mannor-houſes of the principal *Romans*, whom the pleaſures of the place invited hither; and was indeed too great and ſenſible a monument of the laſciviouſneſs and luxury of that proſperous people, of which the *Ambubaiæ* mentioned in the *Satyriſt* is ſufficient proof; (though ſome fetch the *Etymologie* of the word far enough from *Rome*, deriving it from *Ambub*, a *Syrian* word ſignifying a Pipe, from whence the *Latins* give this name to their Minſtrels) now ſo demoliſhed by War, and devoured by Water, that there is nothing of it to be ſeen but ſome ſcattered ruins. 8 *Miſenus*, ſeated near a great Hill, or *Promontory* of the ſame name, at the foot whereof there is a large and capacious Harbour; where *Auguſtus* keeping one Navy, and another at *Ravenna* in the upper Sea, awed the whole *Roman* Empire. But theſe were places of renown in the former times; all which, excepting *Naples*, are now only known by what they have been, not by what they are. The principal Cities at this time, are (next to *Naples* it ſelf) *Seſſa*; the *Sinueſſa* or *Suiſſa* of the ancients, and now the title of a Dukedom to the houſe of *Cordova* in *Spain*, derived from *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, of whom more hereafter. 2 *Averſa*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence, ſecond to few in all the Kingdom; but forced to yield (though the Earl of *Monpenſier* then Vice-roy of the Realm for *Charles* the 8. were in perſon in it) to the good fortune of *Gonſalvo*, ſpoken of before: the whole Kingdom following ſhortly after. 3 *Ceano*, 4 *Sulvi*, 5 *Venafre*, and 6 *Caſerte*, with others, to the number of 22, beſides 166 Caſtles or defenſible places. Here is alſo in this Tract the Hill called *Gallicanum*, where *Annibal* that great Maſter in the Art of war, frighted that wary Captain *Fabius Maximus*, by the ſtratagem of two thouſand Oxen, carrying fire in their horns; by which device he freed himſelf out of thoſe difficult *Straights*, in which he was at that preſent. And in this Country there is alſo the Hill *Veſuvius*, that caſteth out flames of fire, the ſmoke of which ſtifled *Pliny ſenior*, coveting to ſearch the cauſe of it. The flame hereof brake forth cruelly alſo during the reign of *Titus*, caſting out not only ſuch ſtore of ſmoke, that the very Sun ſeemed to be in the *Eclipſe*, but alſo huge ſtones: and of aſhes ſuch plenty that *Rome*, *Africk*, and *Syria*, were even covered; and *Herculanum*, and *Pompeii*, two Cities in *Italy* were overwhelmed with them. There were heard diſmal noiſes all about the Province; and Giants of incredible bigneſs ſeen to ſtalk up and down, about the top and edges of the mountain; which extraordinary accident, either was a cauſe, or preſage of the future Peſtilence, which raged in *Rome* and *Italy* long after.

On the Eaſt ſide of this *Campania*, and properly (as anciently it was eſteemed) a part thereof, lieth that little Territory, which *Alfonſo* King of *Naples* cauſed to be called the *Principate*; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Calabria inferior*, or that part thereof which is called the *Baſilecate*; from which parted by the River *Silarus*. It extends 33 miles in length, and 10 in breadth: and was of old the Seat of the *Picentini*, a colony of the *Picenī* dwelling on the *Adriatick*. Principal places of it, 1 *Maſſa*, by the *Italians* called *Marſo*, of more note for the Hills adjoyning, than any great beauty or antiquity it hath in it ſelf. Thoſe hills now called *Monte Marſo*, but known to the *Romans* by the name of *Montes Maſſici*; of ſpecial eſtimation for the rich Wines, called *Vina Maſſica*. 2 *Nuceria* nine miles from the Sea, in a very plentiful and delicious ſoyl. 3 *Rivelli*, a City not long ſince built, which for the elegancy of the buildings hardly yields to *Naples*. 4. *Malfi*, or *Amalphi*, an Arch-biſhops See, in which it is ſuppoſed that the Mariners Compaſs was firſt found out. It is ſituate on the Sea-ſide, and giveth name to the coaſt of *Amalfe*, fenced with Hills or Mountains of ſo great an height, that to look down into the Vallies or the Sea adjoyning, makes men ſick and giddy. A Town of great note (were there nothing elſe to commend it to our obſervation) for the finding out of the *Mariners Compaſs*, (as before is ſaid) deviſed and contrived here about the year 1300. by one *John Flavio*, a native or inhabitant of it. 5 *Salerno*, about a mile from the Sea, the title of the Prince of *Salerno*, and an Univerſity, but chiefly for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, the Doctors of which wrote the Book called *Schola Salerni*, dedicated to a King of *England*: not to *K. Henry* the 8. as it is conceived, for then the Commentary on it, written by *Arnoldus Villanovanus*, (who lived about the year 1313) muſt needs have been before the Text. And therefore I conceive it dedicated either to King *Richard* the firſt, or King *Edward* the firſt, who in their journies towards the *Holy-Land*, might beſtow a viſit on this place, and give ſome honourary encouragement to the Students of it. Beſides theſe, there are ſaid to be in this ſmall Territory, fifteen other good Towns, and two hundred and thirteen Caſtles or walled places; but theſe the principal.

II. *North* of *Campania*, lyeth the Province now called *ABRVZZO*, bounded on the *Eaſt* with *Puglia*, or *Apulia*; on the *Weſt*, with *Marca Anconitana*; on the *North*, with the *Adriatick Sea*; and on the *South*, with the *Apennine*. It is called, *Aprutium* by the *Latins*, but the reaſon of the name not agreed upon: divided anciently between the *Picentes* and the *Samnites*: the *Picentes* taking up thoſe parts which lay next the *Adriatick*; the reſt (being far the greater part) was poſſeſſed by the *Samnites*. Theſe laſt (for of the others we ſhall ſpeak elſewhere)

a people which held longer wars with the States of *Rome*, than almost all *Italy* besides; as keeping them in continual action for the space of 70 yearys together, besides many after-claps. In which long course of Wars, the *Romans* were so hardly put to their shifts, that they were four times fain to have recourse to the last refuge; which was the chusing of *Dictators*; and yet came off so often with success and victory, that it afforded them the honour of thirty triumphs. But these *Samnites*, as they were a potent, so they were also a compound Nation; consisting of the *Ferentani*, *Caraceni*, *Peligni*, *Precatini*, *Vestini*, *Hirpini*, and *Samnites* properly so called; into which name the rest of the inferiour Tribes were after swallowed. The chief City of the whole was called *Samnium*, whence they had their name; which in the conclusion of the War was so defaced by *Papyrius* the *Roman* Consul, *ut hodie* Samnium *in ipso* Samnio *requiratur*; that not improperly (saith *Florus*) a man might ask where *Samnium* stood, even in the middle of the City. Which hapened *A. V. C.* 481.

The River of *Pescara* runneth through the midst of it, and divideth it into parts, whereof the one containeth 5 Cities, and 150 Castles, or walled places; the other, 184 Castles, and 4 Cities. The principal Cities of the whole, 1 *Arpinum*, once the chief Town of the *Arpinates*. and the Country of *M. Tullius Cicero*, that famous Orator, now a poor Village called *Arpino*. 2 *Beneventum*, heretofore called *Maleventum*, as we find in *Pliny*, because the Winds hereabouts were so fierce and violent, that men could not sit upon their Horses; but had at last that name of *Beneventum*, from the pleasant Plains and spacious Vallies, which ly round about it; in like manner as the Country of the old *Allobroges*, exchanged the name of *Malvoy*, into that of *Salvoy*. It was one of the four Dukedoms which the *Lombards* erected, when they first came into *Italy*, for the better assuring of their Conquest; and was given to the Church of *Rome* by the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, in exchange of a certain Tribute remitted by Pope *Leo* the Ninth to the Church of *Bamberg*, where the said Emperor was born; and is still under the command of the Popes of *Rome*. 3 *Aquila*, built by the Emperor *Frederick* the Second, King of *Naples*, to assure the Realm upon that Quarter. 4 *Lanciano*, four miles from the *Adriatick*, a Town of great Trade, and much resorted to by Merchants at her Annual Marts. 5 *Ortona*, the Port-town unto *Lanciana*. 6 *Teranum*, or *Teran* (*Ptolomy* calls it *Inter-amna*) anciently the *Metropolis* of the *Precatini*. 7 *Citta di Chiety*, situate on a Hill some seven miles from the Sea, heretofore known by the name of *Theate*. 8 *Aquino*, the Birth-place of *Thomas Aquinas* the great School-man, who first brought the scattered limbs of Popery into a body. Here stood also, 9 the old Town *Corfinium*, the chief City of the *Peligni*, made good a while by *Domitius Ænobarbus* against *Julius Cæsar*, in his first following after *Pompey*, then retired from *Rome*. And seven miles hence, to *Sulmo*, honoured with the birth of *Ovid*, that renowned Poet, as himself testifieth.

Sulmo *mihi patria est, gelidis uberrimus undis,*
Millia qui novies distat ab Urbe decem.

Full of cool streams *Sulmo*, my native Land,
From the great City ninety miles doth stand.

There belongeth also to *Abruzzo* the Country of *Molisi*, in which are 104 walled places or Castles, and four considerable Towns, the principal of which is *Bovianum*, or *Boiano*, now a Bishops See, in former times a Colony of the *Romans*, by *Pliny* called *Bovianum Undecumanorum* to difference it from another in this Tract, of the same name, which he calls *Bovianum vetus*. 2 *Luparetha*, of which little memorable. In this Country also (I mean *Abruzzo*) are the straights called *Furcæ Caudinæ*, in which when the *Samnites* and their confederates had so inclosed the *Romans*, that there was no possibility to escape, they sent to *Herennius*, a man for his Age much honoured, and for his wisdom much followed by them, to know what they should do with the captive Enemies. Word was returned, that they should send them home safe, and without dishonour. Thinking the old man had not been well informed of the state of the business, they sent to him again, and he advised, that they should put them all to the sword. These contrary answers made them judge amiss of the old mans brain; and therefore following their own fancies, they spoiled the *Romans*, and disarmed them, and despightfully used them, and so sent them home. Which when *Herennius* came to know, he much lamented the imprudence of so rash an action; but much more the destruction of this Country, as a consequent of it. Telling them, after their return, that had they given the *Romans* a safe and honourable deliverance from the present danger, they had made them their friend for many Ages; or had they put unto the sword so many of their Souldiers and chief Commanders, they had disabled them for long time from persuing the War: The middle course which they had taken would be their undoing; and so accordingly it proved. For the *Romans* not being made their friends by so odious a benefit, but hatching revenge for the disgrace, soon renewed the War; and under the conduct of *Papyrius* subdued the Country, and handled the poor conquered people with the like despight. An excellent Precedent unto Princes and those in power, how to proceed towards men of Quality and Rank, when they have them under; which must be, *either not to strike at all, or to strike home, and to the purpose*. *Nic. Machiavil*, in his *Florentine* History taxeth *Rinaldo* of *Albizi* for committing a great *Solœcism* in point of State, in that hating *Cosmo de Medices*, and desiring to remove him from his publick managery of affairs, he thought it was sufficient to procure his banishment: which *Cosmo*, afterwards returning, paid in better coyn. Whereupon he inferreth this notable *Aphorism*, that, *Great persons must not at all be touched, or if they be, must be made sure from taking Revenge*. Yet do I not interdict a Prince, or any supreme Governours, the use of *Mercy*. I know it is the richest Jewel which adorns the Crown. Nor dare I take upon me to direct the use of that excellent vertue. Only I shall observe what usage hath been commonly afforded towards such persons after their *Delinquencies*; whose liberty or life may create danger to the publick. The first is present Execution; for *Mortui non mordent*, as the saying is: a course more to be allowed of where it cannot, than commended where it may be spared. The second is either close imprisonment under trusty Guards, or else confinement to the house and custody of some trusty Statesman: in which great caution also is to be observed. For, besides that nothing is more ordinary than the escape of great Prisoners, either by corrupting or deceiving their Keepers; We find in our Histories, how Dr. *Morton* Bishop of *Ely*, being committed to the custody of the Duke of *Buckingham* by King *Richard* the 3. not only procured his own liberty, but brought about that Duke to the contrary faction. The last, which is in all times the gentlest, and in some cases the safest, is, not only an absolute pardon of life, and a grant of liberty; but an endearing of the party *delinquent*, by giving him some place of honour or committing unto his fidelity some office

office of truſt, it being the nature of moſt men, that where they are not truſted, they are never true; and that as long as they lie under ſuſpect and jealouſies, they will be apt to entertain ſome thoughts of their loſt condition. And of this kind of dealing with a perſon *Delinquent*, we have a pregnant inſtance in the Emperor *Otho*, who not only pardoned *Marius Celſus* one of *Galba*'s faction, and a chief one too, but put him in place neareſt to him, and made him one of his principal Leaders, in the following War againſt *Vitellius*. His reaſon was *Ne hoſtis metum reconciliationis adhiberet*, leſt lying aloof as a pardoned Enemy, he might conceive the breach were but bad made up. And on the other ſide, *Marius Celſus* proved ſo ſenſible of the obligation, that he continued faithful to him to the very laſt; and loſt his life in the purſuance of his quarrel: ſhewing thereby, that perſons of a generous and noble diſpoſition, are more obliged by favours, than reſtrained by terrour. But it is now time I ſhould free my ſelf of theſe *Furcæ Caudinæ*, and ſport my ſelf a while in the Plains of *Apulia*.

But I muſt note, before I take my leave hereof, that theſe two Provinces of *Campania* and *Abruzzo*, make up the greateſt, richeſt, and beſt peopled part of the Realm of *Naples*. And therefore when the Kingdom was divided between the *French* and the *Spaniards*, it was allotted to the *French*, as having the priority, both of claim and power. The Provinces remaining, although more in number, yet are not comparable to thoſe two for wealth and greatneſs, and were aſſigned over to the *Spaniards*, as lying moſt conveniently for the Realm of *Sicilie*.

III. *PVGLIA* is bounded on the Weſt, with *Abruzzo*; on the Eaſt, with *Terra di Otranto*; on the North, with the *Adriatick* Sea; on the South, with *Calabria*. It contains the whole Country called of old *Apulia*; from whence the *Puglia* of the *Italians* and the *Poville* of the *French* are to be derived.

The whole Country containeth in it beſides Villages and Towns unfortified, 126 Caſtles and walled places, with 13 Cities of good note. The moſt conſiderable of which we ſhall meet withal in our *Chorography* of the ſeveral paats, divided anciently by *Ptolemy*, and ſince him, by *Leander*; into *Apulia Daunia*, and *Apulia Peucetia*: the former ſubdivided into the *Capitanate*, and *Poville* the *Plain*; the latter into *Bari*, and the Land of *Otranto*. For that the Land of *Otranto*, (though now a Province of it ſelf) did ſometimes paſs in the accompt of *Apulia*; ſeems to me moſt probable, in that all the Eaſt parts of this Kingdom were held by the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperors (after the coming in of the *Lombards*) by no other names than thoſe of *Apulia*, and *Calabria*: and by no other names than thoſe were aſſigned over unto *Otho* the 2 of *Germany*, on his marriage with *Theophania*, Neece to one of thoſe Emperors. And I conceive that it was then laid unto *Apulia*, rather than to *Calabria*, firſt, in regard that the old inhabitants were the ſame in both; the *Iapyges*, *Meſſapians* and *Salentini*, poſſeſſing promiſcuouſly all this Tract from Mount *Garganus* in *Daunia*, to the Promontory called *Iapygium* in the moſt Eaſtern angle of the Land of *Otranto*. And ſecondly, in regard that the people of both, have a diſeaſe peculiar only to themſelves, occaſioned by the biting of a little Serpent called a Tarantula, not curable but by muſick only. This ſaid we will proceed in our Survey of the parts. And firſt,

APVLIA DAVNIA, is that part hereof which lieth next to *Abruzzo*, from which parted by the River *Phiternus* (now called *Fortore*) and ſo extending Eaſt-wards to the River *Aufidus* (*Lofonto*, the *Italians* call it) where it meets with *Peucetia*. The reaſon of the name is not yet agreed on. But I find no more probable conjecture of it, than that it ſhould be called thus of *Daunus*, the ſon of *Danae* by *Pilumnus*, once the King of this Country; it being reported in the Legends of thoſe elder times, that *Danae* being delivered of *Perſeus* whom ſhe had by *Jupiter*, was by her Father the King *Acriſius*, expoſed to the mercy of the Seas; by which ſhe was wafted with her young ſon to the coaſts of this Province, here taken up by a poor Fiſher, and by him carried to the Court, where the King became ſo enamoured on her, that he took her to Wife, and by her was Father to this *Daunus*. But *Daunus* had not long enjoyed it, on the death of his Father, when either by force or compoſition, he was fain to leave it to *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*: who at the end of the *Trojan* War, wherein he was principal Actor, hearing of the libidinous courſes of his Wife *Ægiale*, abhorred the thought of living with her; and ſo came with his people to this Country; where he fixt his dwelling, and built the City of *Argirypa*, whereof more anon. But as for *Daunus*, though he was not able to keep the poſſeſſion of this Country, yet he bequeathed his name unto it; and afterwards withdrawing into *Latium* with ſuch of his ſubjects as were willing to follow his Adventures, he became there the chief head of the *Rutuli*, and built among them the Town of *Ardea*, his chief ſeat at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*; betwixt whom and *Turnus* the ſon of this *Daunus*, grew that deadly feud, ſo celebrated in the Works of *Virgil*.

In this part hereof is the Lake of *Leſina*, ſo called from a City of that name adjoyning to it, made of the waters of *Phiternus*, and ſome other Rivers, which there loſe themſelves; in compaſs 40 miles, and well ſtored with Fiſh: the Eeles hereof the largeſt that have been ſeen. Another Lake called *Arduarius*, more memorable, though not ſo great, it being ſaid hereof by *Pliny*, that the waters of it are neither diminiſhed by draining, nor increaſed by Land-floods. Here is alſo the Mount *Garganus*, known by that name in *Virgil*, but now called St. *Angelo*, high, ſteep, and full of cragged Rocks: 20 miles in compaſs, but that extent diverſified into hills and moſt pleaſant vallies; well wooded, and well ſtored with waters: here being one Lake (beſides many others) called *Lacus Varanus*, ſaid to be 30 miles in circuit. A place defenſible by nature, and ſo ſtrong by art, that it is commonly the laſt piece in the Realm of *Naples*, which is given up to the Invader: as appears plainly by the keeping of it by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens* for many years, after the *Normans* had poſſeſſed themſelves of the reſt of the Kingdom.

The whole devided by *Alfonſo* (in his new modelling of this Kingdom) into two parts, the greateſt and moſt flouriſhing called *Pouille* the *Plain*, from the condition of the ſoil which is plain and level, not ſo much ſwelled with Hills as the reſt of *Apulia*: for which cauſe called *Puglia Piana* by the modern *Italian*. Interjected betwixt which and *Abruzzo*, lieth a ſmall Teritory, by the ſaid King *Alfonſo* called the *CAPITANATE*, deſtitute both of Woods and Rivers, and conſequently not ſo populous as the reſt of this Province: well furniſhed notwithſtanding with all ſorts of grain, and ſtored with large and ſpatious paſtures, which breed ſuch infinite herds of Cattel, that the Tribute thence ariſing was valued at 80000 Crowns *per annum* in the time of *Guicciardine*, and by him reckoned one of the beſt Revenues of the Realm of *Naples*. Of which Tribute when the *French* could receive no part, by reaſon that on the diviſion which they made with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* (ſpoken of before) this Territory as a part of *Apulia*, did belong to the

the *Spaniards*, they brake out into open War, pretending that the Country appertained to them, (as indeed it lay very near their part) and thereby gave a just occasion to the *Spaniards*, a more diligent nation, and more intent upon their work, to worm them by degrees out of all the kingdom.

Chief places of the whole *Daunia*, 1. *Luceria*, the *Nuceria* of *Ptolemy*, and the *Rudra* of *Suetonius*; as rich as it is ancient, and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. *Asculi*, of old called *Asculus*, and sometimes *Asculum Satrianum*, to difference it from another of that name in *Auconiana*; the stile and honour of a Duke. 3. *Troia*, a Duke's title also, built by the Eastern Emperors in a place of strength and great advantage to restrain the insolencies of the *Sarazens*, then infesting this Country. These three in that part of it which is called the *Capitanate*. Then in the other part called *Poville* the *Plain*. 4. *Sipontum* once a *Roman* Colony and an Archbishops See, which honour it enjoyed till destroyed by the *Sarazens*. 5. *Manfredonia*, founded near the place of the former, by *Manfred* the Bastard, King of *Naples*, the better to assure these parts of his Kingdom. A stately and magnificent City, the Seat of the Archbishop of *Siponto*; beautified with a capacious Harbour for receipt of Ships, and an impregnable Castle for defence thereof. 6. *Salpe* of great antiquity, but not else observabe. 7. *Severine* of a newer date, but more rich and populous. 8. As ancient and as famous as the best amongst them, the poor Village of *Cannæ*, situate near the mouth or influx of the River *Aufidus*; *ignobilis* Apuliæ *vicus*, as it is in *Florus*, but such as afterwards grew more notable for the great defeat which *Annibal* there gave to *Paulus Æmilius* and *Tarentinus Varro* the *Roman* Consuls, of whose Army he slew 42700 on the very place. Which victory had he husbanded as he might have done, he had utterly subverted the State of *Rome*: so that it was most tartly (as most truly) said by *Maharbel* General of his Horse, *Vincere scis* Annibal, *victoria uti nescis*; that he knew better how to get, then to use his victory. 9. But of most note in this part of *Apulia* was the Town *Argypia* or *Argyrippa* as some call founded it, by *Diomedes* in the skirts of Mount S. *Angelo* towards the Sea, and in that part of this Country, which then (or afterwards) was held by the *Iapyges*. Of which thus *Virgil* in the 11. of the *Æneids*.

Ille urbem Argyripam *patriæ de nomine Gentis*
Victor Gargani *condebat* Iapygis *arvis*,

And being Victor he a City builds
Near *Garganus* in the *Iapygian* fields,
And called it *Argyrippa*, by the name
Of some known place i'th Land from which he came.

By which we also may conclude, that it took this name with reference to some Town of *Etolia*, which was the native Country of *Diomedes*. For although I know that many of the ancient Writers suppose it to have been first called *Argos Hippium*, with relation to a famous City of that name in *Peloponnesus*, and after by contraction or corruption to be named *Argyrippam*; yet those words of *Patriæ de nomine gentis*, do perswade me otherwise; *Diomedes* having nothing to do in the Country of *Argolis*, where that City stood; nor in the whole Demy-Island of *Peloponnesus*, whereof *Argolis* was a part or Province. It was called also *Diomedia*, and *urbs Diomedis*, because of this foundation, and his Royal Seat, after his fixing in his Country; but at the last it came to be called *Aryp*, and by that name was known in the time of the *Roman* greatness. Now no where to be found but in the ruines of time, and the Records of Antiquity, unless it be in a poor Village called *Sarpy* where *Nigar* findeth it.

APVLIA PEVCETIA, extendeth from the Banks of the River *Aufidus* on the West, to the land of *Otranto* on the East. So called as some conceive from *Peucetius*; the Brother of *Oenotrus*; which may be probable enough, this being the first Country at which *Oenotrus* touched, when he came unto *Italy* with his people. *Bochartus* a great Enemy of all Traditions, will have it called *Peucetia*, ἀπὸ τῆς πεύκης, for that great quantity of Pitch which these Countries yield, as the word signifieth in the Greek. But whatsoever was the reason of the ancient name, that of the present is well known and agreed upon from *Bari* the chief City hereof, being now called *Barry*.

Places of most importance in it: 1. *Barri*, seated near the Sea, but without a Haven, yet seated in so rich a soyl, and so well inhabited, that it is a fair and wealthy City, and the chief of this part of *Apulia*, taking name from hence. 2. *Barlette*, by the modern *Latinists* calleth *Barulum*, situate in or near the place of the old *Canusium*; an Haven Town, and of so great importance, reckoned for one of the four strong holds of *Italy*, in these middle Ages; the other three being *Crema* in *Lombardie*, *Prato* in *Tuscani*, and *Fabrianum* now called *Fabiano* in *Anconitana*. 3. *Monopolis*, a Port-town also not very large, but of a neat elegant building, new built, and the title of a Marquess. 4. *Tranum*, an ancient City, and an Archbishops See, but at this time better built than peopled by reason of some defects in the Harbour upon which it standeth. These three last together with *Manfredonia* in the other *Apulia*, pawned by the Kings of *Naples* (when first invaded by the *French*) to the State of *Venice*: but recovered from them not long after by *Ferdinand* the Catholick, when possessed of that Kingdom. 5. *Bitonto*, an Archbishops See also, one of which was a notable stickler in the Council of *Trent*. 6. *Polignano*, on a rocky hill, the Honourary title of a Marquess, and a See Episcopal. 7. *Molfette*, which gives title to a Prince, but not else considerable. 8. *Vigilia*, now called *Bisigli* a Bishops See, situate near the *Adriatick* amongst craggy Rocks. 9. *Venosa*, a strong piece and of great importance; one of the last Towns which held good for the *French*, in the recovery of this Kingdom from *Charles*, the 8. The *Venusium* of the ancient *Romans*, and the Birth-place of *Horace*, hence called *Venusinus*. Nothing considerable of these people in point of story, but that confederating with *Tarentum* against the *Romans*, as the *Calabrians*, *Brutii*, and *Lucani* did; they were all forced to submit to the power of *Rome* at the end of the War, *A. V. C.* 481. *Papyrius Cursor* and *Sp. Carvilius* being the second time Consuls.

IV. *TERRA di OTRANTO*, as it is now called, was once the Eastern part of *Apulia Daunia*, unto which it joyneth, from which parted only by a line drawn from *Brundusium* to *Tarentum*, of which more anon. Thus called from *Otranto* the chief Town hereof, the seat and habitation in the elder times of the *Salentini*, the *Iapyges*, and the *Mesapiani*, and is accordingly intituled in ancient Authors by the several names of *Iapygia*, *Mesapia*, and *Salentina*. They were the last people of *Italy* which held out against *Rome*, and sunk immediately after the *Tarentini*, upon whose Fate they did depend, *An. V. C.* 487. *Junius Pera* and *Fabius Pictor*, the two Consuls then, triumphing for it. Of these three Nations the *Iapyges* were of greatest Fame or of greatest infamy. *Cretans* originally sent in quest of *Glaucus* the Son of *Minos*, whom when they could not finde, and durst not return without him, they fixed here their dwelling; *Iapyx* the Son of *Dedalus*, being their Captain and conductor; and from him denominated.

Growing into estate and power, they became not only so luxurious in their course of life, and effeminate in their dress and habit, that they were a scorn and scandal to the neighbour Nations; but so regardless of their gods, that in the end they threw down all their Images, and destroyed their Temples: punished at last for these high insolences by balls of fire falling on them from the heavens, with which the whole stock of them were almost extirpated. The Promontory called *Iapygium*, being the extreme point of this Country towards *Greece*, now better known by the name of the *Cape* of St. *Mary*, did take name from this people; and from thence the North-west wind (or the West-north-west) which the *Latines* generally call *Caurus*, frequently blowing from this coast, had the name of *Iapyx*, occurring by that name in the 8. of *Æneids*, and in *Horace*, *Carm. l.* 1. *Ode.* 4.

But to proceed: this Country is invironed on all parts, with the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas, saving where it joyneth to *Apulia* by an *Isthmus* of about 30 miles in bredth; reaching from *Brundusium* in the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, to *Tarentum* on the Gulf or Bay thence named in the *Ionian* Sea. And is from land to land, as you go by water, about 200 miles in compass. The soyl hereof is very fruitful if well manured, abounding in Corn, Oyl Melons, Citrons, Saffron, and other commodities of good price; for which they never want the company of the Merchants of *Genoa*. They are many times much endangered by *Grasshoppers*, which commonly devour all whersoever they come, and would in one night consume whole fields of standing corn, if divine Providence by sending the Birds called *Gaines* amongst them, did not provide a remedy for so great a mischief. The greatest defect hereof is the want of waters, and therefore probably enough may be the *Siticulosa Apulia*; spoken of by *Horace*; which notwithstanding, they have very rich pastures. The people are conceived to be the simplest or most void of craft, of any in *Italy*; perhaps because they have so little commerce with their own Countrymen, and so much with strangers.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Lecci*, *Aletium* in Latine, a rich Town well built, and very well peopled. 2. *Castro*, a Sea Town, but not well fenced by Art or Nature, which hath made it very often a prey to the *Turks*. 3. *Gallipolis*, a Town built on so craggy a Rock, that it is conceived to be unconquerable. 4. *Brundusium*, the head Town of the *Saletini*, once glorying in the most capacious Haven of all the world; from whence there was continual passage into *Dalmatia*, *Epirus*, *Macedon*, and the rest of *Greece*. Here was it that *Pompey* took Ship to fly from *Cæsar*, and *Cæsar* took Shipping also to pursue after him: when to encourage the Pilot who was afraid of the storm, he cryed out, *Cæsarem vehis & fortunam ejus*. It was first built by the *Ætolians*, under the conduct of one *Diomedes*, and called *Brontesion*, which in the *Messapian* Tongue signifieth the horn or head of a Stag, which it much resembleth: from whence the *Latines* give it the name of *Brundusium*. At this day it is but a mean Town, the Haven of it being so choaked, that a Gally can very hardly enter. 5. *Hydruntum*, a very antient Town, and yet still reasonably well peopled, having a strong Castle upon a Rock for its defence, and a capacious Port for Traffick; the principal at the present of all the Province, which is therefore called *Terra Hydruntina*, by our modern *Latinists*. It is now called *Otranto*, and is a place of such importance, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* the Great, *Anno* 1481. put all *Italy* into such a fear, that *Rome* was quite abandoned. Not well inhabited again, till the expulsion of the *Turks* in the year next following.

Pass we on next to the two *Calabriaes*, so called from the *Calabri* an ancient people of this Tract, inhabiting that Part hereof which formerly had been called *Magna Grecia*, now *Calabria Superior*, with a part of the Country of the *Salentini*, lying on the Northern side of the Gulf of *Tarento*, now called by the name of *Otranto*. But the *Greek* Emperors being possessed of these parts of *Italy*, when the more Western parts thereof were under the *Goths* and *Lombards*, extended the name of *Calabria*, as far as to the Strait of *Messana*, taking the Country of the *Brutii*, now *Calabria inferior*, into the accompt: and making but two Provinces of their whole Estate which was left in this Continent by the names of *Apulia* and *Calabria*: of which, *Apulia* conteined all the Country on the coast of the *Adriatick*, from *Abruzzo* to the extreme point or Promontory in the land of *Otranto*, called antiently *Iapygium*, now the cape of St. *Mary*; *Calabria*, all the rest of these parts of *Italy*, which lye between the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Bay of *Tarentum*. So that the antient *Calabria*, was but part of this; and of that *Ennius* the old Poet was a Native, as is affirmed by *Ovid* in his 3 *de Arte*.

Ennius emeruit Calabris in montibus hortos.

Old *Ennius* his Garden tills
Among the steep *Calabrian* Hills.

Now called the *Basilicate*, and reckoned as a member of the lower *Calabria*.

But leaving these matters of remote Antiquity, let us behold the Country as it standeth at the present; divided of late times into *Inferior* and *Superior*, in which distinct capacities we shall look upon it. Premising only by the way, that this Country is the title of the eldest Son of the Kings of *Naples*; who were from hence called the Dukes of *Calabria*; and that, before it was subjected to these Kings, it had a King of its own; *Holofernes*, whose daughter *Flora* was marryed unto *Godfrey* of *Bovillon*, being King, hereof, *An.* 1098.

V. *CALABRIA SUPERIOR*, called formerly *Magna Græcia*, from many great and famous Cities founded there by the *Grecians*, hath on the East the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea; on the West *Lucania*, from which it is divided by the *Apennine*, and the River *Crathis*; on the North, *Sinus Tarentinus*, or the Gulf of *Tarento*; and on the South and South-East, *Calabria inferior*, and *Golfo di Squillacy*, of old called *Sinus Scilleticus*. The principal Cities at this time are, 1. *Belcastro*, eight miles from the Sea, where once stood *Petilia*. 2. *Besignan*, the title of a Prince, fortified with a very strong Castle and endowed with the best Revenues of any principality or other Noble-man of Title in all the Kingdom. 3. *Macera*, an Archbishops See, a rich Town, and well peopled. 4. *Rosanum*, three miles from the Sea, a well fortified City, and situate in a very fruitful and pleasant Soil. 5. *Altavilla*, which gives title also to a Prince. 6. *Terra Nova*, given with the Title of Duke to *Gonsalvo Fernandes de Cordova*, commonly called the *great Captain*, as a reward of his signal service in the conquest of the Realm of *Naples*: and still enjoyed (together with the title of Duke of *Sessa*) by the house of *Cordova*.

As for the chief Cities of the Greeks in the former times, they were *Locris* founded by the *Locrians*, a people of *Achaia*. Here lived the Law-maker *Saleucus*, who ordering Adultery to be punished with the loss of both eyes, was compelled to execute the Law on his own Son, as the first offender. Therefort to shew the love of a Father, and the sincerity of a judge, he put out one of his Sons eye, and

and one of his own. He also provided in his Laws that no Woman should be attended in the street with more than one Maid, but when she was drunk; that she should not go abroad at night, but when she went to play the Harlot; that she should not wear Gold or Imbroidered apparel, but when she mean to set her self to open sale; and that men should not wear Rings and Tissues, but when they went about the prostituting of some Woman; and many others of this mould. By means whereof both men and women were restrained from all extraodinary Trains of Attendants, and excess of Apparrel; the common consequents of a long and prosperous tranquillity. It was also famous in old times for the victory which *Eunomus* an excellent *Musician* obtained against *Aristonus* of *Rhegium*, another of the same profession. For though *Aristonus* had made his prayers to *Apollo* the god of *Musick* for his good success; yet *Eunomus* plainly told him, that Nature was against them in this contention, which had made all the Grathoppers mute on that side the water And so accordingly it happened. For when the day appointed came, *Eunomus* had the ill hap to break one of his Harpstrings, even in the middle of his Musick; when presently a *Grashopper* leaped upon his Harp, and supplied most melodiously the place of the broken string; and by that means obtained the victory to *Eunomus*. An accident not unworthy of the *Muse* of *Strada*, in his personating of the Poet *Claudian*. And though I bind not any man to believe this Tale (though of *Strabo*'s telling) yet there are very good Authors for thus much thereof, that on the one side of the River *Alax*, which parteth *Locris* from *Rhegium*, the Grashoppers do merrily sing; but on the other side, which is that towards *Rhegium*, they are always silent. 2. *Tarentum*, a Town of no less note, situate on the Bay called *Sinus Tarentinus*; first built by the *Spartans*: the people whereof having a great command on the Country adjoyning, were one of the last *Italian* Nations taken in by the *Romans*. *Nam quis post* Tarentinos *auderet*: For who durst stir when once the *Tarentines* were vanquished? saith the Historian. For in the ruin of this Estate, the *Apulians*, *Lucani*, *Brutii*, and the neighbouring *Calabrians* being all confederate together in defence thereof, were brought under the command and power of *Rome*, *A.U.C.* 578. all which (from the beginning of the *Tarentine* war some nine years before) were either a free people, or in a kind of subjection to this mighty City; but never felt the force of the *Roman* puissance. So that the War began but *A. U.C.* 472. and ended in the total subjection of these several Nations, *An.* 482. *Papyrius Cursor*, and *Sp. Carvilius* being then the second time Consuls, as before was said. In the defence of this people did *Pyrrhus* War against the *Romans*, the hope of getting this place by *Annibal*, was the loss of *Capua*: finally here lived *Archytas* so famous for his flying Dove. 3. *Crotona*, the Inhabitants whereof were once so active, that at one *Olympick* meeting the *Victors* were all of this one Town. Their glory much decayed in a Battel against the *Locrians*, in which one hundred and twenty thousand of them and their Confederates, were vanquished by fifteen thousand of the enemy. 4. *Amyclæ*, a Town inhabited formerly by *Pythagoras*, who having been often terrified with a false report of the approach of their Enemies, published a Law prohibiting all such reports. By which means, their Enemies coming unawars possessed themselves of it. Hence grew the proverb *Amyclas silentium perdidit*; and hence that notable saying of *Lucilius*, who being commanded to be silent, returned this answer *Mihi necesse est loqui, scio enim* Amyclas *silentio periisse*: 5. *Sybaris*, a City built by the *Græcians* after the destruction of *Troy*; the people whereof were Lords of 25 good Towns, and could Arm 30000 men. A people so effeminate, that they permitted no Smith nor Brazier, no not so much as a Cock to live among them, because they would not have their sleeps disturbed: but the Fidlers, and Musitians were in high request, which advantage the *Crotonians* taking, (with whom then in hostility) they entred the Town in the habit of Musitians, and so mastered it. Before which accident there had been a Prophesie, that the Town should never be taken, till men were more esteemed then the Gods themselves. It hapened that a slave being grievously beaten by his Master, and obtaining no pardon for the Gods sake, upon whom he called, fled to the monument of some of his Masters Ancestors, and was pardoned by him; which coming to the ears of *Amyris* the Philosopher, he forsook the Town, most men holding him mad in a time of no danger to leave so delicate a seat: whence came the Proverb, *Amyris insanit*, applyed to such as under the pretence of madness or folly do provide for their safety.

VI. *CALABRIA INFERIOR* is bounded on the North with *Calabria superior*, from which parted by the River *Crathis*, and a branch of the *Apennine*; on the South with the *Tyrrhenian* Sea, and the Strait of *Messana*; on the West with that part of *Campania* which is called the Principate: and on the East with a part of the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Sea. It was anciently the habitation of the *Brutii*, whom the *Greek* Writers generally call *Bretti*; and their Country *Bretania*; upon which ground, some of our modern Criticks (envying so great an honour to the Isle of *Great Britain*) have transferred to this Province the birth of *Constantine*, the first *Christian* Emperour. These *Brutii* being first conquered by the *Romans*, with the rest of *Italy*, after the defeat of *Cannæ*, took part with *Carthage*, and was for a long time the retreat of *Annibal*, whom the *Romans* had shut up in this corner. A Country not much short in fruitfulnels of the rest of the Kingdom; and having the advantage of so much Sea, is the better situate for Traffick. At one extremity hereof, is the Promontory called by *Ptolemy*, *Leuco Petra*, now *Labo di Spartimento*; all along which, especially in the month of *May*, are taken great store of *Tunnies* (a Fish which much resembleth mans flesh) which being barrelled up are sold to Mariners. Here are two Rivers also of a very strange nature; of which the one called *Crathis*, makes a mans hair yellow, and dyeth Silk white; the other named *Busentus*, causeth both hair and Silk to be black and swarthy.

The Principal Cities of it are, 1. *Consentia*, an ancient Town, comprehending seven little Hills, and a Castle on the top of one of them, which commandeth both the Town and Country adjoyning. It is built betwixt the said two Rivers, and is still reasonable rich, though not so wealthy now as in former times. 2. *Rhegium*, or *Rhezo*, on the Sea shore, opposite to *Messana* in the Isle of *Sicily*, which is supposed to have broken off from the rest of *Italy*, and that this Town had the name of *Rhegium* from the *Greek* word ῥήγνυμι, which signifieth to break off, or to tear asunder. A Town in former times very well Traded, but left delolate in a manner since the year 1594. when it was fired by the *Turks*. 3. *Castrovillare*, seated upon the top of a very high Mountain, 4. *Belmont*, and 5. *Altamont*, two very fair Towns, whose names sufficiently express their pleasant and lofty situations. 6. St. *Euphemie*, from whence the Bay which anciently was called *Sinus Lametinus*, or *Lameticus*, is now called *Golfo de* St. *Euphemie*. 7. *Nicastro*, three miles from the Sea, the same with *Newcastle* in *English*.

On the West side of this *Calabria*, and properly a part thereof, but reaching to the North as far as *Apulia*, standeth that mountainous Country, which in the subdivision of these Provinces by King *Alfonsus*, was called the *BASILICATE*; anciently the seat of the *Lucani*, and therefore called *Lucania* by the elder *Latinists*. Divided from the *Principate*, or West parts of *Campania*, by the River *Silarus*. A Country heretofore very unsafe for Travellers, by reason of the difficult ways, and assured company of Thieves, but now reduced to better order. It containeth in it 93 walled places, and nine Towns or Cities, the chief whereof are, *Possidonia*, or *Pest*, a City situate in so clement and benign a soil, that Roses grow there thrice a year. 2. *Polycastro*, on the Sea-shore, as the former is, honoured with the title of a Dukedom. And *Dian* or *Diamum*, a more midland City, near which there is a Valley 20 miles in length, and four miles in breadth; which for all manner of delights, and fruitfulness, yields to none in *Naples*.

VII. The *ISLES* of *NAPLES* are either in the *Adriatick*, and *Tuscan* Seas, or in the Bay of *Puteoli*. In the *Adriatick* Sea, are the Islands of *Diomedes*, right against *Apulia*, where it encountereth with *Abruzzo*: so called from *Diomedes* King of *Ætolia*, who after the end of the *Trojan* War, (in which he was so great a stickler) setled himself in some part of *Apulia*; the principal whereof are, St. *Maries*, St. *Dominico*, and *Tremitana*. 2. The Island of *Acates*, over against the Town of *Gallipolis*. 3. St. *Andrews*, in the Bay of *Tarentum*. 4. And finally, the two Islands of *Dioscoros* and *Calypso*, over against the Cape of *Lacinia*, now called *Colonnes*, in the upper *Calabria*. Of all which there is little famous. In the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas, are the Islands of *Pontia* and *Panditaria* (now called *Palmarde*) as little famous as the other; save that the last is memorable in the *Roman* Stories, for the confinement of *Agrippina* the wife of *Germanicus*, and mother of *Caligula*, by the appointment of the Emperor *Tiberius Nero*.

Those in the *Gulf* or Bay of *Puteoli* are of better note. The principal whereof are 1. *Ischia*, heretofore called *Oenotris*, from its plenty of Wine, wherewith it aboundeth to this day; as also with Allom, Sulphur and most excellent Fruits. It is in compass 18 miles, and so begirt with Rocks and dangerous Cliffs, that it is accessible at one entrance only, and that too fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel: and therefore chosen by King *Ferdinand* for his place of refuge, when he was outed of his kingdom by *Charles* the 8. Here is also good plenty of Hares and Conies. 2. *Prochita*, now called *Procita*, about six miles in circuit, wherein are very wholsom Baths, good store of Conies Hares, and Pheasants; the shore replenished with Fish, and the land with Fountains. *John de Prochitis* who plotted the *Sicilian Vespers*, was once Lord of this place; but afterwards for a reward of that service, made *Vice-Roy* of *Valentia*, a Kingdom of *Spain*. 3. *Capreæ*, a small rocky Island having no Haven, nor convenient station for Ships, but of a mild and temperate Air; much beautified by *Augustus Cæsar*, in regard that an old sapless Tree upon his casual landing here, did bud forth afresh. After that, it was much honoured by his retirement from affairs of State; and as much dishonoured by *Tiberius* his next Successor, who withdrawing hither many times from his Court at *Rome*, made it the Theater of his Cruelties, and most filthy Lusts. It hath a little City of the same name, having a fortress, and a Bishops See; and another Town called *Anacapræ*, inhabited by Fishermen, and Ship-wrights belonging to the Navy of *Naples*. Into this Island they used to confine offenders in former times, and sometimes also at this day. 4. *Ænaria*, a small Island given by *Augustus* to the *Neapolitans* in exchange for *Capreæ*, whose before it was.

There are few Nations under the Sun, who have suffered under more changes and alterations of State, than the Inhabitants of this Kingdom. For being at the first a mixture of several Nations, some of them preyed upon the others, till they were all subdued (as hath been shewed before) by the power of *Rome*. In the declining of her fortunes, they followed for the most part the *Carthaginians*, and took part with *Annibal*; and he being called home, they returned again to their old obedience. When *Italy* was subdued by the *Goths*, it became subject to that people, as *Sicil*, and the rest of those Islands did; and when the *Lombars* Lorded it in the *Roman* Provinces, all *Naples* fell into their hands, except *Apulia* and *Calabria*; which the *Greek* Emperors having conquered from the *Goths* with the rest of *Italy*, kept (but with much difficulty) to themselves. In the division of the Empire betwixt *Carolus Magnus* and *Irene*, these two last Provinces only were assigned to the *Constantinopolitans*; the rest to *Charles*, and his Successors: both outed of their several parts by the prevailing *Sarazens*, under the conduct of *Sabba*, and other successive Generals. These partly dispossessed by the Emperor *Otho* the first, and his *Almain* forces; challenging a right herein, as King of *Italy*; that right confirmed and enlarged by the marriage of *Otho* the 2. with *Theophania*, Neece to *Nicephorus Phocas* the Eastern Emperor, who brought *Apulia* and *Calabria* for her Dower or Portion. But long the *Germans* had not held it, when they were again expelled by the *Greeks* and *Sarazens*, joyning together against them as a common Enemy; who afterwards held bitter wars against one another, for the sole command. During these wars, it hapned that one *Drangot* a Gentleman of *Normandy*, having in the presence of Duke *Robert* (the Father of *William* the Conqueror) slain one *Repostel*, a Gentleman of like quality; to avoid the justice of the Prince, and the practices of *Repostels* kindred, fled into this Country, attended by such of his followers, as either did depend upon his fortunes, or had been medlers in the Fray. Where being come, the Duke *Benevent*, Vicegerent to the Eastern Emperor, took them into pay. Their entertainment being bruited in *Normandy*, and a report raised withal, That the *Greeks* hearkned after men of valour and action; caused many private Gentlemen to pass over the *Alpes*, and there to hew themselves out a more prosperous fortune, than formerly they had enjoyed. The fortunate success of which last Adventurers, drew thither also *Tancred*, the Lord of *Hauteville*; who with his twelve sons came into *Apulia*, *An.* 1008. and in short time not only drave the *Sarazens* thence, but the *Grecians* also, as men that had broke Covenant with them in the division of the Booty. For *William* the son of *Tancred*, combining with *Melorco*, Governour of *Apulia* for the *Greek* Emperor, and with the Princes of *Capua* and *Salern*, men of power and honour, for the conquest of *Sicil* (which the *Sarazens* then wholly held) agreed amongst themselves to divide the places conquered by them into four equal parts; one, for each Adventurer. But when the *Sarazens* were driven out, *Melorco* having new supplies sent him out of *Greece*, seized on the possession of the whole Island in the Emperor's name. Which injury *William* commonly dissembled, till *Melorco's* Forces were dispersed, and then he suddenly set upon him; first took the City of *Melfi*, and after by degrees, most of the other Towns and places which the *Greeks* held in *Italy*: of which both he and his Successors kept possession by the Title of Dukes of *Calabria* only. Of these (though all of eminent vertue) there were two besides this *William*,

of

of special fame. 1. *Robert Guiscard*, the third son of *Tancred*, the most valiant Captain of his time, and chief establisher of the *Normans* power in *Italy*, to which he added in conclusion the Isle of *Sicil*, together with the City of *Naples* it self, and all the Lands which lie betwixt it and *Rome*. 1. *Bohemund* the eldest son of this *Robert*, who going with *Godfrey* of *Bovillon* and others of the Western *Christians* to the *Holy-Land*, was for his signal merit invested with the Kingdom of *Antioch*; inherited by his Children after his decease.

But to proceed: This *Guiscard* at his death, (but not without some wrong to the Children of his Brother *William*, whom he had dispossessed of all by the Pope's Authority) gave *Sicil*, with the Title of Earl, to his son *Rogero*; and his estates in *Italy*, to his other son *William*: who going to *Constantinople* to marry with the Emperor's daughter, was outed of his part by his brother *Roger*, made not long after, by the Pope the first King of this Family.

The Kings of *Naples* of the *Norman* Line.

1125 1 *Roger*, Earl of *Sicil*, created by Pope *Anacletus*, 2 King of both the *Sicilies*, at the town of *Benevent*; which City in requital of so great a favour, he restored again unto the Church; from which it had been taken (after the first Donation of it) by the *German* Emperors. 24.

1149 2 *William*, the son of *Roger*, who to assure himself of his Kingdoms, was content to take them as a gift from the hands of Pope *Adrian* the 4. to be holden for ever in Fee of the Church of *Rome*. 21.

1170 3 *William*, II. son of the former *William*, who left a daughter called *Constance*, who became a Nun. 26.

1196 4 *Tancred*, the base son of *William* the 2. excluded his Sister from the Crown, but was sententially deposed by Pope *Celestine* the 3. who had an aim to get the Kingdom for himself. But when he saw that *Tancred* was too strong for him, out of meer spight to be defeated of his purpose, he called in the *Germans*, the ancient enemies of his See; and gave the Lady *Constance*, then almost fifty years of age, in marriage unto *Henry* the 6. 2.

The *German* Line.

1198 5 *Henry*, the sixth of that name, Emperor, and Duke of *Schwaben*, succeeded on his marriage with the Lady *Constance*. 4.

1202 6 *Frederick*, son of the Emperor *Henry* and Queen *Constance*, crowned at the age of three years, afterwards Emperor by the name of *Frederick* the 2. He had to wife the daughter of *John di Bren*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, of which the Kings of *Naples* have ever since had the Title of Kings; and in the rights of this Kingdom, the Kings of *Spain*.

1250 7 *Conrade*, the son of *Frederick*, King of *Naples* and *Sicil*, as also Emperor and Duke of *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*; poysoned (as it was conceived) by his base brother *Manfred*. 4.

1254 8 *Manfroy* of *Manfred*, base son of *Frederick*, and Duke of *Benevent*, first governed the Kingdom as Protector unto *Conradine*, the son of *Conrade*; but after took it to himself against the will of Pope *Urban* the 4. who being weary of the *Germans*, called in *Charles* Duke of *Anjou*, and the Earl of *Provence*, brother to *Lewis* the 10 of *France*: It being usual with the Popes (as *Machiavel* very well observeth) to call new men into *Italy*, and stir up new Wars for their own ambition; not suffering any to possess that long which themselves (through their weakness) could not hold; and practising the overthrow of those very men, whom themselves had raised to power and greatness.

The *French* Line.

1261 9 *Charles*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, overcame King *Manfred*, and was after Crowned by Pope *Urbane* the 4. who conditioned with him, that neither he nor his Successors should assume the Empire; and that they should pay fifty thousand Crowns *per annum* as a Rent to the Church. This *Charles* did also vanquish *Conradine* the son of *Conrade*, the last of the Royal house of *Suevia*, whom he caused to beheaded at *Naples*. After which bloody Act, neither he nor any of his posterity, did either quietly or long enjoy these Kingdoms. For in his own time *Peter*, King of *Aragon*, claimed the Kingdom of *Naples*, in right of *Constance* his wife, the daughter of *Manfred*: betwixt whom and *Charles*, a single combat was appointed to be fought in *Bourdeaux*, before King *Edward* the first of *England*, to decide the Controversie. But whilst *Charles* there expected him, he seized on *Sicil Anno* 1281. This *Charles* reigned three and twenty years.

1284 10 *Charles* II. son of *Charles* the first, formerly prisoner in *Sicil* to *Peter* of *Aragon*, was ransomed by the procurement of King *Edward* above named for 30000 Marks. By *Mary*, daughter of *Stephen*, King of *Hungary*, he had fourteen Children: the most pertinent of which (to our purpose) were *Charles* surnamed *Martel*, King of *Hungary* in right of his Mother; *Robert* King of *Naples*; *John* of *Durazzo*; and a daughter (whose name I find not) married to *Charles*, Earl of *Valois*, who in her right obtained the Earldom of *Anjou*. 26.

1310 11 *Robert*, the second son of *Charles* the 2. 32.

1342 12 *Joane*, the Neece of *Robert* by his son *Charles*, first married *Andrew*, the second son of *Charles* King of *Hungary*, whom she hanged at her window for insufficiency; and for her second husband had *Lewis*, Prince of *Tarentum*, who over-straining himself to satisfie her carnal appetite, died. Her third husband was *James*, Prince of *Marjorca*, a gallant young Gentleman, whom she beheaded for lying with another woman. Her fourth, *Otho* of *Brunswick*, a tough Souldier, who had the good fortune to outlive her. She was twice driven out of her Kingdom by *Lewis* King of *Hungary*, brother of *Andrew* her first husband: restored the first time by the power of Pope *Clement* the sixth; but at the second time taken and hanged at the same window where she had hanged her first husband. But first, out of an hatred to her next heirs of the house of *Hungary*, she adopted *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, (descended

scended from *Charles* Earl of *Valois* spoken of before) for her heir and successor.

The *Hungarian* Line.

1371 13 *Charles* III. son to *Lewis*, and nephew of Prince *John* of *Durazzo* before mentioned, by the power of *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, and the favour of Pope *Urban* the fifth, was made King of *Naples*. He overthrew and killed in Battel Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*, his competitor, and after the death of King *Lewis* of *Hungary*, succeeded in that Kingdom also; but long he had not reigned therein, when poysoned (as it was supposed) by the old Queen Mother, to advance her daughter to that Throne. 15.

1386 14 *Ladislaus*, son of *Charles* the 3. having a quarrel with the Pope, made a voyage Royal unto *Rome*, where he forced his entry, and was there triumphantly received: on which displeasure the Pope called in *Lewis* the 2. Duke of *Anjou*, who gave *Ladislaus* a great overthrow. Insomuch, as *Ladislus* used to say, that if *Lewis* had followed his Victory the first day, he had been master of his Kingdom and Person too; if the second, of his Kingdom, but not of his Person: but not persuing it till the third day, he failed of both. So in the end he was compelled to fly to *Rome*, and give over the enterprise. 29.

1415 15 *Joane* II. Sister of *Ladislaus*, of as much levity, but not altogether of so ill a fame as the former *Joane*: observing the unprosperous successes of the house of *Anjou* she adopted for her heir, *Alphonso* the fifth of *Aragon*; who had some claim unto the Kingdom as the direct heir of *Pedro*, or *Peter* the 3. and *Constance* the daughter of King *Manford*, spoken of before. But finding him to stand too much on his own right, and to be too forwards in taking a possession of it, before her death; she revoked that Adoption, and made a new grant of that Estate to *Lewis* the fourth, Duke of *Anjou*, and after his decease to his brother *Rene*, or *Renatus*: both vanquished by the *Aragonians*.

The *Aragonian* Line.

1434 16 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, partly by Conquest, and partly by Adoption, having got the Kingdom; left it well settled unto *Ferdinand*, his natural son. 24.

1458 17 *Ferdinand*, the base son of *Alfonso* (the lawful sons inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, *Sicil*, &c.) succeeded in the Realm of *Naples*. 36.

1494 18 *Alfonso* II Son of *Ferdinand*, in whose time the *French* began to aim at the Realm of *Naples*. This King and his two Predecessors were of the Order of the Garter.

1494 19 *Ferdinand* II. Son of *Alfonso* the second, outed of his Estate and Kingdom by *Charles* the eighth, son of King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France*, whom *Rene* the last Duke of *Anjou* had made the sole Heir of all his Titles and Possessions. And though *Charles* upon his Conquest was solemnly Crowned, yet posting back again into *France* before he had setled his affairs in this Kingdom, and having much discontented the chief men of *Anjouvin* Faction; he lost it suddainly to the same *Ferdinand* from whom he had so suddainly won it.

1497 20 *Frederick* II. Brother of *Alfonso* the second, and Uncle of this last *Ferdinand*, succeeded him in his Estate; and was the sixth King that had reigned in *Naples* within the compass of three years: that is to say, *Ferdinand* the first, *Alfonso* the second, *Ferdinand* the second, *Charles* of *France*, the second *Ferdinand* again, and then this *Frederick*. Finding himself betrayed by the *Spaniards*, he submitted himself to *Lewis* the XII. King of *France*, and yielded up his Kingdom to him. And indeed what else could that poor Prince do, when he saw his own blood, and such as had taken his Realm into their protection, conspiring against him?

For when *Charles* made his passage towards *Naples*, *Ferdinand* the Catholick, sent *Gonsalvo*, (who was afterward for his valour surnamed the *Great Captain*) with some Forces to resist the *French* Invaders. But when the *French* were expelled, *Gonsolvo* would not leave the Country, because his Master had not as yet sent for him. In the mean time it was agreed betwen *Lewis* of *France*, and this *Ferdinand*, that they should jointly set upon the Kingdom of *Naples*: That having won it, the *French* should possess *Abruzzo*, and *Lavoro*; the *Spainards*, *Puglia*, and both *Calabrias*: That the first should be entituled King of *Naples*; the other, Duke of *Apulia*. This Confederacy was kept secret till the *French* Forces were come to *Rome*; and *Gonsolvo* possessed (under pretence of defending it) of all *Calabria*. So that it was no marvel that they made themselves Masters of the Country. An action in which the *French* dealt very unadvisedly, in bringing into *Italy* where he was before the sole *Moderator*, another King as great as himself; to whom as to his *Rival*, his enemies might have recourse on all occasions; and the *Spaniard* as unnaturally, in betraying for the moity of a Kingdom, a Prince of his own blood, under pretence and promise of succours. But the two Kings did not continue long in good terms of Partnership. For the *Spaniards* being more intent upon their advantages, soon picked a quarrel with the *French*, within two or three years drave them out of all, and to this day keep it; though both this *Lewis*, and his Successors *Francis* the first, and *Henry* the second, have divers times, and with great effusion of blood, attempted the recovery of it.

The *Spanish*, or *Castilian* Line.

1503 21 *Ferdinand* III. surnamed the *Catholick*, King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. and *Naples*. 13.

1516 22 *Charles* V. Emperor, King of *Spain*, and the IV. of that name in *Naples*. 43.

1558 23 *Philip* the 2. of *Spain*, and the first of *Naples*. 40.

1598 24 *Philip* II. of *Naples*, 3. of *Spain*. 22.

1621 25 *Philip* III. of *Naples*, 4. of *Spain*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, *Seme* of *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*, a File of three Labels, *Gules*.

The Revenues of it are two Millions and a half of Crowns; whereof 20000 are due to the Pope for Chief-Rent; and the rest so exhausted in maintaining Garrisons upon the Natives, and a strong Navy against the *Turks*, that the King of *Spain* receiveth not a fourth part *de claro*.

Here are in this Kingdom
Arch-Bishops 20. Bishops 127.

The

The Kingdom of SICILIA.

BEfore we can come into the Isle of *Sicily*, we must first cross that branch of the *MEDITERRANEAN* Sea, which is called the *Fare*, or Strait of *Messana*; where the passage is so strait and narrow, that it exceedeth not in breadth a mile and a half. In other parts, as the Sea grows wider, it is distant from the main land of *Italy* near 300 miles; that is to say, from the Town of *Drepanum* in *Sicily*, to the City of *Naples*. As for the *Mediterranean* Sea, it is so called because it interlaceth the midst of the earth; extending from the Straights of *Gibralter* on the West, to the Coast of *Palestine* on the East; and so dividing *Africk* both from *Europe*, and *Asia Minor*. In the Scriptures, *Josh.* 1. 4. it is called by the name of *Mare magnum*, or the *great Sea*: great in comparison of the *dead Sea*, and the Sea of *Galilee*, lying on the other side of the land of *Palestine*; but small enough if compared to the Ocean, with which in probability the Writer of that Book might have no acquaintance. Besides which general name of the *Mediterranean*, it hath also many particular names, as the *Adriatick*, *Ægean*, *Ionian*, and *Carpathian* Sea, where it bordereth upon *Greece*, and *Anatolia*; *Mare Lybicum*, where it runneth by the shores of *Africk*: with reference to *Italy* called in some parts *Mare Tyrrhenum*, in others *Mare Ligusticum*; in some parts *Mare Siculum*, and in others *Mare Sardoum*, *&c.* And as the *Cameleon* is said to apply it self to the colour of the neareſt adjacent body; so this Sea taketh its particular denominations from the neareſt shores. These Seas are also called by some modern Writers, in imitation of the *French*, by the name of the *Levant*, or the Seas of the *Levant*: because in respect of *France*, *Spain*, *Britain*, *Germany*, *&c.* they lie towards the East; the word *Levant* signifying in the *French*, a rising up, and more especially the Sun-rising. The principal Islands of this Sea which relate to *Italy* (for of others we shall speak in their proper places) are those of *Sicil*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica* and some Isles adjoyning unto these.

SICILY, environed round with the *lower* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea, contains seven hundred miles in compass; and is supposed to have been joyned to *Italy* in former times, being then a *Peninsula*, or Demy-Island, such as *Peloponnesus*; and joyned to the Continent by as narrow an *Isthmus*. The reason of that name we shall see anon.

The seperating of it from the main Land of *Italy*, is by the Poets ascribed to *Neptune*, who with his three-forked Mace, or *Trident*, broke it off from the land, in favour of *Focastus* the son of *Æolus*; that so he might inhabit there with the greater safety, being invironed round with waters. Which though it be a Fable or Poetical fiction, yet with some help from the *Mythologists*, may be made a story. For if by *Æolus*, and *Neptune*, we understand the Winds and Seas, it intimates that it was divided from the rest of *Italy*, either by the fury of the Waves, or by the violence of some Earthquakes, to which this Island is still subject, which might in time consume and wear away the Earth. Nor wants there very good reason for this supposition; as, 1. The narrowness of the Strait, exceeding not a mile and a half; insomuch as at the taking of *Messana* by the *Carthaginians* many of the people saved themselves by swimming over this Strait, into the opposite parts of *Italy*. 2. The shallowness of it, being found upon a diligent sounding, not to be above eight fadom deep. Then 'tis observed, that the land on both sides is very brittle, full of Caves and chinks made in it by the working of the Sea, on this seperation; and that on the *Italian* coast where the Strait is narrowest, there stands a City of old called *Rhegium*, which signifieth a breach or cutting off, from the *Greek* word Ῥήγνυμι, which signifies to break off, or violently to pull asunder; and is supposed to be so called upon this occasion. And indeed the violence of the Sea is so great and dangerous in this narrow Chanel, so subject unto blustering winds issuing out of the hollow caverns of the earth; that the breaking off of this Island from the rest of *Italy*, is a thing most credible. Which dangerous nature of the passage, being also full of Rocks, and unsafe by reason of the Whirl-pools occasioned it to be called by *Florus* the Historian, *Fabulosis infame monstris fretum*; chiefly so called with reference to *Scylla* and *Charybdis*, of which may fabulous things are reported by the ancient Poets. Of these, *Charybdis* is a Gulf or Whirl-pool on *Sicily* side, which violently attracting all Vessels that come too nigh it, devoureth them, and casteth up their wracks at the shore of *Tauromenium*, not far from *Catana*. Opposite to this in *Italy*, standeth the dangerous Rock *Scylla*, at the foot of which many little Rocks shoot out, on which the water strongly beating, making that noise, which the Poets feign to be the barking of Dogs. The passage between these two being, to unskilful Mariners exceeding perilous, gave beginning to the Proverb;

Incidit in Scyllam cupiens vitare Charybdim.

Who seeks *Charybdis* for to shun,
Doth oftentimes on *Scylla* run.

But there are other things which made *Sicily* famous in old times, besides these two, as *viz.* the punishment of the Giant *Enceladus*, for his attempt against the gods: the frequent burning of *Ætna* (under which he is fabled to be shut up) being supposed to proceed from his sulphurous breath. Secondly, the birth of *Ceres* in this Isle; and thirdly, the Rape of *Proserpine*. To these two last, the Isle was consecrated in those days; to *Ceres*, in regard she first taught the people to sow Corn, whence the word *Ceres* is often used in the Poets to signify *Bread*, and other necessary provisions for life, as *Sine Cerere & Bacchо friget Venus*; To *Proserpine*, because bestowed upon her by *Pluto*, to please her after the Ravishment committed on her.

It is situate under the fourth Climate, the longest day being 13 hours and an half. And was once called *Trinacria*, because it shoots forth into the Sea with three *Capes* or *Promontories*: *viz.* 1. *Pelorus*, now *Capo de Foro*, to the North; 2. *Pachinus*, now *Capo Passaro*, to the West; and 3. *Lilybæum*, now *Capo Boii*, or *Capo Caro*, to the South. This last looketh towards *Carthage*, and the shores of *Africk*, from which distant 180 miles. And of this *Strabo* doth affirm, that a man of quick and strong sight getting up into a Watch-tower that stood in this *Cape*, descryed a Fleet setting sail out of the Haven of *Carthage*; and told the *Lilybitanians* their bigness and number. That this is true, I dare not say: for besides the unlikelihood of kenning at so great a distance; we are taught by Philosophy, that the Sea being of an orbicular form, swelleth it self into the fashion of a round Turret or Hill, till it put bound to the eye-sight. From these three corners, this Country was (as we have said) called *Trinacris*, or *Trinacria*, according to that of *Ovid*.

Terra tribus scopulis vastum procurrit in æquor;
Trinacris à positu, nomen adepta, loci.

An

An Iſland with three corners braves the Main,
And thence the name of *Trinacris* doth gain.

The firſt Inhabitants that we find to have dwelt in this Country, are the huge Giants ſo often mentioned in the *Odyſſes* of the divine Poet *Homer*, called *Læſtrigones* and *Cyclopes*; of which laſt rank was the ſo much famouſed *Polyphemus*, who with ſo much humanity entertained *Ulyſſes*, and his companions. Theſe were afterward rooted out by the *Sicani*, a people of *Spain*, who called it *Sicania*. As for the name of *Sicilia*, ſome derives it from *Sicilens*, a ſuppoſed King of *Spain*, who is fabled to have conquered this Country. But the truth is, it came from the *Siculi*, who being by *Evander* and his *Arcadians* driven out of *Latium*, came into this Iſland: to which having maſtered the *Sicani*, and driven them from the Weſt and the Northern part, to the Eaſt and South they left their name. At their firſt landing they built the City of *Zancle*, called afterwards *Meſſana*, together with *Neæ*, *Hybla*, *Catana*, and *Leontium*. After them came another *Italian* people named the *Morgetes*, being driven thence by the *Oenotrians*; and ſate down in that part of the Iſland where ſtood the City of *Morgentum*, built by them at their firſt arrival. The firſt of all the *Greeks* who ſet footing in it (not to ſay any thing of the coming of *Minos* hither in the purſuit of *Dædalus*, having more in it of the Fiction than Hiſtorical truth) where the *Chalcidians*, a people of the Iſle *Eubœa*, now called *Negropont*; who built the City of *Naxos*; and after them *Architas* of *Corinth*, with his fellow adventurers, by whom *Syracuſe* was either firſt built, or very much beautified and repaired. Next them the *Rhodians* and *Cretans* ſent ſome Collonies hither, the firſt Founders of *Gela*; and after of the renowned City of *Agrigentum*: And not long after a new Plantation ſent from *Sparta* built *Heraclea*. The Citizens of *Megarus*, another ſtate of *Greece*, ſent a Colony alſo, who built *Selinus*. And did thoſe of *Meſſene* alſo, who taking the Town of *Zancle* from the *Siculi*, new built or beautified it, and gave unto it ſo repaired the name of *Miſſana*. Nor is it to be thought, that the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians*, being ſo great undertakers of publick buſineſs, and very powerful in ſhipping, would ſit ſtill, when ſo fair a booty did invite their induſtry: who ſeiſing on the *Promontories* of *Pachinus* and *Lilybæum*, and ſome of the adjoyning Iſlands; did fortifie them for the better ſecuring of the Trade which they had in *Sicily*. But all theſe ſeveral Adventurers having ſeveral intereſſes, joyned not together in the work of an abſoute Conqueſt; but planting themſelves only on the Sea-ſhores, altered not the name by which they found it called at their coming thither.

The people are ingenuous, eloquent and pleaſant, but withal very uncontant, and ſo full of talk, that from thence came the Proverb, *Gerra Siculæ*. They are alſo ſaid to be of a very envious, ſuſpitious, and diſtruſtful nature, uncapable of injuries, and vehement in purſuit of revenge, as appears by that great ſlaughter which they made of the *French*: yet withal courteous enough to ſtrangers, and *Paraſitical* enough to their ſuperiors. They have been famous heretofore for many notable inventions, *Ariſtotle* aſcribing to them the Art of *Oratory*, and firſt making of *Paſtoral Eclogues*, *Pliny* of Clocks (or rather of Hour-glaſſes; for Clocks were but a late invention, and that of the *Flemmings*) and *Plutarch* of Military Engines; which laſt were brought by *Archimedes* unto great perfection.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached here, by ſome of the Diſciples of St. *Peter*, whom he ſent hither at his firſt coming to *Rome*; of which *Pancratius* (whom we call commonly St. *Pancrace*) is ſaid to have been the firſt Biſhop of *Tauramenium*, and *Marſianus* of *Syracuſe*. They are now generally of the Religion authorized by the Popes of *Rome*; that of the *Greek* Church being rather connived at than allowed of; in the Communion whereof here are thought to be ten thouſand ſouls, but looked on by the reſt as *ſchiſmatical* people. For the moſt part they uſe the *Italian* Language, but very much altered, by the *Greek*, *Arabian*, *Norman*, *French* and *Spaniſh* tongues; to which Nations they have been ſeverally ſubject, ſince the time of the *Romans*. The total number of the people is thought to be about a Million and a half.

The ſoil is incredibly fruitful in Wine, Oyl, Honey, Minerals of Gold, Silver, and Allom, together with plenty of Salt and Sugar; which laſt commodity the Natives ſell in Canes unto the *Venetians*, and buy it again of them when it is refined; and thereby letting ſtrangers go away with the beſt part of their gains; as generally they do in all other Merchandize; which they permit to be exported, rather than put themſelves to the trouble of Trafficking abroad in Forain Nations. There are alſo Gems of *Agates*, and *Emralds*. It yieldeth alſo great ſtore of the richeſt Silks, which grow plentifully about *Meſſana*; variety of moſt excellent and delicious fruits, both for taſte and colour: with ſuch abundance of all ſorts of Grain, that it was called in old times *Horreum Romani populi*, or the Granary of the *Roman* Empire; and doth now furniſh ſome parts of *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Barbary*, beſides *Maltha*, and the adjacent Iſles, with that which ſhe can ſpare of her ſuperfluities. Nay, *Tully* doth not only call it the Granary and Store-houſe of the City of *Rome*, in regard of Corn, but adds that it was accounted for a well-furniſhed *Treaſury*; as being able of it ſelf without charge of the State, to cloath, maintain, and furniſh the greateſt Army, with Leather, Corn, and Apparel. And if *Diodorus Siculus* may be credited in it, he telleth us, that about *Leontium* and ſome other places, Wheat did grow of it ſelf, without any labour of the Husbandman. At this day in ſome parts of the Iſle, the ſoil is ſo exceeding fruitful, that it yields unto the Husbandman an hundred meaſures of Corn for one. And certainly the Corn of this Country muſt needs yield a wonderful increaſe, the King of *Spain* receiving an hundred thouſand Crowns yearly for the Cuſtom of Wheat. In this Country is the Hill *Hybla*, ſo famous for Bees and Honey; near which there was a City of the ſame name alſo, which afterwards was called *Megara*. And here is alſo the Hill *Ætna*, now called *Montgibel*, which continually ſendeth forth flames of Fire, to the aſtoniſhment of all beholders. The moſt famous Conflagrations in the former times were preſently before the breaking out of the War in *Sicil*, which the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum ſervile*, not pacified but by the ſlaughter of 70000 of the Slaves which had taken Arms againſt *Rome*; and ſhortly after the death of *Julius Cæſar*, portending thoſe proſcriptions and bloody Wars, which did after follow. And to this day ſuch extraordinary eruptions of it are accounted ominous. The Hill it ſelf is of that height, that it is ten miles from the top to the bottom, and may be eaſily diſcerned by Saillers at an hundred miles diſtance: the lower parts thereof being very fruitful, the middle ſhaded with Woods, and the top covered with Snow, a great part of the year, notwithſtanding the frequent vomiting of flames and cinders. But theſe eruptions of fire are not now ſo ordinary as they have been formerly; the matter which gave fuel to it being waſted by continual burnings: ſo that the flames which iſſue hence are hardly viſible but by night,

night, though the ſmoak ſhew it ſelf the moſt part of the day. And when it doth break out, which is commonly once in three or four years; it falleth in great flakes on the Vales adjoyning; to the deſtruction of the Vintage, and great loſs of the Country. But that, they ſay, is recompenſed by the plenty of the following years, the aſhes thereof ſo batling and enriching the ſoyl, that both the Vines and Corn-fields are much bettered by it. And this report I am the apter to believe, in regard we find by late experience here amongſt our ſelves, that the Turf taken from the ground and burnt to aſhes, and ſo ſpread on land and ploughed into it, doth yield a very great improvement, even to barren ſoyls. Which kind of Husbandry is called the *Devonſhiring* of land, becauſe there firſt uſed; but in *Hampſhire* it was called, as I remember (having been unfortunately too long a ſtranger there) by the name of *burning* and *beaking*. But to return again to *Ætna*, into this fiery Furnace the Philoſopher *Empedocles* caſt himſelf that he might be reputed a God.

——Deus immortalis haberi
Dum cupit Empedocles, ardentem frigidus Ætnam
Inſiluit——

as *Horace*, in his Book *de Arte Poetica*.

Empedocles to be a God deſires,
And caſts himſelf into th' *Ætnean* fires.

The reaſon of theſe fires is the abundance of Sulphur and Brimſtone, contained in the boſom of the Hill; which is blown by the wind, driving in at the chaps of the Earth as by a pair of bellows. Through theſe chinks alſo there is continually more fuel added to the fire, the very water adding to the force of it: as we ſee that water caſt on coals in the Smiths-Forge, doth make them burn more ardently. The reaſon of this flame is thus ſet down by *Ovid*.

Ipſa bitumineæ rapiunt incendia vires;
Lutoaq; exiguis ardeſcunt ſulphura flammis.
Atq; ubi terra cibos alimentaq; debita flammæ
Non dabit, abſumptis per longum viribus ævum,
Naturæq; ſuum nutrimen deerit edaci,
Nonferet Ætna famem, deſertaq; deſeret ignes.

A rozen mould theſe fiery flames begin,
And clayie brimſtone aids that fire within:
Yet when the ſlimy ſoyl conſumed, ſhall
Yield no more food to feed the fire withal,
And Nature ſhall reſtrain her nouriſhment,
The flame ſhall ceaſe hating all famiſhment.

Under this Hill ſome Poets feign the Giant *Enceladus* to have been buryed, as before is ſaid, whoſe hot breath fired the Mountain lying on his face. Others ſuppoſe it to be the Shop of *Vulcan*, and the *Cyclopes*; and the groſs Papiſts take it for the place of *Purgatory*; all alike unfallible.

The principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Taretta*, anciently called *Terias*. 2. *Himera*, neighboured by Mount *Hybla*, much famed for Honey. 3. *Iſaurus*. 4. *Hypſa*. 5. *Acaſus*, of great note for its precious Stones. None of them much obſervable for length or breadth, but that defect ſupplyed by the commodiouſneſs of Bays and Creeks, which are very frequent in this Iſland, and by the benefit of Fountains and freſh-water Lakes. Moſt memorable amongſt theſe, 1. The Lake called *Palicoro*, (now *Napthia*,) which for three months doth caſt forth water very hot, but of very ill ſmell; of which there is mention made in *Pliny*, by the name of *Ephimia*. 2. A Fountain neer the foot of *Ætna*, the water whereof is ſharp like *Vinegar*, and ſometimes boyleth; into which a piece of cloth caſt, being before ſteeped in water mixed with Gall, becomes ſuddenly black. 3. Another Fountain near *Drepanum*, the water of which, as ſoon as drunk, provoketh looſneſs. All which effects proceed from that ſulphureous and bituminous matter, of which the whole Iſland is exceeding full. 4. *Acethuſa*, of greater fame among the Ancients, than all the reſt; eſpecially in that the River *Alpheus* (a River of *Greece*) having ſwallowed up one hundred and forty leſſer ſtreams, and loſing it ſelf under the ground; is thought to empty it ſelf into it. The thing affirmed by *Seneca* and *Strabo* both; and ſeems to be ſufficiently proved, by the ſeveral inſtances of a wooden diſh or cup loſt in the River *Alpheus*, and found riſing up in this River; and by the leaves of certain trees growing on the banks of that *Greek* River, and ſwimming on this in great abundance; there being none of theſe trees in all *Sicil*. *Dicitur* Alpheus (ſaith *Mela*) *ſe non conſociare pelago; ſed ſubter maria, terraſq; depreſſus, huc agere alveum, atq; hicſe rurſus extollere.*

This Iſland is famous for the worthy Scholars ſhe once produced, *viz*. *Æſchylus*, the firſt *Tragedian* of fame; who being bald through age, once walked in the fields, where by chance an Eagle taking his bald pate for a white Rock, let a ſhellfiſh fall on it, of that bigneſs that it beat out his Brains. 2. *Diodorus Siculus*, that famous Hiſtorian. 3. *Empedocles* the firſt inventer of *Rhetorick*, and his fellow *Gorgias*. 4. *Euclide*, the textuary Geometrician, who taught in *Megara*. 5. *Archimedes*, a moſt worthy *Mathematician*, the firſt Author of the Sphere; of which inſtrument he made one of that art and bigneſs; that one ſtanding within, might eaſily perceive the ſeveral motions of every Celeſtial Orb. He made alſo divers military Engins, which in the ſiege of *Syracuſa* ſorely vexed the *Romans*, and was at laſt ſlain in his ſtudy by a common Souldier in the ſack of the Town, to the great grief of the General *Marcelus*. 6. *Epicharmus*, the firſt inventer of Comedies; and 7. *Theocritus*, the firſt Author of Paſtoral *Eclogues*. In the latter times, *Nicolas* Abbot of *Palermo*, a learned *Canoniſt*, and Cardinal of the Church of *Rome*, commonly called *Panormitanus*, was of greateſt fame.

In *Plinies* time there were reckoned in this Iſland ſeventy two Cities, of which only twelve are now remaining. The whole divided at this time into three ſmall Provinces, that is to ſay, 1. *Val de Noto*, 2. *Mazara*, and 3. *Mona*; to which the Iſles adjoyning may add a fourth.

1. *VALLIS de NOTO* taketh up the Eaſtern parts of the Iſland. The chief Cities of which are 1. *Syracuſa*, once the Metropolis of the whole Iſland, and a moſt flouriſhing Common-wealth: it was (as *Tully* reports) the greateſt and goodlieſt City of all that were poſſeſs'd by the *Greeks*; for ſituation very ſtrong; and of an excellent proſpect, from every entrance both by Sea and Land. The Port thereof which had the Sea on both ſides of it, was for the moſt part environed with beautiful buildings; and that part of it which was without the City, was on both ſides banked up, and ſuſtained with very fair Walls of Marble. Nor was it only the goodlieſt City of the *Greeks*, as *Tully* tells us, but one of the greateſt alſo in the World, as is ſaid by *Strabo*; by whom it is affirmed, that without the outmoſt wall thereof, (for it was environed with three Walls) it contained one hundred and eighty Furlongs in compaſs, which of our meaſure cometh to eighteen miles. It was compounded of four Towns made up into one, that is to ſay, *Inſula* (or the Iſle) *Acradine*, *Neapolis*, and *Tyche*, beſides the Fort called *Hexapla*, which commanded the reſt; the greatneſs of all which, the ruines and foundations of it do ſtill demonſtrate. It ſtandeth North of the Promontory

called *Pachinus*, and was built by *Architas* of *Corinth* about the time of *Jotham* King of *Judah*; who being for an unnatural Rape, committed on a young Gentleman, banished his Country, together with his friend and companion *Miscellus*; consulted with the Oracle at *Delphos*, how and in what place they should dispose of themselves. The Oracle demanding whether they most affected wealth, or health: *Miscellus* answered health, and *Architas* wealth; and thereupon the former was directed to settle himself at *Crotona* in *Italy*, and the other here. Nor did the Oracle deceive him in his expectation; this Town by reason of its beautiful and commodious Port, proving of greatest trade and wealth next to *Carthage* it self, in those times of the World. It was the custom of this Town, when any of the Citizens grew too potent, to write his name in an Olive-leaf; which being put into his hand, did without more ado condemn him to banishment for five years, and was called *Petalism*, from the *Greek* word Πέταλον, signifing a Leaf. Yet could not this device so well secure them in the possession of their so much desired Freedom, but that this City fell oftner into the power of Tyrants, than any one City in the World. That which is now remaining of it is the work of *Augustus*, who after a second destruction of it in the time of *Pompey*, sent a Colony hither, and built upon the *Isle* and the parts near unto it. But now the whole Isle (*Ortygia* the Ancients called it) is taken up with a very strong Castle; the whole City also being very well walled, and held by a Garrison of *Spaniards*. 2. *Noto*, which gives name to this whole Division. A City which heretofore contended with *Syracuse* in point of Greatness: situate on a very high Rock, unaccessible on all sides but by one narrow passage; and having under the Cape of *Passari* a very fair and capacious Harbour, the Key of *Sicil* on that side. 3. *Augusta*, situate on the shore also, and of so large a Haven that it could never be fortified. 4. *Castro Giovanni*, a Town of about four thousand Families, situate in a wholsom air, and a fruitful soil, which they hold to be the very Navel and exact middle of the Island. It is also much prized for Mines of most excellent Salt. 5. *Lentini*, famous for its Lake, whose fishing is farmed for eighteen thousand Crowns yearly: It was anciently called *Leontium*, and stood somewhat North of *Syracusa*; with which continually in War, either to preserve their own Liberties, or get the Soveraignty of the other. 6. *Enna*, a midland Town, whence *Pluto* is said to have ravished *Proserpine*: In after-times the dwelling of that *Syrus Ennus*, who stirred up the *Roman* slaves against their Lords; and having broke open the common Prisons, and received all such as came unto him, patched up an Army of forty thousand. This War the *Roman* Writers call *Bellum Servile*, ended at last but with no small difficulty, by the valour and good fortune of *P. Rupilius*.

2. *MAZARA* containeth all the West parts of the Island. The chief Cities thereof, 1. *Agrigentum*, now called *Gergenti*, famous for *Phalaris* the Tyrant, and his torturing *Perillus* in a Brazen Bull, which he had made for the destruction and torture of others. Of which aptly *Ovid*,

——Nec enim lex justior ulla est,
Quam necis Artifices arte perire sua.

Most just it is, a man should be tormented
With that, which first his cruel Wit invented.

It was said anciently of the people of this City, that *they built as if they should never die, and ate as if they were sure to live no longer*. 2. *Palermo*, anciently called *Panormus*, and then a Colony of the *Phœnicians*; now the chief City of *Sicil*, and the Seat of the *Spanish* Vice-roy. Situate on the West Cape of the Island looking towards *Sardinia*, beautified with large Streets, delicate buildings, strong walls, and magnificent Temples. It hath no natural Port appertaining to it, (*Drepanum* serving anciently as the Port thereof) but of late there is an Haven forced out by a mighty *Pierre*; a work of vast expence, and worthy of the greatness of *Rome*. It is also an Archbishops See, and an University. 3. *Monreal*, commonly called *Morreal*, famous for the Church, the Archbishops See. It is called in *Latine*, *Mons Regalis*. 4. *Drepanum*, now called *Trapani*, situate on a Promontory thrusting into the Sea, not far from that of *Lilybæum*, a Town well fortified, in regard of the ill Neighbour-hood of the *Moors*, who do often pillage on these coasts; and having the command of a very fair Port. The Inhabitants of this place are said to be the best Seamen of *Sicil*. 5. *Mazara*, which gives name unto all this Vale, situate South of *Lilybæum*, and not far from *Selinus*. 6. *Eryx*, situate on a Mountain over-looking the Sea, said by the Ancients to have took this name from *Eryx* the Son of *Venus*, slain here by *Hercules*: memorable in those elder times for being the Seat of K. *Aceste*s, who so kindly entertained *Æneas*, and his wandring *Trojans*; and a magnificent Temple, in which *Venus* was worshipped, who from thence was called *Erycina*; as, *Sive tu mavis, Erycina videris*, in the Poet *Horace*. This was the last Town which the *Carthaginians* held in *Sicil*. On the surrendry whereof by *Amilcar* the Father of *Annibal*; at the end of the first *Punick* War, it was conditioned by the *Romans*, amongst other things that the *Carthaginians* should relinquish all the Claim or Title which they had to any part of this Island; which thereby fell unto the *Romans* (the State of *Syracusa* excepted only.) Who, whatsoever colour they were pleased to put upon that action, were principally tempted to it by ambition and covetousness. And therefore in my mind *Florus* states it rightly, who saith, that it was undertaken *Specie quidem juvandi Socios, re autem sollicitante Præda*; *i. e.* under pretence of aiding the *Mamertines*, who had put themselves into their protection, but in plain terms to get possession of the Island which lay fit for *Italy*. Now and long since a ruine only, the place on which it stood being called *Mount St. Julian*. 7. *Segesta*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Eryx*, near unto which the *Trojan* Ladies weary of their many long and dangerous voyages, and fearing to go again to Sea, burnt the Fleet of *Æneas*, on which occation it was built. Peopled at first by such of the more old and feeble *Trojans*, (*Longævosque senes, & fessas æquore matres*, as the Poet hath it) who chose rather to fix their dwelling here, than to follow the fortunes of *Æneas*, in his quest of *Italy*. Called then *Acesta*, in honour of King *Aceste*s spoken of before, part of whose Kingdom it was made; afterwards *Egesta* from *Ægestus* one of *Trojan* race, born here, by whom it was repaired and beautified; and at last *Segesta*.

3. *MONA* lieth on the North-East of the Island, opposite unto *Valis de Noto*. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nicosia*, in the mid-land. 2. *Milase*, on the Northern Promontory. 3. *Messana*, a City of great strength and beauty just opposite to *Rhezo* in *Italy*. It was the first Town which the *Romans* had in this Island, being put into their hands by the *Mamertines*, a Troop of Souldiers brought thither out of *Campania* for the defence of the City; who finding themselves too strong for the *Citizens*, made themselves Masters of the place; but being withal too weak to hold it, chose rather to surrender it to the *Romans*, than to its true and proper Owners. Hence the beginning of the first War betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. A City it is at this time, of the most beautiful

beautiful building of any in *Sicil*; and peopled by the wealthieſt ſort both of Merchants and Gentlemen, who live here in great pleaſure (if not voluptuouſneſs) as having plenty of all neceſſary proviſions, Fruits of all kinds, delicious Wines, and Snow to moderate and qualifie the heats thereof, at cheaper rates than any elſewhere in the Country. On the Weſt ſide there ſtands a ſtrong Citadel, highly mounted, and well Garriſoned, which commands the Town: and not far off a very high Lanthorn where lights are kept burning all night long, for the direction of ſuch Mariners, as are to paſs thoſe dangerous Straits; which from this *Phare* or Watch-Tower, is called commonly the *Phare* of *Meſſana*. The Haven of this Town is the faireſt of *Sicil*, whoſe entrances are ſo ſtrongly ſconced and bulwarked, that the people let their Gates (in deriſion of the *Turks*) ſtand always open. It is alſo an Archbiſhops See. 4. *Catana*, ſo often vexed by *Dionyſius* the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*; more ancient than beautiful: ſeated on the North ſide of a great (but hollow) Bay, not eaſily approached by Ships, and therefore neither held by any Garriſon, nor much traded by Merchants; the riches of the place conſiſting principally in the fruitfulneſs of the ſoil, the habitation of many of the Gentry, and by being a ſmall Univerſity. It was once a Colony of the *Naxians*. And ſo was alſo *Tauromenium*, the 5. Town of note in this part of the Iſland, called ſometimes from its Founders *Naxos*, but now *Thermino*; a ruine only of what was in the former days: a place by nature of great ſtrength, but over-topped by *Syracuſa* and *Meſſana*, betwixt which it ſtandeth. It was in this part of the Country that the *Cyclopes* dwelt, there being three litte Rocky Iſlands (now not inhabited) not far from this Town, which for a long time were called *Cyclopum Scopuli*.

4. On the Weſt part of *Sicil* lye the *ÆOLIAN* or *Vulcanian* Iſlands, heretofore only ſeven, and all almoſt of equal bigneſs; now eleven in number. The firſt name derived from *Æolus*, once Lord of them, who being well skilled in divining from what coaſts the Winds would blow, (which he conjectured by the ſmoak aſcending from them) occaſioned the Poets to make him the God of the Winds. The other is derived from *Vulcan* the God of fire; by reaſon of the continual flames of fire from thence evaporating in thoſe elder days. But now the matter of thoſe flames being waſted in long tract of time, there is only one of them which burneth, now called *STOMBOLO*; by ſome Writers *Strongyle*, from the roundneſs of it. An Iſland of about ten miles compaſs, but ſuch as ſeems to be no other than a large round Mountain. Out of the top whereof iſſueth continually a flame like a burning *Beacon*, eaſily diſcernable far off, but at nights eſpecially: a place ſo full of horrour to the neighbouring Iſlanders, that they and many others of the *Romiſh Catholicks* conceive it to be Hell it ſelf. And yet in thoſe parts where the rage of the fire offendeth not, it is of a very fruitful ſoil, and apt for tillage.

2. But the faireſt and beſt-peopled of thoſe Iſlands, is that of *LIPARA*, ſome ten miles in circuit, (from whence the reſt are called the *Liparean* Iſles) ſo named from *Lipara* the chief Town, ſaid to be built in the time of *Joſiah* King of *Judah*; the See of a Biſhop, under the Archbiſhop of *Meſſana*. The Iſland generally fruitful, well furniſhed with *Allom*, *Sulphur*, and *Bitumen*; and with ſome hot medicinal Bathes, which are much frequented, and from thence called *Thermeſſa*, by the ancient Writers. It was formerly of ſo great wealth, that falling into the diſpleaſure of *Agathocles* (then the Tyrant of *Syracuſe*) they were able to buy their peace of him, at the ſum of one hundred Talents of Gold; which ſum they had no ſooner paid, but the Tyrant for a farewel, robbed their very Temples. Unproſperous in his Actions always after that adventure. Nor ſped it better with the *Turks*, who in the year 1544. laid the Country deſolate; in which condition it remained, till *Charles* the fifth repleniſhed it again with *Spaniards*, and fortified it very ſtrongly againſt all invaſions.

3. Not far off lieth another of theſe Iſlands, now called *FAFOGNANA*, or *Fauciana*, but anciently *Ægueſa*, conceived to be the ſame which *Livy* and *Florus* call *Ægates*; in which there is a fair and capacious Bay, able to receive the greateſt Navies; and near to which *Lutatius Catulus* the Conſul gave the *Carthaginians* their laſt blow at Sea, which drew along with it the ſurrender of *Eryx*, and the loſs of *Sicil*, *Dedyme*, *Ericoſe*, *Eunymos*, and *Phœniceſe*, four other of theſe Iſlands, but of leſſer note, I paſs over willingly; and make haſte to

4. *HIERO*, the ſeventh and laſt of theſe Iſlands of any conſideration, and the eighth in tale, called alſo *Vulcania*, in which *Vulcan* was worſhipped; ſaid to have firſt appeared above the water at ſuch time as *Scipio African* died. A barren, ſtony, and unhabited place, by reaſon of the fires which formerly have flamed ſo hideouſly (eſpecially in the year 1444.) that it made not only the reſt of theſe Iſlands, but all *Sicily* tremble. Near unto this Iſle was fought the firſt Naval fight betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. Before which time the *Romans* had never uſed the Seas, as being totally employed in the conqueſt of *Italy*; inſomuch that when they had built their Gallies, they were fain to exerciſe their men in rowing, by placing them on two Seats near the water with Oars in their hands. Which notwithſtanding, having deviſed an Engine like a grapling hook, they ſo faſtned the Adverſe Fleet unto them, that the whole fight ſeemed a Land-battel fought upon the Sea. The victory fell unto the *Romans*, *C. Duilius* the Conſul then commanding in chief; and honoured with the firſt *Naval Triumph* that was ever ſolemnized at *Rome*.

After this Iſland was once known to the *Greeks*, they ſent from all their chief Cities ſeveral Colonies, who planted in the Sea-coaſts of the Country, as before noted. But ſo as they never united themſelves in a body together, but had their ſeveral eſtates and particular ends; whereby they came to be devided into many factions, and at laſt made themſelves a prey to as many Tyrants. *Phalaris* lording it at *Agrigentum*, *Panætius* at *Leontium*, *Gelon* at *Syracuſe*, *Cleander* at *Gela*, and when one Faction grew too weak to reſiſt the other, they called in ſeveral Foreign Nations to abet their quarrel. For on this ground the *Carthaginians* were firſt called into *Sicily* by the *Meſſanians*, againſt the *Agrigentines*. And on the ſame was managed here a great part of the *Peloponneſian* Wars: the *Athenians* ſiding with the *Leontines*, and the *Spartans* with the *Syracuſans*: in which the whole power of *Athens* was broken by Sea and Land; and their two Generals *Nicias* and *Demoſthenes*, murdered in priſon. But becauſe *Syracuſe* was a City of the greateſt Authority, and of greateſt influence over the reſt of *Sicily*, we ſhall more punctually inſiſt on the State-affairs thereof. The Government of which at firſt was popular, as it was in moſt of the *Greek* Colonies, according to the platforms which they brought from home; and was but newly altered to the *Ariſtocratical*, when *Gelon* made himſelf King of it, about 26. years after the expulſion of the *Tarquins* at *Rome*; whom with as many as ſucceded in the Royal dignity, take along as followeth.

The Tyrants, or Kings of *Syracuſe*.

A. M.

3465 1 *Gelon* the Prince or Lord of *Gela* taking advantage of the quarrels in *Syracuſa*, betwixt the

Magistrates and people, made himself Master of the City; and was chosen King. A valiant and prudent Prince, by whom 150000 *Carthaginians* were slain in battel, for their first welcome into *Sicil.* 7.

3472 2 *Hiero*, the Brother of *Gelon*, a valiant King also, but a rude and covetous man, whereby he lost the love of his people. 11.

3484 3 *Thrasibulus*, Brother of *Hiero*, whose Government proved so cruel and unsupportable, that it held not above 10 Months; who being forced into Exile by the *Syracusans*, the people did a while enjoy their liberty; but withal fell into those Factions, which after 60 years made them lose it again.

3544 4 *Dionysius*, that so famous Tyrant, from being General of the Forces of the *Syracusans*, made himself their King: A man of great vices, but great vertues withal. He brought almost all *Sicily* under his obedience, and the Town of *Rhegium* in *Italy*; reigning in all 38 years.

3582 5 *Dionysius* II. succeeding his Father in his Kingdom and vices, but not in valour or wisdom, was first outed by *Dion* a noble Gentleman of *Syracuse*; and afterward taken Prisoner by *Timolean* of *Corinth*, to which City he was sent, and there died in Exile.

3635 6 *Agathocles*, by trade a Potter, after that a Souldier; 20 years after the death of *Timoleon*, made himself King of *Syracuse*. To draw the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicil*, he passed over into *Africk*, and besieged *Carthage*; which example *Scipio* after followed, but with better fortune. 29.

3681 7 *Hiero* II. of a Commander of their Armies chosen King of *Syracuse*, by a Party which he had made amongst them. In his time brake out the first *Punick* War, the *Romans* being called in by the *Mamertines*, who held *Messana* against the *Carthaginians*; the Lords at that time of the greatest part of the Island. 56.

3737 8 *Hieronymus*, the Son of *Hiero*, after whose death *Syracuse* and all *Sicil* became subject to *Rome*, by the fortunate conduct of *Marcellus*.

Of these eight Kings, the six first commonly pass under the name of *Tyrants*; from whence and from some others of like disposition, who lorded it over the rest of the free Cities of *Sicil*, the name of *Siculi Tyranni* grew into a Proverb. But of all none more hated than the two *Dionysii*, who were so odious, that there were continual execrations poured on them; only one old Woman praying for the life of the latter. Who being asked the cause made answer, that she knew his Father to have been a monstrous and wicked Tyrant; on whom when the curses of the people have prevailed, and obtained his death; this his Son succeeded, worse by far then he; for whose life she was resolved to pray, lest after his death the Devil himself should come amongst them. But to proceed: after these *Tyrants*, as they called them, were rooted out, and the Island was conquered by *Marcellus*, it always followed the fortune of the *Roman* Empire; till in the partition of that Empire, it fell together with *Apulia* and *Calabria*, into the power of the *Greeks*. In the declining of whose greatness, this Island having been miserably pilled and spoiled by the Emperour *Constans*, *An.* 669. became a prey to the *Saracens*; from them recovered again by the help of the *Normans*, who held both this and the Realm of *Naples*, in Fee of the Church, under the title of Kings of both *Sicils*. From that time forwards it ran the fortune of that Kingdom, subject unto the Princes of the *Norman* and *German* Lines; till the death of *Conrade*, no interruption intervening. After whose death when *Manfroy* or *Manfrede*, the base Son of the Emperour *Frederick*, and Brother of *Conrade*, had forcibly made himself King of these Countries; it was offered to *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother to *Henry* the third of *England*: a Prince of such riches, that he was able to dispend an hundred Marks *per diem*, for ten years together; which according to the Standard of those times, was no small sum. But the conditions which the Pope proposed were so impossible for the Earl to perform, that his Agent told him, he might as well say to his Master, *I will give thee the Moon; catch, climb up, and take it.* The Earl refusing it, it was offered the King for his second Son *Edmund*, who was invested by the gift of a Ring, and money coined in his name by the Popes appointment, with the inscription of *Aimundus Rex Siciliæ.* But the King not being able to pursue the business, because then overburthened by his Barons Wars, and the Pope having sucked no small store of Treasure from him; it was, in the year 1261. given unto *Charles*, Earl of *Province* and *Anjou*, Brother to *Lewis* the 10. Under him those Countries jointly continued subject till the year 1281. in which his Competitor, *Peter* of *Aragon*, claiming it in right of his Wife, Daughter of *Manfroy* before mentioned, promising him to fight a single combat before our K. *Edward* the first, at *Bourdeaux*, fail'd of his Word; and in the mean time so contrived it, that at the sound of a Bell tolling to prayers, all the *French men* in *Sicily* were cruelly massacred. This exploit is known now under the name of *Vesperi Siculi*, and was managed by *John de Procbita*, a Gentleman of the Realm of *Naples*, whom *Charles* had dispossessed of the Isle of *Procbita*, whereof he had been formerly Lord; and not content to do him such a piece of injustice, added a further insolency to it, in the forcing his Wife. Provoked with these two injuries, the abused Gentleman plots with King *Pedro* of *Aragon*, to make him Master of the Isle of *Sicily*, where he had very good intelligences; and where the *French* by reason of their Lusts and Insolencies had so exasperated the Natives; that they were capable enough of any such impressions, as a man sharing with him in his sufferings, could imprint upon them. According to the compact made, *Don Pedro* riggeth out his Navy, under pretence of some exploit against the *Moors*, and anchoreth in the Port of *Sardinia*, there to expect how well the Tragedy would be acted; which fell out so agreeably to his expectation, that in one instant as it were, on the signal given, the *French* were universally murthered in all parts of the Island: the people being so enraged, that they would not spare women great with Child, if supposed it to have been got by any of that hated Nation: and *Pedro* coming in with his Navy as the deed was done, was by the general consent of all sorts of people, crowned King of *Sicily*. A bloody policy, I confess, which as the Actors learned of the *English Saxons*, who had made like riddance of the *Danes*; so did they teach it to the *French*, who practised it on the *Hugonots* of *France* in that horrid Massacre of *Paris*, *An.* 1572. An Act which so provoked the Pope, that he solemnly accursed the King, and caused many of the neighbouring Princes to Arm against him. But the Fox fared never the worse for that: who did so order his affairs, that he did both clear his own Country of those enemies which on the Popes curse had come in against him; and setled *Sicily* more firmly in obedience to him. Since which time this Island hath belonged to the house of *Aragon*, but not always in possession of the Kings thereof, being a while governed as a State apart by its own Kings, whose succession followeth.

Kings

Kings of *Sicily* of the House of *Aragon*.

1281 1 *Pedro*, or *Peter* the first, King of *Aragon* by birth, of *Sicily* in right of his wife, the choice of the people, and the Legacy of *Coradine* (the last of the Royal line of *Suevia*) but principally by the power of the Sword.

1285 2 *James*, the second Son of *Pedro*, King of *Sicily*; after the death of his Brother *Alfonsus*, succeeded in *Aragon*, to which Crown he added the Isle of *Sardinia*.

1291 3 *Frederick*, the Brother of *James*, on his Brothers taking the Crown of *Aragon*, got possession of *Sicily*. By *Frederick Alfonso*, a younger Son of this *Frederick*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* came into this Family.

1336 4 *Peter*, or *Pedro* II. Son of *Frederick*.

1342 5 *Frederick* II.

6 *Peter* or *Pedro* III.

7 *Lewis*, Son to *Peter* III.

8 *Frederick* III. in the life of *Lewis* his Brother called Duke of *Athens*; after his death succeeded in the Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1389 9 *Martin*, Son to *Martin* the first, King of *Aragon*, succeeded in the right of his Wife *Blanch*, Daughter of *Frederick* the third; and dying without issue, gave the Kingdom unto *Martin* his Father.

1409 10 *Martin* II. of *Sicily* and the first of *Aragon*, of which last he was King by birth, and of the former by the gift of his Son. After which time the Isle of *Sicily* being again united to the Crown of *Aragon*, was never separated from it; except it were when *John* King of *Aragon* gave it to *Ferdinand* his Son, the better to fit him for the bed of *Isabel* Princess of *Castile*, with whom the match was then in treaty; and when the Emperor *Charles* the fifth gave it, with *Naples*, unto *Philip* his eldest Son, on his marriage with *Mary* Queen of *England*, who thereupon was stiled King of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Hierusalem*. But this held only for a year; his Father shortly after resigning to him all his Kingdoms, whereby it became joyned to *Spain* again.

The Revenues of this Kingdom are by some said to be but 800000, but as others say, a million of Ducats, most of which is again disbursed on the entertainment of the *Vice-Roy*, and the defence of the Island. The Arms are, *Or*, four Pallets *Gules* (being those of *Aragon*) betwixt two Flanches *Argent*, charged with as many Eagles *Sable*, beaked *Gules*, which was the bearing of *Monfroy* King of *Naples*, and *Sicil*, spoken of before, who gave those Arms with reference to his descent from the *German* Emperors.

This Island for the number of its Nobility compares with *Naples*, as having in the time of *Ortelius*, 80 years ago, 7 Princes, 4 Dukes, 13 Marquesses, 14 Earls, 1 Vicount, 48 Barons: Men of authority and power in their several Territories, and therefore not permitted to live much in the Island, the greatest part of their time being spent in the Court of *Spain*, but more to satisfie that King upon reason of State, than any affection of their own to so long an exile. And for the Government of the Church,

Here are

Archbishops 3. Bishops 9.

The Kingdom of SARDINIA.

THE Island and Kingdom of *SARDINIA* lieth West from *Sicily*; from the nearest point whereof called Cape *Boii*, or Cape *Coro*, it is distant about 200 miles. It is in length 180 miles, 90 in breadth, 560 in the circuit; and is situate under the 4. *Climate*, the longest day being 14 hours.

In the time of *Aristotle* it was called *Ichnusa*, next *Sandaliotis*, from the resemblance which it hath to a man's Shoo or Sandal; and finally *Sardinia* from *Sardus* the Son of *Hercules*, who coming out of *Africk* possessed the same. For this there is sufficient authority amongst the Ancients. Of the first names saith *Pliny* in as plain tearms as may be, that *Timæus* called *Sardinia Sandaliotis*, and *Myrsilus*, *Ichnusa*, from the similitude which it hath to the Shoo-sole, or impression of a man's foot on the ground; *Sardiniam Timæus* Sandaliotin *appellavit ab effigie solea*; *Myrsilus*, Ichnusam *à similitudine vestigii*. And for the last nothing can be more plain than that of *Pausanias*, who tells that the first who came by shipping into *Sardinia*, were certain *Africans* under the conduct of *Sardus* the Son of *Maceris*, whom the *Egyptians* called by the name of *Hercules*; who coming into this Island then called *Ichnusa*, τὸ ὄνομα ἀπὸ σῦ Σάρδου τότε μεταβαλὸν ἡ νῆσος, caused it after his own name to be called *Sardinia*. For further evidence whereof, the people in the *Latin* tongue are called *Sardi*; the adjoyning Sea, *Mare Sardonum*. And to this name it was so constant, that no following Plantations from other Countries were ever able to alter it. Some Companies of *Attica*, led by *Iolaus*, came and setled here, where they built *Olbion*, and *Agrillis*: leaving a memory of *Iolaus* their Captain in some places, which remained in the time of *Pausanias*, called *Iolaia*; and taking to themselves for his sake the name of *Iolatenses*. And after the destruction of *Troy*, some of that scattered Nation came and planted in some void parts of the Island; kept to themselves the name of *Ilienses*, and by the name are mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Livy*. But neither of these Nations did attempt the change of the name, because not of ability to suppress or out power the Natives. Nor could the *Carthaginians* do it, though a more puissant Nation than the former were; and such as by the nearness of their habitation (*Sardinia* being distant but 160 miles from *Africk*) had all advantages to make (as at last they did) a full Conquest of it; building therein the Cities of *Charmis*, *Chalaris*, and *Sulchi*; and holding it until it was unjustly extorted from them by the *Romans*, at the end of the first *Punick* War; at what time *Carthage* was in danger to be ruined by the revolt of her own *Mercenaries*, and so not able to resist.

But of the name and first Plantations of this Island we have said enough. Let us now look upon the place; in which it is reported that there is neither Wolf nor Serpent, neither venomous nor hurtful Beast, but the Fox only; and a little Creature like a Spider which will by no means endure the light of the Sun, except held by violence. Some Pools it hath, and those very plentiful of Fish; but generally so destitute of River-water, that they are fain to keep the Rain which falls in Winter, for their use in Summer. By means whereof, and for that there is no passage for the Northern winds, being obstructed by the high Mountains near Cape *Langodera*, the air is generally unhealthy, if not pestilential; Insomuch that *Tully* writing to his Brother *Quintus* being then in this Island, adviseth him to remember, as a point of health, that he was in *Sardinia*; and speaking of *Tigellius*,

Tigellius a *Sardinian* born, ſaith of him, that he was more peſtilent than the Country which bred him.

The ſoil is very fertile in reſpect of *Corſica*, but barren if compared with *Sicil*; which yet may rather be imputed to the want of good manuring in the Husbandman, than any natural defect in the Soil it ſelf. Well ſtored with all ſorts of Cattel, as appears plainly by that plenty of Cheeſe and Hides which are ſent hence yearly into *Italy* and other places. The Horſes hereof, hot, headſtrong, and hard to be broken, but will laſt long. The Bullocks naturally amble, ſo that the Country-man rideth them as familiarly as they do in *Spain* on Mules and Aſſes. Here is alſo the Beaſt called *Muſrones*, or *Muſcriones*, found in *Corſica* alſo, but in no other part of *Europe*; ſomewhat reſembling a Stag, but of ſo ſtrong an hide, that it is uſed by the *Italians* inſtead of Armor: Of the skin of which carried to *Cordova* in *Spain*, and there dreſſed, is made the right *Cordovan* Leather. Finally, here is an Herb, of which if one eat, it is ſaid he will die with laughter; whence came the Proverb, *Riſus Sardonicus*. The truth of which report I ſhall not diſpute, though it be by others more probably conjectured, that the Herb being of a poyſonous nature, cauſeth men to die with ſuch a Convulſion or attraction of Sinews, that they ſeem to grin, or laugh at the time of their death.

The people are ſmall of ſtature, of complexion inclining unto ſwarthineſs, and that either by reaſon of the heat of the Sun, or more probably from their *African* extraction: their behaviour much participating of that people alſo. So ſlothful in the times of the *Romans*, that they were grown into a Proverb, and a Law made to compel them to work; but now eſteemed a very painful and laborious Nation. Much given to hunting, and ſo prone to Rebellion that the *Spaniard* permitteth no Cutler to live among them; yet peaceabe among themſelves, and in ſome meaſure courteous unto Strangers alſo. Their Language a corrupt *Catalonian*; their diet on meats common and groſs; their apparel in the Towns (eſpecially that of the women) gorgeous, in the Villages ſordid.

In matters of Religion they are little curious. That which they make moſt ſhew of, is according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*; which both their Neighbourhood to the Pope, and their ſubjection to the *Spaniard*, have impoſed upon them. But in their practice of it they are looſe enough, going to *Maſs* on Sundays and Saints days; which done they fall a dancing in the midſt of the *Church*, ſinging in the mean time ſongs too immodeſt for an Ale-houſe. Nay, it is thought that their Clergy it ſelf is the moſt rude, ignorant, and illiterate of any people in Chriſtendom; ſaying their Maſſes rather by rote, than reaſon, and utterly unable to give any accompt of their Religion.

It is divided commonly into two parts, *viz.* Cape *Lugudori*, towards *Corſica*; and Cape *Cagliari*, towards *Africk*: the firſt the leaſt, and withal mountainous and barren; the laſt the larger, level, and by much more fruitful. Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Calaris*, firſt built by the *Carthaginians*, and ſituate in that point of the Iſland which lieth neareſt to *Africk*; which from hence took the name of Cape *Cagliari*, by which it is at this day called. A City of ſuch fame, when it was firſt taken by *Gracchus*, for the uſe of the *Romans*, that it is called by *Florus*, *Urbs urbium*; and was deſtroyed by the ſaid *Gracchus*, the better to diſable the Natives from rebelling againſt the Conquerors. Being new built again in more ſetled times, it was a ſecond time deſtroyed by the *Saracens*; and finally re-built and beautified by the *Piſans*, at ſuch time as they were Maſters of this part of the Iſland. Very well fortified by Nature, as ſeated on the top of an Hill; and hath under it a ſpacious and goodly Haven, much frequented by Merchants. The Town it ſelf adorned with a beautiful Temple, being the See of an Archbiſhop, many fair Turrets, and the conſtant reſidence of the Vice-roy: from whoſe authority it is exempt by eſpecial priviledg, as to the Legal Government of it; and ordered by a Common-Council of its own Citizens. 2. *Boſſa*, on the Weſt ſide of the Iſland, another Arch-Epiſcopal See. 3. *S. Reparata*, on the North, looking towards *Corſica*. 4. *Aquilaſtro*, on the Weſtern ſhores. 5. *Saſſari*, a Town of conſequence, where they have an *Aquæduct* twelve miles long reaching from thence unto *S. Gavius*. *Alghes-Boſa*, a good Town ſituate in a wholſom air, and a fertile ſoil, and having a fair Haven of ſix miles in length, in which the Ships of *Genoa* and *Catalonia* do moſt commonly ride. 7. *Oreſtagne*, a large Town but very ill peopled, by reaſon of a bad air which proceeds from the Fens; the Country about which gives title to the Marqueſs of *Oreſtagne*. 8. *Turrita*, once a *Roman* Colony, now little better then a ruine; yet giving title to the third Archbiſhop of this Iſland, who is called in Latin, *Turritanus*. Here are alſo in divers parts of this Iſland the remainders of ſundry Towers and Forts which the people call *Noracks* from *Nora*, one of the Sons of *Geryon*; who (as they think) came into this Country, and built the firſt dwelling or manſion in it. And this Tradition of the Vulgar hath ſo much in it of Hiſtorical and undoubted truth, that certain Colonies from *Spain* came and planted here, under the conduct of one *Nora*; ſomewhat before the expedition of the *Attick* under *Iolaus*, as *Pauſanias* teſtifieth.

This Iſland taken by the *Romans* from the *Carthaginians*, as before is ſaid, was firſt under the immediate Juriſdiction of the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*: but after by *Juſtinian* was made a Province of his new Dioceſs of *Africk*; and as a part thereof or rather an Appendix to it, was challenged, invaded, and finally conquered by the *Saxazens*, *Anno* 807. From them recovered by the joynt-forces of the *Piſans* and *Genoeſe*, who divided it betwixt them: the Southern part, called Cape *Cagliari*, being allotted to the *Piſans*, and the Northern towards *Corſica*, to thoſe of *Genoa*. But the *Genoeſe* not content with the partage, (their portion of the Iſland being leſs in quantity, and worſe in quality) began to quarrel with the *Piſans*, and at the laſt to break into open Wars. To part the Fray, Pope *Boniface* the 8. beſtowed it on *James* King of *Aragon*, who driving thence the *Genoeſe*, *Anno* 1324. became Maſter of it. The *Aragonian* before that did pretend ſome Title to it, in right of the Kingdom of *Sicil*, then in his poſſeſſion; to ſome preceding Kings whereof it had once been ſubject: and having backed that Claim by the Pope's Donation, who challenged it as a part of St. *Peter*'s Patrimony; incorporated it for ever to the Crown of *Aragon*. Once indeed it was offered unto *Anthony* of *Bourbon*, in exchange for his Title to *Navarre*, but without any purpoſe of performance; that being only a device to fetch him off from the party of the *Reformed* in *France*, to which he formerly adhered: and was as ſuddenly laid by, as if it had done the feat intended in the Propoſition.

The Government hereof is by a Vice-roy, who reſides at *Calaris*, and muſt of neceſſity be a *Spaniard* under whom are two Deputy Governours, *Spaniards* alſo; the one for Cape *Cagliari*, the other for Cape *Lugudori*. Inferior Officers of Command may be of the Natives. What profits ariſe hence to the Crown of *Spain*, I have no where found. The Arms hereof are ſaid to be *Or*, a Croſs *Gules*, betwixt four *Sarazens* heads *Sable*, curled *Argent*.

Argent. Which Arms were given upon the taking of it from the power of the *Moors*: but first taken (as some say) for the Arms of *Aragon*, on occasion of the heads of four chief Princes of the *Moors* which were found severed from their bodies in the Battel of *Alcoraz*, *Anno* 1094. won by *Don Pedro*, King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*.

There are divers small Islands about *Sardinia*, as 1. *Isola Rossa*, heretofore called *Phintanis*. 2. The Ile of *Hercules*, now called *Asinaria*. 3. St. *Peters*, anciently *Hieracum*, or *Accipitrum*, with others of as little note: all which as the Appendants of *Sardinia*, do belong to the *Spaniard*.

There are in this Island,
Archbishops 3. Bishops 15.

The Land of the CHURCH.

WEST of the Realm of *Naples*, lyeth the *LAND OF THE CHURCH*, extended North and South from the *Adriatick* to the *Tuscan* Seas. Bounded on the Northeast with the River *Trontus*, on the Southeast with the *Anofenus*, by which two parted from that Kingdom; as on the North-west by the River *Po*, and *Fiore*, by which separated from the State of *Venice*; and on the South-west with the River *Piseo*, by which it is divided from the Modern *Tuscany*, or the State of the *Florentine*.

By this Accompt the Pope's Dominion taketh up the whole middle of *Italy*, having in breadth from the one Sea unto the other above two hundred miles, and in the length along the *Adriatick* to the furthest parts of *Romandiola*, above three hundred. By which advantages it lieth most fitly for the command of all the rest, it being very easie for the Popes to convey their Forces by Sea or Land, into what part thereof they please. And were it not that the Popes commonly are of several factions; and that the Successor pursueth not the designs of his Predecessors, but hath his own ends to himself, which for the most part are driven on without consideration of increasing the publick *Patrimony*; it is not possible, but that the Pope long before this time, had been Lord of all. And this may be conceived the rather, considering the extraordinary fertility of the soyl, able to spare provisions for the greatest Armies; the multitudes of people which it may afford, in regard they are so seldom consumed by Wars; and that the men of this Dominion (but chiefly those of *Rome*, and the parts adjoyning) are conceived to be the best Souldiers of *Italy*; as retaining some sparks of their Ancestors vallour, together with their gravity, magnificence, and a certain greatness of courage, which seems to be particular to them of this Nation. And they preserve also to this day so much of the ancient *Roman*, as to prefer any kind of life, before Trades or Merchandize. For though their Lands be very well tilled, and their Vines well dressed, and all things done exactly in the way of Husbandry: yet for their *Manufactures* they are brought from other places, as *Venice*, *Naples*, *Florence*, *Genoa*. And though they have the Sea on both sides, and the advantage of many fair and commodious Rivers and Havens, which with little cost might be made very useful: yet do they no way improve their fortunes, or the publick Patrimony in the way of *Traffick*; which is the main defect of the *Papal Policy*, and filleth a rich Country full of poor and indigent persons. But to proceed to the description of the Pope's Estate: it containeth the Provinces of 1. *Romandiola*, 2. the Territory of *Ferrara*. 3. the Estate of *Urbine*. 4. *Marca Anconita*. 5. *Ducato Spoletano* with *Sabinia*. 6. St. *Peter's Patrimony*, and 7. *Campagna di Roma*.

1. *ROMANDIOLA* extendeth from the River *Isaurus* (now called *Foglio*) by which parted from the Dukedom of *Urbine* on the East, to the Dukedom of *Parma* on the West, from which parted by the River *Panaro*, called of old *Scultenna*: and from the *Apennine* on the South to *Padus*, and the *Adriatick*, on the North. It was called anciently *Flaminia*, from *Flaminius* the *Roman* Consul, who having won it from the *Galls* planted Colonies in it, and had the honour (though he pursued this War against the will of the Senate) to have it called by his own name: and for the better passage betwixt *Rome* and this, made a very large Causey, which for a long time was called *Via Flaminia*. Chief Rivers hereof, besides those spoken of already, which are only borderers; 1. *Ariminum*, now called *Marechia*; and 2. *Rubicon*, now called *Pissatello*, betwixt *Ariminum* and *Ravenna*, of which more anon.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Bononia* (or *Boulogne*) seated in a spacious Plain near the *Apennine* Hills, a very populous City, of a round form, and a great circuit: the building Antique, seeming for the most part to be the work of the *Lombards*, the foundation of the houses of Free-stone, the rest of Bricks; built with arched Cloysters towards the street, under which one may walk dry in the greatest rain. A City honoured with many Palaces of the neighbouring Nobles, the chief University of *Italy*, and the retiring place of the Popes. The Civil Law is much studied here, insomuch that from hence proceeded the famous Civilians *Johannes Andreas*, *Aza*, *Bartolus*, and *Socinus*. I believe they have built Castles in the air, which ascribe the founding of this University to *Theodosius* the 2. The Charter of whose foundation dated, *Anno* 423. is an idle and foolish thing. For there it is said, that at the institution there were present *Gualter* Earl of *Poictiers*, Embassador for the King of *England*; and *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, for the King of *France*: when at that time, neither those Earldoms, or those Kingdoms were in *rerum natura*. It is situate on the River *Aposa*, and was by former Writers called *Felsina*. Near unto this Town in a Demy-Island called *Forcelli*, was that meeting between *Augustus*, *Anthony*, and *Lepidus*; wherein they agreed on the *Triumvirate*, dividing the Empire and City of *Rome* among themselves: Which combination was confirmed by the ensuing Proscription; wherein, that they might be revenged on *Cicero*, *Lepidus* proscribed his Brother; *Antonius*, his Uncle. 2. *Rimini*, anciently called *Ariminum*, seated on the mouth of the River *Ariminum*, of no great note, but for giving name unto this City, and now called *Marechia*. The City large, and seated in a plentiful and pleasant soil, abundantly productive of Wines, Figs, and Olives; wealthy withal, the trade which formerly enriched *Ravenna*, being for the most part managed here. Divided by the River into the City and the Suburbs; but joyned together by a fair and stately Bridge, built over it by *Augustus Cæsar*, who also erected in the City a *Triumphal* Arch. It is situate somewhat East of the River *Rubicon*, which in those times divided *Italy* from *Gaule*: upon the Bank whereof looking towards this Town, there was an old Marble Pillar having on it a *Latin* Inscription to this purpose, *viz. Leave here thy Colours, and lay down thine Arms, and pass not with thy Forces beyond the* Rubicon; *whosoever goeth against this command, let him be held an Enemy to the people of* Rome. Which Rule when *Cæsar* had transgressed, and surprized this City, he so frighted *Pompey* and his faction, that they abandoned *Italy* and *Rome* it self, and withdrew themselves

themſelves into *Epirus*. It is ſaid that *Cæſar* dreamed the night before, that he carnally knew his own Mother: whereby the Sooth-ſayers gathered that he ſhould be Lord of *Rome*, which was the common Mother of them all. Which dream, and ſeveral prodigies hapning at the ſame time with it, did ſo encourage him in his enterpriſe, that he is ſaid, at the paſſing over *Rubicon*, to have ſaid theſe words, *Eamus quò nos Deorum oſtenta, &c.* Let us go whither the ſins of our Enemies, and the Prodigies of the Gods do call us. In memory of which venturous, but fortunate action, he cauſed a monument to be erected in this City, with his name and titles. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and in the buſtles hapning betwixt the Pope and the Emperor, was ſeized on by the *Malateſti*, as *Bononia* was by the *Bentivoli*, two potent Families of theſe parts; who held them in defence of the Popes of *Rome*, till they were reduced again unto the Church, by Pope *Julio* the ſecond. 3. *Cervia*, on the *Adriatick* Sea, where there is made ſo much Salt, that they furniſh therewith all their neighbours of *Marca Anconitana*, and a great part of *Lombardy*: the Pope receiving for his Cuſtoms of this one Commodity, no leſs than 60000 Crowns *per annum*. 4. *Furlii*, (called of old *Forum Livii*) one of the Towns belonging properly to the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, ſeated in a very pleaſant air, and a fruitful ſoil, betwixt two freſh ſtreams; of which the one is called *Ronchus*, and the other *Montonus*. 5. *Faventia*, now called *Faenza*, on the banks of *Anemus*, a calm gentle River; an ancient City, but well peopled: much benefited by the Flax which groweth in the adjoyning fields, and the Earthen Veſſels which they vend to moſt parts of *Italy*. It was firſt given unto the Popes by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, whom they but ſorrily requited for ſo great a courteſie. 6. *Sarſina*, an old City, ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine*, the birth-place of *Plautus* the Comedian; 7. *Imola*, anciently called *Forum Cornelii*; and 8. *Ceſena*, Cities both of them of no ſmall Antiquity; but this laſt the fairer built, the better peopled, and the more ſtrongly fortified: there being a ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an Hill, the work of *Frederick* the 2. Emperor and King of *Germany*. This Town, with that of *Sarſina* ſpoken of before, ſeem to be ſeated on the banks of the River *Rubicon*, now called *Piſſatello*. 9. *Ravenna*, ſituate in the embracements of two Rivers, called *Montonus* and *Ronchus*: by the confluence whereof at their fall or influx into the *Adriatick*, it was once beautified with one of the faireſt Havens in the World, and for that cauſe made the Road of one of the two Navies, which *Auguſtus* always kept manned to command the whole Empire of *Rome*: the other riding at *Miſenus* in *Campania*. This of *Ravenna*, being in the upper Sea, awed and defended *Dalmatia*, *Greece*, *Crete*, *Cyprus*, *Aſia*, *&c.* the other at *Miſenus*, in the lower Sea, protected and kept under *France*, *Spain*, *Africk*, *Egypt*, *Syria*, *&c.* The walls of this City are ſaid to have been built or repaired by *Tiberius Cæſar*; the whole City to have been much beautified by *Theodoricus* King of the *Goths*, who built here a moſt ſtately and magnificent Palace; the ruins whereof are ſtill eaſily diſcernable. The private buildings are but mean, the publick ones are of a grave, but ſtately ſtructure. Of which the principal heretofore was the Church of St. *Mary the Round*, whoſe roof was of one entire ſtone, and honoured with the rich Sepulchre of the ſaid King *Theoderick*: which the Souldiers (in the ſack of this City by the *French*, *Anno* 1512) pulled down together with the Church it ſelf, only to get the Jewels and Medals of it. The principal at the preſent is the Church of St. *Vitalis*, the pavement hereof is all of Marble, and the walls all covered with precious ſtones of many ſorts, but unpoliſhed as they were taken out of Mines; which ſheweth as well the Magnificence as antiquity of it. The *Patriarchs* of this City, in regard it was ſo long the Regal and Imperial Seat, have heretofore contended for precedency with the Popes themſelves: not brought to yield the place to thoſe proud pretenders, till *Donus* the 2. in the ſhort time of his Papacy about the year 975. did in fine prevail. And this they did upon good reaſons, this City having been anciently the *Metropolis* of the Province called *Flaminia*, afterwards honoured with the Seat of the Emperour *Honorius*, and his ſucceſſors; next of the *Gothiſh* Kings, then of the *Exarchs*, and laſt, of its *Patriarchs*. And it was choſen for this purpoſe, becauſe of the plentiful Territory, ſince covered with waters, and the conveniency of the Haven, at this day choaked: though lately by expence of a great deal of treaſure, the Fens about the City have been very much drained; and the Bogs in ſome places turned to fruitful fields, to the great benefit hereof both for health and pleaſure.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently together with the Territories of *Ferrara*, and ſome part of *Trevigiana*, the habitation of the *Boii*, who with the *Senones*, the *Inſubres*, and the *Cenomani*, made up the whole body of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, of whom more hereafter. Finding the *Romans* grown too near them, by whom the *Senones* their next neighbours had been rooted out, they thought it was high time to beſtir themſelves, eſpecially after the defeat given them by the Conſul *Minutius*, who carried the War home unto them; which never any of the *Romans* had done before. For after this, under *Carolamus* their King, they ſet upon *Marcellus* the Conſul, killing 3000 of his men, but vanquiſhed and ſubdued by him in a following Battel. Vanquiſhed again not far from *Mutina* by *Cornelius Merula*, with the loſs of 14000 of their men, they called both the *Inſubrian* and *Tranſalpine Galls* to come in to aid them. But being then vanquiſhed alſo at the Battel of *Telamon* (of which more in *Lombardy*) *A.V.C.* 528. they were followed home, and utterly ſubdued by the Conſul *Flaminius*, as before was ſaid: after which times this Country following the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italy*, becauſe ſubject to the *Goths*, as a part of their *Italian* conqueſts: whoſe Kingdom here was no ſooner deſtroyed by *Narſes*, but the *Lombards* entred. To give a ſtop to whoſe ſucceſſes, and preſerve ſo much unto the Empire as was not already conquered by them; it was thought good by *Juſtine* the ſecond, to ſend thither an Imperial Officer of principal command and note, whom he honoured with the title of *Exarch*. His reſidence ſetled at *Ravenna*, as ſtanding moſt commodiouſly to hinder the incurſions of the barbarous Nations, and withal to receive ſuch aids from the Eaſtern parts, as his occaſions did require. Theſe *Exarchs* having divided *Italy* into many Governments, appointed over each ſome ſupreme Commander, dignified with the name of Dukes. And even the City of *Rome* it ſelf (ſo far then was it from being ſubject to the Pope in *Temporal* matters) had a chief Officer of this kind (accomptable to the *Exarch*, and ſubordinate to him) whoſe Government was called the *Roman* Dukedom. That which they kept unto themſelves as their own *peculiar*, contained the Cities of *Ravenna*, *Rhegium*, *Mutina*, *Bononia*, *Claſſi*, *Forli*, *Forlimpoli*, *Sarcino*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*: which ten Cities with the Territories belonging to them, made up that *Diſtrict* which properly was called the *Exarchate* of *Ravenna*; much mentioned in the Hiſtories of the middle times, by reaſon of the continual Wars which they had with the *Lombards*, but newly entred when this Magiſtracy had its firſt beginning. The names of theſe *Exarchs* are as followeth.

The

The *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*.

A. C.		
570	1	*Longius.* 21.
591	2	*Smaragdus.* 4.
595	3	*Romanus Patricius.*
596	4	*Gallinicus.* 13.
609	5	*Smaragdus.* 3.
612	6	*Joh. Lamigius.* 4.
616	7	*Eleutherius.* 5.
621	8	*Isaacus Patricius.* 24.
645	9	*Theodorus Calliopia.* 10.
655	10	*Olympius.* 2.
657	11	*Theodorus Calliopia.* II. 30.
687	12	*Joh. Plotina.* 15.
702	13	*Theophylactus.* 25.
727	14	*Paulus.*
728	15	*Eutichus.* 12.

In the days of this *Exarch*, *Ravenna* was taken from the Empire, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, *Anno* 740. But regained by *Charles* the Great, and by him given to the Bishops of *Rome*, together with *Anconitana* and *Spoleto*, as a requital for the Kingdom of *France*, confirmed unto King *Pepin* his Father, by the consent and authority of the Popes. The donation of this *Exarchate* to the Popes, partly to blot out the memory of the *Exarches*, and partly to make the people obedient to those Prelates, changed the name of the Country from *Flaminia* (by which name it was formerly known) to *Romandiola*, and now to *Romagna*. Notwithstanding which Donation, or Original Grant, the Popes enjoyed not long the possession of it: The Emperors of *Germany*, and their Vice-gerents in *Italy*, wresting it by strong hand out of the possession of the Church; and giving it to such as deserved well of them, and were most likely, or most able to uphold their Faction. And so it stood, till the late Popes conspiring with the *French* Kings, *Lewis* the 12, and *Francis* the first, brought them into *Italy* *Anno* 1509. and by their aids, and by the censure of the Church, so prevailed in fine, that they extorted *Ravenna*, and some other places, out of the hands of the *Venetians*, ejected many petit Princes out of other Cities, which they pretended to belong to St. *Peter*'s Patrimony; and thereby got possession of all those Teritories, which lie betwixt the State of *Venice*, and the *Marches* of *Ancona*.

2. The *Territory* of FERRARA lieth in the very skirts of *Romandiola* towards the *Venetian*, extending one hundred and sixty miles in length, and about fifty in breadth: the soil thereof exceeding rich, but subject to the overflowings of the River *Po*; which makes the air in many places to be somewhat unwholsom. And though as well the former Dukes as the Popes, who are now Lords hereof, have been at great charge in raising high banks and Ramparts to keep in the Waters: yet could not this resist the violence of the River, falling from so high a Spring, and seconded with so great Landfloods (as sometimes it is) but that it makes many breaches in them, do they what they can. The places of most note herein, are 1. *Graffignan* in the borders of *Tuscany*, near the *Apennine*. 2. *Carpi*, a place of great importance, seated in the midst of this Dukedom; belonging heretofore to the house of the *Pici*. But partly by exchange made with *Marcus Picus*, partly for one hundred thousand Crowns in ready money, given unto *Lionel Pico*, once the Lord hereof; it was by *Charles* the 5. incorporated into this Estate. 3. *Commachia*, seated in the Marshes of the *Adriatick*, from which the Princes of this Family of *Esto*, were at first called only Lords of *Commachia*; a place which yielded great profit to the former Dukes, by the fishing of Eels. 4. *Saxole*, given by Duke *Alphonso* in exchange for *Carpi*. Here is also the Territory and Lordship of the *Polesin*, the cause of so many quarrels and contentions between the ancient Dukes of *Ferrara* and the States of *Venice*. But the chief honour of this Dukedom is in the Capital City that which denominates the whole. *Ferrara*, a City of five miles in compass, so called from the Iron Mines which are about it; commodiously seated on the River *Po*, which by reason of its breadth, depth and violent swiftness of the current, is a sufficient rampart to it on that side; the other sides being fortified with a strong wall, and a spacious mote. In the middle of the City is as fair and spacious Market-place, into which do open on all sides about twenty Streets, all of them half a mile in length; and all so streight and evenly built, that the furthest end of each of them may be easily seen. Near to this Market-place is a little Island, in which the former Dukes had a stately Palace, called *Belvedere*, from the fair Prospect which it had or gave to the whole City; and on the North-side of the City a large Park for pleasure. The other houses are for the most part built of fair Freestone, not joyning unto one another as in other Cities, but at a pretty distance with neat Gardens between. *Ariosto*, the Author of that ingenious Poem called *Orlando Furioso*, and *Hierome Savanarolo* the Prophetical Fryer, were both of them natives of this place: of which the first lieth here entombed, the last for preaching against the Pope, was burnt at *Florence*.

In the declining of the Power and Empire of the *Lombards*, this City together with *Faenza* was given by *Desiderius* their last King, to the Church of *Rome*, the better to oblige the Popes by so great a benefit. But being taken from them by the Emperors of the house of *Schwaben*, it was again recovered by the prowess of the Countess *Mathildis*, *Anno* 1107. who took it, with many other Towns in *Italy*, from the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, and at her death conferred the same upon the Church. The Popes once more possessed hereof, and not able to hold it, gave it in Fee for ever unto *Azo* of the house of *Este*, a man of great sway in the affairs of *Italy*, who valiantly had defended it against *Ezelinus*, Vicegerent of *Frederick* the second. This was the first of this Family who had *Ferrara* in *propriety*: His Ancestors being called before, the Marquesses of *Este*, and sometimes Marquesses of *Ferrara*, (but in title only) as Governors hereof in behalf of the Pope of *Rome*. *Obizo* the Grandchild of this first *Azo*, obtained of *Rodolphus* the first, (who was willing to make what money he could of his Lands in *Italy*) the Cities of *Rhegium* and *Modena*; that Grant confirmed by *Guido* Legat of Pope *Benedict* the ninth, with the Popes consent, *Anno* 1304. Other improvements there were made by the following Princes, according to the chance of War, but none of them continued constant in their possession but these three Cities and the Territories adjoyning to them. As for this Family *de Este* (*Familia Atestina* it is called in *Latin*) it took this name from *Este*, or *Ateste*, a small Town in the Siegneury of *Venice*, conferred upon the Ancestors of this *Azo*, by *Charles* the Great. And for the Chiefs, or Princes of it, they have been of great authority and power in their several times, commanding sometimes the *Venetian* Armies, and sometimes the Popes; great favourers of Learned men, and advancers of Learning; insomuch that the *Reinaldo's* and *Rogero's* of *Este*, make up a great part of the Poems of *Ariosto* and *Tasso*, two of the greatest Wits of *Italy*; and finally allied to many of the best Houses of Christendom. The Catalogue of whom, since they were made the Hereditary Lords and Princes of this noble City, I have here subjoyned.

The Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Ferrara*.

1236 1 *Actius*, or *Azo de Eſte*, the ninth of that name, but firſt Hereditary Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, by the Grant of the Pope.

1264 2 *Obizo*, the ſixth of that name, Grandſon to *Azo* by his Son *Reinaldo*, ſecond Marqueſs of *Ferrara*.

1293 3 *Azo* the tenth of *Eſte*, and II of *Ferrara*, Son to *Obizo*.

1308 4 *Franciſco*, Brother to *Azo* the 2. after whoſe death, *Anno* 1312 *Ferrara* for a time was under the command of the Popes.

1312 5 *Alobrandinus*, Brother of *Franciſcus*, who had the Title to, but not the poſſeſſion of *Ferrara*.

1315 6 *Reinaldo* the 3 of *Eſte*, and the firſt of *Ferrara*, recovered *Ferrara* from the Pope, and caſt out his Garriſons. 1317.

1335 7 *Obizo* II. Brother of *Reinaldo*.

1352 8 *Alabrandino* II. Son of *Obizo*.

1361 9 *Nicolao* the 2. of *Eſte*, and firſt of *Ferrara*, Brother of *Alabrandino*, whoſe children being young, he diſpoſſeſſed of the Eſtate.

1388 10 *Albertus*, Brother of *Nicolas*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Ferrara Anno* 1392.

1393 11 *Nicolas* II. baſe Son of *Albertus*.

1441 12 *Leonellus*, the baſe Son of *Nicolas*, in the minority of his Brother *Hercules*, begot in lawful Wedlock, invaded the Eſtate, and held it.

1450 13 *Borſius*, another of the baſe Sons of *Nicolas* 2. ſucceeded *Leonel* in the Eſtate; who being made Duke of *Mutina* by *Frederick* the 3. was by Pope *Paul* created Duke of *Ferrara* alſo, *Anno* 1470.

1471 14 *Hercules*, the lawful Son of *Nicolas* the 2. made Knight of the Garter, by King *Edward* 4.

1505 15 *Alphonſo*, the Son of *Hercules*.

1534 16 *Hercules* II. Son of *Alphonſo*.

1559 17 *Alphonſo* II. who dying without lawful iſſue, *Anno* 1595 Pope *Clement* 8. challenged this Eſtate in the right of the Church; and partly by force, partly by compoſition (whereof we ſhall ſay more when we come to *Modena*) united it for ever to the See of *Rome*.

The yearly Revenues of this Dukedom were heretofore two hundred and fifty thouſand Crowns; now not ſo much worth unto the Pope, by reaſon of the Alienation of *Modena* and *Reggio*; of which more hereafter.

The Arms of theſe Dukes (which for the honour of this noble and illuſtrious Family, and for the ſtrangeneſs of the Coat, I ſhall here put down) were Pale-wiſe of three pieces, 1. *Partie per Feſſe*, in a chief *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed *Sable*, membred, langued, and crowned *Gules*; and in Baſe *Azure*, three Flowers *de Lys Or*, within a Border indented *Or* and *Gules*. 2. *Gules*, two Keys in *Saltier*, the one *Or*, the other *Argent*, charged in *Feſſe*, with an Eſchocheon of pretence *Azure*, ſupporting an Eagle of the third, membered and crowned of the ſecond. Over all in chief a Papal Crown *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry Gems *Azure* and *Purple*. The 3. as the firſt Counterplaced. Which Coat upon the falling of the Houſe of *Ferrara*, doth now belong to that of *Modena* and *Reggio*, as deſcended of it.

3. From the Territory of *Ferrara* proceed we to the Eſtate of *Urbine*; both Dukedoms and diſtinct Eſtates till theſe later times: this laſt the younger of the two, and conſequently (as in the ordinary courſe of Nature) the ſurviver alſo; but ſwallowed at laſt into the Popedom as the other was. Bounded on the Weſt with the River *Iſaurus* (now called *Foglia*) by which parted from *Romandiola*, on the Eaſt from *Marca Anconitana*, on the North with the *Adriatick*, and on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from *Tuſcany*. So called from *Urbine* the chief City of it, and the Ducal Seat. It is in length about 60. miles, 35. in breadth: Some pieces and Eſtates belonging anciently to the Church, lying intermingled with the Lands and Signeuries which belonged to the Dukes.

The ſoil is very fruitful of Corn, Wine, and Oyl, plentiful of Figs and other fruits of moſt pleaſant taſte; and in a word, affording all things neceſſary for the life of man. But the air is generally unwholſom, eſpecially about *Peſaro* and *Foſſembrune*, by reaſon of the low flats and overflows of the water. The principal Commodities which they vend abroad, are the Wines of *Peſaro*, ſold in great abundance to the *Venetians*; and dried Figs, which they vend unto *Bologne*, and other places.

The moſt famous River is *Metaurus*, (now called *Metremo*) and a famous one it is indeed, by reaſon of that great Battel fought on the banks thereof, betwixt *Aſdrubal* the Brother of *Annibal*, and his *Carthaginians*; and the two Conſuls *Livius* and *Cl. Nero*: in which, after a long and hot diſpute, the victory fell unto the *Romans*; there being 56000 of the *Carthaginians* ſlain, (as *Livy* writeth) and 5400 taken priſoners. *Polybius* ſpeaks of a leſs number both ſlain and taken; and like enough it is that *Livy*, to advance the honour of that Family, might enlarge a little. But whatſoever was the truth in this particular, certain it is, that this victory turned the tide of the *Roman* Fortune, which from this time began to flow amain upon them: the Citizens of *Rome* beginning at this time to trade and traffick, to follow their affairs, and make contracts, and bargains with one another, which they had long forborn to do; and that with as ſecure a confidence, as if *Annibal* were already beaten out of *Italy*. This famous River riſeth in the *Apennine* Hills, and paſſing by *Foſſombrune*, a Town of this Dukedom, falls into the *Adriatick*.

There are reckoned into this Dukedom ſeven Towns or Cities, (four of which are Epiſcopal Sees) and three hundred Caſtles. The principal of which are, 1. *Urbine*, one of the moſt ancient Cities of *Italy*, which both *Tacitus* and *Pliny* mention; a fair Town, well built, and the Duke's ordinary ſeat in Summer. It is ſeated at the foot of the *Apennine* Hills, in a very rich and pleaſant ſoil, built in the faſhion of a Miter, and therefore called *Urbinas, quod urbes binas continere videbatur*. *Franciſco Ubaldi* the firſt Duke, built here a very ſumptuous Palace, and therein founded a moſt excellent Library, repleniſhed with a great number of rare Books, covered and garniſhed with Gold, Silk, and Silver; all ſcattered and diſperſed in the time that *Ceſar Borgia* ſeized on the Eſtate. *Polydore Virgil*, the Author of the Hiſtory of *England*, which paſſeth under his name, was a Native here: an Hiſtory of worth enough as the times then were, except only in ſuch paſſages as concern the Pope (the Collector of whoſe *Peter-pence* he was then in *England*) whoſe credit and Authority he preferreth ſometimes, before truth it ſelf. 2. *Piſaurum*, now called *Peſara*, the ſtrongeſt Town of all the Dukedom, two miles in compaſs, and fortified according to the modern Art of War: the fortifications of it being firſt begun by *Franciſco Maria*, and perfected by *Guido Ubaldo*, his Son and ſucceſſor; the ordinary ſeat of the Duke in Winter, well Garriſoned, and therefore truſted with the publick Armory. It is ſeated near the ſhore of the *Adriatick*, at the mouth or influx

influx of the River *Iſaurus*, which parts it from *Romagna*: populous, of handſom buildings, and a very ſtrong wall, the ſoil exceeding rich, but the air ſo bad, that partly in regard of that, and partly by their eating of too much fruits, nothing is more frequent here than Funerals, eſpecially in the month of *Auguſt*; few of the Inhabitants living to be fifty years old. 3. *Senogalle*, called anciently *Sena Gallica*, (*Gallica* being added to it to difference it from another of that name in *Tuſcany*) a ſtrong and well fenced City near the River *Metaurus*, over which there is a Bridge conſiſting of eighty Arches, made of that length, not ſo much in regard of the breadth of the Chanel, as the frequent overflowings of that turbulent Water. 4. *Foſſombrune*, called in old Authors *Forum Sempronii*, for air and ſoil of the ſame nature with *Piſaurum*; bought by D. *Frederick* of *Galeazzo Malateſte* for thirteen hundred Florins of Gold. 5. *Cabo* or *Cagli*, on the Sea. 6. S. *Leon*, a good Town, and the chief of the Country of *Montfeltre*, which is a limb of this Dukedom. 7. *Fano*, not far from the Sea, an Epiſcopal City, and anciently belonging to the Church of *Rome*: of old times called *Fanum fortunæ*, from a Temple there erected to Goddeſs *Fortune* (*Te facimus* Fortuna *deam*, as the Poet hath it.) 8. *Eugubium* (now cacſled *Augubeo*) a Town belonging to theſe Princes, but properly within the bounds of the *Spoletan* Dukedom; and there we ſhall hear further of it. Of the Caſtles the principal are *Marivola*, and the Rock of S. *Leon*, which were the laſt that held good for Duke *Guido Ubaldo* againſt *Cæſar Borgia*, Duke of *Valentinoys*, Son to Pope *Alexander* the ſixth; and the firſt which did return again under his obedience. For which cauſe when he fled the ſecond time from the ſaid *Borgia*, he diſmantled all his other Caſtles, as being more likely to admit than reſiſt the Invader; and theſe two laſt being very well fortified, he left to keep poſſeſſion of the Country for him.

Here is alſo within the limits of this Eſtate, the Dukedom of *CAMERINO*, an ancient and well peopled Town, of a ſtrong natural ſituation amongſt the Hills: an Eſtate holden of the Church by the noble Family of *Varena*, till the time of Pope *Paul* the third; when *Julia di Varena* the heir thereof, conveyed it by marriage unto *Guido Ubaldi* Duke of *Urbine*. But the Pope pretending an Eſcheat for want of heirs males, made himſelf Maſter of it by force of Arms: and gave it to his Son *Pitero Farneſi*, whom afterwards with the conſent of the College of Cardinals he made Duke of *Parma*; and ſetled *Camerino* on the Church, as it ſtill continues.

As for the fortunes of this Country, it was anciently the habitation of the *Senones*; a Nation of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, who only had the honour of ſacking *Rome*, to which City it continued ſubject, till the declining of the Empire in the time of *Honorius*. They being rooted out at laſt (of which more in *Lombardy*) and the Country peopled with *Roman* or *Latin* Colonies, it followed the ſame fortunes with the reſt of *Italy*, till the time of *Conradine*, the laſt Duke of the Imperial Houſe of *Schwaben*, when *Urbine* was firſt ſubdued by the Earls of *Montfeltre*, whoſe Succeſſors increaſing in power, added the Town and Territory of *Eugubio* to it. And in the buſtles betwixt *Lewis* of *Bavaria* the Emperour, and Pope *Clement* the ſixth, *Anno* 1345. *Gelaſſo di Montfeltre* held it by no other Title, but as the Empero's *Vicegerents*. This Family enjoyed it till the year 1444. by the Title only of Earls of *Montfeltre*, and Lords of *Urbine* when *Frederick Ubaldi*, for his ſingular and ſurpaſſing valour, was by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, created the firſt Duke hereof: to hold as Feudataries of the Church, and paying 2240 Crowns for an Annual quit-rent. A man of ſuch repute for all gallant qualities, that he was by King *Henry* the ſixth, made *Knight of the Garter*; in recompence of which high honour, the *Engliſh* to this day enjoy many priviledges in theſe Dominions. *Guido Ubaldi* this Duke's Son loſt his Eſtate to *Cæſar Borgia*; after whoſe death he did recover it again by the power and favour of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, to whom ſucceeded *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, his Siſters Son, in whoſe Family it continued till now of late, as will appear by this enſuing Catalogue of

The Dukes of *Urbine*.

1444 1 *Frederick Ubaldi*, of the ancient Family *de Montfeltre* the firſt Duke of *Urbine*, and one of the Knights of the honourable Order of the Garter.

2 *Guido Ubaldi*, Son of *Frederick*, for a while outed of this Dukedom by *Cæſar Borgia*. He was Knight alſo of the Garter.

3 *Franciſco Maria di Rovero*, Siſters Son and next heir to *Guido Ubaldi*, was in his own right Lord of *Senogallia*, and had *Piſauro* from the Pope in reward of his many ſervices done unto the *Church*; diſſeized for a while by Pope *Leo* the tenth.

4 *Laurence de Medices*, Father of *Catharine di Medices* the *French* Queen, and of *Alexander* the 1. Duke of *Florence*; was for a while made Duke of *Urbine* by Pope *Leo* the 10th (being of that Family) but loſt it ſhortly after to Duke *Franciſco*, who after the death of Pope *Leo*, recovered his eſtates again, and died poſſeſſed of the Dukedom.

1538 5 *Guido Ubaldi* II. Son of Duke *Franciſco*.

6 *Franciſco Maria* II. Son of *Guido* the 2d, whoſe line expired, it eſcheated not long ſince (for want of heirs males) to the Church of *Rome*.

The Revenues of this Dukedom were reckoned to have been 100000 Crowns *per annum*; but might have been raiſed to a greater ſum, had not the Dukes preferred the love and eaſe of their Subjects, before the filling of their own Coffers. He was able to raiſe 1200 good Souldiers out of this Eſtate; and more the people would ſupply, if they had occaſion. The Arms hereof *Azure* a Tower *Argent*, environed with Flower de Lyces *Or*.

4. *MARCA ANCONITANA* is bounded on the Weſt with the State of *Urbine*; on the Eaſt with the River of *Trontus*, or *Druentus*, by which it is parted from *Abruzzo*; on the South with the *Apennine* Hills, by which parted from the *Spoletan* Dukedom; on the North with the *Adriatick*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It was formerly the dwelling of the *Picentes*, poſſeſſed all theſe parts on the Coaſts of the *Adriatick*, from the River *Rubicon* on the Eaſt, to that of *Aufidus* on the Weſt. For aiding the *Tarentines* their Allies, in their War againſt *Rome*, they were invaded and ſubdued by the *Romans*, *A.V.C.* 485. which was about five years before the firſt *Punick* War, under the conduct of *Sempronius*; at which time they were ſo great and multitudinous a Nation, that they weren umbred to amount to 3600000 which were then brought under the Command and Vaſſalage of the *Roman* Empire. When *Italy* was divided into no more then eight Regions, theſe *Picentes* only made up one; ſo did they alſo when divided into eleven. Afterwards, in the time of the *Antonini*, they made up one of the ſixteen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by thoſe Emperors; and the ſame repute it held in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Picenum* making always one: *Aſculum caput gentis*, as *Florus* calls it, which was the head of their nation, being the *Metropolis* of the Province.

Called in thoſe times *Picenum Annonarium*, partly by reaſon of the abundance of grain which it did produce; and partly to diſtinguiſh it from the dwelling of the *Picentini*, which from its nearneſs unto *Rome*, had the name of *Picenum Suburbicarium*; that part of *Campania* at this time, which is called the *Principate*. In the declining of the Empire, it was firſt called *Marcha Firmiana*, from *Firmo*: once a *Roman* Colony, and at that time of moſt importance in the Country; but by transferring the chief ſeat from *Firmo* to *Ancona*, in the time of the *Lombards*, it came to have the name of *Anconitana*. The chief Rivers, beſides thoſe named already, which are only borderers, are, 1. *Chientus*, 2. *Sentinus*, and 3. *Potentia*; all riſing in the *Apennine*, and paſſing with a ſwift courſe to the *Adriatick* Sea.

The chief Towns, 1. *Ancona*, ſeated on the Hill *Cimerius*, ſhooting into the Sea, glorying in giving name to the Province, and her Haven built by *Trajan* the Emperor; one of the faireſt in the World, not ſo much for capacity, as the pleaſantneſs and beauty of it: the deſcents down unto the Water being made of Marble, and very delectable walking on all ſides of it. The City it ſelf is begirt with Hills, on one of which Pope *Clement* the ſeventh built a very ſtrong Caſtle. *Anno* 1532. under pretence of defending the Town againſt the *Turks*, but indeed to keep the people in more full ſubjection, who till that time, did yearly chooſe their own Magiſtrates, and lived according to their own Laws, like a Commonwealth. 2. *Recanati* (heretofore *Ælia Recina*,) ſeated upon the banks of the River *Mulſio*, renowned for the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of *Europe*, at her Annual Marts; and a vein of the moſt excellent Wines. 3. *Firmo*, ſirnamed the *Strong*: in former times of moſt eſteem in all the Province, which was hence called *Marca Firmiana*; and to this day, a place of great ſtrength and conſequence; and an Archbiſhops See. 4. *Macerata*, now of moſt credit, by reaſon that the Popes *Legat* keeps his reſidence there, and with him the Chancery for his Marquiſate. 5. *Loretto*, called in *Latin Lauretana*, a little City betwixt *Recanati* and the Sea; well fortified againſt the *Turks*, and other Pirates who once ſpoiled the ſame, and might be eaſily tempted thither on the like occaſions: The Church here being admirably rich, and frequented by Pilgrims from all parts, to pay their devotions unto our Lady of *Loretto*, and behold her Miracles. Concerning the removal of whoſe Chamber hither, in our deſcription of *Paleſtine*, you ſhall meet with a very proper Legend. 6. *Aſcoli*, ſirnamed the *Fair*, ſeated at the influx of the River *Druentus*, and on the furtheſt ſide of it towards *Abruzzo*, to which by ſome it is aſcribed. Anciently the chief City of the *Picentes*, as before is ſaid, and then called *Aſculum*, conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Sempronius*, *A.V.C.* 485. Nigh unto this City, was fought the ſecond Battel between *C. Fabricius* and the *Romans* on the one ſide, and *Pyrrhus* with the *Epirots* on the other; wherein the Victory (as *Plutarch* telleth us) fell to the King, having ſlain 6000 of his Enemies; but yet with ſuch loſs on his ſide alſo, that he affirmed to ſome of his Friends and followers, *That ſuch another Victory would quite undo him*; and with ſuch apparancy of valour and vertue in the *Romans*, that he could not but break forth into this acclamation; *O quam facile eſſet orbem vincere, aut mihi*, Romanis *militibus, aut me rege*, Romanis! This Town alſo was the ſeat of the War called *Bellum ſociale*, raiſed by the people of *Italy* againſt the *Romans*; *Popedius* being both Author of the Rebellion, and Captain. They for a while ſorely ſhaked the ſtate of *Rome*; but at laſt were vanquiſhed, and this Town by *Strabo Pompeius* forced and ſpoiled. 7. *Adria*, now not otherwiſe famous, than that it gave denomination to the adjoyning Sea, and the Emperor *Adrian*. 8. *Humana*, which together with *Ancona*, was given to Pope *Zachary*, by *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, about the year 741. The ſucceeding Popes after the giving of this Inch, took the whole Ell.

5. Having ſurveyed the Provinces of the Church along the *Adriatick*, we muſt next croſs the *Apennine*, which parts the Marches of *Ancona* from the Dukedom of *SPOLETO* (*DUCATO SPOLETANO* the *Italians* call it) which takes up the Weſtern part of that Province, which the old *Romans* called *Umbria*: and therefore before we come to the deſcription of this, we muſt a little look on the ſtate of that. A Country bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Aniene*, dividing it from the Eaſt parts of *Latium*; on the Weſt with *Tuſcia* or *Hetruria*; on the North, with the *Apennine*; on the South, with the reaches or windings of the *Tiber*, the main body of *Latium*, and with that part of *Tuſcany* which is now called St. *Peter's Patrimony*. So called, becauſe being ſituate under the ſhade of the *Apennine* Hills, it was *Regio Umbroſa*. Some give another reaſon of it, and think that the Inhabitants were called *Umbri*, *quaſi* *Ὀμβροι*, as men that had eſcaped the Deluge; becauſe ſo ancient a people, that no body could tell the Original of them.

But whatſoever was the reaſon of the name, they were a ſtout and valiant people, and gave the firſt check to *Annibal*'s career, after his great Victory at *Thraſymene*; repulſing him with loſs and ſhame from the Walls of *Spoleto*: yet not of power ſufficient, for all their valour, to preſerve their Country from the *Tuſcans*, who are ſaid to have deſtroyed in it 300 good Towns. Made by that means, if not plainly ſubject, yet ſo obnoxious to the will and pleaſure of the *Victors*, that at their inſtance or command they ſided with them in a War againſt the *Romans* (whom formerly they had found very quiet neighbours:) and by the *Romans* were ſubdued together with the reſt of the Confederates then in Arms againſt them, *A.V.C.* 458. *Decius* and *Qu. Fabius* then the fifth time Conſuls, which was about 77 years before *Annibal* fell into their Country. After which time in ſuch eſteem, that it was one of the eleven Regions into which *Italy* was divided by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; and finally, together with *Tuſcia*, made up a Province of the Empire.

As for the Dukedom of *Spoleto*, it taketh up the Weſtern parts of the Province of *Umbria*, as before was ſaid, included betwixt the *Apennine*, the *Tiber*, and the River *Nar*, by which laſt (now called *Neara*) it is divided from *Sabinia*, or the Land of the *Sabines*. The Country of a mixt nature, equally compoſed of very rough Hills, and yet moſt delectable Vallies; exceeding plentiful of all neceſſaries, and much commended heretofore for the extraordinary fœcundity of the Women. The Wine hereof is much commended by *Martial*, as the beſt of *Italy*.

De Spoletanis *qua ſunt cariosa lagenis*
Malueris, quam ſi muſta Falerna *bibas.*

That is to ſay,

If with *Spoleta* bottles once you meet,
Say that *Falerno* Muſt is not ſo ſweet.

Places of greateſt note herein, 1. *Spoletum*, built partly on the Hill, and partly on the lower ground; the reſidence heretofore of one of the four Dukes of the *Longobardians*, who governed as Vice-roys, or Lord preſidents, of the remoter parts of that Kingdom: from whence

whence the Country round about it, was called *Ducato Spoletano*. It is ſtill a Town of good eſteem, populous, and of handſom building; and hath a ſtrong Fortreſs for defence thereof, built upon the ruins of an old *Amphitheatre*: to which men paſs over a great Bridge of ſtone, upheld by 24 great Pillars, which joyns two Mountains together; having between them a deep Valley, but narrow and without any Water. *Theodorick* the *Goth* built a fair Palace in this City, ebuilt by *Narſes*, but ſince ruined. 2. *Eugubium* (now called *Augubio*) ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*; in or near that place where anciently ſtood that City which *Pliny* calls *Jugi-nium*; *Ptolomy Iſuvium*; utterly ſubverted by the *Goths*. A Town well ſeated in a fruitful and wealthy ſoil, and bleſſed with an induſtrious people: acknowledging the Dukes of *Urbine* for Lords thereof, till that eſtate was ſwallowed up into the Popedom. 3. *Nuceria*, (now *Nocera*) in *Pliny*'s time called *Alfatenia*, at the foot alſo of the *Appennine*; the people of which in former times much traded in their wooden veſſel. 4. *Aſſiſium*, or *Aſiſe*, deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the Civil Wars of *Italy*, and only famous at this time, for a See Epiſcopal, and being the birth-place of St. *Francis*; the Founder of the *Franciſcans*, or *Cordeliers*, as the *French* call them, but we in *England* the *Grave-Friers*. 5. *Citta de Caſtello*, anciently *Tipherdum*, on the banks of *Tiber*. 6. *Tudertum*, now called *Todi*, ſeated near the *Tiber*, on the declivity of a rich and fruitful Hill.

The reſt of *Umbria* towards the Eaſt, not being within the compaſs of the *Spoletane* Dukedom, but under the command of the Popes of *Rome*, is by late Writers called *SABINIA*, becauſe the dwelling in times paſt, of the ancient *Sabins*: who being taken into *Rome*, and made Free Denizens of that City in the time of *Romulus*, upon the League concluded betwixt him and *Tatius*, then the King of this people, for a long time lived under the protection of that mighty City. But after joyning with the *Latins* in a War againſt it, they were ſubdued by *Curius Dentatus* the *Roman* Conſul, and made a ſubject Province of that common-wealth, *A. V. C.* 463. But though the *Sabines*, at this time bare away the name, yet were they not ſole Maſters of it in theſe elder times; the greateſt part hereof being poſſeſſed by ſome Nations of the *Umbri*, whom by a general name they called *Vilumbri* (the *Sabines* interjected betwixt them and *Rome*) and as a member of that body, ſubdued together with the reſt of the *Umbri* by the conquering *Romans*. Afterwards in the diviſion of *Italy* made by *Antoninus*, it was called *Nurſia*; and in that made by *Conſtantine*, it was contained within the new Province of *Valeria*; *Reate* being the *Metropolis*, or head City of both. A Territory of no great circuit, but abundantly fruitful in Oyl or Olives, Vines and Fig-trees: watered with the River *Farfarus*, which cutteth through the very midſt of it; and with the Lake called anciently *Lacus Velinus* (now *Laco di Pedeluco*) eſteemed to be the Centre or Navel of *Italy* by ſome ancient Writers; the waters of which are of ſuch a nature, that in ſhort time they will cloath a piece of wood with a coat of ſtone, and yet yieldeth excellent Trouts, and other good Fiſh. The Towns and Cities of moſt note, are, 1. *Reate* (now called *Reite*) an ancient City, and the *Metropolis* heretofore of all this Tract; as well when it was called *Nurſia*, as when it was under the name of *Valeria*. 2. *Nurſia*, a City no leſs ancient, ſeated amongſt the Hills, which for the moſt part are covered with ſnow; from which Town, being heretofore of more reputation, the province of *Nurſia*, ſpoken of in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus*, took denomination. 3. *Magliano*, a pleaſant and well-peopled Town, at this time the principal of this Territory. 4. *Ocriculum*, built amongſt many Fruitful Hills, a mile from *Tiber*. 5. *Narnia*, the Country and Birth-place of the Emperor *Nerva*, the firſt of all the Emperours not born in *Rome*, as after him there were few born in it. The ſoyl about it is of ſo different and ſtrange a nature, that it is ſaid to be made dirty by the Sun and Winds, and duſty by Rain: the City well-peopled, and a Biſhops See, ſeated upon a very ſteep and craggy Hill, not far from the River *Nar* (now *Negro*) from which perhaps it took the name. A City given unto the Church of *Rome* by *Luitprandus*, King of the *Lombards*; of which the Popes of *Rome* having got poſſeſſion, never left practiſing til they had got into their power all the reſt of the Country. Little elſe famous in the whole Region of *Umbria*, but that in the Weſtern part thereof, is the Lake called *Lacus Vademonius*, near to *Ameria*, now called *Amelia*, a Town of the Dukedom, where *Dolobella* overthrew ſuch of the *Senones*, a valiant Nation of the *Galls*, as had eſcaped the Sword of *Camillus*, *Quinctius*, *Curius*, and other fortunate Commanders in the Wars againſt them; *Ne quis extaret in ea gente* (ſaith the Hiſtorian) *qui incenſam a ſe* Romam *gloriaretur*: a former ſlaughter being made of them by *Camillus*, on the banks of *Aniene*, the Eaſtern limit of theſe *Umbri*.

5. S. *PETERS PATIMONIE*, properly and ſpecially ſo called, is that part of *Tuſcanie* which appertains unto the Church; bounded upon the Eaſt with *Tiber*, which divides it from *Latium*, or *Campagna di Roma*: on the Weſt, with the River *Piſco*, which falleth into the Sea near the Mountain of *Argentario* and parteth it from the eſtate of the great Duke of *Tuſcanie*; on the North, with the *Apennine*, and the *Spoletan* Dukedom on the South, with the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. It took this new name preſently on the donation of the Counteſs *Matbildis*, who gave it for ever unto the Church, *An.* 110. (*Paſchal* the ſecond ſitting in the Chair of *Rome*) to be the *Patrimony* of S. *Peter*, and his ſucceſſors in that See. A Country not inferior unto any in *Italy*, for the fertility of the ſoyl: but for the moſt part of an unhealthy Air, by reaſon of the frequent overflowings of *Tiber*, and the thick woods which hinder that the winds cannot purge and cleanſe it.

The principal Cities, and places of moſt obſervation, are 1. *Perugia*, formerly called *Peruſia*; a famous Town; in which *Auguſtus* beſieged *L. Antonius* the brother, and *Fulvia* the wife of *M. Antony* the *Triumvir*, who when they had in vain attempted to ſeduce *Rome* from his party, repaired to this City; which alſo at the laſt, yielded to the more fortunate Emperor. *Auguſtus* afterwards, having much adorned and beautified it, cauſed it to be called *Auguſta*; but it returned not long after, to its ancient name. It is ſeated very pleaſantly on the banks of *Tiber*, not far from the *Apennine*, in a very rich and fruitful ſoil; well built both for the publick and private ſtructures; a Biſhops See and made an Univerſity, *An.* 1090. In the diſtructions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperours and the Popes, this City was ſeized on by the *Baillons*, who held it as Vicars of the Church. The *Oddies*, an oppoſite faction to them, having got together a ſtrong party of Malecontents, ſo ſuddenly entered one night into the City, that the *Baillons* began to fly: nor was there any thing to hinder them from being Maſters of the Palace, but the Chain which was drawn croſs the Gate. One of the Souldiers going about to cut this Chain, and wanting room to wield his arm, cryed aloud, *Give back*; which words being heard, but not well underſtood by thoſe furtheſt off, put them to their heels; and the foremoſt, which thought they fled not for nothing, ran away too. So the City was ſaved. 2. *Orvieto*, ſeated on ſo high a Rock, that it is no ſmall Ter-

rour

rour to look down from the top of it, into the vallies beneath; in which there is a Church of a wondrous lightneſs, and yet the Windows of the ſame (if we may credit *Adrianus* who reports it) are made of Alabaſter, inſtead of Glaſs. 3. *Viterbo*, famous for the long reſidence of the Popes, at ſuch time as they were affronted by the *Roman*-Senators. 4. *Civitas Vecchia* (called anciently *Centumcellæ*) the only uſeful Haven that belongeth to *Rome*; which being ruined by the *Saracens*, was rebuilt by the Popes, new named, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle for the defence of their Shipping. 5. *Porto*, ſeated on the mouth of *Tiber*, over againſt *Oſtia*; but cannot make one good Haven betwixt them both; a Biſhops See, who is one of the ſeven Cardinals which is always aſſiſtant to the Pope. 6. *Farneſe*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *Farneſi's*, now Dukes of *Parma*. 7. *Bracciano*, which gives the title of a Duke to a branch of the *Urſins*, a well-known Family of thoſe parts. 8. *Bacchano*, near the laſt in ſound, although not in ſite: compaſſed round about with Hills in form of a Theatre, having a fair Lake in the midd'ſt; out of which runneth the River *Cremera*, neer which the *Fabii* were ſlain.

Here was in this Country alſo the City of the *Veii*, affirmed to be as big as *Athens*, but queſtionleſs of great wealth and power; in a War againſt which, managed for the moſt part by the aforeſaid *Fabii*, 306 of them were ſlain in a day, at the Battel of *Cremera*, a petit River of the *Tuſcans*: only one little child of them being left at home, who reſtored the houſe; and was the Anceſtor of that *Fabius Maximus* who preſerved *Italy*, in the wars with *Annibal*. Of which great ſlaughter, thus ſaith *Ovid*.

——— *Veientibus Arvis*
Ter centum Fabii, *ter cecidere duo*.

——— On the *Veientine* Plain
Three hundred and ſix *Fabii* were ſlain.

This City of the *Veii* was at laſt after a ten-years ſiege taken by *Furius Camillus*, and by him levelled with the earth; becauſe he found that the common people of *Rome* had a mind to leave their own City, and inhabit here. Here is alſo that fatal River of *Allia*, nigh unto which *Brennus* and his *Galls*, (that people, as ſhall be ſhown hereafter, having 200 years before been drawn into *Italy*, by the ſweet taſte of the *Italian* Wines) ſlaughtered the *Romans*: the *Roman* Army at that time conſiſting of 40000 Souldiers, moſt of them being raw and unexperienced; the *Galls* not more in number, but naturally of a more fierce and hardy courage, and withal ſo big-boned, that it ſeemeth they were born to be the terrour of mankind, and the ruin of Cities. Which overthrow at *Allia*, and the vanquiſhment of the *Fabii*, happning in one day, though in divers years, occaſioned the old *Romans* to put that day among thoſe unfortunate days, on which they never did attempt any buſineſs of importance. The like cuſtom, whether on ſuperſtition, or fear of ill-luck, is uſed by many *Chriſtians*; and eſpecially on *Childermas-day*: on which *Philip de Comines* telleth us: that *Lewis* the 11. uſed not to debate of and matter, but accounted it a ſign of ſome great misfortune towards him, if any man communed with him of his affairs; and would be marvellouſly diſpleaſed with thoſe that were near him, if they troubled him with any matter whatſoever. In this particular, little leſs ſuperſtitious (if not more) than the ancient *Romans*. And finally, here is the famous Lake called *Thraſymene* (now *Lago di Perugia*, from the nearneſs of it to that City) where *Annibal* ſlew *Flaminius* the Conſul, and 15000 of his *Romans*: which fight continued three hours, with ſo great an eagerneſs, that the Souldiers perceived not a terrible Earthquake which at that time happened.

6. *CAMPAGNA di ROMA*, containeth that part of *Italy*, which anciently was called *Latium*, the habitation of the *Latins*, and ſeat of *Rome*; ſo called, for that it is adjoyning to that famous City, as the more proper Territory, and precinct thereof. It is ſometimes alſo called *Campania nova*, to difference it from *Campania* properly ſo called; the ſeat and dwelling of the *Campans*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with the ſaid *Campania*, from which it is parted by the River *Azofenus*; on the Weſt, with *Tiber*; on the North with *Umbria*, or the now *Ducato Spoletano*, and *Sabinia*; and on the South, with the *Tyrrenian*, or *Tuſcan* Sea: and came unto the Popes by no other Title, than as they had the Soveraignty and poſſeſſion of the City of *Rome*, to which it always did belong.

The old Inhabitants were the *Latins*, as before is ſaid, but ſubdivided into many petit and inferiour Tribes, ſuch as the *Æqui*, *Volſci*, *Fidenates*, and others of as little note, to the number of thirty, all vanquiſhed piece-meal by the *Romans*, firſt under the conduct of their Kings, and then of their Conſuls and Dictators. Broken at laſt by *L. Quintius* the Dictator, *A. V. C.* 295. they became aſſociates with the *Romans*, and ſo continued for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. But growing inſolent on the ſack of that City by the *Galls*, and impudently requiring that one Conſul yearly ſhould be choſen by and from themſelves, they drew the *Romans* into Arms: by whom ſubdued under the leading of *Manlius Torquatus*, and *Decius Mus*, then Conſuls, *A. V. C.* 413. Subject from that time forwards to the ſtate of *Rome*, but enjoying greater priviledges than the reſt of the conquered Nations did; excepting ſuch to whom the like were granted by eſpecial favour.

The chief place of it in old times was the City of *Alba*, then the Seat-Royal of the *Latin*, or *Sylvian* Kings, ruined by *Tullus Hoſtillius* the third King of *Rome*, in which War *Rome* and *Alba* being laid at the ſtake, the whole action was committed by the *Romans* to the *Horatii*; to the *Curatii*, by the *Albans*, being three Brethren of each ſide; in which it hapened that two of the *Horatii* were firſt ſlain, and the third counterfeiting a flight ſevered his enemies, and ſo ſlew them; whereby the *Albans* ever after became ſubject to *Rome*. 2. *Lavinium*, built by *Æneas* in honour of his Wife *Lavinia*. 3. *Antium*, honoured many times with the ſeat and retirement of the Emperors: the Country round about affording variety of Recreations. The people once very ſtrong in ſhipping till the taking of the Town by *Mevius* a *Roman* Conſul, who having broke their Forces at Sea, brought with them into *Rome* the Beaks of their Ships and other Veſſels, with which he decked and beautified the Pulpit for Orations (in the common *Forum*,) which have generally ever ſince been called *Roſtra*. This was the chief City of the ancient *Volſci*, a people very ſtrong in ſhipping though without an Haven: afterwards much frequented by the principal *Romans* in their retirements from the City, ſo that for pompous and ſtately buildings it might compare with any other. Out of the ruins of this Town long ago deſtroyed, ſprang the new City called *Neptunum*, ſituate on a Rock near unto the Sea, the ſteepneſs of which gives it natural ſtrength enough; and yet it is fortified beſides with two ſtrong Caſtles, ſurveying the Sea, and commanding the ſhore. 4. *Ardea*, the chief Town of the *Rutuli*, and ſeat of *Turnus*, the Rival and Competitour of *Æneas*: afterwards taken by *Superbus* the laſt King of the *Romans*; to which when the *Galls* had taken *Rome*, the miſerable Citizens were compelled

compelled to fly. 5. *Gabbi*, taken also by the same *Superbus*, whose Son *Sextus* counterfeiting some dislike of his Fathers cruelties, fled to the *Gabii*, by whom improvidently entrusted with the command of their City, which he betrayed unto the *Romans*. 6. *Ostia*, anciently the Port-Town to *Rome*, built at the mouth of *Tiber*, by *Ancus Martius*, the IV. King of *Rome*; but the Haven hath been long since dammed up, to stop the passage of the enemies Ships unto the City. The Bishop of this Town useth to consecrate the Pope. 7. *Prænestе*, first, conquered by the *Romans* under *Qu. Concinnatus* the Dictator. Nothing so much endamaged this City as its natural and artificial Fortifications: for when the *Romans* in the times of sedition abandoned the Town, they used to make this place their refuge. Among others *Marius* the younger made it the seat of War, against *L. Sylla*: but perceiving the unsuccessfulnels of his affairs, here killed himself; and *Sylla* entring it as Conquerour, put 12000 of the Citizens to the Sword. It hath since been so often sacked, that it is very short now of its former lustre; but still it holds the reputation of a Bishops See. 8. *Tibur*, an ancient City also, and seated in a healthy Air. It is now called *Tivoli*, where there is a Fountain, which with artificial Engins moved with Water, representeth the notes of divers Birds. A device very rare (it seemeth) in the time of *Adrianus*, who reporteth it; but now grown ordinary. In the perfection of which Art, as almost all Civil Nations may pretend a share; so I conceive that the priority herein doth belong of right unto the *French*: whose Master-pieces in this kind do far exceed the rest of *Europe*. For in the Kings house at St. *Germains*, seven miles from *Paris* (if it be lawful for me to digress a little on this Argument) one may behold the *Statua* of a Nymph, sitting before a pair of *Organs*: whose fingers by the help of Water, are taught to manage the keys in so due an order, and the instrument to yield such a Musick to it, as comes exceeding near the *Organ*, if it be not the same; her head in the mean time jolting from one shoulder to another, like an old Fidlers at a *Wake*; there being also not far off, the counterfeits of divers Mills, who very busily plyed their work till the Mutick sounded, and then stood still as if inchanted with the noise. In another place, upon the drawing of a Curtain, one may see two *Tritons* riding on their *Dolphins*, in a Sea of Water; each of them with a shell in his hand, which interchangeably and in turns served instead of Trumpets. In a third, the story of *Perseus* and *Andromeda* most lively acted; and in a fourth, *Orpheus in sylvis positus*, *Orpheus* playing on a Viol, the Trees moving, and the wild Beasts dancing in two rings about him, by the artificial guidance of the Waters only; the prety Birds in every place so chirping out their several and respective notes, that the hearer would conceive himself to be in some pleasant Grove. But it is time to go from *Tivoli* to 9. *Velitri* (called anciently *Velitræ*, and then a City of the *Volsci*) famous for the Birth of the Emperor *Augustus*, and the dwelling of the *Octavian* Family; a place most delectably seated amongst the Vines; which yields as rich Wines as most in *Italy*. 10. *Anxur*, so called of the Temple which was here dedicated to *Jupiter*; surnamed *Anxurus*, that is, *Beardless*; first built by the *Spartans*, who flying from the severity of *Lycurgus* his Laws, did here seat themselves, after a Colony of the *Volsci*, and at last of the *Romans*. But this Town being destroyed by the tyranny of time, there starteth up 11. *Terracina* in the place thereof, seated upon a Mountain, but near the Sea, which it embraceth like a half Moon (it is now called the Bay of *Mola*:) this City lying on the one horn thereof, in the very extremity of the Popes Dominions; and that of *Cajeta* on the other, which is the first Port-Town of the Realm of *Naples*. The Country hereabouts hath most pleasant Orchards, of Citrons, Oranges, and Limons; the Oranges having at the same time both ripe and Green Fruits, and represents a kind of Summer in the dead of Winter.

Such other things as are remarkable in this *Campagna* (heretofore called *Latium*) but more by what they have been, than they are at the present, are 1. *Tusculum*, a Village which belongeth to *Tully*, who here composed his excellent Book, called the *Tusculan Questions*. 2. *Formiæ*, built by the *Laconians*, heretofore the delight and solace of the ancient *Romans*, now visible only in its ruins. 3. *Privernum*, once the chief City of the *Volsci*, and the seat of *Camilla*, a noble *Amazonian* Lady; who aided *Turnus* the *Rutulian*, in his sharp War against *Æneas* and the *Trojans*, where she lost her life. 4. *Circe*, an old City (in the place whereof now stands S. *Felix*) the habitation of *Circe*, that so much celebrated *Sorceress*, of whom, and her chanting of *Ulysses* and his companions, there is so much upon record, in the ancient Poets. Near to which is the head-land called the *Circæan Promontory*, the repercussion of the Waves by whose Southern *Basis* makes a dreadful noise; and gave occasion to the fabulous inventions of the roaring of Lions, howling of Dogs, &c. which were heard about that Witches dwelling.

But the great glory of *Latium*, and indeed not of *Italy* only but of all the World, was, that the famous City of *ROME* was seated in it, being built on the East side of *Tiber*; now much inlarged by the increase of 42 lesser streams or Rivers. It is distant from the Sea about 15 miles, first built, as Fryer *Leander* a great *Italian* Antiquary is of opinion, by *Roma* Daughter or Wife to one of the *Latin* Kings. But being forsaken and forlorn, by reason of the unwholsom Air coming from the Fens, was rebuilt by *Romulus*, much pleased with the natural strength of the situation; and therefore like to make a good Town of War. And this tradition I should rather subscribe unto, than that it was called *Rome* from *Romulus*; who had he pleased to challenge the honour to himself, might better have caused it to be called *Romulea* (of which name there was a Town among the *Samnites*) than to call it *Roma*. But whatsoever greatness it did after come to, it was small enough (God knows) at first; the City comprehending the Mount *Palatine* only, and therefore not a mile in compass; the Territory not extending as *Strabo* witnesseth, above six miles from the City; and the Inhabitants thereof at the first general *Muster*, amounting at the most to 3300 men. So inconsiderable they were as well in quality as numbers, that their Neighbours thought it a disparagement to bestow their Daughters on them; and therefore they were fain to get themselves Wives by a slight of wit: proclaiming solemn Plays and Pastimes to be held in *Rome*, and ravishing the Women which came thither to behold the sports. The Kings succeeding much inlarged it. Mount *Aventine*, and the hill *Janiculum* on the other side of the Water, being walled and added to it by *Ancus Martius*; as *Quirinalis*, *Esquilinus*, and *Viminalis*, were by *Servius Tullus*; *Capitolinus* and Mount *Cælius*, came not in till afterwards. But at the last it was improved to such an height, that in the flourishing times of that Common-wealth, the men encreased to the number of 463000, and the compass of the Town unto 50 miles; there being on and about the walls 740 Turrets. And in this number of 463000 men, I reckon neither Servants, Women, nor Children, but men able to bear Arms; *Free-Denizens*, and such as were inrolled into *Censi*, or the Subsidie-Books. To which

is

if we ſhould add their Wives, Children, and Servants, we cannot probably conjecture them to have been fewer than three or four Millions: and ſo *Lipſius* is of opinion, in his Tract *de Magnitudine Romana*. The moſt memorable buildings of it, were firſt the *Capitol*, founded by *Tarquinius Superbus*, and beautified with the ſpoils of their conquered Neighbours; ſaved from the fury of the *Galls* by the cackling of Geeſe. *Tacitus* calleth this houſe, *Sedem Jovis optimi maximi, auſpicatò à majoribus pignus imperii conditum*. It was twice burnt, once in the Civil Wars of *Sylla* and *Marius*; and again in the Wars of *Veſpaſian* and *Vitellius*. In the third building of it, *Veſpaſian* carried the firſt basket of Earth; after him the Nobility did the like, to make the people more forward in the ſervice: and perhaps the cuſtome of laying the firſt ſtone in a building, or driving the firſt nail in a timber-work, by him whoſe edifice it is; hath, from hence, if not beginning, yet growth. 2. Here was the Temple of *Janus* open in the time of wars, and ſhut in the time of peace; which, during all their Monarchy, hapned but thrice: namely during the reign of *Auguſtus*, after the firſt *Punick* War, and in the time of *Numa*. 3. Here was the Bridge called *Pons Sublicius*, on which *Horatius Cocles* reſiſted the whole Army of King *Porſena*, *Tarquin*, and the *Tuſcans*; till the Citizens behind had broken down the bridge, received him ſwiming to the bank with joyful acclamations, and ſaved their City from preſent ruin. Here lived the famous Warriers, ſo much renowned in the ſtories of elder times; here flouriſhed the exact Martial diſcipline, ſo memorized by ancient Hiſtoriographers: and finally, here were laid up the ſpoils and Trophies of all *Europe*.

ROME, as now it ſtandeth lower on the bank of *Tiber* upon *Campus Martius*, (where it was built after the inundation of the *Goths* and *Vandals*) is in compaſs about eleven miles, within which compaſs is not a little waſte ground. The Inhabitants of all ſorts reckoned to amount to 200000, two parts whereof are Clergymen and Courtiers; that is to ſay, ſuch as have their dependance on the Court of *Rome*, either by holding Offices and places of employment under the Popes, or by attending on his perſon, or waiting on the Cardinals and eminent Prelates who are there abiding; or otherwiſe being of the retinue of ſuch foreign Ambaſſadors as are always commorant in the City, to follow the Negotiations of their ſeveral Maſters; all which muſt needs amount to a very great number. It was firſt built on the Eaſt-ſide of the River in the Territory of *Latium*, but now there is little left of the old City but the goodly ruins; and here and there ſome Churches and ſcattered houſes (except it be a little on the North-Eaſt of the River, from the Gate called *Del populo*, to the Iſland of *Tiber*): the reſt, eſpecially towards South, being taken up with paſtures and fields of Corn. The main body of the City, as now it ſtands is on the Weſt-ſide of the water, and the *Holy Iſland*, conſiſting of three diſtinct parts or members. Of theſe the leaſt is that which they call *La Iſola*, but anciently the *Holy Iſland*; firſt made an Iſland by the Corn, Straw, and other goods of the *Tarquins*, which the Senate not vouchſafing to convert to any publick or private uſe, commanded to be flung into the River; where it ſunk and ſetled to an Iſland, called afterwards the *Holy Iſland*, from a Temple herein built unto *Æſculapius*, brought hither from *Epidaurus*, in the ſhape of a Serpent. This Iſland is not above a quarter of a mile in length, and hardly half ſo much in breadth: but full of ſtately Churches and beautiful houſes. Next to this is that which they call *Traſtavere*, or *Tranſ-Tiberina*; but of old *Janiculo*, from the Mountain of that name included in it: Called alſo *Civitas Ravennatium*, or the City of the men of *Ravenna*, of the Souldiers which *Auguſtus* kept at *Ravenna* againſt *Antonius*; and after placed in this out-part of the City, which by reaſon of the unwholſomneſs of the air, is inhabited only by Artizans and poor people; yet compaſſed about with walls, except on that ſide next the water, and adorned with many goodly Churches and ſome handſom buildings. But the chief glory of the City conſiſteth in that part of it which is called *Il Borgo*, lying on the North ſide of the other, but diſ-joyned from it; compaſſed about with walls by Pope *Leo* the 4. and from thence called *Civitas Leonina*. For in this part there are, 1. the Church of S. *Peter*, which were it once finiſhed, would be one of the rareſt buildings in all the World. 2. The Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, impregnable unleſs by Famine. 3. The Popes Palace, called *Belvidere*, which with the Gardens thereof was compaſſed about with a very high wall, by Pope *Nicolas* the 5. And had his name from the fair proſpect which it hath: in the ſame ſence, as *Belvoir* Caſtle here in *England*, the Barony and Manſion of the Earls of *Rutland*. A Palace of magnificence and receipt enough. 4. The Library of the Hill *Vatican*, properly called the *Palatine*, but more commonly the *Vatican* Library: a Library firſt founded by *Sextus* the 4. who not only ſtored it with the choiceſt Books he could pick out of *Europe*; but allowed alſo a large revenue for the perpetual augmentation of it. *Bibliothecam* Palatinam *in* Vaticano, *toto terrarum orbe celebrem, advectis ex omni* Europa *libris conſtruxit; proventuſq; certos, &c.* So *Onuphrius*. When the Duke of *Burbon* ſacked *Rome*, *Anno* 1527. it was much defaced and ranſacked; but by the ſucceeding Popes it hath been again recovered to its former fame, and beauty. *Rome* is now an Univerſity, which was founded by *Urban* the fourth, at whoſe requeſt *Thomas Aquinas* profeſſed here. Pope *Nicolas* the fifth was a ſpecial benefactor to the ſame; and after him, *Leo* the tenth, who revived the *Greek* Learning and Language, which were in theſe parts almoſt forgotten. And finally, to this place are brought all the treaſures of thoſe parts of Chriſtendom ſubject to the Popes authority: partly for the expence of ſtrangers, which do there remain on their ſeveral pleaſures or occaſions; and partly for the expeditions which are there obtained, for the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhopricks, and *Buls* of Benefices, Indulgences and other matters of *Court-holy-water*; and partly in the Penſions, which are paid there to the Cardinals and other Miniſters of thoſe Kings and Princes, which know beſt how to make their ends of the Popes ambitions. So that it may be truly ſaid, there came not more Tributes into *old-Rome* from the conquered Provinces, than hath been brought into the *New* from the ſubject Churches, which have ſubmitted to the power of the *Roman* Prelates: and that they have as great command now under the pretence of *Religion*, as ever they had formerly by force of Arms. So truly was it ſaid by *Proſper* of *Aquitane*, (if memory fail not)

Roma *caput mundi, quicquid non poſſidet* Armis,
Religione *tenet*,———

That is to ſay,

What *Rome* ſubdu'd not with the Sword.
She holds by colour of the Word.

But yet there wants the *Genius* of the ancient City, the power and natural courage of the old Inhabitants, which held the ſame againſt the bravery and aſſaults of all foreign Enemies: this City during the time of the ancient *Romans*, being never took but by the *Galls*; but

ſince

since *Pontifical*, it hath been made a Prey to all Barbarous Nations, and never was besieged by any that did not take it. In a word, the City of *Rome* as now it standeth, is but the carkass of the old, of which it retains nothing but the ruins, and the cause of them, her sins.

The Popes do much brag of the foundation of their Church, and the authority of St. *Peter*; whose being there is indeed constantly attested by most ancient Writers; insomuch that *Calvin*, though no friend to the Popes of *Rome*, yet *propter Scriptorum consensum*, in regard of the unanimous consent of the primitive times, did not think fit to controvert it. The silence of the Scriptures is a *Negative Argument*, and concludes nothing to the contrary; against so great a *Cloud* of unquestioned *Witnesses*, as soberly and positively have affirmed the same. And yet I would not have it thought by the captious *Romanists*, that I conceive that it makes any thing at all for the Pope's *Supremacy*, because he sits in *Peter*'s seat; no more than it did make for *Vibius Rufus* (as *Dion* doth relate the story) to attain *Tully*'s eloquence, or *Cæsar*'s power, because he married *Tully*'s Widow, and bought *Cæsar*'s Chair: though the poor Gentleman did befool himself with this opinion, that he should be Master of them both. Of which see *Libi LVII.* And yet the Popes relie so much upon this fancy, of being the direct heirs of St. *Peter*, and all his preheminencies, that all things which they say or do, must be entituled to St. *Peter*. Their Throne must be St. *Peter*'s *Chair*, their Church St. *Peter*'s *Ship*, their Lands St. *Peter*'s *Patrimony*, their Tributes and Exactions must be called *Peter-pence*; their Excommunications fulminated in St. *Peter*'s name; and all their Buls and Faculties sealed *Annulo Piscatoris*, with St. *Peter*'s Signet. Nay, they went so far at the last, that Pope *Steven* not being contented to be *Peter*'s Successor, did take upon him in plain tearms to be *Peter* himself. For being distressed by *Astulphus* King of the *Lombards*, he sends for aid unto King *Pepin* in this following stile. *Petrus Apostles* JESU CHRISTI, &c. *i. e.* Peter *the Apostle of* JESUS CHRIST, *to you the most Illustrious King* Pepin, *and to all Bishops, Abbots*, &c. *I the Apostle* Peter, *whose adopted sons you are, admonish that you presently come and defend this City*, &c. And *doubt you not, but trust assuredly, that I my self, as if I stood before you, do thus exhort you*, &c. And *that I* Peter *the* Apostle *of God, will at the last day yield you mutual kindnesses, and prepare you* Tabernacles *in the Heavens*. *Baronius* who records this Letter, *Anno* 755. numb. 17. was, it seems, prety well perswaded of it, that the Pope and *Peter* were all one. For in his Exhortation or *Parænesis* to the State of *Venice*, being then upon some differences with Pope *Paul* the fifth, he stileth him in plain tearms thus, *Paulus idemque* Petrus *vicem* Christi *agens in terris*, i. e. *Paul*, who is also *Peter*, and Christs Vicegerent, &c. But leaving these imaginary claims and challenges of St. *Peter*'s priviledges, though they did really advance the reputation of that See in the darker Ages two things there were which did exceedingly conduce to the improvement of their power, in the more knowing and discerning times of *Christianity*. Of which the principal, was, the Orthodoxy of the Bishops or Popes of *Rome*, their eminent and sincere profession of the Faith of *Christ*; when almost all the other Churches were either torn in pieces by the fury of *Schism*, or wasted and subverted by the fraud of *Heresie*. In which regard, Appeals were frequently made to the Church of *Rome*, as a more competent Judge of the truth of Doctrine; the *communion* of it much desired by all true *Christians*; and a repair thither for relief and shelter in the times of trouble, made by the *Orthodox* Professors under persecution. And of these times, and this condition of that Church, we are to understand such passages of the Ancient Writers, as magnifie the Faith of the Church of *Rome*, and set it above all the batteries and assaults of *Heresie*. Such is that passage of St. *Cyprian*, Romanos *esse ad quos perfidia non potest habere accessum*, lib. 1. ep. 3. and that of *Hierome*, Romanam *fidem* (*i. e. Romanorum fidem*) *Apostolica voce laudatam, ejusmodi præstigias non recipere*, in *Apol. cont Ruffin.* and many others of that kind. Which passages it were as fooliish and ridiculous to apply to all following times; the condition of that Church being different, from what then it was; as to accommodate all those *Elogies* and commendations to the present City of *Rome*; which the Orators and Panegyrists of the elder times have *hyperbolically* ascribed to old *Rome* in her greatest glories. The next was the fixation of the Popes in the *Metropolis*, or Imperial City; which drawing to it such a multitude of suiters and attendants from all parts of the world, could not but add much to the power and reputation of those Prelates, who had the happiness and honor to be resident there: and thereby opportunity to gain more *Diciples* to solve more doubts of conscience, and decide more controversies, than any other could expect. And so we are to understand that passage in St. *Irenæus*, in which he saith, *Ad hanc Ecclesiam propter potentiorem* Principalitatem, *necesse est omnem convenire Ecclesiam*, i. e. *eos qui sunt undiq; Ecclesiæ*. And so they did as long as *Rome* enjoyed the honour of a more potent *Principality* than other Cities. But when that more potent *Principality* failed to be at *Rome*, by the removal of the Imperial See, first to *Constantinople*, and afterwards unto *Ravenna*, then did the Bishops of *Constantinople* and *Ravenna*, dispute with those of *Rome* for Superiority; the chief seat of Religion most commonly following the seat of the Empire. And in this claim the Patriarch or Bishop of *Constantinople* prevailed so far, that with the permission of *Mauritius* the Emperor, he took upon him the title of *Universal Patriarch*. *Gregory* the Great (of whom it is said that he was the worst Bishop of all that went before him, and the best of all that came after him) was at that time Bishop of *Rome*: who sharpiy inveighed as well against the Emperor, as the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, for this Title; and plainly maintained, that whosoever called himself *Universal Bishop*, was the forerunner of *Antichrist*. As for himself it is probable that he took the title of *Servus servorum Dei*, more in opposition to him of *Constantinople*, than with an intent to be so truly. To which though those of *Rome* reply that *Gregory* did not absolutely condemn this Title, but only blamed *John* the *Constantinopolitan* Patriarch, for assuming to himself that attribute, which properly belonged to the See of *Rome*; yet this cannot be. For then either in the old Buls of the former Popes, we should find mention of this Title; or else Pope *Gregory* would have assumed it to himself, that the world might take notice to whom of right it did belong. But *Boniface*, who next but one succeeded *Gregory*, having further aims applied himself to *Phocas* that bloody Tyrant: who having murthered the Emperor *Mauritius*, his Wife and Children, and thereby got the general hatred of all the good Subjects of the Empire, the better to assure himself of *Italy*, which he feared was ready to revolt, declared this *Boniface* to be the *Oecumenical* Bishop, and *Head of the Church*. To such a good beginning, such a gracious Patron do the Popes stand indebted for that power and Empire, which now they challeng to themselves over all the *Church*.

Now as the Bishop of *Constantinople*, and *Ravenna*, did challenge a priority or precedency, of the Popes of *Rome*; by reason that they were respectively honoured with the Seat *Imperial*; so were there divers other Bishops, as *Antioch*, *Alexandria*, *Carthage*, *Millain*, which

claimed an equality with them; and would by no means yield them any superiority. For trial of whose claim, we must look back on somewhat which hath been said before; where it is shown, that the *Roman* Empire was divided into fourteen *Dioceses*; each *Diocese* being subdivided into several Provinces; each Province comprehending many several Cities: then, that in every of those Cities, where the *Romans* had their *Defensores*, the *Christians* also had a Bishop: in the *Metropolis* of each Province, which commonly was the seat of the *Roman President*, the *Christians* had their *Metropolitan*; and that in each principal City of each several *Diocese*, wherein the *Vicar* of that *Diocese* had fixed his dwelling, there did the *Christians* place a *Primate*. And this was done according to that famous *Maxim* of *Optatus*, *Respublica non est in Ecclesia, sed Ecclesia est in Republica*, that the Church is in the Common-wealth; and not the Common-wealth in the Church. Upon which foundation the Fathers in the Counsel of *Chalcedon*, raised this superstructure, Ἐκκλησιαστικὸς τὴν τάξιν, &c. that the honours of the Church should be accommodated unto those in State. So that according to this Platform, the *Primates* of the Church were of equal power, each of them limited and restrained to his proper Sphere; out of the which if he presume once to act, he moved *irregularly*, and in his *Eccentricks*. And for those *Primates*, I shall give you once for all, this general Muster, that is to say, the Patriarch or Pope of *Rome*, for the Diocese or Præfecture of that City; the Primate or Archbishop of *Millain*, for the Diocese of *Italy*; of *Syrmium*, for that of *Illyricum*; of *Lyons*, for that of *France*; of *York*, for *Britain*; *Toledo*, for *Spain*; and of *Carthage*, for *Africk*. Then for the East parts of the Empire, there was the Patriarch of *Alexandria*, for the Diocese of *Egypt*; of *Antioch*, for that of the *Orient*; the Primate or Archbishop of *Ephesus*, for the Diocese of *Asia*, of *Nicomedia*, for that of *Pontus*; of *Byzantium*, or *Constantinople*, for that of *Thrace*; of *Thessolonica*, for the Diocese of *Greece*, and of *Justiniana prima*, for that of *Dacia*. Amongst all which there was a mutual correspondence and *Co-ordination*, for the general Government of the Church; maintained by Letters of intercourse, which they called *Literas formatas*, and *Communicatorias*; but no subordination, and much less subjection, unto one another, as doth appear most evidently by the Canons of the Council of *Nice*, assigning to the three great Patriarchs their peculiar bounds, according to the custom of the former times. As for the *Diocese* or *Patriarchate* of the Popes of *Rome*, it contained in it those ten Provinces, which were immediately subject to the Præfect or *Povost* of that City (an Officer first instituted by *Augustus Cæsar*) that is to say, the Provinces of *Tuscia* and *Umbria*, *Picenum Suburbicarium*, *Campania*, *Apulia* and *Calabria*, *Valeria*, *Samnium*, *Lucana* and the *Brutii*, in the main Land of *Italy*; and the three Islands of *Sicily*, *Corsica*, and *Sardinia*. In which regard, (I mean as to the immediate Government of those Provinces by the *Prefect* of the City of *Rome*) as they are called *Regiones Suburbicariæ*, by *Ruffinus* an *Italian* Writer; so anciently the Pope himself was called *Urbicus*, or the City Bishop, as appears plainly by *Optatus*, who calleth Pope *Zepherinus*, *Zepherinus Urbicus*. But the Popes were not long content with that allotment, growing up daily by a steddy and constant watchfulness upon all occasions, to encrease the Grandeur of that See; and taking to themselves the honor to be *Vindices Canonum*, the strict and punctual preservers of the ancient Discipline which took extreamly well with all sorts of people. Till in the end from being *Vindices Canonum*, they came to be Interpreters and at last the Rulers, or rather the *Over-rulers* of the *Canons*; and from chief Labourers in the Vineyard, they became the Landlords: which was the honour aimed at, and at last obtained by the foresaid *Bonifacе*, whom that cruel and butcherly Tyrant *Phocas* made the *Head of the Church*, the sixty sixth Bishop and first Pope of *Rome*: the *Latin* word *Papa* coming from the old *Greek* Πάππας, signifying a Father. A Title at the first common unto other Bishops, as is evident to any one, who hath read the *Fathers*; but after this, appropriated unto those of *Rome*. Of these Popes, their Succession, and times of Government, our *Chronologers* are very uncertain: not one of them that ever I had the luck to see, agreeing exactly with another. The reasons whereof, as I conceive, are, 1. The frequent *Vacancies*; and 2. the many *Schisms* which have hapned in it; and 3. the *Anti-Popes* in them created: the Writers of those times accounting him only among the Popes, to whose faction they were most devoted. This Catalogue ensuing I have collected principally out of the Tables of *Helvicus*, *Freigius*, *Bellarmine*, and *Onuphrius*, whose differences I have reconciled as well as possibly I could: premonishing the Reader, that where the number of years which every Pope is found to sit in the *Papal Chair*, makes not up the full number from his first admission, to the coming in of his Successor; it must be understood of some *Schism* or *Vacancy*, hapning in the Interval, by which the tale is to be made up. And for the difficulties which occurr amongst the Antients, in the first Succession, some placing of them thus, *Linus*, *Cletus*, *Clemens*; some *Linus*, *Clemens*, *Cletus*; and finally some others putting *Clemens* the first, I know no better way to compose the same, than to affirm (as many of the Fathers do) that St. *Peter* and St. *Paul* were Co-founders of the Church in *Rome*; St. *Peter* of the Church of the *Circumcision*, and St. *Paul* of the *Gentiles*; each of them being Bishop of the Church of his own foundation: and then to draw down the Succession in this manner following.

The Bishops of *Rome*.

A. Ch.

44 1 St. *Peter*, Bishop of the Churches of the *Circumcision*.

70 2 *Cletus*, or *Anacletus*, Successor to St. *Peter* in the Churches of the *Circumcision*. 23.

59 1 St. *Paul* Bishop of the Churches of the *Gentiles*.

70 2 *Linus*, Successor to St. *Paul* in the Church of the *Gentiles*. 11.

81 3 *Clemens* having succeeded *Linus* first in the Church of the *Gentiles*, did after, *Anno* 93. succeed *Cletus* also in the Church of the *Jews*, reckoned by some the next Successor to St. *Peter*, because the next who after him had the charge of the whole; the Church of the *Gentiles* not being founded, or not distinguished from the other, till some years after *Peter*'s coming.

103 4 *Anacletus* 9.
112 5 *Euaristus* 9.
121 6 *Alexander* 16 *m.* 5 *d.*
131 7 *Sixtus* 10.
142 8 *Telesphorus* 12.
154 9 *Hyginus* 4.
158 10 *Pius* 9.
167 11 *Ancetus* 8 *m.* 9.
175 12 *Soter* 4.
179 13 *Eleutherius* 15.
194 14 *Victor* 9.
203 15 *Zepherinus* 18.
221 16 *Calistus* 5.
226 17 *Urbanus* 6 *m.* 7 *d.*
233 18 *Pontianus* 5.
238 19 *Antherus* 1.
239 20 *Fabianus* 14.
253 21 *Cornelius* 2.
255 22 *Lucius* 1 *m.* 8.
256 23 *Stephanus* 3 *m.* 3.
260 24 *Sixtus*, or *Xistus* II. 2
262 25 *Dionysius* 10.

272 26 *Felix*

272 26 *Felix* 2 *m.* 5 *d.*
275 27 *Eutichanus* 8.
283 28 *Caius* 13.
296 29 *Marcellinus* 8
304 30 *Marcellus* 5.
309 31 *Eusebius* 2.
311 32 *Miltiades* 3.
314 33 *Sylvester* 22.
336 34 *Marcus m.* 8.
337 35 *Julius* 15 *m.* 5.
352 36 *Liberius* 15 *cui vivo Felix suffectus.*
367 37 *Damasus* 18.
385 38 *Syricius* 13.
398 39 *Anastasius* 4.
402 40 *Innocentius* 15.
417 41 *Zosymus* 1 *m.* 4.
419 42 *Bonifacius* 5.
424 43 *Celestinus* 8 *m.* 5.
432 44 *Sixtus* III. 8.
440 45 *Leo magn* 21.
461 46 *Hilarius* 6 *m.* 10.
468 47 *Simplicius* 15 *m.* 5.
483 48 *Felix* III. 9.
492 49 *Gelasius* 4.
597 50 *Anastasius* II. 2.
499 51 *Symmachus* 15.
514 52 *Hormisda* 9.
523 53 *Joannes* I. 2 *m.* 9 *d.*
526 54 *Felix* IV. 4.
530 55 *Bonifacius* II. 1.
532 56 *Joannes* II. 3.
535 57 *Agapetus* 1.
536 58 *Sylverius* 1.
537 59 *Vigilius* 18.
555 60 *Pelagius* 5.
560 61 *Joannes* III. 13.
573 62 *Benedictus* 4.
578 63 *Pelagius* II. 12.
590 64 *Gregorius Mag.* 14.
605 65 *Sabinianus* 1. the last of the *Roman* Bishops, not having that arrogant Title of *Universal Bishop*, or *Head of the Church.*

The Popes of *Rome* challenging a Supremacy over all the Church.

606 1 *Bonifacius* III. 3.
607 2 *Bonifacius* IV. 8.
615 3 *Deus-dedit* 3.
618 4 *Bonifacius* V. 5 *m.* 10
624 5 *Honorarius* 13.
634 6 *Severinus* 2.
639 7 *Joannes* IV. 2.
641 8 *Theodorus* 7 *m.* 5.
649 9 *Martinus* 6.
654 10 *Eugenius* 2 *m.* 9.
657 11 *Vitalianus* 14.
671 12 *A-Deo-datus.*
677 13 *Domnus* 1 *m.* 5 *d.*
679 14 *Agatho* 4.
683 15 *Leo* II *m.* 10.
684 16 *Benedictus* II. 1.
685 17 *Joannes* V. 1.
686 18 *Cononim* 11.
688 19 *Sergius* 13.
701 20 *Joannes* VI. 3.
704 21 *Joannes* VII. 3.
707 22 *Sisinnius d.* 20.
707 23 *Constantinus* 7.
714 24 *Gregorius* II. 17.
731 25 *Greg* III. 10 *m.* 9.
742 26 *Zacharias* 10.
752 27 *Stephanus* II. *d.* 4.
752 28 *Stephanus* III. 5.
757 29 *Paulus* I. 10.
767 30 *Constans* II. 1.
768 31 *Stephanus* IV. 4.
772 32 *Adrianus* I. 23.
796 33 *Leo* III. 20.
816 34 *Stephanus* V. *m.* 7.
817 35 *Paschalis* 7.
824 36 *Eugenius* II. 3.
827 37 *Valentinus d.* 4.
827 38 *Gregorius* IV. 16.
843 39 *Sergius* II. 3.
846 40 *Leo* IV. 8.
854 41 *Joannes* VIII. *vulgò* POPE JOANE. 2.
856 42 *Benedictus* III. 2.
858 43 *Nicolaus* 10.
868 44 *Adrianus* II. 5.
873 45 *Joannes* IX. 10.
883 46 *Martinus* II. 1.
884 47 *Adrianus* III. 1.
885 48 *Stephanus* VI. 6.
891 49 *Formosus* 4.
895 50 *Bonifacius* VI. *d.* 15.
896 51 *Stephanus* VII. 1.
897 52 *Romanus m.* 4.
897 53 *Theodorus* II. *d.* 20.
897 54 *Joannes* X. 2.
899 55 *Benedictus* IV. 2.
903 56 *Leo* V. *d.* 40.
903 57 *Christophorus m.* 7.
903 58 *Sergius* III. *m.* 7.
910 59 *Anastasius* III. 2.
912 60 *Lando m.* 6.
912 61 *Joannes* XI. 15.
928 62 *Leo* VI. *m.* 6.
929 63 *Stephanus* VIII. 2.
931 64 *Joannes* XII. 5.
936 65 *Leo* VII. 4.
940 66 *Stephanus* IX. 3.
943 67 *Martinus* III. 3.
946 68 *Agapetus* II. 9.
956 69 *Joannes* XIII. 8.
964 70 *Leo* VIII. 1.
965 71 *Benedictus* V. 1.
966 72 *Joannes* XIV. 7.
973 73 *Benedictus* VI. *m.* 6.
974 74 *Domnus* II. 1 *m.* 3.
975 75 *Bonifacius* VII. 1.
976 76 *Benedictus* VII. 8.
984 77 *Joannes* XV. 1.
985 78 *Joannes* XVI. 10.
995 79 *Joannes* XVII. 4.
996 80 *Gregorius* V. 3 *m.*
999 81 *Sylvester* II. *dictus Necromanticus* 4.
1003 82 *Joannes* XVIII. *m.* 5
1003 83 *Joannes* XIX. 6.
1009 84 *Sergius* IV. 3.
1012 85 *Benedictus* VIII. 12.
1024 86 *Joannes* XX. 8 *m.* 9
1033 87 *Benedictus* IX. 12.
1045 88 *Silvester* III. *m.* 1.
1045 89 *Benedictus* X. *m.* 1.
1045 90 *Gregorius* VI. 1 *m.* 7
1047 91 *Clemens* II. *m.* 9.
1047 92 *Damasus* II. *d.* 23.
1049 93 *Leo* IX. 5.
1055 94 *Victor* II. 2.
1057 95 *Stephanus* X. 1 *m.* 6.
1059 96 *Nicolaus* II. 2 *m.* 6.
1062 97 *Alexander* II. 11.
1073 98 *Gregorius* VII. *dictus Hildebrandus* 12.
1086 99 *Victor* III. 1.
1087 100 *Urbanus* II. 12.
1099 101 *Paschalis* II. 18.
1118 102 *Gelasius* II. 1.
1119 103 *Calistus* II. 6.
1125 104 *Honorius* II. 5.
1130 105 *Innocens* II. 13.
1143 106 *Celestin* II. *m.* 5.
1144 107 *Lucius* II. *m.* 11.
1145 108 *Eugenius* III. 8.
1153 109 *Anastasius* IV. 1.
1154 110 *Adrian* IV. 4.
1159 111 *Alexand.* III. 22.
1181 112 *Lucius* III. 4.
1185 113 *Urban* III. 2.
1187 114 *Gregorius* VIII *m.* 2
1188 115 *Clements* III. 3.
1191 116 *Celestine* III. 6.
1198 117 *Innocent* III. 17.
1216 118 *Honorius* III. 10.
1227 119 *Gregorius* IX. 14.
1241 120 *Celestin* IV. *d.* 17.
1243 121 *Innocent* IV. 11.
1254 122 *Alexander* IV. 6.
1261 123 *Urbanus* IV. 3.
1265 124 *Clemens* IV. 3.
1271 125 *Gregorius* X. 14.
1275 126 *Innocent* V. *m* 5.
1276 127 *Adrian* V. *d.* 19.
1276 128 *Joannes* XXI. *d.* 8.
1277 129 *Nicolaus* III. 4.
1281 130 *Martinus* IV. 4.
1285 131 *Honorius* IV. 4.
1288 132 *Nicolaus* IV. 4.
1294 133 *Celestin* V. *m.* 6.
1295 134 *Bonifacius* VIII. 8
1303 135 *Benedictus* IX. *m.* 8
1305 136 *Clemens* V. 9.
1316 137 *Joannes* XXII. 18
1334 138 *Benedict.* X. 7.
1342 139 *Clemens* VI. 10.
1352 140 *Innocent* VI. 10.
1362 141 *Urban* V. 8.
1371 142 *Gregorius* XI. 7.
1378 143 *Urban* VI. 11.
1389 144 *Boniface* IX. 14.
1404 145 *Innocent* VII. 2.
1406 146 *Gregorius* XII. 2.
1409 147 *Alex.* V. *m.* 10.
1410 148 *Joannes* XXIII. 5.
1417 149 *Martin* V. 13.
1431 150 *Eugenius* IV. 16.
1447 151 *Nicolaus* V. 8.
1455 152 *Callistus* III. 3.
1458 153 *Pius* II. *ante dictus Æneas Sylvius.* 6.
1464 154 *Paulus* II. 7.
1471 155 *Sixtus* IV. 12.
1484 156 *Innocent* VIII. 7.
1492 157 *Alexander* VI. 11.
1503 158 *Pius* III. *d.* 26.
1503 159 *Julius* II. 10.
1513 160 *Leo* X. 9.
1522 161 *Adrian* VI. 2.
1524 162 *Clemens* VII. 10.
1534 163 *Paulus* III. 15.
1550 164 *Julius* III. 5.
1555 165 *Marcellus* II. *d.* 22.
1555 166 *Paulus* IV. 5.
1560 167 *Pius* IV. 6.
1567 168 *Pius* V. 5.
1572 169 *Gregorius* XIII. 13
1585 170 *Sixtus* V. 5.
1590 171 *Urban* VII. *d.* 12.
1590 172 *Grego.* XIV. *m.* 9.
1591 173 *Innocent* IX. *m.* 1.
1592 174 *Clement* VIII. 13.
1605 175 *Leo* XI. *d.* 26.
1605 176 *Paulus* V. 16.
1621 177 *Greg.* XV. 2.
1623 178 *Urban* VIII. 21.
1644 179 *Innocent* X. now living.

To these one hundred seventy nine Popes, add the sixty five Bishops which preceded that arrogant title of *Universal*, and they make up the full number of two hundred forty four. How many are to come, he must be a cunning man that can determine. And yet such cunning men there have been, who have determined positively, but withal, Prophetically, of the number of Popes; by name St. *Malachy* one of the first Apostles of the *Irish* Nation, very much honoured by that people to this very day. Of whom there is remaining in *Mussinghams* collection of the *Irish* Saints, a certain number of *Mottoes*, in the *Latin* tongue; agreeable to the nature or chief accidents of as many Popes successively to one another, according to the order of those several *Mottoes*: and thereunto this Propheſie annexed, that when so many Popes had sate in St. *Peters* Chair, either

either the World should end, or the Popedom fail. The Book was shewed to me by the Author, when I was at *Paris*, and the Popes names in order joyned to every *Motto*, as far as to the time of *Urban*, who last deceased; which I compared as well as memory would serve me, and found the *Mottoes* and the Popes to be very answerable. The *Motto* for Pope *Urban*, which I took most notice of, was, *Lilium* and *Rosa*: a *Motto* very sutable to the principal Action which was like to happen in his time, being the conjunction of the *English Rose*, and the *French Lily*; in the marriage of *Charles* King of *England*, and Madam *Henrietta Maria* the Princess of *France*; which that Pope earnestly promoted, in his speedy and cheerful granting of the Dispensation. And to take from me all suspicion of Imposture, this *Massingham* shewed me an old Book written by one *Wion* a *Fleming*, and printed neer 200 years before his Collection; in which the *Mottoes* stood as in his they did, and comparing the *Mottoes* with a printed Catalogue of the Popes, I found the name of *Urban*, and that *Motto*, to jump even together. From *Urban* down-wards there remained (as I now remember) 36 *Mottoes* more to come; by consequence, if this *Malachy* were as true a Prophet as one *Malachy* was, just so many Popes, and then the Popedom to be ruined, or the World to end. But I hope God for his *Elects* sake will abridge those days, and not permit the superstitions and the corruptions of that Church to endure so long; nor so many Assertiors and Defenders of those *Roman Heterodoxies*, to be added to the former number. Out of the stories of all which (pretermitting many things of less consideration) I will only select some few passages, for the better understanding of their state and story.

1. *Pelagius* the first, ordained that *Hereticks* and *Schismaticks* should be punished with temporal death; which severity continueth still: and that none should be preferred to Ecclesiastical dignities by Gifts, and Bribes; which pious order is long since adequated.

2. *Vitalianus*, first brought *Organs* into the Divine service of the Church of *Rome*, to be used with the singing or vocal Musick formerly in use; which afterwards was brought unto more perfection by the Popes succeeding.

3. *Constantine* was so generally beloved of all men, that going to *Constantinople*, *Justinian* the second kist his feet in sign of honour, which some of the ambitious Popes in times succeeding, drew into example, and at last brought into a custom, as it still continueth.

4. *Pascal* the first, caused the Priests of certain Parishes in *Rome*, by reason of their nearness to his person, their presence at his Election, and to honour them with a more venerable Title, to be called *Cardinals*. Now mates for Kings, and numbred about 70. but more or fewer at the sole pleasure of the Popes.

5. *Eugenius* the second, took to himself within the Territories of the Church, the Authority of creating Dukes, Earls and Knights; as the *Exarch* of *Ravenna* had used to do.

6. *Sergius* the second, was the first that changed his name. For thinking his own name, *Bocca di Porco*, or *Swines-mouth*, not consonant to his dignity, he caused himself to be called *Sergius*; which precedent his Successors following, do also vary their names. So that if one be a Coward he is called *Leo*; if a Tyrant, *Clemens*; if an Athiest, *Pius*, or *Innocent*; if a Rustick, *Urbanus*; and so for the rest.

7. *John* the eight, is by most men confessed to be a Woman, and is usually called Pope *Joane*. To avoid the like disgrace, the *Porphyry Chair* was ordained; *ubi ab ultimo diacono*, &c. so that both in a literal and mystical sense, this Woman may not unfitly be called, *The Whore of Babylon*. The name of this Female Pope, the *Romish Chronologers* have not inserted into the Catalogue; the reason, as *Marianus Scotus* giveth it, *propter turpitudinem rei, & sexum muliebrem*. And from hence it is that in the common Catalogues, these Popes that have called themselves *Johns*, are so ill ordered; some making that *John* which succeeded *Adrian* the second, *An.* 872. to be the 8th and others the 9th *Platina* only of all the *Pontificians* reckoneth Pope *Joane* as the 8th of the *Johns*, and so forward: in which particular I have followed his authority. And it is probable enough that God might suffer that proud See to fall into such an infamy, the better to humble the ensuing Popes, in the times of their greatest ruff and flourish; or to prevent the brag of that continued Succession, they so much pretend to. More of this Argument, (as to the truth of the story in matter of Fact) he that lists to see, may satisfie himself in Mr. *Cooks* Book of Pope *Joane*; who most industriously hath answered all objections, which have been made against it by those of *Rome*.

8. *Nicolas* the first, the better to fasten the Clergy to the See of *Rome*, and make them the less obnoxious to their natural Princes; was the first who did by Law restrain them from marriage. Saying, that *it was more honest to have to do with many Women privately, than openly to keep a Wife*: and some of his Successors followed it so close, that a Priest of *Placentia* being accused to have Wife and Children, was deprived of his *Benefice*; but upon proof made, that she was the Wife of another man, and his *Strumpet* only, he was again restored to it.

9. *Adrian* the third, ordained, that the Emperour from thenceforth should have no more to do with the Election, or confirmation of the Pope; but that it should be left wholly to the *Roman* Clergy.

10. *Formosus* was so ill beloved, and of such a general disesteem, that Pope *Steven* the seventh caused his body to be unburyed, all his Acts reversed, two of his fingers to be cut off, and then the mangled carkass to be again interred among the *Laity*. And though these Acts of *Steven* were adjudged illegal, both by *John* the tenth, and Pope *Romanus*, two of his Successors; and the doings of *Formosus* justified: yet *Sergius* the third caused his corrupt and putrified body to be taken once more out of the grave; and his head to be cut off, as if still alive. So little did the *infallibility* of St. *Peters* Chair preserve these Popes from falling into gross and irreconcileable contradictions.

11. *John* the twelfth, was the next after *Sergius* the second, that changed his name; a very wicked, cruel, and libidinous man: who coming to that place by his Fathers greatness, cut off the nose of one Cardinal, and the hand of another, for that they had signified to the Emperour *Otho* the first, what a scandal all the Church did suffer by his detestable life; and finally, being taken in Adultery, was slain by the husband of the woman.

12. *Gregory* the fifth, finding the power of the Emperor, as long as it continued in a way of succession, not likely to be over-born by that of the Church; and being withal incensed against the *Romans*, who, till that time retained some shadow of an Empire; projected the election of the future Emperours, by the Princes of *Germany*; by which the *Germans* were distracted into Factions, and the *Romans* weakned; and so a door left open to the Popes of *Rome*, to make their ends upon them both.

13. *Steven* the tenth, brought the Church of *Millain* to be under the obedience of the Popes of *Rome*, which till that time had challenged an equality with them; as before

before Pope *Domnus* had done the Church of *Ravenna*, which for ſome time had challenged the *precedency* of them.

14. *Gregory* the ſeventh, commonly called *Hildebrand*, a turbulent and unquiet man, who firſt adventured to draw the *premiſes* laid down by ſome of his Predeceſſors into a *concluſion:* Excommunicating the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, for medling with the *Inveſtitures* of Biſhops, and cauſing *Rodolph* Duke of *Suevia* to rebel againſt him. A man, much favoured againſt the Princes of her own Houſe by the Counteſs *Mathildis*, who is ſaid to be ſo much his friend, that for his ſake ſhe left the company of her Husband, and diſherited her right Heirs, ſetling her whole Eſtates in *Italy* on the See of *Rome*. And though the Emperor had the better of this Pope, and made him fly out of *Rome*, and die in exile; yet he was fain at laſt to ſubmit himſelf to Pope *Paſchal* the ſecond, (who had Armed his own Son againſt him) to attend bare-foot at his own door, and cry *peccavi*.

15. *Sergius* the third, ordained the bearing of *Candles*, in the Feaſt of the *Purification* of the Virgin *Mary*, thence called *Candlemas* day.

16. *Sergius* the fourth was the firſt that on *Chriſtmaſs* night, with divers Ceremonies did conſecrate Swords, Roſes, or the like; to be ſent as tokens of love and honour to ſuch Princes as deſerved beſt of them, or whom they deſired to oblige. Thus *Leo* the tenth ſent a conſecrated Roſe to *Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, requeſting him to baniſh *Luther:* and *Paul* the third an hallowed Sword to *James* the fifth of *Scotland*, to engage him in a War againſt *Henry* the Eighth, who had then withdrawn himſelf and his Kingdom, from the Pope's commands.

17. *Nicolas* the ſecond, took from the *Roman* Clergy the election of Popes, and gave it the Colledge of *Cardinals*.

18. *Celeſtine* the ſecond, was the Inventer of that mad manner of *curſing*, or *Anathematizing*, by Bell, Book, and Candle.

19. *Alexander* the third, purſuing the deſperate courſe of *Gregory* the ſeventh, excommunicated the Emperor *Frederick* the firſt; and by raiſing War againſt him in every place; brought him to that exigent, that he was fain to proſtrate himſelf at his feet: when the Pope treading on his neck, ſaid aloud *Super Aſpidem & Baſiliſcum*, &c. profanely applying thoſe words to the preſent occaſion. And when the Emperor, to put the better colour on his diſgrace, meekly raylyed, *Non tibi ſed Petro*; the Pope not willing to loſe his part of ſo great a glory, ſubjoyned as angerly, *Et mihi & Petro*.

20. *Innocent* the third held a Council in *Rome*, in which it was decreed that the Pope ſhould have the correction of all *Chriſtian* Princes; and that no Emperor ſhould be acknowledged, till he had ſworn obedience to him. Which bringeth into my mind that jolly humour of the great *Cham* of *Tartary*; who when he hath dined, commands his Trumpeters to ſound, and make Proclamation, that now all other Kings and Princes may ſit down to dinner. He brought in the Doctrine of *Tranſubſtantiation*, and ordained that there ſhould be a *Pix* made to cover the conſecrated (but now *tranſubſtantiated*) Bread, and a Bell to be rung before it. He is alſo ſaid to have firſt impoſed *Auricular Confeſſion* upon the people.

21. *Nicolas* the third, was the firſt Pope who practiſed to enrich his kindred, intending to make one of them King of *Lombardy*, another King of *Tuſcany*; and to raiſe the reſt to great Advancements out of the Lands of the Church. Before which time (as *Machiavel* very well obſerveth) as there was no mention of the advancement of any of the Pope's kinſfolks or poſterity, ſo afterwards they ſtudied no one thing more than to prefer their own blood; inſomuch that they have not only laboured (as he ſaith) to make them Princes, but if it were poſſible would procure the Popedom to be made hereditary. So he, with probability enough. For ſo dearly do they love their *Nephews* (by which name they uſe to call their Baſtards) that it was very juſtly ſaid by Pope *Alexander* the third, *The Laws forbid us to get* Children, *and the Devil hath given us* Nephews *in their ſtead*.

22. *Boniface* the eighth, of whom it is ſaid, *That he entred like a Fox, reigned like a Lion, and died like a Dog*; by his general *Bull*, exempted the Clergy from being chargeable with Taxes and Payments, unto Temporal Princes. Which being complyed with by the Clergy of *England*, King *Edward* the firſt put them out of his protection; and ſo the Pope's Bull left roaring here. He cauſed the Book of the *Canon* Law, called the *Decretals* to be firſt ſet out: and inſtituted the Feaſt of *Jubilee*, to be held in *Rome* every hundredth year; but by *Clement* the ſixth it was brought unto the fiftieth year, and ſince reduced to the five and twentieth. This is that *Boniface*, who in that great concourſe of people which repaired to *Rome*, to obſerve his new Feaſt of *Jubilee*, (to which every one that did repair was to have a plenary remiſſion of all his ſins) ſhewed himſelf one day in the habit of a Pope, and the next day in that of an Emperor; and cauſed two Swords to be born before him every day, in ſign that all Power *Eccleſiaſtical* and *Temporal* did belong unto him.

23. *Clement* the fifth, was the firſt that made *Indulgences* and *Pardons* ſaleable. For ſeeing (ſaid he) that one drop of our Saviour's blood had been enough to have ſaved all Mankind, and yet that all his blood was ſhed, the *over-plus* was left to the Church as a ſtanding Treaſure, to be diſpoſed of by St. *Peter* and his Succeſſors. And hereunto, to make his Treaſure the more inexhauſted, he added the Merits of the Virgin *Mary*, and all other Saints. Being wearied with the inſolencies of the people of *Rome*, he removed the Papal See to *Avignon* in *France*, where it continued for the ſpace of ſeventy years.

24. *Clement* the ſixth, had an ill time of it. For in his Papacy the Emperor gave freely all Lands belonging to the Church, to ſuch as formerly had uſurped them; to be holden by them of the Empire. Upon which title the *Malteſti* became Lords of *Rimini*, the *Ordelaffi* of *Forli*, the *Vareni* of *Camerine*, the *Bentivolies* of *Bononia*, the *Manfredi* of *Faenza*, &c. Which Eſtates were never recovered to the Church, till the time of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, though conquered from the preſent owners in the time of *Alexander* the ſixth, by *Cæſar Borgias* his Son; who had an aim of ſetling them, and perhaps the Papacy it ſelf, on the *Borgian* Family.

25. *Gregory* the eleventh, returned the Papal Chair again to the City of *Rome*, whither he conveyed himſelf by Sea, in private, for fear of being withheld by the *French:* and being come thither, found the chief parts of the City ſo over-grown with briers and buſhes, and the principal buildings of it ſo decayed and ruinous, that a little longer abſence would have made it deſolate.

26. *Paul* the ſecond, endeavoured to encreaſe the Majeſty of the Popedom by Arms and Avarice, and exceeded all his Predeceſſors in pomp and ſhew: cauſing his *Miter* to be enriched with Diamonds, Saphyrs, Emeralds, and other Stones of great price; and augmenting the ſplendor of the Cardinals with a Scarlet Gown, whom *Innocent* the fourth had graced with *Red Hats* before. He brought the *Jubilee* from fifty years to twenty-five.

27. *Sixtus*

27. *Sixtus* the fourth ordained a constant Guard to attend his person. He very much beautified and repaired the City of *Rome*, and was the first founder of the *Vatican* Library. But on the other side he is said by some, to have set all Offices and Preferments to sale, and to have builded in *Rome* Stews of both sexes to bring in Beads, and to authorize our Ladies-*Psalter*.

28. *Alexander* the sixth, setting aside all modesty, was the first that openly acknowledged his Nephews (as they call their Bastards) to be his Sons. By one of which, the *Cæsar Borgias* before named, he recovered *Forli*, *Imola*, and many other Estates from the present owners, on a design of setling them in his own Family, as before is said; and to that end called in the *French*, who after made such foul work in *Italy*.

29. *Iulio* the second had more in him of the *Souldier*, than the *Prelate*, recovering many Towns unto the Church, which had been formerly usurped, being taken from the Occupants by *Cæsar Borgias*; and keeping *Italy* in his time in continual Wars. This is the Pope who passing over the Bridge of *Tiber*, brandished his Sword, and threw his Keys into the River; saying, that if *Peter*'s Keyes would not serve his turn, then *Paul*'s Sword should do it.

30. *Leo* the tenth was indeed a great Favourer of Learning, but of great prodigality, and vast expence. For maintenance whereof, he sent his saleable *Indulgences* into *France* and *Germany*: which business being indiscreetly handled by his *Ministers*, occasioned *Luther* in *Germany*, and *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, first to write against them; and afterwards to question many points of Popish Doctrine. In pursuance of which quarrel, the Pope of *Rome* burnt *Luther*'s Books, whom he declared for an Heretick; and *Luther* did the like at *Wittenberg*, which the Pope's *Canon Law*, whom he declared to be a Persecutor, a Tyrant, and the very *Antichrist*. Which flame encreased so fast and inlarged so far, that it burnt down a great part of the Papal Monarchy.

31. *Pius* the fourth, continued the Council formerly called at *Trent* by Pope *Paul* the third, but interrupted and laid aside from one Pope to another, and having brought it to an end, and thereby setled and confirmed the *Interest* of the Church of *Rome*, caused it to be received as *Oecumenical*: though the *Italian* Bishops being most of them the Pope's Creatures, did more than double the number of all the rest; and yet some of the rest also were but meerly *Titulars*. He added also a new *Creed* consisting of twelve Articles to be added to that of the *Apostles*, by all who lived in the Communion of the Church of *Rome*. But of the words and actions of these Ghostly Fathers we have said enough, if not too much. I will therefore end with that of the Painter, who being blamed by a Cardinal, for giving to St. *Peter*'s Picture too much of the *Red*, replied, That *he had made him so, as blushing at the Lives of those who were called his Successors*.

As for the *Temporal* power and greatness of the Popes of *Rome*, there is a pretended *Donation* of the Emperor *Constantine*, by which the City of *Rome* it self most part of *Italy*, and *Africk*, and all the Illands of those Seas are conferred upon them: the forgery whereof is very learnedly shewn by our learned *Cracanthorp*, in his Discourse upon that subject. But that *Donation* might most justly be suspected of Fraud and Forgery, though no body had took the pains to detect the same, considering how fearful the Popes are grown to have the truth thereof disputed: insomuch that many leaves are razed out of *Guicciardine* by the *Inquisition*, where it had been questioned. For in that place the Historian not only denieth the said feigned *Donation*, but affirms that divers learned men reported, That *Constantine* and *Sylvester* (to whom it is said to have been made) lived in divers Ages. Then sheweth, how base and obscure the Authority of the Pope was in *Rome* it self, during the time that the barbarous Nations made havock of *Italy*. 2. That in the institution of the *Exarchate*, the Popes had nothing to do with the *Temporal* Sword, but lived as subject to the Emperors. 3. That they were not very much obeyed in matters *Spiritual*, by reason of the corruption of their manners. 4. That after the overthrow of the *Exarchate*, the Emperors now neglecting *Italy*, the *Romans* began to be governed by the advice and power of the Popes. 5. That *Pepin* of *France*, and his Son *Charles* having overthrown the Kingdom of the *Lombards*; gave unto the Popes the *Exarchate*, *Urbine*, *Ancona*, *Spoleto*, and many other Towns and Territories about *Rome*. 6. That the Popes in all their Bulls and Charters, expressed the date of them in these following words; *Such a one our Lord the Emperor reigning*. 7. That long after the translation of the Empire from *France* to *Germany*, the Popes began to make open protestation, that the *Pontifical* dignity was rather to give Laws to the Emperors, than receive any from them. 8. That being thus raised to an earthly power, they forgot the salvation of souls, sanctity of life, and the Commandments of God, propagation of Religion, and Charity towards men: And that to raise Arms, to make War against *Christians*, to invent new devices for getting of money, to profane sacred things for their own ends, and to enrich their kindred and children, was their only study. And this is the substance of *Guicciardine* in that place: an Author above all exception. He was a man whom the Popes employed in many businesses of principal importance; so that no hate to them, but love to the truth, made him write thus much. As for the City of *Rome*, so unlikely is it to have been given by *Constantine*, that neither *Pepin* nor *Charles* his Son, (though more beholding to the Popes than that Emperor was) could be induced to part with it. *Lewis* sirnamed *Pius*, is said to have been the first *Donor* of it, and a Copy of his *Donation* is found in the third Book of *Volaterran*, subscribed by the Emperor, his three Sons, ten Bishops, eight Abbots, fifteen Earls, and the Pope's *Library-Keeper*: yet notwithstanding it is thought, by many very learned and judicious men, that really there was no such matter; but that all this was forged by *Anastasius* the Pope's *Bibliothecarian*, or Library-Keeper, who is cited as a witness to the Donation. And yet to put the matter further out of question, let us next hear what that great Polititian and Statesman, the Recorder of *Florence*, *Nic. Machiavel*, hath observed in this case. 'Rome (saith he) was always subject to the 'Lords of *Italy*, till *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* re-'moved his Seat to *Ravenna*; for thereby the *Romans* 'were enforced to submit themselves to the Bishops, '*An.* 430. or thereabouts. And talking of the estate of the Popedom, *An.* 931. he states it thus. 'In *Rome* were 'elected yearly out of the Nobility two *Consuls*, who 'according to the ancient Custom ruled that City. Un-'der them was appointed a Judge to minister justice to 'the people. There was also a Council of twelve men, 'which gave Governours unto the Towns subject to 'Rome. And for the Pope, he had in *Rome* more or 'less Authority, according to the favour which he 'found with the Emperors, or others then most mighty; 'but the leaving of *Italy* by the *German* Emperors set-'led the Pope in a more absolute Soveraignty over the 'City. And yet it seems they were not of such abso-'lute power, but that the *Romans* tugged hard with 'them for their Liberties. Concerning which he tells

'us

'us in another place, That the ambition of the people 'of *Rome* did at that time (*viz. An.* 1010.) make much 'War with the Popes; and that having helped the 'Pope to drive out the Emperor, and altered the Go-'vernment of the City as to them seemed good, sud-'denly they became Enemies to him; and the Popes 'received more injuries at their hands, than at any other '*Christian* Princes; and that even in those days when 'the Censures of the Popes made all the West of the 'World to tremble, yet even then did the people of '*Rome* rebel, and both the Popes and the people study-'ed for nothing so much, as how one of them might 'overthrow the Authority and Estimation of the 'other.

But for the method and degrees by which the Popes ascended to their temporal greatness, take here an extract of the Story collected out of the best Authors, by the most Reverend Father in God the late Lord Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in his learned and laborious work against *Fisher* the *Jesuit*. 'The Pope (saith he) being 'chosen anciently by the *Clergy* and people of *Rome*, 'used always to receive from the Emperors hands a ra-'tification of that choice; in so much that about the 'year 579. when all *Italy* was on fire with the *Lombards*, 'and *Pelagius* the second constrained through the ne-'cessity of the times, to enter upon the Popedom with-'out the Emperor's leave; St. *Gregory* then a Deacon, 'was shortly after sent in an *Embassie* to excuse it. But 'when the *Lombards* grew so great in *Italy*, and the Em-'pire was so infested with the *Saracens*, and such chan-'ges hapned in all parts of the World, as that neither 'for the present the *Homage* of the Pope was useful to 'the Emperor; nor the *Protection* of the Emperour, a-'vailable for the Pope: by this means was the Bishop 'of *Rome* left to play his own game by himself. A thing 'which as it pleased him well enough, so both he and 'his Successors made great advantage by it. For being 'grown to that eminence by the favour of the Empe-'rors, and the greatness of that City and place of his 'abode; he then found himself the more free, the grea-'ter the Tempest was that beat upon the other. And 'then first he set himself to alienate the hearts of the '*Italians* from the Emperor; in which he did prevail 'so far, that *Theophylact* the *Exarch* coming into *Italy*, 'was opposed by the Souldiers, who wished better to 'the Pope, than to the Emperor; and the Emperor's 'own Governour was fain to be defended from his own 'Souldiers by the Power of the Pope, who had gotten an 'interest in them against their own Master. Next he 'opposed himself against him; and about the year 710. 'Pope *Constantine* the first did openly affront *Philippicus* 'the Emperor, in defence of *Images*, as *Onuphrius* tel-'leth us. After him, *Gregory* the second and third, took 'up his example, and did the like by *Leo Isaurus*. By this 'time the *Lombards* began to pinch very close, and to 'vex on all sides not only *Italy*, but *Rome* too. This 'drives the Pope to seek a new Patron, and very fitly 'he meets with *Charles Martel* in *France* that famous 'Warrier against the *Saracens*. Him he employeth in 'defence of the Church against the *Lombards*; and the 'Address seems very advisedly taken, it proved so 'fortunate to them both. For in short time it dis-'solved the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, having then 'stood Two hundred and four years, which was the 'Pope's security: and it brought the Crown of *France* 'into the house of *Charles*, and shortly after the We-'stern Empire. And now began the Popes to be great 'indeed. For by the bounty of *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, 'that which was taken by him from the *Lombards*, was 'given to the Pope; that is to say, the *Exarchate*, and 'all that lay betwixt the *Appennine* and the River of *Po*. 'So that now he became a Temporal Prince. But when '*Charles* the Great had set up the Western Empire, then 'he resumed the Ancient and Original power, to go-'vern the Church, to call Councils, and to order Pa-'pal Elections. And this power continued for a time 'in his posterity; for *Gregory* the seventh was confirmed 'in the Popedom by the same *Henry* the fourth, whom 'he afterwards deposed. And it might have continued 'longer, if the succeeding Emperors had had *Abilities* 'enough to secure, or vindicate their own Rights. But 'the Pope keeping a strong Council about him, and 'meeting with some weak Princes, and those oft-times 'distracted with great and dangerous Wars, grew stron-'ger till he got the better; yet was it carryed in suc-'ceeding times with great changes of Fortune, and 'different success; the Emperor sometimes plucking 'from the Pope, and the Pope from the Emperor; 'winning and losing ground, as their spirits, abilities, 'aids and opportunities were; till at last the Pope set-'led himself on the grounds laid by *Gregory* the seventh, 'in that great power which he now useth in and over 'these parts of the *Christian* World. A power first 'exercised (saith he in another place) by this Pope *Gre-'gory* the seventh, and made too good upon the Empe-'ror *Henry* the fourth, as by Pope *Adrian* the fourth, '*Alexander* the third, with some others, upon *Frederick* '*Barbarossa*. And others of the Emperors were alike 'served when they did not submit. And for this, I 'hope his Holiness was not to be blamed. For if the 'Emperor kept the Pope under for divers years together, 'against all reason; the Pope, as *Bellarmine* affirms, 'being never subject to the Emperor, and wanting 'force to stand on his own *Prerogative:* I hope the Pope 'having now got power enough, may keep the Em-'perors under foot, and not suffer them any more to start 'before him.

Having thus a little glanced at the means, by which the great power of the Church of *Rome* was first obtained; let us next consider of those policies, by which this *Papal* Monarchy hath been so long upheld in esteem and credit. We may divide them into three heads. 1. Those by which they have insinuated and screwed themselves into the affections and affairs of the greatest Princes. 2. Those by which already they have, and by which they will hereafter be able to secure their estate: And 3. those by which they keep the people in obedience and ignorance.

1. Concerning the first. First, the Donation of several Kingdoms to them which have no right nor title, but by these Grants of the Pope, cannot but bind them fast to uphold that power, without which they could lay no claim to that which they are possessed of. Of which sort was the confirmation of the Kingdom of *France* to the house of *Pepin*; of *Naples* to the house of *Schawben*, and *Anjou*; of *Navarre* to the *Spaniards*. 2. The readiness of their Ministers to kill such as resist them, cannot but necessitate Princes to seek their friendship, and hold fair with them: especially since by a Writ of Excommunication, they can arm the Subjects against their Soveraign; and without the charge of levying one Souldier, either destroy him utterly, or bring him to conformity. The frequent Wars raised by them against the Emperours of *Germany*, and that against King *John* in *England*, by these *Papal fulminations* only; the poysoning of the said King *John* by a Monk of *Swinestead*, and killing of King *Henry* the third of *France*, by *Jaques Clement*; are full proofs of this. 3. Then followeth their allowance of Marriages prohibited both by God and Nature; the issue of which cannot but uphold

the

the Popes Authority, without which their birth would be illegitimate, and consequently themselves uncapable of the Estates they are born unto: And by this means they do more strengthen themselves by the unlawful Marriages of others, than ever Prince could do by the lawful Marriage of his own. Nothing more fastened Queen *Mary* of *England* to the See of *Rome*, than the question that was raised about the Marriage of her Mother to King *Henry* the eighth; the lawfulness of which depended chiefly on the dispensation of Pope *Julio* the second. 4. Then cometh in their dispensing with the Oaths of Princes, when they conceive themselves induced upon reason of State, to fly off from those Leagues and break off those Treaties, which have been solemnly made and sworn betwixt them and their Neighbours. By means whereof, such Princes think themselves not perjured, because dispensed with by the Pope; and commonly get something in advantage, or point of profit, for which they cannot be unthankful unto the Papacy. Examples of this kind are obvious in all times and stories. 5. Next comes the choosing of the younger Sons of great Princes, into the rank of *Cardinals*; which obligeth the whole Stock or Family to the Papal Throne: that being a means whereby young Princes are preferred without charge to their Fathers, or any diminution of the Regal Patrimony. 6. And as by these courses he holds in with all *Christian Princes* generally, which are of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; so hath he fastned more particularly on the King of *Spain*; whereof we shall speak further when we come to that Country.

2. Concerning the second: 1. So it is that their Estate hath the firmest foundation of any, as being built on the Consciences of men possessed with an opinion of their *Infallibility*, and that undoubted power they pretend unto, not only in Heaven and upon Earth, but also over Hell and Purgatory. 2. Then comes the innumerable Preferments at their disposing, for men of all humours and affections; as having in their power the disposing of almost all the Benefices and Bishopricks of *Italy*, half of those in *Spain*, divers in *Germany* and *France*: which keepeth the *Clergy*, and all such as are that way studied, in a perpetual dependance upon that See; especially injoying by it many notable Priviledges, which those of the *Temporalty* are not capable of. 3. Consider next the multitude of *Monks* and *Friers*, whose very being depends wholly upon his Authority, every *Monastery* and *Convent* being a Garrison (as it were) to defend the Papacy, and train up a *Militia* of *Spiritual Janizaries*; men most affectionately devoted to his See and Service. Of these it is conceived that there are no fewer than a Million, one half whereof at least may be fit for action; and all maintained at other men's cost, themseves not disbursing a penny towards it. 4. Their *Pardons* and *Indulgences* are a great increase to their Revenue: some of them as unlimited as that of Pope *Boniface* the eighth, which was for 82000 years to all that could say such a Prayer of St. *Augustines*; and that for every day, *Toties quoties*. 5. Their practising on *Penitents*, whom they perswade in the very agony of their Souls, that there is no salvation for them, but by giving part of their Estates unto the Church. 6. Nor have they found any small advantage to their Power and Patrimony by the invention of *Spiritual Fraternities*, which are Appurtenances (as it were) to the Orders of *Friers*, and may in number perhaps equal them. Into these the *Lay-people* of all sorts, men and women, marryed and single, desire to be inrolled; as hereby injoying the spiritual prerogatives of *Indulgences*, and a more speedy dispatch out of *Purgatory*.

3. Concerning the third. 1. They deterr the people from reading the Scripture, alledging unto them the perils they may incur by mis-interpretation. 2. They *breed an Antipathy* between the *Papists* and the *Protestants*; insomuch that a *Papist* may not say *Amen*, unto a *Protestants Deo Gratias*. 3. They debar them from all *sound of the Religion*, in prohibiting the Books of the Reformed Writers; and hiding their own Treatises, in which the Tenet of the *Protestants* is recited only to be confuted; insomuch that in all *Italy* one shall seldom meet with *Bellarmines* works, or any of the like nature to be sold. 4. They have under pain of Excommunication prohibited the *Italians* from *Travel* and *Traffick* with *Heretical* Countries, or such places, where those contagious sounds and sights (as they tearm them) might make them return infected. 5. The *Severity*, or *Tyranny* rather of the *Inquisition*, (of which we shall speak more at large when we come to *Spain*) crusheth not only the beginnings, but the smallest suspitions of being this way addicted. And 6. the people thus restrained from Travel, are taught to believe that the *Protestants* are Blasphemers of God and all his Saints; that in *England* Churches are turned to Stables, the people grown barbarous and eat young Children; that *Geneva* is a professed Sanctuary of Roguery, and the like. We have yet two later examples of their dealing in this kind. First, thee grosse slander of the *Apostasie* (or, as they call it the Reconciliation) unto their Church, of the Right Reverend Father in God Dr. *King*, not long since the Lord Bishop of *London*, a Prelate of too known a faith and zeal, to give occasion for such a calumny. The second, a Book by them published, and commonly sold in *Italy* and *France*, containing a relation of God's judgments, shown on a sort of *Protestant Hereticks*, by the fall of an house in St. *Andrews* Parish in *London*, in which they were assembled to hear a *Geneva* Lecture, *Octo.* 26 *A. D.* 1623. By which dealing the simple people are made to believe that to be a judgment on us of the *Protestant* party, which the Authors of that Pamphlet well know to be a calumny in regard of us; and a sad chance (I will not say a judgment) which befell their own, by the fall of a Chamber in *Black-Fryers*, where they were met to hear the Sermon of one *Drury* a *Popish* Priest, and that too on the fifth of *November* in their own accompt, being the 26 of *October* before mentioned.

The Popedom being thus cunningly and strongly founded, it cannot be if the Popes had been chosen young, or of the same Family, (so that the Successor had not often crossed the designs of his Predecessor) but that this new Monarchy had been greater and better established, than ever the old *Roman* Empire was in her greatest glory. And to say truth, I have oft wondered with my self, that some of the more active Popes, especially such as were chosen young, and had the happiness to descend of Noble Families, did never seek the setling of this Estate in their own Posterity: especially considering the good *Precedents* which they had before them, both in sacred and in civil stories. The *high Priesthood* in the Church of *Jewry* went from Father to Son; and why should any man think it inconvenient to follow the example of Almighty God, in making the *high Priesthood* in the Church of *Christ* to be also *hereditary*, not *elective*? The *Saracens* who were as great Masters for Wit and Policy, as any those Ages did produce, pursued that precedent; governed by *Hereditary Caliphs* many years together, until the *Sultans* their *Vicegerants* (ambitiously affecting the Supream Command) rooted out their races. And if the same Obligation lie on the *Masters* of *Religious* or mixt Orders, for preserving the Rules and Statutes of their foundations; as is upon the Pope by the fundamental

mental Ordinances of the *Conclave*, as it seems to do; why might not the Popes as well dispense with those *Constitutions*, and turn the Popedom into an Hereditary Estate; as *Albert* of *Brandenbourg*, and *Gotardus* of *Denmark*, Masters of the *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia* and *Livonia*, in their times have done? Nor can I see, but that such an alteration as I speak of, might be altogether as contenting to the Princes of Christendom, as the like change from an unsetled popular Government to an Hereditary Monarchy, was formerly unto the Provinces and People of the State of *Rome*. Of which it is affirmed by that notable Historian and Statesman *Tacitus*, *Neque Provinciæ illum rerum statum abunebant, suspecto* Senatus populique *imperio ob certamina Potentium, & avaritiam Magistratuum, invalido Legum auxilio, quæ vi, ambitu, postremò pecuniâ turbabantur*, The Provinces (saith he) disliked not the alteration, to whom the Government of the *Senate* and *People* had been long distasted, by reason of the factions of the great Ones, and covetousness of their Officers: the Laws affording no security at all, as being sway'd up and down by force, ambition and corruption. The *Popedom* setled in one house, would prove more constant in the preservation of all Leagues and Treaties, more careful to preserve the *interest* of their Estate, more useful to the Confederates and Allies thereof upon all occasions, than it is at present: where the Popes so often change their sides, and shift their factions; the Successor many times esteeming it his greatest glory, to rescind all the Acts of his Predecessor. And possible enough it is that *Cæsar Borgia* the Son of *Alexander* the Sixth, might have some such ends; when it was covenanted betwixt him and *Lewis* the twelfth of *France*, that being declared General of the Churches Forces, and giving his helping hand to that King in the Conquest of *Millain*; he should be aided by him in recovering all the Lands of the Church, which the Dukes of *Urbine* and *Camerine*, the Families of the *Malatesti*, *Baillons*, and *Bentivogli*, with divers others of less note, did possess in *Italy*. Which having got into his hands, had not his Fathers sudden death, and his own dangerous sickness hapning at the same time, cut off his design; it had been a matter of no great difficulty (if of any at all) to have made himself absolute Master of *Rome*, and of all the Lands of the Church, and to have left the same established in the *Borgian* Family. 'Tis true, that such an alteration would be very distastful to the ambition of the Cardinals, who by the deaths (natural or violent, it matters not) of the present Pope, aspire by all means both of love and money to that high dignity. But for my part, I cannot see how all the wit in the *Conclave* had been able to hinder it, if *Alexander*, on a purpose to poyson some of that number whom he had invited to a Supper, by a meer mistake of his Cup-bearer, had not poysoned himself, (even in the very heat of the business then almost effected) and so made frustrate the device.

But passing by this imagination of an *Hereditary* Popedom, let us behold it as *Elective*, and look upon the form and order observed in it. Now the Election of the Pope is made most commonly, in this place, and manner. In the Popes Palace on the Hill *Vatican*, are among other buildings five Halls, two Chappels, and a Gallery seventy foot long. The Gallery is appointed for conference, one *Chappel* for the Mass, and for the Election; the other with the Halls are for the Cardinals Lodgings. Every Hall hath two rows of Chambers, which are purposely for the time, made of green or violet cloth. To each Cardinal is allowed four Servants, to lie in his Chamber. They that are once within, are compelled, unless they be sick, still to continue there; and such as are once out, are no more permitted to go in: lest by that means, the Cardinals should maintain intelligence with any foreign Princes. To this *Conclave* (for by this name the place of the Election is called) is but one door, to which belongeth four Locks, and as many Keys. One Key is in the keeping of the Cardinals; one, of the City-Bishops; one, of the *Roman* Nobility; and one, of the *Master of the Ceremonies*. There is in this door a Wicket or Hatch, which is opened only at Dinners and Suppers, whereof the *Master of the Ceremonies* keepeth a Key. At this hole the Cardinals Servants receive their meat; every dish being first diligently searched, lest any Letters should be conveyed in them. As for the Lodgings they have neither holes nor windows to give light; so that there they make day of Wax-Candles: And lest the Pope should be made by force, both the City and *Conclave* are strongly guarded. When the *Cardinals* are going to Election, the priviledges of the *Cardinals* are recited: which every one sweareth to observe, in case he be chosen Pope. Then the *Master of the Ceremonies* ringing a Bell, calleth them to Mass: which ended, there is brought to every *Cardinal* a Chair, and therein a Scroll of all the *Cardinals* names. Before the Altar is set a Table covered with a Purple Cloth, whereupon is set a Chalice, and a Silver Bell, and about it six Stools, on which sit two Cardinal-Bishops, two Cardinal-Priests, and two Cardinal-Deacons. Every *Cardinal* writeth his voice in a piece of paper, goeth to the Altar, prayeth God to guide him in the Election, putteth his voice into the Chalice, and departeth to his Seat. The first Bishop taketh out all the papers, and delivereth them to the first *Deacon*; who unfoldeth each of them, readeth (without mentioning the name of the *Elector*) the name of the elected: and every *Cardinal* in his particular Scroll, noteth how many voices every one hath. The accompt being made, the *first Priest* having the like Scroll, pronounceth who hath most voices: which done, the *Priest* ringeth a Silver Bell; at which call the *Master of the Ceremonies* bringeth in a pan of Coals, and burneth all the little papers, wherein the names of the *elected* were written. He that hath the most voices (so that his voices exceed the proportion of two parts of three) is acknowledged Pope, and adored by the rest of the *Cardinals*: but if they exceed not this number, they must begin all anew. If in the space of thirty days the Election be not fully ended, then must the *Cardinals* be kept from fire, light, and victuals, till they are fully agreed. The Wicket which we before mentioned, is called the *Golden Gate*, at which stand an infinite number of poor people; on whom the new Pope, having opened that Gate, bestoweth his Fatherly Benediction, and remitteth to them all their sins. Then striketh he continually on the same door with a *Golden Mallet*; which whilst he is doing, workmen without break it open. The Chips, Stones, Dust, and Dirt which falleth from the Gate, while it is opening, are gathered and preserved as choicest *Reliques*; and the *Golden Mallet* is usually given to that Cardinal, who is in most grace with the new Pope.

This is the ordinary way of the Pope's Election, but subject to much Faction and Division amongst the Cardinals, and that in times of less deceit than the present are: Insomuch as after the death of Pope *Clement* the fourth, the differences amongst them held for two years and more. Which gave occasion to one of them to say in scorn, that *they must uncover the roof of the house to make way for the* Holy Ghost *to come upon them*. And there is now much more corruption and abuse in it, than ever formerly, as buying of voices, sitting up some for stales and tearing Scrutinies, every Cardinal desiring to have a Pope of his own, or his Prince's Faction. So that

we find it written of an old *Sicilian* Cardinal, who after long abſence came to the Election of a Pope, where he expected that inceſſant Prayers, as in times of old, ſhould have procured ſome fit man to be pointed out to them for the *Vicar of Chriſt*: that, finding nothing but canvaſſing, promiſing rewards, and threatning for Voices in the choice; *Ad hunc modum* (ſaith he) *fiunt Pontifices Romani*? and ſo returned unto his Country, and ſaw *Rome* no more.

The ordinary *Temporal* Revenue of the Papacy ariſing out of Land-rents, Impoſts upon Commodities, and ſale of Offices, *Boterus* maketh to be better than two Millions of Crowns; but the extraordinary, and *Spiritual*, to be far beyond. For it is ſaid of *Pius Quintus*, who ſate Pope ſix years only, that he got from the *Spaniſh* Clergy 14 Millions. And though he was a very great Builder, which ſpent him a great deal of money, yet he ſo managed his Eſtate, that he laid up four Millions of Crowns in the Caſtle of S. *Angelo*. *Sixtus* the Fifth took from the *Jeſuites* at one clap 20000 Crowns of yearly rent, (becauſe they were too rich for men profeſſing poverty:) and having ſate but five years, had coffered up five Millions of Gold; four of which his Succeſſor *Gregory* the fourteenth ſpent in leſs than a year. Out of *France* they receive no leſs than a Million of Crowns yearly. Out of *England*, when it was the Pope's *Puteus inexhauſtus*, they and their followers extracted no leſs than 60000 Marks *per annum*, which amounteth to 120000 pounds of our preſent Money; and was more than the Kings ſtanding Revenue did attain unto: Yet was this in the time of K. *Henry* 3. before their avarice and rapine was at the height. And of late days, no longer than ſince the Reign of K. *Henry* 8. beſides their *Peter-pence*, which was an Annual Rent upon every Chimny in the Realm, firſt granted to the Pope by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*, *An.* 730. or thereabouts, and afterwards confirmed by *Ethelwolf* the ſecond Monarch of *England*; beſides their firſt Fruits, Tenths, and all other exactions: it was made evident that in ſome few years then laſt paſt, the Popes had received out of *England* no leſs than 160000 *l.* ſterling, for the confirmation of Epiſcopal Elections only. By which we may conjecture what vaſt ſums they drew hence on all other occaſions. Let other Countries ſubject to the Pope's Authority be accordingly rated, and the total will amount to a ſum incredible. Next add to this the ſums of money they receive from particular perſons, for pardons, for diſpenſations with unlawful Marriages; the profits ariſing from Pilgrimages, from the death and Funerals of great Perſons, from the Indulgencies granted to Abbies and Convents, in all which the Popes have a ſhare; and it would puzzle a good *Arithmetician* to ſtate his *Intrado*. So truly was it ſaid by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, that *a Pope could never want money, as long as he was able to hold a Pen in his hand*. Yet notwithſtanding, their Treaſury for the moſt part is but low and empty. For 1. the State they keep, becauſe of that great honour which they have above other Princes, which is to be maintained at a great expence (for *the more worſhip the more coſt*, as the ſaying is) is very chargeable unto them; their ordinary Guards ſtanding them in no leſs than 30000 Crowns *per annum*. 2. The large allowances which they are fain to give unto their *Legates*, *Nuncios*, and other Miniſters, keep their Coffers low; the entertainment of their ordinary *Nuncios* in the Courts of *Chriſtian* Princes, amounting to no leſs than 1200 Crowns a month to each. And 3. their greedy deſire to enrich their Sons or Kinſmen with the treaſures of the Church (with which humour Pope *Sixtus* the Fifth, being of poor and obſcure birth, was never touched) keeps them always bare. Add unto theſe the exceſſive gorgeouſneſs of the Papal Veſtments (in which vanity every one ſeeketh to excel the other) eſpecially that of their *Tripple-Crown*; which muſt needs put them to great charge, and continual iſſues of their treaſure. And for an evidence of this laſt, we find that *Clement* the Fifth, who firſt transferred his See to *Avignon*, to ſhew his gallantry to the *French* (probably unacquainted with the like fine ſights) had his Crown thick ſet with *Carbuncles* and precious ſtones; one of which being loſt by a fall from his Horſe, was valued at 6000 Ducats.

As for the Forces of the Church, the Pope is able to impreſs as great a number of Land-ſouldiers out of his Eſtate, as any Prince or Common-wealth within the limits of *Italy*. *Paul* the 3. ſent to the aid of *Charles* the 5. in the Wars of *Germany*, 12000 Foot, and 500 Horſe, and yet raiſed his own Family to the Dukedom of *Parma*, *Pius* the Fifth ſent to the aid of *Charles* the 9. againſt the *Hugonots*, 4000 Foot, and 1000 Horſe; which Forces they maintained at their own charges. And when *Clement* undertook the War of *Ferrara*, he raiſed out of his Eſtate 20000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, in leſs than a month; which was more than moſt Princes in *Europe* could poſſibly have done. And for the valour of his Souldiers, and ability of his Commanders, they retain ſo much (as before was ſaid) of their Anceſtors virtues; that there are thought to be many Families in the Eſtate of the Church, able to furniſh all the Common-wealths and Princes of *Chriſtendom*, with ſufficient Captains. What, and how little he is able to do by Sea, may be beſt ſeen out of the aid which he ſent to the *Venetians*, at the famous Battel of *Lepanto*, wherein he furniſhed them with no more than twelve Gallies; and thoſe too hired of the Duke of *Florence*: The *Venetians* in the *Adriatick*, and the *Florentines* in the *Tuſcan* Seas, having all the Trade, and conſequently all the power in the Seas of *Italy*. 'Tis true, the Pope was bound by the capitulation, to bear the fifth part of the charge of the War, and with the help of the reſt of the Princes of *Italy* (who were to march under his colours) to ſet forth 50000 Foot, and 4500 Horſe: which is as great an Argument of his riches and power by Land, as the other is of his weakneſs at Sea.

Having a purpoſe in the proſecution of this Work, to mention ſuch particular Orders of Knighthood, as moſt Countries have given beginning to; I will here ſet down the Orders of ſuch *Popiſh Spiritual Knights* or *Friers*, which his holy benediction hath erected, and fat allowance doth maintain. And for our better proceeding, we will begin with the original of a *Monaſtical life*; and then we will make ſpecial mention of ſome of the *Romiſh* Votaries of both Sexes. Know then, that under the ſeventh perſecution raiſed againſt the Church by *Decius*, one *Paulus*, born at *Thebes* in *Egypt*, retired to a private Cave under the foot of a Rock, *Anno* 260. Here he is ſaid to have lived one hundred years, and to have been ſeen of no man but one *Anthony* who was at his death. This *Anthony* was the firſt that followed the example of *Paulus*; a man of a noble Houſe, and one that ſold all his Eſtate, that he might the more privately enjoy himſelf. He lived an hundred and fifty years, and is called the *Father of the Monks*. To theſe beginnings doth *Polidore Virgil* refer the original of the *Monks*, and religious Orders; the name *Monk* coming from the Greek Μόνος, becauſe of their lonely and ſolitary lives. Thoſe of the Religious Orders are called *Fratres*, and in *Engliſh*, *Friers*, from the *French* word *Frere*, which ſignifieth a Brother; and that either becauſe of their brotherly co-habitation; or elſe becauſe they are *Fratres in malo*, Brethren in miſchief and deſign.

The foundation of *Monaſtical* life thus laid by *Paulus*, and *Anthony*; the world increaſed ſo faſt in *Monks* and

and *Eremites*, that it seemed necessary to prescribe them Orders. Hereupon Saint *Basil* gathered them together, living formerly dispersed; and is said to be the first that built them Monasteries. He is also said to have ordained the three Vows, of *Poverty*, *Chastity*, and *Obedience*; to have instructed them in good Arts, true Religion, and in the service of God, with Hymns, Prayers, and Watching. Of this Order there are not many in the Latine Church, but good plenty of them in the Greek. They are bound to abstain from all kind of Flesh, and are called *Monks* of St. *Basil*, by the name of that Father; amongst the Writings of which Father, the Rules for these *Monasticks* are set down at large.

2. The next who prescribed Orders was St. *Augustine*, born in the year 350, who being thirty years of age, is said to have obtained a Garden without the walls of *Hippo*, for private Contemplations. Twelve only he assumed into his society, living with them in all integrity, and wearing a leathern Girdle to distinguish them from *Monks*. Branched afterwards into two several and distinct Orders, the one called by the name of *Canons Regular*, whose chief House here in *England* was St. *John*'s near *Colchester*, the other called commonly *Austin Friers*, or the *Eremites* of St. *Austin*, as others call them; Of such esteem formerly in the University of *Oxford*, that all who took the Degree of a Master of Arts, were to submit themselves to their Oppositions in the publick Schools, and receive approbation from them; from whence the form, *in Augustinensibus responderit vel opposuerit*, still retained among them. Their house in *London* stood in *Broad-street*, of which a part of the Church still standeth, converted to a Church for the use of the *Dutch*; the rest demolished, and in the place thereof a stately Mansion erected by Sir *William Paulet* the first Marquess of *Winchester*, and Lord Treasurer of *England*. These make the first Order of the *Friers Mendicants*. The first Monastry of them was erected at *Paris* by *William* Duke of *Guien*, *Anno* 1155, and *Anno* 1200, they began to flourish in *Italy*, by the favour of *John* Lord of *Mantua*. The other branches of this Tree, are 1. the *Monks* of S. *Hierom*, 2. the *Carmelites*, 3. the *Crouchet Friers*, and 4. the *Dominicans*.

1. The *Monks* of St. *Hierom* challenge their original from the worthy Father of the Church, so called. They flourish especially in *Spain*, where there are thirty two Monasteries of them; their chief House being S. *Bartholomews* of *Lupiena*; and have taken unto themselves the Rule of St. *Austin*. Their Robe is a white Cassock, under a tawny Cloak.

2. The *Carmelites* so called from Mount *Carmel* in *Syria*, pretend their original from *Elias*, and *John* the *Baptist*. They only allowed at first the Rule of S. *Basil*; and were confirmed in *Europe* by *Honorius* the Third. They are by some called *Jacobines*, from a Church dedicated to S. *James*, where they had their first Convent; and by us, the *White Friers*, from the colour of their Habit. Their House in *London* stood in *Fleetstreet*, converted since into a dwelling of the Earls of *Kent*, besides other Tenements. Their Rule was afterwards corrected according to the Rule of S. *Austin*, by *Donna Eresba* (or *Teresa*) a *Spanish* Woman; who made them also certain Constitutions, confirmed by *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1565.

3. The *Friers* of S. *Crosse*, *Crossed*, or *Crouched Friers*, were first ordained by *Cyriacus* Bishop of *Hierusalem*, who shewed to *Helena* the place where the Cross was hidden; hence this Order: which being almost decayed, was restored first by *Urban* the Second, and afterwards by *Innocent* the Third, under the Rule of S. *Austin*. Their Robe is Watchet, and in their hands they carry the Figure of the Cross. Their House in *London* near the *Tower*, still retains its name.

4. The *Dominicans*, or *Friers Preachers*, were instituted by S. *Dominick* a *Spaniard*. He put himself in this Order with sixteen of his Disciples, under the Rule of S. *Austin*, *Anno* 1206, and had his device confirmed by *Honorius* the Third. Their duty is to preach the Gospel in all places unto the farthest parts of the world; which both they did, and their Successors since have done, not at home only, but in *India* and *America*, with great zeal and diligence. They are called by us *Black-Friers*, from the Colour of their Habits, and are the third Order of *Friers Mendicants*. Their House in *London* stood near *Ludgat*, and took up the whole Precinct which is still called *Black-Friers*; though nothing be remaining of it but the very name.

3. The third that prescribed Orders was S. *Benedict*, born at *Nursia*, in the *Dutchy* of *Spoleto*, *Anno* 472. He gathered the *Monks* of *Italy* together, gave them a Rule in Writing, caused them to be called *Benedictines*, or Monks of S. *Benedict*; and lived till he had seen twelve Monasteries filled with them. After his death this Order grew so populous, that there have been of it 29 Popes, 200 Cardinals, 1603 Archbishops, 4000 Bishops, besides some thousands of Canonized Saints, which they use to brag of. Their Habit is a loose Gown of black, reaching down to the ground, with a Hood of the same; an under-garment of white woollen, and Boots on their legs. The other principal streams of this Fountain are, 1. the *Monks* of *Clugnie*, 2. of *Carthusia*, 3. of *Cisteaux*, 4. the *Celestines*.

1. The *Monks* of *Clugnie*, are so called from the Abbey of *Clugnie* in the County of *Burgundy*, the Abbot whereof, by name *Odo*, was the first that reformed the *Benedictines*, then fallen from their former integrity, *Anno* 913. He obtained of the Popes and Emperours, that all such Abbies as would come under the compass of his Reformations (which were in all about two hundred) should be called the *Congregations of Clugnie*, and that they might call their Chapiters, and dispatch their common businesses, when and as often as they pleased.

2. The *Carthusians* were first instituted by one *Bruno*, a *German* Doctor of Divinity, at the Town of *Carthusia* in *Daulphine*, *Anno* 1080. His followers, which were at the first but six, have at this day 93 Monasteries. They eat no flesh, live by couples, labour with their hands, watch, pray, and never meet together but on Sundays. Their House in *London* by corruption and long tract of time, got the name of the *Charter-House*, (the *Monks* themselves being corruptly called the *Charter-house-Monks*) now better known by the name of *Sutton*'s *Hospital*; from the Hospital of the Foundation of *Richard Sutton*, a wealthy Citizen of *London*.

3. The *Monks* of *Cisteaux* were first instituted by one *Robert*, Abbot of *Molesme*, *Anno* 1090, or thereabouts; who together with 21. of the most religious of his Covent, retired to *Cisteaux* in *Burgundy* Dutchy; hence the name. About five years after, one *Bernard*, a great Lord, became of their Order; who built and repaired for them 160 Abbies. Their Robe is a white Cassock, girt with a Girdle of wool, the rest black. They were by us called *White Monks*; and the common *Benedictines*, *Black Monks*; both from the colour of their Habits.

4. The *Celestines* owe their original to *Peter de Moron* a *Samnite*, born *Anno* 1250, who being afterwards for his sanctity chose Pope, was called *Celestine* the 5*th*. He reformed the *Benedictines*, then much degenerated; and had his Order confirmed by *Gregory* the Eleventh. There are at this present 124 Monasteries of them.

4. The fourth and last that prescribed new Orders to the *Monasticks*, was St. *Francis* of *Assis* in the Dutchy

of *Spoleta*. He fell from Merchandize, which was his firſt profeſſion, unto the ſtudy of Religion, going barefoot, and behaving himſelf very penitently: whereupon, great ſtore of Diſciples following him, he gave them a Rule in writing; by which they are bound to profeſs abſolute beggery, and are not permitted to carry any money about them, or more victuals than will for the preſent ſerve themſelves and their Brethren. This they obſerve punctually in their own perſons, but give themſelves leave to have a Boy with them, to do both without ſcruple. S. *Francis* deſired they ſhould be called *Minors*, to ſhew their humility; but they are generally called *Franciſcans*, by the name of their Founder. By the *French*, called *Cordeliers*, becauſe of the knotty Cord which they wear about them inſtead of a Girdle; by us, the *Gray-Friers*, from the colour of their upper Garment. Their Houſe in *London* ſtood near *Newgate*, of which the Church, the Cloyſters, and ſome other the publick Offices, do ſtill ſtand entire; the whole converted to an Hoſpital for poor Children by King *Edward* the ſixth, in the latter end of his Reign, now beſt known by the name of *Chriſt-Church*. Their Rule and Order was confirmed by *Innocent* the Third, *Anno* 1212, and is the fourth and laſt of the *Friers mendicants*, or *begging Friers*. The other principal Children of this Father, are 1. the *Minimes*; and 2. the *Capouchins*.

1. The *Friers Minimes*, were firſt founded by *Franciſcus de Pola*, a *Neapolitan*, *Anno* 1450, according to a corrected copy of the Rule of S. *Francis* of *Aſſis*. His followers keep always a true Lenten Faſt, unleſs in caſe of ſickneſs. Their Robe is a dark tawney, an hood of the ſame hanging to their Girdles.

2. The *Capouchins*, (ſo called from their Cowl or *Capouch*) were ordained by one *Matthew Baſci* of *Ancona*. Frier *Lewis* his Companion, obtained for them of the Pope, the Habit and Rule of S. *Francis*, *Anno* 1526. In the ſpace of 42 years they increaſed to 2240 Aſſociates, had 222 Monaſteries, and were divided into 15 Provinces. They are bound by their Rule to ſpend their time in prayer; and are generally thought to be the devouteſt of all the Orders *Monaſtical*.

I ſhould now ſpeak of the *Jeſuites*, but that I cannot bring them under any Rule; as being a people neither ſimply *Lay* nor *Prieſts*, nor meerly *ſecular* nor *regular*, but all together. They were founded by *Ignatius Loyola*, born in *Navarre*, who being in his youth addicted to the Wars, was lamed in one of his Legs: after which maim betaking himſelf to the ſtudy of Religion, he framed this Order, conſiſting at the firſt of Ten only. *Paul* the Third did confirm it, *Anno* 1540, confining the number within ſixty: which he after enlarged *ad infinitum*. They are now the greateſt Politicians, ſoundeſt Scholars, and chiefeſt upholders of the *Romiſh* See: ſo that the only way to re-eſtabliſh the *Romiſh* Religion in any Land, is to plant a Colledge of *Jeſuites* in it. To the three Vows of *Poverty*, *Obedience*, and *Chaſtity*, common to all other Orders; *Ignatius* at the Inſtitution of this, added the Vow of *Miſſion*: whereby his Followers are bound to obey their *General*, or the Pope, without demanding any reaſon, in all dangerous and hazardous attempts whatſoever, whether it be undertaking ſome tedious voyage, for the propagation of the *Romiſh* Religion; or the maſſacring of any Prince whoſe life is a hindrance to their proceedings. It is reported, that a *Jeſuit* being in the midſt of his Maſs, which they call the Sacrifice of the Altar, was ſent for by *Ignatius*; to whom leaving off his Maſs, he went immediately. *Ignatius* having no buſineſs wherein to employ him, told him, he only ſent for him to try his obedience; and withal profanely added, that *Obedience is better than Sacrifice*: and this is called the blind obedience of the *Jeſuites*. To leave them then as they are, the greateſt diſturbers of the quiet of *Europe*; I have heard a worthy Gentleman, now with God, ſay many times, that till the *Jeſuites* were taken from the Church of *Rome*, and the peeviſh *Puritan* (or *Presbyterian*) Preachers out of the Churches of *Great Britain*, he thought there would never be any peace in *Chriſtendom*; with what a true preſaging ſpirit, the event hath ſhewed.

Corrivals with the *Jeſuites* in power and learning, and almoſt coætaneous in point of time, are the *Oratorians*, founded by *Philip Nerio* a *Florentine*, *Anno* 1564. Who marking the great ſway which the *Jeſuites* began to have, and the danger which the Church might run, if that Order were not equally ballanced by ſome other of as much ability; firſt eſtabliſhed this, conſiſting altogether of Prieſts; that by their diligence in preaching of the lives of the Saints, and other heads of practical and moral duties, they might divert the torrent of the peoples affection from the brood of *Ignatius*. The renowned Cardinal *Cæſar Baronius*, *Francis Bourdino*, afterwards Biſhop of *Avignon* in *France*, and one *Alexander Fidelis*, were the three firſt whom he admitted to his Rule: initiated in S. *Hierom*'s Church at *Rome* by Pope *Pius* the Fourth with great zeal and cheerfulneſs; to whom, as to ſome of his Predeceſſors, the power and practices of the *Jeſuites* were become ſuſpicious. They increaſed ſpeedily (being countenanced on ſo good grounds) to great numbers, and a proportionable Revenue, as much eſteemed of for their knowledge in *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, and *Practical Divinity*; as the others for Philoſophy, Tongues, and the ſtudy of Controverſies; and more accepted of in moſt places, becauſe not uſually intermedling in affairs of State. So evenly looked on by the Popes, that the *Jeſuites* could not obtain the *Canonization* of their *Ignatius*, till the *Oratorians* were grown rich enough to celebrate that of their *Nerius* alſo: which hapned in the ſhort Popedom of *Gregory* the 15. *Anno* 1622.

To conclude this diſcourſe of *Monks* and *Friers*, I will ſay ſomewhat of the ſevereſt kind of *Recluſe*, which is the *Anachoret*, or *Anchoret*, ſo called from ἀναχωρέω, becauſe they uſe to live retired from company. They are kept in a cloſe place, where they muſt dig their Graves with their nails; badly clad, and worſe dieted; not to be pityed for all that, becauſe their reſtraint of liberty is voluntary; yet to be ſorrowed for in this, that after ſuch an earthly *Purgatory*, they ſhall find inſtead of an *Euge bone ſerve*, a *Quis quæſivit hæc de manibus veſtris*.

But concerning theſe Orders of *Monks* and *Friers*, certain it is, that at their firſt inſtitution they were a People much reverenced for their holy life; as men that for Chriſts ſake had abandoned all the Pomps and Vanities of the World. And queſtionleſs they were then a People altogether mortified, and who by their very aſpects would gain upon the affection of the hardeſt heart; inſomuch that not only mean men, but great perſonages alſo did deſire to be buried in a *Frier*'s weeds; as *Francis* the Second Marqueſs of *Mantua*, *Albertus Pius* another Prince of *Italy*, *Iſabel* the renowned Queen of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, wife of *Ferdinand* the Catholick; and in late times the great Scholar *Chriſtopher Longolius*. But as *Florus* ſaith of the Civil Wars between *Ceſar* and *Pompey*, *Cauſa hujus Belli, eadem quæ omnium, nimia felicitas*; we may ſay alſo of theſe *Friers*. The greatneſs of their wealth, which many on a ſuperſtitious devotion had bequeathed unto them, brought them firſt to a neglect of their former devout and religious carriage; next to a wretchleſneſs of their credits, and conſequently into

into contempt: ſo that there was not a people under Heaven that was more infamous in themſelves, or more ſcornfully abuſed by others. Hence the vulgar ſayings of the people, that *Friers wear Croſſes on their breaſts, becauſe they have none in their hearts*; and that, *when a Frier receiveth the Razor, the Devil entreth into him*; and the like. Nay, Sir *Thomas Moor*, who loſt his head in the Pope's quarrel, ſticks not in his *Utopia*, to call them *Errones maximos*; and would have them comprehended within the Statutes of Vagabonds and ſturdy Beggers. Now to ſhew both the humours of Reſpect and Contempt, uſed ſeverally to theſe *Monks* and *Friers*, as men ſtood affected; there goeth a Tale, how the Lady *Moor*, Sir *Thomas* his Wife, finding by chance a *Friers* Girdle, ſhewed it to her Husband with great joy, ſaying, *Behold* Sir *Thomas*, *a ſtep towards Heaven*: whereunto with a ſcornful laugh he returneth this anſwer, that *he feared that ſtep would not bring her a ſtep higher*. And as for their retiredneſs and ſolitary courſe of life, ſo it is that many Kings, eſpecially of the *Saxons* in the time of their *Heptarchy*, have abandoned their Scepters to enjoy it: And *Barclay* in his *Argenis*, under the perſon of *Anereſtus*, hath defended it in ſuch Princes, as have cloiſtered themſelves to enjoy the ſolitude of a Convent. Which notwithſtanding, Philoſophers have defined a man to be ζῶον πολιτικὸν, a Creature principally made for civil converſation; the Poets ſay, *Naſcitur indignè per quem non naſcitur alter*, that he dieth indebted to the World, who leaveth no poſterity behind him: and the *Jews*, which live in great numbers even in *Rome* it ſelf, abhor this unſociable kind of living, and prefer a civil ſociableneſs much before it; as to Nature more agreeable, to Man more profitable, and conſequently to God more acceptable. And having ſpoken thus much of the *Monks* and *Friers*, deſcend we now unto the *Nuns*.

And indeed I ſhould much wrong the *Friers*, if I ſhould deprive them of the company of their deareſt *Votaries*; and therefore take ſomewhat of them alſo. Called anciently *Moniales* from the *Greek* word Μόνος, from their living alone; whence we alſo had the names of *Monks* and *Monaſteries*: in the middle times called *Nuns*, from *Nonna* an *Egyptian* word, (for *Egypt* in old times was not meanly furniſhed with ſuch *Eremites*) which alſo ſignifieth a ſolitary and lonely life. A word in ſome of the barbarous *Latines* very much in uſe. *Sebaſtica* the Siſter of S. *Benedict*, was the firſt who collected them into Companies, and preſcribed them Rules. They are ſhaved as *Monks* are, and vow (as they do) perpetual Poverty and Virginity. Which laſt how well they keep, let *Clemangis* teſtifie; who telleth us, that *Puellam* velare *idem eſt ac publice eam ad* ſcortandum *exponere*: to veil a *Nun*, and proſtitute her for a common Harlot, were terms equivalent. And one *Robinſon*, who lived for a time in the *Engliſh* Nunnery at *Lisbon*, hath told us, that he found an hole in the Garden-wall covered over with Morter, in which were hidden the bones of many new-born children, which their unnatural Mothers had murthered and thrown in there. But of theſe I will inſtance only in two Orders, *viz.* that of S. *Clare*, as being the ſtricteſt; and that of S. *Brigit* which enjoyeth moſt liberty.

1. S. *Clare* was a Knights Daughter of *Aſſis*, where S. *Francis* was born, with whom ſhe was co-temporary, and with whoſe auſtere life ſhe was ſo affected, that ſhe forſook her Fathers houſe, and followed him. Having learned her *Lirrie* of that *Frier-monger*, ſhe deviſed an Order of Religious Women, and had it confirmed by Pope *Honorius* the Third, *Anno* 1225. Her followers vow *Poverty* and *Virginity*, as before was ſaid, go barefoot, feed meanly, and are more ſtraitned in their courſe of life, than thoſe of any other Order. By their Foundreſs, out of a deſire to conform the better to the Rule and Order of S. *Francis*, they were called *Minorites*, or *Minores*, and gave name to the place near the *Tower-hill* in *London*, where they had their houſe, called from them, the *Minories*.

2. S. *Brigit* was a Queen of *Swethland*, and coming to *Rome* on devotion, obtained of Pope *Urban* the Third, *Anno* 1370, or thereabouts, that *Friers* and *Nuns* might in ſome places live together. For being a Woman, and a Widow, ſhe knew beſt (as it ſeemeth) what was good for both Sexes; and ſo deviſed ſuch a Rule, as contented both. But little needed this co-habitation or living together, under the ſhelter of the ſame roof. For they had formerly been joined in carnal affections, though parted by Walls; neither were the *Viſitations* of the *Friers* ſo fruitleſs, but that the *Nuns* did fructifie by them. Theſe *Friers* and *Nuns* though they lived under the ſame roof, are prohibited from coming to one another, but on ſpecial occaſions: the *Foundreſs* ſo ordering it, that the *Nuns* ſhould lie in the upper Rooms, and the *Friers* in the lower. The *Confeſſor* alſo is denied acceſs into their Chambers, but ſhrieveth them through an *Iron Grate*, by which his lodging is parted from the Lady *Abbeſſe*'s. And herein lieth the *Myſtery of Iniquity*. For *Robinſon*, whom before I named, tells us, that at the time of his ſervice in the *Engliſh Nunnery* at *Lisbon*, he was ſhewed a way by which this uncharitable Grate, which ſeemed to keep the *Friers* from the company of their *female friends*, might be, and was on ſuch occaſions uſually removed, and the acceſs made free and open to each others Beds. Which if it be truly ſaid of theſe, may be ſuſpected alſo in all the reſt of this Order, and in moſt alſo of the others.

And now I return unto my *Friers*, which beſides the maintenance which by their Founders is allotted for their preſent ſubſiſtence; are kept in a continual hope and poſſibility of attaining to the higheſt honours which that Church can give, if they continue conſtant in their due obedience. For there is not one of them which hopeth not to be the *Prior* of his Convent; 2. *Provincial* of his Order, in that Country where he liveth; 3. and then the General of his Order. Next, none more likely than the Generals to be choſen *Cardinals*, and out of the *Cardinals* one of neceſſity muſt be choſen (and why not he, as well as any of the Pack?) to be Pope of *Rome*. So firm and ſweet a Companion of man is *Hope*, that being the laſt thing which leaves him, it makes all toyls ſupportable, all difficulties conquerable.

The Popedom containeth
Arch-Biſhops 44. Biſhops 57.

The Signeury of VENICE.

NOrth of the Lands of the Church from *Romandiola* to the *Alps*, lie the *Italian* Provinces of the State of *VENICE*, bounded upon the South with the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romandiola*; on the Weſt, with the Dukedom of *Millain*; on the North, with the main body of the *Alpes*; and on the Eaſt, with the *Adriatick* and the River *Arſia*, by which laſt parted from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province. Beſides which, it commands a great part of *Dalmatia*, together with the Iſlands of *Candy*, *Corfu*, *Cephalenea*, *Ithaca*, *Zant*, *Cithera*, and certain others of leſs note. The length of their Dominions by Sea and Land extending above a thouſand Miles, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The

The nature of the ſoil, and the principal Rivers which refreſh it, we ſhall ſee anon in the deſcription of the Provinces into which it is divided. According to which Provinces and the chief Cities of them, the Character of the people may beſt be taken: it being ſaid proverbially by the *Italians*, that the *Venetians* themſelves are ſtately, crafty, and greedy; the *Veronians* ſtudious and faithful; the *Paduans* fierce, the *Vincentians* eager on revenge; thoſe of *Friuli*, grateful, but inconſtant; thoſe of *Hiſtria*, neither long livers, nor of very great courage. That in the conduct of a War, thoſe of *Venice* bring Silver; thoſe of *Treviſo*, Swords; that the *Breſcians* are fit to dig in Trenches; thoſe of *Bergomo* to lay Ambuſhes; thoſe of *Padua* to manage Horſes. And of the Women it is ſaid, that thoſe of *Crema* are deceitful, thoſe of *Venice* inſolent, thoſe of *Vincentia* conſtant; thoſe of *Verona* gracious; thoſe of *Treviſo* jealous, thoſe of *Breſcia* diligent, and the *Bergomaſque* crafty.

But not to dally longer in theſe proverbial characters (though they carry a great deal of truth in them) certain it is, that the *Venetians* themſelves do affect a great deal of gravity in their actions, ſpeak very little at the Table; very ſevere where they have authority, and many times in the exceſs. And yet ſuch is the conſtant temper of their Government, and their impartiality in doing juſtice, that they are very well obeyed, and generally well beloved of all their Subjects (notwithſtanding the heavy preſſures which are laid upon them) as well in *Italy* as without. Eſteemed in former times good Souldiers both by Sea and Land, maintaining Wars continually with the *Turks* in *Paleſtine*; the Emperours of *Conſtantinople*, in *Greece* it ſelf; the *Genoeſe* by Sea, and their Neighbours of *Italy* in this Continent. But of late times they have more ſtudied to preſerve, than inlarge their Dominions; and that too rather by expence of money, than the loſs of blood, and by wit rather than by valour. So fortunate in this laſt kind of practice, that *Machiavel* obſerved of them in his time, that *whatſoever they loſt by War, they recovered by Treaty*. A pregnant evidence whereof we ſhall ſee anon.

To proceed now to the deſcription of ſuch of the Provinces and Eſtates of this Common-wealth, as paſs under the accompt of *Italy*, they are theſe that follow, that is to ſay, 1. *Marca Trevigiana*, 2. *Friuli*, 3. *Hiſtria*, 4. the *Italian* Iſles of the *Adriatick*; of which now in order; leaving the other Members of this Eſtate to be conſidered in their proper places.

1. *MARCA TREVIGIANA* is bounded on the South with the River *Athеſis*, and the moſt Northern branch of the *Po*, which from ſome Lime-kills near adjoining, they now call *Fornaces*, by which parted from the Territory of *Ferrara*, and the reſt of *Romagna*; on the Weſt, with the Rivers *Mincius* and *Sarca*, and the Lake of *Benacus*, (now called *Lago de Garda* from a little Town of that name, adjoining) by which parted from the Dutchy of *Millain*; on the Eaſt, with *Friuli*, and the *Golf* of *Venice*; and on the North with the *Alpes* which divide it from *Tirolis*, a Province of *Germany*. In the time of great *Auguſtus Cæſar*, this Tract together with *Friuli* the next neighbouring Province had the name of *Venetia*, from the *Veneti*, the old Inhabitants hereof; and by that name made one of thoſe eleven Regions, into which he then divided *Italy*. How it obtained this new name we ſhall ſee anon.

The principal Rivers of this Tract are, 1. *Brenta*, called anciently *Meduacus Major*, which riſing in the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and watering the Fields of *Padua*, paſſeth into the Sea, near the City of *Venice*, making up the famous Haven of *Malamocco*. 2. *Bacbilio*, called anciently *Meduacus Minor*, which riſeth alſo in the *Alpes*, and paſſing by *Vincenza*, emptieth it ſelf into the *Brenta*. And 3. *Athеſis*, now called *Adige*, which ſpringeth alſo out of the *Alpes* not far from *Trent*, and having taken many leſſer ſtreams into its chanel, paſſeth by *Verona*, and after is divided into two great branches; whereof the one falls into the Sea, the other loſeth it ſelf in the midſt of the Mariſhes.

The chief Cities of it are, 1. *Vincentia*, one of the twelve Cities built by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians* on this ſide of the *Apennine*; pleaſantly ſeated on the banks of the River *Bachilio*, and another navigable water called *Retone* (*Erotenus* formerly.) The Territory of the City not more large than fruitful, abounding with all ſtore of fruits, and yielding an excellent kind of Wine, which from thence is vended unto *Venice*. The buildings of it for the moſt part of poliſhed ſtone, whereof the Fields adjoining afford ſpecial Quarries; and the Inhabitants generally an induſtrious people, making a great quantity of Silks, with which they do adorn themſelves, and ſupply their Neighbours. 2. *Treviſo*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Silus*, (which runneth through the middle of it) in the midſt of a large and ſpacious plain, abounding even to admiration, with moſt excellent Wheat, and all other Neceſſaries. A City of no ancient name, not mentioned by *Ptolomy*, nor others of the old *Geographers*: but of ſufficient note in the later times, for being the Reſidence or Seat of thoſe Provincial Governours (*Marqueſſes* they are ſometimes called) which the *Lombardian* Kings ſent hither to defend their Borders. Hence it gave name to all the Country, in *Latine* called *Marca Treviſiana*, or *Tarviſana*, as ſome call it: taken by the *Venetians*, and loſt again divers times; but was finally conquered *Anno* 1380, or thereabout; *Antonia Venieri* being Duke of *Venice*. 3. *Padua*, formerly called *Patavium*, built by *Antenor*, whoſe Tomb is ſtill here to be ſhown. From him named *Antenoria*, as ſome report, but after called *Patavium* quaſi *Padavium*, from its nearneſs to the River *Po*, and the Fens thereof. Situate in ſo delectable and ſweet a ſoil, that *Conſtantius Palæologus* was uſed to ſay, that did not the authority of the Scriptures perſwade him otherwiſe, he ſhould look for *Paradiſe* no where elſe, than in *perſuavi* Patavina *amœnitate*, amongſt the flouriſhing and delightful ſweetneſſes of the *Paduan* field. A Town of great eſteem in the time of the *Romans*, who much reſorted to the ſame: and much frequented at the preſent for the Univerſity here eſtabliſhed *Anno* 1220. famous for Phyſicians, who have here a Garden of *Simples*; of good name alſo for the birth of *Livy* the Hiſtorian, *Julius Paulus* a Civil Lawyer his Co-temporary, *L. Aruntius Stella*, and *C. Valerius Flaccus*, two famous Poets celebrated by *Martial*: and in the later times, of *Marſilius Patavinus* a *Minorite* Frier, who wrote ſo learnedly in behalf of the Emperour, againſt the Pope, *Fr. Zabarella* the Civilian, *Mic. Savanarola* the Phyſician, *Maginus* the Geographer, and divers others. It was much renowned in former times for the humanity of the Men, and chaſtity of the Women; which laſt ſo eminent and famous, that as *chaſte as one of Padua*, grew into a Proverb. Hereunto alludeth *Martial*, ſpeaking of his laſcivious Writings;

Tu quoq; nequitias noſtri luſuſq; libelli,
Uda puella leges, ſis Patavina *licet.*

Young Maids my wanton lines will long to ſee,
And read them o're, though *Patavines* they be.

The City after much viciſſitude of Fortune, fell into the power of the *Venetians*, with all her Territories, being in compaſs one hundred and eighty miles, *Anno* 1400.

Michael

Michael Steno then Duke; *Vicenza* being won about the same time also. 4. *Brescia*, the second City for bigness and beauty in all *Lombardy*. It is also the Seat of an Archbishop, who is an Earl, a Marquess, and a Duke. Her Territories are in length one hundred, in breadth fifty miles; which the Citizens, together with their Freedom, bought of *Otho* the *German* Emperour, but lost it to *Philip Maria Visconti*, Duke of *Milain*, *Anno* 1421. to whom they yielded upon certain conditions; which being broken by the Duke, they gave themselves unto the *Seigneury* of *Venice*, *Anno* 1434, *Francis Foscari* being then Duke; under whom it continueth to this day. The City is very populous, the air sound and good, the soil exceeding plentiful of Corn, Wine, and Fruits; and having in it Mines both of Iron and Copper, to the great enriching of the people. It was anciently the chief of the *Cenomani*, who coming out of *Gaul*, drove the *Tuscans* hence, and seated themselves in their habitations, till finally conquered by the *Romans*. It is situate on a little River called *Garcia*, which runneth through the middle of it; and is said to contain at this time 50000 Inhabitants. 5. *Verona*, so called (as some conceit it) *quasi vere una*; or as others, *quasi Brenouia*, because built by *Brennus*; both false and frivolous alike. It is situate on the Banks of the River *Athesis*, and is counted the first City of the second rank of the Cities of *Italy*: proud in the birth of *Catullus*, a well-known Poet; and in an *Amphitheatre* (a remainder of the *Roman* greatness) able to contain 80000 persons. The Territories hereof are sixty five miles in length, forty miles in breadth, enriched with many *medicinal* Herbs, (especially on Mount *Baldus*, an hill therein) where the Physicians go a Simpling. 6. *Bebriacum*, or *Bedriacum*, as some Writers call it, two days march from *Verona*, now a small Borrough named *Labinia*, and never of any great note when it was at the best. Remarkable in the *Roman* Stories, for the defeat here given by the *Vitellians* unto *Otho*'s Army; and after by *Vespasian*'s Forces unto those of *Vitellius*. By *Tacitus* called in that regard *duabus* Romanis *cladibus notus & infaustus Vicus*. 7. *Crema*, a Town of no great Antiquity, but situate in a wealthy soil, well peopled, and as well built for the private Edifices: so strongly fortified, that it is reckoned the chief Bulwark of the Signeury of *Venice*, against the *Millanese*, on the borders of which State it standeth. First built about the year 970. by some remnants of the *Anthropomorphites*, who on the destruction of *Parnassus* (a Town of *Lombardy*) where before they lived, abjured their heresie, and were permitted to build here. Honoured in succeeding times with a See Episcopal; and either the birth-place or preferment of *John Cremensis*, a *Roman* Cardinal. Who being by Pope *Honorius* sent into *England*, *Anno* 1225, to dissuade the Clergy men from Marriage; and having in a Convocation of the Clergy, called for that purpose, highly advanced the honour of a single life, and shewed the inconvenience and unfitness of Marriage, in men preferred unto *Holy Orders*; was the night following (to the great discredit both of his cause and person) taken in Adultery. 8. *Bergomo*, a right ancient Town, but very well built, seated upon the side of an hill, and having a very large and beautiful Suburb; the Territory whereof hath many rough and craggy Mountains, the spurs and excursions of the *Alpes*; but withall many rich and delightful Valleys, intermingled with them. The people of this City and Country are said to speak the coarsest language of any in *Italy*; but to have as fine Wits as the best. Places of more inferiour note are, 1. *Este*, (*Ateste* in most Latine Writers) whence came the Family D'Este, late Dukes of *Ferrara*. 2. *Liniacum*, a strong Garrison on the borders of *Mantua*; as 3. *Castel-Franco* is towards *Ferrara*; and 4. *Seraval*, of most remarkableness for the great quantity of Armour which is therein made. 5. *Feltri*, which still preserves its old name of *Feltria*; most memorable at the present for a See Episcopal. 6. *Altina*, a Bishops See also, but destroyed and ruined.

This Province being anciently a part of the *Cisalpine Gaul*, fell to the power of the *Romans* at the end of the second *Punick* War: and being conquered by the *Romans*, did continue theirs, till first the *Gothes*, and afterwards the *Lombards* became Masters of it. Afterwards in the fall of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, it fell first unto the *French*, and after to the *German* Empire; from which by many mean conveyances, it came at last to *Ottocarus*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Austria*, who bought the same of *Ulricus* the last Duke of *Carinthia*: whose Predecessor probably had been seized hereof, from the time that *Henry* Son of *Engelbert*, Præfect of *Histria*, adopted by *Henry* of *Epperstein* Duke of *Carinthia*, or *Karnten*, succeeded him in that Estate. Upon a reconciliation made betwixt this *Ottocarus* and *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg* (then Emperour of *Germany*) it was added (together with *Austria* it self) unto the Patrimony of that Family, sold by Duke *Leopold* the Ninth, to the *Carara*'s, then Lords of *Padua*; in ruine of whose Estate and Family, it fell (together with that City) into the power of the *Venetians*, who still hold the same.

2. *FRIULI* hath on the East the River *Formio*, which parteth it from *Histria*; on the West, *Marca Trevisana*, and a branch of the *Alpes*; on the North, the main body of the *Alpes*, which divide it from *Germany*; and on the South, the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It is called *Forum Julii* in the *Latine* (of which that of *Friuli* is derived) from *Julius Cæsar*, who conducting his Armies this way, built the Town so named; and from that march of his, the *Alpes* adjoining, as 'tis thought, had the name of *Juliæ*. By some Writers of the middle times it is called *Regio Aquilegiensis*, as appertaining for the most part, by the gift of the Emperours *Otho* and *Conradus*, to the Church, or Patriarchate of *Aquileia*; and by the common people of *Venice* for the most part, *Patria*, or the Country, because from these parts they derive their first Original. In which regard part of the Region of *Venetia*, as before was said.

The Country is in a manner square, each side fifty miles; watered with the Rivers of 1. *Hydra*, heretofore of no small fame for the Silver Mines; 2. *Tiliaventum*, rising from the *Alpes*, and navigable towards the latter end of its course: but broken into many Chanels (seven at least in number) which makes it not so navigable as it would be otherwise; most of these Chanels being shallow, and easily forded, but swift and violent withal, by reason of their fall from the neighbouring Hills. 3. *Natisco*, neighboured by the famous City of *Aquileia*. 4. *Timavus*, mentioned in the first of the *Æneids*, which rising out of the *Alpes*, and running under ground for the space of 330 furlongs, breaketh out again; and being branched into nine Chanels, falleth into the Gulf or Bay of *Trieste*. By *Niger* it is now called *Laretus*; but by *Leander* named *Timavo*. The Soil sufficiently fruitful, except towards the *Alpes*, and yielding a very pleasant Wine, which *Pliny* did prefer before any in *Italy*.

Towns herein of most note and consequence, 1. *Aquileia*, or *Aquilegia*, as some call it, made the Metropolis first of the Province of *Histria* and *Venetia*, by the Emperour *Antoninus*; as afterwards of the whole Diocess of *Italy*, by the Western Emperours. Honoured in that regard with the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, or of his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant: translated from *Millain* to this City, as the

the Gate of *Italy*, by which the barbarous Nations were to make their entrance; never so like to be shut out, as by the power and presence of so great an Officer. After this time, and on this occasion, the Bishop hereof had the title of Patriarch. And here the Patriarchal See had not long continued, when the City was destroyed by *Attila*, that furious *Hun*; 37000 of the Citizens being slain with the Sword, the rest removing to some places of more safe abode. Re-edified afterwards by *Narses*, but never able to recover its former lustre. After which time fearing the like miseries from the hands of the *Lombards*, the Patriarchal See was removed to *Venice*, as the safer place, and setled in the Isle of *Grada*; yet so, that the succeeding Bishops of *Aquileia* (for they stayed at *Venice* only till the times were quiet) do still retain the dignity and name of *Patriarchs*, as well as those of *Grada* do, and with better reason. For besides the honour which it had in being made the seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio*, it had been formerly more honoured with the residence of *Augustus Cæsar*, who here kept his Court; whence it had the name of *Roma altera*, or a *second Rome*, and of *Tiberius* who lived here with *Julia* the daughter of the said *Augustus*, before his coming to the Empire. As for the City it self, it is situate on the River *Natisco*, but not well inhabited at the present; partly because of the ill Air, partly by the removal of the Patriarch thence, drawn by the *Venetians* of late times, for good reasons of State, to fix his dwelling in their City, and drawing after him a great resort of Bishops, and others of the Clergy of his Jurisdiction, principally by the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, attracting all Trade unto it self. Most memorable in old story for enduring that famous Siege against *Maximinus*, for the safety of the Empire of *Rome*, and her Emperours *Maximus* and *Balbinus*. In whose cause the Citizens hereof were so resolutely faithful, that they bereaved the women (willing to lose that invaluable ornament of their Sex, for the common good) of the hair of their heads to make Bow-strings withall. Nor did this pious constancy of theirs want an happy issue. For they beheld the Tyrant headless under their walls (slain by the hands of his own Souldiers) and saw the Metropolis of the World preserved by their loyalty. And yet the matter was not ended with the death of the Tyrant; the Souldiers and people laying hands on his Children also, and putting all to the Sword. Of which cruelty being asked the reason, they returned this answer, *That not a Whelp was to be spared of so ill a litter*; none of the brood of such a Cur; or in the language of the Author, *Pessimi Canis Catulus non est relinquendus*. 2. *Trieste*, of old called *Tergestum*, from whence a spacious Bay adjoining had anciently the name of *Sinus Tergestinus*, and is now called *Golfo di Trieste*. The Bay replenished principally with the water of the River *Timavus*, which with many streams doth fall into it, and is therefore by the inhabitants of that Gulf or Bay, called *Fons Muris*, as *Polybius* in *Strabo* telleth us. The Town of greater Antiquity than observation, mentioned by *Pliny* and some others of the Ancient Writers, but not else considerable. 3. *Montfalcon*, famous for its medicinal herbs. 4. *Porto Gruare*, of old called *Portus Romatinus*, an Haven-Town, as the name importeth. 5. *Concordia*, in former times of no small esteem; but so demolished by *Attila* the *Hun*, that it is now nothing but a ruine. The people hereof betaking themselves to the Islands in the Marishes of *Venice*, where they planted in *Torcellan*, *Muriano*, *Constantiaca*, and some others were adjoining to them, of which more hereafter. 6. *Utina*, or *Uden*, the fairest and largest at this time of all the Province, containing about five miles in compass, and about 15000 Inhabitants. Honoured for a time with the Patriarchal See, removed hither from *Aquilegia*, at some Siege thereof: of which though long ago deprived, yet it is still the ordinary Seat of the *Procurator* or Principal Governour, sent from *Venice* hither. 7. *Palma*, a new Town, as being built by the *Venetians* no longer since than the year 1583, but held to be the best fortified of any in *Italy*. 8. *Cividad de Austria*, first built by *Julius Cæsar*, in some of his marches towards *Gaul*, by whom it was called *Julium*, after *Forum Julii*, whence the name of *Friuli* (*Districtus Foro-Julienſis*, as the *Latines* call it) came unto the Province. But being taken and repaired by some Princes of the *Austrian* Family (on the borders of whose Estate it standeth) it got this new name of *Cividad de Austria*.

This Province anciently was the Seat of the *Euganei*, inhabiting this tract and part of *Marchia Trevigiana*. But those being vanquished by the *Veneti*; and the *Veneti* by the *Cisalpine Gauls*, it became finally subject to the State of *Rome*, and in the fall of that great Empire was one of the four Dukedoms founded by the *Lombards*, when they conquered *Italy*; the other three being *Turin*, *Benevent*, and *Spoleto*. The Family of the *Berengarii* were once Dukes hereof; three of which were of special fame, and two of them Competitors for the Kingdom of *Italy*. But this Family being suppressed by the Emperour *Otho*, he gave a great part of the Country to the Church of *Aquileia*; to which almost all the rest was added by the Emperour *Conrade*; yet so that there were divers petit Lords, who had good Estates in it; the name of Duke remaining unto some of the ancient race. One of which named *Luitprandus*, envying to the *Venetians* their increase of Dominion, made War against them: which ended in the loss of his Country, *Anno* 1020, or thereabouts; ever since subject to that State: the Patriarch of *Aquileia* (whose authority in this Country began to decline, in the rising of the State of *Venice*) surrendring all his interest also to that powerful *Signeury* as better able to defend it against all Pretenders, *Anno* 1420. But notwithstanding this surrendry, the Patriarch hath still large possessions and revenues here, and still retains his Jurisdiction over the Prelates of this Country, and those of *Histria* and *Trevigiana* (20 in all, or thereabouts) six only which are those of the Isles of *Venice*, continuing at this day under him of *Grada*.

HISTRIA is invironed on the East, West, and South, with the *Adriatick*, in the manner of a Demy-Island, or *Peninsula*, save where it toucheth on *Friuli*; and on the North is parted from *Carinthia*, with the *Alpes* of *Germany*. The Country very woody, and full of quarries, affording materials to *Venice*, both for Ships and Houses; not comparable for fertility to the rest of *Italy*; and of air so sickly and unwholsom, that the *Venetians* were compelled to hire people to dwell there, and afterwards to grant them many large immunities. It is two hundred miles in compass, watered with the Rivers of 1. *Formio*, which they now call *Risano*; 2. *Nauportus*, called at this day *Quietus*; and 3. *Arsia*, which runneth into the Gulf of *Quevero*, called anciently *Sinus Flanaticus*, and divides this Country from *Liburnia*, a *Sclavonian* Province.

The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Cap de Istria*, called in *Pliny*'s time *Ægide*; and being afterwards repaired by the Emperour *Justin*, was called *Justinopolis*. But being taken and destroyed by the *Genoese*, and rebuilt again, it took the name of *Caput Histriæ*, or *Cape d' Istria*; because the principal of the Province and Bishops See. Of this See was *Vergerius* Bishop, about the time of *Luther*'s first preaching in *Germany*, who with *Antonio de Dominis* Archbishop of *Spalato*, were of most note of any of these

these parts of the world, that fell off from the Church of of *Rome* to the *Protestant* party, and therefore shall be spoken of in more particulars; *Spalato* in his proper place: and *Vergerius* here. Being a man of great industry, and eminent parts, he was by many of the Popes employed in *Germany*, against *Luther*. In which negotiation he behaved himself with such dexterity, and gave such content unto the Pope, that *Paul* 3. *An.* 1541. intended to have made him *Cardinal*; had not some who envyed him that honour, accused him of *Lutheranism*. To purge himself he began to write a Book, entituled, *Against the Apostata's of Germany*, in the pursuit whereof pondering of *Luther's* reasons he became of his opinion; which being known, he was driven from *Justinople*. He submitted himself and his cause to the Fathers at *Trent*, but could not get a hearing. Thence he went to the D. of *Mantua*, from him to the State of *Venice*; but no where finding protection, he retired unto the *Grisons*, and there preached; till *Christopher*, Duke of *Wittenberg*, *Anno* 1548, placed him in his University of *Tubing*, and here allowed him a sufficiency of maintenance. It was built by *Justinus* (as before) the Nephew of *Justinian* the Emperour, as a Fortress against the incursions of the barbarous people. 2 *Pola*, built by the *Colchians*, at their first coming hither, the name in their language importing as much as the place of banishment. It was after made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Pietas Julia*: but being first destroyed by *Attila*, after by the *Genoese*, it recovered the old name again; and still continueth with the title of a See Episcopal. It abutteth upon *Sinus Flanaticus*, or the Golf of *Quevero*. 3. *Parenzo*. 4. *Plitun*, 5. *Cita Nova*, all of them seated in the Midland, and not much observable, but that *Parenzo*, and *Cita Nova* are Episcopal Sees: this last being anciently called *Emonia*, whence the Bishop hath the name of *Emonienses*. 6. *Rovigno*, in a little Island, and mounted on an high hill, not unfruitful in Olives; beautified with a convenient Port, and that defended also by a very strong Castle. The Town but poor, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of *Venice*, from which distant not above twenty miles; inhabited for the most part by Marriners, and skilful Pilots, hired by such ships as are bound for *Venice*, to conduct them safely over the Bars of *Malamocco*. The Country adjoining mountainous and somewhat wild; but those mountains covered on the outside with Physical Simples; and yielding many Quarries of most excellent Marble, which so adorn the *Venetian* Palaces.

It is recorded that the *Histrians* were a people of *Colchis*, who being sent by King *Æeta* to pursue *Jason* and the *Argonauts*, were driven up this Gulf: and either for fear of the Kings anger, or not daring to venture their weak Vessel to so long a voyage, as from hence to *Colchis* whence they came; stayed in this Country. It was after that time called *Iapigia*, from *Iapis* an *Ætolian*, who first planted here; and took the name of *Itria* from the *Istri*, a people on the banks of *Ister*, or *Danubius*; who made up a considerable part of this plantation. Siding with the *Ætolians* in their Wars against the *Romans*, and making many inrodes and excursions on them; they were invaded first by *Manlius*, without leave of the Senate: and him they charged with such a fury, that they beat him out of his Camp. Where finding plenty of Wine, and all store of Provisions, they fell roundly to it; till *Manlius* having rallied his men again, charged them in their Cups, and killed 8000 in the place, their miserable King being so hotly pursued by the Victors, that he was fain to kill himself for fear of Captivity. This was in *Anno V.C.* 575. *Cl. Pulcher* the next Consul perfected the conquest. *Sempronius* long time after that, *sc. An. V.C.* 625. reduced it to the form of a Province. So it continued to the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who joining it to that of *Venice* (or *Venetia*) made out of both the eleventh and last Region of *Italy*. Under the *Romans* they continued whilst that Empire stood, and after the decay thereof regained their liberties; which they enjoyed till by Piracy molesting the *Venetians*, they lost many of their Towns to Duke *Petro Candiano*, *Anno* 938; and the whole Country was made Tributary, by the valour of the Duke *Henry Dondolo* about the year 1190. After which many times rebelling, they were still re-conquered.

4. The fourth member of this Estate with respect to *Italy*, are some *ISLANDS* in the *Adriatick*; which being principally under the command of this Commonwealth, is commonly called the *Gulf of Venice*; a Gulf extending in length 700 miles, in breadth 140 miles, in some places less; so called of *Adria* once a famous Haven Town (as before was said) at the mouth of *Eridanus* or *Po*. Concerning which we are to know, that though this Gulf or Bay of the *Adriatick* extended no farther than the Eastern parts of *Dalmatia*, where the Sea beginneth to take the name of the *Ionian*; yet *Mare Adriaticum*, or the *Adriatick* Sea was of greater length. Extended by the Ancients over the *Ionian*, and thence South-westward till it meeteth with the *Tuscan* Seas; and Southwards, till it come to the coast of *Africk*; insomuch as *Mare Lybicum*, or the Sea of *Africk*, is by *Orosius* made a part of the *Adriatick*. For speaking of the Province of *Tripolis* (a Province of *Africk*) properly and especially so called, he boundeth it on the North with the *Adriatick*; as he doth the Isle of *Crete*, on the South-side of it, with the *Lybian* Sea, *quod & Adriaticum vocant*, which they also call the *Adriatick*, as his own words are. The like might also be made evident out of other Authors, both *Greek* and *Latin*: which I note here, because *Paul's* being tossed up and down in the Sea of *Adria*, as is said *Act.* 27. 27. and being after cast on shore in the Isle of *Melita*; occasioned some to think this *Melite* or *Malta*, to be that Island of *Dalmatia*, which is now called *Melida* being seated in the Bay or Golf of *Adria*: whereas the Text speaks plainly of that Isle of *Malta*, which lieth in the furthest parts of the *Adriatick* Sea, on the Coasts of *Africk*. But to return to this Golf, it was accounted heretofore to be very tempestuous and unsafe, as appeareth by *Improbo iracundior Adria*, in *Horace*, the *Minax Adriaticum*, in *Catullus*; and the *Ventosi tumor Adriæ*, in *Seneca's Thyestes*. But when the Empress *Helena* had found the Cross on which *CHRIST* suffered, she caused one of the three Nails with which his body was fastned to it, to be thrown of purpose into this Sea; since which time, as *Platina* hath told us in the life of Pope *Sylvester* (and cites Saint *Ambrose* for his Author) it hath been very calm and quiet; the second nail being made into a Bridle for her Son *Constantine's* Horse, and a Crest for his Helmet of the third. But not to trust too much to the truth of this miracle, certain it is that the *Venetians* are Lords of it, by reason of their Naval Power: and that it is every year espoused to the Duke of *Venice*, by the solemn casting in of a Wedding Ring; and every year Baptized on *Epiphany*-day, by the Bishop of *Zant*. When this last Ceremony took beginning, I am yet to seek. But for the first, which is performed with a great deal of state, every *Holy-Thursday*, the Duke, and all the *Magnificos* being rowed in the *Bucentaure* (which is a rich and stately Gally made for such Solemnities, and capable of 200 persons, whence it had the name) it took beginning from Pope *Alexander* the third. Who being hardly put to it by the Emperor *Frederick Barbarossa*, fled unto *Venice* in the habit of a Cook; *Sebastian Cyani* being then Duke: in prosecution of whose quarrel, the *Venetians* encountred *Otho* the Emperors Son vanquished

him, and reſtored the Pope. The Duke returning back in Triumph with his Royal Priſoners, was thus ſaluted by the Pope. *Cyani, take here this Ring of Gold, and by giving it unto the Sea oblige it unto thee: a Ceremony which on this day* (the Aſcention day) *ſhall be yearly obſerved both by thee and thy Succeſſors; that ſo poſterity may know that you have purchaſed the dominion thereof by your valour, and made it ſubject to you, as a Wife to her Husband.*

The principal Iſlands of this Sea, lie on the other ſide thereof, on the coaſt of *Dalmatia*. Some few there are upon this ſide, but thoſe (as well as theſe under the command of this *Signeury*) neither great nor famous. Of theſe the chief are, 1. *MALAMOCCO*, in Latin *Methuacum*, ſituate at the South-weſt end of the Bank or Cauſey called *Il Lido*; now only conſiderable for the Haven, which is large and deep, made by the influx of *Meduacus* before mentioned; in which the greater ſhips do ride, till they hire Pilots from *Rovigno* to croſs the Bars. It was ennobled heretofore with the Duke's Palace, and an Epiſcopal See: the See of *Padua* being tranſlated hither, at the ſack of that City by the *Lombards*. But the Duke's Palace being removed to *Rialto*, and the Epiſcopal See to the Iſland of *Chioggia*; it is now inhabited for the moſt part by none but Sea-men. 2. *TORCELLAN*, in which there is a little City of the ſame name, honoured with a Biſhops See, (the Biſhop of *Altina* with much people with him, for fear of the ſaid *Lombards* retiring hither) but by reaſon of the ill air not very well peopled. 3. *MURIANUM*, or *MURIANO*, three miles in compaſs, and but one from *Venice*, of a ſound air, and very well inhabited, the people whereof make the beſt *Venice* Glaſſes, ſo much uſed in all parts. 4. *CHIOGGIA*, called in Latin *Foſſa Clodia*, a little weſt of *Malamocco*, at the very entrance into the Mariſhes from the *Adriatick*: diſtant from *Venice* 25 miles; to which it ſerveth inſtead of a Bulwark. There is a Town in it of the ſame name, to which the Biſhops See was removed from *Malamocco*, *Anno* 1103, and near to which are many Saltpits, which yield great gain unto the people, and as much unto the Common-wealth. Near to this Iſland the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Venetians* in a Fight at Sea, that thereupon, (the taking of the Iſland following ſhortly after) they were offered a blank Charter to write what they would. But the *Genoeſe* being grown too inſolent on their good ſucceſs, made the City deſperate; who putting all to hazard, fell again upon them, beat them, purſued them home, and there utterly cruſhed them; as we ſhall tell you more at large when we come to *Genoa*. 5. *POVEGIA*, five miles from the City, firſt peopled by ſome who had raiſed a commotion in the City, on the death of *Petro Tradonico* the thirteenth Duke. After which much increaſed both in wealth and buildings, till deſtroyed by the *Genoeſe*. It is called *Pupilia* by the Latins. 6. *JUDECHA*, (in Latin called *Judaica*) ſo named from the *Jews* who did there inhabit: not above half a mile from the City, and not very large; but liberally furniſhed with moſt pleaſant Gardens. Theſe and the reſt reckoned as members of *Trevigiana* or appendants on it.

Betwixt theſe Iſlands and the main land of *Friuli*, lyeth a ſhoal of little Iſlets, in and amongſt which ſtandeth the renowned City of *Venice*, the head City of this Common-wealth, and the glory of *Italy*. Theſe Iſlets 72 in number, but joined together by many Bridges, of which here are ſaid to be 4000 at leaſt, beſides 10000 Boats for paſſage from one Iſle to the other. The compaſs of the whole aggregate body ſaid to be eight miles, the buildings fair, and generally adorned with Glaſs-Windows; an Ornament not common in *Italy*; where the windows for the moſt part are made with Paper to let in the light: and that Paper oiled all over to keep out the wet. The number of the Inhabitants eſtimated at 300 thouſand. By the ſituation one would think, that it was denominated from *Venetia*, which in the old *Latin* ſignifieth the ſeething or frothing of the Sea. *VENETIA maris exæſtuatio eſt quæ ad littus veniat*, ſaith the old *Gloſſary* upon *Iſidore*, out of *Marcus Varro*. But the truth is, that it was ſo called from the *Veneti*, the old inhabitants of the neighbouring Province of *Friuli*; who to avoid the fury of the barbarous *Huns* then threatning *Italy*, abandoned the main land and built this City in the bogs and mariſhes of the Sea adjoining. And that it might afford them the greater ſafety, they not only built it in the moſt inward part of the *Adriatick* Sea, commonly called the Gulf of *Venice*; but in the midſt of many Lakes of Salt-water, extending ninety miles in compaſs, and having on the Eaſt the ſaid *Adriatick Sea* for the length of 550 miles: betwixt which and the ſaid Lakes there is a Bank or Cauſey which they call *Il Lido*, made as it were by nature to defend the Iſlands which lie in this Lake, from the violent fury of the Sea. A Cauſey of 35 miles in length, bending like a Bow, and opening in ſeven places only; which ſerve as well to keep the Lakes always full of water, as for the paſſage of Veſſels to and from the City: known by the names of the Ports of 1. *Brondolo*, 2. *Chioza*, 3. *Malamocco*, 4. the *three Caſtles*, or the Caſtles of *Lio*. 5. S. *Eraſmus*, 6. *Lito Maggiore*, or the great ſhore; and 7. the *Treports*: of which that of *Brondolo* lieth moſt to the Southweſt, and that of *Treports* to the Northweſt of the ſaid great Cauſey. And through every one of theſe there is ſafe paſſage for Ships and Barks of ſmaller burden: the bigger being compelled to lie at Anchor, on the South ſide of the City, near to the Ports of *Malamocco*, and the Caſtles of *Lio*, which are very well fortified; and there muſt remain till they are brought in by skilful Pilots, who know the paſſages, which, by reaſon of the ſhifting of the Sands, change very often. On the Weſt and North ſides, it is compaſſed with very deep Mariſhes, about five miles diſtant from the Land; and on the South with many Iſlands, in which are ſeveral Churches and Monaſteries, like ſo many Forts; which lie between it and thoſe parts of *Italy*, which are not under the obedience of the Common-wealth. So that it is impoſſible to be taken, but by an Army which can ſtretch 150 miles in compaſs. It is built, as before is ſaid, on 72 Iſlands, 60 of which lie cloſe together round about the *Rialto*, the other at a greater diſtance. Of theſe the principal, 1. *Heraclea* near the firm land of *Trevigiana*, peopled at firſt by ſuch as followed *Magnus* Biſhop of *Uderza*, who to avoid the fury of the *Lombards* came and planted here: calling the Iſland and the Town which they founded in it by the name of *Heraclea*, in honour of *Heraclius* the Eaſtern Emperour in whoſe time it hapned. Made by this means a Biſhops See, and being grown populous withall, it was honoured with the firſt Seat of the Dukes of *Venice*, removed by *Theodatus* the ſeventh Duke to *Malomocco*, and from thence finally to *Rialto*. Deſtroyed by *Pepin* King of *Italy*, Son of *Charles* the Great; it was re-edified in the time of *Angelo Partitiario* the tenth Duke, and called *Cita Nova*; more memorable at this time for the antiquity of the Biſhops See, than the number of Citizens. 2. *Jeſulan*, neighbouring to *Heraclea*, firſt planted by ſome Country people, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, brought with them a great drove of Mares, and of Horſes, whence it had the name of *Equilene*, or *Equilia*. Made afterwards a Biſhops See alſo, by the name of *Jeſulanus* or *Equilienſis*. 3. *Grada*, on the ſame part of the City alſo, but more towards the North, inhabited at firſt by ſuch of the City of *Aquileia* as betook themſelves thither

thither to avoid the tyranny of the *Hunnes*: but made more eminent than before, by *Paul* the Patriarch of that City, who flying the fury of the *Lombards*, transported to this Island the Relicks and Treasures of his Church; and setled where the Church of S. *Euphemia* had been built before. And though *Helie* who succeeded *Paul*, obtained of Pope *Pelagius* the 2. *An.* 580. that the Bishops of *Grada* should from thenceforth have the title of *Patriarchs*, and be esteemed the *Metropolitans* of the City and Country of *Venice*: yet the *Aquilcian* would not so be robbed of his ancient priviledges, and therefore stirred up many suits and disputes about it. The business compromised at last to this effect, that the Patriarch of *Aquileia* should enjoy his ancient jurisdiction over all the Churches in the Continent which belonged unto him: and that he of *Grada*, with the title and stile of Patriarch, should have like jurisdiction over the Churches in the Islands; that is to say, the Bishopricks of *Heraclea* (or *Cita Nova*) *Equilia*, *Torcellan*, *Chioggia*, *Caprulæ*, and *Castilla Olindo*. His habitation near the Church of S. *Sylvester*, in the third Region of the City, called *de Canaregio*. 4. *Caprulæ*, towards the openings of the *Adriatick*, a Bishops See before the time of *Charles* the *Great*, but not else observable: none of these four, nor of the residue of the twelve, which be remote from the *Rialto*, being much inhabited at the present. *Castello Olindo*, or *Olivaller* as some call it; situate at the East end of the City, not far from the Causey called *IL Lido*, of old a City of it self (as the former were) now joined by a Bridge to the rest of *Venice*; of most note for the Cathedral Church of S. *Peter*, and the Palace of the *Venetian* Patriarch: this City having been made a Bishops See by Pope *Adrian* the first *Anno* 774. with jurisdiction over the Isles of *Olivolla*, *Rialto*, *Lupria*, and *Dorse-dura*. His title first *Castellonensis*, but afterwards, the Bishop of *Venice*, because the best part of the City did belong unto him, invested by the Duke, and confirmed by the Patriarch of *Grada*, whose suffragans they were till the year 1450. At what time Pope *Eugenius* the 4. (a Native of the City of *Venice*) advanced the Bishops hereof to the dignity and name of Patriarch; assigning the Churches of *Dalmatia*) of which they were entituled Primates) for their jurisdiction. By means whereof, and by perswading him of *Aquileia* to fix his dwelling here also, as before is said, there are no fewer than three Patriarchs which have their constant habitation in the City of *Venice*. 6. *Rialto*, which is of most esteem and reputation, so called *quasi Rivo alto*, because the Marishes are there deeper than in other places; or *quasi Ripa alta*, because it lay higher above the waters than the other Islands. For which reasons that Island getting reputation above the rest, most of the Gentlemen setled their dwellings in the same; and drew thither in the end, the Dukes Palace also, insomuch that in some ancient Writings, the whole City hath been *Rialto*; many of the old *Records* being dated in such and such a year of the *Rialto*. But as they did increase in numbers, so were they fain to spread themselves from one Isle to another; till in the end they built on all the Islands which lay near together, and might conveniently be joined to Boats or Bridges. By this *Rialto* runs the passage called the *Grand Canale*, being in length about 1300 paces, and some forty in breadth; adorned on both sides with stately and magnificent Palaces; and covered with incredible numbers of Boats called *Gondolo's*, very neatly built, and veiled over with Cloth, so that the passengers may go unseen and unknown, without the molestation of Sun, wind, or rain. For publick Buildings it hath in it 70 Parish Churches, to each of which belongeth a Market-place and a Well; 31 Cloysters of Monks, 28 of Nuns, besides Chappels and Alms-houses.

The principal Church of this City is that of S. *Mark*, the Patron of their Common-wealth, whose body they report to have been brought hither from *Alexandria* in *Egypt*, and intombed herein: affirmed by some to be the richest and goodliest Church in all the World. The building of *Mosaick* work, of which they boast themselves to have been the Authors. A kind of work by the *Grecians* called Ἀβάκεγτα, and by the *Latine* Writers *Musiva*, *Musica*, and *Musaica*, wrought out of Stones or Metals of divers colours, into the shape of Flowers, Knots, Birds, Beasts, and other fancies of the Workman; yet done with such exactness of skill and judgment, that it seemeth to be all one stone, the work rather of Nature than Art. A Church of admirable work both within and without, compacted of most rare pieces of Marble, Porphyrie, and a rich stone which the *Lapidaries* called *Ophitis*, because it is speckled like a Snake; adorned on the outside with 148 Pillars of Marble, and eight of Porphyrie near the door; besides 600 Marble Pillars of a lesser size, which carry up an open Gallery round about the Church; from whence the Magistrates and others of the principal Citizens, behold such shews as are presented in the Market place, adjoining to it. The Church in length not above 200 foot of *Venice* measure, nor above 50 in breadth; the roof whereof being of an *Orbicular* form, lyeth open at the very top, where the light comes in, there being no Windows in all the Church, as commonly the Churches in *Italy* are exceeding dark, either to strike in the spectators a religious reverence, or to make their Candles shew the better. And for the inside of the Church, the riches of it are so great, Images so glorious, the furniture of the Altars so above comparison; that all the treasures of the State, may seem to be amassed in the decking of it. And yet as goodly and as glorious as the Fabrick is, it is still unfinished; and, as some think, is kept unfinished on purpose partly to draw on other Benefactors to advance the work, the benefit of whose liberality may be employed unto the use of the publick Treasury; and partly, lest Revenues which are given already should be resumed by the Heirs of the deceased, if the work were ended. So infinitely doth the furniture of the Church exceed the sumptuousness and beauty of the Church it self.

Of other of the publick buildings, the Council-house, the Ducal Palace, Monasteries, Churches, and the like, though stately and magnificent Structures, I forbear to speak. Nor shall I here say any thing of their private houses, so large and beautified, that here are said to be no fewer than 200 (most of them on the *Grand Canale*) able to entertain and lodge the best King in Christendom. All I shall add, and so leave this City, will be a word or two of their *Arsenal*, and publick *Magazine*. In the first of which they have in readiness 200 Gallies, with rooms for Cables, Masts, Sails, Victuals, and Ammunition of all sorts; able thereby to set out a Navy to Sea, on the shortest warning. And in the other it is said, that they have Arms sufficient for 100000 Souldiers of all sorts; amongst which are affirmed to be a thousand Coats of Plate, garnished with Gold, and covered with Velvet; fit for the use and wearing of the greatest Princes. But of their power and forces both by Sea and Land, we shall speak more shortly. In the mean time I take my leave of this gallant City in this following Epigram of *Sannazarius*, one of our late *Italian* Poets, *viz.*

Viderat Adriacis *Venetam* Neptunus *in undis*
Stare urbem, & toto ponere jura mari:

Nunc mihi Tarpeias *quantum vis* Jupiter, *arces*
Objice, & illa tui mœnia Martis, ait.
Si Pelago Tibrim *præfers*, Urbem *aſpice utramque*
Illam homines dices, hanc poſuiſſe deos.

In Engliſh thus:

Neptune ſaw *Venice* in the *Adrian* ſtand,
And all the Sea brought under her command;
Now *Jove*, ſaid he, thy *Roman* Towers object,
And thoſe proud Walls which *Mars* did once protect.
Before the Sea if *Tiber* thou preſer,
Behold both Cities, and thou wilt aver,
That men built *Rome*; the Gods placed *Venice* there.

Proceed we now unto their ſtory: and if we look upon them in their firſt Original, we ſhall find them to have been a people of *Paphlagonia* (a Province of *Aſia* the leſſer) called the *Heneti*, who aiding *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his ten years Wars againſt the *Greeks*, where they loſt their King, named *Philemenes* (or *Philemon*, as ſome call him) choſe rather to ſeek out new Dwellings, than return with ſhame unto their old. Upon this reſolution they join themſelves to *Antenor*, who with ſome remnant of the *Trojans* had the ſame deſign; and ſailing as the Wind and Sea conducted them, arrived at laſt in thoſe Parts of *Italy*, now called *Friuli*. So witneſſeth the Poet, ſaying.

Antenor *potuit*, *mediis illapſus* Achivis,
Illyricos *penetrare Sinus*, *atque intima* tutus
Regna Liburnorum, *& fontes ſuperare* Timavi.

Antenor through the *Greeks* could force his way,
And ſafely piercing the *Illyrian* Bay,
Croſs the *Liburnian* Realms; and conquer all,
From fierce *Timavus* Fountain, to his fall.

Here landing they ſubdued the *Euganei* (who before inhabited this Tract) and poſſeſſed their Dwellings: the name of *Heneti* being changed into that of *Veneti*. But this perhaps not done till ſubdued by the *Galls*, and made part of *Gallia Ciſalpina*; agreeably to the name of the *Veneti*, an old *Gallick* Nation, oppoſite to Iſle of *Britain*. When thoſe *Galls* were vanquiſhed by the *Romans*, the Name and Nation of theſe *Veneti*, was ſo conſiderable, that their Territory had the name of *Venetia*; and together with *Hiſtria*, made one Province of the *Roman* Empire. And here they lived in peace and ſafety under the protection of the Empire, till the terrible Noiſe of the great Preparation of the *Hunns*, for the Conqueſt of *Italy*, occaſioned many of the principal Men, with their ſeveral Retinues, to betake themſelves to the Iſlands, and inacceſſible Mariſhes of the *Adriatick*; where in the place now called *Rialto*, they laid the foundation of this City, *March* 25, *Anno* 421. Exceedingly increaſed by the Deſtruction of *Aquileia*, and the neighbouring Cities by *Attila*, and the ſaid *Barbarians*, *Anno* 456. at what time it began to be called *Venetia*, by the name of their Nation. Not much encreaſed in Power and Greatneſs, at the fall of the *Lombardian* Kingdom: though ſo conſiderable at that time, that in the Diviſion of *Italy* made by *Charles* the Great, betwixt himſelf, the Popes, and the Eaſtern Emperours; the *Venetians* were left at liberty, as a Free-Eſtate: and they deſerved to be left in a free condition, conſidering how notably they had freed themſelves from *Pepin*, the Son of *Charles*, who invaded them with a puiſſant Army, and was well beaten for his labour, though at firſt ſucceſsful. After which, making uſe of their ſituation, they grew not only rich in trade, but ſtrong in ſhipping; and thereby did good ſervice to the Weſtern Princes, in their Wars againſt the *Turks* in the *Holy Land*. And they ſerved themſelves well by it too: getting in one Expedition only (that namely, in which the Empire of *Conſtantinople* was made a Prey unto the *Latines*, *Anno* 1200.) all the Iſlands which they have at the preſent, in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas; many in thoſe Seas which they have loſt; and not a few good Towns in *Peloponneſus*, ſince conquered from them by the *Turks*. Contending with the *Genoeſe* for the Soveraignty of the *Mediterranean*, they received ſo great a Blow at the Naval Battel near *Chioggia*, (ſpoken of before) that they had utterly loſt all, if the Enemy could have uſed his Fortune with Moderation. But being recovered of that Blow, after many various ſucceſſes and Events of War, *Anno* 1381. they got the better of them, and made them quiet: by means whereof being Lords *Paramont* at Sea, they next caſt their Eyes on the main Land of *Italy*, which now they were at more Leiſure to look after, than they had been formerly. The *Hiſtrians* had before infeſted them with Piracy, and were puniſhed for it, in the time of Duke *Pietro Candiano*, by the loſs of many of their Towns; but in the year 1390. the whole Country is brought under the command of this Common-wealth. *Padua* with a great part of *Trivigiana* then appendent on it, they extorted from the noble Family of the *Carrari*, *An.* 1400. The City of *Vincentia* they poſſeſſed themſelves of in the ſame year alſo; and not long after fully perfected their Conqueſt of *Hiſtria*, with the Revolts whereof they had before been often troubled.

But that whereby they moſt improved their Eſtate was by a conſtant watching of their Opportunities, taking advantage of the Factions and Fractions amongſt their neighbours, and working their own Greatneſs out of others Ruines. By means whereof they came poſſeſſed of many places, of right belonging to the Empire, and the Church of *Rome*; as alſo of ſome Towns, pertaining to the Dutchy of *Millain*; and four of the beſt Havens in the *Adriatick*, which properly belonged to the Realm of *Naples*: not giving aid to any of their diſtreſſed Neighbours, without the Mortgage or Direct Sale of ſome Piece or other. Which ſordid kind of Merchandizing drew all the Princes of thoſe parts, (Confederated together in a League at *Cambray Anno* 1508.) to make War upon them; every one to recover by ſtrong hand, what the *Venetian* had extorted from them in their neceſſity. And the Confederates thrived ſo well, that *Maximilian* the Emperour recovered to the Empire, the Towns and Territories of *Padua*, *Vincentia*, *Verona*, *Trieſt*, *Friuli*, and whatſoever elſe he laid claim unto; the Popes in Right of the Church, regained *Ravenna*, *Cervia*, *Rimini* (or *Ariminum*) and *Faventia*; *Lewis* the 12. of *France* in Right of the Dutchy of *Millain*, *Bergamum*, *Crema*, *Cremona*, *Brixia*: the King of *Spain* in right of the Realm of *Naples*, *Manfredonia*, *Trona*, *Barletta*, and *Monopoli*, all upon the *Adriatick*; the Duke of *Ferrara* gained *Rovigo*, and the Duke of *Mantua* the Town of *Aſſulia*. So that the *Venetians* being like the Jay, ſtripped of all their Feathers, were fain to quit the firm land, and betake themſelves unto the Iſles and Mariſhes of their City; having not one Foot, of all their whole Dominion left them in *Italy*,

but

but their Seas and Iſlands. And yet in very little time, partly by working on the Pope to whom they quitted all their intereſt in the Towns aforeſaid; and partly by dividing the reſt of the Confederates from one another; they recovered all that they had loſt, in a little time: except the Towns of *Naples* only, for which they were not willing to contend with the Crown of *Spain*.

The Government is *Ariſtocratical*, managed only by the principal men of all the City, both for birth and breeding; the common people having no authority in affairs of State. The chief Officers at the firſt were many, whom they called *Tribunes*: but experience being had of that confuſion, which a multitude of Governours carrieth for the moſt part with it, in the year 709, they made choice of one chief Officer, whom they called their *Duke*. Under theſe Dukes they have gotten that great Dominion which they now enjoy: The authority of which Dukes was at firſt more abſolute, but by degrees reſtrained and limited within narrower bounds. He that beholdeth him in his Robes, his gravity and outward Port, and the reſpect given him by the people, would think no Prince could be more abſolute and ſupreme. But look upon him in the exerciſe and power of Government and he is nothing in the world but an empty Title. For notwithſtanding that he enjoyeth ſo great a dignity, yet hath he a full power in nothing, not being able to determine in any point, without the preſence of his *Counſellors* (being ſix in number) who always ſit with him, and diſpatch affairs both publick and private; as namely, giving audience to Ambaſſadors from Foreign States, receiving Letters from their own Miniſters, granting of Priviledges, and the like; in which the *Duke* can do juſt nothing, if four (at leaſt) of theſe *Counſellors* be not preſent with him. And yet theſe *Counſellors* without him may conclude of any thing. Nay he is ſo reſtrained in all things to the power of the *Senate*, and to three Officers called the *Capi*, that he may not go out of the Town without their conſent; and by them is preſcribed an order in his own Apparel. So that he is but little better than a Priſoner, when within the City; and a Traytor, if he ſtir abroad: at the beſt, but an honourable Servant. And his Revenue is as little as his Authority; as being allowed out of the common Treaſury, no more than 40000 *Ducats* a year, towards his expence and entertainment. As for the *Soveraignty* of the State, that reſides wholly in the *Senate*; but repreſentatively in the *Duke*, the ſix *Counſellors*, and the three Heads or Preſidents of the Forty, which are thoſe Officers (as I take it) whom they call the *Capi*. The *Senate* or *Great Council*, conſiſts of all the Gentlemen of *Venice*, above five and twenty years of age, which may amount to the number of two thouſand five hundred, though ſeldom half that number do aſſemble at once, by reaſon of their ſeveral employments in affairs of the Common-wealth, in other places: who uſually do meet together every Sunday morning, and on the morning of other *Feſtivals*, where they chuſe Magiſtrates, and diſtribute Governments, and other matters of the State. But becauſe ſuch great Bodies move but ſlowly, and are not very capable of truſt and ſecrecy, they parcel this great Council into leſſer Members; whereof the principal are the *Pregadi*, and the *Council of Ten*. That of the *Pregadi* conſiſteth of 120 in which they treat of, and determine matters of the greateſt importance; and therein conclude commonly of ſuch principal points, as formerly have been propoſed and treated of in the great Aſſembly: And in this Council beſides the 120 before mentioned, the *Duke*, the ſix Counſellors, and the Council of Ten, and all ſuch as have born any publick Office, have their voice or ſuffrage. This is that Council which properly and more eſpecially is called the *Senate*; in which nothing is to be concluded or paſſed into Acts, except four of the ſix *Counſellors* be preſent at them, and that ſixty at the leaſt of the whole number, give their ſuffrage to it. Then for the *Council of Ten*, their power is univerſal, over all affairs, ſuch as the other Councils may not meddle with, as to conclude of War, or peace, to put in execution what they think moſt neceſſary for the benefit of the Common-wealth, and other things of like weight and moment: which if they were firſt treated of in the General Council or Aſſembly, and after in that of the *Pregadi*, as they ought to be in common courſe; could not be poſſibly managed with ſuch ſpeed and ſecrecy, as the exigencies of the State require. And in this Council, with the Prince and his ſix Aſſiſtants, the *ſupreme Majeſty* of the State doth reſide eſpecially. Some other Officers there are, and thoſe of great authority and reputation, as the *Procurators* of St. *Mark*, which have the charge of the publick Treaſures, and the *Avogadori*, or *Tribunes* (as one might call them) of the people, being three in all; one of which muſt be always preſent in all conſultations, leſt any thing ſhould paſs to the prejudice, and infringement of the Priviledges of the common people.

For the whole body of the City conſiſteth either of the *Gentlemen*, or of Artificers and Commons. Theſe laſt are the deſcendants and progeny of ſuch as came to ſettle here when the State was fixed; invited to dwell here, and to follow their occupations, by ſeveral Priviledges and Immunities which were offered to them; and theſe they neither admit into any of their Councils, nor into any of the Offices of Truſt and Power, except it be two, that namely of the Chancellor, and the principal Secretaries, which pertain only to the people. The other are the iſſue or deſcendants of thoſe, who firſt laid the foundation of their City and Common-wealth: and theſe they have in ſuch reſpect, and ſo high eſteem, that to make any Stranger (how great and eminent ſoever) a Gentleman of the City, is the greateſt honour they can beſtow; and not beſtowed but upon the beſt deſerver. *Henry* the 3. of *France* taking this City in his way out of *Poland*, thought himſelf graced with this attribute, which they are very dainty and ſparing of, it being the higheſt honour which they vouchſafe to impart to ſuch Commanders of their own, and Ambaſſadors of other Princes, as have well deſerved it. And that this *honour* may be kept up to the very height, and their Nobility grow not too cheap, by being too numerous; neither the younger Sons of theſe *Gentlemen* within the City, or of the *Noblemen* in the Country, are permitted to marry. But otherwiſe they ſuffer them to ſatisfie their luſts, with too much impunity; and for their ſakes allow of *Stews*, as an evil not to be voided on the former grounds.

Now, as *Otho* in *Tacitus* ſaid to the *Prætorian* Soldiers, *Principes è Senatu oritur, Senatus è vobis*: ſo out of theſe Gentlemen are choſen the Senators, out of them the Duke. His election by *Contarenus* is deſcribed in this manner. In the vacancy of the place, all the Gentry above thirty years of age are aſſembled. So many as meet, caſt their names into a pot; and in another, are juſt ſo many balls, of which thirty only are gilt. Then a child draweth for each, till the thirty gilt ones be all drawn, for which thirty the child draweth again the ſecond time out of another pot, that hath only nine gilt balls. The nine ſo drawn, nominate forty, out of which forty are twelve again ſelected by the ſame kind of lot. Theſe twelve nominate five and twenty, out of which five and twenty are nine again by lot ſet apart. Theſe nine nominate 45, who are by lot again reduced unto eleven. Theſe eleven chuſe forty one, of the beſt

and

and chiefeſt of the *Senators*; who after an Oath taken ſeverally, to chuſe whom they judge worthieſt, write in a ſcrole every one whom he beſt liketh. The ſcrolls are mingled together and then drawn, the fitneſs of the perſons then drawn is diſcuſſed, and he that hath moſt voices above five and twenty, is the man whom they pronounce to be elected, and adjudge with due ſolemnities to be created their *Duke*. By the like kind of Lottery do they chuſe Gentlemen in the Senate, and make publick Officers, inſomuch that *Contarenus*, who hath committed unto writing theſe publick Forms, conceiveth (I will not ſay how rightly) that the *Venetian* Common-wealth was modelled by *Plato*'s Platform.

But whether this be ſo or not, certain it is, that this Common-wealth thus conſtituted, and modelled, as before is ſaid; hath laſted longer under one form of Government, than any *Republick* in the world, either *Greek* or *Roman*. Nor hath it only preſerved it ſelf in the ſame condition, but may moſt juſtly be accounted one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks of *Chriſtendom* againſt the incroachments of the *Turks*: the Wars whereof hath procured peace, and the peace thereof hath procured plenty, to the reſt of *Europe*. Inſomuch, that it may well be ſaid, that as *Europe* is the Head of the World, and *Italy* the face of *Europe*, ſo *Venice* is the eye of *Italy*, the faireſt, ſtrongeſt, and moſt active part in that powerful Body. As if the *Genius* of old *Rome* by ſome *Pythagorical* tranſmigration had paſſed into the body of this powerful State; and animated it with all the virtues of that City, but knit with a more permanent and conſtant temper. From ſo baſe and abject a beginning, is this City grown to be one of the beſt *Supporters* of the *Arms* of *Europe*.

As for the Religion of this State, they tolerate that of the *Greek* Church, but they themſelves profeſs no other than that of the Church of *Rome*: yet with ſuch caution and reſpect to their own authority, that they ſuffer not the Clergy to enjoy thoſe priviledges, which they poſſeſs in other Countries, to the publick prejudice. Hence grew the quarrel betwixt them, and Pope *Paul* the Fifth; in which the Signeury ſtood ſtifly to their ancient Rights, and cauſed Maſs to be duly ſaid, notwithſtanding all their Churches were under the interdict; baniſhed the *Jeſuites* for ever out of their Dominions, for ſtickling too buſily in behalf of the Pope: and in the end prevailed ſo far by their conſtant courage, that the Pope was fain to give over the cauſe, and reconcile them to the Church, without any ſubmiſſion. A notable example to all Chriſtian Princes, how to behave themſelves towards thoſe of *Rome*; who are not to be gained upon, but by ſuch reſiſtances. So eaſie a thing it is for men of conſtancy and courage, to ſhake off that yoke, which Papal Tyranny and Superſtition hath impoſed upon them.

In managing their Wars they anciently obſerved two Rules, which moſt conduced to the enlargement and ſecurity of their Common-wealth. The firſt was the exempting of their own Citizens from the Wars (not out of jealouſie, but care of their preſervation) unleſs compelled to the contrary by extream neceſſity: the body of their Armies being compounded out of the Provincial Subjects, intermixt with *Mercenaries*. By means whereof, they did not only keep their City in the ſame condition, able at any time, and at all times, to give Law to the reſt of their Dominions; but waſted the hot and boiling ſpirits of their Subjects, in the Wars abroad; which otherwiſe might have made too much work at home. The other was the entertaining of ſome neighbouring Prince to be the General of their Forces; whom in the concluſion of the ſervice they diſmiſſed with honour and reward. And by this courſe they avoided faction, and prevented ſervitude; Either or both of which might have hapned by employing any of their own great ones in the chief commands, who (after the example of *Julius Cæſar* in the ſtate of *Rome*) having a ſtrong party within the City, and an Army without, might perhaps have made himſelf their Prince. But this was only in the conduct of their Wars in *Italy*, and in ſuch times when the State was not ſo well ballanced as it hath been ſince.

As for the Forces of the State, we may behold them in relation to Sea or Land. Their Land-forces which they have in continual pay, for defence of their Dominion, conſiſt of 28000 Foot, with Captains, and all other Officers inrolled and paid; and beſides thoſe, they have a choice Band of 4000 Muſquetiers, for exerciſing of which they keep yearly Muſters, as well to improve them in experience, as to proportion them ſome gratuities, according to their well-deſervings. And as for *Horſe*, they maintain conſtantly 6000 men at Arms, well appointed and paid; the like whereof is not to be found in all *Italy*. And yet beſides this conſtant and ordinary eſtabliſhment, they are able to bring great Forces into the Field; as appeareth by their Army againſt *Lewis* the Twelfth: in which without diſfurniſhing any of their Forts and Garriſons, they had 2000 men of Arms, 3000 light Horſe, 30000 Foot, moſt of their own natural Subjects; ſaving that they were interlined with ſome Bands of *Switzers*, to which people they give yearly penſions, to be aſſured of their aid upon all occaſions. Then for the *Sea-Forces*, beſides that they keep fifty Gallies in continual action, for defence of the *Adriatick*, and that they have no leſs than 200 more laid up in the *Arſenal*, with all manner of tackling and ammunition appertaining to them: they have 10000 men enrolled to ſerve at the *Oar*, and may raiſe as many as they pleaſe for thoſe kind of ſervices, out of thoſe parts of *Sclavonia*, which are ſubject to them. But the great evidence of the power they can make at Sea, was the great Fleet ſet out againſt the *Grand Signieur* for the War of *Cyprus*, *An.* 1570. in which they manned out one great Gallion, eleven great Gallies, five and twenty tall Ships, and one hundred and fifty Gallies of leſſer burden; being in all one hundred and eighty ſeven Sail, fit for preſent ſervice. To give the total ſum in brief: they held a War by Sea and Land for ſeven years together, againſt all the Princes of *Chriſtendom* (excepting *England*) confederated againſt them by the League of *Cambray*: in all which time they neither wanted men nor money; and in the end, were the leaſt loſers by the bargain.

By this we may conjecture alſo at the greatneſs of the publick Treaſury, and of the yearly income which ſupplies the ſame. For though it be conceived that their ordinary ſtanding Revenue be but four millions of *Ducats* yearly (which yet is more than any Chriſtian Prince can boaſt of, except *France* and *Spain*) yet they have many other ways to advance their Treaſury, by laying new Impoſts on commodities as they ſee occaſion; Which needs muſt riſe to vaſt and moſt conſiderable ſums, in a City of the greateſt Traffick of any in *Europe*, and perhaps in all the world beſides. And yet beſides ſuch Cuſtoms and Impoſts as they lay on Merchandiſe, there is nothing which the people do eat or drink, for which they pay not ſomething to the publick Treaſury: over and above which, the pooreſt Labourer in the whole *Signeury* payeth his *Pol-money* alſo. Inſomuch, that it is credibly affirmed, that the *Chriſtians* generally do live in a better condition under the *Turk*, than under the *Venetians*. Without ſuch helps, (though heavy and burdenſom to the Subject) they could not poſſibly have ſpent twelve millions in the War againſt *Selimus* the Second; and as many a little before that, in the enterpriſe of *Ferrara*, and the War raiſed againſt them by the League of *Cambray*, which was that formerly remembred.

As

As for the Dukes of *Venice*, though no *Soveraign Princes*, nor such as do succeed each other in the right of inheritance: yet being they are always men of most eminent note, and that in their names all the business of State is acted, and all writings dated, I will subjoin a Catalogue of them to this present; to the end that meeting with their names in the course of History, we may the better know in what times they lived.

The Dukes of *Venice*.

697	1	*Paulus Anafestus*	20.	1298	51 *Marino Georgio*
718	2	*Marcel Tegalien*	10.	1299	52 *John Sourance*
727	3	*Hippateus Ursus*	11.	1315	53 *Francisco Dondolo*
		An interregnum of six years.		1329	54 *Barthol Gradonico*
742	4	*Theodatus Hippateus.*		1330	55 *Andrea Dondolo*
755	5	*Galla of Malamocco.*		1342	56 *Marinus Falerius*
756	6	*Dominico Monegarta.*			57 *John Gradonico*
760	7	*Maurice Galbata.*		1343	58 *John Dauphin*
783	8	*John Galbata.*		1348	59 *Lorenzo Celso.*
799	9	*Obelerius.*		1352	60 *Marco Cornaro*
804	10	*Angelus Partitiarius.*		1355	61 *Andrea Contarene*
822	11	*Justinian Partitiarius*		1371	62 *Michael Morosini*
824	12	*John Partitiarius.*			63 *Antonio Veniere*
823	13	*Petro Tradonico.*		1389	64 *Michael Steno*
859	14	*Ursus Partitiarius.*		1402	65 *Thomazo Micenico*
176	15	*John Partitiarius.*		1412	66 *Francisco Foscari*
881	16	*Petro Candiano.*		1457	67 *Paschal Malipiere*
	17	*Dominico Tribuno.*		1452	68 *Christophoro Moro*
	18	*Petro Tribuno.*		1461	69 *Nicholao Troni*
905	19	*Ursus Badoarius.*		1463	70 *Nicholao Marcelli*
925	20	*Petro Candiano* II.		1464	71 *Petro Mocenici*
932	21	*Petro Badoario.*		1465	72 *Andrea Vendramine*
935	22	*Petro Candiano* III.		1467	73 *John Mocenico*
950	23	*Petro Candiano* IV.		1474	74 *Marco Barbadico*
970	24	*Petro Ursеola.*			75 *Augustino Barbadico*
972	25	*Vital Candiano.*		1489	76 *Leonardo Loredani*
973	26	*Tribuno Meme.*		1509	77 *Antonio Grimani*
985	27	*Petro Ursеola* II.		1511	78 *Andrea Gritti*
1003	28	*Otho Ursеola.*		1527	79 *Petro Laude*
1020	29	*Petro Barbolani.*		1533	80 *Francisco Donati*
1021	30	*Dominico Flabenico.*		1540	81 *Antonio Trevisani*
1031	31	*Dominico Cantareni.*		1541	82 *Francisco Vivieri*
1059	32	*Dominico Silvio.*		1543	83 *Lorenzo Prioli*
1072	33	*Vitalis Falerius.*		1547	84 *Hierome Prioli*
1084	34	*Vitalis Michaeli.*		1555	85 *Petro Loredani*
1090	35	*Ordelasius Falerius.*		1560	86 *Lewis Mocenico*
1105	36	*Dominico Michaeli.*		1567	87 *Sebastian Venieri*
1118	37	*Petrus Polanus.*		1578	88 *Nicola di Ponti*
1136	38	*Dominico Morosini.*		1586	89 *Paschal Cicogne*
1143	39	*Vitalis Michaeli* II.		1596	90 *Marino Grimani*
1160	40	*Sebastian Ziani.*		1606	91 *Leonardo Donati*
1165	41	*Aura Maripiere.*		1612	92 *Antonio Memmo*
1179	42	*Henrico Dondolo.*		1615	93 *Giovanni Bembo*
1193	43	*Petro Ziani.*		1618	94 *Nicholao Donati*
1216	44	*Jacobo Tepuli.*		1618	95 *Antonio Priuli*
1236	45	*Marino Morosini.*		1623	96 *Francisco Contareno*
1240	46	*Renieri Zeno.*			97 *Giovanni Correlio*
1256	47	*Lorenzo Tepuli.*			98 *Francisco Erizzo*
1263	48	*Jacobo Contareni.*			now living, *An.* 1648.
1267	49	*Giovanni Dondolo*			
1276	50	*Petro Gradenico.*			

The principal Orders of *Knighthood* in this *Republick* are 1. of S. *Mark*, who is the Patron of this City, instituted in the year 1330, and renewed again (being grown somewhat out of use) *An.* 1562. The honour is commonly bestowed on the person present, sometimes by Letters Patents on a party absent; as lately upon *Daniel Heinsius*, one of great eminence for Learning in the *Netherlands*. The person chosen is to be of noble blood, at the least a Gentleman; the Word or Motto of the Order, is, *Pax tibi Marce*.

2. *Of the glorious Virgin*, first instituted by *Bartholomew* of *Vincentia*, *An.* 1222. Their charge is to defend Widows and Orphans, and to procure (as much as in them is) the peace of *Italy*. It was allowed of by Pope *Urban* the Fourth, *An.* 1262. The Arms of this Order, are a Purple Cross, between certain Stars. The Habit a white Surcoat over a Russet Cloak; and seems to be as well a Religious as a Military Institution, like to the *Spanish* Orders, and that of *Malta*.

There are in the Provinces of this Commonwealth, before described,
Patriarchs 2. Bishops 16.

The Great Dukedom of TUSCANIE.

HAving thus run along the Coast of the *Adriatick*, or upper Sea, from the Lands of the Church unto the *Alpes*, which divide *Italy* from *Germany*; let us next keep along the tract of the *Tuscan* or *Lower Sea*, from the said *Lands of the Church*, to that part of the *Alpes* which divide *Italy* from *France*. And in the first place we meet with the Dukedom of *Florence*, or the Estate of the great Duke of *Tuscany*; divided on the East from S. *Peters Patrimony*, by the River *Fisco*; on the West, from the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, by the River *Macra*, and the strong Fort of *Sarazena*; on the North from *Romandiola*, and *Marca Anconitana*, by the *Apennine* Hills, and on the South-side it is bounded with the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

It taketh up the greatest and goodliest part of all that which anciently was called *Tuscany*, from the *Greek* word θύειν, which signifieth *to Sacrifice*; of which act of Religious Worship, or rather of some superstitious Ceremonies appertaining to it, they are conceived to be the Authors. And to say truth, they were much given to *Sooth-sayings*, and Divinations, and such like vanities of *Gentilism*: *Tages*, that *Merlin* of the old World, first appearing here, from whom they learned the greatest part of their Superstitions. So that this name was adventitious and accidental. For properly and originally it was called *Tyrrhenian*, from *Tyrrhenus* the Son of *Atys* King of *Lydia*, who came and planted in these parts about the time that *Gedeon* judged the Tribes of *Israel*. But these names signified the same both Country and people, though in divers Languages, and with respect to different Originations: the name of *Tyrrheni*, and *Tyrrhenis* being most used by the *Greeks*; as that of *Tyscis* and *Tyscia*, by their Neighbours of *Rome*, who also called the people *Hetrusci*, and the Country *Hetruria*, from a particular Province of it which was so entituled. Anciently it extended as far Eastward as the banks of *Tiber*, the other bounds being then as they are at the present, and in that tract gave dwelling to a potent Nation. Who not content to be restrained within the *Appennine* and the *Tiber*, wasted three hundred Towns of the *Umbri*, the next bordering Nation: and built twelve Cities on the other side of the Mountains, that is to say, *Adria*, *Verona*, *Vincentia*, *Trent*, *Bergamo*, *Mantua*, *Como*, *Vercellæ*, *Novara*, *Parma*, *Bononia*, and *Rhegium*; all of esteem and reputation to this very day. They were the first Nation that carried an *Offensive* War to the Gates of *Rome*, when they gave aid to the *Tarquins* under King *Porsena*; and held

held it out on the *Defensive* as long as any: No people in all *Italy* standing more stifly in defence of their common Liberties, than the *Falisci*, and *Veientes*, two *Hetrurian* Tribes. But nothing could withstand the Fortune of that growing Empire. Twelve Nations of them were brought under by *Tarquinius Priscus*, who from hence brought to *Rome* the *Fasces* and Triumphal Ornaments, and other embellishments of State: the *Veii* and *Falisci*, by the Sword of *Camillus*; the Conquest perfected by the conduct of *Valerius Corvinus*, and *Fulv. Centumalus*, *A.V.C.* 455. So the *Tuscans* were subdued at last, after they had been governed by their own Kings 1132 years; that is to say, from *Tarchon Priscus* their first King, *A. M.* 2550, to *Tarquinius Ceso* their last King, *A. M.* 3668.

The chief Towns of it in those times were 1. *Veii*, and 2. *Perusia*, spoken of before. 3. *Pesulæ*, then of very great fame, now a poor Village hard by *Florence*. 4. *Ægyllina*, situate not far from the Lake of *Thrasymene*, which from hence was called *Vadum Agyllinum*: the chief Town of the *Tuscans* at the coming of *Æneas* into *Italy*, and the Seat Royal of *Mezentius* that noted Tyrant, so often mentioned by *Virgil*. First built by the *Pelasgi*, a Greek People, and by them thus named, afterwards by mistake called *Cære*: by like mistake as *Peru Jucatan*, and others of the *American* Provinces, got their present names: as shall there be shewn. For the *Tuscans*, or the *Romans* as others say, demanding in their language of a Country-fellow, the name of the place, was answered in his language, χαῖρε, that is to say, God save you, or, God speed you: which word they taking for the name of the Town, did ever after call it *Cære*. Memorable in old time for the Baths adjoining, from hence called *Balnea Cæretana*; more for the preservation of the *Vestal* Fire, and the other holy things of *Rome*, when that Town was taken by the *Galls*. Rewarded hereupon with all the priviledges of *Rome*, except right of Suffrage: from whence the Tables, in which the *Roman Censors* used to inroll the names of those, whom they deprived of their Votes in Senate, or any other publick Council, were called *Cærites Tabulæ*. 5. *Phaleria*, on the Sea side, the principal Town of the *Falisci*, of which there is some remainder extant in the Village called *Falaris*. 6. *Clusium*, the Seat royal of King *Porsena*; for aiding which against the *Galls*, the *Romans* drew upon themselves the fury of that turbulent people. *Pisa*, *Aretium*, and such others as are still in being, we shall speak of afterwards.

The Rivers and the soil do remain as formerly, though the first altered in their names. The principal of which are, 1. *Arnus*, spoken of before, in the general survey of *Italy*. 2. *Sercius*, by *Ptolomy* called *Boactus*; a River which by the excellency of its Carps and Trouts, makes some amends unto the people for its violent Land-floods. 3. *Palia*, as violent and dangerous as the other, but not so profitable; which falleth into *Tiber*, near *Orvietto*. 4. *Marta*, by *Ptolomy* called *Osa*. Here is also the Lake *Volsinius*, which is twenty four miles in compass; and that called anciently *Sabatinus*, but now *Laco Braciani*, from which Water was conveyed to *Rome*. By reason of these and other Lakes, and the frequent over-flowings of the Rivers, the Country in former times was full of Bogs, which made the air unhealthy, and the ways unpassable; it being in the Flats and Marishes of *Hetruria*, that *Annibal* was turmoiled, losing herein the greatest part of his Elephants, and one of his eyes. But since those times, partly by the industry of the people, and the great providence of the Princes; the Fens in most places are well drained, and the Bogs converted to firm land: whereby the air is rectified, and the ways made pleasant; care being also taken, by great Banks and Ramparts, to keep the Rivers for the most part within their Chanels. So that the Country is now full of very spacious Fields, and fruitful Vallies, swelled here and there with pleasant Mountains, little inferiour in fertility to the richest Vales; abundantly well stored with delicious Wines, and plentiful, in a word, of all the blessings of Nature: save that the parts about *Florence* are defective in Wheat, the want of which is supplied from the Fields of *Sienna*, where there is plenty enough of it for themselves and their Neighbours; though no such superfluity, as to spare any of it unto other Provinces.

But to return unto the story, *Tuscany* being thus brought under the command of *Rome*, was made the second of those eleven Regions, into which *Italy* was divided by *Augustus Cæsar*. In the division of it made by *Antoninus*, and in that of *Constantine*, it made with *Umbria* one of the ten Provinces, which was immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*. Afterwards in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire, it became a member of the Kingdom of *Lombardy*, then of the *French*, and finally of the *German* Empire: during which times it was Governed by an Officer of Trust and Power, whom I find sometimes called the *Marquess*, sometimes *Duke* of *Tuscany*; who had here more or less Authority, as they could work on the Necessities of their several Princes. *Desiderius* the last King of the *Lombards*, had been Duke of *Tuscany*, and so was *Albericus* in the time of the *Berengarii*; and *Guido* is called *Marquess* of it, under the Reign of *Henricus Auceps* the *German* Emperor. Afterwards, as the Popes grew in Power and Greatness, so they made bold to intermeddle in the affairs of this Province: giving it one while to the Kings of *Naples*; another while to the Dukes of *Anjou*, making some Challenge to that Kingdom. In which Distractions the *Florentines* first bought their own Liberty, of the Emperour *Rodolphus Habspurgensis*; and after purchased the Town and Territory of *Cortona*, of *Ladislaus* King of *Naples*; that of *Arezzo*, for 40000 *Florens*, of Duke *Lewis* of *Anjou*. After this time they husbanded their Affairs so well, that they became one of the most considerable Estates in *Italy*; and at the last by taking in *Pisa* and *Sienna*, they got the absolute Dominion of the best and largest part of *Tuscany*: which now is under the command of the *Great Duke*, and may be branched most fitly into these four Parts; that is to say, the Cities and Territories of 1. *Florence*, 2. *Pisa*, 3. *Sienna*, and 4. the *Islands* situate in the *Tuscan*, or *Tyrrhenian* Seas.

1. And first, the Territory or Estate of *Florence* taketh up the North part of this great Dukedom, having the *Apennine* on the North, and the Estates of *Pisa* and *Sienna* on the South. So called from the City of FLORENCE, situate nigh unto the Conflux of the Rivers *Arnus* and *Chianus*; the former passing through the midst of the City, which is joined together with four Bridges of Stone: Environed with Mountains, which do serve as a Fortress against Invasions, and for defence against the Winds. First built by *L. Sylla* that bloody *Dictator*; afterwards made a Colony by the *Triumviri*, *Augustus*, *Antony*, and *Lepidus*; from the flourishing situation of it being called *Florentia*. The *Lombards* upon some displeasure razed it to the Ground, but it was rebuilt by *Charlemagne*, to whom and whose Successors they continued faithful, as long as they had any thing to do with the State of *Italy*: but after, they betook themselves to the *Papal* Faction, and were as rigid *Guelfs* as any. On this foundation it now stands, and is indeed a very fair and flourishing City, agreeable unto the name; the streets being very straight and large, paved with

square

ſquare ſtone, and always kept exceeding clean: the ordinary buildings beautiful above any in *Italy*, beſides many fair and ſtately Palaces adorned with *Statua's*. The principal of the Palaces is that of the *Great Duke*, taking up the room of 50 houſes which were wont to ſtand there; capable of a great retinue: and for the largeneſs of the building, the Architecture and Ornaments of it, as alſo for the Gardens, Fountains, Statues, and other Acceſſaries, equalling, if not ſurpaſſing the goodleſt Palaces in all *Europe*. The like may alſo be affirmed of the *Cathredal*, highly commended for the excellency of the Workmanſhip, but that eſpecially of the Steeple, which both for ſtuff and ſtructure is beyond compare. This Church is called commonly the *Annunciata*, and worthily accounted one of the chief Ornaments of *Florence*: in which Cities there are, beſides ſo many excellent pieces and curious rarities, that the Arch-duke *Charles* was wont to ſay, that it was *a City not to be ſeen but on Holy days*. As for the Inhabitants of this City and the parts adjoyning, they are a very induſtrious people, and generally ſaid to be of a very great wit, ſubtle heads and of much inſight into buſines: and yet Count *Imbalt*, a *French* Gentleman, was uſed to ſay, *Non ſapeve dove conſiſteſſe l'ingegne tanto celebrate di Florentini*, that he could never find where that great wit of the *Florentines* lay. *Guicciardine* the hiſtorian, was without doubt a notable Stateſ-man; and *Machiavel*, once the Recorder of this City, a man of as ſhrewd a brain as any; and ſo were the two *Coſmo's* of the houſe of the *Medices*: but whether all the *Florentines*, or the *major* part of them, be of ſuch extraordinary wit as they ſay they are, I am not very well reſolved; nor is it much material to enquire into it.

The other Cities and chief places of this firſt diviſion, are 1. *Feſulæ*, one a *Roman* Colony, now a ſmall Village called *Fieſoli*; ſituate in the ſtraights of the *Apennine*, not far from *Florence*, which is thought to have riſen chiefly from the ruins of it: moſt memorable for the great defeat here given by *Stilico*, to the great Army of the *Goths*, conducted into *Italy* under *Rhadagaſus*. 2. *Pizoria*, or *Piſtoia*, ſeated on the foot of the *Apennine*, but ruinated with its own diſſenſions; of which the greateſt and moſt laſting, were thoſe betwixt the *Neri* and *Bianchi* (or the black men and the white) which divided *Florence*; and that between the *Guelfs* and *Gibellines*, which here took beginning, and for a long time exerciſed the peace of *Chriſtendom*. This laſt began (as ſome ſay) upon the quarrel of two Brothers, of which the one named *Guelfo*, ſtood for the Pope; the other named *Gibellino*, declared for the Emperour. The quarrel ſpreading into parties, called the *Guelfs* and the *Gibellines*, became at laſt the wonder and amazement of all good people: inſomuch as ſome are of opinion, that the fiction of the *Elfs* and *Goblins*, wherewith we uſe to fright young children, was derived from hence. As for the City it ſelf, it is ſeated in a fair and goodly plain, compaſſed with Mountains; the ſtreets paved with free ſtone, and the Church (which is Cathedral) with Marble. It was firſt walled by *Deſiderius* the laſt King of the *Lombards*, when he was Governour of this Province; but for all that, was forced to ſubmit it ſelf to the power of the *Florentine*, by whom it was ſubdued *Anno* 1150. when as yet themſelves were not the abſolute Maſters of their own City. 3. *Volterra* built among the mountains, the birth-place of *Linus* Succeſſor to St. *Peter* in the See of *Rome*. It ſtandeth on the top of an hill, the walls thereof made of ſquare ſtone ſix foot long, which are very neatly joyned together without Mortar: and in thoſe Walls five Gates for entrance, each Gate having near unto it a very fair Fountain. The Marble Statues, and ſome Epitaphs in *Tuſcan* Letters, do evidently declare it to be very ancient. In this Town was born *Rodolphus Volteranus*, one of the greateſt Reſtorers of Learning in the Weſt parts of the World. 4. *Monte Pulciano*, in *Latin* called *Mons Politianus*, a well fortified City, and the birth-place of *Angelus Politianus*, the Reviver of the *Latin* or *Roman* Elegancies. 5. *Prato*, another ſtrong piece of this part alſo. Neighboured by a retiring place of the Great Dukes, called *Pratoline*, a right pleaſant Village, beautified with a magnificent Palace; in which beſides many other ſingularities, are moſt curious Water-works, equal, if not ſuperiour unto thoſe of *Tivoli*. 6. *Cortona*, an ancient City of the *Tuſcans*, ſituate at the foot of the *Apennine*; ſold to the *Florentines* by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*. 7. *Aretium* or *Arezzo*, one of the ancient Cities of the *Tuſcans* alſo, and ſold to the *Florentines* as the other was; this being bought for 40000 *Florens* of *Lewis* of *Anjou*, then the Popes *Vicegerent* in this Country. 8. *Borgo San Sepulcro*, ſeated on the *Tiber*, neer, or within the *Spoletan* Dukedom; added to this *Signeury* by *Coſmo de Medices*, the firſt of that name: by whom bought of Pope *Eugenius* the fourth for the ſum of 25000 *Florens*, and laid unto the Patrimony of this Common-wealth, to which it ſerveth for a Bulwark on that ſide of this Country.

To this diviſion alſo we may beſt refer the ſmall, but rich Signeury of *Maſſa*, ſituate on the borders of the ſtate of *Genoa*. Chief Towns whereof. 1. *Maſſa* it ſelf, which gives the title of a Marqueſs to the Lord hereof, of the Family of the *Maleſpines*. 2. *Carara*, three miles off from *Maſſa*, and more neer the Sea; of great fame for its Quatries of whiteſt Marble (much uſed in the time of the *Roman* greatneſs) and a breed of the faireſt Women in *Italy*. The Prince hereof a Feudatary to the Duke of *Florence*; but, amongſt his own vaſſals, Abſolute enough.

2. The ſecond member of this Eſtate, is the City and Territory of *PISA*, lying towards the Sea, betwixt the *Genoeſe* on the Weſt, and the Territory of *Sienna* on the Eaſt. The City firſt built by the *Piſæ*, a people of *Elis* in *Greece*: who following old *Neſtor* from *Troy*, were by the violence of the wind driven upon this coaſt; and here upon the River *Arno*, where it meeteth with *Serchius*, did erect this Town. In the diſtractions of the Empire it ſtood up for it ſelf, and grew ſo potent, that at one time they waged War both with the *Venetians*, and *Genoeſe*. They were once Maſters of *Sardinia*, *Corſica*, and the *Baleares*; but finally, being diſcomfited by the *Genoeſe* near the Iſle of *Giglio*, *An.* 1369. they ſubmitted themſelves to the protection of *Charles* the fourth, by whom it was made free. Not long after, it was taken by *John Galeaze* the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *An.* 1404. by *John Marid* his Son and Succeſſor ſold unto the *Florentines*, from whoſe command they freed themſelves by popular violence. The *Florentines* upon this beſieged them, and brought them to ſuch extremity of hunger, that they were ready to be ſtarved. Yet ſuch was the humanity of the Beſiegers, that when they entred the Town, every man carried victuals in his hand in ſtead of Weapons, to beget as it were, new life in that rebellious people. This victory the *Florentines* got by the valour and conduct of Sir *John Hawkwood*, whom the *Italians* call *Giovanni di Aguto*; who being firſt a Taylor in *Eſſex*, afterwards ſerved *Edward* the third in his *French* wars, where he was knighted. And when, upon the peace concluded after the battel of *Poictiers*, he wanted employment, he entred with his Regiment into *Italy*, and put himſelf into the pay of the *Florentines*, then in war with this City: who for his valour, have honoured him with a very fair Tomb and Monument. When *Charles* the 8. went into *Italy*, the *Piſans* again revolted; and were not

without much labour and great Charges, reduced to their former obedience. As for the City it self, it is almost as big as *Florence*; this being five miles in compass, and that but six; but very short of it in the number of people, *Florence* being said to contain 90000 souls, *Pisa* not a third part of that proportion; yet hath it very good advantages to make it populous, that is to say, the publick *Arsenal* for shipping, an University for Students, and the See of an Arch-bishop: the Cathedral Church of which, is a very beautiful piece of work, the Gates thereof are brass, and the Steeple of it of such artificial and exquisite building, that it sheweth as if it were always falling. But the unwholsomness of the air over-ballanceth all these fair advantages.

The next place of importance within the Territory of this City is the Town and Haven of *Ligorn*, (*Liburnum* it is called in *Latin*) seated upon the influx of the River *Arno*; well fortified against the *Genoese*, by whom the works were once slighted, *An.* 1297. Upon a reconciliation made between those States, it returned again to its old Masters. And when the *Pisans* were sold over to the *Florentines*, by the Duke of *Millain*; *Thomas Fregosa* Duke of *Genoa*, seized upon this place and sold it also to the same Chapmen, for 120000 Ducats. By the care of Duke *Cosmo* and his two Sons, it is much improved in strength and beauty; and so well fortified, that it is thought to be one of the strongest Cities in *Christendom*: Cities I say, and not Castles, the Castles of *Stockholm* in *Sweden*, and that of *Millain*, being held to be the strongest Forts in the World. After this comes in 3. *Peira Sancta*, on the West side of the *Arnus*, (a place of great consequence and strength) one of the best pieces of the *Pisans* when a Free-Estate, against their old enemies the *Genoese*, towards whom it standeth. 4. *Terreciola*, Eastward of *Ligorn*, neighboured with a capacious Bay on the *Mediterranean*. 5. *Castellona*, an Episcopal See. 6. *Porto Barrato* bordering on the Signieury of *Sienna*; now nothing but a station for Ships (nor much used for that) but heretofore beautified with one of the best Cities of the *Tuscans*, called *Populonia*.

3. The third number of this Dukedom is the City and Territory of *SIENNA*, lying betwixt the Estate of *Pisa*, and the Land of the Church. The City said to be built by *Bremus*, who did there put his old sickly men to sojourn, and called it *Sena*: the birth-place of *Æneas Sylvius*, called afterwards Pope *Pius* the second; of *Francis Picolomony*, after Pope *Pius* the third; and of *Sixtus* (hence surnamed) *Senensis*, the greatest Scholar of the three, if not of all the age he lived in. By *Antonine* in his *Itinerarium* called *Sena Julia*; to difference it perhaps from another of that name neer the *Adriatick*, called *Sena Gallica*. Built near the Spring, or Fountain of the River *Arbia*, now better known by the name of *Treissa*; but built (which makes the situation of it exceeding pleasant) upon an high hill, on which there is a Castle that commands the Town; the Streets thereof even and very plain, centring in a large and spacious Market-place; near to which is a very fair Palace used for a Senate-house in the Free-Common-wealth, and on the South-side neer the Walls the Cathedral Church, reputed to be one of the fairest in *Italy*, having only one door into it, to which there is an ascent by fair Marble Stairs, of which the pavement is made also. Having long held the *Gibelline* or Imperial faction, it bought its liberty at an easie rate, of the Emperour *Rodolphus* the first. After, it self into the hands of the *Spaniards*, then of the *French*; and finally, was made over to *Cosmo de Medices* Duke of *Florence*, by the King of *Spain*, *Anno* 1558. in consideration of the great charge he had been at to beat out the *French*, and other services expected for the time to come. *Cosmo* being thus invested in it, deprived the people of their Arms, altered the Government, and was the first Prince who had the absolute command of it, after the constitution of their Common-wealth, neither the *French* nor *Spaniards* ruling here as Lords, but only as called in by their several factions; and suffered to have Garrisons in it of their own people, by the agreement of their party. And, to say truth, it stood with good reason of State, that the *Florentine* should use all his wit to get this City; and having got it, use all means to assure it to him. For, besides that great accession which it made unto his Estate; by adding thereunto the yearly income of 100 and 50 thousand Ducats, above all expences: it was also to be carefully looked on as a Rival, which had long time stood in competition with it, or the soveraign command of *Tuscany*. Besides, there had been mighty animosities between the Cities; the *Florentine* being always of the *Guelfes*, and the *Siennoys* of the *Gibelline* faction. A faction at last so generally distasted in all *Italy*, and so abominable to the Popes, that on an *Ashwednesday*, when the Pope being to cast Ashes on the Heads of the Cardinals, was to to have said, *Memento, O homo, quòd cinis es, & in cinerem converteris*, according to the usage of the Church of *Rome*: seeing a *Gibelline* amongst them, he forgot himself, and said thus unto him, *Memento, O homo, quòd* Gibellinus *es, & cum* Gibellinis *morieris*. Of chief note next unto *Sienna*, are 1. *Montolcino* (*Mons Alcinus* in *Latin*) a place of great strength both by industry and situation. 2. *Castro Cartaldo* seated upon a lofty Hill, most memorable for the Birth and Sepulchre of *John Boccace*, one of the best wits of his time, as his *Decameron* declareth; buried here with a sorry and unworthy Epitaph, not worth the labour of transcribing. 3. *Soana*, an Episcopal City; as also are 4. *Pienza*, 5. *Crossetto*, and 6. *Chiusi*, this last, the *Clusium* of the ancient *Tuscans* spoken of before. Besides these are 26 walled Towns within this Signeury, but of no great observation in the course of business.

There belonged also unto this Common-wealth, when a State distinct, some Ports and Peeces on the Sea, which when it was consigned over to the Duke of *Florence*, were retained by the *Spaniard*: partly thereby to keep those Princes at his devotion, but principally that by holding so many places of importance in his own hands, he might carry at his Girdle the Keys of *Italy*, and become Lord Paramont of those Seas. Of those the principal, if not all, 1. *Piombino*, in *Latin* called *Plumbinum*, from some Mines of Lead; adorned with a strong Castle, and a plentiful Territory: the Castle in the hands of the *Spaniard*, but the Town and Territory in possession of a Lord of its own, who receives the whole rents of the Estate. 2. *Port Telamon*, Eastward of *Piombino*, so called of old from *Tellamon*, an adjoyning Promontory, and known by this name in *Plutarch*, in the life of *Marius*. Accounted the chief City of *Tuscany* in those elder times, but most remarkable for the great Battel fought near unto it betwixt the *Romans* and the *Galls*, *A.V.C.* 529. the Army of the *Galls* consisting of 70000 Horse and Foot; that of the *Romans* little (if at all) inferiour to it. A fight in which *Attilius*, one of the Consuls being slain, the Victory was gotten by *Æmilius* his Collegue, with the slaughter of 40000 of the Enemies, and the taking of 10000 Prisoners: *Aneroestus* and *Congolianus* two Kings of the *Transalpine Galls* being slain or taken. A Victory which drew after it the total subjugation of the *Cisalpine Galls*, which followed within three years after. 3. *Orbitello*, drawing more towards the East, the *Cossa* of the ancient Writers. 4. *Monte Argentorati*, a Promontory or *Peninsula*, thrusting it self into the Sea, over against *Orbitello*, by the

Latines

Latins called *Mons Argentarius*: and thought by ſome, who have obſerved the ſcituation, ſtrength, and extent thereof, to be the fitteſt place for a Royal City to be built in, to command thoſe Seas. 5 *Port Hercule*, which ſtill retains its ancient name, imparted to it from ſome Temple of *Hercules*, which was founded in it; ſituate near the Eaſtern *Iſthmus* of the ſaid *Peninſula*. 6 *Porto-Longone*, a piece of ſpecial conſequence for command of the *Mediterranean*; and for that cauſe of late times gotten by the *French* (then aiming at the conqueſt of *Naples*) but again recovered by the *Spaniard*, who doth now poſſeſs it.

The fourth and laſt member of this Eſtate, are the Iſlands in the *Tuſcan* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. The principal whereof is, 1 *Ilva*, not above ten miles from *Piombino*, called anciently *Æthalia*, by the vulgar *Elba*. *Pliny* affirmeth it to contain in compaſs a hundred miles, but it proves upon a juſt meaſurement, to be but fifty. Not very well furniſhed with Corn, and leſs with fruits; but plentiful in Mines of Iron, as formerly for Steel and Copper: for which, eſpecially for Steel, of great eſteem in the time of *Virgil*, as appeareth by that paſſage in the tenth of his *Æneids*, where it is called

Inſula inexhauſtis Chalybum generoſa metallis.

A noble Iſle, and known full well,
For unexhauſted Mines of Steel.

But for all that, the Steel now failing, the want thereof is ſupplyed by Iron; which Iron is of ſo ſtrange a nature, that every 25 year it reneweth again upon the Mines, and will by no means melt whilſt it is in the Iſland, but muſt be carried ſomewhere elſe. It affordeth alſo Sulphur, Allom, Tin, Lead, Marble good plenty; and in ſome parts the Loadſtone alſo. Formerly it belonged to the Lords of *Piombino*, who not being able to defend it againſt the *Turks*, if they ſhould at any time invade it, reſigned it, by the Counſel of *Charles the* fifth, unto *Coſmo di Medices* the Duke of *Florence*: reſerving to themſelves the Revenues of it, and the Government of all the Towns & Villages therein, except thoſe that were thought fit for Fortification. It hath a very fair Haven called *Porto Ferrario*, capable to receive any great Fleet that ſhould come thither, and therefore if the *Turks* and *Moors* had been Maſters of it, they might eaſily have commanded all the Coaſts adjoining, as well in *Provence* as *Italy*. For the defence hereof, there are two ſtrong Caſtles, ſituate on two little Mountains, on each ſide one; ſo fortified by Art and Nature, that they are held to be impregnable, having alſo good ſtore of Cannon, and all ſorts of Warlike Ammunition. And not far off ſtands a ſtrong Town built by the ſame Duke *Coſmo*, and by him called *Coſmopolis*; well fortified, and made the ſeat of his new Order of S. *Stephen*, of which more hereafter.

The ſecond Iſland of note is *Giglio*, called *Iglium* anciently, juſt oppoſite to *Monte Argentorato*, and having ſome 25 miles in compaſs; near unto which the *Genoeſe* ſo diſcomfited the *Piſans* in a fight at Sea, that they were never able to recover their former puiſſance. 3 *Capraria*, not far from *Ligorn*, ſo called from its abundance of Goats; and for the ſame reaſon *Ægilora*, by the *Greek* Geographers: as, 4 *Gallinaria*, not far off, took name from abundance of Hens. Of the reſt nothing memorable, but that ſome of them do occurr in the ancient Writers; of which ſort are 1 *Melorta*, heretofore *Lanellum*, not far from *Capraria*. 2 *Lamoſi*, formerly *Artemeſia*, in which there is a very good Haven. 3 *Gorgona*, 4 *Troja*, and 5 the ſmall Iſlands which are called *Formice*. 6 To theſe we may add alſo the Iſle of *Planaſia*, more memorable than the reſt, for the baniſhment and death of *Agrippa Poſthumus*, the Nephew of *Auguſtus Cæſar* by his daughter *Julia*; here murdered by the command of *Tiberius*, to prevent all future competition to the State Imperial, ſituate ſomewhat nearer unto *Corſica*, than the reſt of theſe Iſlands.

As for the *MEDICES*, whoſe poſterity are now Dukes hereof, they were in the *Free-State* (as *Machiavel* informs us in his *Florentine* Hiſtory) accounted in the chief rank of the popular Nobility: thoſe being ſuch of the ancient Nobles, as, to be capable of the Magiſtracy, and publick Offices (then wholly ſhared among the Commons) had as it were degraded themſelves; and became part of the Commonalty. About the year 1410. *John de Medices*, (the firſt great raiſer of this houſe) ſtoutly maintaining the Liberties of the people againſt the great ones; was by them ſo honoured and enriched, that he not only got a great party, but almoſt a Sovereignty in the City. To him ſucceeded his ſon *Coſmo*, one of the greateſt Statelmen of thoſe times; who did not only much reform the Civil Government, but enlarged the Territory of the State by the addition of *Caſentino*, *Burgo*, St. *Sepulchro*, and ſome other pieces. Dying in the year 1464, he left the managery of the State to *Peter de Medices* his ſon, whoſe whole time was conſumed in ſuppreſſing ſuch Factions, as had at home been raiſed againſt him: and at his death left all his power, and the great wealth which he had gotten (but with a greater meaſure of his Fathers vertues) to *Lawrence* and *Julian* his two ſons. The people after his deceaſe, either deſirous of Novelties, as moſt people are; or fearing to be made hereditary to this powerful Family; ſeemed to incline to one of the *Soderini*, a man of plauſible deportment, and well beloved. But he judiciouſly conſidering, that new houſes as they are eaſily honoured, ſo are they as ſoon abandoned by the fickle multitude; conferred all the dependencies which were caſt upon him, on theſe two young men of the *Medices*: as being deſcended from a Family which had long governed the City. Againſt theſe two, the *Pazzi*, a potent houſe in *Florence*, conſpired, and at Maſs they ſlew *Julian*, but *Lorenzo* eſcaped: the blows which were ſtruck at him, being received by one of his ſervants, whom two days before he had delivered out of Priſon. For this Fact the *Pazzi* were hanged at the Palace window, together with the Arch-biſhop of *Piſa*, who had been of the conſpiracy. To revenge the death of this Biſhop, Pope *Paul* the 2, excommunicated the *Florentines*; & *Ferdinand* King of *Naples* warred upon them. *Lorenzo*, to divert this miſchief, went in perſon to *Naples*: where he grew ſo much into the good liking of the King, that there was a perpetual League made between them. After his death 1492, his ſon *Peter*, having very improvidently delivered *Piſa* and *Ligorn*, with other pieces, to the *French* King; was, together with his whole Family, baniſhed. *John di Medices* the ſon of *Lawrence*, and brother of *Peter* being made Pope, by the name of *Leo* the 10. reſtored again his Family; who not long after his death were again exil'd. This diſgrace *Julio di Medices* ſon to the above named *Julian*, and Pope of *Rome*, by the name of *Clement* the 7. not enduring, procured *Charles* the fifth to beſiege it: which requeſt was granted; and the City after two years reſiſtance, yielded. The Emperour then gave it to *Alexander Medices* (Granchild to *Peter*, by his ſon *Lawrence*) *Anno* 1531. And he to reſtrain the inſolencies of the people, built a ſtrong Citadel in the Town. This *Alexander* was a Prince of good parts enough, had he not been too much addicted to Luſt and Wantonneſs; which being obſerved by *Lawrence di Medices* his own Couſin, he trained him to a ſecret place, under colour of bringing him to the bed of a beautiful Lady, and there baſely murdered him. Which done, inſtead of calling the people

to take Arms for recovery of their loſt liberty, as he firſt intended; he fearfully left the City, and fled towards *Venice*. So that before the people had notice of the accident, the heads of the *Medices* conſulted together, and ſent for *Coſmo di Medices* dwelling in the Country with his mother (and then about 18 years of age) to be their Prince: as being next Heir-male which was left of the Family, according to the *Entail* (as our Lawyers call it) made by *Charles* the Emperor. This *Coſmo* proving an excellent Stateſman, and a fortunate Commander, ſo ſwayed the affairs of *Italy*, that *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain* to be aſſured of his friendſhip, gave him the Signeury of *Sienna*, out of which he had lately driven the *French*; and *Pius* the fourth had an intent to have crowned him King of *Tuſcany*. But *Philip* of *Spain* (though otherwiſe his ſpecial friend) thwarted that intent, as loath to have in *Italy* any more Kings than himſelf. After in the year 1570 *Pius* the fifth crowned the ſame *Coſmo* in the Court of *Rome*, with the title of *Great Duke of Tuſkany*, for him and his Heirs for ever. In the new Duke's Coronet he cauſed to be engraven theſe words, *Pius Quintus Pont. Max. ob eximiam dilectionem & religionis Catholicæ zelum, præcipuumque juſtitiæ ſtudium, donavit.* Thus forward were theſe Popes to honour this Family; but their Succeſſors have been otherwiſe affected to it. For when one of Duke *Coſmo's* Succeſſors did ſince intreat a ſucceeding Pope, that he might be created King of *Tuſcany*; the Pope not liking ſo Lordly a title, made anſwer, that he was content, *He ſhould be a King in Tuſcany, but not King of Tuſcany.* A Scholar-like diſtinction, but not ſo ſatisfactory to the point propoſed.

The Princes of the Houſe of *Medices*, in the *Free-eſtate*.

A. D.

1410 1 *John di Medices*, the firſt advancer of the Family to publick greatneſs.

1433 2 *Coſmo di Medices*, the ſon of *John*, called the Father of the Common-wealth.

1464 3 *Peter*, the ſon of *Coſmo*.

1472 4 *Lawrence di Medices*, ſon of *Peter*, the great advancer of Learning in *Italy*.

1492 5 *Peter di Medices* II. exiled upon the coming in of *Charles* the 8.

6 *Lawrence di Medices* II. ſon of *Peter*, exiled together with his Father; made Duke of *Urbin* by Pope *Leo* the 10. He was the Father of *Catharine di Medices*, *French* Queen.

The Dukes of *Florence*, and *Great Dukes* of *Tuſcany*.

A. D.

1531 1 *Alexander di Medices*, the ſon of *Lawrence*, the firſt Duke of *Florence*.

1537 2 *Coſmo* II. the next heir of *Alexander*, deſcended from *Lawrence*, a brother of the firſt *Coſmo*; the wiſeſt Stateſman of his time.

1574 3 *Francis di Medices*, ſon of *Coſmo* the 2. Father of *Mary* the *French* Queen.

1587 4 *Ferdinand di Medeces*, the Brother of *Francis*.

1609 5 *Coſmo* III. ſon of *Ferdinand*.

1621 6 *Ferdinand*, II. ſon of *Coſmo di Medices*, the twelfth of this Family, the ſixth Duke of *Florence* and the fifth of *Tuſcany*.

The length of this Eſtate is 200 miles, the breadth in ſome places not much inferior, but growing narrower where it bordereth upon that of *Genoa*. In all which tract, the *Great Duke* hath but one conſiderable Port on the main Land, which is that of *Ligorn*; ſo that his ſtrength in ſhipping is not very great: and yet might be greater than it is, if the Subjects did delight in Traffick, and not ſuffer their Commodities to be bought by Strangers (as generally they do in all this Country) and carried thence in foreign Veſſels. For otherwiſe being an induſtrious people, and well trained in Manufactures, their power at Sea muſt needs be greater than it is: the *Great Dukes* Fleet conſiſting ordinarily of no more than twelve Gallies, two Gallions, and five Galliaſſes. And for his power by Land, he hath in readineſs ſixteen thouſand Foot of his own Subjects, well trained and muſtered under experienced Commanders, to ſerve him upon all occaſions; and an hundred men at Arms, and 400 Light-horſmen, well paid, as well in times of Peace as in time of War. And beſides theſe, he keeps ſo many Forts and Towns in continual Garriſon, that his Eſtate is ſaid to *be made of Iron.*

What the *Revenues* of it were in the *Free-Eſtate*, I am not able to determine. That they were very great is manifeſt, in that having in thoſe five years, wherein they waged War againſt the D. of *Millain*, ſpent three millions and an half of Florens; their treaſury was ſo far from being exhauſted, that the next year they beſieged and endangered the City of *Luca*. Since the altering of the Commonwealth into a Dukedom, and the addition of a Territory and City of *Sienna*: the Revenues of the Duke are conceived to be a million and an half of Ducats yearly. Of which 600000 Crowns are raiſed yearly out of the Dominion of the City of *Florence*; 150000 more out of that of *Sienna*: the cuſtoms ariſing out of the Port of *Ligorn*, amount yearly to 130000 Ducats, the toll of Mill-ſtones only, unto 160000; that of Salt, Mines, and Iron, falls not ſhort of that: in all a million and 200000 Ducats. Then hath the Duke his ſtock going amongſt the Bankers, and trades as much as any in the way of Merchandizing; whereas in other Countries he loſeth the priviledges of a Nobleman, that betakes himſelf to Trade and Merchandize. He uſeth alſo to buy up almoſt all the Corn which is brought into the Country out of other parts, and ſell it again at his own price; forbidding any to be ſold till all his be vended. The reſt is made up by *Exciſe* upon all Commodities, even unto very Herbs, and Sallads, which lies very heavy on the Subject, the poor eſpecially: inſomuch that it was tartly ſaid, and perhaps not untruly, *Qui ſub* Medicis *vivit, miſere vivit*; applying an old Rule in a new ſenſe.

The only order of Knighthood in this Eſtate, is that of St. *Stephen*, inſtituted by *Coſmo di Medices*, *An.* 1561, and dedicated to St. *Stephen*, becauſe upon the Feſtival of *Stephen*, Pope and Martyr, being the 6. of *Auguſt* he won the famous battel of *Marciano*. Pope *Pius* the fourth confirmed it the ſame year, and granted them all the priviledges which they of *Malta* enjoy: conditioned that thoſe of this Order ſhould make a vow of Charity, of conjugal Chaſtity, and Obedience, They are to be nobly born, and in lawful Wedlock; of the *Romiſh* Church, and without note of infamy. The Robe is of white *Chamlet*, with a red Croſs on their left ſide, as well upon their military Garment, as their wearing Cloaks: intended principally againſt the *Turks* and *Moors*, for which cauſe ſettled firſt at *Piſa*, being near the Sea; but after at *Coſmopolis* in the Ille of *Ilva*. The number of them is uncertain; the *Great Duke* the Supream Maſter of it. Other Orders are commonly ſimple, but this mixt; being partly religious, partly honourary.

The Arms are *Or*, five Torteaux *Gules*, two, two, and one, and one in chief *Azure*, charged with three Flower *de Lyces* of the firſt.

Here are in this Eſtate
Archbiſhops 3. Biſhops 26.

The

The State of LUCA.

IN the West part of *Tuscany*, betwixt the Estate of the *Great Duke*, and the Common-wealth of *Genoa*, lieth the City of *LUCA*, so called from *Lucumo*, a King of the *Tuscans*, who is said to have built it: situate on the River *Serchius*, not far from the mountains of *Luna*, whence the Country is at this day called *Lunagiana*. It is about three miles in compass, and contains about 24000 Inhabitants, who generally are a courteous and modest people, men of good judgment, and discreet, and by their wisdoms have preserved themselves a free Common-wealth, notwithstanding the attempts of more powerful neigbours: and they are very industrious also, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially in weaving Silks and cloth of Gold, which they taught the *Florentines*. The City seated in a Plain, compassed with Mountains on all sides except towards *Pistoa*: so strongly fortified by the help of Art and Nature, that this City, *Zara* in *Dalmatia*, *Canea* in the Isle of *Candy*, and the Town of *Ligorn*, were thought in former times (when the Art of Fortification was less known) to be the four strongest Towns in the *Christian* World. The streets thereof are narrow, but paved with broad Free-stone, and most easie to walk on: the buildings very fair, built of Free-stone also, and beautified with pleasant Gardens. On the North-west stands a very strong Castle, near which lieth the Cathedral, stately paved with Marble, but very dark, as most of the *Popish* Churches, to give the better colour to the burning of Tapers in the day.

In this Town was the meeting of the three great Captains, *Cæsar*, *Pompey*, and *Crassus*, so pernicious to the *Roman*-Republick. For *Pompey* desirous to maintain his authority, *Cæsar* to get honour, and *Crassus* to encrease his wealth, here united their Counsels: *Pompey*'s authority to be upheld by *Cæsar*'s Arms, and *Crassus* his riches; *Cæsar*'s continuance in his Province to be maintained by *Pompey*'s power, and *Crassus* his money; and *Crassus* his estate to be secured by *Pompey*'s greatness, and *Cæsar*'s military reputation. This done, they made a partition of the *Roman* Provinces among themselves, assigning *Gaul* to *Cæsar*, *Spain* to *Pompey*, and to *Crassus*, *Syria*: which strong confederacy was the cause of that alteration which after followed in that State. For *Crassus* being slain not long after, *Pompey* and *Cæsar* wanting a third man to poize the ballance, fell first to discontents, then to civil Wars, which at last made *Cæsar* Lord of *Rome*. Upon which meeting, and the breach which succeeded afterwards, was grounded that so memorated speech of *Cicero*, that is to say, *Utinam* Pompeius *cum* Cæsare *societatem aut nunquam iniisset aut nunquam diremisset*.

But to return again to the affairs of *Luca*, in the declining of the Empire, it became possessed by the *Goths*, from them recovered by *Narses* with the rest of *Italy*. After this it again followed the fortune of the Empire, till taken by Count *Boniface* the Father of that notable *Virago*, the Countess *Mathildis*: who being deceased without issue, and the Emperors pretending to it as to an Escheat, the Citizens made a common-purse, and bought their Liberty of their Emperor *Rodolphus* for 10000 Crowns. Some say the money was disbursed for them by a Cardinal. But notwithstanding this purchase and their title by it, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* seized upon it again, under pretence of freeing it from the faction of *Castruccio*, who had made himself absolute Master of it. By a *German* Garrison there left it was sold to the *Genoese*; and having passed through many hands, the Emperor *Charles* the fourth got it once again: of whom they once more purchased their desired Liberties, for 25000 *Florens* of Gold; and to secure themselves thereof, demolished the Castle built by *Castruccio*. But being not able to maintain it by their proper strength they have put themselves under the protection of their Potent neighbours; changing their Patrons, as conduced most to their preservation: and finding no security from *Genoa*, and as little from *Florence*, both which they severally tried; they put themselves at last into the Protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, and in that right are patronized by the Kings of *Spain*.

The Territories of this City extend in compass eighty miles, the chief Town next to *Luca* it self, being that of *Luna*, a Bithops See; all the rest ordinary Farms and Villages, but of a good air, and very well peopled: which yield a Revenue to the publick Treasury of 80000 Crowns *per annum*; and out of which the State is able to raise (if there be occasion) about 15000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. A great strength for so small a *Signeury*, but all too weak to save them from the *Great Duke*'s clutches, if he did seriously attempt to force it, and would venture on the displeasure of the Catholick King: besides that, it is thought that he receives more profit thence in gifts and presents, by letting it stand as it is; than it would yield (considering the charge of keeping it) if it were his own. As for the Government thereof, the principal Magistrate is called the *Gonfalonere*, changeable every second month; assisted by a certain and determinate number of Citizens, whom they change every sixth month also; during which time they live together in the Palace, or Common Hall. Other inferiour Officers I insist not on. And for the Government of the Church, they have two Bithops only, which acknowledg the Archbithop of *Florence* for their *Metropolitan*.

The Commonwealth of GENOA.

DIrectly West of *Tuscany*, from which it is divided by the River *Macra*, lieth the Country anciently called *Liguria*, now *Riviere di Genoa*, the Coast of *Genoa*, because it lieth all along the Sea of *Genoa*; and by some *Il Genovesate*, from *Genoa* the *Metropolis* of this Country and Commonwealth. A Commonwealth once of a larger reputation and authority, than it is at the present; commanding heretofore the Islands of *Corsica*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*, in the *Mediterranean*; *Lesbos*, and *Chio*, with some others in the *Greekish* Seas; the Town of *Caphe*, or *Theodosia*, in the *Taurican Chersonese*; *Pera*, on the other side of *Constantinople*; and a good part of *Tuscany*.

It was also then so strong both in men and shipping, that they sent seven several Armies to the Wars of the *Holy Land*: and in the space of three days only armed once upon occasion of present service, eight and fifty Gallies, and 8 *Pamphyli* (being Vessels of one hundred and forty, or one hundred and sixty Oars apiece;) and at another time, one hundred and sixty six Gallies, at a sudden pinch. By the advantage of this strength, they beat the *Pisans* out of *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, and the *Baleares*; compelling them to pay 135000 Crowns for their Peace; they got a good share in the division of the Empire of *Constantinople*, when that City was taken by the *Latins*; and held a very strong hand over the *Venetians*. These last they had once in so great an exigence, having vanquished their Fleet at Sea, and taken the Island of *Chioggia*, not far from *Venice*; that the Senate sent them a blank Charter bidding them write down what conditions they pleased, which should be readily condescended to. But *Peter Doria* Admiral of the *Genoan* Fleet, unseasonably proud of his advantage, would have the City of *Venice* wholly at his

own

own disposal. Whereupon the *Venetians*, now made desperate, assault the secure *Genoese*, and took an hundred of their Boats and Gallies. After which they always had the worst, losing their Illands in the *Mediterranean* to the Kings of *Aragon*; *Capha*, and *Pera*, with their Illands in the *Greek* Seas, to the Great *Turk*; most of their Holds in *Tuscany*, to the *Florentines*: their power at the last being so broke by the *Venetians*, that in the end they were not able to set out a Navy fit for an enterprize. But these Misfortunes were occasioned principally by their own Divisions; the City being miserably torn in pieces, by continual Factions: first betwixt the *Dorii* and *Spinoli*, on the one side, the *Flisci* and *Grimaldi* on the other, *Anno* 1174. Secondly, of the *Negri* and *Mollani*, against the *Salvatici* and *Embriaci*, *An.* 1289. Thirdly, between the *Spinoli* and *Dorii* themselves, *An.* 1336. And fourthly between the Nobility and the Commons, 1339. Which Factions did so weaken them both at home and abroad, that having lost the greatest part of their Estate, they were fain to put themselves on the protection of their Neighbours to defend the rest; having now nothing left them but *Liguria*, and the Isle of *Corsica*.

1 *LIGURIA* hath on the West, the River *Varus* rising about the edge of *Provence* in *France*; on the East, the River *Magra*, by which parted from *Tuscany*: on the North, the *Apennine* Hills; and on the South, the *Ligurian* or *Tyrrhenian* Seas. It is in length an hundred and forty miles; that is to say, from the Port of *Luna* in the East, to that of *Monaco* in the West, which lieth near to *Provence*; but the breadth not answerable to the length: and is divided generally into two Parts or Provinces, the East, and the West, both centring upon *Genoa* the principal City.

The old *Ligurians*, were a Stout and Warlike Nation, light and swift of Body, well practised in laying Ambushes, and not discouraged by an Overthrow, but forthwith ready to fight again: to which the Nature of their Country served them very well, being Rough, Mountainous, and Woody, and full of straight and dangerous Passages; and in this Tract few open Towns, but many well-fortified Castles, so that without much Labour they could neither be taken nor besieged. And if at any time they were vanquished in the open field, they had recourse unto these Castles, and other Fastnesses, hemmed round about with Woods & Mountains; in which they plaid their after-game, and tired out their Enemies and Invaders. The principal of their Tribes were the *Decenti*, *Oxilii*, *Eubariades*, and *Inganni*; all at last vanquished by the *Romans*, after the second *Punick* War: but not without much Labour and Pains, by reason of the Woods, and Marishes, and Mountains, within, and behind which they retired and saved themselves, Insomuch that it was held a matter of more difficulty to find than to conquer them; *Aliquanto major erat labor invenire quàm vincere*, are the words of my Author. They did divers times, after this, much molest the *Romans*, till at last *Posthumius* so disweaponed them, that he scarce left them Instruments to plough the Earth. So in the end they grew obedient to their Masters. In the division of whole large Territories by *Augustus Cæsar*, *Liguria* was made one of the eleven Regions of *Italy*; as it was also one of the seventeen Provinces, into which *Italy* was divided by the Emperour *Constantine*: *Millain* at that time the *Metropolis* or Head-City of it. What kind of men they were in the breaking of the Western Empire, may be known by their actions both by Sea, and land, spoken of before: now more addicted to Merchandise than War, but most of all to Usury. A Vice which the Christians learned of the *Jews*, and are now thought to equal, if not exceed their Teachers. It was the saying of a merry fellow, that in Christendom there were neither Scholars enough, Gentlemen enough, nor *Jews* enough. And when Answer was made, that of all these there was rather too great a plenty than any scarcity, he replyed that if there were *Scholars* enough, so many would not be double or treble beneficed; if *Gentlemen* enough, so many Peasants would not be ranked among the Gentry; and if *Jews* enough, so many *Christians* would not profess *Usury*. The women are very fair and comely, wearing for the most their hair in tresses which they cast over their backs: they wear no upper Garments but of cloth, as being only allowed by the Laws; but their under Garments of the purest stuff. The women here are priviledged above all in *Italy*, having free leave to talk with whom they will, and be courted by any that will, both privately and publickly. Which liberty it is likely they gained at such time as the *French* were Masters of this Estate; who do allow their wives such excess of liberty, as no *Italian* would allow of in a common *Curtizan*. And though it cannot be affirmed, that the women of the Country or the City it self, do abuse this liberty; yet the *Italians* being generally of a different humour, reckon them to be past all shame; as they esteem the *Genoan* Merchants, (who make little reckoning of their promises, if not bound by writing) to be men without faith. Of which and other things concerning this Estate, they have made this Proverb, *Montagne senza legni*, &c. that is to say, *Mountains without wood, Seas without fish, Men without faith, and Women without shame.*

The Country, as before said, is very mountainous in the In-lands, and full of craggy Rocks towards the Sea: so that by Sea and Land it is very ill travelling. But amidst those Hills are Vallies of as rich a vein, as most others in *Italy*, abounding in Citrons, Limons, Olives, Oranges, and the like fruits; with such variety of Flowers at all times of the year, that the Markets are seldom unfurnished of them in the month of *December*. It yieldeth also great plenty of most pleasant wines, which the Inhabitants call *La Vermozza*; and another which they call *Le lagrime di Christo*, or *Lachrimæ Christi*: this last so pleasing to the taste, that it is said, a *Dutchman* tasting of it as he travelled in these parts, fetcht a great sigh, and brake out into this expression: How happy had it been with us, *Si Christus lachrimatus esset in nostris regionibus*, if Christ had shed some of his tears in the Country of *Germany!* Their greatest want is that of Corn, and therewith they do supply themselves out of other places.

The principal Towns and Cities of it in the Eastern part, are, 1 *Sarenaza*, a strong Fortress against the *Florentines*, and one of the best pieces of this Republick. 2 *Pont-Remuli* (*Pons Remuli*, as the *Latins* call it) of as great consequence as that, but possessed by the *Spaniard*. 3 *Lerigi*, an Haven in the *Tuscan* or *Tyrrhenian* Sea. 4 *Sestri*, a reasonable good place, remarkable for as white bread, and as pleasant Wine, as any in *Italy*. 5 *Fino*, a Haven or Port Town, not far from *Genoa*, anciently called *Portus Delfinus*. Few of the Towns in this part are of any greatness: but they are set so thick, and intermingled with so many goodly houses both on the hills and the vallies that for the space of twenty miles, the whole Country seems to be one continual building.

In the west part the Towns of most importance are 1 *Monaco*, of old called *Monoecus*, and *Portus Herculis*, beautified with a commodious Haven: belonging not long since to the *Spaniard*, who bought it for 100000 Crowns of the *Grimaldi*, then its proper Owners; but of late gotten by the *French* under colour of a late contract. 2 *Ventimiglio*, a good Town, and sweatly seated. 3 *Savona*, taken by the *Genoese*, *An.* 1250. before which time it had a Prince of its own. Remarkable for the *interview* betwixt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* & *Lewis* 12. of *Fr.* *A.* 1507. who having

having been deadly enemies, upon the taking of the Realm of *Naples* from the *French* by the *Spaniard*, met at this Town, and here moſt ſtrangely relyed upon one another: *Lewis* firſt boarding *Ferdinand*'s Gally; and *Ferdinand* for divers days feaſting with *Lewis* in this Town then in his poſſeſſion, as Protector of the Eſtate of *Genoa*. Which kind of *interviews* (I note this only by the way) as they chance but ſeldom; ſo when they do, they prove for the moſt part dangerous unto one of the parties: great enmities not being eaſily forgot by perſons of a publick *Intereſt*. Nay, that notable Stateſman *Philip de Comines* utterly diſliketh all ſuch meetings of Princes, though in amity and good correſpondence with one another; as many times producing effects quite contrary to their expectations. And this he proveth by the example of *Lewis* the 11th of *France*, and *Henry* of *Caſtile*; who meeting purpoſely, *Anno* 1463. to change ſome friendly words together, took ſuch diſlike at each others perſons and behaviour, that they never loved one another after it. The like example he bringeth of an interview betwixt *Edward* the fourth of *England*, and the ſame King *Lewis*: and betwixt *Frederick* the Emperor, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*; with divers others. His reaſons I purpoſely omit, as not pertinent to my preſent undertaking, and make haſte again unto the Town; which is about a mile and an half in circuit, and hath many ſtately buildings in it. It was called anciently *Sabate* or *Sabatia*, and hath been under the command of divers Lords: being taken from the *Genoeſe* by the *Viſconti*, and the *Sforzas*, Dukes of *Millain*, from them by the *French*, and at laſt recovered again by thoſe of *Genoa*. I further note, that this one Town hath yeilded to the Church of *Rome* three Popes, *viz. Gregory* the 7. *Julio* the 2. and *Sixtus* the 4. which is as much as *Genoa* it ſelf can brag of. 4. *Nola*, upon the Sea-ſide, a commodious Haven. 5. *Finali*, a goodly Port-Town alſo, and very well fortified; honoured a long time with the title of a Marquiſate, one of the ſeven founded by the Emperor *Otho*, (of which more hereafter;) but taken from the laſt Marqueſs by the Count of *Fuentes*, then Governour of *Millain* for the King of *Spain*, and garriſoned immediately with 200 *Spaniards*, the poor Marqueſs being put off with an Annual Penſion, *Anno* 1602. 6. *Mileſimo*, a ſmall Town adjoyning, poſſeſſed upon the ſame right by the *Spaniard* alſo; who by theſe pieces hath a ſtrong command on the Trade of *Genoa*. 7. But the great Ornament of thoſe parts of *Italy*, is the City of *Genoa*, firſt built, ſay ſome, by *Janus* the Son of *Saturn*; as others ſay, by *Janus Genius Priſcus*, an *Italian* or *Tuſcan* King. But by whomſoever it was built, certain it is, that it was miſerably deſtroyed by *Mago* the Brother of *Annibal*, repaired by *Lucretius Surius*, at the command of the Senate of *Rome*, for whoſe cauſe and quarrel it was ruined: once again ſpoiled and waſted by *Rotharis* a great Prince of the *Lombards*, *Anno* 660. or thereabouts; but built more beautiful than before by *Charles* the Great. On his Foundation it now ſtands, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Liguſtick* or *Ligurian* Seas, to which, being partly built on the declivity of an hill, full of ſtately Palaces, it giveth a moſt pleaſant and magnificent proſpect. It is in compaſs ſix miles, of an orbicular form, fortified towards the Sea by Art; towards the Land by Art and Nature: there being but one way to come to it by Land, and that over ſteep and craggy Rocks. The Streets are narrow, paved with Flint, and moſt of them on the ſides of the hill; which is the reaſon that they uſe Horſe-litters here inſtead of Coaches, and moſt of the better ſort are carried on mens ſhoulders in *Sedans* or Chairs: which from hence came hither into *England*. But that which they call *La Strada Nueva*, or the *New-ſtreet*, reaching form the Weſt to North-eaſt, is of a very fair breadth: each houſe whereof is built with ſuch Kingly Magnificence, that it is thought to be the faireſt ſtreet in the World. In all the reſt the buildings for the height of two ſtories are made of Marble, curiouſly wrought; but the Laws forbid Marble to be uſed any higher. The Haven of it is very fair and capacious, ſafe from the violence of Tempeſts, and well fortified: ſo that the *Spaniards* uſe to ſay, that were the Catholick King abſolute Lord of *Marſeilles* in *Provence*, and *Genoa* in *Italy* he might command the whole World. After the re-edifying of it by *Charles* the Great, the People here continued ſubject to his Succeſſors; till the *Berengarii*, as Kings of *Italy*, made them free, *Anno* 899. in which condition they remained till the year 1318. when being ſhrewdly weakened in their Eſtate, they were fain to give themſelves to Pope *John* the 22. after to *Robert* King of *Naples*. But being ſoon weary of a foreign Government, the people in a popular tumult made choice of one *Simon Bocca Negra*, to be their Duke, *Anno* 1339. which Government continued till the *French* were called in by the *Guelfian* Faction, in the raign of *Charles* the 7. under whom they continued thirteen years; and then expelling thence the *French* for their many inſolencies, they put themſelves under the protection of the Dukes of *Millain*, *Anno* 1403. Long time they lived under the protection of thoſe Princes, in great tranquillity, who never carried towards them any rigorous hand; ſave that once D. *Lodowick Sforza* exacted of them a great maſs of money. But as the tale goeth, his Agent being invited to the houſe of a *Genoeſe*, and walking in a Garden with him, was ſhewed an herb growing there called *Baſil*, which ſtroking gently he ſmelt thence a moſt pleaſing ſavour, but as unſavoury a ſmell when he ſtrained it hard. The *Genoeſe* hereupon inferred, Sir, if our Lord Duke *Lodowick* will gently ſtroake the hand of his puiſſance over this City, it will prove pliant to him by obedience; but may chance to prove rebellious if he do oppreſs it. But *Lodowick* being taken Priſoner by King *Lewis* the 12. the firſt came under the command of the *French*, and then of the *Spaniard*; according as thoſe Nations had poſſeſſion of the State of *Millain*; and after many changes and alterations, obtained again their freedom of King *Francis* the firſt. Which being not able to preſerve by their proper ſtrength, they finally put themſelves under the ſhelter of the *Spaniard*, who is now their Protector; and that not for nought; he being indebted to them, *Anno* 1600. a Million and a half of Gold; that being the remainder of 18. Millions, cut off by the Pope's Authority; that ſo the King might be indebted to that See; for moſt of his Lands were formerly engaged to the Money-Maſters of this City. The ſame courſe of non-payment the King took with the reſt of his Creditors in *Florence*, *Ausburg*, and the reſt, inſomuch that it was commonly ſaid in *Italy*, that the King of *Spain* had made more ill faces upon the Exchange in one day, than *Michael Angelo* the famous Painter, had ever made good in all his life. And thus you ſee this great City which commanded the *Ocean*, the Lady of ſo many Iſlands, and a great Moderator of the affairs of *Italy*, fain to put her ſelf into the protection of a foreign Prince, and that too at the charge of a great deal of Treaſure; which he continually raiſeth from them in the way of Loan, of which he often proves but a ſorry Pay-maſter. And if the Wars he had with *England* did ſo drain their purſes (for it was that War, and the War which he had in the *Netherlands*; that made him ſo indebted to the Banks of *Genoa*) no queſtion but the revolt of *Catalogne*, and the laſting Wars made againſt him by the *French* in ſo many places,

places, have plunged him in as deep as ever. Which notwithstanding this people do so thrive under his protection, and draw so great commodity from their Trade with *Spain*, that it is thought their private men were never richer, the publick Treasury never fuller than it is at the present.

CORSICA is an Island in the *Ligustick* or *Ligurian* Sea, opposite to the City of *Genoa*, from whence it is distant about sixty miles; and lying just North of the Isle of *Sardinia*, from which it is distant seven miles. It comprehends in length an hundred and twenty miles, seventy in breadth, and three hundred twenty five in circuit; and lyeth under the fifth Climate, the longest day being almost fifteen hours.

The people are stubborn, poor, unlearned; supposed to be more cruel than other Nations, and so affirmed to be by *Cæsar* in his Book of *Commentaries*; the Progeny, as some say, of the 52 Daughters of *Thespius*, who being all got with child in one night by *Hercules*, were by their Father put to the mercy of the Sea; by which they were brought unto this Island, after peopled by them. From one of these sons named *Cyrnus*, the Island had the name of *Cyrnos*, by which it oftentimes occurreth in some old *Greek* Writers. This is the conceit of *Fabius Pictor*, one of *Annius* his Authors. And that of *Eustathius*, a far more credible Writer, is not much unlike, who will have it called *Corsica* from a woman so named, dwelling in the coast of *Liguria*; who following her Bull hither, was the first that discovered it. But these Originals I look on, the first especially, as the worst kind of *Romances*: the name of *Cyrnos* being more like to be derived from the *Punick Keranoth*, which signifies a horn or corner, by reason of the many Promontories with which it shoots into the Sea. *Corsica insula multis promontoriis angulosa est*, as it is in *Isidore*, *Lib.* 15. *cap.* 6. And for the name of *Corsica*, I should derive it rather from the *Corsi* (by which name the Inhabitants hereof are called in most *Latin* Writers) one of the two Nations of most note in the neighbouring Island of *Sardinia*. *Celeberrimi in ea populorum Balari, & Corsi*, as we find in *Pliny*. Which *Corsi*, or some of them, being overborn by some new Invaders (which the Island of *Sardinia* was seldom free of) were fain to shift their seat, and came over hither.

This Country yieldeth excellent Dogs for game, good Horses, fierce Mastiffs; and a beast called *Mufoli*, not found in *Europe*, excepting in this Island, and *Sardinia* only, but there called *Mufrones*, or *Mucriones*, (for I conceive they are the same under divers names) said to be horned like Rams, and skinned like Stags; which skin is of such incredible hardness, that the beast being cast headlong against a Rock, receives no hurt, but nimbly flies from his Enemy to his den.

The soil by reason of the mountains (which every where are too thick and barren in it) is not very fruitful; producing Corn in less plenty, but the best Wines, and such as the old *Romans* well relished, in good measure. It produceth also Oyl, Figs, Raisons, and Honey: the first three in a mediocrity of goodness, the last somewhat bitter, and by many deemed unwholesom. It aboundeth also with Alom, Box-trees, Iron Mines, and the Tree called *Taxus*, whose poysonous Berries, though in taste pleasing, are much fed on by Bees: and therefore thought to be the cause of the bitterness of the Honey. In some few places where the Rivers have their currents, especially towards *Liguria*, it recompenceth by its fertility, in bearing all manner of grain, the barrenness of the mountains. Which mountains cutting through the midst of it, divide the whole Island into *Cismontanum*, being that towards *Genoa*; and *Transmontanum*, lying towards *Sardinia*; yet so, that the people on each side call themselves the *Cismontanes*, and the other the *Tramontanes*. Both of them speak a corrupt *Italian*, in which there is not a little mixture of *French* and *Spanish*.

For Rivers, there are none of note; the principal of those which the Island yields, being called *Gelo*, and *Travignano*. And as for Cities, some of the Ancients reckoned 33. which *Strabo* doth conceive to be Castles only; there being but four Towns or Cities in it in his time: of which four, two were *Roman* Colonies, the one planted by *Marius*, called *Mariana*; the other by *L. Sylla*, in the Town called *Alleria*; a place of some Antiquity before that time, and at this day a Bishop's See. But now the place of most importance, is the Town of *Bastia*, seated in the North-east part of the Island, opposite almost unto *Alleria*, with a commodious Haven to it, and a strong Garison to defend it: as being the ordinary seat of the Governour sent hither from *Genoa*; and of the Bishop of *Alleria*, who makes there his residence. 2. *Aiazzo*, a reasonable strong Town, and a Bishop's See; and so is also 3. *Nebbio*, called *Chasunum* by *Ptolomy*. Then there is 4. *Porto Vrechio*, built not long since in the place of an old decayed Haven, and peopled by a Colony sent from *Genoa*. 5. St. *Florence*, a Port-town in the Northern part in the midst betwixt *Nebbio* and *Mariana*: and 6. St *Boniface*, called by *Ptolomy*, *Portus Syracusanus*, just opposite unto it in the South corner of the Isle; both of them places of good safety, and capable of the greatest vessels that frequent those Seas.

Who were the first Inhabitants is not easily known. That the *Phœnicians* or *Tyrians* had some footing here, is manifest by that of *Callimachus* an old *Greek* Poet, who calleth it Φοίνικα Κύρνος, the *Phœnician Cyrnus*; and by that of *Diodorus Siculus*, affirming that the *Carthaginians* and *Tyrrheni* (which questionless he mistook for *Tyrii*) cast the *Phocenses* out of this Island. But whether these *Phocenses* did first inhabit, or only had a Colony in some part thereof, is not demonstrable from those Authors. The *Carthaginians* after this made a Conquest of it, and held it till the time of the first *Punick War*; when they were driven thence by the valour of *Cornelius Scipio*. Yet was it not totally subdued, nor brought into the form of a *Roman* Province, till some time after; when it was fully conquered by *C. Papyrius*, *A.V.C.* 541. This Island and *Sardinia* at the first being joyned together, governed by one *Prætor* only; but afterwards made two distinct Provinces, immediately subject to the *Præfect* of the City of *Rome*, and consequently members of the *Roman* Patriarchate. In the falling of the *Roman Empire*, it became a prey unto the *Vandals*, who used to send their condemned persons out of *Africk* hither, to fell Timber for shipping; the Country even till then being very much over-grown with Woods. Afterwards with the rest of the Illands of the *Mediterranean*, it was under the power of the *Saracens*, against whom *Ademar* the Count or Governour of *Genoa* armed a Fleet of Gallies, and vanquished them in a fight at Sea, but lost his life in the action: which notwithstanding the *Genoese* following their good fortune, seised on the Island, and carried thence 13 of the Enemies Ships. The *Pisans* after this got possession of it, but being vanquished by the *Genoese* in the fight near *Giglio* (before mentioned) they were fain to leave it to the Conquerors. Since that, it hath always followed the fortune of *Genoa*, save that it remained somewhat longer than that City did in the hands of the *French*, who in the year 1554. seized on it by the aid of the *Turks*, whom (to the great dishonour of Christianity) they entertained in their Wars against *Charles* the fifth, but in the end, restored it to the

Common-

Common-wealth, upon the peace made betwixt *France* and *Spain*, *Anno* 1559. And for securing of this Island to the State of *Genoa*, they fell upon this handsom project: imploying none but natural *Genoese* to serve in the Garrisons of the Islands, the better to keep under this untractable People; and filling all their Garrisons upon the *Continent* with natural *Corsicans*, whereby the Island is unfurnished of its ablest men, who also serve for *Hostages* of the *Publick Faith*.

Having thus took a brief view of the several parts and members of this *Common wealth*, let us next look upon the whole, as to the Government, Forces, and Revenue of it. First for the *Government*, the principal of their Magistrates hath the name of *Duke*; as titular as the Duke of *Venice*, but of less esteem: that Duke continuing in his Office for term of life, but this being alterable and removed at the two years end. So that he may be called most properly the *Mayor* of *Genoa*. For these two years he dwells in the publick Palace, and hath 500 *Germans* for the Guard of his Person; in nothing like a Prince but that: and for that time, he alone hath the power of propounding any thing to the Senate, which carrieth some resemblance of a *Negative Voice*. His time expired, he returns unto his house as a private Person, but so, that during life he hath the office of a *Procurator* in the Common-wealth. To him there are assistant eight principal Officers, who sit upon the same Form with him, and continue in their office for two years also; which eight, together with the Duke, are called the *Signeury*: but he, and they, in matters of most weight and moment, subordinate to the *General Council*, consisting of 400 Persons, all of them Gentlemen of the City; who with the nine before remembred do constitute the body of the Common-wealth. Under this form they have continued, ever since by the power and Goodness of *Andreas Doria* (who might have made himself their Prince) they were discharged of their Subjection to the *French*, *Anno* 1528. never in danger of relapsing to their former servitude, but in the treasonable practice of the *Flischi*, a remarkable Family of the City; who hoping to possess themselves of the *Principality* under Protection of the *French*, had so laid their plot, that *Augustine di Flischi*, who was designed to be their Duke, had in the night time seized on the Navy, and slain *John Doria* who had the command thereof. But leaping from one *Gallie* to another, to make sure of all, stumbled and fell into the Sea, where he and his ambitious treasons were both drowned together.

As for their *Forces*, there are within the *Signeury* 10000 men ready to arm at any time, as they see occasion; 25 Gallies always ready in the Publick *Arsenal*, and four continually at Sea for defence of their Trading. Sufficient strength to save them from a petit force, though not to guard them from the power of a strong Invader. But the chief strength which they rely on, is the King of *Spain*; whose protection, though it costs them dear, is worth their money; and they have prospered so well by it, that notwithstanding all the Losses which they have sustained, it is supposed that the Revenue of the Common-wealth (besides the Treasury of St. *George*, which is very rich, and managed as a distinct body from the Publick, by its own Officers) amounteth to no less than 430000 Crowns *per annum*.

As for the *Treasury* of St. *George*, though it contain no part of the publick Patrimony, but be governed by its own Officers, as a State distinct: yet is it of such ready use, so able at all times to furnish the Republick with vast sums of money; that the security and preservation of this Common-wealth, depends much upon it. The Institution and Administration whereof, together with the benefit which from hence rebounds unto this Estate, I cannot better present to the Readers View, than in the words of *Machiavel* the greatest Politick of his times; who in his History of *Florence* hath expressed it thus. ‘ *Post diuturnum illud bellum quod* Genoenses ‘ *multis abhinc annis cum* Vene is *gessere*, &c. After that ‘ tedious War between the *Genoises*, and *Venetians*, was ‘ ended in the year 1381. and that the *Genoese* found ‘ themselves unable to repay those monies, which they ‘ had taken up of their private Citizens in pursuit there- ‘ of, they thought it best to assign their ordinary Taxes ‘ over to them, that so in tract of time the whole debt ‘ might be satisfied; and for that end alotted them a ‘ Common Hall, there to deliberate and determine of ‘ their affairs. These men, thus made the Masters of ‘ the publick Taxes, elect among themselves a Com- ‘ mon-Council of an hundred; and over them eight Offi- ‘ cers of especial power, to order and direct the rest, ‘ and to dispose of the *Intrado*: which Corporation so ‘ established, they intituled St. *Georges Bank*. It hapned ‘ afterward, that the *Republick* wanting more moneys, ‘ was glad to have recourse unto St. *George*; who grow- ‘ ing wealthy by the orderly managing of his stock, ‘ was best able to relieve them in their necessities: and ‘ as before they assigned their Taxes over to him, so ‘ now, *ditionem suam oppignorabant*, they *Mortgaged* all ‘ their Demain. So that St. *George* continually waxing ‘ richer, and the State poorer, this Corporation became ‘ possessed at last, of almost all the Towns and Terri- ‘ tories of the Common-wealth: all which they go- ‘ verned by their own Magistrates, chosen by common ‘ suffrage from among themselves. It followed hereupon, ‘ that the common People bearing less respect unto the ‘ Publick, applyed themselves unto St. *George*; this ‘ being always orderly and prudently governed; that ‘ many times inclining to Tyranny; this never changing ‘ Officers, or form of Government, that subject to the ‘ proud ambitious lusts of each Usurper, whether Do- ‘ mestical or Foreign. Insomuch that when the two ‘ potent Families of the *Fregosi* and *Adorni*, contended ‘ for the Soveraignty in this Estate, most of the People ‘ looked upon it as a quarrel which concerned them not: ‘ St. *George* not medling more in it, than to take an Oath ‘ of the prevailing Faction, to preserve his liberties. ‘ *Rarissimo sanè exemplo*, &c. A most excellent and rare ‘ thing (saith he) never found out by any of the old ‘ *Philosophers* in their imaginary Forms of a Common- ‘ wealth: that in the same State, and the same People, ‘ one may see at the same time, both Tyranny and Liberty ‘ Justice and oppression, Civility and Misgovernments: ‘ This only Corporation preserving in the Common- ‘ wealth its ancient Lustre. So that in case St. *George* ‘ should in the end become possessed of the remainder ‘ of the Patrimony and Estate thereof, as it is possible ‘ it may; the State of *Genoa* might not alone be equalled ‘ with that of *Venice*, but preferred before it. So far, and to this purpose that great Master of *State-craft*; a man of less impiety, and more regular life, than some of those who have traduced him for an Atheist.

Here are within this Common-wealth,
Arch bishops 1. Bishops 14.

The Estates of LOMBARDIE.

LOMBARDIE, is bounded on the East with *Romandiola*, and the Estate or Territory of *Ferrara*; on the West, with that part of the *Alpes*, which divides *Italy* from *France*; on the North, (reckoning *Marca Trevigiana* within the bounds hereof) with that;

part of the *Alps* which lieth towards *Germany*; and on the South, with the *Apennine*, which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*.

It was called anciently *Gallia Ciſalpina*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more anon; and took this new name from the *Lombards*, or *Longobardi*, a people of *Germany* (of whom we have already ſpoken, but ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Hungary*;) who coming out of *Pannonia* poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of *Italy*, but left their name to this Tract only. A Tract of ground of which it may be truly ſaid, that, as *Italy* is the Garden of *Europe*, ſo *Lombardy* is the Garden of *Italy*, or the faireſt Flower in all that Garden. A Country of ſo rich a mixture, that ſuch another piece of ground for beautiful Cities, goodly Rivers, for Fields and Paſtures ſhaded with ſuch excellent fruits, for plenty of Fowl, Fiſh, Corn, and Wine, cannot be found again in our Weſtern World. So that it is no wonder, that the two great Kings of *France* and *Spain*, have ſtrived ſo eagerly and with ſuch an effuſion of Chriſtian blood for the Dutchy of *Millain*, a part only (though the richeſt part) of this goodly Country; and but a ſpot of Earth compared to their own Dominions.

Anciently it was of more extent than now it is, containing beſides the Principalities hereafter mentioned, the Provinces of *Romandiola*, and *Trevigiana*; even all, which in the infancy and growth of the *Roman* Empire, had the name of *Gallia Ciſalpina*: called *Gallia* from the *Galls*, who being drawn over the *Alps* by the taſte of the ſweet *Italian* Wines, in the time of *Tarquinius Priſcus* King of *Rome*, under the conduct and command of *Beloveſus* ſon of *Ambigatus* Kings of the *Celtæ*, ſubdued the Natives, and poſſeſſed themſelves of all the Country, from the Weſt parts of the *Tuſcan* Sea and *Apennine* Hills to the *Adriatick*; and from the *Alps* to the River *Rubicon* on the North-Eaſt, and the River *Arnus* on the South-Eaſt. *Ciſalpina* it was called becauſe it lay on that ſide of the *Alps* which was near to *Rome*, to difference it from *Gallia* on the other ſide of the Mountains, which had the name of *Tranſalpina*. It was alſo called *Gallia Togata* becauſe the people of it being civilized, conformed themſelves to the *Roman* habit: that on the other ſide of the *Alps* being called *Braccata* becauſe they kept themſelves to their former Mantles (reſembling thoſe now worn by the vulgar *Iriſh*) which by the *Latines* were called *Braccæ*. For though the word *Braccæ* in ſome of our common Dictionaries be rendred Gally-ſlops or Breeches (and poſſibly the word *Breeches* may be thence derived) which made me conceive that the habit heretofore of thoſe *Galls* was a kind of *Trouzes*, ſuch as thoſe uſually worn by the *Iriſh* Foot-men: yet when I find in approved Authors, that it was *Tunica Sago impoſita*, a Garment which they wore over their Coats and Caſſocks, I conceive I had good reaſon to tranſlate it otherwiſe.

They were generally divided into four great Nations, that is to ſay, 1. the *Inſubres*, inhabiting from the *Alps* to the River *Arnus*, and conſequently ſpreading over the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Modena*, *Mantua*, *Piemont*, and ſome part of the Dukedom of *Florence*: 2. The *Cenomani* who lay next the *Inſubres* poſſeſſing the greateſt part of *Trevigiana*: 3. The *Boii*, taking up the reſt of *Trevigiana*, with the Dukedom of *Ferrara*, and ſo much of *Romandiola* as lyeth on the North Weſt ſide of the River *Rubicon*: 4. The *Senones* who paſſing over the *Rubicon* inhabited the reſt of *Romandiola* and the Dukedom of *Vrbine*. Of theſe the *Senones* (or *Semnones* as *Ptolemie* calls them) were of greateſt fame. Theſe were the men that under the conduct of *Brennus*, having defeated the *Roman* Armies at the Battel of *Allia*, followed their victory unto *Rome*, which they ſacked and burned: nothing made good in all the City but the *Capitol* only, which alſo had been taken by them, *ni anſeres diis dormientibus vigilaſſent*, as S. *Auguſtine* ſcoffs it, if the Geeſe had not been more watchful than their Gods, or Guards. Failing herein they compounded for 1000 pound weight of Gold to forſake the City: but before the money was received, they were aſſaulted by *Camillus*, driven out of the Town and vanquiſhed in a ſet Battel, about eight miles off; who is therefore called *Rome's ſecond Founder*. This hapned *Anno V. C.* 364. Vanquiſhed again at the River *Aniene*, by *T. Quinctius* the Dictator; and after that *Anno V.C.* 404. by the ſaid *Camillus*, being then 80 years of age, in the *Poutine* fields: they got the *Boii* to aſſiſt them, and after joyned with the *Samnites*, *Tuſcans*, and other Nations in a common War. But being for the moſt part beaten, and the War carried to their own doors a little before the coming of *Pyrrhus* into *Italy*, by *M. Curius*, the Conſul: they were by him driven out of their own Country; and finally ſo ſlaughtered by *Dolabella* at the Lake of *Vadimon*, *Anno V. C.* 470. that there was ſcarce any left of all that Nation, to brag that any of their Anceſtors had ſet fire on *Rome*.

The *Senones* being thus deſtroyed, the *Romans* ſuffered the reſt of the *Gallick* Nations to remain in quiet till the end of the firſt *Punick* War, when being grown of more ſtrength, and at very good leiſure, they took up Arms againſt the *Boii*, who fearing the like fortune as the *Senones* had found before, called to their Aid both the *Inſubrians* and *Tranſalpines*; making in all an Army of 50000 Foot, and 20000 Horſe. *An. V.C.* 528. Diſcomfited by *Æmilius* the *Roman* Conſul, near *Talamon* a City of *Tuſcany*, with the ſlaughter of 40000 of their men; they were ſet upon in their own Country ſhortly after by the Conſul *Flaminius*, vanquiſhed and mulcted with the loſs of one half thereof: moſt of them after this diſaſter paſſing into *Germany*, where we are like to hear more of them. And for the *Inſubres* and *Cenomani*, being thus left unto themſelves (the remainders of the *Tranſalpines* excepted only) they were invaded the next year after, (*Anno V. C.* 431.) under the Conſuls *M. Claudius Marcellus*, and *Cornelius Scipio*: to whom upon the loſs of their Armies, and ſome of their beſt Towns, they did yield themſelves: the *Romans* ſo becoming Maſters of all this Country. And yet it was accompted as a Province diſtinct from *Italy*, until the ſetling of the Empire in *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who dividing *Italy* into eleven Regions, made three of them out of this *Ciſalpina*; that is to ſay, *Gallia*, *Venetia*, and *Italia Tranſpadana*: as afterwards it made up four of the ſeven Provinces of the *Dioceſs* of *Italy*, according to the diſtribution of it which was made by *Conſtantine*. How it came with the reſt of *Italy* into the power of the *Lombards*, and how from them taken by the *French*, with the reſt of that Kingdom, had been ſhown already. Won by the *French*, and from the *French* transferred with the Empire to the Kings of *Germany*; it did ſo far preſerve the reputation of a Kingdom, that the Emperours were ſometimes Crowned at *Millain* with an Iron Crown for the Kingdom of *Lombardy*: as at *Aken* (a Town of *Cleveland*) with a Silver Crown for the Realm of *Germany*; and with a Golden Crown at *Rome*, for the ſacred Empire. But the Emperour being weakned by the Artifices of the Popes of *Rome*, this goodly Country was torn from it; and parcelled, in concluſion, amongſt many Princes, as it ſtill continueth.

The *Lombards* being Maſters of it, and having given it their own Name, divided it by the River *Po* into *Longobardia Ciſpadna*, lying betwixt the *Po*, and the *Apennine* Mountains: and *Tranſpadana*, lying betwixt the *Po* and the *Alps*: the firſt of which the old *Romans* called *Æmilia*, from *Æmilius Lepidus*, the Founder

Founder of the City of *Reggio* (then called *Regium Lepidi*) once Proconsul of it. In the division of *Italy* by *Augustus Cæsar* it had the name of *Gallia*. The other was by him honoured with the name of *Italia Transpadana*, by which name it was known in the times of *Tacitus*; and by him called, *Florentissimum Italiæ latus*, the most flourishing part of all *Italy*. But this division being long since worn out of use, and the whole Country being cantoned into many Estates, as before was said, we will consider it at the present as it stands divided into the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, which with *Trevigiana*, described already, make up *Transpadana*: and those of *Modena*, *Parma*, and *Montferrat*, which with the Principate of *Piemont*, make up *Cispadana*.

The Dukedom of MILLAIN.

THE Dukedom of *MILLAIN* hath on the East, the Estates of *Mantua* and *Parma*; on the West, *Piemont*, and some part of *Switzerland*, one of the Provinces of the *Alpes*; on the North *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, the *Apennine* which parteth it from *Liguria*, or the State of *Genoa*. In elder times the habitation of the *Insubres*, originally a Tribe of the *Hedui* inhabiting in those parts of the *Gallia* beyond the *Alpes*, which now make up the Dukedom of *Burgundy*: but crossing the Mountains with the rest of the *Gallick* Nation spoken of before, they setled here, built the City of *Millain*, and finally became one of the greatest Tribes of the *Cisalpine Galls*: from thence, this Country hath the name of *Insubrium Ducatus* in some of the nearer Modern Writers; but commonly is called *Ducatus Mediolanensis*, from *Mediolanium*, or *Millain*, the chief City of it.

Principal Rivers of it, 1. *Padus*, 2. *Addua*, 3. *Ollius*, and 4. *Ticinus*; of which somewhat hath been said already; and besides those it hath also in it the Lake called anciently *Lacus Larius*, but now *Lago di Como* (from the City of *Como* which it neighboureth) 60 miles in length.

The chief Cities and places of note are, 1. *Modoecum*, not far from *Millain*, of more fame than greatness; the fame thereof arising from the Iron Crown kept in a Monastry here, wherewith some of the Emperours have been crowned by the Archbishops of *Millain*. A custom taken up from the Kings of *Ostrogoths*, who are said to have first used the same, in testimony that they had won their Estates by *Iron*. 2. *Pavie*, or *Papia*, seated on the Flood *Ticinus*, united to *Millain* by *John Galeazi*, the first Duke thereof; made an University by *Charles* the Fourth, *Anno* 1361. And famous for the Battel in which *Francis* the First of *France* was taken Prisoner by *Charles* the Fifth, *Anno* 1525. It is seated, as before was said, on the Flood *Ticinus*, about four miles from the *Po*, or *Padus*: the River carrying at this City so great a breadth, that the Bridge over it is no less than 200 walking paces long, built of Free-stone, and covered over head with a roof supported all along with Pillars. From this River the City it self was anciently called *Ticinum*: and took the name of *Papia* from its great affection to the Popes; or, as some say, *quasi Patria piorum* (the two first syllables of those words being joyned together by reason of the many godly men it did produce. It lyeth in length from East to West, a new fair street dividing it in the very midst: on the West side whereof are two handsom Market-places, and a strong Castle built by *Galeazi*, the first Duke of *Millain*; whose Tomb, together with that of *Luitprandus* King of the *Lombards*, are here still remaining; the Kings of *Lombardy* being so pleased with the situation of the place, that they made it the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. The Cathedral here is one of the best endowed in *Italy*, if not in *Europe*; the Revenues of it amounting to 300000 Crowns *per annum*. 3. *Como*, the Birth-place of both the *Plinies*; a rich and handsom Town situate on the South-side of the *Lacus Larius*, which from this Town hath now the name of *Lago di Como*: into which Lake and through it runs the *Addua*, and yet the waters do not mingle: that of the River passing over those of the Lake. About this Lake are many fair houses and handsom Villages, which do much beautifie the place; and in the midst thereof an Island called *Comacina*, in which there was a strong Fortress in former times, wherein the *Longobardian* Kings did preserve their Treasure. 4. *Lodi*, or *Lauda* in the *Latine*, seated in a prosperous soil, and blessed with a painful and industrious people. 5. *Novara*, situate upon an high Hill, in which live many ancient and noble Families: of right belonging to the *Spaniard*, as Dukes of *Millain*; but at the time when *Maginus* wrote, consigned over upon some conditions to the Dukes of *Parma*. But this Town, though it appertained to the Dukes of *Millain*, is situate within the Dukedom of *Montferrat*; and so is, 6. *Alexandria* also, once a poor small Village, known by the name of *Roboretum*, from a Grove of Oaks adjoyning to it: afterwards being raised to its present greatness, by the joynt Purses of the Citizens of *Cremona*, *Millain*, and *Placentia*; in honour of the Emperor it was called *Cæsarea*. But in short time these people siding with the Popes, drew on themselves the anger of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*: who having in a manner desolated the City of *Millain*, the people thereof, at the destruction of the City, retired to this Town; calling it in honour of Pope *Alexander* the Third, whose part they then took against the Emperour, by the name of *Alexandria*, which it still retaineth. It is now the strongest outwork of the whole Dutchy, well fortified against all assaults and batteries, which may come from *France*. 7. *Marignan*, situate South from *Millain*, remarkable for the great defeat here given the *Switzers*, by King *Francis* the First, and now the title of a Marquess. 8. *Cremona*, situate on the Banks of the River *Po*, in a very rich and healthful soil; an ancient Colony of the *Romans*, but a beautiful City to this day; and of such fidelity to its Prince, that it hath got the name of, *Cremona* the faithful. It was built in the first year of the second *Punick* War, and burnt to the ground by *Vespasians* Souldiers, after the defeat of *Vitellius* his Forces: which defeat was given under the Walls of this Town. For when *Antonius*, *Vespasians* General, first after his Victory entred into it, he went into a Bath to wash away the sweat and blood from his body: where finding the water somewhat too cold, he said by chance, that it should anon be made hotter. Which words the Souldiers applying to their greedy desires, set fire on the Town, and spent four days in the pillage of it. By the encouragement of *Vespasian* it was again re-edified, and is now grown famous for the high Tower; from which the by-word, *Una turris in Cremona, unus Petrus in Roma, unus portus in Ancona*. 9. *Millain*, a fair Town, once the Metropolis of the Province of *Liguria*, and afterwards of the whole Diocess of *Italy*, called therefore Μητρόπολις Ἰταλίας, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of *Italy*, as *Dionysius* one of the Bishops hereof is called the Metropolitan of *Italy* by St. *Athanasius*. At this time the fairest and the biggest of all *Lombardy*, having a Castle so strongly fortified, with natural and artificial Ramparts, that it is deemed impregnable. A City very populous, containing 200000 persons; and of great Trade, here being private Shops equalling the publick Store-houses of other places; the

people consequently so rich, that the wife of every mechanick will flant it in her Silks and Taffeties. This City is said to have been built by the *Galls*, 359 years before Christ. It is seven miles in circuit, and honoured with an University, wherein flourished *Hermolaus Barbarus*, *Cælius Rhodoginus*, and *Cardanus*. Seated it is, in as commodious a Soil as any in *Italy*, environed with Water by two great Chanels; the one drawn from the River of *Addua*, the other from the *Tesis* or *Athesis*: which run hard by it, and convey all things to the City in so great abundance, that things there are at very cheap rates; and add much also to the industry of the Inhabitants in the vending and dispersing of their Manufactures, which are of great esteem in most parts of the World. The buildings of the City generally are fair and stately, but three especially commended for their magnificence; that is to say, The Castle, the Hospital, and the Cathedral. For matter of Religion it doth use to glory, that *Barnabas* the Apostle was its first Bishop, and Saint *Ambrose* one of his Successors; that formerly their Bishop stood on even terms with the Popes of *Rome*, and their Church as much priviledged as that; and that since those times they have given unto the World four Popes, that is to say, *Alexander* the second, *Urban* the third, *Celestine* the fifth, and of late, *Gregory* the fourteenth.

As for the fortunes of it, it continued in the power of the *French*, and the Kings of *Italy* of that Nation, from the destruction of the *Lombards*, till the Kingdom of *Italy* fell from the house of *Charles* the Great, and came at last into the hands of the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, from whose obedience it revolted *Anno* 1161, in behalf of Pope *Alexander* the Third; the Emperor divers times defacing the City, and the people still ministring fresh occasions of dislike and quarrel. *Beatrix* the Wife of *Frederick*, coming to see the City, without any ill intentions to it; was by the irreverent people first imprisoned, and then most barbarously used: For setting her upon a Mule, they turned her face towards the tail, which they made her hold instead of a Bridle; and having thus shewed her up and down the City, they brought her unto one of the Gates, and there kicked her out. To revenge this horrible affront, the Emperor besieged and forced the Town; adjudging all the people to die without mercy, but such as would undergo this ransom. Between the buttocks of a skittish and kicking Mule, there was fastned a bunch of Figs; one or more of which, such as desired to live must snatch out with their teeth, their hands bound behind them, as the Mule was pacing through the streets. A condition which most of them excepted; and thereupon gave occasion to the custom used among the *Italians*: who when they intend to scoff or disgrace a man, are wont to put their thumb betwixt two of their fingers, saying *Ecco la Fico*; a disgrace answerable to that of making Horns (in *England*) to him that is suspected to be a Cuckold. The City after this, rebelling and again taken by the Emperor, he levelled it unto the ground, pulled down the walls; and caused the whole ground on which it stood, to be plowed up, and sowed with Salt; seeming to threaten by that *Emblem*, that it should never be re-edified. Which notwithstanding, the City was not only new built again, but the Pope with the help of these *Millanese* and *Venetians*, had at last the better of the Emperor; whom he enjoined, after a vile submission, to undertake a journey to the *Holy Land*. Freed from the Emperor, they began to live after the form of a *Republick*; in which condition they continued about 56 years: when *Otho*, surnamed *Vesconti* (*quasi bis Comes*, because he was Lord of *Millain* and *Angerona*) assumed the title to himself, and settled it upon that Family after his decease; but so that for the most part they were under the command of the *German* Emperors, and to them accomptable. *Galeaze* the first, so called (as some write) because the Cocks crowed more than ordinarily at the time of his birth, added to the Estate hereof the Cities of *Crema*, and *Cremona*. In the person of *John Galeazo* it was advanced unto a Dukedom by the Emperor *Wenceslaus*, for 100000 Crowns in ready money; which *John*, increased so mightily in wealth and power, that he had 29 Cities under his Command; and died as he was going to *Florence* to be crowned King of *Tuscany*. To him succeeded *John Maria*, and after him his brother *Philip*: who in his life had married his only daughter (but illegitimate) to *Francisco Sforza*, the best Commander of his times; and at his death appointed *Alfonso* of *Aragon*, King of *Naples*, for his Heir and Successor. Before *Alfonso* could take any benefit of this designation, *Sforza* was quietly possessed both of the City and the loves of the people. This *Francis Sforza* (I must needs crave leave to tell this story) was the son of *James Altendulo*, a plain Country-man, who going to his labour with his Axe in his hand, whilst a great Army was passing by him, compared the misery and unpleasingness of his present condition, with those fair probabilities which a Martial life did present unto him. And being in a great dispute within himself what were best to do, he presently fell upon a resolution of putting the question to the determination of the *Heavenly Providence*; by casting his Axe unto the top of a Tree next to him: conditioning with himself, that if the Axe came down again, he would contentedly apply himself to his wonted labour; but if it hung upon the boughs, he would betake himself unto higher hopes, and follow the Army then in passage. He did so, the Axe hung upon the boughs, he went after the Army, and thrived so well in that imployment, that he became one of the best Captains of his time; surnamed *de Cotonigla* from the place of his dwelling, and *Sforza* from the greatness of his noble courage. By *Antonia* the Daughter of *Francis di Casalis*, the Lord of *Cortona*, he was the Father of this *Francis Sforza* whom now we speak of; who was so fortunate a Commander in the Wars of *Italy*, that to oblige him to his party, *Philip* the Duke of *Millain* bestowed his daughter upon him, and thereby a fair title to this great Estate, which he successively obtained against all pretenders. In his line it continued till the coming of *Lewis* the Twelfth of *France*, the Son of *Charles*, and Nephew of *Lewis*, Dukes of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* the sole Daughter of *John Galeaze* the first Duke: who getting Duke *Lodowick Sforza* (betrayed by the *Switzers*) into his hands, carried him prisoner into *France*, and possessed himself of the Estate. Outed not long after by the Confederate Princes of *Italy*, who were jealous of so great a neigbour; he left the cause and quarrel unto *Francis* the first, his next successor in that Kingdom: in pursuance whereof, it is said by *Bellay* a *French* Writer, that the use of Muskets was first known. But *Francis* being in conclusion taken at the Battel of *Pavie*, and carried prisoner into *Spain*; for his release, was forced to release all claim unto this Estate. A release long before endeavoured by some *French* Politicians, because the pretensions hereunto had brought such damage unto that Crown: and no less eagerly opposed by Chancellor *Prat* (on the same reason that *Scipio Nasica* did oppose the destruction of *Carthage*, that is to say) because it did not only keep the *French* Nation in continual discipline of War; but served for a purgation of idle and superfluous people. Yet notwithstanding this release, *Francis* renewed the War again; and laid siege to *Millain*, then under the command of *Antonio di Leva*, and a *Spanish* Garrison: during which

which War, the wretched *Millaneſe* endured the worſt of miſeries. For firſt the Governor, under colour of providing pay for his Souldiers, got all the victuals of the Town into the Caſtle, to be ſold again at his own price: which many of the poorer ſort not able to pay, periſhed of Famin in the ſtreets. And on the other ſide, his Souldiers which were quartered in moſt parts of the City, uſed when they wanted money, to chain up their Hoſts, and then to put them to a ranſom. Such as upon this barbarous uſage fled out of the City, had their Goods confiſcate: on which there followed ſuch a diſconſolate deſolation, that the chief ſtreets were over-grown with Nettles and Brambles. In this miſerable eſtate it continued, till *Charles* the Emperor having totally driven out the *French*, reſtored it to *Francis Sforza*, brother to the laſt Duke *Maximilian*, and ſon of that *Ludowick*, who to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, had moſt improvidently taught the *French* the way into *Italy*. But this *Francis* dying without iſſue, and the houſe of *Sforza* failing in him; the Emperor entred on the Dukedom as right Lord thereof, and left the ſame to his ſucceſſors in the Realm of *Spain*. This ſaid, we will ſum up the whole ſtory of this Eſtate, in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Millain*.

1277 1 *Otho Viſconti* Archbiſhop of *Millain*.
1295 2 *Matthew*, Brothers Son to *Otho*, confirmed in his command of *Millain* by *Albertus* the Emperor.
1322 3 *Galeaze Viſconti*, Son of *Matthew*, diſſeized of his command by *Lewis* of *Bavaria* Emperor.
1329 4 *Actio Viſconti*, Son of *Galeaze*, confirmed in his Fathers power by the ſame *Lewis* the Emperor.
1339 5 *Luchino Viſconti*, Brother to *Galeaze*.
1349 6 *John Viſconti*, the Brother of *Luchino*.
1354 7 *Galeaze* II. Son of *Stephen*, the Brother of *John*.
1378 8 *John Galeaze*, Son of the firſt *Galeaze*, created by the Emperor *Wenceſlaus*, the firſt Duke of *Millain*, *An.* 1395.
1402 9 *John Maria*, Son of *John Galeaze*, ſlain by the people for his horrible tyrannies.
1412 10 *Philip Maria*, the laſt of the *Viſconti*, which commanded in *Millain*; a Prince of great power in ſwaying the affairs in *Italy*. He died *Anno* 1446; the *Millaneſe* for ſome years reſuming their former liberty.
1446 11 *Francis Sforze*, in right of his Wife *Blanch* the baſe daughter of *Philip*, ſeconded by the power of the Sword, admitted Duke by the general conſent of the people of *Millain*, one of the Knights of the Noble Order of the Garter.
1461 12 *Galeaze Sforze*, a valiant but libidinous Prince cruelly murdered by his own Subjects.
1477 13 *John Galaze Sforze*, privately made away (as it was ſuppoſed) by his Unkle *Lodowick*.
1494 14 *Lodowick Sforze*, the Son of *Francis*, and Brother of *Galeaze*, who to ſecure himſelf of his ill-got Dukedom, drew the *French* into *Italy*.
1501 15 *Lewis* the XII. of *France*, Son unto *Charles*, and Nephew to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, by *Valentina* Daughter to *John* the Firſt Duke of *Millain*; vanquiſhed *Ludowick*, carried him priſoner into *France*, and took the Dukedom to himſelf.
1513 16 *Maximilian Sforze*, the ſon of *Ludowick*, reſtor'd to the Dukedom by the power of the *Switzers*, and *Venetians*; but again outed of it by *Francis* the firſt, Son-in-law and Succeſſor to King *Lewis* the twelfth in the Kingdom of *France*.
1529 17 *Francis Sforze*, Brother of *Maximilian*, reſtored to the Eſtate, and the *French* expelled by the puiſſance of *Charles* the fifth; who after the death of this Duke *Francis* (the laſt of the *Sforzes*) *Anno* 1535, united it for ever to the Crown of *Spain*.

This Dukedom is not now of ſuch great extent, and power, as in former times; there being but nine Cities remaining of thoſe 29, which were once under the command of the Dukes hereof; the reſt being gotten in by the State of *Venice*, the *Florentines*; the Dukes of *Mantua*, and *Parma*. And yet is this accompted the prime Dukedom of *Chriſtendom* (as *Flanders* was accompted the prime Earldom of it) affording the Annual Revenue of 800000 Ducats to the King of *Spain*. A good Revenue, might it come clear unto his Coffers. But what with the diſcharge of his Garriſon-ſoldiers, the defraying of his Vice-roy, the Salaries of Judges and inferior Miniſters; it is conceived that he ſpends more on it than he getteth.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Serpent *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; in his Gorge, an Infant *Gules*. Which was the Coat-Armour of a *Saracen*, vanquiſhed by *Otho* the firſt of the *Viſconti* in the *Holy-Land*.

There are in this Dukedom,
Archbiſhop 1. Biſhops 6.

The Dukedom of MANTUA.

THE Dukedom of *MANTUA*, is bounded on the Weſt, with *Millain*; on the Eaſt, with *Romandiala*; on the North, with *Marca Trevigiana*; and on the South, with the Dukedom of *Parma*.

The Country about *Mantua* is reaſonably good, and yieldeth all ſorts of Fruits being well manured: plentiful in Corn and Paſtures, the very High-ways by the Fields being planted with Elms, to train up the Vines which grow there intermingled in every place, as generally it is in all parts of *Lombardy*. But the Inhabitants are conceived not to be ſo civil, and well-bred, as the reſt of *Italy*, childiſh in their apparel, without manly gravity, poor in the entertainment of their friends, and exacting all they can from ſtrangers.

The places in it of moſt note are, 1 *Mercaria*, bordering next to *Millain*. 2 *Bozilia*, a ſmall, but pleaſant habitation, belonging to ſome Princes of the Ducal family; built with fair Cloyſters towards the Street, in which paſſengers may walk dry in the greateſt rain. 3 *Petula*, a ſmall Village, but as famous as any, in regard it was the place wherein *Virgil* was born: but generally ſaid to be born in *Mantua* (*Mantua* Virgilio *gaudet*, as the old Verſe is) becauſe the Village is ſo near the City of *Mantua* (being but 2 miles diſtant) that his birth might very well be aſcribed unto it. 4 *Mantua*, ſeated on the River *Mincius*, now called *Sarca*; which coming out of *Lago di garda* falleth not far off into the *Po*, from whence there is a paſſage unto *Venice*. By Nature ſtrong, environed on three ſides with a running water, half a mile in breadth; and on the fourth ſide with a wall. The Dukes to take their pleaſure on the Lakes and Rivers, have a Barge called the *Bucentaure*, five ſtories high, and capable of two hundred perſons (whence it had the name) furniſhed very richly both for ſtate and pleaſure. *Ocnus* the Son of *Manto* the Propheteſs, the Daughter of *Tireſias*, is ſaid to have been the Founder of it, and to have given unto it his Mother's name; but I more then doubt it, though *Virgil* a Native of thoſe parts do report

Port it so; this City being one of those which the *Tuscans* built beyond the *Apennine*, as the soundest Antiquaries do affirm. Made memorable (by whomsoever built at first) in the declining times of Christian purity, for a Council holden in it, *Anno* 1061, wherein it was decreed, that the choosing of the Pope should from thenceforth belong unto the *Cardinals*. A Prerogative which of old belonging to the Emperors, was first by *Constantine* the third, sirnamed *Pogonatus*, given to the Clergy and people of *Rome*, in the time of Pope *Benedict* the second, *Anno* 684, resumed by *Charles* the Great, when he came to the Empire; and now appropriated only to the Colledg of *Cardinals*. But to return unto the Town: on the East-side of a Bridg of about 500 paces long, covered over head, and born up with Arches, stands the Duke's Palace for the City; and not thence the *Domo*, or Cathedral Church of St. *Peter*. The Palace very fair and stately, but far short for the pleasures and delights thereof, of his Palace at *Mirmirollo*, five miles from the City: which though it be of a low roof (after the manner of ancient buildings) yet it is very richly furnished, and adorned with very beautiful Gardens: able to lodg, and give content to the best Prince in Christendom. Here are also many other Towns, as 5 *Capræna*, and 6 *Lucera*, of which nothing memorable.

As for the fortunes of this Dukedom, it is to be observed that *Mantua* followed for long time the fortunes of the *Western* Empire; till given by *Otho* the second, son to *Theobald* Earl of *Canosse*, for the many good services he had done him. *Boniface* who succeeded him, had to Wife *Beatrix* the Sister of *Henry* the second; and by her was the Father of *Mathildis*, that famous Warrioures, who carried so great a stroke in the state of *Italy*. Being dispossessed of her Estate by *Henry* the Third, she joyned in Faction with the Popes, recovered all her own again, and dismembred from the Empire many goodly Territories, which at her death (having had three Husbands, but no issue) she gave in Fee for ever to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1115. After her death, *Mantua* continued under the protection of the Empire. But that protection failing them, by little and little it was brought under by the Family of the *Bonacelsi*: who Lording it over a Free-people with too great severity, contracted such a general hatred, that *Passavino* the last of them, was slain in the Market-place by the people, under the command and conduct of *Lewis de Gonzaga*, a noble Gentleman; who presently with great applause took to himself the Government of the Estate, *Anno* 1328. which hath continued in his house to this very day, with a great deal of lustre. Whose Successors take here as followeth, under the several Titles of

The Lords, Marquesses, and Dukes of *Mantua*.

A. Chr.

1328 1 *Lewis Gonzaga*, the first of this Line, Lord of *Mantua*.
1366 2 *Guido*, Son of *Lewis*.
1369 3 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* II. Son of *Guido*.
1382 4 *Francis Gonzaga*, Son of *Lewis* II. highly extolled by *Pagio* the *Florentine* for his Wisdom and Learning; who valiantly repulsed the attempts made against his Estate, by *John Galeaze*, the first Duke of *Millain*.
1407 5 *John Francisco Gonzago*, created the first Marquess of *Mantua*, by the Emperour *Sigismond*.
1444 6 *Lodowick*, or *Lewis* III. Son of *John Francisco*, who entertained the Emperour *Frederick*, and the King of *Danemark*, with great magnificence.
1478 7 *Frederick* Son of *Lewis* the Third.
1484 8 *Francis* II. Son of *Frederick*.
1519 9 *Frederick* II. Commander of the Armies of the Pope, and *Florentines*, entertained *Charles* the Fifth with great solemnity; by whom he was made Duke of *Mantua*, 1530. and declared Marquess of *Montferrat*, in right of his Wife.
1540 10 *Francis* III. Son of *Frederick* the second Duke of *Mantua*, and Marquess of *Montferrat*.
1550 11 *William* the Brother of *Francis* the Third, created the first Duke of *Montferrat*.
1587 12 *Vincent*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Mantua*, and *Montferrat*.
13 *Francis* IV. Son of *Vincent*, had to Wife *Margaret* the Daughter of *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*, and by her a Daughter named *Mary*; in whose behalf, the Duke of *Savoy* undertook the War against her Uncle, for *Montferrat*.
1613 14 *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *Francis* the Fourth, succeeded him in both Estates, notwithstanding the opposition of the Duke of *Savoy*.
15 *Vincent* II. the Brother of *Ferdinand* and of *Francis* the Fourth.
1628 16 *Charles Gonzaga*, Duke of *Nevers* in *France*, by his Mothers Line; and of *Mantua*, and *Montferrat* by his Father *Lewis Gonzaga*, the third Son of *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*; succeeded on the death of *Vincent* the Second: but not without great opposition of the *Spanish* Faction, who sacked *Mantua*, distressed *Casal*, and much impoverished both Estates. But the Business was at last composed by the Power of the *French*, and the Investiture conferred upon him, by the hands of the Emperour.

The Territories of this Duke (reckoning in that of *Montferrat* also) are in circuit nigh unto those of *Florence*; but his Revenues fall much short, which amount to about 500000 Ducats only; but might be greater, if either the Duke would be burdensom to his Subjects, as *Florence* is; or if he were not on all sides Land-locked from Navigation and Traffick.

The chief Order of Knighthood in these Dukedoms, is, of *The Blood of our Lord* JESUS CHRIST, instituted *Anno* 1608. The Author of it was Duke *Vincent Gonzaga*, when the Marriage was solemnized between his Son *Francis* and Lady *Margaret*, Daughter to the Duke of *Savoy*. It consisteth of twenty Knights, whereof the *Mantuan* Dukes are Soveraigns; and was allowed by Pope *Paul* the Fifth. The Collar hath Threads of Gold laid on fire, and interwoven with these words, *Domine Probasti*. To the Collar are pendent two Angels, supporting three drops of Blood, and circumscribed with, *Nihil isto triste recepto*. It took this name, because in St. *Andrews* Church in *Mantua*, are said to be kept as a most precious Relique, certain drops of our *Saviours Blood* (thou canst not, O Reader, but believe it) with a piece of the *Sponge*.

The Arms of *Mantua* are *Argent*, a Cross *Petee Gules*, between four Eagles *Sable*, membred of the second, under an Escocheon in *Fesse*, charged quarterly with *Gules* a Lion *Or*, and *Or* three Bars *Sable*.

There are in this Dukedom
Archbishops 1. Bishops 4.

THE

The Dukedom of MODENA.

THE Dukedom of *MODENA* containeth the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, with the Territories adjoyning to them: both of them ſituate in that part of *Lombardy* which is called *Giſpadana*; and conſequently partake of the pleaſures and commodities of it.

The people of this Dukedom are ſaid to be better natured than moſt of *Italy*: thoſe of *Modena* being quick in their reſolution; eaſie to be pacified when wronged, and friendly in their entertainment of Srangers; the *Reggians* being affable, of preſent wits, and fit for any thing they can be imployed in: the women in both Towns of a mild diſpoſition, neither too courtly, nor too froward, as in other places.

The firſt principal City is that of *Modena*, anciently better known by the name of *Mutina*, and famous in thoſe times for the firſt battel betwixt *Antony* and *Auguſtus Cæſar*; this latter being then not above eighteen years of age, and yet made head of a new League againſt *Antonius*, whom the Senate and people looked upon as a common Enemy. The managing of the War was left to *Hirtius* and *Panſa* then Conſuls; the fortune of the day ſo equal, that *Antony* left the field, and the Conſuls their lives; leaving *Auguſtus* the abſolute command of a powerful Army, into whoſe favours he ſo cunningly did work himſelf, that he made them the foundation of his future greatneſs. It was at that time a *Roman* Colony, but being ruined by the fury of the *Goths* and *Lombards*, was afterwards new built at the charge of the Citizens, ſituate near the *Appennine* in a very good ſoil, and of indifferent fair buildings. In the diſtractions of *Italy* betwixt the Emperors and the Popes, *Guido* the Pope's Legate, and then Biſhop thereof, conſigned it over to *Azo* of the houſe of *Eſte*, Lord of *Ferrara*, *Anno* 1304. the Pope himſelf conſenting to it, upon the payment of a yearly tribute of 10000 Crowns: ſince which time it hath been for the moſt part in the power of that houſe: *Borſius* the Marqueſs of *Ferrara*, being by *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Mantina*. 2. *Reggio*, the ſecond Town of note, hath taſted much of the ſame fortune; at firſt a *Roman* Colony called *Regium Lepidi*, afterwards ruined by the *Goths* when they came firſt into *Italy*; repaired and compaſſed with a Wall by its own inhabitants, and for a time under the command of the Earls of *Canoſſe*. But being weary of that yoke, they recovered their liberty; which being unable to maintain in thoſe buſtling times, they gave themſelves unto *Obizo* the Father of *Azo*, *Anno* 1292, and after that in the year 1326, to the See of *Rome*. Paſſing through many other hands, it was at laſt ſold for 60000 *Ducats* to the *Viſconti*, Lords of *Millain*, *Anno* 1370, and in the end recovered by the houſe of *Eſte*, *Anno* 1409, and gave the title of a Duke to the aforeſaid *Borſius*, whom *Frederick* the third made Duke of *Modena*, and *Reggio*, 1452.

The ſucceſſors of this *Borſius* are before laid down in the ſucceſſion of *Ferrara*; who held the whole Eſtate together till the death of *Alphonſo* the laſt Duke. He dying without lawful iſſue, *Anno* 1595, left his Eſtate to *Cæſar de Aſte*, his Nephew by a baſe ſon, called *Alphonſo* alſo; betwixt whom and Pope *Clement* the 8th. a War was threatened for the whole: but at laſt compromiſed upon theſe conditions, That the Church of *Rome* ſhould have *Ferrara*, with all the Lands and Territories appertaining to it, as an Eſtate anciently holden of that See; and that *Modena*, and *Reggio*, being *Imperial Fiefes*, ſhould remain to *Cæſar*; but to be held in fee of the Papal Throne. Duke *Cæſar* to have leave to carry away all his movable goods, to ſell ſuch of his lands as were not of the ancient demain of the Dukedom; and to have one half of the Ordnance and Artillery. By which agreement the Cities of *Modena* and *Reggio*, became a new erected State, diſtinct, and independent of any other: each City being well fortified, and garriſoned, and furniſhed with Ordnance for defence thereof. But what they yield unto the Prince in the way of Revenue, and what Forces he is able to raiſe out of his Eſtates, I cannot poſitively determine: but by the Tribute formerly paid unto the Popes for the City of *Mutina*, and the rich Territory of both Towns, and the great Revenues of the Dukes of *Ferrara*; I conceive they cannot yield leſs than 100000 Crowns of yearly In-come. The Arms of this Duke the ſame with thoſe of *Ferrara*, before blazoned.

The Dukedom of PARMA.

THE *Dukedom* of *PARMA* hath on the North the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Mantua*, from which it is parted by the *Po*, on the South the *Appennine*, which divideth it from *Liguria*; on the Eaſt the Country of *Modena*, and *Romandiola*, from which laſt parted by the River *Scultenna* now called *Panaro*; on the Weſt *Montferrat*: ſituate, as *Modena* is, in *Lombardia Ciſpadana*; and much of the ſame nature both for ſoil, and air, and other the commodities of thoſe parts of *Italy*.

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Parma*, an ancient City, and made a Colony of the *Romans* at the end of the ſecond *Punick* War; as *Mutina* and *Aquileia* at the ſame time were. It is ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name, which runneth almoſt through the midſt of it; beautified with very handſom buildings, and peopled by a race of ingenious men, whether they do betake themſelves unto Arts or Arms. The grounds about this City are of excellent paſturage, and yield great plenty of the Cheeſe which is called *Permeſan*. 2. *Placentia*, ſeated on the *Po*, one of the firſt Colonies which the *Romans* planted amongſt the *Ciſalpine Galls*; and famous for the reſiſtance which it made both to *Annibal*, and *Aſdrubal*, who ſeverally in vain beſieged it: made afterwards the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Æmelia*, yet nothing the leſs beautiful for ſo great an age. The fields adjoyning have the ſame commendation with thoſe of *Parma*, for moſt excellent Cheeſe; but go beyond for Salt-pits and Mines of Iron, which the other wanteth. 3. *Mirandula*, a proper Town built in the time of *Conſtans* the ſon of *Conſtantine* the Great: the Patrimony of the noble Family of the *Pici* (of which was *Picus de Mirandula* that renowned Scholar) but held by them as Feudataries to the Dukes of *Parma*. 4. *Briſcello*, called anciently *Brixellum*, not far from the chief City *Parma*; of no great note at the preſent time, but memorable in the *Roman* ſtory for the death of the Emperor *Otho*, who here killed himſelf. For hearing here that his Forces were overthrown by *Valens*, and *Cecina*, Commanders of the Forces of *Vitellus*, then his Competitor for the Empire; he rather choſe to fall by his own ſword, than that the *Romans* ſhould be forced, for his ſake, to renue the war. And this he did with ſo much honour to himſelf, that many of his Souldiers ſlew themſelves at his *Funeral Pile*; not out of conſciouſneſs of crime, or for fear of puniſhment; but to teſtifie their affections to him, and to follow ſuch a brave example as was laid before them. So as we may truly ſay of him, as he is ſaid by *Tacitus* to have ſaid of himſelf, *viz.* *Alii diutius imperium tenuerunt, nemo tam fortiter reliquit.* 5. *Monticella*, in the middle way almoſt between *Parma* and *Placentia*, and

and opposite unto *Cremona*, a chief Town of the Dutchy of *Millain*, from which parted by the River *Po*.

These Towns (as others in these parts) have been partakers of the diversities of fortune, as being (after the declining of the Western Empire) sometimes under the *Venetians*, most times under the *Millanoys*; and at last conquered by Pope *Julius* the second in the confusions and destructions of the Dukedom of *Millain*, under the two last Princes of the house of *Sforza*. By *Paul* the 3*d*. being of the house of the *Farnesis*, the Cities of *Parma* and *Palcentia* with their *Appendixes*, were given unto his son *Petro Aleigi* (or *Petrus Aloysius*, as the *Latins* call him) with the title of Duke, *An*. 1549. The Signeury of *Camerine*, which he had lately taken from the Dukes of *Urbin*, being given in recompence to the Church. This *Petro* being a man of most vicious life, had amongst other villanies committed an unspeakable violence on the person of *Cosmus Chirius* the Bishop of *Fanum*; and soon after poysoned him. For which most detestable fact, he received no other chastisement of his Father than this, *Hæc vitia me non commonstratore didicit*, that he was sure he had not learnt those vices by this example. But going on in these wicked courses, he was slain at last by Count *John Aguzzola*; and *Placentia*, after a short siege, yielded to *Ferdinand Gonzaga* (*Vice-roy* in *Millain* for the Emperor *Charles* the fifth) conceived to be privy to the murder. *Octavian* the son of *Petro Luigi*, hearing what had hapned, fortified himself in *Parma* as well as he could: but being hated by the new Pope, and distrustful, not without good cause, of the Emperor's purposes, he had quite lost all, if *Henry* the second of *France*, had not taken him into his protection. For the Emperor *Charles* fully determined (notwithstanding that *Octavian* had married his base daughter) to have made himself Lord of the Town: and the *French* King was loth to see so great a strength added to the Emperor's possessions in *Italy*. When the war had now lasted four years, *Philip* the second (who afterwards succeeded *Charles*) considering how necessary it was for his affairs in *Italy*, to have this *Octavian* his friend, restored unto him the City of *Plaisance* or *Placentia*, and so withdrew him from the *French* faction, *Anno* 1557. Yet because he would be sure to keep his house in a perpetual dependence on *Spain*, he restored it not absolutely at the present, but held the Citadel thereof with a *Spanish* Garrison, till the year 1583: when in regard of the good services, which *Alexander* Prince of *Parma* had done him in his Wars against the *Hollanders*, and others of the revolted Provinces, he caused it to be surrendered into the hands of his Father *Octavian*. By which, and by his setling upon this house the Town and Territory of *Novara*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*, and other personal favours which they have conferred on the Princes of it, the Kings of *Spain* seem to have given some satisfaction to this house for stepping betwixt them and the Kingdom of *Portugal*; to which they might have made such a probable title, as would have troubled his Estate, had they stood upon it.

The Dukes of *Parma*.

A. Chr.

1549 1 *Petro Luigi Farnesis*, son to *Paul* the third, made by the Pope, his Father, the first Duke of *Parma*.

1550 2 *Octavian Farnesis*, son to *Petro Luigi*, married *Margaret* base daughter to *Charles* the fifth; afterwards Governess of the *Netherlands*.

3 *Alexander*, son of *Octavian* and *Margaret* of *Austria*, one of the most renowned Souldiers of his time, Governor of the *Netherlands* for King *Philip* the second.

1592 4 *Rainutio Farnesis*, son of *Alexander* and *Mary* of *Portugal*, eldest daughter of *Edward* son to King *Emanuel*; one of the Competitors for that Crown.

5 *Odordo Farnesis*, son of *Rainutio*.

The Dukedom of MONTFERRAT.

THE Dukedom of *MONTFERRAT*, is situate betwixt *Lombardy* and *Piemont*, on the Rivers of *Tenarus* and *Po*, on the East, and West; extended North, and South, in a line or branch, from the *Alpes* to the borders of *Liguria*; of which last it was sometimes counted part, and called *Liguria Cisapennina* for distinction sake.

It took this name either *à Monte ferrato*, from some Mountain of it stored with Iron; or else *à Monte feraci*, as some rather think, from the fertility of the Mountains. And to say truth, though the whole Country seem to be nothing else than a continual heap of Mountains; yet are they Mountains of such wonderful fruitfulness, that they will hardly give place to any Valley in *Europe*.

The principal River of it is the *Tenarus*, above mentioned, which springing out of the hills about *Barcis*, a Town of the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, falleth into the *Po* not far from *Pavie*. The principal Cities of it are; 1. *Alba*, called by *Pliny*, *Alba Pompeia*, situate on the banks of the said River, in a rich and fertil soil, but a very bad air: near to which, in a poor Village called *Zobia*, the Emperor *Pertinax* was born. Who being of mean and obscure parents, after the death of *Commodus*, was called by the Conspirators to the *Roman* Empire. But being over-zealous to reform the corruptions of the Souldiers, he was by the *Prætorian* Guards (hating their Princes for their vertues, as much as formerly for their vices) most cruelly murthered; and the Imperial dignity sold to *Julianus*, for 25 *Sestertiums* a man. 2. *Casal*, vulgarly called Saint *Vas*, from the Church there dedicated to Saint *Evasius* (or Saint *Vas*, as they speak it commonly) the strongest Town in all this Country; well built and peopled with many ancient and noble Families, of which the Family of St. *George* is one of the principal; and made a Bishops See by Pope *Sixtus* the fourth, *Anno* 1474. It was in former times, the chief seat of the house of *Montferrat*, and for that cause compassed with a strong wall, and a fair Castle: but of late fortified after the modern manner of Fortifications, and strengthened with an impregnable Citadel by Duke *Vincent Gonzago*, as the surest Key of his Estate, in which new Citadel the Governor of the Province holds his usual residence. 3. *Aique*, in Latin *Aquensis*, famous for its Baths or Fountains of hot and medicinal waters. 4. Saint *Saviours*, where there is a very strong Fortress, as there is also in. 5. *Ponsture*, or *Pont di Stura*, so called of the River *Stura*. 6. *Osoniano*, anciently *Occimianum*, the old seat of the first Marquesses of this *Montferrat*. 7. *Belzale*, 8. *Liburn*, and many others of less note.

Here are also within the limits of this Dukedom, the Towns of *Ast*, *Cherian*, and *Chivasco*, belonging to the Dukes of *Savoy*, in the description of whole Country we may speak more of them; together with *Novara* and *Alexandria* appertaining to the Dukedom of *Millain*, which we have spoken of already. And hereunto also I refer the strong (and in those times) impregnable Fortress, by the *Latin* Historians called *Fraxinetum*, from some Grove of Ashes near unto it: situate in the advantages of the Mountains, and not far from the Sea, by

consequence

consequence better able to defend it self and admit relief; and therefore made the receptacle or retreat of the *Saracens*, at such time as they had footing in these parts of *Italy*. First took and fortified by them in the year 891. recovered afterwards by the prowess and good Fortune of *Otho* the Emperour, deservedly surnamed the Great, about sixty years after. Of great note in the stories of those middle times. By *Luitprandus* placed near the borders of *Provence*; by *Blondus*, and *Leander*, near the River *Po*, and the Town of *Valenza*, once called *Forum Fulvii*; and finally by *Sigonius* in the *Cottian Alpes*: and so most fit to be referred unto this Country, though now so desolated that there is no remainders of the ruins of it.

This Country was made a Marquisate by *Otho* the second, 985. one of the seven by him erected and given to the seven Sons of *Waleran* of *Saxony*, who had married his Daughter *Adelheide*. A Military Family, conspicuously eminent in the Wars of *Greece*, and the *Holy-Land*; where they did many acts of singular Merit: insomuch as *Baldwin* and *Conrade*, issuing from a second branch hereof, were made Kings of *Hierusalem*, and *Boniface* one of the Marquesses, got the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, and many fair Estates in *Greece*. But the Male-issue failing in Marquess *John*, the Estate fell to *Theodorus Palæologus*, of the Imperial Family of *Constantinople*, who had married the *Heir-General* of the House; continuing in his name till the year 1534. when it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Mantua*. In the person of Duke *William Gonzaga* raised to the honour of a Dukedom, as it still continueth; the best and richest part of the Duke's Estate, and the fairest flower in all his Garden. The residue of the story may be best collected out of the following Catalogue of

The Marquesses of *Montferrat*.

A.C.		
985	1	*William*, one of the Sons of *Waleran* and *Adelheide*, made the first Marquess of *Montferrat*.
	2	*Boniface*, the Son of *William*.
	3	*William* II. who accompanied the Emperour *Conrade* the III. and St. *Lewis* of *France*, to the *Holy-Land*.
1183	4	*Boniface* II. Son of *William* the II. his younger Brother *William* being designed King of *Hierusalem*, and *Reyner* another of them made Prince of *Thessaly*, succeeded his Father in *Montferrat*. Aiding his Nephew *Baldwin*, the Son of *William*, in recovering the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*; he was took prisoner by *Guy* of *Lusignan*, Competitor with him for that title.
	5	*William* III. Son of *Boniface*, poisoned in the *Holy Land*, where he endeavoured the restoring of his Brother *Conrade*, to that languishing Kingdom.
	6	*Boniface* III. Son of *William* the Third, for his valour in taking of *Constantinople*, made King of *Thessaly*.
1254	7	*Boniface* IV. Son of *Boniface* the Third, added *Vorcelli* and *Eporedium* unto his Estate.
	8	*John*, surnamed the *Just*, the last of this house.
	9	*Theodore Palæologus* Son of the Emperour *Andronicus Palæologus* the elder, and *Yoland* his Wife, Daughter of *Boniface* the Fourth.
	10	*John Palæologus*, Son of *Theodore*.
	11	*Theodorus* II. Son of *John*, a great builder and endower of Religious houses.
	12	*Jacobus Johannes*, Son of *Theodore* the second.
	13	*John* III. eldest Son of *Jacobus Johannes*.
1464	14	*William* IV. Brother of *John* the Third, Founder of the City and Monastery of *Casal*.
1487	15	*Boniface* V. Brother of *John* and *William*, the two last Marquesses, invested by the Emperor *Frederick* the Fourth; *Blanca Maria* the Daughter of *William* surrendring her Estate unto him.
	16	*William* V. Son of *Boniface* the Fifth.
1518	17	*Boniface* VI. Son of *William* the Fifth.
1530	18	*John George*, Brother of *William* the Fifth, succeeded his Nephew in the Estate; which he held but four years. After whose death, *Anno* 1534, this Marquisate was adjudged to *Frederick* the first Duke of *Mantua*, who had married *Margaret* Daughter of *William* the Fifth, and next heir to *George*.

Whose Successors may be seen in the former Catalogue of the Dukes of *Mantua*.

The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Chief *Argent*.

Here are in this Estate.
Archbishops 0 Bishops 4.

And now according to my method, I should proceed to the description and story of the *Principality* of *Piemont*, the last and most Western part of *Italy*. But being it lieth partly in, and partly at the foot of the *Alpes*, was anciently a part of the Province called *Alpes Cottiæ*, and is now part of the Estate of the Duke of *Savoy*: we will defer till we come to those *Alpine Provinces*, which are next to follow. And so much shall suffice for *Italy*, in which there are, besides those of *Piemont*,

Popes 1. Patriarchs 3.
Archbish. 35. Bishops 292.
Universities 17.

VIZ.

In the Land of the Church,
Rome.
Bononia.
Ferrara.
Perusia.
In *Sicil*,
Palermo.
Catana.
In the Signeury of *Venice*,
Venice.
Padua.
Verona.
In the Dukedom of *Tuscany*,
Florence.
Pisa.
Sienna.
In *Naples*,
Naples.
Salern.
In *Lombardy*,
Millain.
Pavie.
Mantua.

And so much for *Italy*.

OF THE

ALPES.

BEfore we can come out of *Italy* into *France*, we muſt croſs the *Alpes*; a ridge of Hills wherewith (as with a ſtrong and defenſible Rampart) *Italy* is aſſured againſt *France* and *Germany*. They are ſaid to be five days journey high, covered continually with Snow, from the whiteneſs whereof they took this name; that in the *Sabine* Dialect being called *Alpum*, which in the *Latine* was called *Album*.

They begin about the *Mediterranean* or *Liguſtick* Seas, and croſſing all along the Borders of *France* and *Germany*, extend as far as to the Gulf of *Cornero*, in the Province of *Iſtria*; and are in ſeveral parts called by ſeveral names, which we will muſter up as they lie in order from the *Mediterranean* to the *Adriatick*. And firſt thoſe which lye neareſt to the *Mediterranean*, are for that cauſe called *Maritimæ*, from the nearneſs to *Liguria*, called by ſome *Liguſticæ*. 2. Then follow thoſe called *Cottiæ*, from *Cottius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: And 3. thoſe named *Graiæ*, from the paſſage of *Hercules* and his *Græcian* Followers; of which, both amongſt the Poets and Hiſtorians, there is very good evidence. 4. After we come to the *Pœninæ*, ſo named from the march of *Annibal* and his *Carthaginians*, whom the *Latin* Writers call by the name of *Pœni*; or from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, worſhipped by the *Veragri*, the Inhabitants of it. 5. Next come we to the *Lepontiæ*, ſo named from *Lepontii*, who did there inhabit: As 6. the *Rhæticæ*, which lye next to them, from the *Rhæti*, once a powerful people of that mountainous tract. 7. Then follow thoſe called *Juliæ*, from the paſſage of *Julius Cæſar* over them, in his march towards *Gaul*: and ſo at laſt we come unto thoſe called *Carnicæ*, extending to the ſhores of the *Adriatick*, denominated from the *Carni* who did here inhabit, and who gave name alſo to *Carniola*, an adjoining Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe mountainous Countries, beſides the *Allobroges*, *Veragri*, *Lepontii*, *Rhæti*, and *Carni*, ſpoken of before; were the *Sedani*, *Salii*, *Valenſes*, *Vacontii*, and divers others of leſs note and eſtimation: all vanquiſhed by the indefatigable induſtry of the *Romans*. After whoſe ſubjugation, and the ſetlement of the *Roman* Empire, theſe Mountains, and ſome part of the Vales adjoining, made five ſeveral Provinces; *viz.* The Province of the *Cottian Alpes*, containing *Walliſland*, and *Piemont*. Secondly, of *Rhætia Prima*, comprehending the *Griſons*, and part of the Dukedom of *Millain*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Switzers*; both which were members of the Dioceſe of *Italy*. Thirdly, of the *Alpes Maritimæ*, now part of *Daulphine* and *Provence*. Fourthly, of the *Graiæ* and *Pœninæ Alpes*, and the greateſt part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, including ſome part of *Savoy*, and moſt part of *Switzerland*; both which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Gaul*. And fifthly, of *Noricum Mediterraneum*; comprehending *Carniola*, *Carinthia*, and the parts near hand; which were members of the *Dioceſe* of *Illyricum Occidentale*. The people anciently, as now, by reaſon of their drinking Snow-water, diſſolving from the tops of the Hills, and ſometimes falling thence with as great a violence as the *Cataracts* of *Nilus* are ſaid to do; were generally troubled with a ſwelling in the throat, which the *Latines* call *Struma*: being the ſame with that which we call the *Kings-Evil*; becauſe by ſpecial priviledge curable by the Kings of *France* and *England*. *Quis tumidum guttur miratur in Alpibus?* as the Poet hath it.

Of theſe vaſt Hills, the loweſt are the *Carnicæ* and *Maritimæ*, lying neareſt to the ſeveral Seas before remembred: The *Cottiæ* and the *Graiæ* not ſo high, but that the paſſages lie open for the moſt part of the year. The reſt, by reaſon of their deep and dreadful *præcipices*, their tedious and ſteep aſcents, narrow ways, dangerous craggy Rocks, fierce whirlwinds, and huge balls of ſnow, tumbling with an incredible violence from the tops of the Mountains; are hardly paſſable by Horſe, not at all by Waggon. And yet amongſt theſe dreadful hills, there are obſerved to be ſome Vallies of great fertility, not giving ground for fruitfulneſs to the beſt in *Europe*; and for the ſweetneſs of the temperature going much beyond them. With ſuch an equal hand, doth the heavenly Providence diſpenſe the benefits of Nature to his whole Creation; that plenty bordereth upon want, and pain on pleaſure.

And yet for all the Difficulty and Danger of theſe *Alpine* Paſſages, Covetouſneſs, or Curioſity, or Deſire of Conqueſt, have found a way to make them paſſable in many places; and that not only for private and particular Paſſengers, but for vaſt Multitudes and numerous Armies, ſuch as thoſe led by *Annibal* and *Julius Cæſar*. But eſpecially the barbarous people found out five ways to break into *Italy*, which have been ſince much travelled by divers Nations; of which three be out of *France*, and two out of *Germany*. The firſt from *France* is through *Provence*, and ſo cloſe to the *Liguſtick Seas*; eaſieſt for private Paſſengers, but too ſtrait and narrow for great Armies: there being many paſſages in the Country of *Nizze*, ſo narrow, that ten men may make head againſt ten thouſand; as in that called the *Pace* of the *Virgin* for one. The ſecond is over the Hills called *Gencure*, into the Marquiſate of *Saluzzes*, and ſo to the other parts of *Lombardy*; which was the way that *Charles* the eighth marched towards *Naples*, and by the *Italians*, is commonly *Strada Romana*, becauſe the ordinary Paſſage betwixt *France* and *Rome*. The third way is over the greater *Cenis*, (which ſome call the leſſer St. *Barnard*) ſo to *Aoſt*, or *Turin*; which (if we may believe Antiquity)

was

was first opened by *Hercules*, and after followed by *Annibal*: who found the Passages so closed up, that he was forced to break his way (as *Plutarch* telleth us) with Fire and Vinegar; whence that so memorable a saying, *Viam* Annibal, *aut inveniet, aut faciet*. From the passage of those Worthies, this Tract, and that adjoining were called *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*. Or if (as others think) *Annibal* took the former way, and came directly upon *Turin*, which Town it is most certain that he took in his march; then these *Pœninæ* must take name from the Passage of *Asdrubal*, or of some part of *Annibal*'s Army, which probably was too great to go all one way: or else from the Mountain-God *Pœninus*, as before was said.

The first way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of the *Grisons*, by the *Valtolin*, which the *Spaniard* seized into his hands. So that by the keeping of the *Veltlyn*, or *Valtolin*, and manning of the Fort *Fuentes*, which he also erected; he was in a manner the Lord of this Passage: not only to the discontent of the Natives, but to the distast of his neighbours the *Savoyards* and *Venetians*. The other way out of *Germany* into *Italy*, is through the Country of *Tirolis*, by the Towns of *Inspruch*, and *Trent*. This passage is commanded by the Castle and Fort of *Eresberg*, seated on the Confines of this Country towards *Suevia*, and from *Inspruch*, is two days journey distant. Which Fort, in the War which the *Protestant* Princes made against *Charles* the fifth was surprized by Captain *Scherteline*, so to hinder the coming of the Pope's Forces into *Germany*: for which the Emperour so hated him, that when all the rest of that Faction were pardoned, he only continued a *Proscript*, his head being valued at 4000 Crowns. The taking also of this Fort, and the Castle adjoining, by D. *Maurice* of *Saxony*, made the said *Charles* then being in *Inspruch*, to fly out of *Germany*; and shortly after to resign his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

Out of these Mountains rise the Springs of many of the most Renowned Rivers in these West parts of the World; as, 1. The *Rhene*, which springeth from two several Fountains, the one which they call the *Nearer Rhine*, out of the *Lepontiæ*; and the other which they term the *Vorder*, or further *Rhine*, out of the *Rheticæ*; which meet together about a *Dutch* mile from *Chur* the chief Town of the *Grisons*, and so go on by *Constance* to *Germany*. 2. *Rhosne*, which riseth in that part of the *Lepontiæ*, which is called *Die Furchen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Nearer* or *Hinder Rhine*, and so through *Wallisland* into *France*. 3. *Padus*, or *Po*, which hath his head in a branch of the *Cottian* or *Coctian Alpes*, heretofore called *Mons Vesulus*, and so through *Piemont* into *Italy*. Out of them also spring the Rivers of *Russe*, *Durance*, and *Athesis*, the first a *Dutch*, the second a *French*, and the third an *Italian* River also; not to say any thing of others of inferiour note. The great Lakes which are found in this mountainous Tract, we shall hereafter meet with in their proper places.

Let us next look upon the Countries and Estates here situate, which bordering upon *Italy*, *France*, and *Germany*, and partaking somewhat of them all, do belong to neither; but reckon themselves to be free and absolute Estates, Supreme, and independent upon any others, as indeed they are. Such other of these *Alpine* Countries, which are under the command of the *German* Princes, as some parts of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria*, together with *Tirol*, *Carniola*, and the rest which belong to *Austria*, shall be considered in the History of those States and Princes, to which of right they do belong. But for the rest, which as they lye entire together without intermixture, so they are absolute in themselves, and owe nor suit nor service unto any other, we will consider them in this place, under the name of the *Alpes*, or the *Alpine* Provinces.

The *ALPES* then, or the *Alpine Provinces*, call them which you will, are bound on the East with *Tirol* in *Germany*, and the Dukedoms of *Millain* and *Monferrat* in *Italy*; on the West with *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and *La Bresse*, parts of the Continent of *France*, on the North with the County of *Burgundy* in *France*, and *Suevia* or *Schawben* in *High Germany*; and on the South, with *Lombardy*, and a branch of the *Mediterranean* Sea. Called in the middle times by the name of *Burgundia Transjurana*, because it contained that part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, which lay beyond the Mountain *Jour*. A Mountain which beginning near the City of *Basil*, and not far from the *Rhine*, passeth South-westward by the Lakes of *Bieler-Zee*, *Newenburger-Zee*, and that called *Lemane*, till it come almost unto the *Rhosne*: dividing by that means the Provinces of *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, from the County of *Burgundy*.

It lieth under the sixth Climate, and some part of the seventh, so that the longest day in Summer is fifteen hours, and three quarters. Of different nature in regard both of Soyl and People; which will best shew it self in the survey of the several Provinces, into which divided; that is to say, 1. the Dukedom of *Savoy*, 2. the Signeury of *Geneva*; 3. the Resorts of *Wallisland*, 4. the *Cantons* of the *Switzers*, and 5. the Leagues of the *Grisons*. Which several States, though they be reckoned to belong to the *German Empire*, and that the Bishops of *Chur*, *Sion*, and *Basil* are generally accounted for Princes of it: yet they neither come unto the *Diets*, nor are subject to the publick Taxes, nor comprehended within any of those ten Circles into which the Empire is divided.

The Language herein spoken, partakes somewhat of all three, as before was said: the *French* being wholly spoke in *Savoy*, the lower *Wallisland*, and generally by the *Switzers*, bordering on the Lake *Lemane*; the *Dutch* being common to the greatest part of the *Switzers*, the *Grisons* about *Chur*, and the upper *Wallisland*: and finally the *Italian*, used by the generality of the *Grisons*, the Præfectures appertaining unto them and the *Switzers* both in *Piemont*, and those parts of *Savoy* which lie next unto it.

The principal Souldiers of these mountainous Provinces, 1. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habspurg*, the Founder of the present *Austrian* Family. 2. *Thomas*, and 3. *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, this last sur-named *Charlemain* the second. 4. *Emanuel Philibert*, one of the later Dukes hereof Commander of the Armies of the King of *Spain*. 5. *John Tzerclas*, commonly called Count *Tilly*, General of the Imperial Armies in the War of *Germany*. For Scholars of more special note for which we are beholding to these Countries, we have 1. *Philip Theophrastus Bombastus à Boenham*, commonly called *Paracelsus*, the Author, or *Instaurator* of *Chymical* Physick; born in the Mountains of *Helvetia*, as he saith himself: a man of most prodigious parts, and of no mean vices. 2. *Zuinglius* one of the chief Agents in the Reformation. 3. *Musculus*, and 4. *Oecolampadius*, two Divines, his seconds. 5. *Henry Bullinger*, one of the same profession also. 6. *Sebastian Castalio*, of as much learning as the best of them, though of different judgment. 7. *Dan. Tossanus* the *Hebrician*. To which we may add 8. *Calvin* also, who though he had his birth in *France*, had his being here; and never grew to any eminency in Fame or Learning, till he was setled in *Geneva*.

For matter of *Religion*, it is of a very mixt condition also, in all these Countries: that of the *Romish* only having publick countenance in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and *Piemont*; but so that the Reformed is tolerated in some parts thereof, especially in the next parts *Daul-*

phine, to which the neighbourhood of *Geneva* gives a great encreaſe. In *Switzerland* there are four *Cantons* which are wholly for the *Reformation*, *viz.* *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Baſil*, and *Schaffhauſen*: Seven that ſtand wholly for the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*, i.e. *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Friburg*, and *Solothurn*: in *Apenzel*, and *Glaris*, they allow of both. The *Griſons* are confuſedly divided betwixt both Religions; but the *Italian* Prælectures admit no other but the *Romiſh*. The cauſe of which diviſion came upon the preaching of *Zuinglius*, a *Canon* of the Church of *Zurich*: who being animated with *Luther's* good ſucceſs in *Germany*, began about the year 1519 to preach againſt the *Maſs*, and *Images*, and other the corruptions of the Church of *Rome*. In which his party ſo increaſed, that on a publick Diſputation which was held at *Zurich*, the *Maſs* was abrogated in that *Canton* by the authority of the Senate, *Anno* 1526, and *Images* deſtroyed at *Bern*, 1528. After which proſperous beginnings, the *Reformation* began to ſpread it ſelf amongſt the *Confederates*, and had prevailed further both in *France* and *Germany*, but for a difference which aroſe betwixt him and *Luther* about the Sacrament of the Supper: in which *Luther* did not only maintain a *real Preſence*, but a *Conſubſtantiation* alſo in the ſacred Elements; which *Zuinglius* maintained to be only a bare ſign and repreſentation of Chriſts bleſſed body. For reconciling this difference, wherein the enemies of both did extreamly triumph; a conference was held between them at *Marſpurg*, a Town of *Haſſia*, by the procurement of that *Lantgrave*, but without ſucceſs: *Luther* profeſſing that he durſt not agree in that point with *Zuinglius*, *Ne principes ſuos interpretatione tantopere* Pontificiis *exoſa*, *magis inviſos redderet*; for fear of drawing too great hatred on the Princes of his own profeſſion. From this time forwards all brake out into open flames, the names of *Ubiquitarians*, and *Sacramentarians*, being reciprocally caſt upon one another; to the great hinderance of the cauſe which they had in hand: yet ſo that the *Lutheran* opinions got ground in *Germany*, the *Zuinglians* amongſt theſe Mountains, and in *France* it ſelf; and finally prevailed by the means of *Calvin* in many parts in *Germany* alſo. But hereof more hereafter in convenient place.

As for the ſtory of thoſe Countries, before they were divided into ſo many hands, we are to know that the old Inhabitants hereof (mentioned before) were conquered ſeverally by the *Romans*: as ſhall be ſhewn in the deſcription of the ſeveral Provinces. Won from the *Romans* by the *Burgundians*, in the time of *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, they became a member of their Kingdom; except the Country of the *Griſons*, and ſome parts of *Switzerland*, which fell under the *Almans*: united afterwards in the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, of the *French* erection, when ſubdued by that Nation. But *Charles* the *Bald*, the laſt of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, having united it to the Kingdom of *France*, divided that Kingdom into three Eſtates; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, and the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. This laſt, containing the greateſt part of all theſe *Alpine* Provinces (except *Piemont* only) was by the ſaid *Charles* given to *Conrade* a *Saxon* Prince, the Son of *Witikind* the Third, and younger Brother of *Robert*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*; by the name of Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane* or *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*. *Rodolph* his Son and Succeſſor, by *Eudes* the King of *France*, his Couſin German, was honoured with the title of King: to make him equal at the leaſt, with *Boſon* Earl of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soaſne*, whom *Charles* the *Groſs*, about the ſame time had made King of *Arles*. But *Rodolph* finding it offenſive to the *German* Emperors, abandoned it on the death of *Eudes*, and took to himſelf the title of Duke. The reſidue of the ſtory we ſhall have in the following Catalogue of

The Earls, Dukes, and Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*.

1 *Conrade* the firſt Earl of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
890 2 *Rodolph*, Earl, King, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
912 3 *Rodolph* II. elected King of *Italy* againſt *Berengarius*; which title he exchanged with *Hugh de Arles*, who was choſen by another Faction, for the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*; on the aſſuming of which Crown, he reſigned this Dukedom to his Brother *Boſon*.
4 *Boſon* the Brother of *Rodolph* the Second, ſucceeded his Brother in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*; as afterwards he ſucceeded *Rodolph*, his Brothers Son, in the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.
965 5 *Conrade* II. Son of *Boſon*, King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, and Duke of *Burgundy Transjurane*.
690 6 *Rodolph* III. Son of *Conrade*, who dying without iſſue, left his Eſtates to *Henry* ſurnamed the *Black*, the Son of his Siſter *Giſela*, by *Conrade* the Second; Emperour and King of *Germany*: united ſo unto the Empire, till by the bounty and improvidence of ſome following Emperours, it was cantoned into many parts; of which more anon.

It is now time to lay aſide this diſcourſe as to the general condition and affairs of theſe *Alpine* Provinces; and to look over the particulars: beginning firſt with the Eſtate of the Duke of *Savoy*, ſituate wholly in the Mountains, and lying next to *Italy*, where before we left.

The Dukedom of SAVOY.

THE Dukedom of *SAVOY* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Millain* and *Montferrat* in *Italy*; on the Weſt, with *Dauphine* in *France*; on the North, with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*; and on the South, with *Provence*, and the *Mediterranean*. The Country of ſo different nature, that it cannot be reduced under any one character: and therefore we muſt look upon it in the ſeveral parts into which divided; that is to ſay, 1. the *Principality* of *Piemont*, and 2. *Savoy*, eſpecially ſo called.

1. *PIEMONT*, in *Latin* called *Regio Pedemontana*, becauſe ſituate at the foot of the Mountains (as the name in both Languages imports) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Millain*, and *Montferrat*; on the Weſt, with *Savoy*, on the North with the *Switzers*; and on the South, it runneth in a narrow Valley to the *Mediterranean*, having *Montferrat* on the one ſide, *Provence* and a part of the *Alpes* upon the other. The Country wonderfully fertile compared with *Switzerland*, and *Savoy*, which lie next unto it; but thought to be inferiour to the reſt of *Italy*. It containeth, beſides Baronies, and Lordſhips, 15 Marquiſates, 52 Earldoms, 160 Caſtles or walled places: and is ſo populous withal, that once a *Piemonteſe* being demanded the extent of his Country, made anſwer, that it was *a City of three hundred miles in compaſs*.

The

The principal Cities of it are, 1. *Turin*, called of old *Augusta Taurinorum*, because the head City of the *Taurini*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract: from which *Taurini*, it deriveth the name of *Turin*, and not as some conceive from the River *Duria*, on whose banks it standeth. In this City is the Court and Palace of the Duke of *Savoy* (who is the Lord of this Country), the See of an Archbishop, and an University, in which the renowned Scholar *Erasmus* took his degrees in Divinity. It is situate on the River *Po*, in a place very important for the guard of *Italy*; for which cause the *Romans* sent a Colony hither, and the *Lombards* made it one of their four Dukedoms. Adjoining to it is a Park of the Dukes of *Savoy*, watered with the *Duria*, *Sture*, and *Po*, six miles in circuit, full of Woods, Lakes, and pleasant Fountains; which make it one of the sweetest situations in *Europe*. 2. *Mondeni*, seated on the swelling of a little hill, with very fair Suburbs round about it; in one of which the Dukes of *Savoy* built a Church and Chappel to the blessed Virgin; intended for the burial place of the Dukal Family. It is the best peopled Town, for the bigness of it, of any in *Italy*. 3. *Augusta Prætoria*, now called *Aost*, situate in the furthest corner of *Italy* to the North and West. 4. *Vercelli*, a strong Town bordering upon *Millain*, to which it formerly belonged; and was given first in Dower with *Blanch* the Daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, to *Amadee* the third Duke of *Savoy*; anciently the chief Town of the *Libyci*, who together with the *Salassi* and *Taurini*, were the old Inhabitants of this Country. 5. *Inuria* called by *Ptolomy Eporedia*, situate at the very jaws of the *Alpes*, an Episcopal City. 6. *Nicæa*, or *Nizze*, an Haven on the *Mediterranean*, at the influx of the River *Varus*, which divides it from *Provence*; beautified with a Cathedral Church, the Bishops Palace, a Monastery of Nuns, and an impregnable Citadel. A place so naturally strong, that when as yet the Fortifications were imperfect, it resisted the whole Forces of *Barbarossa* the *Turkish* Admiral, *An.* 1543, lying before it with a Navy of two hundred sail, and battering it continually with incredible fury. First fortified by Duke *Charles*, upon occasion of some words of the Duke of *Burbon*, who passing this way with his Army, *Behold*, saith he, *a situation of which they know not the importance*: the Citadel being after added by *Emanuel Philibert*, and garrisoned for the most part with 400 Souldiers. 7. *Suse*, seated in the ordinary thorough-fare betwixt *France* and *Italy*, called of old *Segovio*; and honoured in those times with a stately Sepulchre of King *Coëlius*, a King of the *Allobroges*: one of the seven Marquisates in the middle times erected by the Emperour *Otho*. 8. *Pignarolle*, fortified with a Castle of great importance, which commandeth all the adjoining Vallies, sold by Duke *Charles Emanuel* to *Lewis* the 13. of *France*, together with the Fort and Vally of *Perousa*, (and in them both to the number of ten or twelve Towns and Villages) for the sum of 494000 Crowns, to be for ever in the propriety and Soveraignty of the Kings of *France*; and thereby giving to the *French* commodious pass from *Daulphine* into *Italy* upon all occasions, and no small influence and command on his own Estates. 9. *Quiers*, adorned with many goodly Churches, fair Convents, and noble Families. 10. *Ville Franche*, a place of great strength, more towards the Sea. 11. *Savillan*, seated in so pleasant a Country, that Duke *Emanuel Philibert* had once a purpose to setle his abode in it, and make it the chief of his Estate. 12. *Busque*, a Marquisate, another of the seven erected for the Sons of *Waleran*. 13. Hereunto we may add the City of *Ast* (though properly within the limits of *Montferrat*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*; and now to be compared, for the greatness and beauty of her Palaces, to the most stately Cities of *Lombardy*; situate betwixt the two Rivers of *Po* and *Tenarus*, very rich and populous.

Here is also in this Country the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, (of the same erection as the former, but a greater Estate) the cause of so many differences betwixt *France* and *Savoy*. The principal Town whereof is called also *Saluzze* (from the *Salassi* questionless who dwelt hereabouts) seated about the Spring of the River *Po*: reasonably big, and fortified with a very large Castle, fitted with rooms for all uses, and for every season. 2. *Carmanvogla*, which gave name to that famous Captain who carried so great a sway in the Wars of *Italy*. A Town so fortified and stored with all sorts of Ammunition, that it is thought impregnable. 3. *Ravelle*, a well fortified place. 4. *Doglian*, the thorow-fare for the greatest part of the Trade which is driven betwixt *Piemont*, and the River of *Genoa*. The Arms hereof *Argent*, a Chief *Gules*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Salassi*, *Libyci*, and *Taurini*, as before is said, all vanquished by the *Romans*, and their Country made a Province of that Empire, by the name of the Province of *Alpes Cottiæ*, in the time of *Nero*; of which *Genoa* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. The present are descended, for the most part, of the *Heruli*, who under the Conduct of *Odoacer* conquered *Italy*; whereof he was proclaimed King by the *Romans* themselves, but *Odoacer* being vanquished near *Verona*, by *Theodorick* King of the *Goths*, the *Heruli* had this Country allotted to them by the Conquerour for their habitation. They had not held it long when subdued by the *Lombards*, of whose Kingdom it remained a part, till given by *Aripert* the seventeenth King of the *Lombards*, to the Church of *Rome*; affirmed by some to be the first *temporal* Estate that ever the Popes of *Rome* had possession of. But lying far off, and the donation not confirmed by the Kings succeeding, the Popes got little by the gift: so that in the subverting of the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, it was at the devotion of the Kings of *Italy*; of the house of *Charles* the Great: and afterwards of his Successors in the Empire, by whom distracted into several Estates and Principalities; *Thomas* and *Peter*, Earls of *Savoy*, made themselves Masters of the greatest part of it, by force of Arms: the former in the year 1210, the latter in the year 1256. Since that time the first Son of *Savoy* is stiled Prince of *Piemont*. The Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was added by the marriage of a daughter of this Marquisate, with *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*, *An.* 1481. Of which marriage though there was no issue, yet the *Savoyards* always held it as their own; till the *French* upon as good a title possessed themselves of it: Recovered by the *Savoyard*, *An.* 1588, the Civil Wars then hot in *France*. But finding that he was not able to hold it against *Henry* the fourth (who looked upon it as a door to let his Forces into *Italy*) he compounded with him, *An.* 1600, the Country of *Bresse* being given in exchange for his Marquisate: Of which, together with the residue of *Piemont*, and some pieces of importance in the Dukedom of *Montferrat*, that noble Family of *Savoy* doth now stand possessed.

The Arms of this Principality are *Gules*, a Cross *Argent*, charged with a Label of three points *Azure*.

2. *SAVOY*, strictly and specially so called, is bounded on the East with *Wallisland*, and part of *Piemont*; on the West, with *Daulphine*, and *La Bresse*; on the South, with some parts of *Daulphine* only; and on the North with *Switzerland*, and the Lake of *Geneva*.

The Country is for the most part hilly and Mountainous,

tainous, overspread with the branches of the *Alpes*, healthy enough, as commonly all Hill Countries are, but not very fruitful, except some of vallies which lie nearest to the Western Sun, and the plain tract about the *Lemanian* Lake, lying towards *Geneva*. By reason of the difficult and narrow ways, and those full of Thieves, it was once called *Malvoy*: but the passages being opened by the cost and industry of the people, and purged of Thieves by good Laws and exemplary Justice, it gained the name of *Savoy*, or *Salvoy*, *quasi salva via*: as *Maleventum*, a Town of the Realm of *Naples*, on the like considerations got the name of *Benevent*. By the *Latines* of these later times it is called *Sabaudia*, a name not known to any of the ancient Writers; who knew it by no other name than that of the *Allobroges*, or *Allobrogum Regio*.

The common people are naturally very dull and simple, so gross of understanding for all their continual converse with other Nations, who take this Country in their way to *Italy*; that they believe the Duke of *Savoy* to be the greatest Prince in the World: and so unwarlike, that a few men of another Nation well trained and disciplined, will make a great number of them flie. But on the other side, the Gentry are of a very pleasing conversation, civil, ingenious, and affecting all good exercise: so as there may be daily seen in *Chambery* as much good company, and as well appointed and behaved, as in many of the best Towns of *France* or *Italy*. The number of both sorts (taking in *Piemont* who are not interessed in the first place of this character) are thought to be 800000.

The chief Cities are, 1. *Chambery*, situate on the banks of the River *L'Arch*, in a very pleasant Valley, compassed round with Mountains; the principal of the Dukedom on that side of the *Alpes*: honoured with the Dukes Court when he resideth in this Country, the ordinary seat of Justice, and many neat houses which belong to the Gentry, fortified of late with a strong Castle and sufficient Outworks; but not recovered of the damage it received, *Anno* 1600, when it was forced by King *Henry* the fourth of *France*, in his Wars with *Savoy*. 2. *Tarentaise*, an Archbishops See, situate in the midst of the Mountains; heretofore the *Metropolis* of the Province of the *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*, and called by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Centronum*, from the *Centrones* who inhabited about this Tract. 3. *Lunebourg*, in the Country of the old *Medulli*; betwixt which and *Suse*, a Town of *Piemont*, lyeth the most ordinary road betwixt *France* and *Italy*. 4. *Aque belle*, situate at the foot of a craggy Rock. 5. *Rapaille*, a sweet and fruitful situation, on the South-side of the Lake *Lemanus*, the chief Town of the Signeury of *Fossigney*: where *Amadee* the first Duke of *Savoy*, having given over his Estate, lived a Monastick life, and was thence chosen Pope by the Fathers at *Basil*, *An.* 1440. 6. *Nun* or *Nevidum* (by some of the old *Latins* called *Noviodunum*) an ancient City, laid desolate in or before the time of *Julius Cæsar*, repaired again in the Empire of *Vespasian*; the Seat of late times of the Bishops of *Geneva*, since their expulsion out of that City. 7. *Bele*, on the *Rhodanus*, or *Rhosne*. 8. *Albon*, founded about the year 456. 9. *Conflans*, fortified by the late Dukes of *Savoy*, but otherwise of small importance. 10. *Annunciada*, not much observable, but for being the seat or place of Solemnities, for an order of Knights called by that name. 11. *Maurienne*, or St. *John de Maurienne*, an Archbishops See, situate in a Valley of the *Alpes* so called; the chief City of the old *Medulli*, who dwelt hereabouts; from whence the Princes of this house were first entituled Earls of *Maurienne* only. 12. *Charboneers*, a well fortified place. Here is also the strong Town and Fort of *Montmelian*, which held out four Months against *Henry* the fourth, and many thousand shot of *French* Cannon, *An.* 1600, and the impregnable Fortress of St. *Catharines*, which yet submitted to that King; the Government whereof being denyed to the Duke *Byron*, plunged him in discontent and Treason, to the loss of his head.

The many Tribes in and about this Mountainous Country, of which we have mentioned some before, pass generally in most ancient Writers, by the name of *Allobroges*; because the most powerful of them all. Of whom the first mention which we find in story, is the Atonement made by *Hannibal* in his passage this way, between *Brancus* and his Brother, about the succession of the Kingdom. Afterwards siding with the *Salii* a *Gallick* Nation, in a War against *Marseilles*, then a confederate of the *Romans*, they drew that people on their backs: by whom they were in fine subdued, with the loss of no less than 120000 *Galls*, under the several conducts of *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, and *Qu. Fabius Maximus*: by which last, *Bituitus*, or *Bitultus* King of the *Auverni*, one of the Confederates, was led in triumph unto *Rome*. The Country and people at that time were much alike, *Cœlum atrox perviaci ingenio*, a sharp air, and a stubborn people, as it is in *Florus*: not without commendation in the following Ages, for discovering *Catilines* conspiracy, by which the whole *Roman* State was in danger of ruine. After which we find *Coctius* one of the Kings of these *Allobroges* to have been in special favour with *Augustus Cæsar*: affirmed to be the Founder of twelve Cities in this mountainous Tract, whence it had the name of *Alpes Coctiæ*; and by that name reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Nero*. In the declining of that Empire, this Province became a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and passed, with other rights of that falling Kingdom, to the Emperors of *Germany*, by the gift of *Rodolph* the last King. To them it did continue subject till the year 999, in which *Berald* of *Saxony*, Son of *Hugh* of *Saxony* (which *Hugh* was Son of *Otho*, and Brother to *Otho* the third) for killing *Mary* the lascivious Wife of his Unkle, fled from *Germany*; and setled himself here, near *France*. His Son *Humbert*, (surnamed *Blanchmanis*, that is *Whitehand*) was by the special favour of the Emperor *Conradus Salicus*, made Earl of *Maurienne*; which is a Town of this Country, *An.* 1027. And by this Marriage with *Adela*, the Daughter and Heir of the Marques of *Suse*, added that noble Marquisate (one of the seven erected by *Otho* the second, and given amongst the Sons of *Waleran*) unto his Estate. *Humbert* the second gained by Conquest the Town and Territory of *Tarentaise*; as *Ame*, or *Amadee* the third, did the Counties of *Vaulx*, and *Chablais*, *Anno* 1240, or thereabouts. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the fourth, by the Marriage of *Sibille* Daughter and sole Heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse*, added that Earldom to his house: as *Ame* or *Amadee* the Ninth, did the Town and Territory of *Vercelli*, upon the contract betwixt *Philibert* his Son and Successor, with *Blanch* the base daughter of *Philip Maria* Duke of *Millain*, who afterwards was married unto *Francis Sforza*. *Ame*, or *Amadee* the second Earl of *Maurienne* was by the Emperor *Henry* the Fifth, invested with the title of Earl of *Savoy*; and *Amadee* the eighth, created the first Duke, by the Emperor *Sigismund*, *An.* 1397. But the main improvement of the power and patrimony of this House, came by the valour and good success of the two Earls, *Thomas*, who in the year 1210, and *Peter* one of his Sons and Successors (for his manifold Conquests, surnamed *Charlemain* the *Junior*) *An.* 1256, by conquest got a great part of *Piedmont*; to which the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, containing almost all the rest, was united by a marriage of the daughter of the Marquisate, to *Charles*

Duke

Duke of *Savoy*: and though he dyed without iſſue by her, *An.* 1489. yet his Succeſſors ſtill kept the poſſeſſion of it, till *Francis* the Firſt, pretending ſome title to it in the right of his Mother (a Daughter of the Houſe of *Savoy*) laid it unto the Crown of *France*; from which it was again recovered by the *Savoyard*, during the *French* Civil Wars, *An.* 1588, and now is peaceably poſſeſſed. The Country of *Breſſe* being given to the *French*, for their pretenſion to this Marquiſate, *An.* 1600. Theſe Dukes of *Savoy* have a long time been devoted to the Faction of *Spain*, eſpecially ſince the *French* Kings took in the leſſer States bordering on them, as *Burgundy*, *Bretagne*, *&c.* *Charles* the third ſided ſo conſtantly with the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, that denying *Francis* the Firſt a paſſage for his Army through the Country into *Italy*; he was by the ſaid King deſpoiled of his Eſtates, *An.* 1536. The Emperour to recover it left nothing undone, but in vain; for the *French* encountring his force in the open field, vanquiſhed them, with the ſlaughter of fifteen thouſand of his men. In the year 1558, peace being made between *Henry* and *Philip*, Succeſſors to thoſe great Princes: *Emanuel Philibert*, Son to Duke *Charles*, was reſtored to all his Rights. His Son and Succeſſor having married *Katherine* the Daughter of King *Philip* the Second, depended wholly upon *Spain*, notwithſtanding many quarrels which did grow betwixt them; his Sons receiving thence many great penſions and preferments. For at the ſame time, Prince *Amadee Victorio* the ſecond Son, during the life of *Philip* his elder Brother, was chief Commander of that King's Gallies; and had in penſion a hundred thouſand Crowns *per annum*; *Philibert* the third Son, was Vice-roy of *Sicil*: *Maurice* the Fourth a Cardinal, had a moity of the Revenues of the Arch-Biſhoprick of *Toledo*; and *Don Thomaza*, though then young, had his penſions alſo. But *Amadee Victorio*, who ſucceeded him, marrying Madam *Chriſtiane*, a daughter of King *Henry* the Fourth of *France*, changed his dependences; and held more cloſe to *France* than any of his Predeceſſors: but whether to the hurt or benefit of his Eſtates, future times will ſhew. For leaving his Heir a *Minor*, in the hands of his Mother, the *French* upon pretence of preſerving the Country for him, againſt the incroachments of the *Spaniard*, have made themſelves Maſters of the greateſt parts of it: which when they will reſtore to the proper owner, is beyond my cunning to determine. But now behold the Catalogue of the

Earls and Dukes of *Savoy*.

999	1	*Beral* of *Saxony*.
1027	2	*Humbert*, the firſt Earl of *Maurienne*.
1048	3	*Ame*, or *Amadee* I.
1076	4	*Humbert* II.
1109	5	*Ame*, or *Amadee* II. the firſt Earl of *Savoy*.
1154	6	*Humbert* III.
1201	7	*Thomas*, Son of *Humbert*.
1234	8	*Ame*, or *Amadee* III.
1246	9	*Boniface*, Son of *Ame* III.
1256	10	*Peter*, a young Son of Earl *Thomas*, called *Charlemagne* the *leſs*.
1268	11	*Philip*, Brother of *Peter*,
1285	12	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IV. Nephew of *Thomas* the 7. Earl, by a Son named *Thomas*.
1323	13	*Edward*, Son of *Ame* IV.
1329	14	*Ame*, or *Amadee* V. the Brother of *Edward*.
1342	15	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VI.
1385	16	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VII.
1397	17	*Ame*, or *Amadee* VIII. the firſt Duke of *Savoy*:
1434	28	*Lewis*, Son of *Ame* VIII.
1491	19	*Ame*, or *Amadee* IX.
1475	20	*Philibert*, Son of *Ame* 9th.
1481	21	*Charles*, Brother of *Philibert*.
1489	22	*Charles* II.
1495	23	*Philip* II. Son of *Lewis*, the ſecond Duke.
1496	24	*Philibert* II.
1504	25	*Charles* III. the Brother of *Philibert*, outed of his Eſtate by King *Francis* the Firſt.
1559	26	*Emanuel Philibert*, reſtored upon his Marriage with *Margaret* the Daughter of King *Francis* the Firſt, made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Mary*.
1580	27	*Charles Emanuel*.
	28	*Ame* X. called alſo *Amadee Victorio*, Son of *Charles Emanuel*, married *Chriſtiane* the Daughter of King *Henry* the Fourth.
1637	29	*Charles Emanuel* II. Son of *Amadee Victor*. or *Ame* the Tenth, at the age of three years ſucceeded his Father.

The Forces of this Duke conſiſt eſpecially in his Forts and Garriſons, whereof he hath good ſtore in *Savoy*, and *Piemont*, well fortified and plentifully furniſhed with all manner of Ammunition. And it concerneth him ſo to have, conſidering, what dangerous neighbours he hath near him, and that his Country is a continual thorow-fare, for the Armies both of *France* and *Spain*, upon all occaſions. Nor doth it leſs conduce to his preſervation, that he hath ſo many retreats of natural ſtrength, as are not eaſily acceſſible by a conquering Army: of which laſt ſort is, amongſt many others, the Valley of *Aoſt* (which ſome reckon for a part of *Savoy*, and ſome of *Piemont*) ſo ſtrong by reaſon of the narrow entries, the uneaſie paſſages, and the great multitudes of the people which inhabit in it; that thoſe who have made themſelves Maſters of the reſt of the Country, durſt never attempt it. And of the firſt, beſides thoſe formerly deſcribed, is the Town of *Nizze*, ſo fortified and flanked upon all acceſſes, that it ſeems rather to be an aſſembly of Forts, than a ſingle Fortreſs. Out of which Garriſons, the Duke is able to draw great Forces for preſent ſervice; beſides the readineſs of the *Piemonteſe* upon all occaſions, which are for the moſt part given to Arms.

The ordinary Revenue of this Dukedom (taking *Piemont*) are ſaid to be above a Million of Crowns *per annum*. But his extraordinary is ſo great, that Duke *Charles Emanuel*, during his Wars with *Henry* the fourth, in a very few years drew out of *Piemont* only 11 Millions of Crowns; beſides the charge which they were put to in quartering of Soldiers. By which it may appear, that the Dukes are not like to want money to ſerve their turns, when they ſhall deſire it of the Subject; and yet not charge them more than they are able to bear.

The only Order of Knighthood in this Duke's Eſtate is that of the *Annunciada* ordained by *Amadee* the firſt Duke, at what time he defended *Rhodes* from the *Turks*, *An.* 1409. Their Collar is of fifteen Links, to ſhew the fifteen myſteries of the Virgin: at the end is the portraiture of our Lady, with the hiſtory of the *Annunciation*. Inſtead of a Motto, theſe letters, *F.E.R.T.* *id eſt*, *Fortitudo Ejus Rhodum Tenuit*, are engraven in every plate or link of the Collar: each link being interwoven one within the other, in form of a True-lovers knot. The number of the Knights are fourteen, beſides the Duke, who is the Sovereign of the Order: the ſolemnity was held antiently on our *Lady-day*, in the Caſtle of Saint *Peter* in *Turin*, but of late time in the Town of *Annunciada*, from hence ſo denominated. So from this victory (for every repulſe of the beſieger, is a victory to the beſieged

ſieged) there aroſe a double effect; firſt, the inſtitution of this Order; ſecondly the aſſumption of the preſent Arms of this Dutchy, where are *G.* a Croſs *A.* This being the Croſs of Saint *John* of *Jeruſalem*, whoſe Knights at that time were owners of the *Rhodes*. Whereas before, the Arms were *Or*, an Eagle diſplayed with two heads, *Sable*, Armed *Gules* ſupporting in *Feſſe*, an Eſcotchion of *Saxony*, that is Barrewiſe ſix pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowered *Vert*. A Coat belonging to the Emperours of the houſe of *Saxony*, from whom the firſt Earls of *Savoy* did derive themſelves.

3. *The Signeury of* GENEVA.

GENEVA is a City in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, formerly ſubjects to its Biſhops, acknowledging the Dukes of *Savoy* for the Lord in chief: now reckoned as a *Free-Eſtate*, bordering cloſe upon the *Switzers*, and with them confederate; and ſo more properly within the courſe and compaſs of the *Alpine* Provinces. It is ſituate on the South-ſide of the Lake *Lemane*, oppoſite to the City of *Lozane* in the *Canton* of *Bern*, from which it is diſtant ſix *Dutch* miles: the River *Rhoſne* (having paſſed through the Lake with ſo clear a colour, that it ſeemeth not at all to mingle with the waters of it) runneth through the lower part thereof, over which there is a paſſage by two fair Bridges. This lower part is ſeated on a flat or level, the reſt on the aſcent of an Hill: the buildings fair and of Free-ſtone, well fortified on both ſides both by Art and Nature; in regard of the pretenſions of the Duke of *Savoy* (whom they ſuffer not to arm any Gallies upon the Lake) and other jealouſies of State. The compaſs of the whole City is about two miles, in which there are ſuppoſed to be about ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand ſouls. One of their Bridges is more ancient, and better fortified than the other, belonging anciently to the *Switzers* (or *Helvetians*, the old inhabitants of that tract) but broken down by *Julius Cæſar*, to hinder them from paſſing that way into *Gallia*.

The people of the Town are generally of good wits in the managery of publick buſineſs, but not very courteous towards Strangers, of whom they exact as much as may be; modeſt and thrifty in Apparel, and ſpeak for the moſt part the *Savoyard*, or worſt kind of *French*. So that the great reſort of young Gentlemen thither, is not ſo much to learn that Language (which is no where worſe taught) as out of an opinion which their Parents have, that the *Reformed Religion* is no where ſo purely practiſed and profeſſed as there. By means whereof, the *fry* or *ſeminary* of our Gentry being ſeaſoned in their youth with *Genevan* Principles; have many times proved diſaffected to the forms of Government (as well *Monarchical* as *Epiſcopal*) which they found eſtabliſhed here at home: to the great embroilment of the State, in matters of moſt near concernment. The Women are ſaid to be more chaſte (or at leaſt more reſerved) than in any other place in the World: which poſſibly may be aſcribed to that ſeverity, with which they puniſh all Offenders in that kind. Dancing by no means tolerated in publick or private; *Adultery* expiated by no leſs than death: *Fornication*, for the firſt offence with nine days faſting upon bread and water in priſon; for the ſecond, with whipping; for the third with baniſhment. But notwithſtanding this ſeverity, they make love in ſecret, and are as amorous in their dalliances, as in other places.

The Territories of it are very ſmall, extending not above two Leagues and an half from any part of the Town: but the ſoil, if well manured, bringeth Grain of all ſorts, and great ſtore of Wine. There is likewiſe plenty of paſture and feeding grounds, which furniſh the City with fleſh-meats, Butter, and Cheeſe, at very reaſonable rates: the nearneſs of the Lake affording them both Fiſh and Wild-Fowl in good meaſure, and amongſt others (as ſome ſay) the beſt *Carps* in *Europe*.

But the main improvement of this State is by the induſtry of the people, and the convenient ſituation of the City it ſelf: the City being ſituated very well for the Trade of Merchandiſe, in regard it is the ordinary paſſage, for tranſporting Commodities out of *Germany*, to the Marts at *Lyons*; and from thence back again to *Germany*, *Switzerland*, and ſome parts of *Italy*. And for the induſtry of the people, it is diſcernable in that great ſtore of Armour, and Apparel, and other Neceſſaries, brought from hence yearly by thoſe of *Bern*; and their Manufactures in Sattin, Velvet, Taffatee, and ſome quantities of Cloth, (fine, but not durable) tranſported hence yearly into other places.

The Soveraignty of this City was anciently in the Earls hereof, at firſt *Imperial Officers* only, but at laſt the hereditary Princes of it. Betwixt theſe and the Biſhops (Suffragans to the *Metropolitan* of *Vienna* in *Dauphine*) grew many quarrels for the abſolute command thereof. In fine, the Biſhops did obtain of the Emperor *Frederick* the Firſt, that they and their Succeſſors ſhould be ſole Princes of *Geneva*; free from all Taxes, and not accomptable to any but the Emperour. Which notwithſtanding, the Earls continuing ſtill to moleſt the Biſhops, they were fain to call unto their aid the Earl of *Savoy*; who took upon him firſt as Protector only, but after by degrees as the *Lord* in *Chief*. For when the rights of the Earls of *Geneva*, by the Marriage of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*, with *Beatrix* a Daughter of this Earl's, fell into that houſe; then *Ame* or *Amadee* the ſixth of that name, obtained of the Emperour *Charles* the Fourth, to be *Vicar-general* of the Emperor in his own Country, and in that right ſuperior to the Biſhop in all *Temporal* matters: and *Ame* or *Amadee* the firſt Duke, got from Pope *Martin* (to the great prejudice of the Biſhops) a grant of all the *Temporal* juriſdiction of it. After which time, the Biſhops were conſtrained to do homage to the Dukes of *Savoy*, and acknowledge them for their Soveraign Lords: the Authority of the Dukes being grown ſo great (notwithſtanding that the people were immediately ſubject to their Biſhop only) that the Money in *Geneva* was ſtamped with the Duke's name and figure: Capital Offenders were pardoned by him; no ſentence of Law executed till his Officers were firſt made acquainted; nor League contracted by the people of any validity, without his privity and allowance: and finally the Keys of the Town preſented to him as often as he pleaſed to lodge there; as once (for inſtance) to Duke *Charles* the third, coming thither with *Beatrix* his Wife, a Daughter of *Portugal*. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the year 1528, the Biſhop being all this while their immediate Lord, and having *jus gladii & alias civilis juriſdictionis partes*, as *Calvin* himſelf confeſſeth in an Epiſtle to Cardinal *Sadolet*. But in that year, *Religion* being then altered in the *Canton* of *Bern*, near adjoining to them, *Viret* and *Farellus* did endeavour it in *Geneva* alſo. But finding that the Biſhop and his Clergy did not like their doings, they ſcrewed themſelves into the people, and by their aid in a popular tumult compelled the Biſhop and his Clergy to abandon the Town. And though the Biſhop made them many fair overtures, out of an hope to be reſtored to his Eſtate; yet would they never hearken to him, nor admit of him any more being once thruſt out. Nor did they only in that tumult alter the Doctrine and Orders of the

of the Church before eſtabliſhed; but changed the government of the State alſo; diſclaiming all allegiance both to Duke and Biſhop, and ſtanding on their own Liberty, as a *Free-Commonwealth*. And though all this was done by *Viret* and *Farellus*, before *Calvin*'s coming to that City, which was not till the year 1536, yet being come, *ſuffragio meo comprobavi*, as he ſaith himſelf, no man was forwarder than he to approve the Action.

But *Calvin* being come amongſt them, made their Divinity Reader, and one of the ordinary Preachers, he firſt negotiated with them to abjure the *Papacy*, and never more admit their Biſhop; to which he found a cheerful and unanimous conſent in all the people. Then finding that no *Eccleſiaſtical Diſcipline* was in uſe among them, he dealt with them to admit of one of his own compoſing: which at laſt he obtained alſo, but with very great difficulty; and got it ratified by the Senate, *July* the 20. 1537. The next year after, the people weary of this yoak, and he and his Colleagues (*Farellus*, and *Coraldus*) as reſolute to hold them to it; they were all three baniſhed the Town in a Popular humor; and with like levity ſued to, to return again: to which he would by no means yield, except they would oblige themſelves by a ſolemn Oath, to admit of ſuch a Form of Diſcipline, as he with the advice of their other Miniſters, ſhould preſcribe unto them. This being condeſcended to by that fickle multitude, he returns in triumph to *Geneva*, *September* the thirteenth, 1541, and got his new Diſcipline eſtabliſhed on the twentieth of *November* following. The ſum of the Divice was this; All *Miniſters* to be equal amongſt themſelves; two *Lay-men* to be ſuper-added unto every Miniſter; the Miniſter to continue for term of life; the *Lay-Elders* to be annually choſen: theſe being met together to be called the *Presbytery*; and to have power of *Ordination*, *Cenſures*, *Abſolution*, and whatſoever elſe was acted by the Biſhop formerly. Hitherto is related to *Geneva* only, which being but one City, and a ſmall one too, was not capable of more than one *Presbytery*. The names and notions of *Claſſical*, *Provincial*, and *National* Aſſemblies, came not in till afterwards; as it got ground in Kingdoms, and larger Provinces. This Platform though of purpoſe framed to content the people; yet ſince the *Lay-Officers* were to be but annual, and after ſubject to the laſh like other *Mortals*; it gave but ſorry ſatisfaction unto wiſer men. And being built withal on a falſe foundation, was for a long time hardly able to ſtand alone, and fain at twelve years end to borrow a ſupport from *Zurich*, and others of the *Proteſtant Cantons*: whom *Calvin* earneſtly ſolicited to allow his project, againſt which one *Perinus*, and ſome principal Citizens, had begun to ſpurn. And ſo we have the true beginning of the *Genevan* Diſcipline; begotten in Rebellion, born in Sedition, and nurſed up by Faction.

Being born in the World by the means aforeſaid, ſome other helps it had to make it acceptable, and approved of, in other Churches. As firſt the great content it gave to the *common people*, to ſee themſelves entruſted with the weightieſt matters of *Religion*; and thereby an *equality* with, if not (by reaſon of their number, being two for one) a *ſuperiority* above their *Miniſters*: Next, the *great reputation*, which *Calvin* for his diligence in Writing and Preaching, had attained unto; made all his *Dictates* as authentick amongſt ſome Divines, as ever the Popes *Ipſe dixit* in the Church of *Rome*. Whereby it came to paſs, in a little time, that only thoſe Churches which imbraced the Doctrines and Diſcipline authorized by *Calvin*, were called the *Reformed Churches*: thoſe in high *Germany*, and elſewhere, which adhered to *Luther*, being generally called by no other names than the *Lutherans*, or the *Luthern* Churches; as not *reformed* enough from the dregs of *Rome*. Then comes in his *endeavours* to promote that Platform, in all other Churches, which he had calculated from the *Meridian* of *Geneva* only: commending it to *Gaſper Olevianus*, Miniſter of the Church of *Triers*, as appears by his Letters dated *April* the twelfth 1560, congratulating the reception of it in the Churches of *Poland*, as appeareth by others of his Letters. And for the laſt help, comes in *Beza*, who not content to recommend it as convenient, for the uſe of that Church (beyond which *Calvin* did not go) impoſed it as a matter neceſſary upon all the Churches: ſo neceſſary, *ut ab eo recedere non magis liceat, quam ab ipſius* Religionis *placitis*, that it was utterly as unlawful to recede from this, as for the moſt natural points of the *Chriſtian Faith*. So he, Epiſt. 83. By means whereof their followers in moſt of the *Reformed Churches* drove on ſo furiouſly, that rather than their Diſcipline ſhould not be admitted, and the *Epiſcopal Government* deſtroyed in all the Churches of *CHRIST*, they were reſolved to depoſe Kings, ruin Kingdoms, and to ſubvert the fundamental Conſtitutions of all Civil States. And hereunto their *own Ambition* gave them ſpur enough, affecting the *ſupremacy* in their ſeveral *Pariſhes*; that they themſelves might Lord it over God's Inheritance, under pretence of ſetting *CHRIST* upon this Throne. Upon which love to the preheminence, they did not only prate againſt the Biſhops, *which malitious words*, (as *Diotrephes* for the ſame reaſon did againſt the Apoſtles) but not therewith content, *neither would they themſelves receive them, nor permit them that would, caſting them out of the Church*, with reproach and infamy. Which proud ambition in the ordinary *Parochial* Miniſter, was cunningly fomented by ſome great perſons, and many *Lay-Perſons* in all places, who under-hand aimed at a further end: the one to raiſe themſelves great fortunes out of Biſhops Lands; the other to keep thoſe Tythes themſelves, to which by the Law they only were to nominate ſome deſerving Perſon. Such were the helps, by which this new device of *Calvin* was diſperſed and propagated.

But to return unto *Geneva*, though *Calvin* for his time did hold the Chair as a perpetual *Moderator*, and *Beza* too, until *Daneus* ſet him beſide the Cuſhon: yet after that, the power of the *Preſbytery* was ſhrewdly leſſened in *Geneva*, and the good members ſo reſtrained in the exerciſe of it; that they have no power to convent any man before them, but by the authority of a *Syndick*, or *Civil* Magiſtrate. And as for maintenance, they hold their Miniſters ſo ſtrictly to a ſorry pittance, as would be ſure to keep them from preſuming too much on their power in the *Conſiſtory*. *Tythes* of all ſorts were to be taken up for the uſe of the State, and laid up in the publick Treaſury; and ſtipends iſſued out to maintain the *Miniſtry*: but thoſe ſo mean, that *Bezaes* ſtipend whilſt he lived, hardly amounted to eighty pounds *per annum*, the reſidue of the *City-Miniſters* not to ſixty pound, thoſe of the Villages adjoyning, having hardly forty pounds, enough to keep them always poor, and miſerably obnoxious to the wealthier Citizens. And that they may not *ſteal the Gooſe, and ſtick up a feather*, the State doth uſe to make ſome poor allowance to the wives and daughters of their deceaſed *Miniſters*, if they die poor, or leave their children unprovided; or otherwiſe have deſerved well in the time of their lives. In reſpect hereof though the *Miniſters* are very ſtrict in forbidding Dancing, and have writ many Tracts againſt it; yet to give ſome content to the common people (who have not leiſure to attend it at other times) they allow all Manlike exerciſes on the *Lords-day*, as ſhooting in Pieces,

Long-bows, Cross-bows, and the like, and that too in the morning, both before and after the *Sermon*; so it be no impediment to them, from coming to the Church at the times appointed.

As for the Government of the State, it is directed principally by the *Civil* or *Imperial* Laws; the Judge whereof is called the *Lieutenant-criminal*; before whom all causes are tried, and from whom there lyeth no *Appeal*; unless it be unto the Council of two hundred, whom they call the *Great Council*, in which the supreme power of the State resideth. Out of this *Council* of two hundred, there is chosen another *lesser Council* of five and twenty, and out of them four principal Officers whom they call the *Syndicks*, who have the sole managing of the Common-wealth; except it be in some great matter, as making Peace or War, *offensive* or *defensive* Leagues, hearing Appeals, and such like general concernments: which the great Council of two hundred must determine of. They have a custom superadded to the *Civil Law*, that if any Malefactor from another place flye to them for refuge, they punish him after the custom of the place in which the crime was committed. Otherwise their Town being on the borders of divers Princes, would never be free from *Vagabonds*. Examples hereof I will assign two: the first of certain *Monks*, who robbing their *Convents* of certain Plate, and hoping for their wicked prancks at home to be the welcomer hither, were at their first acquaintance advanced to the Gallows. The second is of a *Spanish* Gentleman, who having fled his Country for clipping and counterfeiting the King's Gold; came to this Town, and had the like reward. And when for defence he alleadged, that he understood their City being free, gave admission to all Offenders; *True* (said they) *but with an intent to punish them that offended*: a distinction which the *Spaniard* never till then learned, but then it was too late.

As for their ordinary *Revenue*, it is proportionable to their Territory, if not above it, conceived to amount to 60000 pounds *per annum*; which they raise upon the *demain* of the Bishop, and the *Tythes* of the Church, and on such *impositions* as are laid upon flesh and Merchandise. But they are able to raise greater sums if there be occasion, as appears plainly by the sending of 45000 Crowns to King *Henry* the third, before they had been long setled in their own estates.

And as for *Military Forces*, they are able to impress two thousand men, and have Arms of all sorts for so many in the publick *Magazines*: as also twelve or fourteen pieces of Ordnance, with all manner of Ammunition appertaining to them; and on the Lake some Gallies in continual readiness, against the dangers threatned them by the Dukes of *Savoy*. And for the greater safety of their Estate, and the preservation of their *Religion*, they joyned themselves in a constant and perpetual League with the *Canton* of *Bern*, *Anno* 1582, communicating to each other the Freedom of their several Cities; and by that means, are reckoned for a member of the Commonwealth of the *Switzers*, which is no small security to their affairs. But their chief strength, as I conceive, is, that neighbouring Princes are not willing to have it fall into the hands of that Duke; or any other Potentate of more strength than he. Insomuch that when that Duke besieged it, *Anno* 1589, they were aided from *Venice* with four and twenty thousand, and from *England*, with thirteen thousand Crowns, from *Florence* with Intelligence of the Enemies purposes. Another time, when the Pope, the *French* King, the *Spaniard*, and *Savoyard* had designs upon it; the Emperor offered them assistance both of Men and Money: yea and sometimes the Dukes of *Savoy* have assisted them against the others, as being more desirous that the Town should remain as it doth, than fall into any other hands than his own. So ordinary a thing it is for such petit States, to be more safe by the interests of their jealous neighbours, than any forces of their own.

The Arms of *Geneva*, when under the command of the Earls thereof, were *Or*, a Cross *Azure*. But for the title of *Geneva* after it had been born a while by the Earls of *Savoy*, it was given to *Philip* youngest son of *Ame* or *Amadee* the first Duke, to *Janus* the third son of *Lewis* the second Duke; and finally to *Pilip* Duke of *Nemours*, the fourth son of *Philip* the seventh Duke of *Savoy*, in whose posterity (Dukes of *Nemours*) it doth still continue.

4. *WALLISLAND.*

EAstward from *Savoy*, in a long and deep bottom of the *Alpes Pœninæ*, lyeth the Country of *WALLISLAND*: so called either *quasi Wallensland*, or the land of the *Valenses*, once the inhabitants of the Country about *Martinacht*, a chief town hereof; or *quasi Vallies-land*, or the *Land of Vallies*, of which it totally consists. It reacheth from the Mountain *de Furken*, to the Town of St. *Maurice*, where again the hills do close, and shut up the valley; which is so narrow in that place, that a Bridge laid from one hill to another (under which the River *Rhosne* doth pass) is capable of on more than one Arch only, and that defended with a Castle and two strong Gates. On other parts it is environed with a continual wall of steep and horrid Mountains, covered all the year long with a crust of Ice; not passable at all by Armies, and not without much difficulty by single passengers: so that having but that one entrance to it, which before we spake of, no Citadel can be made so strong by Art, as this whole Country is by Nature. But in the bottom of those craggy and impassable Rocks, lies a pleasant Valley, fruitful in Saffron, Corn, Wine, and most delicate fruits; and happily enriched with Meadows, and most excellent Pastures, which yield a notable increase of Cheese and Butter: And in the Country about *Sion* they discovered in *Anno* 1544 a Fountain of Salt: and have also many hot *Baths*, and medicinal waters very wholsom. Of Springs, and River-water, they are very destitute; having scarce any but what they fetch from the *Rhosne*, with a great deal both of charge and trouble (the common people using snow-water for the most part for domestick uses): which made one pleasantly observe, that they *pay dearer for their Water, than they do for their Wine*. Cattel they have sufficient to serve their turn, and amongst others, a wild *Buck*, equal to a *Stag* in bigness, footed like a *Goat*, and horned like a fallow Deer, leaping with wonderful agility from one precipice to another, and so not easily caught but in Summer time, for then the heat of that season makes him blind.

It is divided into the *Upper* and the *Lower Wallisland*: the *Upper* lying towards the Mountain *di Furken*, in the very bottom of the Valley; and the Lower stretching out to the Town of St. *Maurice*, which is at the opening of the same: the length of both said to be five ordinary days journey, but the breadth not answerable. The *Upper Wallisland* containeth the seven *Resorts*, of 1. *Sion*, or *Sedune*, 2. *Leuck*, 3. *Brig*, 4. *Nies*, 5. *Rawwren*, 6. *Sider*, 7. *Gombes*, in which are reckoned thirty Parishes: the *Lower* comprehending the six *Resorts* of 1. *Gurdis*, 2. *Ardoa*, 3. *Sallien*, 4. *Martinacht*, 5. *Juremont*, and 6. St. *Maurice*: in which are 24 Parishes. The people in both parts said to be courteous towards strangers, but very rough and churlish towards one another.

The ſeveral Reſorts before mentioned, are named according to the names of their principal Towns: which according to their reckoning are thirteen in number. The chief of which are 1 *Sedunum*, *Sittim*, or *Sion*, a Biſhops See, ſuffragan to the *Metropolitan* of *Tarentuniſe*; the chief of all this little Country: of no great beauty in it ſelf, but neat and gallant in reſpect of the Towns about it. Situate in a Plain on the River of *Rhoſne*, under a Mountain of two tops; on the one of which being the lower, is ſeated the Cathedral Church, and the Canon's houſes; and on the other, looking downwards with a dreadful precipice, a very ſtrong Caſtle, the dwelling place of the Biſhop in the heat of Summer: which being built upon an hill of ſo great an height, and ſo hazardous an aſcent, is impoſſible almoſt to be took by force; the ſharpneſs of the Rocks keeping it from the danger of aſſaults, and the highneſs of the hill from the reach of the Gun-ſhot. 2 *Marchinacht*, by *Cæſar* called *Octodurus*, and *Civitas Valenſium* by *Antonius*, remarkable for its antiquity only. 3 St. *Maurice*, or St. *Morits*, antiently *Aganum*, the Key of the whole Country; but in Winter eſpecially, when all the other paſſages are frozen up, that there is no other entrance but by the Bridge at this Town, which for that cauſe is very well manned and fortified to avoid ſurpriſal; and therefore alſo choſen for the ſeat of the Governour of the *Lower Walliſland*.

This Country now called *Walliſland*, is in moſt *Latin* Writers called by the name of *Valeſia*, but corruptly, as I think, for *Valenſia*, as the *Dutch* or *Engliſh* name for *Wallenſland*: which name I ſhould conceive it took from the *Valenſes*, the old inhabitants of this Vally, of whom *Octodurus* (now called *Marchinacht*) is by *Antonius* made to be the *Metropolis*, or principal City. It was made ſubject to the *Romans* by *Julius Cæſar*, at ſuch time as the *Helvetians* were conquered by him: and falling with the Weſtern parts of the *Roman* Empire unto *Charles* the *Great*, was by him given to *Theodulus* Biſhop of *Sion*, *Anno* 805. Under his ſucceſſors they continue to this very day; but ſo, as that the Deputies of the *ſeven Reſorts* have not only voices with the *Canons* in his Election, but being choſen and inveſted unto the place, they join with him alſo in the *Diets* for chooſing Magiſtrates, redreſſing grievances, and determining matters of the State. The *Lower Walliſland* obeyeth the upper, made ſubject by long War, and the chance of Victory, and hath no ſway in the publick Government, but takes for Law that which their Governours agree of. The ſame Religion is in both, being that of *Rome*. For maintenance whereof they combined themſelves with the ſeven Popiſh *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, *Anno* 1572, or thereabouts: as alſo for their mutual defence and preſervation againſt Foreign Enemies, and keeping amity and concord amongſt one another.

5. *SWITZERLAND.*

NEXT unto *Walliſland* lyeth the Country of the *SWITZERS*, having on the Eaſt, the *Griſons*, and ſome part of the *Tirol*, in *Germany*; on the Weſt, the Mountain *Jour*, and the Lake of *Geneva*, which parts it from *Savoy*, and *Burgundy*, on the North, *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*, another Province alſo of the upper *Germany*; and on the South, *Walliſland* and the *Alpes*, which border on the Dukedom of *Millain*.

The whole Country heretofore divided into three parts only, that is to ſay, 1 *Argow*, ſo called from the River *Aaz*, whoſe chief Town was *Lucern*: 2 *Wiſliſpurgergow*, ſo called from *Wiſliſpurg* an old Town thereof, the chief City whereof is *Bern*: And 3 *Zurichgow*, ſo named from *Zurich*, both formerly and at this preſent the Town of moſt note in all this Tract; but ſince the falling of theſe Countries from the houſe of *Auſtria*, divided into many *Cantons*, and other members, of which more anon.

It is wholly in a manner over-grown with craggy Mountains, but ſuch as for the moſt part have graſſie-tops, and in their bottoms afford rich Meadows, and nouriſhing paſtures, which breed them a great ſtock of Cattel, their greateſt wealth. And in ſome places yields plenty of very good Wines, and a fair increaſe of Corn alſo, if care and induſtry be not wanting on the Husband-mans part, but neither in ſo great abundance, as to ſerve all neceſſary uſes, which want they do ſupply from their neigbouring Countries. And though it ſtand upon as high ground as any in *Chriſtendom*, yet is no place more ſtored with Rivers, and capacious Lakes; which do not only yield them great abundance of Fiſh, but ſerve the people very well in the way of Traffick, to diſperſe their ſeveral Commodities from one *Canton* to another. Of which the principal are, *Bodenſee*, and the Lake of *Cell*, made by the *Rhene*; *Genſer-ſee*, or the Lake of *Geneva*, by the *Rhoſne*; *Walldſtet-ſee*, and the Lake of *Lucern*, made by the *Ruſſe*; *Namonburger* and *Bieter-ſees*, by the *Orbe*; and *Zurich-ſee*, by the River of *Limat*, or *Limachus*.

It is in length two hundred and forty miles, an hundred and eighty in breadth; conceived to be the higheſt Country in *Europe* (as before is ſaid) the River which do iſſue from it running through all quarters of the ſame; as *Rhene*, through *France* and *Belgium*, North; *Po*, through *Italy* to the South; *Rhodanus*, through part of *France*, to the Weſtern Ocean; and the *Inn*, which falling into the *Danubius* paſſeth through *Germany*, and *Hungary*, into *Pontus Euxinus*.

And as the Country is, ſuch are the Inhabitants, of rude and rugged diſpoſitions, more fit for Arms than any civil occupations, capable of toyl and labour, which the neceſſities of their Country do inure them to, not able otherwiſe to afford them an hungry livelihood: the poverty whereof makes them ſeek for ſervice, which they ſhift and change according as they like the conditions of their entertainment; and having no way to vent their ſuperfluous numbers by Navigation, are able to ſpare greater multitudes to a Foreign War, than a man would eaſily imagine. In a word, the people are naturally honeſt, frugal and induſtrious, impartial in the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and great lovers of liberty.

In matters of War, they were once of ſuch a reputation, on the defeats given by them to *Charles* of *Burgundy*, that no Prince thought himſelf able to take the Field, or ſtand his own ground in defence of his Dominions if he had not *Switzers* in his Army: And to advance their reputation, the Wars which followed in *Italy* about the Dutchy of *Millain*, ſerved exceeding fitly. For being borderers on that Country, they could be hired better cheap by the *French*, or *Spaniards*, than any Army could be brought out of *France*, or *Spain*. And having had ſome good ſucceſſes to increaſe their fame, they grew ſo terrible at laſt; that the *Spaniards* in the War of *Guien* were more afraid of one band of *Swiſſe*, than of all the reſt of the *French* Army. But being found withal to be falſe and treacherous, and eaſily bought off by the better purſe (which they moſt evidently diſcovered in betraying Duke *Lodowick Sforza*, who had put himſelf and his eſtate into their hands); and thoſe *Italian* Wars growing unto an end, they did decay ſo faſt in their reputation,

that first the neighbouring Princes could do well without them; and at last used them not at all, or at least very sparingly. And now it is their honour that they are chosen of the Guard to the *French* King, and the Popes of *Rome*, and the Dukes of *Genoa*; and that the greatest Princes of *Europe* give them yearly pensions. Which pensions were given heretofore to be assured of their aid upon all occasions, but now to keep them from engaging on the other side.

For matter of *Religion* it is proportionably mixt; some of the *Cantons* being wholly *Popish*, some wholly *Protestant*; in others, both Religions used promiscuously. At first the differences were so eagerly pursued on both sides, that notwithstanding the mediation of some potent Neighbours, it broke out into a *Civil* War; the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, and *Zug*, (which the *Latin* Writers of this story call the *Quinquepagici*) arming against *Urich*, *Bern*, and others which adhered to *Zuinglius*. In the beginning of which War, the *Protestant* party was discomfited, *Zuinglius* himself slain in the head of the Battel, and his body burnt: his heart remaining in the midst of the fire, whole and untouched as Archbishop *Cranmer*'s also did) when all the rest of his body was consumed to ashes. But those of the *Reformed* party would not so give over. Another field they fought for it, and therein had the better of the adverse party. Wearied at last with reciprocal defeats, they agreed the business, indulging each to other the free exercise of their own *Religions*. So it continueth at this day, diversity of opinions not drawing them from a due care of the publick *interest*, nor giving any interruption to that bond of peace which was so firmly knit amongst them in their first *Confederacy*.

Now for the body of their State, it consists of three distinct parts, or members, which are to be considered in this discourse, *viz.* the *Swisse* themselves, the *Præfectures* which are subject to them, and the States that are confederates with them. The *Swisse* are subdivided into thirteen *Cantons*, that is to say, *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwald*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Bern*, *Zurich*, *Basil*, *Friburg*, *Soloturn*, *Apenzel*, *Glaris* and *Schaffhausen*. These properly make the body of that Common-wealth, enjoying many rights, priviledges and preheminences which the others do not; as power to determine of War and Peace, to dispose of the *Præfectures*, and divide amongst themselves the spoil of the enemy. The first confederacy was made betwixt the *Cantons* of *Switz*, and *Underwald*, *Anno* 1315. Of which the *Switz* being the most potent, the most exasperated, and that which did most hotly prosecute the combination, gave to the rest the name of *Switzers*, first made for ten years only, in defence of themselves against the violences of *Albert* the first, Emperor and Duke of *Austria*; intending to alienate them from the Empire, and add them by strong hand to his own Estates, *Anno* 1309. but made perpetual after their great victory obtained against Duke *Leopold* son of *Albert*, in the fields of *Mortgarten*, of which more anon. *Lucern* was added to the three, *Anno* 1332. *Zug*, *Zurich*, and *Glaris*, came not into the confederacy till the year 1352; nor *Bern* until the year next after. *Friburg* and *Soloturn* came in *Anno* 1481. *Basil* and *Schaffhausen* united with them in the year 1501. And *Apenzel*, which was the last which was admitted into their *confederacy*, *Anno* 1513. So that there passed within little of two hundred years, from the first beginning of these *Leagues*, to the finishing of them.

The second Member of this body, are the Towns and States, *Confederates* with them, for the preservation of their common Liberties, *viz.* the Town and Abbot of Saint *Gall*, the Towns of *Rotwel*, *Mulhausen*, *Nuenberg*, and *Biel*, situated on the Lake thence named: (of which the first belonged heretofore to the Earls of *Longeville* in *France*, the latter to the Bishops of *Basil*) with the City and Signeury of *Geneva*: And of these, *Rotwel* and *Mulhausen* are confederate with all the *Cantons*; the rest, with some particulars only. The Abbot of St. *Gall* first entered into League with *Zurich*, *Lucern*, *Switz*, and *Glaris*, for the preservation of his Lands and Towns then revolting from him: and the Town following his example, confederated with *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Switz*, *Lucern*, *Zug*, *Glaris*, the better to preserve themselves from the power of their *Abbot*, who was before their natural and immediate Lord. This was in *Anno* 1452. *Rotwel*, and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Towns in the Province of *Schawben*, confederated in a perpetual League with all the *Cantons*, the first, *Anno* 1515, the other, 1519, *Newenberg*, *Biel*, and *Geneva*, with *Bern* only.

As for the *Præfectures* of the *Switzers*, they are such lesser parcels and additaments, as have accrewed to their Estate, and are subject unto their authority; either by gift, purchase, or the chance of War: some lying in *Switzerland* it self, some amongst other parts of the *Alpes*, and some in *Italy*. These are the Towns and Countries of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Millingen*, *Rappenswyll*, *Wagenthall*, interposed here and there amongst the *Switzers*: the Town and Country of *Sargans*, lying amongst the *Rhætian Alpes*, not far from the *Grisons*; and *Rhineck*, lying in a valley of the *Alpes*, on the left shore of the *Rhene*, near the Lake of *Constans*; and finally the vallies of *Locarno*, *Magia*, and *Lugano*, *Mendrisio*, and *Belinzano*, situate in and amongst the *Alpes*, near the Dukedom of *Millain*, to which they formerly belonged. Of which the *Præfectures* of *Badin*, and *Mellingen* appertain to the eight first *Cantons*: *Wagenthall*, the *Sargans*, and *Rhineck* to the seven first *Cantons*; *Rappenswyll* to *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, and *Glaris*; and *Thurgow*, unto the ten first *Cantons*: *Belinzano* to the three first only; and all the rest of the *Italian* Præfectures to the *Cantons* generally, excepting *Apenzel*, which was not entred into the confederacy when these Præfectures were given unto the *Switzers*, by *Maximilian Sforza* Duke of *Millain*; which was in *Anno* 1513. some months before the taking in of *Apenzel* to the rest of the *Cantons*.

Such is the number of the *Cantons*, *Præfectures*, and *States-confederate*, amongst all which there are few Towns or Cities of any note: there being no City nor walled Town in the *Cantons* of *Switz*, *Uren*, *Underwalden*, *Glaris*, *Apenzel*, nor in any of the States confederate situate amongst the *Switzers*, but St. *Gall* only; nor in any of the *Præfectures* but that of *Baden*. So that the places worthy of consideration are not like to be many. Of those that are, the principal are, 1 *Zurich*, a large City, and a renowned University, situate on both sides of the River *Liman*, where it issueth out of the Lake called *Zurich-See*. It had antiently two Monasteries in it, in one of which *Huldericus Zuinglius* was a *Canon*, slain near this Town in the Battel spoken of before, *Anno* 1531, now giving name to the most honourable of the *Cantons*, to which belongeth the authority of summoning the general *Diets* as of those also of the *Protestants*; the Legats thereof presiding in both assemblies. 2 *Friburg*, situate on the River *Sana*, on the declivity of an uneven and rocky hill, founded by *Bertold* the fourth Duke of *Zeringen*. 3 *Solothurn*, (the *Solothurum* of *Antonius*) on the River *Aar*, famous for the Martyrdom of S. *Ursus*, and his 66 *Theban* Souldiers, in the time of the Emperor *Diocletian*. A Town of great Antiquity, but not so old by far as the people make it: who would have it to be built in the time of *Abraham*. 4 *Basil*, so called either of a *Basilisk* slain at the building of the City; or of the

German

German word *Pasel*, signifying a path; or of Βασίλεια, signifying Kingly. It was built *Anno* 382, and is famous for an University founded by *Pius* the second, *Anno* 1459. It was made a *Canton*, *Anno* 1501; and is honoured with the Sepulchres of *Oecolampadius*, *Erasmus*, *Pontanus*, *Glarianus*, and *Hottoman* the famous Civilian. In this City, *Anno* 1431, was held that notable Council, wherein though the *Papal* authority was then at the height, it was declared that a *general Council was above the Pope*. What was then enacted, was immediately put in practice; the Council deposing Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, and placing in his room *Amadeus* Duke of *Savoy*, afterward called *Felix* the fourth; who having held the See nine years in a time of *Schism* did willingly in order to the peace of *Christendom*, resign the Popedom to *Nicholas* the fifth, who had before been chosen by the opposite Faction. The City is great, rich, and populous, sometimes a Town *Imperial*, still a Bishops See: the Bishop being subject to the Archbishop of *Besanson*, in the County of *Burgundy*: seated upon the River *Rhene* (where it receiveth *Weis* and *Byrsa*, two lesser Brooks) by which it is divided into the *greater Basil* lying towards *France*, and the *lesser* lying towards *Germany*. 5 *Lucern*, situate on both sides of the *Russe*, where it issueth out of the Lake of *Lucern*; so called from *Lucern*, *i. e.* the *Lanthern*, which was placed here on an high Tower, to give light to Water men in the night. A City well traded and frequented by strangers, because the ordinary road from *Germany* into *Italy*, passing from hence through the Country of the *Grisons*, and in regard that the *Diets* for the *Popish Cantons*, which heretofore were held at *Uren*, are removed hither. Not far from this Town is the Mountain called *Pilates hill*, of *Pontius Pilate*, whose ghost (as the common people are made to believe) doth walk once a year on the banks of this Lake in his Judges Robes. And to be sure the fiction shall not be confuted, they add, that whosoever seeth him shall die that year. 6 *Bern*, compassed almost round with the River *Aar*, and taking up the whole extent of a little Mountain; the houses of free-stone, neatly and uniformly built. A Town which gives name to the largest and most potent of all the *Cantons*; one of the first which did embrace the *Reformation*, and the first of all which purged it self of Images, those excellent Instruments of Superstitition and Idolatry; defaced here in a popular tumult, *Anno* 1548. 7 *Lausanna* in the Canton of *Bern*, a Bishops See, Suffragan to the Archbishop of *Besanson*; seated on the banks of the Lake of *Lemane*, and compassed with mountains always covered with Snow, which open themselves on the East side only, which is towards *Italy*. 8 *Schaffhausen*, the only Town of all the *Cantons*, which lyeth on the other side of the *Rhene*, of right belonging unto *Suevia*, or *Schawben*, a Province of *Germany*, and reckoned as a part thereof, before it was incorporated into this *Confederacy*.

Next for the *Præfectures*, and *Confederate* States; they have not many Towns of note (excepting *Rotwel*, and *Mulhausen*, two *Imperial* Cities, which properly belong to another place.) Of those which be, the principal amongst the *Confederates*, lying within the bounds of this Country, is the Town of Saint-*Gall*, (*Sengall* as they corruptly call it) an *Imperial* City, situate amongst the Mountains near the *Boden-See*. A rich, populous, and well-governed Town, taking name from the Monastery of S. *Gall*, a famous *Scot*, and the Apostle of those parts, *Anno* 630, or thereabouts; the *Abbot* of which having great possessions in this tract (before *Apenzel*, and this Town revolted from him) was a Prince of the Empire. The *Anabaptists* were once very prevalent here, in so much that one of them cut off his brothers head in the presence of his Father and Mother, and said (according to the humour of that sect, who boast much of dreams, visions, and *Enthusiasms*) that *God commanded him so to do*. The principal amongst the *Præfectures* is the Town of *Baden*, or (to difference it from *Baden* a Marquisate in *Germany*) the *Upper Baden*: seated on a little Mountain near the River *Limat*, almost in the middle of the Country: and for that cause the place of meeting for the Council of *Estate* of all the *Confederates*. It taketh name from the Baths here being, two of which only are publick, the rest in private houses: conscious, as it is thought, to much lasciviousness. For whereas it is said of *Adrian*, that *Lavacra pro sexibus separavit*; here men and women promiscuously bathe together; and which is worst, in private: where as *Munster* telleth us, *Cernunt viri uxores tractari, cernunt cum alienis loqui, & quidem solam cum solo*; and yet are not any of them disturbed with jealousie. The *Baths* are much frequented, yet not so much for health as pleasure. Their chiefest vertue is the *quickning* power they have upon *barren* women. But as the *Friers* use to send men whose wives are fruitless, in pilgrimage to Saint *Joyce*, the Patroness of fruitfulness; and in the mean time to lie with their Wives: so it may be with good reason thought, that in a place of such Liberty as this is, the lusty young Gallants that haunt this place, produce greater operation of barren women, than the waters of the Bath it self. No other Town of eminent note amongst the *Præfectures* of the *Swisses*, except *Rhineck* it self, the seat of the Governour for the *Switzers*, situate near the Lake of *Constance*: and none of any note at all amongst the *Italian Præfectures*, except *Belinzana*, and *Locarno*, neither of them containing four hundred Houses, and those none of the handsomest.

Within the limits of this Country, and in that part thereof which was called *Argow*, containing the now *Cantons* of *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwald*, *Glarona*, and *Lucern*; with some of the adjoining parts of *Germany*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Savoy*; did sometimes stand the famous and renowned Castle of *HABSPURG*: from the Lords whereof the house of *Austria*, and most of the Kings and Princes of the Christian World do derive themselves. First founded, as some say, by *Ottopert* the third Prince of this line, at or before the year 700; as others say, by *Rapato* the son of *Betzeline*, about the year 1020. Situate on the River *Aar* (by the *Latins* called *Arula*) near a Town called *Bruck*; now so decayed, that there is no tracing of the ruins. Preserved in memory by the Lords and Princes of it, descended in a direct line from *Segebert* the eldest son of *Theodebert* King of *Mets*, or *Austrasia*; first settled in these parts by *Clotaire* the second, King of the *French*, with the title as some say, of Duke of *Upper Almain* (the *Lower Almain* being that which is now called *Suevia* or *Schawben*, an adjoining Province of *Germany*). Being soon weary of that empty, but invidious title, they were sometimes called Earls of *Habspurg*, by the name of this Castle; sometimes Earls of *Altemburg*, another Castle not far off, of their own foundation. And after, closing in with the Kings of *Burgundy Transjurane*, and the *German* Emperors, they received of them a great part of the Country of *Argow*; from which some of them were called Earls of *Argow*. Not known distinctly by the title of Earls of *Habspurg*, till the time of *Rapato* above-mentioned; when those of *Altemburg* and *Argow* became discontinued. However we will here lay down the whole succession of this famous family, either Earls, or the Progenitors of

The

The Earls of *Habſpurg.*

A. Ch.

635 1 *Sigibert*, ſon of *Theodobert* King of *Metz*, by *Clotaire* the ſecond of that name, *French* King, diſpoſſeſſed of the Kingdom of his Father, and afterwards by him indowed with a great part of thoſe Countries, which are now called *Switzerland*, with the title of Duke of *Upper Almain.*

2 *Sigibert* II. ſon of *Sigibert* the firſt, Duke of *Upper Almain.*

3 *Ottopert*, or *Otbert*, the ſon of *Sigibert* the ſecond, the founder, as ſome ſay, of the Caſtle of *Altemburg* and *Habſpurg*, of which promiſcuouſly called Earl.

4 *Bebo*, the ſon of *Ottopert*, the laſt Duke of *Upper Almain*; which title he exchanged for that of Earl of *Altemburg*, and *Habſpurg.*

5 *Robert*, or *Rother*, as ſome call him, the ſon of *Bebo*, Earl of *Altemburg.*

766 6 *Hertopert*, the ſon of *Robert*, who added unto his Eſtate that part of *Schwaben*, or *Suevia*, which is called *Briſgow.*

7 *Rampert*, the ſon of *Hertopert*, who flouriſhed *Anno* 814, at what time he procured the Canonization of S. *Trutpertus.*

8 *Guntram*, the ſon of *Rampert*, Earl of *Altemburg.*

9 *Luithard*, the ſon of *Guntram.*

909 10 *Luitfride*, the ſon of *Luithard.*

929 11 *Hunifride*, the ſon of *Luitfride*, who added unto his Eſtates the Territory now called *Sungow*, bordering on *Alſatia*, a Province of *Germany*; recovered after his deceaſe by the Dukes of *Schwaben.*

950 12 *Guntram* II. ſon of *Hunifride*, the firſt who took unto himſelf the title of Earl of *Argow*: from whoſe ſecond ſon named *Berthilo*, deſcended the Dukes or Earls of *Zeringen*, poſſeſſed of almoſt all *Briſgow*, and a good part of *Switzerland*, which they inherited from *Berthold*, the ſon of *Gebiro* the third ſon of *Guntram*; Who having founded the Caſtle of *Zeringen*, and acquired great poſſeſſions in adjoining parts of *Schwaben*, left them at his deceaſe (being childleſs) to *Berthold* the ſon of *Berthilo*, and his Couſen *German.*

13 *Betzo*, or *Betzeline*, the eldeſt ſon of *Guntram* the ſecond, Earl of *Argow.*

14 *Rapato*, ſon of *Betzeline*, the founder or repairer of the Caſtle of *Habſpurg*, from whence both he and his ſucceſſors were conſtantly called Earls of *Habſpurg.* Great Grand-father by *Theodorick* his youngeſt ſon, of *Rodolph* Earl of *Rhinefelden*, and Duke of *Schwaben*, elected Emperor (at the inſtigation of the Pope) againſt *Henry* the fourth.

15 *Warner*, by ſome called *Berenger*, or *Berengarius*, the ſon of *Rapato.*

1096 16 *Otbo*, the ſon of *Warner* or *Berenger.*

1108 17 *Warner* II. ſon of *Otbo*, enriched by the Emperor *Henry* the fourth, with ſome fair Eſtates belonging to the Dukes of *Schwaben.*

18 *Albert*, the ſon of *Warner* the ſecond, ſurnamed the *Rich.*

19 *Albert* II. ſurnamed the *Wiſe*, ſon of *Albert* the firſt, added to his Eſtates a great part of the *Upper Alſatia*; which he had by the right of *Heduigis* his wife, one of the daughters and heir of *Simon* the laſt Earl thereof.

1238 20 *Rodolph*, the fortunate ſon of *Albert* the ſecond, added to his Eſtate the reſt of the *Upper Elſate*, elected Emperor of the *Romans*, *Anno* 1273. Of which he made ſo good advantage, that he added unto his Eſtates the great Dukedom of *Auſtria*, with all the incorporate Provinces thereunto belonging, and laid the firſt foundation of the *Auſtrian* greatneſs; of which more in *Germany.* Here only note, that beſides the following Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, thoſe of the line Collateral ſtill retained the title of Earls of *Habſpurg* (according to the ill cuſtom of *Germany*) increaſed with the addition of the Earldom of *Kyburg*, of which more hereafter: and ſo continued till the expiring of that line in the perſon of *Rodolph* the fourth, the laſt that bare the title of Earl of *Habſpurg*, *Anno* 1356, by whoſe death many fair Eſtates were added to the *Auſtrian* Family.

Having on the occaſion of theſe Earls of *Habſpurg*, beheld ſo much of the affairs of this Country, as related unto that puiſſant and illuſtrious family, let us go forward to the reſt: firſt taking in our way the ancient Eſtate hereof, in the time of the *Romans.* At what time this whole mountainous tract, containing many ſeveral Nations (ſome of them ſpoken of before) was comprehended under the general name and notion of the *Helvetii*; the greateſt and moſt populous of all the reſt: ſo called, as *Verſtegan* will have it, *Quaſi Hil-vites*, or the *Vites* of the Mountains, to difference them from the *Vites* of the lower parts, inhabiting in that part of *Cimbrick Cherſonneſe*, which is now called *Juitland*; and from thoſe dwelling in the middle, betwixt both extremes in the little Province ſtill called *Voitland.* Grown by long peace, and want of opportunity by traffick into foreign parts, to ſo great a multitude, that the Country barren of it ſelf, was no longer able to maintain them; they ſet fire on their Towns and Houſes, and with a general reſolution went to ſeek new dwellings. The total number of men, women, and children, which went upon this deſperate action, are ſaid to have amounted to the number of 3680000, whereof 900000 were fighting men. They had not long before overthrown *L. Caſſius* a *Roman* Conſul, ſlain the Conſul himſelf, and ſold his Souldiers for Bond-ſlaves: upon the apprehenſion of which good ſucceſs, they thought no body able to withſtand them. But they found *Ceſar* of a ſtronger metal than *L. Caſſius.* Who having ſtopped their paſſage by hewing down the Bridge of *Geneva*, till he was grown ſtrong enough to bid them battel; ſo waſted them in ſeveral skirmiſhes and defeats, that they were forced to crave leave of him to go home again, and to rebuild thoſe Towns and Villages which they had deſtroyed before this enterpriſe: which he upon delivery of Hoſtages, did vouchſafe to grant. It is conceived, that at the leaſt two Millions of them periſhed in this journy, and not ſo much by the Sword (though that ſpared them not) as for want of neceſſaries. After this they continued Members of the *Roman* Empire, till conquered in the times of *Honorius* and *Valentinian* the third, by the *Burgundians* and *Almans*, betwixt whom divided; the River *Ruſt* parting their dominions. From them being taken by the *French*, it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; ſome parts firſt taken out, and given to the Progenitors of the Earls of *Habſpurg*, as before was noted. Given with the reſt of that Kingdom to the Emperor *Conrade*

the

the second, by *Rodolph* the last King thereof: parcelled out by the *German* Emperours (as their custom was) into divers States; most of the which were drawn in by the Dukes of *Schwaben*, the Earls of *Habspurg*, *Kyburg*, *Werdenburg*, &c. and the Dukes of *Zeringen*; as afterwards in the fall of the one, and as heirs to many of the other, by the Dukes of *Austria*. By means of which united titles the *Austrian* family was possessed of so much of this Country, as now makes up five *Cantons*, and as many of the principal *Præfectures*; that is to say, the *Cantons* of *Zug*, *Glarona*, *Lucern*, *Friburg*, and *Schaffehausen*; the *Præfectures* of *Baden*, *Brengarten*, *Mellingen*, *Wagenthall*, *Roperswyll*; together with a great part of the Country of *Targow*, wherin stands the City of St. *Gall*, now a Confederate with the *Switzers*; some of the rest, as *Uren*, *Switz*, *Underwalden*, being brought under by the power of the Emperor *Albert*, the son of *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*, who had a purpose to unite them to the house of *Austria*; because obnoxious also to the power of those Princes. But the people being at last over-burthened by the tyranny of those Governors, whom the Dukes of *Austria* and their other Lords had sent among them; seeing withal the Empire by the Pope's Fulminations distracted into many Factions, and the *Austrian* Family weakned by a sub-division of that great Estate into many parcels; they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League amongst themselves, for defence of their Liberty: into which first entred those of *Switz*, *Uren*, and *Underwalden*, *Anno* 1385. Not all united into one Confederation till the year 1513, as before was noted. At their first beginning to take Arms, *Frederick*, one of the many Dukes of *Austria* (to whose share they fell) sent his Brother *Leopold* against them with a puissant Army which they encountred near *Mortgarten* a Village of the now *Canton* of *Underwalden*, and there overthrew him: but more by the convenience of those narrow passages, through which his Army was to march, than by any valour. In which it was no small help to them, that the ways were all so filled with Ice, that he was able to do no service with his Horse, and his Souldiers so amazed at the present difficulties, that the *Confederates* only casting stones on them from the tops of the Mountains, made them leap into the Lakes adjoyning. This hapned in the year 1315. Grown confident by this success, they brought the new *Canton* of *Lucern* into their confederacy by the force of Arms, *Anno* 1332, and that of *Zurich* by their reputation and like hope of Liberty, *Anno* 1351, in which year those of *Zug*, and *Glaris* invaded by the former five and willing to discharge themselves of their Lordly Masters, were united to them, as was the new *Canton* of *Bern* in the year next following. In the year 1381, the Towns of *Solothurm* and *Friburg*, descended from the house of *Zeringen*, (at the expiration of that line) upon those of *Habspurg*, revolted from their natural Lords and admitted *Cantons*, occasioned *Leopold* son of *Albert* the *short*, and brother of *Albert* the fourth, Dukes of *Austria*, to make War upon them: in which War being vanquished and slain near *Sempach* a Village of the *Canton* of *Lucern*, with the Flower of his Nobility and Gentry, *Anno* 1386, and the succeeding Dukes not venturing any more against them, the residue of the *Cantons* and Confederates were in time made up.

Having thus cleared themselves of the House of *Austria*, they continued free and unmolested, but never came to any reputation for their valour, till the War made upon them by *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, whom they discomfited in three great Battels, and slew him also in the third. A War commenced by him at the first on small occasions, and less hopes: the Country being so barren, and the people so poor; that their Ambassador to the Duke (as *Comines* reporteth) protested, that if all their Country-men were taken; they would not be able to pay a Ransom, to the value of the Spurs and Bridle-bits in his Camp. Certainly at that time they were so poor, that they knew not what riches was. For having won the first Battel at *Granson* (the other two were those of *Morat* and *Nancy*) one of the goodliest *Pavilions* in the World was by them torn in pieces, and turned into Breeches and Side-coats: divers silver plates and dishes they sold for a *French Sous* (each *Sous* a little more than an *English* penny) supposing them to be but pewter; and a great Diamond of the Dukes, which was the goodliest Jewel in *Christendom*, was sold to a Priest for a *Guilder*; and by him again to some of the Lords of the Country for three *Franks*. After their valour showed in these Battels, *Lewis* the eleventh took them into pension, giving them yearly forty thousand Crowns, *viz.* thenty thousand to the Cantons, and twenty thousand to particular persons: and bowed so much beneath the Majesty of the most *Christian* King, as to learn himself one of the *Burgesses* of their Corporation; and to contend with the Duke of *Savoy*, which of them should be held for their first *Allie*. By these arts, and the nearness of their Forces for those occasions, he wrested *Burgundy* out of the hands of *Mary* the daughter of *Charles*; and *Lewis* the twelfth won *Millain* from *Ludowick Sforze*, whom they perfidiously betrayed as was said before. Upon the merit of these services, they required an augmentation of their pensions: which when this *Lewis* the twelfth denyed, they withdrew themselves from the Amity of the *French*, and entered into the service of Pope *Julio* the second; who therefore stiled them the *Defenders of the Church*, *Anno* 1510. The fruits of which entertainment was the defeat of the whole forces of King *Lewis*, and the loss of *Millain*; into which *Maximilian Sforze*, the son of *Ludowick*, was solemnly re-inflated by the Confederates: who to oblige the *Switzers* more firmly to him, gave them those Towns and Vallies in the *Alpes* of *Italy* (formerly members of that Dukedom) which now belong unto the *Switzers*; reckoned amongst the *Præfectures* of their Common-wealth. *Francis* the first in pursuance of his claim to *Millain*, gave them a great and memorable overthrow at the Battel of *Marignan*. Yet afterwards considering what damage his Realm had sustained by the revolt of the Auxiliaries to his Enemies, he renewed the *Confederation* with them; on condition that he should restore the antient pension of forty thousand Crowns; secondly, that he should pay unto them at certain terms, six hundred thousand Crowns; thirdly that he should entertain four thousand of them in his pay continually; fourthly, that for the restoring of such places as they had taken from the Dutchy of *Millain*, he should give unto them thirty thousand Crowns: fifthly, that he should give them three months pay before-hand: sixtly and lastly, that *Maximilian Sforze*, whom they had estated in *Millain*, and were now going to dispossess, might by the King be created Duke of *Nemores*, endowed with twelve thousand *Franks* of yearly revenue, and married to a daughter of the blood royal. On these conditions, as honorable to them as burthensom to the King, was the League renewed, *Anno* 1522, since which time, they have obtained, that six hundred of their Country are to be of the *French* King's Guard; five hundred of which wait without at the gates of the Court, the other hundred in the great Hall. And yet the *French* Kings did not so ingross the Market, though they raised the price of the commodity, but that all other Princes might have them also for their Money: the Kings of *Spain* and others bidding fair for them, but never

never going ſo high as the *French* had done. At laſt, upon the differences which grew amongſt themſelves in point of *Religion* they grew to be divided alſo in point of *Penſion*: the *Popiſh Cantons* taking penſions of the Pope, and the King of *Spain*; the *Proteſtants* of the *French*; the mixt, of both; and all, of the *Venetians*. By which means being bribed and corrupted by all, they came in very little time to be truſted of none. Which ſudden ſinking of that fame and reputation which they had attained to, together with the reaſons of it; that notable Stateſman and Hiſtorian *Guicciardine* doth deſcribe as followeth: "The name (ſaith he) of this wild "and uncivil Nation hath got great honour by their "Concord, and glory by Arms. For being fierce by na-"ture, inured to War, and exact keepers of Military diſ-"cipline, they have not only defended their own Coun-"try, but have won much praiſe in foreign parts: which "doubtleſs had been greater, if they had ſought to in-"large their own Empire, and not for wages to inlarge "the Empire of others; and if nobly they had pro-"pounded unto themſelves any other ends, than the "gain of money; by the love whereof being made ab-"ject, they have loſt the opportunity of becoming fear-"ful to *Italy*. For ſince they never came out of their "confines, but as *mercenary* men, they have had no pub-"lick fruit of their Victories: but by their covetouſneſs "have become intolerable in their actions where they "overcame, and in their demands with other men; yea "at home froward and obſtinate in their concluſions, as "well as in following their commands under whoſe pay "they ſerve in War. Their chief men have penſions of "ſeveral Princes to favour them in their publick meet-"ings: and ſo private profit being preferred before the "good of the publick, they are apt to be corrupted, and "fall at diſcord amongſt themſelves, with great leſſen-"ing of their reputation which they had gotten amongſt "ſtrangers. So he, relating the occurances of the year 1511, which the following iſſue of affairs hath fully verified.

As for the Government of this State, it is meerly *popular*, and that not only in the particular Cantons, but the aggregate body of their Council: the *Gentry* and *Nobility* being either rooted up in thoſe long wars which were betwixt them and their *Vaſſals*, juſtly provoked by thoſe intolerable preſſures and exactions which they laid upon them; or elſe worn out of memory and obſervation, for want of ſway and ſuffrage in the Councils of the Common-wealth. Only in *Schaffehauſen*, *Baſil*, and *Zurich*, are ſome Gentry left, not capable of any place or *ſufferage* in the *Senate* of the ſaid *Cantons* (from which they are excluded by the Common people, becauſe they joyned not with them in their firſt revolt) unleſs they wave their *Gentry*, and be enrolled amongſt the number of *Plebeians*. The reſt they have (it ſeemeth) in ſo poor eſteem, that *Porters* and *Mechanicks* of the meaneſt Trades, in all occaſions of War, are numbred with, and amongſt theſe *Gentlemen*; making up one ſociety only, and joyning with them in electing the *Maſter of their Company*, who is one of the Senate. But becauſe that every *Canton* hath his proper Magiſtrates, but more or fewer, according as it is in greatneſs, or in the number of its ſeveral *Reſorts*, or Sub diviſions; it will not be amiſs to ſhew what number of *Reſorts* are in every *Canton*: that is to ſay, in *Underwalden* only two, in *Switz* ſix, in *Uren* ten, in *Zug* five, in *Glaris* or *Glarona* fifteen, in *Apenzel* ſix, in *Lucern* ſeven, in *Solothurn* no more than one, in *Friburg* nineteen, in *Baſil* and *Schaffehauſen* but one apiece (the Cantons there and in *Solothurn*, reaching but little further than the Towns themſelves) in that of *Zurich* thirty one, and thirty in that of *Bern*; in all one hundred forty and eight. Of theſe conſiſts the body of this Common-wealth. In ordering whereof, every particular *Canton* hath its proper Magiſtrate, choſen by the Commonalty of that *Canton* (whom they call the *Wuaman*) together with a ſtanding Council aſſiſtant to him, choſen out of the people, for the directing and diſpoſing of their own affairs; which meet and ſit in the chief Town and Village of that *Diſtrict*. But if the cauſe concern the *Publick*, then every *Canton* ſendeth one or more Commiſſioners to the general *Diets*; where they determine of the buſineſs which they meet about, according to the major part of the *Votes*: the Commiſſioners of every *Canton* having one Vote only, though many may be ſent from each, to add the greater weight to their conſultations. The places of meeting is moſt commonly at the Town of *Baden*, in reſpect of the commodity of the Inns and Houſes, the pleaſant ſituation and famous *Medicinal Baths*: and becauſe it is ſeated in the very centre of *Switzerland*, and ſubject to the eight firſt *Cantons*. And here they do determine of War, Peace, and Leagues; of making Laws, of ſending, receiving, and anſwering Ambaſſadors; of Governments, and diſtributing the publick Offices; and finally of difficult Cauſes and Appeals, referred unto the judgment of the *Great Council*. In which the City *Zurich*, chief of the *Cantons*, hath the firſt place, not by antiquity, but dignity, and of old cuſtom hath the greateſt authority of calling together this *Great Council*, ſignifying by Letters to each *Canton*, the cauſe, time, and place of meeting: yet ſo, that if any *Canton* think it for the publick good, to have an extraordinary meeting of their Commiſſioners, they write to them of *Zurich* to appoint the ſame. That which the greater number do reſolve upon, is without delay put in execution.

The Forces of theſe *Swiſſe* conſiſt altogether of Foot, Horſe being found unſerviceable in this Mountainous Country. And of theſe Foot, *Boterus* reckoneth that they are able to raiſe ſixſcore thouſand. Which poſſibly may be true enough, if it be underſtood of all that be able to bear Arms. For otherwiſe *de facto*, the greateſt Army that ever they brought into the field, conſiſted but of one and thirty thouſand men, which was that wherewith they aided the confederate States of *Italy* againſt the *French*, and reſtored *Maximilian Sforze* to the Dukedom of *Millain*. Their ordinary ſtanding Forces are conceived to be ſixteen or ſeventeen thouſand, which they may bring into the field leaving their Towns and Forts well furniſhed. And for their *Revenue*, it is not like to be very great, conſidering the poverty of their Country, and their want of Traffick with other Nations. That which is *ordinary* and in common, ariſeth out of the Annual penſions which they receive from Foreign States; the profits ariſing out of their *Dutch* and *Italian* Prefectures, the Impoſt laid on Wines ſold in Taverns, and Corn uſed by Bakers; and the Rents of a diſſolved Monaſtery called *Kings-field* (or *Conings-field*) becauſe many Kings and Queens have been cloyſtered there, amounting to forty thouſand Guldans yearly. Which Monaſtery was built in the year 1380, in memory and honour of the Emperor *Albertus*, ſlain by his Nephew *Spantback*, nor far from *Baſil*. Their *extraordinary* doth conſiſt of ſpoils that be gotten in the War; which if it be managed in common, are divided in common; but if by two or three of the *Cantons* only, the reſt can claim no ſhare in the booty gotten.

But this is only in relation to the *Switzers* themſelves. For otherwiſe taking in the *Confederate* States as well without as within the bounds of that Country, they are able to raiſe fifty or threeſcore thouſand men; that is to ſay, the *Switzers* themſelves ſeventeen thouſand men, the

the *Grisons* ten thousand, those of *Wallisland* six thousand, the Abbot and Town of S. *Gall* four thousand, the City of *Geneva* two thousand; besides what *Rotwell* and *Mulhausen*, two Imperial Cities, are able to contribute towards it; the Dukes of *Savoy* being bound by their antient Leagues to aid them with six hundred Horses, at his own charges; besides two thousand six hundred Crowns in Annual pensions. But the *Revenue* of those States is ordered by it self apart, and never comes within the computation of the publick; unless it be on the repulsing of a common Enemy, in which they are equally concerned. In which case, and others of a general *interest*, they communicate both heads and purses: the Delegates and Commissioners of all the States of this Confederacy, meeting together to consult of the Common Cause, which meeting they entitle the *Greatest Council*. But this is very seldom held, publick affairs being generally ordered by the Commissioners of the *Switzers* only: though they themselves disclaim that name of *Switzers*, as too mean and narrow, and call themselves *Eidienossen*, that is to say, *Partakers of the sworn Leagues*. More of this Common-wealth he that lists to see, may satisfie himself in *Simler*, who purposely and punctually hath described the same.

The Leagues of the GRISONS.

THE Country of the *GRISONS* comprehendeth all that part of the *Alpes*, which lieth between the Springs of the Rivers *Rhene*, *Inn*, *Adice* or *Athesis*, and *Adna*: being bounded on the East, with the Country of *Tirol*; on the West, with *Switzerland*; on the North, with *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and a part of the *Switzers*; on the South, with *Lombardy*. A Country far more mountainous than any of this *Alpine* tract, and having less natural commodities to boast it self of, more than the Fountains of those Rivers before mentioned.

The People of it by most *Latin* Writers of these times, are called by the name of *Rhæti*, the Country *Rhætia*: and so far properly enough, as that the ancient *Rhæti* did inhabit all the Lands possessed by the *Grisons*: though the *Grisons* do not inhabit a fourth part of those Lands, which were possessed heretofore by the ancient *Rhæti*: For anciently the *Rhæti* did extend their dwellings as far as from the *Alpes* of *Italy*, to the River of *Danow*; comprehending besides, this of the *Grisons*, a great part of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, *Tirol*, *Bavaria*, and so much also of the *Switzers*, as was not in possession of the old *Helvetii*. Within which Tract there were not only many rich Valleys and fruitful Fields; but a most pleasant race of Wines called *Vina Rhætica*, much drank of by *Augustus Cæsar*, and by him preferred before all others; which no man can conceive to grow in this barren Country. More properly *Ammianus Marcellinus* calleth this Tract by the name of *Campi Canini*, Mountainous Fields, which the continual Snow made to look of an hoary hue: and by allusion thereunto, the *Dutchmen* call this Nation at the present by the name of *Graunpuntner*, that is to say, the hoary or *gray Confederates*.

As for the *Rhæti*, take them in the former latitude, they were subdued by *Drusus* and *Tiberius* the Sons-in-law and adopted children of *Augustus Cæsar*, *A.V.C.* 739. And in the time of *Antoninus* made up two Provinces of the Empire, *viz. Rhætia prima*, and *Rhætia secunda*, both of them appertaining by *Constantines* new model, to the *Diocese* of *Italy*. A Nation in the first Original, of *Italian* race, and so more properly to be assigned to that *Diocese*; but had inhabited this Tract, from the time that *Bellovesus* the *Gall* seised on part of *Tuscany*, expelling thence the ancient inhabitants thereof: who under the conduct of *Rhætus*, a great man amongst them, possessed themselves of these Mountains, and afterwards of the Vales adjoyning, which they called *Rhætia*, by the name of their Captain General. This hapned in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, in the first cradle, as it were, of the *Roman* Empire: in the declining age whereof, during the reign of *Valentinian* the third, and *Anastasius*, those parts which lay neerest unto *Germany*, and were worth the conquering, were subdued by the *Almains*, and *Boiarians*; by them incorporated with the rest of their several States. The residue of this Mountainous Tract, as not worth the looking after, continued a member of the Empire; till given by *Charles* the Great to the Bishop of *Chur*; whose successors, being several ways molested by their potent neighbours, confederated with the *Switzers* for their mutual aid and preservation, *Anno* 1497. By whose aid they so valiantly made good their ground against the *Austrians*, that at the last, after the loss of twenty thousand men on both sides, the points in difference were accorded, and a peace concluded.

This is the substance of this story, as to former times, to which there cannot much be added in the way of *History*; little or no alteration hapning in their affairs, but a more perfect setling of them in a form of Government. Concerning which we must observe that this whole Tract is cast into three *Divisions*; that is to say, the *Upper League* or *Liga Grisa*, 2. *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the League of the house of God; 3. The *Lower League* called also *Liga Ditture*, or the League of the ten Commonalties. The eight *Italian Præfectures* will make a fourth. Their buildings generally in the three first being cold and mountainous, are of free-stone, but low, and for three parts of the year covered with Snow: the windows thereof glazed and large, of which for the said three parts of the year they only open a little quarry of Glass, and presently shut it close again; the outside of the windows having leaves of wood, to keep the heat of their Stowes from going out, or any cold from coming in. And as for travelling, the ways are for the most part unsafe and dangerous, by reason of the straight passages, dreadful precipices, and those almost continual Bridges which hang over the terrible falls and *Cataracts* of the River *Rhene*, descending with great violence from the highest Mountains: huge hills of Snow tumbling into the Valleys, with a noise as hideous as if it were a clap of thunder.

For the particulars, the *Upper League* lieth in the highest and most mountainous parts of the *Alpes* of *Italy*, having therein those vast Mountains of *Lockmannier*, and *Der Vogel*; out of which the two streams of the *Rhene* have their first Original. By the *French* it is called *Liga Grise*, or the *Gray League*, (the word *Gris*, or *Grise*, in that Language, being *Gray* in ours) in the same sense as the *Dutch* call it *Graunpuntner*, that is, *Confœderati cani*, which we may render properly the *Confederate Grisle-pates*: either because the Mountains are continually covered with a perriwig of *hoary Isicles*, or from the heads of the people, *Gray* before their time. It consisteth of nineteen *Resorts* or Commonalties, according to the number of their Vales and Villages; of which four only speak the *Dutch*, all the rest a corrupt *Italian*: and was the first which did confederate with the *Switzers*, from whence the name of *Grisons* came unto the rest, who after joyned with them in the same confederacy. It hath no City nor Town of note. The principal of those that be, are 1. *Ilanter*, the place

ſometimes of the *General Diets* for theſe *Leagues*. 2. *Diſentis*, where is a very rich Monaſtery. 3. Saint *Bernardino*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain *Vogel*. 4. *Maſox*, ſometimes an Earldom, giving name to the Valley *Maſoxer-tal*. 5. *Galouckter*, whence the Vale ſo named, inhabited by none but Basket-makers. 6. *Ruffla*, ſituate on the River *Mueſa*, near *Belinzano*, on the skirts of *Italy*.

2. The ſecond *League*, is *Liga Cadi Dio*, or the *League of the houſe of God*, ſo called becauſe it was the proper Patrimony of the Biſhop and Church of *Chur*: and may be called the *middle League*, as being ſituate between the *upper League* on the Weſt, and the *lower League* upon the Eaſt. It is the greateſt of the three, containing twenty one *Reſorts* or Commonalties: of which nine lie on this ſide the tops of the Mountains towards *Germany*, the reſt towards *Italy*: and yet two only ſpeak the *Dutch*, the others a corrupt *Italian*. The places of moſt note are, 1. *Tintzen*, the *Tinnetio* of *Antoninus*, ſeated amongſt high and inacceſſible Mountains, betwixt *Chur* and the Valley of *Bergel*. 2. *Mur*, (called *Murus* by the ſame *Antoninus*) in the Valley of *Bergel*; a Valley extending from the head of the River *Maira*, towards *Chiavenna*, one of the *Italian* Præfectures. 3. *Stalla*, called *Bevio* by the *Italians*, becauſe the way doth in that place divide it ſelf. 4. *Jacomo* (in the vally of *Compoltſchin*) called *Travaſede* by *Antoninus*. 5. *Sinnada*, in the vally of *Engadin*. And 6. *Chur*, by ſome *Coira*, but more truly *Curia*, ſo called from the long ſtay that *Conſtantine* the Great made here with his Court and Army, in a War intended againſt the *Germans*; built afterwards by ſome part of his Forces which continued here, *Anno* 357, about half a *Dutch* mile from the meeting of the two ſtreams of the *Rhene*, in form triangular, the buildings indifferent in themſelves, but not uniform with one another. High on a Hill; in one corner of which ſtandeth the *Cloſe*, and therein the Cathedral Church, a ſtately Edifice, but more in accompt of the Natives who have ſeen no fairer, than it is with ſtrangers: and near the Church the Biſhop's Palace, and the houſes of the *Canons*, all well built, and handſomly adorned. The Biſhop of this City, and of all the Country of theſe *Leagues* (for they recieved their *Biſhop* and the *Faith* together, *Anno* 489) acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Mentz* for their *Metropolitan*; is reckoned for a *Prince of the Empire*, and the rightful Lord both of this City and the whole League: but on the introduction of the *Reformed Religion*, which they had from the *Switzers* and *Genevians*, the Citizens withdrew themſelves from their obedience to the Biſhop, and govern the City in the manner of a *Free State*. So far conformable to him, for their own preſervation, that as the Biſhop and his Canons, with the reſt of this *League*, upon occaſion of the wrongs done them by the Houſe of *Auſtria*, Lords of the neighbouring *Tirol*; joyned in confederacy with the ſeven firſt *Cantons* of the *Switzers* (which was in the year 1498.) So did the Citizens of *Chur*, after they had withdrawn themſelves from the command of their Biſhops, concur with them at laſt in that mutual *League*.

3. The third *League* of theſe *Griſons*, is the *Lower League*, called alſo *Liga Ditture*, or the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*; ſituate cloſe upon *Tirol*, in the North-eaſt part of the whole Country. Of all the ten, two only, which are thoſe of *Malans* and *Meienfield*, obey the joynt commands of the three Leagues of the *Griſons*: the other eight being ſubject to the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria* under whom they are ſuffered to enjoy their ancient priviledges, for fear of uniting with the *Switzers*; which hitherto they have not done. Only they did unite together in one common League, *Anno* 1436, conditioning their mutual defence againſt all Enemies, preſervation of their peace, and maintenance of their priviledges; reſerving notwithſtanding their obedience to their natural Lords. In which reſpect, and by reaſon of the intereſs and ſociety which they have with the reſt of the *Griſons*, they are in friendſhip with the *Swiſſe*, but in no confederacy. City or Walled-Town they have none. The chief of thoſe they have, are 1. *Caſtels*, the ſeat of the Governour for the Arch-Duke of *Auſtria*: 2. *Malans*, and 3. *Meienfield*, both bordering upon the *Rhene*. 4. *Tanaan*, giving name to the firſt and greateſt of the ten juriſdictions, the chief Town of this *League*, in which are held the *General Diets* for the ſame; and where are kept Monuments and Records which concern their Priviledges. In this *League* is the Mountain called *Rhetico mons*, by *Pomponius Mela*, but now *Prettigower-berg*, becauſe it is at the end of the vally which the *Dutch* call *Prettigow*.

4. As for the *Italian Præfectures* they are eight in number, and were given unto the *Griſons* by *Maximilian Sforze*, Duke of *Millain*, *Anno* 1513, at ſuch time as he gave the like preſent to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*. Of theſe the firſt is called *Plurs*, ſo called from the chief Town of the ſame name, in Latin *Plura*, once ſeated in a Plain at the foot of the *Alpes*, near the River *Maira*, the chief of ſundry Villages lying in the ſame bottom; now nothing but a deep and bottomleſs Gulf. For on the 26 of *Auguſt* 1617, an huge Rock falling from the top of the Mountains, overwhelmed the Town, killed in the twinckling of an eye 1500 people, and left no ſign or ruin of a Town there ſtanding; but in the place thereof a great Lake of ſome two miles length. 2. *Chiarama*, ſituate in a pleaſant valley ſo called, near the River *Maira*, and ten *Italian* miles from the *Lake* of *Como*. *Antoninus* calleth it *Clavenna*, and the *Dutch Clevener-tal*, or the valley of *Cleven*, more near unto the ancient name. 3. The *Valtoline*, *Vallis Tolina* in the *Latin*, a pleaſant valley, extending threeſcore miles in length, from the head of the River *Aada*, unto the fall thereof in the Lake of *Como*: the Wines thereof are much commended, and frequently tranſported on this ſide the *Alpes*. It is divided into ſix Præfectures, according to the names of the principal Towns. The chief whereof, are 1. *Bormio*, ſeated near the head of the River *Aada*. 2. *Teio*, the chief Fortreſs of the whole valley. 3. *Sondrio*, the chief Town, and the Seat of the Governour, or Lieutenant General of the whole Country. This Valley lying opportunely for the paſſage of the King of *Spain*'s Forces, out of *Millain* into *Germany*, by the practices and treaſons of *Rodolphus Planta* one of the Natives of it, and of the *Romiſh* Religion; was delivered to the Duke of *Feria*, being then Governour of *Millain*, *Anno* 1622, the whole Country brought under the obedience of that King, *Chur* it ſelf forced and taken by them, and the Religion of *Rome* ſetled in all parts thereof. But two years after, by the joynt Forces of the *French*, *Venetians*, and *Savoyards*, the whole Vally was recovered from the *Spaniards*, and after a long treaty between *France* and *Spain*, the *Griſons* re-eſtated in their juſt poſſeſſions, *Anno* 1630, ſave that the *Spaniard* ſtill holds the Fort of *Fuentes*, for the ſafer paſſage of his Forces, if occaſion be.

Such is the ſtate of the *three Leagues* conſidered ſeverally and apart from one another. In reference to the whole, they make up one Government, or Commonwealth; for ordering whereof they hold a *General Diet*, once in every year, conſiſting of threeſcore and three Commiſſioners: that is to ſay, 28 from the *Upper League*, 23 from the *League of the Houſe of God*, and 14 from the *League of the ten Juriſdictions*.

Theſe

these have authority to determine of *Appeals* from the common Prefectures, to conclude of Peace and War, Confederacies, Ambassies, and Laws, which concern the publick: yet so, that in a point of *Judicature*, it is lawful to appeal unto the *Commonalties* of every *League*, who have authority if need be, to reverse the sentence; the causes being severally proposed, and passed by the major part of voices. The Government of each League, *popular*, as amongst the *Switzers*.

There are in these *Alpine* Provinces.

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13

Universities 4.

i. e.

1 *Turin.* 3 *Basil.*
2 *Geneva.* 4 *Zurich.*

OF

FRANCE.

HAving thus crossed the *Alpes*, we may indifferently dispose our selves for *France* or *Germany*. But, we will follow the Course and Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire, which first passed into *France*, before it medled with the *Germans*; and had brought *Spain* & *Britain* under the Form of *Roman* Provinces, when *Germany* was looked on at a greater distance.

FRANCE then, according to the present dimensions of it, is bounded on the East, with a branch of the *Alpes*, which divide *Dauphine* from *Piemont*; as also, with the Countries of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, and some parts of *Germany*, and the *Netherlands*; on the West, with the *Aquitan Ocean*, and a Branch of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, with the *English* Ocean, and some parts of *Belgium*; and on the South, with the rest of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, and the *Mediterranean*.

The Figure of it, is almost Square, each side of the *Quadrature* being reckoned 6000 miles in length. But, they that go more exactly to work upon it, make the length hereof to be 660 *Italian* miles; the breadth 570 only; the whole Circumference to amount to 2040. Seated in the Northern Temperate Zone, between the middle *Parallel* of the Fifth *Clime*, where the longest day is 15 hours; and the middle *Parallel* of the Eighth *Clime*, where the longest day is 16 hours and an half.

It hath this present Name of *France*, from the *Franci*, or *Franks*, a people of *Germany*, who seised upon those parts of it which lay neerest to the *Rhene*, in the time of *Valentinian* the third; and, having afterwards subdued *Paris*, and made it the Seat-Royal of their growing Empire, they caused the Country thereabouts, to be called *France*. Which Name, as they enlarged their borders, they imposed on, or communicated rather, to the rest of this Country, and to those parts of *Germany* also, which were conquered by them. At which time, for distinction sake, they called the East parts of their whole Empire, by the name of *Osten-reich*, or *Austrasia*, lying now wholly out of *France*, in *Germany*, and that part of *Belgium*, which is subject to the King of *Spain*: and for the West parts thereof, they have the name of *Westen-riech*, or *Westrasia*, (in the barbarous *Latin* of that Age) *West France*, or *Francia Occidentalis*; to which, the name of *France* was at last appropriated, according to the limits before laid down.

Anciently, it was called *Gallia*, and the people, *Galli*; and by that name occurrs, most commonly, in the Writers of the *Roman* story: and *Gallia Transalpina*, because situate on the further side of the *Alpes*, from *Italy*, to difference it from the Country of those *Gauls*, which being planted in those parts which we now call *Lombardy*, was called *Cisalpina*. Sometimes it was called *Galatia* also, and by that name known amongst the *Greeks*: by *Ptolomy* called *Celto-Galatia*, or the *Galatia* of the *Celtæ*, a potent Nation of old *Gaul*; to distinguish it from *Galatia* one of the Provinces of *Asia minor*, denominated from the *Galatians*, or *Gauls*, of this Country. Whence it became so named, is not yet determined. Some think it was called *Gallia*, from the *Greek* word Γάλα (*Gala*) signifying Milk, *quia Lacteos*, i. e. *albos homines producebat*, for the milky and white complexion of the people, compared to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, who first imposed it. Others, and amongst them, *Diodorus Siculus*, derive the name from *Galata*, a son of *Hercules*; to which that of *Galatia* comes as near as may be. That *Hercules* was sometimes in this Country, is affirmed also by *Ammianus Marcellinus*; who further adds, That after he had suppressed those Tyrants which oppressed the people, he begat many Children on the principal Women; *Et eas partes quibus imperitabant, nominibus suis appellasse*, *Lib.* XL, Who gave their own names to those parts over which they ruled. But, in another place, acknowledging, That the *Græcians* call this people, *Galatæ*, (*ita enim* Gallos *sermo* Græcus *appellat*) he telleth us from *Timogenes* an ancient Author, one very diligent in the search of the *Gallick* Antiquities, that the *Aborigines*, or first Inhabitants hereof, called themselves *Celtæ*, by the name of one of their Kings, whom they highly honoured; *Et matris ejus vocabulo Galatas*, and *Galatæ*, from the name of his Mother *Galata*; who, properly enough, might be a daughter of *Hercules*, mistook by *Diodorus*, for one of his sons.

Of the Original of this people, more anon. In the mean time, we may take so much notice of the ancient *Gaul* as to affirm him (out of *Cæsar*, and other Authors) to be quik-witted, of a sudden and nimble apprehension; but withal, very rash and hair-brain'd, (*ut sunt subita* Gallorum *ingenia*, is a note set upon them by the Pen of *Cæsar*:) so full of Law-suits and Contentions, that their Lawyers near wanted work. *Gallia Causidicos*, &c. as that Poet hath it; of vehement affections, and precipitate in all their actions, as well Military, as Civil: falling on like a Clap of Thunder, and presently going off in Smoak. *Primus impetus major quàm virorum, secundus minor quàm fœminarum*, was a part also of their Character, in the time of *Florus* the Historian. And though the present *French* be generally of another Original; yet, there is so much of the old *Gaul* still left among them, either by the impression of the Heavenly Bodies, or by Inter-marriages with the *Gauls*, as they overcame them; that all the qualities are still predominant

minant in the *French*; not differing from the ancient *Gaul*, but in Name and Habit. For further evidence whereof, take with you a Comparison, homely I must confess, but to the life expressing the nature of the *French*, compared with the *Dutch* and *Spanish*, in matters of War. The *French* is said to be like a *Flea*, quickly skipping into a Country, and soon leaping out of it; as was the Expedition of *Charles* the Eight, into *Italy*. The *Dutch* is said to be like a *Lowse*, slowly mastering a place, and as slowly (yet at last) driven out of their hold; as was their taking and losing of *Ostend* and *Gulick*. The *Spaniard* is said to be like a *Crab*, or *Pediculus inguinalis*, which being once crept into a place, is so rooted there, that nothing but the extremity of Violence, can fetch him out again. In which, I think I need not instance; it being generally observed, that the *Spaniards* will endure all possible hardship, before they will part with any thing that they are possessed of. It is used also for a By-word, *That the* Italian *is wise before-hand, the* Dutch *in the time of action, and the* French *after it is done*: a Wisdom much like that of the ancient *Gauls*. Nor are they less Litigious than the old *Gauls* were: insomuch as it is thought, that there are more Law-suits tryed among them in seven years, than have been in *England* from the Conquest, till the time of King *James*. They are great Scoffers, yea even in matters of *Religion*, as appeareth by the story of a Gentleman lying sick on his death-bed, who, when the Priest had perswaded him, that the *Sacrament of the Altar* was the very Body and Blood of CHRIST, refused to eat thereof, *because it was Friday*. Nor can I forget another in the same extremity; who seeing the *Host* (for so they call the Consecrated Elements) brought unto him by a Lubberly Priest, said, *That* CHRIST *came to him, as he entred into* Jerusalem, *riding upon an Ass*. As for the Women, they are said to be witty, but apish, wanton, and incontinent; where a man at his first entrance, may find acquaintance; and at his first acquaintance, may find an entrance. So *Dallington*, in his *View of France*, describeth them. But I have since heard this *Censure* condemned of some Uncharitableness, and the *French* Gentlewomen highly magnified for all those Graces which may beautifie and adorn that Sex. And it is possible enough, that it may be so in some particulars, though it be more than any man would guess at, that cometh amongst them. For, generally, at the first sight you shall have them as familiar with you, as if they had known you from your Cradle; and are so full of Chat and Tattle, even with those they know not, as if they were resolved sooner to want Bread, than Words; and never to be silent, but in the Grave.

As to the persons of this People, they are commonly of a middle stature, and for the most part, of a sleight making; their Complexion being generally hot and moist; which makes them very subject to the heats of lust, and easily inclinable unto those Diseases which are concomitants thereof. Their Constitution somewhat tender, if not dilicate; which rendereth them impatient of Toil and Labour; and is, in part, the cause of those ill successes which have happned to them in the Wars; in which they have lost as much for want of constancy and perseverance in their Enterprizes, as they have gained by their Courage in the undertaking. And for the *Women*, they are, for the most part, very personable, of straight bodies, slender wasts, and a fit *symmetry* of proportion in all the rest; their hands white, long, and slender, and easily discernable to be so; for, either they wear no Gloves at all, or else so short, as if they were cut off at the hand-wrist. To these, the Complexion of their Faces, and the Colour of their Hair, too much enclining to the black, holds no true *Decorum*. 'Tis true, the Poets commend *Leda* for her black hair, and not unworthily; *Leda fuit* nigris, *conspicienda comis*, as it is in *Ovid*. But this was specially, because it set off, with the greater lustre, the amiable sweetness of her *Complection*; for in that case, the Hair doth set forth the Face, as Shadows commonly do a Picture; and the Face so becometh the Hair, as a *Field Argent* doth a *Sable bearing*; which kind of Coat, our *Critical Heralds* call the *most fair*. But when a Black Hair meets with a Brown or Swarthy complexion, it falls short of that attractiveness of Beauty, which *Ovid*, being so great a *Crasis-Master* in the *Art of Love*, did commend in *Leda*.

The chief Exercises they use, are, 1. *Tennis*; every Village having a *Tennis-Court*, *Orleans* 60, *Paris* many hundreds. 2. *Dancing*; a sport to which they are so generally affected, that were it not so much inveighed against by their straight-laced Ministers, it is thought that many more of the *French Catholicks* had been of the *Reformed Religion*. For, so extreamly are they bent upon this disport, that neither Age, nor Sickness, no nor Poverty it self, can make them keep their heels still when they hear the Musick. Such as can hardly walk abroad without their Crutches or go as if they were troubled all day with a *Sciatica*, and perchance have their raggs hang so loose about them that one would think a swift *Galliard* might shake them into their nakedness, will to the *Dancing-green* howsoever, and be there as eager at the sport as if they had left their several infirmities and wants behind them. What makes their *Ministers* (and indeed, all that follow the *Genevian Discipline*) inveigh so bitterly against *Dancing*, and punish it with such severity when they find it used, I am not able to determine, nor doth it any way belong unto this Dicourse. But being it is a *Recreation* which this People are so given unto, and such a one as cannot be followed, but in a great deal of company, and before many witnesses and spectators of their carriage in it; I must needs think the *Ministers* of the *French Church* more nice than wise, if they chuse rather to deter men from their *Congregations* by so strict a *Stoicism*, than indulge any thing unto the jollity and natural *gaiety* of this People, in matters not *offensive*, but by *accident* only.

The Language of this People is very voluble and pleasant; but rather *Elegant*, than *Copious*; and therefore much troubled for want of proper words to find out *Periphrases*: besides that very much of it is expressed in the action; the head and shoulders move as significantly toward it, as the lips and tongue; and he that hopeth to speak it with any good grace, must have somewhat in him of the *Mimick*. A Language enriched with great plenty of *Proverbs*, and consequently, a great help to the *French* humour of Scoffing; and so naturally disposed for Courtship, as makes all the people complemental; the poorest *Cobler* in the Parish, hath his *Court-cringes*, and his *Beaubeuiste de Cour*, his *Court-holy-water*, (as they call it) as perfectly as the best *Gentleman-Huisher* in *Paris*. Compared with that of other Nations, the *Language* of the *Spaniards* is said to be *Manly*; the *Italian*, *Courtly*; and the *French*, *Amorous*. A sweet Language it is, without question, the people leaving out in their pronunciation, many of their *Consonants*; and thereby giving occasion to this By-word, That *the* French-man *pronounceth not as he writes, singeth not as he pricketh, nor speaks as he thinketh*. In the Original thereof, it is a compound of the old *Gallick*, *German*, and *Latin* Tongues; the old *Gallick* being questionless the same with the *Welsh* or *British*, as appeareth clearly by these Reasons. 1. The *Latin* words are known to

have

have been received from the *Romans*; and the *German* words, at the coming in of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*; but the *Welch* words which they have, we can give no reason, but that they are the remainder of their ancient Language; of which *Welch* words, which ſtill continue in that Language, *Cambden*, in his *Britannia*, reckoneth not a few. 2. It is ſaid by *Tacitus*, that the *Britans* were the Deſcendents of the *Gauls*; and this he proveth, as by other Arguments, ſo from the identity or near reſemblance of the Language which both Nations ſpeak. *Utriuſque ſermo haud multum diverſus*, as his own words are. And 3. it is ſaid by *Cæſar*, That the *Gauls* uſed to paſs into *Britan*, to be inſtructed in the Rites and Learning of the *Druids*; which ſhoweth that both People ſpake but one common Tongue; there being, in thoſe times, no one Learned Language which other Nations ſtudied, beſides their own.

The ſoyl is extraordinary fruitful, and hath three Load-ſtones to draw riches out of other Countries, *Corn*, *Wine*, and *Salt*; in exchange for which, there is yearly brought into *France* 1200000*li.* Sterling, the Cuſtom of Salt, only to the King, being eſtimated at 700000 Crowns *per annum*. And indeed, the benefit ariſing on this one Commodity, is almoſt incredible; it being conſtituted by the King's Edict, (which is all in all) That no man ſhall have any Salt for Domeſtick uſes, (except by ſpecial Priviledg, and that dearly paid for) but what he muſt buy of the King's Officers, and that upon ſuch prices too, as they pleaſe to ſell it. Nor can it but be very well ſtored with *Fiſh*: for, beſides the benefit of the Seas, their Lakes and Ponds belonging to the Clergy only, are ſaid to be 135000. Their other Merchandizes are, Beeves, Hogs, Nuts, Wood, Skins, vaſt quantities of all ſorts of Linen. And, to ſay truth, there are not many Countries in the Chriſtian World, to which Nature hath been ſo prodigal of her choiceſt bleſſings, as ſhe hath to this; the Fields thereof, being large and open, and thoſe ſo intermingled with *Corn* and *Vines*, and every hedg-row ſo beſet with choice of Fruits, that never any covetous or curious Eye, had a fairer object. And yet ſo miſerable is the condition of the common Peaſant; partly by reaſon of the intolerable Taxes laid upon him by the King; and partly, by thoſe great, but uncertain Rents, which are ſet upon him by his Landlord, (for, the poor husband-man is *Tenant* only at the *will of his Lord*) that there is many one amongſt them, who farmeth yearly thirty or forty Acres of Wheat and Vines, that never drinks Wine, nor eats good Bread, from one end of the year unto the other.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was planted firſt amongſt the *Gauls*, by ſome of St. *Peter*'s Diſciples, ſent hither by him at his firſt coming to *Rome*: *Xyſtus*, *Fronto*, and *Julianus*, the firſt Biſhops of *Rhemes*, *Perigort*, and *Mants*, (*Cenomanenſium*, in the *Latin*) being ſaid to be of his ordaining, in the *Martyrologies*. The like may be affirmed (but on ſurer grounds) of *Trophimus*, the firſt Biſhop of *Arles*. For, on a Controverſie betwixt the Arch-biſhops of *Vienna* and *Arles*, for the dignity of *Metropolitan*, in the time of Pope *Leo* the firſt, it was thus pleaded in behalf of the Biſhop of *Arles*, *Quod prima inter Gallias*, &c. That *Arles*, of all the Cities of *Gaul*, did firſt obtain the happineſs of having *Trophimus* ordained Biſhop thereof, by the hands of St. *Peter*. Nor is St. *Paul* to be denied the honour of ſending ſome of his Diſciples thither alſo to preach the Goſpel; *Creſcens* ſent by him, as he telleth us, 2 *Tim.* 4. into *Galatia*, being the firſt Biſhop of *Vienna*, ſpoken of before; as, not the *Martyrologies* only, but *Ado Viennenſis*, an ancient Writer of that Church, doth expreſly ſay. And that it was into this Country that he ſent that *Creſcens* at that time, and not unto *Galatia* in *Aſia minor*, the teſtimonies of *Epiphanius* and *Theodoret*, which affirm the ſame, and that which hath been ſaid before of this name of *Galatia*, may confirm ſufficiently. But *Chriſtianity* being deſtroyed by the *French* at the firſt coming hither, was again planted by the induſtry of St. *Remigius*, the firſt Biſhop of *Rhemes*, *Clovis*, or *Clodivæus* the fifth, King of the *French*, giving way unto it for his Wives ſake, who was zealous in it; and after taking unto himſelf that holy Calling, on a great victory which he won againſt the *Almains*; by whom, being over-laid in the day of Battel, he made his prayers to CHRIST, whom his Wife *Clotilda* worſhipped; vowing to be of that *Religion*, if he got the Victory: Which Vow he had no ſooner made, (as the Story telleth us) but *Alemannos invaſit timor*, a ſudden fear fell upon the *Almains*, and the *French* were Conquerors.

At this time they are divided in *Religion*, as in other places; ſome following the Doctrine of the Church of *Rome*; and others, that of thoſe *Reformed Churches* which adhere to *Calvin*. But this diviſion is more ancient than *Calvin*'s days; the ſame opinions (as they relate unto the Errors in the *Romiſh* Church) being maintained formerly by the *Albigenſes*, the *Waldenſes*, or *Pauperes de Lugduno*, (the *Vaudoys*, as the *French* Writers call them) of whom we ſhall ſpeak more, when we come to *Lyons*. Suffice it in this place to note, That the Doctrine of the *Reformed Churches* was not new in *France*, when *Zuinglius* firſt preached againſt the ſuperſtitions of the Maſs, and the worſhip of Images; and *Calvin* travelled in advancing the *Reformation*, though much ſuppreſſed as to the outward profeſſion of it. But, being revived by their endeavours, it ſprung out again, and ſpread it ſelf ſo ſpeedily in this Kingdom, that there were reckoned in the year 1560, above 1240 Churches of them; which cannot, in ſuch a long time, but be wonderfully augmented, though ſcarce any of them have ſcaped ſome Maſſacre or other. Of theſe Maſſacres, two are moſt memorable, *viz.* that of *Merindol* and *Chabriers*, as being the firſt; and the Maſſacre of *Paris*, as being the greateſt. That of *Merindol* hapned in the year 1545; the Inſtrument of it, being *Minier*, the Preſident of the Council of *Aix*: for, having condemned this poor people of *Hereſie*, he muſtred a ſmall Army, and ſet fire on the Villages. They of *Merindol*, ſeeing the flame, with their Wives and Children fled into the Wood; but were there butchered, or ſent to the Gallies. One Boy they took, placed him againſt a Tree, and ſhot him with Calievers; 25 which had hid themſelves in a Cave, were in part ſtifled, in part burned. In *Chabriers*, they ſo inhumanly dealt with the young Wives and Maids, that moſt of them dyed immediatly after. The Men and Women were put to the Sword; the Children were *re-baptized*; 800 Men were murdered in a Cave, and 40 Women, were put together in an old Barn, and burned. Yea, ſuch was the Cruelty of theſe Souldiers to theſe poor Women, that when ſome of them had clambred to the top of the Houſe, with an intent to leap down, the Souldiers beat them back again with their Pikes. The *Maſſacre* of *Paris* was more cunningly plotted. A Peace was made with the *Proteſtants*; for the aſſurance wherof, a Marriage was ſolemnized between *Henry* of *Navarre*, chief of the *Proteſtant* Party, and the Lady *Marguerite* the King's Siſter. At this Wedding, there aſſembled the Prince of *Conde*, the Admiral *Coligni*, and divers others of chief note; but there was not ſo much Wine drank, as Blood ſhed at it. At midnight the Watch-Bell rung, the King of *Navarre*, and the Prince of *Conde* are taken priſoners, the Admiral murdered in his bed, and 30000, at the leaſt, of the

the greateſt and moſt potent men of the *Religion*, ſent by the way of the *Red Sea*, to find the neareſt paſſage to the Land of *Canaan*, *Anno* 1572. Yet notwithſtanding theſe *Maſſacres*, and the long and frequent Wars which were made againſt them by their Kings, they grew ſo numerous, and got unto ſo great a Power; that partly by *Capitulations* with the *French* Kings, at the end of every *Civil War*; but principally, by the connivence of King *Henry* the fourth, who was ſometimes the *Head* of their party, they had gotten above Three hundred Walled Towns and Garriſons, and were abſolute Maſters, in effect, of all thoſe Provinces which lye along the *Aquitain* ſhore, and the *Pyrenees*, from the *Mediteranian* Sea, to the River of *Loyre*. But, being grown too inſolent by reaſon of ſo great a Strength, and ſtanding upon terms with the King, as a *Free Eſtate*, (the *Commonwealth* of *Rochel*, as King *Henry* the fourth was uſed to call it) they drew upon themſelves the Jealouſie and Fury of King *Lewis* the thirteenth. Who ſeeing that he could not otherwiſe diſſolve the Knot of their Combination, than by the Sword, drew it out at laſt; and was ſo fortunate in the ſucceſs of his Undertakings, that in Two years, (*viz.* *Anno* 1621, 1622) he ſtripped them of all their Walled Towns, except *Montalbon* and *Rochel* only; and thoſe two he reduced not long after, by the power of his Arms, leaving them nothing to rely on for their future ſecurity, but the Grace and Clemency of their King, promerited by their Obedience and Integrity. And it hath ſped ſo well with them ſince that time, that they never had the exerciſe of their *Religion* with ſo much freedom, as they have hitherto enjoyed ſince the reducing of their Forts and Garriſons to the Kings obedience.

The other Party in *Religion*, having the countenance of the *State*, and the preſcription and poſſeſſion of ſo many years to confirm the ſame, is in as proſperous a condition both for *Power* and *Patrimony*, as any that acknowledgeth the Authority of the Popes of *Rome*. In point of *Patrimony*, the Author of the *Cabinet* computes the Tythes and Temporal Revenues of the *Clergy*, beſides Proviſions of all ſorts, to 80 Millions of Crowns: but this accompt is diſallowed by all knowing men. *Bodin* reporteth from the mouth of *Monſieur Alemant*, one of the *Preſidents* of *Accompts* in *Paris*, that they amount to 12 Millions, and 300000 of their *Livres*, which is 1200000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* money: and he himſelf conceiveth, that they poſſeſs ſeven parts of twelve, of the whole Revenues of that Kingdom. The Book, entituled *Comment d'Eſtat*, gives a lower eſtimate; and reckoning that there are in *France* 200 millions of *Arpens* (which is a meaſure ſomewhat bigger than our *Acre*) aſſigneth 47 millions, which is near a fourth part of the whole, to the *Gallican Clergy*. And then it is reſolved by all that the *Baiſemain*, (as they call it) which conſiſts of Offerings, Churchings, Burials, *Dirigies*, and ſuch like Caſualties, amounteth to as much *per annum*, as their ſtanding Rents. Upon which ground Sir *Edwin Sandys* computeth their *Revenue* at ſix millions yearly. And to ſay truth, there needs a very great Revenue to maintain their numbers; there being reckoned in this Kingdom, 13 Arch-biſhops, 104 Biſhops, 1450 Abbots, 540 Arch-Priories, 12320 Priories, 567 Nunneries, 700 Convents of Friers, 259 *Commanderies* of *Malta*: beſides the Colledges of the *Jeſuites*, which being of a late foundation, are not here accompted. And for the *Pariſh-Prieſts*, they are reckoned at 130000 of all ſorts, taking in *Deacons*, *Sub-deacons*, and all thoſe of Inferior Orders, which have ſome Miniſtry in their Churches, the number of which was reckoned, in the time of King *Lewis* the 11*th*, to be little leſs than 100000. But then 'tis like, that *Chanteries* and *Free Chappels* went in that accompt; or elſe the *Hugenots* in the Wars have deſtroyed more Churches than they are like to build again in haſte; there being found in *France* on a juſt Accompt, no more than 27400 Pariſh-Churches, beſides *Oratories* and *Chappels of Eaſe* appertaining to them. In which there are ſuppoſed to live 15 millions of people, whereof the *Clergy*, and the Miniſters depending on them, do make up 3 millions, which is a fifth part of the whole. And for their *Power*, the *Gallican Clergy* ſtands more ſtoutly to their natural Rights againſt the Uſurpations and Encroachments of the See of *Rome*, than any other that lives under the Pope's Authority; which they acknowledg ſo far only, as conſiſtent with their own Priviledges, and the Rights of their Soveraign. For neither did they in long time ſubmit to the Decrees of the Council of *Trent*; nor have they yet admitted of the *Inquiſition*; nor yield ſuch ſtore of Griſt to the Pope's Mill, as probably might redound to him from ſo rich a Clergy. And for his *Temporal Power* over Kings and Princes, it is a Doctrine ſo averſe from the Poſitions and Principles of the *Gallican Church*, that in the year 1610, the Divines of *Paris* publiſhed a Declaration, in which it was affirmed, that the Doctrine of the *Popes Supremacy* was an erroneous Doctrine, and the ground of that Helliſh Poſition, of Depoſing and Killing Kings. And this, indeed, hath conſtantly been the Doctrine of the *Gallican Church*, ſince the time of *Gerſon*, maintaining the Authority of a Council, above that of the Pope.

But to proceed; The men moſt eminent for Learning of either ſide, have been, (beſides thoſe mentioned in the *Alpine* Provinces) *Peter du Moulin*, highly commended for his Eloquence, by the Pen of *Balſac*: *Fr. Junius*, a moderate and grave Divine; *Chamier* the Controverſer, and *Philip de Morney*, Lord of *Pleſſis*. Of the other Party, *Claudius Eſpencæus*, a *Sorbon* Doctor, the famous Cardinal of *Peron*; *Genebrard* the Hiſtorian, *Petavius* a learned *Jeſuit*, &c. In the middle times, St. *Bernard*, Abbot of *Clarevalle*; *Pet. Lombard*, Biſhop of *Paris*, *John Gerſon*, Chancellor of that Univerſity. More anciently, *Proſper* of *Aquitain*, *Caſſianus* the Hermit, *Irenæus* the renowned Biſhop of *Lyons*, (though not here a Native.) And as to men of other Studies, *Auſonius* the Poet *Hotoman* and *Gotfredus*, the Civilians; *Duarenus* the Canoniſt, *Barn. Briſſonius* the great Antiquary, *Iſaac Caſaubon* that renowned Philologer, *Budæus* that great Maſter of the *Greek* Language, *Thuanus* the Hiſtorian, *Laurentius* the Anatomiſt, &c. And as for Military men, it hath been famous for the valour of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*; *Charles Martel*, that ſtout Champion of the Church againſt the *Saracens*; and *Charles* the Great, the Fourth of the Weſtern Empire. In the middle times for *Godfery* of *Bouillon*, one of the Nine Worthies, (as they call them) the ſon of *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogn* in *Picardy*: and in theſe latter days, for King *Henry* the fourth; *Francis* and *Henry*, Dukes of *Guiſe*; *Charles* Duke of *Bayenne*, *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, &c.

The Laws of this Kingdom are either *Temporary*, and alterable at pleaſure; or *Fundamental*, which neither King nor Parliament (as they ſay) can alter. Of this laſt ſort, the principal are, the *Salique* Law, and the Law of *Apennages*. By that of the *Apennage*, the younger Sons of the King are not to have partage in the Kingdom with their Elder Brother. Which Law was made by *Charles* the Great, before whoſe time we find the children of the Kings eſtated in their ſeveral Thrones, and the Realm parcelled out among them into many Kingdoms. But by this Law, they are to be entituled to ſome Dutchy or County, (though they are content ſometimes with Annual penſions) with all the Rights

Rights and Profits thereunto belonging; all matters of Regality (as Levying Taxes, Coynage, and the like) excepted only; which, upon the failing of the Masculine line, do return again unto the Crown. The name thereof derived from *Albamago*, a *German* word, signifying a Portion.

But the main Law they stand on, is the *Salique* Law, by which the Crown of *France* may not descend unto the Females or *fall from the Lance to the Distaff*, as their saying is. Which Law, one undertaking to make good out of Holy Writ, urged that Text of St. *Matthew*, where it is said, *Mark the Lilies*, (which are the Arms of *France*,) *and see how they neither labour nor spin*. This Law they pretend to have been made by *Pharamond* the first King of the *French*; and that the words *Si aliqua*, so often used in it, gave it the name of the *Salique* Law. But *Haillian*, one of their best Writers, affirms, That it was never heard of in *France*, till the time of *Philip* the Long *Anno* 1315; and that it could not possibly be made by *Pharamond*; who though he was the first King of the *French*, had not one foot of Land in *France*: *Clodion*, the son of *Pharamond*, being the first of the *French* Kings which passed over the *Rhene*; their third King, *Merovee* the first that ever fixed his seat in the Modern *France*. Others say, it was made by *Charles* the Great, after the Conquest of *Germany*, where the incontinent lives of the Women, living about the River *Sala*, (in the Modern *Misnia*) gave both the occasion, and the name. *De terra verò* Salica, *nulla portio hæreditatis* mulieri *veniat*, *sed ad* virilem *Sexum tota terræ hæreditas perveniat*, are the words thereof. This *Terra Salica*, the Learned *Selden* in his *Titles of Honour*, Englisheth, *Knights-Fee*, or Land that is holden by *Knights Service*, as our Lawyers call it; and proveth this Interpretation, by a Record of the Parliament of *Bourdeaux*, cited by *Bodinus*; where an old Will or Testament being once produced, in which the *Testator* had bequeathed unto his Son all his *Salique* Land; it was resolved by the Court, That thereby was meant, his Land holden in *Knights Service*. And then the sense thereof must be, That in Lands holden of the King by *Knights Service*, or the like Military tenure, the Male-children should inherit only, because the Females could not perform those Services for which those Lands were given, and by which they were holden. And for this there may be good reason, though in *England* we deal not so unkindly with the Female Sex, but permit them after the age of 15 years, to enjoy such Lands, because they may then take such Husbands as are able to do the King those services which the Law requireth. But this interpretation (how good and genuine indeed soever it be) cannot stand with the *French* Glosa. For then the Crown, being held of none but God, and so not properly to be called a *Fee* or *Feife*, could not be brought within the compass of the *Salique* Law, because not to be counted for *Salique* Land. Give them therefore their own Glosa, their own Etymology and Original; and let us see by what right their Kings Daughters are excluded from their succession to the Diadem. For first, supposing that to be the *Salique* Land which lyeth about the River *Sala*, in the Modern *Misnia*; I would fain know how it could reach unto the King's Daughter in *France*, so far distant from it; or with what honesty they can lay on them the like brand of Incontinency, as was supposed to have been found in those Women of *Germany*? And next, supposing that the Law had been made by *Pharamond*, I would fain learn how it can be applyed to the Crown of *France*, to which *Pharamond* had then no title, nor so much as one foot of Land on that side of the *Rhene*. And finally, supposing that the Law was made in such general terms, as to extend to all the Countries, which the *French* in time to come should conquer, and consequently unto *France* when once conquered by them: I would then ask, Whether it did extend to the Crown alone, or to all subordinate Estates which were holden of it? If unto all Estates holden of that Crown, I would fain know with what pretence they could give sentence in behalf of *Charles* of *Blois*, against *John de Montfort*, in the succession to the Dukedom of *Bretagne*: *Charles* of *Blois* claiming by his Mother, the Neece of *Arthur* the second, by his second son *Guy*: where as *John de Montfort* was the third son (and the next Heir-male) of the said Duke *Arthur*. If only to the Crown of *France*, it would be known by what right they detain that Dukedom from the true Heirs of *Anne* the Dutchess; whose Daughter and Heir, the Lady *Claudè*, being married unto *Francis* the first, had issue, *Henry* the second, and other Children. Which *Henry*, besides *Francis* the second, *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* the third, and *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, all dying without issue, had a Daughter named *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, married to *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, by whom she was made the Mother of *Isabella*, the late Arch-Dutchess, and of *Katharine*, the Wife of *Charles Emanuel*, the late Duke of *Savoy*. Not to say any thing of the pretensions of the House of *Lorrein*, descending from the Lady *Claudè*, the second daughter of King *Henry* the second, and sister of *Isabel*, or *Elizabeth*, Queen of *Spain*. Nor do we find, that the *French* so stand upon this Law, as not to think, that a Succession by and from the Females, is, in some cases, their best Title. For thus we read, That *Pepin* having thrust his Master *Childerick* into a Monastery, to make good his Title to the Crown, (or some colour for it) derived his Pedigree from *Plythilda*, one of the Daughters of *Clotaire* the first, married to *Anspert* the Grandfather of that *Arnulphus*, who was the first *Mayre* of the Palace of *Pepin*'s Family. As also, how *Hugh Capet*, putting aside *Charles* of *Lorrein*, the right Heir of this *Pepin*, to make his lawless Action the more seemingly lawful, drew his descent from some of the Heirs General of *Charles* the Great; his Mother *Adeltheid*, being the Daughter of the Emperor *Henry* the first, surnamed the *Fowler*; who was the son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, by *Luitgardis*, the daughter of the Emperor *Arnulph*, the last Emperor of the *Romans* (or *Germans*) of the House of *Charles*. And it is said of *Lewis* the ninth so renowned for sanctity amongst them, That he never enjoyed the Crown with a quiet Conscience, till it was proved unto him, That by his Grandmother, the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainalt*, he was descended from *Hermingrade* the Daughter of *Charles* of *Lorrein*. Add here, that this supposed *Salique* Law, not only crosseth the received Laws of all Nations else, which admit of Women to the succession in their Kingdoms, where the Crown descends in a succession; and have a great respect both unto their Persons and Posterities in such Kingdoms also where the Kings are said to be Elective, as in *Poland*, *Hungaria*, and *Bohemia*: but, that even *France* it self hath submitted to the Imperious Command of two Women of the *Medices*; and at the present, to the Government of a *Spanish* Princess. So that it is evident, that this Law, by whomsoever made, and how far soever it extended, is of no such force, but that the *Labels* of it may be easily cut in pieces by an *English* Sword well whetted, if there were no other bar to the Title of *England*, than the Authority and Antiquity of the *Salique* Law.

But for my part (if it be lawful for me to dispute this point) I am not satisfied in the right of the *English* Title; supposing the *Salique* Law to be of no such force as the *French* pretended, and measuring the succession in the

Crown

Crown of *France*, to be according to ſucceſſions in the Realm of *England*, on which King *Edward* the 3. ſeemed to ground his claim. For if there were no *Salique* Law to exclude ſucceſſion by the *Females*, as the *Engliſh* did pretend there was not: yet could not *Edward* coming from a Siſter of the three laſt Kings, which reigned ſucceſſively before *Philip* of *Valois*, againſt whom he claimed, be ſerved in courſe, before the Daughters of thoſe Kings (or the *Males* at leaſt deſcending of them) had had their turns in the ſucceſſion of that Kingdom. Of the three Brethren, two left iſſue, viz. *Lewis*, and *Philip*. *Lewis* ſirnamed *Hutin*, Son of *Philip* the fair, and *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, had a Daughter named *Joan*, married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, who was King of *Navarre* in right of his Wife; from which marriage iſſued all the ſucceeding Kings of that Realm, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Burbon*. *Philip*, the ſecond Brother, ſirnamed the *Long*, by *Joan* the daughter of *Otbelin* Earl of *Burgundy*, had a daughter named *Marguerite*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*; from whom deſcended thoſe great Princes of the race of *Burgundy*, the rights whereof are now in the houſe of *Spain*. If then there were no *Salick* Law to exclude the Women and their Sons, *Charles* K. of *Navarre* the ſon of Q. *Joan* and of *Philip de Eureux*, deſcended from *Lewis Hutin* the elder brother; & *Lewis de Malarine* Earl of *Flanders* and *Burgundy*, the ſon of *Lewis* E. of *Flanders*, and of *Marguerite* the daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, the ſecond brother, muſt have precedency of title before King *Edward* the third of *England*, deſcended from a Siſter of the ſaid two Kings, their iſſue ſeverally and reſpectively, before any claiming or deſcending from the ſaid K. *Edward*. So that K. *Edward* the third had ſome other Claim than what is commonly alledged for him in our *Engliſh* Hiſtories; or elſe he had no claim to that Crown at all: and I conceive, ſo wiſe a King, would not have ventured on a buſineſs of ſo great conſequence, without ſome colourable title; though what this title was is not declared for ought I know, by any Writers of our Nation. I believe therefore, that he went upon ſome other grounds, than that of *ordinary ſucceſſion* by the Law of *England*, and claimed that Crown, as the *eldeſt heir male* and neareſt Kinſman to the laſt King. For being Siſters Son to the King deceaſed, he was a degree nearer to him than either the King of *Navar*, or the Earl of *Flanders*, who were the Grand-children of his Brethren: and having priority of either in reſpect of age, had a fair title before either to the Crown of that Kingdom. And on theſe grounds King *Edward* might the rather go, becauſe he found it a *ruled caſe*, in the diſpute about the ſucceſſion in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. For though King *Edward* the firſt meaſuring the order of ſucceſſion by the Laws of *England*, and perhaps willing to adjudge the Crown to one who ſhould hold it of him; gave ſentence in behalf of *John Baliol*, the Grandchild of the eldeſt daughter of the Earl of *Huntingdon*: yet was this ſentence diſavowed and proteſted againſt by the other *Competitors*. *Rob. Bruce* ſon of the 2d. Daughter of the ſaid Earl of *Huntingdon*, as a degree nearer to the laſt King, though deſcended from the younger Siſter, who not only thought himſelf wronged in it, but had the whole *Scottiſh* Nation for him to aſſert his right: by whoſe unanimous conſent his ſon was called to the Government of the Realm of *Scotland*, during the life of *Baliol* and his Patron both. *Proximity* in blood to the King deceaſed, was meaſured by nearneſs of degrees, not deſcent of birth, and on this Plea, though different from the Laws of *England*, as *Bruce* had formerly poſſeſſed himſelf of the Crown of *Scotland*; ſo on the ſame, though different from the Laws of *Caſtile*, did *Philip* the ſecond ground his claim to the Crown of *Portugal*. For being eldeſt ſon of *Mary*, the ſiſter of *Henry* the laſt King (and this was juſt King *Edward*'s caſe to the Crown of *France*) he thought himſelf to be preferred before the Prince of *Parma*, and the Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the daughters of *Edward* the ſaid Kings brother; becauſe the eldeſt male of the Royal Blood, and nearer to the ſaid King *Henry* by one degree. In the purſuance of which title, as *Philip* openly avowed, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him than the Laws of *Caſtile*: ſo in like caſe, the Laws of *France* might be more favourable to King *Edward*, than the Laws of *England*. In claims to Crowns, the Rules of *Regal Succeſſion* differ in many Countries; and in few Countries are the ſame with that of the Succeſſion into mean Eſtates: as may be proved by many particulars in the Realm of *England*, in which the *Law of the Crown* differeth very much from the *Law of the Land*; as in the Caſe of *Parceners*, the *whole blood*, (as our Lawyers call it) the *Tenure of courteſie*, and ſome others were this a time and place fit for it. But to return again to *France*; Whether the *Salique* Law were in force or not, it made not much unto the prejudice of K. *Edward* the 3. though it ſerved *Philip* the *Long* to exclude the daughter of K. *Lewis Hutin*; and *Charles* the *fair* to do the like with the daughter of *Philip*; as it did *Philip* of *Valoys*, to diſpoſſeſs the whole Linage of K. *Philip le Bel*.

Machiavel accounteth this *Salique* Law to be a great happineſs to the *French* Nation, not ſo much in relation to the unfitneſs of Women to Govern (for therein ſome of them have gone beyond moſt men) but becauſe thereby the Crown of *France* is not endangered to fall into the hands of ſtrangers. Such men conſider not how great Dominions may by this means be incorporate to the Crown. They remember not how *Maud* the Empreſs being married to *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourain*, and *Main*, conveyed thoſe Countries to the Diadem of *England*, nor what rich and fertile Provinces were added to *Spain*, by the Match of the Lady *Joan* to Arch-Duke *Philip*: neither do they ſee thoſe great advantages of power and ſtrength which *England* now enjoyeth by the conjunction of *Scotland*, proceeding from a like marriage. Yet there is a ſaying in *Spain*, that as a man ſhall deſire to live in *Italy*, becauſe of the civility and ingenious natures of the People; and to dye in *Spain*, becauſe there the *Catholick Religion* is ſo ſincerely profeſſed: ſo he ſhould wiſh to be born in *France*, becauſe of the nobleneſs of that Nation, which never had any King but of their own Country.

The chief enemies to the *French* have been the *Engliſh* and *Spaniards*. The former had here great poſſeſſions, divers times plagued them, and took from them their Kingdom; but being called home by civil diſſentions, loſt all. At their departure, the *French* ſcoffingly asked an *Engliſh* Captain, When they would return: Who feelingly anſwered, *When your ſins be greater than ours*. The *Spaniards* began but of late with them, yet have they taken from them, *Navarre*, *Naples*, and *Millain*: they diſplanted them in *Florida*; poiſoned the *Dauphine* of *Viennois* (as it was generally conceived) murdered their Soldiers in cold blood, being taken priſoners in the Iſle of *Tercera*; and by their Faction raiſed even in *France* it ſelf, drave *Henry* the third out of *Paris*, and moſt of his other Cities; and at laſt cauſed him to be murdered by *Jaques Clement*, a *Dominican Frier*. The like they intended to his Succeſſor K. *Henry* the 4. whoſe coming to the Crown they oppoſed to their utmoſt power, and held a tedious War againſt him. Concerning which laſt War, when they ſided with the Duke of *Mayenne*, and the reſt of thoſe Rebels which called themſelves the *Holy League* (of which the D. of *Guiſe* was the Author) againſt the two Kings *Henry* the 3. and 4. a *French* Gentleman made this excellent *alluſion*. For being asked the cauſe of theſe *civil broils*, he replyed they were *Spania* and *Mania*; ſeeming by

this answer to signifie Σπανία, *penury*, and Μανία, *fury*, which are indeed the causes of all intestine tumults: but covertly therein implying the King of *Spain*, and the Duke of *Mayenne*: since which time the *French*, upon the turn of Fortune, (notwithstanding the cross Marriages between the Kings of both Kingdoms, and their several Sisters) have had as great a hand upon the *Spaniards*; outing them by their plots and practices of the whole Kingdom of *Portugal*, and the Country of *Catalogne* in the main land of *Spain* it self, and of many of the best parts of *Artois*, *Hainalt*, and other of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the force of Arms. So little constancy there is, either in the favours of Fortune, or the affection of great Princes, that no wise man can trust the one, or depend safely on the other. For in the former times, as we read in *Comines*, there were no Princes more friendly than these two, the Kings of *Castile* and *France* being the nearest confederate Princes in *Christendom*. For their League was between King and King, Realm and Realm, Subject and Subject; which they were all bound under great curses to keep inviolable. But of late times, especially since the beginning of the Wars betwixt *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the first, for the Dukedom of *Millain*; there have not been greater animolities, nor more implacable enmities betwixt any Nations, than betwixt *France* and *Spain*. Which seconded by the mutual jealousies they have of each other, and the diversity of Constellations under which they live; hath produced such dissimilitude betwixt them in all their ways, that there is not greater contrariety of temper, carriage, and affections, betwixt any two Nations in the world, than is between these Neighbours, parted no otherwise from one another, than by passable Hills. First in the *Actions* of the *Soul*, the one *Active* and *Mercurial*, the other *Speculative* and *Saturnine*; the one sociable and discoursive, the other reserved and full of thought; the one so *open*, that you cannot hire him to keep a secret; the other so *close*, that all the *Rhetorick* in the world cannot get it out of him. Next in their *Fashion* and Apparel, the *French* wears his hair long, the *Spaniard* short; the *French* goes thin and open to the very shirt, as if there were continual Summer, the *Spaniard* so wrapt up and close, as if all were Winter; the *French* begins to button downward, and the *Spaniard* upwards; the last always constant in his Fashion, the first intent so much on nothing as on new fancies of Apparel. Then for their *Gate*, the *French* walk fast, as if pursued on an *Arrest*, the *Spaniard* slowly as if newly come out of a *Quartane Ague*; the *French* go up and down in clusters, the *Spaniards* but by two and two at the most; the *French Lacqueys* march in the *Rere*, and the *Spanish* always in the *Van*; the *French* sings and danceth as he walks the streets, the *Spaniard* in a grave and solemn posture, as if he were going a *Procession*. The like might be observed of their Tune, their Speech, and almost every passage in the life of man: for which I rather chuse to refer the Reader to the ingenious *James Howel*'s Book of *Instructions for Travel*, than insist longer of it here. Only I add, that of the two so different humours, that of the *Spaniards* seems to be the more approvable. Insomuch as the *Neopolitans*, *Millanois*, and *Sicilians*, who have had tryal of both Nations, chuse rather to submit themselves to the proud and severe yoke of the *Spaniards*, than the lusts and insolencies of the *French*, not sufferable by men of even and well ballanced spirits. And possible enough it is, that such of the *Netherlands*, as have of late been won to the Crown of *France*, will find so little comfort in the change of their Masters; as may confirm the residue to the Crown of *Spain*, to which they naturally belong.

The chief Mountains of this Country, next to the *Pyrenees* which part *France* from *Spain*, the *Jour* or *Jura* which separates it from *Savoy* and *Switzerland*; and the *Vauge* or *Vogesus*, which divides it from *Lorrein*; are those which *Cæsar* calleth *Gebenna*, *Ptolomy Cimmeni*, being the same which separate *Auvergne* from *Languedoc*, called therefore the Mountains of *Auvergne*; the only ones of note which are peculiar to this Continent of *France*, which for the most part is plain and champain; the others before mentioned, being common unto this, with the bordering Provinces.

This Country is wonderfully stored with Rivers, the chief whereof, 1. *Sequana* or *Seine*, which arising in *Burgundy*, watering the Cities of *Paris* and *Roan*, and receiving into it nine navigable streams, disburdeneth it self into the *British* Ocean. 2. *Some*, in *Latin* called *Samona*, which rising near the Town of St. *Quintin*, first cutteth between *Picardy* and *Artoys*, afterwards passeth through the fair City of *Amiens*, and the goodly Town of *Abbeville*, and finally having received eight lesser streams, loseth it self in the same Sea also. 3. *Legeris* or *Loyre*, on which are seated *Nantes*, and *Orleance*. It riseth about the Mountains of *Auvergne*, (being the greatest in *France*) and having run 600 miles, and augmented his Chanel with the entertainment of 72 lesser Rivulets, mingleth his sweet waters with the brackish *Aquitane* Ocean. 4. *Rhodanus*, or the *Rhosne*, which springeth from the *Alpes*, three *Dutch* miles from the head of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Lyons* and *Avignon*; and having taken in thirteen lesser Brooks, falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from *Arles*. 5. The *Soasne*, by the old *Latins* called *Araris*, which rising out of the Mountain of *Vogesus* or *Vauge*, in the borders of *Lorrein* and *Alsatia*, divideth the two *Burgundies* from each other; and falleth into the *Rhosne* at the City of *Lyons*. 6. *Garumna* or the *Garond*, which issuing out of the *Pyrenean* Mountains, passing by *Tholouse* and *Burdeaux*, and having swallowed up sixteen lesser Rivers (of which the *Dordonne* is the chief) disburdeneth it self into the *Aquitane* Ocean, near the Town of *Blay*: that part hereof which is betwixt the main Ocean, and the influx of the River *Dordonne*, being called the *Giarronne*. Of these it is said proverbially, that the *Seine* is the richest, the *Rhosne* the swiftest, the *Garond* the greatest, and the *Loyre* the sweetest. And by these and many other Rivers this Kingdom is enriched with 34 excellent Havens, having all the properties of a good Harbour; that is to say, 1. Room, 2. Safety, 3. Easiness of defence, 4. Resort of Merchants.

As for so much of the Story hereof as concerneth the whole, it was first peopled, if we may give credit to *Annius*, (as I think we may not in this point) by *Samothes* the sixth Son of *Japhet* (affirmed by them, and such as adhere unto them, to be that Son of his, who in the Scripture is called *Mesech*) in the year of the world 1806. But those which are better conversant in the course of History, have utterly laid aside this device of *Annius*. Even *Funclius*, though a great *Berosian*, doth confess ingenuously, *Quis hic* Samothes *fuerit, incertum est*, that it is unresolved who this *Samothes* was. And *Vignier* a *French* Antiquary doth confess with *Funclius*, *Mais un ne scay quil il estoit*, that no body can tell us who he was. They who have better studied this point than *Annius*, derive the *Gauls* from *Gomer*, *Japhet*'s eldest Son, whose offspring were first called *Gomerians*, afterwards *Cimmerians*, at last *Cimbri*: first planted (as before was said) in the Mountainous places of *Albania*, where the Mountains called *Cimmerini* long preserved his memory, and after changing that unfruitful and unpleasant *dwelling* for the *Plains* of *Phrygia*, wherein the City *Cimmeris* did retain somewhat of his name, in the times of *Pliny*. Afterwards his posterity

proceeded further in the *leſſer Aſia*, and in long tract of time filled *Germany*, *Gaul* and *Britain*, with his numerous iſſues: the *Gauls* and *Cimbri* being clearly of the ſame Original, though known amongſt the *Romans* by two different names. From whence they had the names of *Gauls*, and *Celtes*, and *Galatæ*, hath been ſhewn before. It ſhall ſuffice us now to add, that being originally of the *Cimbri*, and having ſomewhat in them of the blood of *Hercules*; they proved a very valiant and warlike Nation, without whoſe love, no King could ſecure himſelf from eminent dangers. They were very ſparing in their diet, and uſed to fine any one that outgrew his Girdle. With theſe men the *Romans* fought at firſt for their own preſervation, rather than out of any hope by the conqueſt of them to improve either their fame or their Dominions. Inſomuch that when they had invaded *Italy* with a numerous Army, in favour of the *Ciſalpine Galls*, under the conduct of *Anereſtus* and *Congelianus*, two of their Kings, and pierced as far as *Telamon* a City of *Tuſcany*; the *Romans* thought they had done enough in diſcomfiting their Forces, and clearing their own Provinces of them; not holding it for a point of wiſdom to purſue them, or invade their Country; though by the conqueſt of *Liguria*: but few years before, they had enlarged their Dominions to the borders of it. But to enumerate more particularly their great atchievements in the Wars, theſe were they who under the conduct of *Belloveſus*, paſſing over the *Alpes*, conquered the neareſt parts of *Italy*, called afterwards *Gallia Ciſalpina*; and under that of *Segoveſus*, over-run all *Germany*, and following their ſucceſſes as far as *Scythia*, founded the potent Nation of the *Celto-Scythæ*. Theſe were the men, whoſe iſſue under the command of *Brennus*, diſcomfited the *Romans*, at the River *Allia*; ſacked the City, and beſieged the Capitol, *An. M.* 3577. *V. C.* 365. In which action they ſo terrified the *Romans*, that after their expulſion from *Rome* by *Camillus*, there was a Law made, that the Prieſts, though at all other times exempted from Military employments, ſhould be compelled to the War, if ever the *Gauls* came again. And finally, theſe were the men, who under the command of *Belgius*, and another *Brennus*, ranſacked *Illyricum*, *Pannonia*, *Thrace*, and *Greece*, in which they ſpoiled and plundered the Temple of *Delphos*; for which Sacriledge they were viſited with the Peſtilence. Such as ſurvived this Plague, went into *Aſia*, and there gave name to that Country now called *Galatia*, of whom thus *Du Bartas*:

> The ancient *Gaul* in roving every way,
> As far as *Phœbus* darts his Golden Ray;
> Seiz'd *Italy*, the World's proud Miſtreſs ſackt,
> Which rather *Mars* than *Romulus* compact.
> Then ſpoils *Piſidia*, *Myſia* doth enthral;
> And midſt of *Aſia* plants another *Gaul*.

Yet at laſt the *Romans* undertook the War, but not till they had conquered almoſt all the reſidue of the (then know) World. Attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, a Roman Conſul, called in by the *Maſſilienſes* to aſſiſt them againſt the *Salii* their unquiet Neighbours, *A. V. C.* 628, that part hereof which afterwards was called *Narbonenſis*, being brought into the form of a *Roman* Province at the concluſion of the War againſt the *Allobroges* and *Arverni*, (undertaken on the like complaint of the *Hedui*) about five years after. Not totally ſubdued until the time of *Julius Cæſar*, and not eaſily then. For though the War was managed then by the ableſt Captain that ever the State of *Rome* gave life to; yet was it not more eaſily vanquiſhed by the valour and fortune of the *Romans*, than by want of good intelligence and correſpondence amongſt themſelves. Nor did they ſell their liberty ſo good cheap, as thoſe other Nations, with whom the *Romans* had to deal; *Cæſar* himſelf affirming, That he had ſlain 1192000 of them before they would ſubmit to the *Roman* yoak. But at the laſt they were brought under the power of *Rome*, by whom the whole Country was divided into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1. *Narbonenſis*, called ſo from the City of *Narbon*, then a *Roman* Colony, containing *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Daulphine*, and ſome part of *Savoy*, called alſo *Braccata* at the firſt conqueſt by the *Romans*, from the uſual habit of the people (reſembling the Mantles uſed by the Wild *Iriſh*) called in *Latin Braccæ*: attempted firſt by *Fulvius Flaccus*, in his War againſt the *Salii*, as before is ſaid; and finally ſubdued, *A. V. C.* 633. by *Fabius Maximus*, and *Cn. Domitius Ænobarbus*, in their War againſt the *Allobroges*, and their Confederates, before mentioned, about 70 years before the coming in of *Julius Cæſar*. 2. *Aquitannica*, ſo called from the City of *Aquæ Auguſtæ* (now *D'Acqs*, in *Guienne*) lying upon the *Pyrenees*, and the wide Ocean, which comprehendeth the Provinces of *Gaſcoyn*, *Guienne*, *Xaintoygne*, *Limoſin*, *Quercu*, *Perigort*, *Berry*, *Burbonoys*, and *Anvergne*; extending from the *Pyrenees* to the River *Loyre*, and conſequently ſtretching over all the middle of *Gaul*. 3. *Celtica*, ſo named from the valiant Nation of the *Celtæ*; (called alſo *Lugdunenſis*, from the City of *Lyons*; and *Comata* from the long hair worn amongſt this people) extending from the *Loyre* to the *Britiſh* Ocean, and comprehending the Provinces of *Bretaigne*, *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourin*, *Main*, *La Beauſſe*, the Iſle of *France*, part of *Champagne*, the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the County of *Lyonnoys*. 4. *Belgica*, from the *Belgæ*, a potent Nation of that tract, taking up all the Eaſt parts of *Gaul*, viz. *Picardy*, the reſt of *Champagne*, the County of *Burgundy*, together with ſo much of *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, as lyeth on this ſide of the *Rhene*, belonging now unto the Empire and the Kings of *Spain*. In the new modelling of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, *Gaul* was appointed for the ſeat of one of the four *Præfecti Prætorio*, deſigned for the four Quarters of it. His Title *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; his Government extending over the Dioceſes of *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Britain*: this Dioceſs of *Gaul* being caſt into ſeventeen Provinces, that is to ſay, *Lugdunenſis Prima*, 2. *Secunda*, 3. *Tertia*, 4. *Quarta*, 5. *Belgica Prima*, 6. *Secunda*, 7. *Germania Prima*, 8 *Secunda*, 9. *Narbonenſis Prima*, 10. *Secunda*, 11. *Aquitania Prima*, 12. *Secunda*, 13 *Novempopulonia*, 14. *Viennenſis*, 15. *Maxima Sequanorum* 16. *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, 17. *Alpes Maritimæ*. Of theſe ſeventeenth, *Germania Prima & Secunda*, all *Belgica Prima*, and a great part of *Secunda*, all that of the *Alpes Graiæ & Pœninæ*, and ſo much of *Maxima Sequanorum*, as lieth in *Switzerland*, are now diſmembred from the name and accompt of *France*. What principal Nations of the *Gauls* and what Provinces of the preſent *France*, the reſt contained, ſhall be declared in our Survey of the particulars.

But long it ſtood not in this ſtate: For within ſixty years after the death of *Conſtantine*, during the Reigns of *Honorius* and *Theodoſius*, the *Burgundians*, a great and populous Nation, were called in by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperour, to keep the borders of the Empire againſt the *French*; then ready with ſome other of the Barbarous Nations to invade the ſame. The *Goths* not long after by agreement with the ſame *Honorius*, leaving their hold in *Italy*, were veſted in *Gaul Narbonoys*, by the gift of that Emperour; with a good part of *Tarraconenſis*, one of the Provinces of *Spain*: *Aquitain* being after added, in regard of the ſervice they had done the Empire, in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*, then likely to have made a great impreſſion on that Country. And in the reign of *Valentinian* the third, the *French* who had long

hovered on the banks of the *Rhene*, taking advantage of the distractions of the Empire, ventured over the River; first made themselves Masters of *Gaul-Belgick*; and after, spread themselves over all the rest of the Provinces which had not been subdued by the *Gothes* and *Burgundians*; excepting a small corner of *Armorica*, then possessed by the *Britans*. So that the *Romans* being outed of all the Country, it was divided between the Nations above mentioned, and that with more equality than could be imagined: The *Gothes* possessing all *Aquitain*, and *Narbonensis*, containing now the Provinces of *Provence*, *Languedock*, *Gascoigne*, *Guienne*, *Xantoigne*, *Poictou*, *Berry*, *Limousin*, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and *Avergne*; the *Burgundians* having for their share, the *Alpine* Provinces, together with *Nivernois*, *Bourbon*, *Beau-Jolais*, *Forrest*, the Countries of *Lyonois*, *La Bresse*, *Daulphine*, and both the *Burgundies*, from them so denominated. The rest (except that part thereof which we now call *Bretagne*) was possessed by the *French*, who in short time repulsed the *Visigothes*, or *Western-Gothes*, (then busie in the Conquest of *Spain*) out of all the Provinces of the *Roman Aquitain*, by the Valour of *Clouis* the Great, their first Christian King, before they could challenge a Prescription of 60 years. Nor was it long, before *Provence* also was resigned to *Theodorick* the *French* King, of *Mets* by *Amalasunta*, Qu. of the *Ostro-Gothes*, or *Gothes* of *Italy*; nothing being left unto that Nation, of all their *Gallick* Conquests, but *Languedock* only. In which respect, the *Gothish* Provinces of *Gall*, (except *Provence* only) together with so much of the *Burgundians* which was after laid to *West-France*, shall pass in the account of the *French* part of this Country; the rest of the *Burgundian* Conquests which lye within the bounds of the Modern *France*, (having *Provence* added to them) shall be considered by themselves in the description and affairs of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; a distinct Realm from that of *France*, and not reduced but by piece-meal, and by several Titles, (and yet not wholly so neither) to the Crown thereof. Finally, of the *French* themselves, and the succession of their Kings, we will speak at last, when we have brought all the chief parts and Provinces of this flourishing Country into their possession. The principal Provinces are, 1. *France*, specially so called, 2. *Champagne*, 3. *Picardy*, 4. *Normandy*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. The Estates of *Anjou*, with its members, 7. *La Beausse*, 8. *Nivernois*, 9. The Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the Provinces dependant on it; being all (excepting *Bretagne*) the first acquests of the *French*. Then follow the chief Provinces of the *Gothish* Kingdom; that is to say, 10. *Berry*, 11. *Poictou*, 12. *Limosin*, 13. *Perigort*, and 14. *Quercu*, 15. *Aquitain*, with the members of it; and 16. *Languedoc*: and last of all, the *Burgundian* Kingdom; of which there now remain in *France*, the Counties of 17. *Provence*, 18. *Daulphine*, 19. *La Bresse*, 20. *Lionois*, 21. The *Dutchy*, and 22. the County of *Burgundy*, 23. The Islands in the *Aquitain*, and *Gallick* Ocean, in the close of all. Of some of which, *La Nove*, a *French* Author, hath passed this censure: The men of *Berry* are Leachers, they of *Tourein*, Thieves; they of *Languedoc*, Traytors; they of *Provence*, Atheists; they of *Rhemes* (or *Champagne*) superstitious; they of *Normandy*, insolent; they of *Picardy* proud; *& sic de cæteris*. But here we are to understand, that all these Provinces (though passing by the name and account of *France*) are not under the Command of the *French* King; the Illes of *Jarsey* and *Guernzey*, being possessed by the *English*; the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Charolois*, by the King of *Spain*; the Dutchy of *Bar*, belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*; the Principality of *Orange*, to the House of *Nassaw*; and *Avignon*, to the Popes of *Rome*. And on the other side, the *French* Kings are possessed of some Towns and Cities, not lying within the bounds of *France*, as the Imperial Cities of *Mets*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*; lying within the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, the Fort and Pass of *Pignerolle*, in the Dukedom of *Savoy*, and the Port of *Monaco*, in *Liguria*; *Base Navarre*, in *Spain*; not to say any thing of their late acquests in *Spain* and *Flanders*, which I look not on as parts of the *French* Dominions.

FRANCE, *specially so called.*

THE first place which the *Franks*, or *French*, had for their fixt Habitation, was by that People honoured with the name of *FRANCE*; the first *green Turf* of *Gallick* ground, by which they took *livery* and *seisin* of all the rest. A Province now bounded on the East with *Champagne*, on the North with *Normandy*, on the West and South, with *La Beausse*. To difference it from the main Continent of *France*, it is called the *Isle of France*, as being circled almost round with several Rivers; that is to say, the *Oise* on the North, the *Eure* on the West, the *Velle* on the East, and a Vein-riveret of the *Sein*, towards the South. A Country not so large as many of the *French* Provinces; but such as hath given name unto all the rest; it being the Fate of many small, but puissant Provinces, to give their name to others which are greater than they, if conquered and brought under by them. For, thus we see the little Province of *Poland*, to have mastered and given name to the *Mazovii*, *Pruteni*, and other Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, as that of *Mosco*, to the Provinces of *Asiatica*. And thus have those of *Sweden* conquered and denominated almost the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, whereof it is one of the smallest Provinces. And thus this Island, being the Seat-Royal of the *French*, in *Gallia*, gave name to all the residue of it, as they made it theirs. A Country generally so fruitful and delectable, (except in *Gastinois*) that the very Hills thereof are equal to the Valleys in most places of *Europe*: but the Vale of *Montmorency* (wherein *Paris* standeth) scarce is to be sellowed in the World. An argument whereof may be, That when the Dukes of *Berry*, *Burgundy*, and their Confederates, besieged that City with an Army of 100000 men, neither the Assailants without, nor the Citizens within, found any scarcity of Victuals; and yet the Citizens, besides Souldiers, were reckoned at 500000.

It was formerly part of the Province of *Belgica secunda*, *& Lugdunensis quarta*; the chief inhabitants thereof being the *Parisii*, the *Bellovaci*, and the *Silvanectes*: and is now divided into four parts; that is to say, the Dukedom of *Valois*, 2. *Gastinois*, 3. *Henrepoix*, and that which is properly called the *Isle of France*; by some, the *Provoste*, or *County of Paris*.

1. Dukedom or County of *VALOIS*, lyeth under *Picardy*: the principal Cities of it, 1. *Senlis*, (in *Latin*, *Silvanectum*) a Bishops See. 2. *Compeigns*, (*Compendium*) seated on the River *Oise*, a retiring place of the *French* Kings for Hunting, and other Country pleasures. 3. *Beauvois*, the chief City of the *Bellovaci*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cæsaromagus*; a fair, large, well-traded Town; from which the Country round about hath the name of *Beauvoisin*. The Patrimony, in former times, of *Roger*, the third Son of *Theobald*, the second Earl of *Blais*, and younger Brother of *Odon*, the first Earl of *Champagne*, who enjoyed it with the Title of Earl of *Beauvois*:

vois; and at his death, gave it for ever to the Bishops hereof; for anciently this City was a See Episcopal; the Bishop whereof is one of the twelve Peers of *France*. *Philip*, one of the Bishops here in times succeeding, a Military man, and one that had much damnified the English Borders, was fortunately taken by King *Richard* the First. The Pope being made acquainted with his imprisonment, but not the cause of it, wrote in his behalf unto the King, as for an Ecclesiastical person, and one of his beloved Sons. The King returned unto the Pope the Armour which the Bishop was taken in, and these words engraven on the same, *Vide an hæc sit tunica filii tui, vel non*; being the words which *Jacobs* Children spake unto him, when they presented him with the Coat of their Brother *Joseph*: which the Pope viewing, swore, That it was rather the Coat of a Son of *Mars*, than a Son of the *Church*: and so left him wholly to the Kings pleasure. 4. *Clermont*, a Town of good note in the County of *Beauvoisin*; memorable for giving the Title of Earl of *Clermont*, to *Robert* the fifth Son of the King St. *Lewis*, before his marriage with the Daughter and Heir of *Bourbon*: afterwards, to the eldest Sons of that Princely Family: and finally, to *Catharine de Medices*, created Countess of *Clermont* and *Boulogne*, at her marriage with *Henry* Duke of *Orleans*, Successor to King *Francis* the first, in the Realm of *France*. 5. *Luzarch*, a Town belonging to the Count of *Soissons*. 6. *Brenonville*, 7. St. *Loup*, on the Confines of *Picardy*, so called from a Monastery dedicated to St. *Lupus*, Bishop of *Troys* in *Champagne*, sent into *Britain* with St. *Germanus*, to suppress the *Pelagian* Heresies, which were there beginning. But of this part of *France*, nothing more observable, than that it gave denomination to the Royal Family of the *French* Kings, (13 in number) from hence entituled *de Valois*: beginning in *Philip de Valois*, *Anno* 1328, and ending in *Henry* the third, *Anno* 1589. As for the Earls hereof, (from whom that adjunct or denomination had its first Original) the first who had the Title of Earl of *Valois*, was *Charles*, the second Son of *Philip* the third, in right of his Wife; Earl of *Anjou* also: after whose death, it descended upon *Philip de Valois*, his eldest Son, who carried the Crown of *France* from our *Edward* the third. On his assuming of the Crown, it fell to *Lewis* his second Brother; and he deceasing without issue, *Anno* 1391, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Son of *Charles* the Fifth; amongst the Titles of which House, it lay *dormant*, till the expiring of that Line in King *Lewis* the twelfth; and lately given unto the *Monsieur*, or Duke of *Orleans*, Brother to *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Uncle to K. *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, upon the first reconciliation made betwixt him and his Brother; adding thereby to his Estate, no less than 10000 pounds Sterling of yearly Rents, which make up 100000 *Franks* or *Livres*, in the *French* accompt. I only add, that *Charles*, the first Earl of this Family, as he was the Son of *Philip* the third, Brother of *Philip* the fourth, sirnamed the *Fair*; and Father of *Philip de Valois*: so was he Uncle to *Lewis Hutin*, *Philip the Long*, and *Charles the Fair*, all in their order Kings of *France*. In which regard it was said of him, That he was the Son, Brother, Father, and Uncle of Kings; yet no King himself.

2. The second part of this Province, is called *HEUREPOIX*; beginning at the little Bridge of *Paris*, on the River of *Sein*, and going up along the River, as far as the River of *Verine*; which divides it from *Gastinois*. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Charenton*, three Miles from *Paris*, where the *French Protestants* of that City, have their Church for religious exercises, it being not permitted them to hold their Assemblies in any Walled Cities, or Garrison Towns, for fear of any sudden surprize, which so great a multitude might easily make. Which Church (or Temple, as they call it) being burnt down by the hot-headed *Parisians*, on the news of the Duke of *Mayennes* death, slain at the Siege of *Montalban*, *Anno* 1622, was presently re-edified by the command of the Duke of *Mombazon*, then Governour of the *Isle* of *France*, at the charge of the State: to let those of the Reformed Party understand that it was their *Disobedience*, and not their *Religion*, which caused the King to arm against them. 2. *Corbeil*, seated on the confluence of *Sein* and *Essons*. 3. *Moret*, which gives the Title of an Earl to one of the natural Sons of *Henry* the Fourth, begotten on the Daughter and Heir of the former Earl. 4. *Melun*, by *Cæsar* called *Melodunum*, the principal of this *Heurepoix*, and the seat of the *Bailiff* for this Tract. Here is also in this part the Royal Palace of *Fountainbleau*, so called from the many fair Springs and Fountains amongst which it standeth; but otherwise seated in a solitary and woody Country, fit for Hunting only; and for that cause, much visited by the *French* Kings in their times of leisure; and beautified with so much cost by King *Henry* the Fourth, that it is absolutely the stateliest and most magnificent Pile of Building in all *France*.

3. *GASTINOIS*, the most dry and barren part of this Province, but rich enough, if compared with other places; lieth between *Paris*, and the Country of *Orleanoys*. The chief places of it are, 1. *Estampes*, in the middle way betwixt *Paris* and *Orleans*, on the very edge of it, towards *La Beausse*, a fair large Town, having in it five Churches, and one of them a Colledge of *Chanoins*, with the ruines of an ancient Castle; which, together with the Walls and demolished Fortifications of it, shew it to have been of great importance in the former times. Given, with the Title of an Earl, by *Charles* Duke of *Orleans*, then Lord hereof, to *Richard*, the third Son of *John* of *Montford*, Duke of *Bretagne*, in marriage with his Sister the Lady *Marguerette*; from which Marriage issued *Francis* Earl of *Estampes*, the last Duke of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montleherry*, famous for the battel betwixt King *Lewis* the eleventh, and *Charles* Earl of *Charolois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) in which both sides ran out of the field, and each proclaimed it self the Victor. It standeth in the road betwixt *Paris* and *Estampes*. And so doth, 3. *Castres*, of the bigness of an ordinary Market-Town; not to be mentioned in this place, but for a *Chamber* or Branch of the Court of *Parliament*, here setled by King *Henry* the Fourth, for the use and benefit of his Subjects of the *Reformed Religion*; in *Latin* called *Camera Castrensis*. 4. *Nemours*, upon the River of *Loyre*, the chief of *Gastinoys* in name, but not in beauty, (wherein inferiour to *Estampes*) a Town which hath given the Title of Duke to many eminent persons of *France*. Here is also in this part, the County of *Rochfort*, and the Towns of 1. *Milly*, 2. *Montargis*, &c. More there occurreth not worth the noting, in this part of the Country, but that being part of the possessions of *Hugh* the Great Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*. It was given by him, together with the Earldom of *Anjou*, to *Geoffry*, sirnamed *Grysogonelle*, a right Noble Warrier, and a great stickler in behalf of the House of *Anjou*, then aiming at the Crown it self, which at last they carried. Continued in his Line till the time of *Fulk* the second, (the fifth Earl of *Anjou* of this Family) who gave it back again to King *Philip* the first, that by his help he might possess himself of the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his elder Brother. Never since that, dismembred from the Crown of *France*, in Fact or Title.

4. But

4. But the great glory of this Province, is that which is more properly called the *ISLE OF FRANCE*, and sometimes κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Isle*, caused by the Circlings and Embracements of the Rivers of *Sein* and *Marn*; the abstract of the whole Beauties and Glories of *France*, which in this rich and pleasant Valley are summed up together.

Chief places in it, 1. S. *German*, seated on the ascent of an Hill, seven miles from *Paris*, down the water; a pretty neat and handsom Town, honoured with one of the fairest Palaces of the *French* Kings; which being built (like *Windsor*) on the top of a fine Mountainet on the Rivers side; affordeth an excellent prospect over all the Country. The excellent Water-works herein, have been described on occasion of those of *Trivoli*, a Town of the Popes in *Champagna di Roma*, so much extolled by the *Italians*. It was first built by *Charles* the fifth, sirnamed the *Wise*; beautified by the *English* when they were possessed of this Country: but finally, re-edified and enlarged by King *Henry* the Fourth, who brought it into that Magnificence in which now we see it. It took name from S. *German*, Bishop of *Auxerre*, Companion with S. *Lupus* before mentioned, in the *British* Journey against *Pelagius*. 2. *Poissie*, upon the same River, or rather on the confluence of it, and the *Marn* which falleth into the *Sein*; situate not far from S. *Germans*; a Bailiwick belonging to the *Provost* of *Paris*, and one of his seven Daughters, as they use to call them. 3. *Chantilly*, the chief Seat of the Dukes of *Montmorency*, the ancientest and most noble Family of all *Christendom*; whose Ancestors were the *first fruits of the Gospel* in this part of *Gaul*, and used to stile themselves, *Les primiers Christiens, & plus veilles Barons de la France*, i.e. The first *Christians*, and most ancient *Barons* of *France*. A Family that hath yielded unto *France* more *Admirals*, *Constables*, *Marshals*, and other like Officers of Power, than any three in all the Kingdom; now most unhappily extinct in the person of *Henry* the last Duke, executed by the command of the late Cardinal of *Richlieu*, for siding with the *Monsieur* (now Duke of *Orleans*) against King *Lewis* the 13. his Brother. The Arms of which illustrious and most noble Family, (for I cannot let it pass without this honour) were *Or*, a Cross *Gules*, cantoned with sixteen *Alerions Azure*, four in every *Canton*. What these *Allerions* are, we shall see in *Lorrein*: take we notice now, that from the great possessions which this Noble Family had in all this Tract, it was, and is still called the *Vale of Montmorency*. 4. S. *Denis*, some three miles from *Paris*, so called of a Monastery built here by *Dagobert*, King of *France*, about the year 640, in memory of S. *Denis*, or *Dionyse*, the first Bishop of *Paris*, martyred (on *Mont-martyr*, an Hill adjoining) in the time of *Domitian*. Some of the *French* Kings, because it lay so near to *Paris*, bestowed a Wall upon the Town, now not defensible; nor otherwise of any consideration, but for a very fair Abby of *Benedictines*, and therein the Sepulchres of many of the *French* Kings and Princes: neither for Workmanship nor Cost, able to hold comparison with those at *Westminster*. But being the Sepulture of their Kings, the *French-men* use to say facetiously, that to this place none of their Kings do ever go with a good will. In this Town also is the Church of S. *Maclou*, where the Kings, with a Fast of Nine days, and other Penances, use to receive the famous Gift of healing the *Kings-Evil*, with nothing but a Touch: a Priviledge enjoyed only by those Kings, and the Kings of *England*. 5. St. *Cloud*, (or the Town of St. *Claudus*) unfortunately memorable for the Murder of King *Henry* the third, who lying here at a Siege of *Paris*, from whence he was compelled to flye by the *Guisian* Faction, was wretchedly assasinated by *Jaques Clement*, a Monk; employed in that service by the Heads of the *Holy League*. 6. *PARIS*, the chief City not of this Isle alone, but of all the Kingdom. By *Cæsar*, and *Ammianus Marcellinus*, called *Civitas Parisiorum*, from the *Parisians*, a Nation of *Gaul Celtick*, whose chief City it was: by *Strabo* called *Lutetia*, *Lucotetia* by *Ptolomy*, *quasi in Luto sita*, as some conjecture from the dirtiness of the soil in which it standeth. A soil so dirty, (as commonly all rich Countries are) that though the Streets hereof are paved, (which they affirm to be the work of King *Philip Augustus*) yet every little dash of rain, makes them very slippery; and worse than so, yields an ill savour to the nose. The Proverb is, *Il desteint comme la fange de Paris*, it staineth like the Dirt of *Paris*: but the Author of the Proverb might have changed the word, and turned it to *Il peut*, &c. *It* stinketh *like the Dirt of* Paris: no stink being more offensive than those streets in Summer. It is in compass about eight miles; of an Orbicular form, pleasantly seated on the divisions of the *Sein*: a fair, large, and capacious City, but far short of the brags which the *French* make of it. It was thought in the time of King *Lewis* the Eleventh, to contain 500000 people of all sorts and ages; which must be the least: the same King at the entertainment of the *Spanish* Ambassadors, shewing 140000 of this City in Arms, all in a Livery of red Cassocks, with white Crosses. A gallant sight, though possibly the one half of them were not fit for service: the *Parisians* being for the most part an effeminate people, wanton enough, and apt to mutiny upon all occasions; but little addicted to the Wars, as appears plainly by their suffering K. *Henry* the Fourth, to hold S. *Dennis* so long against them, with no considerable Garrison, and by that means to shut them up from all relief on that side of their City. And yet their multitudes, which since the time of that King, must needs be very much encreased, are the chief strength of the Town; the Fortifications being weak, and of ill assurance: Insomuch, that when once a *Parisian* bragged, that their Town was never taken by force; an *English* man returned this Answer, That it was, *because on the least distress it did use to capitulate*. It is seated (as before was said) on the River *Sein*, which serveth it with Boats and Barges, (as the *Thames* Westward doth *London*) the River ebbing and flowing no higher than *Pont del' Arche*, 75 miles distant from the City.

We may divide it into four parts; The Town, the City, the Univerfity, and the Suburbs. *La Ville*, or that part of it which is called *The Town*, is situate on the North side of the River; the biggest, but poorest part of the Four; inhabited by Artizans and Tradesmen of the meaner sort. In this part are the *Hostel de Ville*, or the *Guild-Hall*, for the use of the Citizens: the *Arsenal*, or Armory, for the use of the King; and that Magnificent Building called the *Place-Royal*, new built and beautified at the charges of King *Henry* the Fourth, for Tilts and Turnaments, and such Solemnities of State. And in this also, near the banks of the River, stands the Kings Palace of the *L'ouvre*; a place of more Fame than Beauty; and nothing answerable to the report which goes commonly of it. A Building of no elegance or uniformity; nor otherwise remarkable, but for the vast Gallery begun by King *Henry* the Fourth, and the fine Gardens of the *Tuilleries* adjoining to it. *The City* is that part of it which takes up the circumference of a little Island, made by the embracements of the *Sein*; joined to the other parts on both sides, by several Bridges. The *Paris* or *Lutetia* of the old *Gauls*, was

was no more than this, the *Town* on the one ſide, and the *Univerſity* on the other, being added ſince. This is the richeſt part, and beſt built of the whole *Compoſitum*. And herein ſtand the *Palace*, or *Courts of Parliament*; the *Chappel* of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and the Church of *Noſtre-dame*, being the Cathedral; of ancient times a Biſhop-See, but of late raiſed unto the dignity of a *Metropolitan*. On the South-ſide of the River lieth that part which is called the *Univerſity*, from an Univerſity here founded by *Charles* the Great, *An.* 792, at the perſwaſion of *Alcuinus* an *Engliſh-man*, the Scholar of *Venerable Bede*, and the firſt Profeſſor of Divinity here. It conſiſteth of 52 *Colledges* or places for ſtudy, whereof 40 are of little uſe; and in the reſt, the Students live at their own charges, as in the Halls at *Oxon*, or *Inns* of *Court* or *Chancery* at *London*; there being no Endowment laid unto any of them, except the *Sorbonne*, and the Colledge of *Navarre*. Which poſſibly may be the reaſon why the Scholars here are generally ſo debauched and inſolent: a ruder rabble than the which, are hardly to be found in the *Chriſtian* world. Senſible of this miſchief, and the cauſe thereof, *Francis* the Firſt, whom the *French* call the *Father of the Muſes*, at the perſwaſion of *Reuchline* and *Budæus*, thoſe great reſtorers of the *Greek* and *Hebrew* Languages, intended to have built a Colledge for 600 Students, and therein to have placed *Profeſſors* for all Arts and Sciences, endowing it with 50000 Crowns of yearly Revenue, for their conſtant maintenance. But it went no further than the purpoſe; prevented by the inevitable ſtroak of death, from purſuance of it. In bigneſs this is little inferiour to the *Town* of *Ville*, and not ſuperiour to it for wealth and beauty; few men of any wealth and credit, affecting to inhabit in a place of little Government. The fourth and laſt part, is the *Suburbs*, (or the *Faux-bourgs*, as the *French* call them) the principal whereof is that of S. *Germans*, (ſo called from an ancient Abby of that name) the beſt part of the whole Body of *Paris*, for large Streets, ſweet Air, choice of the beſt Company, magnificent Houſes, pleaſant Gardens, and finally, for all thoſe Contentments which are wanting commonly in the throngs of moſt populous Cities.

Here are alſo in this Iſle, the Royal Houſe of *Madrit*, a retiring-place of the Kings, built by King *Francis* the Firſt, at his return from his impriſonment in *Spain*. 2. *Ruall*, a ſweet Country-houſe of the late Queen-Mothers. And, 3. *Boys de Vincennes*, remarkable for the untimely death of our *Henry* the Fifth. I add this only, and ſo end; That this Iſle hath always followed the Fortune of the *Crown of France*; never diſmembred from the Soveraignty of the ſame, though ſometimes out of the poſſeſſion of the *French* Kings; as when the *Engliſh* kept it againſt *Charles* the 7. and the *Leaguers* againſt *Henry* the 4. A thing which hardly can be ſaid of any other of the Provinces of this flouriſhing Country: the *French* Kings of the race of *Merovee*, and *Charles* the Great, alienating from the Crown, many goodly Territories; contented only with a bare and titulary *Homage* from them. By means whereof, more than three parts of the whole Kingdom was ſhared firſt amongſt the great Princes of the *French*; which afterwards, by inter-marriages, and other titles, fell into the hands of ſtrangers; moſt of them enemies of this Crown, and jealous of the Grandeur and Power thereof. Which kept the *French* Kings generally very low and poor, till by Arms, Confiſcations, Marriages, and ſuch other means, they reduced all theſe *Rivulets* to their firſt and original *Chanel*; as ſhall be ſhewn in the purſuance of this Work.

2. CHAMPAGNE.

CHAMPAGNE is bounded on the North with *Picardie*; on the South, with the Dukedom of *Burgundie*; on the Eaſt, with *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, with *France* ſpecially ſo called.

The Country, for the moſt part, very plain, and pleaſant, (whence it had the name) adorned with ſhady Woods, and delectable Meadows; fruitful in Corn, and not deficient in Wines. The Seat, in elder times, of the *Tricaſſes*, *Catalauni*, *Remi*, the *Lingones*, and *Senones*, (of which laſt Tribe or Nation, were thoſe *Ciſalpine Gauls* who ſacked *Rome* under the Conduct of *Brennus*) part of them, *Celts*; and part, *Belgians*; and ſo accordingly diſpoſed of: the *Belgians*, into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, the *Metropolis* whereof was *Rhemes*: the *Celts* into *Lugdunenſis quarta*, of which the *Metropolis* was *Sens*; both Cities ſeated in this Country. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Bloiſe*, 2. *Marne*, 3. *Yonne*, 4. *Sault*.

Chief places of that part hereof which belonged to *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Province of *Rhemes*, are 1. *Chalon*, on the River *Marne*, an Epiſcopal See, Suffragan to the Arch-biſhip of *Rhemes*; called anciently, *Civitas Catalaunorum*. 2. *Joinville*, ſituate on the ſame River, belonging to the Houſe of *Guiſe*; the eldeſt Son of which Family, is called *Prince of Joinville*: in the Caſtle whereof, ſeated upon an high and inacceſſible Hill, is to be ſeen the Tomb of *Claudè*, the firſt Duke of *Guiſe*; the richeſt Monument, of that kind, in all *France*. The Barony of *William* Lord *Joinville*, third Son of *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and of *Ida* his Wife, who brought the Dukedom of *Bouillon* for her Dower or Portion; and Brother of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrein*, and Kings of *Jeruſalem*. But, whether it came to him by the gift of his Mother, as part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, or that he had it by his Wife, a daughter of *Theobald* Earl of *Champagne*, I am not able to determine. Left by him after his deceaſe, to *Godfrey* his youngeſt Son (*Thierry* his eldeſt Son, ſucceeding his Uncle *Baldwin* in the Dukedom of *Lorrein*): upon the failure of whoſe line, it fell unto the Dukes of *Lorrein*, as next heirs thereof, and ſo unto the Dukes of *Guiſe*, as deſcended from them. 3. St. *Urben*, a Town of the Territory of *Joinville*, from which it is about two leagues diſtance. 4. *Pierre-Fort*, defended with a Caſtle of ſo great ſtrength, that in the Civil-Wars of *France*, *An.* 1614, it endured 1100 ſhot of Cannon, and yet was not taken. 5. *Vaſſey*, upon the River *Bloiſe*; a Town of as ſweet a ſituation, as moſt in *France*. Theſe laſt, ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which is called *Vallage*: ſo named, as I conceive, from the River *Vaſle*. 6. *Vitrey*, upon the confluence of the *Sault* & *Marne*, the chief Town and Balliage of that part which is named *Parthois* (*Ager Pertenſis* in the *Latin*); ſo called of 7. *Perte*, another Town thereof, but now not ſo eminent. 8. *Chaumont*, upon the *Marne*, the chief Town of *Baſſigni*; and ſtrengthned with a Caſtle mounted on a craggy Rock. 9. *Dedior*, or St. *Deſier*, (*Fanum Sancti Deſiderii*) royally fortified after it had been ruined, *An.* 1544. 10. *Rhemes* (*Durocortorum Rhemorum*) an Arch-biſhops See, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, ſituate on the River of *Vaſle*. At this City, the Kings of *France* are moſt commonly crown'd, that ſo they may enjoy the Unction of a ſacred Oyl, kept in the Cathedral Church hereof; which, as they ſay, came down from Heaven, and never decreaſeth. How true this is, may be eaſily ſeen, in that *Gregory* of *Tours*, who is ſo prodigal of his Miracles, makes no mention of it, but ſpecially (for

(for *Argumentum ab authoritate negativè parum valet*) ſince the *Legend* informeth us, that this holy *Oil* was ſent from Heaven at the anointing of *Clovis*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *French*. Whereas *Du Haillan*, one of their moſt judicious Writers, affirmeth *Pepin*, the Father of *Charles* the Great, to have been their firſt anointed King; and that there was none *de la primiere lignee oinct, ny ſacre â* Rhemes, *ny allieurs*, none of the firſt or *Merovignian* line of Kings, had been anointed at *Rhemes*, or elſewhere. But ſure it is (let it be true or falſe, no matter) that the *French* do wonderfully reverence this (their ſacred) *Oil*; and fetch it with great ſolemnity from the Church in which it is kept. For it is brought by the *Prior*, ſitting on a white ambling Palfrey, and attended by his whole Convent; the Arch-biſhop hereof, (who by his place is to perform the Ceremonies of the Coronation) and ſuch Biſhops as are preſent, going to the Church-doors, to meet it, and leaving for it, with the *Prior*, ſome competent pawn; and on the other ſide, the King, when it is brought unto the Altar, bowing himſelf before it with great humility. But to return unto the Town; it took this name from the *Rhemi*, once a potent Nation of theſe parts, whoſe chief City it was; and now an Univerſity of no ſmall eſteem: in which, among other Colledges, there is one appointed for the education of young *Engliſh* Fugitives. The firſt Seminary for which purpoſe, (I note this only by the way) was erected at *Doway*, *An.* 1568. A ſecond at *Rome*, by Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth. A third at *Valladolid* in *Spain*, by K. *Philip* the ſecond. A fourth in *Lovaine*, a Town of *Brabant*: And a fifth, here (ſo much do they affect the gaining of the *Engliſh* to the *Romiſh* Church) by the Dukes of *Guiſe*. 11. *Ligni*, upon the River *Sault*.

In that part of it which belonged to *Lugdunenſis quarta*, or the Province of *Sens*, the places of chief note are, 1. *Sens*, *Civitas Senonum* in *Antoninus*, anciently the *Metropolis* of that Province, by conſequence the See of an *Archbiſhop* alſo. The Country hereabouts called *Le Paris Senonis*, was part of the habitation of the ancient *Senones*, ſome of which paſſing over the *Alpes*, with other Nations of the *Gauls*, planted thoſe parts which afterwards were for long time called *Gallia Ciſalpina*. Of which the *Senones* were the moſt valiant, though far leſs in numbers; as thoſe which had not only the honour of ſacking *Rome*, but of managing an offenſive War againſt that State, for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards. What afterwards became of them, hath been ſhewn already when we were in *Lombardy*. 2. *Langres*, or *Civitas Lingonum*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Audomaturum* (ſituate in the Confines of *Burgundy*, not far from the fountain or ſpring-head of the *Seine*: the See of a Biſhop, who is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*. 3. *Troys*, *Civitas Tricaſſium*, ſeated on the *Seine*; a fair, ſtrong and well-traded City, honoured with the title of the Daughter of *Paris*; a See Epiſcopal, and counted the chief of *Champagne*, next *Rhemes*. A City of great note in our *French* and *Engliſh* Hiſtories, for the meeting of *Charles* the ſixth, and *Henry* the fifth, Kings of *France* and *England*, in which it was agreed, That the ſaid King *Henry*, eſpouſing *Katherine* Daughter of that King, ſhould be proclaimed Heir apparent of the Kingdom of *France*; into which he ſhould ſucceed on the ſaid King's death, and be the *Regent* of the Realm for the time of his life, with divers other Articles, beſt ſuiting with the will and honour of the Conquerour. 4. *Provence*, (by *Cæſar* called *Agendicum*) ſeated upon the *Seine*, in a pleaſant Country, abounding in all fragrant flowers, but eſpecially with the ſweeteſt Roſes, which being tranſplanted into other Countries, are called *Provence-Roſes*. 5. *Meaux*, ſeated on the River *Marne*, anciently the chief City of the *Meldi*, whom *Pliny*, & others of the old Writers, mention in this Tract; now honoured with a Biſhops See, and neighboured by 6. *Monceaux*, beautified with a magnificent Palace built by *Katharine de Medices*, Queen-Mother of the three laſt Kings of the houſe of *Valois*. 7. *Montereau*, a ſtrong Town on the confluence of the *Seine* & the *Tonne*. 8. *Chaſteau-Thierri*, (*Caſtrum Theodorici*, as the *Latins* call it) ſituate on the River *Marne*. Theſe five laſt, ſituate in that part of *Champagne* which lyeth next to *France* ſpecially ſo called; known of long time by the name of *Brie*: which being the firſt or chief poſſeſſion of the Earls of *Champagne*, occationed them to be ſometimes called Earls of *Brie*, and ſometimes Earls of *Brie* and *Champagne*. Add here, 9. *Auxerre*, in former time a City of the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, but now part of *Champagne*; of which more hereafter. And 10. *Fontenay*, a ſmall Town in *Auxerrois*, in the very borders of this Province; memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, *An.* 841, between the Sons and Nephews of *Ludovicus Pius*, for their Father's Kingdoms: in which ſo many thouſands were ſlain on both ſides, that the Forces of the *French* Empire were extreamly weakned; and had been utterly deſtroyed in purſuit of this unnatural War, if the Princes of the Empire had not mediated a Peace between them; allotting unto each, ſome part of that vaſt Eſtate, diſmembred by that means into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *France*, *Germany*, *Lorein*, & *Burgundy*, never ſince brought into one hand, as they were before.

Adjoining unto *Champagne* alſo, where it looks towards *Lorrein*, lies the Country and Dutchy of *BAR*; belonging to the Dukes of *Lorrein*, but held by them in chief of the Kings of *France*. The Country commonly called *BARROIS*, environed for the moſt part with the two ſtreams of the River *Marne*; of which, the one riſing in the edge of *Burgundy*, and the other in the borders of *Lorrein*, do meet together at *Chalons* a City of *Champagne*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Bar le Duc*, ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Bar* on the River *Seine*, and *Bar* upon the River *Albi*; a well fortified Town. 2. *La Motte*, 3. *Ligni*, 4. *Arqu*, of which nothing memorable, but that they are the chief of this little Dukedom. Of what antiquity this Dukedom is, and by whom firſt founded and made an abſolute Eſtate, I am yet to ſeek; though probable it is, that it might take its firſt riſe (as many other petit Signeuries did) out of the ruine & diſmembring of the Kingdom of *Lorrein*; or otherwiſe might be erected by the Earls Palatines of *Champagne*, out of ſome part of that Eſtate. But whether it were ſo or not, certain it is, that it came firſt to the preſent houſe of *Lorrein*, by the gift of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c. who ſucceed in it in the right of *Yoland*, or *Violant*, his Mother, Daughter of *Don John* the firſt King of *Aragon*, and of *Yoland* or *Violant*, the heir of *Bar*; and dying gave the ſame, together with the Towns of *Lambeſque*, and *Orgon*, to *Rene* Duke of *Lorrein*, his Nephew, by the Lady *Violant* his Daughter. From this *Rene*, it was taken by *Lewis* the 11. who having put a Garriſon into *Bar*, repaired the Walls, and cauſed the Arms of *France* to be ſet on the Gates thereof. Reſtored again by *Charles* the 8. at his going to the Conqueſt of *Naples*: to buy him out by that means, (if I gueſs aright) of his pretenſions to that Kingdom, which were fair and ſpecious; ſince which time quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Lorrein*, till the year 1633, when ſeized on by *Lewis* the 13. upon a Judgment and Arreſt of the Court of *Parliament* in *Paris*, in regard the preſent Duke had not done his Homage to the King as he ought to have done.

The Arms hereof are *Azure*, two Barbels back to back, *Or*; *Seme* of Croſs Croſſets, *Fitche*, of the ſecond.

But to return again to *Champagne*; it pleaſed *Hugh Capet* at his coming to the Crown of *France*, to give the ſame to *Eudes*, or *Odon*, Earl of *Blais*, whoſe Daughter he

he had married in his private Fortunes, before he had attained the Kingdom) with all the Rights and Priviledges of a County Palatine. Which *Eudes*, or *Odon*, was the Son of *Theobald* Earl of *Blais*, and Nephew of that *Gerlon*, a noble *Dane*, to whom *Charles* the *Simple* gave the Town and Earldom of *Blais*, about the year 920, and not long after the time, that he conferred the Country of *Neuſtria* upon *Rollo* the *Norman*, whoſe Kinſman and aſſiſtant this *Gerlon* was in haraſſing and waſting the coaſts of *France*. In the perſon of *Theobald* the third, the Earls hereof became Kings of *Navarre*, deſcended on him in right of the Lady *Blanch* his Mother, Siſter and Heir of King *Sancho* the eighth, *Anno* 1234. By the Marriage of *Joan* Queen of *Navarre*, and Counteſs of *Champagne*, to *Philip* the Fourth of *France*, ſurnamed the *Fair*, both theſe Eſtates were added to the Crown of *France*: enjoyed by him and his three Sons one after another, though not without ſome prejudice to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis Hutin*. But the three Brethren being dead, and *Philip* of *Valois* ſucceeding in the Crown of *France*, he reſtored the Kingdom of *Navarre* to the ſaid Lady *Joan*: and for the County of *Champagne* (which lay too near the City of *Paris* to be truſted in a foreign hand) he gave unto her and her Poſterity, as in the way of exchange, ſome certain Towns and Lands in other places; though not of equal value to ſo rich a Patrimony.

Count *Palatines* of *Champagne*.

An. Chr.		
999	1	*Odo*, Earl of *Champagne*, *Brie*, *Blais*, and *Touraine*, Son of *Theobald* the elder, Earl of *Blais*.
1032	2	*Stephen*, Earl of *Champagne*, and *Blais*, Father of *Stephen* Earl of *Blais*, and King of *England*.
1101	3	*Theobald*, eldeſt Son of *Stephen*.
1151	4	*Henry*, Son of *Theobald*, a great adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1181	5	*Henry* II. an Aſſociate of the Kings of *France* and *England* in the *Holy Wars*; King of *Hieruſalem*, in right of *Iſabel* his Wife.
1196	6	*Theobald* II. Brother of *Henry*, added unto his houſe the hopes of the Kingdom of *Navarre*, by his Marriage with the Lady *Blanche*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8.
1201	7	*Theobald* III. Earl of *Champagne*, Son of *Theobald* the ſecond, and the Lady *Blanche*, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1234.
1269	8	*Theobald* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 3. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1271	9	*Henry* IV. Son of *Theobald* the 4. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*, &c.
1284	10	*Philip* IV. King of *France*, in right of *Joan* his Wife King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1313	11	*Lewis Hutin*, Son of *Philip*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1315	12	*Philip* the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*, and Earl of *Champagne*.
1320	13	*Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* King of *France* and *Navarre*, & the laſt Earl of *Champagne*; united after his deceaſe by *Philip de Valois* to the Crown of *France*: the Earldom of *March*, near *Angoleſme*, being given for it, in exchange to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of King *Lewis Hutin*, and Queen of *Navarre* married to *Philip* Earl of *Eureux*, in her right honoured with that Crown, from whom deſcend the Kings of *France* and *Navarre* of the Houſe of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of theſe *Palatines* of *Champagé*, were *Argent*, two Bends cotized, potencee and counterpotencee of three pieces, *Or*.

3. PICARDIE.

PICARDIE hath on the Eaſt, the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and *Lorrein*; on the Weſt, ſome part of *Normandy*, and the *Engliſh* Ocean; on the North, the Counties of *Artois* and *Hainalt*; and on the South, *Champagne*, and *France* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called. A Country ſo well ſtored with Corn, that it is accounted the *Granary* or Store-houſe of *Paris*; but the few Wines which it produceth are but harſh, and of no good reliſh, eſpecially in the Northern and colder parts of it.

The ancient Inhabitants of it were the *Sueſſiones*, *Ambiani* and *Veromandui*, conſiderable Nations of the *Belgæ*; and therefore reckoned into the Province of *Belgica ſecunda*: but why they had the name of *Picards*, I am yet to ſeek. Omitting therefore the conjectures of other men, ſome of the which are groundleſs, and the reſt ridiculous; I only ſay, as *Robert* Biſhop of *Auranches*, hath affirmed before me, *Quos itaq; ætas noſtra* Picardos *appellat, verè* Belgæ *dicendi ſunt, qui poſtmodum in* Picardorum *tranſmigrarunt*.

The whole Country as it lieth from *Calais* to the Borders of *Lorrein*, is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* ſubdivided into *Sainterre*, *Ponthieu*, *Boulognois*, and *Guiſnes*: the *Higher* into the *Vidamate* of *Amiens*, *Veromandois*, *Rethelois*, and *Tieraſche*; in every of which there are ſome places of importance and conſideration,

In *LOWER PICARDIE* & the County of *GUISNES*, the chief Towns, 1. *Calais*, by *Cæſar* called *Portus Iecius* (as the adjoining *Promontory*, *Promontorium Iecium*, by *Ptolomy*) a ſtrong Town cloſe upon *Artois*, at the entrance of the *Engliſh* Chanel: taken by *Edward* the third after the ſiege of eleven months, *Anno* 1347, and loſt again by Queen *Mary* in leſs than a fortnight, *Anno* 1557. So that had *Monſieur de Cordes* then lived, he had had his wiſh; who uſed to ſay, That, *he would be content to lie ſeven years in* Hell, *on condition that* Calais *were taken from the* Engliſh. The loſs of which Town was a great blow to our Eſtate, for till that time we had the *Keys* of *France* at our Girdles: and as great a grief unto Queen *Mary*, who ſickning preſently upon it, ſaid to thoſe which attended her, That, *if ſhe were opened, they ſhould find* Calais *next her heart*. 2. *Hamme*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt Out-works of *Calais*. 3. *Fiennes*, on the borders toward *Artois*, which with the Country joining to it made an ancient Barony; the Patrimony in times paſt of the Earls of S. *Paul*, by whom given to *Theobald* the younger Brother of *Lewis* Earl of S. *Paul* and Conſtable of *France*, (of whom more hereafter) and from that Family conveyed to the houſe of *Egmond* by the marriage of *Francis* heir hereof to *John* Earl of *Egmond*, who died in the year 1528, and was the Father of that Earl, who after was beheaded by the Duke of *Alva*, *Anno* 1568. 4. *Andres*, more towards the borders of *Poulognois*, memorable for the interview of *Henry* the Eighth, and *Francis* the Firſt; and many meetings of the *Engliſh* and *French* Commiſſioners. 5. *Guiſnes*, which gives name to this Diviſion, called the County of *Guiſnes* (of which the Land of *Oye* wherein *Calais* ſtood (by the *French* called commonly *Pais de Calais*) was eſteemed a part). The Earldom anciently of the illuſtrious houſe of *Graie*, of which more anon.

2. In *BOULOGNOIS*, neighbouring on the Country of *Guiſnes*, the places of moſt note, 1. *Blackneſs*, a ſtrong Fort on the Sea-ſide, betwixt *Calice* and *Boulogne*. 2. *Chaſtillon*, oppoſite to *Boulogne*, on the other ſide of the water. 3. *Boullenberg*, more with the Land, an Out-work to *Boulogne*. 4. *Boulogne*, by *Pliny* called *Portus Geſſoriacus*, part of the Country of the *Morini*, ſpoken of by *Cæſar*; divided into the *Baſe* or *Low Town* lying on the ſhore ſide, well built, and much frequented by Paſſengers, going to, or coming out of *England*; and the *High Town* ſtanding on the riſe of an Hill, well garriſoned for defence of the Port beneath it, and honoured with a a Biſhops See, tranſlated hither from *Tourney* when that City was taken by the *Engliſh*. The Town and Country taken by King *Henry* the eighth, with infinite expence of treaſure, *Anno* 1544, but yielded not long after by King *Edward* the Sixth: the *French* redeeming it at leſs than a fourth part of the money, which the gaining of it had coſt the Crown of *England*. As for the fortunes of this Country, it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, during which time it gave one King unto *Hieruſalem*, and another to *England*. The firſt Earl of it which we meet with, was that *Euſtace*, who by his marriage with *Ida*, the Daughter of *Geoffry* or *Godfrey* the ſecond, Duke of *Lorrein*, added the Dutchy of *Bovillon* in *Gaul-Belgick* to his Earldom of *Boulogne*. To him ſucceeded in both theſe Titles and Eſtates, *Godfrey*, ſirnamed of *Bovillon* his eldeſt Son: who after the death of *Godfrey* the third his Couſin-german attained unto the Dukedom of *Lorrein*, and finally was the firſt and moſt renowned King of the Weſtern Chriſtians reigning in *Hieruſalem*. *Godfrey* being dead, *Euſtace* the youngeſt of his Brethren became Earl of *Boulogne*: whoſe daughter *Maud* brought this Eſtate and Title to *Steven* of *Blais*, who afterwards was King of *England*. *Euſtace* the only Son of *Steven* dying without iſſue, the rights hereof remained in his Siſter *Mary*, the Abbeſs of *Ramſey*, married to *Matthew* Brother of *Philip* of *Elſats* Earl of *Flanders*. And though *Matthew* was commanded by the Pope to reſtore her again unto the Abbey out of which he had taken her; yet he kept this Country for her Children. Conveyed by *Ida* the eldeſt Daughter of this Bed to *Reginald* of *Chaſtris* her third husband; by *Maud* his daughter to *Philip* ſecond Son of *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, by another *Maud* (he dying without iſſue) to *Alfonſo* of *Portugal*, who ſucceeding after in that Kingdom, ſent her back to *Boulogne*: and finally by *Joan* daughter and heir of *William*, this *Alfonſus* Grandchild to *Philip* Earl of *Artois*, the Son of *Eudes* Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, to whom ſhe brought *Philip* their only Son, ſucceſſour to his Grand-father in the ſaid Eſtates, and to his Mother in this Earldom. But he deceaſing without iſſue, *Anno* 1361, and *Joan* not leaving any children by King *John* of *France*, whom ſhe married after the death of her firſt Husband, it fell by ſome other of the Heirs General to the *De la Tours* of *Avern* (the Anceſtors of the now Dukes of *Bovillon*) continuing in that Family till the year 1477, when bought by *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* of *Bertrand de la Tour*, the better to aſſure his Kingdom on that ſide againſt the *Engliſh* then poſſeſſed of the Country of *Guiſnes*. The purchaſe being made, *Lewis* the now Proprietor, did Homage for it to the Virgin *Mary*, in the chief Church thereof called *Noſtre Dame*, bare-headed, on his knees, without Spurs or Girdle: and offered to her Image a maſſie Heart of gold of 2000 ounces; capitulating that from thenceforth he and his Succeſſors would hold that Earldom of her only, in perpetual Homage; and at the change of every Vaſſal preſent her with a golden heart of the ſame weight. Since which time never aliened from the Crown of *France*; nor giving title unto any but to *Katharine de Medices* Wife of *Henry* the Second, created Counteſs of *Boulogne* and *Clermont*, when firſt married to him, he being then Duke of *Orleans* only.

The Arms hereof under the ancient Earls of *Boulogne*, were *Or*, a Banner *Gules*, tuffed *Purple*: thoſe of *De la Tour*, being a Tower embattelled *Sable*; but the colour of the Field I do no where find.

3. *PONTHIEV*, ſo called from the Bridges, built for conveniency of paſſage over the mooriſh Flats thereof, belonged formerly to the *Engliſh*; to whom it came by the Marriage of *Eleanor*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, by *Joan* the Daughter and Heir of *Simon* the laſt Earl hereof, to King *Edward* the Firſt. Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Abbeville*, ſeated on the *Some*, well fortified and as ſtrongly garriſoned, as a Frontier Town upon *Artois*: on one ſide unaſſaultable by reaſon of a deep and mooriſh Fen, which comes up cloſe to it; beautified with a fair Abbey, whence it had the name (*Abbatis Villa* in the *Latin*) and the See of a Biſhop. 2. *Monſtreville*, a well fortified Town, in the way betwixt *Abbeville* and *Boulogne*, and a ſtrong out-work unto *Paris*. 3. *Creſſie*, where King *Edward* the third defeated the great Army of *Philip de Valois*, in the firſt onſets for that Kingdom, *Anno* 1343. And 4. *Treport*, a ſmall Haven on the Eaſt of S. *Valeries*. Some place the Earldom of S. *Paul* in this Country of *Pontbieu*, others more rightly in *Artois*, where we mean to meet with it. The Arms hereof were *Or*, three Bends *Azure*.

4. And as for the Country of *SAINTERRE*, which is the fourth part of the *Lower Picardie*, the chief Towns of it are 1. *Peronne*, upon the River *Some*, where *Lewis* the eleventh, the greateſt Maſter of State-craft for the times he lived in, put himſelf moſt improvidently into the hands of *Charles* of *Burgundy*, who as improvidently diſmiſſed him. 2. *Roy*, and 3. *Mont Didier*, (*Mons Deſiderii* in *Latin*) both of them ſtrong Towns upon the Frontier; but otherwiſe of little fame in former Stories.

In the *Higher Picardie* being that part of this Country which lieth furtheſt from the Sea, the firſt diviſion which occurreth, is the *Vidamate* of *AMIENS*, ſo called of the fair City of *Amiens*, and the *Vidame* or chief Governour of it. Which honour as it is peculiar to the *French* only; ſo *Mills* in his Edition of *Glovers Catalogue of Honour*, will have but four at all in *France*, *viz.* this of *Amiens*, *Chalons*, *Gerberoy*, and that of *Chartres*. But certainly in *France* there are many more of them; as at *Rhemes*, *Mans*, *&c.* and formerly as many as it had Biſhops; the *Vice-dominus* or *Vice-dame*, being to the Biſhop in his *Temporals*, as the Chancellor in his *Spirituals*; or as the *Vice-comites* (*Viſcounts*) were anciently to the Provincial Earls in their Courts of Judicature; or to give you an example nearer home and of more reſemblance, theſe *French Vidames* were unto their ſeveral and reſpective Biſhops, as the *Temporal Chancellor* (in this Realm) of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, or the *High Steward* of the Biſhoprick of *Ely*, to thoſe ſeveral Biſhops.

Places of moſt note herein, 1. *Corbie*, a Town of great importance, and ſtrongly Garriſoned, ſituate on the Frontier towards the *Netherlands*; 2. *Chaune*, on the ſame Frontier alſo, but of leſs conſideration, the Honorary ſeat and Title of the preſent *Vidame*; 3. *Piquigni*, ſituate on a pretty aſcent of ground overlooking the *Some*, on the left hand of the River betwixt *Amiens* and *Abbeville*, the ordinary ſeat of the former *Vidames*; more famous for the enterview of *Edward* the Fourth of *England*, & *Lewis* the 12. than for giving the name of *Picardie* to all the Province; which *Mercator* only of all writers doth aſcribe unto it. 4 *Crony* an obſcure Village, now but formerly of

ſpecial

ſpecial note for a goodly Caſtle, commanding over the adjoining Territory, and giving name to the illuſtrious Family, hence ſurnamed of *Crouy*, deſcended from the Kings of *Hungary*, and the Progenitors of the Dukes of *Arſchoh*, and Princes of *Chimay* in the *Netherlands*; before their tranſlating to which Countries by the Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were entituled Earls of *Guiſnes*. 5. *Amiens* it ſelf, ſeated upon the *Some* above *Piquigni*, the River being there divided into many Streams for the uſe and ſervice of the Town; well built, with very ſtrong walls and deep ditches: the loſs whereof, when taken by Archduke *Albert*, much hazarded the affairs and reputation of King *Henry* the 4. and therefore when he had regained it, he added to the former Works an impregnable Citadel. But the chief glory of this City is in the *Cathedral*, the faireſt and moſt lovely ſtructure in the Weſt of *Europe*: ſo beautified within and adorned without, that all the excellencies of Coſt and Architecture, ſeem to be met together in the compoſition. The Fronts of our Cathedrals of *Wells* and *Peterburgh*, the rich Glaſs in the Quire at *Canterbury*, the coſtly Imagery, and arched Butreſſes in the Chappel at *Weſtminſter* (before the late defacements of thoſe *Cathedrals*) might ſerve as helps to ſet forth the full beauties of it. The Towns and Territories anciently under the command of the Biſhops of it, whoſe Officers for the Temporal government hereof called *Vice-domini* or *Vidames*, were at firſt eligible by the Biſhops, and accomptable to them, but by degrees engroſſing all power unto themſelves, they became Hereditary, and gave the name of the *Vidamate* of *Amiens* to this part of *Picardy*. The preſent *Vidame* of it is the Duke of *Chaune*, who being one of the younger Brothers of *Monſieur de Luyne* (chief favourite to K. *Lewis* 13.) obtained in marriage the daughter and heir of the former *Vidames*, with whom he had the Town and Caſtle of *Piquigni*, the chief command of theſe parts, and a rent of 9000 *l. per annum*, honoured thereupon by the power and favours of his Brother with the title of the Duke of *Chaune* and Peer of *France*, *Anno* 1620, or thereabouts.

II. But not to dwell on this place too long, paſs we on next to *VEROMANDOIS*, the ancient habitation of the *Veromandui*: the faireſt and largeſt part of both *Picardies*; and not a whit inferiour to the beſt of *France*, in the number of neat and populous Cities.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1. *Soiſſons*, called anciently *Auguſta Sueſſionum*, the chief City of the *Sueſſones* or *Sueſſions*: and the laſt Hold which the *Romans* had in all *Gaul*; loſt by *Siagrius*, Governour for the Weſtern Emperor, to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*. In the diviſion of his Kingdom, made the ſeat Royal of *Clotair* the Son of this *Clouis*; and of *Aribert*, and *Chilperick*, the Sons of *Clotair*, from hence entituled Kings of *Soiſſons*; their Kingdom containing the whole Province of *Belgica ſecunda*, or the Provinces of *Artois*, *Picardy*, and *Champagne* as we call them now. But *Soiſſons* having long ſince loſt the honour of a Regal Seat, hath of late times been made the honourary Title of the Counts of *Soiſſons*, a branch of the Royal ſtock of *Bourbon*; a Biſhops See, and ſituate on the River of *Aiſne*. 2. *Laon*, a Biſhops See alſo, the Biſhop whereof is one of the *Twelve Peers of France*, and Earl of *Laon*; the Town in *Latin*, *Laodunum*. 3. *Noyon*, in *Latin*, *Noviodunum*, an Epiſcopal See alſo. 4. *Chapelle*, a ſtrong piece, one of the beſt out-works of *Paris* againſt the *Netherlands*. 5. *D'Ourlans*, 6. *La Fere*, and *Han*, places of great ſtrength alſo, but more near the Frontiers. And 7. S. *Quintin*, anciently the chief City of the *Veromandui*, then called *Auguſta Veromanduorum*: called afterwards S. *Quintin*, from that Saint here worſhipped, as the *Patron Deus tutelaris* of it. A place of great importance for the Realm of *France*; and ſo eſteemed in the opinion of the Earl of *Charalois*, (after Duke of *Burgundy*) and King *Lewis* the 11. the firſt of which never digeſted the reſtoring of it to that King, being pawned unto his Father (together with *Corbie*, *Amiens*, and *Abbeville*) for no leſs than 400000 Crowns; the later never would forgive the Earl of St. *Paul* for detaining it from him, though under colour of his ſervice. A Town of greater note in ſucceeding times, for the famous battel of S. *Quintins* *Anno* 1557. wherein King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, with the help of the *Engliſh*, under command of the Earl of *Pembroke*; overthrew the whole Forces of the *French*, made themſelves Maſters of the Town, and thereby grew ſo formidable to the *French* King, that the Duke of *Guiſe* was in poſt haſte ſent for out of *Italy*, (where his affairs began to proſper) to look unto the ſafety of *France* it ſelf. As for the Fortunes of this part it was once an Earldom of it ſelf, and an Earldom of as great Antiquity as the moſt in *France*; it being one *Heribert* or *Hebert* Earl of *Veromandois*, who in purſuance of the quarrel of the Houſe of *Anjou* ſurpriſed *Charles* the *Simple*, and carried him Priſoner to *Peronne*, where he after died; for which deſervedly hanged by *Lewis* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine* the Son of *Charles*, when he became poſſeſſed of his Fathers Kingdom; by the Daughter and Heir of another *Hebert*, conveyed in marriage unto *Hugh* ſurnamed the Great, one of the younger Sons of King *Henry* the firſt of *France*, ſucceeding in her right into the title and eſtate of Earl of *Veromandois*, and by that name renowned in the firſt wars for the Holy Land. By *Elizabeth* the Neece of this *Hugh*, the Daughter of *Rodolphus* his eldeſt Son married to *Philip* of *Elſatz* Earl of *Flanders*, it was added unto that eſtate; but ſhortly after given by the ſame *Philip* (having no children of his own) in Dower with *Iſabel* his Neece, daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainalt* unto *Philip Auguſtus* King of *France*, and ſince united to that Crown, not giving ſince that time the title of Earl or Duke to any, for ought I can find.

III. More towards *Hainalt* and *Lorrein* lieth the Country of *RETHELOIS*, ſo called of *Rethel* the chief Town: well fortified as the reſt of the Frontier places; but of moſt note among the *French*, in that the eldeſt Sons of the Dukes of *Nevers*, have uſually been entituled Earls and Dukes of *Retbel*; united to that Family by the marriage of *Lewis* of *Flanders*, Earl of *Nevers*, with the daughter and heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*, *An.* 1312, or thereabouts. 2. S. *Monhaud*, a Town of conſequence and ſtrength. 3. *Sygni*, a ſtrong piece belonging to the Marqueſs of *Vieu ville*. 4. *Chaſteau-Portion*, of more beauty, but of like importance. The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Rothel* were *Gules*, three Rakes-heads indented *Or*.

IV. Finally in the Dutchy of *TIERASCHE*, the laſt part of the *higher Picardy*, we have the Town of *Guiſe*, of ſome note for the Caſtle, but of more for the Lords thereof, of the Ducal Family of *Lorrein* (on the borders whereof it ſtandeth) from hence entituled Dukes of *Guiſe*. A Family which within a little compaſs of time produced two *Cardinals*, the one entituled of *Guiſe*, the other of *Lorrein*; ſix Dukes, that is to ſay, the D. of *Guiſe*, *Mayenne*, *Aumal*, *Elbeuf*, *Aguitlon*, and *Cheureuſe*; the Earl of *Samarive*; and beſides many daughters married into the beſt houſes in *France*, one married to *James* the fifth King of the *Scots*. The firſt, and he that gave the riſe unto all the reſt of this potent Family, was *Claud*, Son to *Rene* the ſecond Duke of *Lorrein*, who paſſing into *France* to take poſſeſſion of the Patrimony allotted to him, followed King *Henry* the firſt in the War of *Italy*, where he behaved himſelf ſo valiantly at the Battel of *Marignum*, in which he had the chief command of the *German* Auxiliaries, that the King always after held him in a great eſteem, and married him to *Anto Reette* of *Burbon*, daugh-

ter of *Francis*, Earl of *Vendoſme*; in reſpect of which alliance, and his other merits, he was honoured with the title of Duke of *Guiſe*; The Father (amongſt other children) of *Mary* Q. of *Scots*, Wife of *James* the fifth, and Grandmother of *James* the ſixth, the firſt Monarch of *Britain*. The ſecond was *Francis*, who endangered the Realm of *Naples*, reſiſted the ſiege of the Emperor *Charles* at *Metz*, drove him out of *Provence*, took *Calice* from Q. *Mary*, and was at laſt treacherouſly ſlain at the ſiege of *Orleans*, by one of the *Hugonots* named *Poltrot*, (on the inſtigation of ſome of the chiefs of that faction) *An.* 1463. The third was *Henry* that great enemy of the Proteſtants, who contrived the great Maſſacre at *Paris*, and almoſt diſpoſſeſſed *Henry* the third of all *France*: He began the holy league, and was finally ſlain at *Blais*, by the command of King *Henry* the third. But we muſt know that this Town did anciently belong to the Dukes of *Lorrein*: and had given the title of Earl of *Guiſe* to *Frederick* the ſecond Son of *John*, and *Charles* the third Son of *Rene*, both the firſt of thoſe names; before *Claud* of *Lorrein* was advanced to the title of Duke; as being part of the Eſtate and Patrimony of the Barons of *Join-ville*, of whom we ſpake before when we were in *Champagne*. Of moſt note next to *Guiſe* it ſelf, is 2. *Ripemont* on the South of *Guiſe*. 3. *Chaſtelet* upon the borders towards *Luxembourg*, a ſtrong Town, and one of the beſt out-works of *France*. 4. *Mazuers*, upon the *Maes* or *Meuſe*, a place of great ſtrength and like importance; belonging properly to the Dukes of *Nevers* (as chief Lords thereof) in right of their deſcent from the houſe of *Rethel*: fortified with a ſtrong Citadel for defence of the place, and that Citadel well garriſoned by the *French* King, for defence of this border; laid to the Government of *Champagne*, though a Town of *Picardy*, and therefore made by ſome to belong to that Province alſo.

As for the ſtate of this whole Province, I do not find that it was ever paſſed over by the *French* Kings unto any one hand: as almoſt all the reſt of *France* had been at ſome time or other, but diſtracted unto divers Seigneuries and ſeveral Lordſhips (all of them abſolute in themſelves, and ſcarce affording to the *French* King the ſlight tribute of Homage) the particulars whereof we have ſeen before: ſome of which fell to the *Crown of France* by confiſcations, ſome by lawful marriages, and others by conqueſt; ſome held of *England*, ſome of the Earls of *Artois*, and others of *Flanders*, and laſtly of the Dukes of *Burgundy*, as Lords of thoſe Provinces: thoſe which depended upon *England*, being ſeized on by *Charles* the 7. on the loſs of *Normandy* by the *Engliſh*; as thoſe which held of *Burgundy*, were by *Lewis* his Son, immediately on the death of Duke *Charles*, at the Battel of *Nancy*, *Anno* 1476.

4. NORMANDIE.

NORMANDIE is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Some*, and part of *Picardy*, on the Weſt with *Bretagne*, and ſome part of the Ocean, on the North, with the *Engliſh* Chanel, by which divided from *England*; and on the South, with *France* ſpecially ſo called, and the County of *Main*. It made up the whole Province of *Lugdunenſis ſecunda*, in the time of the *Romans*; the Metropolis whereof was *Roven*: and in the greatneſs of the *French* Empire had the name of *Neuſtria*, corruptly ſo called for *Weſtria*; the name of *Weſtria* or *Weſtenrich*, being given by ſome to this part of the Realm of *Weſt-France*, as that of *Auſtria* or *Oſtenrich* to a part of *Eaſt-France*. Afterwards being beſtowed upon the *Normans* by *Charles* the *Simple*, it was called *Normandie*.

This flouriſhing and rich Dukedom of *Normandy*, for laregeneſs of Extent, multitudes of People, number and ſtatelineſs of Cities, fertility of Soil, and the commodiouſneſs of the Seas, may worthily be accompted the chief of *France*. Well watered with the River *Seine* which runneth quite through it; as do alſo 2. the *Orne*, and 3. the *Aven*: not to ſay any thing of 4. *Robee*, 5. *Ante*, and 6. *Reinelle*, and many others of leſs note. In length it reacheth about 170 miles, and about 60 in breadth, where it is narroweſt: containing in that round the largeſt and faireſt Corn-fields that are to be ſeen in all *France*. Of all other natural commodities it is extream plentiful, excepting Wines; which the Northern coldneſs of the Climate admits not of, or ſparingly at the beſt, and of no perfection. The people of it formerly renowned for feats of Arms, the Conquerors of *England*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Kingdom of *Antioch* in the Eaſt; at this time thought to be of a more ſharp and ſubtil wit, than the reſt of the *French*, *Scavans au poſſible ed proceces & plaideries* (ſaith *Orteleus* of them) eſpecially in the quillets of Law.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*: the *Lower* containing the Sea-coaſts, and the *Higher*, the more Inland parts. Principal Cities of the whole, 1. *Conſtance*, a Biſhops See, the Spire or Steeple of whoſe *Cathedral*, is eaſily diſcernable afar off, both by Sea and Land, and ſerveth Sailers for a Land-mark. From hence the Country hereabouts hath the name of *Conſtantine*. 2. *Auranches* ſituate on a Rock with a fair proſpect over the *Engliſh* Chanel, but more near to *Bretagne*, than the other; the chief City of the *Abrincantes*, called *Ingena* by *Ptolomy*; now a Biſhops See. 3. *Caen* (*Cadomum* in *Latin*) an Epiſcopal See, as the other; ſtrong, populous, and well built, ſeated upon the River *Orne*, ſecond in reputation of the whole Province, but more eſpecially famous for the Sepulchre of *William* the *Conquerour*, the Univerſity founded here by King *Henry* the fifth of *England*, and for the long reſiſtance which it made againſt him, in his Conqueſt of *Normandy*. 4. *Baieux* (the *Civitas Baiocaſſium* of *Antoninus*) from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Belſin*. Memorable of a long time for a See Epiſcopal. One of the Biſhops whereof, called *Odo*, Brother unto *William* the *Conqueror*, by the Mothers ſide, was by him created Earl of *Kent*; and afterwards on ſome juſt diſpleaſure committed priſoner. For which, when quarrelled by the Pope, (the Clergy being then exempted from the Secular Powers) he returned this anſwer, That he had committed the Earl of *Kent*, not the Biſhop of *Bayeux*: By which diſtinction he avoided the Popes diſpleaſure. 5. *Roven*, of old *Rotthomagum*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Seine*, and watered with the two little Riverets of *Robee*, and *Reinelle*, which keep it very ſweet and clean. The City for the moſt part well built, of large circuit, and great trading; the ſecond for bigneſs, wealth, and beauty, in all *France*: anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, and an Archbiſhops See; and honoured of late times with a Court of Parliament, erected here by *Lewis* the twelfth, *Anno* 1501. In the Cathedral Church hereof (a reverend, but no beautiful Fabrick) is to be ſeen the Sepulchre of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, and Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixth: which when an envious Courtier perſwaded *Charles* the 8. to deface; *God forbid* (ſaid he) *that I ſhould wrong him, being dead*, whom living *all the power of France was not able to withſtand*, adding withal, That he deſerved a better Monument than the *Engliſh* had beſtowed upon him. And to ſay truth, the Tomb is but mean and poor, ſhort of the merits of the man, and carrying no proportion to ſo great a virtue.

6. *Falaiſe*,

6. *Falaise*, upon the River *Ante*, once of strength and note; the dwelling-place of *Arlette*, a Skinners daughter, and the Mother of *William* the Conquerour; whom Duke *Robert*, passing through the Town, took such notice of, (as he beheld her in a Dance amongst other Damosels) that he sent for her to accompany him that night in bed, and begot on her *William* the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*. Her immodesty that night said to be so great, that either in regard thereof, or in spight to her Son, the *English* called all Strumpets by the name of *Harlots*, the word continuing to this day. 7. *Verneville*, (*Vernolium* in *Latin*) in former times accounted one of the Bulwarks of *Normandy*, against the *French*. Of which it is reported, that when news was brought to *Richard* the first, that *Philip* sirnamed *Augustus*, the *French* King, had laid siege unto it, he should say these words; *I will never turn my back, till I have confronted those cowardly Frenchmen*. For performance of which Princely word, he caused a passage to be broken through the Palace of *Westminster*, and came so unexpectedly upon his Enemies, that they raised their siege, and hastned homewards. 8. *Alanson*, of most note for giving the title of Earl, and Duke, to many Princes of the Royal Family of *Valois*, beginning in *Charles de Valois*, the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King; and continuing for eight successions, till the death of *Charles* the Fourth, Duke of this line: conferred occasionally after that, on many of the younger Princes of the Royal Family. 9. *Lysieux*, on the *North east* of *Alanson*, a Bishops See, the chief Town of the *Lexovii*; as 10. *Caux*, of the *Caletes*, both placed by *Cæsar* in these parts. 11. *Eureux*, an Episcopal See also, by *Ptolomy* called *Mediolanium*, the chief City anciently of the *Eburones*, and still a rich and flourishing Town; the third in estimation of all this Province, and made an Earldom in the person of *Lewis* a younger Son of *Philip* the third; whose Son, called *Philip*, by his marriage with *Joan* Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*, attained unto the Crown of *Navarre*. But this Town, with many fair Estates in this Country which depend on it, being seized on by the *French* in the time of *Charles* the Son of this *Philip*, for some practices against that Kingdom; there was after given to *Charles* the third and last King of this house, in compensation for the same, *Anno* 1406, the title of Duke of *Nemours*, with a good sum of ready money, and a pension of 1200 l. *sterling*, yearly, issuing out of the Revenues of *Brie* and *Champagne*. 12. *Guisors*, a strong Frontier Town towards *France*, whilst *Normandy* was in the hands of the *English*, or under its own *Dukes* and *Princes*: notable for the many repulses given unto the *French*. And 13. *Pontoyse*, another Frontier upon *France*; so called of the Bridge on the River of *Oyse*, (which divides *France* from *Normandy*) on which the Town is situate, and by which well fortified on that side; but taken at the second coming of *Charles* the 7. after an ignominious flight hence, upon the noise only of the coming of the Duke of *York*, Commander at that time of the Province, and the *English* Forces. 14. *Albemarl*, contractedly *Aumerl*, most memorable for giving the Title of *Earl* to the Noble Family *De Fortibus*, Lords of *Holderness* in *England*; and of *Duke*, to *Edward* Earl of *Rutland*, after Duke of *York*. More towards the Sea, 15. S. *Valeries*, seated on a small, but secure Bay, betwixt *Dieppe* and *New-Haven*. 16. *Dieppe*, at the mouth of a little River so named, opening into a large and capacious Bay: a Town of Trade, especially for the *New-found-Land*: remarkable for its fidelity to *Henry* the 4. in the midst of his troubles; when the Confederates of the *Guisian* Faction, called the *Holy League*, had outed him of almost all the rest of his Cities, compelled him to betake himself hither, (from whence he might more easily hoise sail for *England*) and called him in derision, *The King of Dieppe*. 17. *New-Haven*, the Port-Town to *Rouen* and *Paris*, situate at the mouth of the River *Seine*, from hence by great Ships navigable as far as *Rouen*; by lesser, unto *Pont de l' Arch*, 70 miles from *Paris*: the Bridge of *Rouen* formerly broken down by the *English*, to secure the Town, lying unrepaired to this day, by means of the *Parisians*, for the better trading of their City. By the *French* it is called *Havre de grace*, and *Franciscopolis* by the *Latins*; repaired and fortified (the better to confront the *English*) by King *Francis* the First, and from thence so named. Delivered by the Prince of *Conde*, and his faction, into the hands of Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, as a Town of *caution*, for the landing of such Forces as she was to send to their relief, in the first Civil-War of *France* about Religion: and by the help of the same Faction, taken from her again, as soon as their differences were compounded. By means whereof, the *Hugonots* were not only weakned for the present, but made uncapable of any succours out of *England* for the time to come: and the next year were again warred on by their King, with more heat than formerly. 18. *Harflew*, and 19. *Honflew*, both situate on the banks of the *Seine*, but of little notice at the present, because not capable of any great shipping; nor useful in the way of Trade, by reason of the interposition of *New-Haven*, betwixt them and the Sea: the former, famous notwithstanding in our *English* Stories; as the first Town which that Victorious Prince King *Henry* the Fifth, attempted and took in, in *France*. 20. *Churburg*, (the *Latins* call it *Cæsaris Burgum*) on the Sea-side also, the last Town which the *English* held in the Dukedom of *Normandie*: belonging properly and naturally to the Earls of *Eureux*, advanced unto the Crown of *Navarre*; till alienated by *Charles* the third of *Navarre*, on the composition before mentioned; but being garrisoned by the *English* for King *Henry* the Sixth, it held out a siege of seven Months against the Forces of *France*.

Here are also in this Kingdom, the Towns of 21. *Tankerville*, and 22. *Ewe*, which have given the title of Earls, to the noble Family of the *Greys*, and *Bourchiers*, in *England*: as also, those of 23. *Harcourt*, 24. *Longuiville*, and 25. *Aumal*, which have given the title of Duke and Earl, to some of the best Houses in *France*.

In this Country also is the little Signeury of *IVIDOT*, heretofore said to be a free and absolute Kingdom; advanced to that high dignity by *Clotaire*, the seventh King of the *French*; who having abused the Wife of one *Gautier de Ividot*, (so called because of his dwelling here) and afterward (to prevent revenge) killed the man himself, to make some satisfaction to his Family for so great an injury, erected the Lordship of *Ividot*, to the estate of a Kingdom; and gave unto the Heirs of this *Gautier* (or *Walter*) all the Prerogatives of a free and absolute Monarch, as, to make Laws, coyn Money, and the like. From hence the *French* call a man that hath but small demains to maintain a great title, a *Roy d' Ividot*. At last, but at what time I know not, it fell again to a Lordship, and belongeth now to the house of *Bellay* in *Bretagne*.

There belonged also to this Dukedom, but rather as subject to the Dukes of *Normandie*, than part of *Normandie* it self; the County of *PERCH*, situate betwixt it and the Province of *La Beausse*, of which now reckned for a part: and was divided into the higher and the lower. The chief Towns of it, 1. *Nogent le Rotrou*, of which little memorable, but that it is the principal of *Perch Govet*, or the lower *Perch*, and that it took that adjunct from *Rotrou*, the second Earl of this County,

the

the Founder or Repairer of it, to difference it from another of that name, called *Nogent le Roy*, a Town of *Champagne*. 2. *Mortaigne*, or *Moriton*; of moſt note in the higher *Perch*, eſpecially for giving the title of an Earl to *John*, the youngeſt Son of K. *Henry* the ſecond, after King of *England*; as in the times ſucceeding, to the Lord *Edmund Beaufort*, after Duke of *Somerſet*. The whole, firſt made a diſtinct Eſtate, in the perſon of *Arnulph* of *Heſdin* the firſt Earl hereof. Whoſe Son and Succeſſor, named *Rotrou*, (of great note in the Wars of *Spain* againſt the *Moors*, in behalf of *Alfonſo* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*, *An.* 1110) by *Maud* the natural daughter of *Henry* the firſt of *England*, unfortunately drowned with her Brother *William*, as they croſſed the Seas; had one only daughter, named *Magdalen*, (or as ſome ſay, *Margarite*) the Wife of *Garcia*, the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, and Mother of K. *Sancho*, ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, from whom all the Kings of *Navarre* have ſince deſcended. But this Family being extinct in a ſhort time after, the Eſtate fell unto the *Engliſh*, as Dukes of *Normandie*; and ſo continued till the ſeizure of *Normandy* by the *French*, in the time of K. *John*. After which time, the title of Earl of *Perch* was given to *Charles* Earl of *Valois* and *Alanſo*, Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, of *Lewis* Earl of *Anjou*, and of *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Alanſon*; in which houſe of *Alanſon* it continued, and was commonly the title of the eldeſt Sons of the Dukes thereof.

But to return again to the Country of *Normandie*; the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Caletes*, *Eburones*, *Lexovii*, *Abrimantes*, ſpoken of before: the *Bellocaſſi*, or *Venelocaſſi*, about *Rouen*: the *Salares* and *Baiocenſes*, about *Sees* and *Baieux*: all conquered firſt by the powerful *Romans*; the *Romans* after by the *French*; and the *French* by the *Normans*. Theſe laſt, a people of the *North*, inhabiting thoſe Countries which now make up the Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Swethland*, and *Norway*, united in the name of *Normans*, in regard of their *Northernly* ſituation; as in our Hiſtory and Deſcription of thoſe Kingdoms, we ſhall ſhew more fully. Out of thoſe parts they made their firſt irruption about the year 700, when they ſo ranſacked and plagued the *Maritime Towns* of *France* and *Belgium*, that it was inſerted in the Litany, *From Plague*, *Peſtilence*, *and the fury of the* Normans, *good Lord*, &c. To quiet theſe people, and to ſecure himſelf, *Charles* the *Simple* gave them a part of *Neuſtria*, (from them ſince called *Normannia*) or *Normandy*, together with the Soveraignty of *Bretagne*; enjoyed by them and their Poſterity for many Ages. Their firſt *Duke* was *Rollo*, *An.* 912; from whom, in a direct Line, the ſixth was *William* the Baſtard, Conqueror, and King of *England*, *An.* 1067. After this, *Normandy* continued *Engliſh* till the days of King *John*; when *Philip Auguſtus* ſeized on all Eſtates in *France*, as forfeitures, *An.* 1202. The *Engliſh* then poſſeſſing the Dukedoms of *Normandy* and *Aquitain*; the Earldoms of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Maine*, *Poictou*, and *Limoſin*; being in all a far greater and better portion of the Country, than the Kings of *France* themſelves poſſeſſed. The *Engliſh* after this recovered this Dukedom, by the Valour of King *Henry* the Fifth; and having held it 30 years, loſt it again in the unfortunate Reign of King *Henry* the ſixth: the *Engliſh* then diſtracted with domeſtick factions. After which double Conqueſt of it from the Crown of *England*, the *French* diſtruſting the affections of the *Normans*, and finding them withall a ſtubborn and untractable people, have miſerably oppreſſed them with Tolls and Taxes, keeping them always poor and in low condition; inſomuch as it may be ſaid of them, that they are the moſt *beggarly* people that ever had the luck to live in ſo rich a Country. But it is time to look on

The Dukes of *Normandie*.

An. Chr.		
912	1	*Rollo* of *Norway*, made firſt Duke of *Normandie*, by *Charles* the *Simple*; by whoſe perſwaſion baptized, and called *Robert*.
917	2	*William*, ſirnamed *Longeſpee*, from the length of his Sword.
942	3	*Richard*, the Son of *Longeſpee*.
980	4	*Richard* the II. Son of the former.
1026	5	*Richard* the III. Son of *Richard* the Second.
1028	6	*Robert* the Brother of *Richard* the Third.
1035	7	*William* the baſe Son of *Robert*, ſubdued the Realm of *England*; from thence called the *Conqueror*.
1093	8	*Robert* the II. eldeſt Son of *William* the *Conqueror*, put by the Kingdom of *England* by his two Brothers, *William* and *Henry*, in hope whereof he had refuſed the Crown of *Hieruſalem*, then newly conquered by the Forces of the *Chriſtian* Princes of the Weſt. Outed at laſt, impriſoned, and deprived of ſight by his Brother *Henry*; he lived a miſerable life in the Caſtle of *Cardiffe*, and lieth buried in the Cathedral Church of *Gloceſter*.
1102	9	*Henry* the firſt, King of *England*.
1134	10	*Stephen*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*.
	11	*Henry Plantagenet*, D. of *Normandie*, and after King of *England*; of that Name the ſecond.
1161	12	*Henry* the III. ſirnamed *Court-mantle*, Son of *Henry* the ſecond, made D. of *Normandie* by his Father.
1189	13	*Richard* I. ſirnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, Son of *Henry* the ſecond.
1199	14	*John* the Brother of *Richard*, King of *England*, and D. of *Normandy*, outed of his Eſtates in *France*, by King *Philip Auguſtus*, *An.* 1202, before whom he was accuſed of the Murther of his Nephew *Arthur*, found dead in the Ditches of the Caſtle of *Rouen*, where he was impriſoned; but ſentenced *cauſa inaudita*, for his not appearing. After this *Normandy* ſtill remained united to the Crown of *France*, (the title only being born by *John de Valois*, afterwards King, and *Charles* the fifth, during the lifetime of his Father) till the Conqueſt of it by the Valour of K. *Henry* the 5. *An.* 1420, which was 218 years after it had been ſeized on by King *Philip Auguſtus*, and having been holden by the *Engliſh* but 30 years, was loſt again, *An.* 1450, in the unfortunate reign of King *Henry* the ſixth. Never ſince that, diſmembred from the Crown of *France*; ſaving that *Lewis* the 11. the better to content the Confederate Princes, conferred it, in *Appennage*, on his Brother *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, *An.* 1465; but within two Months after, took it from him again, and gave him in exchange for it, the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, which lay further off from his Aſſociates.

What

What the Revenues of this Dukedom were in former times, I can hardly say. That they were very fair and great, appears by that which is affirmed by *Philip de Comines*; who saith, that he had seen raised in *Normandie*, 95000 *l.* sterling, money; which was a vast sum of money in those times. As also by this testimony of the D. of *Burgundie*, who held King *Lewis* the 11. to be weakned a whole third part in his Estate, by giving *Normandie* in portion to the D. of *Berry*. Now they amount unto as much as the Kings *Treasurers* and *Toll-masters* are pleased to draw out of it.

The Arms of *Normandie* were *Gules*, two *Leopards Or*, which with the single *Leopard*, or *Lyon*, being added for the *Dutchy* of *Aquitain*, make the Arms of *England*.

5. BRETAGNE.

BRETAGNE is bounded on the East with *Normandy*, and the County of *Maine*; on the South with *Anjou*, and *Poictou*; on all other parts with the *English* or *Gallick* Ocean. Watered upon the South-side with the *Loir*, which divides it from *Anjou*; but so, as part of this Dukedom, called the County of *Raiz*, lyeth on the South-side of that River, betwixt it and *Poictou*.

It was first called *Armorica*, from its situation on the Sea, as the word importeth in the old Language of that People. But how it came by this new name, is not well agreed on. The general opinion is, That it took this name from the neighbouring *Britans*, brought over hither by the Tyrant *Maximus*, rebelling against the Emperour *Gratian*, *Anno* 385, by whom this Province was subdued; and from them named *Britannia Minor*, Little *Britain*. An Argument whereof may be, that the Language of this people hath still no small affinity with the *Welch* or *British*; there being a Tradition also, that the *Britains* who first came over hither, and married the Women of this Country, cut out their Tongues, for fear they should corrupt the Language of their Posterity. And to this Conquest by the *Britans*, these old Verses give this further countenance.

Vicit Aremoricas *animosa* Britannia *Gentes*,
Et dedit impositio, nomina prisca, jugo.

That is to say,

Gaul-Armorick, the *Britans* overcame,
And to the conquered Province gave their name.

Notwithstanding, the most probable opinion seemeth to be, That it took this name from the *Britanni*, an old *Gallick* people, mentioned by *Pliny* in *Gaul-Belgick*; retiring hither on the Invasions and Incursions of the Barbarous Nations; though possibly those *Britanni* of *Gallia-Belgica*, might be as well some Colony of the *Island-Britans*; as the *Belgæ*, a great Nation in the Isle of *Britan*, are said to have been a people of *Gallia-Belgica*. The reason is, because there was no Author before *Geffery* of *Monmouth*, who takes notice of this transporting of the *Insular Britans* by the Tyrant *Maximus*; no ancient Author, *Greek* or *Latin*, making mention of it. And for the *Welch* or *British* words, which are still remaining in the Language, they are conceived to be of no other than a remainder of the old *Gallick* Tongue, which was originally the same with the ancient *British*, as is elsewhere proved.

The Province is in compass 200 *French* Leagues: pleasant and fruitful; beautified with many shady Woods, and spacious Downs; sufficiently well stored with all manner of Grain; but destitute of Wine and the choisest Fruits, by reason of the Northernly situation of it. Divided commonly into *Hault* or *High Bretagne*, and *Basse* or *Low Bretagne*: the first containing the more Eastern, and the last the Western parts hereof. Neither of the two much furnished with navigable or notable Rivers; the defect of which, the Neighbourhood of the Sea supplieth, affording more capacious Havens, and convenient Ports, than any one Province in this Kingdom.

To begin therefore with the Havens: those of most note in the *Higher Bretagne*, are 1. S. *Malo*, built on a Rock within the Sea, wherewith at every high-water it is encompassed. A Bishops-See, and a Port very much frequented by the *French* and *Spanish*, who use here to barter their Commodities; oftentimes spoiled by the *English*, in the Wars with *France*, especially since the time of K. *Henry* the 7. 2. *Blauet*, a safe, but little Haven, on the mouth of a little River of the same name also. Impregnably fortified by the *Spaniard*, *An.* 1590; when taking opportunity of the Broil in *France*, and pretending a good title to this Dukedom, on the expiring of the Male-Issue of King *Henry* the second, he thought by this door to have entred on the whole Estate; but quitted it again on the general Peace made between the Crowns. 3. S. *Brieu*, (by the *Latins* called *Fanum Sancti Brioci*) a Bishops-See, and a well-traded Port, seated upon the *English* Chanel. 4. *Vannes*, a Bishops-See also, situate on a capacious Bay, at the mouth of the *Vilain*; the chief Town of the *Veneti*, whom *Cæsar* placeth in this Tract, and makes them to be the mightiest people of all the *Armoricans*; strongest in shipping, and best seen in Affairs at Sea. 5. *Croisse*, a little Haven at the mouth of the *Loir*, and the only Haven of this part on the *Gallick* Ocean. Then in *Low Bretagne*, or the more Western parts thereof, there is, 6. *Brest*, seated upon a spacious Bay of the Western Ocean: the Key and Bulwark of this Country, and the goodliest Harbour of all *France*. 7. *Morlais*, a convenient Port, and well frequented. 8. S. *Pol de Leon*, and 9. *Triguier*, both Bishops-Sees, both situate on the Sea-shore, and both the chief Towns of the *Ossismi*, whom *Ptolomy* and *Strabo* place upon this Coast: the first of them neighboured by the *Promontory*, which they call *Le Four*, the *Gobæum* of *Ptolomy*. 10. *Kemper Corentin*, a Bishops-See also, the chief Town of that part hereof which is called *Cournovaille*, (and called so for the same reason as *Cornwall* in *England* is) situate not far from the *Foreland*, which they call *Penmarch*, opposite to *Le Four*, spoken of before. A Sea-Town this, but not much talked of for the Haven, for ought I can find. 11. *Conquet*, a well-frequented Road, not far from *Brest*.

Chief places in the Midlands, 1. *Nantes*, the principal City of the *Nannetes*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Condivincinum*) a large, fair, strong, and populous City, seated upon the *Loir*, a Bishops-See, and the *Metropolis* of *Bretagne*. 2. *Renes* anciently the chief Town of the *Rhedones*, (called *Condate* by *Ptolomy*) now a Bishops-See, and the Parliament-City for this County, established here, *An.* 1553, which maketh it very populous, and of great resort, though not fully two miles in compass. 3. *Del*, an Episcopal-City also, but unwholsomly seated amongst Marishes. 4. *Dinan*, a rich and pleasant Town on the River *Nance*. 5. *L' Amballe*, the chief Town of the *Ambiliates*, spoken of by *Cæsar*. 6. *Roban*, the title and inheritance of the Dukes of *Roban*, descended from a branch of the Ducal Family of *Bretagne*, by *Mary* the second Daughter of Duke *Francis* the first, and Wife of *John*, then Viscount of *Roban*. 7. *Anscnis*, the chief Seat of the now Duke of *Vendosme*, and

and the head of his Estates in *Bretagne*. Of which possessed in the right of his Wife, the Daughter of the Duke of *Mencoeur* by the Heir of *Martignes*, another of this Ducal Family. S. *Chasteau-Briant*, a strong piece on the borders of *Normandie*, 9. *Clisson*, the chief Town of the Dutchy of *Raiz*, being that part of *Bretagne* which lieth on the South side of the *Loir*; a strong Town, and fortified with a very good Castle.

The *Britans*, whosoever they were in their first Original, were questionless one of the first Nations that possessed any part of *Gaul*, after the Conquest of the *Romans*. Governed at first by their own Kings, the most considerable of which, was that *Aldroenus*, or *Auldran*, the Son of *Solomon*; who at the sute of the *Insular Britans*, then distressed by the *Scots* and *Picts*, as *Geoffry* of *Monmouth* telleth the story) sent over *Constantine* his Brother with a compleat Army to their aid; who having valiantly repulsed the Enemy, was made King of *Britain*, *An.* 433. Of whose posterity more there. Those of *Armorica* being broken by the puissance of *Charles* the *Great*, abandoned the name of *Kings*, and satisfied themselves with the title of *Earls*; assumed first by *Alain le Rebre*, *An.* 874, but as some say, *An.* 859, which was somewhat sooner. By *Peter* of *Dreux*, the sixteenth Earl; challenging his Estate in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half-Sister of *Arthur*, and Daughter of *Constance*, by *Guy* of *Thouars*, her third Husband, the better to secure his title, this Earldom was made subject to the Vassalage of the Crown of *France*, in the time of *Lewis* the ninth; by whom *John* called the *Red*, the Son of this *Peter*, was created the first Duke of *Bretagne*; as being of the Blood-Royal of *France*, descended lineally from *Robert* the first Earl of *Dreux*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Gross*. Yet notwithstanding this subjection to the Kings of *France*, the Dukes hereof reserved to themselves the Soveraign Power, as to write themselves, *By the Grace of God*, the priviledge of coining Gold, *&c.* and stood so high upon their terms, that *Francis* the last Duke, denied to do his homage to *Charles* the seventh, either upon his Knees, or without his Sword, according to the former custom. For which, being quarrelled by *Lewis* the 11. the Son of *Charles*, who was at better leisure to pursue the business, than his Father was, he joined himself with *Charles* Duke of *Berry*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, in a War against him; and thereby drew upon himself that ruine, which he endeavoured to avoid. For, in conclusion, *Charles* of *Berry*, as it was thought, was poisoned; *Charles* of *Burgundy* lost his life at the Battel of *Nancie*, 1476, and a great part of his Estate was conquered by the *French* King. And *Francis*, this Duke, having embarqued himself in the same troublous Ocean, must needs suffer shipwrack with his Copartners. The *French* King invadeth *Bretagne*: the Duke over-charged with melancholy, dies, 1488, leaving *Anne* his Daughter and Heir, in the Power of *Charles* the 8. the Son and Successor of this *Lewis*; who contracts a marriage with the Orphan, and uniteth *Bretagne* to *France*. There were many impediments which might have hindred this Marriage, but *Charles* breaketh through them all. First, *Charles* himself had been formerly contracted to the Arch-Duke *Maximilian*'s Daughter; but this he held void, because the young Lady was not of age at the time of the Contract. 2. *Anne* the Dutchess was also contracted to *Maximilian*; and this he held invalid also, because that being his Homager, she could not bestow her self without his consent. 3. *Maximilian* had by proxy married her; which marriage he consummated by a Ceremony in those days unusual. For his Ambassador, attended with a great Train of Lords and Ladies, bared his Leg unto the Knee, and put the same within the Sheets of the Dutchess, taking possession thereby of her Bed and Body. But *Charles* consulting with his Divines, was told, That this pretended Consummation, was rather an invention of Court, than any way firm by the Laws of the Church; and therefore of no power to hinder his pursuit of this Marriage, so advantagious to his Crown. What else remains touching the union of this Dukedom to the Realm of *France*, we shall see anon; having first looked over the Succession of those Princes, who under several Titles have governed the Estate thereof, according to the best light we can get from Story.

Kings of the Britans *of* Gaul-Armorick.

385 1 *Conan*, placed here by *Maximus*.
2 *Grallon*, Son of *Conan*.
3 *Solomon*, Son of *Grallon*.
4 *Auldran*, or *Aldroenus*, the Son of *Solomon*.
5 *Bodis*, Son of *Auldran*.
6 *Hoel*, Son of *Bodis*.
7 *Hoel* II. Son of *Hoel* the first.
8 *Alain*, Son of *Hoel* the second.
9 *Hoel* III. Son of *Alain*.
10 *Solomon* II. Son of *Hoel* the third.
11 *Alain* II. Grandchild to *Solomon* the second, the last King of *Bretagne*, of the Race of *Conan*: who dying without Issue, left his Kingdom unto many *Competitors*, by whom distracted into many petit Tyrannies, and at last subdued by *Charles* the Great. And though they did again recover their Liberty and Kingdom, in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, who next succeeded; yet they did not hold it long in quiet. Insomuch, as after the murther of two or three Usurpers of the Royal Title, *Alain*, sirnamed *Le Rebre*, laid aside that invidious name of *King*, and would be called only *Earl* of *Bretagne*. His Successors follow.

Earls and Dukes of Bretagne.

874 1 *Alain le Rebre*.
2 *Indicael* and *Colodock*, Sons of *Alain*.
3 *Mathrudon*, Son in Law of *Alain le Rebre*.
4 *Alain* II. Son of *Mathrudon*.
5 *Conan*, descended from King *Solomon* the third.
6 *Geofry*, Son of *Conan*.
7 *Alain* III. Son of *Geofry*.
8 *Conan* II. Son of *Alain*.
9 *Hoel*, Sisters Son of *Conan* the second.
10 *Alain* IV. called *Fergent*, Son of *Hoel*.
11 *Conan* III. Son of *Alain*.
12 *Eudon*, Husband of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Conan*.
13 *Conan* IV. Son of *Eudon*.
14 *Geofry* II. Son of *Henry* the 3. King of *England*, Husband of *Constance*, Daughter and Heir of *Conan* the Fourth.
1186 15 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofry*.
1202 16 *Peter* of *Breux*, in right of *Alice* his Wife, the half Sister of *Arthur*.
1250 17 *John*, the first Duke of *Bretagne*.
1287 18 *John* II. Son of *John* the first.
1305 19 *Arthur* II. Son of *John* the Second.
1312 20 *John* III. Son of *Arthur* the Second.
1341 21 *John* Earl of *Montfort*, Brothers Son of *Arthur*
1399 22 *John* V. Son of *John* of *Montfort*.
1442 23 *Francis* the Son of *John* the fifth.
1450 24 *Peter*, the Brother of Duke *Francis*.
1457 25 *Arthur* III. 2d. Son of *John* Earl of *Montfort*.
1457 26 *Francis* II. Son of *Richard* Earl of *Estampes*, the Brother of Duke *Arthur* 3. the last Duke of *Bretagne*, of whom sufficiently before.
1484 27 *Charles* the 8. *French* King, succeeded in the Duke-

Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Francis* the 2.

1498 28 *Lewis* the 12. *French* King, succeeded on the death of *Charles*, in the right of the said *Anne*, whom he took to Wife: and, to make a way unto her Bed, divorced himself from the Lady *Joan* his former Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11.

1515 29 *Francis* the III. of *Bretagne*, and first of *France*, succeeded in the Dukedom in right of *Claude* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Lewis* the 12. and of *Anne* of *Bretagne*: by whom being made the Father of so many Children, that he had little cause to fear that the Crown would be separated from his House; in the year 1532, being the seventeenth of his Reign and Government, caused an Act to pass, with the consent of the States of *Bretagne*, for the inseparable uniting of that Dukedom to the Kingdom of *France*, and by that means divested his posterity of it. For his male-issue failing in King *Henry* the Third, the rights hereof descended on the Heirs general; that is to say, on *Isabel*, Daughter of *Philip* the second of *Spain*, and of the Lady *Isabel* or *Elizabeth* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Henry* the second, and Neece to the said *Francis* the first; and after her decease (dying without Issue) on the Lady *Katharine* her Sister, married to *Charles Emanuel* Duke of *Savoy*. For whom when *Philip* of *Spain* claimed this Estate, the *French* pretended a Law against it of their own deviling, *viz.* That no Estate being incorporated into that Crown, could be aliened from it. A proper Law, and Cousin-German to the *Salique*; but such as served their turn by the help of the *English*, who desired not to have the *Spaniards* so near Neighbours to them.

Most of our former Earls of *Richmond* were Earls and Dukes of this House. Their Arms were *Ermin*.

6. *The Dukedom and Estates of* ANJOU.

THE Dukedom and Estates of *ANJOU*, taking them in the full latitude and extent thereof, are bounded on the East with *La Beausse*; on the West, with *Bretagne*; and part of *Poictou*; on the North, with *Normandie*; and on the South, with part of *Berry*, and *Poictou*. In which circumference are comprehended the three small Provinces of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Main*; most commonly accounted of as parts and members of *La Beausse*, the ancient Inhabitants whereof, in the times of the *Romans*, were the *Andes*, as *Cæsar* (or the *Andegavii* as *Pliny*) calls them, the *Turones*, and the *Cenomani*, accounted afterwards a part of the Province of *Lugdunensis tertia*.

The Country for the most part is very fruitful and pleasant, especially in *Tourein*; as is the whole tract upon the *Loire*. *Anjou* is somewhat the more hilly, but otherwise little inferiour to *Tourein*, affording plenty of white Wines, the best in *France*; and yielding from those Hills above 40 Riverets, falling into the *Loire* from thence: the chief whereof are *Mayenne*, 2. *Vienne*, 3. *Dive*, and 4. *Sartre*.

1. *ANJOU*, called *Andegavia* by the *Latins*, is situate in the midst betwixt *Main* and *Tourein*, so called from the *Andegavi*, the old Inhabitants of these parts. Principal Cities are, 1. *Angiers*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Juliomagus*) of a large circuit, and well built, the See of a Bishop, reckoning in it 15 Parishes besides the Cathedral. It is seated on the River *Sartre* in a very good air, and therefore chosen for the Seat of an *University*, founded here by *Lewis* the second Duke of *Anjou*, the Son of King *John*, *Anno* 1388. 2. *Beaufort*, a Town belonging formerly to the Dukes of *Lancaster*, in which *John* of *Gaunt* so much delighted, that he caused all the Children that he had by *Katharine Swinford*, his third Wife, to be called *Beauforts*: which *Beauforts* were afterwards Dukes of *Somerset*, and *Exeter*, and Earls of *Dorset*. This Town came to the house of *Lancaster*, by the marriage of *Blanch* of *Artoys*, unto *Edmund* surnamed *Crouch-back*, second Son to our *Henry* the third; created by his Father, the first Earl of *Lancaster*. Memorable in these latter times for giving the Title of a Dutchess to Madam *Katharine*, the beloved Mistress of King *Henry* the fourth, by whom she was Mother of *Cæsar* now Duke of *Vendosm*, and of *Alexander*, not long since the *Grand Prior* of *France*. With reference to which, the second Son of the Duke of *Vendosme* is honoured at this present with the title of Duke of *Beaufort*: as the eldest with relation to his Mother was made Duke of *Mercœur*. 3. *Baugie*, near which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the *English* and the *French*, wherein the *English* lost the day; and *Thomas* Duke of *Clarence*, Brother to *Henry* the fifth, was there unfortunately slain, *Anno* 1422. 4. *Saumur*, pleasantly situate on the *Loire*, and for long time one of the Cautionary Towns in the hands of those of the *Reformed Religion*: of whom it is the only entire University in this Kingdom, especially famous for the learned *Philip du Morney*, Lord of *Plessis*, sometimes the Governour hereof. 5. *Loches*, seated on the River *Indre*, the Castle whereof being mounted on a steep high Rock, is thought to be one of the strongest pieces of all *France*. 6. *La Flesche*, of special name at the present for a Colledge of *Jesuites*, one of the fairest in this Kingdom. The word in the *French* tongue signifieth an Arrow (whence those who make Bows and Arrows have the name of *Flechers*.) At *Nola* in the Realm of *Naples*, there is another Colledge of them, called *D'Arque*, the Bow: on which one wittily composed this ensuing *Distich*;

Arcum Nola *dedit*, *dedit illis alma Sagittam*.
Gallia: *quis Funem*, *quem mernere*, *dabit*?

That is to say,

Nola *the* Bow, *and* France *the* Shaft *did bring*:
But who shall help them to the Hempen-string?

2. On the South-east of *Anjou*, lieth the Country of *TOUREIN*, the ancient Seat of the *Turones*: which, for the wholsomness of the Air, the pleasantness of the Country, and admirable plenty of all Commodities, is by some called the *Garden of France*. Principal Cities in it, 1. *Amboise*, pleasantly seated on the *Loire*, and beautified with one of the faireſt Castles in *France*, both for the gallantry of the Building, and beautifulness of the Prospect. 2. *Tours*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cæsarodunum*, and the *Turonum Civitas* of *Antoninus*; the Metropolis of *Lugdunensis tertia*, and an Archbishops See: a fair, rich, and well-traded Town, situate on the banks of the *Loire*, in a most sweet & pleasing *Country*. Famous, in that those of the *Reformed Religion*, from the Gate of S. *Hugo*, at which they used to issue out to their Assemblies in the fields, had the name of *Hugonots*. Given to them, as some others think, as the Disciples of the night-walking Spirit (or *Robin Goodfellow*) which they call S. *Hugo*, in regard they had their first meetings, for the most part, in the nights; as had the Primitive Christians in the times of their Persecutions. Some, more improbably, (and indeed ridiculously) derive the name from the first words of an Apology which they are fabled to have made to the King; which were, *Huc nos venimus*:

fancying, that as the *Proteſtants* did derive that Appellation from the words *Proteſtams*, and *Proteſtamur*, ſo often uſed by them in their *Apologie* to *Charles* the Fifth; ſo from thoſe words, *Huc nos*, came the name of *Hugonots*, or *Huc-nots*. But more aſſuredly famous for the great Battel fought near it by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the Palace, and Father of *Pepin* King of *France*, againſt an Army of 400000 *Moors*, led by *Alderamen*, Lieutenant General in *Spain*, for *Evelid* or *Iſcam* the great *Caliph*: of which 370000 loſt their lives in the place, *Anno* 734. 3. *Laudun*, 4. *Richelieu*, pleaſantly ſeated in a rich and flouriſhing Soil, as the name importeth. Of no great note, till the time of the late great Cardinal of *Richelieu*, who took name from hence, by whom it was made one of the neateſt Towns (for the bigneſs of it) in all this Kingdom, and honoured with the Titles of a Dukedom and *Pairrie* of *France*.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for of *Anjou* we ſhall ſpeak more at large anon) it had a while its own Proprietary Earls of the Houſe of *Blais*; conferred by *Hugh Capet* upon *Odon* Earl of *Blais* and *Champagne*: and by him given, together with the Earldom of *Blais*, to *Theobald*, or *Thibauld* his eldeſt Son, (his ſecond Son named *Stephen* ſucceeding in *Champagne*); who in the year 1043, was vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Charles Martel* E. of *Anjou*, and this Province ſeized on by the Victor, who afterwards made *Tours* his ordinary Seat and Reſidence. Part of which Earldom it continued, till the ſeizure of *Anjou*, and all the reſt of the *Engliſh* Provinces in *France*, on the ſentence paſſed upon King *John*. After which time diſmembred from it, it was conferred on *John*, the fourth Son of King *Charles* the ſixth, with the ſtile and title of Duke of *Tourein*; and he deceaſing without Iſſue, it was beſtowed with the ſame title, on *Charles* the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans* (in the life of his Father); the ſame who afterwards ſucceeding in the Dukedom of *Orleans*, was taken Priſoner by the *Engliſh* at the Battel of *Agincourt*, kept Priſoner 25 years in *England*, and finally was the Father of King *Lewis* the twelfth.

3. On the North ſide of *Anjou*, betwixt it and *Normandy*, lieth the Province of *MAINE*; *Comitatus Cenomannenſis* in our *Latin* Writers. So called of the *Cenomanni* the old Inhabitants of this Tract in the time of *Cæſar*; ſome of which, with the *Boii*, *Senones*, and other Nations of the *Galls* had in the former time paſſed over the *Alpes*, and there poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe Countries, which now paſs under the name and accompt of *Lombardy*. The chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Mans*, *Cenomannenſium Civitas* in *Antoninus*, by *Ptolomy* called *Vindinum*; ſeated on the meeting of *Huine* and *Sartre*; the principal of the Province, and a Biſhop's See: moſt memorable in the elder times for giving the title of an Earl to that famous *Rowland*, the Siſters Son of *Charlemagne*, one of the *Twelve Peers of France*; (the ſubject of many notable Poems, under the name of *Orlando Inamorato*, *Orlando Furioſo*, beſides many of the old *Romances*) who was Earl of *Mans*. 2. *Mayenne*, on the Banks of a River of the ſame name, (*Meduana* in *Latin*) the title of the ſecond branch of the houſe of *Guiſe*: famous for *Charles* Duke of *Mayenne*, who held out for the *League* againſt *Henry* the 4. A Prince not to be equalled in the Art of War, only unfortunate in employing it in ſo ill a cauſe. 3. *Vitrun*, upon the edge of *Bretagne*, of which little memorable. 4. *La Val*, not far from the head of the River *Mayenne*; of note for giving both name and title to the Earls of *Laval*, an ancient Family, allied unto the houſes of *Vendoſme*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, and other the beſt of *France*. Few elſe of any note in this little County; which once ſubſiſting of it ſelf under its own natural Lords and Princes, was at laſt united to the Earldom of *Anjou*, by the marriage of the Lady *Guiburge*, Daughter and Heir of *Helie*, the laſt Earl hereof, to *Foulk* Earl of *Anjou*, *Anno* 1083, or thereabouts. The Fortunes of which great Eſtate it hath always followed, ſince that time.

But as for *Anjou* it ſelf, the principal part of this goodly Patrimony, it was by *Charles* the *Bald* conferred on *Robert* a *Saxon* Prince, for his valour ſhewn againſt the *Normans*, *Anno* 870. Which *Robert* was Father of *Eudes* King of *France*, of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of *Robert* who ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Anjou*; Competitor with *Charles* the *Simple* for the Crown it ſelf, as the next Heir to his Brother *Eudes*, who died King thereof. Slain in the purſuit of this great quarrel, he left this Earldom, with the title of Earl of *Paris*, and his pretenſions to the Crown, unto *Hugh* his Son, ſurnamed the *Great*: who to make good his claim to the Crown, againſt *Lewis* the 4. Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, conferred the Earldom of *Anjou*, and the Country of *Gaſtinois*, on *Geofry* ſurnamed *Gryſogonelle*, a renowned Warriour, and a great ſtickler in his cauſe, in whoſe race it continued near 300 years. How the two Countries of *Main* and *Tourein* were joined to it, hath been ſhewn before. *Geofry* the Son of *Foulk* the third, married *Maud*, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt of *England*, and Widow of *Henry* the Fourth Emperor: From whom proceeded *Henry* the ſecond, King of *England*, and Earl of *Anjou*. But *John* his Son, forfeiting his Eſtates in *France* (as the *French* pretended) *Anjou* returned unto the Crown: and afterwards was conferred by King *Lewis* the ninth on his Brother *Charles*; who in right of *Beatrix* his Wife was Earl of *Provence*, and by Pope *Urban* the Fourth, was made King of *Naples* and *Sicily*. Afterwards it was made a Dukedom by King *Charles* the Fifth, (*Tourein* being firſt diſmembred from it) in the perſon of *Lewis* of *France* his ſecond Brother, to whom this fair Eſtate was given; as ſecond Son of King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and conſequently the next heir to *Charles de Valois*, the laſt Earl hereof (the King his Brother yielding up all his right unto him). Finally it returned again unto the Crown in the time of *Lewis* the 11. The Earls and Dukes hereof having been veſted with the Diadems of ſeveral Countries, following in this order.

The Earls of *Anjou* of the Line of *Saxony*.

870	1	*Robert* of *Saxony*, the firſt Earl of *Anjou*.
875	2	*Robert* II. Competitor for the Crown of *France* with *Charles* the *Simple*, as Brother of *Eudes* the laſt King.
922	3	*Hugh* the *Great*, Lord of *Gaſtinois*, Earl of *Paris*, Conſtable of *France*, and Father of *Hugh Capet*.
926	4	*Geofry Gryſogonelle*, by the Donation of *Hugh* the *Great*, whoſe party he had followed in the War of *France*, with great fidelity and courage.
938	5	*Foulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, the Son of *Geofry*.
987	6	*Geofry* II. ſurnamed *Martel*, for his great valour.
1047	7	*Geofry* III. Nephew of *Geofry* the ſecond by one of his Siſters.
1075	8	*Foulk* II. Brother of *Geofry* the third, gave *Gaſtinois*, (which was his proper inheritance) to King *Philip* the firſt; that by his help he might recover the Earldom of *Anjou*, from his part wherein he was excluded by his Brother *Geofry*.

9 *Geofry*

1080 9 *Geofry* IV. Son of *Foulk* 2d.
1083 10 *Foulk* III. Brother of *Geofry*; King of *Hieſalem* in the right of *Meliſend* his Wife.
1143 11 *Geofry* V. ſurnamed *Plantagenet*.
1150 12 *Henry* the II. King of *England*, Son of Earl *Geofry* and *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of King *Henry* the firſt.
1162 13 *Geofry* VI. third Son of King *Henry* the ſecond, made Earl of *Anjou* on his marriage with *Conſtance*, the Heir of *Bretagne*.
1186 14 *Arthur*, Son of *Geofry* and *Conſtance*.
1202 15 *John*, King of *England*, ſucceeded on the death of *Arthur*, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtates in *France* by *Philip Auguſtus*, immediately on the death of *Arthur*, *Anno* 1202.

Earls and Dukes of *Anjou*, of the Line of *France*.

1262 1 *Charles*, Brother of King *Lewis* the ninth, Earl of *Anjou*, and *Provence*, King of *Naples*, and *Sicilia*, &c.
1315 2 *Charles* of *Valois*, Son of *Philip* the third, Earl of *Anjou* in right of his Wife, Neece of the former *Charles*, by his Son and Heir of the ſame name; the Father of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King.
1318 3 *Lewis* of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of *Charles*, died without iſſue, *Anno* 1325.
1376 4 *Lewis* of *France*, the ſecond ſon of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, created the firſt Duke of *Anjou* by King *Charles* his Brother; and adopted by Queen *Joan* of *Naples*, King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*, and Earl of *Provence*.
1385 5 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, and *Main*; titulary King of *Sicil*, *Naples*, and *Hieruſalem*.
1416 6 *Lewis* IV. ſucceſſor to his Father in Eſtate and Titles.
1430 7 *Rene*, the Brother of *Lewis*, by the adoption of Queen *Joan* the ſecond, was for a while poſſeſſed of *Naples*; but preſently outed by *Alfonſo* of *Aragon*, and died the titulary King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Hieruſalem*; the Father of Queen *Margarite*, Wife of *Henry* the ſixth, and Duke of *Bar*, in right of *Violant* his Mother.
1480 8 *Charles* Earl of *Maine*, Nephew to *Rene* by his third Brother *Charles*, at his deceaſe left *Anjou*, and all the reſt of his Eſtates to King *Lewis* the eleventh, *An.* 1481. Since which never otherwiſe aliened, than as an honourary Title of the third Son of *France*.

It is to be obſerved here (according to our method in other places) that *Rene* King of *Sicil*, &c. and Duke of *Anjou*, inſtituted an Order of *Knighthood*, called of the *Croiſſant*: the Knights whereof carried a *Creſcent*, or Half-moon, on their right Arms, with this Motto, *L' Os en Croiſſant*; encouraging them thereby to ſeek the increaſe of valour and reputation.

The Arms of this Dukedom, were *France*, a Border *Gules*.

7. LA BEAUSSE.

LA BEAUSSE (not reckoning in the Provinces laſt before deſcribed) is bounded on the Eaſt, with *France* ſpecially and primarily ſo called; on the Weſt, with *Anjou*, *Maine*, *Tourein*, and ſome part of *Berry*; on the North, with *Normandy*; and on the South with *Nivernois*, and the reſt of *Berry*. It is called *Belſia* in *Latin* Writers; both names derived from the pleaſantneſs and beauties of it; this Country being not only looked on as the Garden of *France*, but the Nurſe of the great City of *Paris*, which from the breaſts thereof receiveth the beſt part of its ſuſtenance.

The principal Nations of the whole in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Carnutes*, which inhabited the greateſt part, and the *Samnitæ* near the *Loire*, part of *Gallia Celtica*, and caſt into the Province of *Lugdunenſis quarta* by the Emperor *Conſtantine*. Divided by the *French* into the *Higher*, the *Lower*, and the *Intermediate*.

1. The *HIGHER BEAUSSE* is that part which lyeth next to *Normandy*, of which the principal Towns are, 1. *Dreux*, ſeated upon the River *Eureux*, ſuppoſed to be the ſeat of the ancient *Druides*, who held here their *Parliaments* or *Seſſions* for adminiſtration of Juſtice. The title and inheritance of *Robert*, one of the younger Sons of King *Lewis* the *Groſſe*, and Grandfather of that *Peter* of *Dreux*, who ſucceeded *Arthur*, the Son of *Geofry Plantagenet*, in the Earldom of *Bretagne*. 2. *Montfort*, an Earldom, the title and Eſtate of *John* Earl of *Montfort*, ſurnamed the *Valiant*, who ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, by the aid of the *Engliſh An.* 1341. 3. *Chartres*, called anciently *Carnutum Civitas*, (but by *Ptolomy*, *Atricum*) from whence the Country hereabouts was called *Le Paris Chartrain*: ſeated in an uneven place, varied with fertile riſing Hills, ſo that the Eaſt ſide ſtands upon the top of an Hill, and the Weſt ſpreads it ſelf in the bottom of a Plain, through the midſt whereof runs the River *Eure*, which as ſoon as it comes to the Walls of the City, on the South ſide, divides it ſelf into three branches, two whereof encompaſs the City round about, and the third running through the midſt thereof, ſerveth the Town with many Mills for the uſe of the people: doth afterwards unite it ſelf with the reſt into one main Chanel. A very fair and goodly City, a Biſhops See, and one of the *Vidamates* of *France*; anciently giving the title of an Earldom alſo to the houſe of *Blois*, from the time that *Theobald* the ſecond Earl of *Blois* extorted it by ſtrong hand from the Biſhops hereof, about the year 950, continuing in the poſſeſſion of that Family till the year 1300, or thereabouts, when ſold by *Mabeult*, or *Maud*, the Heir Proprietor hereof, Wife of *Hugh de Chaſtillon*, in her right called Earl of *Blois*, to King *Philip* the *Fair*, for an Annual penſion of 4000 *Livres*. 4. *Anneau*, a Town of the territory of *Chartres*, memorable for the great ſlaughter made here by *Henry* Duke of *Guiſe*, of the *German* Auxiliaries, invading *France* with a right formidable Army in behalf of the *Hugonits*, *An.* 1587.

2. The *LOWER BEAUSSE* is that which lieth towards *Nivernois* and *Berry*; and is ſubdivided into *Sologne*, and *Orleanois*. In *SOLOGNE*, which lieth cloſe to *Berry*, the chief places of note, are, 1. *Romarantin*, ſeated on the *Souldre*, the chief Town of this Tract. 2. *Mallenzay*. 3. *La Ferte*, or *La Ferte S. Bernard*, of which nothing memorable. In *ORLEANOIS*, which lieth more Northwards upon the River of *Loyre*, are, 1. *Jargeau*, a Town once of very great ſtrength, and one of the out-works of *Orleans*. 2. *Cleri*, called alſo *Cleri* of *Noſtre dame*, from the Church there built unto *our Lady*. 3. *Tury*, and 4. *Angerville*, both in the ordinary Road betwixt *Paris* & 5. *Orleans*, the principal City of all *Beauſſe*, called *Cenabum* in the time of *Cæſar*; repaired, or rather new built by the Emperor *Aurelius*, *An.* 276, from thence named *Aurelia*, the Country round about it *Aurelianenſis*, now *Orleans*, and *Orleanois*. The Country generally very fruitful and yielding a moſt excellent and delicious Wine; which for the ſtrength and intoxicating power thereof, is baniſhed

the *French* Kings Cellar by especial *Edict*. The City very pleasantly seated on the River *Loyre*, well built, situate in a sweet Air, and planted with a Civil and ingenuous People; who are said to speak the best Language of any in *France*. For a time it was the chief Seat of a distinct Kingdom, (according to the unprovident humour of the *Merovignians*) the lot of *Clodomire* Son of *Clouis* the *Great*, and of *Guntram* Son of *Clotaire*, both Kings of *Orleans*; as also was *Theodorick*, the second Son of *Childebert* King of *Mets*, on the death of *Guntram*. But *Sigibert* his Son being vanquished by *Clotaire* the second, this Kingdom extending to the shores of the *Aquitain* Ocean, was added unto that of *France*. *Orleans* since that time, content with a lower title, hath of late oftentimes with greater prudence, been made the honourary title of the second Sons of *France* called Dukes hereof, the first who had the title being *Philip* the second, Son of *Philip de Valois*, from a base Son of whose, the Earls of *Dunois*, and Dukes of *Longeville* do derive themselves, and *Lewis* the second Son of *Charles* the first, Grandfather of *Lewis* the 11. *French* King. It is a See Episcopal, a Bailiwick, or *Seige Præsidial*, and an University. The *See Episcopal* founded in the Church of St. *Crosse*, miserably ruined by the *Hugonots* in the Civil Wars, out of meer hatred to the name. The *Seige Præsidial* setled here by King *Henry* the second, 1551, for the ease of his Subjects of these parts, in suites not worth the troubling of the Courts of *Paris*. The University erected by King *Philip le Bel*, *Anno* 1312, though, to speak properly, it be an *Hall* only for the reading of the *Civil Laws*, the only learning there professed, and for that considerable. A Town now not of so great strength as in former times, when for some months it held out against the whole power of the *English*; rescued from them at last by the valour of *Joan* the *Virgin*, whose *Statue* (like a man of Arms) is still preserved on the Bridge-gate of this City; near which great *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury* had his Fatal blow.

The *MIDDLE* or intermediate *BEAUSSE* lieth betwixt the former; in which the places of chief note are, 1. *Blois*, seated also on the *Loir*, in a sound Air, and fruitful Country; the Nursery for the most part of the Kings Children, for that cause much resorted to by the Nobility, and honoured sometimes with the residence of the Kings themselves: it being in the Council-Chamber of the Kings house here, that *Henry* of *Lorrein*, Duke of *Guise*, the chief contriver of the terrible *Massacre* at *Paris*, and Author of the *Holy League*, was slain by the command of King *Henry* the third, *An.* 1589, 2. *Chasteau-Dun*, the chief Town of the Earldom of *Dunois*, (the honour and Estate of *John* Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard* of *Orleans*, one of the best Soldiers of his time, and so approved by his exploits against the *English*) mounted upon the top of an high Hill, at the confluence of the *Loir*, and *Aigre*. 3. *Lavardin*, most remarkable for giving name and honour to a noble Family, which depending on the house of *Vendosme* (to the *Signeury* whereof it doth belong) brought forth that valiant Commander, *Monsieur de Lardin*, a faithful and couragious follower of King *Henry* the fourth, in his long War against the *Leaguers*. 4. *Vendosme* (*Vindocinum* in *Latin*) the chief Town of the Dukedom of *Vendosme*, not otherwise of note than for the Earls and Dukes which have born this Title: of which as being the Progenitors of the Kings now regnant, I have thought fit to add the ensuing Catalogue; premising first, that this Earldom came to the house of *France* by the marriage of *Katharine* daughter and heir of *John*, the last Earl of the former Race, to *John* the first, the Earl of the other Family.

Earls and Dukes of *Vendosme*.

1386	1	*John* of *Bourbon*, Grandchild of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Bourbon*, the first Earl of *Vendosme* of this Family.
1432	2	*Lewis* of *Bourbon*, a confederate with *Joan* the *Virgin* in her actions against the *English*.
1446	3	*John* of *Bourbon* II. from whom descended the Princes of *Roch-Suryon*, and the Dukes of *Montpensier*.
1472	4	*Francis* of *Bourbon*.
1495	5	*Charles* of *Bourbon*, the first Duke of *Vendosme* from whose youngest son called *Lodowick*, or *Lewis*, descend the now Princes of *Conde*, and Earls of *Soissons*.
1532	6	*Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and King of *Navarre*.
1562	7	*Henry* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and King of *Navarre*; afterwards King of *France* also, by the name of *Henry* the fourth.
	8	*Cæsar de Vendosme*, of the Sons of *Henry* the 4. by the Duchess of *Beaufort*, created by his Father Duke of *Vendosme*, and once designed his Successor in the Crown of *France*. Afterwards by the procuremennt of the King his Father, married to the Daughter and Heir of *Philibert Emanuel*, D. of *Mercoeur*, (a younger branch of the house of *Lorrein*) possessed of a fair and goodly Estate in the Dukedom of *Bretagne*, in the right of his Wife, a Daughter and Heir of the house of *Martignes* (a branch of the Family of those Dukes). By means whereof the Duke of *Vendosme* hath not only a large inheritance, but great authority in that Country.

The Arms of the Earls and Dukes of *Vendosme*, were and are, *Azure*, six Flower de Lyces, *Or*, 3, 2, 1. Those of the former Family affirmed by *Bara* to have been *France*, on a Bend *Gules*, three Lions, *Or*.

But the great Lords of this Country, were the Earls of *Blois*, possessed not only of the Earldom of *Chartres* (a fair and goodly Signeury) in the higher *Beausse*, but also of the whole Country of *Tourein*, a better Patrimony and Estate than that; which how they were alienated from this House, we have seen before. And as for the Earldom of *Blois* it self, it contained a large and gallant Patrimony in the middle-*Beausse*, thereunto belonging; which being after sold to the Dukes of *Orleans*, gave the first greatness to that House. As for the Earls of *Blois* themselves, they fetch their Pedigree from one *Gerlon* a noble *Dane* (Companion in Arms unto *Rollo* the first Duke of *Normandy*) in his acquiring of that Dukedom, by *Charles* the *Simple* created the first Earl hereof, *An.* 920, or thereabouts, branching it self into the houses of *Blois* and *Champagne*; sometimes united in one person, but for the most part, and at last, divided into two great Families; *Stephen* King of *England*, commonly called *Stephen* of *Blois*, derived both his name and Parentage from the Earls of this house, as being Son of *Theobald*, the fifth Earl of *Blois*, by *Maud* one of the daughters of *William* Duke of *Normandy*, and King of *England*, surnamed the Conqueror. From this *Theobald* the Earls of *Blois* continued in the Masculine Line, till the year 1219, under nine Princes in the total, of the house of *Gerlon*: And then it fell by the Heirs General, to the noble Family of *Chastillon*, continuing theirs till the year 1391, when sold by *Guy de Chastillon* the last Earl of that House, to *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, he being then Childless, and wholly governed by his Wife (a Daughter of the house of *Namurre*) who could not otherwise maintain her great prodigality, but by ready money. United finally to the Crown, by

Lewis

Lewis the Grand-ſon of this *Lewis*, on his ſucceſſion to the Kingdom, after *Charles* the 8.

The Arms of theſe great Earls were, *Gules*, three *Palls*, *Vaire*, a *Chief*, *Or*.

8. NIVERNOIS.

NIVERNOIS is bounded on the North with *La Beauſſe*, on the South with *Burbonois*, on the Eaſt with *Champagne*, and on the Weſt with *Berry*: ſo called from *Nivernium*, or *Nevers*, the chief Town thereof.

This is the ſmalleſt Province in all this Continent, but to be handled here apart, becauſe not eaſily reducible unto any other, as all the reſt of the leſſer Provinces may be. The Soil not very fruitful of Corn or Wine, but plentifully ſtored with rich Paſtures, and well ſhaded with Woods, in which are found ſome Mines of Iron, interſperſed with Silver, and many Quarries of good Stone, of much uſe for building. The Territory being but ſmall, we cannot look for many Towns, of note and conſequence. Of thoſe that be, the principal are, 1. *Ponſigni*, remarkable for an ancient Abby, the burial-place of ſome of the old Earls of *Nevers*. 2. *Nevers* it ſelf, upon the *Loire*, beautified with a Bridge of twenty Arches, but otherwiſe not great or fair, though the chief of this ſmall Country, and the ſeat of the Dukes. The reputation which it hath, proceeding ſpecially from the Antiquity thereof, and the Earls and Dukes from thence denominated.

Once part of the *Burgundian* Conqueſts, and from them won by the *French*; it came to have Princes of its own, almoſt as early as any other Country in the Realm of *France*. Who was the firſt that had the title of *Earl* of *Nevers*, and therewithal the Lordſhip of this Eſtate, I can no where find; but ſure I am, that in the year 1001, both the Eſtate and Title were enjoyed by *Laudin* a Noble man of the *Burgundian* race, who on the death of *Henry* the 4. Duke of *Burgundy*, was like to have ſeized on that Eſtate, in deſpight of *Robert* King of *France*, who pretended to it. Paſſing through many Families, it came at laſt to the houſe of *Burgogne*, in the perſon of *Odo*, the Son of *Hugh* the fourth of that name, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the Heir-General of *Nevers*; and from that to the houſe of *Flanders*, by the marriage of *Yoland*, or *Burgogne*, to *Robert* of *Bethune*, Earl of *Flanders*, 1 12; whoſe Son, named *Lewis*, married the Heir of *Rethell*, uniting, by that marriage, theſe Eſtates under his command. Together with the reſt of the Rights of *Flanders*, it came again, by marriage, to *Philip* the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*; who with the liking and conſent of his elder Sons, (otherwiſe well provided for) conferred both it and *Rethel*, on his third Son *Philip*, whoſe Neece *Elizabeth*, daughter and heir of *John* of *Burgogne*, brought it in marriage to *Adolph* of *Cleve*, her Husband, *An.* 1484. In the perſon of *Francis*, the fourth Earl of this Houſe, it was made a Dukedom; and by his Daughter *Henrietta*, Siſter and Heir of *Francis* the laſt Prince of this Family, was brought in Dowet to *Lewis de Gonzaga*, ſecond Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Mantua*, *An.* 1563, whoſe Son *Charles* ſucceeded his Father and Mother in the Dukedom of *Nevers*, and *Vincent* of *Gonzaga*, his Couſin-German, in the Dukedom of *Mantua*. And here it is to be obſerved, that though this Eſtate hath paſſed through ſo many Families; yet the Rights and Regalities thereof, have been ſtill continued; not being hitherto reduced (for ought that I can find) under any of the Parliaments of *France*, as all the reſt of that Kingdom is, but ſuch parts thereof as are either under other Princes, or elſe enjoy the Priviledges of a free Eſtate.

The Arms hereof are, *Azure*, within a Border *Compone*, *Gules*, and *Argent*, three *Flower de Lyces*, *Or*.

9. *The Dukedom of* BOURBON.

THE Dukedom of *BOURBON*, in the full power and extent thereof, comprehended *Bourbonois*, *Forreſt*, *Beau-jolois*, and *Auvergne*; all now reverted to the Crown.

1. *BOURBONOIS* hath on the Eaſt the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on the Weſt, *Berry*; on the North, *Nivernois*, and a corner of *Gaſtinois*; on the South, *Auvergne*: ſo called from *Bourbon*, (for diſtinction ſake, called *Bourbon Archenbauld*) the chief Town thereof. The Country very well wooded, and of excellent paſturage; which makes the people more intent to grazing and feeding Cattel, than they are to Tillage; and is watered with the Rivers of *Loir*, *Yonne*, and *Allier*, which are counted navigable; beſides *Aron*, *Acolin*, *Lixentes*, *Lanbois*, and ſome leſſer ſtreams.

It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*: in the *Higher* which is more mountainous and hilly, there is no other Town of note, than that of *Montaigne*, ſituate in the Country of *Combraille*; the *Signeury*, as I take it, of *Michael de Montagne*, the Author of the Book of *Eſſays*. But in the *Lower Bourbonois*, are, 1. *Molins*, eſteemed the Center of all *France*; ſituate on the *Allier*, a *Baillage*, and the chief Town of this Country; the River yielding great plenty of Fiſh, but of *Salmons* ſpecially; the Town adorned with a fair Caſtle, and that beautified with one of the fineſt Gardens in *France*; in which are many Trees of Lemmons and Oranges. 2. *Bourbon Archenbauld*, and 3. *Bourbon Ancie*: the former of the two, ſeated upon the *Loir*, and giving name to the whole Province; of great reſort by reaſon of its *Medicinal* waters. 4. S. *Porcin*. and 5. *Varennes Ganat*, upon the Frontiers of *Auvergne*, 6. *Chancelle*, 7. *Charroux*, 8. *Paliſſe*, 9. *Souvigni*, 10. *Amand*.

The ancient Inhabitants were part of the *Hedui*, who being waſted in their wars againſt the *Romans*, a great part of their Country was, by *Julius Cæſar*, conferred on the *Boii*, a *German* Nation, who coming with the *Helvetians* into *Gaul*, and unwilling upon their defeat to go home again, were by him planted in this Tract, at the requeſt of the *Hedui*, who deſired it of him: and poſſibly the *Hedui* might be willing to have theſe *Boii* dwell amongſt them, not only to fill up their numbers, and manure the waſte Grounds of their Country; but in regard of ſome nearer tye that was between them: it being conceived by many Learned men, that theſe *Boii*, which together with theſe *Cenomanni*, *Senones*, and other *Gallick* Nations, croſſed over the *Alpes*, had been originally of theſe parts: and being driven out of *Italy* by the conquering *Romans*, fell into *Germany*, and from thence ſent thoſe Auxiliaries to attend the *Helvetians* in their journey, ſpoken of before. Made ſubject to the *Romans*, with the reſt of *Gallia*; and by them reckoned as a part of *Aquitannica*: it continued under their command, till the coming of the *Burgundians*, by whom it was ſubdued, and made a part of their Kingdom; in the ſubverting of which Kingdom, it was (together with *Beau-jolois*) ſubdued by the more powerful *French*, and how diſpoſed of afterwards, we ſhall ſee anon, having firſt taken a view of the other Provinces.

2. *FORREST*, is bounded on the East with *Beaujolois*, on the West with *Avergne*, on the North with *Bourbonois*, and on the South with a part of *Languedoc*. The Country populous and large, but not very fruitful; hilly and mountainous, much of the nature of the Wood-lands. The Air a little of the coldest to afford good Wines; but that sufficiently recompensed by abundance of Pit-coal; by which they have very good fires at a cheap rate. The people are conceived to be none of the wisest, but withall, very greedy and covetous of gain.

The chief Towns in it, are, 1. *Mont brison*, seated on the *Loir*. 2. *Feurs*, seated on the same River, called anciently, *Forum Segusianorum*, the chief Town of the *Segusiani*, or *Secusiani*, whom *Cæsar* and others mention in this part of *Gaul*. 3. St. *Stephen*, (or *Estienne*) in *Feurian*, near the head of that River. 4. St. *Germans*, 5. St. *Rimberg*, 6. St. *Bennet le Chasteau*, 7. St. *Guermier*, &c. of which little memorable.

This Country of *Forrest* was anciently a part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; dismembred from it at or about the same time with *Beaujolois*; and was held by a long succession of Earls *Proprietaries* of it, as a State distinct, till *Regnaud* Lord of *Forrest*, the Son of Earl *Guy*, by the marriage of *Isabel* Daughter and Heir of *Humbert* Earl of *Beaujeu*, joined them both together; which was about the year 1265; parted again after his decease, *An.* 1280; *Guy* being his eldest Son, succeeding in *Forrest*, and *Lewis* his second Son, in *Beaujeu*. How they became united in the House of *Bourbon*, we shall see anon.

3. *BEAUJOLOIS*, so called from *Beaujeu*, the chief Town hereof, taketh up the tract of ground betwixt the *Loir* and the *Soasne*; and betwixt *Lionnois* and *Forrest*. A Country of no great extent, but very remarkable for the Lords and Princes of it; who have been men of great eminence in their several times. The chief Town of it, is *Beaujeu*, beautified with a goodly Castle, pleasantly seated on the brow of a rising-mountain, from whence perhaps it took the name; as the great *Keep* in *Farnham* Castle, was in the same sense, and for the same pleasant situation, called *Joyeux Guard*, in the time of *Lancelot du Lake*, whose that Castle was. Which appears further by a Tower built at *Constantinople*, by *Guischard* the third of that name, Lord hereof, (being then Ambassador to the Emperour, from King *Philip Augustus*) with this inscription, *Turris Belli-jocensis*; which there continued to be seen a long time after. 2. *Belle-ville*, where is an Abby founded by *Humbert* the second, *Anno* 1158. 3. *Ville Franche*, environed with Walls by *Humbert* the fourth; whose Son *Guischard* the third, above mentioned, founded here a Convent of *Franciscans*, called to this day, *Minorette*. 4. *Noironde*, 5. St. *Maurice*, 6. *Ulsie*, 7. *Obches*, concerning which, there have been long and many Wars betwixt the Earls of *Forrest*, and these Lords of *Beaujeu*.

This Country, as that other of *Forrest*, was once part of the Earldom of *Lyons*; in the partage of which Estate, it fell to *Omphroy*, one of the Brothers of Earl *Artaud*, *Anno* 989, whose Successors had no other title than Lords of *Beaujeu*. They were most of them men of great piety, Founders of many Collegiate and Conventual Churches; some of them men of action also: *Humbert* the second, and the fifth, Adventurers in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; *Richard* the second, in those against the *English*; *Guischard* the fourth, made Constable of *France*, by King *Lewis* the Ninth. But the house failing in this *Guischard*, it was united unto that of the Earls of *Forrest*, as before is said, in the person of *Regnaud*, Earl thereof, whose Son and Successor, called *Lewis* was also Constable of *France*; as *Edward*, the Grand-child of this *Lewis*, a Marshal of it. But at the last it fell into the hands of a lewd and wicked Prince, *Edward* the second; who being imprisoned at *Paris* for his great offences, and overlaid with Wars by the Dukes of *Savoy*; made a Douation, or Free-gift, of all his *Signeuries*, to *Lewis* Duke of *Bourbon*, sirnamed the *Good*; the direct Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the eldest Son of *Regnaud* Earl of *Forrest*, and Lord of *Beaujeu* above mentioned, and consequently of next kin to him, *An.* 1400.

4. *AUVERGNE* hath on the East, *Forrest*, and *Lyonois*; on the West, *Limosin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*; on the South, part of *Languedoc*; and on the North, *Berry*, and *Bourbonois*. It is divided into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Lower* being called *Limaigne*, is fruitful in a very eminent degree. The *Higher*, mountainous and barren. In this last, the Towns of chief note are, 1. St. *Flour*, a Bishops-See of an impregnable situation. 2. *Arilla*, on the River *Jourdain*, defended with a strong Castle on the top of a Rock. 3. *Beauregard*, on the River *Gardon*. 4. *Carlat*, 5. *Murat*, 6. *Billon*, of which little observable in ancient stories. In the *Lower*, called *Lemaigne*, from a River of that name which falls into the *Allier*: there is, 1. *Clermont*, a Bishops-See, fair and pleasing for the situation, and Fountains descending from the Hills of the higher *Auvergne*, the chief City of the whole Province. Most memorable in these later ages, for the Council here called by Pope *Urban* the second, *An.* 1067; in which, by the artifice of the Pope, the Christian Princes of the West engaged themselves in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; giving thereby the better opportunity to the Popes to enlarge both their Territories and their Power. It was first raised out of the ruines of *Gergovia*, the head City of the *Auverni*, in the time of *Cæsar*; and the Seat-royal of *Vercingetorix*, King of that Nation, who so long put him to his trumps with an Army of 138000 men: now a small Village called *Gergeau*. 2. *Rion*, in which resides the Seneschal, or chief Governour of the Lower *Auvergne*. 3. *Montpensier*, of great note for the Princes of the house of *Bourbon*, once Dukes hereof; beginning in *Lewis* the first Earl, Son of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, *An.* 1415; and ending in *Henry* the last Duke; whose Daughter and Heir was married to the Duke of *Orleans*, Brother of *Lewis* the thirteenth. 4. *Montferant*, 5. *Yssoire*, 6. *Brionde*, 7. *Aigueperse*, 8. *Turenne*, the ancient Seat and Patrimony of the *De la Tours*, heretofore Earls of *Boulogne*, now Soveraigns of *Sedan*, and Dukes of *Bouillon*; to whom it hath for some ages since, given the title of *Viscount*. A Family descended from the Heirs-general of *Eustace*, Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*; Father to *Godfry* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrein*, and King of *Hierusalem*.

The Country first inhabited in the times of the *Romans*, by the potent Nation of the *Auverni*; whose King *Bitnitus*, was taken Prisoner, and led in triumph unto *Rome*, in the War against the *Salii*, the *Allobroges*, and others of their Confederates. Not fully conquered, till *Cæsar* had subdued their King *Vercingetorix*. They were afterwards part of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; retaining, in the often changes of the Empire, its old name of *Auvergn*. Heretofore part of the great Dutchy of *Aquitain*; remaining subject to those Dukes, till *William* the eighth Duke, and the fourth of that name, gave it in portion with one of his Daughters, whose name I find not, nor the name of her Husband neither; of whom there is nothing on record, but that he took up Arms against *Lewis* the sixth, who began his Reign, *An.* 1110. By the Heir-general of this House, it was conveyed in marriage to *John* the second Son of *Guigne*

Guigne the 4. and *Beatrix*, Daulphin of *Viennois*; in whose Line it continued under the title of the Daulphins of *Auvergn*, till *Berault*, the last Earl or *Daulphin* of it. Who having married the Heir of *Guy* Earl of *Forrest*, the Son of *Regnaud* above-mentioned, had by her a daughter named *Anne*, Heir of both Estates, married to *Lewis* the *Good*, the third Duke of *Bourbon*; to whom *Edward* the last Lord of *Beau-jeu*, made a Donation or surrendry of that Signeury also, uniting in his person, the distinct Estates of *Bourbon*, *Beau-jeu*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*.

And as for *Bourbonois* it self, in the distractions of the *French* Empire by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, who most improvidently *cantoned* it into many great Estates, and petit Signeuries, it fell unto the share of the potent Family of the *Dampierre*, descended from the ancient House of *Burgogne*; who held it till the year 1308. At what time *Lewis* the ninth, for the advancement of *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, (in *Beauvoisin*) his fifth Son, married him to *Beatrix*, Daughter and Heir of *Archenbald Dampierre*, the last of that House. *Lewis* the Son of this *Robert*, was the first Duke of this Line; whose Successors and their Atchievements, follow in this Catalogue of

The Lords and Dukes of *Bourbon*.

1308	1	*Robert*, Son of King *Lewis* the 9. Earl of *Clermont*; the first Lord of *Bourbon* of the House of *France*.
1317	2	*Lewis*, the first Duke of *Bourbon*; *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*: from whose second Son *Jaques*, comes the House of *Vendosme*.
1341	3	*Peter*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; slain in the Battel of *Poictiers*, *An.* 1356.
1356	4	*Lewis* II. called the *Good*; in whose person all these Estates were first united: *Peer*, and Chamberlain of *France*, and Governour of King *Charles* the sixth.
1410	5	*John*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; taken Prisoner at the Battel of *Agincourt*, and dyed in *England*: the Root of the Family of *Montpensier*.
1434	6	*Charles*, *Peer*, and Chamberlain; General of the Army against the *English*, in the *Isle* of *France*.
1456	7	*John* II. *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Constable of *France*.
1487	8	*Peter* II. Brother of *John*; *Peer*, Chamberlain, and Regent of *France*, in the absence of *Charles* the 8.
1503	9	*Charles* Earl of *Montpensier*, Duke of *Bourbon* in the right of *Susan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Peter* the second, Duke of *Bourbon*. After whose death, being slain at the sack of *Rome*, *An.* 1527, without Issue, his Estate fell unto the Crown, and so continued, till by the Sentence of *Arrest* of the Court of Parliament in *Paris*, *Auvergne*, *Forrest*, and *Beau-jeu*, were adjudged to Madam *Louise*, Mother of *Lewis* the first Duke of *Montpensier*, and Daughter and Heir of *Gilbert de Bourbon*, Earl of *Montpensier*, the Nephew of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, (the first of that name) of which House she was the only surviving Heir; from whence descended *Henry*, the last Duke of that Family, spoken of before. And for the title of *Auvergne*, it was used customarily, by the eldest Sons of the Earls and Dukes of *Montpensier*; till given to *Charles*, natural Son of King *Charles* the ninth; called from hence, the Count or Earl of *Auvergne*; who being a Confederate of *Charles* Duke of *Biron*, was in the year 1604, made Prisoner by King *Henry* the 4. released by King *Lewis* the 13. *An.* 1616. and within two years after made Duke of *Angolesme*: in whose Posterity it remaineth.

The Arms of these Dukes were, 1. *France*, a Baston, *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. 2. *Or*, a Daulphin *Palme*, *Azure*, for the County of *Auvergne*: 3. *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, armed *Gules*, under a Label of five pieces of the same, for the Signeury of *Beau-jeu*. The Arms of the Earldom of *Forrest*, I am yet to seek. But anciently, the Arms of *Bourbon*, when under the *Dampierres*, were *Or*, a Lion Rampant *Gules*, environed with Cockle shells of *Azure*.

10. BERRIE.

HAving thus taken a view of those several Provinces which (except *Bretagne*) were the first purchases of the *French* in the modern *France*; and so much of the *Burgundian* Conquests, as were either laid to the Kingdom of West-*France*, or else were necessarily to be passed over in the course of our Journey: let us next look on those which were possessed by the *Gothes*. And first we will begin with *BERRIE*, (as next in situation with those before described) bounded on the East with *Bourbonois* and *Nivernois*; on the West with *Poictou*, and part of *Tourein*, on the North with *La Beausse*; on the South with *Limosin*; in *Latin* called *Biturgium regio*, from the *Bituriges*, the old Inhabitants of this Tract; by *Pliny*, *Strabo*, and some others, called the *Bituriges Cubi*, to difference them from the *Bituriges Ubisci*, dwelling about *Bourdeaux*.

The Country watered in the East with the River *Laure*; in the South, with the *Fage*; in the North, with the *Cher*; and in the Inland parts, with *Indre*, *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Eure*, and others which we shall meet withal anon: of no great note, but such as much conduce to the fruitfulness of it; affording it the benefit of fat Pastures and flourishing Meadows; which breed great multitudes of Cattel, and such flocks of Sheep, that when they tax a man for lying in excess of numbers, they use to say, *Fye, Sir, there are not so many sheep in* Berrie.

It containeth in it 33 Walled Towns; the chief whereof are, 1. *Bourges*, a Town of great strength by Nature, and as well fortified by Art, situate in a low Flat, amongst deep impassable Bogs and Marishes, caused by the overflowing of the *Auron*, *Yeure*, *Malon*, and *Aurette*; small Riverets, but of great waters when they meet together: by means whereof, it may be easily drowned at the approach of an Enemy: for that cause made the Fastness and Retreat of *Charles* the seventh, in his long Wars against the *English*, possessed at that time of *Paris*, and the greatest part of the Kingdom. The poor Prince in the mean time fain to feast it here with a Rump of Mutton, and a Chick, and that but upon high days neither. From his constant abode here, and that withal he had been Duke of this Country, in the life of his three elder Brethren, by the *English* in derision called King of *Berrie*. A large, fair, and rich Town it is, the Seat of an Arch-bishop: a Siege-presidial, and one of the best Universities in *France*, especially for the study of the Civil-Laws; first founded by King *Lewis* the ninth, and afterwards restored and perfected by *Charles* Duke of *Berrie*, the Brother of King *Lewis* the eleventh. Some Fabulous Founders, and Ridiculous Originations, have been thought of for it; as, that it was built by *Ogyges*, a Grand child of *Noah*; by whom called *Bytoniges*; which in the corruption of the following

ing

ing times, came (forſooth) unto *Bituriges*; which Etymologie, were it as dear bought, as it is far fetch'd, *might be good for Ladies*; and then it would be good for ſomewhat. Others, no leſs abſurdly, will have it called *Biturís*, *quaſi Bi-turris*, from two fair Towers which formerly (as they pretend) were erected here: one of the two, in part, ſtill ſtanding: and unto this, they ſay, alludeth an old *Grammarian*, thus:

Turribus à binis, inde vocor Bituris.

From two Towers which were builded here,
The name of *Bituris* I bear.

But the truth is, it was thus called from the *Bituriges*, (the *Biturigum Civitas* of *Antoninus*) and by that name, in the diviſion of old *Gaul* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, made the Metropolis of the Province of *Aquitania prima*; of which this Country was a part. 2. *Wiarron*, or *Viarzon*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Woods, Vines, and Rivers; the Rivers *Arnon*, *Theo*, *Cher*, and *Teure*, meeting hereabouts: built in or near the place of the old *Avaricum*, a Town of great note and ſtrength in the time of *Cæſar*: the revolt whereof gave ſuch a check to his proceedings, that he was fain to ſtretch his wits and valour on the very tenter-hooks, before it was again recovered. 3. *Concreſſant*, on the River *Souldre*, beautified with a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle. 4. *Chaſteau-Roux*, on the River *Indre*: of which little memorable. 5. *Iſſaudun*, on the River *Theo*, the Balliage for that part of the Country. 6. *Montfulcon*, an ancient Barony. 7. *Argenton*, on the River *Creuſe*, the Title and Eſtate of *Philip de Comines*, hence called *Signeur de Argenton*, who writ the Hiſtory of *France* under *Lewis* the 11th; in which he dived ſo far into, and writ ſo largely of, the greateſt affairs of State, that Queen *Katharine de Medicis* uſed to ſay, That he had made as many *Hereticks* in *State-policy*, as *Luther* had done in *Religion*. 8. *Sancerre*, ſeated on a high Hill near the River *Loire*; by ſome *Latin* Writers called *Xantodorum*; but moſt generally ſaid to be ſo called, *quaſi ſacrum Cereris*, from the Goddeſs *Ceres*, herein worſhipped in the times of *Gentiliſm*. A Town of great conſequence and ſtrength; and as ſuch, aſſigned over to the *Hugonots*, *An.* 1569, as a Town of Caution for their ſecurity, and the better keeping of the Articles of Peace then agreed upon. Famous not long after, for enduring a moſt deſperate and tedious ſiege under *Charles* the 9. by whom theſe Articles were almoſt no ſooner made than broken. Before which time, it was not under the command of the *French* Kings, but under the direct dominion of its own Princes, called the Earls of *Sancerre*, who had the Soveraignty thereof: but being taken by the Kings Forces upon this occaſion, *An.* 1573, and the Walls thrown down, a Garriſon was put into the Caſtle, to keep it for the time to come at the Kings devotion, the Rents and Profits of it ſtill remaining to the true *Proprietaries*.

Here is alſo in this Province, the Town and Seigneury of *Aubignie*, adorned with many Priviledges, an ample Territory, and a beautiful Caſtle. Beſtowed by *Charles* the ſixth, on *Robert*, the ſecond Son of *Alan Stewart*, Earl of *Lennox* in *Scotland*, for his many ſignal ſervices againſt the *Engliſh*; and is ſtill the honourary Title and Poſſeſſion of the ſecond branch of that Noble and illuſtrious Family, hence called by the name of Lords of *Aubignie*.

But as for *Berry* it ſelf, and the Fortunes of it, we may pleaſe to know, that the old Inhabitants of it, were the *Bituriges Cubi*, (or the *Biteriges Liberi*, as ſome Writers call them) ſubdued, but not without great difficulty, by the matchleſs *Cæſar*: in the firſt diviſion of *Gallia*, made part of *Aquitain*; and in the new-modelling of that Province, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, a part of *Aquitania prima*, won from the *Romans* by the *Gothes*, and from them by the *French*, it was for long time under the command of Provincial-Governours; one of which, called by the name of *Godfrey*, obtained that dignity from *Hugh Capet*; and his Poſterity enjoyed that Office under the Kings of *France*, till the days of King *Henry* the firſt; of whom the Inheritance and Eſtate was bought by *Harpin*, one of the deſcendants of that *Godfrey*. But long he had not held it as *Proprietary*, in his own right; when deſirous to make one in the *Holy Wars*, he ſold it back again to King *Philip* the firſt, (the better to furniſh himſelf for that expedition) *An.* 1096, to be united to the Crown after his deceaſe. Since which time, the Soveraignty of it hath been always in the Crown of *France*; but the Poſſeſſion and Revenue ſometimes given, with the title of Duke, for a portion to ſome of the Kings younger Sons, to be holden of them in *Apennage*, under the Soveraignty and Command of the *Donor*, and his Succeſſors. The firſt of thoſe that held this title, was *John*, a younger Son of *John* King of *France*, and Unkle unto *Charles* the 6th; during whoſe Reign, betwixt this Duke and thoſe of *Burgundy* and *Orleans*, the Realm of *France* was miſerably diſtracted into Broils and Factions. The ſecond was another *John*, Son of *Charles* the Sixth, who dying in his minority, was ſucceeded in this title by his Brother *Charles*, Succeſſor to his Father in the Crown it ſelf. The fourth and laſt, (for it had no more than four Dukes in all) was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of King *Charles* the 7th, who ſiding with the Earl of *Charolois*, did ſo much trouble the affairs of *France* under *Lewis* the 11th, by whom he was made Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Guienny* afterwards; but held neither long. After whoſe death, it was united to the Crown; never ſince ſeparated from it: but though it never had Duke ſince, it hath had three Dutcheſſes; firſt giving the title of Dutcheſs to the Lady *Joan*, Daughter of *Lewis* the 11th, and Wife to *Lewis* the 12th, then Duke of *Orleans*, eſtated herein by her ſaid Husband; when coming to the Crown he divorced her from him, to make room for the Lady *Anne*, Dutcheſs of *Bretagne*, the Widow of *Charles* the 8th, his Predeceſſor. Conferred after her deceaſe, but on more honourable grounds, by King *Francis* the firſt, on the Lady *Margaret* his Siſter, firſt married to *Charles* Duke of *Alanſon*; and after his deceaſe, to *Henry* of *Albert*, King of *Navarre*, the laſt that had this title, being another *Margaret*, Daughter of the ſaid King *Francis*, married to *Philibert Emmanuel*, Duke of *Savoy*.

11. POICTOU.

POICTOU is bounded on the Eaſt with *Tourein*, *Berrie*, and *Limoſin*; on the North with *Bretagne*, and *Anjou*, on the South with *Xaintoigne*, a member of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; and on the Weſt with the *Aquitain* Seas.

It is called in *Latin*, *Pictavia*, from the *Pictones*, as *Ptolomy*, *Cæſar*, and ſome others; or the *Pictavi*, as *Antoninus* calleth them, the old Inhabitants hereof: and is a Country ſo great and plentiful, that there are numbred in it 1200 Pariſhes, and three Biſhopricks. A ſtrong argument of the populouſneſs and largeneſs of it. Beſides the goodneſs of the Soil, it hath many other great helps to enrich it; that is to ſay, a large

large Sea coast, some capacious Harbours, not a few Navigable Rivers emptying themselves into the Sea: besides the benefit which redounds to it from the *Clin* or *Clavius*, the *Crevisi*, and *Vienne*, three Rivers falling into the *Loire*; which also glides along on the North hereof.

The principal Towns and Cities of it are, 1 *Poictiers*, in *Latin Pictavis*, seated upon the *Clin*, or *Clavius*; by *Ptolemy* called *Augustoritum*: the largest City for compass of ground within the Walls, next to *Paris* it self, but containing in that circuit, Meadows, Corn-fields, and other waste grounds. It is an University, especially for the study of the *Civil-Law*; and a See *Episcopal*: one of the Bishops hereof being St. *Hilarie*, sirnamed *Pictavensis*, that renowned Father of the Church, and a stout Champion of the *Catholick* Faith against the *Arians*, though countenanced in their Heresie by the Emperor *Constantius*. 2 *Souri*, upon the River *Charente*, near the edge of *Xaintoigne*. 3 *Talmont*, upon the shores of the Ocean. 4 *Beaumoir*, a Sea-Town also, and a reasonable good Port, near the confines of the *Bretagne*. 5 *Roch-sur-yon*, so called for its situation on the *Yon*, or *Jon*; which gave the title of Prince to one of the Branches of the Royal race of *Bourbon*. 6 *Lusignan*, on the River *Ion*; also denominating the noble Family of *Lusignan*, sometimes Kings of *Hierusalem*, and afterwards of *Cyprus*; which last they had in exchange for the first, by the donation of King *Richard* the first of *England*. 7 *Lucon*, or *Lusson*, seated upon a Navigable arm of the Sea: sufficiently famous in being the Episcopal See of the renowned Cardinal of *Richilieu*, who so long managed the affairs of *France* for King *Lewis* the thirteenth. 8 *Mailesais*, a Bishops See also. 9 *Thouars*, which gives the title of Duke to the ancient Family of *Tremovile*, from which the Dukes of *Bretagne* did derive themselves; from the time that *Constance* the daughter and heir of *Conan*, after the death of *Geofrey Plantagenet*, her first Husband, had *Guy* of *Thouars* for her second. 10 *Chastel Herauld*, (or *Castrum Heraldi*) on the River *Vienne*; of which *James Hamilton*, Earl of *Arran* in *Scotland*, by the gift of King *Henry* the second of *France*, the better to assure him to the *French* Faction there, against the *English*, had the title of Duke.

In the *Vine-fields* of this Country, within two leagues of *Poictiers*, was fought that memorable Battel between *John* of *France*, and *Edward* the son of King *Edward* the third, sirnamed the *Black Prince*. Who being distressed by the number of the *French*, would willingly have departed on honourable terms: which the *French* not accepting, instead of Conquest, found a fatal overthrow. The greatness and particulars whereof, we shall hereafter see in the life of King *John*. For they presuming on their own strength, to their own disadvantage, bereft the Enemy of all opportunity of retiring; whereas ordinary Policy would instruct the Leader of an Army, to make his Enemy, if he would flye, a Bridg of Gold, as Count *Petillan* used to say. Hereupon *Themistocles* would not permit the *Grecians* to break the Bridg made over the *Hellespont* by *Xerxes*, lest the *Persians* should be compelled to fight, and so happen to recover their former losses: and *Charles* the sixth, lost his Army, by intercepting of our *Henry* the fifth, in his march to *Calice*. For, where all way of flight or retreat is stopt, the basest Soldier will rather dye with glory in the front of his Battel, than flye and be killed with ignominy. So true a Mistress of hardy resolutions, is Despair, and no less true this Proverb of ours, *Make a Coward fight, and he will kill the Devil*. On the Contrary, it hath been the use of divers Politick Captains, to make their own Soldiers fight more resolutely, by taking from them all hope of safety, but by battel. So did *William* the Conqueror, who at his arrival into *England*, burnt the Ships which transported his Army: thereby giving the Soldiers to understand, that their lives lay in the strength of their Arms, and courage of their Hearts, not in the nimbleness of their heels. *Tariff*, the Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, burnt likewise all his Navy, one only *Pinnace* excepted; which he reserved to carry tidings of his success. So when *Charles Martel* encountred that infinite Host of the *Saracens*, (of which you have already heard) he commanded the people of *Tours* to open the Gates only to the Victors. Then he led his Army over the *Loire*, placing on the Banks thereof, certain Troops of Horse-men, to kill all such as fled out of the Field. Hereby informing his men, that there was to them no more *France*, than what they fought on, unless they were Conquerors. In like manner, the same *Themistocles* cunningly working the *Persians* to enclose the *Greek* Navy on every side, enflamed the *Grecians* with such courage, by a necessity of fight, that they gave their enemies the most memorable defeat that ever happned on those Seas.

But to proceed, the people of this Province have more in them of the old *Gaul*, than any in *France*; as lying so betwixt the borders of the *Goths* and *French*, that it was never throughly planted or possessed by either. An argument whereof may be, that they are naturally more rude, subtil, crafty, and contentious, than the rest of their Country-men; and have a *Dialect* by themselves, much differing from the common *French*, having many words mixt with it, questionless some remainders of the ancient *Gallick* which the natural *Frenchman* understands not. In the division of *Gaul* by the Emperor *Constantine*, they were reckoned for a part of *Aquitania Secunda*; and, as a part thereof, won from the *Romans*, with *Limosin*, *Perigort*, and *Quercu*, by *Euricus* King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. Of whose Kingdom it continued part, till those *Goths* were dispossessed of their hold in *France*, by *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, sirnamed the *Great*. After which, it belonged to the Kings of that people; by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, assigned to some Provincial Governours, with the title of *Earls*. One of which being named *Ebles*, (of the old *Gothish* race, if I guess a-right) by the last Will and Testament of *William* the *Debonaire*, Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Auvergne*, succeeded in that fair Estate. *Poictou*, by this means, made a part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, came with it at the last to the Kings of *England*, as shall there be shewn; and being theirs, was given with the title of Earl, by King *Henry* the second, to *Richard*, sirnamed *Coeur de Lyon*, who was after King. Seized upon by the *French*, in the unfortunate Reign of King *John*, with the rest of the *English* Provinces, *Anno* 1202. *Alphonso*, Brother to *Lewis* the ninth, is made Earl of *Poictou*: and being again recovered by King *Henry* the third, it was by him conferred on his Brother *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*. But *Henry* being entangled in the *Barons* Warrs, and *Richard* wholly taken up with the affairs of *Germany*, of which by some of the *Electors* he was chosen Emperor; it was fully conquered by the *French*, and never since dismembred from that Crown, for ought I can find. For, though in the more active times of King *Edward* the third, some of the best Towns and pieces of it, were possessed by the *English*; yet were they lost again soon after, according to the various successes and events of War.

12 LIMOSIN, 13 PERIGROT, 14 QUERCU.

THese Provinces I have joined together, becauſe for the moſt part they have followed the ſame fortune; being ſometimes *French*, and ſometimes *Engliſh*, according to the ſucceſſes of either Nation.

1 *LIMOSIN*, the largeſt of the three, hath on the Eaſt, *Bourbonnois*; on the Weſt, *Perigort*; on the North, and North-weſt, *Poictou*, and *Berry*; on the South, *Auvergne*. It is divided into the *Higher*, properly called *Limoſin*; and the *Lower*, commonly called *La Marche*: both parts, but ſpecially *La Marche*, which lieth towards *Auvergne*, being mountainous, and not very fruitful; but of a free and open Air: inhabited by a people of a more ſtaid and ſober nature than the reſt of the *French*, frugal in expence, and moderate in diet; only ſo great devourers of Bread, that they are grown into a *By-word*.

The chief Towns in *La Marche*, or the *Lower Limoſin*, are 1 *Tulles*, ſeated in a rough and hilly Country; a Biſhops-See 2 *Uzarche*, ſeated amongſt the Mountains, on the River *Vezere*, a very fierce and violent current; with which ſo fortified on all ſides, that it is thought to be a very ſtrong and ſecure dwelling. 3 *Treinac*, 4 *Douſenac*, 5 *Belmont*, 6 *Meiſſac*, 7 *Brive le Gaillard*, &c. In the *Higher Limoſin*, the chief Towns are, 1 *Limoges*, a Biſhops-See, the principal of the *Lemovices*, from whom denominated; by *Ptolemy* called *Ratiaſtum*. A neat, but no large City; rich, populous, and inhabited by a people of ſo great an Induſtry, that they compel every one to work; and is therefore by the *French* called the *Priſon of Beggers*: ſeated on the *Vienne*. At the taking of it when revolted, *Edward* the *Black-Prince* could by no means be allured to pity the diſtreſſed Citizens, till purſuing his Enemies, he ſaw three *French* Gentlemen make head againſt his Army; the conſideration of whoſe magnanimity, drew him to pity, where before he avowed revenge. 2 *Chaluz*, at the beſieging of which, our *Richard* the Firſt was ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt*; the uſe of which War-like Engine, he firſt ſhewed to the *French*. Whereupon a *French* Poet made theſe Verſes on the perſon of *Atropos*:

Hoc volo, non alia Richardum *morte perire,*
Ut, qui Francigenis *Baliſtæ primitùs uſum*
Tradidit, ipſe ſuî rem primitùs experiatur:
Quamq; aliis docuit, in ſe vim ſentiat artis.

It is decreed, thus muſt great *Richard* die,
As he that firſt did teach the *French* to dart
An *Arbaliſt*; 'tis juſt he firſt ſhould trie
The ſtrength, and taſte the fruits of his own Art.

The man that ſhot him, was called *Bertram de Gurdon*; who being brought before the King, (for the King neglecting his wounds, never gave over the Aſſault, till he gained the place) boldly juſtifyed his action, as done in the ſervice of his Country; and for revenge of the death of his Father and Brother, whom the King had cauſed to be ſlain. Which heard, the King not only cauſed him to be ſet at liberty, but gave him an hundred ſhillings *ſterling*, in reward of his Gallantry, 3 *Soubſterrein*, on the confines of *Berry*. 4 *Confoulat*, 5 *Dorat*, on the River *Vienne*. 6 *Boiſſon*, 7 *Birat*, of which nothing memorable.

2 *PERIGORT*, hath on the Eaſt, *Anvergne* and *Quercu*; on the Weſt, *Xaintoigne*; on the North, *Limoſin*; and on the South, ſome part of *Gaſcoigne*. The Country and people, are much of the ſame condition with that of *Limoſin*; ſaving that *Perigort* is the more woody; and thoſe Woods plentiful of *Cheſnuts*. The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Perigeux*, the principal City of the *Petrogorii*, by *Ptolemy* called *Veſſena*; now a Biſhops-See: ſome foot-ſteps of which name, remain in a part of *Perigeux*, (for the Town, it is divided into two parts) which to this day is called *Veſune*; in which ſtandeth the Cathedral Church, and the Biſhop's Palace. The whole City ſeated in a very pleaſant Valley environed with *Downs*, affording a moſt excellent Wine; and having in it, as a mark of the *Roman* greatneſs, the ruins of a large and ſpacious *Amphitheater*. 2 *Bergerac*, ſeated on the great River *Dordonne*. 3 *Sarlat*, a Biſhops-See. 4 *Nontron*, defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle. 5 *Miramont*, 6 *La Roche*, 7 *Marſac*, where is a Well which ebbeth and floweth according to the pulſe of the River of *Bourdeaux*. And 8 *Angoleſme*, in the North-weſt towards *Xaintoigne*, the ſeat of the *Engoliſmenſes*, in the time of the *Romans*; now a Biſhops See: ſeated upon the River of *Charente*, with which it is almoſt encompaſſed: the other ſide being defended by a ſteep and rocky Mountain. A Town of great importance when poſſeſſed by the *Engliſh*; being one of their beſt out-works for defence of *Bourdeaux*; one of the Gates hereof being to this day called *Chande*, ſeems to have been the work of Sir *John Chandois*, Banneret, one of the firſt Founders of the moſt Noble Order of the *Garter*; then Governour hereof for King *Edward* the Third. Being recovered from the *Engliſh* by *Charles* the Fifth, it was beſtowed on *John*, the third Son of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, Grand-father of King *Francis* the Firſt, with the title of an Earldom only, *An.* 1408. Afterwards made a Dukedom in the perſon of the ſaid King *Francis*, before his coming to the Crown. And for the greater honor of it, as much of the adjoining Country was laid unto it, as maketh up a Territory of about 24 *French* Leagues in length; and 15 in breadth: within which circuit are the Towns of *Chaſteau-neif*, and *Coignat*, on the River of *Charente*. 3 *Roche Faulcon*, 4 *Chabannes*, 5 *Meriville*, 6 *Villebois*, &c. Since that united to the Crown, it hath of late times given the title of Duke to *Charles* Earl of *Auvergne*, *An.* 1618. the baſe ſon of *Charles* the ninth, conſequently extracted from the Houſe of *Angoleſme*.

3 *QUERCU* is encompaſſed about with *Limoſin*, *Perigort*, *Languedoc*, and *Auvergne*. A populous Country, for the bigneſs, (being one of the leaſt in all *France*) and very fruitful withal, though ſomewhat mountainous. The principal places in it, 1 *Cahors*, the chief City of the *Cadurci*, in the times of the *Romans*; ſtill a great, ſtrong, and well-traded Town, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the *Temporal* Lord of it: ſeated upon the River *Loch*. From hence deſcended and took name the noble Family of *Chaworoth de Cadurcis*, in *Latin*: out of which, by a Daughter of *Patrick de Cadurcis*, Lord of *Ogmore* and *Kidwelly*, in the Marches of *Wales*, married to *Henry* the third Earl of *Lancaſter*, come the Kings of *England*, and moſt of the Royal houſes in *Europe*. 2 *Montalban*, a Biſhops-See alſo; built on the top of an high Mountain, and ſo well fortified by all advantages of art, that it is thought to be the moſt defenſible of any in *France*: of which it gave ſufficient proof in that notable reſiſtance which it made to King *Lewis* the thirteenth, in his Wars againſt thoſe of the *Religion*, *Anno* 1622. 3 *Soulac*, upon the River *Dordonne*. 4 *Nigrepelliſſe*, another of the Towns poſſeſſed by the Proteſtant Party, reduced to the obedience of King *Lewis* the thirteenth, *Anno* 1621: but in *November* following, they murdered the King's Garriſon, and the next year denied admiſſion to the King.

King. Taken at laſt, *An.* 2622, by the King in Perſon: the Puniſhment did exceed the Crime. For, the men were not only killed and hanged, as they had deſerved; but many of the women alſo; ſome of them having their ſecret parts rammed with Gun-powder, and ſo torn in pieces, by the unpattern'd Barbariſm of the mercileſs and revengeful Soldiers. 5 *Chaſteau-Saraſin*, a ſtrong Town on the *Garond*. 6 *Nazaret*. 7 *Burette*, &c.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe three Provinces, were the *Lemovices*, the *Petrocorii*, and the *Cadurci*, beforementioned; of which the *Lemovices*, and *Cadurci*, were caſt into the Province of *Aquitania Prima*; the *Petrocorii*, and *Engoliſmenſes*, into *Aquitania Secunda*. In the declining of that Empire, ſeized on by the *Goths*; but from them ſpeedily extorted by the conquering-*French*. Afterwards, when King *Henry* the third of *England*, releaſed his right in the Provinces of *Normandy*, *Poictou*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Main*; *Lewis* the 9th, to whom his Releaſe was made, gave him in ſatisfaction of all former Intereſſes, 300000 *l.* of *Anjorian* money, the Dukedom of *Guienne*, the County of *Xaintogne*, as far as to the River of *Charent*, with the Province of *Limoſin*. And on the Capitulation made betwixt *Edward* the third of *England*, and *John* of *France*, then Priſoner to him; *Perigort* and *Quercu*, (among other conditions) were conſigned over to the *Engliſh*, diſcharged of all *Reſort* and *Homage* to the Crown of *France*. After which times reſpectively, they remained all three in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*, until their final expulſion by King *Charles* the 7th; never ſince that diſmembred from the Crown of *France*.

15 AQUITAIN.

THE Dukedom of *AQUITAIN*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of all *France*, contained the Provinces of 1 *Xaintogne*, 2 *Guienne*, 3 *Gaſcoigne*; with the Iſles of *Oleron* and *Rees*, and other Iſlands in the *Aquitanick* or Weſtern Ocean.

XAINTOGNE is bounded on the Eaſt with *Limoſin* and *Perigort*; on the Weſt with the *Aquitanick* Ocean; on the North with *Poictou*; and on the South with *Guienne*. So called from *Saintles*, one of the principal Cities of it; as that from the *Santones*, a Nation here inhabiting in the time of the *Romans*, whoſe chief City it was. The River of *Charente* running through the middle; and ſo on the North border of it, emptieth it ſelf into the Ocean, juſt oppoſite to the Iſle of *Oleron*; having firſt taken in the *Seugne*, and the *Boutonne*, two leſſer Rivers.

The chief Towns of it are, 1 *Saintles*; by *Ptolemy* called *Mediolanium*; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Santonum*, ſeated upon the *Charente*; a Biſhops See, and the *Seneſchalſie* for the County. 2 S. *John de Angelie*, ſituate on the *Boutonne*, a Town once impregnably fortified: whereof it hath given ſufficient teſtimony in the *Civil Wars of France* about *Religion*, until the fatal time was come, in which the great power of that party was to be diſſolved; at what time (*viz. An.* 1621.) after a ſiege of forty days, it was taken by King *Lewis* the thirteenth, the Fortifications demoliſhed, the Town left open, and commanded from that time forwards, to be called by the name of *Lewis Bourg*. *Bourg ſur la Mer*, upon the *Dordonne*; which for the wideneſs of it, is here called a Sea. 4 *Retraicte*, ſeated near the confluence of the two great Rivers, the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*. 5 *Blaye*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Country, defended with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Garriſon for ſecuring, the paſſage unto *Bourdeaux*; this Town being ſeated on the very mouth of the River which goeth up to it. 6 *Rochelle*, *Rupella* in the preſent *Latin*; but anciently called *Santonum Portus*, as the chief Haven of the *Santones*; a well-noted Port in the moſt Northern part of *Xaintogne*; from whence the Country hereabouts is called *ROCHELOIS*. The Town ſeated in the inner part of a fair and capacious Bay; the entrance of which is well aſſured by two very ſtrong Forts, betwixt which there is no more ſpace, than for the paſſage of a good Ship: every night cloſed up with a maſſy chain; and the whole Town either environed with deep Mariſhes, or fortified with ſuch Bulwarks, Trenches, and other Works of Modern Fortification, that it was held to be, as indeed it was, the ſafeſt retreat for thoſe of the *Reformed Religion*, in the time of their troubles; as may be ſeen by the ſtory of it, which in brief is thus. At the end of the ſecond *Civil-War*, *An.* 1568, many Towns conſidering how ill the former Peace had been obſerved, refuſed to take in any of the King's Garriſons, or permit any of the *Papiſts* to bear Arms amongſt them; of which *Rochel* was one; which alſo, contrary to the King's command, maintained a Navy for their ſafety by Sea, and continued their Fortifications for their defence by Land. So that hither the Queen of *Navarre*, and her Son, retired, as to a place of ſafety, *An.* 1570. *Rochel* alone, of all the *French* Towns, held good for the *Proteſtants*, and is by *Monſieur Joinville* on all ſides blocked up: but the ſiege ſoon raiſed, and *Rochel*, *Montalban*, *Santerre*, with others, made cautionary for the Peace enſuing. *An.* 1575, beſieged by *Biron* the elder, with an Army of 50000 men, and 60 pieces of Artillery: *Charles* the ninth, *Henry* Duke of *Anjou*, the Duke of *Aumal*, &c. being alſo preſent at the ſervice: it held out from the beginning of *March*, till the 7th of *June*, and was then freed; the City having in one month endured 13000 ſhot, and the King loſt 20000 men amongſt them, the Duke of *Aumal* for one, *An.* 75, and 78, it was attempted by *Landereau*, the Iſle of *Ree* taken, but ſoon recovered: the King of *Navarre*, and Prince of *Conde*, after that defeat, being received in triumph. *Anno* 1577, beſieged to Sea-ward by *Lanſac*; who being alſo beaten back, a Peace was made, and eight cautionary Towns more, added to their former ſtrength. In the troubles of 85, and 88, the Princes above-named made it their retreat; and from thence iſſued to divert the purpoſes of the Duke of *Mercoeur*. The next year, *Henry* the third being ſlain, and the King of *Navarre* ſeated in the Throne, the *Proteſtant* encreaſed exceedingly in power, and number; and taking advantage of the minority of *Lewis* the thirteenth, governed themſelves apart as a *Feee Eſtate*, *Rochel* being made the Head of their Commonwealth; fortified to that end with 12 Royal *Baſtions* of Free-ſtone, with double Ditches, deep, and broad, in the bottom, abundantly furniſhed with Powder and Ammunition, 150 pieces of Cannon, beſides Culverins and ſmaller Pieces, with Victuals, and all other neceſſaries, to endure a ſiege; and grown unto ſo great wealth, that there were thought to be an hundred or ſix-ſcore Merchants, worth 100000 Crowns a-piece. This drew upon them the great Wars in the year 1621, and 1622. Which ended in the loſs of all their Garriſons except *Rochel* and *Montalban*; thoſe to remain in pledge with the *Proteſtant Party*, but for three years only. Which time expired, the *Rochellers* were again beſieged both by Sea and Land, the Iſle of *Ree* took from them, their Fleet broke at Sea, and the mouth of their Haven ſo barred up with Ships chained together, and ſunk into it, and other Works of ſtupendious greatneſs, in the very Ocean, that no Foreign ſuccours out of *England*, (howſoever really

intended, and bravely followed) had been able to come to their relief. In the end, having endured all the extremities of a tedious ſiege, they yielded themſelves to the King's mercy, *An.* 1628. *Montalban*, *Niſmes*, and other places newly fortified, ſubmitted at the ſame time alſo. 7 *Marans*, a great Town, and of great importance, ſeated by the Ocean-Sea in a low fenny-place, as it were in a *Peninſula*, and ſo encompaſſed on every ſide with Mariſh watry grounds, that there is no acceſs to the Works thereof, but by very few, and thoſe narrow paſſages. 8 *Chaſtillon*, and 9 *Saubize*, places of good ſtrength alſo, but of greater note: the firſt, for giving a ſirname to a Noble Family, out of which iſſued formerly the Earls of *Blois*, and of late times, *Gaſper de Colligni*, and *Monſieur D'Andalot*, his Brother; much mentioned in the Wars of *France* about *Religion*: the latter giving the title of a Duke to a younger Son of the Houſe of *Rohan*; as great a ſtickler in that Cauſe, as thoſe Brethren were.

II. *GUIENNE*, the ſecond Province of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, is bounded on the North with *Xaintoigne*, from which parted by the River of *Dordonne*; on the South with *Gaſcoigne*, on the Eaſt with *Perigort*, and on the Weſt with the *Aquitanick* Ocean, from the *Pyrenean* Hills, to the River of *Bourdeaux*. The reaſon of the name I could never learn. Some think it a corruption of the old name *Aquitain*; but not very probably. The Country generally plentiful of Corn and Wine; the one being vented into *Spain*, and the other into *England*. The people, as thoſe of *Xaintoigne* alſo, tall of ſtature, of able bodies, haters of ſervitude and baſeneſs, and well practiſed in arms; which qualities of the mind, and conſtitution of body, (being therein ſo different from the reſt of *France*) it is poſſible enough they might have from the *Engliſh*, who for 300 years were poſſeſſed of the Country, and have left many tracks of their Language in it.

The principal Rivers of this Province, are the *Garond*, and the *Dordonne*, meeting together at *Retraicte*, a Town of *Xaintogne*; and thence in one Chanel falling into the Ocean: the Country betwixt theſe two Rivers, being called *Le Pais entre les deux mers*; or, The Country betwixt the two Seas: the Rivers hereabouts reſembling a ſmall Sea in wideneſs. Of leſſer note are, 1 *Jearne*, 2 *Baize*, 3 *Lot*, and 4 *Liſle*, falling into the *Garond* in their ſeveral places.

Chief Towns whereof are, 1 *Bourdeaux*, ſeated on the South-bank of the *Garond*, not far from the Sea, amongſt the Mariſhes. The chief City of the *Bituriges*, who poſſeſſed this tract; and for diſtinction's ſake, were called *Bituriges Ubiſci*; thoſe of *Bourges* being called *Bituriges Cubi*. It was after called *Burdegala*, and *Civitas Burdegalenſium*; the *Metropolis* at that time of *Aquitania ſecunda*; conſequently, an Archbiſhops See, as it ſtill continueth. A fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with many good buildings, an Univerſity founded here by King *Lewis* the 11th., and a large Cathedral. It was made *Parliamentary* for *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoining, by King *Charles* the 7th, *An.* 1453, not long after the expulſion of the *Engliſh* thence; and is one of the moſt noted *Empories* in all the Kingdom; frequented very much by the *Dutch* and *Engliſh*, for *Gaſcoigne* Wines: over which laſt the *French* are ſo jealous, that they permit them not to come up the River, till they have unladen all their *Ordnance* at the Port of *Blaye*. The Country hereabouts is, from this Town, called *Bourdelois*. 2 *Fronſac*, lying in the Country betwixt the two Seas, (as they call it) which gives the title of a Duke to the Noble Family of the Earls of St. *Paul*, now Dukes of *Fronſac*; and to the Country round about, the name of *Fronſadaze*. 3 *Libourn*, at the confluence of the two great Rivers, oppoſite to *Retraicte* in *Xaintogne*. 4 *Soulac*, at the influx of the *Garond*, in the *Peninſula*, or demi-Iſland, called the Country of *Medock*. 5 *Baionne*, a Sea-Town, and Epiſcopal See, frontiering on the Coaſt of *Spain*. 6 S. *John de Luz*, at the foot of the *Pyrenean* Mountains; all about which, the people ſpeak the *Baſquiſh*, or old *Gaſcoigne* Language, being the ſame with that of *Biſcay*. 7 *D'Acqs*, an Epiſcopal See, by *Ptolemy* called *Aquæ Auguſtæ*, (*Civitas Aquenſium*, by *Antoninus*) from whence this part of *Gaul*, had the name of *Aquitain*. Theſe three laſt, being all of them Frontier Towns, are ſtrongly fortified. 8 *Bazas*, (called *Coſſium* by *Ptolemy*) the chief City of the *Vaſates*, whom *Antoninus* placeth in this tract: now a Biſhops-See, ſituate on the borders of *Gaſcoigne*: in the Country from hence called *Bazadas*. Towns of leſs note, 1 *Eſparrez*, 2 St. *Baſil*, 3 *Reule*, 4 *Chaſteau-Moron*, 5 *Monſeguer*, 6 *Sainctcrre*, &c. Here is alſo in this Province, the Country of *Buche*, lying along the Sea-Coaſt from *Baionne* to *Medock*; a barren, poor, and wretched Country, the worſt piece of *France*; only remarkable for the Lords or Owners of it, formerly of the Houſe of *Foix*: of which the moſt remarkable were *Gaſton de Foix*, for his many ſignal ſervices againſt the *French*, created Earl of *Kendal*, and Knight of the *Garter*, by the ſaid King *Henry*; but better known in *Engliſh* ſtories, by the name of *Capital*, or *Capau de Buche*; the Lords hereof having no higher title than that of *Captain*.

III. *GASCOIGNE*, the third and largeſt part of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*, hath on the Eaſt, *Languedoc*; from which parted by the River *Garond*; on the Weſt, the *Pyrenean* Mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; on the North, *Perigort*, *Quercu*, and ſome part of *Guienne*; and on the South, a main tract of the *Pyrenees*, running on to *Languedoc*. The Country generally fruitful, but of Wines eſpecially; brought hence to *Bourdeaux*, as the ſtaple for that Commodity, and thence tranſported into *England* in great abundance.

The ancient inhabitants hereof, were the *Auſcii*, *Lactoraces*, *Convenares*, *Conſerani*, &c. making up a great part of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; united in this name of *Gaſcoigne*, on the conqueſt of it by the *Vaſcones*, a *Spaniſh* Nation, who fell in here during the reign of *Dagobert* the 11th King of the *French*. And though ſubdued by *Clouis* the ſecond, ſon of *Dagobert*; yet they left their name unto the Country, divided afterwards according to the chief *Seigneuries* and Eſtates thereof, into 1 the Principality of *Bearn*, 2 the Earldom of *Foix*, 3 *Comminges*, 4 *Begorre*, 5 *Armaignac*, 6 *Albret*, and 7 the Country of *Agenois*.

1 The *Principality* of *BEARN*, is ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, where they join to *Languedoc*; ſo called from *Benearnum*, a principal City of this tract, mentioned by *Antoninus*, and others of the ancient Writers. The Country of good paſturage, though amongſt the Mountains; affording plenty of Cattel, Butter, and in ſome places Wines alſo, little inferior in taſte and colour, to the beſt of *France*; and many *Medicinal* Springs iſſuing from the Hills adjoining.

The *Religion* here, as generally in all *Gaſcoigne*, is that of the *Reformed Churches*, introduced about the year 1560; or rather, then confirmed by publick Authority of the King and Queen of *Navarre*: at what time the *Maſs*, *Tythes*, *Church-lands*, and the *Prelates* Votes in *Parliament*, (according to the *Genevian* way of *Reformation*) were condemned together. And ſo it ſtood till the year 1620, when by the Power and Authority of *Lewis* the 13. King of *France* and *Navarre*, the *Prelates* were reſtored to their *Votes* and *Lands*; the *Clergy* to their *Tithes*, and *Maſs* cauſed alſo to be ſaid in ſome of their Churches:

yet

yet ſo, that thoſe of the *Reformed* were left unto the free exerciſe of their own *Religion*, as in former times.

The principal Towns hereof are, 1 *Orthes*, the ſame which anciently was called *Benarnum*. 2 *Leſcar*, a Biſhop's See, the ancient ſeat and habitation of the Princes of *Bearn*. 3 *Oleron*, a Biſhop's See alſo, mounted upon a high hill, in the more mountainous parts of the Country. 4 *Sainčerra*, well garriſoned ſince the reduction of this Country to the King's obedience. 5 *Pau*, the principal of all the Province, honoured with a *Parliament* or Court of *Judicature* for all the Country; and a fair Palace of the Prince, built by *Henry* of *Alber*, King of *Navarre*, and Lord of *Bearn*; the Seat of him and his Succeſſors, till the coming of *Henry* the fourth to the Crown of *France*. 6 *Grenade*, upon the Frontier towards *Begorre*.

This Country for a long time followed the fortune of *Aquitain*; and in the general diſmembring of the *French* Empire, had its own *Proprietaries*, who were the abſolute Lords of it, acknowledging no Superior for ought I can find. The principal of which was that *Gaſton* (a name very frequent in this Family) who in the year 1118 accompanied with many noble perſons of *France*, aſſiſted *Alphonſo* King of *Navarre* & *Aragon* at the ſiege of *Sarageſſa*; in the courſe of which action he did ſo good ſervice, that he was not only much honoured, but liberally rewarded for it; both he and his poſterity enjoying many priviledges in the conquered City. By the Heir general of this *Gaſton*, married to *William de Moncada* Seneſchal of *Catalogne*, and of great poſſeſſions in that Country, the Lordſhip and Soveraignty of *Bearn* fell unto that Family about the year 1220, but long it did not tarry in it. For *William* being ſlain in the conqueſt of the Iſle of *Majorca*, *An.* 1228, left his Eſtates to *Gaſton de Moncada* his eldeſt ſon: who much increaſed them by the addition of the Earldom of *Begorre*, and many other goodly pieces, accrewing to him in the right of his Wife *Martha*, heir hereof; whereof more anon. Grown by this means to ſuch authority and eſteem in the Court of *Aragon*, that (being without iſſue male) *Conſtance* his eldeſt daughter was thought a match of great advantge to *Alphonſo* eldeſt ſon of King *James* the firſt. But dying without iſſue by her, *Anno* 1260, the Soveraignty of *Bearn* with all the Appendixes thereof both in *France* and *Spain*, became united to the Earldom of *Foix*, (an Eſtate equal to it both in power & patrimony) by the marriage of *Reger Bernard* the ninth Earl of *Foix*, who ſucceeded in that Earldom, *An.* 1262, with *Margaret de Moncata* another daughter of this *Gaſton*, and Heir of *Bearn*. Afterwards being much increaſed both in power and honour (by the addition of the Earldom of *Comminges*, the Viſconty of *Narbon*, and the Signeury of *Buche* in *Guyenne*, to this houſe of *Foix*) it was added to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*, and Soveraign of *Bearn*, with *Eleanor* the Heir of that Kingdom, *An.* 1481, deſcending with that Crown upon *Henry* of *Bourbon*, King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France*, by the name of *Henry* the fourth; but governed by him always as a *State diſtinct*, without relation or reſort to the Crown of *France*. But *Lewis* the thirteenth his ſon, finding ſome inconvenience in that diſtinction, incorporated it for ever to the reſt of his Dominions, *Anno* 1620, though not without ſome oppoſition from the ſubjects of *Bearn*: which he was fain to over-bear by his perſonal preſence, and the advantage of ſuch Forces as he carried with him. Since reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, awed, as the reſt of *France*, by Forts and Garriſons, and governed in Civil matters by the Parliament eſtabliſhed at *Pau*: the Judges and Councellors thereof at the King's appointing.

2 The Earldom of *FOIX*, is ſituate on the Weſt of *Languedoc*; *Commingeois* interpoſing betwixt it and *Bearn*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Maſeros*, on the *Garond*, a Biſhops See. 2 *Parnieres*, a Biſhops See alſo, ſeated on the River *Lagiere*. 3 *Foix*, on the ſame River, called in *Latin Fuxium*, and the Earls hereof *Comites Fuxienſes*; the chief ſeat of the *Fluſſates* in the times of the *Romans*, now giving name to all the Country. 4 *Mirande*, in the County of *Eſterac*, and the chief thereof, but otherwiſe of no great account. 5 *Savardun*, and 6 *Monbault*, two ſtrong pieces. 7 *Mirepoix* (*oppidum Miropenſe*) a Biſhops See alſo, but of no note otherwiſe. The old Inhabitants of this tract, beſides the *Fluſſates* above mentioned, were called *Vaccæi*, perhaps of the abundance of Kine, bred in the paſtures hereof: upon which ground, the Earls of *Foix* have for their Arms, 3 Cows *paſſant Gules*; horned and hoofed *Azure*, in a Field *Or*.

The firſt of theſe Earls was *Bernard* of *Carcaſſone*, advanced to this honour by *Raimond* Earl of *Tholouſe*, who had then the ſoveraignty hereof, *Anno* 1062. The Patrimony hereof much increaſed by marriage (no one Family more) many fair Lands in the Mariſſies of *Provence* being added to it by *Eſtmiette*, Wife of *Roger* the ſecond; not a few Signeuries in *Catalonia*, by *Cecil* Daughter of Earl *Raimond*, Wife of *Roger* the third; the Earldom of *Caſtelbon*, by *Brunicen* Wife of *Roger Bernard* the firſt; the Earldom of *Comminges* by *Eleanor* the Wife of *Gaſton* the ſecond. Beſides all which, in or about the year 1262, *Roger Bernard*, the ninth Earl, united *Bearn* to his Eſtate as before is ſaid; whoſe Grand-child *Iſabel* (the male iſſue failing) conveyed the whole Eſtate to *Archembald*, Lord or Captain of *Buche*, in the Province of *Guienne*. *Gaſton*, the Nephew of this *Archembald* by his eldeſt ſon *John*, was for his many good ſervices to *Charles* the ſeventh, made a Peer of *France*: and did not only purchaſe the Viſconty of *Narbon*, from the Lords whereof he was deſcended by *Mainguard*, Wife of *Roger Bernard* the ſecond; but by his marriage with *Eleanor* or *Beanora* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, united that Kingdom to his houſe, though he enjoyed it not in his own perſon. By means of which Alliances, and other improvements of Eſtate, his Family grew to ſo great power and reputation, that there were four Queens at one time deſcended from it: *viz.* *Katharine* Queen of *Navarre*, *German* Queen of *Aragon*, *Anne* Queen of *France*, *Anne* Queen of *Hungary* and *Bohnmia*. Before which time (I mean the *Addition* of *Navarre* to their other Eſtates) the Earls of *Foix* were in ſo high eſteem in the Court of *France*, that in all publick Ceremonies they took place of the Earls of *Vendoſme*, though extracted from the Royal Blood, and lived in a condition equal to moſt Kings in Chriſtendom. In which regard, as alſo that the later Kings of *Navarre* and preſent Kings of *France*, are deſcended of them, it will not be amiſs to ſubjoin here the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Foix*.

A.C.		
1062	1	*Bernard* the younger ſon of *Roger* Earl of *Carcaſſon*, the firſt Earl of *Foix*.
1096	2	*Roger*, the ſon of *Bernard*, an adventurer in the firſt War for the *Holy Land*.
1111	3	*Roger* II. ſon of *Roger* the firſt.
1144	4	*Roger* III. ſon of *Roger* the ſecond.
1188	5	*Raymond Roger* ſon of *Roger* the third, a great ſtickler for the Earls of *Tholouſe*, in favour of the *Albigenſes*, and their opinions.
1223	6	*Roger Bernard*, the inheritor of his Fathers opinions, as well as of his Eſtates and Fortunes.

7 *Roger*

1241 7 *Roger* IV. ſirnamed *Rotfer*, a companion of the King S. *Lewis* in the *Holy Land*.
1255 8 *Roger-Bernard* II. ſon of *Rotfer*.
1262 9 *Roger-Bernard* III. who added *Bearn* and its Appendixes unto his Eſtates.
1306 10 *Gaſton* the ſon of *Roger-Bernard* the third, and of *Margaret de Moncade* the Heir of *Bearn*.
1315 11 *Gaſton* II. ſon of *Gaſton* the firſt, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Philip de Valois*; and as great a friend to the King of *Aragon* againſt the *Moors*, in which War he was ſlain.
1344 12 *Gaſton* III. for his beauty ſirnamed *Phœbus*, inferior for Revenue and the Port he lived in, to few Kings in Chriſtendom.
1390 13 *Matthew* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, Son of *Roger-Bernard* Earl of *Caſtelbon*, the ſecond Son of *Gaſton* the firſt: deſigned ſucceſſor to *John* King of *Aragon*, whoſe eldeſt Daughter he had married but diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Duke of *Momlanc*.
1399 14 *Archembald* Captain of *Buche*, and *Iſabel* Siſter and Heir of *Matthew* Earls of *Foix*.
1413 15 *John* Son of *Archembald*, a great Enemy to the *Engliſh* in behalf of *Charles* the ſeventh of *France*: his younger Brother *Gaſton*, as great a friend unto the *Engliſh*, ſucceeding in the Eſtate of *Buche*. From *Peter* the ſecond Son of this *John*, deſcended *Odet de Foix*, Lord of *Lautrech*, ſo renowned in the Wars of *Italy*.
1436 16 *Gaſton* IV. Son of *John* a principal Agent in the Conqueſt of *Guienne* from the *Engliſh*; by his marriage with *Eleanor* Daughter and Heir of *John* King of *Navarre*, advanced his houſe unto that Kingdom; Grandfather by *John* Viſcount of *Narboue* his ſecond Son to *Gaſton de Foix* Duke of *Nemours*, ſlain at the taking of *Ravenna*, *Anno* 1512.
1472 17 *Francis Phœbus* Nephew of *Gaſton* the fourth, and of *Eleanor* of *Navarre* by their Son *Gaſton* Prince of *Viane*, ſucceeded his ſaid Grandfather in the Earldom of *Foix*, and his Grandmother in the Realm of *Navarre* about ſeven years after.
1483 18 *Katharine* the Siſter and Heir of *Francis*, by her marriage with *John* Earl of *Albert*, added that Earldom alſo to the houſe of *Foix*.
1517 19 *Henry* of *Albert* Son of *John* and *Katharine*, King of *Navarre*, Soveraign of *Bearn* and Earl of *Foix*, by his marriage with the Lady *Margaret*, Siſter to King *Francis* the firſt, added the greateſt part of the Lands of *Armaignac* unto his Eſtate.
1556 20 *Antony* of *Bourbon* Duke of *Vendoſme*, and *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* of *Albert*, Kings of *Navarre*, Soveraigns of *Bearn*, and Earls of *Foix*.
1572 21 *Henry* II. Son of *Joan* and *Antony*, King of *Navarre*, Soveraign Lord of *Bearn*, and Earl of *Foix*; on the murder of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Kingdom by the name of *Henry* the fourth, *Anno* 1589, the Father of *Lewis* the thirteenth, and Grand-father of King *Lewis* the fourteenth, now reigning, *An.* 1648. And ſo having brought the Earls of *Foix* to the Crown of *France*, it is time to leave them. The Arms of theſe great Earls we have ſeen before.

3 The Earldom of *BEGORRE* is ſituate North of *Bearn*, at the foot of the *Pyrenæan* Mountains: ſo called from the *Bigerrones*, the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*. Scattered in which, and the adjoining Principality of *Bearn*, live a leprous and infectious people of noiſom breaths, deformed bodies, and ghaſtly viſages: in which regard, not ſuffered to have any commerce with other people, nor to inherit any Lands; but only to apply themſelves to drudgery, and the baſeſt of mechanick trades. From their great miſhapen heads called *Capets* or *Gabets*.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Figneres*, famous for *Medicinal* Baths. 2 *Lourde*, of which nothing memorable. 3 *Tarbe*, (by *Antonine* called *Turſaubica*) ſeated upon the River *Adour*, honoured with a ſtrong Caſtle, an Epiſcopal See, and the Seneſchalſie for all the Country of *Begorre*. Which Country having for long time its own *Proprietary* Earls, under the Soveraignty and Homage of the Crown of *Navarre*, from the Kings whereof they were extracted, or thoſe Kings from them; was at the laſt, by the marriage of *Petronilla*, Daughter and Heir of *Eſquibat* the laſt Earl, to *Baſon* Viſcount of *Marſan* and *Gabardan*, added to that houſe. Whoſe Daughter *Matthee*, marrying to *Gaſton* Prince of *Bearn*, increaſed that *Principality* with thoſe goodly pieces of *Marſan*, *Gabardan* and *Begorre*; all brought unto the houſe of *Foix*, by *Margaret*, Daughter of this *Gaſton*, married to *Roger Bernard*, as before is ſaid.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*; By *Inigo Ariſta* the ſon of *Simon*, Earl of this Country called to the Crown of *Navarre*, made the Arms of that Kingdom; whereas before that time, the Arms thereof had been *Argent*, on a Tree *Vert*, a Croſs in chief, *Gules*. Which Arms are ſaid to be took by *Garcia Ximines* the firſt King of *Navarre*, from ſuch a Sign appearing to him in the Sky, before his firſt battel with the *Moors*.

4 The Earldom of *COMMINGES* lieth betwixt *Bearn* and *Foix*, running betwixt both as far Northward, as to boarder Eaſtward on *Begorre*. Divided into the *Higher*, and and more mountainous part, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and the *Lower*, which hath ſomewhat more of the valley in it. The old Inhabitants of both, the *Convenæ*, and *Conſerani*. The principal places at preſent in the *Lower Comminges* are, 1 *Lombes*, a Biſhops See, but of late erection, 2 *Moret*, upon the River *Garronne*. 3 *Samathan*. 4 *Lieſle en Dordon*. And in the *Higher*, there is 1 *Conſerans*, once the chief Town of the *Conſerani*, now a Biſhops See, ſituate at the foot of the *Pyrenean* hills. 2 S. *Bernard*, of old called *Civitas Convenarum*, a Biſhops See alſo, and the chief City of this Earldom. 3 S. *Beat*, 4 S. *Brogou*, 5 *Monregeau*, or *Mons Regius*, 6 *Silliers*, &c.

Of the Eſtate of this Earldom I have little to ſay, but that it was united to the houſe of *Foix*, by the marriage of *Eleanor*, the Daughter of an Earl hereof, to *Gaſton* the ſecond of that name, and the eleventh Earl of this Houſe. Given afterwards notwithſtanding to a *Spaniard* called *Rodrigo de Villandrada*, by *Charles* the ſeventh. But in the end reſtored again to the houſe of *Foix*, by the proweſs and great ſervices of *Gaſton* the fourth, who cauſed his Uncle *Matthew*, the youngeſt Son of *Archembald* and *Iſabel* Earls of *Foix*, to be ſettled in it, according to the will and purpoſe of his Father *Archembald*, who had given it to him. But falling to the Crown again, it was conferred on *John* of *Leſcon*, a Baſtard of the Earl of *Armaignac*, who was Earl of *Comminges*, and one of the *Marſhals* of *France* in the time of King *Lewis* the eleventh. The Arms of theſe Earls were *Gules*, four Orelles in Saltier, *Argent*.

5 The Earldom of *ARMAIGNAC*, the greateſt of all theſe Eſtates conſidered ſeverally and apart, lieth on the North of *Comminges*, and ſo extendeth it ſelf to the banks of the River *Garond*. Principal Towns are, 1 *Aux*, upon the River *Gez*, anciently called *Auguſta Auſciorum*; the

the Metropolis or head City of the Province of *Novempopulonia*; by consequence an Archbishops See: The Revenues whereof are said to be the greatest of any Prelates in *France*, computed at no less than 40000 *l. per annum*. 2 *Lectoure*, a Bishop's See, called of old *Lestoracium*, in our modern *Latin Lectodurum*. A Town so well fortified, when in the power of the Earls of *Armaignac*, that it held out a siege of three months against the Forces of *France*; but since it came into the hands of the *French* Kings, so strengthned and embattelled according to the modern Art of Fortifications, that it is held the strongest Bulwark of the Kingdom on this side, and their surest Fortress against *Spain*. 3 *Lisle de Jourdain*, which hath the title of an Earldom, bought at the price of 38000 Crowns, of *John* Duke of *Bourbon*, by *John* the fourth Earl of *Armaignac*, *An.* 1421. 4 *Auvillar*, 5 *Auzan*. 6 *Chastelneau*. 7 *Malbourquer*. 8 *Nestes*, of which little memorable.

The Earls of *Armaignac* fetch their Original from the Kings of *Navarre*: *Sancho* the great, having subdued some Lands in *Gascoigne*, which he conferred on *Garsias* a younger son of his, with the title of Earl of *Armaignac*, *Anno* 1014. On which foundation it increased so fast, both in power and honour, that *Bernard* the fourth Earl hereof, came to be Constable of *France*. And so did *John* the fourth of that name, by the favour of King *Charles* the seventh: who also writ himself, *by the grace of God* Earl of *Armaignac*; according to the stile of Soveraign Princes. A man of so considerable power in these parts of *France*; that the marriage of a Daughter of his to our *Henry* the sixth, was thought the best means for establishing his Estate in *Guienne*. And I remember it was charged on the Duke of *Suffolk*, that by breaking off this alliance for that of *Anjou*, he had been the cause of the loss of the King's pieces in *France*. This greatness made him subject to the jealousie of King *Lewis* the eleventh, who worried him out of his Estate and his life together. *Charles*, Brother of this *John*, succeeded by the favour of King *Charles* the eighth. After whose death this fair Estate was seized on to the use of the Crown; till given again by *Francis* the first to *Charles* Duke of *Alanson*, (whose Grand-father had married with a Sister of the said Earl *John*) and to the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, the said Kings Sister: who, after the decease of the Duke of *Alanson*, brought it to *Henry* of *Albert*, and King of *Navarre*, her second Husband; returning so to the *Original* from whence first it came.

The Arms of these great Princes, were quarterly 1 *Argent*, a Lyon *Azure*; 2 *Gules*, a Leopard-Lyon *Or*, the 3, &c.

6 The Earldom of *ALBERT* is situate on the North-west of *Armaignac*, bordering upon *Guienne*. The chief Town whereof is 1 *Nerac*, seated on the River of *Baize*; the only place of strength and moment in all this Estate. 2 *Chastell-Jalone*, well seated to disturb the Trade betwixt *Bourdeaux* and *Gascoigne*, but not able to endure a siege; 3 *Mont de Marsan*, and 4 *Tartas*, both seated on the River *Ladour*: and all four formerly Towns of Caution for those of the *Reformed Religion*; of which this Country is so full, that the *Popish Religion* had hardly any footing in all this Territory. Which, though the smallest of the six, and of least Antiquity, had yet the fortune to incorporate all the rest into it. For *John*, the son of *Alan* Earl of *Albert*, by his marriage with *Katharine*, Daughter and sole Heir of *Gaston*, son of *Gaston* of *Foix*, and of *Leonora* Princes of *Navarre*, added to his Estate the Signeuries of *Bearn*, *Foix*, and *Begorre*. And *Henry* of *Albert* his son, by marrying the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of King *Francis* the first, united to it those of *Armaignac* and *Comminges*. By *Jean* the Daughter of this *Henry*, the whole Estate was brought to *Antony* of *Bourbon*, Duke of *Vendosme*, and Father to King *Henry* the fourth, becoming so united to the Crown of *France*, from which it was at first dismembred.

The Arms of these Earls, were Quarterly 1 *France*; 2 *Gules*, a Border ingrailed *Arg.* The third, &c.

7 As for the Country of *AGENOIS*, the last part of *Gascoigne*, it never had other hearts (after it left off to be *French*) than the Dukes of *Aquitain*. The principal Cities of it, 1 *Agen*, a rich, populous, and well-traded Town, seated on the *Garonne*, in a fruitful Country; A Bishops See, a Seneschalsie, and held to be the fairest in *Gascoigne*. 2 *Condon*, a Bishops See also, from which the parts adjoining are called *Condonnois*. 3 *Villeneusne*, 4 *Claerac*, 5 *Marmand*, 6 *Foy*, &c.

Thus having took a brief view of those several members which make up the great body of the Dukedom of *Aquitain*; let us next look on the Estate of the whole thus brought together: which in the declination of the *Roman* Empire, was given unto the *Goths*, before possessed of all *Gallia Narbonensis*, by *Valentinian* the third, as a reward for their service in driving the *Alani* out of *Spain*. Long the *Goths* had not held it, when they were outed of it by *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, continuing under his Successors, till *Ludovicus Pius* made it a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Pepin* his youngest Sons. But *Charles* and *Pepin*, the Son of this *Pepin*, being dispossessed by *Charles* the *Bald*; it was by him conferred on *Ranulph*, of the house of *Burgundy*, for his many good services against the *Normans*, *Anno* 844. Whose Successors take here in this order following.

The Dukes of *Aquitain*.

844	1	*Ranulph* of *Burgundy*, first Duke of *Aquitain*.
875	2	*William*, Earl of *Auvergne*, Nephew of *Ranulph*.
902	3	*Ebles*, Earl of *Poictou*, succeeded in *Aquitain* and *Auvergne*, by the Will and Testament of Duke *William*.
911	4	*Ebles* II. Son of *Ebles* the first.
935	5	*William* II. the Son of *Ebles* the second.
970	6	*William* III. Son of *William* the second.
1019	7	*Guy*, the Son of *William* the third.
1021	8	*William* IV. Son of *Guy*.
1086	9	*William* V. Son of *William* the fourth.
1156	10	*Lewis* the seventh of *France*, in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, sole Heir of *William* the fifth.
1152	11	*Henry*, Duke of *Normandy*, and Earl of *Anjou*, &c. in right of *Eleanor* his Wife, divorced from *Lewis* on pretence of some consanguinity after King of *England*.
1169	12	*Richard*, King of *England*, the Son of *Henry*.
1199	13	*John* King of *England*, the Brother of *Richard*, who forfeiting his Estates in *France*, on a judicial sentence pronounced against him for the (supposed) murder of his Nephew *Arthur* Duke of *Bretagne*; *Aquitain* and the rest of the *English* Provinces were seized on by the *French*, *Anno* 1202. But notwithstanding this *Arrest*, the *English* still continued their pretensions to it, till at the last it was agreed betwixt King *Lewis* the ninth of *France*, and *Henry* the third of *England*, *An.* 1259. that the *English* should rest satisfied with *Guienne*, the bounds whereof were to be the *Pyrenees* on the South, and the River of *Charente* on the North, comprehending therein also the Country of *Limosin*; and that on his investiture into this Estate, he should relinquish all his rights in *Normandy*, *Anjou*, *Tourein*, *Main*, &c. In consideration whereof, he should have 150000 Crowns in ready mony. On this accord, the Kings of *England* become Homagers

to

to the Crown of *France*, which ſometimes they omitted, ſometimes did it by Proxie, but never in perſon, till *Philip de Valois* required it of King *Edward* the third: and becauſe ſuch duties are not often perſonally done by Sovereign Princes, *Du Serres* ſhall deſcribe the formality of it. The place deſigned for this exploit was the Church of *Amiens*, "to which *Edward* came (ſaith he) with "ſuch a Train, as was intended rather to the honour of "himſelf than the *French* King. Royally attired he was, "with a long Robe of Crimſon Velvet, powdred with "*Leopards* of Gold; his Crown upon his head, his Sword "by his ſide, and golden Spurs upon his heels. *Philip*, at"tended by the chief Officers of the Realm, ſat upon his "Throne, apparelled in a long Robe of Purple Velvet, "powdered with *Flower de Lyces* of Gold; his Crown "upon his head, and the Scepter in his hand. Viſcount "*Melun*, the great *Chamberlain* of *France*, commanded "*Edward* to take off his Crown, Sword, and Spurs, and "to kneel down: which he did accordingly. Then ta"king both his hands, and joining them together, he ſaid "unto him; *You become a* Liege-man *to the King my Ma*"*ſter, who is here preſent, as Duke of* Guienne, *and Peer* "*of* France, *and promiſe to be faithful and loyal to him*; "*ſay, Yea: and* Edward *ſaid yea, and aroſe*. But the Hiſtorian notes withal, that *Philip* paid yearly for this *Pageant*; the young King never forgetting the indignity which was put upon him, till he had made *France* a field of blood. And here it is to be obſerved, that though the Kings of *England* by this new inveſtiture, were entituled Dukes of *Guienne* only, yet they had all the power and priviledges of Dukes of *Aquitain*, excepting the homage of the great Lords and Earls of *Gaſcoigne*, which formerly belonged unto them. Inſomuch as *Richard* the ſecond, though Duke of *Guienne* only in ſtyle and title, inveſted his Uncle *John* of *Gaunt* in that brave eſtate, under the ſtyle and title of Duke of *Aquitain*; ſummoned to Parliament by that name by the ſaid King *Richard*. From this Accord betwixt the Kings, the *Engliſh* had poſſeſſion of the Dukedom of *Guienne*, according to the order of their Succeſſions, from the fortieth of King *Henry* the third, *Anno* 1259, to the twenty-ninth of King *Henry* the ſixth, *An.* 1452 (the intercalation of *John* of *Gaunt* excepted only): when outed of all their old rights in *France*, rather by the good fortune, than by the valour of *Charles* the ſeventh; the *Engliſh* then, divided in Domeſtick Factions, and not at leiſure to look after the affairs of *France*. Nor do I find, that *Guienne* being thus recovered, was ever diſmembred from that Crown, but when King *Lewis* the eleventh aſſigned it over to his Brother the Duke of *Berry*, to take him off from joining with the Dukes of *Bretagne* and *Burgundy* in a new confederacy; who held it but two years, and died the laſt Duke of *Guienne*, *Anno* 1472.

The Arms of this Dukedom were *Gules*, a Leopard or Lyon *Or*, which joined to the two Lyons of *Normandy*, make the Arms of *England*.

16 LANGUEDOC.

LANGUEDOC is bounded with the *Pyrenæan* hills, the Land of *Rouſſillon*, and the *Mediterranean*, on the South; on the North, with *Foreſt*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*; on the Eaſt, with *Provence* and *Daulphine*; on the Weſt, with *Gaſcoigne*. Whereas the other *Frenchmen* in an affirmation ſay *Ouy*, theſe of this Country ſay *Oc*; and therefore *Ortelius* conjectures it was call'd *Langue d'oc*. But others think that it took denomination from the *Goths*, who reigning long in this Country, left behind them a ſmack of their Language; and therefore it was called *Languegotia*, and now *Euphoniæ gratia*, termed *Langedocia*, or *Langedoc*, that is to ſay, the Country which retaineth the *Gothick* Language. In reference to one or both of which Etymologies this Province is by *Paulus Æmilius* promiſcuouſly called *Gothicana* and *Ottilana*; and in relation to the reſt, the people hereof in one of *Calvin*'s Epiſtles, are given unto us by the name of *Populus Linguæ Ottilanæ*.

The Country on thoſe parts which lie next to *Auvergne*, is like the higher parts thereof, mountainous and not very fruitful; in all the reſt, as rich and pleaſant as the beſt Provinces in *France*; and having the advantages of Olives, Raiſins, Figs, Orenges, and other fruits not ordinary but here, and in the neigbouring *Province*; In that participating the Commodities both of *France* and *Spain*. The people have ſomewhat in them of the ancient *Goths*, and draw nearer to the temper of the *Spaniards*, than any other of the *French*; as being accounted very devout, great vaunters of themſelves, affecting bravery above their condition and eſtates; not caring how they pinch it on the working days, or at home in private; ſo they may flaunt it in the ſtreet, and be fine on *holy-days*; The humour alſo of the Women, and in them more pardonable.

Principal Rivers of this *Province*, are 1 *Aurance*, 2 *Lieran*, and 3 *Orbe*, emptying themſelves into the *Rhoſne*; and *Alby*, which disburdeneth it ſelf into the Ocean. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Niſmes* (in *Latin Lemauſius*) anciently a Colony of the *Romans*, now a Biſhops See; where there remain ſome marks of the *Roman* greatneſs, eſpecially the ruins of a ſpacious Palace built by the Emperor *Adrian*. 2 *Mont-pelier* (in *Latin Mons Peſſulanus*) ſituate on a high Mountain, as the name imports, ſome twelve miles diſtant from the Sea; an Univerſity for the ſtudy of *Phyſick*, and for that very happily ſeated, the Country round about affording great variety of *medicinal* Herbs. An Earldom of it ſelf in the former times, conveyed by *Mary* Daughter of *William* the laſt Lord hereof, to King *Peter* of *Aragon* her Husband; next, made a member of the Kingdom of *Majorca*; and finally by *James*, the laſt King of *Majorca*, ſold to King *Philip* of *Valois*. Of late one of the ſtrongeſt holds which thoſe of the *Reformed Religion* had in this Country: and memorable for the notable reſiſtance which it made againſt the whole forces of *Lewis* the 13. in the laſt *Civil* Wars about *Religion*. 3 *Aleth*, and 4 *Carcaſſonne*, both Biſhops Sees, both ſeated on the River *Aude*; the people of both ſpeaking a corrupt *French*, with an intermixture of ſome *Spaniſh*. Which intermixture of *Spaniſh* with that broken *French* they either have originally from the *Goths* of *Spain*, of whoſe Kingdom this was once a part: or from their long ſubjection to the Earls of *Barcelone*, to whom they were conveyed, with other fair Eſtates in this part of *France*, by the marriage of *Raymond Boreuger* the ſeventh Earl thereof, with *Almodia* the Daughter of ſome of the great Lords who then ruled in *Languedoc*, about the year 1040. And to theſe Towns as alſo unto thoſe of *Niſmes* and *Alby*, the Earls of *Barcelone*, and the Kings of *Aragon* (in their right) did pretend a Soveraignty (though they had loſt the poſſeſſion of them) as thoſe of *France* did to the Earldom of *Barcelone*: till mutual releaſes made on both ſides of each others claims, by *James* the firſt of *Aragon*, and the King S. *Lewis Anno* 1200, or thereabouts. 5 *Alby*, commodiouſly ſeated on the River ſo called, the *Civitas Albigenſium* of *Antoninus*, the chief of this part of *Languedoc*, called from hence *La Paix Albigeois*; remarkable in *Church-hiſtory* for thoſe great oppoſitions to the corrupti-

on

ons and errours of the Church of *Rome*, called the *Albigenſes*. 6. *Beziers*, upon the River *Orbe*, the *Betiræ* of *Ptolemy*, and *Civitas Beterraſium* of *Antoninus*; a *Roman* Colony of old, now a Biſhops See. 7. *Agde*, called *Agatha* by ancient Writers, remarkable for a Council held there in the year 450. and for a well-frequented Port, at the mouth of the River *Egbaud*. 8. *Narbon*, ſeated on the mouth of the River *Aude*, the ſeat of the *Phocenſes*, and the firſt *Roman* Colony (next after *Carthage*) out of *Italy*. In *Italy* it ſelf (to obſerve ſo much by the way) were no leſs than 150 Colonies; 57 in *Africk*, 29 in *Spain*, 26 in *France*, 4 in *England* only, in *Syria* 20, and in other Countries ſome, but very few in reſpect of the largeneſs of the Territories. Theſe *Colonies* were inſtituted partly to repreſs Rebellions in the Conquered Countries; partly to reſiſt a foreign Enemy, partly to reward the ancient Souldiers, partly to relieve the poorer ſort, and partly to purge and empty the City of the ſuperfluity and redundance of her people. Now if the queſtion be asked, whether a *Colony* or a *Fortreſs* be more behoveful, I anſwer with *Boterus* in his *Raggio de ſtato*, that a *Fortreſs* is more fit for ſudden uſe, and a *Colony* for continuance; the former are quickly erect, and perhaps as ſoon loſt; the other require ſome time of ſetling, and are after of a good ſufficiency to defend themſelves. As we ſee in our times, the *Spaniſh* Colonies of *Ceuta* and *Tangier* in *Africk*; and our own of *Calais* which was the laſt Town we loſt on the firm Land. This *Narbon* was in the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, the moſt populous and greateſt Town of all *France*: inſomuch, as from it all this part of *France* was called *Gallia Narbonenſis*. A Province, of which *Pliny* delivered us this cenſure: Narbonenſis Gallia *agrorum cultu, morum virorumq; dignatione, opum amplitudine, nulli Provinciarum poſtponenda; diciturq;* Italia *potius quàm Provincia*; that is to ſay, that for fruitfulneſs of the ſoil, and the civility of the people, it was inferior to no Province in the *Roman* Empire. But to return unto the Town, being anciently the *Metropolis* of this Province, it had withal the honour of being an Archbiſhops See, which it ſtill continueth: well fortified at the preſent as a Town of War, frontiering *Catalonia* and the Land of *Rouſſillon*. 9. *La Puy*, the See of a Biſhop, who in *Latine* is called *Podienſis*; the chief of that part of *Languedoc*, which is named *Velay*, the ancient Seat of the *Velauni*. 10. *Viviers*, on the River *Rhoſne*, (by *Pliny* named *Alba Helviorum*) from whence the Country adjoyning hath the name of *Vivarets*. 11. *Rhodes*, or *Rutena*, the principal City of the *Ruteni*, now a Biſhops See; from whence the Country round about hath the name of *Rouvergn*; though ſome account this *Rouvergn*, a diſtinct Province, and no part of *Languedoc*. 12. *Tholouſe*, ſeated on the *Garonne*, anciently the principal City of the *Tectoſages* and the *Toloſates*, placed by old Writers in this tract; now the chief of *Languedoc*, and one of the greateſt in all *France*. The Seat of an Archbiſhop and an Univerſity; ſo ancient, that ſome report it to be built when *Deborah* judged *Iſrael*. Here was a *Parliamentary* Court erected, for the adminiſtration of Juſtice in theſe parts, 1302. As for the Story of *Tholouſe*, it was obſerved, that certain Souldiers having ſtole ſacrilegiouſly ſome Gold out of the Temples of *Tholouſe*, (when it was ſackt by *Cepio* a *Roman* Conſul) came all to miſerable and unfortunate ends: hence grew that *Adage*, *Aurum habet Tholoſanum*, applied unto unhappy men.

But that which deſerves moſt note in the Hiſtory of it, are large and ſpacious fields about it, called by the Writers of theſe times by the name of *Campi Catalaunici*, extending in length 100, in breadth 70 *French* Leagues. In which fields, *An.* 435. was fought that terrible Battel between *Attila* King of the *Hunnes*, and *Ætius* the *Roman* Lieutenant in *France*; *Ætius* was ſtrengthned by the *Goths*, *Francks*, *Burgundians*, and *Germans*. *Attila's* Army conſiſted of *Hunnes*, *Eruli*, *Scythes*, *Sarmatians*, *Suevians*, to the number of 500000, of which 180000 that day loſt their lives: *Attila* himſelf being driven to that deſperate plunge, that making a Funeral pile of *Horſe Saddles*, he would have burned himſelf. But his Enemies weary of well-doing, or *Ætius* politickly fearing, that if *Attila* were quite deſtroyed, the *Goths*, *Francks*, and others of the *Barbarians* then confederate with him, would become too inſolent; gave him leave to retire home through *Italy*: which he haraſſed with Fire and Sword, murdering the People, and ruining the Towns, ſo that he was then, and long after, called *Flagellum Dei*. *Ætius*, notwithſtanding this good ſervice, was by *Valentinian* the Emperour of the *Weſt*, rewarded with the loſs of his head: By which act, the Emperor (as one truly told him) *had cut off his right hand with his left*. And indeed, ſo it happened. For not long after, he himſelf was by *Maximus* murdered, and the Empire of *Rome* irrecoverably deſtroyed. Now that theſe Fields lay hereabouts, and not about *Chalons* in the Province of *Champaigne* (as ſome learned and induſtrious men have been of opinion) I am aſſured by theſe three reaſons. Firſt, the improbability that *Ætius* having got the Victory, ſhould ſuffer ſuch a vaſt and numerous Army to paſs through the whole length of *France* from one end to the other, and having waſted all the Country, to break into *Italy*. And ſecondly, the teſtimony of *Jornandes* an ancient Writer, who telleth us, firſt, that before this fight, *Attila* had beſieged and diſtreſſed the City of *Orleans*; and therefore was not vanquiſhed in the fields of *Chalons*: and then, that immediately upon the Victory, *Toriſmund* the King of the *Goths*, (his Father *Theodorick* being ſlain) *in Campis Catalaunicis ubi & pugnaverat, Regia Majeſtate ſubvectus Tholoſam ingreditur*; being proclaimed King in thoſe very fields, entred with great ſtate and triumph into *Tholouſe*, the Regal City at that time of the *Gothiſh* Kingdom. Which plainly proves the places of Battel to be near this City: though poſſibly by the name *Campi Catalaunici* (the great length and breadth thereof conſidered) we are to underſtand the whole Country of *Languedoc*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country beſides the *Helvii*, the *Vellauni*, the *Tectoſages*, and *Albigenſes*, formerly remembred, were the *Agatenſes*, *Beterenſes*, *Gabales*, *Volcæ*, and the *Arecomici*; all which, together with ſome others of leſſer note, made the Province of *Narbonenſis Prima*, whereof the Metropolis was *Narbon*. In the falling of the *Roman* Empire aſſigned with the reſt of *Narbonenſis*, and ſome part of *Spain*, to *Atholfus* King of the *Goths*, whom *Honorius* by this gift and by beſtowing on him his Siſter *Placidia*, bought out of *Italy*. The *Goths* having got ſo good footing in *Gaul*, enlarged their bounds by taking in the moſt part of *Aquitain*, *Quercu*, and *Auvergne*: but forced to quit them to the *French*, who conquered that from them which they got from the *Romans*; and ſhut them up within the limits of their firſt Donation. After this they declined as faſt in *France*, as they thrived in *Spain*; loſing *Provence* to *Theodorick*, King of the *Oſtro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; whoſe Succeſſor *Amalaſunta*, fearing a War from *Greece*, reſigned her intereſt in *Provence* to *Theodobert* the *French* King of *Mets*. Nothing now left unto the *Goths* of their *Gallick* purchaſes, but this *Languedoc* only; and this

they held as long as they had any thing to do in *Europe*, but loſt it finally to the *Moors*, with all *Spain* it ſelf. Recovered from the *Moors* by *Charles Martel*, and added to the reſt of the *French* Empire; it was by *Charles* the Great given to one *Thurſin*, of the race of the ancient Kings, with the title of the Earl of *Tholouſe*, on condition that he would be *Chriſtened*. But long it continued not in his Race, nor in any other, not being ſetled in a way of Lineal Deſcent, till the time of *Raymond* the eighth Earl, Brother to another *Raymond* Earl of St. *Giles* (a Town of *Guyenne*) whoſe Grand-child *Hugh*, being an adventurer in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and wanting Money to provide himſelf for that Expedition, ſold his Eſtate herein to his Uncle *Raymond*, the Earl of St. *Giles* before mentioned. From this time forward we find theſe Earls to be as often called the Earls of St. *Giles*, as the Earls of *Tholouſe*; and by that name frequently remembred in the *Eaſtern Stories*; as for his great valour in the courſe of the *Holy Wars*, eſpecially at the taking of the City of *Tripoli*, given to him (after it became Chriſtian) with the title of Earl. This *Raymond*, worthily named the *Great*, Earl of *Tholouſe*, St. *Giles*, and *Tripoli*, had three Sons, all of them ſucceeding; of which the eldeſt was *Bertrand*, had a Baſe Son called *Ponce*, who ſucceeded him in the Earldom of *Tripoli*, the Father of *Raymond*, and Grand-father of another *Raymond*, both Earls of *Tripoli*, and both ſuſpected to be falſe to the Chriſtian Princes in the continuance of thoſe Wars. *Alphonſo* the third Son was alſo the Father of a *Raymond*, the Father of another *Raymond*, who proved a great Maintainer of the *Albigenſes*: and in purſuance of that cauſe murdered a Legate of the Pope ſent to Excommunicate him, and ſtrangled his own Brother *Baldwin*, becauſe he found him not inclinable to his opinions. For this cauſe Warred upon, and Vanquiſhed by *Simon de Monfort*, Father of *Simon de Monfort*, the great Earl of *Leiceſter*; and after many troubles and continual Wars, left his Eſtate and Quarrel to his Son named alſo *Raymond*, the laſt Earl of this Houſe; who proving alſo a ſtrong Patron of theſe *Albigenſes*, was condemned for a *Heretick*, curſed by the Pope, and perſecuted by the *French* Kings, *Philip* the Second, *Lewis* the Eighth, and St. *Lewis*. This laſt willing to make a peaceable compoſition, married his Brother *Alphonſo*, to *Jane* Daughter and Heir to Count *Raymond*, with this condition, That if it ſhould happen theſe two to die without iſſue, then *Languedoc* ſhould be incorporated to the Crown. *Raymond* agreed, the Marriage was ſolemnized, *An.* 1249. They both died without iſſue, 1270. and *Languedoc* returned to the Crown in the days of *Philip* the Third.

The Names and Succeſſion of theſe Earls, in regard they were *Peers* of *France*, great Princes, and for the moſt men part of action, take in order thus.

The Earls of *Tholouſe*.

An. Chr.		
779	1	*Thurſin* the firſt Earl of *Tholouſe*.
803	2	*William* made Earl by *Charlemagne*, Peer of *France* at the firſt foundation of that Order.
828	3	*Iſauret Thurſin*, Son of *Thurſin* the firſt Earl.
841	4	*Bertrand*, Son of *Iſauret Thurſin*.
894	5	*William* II. of ſome other Houſe.
919	6	*Ponce*, a great *Juſticiar*, but of unknown Race.
963	7	*Almaric*, of as obſcure Parentage as *Ponce*.
1003	8	*Raymond*, the Brother of *Raymond* Earl of St. *Giles*, advanced by *Robert* King of *France*.
1052	9	*William* III. Duke of *Aquitain*, ſucceeded in right of his Wife, the Daughter of *Raymond*.
1086	10	*Hugh Aymon*, Son of *William* the Third, ſold his Eſtate and Earldom to his Uncle *Raymond*.
1096	11	*Raymond* II. Earl of St. *Giles*, *Tholouſe*, and *Tripoli*; of great note in the War of the *Holy Land*.
	12	*Bertrand*, Son of *Raymond* the *Great*.
	13	*William* IV. Brother of *Bertrand*.
1101	14	*Alphonſo*, Brother of *William* the Fourth.
1146	15	*Raymond* III. Son of *Alphonſo*.
1185	16	*Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the Third, the great Patron of the *Albigenſes*.
1222	17	*Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the Fourth, vanquiſhed and compounded with, by King *Lewis* the Saint.
1249	18	*Alphonſo* II. Brother of St. *Lewis*, and Huſband of *Joan*, Daughter and Heir of the laſt *Raymond*: after whoſe death, and the deceaſe of *Joan* the Counteſs, *An.* 1270. this Earldom was united to the Crown of *France*; according to the Capitulations before mentioned.

The Arms of this Earldom were *Gules*, a Croſs *Pommelé*, of 12 points, *Or*.

17. PROVENCE.

PROVENCE is environed with *Languedoc* on the Weſt; *Daulphine* on the North; the *Mediterranean* on the South, and on the Eaſt with the *Alpes*, and the River *Varus*; which divide it from *Piemont*, the neareſt of the *Alpine* Province.

It took this name from the *Romans*, who being called in by the *Maſſilians*, to revenge a private wrong done them by the *Salii*, the next neighbouring People, wholly poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, calling it κατ' ἐξοχήν, The *Provence*. The Country being now divided between ſeveral Princes, we muſt neceſſarily premiſe ſo much of the ſtory of it, as ſerves to ſhew the time and grounds of that diviſion. In order whereunto we are firſt to know, that it long continued part of the *Roman* Empire, making up the whole Province of *Narbonenſis Secunda*, and part of *Alpes Maritimæ*. How it was given unto the *Viſigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and from them taken by the *Oſtrogoths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*; hath been ſhewn in *Languedoc*. Being reſigned unto the *French*, it became a part of the new Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. Made a diſtinct Eſtate in the perſon of *Hugh de Arles*, (who afterwards ſucceeded in the Kingdom alſo) by *Boſon* the firſt. And by this *Hugh de Arles* upon his reſignation of that Kingdom to *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*; given unto *William* his Son, with the ſtile and title of Earl of *Provence*: confirmed therein by the Emperour *Conrade* the Second, on whom the Rights of that Kingdom had been tranſferred; to be held of him, and his Succeſſors in the Empire. In his poſterity it continued, till conveyed to the Earls of *Barcelone*, by the Marriage of the Lady *Doulce* with Earl *Raymond Arnold*, *Anno* 1082. Carried, together with that Earldom, to the Crown of *Aragon*, and finally by *Beatrix* one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the Third, the laſt Earl of this Family, conveyed in Marriage to *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Lewis* the Ninth of *France*, *An.* 1262. whom *Urban* the Fourth, not long after crowned King of *Naples*. By *Joan* the

the first, the fourth from *Charles*, driven out of *Naples* by *Lewis* of *Hungaria*, and restored again by the power of Pope *Clement* the fifth; the City and Territory of *Avignon* (where the Pope resided at that time) is dismembred from the Earldom of *Provence*, and given in Fee for ever to the Church of *Rome*: partly to recompense that favour, and partly for discharge of some old Arrears of Rent or Tribute, pretended to be due to the See of *Rome*, for the Realm of *Naples*. A City which had formerly been under the Protection, and by that title in the actual possession of many of the Popes of *Rome*; ever since the conviction of *Raymond* Earl of *Tholouse*, to whom it formerly belonged, but held by them in Fee of the Earls of *Provence*. Not long after this Donation, the said *Joan* adopted for her Heir and Successor, *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, descended lineally from *Charles* Earl of *Anjou*, and King of *Naples*: possessed by this Adoption of the Earldom of *Provence*, and a title to the Realm of *Naples*. *Rene*, the Grandchild of this *Lewis*, having no issue male surviving, made *Lewis* of *Chalons*, the Prince of *Orange*, (another Signeury in this Country:) and gave him therewithal full power to make Laws, coyn Money, and pardon all Crimes; to write himself *Prince of Orange by the grace of God*, with all the other Prerogatives of an absolute Prince. This was in the year 1415. So that now the Country stands divided betwixt the *French* King, the Pope, and the Prince of *Orange*; each of them absolute and independent in his own Estate: as long at least as the *French* King is pleased to give way unto it.

The whole is much of the same nature with *Languedoc*, before described, but in one part thereof, that namely between *Marseilles* and *Arles*, different from all the rest of *France*. By the *French* commonly called *La Croix*: by the elder Writers *Campi lapidei*, because all in a manner overspread with scattered stones; Supposed by *Mela* to be the place in which *Hercules* encountred *Albion* and *Bergeon* the Sons of *Neptune*: whom when he could not otherwise vanquish, he was by *Jupiter* his Father aided with a shower of stones; of which these were feigned to be the Remainders. A Country which takes up a good space of ground, and hath a few poor Towns in it, but not much inhabited.

In that part of it which belongs to the King, the Towns of special note are, 1 *Aix*, seated on the *Rhosne*, the Metropolis of *Narbonensis secunda*, and at that time called *Aquæ Sextiæ*, from *Sextius* the Founder of it (by whom the *Salii* were subdued in the second year of that War) and the hot Baths here. Now, and of long time, an Archbishops See, and the chief City of this Province: and for that reason made the Seat of a Court of Parliament for this Country, *An.* 1501. Most memorable in old story for the great discomfiture of the *Cimbri* by *C. Marius*; Who not willing to venture on the Enemy united (for they were no fewer than 300000 fighting men, and lately fleshed in the overthrow of *Manlius* and *Sepio*, (two *Romans* Consuls;) permitted them quietly to pass by his Camp: The *Barbarians* who imputed it to fear or cowardise, scornfully asking his Soldiers, What service they would command them to *Rome*. But when, for their easier passage over the *Alpes*, they had divided themselves into three Companies; *Marius* severally setting on them all, put them all to the sword. *Ea victoria visus meruisse, ne ejus nati Rempub. pœniteret*, By this Victory, and this only, giving cause to the *Romans* (as *Velleius* hath it) not to be sorry for his birth. 2 *Arles*, in *Latin*, *Arelatum*, by *Ausonius* called the *Rome* of *France*, and in those times so highly prized, that *Constantinus Flavius* being chosen Emperour by the *British* Legions, in the declining times of the Western Empire, intended to have made it the Imperial Seat. And not less memorable in Church-story for a Council here held in the time of *Constantine* the Great, *Anno* 313. in which was present *Restitutus* the Bishop of *London*, and certain other Bishops of the *British* Church. It was anciently a *Roman* Colony, and now the See of an Archbishop; situate on the River *Rhosne*, in a low and marshy situation: which natural strength, seconded by the new works of King *Henry* the Fourth, have made it one of the best Bulwarks of *France*, on that side of the Kingdom. Selected for the Seat Royal of the *French* Kings of *Burgundy*, who from hence were called Kings of *Arles*; as the Kings of *Austrasia* (or *East-France*) were called Kings of *Metz*, because they had made choice of that City for the Regal Seat. Between this City and the Sea, but on the other side of the River, runneth a deep Chanel, cut with infinite charge and industry by *C. Marius*, for conveyance of Victuals into his Camp, in his War against the *Cimbri* before named; by *Ptolemy* called *Fossæ Marianæ*, by the *French*, *Camargue*, a corrupt word made of *Caius Marius*: the Country about which, called allo by the same name for the space of 24 miles, is of excellent pasturage, and breedeth great abundance of Horses; the chief Town of which is called 3 St. *Gilis*. 4 *Marseilles*, a known Port on the *Mediterranean*, first built by the *Phocenses*, a *Greek* Nation of *Asia Minor*, who being banished their Country, came and planted here, about the reign of *Tarquinius Superbus*, the last King of *Rome*. It was first only a Confederate City of the *Romans*, for whose sake, being molested by the *Salii*, and others of the neighbouring Nations, the *Roman* Legions first entred *Gaul*: afterwards, siding with *Pompey* in the *Civil* Wars, or at least desirous to stand neutral, it was forced by *Cæsar*, and made a Colony. In the prosperity hereof it drove a great Trade on the *Mediterranean*, and was the Mother of many fair and flourishing Colonies, *Emporiæ*, *Forum Julium*, *Nicæa*, *Olbia*, dispersed in the adjoyning shores of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. 5 *Glandeves*, anciently called *Glanum*, a Bishops See, seated upon the *Maritime Alpes*. 6 *Taulon*, by *Ptolemy* called *Tauroentium*, and by some *Tholone*, beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, well stored with Oyl, great quantity of Salt brought hither from the Isle of *Eres*, about three Leagues off; and a kind of Almonds called *Provence Almonds*; made by this means one of the most frequented Ports of the *Mediterranean*. 7 *Antibi* (in *Latine Antipolis*) a Sea-coast Town near the River *Varo*, one of the farthest of this Country towards *Italy*. 8 *Feriols* (the *Forum Julium* of the Ancients) on the *Mediterranean*, founded by the *Massilians*, as before was said, after a Colony of the *Romans*. 9 *La Grace*, a Bishops See, more within the Continent. 10 *Cisteron*, on the Borders of *Daulphine*. 11 *Brignols*. 12 *Merindol*, and *Chabriers*, two little Towns amongst the Mountains, towards *Daulphine*; not otherwise of note but for the horrid Massacre of the *Protestants*, before described.

II. The *Principality* of *Orange* lieth on the North-West of this Province, watered with the Rivers of 1 *Durance*, 2 *Seile*, 3 *Meine*, and 4 *Ecque*; all helping to augment the *Rhosne*. The chief places of it are, 1 *Orange*, seated on the *Meine*, an Episcopal See; famous for many rare and wonderful Antiquities, demonstrating the *Roman* Greatness, of whom once a Colony; but of most note in Church-History for a Council held there against the *Semi-Pelagians*, in the year 444. called *Arausicanum*; the *Latine* name of this City became anciently *Arausia*, in some Writers *Auriacus*, and of late *Aurangia*.

rangia, 2. *Estrang*, 3. *Bois de St. Pol*; more properly, St. *Paul de Vences*, being the *Civitas Vencienſium* of *Antoninus*; but not otherwiſe memorable.

As for the Princes hereof, they were anciently of the Noble Family of the *Bauſſii*, but Homagers and Tributaries to the Earls of *Provence*. By *Mary* Daughter and Heir of *Reynold* the laſt of this Family, it was conveyed in marriage to *John de Chalons*, one of the moſt Noble Houſes of *Burgundy*, from the Earls whereof they were extracted. *Lewis*, the Son of this *John*, obtained of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and Earl of *Provence*, the Soveraignty hereof, as before was ſaid. By *Claude*, the Heir-general of this Houſe, beſtowed in marriage by King *Francis* the firſt, on Count *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, Ambaſſador from *Maximilian* the Emperour of *Germany*, *Anno* 1514, it was tranſlated to that Family, where it ſtill remaineth.

The Princes of *Orange*.

1475 1 *Lewis* of *Chalons*, firſt abſolute Prince of *Orange*.

2 *William de Chalons*, who ſubmitted his Eſtate to the Parliament of *Daulphine*, to ſatisfie King *Lewis* the 11. by whom reſtored again to his former Soveraignty.

3 *John de Chalons*, a bitter Enemy to King *Lewis*, in defence of the Rights of *Mary*, Ducheſs of *Burgundy*.

1500 4 *Philibert de Chalons*, ſlain at the Siege of *Florence*, where he commanded the Forces of *Charles* the 5th: *Claude* his only Siſter, and next Heir of that Houſe, being married to *Henry* Earl of *Naſſaw*, *Anno* 1515.

1536 5 *Rene* of *Naſſaw*, Son of *Henry* and *Claude*, adopted by *Philibert* his Uncle, whom he ſucceeded in this Eſtate: ſlain at the Siege of *Landrecie* in the *Netherlands*.

1544 6 *William* of *Naſſaw*, Couſin-german of *Rene*, by whoſe laſt Teſtament left Heir unto his Eſtates: the great Patron and Aſſertor of the *Belgick Liberties*, againſt the *Spaniard*: ſlain by a Partiſan of *Spain*, called *Balthazar*, at *Delfe* in *Holland*, *An.* 1584.

1584 7 *Philip* of *Naſſaw*, kept as an Hoſtage all his life by the King of *Spain*.

8 *Maurice* of *Naſſaw*, Brother of *Philip*, Commander of the Forces of the *United Provinces*.

1625 9 *Henry* of *Naſſaw*, II. Succeſſor to his Brother *Maurice*, in his Offices, Eſtates, and Honours.

1648 10 *William* of *Naſſaw* II. the Son and Succeſſor of *Henry*, married the Princeſs *Mary*, eldeſt Daughter of *Charles* King of *Great Britain*, &c. on *May-day*, 1641.

The Revenues of this Principality are about 30000 Crowns. The Arms are Quarterly *Gules*, a Bend *Or*, 2. *Or*, a Hunters Horn *Azure*, ſtringed *Gules*; the third as, &c. Over all, an Eſcotcheon of Pretence Chequie, *Or* and *Azure*. More briefly thus; Quarterly *Chalons* and *Aurange*, under an Eſcotcheon of *Geneva*.

Southward of *Aurange*, lieth the Country of *VENASCINE*, as the *French* call it; *Comitatus Venieſſinus*, in the *Latin*: ſo called from *Avenio*, (now *Avignon*) the chief City of it. Anciently it had Lords of its own, called Earls of *Venice*, (*Veniſſa Comites* in the *Latin*) united to the Houſe of *Savoy*, by the marriage of *Laurencia*, a Daughter hereof, with Earl *Humbert* the Second, *Anno* 1080, or thereabouts. But this Family of the firſt Lords coming to an end, it fell (but by what Right, I find not) to the Earls of *Tholouſe*, but held by them as *Homagers*, (for this Eſtate) of the Earls of *Provence*: on the conviction of Earl *Raymond*, condemned for Hereſie, brought under the protection and patronage of the Popes of *Rome*; the more abſolute Soveraignty hereof, and of the City *Avignon*, being ſetled on them by Queen *Joan*, as before is ſaid. The principal Cities of this tract, are, 1. *Avignon*, the *Avenio* of *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and *Mela*; a very fair and flouriſhing City, pleaſantly ſeated on both ſides of the River of *Rhoſne*: famous for being the reſidence of the Popes for ſeventy years; which times the Romans remember till this day, by the name of the *Babylonian Captivity*: adminiſtring, ever ſince, an Oath unto the Pope at his Coronation, not to remove his Seat to *Avignon*. The firſt Pope that removed hither, was *Clement* the 5. *An.* 1300; when as yet the Popes had no more right in it, than that of Patronage and Protection; and returned again to *Rome*, by *Gregory* the 11. *An.* 1377. In this City are ſaid to be 7 Palaces, 7 Pariſh-Churches, 7 Monaſteries, 7 Nunneries, 7 Inns, and 7 Gates. So that if there be any myſtery in the number of ſeven, or any credit to be given to ſuch *Pythagorean* divinity; the Arch-biſhop of this City may as well be entituled Antichriſt, as the Pope of *Rome*; if there be nothing but the myſtery of this number to affix it to him. It was made an Univerſity, at the time of the Popes firſt ſetling here; and ſo ſtill continueth: *Alciat* the great *Emblematiſt*, being here Profeſſor. 2. *Carpentras*, by *Ptalomy* called *Carpentoracte*, a Biſhops-See: as is alſo, 3. *Cavillon*, (of old *Caballio*) once a Roman Colony on the River *Durance*: and 4. *Taraſcon*, on the *Rhoſne*, oppoſite to *Beaucaire* in *Languedoc*; for the Popes dwelling here ſo long, could not be otherwiſe attended than by mitred Prelates. 5. *Vaſon*, *Civitas Vaſionenſium*, of *Antoninus*.

The *Revenues* of the Pope here, are not very great, and thoſe expended all in keeping of Ports and Garriſons, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Proteſtants* of *Orange*. So that it is ſuppoſed, that it is rather a charge, than a profit to him: which maketh the people like very well to live under his Government, as bringing more money to them, than he gathereth from them.

The Arms hereof, when under the old Earls of *Venice*, were *Gules*, two Keys in Saltire *Or*, ſtringed *Azure*. Which ſeems to have in it ſome preſage, (the Popes pretending to the Keys, as we know they do) that it ſhould one day become ſubject to the See of *Rome*.

The old Inhabitants of the whole Country were, as appeareth, the *Salii*, *Maſſilienſes*, *Vaſionenſes*, and *Vencienſes*, before mentioned; beſides the *Decuates* about *Antibe*, the *Senitii*, and *Sigeſtorii*, about *Ciſteron*; all conquered by the Romans in their firſt War in *Gaul*, called in to aid thoſe of *Marſeilles* againſt the *Salii*. The Fortune of it ſince, hath been ſhewn before. Nothing remains now but the Catalogue of

The Earls of *Provence*.

1 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius*, King of *Auſtraſia*, and *Waldrada* his Concubine; made the firſt Earl of *Provence*, by *Boſon* the firſt, King of *Burgundy*. He was after King of *Burgundy* and *Italy* alſo.

2 *William de Arles*, the Son of *Hugh*.

3 *William* II. ſirnamed the younger, Son of *William*.

4 *Gilbert* Earl of *Provence*, the Father of the Lady *Doulce*.

1082

1082 5 *Raymond Arnold*, Earl of *Barcelone*, the Husband of the Lady *Doulce*, of *Provence*.

1131 6 *Berengar Raymond*, the second Son of *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*; his eldest Brother *Raymond* succeeding in *Barcelone*.

7 *Raymond* II. Son of *Berengar Raymond*.

1173 8 *Alfonso* King of *Aragon*, and Earl of *Barcelone*; the Son and Heir of *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, eldest Son unto *Raymond Arnold*, and the Lady *Doulce*.

1196 9 *Alfonso* II. second Son of *Alfonso* the first, succeeded in the Earldom of *Provence*, his eldest Brother *Pedro* inheriting the Realm of *Aragon*, and the Earldom of *Barcelone*.

10 *Raymond* III. Son of *Alfonso*, the last Earl of *Provence* of this Line.

1261 11 *Charles* of *Valois*, Earl of *Anjou*; and in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence*. He was also King of *Naples*, *Sicil*, &c.

1282 12 *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1310 13 *Robert* King of *Naples*, and Earl of *Provence*.

1342 14 *Joan*, Queen of *Naples*, and Countess of *Provence*.

1371 15 *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, the adopted Son of Queen *Joan*; Earl of *Provence*, and titulary King of *Naples*, &c. (Of whose descent from *Charles de Valois*, Earl of *Anjou* and *Provence*, we have spoke elsewhere.)

1385 16 *Lewis* II. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Provence*, &c.

1416 17 *Lewis* III. Duke of *Anjou*, Earl of *Province*, &c.

1430 18 *René*, Brother of *Lewis* Duke of *Anjou*, &c.

1480 19 *Charles* Earl of *Main*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Main*, the Brother of *René*, succeeded in all the Estates and Titles of his Uncle; and at his death gave *Provence* to King *Lewis* the 11th, his Cousin-german, as being the Son of *Charles* the 7th, and *Mary* Daughter of *Lewis* the second, Duke of *Anjou*, Sister of *Lewis* the third, and *René*, the preceding Dukes, and of *Charles* Father of this *Charles*, the last Earl of *Provence*. Immediately on whose death, *Decemb.* 19. *An.* 1481. the King sent a Commission to *Palamede de Forban*, Lord of *Sollier*, Chamberlain of Earl *Charles*, to take possession of the Country in his name, and command therein as Lieutenant-General. Since which time, *Provence* never was dismembred from the Crown of *France*, so much as in the way of *Apennage*, or any Honorary Title amongst the Kings Children.

What the Revenues of it were to the former Earls, I am not able to say, having no good Authority to proceed upon. Only I find, that besides the Lands belonging to the Earls hereof, and other customary and casual Taxes; there was a Tax called, *The Royal Impost*, being fifteen *Florens* levied upon every fire: which reckoning 3500 fires, (for such the estimate of them was) amounted yearly unto 56000 *Florens*. Now it is subject to the rigor and uncertainty of the Kings Taxations, as well as all the rest of *France*. And so much of those Provinces which properly made up the Kingdoms of the *French* and *Goths*, let us next look on those which at the same time were subdued by the *Burgundians*; whose History, Kingdom, and Estate are to be considered, before we come to the description of their several Provinces.

The Kingdom of BURGUNDY.

THE Kingdom of the *BURGUNDIANS* at their first setlement in *Gaul*, contained all those Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, then called the *Alpes Graiæ*, and *Pœninæ*, *Maxima Sequanorum*, *Lugdunensis Prima*, and *Viennensis*; now passing under the names of the *Dukedom* and *County* of *Burgundy*, *Switzerland*, the *Grisons*, *Wallisland*, *Savoy*, *La Bresse*, *Dauphine*, *Lionois*, *Nivernois*, and some part of the Dukedom of *Bourbon*. A fair and large quantity of ground, able at once to tempt and satisfie an ambitious Nation. But the *Burgundians* came not into *Gaul* of their own accord, though of their own accord they drew somewhat near it. In their Original, they were a people bordering near the *Vandals*, if not a Tribe or Sept of them: and dwelling in those parts in which are now the Dukedoms of *Meclenburg*, and *Pomerania*. At the time that *Drusus* and *Tiberius* warred in *Germany*, they were utterly barbarous, living in Tents only here and there clapped up. Which being in their own Language called *Burgs*, gave them the name of *Burgundians* amongst the *Romans*: in the same sense as the wild *Arabs* had the name of *Scenitæ*, amongst the *Greeks*, from the like kind of living. In the year 416, at the instigation of the *Vandals*, they left their own seats, and planted themselves in the Towns and Villages belonging now to the Marquesses of *Baden*, and Electors of *Rhene*. About which time they received the Christian Faith, being then miserably oppressed by the *Hunnes*, breaking upon them out of *Pannonia*. Not finding any other way to free themselves of that Enemy, they betook themselves to the God of the Christians, and were universally baptized. After which, falling on the *Hunnes*, they slew no less than 30000 of them in one Battel, from that time forwards, never troubled with that barbarous Nation. Christians then they were, and Orthodox in their profession, before their coming into *Gaul*: and for that reason called in by *Stilico* to oppose the *French*, then threatning an invasion of the *Roman* Provinces. Upon this invitation they passed over the River with an Army of 80000 fighting men, possessing themselves of all which lay from the farthest shore of the *Loyre*, to the *Alpes* of *Italy*; and from the Mountain *Vauge*, to the *Mediterranean*; *Provence* only excepted, about that same time planted by the *Goths*. Their Government was under Kings: Many according to their Tribes, when they lived in *Germany*: *Monarchical*, when setled in the Realm of *France*, where they had these five

Kings of the *Burgundians*.

A.Ch.

408 1 *Tabica*, who first brought the *Burgundians* into *Gaul*.

2 *Gundioch*.

3 *Gundebault*, who harrassed *Italy*, then in possession of the *Goths*, with fire and sword; the Uncle of *Clotilda*, Wife to *Clouis* the fifth King of the *French*, by her perswasion made inclinable to the Christian Faith.

4 *Sigismund*.

5 *Gundomar*, the Son of *Sigismund*, first set upon by *Clodomire*, the Son of *Clouis* King of *Orleans*, whom he slew in Battel near *Austun*; but afterward outed of his Kingdom by *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, Kings of *Paris* and *Soissons*, in revenge of the death of their Brother.

Clo-

Clodomire. And ſo the Kingdom of the *Burgundians* fell unto the *French*, after it had continued about 120 years: *Guntram* the Son of *Clotaire*, and *Clouis*, one of the Sons of *Dagobert* the firſt; being, in their times, honoured with the Titles of Kings of *Burgundy*.

But the firſt time that the Kingdom of *Burgundy* ſetled amongſt the *French*, in the way of ſucceſſion, was in the partage of that vaſt Empire of *Charlemagne*, amongſt the children and poſterity of *Ludovicus Pius*: in conſtituting of which Kingdom, *Provence* was added to the reckoning, to make this anſwerable to the other parts of that broken Monarchy. The firſt of theſe *French* Kings, was *Charles*, the youngeſt Son of *Lotharius* Emperor, and King of *Italy*, eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Lewis* the *Godly*. The Succeſſion in this order following.

The *French* Kings of *Burgundy*.

A.Ch.

855 1 *Charles*, youngeſt Son of the Emperor *Lotharius*, died without iſſue.

858 2 *Lotharius*, the ſecond King of *Mets*, and *Lewis* the ſecond Emperor, Brethren of *Charles*, ſucceeded in *Burgundy*; the Mountain *Jour* dividing and bounding their Eſtates.

876 3 *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France*, and Emperor, Uncle to the three former Kings, all dying without iſſue, ſucceeded in the whole Eſtate; which he again divided into three Governments or Members: that is to ſay, *Burgundy* on this ſide of the *Soaſne*, containing the now Dukedom of *Burgundy*, with the Earldoms of *Lions* and *Maſcon*. 2. *Burgundy*, beyond the *Jour*, comprehending the Provinces of *Savoy*, *Switzerland*, *Walliſland*, and the Eſtates of the *Griſons*: and 3ly, *Burgundy*, on the other ſide of the *Soaſne*, lying betwixt the other two, containing the now Counties of *Burgundy*, *Provence*, *La Breſſe*, and *Daulphine*. This laſt conferred with the Title of Earl, on *Boſon* Earl of *Ardenne*, by *Charles* the *Bald*, who had married his Siſter *Judith*; and not long after, in the perſon of the ſaid Earl *Boſon*, raiſed unto a Kingdom by *Charles* the *Groſs*, by the name of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. The Kings theſe that follow.

4 *Boſon*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Husband of *Hermingrade*, the Daughter of *Lewis* the ſecond, Emperor and King of *Burgundy*, was firſt by *Charles* the *Bald*, made Earl of *Burgundy*, beyond the *Soaſne*; and afterwards by *Charles* the *Groſs*, created the firſt King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, to be held by him and his Succeſſors, of the *German Emperours*.

5. *Lewis* II. Son of *Boſon*, and *Hermingrade*, choſen King of *Italy*, but outed by the Faction of *Berengarius*.

917 6 *Hugh de Arles*, ſuppoſed to be the Son of *Lotharius* the ſecond, by *Waldrada* his Concubine; ſucceeded by the gift of *Lewis*, and was choſen by his Faction there, King of *Italy* alſo. For the quiet enjoying of which Kingdom, he reſigned this to *Rodolph*, Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, elected by another Faction, to that broken Title.

926 7 *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, ſucceeded on the reſignation of *Hugh de Arles*; his Brother *Boſon* being ſetled beyond the *Jour*.

937 8 *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph*, a Prince of ſo ſhort a reign, or of ſo little note, that he is by ſome left out of the Catalogue of theſe Kings.

9 *Boſon* II. the Brother of *Rodolph* the firſt; by whom the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Jour*, was united to the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*.

965 10 *Conrade* Son to *Boſon* the ſecond.

990 11 *Rodolph* III. Son to *Conrade*; who having no iſſue of his body, gave his Eſtate to *Conrade* the ſecond, Emperor of *Germany*, and his Son *Henry*, ſirnamed the *Black*, whom he had by *Gileſa*, the Siſter of this *Rodolph*: by whom it was united to the *German* Empire, An. 1032. In the diſtractions whereof, following not long after his deceaſe, the Provincial *Earls* or *Governours* for the *German Emperors*, made themſelves Maſters and Proprietaries of their ſeveral Provinces, (the Dukedom of *Burgundy* excepted, ſetled long before) out of which roſe the great Eſtates of the Duke of *Savoy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* and *Provence*, the *Daulphins* of *Viennois*, and Lords of *Breſſe*, together with the Commonwealths of the *Switzers* and *Griſons*: every poor Bird ſnatching alſo ſome Feather or other of this dying Eagle. Yet notwithſtanding the diſmembring and cantoning of this fair Eſtate, the ſucceeding Emperors of *Germany* claimed not only a ſuper-intendence over, but a diſpoſal of all the Countries that ever were under the command of the King of *Burgundy*: inſomuch that the Emperour, *Henry* the ſixth, receiving no ſmall part of the money which our *Richard* the firſt paid to the Duke of *Auſtria*, for his ranſom, gave unto the ſaid *Richard* the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, the Soveraignty of *Provence*, *Viennois*, *Marſeilles*, *Narbon*, *Arles*, and *Lions*, together with the Homages of the King of *Aragon*, and of the Earl of *Digon* and St. *Giles*. A Royal gift, if either the Emperor had any dominion over thoſe Countries, or if they would have received any Prince or Officer of his appointing.

The Arms of this Kingdom under the old *Burgundian* Kings, are ſaid to have been *Azure*, a Cat *Arg.* armed *Gules*. Which being ſaid, we will proceed to the deſcription of thoſe Provinces of this broken Kingdom, which lye within the bounds of *France*; the reſt, which lye beyond the *Jour*, having been ſpoken of already in the *Alpine* Countries, which made up the whole Continennt of the *Transjouran Burgundy*.

18. DAVLPHINE.

NOrth of the Country of *Provence*, where we left before, lyeth that of *DAULPHINE*; having on the Eaſt, *Savoy*, and the *Maritime Alpes*; on the Weſt, *Lionois*, and ſome part of *Languedoc*, from which divided by the *Rhoſne*; and on the North *La Breſſe*, and thoſe parts of *Savoy* which lye towards *Piemont*, ſo called, as ſome report, from *Dauphine*, Wife of *Guigne* the ſecond; in like manner as *Flanders* is affirmed moſt probably to have took that name from *Flandrina*, Wife of *Liderick* the ſecond, then one of the laſt of thoſe Princes who governed in that Country by the name of *Forreſters*.

It is divided into the *Higher* and the *Lower*; the one mountainous, ſtony, and unfruitful, of the ſame nature with the *Alpes*, with whoſe branches it is over-run: the other tolerably fruitful, but not to be compared with the reſt of *France*. The people of the Higher, and more mountainous parts, are generally groſs and rude; not capable of Learning, but well enough enclined to Arms and Traffick; and have a cuſtom, that on the coming on of Winter,

Winter, they ſend abroad all thoſe which are fit for travel, whom they call *Bics*, or *Biſonards*) who ſeldom return back till *Eaſter*: none ſtaying at home but old men, children, and impotent perſons, which cannot go abroad to get their livings. Thoſe in the Lower are more civil, but not more given to labour, than the Mountainers are; nor very covetous of gain, ſo they may live at eaſe, without want or penury. In both parts generally good Souldiers, and well affected to their Prince.

The *Lower Daulphine*, together with that part of *Provence* which lies next to the *Rhoſne*, and the adjoining parts of *Savoy*, made up the Province called *Viennenſis*, from *Vienna* the Metropolis of it, ſituate on the *Rhoſne*, honoured with the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*; ſtill the chief City of this Country, an Arch-biſhops See, and a Siege *Præſidial*. From hence the tract about it is called *Viennois*, and was the Title of the firſt Proprietaries of this Country, entituled, *Daulphins of Viennois*. To this Town, *Archelaus*, the Son of *Herod*, was baniſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*. 2. *Valence*, the chief City heretofore of the *Valentini*, then a Roman Colony; now a Biſhops See, and an Univerſity for the Civil Laws: a rich, ſtrong, and well traded Town, ſeated on the *Rhoſne*. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Valentinois*; and hath given Honorary Title to two perſons of more Fame, than Honour: the firſt of which was *Cæſar Borgia*, the Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, who caſting off his Cardinals Cap, was made Duke of *Valentinois*, by *Charles* the eighth: the other, Madam *Diana*, the great Minion and Paramour of *Henry* the ſecond, under whom ſhe much ſwayed the affairs of *France*, and honoured with the Title of Dutcheſs of it. 3. *Grenoble*, (in *Latin*, *Gratianopolis*) the chief Seat heretofore of the *Accuſiani*; the moſt populous and beſt built of all this Province; and much reſorted to by the Lords and Nobles, by reaſon of the Court of Parliament here erected, *An.* 1453. About this, lieth the Country called 3. *Griſinaudan*. 4. *Ternay*. 5. *Roſſillon*. 6. *La Roche*. 7. *Montelimar*, all along the *Rhoſne*. 8. *Romons*, upon the confluence of the *Rhoſne*, and the *Iſere*. 9. *Cremien*. 10. St. *Marceline*. 11. S. *Andre*. 12. *Beaurepaire*, more within the Country.

The *Higher Dauphine*, together with thoſe parts of *Provence* which lye next to *Italy*, made up the Province of the *Alpes Maritimæ*; the Metropolis whereof was, 1. *Ebrodunum*, now called *Ambrun*, an Arch-biſhops See, and Siege *Præſidial*, ſeated on an high Rock, in the midſt of a pleaſant Valley, ſurrounded with Mountains, under which runs the River *Durance*. The Hilly Country hereabouts is the higheſt of *France*. 2. *Brianſon*, near the head of the River *Durance*, called *Brigantio* by *Antoninus*. 3. *Geppe*, now a Biſhops See, formerly the chief City of the *Apencenſes*; the track of whom is ſtill found in the name of the adjoining Territory, called *Le Pais Gapencois*: memorable for a Synod or Aſſembly of the *French Proteſtants* here holden, *An.* 1603, in which it was determined, and as for an Article of Faith, *That the Pope was Antichriſt*, and where the Miniſters then aſſembled, gave audience to the Ambaſſadors of Forreign States, as to a Commonwealth diſtinct from the Realm of *France*: audaciouſly importuning their King by their ſeveral Agents, for liberty of going (whenſoever they liſted) or ſending whenſoever they pleaſed, unto the Councils and Aſſemblies of all Forreign Nations, which profeſſed the ſame Religion with them: the Preamble to thoſe Encroachments on the Royal Authority, which after proved the ruine of their Power and Party. 4. *Tricaſſin*, ſo called of the *Tricaſſini*, the old inhabitants of theſe parts. 5. *Die*, the *Dia Vocontiorum* of *Antoninus*; a Biſhops See, ſituate on the River *Droſne*: from whence comes thoſe ſmall, but good Stomack-Wines, which we call *Vin Die*. Others affirm, (and perhaps more knowingly) that this Wine is of the growth of *Champagne*, moſt plentifully growing in the Fields of a Town called *Hey*; from whence it hath the name of *Vin de Hey*; and ſo contractedly, *Vin Day*. 6. *Chorges*, 7. *Mombrum*, 8. *Eſſiles*; of which, little memorable.

The chief Inhabitants hereof, in the time of the *Romans*, beſides the *Tricaſſini*, *Apencenſes*, *Vacontii*, and *Accuſiani*, before mentioned; and the *Allobroges*, ſpoken of in the *Alpine* Provinces, were the *Segulauni*, about *Valence*; the *Decenſes* about *Die*, and the *Cavari* about *Grenoble*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans*, then by the *Burgundians*, and at laſt by the *French*: under whom made a part of the new Kingdom of *Burgundy*, till the ſurrender of the ſame to the *German* Emperors. Under them it continued till the year 1100; when *Guigne*, ſirnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Griſinaudan*, ſeeing the Emperor *Henry* the Fourth, over-born by the Popes, and not able to aſſert his own rights, ſeized upon this Province under the title of Earl of *Viennois*, to which *Guigne* the ſecond, his Son and Succeſſor, gave the name of *Daulphine*, either from his Wife ſo called, as ſome; or from the *Dolphin* which he took for his Arms, as others ſay. In this Family it continued till the year 1349, under the Power and Government of theſe following Princes, entituled,

The *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.

A.Ch.		
1100	1	*Guigne*, ſirnamed the *Fat*, Earl of *Albon* and *Griſinaudan*, at the time of the diſſolution of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*.
1135	2	*Guigne* II. the firſt and abſolute Proprietary Prince hereof, by the name of the *Daulphin* of *Viennois*.
1146	3	*Guigne* III. Son of *Guigne* the ſecond.
1152	4	*Beatrix*, Daughter of *Guigne* the third, firſt married to *Reymond* the third, Earl of *Tholouſe*, next to *Hugh* the third, Duke of *Burgundy*; and finally, to *Guigne* of *Albon*, of the houſe of the former Earls; all in her right entituled, *Daulphins* of *Viennois*.
1208	5	*Andrew*, the Son of *Beatrix* and of *Guigne* the Fourth.
1242	6	*Guigne* V. Son of *Andrew*.
1283	7	*Humbert* the firſt, in the right of *Anne* his wife, daughter and heir of *Guigne* the fifth.
1335	8	*John* the Son of *Humbert*, exerciſed in continual Wars, as his Father was, was with the Earls of *Savoy*.
1322	9	*Guigne* VI. Son of *John*, taken Priſoner by *Edward* Earl of *Savoy*, *An.* 1329, and at laſt ſlain, *An.* 1342.
1342	10	*Humbert* II. the younger Son of *John*, and the Brother of *Guigne* the ſixth, the laſt *Daulphin* of *Viennois*, who being ſurcharged with Wars by *Ame* (or *Amede*) Earl of *Savoy*, entred into the Order of *Dominican* Friers, at *Lions*; ſelling his Country at a ſmall rate, to *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, upon condition, that the eldeſt Son of *France* ſhould be entituled always, *Daulphin* of *Viennois*; and quarter the Arms of *Daulphin*, with thoſe of *France*. The conditions willingly accepted; and *Charles*, the Son of King *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, admitted by his Grandfather both to the Title and Eſtate, in the very year of the ſurrendry. Since this time, the eldeſt Son of *France* is called generally, the *Daulphin* of *France*; ſometimes, the *Daulphin* only, by way of eminency; and many times, the

the *Prince-Daulphin*, to difference him from the *Daulphin* (or *Count-Daulphin*) of *Auvergne*, and perhaps some others. A Title so annexed unto them, that it is not usually laid by on the accession of a greater or superiour Dignity: insomuch as *Francis* the eldest Son of *Henry* the second, (whom he succeeded in the Crown) being King of *Scots* in the right of *Mary* his Wife, was by the *French* commonly called *Le Roy Daulphin*, or the King of *Daulphin*. Nor have they the bare Title of this Country only, but the commands, profits, and possession of it, sending their own Governours thereunto; who by an ancient Indulgence, have the greatest Priviledges (conferring all Offices within the Province) of any Governors of *France*.

19. LA BRESSE.

LA BRESSE is bounded on the East with *Savoy*: on the West with *Lionois*; on the North with *Charolois* in the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, and some part of the *Franche County*; and on the South, with *Daulphine*. The reason of the name I find not. The Country is very fruitful and pleasant, embraced betwixt the Rivers of *Soasne* and *Rhosne*, with which very well watered. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Bellay*, a Bishops See. 2. *Bourg*, (for distinctions sake called *Bourgen Bresse*) a Town so well fenced, and fortified with so strong a Citadel for command of the Country, that it was thought little inferiour to the two impregnable Fortresses of St. *Katherines* and *Montmelian*, in *Savoy*. The Government of which Town and Citadel, was earnestly laboured for by the Duke of *Biron*, then Governour of *Burgundy*, after a repulse on the like suit, for that of St. *Katherine*: but being suspected to hold intelligence with the Duke of *Savoy*, at that time in ill terms with King *Henry* the 4th, it was also denied him: which drew him into discontent, and thereby to his fatal ruine. Afterwards, during the minority of *Lewis* the 13th, demolished by special Order of the Council of *France*, for fear of being surprised by the Duke of *Savoy*, during those confusions. It was of old time called the *Forum Secusianorum*, from the *Secusiani*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. 3. *Castillon*, 4. *Mont-Real*, 5. *Bugey*, 6. *Veronen*, of which nothing observable.

This little Province, being anciently a part of the Kingdom of *Arles* and *Burgundy*, had its own Earls, *Proprietary* Lords hereof; who held it till the year 1285: at what time *Sibyll*, the Daughter and Heir of *Ulric* Earl of *Bresse* and *Baugie*, (or *Bassee*, as some Writers call it) conveyed the Estate in marriage to *Ame*, or *Amedee*, the 4th of that name Earl of *Savoy*. In which House it continued till the year 1600, and then surrendred by Duke *Charles Emanuel*, to King *Henry* the 4th, to silence the pretences which that King made unto the Marquisate of *Saluzzes*, and put an end unto the War then begun about it: the politick Duke chusing rather to part with an Estate on this side of the Mountains, than to give that active King occasion to look into *Italy*; to which *Savoy* must have been a thorow-fare, *Piemont* an ordinary Pass; and where no end could be expected, but the loss of all. Surrendred then it was on good reason of State, and upon that Surrendry united and incorporated with the Crown of *France*, and put under the Government of the Parliament of *Digon*, as it still continueth.

Arms hereof, are *Azure*, a Lyon *Ermins*, armed and langued, *Or*.

20. LIONOIS.

THE Country of *LIONOIS* is bounded on the East with *Bresse*, on the West with *Beau-jolois*, *Forrest*, and *Auvergne*; on the North, with *Burgundy* Dutchy; and on the South with *Daulphin*, and a part of *Languedoc*. So called from *Lions* the chief City; and under that Title made an Earldom by *Charles* the *Gross*, in the cantoning and dismembring of the Kingdom of *Burgundy*. The Earldom containing at that time not only *Lionois* it self, but also *Forrest* and *Beau-jolois*, before described. The Earls hereof were at first only *Provincial* Governours; but under the distractions of the *German* Empire, they shifted for themselves, and became hereditary: but long it held not in one hand. For first, the Earldom of *Forrest*, and the Lordship or Signeury of *Beau-jeu* being taken out of it about the year 990, the rest of the Estate fell in some tract of time to the Bishops and Church of *Lions*; but under the Soveraignty of the *French* Kings, as Lords Paramount of it.

The places in it of most note are, 1. *Mascon*, (*Matisconum*) a Bishops See, situate on the *Soasne*, anciently a distinct Earldom from that of *Lions*, one of the five (as that of *Lions* was another) which made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* on this side of the *Soasne*: one of the Earls hereof, called *William*, flourishing in the year 1060, or thereabouts; whose Son and Successor, named *Otho*, married *Elizabeth* daughter of *Humbert*, the first Earl of *Maurienne*, (a Title afterwards exchanged for that of *Savoy*). Continuing for some Ages after in this Posterity, it was purchased of *William* the last Earl hereof, and of *Elizabeth* his Wife, by King *Lewis* the 9th; and afterwards subjected to the Jurisdiction and Court of *Lions*, as it still continueth. 2. *Eschalas*, on the *Rhosne*, on the South of *Lions*, opposite to *Vienne*, the chief City of the Lower *Daulphin*. 3. *Dandilli*, 4. *Francheville*, 5. *Chaumont*, and 6. *Lebrelle*, all somewhat Westward of that River, but not much observable, 7. *Lions* it self, pleasantly seated on the confluence of the *Soasne* and the *Rhosne*, anciently a *Roman* Colony, (testified by many old Inscriptions) and honoured with a magnificent Temple, dedicated by the Cities of *France*, to *Augustus Cæsar*: now the most famous Mart of *France*, and an University; by our *Latin* Writers called *Lugdunum*. These Marts in former times were holden at *Geneva*, from thence removed hither by King *Lewis* the 11th, for the enriching of his own Kingdom. When *Julio* the second had excommunicated *Lewis* the 12th, he commanded by his Apostolical Authority, that they should be returned to *Geneva* again: but therein his pleasure was never obeyed; the Marts continuing still at *LIONS*, as a place more convenient and capacious for that great resort of *French*, *Dutch*, and *Italian* Merchants, which frequent the same. As for the University, questionless it is very ancient, being a seat of Learning in the time of *Caius Caligula*. For in those times, before an Altar consecrated to *Augustus Cæsar* in the Temple spoken of before; this *Caligula* did institute some exercises of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence: the *Victor* to be honoured according to his merit; the *Vanquished* either to be *ferulated*, or with their own tongues to blot and expunge their Writings, or to be drowned in the River adjoining. Hence that of *Juvenal*, *Ut Lugdunensem* Rhetor *dicturus ad aram*, applyed to dangerous Undertakings. In the time of the *Romans* first coming into *Gaul*, it was

the

the chief City of the *Hedui*, and *Secusiani*, afterwards the *Metropolis* of *Lugdunensis Prima*. The Archbishop hereof, is the *Metropolitan* of all *France*; and was so in the time of S. *Irenæus*, one of the renowned Fathers in the Primitive Church, who was Bishop here.

In this Town lived *Peter Waldo*, a wealthy Citizen, about the time of *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor of *Germany*; who being a devout and conscientious man, sensible of the many errors and corruptions in the Church of *Rome*, distributed the greatest part of his Riches amongst the poor, and betook himself to meditation, and studying of the holy Scriptures. In the carnal eating of CHRIST's Body, the subtraction of the Cup in the blessed Sacrament, in matter of Purgatory, the Supremacy, adoration of Images, invocation of the Saints departed, and many other points of moment, he held opinions contrary to those of *Rome*, and little different from those of the present *Reformed Churches*. And yet it may not be denyed, but that amongst some good Wheat, there were many Tares; which gave the juster colour to their Adversaries to exclaim against them. Being much followed in regard of his Piety and Charity, he got unto himself and them the name of *Pauperes de Lugduno*, or the *Poor men of Lions*, given in derision and contempt. Afterwards they were called *Waldenses*, by the name of *Waldo*, the beginner of this Reformation; and by that name opposed and writ against by Fryer *Thomas* of *Walden*. The *French*, according to their manner of pronunciation, drowning the *L*, and changing the *W* into *V*, call them commonly *Vaudois*; by which name they occur in the stories of that State and Language. But *Lions* proving no safe place for them, they retired into the more desart parts of *Languedoc*; and spreading on the banks of the River *Alby*, obtained the name of *Albigenses*, as before was said. Supported by the two last Earls of *Tholouse*, they became very masterful and insolent: insomuch, that they murdered *Trincanel* their *Viscount* in *Beziers*, and dashed out the teeth of their Bishop, having taken Sanctuary in S. *Magdalens* Church, one of the Churches of that City. Forty years after which high out-rage, the Divine Providence gave them over to the hand of the *Croisadas*, under the conduct of the *French* Kings, and many other noble Adventurers, who sacrificed them in the self same Church, wherein they had spilled the blood of others. About the year 1250, after a long and bloody War, they were almost rooted out of that Country also. The remnants of them, being bettered by this affliction, betook themselves unto the Mountains lying betwixt *Daulphine*, *Provence*, *Piemont*, and *Savoy*, where they lived a godly and laborious life; painfully tilling the ground, rebuilding Villages, which formerly had been destroyed by War; teaching the very Rocks to yield good pasturage to their Cattel: insomuch as places which before their coming thither, scarce yielded four Crowns yearly, were made worth 350 Crowns a year, by their care and industry. *Luscivious ness* in speech they used not: *Blasphemy* they abhorr'd; nor was the name of *Devil* (in the way of execration) ever heard amongst them; as their very Enemies could not but confess, when they were afterward in troubles. The Crimes alledged against them, were, That when they came into any of the neighbouring Churches, they made no address unto the Saints, nor bowed before such Crosses as were erected in the High-ways, and Streets of Towns. Great crimes assuredly, when greater could not be produced! And so they lived, neither embracing the *Pope*'s *Doctrines*, nor submitting unto his *Supremacy*, for the space of 300 years, untouched, unquestioned; even till the latter end of the reign of King *Francis* the first. But then the Persecution raging against the *Lutherans*, they were accused, condemned, and barbarously murdered, in the *Massacres* of *Merindol*, and *Cabriers*, before-mentioned. After which time, joining themselves with the rest of the *Protestant* party, they lost the name of *Vaudois*, by which called before; and pass in the account of the *Reformed Churches* of *France*; enjoying the same priviledges and freedom of Conscience, as others of the *Reformed* do. And though I look not on these men, and their Congregations, as Founders of the *Protestant* Church, or of the same Church with them, as I see some do: yet I behold them as *Assertors* of some Doctrinal Truths, and professed Enemies of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*, and therein as the Predecessors of the present Protestants.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, were a part of the *Hedui*, that Nation overspreading not this Country only, but *Bourbonnois*, with the whole Dukedom of *Burgundy*. And of these *Hedui*, the *Insubres* are thought by some learned men to have been a Tribe, who passing over the *Alpes*, together with the *Senones*, and others of the *Gallick* Nations, possessed themselves of those parts of *Italy* which now make up the Dukedoms of *Millain*, *Parma*, *Mantua*, with the parts adjoining. The residue of the story which concerns this Country we have had before.

21. *The Dukedom of* Burgundy.

THE *Dukedom* of *BURGUNDY* hath on the East, the *French County*, and some part of *Savoy*; on the West, *Bourbonnois*; on the North, *Champagne*; on the South, *La Bresse*, *Lionois*; and some part of *Beau-joulois*. A Provence so well watered with pleasant and profitable Rivers, that as Queen *Katharine de Medices* used to say of *France*, That it had more fair Rivers than all *Europe*; so we may say of this Country, That it hath more fine Riverets than all *France*: here being the Rivers of 1. *Armacan*, 2. *Serum*, 3. *Curi*, 4. *Torney*, 5. *Valence*, 6. *Dove*, 7. *Brune*, 8. *Sein*, 9. *Louche*, and 10. *Soasne*, (the *Araris* of the ancient Writers) this last dividing the two *Burgundies* from one another. Yet notwithstanding this great plenty of Waters, the Country generally is less fruitful than the rest of *France*: hardly yielding sufficient for its own Inhabitants, except Wines only.

Chief Cities in it are, 1. *Dijon*, the birth-place of S. *Bernard*; seated upon the *Soasne* and *L'ouche*, in a Champian Country: the Town large, populous, and of much resort, as being the Seat of the Governour, and *Parliamentary* for the Province, a Parliament being here erected, *An.* 1476. Well fortified on all parts, but specially defended by a strong Castle, called *Talente*, situate on a hill adjoining. It is called *Divio* in the *Latin*; the Bishop hereof *Divionensis*. 2. *Chalons*, (in *Latin*, *Caballinum*) called for distinctions sake, *Chalons* upon *Soasne*, to difference it from *Chalons* upon *Marn*, in *Champagne*: a Bishops See also, as the other is: and gives name to that Noble Family of *Chalons*, (out of which the Princes of *Orange* are extracted) being one of the four ancient Families of *Burgundy*, the other three, *Vienne*, *Neufchatel*, and *Virgie*. 3. *Autun*, by *Ptolomy* called *Augustodunum*, the chief City of the *Hedui*, now a Bishops See, heretofore the chief of all the Country, some marks of the old splendor being still to be seen: now very ordinary and mean, beautified only with some fair Churches, which the ruines of Time have not yet demolished. 4. *Beaune*, seated on the *Bursoize*, in the best and richest soil of all *Burgundy*, and yielding the best Wines in all *France*;

remarkable for an Hospital of so fair a building, that it is thought equal to any Princes Palace in *Europe*; and an impregnable Castle built by King *Lewis* XII. 5. *Alize*, now a small Village, but of great name and power in the time of *Cæsar*, then called *Alexia*, the chief Fortress of *Vercingetorix*, besieged herein by the said *Cæsar*; but so besieged, that he had 70000 men in the Town for defence of the place, and an Army of 300000 *Gauls* at the back of *Cæsar*, to relieve their Fellows. So that he was fain to fortifie his Camp with two Walls, the one against them within the City, and the other against them without: which done, he kept such diligent watch and ward on both sides, that the besieged heard sooner of the discomfiture of their friends, than they did of their coming. Which fatal news being brought unto them, the Town was yielded. And *Vercingetorix* bravely mounted, rode round about *Cæsar*; then sitting in his Chair of State, disarmed himself, took off his Horses caparisons; and laying all upon the ground, sate down at *Cæsar*'s feet, and became his Prisoner. 6. *Tournus*, encompassed with the *Soasne*. 7. *Semur*, consisting of three parts, each of them severally walled, and strongly fortified. 8. *Verdun*. 9. *Nayx*, 10. St. *Ligier*, famous for Medicinal Baths. 11. *Noyors*, on the borders towards *Champagne*. 12. *Auxerre*, by *Antonine* called *Antisiodorum*, of most note for the Council held here, *An.* 627. the Country about which, is called *Auxerrois*; and was an Earldom of it self. The Title and Possession of that *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who was the third Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*; to whom it came in Marriage with his first Wife *Agnes*, the Daughter of the last Earl of the former Race. On the failure of which house, it fell unto that of *Chalons*, by the Marriage of *Isabel*, Niece of the said *Peter*, by his Brother *Robert*, to *John* of *Chalons*, Earl of *Burgundy*: to whom succeeded *John de Chalons*, his eldest Son by that *Venter*, (his second Wife) and finally, was sold by *John de Chalons*, great Grandchild of the said *John* Earl of *Burgundy*, to *Charles* the Fifth of *France*, *An.* 1370. by whom united to the Crown; subjected to the Parliament of *Paris*, and made part of *Champagne*. Here is also within this Country, the great and famous Monastery of *Cisteaux*; the Mother of so many *Religious* Houses dispersed up and down in *Europe*; from hence denominated, and subject to the Discipline and Rules hereof.

Within the limits of this Dukedom, (on the South parts of it) stands the Earldom of *CHAROLLOIS*, heretofore the Title of the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Burgundy*: so called from *Charolles*, the chief Town hereof, situate in the borders of it, towards *La Bresse*: seized upon with the rest of this Dukedom, by *Lewis* XI. immediately on the death of Duke *Charles* the *Warlike*: restored again to *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*, by *Henry* the Second, of *France*, on the Peace made at *Cambray*, and subjected to the Parliament of *Dole* in the County of *Burgundy*, as a part or member of that Estate. So that neither the *Governour* of the Dukedom for the *French* King, nor the *Parliament* of *Digion*, have any thing to do in it. The Arms hereof are *Gules*, a Lion passant regardant *Or*, armed *Azure*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole Dukedom, according to the limits before laid down, were the *Hedui*, one of the most potent Nations of all *Gaul*: who calling in the *Romans* to aid them in their quarrels against the *Sequani* and *Arverni*, made them all subject unto *Rome*. In the prosperity whereof, they made up the Province of *Lugdunensis Prima*, of which *Lions* was the *Metropolis* or principal City. Afterwards, in the division of the *French* Kingdom of *Burgundy*, by *Charles* the *Bald*; this part thereof being called the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, on this side of the *Soasne*, was cantoned into the five Earldoms of *Dijon*, *Chalons*, *Autun*, *Lions*, and *Mascon*: whereof the three first laid together by *Odo* or *Eudes* King of *France*, during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*, were given unto his Brother *Richard* (both Sons of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*) under the stile and title of Duke of *Burgundy*. The Issue of this *Robert* failing, it fell unto another *Robert*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*: and the Male-issue failing of that Line also, it was devolved (partly by escheat for want of Heirs male; and partly in the Right and Title of the Heir-general) to King *John* of *France*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* his Wife, one of the Daughters of *Robert* the Third; who with the consent of *Charles* his eldest Son, sirnamed the *Wise*, gave it unto his second Son *Philip*, (more worthily sirnamed the *Hardy*) together with the Marriage of the Heir of *Flanders*, *Artois*, and the County of *Burgundy*. An Argument of no great Wisdom, as was judiciously observed by King *Lewis* the Eleventh. For by this means, those great Estates being united in one person, and afterwards these Estates improved by as prosperous Marriages; this House of *Burgundy* grew formidable to the Kings themselves, who never left practising against it, till they had brought it to ruine; and once again united this Dukedom to their own Estates, from which at first it was dismembred.

The Dukes of *Burgundy*.

890	1	*Richard* of *Saxony*, the second Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, Brother of *Eudes*, and Father of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*.
938	2	*Gilbert*, the second Son of *Richard*.
964	3	*Otho*, Son of *Hugh* Earl of *Paris*, sirnamed the *Great*, and Brother of *Hugh Capet*, King of *France*; was Duke of *Burgundy*, in right of his Wife the Daughter of *Gilbert*.
976	4	*Henry*, the Brother of *Otho*.
1001	5	*Robert*, King of *France*, Son of *Hugh Capet*, succeeded in the Dukedom, on the death of his Uncle *Henry*.
1004	6	*Robert* II. Son of this *Robert*, and Brother of *Henry* King of *France*.
1075	7	*Hugh*, the Nephew of *Robert*, by his Son *Henry*, became afterwards a Monk of *Clugny*.
1097	8	*Odo*, or *Otho* II. Brother of *Hugh*.
1102	9	*Hugh* II. Son of *Otho* the Second.
1124	10	*Odes*, or *Otho* III. Son of *Hugh* the Second.
1165	11	*Hugh* III. the Companion, but great Enemy of our *Richard* the First, in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1192	12	*Odes*, or *Otho* IV. Son of *Hugh* the Third.
1218	13	*Hugh* IV. an Adventurer with King *Lewis* the Ninth in the *Holy Land*.
1273	14	*Robert* III. Son of *Hugh* IV. which *Robert* was the Father of *Margaret*, the Wife of *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France* and *Navarre*; and of *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip de Valois*, *French* King, and Grandmother of *Philip* the *Hardy*, after Duke of *Burgundy*.
1308	15	*Hugh* V. Son of *Robert* the Third.
1315	16	*Eudes*, the Brother of *Hugh*, was Earl of *Burgundy* also, in right of his Wife.
1349	17	*Philip*, the Grandchild of *Eudes* by his only Son *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, by descent, (who if he had lived, had been also Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, in right of *Margaret* his Wife.) But dying young and without

without Issue, he was succeeded in all his Titles and Estates, by

1363 18 *Philip* II. surnamed the *Hardy*, Son of *John* King of *France*, Son of *Philip de Valois*, and of *Joan* Daughter of *Robert* the 3d, by King *John* his Father, with the consent of *Charles* the 5th his Brother, (in whom the right of this Dukedom was then pretended to remain) made Duke of *Burgundy*, and married *Margaret* Daughter of *Lewis de Malain* (and consequently Heir of *Flanders*, and the County of *Burgundy*) the Widow of his Predecessor.

1404 19 *John*, surnamed the *Proud*, Son of *Philip* the 2d, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*.

1419 20 *Philip* III. surnamed the *Good*, who added most of the *Netherlands* to his Estate.

1467 21 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Earl of *Charolois*, Son of *Philip* the *Good*. After whose death, slain by the *Switzers* at the battel of *Nancie*, *Lewis* the 11th seized upon this Dukedom, *An* 1476, pretending an Escheat thereof, for want of *Heirs males*; and so uniting it for ever to the Crown of *France*: as by like colour of Escheat, King *John* had formerly entred on it, and given it unto *Philip* his younger Son, to the prejudice of the Earls of *Eureux*, descended from the daughter and heir of *Lewis Hutin*, and of *Margaret* his Wife, the elder Sister of the Mother of the said King *John*.

Of the great Wealth and Potency of these last Dukes of *Burgundy*, we shall speak further when we come to the description of *Belgium*: the accession whereof to their Estates, made them equal to most Kings in *Christendom*. But for their *Arms*, which properly belonged to them as Dukes of *Burgundy*, they were *Bendwise* of *Or* and *Azure* a Border *Gules*. Which Coat is usually marshalled in the Scutcheons of the Kings of *Spain*; that of the Earldom being omitted, though in their possession. The reasons of which are probably (for I go but by guess) partly because this being the older and Paternal Coat, comprehends the other; and partly to keep on foot the memory of this Title to the Dukedom it self, in right of which he holdeth such a great Estate.

22. *The County of* BURGUNDY.

THE County of *BURGUNDIE* hath on the East the Mountain *Jour*, which parts it from *Switzerland*, on the West the Dutchy of *Burgundy*, from which divided by the *Soasne*; on the North a branch of the Mountain *Vauge*, which runneth betwixt it and *Lorrein*; on the South *La Bresse*. It is reckoned to be 90 miles in length, about 60 in breadth: and with the Provinces of *Daulphine*, *La Bresse*, and *Provence*, made up the Dukedom of *Burgundy* beyond the *Soasne*; on the Eastern side of which it is wholly situate. This part thereof, now generally called the *Frenche Comtè*, or the *Free County*, because not under the command of the *French* Kings; but living in a more free Estate than any Subjects of that Kingdom.

The County in some parts very Mountainous, but those Mountains yielding excellent Vineyards, and having, in recompence of a little barrenness, an intermixture of most pleasing and fruitful Valleys, swelling with plenty of all natural commodities useful unto the life of man; and for the variety of fresh Streams, and delightful Riverets, inferior only to the *Dutchy*.

The principal Towns and Cities of it, are, 1. *Besanson*, called by *Cæsar*, *Vesontio*, then the chief City of the *Sequani*, as afterwards the Metropolis of the Province entituled, *Maxima Sequanorum*; by consequence an Archbishops See. Seated betwixt two Mountains on the banks of the River *Doux*, by which it is almost encompassed; such artificial Fortifications being added to it, as make it very strong both by Art and Nature. But this is an Imperial City, not subject to the Government and Command of the Earls of *Burgundy*; honoured with a small University founded here, *An.* 1540, by Pope *Julio* the second, and *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Dole*, seated on the same River *Doux*, for riches, strength, and beauty, to be preferred before any in all the County; of which, it is the Parliament-City, and consequently of most resort for dispatch of business. Anciently it was an University for the study of the Civil Laws; but now the University is devoured by a Colledge of Jesuits: who fearing lest the Doctrine of the Reformed Churches might creep in amongst the people, not only have debarr'd them the use of the Protestants Books; but have expresly forbid them to talk of GOD, either in a good sort or in a bad. 3. *Salins*, so called from its salt Fountains; out of which came the greatest part of the Earls Revenue: in which respect, or that it was the title of *Otho* the Son of *Frederick Barbarossa*, before he did attain the Earldom; the Earls of *Burgundy* since that time, and the Emperors of *Germany*, in their right, retain the name of Lords of *Salines*, in their usual stile. A City honoured for a while with the Seat of the Parliament, removed hither from *Dole* by King *Lewis* the 11th, at such time as he held this Country, beholding to him (being a wise and politick Prince) for many wholsom Ordinances, still observed amongst them. 4. *Poligni*, the *Bailliage* of the *Lower*; as 5. *Vesoal* is of the *Higher Burgundy*. 6. *Arbois*, noted for the best Wines, and 7. *Luxoal*, for medicinal Baths. 8. *Nazareth*, on the borders of *Switzerland*, fortified with a very strong Castle, the ordinary seat and retreat from business, of the first Prince of *Orange*, of the House of *Chalons*, who had great possessions in this Country. 9. *Gray*, and 10. *Chastel Chalon*, 11. *Quingey*, 12. *Orgelet*. Here is also the great and famous Abbey of *Clugny*, near the Town of *Bruin*; out of which so many Monasteries in the Western Church, had their first Original.

The old Inhabitants of this County, were the *Sequani*, a potent Nation, contending with the *Hedui* and *Averni*, for the Soveraignty of *Gaul*, till the strife was ended by the *Romans*, under whom it made, together with *Switzerland*, the *Province* of *Maxima Sequanorum*. In the declining of which Empire, it fell to the *Burgundians*; and by *Rodolph* the last, King of the *French*, the Kingdom of *Burgundy* was given to *Conrade* the second Emperor of *Germany*. After that, reckoned as a part of the *German* Empire, and governed by such Earls or Provincial Officers, as those Emperors sent hither. *Otho* of *Flanders*, Son to a Sister of the Emperor *Conrade*, was the first that held it as *Proprietary*; the other three whom *Paradine* sets before him in his Catalogue of the Earls of *Burgundy*, being meerly Official. It was first united to the *Dutchy*, by the marriage of *D. Eudes*, with *Joan* the Countess. But no issue coming out of this bed, it fell into the House of *Flanders*; and with the Heir of *Flanders*, unto *Philip* the *Hardy*, the first Duke hereof, of the Royal Race of *Valois*, *An.* 1369. *Philip* the Grandchild of this *Philip*, united most of the *Belgick* Provinces unto his Estate: after whose death, and the death of *Charles* his Son, at the Battel of *Nancie*, the *Dutchy* was surprised by King *Lewis* the eleventh,

as holden of the Crown of *France*, eſcheated to him for want of Heirs-males. But the *County*, holden of the Empire, though ſubdued alſo by this *Lewis*, was reſtored again to *Mary* the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, continuing hitherto in her Iſſue; as appears evidently by this Catalogue of

The Earls of *Burgundy*.

1101 1 *Otho Guilliaume*, the firſt Earl of *Burgundy*, by the power and aid of *Robert* King of *France*.
1118 2 *Reinald*, Couſin and Heir of *Otho*.
1157 3 *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, Emperor, in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, Daughter of Earl *Reinald*, was Earl of *Burgundy*.
1183 4 *Otho*, the youngeſt Son of *Frederick*.
1200 5 *Otho* II. Duke of *Meranie*, part of the Province of *Tirol* in *Germany*, was Earl of *Burgundy* in right of *Beatrix* his Wife, the Daughter of *Otho* the firſt.
1208 6 *Stephen*, Earl of *Chalone*, next Heir of *Gerard* of *Vienne*, and *Joan* his Wife, the ſecond Daughter of *Otho* the firſt, and Siſter of *Beatrix*; acknowledged by his Faction there, for Earl of *Burgundy*, in the life of *Otho* the ſecond, whom he diſpoſſeſſed, and left the ſame unto his Son, to the prejudice of *Alice* the Daughter of *Otho*.
1234 7 *John*, Son of *Stephen de Chalons*.
1269 8 *Hugh*, the Son of *John*, married to *Alice* Daughter of *Otho* of *Meranie*; ſo getting in that pretenſion alſo.
1279 9 *Othelin*, the Son of *Hugh*, Earl of *Artois* in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Robert* Earl of *Artois*.
1315 10 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*; Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, in right of *Joan* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Othelin*.
1331 11 *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Husband of *Joan* of *France*, the eldeſt Daughter of King *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſs.
1349 12 *Philip*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Grandchild of *Eudes*, and of *Joan* his Wife, by their Son *Philip*.
1361 13 *Margaret*, the Widow of *Lewis*, Earl of *Flanders*, and ſecond Daughter of *Philip* the *Long*, and of *Joan* the Counteſs, was Counteſs of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, after the death of her Couſin *Philip*.
14 *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders* by his Father, and of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, by his Mother.
1383 15 *Philip* II. called the *Hardy*, Duke of *Burgundy*, by the gift of King *John* his Father, with the conſent and approbation of his Brother *Charles* the fifth, was Earl of *Burgundy*, *Flanders*, and *Artois*; as alſo, Duke of *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of *Margarite* his Wife, ſole Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*.
1404 16 *Antony* the *Proud*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, his younger Brother *Philip*, ſucceeding in the Earldoms of *Nevers* and *Rethel*.
1419 17 *Philip* III. called the *Good*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.
1467 18 *Charles* the *Warlike*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*.
1476 19 *Mary*, the Daughter of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian* of *Auſtria*, Son of *Frederick* the third, Emperour of *Germany*; in which honour he ſucceeded his Father.
1482 20 *Philip* IV. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, King of *Caſtile*, in right of his Wife *Joan*, daughter to *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, King of *Caſtile*, &c.
1506 21 *Charles*, the Son of *Philip*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of *Germany*, by the name of *Charles* the fifth.
1558 22 *Philip* V. of *Burgundy*, and the IId. of *Spain*.
23 *Philip* VI. of *Burgundy*, and the IIId. of *Spain*.
24 *Philip* VII. of *Burgundy*, and the IV. of *Spain*; in whom reſteth the poſſeſſion of the Country of *Burgundy*, and the Earldom of *Charollois*; herein not troubled by the *French*, upon the death of *Charles* the *Warlike*; partly, becauſe it was accounted as a Fief of the Empire; but principally, for fear of giving offence to the *Cantons* of *Switzerland*, upon whom it bordereth: jealous enough already of the greatneſs and power of *France*, and ſo not willing to admit ſuch a potent Neighbour.

The Arms of this Earldom are *Azure*, a Lion rampant *Or*, Seme of Billets *Argent*.

23. *The Iſlands in the* Aquitain *and* Gallick *Ocean.*

HAving thus took a view of the ſeveral Provinces within the Continent of *France*; let us next look upon the *ISLANDS* which belong unto it, diſperſed in the *Mediterranean* Sea, and the Weſtern Ocean. Thoſe in the *Mediterranean* Sea, are of little note; as 1. the Iſles of *Eres*, and 2. *Pomegues*, lying againſt *Provence*: 3. *Maguelone*, lying againſt *Languedoc*: and 4. *L'Anguellade*, betwixt both, at the mouth of the *Rhoſne*: of which there is nothing to be ſaid, but that thoſe of *Eres* are thought to be the *Stoechades* of *Ptolomy*; and his *Blaſcon*, to be *Anguellade*. And if the Iſles of *Eres* be the ſame with the *Stoechades*, then one of them muſt be the *Lerina* which we find in *Pliny*: of moſt note afterwards for a Monaſtery founded in it, which gave name to *Vincentius Lerinenſis*, or rather *Lirinenſis*, as moſt Writers call him: the Iſland now called *Inſula Sancti Honorati*, or Saint *Honorates*, as *Maſſonus* telleth us. And of as little note in the *Weſtern Ocean*, are *Belle Iſle*, againſt *Vannes* in *Bretagne*; the *Iſle de Dieu*, having in it two or three good Villages: and *Marmoſtier*, plentiful in Salt, and beautified with a Monaſtery called the *White Abby*. Of which three laſt, that of *Belle Iſle* hath been of late ſo fortified by Art, as of old by Nature, that it is thought to be impregnable: the Abbey of the laſt endowed with ſo plentiful a Revenue, that it was thought a competent preferment for *Anthonine* of *Bourbon*, baſe Brother to King *Henry* the Fourth, to be made Lord Abbot of the ſame. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1. *Oleron*, and 2. *Ree*, on the Coaſt of *Aquitain*; and thoſe of 3. *Jarſey*, 4. *Gernſey*, 5. *Sarke*, and 6. *Alderney*, on the ſhores of *Normandie*: Of which, the four laſt are under the Kings of *England*;

England, the reſt poſſeſſed by the *French*.

1. *OLERON* is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the Province of *Xaintoigne*, and South unto the Iſle of *Ree*, from which little diſtant. It is the biggeſt of the two, and makes yearly a very great quantity of Salt, wherewith moſt of the Provinces on the *Weſtern Ocean* uſe to be furniſhed. But it is eaſie of acceſs, and not very defenſible; which makes it of leſs note both in ancient and modern ſtories. The principal Town of it is called *Oleron*, by the name of the Iſland. One thing there is for which indeed this Iſland is of ſpecial fame, & that is, that the *Maritime* Laws, which for near 500 years have generally been received by all the States of the Chriſtian World which frequent the Ocean, (the *Rhodian* Laws being antiquated and worn out of uſe) for regulating of Sea-affairs, and deciding of Maritime Controverſies, were declared and eſtabliſhed here, and from thence called the *Laws of Oleron*. And here they were declared and eſtabliſhed by King *Richard* the Firſt of *England*, as Lord Paramont of the Seas, immediately on his return from the *Holy Land*: this Iſland being then in his poſſeſſion, as a Member of his Dukedom of *Aquitain*: *Quæ quidem Leges & Statuta per Dominum* Richardum *quondam Regem* Angliæ, *in reditu à* Terra Sancta, *correcta fuerunt, interpretata, declarata, & in Inſula de* Oleron *publicata & nominata in* Gallica *Lingua* La Loy d'Oleron *&c.* ſaith an old Record which I find cited in a M. S. Diſcourſe of my late learned Friend Sir *John Burroughs*, (once Keeper of the Records in the Tower of *London*, but afterwards Principal King of Arms, by the name of *Garter*) entituled, *The Soveraignty of the* Britiſh *Seas*. So powerful were the Kings of *England* in the former times, as to give Laws to all that traded on the Ocean.

2. The Iſle of *REE* is ſituate over-againſt *Rochel*: to which it ſerved for an Out-work on that ſide thereof. It is in length ten *Engliſh* miles, and about half as much in breadth, well fortified with deep Mariſhes at the entries of it; to which the many Salt-pits every where intermingled, add a very great ſtrength. Chief places in it are, 1. *La Butte de Mont*, 2. *St. John de Mont*, 3. *St. Hillary*, 4. *St. Martins*, the largeſt and ſtrongeſt of them all; from whence the whole Iſland hath ſometimes been called St. *Martins*. After the taking of this Town by *Lewis* XIII. *An.* 1622. (the Duke of *Soubize* then commanding in it for thoſe of *Rochel*) it was very well fortified; and ſince made unfortunately famous for the defeat of the *Engliſh* Forces under the Command of *George* Duke of *Buckingham*, ſent thither to recover the Town and Iſland, on the inſtigation of *Soubize*, who before had loſt it, *An.* 1628.

5. *JARSEY*, by *Antonine* called *Cæſarea*; ſituate about ten miles from the Coaſt of *Normandy*, within the view and proſpect of the Church of *Conſtance*, part of which *Dioceſs* it was: in length containing 11 miles, 6 in breadth, and in circuit about 33. It is generally very fruitful of Corn, whereof they have not only enough for themſelves, but ſome over-plus to barter at St. *Malos*, with the *Spaniſh* Merchants: and of an Air not very much diſpoſed to Diſeaſes, unleſs it be an Ague in the end of *Harveſt*, which they call *Les Settembres*. The Country ſtands much upon Incloſures, the hedges of the ground well ſtored with Apples, and thoſe Apples making ſtore of *Sider*, which is their ordinary drink: watered with many pleaſant Rivulets, and good ſtore of Fiſh-ponds, yielding a Carp for taſte and largeneſs inferiour unto none in *Europe*, excepting thoſe of *Gernſey*, which generally are ſomewhat bigger, but not better reliſhed. The people, for the moſt part, more inclinable to Husbandry, than to Trades or Merchandize; and therein differing very little from thoſe of *Gernſey*, who are more for *Merchandize* than *Tillage*. It containeth in it 12 Pariſhes or Villages, having Churches in them, beſides the Manſions of the *Seigneurs*, and the chief men of the Country. The principal is St. *Hillaries*, where is the *Cohu*, or *Court of Juſtice* for all the Iſland. It is about the bigneſs of an ordinary Market-Town in *England*: ſituate on the edge of a little Bay, fortified on the one ſide with a ſmall Block-houſe called *Mont St. Aubin*; but on that ſide which is next the Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, called *Fort Elizabeth*, ſituate upon craggy Rocks, and encompaſſed with two arms of the Sea: ſo named from Queen *Elizabeth*, who built it to aſſure the Iſland againſt the *French*, and furniſhed it with thirty pieces of *Ordnance*, and all other neceſſaries. There is alſo on the Eaſt-ſide, oppoſite to the City of *Conſtance*, high mounted on ſteep and craggy Rocks, the ſtrong Caſtle of *Mount Orgueile*; of great antiquity, repaired by King *Henry* the Fifth; now furniſhed with forty pieces of Cannon, and made the ordinary reſidence of the Governours for the Kings of *England*.

4. On the North-Weſt of *Jarſey*, lyeth the Iſland of *GERNSEY*, called *Sarnia* by *Antoninus*; in form *Triangular*, each ſide of nine miles in length. The Country is of as rich a ſoil as the other of *Jarſey*, but not ſo well cultivated and manured; the poorer people here, being more given to *Manufactures*, (eſpecially to the knitting of Stockings and Waſtcoats) and the rich to Merchandize; many of which, are Maſters of good ſtout Barques, with which they traffick into *England*, and other places. The whole Iſland contains ten Villages with Churches; the principal of which, Saint *Peter's Port*; a very neat and well built Town, with a ſafe Peer for the benefit of Merchants, and the ſecuring of the Haven, capable of handſom Barques: a Market-Town, beautified with a very fair Church, and honoured with the *Plaiderie*, or *Court of Juſtice*. Oppoſite whereto, in a little Iſlet, ſtandeth the Caſtle of *Cornet*, taking up the whole circuit and dimenſions of it; environed on all ſides with the Sea, having one entrance only, and that very narrow: well fortified with Works of Art, and furniſhed with no leſs than 80 pieces of Ordnance for the defence of the Iſland; but chiefly, to command the adjoyning Harbour, capable of 500 as good Ships as any ſail on the Ocean. A piece of great importance to the Realm of *England*, and might prove utterly deſtructive of the Trade hereof, if in the hands of any Nation that were ſtrong in ſhipping. For that cauſe made the Ordinary Seat of the *Engliſh* Governours, though of late times not ſo much honoured with the preſence of thoſe Governours, as a place of that conſequence ought to be. Pertaining unto *Gernſey*, are two little Iſlets, the one called *Jet-how*, the Governours Park, wherein are ſome few fallow-Deer, and good plenty of Conies: the other named *Arme*, ſome three miles in compaſs; a dwelling heretofore of *Franciſcan Friers*; now not inhabited, but by *Pheſants*; of which, amongſt the ſhrubs and buſhes, there is very good ſtore.

5. *ALDERNEY*, by *Antonine* called *Arica*, by the *French*, *Aurigni*, and *Aurney*; is ſituate over-againſt the Cape of the *Lexobii*, in the Dukedom of *Normandy* which the Mariners at this day call the *Hagge*: diſtant from which, but ſix miles only. Beſides many dwelling-houſes ſcattered up and down, there is one pretty Town or Village of the ſame name with the Iſland, conſiſting of about an hundred Families; and having, not far off, an Harbour made in the faſhion of a *Semi-circle*, which they call *La Crabbie*. The whole about 8 miles in compaſs; of very difficult acceſs, by reaſon of the high Rocks and Precipices which encompaſs it on every ſide, and

with

with a small force easily defensible, if thought worth attempting.

6. And so is also *SARK*, the adjoyning Island, being in compass six miles; not known by any special name unto the Ancients, and, to say truth, not peopled till the fifth year of Q. *Elizabeth*: who then granted it in Fee-farm to *Helier de Carteret*, the *Seigneur* of St. *Oen*, in the Isle of *Jarsey*, who from thence planted it, and made Estates out of it to several *Occupants*, so that it may contain now about 50 Housholds. Before which time it served only for a Common, or Beasts Pasture, to those of *Gernsey*: save that there was an Hermitage, and a little Chappel, for the use of such as the solitarines of the place invited to those retirements.

These two last Islands are subject to the Governour of *Gernsey*; all four, to the Crown of *England*: holden in right of the Dukedom of *Normandy*; to which they anciently belonged; and of which now the sole remainder is in the power of the *English*. Attempted often by the *French*, (the two first I mean) since they seized on *Normandy*, but always with repulse and loss: the people being very affectionate to the *English* Government, under which they enjoy very ample Priviledges, which from the *French* they could not hope for. Their Language is the *Norman French*, (though the better sort of them speak the *English* also) their Law, the *Grand Customaire* of *Normandy*, attempted and applied to the use of this people in their suits and business, by the *Bailiffs* and *Justiciars* of the two chief Islands. Their *Religion*, for the main, is that of the *Reformed Churches*: the Government in *Jarsey*, by the Dean thereof, Suffragan heretofore to the Bishop of *Constance*, now to the Bishop of *Winchester*; in *Gernsey*, by a mixt *Consistory* of *Clergie* and *Lay Elders*, according to the *New-Model* of *Geneva*: a Government first introduced in both Islands, *An.* 1565. being the eighth year of Queen *Elizabeth*, and abolished again in *Jarsey*, *An.* 1619. being the seventeenth of King *James*.

But to return again to the story of *France*, thorow which we have now made our progress both by Sea and Land: It took this name from the *Franks* or *French*, a *German* people, who in the wane of the *Roman* Empire possessed themselves of it: not mentioned by that name by *Cæsar*, *Strabo*, *Ptolemy*, or any of the more ancient Writers. Nor was it taken up by them, for ought appeareth, till an hundred years after the death of *Ptolemy*: the first express mention of them, occurring in the Reign of *Gallienus*; then ransacking the Coasts of *Gaul*, and joyning with *Posthumus* the Rebel, against that Emperour. Afterwards often spoken of in the course of the *Roman* stories, under the Empire of *Claudius*, *Probus*, *Diocletian*, and the Sons of *Constantine*: though only in the way of pillage and depredation. Their habitation in those times, was from the meeting of the *Rhene* with the River *Moenus*, not far from *Frankford*, where they confined upon the *Almans*, to the *German* Ocean: containing the particular Nations of the *Bructeri*, *Sicambri*, *Salii*, *Cherusci*, *Frisii*, and *Teucteri*, besides some others of less note: and taking up the Countries of *Westphalen*, *Bergen*, *Marck*, and so much of *Cleve* as lieth on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, the Lantgravedom of *Hessia*, the Dutchy of *Gueldres*, the Provinces of *Zutphen*, *Utrecht*, *Over-yssel*, both *Friesland*s, and so much of *Holland* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*. United in the name of *Franks*, to shew that liberty or freedom from the yoke of servitude which the *Romans* had endeavoured to impose upon them; and wherewith all the Nations on the other side of the River were supposed to suffer: Governed by *Dukes*, till the year 420. when *Pharamond* first took upon himself the name of *King*. *Meroveus* their third King, having dispossessed the Sons of *Clodion*, the Son and Successor of *Pharamond*, was the first that fixed his seat in *Gaul*: when seeing the *Romans* on the one side put to the worst by *Theoderick* and the *Goths*; and on the other side by the *Burgundians*, they passed over the *Rhene*, and possessed themselves of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, containing all the *Belgick* Provinces on the *French* side of that River, together with the *District* of *Colen*, *Gulick*, and the rest of *Cleve*, then passing in the account of *Gaul*. His Victories and Fortunes were inherited by *Chilperic*, his Son and Successor, who added *Picardy*, *Champaine*, and the Isle of *France*, to the former Conquest; took *Paris*, and made it the seat of his Kingdom. Afterwards, when they had fully seated themselves here, and thereby opened a free passage to the rest of the Country, they quickly made themselves Masters of all that which formerly had been possessed by the *Romans*; whom they outed of their last hold in *Soissons*, under *Clouis* their fifth King, who also took *Aquitain*, and the parts adjoyning, from the *Visi-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*: for these and many signal Victories against the *Almans*, deservedly sirnamed the *Great*: but greater in submitting to the Faith of *CHRIST*, and receiving *Baptism*, than by all his Victories. *Childebert* and *Clotaire*, the Sons of this *Clouis*, vanquished the *Burgundians*, adding that Kingdom to their own: as *Theodebert* his Grandchild, King of *Mets*, or *Austrasia*, did the Country of *Provence*, resigned unto him by *Amalasunta*, Queen of the *Ostro-Goths*, or *Goths* of *Italy*, by whom it had been wrested from the *Goths* of *Spain*. In the person of *Clotaire* the Second, the Realm of *France* improvidently dismembred into many Kingdoms, amongst the Children of *Clouis* the First; that is to say, the Kingdoms of *France*, *Soissons*, *Orleans*, and *Austrasia*, (of which, *Orleans* and *Austrasia* were of long continuance) were again united: whose Successor, *Dagobert* the First, was the last considerable Prince of the *Meravignians*. After this time, the reputation of the *French* Kings of this Line, began to diminish, scarce doing any thing that might ennoble and commend them to succeeding Ages; or leaving any Monument behind them, but their empty Names: which I shall represent in the following Catalogue, according to their several times: first taking notice, that though the Kings of this first Race did many times divide the Kingdom, as before was said; yet none of them were called Kings of *France*, but those that had their Royal Seat in the City of *Paris*, the rest being called only Kings of *Soissons*, *Mets*, or *Orleans*, according to the name of their principal Cities. And therefore, leaving those to their proper places, we will here only take a survey of those who passed in the common estimate for the Kings of *France*.

The Kings of *France*, of the *French* or *Meravignian* Line.

An. Chr.		
449	1	*Meroveus*, Master of the Horse to *Clodion* the Son of *Pharamond*; from whom this Line of Kings were called *Merovignians*. 10.
459	2	*Chilperic*, the Son of *Merove*. 26.
485	3	*Clouis*, the first Christian King of the *French*. 30.
515	4	*Childebert*, eldest Son of *Clouis*, his other Brethren reigning in their several places. 45.
360	5	*Clotaire*, Brother of *Childebert*, first King of the *Soissons*, afterwards sole King of the *French*.

565 6 *Cherebert*, Son of *Clotaire*.
574 7 *Chilperic* II. King of *Soiſſons*, and Brother of *Cherebert*, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom. 14.
588 8 *Clotaire* II. Son of *Chilperic* the ſecond. 44.
632 9 *Dagobert*, Son of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 14.
645 10 *Clouis* II. Son of *Dagobert*. 17.
663 11 *Clotaire* III. Son of *Clotaire* the ſecond. 4.
667 12 *Chilperic* III. Brother of *Clotaire* the third, and Son of *Clouis* the ſecond.
680 13 *Theodorick*, Brother of *Chilperick*. 14.
694 14 *Clouis* III. Son to *Theodorick*. 5.
698 15 *Childebert* II. Brother to *Clouis* the third. 15.
716 16 *Dagobert* II. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond. 5.
722 17 *Chilperic* IV. Son of *Childebert* the ſecond, and Brother of *Dagobert* the ſecond, oppoſed by *Charles Martel*, in behalf of *Clotaire* the fourth Son of *Theodorick*, and Brother of *Childebert* the ſecond. 5.
727 18 *Theodorick* II. Son of *Dagobert* the ſecond. 15.
742 19 *Chilperic* V. Son of *Theodorick* the ſecond, the laſt of the *Merovignian* Family; depoſed by *Pepin*, Son to *Charles Martel*; the Pope giving approbation to his proceedings.

This *Pepin* and his Father *Martel*, were *Mayres* of the Palace to the former Kings; which *Mayres* were originally Controllers of the Kings Houſe, and had nothing to do with the affairs of State. But *Clotaire* the third, to eaſe himſelf and his Succeſſors of a burden ſo weighty, made the *Mayres* Vicars-general of his Empire. From henceforward the Kings followed their pleaſures, ſhewing themſelves only on *May-day*; and then ſeated in a Chariot, adorned with Flowers, and drawn by four Oxen. As for the *Mayre*, he openeth Pacquets, heareth and diſpatcheth Foreign Ambaſſadors, giveth remedy to the Complaints of the Subjects, maketh Laws, and repealeth them. An Authority ſomewhat like that of the *Præfecti Prætorio*, in the declining times of the *Roman* Empire; or that of the *Sultans* under the *Mahometan Caliphs*, and the Vice-Roys of the old *Egyptian Pharoahs*. An Office which had been long born by the Anceſtors of this *Martel*, ever ſince the reign of *Clotaire* the ſecond: in whoſe time the *Palatine* or *Mayre* was one *Arnulphus*, deſcended lineally from *Utilo*, the ſecond Son of *Theodon* the firſt Duke, and Nephew of *Aldagerius* the laſt King of the *Boiarians*, or *Bavarians*. Which *Utilo* being a Military Prince, and having done good ſervice to *Theoderick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, or *Metz*, againſt the *Danes*, then grievouſly infeſting the Coaſts of the *Lower Germany*; was by him made Warden of thoſe Marches, honoured with the Marriage of his Daughter *Plithilda*, and liberally endowed with fair poſſeſſions in that Tract. The fourth from *Utilo* was this *Arnulph*, the firſt *Mayre* of this Houſe; which Office having long enjoyed, he reſigned it to *Anſegiſus* his eldeſt Son, (the firſt who drew unto himſelf the managery of the whole Eſtate) and bidding farewel to the affairs of the world, became a Prieſt, and dyed Biſhop of *Metz*, *Anno* 641. Afterwards Canonized a Saint. *Anſegiſus* dying in the year 679, left his Authority and Office to his Nephew *Martin*, Son of *Ferdulphus* his younger Brother. But he being ſlain by *Ebroinus*, one of the Competitors, who a while enjoyed it: *Pepin* ſirnamed the *Fat*, Son of *Anſegiſus*, revenging his Couſins death upon *Ebroinus*, and cruſhing all the oppoſite Factions which were raiſed againſt him, obtained that honour for himſelf. And having much advanced the affairs of *France*, by the conqueſt of the *Sueves* and *Friſons*, dyed in the year 714. Succeeded to in this great Office, after his deceaſe, (for *Grimold* his only lawful Son, and *Theobaldus* the Son of *Grimold*, whom he had ſucceſſively ſubſtituted in the ſame, dyed not long before him) by *Charles* his natural Son, begotten on *Albeida* his Concubine: from his Martial Proweſs called *Martil*. Who in his time did to the Kings of *France* great ſervice, eſpecially in routing that vaſt Army of the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in the Battel of *Tours* before mentioned: thereby not only freeing *France* from the preſent danger, but adding *Languedoc* to the Crown, formerly in poſſeſſion of the *Goths* and *Moors*: for which he was created Duke or Prince of the *French*: yet would he not uſurp the Kingdom, or the Title of King, though both at his diſpoſal wholly; it being his ordinary ſaying, that *he had rather rule a King, than be one.*

To him ſucceeded *Caroloman* his eldeſt Son, *An.* 741, who held the Office but a year, and then left it to his Brother *Pepin*, Who being of leſs moderation than his Father was, made ſuch uſe of his Power, that partly by that means, and partly under colour of an election, confirmed by Pope *Zachary* the firſt, he took the Kingdom to himſelf; and the unfortunate King *Chilperick* had his Poll ſhaven, and was thruſt into a Monaſtery. For this inveſtiture, both *Pepin* and *Charles* his Son, did many good ſervices for the Popes, deſtroying, on their quarrel, the Kingdom of the *Lombards*, and giving them moſt of the Lands which formerly belonged unto the *Exarchs* of *Ravenna*. And on the other ſide, the Popes to requite theſe courteſies, confirmed the former in this Kingdom, by their Papal Power (which then began to bear ſome ſway in the Chriſtian World:) and gave the laſt (beſides the opportunity of attaining the Weſtern Empire) the Title of *Moſt Chriſtian King*, continued ever ſince unto his Succeſſors. And, to ſay truth, he well deſerved thoſe honours, had they been far greater, by many Victories obtained againſt the Enemies of the Goſpel; the ſeveral Heathens by his means converted to the Faith of CHRIST, the great abilities he had of Eſtate and Judgment, enabling him to ſupport the Majeſty of the *Roman* Empire. For he not only was ſole Monarch of the Kingdom of *France*, not parcelled out as formerly, and in times ſucceeding, into ſeveral petit Kingdoms and Principalities, but had added thereunto, by his own proper virtue, the greateſt part of *Italy*, the beſt part of *Germany*, all *Belgium*, the two *Pannonia's*, and a great part of *Spain*.

But this vaſt Empire falling into weak hands, which were not able enough to manage it, decayed in as little time as it was in raiſing: partly by the unnatural ambition of the Sons of King *Lewis* the *Godly*, the next Succeſſor of this *Charles*; who to make themſelves all Kings, firſt depoſed their Father, and then divided his Eſtate amongſt them, into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *France*, *Lorrein*, and *Germany*: four of which falling at laſt into the hands of ſtrangers, ceaſed to be *French*, and paſſed into ſuch Families as proved the greateſt Enemies of the Crown of *France*: partly by alienating the beſt and goodlieſt Provinces of *France* it ſelf, never again united till theſe latter days; which made the *French* Kings leſs conſiderable both at home and abroad; which we have touched upon before: and partly by the weakneſs and unworthineſs of the Kings of his Race, there being no queſtion to be made, but *Lewis* the *Stammering*, *Charles* the *Bald*, the *Groſs*, and the *Simple*, would have found better *Attributes*, if they had deſerved them. For by this means, the iſſue of this brave Prince grew ſo deſpicable in the eyes of their ſubjects, that firſt *Eudes*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*; and after, *Rodolph* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Uncle of *Eudes* (both of the Race of *Witikundus*, the laſt Prince

of

of the *Saxons*, (and consequently, both aliens to the House of *Charles*) possessed themselves severally of the Kingdom. And though they did not hold it long, being depressed and over-born by their opposite Factions: yet did they lay a fair ground for *Hugh Capet* to build his hopes on: Who being Son of *Hugh* the *Great* Constable of *France*, and Earl of *Paris*, the Son of *Robert* Duke of *Anjou*, younger Brother of *Eudes*, and near Kinsman of *Rodolph*; never left practising his party in the Realm of *France*, till he had got possession of the Regal Diadem, wherewith two Princes of this House had been invested formerly by the like Elections. But for the Kings of this second Race, founded by two brave Princes, but on the unjust grounds of an Usurpation; they are these that follow.

The second Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Carolovinian* or *Boiarian* Line.

A. Ch.		
751	1	*Pepin*, the Son of *Charles Martel*, succeeded in the Office of *Mayre*, *An.* 742; and having got the Regal Crown, vanquished the *Lombards*, made the *Boiarians* tributary, and crushed the *Saxons*. 18.
769	2	*Charles*, sirnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Pepin* subdued the Kingdom of the *Lombards* and *Saxons*; conquered the *Boiarians* & *Avares*, and vanquished the *Saracens* of *Spain*: Crowned Emperor of the West, upon *Christmass-day*, by Pope *Leo* the 3. *An.* 800. 46.
815	3	*Lewis* the *Godly*, son of *Charles* King of *France*, and Emperor, the last sole Monarch of the *French*, deposed by his ambitious and unnatural Sons: the Empire of the *French*, after his decease, being divided into the Kingdoms of *Italy*, *Burgundy*, *Germany*, *France*, & *Lorrein*; and *France* it self distracted into many Soveraign Estates and Principalities. 26.
841	4	*Charles* II. sirnamed *Calvus*, or the *Bald*, youngest Son of *Lewis*, King of *France*, and Emperor; vanquished by *Charles* the *Gross*, in the War of *Italy*. 38.
879	5	*Lewis* II. sirnamed *Balbus*, or the *Stammering*, Son of *Charles* the *Bald*, King of *France* and Emperor.
881	6	*Lewis* III. with *Caroloman* his Brother, the base Sons of *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Usurpers of the Throne, in the intancy of *Charles* the *Simple*.
886	7	*Charles* III. sirnamed *Crassus*, or the *Gross*, King of *Germany*, and Emperor; called into *France*, and elected King, during the Minority of *Charles* the *Simple*. 5.
891	8	*Odo*, or *Eudes*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Anjou*, of the Race of *Witikindus*, the last King of the *Saxons*; elected by an opposite Faction, outed *Charles* the *Gross*. 9.
900	9	*Charles* IV. sirnamed *Simplex*, or the *Simple*, the *Posthumus* Son of *Lewis* the *Stammerer*, restored unto the Throne of his Fathers; which after many troubles raised against him by *Robert* the second, Earl of *Anjou*, (whom he slew in Battel) he was forced to resign. 27.
927	10	*Rodolph* of *Burgundy*, Son of *Richard* Duke of *Burgundy*, the Brother of *Eudes*, succeeded on the resignation of *Charles* the *Simple*. 2.
929	11	*Lewis* IV. Son of *Charles* the *Simple*, sirnamed *Transmarine*, in regard that during his Fathers troubles he had lived in *England*, restored unto the Regal Throne on the death of *Rodolph*: opposed therein by *Hugh* Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, the Nephew of King *Eudes* by his Brother *Robert* before mentioned.
958	12	*Lotharius*, Son of *Lewis* the 4. disturbed in his possession by *Hugh Capet*, the eldest Son of the said *Hugh*, on the pretension of that House, by which at last he got the Kingdom.
977	13	*Lewis* V. Son of *Lotharius*, the last King of the House of *Charles* the *Great*. After whose death, (being King only for a year) the Crown was seized on by *Hugh Capet*; *Charles* Duke of *Lorrein*, Brother of *Lotharius*, and Uncle unto *Lewis* the fifth, being pretermitted.

And now we are come to the present Race of the Kings of *France*, founded in *Hugh Capet*; so called from the greatness of his head; Son of *Hugh* the *Great*, Earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and Grandchild of *Robert* the second, Earl of *Anjou*: which *Robert* was the Brother of *Eudes*, and Cousin-german of *Rodolph*, Kings of *France*. Who partly by his own wits, but chiefly by the weakness of the Mungrel-Issue of *Charles* the *Great*, having got the Diadem, transmitted it unto his posterity; the Crown descending in a direct Line from Father to Son, till the death of *Lewis* the tenth, sirnamed *Hutin*. But here we are to understand, that the Realm of *France* was at that time shut up within narrower bounds than it is at the present: the large and rich Countries of *Champagne*, *Normandy*, *Bretagne*, *Anjou*, *Poictou*, *Languedoc*, and the great Dukedom of *Aquitain*; besides those Provinces which constituted and made up the Kingdom of *Burgundy*, being aliened and dismembred from it. How they became reduced to the Crown again, will be discerned in the ensuing History, and Succession of

The third Race of the Kings of *France*, of the *Capetine* or *Saxon* Line.

A. Ch.		
988	1	*Hugh Capet*, of whom sufficiently before. 9.
997	2	*Robert*, the Son of *Hugh Capet*, Duke of *Burgundy* also. 34.
1031	3	*Henry*, the eldest Son of *Robert*, his younger Brother *Robert* being setled in the Dukedom of *Burgundy*. 39.
1061	4	*Philip*, the Son of *Henry*, who added *Berry* to the Crown. 49.
1110	5	*Lewis* VI. Son of *Philip*, sirnamed the *Gross*. 28.
1138	6	*Lewis* VII. Son of *Lewis* the Sixth, an Adventurer in the War of the *Holy Land*; as also was his Son and Successor.
1181	7	*Philip* II. sirnamed *Augustus*, by whom *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, with their several *Appendixes*, were taken from King *John* of *England*. 43.
1224	8	*Lewis* VIII. Son of *Philip Augustus*. 3.
1227	9	*Lewis* IX. sirnamed the *Saint*, renowned for his Wars in *Egypt*, and the *Holy Land*. He restored *Guienne* to the *English*, and added the Earldoms of *Thoulouse* and *Mascon*, to the Crown of *France*. 44.
1271	10	*Philip* III. Son of *Lewis* the ninth. 15.

1286 11 *Philip* IV. ſirnamed the *Fair*, King alſo of *Navarre*, in the right of the Lady *Joan* his Wife. 28.

1314 12 *Lewis* X. ſirnamed *Hutin*, King of *Navarre* in right of his Mother, whom he ſucceeded in that Kingdom, *An.* 1305. after whoſe death the Kingdom of *France* was to have deſcended to *Joan* his Daughter. 2.

1315 13 *Philip* V. called the *Long*, Brother of *Lewis Hutin*, partly by threats, promiſes, and other practices, cauſed a Law to paſs to which he gave the name of the *Salique Law*, for diſabling Women from the ſucceſſion to the Crown; and thereby quite excluded his Brother's Daughter: ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf, by his Brother *Charles*, who following his example, excluded, on the ſame pretence, his Neeces, *Joan*, and *Margaret*, the Daughters of *Philip*. 5.

1320 14 *Charles* IV. but in true accompt the fifth of that name, moſt commonly called *Charles* the *Fair*, Brother of *Philip* and *Lewis*, the two laſt Kings. After whoſe death began the Wars of the *Engliſh* for the Crown of *France*; challenged by King *Edward* the third, as Son and Heir of *Iſabel*, the Daughter of King *Philip* the *Fair*, and Siſter to the three laſt Kings. 7.

1328 15 *Philip* VI. ſirnamed *de Valois*, Son of *Charles* Earl of *Valois*, the ſecond Son of King *Philip* the third, and Uncle to the three laſt Kings; ſucceeded under colour of the *Salique Law*: of which *Charles* it is ſaid, that he was Son to a King, Brother to a King, Uncle to a King, and Father to a King; yet himſelf was no King. In this King's days was fought the famous Battel of *Creſſie*, *An.* 1343, in which the *French* Army conſiſted of about 70000 Soldiers; the *Engliſh* of 11800 only: yet the victory fell unto the *Engliſh*: by whoſe valour fell that day *John* K. of *Bohemia*, 11 Princes, 80 Barons, 1200 Knights, and 30000 of the common Souldiers. He added unto his Eſtate, the County *Palatine* of *Champagne*, the County of *Dauphine*, and the City and Earldom of *Montpelier*. 22.

1350 16 *John*, the Son of *Philip de Valois*; in whoſe reign was fought the Battel of *Poictiers*, wherein *Edward* the *Black Prince*, (ſo called for his black acts upon the *French*) with an handful of wearied Soldiers, (but 8000 in all) overcame the *French* army, conſiſting of 40000; of which they ſlew beſides the Nobles, 10000 of the common Soldiers, and took Priſoners K. *John* himſelf, and *Philip* his Son, 70 Earls, 50 Barons, & 12000 Gentlemen. 14.

1364 17 *Charles* V. the Son of *John*, recovered all thoſe pieces (except only *Calice*) which the *Engliſh* had before gotten from his Father and Grandfather. He is called commonly *Charles* the *Wiſe*; but *Lewis* the 11. would by no means allow him that attribute: affirming, that it was but a fooliſh part to give his younger Brother *Philip* the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and withall, the Heir of *Flanders* to Wife. And ſo it proved in the event.

18 *Charles* VI. a weak and diſtracted Prince; in whoſe reign, *Henry* the fifth of *England*, called in by the Faction of *Burgundy*, againſt that of *Orleans*; married the Lady *Katherine*, daughter of this King; and was thereupon made Regent of *France* during the Kings life, and Heir apparent of the Kingdom. But he had firſt won the great Battel of *Agincourt*, *Anno* 1415, in which the *Engliſh* having an Army but of 15000 vanquiſhed an Army of the *French* conſiſting of 52000 men; of which were ſlain 5 Dukes, 8 Earls, 25 Lords, 8000 Knights and Gentlemen of note, and 25000 of the Commons, the *Engliſh* loſing but one Duke, one Earl, and 600 Souldiers. This unfortunate Prince loſt what his Predeceſſor, *Philip* the ſecond, had taken from King *John* of *England*, and had not been reſtored by King *Lewis* the ninth.

1423 19 *Charles* VII. Son of *Charles* the Sixth, after a long and bloody War, recovered from the *Engliſh* (then divided by domeſtick diſſention) all their Lands and Signiories in *France*, except *Calice* only.

1461 20 *Lewis* XI. Son of *Charles* the Seventh, added unto his Crown the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, the Earldom of *Provence*, (and therewithall a Title unto *Naples* and *Sicil*) and a great part of *Picardy*. A Prince of ſo great wants, or ſuch ſordid parſimony, that there is found a reckoning in the Chamber of Accompts in *Paris*, of two ſhillings for new ſleeves to his old Doublet; and three half pence for liquor to greaſe his Boots.

1484 21 *Charles* VIII. Son of *Lewis* the 11th, who quickly won, and as ſoon loſt the Kingdom of *Naples*; which he laid claim to in the right of the Houſe of *Anjou*. By the marriage of *Anne* the Heir of *Bretagne*, he added that Dukedom to his Crown.

1498 22 *Lewis* XII. Son of *Charles*, and Grand-ſon of *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, (which *Lewis* was a younger Son of the fifth) ſucceeded as the next Heir-male of the Houſe of *Valois*. He diſpoſſeſſed *Ludowick Sforze*, of the Dutchy of *Millain*, and divided the Realm of *Naples* with *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; but held neither long. By his marriage with *Anne* of *Bretagne*, the Widow of his Predeceſſor, he confirmed that Dukedom to his Houſe; united after to the Realm by an Act of State. After his death, the *Engliſh*, to prevent the growing greatneſs of *Spain*, began to cloſe in with the *French*, and grew into great correſpondencies with them; inſomuch that all the following Kings, until *Lewis* the 13th, (except *Francis* the ſecond, a King of one year, and no more) were all Knights of the *Garter*.

1515 23 *Francis*, Duke of *Angoleſme*, Grand-ſon of *John* of *Angoleſme*, one of the younger Sons of the ſaid *Lewis* Duke of *Orleans*, ſucceeded on the death of *Lewis* the 12th, without Iſſue male. Took Priſoner at the Battel of *Pavie*, by *Charles* the fifth, with whom he held perpetual Wars; he being as unwilling to endure a Superiour, as the Emperour was to admit an Equal. 32.

1547 24 *Henry* II. Son of *Francis*, recovered *Calice* from the *Engliſh*, and drove *Charles* out of *Germany*, and took from him *Metz*, *Toul*, and *Verdun*, three Imperial Cities, ever ſince members of this Kingdom.

1559 25 *Francis* II. Son of *Henry* the 2d, King of the *Scots* alſo, in the right of *Mary* his Wife.

1560 26 *Charles* IX. Brother of *Francis* the ſecond, the Author of the Maſſacre at *Paris*. 14.

1574 27 *Henry* III. elected King of *Poland*, in the life of his Brother, whom he ſucceeded at his death. The laſt King of the Houſe of *Valois*; ſtripped of his life and Kingdom by the *Guiſian* Faction, called the *Holy League*. 15.

1589 28 *Henry* IV. King of *Navarre*, and Duke of *Vendoſme*, ſucceeded as the next heir-male,

to *Henry* the 3d, in the right of the Houſe of *Bourbon*, deſcended from *Robert* Earl of *Clermont*, a younger Son of *Lewis* the ninth. He ruined the *Holy League*, cleared *France* of the *Spaniards*, into which they had been called by that potent and rebellious Faction; and laid *La Breſs* unto the Crown, together with the Eſtates of *Bearn*, and *Baſe Nivarre*: and after a ten years time of Peace, was villanouſly murdered by *Ravillac*, in the Streets of *Paris*. 21.

1610 29 *Lewis* XIII. Son of *Henry* the Fourth; the moſt abſolute King of *France*, ſince the death of *Charles* the *Great*. For to the reduction of the ſcattered and diſmembred Provinces, (the work of his many Predeceſſors) he added the reduction of all the Forts and Garriſons held by the *Hugonots* in that Kingdom, (three hundred at the leaſt in number) ſeized on the Dukedom of *Bar*, and ſurpriſed that of *Lorrein*; both which he held until his death. 32.

1642 30 *Lewis* XIV. Son of *Lewis* the 13th, and of the Lady *Anne*, eldeſt daughter of *Philip* the third of *Spain*; ſucceeded at the age of four years, under the Government of his Mother: the 30th King of the Line of *Capet*, the 43d from *Charles* the *Great*, and the 64th King of *France*, (or rather of the *French*) now living.

As for the *Government* of theſe Kings, it is meerly *Regal*; or, to give it the true name, *Deſpotical*; ſuch as that of a Maſter over his Servants: the King's Will going for a Law; and his *Edicts* as valid as a Sentence of the Court of *Parliament*. *Quod principi placuerit*, Legis *habet vigorem*, was a Prerogative belonging to the *Roman* Emperours, as *Juſtinian* tells us in his *Inſtitutes*: and the *French* Kings deſcending from *Charles* the *Great*, claim it as their own. The *Kings Edicts* always ending with theſe binding words, *Car tel eſt noſtre plaiſir*, For ſuch is Our pleaſure. And though he ſometimes ſends his *Edicts* to be *verified*, or approved, in the Parliament of *Paris*; and his Grants and Patents to be ratified in the *Chamber* of *Accompts*, there holden: yet this is nothing but a meer *formality*, and point of circumſtance, thoſe *Courts* not daring to refuſe what the King propoſeth. It is *Car tel eſt noſtre Plaiſir*, which there goeth for *Law*. And by this intimation of his Royal Pleaſure, doth he require ſuch *Taxes*, as the neceſſity of his affairs, the greedineſs of his Officers, or the importunity of Suiters, do ſuggeſt unto him: the *Patrimony* of the Crown being ſo exhauſted by the riot and improvidence of former Princes, that the King hath no other way to maintain his State, defray his Garriſons, reward ſuch as deſerve well of him, and ſupport thoſe that depend upon him, but only by laying what he pleaſeth on the backs of his Subjects; againſt which there is no diſpute by the *Common People*, though many times the *Great Princes* have demurred upon it. And therefore to make them alſo inſtrumental to the *publick Slavery*, the Kings are willing to admit them to ſome part of their ſpoil, to give them ſome *exemption* from thoſe common burdens; and to connive at the oppreſſing of their Tenants, againſt all good conſcience: that being ſo priviledged themſelves, they may not interrupt the King in his *Regal Courſes*.

As for the *French* Parliaments, or Aſſembly of the three Eſtates, which heretofore were of great credit and renown, and looked on as the principal Bulwark of the Publick Liberty, being firſt diſcontinued by reaſon of the ſharp & continual Wars which the *Engliſh* made in this Kingdom for the ſpace of 100 years and upwards, they afterward became much weakned by the Policy of K. *Lewis* the 11. and the Kings ſucceeding; and finally, by K. *Lewis* the 13. were laid by for ever. For, finding them to retain ſomething ſtill of their ancient ſtomach, and apt enough to claſh with that abſolute Soveraignty which his Predeceſſors had attained to, he reſolved to make no more uſe of them for the times to come; inſtead whereof, he ordained another kind of meeting, which he called *La Aſſemble des Nattables*; that is to ſay, the Aſſembly of ſome principal men, compoſed of ſome ſelected perſons out of every Order or Eſtate, (of his own nomination) whereunto ſhould be added ſome Counſellor out of every one of the eight Courts of Parliament; which, being fewer in number, would not breed ſuch a confuſion as the others did, and he withal more pliant and conformable to the Kings deſires. Now the eight Courts of Parliament before mentioned, being but as ſo many Courts of Judicature, (like to ours in *Weſtminſter*) are theſe that follow; that is to ſay, The Parliament 1. of *Paris*, comprehending the Countries of *France* ſpecial, *Champagne*, *Picardy*, the Provinces and Eſtates of *Anjou*, *La Beauſſe*, *Berry*, *Poictou*, the Provinces which make up the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, with the County of *Lionois*. 2. Of *Rouen*, for the Dukedom of *Normandy*. 3. Of *Renes* for the Dukedom of *Bretagne*. 4. Of *Bourdeaux*, for the whole Dukedom of *Aquitain*, (except only *Bearn*) with the Countries of *Limouſin*, and *Perigort*. 5. Of *Tholouſe*, for the Earldom of *Languedoc*, and *Quercu*. 6. Of *Aix*, for the Earldom of *Provence*. 7. Of *Gremble*, for the Country of *Daulphin*. And 8. of *Biajou*, for the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the ſmall Country of *La Breſs*; to which is added of late times by King *Lewis* the 13th, the little Parliament of *Pau*, for the Country of *Bearn*. Beſides which Parliaments, there are certain other Courts in ſome principal Cities, called *Courts Preſidial*, reſembling thoſe with us at *York*, and the Marches of *Wales*, whilſt they continued in that Power and Juriſdiction which at firſt they had. And for the better ordering of the whole Eſtate, (with reference eſpecially to matters military) it is divided into 12 ſeveral and diſtinct Governments; that is to ſay, 1. Of the Iſle of *France*, 2. *Burgundy*, 3. *Normandy*, 4. *Guien*, 5. *Bretagne*, 6. *Champagne*, 7. *Picardy*, 8. *Languedoc*, 9. *Provence*, 10. *Daulphine*, 11. *Lionois*, and 12. *Orleanois* for in this order they were ranked by the laſt King: over every one of which is placed a Governour, with ſuch authority as the Lords Lieutenants had in *England* in their ſeveral Counties; all of them carrying matters with a very high hand on the common people, and ſometimes ſtanding on terms alſo with the Kings themſelves, but inſtrumental notwithſtanding to the common ſervitude, which hath been laid upon this Nation generally, as before is ſaid.

The *Power* of the *French* King over his Subjects, being ſo *tranſcendent*, it cannot be, but that his *Forces* muſt be very great, and would be greater than they are, but that they dare not truſt the common people with the uſe of Arms, for fear they ſhould refuſe to pay the accuſtomed Taxes, or forſake their Trades, or turn their Farms back upon their Landlords. But for an *Eſſay* of what a *French* King is able to do in this kind, it is ſaid, that *Charles* the 9th, in Garriſons and ſeveral Armies in the field, had 15000 Horſe, and 100000 Foot, of his own Nation; beſides 50000 Horſe, and Foot of *Swiſſes*, *Germans*, and others. Nor was this more than what was done by *Lewis* the 13, within few years paſt, who had at once five Royal Armies in the field, in *Italy*, *Spain*, *Germany*, and the *Belgick* Provinces; and kept no fewer than 120000 fighting-men in pay and action, for ſome years together. Nor did this laſt King keep up the Military Power of *France* for Land-ſervice only, at ſo high a pitch,

but

but he also brought the Naval Power thereof into estimation. For whereas the *French* Kings before his time, were very weak and inconsiderable on the Seas, and had scarce any men of War, but what they either hired or borrowed from more Seafaring Nations: this King became so strong in shipping in a little space, (I doubt some neighbouring Princes in the mean time looked not well about them) that he was able to rigg and arm 10000 sail of good Ships, and upwards, fit for any service. But to return again to the power at Land, in which the force of these Kings doth consist especially; it is conceived by some, and affirmed by others, that he is able to bring into the field for a sudden service, no less than 60 Companies of *Men of Arms*, 20 Cornets of *Light-Horse*, and 5 Companies of *Harquebusiers* on Horseback, which amount to 10000 in the total; together with 20 Ensigns of *French* Foot, and 40 of *Swisses*; and yet leave his *Garrisons* well manned, and his *Forts* and *Frontiers* well and sufficiently defended.

What the Revenues are in a State so subject to the will and pleasure of the King, is hard to say; being also more or less, as the times and their occasions vary: according unto which, the Revenues of this Crown have much altered. *Lewis* the 11. gathered one million and a half of Crowns; *Francis* the first brought them to 3 *millions*; his successor, *Henry* the second, to six; *Charles* the ninth, to seven; *Henry* the third, to ten; afterwards they were inhanced to fifteen. And in the time of *Henry* the fourth, the Treasurer of the Duke of *Mayenne* did not shame to say, That his Master had more improved the Revenue of *France*, than any King had done before him, advancing it from two to five millions *sterling*. A fair *Intrado*, but far short of those infinite sums which are extorted from the people; whereof a tenth part comes not clearly to the Kings Exchequer. But what need more be said, than that of *Lewis* the 11: who used to say, That *France* was a Meadow which he mowed every year, and as often as he listed: and indeed their Impositions cannot but be great, since there are no less than 30000 Under Officers employed to gather them. Hence I believe sprung that wish of *Maximilian* the Emperor, which was that *he* (if it were possible) *might be a God*; and, *that having two Sons, the eldest might be a God after him*; *and the second, King of* France. And this was also the cause, that in the Wars between *Charles* the fifth, and *Francis* the first, when the Emperors Herald had bid defiance to the King, from *Charles* Emperor of *Germany*, King of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Aragon*, and *Naples*, Arch-Duke of *Austria*, &c. with the rest of his Titles; the King commanded the Herald to return the Challenge from *Francis* King of *France*; commanding him to repeat *France* as many times as the other had petty Earldoms in his stile. And on the other side of no less bravery and fansie was the saying of the Duke of *Alva*, who being disswaded by one of his Commanders, from the War with the *Netherlands*, in regard of the great support they were like to have from the Queen of *England*, the King of *Denmark*, the Dukes of *Saxony* and *Brunswick*, the Earls of *Nassaw*, &c. Tush man! (said he) there will be more Kings and Princes on our side, than theirs; that is to say, the Emperor of *Mexico* and *Peru*; the Kings of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Sardinia*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Milain*, the Earls of *Habspurg*, *Charolois*, &c. But letting pass these flashes and conceits of wit; certain it is, (to say the truth) considering the compactedness thereof within it self, the admirable fertility of the soil, the incredible multitudes of people, and the conveniency of situation betwixt *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; the name of *France* might ballance all the other's Titles.

The chief *Orders* of *Knighthood* in this Kingdom, were first of the *Gennet*, founded by *Charles Martel*, *Mayre* of the *French Palace*: and so called either from *Jane* his Wife, as *Haillan* would have it, or from the *Gennets* of *Spain*, over whom he triumphed at the Battel of *Tours*, as *Bellay* writeth: It ended in the days of S. *Lewis*. The Knights of the Order wore a Ring, wherein was engraven the form of a *Gennet*.

2. Of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers, so called, *quasi pares inter se*; said to be instituted by *Charles* the *Great*, in his Wars against the *Saracens*. Six of these were of the *Clergie*. 1. The Arch-bishop and Duke of *Rhemes*, 2. the Bishop and Duke of *Laon*, 3. the Bishop and Duke of *Langres*, 4. the Bishop and Earl of *Beuvois*, 5. the Bishop and Earl of *Noyon*, and 6. the Bishop and Earl of *Chalons*. And six others of the *Temporality*: 1. the Duke of *Burgundy*, 2. Duke of *Normandy*, 3. Duke of *Guienne*, 4. Earl of *Tholouse*, 5. Earl of *Champagne*, 6. Earl of *Flanders*. These are they so much memorized in the Legends of the old *French* Writers, but falsly, and on no ground: it being impossible that those should be of the foundation of *Charles* the *Great*, in whose time there were none of those Dukes and Earls, except the Earl of *Tholouse* only. Therefore with better reason it may be thus concluded on, that the *Twelve Peers* were instituted by *Charles* the *Great*, though that honour not by him appropriated unto any particular Estates and Titles; but left at large to be disposed of according to the personal merit of the best deservers: it being most sure, that neither *Rowland*, nor *Oliver*, nor Duke *Naimes*, nor *Ogier* the *Dane*, had any of the Titles above mentioned. But for the fixing of this Dignity in the Dukedoms and Earldoms before named, it is said, by some, to have been done by *Hugh Capet*; others refer it to *Lewis* the 7th. in whose times all those Dukes and Earls were in *Rerum Natura*. But by whomsoever first ordained, the *Temporal Pairries* are extinct; and others, of no definite number, created by the Kings, as they see occasion, to gratifie a well deserver. Only at *Coronations*, and such publick *Triumphs*, the custom is, to chuse some principal persons out of the Nobility, to represent those *Temporal Peers*; as at the *Coronation* of *Lewis* the 13th, the places of the *Temporal Peers* were supplied by the Princes of *Conde* and *Conty*, the Earl of *Soissons*, the Dukes of *Nevers*, *Elbeuf*, and *Espernon*: the *Ecclesiastical Peers* remaining as at first they were. So that though *Charles* the *Great* might devise this Order, and institute the first *Twelve Peers*, as is commonly said; yet was not that high honour fixed in any of those *Temporal* Princes, till the times succeeding; but given to men of several Houses, according to the Kings pleasure, and their well deservings.

3. Of the *Star*, begun by *John* King of *France*, *Anno* 1352. They wore about their necks a Collar of Gold, at the which hanged a *Star*: the word, *Monstrant Regibus astra viam*. This Order was disgraced by his Son *Charles*, in communicating it to his *Guard*: and so it ended.

4. Of St. *Michael*, instituted by King *Lewis* the eleveth, *An.* 1409. It consisted first of 36 Knights; which afterwards were augmented to 300. The Habit of the Order was a long Cloak of white Damask, down to the ground, with a border interwoven with *Cockle-shells* of Gold, interlaced and furred with *Ermines*; with an Hood of crimson Velvet, and a long tippet. About their necks they wore a Collar woven with Cockle-shells: the word, *Immensi tremor Oceani*. It took the name from the Picture of St. *Michael* conquering the Devil, which was annexed to the Collar. Some think, that the invocation of St. *Michael*, was in allusion to the tenth of *Daniel*. Others say, he took St. *Michael*, in regard of an

apparition of that Saint, to his Father *Charles* the Seventh, on *Orleans* Bridge, in his Wars againſt the *Engliſh*. The Seat thereof was firſt at St. *Michael's Mount*, in *Normandy*, a place which had held longeſt for the *French* Kings, againſt the *Engliſh*: but it was afterwards removed to *Bois de Vincennes*, not far from *Paris*. St. *Michael's* day, the time of the Solemnity; and *Mount St. Michael*, the name of the *Herald* which did attend upon the Order; which in moſt things was precedented by that of the *Garter*.

5. Of the *Holy Ghoſt*; ordained by *Henry* the third, *An.* 1579, to rectifie the abuſes which had crept into that of St. *Michael*, having been of late times given to unworthy perſons: to reduce which to its firſt eſteem, he ordered that the Collar of St. *Michael* ſhould be given to none who had not firſt been dignified with this of the *Holy Ghoſt*, into which none to be admitted, but ſuch as can prove their Nobility by three deſcents. Their Oath is, to maintain the *Romiſh Catholick* Religion, and perſecute all Opponents to it. Their Robe, a black Velvet Mantle, powdered with Lillies and Flames of Gold: the Collar of *Flower de Lyces*, and Flames of Gold, with a Croſs and a Dove appendant to it. And hereunto he gave the name of the *Holy Ghoſt*, becauſe he was on *Whitſunday*, choſen King of *Poland*.

I omit the other petit Orders, as thoſe of the *Cock* and *Dog*, by them of *Montmorency*; of the *Porcupine*, by them of *Orleans*; and of the *Thiſtle*, by them of *Bourbon*.

The Arms of the *French* Kings in the days of *Pharamond*, and his three firſt Succeſſors, were *Gules*, three Crowns, *Or*. *Clouis* the *Great*, altered them to *Azure*, Seme of Flower de Lyces, *Or*; and *Charles* the ſixth to *Azure*, three Flower de Lyces, *Or*. In which laſt changes, they were followed by the Kings of *England*, varying the Coat of *France*, which they enquartered with their own, as the *French* Kings did; and by the *Princes of the blood*, who bare the Arms of *France*, with ſome difference only, for the diſtinction of their Houſes.

There are in *FRANCE*,
Arch-biſhops 17. Biſhops 107.
And Univerſities 15.

Viz.

1. *Paris.*	6. *Caen.*	11. *Montpelier.*
2. *Orleans.*	7. *Rhemes.*	12. *Avignon.*
3. *Bourges.*	8. *Bourdeaux.*	13. *Lions.*
4. *Poictiers.*	9. *Tholouſe.*	14. *Beſancon.*
5. *Angiers.*	10. *Niſmes.*	15. *Dole.*

And ſo much for *FRANCE*.

THE

The Pyrenean Hills.

BEtwixt *France* and *Spain*, are the Mountains called *Pyrenæi*, the reaſon of which name is very differently reported. Some fetch the original thereof from *Pyrene*, a Nymph, the Daughter of one *Bebrix*; ſaid by old Fablers to have been here raviſhed by *Hercules*: others conceive they were ſo called, becauſe much ſtriken with Lightnings, thoſe *Cæleſtial Flames*. But being the name doth moſt undoubtedly proceed from a *Greek* word which ſignifieth *Fire*. The more probable opinion is, that they took this name from being fired once by Shepherds, (theſe Hills being then extreamly overgrown with Woods:) the Flame whereof raged ſo extreamly, that the Mines of Gold and Silver being melted by the heat thereof, ran ſtreaming down the Mountains many days together, the fame of which invited many Foreign Nations to invade the Country. Which accident they place 880 years before the birth of our Saviour. Hereunto *Diodorus Siculus*, an old *Greek* Writer, adds no ſmall authority; who ſpeaking of this Conflagration, (as *Ariſtotle* and *Strabo* alſo do) addeth withall, τὰ μὲν ὄρη διὰ τὸ συμβεβηκὸς κληθῆναι Πυρηναῖα ἀπὸ τῆς πυρὸς συχνὰς ἡμέρας συνεχῶς ἐπισλέγοντος: that is to ſay, theſe Mountains had the name of *Pyrenees*, from the fire, which many days together ſo extreamly raged. And this Tradition backed by ſo good authority, I ſhould rather credit, than fetch the derivation (as *Bochartus* doth) from *Purani*, a *Phœnician* word, ſignifying dark or ſhady: though true it is, that theſe Mountains anciently were very much over-grown with woods, as before was noted.

But whatſoever was the reaſon why they had this name, certain it is, that they have been of long time the natural bound betwixt the great and puiſſant Monarchs of *France* and *Spain*; terminating (as it were) their deſires and purpoſes againſt each other, as well as their Dominions: if any thing could put a bound to the deſigns of ambitious Princes. Yet not more ſeparated by theſe Mountains, than by thoſe jealouſies and fears which they have long ſince harboured of one another; each of them manifeſtly affecting the Supreme Command. So that we may affirm of them, as the Hiſtorian doth of others on the like occaſion, *Aut montibus, aut mutuo metu ſeparantur*. The Mountains alſo make that *Iſthmus*, or neck of Land, which conjoins *Spain* to the reſt of *Europe*: the *Cantabrian* Ocean fiercely beating on the North-weſt, the *Mediterranean* Sea more gently waſhing the South-eaſt thereof. Their beginning at the Promontory now called *Oiarcho*, (the *Ocaſo* of *Ptolomy*) not far from the City of *Bayonne* in *France*, bordering on the Sea *Cantabrick*: from thence continued South-eaſtwards, betwixt both Kingdoms, to *Cabo de Creux*, (by the Ancients called *Templum Veneris*) on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the City of *Rhoda*, now *Roſas*, one of the Port-Towns of *Catalonia*.

The whole length, not reckoning in the windings and turnings, affirmed to be 80 *Spaniſh* Leagues, at 3 miles to a League. The higheſt part thereof, by the *Spaniards* called *Canigo*, and by the *Latins* named *Canus*: from which (as it is ſaid by ſome) there is a proſpect in a clear day, into both the Seas. But whether this be true or not, (for I dare not build any belief upon it) it is no doubt the higheſt part of all theſe Mountains; and took this name from the whiteneſs and hoarineſs thereof, as having on its top or ſummit, a Cap of Snow for moſt part of the year. In which reſpect, as the *Alpes* took their name, *ab Albo*; that, in the *Sabine Dialect*, being termed *Alpum*, which by the *Latins* was called *Album*, which before we noted: ſo did *Mount Lebanon*, in *Syria*, take its name from *Leban*, which in the *Phœnician* Language ſignifieth White; and *Lebanah*, Whiteneſs. Such people as inhabit in this Mountainous tract, have been, and ſhall be mentioned in their proper places. I only add, and ſo go forwards towards *Spain*, that the barbarous people of theſe Mountains compelled *Sertorius*, in his haſty paſſage into *Spain*, when he fled from the power of *Sylla*'s Faction, to pay them *Tribute* for his paſs: at which when ſome of his Souldiers murmured, as thinking it diſhonourable to a *Proconſul of Rome*, to pay tribute to the barbarous Nations: the prudent General replyed, that he *bought only Time*, a Commodity which they that deal in haughty Enterpriſes, muſt needs take up at any rate.

OF

OF

SPAIN.

HAving thus crossed the *Pyrenees*, we are come to *Spain*, the most Western part of all the Continent of *Europe*; environed on all sides with the Sea, except towards *France*; from which separated by the said Mountains: but more particularly, bounded upon the North with the *Cantabrian*, on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South with the Straits of *Gibralter*, on the East with the *Mediterranean*, and on the North-east with those of *Pyrenees*. The Figure of it compared, by *Strabo*, to an Ox's Hide spread upon the ground; the neck whereof being that *Isthmus* which unites it to *France*.

This Country hath in divers Ages been as diversly named. 1. *Hesperia*, either from *Hesperus*, a supposed King hereof; or from *Hesperus* the Evening-Star, under which it was supposed to be situate, as being the furthest Country Westward: to difference it from *Italy*, which many of the *Greek* Authors termed *Hesperia* also, named *Hesperia minor*. 2. It was called *Iberia*, either from the famous River *Iberus*; or from the *Iberi*, inhabiting that Country of *Asia* which we now call *Georgia*: as *Celtiberia*, from the mixture of those *Asian Iberi*, and the *Celts* of *Gaul*; by which name it occurreth often in *Appian* of *Alexandria*, and sometimes in *Strabo*. 3. *Hispania*, as the soundest judgments agree, from *Panus* the *Iberian* Captain. For the *Græcians* call it Σπανία, *Spania*, as may be proved in many places, that especially of the 15 to the *Romans*, vers. 28. Ἀπελευσομαι δι ὑμῶν εἰς τὴν Σπανίαν, *I will come by you into Spain*. No doubt but from the *Græcians*, the old *Romans* borrowed the name of *Spania*, which they often used: to which the *Spaniards*, according to their custom adding *E*, (as in *Escola*, *Escuda*, &c.) made it *Espania*, and now *Hispania*. In like manner as the famous City of *Sevil*, called at first, *Spalis*, (according hereunto, the Bishop hereof, in the Council of *Eliberis*, subscribed himself by the name of *Sabinus Spalensis*) in tract of time was called *Hispalis*. And yet I must not pretermit the Fancy of *Bochartus*, who fetching the names of most places from the *Punick* Language, will have it to be called *Spanija*, or *Sphanija*, by the *Carthaginians*, or *Phœnicians*, at their first discovery, from *Saphan*, which in the *Punick* Tongue signifies a *Conie*, with which that Country much abounded in the former times, the *Romans* being hence furnished with them. Let the *Reader* like it as he list.

The greatest length hereof, is reckoned at 800 miles; the breadth, where it is broadest at 500; the whole circumference, 2480 *Italian* miles. But *Mariana* measuring the compass of it by the bendings of the *Pyrenees*, and the creeks and windings of the Sea, makes the full circuit of it to be 2816 miles of *Italian* measure. And though, according to the smallest computation, it be above 460 miles in compass, more than *France*; yet is it far short thereof in numbers of people: *France* being thought to contain in it 15 millions of living souls; whereas *Spain* is reckoned to contain but 8 millions only, which is little more than half the number of the *French*. The reasons of which disproportions, are, 1. The *continual Wars* which they had for 900 years together against the *Moors*, in their own Country, by which they were consumed in the very growth. 2. The *Expulsion* of so many thousand Families of *Jews* and *Moors*, 124000 Families of the one, in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*; and 110000 of the other, by King *Philip* the third: which was as the lopping off of a main Limb from the Body *Politick*, though without any loss to the *Ecclesiastical*. 3. The *unnecessary* Wars maintained against all the rest of Christendom, ever since the time of *Charles* the fifth, out of meer ambition, before they were well cured of their former wounds. 4. The *infinite Plantations* made by them in the *East* and *Western Indies*, and all along the Sea-coasts of *Africa*; and those great Garrisons maintained in *Milain*, *Naples*, *Sicil*, the *Low-Countries*, and their Towns in *Africk*; consisting, for the most part, of natural *Spaniards*. 5. The barrenness of the Country in many places, unable to sustain great multitudes, but made more barren than it would be, for want of men to labour and manure the Land. And 6. and last of all; the *Impotency of both Sexes* for Generation; the men being generally more hot upon their lusts, than able for Generation; and the Women, for the most part, beginning to be Mothers so extreamly young, that Nature is decayed and spent in them, before they have run half their course. And 'tis a most true and undoubted Maxime, That the greatness of Cities, and populousness of Kingdoms and Commonwealths, do much depend on the generative virtue of the men, and the nutritive virtue of the Soil in which they live.

It is situate in the more Southernly part of the Northern temperate *Zone*, and almost in the midst of the fourth and six h *Climates*: the longest day being fifteen hours and a quarter in length, in the most Northern parts hereof; but in the extream South, near to *Gibraltar*, not above fourteen. Which situation of this Country, rendreth the Air here very clear and calm, seldom obscured with Mists and Vapours; and not so much subject to diseases, as more Northern Regions.

They

They are a mixt People, descending from the *Goths*, *Moors*, *Jews*, and the ancient *Spaniards*. From the *Jews* they borrow Superstition; from the *Moors*, Melancholy; Pride from the *Goths*; and from the old *Spaniards*, the desire of Liberty. The *Jews* first planted here by the Emperour *Adrian*; who having totally banished them their native Country, sent them hither to dwell: the total number of which plantation is said to amount to 500000 men, women, and children; and yet their numbers much increased in the time of *Vlidor Vlet*, the great *Caliph* of the *Sarazens*; who having made a Conquest of *Spain*, sent hither 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, the better to assure it to him. And so we have the coming in of the *Moors* and *Jews*; the Conquest of it by the *Goths*, and their setling here, shall be shewn hereafter: which several Nations, by long time, and intermarriages together, were at last incorporated into one. For their condition, it is said that they are highly conceited of themselves, great Braggards, and extreamly proud, even in the lowest ebb of Fortune. Which last appeareth by the tale of a poor Cobler on his death-bed; who (as *Barklaie* in his *Icon Animorum*, reporteth the story) commanded his eldest Son, coming to him for his last blessing, *to endeavour to retain the majesty worthy so great a Family*; *Memineris* (said he) *in majestatem assurgere familiæ tuæ dignam*. The same Author relateth another story to the like purpose. A Woman of this Country attended on by three of her Brats, went a begging from door to door. Some *French* Merchants travelling that way, and pitying her case, offered her to take into their service the bigger of her Boys: but she proud, though poor, scorning, as she said, that any of her lineage should endure a Prentiship, returned this answer: *Qui aut tu, aut ego, sciamus, in quæ fata sit genitus? For ought she or any knew, her Son* (simply as he stood there) *might live to be King of Spain*. Not much unlike to these, is that tale of a *Spanish Cavaliero*; who being for some faults by him committed, whipped through the principal streets of *Paris*, and keeping a sober pace, was advised by a Friend, to make more haste, that he might the sooner be out of his pain. But he, half in choler, replyed, *That he would not lose the least step of his pace, for all the whipping in* Paris. For indeed, their gate is Gennet-wise, very stately and majestical.

Of temperature they are hot and dry, which makes them very much given to women, and yet not very able for *Generation*. And this strong inclination unto women which they find in themselves, makes them so jealous of their *Wives*, that they permit them not to walk abroad, but when they go to Church; and then too veiled and so hooded, one can hardly see them; and not that neither only, but attended with their Damosels, and some trusty she-friend, that is to give an account of them at their coming back. *Mendoza*, an Ambassador from *Spain* in Queen *Elizabeths* time, used to find fault with the promiscuous sitting of men and women in the *Church*, used here in *England*, accounting it to be a very great *incentive* unto *lasciviousness*. To whom Doctor *Dale*, one of the *Masters of the Requests*, is said to have replied, That indeed in *Spain*, where the people even in the time of *Divine Service*, could not abstain from impure thoughts, and unclean gestures, that mingled kind of sitting was not so allowable: but the *English* were of another temper, and did not find any inconvenience in it. And it is possible, this humour of jealousie might be derived on them from the *Moors*, who in the strict guarding of their women, were the *Spaniards* Tutors; it being death in *Barbary*, to this very day, for any man to see one of the *Xeriffes* Concubines; and for them too, if when they see a man, though but through a Casement, they do not presently cry out. A frenzie which much rageth in most *Southern* people, but not predominant in the *Northern*; who do not only suffer their Wives to sit with other men in the Church, but even in the open and common Bathes also, two things which a true *Spaniard* would rather dye an hundred deaths, than give consent to. But though the *Women* are not permitted to stir abroad, the men take liberty enough, and are as good smell-Feasts as in any Country: it being observed of them by a very good Writer, that howsoever in their own houses they are temperate and content with little, yet when they go unto a Feast, they are as gluttonous, dainty, and desirous to eat good chear, as any people whatsoever.

But not to conceal their virtues, and make our selves merry at their follies, (wherein all other Nations have a share with them) they are questionless a people very grave in their carriages, in offices of piety very devout, and to their King very obedient; whose Greatness they affect more cordially, than any Subjects in the World: exact in doing Justice upon all Offenders, which commonly they administer without partiality: indulgent unto one another, and of their duties to their betters not unmindful. But that which deserveth the greatest commendation in them, is an unwearied patience in suffering adversities, accompanied with a resolution to overcome them. A noble quality, of the which in their *Indian* Discoveries they shewed excellent proofs, and received as glorious rewards: withall, of very daring spirits, great undertakers for the most part; and to say truth, the greatest enlargers of their Dominions, (according to the advantage of their situation) of any Nation under Heaven. For having first either exterminated or subdued the *Moors*, which for many hundreds of years were possessed of this Continent, the *Aragonians* lying on the *Mediterranean*, added to their Estate the Islands of *Majorca*, and *Minorca*; the Kingdoms of *Sicilie*, and *Sardinia*, and the Realm of *Naples*; the *Castilians* lying on both sides of the Straights, first took in some of the opposite Towns on the Coast of *Africk*; next, conquered the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*; and finally, discovered and subdued the most part of *America*: the *Portugals* lying with a long Sea-coast on the Western Ocean, possessed themselves of the *Azores*, most of the Sea-Towns of *Morocco*, and the Land of *Guinnia*; and doubling the *Cape of good Hope*, made themselves Masters of many Ports and Islands of great consequence in the *East Indies*; adding thereto, in fine, the large Country of *Brazill*, in that part of *America* which lay fittest for them; and the *Navarrois* (to conclude, though locked up by their greater neighbours from all Trade at Sea, and consequently enlarging their Dominions that way) adding to their Estates the most part of *Gascoigne*, the Palatinate of *Champagne*, the Earldom of *Evreux*, with many fair and large possessions in the Realm of *France* thereupon depending.

In reference to the *French*, it is said, that *the French are wiser than they seem*; and the *Spaniards seem wiser than they are*: wherein they agree with many particular men of other Nations, who according to the Philosopher, *Sapientes potius cupiunt videri & non esse, quam esse & non videri*.

In matters of War, the *Spaniards* are observed to be generally too heavy, slow, and dull; the *French* too heady and precipitate; the one losing as many fair occasions by delays, as the other overthroweth by too much haste: but between them both, they make one good Souldier; who according to the present opportunities, is to make use of the spur of Courage, or the bit of Respite. But of the strange and many differences

in

in temper, humour, and affections, between the *Spaniards* and the *French*, we have ſpoke more at large already when we were in *France*.

The Women are ſober, loving their Husbands or Friends; wonderful delicate, curious in painting or perfuming: and though they have Wine in abundance, yet are they not permitted to drink it; verifying therein the old *Engliſh* Proverb, that *none are worſe ſhod than the Shoo-makers Wife*. Herein in worſe condition than the Women of *France*; who though they are reſtrained from Wine before their marriage; yet, after that, they take what liberty they liſt, and are no more reſtrained from it, than the other Sex. But this is the leaſt liberty which the *French Women* have above the *Spaniſh*: theſe being ſo watched and over-looked, that it is hardly poſſible for them to hold ſpeech with any man, in buſineſs of moſt importance, and much leſs in matters of *civilities* only, thoſe having liberty to be courted at all times and places, even in the preſence of their Husbands, without any diſtruſt or interruption. Heretofore they were wondrous ſtrong; and, beyond belief, patient of the throws of Child bed: *Strabo* relating how one of theſe women being hired for Harveſt-work, and finding her travel come upon her; becauſe ſhe would not loſe her days wages, withdrew her ſelf into a Buſh; where, being eaſed of her burden, ſhe returned from one Labour to another. And many of them at this day uſe not to keep their Chambers above three days after their delivery, and then apply themſelves to their Houſhold-buſineſs, without either danger or delay.

The language is not the ſame in all places, though all called the *Spaniſh*. In *Portugal*, *Catalogne*, and ſome parts of *Valentia*, it hath a great mixture of the *French*; who in theſe parts have had much trade and negotiation. In *Granada*, and ſome parts of *Andaluzia*, it partakes much of the *Moor*; and in the Mountains of *Alpuxarras*, the *Arabick* or *Mooriſh* language ſtill remains in uſe. The Countries bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and *Cantabrian* Ocean, (but *Biſcay* ſpecially) have much in them of the Language of the ancient *Spaniards*, before made ſubject to the *Romans*. That which is common to them all, is the vulgar *Spaniſh* or *Caſtilian*, and hath much affinity with the *Latin*; *Breerword* in his *Enquiries*, reporting, that he hath ſeen a Letter, every word whereof was both good *Latin* and good *Spaniſh*. *Merula* ſhews a Copy of the like, *pag.* 300. By reaſon of which conſonancy with the *Latin*, the *Spaniards* call their Language, *Romance*. The other ingredients of this Tongue, are generally the *Gothiſh*, *Arabick*, and old *Spaniſh*, and in ſome places the *French* alſo, as before is ſaid; thoſe people having made great conqueſts, and having had great negotiations in this Country. It is ſaid to be a very lofty ſwelling ſpeech, as if it were faſhioned to command.

And as their Language, ſo their Laws do owe a great part of themſelves to the Laws of *Rome*: the Civil or Imperial Laws being generally uſed amongſt them, but intermixt with many cuſtoms of the *Goths*, and the Edicts or Conſtitutions of their ſeveral Kings. Thoſe of the *Goths* being firſt committed unto writing, and reduced to order by *Euricus* the firſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*: thoſe of *Caſtile* digeſted by the command of *Ferdinand* the third, *Anno* 1296, into ſeven Books, called the *Partidas*; not finiſhed till the time of his Son *Alfonſo*. *Leges* Hiſpaniarum *quas partitas vocant, in volumen redegit*, as *Tarapha* hath told us of him in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. The like done by King *James* the firſt, for the Realm of *Aragon*, *An.* 1248. reſpectively confirmed and ratified by the Kings ſucceeding. Authoriſed to be read and diſputed on in the publick Schools, as well as the *Decretals* the *Code*, the *Pandect*, or any other part of the Civil or Canon Laws.

The Soil hereof, where it is fertile and productive of the Fruits of Nature, yields not to any part of *Europe*, for delight, pleaſures, and Commodities; which here appear in greater ripeneſs and perfection, than in other places. But, for the moſt part, it is either overgrown with Woods, cumbred with wild and rocky Mountains, or of ſo hot a nature, and ſo ſandy withal, that it is not very fit for tillage; and ſo deficient in Water, as not good for Paſturage. So that we may affirm thereof, as of the Figs in the Prophet *Jeremy*; where it is *good*, no Country *better*; where *bad* and barren, few ſo inconvenient, and not any *worſe*. But this defect of outward Beauty and Commodities, is recompenſed by thoſe within; affording great plenty of Mines, both of Steel and Iron, and ſome Mines of Silver; of which laſt ſo abundant in preceding times, that it was never free from the Rovers of all Nations: and it is ſaid of *Annibal*, that out of one Mine only in the Country of the *Turdetani*, (now part of *Andaluzia*) he received 3000 pound weight daily, for a long time together. The principal Commodities which they vend into other Countries, are Wines, Oyl, Sugars, Metals, Rice, Silk, Licoras, a fine ſort of Wool, Cork, Roſin, Limmons, Raiſins, Oranges, and Fruits of the like nature. In Corn, which is the ſtaff of life, they are ſo defective, that they receive the greateſt part of what they ſpend, from *Italy*, *Sicily*, and *France*. Their Cattel neither fair, nor many; the Country being not able to breed them; ſo that their Diet is on Salads, and fruits of the Earth; every Gentleman being limited what fleſh he ſhall buy for himſelf and his Family, which if he ſend for to the Butcher, or Poulterer, by the ſmalleſt Child, able to do the Errand for him, he is ſure not to be defrauded in price, or quality. And yet they talk as highly of their gallant fare, as if they ſurfeited with the plenty of all proviſions: handſomly checked in that fond humour, by that worthy Souldier, Sir *Roger Williams*; of whom it is ſaid, that hearing once a *Spaniard* thus fooliſhly bragging of his Country Salads, he gave him this anſwer, *You have indeed good* ſawce *in* Spain; *but we have dainty* Beefs, Veals, *and* Muttons, *to eat with that* ſawce, *and as God made* beaſts *to live upon the* grais *of the earth*; *ſo he made* men *to live upon them*. And it is obſerved, that if a *Spaniard* have a *Capon*, or the like good Diſh to his Supper, you ſhall find all the Feathers ſcattered before his door, by the next morning.

And as it is in private Houſes, ſo for travelling alſo, the Inns and *Vents* of this Country are very ill provided: inſomuch, that moſt men that would not go ſupperleſs to ſleep, carry their proviſion at their Saddle-bows, and men of worth their bedding alſo. So poor and mean is the entertainment in theſe places.

Here lived in ancient times, the Giants *Geryon*, and *Cacus*, which were quelled by *Hercules*: and in the flouriſhing of the *Roman* Empire, 1. *Seneca* the *Tragedian*, and 2. the *Philoſopher* of the ſame name; a man of that happy memory, that he could repeat 2000 names in the ſame order that they were rehearſed: as alſo 3. *Quintilian* the Orator, 4. *Lucan*, and 5. *Martial*, excellent in their kinds: 6. *Pomponius Mela* the Geographer, 7. *Trogus Pompeius*, with his Epitomator: 8. *Juſtin*, and 9. *Paulus Oroſius* the Hiſtorian, this laſt a *Chriſtian*. In the middle times, 10. *Iſidore* Biſhop of *Sevil*, 11. *Julian*, and 12. *Hildephonſus*, Biſhops of *Toledo*, and after them, *Eulogius* the Saint and Martyr; men learned for the times they lived in. Then for the later Ages, 1. The renowned Cardinal *Francis Ximines*, and 2. *Arius Montanus*, famous for the Editions

ditions of the holy Bible. 3. *Masius*, a learned Commentator. 4. *Osorius*, well seen in the *Latin* Elegancies; and before all, as well in industry as time, 5. *Tostatus* Bishop of *Avila*; a man so copious and industrious in his writings, that it is thought he writ more sheets than he lived days. But of late times we find but few of their Works which have passed the Mountains; the *Latin* which they write, being very coarse, and savouring too much of the *School-man*, (wherein their excellency consists) and therefore they set out their Works most commonly in their own Tongue only. The chief for *Souldiery* amongst them, were formerly *Viriathus*, who held out so long against the *Romans*. *Trajan* and *Theodosius*, both *Roman* Emperors. *Theodorick* the second, King of the *Goths*, the victorious Conqueror of the *Swevians*. *Bernardo del Carpio*, and *Cid Ruis Diaz*, famous for their atchievements against the *Moors*: and in late times, *Gonsalvo* the *Great Captain*, who subdued *Naples*. *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*, who conquered *Portugal*, &c.

The *Christian* Faith, if we may believe the old *Spanish* Tradition, was first here planted by St. *James* the Apostle, within four years after the death of our Redeemer. To which Tradition, though they held very constant a long time together; yet of late days, *Baronius*, and other learned men of the Church of *Rome*, do most deservedly reject it. That St. *Paul* had a purpose of coming hither, is evident in his 15. Chapter to the *Romans*: and that he did come hither accordingly, is positively affirmed by St. *Chrysostom*, *Theodoret*, and divers others of the Fathers; which was in *Anno* 61. as *Baronius* thinketh. Nor did St. *Peter* want his part in this great service, but joyned with St. *Paul*; though not in the journey, yet in the sending of *Bishops*, and other *Presbyters*, to second the beginnings made by that Apostle. For it is said expresly in the *Martyrologies*, that *Ctesiphon*, *Torquatus*, *Secundus*, *Cecilius*, *Judaletius*, *Hesychius*, and *Euphrasius*, being at *Rome*, ordained *Bishops* by the two Apostles, *ad prædicandum verbum Dei in* Hispanias *directi*, were dispatched into *Spain* to preach the Gospel. Bishops, most likely, of those Cities where they suffered death; the names of which occurr in the *Martyrology*. Under the Empire of the *Goths*, the Faith of CHRIST, which at their coming hither they found right and *Orthodox*, was defiled with *Arianism*: not ejurated till the year 588, when that whole Nation did submit to more *Catholick* tendries. But *Spain* being conquered by the *Moors* under the conduct of *Musa*, Lieutenant-General to *Ulidor Ulit*, the *Arabian Caliph*; and *Mahometanism* over-spreading the whole face of the Country; such *Christians* as remained under their obedience, but few and inconsiderable both for power and quality, had the name of *Musarabes*. Encreasing in estate and numbers, by the fortunate successes of the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*, and other *Christian* Principalities growing up apace; they still retained their old name, and their ancient *service*, distinct from that observed in the Church of *Rome*; this being called the *Musarabique*, the other the *Gregorian* Missal: the one pretending S. *Isidore* Archbishop of *Sevil*, the other S. *Gregory* Pope of *Rome*, for the Author of it. And it continued in this state, till the taking of the City and Kingdom of *Toledo*, by *Alfonso* King of *Castile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1083. At what time *Bernard* a *French-man*, being made Arch-bishop of that City, and Primate of *Spain*, endeavoured the introduction of the *Roman* or *Gregorian* Service, but therein was opposed by the other Prelates, and generally by all the people, sufficiently tenacious of their ancient Forms. At last it was concluded (as the story telleth us) to commit the decision of the Controversie to a fiery tryal: both Books being cast into the fire, the *Gregorian* leaping presently out, and the *Musarabique* remaining unhurt in the midst of the flames. Convinced by this experiment, that both Forms were pleasing to Almighty God, they yielded so far to the desires of the King, (who was zealous in it) that the *Musarabique* being retained in six of the Churches of *Toledo*, (where it is sung to this day in a Chappel of the Great Church, called *Corpus Domini*) the *Gregorian* or *Roman* Service, should be entertained in the rest of *Spain*. According unto which Decree, the *Musarabique* (but not until some tract of time) came to be disused; and the *Gregorian* Service first admitted in the Cathedral of *Toledo*, *May* 29. *An.* 1091. And after, by degrees, in the rest of the Country.

Since that, they have been constant to the Rites of the *Roman* Church, and of the Faith and Doctrine therein professed, notwithstanding the great intermixture of *Jews* and *Moors*, especially since the setting up of the *Inquisition*: devised at first about the year 1478, by *Pedro Gonsales de Mendoza*, Arch-bishop of *Toledo*, against such converted *Jews* and *Moors*, as did return again to their superstition. But he, and those that had the first execution of it, being found so cruel, that, in the compass of nine years, no fewer than 3000 Families had been destroyed in that Diocese only. In the year 1481, it was thought fit to moderate the rigour of it, and to commit the managing thereof to some *Jacobins* or *Dominical* Fryers; who in the first place were to have an eye unto such Apostates, and to Hereticks, Magicians, *Sodomites*, Blasphemers of the name of God, &c. confirmed in this Authority, by Pope *Sixtus* the 4. This Institution in it self was not only necessary, (as the condition of Affairs then was) but exceeding laudable, had it been kept within the bounds at first intended. But of late, instead of being used on the *Jews* and *Moors* it hath been turned upon the *Protestants*, and that with such violence and extremity, of torture, that it is counted the greatest tyranny, and severest kind of persecution, under Heaven: insomuch that many *Papists*, who would willingly dye for their Religion, abhor the very name and mention of it, and to the death withstand the bringing in of this slavery among them. This is it that made the people of *Aragon* and *Naples* rebel, Countries where the people are all of the Papal side: and this was it which caused the irremediable revolt of the *Low Countries*; the greatest part of that Nation, at the time of their taking Arms, being *Romish Catholicks*: yet it is planted and established in *Spain* and all *Italy*, (*Naples* and *Venice* excepted) the managing thereof committed to the most zealous and rigorous Friers in the whole Pack: the least suspition of Heresie, affinity, or commerce with Hereticks, reproving the lives of the Clergy, keeping any Books, or Editions of Books, prohibited, or discoursing in matters of Religion, are offences sufficient. Nay, they will charge mens Consciences under the pain of damnation, to detect their nearest and dearest Friends, if they do but suspect them to be herein culpable. Their proceedings are with great secresie and severity: for first, the parties accused shall never know their accuser, but shall be constrained to reveal their own thoughts and affections. 2. If they be but convinced of any error in any of their opinions, or be gain-sayed by two Witnesses, they are immediately condemned. 3. If nothing can be proved against them, yet shall they with infinite tortures and miseries, be kept in the house divers years, for a terror unto others. And fourthly, if they escape the first brunt with many torments, and much anguish; yet the second questioning or suspition, brings death remediless. And as for torments, and kinds of death, *Phalaris* and his

fellow-Tyrants, come far ſhort of theſe Blood-hounds.

The adminiſtration of this Office, for the more orderly reglement and diſpatch thereof, diſtributed into twelve Courts, or ſupreme Tribunals, for the ſeveral Provinces of *Spain*; no one depending on another, but in ſome ſort ſubordinate to the general Inquiſition, remaining in the Court near the King's Perſon, which hath a kind of ſuperintendency over thoſe Tribunals: in all of which, thoſe of the Secular Clergy ſit as Judges, the *Friers* being only uſed as *Promoters* to inform the Court, and bring more Griſt unto the Mill. Of theſe Inquiſitors, every one hath the title of Lord, and are a great terror to the neighbouring Peaſants. There goeth a Tale, how one of their Lordſhips deſirous to eat of the Pears which grew in a poor man's Orchard not far off, ſent for the man to come unto him; which put the poor ſoul into ſuch a fright, that he fell ſick upon it, and kept his bed: being afterwards informed, that all his Lodſhip's buſineſs with him, was to requeſt a diſh of Pears; he pulled up the Tree by the Rooots, and carried it unto him with the fruit upon it. And when he was demanded the reaſon of that raſh and improvident action, he returned this anſwer, That he would never keep that thing in his houſe, which ſhould give any of their Lordſhips cauſe to ſend further after him. Certain it is that by this means the people of this Kingdom are ſo kept under, that they dare not hearken after any other Religion: than what their Prieſts and Friers ſhall be pleaſed to teach them; or entertain the truth if it come amongſt them; or call in queſtion any of thoſe palpable and groſs impoſtures, which every day are put upon them.

For by this means, the people of this Kingdom have been, and ſtill are punctual followers of the Church of *Rome*, and that too in the very errors and corruptions of it; taking up their Religion on the Pope's Authority: and therein ſo tenacious or pertinacious, that the King doth ſuffer none to live in his Dominions, which profeſs not the *Roman Catholick* Religion. Of which they have been, ſince the times of *Luther*, ſuch avowed *Patrons*, that one of the late Popes being ſick, and hearing divers men to moan his approaching end, uttered ſome words to this effect: *My life* (ſaid he) *can nothing benefit the* Church; *but pray for the proſperity of the King of* Spain, *as its chief Supporter.* And though he ſpoke theſe words of King *Philip* the 2d, yet they hold good in his Succeſſors ever ſince; being eſteemed the greateſt Patrons and Protectors of the *Catholick Cauſe*; which is indeed the proper intereſs of this King. For ſeeing that they have framed to themſelves an hope of the *Weſtern Monarchy*; and finding no fitter means of enlarging their own *Temporal*, than by concurring with the Pope in upholding his *Spiritual* Empire, they have linked themſelves moſt faſt to that See. To which end, they have taken upon them to be the Executioners of the Pope's *Excommunications*; by which Office, *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* ſurpriſed *Navarre*, not without hope of working the like effect, in ſome courſe of time, on the reſt of the interdicted Eſtates of *Europe*; as may be ſeen by the eager following of the *French* War againſt *Henry* the 4. till he had reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*; and the like War managed for many years together againſt Q. *Elizabeth* of *England*. And the purſuit of this *Spaniſh* Monarchy is ſo hotly followed by the *Jeſuits*, who in all their perſwaſions ſpeak not more of one God, or of one Pope, than they do of one King; that they hold it forth for the only means to unite the differences of the Church, and ſubdue that great enemy of *Religion*, the *Turk*. Nor is this only a Conjecture, or a project of the *Jeſuits* only, but a *deſign* avowed and declared in Print, that all the world may take notice of it: and that too in a Book not only licenſed by the *Provincial* of the *Dominicans*, and the *Supreme Council* of the *Inquiſition*; but by order from the *Lords* of the *Council*, with the King's *Priviledg* and commendation prefixt before it. The Book entituled, *La Convenientia de los dos Monarquias Catolicas*, &c. The agreement of the two Catholick Monarchies of *Rome* and *Spain*, ſet out in the year 1612, by one *John de Puente*. In the *Frontiſpiece* whereof are ſet two *Scutcheons*, the one bearing the *Croſs-Keys* of *Rome*, the other the Arms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; *In vinculo pacis*, for the Motto. On the one ſide of this, there is a Portraicture repreſenting *Rome*, with the Sun ſhining over it, and darting his Beams upon the Keys, with this Inſcription, *Luminare majus ut præſit Orbi & Urbi*, the greater Light to govern the City and the World. On the other ſide, another Image deſigning *Spain*, with the Moon ſhining over that, and darting her Rays on the *Spaniſh* Scutcheon, with this Impreſs; *Luminare minus ut ſubdatur Urbi & dominetur Orbi*, i.e. The leſſer Light made to be ſubject to the City, (underſtand of *Rome*) but to govern all the World beſides. Over all in the top of the Front or *Title-page*, in *Capital* Letters, *Fecit Deus duo Luminaria magna*, God made two great Lights. The whole Book being an indifferent large *Folio*, is but a Comment on this Text, which for ſubſtance is contained wholly in the *Frontiſpiece*, but more at large diſcourſed of in the *Volume* it ſelf; and plainly ſhews what is intended, and by whom. And yet perhaps the *Pope* and the *Jeſuits* both, may fail in that which is the main of their expectation; and if the project take effect, the *Spaniard* will then write himſelf *Luminare majus*, and make the Pope content with *Luminare minus*, for his part of the ſpoil; and glad to borrow all his light from the *Sun* of *Spain*. For, though the Kingdom of *Spain*, and Popedom of *Rome*, be thus ſtraitly combined, yet herein the Popes have over-ſhot themſelves; in that leaning ſo much to the *Spaniard*, and ſo immoderately encreaſing his dominion, they do in a manner ſtand at his devotion, and may peradventure, in the end, be forced to caſt themſelves into his arms, as their good Lord and Maſter. For certain it is, that the *Spaniſh Agents* have openly braved the *Cardinals*, and told them, That they hoped to ſee the day, wherein the King ſhould offer the Pope half a dozen to be made *Cardinals*, and he not dare to refuſe any; and that they themſelves ſhould choſe no *Pope*, but one of their *Maſter*'s naming. So great an inconvenience it is, more than poſſible it may be to the *Popes*, in making this Prince the one and only ſtring to their bow; and faſtning the dependancies of his *Roman Catholicks* upon him alone, excluding *France* and all the other Kings in *Chriſtendom*, of the *Romiſh* Party, from the honour of it. And yet ſo firm they are to their *Spaniſh* Principles, that no *favours* either granted to their perſons, or *Religion*, are of value with them, or thought worthy of their acceptation, if it come from any other *Fountain of Grace*, than the *Court of Spain*. Inſomuch as I have heard from a great Miniſter of State, that when ſome favours were obtained for the *Engliſh Papiſts*, on the treaty of the Match with *Spain*, they were ready with great greedineſs to embrace the ſame. But when the ſame *favours* were obtained for them on the Treaty with *France*, not a man of them would accept them. For which ſome of their Chiefs being asked the reaſon, returned this anſwer, That *by applying themſelves to the* French, *they might loſe the* Spaniard; *and it were great improvidence in them, to change an old and conſtant* Friend, *who had never failed them, for one of whoſe affections they had no aſſurance; and ſuch a one as by tolerating* Hereticks *in his own Dominions, ſhewed that he was no fit Patron for the* Catholicks *to rely upon.*

The

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Tagus*, celebrated for his Golden Sands; of which the Scepter of the old Kings of *Portugal* is affirmed (by some Writers) to be made: but I have not Faith enough to believe the same. The head of it is in the Mountain *Scira Molina*, near to *Cuenca*; from the which it runneth by the City *Toledo*; and then smoothly gliding by the Walls of *Lisbon*, doth pay his tribute to the Western Ocean. 2. *Ana*, (now *Guadiana*) which arising about the same place, runneth afterward under the ground the space of 15 miles: and hence the *Spaniards* use to brag, that they have a Bridg whereon 10000 Cattel dayly feed. An accident common to many other Rivers; as to *Mole* a small River in *Surrey*; *Erasinus* in *Greece*; and *Lycus* in *Anatolia*, of which last, thus *Ovid*:

Sic ubi terreno Lycus *est epotus hiatu,*
Exiſtit procul hinc, alioque renaſcitur ore.

So *Lycus*, swallowed by the gaping ground,
At a new mouth, far off, is rising found.

But having gotten up again, it loseth it self without recovery in the Western Ocean, on the South of *Portugal*, which is separated from *Extremadura*. 3. *Bætis*, now called *Guadalquior*, (which in the *Arabick* Language signifieth a great River) ariseth out of the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*; and passing by *Corduba* and *Sevil*, disburdeneth it self into the Southern Ocean, at the Haven of S. *Lucars de Barameda*. 4. *Iberus*, which having its head amongst the Mountins of *Biscay*, passeth on Eastwards by *Suragossa* and *Tortosa*, into the *Mediterranean*; the whole course thereof being 460 miles, of which it is navigable 200. A River of such note in the time of the *Romans* that it divided this whole Country into *Citeriorem*, and *Ulteriorem*; of which more anon. 5. *Duerus*, which rising in the same Mountains, passeth through *Portugal*, and so unto the Western or *Atlantick* Ocean. 6. *Minius*, of which more in *Portugal*.

Chief Mountains next unto the *Pyrenees* spoken of before. 1. The *Cantabrian* Mountains, called by *Pliny*, *Juga Asturum*; which rising out of a spur or branch of the *Pyrenees*, overspread the Provinces of *Biscay*, *Asturia*, and *Gallicia*, (coasting along the shores of the *Cantabrian* Ocean) where at last they end. 2. *Idubeda*, *Jubalda*, or *Aurantius Saltus*, so called by *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers: which beginning not far from the head of the River *Iberus* followeth the course of that River, by the City of *Burgos*, and endeth not far from the influx of it into the *Mediterranean*. 3. *Sierra Morena*, by *Cæsar* called *Saltus Castulonensis*, and *Mons Marianus* by *Ptolemy*; which beginning about the Town *Alcoraz*, coasteth along the right-hand shores of the River *Bætis*, to the South Seas. 4. *Sierra Nevada*, by *Ptolemy* called *Mons Illipulus*, and *Orospeda* by *Strabo*; but by the *Moors*, the Mountains of *Alpuxaras*. A chain of hills which thwart the Kingdom of *Granada*, from East to West; and amongst which the people to this day speak the *Arabick* Tongue.

The Country is said to have been inhabited by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*. Of whom it is affirmed in the *Berosus* of Frier *Annius*, and by such Chronologers as he hath imposed on by the name of that Author; that in the twelfth year of *Nimrod*, which was 140 years after the Flood, he seated himself in the *Asturia's*, a part of *Spain*, and there built the Town of S. *Uval*. A device so fooliſh and absurd, that it is not to be honoured with a confutation: for either *Tubal* must come hither by Sea or by Land: if by Land, then must he in the compass of a year or two, travel not less than 4000 miles (for so far it is, at least, from *Biscay*, to the valley of *Shinar*) with women and children, through most unpassable Woods and Mountains, which no understanding man can give belief to. If by Sea, besides the short time he had to provide shipping for so great a company, and so long a voyage, nothing is more improbable to a sober man than that he should leave *Italy* and *Africk* upon either hand; or pretermit the opportunity of possessing *Valentia*, *Andaluzia*, *Portugal*, being fruitful Countries; to fix himself in the most mountainous, woody, and barren Province of all this Continent. Yet most of our *Berosians* are so confident in it, that they make him the first King of *Spain*; from whom to *Gargarus Melicola*, they numbered 25 Kings more, who lasted 988 years: the chief of which are said to be, 1. *Hesperus*, who subduing also *Italy*, named both Countries *Hesperia*; but so that *Italy* was called *Hesperia* the greater; and *Spain Hesperia* the less. 2. *Hispanus*, whence they conceit the name of *Hispania* to be derived. 3. *Tagus*, 4. *Bætus*, and 5. *Anus*, whence the three Rivers in *Spain*, so called must by all means derive their names. 6. *Idubeda*, *Godfather*, no doubt, to the great Mountain so named. 7. *Sicileus*, from whom the Isle of *Sicily* is said to take denomination. 8. *Hespalis*, who is reported to have built the City *Sevel*, or *Hispalis*. 9. *Brigus*, the Founder of *Flavio Briga*, and other Towns ending in *Briga*. 10. *Lusus*, who gave name to *Lusitania*, now *Portugal*. The Catalogue of which Kings, I desire no man to believe farther, than that of our own State from *Brutus* to *Cassibeline*. A Catalogue so ill contrived, that whereas *Justin* speaks of *Habis*, and *Herodotus* of *Argunthonius*, *Macrobius* of *Heron*, and *Plutarch* of *Indibilis*, all Kings of *Spain*; none of all these are mentioned in it. So that the coming of *Tubal* (in person) hither, is a silly vanity; though we deny not but the *Spaniards*, or some Nations of them, may derive their Pedigree from *Tubal*, as being the descendants of the *Iberi*, whom *Josephus* saith to have been anciently called *Thobelos*: a name in which are all the *Radical* Letters of *Tubal*, and which differeth not much from it in sound. For somewhat before the supposed time of *Gargarus Melicola*, the *Iberians* are said to come in under *Panus*: divided after his decease, amongst many petit Kings and Princes, for the space of 900 and odd years, even till the first attempt which the *Carthaginians* made upon it; who found here no such Universal or Supream Monarch, as the *Berosian* Fablers dream of. During which time, we find nothing more observable and certain in the story of it, than the planting of Colonies on the Sea-coasts, by divers Nations, according to the Custom of those elder times. Of which sort were the Towns of *Emporia* and *Dianium*, founded by the *Massilians*; *Saguntum*, by the *Zacynthi*, or people of *Zant*, *Rhode*, by the *Rhodians*, as some think; the City and Isle of *Gades*, planted by the *Tyrians*, who after spread themselves over all the Coasts of *Andaluzia*. The first that came in bodies hither, in the way of Conquest, were the *Celtæ*, a great and potent Nation of *Gaul*; who mixing themselves with the *Iberis*, caused the whole Country to be called *Celtiberia*: but the time when they came into it, is very uncertain. Of the invasion of it by the *Carthaginians*, there is greater certainty. Who being beaten out of *Sicil* by the conquering *Romans*, *An. V. C.* 512, and not daring to look any more that way, bended their Forces to the West; and passing through the Straights of *Gibralter*, by the Isle of *Gades*, (their own long before) landed in *Spain*, under the conduct of *Amilcar*, the Father of *Annibal*, four years after the loss of *Sicily*. In less than twenty years following, *Amilcar*, (*Asdrubal* his Son in law),

and *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*, had made almoſt all *Spain* ſubject to the *Carthaginians*, even from the Weſtern Ocean to the *Pyrenees*; deſtroyed *Saguntum*, built new *Carthage*, and ſtruck ſo great a terror into all the Country, that had not *Annibal*'s deſign carried him to *Italy*, the State of *Carthage* had been abſolute Maſters of it, without further oppoſition or reſiſtance. But *Annibal* having taken all his Souldiers with him; and thoſe that came from *Carthage* to command in chief, not being men of parts ſufficient to go through with it; they loſt it piece-meal to the *Romans*, but in leſs time than they had been getting it from the *Spaniards*; the valour and good fortune of *Corn. Scipio*, over-ruling the declining-power of that mighty State. The laſt that here commanded for the State of *Carthage* was *Aſdrubal* the Son of *Giſco*; who being beaten by *Scipio* into the Iſland of *Gades*, left that alſo to the keeping of *Mago*, one of his Commanders; by whom being pillaged and deſerted, it forthwith yielded to the *Romans*, the *Carthaginians*, after this never poſſeſſing foot of ground in all this Continent.

The *Romans* thus becoming Maſters of a great part of it, divided it into *Ulteriorem*, lying from the River *Iberus*, Weſtward, becauſe furtheſt off from them; and *Citeriorem*, between the ſaid River, and the *Pyrenees*. But having totally ſubdued it, they divided it into three main parts; 1. *Tarraconenſem*, ſo called of *Tarragon*, the chief City of it, containing *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Gallicia*, &c. 2. *Bæticam*, ſo named of the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; comprehendeth the now Countries of *Granada*, *Andaluzia*, and part of *Extremadura*. 3. *Luſitanicam*, denominated from the *Luſitani*, the moſt potent people of that part, differing in extent from the preſent *Portugal*, (though this called *Luſitania*, by our modern *Latiniſts*.) For the old *Luſitania* comprehended part of *Extremadura*, and ſome part of the two *Caſtiles*; and no more of the preſent *Portugal*, than what lieth betwixt the two Rivers, *Ana* and *Duero*: that on the South of *Ana*, being laid to *Bætica*; and that on the North of *Duero*, unto *Tarraconenſis*. Of theſe three parts, *Bætica* was in moſt eſteem under the *Romans*; inſomuch that it contained 8 *Roman* Colonies, 8 *Municipal* Cities, and 29 other Towns, endued with the rights and priviledges of the *Latins*. The reaſon thereof was, that the people of this Country having been formerly broken by the *Carthaginians*, with more quiet endured the yoke of the *Romans*; whereas the reſt, for a long time reſiſted the entry and Empire of that prevailing City. But to proceed to the affairs of *Rome* in *Spain*, *Scipio Africanus* laid the firſt foundation of the *Roman* Government in this Country: which building, though undertaken by many excellent workmen, was not throughly finiſhed till the days of *Auguſtus*, being almoſt 200 years ſince the firſt attempt. He rooſed it, ſtrengthened it, and made it a principal building in his *Monarchical* City. For the old *Incolæ* were exceeding valiant and reſolute, ſometimes diſgracing, ſometimes endangering the *Roman* reputation; inſomuch that there were more Commanders loſt in thoſe Wars, than any other. At firſt the *Romans* fought not with the *Spaniards*, but with the *Carthaginians* in *Spain*: then periſhed both the *Scipio*'s, *viz.* the Father and the Uncle of *Africanus*. *Viriathus* held War for 20 years, *Numantia* held out almoſt 15, the *Aſtures* remained unconquered till the time of *Auguſtus*; and alſo reſolutely maintained their particular liberties, *Ut dijudicari non potuerit* (ſaith *Paterculus*) Hiſpanis *an* Romanis *plus eſſet in armis roboris, & uter populus alteri pariturus foret*. Such manner of men were the ancient *Spaniards* under *Rome* and *Carthage*; the firſt people of the Continent of *Europe*, (excepting *Italy*) on which the *Romans* did begin to enlarge their Empire, and the laſt that wholly were ſubdued and conquered by them. But being conquered at the laſt, and brought under the form of a Province by *Auguſtus Cæſar*; it was governed by their *Proconſuls*, *Prætors*, and other Magiſtrates, according to the diviſion before-mentioned. But *Conſtantine* the *Great* in his new modelling of the Empire, laying ſome part of *Africk* to it, made it a *Dioceſe* of the Empire; and ſubject to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Gaul*, by whoſe *Vicarius* it was governed: the whole being then divided into theſe ſeven Provinces, *viz.* 1. *Bætica*, 2. *Luſitania*, bounded as before; 3. *Gallicia*, containing the modern *Gallicia*, *Leon*, and *Oviedo*, the greateſt part of the *Old Caſtile*, and ſo much of *Portugal* as lieth betwixt the two Rivers of *Minio* and *Duero*, 4. *Carthaginenſis*, ſo called from the City of *New Carthage*, comprehending *New Caſtile*, *Murcia*, and *Valentia* with part of the *Old Caſtile*, *Aragon*, and *Andaluſia*. 5. *Tarraconenſis*, embracing all *Biſcay*, *Navarre*, and *Catalogne*, with the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Aragon*. 6. *Tingitana*, ſo called from *Tingis*, (now *Tangier*) a Town in *Africk*, on the oppoſite Coaſt, in which are now the great Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*. And 7. the *Province of the Iſlands*, containing *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuſa*, and *Frumentaria*. Of which ſeven Provinces, the three firſt were *Conſulares*, governed by *Proconſuls*; the other four, from their being under *Preſidents*, were called *Preſidiarie*. Being thus ſetled, it continued a *Roman* Dioceſe till about the year 400, when it was ſubdued by *Gundericus*, King of the *Vandals*; of which people, their beginning, atchievements, and final period, we will ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*, where they fixed themſelves: invited thereunto, partly to eſchew the ill neighbourhood of the *Goths*, who began to grow too potent for them; and partly to ſatisfie the deſire of *Boniface*, Governour of that Province for the Emperor *Valentinian* the third, againſt whom he had then rebelled, and wanted ſuch ſupport to make good his action. Thoſe being gone, the *Suevi* and *Alani*, who entred with them, could not long ſubſiſt; but were finally broken by the *Goths*, and afterwards diſpoſſeſſed of their Kingdoms alſo, (though ſuffered to remain in the Country ſtill) as ſhall be ſhewn hereafter in its proper place. As for the *Goths*, (of whom we ſhall ſpeak more in *Sweden*, and have already made ſome mention when we were in *Gaul*) having ſacked *Rome*, and waſted *Italy*, under the conduct of *Alaric*; they were bought out of that Country by the gift of *Narbonenſis* in *Gaul*, and ſo much of *Tarroconenſis* in *Spain*, as now makes up the Province of *Catalogne*: the compoſition being ratified by the marriage of *Athaulfus*, the Succeſſor of *Alarick*, with *Placidia*, Siſter to *Honorius* the Weſtern Emperor. *Vallia*, or *Wallia*, the next of name and note, (for *Sigeric* who interpoſed, reigned but one year only, and did nothing in it) Succeſſor of *Athaulfus*, having beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania* and *Carthaginenſis*, added thoſe Provinces alſo unto his Eſtates, and confining the *Vandals* within *Bætica*, was the firſt of the *Goths* which entituled himſelf King of the *Goths* in *Spain*. By their agreement with the *Romans*, they were to keep thoſe Provinces for the uſe of the Empire, which they did conquer and recover from the barbarous Nations; but contrary to all Faith, and the Articles of their Agreement having once beaten the *Alani* out of *Luſitania*, by the Prowеſs of *Vallia*, and the *Swevi* out of *Bætica*, under the conduct of *Theodorick*, the Brother of *Toriſmund*, they fell upon the *Romans* themſelves; whom *Euricus*, and his Succeſſors, by little and little, diſpoſſeſſed of all *Spain* on this ſide of the Streights. *Tingitana* held out longeſt, as furtheſt off, unfortunately attempted

tempted by *Theudes* the ninth King of *Goths*, whose Souldiers being set upon by the *Romans* on the Lord's day, or Sunday, refused to fight in their own defence, and were so miserably defeated, that there was never a man of them left to carry news of the overthrow. So early did the Superstition of a *Lord's day Sabbath* prevail upon this melancholick and devout people. But what this *Theudes* could not do, was performed by *Suintilla*; who in the short time of this reign, *An.* 642, made the Conquest absolute.

Let us next look upon the *Goths* as Lords of *Spain*, and we shall find them to have been *Christians* in Religion, and somewhat civilized by their long neighbourhood and conversations with the *Graecians*, before they turned their Forces into the West. Their company more desired in this respect, than that of the *Vandals*; who were not only *Pagans*, but far more barbarous. But these *Goths*, being for long time of the *Arian* Faction, did grievously afflict and persecute the *Orthodox* Prelates: continuing in this error till the death of *Leonigild* (or *Leutigildis* as some call him) the last Patron and Assertor of it. Their Government *Monarchical*, but the Kings *Elective*, (though for the most part they kept themselves to the Regal Family:) an Excommunication being laid on such, by the fifth Council of *Toledo*, as went about to alter that established course. Their Rule or Government was *Custom*, and that not left in writing, but committed to Memory and Tradition: written, Laws being first made by *Euricus*; which the ensuing Princes confirmed and perfected. What else concerneth them, we shall find in the close of this Catalogue of

The Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain*.

A. C.		
420	1	*Vallia* 20.
440	2	*Theodoric* 13.
453	3	*Thorismund* 3.
457	4	*Theodoric* II. 14.
470	5	*Henry*, or *Euricus* 18.
493	6	*Alaricus* 21.
513	7	*Gensalaric* 3.
516	8	*Amalaric* 11.
526	9	*Theudes* 18.
543	10	*Thelegisdus* 3.
546	11	*Agila* 5.
551	12	*Athanagildus* 14.
565	13	*Luiba* 3.
568	14	*Leonigild* 18.
586	15	*Richared* 15.
601	16	*Luiba* II. 2.
603	17	*Victoricus* 7.
610	18	*Gundebaris* 20.
630	19	*Sisebulus* 9.
639	20	*Richared* II. 2.
641	21	*Suintilla* 3.
644	22	*Sisenanda* 7.
651	23	*Suintilla* II. 4.
655	24	*Tulgas* 2.
657	25	*Vidisuindus* 10.
667	26	*Recesuind* 13.
680	27	*Bamba* 9.
689	28	*Ering* 7.
696	29	*Egypea* 7.
703	30	*Vitiza* 13.
716	31	*Roderick*, the last King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, elected to the prejudice of the Sons of *Vitiza*, which after proved the ruin and overthrow of the Kingdom.

For though the Kingdom went, for the most part, by Election, and that they had respect to the next of blood, (as at this time in *Poland* and *Bohemia*) very few *interlopers* being here admitted: yet some there were, who either by their merit, or some opportunity, got the possession of the Kingdom, though not at all relating to the Royal Family. Of which kind were *Theudes*, an *Ostro-Goth*, sometimes the Governour hereof for *Theodorick* King of the *Goths* in *Italy*, Protector of this Kingdom in the minority of *Amalaric*; and *Theudeselus*, or *Theudegisdus*, Nephew to *Totilus*, one of the Successors to *Theodorick*. The rest of principal note were, 1. *Theodorick* the first, slain in the battel near *Tholouze*, against *Attila* the *Hunn*; in defence of his own Country, and the *Roman* Empire. 2. *Theodorick* the second, who beat the Nation of the *Suevi* out of *Betica*; and 3. *Leonigild*, or *Leutigilde*, who deprived them of *Gallicia* also. 4. *Reccaredus* the first, who first imbraced the *Catholick* Doctrine of the Church, and rejected *Arianism*; and for that cause first honoured with the title of the *Catholick King*; afterwards resumed by *Alfonsus* the first King of *Leon*, and made hereditary by *Ferdinand* the King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, &c. Grandfather unto *Charles* the fifth. 5. *Euricus*, or *Henricus* as some call him, as remarkable for *Civil Polity*, as *Reccaredus* for *Piety*: as being the *Lycurgus* or *Ligislator* of this people; not governed till his time by a written Law, but either by uncertain customs, or at the pleasure of such Officers as the Kings set over them. 6. *Suintilla*, Son of *Reccaredus* the second, who having in the short time of his reign expelled the *Roman* Forces out of *Tingitana*, *An.* 642, was the first Monarch of all *Spain*, whereof *Tingitana* (though on the other side of the Sea) had been made a Province by the Emperor *Constantine*, as before was said. And of this Province was *Julianus* Governour in the time of *Roderick*, who being of the Faction of the sons of *Vitiza*, stomacked his advancement to the Kingdom; and thereby got the greater portion of the King's displeasure; who sending him upon an Embassie to the *Moors* of *Africa*, in the mean time defloured his daughter, named *Cava*: which the Father took in such indignation, that he procured the *Moors* (amongst whom he had gotten much credit) to come over into *Spain*. This request they performed under the conduct of *Musa* and *Tariff*, and having made a full Conquest, subjected it to the great *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors. It is recorded in a *MS.* History of the *Saracens*, that at the first coming of *Tariff* into *Spain*, a poor woman of the Country being willingly taken Prisoner, fell down at his feet, kissed them, and told him, that she had heard her Father (who was Letter'd) say, that *Spain* should be conquered by a people whose General should have a Mole on his right shoulder, and in whom one of his hands should be longer than the other. He, to animate his Souldiers against the next encounter, uncloathed himself, and shewed the mark; which so encouraged them, that they now doubted not the Victory. *Roderick* had in his Army 130000 Foot, and 35000 Horse. *Tariff* had 30000 Horse and 180000 Foot. The Battel continued seven days together, from morning to night; at last the *Moors* were victorious. What became of King *Roderick*, was never known. His Souldiers took one arrayed in their King's Apparel, whom upon examination they found to be a Shepherd; with whom the King, after the discomfiture, had changed clothes. It is written also in *Rodericus Toletanus*, that before the coming of those *Saracens*, King *Roderick*, upon hope of some treasure, did open a part of the Palace, of long time forbidden to be touched; but found nothing but Pictures which resembled the *Moors*, with a Prophesie, that when-

whensoever the Palace was there opened, the people there resembled, should overcome *Spain*; and so it happned, *An.* 724.

The *Moors*, now Lords of *Spain* by the treason of *Julian*, (who having seen the miserable death of his wife and children, was starved in Prison by the *Africans*) permitted the free use of *Religion* to the old Inhabitants; lest they seeking new dwellings fot the Liberty of Conscience, should leave their native Soyl desolate. The *Moors* finished their Conquest in five years say some; others, in two; and some again in eight Months. To keep the new-conquered Country in subjection, no way was so convenient, as to plant Colonies: but the *Morisco* women would not abandon their old seats. Hereupon *Musa* and *Tariff*, by gifts, pardons, and perswasions, drew many *Christian* women to forsake their *Religion*, whom they married to the Souldiers. Not long after *Ulidor Ulit*, the great *Caliph*, sent over about 50000 Families of *Moors* and *Jews*, assigning them a convenient portion of Lands, to be held with great Immunities, and upon small Rents. These politick courses notwithstanding, the *Moors* long enjoyed not the sole Soveraignty herein: for the *Christians* having now recovered breath, chose themselves Kings; and the Authority of the *Caliphs* declining, gave the *Moors* liberty to erect divers petit Royalties; many of which, by little and little, were brought under the command of greater and more powerful Princes. So that at last, *Spain* fell into a fifteenfold division, *viz.* into the Kingdoms and proprietary Estates of 1. *Navarre*, 2. *Biscay*, and 3. *Guipuscoa*, 4. *Leon* and *Oviedo*, 5. *Gallicia*, 6. *Corduba*, 7. *Granada*, 8. *Murcia*, 9. *Toledo*, 10. *Castile*, 11. *Portugal*, and the Members of it, 12. *Valentia*, 13. *Catalonia*, 14. the Kingdom of *Majorca*, and 15. that of *Aragon*: not to say any thing of the petit Kingdoms of *Jaen*, *Algozire*, and *Sevil*, besides others of like nature to them, erected by the factious and divided *Moors*; but of short continuance all of them, and of little note. All now reduced at this day, under the three Governments of *Castile*, *Portugal*, and *Aragon*; the Kingdoms and Estates of *Leon*, *Navarre Corduba*, *Granada*, *Gallicia*, *Biscay*, *Murcia*, and *Toledo*, being under *Castile*; *Portugal* with *Algarve*, and the Isles of *Azores*, an entire Government of it self; *Valentia*, *Catalonia*, and *Marjorca*, under that of *Aragon*.

1. NAVARRE.

NAVARRE, the second Kingdom for antiquity in *Spain*, is bounded on the East with the Principality of *Bearn*, in the Kingdom of *France*; on the West, first with the River *Ebro*, or *Iberus*; and after, with a little River falling into it, near *Calaborra*, by which divided from *Castile*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Mountains, by which parted from *Guipuscoa*, and on the South, with the River *Aragon*, by which divided from that Kingdom. Of larger extent anciently, than it is at the present; the little Province of *Alava*, lying toward *Guipuscoa*, and the whole Country of *Rioye*, (on the West-side of the River *Ebro*) being taken from it, and reckoned members of *Castile*, by *Alfonso* the 4th. Howsoever, we shall look upon it in its ancient bounds, and shall accordingly take notice of the chief Cities and Towns therof.

It was called at first, the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*, from a Town of that name, situate in the most inaccessible part of the *Pyrenees*; and therefore chose by *Garcia Ximines*, the first King hereof, for the seat of his Kingdom, as most defensible against the fury of the *Moors*. Afterwards it took the name of *Navarre*, either from *Navois*, signifying a plain and Champagn Country, (first used by *Inigo Arista*, the sixth King, who having taken *Pampelune*, abandoned the Hill-Countries, and betook himself unto the *Plains*) or from *Navarriere*, the chief of the three parts into which that City was divided, not only at the taking thereof, but a long time after.

The Country, though environed on all sides with mighty Mountains, yet of it self is said to be reasonably fruitful, well watered, and for the most part plain and level, as before is said. It taketh up also some parts of both sides of the *Pyrenees*: the *Spanish* side being fertile, and adorned with Trees; the *French* side generally very bare and naked. That on the *Spanish* side, and on the summits of the Mountains, now possessed by the *Spaniard*, is called *High Navarre*: that on the the *French* side, now called *Base* or *Low Navarre*, estimated at a sixth part of the whole Kingdom, is enjoyed by the *French*; incorporated by King *Lewis* the 13, to the Realm of *France*, *An.* 1620.

Places of most importance in *Base Navarre*, 1. S. *Palai*, formerly the place of Judicature for this part of the Kingdom; but in the year 1620, removed to *Pau* in the Principality of *Bearn*: both *Bearn* and *Base Navarre*, which hath before been governed as distinct Estates from the Realm of *France*, being then incorporate to that Crown. 2. *Navareux*, a Town of great importance, seven Leagues from *Pau*, well fortified, and as well munitioned: King *Lewis* the 13, finding in it at his coming thither, *An.* 1620, no fewer than 45 Cannons all mounted; besides 40 Culverins and smaller Pieces; with Powder, Bullet, and Victuals, answerable thereunto. 3. *Piede Port*, or St. *John de Pied de Port*, bordering on the edg of *France*, against which formerly a piece of especial strength. 4. *Roncevalis*, or *Roncevaux*, situate in the most pleasant Country of all *Navarre*, in the entrance of a small but delightful Valley: famous for the great Battel fought near unto it; in the Straights or entrances of the Mountains leading to this Valley; betwixt the *French* under *Charlemagne*, and a great Army of *Moors* and natural *Spaniards*, confederate together in defence of their common Liberty. In which Battel, by the treachery of *Ganelon*, 40000 of the *French* were slain; and amongst them, *Rowland* Earl of *Mans*, the Nephew of *Charles*, and others of the Peers of *France*; of whom so many Fables are reported in the old *Romances*; the first Author of which Fables, passeth under the name of Arch-bishop *Turpin*, said to be one of those twelve *Peers*, who taking on him to record the Acts of *Charles* the Great, hath interlaced his Story with a number of ridiculous vanities: by means whereof, the noble acts of that puissant Emperor, and his gallant Followers, are much obscured and blemished by those very Pens, which in the times succeeding did employ themselves to advance the same.

Of special note in *High Navarre*, 1. *Victoria*, first built, or rather re-edified by *Sancho* the 4. King of *Navarre*, *An.* 1181, by whom thus named in memory of some victory obtained thereabouts against thet *Castilians*; whereas before his time it was called *Gasteiz*: as in like case there had been many Towns built by *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Nicopolis*, or the City of *Victory*, which we shall meet withal hereafter. Situate in the place of the ancient *Vellica*, but graced with the priviledges and name of a City, by *John* the second of *Castile*, after it came under the Command of that Crown, *An.* 1432. A Town belonging properly to the little

Pro-

Province of *Olava*, and the chief thereof. Which Province being wholly in and amongſt the *Cantabrian* Mountains, was of old a member of *Navarre*: but being extorted from it, *An.* 1200, by *Alphonſo* the 4. of *Caſtile*, it was in the year 1332, incorporated into that Crown as a part thereof; as were ſome other Towns and Members of this Kingdom alſo, won by the *Caſtilians*. 2. *Viane*, on the Eaſt of the River *Ebro*, well fortified, after the taking of *Logrogno* on the other ſide of the water, (from which diſtant not above a League) as the Frontier Town againſt *Caſtile*. Of greateſt note for being the title of the eldeſt Son of *Navarre*, who was called Prince of *Viane*; advanced unto this honour by King *Charles* the third, *An.* 1421, in imitation of the like cuſtom in *Caſtile*, where the eldeſt Son was called Prince of the *Aſturia's*: but not leſs memorable for the death of *Cæſar Borgia*, ſlain near unto it in an ambuſh, after all his wanderings, and interchangeableneſs of fortunes. For being Son of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, by birth a *Spaniard*, he was by his Father made a Cardinal; but relinquiſhing that Title, by *Charles* the eighth of *France*, created Duke of *Valentinois*, in the Province of *Daulphine*: during his Father's life, he had reduced under his obedience, diverſe of the Eſtates which anciently had belonged to the Church of *Rome*, but after his deceaſe, impriſoned by Pope *Julio* the ſecond, who was jealous (not without good cauſe) of his plots and practices. From *Rome* he ſtole unto *Gonſalvo*, then Vice-Roy of *Naples* for *Ferdinando* the *Catholick*; who notwithſtanding his ſafe conduct, ſent him priſoner to *Spain*: but breaking Priſon (deſperately ſliding down a Window) he came at laſt into this Kingdom, and was here ſlain in an *Ambuſcado*, as before was ſaid. So many times was *Machiavel's* great Polititian over-reached by Bookmen and Souldiers! 3. *Sobrarbe*, in the moſt inacceſſible parts of the *Pyrenees*, for that cauſe made the firſt Seat of the Kings of *Navarre*, entituled from thence the Kings of *Sobrarbe*. Made afterwards a diſtinct Kingdom from *Navarre*, by *Sancho* the great, who gave it to *Gonſales* his youngeſt Son: after whoſe death (not having iſſue) it was ſeized on by *Don Raymir*, the firſt King of *Aragon*, and made a member of that Crown. 4. *Sangueſſa*, a Town of a large Territory and Juriſdiction, priviledged with a Suffrage in the Convention of Eſtates, and a ſtrong Fortreſs on the borders towards *Aragon*: for which cauſe formerly aimed at by the Kings thereof, who have had it ſometimes in their hands. 5. *Pampelun*, in the Champagn Country, on the banks of the River *Arga*, the Metropolis of this Kingdom; and the Seat-Royal of its Kings, ſince the Conqueſt of it from the *Moors* by *Inigo Ariſta*, the 6. King of *Navarre*. Of old divided into three parts; that is to ſay, *Bourg*, *Peuplement*, and *Navarriere*; each having ſeveral Officers and Juriſdictions, (the cauſe of many quarrels and much blood amongſt them) till all united into one body, and reduced under the command of one chief Magiſtrate, by King *Charles* the third. An ancient Town firſt built by *Pompey* at the end of his Wars againſt *Sertorius*; in memory of whom called *Pompeiopolis* by our modern *Latiniſts*; but *Pampelun*, more near unto the preſent name, by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*: now an *Epiſcopal* See, the ſeat of the Vice-Roy, and one of the beſt fortified Towns of all *Spain*. 6. *Moia*, not far from the borders of *France*, were it joyneth on *Guipuſcoa*; a place of principal importance: the Caſtle whereof was one of the laſt pieces on this ſide of the Mountains, which held out for King *John* of *Albert*, againſt *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, in his ſurpriſal of this Kingdom. 7. *Montreal*, 8. *Olite*, and 9. *Tafalla*; all yielded with the reſt of this Kingdom, to *Frederick* of *Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*: who had the happineſs to ſubdue this Realm to the Crown of *Caſtile*, as his Son *Ferdinand* had to conquer the Realm of *Portugal*. 10. *Tudele*, on the Eaſtern bank of the River *Ebro*, took from the *Moors*, by a ſurpriſe by *Rotrou* Earl of *Perch*, (a *French*-man) coming with many other noble perſons to the aid of *Alfonſo*, King of *Navarre*, and *Aragon*, at the ſiege of *Saragoſſo*, *An.* 1110. Given by that King unto him, for the reward of his ſervice; and afterwards united to the Crown of *Navarre*, by the marriage of *Magdalen* daughter of Earl *Rotrou*, with *Garcia* the ſeventh King of *Navarre*, Succeſſor in that Kingdom to the ſaid *Alfonſo*. Of late times honoured with a little Univerſity there founded by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, on his ſurpriſal of that Kingdom. 11. *Calaborra*, ſituate on the Weſtern banks of the *Iberus*, or *Ibro*, by *Ptolemy* called *Calagorina*; by *Strabo*, *Calaguris*; now a Biſhops-See: taken from *Sancho* the 8. of *Navarre*, by *Alfonſo* the fourth of *Caſtile*, and made a Member of that Kingdom. As alſo was 12. *Logrogno*, in the Country of *Rioye*, on the ſame banks of the River alſo. 13. *Eſtellia*, bordering on *Caſtile*, to which adjudged (though on the Eaſtern ſide of the River) by *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, made Umpire for the atonement of ſome differences betwixt *Henry* King of *Caſtile*, and *John* King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; to ſatisfie that King for his charges in the former Quarrel.

The old Inhabitants thereof, were the *Vaſcones*, poſſeſſed not only of this tract, but of *Biſcay* and *Guipuſcoa* alſo, from them denominated: who paſſing over the *Pyrenees*, made themſelves Maſters of that Province which is now called *Gaſcoigne* by the *French*, and *Vaſconia* in *Latin*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, and from them by the *Moors*; it began to be a Kingdom under *Garcia Ximines*, a noble man of the *Gothiſh* blood; who with 600 men only began to make head againſt the *Saracens*, *An.* 716. firſt under the title of the Kingdom of *Sobrarbe*; and after that, of *Navarre*, for the reaſon, formerly delivered. The ſixth from *Garcia Ximines*, was *Inigo*, ſirnamed *Ariſta*, (ſo named from his vehemency and heat in War) the Son of *Simon* Earl of *Bigorre* in *Gaſcoigne*; elected to this Kingdom on the death of *Ximines* the fifth King, *An.* 840. or thereabouts, as the next Heir (but in the collateral Line) of *Don Garcia Ximines*; the firſt King of *Sobrabe*. To him the taking of *Pampelune* is aſcribed moſt generally, though *Turquet* in his Hiſtory refer the ſame to *Garcia* the ſecond King. But certainly the Town was in the hands of the *Moors*, till forced from them by the proweſs of *Charlemagne*; by them again recovered after the defeat of *Roncevals*, and held till the time of this King, who poſſeſſed himſelf of it. To this King alſo is aſcribed the firſt beginning of the ceremony of Crowning and Anointing, after the manner uſed by the Kings of *France*. But the old *Roman Provincial* cited in the *Titles of Honour*, acknowledgeth no ſuch honour to theſe petit Kings, communicated only, in that time, to the Emperors of the Eaſt and Weſt, the Kings of *Hieruſalem*, *England*, *France*, and *Sicil*. And therefore probable it is, that the cuſtom came into *Navarre* with the Houſe of *Champagne*. Other Kings of moſt note in the courſe of Story, were 3. *Fortun*, the ſecond Nephew of *Inigo Ariſta*, by his Son *Garcia* the third; who added unto his Eſtate, the Earldom of *Aragon*, deſcended to him by his Mother, the Daughter and Heir of *Aſnarius*, or *Aznario*, the laſt Earl thereof. 4. *Sancho* the fourth, ſirnamed the Great, who firſt aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Spain*: his Predeceſſors uſing no other title than Kings of *Sobrarbe* and *Navarre*; his Co-temporaries calling themſelves Kings of *Leon*, *Toledo*, *Sevil*, *Coduba*, according to the names

of

of their ſeveral Kingdoms; the *Goths*, Kings of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and ſo the *Vandals*, and the *Suevi*. Only the Earls of *Barcellone*, at their firſt erection by the *French*, entituled themſelves the Dukes and Marqueſſes of *Spain*, as if all were theirs, with brag and vanity enough. But this Prince had ſome good ground for it, as being by inheritance poſſeſſed of *Navarre* and *Aragon*; of *Caſtile*, in the right of his Wife *Donna Nugna*, or *Elvira*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the laſt Earl thereof; and by conqueſt of a great part of the Realm of *Leon*: ſo that almoſt all *Spain*, not poſſeſſed by the *Moors*, was become his own. Had theſe Eſtates remained entire to his Succeſſors, the *Moors*, no doubt, had ſooner loſt their hold in *Spain*; and the whole Continent been brought under the obedience of one ſole Monarch. But this King either loving all his Sons alike, or elſe offended with the eldeſt, who moſt unnaturally had accuſed his own innocent Mother of the crime of Adultery, divided his Eſtates amongſt them; giving to *Garcia* his eldeſt Son, the Realm of *Navarre*, with that part of *Leon* which he held by Conqueſt; to *Ferdinand* his ſecond Son, *Caſtile*, and *Aragon* to his baſe Son *Raymer*; both which he erected into Kingdoms: and finally, to *Gonſales* his third Son, the Realm of *Sobrarbe*, then firſt diſmembred from *Navarre*. By means of which impolitick courſe, his Sons being all of equal Title and Eſtates, inſtead of oppoſing the common Foe, quarrelled with each other, and left the Quarrel as a Legacy to their ſeveral Succeſſors: which miſchief might have been avoided, if he had not dignified them all with the title of Kings, or left the reſt as Homagers unto one Supreme. 5. *Sancho* the fifth, Nephew of *Sancho* the Great, by his Son *Garcia de Nagera*; unnaturaly and traiterouſly ſlain by his Brother *Raymer*. After whoſe death, and the ſhort interpoſition of his Murtherer, this Kingdom was ſeized on by the Kings of *Aragon*; three of which, viz *Sancho Ramires*, *Pedro*, and *Alfonſo*, did ſeverally and ſucceſſively enjoy the ſame. 6. *Alfonſo*, the laſt of the three Kings of *Aragon* reigning in *Navarre*, ſirnamed the *Warrier*; who for a time was King of *Caſtile* alſo in right of *Urraca* his Wife; in which reſpect he took unto himſelf the title of *Emperor* of *Spain*, though not acknowledged ſo by others. But finally, dying without iſſue, and his Brother *Raymir*, or *Raymond*, called the *Monk*, ſucceeding in *Aragon*, the Kingdom of *Navarre* reverted to *Garcia Raymir*, Lord of *Monſon*, the direct Heir of *Garcia de Nagera*, by *Raymir* Lord of *Calaborra*, his younger Son. 7. *Sancho* the 8. the Nephew of this *Garcias Raymir*, by his Son *Sancho* the 7. ſirnamed the *Wiſe*, the laſt King of the Maſculine and direct Line of the Kings of *Navarre*; the Kingdom, after his deceaſe paſſing by the Females, or Heirs general, to the Earls of *Champagne*, and ſo unto the Kings of *France*, the Houſes of *Eureux*, *Foix*, *Albert*, and *Vendoſme*; but never holding above three deſcents in any one Family. By means whereof, theſe Kings being barred from gainning any thing on the *Moors*, by the interpoſition of the Kings of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*; and having no way to enlarge their Revenue or Dominions, by any undertakings or adventures at Sea, as the *Portugals* did: incorporated to their Crown as fair and large poſſeſſion in the Realm of *France*; as any of the others did in the *Spaniſh* Continent. The Principality of *Bearn*, the Earldoms of *Foix* and *Begorre*, united in the perſon of *Gaſton* of *Foix*, as thoſe of *Armaignac* and *Albert*, in the perſon of *John* Earl of *Albert*; all lying together on the other ſide of the *Pyrenees*; all added to this Crown by marriage with the Heirs hereof: made up a fairer and wealthier Eſtate than *Navarre* it ſelf; inferior to few Provinces in the Realms of *Spain*. Not to ſay any thing of the acceſſion of the County-Palantine of *Champagne*, exchanged afterwards for ſome Lands in the Country of *La March* in *Limoſin*; or of the Earldoms of *Eureux*, and the Dutchy of *Vendoſme*, as lying further off, and of leſs importance: Nor of the great Kingdom of *France*, now herewith incorporate, as to the Perſon of the King, though not in the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom alſo. With ſo much judgment and ſucceſs did the enſuing Kings (not otherwiſe able to enlarge their Territories) beſtow their Daughters, that the *Diſtaff* proved as happy to this little Kingdom, as the Sword to others. 8. *Charles*, the ſecond of that name, and the 30 King of *Navarre*; whom I mention not for any glorious Actions atchieved in his life, (for that was full enough of ignominy) but for the ſtrangeneſs and hideouſneſs of his death. He was a Prince much given to *voluptuouſneſs*, and ſenſual pleaſures, which ſo waſted his ſpirits, that in his old age he fell into a kind of *Lethargy*. To comfort his benummed joynts, he was bound and ſewed up naked in a ſheet, ſteeped in boyling *Aqua-vitæ*. The *Chirurgion* having made an end of ſewing the ſheet, and wanting a knife to cut off the thread, took a Wax-Candle that ſtood lighted by him; but the flame running down by the thread, caught hold on the ſheet; which (according to the nature of *Aqua-vitæ*) burned with that vehemency, that the miſerable King ended his days in the fire. 9. *John* of *Aragon*, the ſecond Son of *Ferdinand* the firſt, in the life of his Brother *Alfonſo*, was made King of *Navarre*, in right of *Blanche* his Wife, Daughter of *Charles* the third; and on the death of his Brother, King of *Aragon* alſo. And though his Queen dyed long before him, in whoſe right he reigned; yet he kept poſſeſſion of the Kingdom till his death, (reigning fifty four years in all) notwithſtanding the oppoſition made againſt him by *Charles* Prince of *Viana*, his only ſon by that marriage, and Heir apparent of that Crown; whom he vanquiſhed, impriſoned, and at laſt poyſoned. 10. *John*, Earl of *Albert* in *Gaſcoigne*, King of *Navarre* in right of *Katharine* his Wife: in whoſe reign the Kingdom of *Navarre* was ſeized on by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, Son of the ſaid *John* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, by a ſecond Wife. The manner of it we ſhall relate with more particulars, when we have ſummed the whole Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Navarre*.

A. Ch.		
716	1	*Garcia Ximines*. 42.
758	2	*Garcia* II. Son of *Garcia Ximines*.
802	3	*Fortunio*. 13.
835	4	*Sancho Garcia*, the laſt of the direct Line of *Garcia Ximines*.
		An *Interregnum* of 4 years.
844	6	*Inigo*, ſirnamed *Ariſta*, Earl of *Begorre*, the next Heir-male of the Houſe of *Garcia Ximines*. 23.
867	7	*Garcia* III. ſirnamed *Inigo*. 18.
885	8	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*. 16.
901	9	*Sancho* II. called *Abarca*, Brother of *Fortunio* the ſecond. 19.
920	10	*Garcia* IV. 49.
969	11	*Sancho* III. 24.
993	12	*Garcia* V. ſirnamed the *Trembler*.
1000	13	*Sancho* IV. ſirnamed the *Great*; of whom ſufficiently before.

1034 14 *Garcia* VI. called *de Nagera*, eldeſt Son of *Sancho*. 20.
1054 15 *Sancho* V. ſlain by
1074 16 *Raymir*, the Brother of *Sancho* the fifth, diſpoſſeſſed by
1076 17 *Sancho* VI. ſirnamed *Ramyres*, King of *Aragon*. 18.
1094 18 *Pedro* King of *Aragon*.
1104 19 *Alfonſo*, called the *Warrier*; the laſt of the Kings of *Aragon*, reigning in *Navarre*.
1134 20 *Garcia* VII. Nephew of *Garcia de Nagera*. 16.
1150 21 *Sancho* VII. ſirnamed the *Wiſe*.
1194 22 *Sancho* VIII. the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Garcia Ximines*. 40.
1234 23 *Theobald*, Earl of *Champagne*, Son of the Lady *Blanch*, Siſter and Heir of *Sancho* the 8th. 19.
1253 24 *Theobald* II. Earl of *Champagne*. 18.
1271 25 *Henry*, Son of *Theobald* the ſecond. 3.
1274 26 *Joan*, the Daughter of *Henry*, married to *Philip* the *Fair*, of *France*. 31.
1305 27 *Lewis Hutin*, King of *France*. 10.
1315 28 *Philip* the *Long*, King of *France*. 5.
1320 29 *Charles* the *Fair*, King of *France*. 8.
1328 28 *Joan* II. Queen of *Navarre*, the Daughter of *Lewis Hutin*. *Philip* II. Earl of *Eureux*.
1349 31 *Charles* II. Son of *Joan* and *Philip* of *Enreux*. 37.
1386 32 *Charles* III. Earl of *Eureux*. 39.
1425 33 *John*, Prince of *Aragon*, after the death of his elder Brother, King of *Aragon* alſo; the Husband of *Blanch*, the Daughter of *Charles* the third. 54.
1479 34 *Leonora*, Daughter of *John* and *Blanch*, the Widow of *Gaſton* Earl of *Foix*; a Queen of 15 days only.
1479 35 *Francis Phœbus*, Grandchild of *Leonora* and *Gaſton* of *Foix*, by their Son *Gaſton*, Prince of *Viane*.
1483 36 *Katharine*, Siſter of *Francis*. *John*, Earl of *Albret*.
1517 37 *Henry* II. Earl of *Albret*, Son of *John* and *Katharine*.
1556 38 *Joan* III. Daughter of *Henry* of *Albret*. *Antony* of *Burbon*, Duke of *Vendoſme* in *France*.
1572 39 *Henry* III. the Son of *Antony* and *Joan*, after the death of *Henry* the third of *France*, ſucceeded alſo in that Realm, by the name of *Henry* the fourth.
1610 40 *Lewis* II. of *Navarre*, and XIII. of *France*.
41 *Lewis* III. of *Navarre*, and XIV. of *France*, now living; with whom remain the rights, but not the poſſeſſion of this Kingdom. For in the reign of *Katharine* and *John* of *Albret*, *Ferdinand* gathered an Army under the pretence of rooting out the *Moors*, and ſurpriſed this Kingdom, altogether unprovided, and deſtitute of means to make the ſmalleſt reſiſtance, *Anno* 1512. The pretended reaſon of this ſurpriſal, was an *Excommunication* laid on theſe Princes by the *Pope*, of which this King took upon him to be *Executioner*; but the true cauſe was an ancient deſire which this King had to poſſeſs this frontier Kingdom, it being a ſtrong Bulwark againſt *France*. It hapned then, that *Lewis* the 12th, having incurred the diſpleaſure of Pope *Julio* the ſecond, was (together with all his adherents) excommunicated, and his and their Eſtates given to ſuch as could or would ſubdue them. The King and Queen of *Navarre* were, at this time, both *French* Subjects: he, in reſpect of *Albret*, his Paternal Inheritance; and ſhe, of her Eſtates of *Foix* and *Bearn*: and therefore ſided with the *French* King. *Ferdinand* having (as we ſaid) levied an Army under colour of extirpating the *Moors*, turneth upon the *French* King, and demanded of theſe Princes not only a free paſſage through their Country, but alſo to have certain places of ſtrength put into his hand, for his better aſſurance. Theſe unjuſt demands the *Navarrois* denyed. Whereupon *Ferdinand* with all expedition invadeth the Kingdom, the greateſt part of which he took without a blow given; the *French* King being as backward in affording due aſſiſtance, as the other was unprovided of means for defence. The *French* netled with this loſs, divers times attempted the recovery of it, but in vain: for the *Spaniard* ſtill keepeth thoſe parts of it which lye on that ſide of the *Pyrenees*; leaving the reſt, which lyeth on the *French* ſide of thoſe Mountains (being about a ſixth part of the whole) to the Deſcendents of thoſe Princes whom he had diſſeized.

The chief Order of Knighthood was of the *Lilly*, begun by *Garcia* the ſixth; their Blazen, a Pot of *Lillies*, with the Portraiture of our Lady engraven upon it, their duty, to defend the Faith, and daily to repeat certain *Ave-Maries*.

The Arms of *Navarre*, are *Gules*, a Carbuncle nowed *Or*. Which Carbuncle having a reſemblance unto chains of Gold, is ſaid to have been firſt taken by *Sancho* the 8th, in memory that he and his Forces had firſt broken the Fortification made with Chains, about the Pavilion of *Mahomet Enaſer*, the *Meramomolin* of *Morocco*, at the great fight in *Sierra Morena*; before which time the Arms of this Kingdom had been *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

3. *BISCAY and GUIPUSCOA.*

OF theſe two we ſhall ſpeak together, becauſe of the ſimilitude and reſemblances which are between them, both in the Country and the People: the names being alſo forged from the ſame Original; Bounded on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Leon*, on the Eaſt with the *Pyrenees*, and *Guyenne* in the Realm of *France*; on the North, with the *Cantabrian* Ocean; and on the South, with *Navarre* and old *Caſtile*. Thus named from the *Vaſcones*, inhabiting the neighbouring Kingdom of *Navarre*, in the time of the *Romans*: part of which people, in the year 640, or thereabouts, paſſed over unto the further ſide of the *Pyrenees*, where they took up thoſe parts of *France*, ſince from them called *Gaſcoigne*. The reſt continuing in their old Seat, or ſpreading more into the Weſt, towards the *Cantabrians*, gave to thoſe parts the name of *Guipuſcoa*, and *Viſcaia*, (for ſo the *Spaniards* write and ſpeak it) now by us called *Biſcay*; their language alſo (which is much different from the reſt of *Spain*) being called the *Baſquiſh*, more near in ſound to that of *Vaſcons*, the original name.

The whole Country is very Mountainous and Woody, yielding but little ſtore of Corn, and leſs of Wine; the defect of the firſt being ſupplied from other Countries; of the laſt, by *Sider*; for which end they plant Apples here in great abundance. But from thoſe Woods they draw continually great ſtore of Timber for the building of Ships: and from thoſe Hills there do not only iſſue pleaſant Rivers, (ſome ſay 150 in number) of which *Iberus* and *Duero* are ſaid to be two; but ſuch infinite ſtore of *Iron* and *Steel*, that no Country yieldeth better, or in greater plenty. Called and accounted for this cauſe, the *Armory of Spain*, and giving occaſion unto

Pliny to report, that there was in this Country a whole Mountain of Iron: *Maritima Cantabriæ parte, Mons præruptè altus (incredibile dictu) totus ex ea materia est.* lib. 33. cap. 45. Nor do they only furnish all *Spain* with Iron, which they make into Instruments of War, and others for domestick uses: but with Timber also for their shipping, with which so stored, that whole Fleets may be built and armed from this Country only.

It is divided commonly into two parts; the Eastern bordering on the *Pyrenees*, and the Realm of *France*, which is called *GUIPUSCOA*; and the Western, bordering on the Kingdom of *Leon*, which properly is called *BISCAY*: the Town of *Montrico* standing in the Confines of both. Both of them heretofore of the same Original, though by several means united to the Crown of *Castile*: both speak the same *Cantabrian* language, now called the *Basquish*; the people of both, being more rude and simple, than the rest of *Spain*; but standing much upon their Gentry, according to the custom of most mountainous and unconquered Nations. The difference is, that those of *Guipuscoa*, by reason of their traffick and commerce with other Countries, savour a little more of Christianity than the others do: in which the common *Biscains* are so far to seek, that though they have some general notions of God and CHRIST, yet very few of them are able to render an account of their Faith, in any tolerable measure. And thus a view being taken of those general notions in which both Countries are concerned; let us next look upon them in their several and distinct capacities, with reference to their chief Towns and Stories.

And first for *GUIPUSCOA*. The places of chiefest note in it are, 1. S. *Sebastians*, (*Don Bastia*, as the Vulgar call it) a noted and well traded Port, at the mouth of the River *Gurvineo*; beautified with a fair and capacious Haven, defended at the entrances with two strong Castles founded upon the opposite Rocks, and honoured with an Episcopal See. 2. *Tolosa*, (commonly called *Tolosette* at the confluence of the Rivers *Oria* and *Duarzo*. 3. *Placenza*, on the River *Denia*, inhabited by none but *Black-smiths*, who do attend their Hammers with such endless diligence, that *Vulcan*'s Forge may seem to be translated hither out of the Isle of *Lemnos*. 4. *Guetaria*, beautified with a safe and convenient Haven; defended from all Winds by a little Island lying before it: the birth-place of *Sebastian del Cabo*, that famous Pilot, the first that sailed about the World: *Magellanus* who went chief in that expedition, perishing in the Action. 5. *Fonterabia*, at the mouth of the River *Vidosa*, which divides this Country from *Guyenne* in *France*: for that cause very well fortified, and as strongly garrisoned. 6. *Renteria*, situate near a Brook abounding with most excellent Salmons. 7. *Montrico*, at the mouth of the River *Denia*; the farthest Town hereof on the edge of *Biscay*. Most of which stand upon or near the Sea; there being but few Towns of note within the Land, (though store enough of scattered Villages, as in *Biscay* also) because of the roughness of the Mountains.

As for the Fortunes and Affairs of this part of the Country, after the subversion of the Kingdom of the *Goths* in *Spain*, (for till that time they followed the same Fortunes with the rest of this Continent) it was at first a member of the Crown of *Navarre*; afterwards wrested from K. *Sancho* the sixth, by *Alfonso* the first of *Castile*, *An.* 1079; by whom committed to the Government of *Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*. Restored again to the Kings of *Navarre*, upon some following Capitulations: It so continued till the year 1200; when having experience of the Government of both Kingdoms, and liking better that of *Castile*, they offered themselves to the subjection of *Alfonso* the 4th; who without so much as one blow struck, became Master of all the Country, and left it setled and confirmed unto his Successors, as it hath ever since remained.

2. For *BISCAY* next; the principal Towns thereof are, 1. *Larrabechia*, the chief Town of this Province in elder times; in the chief Church whereof, the Kings of *Spain*, as Lords of *Biscay*, use to be solemnly inaugurated, here making Oath to maintain the Liberties of the Country, and receiving the Homage and Allegiance of the people of it. 2. *Berneo*, an old Town also, and amply priviledged; the Franchises whereof, the Kings are solemnly sworn to keep, in the Church dedicated to the honour of S. *Euphemia*. 3. *Guernica*, the third Town for antiquity in this part of these Countries. Then of a later date, we have 4. *Bilbo*, or *Bilbao*, situate some two Leagues from the Sea, but on a fair and deep *Creek* thereof; on the other side surrounded with Mountains: built out of the ruines of the old *Flaviobriga* by *Diego de Haro*, Lord of *Biscay*, *An.* 1300; and situate the best of any Town in this Country, for plenty of Victuals, especially for flesh, and most excellent bread. Exceedingly enriched by making of Armour, and all sorts of Weapons, (their chiefest Manufacture) the *Bilbo*-blades in such request being brought from hence. Besides which trade of Arms and Iron, they deal also in Wool; by the vent of which Commodities they are grown so wealthy, that here are many private Merchants which build yearly three or four good Ships for their own trade only. 5. *Laredo*, a Sea Town also, with a capable Port. The landing-place of *Charles* the fifth, when he had relinquished the Empire, and all his other Estates, with resolution to spend the rest of his life in *Spain*, in a private manner: it being observable, that he was no sooner landed, but the Admiral-ship in which he came, and the greatest part of the Navy which came with him, perished in the Haven; to shew him (as it were) that there was no receding from this resolution. 6. *Portogalette*, commodiously seated on an Arm of the Sea, which floweth up to their very houses, and serveth them exceeding fitly for the lading and unlading of their Commodities.

The old Inhabitants of this Tract, before the coming in of the *Vascones*, were the *Cantabri*; these subdivided into the several Nations of the *Marbogi*, the *Caristi*, the *Antrigones*, the *Varduli*, and the *Cantabri* properly so called. From these descend the modern *Biscains*. An argument whereof may be their Language, different from the rest of *Spain*; and said by some to have continued in this Country ever since the confusion at *Babel*. And though they over-shoot themselves, that go as far as *Babel* for the Pedigree and Antiquity of it: yet that it was the ancient Language of *Spain*, is more than probable; because this people have ever continued without any mixture of Foreign Nations, as being never throughly subdued either by *Romans*, *Carthiginians*, *Goths*, or *Moors*; and so they remained, as in their Liberties not mastered, so in their Language not altered. In like manner the *Arabick* continueth uncorrupt, in the hilly parts of *Granada*, the Tongue of the old *Britans*, in our *Wales*; and the ancient *Epirotick*, in the high, woody, and more mountainous parts of that Country. And though those of *Guipuscoa* speak the same Language also, yet is it with a greater mixture of other words, (by reason of their neighbourhood with *France*, and commerce with Strangers) than it is in *Biscay*; where the old natural Language, whatsoever it was, is in far more purity.

Nor do the *Biscains* differ from the rest of *Spain* in Language only, but in Customs also; four of which I will

here

here set down as a light to the rest. First, they account themselves free from Taxes and Contributions to the Kings of *Spain*; yielding them obedience with their *Bodies*, but not with their *Purses*. And when any of the *Spanish* Kings, in their *Progresses*, come to the Frontiers of this Country, he bareth one of his Legs, and in that manner entreth into it. There he is met by the Lords and Gentlemen there dwelling, who proffer him some few small Brass pieces (*Marevides* they call them, whereof 600 go to a Crown) in a Leathern Bag, hanged at the end of a Lance: but withall they tell him, that he must not take them. Which Ceremony performed, they all attend the King in his journey. Secondly, They admit no Bishops to come amongst them; and when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* came in Progress hither, accompanied, amongst others, by the Bishop of *Pampelune*, the people arose in Arms, drave back the Bishop; and gathering all the dust on which they thought he had trodden, cast it into the Sea. Which averseness unto Bishops, as they first took up, in all probability, on some hard usage which they found at the hands of their Prelates; and still retain it out of a stubbornness of nature, most peculiar to them: so possible enough it is, that the want of Bishops, and of Episcopal Visitations amongst the *Biscains*, is not the least cause of that ignorance and rudeness (spoken of before) which is found amongst them. Thirdly, they allow not any Priests to live in their Villages, except he bring his *Concubine* with him: conceiving it impossible for them to keep their Wives unto themselves, if the Curate hath not a Woman of his own. Fourthly, The Women, at all meetings, do first taste of the Cup, and so dispose of it to the men; which custom they have had amongst them ever since *Ogno*, the Countess of *Castile*, attempted to have poysoned her Son *Sancho*, in a Cup of Wine.

But to return again to the old Inhabitants; they were a people of that courage, that they defended the liberty of their Country against the *Romans*, when the residue of *Spain* was subdued; and were at last, not without great effusion of blood, and manifest tokens of manly resolution, and heroick spirits on their parts, vanquished by the Darling of Fortune, *Augustus*. Such hilly and mountainous people, are always the last that are conquered, and the first that stand on their own guard: as besides these *Biscans*, the *Navarrois* and *Asturians*, here in *Spain*, in respect of the *Moors*; and our *Britains*, in relation to the *Saxons*. Whether it be, that living in a sharp air, and being inured to labour, they prove on occasion good and able men; or that the Forts of Nature's own building are not so easily won, as defended; or that the unpleasantness of the Country, and unfruitfulness of the Soil, yield no occasion to strangers to desire an Adventure for it; I take not on me to determine. But being overcome at last, they were first cast into the Province of *Tarraconensis*; and so continued after the new modelling of *Spain*, by the Emperour *Constantine*. Under the *Romans* they continued, till that Empire fell; and then not conquered by the *Goths*, but resigned over to them by the *Romans*, with the rest of that Province. Nor lost they any thing of their ancient and natural courage, by the intermixture of the *Vascons*; continuing still good Souldiers both for Sea and Land; a stubborn, fierce, and couragious people; impatient of servitude, and not easie to be forced to any thing which they like not of. The last of all the *Spaniards* that submitted to the fury of the *Moors*, (excepting those of the *Asturia's*, never conquered by them) and one of the first Provinces which shook off that yoak: animated and conducted in that undertaking, by *Soria*, descended of the Blood-Royal of *Scotland*, *Anno* 870. made upon that good service, the first Lord of *Biscay*. After this, they continued a free and distinct Estate, under their own Proprietary Lords and Princes of the Noble Family of *Haro*; till that *Nero* of *Spain*, *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*, violently took it from *Donna Jeanne*, the right Heir of it, *Anno* 1358. From which *Donna Jeanne*, the eldest Daughter, married to *Ferdinand* the younger Son of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, the right heir of *Castile*, issued the Lady *Jeanne Manuel*, the Wife of *Henry* the second, and Mother of *John* the first, both Kings of *Castile*: by which last, this Country was united to that Crown for ever, *Anno* 1379. The names of the Proprietary Lords of this Estate, we have in this following Catalogue of

The Lords of *Biscay*.

A.Chr.		
870	1	*Soria*, the Son of *Lopes* of *Biscay*, but Nephew by the Mother's side to a King of *Scotland*; the first Lord of *Biscay*.
	2	*Manso Lopes*, the Son of *Soria*.
	3	*Inigo* the Deaf, Son of *Manso Lopes*.
	4	*Lopes Diaz*, the Son of *Inigo*.
	5	*Sancho Lopes*, the Son of *Lopes Diaz*.
	6	*Inigo* II. the base Son of *Lopes Diaz*; the two Sons of *Sancho Lopes*, by reason of their tender years, being set aside.
	7	*Lopes Diaz* II. Son of *Inigo* the second.
	8	*Diego Lopes*, firnamed the *White*, Son of *Lopes Diaz* the second.
	9	*Lopes Diaz* III. Son of *Diego Lopes*; the first who took unto himself the firname of *Haro*, from a Town of that name, of his foundation.
	10	*Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*, Son of *Lopes Diaz* the third.
	11	*Lopes Diaz* IV. Son of *Diego Lopes Diaz de Haro*.
1257	12	*Diego Lopes Diaz* II. assisted *Sancho* the second son of K. *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, in excluding the Children of *Don Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; by which *Sancho* he was after slain. A reward not unsuitable to his bold attempt.
1289	13	*Diego Lopes de Haro*, the son of *Diego*.
1290	14	*Diego Lopes* III. the Brother of *Diego Lopes Diaz* the second, the Founder of the Town of *Bilbo*.
1309	15	*John* of *Castile*, Brother to King *Sancho*, and Husband of *Mary Diaz de Haro*, Daughter of *Diego Lopes* the second.
1319	16	*John* the *Blind*; so called, because he had lost an Eye; Son of *John* of *Castile*, and Mary Diaz of *Haro*; slain by King *Alfonso*.
1329	17	*John Nugnes* of *Lara*, in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *John* the *Blind*, (whose name I find not) succeeded after the decease of *Donna Maria Diaz*.
1350	18	*Nugno de Lara*, an Infant of two years old, succeeded *John Nugnes* of *Lara*, his Father.
1351	15	*Jean* and *Isabel*, the Sisters and Heirs of *Nugno de Lara*, seized upon by *Don Pedro*; and the whole Signeury of *Biscay* subjected by strong hand to the Crown of *Castile*, with many other fair Estates which depended on it.

The Arms of these Lords of *Biscay*, were *Argent*, two Wolves *Sable*, each of them in his mouth a Lamb of the second.

4. LEON and OVIEDO.

THE Kingdom of *LEON* and *OVIEDO*, hath on the East, the Country of *Biſcay*: on the North, the main *Cantabrian* Ocean: on the South, *Caſtile*: on the Weſt, *Gallicia*. So called from *Leon* and *Oviedo*, the chief Cities of it, and firſt Seat of their Kings; the ancienteſt Kingdom in all *Spain*. By a more ancient name it was called *Aſturia*, from the *Aſtures*; who poſſeſſed it in the time of the *Romans*: divided into the two general names of *Auguſtani*, and *Tranſmontani*; but comprehending the particular Tribes or Nations of the *Peſici*, *Gigari*, *Zoelæ*, and *Lancienſes*.

The Country mountainous and woody, but formerly of ſome eſteem for thoſe ſmall, though ſwift Horſes, which the *Romans* (from hence) called *Aſturcones*; we may read it, *Hobbies*; which afterwards became a common name for all Nags or Geldings: *Aſturco Macedonicus*, being uſed for a *Macedonian Nag*, by *Petronius Arbiter*.

It is divided commonly into two parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Aſturia de Oviedo*, bordering on *Galicia*, towards the Weſt: and 2. *Aſturia Santillana*, confining on *Biſcay*, towards the Eaſt. From which diviſion of the Country, the eldeſt Son of *Caſtile* is called Prince of the *Aſturia*'s in the plural number; which title ſome ſuppoſe to be given unto them, becauſe it was the firſt Country which held up againſt the *Moors*. But indeed, the true Original hereof, is referred by the beſt *Spaniſh* Writers, to the time of the marriage of *Catharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and in right of her Mother *Conſtance*, the right Heir of *Caſtile*, unto *Henry* Son of *John* the firſt, then in poſſeſſion of that Kingdom. For to this new-married Couple it was granted, ſaith *Mariana*, that after the manner of *England*, where the Heir apparent is called *Prince of Wales*, they ſhould be called Princes of the *Aſturia*'s. In times ſucceeding, the Towns of *Jaen*, *Ubeda*, *Biatia*, or *Bacca*, and *Andujar*, all ſituate near together in *Andaluſia*, and each of them inveſted with a goodly Territory, were added to the Patrimony and Eſtate hereof; and ſo continue to this day.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Sublanco*, now a ſmall Village, but once a Town of ſo great ſtrength, that it was deſtroyed by the command of the Emperour *Nerva*, leſt it might animate theſe Mountainers unto a revolt, 2. *LEON*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountain, not far from the place of the old *Sublanco*, (as it was then called.) The Town but mean, were it not beautified by a fair and large Cathedral; the Biſhop whereof acknowledgeth no *Metropolitan* but the Pope alone. Recovered from the *Moors*, *An.* 722. Afterwards made the *Regal* Seat of the Kings of *Leon*: by ſome called *Legio*, becauſe the ſeventh *Legion* was here lodged: by *Ptolomy* called *Legio Germanica*; and by others, *Gemina*. 3. S. *Andera*, ſo named from a Church there built to the honour of S. *Andrew*; by *Ptolomy* called *Flavionavie*; now a well traded Port on the *Cantabrian* Ocean. 4. *Santillana*, which gives name to the Eaſtern part of *Aſturia*. 5. *Llanes*, where the two *Aſturia*'s meet together. 6. *Cividad Real*, in the Weſtern part of *Aſturia*, called *Aſturia de Oviedo*. 7. *Villa Vicioſa*, the only noted Port in this part of the Country. 8. *Aviles*, on the borders of *Gallicia*, near the Sea, and not far from the Promontory called of old *Promontorium Sythicum*, but now *Cabo de Pinus*. 9. *OVIEDO*, called for a time, the *City of Biſhops*, becauſe many of the Biſhops of *Spain*, diſpoſſeſſed of their Churches by the *Moors*, had retired thither; and there preſerved the line of Epiſcopal Succeſſion, till their Sees were filled again with Biſhops in more happy times. Anciently it was called *Lucus Aſturum*, and was of old a Biſhops See; re-edified by King *Froila* the firſt, in the year 757. Famous enough in giving the Title of a Kingdom to the firſt Chriſtian Princes, after the Conqueſt by the *Moors*; called from hence, Kings of *Oviedo*. Afterwards, *An.* 896, in the time of K. *Ordogno* the firſt, they began to be ſtiled Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*; and at laſt, Kings of *Leon* only; *Oviedo* being quite left out of the *Regal* ſtile, by *Raymir* the ſecond, *Anno* 940. More towards the Inlands of this Kingdom, (now reckoned part of old *Caſtile*) are 10. *Palenza*, the *Palantia* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*, ſeated on the River *Carrion*, once a ſmall Univerſity, till the tranſlation of it unto *Salamanca*, by King *Ferdinand* the third. This Town firſt felt the fury of the *Suevians*, when they maſtered theſe parts of *Spain*. 11. *Aſtorga*, anciently called *Auguſta Aſturica*, whence the *Aſtures* of this Tract were called *Auguſtani*; a Biſhops See, frontiering on *Gallicia*: happy in this, that it felt not the fury of the luſtful King *Vitiza*; who to ſecure himſelf in his unlawful pleaſures, and to weaken his Subjects if they ſhould attempt any thing againſt him, diſmantled all the Towns in his Dominions, except *Leon*, *Toledo*, and this *Aſtorga*. 12. *Benevent*, on the South-eaſt of *Aſtorga*, which gave the title of Duke to *Frederick* the baſe Son of King *Henry* the 2d, of *Caſtile*, the ſtem of the potent Family of *Spain*, for the times they lived in. 13. *Toro*, the moſt Southern Town of all this Kingdom: and for that cauſe well fortified againſt the encroachments of the *Caſtilians*, till the uniting of the Kingdoms: made afterwards, (as lying neareſt to *Caſtile*, and the Court of the King) the ordinary place of conference with the States of *Leon*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Country, hath been ſhewn already. When conquered by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, they were made part of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; part, afterwards, of the Province of *Gallicia*, by the Emperor *Conſtantine*. Won from the *Romans*, by the *Goths*; and from them, by the *Moors*; though long they did not lye under their command. For as the luſt of *Roderick*, the laſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*, occaſioned the coming in of the *Moors*; ſo the luſt of *Magnutza*, a *Mooriſh* Vice-Roy, occaſioned (though in long courſe of time) their expulſion thence. For *Magnutza* having employed *Pelagius*, a young Prince of the *Aſturia*'s, on an Embaſſie to *Muſa* the Lieutenant-General of the *Moors*, then reſiding at *Corduba*, in his abſence raviſhed his Siſter, and at his return died by the edge of his Sword. Deſpairing of pardon for this act, he was fain to ſtand upon his guard, and fortifie himſelf in the Mountainous places of this Country, to which many of the old Inhabitants reſorted, put themſelves under his command, and elected him to be their King: firſt by the name of King of the *Aſturia*'s; and after by the title of King of *Leon*, when he had got that City into his hands; as being the City of moſt note, and the ſtrongeſt Hold that he was poſſeſſed of. The Kingdom at the firſt beginning, contained only the more mountainous parts of the two *Aſturia*'s; enlarged a little further South, on the taking of *Leon* by this firſt *Pelagius*. Afterwards, by the valour of *Ordogno* the ſecond, it extended over both *Aſturia*'s, *Gallicia*, and the *Old Caſtile*: divided from the *Moors* by the Mountains of *Avila*, and *Segovia*; but more defended by the valour of the people, and Gallantry of their Princes, than it was by thoſe Mountains. Kings of moſt note, beſides the two before remembred, were 1. *Mauregate*, the baſe Son

of

of *Alfonſo* the firſt; who having by the help of *Abderamen*, King of the *Moors*, obtained the Kingdom, came to a baſe agreement with them; in which he bound himſelf to pay them, as a yearly Tribute, 50 *Virgins* of Noble Families, and as many of inferiour birth: for which he dyed hated and deteſted of all men. 2. *Raymir* the firſt, who ſo diſcomfited the *Moors* at the Battel of *Clavigio*, near *Calaborra* in *Navarre*, An. 836, that from that time the Power and reputation of the Kings of *Corduba* began to languiſh. 3. *Alfonſo* the third, who refuſed to pay unto the *Moors* the ſaid tribute of *Virgins*; and for his many Victories againſt the *Moors*, was ſirnamed, The Great: who being outed of the Kingdom by his Son *Garcia*, not only patiently digeſted ſo great a wrong, but willingly became his Son's Lieutenant againſt the *Moors*. 4. *Veramund* the ſecond, choſen King in the minority of *Raymir* the third; in whoſe time the *Moors* took *Leon*, and ſpoiled the Church of S. *James in Gallicia*; but were after beaten to their homes with the loſs of many of their own places. 5. *Veramund* the third, who making War againſt *Ferdinand* the firſt, King of *Caſtile*, was by him ſlain in Battel; the Conqueror ſeizing on his Kingdom in right of *Sancha* his Wife, the Siſter of *Veramund*; the three Kings next ſucceeding, being Kings of both. 6. *Ferdinand* the third, Son of *Alfonſo* the 9th, and of *Berengaria*, the younger Siſter of *Henry* King of *Caſtile*; by the Power and Policy of his Mother, ſeized on the *Caſtiles*, of right belonging to *Blanch* the elder Siſter, Wife of *Lewis*, Son to *Philip* the ſecond, King of *France*: and after the death of his Father, ſucceeded in *Leon*. Of whom we ſhall hear more when we come to *Caſtile*. After this time, theſe Kingdoms never were divided, but incorporate into one Eſtate, called for a long time the Kingdom of *Caſtile* and *Leon*: though afterwards *Leon* was left out of the Regal ſtyle, and only that of *Caſtile* mentioned; except in Legal Inſtruments, *Letters Patents*, and *Inſtruments* of Negotiation with Foreign Princes. The whole ſucceſſion of theſe Kings, the Hiſtories of *Spain* thus preſent unto us.

The Kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*.

A. Ch.		
716	1	*Pelagius*, of whom ſufficiently before. 20.
735	2	*Faſila*, the Son of *Pelagius*. 2.
737	3	*Alfonſo*, for his Piety ſirnamed the *Catholick*, the Son-in-law of *Pelagius* by his Daughter *Ormiſinde*.
756	4	*Phroilla*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, the Founder, or Repairer rather, of *Oviedo*.
768	5	*Aurelius*, the Brother of *Phroilla*. 6.
774	6	*Silo*, the Son-in-law of *Alfonſo* the *Catholick*, by his Daughter *Odeſinde*. 9.
783	7	*Mauregate*, an Uſurper, the baſtard Son of *Alfonſo*. 6.
789	8	*Veramund*, Son to *Froilla*. 6.
795	9	*Alfonſo* II. ſirnamed the *Chaſte*, the Brother of *Veramund*. 29.
825	10	*Raymir*, the Son of *Veramund*. 6.
831	11	*Ordogno*, Son to *Raymir*. 10.
841	12	*Alfonſo* III. ſirnamed the *Great*, the Son of *Ordogno*. 46.
886	13	*Garcia*, Son to *Alfonſo* the third. 3.
889	14	*Ordogno* II. King of *Gallicia*, the Brother of *Garcia*.
897	15	*Phroilla* II. Brother of *Ordogno*. 1.
898	16	*Alfonſo* IV. Son of *Ordogno*. 6.
904	17	*Raymir* II. Brother of *Alfonſo*. 19.
924	18	*Ordogno* III. Son of *Raymir*. 5.
929	19	*Sancho*, ſirnamed the *Groſs*, Brother of *Ordogno* the third. 12.
941	20	*Raymir* III. Son of *Sancho*. 24.
965	21	*Veramund* II. Brother of *Sancho*. 17.
982	22	*Alfonſo* V. Son of *Veramund*. 46.
1028	23	*Veramund* III. Son of *Alfonſo*. 9.
1037	24	*Sancha*, Siſter of *Veramund*. / *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile*. } 30.
1607	25	*Alfonſo* VI. the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand* and *Sancha*: firſt King of *Leon* only; but after the death of *Sancho's* elder Brother, he ſucceeded alſo in *Caſtile*. 41.
1126	26	*Urraca*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo*. / *Alfonſo* VII. King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*. 13.
1122	27	*Alfonſo* VIII. the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, ſucceeded in *Leon* and *Caſtile*. 35.
1157	28	*Ferdinand* II. younger Son of *Alfonſo*, King of *Leon* only. 31.
1188	20	*Alfonſo* IX. Son of *Ferdinand*. 42.
1230	30	*Ferdinand* III. Son of *Alfonſo*, by *Berengaria*, or *Berenguela*, Siſter of *Henry* of *Caſtile*, by the power and practices of his Mother, ſucceeded in the Realm of *Caſtile*, whilſt his Father lived, *An.* 1217, to the prejudice of *Blanch* her elder Siſter, married to *Lewis* the eighth of *France*; by whom ſhe had *Lewis* the ninth, and other children. Which *Lewis* the ninth, on the marriage of *Blanch* his eldeſt Daughter, with *Ferdinand* eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth, ſurrendred all rights in the Crown of *Caſtile*, and ſo confirmed the ſame more abſolutely to the houſe of *Leon*, *Anno* 1267; though neither this *Ferdinand*, nor *Blanch*, nor any of their Heirs, did attain that Kingdom; diſſeized thereof by *Sancho* a younger Son. The Kingdoms never ſince that time disjoined, as they had been twice before ſince the firſt uniting.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Argent*, a Lyon *Paſſant*, crowned *Or*. Which Arms when it was joined to the Kingdom of *Caſtile*, were quartered with the Coat thereof: that being the firſt time (as *Cambden* notes) that ever Arms were born Quartered. Followed herein by *Edward* the third of *England*, who not only took unto himſelf the title of King of *France*, but (to ſhew his right unto that Crown) quartered the *Flower de Lyces* with his *Engliſh* Lions.

5. *GALLICIA.*

GALLICIA, or *GALÆCIA*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Aſturia*'s, from which parted by the River *Mearo*; on the South with *Portugal*, from which divided by the River *Minio*; on the North with the *Cantabrian*; and on the Weſt with the *Atlantick* Oceans. The ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Gallaici*, (whence it had the name) diſtinguiſhed into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Bedyi*, *Sueri*, *Cilini*, *Capori*, and *Lemavi*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*.

The Country, like that of the *Aſturia*'s, mountainous, and almoſt inacceſſible, overſpread with the *Cantabrian* Hills; and ſo the fitter to hold out againſt Foreign Invaſions, in defence of *Liberty* and *Religion*: in that regard choſen for a retiring-place by the diſtreſſed and vanquiſhed *Chriſtians*, in their firſt Wars againſt the *Moors*: Not well inhabited to this day; not ſo much

for

for the hilliness of the Country, as for want of Water; which defect makes the people generally draw more towards the Sea, where they improve their Fortunes by trade and fishing. The barrenness of the Country recompensed heretofore by the rich Mines of Gold and Silver, which in this Country, and the *Astures*, and some part of *Lusitania*, afforded yearly 20000 pound weight of Gold unto the *Romans*, amounting in our money to two millions of Crowns: but now no such Mines found in it of any value. Instead of which, it yieldeth the best Mines for Iron, of any Province of *Spain*: for which their Waters are so proper, that they are said to fortifie and improve the *metal*.

Places of principal importance are, 1. *Compostella*, an University and Arch-bishops See, vulgarly called St. *Jage*, in honour of St. *James*, the Son of *Zebedee*, whom they pretend to be buried here, and of whom there is denominated an *Order* of Knights: his *Relicks* said to be kept in the chief Church of it, worshipped by the *Romanists* with great devotion: and drawing to this place a wondertul concourse of people, coming thither on pilgrimage. 2. *Baiona*, not far from the mouth of the River *Minio*. 3. *Corunna*, by *Ptolomy* called *Flavium Brigantium*; by us *English*, the *Groyn*: often mentioned in the story of our Wars with the *Spaniard*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time; then taken by the *English*: but since, very well fortified to avoid the like surprisal. Divided then, as now, into the *High Town*, and the *Low*; situate on the *Cantabrian* Sea, betwixt the Promontory *Trilencum*, now *Cabo Ortegal*, lying towards the East; and that of old called *Nerium*, now *Cabo Finis terræ*; as being the most Western end of the then known World. 4. *Orenus*, upon the *Minius*, a Bishops-See, by *Ptolomy* called *Aquæ Calidæ*, from the *Bathes* here being, now much commended for the best Wines. 5. *Tui*, on the River, frontiering upon *Portugal*: a Bishops See, in ancient Writers called *Tude*. 6. *Ponte-vedre*, 7. *Ribadeo*: both upon the Sea, both fitted with convenient Harbours.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, as before is said, were the *Gallaici*, one of the last Nations which submitted to the Power of the *Romans*: by whom first made a part of *Tarraconensis*; after, a Province of it self, by the name of *Gallicia*; the *Asturia*'s, and some part of the old *Castile* and *Portugal*, being added to it. In the declining of that Empire, the *Suevi*, a potent Nation of *Germany*, accompanying the *Vandals* and *Alani* in their *transmigrations*, invaded *Spain*, and first possessed themselves of this Country. But not content with their Estate, they warred on the *Silinges*, (a *Vandal*-Tribe) then possessing *Bætica*, whom they vanquished, and took that Province from them, under the conduct of *Rechila* their second King. They added, shortly after, *Lusitania*, to their former Conquest: stopped in their career, by *Theodorick* the second, King of the *Goths*: by whom vanquished, and confined again within *Gallicia*, which they enjoyed till the final ruine of their Kingdom by *Leutigild* the *Goth*, *Anno* 858: reduced then to a Province of the *Gothish* Kingdom. Their habitation before their coming into *Spain*, was in the Eastern part of *Germany*, beyond the *Elb*. Their Religion at the first, under *Recciarius* their third King, was very *Orthodox*, and sound. But vanquished by the *Goths*, and obliged unto them for the restoring of their Kingdom, they fell off to *Arianism*: persisting in that *Heresie* for the space of an hundred years, and then again returning to the *Catholick* Faith, under *Theodmire* their King; therein continuing constant till their final overthrow. The Kings hereof (as many as are upon Record) are these that follow.

The Kings of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*.

1 *Hermenericus*; who first brought the *Suevians* into *Spain*, and possessed *Gallicia*, *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, then Emperors of the East and West.
2 *Reobila*, who conquered the *Siliges*, and subdued *Bætica*.
3 *Recciarius*, the first Christian King who won *Lusitania*; afterwards vanquished and slain by *Theodorick*, King of the *Goths*; the *Suevians* for a time becoming subject to that King.
4 *Masdras*, restored unto the Kingdom by *Theodorick*.
5 *Frumarius*, the Son of *Masdras*.
6 *Remismundus*, Brother of *Frumarius*, recovered some part of *Lusitania*, and fell off to *Arianism*.
7 *Theodomirus*, the Restorer of the *Catholick* Faith amongst the *Suevians*.
8 *Ariamirus*, Son to *Theodmire*.
9 *Eboricus*, the Son of *Ariamirus*, deposed and shorn *Monk* by *Andeca*.
10 *Andeca*, the last King of the *Suevi* in *Gallicia*, or rather the Usurper of the Regal Title, served in the same kind by *Leutigildis*, King of the *Goths*, as he had served *Eboricus* his Lord and Master. After which time, *Gallicia* was made a Province of the *Gothish* Monarchy, and the name of *Suevians* no more heard of in *Spain*. In times ensuing, it became a part of the Kingdom of *Leon*, by the Kings whereof it was won piece-meal from the *Moors*, as their fortunes favoured them. Erected to a Kingdom by *Alfonso* the third, sirnamed the Great, *Anno* 886; and given unto *Ordogno* his second Son: by whose succession to the Crown on the death of his elder Brother *Garcia*, it was again united to the Kingdom of *Leon*; but so as to continue a Realm distinct. In the year 955, the *Gallicians* not brooking the ill qualities of *Raymir* the third, elected *Veramund* for their King, the Son of *Ordogno* the third, and right Heir of the Kingdom: who, coming to the Crown of *Leon* on the death of *Raymir*, did once again unite it unto that Estate. Dismembred from it once more by *Ferdinand* the first King of *Castile* and *Leon*, who gave it unto *Garcia* his youngest Son, *Anno* 1067; but conquered shortly after by *Sancho* the eldest Son of *Ferdinand*; by whom *Garcia* was discomfited and imprisoned, *Anno* 1081. Never since separated from the Crown of *Castile* and *Leon*: but when *Leon* was severed from *Castile*; going along with *Leon* in those separations, till the union of those Kingdoms in the person of *Ferdinand* the second, *Anno* 1230; the *Castilians* being then grown better Statesmen, than to canton Kingdoms.

The Arms hereof were *Azure*, semee of Crossets *Pitchee*, a Chalice crowned *Or*.

6. The Kingdom of CORDUBA.

HAving thus surveyed those Provinces under the Government of *Castile*, which lye at the foot of the *Pyrenees*, and on the shores of the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean; we will next look on those which lye more towards the Straights of *Gibralter*, and the *Mediterranean*, and so come round at last to *Castile* it self. And first, we will begin with the Kingdom of *CORDUBA*

DUBA, which at first erection of it, contained all those parts of *Spain* conquered by the *Moors*, and not again recovered by the King of *Leon* and *Navarre*: contracted within narrower bounds, when subdued by the King of *Castile*; at that time comprehending only the Provinces of *Andalusia*, *Extramadura*, *Granada*, and the Isle of *Gades*. We will consider it, notwithstanding, in both capacities: in the first and largest notion, as unto the story and affairs thereof, till distracted by the *Moors*, into many Kingdoms: in the last and strictest, as to the *Chorographie*, and description of it.

The Kingdom of *CORDUBA*, as it stood when subdued by the *Spaniards*, was bounded on the East with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the West with *Portugal*, and the Ocean; on the North with the Mountains of *Sierra Morena*, and *Castile*; and on the South with the Ocean, the Straights of *Gibraltar*, and the Midland Seas: so called from *Corduba*, the chief City of it, and the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

It contained, as before was said, the Provinces of 1. *Andalusia*, 2. *Gades*, 3. *Extramadura*, and 4. *Granada*. But because *Granada* had the fortune to continue a Kingdom, when the rest were conquered, we will consider it by it self; and here proceed to the description of the other three.

1. *ANDALUSIA* is bounded on the East with *Granada*; on the West with the *Atlantick* Ocean, and *Algarve* in *Portugal*; on the North, with *Sierra Morena*, and *Extremadura*: on the South, with the Ocean, the Straights, and the *Mediterranean*. By *Pliny* it is called *Conventus Cordubensis*, from *Corduba*, at that time the chief City of it: and after, *Andalusia*, *quasi Vandalusia* from the *Vandals*; who having won it from the *Romans*, had for some time (and till their expulsion into *Africa*) possessed themselves of it.

This is the most rich and fertile Country of all *Spain*; extreamly fruitful of Wine, Oyl, Oranges, (which last being shipped at *Sevil*, and so brought for *England*, are by us called by the name of *Sevil* Oranges) and better furnished with Corn than most part of this Continent; watred with the Rivers, 1. *Anas*, 2. *Odier*, 3. *Betis*, and 4. *Tenot*: which makes it flourish with a continual greenness of Olives, Vines, and other Fruits; of which the Hills, though watered only with the dew of Heaven, do partake also in reasonable measure. The *Air* hereof, by reason of its Southernly situation, is exceeding hot, insomuch that their Corn there is ripe in *April*: but those excessive heats, much moderated by those constant refreshings which the cool winds, breathing from the North, do bestow upon it. In which respect King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* did use to say, that it was *best living in the Summer at Sevil*, (one of the chief Cities of this Province) by reason of these cool refreshings; and in the *winter-time at Burgos in old Castile*, which though situate more Northernly, in a very sharp Air, had yet many notable defences against the cold.

The principal Cities and Towns hereof, are 1. *Corduba*, seated at the foot of *Sierra Morena*, on the left shore of *Guadalquiver*, overlooking towards the South, a spacious and fruitful Plain. First founded by *Marcellus* a *Roman* Consul, *An. V. C.* 601, employed at that time in the Wars of *Spain*: the first Colony planted in this Province by the *Romans*, and the chief City of *Betica*. For a long time the Seat of the *Mooriſh* Vice-Roys, Lieutenants to the great *Caliph* of the *Saracens*; after, of its own Kings of that Nation, who built here for their Palace, a magnificent Castle. Reduced by *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, it was restored unto the honour of an Episcopal See; which anciently it had, and doth now enjoy. A City of great circuit, but of very few Houses, by reason of the multitude of Gardens in it. Famous in former times for the birth of *Lucan*, and both the *Seneca*'s.

Duoſque Senecas, *unicumque* Lucanum,
Fœcunda loquitur Corduba: ſaith *Martial*.

Corduba glorying in her fruitful field.
One *Lucan*, and two *Seneca*'s did yield.

Nor was it less fruitful of good wits in the times succeeding. For not to say any thing of *Hosius* that renowned Confessor, who was Bishop here in the times of *Constantine*, and before: it was a flourishing University in the time of the *Moors*: *Avicen*, *Averroes*, *Rhasis*, *Almansor*, *Messahalah*, those famous Philosophers and Physicians, being Students or Professors in it. It is now vulgarly called *Cordova*; and hence cometh our true *Cordovan* Leather, made of the Skin of a *Sardinian* Beast. Near unto this City, is a Wood of 30 miles in length, having nothing but Olive-trees. 2. *Jaen*, a Bishops See; remarkable for nothing more, than that the Kings of *Spain*, ever since the first recovery of it, have stiled themselves Kings of *Jaen*, and use it to this day amongst the rest of their Titles: it having been, before that time, the seat and title of some petit Kings amongst the *Moors*. Not far hence stood the famous Town of *Iliturgis*, (by *Ptolomy*, *Ilurgis*) mentioned so often in the Wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Ossuna*, of most note for the Dukes hereof, and a small University founded here, *Anno* 1549. 4. *Eccia*, on the River *Chenil*; of more esteem formerly, than at the present: by *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus* called *Astigi*, by *Pliny*, *Augusta Firma*; a *Roman* Colony, and one of the four *Juridical Resorts* of *Betica*. 5. *Marchena*, situate on an Hill, where is said to be the best breed of *Gennets*, (a swift race of Horses) not of this Province alone, but of all *Spain*: the River *Betis* (as it was thought) conveying some secret virtue into them. Of this Race was the Horse which *Cæsar* so loved, that he erected his Statue (when dead) in the Temple of *Venus*: and the ancient *Lusitani* thought they were begotten by the Wind. 6. *Xerxes*, situate more within the Mid-lands, towards the borders of *Granada*, and therefore called *Xeres de la Frontera*, (the *Asta* of *Ptolomy* and *Antoninus*) famous for plenty of that Wine which we call *Xeres*-Sack: but more for that great and fatal Battel fought near unto it, betwixt K. *Roderick* and the *Moors*; the loss of which, drew along with it the loss of *Spain*. 7. *Medina Sedonia*, (so called to distinguish it from a Town of *Castile*, called *Medina Cœli*) the Duke whereof was General of all the Forces both by Sea and Land, intended for the Conquest of *England*, *Anno* 1588. The Town called anciently *Asinda*, and *Asido Cæsariana*; the Duke whereof is of the Family of the *Guzmans*, and the greatest Prince, for Revenue, in all *Spain*; his Intrado being estimated at 130000 Crowns *per annum*. 8. *Algezire*, on the Sea-side; a Town of such strength and consequence, that it held out a Siege 19 months, for the *Moors* of *Africk*, against *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*; to whom surrendred at the last upon Composition, *Anno* 1343. Since which, the Kings of *Castile* have stiled themselves Kings of *Algezire*; not yet discomfited. 9. *Conil*, a Town on the Sea-coast, beyond the Isle of *Gades*, part of the Patrimony of the D. of *Medina Sidonia*. 10. *Gibralter*, a strong Town, seated at the mouth of the Straights from hence denominated, lying at the foot of the Mountain of *Gaipe*, supposed to be one of *Hercules* Pillars; the furthest point Southwards of all *Europe*. 11. S. *Lucar de Barameda*, (the *Luciferi forum* of the Ancients) the Port-

Port-Town to *Sevill*, ſituate at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, or *Guadalquiver*: where the Ships of that rich City ride, either for a fair wind to put to Sea, or for a tide to carry them up the River, as they come from *America*. 12. *Tariffa*, ſeated at the end of the Promontory which looks towards *Africk*; and ſo called, becauſe *Tariff*, Leader of the *Moors* into *Spain*, here landed: recovered from the *Moors* by *Sancho* the third of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1292, or thereabouts; the firſt Governour thereof being *Alfonſo Peres de Guzman*, the firſt Founder of the now potent Family of *Medina Sidonia*. Suppoſed by ſome to be the *Carteia* of the Ancients. And if ſo, then a Colony of the *Libertines* (begotten on ſome unmarried *Spaniſh* Women, by the *Roman* Souldiers) placed here, and indulged the Priviledges of the *Latins*, by Decree of the Senate, *An. V. C.* 600. Not far from theſe laſt Towns, in a little Iſland made by two branches of the *Bætis*, where it falleth into the Sea, ſtood the famous 13. *Tarteſſus*, celebrated in moſt ancient Writers, for the abundance of Silver which the Mines of it did produce. Which was ſo great, that (as we read in *Ariſtotle's* Book *de Mirabilibus*) when the *Tyrians* or *Phœnicians* firſt came thither, ὥστε μηκέτι ἔχειν δύνασθαι, μήτε ἐπιδέξασθαι τὸν ἄργυρον, that their Ships were neither able to contain or tranſport it thence: inſomuch that they were fain to make their *Anchors*, and other *Utenſils*, of Silver. The like commodity the *Græcians* found in their Voyages hither, of which *Herodotus* maketh mention, *Lib.* IV. Hereupon ſome have been perſwaded, that the Ships which *Solomon* built to go for *Tarſhiſh*, (whereof we read 1 *Kings* 10. 22.) were bound no further than this place. As for the ſituation of it, that it was neither *Tariff*, as ſome, or *Carteia*, as others do conjecture, (though where *Carteia* was, be alike uncertain, if it were not the ſame with *Tariff*) but in a ſmall Iſland, at the mouth of the River *Bætis*, as before is ſaid, doth appear by *Strabo*; who telleth us, that *Bætis* falls into the Sea with two mouths or chanels, πόλιν ἐν τῷ μεταξὺ χώρῳ κατοικῆσθαι, ἣν καλεῖσθαι Τάρτησσον, &c. and that in the midſt thereof there is a City called *Tarteſſus*, of the ſame name with the River, (for *Bætis* anciently was ſo named) from whence the whole Country thereabouts is called *Tarteſſus*. The like *Pauſanias* ſaith expreſly in his *Eliaca*. Which ſituation of this Town in an Iſland, at the mouth of *Bætis*, occaſioned *Pliny*, and ſome others of the ancient Writers, to give the name of *Tarteſſus* to the Iſle of *Gades*; whereof more anon.

In the mean time go we on to 14. *Sevil*, (in *Latin*, *Hiſpalis*) the faireſt City, not only of *Andaluzia*, but of all *Spain*. It is in compaſs ſix miles, divided into two parts by the *Bætis*; but joined together by a ſtrong and beautiful Bridge; the whole environed with beautiful Walls, and adorned with many magnificent and ſtately Buildings, as Palaces, Churches, and Monaſteries; amongſt which, that of the *Gertoſins*, or *Carthuſians*, is endowed with 25000 Crowns of yearly Revenue. It is alſo the See of an Arch-biſhop, under whoſe Juriſdiction are ſaid to be 20000 Villages; and a moſt flouriſhing Univerſity, wherein ſtudied *Avicen* the *Moor*, that excellent and learned Scholar: Pope *Sylveſter* the ſecond, and *Leander*, who was Arch-biſhop hereof, about the year 580; a ſtout defender of the *Catholick* tendries of the Church againſt the *Arians*. The Univerſity adorned with one of the greateſt and goodlieſt Libraries in the Chriſtian World; furniſhed by *Diego*, the Son of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the firſt Founder of it, with no fewer than 12000 Volumes, in ſeveral Languages, gathered together with extraordinary charge and care: and endowed with a very fair Revenue for the maintenance and enlargement of it. Famous in former times, for two Provincial Councils holden here; the firſt, *Anno* 584; the laſt, *Anno* 636; and at the preſent, for that here are continually maintained 30000 *Gennets* for the ſervice of the King; but moſt of all, for the great traffick of the place. For from this Town the *Caſtilians* ſet forwards towards *America*; and here they do diſcharge the Fleets of Gold and Silver, which they bring from thence. To this Town come the Pearls of *Cubagna*, and the Emeralds of S. *Martha*, the Cochineile of *Mexico*, the Corals of *Hiſpaniola*, and, in a word, the whole treaſure of the *New-found-World*. Here is the publick Emporie of all *Spain*, for her Wines, Oranges, and Oyls; ſent from hence in ſo great abundance into all parts of *Europe*, that the people uſe to ſay, in the way of a *By-word*, That *if there enter not into* Sevil 4000 *Pipes of Wine every day in the year, the* Farmer *of the Cuſtoms is ſure to break*: inſomuch as the Revenues coming out of this City only, are worth a very good Realm to the *Catholick* King: *Maginus* reckoning it at no leſs than a Million of Crowns yearly. Laſtly, here reſteth the body of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, the fortunate diſcoverer of the *New-World*, with a *Latin* Epitaph upon his Tomb; but ſhort (God knoweth) of the great merit of the Man: of which more hereafter.

As for the Fortunes of this City, as they relate to Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters, it hath been long the See of an Arch-biſhop, (as before is ſaid) next in revenue and degree unto him, of *Toledo*; his revenue eſtimated at 100000 Crowns *per annum*; his Juriſdiction reaching over all *Andaluſia*, and the *Fortunate Iſlands*; in which are ſaid to be contained 20000 Villages; the very Dioceſes of which, being ſaid to comprehend 2000 Benefices, beſides *Frieries*, *Nunneries*, and *Hoſpitals*, which may make the former computation of the Villages, ſubject to his Power, as a *Metropolitan* of more eaſie credit Yet not ſo much conſiderable for its Wealth and Revenue, as for being once the See of *Iſidore*, ſo much renowned (conſidering the time he lived in) for the univerſality of his learning; who was Biſhop here, called uſually *Iſidorus Hiſpalenſis*, to diſtinguiſh him from another of that name in *Egypt*, called *Peluſiota*. As for the civil Fortunes of it, in the declining of the *Moors*, when their Eſtate was broken into many Realms and Principalities, it became a Kingdom of it ſelf under a noble *Moor* named *Allcorrexi*, *An.* 966. One of the Kings whereof called *Almuneamuz*, was of ſo great power, that he had the Regal City of *Corduba*, and the greateſt part of *Andaluſia*, under his command, made ſubject with the reſt of the *Moors* in *Spain*, to the *Miramolines* of *Morocco*, *An.* 1091, till the retreat of *Mahomet Enaſer* unto *Africk*, *An.* 1214. After which, once more made a Kingdom in the perſon of *Aben Lalle*, a great Prince of the *Moors*; but no longer continuing in that Royal Dignity and Eſtate, than till the year 1248, when taken and ſubdued by *Ferdinand* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, and made a part of his Eſtate: but ſo, that it remaineth a Realm diſtinct in the Regal ſtile; in which the Kings of *Spain* are called Kings of *Sevil*.

2. South of *Andaluſia*, at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, ſtands the Iſle of *GADES*, diſtant from the main land 700 paces, and joined unto it with a Bridge called *Puento de Suaco*. It is in length 13 miles, of a very fruitful ſoil; beſides the riches which it gets by Fiſhing, and making of Salt. Firſt peopled by the *Tyrians* 562 years before the Birth of *CHRIST*; ſubdued by the *Carthaginians*, *An. V. C.* 236, being invited by the *Tyrians* to aid them in a defenſive War againſt the *Spaniards*: and was the laſt hold which the *Carthaginians* had in *Spain*; out of which beaten by the valour and good fortune of *Scipio Africanus*. Here ſtood in ancient times a Temple conſecrated

crated to the honour of *Hercules*; in which all Seafaring-men (at their being here) uſed to pay their vows, and offer ſacrifice, as being arrived at the furtheſt parts of all the World.

Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1 *Porto Real*, a fair and capacious Haven, between the Town of *Cadiz*, and the main Land of *Andaluſia*. 2 *Santa Maria*, another Port more towards the North. 3 *Cadis*, or *Gades*, the chief Town of the Iſland, and giving name unto the whole. Situate on the Weſtern part of the whole Iſle, on a large Bay, ſerving as a Road for the *Indian* Fleet; by the reſort and trade whereof, it is much enriched. Firſt founded by the *Tyrians*, afterwards made a *Municipal* City, by the *Romans*; and one of the *Juridical Reſorts* for the Province of *Bætica*: in whoſe times it was held to be the nobleſt and richeſt in all *Spain*, not yielding to any in the Empire, for greatneſs, magnificence, or number of Inhabitants of account and quality. In ſo much, that here lived, at one time, 500 *Roman* Knights; which number was not equalled in any one place, except *Padua* only: beſides the great concourſe of Merchants from all parts of the World. Which great reſort, occaſioned *Cornelius Balbus*, a Native of it, to add a new Town to the old, the whole circumference of both being 20 Furlongs. By the *Moors*, at their conqueſt of *Spain*, it was utterly ruined, but ſince repaired, well fortified, and made the *Magazin* for the Ammunition of the *Spaniſh* Navies. Taken, notwithſtanding, in one day by the *Engliſh*, under the command of *Charles* Lord *Effingham*, *Robert* Earl of *Eſſex*, and Sir *Walter Raleigh*; in which they burned the *Indian* Fleet, conſiſting of 40 Ships, whoſe Lading was worth 8 Millions of Crowns; overcame the *Spaniſh* Navy, conſiſting of 57 Men of War; took the St. *Michael*, and the St. *Andrew*, two great *Galleons*, and their luggage; ſpoiled and carried away more Martial Furniture, than could be ſupplied in many years; and forced the Town, in which they ſlew, and took Priſoners, 4000 Foot, and 600 Horſe, and brought thence a very great booty in the ſackage of it, *Anno* 1596. The fortunacy of which enterpriſe, gave occaſion to one of the *Wits* then living, to frame this excellent *Anagram* on the name of the Earl of *Eſſex*, (who was looked on as the greateſt *Adventurer* in it) viz. *Devereux. Vere dux.* Which he afterwards caſt into this *Diſtich*.

Vere dux *De'vreux*, & verior *Hercule*; *GADES*
Nam ſemel hic vidit, vicit at ille ſimul.

Alcides yields to *Devereux*; he did ſee
Thy beauties (*Cales*) but *Devereux* conquer'd thee.

Near to this *Iſle*, is that ſo celebrated Straight, called by ſome, *Fretum Gaditanum*, for the nearneſs of it to this Iſland; by others, *Fretum Herculeum*, not becauſe *Hercules* did there break out a paſſage to let the *Ocean* into the *Mediterranean*, as the Poets fable; but becauſe of the two Pillars which he cauſed to be erected on each ſide of it, with the inſcription of *Nil Ultra*, this being ſuppoſed to be the furtheſt Country Weſtward. But when that ſuppoſition was proved untrue by the diſcovery of *America*, *Charles* the fifth being in thoſe parts, cauſed two new Pillars to be placed where the old ones ſtood, or rather, where he thought they ſtood, and *Plus Ultra* to be written on them. As for thoſe Pillars ſo much memorized in the ancient Writers, ſome place them in the Temple of *Hercules*, within this Iſland; others, on the Promontory of *Calpe* in *Spain*, and that of *Abila* in *Africk*: and ſome again in two little Iſlands near thoſe Promontories. This therefore being a matter doubtful, and not worth the looking after, let us return unto the *Straight*, called now the *Straight* of *Gibraltar*, from the Town and Caſtle of *Gabraltar*, ſituate on the brink hereof; the *Straight* being in length fifteen miles; and in breadth, where it is narroweſt, ſeven.

EXTREMADURA hath on the Eaſt and North, *Caſtile*; on the Weſt, *Portugal*; and on the South *Andaluſia*. It was firſt called *Bæturia*, from the River *Bætis*, which runneth through it; and for diſtinction's ſake, *Beturia Celtica*, from the *Celtici*, then the Inhabitants of this Tract; to difference it from *Bæturia Turdulorum*, containing thoſe parts of *Granada*, and *Andaluſia*, which lye neareſt unto *Tarraconenſis*. And when firſt it had the name of *Extremadura*, it was of larger extent than now it is, reaching unto the Banks of the River *Duero*, the bounds, at that time, of the Kingdom of the *Moriſco's*, ſo called by the *Chriſtians*, as lying on the *extremities*, or furtheſt ſide of that River.

Principal places in it, are, 1 *Alcantara*, on the banks of the River *Tagus*, ſituate near the ruins of *Norba Cæſarea*, deſtroyed by *Petronius* and *Afranius*, two of *Pompey*'s Captains, for adhering faithfully to *Cæſar*: now of moſt note for an *Order* of *Knights* here ſeated, and from hence denominated; whereof more hereafter. 2 *Gundalcanal*, famous for its Mines of Silver and Gold. 3 *Merida*, ſituate alſo on the *Tagus*; firſt called *Auguſta Emerita*, founded and made a Colony by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who placed herein his old Soldiers, whom the *Romans* called *Emeriti*; hence it had the name. The chief City, after that, of *Luſitania*; and, by *Auſonius*, preferred before any in *Spain*: now ruinous, meanly built, and but ill inhabited: Famous for nothing, but the Bridge upon the River *Tagus*, a Monument of the *Roman* greatneſs. Nigh to this Town was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Wallia*, the firſt King of the *Goths* in *Spain*; and *Attace*, King of the *Alani* and *Silinges*, (this laſt a people of the *Vandals*) the victory whereof falling to the *Goths*, cauſed the whole Nation of the *Vandals* to draw forth out of *Spain*. 4 *Medelino*, near which the River *Guadiana* hideth it ſelf under the ground, for the ſpace of ten leagues; but more famous for the birth of *Ferdinand Cortez*, the fortunate Diſcoverer and Conqueror of the Realm of *Mexico*. 5 *Badaios*, a Biſhops See on the borders of *Portugal*. 6 *Guadalupe*, on a River of the ſame name; renowned amongſt thoſe of the Church of *Rome*, for the Miracles and Image of our Lady of *Guadalupe*; as much reſorted to in *Spain*, as our Lady of *Loretto* in *Italy*. 7 *Placenza*, a Biſhops See, near the Hills of *Caſtile*; amongſt which Hills, (by reaſon of their ſtrength and ſafety) *Sertorius* made his laſt retreat, when perſecuted by the *Romans* of the contray Faction; and where he was moſt wickedly ſlain by *Perpenna*, and ſome other of his own Aſſociates. Not far from hence, if it be not in the ſelf-ſame place, in a retired and ſolitary Valley, ſtandeth the Monaſtery of Saint *Juſtus*, remarkable for a greater Miracle than any the Lady of *Guadalupe* is able to boaſt of: which is, that *Charles* the fifth, that moſt puiſſant Monarch, having reſigned his Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*, and all the reſt of his Dominions to his Son *Philip* the ſecond, did here bid farewel unto the World; ſpending the reſidue of his time in Prayers and devout Meditations. The greateſt Monument and Example of *Self-denial*, which theſe later Ages have afforded. Far beyond any abnegation of the World by our Cloyſtered-Monks, or any quitting of their Crowns by ſome Kings and Emperors in the darker Ages of the Church; who living in the time of Ignorance and Superſtition, ſaw not ſo clearly what they did, (or did it out of weakneſs, and want of ſpirit) as this Maſculine and Heroick Emperor.

The old Inhabitants of these Countries, were the *Turduli*, the *Bastuli*, and the *Turditani*, of *Andalusia*, and *Granada*; the *Celtici*, and some part of the *Lusitani*, in *Extremadura*, all vanquished by the *Romans*, during the second *Punick* War, under the fortunate command of *Scipio Africanus*. From them extorted by the *Vandals*, who passing over into *Africk*, left it to the *Suevians*; lost by them to *Theodorick* the fourth King of the *Goths*, who hereby added all *Betica* to his other Dominions. Under the *Goths* it remained subject till their fatal overthrow by the *Moors*, who having made almost an entire Conquest of all the Continent of *Spain*, were at first subject to the *Great Caliphs*, Lords of the *Saracenical* Empire; governing here by their Lieutenants, from *Ulidor Ulit*, under whom they first made this Conquest, *Anno* 714, to *Abdalla*, of the House of *Alaveci*, *Anno* 757. At what time *Abderamen*, of the Line of *Mahomet* the *Impostor*, and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, flying the fury of *Abdalla*, by whom the old Line of the *Caliphs*, of the Race of *Humeia* (of which Race this *Abderamen* was) had been dispossessed of that Empire; came into *Spain*, and was with great joy entertained by the *Spanish Moors*, cordially affected to his House: whose Government he took upon him, discharged of all subjection and subordination to the *Caliphs*, or *Mahometan* Emperors, and making it an absolute Kingdom of it self. In his Race it continued without any fraction or subdivision, till the time of *Hizen* the second, the tenth King of these *Spanish Moors*: after whose death, distracted amongst many petit Tyrants, till they were all brought under by the *Moors* of *Africk*; of which more anon. In the mean time, take here the Catalogue of the Kings of these *Moors* of *Spain*, called commonly, from *Corduba*, their Royal Seat,

The Kings of *Corduba*.

A. C.		
757	1	*Abderamen*, the first Soveraign-Prince of the *Moors* in *Spain*. 31.
787	2	*Hizen*, the second son of *Abderamen*, by whom *Zuleima*, his elder Brother, was put by his Throne. 7.
794	3	*Hali Hatan*, the Son of *Hizen*. 24.
819	4	*Abderamen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*, discomfited by the *Christians* in the memorable battel of *Clavigio*, *Anno* 836.
839	5	*Mahomet*, Son of *Abderamen* the second, who reduced *Toledo*, then revolted, under his Command. 35.
874	6	*Almundie*, the Son of *Mahomet*. 2.
876	7	*Abdalla*, Brother to *Almundie*, and as little memorable.
889	8	*Abderamen* III. sirnamed *Almansor*, too fortunate in his Wars against the *Christians*. 50.
939	9	*Hali Hatan* II. Son of *Abderamen* the second.
959	10	*Hizen* II. Son of *Hali Hatan*; in the 33 year of his reign, deposed for his sloth and negligence, by
989	11	*Zuleima*, an *African Moor*, of the Family of *Alaveci*; and he expelled by
993	12	*Mahomet* II. sirnamed *Almohadi*, of the old House of *Humeia*; outed again by *Zuleima*, and made King of *Toledo*. Betwixt these three, and their several Factions, the Kingdom wretchedly torn in pieces, never restored again to its ancient lustre; and finally, made a prey to
1001	13	*Hali*, another *African Moor*. 2.
1003	14	*Cacin*, the Brother of *Hali*. 4.
1007	15	*Hiaia*, the Son of *Mahomet*. Mens. 4.
1007	16	*Abderamen* IV. a King of 4 weeks only.
1008	17	*Mahomet* III. poysoned by his own Servants. 1.
1010	18	*Hizen* III. deposed by the *Moors*, grown weary of the House of *Humeia*, of which House he was.
1011	19	*Ioar* of *Algezire*. 3.
1014	20	*Mahomet* IV. the son of *Ioar*, the last King of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, before the second

Conquest of these parts of *Spain* by the *Moors* of *Africa*. Concerning which, we are to know, that after the great Victory obtained at *Clavigio*, against *Abderamen* the second, by *Raymir* King of *Leon Anno* 836, in which the *Moors* lost 60000 of his men; the power and reputation of the *Spanish Moors* began to decline: brought utterly to nothing, by the sloath and negligence of *Hizen* the second; after a long and unprofitable reign, deposed by *Zuleimea*, who succeeded. But the *Moors* not easily brooking the command of a new *Usurper*, fell into many Fractions and Divisions amongst themselves: every great man seizing on some part of the Kingdom, which he retained unto himself with the name of King; from whence we have a King of *Sevil*, another of *Toledo*, a third of *Valentia*, a fourth of *Cordova*, *&c.* the names of which last only, do occur in the former Catalogue; as they which did pretend a Sovereignty over all the rest. And 'twas a sign the Kingdom was in the exspiring, when so many Kings succeeded in so few years, after one another: there passing from the deposing of *Hizen* the second, to the beginning of *Mahomet* the fourth, not above 34 years in all; during which time, we find no fewer than ten Kings. The often change of Princes, and short lives of Kings, are the apparent signs of a ruinous State, approaching very near to its exspiration; as may be seen by the short lives and reigns of the last *Western* Emperors, nine of them hardly reigning 20 years: as also, of the Kings of the *Goths* in *Italy*, of which the six last held the Throne no longer than the nine *Western* Emperors had done before them. But to proceed: *Mahomet* the last King of this first Rank, having left the stage in the 13th year of his reign, *Anno* 1027, we find no good *constat* of his Successors in the Kingdom of *Corduba*; made inconsiderable by the withdrawing so many Provinces from the body of it: the pride and insolency of which Roytelets and petit Tyrants, forced them at last to call unto their aid the Kings or Miramomolins of *Morocco*, by whom themselves, and all the rest of their Corrivals, were in fine subdued. Under seven Princes of *Morocco*, the *Spanish Moors* continued subject about 120 years; that is to say, from the first coming in of *Joseph Telephin*, the Miramomoline, *Anno* 1091; unto the going out of *Mahomet*, sirnamed the *Green*, *An.* 1214. During which time, the affairs of thee *Moors* in *Spain* were so well conducted, that they lost nothing to the *Christians*, but *Extremadura*, taken from them by *Alfonso* the second, in the accompt of *Castile*; the seventh, in accompt of *Leon*, *An.* 1147: and the City of *Lisbon* taken from them in the same year also, by *Alfonso* the first King of *Portugal*. But *Mahomet* the *Green* being vanquished in the great Fight at *Sierra Morena*, by the joint Forces of the confederated *Christians*, *Anno* 1214, left off all further care of the *Moors* in *Spain*; after his going thence, distracted once again into many Kingdoms, almost as many as great Towns, all of them swallowed up, in a little time, by the Kings of *Castile*, *Arragon*, and *Portugal*. And amongst them, the Kingdom of *Corduba*, not able to stand long on this new Foundation, was ruinated and brought under the command of the *Castilians*, by their

their King, *Ferdinand* the second, *Anno* 1236. Since that time there no more mention of the Kingdom of *Cordubа*.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Lion *Gules*, armed and crowned of the first, a Border *Azure* charged with 8 Towers *Argent*.

7. GRANADA.

GRANADA is bounded on the West, with *Andalusia*; on the East, with *Murcia*, and the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *New Castile*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* only. So called from *Granada*, the chief City, and Seat-Royal of it.

It is in length 200 miles, 100 miles in breadth, and about 700 miles in compass: a Kingdom of no great extent; but such as contained in it more fair Towns, strong Fortresses, and defensible places, than the like quantity of Ground in the World besides. The North part of the Country plain; the South parts overspread with the *Alpuxarra*'s, and other spurs and branches of the *Orospeda*. In the time of the *Moors*, wonderfully well inhabited, and full of all sorts of Commodities, the Hills planted with Vines and Fruits, the Plains and Valleys swelling with Corn and Gardens: since their expulsion, neither much peopled, nor very fruitful, for want of men to dress and manure the Land.

The principal Cities of it, are 1 *Granada*, situate on two Hills, divided by a Valley, through which runneth the River *Darien*; consisting of four several parts, called *Alhambre*, *Sierre de Sol*, *Granada*, and *Antequerula*: the two first standing on the Hills, the two last in the valley; the whole circuit being about 7 miles, and containing in the time of the *Mooriſh* Kingdom, about 200000 of souls. Fenced with strong Walls, fortified with 130 Turrets, and repleniſhed with abundance of wholsome and pleasant Springs. The Merchants and Gentry of the best sort, do dwell in that part which is called *Granada*: the houses of which, are for the most part built of Free-stone, with delicate and artificial Masonry, shewing great magnificence. Herein standeth the Cathedral Church, a work of admirable structure: of Figure round, as having sometimes been a *Mahometan Mosquet*. Here is also the place which they call *Alcazar*, representing a little Town, to which are ten Gates. In the *Alhambre* is the Palace of the *Mooriſh* Kings, covered with Gold, indented with *Mosaical* work; and which, by reason of the structure, and multitude of Fountains which are about it, may be put amongst the *Wonders* of the world; having withal a goodly prospect over all the Town, lying under it upon the East; a spacious Champian towards the North, and the snowy tops of *Sierra Novado*, towards the South. This City is the ordinary Parliament, and Court of Justice, for all the Southern parts of *Spain*, as *Valladolit* is for the Northern: *Madrid*, which is the highest Court, having Jurisdiction over, and receiving Appeals from both. A Town first raised out of the ruins of *Iliberis*, situate not far off the Hill *Elvire*, much mentioned in the stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*. In the two other parts of the Town, there is nothing remarkable, inhabited only by *Mechanicks* of the poorer sort. 2 *Alhama*, seated amongst steep and craggy Rocks, out of which issue *Medicinal* Waters, occasioning a great resort of the *Spaniſh* Gentry: the first Town taken by the *Spaniards* in their last long War against the *Moors*, for the recovery of this Kingdom, *Anno* 1482; and looked on, by the *Moors*, as a sad presage of a ruinated and expiring Empire. 3 *Guadix*, an Episcopal See, about nine leagues from *Granada*. 4 *Vilas Malaga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Cex*; by *Antoninus*, *Sexicanum*; situate at the foot of the Mountains called *Alpuxarra*'s; a large branch of the *Orospeda* over-spreading a great part of this Country: heretofore planted with incredible numbers of *Moors*, who chose to dwell there for the strength and safety of the situation: since their expulsion, desolate and unfrequented; nothing remaining of them now, but the *Arabick* Language; which is still spoke by those few people which inhabit in it. The Mountains in this Tract so high, that from the tops hereof a man may easily discern the whole course of the *Straights of Gibraltar*, together with the Towns of *Seuta*, and *Tangier*, in *Africk*, 5 *Ronda*, at the foot of another branch of the *Crospeda*, called from this Town, *Sierra de Ronda*: not far from which, by *Munda*, now a very small Village, was fought that memorable battel betwixt *Cæsar* and the Sons of *Pompey*; the honour of which, fell to *Cæsar*, who then made an end of the *Civil Wars*, which that very day, four years before, were begun by *Pompey* the Father. In this fight was *Cn. Pompeius* slain, and his Forces broken: *Cæsar* himself being so put to it, that seeing his Souldiers give back, he was fain to maintain the fight by his own great courage, bidding them *Remember, that at* Munda *they forsook their General*. The shame of which reproach, and his noble example, encouraged them to a new onset, which was honoured with a signal and remarkable Victory: this being the last fight that *Cæsar* was in; murdered not long after in the Senate-house. And of this fight he used to say, *That in all other places he fought for his Honour, in this for his life*. 6 *Antequera*, heretofore a well-fortified Town, bordering close upon *Castile*. 7 *Maxacra*, on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, supposed to be the *Murgis* of *Ptolemy*. 8 *Vera* on the same shore; the furthest Town of *Batica*, and of this Country, towards *Murcia*: supposed to be the *Virgao* of *Pliny*, from whence the neighbouring Creek or Bay was called *Virgitanus*. 9 *Loxa*, on the River *Darien*, enjoying a situation both strong and pleasant. 10 *Malaga*, or *Malaca*, situate at the mouth of *Guadalquiver*, once sacked by *Crassus* the rich *Roman*; who flying out of *Spain*, to avoid the Fury of *Marius* and *Cinna*, who had slain his Father and Uncle, hid himself, and his Companions, in a Cave hereabouts, for eight Months together: but after hearing of their deaths, issued out, and ransacked, amongst many other Cities, this *Malaga*. A Town of great Traffick, and much Resort, especially for Raisins, Almonds, *Malaga Sacks*: well fortified, and of great importance, as a Town of War; and, to the great prejudice of the *Moors*, taken by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, *Anno* 1487: the Conquest of the whole Kingdom of *Granada*, following not long after. It was since made a Bishops-See, or restored rather to that dignity which it had of old. 11 *Almeria*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, the *Abdera* of *Mela*; a Colony of the *Carthaginians*, and anciently a Bishops See. 12 *Carthema*, 13 *Coim*, and 14 *Basa*, more within the Land: this last, the strongest Bulwark of the City of *Granada*, on the North-east whereof it standeth. A place of great strength both by Art and Nature; and by the *Moors* defended with so great a gallantry, that it held out a siege of 7 Months against an Army of 13000 Horse, and 24000 Foot, King *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, being there in person: and yielded at the last, *Decemb.* 4. 1489, upon better conditions than any Town had done before it.

As for the Fortunes of this Country, after the Conquest of it by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, it was a part or member of the Kingdom of *Cordubа*, and so continued till that Kingdom was subdued by the *Spaniards*.

But the *Moors* were too ſtout to yield all at once. Having yet ground enough both to ſecure themſelves in, and endow their King: they are reſolved, though they had loſt one Kingdom, to erect another. And therefore *Corduba* being taken, and that Kingdom ruinated, the *Moors*, with *Mahomet Aben Alhamar*, their unfortunate, but valiant King, removed themſelves unto *Granada*, and there renewed their ſtrength and Kingdom, which laſted 256 years, under 20 Kings; whoſe names here follow in this Catalogue of

The Kings of *Granada*.

A. C.		
1236	1	*Mahomet Alhamar*, the laſt King of *Corduba*, and the firſt King of *Granada*. 36.
1272	2	*Mahomet Mir Almir*. 30.
1302	3	*Mahomet Aben Ezar*. 7.
1309	4	*Mahomet Aben Evar*. 10.
1319	5	*Iſmael*. 3.
1322	6	*Mahomet*. 12.
1334	7	*Joſeph Aben Amet*. 20.
1354	8	*Mahomet Lagus*. 23.
1377	9	*Mahomet Vermeil*. 2.
1379	10	*Mahomet Guadix*. 13.
1392	11	*Joſeph* II. 4.
1396	12	*Mahomet Aben Balva*. 11.
1407	13	*Joſeph* III. 16.
1423	14	*Mahomet Aben Azar*. 4.
1427	15	*Mahomet* the little. 5.
1432	16	*Joſeph Abud Almud*. 13.
1445	17	*Mahomet Oſmen*. 8.
1453	18	*Imael* II. 9.
1462	19	*Muley Alboacen*. 20.
1482	20	*Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King of the *Moors* in *Spain*.

Of all which, there is little left upon Record: their whole time being ſpent in defending their borders againſt the encroachments of *Caſtile*; or elſe in *Civil-Wars* and diſcords amongſt themſelves: in which they were ſo frequent, and ſometimes ſo violent, as if they had no Enemy near them. *Mahomet Aben Evar*, the fourth King, depoſed by *Mahomet Aben Levin*; and he again thruſt out by *Iſmael* the ſon of *Ferrachen*, before he could enjoy the fruits of his treaſon. *Mahomet*, ſon of *Iſmael*, murdered by his Subjects. *Joſeph* the ſon of *Mahomet*, ſlain by *Mahomet Lagus*; and he again depoſed by *Mahomet Vermeil*; who in the end was miſerably ſlain by *Pedro* the *Cruel*, of *Caſtile*, to whom he had fled for help and ſuccour. After this time, they ruined and depoſed one another, to the end of their Kingdom; the Succeſſor never ſtaying till the death of his Predeceſſor, but violently making way for himſelf to enter on the Government: even *Mahomet Boabdelin*, the laſt King hereof, not having patience to expect the death of his Father; but ſetting him beſides the Throne, as he himſelf was for a time, by *Muley Moabdelin* his Uncle; and thereby opening a fair Gate for *Ferdinand*, King of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, to bring in his Forces to the ſubduing of them all. Such was the fortune of this Kingdom, that as it began under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile*; ſo it ended under a *Mahomet*, a *Ferdinand* being King of *Caſtile* alſo. In the firſt year, then, of this man's Reign, did the War begin, or rather in the laſt year of his Father, who by taking *Zahara* from the Chriſtians, gave the firſt occaſion: and in the tenth year of the War, (for ſo long it laſted) *Anno* 1492, the Empire of the *Moors* ended in *Spain*, by the valour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick, and *Iſabel* his Wife, afer their firſt entrance into it, more than 760 years.

Such of them as, after the decay of their Kingdom, had a deſire to ſtay in *Spain*, which had for ſo long time been their native Country, were ſuffered ſo to do by the prudent *Victors*, (fearing a deſolation of the Country, if they ſhould abandon it) conditioned, that they would be *Chriſtened*. And that they might be known to be as they profeſſed, the *Inquiſition* was eſtabliſhed in the City of *Granada*, conſiſting of a certain number of Secular Prieſts, and Dominican Friers; who finding any counterfeit or Apoſtate *Chriſtians*, were firſt gently to reprove and exhort them; and after, if no amendment followed, to inflict ſuch puniſhment on them, as was accuſtomed in like caſes. By the terror of which *Inquiſition*, many profeſſed, in ſhew, the *Chriſtian* Faith. But being *Chriſtians* only in the outward ſhew, and practiſing on all occaſions againſt the State, the Kings of *Spain* reſolved long ago on their *Extermination*; but never had opportunity to effect it, till the year 1609. At what time *Philip* the third having made a Peace with *England*, and a Truce with *Holland*; and finding the *Moors* of *Africk* ſo embroiled in Wars, that they were not able to diſturb him; put that extream rigour in execution, which had before been thought of in their conſultations; 1100000 of them being forced to quit this Country, and provide new dwellings; under colour that they went about to free themſelves from the *Inquiſition*, and to recover their old Liberty loſt ſo long before.

The Forces which the Kings of *Granada*, in the times of their greateſt power, were able to raiſe, were far beyond the ameaſurement and extent of their Kingdom; not above 700 miles in compaſs, as before is ſaid: but ſo exceeding populous, and well accommodated with all manner of neceſſaries, that within two days ſpace, the King hereof was ſaid to have been able to draw together 50000 Horſe, and 200000 Foot, for defence of his Kingdom. *Turquet* reports it ſo, in his *Spaniſh* Hiſtory. But this proved more than they were able to do in their greateſt need; when this Kingdom was finally invaded, and at laſt ſubdued by *Ferdinand* and *Iſabel*, Kings of *Spain*: though poſſibly by reaſon of their diviſions at that time, (ſome following the Party of *Mahomet Boadolin*; and others, that of his Uncle *Muley*, choſen King againſt him) they might not join together in a common intereſs, for the defence of their Eſtate.

The Arms whereof were *Or*, a Pomgranate (or Apple of *Granada*) ſlipped, *Vert*.

8 *MURCIA.*

MURCIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Granada*; on the Eaſt & North, with *Valentia*, and a part of *Granada*, and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from *Murcia* the chief City. In former times eſteemed a rich and wealthy Country, ſtored with all ſorts of fruits; and ſo abounding in *Silver* Mines, that when the *Romans* were Lords of it, they kept continually four hundred men at work, and received 2500 *Drachma's* of of daily profit: now for the moſt part barren, and but ill-inhabited.

Cities of note there are not many in ſo ſmall a Country. The principal, 1 *Murcia*, by *Ptolemy* called *Menralio*, ſeated upon the River *Segura*, a Biſhops See, ſituate in a pleaſant and delightful Plain, planted with Pomgranates, and other excellent fruits: from this, the Country had the name of the Kingdom of *Murcia*. 2 *Carthagena*, or *Nova Carthago*, firſt built by *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*, the brother of *Annibal*, for the better receiving of

of such aids, both of men and money, as should come from *Africa*. Situate in a Demi-Island, in the very jaws of the *Mediterranean*: by which, and by a deep Marish on the West side of it, so impregnably fortified, that if *Scipio*, afterwards called *Africanus*, who then lay at the siege thereof, had not been shewed a way over that *Marish*, at a dead low water, by poor Fisher-men of *Tarragon*, who knew the Secret, he had there lost both his time and his honour. Nothing more memorable, in the sackage and spoil thereof, (though there was found abundance of Arms and Treasure) than the vertue of *Scipio*, who finding there many *Spanish* Ladies of great birth and beauties, left there as Hostages for the *Spaniards*, with the *Carthaginians*, would not permit any of them to be brought before him, for fear it should betray him to some inconvenience. Being re-edified, it was made a *Roman* Colony, and one of the seven Juridical Resorts of *Tarraconensis*: by *Constantine* made the chief City of the new Province of *Carthaginensis*, which was hence denominated. Afterwards, twice sacked by the *Goths* and *Vandals*, it lay for a long time buried in its own ruins. And though again new built and peopled, it is still but small, containing at the most but 600 housholds: and would be utterly abandoned, but for the safety of the place, and the strength thereof, garrisoned, and fortified very strongly by King *Philip* the second, for fear of surprisal by the *Turks*: and the security of the Haven (which is withal very large and capacious) coming from a little Island, lying at the mouth thereof; by which assured from tempestuous winds, and the violent ragings of the Sea. Hence the occasion of that saying of *Andreas Doria*, Admiral unto *Charles* the fifth, That *there were but three safe Ports in the Mediterranean*; that is to say, *August*, *July*, and this *Carthagena*: meaning, as I conceive, that those two Months being commonly free from tempestuous weather, were of as great safety to the Mariners, as this famous Port. 3 *Lorca*, another Port-Town, situate on a Creek more within the Land. 4 *Almanca*, 5 *Sarazel*, two strong Towns bordering on *Valentia*; well fortified, when *Murcia* and *Valentia* were in several hands. 6 *Cervillan*, 7 *Alhama*, 8 *Rus*, *&c.*

This County, being part of the Province of *Carthaginensis*, was by the *Alani* taken from the *Romans*, at their first entrance into *Spain*: from them recovered by *Wallia*, the first King of the *Goths*, in this part of *Europe*. Together with the rest of *Spain*, it was subdued by the *Moors* of *Africk*, in the distractions of whose Empire; after the going hence of the *Moors* of *Africk*, it was made a distinct Kingdom by *Aben Hut*, of the Race of the Kings of *Saragossa*, who had seised upon it, *Anno* 1228; and for a time was the most puissant King of the *Moors* in *Spain*, commanding over this Country, *Granada*, and a part of *Andalusia*. Invited to a Feast, made Drunk, and then basely Murdered by *Aben Arramin*, a false servant of his, *An.* 1236. One *Aben Hudiel* seized on the Realm of *Murcia*, disturbed in his possession by *Alboaquis*, the last King hereof. But he not able to defend himself against his Competitor, surrendred it to *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, whom he put into possession of the Fort of *Murcia*, and many other places of great importance; conditioned, that *Alboaquis* should enjoy the title of King of *Murcia*, as long as he lived, under the Soveraignty of *Castile*: and that *Ferdinand* should enjoy one half of the profits of it. This was in the year 1241, after it had continued in the state of a Kingdom but 12 years only, united to *Castile* without blood or trouble, and so remains ever since.

9 TOLEDO.

THE Kingdom of *TOLEDO*, so called from *Toledo* the chief City of it; contained once the greatest part of that Country which is now called *New-Castile*: of which it is now reckoned only for a part or member. The Country lying next unto it, was anciently the Seat of *Carpentani*, the nature of the Soil we shall find elsewhere.

Principal Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Toledo*, of great antiquity, as being taken by *Fulvius* a *Roman Prætor*, in the time of *Scipio Africanus*; and then a City of good note. Pleasantly seated on the *Tagus*, beautified with many pieces of rare and excellent Architecture; and fortified with thirty Towers standing on the Walls. By reason of the situation of it in the very midst, almost, of *Spain*, it is passing well inhabited; as well by the Nobility, who reside there for pleasure; and by Scholars, who abide in it for their Studies; as by Merchants, who resort thither for their profit: besides such Soldiers and their Officers, who are continually garrisoned in it for defence thereof. The private buildings generally are but mean and ordinary; though, by far, more handsom in the inside, than the outside promiseth: most of them being furnished with water from the River *Tagus*, conveyed into them by the admirable invention of one *James*, a native of *Cremona*, in the Dukedom of *Millain*. The Streets narrow, close, hilly, and uneven, exceeding troublesom to walk or go upon, especially in slippery or dirty weather, by reason of its steep and uneven situation on the side of a Rocky Hill: by which, and by the River which almost surrounds it, it is naturally very strong, and well helped by Art. For that cause made the Seat of the *Gothish* Kings: by one of which, called *Bamba*, so repaired and beautified, (besides the addition of a strong Wall for defence of the place) that he is by some accounted for the Founder of it. For so we find it in these old Verses:

Erexit (fautore Deo) Rex inclytus Urbem
Bamba, *suæ celebrem protendens Gentis honorem.*

That is to say,

King *Bamba* (God assisting) rais'd this Town,
Extending so the ancient *Goths* renown.

When the *Goths* fell, it was in chief estimation amongst the *Moors*, and by them advanced unto the honour of a Kingdom; whereof more anon: but under both, (as it continueth to this day) the See of an Arch-bishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Spain*, and President, for the most part, of the *Inquisition*. His Revenue answerable to his Place, the greatest of any *Clergy man* in the *Christian* World, next to the Popes of *Rome*; as being estimated at 300000 Crowns *per annum*. Finally, this City hath been honoured with no fewer than 18 National Councils, here holden in the time of the *Goths*; and is now a famous University for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws, and hath to this day the Temporal Jurisdiction over 17 Walled Towns, besides Villages. 2 *Calatrava*, the next Town of note, is situate on the River *Ana*; of most fame in these later times, for an Order of Knights, called the Knights of *Calatrava*; of which more when we come to *Castile*. Neighboured by the ruins of the strong and famous City *Castulo*, which being under the command of the *Romans*, was by the *Gyresoeni*, a people that

that dwelt on the other ſide of the River, ſuddenly entred and taken. But *Sertorius* following after them by the ſame Gate, put them all to the Sword: and cauſing his men to apparel themſelves in the clothes of the Enemy, led them to the chief City of the *Gyriſconi*; who ſuppoſing them to be their own Party, opened their Gates, and were all either ſlain, or ſold for Slaves. More of this Town anon, when we come to *Caſtile*, to which now belonging. 3 *Talbora*, commonly called *Talvera de la Reyna*, or the Queen's *Talvera*; and called ſo on occaſion of an execrable Murder committed there by the command of Queen *Mary*, the Widow of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, on the Lady *Leonore de Guſman*, her Husband's Paramour. A proper and neat Town it is, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Tagus*; ſuppoſed to be the *Libora* of *Ptolemy*, and now belonging to the Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*, as chief Lord thereof. *Medina Zelim*, commonly called *Medina Celi*; of great importance when poſſeſſed or neighboured by the *Moors*. Now of moſt note for giving the title of Dukes to the illuſtrious Family *De la Cerde*, deſcended from *Ferdinand*, the eldeſt Son of *Alfonſo* the fifth; claiming, by that deſcent, a title to the Crown of *Caſtile*. What other Towns belonged unto it, we ſhall ſee anon.

As for *Toledo* it ſelf, in the time of the *Romans* it was the Metropolis of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; after that, the Seat-Royal of the *Gothiſh* Kings; removed hither from *Tholouſe* in *Languedoc*: forced by the *Moors*, at their firſt entrance into *Spain*, *An.* 716; more prudently aiming at the Head, than the *Goths* poſſibly expected from ſuch *Barbarians*. In the Confuſions of that Kingdom, betwixt the beginning of the reign of *Mahomet* the fourth, and the ſecond coming in of the *Moors* of *Africk*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf; continuing in that eſtate, till taken from *Haia Alchaduchir*, the laſt King hereof, by *Alfonſo* the firſt, King of *Caſtile*, *An.* 1083. This *Alfonſo* being the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the firſt King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, had the Kingdom of *Leon* for his part. Ejected out of that, by his Brother *Sancho* King of *Caſtile*, he lived in exile with the *Moors*; kindly received and entertained by *Almenon* the Father of this *Haia*, King of *Toledo*, till the death of his Brother. After which, coming to the Crowns of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, *Anno* 1073, he picked a quarrel with his Hoſt, and beſieged *Toledo*; his long abode there, making him acquainted with all advantages that might facilitate his deſigns; which notwithſtanding held him a ſiege of five years, before he could make himſelf maſter of it, by him incorporated preſently on the taking of it, with the reſt of that Kingdom, and made the head of *New-Caſtile*. But for the Kings hereof, as well thoſe who held it but for life, as thoſe who left the ſame unto their Poſterity, they are theſe that follow:

The *Mooriſh* Kings reigning in *Toledo*.

A. C.

1 *Galafroy*, King of *Toledo*, in the time of *Charlemagne*, under the Vaſſalage of the great *Caliphs* of *Damaſcus*: ſubdued by *Abderamen* the firſt, King or Miramomolin of the *Moors* in *Corduba*, of the Houſe of *Humeia*.

787 2 *Zuleima*, the eldeſt ſon of *Abderamen* King of *Corduba*, being diſpoſſeſſed of the Realm of *Corduba*, and the reſt of his Eſtates in *Spain*, by *Hizen* his younger Brother, reigned a while in *Toledo*; of which outed not long after: *Toledo* from that time continuing a Member of the Kingdom of *Corduba*, till the latter end of the reign of *Abderamen* the ſecond. At what time,

833 3 *Aben Lope*, (the ſon of *Muſa Aben Cacia*, a *Goth* by Nation and deſcent; but a *Moor* by profeſſion: who had cauſed the *Toledans*, and others of the *Moors* of *Spain*, to rebel againſt *Abderamen*) aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Toledo*: a ſtrict confederate of *Ordogno* the 11th, King of *Leon*; by whom ſupported in his Wars againſt thoſe of *Corduba*; but at laſt vanquiſhed and diſſeized by *Mahomet*, the ſon of *Abderamen*, *Anno* 848.

990 4 *Abdalla*, a great man among the *Moors*, during the contentions betwixt *Zuleima* and *Hizen* the ſecond, for the realm of *Corduba*, ſeized on the City of *Toledo*; which he held as *King*: and kindly entertained *Mahomet Almohadi*, made King of *Corduba* during thoſe contentions; by whom ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

995 5 *Mahomet*, ſirnamed *Almohadi*, of the Regal Family of *Humeya*, King of *Corduba*; and diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Faction of *Zuleima*, retired to *Toledo*; and was kindly entertained by King *Abdalla*, whom he ſucceeded in this Kingdom.

999 6 *Obeydalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*, ſlain in his Wars with *Hizen*, the King of *Corduba*, in the firſt or ſecond year of his reign.

1000 7 *Hairam*, of the ſame houſe of *Aben Humeya*, and, probably, the next Kinſman of *Obeydalla*; ſucceeded him in this Eſtate, and left the ſame unto his Poſterity, till ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

1010 8 *Hizen*, the Son of *Hairan*, of whom nothing memorable.

1045 9 *Ali Maynon*; or *Almenon*, as the *Spaniards* call him, the Son of *Hizen*, who entertained *Alfonſo* the ſixth of *Leon*, when diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by his brother *Sancho*.

1076 10 *Hizen* II. Son of *Ali Maynon*.

1078 11 *Haya*, ſirnamed *Alcadarbile*, the Son of *Ali Maynon*, and Brother of *Hizen*; a cruel Prince, and ill beloved of his Subjects; which gave occaſion unto *Alfonſo* King of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, ſpoken of before, to invade this Kingdom; by whom at laſt it was ſubdued, and *Toledo*, with its Territories, added unto *Caſtile*, as before is ſaid, *Anno* 1083. By which means there accrued to the Realm of *Caſtile*, beſides *Toledo* it ſelf, and the Towns ſpoken of already, thoſe of *Illeſcus*, *Eſcallona*, *Maqueda*, *Canales*, *Coria*, *Conſuerga*, *Berlanga*, *Guadalaiara*, *Arienca*, and divers others, now paſſing in the eſtimate of *New-Caſtile*.

But to conclude, *Toledo* thus reduced under the command of the *Chriſtians*, was forthwith made the Metropolitan City of *Spain*, (in regard of Eccleſiaſtical or Spiritual matters) as it had been before in the time of the *Goths*: and ſhortly after honoured by *Alfonſo* with the title of the Imperial City; that King, upon the conqueſt hereof, having aſſumed unto himſelf the ſtile of Emperor of *Spain*, but ſomewhat too affectedly, as the caſe then ſtood, there being other Kings in *Spain* as well as he. In which reſpects he gave unto this City for the Arms hereof, in a Field *Azure*, a Crown Mitral Imperial *Or*, garniſhed with ſundry precious Gems *Proper*; changed afterwards by *Alfonſo* the third of *Caſtile*, and eighth of *Leon*, affecting the ſame title of Emperor, to an Emperor ſitting on his Throne in a Robe of Gold, with a Globe in his left hand, and a Sword in his right.

But

But the Blazon of these Arms I find not, nor much worth the searching: the old Coat being worn again after his decease.

10. CASTILE.

CASTILE is bounded on the East, with *Navarre*, *Arragon*, and part of *Valentia*; on the West, with *Portugal*; on the North, with *Biscay*, *Guipuscoa*, and the *Asturia's*; on the South, with *Extremadura*, *Andalusia*, and *Granada*. The reason of the name we shall have anon.

This was the most prevailing Kingdom of all this Continent; to which the rest are all united either by Marriages or Conquest. Divided commonly into the *New* and *Old*, parted from one another by the Hills of *Segovia*: the one being called the *Old Castile*, because it was the Ancient Patrimony of the Earls hereof; and the other named the *New*, from that addition which was made to the first Inheritance, by the Conquest of the Realm of *Toledo*, and other pieces, from the *Moors*. The *Old Castile* is the less fruitful of the two; more fit for Pasturage, than Corn; but better stored with that, and all sorts of Fruits, than the neighbouring Countries, which lye betwixt it and the Northern or *Cantabrian* Ocean: the *New* more plain and Champian, better stored with Fruits, and furnished with sufficient plenty of Corn, and other Provisions necessary for the life of man. The *Old Castile* watered with the Rivers of 1 *Relaunos*, rising not far from *Burgos*. 2 *Tormes*, passing by *Salamanca*. 3 *Duero*, the Receptacle of the others. The *New* with *Guadarama*, honoured with the neighbourhood of *Madrid*. 5 *Tavina*, and 6 *Tagus*, the most famous River of all *Spain*.

The *OLD CASTILE* is situate on the North of the *New*; and hath for the chief Cities of it. 1 *Soria*, of great note in the ancient Story, by the name of *Numantia*; which for the space of 14 years, withstood the whole Forces of *Rome*: during which time, they valiantly repulsed their Enemies, and forced them to dishonourable Compositions. But finding, at least, no hope of holding longer out, they gathered together all their Armour, Money, and Goods, laid them in an heap, then set fire on them, and, finally burnt themselves in the midst of the flame; leaving *Scipio* (who had brought them to that extremity) nothing but the bare name of *Numantia*, to adore his triumph. 2 *Avilla*, situate under the great Mountains, which are called from hence, the Mountains of *Avila*. Known anciently by the name of *Abule*; and by that name giving the title of *Abulensis* to the renowned *Tostatus*, who was Bishop of it. A Man, who in his time was President of the Council to *John* King of *Arragon*; yet could find leisure enough not only to attend his Episcopal Charge, but to compose those learned and painful Commentaries on a great part of the Bible. Of which, and his other Abilities, (besides that which hath before been noted of him) we may take that *Elogie* which *Casaubon* hath given him, in his Book against *Baronius*, saying, *Laudo acumen viri, si in meliora incidisset Tempora, longe maximi.* 3 *Valodolid*, a fine neat Town, and one of the ancientest Universities of *Spain*: discontinued for a time, by Students, and then restored again by King *Philip* the second, whose birth-place it was; and who erected here a Colledge (among others) for the education only of young *English* Fugitives. Seated upon the River *Pisuerga*, and one of the Chanceries of the Kingdoms of *Castile* and *Leon*. By means whereof, and of the King's Court here residing in the Summer-times, it became, in little space, a fair, large, populous City, and of great resort, not yielding unto any in *Spain*, except *Lisbone*, and *Sevil*. It is called in *Latin*, *Vallis Oletum*, and *Vallis Oletana*, from the abundance of Olives growing near it: but by *Ptolemy*, *Pintia*. 4 *Segovia*, a Bishops See, of great trade in Clothing; situate under a branch of the Mountain *Idubeda*, called from hence, the Hills of *Segovia*. 5 *Burgos*, near the head of the River *Relaunos* or *Relanzon*, at the foot of the great Mountain *d' Oca*, part of the *Idubeda*: built out of certain Villages lying hereabouts, by *Nugno Bellides*, a *German*, Son-in-law unto one of the first Earls of *Castile*. For a long time the seat of those Kings, since of the Archbishops hereof; the Cathedral being one of the fairest in *Spain*; built with such art, that Mass may be sung aloud in five several Chappels, without disturbing one another. This City doth contend for Primacy and Precedency, (in *Civil* matters) with that of *Toledo*, of which it hath the first place or vote in all Parliaments or Assemblies of the States of *Castile*. But yet to satisfie *Toledo*, the Controversie is still undecided, and was once finely taken up by one of the *Ferdinands*, saying, that *he would first speak for* Toledo, *and then* Burgos *should speak for it self*. Without the Walls of this City, is a famous Nunnery, called *De las Huelgas*, consisting of 150 Religious Women, all of Noble Houses. 6 *Cividad Rodrigo*, a Bishops-See, on the River *Gada*. 7 *Zamomora*, a strong and well-built City, and a Bishops-See, the *Semica* of *Ptolemy*: situate on the River *Drnero*, and now famous for the best Bag-pipes. 8 *Tordesillas*, the *Segisana* of the Ancients. 9 *Lerma*, not far from *Burgos*, the chief Seat of the Dukes so called; a Prince of great Possessions, and the chief of the Family of *Roias*, and *Sandoval*. 10 *Salamanca*, the most Famous University of *Spain* especially for the study of the *Civil* and *Canon* Laws: first instituted by *Ferdinand* the second of *Castile*, *Anno* 1240; and by an Order of the Pope's, together with *Paris*, *Oxford*, and *Bononia* in *Italy*, created a *Generale Studium*; wherein there were to be Professors of the *Greek*, *Hebrew*, *Chaldee*, and *Abrabick* Tongues, besides those of the Arts. It was of old called *Salmantica*; is now a Bishops-See, situate on the River *Tormes*, as before was said.

Not far from this City, about the times of our Grand-Fathers, was discovered in a Valley situate amongst high and impassable Mountains, a kind of *Patoecos*, or *Savage* people, never heard of in *Spain* before. The occasion, this: An Hawk of the Duke of *Alva's*, which he very much valued, flew over those Mountains; and his men not being able to find her at first, they were sent back by the Duke to seek her. Clambring from one Hill to another, they hapned at last upon a large and pleasant Valley, where they spied a company of naked *Savage* people, hemmed in amongst many craggy Rocks. The *Salvages* gazing a while upon them, ran into their Caves, made in the hollows of the Rocks, the best Houses they had: which being observed by the *Falconers*, they returned again unto their Lord, telling him, that instead of a *Falcon*, they had brought him news of a *New-world* in the midst of *Spain*, and of a race of People which came in with *Tubal*. Strongly affirming what they said, they obtained belief. And the Duke shortly after went with a Company of Musquetiers, and subdued them easily; they having no offensive Weapons, but only Slings. They worshipped the Sun and Moon, fed upon nothing that had life; but had good store of excellent Fruits, Roots, and Springs of Water, wherewith Nature was well contented. And though their Language was not altogether understood by any; yet many of their words were found to be purely *Basquish*. Reduced, on this discovery, to *Christianity*, but easily discernable from all other *Spaniards*, by their tawny complexions, occasioned by the reverberation of the Sun-beams, from those Rocky Mountains wherewith on all sides they are encompassed.

compaſſed. The truth hereof, beſides the credit of *James Howel*, in his *Inſtructions for Foreign Travel*; I have upon enquiry found to be atteſted by men of gravity and great place in this Realm of *England*; employed there in affairs of publick intereſt. Satisfied therefore in the truth of the Relation, I am partly ſatisfied in the men: whom I conceive to be ſome remnant of the Ancient *Spaniards*, who hid themſelves amongſt theſe Mountains for fear of the *Romans*. Their Language and Idolatry ſpeak them to be ſuch. For had they either fled from the *Goths* or *Moors*, there had been found ſome *Croſs*, or other Monument of *Chriſtianity*, as in other places; or ſome ſuch mixture in their ſpeech, as would have ſavoured ſomewhat of the *Goths* or *Romans*. But it is time I ſhould proceed.

NEW CASTILE is ſituate on the South of the *Old*. The chief Cities there, 1 *Siguenca*, a City heretofore of the *Celtiberi*, now a Biſhops-See, beautified with a fair Cathedral, ſuppoſed to be the *Condabora* of *Ptolemy*. 2 *Madrid*, upon the *Guadarama*, the *Mantua* of the ancient Writers, now the Seat of the Kings: whoſe reſidence there, though the Country be neither rich nor pleaſant, hath made it, of a Village, the moſt populous City in all *Spain*. It is a cuſtom in this Town, that all the upper Rooms in their Houſes do belong to the King, except ſome compoſition be made with him for them. And of this Town the *Spaniards* do uſe to brag to ſtrangers, that they have a *City walled with fire*; and then make good the boaſt, by ſaying, That it is ſituate in the midſt of Quarries of Flint. 3 *Alcala de Henares*, (of old called *Complutum*) renowned for an Univerſity of Divines, founded here in the time of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, by *Franciſco de Ximines*, Cardinal and Arch-biſhop of *Toledo*, and by him furniſhed with the ableſt men both for Divinity and the Tongues, that all *Spain* afforded. By whoſe joint diligence and ſtudy in turning over ſo many Copies of the Bibles, gathered together at his charge from all parts of the World, he publiſhed the *Complutenſian* Edition of the holy Scriptures in the Original *Greek*, *Hebrew*, and *Vulgar Latin*, with the Tranſlation of the *Septuagint* into *Latin* alſo. A work of very great charge and pains, (taking up 15 years in doing) but of greater profit; there being at the end thereof, an *Hebrew Dictionary*, for the underſtanding of that Language. 4 *Alcoraz* amongſt the Mountainous tracts of *Oroſpeda*, called *Sierra de Alcoraz*; memorable for a great diſcomfiture given unto the *Moors*, *Anno* 1094. 5 *Molina*, in the ſame Mountainous Tract, hence called *Monte de Molina*; remarkable for giving the title of Lord, to the Kings of *Caſtile*, who in the Regal ſtile are called Lords of *Molina*: the Signeury hereof accruing to that Crown, by the marriage of *Sancho* the third, with *Mary* the Daughter of *Alfonſo*, the laſt Lord Proprietary. The Territory large, and the Town of ſtrength; well fortified in the times foregoing, both by Art and Nature. 6 *Cuenca*, ſeated at the Spring-head of the River *Xucar*, and not far from that of *Tagus* alſo, amongſt the Mountains of *Oroſpeda*; built by the *Moors* on the top of thoſe craggy Hills, whom it ſerved for an impregnable Fortreſs againſt the *Chriſtians*, till taken by *Sancho* the ſecond of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1177.

Here alſo is the *Eſcurial*, or *Monaſtery* of St. *Lawrence*, built by King *Philip* the ſecond. A place (ſaith *Quade*, who ſpendeth 13 pages in its deſcription) of that magnificence, that no building in times paſt, or this preſent is comparable to it. The front, toward the Weſt, is adorned with three ſtately Gates, the middlemoſt whereof leadeth into a moſt magnificent Temple, a Monaſtery in which are 150 *Monks* of the Order of S. *Jerome*, and a Colledge: that on the right hand, openeth into divers Offices, belonging to the *Monaſtery*: that on the left, unto *Schools* and out-houſes belonging unto the Colledge. At the four corners, there are four Turrets of excellent Workmanſhip; and for height, majeſtical. Towards the North, is the King's Palace, on the South parts, divers beautiful and ſumptuous Galleries; and on the Eaſt ſide, ſundry Gardens and Walks, very pleaſing and delectable. It containeth, in all, 11 ſeveral Quadrangles, every one encloyſtered; and is indeed ſo brave a ſtructure, that a Voyage into *Spain* were well employed, were it only to ſee it, and return. Here is alſo in this Tract, the old Town of *Caſtulo*, (the *Caſtaon* of *Strabo*) then the chief City of the *Carpentani*, and the birth-place of *Himilce*, the Wife of *Annibal*: from whence this whole Tract had the name of *Saltus Caſtulonenſis*, and ſo called by *Cæſar*; now a poor Village, known by the name of *Caſtona la Vieja*; in which is ſomewhat to be found of the ancient ruines. But of this more already, when we were in the Kingdom of *Toledo*, to which it more properly belonged.

The old Inhabitants of theſe *Caſtiles*, were the *Vaccai*, *Ventones*, *Arevacæ*, *Oretani*, *Carpentani*, *Dittani*, &c. From none of which, the name of *Caſtile* can be deduced: ſo that we muſt fetch it either from the *Caſtellani*, once a People of *Catalogne*; or from ſome ſtrong fortified Caſtles erected in the Frontiers, againſt the *Moors*. This laſt conjecture may ſeem probable, becauſe the Arms of this Kingdom are *Gules*, a *Caſtle* triple-towered, *Or*. Neither is it any way ſtrange, for Provinces, eſpecially ſmaller ones, ſuch as at firſt this was, (though now much extended both in bounds and power) to take their names from a Caſtle. For (to go no further) even with us, *Richmondſhire* was ſo called from the Caſtle of *Richmond*, there built by *Alain*, Earl of *Bretagne*; and *Flint-ſhire* took denomination from the Caſtle built of Flint-ſtones, by *Henry* the ſecond. We may ſee hereby, how much *Cælius Secundus Curio* was deceived, who writeth, that *Alfonſo* the third, having overthrown *Mahomet Enaſer*, King of *Morocco*, and put 60000 of his men to the Sword; aſſumed theſe Arms, that thus named this Kingdom, which was before called the Kingdom of the *Baſtitanes*; becauſe that Victory, like a ſtrong Caſtle, had confirmed his Eſtates unto him. Whereas, in caſe there were no other error in his ſuppoſition, the *Baſtitanes* were no Inhabitants of *Caſtile*, but of *Valentia* and *Murcia*, Provinces far enough off from the *Old Caſtile*, at the firſt taking of that name. And for the former Etymologie, it appeareth moſt evidently, in that the people are by the *Latins* called *Caſtellani*; the Country, *Caſtella*: the ſame name with thoſe elder *Caſtellani* which inhabited *Catalogne*. But not to ſtand upon the name, certain it is, that the Inhabitants hereof, having been conquered by the *Romans*, and made a part of their Empire, fell by degrees to the *Alani*, and from them to the *Goths*, as hath been ſhewed already on ſome other occaſion. From them extorted by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*: recovered, foot after foot, by the Kings of *Leon*; governed under them, at firſt, by *Provincial* Earls, Commanders of ſo many Caſtles in the Country of the *Vaccæi*, fortified and defended againſt the *Moors*. *Ordogno* the ſecond, harbouring ſome ſuſpicions againſt theſe Earls, cauſed them all to be cruelly murdered. The people upon this, revolted from the Crown of *Leon*; governed firſt by Judges, then by Earls again, as an abſolute and free Eſtate. *Ferdinand Gonſales*, the firſt that re-aſſumed the title of Earl of *Caſtile*, coming to the Court of *Leon* with a brave Retinue, ſold to King *Sancho* an Hawk, and an Horſe, of excellent kinds, for a ſum of money; conditioned, that if the money were not paid at the time agreed on, it ſhould be doubled, and redoubled, till the Debt were ſatiſ-

satisfied. This money, by the negligence of the King's Officers, who looked upon the Contract as a matter of jest, became so great a sum, that the King, to satisfie *Gonsales*, made him the first *Proprietary*-Earl of *Castile*, *Anno* 939; releasing that Estate from all acknowledgment to the Kings of *Leon*. *Nugna*, or *Elvira*, as some call her, Sister and Heir of *Garcias* the fourth Earl hereof, brought this Estate by marriage to *Sancho*, sirnamed the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 1028; by whom it was erected into a Kingdom, and given by him to *Ferdinand* his second Son, *Anno* 1034. Kings of most note and observation in the course of their story, are 1 *Ferdinand* their first King, who added *Leon* to his Kingdom, in right of *Sancha* his Wife, Sister and Heir of *Veramund* the last King thereof, of the race of *Pelagius*. 2 *Alfonso* the first, who subdued the Kingdom of *Toledo*, adding it, by the name of *New Castile*, unto his Estate. 3 *Alfonso* the Fourth, who not only conquered from the Crown of *Navarre*, whatsoever lay on the *Castilian* side of the River *Iberus*, but also the whole Countries of *Alava* and *Guipuscoa*, all which he united to *Castile*: but grew so great, that he caused himself to be solemnly crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral Church of *Leon*, by the Arch-bishop of *Toledo*; and gave his Son *Sancho* the title of King of *Castile*, in his own life-time. The chief of the Confederates against *Mahomet Enasar*, the *Miramomoline* of *Morocco*, whom he vanquished in the famous battel of *Muradal*, or *Sierra Moracca*, *Anno* 1214. 4 *Ferdinand* the third, who incorporated *Leon* and *Castile* into one Estate, and added the Kingdoms of *Murcia*, *Corduba*, and *Sevil*, taken from the *Moors*, unto his Dominions. 5 *Alfonso* the fifth of *Castile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, elected Emperor of the *Germans*, but more famous for his eminence in *Astronomy*; the Author of the *Alfonsine Tables*: compiled by many Learned Men assembled together, by his means, in the City of *Toledo*, where, in the compiling of it, it is affirmed by a *Spanish* Writer, that he spent more than the Revenues of the Pope in ten years did amount unto. 6 *Sancho* the 3d, son of this *Alfonso*, the Author of the great breach in the Line of *Castile*: for having the hap to survive *Ferdinand*, sirnamed *de la Cerde*, his elder Brother; he made himself so strong a Party in his Father's Life-time, that he succeeded in the Kingdom, depriving his Brother's Children of their Right therein, though many attempts were made, in their favour, afterwards. *Don Alfonso*, eldest Son of which *Ferdinand* married into *France*, was Father of *Lewis* Earl of *Clermont*; who by *Leonora de Gusman*, a Daughter of the now house of *Medina Sedonia*, was Father of *Lewis*, *John*, and *Isabella de la Cerde*, (in which last, the Male-Issue being quite extinct) the whole Rights of that Line remained: brought by her to her Husband *Bernard*, a base Son of the House of *Foix*, created by King *Henry* the second, the first Earl of *Medina Celi*; whose Son, called *Gaston*, left the name of *Foix*, and took unto himself that of *de la Cerde*, continued ever since in his Posterity advanced unto the honour of Dukes of *Medina Celi*, in the person of *Lewis* the first Earl) the better to preserve in memory their descent from, and lawful title to that Crown. And for the better keeping and preserving of their claim unto it, it is affirmed to be the custom of this House, once, at the least, in the life-time of every Duke, to put up a Petition to the King then reigning, for restitution to the Throne; which the King receiving as of course, doth of course subscribe this answer to it, viz. *No est lugar*; that is to say, there is no room for him. 8 *Pedro* the *Cruel*, driven out of this Kingdom by *Henry* of *Transtamare*, his Brother: restored again, for a time, by the valour of *Edward* the *Black-Prince*, Son of *Edward* the third. 9 *John*, Son of *Henry* of *Transtamare*, who married his Son *Henry*, to *Katharine* Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, by *Constance*, one of the Daughters of *Don Pedro* the *Cruel*; so uniting both Titles into one. The times in which these Princes, and the rest, did reign; appeareth in these Catalogues of the Earls and Kings of *Castile*, which are as follow.

The Earls of *Castile*.

A. Chr.		
910	1	*Ferdinand Gonsales*, the first Proprietary Earl.
932	2	*Garcias*, Son of *Ferdinand*.
980	3	*Sancho*, or *Sanctius*, Son of *Garcias*.
1018	4	*Garcias* II. Son of *Sancho*, slain by Treason; without issue.
1028	5	*Nugna*, or *Elvira*, the Sister of *Garcias* the second, married to *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, Father of *Ferdinand*, made by him the first King of *Castile*.

The Kings of *Castile*.

A. Chr.		
1036	1	*Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* by the gift of his Father, and of *Leon*, in right of his Wife. 33
1067	2	*Sancho*, Son of *Ferdinand*, King of *Castile* only; his younger Brother *Alfonso* succeeding in *Leon*. 6.
1073	3	*Alfonso*, the Brother of *Sancho*, King of *Leon*, and afterwards of *Castile* also. *Urraca*, Queen of *Castile* and *Leon*.
1108	4	*Alfonso*, II. King of *Navarre* and *Aragon*. 15.
1122	5	*Alfonso* III. King of *Castile* & *Leon*, the Son of *Urraca*, by *Raymond* of *Burgundy*, her former Husband.
1157	6	*Sancho* II. the elder Son of *Alfonso* the third; his younger Brother *Ferdinand* succeeding in *Leon*. 2.
1159	7	*Alfonso* IV. sirnamed the *Noble*, Son of *Sancho* the 2d. 55.
1214	8	*Henry*, Son of *Alfonso* the fourth. 3.
1217	9	*Ferdinand* II. Son of *Alfonso* the ninth of *Leon*, and of *Berenguela* the Sister of *Henry*, succeeded his Father in *Leon* also, *An.* 1230; the Kingdoms never since disjoyned, though the title of *Leon* in short time became discontinued.
1252	10	*Alfonso* V. sirnamed the *Wise*, Son of *Ferdinand* the second, King of *Castile* and *Leon*, and Emperor Elect. 32.
1283	11	*Sancho* III. the second Son of *Alfonso* the fifth; the children of *Ferdinand de la Cerde*, his elder Brother, being set beside. 12.
1195	12	*Ferdinand* III. of *Castile*, and IV. of *Leon*, Son of *Sancho* the third. 18.
1312	13	*Alfonso*, VI. Son of *Ferdinand*. 38.
1350	14	*Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonso*, for his infinite Tyrannies, sirnamed the *Cruel*. 18.
1368	15	*Henry* II. the Bastard-son of *Alfonso* the 6th, Earl of *Transtumare*. 11.
1379	16	*John*, the Son of *Henry* the second. 11.
1390	17	*Henry* III. Son of *John*, and Husband of *Katharine*, the Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, and the Lady *Constance*, one of the Daughters of King *Pedro*. 17.
1406	18	*John* II Son of *Henry* and *Katherine*, 48.
1454	19	*Henry* IV. Son of *John* the second. 21.
1478	20	*Isabel*, Sister of *Henry* the Fourth, married to *Ferdinand* V. Son of *John* King of *Aragon*.

Of whose Acts, and Issue, we will make more ample

mention when we ſhall come to ſpeak of the *Monarchy* of *Spain*, which began in them, and hath been ſince continued in their poſterity.

The chief Orders of Knighthood within theſe Kingdoms of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, long ſince united into one, were Three in all; partly Religious, partly Military; and one Order of Religious perſons, not known in any Country but *Spain* alone.

This of the laſt ſort, is called the Order of *Mercy*, or *de la mercede*; firſt inſtituted by King *James* of *Aragon*, in the chief Church of *Barcelone*, *Anno* 1218. Admitted afterwards into the Kingdoms of *Caſtile*, whereof moſt eſteem; but ſo, that in remembrance of their firſt foundation, they ſtill retain their ancient Arms, which are thoſe of *Aragon*, *viz.* a Croſs *Argent*, and four Bends *Gules*, in a field *Or*. Their habit white; The Rule of their Order, that of St. *Auguſtine*: the practice and profeſſion of it, to gather Alms amongſt the People wherewith to redeem ſuch Chriſtian Captives, as either by *Piracy*, the chance of War, or by ſome other means are enthralled to the *Turks* and *Moors*: ſending their Agents yearly to *Algiers* and *Feſſe*, to inform them of the eſtate, age, and quality, of each ſeveral Captive, and after, on inſtruction from the Brethren of this Society, to deal in the redemption of them. A buſineſs which they manage with great care and Faithfulneſs, and are accordingly truſted with great ſums of money, given and collected to that end: few men here dying, who give not ſome Legacy or other to this pious uſe. Nor are the Kings behind-hand in ſo good a work, promoting it with a liberal purſe, and giving as much ordinarily out of his Eſtate, as the Brethren have collected in all *Spain* beſides. And to ſay truth, it doth concern him more than others, becauſe they are his Subjects chiefly, for whoſe redemption the whole ſum is given and gathered: *Religious perſons* are ranſomed firſt, and then the *Laity*; the young and ſerviceable men, before old and impotent: if after the *Redemption* of the *Spaniſh* Captives, they have any ſtock left, they keep it not till another year, but therewith ranſom Captives of ſome other Nations. So that this ſeemeth to ſucceed in the place of the now antiquated and uſeleſs *Orders* of *Knighthood*, which were heretofore of great authority and power: that is to ſay,

1 Of *Calatrava*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Toledo*, abandoned by the *Templers*, (to whom the defence thereof belonged) on the approach of the *Moors*, made good by *Raymond* the Abbot of *Piſuria*, and the Monks of *Ciſteaux*, *Anno* 1157. For the future preſervation and defence whereof, they ordained this *Order*; which in proceſs of time grew to ſuch eſtate, that beſides eight fair *Priories*, they enjoyed in *Spain* no leſs than 61 Towns and Caſtles. The Knights hereof do wear for their habit, a *White Robe*, with a *Red Croſs* upon their breaſts; confirmed by Pope *Alexander* the third, *An.* 1164, under the Diſcipline of *Ciſteaux*. Their reſidence is at the *Caſtle Covo*; bound, by their Order, to ſerve in the Wars againſt the Infidels: upon which ſervices, they have been ſometimes in the field with three hundred great Horſe.

2 Of St. *Jago*, inſtituted by the Canons of *Eloy*, and certain Gentlemen of *Caſtile*, in imitation of the Order of *Calatrava*; for the ſecurity and entertainment of *Chriſtian Pilgrims*, travelling to the Shrine of St. *Jago*; confirmed by the ſaid Pope *Alexander* the third, *Anno* 1175, under the Rule of St. *Auguſtine*. Their Habit is a *White Robe*, with a *Red Croſs* like a *Sword*: the companions of it, according to the firſt Founders, being part *Eccleſiaſtical*, and part *Secular*: whereof theſe laſt are only tied unto the vow of conjugal Chaſtity. They grew in little time unto ſuch eſteem, that beſides two Colledges or *Seminaries* in *Salamanca*, and a Colledg in *Sevil*; they had four *Hermitages* in the Mountains, and five *Hoſpitals* well endowed for the entertainment of Strangers; together with 90 Towns and Caſtles in ſeveral parts of the Kingdom. The whole number of Gentlemen, beſides *Friers* ſerving in their Cures, and other Miniſters, are above 600. Their firſt reſidence, at the Hoſpital of St. *Mark*, in the Suburbs of *Leon*, on a diſlike with *Ferdinand* the ſecond King of *Leon*, removed to *Ucles* in *Caſtile*, beſtowed upon them by *Alfonſo* the 4th. Upon this occaſion being divided, they have ſince two Maſters, or *Commendadors*, the one called the *Commendador* of *Leon*, who reſides at St. *Marks*; the other the *Commendador* of *Caſtile*, who reſides at *Ucles*.

3 Of *Alcantara*, a Town of *Extremadura*, defended by *Ferdinand* of *Leon*, againſt the *Moors*; where he framed this Order, confirmed by Pope *Lucio*, *A.* 1183. Others aſcribe it to *Alfonſo*, the Succeſſor of that *Ferdinand*, *An.* 1217; by whom endowed with all the Lands of the *Calatravians*, in the Realm of *Leon*: but acknowledging the ſuperiority thereof, and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. Their device at firſt was a *Pear-tree Vert*, in a field *Or*, to which hanged a pair of Shackles, as a ſign of their ſubjection to them of *Calatrava*: changed, *Anno* 1411, to a *White Robe*, and a *Green Croſs* on their breaſts.

I omit here the Order of the *Dove* and *Reaſon*, inſtituted by King *John* of *Caſtile*, becauſe of ſmall eſteem, and but ſhort continuance: nor ſhall I now ſpeak any thing of the Arms of the Kingdom, which we have ſeen before on another occaſion. And ſo much for *Caſtile*, the firſt of thoſe Three greater Kingdoms of *Spain*, under which all the reſt are now reduced; containing in this Continent all the Provinces and Eſtates before deſcribed; amounting to two third parts of the whole: and many large Eſtates elſewhere, as ſhall be ſhewed hereafter in its proper place. Paſs we on, next, to *Portugal*; the ſecond, in repute, of the ſaid three Kingdoms; not ſo much for the largeneſs of the Territories which it had on the Continent, as for its great *Appendixes* in all other parts of the World.

11. The Kingdom of *Portugal*.

THE Kingdom of *PORTUGAL* containeth, 1 *Portugal* it ſelf: 2 *Algarve*, or *Regnum Algarbiorum*: and 3 the *Tercera's*, or Iſles of *Azores*: theſe laſt not reckoned parts of *Spain*, by any of our Writers, either old or new; but made by us a part hereof, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Portugal*, one of the firſt additions which was made unto it on the Ocean: and finally, becauſe I know not under what Head to reduce them better.

And firſt, for *PORTUGAL* it ſelf, it is bounded on the North, with the Rivers *Minio* and *Avia*, which part it from *Gallicia*; on the South, with *Algarve*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean: and on the Eaſt, with the two *Caſtiles*, and *Extremadura*, from which divided by a Line drawn from *Ribadania*, ſtanding on the *Avia*, to *Badaios*, on the *Anas*, or *Guadiana*. Extended on the Sea-coaſt from North to South, 400 miles: the breadth of it, in the broadeſt place (not taking in the Iſlands into the accompt) 100 miles; in the narroweſt, 80: the whole circumference, 879 miles: and in that compaſs, 1460 Pariſhes.

It was firſt called *Luſitania*, from the *Luſitani*, the chief Inhabitants thereof; and took the name of *Portugal* either

either from the Haven or Port of *Cale*, now called *Caia*, ſometimes a very rich and flouriſhing *Emporie*; or rather from the Haven-Town of *Porto*, at the mouth of *Duerus*; where the *Gauls* (or the *French* rather) uſed to land their Merchandiſe: which was therefore called *Portus Gallorum*; and which Town was given in Dower with *Tereſa*, the Daughter of *Alfonſo* the ſixth, to *Henry* of *Lorreign*, with the title of Earl of *Portugal*. Whoſe Succeſſors coming to be Kings, extended this name to all thoſe Countries which they got from the *Moors*, as it continueth at this day.

The Air is very healthy, the Country for the moſt part hilly, and bare of Corn; ſupplied from *France*, and other parts of the North; that which they have, being as good as any in *Europe*, if not better. The ſoil, and people, in all places, not rich alike. For where the *ſoil* is *richeſt*, (as in the parts lying on the North of *Duero*) there the *people* are *pooreſt*; in regard of the great diſtance thereof from *Lisbon*; and ſo not benefitted by the Trading of that wealthy City. And where the *ſoil* is *pooreſt*, there the *people* be richeſt, helping themſelves by trade and *manufactures*; eſpecially by making of Silks and Salt, ſufficient for themſelves, and for other Countries. But where there is a defect of Corn, that defect is otherwiſe ſufficiently recompenſed with abundance of Honey, Wine, Oyl, Allom, Fruits, Fiſh, Salt, white Marble, and ſome Mines of Silver, *&c.*

The people of a more plain and ſimple behaviour, than the reſt of *Spain*; and (if we believe the old *Proverb*) none of the wiſeſt. For, whereas the *Spaniards* are ſaid to ſeem wiſe, and yet to be Fools, the *French* to ſeem Fools, and yet to be wiſe; the *Italians* both to ſeem wiſe, and to be ſo: the *Portugals* are affirmed to be neither wiſe indeed, nor ſo much as to ſeem ſo. But little different from which, is the *Spaniſh* By-word, which telleth us of the *Portugals*, that they are *Pocos y Locos*; few, and fooliſh: which others vary with the addition of another part of their Character; ſaying, they are *Pocos, Sotos, y Devotos*, Few and Fooliſh, but withal Devout. They have great animoſities (if it be not grown to an *Antipathie*) againſt the *Caſtilians*, for bereaving them of their Kingdom and Liberty, though both, of late, recovered by them: but, when *moſt Fools*, were counted for good *Seafaring-men*, and happy in the diſcovery of Foreign Nations.

Rivers it hath of all ſorts, both great and ſmall, almoſt 200. Thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Minius*, full of Red-Lead (from hence called *Minium* by the *Latins*), navigable with ſmall Veſſels 100 miles.. 2 *Lethes*, now *Lavada*. 3 *Muliadas*, now *Mondego*. 4 *Tagus*. 5 *Duerus*, and 6 *Anas*: theſe three laſt common alſo to the reſt of *Spain*; *Anas*, or *Guadiana*, paſſing by *Portugal* but for 7 *Leagues* only; *Tagus* for 18, and *Duero* for 80. None of them navigable for any long ſpace, by Ships of burden; the Rivers of all *Spain* being generally ſwift of courſe, reſtrained within narrow Chanels, banked on both ſides with very ſteep Rocks, which make them incommodious for Navigation: inſomuch that it is reckoned for a great Prerogative of *Tagus*, and the Realm of *Portugal*, that this River is there navigable with great Ships, fifteen or twenty miles within the Continent. But here that want is ſomewhat tolerably ſupplied with three excellent Havens: 1 That of *Lisbon* upon *Tagus*: and 2 *Porto*, on *Duero*, to the North of *Lisbon*; of which, more anon: 3 of *Setaval*, South of *Lisbon*, ſituate on a Golf of 20 miles in length, and 3 in breadth: a place of principal importance to thoſe parts of the Realm. Rivers, however, of great fame, according to whoſe courſe, the whole Country was divided, by the *Romans*, into *Ulteriorem*, lying beyond *Duero*, Northwards. 2 *Citeriorem*, on the South of *Tagus*: and 3 *Interamnem*, betwixt both.

Principal Cities of this part, 1 *Lisbon*, ſeated upon *Tagus*, a famous City for Traffick; the *Portugals* in all their Navigations ſetting ſail from hence. By the *Latins* called *Olyſippo*, and *Ulyſippo*; becauſe, as ſome ſay, *Ulyſſes* built it, coming hither in the courſe of his ten years travel: a thing meerly fabulous, it being no where found that *Ulyſſes* did ever ſee this Ocean, but like enough it is, that this Town being ſeated conveniently for Navigation, and inhabited by Seafaring-men, might at the firſt be conſecrated to the memory of ſo great a Traveller: as *Athens*, being a place of *Learning*, was dedicated to *Minerva*, whom the *Greeks* call *Athene*. It is in compaſs 7 miles, and containeth upwards of 30 Pariſhes, and in them 20000 houſes: all of neat and elegant building. Turrets and Towers it numbreth upon the Walls, about 76; Gates toward the Sea-ſhore, 22. And towards the Continent, ſituate upon five ſmall Hills, betwixt which is a Valley which runs down to the River: on the higheſt Hill, an ancient Caſtle, not ſtrong, but by reaſon of the ſituation, ſerving now only for a Priſon for men of quality: the entry of the River being defended by the Caſtle of *Caſcais*; and nearer to the City, by the Fort of St. *Julians*, and the Rock of *Belem*; munitioned with 20 pieces of Ordnance. This City heretofore was honoured with the Seat of the Kings, ſince of the Vice-Roys, an Archbiſhops-See, the Staple of Commodities for all the Kingdom, and thought to be more worth than the whole Realm beſide, ſaid, by ſome *French* Writers, to be the beſt peopled City in *Chriſtendom*, next unto *Paris*; and by *Botero* an *Italian*, made to be the fourth Mart-Town of *Europe*; the other three being *Conſtantinople*, *Paris*, *Moſco*. In which they do great wrong to *London*, as populous, and well-traded, as the beſt of them all. 2 *Santaren*, on the *Tagus*, ſo called from S. *Irene*, a Nun of *Tomar*, (a Monaſtery, in which the old Kings of *Portugal* did uſe to be crowned) here martyred by the *Moors*; by *Ptolemy* called *Scabaliſcus* then a *Roman* Colony. 3 *Sintra*, upon the main *Atlantick*, at the end of huge Mountains, called *Montes Lunæ*; whither by reaſon of the cool refreſhings from the Sea, and pleaſure of the Woods adjoining, the Kings of *Portugal* uſed to retire in the heats of Summer. 4 *Conimbre*, on both ſides the River *Mondego*, pleaſantly ſeated amongſt Vineyards, and Woods of Olives, a Biſhops-See, and an Univerſity; the Maſters whereof made the Commentary on moſt part of *Ariſtotle*, called from hence, *Schola Conimbricenſis*. Then on the North of the River *Duero*, betwixt that and *Minio*, are 5 *Braga*, by *Ptolemy* called *Bracaria Auguſta*, reckoned by *Antonine* for one of the four chief Cities in *Spain*, the Royal Seat, when time was, of the *Suevian* Kings, and now the See of an Archbiſhop, contending for the Primacy with him of *Toledo*. 6 *Porto*, the Haven of the *Gauls*, on the mouth of *Duero*. 7 *Miranda*, a Biſhops-See on the ſame River. 8 *Bragance*, the Duke whereof is ſo great a Prince, that it is thought a third part of the people of *Portugal* are his Vaſſals, and live on his Lands: originally deſcended from *Alfonſo*, natural Son to *John* the firſt; created by his Father, Earl of *Borcellos*, after Duke of *Bragance*; the later Dukes, ſince the time of King *Emanuel*, being withal of the right Royal Blood; two ſteps of main advantage to the Regal Throne, lately aſcended and obtained by *John* Duke of *Bragance*, now called *John* the 4th. And finally, on the South of *Tagus*, betwixt that and the Kingdom of *Algarve*, there is 9 *Ebora*, in the midſt of a large and ſpacious Plain, an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity; this laſt of the Foundation of King *Henry* the Cardinal. 10 *Portelegre*, a Biſhops-See. 11 *Olivenca* on the *Guadiana*. 12 *Beia*, by *Pliny* called *Pax Julia*, now *Mean*, and not very well inhabited; but anciently a *Roman* Colony, and one of the three Juridical Reſorts of *Luſitania*.

2. The Kingdom of *ALGARVE* lyeth on the South of *Portugal*, from which divided by a line drawn from *Aſcorin*, on the Weſtern Sea, to *Odechore*, a Caſtle on the *Guadiana*: on the Eaſt, bounded by *Andaluſia*; on the Weſt and South, by the main *Atlantick*. This is the moſt wild and deſert-part of all this Kingdom, barren and dry: peopled with few Towns, nor thoſe very populous: hilly and mountainous withal; but yielding, by the benefit of the Sea, a great Trade of Fiſhing; of *Tunny* eſpecially, whereof more caught upon this Coaſt, than in all the Kingdom.

The name is took from the Weſtern ſituation of it, for ſo the word *Algarve* ſignifieth in the *Arabick*, Tongue. The utmoſt end of it, called anciently, *Promontorium Sacrum*; now, the Cape of S. *Vincent*; becauſe the bones of S. *Vincent*, religiouſly preſerved by the Chriſtians, were here burnt and ſcattered about by the *Moors*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Niebla*, the Seat of *Aben Mefad*, once a King of this Country. 2 *Silvis*, an Epiſcopal-See, ſeated in the In-land parts. 3 *Villa nova*, ſituate beyond the Cape. 4 *Tavila*, the *Balſa*; and 5 *Faro*, the *Oſſonoba* of *Ptolemy*; both noted Ports on the *Atlantick*. 6 *Lagos*, another Haven-Town alſo.

This Country, conquered by the *Moors*, with the reſt of *Spain*, in the diſtractions of their Power, was for a time under the Soveraignty and Command of the Kings of *Sevil*. Recovered from the *Moors* of *Sevil*, by the Kings of *Morocco*, it became ſubject unto them till they left this Country; and, after their retreat, was parcelled among many Princes. One of which, called *Aben Mefad*, reigning in *Niebla*, and the parts adjoyning, being diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, moſt of the other Towns and Princes ſubmitted to him, and became his Vaſſals, *Anno* 1257. More abſolutely ſubdued and made ſubject to the Crown of *Portugal*, by *Alfonſo* the third, *Anno* 1260; to whom the ſaid *Alfonſo*, the tenth of that name in *Leon*, and the fifth in *Caſtile*, had given the ſame in Dowry with *Beatrix* his Daughter. From which Marriage iſſued *Dionyſius*, or *Denys*, King of *Portugal*, the firſt that ever uſed the title of *Rex Algarbiorum*, *Anno* 1279.

3. The *AZORES* are certain Iſlands lying in the *Atlantick* Ocean, oppoſite to the City of *Lisbon*, from which diſtant but 250 Leagues. Situate betwixt the 38 and 40 degrees of Northern *Latitude*; and one of them in the firſt *Longitude*; which is commonly reckoned from theſe Iſlands, as being the moſt Weſtern part of the *World*, before the diſcovery of *America*.

They were thus called from the multitude of *Goſhawks* which were found there in the beginning; (the word *Azor*, in the *Spaniſh* Tongue, ſignifying a *Goſhawk*) though at this time there be none of them to be found. Called alſo, the *Flemiſh Iſlands*, becauſe firſt diſcovered by the *Flemings*; and the great numbers of them in the Iſle of *Faial*, (one of the chief of all the pack) where there are yet ſome Families which reſemble the *Flemings* both in their complexion and habit: and not far from the place of their abode, a Torrent, which the *Spaniards* call *Riberados Flamengos*, or the River of *Flemings*. They are alſo called the *Tercera's*, from *Tercera* the chief Iſle among them.

The Air of thoſe Iſlands is generally good, and ſubject unto few Diſeaſes, except that which the *Portugals* call the *Blood*; being an impoſthumation of the blood, breaking out at the eyes, or other parts of the body. Some other inconveniences they are ſubject to, proceeding from the humility of the place; the great winds and ſtorms, of ſuch a violent and ſtrange kind of working, that Bars of Iron as big as a man's arm, have in ſix years been worn as little as a Straw. All of them well ſtored with Fleſh, Fiſh, and other things neceſſary, except Salt and Oyl, with which they are furniſhed out of *Portugal*. Wines they have alſo for their own uſe, but not to be tranſported far, becauſe of their weakneſs: for which cauſe alſo, the richer men provide themſelves of *Canary* Wines, or thoſe of the Iſland of *Madera*. Of like nature is their Wheat, & other Fruits, which hold not good above a year. All of them ſubject unto Earthquakes, and ſome to breathings out of fire, which continually ſendeth forth ſuming-vapours. The chief Commodities which they tranſport unto other Countries, are *Canary*-Birds for Ladies, Oad for the Diers, Joyners-work, which they ſell to the *Spaniards*, and Beeves for the victualling of ſuch ſhips as come there to be victualled.

The Inhabitants are generally laborious, excellent Husbands on their grounds; inſomuch as they make Vines to grow out of Rocks: much given to *Joynery*; by which they make many pretty fancies, much eſteemed by the *Spaniards*, but not ſo expert at it, as thoſe of *Nuremberg*. They take great pains to teach their Cattel underſtanding; the Oxen being taught to know when their Maſter calleth them. In other things they conform to the *Portugals*, both in their Cuſtoms and Apparel; but with ſome ſmattring of the *Fleming*, which Nation they affect above any other.

The Iſlands, nine in number; and diſtinguiſhed by the ſeveral names of, 1 *Tercera*, 2 S. *Michael*, 3 *Faial*, 4 *Gratioſa*, 5 S. *George*, 6 *Pico*, 7 *Corvo*, 8 *Flores*, and 9 S. *Maries*; of which, S. *Michael*, and S. *Maries*, lye next to *Spain*; *Tercera*, on the North-weſt of thoſe, (by conſequence, the third in Order, whence it had the name) S. *Georges*, *Gratioſa*, *Pico*, *Faial*, on the Weſt of that; and finally, thoſe of *Corvo*, and *Flores*, neareſt to *America*.

1 *TERCERA*, the chief of all the reſt, 18 miles in compaſs; well ſtored with Peaches, Apples, Limons, Oranges: and for the Kitchin, with Turneps, Cabages, plenty of Pot-herbs, and as good *Batato-roots*, (which are the beſt food the people have) as any be in the world; but more eſteemed in *Portugal*, than they be in this Iſland, by reaſon of their great abundance. Here is alſo great quantity of the beſt kind of Woad, (which from hence is called *Iland Woad*) and a *Plant* about the height of a man, which bears no fruit; but hath a Root as profitable as thoſe that do, out of which the people draw a thin and tender film, wherewith they fill their Mattreſſes, inſtead of Feathers. Fowl enough for the uſe of man, and yet none of prey. No Port of any ſafety in it, but that of *Angra*; and that made ſafe by Art, and not by Nature: the whole begirt with Rocks, which ſtick out like a pointed Diamond, able to pierce the feet of any who ſhould venture over them. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Praye*, on the Sea-ſide, well walled, but not very well peopled. 2 S. *Barbara*, 3 S. *Sebaſtians*, 4 *Gualne*, and 5 *Villa Nova*, Burroughs of good note. 6 *Angra*, the chief, not of this Iſland only, but of all the nine: the Reſidence of the Governour, and an Archbiſhops-See, who hath in it his Cathedral-Church: ſeated on a convenient Bay, made in the form of a *Creſcent*, with two Promontories on each ſide, (like the two Horns of a half-Moon) bearing into the Sea; each Fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle for defence of the Haven: the Town it ſelf alſo well walled about, and environed with ſharp Rocks on all ſides. Both Town and Caſtle well garriſoned, and no leſs diligently guarded. This, in regard of its great ſtrength, and commdious Haven, is eſteemed the principal of theſe Iſlands, and communicates its name unto all the reſt; though neither neareſt unto *Spain*, nor the greateſt in compaſs.

2. S. *MARIES*, so called from the Saint (as S. *Georges* and S. *Michaels* are) unto which it is dedicated; is the most Southern of these Isles, and the next to *Spain*: twelve miles in circuit, inhabited by *Spaniards* only, and those much given unto the making of Earthen Vessels. So naturally fenced with Rocks, that it is, and may be easily kept by the Inhabitants, without the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it hath the name of S. *Maries* also, which it either giveth unto the Island, or borroweth from it.

3. S. *MICHAELS*, directly North of S. *Maries*, from which, little distant; the biggest in the whole pack, as being 20 miles in length, though the breadth not answerable: much subject unto Earth quakes and fiery vapours of most note amongst our modern *Geographers*, who have removed hither the first *Meridian* (by which they divide the World into East and West) from the *Canaries*, or *Fortunate Islands*; where it was fixed in the time of *Ptolemy*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

And this remove seems countenanced even by Nature it self; it being observed, that the *Compass* when it cometh under the *Meridian*, drawn through this Isle, hath little or no *variation* at all, but pointeth almost directly towards the North: whereas in all other places, or less *Meridians*, East and West, it pointeth not so directly North, but more or less to the *North east*, or the *North-west*, which the Mariners call the *Variation*, or the *North-easting*, and the *North westing*, of the Compass. And yet it's observed of late, that there is some more sensible variation of it in this Isle of S. *Michael*, than in that of *Corvo*; which therefore is conceived more fit for the first *Meridian*.

The chief Town hereof, besides many Burroughs and lesser Hamlets, *Punta del Gada*, seated upon a dangerous Sea, and without any Port; yet more frequented by Strangers, than the Port of *Angra*, because here they may go in and out as they please; but not so in the other.

4 *FAYAL*, 17 or 18 miles in length; plentifully provided with all things necessary for the life of man, and well furnished with Woad, for which Commodity, much frequented by the Merchants of *England*. The chief Town of it, *Dorta*; defended with a Castle, and that guarded by *Spaniards*: both Town and Island taken by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1597. This Action was called the *Island-Voyage*; undertaken as well to divert the War which the *Spaniards* threatned to bring to our own doors; as, by seizing some of those Islands, to intercept the *Spanish* Fleets in their return, and to hinder them in their setting out: by which means, wanting their *Indian* Gold, they might be brought to better terms with their Neighbour-Nations. And though the *English* were not able to hold it long, yet it was said, that the Booty got in this Expedition, amounted to 400000 Crowns; besides the honour of beating the *Spaniard* upon his own ground. It took this name from its abundance of *Beeches*.

5 *GRATIOSA*, not above five or six Leagues in compass; but so well furnished with Fruits, that they send much yearly to *Tercera*; inhabited by *Portugals* only, but so poor, that they are not able to bear the charge of a Garrison. The chief Town of it called *La Plaia*.

6 S. *GEORGES*, twelve miles long, about three in breadth; mountainous, and full of *Forests*: but those *Forests* so well stored with *Cedars*, that they use them many times for Shipping, and sometimes for Fewel. The chief Town of it, called S. *Georges*, as the Island is.

7 *PICO*, lyeth on the South of the Isle of S. *George*, and took this name from an high Hill, in the form of a *Pyramid*, which the *Portugals* generally call a *Pike*, or *Pico*. Replenished with Fruits, some *Cedars*, and a tree called *Teixo*, of great bulk, and as much beauty; the wood thereof, exceeding hard, red within, and waved; so admirably beautiful, that it is allowed only to the King's Officers, the other Subjects being interdicted the use of it, (but on special license) by a publick Edict. In bigness, it is second only unto that of S. *Michael*, if not equal to it; hardly so much in length, but of greater breadth. The chief Towns of it, 1 S. *Sebastians*, 2 *Calota ne Nossaia*, both upon the Sea, and in the East parts of the Island.

8 *FLORES*, directly East from *Fayal*, so called from its abundance of Flowers, (as *Gratiosa* from the like flourishing Verdure of it) is in compass not above 8 miles; but plentifully furnished with Cattel, and good grounds to feed them. The chief Town of it, *Santa Crux*. The Isle (though small, yet) twice as big as the Isle of 9 *CORVO*, so called from its abundance of *Crows*, situate on the North hereof, and but little distant: both very unsafe, and both most miserable poor, by reason of the many Pirates which lye betwixt them, to intercept such ships as trade towards *America*. But this, though much smaller than the others, may in time be of more esteem than any of them, in regard it is conceived to be the most natural place for the first *Meridian*, as before was noted: the Needle here pointing directly to the North, without *Variation*. which whether it proceed from some secret inclination of the *Load-stone* to that part of the World, more in this place than any other; or that being situate between the two great Continents of *Europe* and *America*, it is drawn equally towards both, but the *magnetical* vertue of the Earth it self, I leave to be disputed by more able Judgments.

These Islands were first discovered and subdued by the *Portugals*, under the conduct, or by the direction of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the first; who first made the *Portugals* in love with the Seas. And they were also the last Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, which held out for *Don Antonio* the Bastard, against *Philip* the second of *Castile*: against whom the Island of *Tercera* was for a while gallantly defended by *Emanuel de Silva*, with the help of the *French*; but taken at the last by the Marques of *Santa Cruz*, and the *French*, after promise of life, cruelly murdered in cold blood. After which, garrisoned at the first by none but *Portugals*. But upon some commotion hapning in that Kingdom, it was thought fit, on some reason of State, to make sure of the best Islands, by *Spanish* Garrisons; which accordingly were put into the Castle of *Angra*, in *Tercera*; the Towns of *Punta del Gada*, in S. *Michaels*; and *Dorta* in *Fayal*. And to say truth, the *Spaniards* had good reason to be careful of them; these Islands being of such importance, as without them the Navigation of the *Indies*, *Æthiopia*, *Brasil*, and *New Spain*, could not be continued: because the *Fleets* which come from those Countries to *Lisbon*, or *Sevil*, must, in a manner, of necessity touch upon some of them; as well in following their course, if they come from the West, as in recovering such Winds as are useful to them, if they came from the East.

But to return again to the main Land of *Portugal*, know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it, were the *Lusitania* dwelling betwixt *Tagus* and *Duerus*, the old *Lusitani*, being bounded within those Rivers; the *Celtici*, and *Turditani*, who took up also some part of *Bætica*, dwelling on the South of *Tagus*: and the *Gallaici Bracarii*, (so called to difference them from the *Gallaici Lucenses*, who possessed *Gallicia*) on the North of *Duerus*. Subjected first unto the *Romans*; by whom accounted one of the three parts of *Spain*. In the declining

of

of their Empire conquered by the *Alani*; and from them taken by the *Sucvians*; who, for a time, made the City of *Braga* the Royal Seat of their Kings. The *Suevians* loſt it to the *Goths*; and the *Goths*, to the *Moors*, as hath been ſhewn already in their ſeveral ſtories. Recovered, in part, by the Kings of *Leon*; to whom that part continued ſubject, till given by *Alfonſo* the ſixth of *Leon*, in Dowry with his baſe Daughter *Teraſa*, to *Henry* of *Lorrein*, (whoſe vertue and good ſervice, merited no leſs reward) *Anno* 1099. Who having fortunately governed it by the title of an Earl, for the ſpace of 12 years, left his Son, *Alfonſo*, Heir both to his Fortunes and Vertues; honoured with the title of King of *Portugal*, by the Soveraigns of *Leon*, for his moſt gallant demeanor ſhewn in the Battel of *Obrique*, *Anno* 1139. He had, before the *Aſſumption* of the Regal Stile, ruled 27 years with a great deal of honour; and he reigned here with no leſs, 45 years after that *Aſſumption*; reverenced by his friends, and feared by his enemies. So that the whole time of his ſitting in the Chair of State, was 72 years: a longer enjoying of Soveraignty, than any Prince ſince the firſt beginning of the *Roman* Monarchy. His Succeſſors we ſhall have in order in the following Catalogue. But we muſt firſt tell you, as in other places of this Work, that the Princes of moſt note in the whole Succeſſion, are, 1 *Henry* of *Lorrein*, (whom ſome make a *Burgundian*, of the City of *Beſancon*) who coming into *Spain* to the *Holy Wars*, and deſerving nobly in the ſame, was honoured by *Alfonſo* the ſixth, with his Daughter *Teraſa*, and the Town of *Porto* for her Dower; given to him with the title of the Earl of *Portugal*. He extended his Eſtate as far as *Conimbre*, on the South of the River *Duero*; that River being before that time, the utmoſt bound of it that way. 2 *Alfonſo* the firſt King, who took *Lisbon* from the *Moors*, *Anno* 1247. and made it the Seat of his Kingdom; which he extended Southward, as far as *Algarve*. 3 *Alfonſo* the 3d, who partly by Conqueſt, and partly by Marriage, added *Algarve* to his Eſtate, getting it by the Sword, and confirming it to him by the Bed. He alſo did prevail ſo far with *Alfonſo* the *Wiſe*, (never the wiſer for ſo doing) as to get his Realm diſcharged of the Homage which formerly had been done to the Kings of *Leon*, *An.* 1270. 4 *Alfonſo* the 4th, confederate with the fifth of the ſame name in *Caſtile*, againſt *Albozcen* the *Miramomolin* of *Africk*, at the fight near the River *Salado*, not far from *Tariff*; where they diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Moors*, conſiſting of 470000 Horſe and Foot. 5 *John* the firſt, the baſe ſon of *Pedro* the firſt; ſetting aſide the Lady *Beatrix*, Queen of *Caſtile*, the Daughter of *Ferdinand* the firſt, and the Lawful Children of his Father, being many in number; by force and colour of Election, obtained the Kingdom. Fortified it by his marriage with the Lady *Philip*, Daughter of *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaſter*; a ſtrong Competitor, at that time, for the Crown of *Caſtile*: on which relation, this King, the four Kings next ſucceeding, and two of this Kings younger Sons, were made Knights of the *Garter*. 6 *Edward* the ſon and ſucceſſor of *John* the firſt; of whom there goes a ſtory, that on the day of his Coronation, he was adviſed by a *Jew*, (one of his Phyſicians) learned in *Aſtrology*, to defer the Ceremony until noon, in regard he found by his Art, that if they did proceed unto it in that conjuncture, his reign would be very ſhort, and full of trouble. But the King, either out of magnanimity, or contempt of that Art, going on with the Ceremony, the *Jew*'s Prediction was found true; for he reigned not fully five years, and with ill ſucceſs in his attempts againſt the *Moors*. 7 *Henry* Duke of *Viſco*, (*Viſcontinus* the *Latins* call it) the ſecond ſon of *John* the firſt, created Knight of the *Garter*, by King *Henry* the ſixth, *An.* 1444. By whoſe encouragement and example, the *Portugueze* began to be affected to Foreign Voyages: diſcovering in his time, (and, for the moſt part, under his conduct alſo) the Iſlands of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Holy-Port*, thoſe of *Capo Verde*, and a great part of the coaſt of *Africk*, as far as *Guinea*. He dyed *Anno* 1465. 8 *Alfonſo* the fifth, who warring on the *Moors* in *Africk*, took from them the ſtrong Towns of *Tangier*, *Alcaſer*, and *Azilla*. 9 *John* the ſecond, under whoſe reign the *Portugals* fully ſetled themſelves in *Guinea*, and the Realms of *Congo*; diſcovering all the Coaſts and Iſles of *Africk*, (not before diſcovered) as far as to the *Cape of good hope*, *Anno* 1487: planting and fortifying as they paſſed; the whole Diſcovery of *Africk*, the *Eaſt-Indies*, and *Brazil*, being perfected in the Reign of King 10 *Emanuel*; under whom alſo they diſcomfited great Armies of the *Turks* and *Sultans* of *Egypt*; bringing by Sea the riches of the *Eaſt*, into the *Weſt*. 11 *Sebaſtian*, the Grandchild of King *John*, ſon of *Emanuel*, embarking himſelf unadviſedly in the Wars of *Africk*, loſt his life (as it is generally ſuppoſed) at the battel of *Alcaſar*, in which three Kings fell in one day. But many of the *Portugals* are of opinion, that he was not killed, but that for ſhame and ſorrow he returned not home; wandring from one place to another, and at laſt was found and avowed at *Venice*: thence carried to *Naples*, where he was kept three days in a dark Dungeon, without any ſuſtenance but a Knife and a Halter: brought into *Spain* by the King's Command, where at laſt he dyed. A man in whom ſo many circumſtances met, to make up a truth, that the very *Spaniards* uſed to ſay, that either he was the true *Sebaſtian*, or elſe the Devil in his likeneſs. But whether true or not, it is not now material; Death having put an end to that diſputation; though the controverſie which enſued upon his death, for the Crown of *Portugal*, be not yet decided. For, though King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, ſucceeded in it next after *Henry* the *Cardinal-King* (who only came upon the ſtage, that the Competitors might have time to declare their titles); and claimed the Crown as eldeſt Heir-male, and neareſt Kinſman to King *Henry*: yet all the World was not well ſatisfied in the Juſtice and Equity of his Demands. In the carrying on of which Affair, he ſeemed to deal very candidly to the eyes of men, not biaſſed by their proper *Intereſs*: offering to ſubmit his Title to a Diſputation; profeſſing, that the Laws of *Portugal* were more favourable to him, than the Law of *Caſtile*; and openly acknowledging; that if he ſhould chance to dye before the ſaid *Henry*, his eldeſt Son, as being a degree further off, would come behind ſome others of the *Pretendants* to it, of whom himſelf had the precedence. But finding nothing done by *Henry*, and meaning to make ſure work after his deceaſe, (*Antonio* the Baſtard having got poſſeſſion of *Lisbon*, and taking on himſelf as King, by a popular and tumultuous Election) he raiſed an Army under the command of *Ferdinand de Toledo*, Duke of *Alva*, and ſubdued all that ſtood againſt him; *Katharine* the Dutcheſs of *Bragance*, Daughter of Prince *Edward*, ſurrendring alſo all her intereſs and pretenſions to him; ſo entring by a mixt title of Deſcent and Arms, *Anno* 1580. Threeſcore years it was peaceably enjoyed by the Kings of *Spain*, when ſuddenly diſpoſſeſſed by a potent Faction, appearing for *John* Duke of *Bragance*, deſcended from the youngeſt ſon of King *Emanuel*: which wrought ſo cunningly and ſucceſsfully in his behalf, (by the great wit and under hand practices of Cardinal *Richelieu*, and others, Miniſters of the *French*) that the King of *Spain* was ſooner diſſeized of *Portugal*, than he heard of any plot or practice ſet on foot againſt him, *An.* 1639. In which it is to be obſerved, that

as

as King *Philip* the ſecond, for the better obtaining of this Crown, had embroyled the *French*, engaging that King in a bloody War againſt the *Proteſtants* of that Kingdom; to make him ſure enough from troubling him in his preſent Enterpriſe: ſo the *French* Miniſters had cauſed a revolt in *Catalogne*; to the end, that when the King of *Spain* was buſied in reducing that Province, the *Portugals* might have opportunity to redeem themſelves from the power of the *Spaniards*; whom the *Antipathy* betwixt the Nations made leſs pleaſing to them. Nor was it a partial defection only, or the loſs of *Portugal*, and no more: but a general falling off of the whole Eſtate in *Africk*, *Aſia*, *America*, in the Iſles and Continents: the *Acceſſories* (excepting only the Town of *Ceuta* in *Barbary*, and ſome of the *Tercera's*) going the ſame way as the *Principal* did. And here methinks that grave and deliberate Nation of the *Spaniards* may be juſtly taxed for committing a greater *Solœciſm* in point of State, than ever people did before them; in that, having got the full and peaceable poſſeſſion of the Crown of *Portugal*, and all the out-parts and Members of it; they continued all the Garriſons and ſtrong Holds of the whole Eſtate, in the hands of the Natives. By means whereof, when *Portugal* it ſelf fell off from the King of *Spain*, the Provinces and Plantations did the like, without any hæſitancie, which, had ſome of the chief Pieces in every Province, Factory, and Plantation, been brought by little and little (if not all at once) into the power of the *Caſtilians*, might have been eaſily prevented. Nor hath the *Spaniard* hitherto attempted any thing material, for the recovery of that Kingdom: having been ever ſince ſo over-laid by the *French* in *Catalogne*, *Navarre*, *Biſcay*, *Flanders*, *Artoys*, and *Italy*; that he hath not had much leiſure to attend that buſineſs. But leaving him and them to their own affairs, it is time to repreſent you with a Catalogue of

The Kings of *Portugal*.

A. C.		
1139	1	*Alfonſo*, the ſecond Earl, and firſt King of *Portugal*. 45.
1184	2	*Sancho*, the Son of *Alfonſo*. 28.
1212	3	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Sancho*. 11.
1223	4	*Sancho* II. Son of *Alfonſo* the 2d. 34.
1257	5	*Alfonſo* III. Brother of *Sancho* the 2d 22.
1279	6	*Denys*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the 3d. 48.
1325	7	*Alfonſo* IV. the Son of *Denys*. 32.
1357	8	*Pedro*, the Son of *Alfonſo* the 4th. 10.
1367	9	*Ferdinand*, the Son of *Pedro*, the laſt King of the lawful Iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorrein*. 18.
1385	10	*John* the baſe Son of *Pedro*, of whom ſufficiently before. 48.
1433	11	*Edward*, the Son of *John*, and of the Lady *Philip* of *Lancaſter*. 5.
1438	12	*Alfonſo* V. the Son of *Edward*. 43.
1481	13	*John* II. the Son of *Alphonſo* the 5th. 14.
1495	14	*Emanuel*, the Nephew of *Edward*, by his Son *Ferdinand*, Duke of *Viſeo*. 26.
1521	15	*John* III. Son of *Emanuel*. 38.
1557	16	*Sebaſtian*, the Nephew of *John* the 3d, by his Son *Don John*; unfortunately ſlain in the Fields of *Africk*. 21.
1578	17	*Henry* the Cardinal, Son of King *Emanuel*, the laſt of the Male-Iſſue of *Henry* of *Lorrein*. 2.
1580	18	*Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, Son of *Charles* K. of *Caſtile*, and Emperor, and of the Lady *Mary* his Wife, daughter of *Emanuel*. 18.
1598	19	*Philip* II. of *Portugal*, and III. of *Spain*.
1621	20	*Philip* III. of *Portugal*, and IV. of *Spain*. During his Reign, the *Portugueze* weary of the *Spaniſh* Government, choſe for their King
1636	21	*John* D. of *Bragance*, the IV. of that Name: a Prince of great Poſſeſſions, and of Royal Race, who hitherto hath peaceably enjoyed it.

Now that we may the better ſee by what title both the Kings of *Spain*, and the Dukes of *Bragance*, claim the Crown of *Portugal*; and what other pretenders there were to it, on the death of *Sebaſtian*; and what right as well *Antonio* the Baſtard, (but alledging a ſentence of Legitimation) as the Princes of the houſe of *Savoy*, did pretend unto it: we will lay down their Genealogies from King *Emanuel*, in this following *Scheme*.

Emanuel had theſe Children;

1 *John*, King of *Portugal* --- *John*, Prince of *Portugal* --- *Sebaſtian* K. of *Portugal*.
2 *Lewis* --- *Don Antonio*, a Baſtard --- *Chriſtopher*, and others.
3 *Henry* the Cardinal, King of *Portugal*.
4 *Edward*:
1 *Marry*, wedded to *Alexander* Duke of *Parma* --- *Rainuccio Farneſis*.
2 *Kath.* married to *John* D. of *Bragance*.
5 *Mary*, married to *Charles* the nſth, King of *Caſtile* --- *Philip* the II. K. of *Spain*.
6 *Beatrix*, married to *Charles* Duke of *Savoy*.

By this it may appear how the Claims are grounded; but whether Title will prevail, cannot now be told. Suffice it, that as the Royal Line of *Portugal* did begin in an *Henry*, ſo it ended in an *Henry* alſo; the Male-Line failing in the Perſon of the Cardinal-King, and the Crown falling (on whomſoever it ſhall faſten) on the Heirs of the Females.

The principal Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, are 1 Of *Avis*, ſo called from a Town of that name in *Portugal*, the Seat thereof: Founded by *Sanctius* or *Sancho* the firſt, in imitation of the Order of *Alcantara*, whoſe *Green Croſs* they wear; but equal to it neither in Power nor Riches.

2 Of *CHRIST*; inſtituted by *Denys* King of *Portugal*, who conferred on them all the Lands and Poſſeſſions of the exautorated *Templers*: confirmed by Pope *John* the twenty ſecond, *Anno* 1231. Their Robe is a *Black Caſſock*, under a *White Surcoat*; over which, a *Red Croſs*, ſtroaked in the midſt with a white Line: their Duty, to expel the *Moors* out of *Betica*, the next Neighbour to *Portugal*. To which Crown, they have added many gallant Countries in *Aſia*, *Africk*, and *Braſil*; and ſo improved their own Eſtates, that all the Iſles in the *Atlantick* do belong to them: beſides, the Rents of the Mine of St. *George*, in *Guinea*, amounting to 100000 Ducats of yearly income.

The Arms are *Argent*, on five Eſcocheons *Azure*, as many Bezants in *Saltier* of the firſt, pointed *Sable*, within a Border of *Gules*, charged with ſeven Towers, *Or*. Which five Eſcocheons were born in memory of five Kings, whom *Alfonſo*, the firſt King, ſlew at the battel of *Obrique*, *Anno* 1139; the Border, with the Towers or Caſtles, being added by *Alfonſo* the third, on his Inveſtiture into the Kingdom of *Algarve*, by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Caſtile*, *Anno* 1257. whoſe Daughter *Beatrix* he then married,

and

and ſo conceived himſelf to have ſome relation to the Arms of that Kingdom. And ſo proceed we on to thoſe Provinces which are under the Government of *Aragon*: the third great Body of this State.

12 VALENTIA.

VALENTIA hath on the Eaſt, the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, part of *Caſtile*, and *Aragon*; on the North, *Catalogne*; and *Murcia* upon the South. It is watered with the Rivers, 1 *Xucar*, called of old *Sucron*, and *Surus*. 2 *Guadalonder*, ſignifying a River of pure water: and 3 *Millar*.

This Country ſtandeth in the moſt temperate and pleaſing Air of all *Spain*, full of Gardens and places of wonderful delight, where groweth abundance of Rice, Sugar, Corn, and Fruit: garniſhed all the year long with ſweat ſmelling Flowers, and miraculouſly fruittul of Pomgranats, Limons, and other delicacies. It hath alſo Mines of Silver, at *Buriol*; of Gold, at *Lodor*; of Iron, at *Finiſtrat*; of Alabaſter, at *Piacent*; and of Allom, Lime, and Plaiſter, in many places. From thence alſo come the beſt Silks in the World, Cotton of *Murcia*, Crimſon, Scarlet, and other precious Colours, and rich Perfumes. Finally, all the Senſes of man may be delighted and refreſhed with that which comes from this happy Region; in quality, and ſweetneſs, much like that of *Naples*. The delicacy and great pleaſures whereof, have made the Inhabitants of it to be thought leſs Warlike than the other *Spaniards*. The Sheep of this Country alſo, bear the fineſt Fleeces of any in *Spain*: firſt ſtocked with *Cotſwold* Sheep from *England*, at the requeſt of *John* King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1465, by the imprudent courteſie of King *Edward* the fourth.

Places of moſt note in it, are, 1 *Alicante*, a noted Port on the *Mediterranean*, whence come our true *Alicant*-Wines, made of their Juice of Mulberries; by *Ptolemy* called *Illici is*; by *Mela*, *Ilice*: from whence the Bay adjoyning is called *Sinus Ilicitanus*, now the Bay of *Alicante*. 2 *Orivela*, a Biſhops-See, on the River *Segura*, which divides the Province from *Murcia*. 3 *Segorve*, a Biſhops-See; by *Ptolemy* named *Segobriga*, the chief City, in old times, of the *Celtiberi*. 4 *Xelva*, ſuppoſed to be the *Incibilis* of *Livy*, where *Scipio* defeated *Hanno* and his *Carthaginians*. 5 *Valentia*, a fair, pleaſant, and well-traded City, the See of an Arch-biſhop, and giveth name to the whole Province: in its firſt glory, one of the chief *Roman* Colonies in theſe parts of *Spain*: in its laſt, the Royal Seat of the *Mooriſh* Kings of this Country. Situate three miles from the *Mediterranean*, not far from the mouth of the River *Durcal*, now a called *Guadalander*: and is by ſome ſaid to have been heretofore named *Roma*, which ſignifieth ſtrength. But when the *Romans* maſtered it, to diſtinguiſh it from their *Rome*, it was called *Valentia*; which in the *Latin* Tongue, is of the ſame ſignification with the *Greek* ἡ Ῥώμη. Here is an Univerſity in which Saint *Dominick*, the Father of the *Dominicans*, ſtudied. 6 *Laurigi*, now a ſmall Village: once a Town of great ſtrength, called *Lauron*: which *Sertorius* beſieged, took, and burned, even then when *Pompey*, whoſe Confederates the *Lauronites* were, ſtood with his whole Army nigh enough unto the Flame, to warm his hands; and yet durſt not ſuccour it. It was formerly named *Sucron*, after the name of the River: and is famous in *Plutarch*, for the victory which *Sertorius* here got of *Pompey*; *Pompey*'s Army being not only overthrown, but himſelf, with life, hardly eſcaping. 8 *Morvedre*, ſituate in or near the place of the old *Saguntum*: the People whereof, when beſieged by *Annibal*, continued ſo obſtinate in the expectation of aid from *Rome*, that they choſe rather to burn themſelves, than yield up the Town: the occaſion of the ſecond War between *Rome* and *Carthage*. Firſt founded by the *Zacynthians*, and after this deſtruction of it, repaired, or re-edified, by the *Romans*, (they could not poſſibly do leſs) by whom made a *Colony*. 9 *Gandia*, which gives the title of a Duke to the Houſe of *Borgia*, and was the ſtyle of *Franciſco Borgia*, the eldeſt ſon of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, (of this noble Family) called commonly in *Guicciardine*) by the name of the Duke of *Gandy*. 10 *Denia*, ſeated on the brink of the *Mediterranean*, over which it hath a goodly proſpect; the Marquiſate of the Duke of *Lerma*: firſt founded by the *Maſſilians*, by whom called *Dianium*. Not far from which, is the Promontory of *Ferraria*, of old called *Promontorium Dianium*; the Refuge of *Sertorius* in his Wars againſt *Pompey*, and *Metellus*, both of great renown: the one aged, and of much experience, the other young, and of high reſolutions. And yet *Sertorius* found himſelf more troubled with the old man's Gravity, than the young man's Gallantry: inſomuch as he was uſed to ſay, That *had it not been for the old Woman* Metellus, *he would have whipped the Boy* Pompey *home with Rods*. For he had twice overcome this Great *Pompey*, before *Metellus* was joined in the Action with him: the firſt time dangerouſly wounding, and the ſecond time driving him out of the Field. But fighting againſt both, he was overmatched; and yet ſeemed rather to retire, than flye before them; the *Spaniards* behaving themſelves very valiantly, in the time of theſe Wars, under him: to which *Florus* alludeth, ſaying, *Nec unquam magis apparuit* Hiſpani *militis Vigor*, *quâm* Romano *duce*. At the laſt, when he had a long time upheld the *Marian* Faction, he was traiterouſly murthered by *Perpinna*, one of his *Aſſociates*: for which, *Metellus* and *Pompey* had a *Triumph* at *Rome*. So high an eſtimate did they ſet upon the caſual death of this *Proſcript*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the *Baſtetani*, the *Edetani*, the *Conteſtani*, and ſome part of the *Celtiberi*; originally of the Province of *Tarraconenſis*; afterwards (in the ſub-dividing of that Province by *Conſtantine*) of *Carthaginenſis*. In the declining of the Empire, firſt ſubdued by the *Alani*, who were ſcarce warm in their new dwellings, when diſſeized by the *Goths*. From the *Goths* taken by the *Moors*, of whoſe Kingdom reckoned as a Province; till the fatal overthrow given to *Mahomet Enaſer*, at the battel of *Sierra Morena*; and the departure of the *Moors* of *Morocco*, to their own Country; which followed preſently upon it. By *Zeit Abeu-Zeit*, the Brother of this *Mahomet*, made a diſtinct Kingdom of it ſelf, *Anno* 1214: but taken from him by one *Zaen*, a Prince of the *Moors* of *Spain*, under colour that he had a purpoſe of turning Chriſtian, and making his Kingdom ſubject to the Crown of *Aragon*, (as indeed he did) *Anno* 1228. Conquered from *Zaen* the new King, before he could enjoy the ſweets of a new raiſed Kingdom, by *James* King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1238. Since reckoned a Member of that Kingdom, never diſmembred from the body of it, ſince the firſt uniting. But ſtill ſo overgrown with *Moors*, (not to be blamed for loving ſuch an excellent ſeat) that at the final expulſion of that people by King *Philip* the third, there were reckoned no fewer than 22000 Families of them in this little Country.

The Arms hereof were *Gules*, a Tower embatteled *Argent* purfled (or pennon'd) *Sable*.

13. CATA-

13. CATALONIA.

CATALONIA is bounded on the North-east, with the Land of *Rousillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the East, with the *Mediterranean*, on the South, with *Valentia*; on the North, and North-west, with *Aragon*. The Country somewhat mountainous; and full of Woods, and not very well cultivated: beholding more, in that respect, for Corn, Fruits, and other necessary Provisions, unto the courtesie of the Sea, which serves them out of other Countries, than to the Goodness of the Land. And it is as well watered, as most parts of *Spain*; having in it, besides the *Ebro*, or *Iberus*, common to many other Provinces; and *Civia*, which runneth betwixt it and *Valentia*; the Rivers of, 1. *Tardera*, 2. *Lobregat*, 3. *Segre*, 4. *Francolino*, 5. *Besons*, and 6. *Onbar*.

The name of *Catalonia*, some derive from the *Castellani*, who formerly inhabited some part hereof: others will have it called *Catalonia*, corruptly, for *Gothalania*, from the mixture of the *Goths* and *Alani*, successively the Masters of it: and some, more improbably, from one *Carthalot*, a Noble-man of this Country, who lived here they know not when. More like it is, that it took this name from the *Catalauni*, an old *French* people of *Languedoc*, the adjoyning Province, from whom the fields called *Campi Catalaunici*, near unto *Tholouse*, took denomination. But from what root soever they came, certain it is, that they are generally a stout and couragious people, as may be seen by their exploits in most parts of *Greece*, which they miserably spoiled and pillaged many years together, in the time of *Andronicus* the second; to whose aid called in. But then withal, they are a very perverse and obstinate people, little observant of the pleasure or profit of their *natural Princes*: but on the other side, so zealous in defence of their own *Priviledges*, that they have created more trouble to their Kings, under that pretence, than all the rest of the Subjects of *Spain*. Of which we need no other instance, than their late revolt unto the *French Anno* 1638, which drew after it the loss of the Realm of *Portugal*, and many Towns of great importance in *Flanders*, and the rest of the *Netherlands*.

Principal places in it, are, 1. *Barcelone*, situate on the *Mediterranean*, near the River *Lobregat*; accommodated with a large and commodious Port, where commonly the *Spanish* Souldiers do embark, which are bound for *Italy*. The Town adorned with large streets, handsom buildings, strong walls, and a very pleasant situation. Called *Barsino* by the ancient Writers, in whose time it was a *Roman* Colony, now honoured with a Bishops-See, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*. 2. *Tarragon*, seated also on the *Mediterranean*, East of the River *Francolino*: built, fortified, and peopled by the two *Scipio's*, the Father and Uncle of *Africanus*, for a Counter-Fort to *Carthagena* (or *New Carthage*) not long before founded by the *Carthaginians*. Afterwards made the *Metropolis* of *Tarraconensis*, hence denominated: but stript of that honour by *Toledo*, and is now but two miles in compass, and containing not above seven hundred Families. Yet still it holdeth the reputation of an Arch-bishops-See, contending with *Toledo*, for the Primacy of all *Spain* (as *Braga* also doth in the Kingdom of *Portugal*): the controversie being undecided to this very day. 3. *Ampurias*, on the same Sea also; once of great esteem, founded by the *Massilians*, a *Roman* Colony, and a well-traded Town, as the name doth signifie: this being the *Emporia*, spoken of by *Strabo* and *Ptolemy*; now not observable for any thing, but a safe Road for Ships. 4. *Blamos*, 5. *Palamos*, and 6. *Rosat*, all ports on the same Sea, but subject unto divers Winds, and not very spatious, this last by *Ptolemy* called *Rhoda*, first founded by the *Rhodians*, or people of the Isle of *Rhodes*, and by them so named. More in the Land, are 7. *Girone*, a small, but handsomly built, and a well-traded Town; a Bishops-See, and the title of the eldest Son of *Aragon*, called Prince of *Girone*. Which title was first given to *John*, the eldest Son to King *Pedro* the fourth, immediately upon his birth, *Anno* 1351; and hath since continued. 8. *Tortosa*, on the River *Ebro*, in the most rich and pleasant part of all the Country; recovered from the *Moors*, by *Raymond* the fifth, Earl of *Barcelone*, and prince of *Aragon*, about the year 1146. The principal Agent in that work, *William Raymond* of *Moncada*, Seneschal of *Catalogne*; rewarded for his good sevice in it, with a third part of the City. A goodly Town, and of good importance; garrisoned by the *French* since the late revolt of *Catalonia* from the King of *Spain*; and like to draw a great part of this Province after it, whilest it continueth in their power, or in the possession of their party. 9. *Urgel*, an Earl's Honour, and a Bishops-See, situate at the foot of the *Pyrenees*. 10. *Momblanc*, which heretofore gave the title of Duke to the second Sons of the Kings of *Aragon*. 11. *Moncada*, once a Town of strength; but of more note for giving denomination to the Noble Family *de Moncada*, Hereditary Seneschals of *Catalogne*, and Lords of *Bearn*. Here is also on the East part, where it joyneth with the Land of *Rousillon*, the Promontory called of old, *Templum Veneris*, now *Cabo de Ceux*. And not far from *Barcelone*, the Mountain called *Montserrato*, on the sides full of *Hermitagees* and *Anchorets* Cells; and having towards the summit of it, a Chappel dedicated to the Virgin *Mary*: much famed and resorted to by *Pilgrims* from all parts of the World, for her miraculous Image, which is there enshrined.

The old Inhabitants of this Province, were the *Castellani*, *Auxitani*, *Indigites*, *Cositani*, with part of the *Ilercones*, and *Iacetani*; all of them part of *Tarraconensis*. In the declining of the *Empire*, seized on by the *Alani*; and they soon after vanquished, if not dispossessed, by the power of the *Goths*. Lost to the *Moors*, in the general ruin of the whole: from them recovered by the puissance of *Charles* the Great; who having taken the City of *Barcelone*, *Anno* 801, gave it to one *Bernard* a *French*-man, with the title of Earl, who governed the Country for that Emperor; as *Wisredus*, or *Godfredus*, his Successor, did for *Lewis* the Godly. *Godfredus*, Son to this *Godfrede*, by the gift of *Charles* the *Gross*, was the first Proprietary; united unto *Aragon* by the marriage of Earl *Raymond*, with the Heir of that Kingdom. First held in Vassalage of the *French*, but that acknowledgment related to King *James* the first, *An.* 1260, by the King St. *Lewis*; the King of *Aragon* releasing, at the same time, his pretensions and rights of Soveraignty to *Carcasson*, *Beziers*, *Albi Nismes*, and some other pieces in *France*, of old belonging to that Crown. But before that, the *Catellans* had neglected the acknowledgment of their subjection to that Crown; it being ordered by *Alfonso* the second King of *Aragon*, about the year 1180, That the year of the reigns of the Kings of *France*, should no more be used in any Instrument or Writings which concerned that People; but the year only of the Incarnation of our Lord and Saviour: which, in effect, was to disclaim the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*.

The Earls of *Barcelone*.

An. Chr.		
884	1	*Godfredus*, ſirnamed the *Hairy*, Son of *Wifrede*, the *Provincial* Governour for the Emperor *Ludovicus Pius*.
914	2	*Miron*, Son of *Godfredus*.
933	3	*Godfredus* II. Son of *Miron*, by ſome called *Seniofrid*.
971	4	*Borellus*, Brother of *Miron*, and Unkle of *Godfredus* the ſecond.
993	5	*Raymond* Son of *Borellus*.
1017	6	*Berengarius*, ſirnamed *Borellus*, Son of *Raymond*.
1035	7	*Raymond* II. Son of *Berengarius Borellus*,
1076	8	*Raymond* III. Son of *Raymond* the ſecond.
1082	9	*Raymond* IV. Son of *Raymond* the third, Earl of *Provence* alſo in right of *Doulce* his Wife.
1131	10	*Raymond* V. Son of *Raymond* the fourth, and *Doulce* Counteſs of *Provence*, married *Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir*, or *Raymond*, the ſecond, King of *Aragon*; whom he ſucceeded, in that Kingdom, *Anno* 1134. Uniting theſe Eſtates together, never ſince diſjoyned: the chief procurer of this Match, being *William Raymond*, of *Moncada*, ſpoken of before.

The Arms hereof, were four Pallets *Gules*, in a field *Or*: now the Arms of *Aragon*. Which Arms were given to *Geoffry*, ſirnamed the *Hairy*, the firſt Earl hereof, by *Lewis* the *Stammering*, Emperor and King of *France*, to whoſe aid he came againſt the *Normans* with a Troop of Horſe: and being bloody in the fight, deſired of the Emperor to give him ſome Coat of Arms, which he and his Poſterity might from thenceforth uſe. Who dipping his four fingers in the blood of the Earl, drew them thwart his Shield, (which was only of Plain *Gold*, without any Deviſe) ſaying, *This ſhall be your Arms hereafter.*

14. The Kingdom of *Majorca*.

THE Kingdom of *MAJORCA*, contained the Iſlands of *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Ebuiſa*, and *Frumentaria*, in the *Mediterranean*; the Land of *Rouſillon*, *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*, in the Continent of *Spain*; and the Earldom of *Montpelier* in *France*.

The Land of *ROUSILLON*, which is the firſt Member of this Kingdom, is ſituate betwixt two Branches of the *Pyrenees*; bounded on the South, with the *Mediterranean*; on the Weſt, with *Catalogne*; on the North, with the ſaid *Pyrenees*; on the Eaſt, with *Languedoc* in *France*. Places of moſt importance in it, are, 1. *Helna*, a Biſhops-See on the River *Techo*. 2. *Collibre*, now a poor and ignoble Village, of note only for a ſafe and commodious Harbour; but formerly, the great and famous City of *Illiberis*, ſo often mentioned in the Wars betwixt *Rome* and *Carthage*. 3. *Perpignan*, (in *Latin*, *Perpinianum*) built in the year 1068, by *Guinard*, Earl of *Rouſillon*, in a pleaſant Plain on the River *Thelis*: now a rich Town, well traded, and as ſtrongly fortified againſt the *French*; to whoſe fury, in the time of War, it is ſtill expoſed. Beſieged by *Henry*, Son to King *Francis* the firſt, with a puiſſant Army, *An.* 1542; partly to be revenged upon *Charles* the fifth, who had before attempted *Marſeilles* in *Provence*; and partly, to get into his hands the chief door of *Spain*, by which he might at all times enter into that Kingdom. But he found here ſuch ſtrong reſiſtance, that he was fain to raiſe his ſiege, with as little honour as *Charles* had gotten by his Expedition which he made into *Provence*. 4. *Salſus*, (the *Salſulæ* of *Sextus*) a ſtrong place on the Frontier of *Languedoc*; fortified according to the Rules of modern Fortification, and one of the chief Bulwarks againſt the *French*. 5. *Rouſillon*, a Caſtle of more honour and antiquity, than ſtrength or beauty; by *Pliny*, and other Ancients, called *Ruſcino*; the Country, *Comitatus Ruſcianenſis*, now *Rouſillon* and the Land of *Rouſillon*; accounted heretofore a part of *Gaul* of *Narbonenſis*; and added unto *Spain* in the time of the *Goths*. On the death of *Gerrard*, the laſt *Proprietary*-Earl, it was added to the Crown of *Aragon*, by *Alfonſo* the ſecond: by *James* the firſt, laid to the Kingdom of *Majorca*; united to the Crown again by King *Pedro* the fourth. After that, ſold (or rather pawned) by King *John* the ſecond, to *Lewis* the 11. of *France*, for the ſum of 300000 Crowns, *Anno* 1462, and freely returned back again to *Ferdinand* the ſecond, (after called the *Catholick*) by King *Charles* the 8. *Anno* 1493; conditioned that he ſhould not hinder him in the Conqueſt of *Naples*. Joyning hereto, as part of the Kingdom of *Majorca*, was the Country of *Sardaigne*, or *Cerdagne*; the habitation of the *Ceretani* in former times, and afterwards accounted of as a part of *Aragon*. The chief Town of thoſe *Ceretani*, called *Julia Lybica*; the principal now being, hath the name of *Cardona* (or *Sardona*, as the *Spaniards*, commonly pronounce) retaining ſome reſemblance to the name of the Nation. The Country lying in the Vallies of the *Pyrenees*, and conſequently in a corner ſome what out of the way, was thought fit to be added to the Land of *Rouſillon*, (for the better endowment of this Kingdom:) the Fortunes of which, it hath ſince followed, as appendent on it: pawned when that was, unto the *French*; and with that reſtored.

2. The Earldom of *MONTPELIER*, is ſituate in the Province of *Languedoc*, adjoyning to the Land of *Rouſillon*: ſo called from *Montpelier*, the chief City: for the deſcription whereof, we muſt ſend the *Reader* back to *France*, having ſpoken of it there already. All I ſhall here repeat, is this, That *Mary*, the Daughter of *William* the laſt Earl thereof, brought it by marriage, to her Husband, *Peter* the ſecond King of *Aragon*: and that it was ſold to *Philip de Valoys*, the *French* King, by *James* King of *Majorca*, of that name the third. Nothing elſe memorable in the ſtory and affairs of this little Earldom, but the fortunes of the two laſt Counteſſes of it. Of which, the firſt being Daughter of *Emanuel Comnenus*, Emperor of *Conſtantinople*, and affianced to *Alfonſo* the 2. King of *Aragon*, was brought as far as *Montpelier*, in her way towards *Spain*, and there lodged, with her whole retinue, in the houſe of *William*, then Earl thereof *Anno* 1174 But hearing that *Alfonſo*, contrary to his word and promiſe, was in treaty of another marriage with the Princeſs *Sancha* of *Caſtile* (which he celebrated very ſhortly after) and aſhamed to return to the Court of her Father, after ſuch an injury; ſhe hearkned to the counſel of her Lords and followers, who perſwaded her to marry with Earl *William*, then a luſty Batchelor: which was done accordingly. To him ſhe brought a daughter, named *Mary*, (their only child) afterwards married to *Don Pedro* the 2. Son of *Alfonſo*, and ſucceſſor to him in that Kingdom: ſo that, although the Mother could not have the happineſs to be Queen of *Aragon*; yet the Daughter had. But being of no great beauty, the King her Husband

grew

grew weary of her, and would have been divorced, had the Pope consented: whose consent not being to be had, he forsook her Bed, and betook himself to other Women. Which the Queen not being otherwise able to remedy, prevailed with one of the Grooms of his Chamber, called *Pedro Flavian*, to bring her one night unto his Bed, (when some other Mistress was expected) and by him did conceive that night, as it after proved: the King perceiving the deceit on the morrow morning, was neither well pleased, nor much offended, at the honest fraud they had put upon him. Of this conjunction was born a Son at *Montpelier*, whom they named *James*; Successor to his Father in the Kingdom of *Aragon*; and to his Mother, (the last Countess of it) in the Earldom of *Montpelier*; united, in his person, into one Estate; and by him finally parted from it, in the erection of the new Kingdom of *Majorca*, as before was said.

3. The Island of *MAJORCA* is situate in the *Mediterranean*, just over-against *Valentia*; from which distant about 60 miles: about 300 miles in circuit, the length above an hundred, the breadth somewhat under; the number of Inhabitants reckoned at 30000. The Land, on all sides, towards the Sea, is somewhat mountainous, and barren withal: the Inlands more Champian and Fruitful yielding sufficient quantity of Oyl, Corn, Wines, and Fruits, for the use of its people. The whole Island is devided into 30 parts, (as so many *Wapentakes*) in every one of which, are reckoned from 300 to 600 Families. No hurtful Creatures are here bred, except Conies only; and those not hurtful, but by accident: of which more anon.

Places of chief note, in the former times, were 1. *Palma*, and 2. *Pallentia*, which had the rights of *Roman* Citizens. 3. *Cinium*, and 4. *Cunici*, which enjoyed the rights of the *Latins*: and 5. *Bochri*, (or *Bochorum*) which was in the condition of a Town *confederate*; besides divers others not so priviledged. Of these none left, at this day, but *Palma* only, vulgarly called *Majorca*, by the name of the Island: a Bishops-See, the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for these Isles, and an *University*: the birth place of *Raymundus Lullius*, a man of great Wit, and profound Judgment; the Author of some Books in the Art of *Chymistry*: whose Works are read and studied in that University, as *Aristotle*'s are in others. This is the greater of the two Islands called *Baleares*, whence it hath the name. Adjoyning hereunto, two others of inferior note, called *Dragonera*, and *Cabrera*; of which nothing memorable.

4. *MINORCA*, so called, because it is the lesser of the *Baleares*; is situate Eastward of *Majorca*, from which distant near 100 miles: of about 60 miles in length, and 150 in circuit. More fruitful than the other, though less in quantity: of a rich soyl, which breedeth them great Herds of Cattel, and Mules of the largest size of any in *Spain*: accommodated also with two convenient Havens, the one called *Maon*, the other *Farnessus*. Other considerable places, are, 1. *Minorca*, now so called by the name of the Island; but anciently known by the name of *Mago*: situate in the East part thereof, first founded by the *Carthaginians*, as the name imports. And so was also 2. *Jamno*, seated in the West, (*Duo parva Oppida, quibus à Pœnis indita nomina*, saith *Sevetus* Bishop of these Isles, *Anno* 420, or thereabouts.) It is now called *Citadella*, or the little City. Here was was also in the mid-land, a third Town, called *Sanisera* by *Pliny*; of which I find now no track remaining.

5. *EBUSA*, now called *YVICA*, lyeth between the main Land, and the *Baleares*, opposite to the Promontory of *Ferraria*, in the Realm of *Valentia*; from which distant about 50 miles, and near an hundred miles in compass. The Country plentiful of Corn, and all manner of Fruits, breeding no hurtful Creature, except Conies only which many times destroy their Harvest. The chief Town here, *Yvica*, (of old called *Ebusus*) the Inhabitants of which make yearly great store of Salt; wherewith they do not only furnish *Spain*, but some parts of *Italy*.

6. *FRUMENTARIA*, so called from the plenty of Corn, is distant ten miles from *Yvica*, and about 60 miles from that main Land of *Spain*: in circuit about 70 miles. Not well inhabited, by reason of the multitude of Serpents; from which called by the *Græcians*, *Ophiusa*; and *Colubraria*, by the *Latins*. Both Islands anciently known by the name of *Pytusæ*, and *Pityodes*, from the abundance of *Pines* there growing

About these Islands are six others of little worth, called 1. *Veda*, 2. *Conirello*, and 3. *Dragonago*, 4. another called *Moncolibre*, betwixt *Majorca*, and the influx of the River *Iberus*. 5. *Alfaques*, lying in the very mouth of that River: and 6. *Scombraria*, (anciently called the Island of *Hercules*) over-against *Carthagena*; so named from a kind of *Tunny*, in *Latin* named *Scombri*, of which great shoals use to lye about it. All these, together with the *Baleares*, make up the Province of the Islands, the seventh Province of *Spain*.

But the chief glory of these Islands, were the *BALEARES*, so called (as the general conceit is) from the *Greek* word βάλλειν, which signifieth to throw; because the pople were so expert in *throwing* their Slings or Darts: but, as *Bochartus* will needs have it, (to the same effect) from *Baal-iare*, a *Punick*, or *Phœnician* word, signifying a *master in the Art of slinging*. An Art so natural and innative to them, that Parents used to give no meat unto their Children, after some fit age, but what they could hit down with their *Slings* from the top of a Beam. Of their dexterity at this weapon, there is much mention made in the ancient Writers, as well Historians as Poets. And from this Exercise they had the name also of *Insulæ Gymnasiæ*; or else because the people of it used to go *naked* to the Wars, (and possible enough, in those first Ages of the world, as at other times also) from the *Greek* word γυμνὸς, the same with *Nudus* in the *Latin*. Nor were they good at *slinging* only, but at *swimming* too; an exercise not ordinarily performed, but by *naked* people: at which the very women are at this day expert, *Biddulph* reporting, in the relation of his travels, That being becalmed about these Islands, there came a woman swimming from one of them with a Basket of Fruit to sell. But that which made them most talked of in former times, was their harm done them by their Conies; which here, and in the neighbouring Continent, encreased so wonderfully, that *Varro* telleth us of a Town in *Spain*, undermined by them: and *Strabo*, that they did not only destroy their Plants, but rooted up many of their Trees. Insomuch that the Inhabitants did request the *Romans* to give them some new seats to inhabit in; ἐκβάλλεσθαι γὰρ ὑπὸ τῶν ζώων τούτων, being ejected by those Creatures out of their Possessions, whose multitudes they were not able to resist. And when that could not be obtained; they moved *Augustus Cæsar* (as *Pliny* telleth us) for some aid against them; who, instead of *Souldiers*, sent them *Ferrets*, by which their numbers where diminished in a little time.

These Islands were first planted by the *Tyrians*, or *Phœnicians*, the founders of many of their Cities: one of which, in the Isle of *Ebusus*, had the name of *Phœnissa*: From them also they derived the Art of Slinging. Made subject to the *Carthaginians*, under the conduct of *Hanno* and *Himilco*, *Anno M.* 3500, or thereabouts, at what time the *Decemviri* governed *Rome*. Under

that State they remained subject, till the end of the second *Punick* War: when *Carthage* was no longer able to protect them, made a State of themselves, till conquered by *Metellus*, the Brother of him who subdued *Creet*. The people were much given to Piracy: and seeing the *Roman* Navy sayling by their Coasts, supposed them to be Merchant-men; assaulted them, and at first prevailed. But the *Romans* getting betwixt them and the shore, discovered from whence they came, and forced them to an unwilling submission: for which *Metellus* was rewarded with the honour of a *Triumph*. Being once made a Province of *Spain*, they always, after that, followed the Fortunes thereof. In the destraction of the Empire of the *Moors*, in *Spain*, they were united into one Kingdom, by the name of the Kingdom of *Majorca*: won from the *Moors*, by *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone*, with the help of the *Genoese*, *Anno* 1102. By the *Genoese* delivered to the *Moors* again; and from them reconquered by *James* King of *Aragon*, descended from that *Raymond*, *Anno* 1228.

Of these Estates consisted the Kingdom of *Majorca*, erected by *James* the first, immediately (almost) on his recovery of these Islands, from the hands of the *Moors*; and by him given unto *James* his second Son; who, fearing the displeasure of his Brother, King *Peter* the third, submitted his new Kingdom to the *Vassalage* of the Crown of *Aragon*. Yet could not this so satisfie the ambition or jealousies of those mightier Kings, as to preserve his Successors in possession of it. By *Pedro* the 4. extorted from King *James*, the fourth and last King thereof, under colour of denying his accustomed *Homage*. So ended

The Kings of *Majorca*, of the House of *Aragon*.

An. Chr.

1276 1 *James* the first, Son to *James* the first, King of *Aragon*.

1412 2 *Sancho*, Son of *James* the first.

3 *James* the II. Son of *Ferdinand*, the Brother of *James* 2d.

4 *James* III. Son of *Ferdinand*, overcome and slain in Battel by *Pedro* the 4. King of *Aragon*. *Majorca*, and other members of this little Kingdom, remaining ever since united unto that Crown; except *Montpelier*, sold by this *James* unto the *French*, in hope that by their aid, he might be enabled to recover his Kingdom. But being aided by them, and attempting the recovery of it, he was discomfited and slain in the Isle of *Majorca*, *An.* 1341, as before is said.

The Forces of this little Kingdom may be best estimated by the Army which the *Moors* brought into the field against *James* the first, for defence of the Island of *Majorca*, consisting of 50000 Horse: but better, by the Army of *James* the last King hereof, in defence of his Estates against *Pedro* the 4: (for the *Moors* might possibly be aided by the rest of their Nation) consisting of 3000 Horse, and 15000 Foot, of his natural Subjects.

15. ARAGON.

ARAGON, hath on the East, the Land of *Rousillon*, and the *Pyrenees*; on the West, the two *Castiles*; on the the North, *Navarre*; on the South and South-east, *Catalonia*, and some part of *Valentia*. So called from the River *Aragon*, by which it is divided from the Realm of *Navarre*; where the first Princes of this House, having won certain Towns from the hands of the Infidels, commanded as Lords *Marchers*, under the Kings of that Realm: and called themselves, for that reason, the Earls of *Aragon*: spreading the name, as they enlaged their bounds, by ensuing Conquests: as, in like manner, the great Earldom of *Moselle*, founded by the disherited Sons of *Cloidon*, second King of the *French*, was named from that River; upon the course whereof, and the parts adjoyning, it was first erected.

The Country lyeth on both sides of the River *Iberus*, and hath also several Riverets, as *Gallego*, *Senga*, *Xalon*, and *Cagedo*, running like so many Veins through the body of it; yet is generally so destitute of waters, and so ill-inhabited, especially towards the Mountains of the *Pyrenees*; that one may travel many days, and find neither Town, nor House, nor People. But where the Rivers have their course, the case is different, the Valleys yielding plenty both of Corn and Fruits, especially about *Calataiub*, where the air is good, and the soil fruitful.

The ancient Inhabitants were the *Celtiberi*, who took up a great part of *Tarraconensis*: divided into lesser Tribes, not here considerable. These sprung originally from the *Celtæ*, (as before is said) the greatest and most potent Nation of all *Gallia*: who being too populous for their Country, or willing to employ themselves upon new Adventures, passed the *Pyrenees*, and mingled themselves with the *Iberi*. From thence the name of the *Celtiberi*, and *Celtiberia*, according unto this of *Lucan*:

——*Profugique à gente vetustâ*
Gallorum, Celtæ *miscentes nomen* Iberi.

Who being chas'd from *Gaul*, their home, did frame,
Of *Celtæ* and *Iberi* mixt, one name.

Others of less consideration, were the *Jaccetani*, and *Lucetani*, with part of the *Edetani*, and *Illergetes*.

Places of most importance in it, are, 1. *Jacca*, the chief City heretofore of the *Jaccetani*, seated amongst the *Pyrenees*; and for that cause chosen for the chief seat and residence of the first Kings of *Aragon*: continued there till the taking of *Saragossa*, by *Alfonso* the first. 2. *Calataiub*, seated on *Xalon*, in the best Country of *Aragon*: so called from *Aiub*, a *Moorish* Prince, the first Founder of it. Not far from which, upon an Hill, stood the old Town *Bibilis*, a *Municipium* of the *Romans*, and the birth-place of *Martial*. 3. *Venasque* amongst the *Pyrenees*. 4. *Balbastro*, on the *Senga*, formerly called *Burtina*; now a Bishops-See. 5. *Lerida*, on the River *Segre*, as some say; but others place it on the *Senga*: which rising in the *Pyrenees*, divideth *Catalonia* from *Aragon*, and so passeth into *Iberus*. Now an University; called formerly *Ilerda*, and famous for the encounter hapning nigh unto it, betwixt *Herculeius*, Treasurer or *Quæstor* to *Sertorius*; and *Manilius*, Proconsul of *Gallia*: wherein *Manilius* was so discomfited, and his Army, consisting of three Legions of Foot, and 1500 Horse, so routed, that he, almost alone, was scarce able to recover this City, few of his Souldiers surviving the overthrow. 6. *Mason*, famous for entertaining the King of *Spain* every third year: at which time the people of *Aragon*, *Valence*, and *Catalogne*, present the King with 600000 Crowns, *viz.* 300000 for *Catalogne*, 200000 for *Aragon*, and 100000 for *Valentia*. And well may they thus do, for at other times they sit *Rent-Free*, as it were: only they acknowledge the King of *Spain* to be the Head of their *Commonwealth*. This revenue is proportionably,

200000

200000 Crowns a year; all which, if not more, the King again expends, in maintaining his *Vice-Roys* in their several Provinces. 7. *Huesca*, (called of old *Hosca*) somewhat South of *Iacca*, an Universlity; a place long since dedicated to Learning. For hither *Sertorius* caused all the Noble-mens Sons of *Spain* to be brought, and provided them of School-Masters for the *Greek* and *Latin* Tongues, bearing their Parents in hand, that he did it not only to make them fit to undergo charge in the Commonwealth; but indeed, to have them as Hostages for their Fathers Faith and Loyalty towards him. 8. *Saragossa*, on the River *Iberus*; called, at first, *Salduba*, by reason of the Salt-pits there: but being afterwards re-edified by *Cæsar Augustus*, it had the name of *Cæsarea Augusta*, (whence that of *Saragossa* had its origination) by whom first made a Colony of the *Romans*, and afterwards a *Municipium* or *Free-Burrough*, suffered to live according to the Laws of the Country. Under the *Romans*, it was one of the seven *Juridical Resorts* of *Tarraconensis*: under the *Moors*, a peculiar Kingdom of it self: and now a Bishops-See, and an Universlity. Amongst the Kings of it, when it was a Kingdom, two are chiefly famous, *viz.* 1. *Marsilius*, who joyned with the confederate *Moors* and *Christians*, against *Charles* the *Great*, in the Battel of *Roncevaux*. 2. *Aigoland*, of whom there goeth a tale, in Arch-bishop *Turpine*. That being by the said *Charls* perswaded to become a *Christian*, he came unto the Emperor's Court very well accompanied, according to the time appointed. Where finding many *Lazars*, and poor people before the Gates, attending for their usual Alms from the Emperor's Table: he asked what and who they were; and was answered, that they were the poor servants of God. Upon which words he speedily returned again, protesting, That *he would never serve that God, who could keep his* Servants *no better*. Took from the *Moors*, by *Alfonso* King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, *An.* 1118, it was made the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Aragon*; removed hither from *Iacca*: and, of late times hath been the Seat of the *Vice-Roy* for the Kings of *Spain*. Which, together with being an Arch-bishops-See, and an Universlity, hath so enriched it, that it is one of the fairest Cities in all *Spain*, for handsomness of streets, and sumptuousness of Palaces, and publick Buildings; containing seventeen Parish-Churches, and fourteen Monasteries; besides divers Chappels erected in most parts of it to the Virgin *Mary*.

Who were the old Inhabitants of this Tract, hath been shewn heretofore; tossed from the *Carthaginians*, unto the *Romans*; from them, to the *Goths*; and finally, unto the *Moors*. Recovered from the *Moors*, about the first beginning of the Kingdoms of *Leon* and *Sobrarbe*. At which time, one *Aznar*, a man of great puissance and action, possessed himself of some Lands on the banks of the River *Aragon*, to be holden by him and his Successors, of the Kings of *Sobrarbe*, or *Navarre*, *An.* 775, the Title of Earl being given unto him, and them, for their better honour. The sixth of which, from *Aznar*, was *Fortunio Ximines*, whose Daughter *Urraca* being married to *Don Garcia Inigo*, King of *Navarre*, *Anno* 867, conveyed this Earldom to that Crown: of which it continued a Member, till *Sancho* the Great, King of *Navarre* and Earl of *Aragon*, erected it into a Kingdom, and gave it unto *Raymir* his natural Son, *Anno* 1034. The whole Succession I shall borrow from the *Spanish* Histories; first taking (as in other places) some short notes of the Princes which have been most observable in the course of the Story. Of which the principal were, 1. *Aznarius* the first Earl, his Estate then containing some few Towns on the River of *Aragon*: not much enlarged, when made a Kingdom, by *Sancho* King of *Navarre*, surnamed the *Great*, descended from *Fortunio* the second of *Navarre*, and *Urraca* the Sister and Heir of *Fortunius Ximines*, the last Earl of *Aragon*. 2. *Raymir* the first King base Son to *Sancho* the *Great*, advanced to this honour to the prejudice of *Garcia*, eldest Son of *Sancho*, for standing so generally in defence of *Donna Elvira*, the Wife of his Father, wrongfully and unnaturally accused of Adultery, by the said *Garcia* her own Son; against whom he undertook to maintain her Honour in a Single-Combat. 3. *Raymond*, Earl of *Barcelonia*, who by marriage with *Petronilla*, the Heir of *Aragon*, united *Catalonia* unto that Kingdom. 4. *Peter* the second, who on a superstitious zeal, first made his Kingdom tributary to the See of *Rome*, *Anno* 1214. But presently repenting of it, he sided against the Pope, with the *Albigenses*: slain, in their Cause, by *Simon de Montfort*, and the rest of his Associates, in that War. 5. *James* the first, who conquered the Kingdoms of *Valentia* and *Majorca*; and was the first that enlarged his Dominions upon the Seas: being shut up from making any further impression on the *Moors*, by the interjection of *Castile* betwixt him and them. 6. *Peter* the third, pretending a Title unto *Sicil*, in right of *Constantia* his Wife, the Daughter of *Manfred*, King thereof; and by the last Will of *Corradine*, rightful King both of that, and *Naples*; extorted that Island from the *French*, massacred by him at the fatal *Sicilian Vespers*. 7. *James* the second, by whom the Isle of *Sardinia* was added to the Crown of *Aragon*. 8. *Martin*, the last of the *Masculine* Race of the House of *Barcelone*: to whom succeeded, 9. *Ferdinand* of *Castile*, Son of *John* King of *Castile*, and *Leonora*, the Daughter of *Peter* the fourth of *Aragon*. 10. *Alfonso*, Son of *Ferdinand*, adopted by Queen *Joan* the second, got the Kingdom of *Naples*. Of *Ferdinand* the second, surnamed the *Catholick*, we shall speak more anon, in the close of all.

The Earls of *Aragon*.

A. Ch.		
	1	*Aznarius*, the first Earl, contemporary with *Garcia*, the second King of *Navarre*; under whom he held.
775	2	*Aznarius* II. Son of *Aznario* the first.
	3	*Galindo*, Son of *Aznario* the second.
	4	*Ximines Aznario*, brother to *Galindo*, slain in the Battel of *Ronceval*, against *Charles* the *Great*.
803	5	*Ximines Garcia*, Brother to *Galindo*.
	6	*Fortunio Ximines*, Son of *Ximines Garcia*, the last of the Male-Issue of *Aznarius*.
	7	*Fortunio* II. King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, in right from his Mother *Urraca*, the Sister and Heir of *Fortunio Ximines*, the last Earl of the House of *Aznarius*.
901	8	*Sancho*, surnamed *Abarca*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*.
920	9	*Garcia*, Son of *Sancho*, King of *Navarre*, &c.
969	10	*Sancho* II. of *Aragon*, and III. of *Navarre*.
993	11	*Garcias*, surnamed the *Trembler*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon*, Son to *Sancho* the third.
1000	12	*Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, and Earl of *Aragon* in his own right; and of *Castile* in the right of *Elvira* his Wife; Monarch of all *Spain*, then in the hands of the *Christians*, except the Kingdom of *Leon* only: erected the Earldom of *Aragon* into a Kingdom, and gave it, for the reason before specified, to his Son *Raymir*.

The

The Kings of *Aragon*.

A. Chr.		
1034	1	*Raymir.* 42.
1076	2	*Sancho*, Son of *Raymir.* 18.
1094	3	*Pedro.* 14.
1108	4	*Alfonſo*, Brother of *Pedro.* 26.
1134	5	*Raymir* II. the Brother of *Alphonſo.*
1137	6	*Petronilla*, Daughter of *Raymir* the ſecond. *Raymond* Earl of *Barcelone.*
1162	7	*Alfonſo* II. Son of *Raymond* and *Petronilla.* 34.
1196	8	*Petro* II. Son of *Alphonſo.*
1213	9	*James*, Son of *Pedro* the ſecond. 43.
1276	10	*Pedro* III. Son of *James.* 9.
1285	11	*Alfonſo* III. Son of *Petro* the third. 6.
1291	12	*James* II. Brother of *Alphonſo* the third. 36.
1328	13	*Alfonſo* IV. Son of *James* the ſecond. 8.
1336	14	*Pedro* IV. Son of *Alphonſo* the fourth. 51.
1387	15	*John*, Son of *Pedro* the fourth. 8.
1395	16	*Martin*, the Brother of *John.* 17.
1412	17	*Ferdinand* of *Caſtile*, the Nephew of *Pedro* the Fourth. 4.
1416	18	*Alphonſo* V. 42.
1458	19	*John* II. Son of *Ferdinand*, and Brother of *Alphonſo*: King of *Navarre* alſo, in right of *Blanch* his Wife. 20.
1478	20	*Ferdinand* II. of that name, of *Aragon*, Son of *John* the ſecond, King of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, by a ſecond *Wife*: and the fifth of that name, of *Caſtile* and *Leon*; which Kingdoms he obtained by the marriage of *Iſabel*, or *Elizabeth*, Siſter and Heir of *Henry* the Fourth; uniting thereby, the great Eſtates of *Caſtile* and *Aragon*, and all Appendixes of either. In which regard, he may well challenge the firſt place in the Catalogue of the Monarchs of *Spain*, to be preſented in due ſeaſon.

In the mean time, to draw to a concluſion of the Affairs and Eſtate of *Aragon*, we are to underſtand, that of all the Kingdoms which belong to the *Spaniards*, it is the moſt priviledged, and free from the abſolute Command of the Kings of *Spain:* having in it ſuch a temper or mixture of Government, as makes the Kings hereof to be well nigh *Titular*: of little more authority than a Duke of *Venice*. For at the firſt erecting of this Eſtate, the better to encourage the people to defend themſelves againſt the *Moors*, they had many *Priviledges* indulged them; and, amongſt others, the creating of a *Juſticiar*, or *Popular Magiſtrate*; which, like the *Ephori* or *Sparta*, had, in ſome caſes, ſuperiority over their Kings, reverſing their Judgments, cancelling their Grants, and ſometimes cenſuring their Proceedings. And though King *Philip* the ſecond, in the buſineſs of *Antonio de Perez*, had made a Conqueſt of that Kingdom, and annulled all their *Priviledges*, yet after, of his own meer goodneſs, he reſtored them (in part) again, as they continue at this day.

Chief Orders of *Knighthood* (beſides that of *Mercede*, ſpoken of before) in this Kingdom, are, 1 Of S. *Saviour*, inſtituted by *Alfonſo* the firſt, *Anno* 1118, to animate the Members of it againſt the *Moors*. Of the habit and cuſtoms of this Order, I have met with nothing.

2 Of *Monteſa*, inſtituted by *James* the firſt, King of *Aragon*, *Anno* 1270, or thereabouts, Endowed with all the Lands of the *Templers* (before diſſolved) lying in *Valentia*; together with the Town and Caſtle of *Monteſa*, made the Seat of their Order, whence it took the name. Subject, at firſt, unto the Maſter of the Order of *Calatrava*, out of which extracted; and under the ſame Rule of *Ciſteaux*. But after, by the leave of pope *Benedict* the 13th, they quitted themſelves of that ſubjection; and, in ſign thereof, changed the Habit of *Calatrava*, which before they uſed, to a *Red Croſs* upon their Breaſts; now the Badge of the Order.

The Arms of *Aragon*, ſince poſſeſſed by the Earls of *Barcelone*, are *Or*, four Pallets *Gules*: before which, they were, *Azure*, a Croſs *Argent*.

The Monarchy of SPAIN.

THus having ſpoke of *Spain*, and the Eſtate thereof, when broken and divided into many Kingdoms; let us next look upon it as united into one main body; effected, for the moſt part, by *Ferdinand* the laſt King of *Aragon* before-mentioned. Before which time, *Spain*, being parcelled into many Kingdoms, was little Famous, and leſs Feared; the Kings thereof, as the Author of the *Politick Diſpute*, &c. hath well obſerved, being only *Kings of Figs and Oranges*. Their whole puiſſance was then turned againſt one another, and ſmall atchievements had they out of that Continent, except thoſe of the Houſe of *Aragon*, upon *Sicily*, *Naples*, *Sardinia*, and the *Baleares*. *Thuanus*, a diligent Writer of the Hiſtory of his own times, (if in ſome things he favour not more of the *Party*, than the *Hiſtorian*) telleth us, that before this King's Reign, the name and glory of the *Spaniard*, was, like their Countrey, hemmed in by the Seas on ſome ſides, and the Hills on the other: *Potiuſque patuiſſe exteris invadentibus, quàm quicquam memorabile extra ſuos finis geſſiſſe.* 'Tis true, that *Sancho* the *Great*, King of *Navarre*, aſſumed unto himſelf the title of King of *Spain*, and that *Alfonſo* the fourth of *Caſtile*, and the ninth of *Leon*, cauſed himſelf to be crowned Emperor of *Spain*, in the Cathedral-Church of *Leon*: Titles ambitiouſly affected upon no good ground, and ſuch as ended with their Perſons. But this Prince, worthily named, The *Great*, ſeized on the Kingdom of *Navarre*, conquered *Granada* from the *Moors*, ſubdued the Kingdom of *Naples*, united *Aragon* to *Caſtile*, baniſhed 124000 Families of the *Jews*, began, by the conduct of *Columbus*, the diſcovery of the *Weſtern Indies*; and finally, by marrying his Daughter *Joan*, to *Philip*, Son of the Emperor *Maximilian*, Duke of *Burgundy*, and Lord of the greateſt part of the *Netherlands*, laid the Foundation of the preſent *Auſtrian* Greatneſs. Continued ſince by ſo many inter-marriages betwixt the *Spaniſh* and *Imperial* Branches of that potent Family, that *Philip* the ſecond might have called the Arch-Duke *Albertus*, Brother, Couſin, Nephew, and Son. A ſtrange Medley of Relations. Thus by the puiſſance of this Prince, the *Spaniards* became firſt conſiderable in the eye of the World, and grew to be a terror to the Neighbouring-Nations. *Nomen* Hiſpanicum *obſcurum antea & Vicinis pene incognitum*, (ſaith the ſame *Thuanus*) *tum primùm emerſit, tractuq; temporis in tantam magnitudinem excrevit, ut formidoloſum ex eo, & terribile toti terrarum Orbi eſſe cœperit.* And he ſaith true, with reference to the *French* and *Italian* Nations; to whom the *Spaniards* have adminiſtred no ſmall matter of fear and terror; though, unto others, they appear no ſuch dreadful *Bug-bears*. But ſure it is, and we may warrantably ſpeak it without any ſuch impreſſions of fear and terror, that this Kingdom, ſince that time, is

is wonderfully both enlarged and strengthned: strongly compacted in it self, with all the Ligaments both of Power and State, and infinitely extended over all parts of the World; his Dominions beholding (as it were) both the rising and the setting of the Sun; which, before the *Spaniard*, no monarch could ever say. A greater change, than any man can possibly imagine to have been effected in so short a time, as was between the first year of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, and the last year of *Charles* the fifth.

Concerning the title of the *most Catholick King*, reattributed to this *Ferdinand*, I find, that *Alfonso* the first of *Oviedo*, was so named for his *sanctity*: with whom it dyed; and was revived in *Alfonso* the Great, the twelfth King of *Leon* and *Oviedo*, by the Grant of Pope *John* the 8th. After, it lay dead till the days of this Prince, who re obtained this title from Pope *Alexander* the sixth: either because he compelled the *Moors* to be baptized, banished the *Jews*, and in part converted the *Americans* unto *Christianity*; or because, having united *Castile* to his Dominions, surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*, and subdued that of *Granada*; he was, in a manner, the *Catholick* or general King of all *Spain*. The last reason seemeth to sway most in the restauration of this attribute, in that when it was granted and confirmed on *Ferdinand*, by Pope *Alexander* the sixth, the King of *Portugal* exceedingly stomached at it: *Quando* Ferdinandus *imperio* universam Hispaniam, (saith *Mariana*) *non obtineret, ejus tum non exigua parte penes* Reges *alios*. It seems *Emanuel* could not think himself a King of *Portugal*, if the title of the *Catholick King* did belong to *Ferdinand*. Wherein he was of the same mind, as was *Gregory* the *Great*; who when *John* of *Constantinople* had assumed to himself the title of the *Oecumenical* or *Catholick* Bishop, advised all *Bishops* of the world to oppose that *arrogancy*; and that upon the self-same reason *Nam si ille est* Catholicus, *vos non estis Episcopi*: for, if *John* were the *Catholick* Bishop, they were none at all. But upon what consideration soever it was first re-granted, it hath been ever since assumed by his Posterity: to whose Crown as *hereditary* and in common use, as the most *Christian* King to *France*, the *Defender of the Faith* to *England*.

And yet there was some further reason, why the *Spaniard* might affect the title of *Catholick* King, his Empire being *Catholick* in regard of extent, (though not of *Orthodoxy* of Doctrines) as reaching not over all *Spain* only, but over a very great part of the World besides. For, in right of the Crown of *Castile*, he possesseth the Towns of *Melilla* and *Oran*, the Haven of *Masalquivir*, the Rock of *Velez*, and the *Canary*-Islands in *Africk*; the Continent and Islands of all *America*, except *Brasil*, and some Plantations in the North, and in the *Cannibal* Islands, of the *English*, *Hollanders*, and a few poor *French*. In the right of the Kingdom of *Aragon*, he enjoyeth the Realms of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and *Sardinia*, with many Islands interspersed in the *Mediterranean*; and in the right of the House of *Burgundy*, the Counties of *Burgundy*, and *Charolois*, the greatest part of *Belgium*, with a title unto all the rest: besides the great Dukedom of *Millain*, the Havens of *Telamon*, and *Plumbino*, and many other pieces of importance in *Italy*, held by investiture from the Empire. To which if those Estates be added which accrewed to *Philip* the second, by the Crown of *Portugal*, we have the Towns of *Ceuta*, *Tangier*, and *Maragon* in *Barbary*, the Fortress of *Aquin*, and S. *George*, in *Guinea*; the Isles of *Azores*, *Madera*, *Cape Verd*, S. *Thomas*, *Del Principe*, on this side of the *Cape*, and of *Mesambique* on the other: in *Asia*, all the Sea-coast almost from the Gulf of *Persia*, unto *China*, and many strong-holds in the *Moluccoes*, *Bantan*, *Zeilan*, and other Islands; and finally, in *America*, the large Country of *Brasil*, extending in length 1500 miles. An Empire of extent enough, to appropriate to these Monarchs the stile of *Catholick*.

The Monarchs of *Spain*.

A. Chr.		
1478	1	*Ferdinand*, King of *Aragon*, *Sicily*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Valentia*, Earl of *Catalogne*; surprized *Navarre*, and conquered the Realm of *Naples*.
		Isabel, Queen of *Castile*, *Leon*, *Gallicia*, *Toledo*, *Murcia*, Lady of *Biscay*, conquered *Granada*, and discovered *America*.
1504	2	*Joan*, Princess of *Castile*, *Granada*, *Leon*, &c. and of *Aragon*, *Navarre*, *Sicily*, &c.
		Philip, Arch Duke of *Austria*, L. of *Belgium*.
1516	3	*Charles* King of *Castile*, *Aragon*, *Naples*, &c. Arch-duke of *Austria*, Duke of *Millain*, *Burgundy*, *Brabant*, &c. Earl of *Catalogne*, *Flanders*, *Holland*, &c. Lord of *Biscay*, *Friesland*, *Utrecht*, &c. and Emperor of the *Germans*. He added the Realms of *Mexico* and *Peru*, the Dukedoms of *Gelderland* and *Millain*, the Earldom of *Zuitphen*, and the Signeuries of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssel*, and *Grayning*, unto his Estates. A Prince of that magnanimity and puissance, that had not *Francis* the first in time opposed him, he had even swallowed all *Europe*. He was also, for a time, of great strength and reputation, in *Tunis*, and other parts of *Africa*, disposing Kingdoms at his pleasure: but the *Turk* broke his power there; and being hunted also out of *Germany*, he resigned all his Kingdoms, and dyed private. 42.
1558	4	*Philip* II. of more ambition, but less prosperity than his Father; fortunate only in his attempt on the Kingdom of *Portugal*; but that sufficiently ballanced by his ill successes in the *Netherlands*, and against the *English*. For the *Hollanders*, and their Confederates, drove him out of eight of his *Belgick* Provinces: the *English* overthrew his *Invincible Armada*, intercepted his *Plate-Fleets*, and, by awing the Ocean, had almost impoverisht him: and though he held for a time an hard hand upon *France*, in hope to have gotten that Crown by the help of the *Leaguers*: yet, upon casting up his Accompts, he found that himself was the greater loser by that undertaking. So zealous in the cause of the *Romish* Church, that it was thought that his eldest Son *Charles* was put to death, with his consent, in the *Inquisition*-house, for seeming favourably enclined to the *Low-Country-Hereticks*, as the *Spaniards* called them. These four great Kings were all of the Order of the Garter; but neither of the two that followed.
1598	5	*Philip* III. Finding his Estate almost destroyed by his Father's long and chargeable Wars, first made Peace with *England*, and then concluded a Truce for 12 years with the States of the *Netherlands*: which done, he totally baniſhed all the *Moors* out of *Spain*, and was a great stickler in the Wars of *Germany*.
1621	6	*Philip* IV. Son of *Philip* the third, got into his power all the *Lower Palatinate*; but lost the whole Realm of *Portugal*, and the Province of *Catalonia*, with many of his best Towns in *Flanders*, *Artois*, and *Brabant*; and some Ports in *Italy*: not yet recovered to that Crown, from the power of the *French*.

This Empire, consisting of so many several Kingdoms united into one Body, may seem to be invincible. Yet had Qu. *Elizabeth* followed the counsel of her Men of War, she might have broken it in pieces. With 4000 men she might have taken away his *Indies* from him; without whose

whose Gold, the *Low-Country*-Army, (which is the very best) could not be paid, and by consequence must needs have been dissolved. Nay, Sir *Walter Rawleigh* in the Epilogue of his most excellent *History of the World*, plainly affirmeth, that with the charge of 200000 *l.* continued but for two years, or three at the most, the *Spaniards* might not only have been perswaded to live at peace; but all their swelling and overflowing-streams, might be brought back to their natural Chanels, and old Banks. Their own Proverb saith, *The Lion is not so fierce as he is painted*; yet the *Americans* tremble at his name: it's true; and it is well observed by that great Politician *Machiavel*, that *things which seem to be, and are not, are more feared far off, than near at hand.* Nor is this judgment built upon weak conjectures, but such as shew the Power of *Spain* not to be so formidable, as it's commonly supposed: which I find marshalled to my hand in this manner following. 1 The *disjointedness* of his Realms and other Estates, severed by infinite intlances both of Sea and Land, which makes one part unable to relieve or defend the other. 2 The *slowness of his Preparations* in *offensive* or *defensive* Wars; his Forces, of necessity, being long a gathering in places so remote from the *Royal Seat*, and being gathered, no less subject to the dangers both of Sea and Land, before united into a body, and made fit for action. 3 The danger and uncertainty which the most part of his *Forinsique Revenues* are subject to; many times intercepted by *Pirates* and open Enemies; sometimes so long delayed by cross Winds and Seas, that they come too late to serve the turn. 4 The *different tempers* and *affections* of a great part of his Subjects, not easily concurring in the same ends, or travelling the same way unto them. 5 The *discontendedness* of the *Aragonians*, *Portuguezes*, and *Italian* Provinces, not well affected, for their private and particular reasons, unto the *Castilians*; apt to be wrought on by the *Ministers* of neighbouring-Princes, whom *jealousies of State* keep watchful upon all advantages, for the depressing of his power. 6 And last of all, the *want of people* of his own natural Subjects, whom he may best rely on for the encrease and grandure of his Estates, exhausted and diminished by those ways and means which have been touched upon; without any politick or provident course, to remedy that defect for the time to come. And this I look on as the greatest and most sensible Error in the *Spanish* Government: therein directly contrary to the ancient *Romans*; who finding that nothing was more necessary for great and important enterprizes, than Multitudes of Men, employed all their studies to encrease their numbers, by Marriages, Colonies, and such helps; making their conquered Enemies free *Denizens* of their Commonwealth: by which means the number of the *Roman* Citizens became so great (all being equally interested in the preservation of it) that *Rome* could not be ruined (in *Annibal*'s judgment) by any forces but her own. But, on the other side, the *Spaniards*, employ none in their Plantations, but their own *native Subjects*; and so many of them also in all their enterprizes both by Sea and Land, that so many thousands going forth every year, in the flower of their age, not one of ten returning home; and those few which return, either lame or old: the Country is not only deprived of the Men themselves, but also of the Children which might be born. An evidence whereof may be, that *John* the first of *Portugal*, who reigned before the several Voyages and Plantations of that people, was able to raise 40000 Men for the War of *Africk*: whereas *Emanuel*, who lived after those Undertakings, had much ado to raise 20000 Foot, and 3000 Horse, on the same occasion: and *Sebastian*, after that, found as great a difficulty to raise an Army of 12000.

As for the Forces which the King of *Spain* is able to make out of all his Estates, they may be best seen by his preparations for the Conquest of *England*, *France*, and *Flanders*. In his design for *England*, *An.* 1588, he had a Fleet consisting of 150 sail of Ships, whereof 66 were great *Galleons*, 4 *Galeasses* of *Naples*, 4 Gallies, the rest smaller Vessels: fraughted with 20000 Souldiers for land-service, 9000 Saylers, 800 Gunners, 4000 Pioneers, 2650 pieces of Ordinance: not reckoning into this accompt the Commanders, and Voluntaries; of which last, there were very great numbers who went upon that service for *Spoil*, *Merit*, or *Honour*. In the design of *Charles* the Fifth, for the Conquest of *Provence*, he had no less than 50000 in the field, and in that of *Philip* the second, for the reducing of *Flanders*, the Duke of *Alva* had an Army, at his first setting forward out of *Italy*, consisting of 8800 *Spanish* Foot; and 1200 Horse; all of them old experienced Souldiers, drawn out of *Naples*, *Sicil*, and the Dutchy of *Millain*; 3600 *German* Foot, 300 Lances, and 100 Haquebusiers on Horse back, of the County of *Burgundy*; all old Souldiers also: besides many Voluntiers of great rank and quality, very well attended, and his old standing Army in the *Belgick* Provinces: a Strength sufficient to have conquered a far greater Country.

Of standing-Forces in this Country, he maintaineth in these Realms of *Spain*, but three thousand Horse; and in his Forts and Garrisons, no more than 8000 Foot: his Garrisons being very few, and those upon the Frontiers only, and in Maritime Towns: his Gallies served with slaves out of *Turkie* and *Barbary*. And yet he is able, on occasion, to raise very great Forces; partly, because the ordinary Subjects are so well affected to their Prince, whom they never mention without reverence: and partly in regard there is so great a number of *Feudataries* and Noble-men, who are by *Tenure*, to serve personally at their own charges, for defence of the Realm. And certainly, it must be a considerable Force which the Noblemen of *Spain* are able to raise, considering the greatness of their Revenue, and the number of Vassals which live under them: it being supposed, that the Dukes of *Spain* (of which there were 23 when my Author lived) were able, one with another, to dispend yearly from 50000 Ducats, to 100000; some going very much above that proportion; and that of 36 Marquesses, and 50 Earls, the poorest had 10000 Ducats of yearly Rent; and so ascending unto 50 and 60000. The Arch-bishops, Bishops, and others of the greater *Clergy*, being all endowed with fairer *Temporal* Estates, than in most places in *Europe*, are also bound to serve (though not personally) on the like occasions. And to these services the Noblemen are for two reasons more forwards than the other *Feudataries*: 1 Because their Honours descend not *de jure* from the Father to the Son, unless confirmed to the Son by the Kings acknowledgment and compellation, which makes them more observant of him, than in *France* or *England*, where it is challenged as a Birth-right, 2 Because out of the gross body of these Noblemen, the King doth use to honour some with the title of *Grandees*, priviledged to stand covered before the King, and to treat with him as their Brother: which being the highest Honour which that State can yield, keeps those great persons in a readiness to obey his pleasure, in hope to come to an Honour of so high esteem.

For the *Revenues* of this King, which ordinarily arise out of his Estates (taking *Portugal* into the accompt) they are computed at Eleven millions of Crowns yearly; that is to say, four from his *Dominions* in *Italy*, two from *Portugal* and the *Appertinents* thereof, three from the *West-Indies*, and the other two remaining, from his Kingdom

Kingdoms in *Spain*. Besides this, he receiveth yearly the Revenues of the Masterships of all the great Orders in his Kingdom, incorporated to the Crown by *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, not without good Policy and reason of State: The Masters (or *Commendadors*, as they call them) of those several Orders drawing after them such Troops of the Nobility, Gentry, and other dependants; that their power began to be suspected by the Kings themselves. By which addition there accrueth to the Crown (besides the opportunity of preferring Servants of the greatest merit) above 150000 *l.* of yearly Rents. As for his Casualties and extraordinary ways of raising money, they are very great: reckoned by the Author of the *General History of Spain* to amount (according to divers Opinions) to 14, 18, and 23 millions of Crowns. For making up of which sum, he puts in the *First Fruits*, and some part of the *Tenths* of Rectories; and other Church Preferments, amounting to three millions yearly. And the Author of the *Politique Dispute*, &c. affirmeth the Pardons sent to the *Indies*, given him by the Pope, to be worth half a million of pounds yearly. Add hereunto the sale and disposal of all Offices, which make up a good round sum; and the free Gifts & Contributions of his Subjects, which amount unto a good *Revenue*. For the Kingdom of *Naples* presents him every third year with a million and 20000 Crowns; and *Castile* only at one time granted a Contribution of four millions, to be paid in four years: his Subjects generally being so well affected unto the Crown, that he can demand nothing in reason of them which they are not ready to grant; the King of *Spain* being called in that regard by the Emperour *Maximilian*, the *King of Men*. And yet this great King is not counted to be rich in Treasure, his expences being very great. First, in keeping Forts and Garrisons in many parts of his Estates against the Revolt of the Natives. Secondly, maintaining so many Frontier places against Foreign Invasions: Thirdly, in the continual pay of an *Armada* for conducting his *Plate-Fleets* from *America*. And last of all, the many and unprofitable Wars of King *Philip* the Second, so plunged the Crown in the Gulfs of Bankers and Money-Changers, that much of the *Revenues* of it stand engaged for payment to this very day.

There are in *Spain*
Arch-Bishops 11. Bishops 52.
Universities 18.
i. e.

1 *Sevill*,	10 *Ebora*.
2 *Granada*,	11 *Lisbon*.
3 *S. Jago*,	12 *Conimbre*.
4 *Toledo*,	13 *Valentia*.
5 *Valadolit*,	14 *Lerida*.
6 *Majorca*,	15 *Huesca*.
7 *Salamanca*,	16 *Saragossa*.
8 *Alcala de Henares*,	17 *Tudela*,
9 *Siguenca*,	18 *Ossuna*.

And so much for *SPAIN*.

Of the OCEAN and ISLES OF BRITAIN.

BEfore we can arrive in *Britain*, the last Western *Dioceſe*, we must cross the OCEAN, that *ingens*, and *infinitum pelagus*, as *Mela* calls it; in comparison of which, the Seas before-mentioned are but as *Ponds* or *Gullets*: a Sea in former times known more by fame than tryal, and rather wondred at on the shore side, than any more remote place of it. The *Romans* ventured not on it with their Vessels, unless in the passage from *France* to *Britain*: And much famed is *Alexander* for his hazardous Voyage on this unruly Sea, he having sailed in all but 400 Furlongs from the shore. The Name and Pedegree take here both from the *Poets* and *Etymologists*. The *Poets* make *Oceanus* to be the Son of *Cœlum* and *Vesta*, or of Heaven and Earth. They termed him the Father of all things, as, *Oceanumq; Patrem rerum*, in *Virgil*, because moisture was necessarily required to the constitution of all bodies: and usually painted him with a Bulls head on his shoulders, (whence *Euripides* called him Ὠκεανὸς Ταυρόκερως, *Oceanus Tauriceps*) from the *bellowing* and fury of the Winds; which from it come to the shore, and to which it is subject. As for the *Children* attributed unto him, they are doubtless nothing but the *clouds* and *vapours* hence arising. The name of Ὠκεανὸς, *Oceanus*, some derive from ὠκὺς, *celer*, because of its *swiftness*; some from χέω, *fundo*, *divido*, because it *cleaveth* and interlaceth the Earth: And others make it ὠκεανὸς, *quasi* ὠκεανὸς παρὰ τὸ ὦκυ ῥέειν, *à celeriter fluendo*, which agreeth in meaning with the first. Particular names it hath divers, according to the name of the shore, by which it passeth, as *Cantabricus*, *Gallicus*, *Britannicus*, &c. The chief Isles of it appertaining to *Europe*, besides those called the *Azores* or *Isles of Tercera*, which we have spoken of when we were in *Portugal*; those of the *Aquitain* Ocean, described in our History of *France*; those of the *Netherlands*, and the *Northern* Seas, which are to be described hereafter in their proper places, are the *British* Illands: by many of the most ancient and approved Writers called simply *BRITAIN*, because united all in that common notion; though afterwards distinguished into the particular appellations of *Great Britain*, *Ireland*, and the rest. Of which, as lying in my way betwixt *Spain* and *Germany*; or rather as the next *Dioceſe* of the Empire to *France* and *Spain*, under the *Prætorian Præfectus* of *Gaul*, I am next to speak.

Of BRITAIN.

BRITAIN, according to the largeſt latitude of that name and notion, comprehendeth all thoſe Iſlands both great and leſs, which lie in compaſs about *Albion*, or *Britain* properly ſo called: by *Ptolomy* called *Britanniæ*, in the plural number. For ſpeaking of *France* he thus ſubjoineth, *Ex adverſo hujus* Britannia *Inſula*, Albion *ipſi nomen fuit, cum* Britanniæ *omnes vocarentur*, i. e. Oppoſite hereunto lieth the Iſland of *Britain*, which formerly by a more proper name was called *Albion*, the name of *Britain* comprehending all the Iſles adjoining. And in this latitude and extent we now take the word; the whole dominion of theſe Iſlands, diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral names, being united in the perſon and under the command of the King of *Great Britain*: that name including all the reſt, as appendants of it; with reference to this called the *Iſles of Britain*, or the *Britiſh Iſlands*. Thus *Ariſtotle* in his Book *De Mundo* (if the Book be his) *Quo in mari duæ Inſulæ* Britannicæ *ſitæ ſunt, quarum maximæ* Albion *&* Ierna; i. e. In which Sea there are ſituate two *Britiſh* Iſlands of great note and compaſs, *Albion* (or *Britain* properly ſo called) and *Ireland*. *Ptolomy* goeth to work more punctually, and he ſtates it thus; *Complectitur prima hæc* Europæ *tabula duas* Britannicas *inſulas, quas Dionyſius* Bretanides *vocat*, Hiberniam *nempe &* Albionem, *cum minoribus aliquot adjacentibus inſulis, ut ſunt* Orcades, Ebudæ, Thyle, Mona, *&* *reliquæ ſuis nominibus expreſſæ*: that is to ſay, This firſt Table of *Europe*, comprehendeth the two Iſlands of *Britain*, which *Dionyſius* calls the *Britannides*, namely *Ireland* and *Albion*, with ſome leſſer Iſlands joining to it, as the *Orcades*, the *Hebrides*, *Thule*, *Angleſey*, (or *Man*) and others called by diſtinct names. By which we ſee, firſt, that the general name of *Britain* or the *Britiſh* Iſlands comprehendeth all thoſe which are ſituate in the *Britiſh* Ocean: and ſecondly, that the greateſt and moſt famous of them, more ſpecially called *Britain* by the following Writers, was anciently called *Albion* by its proper name. And it was called *Albion*, as my Authors tell me, either from *Albion* the Brother of *Bergion*, the Son of *Neptune*, mentioned by *Aeſchylus*, *Dionyſius*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Solinus*, *Pliny*, and others; it being not improper, that the greateſt Iſland of the *Ocean*, ſhould be denominated from a Son of the greateſt Sea-god: or from the old word Ἀλφὸν, ſignifying *White* amongſt the *Greeks*, (from whence the *Latines* had their *Album*,) by reaſon of the white chalky Cliffs, ſeen by the Mariners afar off as they ſailed thoſe Seas.

But to return again to *Britain* in the general notion, and to the ſeveral Iſlands which that name includeth, we may diſtinguiſh them into the *Greater* and the *Leſſer*; the *Greater* ſubdivided into 1. *Great Britain*, or *Britain* ſpecially ſo called, and 2. *Ireland*; the *Leſſer*, 1. the *Orcades*, 2. the *Hebrides*, 3. *Man*, 4. *Angleſey*, 5. the Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 6. the *Sorlinges*, or Iſles of *Scilly*, 7. *Wight*, 8. *Thanet*, 9. *Sunderland*, and 10. *Holy Iſland*.

GREAT BRITAIN.

TO ſpeak much of *GREAT BRITAIN*, or *BRITAIN* ſpecially and properly ſo called, I hold ſomewhat ſuperfluous, it being our home, and we therefore no ſtrangers to it. Yet as *Mela* once ſaid of *Italy*, *De* Italia, *magis quia ordo exiget, quam quia monſtrari debeat, pauca dicemus; nota ſunt omnia*; ſo ſay I of *Britain*. It is ſo obvious to the eye of every Reader, that he needs not the ſpectacles of Letters. Yet ſomething muſt be ſaid, though for methods ſake, rather than neceſſity. Firſt then, we will begin with laying out the bounds thereof (as in other places;) which are, on the Eaſt, the *German* Ocean, dividing it from *Belgium*, *Germany*, and *Danemark*; on the Weſt, S. *Georges* Chanel, which divides it from *Ireland*; and to the North of that, with the main *Vergivian* or Weſtern Ocean, of which the Ancients knew no ſhore; on the North, with the *Hyperborian* or *Deucaledonian* Ocean, as *Ptolomy* calls it, extending out to *Iſeland*, *Freezeland*, and the ends of the then known World; and on the South, the *Engliſh* Chanel, which divides it from *France*.

The length hereof from North to South, is reckoned at 620 *Italian* miles; the greateſt breadth from Eaſt to Weſt, meaſured in a right line, no more than 250 of the ſame miles, but by the crooks and bendings of the Sea-Coaſt, comes to 320 miles: the whole circumference accompted 1836 miles. The greateſt Iſland in the World, except *Java*, *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Madagaſcar*; and therefore by *Solinus* & ſome other Ancients (to whom thoſe Iſlands were not known) called the *other world*: by others of late times, the *Lady and Miſtreſs of the Seas*. Situate under the 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, and 12th *Climes*: ſo that the longeſt day at the *Lizard* point in *Cornwall*, (being the moſt Southerly part hereof) containeth 16 hours and a quarter; at *Barwick*, which is the Border of *England* and *Scotland*, 17 hours 3 quarters, and one hour more at *Straithby head*, in the North of *Scotland*; where ſome obſerve that there is ſcarce any night at all in the Summer *Solſtice*, but a darker Twilight. To which alludes the Poet, ſaying, *Et minima contentos nocte Britannos*: and the *Panegyriſt* in the time of *Conſtantine*, amongſt other commendations which he gives to *Britain*, ſaith, that therein is neither extreme cold in Winter, nor any ſcorching heats in Summer, and that which is moſt comfortable, *long days, and very lightſome nights*. Nor doth the *Panegyriſt* tell us only of the temperateneſs of the Air or the length of the days; but of the fruitfulneſs of the ſoil: "affirming *Britain* to be bleſſed with all the commodities "of Heaven and Earth; ſuch an abundant plenty of "Corn, as might ſuffice both for Bread and Wine; the "Woods thereof without wild Beaſts, the Fields without "noiſom Serpents, infinite number of milch Beaſts, and "Sheep weighed down with their own Fleeces. Whereto add that of *Alfred* of *Beverly*, a Poet of the middle times, ſaying thus of *Britain*.

Inſula prædives, quæ toto vix eget orbe;
Et cujus totus indiget orbis ope.
Inſula prædives, cujus miretur & optet
Delicias SOLOMON, Octavianus *opes.*

A wealthy Iſland, which no help deſires,
Yet all the world ſupply from her requires;

Able

Able to glut King *SOLOMON* with pleasures,
And surfeit great *Augustus* with her treasures.

Proceed we next to the name of *Britain*, of which I find many *Etymologies*, some forced, some fabulous and foolish, and but few of weight. That which hath passed for currant in former times, (when almost all Nations did pretend to be of *Trojan* race) was that it took this name from *Brutus*, affirmed to be the Son of *Silvius*, who was the Grandchild of *Æneas*, and the third King of the *Latines* of the *Trojan* blood. Which *Brutus* having unfortunately killed his Father, and thereupon abandoning *Italy* with his Friends and Followers; after a long voyage and many wandrings, is said to have fallen upon this Island, to have conquered here a race of Giants; and having given unto it the name of *Britain*, to leave the Soveraignty thereof unto his posterity, who quietly enjoyed the same, till subdued by the *Romans*. This is the sum of the Tradition concerning *Brute*: Which though received in the darker times of ignorance, and too much credulity; in these more learned days hath been laid aside, as false and fabulous. And it is proved that there was no such man as *Brutus*, 1. from the newness of his Birth, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, who lived in the reign of King *Henry* the second, being the first Author which makes mention of him: for which immediately questioned by *Newbrigensis*, another Writer of that *Age*. 2. By the silence of all the *Roman* Historians, in whom it had been an unpardonable negligence to have omitted an Accident so remarkable, as the killing of a Father by his own Son (especially when they wanted matter to fill up the times) and the erecting of a new *Trojan* Empire in so great an Iland. 3. By the Arguments which *Cæsar* useth to prove the *Britains* to be derived from the *Galls*; as Speech, Laws, Customs, Dispositions, Making, and the like. 4. And lest it might be said, that though the *Britains* in *Cæsars* time were of *Gallick* race, yet there had been a more ancient people, who had their Original from the *Trojans*, *Tacitus* putteth off that dispute with an *Ignoramus*: *Qui mortales initio coluerint, parum compertum est*, saith that knowing Writer. And 5. By the Testimony of all *Roman* Histories, who tell us that *Cæsar* found the *Britains* under many Kings, & never under the command of one sole Prince, but in times of danger. *Summa Belli administrandi communi consensu commissa est* Cassivellauno, as it is in *Cæsar*: *Dum singuli pugnabant, universi vincebantur*, as we read in *Tacitus*. To omit therefore that of *Brutus*, and other *Etymons* as unlikely, but of less authority: the name of *Britain* is most probably derived from *Brit*, which in the Ancient *British* signifieth *Painted*; and the word *Tain*, signifieth a Nation: agreeable unto the custom of the ancient *Britains*, who used to discolour and paint their bodies, that they might seem more terrible in the eyes of their enemies. *Britain* is then a Nation of painted men; such as the *Romans* called *Picts* in the times ensuing. Which I prefer before the *Etymologie* of *Bochartus*, a right Learned man, but one that wresteth all originations to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* language: by whom this Island is called *Britain* or *Britanica*, from *Barat-anac*, signifying in that Language a Land of *Tynne*, wherewith the Western parts of it do indeed abound. Other particulars concerning the Isle of *Britain*, shall be observed in the description of those parts into which it now doth stand divided; that is to say, 1. *England*, 2. *Wales*, and 3. *Scotland*.

ENGLAND.

ENGLAND is bounded on the East with the *German*; on the West with the *Irish*; on the South with the *British* Oceans; and on the North, with the Rivers of *Tweed* and *Solway*; by which parted from *Scotland*: Environed with turbulent Seas, guarded by inaccessible Rocks: and where those want, preserved against all foreign Invasions by strong Forts and a puissant Navy.

In former time the Northern limits did extend as far as *Edenburgh Fryth* on the East, and the *Fryth* of *Dunbriton* on the West, (for so far not only the *Roman* Empire, but the Kingdom of *Northumberland* did once extend:) the intervenient space being shut up with a Wall of Turfs by *Lollius Urbicus*, in the time of *Antonius Pius*. But afterwards, the *Romans* being beaten back by the Barbarous people, the Province was contracted within narrow bounds; and fortified with a Wall by the Emperour *Severus*, extending from *Carlisle* to the River *Tine*, the track whereof may easily be discerned to this very day. A Wall so made, that at every miles end there is said to have been a Castle, between every Castle many Watch-Towers; and betwixt every Watch-Tower a Pipe of Brass, conveying the least noise unto one another without interruption: so that news of any approaching enemy was quickly over all the Borders, and resistance accordingly provided. In following times the strong Towns of *Barwick*, and *Carlile*, have been the chief Bars, by which we kept the back door shut: and as for other Forts, we had scarce any on the Frontiers, or Sea-Coasts of the Kingdom; though in the midland parts too many. Which being in the hands of potent and factious Subjects, occasioned many to rebel; and did create great trouble to the *Norman* Kings, till in the later end of the Reign of King *Stephen*, 1100 of them were levelled to the very ground, and those few which remained dismantled, and made unserviceable. The Maritime parts were thought sufficiently assured by those Rocks and Cliffs, which compass the Island in most parts: and hardly any Castle all along the shore, except that of *Dover*; which was therefore counted by the *French*, as the *Key* of *England*. But in the year 1538. King *Henry* the Eighth, considering how he had offended the Emperour *Charles* the Fifth, by his Divorce from Queen *Katherine*; and incurred the displeasure of the Pope, by his falling off from that See; as also that the *French* King had not only married his Son to a Neece of the Pope, but a daughter of the King of *Scots*, thought fit to provide for his own safety, by building in all places where the shore was most plain and open, Castles, Platforms, and Block-Houses; many of which in the long time of Peace ensuing were much neglected and in part ruined.

His Daughter Queen *Elizabeth* of happy memory, provided yet better for the Kingdom. For she not only fortified *Portsmouth*, and placed in it a strong Garrison; but walled the Kingdom round with a most stately, royal, and invincible Navy: with which she always commanded the Seas, and vanquished the mightiest Monarch of *Europe*: whereas her Predecessors in their Sea service, for the most part, hired their Men of War, from the *Hansmen*, and *Genoese*. Yet did neither of these erect any Castles in

the inward part of the Realm: herein imitating Nature, who fortifieth the head and the feet only, not the middle of Beasts; or some Captain of a Fort, who plants all his Ordnance on the Walls, Bulwarks, and Out-works; leaving the rest by these sufficiently guarded.

The whole Island was first called *Albion*, as before is said, either from the Giant *Albion*, or *ab albis rupibus*, the white Rocks towards *France*. Afterwards it was called *Britain*, which name being first found in *Athenæus*, amongst the *Græcians*; and in *Lucretius* and *Cæsar*, amongst the *Latines*; followed herein by *Strabo*, *Pliny*, and all other ancient Writers, except *Ptolomy* only, by whom called *Albion* as at first; continued till the time of *Egbert* the first *Saxon Monarch*, who called the Southern parts of the Island by the name of *England*, from the *Angles*, who with the *Jutes* and *Saxons* conquered it.

It is in length 320 miles, enjoying a soil equally participating of ground fit for tillage and pasture: yet to pasture more than to tillage are our people addicted, as a course of life not requiring so many helpers, which must be all fed and paid; and yet yielding more certain profits. Hence in former times Husbandry began to be neglected, Villages depopulated, and Hinds for want of entertainment to turn way-beaters: whereof Sir *Thomas Moor* in his *Utopia* complaineth; saying, that our Flocks of Sheep had devoured not only men, but whole houses and Towns. *Oves* (saith he) *quæ tam mites esse, tamq; exiguo solent ali; nunc tam edaces, & indomitæ esse cœperant, ut homines devorent ipsos, agros, domos, oppida vastent, ac depopulentur.* To prevent this mischief; there was a Statute made in the Fourth year of *Henry* the Seventh, against the converting of Arable Land into Pasture ground; by which course Husbandry was again revived, and the soil made so abounding in Corn, that a dear year is seldom heard of. Our Vines are nipped with the cold, and seldom come to maturity, and are more used for the pleasantness of the shade, than for the hopes of Wine. Most of her other plenties and Ornaments, are expressed in this old Verse following.

Anglia, 1. *Mons*, 2. *Pons*, 3. *Fons*,
4. *Ecclesia*, 5. *Fœmina*, 6. *Lana*.

That is to say,

For 1. Mountains, 2. Bridges, 3. Rivers, 4. Churches fair,
5. Women, and 6. Wooll, *England* is past compare.

1. For the Mountains lifting up here and there their lofty heads, and giving a gallant prospect to the lower Grounds; the principal are those of *Mendip* in *Somerset*, *Malvern* Hills in *Worcestershire*, the *Chiltern* of *Buckinghamshire*, *Cotswold* in *Gloucestershire*, the *Peak* of *Derbyshire*, *York Wolds*, &c. All of them either bowelled with Mines, or clothed with Sheep, or adorned with Woods. The exact description of which, would require more time than I can spend upon that subject. Proceed we therefore to

2. The *Bridges*, which are in number 875. The chief of which are, the Bridge of *Rochester* over *Medway*, the Bridge of *Bristol* over *Avon*, and the Bridge of *London* over *Thames*. This last standing upon 19 Arches of wonderful strength and largeness, supporteth continual ranges of Buildings, seeming rather a Street than a Bridge; and is not to be parallel'd with any Bridge of *Europe*; though of late by some defacement made by fire, *Anno* 1632. the Buildings are not so contiguous, as they were before.

3. The *Rivers* of this Country are in number 325. The chief is *Thamisis*, compounded of the two Rivers, *Thame* and *Isis*; whereof the former rising somewhat beyond *Thame* in *Buckinghamshire*, and the later beyond *Cyrencester* in *Gloucestershire*, meet together about *Dorcester* in *Oxfordshire*: the issue of which happy conjunction is the *Thamisis* or *Thames*. Hence it flyeth betwixt *Berks*, *Buckinghamshire*, *Middlesex*, *Surrey*, *Kent*, and *Essex*; and so weddeth himself to the Kentish *Medway*, in the very jaws of the Ocean. This glorious River feeleth the violence of the Sea more than any River in *Europe*, ebbing and flowing twice a day, more than 60 miles; about whose Banks are so many fair Towns, and Princely Palaces, that a *German* Poet thus truly spoke,

Tot campos, sylvas, tot regia tecta, tot hortos,
Artifici exultos dextra, tot vidimus arces;
Ut nunc Ausonio Thamisis cum Tibride certet.

We saw so many Woods and Princely Bowers,
Sweet Fields, brave Palaces and stately Towers:
So many Gardens, dress'd with curious care,
That *Thames* with Royal *Tiber* may compare.

The second River of note, is *Sabrina* or *Severn*. It hath its beginning in *Plinlimmon* Hill in *Montgomeryshire*, and his end about seven miles from *Bristol*: washing in the mean space, the Walls of *Shrewsbury*, *Worcester*, and *Gloucester*. 3. *Trent*, so called, for that 30 kind of Fishes are found in it, or that it receiveth 30 lesser Rivers; who having his Fountain in *Staffordshire*, and gliding through the Countries of *Nottingham*, *Lincolne*, *Leicester*, and *York*, augmenteth the turbulent current of *Humber*, the most violent stream of all the Isle. Yet *Humber* is not, to say truth, a distinct River, having a spring-head of his own; but rather the mouth or *Æstuarium* of divers Rivers here confluent and meeting together, namely, *Youre*, *Darewent*, and especially *Ouse* and *Trent*. And as the *Danow*, having received into its Chanel the Rivers *Dravus*, *Savus*, *Tibiscus*, and divers others, changeth his name into *Ister*: So also the *Trent*, receiving and meeting the waters above named, changeth his name into this of *Humber*; *Abus*, the old Geographers call it. 4. *Medway*, a *Kentish* River, famous for harbouring the Royal Navy. 5. *Tweede*, the North-East bound of *England*, on whose Northern bank is seated the strong & impregnable Town of *Barwick*. 6. *Tine*, famous for *New-Castle*, and her inexhaustible Coal-pits. These and the rest of Principal note are thus comprehended in one of Mr. *Draytons* Sonnets:

Our Flood Queen *Thames* for Ships and Swans is crown'd,
And stately *Severn* for her shore is prais'd,
The Chrystal *Trent* for Fords and Fish renown'd,
The *Avons* fame to *Albions* Cliffs is rais'd.
Cor legion Chester vaunts her holy *Dee*,
York many Wonders of her *Ouse* can tell,
The *Peak* her *Dove*, whose Banks so fertile be,
And *Kent* will say her *Medway* doth excel.
Cotswoll commends her *Isis* to the *Thame*,
Our Northern Borders boast of *Tweeds* fair flood;
Our Western parts extol their *Willies* Fame,
And the old *Lea* brags of the *Danish* blood.

4. The *Churches*, before the general suppression of Abbies, and spoiling the Church Ornaments, were most exquisite; the chief remaining, are 1. the Church of St. *Paul* founded by *Ethelbert* King of *Kent*, in the place where once was a Temple consecrated to *Diana*: A Fabrick

brick of the largeſt dimenſions of that kind, of any in the Chriſtian World. For whereas the ſo much celebrated Temple of S. *Sophia* in *Conſtantinople* hath but 260 foot in length, and 75 in breadth: this of S. *Paul* is 690 foot long, and 130 foot broad, the main body being 102 foot high, over which the Steeple of the Church was mounted 482 foot more. Which Steeple being made with Timber, and covered with Lead, was by the careleſneſs of the Sexton, in the fifth year of the Reign of Q. *Elizabeth*, conſumed with fire, which happening in a thundring and tempeſtuous day, was by him confidently affirmed to be done by Lightning, and was ſo generally believed till the hour of his death: but not many years ſince to diſabuſe the world, he confeſt the truth of it; on which diſcovery, the burning of St. *Paul*'s Steeple by Lightning, was left out of our Common Almanacks, where formerly it ſtood amongſt the ordinary *Epochæ*, or accounts of time. A Church of ſuch a gallant Proſpect, and ſo large dimenſions, that had not the late reparation of it been diſcontinued, it would have been the ſtatelieſt and moſt majeſtical Fabrick in the Chriſtian World. 2. The Collegiate Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, (wherein I have the honour to be a Prebendary) famous for the Inauguration and the Sepulture of the Kings of *England*, the Tombs whereof are the moſt ſumptuous, and the Chappel the moſt accurate piece of Building in *Europe*. 3. The Cathedral Church at *Lincoln*. 4. For a private Church, that of *Radcliffe* in *Briſtol*. 5 For a private Chappel, that of *Kings Colledge* in *Cambridge*. 6. For the Curious Workmanſhip of the Glaſs, that of *Chriſt Church* in *Canterbury*. 7. For the exquiſite beauty of the Fronts, thoſe of *Wells* and *Peterborough*. 8. For a pleaſant lightſom Church, the Abbey Church at *Bath*. 9. For an ancient and reverend Fabrick, the Minſter of *York*. And 10. to comprehend the reſt in one, our *Lady-Church* in *Salisbury*, of which take theſe Verſes:

Mira canam; ſoles quot continet annus, in una
Tam numeroſa, ferunt, æde feneſtra micat.
Marmoreaſq; tenet fuſas tot ab arte columnas,
Comprenſas horas quot vagus annus habet.
Totq; patent portæ, quot menſibus annus abundat:
Res mira, at vera res celebrata fide.

How many days in one whole year there be,
So many Windows in one Church we ſee.
So many marble Pillars there appear,
As there are hours throughout the fleeting year.
So many Gates as Moons one year do view;
Strange tale to tell, yet not ſo ſtrange as true.

5. The Women generally are more handſom than in other places, ſufficiently endowed with natural beauties, without the addition of adulterate Sophiſtications. In an abſolute Woman, ſay the *Italians*, are required the parts of a *Dutch Woman*, from the girdle downwards; of a *French-Woman*, from the girdle to the ſhoulders; over which muſt be placed an *Engliſh* face. As their beauties, ſo alſo are their Prerogatives the greateſt of any Nation; neither ſo ſervilely ſubmiſſive as the *French*, nor ſo jealouſly guarded as the *Italian*: but keeping ſo true a *decorum*, that as *England* is termed the Purgatory of Servants, and the Hell of *Horſes*; ſo it is acknowledged the *Paradiſe* of *Women*. And it is a common by-word among the *Italians*, that if *there were a Bridge built over the Narrow Seas, all the Women of* Europe *would run into* England. For here they have the upper hand in the ſtreets, the upper place at the Table, the thirds of their Husbands eſtates, and their equal ſhare in all Lands, yea even ſuch as are holden in *Knights-ſervice*: priviledges wherewith other Women are not acquainted. Of high eſteem in former times amongſt foreign Nations, for the modeſty and gravity of their converſation, but of late times ſo much addicted to the light garb of the *French*, that they have loſt much of their ancient honour and reputation amongſt the knowing and more ſober men of foreign Countries, who before admired them.

6. The Wooll of *England*, is of exceeding fineneſs, eſpecially that of *Cotſwold* in *Gloceſterſhire*; that of *Lemſter* in *Herefordſhire*; and of the Iſle of *Wight*. Of this Wooll are made excellent Broad-cloaths, diſperſed all over the World, eſpecially *High-Germany*, *Muſcovy*, *Turkie*, and *Perſia*, to the great benefit of the Realm: as well in return of ſo much money which is made of them, as in ſetting to work ſo many poor people, who from it receive ſuſtenance. Before the time of King *Edward* the third, *Engliſh* men had not the art, or neglected the uſe of making Cloth: till whoſe time our Wooll was tranſported unwrought. And as his Succeſſors have laid impoſitions on every Cloth ſold out of the Realm; ſo his Predeceſſors had, as their occaſions required, ſome certain Cuſtoms granted on every ſack of Wooll. In the beginning of this *Edwards* Wars with *France*, the Cities and Towns of *Flanders* being then even to admiration rich, combined with him, and aided him in his Wars againſt that King. And he for his part by the compoſition then made, was to give them 140000 *l.* ready money to aid them by Sea and Land, if need required, and to make *Bruges*, then one of the great Mart-Towns of *Chriſtendom*, the *Staple* for his Woolls. Here the Staple continued 15 years, at which time the *Flemmings* having broke off from the King; and he having by experience ſeen what the benefit of thoſe Staples were, removed them from *Bruges* into *England*. And for the eaſe as well of his Subjects in bringing their Wools unto the Ports, as of ſuch Foreign Merchants that came to buy; he placed his Staples at *Exceſter*, *Briſtol*, *Wincheſter*, *Weſtminſter*, *Chicheſter*, *Canterbury*, *Norwich*, *Lincoln*, *York*, and *Newcaſtle*, for *England*; at *Caermarden* for *Wales*; and at *Dublin*, *Waterford*, *Cork*, and *Tredagh*, for *Ireland*. He further enacted, that no *Engliſh*, *Iriſh*, or *Welch*-men ſhould tranſport this Stapled commodity, no not by Licenſe (if any ſuch ſhould be granted) on pain of Confiſcation, and Impriſonment during the Kings pleaſure. Laſtly, he allured over hither divers *Flemmings*, which taught our men the making of Clothes, who are now grown the beſt Cloth-workers in the World;) and to encourage them in that Art, it was by a Statute of the 27th of *Edward* the third, Enacted to be Felony, to carry any Woolls unwrought. When *England* had ſome ſhort time enjoyed the benefit of theſe *Staples*, the King removed them to *Calice*, which he had conquered, and deſired to make wealthy. From hence they were at ſeveral times and occaſions tranſlated, now to one, now to another Town in *Belgium:* and happy was that Town, in what Country ſoever, where the *Engliſh* kept a houſe for this Traffick; the confluence of all people thither to buy, infinitely enriching it. *Antwerp* in *Brabant* long enjoyed the *Engliſh* Merchants, till upon ſome diſcontents between King *Henry* the Seventh, and *Maximilian* Arch-Duke and Lord of *Belgium*, they removed: but at their return again, were received by the *Antwerpians*, with ſolemn Proceſſion, Princely Triumph, ſumptuous Feaſts, rare Banquetings, and other expreſſions of much Love, but more Joy. And giving of ſome *Cotſwold* Sheep by *Edward* the Fourth, to *Henry* of *Caſtile*, and *John* of *Aragon*, An. 1465. is counted one of the greateſt prejudices, that ever happened to this Kingdom.

The Wooll tranſported bringeth into the Kingdom no leſs than 1500000 *l.* and the Lead half the ſum, ſo that,

Lewis

Lewis Guicciardine reporteth, That before the Wars of the Low Countries, the *Flemmings* and the *Engliſh* bartered Wares yearly to the value of 12 Millions of Crowns.

The next commodity to the *Woull*, though not mentioned in the verſe foregoing, are the rich and inexhauſtible *Mines* of *Cole*, *Lead*, and *Tin*: to ſay nothing of the *Mines* of *Iron*, as bringing more damage to the publick by the ſpoil of Woods, than profit to particular perſons in the encreaſe of their eſtates. The Mines of *Cole* chiefly enrich *Newcaſtle* in *Northumberland*, and by that the great City of *London*, and many other good Towns beſides: which could not poſſibly ſubſiſt in this general decay of Woods, and neglect of planting, but by this Commodity. The Mines of *Lead* are moſt conſiderable in the *Peak* of *Derbyſhire*; thoſe of *Tin* in *Cornwall*, where they dig *Tin* not much inferiour to Silver in fineneſs: A Commodity which brought great wealth to *England* in former times, the art of making it not being elſewhere known in *Europe*; till one of the Tin-workers, flying out of *England* for a Murder, paſſed into *Germany*, *An.* 1240. and there diſcovered ſome Tin-Mines in *Miſnia*, not known before, and ſet on foot that Trade amongſt them, to the great prejudice (ſaith my Author) of the Earls of *Cornwall*, who had before the ſole *Monopoly* of that uſeful metal.

To theſe particulars being matters of profit and neceſſity, if I would add ſuch things as are for delight and pleaſure; I might ſubjoin the *Bells* and *Parks*; for which this Kingdom is as eminent among Foreign Nations, as for any of thoſe mentioned in the ſaid old Verſe. The *Bells* ſo many, tunable, and of ſuch excellent Melody to a Muſical ear (brought more to the command of the skilful ringer than in former times) that it is thought there are more good Rings of *Bells* in this part of the Iland than in half Chriſtendom beſides. *Parks* more in *England* than in all *Europe*. The firſt of which kind for the incloſing of Veniſon, being that of *Woodſtock*, made by King *Henry* the firſt: whoſe example being followed by his Succeſſors, and the Lords and great men of the Realm; the number ſo encreaſed in a little time, that at the laſt, beſide 55 *Foreſts*, and 300 *Chaſes*, there were reckoned 745 *Parks* in *England*; all well repleniſhed either with Red or Fallow Deer.

And that the Deer might graze with pleaſure, and the Sheep with ſafety, great care was taken by our Progenitors for the deſtruction of *Wolves*. I know it hath been a tradition of old Writers, That *England* never had any *Wolves* at all, and that they would not live here brought from other places; but it is not ſo: here being ſtore of them, till *Edgar* King of *England* commuted the 20 l. of Gold, 300 l. of Silver, and 300 head of Cattel impoſed as a yearly tribute by King *Athelſtane* upon *Idwallo Prince of Wales*, for the like yearly tribute of 300 *Wolves*: by which means they were quite rooted out in time, the *Welch* proteſting at the laſt they could find no more.

The Air of this Country is very temperate, neither ſo hot as *France* and *Spain* in the Summer, becauſe of its Northernly ſituation; nor ſo cold in the Winter; becauſe the air of this Kingdom being groſs, cannot ſo ſoon penetrate as the thin air of thoſe Countries. For to ſay truth, the air in the Winter time is thick and foggy, cloudy, and much diſpoſed to miſts; eſpecially near the Sea, and the greater Rivers: inſomuch that many times, the Sun is not ſeen to ſhine out clearly for ſome weeks together. And thereupon there goeth a tale, that the great Conſtable of *Caſtile* being Ambaſſadour to King *James* in the firſt Winter of his reign, and tarrying here about a month; is ſaid not to have ſeen the Sun all the time of his ſtay: which occaſioned him at his going on ſhip-board, to deſire ſuch Lords and Gentlemen as attended him thither, to *preſent his humble ſervice to the King their Maſter, and to the* bleſſed Sun of Heaven *when they chanced to ſee him.* And ſomething alſo touching the temperature of the Air, may be aſcribed unto the Winds, which participating of the Seas, over which they paſs unto us, do carry with them a temperate warmth.

But if warmth were all the benefit we received from the Seas, it might indeed be ſaid, that we were come from Gods bleſſing into the warm Sun: but it is not ſo. For there are no Seas in *Europe* that yield more plenty of Fiſh than ours. Our Oyſters were famous in the times of the old *Romans*, and our Herrings are now very beneficial unto the *Netherlands*; to whom, the *Engliſh*-men, reſerving to themſelves a kind of *Royalty*, (for the *Dutch* by Cuſtom demand liberty to fiſh off *Scarborough Caſtle* in *Yorkſhire*) have yielded up the commodity; by which thoſe States are exceedingly enriched, and our Nation much impoveriſhed and condemned for lazineſs and ſloth. Beſides the loſs of employment for many men, who uſing this trade might be a ſeminary of good and able Mariners, as well for the Wars, as for further Navigations and diſcoveries, cannot but be very prejudicial to the ſtrength and flouriſhing of the Common-wealth and Empire of *England*.

But to make this appear more fully in all particulars, I ſhall extract ſome paſſages out of M. S. diſcourſe of the late Learned Knight Sir *John Burroughs*, principal King of Arms by the name of *Garter*, entituled, *The Soveraignty of the* Britiſh *Seas*. By which it doth appear, that there is fiſhing in thoſe Seas for Herrings, Pilchards, Cod, Ling, or other Fiſh, at all times of the year: and that too in ſo plentiful a manner, that not long ſince near *Minnegal* on the Coaſts of *Devonſhire*, 500 Ton of Fiſh were taken in one day, and 3000 pounds-worth in another, near S. *Ives* in *Cornwall*; the *Hollanders* taking at one draught 20 Laſts of Herrings.

Secondly, That almoſt all Nations hereabouts, as *French*, *Spaniards*, *Netherlands*, and thoſe of the *Hanſe*, do mightily improve themſelves both in power & wealth, by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Fiſhing; inſomuch as 10000 Sail of Foreign Veſſels (of which 1400 from the Town of *Emden* in *Eaſt-Friſeland* only) are thought to be maintained by this Trade alone.

Thirdly, That the *Hollanders* in particular employ yearly 8000 Veſſels of all ſorts for this Trade of *Fiſhing* on our Coaſts, whereby they have a Seminary of 150000 Sailers and Mariners, ready for any publick ſervice: all which maintain treble that number of Men, Women, and Children, of ſeveral Trades upon the Land.

Fourthly, That for the holding up of this Trade, the ſaid *Hollanders*, inhabiting a Tract of Land not ſo big as many of our Shires, do build 1000 Sail of Ships yearly; and thereby furniſhing all the parts of the world (even as far as *Braſil*) with our Commodities; returning home thoſe of other Countries in exchange thereof, which they ſell to us many times at their own prices.

Fifthly, That the ſaid *Hollanders* (as appeared upon computation) made in one year of the *Herrings* only, caught upon theſe Coaſts, the ſum of 5 Millions of our pounds, (the Cuſtoms and tenth Fiſh advancing to the publick Treaſury no leſs than 800000 *l.* Sterling): it being thought, that the *Herrings* caught by thoſe of the *Hanſe* Towns, and other Nations, amount to as great a ſum as that.

Sixthly, and finally, That by erecting only 250 *Buſſes*, (Veſſels of great Bulk and Stowage, but not ſwift of ſail) for the *Herring Fiſhing*, (which is not a ſixth part of thoſe which are employed yearly by the *Hollanders*) either at the publick charge of the State of *England*, or private Adven-

Adventurers thereto authorized and regulated, there would be found employment yearly for 1000 ships, and at least 20000 Mariners and Fishers at Sea, and consequently for as many Tradesmen and Labourers at Land; by means whereof, besides the vindication of our credit now at such a loss, there would arise in Customs, Tonnage, Poundage, and other Imposts, no less than 300000 *l. per Annum* to the publick Treasury. The prosecution of which Project (if not in greater proportion than that before) as it was once designed by Mr. Atturney *Noy*, my much honoured Friend: so do I heartily commend it to the Care of the State, and to his Successors in that Office, as the fittest remembrancers to advance it: there being no readier way than this to make the people wealthy, and the Nation formidable.

For notwithstanding these advantages of Fish, the Diet of *England* is, for the most part Flesh; in *London* only there are no fewer than 67500 Beefs, and 675000 Sheep slain, and uttered in a year, besides Calves, Lambs, Hogsflesh, and Poulterers ware. To prove this, suppose there be in *London* 60 Butchers *Free* of the City, whereof every one, and one with another, killeth an Oxe a day, as at least they do. Then reckon (as the *London* Butchers do affirm) that the Foreigners in the Suburbs and Villages sell four for their one. Lastly, count for every Oxe ten Sheep, (for this is also certainly known) to be killed and sold, and you have both the numbers above-mentioned. The Earl of *Gondomar*, once the *Spanish Lieger* here, having in some several Market days seen the several Shambles of this great City, said to them who made the discovery with him, That there was more flesh eaten in a month in that Town, than in all *Spain* in a year. Now had I his skill who by the length of *Hercules* Foot, found out the proportion of his whole body, I might by this provision of flesh consumed in the head, guess at the quantity of that which is spent in the body of the Realm. But this I leave to be determined by an abler hand. The usual and natural drink of the Country is *Beer*, so called from the *French* word *Boire*, (for Wines they have none of their own growing, as before is said) which, without controversie, is a most wholsom and nourishing Beverage: and being transported into *France*, *Belgium*, and *Germany*, by the working of the Sea is so purg'd, that it is amongst them in highest estimation; celebrated by the name of *la bonne Beere d'Angle Terre*. And as for the old drink of *England*, *Ale*, which cometh from the *Danish* word *Ocla*, it is questionless in it self, (and without that commixture which some are accused to use with it) a very wholsom drink; howsoever it pleased a Poet in the time of *Henry* the Third, thus to descant on it:

Nescio quid monstrum Stygiæ *conforme paludi*,
Cervisiam *plerique vocant*; *nil spissius illa*
Dum bibitur, *nil clarius est dum mingitur*; *ergo*
Constat quod multas fæces *in ventre relinquit.*

In *English* thus;

Of this strange drink so like the *Stygian* Lake,
Men call it *Ale*, I know not what to make.
Folk drink it thick, and pils it very thin;
Therefore much *Dregs* must needs remain within.

Now to conclude this general discourse concerning *England*, there goes a tale, that *Henry* the seventh (whose breeding had been low and private) being once pressed by some of his Council, to pursue his title unto *France*, returned this Answer: That France *indeed was a flourishing and gallant Kingdom*; *but* England *in his mind was a fine Seat for a* Country Gentleman, *as any could be found in* Europe.

Having staid thus long in taking a Survey of the Country it self, together with the chief commodities and pleasures of it; and amongst them of the *Women* also, (as the method of the old Verse led me on:) it is now time that we should look upon the men. And they are commonly of a comely feature, gracious countenance, for the most part gray-ey'd, pleasant, beautiful, bountiful, courteous, and much resembling the *Italians* in habit and pronunciation. In matters of war, (as we are ready to prove) they are both able to endure and resolute to undertake the hardest enterprises: in peace quiet, and not quarrelsom; in advice or counsel, sound and speedy. Finally, they are active, hearty, and chearful. And yet I have met with some Gentlemen, who upon the strength of a little travel in *France*, have grown so *un-Englished* (and so affected or besotted rather on the *French* Nation) that they affirm the *English* in respect of the *French*, to be an heavy, dull, and *Phlegmatick* people; of no dispatch, no mettle, no conceit, no audacity, and I know not what not. A vanity, meriting rather my pity, than my anger. Perhaps in vilifying their Nation, they had consulted with *Julius Scaliger*, who in the 16. Chap. of his 3d Book *De re Poetica*, giveth of the two most noble Nations, *English* and *Scotish*, this base and unmanly Character, *Gothi belluæ*, Scoti *non minus*; Angli *perfidi*, *inflati*, *feri*, *contemptores*, *stolidi*, *amentes*, *inertes*, *inhospitales*, *immanes*. His bolt (you see) is soon shot, and so you may happily guess at the quality of the Archer. A man indeed of an able learning, but of his own worth so highly conceited, that if his too much learning made him not mad, yet it made him to be too peremptory and arrogant. To revenge a *National* disgrace on a *Personal*, is an ignoble victory. Besides, *Socrates* resolution in the like kind in my opinion was very judicious, εἰ δὲ μὲ ὄνος ἐκάλεσε, ἀλλὰ ὁ ὄνος ἐμὲ οὐκ ἐλοιδόρησεν; if an Ass kick us, we must not put him in the Court. To confute his censure in every point, would be to him too great an honour, and for me too great a trouble; it being a task, which of it self would require a Volume. The best is, many shoulders make the burden light; and other Nations are as deeply engaged in this quarrel against that proud Man, as ours: for so maliciously hath he there taxed all other people, that that Chapter might more properly have been placed among his *Hypercriticks*.

How the *English* and *Germans*, which of all Nations are thought most given to their bellies, do agree and differ in this point; the same *Scaliger* hath thus shewed in one of his Epigrams.

Tres sunt Convivæ, Germanus, Flander, & Anglus;
Die quis edat melius; *quis melinsve bibat.*
Non comedis Germane, *bibis*; *tu non bibis* Angle,
Sed comedis; *comedis* Flandre, *bibisq*; *bene.*

Dutch, *Flemmings*, *English*, are your only guests;
Say which of all doth eat, or drink it best.
Th' *English* love most to eat, the *Dutch* to swill,
Only the *Flemming* eats and drinks his fill.

Thus was it in his time with the *English* Nation; though since, I fear, we have borrowed too much of the *Dutch*, and learnt a great deal more than needs of the *Flemmings* also.

The Nobility of this Country is not of so much unlimited Power, as they are (to the prejudice of the State) in other Countries; the name of *Dukes*, *Earls*, and *Marquesses*, being meerly titular: whereas in other places they have some absolute, some mixt Government; so that upon any little distast, they will stand on their own guard, and slight the power of their *Soveraign*. And on the other side, the Commonalty enjoy a multitude of Priviledges

above

above all other Nations; being most free from Taxes, and burdenous Impositions, but what they take upon themselves by their own consent. They have twice in a year (a laudable custom no where else to be seen) Justice administred even at their own doors, by the Itinerary Judges of the Kingdom: an Order first instituted by King *Henry* the second. They dwell together with the Gentlemen, in Villages, and Towns, which makes them savour of civility and good manners: and live in far greater reputation, than the *Yeomen* in *Italy*, *Spain*, *France*, or *Germany*; being able to entertain a stranger honestly, diet him plentifully, and lodge him neatly.

The *Clergie* was once of very great riches, as appeareth by that Bill preferred to King *Henry* the fifth, against the temporal Revenues of the Church; in which it was suggested, that they were able to maintain 15 Earls, 1500 Knights, 6000 men of Arms, more than 1000 Almshouses, and yet the King might clearly put up 20000 *l.* *per Annum* into his Exchequer. How true this was, I cannot say. But after this, King *Henry* the eighth took his Opportunities, to pare away the excrescencies of it; demolishing the Monasteries, and Religious houses, and paring off the superfluities of Bishoprieks and Cathedral Churches: in which he found not a few followers amongst the Ministers and great Officers of State, and Court, in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, and Queen *Elizabeth*. Yet left they not the *Clergy* so poor and naked, or destitute of the encouragements and rewards of learning, but that they have been still the objects of a covetous envy, (that which the former *Harpies* left them, being thought too much): though for abilities of Learning (I dare boldly say it) not to be paralleled in the World. For besides 5439 *Parochial Benefices*, being no *Impropriations*; and besides the *Vicarages*, most of which exceed the competency beyond the Seas; there were left in *England* at the time of the *Reformation* under Queen *Elizabeth*, 26 *Bishopricks*, (taking those of *Wales* into the reckoning) 26 *Deaneries*, 60 *Archdeaconries*, and 544 *Dignities* and *Prebends*; most of which, places of fair Revenue. And as for the maintenance of Priests, Monks, and Friers, before the *Reformation*, there were reckoned 90 Colledges, besides those in the Universities, 100 Hospitals, 3374 Chanteries and Free Chappels, and 645 Abbies and Monasteries: more than half of which had above the yearly income of 200 *l.* in old Rents, many above 2000, and some 4000 almost. So studious were our *Ancestors* both in those times of blindness, and these of a clearer sight, to encourage men to Learning, and then reward it.

The Souldiery of *England* is either for the *Land* or for the *Sea*. Our Victories by *Land* are most apparent over the *Irish*, *Scots*, *Cypriots*, *Turks*, and especially *French*, whose Kingdom hath been sore shaken by the *English* many times, especially twice by King *Edward* the Third, and *Henry* the fifth: this later making so absolute a conquest, that *Charles* the Seventh, like a poor *Roy d' Ividot*, confined himself to *Bourges*, where (having cashier'd his retinue) he was found in a little Chamber at Supper, with a Napkin only laid before him, a rump of Mutton and two Chickens. And so redoubted even after our expulsion from *France*, (our *civil dissentions* rather causing that expulsion, than the *Frenchmens* valour) was the *English* name in that *Country*: that in the Wars between King *Charles* the Eighth, and the Duke of *Bretagne*, the Duke, to strike a terror into his enemies apparelled 1500 of his own Subjects, in the Arms and Crots of *England*. But as the Ass, when he had on the Lions Skin, was for all that but an Ass and no Lion: so these *Britons*, by the weak resistance they made against their Enemies, shew'd that they were indeed *Britons*, and no *Englishmen*. *Spain* also tasted the valour of our Land-Souldiers, when *John* of *Gaunt* pursuing his Title to *Spain*, was sent home with 8 Waggons laden with Gold, and an Annual Pension of 10000 marks; as also when the *Black Prince* re-established King *Peter* in his Throne. And then also did they acknowledge, though they felt not the puissance of the *English*, when *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* surprized the Kingdom of *Navarre*. For there were then in *Fontarabia*, a Town of *Guipuscoa*, 6000 *English* Foot, who lay there to join with this *Ferdinand* in an Expedition against *France*. Concerning which, *Guicciardine* giveth this *Item*, That *the Kingdom of* Navarre *was yielded rather for the fear and reputation of the* English *Forces that were at hand, than by any puissance of the King of* Aragon. Since those times the *Spaniard* much esteemed us, as appeareth by this Speech of theirs to our Souldiers at the Siege of *Amiens*; *You are tall Souldiers, and therefore when you come down to the Trenches, we double our guards, and look for blows; but as for those base and cowardly* French, *when they come, we make account we have nothing to do, but play, or sleep on our Ramparts.* The like the *Netherlanders* can testifie; only this is the grief of it, The *English* are like *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, fortunate to conquer Kingdoms, but unfortunate to keep them. Not to say any thing of the late, but great experience, which the *English* Souldiery hath gotten by the Civil Broils among themselves; at which my heart so aketh, and my hand so trembleth, that I shall only add in the words of *Lucan*,

Heu! quantum potuit cœli pelagiq; parari,
Hoc quem Civiles *finderunt sanguine dextræ!*

That is to say,

How much both Sea and Land might have been gain'd
By their dear blood, which *Civil wars* have drain'd!

As for their power and valour at Sea, it may evidently be perceived in the Battel of *Sclusa*, wherein King *Edward* the 3d, with 200 Ships, overcame the *French* Fleet consisting of 500 Sail; of which he sunk 200, and slew 30000 Souldiers. Secondly, at the Battel in 88, wherein a few of the *Queens* Ships vanquished the *invincible Armado* of the *King of Spain*, consisting of 134 *great Galleons*, and Ships of extraordinary bigness. Sir *Francis Drake* with 4 Ships took from the *Spaniard* one million and 189200 Ducats in one Voyage, An. 1587. And again with 25 Ships he awed the Ocean, sacked S. *Jago*, S. *Dominico*, and *Cartagena*; carrying away with him, besides Treasure, 240 Pieces of Ordnance. I omit the Circumnavigation of the whole World, by this *Drake* and *Candish*, and the voyage to *Cales*: as also how one of the Queens Ships named the *Revenge*, in which Sir *Richard Greenvile* was Captain, with 180 Souldiers (whereof 90 were sick on the balast) maintained a sea fight for 24 hours against above 50 of the *Spanish* Galleons. And though at last after her Powder was spent to the last barrel, she yielded upon honourable terms; yet she was never brought into *Spain*: having killed in that fight more than 10000 of their Souldiers, and sunk four of their greatest Vessels. I omit also the discovery of the Northern passages, by *Hugh Willoughby*, *Davis*, and *Frobisher*; concluding with that of *Kekerman*, *Hoc certum est, omnibus hodie gentibus navigandi industria & peritia superiores esse Anglos: & post Anglos, Hollandos*: Though now I know not by what neglect, and discontinuance of those honourable employments the *Hollanders* begin to bereave us of our ancient Glories, and would fain account themselves Lords of the Seas, and probably had been so indeed, had not his Majesty by the timely re-inforcing of his Naval

val Power, *An.* 1636. recovered again the Dominion of it.

The *Engliſh* Language is a De-compound of *Dutch*, *French* and *Latine*; which I conceive rather to adde to its perfection, than to detract any thing from the worth thereof; ſince out of every Language we have culled the moſt ſignificant words, and equally participate of that which is excellent in them; their imperfections being rejected. For it is neither ſo boyſterous as the *Dutch*, nor ſo effeminate as the *French*; yet as ſignificant as the *Latine*, and in the happy conjunction of two words into one little inferiour to the *Greek*.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here planted as ſome ſay, by S. *Peter* and *Paul*; more probably (as others ſay) by *Joſeph* of *Arimathea*, whoſe body they find to have been interred in the Iſle of *Avalonia* where the Abby of *Glaſtonbury* after ſtood. But that of his plantation being almoſt rooted out by long Perſecutions, and no ſupply of Preachers ſent from other places; *Lucius* a King of *Britain* (and the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Europe*,) *An.* 180. or thereabouts, ſent his Ambaſſadors to *Elentherius* the then Pope of *Rome* to be furniſhed with a new ſupply of *Paſtors*, if not to plant, yet at the leaſt to water, and confirm the *Goſpel* planted here before; but almoſt rooted out again by prevailing *Gentiliſm*. At which time *Lucius* did not only receive the Faith himſelf, but by the piety of his example, and the diligence of the firſt Preachers ſent from *Rome* (being both of them natural *Britains*) it ſpread by little and little over all his Dominions; and in ſome tract of time over all the Iſland. Which being thus recovered to the Faith of *Chriſt*, was forthwith furniſhed with *Biſhops* and *Metropolitans*, according to the number of the Provinces and principal *Cities* (twenty eight in all) continuing here as long as *Chriſtianity* it ſelf. For not to truſt herein to the authority of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory, we find three *Biſhops* of this Iſle ſubſcribing to the Council of *Arles*, An. 314. viz. *Eborius* Biſhop of *York*, *Reſtitutus* Biſhop of *London*, and *Adelfius* Biſhop of *Colcheſter*, there called *Colonia Londinenſium*; and ſome of them alſo preſent in the Council of *Sardica*, An. 358. concurring with the reſt in voting to the condemnation of the *Arian* Hereſies; and the ſame or others the next year in the Synod of *Arimin*. And when the *Britains* were expulſed their native Country, or ſhut up in the mountainous parts of the *Ordovices*, and *Silures*, which we now call *Wales*; they carried *Chriſtianity* and *Biſhops* along with them: *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, finding no fewer then ſeven Biſhops in the *Britiſh* Church, when he was ſent by *Gregory* the Great to convert the *Engliſh*. And yet it is no fabulous vanity, (as ſome men ſuppoſe) to ſay that *Auguſtine* the Monk firſt Preached the Goſpel in *England*: becauſe it muſt be underſtood, not with Relation to the *Britains*, but the *Engliſh Saxons*: from whom theſe parts of the Iſle had the name of *England*, and from whom both the *Britains*, and the Faith it ſelf were driven into the Mountains of *Wales* & *Cornwal*, and Heatheniſm introduced again over all the Kingdom. Long after which it pleaſed God, that *Gregory* the Great, (but at that time a Deacon only in the Church of *Rome*) ſeeing ſome handſom youths to be ſold in open Market, demanded what and whence they were: to whom it was anſwered they were *Angli*: and well may they be ſo called (ſaith he) for they ſeem as *Angels*. Asking again of what Province they were amongſt the *Angli*; and anſwer being made of the Province of *Deira* (part of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*) therefore (ſaid he) *De ira Dei ſunt liberandi*. And laſtly underſtanding that the King of their Nation was named *Alle*; how fitly (ſaid he) may he ſing *Allelujahs* to the moſt High God? After which time he ſeriouſly endeavoured the Converſion of the *Engliſh* Nation; which being Pope he happily effected, by the travel and diligence of *Auguſtine* the Monk, the firſt Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*. And ſo well did the work proſper after this beginning, that not only all the *Saxons* did receive the Goſpel, but communicated the Light of it to other Nations: the *Heſſians*, *Franconians* and *Turingians*, being converted by *Winfred*; the *Friſons* or *Hollanders* by *Wittikind* the firſt Biſhop of *Utrecht*; the *Saxons* of *Weſtphalen*, by *Weldrode*, the firſt Biſhop of *Breme*; all of them being *Engliſh Saxons*, as we find in *Beda* and ſome others.

Now as theſe parts of *Britain* were the firſt which generally entertained the Goſpel, ſo were they the firſt alſo in theſe later times, which univerſally ſubmitted to the Reformation of ſuch corruptions, as had been brought upon them by the power and tyranny of the Church of *Rome*. Endeavoured firſt in *France*, by the *Albigenſes*, and *Waldenſes*, as was ſaid before. Who being ſuppreſſed and ruinated by the Sword of the Kings of *France*, ſheltred themſelves in the mountainous parts of *Gaſcoigne* and *Cuienne*, then in poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*; who by that means became acquainted with their *Tenets*: maintained here publickly by *Wiclef*, and ſpreading under-hand amongſt the people of this Kingdom, till the times of *Luther* and the Reformation by him aimed at. Which being in moſt other Countries received tumultuouſly, by the power of the people; was here admitted upon mature deliberation, by the authority and conſent of the Prince and Prelates: the *Architects* in this great work, without reſpect unto the Dictates of *Luther* or *Calvin*, looking only on Gods Word and the Primitive Patterns, aboliſhing ſuch things as were repugnant unto either, but ſtill retaining ſuch *Ceremonies* in Gods publick worſhip, as were agreeable to both, and had been countenanced by the practice of the Primitive times. A point wherein they did obſerve a greater meaſure of Chriſtian prudence and moderation, than their neighbour Churches; which in a meer deteſtation of the See of *Rome*, allowed of nothing which had formerly been in uſe amongſt them, becauſe defiled with *Popiſh* Errors and abuſes: and thereby utterly averting thoſe of the *Papal* party from joining with them in the work, or coming over to them when the work was done. Whereas had they continued an allowable correſpondency in theſe extrinſecals of Religion, with the Church of *Rome*; their party in the world had been far greater, and not ſo much ſtomached as it is. And ſo it was conceived by the Marqueſs *de Rhoſne*, after Duke of *Sully*, and Lord High-Treaſurer of *France*, and one of the chief men of that party there: when being ſent Ambaſſadour to King *James*, from King *Henry* the fourth, he had obſerved the Majeſty and Decency of Gods publick Service, in ſome *Cathedrals* of this Kingdom; Religion would be ſoon defaced and trod under foot if not preſerved and fenced about with the hedge of Ceremonies.

As for the Government of the Church ſince the laſt *Converſion*, as by the piety and example of *Lucius* there were founded three *Archbiſhopricks*, and 25 *Biſhopricks*, according to the number of the *Archi-Flamins*, and *Flamines* (whoſe great Revenues were converted to more ſacred uſes in the times of *Idolatry*: So by the like pious care of Pope *Gregory* the Great, by whoſe means this laſt Converſion happened; *Archbiſhopricks*, and *Biſhopricks* were deſigned to convenient places. The number 26 in all; to each Province twelve, beſides the two *Archbiſhops* and *Metropolitans*: wherein he had the happineſs to have his deſires fulfilled, though the number was not made compleat till theſe later days, nor with ſuch equal diſtribution, as he did intend. For in the Province of *York* laid waſte and deſolate by the *Danes*, and not ſo ſoon converted as the other was; the number of the Suffragan

Biſhops came not up to his purpoſe, but did as much exceed in the Province of *Canterbury*: eſpecially when K. *Henry* the 8th had incorporated *Wales* with *England* and founded five Epiſcopal Sees out of the ruins and Revenues of ſome principal Monaſteries: of which none but the Biſhoprick of *Cheſter* (and that of the Iſle of *Man*, which maketh up the 27th,) were laid unto the Province of *York*. And ſo it ſtood, notwithſtanding the alterations of *Religion*, without any diſpute, till *Calvin* having hammered out his new *Presbitery*, and recommended it to the uſe of all *Chriſtian* Churches (the Hiſtory whereof we had ſuccinctly in the *Alpine* Provinces) found many apt Scholars in moſt places to decry this Order, though conſonant to the word of God: and moſt pure Antiquity.

But the truth is, it was not ſo much the Authority of *Calvin*, or the malignant zeal of *Beza*, or the impetuous clamors of their Diſciples, which cauſed the *Epiſcopal* Order to grow out of credit; as the *Avarice* of ſome great perſons in Court and State, who greedily gaped after the poor remnant of their Poſſeſſions. It had been elſe a miracle that *Calvins* Plat-form made only for the uſe of a private City, and not proportioned, no nor intended at the firſt, to the ſtate of other Churches, eſpecially where the Biſhops had been inſtrumental in the Reformation: ſhould be ſo headily received in ſome Kingdoms, and ſo importunately and clamorouſly deſired in others.

The moſt valorous Souldiers of this Country, when poſſeſſed by the *Britains*; were 1 *Caſſibelane*, who twice repulſed the *Roman* Legions, though conducted by *Cæſar*; and had not a party here at home been formed againſt him, he had for ever done the like. 2 *Pratuſagus*, King of the *Iceni*. 3 *Conſtantine* the Great. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds *nine Worthies*. In the times of the *Saxons*. 5 *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. 6 King *Edmund Ironſide*; and 7 *Canutus* the *Dane*. Under the *Normans*, of moſt note have been 1 *William* ſirnamed the Conqueror, 2 *Richard*, and 3 *Edward*, both the firſt of thoſe names, ſo renowned in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, 4 *Edward* the 3d, and 5 *Edward* the Black Prince, his Son *Duo fulmina belli*, as famous in the Wars of *France*; 6 *Henry* the 5th, and 7 *John* Duke of *Bedford* his Brother, of equal gallantry with the other. 8 *Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*. 9 Sir *John Falſtolf*, and 10 Sir *John Hawkwood*, of great eſteem for valour in *France* and *Italy*: not to deſcend to later times. And for Sea Captains, thoſe of moſt note, have been *Hawkins*, *Willoughby*, *Burroughs*, *Jenkinſon*, *Drake*, *Frobiſher*, *Cavendiſh* and *Greenvile*, of ſome of which we have ſpoke already, and of the reſt we may have an opportunity to ſpeak more hereafter.

Scholars of moſt renown amongſt us, 1 *Alcuinus*, one of the Founders of the Univerſity of *Paris*. *Beda*, who for his Piety and Learning obtained the Attribute or Adjunct of *Venerabilis*. Concerning which, the *Legends* tell us, that being blind, his Boy had knaviſhly conducted him to preach to an heap of ſtones; and that when he had ended his Sermon with the *Gloria Patri*, the very ſtones concluded, ſaying, *Amen*, *Amen*, *Venerabilis Beda*. But other of the Monkiſh Writers do aſſign this reaſon and both true alike; that at his death ſome unlearned Prieſt intending to honour him with an Epitaph, had thus far blundered on a verſe, viz. *Hic ſunt in foſſa* Bedæ *oſſa*: but becauſe the Verſe was yet imperfect, he went to bed to conſider of it, leaving a ſpace betwixt the two laſt words thereof; which in the mourning he found filled up in a ſtrange Character, with the word *Venerabilis*; and ſo he made his Verſe, and *Beda* (pardon his diverſion) obtained that Attribute. 3 *Anſelm*, and 4 *Bradwardin*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*, Men Famous for the times they lived in. 5 *Alexander* of *Hales*, Tutor to *Thomas Aquinas*, and *Bonaventure*. 6 *Thomas* of *Walden*, the profeſſed Enemy of *Wiclef*, againſt whom he writ. 7 *John Wiclef* Parſon of *Lutterworth* in the County of *Leiceſter*, who ſo valiantly oppoſed the Power and Errours of the Church of *Rome*; though he vented many of his own. Then ſince the time of the *Reformation*, 1 *John Jewel* Biſhop of *Salisbury*, to whoſe Learned and Induſtrious Labours, in defence of the *Religion* here by *Law* eſtabliſhed, we are ſtill beholding. Dr. *John Reynolds*, and 3 Mr. *Richard Hooker*, both of *Corpus Chriſti* Colledg in *Oxon*; the firſt, a man of infinite reading, the ſecond of as ſtrong a judgment. 4 Dr. *Whitakers* of *Cambridge*, the *Antagoniſt* of the famous *Bellarmine*. 5 Dr. *Thomas Bilſon*, and 6 Dr. *Lancelot Andrews*, both Biſhops of *Wincheſter*, the Ornaments of their ſeveral times. 7 Biſhop *Mountague* of *Norwich*, a great Philologer and Divine. 8 Dr. *John Whitgift*, and 9 Dr. *William Laud*, Archbiſhops of *Canterbury*. Of which laſt, and his diſcourſe againſt *Fiſher* the *Jeſuite*, Sir *Edward Dearing* his profeſſed Enemy, hath given this Character, that in that Book of his he had *muzled the* Jeſuits, *and ſhould ſtrike the* Papiſts *under the fifth rib, when he was dead and gone: and that being dead, whereſoever his grave ſhould be*, PAULS (whoſe reparation he endeavoured, and had almoſt finiſhed) *would be his perpetual Monument, and his Book his laſting Epitaph.* And as for thoſe who have ſtood up in maintenance of the Church of *Rome*, thoſe of moſt note were Dr. *Harding*, the Antagoniſt of Biſhop *Jewel*. 2 *Nic. Sanders*, and 3 Dr. *Thomas Stapleton*, to whoſe Writings the great Cardinal *Bellarmine* doth ſtand much indebted. 4 *Campian*, and 5 *Parſons*, both *Jeſuites*: and 6 *William Reynolds*, a *Seminary* Prieſt, and the Brother of Dr. *John Reynolds* ſpoken of before. Of which two Brothers (by the way) it is very obſervable, That *William* was at firſt a *Proteſtant* of the Church of *England*, and *John* trained up in *Popery* beyond the Seas, *William* out of an honeſt zeal to reduce his Brother to his Church, made a journey to him: where in a Conference betwixt them it ſo fell out, that *John* being overcome by his Brothers Arguments, returned into *England*, where he became one of the more ſtrict or rigid ſort of the *Engliſh* Proteſtants, and *William* being convinced by the Reaſons of his Brother *John*, ſtayed beyond the Seas, where he proved a very violent and virulent *Papiſt*. Of which ſtrange accident, Dr. *Alabaſter*, who had made trial of both Religions, and amongſt many notable Whimſeys, had ſome fine Abilities, made this following Epigram; which for the Excellency thereof, and the Rareneſs of the Argument, I ſhall here ſubjoin,

Bella inter geminos pluſquam Civilia Fratres,
Traxerat ambiguus Religionis apex.
Ille Reformatæ *Fidei pro partibus inſtat;*
Iſte Reformandam *denegat eſſe fidem.*
Propoſitis cauſæ rationibus, alter-utrinque;
Concurrere pares, & cecidere pares.
Quod fuit in votis, Fratrem *capit alter-uterque;*
Quod fuit in ſatis, perdit uterque fidem.
Captivi gemini ſine captivante fuerunt,
Et victor victi tranſfuga caſtra petit.
Quod genus hoc pugnæ eſt, ubi victus gaudet uterque;
Et tamen alter-uter ſe ſuperaſſe dolet?

Which excellent Epigram, though not without great diſadvantage to the *Latine* Original, I have thus tranſlated:

In points of Faith ſome undermin'd jars,
Betwixt two Brothers kindled Civil Wars.
One for the Churches *Reformation* ſtood;
The other thought no *Reformation* good.

The

The points propos'd, they traverſed the field
With equal skill, and both together yield.
As they deſir'd, his Brother each ſubdues;
Yet ſuch their Fate, that each his Faith did looſe.
Both Captives, none the priſoners thence do guide;
The *Victor* flying to the Vanquiſht ſide.
Both joy'd in being Conquer'd, (ſtrange to ſay)
And yet both mourn'd becauſe both won the day.

And then for men of other Studies, 1 *Lindwood* the Canoniſt, 2 *Coſins*, and 3 *Cowel*, eminent in the ſtudies of the *Civil Laws*. 4 *Bracton*, and 5 *Briton* of old times; 6 *Dier*, and 7 *Coke* of late days, as eminent for their knowledge in the Laws of *England*. 8 *Johannes de Sacro Boſco*, the Author of the Book of the *Sphere*; and 9 *Roger Bacon*, a noted *Mathematician* in the darker times. 10 Sir *Francis Bacon* the Learned Viſcount of S. *Albans*, of whom more hereafter. 11 Sir *Thomas More*, Lord Chancellour, one of the Reſtorers of Learning to the Ile of *Great Britain*. 12 Sir *Henry Savile* of *Eaton*, the reviver of *Chryſoſtom*. 13 Sir *Henry Spelman*, a right Learned Antiquary, and a Religious aſſertor of the Churches Rights. 14 *Camden*, *Clarenciaux*, the *Pauſanias* of the *Britiſh* Iſlands. 15 *Matthew Paris*, 16 *Roger Hovedon*, 17 *Henry* of *Huntingdon*, 18 *William* of *Malmesbury*, 19 *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter*, and 20 *Thomas* of *Walſingham*; all known Hiſtorians. And finally for Poetry, 1 *Gower*, 2 *Lidgate*, a Monk of *Bury*; 3 the Famous *Geofry Chawcer*, Brother in Law to *John* of *Gaunt* the great Duke of *Lancaſter*; of which laſt Sir *Philip Sidney* uſed to ſay, that *he marvelled how in thoſe miſty times he could ſee ſo clearly, and others in ſo clear times go ſo blindly after him.* 4 Sir *Philip Sidney* himſelf, of whom and his *Arcadia*, more when we come to *Greece*. 5 The renowned *Spencer*, of whom and his *Fairy Queen*, in another place. 6 *Sam. Daniel*, the *Lucan*, 7 with *Michael Draiton*, the *Ovid* of the *Engliſh* Nation. 8 *Beamount*, and 9 *Fletcher*, not inferiour unto *Terence* and *Plautus*; with 10 My friend *Ben. Johnſon*, equal to any of the Antients for the exactneſs of his Pen, and the decorum which he kept in the *Dramatick* Poems, never before obſerved on the *Engliſh* Theatre. Others there are as eminent both for Arts and Arms, as thoſe here ſpecified, of whom, as being ſtill alive, I forbear to ſpeak; according to that caution of the Hiſtorian, ſaying, *Vivorum ut magna admiratio, ita* Cenſura *eſt difficilis.*

But from the Men to return again unto the Country, we find it to be ſubject (according to the ſeveral reſpects of Church and State) to a treble diviſion; *viz.* 1 into 6 *Circuits* deſtinated to the *Itinerary Judges*: Secondly, into 22 *Epiſcopal Dioceſſes*. Thirdly, into 40 Shires. The Realm was firſt divided into *Circuits* by King *Henry* the Second, who appointed twice in the year, two of the moſt Grave and Learned Judges of the Land, ſhould in each *Circuit* adminiſter Juſtice in the chief or head Towns of every County. Of theſe Judges, one ſitteth on matters *Criminal*, concerning the life and death of Malefactors: the other in Actions *Perſonal*, concerning Title of Land, Debts, or the like, between party and party. The firſt *Circuit* (for we will begin at the Weſt) comprehendeth the Counties of *Wilts*, *Somerſet*, *Devon*, *Cornwal*, *Dorſet*, and *Southampton*. The ſecond containeth the Counties of *Oxford*, *Berks*, *Glouceſter*, *Monmouth*, *Hereford*, *Worceſter*, *Salop*, and *Stafford*. The third hath in it the Counties of *Surrey*, *Suſſex*, *Kent*, *Eſſex*, and *Hartford*. The Fourth conſiſteth of the Shires of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, *Huntingdon*, *Cambridge*, *Norfolk*, and *Suffolk*. The fifth of the Shires of *Northampton*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Nottingham*, *Darby*, *Leiceſter*, and *Warwick*. And the ſixth and laſt, of the Shires of *York*, *Durham*, *Northumberland*, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and *Lancaſter*. So that in theſe ſix *Circuits* are numbred 38 Shires. The two remaining are *Middleſex*, and *Cheſhire*: whereof the firſt is exempted, becauſe of its vicinity to *London*; and the ſecond as being a *County Palatine*, and having peculiar Judges and Counſellours to it ſelf.

The ſecond Diviſion, but more antient far in point of time, is that of *Dioceſſes*, 22 in all, proportioned according to the number of *Epiſcopal Sees*: each Dioceſs having in it one or more *Arch-Deaconries*, for diſpatch of *Eccleſiaſtical* buſineſs; and every *Arch-Deaconry* ſubdivided into *Rural Deanries*, fewer or more, according to the bigneſs and extent thereof. Of theſe there are but four in the Province of *York*, that is to ſay, the Dioceſſes of *York*, *Cheſter*, *Durham*, and *Carlile*: the other 18 (together with the 4 of *Wales*) being reckoned into that of *Canterbury*. In reſpect of which great authority and juriſdiction, the Archbiſhops of *Canterbury* had anciently the titles of *Primates* and *Metropolitans* of all *England*; & for ſome Ages before the Reformation, uſed to take place in all General Councils, at the Popes right Foot. Which Cuſtom took beginning at the Council of *Laterane*, when *Urban* the ſecond called *Anſelm* the Archbiſhop of *Canterbury* from amongſt the other Prelates then aſſembled, and placed him at his right foot, ſaying, *Includamus hunc in Orbe noſtro tanquam alterius Orbis Papam.* This happened *An.* 1099. They were anciently alſo *Legati nati*; which honourable Title was firſt given to Archbiſhop *Theobald*, by *Innocent* the Second, and continued unto his Succeſſors. And both to honour their calling in the courſe of their Government, and to have the benefit of their Counſel, being men of Learning, both the Archbiſhops and the Biſhops, were anciently priviledged to have their place and ſuffrage in the High Court of Parliament (ever ſince any Parliaments were firſt held in *England*) as Peers of the Realm; and that too in a double reſpect: firſt in relation had to their ſacred Office, and ſecondly to thoſe temporal Eſtates and Baronies, which they held of the King. Yet did they not enjoy in the times of their greateſt power and flouriſhing, all the Prerogatives and Priviledges of the temporal Barons: as neither being tryed by their *Peers* in Criminal cauſes, but left to an Ordinary *Jury*; nor ſuffered in examinations to make a Proteſtation upon their honour, to the truth of the Fact, but put unto their Oaths like others of the lower Clergy. As for their *Eccleſiaſtical* Courts, it was antiently ordered alſo, that beſides ſuch as appertained to the Archbiſhops themſelves; beſides thoſe holden by the *Chancellors* and *Arch-Deacons* of every Biſhop, in their ſeveral Dioceſſes, and ſome in many private Pariſhes which they call *Peculiars*: and finally, beſides the Courts of *Viſitation*, held every two years by the Arch-Deacons or their Officials, & every third year by the Biſhop himſelf in perſon, or his lawful Deputy: there ſhould be alſo *Synods* or *Convocations*, which are the Parliaments of the Clergy, aſſembled primarily for the Reforming of the Church in *Doctrine* and *Diſcipline*: and ſecondarily, for granting Tenths and Subſidies to the King: Which Synods, whether they be National, or Provincial only, do naturally conſiſt of all the Right Reverend Fathers, the Arch-biſhops, Biſhops, the Deans, Arch-Deacons, and one Prebend out of each Cathedral, and a certain number of the Clergy, (two for every Dioceſs) elected by the reſt to ſerve for them in that great Aſſembly: the Clergy not being bound antiently by any Act, to which they had not given conſent by thoſe their *Proxies*: Of which ſo called and met together, the Biſhops ſitting by themſelves make the Upper Houſe; the Deans, Arch-deacons, and the reſt, do conſtitute the Lower Houſe of Convocation.

The third and laſt Diviſion, though the ſecond in courſe of time, is that of *Shires* made by King *Alfride*, both for the eaſier Adminiſtration of juſtice; and to prevent ſuch Outrages and Robberies, as (after the example of the *Danes*) the natural Inhabitants of the Realm began in all places to commit. For over every one of theſe *Shires* or Counties, he appointed an *High Sheriff* and divers *Officers*, to ſee into the behaviour of private men, and to puniſh ſuch as were *delinquent*: and in times of war either already begun, or intended, he inſtituted a *Perfect* or *Lieutenant*; to whom he gave authority to ſee their muſters, their proviſion of arms, and if occaſion ſerved, to puniſh ſuch as rebelled or mutined. This wiſe King ordained alſo, that his Subjects ſhould be divided into tens or *tithings*, every of which ſeverally ſhould give bond for the good abearing of each other; and he who was of that diſſolute behaviour, that he could not be admitted to theſe *tithings*, was forthwith conveyed to the houſe of correction. By this courſe every man was not only careful of his own actions, but had an eye to all the nine for whom he ſtood bound; as the nine had over him: inſomuch that a poor girl might travel ſafely with a bag of gold in her hand, and none durſt meddle with her. The antienteſt of theſe 10 men were called κατ' ἐξοχὴν, the *Tithing men*, 10 of the higheſt and neighbouring *tithings*, made the leſſer Diviſion which we call hundreds: which name cannot be derived from the like number of Villages, for none of our *hundreds* are ſo large: and one of them there is in *Berkſhire*, which containeth five *hamlets* only. We have then a diviſion of the *Realm* into 40 Shires; of the Shires into divers *hundreds*; and of the *hundreds* into ten *tithings*. And this diviſion made by *Alfride* ſtill remains in force: as alſo doth the *High Sheriff*, and the reſt of the ſubordinate Officers of the *High Sheriff* conſiſting eſpecially at this time, in executing Arreſts, aſſiſting the *Itinerary Judges*, gathering the Kings Fines and Amerciaments, and raiſing the *Poſſe-Comitatus* if occaſion be. But for the *Civil* part of government in the ſeveral Counties, it is moſt in the hands of ſuch as we call *Juſtices of the Peace*, authorized by Commiſſion under the great Seal of *England*: appointed firſt by that prudent Prince King *Edward* the firſt, by the name of *Cuſtodes Pacis*, Guardians of the Peace, and firſt, called *Juſtices of the Peace* in the 36 of King *Edward* the 3d. *Cap.* 11. A form of Government ſo much conducing to the propriety of the Country, and the ſecurity of the People; that King *James* the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*, eſtabliſhed it by law in the Kingdom of *Scotland*. Then for the Courts which are ſtill kept in every ſhire, they are either the *County Court* holden every month, wherein the *Sheriff* or his ſufficient *deputy* commonly preſideth; or the *Aſſizes* and court of *Goal-delivery* held twice a year by the *Judges Itinerant* aſſiſted by the *Juſtices of the Peace* and others in Commiſſion with them. There are alſo two *Offices* in every *hundred* choſen out of the *Yeomanry*, whom we call the *Conſtables* of the *hundred*: who receiving the *Precepts* or Warrants of the *Sheriff*, or *Juſtices*, diſpatcheth them to the *Tithingman* or Petit Conſtable of each *Town*, and Village, in their ſeveral Diviſions. And in each *hundred*, a Court kept once in three Weeks, by the Steward of the *hundred*, or his Deputy, capable of Pleas or Actions under the value of 40 s. though in ſome few of theſe Courts alſo (as in that of *Slaughter hundred* in *Glocester-ſhire*): the value of the Action, by ſome ſpecial Charter, be left unlimited. The like Court alſo hidden in ſome antient Burroughs. And beſides theſe, in every Village are two ſeveral Courts, and theſe two holden twice a year if occaſion be, held by the Steward of the Manor: in the one of which called the *Court Leet*, there is Enquiry made into Treaſons, Felonies, Murders, and other Caſes, falling between the King and the Subject, and in the other, which we call by the name of *Court-Baron*, ſuch only as concern the Lord and Tenants, and theſe laſt for the moſt part ſummoned at the will of the Lord: So that *Comines* had (we ſee) good reaſon for this Affirmation, that *of all the Signiories in the World that ever he knew, the Realm of* England *was the Country in which the* Common-wealth *was beſt governed.*

To return again unto the Shires, ſome of them take their names from the old Inhabitants, as *Cumberland* from the *Cymbri* or ancient *Britains*, *Eſſex* and *Suſſex* from the Eaſt and South *Saxons*: ſome from the ſituation of them, as *Northumberland*, *Norfolk*, *Southfolk*, *Devonſhire*; this laſt ſo called from *Devinam*, a *Welch* or *Britiſh* word, ſignifying Low Vallies, of which it very much conſiſteth: Some from the form or figure of them, as *Cornwal*, from the reſemblance which it hath to an horn; and *Kent*, (in Latine, *Cantium*) becauſe it lyeth in a *Canton* or Corner of the Iſland. Some from ſome Accidents therein, as *Berkſhire*, or *Berockſhire*, from the abundance of *Boxe*, which the *Saxons* call by the name of *Beroc*: the moſt part from the principal Town of all the County, as *Glouceſter*, *Oxford*, and the like. Of theſe Shires the biggeſt beyond all compare, is the County of *York*, out of which 70000 men may be raiſed for preſent ſervice, if need ſo require. And in them all are comprehended 8709 Pariſhes (beſides thoſe of *Wales*) not reckoning in ſuch Chappels as we call *Chappels of Eaſe*, in greatneſs not inferiour to many Pariſhes; 22 Cities, 585 Market Towns which are no Cities; and in the Towns and Villages to the number of 145 Caſtles, or ruines of Caſtles; few of them places of importance, and ſuch as are belonging generally to the Kings, who ſuffer not any of their Subjects to neſt themſelves in Strong Holds and Caſtles.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *London*, ſeated on the *Thames*, by which divided into two parts, conjoyned together by a ſtately and magnificent Bridge, ſpoken of before. The River capable in this place of the greateſt Ships, by means whereof it hath been reckoned a long time for one of the moſt Famous Mart-Towns in Chriſtendom: and not long ſince, had ſo much got precedency of all the reſt, that the greateſt part of the wealth of *Europe* was driven up that River. A City of great Note in the time of the *Roman* Conqueſt; to whom it was firſt known by the name of *Londinum*: a Town at that time of great Trade and Riches; and by them honoured with the Title of *Auguſta*. Increaſed of late very much in Buildings: contiguous to ſome Towns and Villages, from which in former times diſjoined by ſome diſtant *intervals* So that the circuit may contain 8 miles at leaſt: in which ſpace are 122 Pariſh Churches; the Palace of the King, the Houſes of the Nobility, Colledges for the ſtudy of the Laws, I mean not the *Civil Law*, which is *Jus Gentium*, but (as we call it) the *Common Law*, appropriate only to this Kingdom. It is wondrous populous, containing well nigh 600000 people; which number is much augmented in the Term time. Some compare *London* with *Paris* thus: *London* is the richer, the more populous, and more antient; *Paris* the greater, more uniform, and better fortified. But for my part, as I do not think that *London* is the more populous, ſo neither can I grant that *Paris* is the greater City, except we meaſure them by the Walls. For taking in the Suburbs of both, and all that paſſeth in Accompt by the name of *London*: I cannot but conceive, that if *London* were caſt into the ſame orbicular figure, the circumference of it would be larger than that of *Paris*. For uniformity of Building, *Paris* indeed doth go beyond it; but may in that be equalled alſo in ſome tract of time, if the Deſign begun in King *James* his Reign, tending to the advancement of ſuch *Uniformity*, be not interrupted.

For

For other things, certain is that *London* is the antienter City, as being an Archbishops See in the time of the *Britains*, when the name of *Paris* was scarce heard of, a Bishops See at the first conversion of the *Saxons*: increased so much in wealth and honour from one age to another, that it is grown at last too big for the Kingdom; which whether it may be profitable for the State, or not, may be made a question. Great Towns in the body of a State, are like the *Spleen* or *Milt* in the body natural, the monstrous growth of which impoverisheth all the rest of the Members, by drawing to it all the *animal* and *vital* spirits, which should give nourishment unto them: And in the end cracked or surcharged by its own fulness, not only sends unwholsom *fumes* and *vapours* unto the *head*, and heavy *pangs* unto the *heart*, but draws a *consumption* on it self. And certainly the over-growth of great Cities is of dangerous consequence, not only in regard of Famine, such multitudes of mouths not being easie to be fed: but in respect of the irreparable danger of *Insurrections*, if once those multitudes, sensible of their own strength, oppressed with want, or otherwise distempered with faction or discontent, should gather to an head, and break out into action. Yet thus much may be said to the honour of *London*, though grown by much too big now for the Kingdom, that it is generally so well governed, and in so good peace, that those Murders, Robberies, and Outrages so frequent in great and populous Cities beyond the Seas, are here seldom heard of. 2 *York*, in the West Riding of that County, the second City of *England*, as the old Verse hath it:

Londinum *caput est & Regni urbs prima Britanni,*
Eboracum *à prima jure secunda venit.*

That is to say,

In *England*, *London* is the chiefest Town;
The second place *York* claimeth as its own.

And so it may, being indeed the second City of the Kingdom, both for fame and greatness. A pleasant, large and stately City, well fortified and beautifully adorned, as well with private as publick Edifices; and rich, and populous withal. Seated upon the River *Ouse*, or *Eure*, which divides it in twain; both parts being joined together with a fair stone Bridge, consisting of high and mighty Arches. A City of great estimation in the time of the *Romans*, the *Metropolis* of the whole Province or *Diocess* of *Britain*; remarkable for the death & burial of the Emperour *Severus*, and the birth of *Constantine* the *Great*: by consequence the Seat of the Primate of the *British* Church, as long as *Christianity* did remain among them, Nor stooped it lower when the *Saxons* had received the *Faith*: and notwithstanding those mutations which befel this Kingdom, under the *Saxons*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, it still preserved its antient lustre, and encreased it too. Adorned with a stately and magnificent *Cathedral*, inferiour to few in *Europe*; and with a Palace of the Kings, (called the Manor-house) the dwelling in these later days, of the Lord *President* of the Court or Council here established by K. *Henry* the 8th, for the benefit of the Nothern Subjects, after the manner of a *French Parliament*, or *Presidial Sieges*. 3 *Bristol*, the third in rank of the Cities of *England*, situate on the meeting of the *Frome* and *Avon*, not far from the influx of the *Severn* into the *Ocean*: in that regard commodiously seated for Trade and traffick; the Ships with full Sail coming into the City, and the Citizens with as full purses trading into most parts of the World, with good Faith & Fortune. A Town exceeding populous, and exceeding cleanly, there being *Sewers* made under ground, for the conveyance of all filth and nastiness, into the Rivers. Churches it hath to the number of 18 or 20, reckoning in the Cathedral, and that of *Ratcliff*. The *Cathedral* first built by *Rob. Fitz-Harding*, Son to a King of *Denmark*, once a *Burger* here, and by him stored with Canons *Regular*, *An.* 1248, but made a Bishops-See by King *Henry* the 8th, *An.* 1542. The principal building next the Church, is an ancient Castle, a piece of such strength, that *Maud* the Empress having took King *Stephen* Prisoner, thought it the safest place to secure him in. 4 *Norwich*, the fourth City of the first rank, of which more hereafter. 5 *Oxford*, the first of the second rank of *English* Cities seated upon the *Ouse*, or *Isis*: but whether so called as *Vadum Isidos*, *Ouseford*, or the *Ford* of *Ouse*; or *Voda-boum* (as the *Greeks* had their *Bosphore* in former times) I determine not. An antient Town, and antiently made a Seat of Learning co-eval unto that of *Paris*, if not before it; the University hereof being restored rather than first founded by K. *Alured*, *An.* 886, after it had been overborn a while by the *Danish* Furies; but hereof as an University, more anon. This only now, that for the stateliness of the Schools and publick Library, the bravery and beauty of particular Colledges, all built of fair and polished stone; the liberal endowment of those houses, and notable encouragements of Industry and Learning in the salary of the Professors in most Arts & Sciences, it is not to be parallel'd in the *Christian* World. The City of it self well built, and as pleasantly seated, formed in the Figure of a Cross, two long streets thwarting one another, each of them near a mile in length; containing in that compass, 13 Parish Churches, and a See Episcopal founded here by King *Henry* the 8th, *Anno* 1541. The honourable Title of twenty of the noble Family of the *Veres*, now Earl of *Oxon*, 6 *Salisbury*, first seated on the Hill, where now stands *old Salisbury*, the *Sorboidunum* of the Antients. But the Cathedral being removed down into the Vale, the Town quickly followed, and grew up very suddenly into great Renown; pleasantly seated on the *Avon*, (a name common to many *English* Rivers) which watereth every street thereof; and for the populousness of the place, plenty of Provisions, number of Churches, a spacious Market-place, and a fair Town-hall, esteemed the second City of all the West. 7 *Glocester*, by *Antonine* called *Glevum*, by the *Britains Caer Glowy*, whence the present name; the *Saxons* adding *Cester*, as in other places. A fine neat City, pleasantly seated on the *Severn*, with a large Key or Wharf on the banks thereof, very commodious to the Merchandize and trade of the place: well built, consisting of fair large Streets, beautified with a fair *Cathedral*; for the magnificence of the Quire, elegancy of the Cloisters, and graciousness of the Bel-tower there scarce to be followed in the Kingdom: and situate in such a Vale, that there is nothing wanting to the use of man except only Wine, which life or luxury may require. 8 *Chester*, upon the River *Dee*, built in the manner of a quadrate, inclosed with a Wall, which takes up more than two miles in compass; containing in that compass 12 Parish Churches, and an old *Cathedral* dedicated antiently to S. *Wereburg*, Daughter of *Wolfre* K. of the *Mercians*, and the Visitrets of all the Monasteries of *England*. But made a Bishops See by King *Henry* the 8th. The buildings generally fair, the Sreets wide and open, with Galleries before every door under which a man might walk dry from one end to the other. The rest of chief note shall be specified on another occasion, with this advertisement, that the ordinary Cities of *England* are not to be compared with those of *France*, and *Italy*: First because the Nobles and Gentry of those Countries live for the most part in the Cities, ours in the Country-Villages; And secondly, because the *Londoners* so ingross all trading, that they drew thither all the

the Wealth and treasure of the Kingdom. By means whereof, that every day encreaseth in wealth and beauty; the rest (except *Bristol* only) do decay as sensibly: that City being like the *Spleen* in the body natural, the monstrous growth whereof starveth all the rest of the Members. *Liene excrescente, reliquum corpus contabescit*, as the Doctors have it.

There are in *England* but two *Universities*, which may equal six, nay ten of all other Countries (so that *Paris* be not in the number) most of them being no better than our Colledges of *Westminster*, *Eaton*, or *Winchester*; and none so liberally endowed, as some one of these in the Universities. Of which there are 16 in *Cambridge*, some of them called only by the name of *Halls*, but these endowed with Lands and Fellowships as the others are. In *Oxford* there are 18 Colledges endowed with Lands, besides six *Halls*, where Students live at their own charges: in both of them Professors of the Arts and Sciences, as also of Divinity, Law, Physick, and the Learned Languages, with liberal Salaries, and in each to the number of 3000 Students, so regular in their lives and conversations, as are not to be found in the World besides. The fairer and more antient, *Oxford*, which of long time, together with *Paris* in *France*, *Bononia* in *Italy*, and *Salamanca* in *Spain*, hath been honoured with the Title of *Generale studium*. For that the University of *Cambridge*, (though giving upper hand to her Sister of *Oxford*, the may take place of all the Universities in the World besides) is not of so long standing as that of *Oxford*, is evident by the testimony of *Robertus de Remington*, cited by Master *Camden*, viz. *Regnante* Edwardo *primo*, (it should rather be read *secundo*) *de studio* Grantbridge *facta est Academia, sicut Oxonium*: where the word *sicut* doth not import an identity of the time; but a relation to *Oxford*, as to the pattern. We see this truth yet clearer in the Bull of Pope *John* the 21, the contemporary of our *Edward* the Second, as I find in the work of that great Searcher of *Academical* Antiquities, Mr. *Brian Twine*. *Apostolica Authoritate statuimus* (saith the Bull) *quod Collegium Magistrorum & Scholarium ejusdem studii* (speaking of *Cambridge*) *Universitas sit censenda, &c.* But what need more than the Resolution of the *Commons* of the first Parliament holden under K. *James*? For when the Clerk of that House had put the name of *Cambridge* before *Oxford*; they taking disdainfully that *Hysteron Proteron*, commanded the Antiquities of both Universities to be searched, and after search made, gave the place to *Oxford*. But to proceed, the University of *Cambridge* as it was much of a later Foundation, so was it long before it grew into esteem: insomuch, that when *William* of *Wainflete* Bishop of *Winchester*, and Founder of *Magdalen* Colledge in *Oxon*, (whereof I was once an unworthy Member) perswaded King *Henry* the Sixth to erect a Colledge in *Oxford*, as some of the Kings his Predecessors had done before him: *immo potius* Cantabrigiæ (replyed the King) *Ut duas si fieri possit in Anglia Academias habeam*. No, said the King, in *Cambridge* rather, that so, if possible, I may have two *Universities* in my Realm of *England*.

As for the Story of this Country, that it was first peopled out of *Gaul*, is affirmed by *Cæsar*, and proved by many strong and concluding Arguments; as their Religion, Manners Languages, Customs, and the nearness of the one to the other. To omit therefore the Fable of *Brute*, and the Catalogue of 68 Kings, which are said to have reigned here successively before the coming of the *Romans*: Certain it is, that *Cæsar* found the Country cantoned into many Kingdoms (four in *Kent* alone) and the people to be very rude and illiterate. Such Learning as they had was locked up in the breasts of the *Druides*, who committed nothing unto Writing, and by that means kept the People in continual ignorance: communicating what they knew to none but those of their own *Order*, and therein being sought to by the *Druides* or *Priests* of *Gaul*; who came over into this Island to them, and did from them receive the knowledge of their sacred Mysteries. Being conquered or discovered rather by *Julius Cæsar*, it was not so much as looked after by the two next Emperors: *Augustus* and *Tiberius* counting it an high point of Wisdom, not to extend the Empire beyond the Ocean. *Caligula* had once a mind to the Adventure, but he durst not follow it. But *Claudius*, his Successor, undertook the Enterprize, solliciting thereunto by *Bericus* a noble *Briton*, who for sedition and some practices against the publick, was expelled the Country. Hereupon *Aulus Plantius* is sent over with some *Roman* Forces, by whom and *P. Ostorius Scapula*, his Successor, *Codigunus* and *Caractacus* two Kings of the *Britains*, were severally overcome in battel, a *Roman* Colony planted at *Camalodunum*, (now *Malden* in *Essex*) and the Southern parts thereof reduced to the form of a *Province*. After this time by little and little the whole was conquered, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Dunbarton* and *Edenburgh*. *Agricola* in the time of *Domitian*, having the happiness and good fortune to go beyond the furthest of his Predecessors; and so much moderation not to venture further, where there was nothing to be got but blows cold, and hunger.

At the first entrance of the *Romans*, the Island was divided into several Nations, each governed by its own Kings and particular Princes, different in their ends and counsels, and so more easily subdued by united Forces. The principal of which (for it is needless to make mention of inferiour *Clans*) where 1 the *Danmonii*, containing *Devonshire*, and *Cornwal*; whose chief Cities were *Isca*, now *Exeter* and *Volcha* near the Town of *Falmouth* in *Cornwal*. 2 The *Duroiriges*, inhabiting only in the County of *Dorset*; whose chief City was *Durnium* or *Durnovaria*, which we now call *Dorchester*. 3 The *Belgæ*, planted in the Counties of *Somerset*; *Southampton*, and *Wilts*, whose chief Cities were *Aquæ Calidæ*, now *Bath*: *Venta Belgarum*, now *Winchester*; and *Sorbiodunum*, the seat of *old Salisbury*. 4 The *Attrebatii*, confined within *Barkshire* only, the chief City of whom was *Gualena*, where now is *Wallingford*. 5 The *Regni*, possessed of *Sussex* and *Surrey*, whose chief Cities were *Vindelis*, now *Winchelsey*; and *Neomagus*, situate some ten miles from *London*. 6 The *Kantiani*, or the *Kentish*, having *Durovernum*, now *Canterbury*; *Dubris*, now *Dover*; and *Rhutupiæ*, now called *Richborough*, for their principal Cities. 7 The *Trinobantes* of *Middlesex*, and *Essex*, where *London* called afterwards *Augusta Trinobantum*; and *Camalodunum* the first *Roman* Colony, now called *Maldon*, the Seat-Royal of *Cunobelinus*, King of the *Trinobantes* in the time of the *Romans*. 8 The *Catieuchlani*, dwelling in the Counties of *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and *Hartford*, whose Towns of most importance were *Magivintum*, now called *Dunstable*; and *Verulamium*, (near *S. Albans*) the strongest Hold the *Britains* had in their Wars with *Cæsar*. 9 The *Iceni*, living in the Counties of *Suffolk*, *Norfolk*, *Huntington*, and *Cambridge*; their principal Cities being *Villa Faustini*, now *S. Edmundsbury*; *Sito-magus*, now *Thetford*; *Durolis*, now *Godmanchester*; and *Camboritum*, or *Cambridge*. 10 *Coritani*, who took up the whole Counties of *Lincoln*, *Leicester*, *Rutland*, *Nottingham*, *Northampton*, and *Darby*; principal Towns of which were *Lindum*, now *Lincoln*; *Rhage*, where now is *Leicester*, *Guasennæ* not far from *Stamford*, now called *Bridge-Casterton*; *Agelocis*, now *Littleborough*, a small Village near *Newark* upon *Trent*; *Tripontum*, now *Torcester*, not far from *Northampton*. 11 The *Brigantes*, the greatest Nation of the Island, filling all *York-shire*, the Bishoprick of *Durham*,

Durham, *Cumberland*, *Weſtmerland*, and the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*, in a word all the North of *England*, (except *Northumberland*, the dwelling of the (12) *Ottadini*, whoſe chief Town was *Bremenium*, thought now to be *Ribcheſter* in *Riddeſdale*.) Principal places of which large and potent Nation, were *Iſaurium*, now *Aldborow* in in the North Riding; *Eboracum* or *York*, in the Weſt Riding and *Petuaria*, thought to be *Beverley*, in the Eaſt Riding of *Yorkſhire*; *Vinovium*, where now is *Binchester*, in the Biſhoprick; *Epiacum*, now *Pap-Caſtle*, in *Cumberland*; *Calatum*, now *Wheallop-Caſtle* in *Weſtmerland*; and *Rhigodunum*, now *Rible-Cheſter* in the County Palatine of *Lancaſter*. 13 The *Cornavii*, ſeated in the Counties of *Cheſter*, *Salop*, *Worceſter*, *Stafford*, and *Warwick*, whoſe Principal Towns were, *Deuvania*, or *Legio viceſima Victrix*, now *Weſt-Cheſter*: *Uriconium*, now *Wroxeter*, an ignoble Village: *Pennocrucium*, now *Penkridge*, not far from *Stafford*: *Brannogenium*, now *Worceſter*: *Manduеſſedum*, now *Manchester*, on the River *Ankor*. 14 And laſt of all, the *Dobuni* of *Oxford*, and *Glouceſterſhires*: Principal places of the which were *Dorcinia*, now *Dorcheſter*, ſeven miles from *Oxford*, and *Corinium*, or *Cyrenceſter*, near the head of the *Thames*. Such names as are comprehended under the name of *Wales*, and *Scotland*, ſhall be remembred when we come to ſpeak of thoſe Countries.

Theſe, and the reſt of *Wales* and *Scotland* (as far as the *Romans* did proceed, being once ſubdued, *Britain* became a Member of the Roman Empire; yet ſo that many of the *Tribes* had their own Kings, and were ſuffered to govern by their own Laws: it being a known Cuſtom amongſt the *Romans*, as we find in *Tacitus*, *habere ſervitutis inſtrumenta & Reges*, to permit Kings ſometimes in the conquered Countries, making them inſtrumental to the peoples bondage. And it is ſaid of *Lucius Verus* the *Roman* Emperour, that having put an end to the *Parthian* War, *Regna Regibus*, *Provincias* Comitibus *ſuis regendas dediſſe*: he gave thoſe Kingdoms he had conquered to be ruled by Kings; the Provinces to be governed by Provincial Earls. Kings of which kind were *Codigunus* and *Praſutagus*, ſpoken of by *Tacitus*: *Lucius*, before-mentioned, the firſt Chriſtian King, and *Coilus* the Father of *Helena*, Mother of *Conſtantine* the Great. But as afterward in the *Heptarchie* of the *Saxons*, that King who overruled the reſt, and was of moſt power and eſtimation, was called the Monarch of the *Engliſh*: ſo probable enough it is, that amongſt the *Britiſh* Kings, who was in moſt credit with the *Romans*, or of moſt power amongſt his neighbours, might be permitted to aſſume the Title of King of *Britain*. The Catalogue of whom from *Caſſibelane* to *Conſtantine*, I have here ſubjoyned, according to the tenor of the *Britiſh* Hiſtory.

The Kings of *Britain* after the coming in of the *Romans*.

A. Ch.

Caſſibelane, King of the *Trinobantes*, Commander of the *Britains* in the War againſt *Julius Cæſar*.

2 *Theomantius*.

3 *Cymbeline*.

4 *Guiderius*.

45 5 *Arviragus*, by *Hector Boetius*, called *Pratuſagus*, in whoſe time *Britain* was ſubdued by *Aulus Plantius*, ſent hither from the Emperour *Claudius*.

73 6 *Marius*.

125 7 *Coilus*, the ſuppoſed Founder of *Colcheſter*.

180 8 *LUCIUS* the firſt *Chriſtian* King of *Britain*, and of all the World; who dying without Iſſue, left the *Roman* Emperour his Heir.

207 9 *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome*, and King of *Britain*.

211 10 *Baſſianus Caracalla*, Son of *Severus*, Emperour of *Rome* after his Father; who loſt the Kingdom of *Britain* to

218 11 *Carauſius*, a Native of the Iſland, who rebelling againſt *Caracalla*, obtained the Kingdom for himſelf.

225 12 *Alectus*.

232 13 *Æſculepiodorus*.

260 14 *Coilus* II. the Father of *Helena*.

289 15 *Conſtantius*, Emperour of *Rome*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, ſucceeded on the death of *Coilus* the 2d.

16 *Conſtantine* the Great, the Son of *Helena* and *Conſtantius*, who added his Eſtates in *Britain* to the *Roman* Monarchy.

But to proceed, *Britain* being thus made a Member of the *Roman* Empire, it was at firſt divided into three Provinces only, that is to ſay, *Britannia prima*, (ſo called becauſe firſt ſubdued) containing all the Countries on the South ſide of the *Thames*, and thoſe inhabited by the *Trinobantes*, *Iceni*, and *Cattieuclani*, whoſe *Metropolis* or chief City was *London*. 2 *Britannia ſecunda*, comprising all the Nations on the further ſide of the *Severn*, whoſe chief City was *Caer Leon* upon *Uſk*, in the County of *Munmouth*; and 3 *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, including all the reſt of the Northern border, whereof the *Metropolis* was *York*: each Province having ſeveral Cities, 28 in all. Accordingly, the Church conforming to the Platform of the Civil State, there were appointed for the Government hereof eight and twenty Biſhops, reſiding in thoſe ſeveral Cities: three of the which reſiding in the principal Cities, where honoured with the Title of *Metropolitans*, and a ſuperiority over all the Biſhops of their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of *Conſtantine*, who in his new moulding of the Empire, altered the bounds, and enlarged the number of the Provinces; adding two more unto and out of the former, viz. *Valentia*, containing all the Country from the *Frith* of *Solway*, and the *Picts wall* on the South, to the *Friths* of *Edenburg* and *Dunbritton* North, and *Flavia Cæſarienſis*, comprehending all between *Thames* and *Humber*, the reſt betwixt the *Humber* and the bounds of *Valentia*, continuing under the old name of *Maxima Cæſarienſis*, though now made leſs than any of the other four. The number of the Provinces being thus enlarged, he made the whole a full and compleat *Dioceſs* of the *Roman* Empire (whereas *Spain* had *Tingitana* added to it, as before was ſhewn) ſubordinate, as *Spain* was alſo to the *Præfectus Prætorio Galliarum*, and governed by his *Vicarius* or Lieutenant General. Of which diviſion, or rather ſubdiviſion of the *Roman* Provinces, there was no other alteration made in the *Eccleſiaſtical* government, but that the *Britiſh* Church became more abſolute and independent than it was before; and had a *Primate* of its own (as each *Dioceſs* had) reſiding in the ſame City with the *Vicar* or Lieutenant General (which was then at *York*) of as great power and juriſdiction in the Iſle of *Britain*, as any Patriarch of *Alexandria*, *Rome*, or *Antioch*, in their ſeveral *Patriarchates*. The *Metropolitans* were no more than before they were: It being ordered by a Canon of the Council of *Chalcedon*, that their number ſhould not be augmented by any alteration made of the *Roman* Provinces. As for the Forces which the *Romans* kept here in continual pay, as well to keep their Coaſts and Fron-

Frontiers against the Enemy, as for retaining of the Natives in their due obedience; they came in all (if *Pancirol* be not mistaken in his reckoning) to 23000 Foot, & 2000 Horse: three Legions keeping here their constant and continual Residence, that is to say, the sixth Legion, sirnamed *Victrix*, at *York*; the 20th Legion, sirnamed also *Victrix*, at *West-Chester*; and the second Legion sometimes at *Isca Dannoniorum*, which we now call *Exeter*, sometimes at *Isca Silurum*, which is now *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*. Which *Legions* with their *Aids* and *Cohorts*, may well make up the number spoken of before. Of so high estimation was this Island in the State of *Rome*.

Yet could not all these Forces so preserve the Country from foreign Enemies, but that in the declining of the *Roman* Empire, the *Saxons* made great spoils on the coasts thereof; as did the *Scots* and *Picts* on the Northern borders: against all which the *Romans* held out well enough, and made good their ground; till the recalling of the *Legions* out of *Britain* for defence of *Italy* it self, then wasted and destroyed by the barbarous Nations. Which hapned in or about the year of Christ 407, and some 470 years from the first invasion; *Honorius* being at that time the *Roman* Emperor, and *Victorinus* the last Governor for the Empire, in the Ile of *Britain*. For though the noble *Ætius*, on the Petition and complaint of the slaughtered people, unmercifully butchered by the *Scots* and *Picts*, sent some small Forces to assist them against those Enemies: yet were they presently called back for defence of *Gaul*, against the *Hunnes* breaking in upon it. And then the wretched *Britains* hopeless of all help from *Rome*, and being unable, by their own strength to repel the Enemy, by reason of their long ease and disuse of Arms, applyed themselves to *Aldroenus* King of *Armorica* in *France*, (called *Little Britain*) a Prince extracted from the same stock, for relief and succour. Whose Brother *Constantine* (according to the *British* story) passing over with a competent Army; and having valiantly repulsed the barbarous people, was crowned King of *Britain*, the first of a new race of Kings, which swayed the Scepter, with much trouble and continual conflicts, either against the *Scots* or *Saxons*, till they were finally subdued and shut up in *Wales*. Those of most observation in the course of the story, were, 1 *Constantine* the first King, and the restorer of the Country to Peace and quiet, traiterously murdered by a *Pict*. 2. *Vortiger*, E. of the *Guyses*, (now *Cornwal*) Protector of *Constantius* the Son of *Constantine*, taken out of a Monastery; after whose death, (wherein he was conceived to have had an hand) he got the Kingdom to himself; but being unable to defend it against the Enemy, and make his title also good against the other children of *Constantine*, first called in the *Saxons*. 3 *Vortimer*, eldest Son of *Vortiger*, who overthrew the *Saxons* in many battels; but in the midst of his Successes was poysoned by *Rowena* a *Saxon* Lady, second Wife of *Vortiger*. 4 *Arthur*, one of the Worlds nine Worthies, of whom the *Monkish* Writers, and other *Legendaries*, report so many idle and impossible actions. Doubtless he was a Prince of most perfect vertue, a great preserver of his Country from approaching ruine, and worthy the Pen of an able *Panegyrist*; by whom his brave atchievements might have come intire unto us, without the intermixture of those feats of *Chivalry*, affabulated to him and his Knights of the *Round Table*. For by the overstraining of some *Monkish* Writers, *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and the rest, they have given too just occasion to posterity to suspect that vertue, which they intended to advance; and filled us with as much ignorance of the story, as admiration of the persons. But this hath not been the ill hap of King *Arthur*, and his Nobles only; *Charlemaign*, and the *Twelve Peers* of *France*, men of great vertue and renown, suffering as deeply in the same kind by the folly of the *French Romances*. It is affirmed of this *Arthur*, (but how true I know not) that he began the custom of celebrating the *Nativity* of our Lord and Saviour for the twelve days following, with such pastimes and sports as are (or have been used of late) by the *Lords of Misrule* in some Gentlemens houses: an Institution which the *Scottish* Writers of those times much blame. Perhaps not unjustly; it being a time more fit for our devotions than such rude disports. But to proceed, King *Arthur* dying, left the Crown to the 5 *Constantine*, the Son of *Cador* Duke of *Cornwall*, his neareſt kinsman, slain by *Aurelius Conanus*, his own Nephew, who succeeded after him: which fraction did so weaken the distressed *Britains*, that they were forced to withdraw themselves beyond the *Severn*: as 6 *Careticus*, or *Caradoc*, by the joint Forces of the *Saxons*, to change the plain Countries beyond the *Severn* for the safer, but more fruitless Mountains. Of the rest, till *Cadwallader*, there is little left of any certainty, but their names only; which are thus ranked in the second race of

The Kings of *Britain* after the withdrawing of the *Romans*.

A. C.		
433	1	*Constantine*. 10.
443	2	*Constantius*. 3.
446	3	*Vortiger*. 18.
464	4	*Vortimer*, his Son. 7.
471	5	*Vortiger* (again) 10.
481	6	*Aurelius Ambrosius*. 19.
500	7	*Uter Pendragon*. 6.
506	8	*Arthur*. 36.
542	9	*Constantine* II. 4.
546	10	*Aurel. Conanus*. 30.
578	11	*Vortipor*. 4.
580	12	*Malgo*. 6.
586	13	*Careticus*, or *Caradoc*. 27.
613	14	*Cadwon*. 22.
635	15	*Cadwallan*. 43.
687	16	*Cadwallader*, the last King of the *Britains*, who on a superstitious zeal travelled in a pilgrimage to *Rome*, there to receive the habit of a *Religious* Order from the hands of Pope *Sergius*, where he dyed not long after, *Anno* 689. After whose death, his Successors were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but Kings or Princes of *Wales*. And there we shall be sure to find them.

And so the *Britains* leave the Stage, and the *Saxons* enter; a great and potent Nation amongst the *Germans*, but greater by the aggregation of many *people*, under their name and service, than in themselves: the *Jutes* and *Angles* joining with them, and passing in Accompt as the same one *Nation*, Their *Countries* different as their names until this Conjunction; but neighbouring near enough to unite together: the *Angles* dwelling at the first in that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*, which we now call *Sleswick*, where still the Town called *Angolen*, doth preserve their memory: the *Jutes* upon the North of them, where there is still a Province called by the name of *Jutland*; the *Saxons* South of both in the Dukedom of *Holstein*, situate in the very neck of that *Chersonese* where it joineth with *Germany*; Joining their powers, they spread themselves with good success, to the South & West; of which more hereafter. And growing Masters of the Seas, infested with continual Piracies the Coasts of *Britain*; occasioning herein an Officer of great trust and power, appointed to defend and scour those Seas, in the *Notitia*, called *Comes Littoris Saxonici*. Known by this means amongst the *Britains*, they were called in by *Vortiger*, to aid him against the *Scots* and *Picts*; whom they overcame in a pitched

pitched field near *Stanford*, in the County of *Lincoln*: for so far had the barbarous people marched without any resistance. Rewarded for this Victory with the Isle of *Thanet*, and after with the whole County of *Kent*, they began to quarrel with their Hosts; whom by degrees they dispossessed of all the Country on this side of *Severn*; parcelling it into seven Kingdoms, called the *Saxons Heptarchie*, that is to say, 1 Of *Kent*, 2 Of the *South-Saxons*, 3 Of the *West-Saxons*, 4 Of the *East Saxons*, 5 Of the *East-Angles*, 6 Of the *North-Humbers*, and 7 of the *Mercians*. The beginning, period and Kings of which several Kingdoms, and the uniting of them into one Monarchy, we are next to shew.

1. The Kingdom of *KENT*, confined within that County only, was begun by *Hengist*, who with his Brother *Horsus* had the leading of the *Saxon* Forces, at their first entry into *Britain*, *An.* 455. being the sixth year after their first coming in: who restoring *Paganism* to this Country, when the rest of the Isle was *Christian*, occasioned the distinction of *Kent* and *Christendom*. The *Kentish* afterwards the first of the *Saxons* who received the Gospel, by the preaching of *Augustine* the Monk, the Apostle of the *English Saxons*. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, where 1 *Canterbury*, once the Regal seat of the Kings of *Kent*, till given by *Ethelbert*, on his conversion to *Augustine* the first Archbishop thereof and his Successors: afterwards the See of those Archbishops, who had here their Palace and Cathedral, the Kings removing to *Reculver*, Seated in the East part of the Country, about seven or eight miles from the Sea, a little Brook serving it thence with some commodities. A City of more Antiquity and fame, than beauty; being now ruinous and decayed, and having nothing in it worth observation, but the Cathedral Church, first founded by *Ethelbert* before mentioned; but afterwards new built upon his foundations, in the form it now stands by Archbishop *Lankfrank*, *Will. Carboyle*, and some other of their Successors in the said See. The Archi-episcopal Palace is a goodly building, and the ruines of S. *Augustines* Monastery shew what once it was. 2. *Dover*, antiently called *Dubris*, seated on the Sea-shore, where the passage is shortest into *France*; for that cause Fortified with a strong and (in those days accounted an) impregnable Castle; esteemed one of the keys of *England* and the chief of the *Cinque Ports*; now giving the title of an Earl to the house of *Hunsdon*, chief of the Family of the *Caries*, nearly allied to Queen *Elizabeth* of Famous memory. 3 *Rochester*, seated on the *Medway*, not far from *Chattham* (the station of the Royal Navy) an antient City, but of no greatness; in former times called *Durobrivis*, after that *Roffa*, thence the name of *Roff-chester*; a Bishops See, the second for Antiquity in all the Island. 4 *Maidstone*, upon the *Medway* also near the head thereof, the largest and most beautiful in all this Country, and most commodiously seated for publick business.

The Kings of *Kent*.

A. Ch.		
455	1	*Hengist*, the first King.
488	2	*Esk* or *Osca*.
512	3	*Octa*.
532	4	*Immerick*.
561	5	*Ethelbert*, the first Christian King of this Country.
617	6	*Edbald*.
641	7	*Ercombert*.
665	8	*Egbert*.
673	9	*Lotharius*.
686	10	*Edrick*.
693	11	*Wightred*.
720	12	*Egbert* II.
749	13	*Ethelbert* II.
754	14	*Alricus*.
793	15	*Ethelbert* III.
797	16	*Guthred*.
805	17	*Baldred*, the last King of *Kent*, who lost both life and Kingdom to *Egbert*, King of *West-Sex*, or the *West-Saxons*, *Anno* 824. The Progeny of *Hengist* having been before extinguished in the person of *Alricus*, overthrown and slain by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*.

II. The Kingdom of *SOUTH-SEX*, or of the *SOUTH-SAXONS*, was begun by *Ella*, a noble Captain of that People, *An.* 488. It contained only the two Counties of *Sussex* and *Surrey*, which were thence denominated, the first so called *quasi South-Sex*, the Country of the *South Saxons*; the second *quasi South Rey*, as lying on the South-side of the River *Thames*, in the same sense as S. *Maries* Church on the other side of that River (in respect of *London*) is called S. *Mary Over-Rey*. The *Christian* Faith suppressed here, as in other places, was restored again in the time of King *Edilwalch*, by the preaching of S. *Wilfride*, Archbishop of *York*, living here in Exile. Places of most importance in it, were 1 *Chichester*, built by *Cissa* the 2d King hereof, and called *Cissancester*, encompassed almost round with the River *Lavant*, falling not far off into the Sea: the chief Town of *Sussex*, and a Bishops Sea, removed hither from *Sealsy*, a Demy-Island, in the time of the *Norman* Conqueror, where it was first planted by Archbishop *Wilfride*. 2 *Hastings* one of the *Cinque*-ports, in *Sussex* also; the landing place of the *Normans*, & Famous for the overthrow of King *Harold* in the fields adjoyning. 3 *Guileford*, upon the River *Wey*, the chief Town of *Surrey*, well built, and having in it two Parish-Churches. 4 *Arundel*, in a *Dale* or Valley on the River *Arun*, and from thence so named: belonging to the Crown in the time of the *Saxons*, when given by the Testament of King *Alfride* unto *Anthelm*, his Brothers Son. Of great note for a beautiful and capacious Castle; but more for giving the title of Earl to the noble Families of the *Albeneys*, the *Fitz-Alans*, and the *Howards*: this last of such a large and diffused Nobility, that in the year 1641. there were no fewer than 8 *Howards*, in the house of *Peers*. 5 *Kingston* upon the *Thames*, so called to distinguish it from *Kingston* upon *Hull* in *Yorkshire*; heretofore Famous for the Coronation of the Monarchs of the *English Saxons*, whence it had the name of *Kingston*, or the Kings Town. This Kingdom had only three Kings, crushed in the infancy thereof by more potent neighbours.

The Kings of the *South-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
488	1	*Ella*, the first King.
514	2	*Cissa*, the Son of *Ella*, who lost his life and Kingdom to *Cerdic* King of the *West-Saxons*.
590	3	*Cheulin*, King of *West-Sex*, called himself King of the *South-Saxons*.
	4	*Edelwalch*, or *Ethelwolf*, the first Christian King, overcome and slain in battel by *Ceadwal*, King of the *West-Saxons*, *Anno* 687. After whose death *Berthan* and *Authum*, two Brethren, took on themselves the Government, with the title of *Dukes* or Captains: and held it for a little while. But not being able to withstand the puissance of the *West-Saxons*, this Kingdom was subdued by *Ina*, the Successor of *Ceadwal*; by whom united to that Crown.

III. The Kingdom of *WEST-SEX*, or the *WEST-SAXONS*, the third in order, and that which did in fine

prevail over all the reſt; contained the Counties of *Cornwall*, *Devon*, *Somerſet*, *Dorſet*, *Wilts*, *Southampton*, and *Berks*: begun by *Cerdic*, a noble Commander of the *Saxons*, arriving with new Forces out of *Germany*, Anno 495. who having overcome the *Britains* of this Weſtern Tract, conducted by *Natanland* their Chieftain, entituled himſelf King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, Anno 522. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as elſewhere, was reſtored again in the time of *Kingils*, their firſt Chriſtian King; by the preaching of S. *Birinus* Biſhop of *Dorcheſter* near *Oxford*, then a great City, of no fewer than ten Pariſhes, now reduced to one.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, were 1 *Exeter*, a fair and goodly City, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Cridington* or *Kirton*, by *Leofricus*, An. 1049. Seated upon the Bank of the River *Ex*, whence the name of *Exceaſter*; environed with deep ditches, and very ſtrong Walls, in compaſs about a mile and half beſides the Suburbs, in which are contained in all 15 Pariſh Churches, beſides the Miniſter, a beautiful and ſtately Fabrick. 2 *Bath*, ſo called from the *Baths* there being, the chief City of *Somerſet*, by the *Latines* called *Aquæ Solis*; by the *Greeks* Ὕδατα θερμαῖα, for the ſelf-ſame reaſon. Situate in a low Valley, environed about with Hills very ſteep and high, from whence come many Rivulets and freſh Springs, to the great Commodity of the people. A fine neat Town, and beautified with as neat a Church, heretofore a Monaſtery, partner with *Wells*, the Biſhop's See, in the ſtile Epiſcopal; and gives the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Bourchiers*. 3 *Falemouth* in *Carnwal*, ſeated upon a large and capacious Bay, ſo full of Creeks and Roads, capable of the beſt Ships, that it is ſaid, an hundred Sail of Ships may be lodged therein with ſuch convenience, that from the top of the one, the Maſt of another is not to be ſeen; the mouth or entrance of it defended for the greater ſafety with two very ſtrong Caſtles built by *Henry* the 8th, that of S. *Maudits* on the Eaſt, and that of *Pendinas* (commonly called *Pendennis*) upon the Weſt. 4 *Dorcheſter*, the chief Town of *Dorſetſhire*, which is thence denominated by *Antoninus*, called *Durnovaria*, the principal at that time of the *Durotriges*: an Inland Town, and conſequently of no great trading: not ſo much famous for ought elſe as giving the Title of a Marqueſs to *Henry* Earl of *Kingſton*, of the noble Family of the *Pierrpoints*. 5 *Wilton*, the head Town, in thoſe times of *Wiltſhire*, and a Biſhops See, honoured with the reſidence of ſeveral Biſhops. But by tranſlating of the See to *Sarum* or *Sarisbury*) as the fitter place and carrying thither therewithal the thorow fare which before was here; it fell by little and little into decay; and is now hardly worth the reputation of a Market Town. 6 *Wincheſter* called *Venta* in the times of *Romans*, by the *Saxons*, *Vent-ceaſter*, ſituate on the banks of a pleaſant River, the ſeat Royal of the *Weſt-Saxon* Kings, who had here their Palace called *Wolves-eye*: ſo named from the Kings of the *Wolphian* Family, and the ſituation of it in the circlings of the foreſaid River, which the old *Saxons* called an *Eye*: not from the *Wooll-Staple* here kept, as ſome; much leſs from Cardinal *Wolſey*, as others moſt abſurdly think. The houſe given after to the Biſhops, and made their Palace. The Town in compaſs two miles, beſides the Suburbs; commodiouſly ſeated in a low place, between very ſteep Hills, by which it is defended both from cold and wind. Afflicted very much ſince thoſe times both by War and Fire, half of the ground within the Town being Fields and Gardens; but ſtill adorned with a Magnificent Cathedral, and a gallant (but no great) Caſtle, bravely mounted upon an Hill for defence and proſpect; beſides a *Colledge*, and an *Hoſpital* added ſince thoſe days. 7 *Southampton*, conveniently ſeated on an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of burden to the very Key; which maketh it one of the richeſt Towns in thoſe parts of *England*. Well built, of fair large ſtreets, beautified with five Pariſh Churches, and fortified with high Walls, a double Ditch, and a right ſtrong Caſtle: but the Caſtle now decayed and ruined. 8 *Reading*, on the Banks of the River *Kennet*, where it falleth into the *Thames*, by which means it hath the convenience of both Rivers: A Town of great Trade for Clothing, well built, and of three Pariſh Churches; heretofore beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and a goodly Monaſtery, but both decayed. 9 *Windſor*, called *Windleſhores* in the old *Saxon*, ſituate near the Banks of the *Thames* on a riſing ground, which gives it a fair Proſpect over all the Country; adorned in ſucceeding times with a Palace Royal of the Kings of *England*, and the Seat of the Order of the *Garter*. 10 *Wallingford*, the *Gualleua* of the Antients, and then the chief Town of the *Attrebatii*, as it was afterwards (in the time of the *Saxons*) of the County of *Berks*: a mile in compaſs at that time within the Walls, fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, and adorned with twelve Pariſhes. So deſolated by a Plague, *An.* 1348. that there is now but one Church left, hardly Inhabitants enough to keep that in repair; and nothing of the Walls left (as not much of the Caſtle) but the track and ruines.

The King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.

A. Ch.		
522	1	*Cerdic*, the firſt King. 17.
539	2	*Kenric*. 29.
565	3	*Celingus*, or *Cheuline*. 10.
595	4	*Celric*. 5.
600	5	*Ceolwolf*. 14.
614	6	*Kingil*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
646	7	*Kenewalchin*. 31.
677	8	*Sigebert*. 1.
678	9	*Eſewin*. 2.
680	10	*Centwin*.
687	11	*Ceadwal*.
690	12	*Ina*, who firſt gave the *Peter-pence* to the Church of *Rome*.
725	13	*Ethelard*. 14.
739	14	*Cuthbert*. 16.
755	15	*Sigebert*. II. 1.
756	16	*Kinulph*. 31.
787	17	*Bithric*. 13.
800	18	*Egbert*, the moſt Puiſſant King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who united all the *Heptarchie* into one Eſtate, of whom ſee more amongſt the *Monarchs* of the *Saxons*, and the Kings of *England*.

IV. The Kingdom of *EAST-SEX*, or the *EAST-SAXONS*, was begun about the year 527, by *Erchinwin*, deſcended from *Woden*, the common Progenitor of the *Saxons*; from whom we have the name of *Wedneſday*, or *Wodenſday*, as they called it formerly. It contained only the Counties of *Middleſex*, *Eſſex*, and ſo much of *Hartfordſhire*, as is in the *Dioceſs* of *London*. The *Chriſtian* Faith expulſed here as in other places, was reſtored again in the time of *Sebert*, the Founder of the Abby Church of S. *Peter* in *Weſtminſter*, by the Preaching of *Mellitus* the firſt Biſhop of *London* after the entrance of the *Saxons* ſuppreſſed again by *Seward*, and *Sigebert*, the Sons of *Sebert*; but ſetled ſtronger than before by *Cedda*, the next Biſhop. Principal Cities of this Kingdom, beſides *London*, ſpoken of already, were 1 *Weſtminſter*, ſituate in thoſe times a mile from *London*, now adjoyning to it. The See of the Archbiſhop of *London* in the time of the *Britains*: afterwards by the *Saxons* called *Thorn-eye*, or the Thorny Iſland; till the new *Minſter* built by *Sebert* as before is ſaid, and the *Weſtern* ſituation of it in regard of St. *Pauls*, built at the ſame time by *Ethelbert* the King of

of *Kent*; gained it this new name. A City honoured with the Seat of the Kings of *East-Sex*, and since those times with that of the Kings of *England*; the names of the *Old Palace* of the one, and the *New-Palace* of the other, still remaining there; beautified upon that occasion with more stately and magnificent houses, belonging to the King, Bishops, and Nobility, than all the other in the Kingdom, having of late a new Town added to it in the *Covent Garden* (a place belonging formerly to the *Monks* of *Westminster*) for uniformity of building, and handsome streets, inferiour to no City of *France* or *Italy*. 2 *Colchester*, the chief Town of *East-sex*, situate near the Sea, on the River *Coln*; a Colony of the *Londoners* in former times, thence called *Colonia Londinensium*, and *Colonia* only, then a Bishops See: from which, or from the River, with the Addition of *Ceaster*, after the manner of the *Saxons*, came the name of *Colchester*. A fair and well built Town, and of good resort, fortified with an old *Roman* Wall, and having in it to the number of 14 Churches. 3. *Ithancester* in *Dengey* Hundred, were S. *Ceadda* the second Bishop of *London*, baptized the relapsed *East-Saxon*. 4 *Hartford*, the chief Town of the County so called; by *Beda* named *Herudford*, and of great note in his time for a Synod there held in the dawning of the day of Christianity amongst the *Saxons*; in which S. *Augustine* the Monk, the first Apostle of that people, had a conference or consultation with the British Bishops: More memorable in the following times, for giving the title of an Earl to the illustrious Family, sirnamed *De Clare*; the addition of an Honour, and a goodly Patrimony to *John* of *Gaunt*, Duke of *Lancaster*; and at this time, title of Earl, and Marques to the noble Family of the *Seymours*.

The Kings of the *East-Saxons*.

A.C.		
527	1	*Erchenwin* the first King.
587	2	*Sledda*.
596	3	S. *Sebert*, the first *Christian* King.
	4	*Seward*, and *Sigebert*.
623	5	*Sigebert* II. or the Little.
	6	*Sigebert* III.
661	7	*Swithelme*.
664	8	*Sighere*.
664	9	S. *Sebba*.
694	10	*Sigheard*.
	11	*Seofride*.
701	12	*Offo*.
709	13	*Selred*.
774	14	*Suthred*, the last King of the *East-Saxons* subdued by *Egbert* the great and potent King of *West-Sex*, *Anno* 828. and his Kingdom made a member of that rising Monarchy.

V. The Kingdom of the *EAST-ANGLES*, so called from the *Angli* or *English*, which possessed these parts, and the *Eastern* situation of it; begun by *Uffa*, a great Commander of the *Saxons*, *Anno* 575. contained the Counties of *Norfolk*, *Suffolk*, *Cambridgeshire*, and the Isle of *Ely*. The *Christian* Faith first planted here in the Reign of *Redwall* the third King, by the Ministry of *Felix* a *Burgundian*, the first Bishop of the *East-Angles*, the See whereof was afterwards removed to *Norwich*. Places of most importance in it, were 1 *Dunwich* on the Seashore, the first Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for the County of *Suffolk*; then a Town capable of that dignity, now ruinous, decayed, and for the greatest part worn into the Sea. 2 *Ipswich* in the same County of *Suffolk*, and the chief of the Country, a rich, populous, and well traded Empory, consisting of no fewer than twelve Parish Churches. 3 *Norwich*, the head City of *Norfolk*, situate on the River *Yare*, which runs thence to *Yarmouth*, lying out in length a mile and an half, half as much in breadth, & in that Circuit comprehending about 20 Parishes; well walled about with many a *Turret*, & 12 *Gates* for entrance; but hath within it much waste Ground, the City suffering great loss both in wealth and buildings, by *Kets* Rebellion, in the time of King *Edward* the sixth. Recovered of the first blow by the *Dutch Manufactures*, of the last still languishing: yet still it glorieth in the beauties of a fair Cathedral, the three Palaces of the Bishops, the Dukes of *Norfolk*, and the Earls of *Surrey*, and the ruins of an ancient Castle of the *Saxons* building. 4 *North Elmham*, the Bishops See of the *East-Angles*, for those parts which we now call *Norfolk*: both this and that at *Dunwich* ruinated in the *Danish* Wars, but this reviving at the end of 100 years and here continuing, both Sees united unto one, till removed to 5 *Thetford*, another Town of this County, situated on the confluence of the *Thet*, and the lesser *Ouse*: a larger Town than either of the other two, from whence at last removed to *Norwich*. 6 *Cambridge*, the chief Town of that County, by *Antonine* called *Camboritum* whence the Modern name: unless we rather fetch it from a Bridge over the River *Cam* or *Grant* (for some call it *Grantbridge*) as perhaps we may. A Town well built by reason of the University, said to be founded by *Segebert*, King of the *East-Angles*, of whom it is affirmed by *Beda*, that he founded a School for the education of Children in the ways of good Learning; but he speaketh neither of *University*, nor nameth *Cambridge* for the place. 7 *Ely*, situate in the Isle so named, occationed by the divided streams of *Nen* and *Ouse*, with the over-flotes of other Rivers; turning a great part of this tract into Fens and Marshes, the Inhabitants whereof were called *Girvii*. A place of no great beauty or reputation, as situate in a foggy and unhealthful air; but only for a fair Monastery built by S. *Ethelreda*, Wife of *Egfride*, King of the *Northumbers*, by her made a Nunnery; afterwards rebuilt and repleniished with Monks by *Ethelwold* Bishop of *Winchester*, *Anno* 970. or thereabouts, finally made a Bishops See in the time of King *Henry* the first, *Anno* 1109.

The Kings of the *East-Angles*.

A. Ch.		
575	1	*Uffa*, the first King.
582	2	*Titullus*.
593	3	*Redwall*, the first Christian King.
624	4	*Erpenwald*.
636	5	S. *Sigebert*.
638	6	*Egric*.
642	7	*Anna*.
654	8	*Ethelbert*.
656	9	*Edelwald*.
664	10	*Alduff*.
683	11	*Elfwolph*.
714	12	*Beorn*.
714	13	S. *Ethelred*.
749	14	*Ethelbert* II. treacherously murdered by *Offa*, the great King of the *Mercians*, to whose Court he came an invited Guest, *Anno* 793. after whose death this Kingdom became subject to the *Mercians*, and then to *Egbert* the *West-Saxon*, governed by Tributary Kings of their own Nation, of whom we have no *constat* till the time of
870	15	S. *Edmund*, descended from *Anna*, the seventh King hereof, Martyred by the *Danes* for his stout and constant perseverance in the Faith of *CHRIST*, from whence the fair Town of

S. *Edmundsbury*, in the County of *Suffolk*, took denomination. After whose death the Kingdom was possessed by the *Danes*, till vanquished by King *Edward* the Elder, by whom it was united unto the rest of *England*.

VI. The Kingdom of *NORTHUMBERLAND*, so called from the situation on the North of *Humber*, contained the Counties of *York*, *Lancaster*, *Durham*, *Westmerland*, *Cumberland*, and *Northumberland*, properly so called; and all the Southern parts of *Scotland*, as far as to the *Frythes* of *Edenburgh* and *Dunbritton*, formerly reckoned of as Members of the *Roman* Empire. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Ocea* the son, and *Ebusa* the brother of *Hengist*, Conductors of new Forces hither, (all of the Nation of the *Angli*) by the leave of *Vortiger*; under pretence of guarding these Countries from the inroads of the *Scots* and *Picts*. By them divided into two Provinces, the one called *Deira*, extending from the *Humber*, to the River of *Tees*, the other called *Bernicia*, reaching from *Tees*, to the two *Frythes* before-mentioned: both governed a long while by Dukes, under the Soveraignty and homage of the Kings of *Kent*. In the year 547 Duke *Ida* takes unto himself the title of King of *Bernicia*, and *An.* 559. Duke *Ella*, doth the like in *Deira*. The Towns of most notice in this last (for the former is now reckoned as a part of *Scotland*) besides *York*, spoken of before, were 1 *Loncaster*, the chief Town of that County, situate on the River *Lon*, which with addition of *Ceaster* much used by the *Saxons*, made the name thereof; called for the same reason *Longovicus* by the Emperour *Antonine*. The Town not very well peopled, nor much frequented, but of sufficient fame in our *English* Annals for those Noble persons which have successively born the titles of Earls and Dukes of it; the greatest Princes for Revenue, of any Subjects in *Christendom*, 2 *Kendal*, or *Candale*, situate in a dale on the River *Can*, whence it had the name; the chief Town of *Westmerland*: built in the manner of a Cross, two long and broad streets thwarting one another. A rich, populous and well traded Town, especially for the making of fine woollen-cloth; but of more fame for giving the title of an Earl to *John* Duke of *Bedford*, Regent of *France*; and to *John de Foix*, created Earl hereof by *Henry* the sixth. 3 *Carlile*, upon the River *Eden*, a frontire Town betwixt the *Romans* and *Scots*, as now between the *Scots* and *English*: consumed to ashes in the time of the *Danish* furies; afterwards rebuilt by *William Rufus*, made an Episcopal See in the raign of K. *Henry* the first, and beautified with a Cathedral founded at the perswasion of *Athelwolfus*, the first Bishop hereof. 4 *Monck-chester*, on the Northern banks of the River *Tine*, which maketh there a safe and capacious Haven. Of no great note till the *Norman* Conquest, when from a Castle built by *Robert* Son of *William* the Conqueror, it was called *New-Castle*: growing from that time forwards to such wealth and trading, by the neighbourhood of the Cole-mines there, that it is now the goodliest Town in all the North; fortified with strong Walls, beautified with five fair Churches, and giving to the L. *Will. Cavendish*, Viscount *Mansfield*, the honorary titles of Earl and Marquess. 5 *Hagulstade*, or *Hextold*, by the *Romans* called *Axelodunum*, by the *Normans*, *Hexam*: a Bishops See in the first time of *Christianity* amongst these *Northumbers*, specially so called, converted to the Faith in the time of *Oswald* their tenth King, by the Ministry of *Aiden* the first Bishop of *Lindisfarn*: *Eata* the fifth Bishop, erecting here an Episcopal See, for the better propagation of the Gospel among this people; after a succession of ten Bishops ruinated and suppressed by the *Danish* furies. 6 *Dunholm*, now *Durham*, situate on an Hill, as the name importeth, a Bishops See, translated hither with the body of St. *Cutbert*, *An.* 990. or thereabouts, from *Liudisfarn*, a small Island on the Coast of *Northumberland*, where it was first erected by S. *Aidainus*, the first Bishop thereof: planted in *Lindisfarn*, because of the solitude of the place; translated hither to avoid the fury of the *Danes*, who then raged extremely in these Quarters. And being setled here, was fortified with such ample priviledges and possessions, by the *Saxon* Kings: that the Bishops were reputed for *County Palatines*, at and before the *Norman* Conquest. 7 *Halifax*, in the *West Riding* of *York-shire*, of great wealth by making of cloth. 8 *Rippon*, in the same, adorned with a fair Cathedral or Collegiate Church, subordined to that of *York*. 9 *Godmanham*, (by *Beda* called *Gotmandin Gaham*) famous in those days for a Temple of the *Saxon-Idols*, burnt down and utterly destroyed by *Coife*, the chief Priest thereof, converted to *Christianity* by *Paulinus* the first Archbishop of *York*, and the Apostle of the *Northumbers* in these parts. The Catalogue of the Kings of which mighty Nation, by reason of the division of it into two Kingdoms, as before is said, is very intricate and confused; the Kingdoms being sometimes united, and sometimes dis-joyned. But in regard the most prevalent King of either, was called King of *Northumberland*, the other of *Bernicia* or *Deira* only, I shall accordingly subjoyn them in this order following.

The Kings of *Northumberland*.

A. Ch.		
549	1	*Ida* the first King.
560	2	*Ella*, King of *Deira*.
589	3	*Ethelrick*, Son of *Ida* King of *Bernicia*.
593	4	*Ethelfride*.
617	5	*Edwin*, Son of *Ella*, the first *Christian* King.
633	6	*Osrick*.
634	7	S. *Oswald*.
645	8	*Oswy*, who having subdued and slain *Oswin* King of *Deira*, was the first absolute King of all *Northumberland*, no more divided after that.
671	9	*Egfride*.
686	10	S *Alfride*.
705	11	*Osred*.
716	12	*Kenred*.
718	13	*Osrick* II.
729	14	*Ceolnulph*.
738	15	*Ogbert*.
758	16	*Eswulph*.
759	17	*Edilwald*.
765	18	*Alured*.
774	19	*Ethelred*.
778	20	*Alfwald*.
789	21	*Osred* II.
794	22	*Ethelred* II. After whose death, slain by his treacherous and rebellious Subjects (as many of his Predecessors had been before) the Kingdom became distracted into parts and Factions; invaded by the *Danes* on the one side, the *Scots* and *Picts* on the other, who during these distractions had possessed themselves of all the Countries on the other side of the *Twede*. At the last *Anno* 827. they yielded themselves to *Egbert*, the most Potent King of the *West-Saxons*, ruled by his Deputies for a while, then subdued by the *Danes*, and finally recovered, to the Crown of *England*, by *Athelstan* and *Edred*, *An.* 950. or thereabouts. Content since that to give the Title of an Earl to some eminent persons both of *English* and *Norman* Races: as it hath done since the first year of King *Richard* the second, to the Noble Family of the *Percies*, descended by *Joseeline* of *Brabant*, Brother of *Adolize* the second Wife of King *Henry* the first, from *Charles*

the

the *Great*, Emperour, and King of *France*, and that too in a clearer Line than the Dukes of *Lorrain*, who ſo much brag of it.

VII. The Kingdom of *MERCIA*, was begun by *Cridda*, or *Creodda*, a great Commander of the *Angli*, or *Engliſh* Nation, who ſetling in the heart of *Britain*, where the people were leaſt uſed to Arms, made themſelves Maſters of the Counties of *Glouceſter*, *Worceſter*, *Hereford*, *Salop*, *Cheſter*, *Stafford*, *Derby*, *Nottingham*, *Leiceſter*, *Rutland*, *Lincoln*, *Huntingdon*, *Northampton*, *Warwick*, *Oxon*, *Buckingham*, *Bedford*, and the reſt of *Hartfordſhire*; which bounded in a manner by all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kingdoms, had the name of *Mercia*, from the word *Mearc*, which ſignifieth a bound or limit. The *Chriſtian* Faith ſuppreſſed here, as in other Kingdoms of the *Saxons*, was reſtored again in the Reigns of *Penda*, *Peada*, and *Wolfhere*, by the preaching of St. *Chad* the firſt Biſhop of *Lichfield*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Hereford*, ſeated on the Banks of the River *Wye*, in the middle of moſt flouriſhing Meadows, and no leſs plentiful Corn fields; raiſed out of the Ruines of *Ariconium* here placed by *Antonine*, the tract of which name it doth ſtill retain. A Biſhops See in the time of the *Britains*, reſtored to that dignity by the *Saxons*, *An.* 680, the honourable title of the *Bohuns*, once Earls hereof; and afterwards of *Henry* of *Bullingbrook*, Duke of *Hereford*. 2 *Worceſter*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Severn*, over which it hath a very fair Bridge with a Tower upon it. A Biſhops See, *Anno* 679, beautified with a fair Cathedral, and every way conſiderable for ſituation, number of Churches, neat Buildings, the induſtry of the Inhabitants, and giving the Title of an Earl to the Noble Family of the *Somerſets*, extracted by the *Beauforts* from *John* of *Gaunt*. 3 *Lichfield*, the firſt Biſhops See amongſt the *Mercians*, founded there *Anno* 646, by *Oſwy* King of the *Northumbers*, but fixed and ſetled by St. *Chad* in the Reign of *Wolfhere* King of the *Mercians*; endowed in the very Infancy with ſuch fair poſſeſſions, that in the year 793 *Adulfus* the Biſhop hereof, was made Archbiſhop of the *Mercians*. But it proved only a perſonal honour, and died with him. 4 *Coventry*, ſo called from an old *Covent* or Religious houſe, which gave name unto it; Scituate in *Warwickſhire*, and now the principal of that County, though eſteemed a County of it ſelf: beautified with a goodly Wall, two fair Pariſh Churches, large Sreets, and very handſom Houſes. A City of great Trade & Riches, though deſtitute of all advantages which a Navigable River might afford it; heretofore of great Fame for a ſtately Monaſtery, to which the See Epiſcopal was for a while removed from *Lichfield*, now a ruine only. 5 *Leiceſter*, once a Biſhops See, the *Diocеſe* taken out of *Lichfield*, *An.* 733, removed to *Dorcheſter* near *Oxon*, and thence to *Lincoln*. Beautified in thoſe days with a fair Collegiate Church, a magnificent Abbey, and a ſtrong Caſtle; all decayed and ruined by the iniquity and injury of theſe later times: the Town remaining in as good plight both for Trade and Buildings, as moſt Towns do which want a Navigable River. Of moſt fame for the Earls thereof, *Algar* and *Edwin*, noble *Saxons*, *Simon de Montfort* the *Cataline* and great *Incendiary* of this Kingdom, the Princes of the Houſe of *Lancaſter*, who bore this Title; with ſome others ſince. 6 *Darby*, upon the River *Derwent*, a well-traded Town, and of good reſort; adorned with five Churches, a goodly Stone Bridge, and a large Market-Place; the honorary title of the noble Family of the *Stanleys*, created Earls hereof by King *Henry* the Seventh. 7 *Nottingham*, ſeated on the *Trent*, but very high upon an Hill, which overlooks it. For Buildings, fair ſtreets, and a ſpacious Market-place, not giving way to many Cities; but of moſt fame for a Royal and magnificent Caſtle, which for ſtrength, ſtatelineſs, and proſpect, may juſtly challenge the precedency of moſt in *England*. 8 *Lincoln*, a Town in thoſe days of great ſtrength and note, one of the beſt peopled Cities in all the *Heptarchy*; and of great Merchandiſe and Traffick both by Sea and Land: inſomuch that *Remigius*, then Biſhop of *Dorcheſter*, thought fit to tranſlate hither the Epiſcopal See. Now much decayed, and thence the Proverb, that *Lincoln was*, *London is*, &c. The chief fame which now it hath, is for the *Minſter*, one of the ſtatelieſt Piles in *England*, and perhaps in Chriſtendom; high ſeated on a Hill, and from thence diſcerned over all the Country. 9 *Huntingdon*, or the *Hunters Town*, from the great ſport the Hunters found in the neighbouring *Foreſt*, commodiouſly ſeated on the Northern bank of the River *Ouſe*, riſing on the North with a ſoft aſcent, conſiſting of four Pariſh Churches, and ſhews the ruins of a Caſtle built by *Edward* the *Elder*, *An.* 917. 10 *Peterburgh*, ſeated in a Nook or *Angle* of *Northamptonſhire*, where formerly had been a Gulf or Whirpool of exceeding depth: but made firm ground by *Wolfere* King of the *Mercians*, when he laid the Foundations of the Monaſtery, *Anno* 633, dedicated to St. *Peter*, whence it had this name; before then called *Medanſhede*. A Town, but for the Church, of no great eſteem, as ſtanding out of the way for Trade, and in no plauſible place for health or pleaſure; yet ſhewing two handſom ſtreets, a large Market-place, and a fair Pariſh Church (beſides the Abbey) made an Epiſcopal See by King *Henry* the 8th. 11 *Northampton*, built on the Northern Bank of the River *Antona*, (now *Nen*) whence it had the name. A Town which for the beauty and circuit of it need not give way to many Cities; fortified heretofore with a very ſtrong Caſtle, and ſeated in ſo good an Air, that once the Students of *Cambridge* had a purpoſe to remove their Univerſity hither. The Noble Family of the *Comptons* are now Earls hereof. 12 *Bedford*, ſo called from *Beds* and Lodgings on the *Ford*, built on both ſides thereof for the uſe of Travellers; growing in time to ſo great bigneſs as to contain in it five Pariſh Churches: famous in former times for the great Battel fought in the adjoining Fields, *Anno* 572, in which *Cuthwolf* the *Saxon* vanquiſh'd the *Britains*, and became Maſter of the Country: But more famous for giving the title of Duke to *John* of *Lancaſter*, Regent of *France* for King *Henry* the ſixth, and *Jaſper* of *Hatfield*, Uncle to King *Henry* the 7th. 13 St. *Alban*, ſo called from a famous Monaſtery, here founded by *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, in honour of St. *Alban*, the *Proto-Martyr* of *Britain*, a Citizen of *Verulamium*, near adjoining to it: out of the ruins whereof, decayed by age, and deſtroyed by War; aroſe the preſent greatneſs of St. *Albans*, the faireſt and beſt traded Town in the County of *Hartford*. 12 *Buckingham*, the chief Town of the County ſo called, ſituate on the River *Ouſe*: fortified by King *Edward* the Elder againſt the *Danes*, *Anno* 915, otherwiſe not much obſervable, but for thoſe many noble perſonages which have had the title of Dukes hereof.

The Kings of *Mercia*.

A. C.	
582	1 *Criodda*, the firſt King.
593	2 *Webba*.
614	3 *Cheorl*.
626	4 *Penda*.
656	5 *Peada*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King.
659	6 *Wulfhere*.
675	7 *Ethelbred*.
704	8 *Kenred*.
709	9 *Chelred*.

716 10 *Ethelbald*, overcome by *Cuthbert* King of the *West Saxons*, at a Fight near *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, the place ſtill called *Battelage* Hill.
758 11 *Offa* the Great.
796 12 *Egfride*.
797 13 *Kenwolf*.
819 14 *Kenelm*.
820 15 *Cheolwolf*.
821 16 *Bernulf*.
824 17 *Ludecan*.
826 18 *Withlaf*, overcome in fight (as were his two Predeceſſors) by *Egber* King of *Weſt-Sex*, became his tributary.
839 19 *Berthulf*.
852 20 *Burdred*, a ſubſtituted King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the laſt King of the *Mercians* (the ſhort Reign of his ſix Predeceſſors portending that fatal period to be near at hand.) After whoſe death, *Anno* 886, this Kingdom for ſome few years tyrannized over by the *Danes*, was united by King *Alured* to the *Engliſh* Monarchy.

Such was the Order and Succeſſion of the *Saxon* Kings, during the *Heptarchie*, or diviſion of it into ſeven Kingdoms; continuing ſeparate and diſtinct till the prevailing Fortune of the *Weſt-Saxons* brought them all together into one, by the name of *England*. But ſo, that they were ſubject for the moſt part unto one alone, who was entituled *Rex Gentis Anglorum*: thoſe which were ſtronger than the reſt, giving the Law unto them in their ſeveral turns, and are theſe that follow:

The *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons* in the time of the *Heptarchie*.

A. C.
455 1 *Hengiſt*, King of *Kent*, who firſt brought the *Saxons* into *Britain*.
481 2 *Ella*, the firſt King of the *South-Saxons*.
495 3 *Cerdic*, the firſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
534 4 *Kenric*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
561 5 *Cheulin*, or *Celingus*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*.
562 6 *Ethelbert*, King of *Kent*, the firſt *Chriſtian* King of the *Saxons*.
616 7 *Redwald*, King of the *Eaſt-Angles*.
617 8 *Edwin*, King of *Northumberland*.
634 9 *Oſwald*, King of *Northumberland*.
643 10 *Oſwy*, King of *Northumberland*.
659 11 *Wulfhere*, King of *Mercia*.
675 12 *Ethelored*, King of *Mercia*.
704 13 *Kenred*, King of *Mercia*.
709 14 *Chelred*, King of *Mercia*.
716 15 *Ethelbald*, King of *Mercia*.
758 16 *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*.
794 17 *Egfride*, King of *Mercia*.
796 18 *Kenwolf*, King of *Mercia*.
800 19 *Egbert*, the ſon of *Alcmond*, King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, who having vanquiſhed all the reſt of the *Saxon* Kings, and added moſt of their Eſtates unto his own; cauſed the whole united body to be called *Engel-lond*, or *England*, in a Parliament or Council held at *Winchester*, *Anno* 819, being the 19th. year of his Raign over the *Weſt-Saxons*; and by that name he was then crowned in the preſence of his Nobles, and the reſt of his Subjects, leaving it unto the reſt of his Succeſſors.

But before we come to the recital of their names, we are to take notice of the *Danes*, the next conſiderable *Actors* on the Stage of *England*, who in the time of this *Egbert*, firſt invaded the Country, and after exerciſed the patience of his poſterity, till in fine they got the Kingdom to themſelves. Of the Original and firſt Succeſſes of this people, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*. Suffice it here to know, that having taken up the void Rooms of the *Inites* and *Engliſh* in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, they thought it not amiſs to follow them into *Britain* alſo; making a diſcovery of ſome part of the Coaſt thereof with three Ships only, *An.* 787, being the firſt year of *Brithic* (the Father of *Egbert*) King of the *Weſt-Saxons*. Which having done, and prepared themſelves for the undertaking, in the time of *Egbert* they invaded *Northumberland*, the Iſle of *Shepey* in *Kent*, and the Coaſts of *Wales*; not without much difficulty driven out by him. In the Raign of the three Kings ſucceeding, having vanquiſhed the *Northumbrians*, *Eaſt-Angles*, and a part of the *Mercians*; they erected many petit Tyrannies: by *Alfrid* firſt ſtopped in their Career, by *Edward* the *Elder* outed of the *Eaſt-Angles*, and by *Athelſtan* of *Northumberland* alſo; the *Danes* for ſome time after being ſubject to the *Engliſh* Government, mixing in marriages and alliance, and incorporated with them. By the valour and good Fortune of *Swain* their King, they recovered their power again in *England*; and in the perſon of *Canutus* obtained the Kingdom: who have impolitickly ſent back his *Danes* into their Country (as if a Kingdom got by force, could be held by favour) opened a way to their excluſion from the Crown; which happened within ſeven years after his deceaſe. Which ſaid, we come to the Succeſſions of

The Kings of *England* of the *Saxon* Race.

819 1 *Egbert*, the laſt King of the *Weſt-Saxons*, and the firſt of *England*. 18.
837 2 *Ethelwolf*, the eldeſt ſon of *Egbert*. 20.
857 3 *Ethelbald*, the eldeſt ſon of *Ethelwolf*. 1.
858 4 *Ethelbert*, the brother of *Ethelbald*. 5.
863 5 *Ethelfred*, the brother of the two former Kings, the third ſon of *Ethelwolf*, and as much moleſted by the *Danes*, as his brethren were. 10.
873 6 *Alfride*, the fourth ſon of *Ethelwolf*, who totally united the *Saxon Heptarchy* into one Eſtate, vanquiſhed the *Danes*, whom he made ſubject to his commands, though he could not expel them. He divided *England* into Shires, and reſtored the Univerſity of *Oxon*.
900 7 *Edward*, ſirnamed the *Elder*, the ſon of *Alfride*, who recovered the *Eaſt-Angles* from the power of the *Danes*, whom he ſhut up in *Northumberland*. 24.
924 8 *Athelſtan*, the ſon of *Edward*, who ſubdued the *Britains* of *Cumberland* and *Cornwal*, and compelled the *Danes* to ſubmit themſelves to the *Engliſh* Government. In his time lived Sir *Guy* of *Warwick*, famous for overcoming *Colbrand* the *Daniſh* Champion (the great *Goliah* of that people) near the Walls of *Winchester*. 10.
940 9 *Edmund*, the brother of *Athelſtan*, by whom the *Danes* of *Northumberland* were brought under obedience, and the Kingdom of the *Britains* in *Cumberland* utterly ſubverted.
946 10 *Edred*, the brother of *Edmund* and *Athelſtan*, ſo fortunate againſt the *Danes*, that he compelled them to be Chriſtened. 9.
955 11 *Edny*, the ſon of *Edmund*.

955 12 *Edgar*, the brother of *Edwy*, ſirnamed the *Peaceable*, the moſt abſolute *Monarch* of *England*, ſince the time of the *Saxons*; by whom the tribute of money impoſed by *Athelſtan* on the *Welch*, was exchanged into a tribute of *Wolves*. 16.

975 13 *Edward* II. ſon of *Edgar*, treacherouſly murdered by his *Stepdame*, to make way for *Ethelred* her ſon; hence ſirnamed the *Martyr*. 3.

978 14 *Ethelred*, the younger ſon of *Edgar*, and half brother of *Edward*, enjoyed the Crown unquietly which he got unjuſtly. Oppreſſed and broken by the *Danes*, he was fain to buy his peace of them at the yearly tribute of 10000 pounds; inhanced to 48000 pounds within ſhort time after; which monies were raiſed upon the Subjects, by the name of *Danegelt*. Weary of theſe exactions, he plotted warily with his Subjects to kill all the *Danes*, as they ſlept in their beds; which accordingly was put in execution on St. *Brices* night, *November* 12, *Anno* 1012. To revenge this outrage and diſhonour, *Swaine* King of *Denmark*, with a Fleet of 350 Ships came into *England*; the fear whereof compelled *Ethelred*, a weak and impuiſſant Prince to flye into *Normandy*; leaving his poor Subjects to the mercy of the *Daniſh* Tyrant, who miſerably plagued them till his death. To whom ſucceeded his ſon *Cnute* (*Canutus*) a more temperate Prince; who maugre *Ethelred* now returned, or his ſon *Edmund Ironſide*, a moſt valiant King, did in the end poſſeſs himſelf of the whole Kingdom.

1016 15 *Edmund* II. ſirnamed *Ironſide*, having in vain attempted to recover his Kingdom, at laſt divided it with *Canutus*: not long after which he was treacherouſly and baſely murdered, by *Edward*, ſirnamed the *Out-Law*, his eldeſt Son, he was Grandfather of *Edgar Atheling*, and of *Margaret*, Wife of *Malcolm* the third, King of the *Scots*.

The *Daniſh* Kings.

1017 1 *Canutus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, after the death of *Edmund* the ſecond ſole King of *England*. He married *Emma* the widow of *Ethelred*, and daughter of *Richard* Duke of *Normandy*. 20.

1037 2 *Harald* the baſe Son of *Canutus*, ſirnamed *Harfagar*. 4.

1040 3 *Canutus* II. commonly called *Hardy Cnute*, the lawful ſon of *Canutus* by *Emma* the Widow of *Ethelred* the ſecond, and Mother of *Edward*, ſirnamed the *Confeſſor*, the laſt King of the *Danes* in *England*. After whoſe death that people having tyrannized in *England* for the ſpace of 255 years, (of which they had reigned only 26) were utterly expelled the Country, or paſſed in the Accompt of *Engliſh*; *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, the youngeſt Son of *Ethelred*, being advanced unto the Throne, by the power and practices of his Mother *Emma*, and the abſence of the Children of *Edmund Ironſide* his elder Brother, *Anno* 1042.

Now concerning the *Danes* abiding here, and going hence as they did, I obſerve three cuſtoms yet in uſe amongſt us. Firſt, each *Engliſh* houſe maintained one *Dane*, who living idly like the *Drone* among the *Bees*, had the benefit of all their labour, and was by them called *Lord Dane*; and even now when we ſee an idle fellow, we call him a *Lordane*. 2 The *Danes* uſed when the *Engliſh* drank, to ſtab them or cut their throats: to avoid which villany, the party then drinking, requeſted ſome of the next unto him to be his ſurety or *pledge*, whilſt he paid nature her due: and hence we have our uſual cuſtom of *pledging* one another. 3 The old *Romans* at the expulſion of their Kings, annually ſolemnized the *Fugalia*: according to which pattern the joyful *Engliſh* having cleared the Country of the *Danes*, inſtituted the annual Sports of *Hock-tide*; the word in their old tongue, the *Saxon*, importing the time of *ſcorning*, or triumphing. This *ſolemnity* conſiſted in the merry meetings of the Neighbours in thoſe days, during which the *Feſtival* laſted, and was celebrated by the younger ſort of both Sexes, with all manner of exerciſes, and paſtimes in the Streets, even as *Shrove-tide* yet is. But now time hath ſo corrupted it, that the name excepted, there remaineth no ſign of the firſt inſtitution.

The *Saxons* re-enthroned.

A. C.

1042 16 *Edward* III. ſirnamed the *Confeſſor*, half Brother both to *Edmund Ironſide*, and *Hardy-Cnute* the *Dane*, called out of *Normandy*, where he lived with the Dukes his Couſins, ſucceeded in the Realm of *England*. This King collected out of the *Daniſh*, *Saxon*, and *Mercian* Laws, one univerſal and general Law; whence our *Common Law* is thought to have had its original: which may be true of the *written* Laws, not of the *cuſtomary* and unwritten Laws; theſe being certainly more ancient. He was in his life of that holineſs that he received power from above to cure many deſeaſes, amongſt other, the ſwelling of the Throat, called by us the *Kings-Evil*: a Prerogative that continueth *Hereditary* to his Succeſſors of *England*. Finally, after his death, he was Canonized for a Saint; and died, having reigned 24 years.

1066 17 *Harald* II. Son to Earl *Godwin*, was choſen King in the non-age of *Edgar Atheling*, Grandchild to *Edmund Ironſide*, the true Heir of the Kingdom: to which *Harald* might pretend ſome title as being born unto Earl *Godwin* by *Thyra* the baſe daughter of *Canutus* the firſt, Siſter by the whole blood to *Harald Harfager*, and of the half blood to *Canutus* the ſecond, the laſt Kings of the *Danes* in *England*. But *William* Duke of *Normandy*, (of which people we have ſpoke already when we were in *France* and ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Denmark*, as the laſt *Actors* on the *Theatre* or Stage of *England*. This *William* (I ſay) pretending a Donation from his Couſin, King *Edward* the *Confeſſor*, invaded *England*, ſlew *Harald*, and with him 66654 of his *Engliſh* Souldiers, and poſſeſſed himſelf of the Kingdom; uſing ſuch Policy in his new Conqueſt, that he utterly diſheartned the *Engliſh* from hopes of better fortune. From him beginneth the new accompt of the Kings of *England*, thoſe of the former Line being no longer reckoned in the computation of the firſt, ſecond, or third, &c.

The

The *Norman* Kings.

A. C.

1067 1 *William*, firnamed the *Conqueror*, after the vanquiſhment and death of *Harold*, acknowledged and Crowned King, altered the ancient Laws of *England*, and eſtabliſhed thoſe of *Normandy* in the place thereof: governing the people abſolutely by the power of the Sword, and giving a great part of their Lands to his former Followers, and ſuch as were engaged in the Action with him; from whom moſt of our ancient Families do derive themſelves; thoſe Lands to be holden in *Knights-Service*, which drew along with it the *Wardſhip* of the Heir in *Minority*, as a charge laid upon the Land.

1089 2 *William* II. firnamed *Rufus*, ſecond ſon to the Conqueror, ſucceeded by the appointment of his Father, and was Crowned King; ſlain afterwards in the *New Foreſt*, by an Arrow levelled at a *Deer*.

1102 3 *Henry*, for his Learning firnamed *Beau-clerk*, the third Son of the Conqueror, in the abſence of his Brother *Robert* (in the *Holy-Land* Wars) entred on the Kingdom, and afterwards took from him alſo the Dukedom of *Normandy*, and put out his eyes. Deprived of all his male-iſſue, he left one only Daughter whoſe name was *Maud*; firſt married to the Emperour *Henry* the fifth, and after to *Geofry Plantagenet* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*. 34.

1136 4 *Stephen*, ſecond ſon of *Stephen* Earl of *Champagne* and *Blois*, and of *Alice* Daughter to the *Conqueror*, ſucceeded; who to purchaſe the peoples love, releaſed the Tribute called *Danegelt*: he ſpent moſt of his Reign in War againſt *Maud* the Empreſs. 19.

The *Saxon* Blood reſtored.

1155 5 *Henry* II. Son to *Maud* the Empreſs, Daughter to *Henry* the firſt, and to *Maud* Daughter to *Malcolm* King of *Scotland*, and *Margaret* Siſter to *Edgar Atheling*, reſtored the *Saxon* blood to the Crown of *England*. His Father was *Geofry* Earl of *Anjou*, *Tourein*, and *Maine*; which Provinces he added to the *Engliſh* Empire, as alſo the Dutchy of *Aquitain*, and the Earldom of *Poiction*, by *Eleanor* his Wife; and a great part of *Ireland* by Conqueſt. Happy in all things, the unnatural rebellions of his Sons excepted. 34.

1189 6 *Richard*, the Son of *Henry*, firnamed *Cœur de Lyon*, warred in the *Holy Land*, overcame the *Turks*, whom he had almoſt driven out of *Syria*, took the Iſle of *Cyprus*; and after many worthy atchievements returning homewards to defend *Normandy*, and *Aquitain* againſt the *French*, was by Tempeſt caſt upon *Dalmatia*; and travelling through the Dominions of the Duke of *Auſtria*, was taken Priſoner, put to a grievous ranſom, and after his return ſlain at the ſiege of *Chaluz*, in the Province of *Limoſin*. 12.

1201 7 *John*, Brother of *Richard*, an unhappy Prince, and one that could expect no better, as being an unnatural Son to his Father, and an undutiful Subject to his Brother. Diſtreſſed for a great part of his Reign by Wars with his *Barons*, outed of all *Normandy*, *Aquitain*, and *Anjou*, by the power of the *French*; to whom alſo he was likely to have loſt the Realm of *England*. Finally, after a baſe ſubmiſſion of himſelf and his Kingdom to the Popes Legate, he is ſaid to have been poyſoned at *Swinſtede* Abbey. 17.

1218 8 *Henry* III. Son of *John*, expelled the invading *French* out of *England*, and by a compoſition with *Lewis* the 9th, was reſtored unto the Dukedom of *Guyenne*, held by his Succeſſors till the Reign of King *Henry* the 6th. Exhauſted by the Pope, and oppreſſed a long time by his factious and unruly Barons, but at laſt victorious. 56.

1274 9 *Edward*, the Son of *Henry*, awed *France*, ſubdued *Wales*, brought *Scotland* into ſubjection, of whoſe King and Nobility he received homage. 34.

1308 10 *Edward* II. Son of *Edward* the firſt, a diſſolute Prince, hated of the Nobles, and contemned by the Vulgar, for his immeaſurable love to *Pierce Gaveſton*, and the *Spencers*, was twice ſhamefully beaten by the *Scots*: and being depoſed by a ſtrong faction raiſed againſt him by his Queen, and *Roger*, Lord *Mortimer*, was barbarouſly murdered in *Berkley* Caſtle. 19.

1327 11 *Edward* III. Son of *Edward* the ſecond, a moſt Vertuous and Valorous Prince, brought the *Scots* to obedience, overthrew the *French* in two great Battels, took the Town of *Callice*, and many fair poſſeſſions in that Kingdom. 50.

1377 12 *Richard* II. another of our unfortunate Kings, loſt many of his Peers in *France*, and at laſt being over-awed by his two great Uncles of *Lancaſter* and *Glouceſter*, and taken Priſoner by his Couſin the Duke of *Hereford*, he was forced to reſign his Crown, and afterwards was murdered at *Pomfret* Caſtle.

The *Lancaſtrian* Line.

1399 13 *Henry* IV. Son to *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the fourth Son to *Edward* the 3d, was by the power of the Sword, but with the conſent of the People, ſetled in the Throne; and ſpent his whole Reign in ſuppreſſing homebred Rebellions. 15.

1414 14 *Henry* V. the Mirrour of Magnificence, and Pattern of true Vertue, purſued the Title of *France*, and won it, being ordained Heir apparent to the *French* Crown, but lived not to poſſeſs the Kingdom. 9.

1423 15 *Henry* VI. a Pious, but unfortunate Prince, was crowned King of *France* in *Paris*, which he held during the life of his Uncle *John* of *Bedford*, and *Humfrey* of *Glouceſter*; after whoſe deaths, he not only loſt *France* to the *French*, but *England* and his life to the *Yorkiſh* Faction. 38.

The

The *Yorkish* Line.

1461 16 *Edward* IV. Son of *Richard* Duke of *York*, the Son of *Richard* Earl of *Cambridge*, and Grandson of *Edmund* of *Langley* Duke of *York*, the fifth Son of *King Edward* the third, challenged the Crown in right of the Lady *Anne* his Grandmother, Daughter of *Roger Mortimer* Earl of *March*, the Son of *Edmund Mortimer* Earl of *March*, and of *Philippa* his Wife, sole Daughter of *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the third Son of the said *King Edward*, and Elder Brother of *John* of *Gaunt*. The claim first set on foot by his Father the Duke of *York*, who lost his life in pursuance of it in the Battel of *Wakefield*; with berter fortune and success, pursued by *King Edward* himself, who finally after nine bloody Battels fought between the Houses (specially that of *Towton*, in which were slain 36000 *English*) was quietly seated in the possession of *England* and *Ireland*. 23.

1484 17 *Edward* V. his Son, was before his Coronation murdered by his Uncle *Richard*, in the Tower of *London*.

1484 18 *Richard* III. Brother of *Edward* the 4. a most wicked and tyrannical Prince, to make way unto the Diadem, murdered King *Henry* the Sixth, and 2. Prince *Edward* his Son. 3. *George* Duke of *Clarence*, his Brother. 4. *Hastings* a faithful Servant to King *Edward*. 5. *Rivers*, *Vaughan*, and *Gray*, the Queens Kindred. 6. *Edward* the 5th, his Soveraign, with his Brother *Richard*. 7. *Henry* Duke of *Buckingham* his dear Friend, and greatest Coadjutor in these his ungodly practices; and his own Wife *Anne*, so to make way to an incestuous marriage with his Neece *Elizabeth*, the eldest Daughter of *Edward* the 4th; but before the solemnity, he was slain at *Bosworth*. 3.

The Union of the *Families*.

1487 19 *Henry* VII. Earl of *Richmond*, Heir to the House of *Lancaster*, (as Son of *Margaret* Daughter of *John* Duke of *Somerset*, Son of *John* Earl of *Somerset*, Son of *John* of *Gaunt* Duke of *Lancaster*) after the overthrow of *Richard*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir to *Edward* the 4. uniting by that marriage the divided *Families*. He was also extracted from the *British* and *French* Royal Blood, as being Son to *Edmund Tudor* Earl of *Richmond*, Son to *Owen Tudor* (descended from *Cadwalladar*, the last King of the *Britains*) and *Katharine* of *France*, Widow of *Henry* the 5. His whole Wars was against home-bred Rebels, the chief being *Lambert*, and the Followers and Fautors of *Perken Warbeck*. 23.

1509 20 *Henry* VIII. Heir to both *Families*, between which were fought for the Diadem 17 pitched Fields; in which perished 8 Kings and Princes, 40 Dukes, Marquesses, and Earls, 200000 of the common people, besides Barons and Gentlemen. This King banished the usurped *Supremacy* of the *Popes*, and began the *Reformation* of Religion; though formerly he had writ a Book against *Luther*, for which the Pope gave him the honourable Title of *The Defender of the Faith*, afterwards made Hereditary by Act of Parliament to his Heirs and Successors. A Prince of great vices, but of greater virtues. 38.

1547 21 *Edward* VI. the Son of *Henry* the 8th, by *Jane Seymour* his third Wife; out of whose Womb he is said to be cut, to come into the World, as *Cæsar* was: but he had neither *Cæsar*'s Fortune nor length of life; dying very young, and his Affairs conducted by divided Councils; though otherwise of great hopes, and of a pregnancy of judgment above his years. 6.

1553 22 *Mary*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by *Katharine* of *Spain*, the Widow of his Brother *Arthur*, restored the Popes Supremacy banished by her Father, with the whole mass of Popery abolished in her Brother's Reign. To which Religion so addicted, that in the short time of her Reign there was more blood shed, than in the whole 44 years of her Sister *Elizabeth*. In the last year of her Reign she lost *Calice* to the *French*, which proved the loss of her life also, as it was supposed. 5.

1558 23 *Elizabeth*, the Daughter of King *Henry* the 8th, by the Lady *Anne Bullein* his second Wife; a most gracious Heroick Princess, was by the Divine Providence of God preserved from the practices of her Enemies in her Sisters Reign, to sway the Scepter of the Kingdom. She pursued the Reformation of Religion, begun in the times of her Father and Brother; refined the corrupt Coin brought in by her Father; furnished the Royal Navy with all kind of Warlike Ammunitions; encreased the Revenue of the Universities, by the Statute of *Provisions*; succoured the *Scots* against the *French*; the *French* Protestants against the *Papists*, and both against the *Spaniard*: defended the *Netherlands* against the attempts of *Spain*; commanded the whole Ocean; entred League with the *Muscovite*; and was famous for her Prudence & Government amongst the *Turks*, *Persians*, and *Tartars*, yea her very Enemies. Finally she died in the 45. year of her Reign, and the 70. of her life, on the 24. of *March*, *Anno* 1602. according to the computation of the Church of *England*, which beginneth the New Year with the Feast of the *Annunciation*. To whom succeeded *JAMES* the Sixth, King of the *Scots*, with the joy of all men, as the next undoubted Heir of the Crown. Of whom we shall say more when we come to speak of the *Monarchs* of *Britain*: of which he was the first since the fall of the *Roman* Empire, and such more properly than the greatest of all those Emperours had been before; None of them having all the North parts of *Britain* it self, or any part of *Ireland* at all, nor many of the Illes adjoining, under their Dominion.

In the mean time to look on *England* as a State distinct, we will consider it and the *Kings* thereof, with reference to reputation abroad, and power at home; with the *Revenues*, *Arms*, and *Military Orders* of it, as in other places. And first for *Reputation*, when all Christendom in the Council of *Constance*, was divided into Nations, *Anglicana Natio* was one of the Principal, and not *Subaltern*, and had its voice of equal balance with the Nations of *France* or *Italy*, in all affairs concerning the doctrine, discipline and peace of the Church, which were there debated. And for the place due to the Kings hereof in those

General Councils, and the rank they held among other *Christian* Princes; I find that the Emperour of *Germany* was accounted *Major filius Ecclesiæ*; the King of *France*, *Minor Filius*, and the King of *England*, *Filius tertius & adoptivus*. The King of *France* in *General Councils*, had place next the Emperour, on his right hand; the King of *England* on his left hand, and the King of *Scotland* next before *Castile*. Now indeed the King of *Spain* being so much improved, is the *dearly beloved Son of the Church*; and arrogateth to himself the place above all other Princes: but in time of Pope *Julius*, the Controversie arising between the Ambassadors of the two Princes for precedency; the Pope adjudged it to belong of right unto *England*. And Pope *Pius* the Fourth, upon the like Controversie arising between the Ambassadours of *France* and *Spain*, adjudged the Precedency to the *French*.

Touching the *Souldiery* of *Engl.* and their most notable atchievements, both by Sea and Land, sufficient hath been said already. What *Forces* the Kings hereof have been able to raise, and may command for present service, will best be seen by the action of King *Henry* the 8th. at *Bulloign*, the Armies of Queen *Elizabeth* in 88. and the numbers of the Trained Bands of the several Counties. First, for the Action of King *Henry* the 8th, he had in his *Avant-guard* 12000 Foot, and 500 Light Horse in *blew Jackets* with red Guards; in the *Rere-ward* a like number both of Horse and Foot; and in the main Battel 20000 Foot; and 2000 Horse, all in *Red Jacquets* and yellow Guards: the whole number 44000 Foot, and 3000 Horse. They drew after them 100 great Pieces, besides small ones, and for conveyance of their *Ordnance*, Baggage, and other necessaries, no fewer than 25000 Draught-horses, besides other carriages. In the next place for 88. the Queen dispersed in several places on the Southern Coasts of the Kingdom, to hinder the landing of the Enemy, 25000 Souldiers of both sorts; at *Tilbury*, for the defence of the City of *London*, under the Command of the Earl of *Leicester*, 22000 Foot, and 1000 Horse: and for the Guard of her own person, under the Lord *Hunsdon*, 34000 Foot, and 2000 Horse: in all the number of 84000 men: besides those goodly Troops which the Nobility and Gentry did present her with, at their own proper charges. And as for the Trained Bands, the number of both sorts disciplined and mustered to be ready upon all occasions: in the eighth year of King *James*, (for I have since seen no Muster-Roll of them) amounted to 296130 able men, 141315 armed men, 935 Demilances, 6777 Light-Horse, 19345 Pioneers; besides what was required of *Peers* and *Prelates*, supposed to amount to 20000 armed men, and 4000 Light Horse. And for their strength at Sea, besides the *Navy Royal*, consisting of about 30 gallant Ships, (besides the lesser Vessels;) the best and bravest that any Prince in Christendom can boast of, as his own propriety: there are such store of *Colliar* and *Merchants* Ships, fit for any service, that in the year 88 aforesaid, the Queen had 100 Sail of good Ships to oppose the *Spaniard*; and 20 more to wait upon the motions of the Duke of *Parma*. And in the year 1597, she set out for the Island Voyage, no fewer than 120 Sail of all sorts, of which 60 were men of War.

As for the *Revenues* of this Kingdom, *Boterus* reckoned them in the time of King *Henry* the 7th, to be no more than 400000 Crowns *per annum*; but grants, that afterward they were improved to a million more, by King *Henry* the 8th, the dissolution of Monasteries, and the benefit redounding from the Court of Wards, making that improvement. And to say truth, the Universal dissolution of Religious Houses of all sorts, did for the time so mightily increase his annual Income, that he was fain to erect two new Courts (the Court of *Augmentation*, and the Court of *Surveyors*) for the better managing of the same. But these Additions being wasted by his own exorbitant expences, and the several Alienations made by King *Edward* the sixth; those Courts of new Erection were dissolved again; and the Revenue fell so short of its former height, that in the 12. year of Queen *Elizabeth*, the profits of the Crown (besides the Court of *Wards*, and the *Dutchie* of *Lancaster*) came to no more than to 188197 *l.* 4 *s.* Of which 110612 l. 13 s. went that year out upon the Navy, the charge of Houshold, and other necessary assignments. Since which time the great increase of trading, both at home and abroad, and the great glut of money in all parts of the World, hath added very much to the *Intrado*. The certainty whereof as I do not know, so neither will I aim at it by uncertain Hearsay.

The Principal Orders of *Knighthood* are, and were, 1. of the *Round Table*, instituted by *Arthur* King of the *Britains*, and one of the Worlds *Nine Worthies*. It consisted of 150 Knights whose names are recorded in the History of King *Arthur*, there where Sir *Ure*, a wounded Knight came to be cured of his hurts: it being his fate that only the best Knight of the Order should be his *Chirurgeon*: The Arms of most of these, with their several *Blazons* (I know not on how good authority) we find in *Bara*, the *French* Herald. The principal of them were Sir *Lancelot*, Sir *Tristam*, Sir *Lamorock*, Sir *Gawin*, &c. all placed at one *Round Table*, to avoid quarrels about priority and place. The Round Table hanging in the great Hall at *Winchester*, is falsly called *Arthurs Round Table*, it being not of sufficient Antiquity and containing but 24 Seats. Of these Knights there are reported many fabulous Stories. They ended with their *Founder*, and are feigned by that *Lucian* of *France*, *Rablaies*, to be the Ferry-men of Hell; and that their pay is a piece of mouldy bread, and a phillop on the nose.

2. Of S. *George*, called commonly the *Garter*, instituted by King *Edward* the third, to increase virtue and valour in the hearts of his Nobility; or as some will, in honour of the Countess of *Salisburies* Garter, of which Lady the King formerly had been inamoured. But this I take to be a vain and idle *Romance*, derogatory both to the *Founder*, and the *Order*; first published by *Polydore Virgil*, a stranger to the affairs of *England*, and by him taken upon no better ground than *fama vulgi*, the tradition of the common people; too trifling a Foundation for so great a building; Common bruit, being so infamous an Historian, that wise men neither report after it, nor give credit to any thing they receive from it. But for this fame or common bruit, the vanity and improbabilities thereof have been elsewhere canvassed. Suffice it to observe in this time and place, that the *Garter* was given unto this *Order*, in testimony of that bond of Love and Affection, wherewith the *Knights* or *Fellows* of it were to be bound severally unto one another, and all of them jointly to the King as the *Soveraign* of it. So saith the *Register* of the Order, (in which occurreth not one word of the Ladies *Garter*) affirming that King *Edward* did so fit the habit unto that design, *Ut omnia ad amicitiam & concordiam tendere nemo non intelligat*. But to return unto the *Order*, there are of it 26 Knights, of which the Kings of *England* are *Soveraigns*: and is so much desired for its excellency, that 8 Emperours, 21 Foreign Kings, 22 Foreign Dukes and Princes, besides divers Noble men of other Countries, have been *Fellows* of it. The Ensign is a blew Garter buckled on the left leg, on which these words are embroidered, viz. *Hony soit qui mal y pense*. About their necks they wear a *Blew Ribband*, at the end of which hangeth the Image of St. *George*, upon whose day the

Instal-

Installations of the new Knights are commonly celebrated.

3. Of the *Bath*, brought first into *England*, 1399. by *Henry* the Fourth. They are created at the *Coronation* of Kings and Queens, and the *Installation* of the Princes of *Wales*: their duty to defend true Religion, Widows, Maids, Orphans, and to maintain the Kings Rights. The Knights thereof distinguished by a *Red Ribband*, which they wear ordinarily about their necks, to difference them from Knights *Batchelors*, of whom they have in all places the precedency; unless they be also the Sons of Noblemen, to whom their birth gives it before all *Orders*.

4. Of *Baronets*, an Order instituted by King *James* in the 9th year of his Reign, for the furtherance of the Plantation of *Ulster*. They have Precedency of the Knights of the *Bath*, but not of those of the *Garter*, nor of the younger Sons of the Nobility. But this being *Hereditary*, not *personal*, and rather *Civil* than *Military*; is not so properly to be ranked amongst *Orders* of Knighthood.

The Arms of the Realm of *England*, are *Mars*, 3 Lyons *passant Gardant*, *Sol*. The reason why these Arms quartered with the *French*, took the second place, are, 1. Because that *France* at the time of the first quartering of them, was the larger and more famous Kingdom. 2. That the *French* seeing the honour done to their Arms, might more easily be induced to have acknowledged the *English Title*. 3. Because the *English* Arms were compounded of the Lion of *Aquitain*, and the two Lions of *Normandy*, being both *French* Dutchies.

There were in *England*, at and since the time of the Reformation,

Archbishops 2. Bishops 20.

WALES.

WALES is bounded on all sides with the Sea, except towards *England*, on the East; from which separated by the River *Dee*, and a line drawn to the River *Wie*. Anciently it extended Eastwards to the River *Severn*, till by the puissance of *Offa* the great King of the *Mercians*, the *Welch* or *Britains* were driven out of the plain Countries byond that River, and forced to betake themselves to the Mountains; where he caused them to be shut up and divided from *England* by an huge Ditch, called in *Welch*, *Clawdh Offa*, i.e. *Offa's Dike*: Which Dike beginning at the influx of the *Wie* into the *Severn*, not far from *Chepstow*, extendeth 84 miles in length, even as far as *Chester*, where the *Dee* is mingled with the Sea. Concerning which Ditch, there was a Law made by *Harold*, That if any *Welch*-man was found with a Weapon on this side of it, he should have his right hand cut off by the Kings Officers.

The name of *Wales* some derive from *Idwallo*, the Son of *Cadwallader*, who with the small remainder of his *British* Subjects, made good the fastnesses of this Country, and was the first who had the title of King of *Wales*. Others conceive, that the name of *Welch* and *Wales*, was given them by the *Saxons*: who having possessed themselves of all the rest of the Country, called the *Britains*, who lived here, by the name of *Walsh*, which in their Language signifieth as much as *Aliens*; because they differed from them both in their Laws and Language: which is the general opinion. Most probable it is, that as the *Britains* derive their Pedigree from the *Gauls* (as before was proved) so they might still retain the name; and were called *Walliſh* by the *Saxons*, instead of *Galliſh*: the *Saxons* using in most words *W.* for *G.* as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and the like. And this to be believed the rather, because the *Frenchmen* to this day call the Country *Galles*, and the eldest Son of *England*, *Le Prince de Galles*: as also that the *Dutch* or *Germans* (of whom the *Saxons* are a part) do call such Nations as inhabit on the skirts of *France*, by the name of *Wallons*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, before it had the name of *Wales*, were the *Silures* possessing the Counties of *Hereford*, *Brecknock*, *Radnor*, *Monmouth*, and *Glamorgan*, all *Gloucestershire* beyond the *Severn*, and the South parts of *Worcestershire* on the same side also: their chief Towns, *Ariconium*, now *Hereford*; (not reckoned since the time of *Offa*, as a part of *Wales*,) *Baleum*, now *Buelth*, in *Brecknock*; *Cobannium*, now *Abergavenny*, in *Monmouth*; *Magni*, now *New Radnor*, in the County so named; and *Bovium*, now *Boverton*, in *Glamorgan*. 2. The *Dimetæ*, possessing *Cardigan*, *Caermarthen*, and *Pembrokeshires*, whose chief Towns were *Loventium*, now *New-Castle*, in *Caermarthen*; *Maridunum*, or *Caermarthen* it self: and *Octopitæ*, where now stands S. *Davids*, by the *Welch* called *Menew*, whence that Bishop hath the name of *Menevensis* in *Latine*. 3. The *Ordovices*, inhabiting the Counties of *Merioneth*, *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, *Denbigh*, *Flint*, and *Montgomery*; with the North part of *Worcestershire* beyond the Rivet *Severn*, and all *Shropshire*, on the same side of the *River*. Their chief Towns were *Segontium*, now *Caer Seont*, in *Carnarvonshire*; *Cononium*, now *Conwey* in the same County; *Bonium*, where after stood the famous Monastery of *Banchor*, in *Flintshire*; and *Mediolanium*, now *Llanvillin*, in the County of *Montgomery*. By these three Nations was all that Tract possessed, which lieth on the other side of the *Severn*. A very stout and hardy people, and so impatient of the yoke, that two of the three *Legions* which the *Romans* kept constantly in *Britain*, as before is said, were planted in and near these people, the better to contain them in due obedience: that is to say, the second Legion at *Caer Leon* upon *Usk*, of which more anon; and the twentieth at *Deuvana*, where now stands *West-Chester*. So difficult a thing it was to make this Nation subject to the power of *Rome*; and no less difficult to bring them under the Command of the *Saxons*: whom they withstood, when all the rest of *Britain* had been conquered by them; and lived to see their *Victors* overcome by the *Normans*, before themselves had yielded to a Foreign yoke.

The *Christian* Faith planted amongst the *Britains*, in the time of *Lucius*, they still retained, when all the residue of the Island had been relapsed to *Paganism*: and they retained it not in secret, as afraid to own it, but in a well constituted Church. Insomuch that *Augustine* the *Monk*, when he first preached the Gospel to the *English Saxons*, found here no fewer than seven Bishops; that is to say, *Herefordensis*, *Tavensis*, *Paternensis*, *Bancharensis*, *Elwiensis*, *Wiccensis*, and *Morganensis*, (or rather *Menevensis*:) all which, excepting only *Paternensis*, do still

remain amongst us, though in other names, *Hereford*, and *Worcester*, (*Wicciensis*) reckoned now in *England*; St. *Davids* or *Menevensis*, *Tavensis* or *Landaff*, *Bangor*, and *Elwyensis* or St. *Asaph*, in *Wales*, according to the present boundaries and limits of it: And as they did retain the *Faith*, so they retained it after the *tradition* of their Predecessors; neither submitting unto *Augustine* as Archbishop of *Canterbury*, nor to the Pope from whom he came, as *Oecumenical*, or chief Pastor of the Church of *Christ*; nor receiving any new Doctrines or Traditions from them: but standing to those Principles of *Liberty*, and *Religion*, which they were possessed of, till all the world almost had yielded to that powerful See. Not manumitted from the vassallage and thraldom to it, till they embraced the Reformation of the Church of *England* in Doctrine, Discipline, and Worship: the Liturgie whereof was by the command of Queen *Elizabeth*, translated into the *Welch* or *British*; as the Bible also was by virtue of an Act of Parliament in the fifth of that Queen, the care thereof committed to the Bishop of *Hereford*, and the four Bishops of *Wales*. But because the Bible then set forth was only in the large Church Volume; it was in the beginning of the Reign of King *Charles* reduced to a more portable Bulk, at the cost and charge of my Cousin Mr. *Rowland Heylin*, one of the Aldermen of *London*; who also caused the Book called *The Practice of Piety* to be printed in that Language for the instruction of the People: and a *Welch* or *British* Dictionary to be made and published, for the understanding of the Language.

But to return unto the Church, and Affairs thereof, for the better ordering of the same, it hath been long ago divided into four Dioceses (besides that of *Hereford*) for the exercise of *Ecclesiastical Discipline*; those Dioceses subdivided into 9 *Arch-Deacouries*, as before in *England*: all subject heretofore to their own *Primate* or Archbishop, residing in the City of *Isca Silurum*, the *Metropolis* of the *Province* of *Britannia Secunda*, called by the *Welch* or *Britains*, *Caer-Leon*, or the City of the *Legion*, from the *second Legion*, fixt there for defence of the Province; and *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*, because situate on the River so named. But this City being too much exposed to the fury of the *Saxons*, the Archiepiscopal See was translated to *Menew*, standing on a Promontory in the extream Angle of *Pembrokeshire*, by *David* then Archbishop thereof, and near of kin to *Arthur* that renowned King of the *Britains*: from whom, in tract of time, the name of *Menew* being left off, the See and City came to be called St. *Davids*. From *David* unto *Sampson* the 26. Archbishop of the *Welch*, (being above 400 years) did they hold this Dignity, but then the *Pestilence* extreamly raging in these parts, Archbishop *Samson* carried with him the *Episcopal Pall*, and therewith the dignity it self to *Dole* in *Bretagne*. After which time we hear of no Archbishop in *Wales*, in name and title, though the power proper thereunto still remained amongst them: the *Welch* Bishops acknowledging no other *Primate*, nor receiving *Consecration* from any other hands than their own Bishop of St. *Davids*; till Bishop *Bernard* was compelled to submit himself to the Power and Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Canterbury*, in the time of King *Henry* the first.

But it's time to look upon the face of the Country as it stands at the present, which we find Mountainous and Barren; not able to maintain its people but by helps elsewhere. To make amends for which defect, there were some Silver Mines discovered in it not long since, by Sir *Hugh Middleton*, Knight and Baronet; not only to the great honour of his own Country, but to the profit and renown of the whole Iland of *Great Britain*. Their chief Commodities are course Clothes, entituled commonly by the name of *Welch Freeze*, and Cottons; which Merchandise was heretofore brought to *Oswestre* (the furthest Town of *Shropshire*) as the common *Empory*; and there brought by the Merchants of *Shrewsbury*. But the *Welch* coveting to draw the Staple more into their own Country, occasioned the Merchant to hold off from buying their Commodities: till in the end the Merchant got the better of them, and enforced them to settle the whole Trade at *Shrewsbury*, where it still continueth.

To speak of Mountains in a Country which is wholly mountainous, were a thing unnecessary: yet of most note are those of 1. *Snowdon*, 2. *Brechin*, 3. *Rarduvaure*, and 4. *Plinlimmon*. Not much observable but for their vast height, and those many notable Rivers which issue from them. The principal whereof are, 1. *Dee*, in *Latine* called *Deva*, arising out of *Rarduvaure* Hills in *Merioneth-shire*, and running into the Sea not far from *Chester*. Over this River *Edgar* King of *England* was rowed triumphantly in his Barge, by eight inferiour *Kings*, *Vassals* and *Tributaries* to him, that is to say, *Kenneth* King of the *Scots*, *Malcolm* King of *Cumberland*, *Mac-cuis*, King of the Isles, *Dufwall*, *Gryffith*, *Howel*, *Jago*, and *Indethel*, Princes or Kings of *Wales*: using these words to such as attended on him, that *then his Successors might call themselves Kings of* England, *when they did the like*. This was in the year 973. and the last of his Reign. 2. *Wie*, in *Latine* called *Vaga*, arising from *Plinlimmon* Hills, and emptying it self into the *Severn* at *Chepstow*. More in the heart of the Country (for these are but borderers for the greatest part of their course). 3. *Conwey*, which rising in *Merionethshire*, and dividing the Counties of *Denbigh* and *Carnarvon*, mingleth with the Sea at *Abur Conwey*. 4. *Tyvie*, which rising in *Montgomeryshire*, and passing between the Counties of *Cardigan*, *Penbroke*, and *Carmarthen*, runneth into the Sea a little below *Cardigan*. 5. *Chedlady*, which runneth quite through *Pembrokeshire*, emptieth it self into *Milford* Haven, one of the most capacious and safest Havens, not of *England* only, but of all the World.

The Men are of a faithful carriage towards all men, especially towards one another in a strange Country, and towards Strangers in their own. Of a temper questionless much inclining to Choler, as being subject to the Passion by *Aristotle* called ἀκρασία, by which men are quickly moved to Anger, and as soon appeased: of all Angers the best and noblest. Their Language (the old *British*) hath the least commixture of foreign words of any in *Europe*; and by reason of its many Consonants and guttural Letters, is not so pleasing as some others in the Pronunciation. A Language not much studied by those of other Nations; in regard that such of the Inhabitants who have addicted themselves to learning, have rather chose to express themselves in the *Latine* or *English* tongues, than that of their own Native Country. The principal of which (not to say any thing of *Merlin*, the *Sages* of the *Welch* or *British*) were 1. *Gildas*, for his great knowledge surnamed *Sapiens*. 2. *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, and 3. *Giraldus Cambrensis*, the Historians; and of later times, 4. *William Morgan*, the Translator of the Bible into *Welch*, for which performance most deservedly made Bishop of *Landaff*. 5. Sir *John Price* the Antiquary. 6. *Owen* the Epigrammatist, &c.

The whole Country (not taking the Countries of *Shropshire* and *Monmouth* into the reckoning) contain in it 12 Shires only: of which, seven were set out by King *Edward* the first, that is to say, *Glamorgan*, *Pembroke*, *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, *Merioneth*, *Anglesey*, and *Carnarvon*. The other five, viz. the Counties of *Denbigh*, *Flint*, *Montgomery*, *Radnor*, and *Brecknock*, were after added out of the

the *Marchlands* by King *Henry* the 8. These 12 Shires are again contracted or subdivided into 4 *Circuits*, for the administration of Justice. Of which the first containeth the Counties of *Montgomery*, *Flint*, and *Denbigh*; the second those of *Carnarvon*, *Anglesey*, and *Merioneth*; the third those of *Carmarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Pembroke*; and the fourth those of *Glamorgan*, *Brecknock*, and *Radnor*.

In these 12 Shires are reckoned one Chase, 13 Forests, 36 Parks, 230 Rivers, and an hundred Bridges. They contain also 1016 Parishes, amongst which, four Cities, 55 Market Towns, and 41 Castles of the old erection. The Cities small, poor, and inconsiderable. The Market Towns, those especially on the *Marches* and out-parts of the Country, very fair and strong; as being not only built for Commerce and Trade, but fortified with Walls and Castles to keep in the *Welch*: and so employed, till the incorporating *Wales* with *England* took away all occasion of the old hostilities. And for the Castles in the Inlands, partly by the iniquity of time, which is *edax rerum*, but chiefly by the policy of the Kings of *England*, who would not suffer any places of strength to remain in a Country almost inaccessible, and amongst men apt to take the advantage offered; the very ruines of them are now brought to ruine.

But to proceed more particularly; the four Cities (or Episcopal Sees) are 1. S. *Davids*, formerly the *Metropolitan* of *Wales*, situate on the Promontory in *Pembrokeshire*, by the Ancients called *Octopitæ*; in a safe place, and far enough from the *Saxons*, whom the *Welch* most feared, but incommodious enough for all the rest of the *Clergie* to repair unto it: and not so safe neither unto the Inhabitants of it, in respect of sundry other Nations, who have often spoiled and defaced it. For standing near the Sea, it hath been frequently visited and spoiled by the *Danes*, *Norwegians*, and other *Pyrats*; insomuch that the Bishops were enforced to remove their dwelling to *Caermarthen*: which brought the City (small enough before, when it was at the biggest) to the condition of a Village. 2. *Llandaffe*, upon the River *Taffe*, whence it took the name; *Llan*, in the *Welch* or *British*, signifying a Church; *Llandaffe*, the Church upon the *Taffe*: the Bishops whereof derive their Lineal succession from those of *Caer-Leon* upon *Usk*; though the Primacy or Archbishops See were removed to *Menew*. A small Town now it is, God wot, nothing to rank it for a City but the Cathedral Church, and the Prebends houses. 3. S. *Asaph*, a small Town in *Flintshire*, so called from S. *Asaph*, the second Bishop hereof; left here by *Kentigern* a *Scot*, by whom the Cathedral Church was founded, about the year 560. Situate on the Banks of the River *Elwy*, thence called *Llan-Elwy* by the *Welch*, the Bishop *Elwyuensis* in some *Latine* Writers. 4. *Bangor*, upon the *Menai*, a branch of the *Irish* Sea, of no more beauty and renown than the other three; but only for the *Cathedral* founded here by the first Bishops, defaced by *Owen Glendower*, and afterwards re-edified by *Henry Dean*, Bishop hereof, *An.* 1496.

Towns of chief note, (for these Cities have not so much in them which is worth the noting) are 1. *Shrewbury* counted now in *England* but heretofore the Seat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, who had here their Palace: which being burnt in some of their broils with *England*, is now converted into Gardens for the use of the Townsmen. The Town well traded and frequented by the *Welch* and *English*, the common Empory of both; well built, and strongly situate on a rising ground, almost encompassed with the *Severn*; that part thereof which is not fenced with the River, being fortified with a very strong Castle, the work of *Roger de Montgomery*, the first Earl hereof, *Anno* 1067. Over the River for convenience of passage it hath two Bridges, and but two, the one towards *England*, and the other called the *Welsh Bridge*, which is towards *Wales*; built by *Leoline* or *Llewellen* the first, one of the Princes of *North Wales*; whose they conceive to be that *Statua*, which is there standing on the Gate. Remarkable since the times of King *Henry* the sixth, for giving the Title of Earl to the Noble Family of the *Talbots*: a Family of great Honour, and as great an Estate, till the parcelling out the Lands betwixt the Daughters and Coheirs of *Gilbert Talbot* late Earl hereof; according to the ill Custom of *England*, where many times the Estate goes to the Females, and the Honour (with nothing to maintain it) to the next Heir Male. 2. *Banchor*, by *Beda* called *Baucornaburg*, a famous Monastery of the *Britains*: containing above 2000 *Monks*, attending their devotions at the times appointed, at other times labouring for their livelihood; most cruelly and unmercifully slaughtered by the *Saxons*, at the instigation of *Austin* the first Archbishops of *Canterbury*, offended that they would not yield unto his authority. 3. *Carnarvon*, on the *Menai* before mentioned; not far from *Bangor*, (the Monastry of *Banchor* being in *Flintshire*) well walled, and fortified with a strong Castle by King *Edward* the first, after his conquest of the Country; formerly much resorted to, for the *Chancery* and *Exchequer* of the Princes of *North-Wales*. 4. *Denbigh*, well seated, on the Banks of the River *Istrad*, which from thence runs into the *Clwyd*, the fairest River of all those parts. A Town well traded and frequented, especially since it was made by King *Henry* the 8. the head Town of a County: before which time of great resort, as being the head Town of the Barony of *Denbigh*, conceived to be one of the goodliest Territories in *England*, having more Gentlemen holding of it than any other. 5. *Matravall*, not far from *Montgomery*, heretofore a fair, and capacious Town, honoured with the Palace, and made the chief Seat of the Princes of *Powys-land*, thence called *Kings of Matravall*; now a poor Village. 6. *Caermarthen*, *Maridunum* anciently, whence the modern name, the *Britains* adding *Caer* unto it: not called so from *Caer-Merlin*, or the City of *Merlin*, inchanted by the *Lady of the Lake*, in a deep Cave hereabouts, as old Fablers and *Romances* tell us. A fair large Town, beautified with a Collegiate Church; to which there was a purpose in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, of removing the Episcopal See from S. *Davids*. Not far off, on the top of an Hill, stands *Dinevour* Castle, the chief Seat of the Princes of *South-Wales*, thence called Kings of *Dinevaur*; who had their *Chancery* and *Exchequer* in the Town of *Caermarthen*. 7. *Haverford West*, situated in the *Chersonese*, or Demy-Iland of *Pembrokeshire*, by the *Welch* called *Ross*, by the *English*, *Little England beyond Wales*, by reason of the *English* tongue there spoken: a Town the best traded and frequented of all *South-Wales*. 8. *Milford*, in the same County of *Pembroke*, famous for giving name to the most safe and capacious Haven in all the Iland, consisting of sundry Creeks, Bays, and Roads for Ships, which make it capable of entertaining the greatest Navy: the landing place of *Henry* the 7th when he came for *England*. 9. *Monmouth*, situate at the mouth or influx of the River *Munow* (where it falleth into the *Wie*) whence it had the name. A Town belonging anciently to the House of *Lancaster*, the Birth-place of King *Henry* the Fifth, called *Henry* of *Monmouth*. That one particular enough to renown the place, and therefore we shall add no more. 10. *Ludlow*, a Town of great resort, by reason of the *Court and Council of the Marches*, kept here for the most part ever since the incorporating of *Wales* with *England*, for the ease of the *Welch*, and bordering Subjects, in their Suits at Law.

Situate

Situate on the confluence of the *Temd*, and *Corve*, and beautified with a very ſtrong Caſtle: the Palace heretofore of ſome of the Princes of *Wales* of the Blood-Royal of *England*, at ſuch times as they reſided in this Country (of which more anon); and of late times, the ordinary Seat of the Lord *Preſident of Wales*: now reckoned, as all *Shropſhire* on that ſide of the *Severn*, as a part of *England*. Of *Angleſey* and the Towns thereof, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, now taking notice only of *Aberfraw*, the Royal Seat ſometimes of the Princes of *North-Wales*, called thence *Kings of Aberfraw*.

The Story of the *Britains* till the time of *Cadwallader* their laſt King, we have had before. After whoſe retirement unto *Rome*, the whole name and Nation became divided into three bodies; that is to ſay, the *Corniſh-Britains*, the *Britains* of *Cumberland*, and the *Britains* of *Wales*. The *Corniſh Britains* governed by their own Dukes, till the time of *Egbert* the firſt Monarch of *England*, by whom ſubdued *An.* 809. and made a Province of that Kingdom. The *Britains* of *Cumberland* had their own Kings alſo (ſome of whoſe names occur in Story) till the year 946. when conquered by *Edmund* King of *England*, the Son of *Athelſtan*, their laſt King being named *Dummilus*, as *Matthew* of *Weſtminſter* informs us. But the main body of them getting into the mountainous parts beyond the *Severn*, did there preſerve the name and reputation of their Country: although their Princes were no longer called Kings of *Britain*, but of the *Walliſh-men* or *Welch*; and much ado they had to make good that title: all the plain Country beyond *Severn* being taken from them by *Offa* King of the *Mercians*: and themſelves made Tributaries for the reſt by *Egbert* before mentioned, by *Athelſtan* afterwards. Which laſt impoſed a Tribute on them of 20 pounds of Gold, 300 pounds of Silver, and 200 head of Cattel yearly; exchanged in following times for a Tribute of Wolves. But howſoever, they continued for a time the Title of Kings, whoſe names are thus ſet down by *Glover*, in his *Catalogue of Honour*, publiſhed by *Milles*.

The Kings of *Wales*.

A.Ch.		
690	1	*Idwallo*, Son of *Cadwallader*.
720	2	*Roderick*, Son of *Idwallo*. 25.
755	3	*Conan*, Son of *Roderick*. 63.
818	4	*Mervin*, the Son in law of *Conan*. 25.
843	5	*Roderick* II. ſirnamed the Great, Son of *Mervin*, who divided his Kingdom, ſmall enough before, amongſt his Sons: giving *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales* to *Amarawdh* his eldeſt Son; to *Cadel* his ſecond Son, *Debeubarth* or *South-Wales*; and *Powys-land* to his youngeſt Son *Mervin*: conditioned that the two younger Sons and their Succeſſors, ſhould hold their Eſtates in Fee of the Kings of *North-wales*, and acknowledge the Soveraignty thereof, as *Liegemen* and *Homagers*. According unto which appointment, it was ordained in the Conſtitutions of *Howel Dha*, the *Legiſlator* of *Wales*, that as the Kings of *Aberfraw* were bound to pay 63 pounds in a way of tribute to the Kings of *London*; ſo the Kings of *Dynevour* and *Matravall*, ſhould pay in way of Tribute the like ſum to the Kings of *Aberfraw*. But notwithſtanding the reſervation of the *Soveraignty* to the Kings of *North-Wales*, *Roderick* committed a great *Solœciſm* in point of State, by this diſmembring of his Kingdom; eſpecially at a time when all the Kingdoms of the *Saxons* were brought into one, and that one apt enough upon all occaſions to work upon the weakneſs of the neighbouring *VVelch*: which had they continued under one ſole Prince, might have preſerved their liberty, and themſelves a Kingdom as well as thoſe of *Scotland*, for ſo long a time, againſt the power and puiſſance of the Kings of *England*. Yet was not this the worſt of the miſchief neither; his Succeſſors ſubdividing (by his example) their ſmall Eſtates into many parcels, inſomuch that of the Eight tributary Kings which rowed King *Edgar* on the *Dee*, five of them were the Kings or Princes of *VVales*. But *Roderick* did not think of that which was to come, whom we muſt follow in our ſtory, according to the diviſion of the Country made by him into three Eſtates of *North wales*, *South-wales*, and *Powys-land*.

1. *NORTH-WALES*, or *Guinedth*, contained the Counties of *Merioneth* and *Carnarvon*, the Iſle of *Angleſey*, and the greateſt parts of *Denbigh* and *Flintſhires*. The chief Towns whereof are *Bangor*, *Denbigh*, *Carnarvon*, *Aberfraw*, ſpoken of before; and ſome in *Angleſey*, whereof we ſhall ſpeak more hereafter. The Country (*Angleſey* excepted) the moſt barren and unfruitful part of *Wales*; but withall the ſafeſt and furtheſt from the danger of the incroaching *Engliſh*; which poſſibly might be the reaſon why it was ſet out for the portion of the Eldeſt Son, in whom the Soveraignty of the *Welch* was to be preſerved by the Kings of

Princes of *North Wales*.

A.Ch.		
877	1	*Amarawd.* 36.
913	2	*Idwallo*, Son of *Amarawd.*
	3	*Merick*, Son of *Idwallo.*
	4	*James*, or *Jago*, Brother of *Merick.*
1067	5	*Conan*, Son of *James* or *Jago.*
1099	6	*Gryffith ap Conan.*
1120	7	*Owen Guinedth*, Son of *Gryffith.*
1178	8	*David ap Owen*, Son of *Owen Guinedth.*
1194	9	*Llewellen ap Jorweth*, the Nephew of *David.*
1240	10	*David ap Llewellen.*
1246	11	*Llewellen* II. Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David ap Llewellen*, the laſt Prince of *Wales* of the *Britiſh* Race. Of whom it is ſaid, that once conſulting with a *Witch*, he was told by her, that it was his deſtiny, to be carried in triumph through *London*, with a Crown on his head. Hereupon making ſome Excurſions on the *Engliſh* Borders, he drew upon himſelf the whole power of King *Edward* the firſt, which not being able to withſtand, and the King as willing on the other ſide not to fight with Mountains; Commiſſioners were appointed to conclude the differences: *Robert* Lord *Tiptoff*, and ſome others, for the King of *England*; for the *Welch* Prince, *Grono ap Heylyn*, a great man of that Country, deſcended from *Breckwel Skythrac*, one of the Princes of *Powys-land*, (from whom, if *Cambden Clarencieux* be of any credit, the Author of theſe Papers doth derive his Pedigree) under whom that Family had the Office of *Hereditary Cup-Bearer*, and from thence their name; (*Heylyn*, *Promus*, *five a poculis*, *quæ vox in proprium nomen abiit*, ſaith the *Welch* Dictionary) By thoſe Commiſſioners it was concluded and agreed on, that *Llewellen* ſhould enjoy a part of the Country with the title of Prince, during his life: the reſt in preſent, and the whole after his deceaſe, to be ſurrendred over to the King of *England*. But *David* the Brother of *Llewellen* finding himſelf excluded by this agreement, from the hope of ſucceſſion, incenſed his Brother and the *Welch* to a new Revolt: the iſſue whereof was the taking of *David*, executed by the hand of Juſtice; and the death of *Llewellen*, ſlain in Battel near the *Buelth* in *Brecknockſhire*. Whoſe head being pitched upon a ſtake, and adorned with a *Paper-Crown*, was by a Horſeman carried triumphantly through *London*, *An.* 1282. And ſo the *Propheſie* was fulfilled. In him ended the Line of the Princes of *North-wales*, after they had for the ſpace of 405 years reſiſted not only the private Undertakers and *Adventurers*

venturers of *England*, but the Forces of many Puiſſant Monarchs; whoſe attempts they always made truſtrate, by retiring into the heart of their Country, and leaving nothing for the *Engliſh* to encounter with, but their Woods and Mountains. But now the fatal period of the *Britiſh* Liberty being come, they were conſtrained to yield to the ſtronger. What followed after this, we ſhall ſee anon.

The Arms of theſe Princes was quarterly *Gules* and *Or*, four Lions Paſſant gardant counterchanged.

2. *POWISLAND* contained the whole Counties of *Montgomery*, and *Radnor*, all *Shropſhire* beyond the *Severn*, with the Town of *Shrewsbury*, and the reſt of *Denbigh* and *Flintſhires*; comprehending by the eſtimation of thoſe times, 15 *Cantreds* or *hundreds* of Villages: the word *Cant* ſignifying an Hundred, and *Tret* a Village. The principal Cities or Towns of it, were, S. *Aſaph*, *Shrewsbury*, *Matraval*, ſpoken of before. A Country more partaking of the nature and fertility of *England*, than the parts belonging unto *Guinedth*, or *North-Wales*; but always lying in harms way, by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of the more potent *Engliſh*: and therefore given by *Roderick* to *Mervin*, his youngeſt Son, partly becauſe he was the youngeſt; but chiefly becauſe he was a man of an approved valour, and ſo more fit to have his portion upon the Borders. In his Line it continued a long time together, but much afflicted and diſmembred by the Earls of *Cheſter* and *Shrewsbury*, who took from them a good part of *Flint*, *Denbigh*, and *Shropſhire*; and by the Princes of *North-wales*, who caſt many a greedy eye upon it. Of the Succeſſors of Prince *Mervin*, I find no good *Conſtat*, more than of *Brockwell Skythrac*, before remembred. The laſt that held it at all entire was *Meredyth ap Blethyn*, who following the ill example of *Roderick Mawr*, divided it betwixt *Madoc*, and *Gryffith*, his two Sons. Of which *Madoc* dyed at *Wincheſter*, An. 1160. in the time of King *Henry* the ſecond, his part hereof depending after his deceaſe, on the Fortunes of *Guynedth*: and *Griffyth* was by *Henry* the firſt made Lord of *Powys* (the ſtile of Prince left off as too high and lofty.) In his race it continued till the time of King *Edward* the firſt: to whom at a Parliament holden in *Shrewsbury*, *Owen ap Gryffith*, the 5. from *Gryffith ap Meridith* before mentioned, ſurrendred his place and title; and received them of the King again to be holden in *Capite* and *free Baronage*, according to the cuſtom of *England*. *Avis*, or *Hawis*, Daughter and Heir of this *Owen ap Gryffith*, was married unto *John Charleton*, *Valect* (or *Gentleman of the Privy Chamber*) to *King Edward* the ſecond, by whom, in right of his Wife, he was made Lord *Powis*. *Edward* the fifth alſo of this Line of the *Charletons*, was the laſt of that Houſe; his Daughter *Jane* conveying the Eſtates and Title to the Houſe of the *Greys*; and of them alſo five enjoyed it, the laſt Lord *Powis* of the Line or Race of *Mervin*, being *Edward Grey*, who dyed in the days of our Grand-Fathers. And ſo the title lay extinct, until revived again in the perſon of Sir *William Herbert* of *Red-Caſtle*, deſcended from the *Herberts*, Earls of *Pembroke*; created Lord *Powys* by *King Charles* the firſt, *An.* 1629.

The Arms of the Princes of *Powyſland*, were *Or*, a Lyon Rampant, *Gules*.

3. *SOUTH-WALES*, or *Debeubarth*, contained the Counties of *Monmouth*, *Glamorgan*, *Caermarden*, *Cardigan*, and *Brecknock*; the greateſt and moſt fruitful part of all *Wales*, but more expoſed to the invaſion of Foreign Nations, *Engliſh*, *Danes*, *Flemings*, and *Norwegians*, by whom the Sea-Coaſts were from time to time moſt grievouſly plagued: Inſomuch that the *Kings* and *Princes* hereof were inforced to remove their Seat from *Caermarthen*, where it was fixt at firſt, unto *Dynevour* Caſtle, as a place of greater ſtrength and ſafety: where it continued till the Princes of it were quite extinct, called from hence *Kings of Dynevour*, as before is ſaid. The chief Towns of it, *Caermarthen*, *Monmouth*, *Landaffe*, S. *Davids*, ſpoken of already. The *Kings* and *Princes*, as far as I can find upon any certainty, are theſe that follow.

The Princes of *South-Wales*.

A. Ch.		
877	1	*Cadel*, the Son of *Roderick Mawr*.
	2	*Howel*.
907	3	*Howel Dha*, Soveraign King of *Wales*.
948	4	*Owen*, the Son of *Dha*.
	5	*Meredith*, Son of *Owen*.
998	6	*Aeneas*, or *Evenus*, Brother of *Meredith*.
	7	*Theodoret* the Great.
1077	8	*Rheſe ap Theodoret*.
1093	9	*Gryffith ap Rheſe*.
	10	*Rheſe* II. *ap Gryffith*.
	11	*Gryffith ap Rheſe*, the laſt Prince of *South-Wales* of the Line of *Cadel*, after they had with great ſtrugling maintained their Liberty for the ſpace of 300 years and upwards: but ſo, that though they ſtill preſerved the title of *Princes*, they loſt a great part of their Country to the *Norman-Engliſh*. For in the Reign of *William Rufus*, *Bernard de Newmark* a Noble *Norman*, ſeized upon thoſe parts which now make the County of *Brecknock*, being then a fair and goodly Lordſhip: and *Robert Fitz-Haymon*, with ſome other noble Adventurers, made themſelves Maſters of *Glamorgan*, in which the Poſterity of ſome of them are ſtill remaining. Incouraged by their good ſucceſs, *Arnulph* of *Montgomery*, in the time of King *Henry* the firſt, won from the *Welch* a great part of *Dyvet*, which we now call *Pembrokeſhire*; as the Earls of *Warren*, and Lord *Mortimer*, about the ſame times did prevail exceedingly in the Conqueſt of *Cardigan* and *Monmouth*. So that the poor Princes had no one Country left entire, but *Caermarthen* only, too little to maintain them in ſo high a title. And though this laſt *Gryffith*, in the time of the Wars in *England*, betwixt *Maud* the Empreſs, and King *Stephen*, had recovered a great part of his loſt Eſtate; yet neither he nor his did enjoy it long; himſelf deceaſing ſhortly after, and his two Sons, *Cymmerick* and *Meredith*, being taken by King *Henry* the ſecond, who moſt cruelly put out their eyes: Yet did the *Welch*, as well as poſſibly they could, endeavour to preſerve the liberty which their Fathers left them; till the Felicity and Wiſdom of King *Edward* the firſt, put an end unto the Wars of *Wales*, and ſetled them in ſome degree of peace and quiet.

But before we come to ſpeak of this, we are to ſhew another Catalogue of the *Kings* and *Princes* of *Wales*, different from the ſucceſſion of them before laid down; and made according to the Hiſtory of *Wales*, writ by *Humfry Lloyd*: this Catalogue containing the ſucceſſion of the greater and predominant Princes, whether of *Guynedh*, *Debeubarth*, or *Powys-land*; ſuch as gave law unto the reſt, and had the honour to be called *Kings of Wales*, though Princes only of their own proper and particular Countries; as formerly we had a Catalogue of the *Monarchs* of the *Engliſh Saxons*, made out of the Predominant Princes of the *Saxon Heptarchie*. Only we ſhall find ſome in the following Catalogue, who were not naturally and lineally Princes of any of the three, and therefore not expreſſed in the former Tables: but ſuch as by ſtrong hand had intruded into thoſe Eſtates, to the prejudice of the right heirs, overpowered by them.

The

The Kings and Princes of *Wales*, according to the *Welch* Hiſtory.

A.Ch.		
633	1	*Ivor*, a potent Interloper, upon *Cadwallader*'s departure uſurped the Kingdom.
990	2	*Idwallo*, or *Edwall*, Son of *Cadwallader*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne.
720	3	*Roderick Malwinnoc*, the Son of *Idwallo*.
755	4	*Conan Tiendaethwy*, the Son of *Roderick*.
820	5	*Mervin Vrich*, in right of *Eiſylht* his Wife, the Daughter of *Conan*.
843	6	*Roderick Mawre*, (who divided *Wales* into three Eſtates) the Son of *Mervin*.
877	7	*Amarawdh*, Prince of *Guinedth*, the Son of *Roderick Mawre*.
913	8	*Edwal Voel*, Prince of *Guynedth*, Son of *Amarawdh*; made tributary to *Athelſtan* King of *England*.
940	9	*Howel Dha*, (or the Good) Prince of *Deheubarth*, and *Powys*.
948	10	*Jevaf*, and *Jago*, Sons of *Edwal Voel*, to whom King *Edgar* did releaſe the Tribute ordained by King *Athelſtan*, to be paid in money, for a tribute of *Wolves*; of which we ſpake before when we were in *England*.
982	11	*Howel*, the Son of *Jevaf*, ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Wales*, his Father being ſtill alive, and of right Prince of *Guinedth*.
984	12	*Cadwallan*, the Brother of *Howel*.
986	13	*Meredith ap Owen*, Prince of *Deheubarth*.
992	14	*Edwal* III. Son of *Merick*, the Eldeſt Son of *Edwall Voel*; which *Merick* had been pretermitted, as unfit for Government.
1003	15	*Aeden ap Blethored*, an Uſurper.
1015	16	*Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, deſcended from *Amarawdh*, the firſt Prince of *Guinedth* or *North-Wales*.
1021	17	*Jago ap Edwal*, Prince of *Guinedth*, Son of *Edwal* the third.
1037	18	*Gryffith ap Llewellen*, the Son of *Llewellen ap Sitſylth*, and the Lady *Angharad*.
1061	19	*Blethyn* and *Rhywallon*, Sons of *Angharad*, the Daughter of *Meredith ap Owen* Prince of *Deheubarth*, by a ſecond Husband.
1073	20	*Trahaern ap Caradoc*, Couſin to *Blethyn*.
1078	21	*Gryffith* Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Conan*, the Son of *Jago ap Edwal*, one of the Princes of the ſame, did Homage to *William* the Conqueror, and was the laſt that had the title of King of *Wales*.
1137	22	*Owen Guinedh* Prince of *Guinedh*, and Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, Eldeſt Son of *Gryffith*.
1169	23	*David ap Owen* Prince of *Guinedh*, the younger Son of *Owen Guinedh*.
1194	24	*Llewellen*, Son of *Jorwerth*, eldeſt ſon of *Owen Guinedh*, excluded by *David* his younger Brother.
1242	25	*David ap Llewellen* Prince of *Guinedh*, Son of *Llewellen ap Jorwerth*.
1246	26	*Llewellen* Son of *Gryffith*, the Brother of *David*, the laſt Soveraign Prince of *Wales*, of the race of *Cadwallader*; overcome and ſlain in Battel by King *Edward* the firſt, *An.* 1282. as before is ſaid: by means whereof the *Principality of Wales* was added to the Crown of *England*.

When King *Edward* had thus fortunately effected this great buſineſs, he gave unto his *Engliſh* Barons and other Gentlemen of note, many fair Signiories and Eſtates; as well to reward them for their ſervice in the Conqueſt, as to engage ſo many able men, both in purſe and power, for the perpetual defence and ſubjection of it. As for the Lordſhip of *Flint*, and the Towns and Eſtates lying on the Sea-Coaſts: he held them in his own hands, both to keep himſelf ſtrong, and to curb the *Welch*: and (wherein he dealt like the politick Emperour *Auguſtus*) pretending the eaſe of ſuch as he had there placed; but indeed to have all the Arms, and men of employment under himſelf only.

This done, he divided *Wales* into ſeven Shires, *viz.* 1. *Glamorgan*, 2. *Carmarden*, 3. *Pembroke*, 4. *Cardegan*, 5. *Merioneth*, 6. *Carnarvon*, and 7. *Angleſey*, after the manner of *England*. Over each of theſe, as he placed a particular *Engliſh* Lieutenant, ſo he was very deſirous to have one general *Engliſh* Vicegerent, over the whole Body of the *Welch*. But this when they mainly withſtood he ſent for his Wife, then great with Child, to *Carnarvon*, where ſhe was delivered of a Son. Upon the news whereof the King aſſembled the *Britiſh* Lords, and offered to name them a Governour born in *Wales*, which could not ſpeak one word of *Engliſh*, and whoſe life no man could tax. Such a one when they had all ſworn to obey, he named his young Son *Edward*; ſince which time our Kings Eldeſt Sons are called *Princes of Wales*. Their *Inveſtiture* is performed by the impoſition of a Cap of Eſtate, and a *Coronet* on his head that is inveſted, as a token of his *Principality*; by delivering into his hand a *Verge*, being the emblem of Government; by putting a *Ring* of Gold on his finger, to ſhew him that now he is a *Husband* to the Country, and a Father to her Children; and by giving him a Patent, *to hold the ſaid Principality to him and his Heirs Kings of* England. By which words the ſeparation of it from the Crown is prohibited; and the Kings keep in themſelves ſo excellent an occaſion, of obliging unto them their eldeſt Son, when they pleaſe. In imitation of this Cuſtom, *more ex* Anglia *tranſlato* (ſaith *Mariana*) *John* the firſt of *Caſtile* and *Leon*, made his Son *Henry* Prince of the *Aſturias*; which is a Country ſo craggy and mountainous, that it may not improperly be called the *Wales of Spain*. And all the *Spaniſh* Princes even to theſe times, are honoured with this Title of *Prince of the Aſturias*.

Notwithſtanding this provident care of *Edward* the firſt, in eſtabliſhing his Empire here; and the extream rigour of Law here uſed by *Henry* the 4th, in reducing them to obedience, after the rebellion of *Owen Glendower*: yet till the time of *Henry* the 8th, and his Father, (both being extract from the *Welch* blood) they ſeldom or never contained themſelves within the bounds of true Allegiance. For whereas before they were reputed as *Aliens*, this *Henry* made them (by act of Parliament) one Nation with the *Engliſh*, ſubject to the ſame Laws, capable of the ſame preferments, and priviledged with the ſame immunities. He added alſo 6 Shires to the former number, out of thoſe Countries which were before reputed as the Borders and *Marches* of *Wales*; and enabled them to ſend Knights and Burgeſſes unto the *Engliſh* Parliaments: ſo that the name and language only excepted, there is now no difference between the *Engliſh* and *Welch*, an happy Union.

The ſame King *Henry* eſtabliſhed for the eaſe of his *Welch* ſubjects, a Court at *Ludlow*, like unto the ordinary Parliaments in *France*: wherein the Laws are miniſtred according to the Faſhion of the Kings Courts of *Weſtminſter*. The Court conſiſteth of one *Preſident* who is, for the moſt part, of the Nobility, and is generally called, the *Lord Preſident of Wales*; of as many Counſellours as it ſhall pleaſe the King to appoint; one Attorney, one Solicitor,

licitor, one Secretary, and the four Justices of the Counties of *Wales*. The Town it self (for this must not be omitted) adorned with a very fair Castle, which hath been the Palace of such Princes of *Wales*, of the *English* blood, as have come into this Country, to solace themseves among their people. Here was young *Edward* the 5th, at the death of his Father; and here dyed Prince *Arthur*, Eldest son of *Henry* the 7th.: both being sent hither by their Fathers to the same end, *viz.* by their presence to satisfie and keep in order the unquiet *Welch-men*. And certainly, as the presence of the *Prince* was then a terror to the rebellious, so would it now be as great a comfort to this peaceable people.

What the *Revenues* of this *Principality* are, I cannot say: yet we may boldly affirm that they are not very small, by these reasons following, *viz.* 1. By the Composition which *Llewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales*, made with *Edward* the first: who being Prince of *North Wales* only, and dispossessed of most of that, was fain to redeem the rest, of the said King *Edward*, at the price of 50000 Marks (which comes to 100000 pounds of our present money) to be paid down in ready coin; and for the residue to pay 1000 l. *per annum*. And 2ly, by those two circumstances, in the marriage of the Lady *Katharine* of *Spain*, to the above-named Prince *Arthur*. For first, her Father *Ferdinando* being one of the wariest Princes that ever were in *Europe*, giving with her in Dowry 200000 Ducats; required for Joynture, the third part only of this Principality, and of the Earldom of *Chester*. And secondly, after the death of Prince *Arthur*, the Nobles of the Realm perswaded Prince *Henry* to take her to Wife; that so great a Treasure as the yearly *Revenue* of her Joynture, might not be carried out of the Kingdom.

The Arms of the Princes of *Wales* differ from those of *England*, only by the addition of a *Label* of three points. But the proper and pecular device, and which we commonly, though corruptly, call the *Princes Arms*, is a Coronet beautified with three *Ostrich* Feathers, and inscribed round with *ICH DIEN*, that is, I serve; alluding to that of the Apostle, *The Heir while he is a Child differeth not from a Servant*. This *Coronet* was won by that valiant Prince, *Edward* the Black Prince, at the Battel of *Crescie*, from *John* King of *Bohemia*; who did there wear it, and whom he there slew. Since which time it hath been the Cognizance of all our Princes.

I will now shut up my discourse of *Wales*, with that testimony of the people, which *Henry* the second used in a Letter to *Emanuel* Emperour of *Constantinople*, *The Welch Nation is so adventurous, that they dare encounter naked with armed men; ready to spend their blood for their Country, and pawn their life for praise:* and adding only this, That since their incorporating with the *English*, they have shewed themselves most loyal, hearty, and affectionate Subjects of the State: cordially devoted to their King, and zealous in defence of their Laws, Liberties and Religion, as well as any of the best of their fellow-Subjects; whereof they have given good proof in these later times.

There are in *Wales*.
Archbishops 0. Bishops 4

The BORDERS.

BEfore we come into *Scotland*, we must of necessity pass through that Batable ground, lying betwixt both Kingdoms; called THE BORDERS; the Inhabitants whereof are a kind of military men, subtile, nimble, and by reason of their often skirmishes, well experienced, and adventurous. Once the *English* Border extended as far as unto the *Fryth*, or Strait of *Edenburgh* on the East, and that of *Dunbriton* on the West (the first *Fryth*, by the Latines called *Bodotria* and the later *Glotta*:) betwixt which, where now standeth the Town of *Sterling*, was an antient Bridge, built over the River which falleth into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*; on a Cross standing whereupon, was writ this *Passport*;

I am *Free-march* as passengers may ken,
To *Scots*, to *Britains*, and to *English-men*.

But when *England* groaned under the burden of the *Danish* oppression, the *Scots* well husbanded that advantage; and not only enlarged their Borders to the *Tweed*, but also took into their hands *Cumberland*, *Northumberland*, and *Westmerland*. The *Norman* Kings again recovered these Provinces, making the *Borders* of both Kingdoms to be *Tweed*, East; the *Solway*, West; and the *Cheviot* hills in the midst. Of any great wars made on these *Borders*, or any particular Officers appointed for the defence of them, I find no mention till the time of *Edward* the first; who taking advantage of the *Scots* disagreements about the successor of *Alexander* the third, hoped to bring the Country under the obedience of *England*. This Quarrel betwixt the two Nations he began, but could not end: the Wars surviving the Author; so that what *Velleius* saith of the *Romans* and *Carthaginians*, I may as well say of the *Scots* and *English*: for almost 300 years together, *aut bellum inter eos populos, aut belli præparatio, aut infidæ pax fuit*. In most of these conflicts the *Scots* had the worst. So that *Daniel* in his History seemeth to marvail how this Corner of the Isle could breed so many, had it bred nothing but men, as were slain in these wars. Yet in the Reign of *Edward* the second, the *Scots* (having twice defeated that unhappy Prince) became so terrible to the *English Borderers*, that an hundred of them would fly from three *Scots*. It is a custom among the *Turks*, not to believe a *Christian* or a *Jew* complaining against a *Turk*, except their accusation be confirmed by the Testimony of some *Turk* also; which seldom hapning, is not the least cause why so little Justice is there done the *Christians*. In like manner, it is the Law of these *Borderers*, never to believe any *Scots* complaining against any *English-man*, unless some other *English man* will witness for him; and so on the other side. *Ex jure quodam inter limitaneos rato* (saith *Cambden in his Elizab.*) *nullus nisi Scotus in Scotum, nullus nisi Anglus in Anglum, testis admittitur*. This Custom making void in this fashion all kinds of accusations, was one of the greatest causes of the Insolencies of both sides committed. Besides, there were divers here living, which acknowledged neither King; but sometime were *Scots*, sometime *English*, as their present crimes and necessities required protection, or pardon. To keep in this people, and secure their *Borders*, there were in each Kingdom three Officers appointed, called the *Lords Wardens of the Marches*: one being placed over the East, the other over the West, the third over the middle *Borders*. In *England*, the *Warden* of the East *Marches* had his Seat at *Berwick*, (a Town of great strength, and which for the conveniency of its situa-

tion, was the first thing which the *English* took care to defend, and the *Scots* to surprise) of which he was also Governour. The *Warden* of the West Marches had his Seat in *Carlile*, which *Henry* the 8. for that cause well fortified. The *Warden* of the middle Marches had no set place of residence, but was sometimes in one place, sometimes in another, according as occasion required; the Office being executed for the most part, by the Wardens of the Eastern or Western Marches. But *Imperii medium est, terminus ante fuit*, by the blessed Marriage of the Kingdoms, that being now the middle of one, which was then the bounds of two Empires; these Officers, and the cause of them, the Wars, are quite extinguished.

SCOTLAND.

SCOTLAND is the Northern part of *Britain*, separated from *England* by the River *Tweed* and *Solway*, and the *Cheviot* Hills, extending from the one to the other. It is in length (according to *Polydore Virgil*) 480 miles, but of no great breadth; there being no place distant from the Sea above 60 miles, and the Country ending like the sharp point of a Wedge. And for the length assigned unto it by *Polydore*, it must be made up by measuring the Crooks and Windings of the shores, every where thrusting out with very large *Promontories*, and cutting deep *Indentures* into the Land. For measuring in a straitLine fromNorth to South, the length thereof from *Solway Frith* to the *Straitby-head*, amounteth but unto three hundred and ten *Italian* miles; and from *Berwick* unto *Straitby-head*, is a great deal shorter. So that there is no such over-sight in the Maps of *Britain*, nor such necessity to correct them, as was sometimes thought.

It was once called *Caledonia*, from the *Caledonii* a chief People of it: sometimes *Albania*, from *Albanie* or *Braid Albin*, a principal Province in the North. But the most usual name is *Scotia* or *Scotland*; though the reason of the name be not agreed on. Some fabulous Writers of their own fetch it from *Scota*, the Daughter of an *Ægyptian Pharaoh*; of whom more when we come to *Ireland*. Others with better reason (though that none of the best) from the *Scotti*, *Scitti*, or *Scythi*, a *German*, or *Sarmatian* people, of noted fame; whom they will have to sieze first on some parts of *Spain*, from thence to transplant themselves into *Ireland*; and out of *Ireland* into the *Hebrides* or Western Islands, now parts and members of this Kingdom. The more probable opinion is, that they were no other than meer *Irish*, (whose language, habit, and the most barbarous of their customs, the *Highlanders*, or natural *Scots* do still retain) united in the name of *Scot*, about the declination of the *Roman* Empire: the word *Scot* signifying in their Language, a body aggregated into one out of many particulars; as the word *Alman* in the *Dutch*. *Scot illud dicitur*, (saith *Camden* out of *Matthew* of *Westminster*) *quod ex diversis rebus in unum acervum aggregatur*. First mentioned by this name in some fragments of *Porphyrie* (who lived about the time of the Emperor *Aurelian*) as they are cited by S. *Hierom*: after the death of *Constantine* much spoken of in approved Authors, as the confederates of the *Picts*, in harassing the *Roman* Province.

The whole divided commonly into the *Highlands*, and the *Lowlands*. The *Highlanders* or *Irish Scots* inhabiting the *Hebrides*, and the West parts of the Continent adjoyning to them, more barbarous than the *Wild Irish* at this day: not to be civiliz'd (as King *James* observed in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron*) *but by planting Colonies of the more Inland, orderly Scots* among them. The *Lowlanders* or *English Scots* (as I well may call them) inhabiting on this side the two *Fryths* of *Dunbritton* and *Edenburgh*, and the plainer Countries along the *German* Ocean; are the more civil of the two, as being of the same *Saxon* race with the *English*. This is evident, first by their Language, being only a broad Northern *English*, a *Dialect* only of that tongue: 2. By the testimony of the *Highlanders* themselves, who are the true *Scots*, and speak the old *Irish* language, by whom the *Lowlandes* and the *English* are called by the same name of *Saxons*: 3. by the general consent of all Historians, affirming that the Kingdom of the *Northumbers* or *English Saxons*, beyond *Humber*, extended as far Northwards as the two *Fryths* before mentioned; and there continued for the space of 300 years: and 4. By the confession of some ingenious Gentlemen of that Nation, who grant it for a probable Tenet, That the *Saxons* and the *Scots* invading *Britain* much about the same time, the *Saxons* might extort the Eastern shore lying next their Country, from the old Inhabitants; as well as the *Scots* did all the Western parts which lay next to *Ireland*, and the *Hebrides* or *Western Islands*, from whence they first passed into *Britain*.

The Country for the most part, especially beyond the limits of the *Roman Province*, is very barren and unfruitful, not able to afford sustenance for the *Natives* of it; were they not a people patient of want and hunger, temperate in diet, and not accustomed unto that riot and excess, used commonly in richer and more plentiful Countries. Fruit they have very little, and not many Trees either for Building or for Fewel: the people holding, as in *France*, at the *Will of the Lord*, and therefore not industrious to build, or plant. Their chief Commodities are coorse Cloth, Fish in great abundance, Hides, Lead, and Coal; of which two last their Mountains do afford some rich undecaying Mines.

The People have been noted by their best Writers, for some barbarous Customs entertained amongst them. One of which was, If any two were displeased, they expected no law, but bang'd it out bravely, one and his Kindred, against the other and his: and thought the King much in their common, if they granted him at a certain day to keep the Peace. This fighting they call their *Feides*, a word so barbarous, that were it to be expressed in *Latine* or *French*, it must be by *Circumlocution*. These deadly *Feides*, King *James* in his most excellent *Basilicon Doron* adviseth his son to redress with all care possible; but it pleased God to give him so long a life as to see it in his own days remedied: wherein he got a greater Victory over that stubborn

born people, than ever did any foreign Prince, or any of his Predeceſſors could do before him; an act indeed truly Royal, and worthy himſelf. Another Cuſtom they had of that nature, that the like was hardly ever heard of amongſt the Heathen, and much leſs in *Chriſtendom*, which took beginning, as the *Scotiſh* Hiſtorians affirm, in the Reign of *Ewen* the third, who is the Fifteenth King in their Catalogue, after the firſt *Fergus*. This *Ewen* being a Prince much addicted, or wholly rather given over unto laſciviouſneſs, made a Law, That himſelf and his Succeſſors ſhould have the *Maidenhead*, or firſt Nights lodging with every Woman, whoſe husband held Land immediately from the Crown: and the Lords and Gentlemen of all thoſe whoſe husbands were their Tenants or *Homagers*. This was, it ſeems, the *Knights-ſervice* which men held their Eſtates by; and continued till the days of *Malcolm Connor*: who at the requeſt of his Wife *Margaret*, (ſhe was the ſiſter of *Edgar Atheling*) aboliſhed this Law, and ordained, That the *Tenants* by way of commutation, ſhould pay unto their Lords a mark in money, which Tribute the *Hiſtorians* ſay is ſtill in force. It was called *Marcheta mulieris*: but whether from *Mark*, a horſe in the old *Gallique* (implying the obſcene ſignification of *Equitare*) as Mr. *Selden* thinks; or From *Marca* the ſum of money by which it was afterward redeemed, I cannot determine. Certain I am that this laſt Cuſtom was of ſuch a barbarous and bruitiſh nature, that the Cuſtom of the *Indians* in giving to the *Bramine* the firſt nights lodging with their Brides; and that of many Savage unconverted Nations in proſtituting their Wives & Daughters to the luſts and pleaſure of their *Gueſts*; have not more *unchriſtianity* in them, than this of thoſe *Scottiſh* Chriſtians, if I may ſo call them.

Theſe Cuſtoms ſhew the antient *Scots* to be rude and barbarous, partaking little of the civility of the neghbouring Nation: nor are they ſo broken of the former, but that they are obſerved by a *modern Writer*, to be ſtill greedy of revenge where they find means to take it; as alſo to be a ſubtile and politick people, inclined to Factions and Seditions among themſelves, which he that reads their Sories cannot chooſe but ſee. A people, as King *James* obſerveth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, ever weary of the preſent ſtate, and deſirous of novelties, accuſtomed to judge and ſpeak raſhly of their Kings and Princes; towards whom they have always carried themſelves with ſuch untractableneſs, that more Kings have been betrayed, murthered, and depoſed by the *Scots*, than by all the Nations in the World. But take them in themſelves without theſe relations, and they are ſaid to be an induſtrious people, capable of all Sciences which they give their minds to, and generally well verſed in *Grammatical* Learning, of which moſt of their *Gentry* have a ſmattering. And of moſt note in point of Learning, have been 1. *Marianus* (ſirnamed) *Scotus*, and 2. *Hector Boetius*, the Hiſtorians. 3. *John Major*, a well-known Schoolman, for the times before the Reformation. And for the times that followed, 4. *George Buchanan*, an ingenious Poet, but an unſound *States-man*; whoſe Hiſtory, and Dialogue *De jure Regni*, have wrought more miſchief in the World, than all *Machiavels* works. Not to have been remembred here, but becauſe he was Pædogogue to 5. King *James*, of moſt famous memory; whoſe printed works declare his large abilities in all kinds of Learning. 6. *Napier*, the Laird of *Marchiſton*. 7, 8. *Bareklay*, the Father and the Son. 9. *John Skene*, the beſt Antiquary of this Nation. 10. Doctor *John Maxwel*, the late learned Biſhop of *Roſs*, and my very good friend; beſides ſome others of leſs note.

The *Chriſtian Religion* was here planted by divers men according to their ſeveral Nations who did here inhabit amongſt the *Low-Landers*, or *Saxon-Scots*, by *Aidan* the firſt Biſhop of *Lindisfarn*, or *Holy Iſland*; amongſt the *Picts*, inhabiting the South-Eaſtern parts, by *Ninias*, Biſhop of *Candida Caſa*, or *Whit-herne*, in *Galloway*; amongſt the *Northern-Picts*, An. 555. and finally amongſt the *Scots*, by *Palladius* a Deacon of *Rome*, ſent to them hither for that purpoſe by Pope *Celeſtine*. An. 435. or thereabouts. And for the *Reformation* of *Religion*, overgrown with the ruſt and rubbiſh of the *Romiſh* Church, (degenerated from it ſelf in the latter days) it was here made by a ſtrong hand, according to the judgment of *Knox* and others: nor taking counſel with the *Prelates* nor ſtaying the leiſure of the Prince, as they did in *England*; but turning Prince and *Prelates*, out of all authority; made by that means, more naturally ſubject unto alterations than it had been otherwiſe; or only to be made good by the ſame violence, which firſt introduced it. 'Tis true, that for a while, being in danger of the *French*, and of neceſſity to ſupport themſelves by the power and favour of the *Engliſh*: they bound themſelves by a ſolemn Subſcription, to adhere only to the Rites and Ceremonies of the Church of *England*, and to obſerve that form of Worſhip which was there eſtabliſhed. *Religionis cultui, & Ritibus cum Anglis communibus ſubſcripſerunt*; as is affirmed by *Buchanan*, their own State-Hiſtorian. But no ſooner was that danger over, but they found opportunity and leaſure to effect their ends; and have endeavoured ever ſince by practices, and correſpondency with that party here, and finally by force of Arms, to thruſt their own Conſtitutions and Form of Worſhip on the Church of *England*.

As for the Goyernment of the Church, it was originally by Biſhops, (as in all parts elſe;) but ſo as they exerciſe their Functions and Juriſdictions in all places, equally, whereſoever they come: The Kingdom not being divided into *Dioceſſes*, till the time of *Malcolm* the third, *An.* 1070, or thereabouts. Nor had they any Archbiſhops till the year 1478. The Arcbiſhop of *York* being accounted and obeyed before that time, as the *Metropolitan* of *Scotland*. But being once ſettled in an orderly and conſtant *Hierarchy*, they held the ſame unto the *Reformation* began by *Knox*: and when he and his aſſociates approving the *Genevian* plat-form, took the advantage of the minority of King *James* the Sixth, to introduce the *Presbyterian* Diſcipline, and ſuppreſs the Biſhops; forbidding them by their own ſole authority, to intermeddle any more in matters which concerned the *Church*, and *Cantoning* the Kingdom into *Presbyteries* of their own aſſigning. And that the King might not be able to oppoſe their doings, they kept him under by ſtrong hand, impriſoned him at *Sterling*, made him fly from *Edenburgh*, removed from him all his faithful Servants, and ſeized upon his principal Fortreſſes: and in a word, ſo baffled and affronted him upon all occaſions, that he was minded many times to have left the Kingdom, and retire to *Venice*. Which doubtleſs he had done, (as I have heard affirmed by ſome of great place, & power) had not the hopes of coming at the laſt to the Crown of *England*, made him ſtay it out: So that his *Maxim* of *No Biſhop, no King*, was not made at random, but founded on the ſad experience of his own condition. And though upon the ſence of thoſe inconveniences, which that alteration brought upon him, he did afterwards with great both Policy and Prudence, reſtore again the *Epiſcopal* Order, and ſetled it both by *Synodical* Acts, and by Acts of Parliament: yet the ſame reſtleſs ſpirit breaking out again in the Reign of his Son, *An.* 1638. did violently eject the Biſhops, and ſuppreſs the calling; and ſet up their Presbyteries throughout the Kingdom, as in former times.

The famous or miraculous things rather of this Country are, 1. The Lake of *Nirton*, part of whoſe waters do con-

geal in Winter, and part of them not. 2. That in the Lake of *Lennox*, being 24 miles in compaſs, the Fiſh are generally without Fins, and yet there is great abundance of them. 3. That when there is no wind ſtirring, the waters of the ſaid Lake are ſo tempeſtuous, that no Mariner dares venture on it. 4. That there is a Stone called the *Deaf ſtone*, 12 foot high, and 33 Cubits thick; of this rare quality, that a Musket ſhot off on the one ſide, cannot be heard by a man ſtanding on the other. If it be otherwiſe (as he muſt have a ſtrong Faith who believes theſe wonders) let *Hector Boetius* bear the blame, out of whom I had it.

Chief Mountains of this Kingdom are the *Cheviot* Hills upon the *Borders*; and Mount *Grampius* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*; the ſafeſt ſhelter of the *Picts*, or Northern *Britains* againſt the *Romans*, and of the *Scots* againſt the *Engliſh*; now called the Hills of *Albany*, or the mountainous Regions of *Braid-Albin*. Out of theſe ſpringeth the 1. *Tay* or *Taus*, the faireſt River of *Scotland*, falling into the Sea alout *Dundee*, in the Eaſt ſide; and 2. the *Clnyd*, empting it ſelf into *Dunbritton Frith*, on the Weſt ſide of the Kingdom. Other Rivers of moſt note, are, the 3. *Banoc*, emptying it ſelf into the *Frith* of *Edenburgh*; on the Banks whereof was fought that fatal Battel of *Banocks-bourn*, of which more anon. 4. *Spey*, 5. *Dee*, the *Oceſa* of *Ptolomy*: none of them of any long courſe, by reaſon that the Country Northward is but very narrow.

In reference to *Eccleſiaſtical* affairs, this Kingdom hath been long divided into 13 Dioceſſes, to which the Dioceſs of *Edenburgh* (taken out of that of S. *Andrews*) hath been lately added: and in relation to the *Civil*, into divers *Seneſchalſies* and *Sheriffdoms*, which being for the moſt part hereditary, are no ſmall hinderance to the due execution of Juſtice. So that the readieſt way to redreſs the miſchief (as King *James* adviſed) is to diſpoſe of them as they fall or Eſcheat to the Crown, according to the laudable cuſtom (in that caſe) in *England*.

The greateſt *Friends* of the *Scots*, were the *French*, to whom the *Scots*, ſhewed themſelves ſo faithful, that the *French* King committed the defence of his perſon to a ſelected number of *Scottiſh* Gentlemen: and ſo valiant, that they have much hindered the *Engliſh* Victories in *France*. And certainly the *French* feeling the ſmart of the *Engliſh* puiſſance alone, have continually heartned the *Scots* in their attempts againſt *England*, and hindred all means of making union betwixt them: as appeared, when they brake the match agreed on, between our *Edward* the ſixth, and *Mary* the young Queen of *Scots*. Their greateſt enemy was the *Engliſh*, who overcame them in many battels, ſeized once upon the Kingdom, and had longer kept it, if the moutainous and unacceſſible woods had not been more advantagious to the *Scots*, than their power: for ſo much King *James* ſeemeth to intimate in his ſpeech at *White-Hall*, 1607, *And though*, ſaith he *the* Scots *had the honour and good fortune never to be conquered, yet were they never but on the* defenſible *ſide; and may in part thank their hills and inacſſible paſſages, that ſaved them from an utter overthrow, at the hands of all them that ever pretended to conquer them.* But

Jam cunctigens una ſumus, ſic ſimus in ævum:

One only Nation now are we,
And let us ſo for ever be.

The chief Cities are *Edenburgh* (of old called *Caſtrum Alatum*) in *Lothien*, where is the Kings Palace, and the Courts of Juſtice. It conſiſteth chiefly of one ſtreet extending in length one mile, into which run many prety lanes; ſo that the whole compaſs may be nigh three miles: extending from Eaſt to Weſt on a riſing ground, at the Summit or Weſt end whereof ſtandeth a ſtrong and magnificent Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep and precipitous Rock, which comandeth the Town; ſuppoſed to be the *Caſtrum Alatum*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*. Under the command or rather the protection of which Caſtle, and through the neighbourhood of *Leith*, ſtanding on the *Fryth*, and ſerving as a Port unto it; & finally by the advantage of the Courts of Juſtice, and the Court Royal, called *Holy-Rood-Houſe*, it ſoon became rich, populous, well-traded, and the chief of the Kingdom: but withal factious and ſeditious, conteſting with their Kings, or ſiding againſt them upon al occaſions. No way to humble them, and keep them in obedience to their Soveraign Lords, but by incorporating *Leith*, indulging it with the priviledges of a City, and removing thither the Seat Royal and the Courts of Judicature; which they more fear than all the Plagues that can befal them. It belonged in former times to the *Engliſh Saxons*, (as all the reſt of the Country from the *Fryth* to *Barwick*) from whom, oppreſſed by the tyranny of the *Danes*, it was taken by the *Scots* and *Picts*, Anno 800 or thereabouts. 2. *Sterling*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the *Forth* or *Fryth*, in the Sheriffdom ſo called; a ſtrong Town, and beautified withal with a very fair Caſtle, the birth-place of King *James* the ſixth, the firſt Monarch of *Great Britain*. Near to which Town, on the banks of the River *Bannock*, hapned the moſt memorable diſcomfiture that the *Scots* ever gave the *Engliſh*: who beſides many Lords and 700 Knights and men of note, loſt in this Fight (as the *Scottiſh* Writers do report) 50000 of the common Souldiers (our *Engliſh* Hiſtorians confeſs 10000, and too many of that) the King himſelf (*Edward* the 2.) being compelled to flie for his life and ſafety. Some of the *Scotiſh* Writers tell us, that the purer ſort of Silver, which we call *Starling* money, did take name from hence; they might as well have told us, that all our ſilver *Bulloin* comes from *Bulloin* in *Luyckland*, or from the Port of *Bulloin* in *France*; the truth being that it took that name from the *Eaſterlings* or Merchants of *Eaſt Germany*, drawn into *England* by King *John*, to refine our Coin. 3. *Glaſco*, in *Cluidſdale*, honoured with an Archbiſhops See, and a publick School (to which ſome give the name of an Univerſity) founded here by Archbiſhop *Turnbul*, Anno 1554. 4. S. *Andrews* the chief Town of *Fife*, an Archiepiſcopal See, and an Univerſity; by the *Latins* called *Fanum Reguli*: which, and the *Engliſh* name, it took from the bones of S. *Andrew* the Apoſtle, tranſlated firſt from *Patras* in *Peleponneſus* where he ſuffered death, unto *Conſtantinople*; and thence brought hither by a Monk called *Albatus Regulus*, in the year 378 (if they be not miſtaken in the time, who made the ſtory.) Over which *Relicks* he is ſaid to have built a monaſtry, which after grew to be a City: called from the founder *Fanum Reguli*; in honour of the Saint, S. *Andrew*. The Biſhop hereof is the *Metropolitan* of all *Scotland*; the City ſeated on the Ocean, near the fall of the *Ethan*, overlooked with a ſtrong and goodly Caſtle, the Archbiſhops ſeat. 5. *Falkland*, in the ſame Province or *Fife*, beautified with a retiring houſe of the Kings, reſorting thither often on *receſs* from buſineſs, or for the commodity and pleaſure of hunting, which the place affords. 6. *Dundee*, in *Latine*, *Taodunum*, a rich and noted Port at the mouth of the *Taye*, the chief Town of *Anguis*. 7. *Aber-don*, at the mouth of the River *Done*, whence it had the name, (the word *Aber* in the *Britiſh* ſignifying the mouth or influx of a River) an Univerſity, and Biſhops See. 8. *Perth*, or St. *Johns Town*, ſeated on the *Tay*, but in the middle of the Kingdom; walled and repleniſhed with an induſtrious people: the chief Town of the Sheriffdom of *Perth*. 9. *Scone*, on the

farther

farther side of the *Taye*, adorned heretofore with a famous *Monastry*; the usual place for the Inauguration of the *Scottish* Kings: the fatal stone, on which they did receive the Crown, (the *Palladium* of the *Scottish* Kingdom) here kept, till the removal of it unto *Westminster*, by King *Edward* the first. Upon which stone there were of old ingraven these Verses,

Non fallat fatum, Scoti quocunque locatum
Invenient lapidem, regnare tenentur ibidem.

Translated in old Meeter thus:

The *Scots* shall brook that Realm as natif ground,
If *Weirds* fail not, whaire ere this *Stone* is found.

Most happily accomplished in the Succession of King *James* the sixth, to the Crown of *England*. 10. *Dumbriton* (*Britannodunum* in the *Latine*) seated in a grassie Plain, at the fall or influx of the River *Levin* into the *Cluyd*, upon two steep and precipicious Rocks, flanked on the West with the said two Rivers, and on the East with a miry Flat, drowned at every full Sea: the strongest hold of all the Kingdom, and thought to be impregnable but by Famine or Treason, and the chief Town of the West side of *Scotland*; the name hereof communicated to the *Fryth* adjoyning.

The Antient Inhabitants of this Country dwelling within the limits of the *Roman* Province, were the *Gadeni*, possessing *Tevidale*, *Twedale*, *March* and *Lothien*, whose chief City was *Castra Alata*, now *Edenburgh*. 2. The *Damnii*, dwelling in *Cluydsdale*, *Lennox*, *Sterling*, and *Menteith*, whose chief City was *Vanduara*, now *Renfraw*; *Lindum*, now *Linlithquo*. 3. The *Selgovæ* inhabited in *Liddisdale*, *Tivedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annondale*, and *Niddisdale*, whose chief place was *Carbantorigum*, now *Caer-Laverock*: and 4. The *Noventes*, containing *Galloway*, *Carrick*, *Kyle* and *Cuningham*. Principal places of the which were, *Lucopibia*, now *Whithern*, and *Berigonium*, now *Bargenie*. Without the *Province*, amongst the *Picts* or *barbarous Britains*, divided generally into *Caledonii* and *Meatæ*, the Nations of most Note were, 5. The *Caledonii* properly so called, taking up all *Strathern*, *Argile*, *Cantire*, *Albanie*, *Lorn*, *Perth*, *Angus*, and *Fife*. 6. The *Vermines* of *Mernis* and *Mar*. 7. The *Talzali* of *Buquhan*. 8. The *Vacomagi* of *Loquhabre* and *Murray*. 9. The *Cantæ* of *Ross* and *Sutherland*. 10. The *Contini* of *Cathness*; and 11. The *Cornubii* of *Strathnavern*, the furthest Country Northward of all the Island. Chief Towns of which were, *Tamia*, *Banatia*, *Orea*, *Devana*, and *Tuesis*; which we know not where to find upon any certainty.

The fortunes of this people, as they related to the *Romans*, hath been shewn before. On the withdrawing of whose Forces, so much hereof as formerly had belonged to that Empire, was possessed by the *Saxons*, the residue thereof, as formerly, by the *Scots* and *Picts*; save that the *Saxons* not content with that which the *Romans* held made themselves masters also of the Plain Countries, lying on the *German* Ocean, to which the passage out of *Germany* was both short and easie. By which accompt, besides those places in the East, they were possessed of the Counties or Sheriffdoms of *Teifidale*, *Tweedale*, *March*, *Lothien*, *Liddisdale*, *Eusedale*, *Eskdale*, *Annandale*, *Niddisdale*, *Cluydsdale*, *Galloway*, *Carick*, *Kyle*, *Cunningham*, *Lennox*, and *Sterling*, being the richest and most flourishing part of the modern *Scotland*. The *Scots* for their part hath the Counties of *Cantire*, *Argile*, *Braid-Albin*, (or *Albanie*) *Lorne*, *Loquhabre*, and *Strathnavern*, lying on the West and North: the other Northern moity (excepting some parts near the Coast of the *German* Ocean possessed by the *Saxons*) containing the now Counties of *Cathness*, *Sontherland*, *Ross*, *Murray*, *Buquham*, *Marre*, *Mern*, *Angus*, *Athol*, *Perth*, *Fife*, *Strathern* and *Menteith*, being only left unto the *Picts*. From whence the *Saxons* and *Scots* came into these parts, hath been shewn already. And for the *Picts*, (to omit here the refutation of those who will have them to descend from the *Agathyrsi*, a people of *Scythia*) they were no other than such of the natural *Britains*, as never were brought under the *Roman* Empire, but still preserved their Country in its former Liberty; called therefore by *Tertullian*, *inaccessa Romanis loca*, as indeed they were: and using still their antient Custom of painting their bodies, after the rest of their Country-men had conformed themselves to more civil courses, were by the *Romans* called *Picti*: and by that name first mentioned in the *Panegyrick* of *Ennomius*, in the time of *Constantine* the *Great*. They long possessed these parts without an *Inmate*, even till the year 424. when the *Irish-Scots* wanting room at home, and having formerly possessed themselves of the Western Isles, first set foot in *Britain*: with whom they had continual War, till in the end the *Scots* prevailing, compelled the *Picts* to abandon to them the Western parts, and withdraw themselves into the Eastern. Afterwards growing into better terms with the other, and willing to enlarge their Borders toward the more flourishing *South*, they contracted an *Offensive* and *Defensive* League against the *Britains*; who on all sides, they most miserably tortured, till vanquished and beat back by the conquering *Saxons*, against whom they contracted a new *Confederacy*. Taking the advantage of the death of *Ethelbred* King of the *Northumbers*, and the invasion of the *Danes* on the rest of *England*; they got into their hands all *Bernicia*, or so much of the Kingdom of the *Northumbrians*, as lay on the North of *Twede*, and *Solwaye*; reckoned from that time forwards a part of their Dominions. But this good neighbourhood held not long betwixt these two Nations. It hapned at the last, that *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, married *Fergusia*, Sister unto *Hungust*, King of the *Picts*, and had by her a Son called *Alpine*, who after the death of *Hungust* dying without Issue, and having none of a nearer kindred was in the Judgment of the *Scots*, to succeed in that Kingdom. But the *Picts*, alledging a Law of not admitting *Aliens* to the Crown, chose one *Ferreth* of their own Nation, to be their King: with whom *Alpine* contended in a long War, victorious for the most part, in conclusion slain. The quarrel notwithstanding did remain betwixt the two unfriendly Nations, till at the last, after many bloody battels and mutual over-throws (the *Scots* being for the most part on the losing side) *Kenneth*, the second of that name, vanquished *Donsken*, the last King of the *Picts*, with so great a slaughter of his people, that he extinguished not their Kingdom only, but their very name; passing from that time forwards under that of *Scots*. No mention after this of the *Pictish* Nation: unless perhaps we will believe that some of them passed into *France*; and there, forsooth, subdued that Country which we now call *Picardy*.

As for the Catalogue of the Kings of the *Scots* in *Britain*, I shall begin the same with *Fergus*, the second of that name in the Accompt of their Historians: leaving out that rabble of 39 Kings (half of them at the least before *Christs* Nativity) mentioned by *Hector*, *Boetius*, *Buchanan*, and others of their *Classick* Authors. Neither shall I offend herein, as I conjecture, the more Judicious and understanding men of the *Scotish* Nation, (and for others I take little care) since I deal no more unkindly with their first *Fergus* and his Successors, than I have done already with our own *Brutus*, and his. The first *Scotish* King that setled himself

himself in the North of *Britain*, is, according to the above named *Hector Boetius*, one *Fergus*, which in the time that *Coyl* governed the *Britains*, came (forsooth) into these parts out of *Ireland*. From him, unto *Eugenius*, we have the names of 39 Kings in a continued succession: which *Eugenius*, together with his whole Nation, is said to have been expelled the Island, by a joynt confederacy of the *Romans*, *Britains*, and *Picts*. Twenty and seven years after the death of this *Eugenius*, they were reduced again into their possession here, by the valour and conduct of another *Fergus*, the second of that name. To this *Fergus* I refer the beginning of this *Scotish* Kingdom in *Britain*, holding the stories of the former 39 Kings to be vain and fabulous. Neither want I probable conjecture for this assertion, this expedition of *Fergus* into *Britain*, being placed in the 424 year of *CHRIST*; at what time the best Writers of the *Roman* story for those times, report the *Scots* to have first seated themselves in this Island.

The Kings of chief note in the course of the whole Succession are, 1. *Achaius*, who died in the year 809 and in his life contracted the offensive and defensive league with *Charles* the Great, between the Kingdoms of *France* and *Scotland*. The conditions whereof were, 1. Let this league between the two Kingdoms endure for ever; 2. Let the Enemies unto one, be reputed and handled as the enemies of the other; 3. If the *Saxons* or *English-men* invade *France*, the *Scots* shall send thither such numbers of Souldiers as shall be desired, the *French* King defraying the charges; 4. If the *English* invade *Scotland*, the King of *France* shall at his own charges send competent assistance unto the King of *Scots*. Never was there any league, which was either more faithfully observed, or longer continued, than this between these two Kingdoms: the *Scots* on all occasions so readily assisting the *French*, that it grew to a proverb, or by-word, *He that will* France *win, must with* Scotland *first begin*. 2. *Kenneth* the second, who having utterly subdued and destroyed the *Picts*, extended his Dominions over all the present *Scotland*, deserved to be accompted the first *Monarch* of it: the *Picts* (being either rooted out, or so few in number, that they passed afterwards in the name & accompt of *Scots*) from that time forwards never mentioned in any Author. 3. *Malcolm* the first, who added *Westmerland*, and *Cumberland*, unto his Dominions given to him by King *Edmund* of *England*, the son of *Athelstane*, to have his aid against the *Danes*, or to keep him neutral. After which time, those Counties were sometimes *Scotish* and sometimes *English*, till finally recovered by King *Henry* the second, and united to the Crown of *England*; never since disjoyned. 4. *Kenneth* the third who, by consent of the Estates of his Realm, made the Kingdom *hereditary*, to descend from the Father to his Eldest Son, before which time (keeping within the compass of the Royal Family) the *Uncle* was sometimes preferred before the *Nephew*; the eldest in years, though furthest off, before the younger Kinsman, though the nearer in blood. After which time (the opposition and interruption made by *Constantine* the third, and *Donald* the fourth excepted only the Eldest sons of these Kings, or the next in birth, have succeeded ordinary in that Kingdom. This *Kenneth* was one of those Tributaries and *Vassall Kings*, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, near *Chester*, in such pomp and Majesty. 5. *Macbbeth* of whom there goeth a famous story, which shall be told at large anon. 6. *Malcolm* the third, the son of *Duncane*, who lived in *England* during the whole time of *Macbbeths* Tyranny; and thence brought into *Scotland* at his return, not only some *Civilities* of the *English* garb; but the honourary titles of Earls and *Barons*, not here before mentioned. At the perswasion of the Lady *Margaret* his wife, (Sister of *Edgar*, surnamed *Atheling*, and after his decease the right Heir of the Crown of *England*) he abolished the barbarous custom spoken of before. He did *Homage* to *William* the *Conquerour* for the Crown of *Scotland*, but afterwards siding against him with the *English*, was slain at *Alnwick*. 7. *David*, the youngest son of *Malcolm* the third, succeeded his two Brothers, *Edgar* and *Alexander* (dying without Issue) in the Throne of his Father; and in right of his Mother the Lady *Margaret*, Sister and Heir of *Edgar Atheling*, and Daughter of *Edward* the Eldest son of *Edmund* the second, surnamed *Ironside*, King of *England*, had the best title to that Kingdom also: but dispossessed thereof by the *Norman Conquerours*, with whom, by reason of the great puissance of those Kings, and the little love which the *English* bare unto the *Scots*, not able to dispute their Title by force of Arms. From *Maud* the Sister of this *David*, married to *Henry* the first of *England*, descended all the Kings of *England* (King *Stephen* excepted) to Queen *Elizabeths* death: from *David* all the Kings of *Scotland*, till King *James* the sixth, who on the death of Queen *Elizabeths*, succeeded in the Crown of *England*, in right of his descent from another *Margaret*, the eldest Daughter of King *Henry* the seventh. So that in his person there was not an union of the Kingdoms only, under the Title of *Great Britain*, but a restoring of the old Line of the *Saxon* Kings (of which he was the direct and indubitate Heir) to the Crown of *England*; the possession whereof had for so long time continued in the Posterity of the *Norman* Conqueror. And upon this descent it followeth most undeniably, that though the *Norman* Conqueror got the Crown of *England* by the power of the Sword, from the true Heirs of *Edmund* the second, surnamed *Ironside*; and that his Successors had enjoyed it by no other Title till Queen *Elizabeths* death: yet *James*, the first *Monarch* of *Great Britain*, succeeded by a right descent from the *Saxon* Line; without relation to the Conquest of the *Norman* Bastard. 8. *William*, the Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth, and Nephew of *David* before mentioned by his Son Prince *Henry*, (who died in the life of his Father) being taken prisoner at the Battail of *Alnwick*, did *homage* to King *Henry* the second for the Crown of *Scotland*, and was thereupon restored to his Liberty, and his Realm to peace. What doth occur concerning the succeeding Kings, when their Affairs with *England* and the World abroad became more considerable, we shall see anon.

In the mean time proceed we to the story of *Macbbeth*, than which for variety of action, and strangeness of events, I never met with any more pleasing. The story in brief is thus: *Duncan* King of the *Scots* had two principal men, whom he employed in all matters of importance *Macbbeth*, and *Banquho*. These two travelling together through a Forest, were met by three *Fairies* Witches (Weirds the *Scots* call them) whereof the first making obeysance unto *Macbbeth*, saluted him *Thane* (a title unto which that of *Earl* afterwards succeeded) of *Glammis*; the second, *Thane* of *Cawder*; and the third, King of *Scotland*. This is unequal dealing, saith *Banquho*, to give my friend all the honours, and none unto me; to which one of the *Weirds* made answer, That he indeed should not be King, but out of his loyns should come a Race of Kings, that should for ever rule the *Scots*. And having thus said, they all suddenly vanished. Upon their arival to the Court, *Macbbeth*, was immediately created *Thane* of *Glammis*; and not long after, some new service of his requiring new recompence, he was honoured with the title of *Thane* of *Cawder*. Seeing then how happily the prediction of the three *Weirds* fell out in the former; he resolved not to be wanting to himself in fulfilling the third, and therefore first he killed the King, and after, by reason of

of his command among the Souldiers, and common people, he ſucceeded in his Throne. Being ſcarce warm in his ſeat, he called to mind the prediction given to his Companion *Banquho*: whom hereupon ſuſpecting as his ſupplanter, he cauſed him to be killed, together with his whole Poſterity; *Fleance* one of his Sons, eſcaping only with no ſmall difficulty, into *Wales*. Freed as he thought from all fear of *Banquho* and his Iſſue, he built *Dunſinan* Caſtle, and made it his ordinary ſeat: and afterwards on ſome new fears, conſulting with certain of his *Wizards* about his future Eſtate; was told by one of them, that he ſhould never be overcome, till *Bernane* Wood (being ſome miles diſtant) came to *Dunſinan* Caſtle; and by another, that he ſhould never be ſlain by any man which was born of a Woman. Secure then as he thought, from all future dangers, he omitted no kind of libidinous cruelty, for the ſpace of 18 years; for ſo long he tyrannized over *Scotland*. But having then made up the meaſure of his iniquities, *Mac-duffe* the Governor of *Fife*, aſſociating to himſelf ſome few *Patriots*, equally hated by the Tyrant, and abhorring the Tyranny; privily met one evening at *Bernane* Wood: and taking every one of them a bough in his hand, (the better to keep them from diſcovery) marched early in the morning towards *Dunſinan* Caſtle, which they took by *Scalado*. *Macbbeth* eſcaping was purſued by *Macduffe*, who having overtaken him urged him to the combat; to whom the Tyrant, half in ſcorn, returned this Anſwer, That he did in vain attempt to kill him, it being his *deſtiny* never to be ſlain by any that was born of a Woman. Now then ſaid *Macduffe*, is thy fatal end drawing faſt upon thee; for I was never born of Woman, but violently cut out of my Mothers belly: which words ſo daunted the cruel Tyrant, though otherwiſe a valiant man and of great performances, that he was very eaſily ſlain; and *Malcolm Conmer*, the true Heir of the Crown, ſeated in the Throne. In the mean time *Fleance* ſo proſpered in *Wales*, that he gained the affection of the Princes Daughter of that Country; and on her begat a Son called *Walter*; who flying out of *Wales*, returned into *Scotland*; and his deſcent once known, he was not only reſtored to the Honours and Eſtates of his Anceſtors, but preferred to be *Steward* of the houſe of *Edgar* the ſon of *Malcolm* the third, ſirnamed *Conmer*; the name of *Stewart*, growing hence hereditary unto his Poſterity. From this *Walter* deſcended that *Robert Stewart*, who ſucceedeed *David Bruce* in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the Progenitor of nine Kings of the name of *Stewart*, which have Reigned ſucceſſively in that Kingdom. But now it is time to leave off particulars, and look into the general Succeſſion of

The Kings of *Scots* before the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

A.	*Ch.*	
424	1	*Fergus.*
	2	*Eugenius.*
449	3	*Dongal.*
	4	*Conſtantine.*
	5	*Congall.*
	6	*Goran.*
	7	*Eugenius* II.
	8	*Congall* II.
	9	*Kinnatel.*
	10	*Aidan.*
604	11	*Kenneth.*
	12	*Eugenius* III.
622	13	*Ferquard.*
	14	*Donald.*
	15	*Ferquard* II.
	16	*Malduine.*
	17	*Eugenius* IV.
	18	*Eugenius* V.
	19	*Amberkeleth.*
	20	*Eugenius* VI.
	21	*Mordoc.*
730	22	*Etſinus.*
	23	*Eugenius* VII.
	24	*Fergus* II.
	25	*Solvathius.*
	26	*Achaius.*
809	27	*Congall* III.
	28	*Dongall* II.
	29	*Alpine*, ſlain in a Battel by the *Picts*, in purſuit of his Quarrel for that Kingdom, pretended to belong unto him in Right of his Mother, Siſter and Heir of *Hungius* the laſt King thereof.
	30	*Kenneth* II. Son of *Alpine*; who utterly ſubdued and deſtroyed the *Picts*, extending thereby the *Scottiſh* Kingdom from one Sea to the other, over all the bounds of modern *Scotland*; of which deſervedly accounted the firſt *Monarch*; the Founder of the new Succeſſion of

The Kings of the *Scots* after the Conqueſt of the *Picts*.

An.	*Ch.*	
839	1	*Kenneth* II. the firſt ſole King of all *Scotland*. 17.
856	2	*Donald* II. Brother of *Kenneth* the 2d.
862	3	*Conſtantine* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 2d.
875	4	*Ethus*, Brother of *Conſtantine* the 2d.
890	5	*Donald* III. Son of *Conſtantine* the 2d.
903	6	*Conſtantine* III. 30.
933	7	*Malcolm*, Son of *Donald* the 3d.
949	8	*Ingulph*, an intruder. 12.
961	9	*Duffe*, Son of *Malcolm*. 1.
991	10	*Kenneth* III. Brother of *Duffe*.
994	11	*Conſtantine* IV. an Intruder againſt the Law, and Line of *Kenneth* the 3d.
1004	12	*Malcolm* II. Son of *Kenneth* the 3d. oppoſed by *Grime*, the Nephew of *Duffe*.
1035	13	*Duncan*, Son of *Grime*, ſucceeded *Malcolm* the ſecond dying without iſſue.
1040	14	*Macbbeth*, the Tyrant and Uſurper.
1057	15	*Malcolm* III. Son of *Duncan*.
1096	16	*Donald* IV. ſirnamed *Ban*, Brother of *Malcolm* the 3d.
1098	17	*Edgar*, Son of *Malcolm* the 3d.
1107	18	*Alexander*, Brother of *Edgar*.
1124	19	*David*, Brother of *Alexander*.
1133	20	*Malcolm*, Son of *David*.
1166	21	*William*, Brother of *Malcolm* the fourth.
1213	22	*Alexander* II. Son of *William*.
1250	23	*Alexander* III. Son of *Alexander* the 2d, after whoſe death, dying without any Iſſue, *An.* 1285. began that tedious and bloody Quarrel about the ſucceſſion of this Kingdom, occaſioned by ſundry Titles and Pretendants to it: principal whereof were *Bruce* and *Baliol*, deſcended from the Daughters of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, younger Son of *William*, and Great Uncle of *Alexander* the third, the laſt of the Male Iſſue of *Kenneth* the 3d, thoſe of nearer Kindred being quite extinct. And when the *Scots* could not compoſe the difference among themſelves; it was taken into conſideration by King *Edward* the firſt of *England*, as the Lord Paramont of that Kingdom: who ſelecting 12 *Engliſh*,

gliſh, and as many of the *Scots* to adviſe about it, with the conſent of all adjudged it to *John Baliol* Lord of *Galloway*, Son of *John Baliol* and *Dervorguilla* his Wife, Daughter of *Alan* Lord of *Galloway*, and of the Lady *Margaret*, the eldeſt Daughter of the ſaid *David*; who having done him homage to the ſaid King *Edward*, was admitted King.

1300 24 *John Baliol*, an *Engliſh-man*, but forgetful both of *Engliſh* birth, and *Engliſh* Favours, invaded the Realm of *England* in Hoſtile manner, and was taken priſoner by King *Edward*. Who following his blow, made himſelf Maſter of all *Scotland*, which he held during the reſt of his life, and had here his *Chancery*, and other Courts. 6.

1306 25 *Robert Bruce*, Son of *Robert Bruce* Lord of *Annandale* (Competitor with *Baliol* for the Crown of *Scotland* in Right of *Iſabel* his Mother, the ſecond Daughter of *David* Earl of *Huntingdon*, and conſequently a degree nearer to the King deceaſed than *Baliol* was, though deſcended from the elder Siſter) was crowned King in the life-time of King *Edward* the firſt; but not fully poſſeſſed thereof until after his death: confirmed therein by the great defeat given to *Edward* the ſecond, at the fight of *Banocks-bourn*, not far from *Sterling*, ſpoken of before. But he being dead, *Anno* 1332. *Edward* the third confirmed the Kingdom on

1332 26 *Edward Baliol*, Son of *John Baliol*, rejected by the *Scots* for adhering ſo firmly to the *Engliſh*; who there upon harried *Scotland* with Fire and Sword. 10.

27 *David Bruce* the Son of *Robert*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne by the power of the *Scots*, and a great enemy to the *Engliſh*. Invading *England* when King *Edward* was at the ſiege of *Calice*, he was taken priſoner by Q. *Philip*, the Wife of that King, and brought to *Windſor*, where he was priſoner for a while with King *John* of *France*. Releaſed at laſt on ſuch conditions as beſt pleaſed the Conqueror. 29.

1371 28 *Robert* II. ſirnamed *Stewart*, King of the *Scots* by deſcent from the eldeſt Siſter of *David Bruce*, was extracted alſo from ancient Princes of *Wales* (as was ſaid before:) reſtoring thereby the *Britiſh* blood to the Throne of *Scotland*.

1390 29 *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the ſecond called *John* before he came to the Crown; in which much over-awed by his own Brother the Duke of *Albany*, who had an aim at it for himſelf. 16.

1406 30 *James*, Son of *Robert* the third, taken priſoner by King *Henry* the fourth of *England*, as he was croſſing the Seas for *France*, to avoid the practices of his Uncle. Reſtored unto his Country in the beginning of the Reign of King *Henry* the ſixth, after 18 years abſence, he was at laſt moſt miſerably murdered by the Earl of *Athol*, claiming a right unto that Crown. 42.

1448 31 *James* II. ſlain by the *Engliſh* at the ſiege of *Roxborough* Caſtle. 24.

1462 32 *James* III. ſlain by his own rebellious Subjects. 29.

1491 33 *James* IV. married *Margaret* the eldeſt Daughter of King *Henry* the ſeventh, but at the ſolicting of the *French*, (againſt the Peace between the Nations) he invaded *England* (in the abſence of King *Henry* the eighth) with 10000 men: but was met with by the Earl of *Surrey* (having 26000 men in his Army) nigh unto *Foldden*; where he was ſlain, together with two Biſhops, twelve Earls, fourteen Lords, and his whole Army routed. 23.

1514 34 *James* V. Son of *James* the fourth, and the Lady *Margaret*, kept for a time ſuch good correſpondency with the *Engliſh*, that in the year 1536, he was created Knight of the Order of the Garter. But afterwards inheriting his Fathers hatred againſt them, he invaded their Borders in the year 1542: and was met by the Lord *Wharton*, then Warden of the *Weſt Marches*. The Battels being ready to joyn, one Sir *Oliver Sincleer* the Kings Favourite, though otherwiſe of no great Parentage, was by the Kings directions proclaimed *General*: which the *Scotiſh* Nobility took in ſuch indignation, that they threw down their Weapons, and ſuffered themſelves to be taken priſoners; there being not one man ſlain on either ſide. The principal priſoners were the Earls of *Glencarn*, and *Caſſiles*; the Barons *Maxwell*, *Oliphant*, *Somerwell*, *Flemming*, whith divers others: beſides many of the principal Gentry, 28.

1542 35 *Mary*, the Daughter and only lawfully-begotten Child of *James* the fifth, ſucceeded in her Cradle unto the Throne; promiſed in Marriage to King *Edward* the ſixth of *England*; but by the power of the *Hamiltons* carried into *France*, where married to *Francis*, then *Dauphin*, afterwards King of the *French*, of that name the ſecond. After whoſe death, ſhe married *Henry* Lord *Darnly*, eldeſt Son of *Matthew* Earl of *Lennox*. Outed of her Dominions by a potent Faction, ſhe was compelled to flie into *England*; where after a tedious impriſonment, ſhe was put to death in *Fotheringhay* Caſtle in *Northamptonſhire*, and interred at *Peterburgh*, *Anno* 1586.

1567 36 *James* VI. the Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots*, and of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, was crowned King in his Cradle alſo. He married *Anne*, the Daughter of *Chriſtian* the third, King of *Denmark*; was choſe of the Order of the Garter, *Anno* 1590. and ſucceeded Queen *Elizabeth* in the Realm of *England*, *March* 24. *Anno* 1602. And here I cannot omit the prudent fore-ſight of *Henry* the ſeventh, who having two Daughters, beſtowed the Eldeſt (contary to the mind of his Council) on the King of *Scots*, and the younger on the King of the *French*: that ſo, if his own Iſſue male ſhould fail, and that a Prince of another Nation muſt inherit *England*; then *Scotland* as the leſſer Kingdom would depend upon *England*, and not *England* wait on *France*, as upon the greater. In which ſucceſſion of the *Scots* to the Crown of *England*, the Prophecy of the fatal Stone, ſpoken of before, did receive accompliſhment. And ſo perhaps might that aſcribed in the *Polychronicon* to an holy *Anchoret* living in King *Egelreds* time, which is this, Engliſhmen, *for that they wonneth them to* drunkenneſs, *to* treaſon, *and to* retchleſneſs *of Gods houſe, firſt by* Danes, *and then by* Normans, *and the*

third

third time by Scots, *whom they holden leaſt worth of all, they ſhall be overcome. Then the world ſhall be unſtable, and ſo divers and variable, that the unſtableneſs of thoughts ſhall be betokened by many manner* diverſity *of Clothing.* For on this Union of the Kingdoms, this Prediction ſeems to have been accompliſhed; the circumſtances mentioned in the ſame ſo patly agreeing, and the *Scots* never ſubduing *England*, but by this bleſſed Victory. Unleſs perhaps the Accompliſhment thereof be ſtill to come; or that it was indeed more literally fulfilled in the great Defeat at *Bannocks-bourn*, in which was ſlain 50000 *Engliſh*, as the *Scotiſh* Writers do report, and the name of *Scot* growing ſo terrible for a time, that an hundred of the *Engliſh* would flie from three *Scots*, as before was noted.

The Revenues of this Crown *Boterus* eſtimateth at 100000 Crowns, or 30000 ſterling, and it is not like that they were much more, if they came to that: here being not commodity in this Kingdom to allure ſtrangers to Traffick: the Demain or Patrimony of the Crown, but mean; the Country in moſt places, barren; and many of the Subjects, thoſe eſpecially of the Out-Iſles, and the Weſtern parts, ſo extreamly barbarous, that they adde very ſmall improvement to the publick Treaſury.

And anſwerable to the ſhortneſs of their ſtanding Revenue, were their Forces alſo. For though the Country be very populous, and the men generally patient both of cold and hunger, and inured to hardſhip; yet in regard the Kings hereof were not able to maintain an Army under pay, their Forces ſeldom held together above 40 days; and then, if not a great deal ſooner, did disband themſelves. For the Nobility and Gentry being bound by the Tenure of their Lands, to ſerve the King in his Wars, and to bring with them ſuch and ſo many of their *Vaſſals*, as the preſent ſervice did require; uſed to provide for themſelves and their followers, tents, money, victuals, proviſion of all ſorts, and all other neceſſaries; the King ſupplying them with nothing. Which being ſpent, they uſually disbanded, and went home again, without attending long on the Expedition. Which I conceive to be the reaſon, why the *Scots* in the time of hoſtility betwixt the Nations, made only ſudden & tumultuary incurſions into *England*; without any thing of ſpecial moment: and that they have not acted any thing elſewhere in the way of Conqueſt, but only as Mercenaries to the *French* and other Nations that have hired them. And though it be affirmed that the Army of King *James* the 4th, when he invaded *England* in the time of King *Henry* the Eighth, (being then in *France*) conſiſted of 100000 fighting men; yet this I look on only as an argument of their populoſity: few of thoſe men being armed or trained up to ſervice; and therefore eaſily diſcomfited by a far leſs Army. It's true that in the year 1643. the *Scottiſh Covenanters* raiſed an Army conſiſting of 18000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe, and 1000 Dragoons; with Arms, Artillery, and Ammunition correſpondent to it: which was the gallanteſt Army, and the beſt appointed, that ever that Nation did ſet out in the times foregoing. But then it is as true withal, that this Army was maintained & payed by the two Houſes of the Parliament of *England*, at the rate of 30000 l. *per menſem*, and an advance of 100000 l. before-hand, the better to invite them to embrace the action, and prepare neceſſaries for it, without any charge unto themſelves. And though the Army which they ſent into *England* above five years after, under *James* Duke *Hamilton* of *Arran*, was little inferiour unto this number, but far ſuperiour to it both in Horſe & Arms, and other neceſſary appointments: yet it is well known, that the *Scots* brought nothing but their own bodies to compound that Army; the Horſe and Arms being ſuch as they had gotten out of *England* in the former War.

In point of reputation amongſt Foreign Princes, the Kings of the *Scots*, and their Ambaſſadors and Agents, had place in all General Councils, and Eccleſiaſtical Aſſemblies, before thoſe of *Caſtile*: and by the *Statiſts* of late times, have been reckoned (with the Kings of *England*, *France*, and *Spain*) for abſolute Monarchs. But I conceive that this was only ſince the firſt years of King *Edward* the third, when they had quitted their ſubjection and vaſſalage to the Crown of *England*. For that anciently the *Scots* were Homagers to the Kings of *England*, may be apparently demonſtrated by theſe following Arguments. 1. By the Homages, and other ſervices, and duties, done by the Kings of the *Scots* unto thoſe of *England*: *Malcolm* the third doing Homage unto *William* the Conquerour; as *William* one of his Succeſſors did to K. *Henry* the ſecond: and that not only for the three Northern Counties, or the Earldom of *Huntingdon* (as by ſome pretended) but for the very Crown it ſelf: *Kenneth* the third, being alſo one of thoſe eight Tributary or Vaſſal Kings, which rowed King *Edgar* over the *Dee*, as before was noted. 2ly, By the interpoſing of King *Edward* the firſt, and the ſubmiſſion of the *Scots* to that interpoſing, in determining the controverſie of ſucceſſion betwixt *Bruce* and *Baliol*: as in like caſe, *Philip* the *Fair* adjudged the title of *Artoys*, which was holden of the Crown of *France*, and then in queſtion betwixt the Lady *Maud*, and her Nephew *Robert*; or as King *Edward* the third, in the right of the ſaid Crown of *France*, determined of the controverſie betwixt *John* Earl of *Montford*, and *Charles* of *Blais*, for the Dukedom of *Bretagn*. 3ly, By the confeſſion and acknowledgment of the Prelates, Peers, and other the Eſtates of *Scotland*, ſubſcribed by all their hands and Seals in the Roll of *Ragman*; wherein they did acknowledge the ſuperiority of the Kings of *England*, not only in regard of ſuch advantages as the Sword had given him, but as of his original and undoubted right. Which Roll was treacherouſly delivered into the hands of the *Scots*, by *Roger Mortimer*, Earl of *March*, in the beginning of the Reign of King *Edward* the third. 4ly, By the tacit conceſſion of the Kings themſelves, who in their Coins, Commiſſions, and publick Inſtruments, aſſume not to themſelves the title of Kings of *Scotland*, but of *Reges Scotorum*, or the Kings of the *Scots*: and thereby intimating that though they are the Kings of the Nation, yet there is ſome ſuperiour Lord (King Paramount as we may call him) who hath the Royalty of the Land. 5ly, By the Judgments and Arreſts of the Courts of *England*, not only in the times of King *Edward* the firſt, but in ſome times ſince. For when *William Wallis* a *Scotiſhman* by birth, and the beſt Souldier of that Country, was taken *Priſoner* and brought to *London*, he was adjudged to ſuffer death as a Traytor: which had been an illegal and unrighteous judgment, had he been a Priſoner of War, and not looked on by the Judges as a Subject to the Crown of *England*. The like done in the caſe of *Simon Frezill*, another of that Kingdom in the ſame Kings Reign. In like manner, in the time of King *Edward* the third, it was reſolved by the Court, in the Lord *Beaumonts* caſe, when it was objected that one of the Witneſſes was a *Scot*, and therefore as an *Alien* not to give his evidence; that his teſtimony was to be allowed of, becauſe the *Scots* in the Law of *England* did not go for *Aliens*. And when one indicted for a Rape in the 13th of Queen *Elizabeths* Reign, deſired a *Medietatem Linguæ*, becauſe he was a *Scotchman*, & ſo an *Alien*, it was denied him by the Court, *becauſe the* Scots *were not reputed here as* Aliens, *but as* Subjects *rather*. So alſo, when *Robert Umframville*, Lord of *Kyme* was ſummoned to the Parliament of *England*, in

the Reign of King *Edward* the third, by the name of *Robert* Earl of *Angus*, (which is a dignity in *Scotland*,) and after in a Writ against him was called only by his own name of *Umframville*, without any addition of that honor; the Writ was judged to abate: which I conceive the learned Judges had not done, if *Scotland* had not been reputed to be under the Vassalage of the Kings of *England*, 6. and lastly, by a Charter of Lands and Arms, (which I have in my custody) granted by King *Edward* the first, in the last year of his Reign, to *Peter Dodge* of *Stopworth* in the County of *Chester* one of the Ancestors of my Mother: in which it is expressed, that the said Lands and Arms were conferred upon him by that King, for his eminent services, *encontre son grand Enemy & Rebel*, Baliol, *Roy d'*Escosse *& Vassal de* Angleterre; that is to say, against his great Enemy and Rebel *Baliol* King of *Scotland*, and Vassal of *England*. A thing so clear, that if King *James* had not been extreamly tender of the honour of his native Country, he needed not to have put his Lawyers to the trouble of a *New Invention*, in hammering the Case of the *Post-nati* for him; to make the *Scots* inheritable unto Lands in *England*. The acknowledgment and *Reviver* of their old *Subjection* would have served his turn. But of this argument enough, and perhaps too much. I only add, that upon conference which I once had with an honourable person of that Kingdom of *Scotland*, employed unto the Court in a business of no mean consequence to the peace and quiet of his Country: I found him so sensible of the inconveniences of their present Government, by reason of the Kings absence, and the frequent divisions and partialities of his Council there; that he confessed that Nation could be never rich or happy, till they were made a Province of the *English* Empire; and governed by a *Vice-Roy*, as *Ireland* was.

The principal Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of S. *Andrew*, instituted by *Hungus*, King of the *Picts*, to encourage his Subjects in the War against King *Athelstane* of *England*. The Knights did wear about their necks a Collar, interlaced with Thistles, with the picture of St. *Andrew* appendant to it: the Motto *Nemo me impune lacessit*. It took this name because after the Battel, *Hungus* and his Souldiers went all barefoot to S. *Andrews*, and there vowed that they and their Posterity would henceforth use his Cross as their Ensign (which is a Saltire *Argent* in a Field *Azure*) whensoever they take in hand any war-like enterprize.

2. But this Order being expired many Ages since, there is now no Order of Knight-hood in it, (except *Knights Batchelors*) but that of *Nova Scotia*; ordained by King *James*, *An.* 1622. for the planting of that Country by *Scotish* Colonies; in imitation of the Orders of Baronets in *England*, for the plantation of *Ulster*. Hereditary, as that also is, but the Knights hereof distinguished by a Rib-band of *Orange-Tawney*.

The Arms are *Sol*, a Lion Rampant *Mars*, within a double Tressure *counter-flowred*: which Tressure *counter-flowred* was added to the Lion by *Achaius* King of the *Scots*, at what time he contracted the League with *France*: signifying (saith *Hector Boetius* one of their Historians) *Francorum opibus Leonem exinde muniendum*; that the *Scotch* Lion should be guarded by the riches of *France*.

Reckoned in *Scotland*, with
the Isles of it,
Archbishops 2. Bishops 12.

Universities two,
S. *Andrews*. *Aberdeen*.

IRELAND.

IRELAND is environed on all sides with the Ocean; parted from *Britain* by a violent and unruly Sea, called S. *Georges* Chanel. Situate on the West of *Britain*, next unto which it is the biggest Island of *Europe*, containing in length 300, and in breadth 120 miles: and is seated under the 8th and 10th *Climates*; the longest day being 16 hours and an half in the Southern, and 17 hours 3 quarters in the Northern parts.

It was once called *Scotia*, from the *Scots* who did there inhabit; and *Scotia Minor*, to difference it from *Scotland*, in the Isle of *Britain*. But the general name hereof is *Ireland*; by the *Latines* called *Hibernia*, by the *Greeks*, *Iernia*. And though some frame a wrested *Etymologie* from *Iberus*, a *Spanish* Captain and some from *Irnaulph*, once a supposed Duke hereof; as others, *ab Hyberno aere*, the Winter-like and inclement air: yet probably the name proceeded from *Erinland*, which signifieth in their own language a Western land. And yet I must not pretermit the *Etymon* given us by *Bochartus*, (more near the name than most of his other Fancies) who will have it called *Hibernia*, from *Ibernae*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying the furthest Habitation: there being no Country known amongst the Ancients, which lay West of *Ireland*.

Their own *Chronicles*, or *Fables* rather, tell us, how *Cæsara*, *Noahs* Neece, inhabited here before the Flood; and how 300 years after the Flood, it was subdued by *Bartholanus*, a *Scythian*, who overcame here I know not what Giants. Afterward *Nemethus* another *Scythian* Prince, and *Delus* a *Grecian*, came hither: and last of all *Gaothel*, with his Wife *Scota*, one of *Pharaohs* Daughters, who must needs name this Island *Scotia*. But not to honour such *fopperies* with a confutation, doubtlesly the first Inhabitants of this Island ame out of *Britain*. For *Britain* is the nigheſt Country unto it, and so had a more speedy waftage hither. Secondly, the ancient Writers call this Island, a *British Island*: And thirdly, *Tacitus* giveth us of this Country this verdict, *Solum, cœlumque cultus & ingenia hominum, haud multum a Britannia differunt*; the Soil and Air, the habits and disposition of the people, were not much unlike the *Britains*. For further evidence whereof, it was observed, at the reduction of *Wales* to the Crown of *England*, by King *Edward* the first, that many of their Laws and Customs were those of the *Irish*: which shews, that they did both descend from the same Original. But then we must observe withal, that they were counted far more barbarous and savage by most ancient Writers, than those of *Britain* are deciphered at the first discovery: said by *Strabo* to be Man-eaters; accustomed (as *Solinus* telleth us) to drink the blood of those whom they slew in fight. Nor were the Women, though the softer and more tender Sex, free from such wild and

and ſavage Cuſtoms, it being a conſtant courſe amongſt them, when they were delivered of a man-child, to put ſome meat into the mouth of it, on the point of a Sword, wiſhing therewith it might not dye but in the midſt of Arms, and the heat of Battel. Both Sexes uſed to trim themſelves with the Teeth of Fiſhes, white as the driven Snow, or the poliſhed Ivory; and therein placed the greateſt part of their pride and bravery.

Nor are the modern *Iriſh* much abhorrent from ſuch barbarous cuſtoms, as plainly ſhew from what Original they deſcend; altered but little by converſe with more civil Nations. Of natural conſtitution generally ſtrong and nimble of body, haughty of heart, careleſs of their lives, patient in cold and hunger, implacable in enmity, conſtant in love, light of belief, greedy of glory; and in a word, *if they be bad, you ſhall no where find worſe; if they be good, you ſhall hardly meet with better.* The Diet, eſpecially of the *meer Iriſh*, is for the moſt part, on herbs, roots, butter mingled with Oat-flower, milk, and beef-broth: eating fleſh many times without bread, which they digeſt with *Uſquebaugh*; and give their bread-corn to their horſes inſtead of *Provender*. But more particularly, thoſe of the richer ſort in all parts, and of all ſorts thoſe which inhabit within the *Pale* (as they themſelves call it) and in ſuch places where the *Engliſh* Diſcipline hath been entertained; conformable to civility, both in behaviour and apparel: The *Kernes* (for by that name they call the *wild Iriſh* of the poorer and inferior ſort) moſt extreamly barbarous; not behaving themſelves like *Chriſtians*, ſcarcely like me. All of them ſo tenacious of their ancient cuſtoms, that neither power, nor reaſon, nor the ſenſe of the inconveniences which they ſuffer by it, can wean them to deſert or change them. A pregnant evidence whereof, is their uſe of *Ploughing*, not with ſuch gears or harneſs, as in other places; but by tying the hindmoſt horſes head to the tail of the former; which makes the poor Jades draw in a great deal of pain; makes them unſerviceable by the ſoon loſing of their tails, and withal is a courſe of ſo ſlow a diſpatch, that they cannot break up as much ground in a week, as a good Teem well harneſſed would perform in a day; yet no perſwaſion hath been able to prevail upon them for the changing of this hurtful and ridiculous cuſtom. And when the Earl of *Strafford*, the late Lord *Deputy*, had damned it by Act of Parliament, and laid a penalty on ſuch as ſhould after uſe it: the people thought it ſuch a grievance, and ſo injurious to the Nation, that among other things demanded towards a *Pacification* of the preſent troubles, their *Agents* and *Commiſſioners* inſiſted eagerly on the abrogation of this Law. An humour like to this in the point of *Husbandry*, we ſhall hereafter meet with in another place. Near of kin to which, is a lazie cuſtom that they have of burning their ſtraw (rather than put themſelves to the pains to threſh it) by that means to part it from the Corn. From which no reaſon can diſſwade them, nor perſwaſions win them. They have among them other cuſtoms as abſurd, though leſs inconvenient: as placing a green buſh, on *May-day* before their doors, to make their kine yield the more milk; kneeling down to the *New Moon* as ſoon as they ſee it, deſiring her to leave them in as good health as ſhe found them; and many others of like nature.

They uſe a language of their own, but ſpoken alſo in the Weſt of *Scotland*, and the *Hebrides* or Weſtern Iſlands; which though originally *Britiſh*, or a Dialect of it, by reaſon of their intermixture with *Norwegians*, *Danes*, *Eaſterlings*, or *Ooſt-mans*, and *Engliſh Saxons*; hath no affinity with the *Welch*, for ought I can learn.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached among them by S. *Patrick*, aſſirmed to be the Nephew of S. *Martin* of *Tours*, Anno 435. Reformed in the more civil parts, and the *Engliſh* Colonies, according to the platform of the Church of *England*: but the *Kernes*, or natural wild *Iriſh*, (and many of the better ſort of the Nation alſo) either adhere unto the Pope, or to their own ſuperſtitious fancies, as in former times. And to ſay truth, it is no wonder that they ſhould; there being no care taken to inſtruct them in the Proteſtant Religion: either by tranſlating the Bible, or the *Engliſh Liturgie*, into their own Language, as was done in *Wales*, but forcing them to come to Church to the *Engliſh* Service, which the people underſtand no more than they do the Maſs. By means whereof, the *Iriſh* are not only kept in continual ignorance, as to the doctrine and devotions of the Church of *England*, and others of the *Proteſtant* Churches: but thoſe of *Rome* are furniſhed with an excellent Argument, for having the Service of the Church in a Language which the common Hearers do not underſtand. And therefore I do heartily commend it to the care of the State (when theſe diſtempers are compoſed) to provide, that they may have the Bible, and all other publick means of *Chriſtian* inſtruction and devotion in their natural tongue.

The Soil of it ſelf is abundantly fruitful, but naturally fitter for Graſs and Paſturage, than it is for Tillage: as may be ſeen in ſuch places where the induſtry of man is aiding to the natural goodneſs of the Soil. But where that wanteth, the Country is either over-grown with Wood, or encumbred with vaſt Bogs, and unwholſom Mariſhes; yielding neither profit nor pleaſure unto the Inhabitants. In ſome places, as in the County of *Armagh*, ſo rank and fertile, that the laying of any ſoil or compoſt on it, doth abate its fruitfulneſs, and proves the worſt Husbandry that can be.

It hath been anciently very famous for the Piety and Religious lives of the Monks. Amongſt whom I cannot but remember *Columbus*, and of him this memorable *Apothegm*: when offered many preferments to leave his Country, he returned this Anſwer, *It becomes not them to embrace other mens goods, who for* Chriſts *ſake had forſaken their own.* Of no leſs piety, but more eminent in point of Learning, was *Richard Fitz-Raſe*, Archbiſhop of *Armagh*, commonly called *Armacanus*, who flouriſhed about the year 1350. A declared enemy of the Errors and corruptions of the Church of *Rome*.

It is affirmed of this Iſland, that (amongſt other Priviledges which it hath above other Iſlands) it foſtereth no venomous Serpent, and that no ſuch will live here, brought from other places. Hence of her ſelf we find her ſpeaking in the Poet.

Illa ego ſum Graiis *Glacialis* Hibernia *dicta*;
Cui Deus, & melior rerum naſcentium Origo,
Jus commune dedit cum Creta *altrice* Tonantis,
Angues ne noſtris diffundant ſibila in oris.

I am that Iſland which in times of old
The *Greeks* did call *Hibernia*, Icy-cold:
Secur'd by God and Nature from this fear,
Which gift was given to *Crete*, *Joves* Mother dear,
That poiſonous Snakes ſhould never here be bred,
Or dare to hiſs, or hurtful venom ſpread.

The other miracles of this Iſland are, 1. That there is a Lake in the County of *Armagh*, into which if one thruſt a piece of wood, he ſhal find that part of it which remaineth in the Mud to be turned into Iron; and that which is in the Water, to be turned into a Whet-ſtone: richly deſerved by him, if the tale be falſe, who did firſt report it. 2. That the Kine will yield no Milk, if their Calves be not by them; or at leaſt their Calves-skins ſtuffed with ſtraw or hay. It is ſaid alſo, that all the breed of this Country

are of leſs ſize than they be in *England*, except Women and Grey-hounds, and thoſe much bigger than with us.

As for the *Clergie* of this Country, they have been little beholding to their *Lay-Patrons*, in former times: ſome of their Biſhops being ſo poor, that they had no other Revenues than the Paſture of two Milch-Beaſts. And ſo far had the Monaſteries and Religious Houſes invaded by *Appropriations*, the Churches Rights; that of late times in the whole Province of *Connaught*, the whole ſtipend of the *Incumbent* was not above 40 ſhillings, in ſome places not above 16. So that the poor *Iriſh* muſt needs be better fed than taught: for *ad tenuitatem* Beneficiorum, *neceſſario ſequitur ignorantia Sacerdotum*, Poor Benefices will be fitted with ignorant Prieſts, ſaid *Panormitan* rightly. But this is remedied in part by his Sacred Majeſty King *CHARLES*, the ſecond Monarch of *Great Britain*, who liberally (at the ſuit of the late Lord Archbiſhop of *Canterbury*) reſtored unto this Church all the *Impropriations* and Portions of *Tithes*, which had been veſted in the Crown. An action of moſt ſingular Piety and Princely Bounty.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are, 1. The *Shannon* (the *Senas* of *Ptolomy*) which ariſing in the Mountains of *Letrim* in the County of *Connaught*, and making many fair Lakes as it paſſeth forwards; loſeth it ſelf after a courſe of 200 miles (of which 60 Navigable) in the Weſtern Ocean. 2. The *Liff*, by *Ptolomy* called *Libnius*, neighboured by the City of *Dublin*. 3. *Awiduffe*, or *Black Water*, as the *Engliſh* call it. 4. *Slane*, ſuppoſed to be the *Medona* of the ancient Writers. 5. The *Showre*. 6. The *Boyne*, &c. Of which, and others of like note, take this following Catalogue, out of the Canto of the Marriage of the *Thames* and *Medway*, in the *Faiery Queen*:

There was the *Liffie* rowling down the lea,
The ſandy *Slane*, the ſtony *Aubrian*,
The ſpacious *Shenin*, ſpreading like a Sea,
The pleaſant *Boyne*, the fiſhy-fruitful *Banne*,
Swift *Awiduffe*, which of the *Engliſhman*
Is called *Black-Water*; and the *Liffar* deep,
Sad *Trowis* that once his people over-ran,
Strong *Allo* tumbling from *Slewlogheer* ſteep,
And *Maullo* mine, whoſe waves I whilom taught to weep.

There alſo was the wide-embayed *Mayre*,
The pleaſant *Bandon* crown'd with many Wood;
The ſpreading *Lee*, that like an Iſland fair
Incloſeth *Cork* with his divided flood;
And baleful *Oure*, late ſtain'd with *Engliſh* blood,
With many more,———

So the renowned *Spencer* in his *Canto* of the marriage of *Thames* and *Medway*.

But beſides theſe Rivers, this Iſland is in moſt places well ſtored with Lakes, yielding great plenty of Fiſh to the parts adjoining. The principal of which, 1. *Lough-Erne*, containing 15 miles in breadth, and 30 miles in length; ſhaded with Woods, and ſo repleniſhed with Fiſh, that the Fiſhermen complain of too much abundance, and the often breaking of their Nets. It hath alſo in it many Iſlands, one moſt remarkable for the ſtrange and horrid noiſes which are therein heard, called therefore by the Vulgar, *St. Patricks Purgatory*. Almoſt as big as this is 2. the Lake of *Corbes*, which loſeth it ſelf in the Sea not far from *Galloway*. A Lake of 26 miles in length, and four in breadth: ſaid to have in it 30 Iſlets, abounding with Pine-Trees. 3. *Lough-Foyle*, ſuppoſed to be the *Logia* of *Ptolomy*. 4. *Lough-Eaugh*, out of which the River *Banne*, abundantly well ſtored with Salmons, hath its firſt Original. And beſides theſe and many others of leſs note, there are ſaid to be three Lakes in the Province of *Meth*, not far aſunder, and having an entercourſe of Waters: but of ſo different a temper, that the Fiſh which are proper to the one, (for each of them hath its proper and peculiar ſorts) will not live in the other: but either die, or by ſome ſecret conveyances, find a way to their own Lake out of which they were brought.

It was divided anciently into five Provinces, each one a Kingdom of it ſelf, that is to ſay, 1. *Leinſter*, 2. *Meth*, 3. *Ulſter*, 4. *Connaught*, and 5. *Munſter*: but of late time the Province of *Meth* is reckoned for a Member or part of *Leinſter*.

1. *LEINSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Lagenia*, hath on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Chanel, (commonly called S. *Georges* Chanel) by which parted from the Iſle of *Great Britain*; on the Weſt, the River *Newrie*, (*Neorus*, as the *Latines* call it) which divides it from *Mounſter*; on the North, the Province of *Meth*; and the main Ocean on the South. The Soil more fruitful generally than the reſt of *Ireland*, becauſe better cultivated and manured, as having been longeſt in the poſſeſſion of the *Engliſh*: from whom a great part of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, and for that reaſon more conformable to the civilities and habit of the *Engliſh* Nation. Well watered, beſides a large Sea-coaſt, with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, the principal whereof, 1. the *Barrow*, called in *Latine Birgus*; 2. the *Newrie*, 3. the *Showre*, and 4. the *Liffie*, (the *Libnius* of *Ptolomy*) neighbouring *Dublin* the chief City.

It containeth the Counties of 1. *Dublin*, 2. *Kilkenny*, 3. *Caterlough*, 4. *Kildare*, 5. *Leaſe*, or Queens County, 6. *Ophalie*, or Kings County; and 7. *Weiſhford*: in which are comprehended 34 Towns of note, and 88 Caſtles well fortified, and able to make good reſiſtance againſt an Enemy; the *Engliſh* being forced to fortifie themſelves in their Plantations with ſtrong holds and fortreſſes, againſt the incurſions of the Natives.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Dublin*, ſuppoſed to be the *Eblana* of *Ptolomy*; by the *Iriſh* called *Balacleigh*, becauſe being ſeated in a fenny and mooriſh ſoil, it was built on piles, as the word doth ſignifie in that language. Situate at or near the mouth of the River *Liffe*, which affordeth it a commodious Haven, but that the entrances thereof are many times encumbred with heaps of Sand. The City very rich and populous, as being the *Metropolis* of all the Iſland, the Seat of the Lord Deputy, an Archbiſhops See, and an Univerſity, beſides the benefit redounding from the Courts of Juſtice. In thoſe reſpects well fortified againſt all emergencies; and adorned with many goodly buildings, both private and publick. The Principal of which, are the Caſtle, wherein the Lord Deputy reſideth, built by *Henry Loandres* once Archbiſhop here: a Colledge founded by Queen *Elizabeth*, to the honour, and by the name of the bleſſed *Trinity*; the Cathedral Church dedicated to S. *Patrick*, the Apoſtle of the *Iriſh* Nation; a fair Collegiate Church called *Chriſt-Church*, beſides thirteen others deſtinated to Parochial meetings. Being deſtroyed almoſt to nothing in the *Daniſh Wars*, it was re-edified by *Harold*, ſirnamed *Harfager*, King of the *Norwegians*, then Maſters of moſt parts of the Iſland; and after the ſubjection of it to the Crown of *England*, was peopled with a Colony of *Briſtol* men. 2. *Wieſhford*, or *Wixford*, the *Menapia* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate on the mouth of the River *Slane*, ſuppo-

ſed

ſed to be the *Modona*, of the ſame Author; the firſt of all the Towns in *Ireland* which received a Colony of *Engliſh*. 3. *Kilkenny*, on the River *Newre*, the chief Seat of the Biſhop of *Oſſory*, and the faireſt Town of all the Inlands: ſo called *quaſi Cella Canici*, the Cell or Monaſtery of *Canicus*, a man of great renown for piety, in theſe parts of the Country. 4. *Kildare*, an In-land Town alſo, and a Biſhops See; but of more note for giving the Title of an Earl to the ancient Family of the *Fitz-Geralds*, of long time honoured with this Title. One of which being much complained of to King *Henry* the 8th, as a man of ſo unquiet and turbulent a nature, that his Adverſaries cloſed their charge againſt him with this expreſſion, *Finally, all* Ireland *cannot rule this Earl*; The King replyed, that *then this Earl ſhould rule all* Ireland; and ſo for his Jeſts ſake made him *Lord Deputy of the Kingdom*. 5. *Roſſe*, once populous, well traded, and of large circumference, now a ruine only; nothing remaining but the Walls, which were built by *Iſabel*, the Daughter of *Richard Strongbow* Earl of *Pembroke*, the fortunate Conqueror of this Iſland for King *Henry* the ſecond. 6. *Philips Town*, the Principal of the County of *Ophalie*, or *Kings County*; ſo called in honour of King *Philip*; as 7. *Marieburg*, the chief of *Leaſe*, or the Queens County, was in honour of Queen *Mary*. 8. *Leighlin*, a place of great importance, well walled and fortified againſt the incurſion of the *Iriſh*, by the Lord Deputy *Bellingham*. 9. *Caterlogh*, commonly, but corruptly *Carlough*, a Town of great ſtrength, and the chief of that County. 10. *Rheban*, not otherwiſe of note, but that it is conceived to be the *Rheba* of *Ptolomy*.

2. *METH*, by the *Latines* called *Media*, by *Giraldus*, *Midia*; becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Iſland, hath on the South *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, *Connaught*; on the North, *Ulſter*; on the Eaſt, the *Iriſh* Sea, or S. *Georges* Chanel. A ſmall, but rich and pleaſant Province: well ſtocked with people, and ſtored with all things neceſſary for their ſuſtentation; and for a ſweet and wholſom air not inferiour to any. Divided into three Counties only, that is to ſay, 1. *Eaſt-Meth*, 2. *Weſt-Meth*, and 3. *Long-ford*; containing 13 Towns of note, and 14 Caſtles of good eſteem. By reaſon of which ſtrength, it is called by ſome Writers, the *Chamber of Ireland*.

Towns of moſt conſequence herein, are 1. *Trim*, the chief Town of the County of *Eaſt-Meth*, the ancient Barony of the *Lacies*; poſſeſſed in former times of a fair Revenue in this County, and the Lords of the greateſt part of *Ulſter*. 2. *Tredah*, more properly *Drogheda*, ſituate on the River *Boine* on the edge of *Ulſter*, to which Province belongs ſo much of the Town as lieth on the North-ſide of that River: a very fair and populous City, as well by Art as Nature very ſtrongly fortified, and furniſhed with a large and commodious Haven. It took the name of *Droghedah*, from the Bridge there built upon the River for the conveniency of paſſage (as the word ſignifieth in that Language) and therefore called *Pontana* by ſome *Latine* Writers. 3. *Molinga*, the chief Town of *Weſt-Meth*. 4. *Delvin*, in the ſame County alſo, the Barony of the *Nugents*, an ancient Family in this Tract. 5. *Longford*, of moſt note in the County ſo named, but not elſe obſervable.

As for the Fortunes of this Province (for *Leinſter* ſince the firſt Conqueſt of it, hath been inſeparably annexed to the Crown of *England*) it was firſt granted in Fee-Farm by King *Henry* the ſecond, to *Hugh Lacy*, a man of great merit and employment in the Conqueſt of *Ireland*, who left it unto *Walter* his younger Son. By *Margaret* and *Matilda*, the Neeces of this *Walter* by his Son *Gilbert*, one moyety hereof came to the *Mortimers* Earls of *March*, and in their right unto the Crown in King *Edward* the Fourth: and the other moyety to the *Verduns*, by whom diſperſed and ſcattered into divers Families. Accompted for one County only till the time of King *Henry* the 8th, in whoſe Reign it was divided into *Eaſt-Meth*, and *Weſt-Meth*; to which the County of *Longford* was after added, as it continueth to this day.

3. *ULSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Ultonia*, is the largeſt Province of all *Ireland*, bounded on the South with *Meth* and *Connaught*; on the Weſt, with the vaſt *Iriſh* Ocean; on the North, with that part of the Northern Ocean, to which *Ptolomy* gives the name of *Hyperborean*; and on the Eaſt, with St. *Georges* Chanel. A Country fruitful of it ſelf, but in moſt places formerly overgrown with Woods, and drowned in Mariſhes and great Bogs, by the natural ſlothfulneſs of the people: made more reſponſal to the Husbandman both for Corn and Paſturage, ſince the late Plantation of the *Britiſh*, than in times foregoing.

It is divided into the Counties of, 1. *Louth*, 2. *Cavon*, 3. *Fermanath*, 4. *Down*, 5. *Monaghan*, 6. *Armagh*, 7. *Colrane*, 8. *Tirconnel*, 9. *Tir-Oen*, and 10. *Antrim*. In which are comprehended 14 Towns of note for Commerce and Traffick, and 30 Caſtles for the defence of the Country, and keeping under the wild *Iriſh*; wilder and more untractable in theſe Northern parts, than the reſt of *Ireland*. The whole well watered with a large and ſpacious Sea, on three ſides thereof; many great Lakes in the body of it, beſides the Rivers of 1. *Boyne*, called in *Latine Boanda*, which divides it from *Meth*, 2. the *Bann*, 3. *Moandus*, and 4. the *Eyn*, belonging to this Province wholly.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Armagh*, on or near the River of *Kalin*, the chief Town of the County ſo called, and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Primate of all *Ireland*. An ancient City, but ſo miſerably defaced by fire in *Tir Oens* Rebellion, that it can ſcarce preſerve the reputation of a Market-Town. 2. *Carlingford*, and 3. *Dundalk*, both ſituate on the Sea ſide, and both within the County of *Louth*. 4. *Knock-Fergus*, the chief of *Antrim*, more properly *Rock-Fergus*, (and in that ſenſe called *Carick-Fergus* by the *Iriſh*) ſo called from *Fergus* one of the Kings of the *Iriſh Scots*, who there ſuffered Shipwrack. Seated upon a large and capacious Bay (the *Vinderius of Ptolomy*) which giveth it both a ſafe and commodious Port; as well by natural ſituation, as the works of Art, very ſtrongly fortified; by reaſon of the Neighbourhood of the *Scots* in *Cantire*, from which little diſtant. 5. *London-Derry*, a Colony of the *Londoners*, beſt built of any Town in the North of *Ireland*. 6. *Dungannon*, the principal Seat and reſidence in former times, of the great *Oneals*. 7. *Dungall*, the principal of *Tir-Connel*. 8. *Robogh*, a ſmall Village at preſent, but anciently a Biſhops See: fit to be mentioned in this place, in regard it ſtill preſerveth ſome foot-ſteps of the old *Robogdii*, an *Iriſh* Tribe, and placed by *Ptolomy* in this tract, where they gave name unto the *Promontory* by him called *Robogdium*, now the *Fair Foreland*; as is probably conceived by the learned *Cambden*.

This, as it is the largeſt Province of all this Kingdom, ſo was it with moſt difficulty ſubjected to the Crown of *England*, and reduced to good order and civility. Firſt conquered by *John Curcy*, a valiant *Engliſh-man*, in the Reign of King *Henry* the ſecond, by whom created Earl of *Ulſter*. But being maligned for his eminent Virtues, and after proſcribed by King *John*, this Title and Eſtate were both conferred upon *Hugh Lacie*, the Lord and Conquerour of *Meth*, whom before we ſpake of. By an Heir General of the *Lacies*, it came unto the *Burghs* then Lords of *Connaught*; and by the marriage of *Elizabeth* Daughter and Heir of *Richard de Burgh*, the laſt Earl of that Family,

mily, it came to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, the ſecond Son (then living) of King *Edward* the third; as by his Daughter *Philip*, to the Earls of *March*, from them by the like marriage to the Houſe of *York*, and in the perſon of King *Edward* the 4th, to the Crown again. But being neglected by the *Engliſh*, in the whole courſe of their Government, eſpecially in the Wars betwixt *York* and *Lancaſter*, it was cantoned into many Eſtates & Principalities, by the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, (who had born too great ſway here in the former times): and ſo eſtranged from the civilities of *England*, and their Allegiance to that Crown, as if it had never been in ſubjection to it. In which eſtate it did continue (the Kings of *England* having here no more power or profit, than the great ones of the Country were pleaſed to give them): till the Rebellion firſt, and afterwards the vanquiſhment of *Hugh Oneal*, the then Earl of *Tir-Oen*, brought it in full ſubjection to the *Engliſh* Government, of which more hereafter.

4. *CONNAUGHT*, in Latine called *Connacia*; by the *Iriſh*, *Connaught*, is bounded on the North with *Ulſter*; on the Weſt with the main Ocean; on the South with *Munſter*, from which parted by the River *Shanon*; and on the Eaſt, with *Meth* and ſome part of *Leinſter*. So called from the *Nagnata*, an old *Iriſh* Nation; or from *Nagnata* a Port-Town; both placed by *Ptolomy* in this Tract. The ſoil of the ſame temper with that of *Ulſter*; as woody and as full of bogs till theſe later times, in which indifferently well cleared of both inconveniences.

It hath been alſo called by our *Engliſh* Writers, the County of *Clare*, from *Thomas de Clare*, one of the younger Sons of *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Glouceſter*, on whom it was conferred by King *Edward* the firſt: and is divided at the preſent into theſe five Shires, that is to ſay, 1. *Letrim*, 2. *Roſcommon*, 3. *Maio*, 4. *Slego*, and 5. *Galloway* and *Twomond*. In which are comprehended but 8 Towns of any conſequence, for Commerce and Traffick, (an argument of the imperfect Plantation of it by the *Engliſh* Conquerors); and about 24 Caſtles for defence of the Country, of old erection, beſides ſuch Fortreſſes as have been raiſed occaſionally in theſe later troubles.

Places of moſt note and obſervation, 1. *Toam*, an Archbiſhops See. 2. *Athenry* an ancient Town, but decayed and ruinous; of moſt renown for being the Barony of *John de Bermingham*, a noble *Engliſh man*, who had great poſſeſſion in this tract. 3. *Letrim*, the chief Town of the County ſo named, neighboured by the *Curlew*-Mountains, unfortunately memorable for the great defeat there given the *Engliſh*, in *Tir-Oens* rebellion; and by the Spring or Fountain of the River *Shenin* or *Shanon*, whoſe courſe we have before deſcribed. 4. *Slego*, and 5. *Roſcommon*, the chief Town of their ſeveral Counties. 6. *Athlone*, a piece of great ſtrength, and the great Key of *Connaught*. 7. *Twomond*, not otherwiſe much obſervable, but for giving the title of an Earl to the Family of *O-Brian*, (deſcended from the Kings of *Connaught*) advanced unto that honour by King *Henry* the 8th. 8. *Galloway* the principal of this Province, a Biſhops See, and the third City of the Kingdom for beauty and bigneſs. Situate near the fall of the great Lake or River of *Corbes*, in the Weſtern Ocean, defended on that ſide from the fury of the Sea, and the fear of Invaſions, by the interpoſition of ſome Iſlands (called the Iſles of *Arran*) very ſtrongly fortified. A noted Empory, and lately of ſo great fame with foreign Merchants, that an out-landiſh Merchant meeting with an *Iriſh-man*, demanded *in what part of* Galloway, Ireland *ſtood*; as if *Galloway* had been the name of the Iſland, and *Ireland* only the name of ſome Town.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, as the reſt of thoſe Provinces; the laſt King whereof was *Roderick*, ſurnamed the *Great*, who having a great hand over the reſt of the *Roytelets*, entituled himſelf ſole Monarch or King of *Ireland*. But being forced to ſubmit himſelf to King *Henry* the ſecond, his Country at the laſt was brought into ſubjection to the Crown of *England*, by the valour and good fortune of *William de Burgh*, *Gilbert de Clare* Earl of *Gloceſter*, *William de Bermingham*, and other Noble Adventurers of the *Engliſh* Nation. And though all of them did partake of the fruit of their labours; yet the greateſt part of the ſpoil, together with the title of Lords of *Connaught*, fell to the Family of the *Burghs*; from them to *Lionel* Duke of *Clarence*, and by degrees unto the Crown, as before was ſhewn. Cantoned again amongſt the *Iriſh* and degenerate *Engliſh*, as *Ulſter* was, by the ſupine neglect of the Kings of *England*: till the Rebellion of *Tir-Oen*, involving all the Chiefs of the *Iriſh* Nation in the ſame cauſe with him, involved them alſo conſequently in the ſame deſtruction.

5. *MOUNSTER*, by the *Latines* called *Momonia*, is bounded on the North with *Connaught*; on the Eaſt with *Leinſter*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* or Weſtern Ocean; and on the South, with the *Vergivian*. By the natural *Iriſh* it is called *Mown*, whence the *Engliſh* had the name of *Mounſter*. A Province, which for rich Towns, commodious Havens, fair Rivers, and the fertility of the Soil, yields not to any in the Kingdom.

It is divided into ſix Counties, *viz.* *Limerick*, 2. *Waterford*, 3. *Cork*, 4. *Deſmond*, 5. *Kerry*, and 6. *Tipperary*; which two laſt anciently enjoyed all the rights of a County Palatine: And in theſe Shires are comprehended (beſides many ſafe Stations and Roads for Shipping) 24 Towns of Note and Trading, and 66 Caſtles of old erection.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Caſſiles*, in the County of *Limerick*, an Archbiſhops See, advanced unto that honour by Pope *Eugenius* the third, about the year 1150. 2. *Limerick*, the principal of that County, and the fourth in eſtimation of all the Kingdom: Situate in an Iſland compaſſed round about with the River *Shanon*, by which means well fortified; a well frequented Empory, and a Biſhops See; diſtant from the main Ocean about 60 miles, but ſo accommodated by the River, that Ships of Burden come up cloſe to the very Walls. The Caſtles and the Bridg-pieces of both great ſtrength and beauty, were of the foundation of King *John*, exceedingly delighted with the ſituation. 3. *Clonmel*, in the County of *Tipperary*, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 4. *Holy Croſs*, in the ſame County alſo, once flouriſhing by reaſon of the great reſort of Pilgrims, to ſee and worſhip there a piece of the holy Croſs, as it was ſuppoſed: which ſuppoſition as it drew much Wealth unto the Town, ſo it obtained the rights of a County *Palatine* for the County alſo. 5. *Thurles* in the ſame County, which gives the Title of a Viſcount to the Earls of *Ormond*, but not elſe obſervable. 6. *Waterford*, on the River *Showre*, a well traded Port, a Biſhops See, and the ſecond City of the Kingdom. Of great fidelity to the *Engliſh* ſince the Conqueſt of *Ireland*, and for that cauſe endowed with many ample priviledges. Firſt built by ſome *Norwegian* Pirates, who though they fixed it in one of the moſt barren parts and moſt foggy air of all the Country, yet they made choice of ſuch a ſafe and commodious ſite for the uſe of Shipping, that of a Neſt of Pirats it was eſtſoons made a Receipt for Merchants, and ſuddenly grew up to great Wealth and Power. 6. *Cork*, (by the *Latines* called *Corcagia*) the principal of that County, and a Biſhops See: well walled, and fitted with a very commodious Haven; conſiſting chiefly of one ſtreet reaching out in length; inhabited by a civil, wealthy, and induſtrious people. 7. *Dunk-Eran*, an old Epiſcopal

See,

See, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Ivernis* of *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 8. *Kinſale*, upon the mouth of the River *Bany*, a commodious Port, oppoſite to the Coaſts of *Spain*, and fortified in *Tir Oens* Rebellion by a *Spaniſh* Garriſon, under the command of *Don John de Aquila*: but ſoon recovered (after the defeat of that Grand Rebel near the Walls hereof) by the valour and indefatigable induſtry of *Charles* Lord *Mountjoy*, the then Lord Deputy of this Kingdom. 9. *Baltimore*, 10. *Toughall*, and 11. *Bere-haven*, all upon the Sea, and all provided of ſafe Roads or convenient Havens. 12. *Leſmore*, of old a Biſhops See, now annexed to *Waterford*, in which Shire it ſtandeth. Nothing in point of ſtory ſingular which concerns this Province; but that it was ſo carefully looked to by the Kings of *England*, that there was appointed over it a peculiar Officer (in the Reign of Queen *Elizabeth*, in power and place next to the *Deputy* himſelf) called the *Lord Preſident* of *Munſter*: by whoſe vigilancy there have hapned fewer Rebellions here, than in any Province of this Iſland.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Iſland, being originally *Britains*, (as before is ſaid) were in the time of *Ptolomy* diſtinguiſhed into the Nations of *Rhobognii*, *Darnii*, *Volontii*, *Venicnii*, and *Erdini*, poſſeſſing the Northern parts, now *Ulſter*; the *Auteri*, *Cangani* and *Nagnatæ*, inhabiting *Connaught*: the *Velibori*, *Uterni*, *Vodii*, and *Coriondi*, in the South, now *Mounſter*; and the *Menapii*, *Cauci*, *Blanii*, *Brigantes*, taking up the Provinces of *Meth* and *Leinſter*. Principal Cities of the which, were *Eblana*, now *Dublin*; *Menapia*, now *Waterford*; *Nagnata*, which *Ptolomy* honoured with the Title of *Urbs inſignis*; *Rhigia*, *Rheba*, *Macolicum*, *Laberus*, *Ivernis*, &c. not eaſily diſcernable by what names we may call them now: this Country never being ſo happy as to come under the power of the *Romans*, the great Maſters of *Civility* and good Letters in the Weſt of *Europe*: and by that means, the actions and affairs thereof buried in ignorance and ſilence. Towards the falling of which Empire we find the Nation of the *Scots* to be ſeated here, and from hence firſt to take poſſeſſion of the *Hebrides*, or Weſtern Iſles, next of the Weſtern part of *Britain* on the North of *Dunbritton-Frith*. Afterwards ſome of the *Saxon* Monarchs caſt their eyes upon it, and made themſelves Maſters of *Dublin*, and ſome other places; but being incumbred with the *Danes*, could not hold them long: being hardly able to defend their own againſt the people. The next that undertook the conqueſt, were the Northern Nations, *Danes*, *Swedes*, and *Normans*, all paſſing in the Chronicles of that time, under the name of *Norwegians*: who firſt only ſcowred along the Coaſts in the way of Piracy. But after finding the weakneſs of the Iſland, divided amongſt many petit and inconſiderable Princes, they made an abſolute conqueſt of it under the conduct of *Turgeſius*, whom they elected for their King: ſoon rooted out by the policy of the King of *Meth*, the only *Iriſh* Prince who was in favour with the Tyrant. This petit King by name *Omo-Laghliben*, had a Daughter, of renowned beauty, whom *Turgeſius* demanded of her Father to ſerve his luſts: and he ſeeming willing to condeſcend to the motion, as if honoured by it, made anſwer, That beſides his Daughter, he had at his diſpoſing many others of more exquiſite beauties, which ſhould all be ready at command. *Turgeſius* (wallowing this bait, deſired him with all ſpeed to effect the meeting. But the King of *Meth*, attiring in the habits of Women, a company of young Gentlemen, who durſt for the common liberty adventure their ſeveral lives: conducted them to the Tyrants Bed-chamber, And they according to the directions given them, (when for that little modeſty ſake he had in him, he had commanded all his attendants to avoid the room) aſſaulted him, now ready for and expecting more kind embraces, and left him dead in the place. The *Methian* King had by this time acquainted diverſe of the better ſort with his plot; all which upon a ſign given, ruſh into the Palace, and put to death all the *Norwegians*, and other attendants of the Tyrant. After this, the *Roytelets* enjoyed their former Dominions, till the year 1172. in which *Dermot Mac Morogh* King of *Leinſter*, having forced the Wife of *Maurice O Rork* King of *Meth*, and being by him driven out of his Kingdom; came to the Court of *England* for ſuccour. To this Petition, *Henry* the ſecond then King, condeſcended: ſending him aid under the leading of *Richard de Clare*, ſirnamed *Strongbow*, Earl of *Pembroke*, who reſtored King *Dirmot*, and brought a great part of the Iſland under the *Engliſh* ſubjection. *John*, King of *England*, was the firſt who was entituled *Lord of Ireland*; which ſtile was granted him by Pope *Urban* the third, who for the ornament of his Royalty, ſent him a plume of Peacock Feathers: and when *Tir-Oen* ſtiled him *Defender of the Iriſh Liberty*, he was by *Clement* the 8. honoured with the like plume. But here we are to underſtand, that though the Kings of *England* uſed no other title than *Lords of Ireland*; yet were they Kings thereof in effect and power, *Lords Paramount*, as we uſe to ſay. And though themſelves retained only the name of *Lords*, yet one of them gave to one of his *Engliſh* Subjects, the honourable, but invidious title of *Duke of Ireland*. And they retained this title of *Lords*, till the year 1542; in which *Henry* the 8th, in an *Iriſh Parliament*, was declared King of *Ireland*, as a name more ſacred, and repleat with Majeſty, than that of *Lord*: at which time alſo he was declared to be *Supream Head* under God, of the Church of *Ireland*; and the pretended juriſdiction of all foreign Powers, eſpecially the uſurped authority of the Pope of *Rome* renounced by Law, though ſtill acknowledged by too many of his ſuperſtitious and untractable People.

The Government of this Country, ſince the firſt Conqueſt by the *Engliſh*, hath been moſt commonly by one Supream Officer, who is ſometimes called the *Lord Lieutenant*, moſt generally the *Lord Deputy* of *Ireland*; than whom no *Vice-Roy* in all *Europe* hath greater power, or comes nearer the Majeſty of a King in his Train and State. For his aſſiſtance he hath a Privy Council attending on him, though reſident for the moſt part at *Dublin*: and in emergencies, or caſes of more difficult nature proceedeth many times in an arbitrary way, without formalities of Law. And for their Laws, which are the ſtanding Rule of all civil Government, they owe their being and original to the *Engliſh* Parliaments. For in the Reign of King *Henry* the 7th, Sir *Edward Poynings*, then *Lord Deputy*, cauſed an Act to paſs in the *Iriſh* Parliament, whereby all Laws and Statutes, which were made in *England* before that time, were to be entertained and ſtand in force as the Laws of *Ireland*. On which foundation they have raiſed many *Superſtructures* both of Law and Government, enacted in their own Parliaments, ſummoned by the *Lord Deputy* at the Kings appointment: in which, by another Statute made in the time of the ſaid *Poynings*, the People are enabled to make Laws for their own good Governance, conditioned they were firſt tranſmitted to the Court of *England* to be conſidered of by the King, before they were *Voted* to in either of the Houſes of the *Iriſh* Parliaments. Which Laws commonly called *Poynings Laws*, have hitherto continued in force amongſt them; though the laſt much ſtomached and repined at; not only as a badge of their Subjection to the Crown of *England*, but as a Curb or Martingal to hold them in.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe good *Laws*, and the ample power of their Commiſſion, the Lord Deputies could never abſolutely ſubdue the Iſland, or bring the people to any

any civil course of life; the Fathers inflicting an heavy curse on all their posterity, if ever they should sow corn, build houses, or learn the *English* tongue. To this indisposition of the *Irish* themselves, let us add the defects of the Kings of *England*, and *Irish* Deputies, in matters of civil policy, as I find them particularized by Sir *John Davies*, in his worthy and pithy discourse of this Subject: I will only glean a few of them. First then, saith he, a *barbarous* Country is like a field overgrown with weeds, which must first be well broken with the *Plough*, and then immediately *sown* with good and profitable seed: so must a wild and uncivil people, be first broken and ploughed up by war, and then presently *sown* with the seed of *good Laws* and discipline; lest the weeds revive in the one, and ill manners in the other. Here then was the first defect in our *English* Kings, not to tame and take down the Stomachs and pride of this people, though either civil or foreign wars perhaps occasioned this neglect: and also the *Irish* Deputies, who at such times as the people upon a small discomfiture, were crest-fain, neglected the so keeping of them by severity of discipline. The second oversight concerneth particularly our Kings, who gave such large possessions and *Regalities* unto the first Conquerors, that the people knew no Authority in a manner, above their own immediate Lords. The Laws of *England* were not indifferently communicated to all the *Irishry*, but to some particular Families and Provinces only: insomuch as there were but five great Lords of the natural *Irish*, who had the benefit and protection of the Laws of *England*, that is to say, *O Neal* in *Ulster*, *O Connohor* in *Connaught*, *Mac Morrough* in *Lemster*, *O Malaghlin* in *Meth*, and *O Brian* in *Twomond*; known by the name of *Quinque Sanguines* in some old Records. By means whereof the rest of the people being in the condition of *Out-Laws*, or at the best of *Aliens*, had no incouragement either to build, or plant, or manure their Land, or to behave themselves as Subjects. A fourth defect was more particularly in the *Deputies* or Lords *Lieutenants*, who having made good and wholsom Laws against the barbarous customs of the Common people, and the mercilesse oppressions of the Lords, never put any of them in execution; as if they had been made for terrour, not for reformation. Fifthly, add unto these (which Sir *John Davies* hath omitted) the little care which was too often taken by the Kings of *England* in the choice of their *Deputies*: sometimes conferring that high Office as a Court preferment, without relation unto the merits of the person, and sometimes sending men of weak or broken Fortunes, who attended more their own profit than their Masters service, and were more bent to fleece than to feed this flock. Sixthly, And yet besides these Errors of the Kings and Deputies in point of Government, there was another, and as great in the *Planters* themselves; who building all their Forts and Castles in the open Countries, abandoned the Woods and Bogs, and other Fastnesses to the natural *Irish*; the strength whereof not only animated them to Rebel upon all occasions: but served too fitly to continue them in their ancient *Barbarism*.

In these terms of wildness and non-subjection stood *Ireland*, till the latter end of Queen *Elizabeths* reign, at what time the rebellion of *Hugh O Neal* Earl of *Tir Oen* had engaged almost all the *Irishry* in that desperate action which ending in the overthrow of that ingrateful Rebel, and all his partizans, not only crushed the over-much powerableness of the *Irish* Nobility, but made the final and full conquest of the whole Nation. So true it is, that *Every Rebellion when it is suppresst, doth make the Prince stronger, and the Subjects weaker.* *Ireland* thus broken and ploughed up, that glorious Queen died a victor over all her enemies, and left the sowing of it unto her successor King *James*, who omitted no part of a skilful *Seedsman*. 1. Then there was an ἀμνηστία or *Act* of *Oblivion* made, whereby all the offences against the Crown were remitted, if by such a limited day the people would sue out their *Pardons*, and by the same Act, all the *Irishry* were manumitted from the servitude of their Lords, and received into the Kings immediate *Protection*. 2ly, The whole Kingdom was divided into *Shires* and *Judges Itinerant* appointed to circuit them: whereby it hath followed, that the exactions of the Lords are laid aside, the behaviour of the people narrowly looked into, the passages before unknown unto our Souldiers, are laid open by our *Under-Sheriffs* and Bayliffs; and the common people seeing the benefit and security they enjoy by the *English* Laws, and loth to plead always by an *Interpreter*, begin to set their children to School, for the learning of the *English* tongue. 3ly, The *Irish* were not rooted out, as in the first plantation in *Lemster*, and the *English* only estated in their rooms: but were only removed from the Woods, Bogs, and Mountains, into the plain and open Country: that being like *wild trees* transplanted, they might grow the milder, and bear the better fruit. And 4. whereas there was but one *Freeholder* in a whole Country, which was the Lord himself, the rest holding in Villenage, and being subject to the Lords immeasurable taxations; whereby they had no encouragement to build or plant; now the *Lords Estate* was divided into two parts, that which he held in demain to himself, which was still left unto him; and that which was in the hands of his *Tenants*, who had Estates made in their Possessions, according to the Common course of *England*, paying instead of uncertain *Irish* taxations, certain *English* rents: whereby the people have since set their minds upon repairing their houses, and manuring their lands, to the great increase of the private and publick *Revenue*.

But that which most advanced the reduction of *Ireland* to a setled and civil Government, and rooted it in a subjection to the Crown of *England*, was the voluntary flight of the Earls of *Tyrone*, and *Tirconnell*, Sir *John Odaughertie*, and other great men of the North, possessed of large Territories and great Jurisdictions. Who being both uncapable of Loyalty, and impatient of seeing the Kings *Judges*, *Justices*, and other Ministers of State, to hold their *Sessions*, and execute their Commissions of *Oyer* and *Terminer* within the parts where they commanded: without more provocation, or the fear of any danger but a guilty Conscience, forsook the Country, and left their whole Estates to the Kings disposing. By whose directions, their Lands were seized upon and sold to several Purchasors, the City of *London* inteoffed in a great part of them, a great Plantation made in *Ulster* of *English*, *Welch*, and *Scots*, by the united name of a *British Plantation*; and a new Order of Knights *Baronets* erected in the Kingdom of *England* for raising money to advance and indear the work. Which had it been as cordially affected by the *English*, as it was by the *Scots*; if more of this Nation had gone thither, & not abandoned so great a part of it to the power of the other, it had been better for both Kingdoms, in the conformity of each to one form of Government (which the *Scots*, being factious for another, did not easily brook) and the uniting of both people in the bonds of amity: the *Irish* looking on the *Scot* as a meer *Intruder*, but on the *English* as his old Master or his *Fellow-Subject*. Howsoever, so great a part of the Country (and that which heretofore was the nest of the *Rebels*,) being thus disposed of, it came to pass, that *Ireland*, which before served only as a *grave* to bury our best men, and a *gulf* to swallow our greatest treasures; being governed neither as a Country *Free*, nor conquered: was brought in some hope, by the prudence and policy of her last Kings

and

and late *Lord Deputies*, to prove an orderly *Commonwealth*, civil in it ſelf, profitable to the Prince, and a good ſtrength to the *Britiſh* Empire. For to ſuch Order it was reduced, in a little time, that the *wayfaring* men might travel without danger, the *Ploughman* walk without fear, the Laws adminiſtred in every place alike, the men drawn unto Villages, the Woods and Faſtneſſes left to beaſts, and all reduced to that civility, as our Fathers never ſaw, nor could we well ſample out of ancient Hiſtories.

The *Revenues* of this Kingdom are ſaid by *Walſingham* in the time of *Edward* the 3d, to have been yearly 40000 pounds; but his ſucceſſors, till of late, have ſcarce got ſo much as the keeping of it coſt them: King *Richard* the ſecond being by the ſame *Walſingham* reported to have ſpent 30000 marks out of his own purſe, over and above the money which he received thence. Whether this Country were ſo profitable to *Edward* the third, or no, I determine not, though I find good reaſons to perſwade me, that *Walſingham* was not well acquainted with the ſtate of that *Exchequer*. But ſure I am, that the Revenues of the Crown are more than double what they were in the ſaid Kings Reign, and more duely paid into the *Exchequer* of that Kingdom than ever formerly; the profits of the *Cuſtom houſe* amounting to 30000 *per Annum*, in the laſt year of King *James* his Reign. Not to ſay any thing of the great improvements which were made by the Earl of *Strafford*, in the time of his Government, becauſe they fell together with him.

The ſtrength of this Kingdom conſiſteth partly in the ſituation of it, begirt about with difficult and dangerous Seas; partly in the many Caſtles firſt built and fortified by the *Engliſh* Planters; and partly in a ſtanding Army continually kept up by the Kings of *England*, for defence of their hold and intereſt againſt the Rebellions of the Natives. What Forces it is able to raiſe both of Horſe and Foot, could never be conjectured at, till now of late. For formerly the Kings of *England* being actually poſſeſſed only of thoſe four Counties which they called the *Pale*, that is to ſay, the Counties of *Dublin*, *Louth*, *Kildare*, and *Meth* (which laſt hath ſince the time of King *Henry* the 8th been ſubdivided into three) were not able to raiſe any great power out of that Eſtate, but were forced to ſend Souldiers out of *England* (as occaſion was) to preſerve their Soveraignty in *Ireland*. The greateſt Levy which I read of, was that of 1500 *Iriſh*, led by the Prior of *Kilmainham* to King *Henry* the fifth, then being at the ſiege of *Harflew* in *Normandy*. And on the other ſide, the great Lords of the natural *Iriſh*, and degenerate *Engliſh*, being divided into Factions amongſt themſelves, and never joined in any one principle of common intereſt, were more inconſiderable than the weak, but united Forces of the Kings of *England*. And though moſt of them at the laſt, were drawn into a confederacy with the Earl of *Tir-Oen*, to make good his rebellion: yet find I not that their Army did exceed at any time, the number of 8000 men; and thoſe not well appointed neither. So that the beſt eſtimate which can be made of the Forces of *Ireland*, muſt be meaſured by the Armies raiſed in the late Rebellion, when the *Iriſh* had both time, and leiſure, to get themſelves ſome reputation in the World, and make proviſion for a War. In proſecution of which, he who conſiders the many Armies they have raiſed, ſince their firſt muſtering under the command of Sir *Phelim O Neal*; the many defeats which have been given them, and thoſe as many new recruits after each defeat; all of them raiſed out of the bodies of their own people, without ſupply from other Countries (beſides ſuch as have ſerved againſt them for the King): muſt needs conclude that they want not men enough for ſervice; nor skill, nor courage to attempt the moſt difficult enterpriſes.

The Arms of *Ireland* are *Azure*, an Harp *Or*, ſtringed *Argent*. Which Coat, King *James*, (to ſhew himſelf the firſt abſolute King of *Ireland*) firſt cauſed to be marſhalled with the Royal Arms of *Great Britain*.

Reckoned in *Ireland* at and ſince the *Reformation*,
Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 19.
One Univerſity, *Viz.*
Dublin.

The *LESSER ISLANDS*

AND now we come at laſt to the *LESSER ISLANDS*, diſperſed in ſeveral parts of the *Britiſh* Ocean. The chief whereof are, 1. The *Orcades*, 2. *Schetland*, 3. The *Hebrides*, 4. *Man*, 5. *Angleſey*, 6. The Iſlands of the *Severn* Sea, 7. The *Sorlings*, or Iſles of *Scilly*, 8. *Wight*, 9. *Thanet*, 10. *Sunderland*, 11. *Holy Iſland*.

I. The *ORCADES* or Iſles of *Orkney* are in number 32, ſituate over againſt *Cathneſs*, the moſt Northern Country of all *Scotland*; and ſeparate from one another by ſome narrow Straights. The ſoil indifferently Fruitful, exceedingly well ſtored with Barley, and great Herds of Cattel; plentiful in Hares and Conies, as of Cranes and Swans: but deſtitute of Wheat, and unfurnithed both of Woods and Trees. But their chief commodity is their Fiſh, which the Inhabitants catch upon the Coaſts in great abundance. Thoſe of moſt note in all the cluſter, are, 1. *Heth*, conceived to be the *Ocetis* of *Ptolomy*: as 2. *Fair Iſle*, on good reaſon thought to be the *Dumna* of *Pliny*; the chief Town of it being ſtill called by the name of *Dumo*. 3. *Hey*, taken or miſtaken for the *Dumna* of *Pliny*, but not elſe obſervable. 4. *Pomona*, the chief of all, in length about 26 miles; in breadth, where it is broadeſt, ſix. The chief Town of it *Kirkwall*, honoured with a Biſhops See, and ſtrengthened with two Caſtles. This Iſland is well ſtored with Tin and Lead, and is at this day by the Inhabitants called *Mainland*.

The people of theſe Iſles (according to *Maginus*) are great drinkers, but no drunkards; *Bibaciſſimi ſunt incolæ, nunquam tamen inebriantur*. They uſe the *Gothiſh* Language, which they derive from the *Norwegians*, in whoſe poſſeſſion they once were; and of whoſe qualities they ſtill retain ſome ſmack. The Iſles themſelves in the time of *Solinus* were not inhabited, being then overgrown with ruſhes; (now in a meaſure, populous and fertile, as before was ſaid) and were firſt diſcovered by *Julius Agricola*, the firſt that ever ſailed about *Britain*. In later times they were poſſeſſed by the *Normans* or *Norwegians*, who held them till the year 1266; when *Magnus* King of *Norway* ſurrendred them up to *Alexander* King of *Scotland*, which Surrender ſome of the ſucceeding Kings did afterwards ratifie: the claim heretofore being finally relinquiſhed by *Chriſtiern* the firſt, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, on the marriage of his Daughter *Margaret* with King *James* the third, *An.* 1474. ſome money being added to make good the Contract, without which the *Danes* would not forgo their pretenſions to them.

II. Two days ſayling North of theſe *Orcades*, lyeth

SCHETLAND, an Iſland belonging to the Crown of *Scotland*, and is by many Learned men, upon very good reaſons, ſuppoſed to be the *Thule* of the Antients. For firſt, it ſtandeth in the 63 degree of *Latitude*, in which *Ptolomy* placed *Thule*. Secondly, it lyeth oppoſite to *Bergen* in *Norway*; againſt which *Pomponius Mela* hath ſeated it. And thirdly, *Caſper Peucerus* hath obſerved, that this *Schetland* is by Mariners called *Thylenſil*; a name in which that of *Thule* is apparently couched. That *Iſe land* was not *Thule* (as moſt ſay) we ſhall ſhew you when we come to *Norway*, and the Northern Iſlands. Here we add only, That the Antients did report many ſtrange things of it, and ſome of them beyond all belief. *Pliny* affirming that they had no day here for all the *Winter* (*nulla per brumam dies*, as his own wordsare) with whom agree *Solinus* and many others, as to that particular. *Iſidore* adds, (*Origen. lib.* 14. *c.* 6.) *nullum ultra eam diem eſſe*, that beyond this Iſle there was no day in any place; as if here had been the end of the World and Nature. But *Pytheas* in *Polybius* goes beyond them all, reporting that in this Iſle there was no diſtinction of Earth, Air, and Water: ἀλλὰ σύγκριμά τι ἐκ τούτων, but a confuſed mixture of all together, like the primitive *Chaos* of the Poets. The reaſon of which ſtrange report, was the audaciouſneſs of thoſe who had ſeen the Iſland, and thought that whatſoever they ſaid of it would not be diſproved, becauſe of the remoteneſs of it from more civil Countries. So truly and judiciouſly ſpoken was that of *Syneſius*, a right Learned Prelate, Ἡ Θούλη διδάσκει τοῖς διαψεύδεσθαι ἀντλοῦσιν ἀνεύθυνα καὶ ἀνέλεγκτα διδάσκει. *Thule* (ſaith he) gave thoſe who had ſailed unto it, the opportunity of lying without controll. An opportunity which many of our Mariners and vulgar Travellers have made too much uſe of in theſe laſt times alſo.

III. The HEBRIDES, HEBUDAE, or *Weſtern Iſlands*, ſituate on the Weſt of *Scotland*, are in number about 44. The chief whereof, 1. *Ila*, 24 miles long, and 16 in breadth; plentiful in Wheat, Cattle, and herds of Deer. 2. *Jona*, Famous for the Sepulchres of the old *Scotiſh* Kings; whoſe chief Town is *Sodore*, once a Biſhops See, called hence *Sodorenſis*; his juriſdiction comprehending theſe Iſlands with the Iſle of *Man*; his See erected by Pope *Gregory* the 4th, *Anno* 840. or thereabouts. His dwelling for the moſt part of it in the Iſle of *Man*, as the wealthier and more pleaſant part of his *Dioceſs*; till the conqueſt of it by the *Engliſh*; at what time thoſe of the *Weſtern Iſlands*, withdrew themſelves from his obedience, and had a Biſhop of their own: both of them for a long time called *Sodorenſes*; but at laſt this took the name of *Inſulanus*, Biſhop of the Iſles, which he ſtill retains. 4. *Mela*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maleos*, (that of *Ila* beforementioned being his *Epidia*) mountainous and hilly, but affording good Mines of Lead and Copper; 25 miles more in compaſs than that of *Ila*. 4. *Lewis*, or *Leviſſa*, the largeſt of all the *Hebrides*, ſaid to be 60 miles in length, and 30 in breadth, the more Weſtern of the two *Ebudae* ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*: the other being now called *Skye*, famous for the multitude of Sea-Calves in the Creeks thereof. 6. *Racline*, the *Recina* of *Ptolomy*, the ſmalleſt of the *Hebrides*, and moſt near to *Ireland*. The reſt of leſs note, not known, or not inhabited in the time of the *Romans*, and not very well peopled at the preſent, I forbear to name: ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, others ſcarce having graſs enough to hide their bareneſs. The people of them all, as well in language as behaviour, reſemble the *Wild Iriſh*, and are called *Red ſhanks*: a people, as King *James* affirmeth in his *Baſilicon Doron*, utterly rude, and without all ſhew of Civility; ſuch as endure not to be governed by Laws, or kept under by Diſcipline. *Legum ſeveritate, & judiciorum metu, ſe alligari non patiuntur*, ſaith judicious *Cambden*. Such as they are, they came unto the Crown of *Scotland* by a Contract betwixt *Magnus* King of *Norway*, and King *Alexander* the third: the *Orcades* being bargained for at the ſame time alſo.

South of the *Hebrides*, in the Bay of *Dunbritton-Frith*, lieth the Iſle of *Rothſay*, (now called *Buthe*) which gives the Title of a Duke to the *Prince* of *Scotland*: and the Iſle of *Arran*, which gives the title of an Earl to the chief of the *Hamiltons*.

IV. *MAN* is ſituate juſt over againſt the Southern part of *Cumberland*, from which it is diſtant 25 miles; and was judged to belong to *Britain* rather than to *Ireland*; becauſe it foſtered venemous Serpents brought hither out of *Britain*. By *Ptolomy* it is called *Monœda*, or the further *Mona*, to difference it from that which we call *Angleſey*; by *Pliny*, *Monabia*; *Menavia*, by *Oraſius* and *Beda*; *Eubonia*, by *Gildas* an old *Britiſh* Writer. The *Welch* at this day call it *Menaw*, the Inhabitants *Maning*, and the *Engliſh Man*. It is in length 30 miles, in breadth 15, and 8 in ſome places. The people hate Theft and Begging; and uſe a Language mixt of the *Norwegian* and *Iriſh* tongues. The Soyl is abundant in Flax, Hemp, Oats, Barley, and Wheat; with which they uſe to ſupply the defects of *Scotland*, if not the *Continent* it ſelf, yet queſtionleſs the *Weſtern Iſles*, which are a member of it. For thus writeth the Reverend Father in God *John Mericke* late Biſhop of this Iſland, in a Letter to Mr. *Cambden*, at ſuch time as he was compoſing his moſt excellent *Britannia*. *Our Iſland* (ſaith he) *for Cattel, for Fiſh, and for Corn, hath not only ſufficient for it ſelf, but ſendeth alſo good ſtore into other Countries.* Now what Countries ſhould need this ſupply (*England* and *Ireland* being afore-hand with ſuch proviſion) except *Scotland*, or ſome members thereof, I ſee not.

Venerable *Bede* numbred in it 300 Families, and now it is furniſhed with 17 Pariſh Churches. The chief Towns are, 1. *Balacuri*. and 2. *Ruſſin*, or *Caſtle-Town*, the Seat of a Biſhop, who though he be under the Archbiſhop of *York*, yet never had any voice in the *Engliſh* Parliament. In this Iſland is the Hill of *Sceaful*, where on a clear day one may ſee *England*, *Scotland*, and *Ireland*: here alſo are bred the *Soland* Geeſe, of rotten Wood falling into the Water. This Iſland was taken from the *Britains* by the *Scots*, and from them regained by *Edwin* King of *Northumberland*. Afterwards the *Norwegians* ſeized on it, and made it a Kingdom; the Kings hereof ruling over the *Hebrides*, and ſome part of *Ireland*. From them taken by *Alexander* the 3d of *Scotland*, by a mixt title of Arms, and purchaſe. After which times it was ſometime *Engliſh* ſometimes *Scottiſh*, as their fortunes varied; till in the end, and about the year 1340. *William Montacute* Earl of *Salisbury*, deſcended from the *Norwegian* Kings of *Man*, won it from the *Scots*, and ſold it to the Lord *Scrope*, who being condemned of Treaſon, *Henry* the Fourth gave it *Henry Piercy* Earl of *Northumberland*; but he alſo proving falſe to his Soveraign, it was given to the *Stanleys* now Earls of *Derby*.

The Kings of *Man* of the *Daniſh* or *Norwegian* Race.

1065	1	*Godred*, the Son of *Syrric*.
1066	2	*Fingal*, Son of *Godred*.
1066	3	*Godred* II. Son of *Harold*.
1082	4	*Lagnan*, Eldeſt Son of *Godred* the ſecond.
1089	5	*Donald*, Son of *Tado*.
1098	6	*Magnus*, King of *Norway*.
1102	7	*Olave*, the third, Son of *Godred*.
1144	8	*Godred* III. Son of *Olave*.
1187	9	*Reginald*, baſe Son of *Godred* the third.
1226	10	*Olave*, the lawful Son of *Godred* the third.
1237	11	*Harold*, Son of *Olave*.

2243 12 *Reginald* II. Brother of *Harold*.
1252 13 *Magnus* II. Brother of *Reginald*.
1266 14 *Magnus* III. King of *Norway*, the last King of *Man* of the *Danish* or *Norwegian* Race.

The Kings and Lords of *Man* of the *English* Blood.

1340 1 *William Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, King of *Man*.
1395 2 *William* Lord *Scrope*, King of *Man*.
1399 3 *Henry* Earl of *Northumberland*, King of *Man*.
1403 4 *William* Lord *Stanley*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*.
5 *John* Lord *Stanley*.
6 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*.
7 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1503 8 *Thomas* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1521 9 *Edward* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1572 10 *Henry* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
1593 11 *Ferdinando* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
12 *William* Lord *Stanley*, Earl of *Derby*.
13 *James* Lord *Stanley* Earl of *Derby*, Lord of the Isle of *Man*, now living *An.* 1648. King in effect, though but Lord in title, as having here all kind of *Civil* power and jurisdiction over the Inhabitants under the *Fife* and *Soveraignty* of the Crown of *England*, together with the nomination of the *Bishop*, whom he presents unto the King for his *Royal assent*, then to the Archbishop of *York* for his consecration. And this I take to be the reason why the Bishop of *Man* was no Lord of *Parliament*, none being admitted to that honour, but such as hold immediately of the King himself; nor was it reason that they should.

V. ANGLESEY, is an Island situate in the *Irish* Sea, over against *Carnarvonshire* in *North-Wales*, from which it is divided by a narrow Straight, which they call the *Monai*. By the *Britains* themselves, as by the *Welch* at this day, it was called *Mon*, from whence the *Romans* had their *Monai*: but being conquered by the *English*, it obtained the name of *Anglesey*, as one would say, the Island of the *English*-Men (*eye* in the *Saxon* language signifying an *Island*.) A place of such a fair revenue to the Princes of it, that *Llewellen*, the last Prince of *Wales* being stripped of almost all the rest of his Estates by King *Edward* the first, paid to that King a tribute of 1000 *per Annum* for this Island only.

And to say truth, the Island is exceeding Fruitful both in Corn and Cattel: from whence the *Welch* are liberally stored with both: and therefore it is said proverbially, *Mon Mam Cymri*, that *Anglesey* is the Mother of *Wales*. In length from East to West, about 20 miles, and 17 in breadth. Containing in that compass 74 Parishes, divided into six hundreds, & hath in it only two Market Towns: that is to say, 1 *Beaumaris*, seated on a flat or marish ground, near the *Menai*, built by King *Edward* the first to secure his Conquest: by whom well walled and fortified as the times then were. 2 *Newburg*, a Town of no great antiquity, as the name doth intimate, by the *Welch* called *Rossur*: in former times it had an Haven of some good receipt, but now choaked with sand. The other places of most note are, 3 *Aberfraw*, a small village now, but heretofore the seat Royal of the Kings of *Wales*, and 4ly, *Holyhead*, seated on a head-land or *Promontory* thrusting into the Seas, made *holy* (or thought so at least) by the religious retirement of Saint *Kuby*, or *Kibius*, one of the Disciples of St. *Hilary* of *Poictiers*; from whence by the *Welchmen* called *Caer Cuby*: of most note for the ordinary passage betwixt *Wales* and *Ireland*. Antiently this Island was the seat of the *Druides*, and brought with no small difficulty under the power of the *Romans*, by *Suetonius Paulinus*: the people fighting in other parts of *Britain* for their liberty only; but here *pro Aris & focis* too, for their *Religion*, *Liberty*, and their Gods to boot: Being deserted by the *Romans* with the rest of *Britain*, it remained in the possession of its own natural Princes, till the fatal period of that State; when added to the Crown of *England* by the puissance of King *Edward* the first, by whom made one of the shires of *Wales* as it still continues.

Not far from *Anglesey*, somewhat inclining to the South, is the Isle of *Bardsey*, by *Ptolomy* called *Edri*, by *Pliny Adros*, by the *Welch Enlhy*; extended towards the East with a rocky *Promontory*, but *rich* and *fruitful* towards the West: the retiring place of many godly and devout *Hermits* in the former times. Southwards from hence and over against St. *Davids*, are two other Islands, the one called *Selame*, plentiful of wild honey; the other named by the *Welch Lymen*, by the *English Ramsey*; thought to be the *Limni* of *Ptolomy*, the *Silimnum* of *Pliny*, but not else remarkable.

VI. THE ISLANDS OF THE SEVERN SEA are four in number; of no great note, but I must take them in my passage to the Isles of *Scilly*. Of those the first is *Flat-Holm*; for the flat and level; the 2. *Steholm*, from the steep and craggy disposition of it: both by the *Welch* called *Echni*, and both situate over against the County of *Somerset*. More towards the opening of the *Chanel*, lyeth the Isle of 3 *Chaldey* called by the *Welchmen Inis Pir*, of as small note as the other: and at the very mouth thereof the Isle of 4 *Lundey*, over against *Devonshire*, the principal Island of this Sea: extending two miles every way; of excellent pasturage, well stored with *Conies*, and great plenty of *Pigeons*. Situate a good distance from any part of the land, in the midst of the salt and brackish Ocean, and yet yieldeth many Springs of *Fresh-water* for the use of the people; inhabiting for the most part in a Town of the same name with the Island. A place of very great strength and safety; begirt about with dangerous unapproachable Rocks: and having but one way of access into it, and that so narrow that two men cannot go a breast.

VII. The Isles of SCILLY, in number 145, are situate over against the Western *Promontory* of *Cornwal*, from which distant 24 miles; and lye round together in the manner of a ring or *Circle*. Discovered first by the *Silures*, a *Phœnician* Colony in *Spain*, opposite against which they lie; thence called *Silures* by *Solinus*: much traded and resorted to by the said *Phœnicians* from the Isle of *Gades*; invited thereunto by the unexhaustible Mines of *Tinn*, which they found amongst them. A Trade so great and gainful to them that they held it a great point of State: κρύπτειν ἀπὸ τῶν πολλῶν, to keep it as a secret from all the world, as we find in *Strabo*: who adds the story of a *Carthaginian* or *Phœnician* Merchant, incountred in his voyage hither, by some *Roman* Vessels; and splitting his ship on the next shore (where he knew the *Romans* would not follow him) rather than let them know to what place he was bound; was rewarded for his honest care, and recompenced for the loss of his ships and goods, out of the publick Treasury. From this abundance of *Tin*, the *Græcians* when they came to know them, called them *Cassiterides*: (*Cassiteros* in that language signifying *Tin*) accordingly *Herodotus*, ὅτε νήσους οἶδα καττιτερίδας ἐούσας ἐκτὸς τῆς Εὐρώπης ἐμὲ φοιτᾷ, affirming that he knew not those Islands called *Cassiterides*, from whence *Tin* was brought. The richness of this commodity, the pleasures of the place, and the Western situation of them makes many of the *Græcians* call them *Hesperides*: mistaking them for the *Fortunate Islands*. By *Solinus* they are called *Silures*, as before is said, *Sigdeles* in the corrupt Copies of *Antonius*; *insulæ Silline*, by *Severus Sulpitius*: from whence we have the name of the *Isles* of *Scilly*. The

Flemings, I know not why, call them the *Sorlings*. All of them very fruitful in Corn and Herbage, besides the treasures hid within well stored with Conies, Cranes, Swans, and most sorts of wild Fowl. Ten of them more esteemed than the rest, are called by the names of 1 *Armuth*, 2 *Agnes*, 3 *Sampson*, 4 *Scilly*, 5 *Brefar*, 6 *Rusco*, 7 S. *Helens*, 8 *Arthur*, 9 S. *Maurice*, and 10 S. *Maries*: Of which the most famous in the account of former times, was that of *Scilly*, as giving name unto the rest; but in the present estimate S. *Maries* is accompted the chief of all: 8 miles in compass, fruitful of all necessaries, and fortified with a very strong Castle built by Queen *Elizabeth*; well manned and *Garrisoned*, for defence of a large and goodly Harbour made amongst these Islands, capable of the greatest Navies.

These Islands first discovered by *Hamilco* a *Carthaginian*, sent by that State to search into the West Coasts of *Europe*, became of great fame afterwards both in *Greece*, & *Italy*; by reason of the Mines of *Tinne* spoken of before: So beneficial to the *Romans*, that they used to send hither their condemned Prisoners to work in the Mines; as the best service to be done by their forfeited lives. And hither amongst others, *Justantius*, a fierce *Priscillianist*, for his factious and seditious carriage, was sent by *Maximus*; *ad Sillinam insulam ultra Britanniam deportatus*, as *Sulpitius* hath it. After the *Romans* had forsaken their hold in *Britain*, they returned again into the power and possession of the *Natives*; from whom subdued, and added unto the *English* Crown by *Athelstane* the eighth King of *England*. Now ordered for *Civil* matters, as a part of *Cornwal*; for military, by their own Captain, subordinate to the Lord *Lieutenant* of that Country; and for the *Tin-Trade*, by the Lord *Warden* and Court of *Stanneries*. An Officer and Court erected for the benefit and regulating of the *Tinners* of *Cornwal*, who by reason of their employment in these *Mines* have many priviledges and exemptions more than other Subjects: but of late limited and restrained by Act of Parliament.

VIII. The Isle of WIGHT lieth over against *Hampshire*, from which it seemeth to have been divided; the passage betwixt it and *Hurst-Castle* on the opposite shore, being very narrow; and the name of it intimating some such division. For by the *Britains* it was antiently called *Guith*, which signifieth a breach or separation, from whence the *English* have their *Wight*; the turning of *Gu.* to *W.* being familiar with the *Saxons*, and all other *Dutch* people: and from the same root probably the *Romans* had the name of *Vectis*, *Vecht*, *Wight*, and *Guith*, being words of neat resemblance, that we need not travel further for an *Etymologie*. The Island of an *Oval* form, 20 miles in length, and 12 miles broad about the midst; from thence growing narrower towards each end, to the *East* & *West*. Naturally Fenced about on all sides, on the South especially, where it looks toward *France*, on which side inaccessible by reason of the steep and craggy Rocks, the whole length thereof; and not much less safe on the North-West, where the remainder of the Rocks, (which they call the *Shingels*, and the *Needles*) not worn away either at or since the first *separation* from the other shore, make the passage dangerous; except to single Ships, and those not unacquainted with the course of the Chanel. Towards the North-east more flat and level, and therefore fortified with the two Castles of the *Cows* and *Sandham*. There is also the Castle of *Yarmouth* in the West of the Island, and that of *Garesbrook* in the midst but more towards the North) in which last there is said to be Armour for 5000 men; and in each Village (of which here are 33, besides many Market Towns) a piece of Ordnance. Yet do not all these Arms and Castles add so much to the strength of it, as the natural courage of the People; warlike and stout, and trained up unto the postures of War from their very childhood.

The soil hereof abundantly answereth the pains of the Husbandman, so plentiful of Corn, and all the fruits of good *pasturage*; that they have not only enough for themselves, but furnish the markets of *Southampton* and *Portsmouth* (but the last especially) with the greatest part of the Wheat, Flesh, Cheese, and Butter, which is spent amongst them. Insomuch that the Souldiers of *Portsmouth* presuming on the strength of the Town, have been used to say, That if *they had the Isle of WIGHT to their friend, and the Seas open, they cared not for all the world besides.* Their Sheep here of so fine a fleece, that the Wool hereof hath the second esteem next to that of *Lemster* (in the County of *Hereford*) and precedency of that of *Cotswold*.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Yarmouth*, on the North-West of the Island, seated on a convenient Haven, which is said to have some resemblance to that of *Rochel*; and that Haven defended with a strong Castle. 2 *Brading*, another Market-town. 3 *Newton*, an antient *Burrough*, and priviledged sending Burgesses to the *English Parliament*. 4 *Garesbrook*, a large Town, and neighboured with an antient Castle. 5 *Newport*, now the chief of all the Isle, called in the times past, *Medena*, afterwards *Novus Burgus de Medena*, at last *Newport*; seated upon an Arm of the Sea, capable of Ships of lesser burden to the very key; and by that means populous, well traded, and inhabited by a civil and wealthy people.

The Island first subdued to the *Romans* by the valour of *Vespasian*, (afterwards Emperor of *Rome*) in the time of *Claudius*. Extorted from the *Britains* by *Cerdick*, King of the *West-Saxons*, and by him given to *Stuffa* and *Whitgar*, two of that Nation, who had almost rooted out the old Inhabitants. It was the last Country of the *Saxons* which received the *Gospel*, and then upon compulsion too; forced to it by the power as well as the perswasion of *Cedwalla* the *West-Saxon* King. Took from the *English* in the time of the *Norman* Conquerour, by *William Fitz-Osborn* Earl of *Hereford*, who thereupon was made the first Lord thereof. From whose Family, by the gift of *Henry* the second, it passed to that of *Redvars*, or *Rivers*, (*de Riparis*) then Earl of *Devonshire*: and on failing of that House returned to the Crown in the Reign of *Edward* the first. Never so much ennobled as by *Henry* the sixth, who bearing a great affection to *Henry Beauchamp* Earl of *Warwick*, in the 23 of his Reign crowned him King of *Wight*, An. 1445. Which title ended with his life about two years after.

IX THANET, is a little Island in the North-East of *Kent*, not far from *Sandwich*, environed on three parts with the Sea; into which it shooteth with a large Promontory called the *North-fore-land*; the *Cantium* of the antient Writers: and towards the West, severed from the main land of *Kent* by the River *Stoure*, which is here called *Yenlade*, but severed so, that by the benefit of a Causey and passage for the waters in convenient places, it is united to the Continent or main Land of *Kent*. The quality, site, and figure of it, take in these old Rhythms (for I dare hardly call them Verses) extant not long since in a Window of the chief Church there, *viz.*

Insula rotunda Thanatos, quam circuit unda,
Nobilis & munda, nulli est in orba secunda.

That is to say,

Thanet is round with circling waters bound,
A neat and noble ground, none like it to be found.

Called by *Solinus*, *Athanatos*, in some Copies *Thanatos*, from whence the *Saxons* had their *Thanet*. Famous, as in

in other things, ſo in theſe particulars, that it was the place which the *Saxons* landed at, when they firſt came into *Britain*; the firſt *Livery* and *Seiſin*, which they had of the whole Kingdom, conferred upon them by the improvident bounty of *Vortiger*, to whoſe aid called in; and the landing place of *Auguſtine* the *Monk*, when he brought the Goſpel to the *Saxons*. The whole about two miles in length, and four in breadth, was reckoned to contain in thoſe times, 600 Families; now very populous for the bigneſs, and plentiful of all commodities neceſſary, but of corn eſpecially. The people generally are a kind of *Amphibii*, able to get their livings both by *Sea* and *Land*; well skilled, as well in ſteering of a ſhip at Sea, as in holding the Plough upon Land; and in both induſtrious. Of moſt note in it, 1 *Stonar*, a Port-town, the uſual landing place of the *Saxons*; more memorable for the Sepulchre of *Vortimer*, King of the *Britains*, who having vanquiſhed the *Saxons* in many battels, and finally driven them out of the Iſland, deſired to be here interred on a conceit, that his dead corps would fright them from landing any more upon theſe Coaſts. And this perhaps he did in imitation of *Scipio African*, who having had a Fortunate hand againſt thoſe of *Carthage*, gave order to have his Tomb placed towards *Africk*, to fright the *Carthaginians* from the Coaſts of *Italy*.

X. SUNDERLAND is an Iſland only at an high-water, when environed on all ſides with the Sea; at other times joined unto the Land, or of an eaſie paſſage from the one to the other: pulled by ſome tempeſt, or by the working of the Sea from the reſt of the Land: whence the name of *Sunderland*. Situate in the North-Eaſt part of the Biſhoprick of *Durham*, over againſt the influx of the River *Were*. Rich in its inexhauſtible mines of *Coal*, and for that cauſe ſeldom without the company of foreign Merchants, yet not to have been here remembred, but that it hath been thought worthy by our Soveraign Lord King *Charles*, the ſecond Monarch of Great *Britain*, to confer the title of Earl to the two Noble Families of the *Scropes* and *Spencers*; the firſt in the third year of his Reign, *An.* 1627. the ſecond in the 18th, *An.* 1642.

XI. THE HOLY ISLAND lieth upon the Coaſt of *Northumberland*, not far from *Berwick*, ſtretched out in length from Eaſt to Weſt, with a narrow point unto the Land, from thence growing broader like a wedge: fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and of great ſafety, but more Famous for what it hath been, than for what it is. In the dawning of *Chriſtianity* amongſt the *Northumbers*, made a Biſhops See, by S. *Aidanus*, one of the firſt *Apoſtles* of that potent Nation. Selected for this dignity by that godly man, for the *ſolitude* and privacy of it; which made it thought more fit and proper for *Devotion*. The name then *Lindisfarn*; but the *Religious lives* of ſo many pious Biſhops, Monks, and others of the Clergy as did there inhabit, gained it the name of *Holy Iſland*. The See continued there 353 years, that is to ſay, from the year 637, to 990, under 22 Biſhops, hence called Biſhops of *Lindisfarn*; then removed to *Durham*: the inſolencies of the *Danes*, (who then raged terribly on thoſe Coaſts) compelling them to abondon that *Religious ſolitude*.

Thus have we taken a ſurvey of the *Britiſh Iſlands*, and ſhewn by what means *Ireland* and all the *leſſer Iſlands* became united either to the Crown of *England* or *Scotland*; and thoſe two Kingdoms to each other joyned in the perſon of the ſame King, and the participation of his Favours, though different ſtill in Laws, and ſome forms of Government; as moſt of the Eſtates of *Spain*, at the preſent time. United alſo in one name, the different Appellations of *England* and *Scotland* being ſwallowed up, or incorporated rather in that of *GREAT BRITAIN*, which it pleaſed King *James* to own for his ſtile *Imperial*. And for a memory thereof, to cauſe a piece of Gold to be coined of 20 *s.* (ſince raiſed to 22 *s.*) which he called the *Unity*, ſtamped on the one ſide with his picture, and this *Inſcription*, *JACOBUS D. GR. MAGNÆ BRITANIÆ FR. ET HIBERNIÆ REX*, and on the other ſide with his Arms, crowned with this *Motto*, *FACIAM EOS IN GENTEM UNAM*. All we have now to do, is to lay down the names of thoſe puiſſant Princes, whom God hath raiſed to be

The Monarchs of *Britain*.

1602 1 *James*, the ſixth of that name, King of the *Scots*, Son of *Mary* Queen of *Scots* Daughter of *James* the fifth, the Son of *James* the Fourth, and of the Lady *Margaret*, eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the ſeventh of *England*: which *Margaret* being after married to *Archibald Douglas* Earl of *Angus*, had a Daughter named *Margaret* alſo (the only child of her Parents) married to *Matthew Stewart* Earl of *Lenox*; by whom ſhe was made the mother of *Henry* Lord *Darnley*, the Father of King *James* the ſixth, by the ſaid *Mary* Queen of *Scots*. So that King *James* deſcending from the eldeſt Daughter of *Henry* the 7th, both by Father and Mother, on the expiring of the Line of *Henry* the 8th, in the perſon of Queen *Elizabeth* of Famous memory; was the next heir to the Crown of *England*, and was accordingly with all joyful acclamations proclaimed and acknowledged King in the City of *London*, March 24. An. 1602. (according to the accompt of the Church of *England*) A learned and Religious Prince, a true *Defender of the Faith*, a *Nurſing Father of the Church*, and a lover of Learning. He dyed at *Theobalds*, March 27. 1625. having reigned 23 years, and four days over.

1625 2 *Charles*, ſecond Son of King *James*, and of *Anne* of *Denmark*, (his elder Brother *Henry* dying long before) the 63d King in deſcent from *Cerdick* King of the *Weſt-Saxons*; the 45th King of *England*, in deſcent from *Egbert*; the 24th from the *Norman* Conqueror; the 64th Monarch of the *Engliſh*, and the ſecond Monarch of *Britain*. In the beginning of his reign he married the Princeſs *Henrietta Maria*, Daughter to *Henry* the 4th, and Siſter to *Lewis* the 13th, *French* Kings; by whom bleſt with a *Royal Iſſue* of Sons and Daughters.

As for the *Forces* and *Revennes* of theſe *Britiſh* Monarchs, we cannot put the eſtimate of them in a better way, than by laying together that which hath been delivered of each ſeveral part; out of which *Items* the *ſumma totalis* of the whole both in *power* and *treaſure*, will be eaſily gathered. For though theſe Monarchs never had any occaſion, to muſter and unite the *Forces* of their ſeveral Kingdoms upon any one Action, yet by conſidering what they have been able to do divided; we may conclude of what they may do, if need be, being now united. And ſo we are to do in marſhalling the Arms of the *Britiſh* Monarchy, where are 1 Quarterly *France* and *England*, 2ly *Scotland*, 3ly *Ireland*, the Fourth as the firſt. I ſhut up this diſcourſe of the *Britiſh* Empire, with thoſe words of *Scripture* (the Motto of another of King *James* his Coins) *QUE DEUS CONJUNXIT NEMO SEPARET*.

And ſo much for *Britain*.

A TABLE OF

The Longitude and Latitude of the Chief CITIES mentioned in this *First Book*.

A.	Lon.	Lat.
Aberdene	22 20	57 20
Alcala de Henares	23 0	40 30
Alicante	28 40	39 0
Almodine	34 0	33 40
Ancona	43 10	43 50
S. Andrews	22 10	56 20
Angoleſme	27 0	46 0
Angiers	18 10	47 25
Aquilegia	42 50	46 40
Armagh	14 50	54 9
Avero	17 30	41 10
Avignion	23 40	45 50
Aux	22 40	43 50
St. Anderos	22 20	43
Aix	22 20	42 10
Arls	22 45	43 20
Amboiſe	20 35	47 35
B.		
Badaios	19 40	38 30
Baione	24 20	42 10
Baſil	28 10	48 30
Beſanſon	26 30	47 30
Bilbao	23 30	41 10
Baben in Switzerl.	31	48 44
Blavet	21 15	47 50
Bononia	35 50	43 33
Breſt	20	48 50
Bath	20 56	51 20
Bragance	6	45
Barwick	22 43	55 48
Barcelone	17 15	41 36
Burdeaux	18	45 10
Burges	24 10	48 20
C.		
Cambridge	23 25	52 10
Calice	26 2	52
Canterbury	24 50	51 16
Cartena	28 20	38 20
Cane	21	50 5
Carlile	21 31	52 57
Cheſter	20 23	53 11
Chicheſter	26 10	51
Clermont	30 15	45 50
Chur	32	42
Cork	15 40	41 40
Corduba	9 4	37 50
Conimbre	5 45	50 19
Compoſtella	17 15	44 18
Coventry	25 52	52 23
D.		
Diepe	28 40	49 30
Digion	25 45	47
Dole	28 3	49 5
Dover	26 10	51
Dublin	16 40	54 27
Dunbritton	19 24	57 10
Durham	22	54 55
E.		
Edenburgh	22	55 50
Embrum	28	44
Elie	25 20	52 40
Exeter	22 10	51
F.		
Florence	41 10	43 40
Ferrara	44	36
Fayal		48 40
G.		
Geneva	33 40	46 20
Galway	13 17	54 6
Gloceſter	19	53
Gades	15 10	37
Granada	11	37 50
Croine	16 50	43 20
Genoa	37 50	45 0
Grenoble	27	45 30
H.		
S. Hillary in Guerneſey.	22 20	49 40
Hull	25 20	53 40
I.		
Leon	21 10	42 15
Lisbon	9 10	38 30
Lions	23 15	45 10
Lincoln	22 15	53 12
London	23 25	5 33
Luca	42 10	40
Ligorn	40 20	43 30
M.		
Majorca	39 50	33
Malaga	23 50	37 22
Marſeilles	24 30	43 16

S. Male

	Lon.	Lat.
S. Malo	19	49
Medina Cæli	23 30	41 10
Millaine	38 30	46 10
Modena	41 50	35 40
Montpelier	25 30	44 10
Montalban	23	45
Meſſana	45 50	37 50
Minorca	40 30	40 0
N.		
Naples	46	39 30
Nantes	24 10	47 10
Narbon	30 20	43 20
Nevers	25	47
Newcaſtle	22 30	54 57
Niſmes	26	44 2
Norwich	24 55	52 40
O.		
Oleron	24 30	45 30
Orleans	28 30	48 0
Orange	26 20	43 20
Oxford	22	51 20
Otranto	49 30	40 20
P.		
Pampelun	24 30	43 30
Paris	23 30	48 40
Pavie	44 1	35 5
Padua	44 45	36 29
Parma	39 20	45 10
Peſcara	43 0	30 10
Palermo		
Peragia	42 20	43 10
Peter-port in Jerſey	23 0	49 20
Piſa	40 30	43 40
Placentia	20 40	40 0
Poictiers	26 30	47
R.		
Ravenna	41 20	44 20
Rhemes	25 25	48 30
Remes	19	48
Rochel	18 15	45 50
Rome	42 30	42
Roven	23 40	48 50
Rhezo	47 0	38 20
S.		
Salisbury	18 3	51 10
Saluenca	8 5	40 15
Saragoſſa	24 15	41 45
Sevil	7 15	37
Sion, or Sittia	29	45
Stirling	20 10	56 20
Stena	42 20	36 16
Siguenca	18 2	
Syracuſe.	40 30	37 30
T.		
Turantaiſe	29	45
Tarragon	28 30	38 20
Tholouſe	28 40	43 10
Toledo	16 20	39 40
Trieſte	44 10	46 10
Tredah	16 34	54 10
Turin	31 30	43 45
Tarentum	48 0	40 30
V.		
Valadolid	16 10	42 5
Valentia	19 20	39 4
Venice	41 40	45 50
Verona	40 40	45 50
Viterbo	41 50	42 4
W.		
Weymouth	23 50	51
Wincheſter	22	52
Wexford	16 42	53
Y.		
Yarmouth	27 30	53 0
York	22 25	54 18
Z.		
Zurick	30 20	47

The End of the Firſt Book.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Russia, Poland, Hungary, Sclavonia, Dacia, and *Greece,* with the *Isles* thereof,

---

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

TACIT. HIST. LIB. 4.

Humanarum rerum possessionem Trans-alpinis *gentibus portendi,* Druidæ *canebant.*

SENEC. de Consolat. ad ALBINUM.

Quotidie aliquid in hoc magno Orbe mutatur; Nova Urbium fundamenta jaciuntur, nova Gentium nomina extinctis nominibus prioribus, oriuntur.

LONDON,

Printed by *J. Macock,* for *Philip Chetwind* and *Anne Seile,* MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

Belgia, Germany, Denmark, Switzland, Italie, Poland, Hungary,
Sclavonia, Tartaria, and Greece, with the Iles thereof.

By PETER HEYLIN.

Tacit. Hist. Lib. 4.

Haud dubium erat pollicitum Trans-alpinis gentibus pectora, Druidæ carolum.

Sueto. de Conjurat. ad Augustum.

Quidlibi affingit in hoc utique Orbe mutato; Novæ Urbium Fundationes, Incolarum
novæ Gentilitiæ nomina exitusque mortalibus prioribus, ornatur.

LONDON,

Printed by J. G. M. for Philip Chetwind and
Octavian Pulle, MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Second Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

Belgium, Germany, Denmark, Swethland, Muscovy, Poland, Hungary, Dalmatia, Dacia, Greece, with the *Isles* thereof.

OF

BELGIUM.

HAving pursued the Fortunes of the *Roman* Empire through the four Western Dioceses or Divisions of it, wholly subdued to the command of that conquering State: let us next look on those Countries which lay farther North, and either never felt the force of the *Roman* Armies, or were but conquered in part, or else were reckoned as the members of some greater Province. Of this last sort was all that Tract which is now called *Belgium*, or the *Netherlands*, bounded on East with *Westphalen*, *Gulick*, *Cleve*, and the land of *Triers*, Provinces of the higher *Germany*; on the West with the main Ocean, which divides it from *Britain*; on the North with the River *Ems*, which parts it from *East-Friesland*; on the South with *Picardie* and *Champagne*, two *French* Provinces; upon the South-east with the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.

By the *Latines* (especially of these last times) it is called *Belgium*, from the *Belgæ*, the most potent people of all these parts; and sometimes also *Germania inferior* or the *Lower Germany*, (in the same sense as by the *English* it is called the *Low Countries* and the *Netherlands*) from their low situation, and the conformity which they have with the *Germans* in Laws, Languages, Customs and Manners;

ners. By some it hath been called by the aggregate name of *the Seventeen Provinces*, from the like number of several and distinct Estates united under the Command of the King of *Spain*. The more peculiar name is *Flanders*, which, though but one of the Seventeen Provinces, hath yet given denomination to all the *Netherlands*; the people of which were once generally called by the name of *Flemmings*: and that either for the power of that Province, in regard of the others; or by reason of the great Trade and Traffick formerly driven at the Fairs or Marts of *Bruges* (a Town thereof) by the Merchants of all parts of *Europe*; or in respect that lying nearer than the rest to *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *England*, that name was better known and took notice of. But this was when the whole Country was under the command of many Princes, of which the Earls of *Flanders* were esteemed most potent. And though this name continued also after the incorporating of most of these Provinces in the House of *Burgundy*, at which time they were called the *Estates* of *Flanders*: yet since the falling off of *Holland* and the rest of the *United Provinces* from the Kings of *Spain*, it hath lost this honour, the name of *Flanders* being now restrained within narrower bounds.

But for the name of *Belgium*, though I find that name most current amongst the *Latines* of this Age, yet I see little reason for it. For first, old *Belgium* contained in it many fair and large Estates which are not now within the compass of these *Belgick* Provinces; that is to say, the Dukedoms of *Lorrain*, *Berg*, *Juliers*, and a great part of *Cleve*, the Bishopricks of *Triers*, *Mentz* and *Colen*, and so much of the Kingdom of *France* as takes up all *Picardy*, with parts of *Champagne* and of *France* specially so called. Secondly, *Gallia Belgica* extended somewhat farther yet, comprehending a great part of the Lower *Palatinate*, all *Elsass*, the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*. And thirdly, the whole Provinces of *West-Friesland*, *Groening*, *Over-Yssel*, *Zutphen*, together with all *North-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lieth on the farther side of the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, were never accounted of as parts of either *Belgium* or of *Gallia Belgica*, (though now within the compass of the *Belgick* Provinces) but as parts of *Germany*; clearly without the limits of the ancient *Gaul*, of which Body *Belgium* was a limb or member in the *Roman* estimate.

As for the *Belgæ*, from whence we have the names of *Belgium* and *Gallia Belgica*, they were originally *Germans*, who driving out the *Gauls*, planted themselves within the *Rhene*; esteemed by *Cæsar* to be the valiantest of the *Gallick* Nations for these three reasons. 1 They were the farthest from *Provence*, where the *Roman* Civilities and more affable course of life was embraced. 2 They dwelt on a Sea not then frequented by Merchants; and so wanted those allurements to Effeminacy which are in Countries of traffick. 3 They bordered on the *Germans*, a warlike Nation, with whom they were continually in Arms. This people seeing the prosperous success of *Cæsar*'s Victories in *Gaul*, joined together in a League, and mustered an Army of 269000 Fighting men against him. But seeing they could not draw him out of his Fortresses, they retired again, and that in such disorder, that three Legions (for no more was *Cæsar*'s Army) put them to an infinite slaughter. After this, *Cæsar*, fighting against them severally, overcame them all; and made their Country, and the Country of the bordering *Germans*, whom he also vanquished, subject unto the *Roman* Empire. By *Constantine* the Great it was made part of the Dioceſs of *Gallia*, and by him cast into five Provinces: that is to say, 1 *Belgica Prima*, containing the Dukedom of *Lorrain* and the Land of *Triers*, the Metropolis whereof was *Triers*; 2 *Belgica Secunda*, comprehending *Artois*, *Picardy*, and the Country of *Cambray*, with parts of *Champagne* and *France* special, of which the Metropolis was *Rhemes*; 3 *Germania Prima*, comprehending *Alsatia*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the Bishoprick of *Mentz*, the Metropolitan City of that Province; 4 *Germania Secunda*, containing *Cleveland*, *Brabant*, *Gelderland*, *Utrecht*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, and the land of *Colen*, which last was honoured with the title of Metropolitan; 5 *Maxima Sequanorum*, so called of the *Sequani*, the old Inhabitants thereof, containing the whole County of *Burgundy*, and so much of *Switzerland* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, of which *Besancon* was the Mother-City. But at this time none of the Provinces above specified are comprehended under the accompt and name of *Belgium*, but such as were possessed in these later Ages by the House of *Burgundy*; some petty Seigniouries and Estates which properly do belong to *Germany* being added to it: that is to say, the Lordship of *West-Friseland*, given to the Earls of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald; the Earldom of *Zutphen*, united unto that of *Gelders* by Earl *Otho* of *Nassau*; and finally the Estate of *Groening*, *Over-Yssell*, and some part of *Utrecht*, by *Charles* the fifth. Under which name and notion we do now consider it.

And taking it according to this name and notion, it is in compass 1000 *Italian*, or 250 *German* miles; and is situated in the Northern temperate Zone, under the 7. 8. and 9. Climates: the longest day in the midst of the 7th Climate, where it doth begin, being 16 hours; in the beginning of the 9th Climate increased to 16 hours three quarters, or near 17 hours. The Air in these later days is grown more wholesom than formerly; partly by the wonderful increase of the Inhabitants, and partly by the incredible industry of the people, who, by draining the Marishes, and converting the standing waters into running Streams have purged the Air of many gross and unhealthy Vapours, which did thence usually arise in times foregoing.

The Country is very populous, containing well-nigh three millions of souls; the men being for the most part well-proportioned, great lovers of our English Beer, unmindful both of good turns and injuries, of good wit for inventing, and of a most indefatigable industry for perfecting the rarest Manufactures. For unto them we are indebted for the making of Cloth, which we learnt of the *Flemmings*; as also for *Arras*-hangings, *Dornix* Clocks, Watches, and the perfection of the Mariner's Compass. They restored Musick, and found out divers Musical Instruments, being naturally good Musicians, & generally so given unto it, and so perfect in it, that therefore (till the Art of Musick grew more common) there were not many Great-Mens houses which had not Musicians to teach their Children. To them belongeth also the invention of Chariots, the laying on of Colours with Oyl, the working of Pictures in Glass, and the making of Worsteds, Seyes and Tapestries; the making of which and other Stuffs, being driven out of their Country by the Duke of *Alva*, they first taught the *English*. The Women generally are of good complection, well-proportioned, especially in the Leg and Foot, honourers of Vertue, active, and familiar. Both within doors, and without they govern all: which, considering the natural desire of Women to *bear rule*, maketh them too imperious and burthensom.

They use for the most part the *German* and *Dutch* Language, with a little difference in the Dialect. But in the Provinces adjoining to *France*, that is to say, *Luxemburg*, *Namur*, *Artois*, *Hainault*, and some parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, they use the *French*; but the same very corruptly and imperfectly, by reason of that mixture which it hath

hath of the *Dutch* or *German*, yet so, that one may easily discern those people to be *French* originally, or some remainder of the old *Gauls*, mastered by the *French*, but not rooted out: from their Language or first Original called to this day by the name of *Wallons*, the *Germans* usually changing *G* into *W*, as *Warre* for *Guerre*, *Warden* for *Guardian*, and in the like cases *Wales* for *Galles*, I know there is another Etymology of the name of *Wallons*, some making them to be of the *Burgundian* race, who, at their first passing over the *Rhene*, enquired their way of the Countrey-people in these words, *Ou allons*, i.e. *Whither go we?* which being oft repeated by them, occasioned them to be called *Wallons*: A trim invention doubtless, but of no solidity, nor to be farther honoured with a confutation.

The Country in those parts which lie towards *Germany*, especially on the South-east bordering upon *Cleveland* and *Lorrain*, is somewhat swelled with Hills and over-shaded with Woods, the relicks of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once took up a great part thereof: But towards the West and North, where it joins to the Sea, it is plain and level, full of Flats and Marishes, affording very little Corn, but abounding in Pasturage, which yields a great increase of Butter and Cheese, good store of Beeves, and Horses of more than ordinary bigness. By reason of which low and level situation, and the ill neighbourhood of a troublesom and unruly Sea, it hath been formerly much subject to Inundations; insomuch as in the time of King *Henry* the 2. *Flanders* was so overflown, that many thousands of people, whose dwellings the Sea had devoured, came into *England* to beg new seats, and were by that King first placed in *Yorkshire*, and then removed to *Pembrokshire*. Since that, it hath in *Zeland* swallowed eight of the Islands, and in them 300 Towns and Villages: many of whose Churches and strong buildings are at a dead low water to be seen. And as once *Ovid* said of *Helice* and *Buris*, Cities of *Achaia*, so may we of these;

Invenies sub aquis, & adhuc ostendere nautæ
Inclinata solent cum mœnibus oppida versis:

That is to say,

The waters hide them, and the Sailors show
The ruin'd Walls and Steeples as they row.

The chief Commodities which they vent into their Countries are Linen, Scarlets, Worsted, Seyes, Silks, Velvets, and the like rich Stuffs; together with great quantities of Armour, Ropes, Cables, Butter, Cheese, &c. Of which, excepting Cheese and Butter, there is nothing of the natural growth of the Country: the rest being Manufactures which they make out of such materials as they fetch out of Foreign Regions. But the Commodity which yieldeth them most benefit is that of Fish, not caught upon their own Coast neither, but either in the Northern Seas or the coast of *England*: the very Herings which they cast on the shoars of *England* (to the no small dishonour of the *English* Nation) bringing them a Revenue (besides what is pursed up by the Adventurers) of 440000 pounds *per annum*; and that of Cod-fish, which they catch on the Coasts of *Friesland*, amounting to 150000 *l.* sterling yearly.

Captains of note and eminence it hath bred but few, the people living till of late in perpetual peace. The chief of those whose names have been transmitted to us are, 1. *Civilis*, a Prince of the *Batavians*, for subtilty of wit compared to *Hannibal* and *Sertorius*; of which in the long War against the *Romans*, in the time of *Vespasian*, he gave very good proof. In the middle times, 2. *William* Earl of *Holland*, elected Emperour of *Germany*. 3. *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. 4. *Philip* the Good, and 5. *Charles* the Warlike, Dukes of *Burgundy*. 6. *Charles* the Fifth Emperour and King of *Spain*: And of late times the Princes of the House of *Nassau* and *Orange*, transplanted hither in the Regency of *Maximilian* out of higher *Germany*. And, to say truth, their Genius doth not lie so much for Land-service as it doth for the Seas; in which they have been very Famous, and not less fortunate. For of this Nation was *Oliver Vander Noordt*, the Fourth that compassed the world; *Jacob le Maire*, the first Discoverer of the Streight or *Fretum* which now beareth his name; besides divers others. And generally the people are so expert in Navigation, (especially those bordering on or near the Coasts) that they seem born for and to the Seas: many of which, being born on Ship-board and bred up at Sea, know no other Country, and brook the Land as ill as a Fish doth the dry ground. Which natural inclination to it, and the necessity they have of employing themselves that way, (the Country not being otherwise able to provide sustenance for those multitudes of men which it doth abound with) hath so exceedingly increased their Shipping, that it is thought that they are masters of more Vessels of all sorts, taking one with another, than almost all the rest of *Europe*.

Scholars of note it hath bred many. 1. *Erasmus*, the great restorer of Learning in these parts of the World. 2. *Justus Lipsius*, as eminent a reviver of the *Latin* Elegancies. 3. *Joseph Scaliger*, the Son of *Julius*, ὁ πᾶν πεπαιδευμένος, a man not to be followed in all parts of Learning; but of equal Arrogance. 4. *Rudulphus Agricola*. 5. *Levinus Lemnius*. 6. 7. *Janus Dousa*, the Father and the Son. 8. *Abraham Ortelius*, and 9. *Gerard Mercator*, the Geographers. 10. *Geo. Cassander*, 11. Dr. *James Hermin*. 12. *Gerard Vossius*, eminent Divines. And 13. *Hugo Grotius*, of as great parts (but seasoned with more modesty and moderation) as the famous *Scaliger*. 14. *Jansenius*, and 15. *Pamelius*, two right Learned Men, but of the *Pontifician* party.

As much unfortunate it hath been in some wretched Hereticks, in none more than in *David George*, born at *Delf* in *Holland*, who called himself *Christ* and King immortal. Flying from *Delf* to *Basil* with his wife and children, *An.* 1545. he there taught his Doctrine, *viz.* 1. That the Law and Gospel were unprofitable for the attaining of Heaven; but his Doctrine able to save such as received it. 2. That he was the true *Christ* and *Messias*. 3. That he was not to restore the House of *Israel* by Death or Tribulation, but by Love and Grace of the Spirit. 4. That he had been till that present kept in a place unknown to all the Saints. And that this last Point might obtain the easier credit amongst the people, he bound his Disciples, first, to conceal his Name; secondly, not to reveal of what Condition he had been; thirdly, not to discover the Articles of the Doctrine to any man in *Basil* without his permission. But for all this great care of his, within three days after his death (which happened in the year 1556.) his Doctrines, being made known, were condemned by the Senate and Church of *Basil*, his Goods confiscate, and his Bones most deservedly taken up and burnt. Of somewhat less impiety, but of no less phrensie, was 2. *John* of *Leyden*, (another Town of the same Province) who from a Tailor was made King of the Anabaptists, when they had raged in *Munster*, and there we shall hear farther of him. 3. *Cappinus*, and 4. *Quintinus*, both *Flemmings*, the joint Authors and Co-founders of the Sect of the Libertines.

The

The Christian Religion was planted in several Provinces by several men: in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *Friesland*, by *Willibrode* an *English* man, the first Bishop of *Utrecht*, whence by degrees it gained on the rest of the Country; these being the first people of the *Franks*, or *Germans*, converted totally to the Gospel. In tract of time it fell from the Primitive Purity, participating of the Errors and Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; from which when they desired to reclaim themselves, they were therein opposed by the King of *Spain* and his Ministers. Hence the beginning of the Troubles; enlarged afterwards on pretence of Civil rights invaded and infringed by the *Spaniard*'s affecting a more absolute Dominion over them than their Laws admitted. At this time, as the Country doth stand divided betwixt the *States* and the *Spaniards*, so stands it with Religion also: the *Spaniard* permitting only the Religion of the Church of *Rome* within the Provinces and Estates under his command; and the *States General* indulging the free use of all Religions (even the very *Jews*) but countenancing only that of the Reformed Churches, according to the Platform laid down by *Calvin*.

Chief Forests of this Country are, 1. That of *Ardenne*, which in the time of *Cæsar* extended from the banks of *Rhene* as far as *Tournay* one way, and *Champagne* another way, and was in compass 500 miles in the least accompt. In which circuit there were comprehended the Southern parts of *Brabant* and *Flanders*, all *Limbourg*, *Luxemberg*, *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and *Hainault*; together with the Land of *Gulick* in the higher *Germany*, as some Writers say. At this time, though the greatest of all *Gaul Belgick*, it reacheth but from *Liege*, to *Theonville*, 30 leagues in length: and yet not all that Woodlands neither, though within the Verge of the Forest; there being much Tillage and many Villages in that tract of ground, the principal of which is the Town of S. *Hubert*, situate almost in the midst of it. 2. *Niepe*, and 3. *Nonuen*, in the Earldom of *Flanders*; the first extending to the banks of the River *Lis*, the other coming up close to *Ypres*. 4. *Pondsberg*, in the Confines of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, near unto *Mont Gerard*. All these were parts of this great Forest of *Ardenne*, which once overshadowed all this Country. 5. *Normault*, in *Hainault*, in which is much Char-coal made; supposed for that reason to be a part of that Forest which the old *French* called *La Charboniere*. 6. *Echterwald*, in *Gelderland*, near *Arnham*, &c.

The chief Rivers are, 1. *Rhene*, which ariseth out of two Springs in the *Lepontian Alpes* amongst the *Grisons*, united into one stream near *Chur*: thence passing by the Cities of *Constance*, *Basil*, *Spire*, *Wormes*, *Mentz*, and *Colen*, it is again divided about the confines of *Gelderland* into four Branches or Chanels. Of which the first is called the *Wael*, which runing through *Gelderland* by *Nimmegen* and *Bommel*, loseth it self in the *Maes*. The second, which keeps the name of the *Rhene*, passeth by *Arnhem*, from thence in a contracted chanel to *Utrecht*, and so through *Holland* unto *Leyden*. The third, called the *Leck*, taketh his course through the Provinces of *Utrecht* and *Holland*, and so into the Sea betwixt *Dort* and *Rotterdam*. And the fourth, called the *Yssel*, which passing by the Towns of *Zutphen* and *Deventer* betwixt *Gelderland* and *Over-Yssel*, emptieth it self into the Ocean near *Amsterdam*. And of these Branches I have given the exacter reckoning, partly because the course of that famous River is otherwise not easie to be observed; and partly because the knowledge of a great part of these *Provinces* dependeth on the knowledge of the course of this River, it being the middle branch of the *Rhene* (that which goeth by *Leyden*) which anciently divided *Germany* from *Gallia Belgica*. A River of such reputation in the ancient times, that into it the old *Belgæ* used to cast the children which they suspected to be illegitimate: For were they born of lawful bed, they floated on the waters; if of unlawful, they sank immediately. Whereunto *Claudian* alluding saith, *Nascentes explorat gurgite Rhenus*. But the great searcher of Antiquities, *Verstegan*, is of opinion, that thereby they only inured their Children to hardness, and made trial of their strength; Adultery being rarely found among them, and so these kinds of experiments needless. 2. *Mosa*, the *Maes*, as the *Dutch* or the *Meuse*, as the *French* men call it, which springing from the Mountains of *Vauge* in the confines of *Lorrain*, and not far from the Fountains of the *Seine* and *Marne*, runneth through *Lorrain*, *Luxemburg*, *Luyckland* and *Namur*; from thence by *Ruremond* and *Venlo*, two known Towns of *Gelderland*, where turning towards the West, it taketh in a part of the *Rhene*, and from thence passing by *Maestricht*, divides *Brabant* from *Holland*, watering the Town of *Grave* in the one, and of *Dort* in the other; and falleth into the Sea not far from *Brill* with so great a violence, that the waters of it for a long space do continue fresh. 3. *Ems*, in *Latine* called *Amisius*, dividing the two *Frieselands*; of which more in *Germany*. 4. *Scaldis*, which arising in *Picardy*, and running through *Artois*, and between *Hainault* and *Brabant*, meeteth with the Sea a little above *Antwerp*. And 5. *Lis* or *Ley*, which runneth quite through *Flanders*. Besides which Rivers, and others of inferiour note, (which we shall meet withal in their proper places) here are great store of Lakes, Pools and Marishes, which do both fortifie the Country, and provide it of Fish: besides many navigable Chanels, made by the hand of man from one River to another, for the convenience of passage, and the more easie transport of their Commodities.

The Shoar of this Country hath been much worn out by the Sea, especially that of the Islands of *Zeland*, and such as lie scattered about *Holland*; where they are defended with Banks and Ramperts, painfully made, and chargeably maintained. These Banks are about ten ells in height, and twenty five in breadth at the bottom. They are made of the hardest clay that may be gotten; in the inside stuffed with wood and stone, on the outside covered with mats strong and thick made.

The former Inhabitants were divers, and were as differently disposed of in their several Countries. That is to say, the *Atrebates* in the greatest part of *Artois*; the *Morini* in the rest of *Artois*, and those parts of *Flanders* which make up the *Imperial* and *Dutch Flanders*; the *Nervii* in *Hainault*, *Namur*, and *Flanders Gallicant*; the *Batavi* in *South-Holland*, and so much of *Gelderland* and *Utrecht* as lies on the South-side of the *Rhene*, with the *Menapii* intermixt in the Dukedom of *Gelders*; the *Mattiaci* in the Isles of *Zeland*; the *Aduatici* and part of the *Tongri* in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, with parts of the *Treviri* in *Luxemburg*, and of the *Eburones* in *Luyckland* and the Dukedom of *Limbourg*: all which were *Belgick* Nations, and therefore anciently accompted of as parts of *Gallia*. Then on the Northern side of the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* there dwelt the *Frisii minores* in *North-Holland*, and so much of the District of *Utrecht* as lies on the farther side of that chanel; the *Frisii majores* in *West-Friesland* and the State of *Groning*; some parts of the *Sicambri* in the Earldom of *Zutphen* and the rest of *Gelderland*, with part of the *Bructeri* in *Over-Yssel*: all *German* Nations, and properly not within the reckoning of *Gallia Belgica*. Those which passed under the accompt and name of *Belgæ* being subdued, together with other Tribes of that numerous Nation, by the valour and good fortune of *Julius Cæsar*, continued subject to the *Romans*,

Romans, without any notable *disturbance* unto their *affairs* but the *Rebellion* raised against them by *Civilis* Prince of the *Batavians* in the time of *Vespasian*. In the declining of the *Empire* they were possessed by the *French*, under whom they made a part of the Kingdom of *Metz* or *Ostenreich*, united by *Childerick* the third to the rest of *France*, and made a member of that Kingdom; as they continued till the time of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. In the division of whose Empire amongst his Children, the Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* being laid to *France*, the residue of these Countries on this side of the *Rhene* made up a special part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*. Those on the farther side of the middle Chanel of that River, being *German* Nations, gained to the vast Empire of the *French* by *Charles* the Great, in the division of the spoil spoken of before fell to the share of *Lewis* surnamed the Ancient, the first King of *Germany*, and after his decease to his Successours in that Estate, whether Kings or Emperours. And so we have the whole divided betwixt the three great Kings, of *France*, *Lorraign*, and *Germany*; by what means subdivided into lesser parcels, (no fewer than nineteen in all) we shall see anon.

In the mean time we are to know, that in the beginning of the *French* Conquests in the rest of *Gallia*, there started up in *Belgica* two great Estates, founded by *Auberon*, *Regnault* and *Ranchaire*, Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*; who being disherited of their Father's Kingdom by *Merove* Master of his Horse, to whose Tuition and Guardianship they had been committed, betook themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne*, and the Countries on the banks of the River *Moselle*; where they founded the two great Earldoms from thence denominated. That of *Ardenne* (for of the Earldom of *Moselle* we shall speak elsewhere) contained part of the modern *Flanders*, and some part of *Brabant*, together with all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limburg*, *Luxemburg*, and the Dukedom of *Bouillon*. Grown to this greatness by the withdrawing of the *French* forces into richer Conquests, and the dismembring of that Empire into many Kingdoms, and trusting too much to that greatness, they drew upon *themselves* the jealousie of those mightier Princes; occationing *Clotaire* the second to give their Country unto *Dagobert* his eldest Son, then King of *Metz*, whom he furnished with convenient Forces for the conquest of it; *Brunulph*, the then Prince hereof, being by him discomfited and slain in Battel. By *Sigebert*, who succeeded his Father *Dagobert* in the *Kingdom* of *Metz*, the Earldom of *Hainault* is taken out of it, and given to *Albert*, one of the youngest Sons of *Brunulph*. By *Dagobert* himself, succeeding in the Realm of *France*, (and whilest he lived sole King of the *French*) the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, formerly belonging to these Princes, were dismembred from it, and laid unto two new Estates of his own erecting. And probable it is, that either to weaken this great House, or to comply with the ill Customs of those times, the Earldom of *Namur* might be taken out of it at the same time also, for the portion of some other of the younger Brethren. The rest of the Estate, with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne*, remained unto the eldest Son: whose posterity, notwithstanding this great diminution, grew to such esteem, that *Judith*, the Widow of *Buin*, and Sister of *Boson*, Earls of *Ardenne*, was thought a fit Wife for *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperour, by whom (the more to honour his Family) the said *Boson* was created King of *Arles* and *Burgundy*. During the Empire of *Otho* the first, the Earldom of *Luxemburg* was divided from it, and given to *Sigefride*, one of the younger Sons of *Ricuine* the preceding Prince; and so perhaps was *Limburg* also for another of them. The rest remained to *Godfrey* the eldest Son, who by *Matilda*, a Daughter to *Otho* the second, was Father of another *Godfrey*, who succeeded after *Charles* and *Otho*, the third Duke of *Lorrain*: that Dukedom being ever since enjoyed by the House of *Ardenne*, and there we shall hear farther of it. This said, and so much of the Story opened as concerns the general, we will proceed to a particular Survey of the modern *Belgium*, divided at the present into seventeen Provinces, besides the two great Bishopricks of *Liege* and *Cambray*; which being always under the protection of the *Belgick* Princes, partakers of their fortunes, either good or ill, and lying intermixt among their Estates, shall have their turn in the description of these Countries, divided generally

into
- 2 Bishopricks, { 1 *Liege* or *Luyck*, 2 *Cambray*.
- 4 Dukedoms, { 1 *Limbourg*, 2 *Luxemburg*, 3 *Gelderland*, 4 *Brabant*.
- 1 Marquisate, viz. of the Holy Empire.
- 7 Earldoms, { 1 *Flanders*, 2 *Artois*, 3 *Hainault*, 4 *Namur*, 5 *Zutphen*, 6 *Holland*, 7 *Zeland*.
- 5 Baronies, { 1 *West-Friesland*, 2 *Utrecht*, 3 *Over-Issel*, 4 *Machlin*, 5 *Groening*.

Of these nineteen, two only did acknowledge the Sovereignty of the Kings of *France*, viz. *Flanders* and *Artois*; the Earls whereof were Homagers unto that *Crown*, but seldom did descend so low as to do their Homage, quitted at last to *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, and his Successors, by King *Henry* the second of *France*, in the Treaty at *Cambray*, *Anno* 1558. The rest were held originally of the *German* Empire, and by *Maximilian* Emperour of *Germany*, and Regent of those Countries for his Son *Philip*, (who had a purpose to subject them to the Empire again) were made the tenth Circle of the Empire, called the *Circle of Burgundy*. But neither since, nor before that time, would the Princes of the House of *Burgundy* acknowledge any such subjection, but governed these Estates as absolute Princes, without relation to the Empire, or Subordination to the Emperour or Imperial Officers; never appearing at the Diets, nor contributing to any Taxes there imposed, nor holding themselves bound by any Constitutions which were made therein. So that these several Relations being out of use, we must behold it at this time as it stands divided betwixt the *Spaniards* and the *States*: beginning first with those Provinces which belong to the *Spaniard*, the true Proprietary of the whole; and therein first with *Flanders*, as of most esteem.

1. *FLANDERS*, and 2. *ARTOIS*.

THese two I have thought fit to join together, because at first but one Estate; and though divided for a time, yet after five or six Descents again united, and have so continued ever since.

1. *FLANDERS* is bounded on the East with *Hainault* and *Brabant*, on the West with the *English* or *German* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland* and a branch of the *Scheld*, and on the South with part of *Picardy* in *France*, interposing betwixt *Calice* and *Gravelling*. So called, as some say, à *Flando*, because it lieth open to the winds; as others say, from *Flandbert*, the Son of *Blesinda*, Daughter of *Cladion*, the second King of the *French*. Some fetch it from a Town of this name, situate in that part of the Country where now *Ardenburg* stands; so long since ruined, that very few except themselves could ever hear of it: and others (which I think most

moſt probable) from *Flandrina* the Wife of *Lideric* the ſecond, the firſt who governed in theſe parts by the name of *Foreſter*.

The Soil is indifferently fruitful in Corn and Paſture; the Air healthful, temperate and pleaſant. The whole Country not in length above 90 miles, and in breadth but 60, and yet containing in that compaſs above thirty Cities, (for they reckon all Cities which be walled) and 1154 Villages, which ſtand ſo thick, (as needs they muſt in ſo narrow a compaſs) that the *Spaniards*, at their firſt coming in with King *Philip* the ſecond, took the whole Province for one Town. Divided commonly into 1 *Imperialem*, 2 *Gallicam*, and 3 *Teutonicam*; or 1 *Flanders Imperial*, 2 *Flanders Gallicant*, and 3 *Flanders Flammengant*.

1 *FLANDERS FLAMMENGANT*, which is the greateſt of the three, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Imperial Flanders* and the River *Scheld*, on the Weſt with the *Engliſh* Ocean, on the North with the Seas of *Zeland*, and on the South with *Artois* and *Flanders Gallicant*. The chief Towns of it, 1 *Caunt*, in *Latine* called *Gandavum*, ſeven miles in compaſs; but taking in the Suburbs, which are great and large, the whole circuit is ten miles at leaſt. One of the greateſt Cities of *Europe* for extent of ground, but not ſo populous as many of a leſs capacity; there being much waſte ground even within the Walls. Commodiouſly ſeated on the banks of the *Scheld* and the *Ley*, both which run through it, and make in it 26 Iſlands, joined together with 98 Bridges: and had not her many Seditions ruinated her Beauties, ſhe might have been the Queen of *Europe*. In this Town were born *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, commonly called *John* of *Gaunt*, and *Charles* the fifth Emperour, and King of *Spain*: which laſt, to reſtrain the people from their old Seditions, which had been very troubleſom to his Predeceſſors, (the *Gauntois* taking on them many times to rule and over-rule their Princes) built a ſtrong Citadel in the place where ſtood the Abby of Saint *Bavons*. For Churches, Monaſteries, and other places of Devotion, there were numbred in it 55, all of them anſwerable to the grandeur and renown of the City; the private Buildings being alſo very ſtately, if not majeſtical. But now it is much fallen from its former glories, the often Seditions of this people drawing upon themſelves the vengeance of their angred Princes; and their Wealth much empaired by the long Wars, and the diverſion of their Trading by the *Hollanders*, who command the Seas. 2 *Bruges*, or *Brugge*, more within the land. A Town that hath neither Port nor River, yet formerly of ſuch Wealth, and the people in thoſe times ſo willing to ſhew it, that Queen *Joan*, the Wife of *Philip* the Fair, having been there, and marked the pomp of the Women, complained that *She was not Queen alone*. The Town of four miles circuit within the Walls, wonderfully well peopled; the Buildings fair & ſumptuous, (amongſt which 60 Churches and Religious houſes) the Streets large and ſtraight, and a ſpacious Market-place, from which the 6 principal Streets of the City do paſs directly on to as many Gates, which is very pleaſant to behold. And though the Town hath neither Port nor River, as before was ſaid, yet was it anciently of ſo great Trading, that it was accounted one of the four Mart-Towns of Chriſtendom; flouriſhing chiefly by the benefit of the *Engliſh* Cloth, and ſenſibly decaying when the *Engliſh* Traffick was removed hence to *Antwerp*. It was called by Earl *Baldwin*, *An.* 890, is diſtant three leagues from the Sea, and ſeated on a fair and deep Chanel made by Art, and filled with the waters of all the adjoining Fountains and Rivulets; which artificial Chanels are in theſe Countries very frequent, to the great enriching of the whole State. 3 *Ypres*, a Town ſeated very ſtrongly, and almoſt impregnable, on a ſmall River ſo named: a reaſonable rich Town, and well built, though moſt of the Houſes be of Timber, very well ſerv'd with Water, convey'd into every houſe almoſt in leaden Pipes, of which there is ſo great a number, that the Foundations of it ſeem to be laid in Lead. 4 *Bourbourg*, a fine ſtrong Town, but little pertaining to the *French* King, in the right of the houſe of *Bourbon*. 5 *Comines*, on the River *Lis* or *Ley*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, and an excellent Library; but more in being the Birth place of *Philip de Comines*, that notable States-man and Hiſtorian. 6 *Courtray*, on the ſame River of *Ley*, one of the ancienteſt Towns in *Flanders*, yet ſtill continueth, well built, of very great ſtrength both by Art and Nature, famous for a great Overthrow given the *French*, *Anno* 1301, for which the Town was called of long time the *Sepulchre of the Frenchmen*. 7 *Ardenburg*, (called in times paſt *Rodemburg*) a pretty Town, enriched every year with a great Horſe-fair every *June*, and beautified with one of the goodlieſt Churches in all this Province: the principal Town of that part hereof which properly is called *Flanders*; that name being firſt given to the parts hereunto adjoining, as ſome conceive, and after by degrees communicated to the reſt of the Country. 8 *Biervliet*, both a Town and Iſland, and furniſhed with a good and commodious Haven; yet not to be mentioned in this place, but that the ſalting of Herrings was here firſt invented by one *William Bukeleme*, who died *An.* 1397. 9 *Winocksberg*, ſo called of a goodly Abby built upon an Hill in the honour of St. *Winock*, an *Engliſh* man of an holy life; ſacked by the *French*, *An* 1538, but ſince re-edified, and made more beautiful than it was before. 10 *Greveling*, on the Sea-ſide, which, ſince the taking of *Calice* by the *French*, hath been made the ſtrongeſt Town in the Low-Countries. 11 *Oudenard*, ſeated on the *Scheld*, a fair ſtrong Town, and of very great Traffick, eſpecially for Tapeſtry and the fineſt Linens, which are here made: the Birth-place of *Margaret*, Dutcheſs of *Parma*, and Mother to *Alexander* Prince of *Parma*, that renowned Souldier.

The principal Ports of *Flanders*, being four in number, are all of them ſeated in this part. 1 *Dunkerck*, a ſmall, but ſafe Port, belonging to the *French* King (as doth *Greveling* alſo) in the right of the Houſe of *Vendoſme*; but ſtrongly garriſoned by the *Spaniard*, even in times of Peace, becauſe of the importance of their ſituation both by Sea and Land. Moſt memorable in theſe days, for that the people of it in the times of War ſo infeſted the Seas. 2 *Sclnys*, ſeated at the mouth of the Chanel of *Bruges*, beautified with a very fair Haven, able to contain 500 good Ships; and is now ſubject to the *States*, with whoſe ſafety it could not well ſtand to let the *Spaniards* enjoy any ſafe & large Harbours ſo near unto them. Over againſt it lieth the Iſle of *Caſſandt*, (famous for the birth of *George Caſſander*, a moderate and learned Papiſt) formerly as big again as it is at the preſent, having then a fair Town in it, and many rich Villages; of which there is but one remaining, (of the ſame name with the Iſland) the reſt all ſwallowed by the Sea. 3 *Newport*, a pretty Town, with a very ſtrong Caſtle, built on a well-frequented Haven, but not very ſafe, and therefore not much uſed by the men of War, nor made rich by Piracies, as *Dunkerck*. Near to this Town, *Anno* 1603, was fought the Field-battel betwixt the Archduke *Albert* and the *States*; the Victory, next under God, being gotten for the *States* by the valour of the *Engliſh*, and the excellent Conduct of the *Veres*. 4 *Oſtend*, not walled till the Low-country Wars, and then but with a mud-wall only, and that not finiſhed till the Arch-duke ſate down before it: inſomuch as the Arch-dutcheſs *Iſabel* is ſaid to have ſworn, that ſhe would not ſhift her Smock till the Town were

were taken: who, had ſhe kept that raſh Oath, had been very lowſie; the Town (then garriſoned with *Engliſh*) holding out againſt the ſaid Arch-duke a Siege of three years and as many months.

2. *IMPERIAL FLANDERS*, ſo called, becauſe it was long under the obedience of Emperours, is ſevered from *Brabant* by the River *Dender*, and from the *Gallick Flanders* by the River *Scheld*, about *Oudenard*. It was ſometimes called *Bracant*, of a Caſtle of that name, deſtroyed by *Baldwin le Debonaire*, Earl of *Flanders*: and is now called the County of *Aloſt*, from the chief Town thereof ſo named; the Juriſdiction whereof, containing 170 Villages, extendeth as far as to the Walls of *Gaunt* and the Gates of *Oudenard*. The Town is ſtrong, and indifferently fair, ſituate on the River *Dender*, moſt Famous in theſe times for a Fair of Hops which is kept there yearly. 2. *Hulſt*, a walled Town, and the chief of the four Towns in the County of *Waes*; the other three being, 3. *Axele*. 4. *Mouchant*. 5. *Aſſeneds*; of which little memorable, but that they were all taken from the Empire by the ſaid *Baldwin le Debonaire* in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the Fourth. 6. *Dendermond*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Dender* where it entreth into the *Scheld*; a ſtrong Town both by Art and Nature, and much enriched by making Fuſtians, and a weekly Market of Flax. A diſtinct Seigniory of it ſelf, with many rich Villages belonging to it, incorporated into the Earldom of *Flanders* by the Marriage of Earl *Lewis* of *Malaine* with the Lady *Margaret* of *Brabant*, to which houſe it formerly appertained. 7. *Rupelmond*, on the mouth of the River *Rupel*, where it falleth into the *Scheld*: Famous in former time for an antient Caſtle, in which were kept the Monuments and Records of the Earls of *Flanders*; more in late times for being the Birth-place of *Mercator*, that renowned Coſmographer. 8. *Mont-Gerhard*, called by the *French Grandmount*, a fine and pleaſant *Town* ſeated on the *Dender*. Which three laſt Towns, together with *Bornhem*, a Fair large Village, having ſome Juriſdiction on the parts adjoining, made up that Eſtate which was called the *Proper* or *Domaine* of *Flanders*, becauſe not holden of the Empire or the Kings of *France*, but in the Soveraignty alone of the Earls hereof.

3. *FLANDERS GALLICANT*, ſo called from the *French* language there ſpoken, lieth on the South of *Flanders Flammengant*; having *Hainault* on the Eaſt, *Artois* on the Weſt, and the Country of *Cambray* on the South. The chief Towns of it are, 1. *Liſle*, in *Latine Inſula*, ſo called from its Iſland-like ſituation, among Ponds, Pools, Mariſhes, dried up and made firm land by Earl *Baldwin de Barbu*, who built the Town, *Anno* 1007, which afterwards was called by *Baldwin de Liſle*, his Son (born in this Town, and hence ſo named) *Anno* 1066. The Town made rich by Manufactures and reſort of Merchants, accompted the beſt Town of Traffick, next *Amſterdam* and *Antwerp*, in all the *Netherlands*. Not far from which are to be ſeen the Ruines of an ancient Caſtle called *Brug*, the Seat or Manor-houſe of the ancient *Foreſters*, who had the Government of this Country for the Kings of *France*. 2. *Doway*, (*Duarum* in *Latine*) a fair and ſtrong Town ſeated on the *Scharp*, having many Fountains, good Buildings, and a great number of Churches; made an Univerſity by King *Philip* the ſecond of *Spain*, who built therein a Seminary or Colledge for *Engliſh* Fugitives. 3. *Orchies*, a pleaſant Town, and well traded for the making of Serges; which, with the other two, make up the three Eſtates of this part of *Flanders*. 4. *Armentiers*, an unwalled Town, but of very great Trading; there being yearly 25000 pieces of Cloth ſent hence to *Italy*, and thence to *Conſtantinople*. 5. *Tournay*, (or *Dornick*, as the *Dutch* call it) a great, rich, mighty and ſtrong Town, ſeated on the *Scheld*, well built, and full of ſtately and magnificent Churches and Religious Houſes and anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopal. A Town of great importance, and much contended for betwixt the *Flemmings* and the *French*; but finally fell unto the *French*, as the more puiſſant Prince; taken from them by *Henry* the eighth of *England*, *An.* 1513. to whom the Citizens paid 100000 Ducats for their preſent Ranſome; reſtored by him unto the *French*, *An.* 1518. for the ſum of 600000 Crowns; and finally from them recovered by *Charles* the fifth, who reſtored it to the body of *Flanders*, from which it had been long diſmembred; but ſo that it is governed as a State apart, and is called the *Seigniory* of *Tourneſis*, having a goodly Juriſdiction over the Country round about it. 6. *S. Amand*, in the Country of *Tourneſis*, pleaſantly ſeated on the *Scharp*; in which is one of the richeſt Abbies in all *Flanders*; the Abbot thereof having the temporal and ſpiritual Juriſdiction over it and the parts about it. And ſo much for the Corography of the Earldom of *Flanders*, inhabited by the *Nervii* and *Morini* in the time of *Cæſar*.

2. *ARTOIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Flanders Gallicant* and the Country of *Cambray*, on the South and Weſt with *Picardy*, on the North with *Flanders Flammengant* and the River *Lis*. The name is derived from the *Atrebates*, the old Inhabitants hereof: the Air exceeding temperate, and the Soil ſo Fruitful, that it ſerveth as a Granary to a great part both of *Flanders* and *Brabant*.

On the Weſt part hereof towards *France* lieth the Earldom of S. *Paul*, ſo called from the chief Town thereof; a goodly Seigniory, and of great Juriſdiction and Revenue, containing, beſides many Villages, the good Town of *Pern*, a walled Town, and of great importance. The Earls hereof were lineally derived from *Walleran*, brother of *Henry* the 7. Emperour of *Germany* and Earl of *Luxemburg*; the laſt of which was *Lewis* of *Luxemburg*, made Conſtable of *France* by King *Lewis* the eleventh, with whom, as alſo with *Edward* the 4. of *England*, and *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, he plaid ſo many croſs tricks, that having long deluded them all, and kept them in a continual jealouſie of one another, he was at laſt by Duke *Charles* taken and beheaded. After whoſe death this goodly Seigniory fell to the Houſe of *Vendoſme* in *France*, by the Marriage of *Francis* Earl of *Vendoſme* with *Mary* the Daughter of this *Lewis*, to whom it was adjudged by the power and favour of the *French* King's; the Heirs-males being made uncapable of Succeſſion in it by the Attainder and Confiſcation of the ſaid laſt Earl. By means whereof the Houſe of *Vendoſme* was intituled to many fair Eſtates in *Artois*, *Flanders*, *Hainault*, and much good Lands in *France*, which they were poſſeſſed of; *Francis* the 2. Son of that *Francis*, and *Francis* the only Son of this, being intituled, whilſt they lived, Earl of *S. Paul*, and Dukes of *Tutteville*.

The Arms of theſe Earls were *Argent*, a Lion *Gules* armed and crowned *Or*, his tail forked of the ſecond.

As for the reſidue of *Artois*, the Towns of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Arras*, in Latine *Atrebatum civitas*, the chief City of the *Atrebates* the old Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Cæſar*, and ſtill the chief City of this Province; a large, populous and well-fortified City, anciently honoured with a See Epiſcopal, and ſtocked with an induſtrious people, the firſt makers of the Cloth of *Arras*, which took name from hence: divided into two diſtinct Towns, both of them walled, and called by two ſeveral names; the leſſer called *La Citte*, ſubject to the Biſhop, beautified with a Fair and Stately Cathedral Church, and a Library containing many excellent Manuſcripts; the leſſer called *La Ville*, ſubject to the Prince, having large Streets, and a rich Monaſtery of the yearly Revenue of 20000 crowns. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Regiacum*, ſeated within a bow-ſhot of the

River *Scarp*, and heretofore the Metropolitan Town of *Flanders*, till *Artois* was dismembred from it; since which time the chief City of this Province, as before is said. 2 *S. Omar*, a fair Town, and well peopled, seated upon the River *Aa*, some eight *Dutch* miles from the Ocean; so called from S. *Omar*, or *Audomarus*, Bithop of the *Morini*, who built a Monastery in this place, from which grew the Town, the second of esteem and rank in all the Country. Near to it is a goodly Lake of fresh water, in which are many little Islands affording good Pasturage for Cattel: of which *Lewis Guicciardine* reporteth, that by fasning a Cord unto the bushes which grow in them, a man may draw them which way he will; and that under them there are found great numbers of Fishes, who hid themselves there for shelter against the Weather. 3. *Bethune*, a strong Town; and seated amongst excellent Pastures, of which the people make great plenty of the best Cheese: which, with the Territory hereof, fell to *Guy of Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Daniel* the Lord of this Town, honoured in that regard with the birth of their eldest Son, who from this place had the name of *Robert de Bethune*. 4. *Ayre*, on the *Lis*, a strong Town, with a Castle of great Antiquity. 5. *Bapaulme* a little, but well Fortified Town; and yet more strong, because it cannot be besieged for want of fresh water, which is not to be had within three leagues of it. 6. *Renty*, an unwalled Town, but Fenced with a very strong Castle, besieged by the *French*, Anno 1554. but being overcome in a set Field by *Charles* the fifth, they were fain to raise the Siege and go home again. 7. *Hesdinfert*, on the confluence of two little Riverets, *Blangis* and *Canche*; a Frontier-town on the edge of *France*, one of the strongest and most defensible places of all the *Netherlands*, built by *Charles* the fifth out of the ruines of old *Hesdin*, which having taken from the *French*, he commanded it to be razed as no longer serviceable, and raised this Town in stead thereof, somewhat nearer *France*. 8. *Terwin*, or *Teroane*, the *Tervanna* of *Ptolemy*, and *Civitas Morinum* of *Antoninus*, a Frontier-town, held for a long time by the *French*, by whom thought impregnable, till taken by King *Henry* the eighth, *Anno* 1513. they changed their opinion. A Siege not only memorable for the issue of it, but for two other matters of great moment. The one, that the Emperour *Maximilian* came and served in person under the colours of S. *George*, with the *English* Cross upon his breast: the other, that the *French* intending to victual the Town, had so great an overthrow, that had the *English* followed their Fortune, they had opened a fair way to have made themselves masters of all *France*; the *French* King being so astonished at the news hereof, that he prepared to flie into *Bretaign*. But the *English* more minded the Spoils and riches of *Terwin*, than the sequel of an absolute Victory; *Et frui maluerunt victoriâ, quàm uti*, as the Historian said of *Hannibal*. It is now after many changes of Fortunes in the hands of the *French*, and by some reckoned and accounted of as part of *Picardy*. There are, besides these, three walled Towns more, that is to say, *Liliers*, *Lens*, and *La Bassee*, of which little memorable; and to the number of 854 Villages.

These Countries of *Flanders* and *Artois* were anciently, if not a part, (as the parts hereof about *Tourney* most undoubtedly were) yet much of the same nature with the great Forest of *Ardenne*, nothing but a continual waste of Woods and Deserts, till the Conquest of it by the *French*; the Sea-coasts being then unpeopled for fear of the *Danes*, who by their frequent Piracies did much vex those Shores and the inland Countries meanly planted, for want of Corn and other necessaries for the life of man: subject in part to the great Princes of *Ardenne*, till the discomfiture of Earl *Brunulph* by *Dagobert* sole King of the *French*, by whom about the year 621 this wild Country, extending then as far as the River *Some*, and comprehending, besides *Artois* and *Flanders*, a good part of *Picardy*, was given unto one *Lideric de Bucque* with the title of *Forester*, to be holden under the Sovereign of that Crown. In whose posterity it continued with the title of *Foresters* till the time of *Baldwin* the first, the son of *Odoacer*, the seventh of the *Foresters* whose names occur upon record; there being a long intermission of their names and memories during the Ravagements and Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*. This *Baldwin* having first ravished, and afterwards married, *Judith*, Sister to *Charles* the Bald, King of *France* and Emperor, was by him created Earl of *Flanders*, the Sovereignty thereof reserved as before it was: in whose Issue it remained intire, till *Philip* the first Earl of that name gave unto *Philip Augustus*, King of *France*, the Country of *Artois*, with the Earldom or Country of *Veromandois*, part of *Picardy*, in Marriage with *Isabel* his Niece, Daughter of *Baldwin* Earl of *Hainault*. By *Lewis* the eighth, Son and Successor of *Philip Augustus*, *Artois* was given in Portion to his youngest Son *Robert*, made the first Earl of *Artois* by King *Lewis* the 9. *An.* 1234. And by the Marriage of *Lewis* the first of *Flanders* with *Margaret* the Heir of *Artois* and of the Earldom of *Burgundy*, both these Estates were added unto this of *Flanders*, now made far mightier than before. And yet before this great accession of estate it was accounted the prime Earldom, as *Millane* was the prime Dukedom of *Europe*: these Earls being priveledged to write themselves *Dei gratiâ*, all others *Dei clementiâ* only; and *Flanders* being now grown abroad to so great esteem, that it was generally used for all the *Netherlands*. Finally, by the Marriage of *Margaret*, Daughter of *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, to *Philip* the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, this great Estate became united to that House, and afterwards was conveyed to that of *Austria*, as shall be shewn hereafter in due time and place. In the mean season let us take a brief survey of

The Earls of *FLANDERS* & *ARTOIS*.

864	1. *Baldwin*, the first Earl of *Flanders*.
879	2. *Baldwin* II.
918	3. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* the 2.
960	4. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Arnulph*.
964	5. *Arnulph* II. Son of *Baldwin* the 3.
988	6. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
1029	7. *Baldwin* V.
1067	8. *Baldwin* VI. Earl of *Hainault*.
1070	9. *Arnulph* III. Earl of *Hainault*.
1071	10. *Robert*, Son of *Baldwin* the 5. and Brother of *Baldwin* the 6.
1093	11. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the 1.
1111	12. *Baldwin* VII.
1118	13. *Charles*, Son of *Canutus* King of *Denmark*, and *Adelize* the Daughter of *Robert* the 1.
1127	14. *William*, Son of *Robert*, the Son of *William* the Bastard, Duke of *Normandy*, and of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter of *Baldwin* the 5.
1132	15. *Theodorick* of *Elsass*, Nephew of *Robert* the 1. by his Daughter *Heltrude*.
1169	16. *Philip* of *Elsass*, Son of *Theodorick*.
1191	17. *Baldwin* VIII. Earl of *Hainault*, succeeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter of *Theodorick*, and Sister of *Philip*.
1199	18. *Baldwin* IX. Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, and Emperour of *Constantinople*.

1205 19. *Joan*, eldest Daughter of *Baldwin* the Emperor, first married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *Sancho* King of *Portugal*, and after to *Thomas* the 3d Son of *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*; both in her right called Earls of *Flanders*.

1244 20. *Margaret*, Sister of *Joan*, and 2d Daughter of the Emperour *Baldwin*, Widow of *William* of *Dampierre*, governed the Estate of *Flanders* as long as she lived, admitting *William* her eldest Son to the title of Earl, which he continued till his death (being many years before his Mother's) *Anno* 1255.

1278 21. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, the second Son of *Margaret*, admitted to the title of Earl on the death of his Brother, and to the Estate it self on the death of his Mother.

1304 22. *Robert* III. surnamed of *Bethune*, who married *Yoland*, Heir of *Odo* of *Bourgogne*, Earl of *Nevers*, by whom he had a Son called *Lewis*, who married *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *James* Earl of *Rethel*.

1323 23. *Lewis*, Son of *Lewis*, and Grand-son of *Robert* the 3. in right of his Mother Earl of *Rethel*, in right of his Grandmother Earl of *Nevers*, and of *Flanders* in right of his Father and Grandfather.

1347 24. *Lewis de Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*, *Nevers* and *Rethel*, in right of his Father, and of *Artois* and *Burgundy* in right of his Mother whom he succeeded at her death, but the time I find not.

1369 25. *Philip* II. surnamed the Hardy, Duke of *Burgundy*, succeeded in the Earldoms of *Flanders*, *Artois*, *&c.* in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Lewis de Malain*, whom he married solemnly at *Gaunt*, *Anno* 1369. Of which *Philip* and his Successors in these Estates we shal hereafter speak in a place more proper.

The Earls of *ARTOIS*.

1234 1. *Robert* of *France*, Grand-son of *Philip Augustus*, and *Isabel* the Daughter of *Baldwin* the 8th, made the first Earl by *Lewis* the 9th.

1245 2. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert*.

1302 3. *Otheline*, Earl of *Burgundy*, succeeded in right of *Maud* his Wife, the Daughter of *Robert* the 2.

1315 4. *Philip* the Long, King of *France*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his Wife, the Daughter and Heir of *Maud* and *Otho*, or *Otheline*.

1331 5. *Eudes*, Duke of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Burgundy* and *Artois* in right of *Joan* his Wife, the eldest Daughter of *Philip*.

6. *Philip*, the only Son of *Eudes*, in right of his Mother Earl of *Artois*, and so called in his Father's life-time.

1349 7. *Philip* III. Son of *Philip* II. and Nephew of *Eudes*, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, and Earl of *Artois*, who died young and without issue, *An.* 1361.

1361 8. *Margaret*, Daughter of *Philip* of *France*, and of *Joan* Countess of *Artois* and *Burgundy*, married to *Lewis* Earl of *Flanders*, *&c.* succeeded *Philip* 3. (being then a Widow) in the Earldoms of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, *Anno* 1361.

The Arms of *Flanders* are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, langued and armed *Gules*. Those of *Artois* being Semé of Flower-de-Luces *Or*, in a field *Azure*, a File of three Labels *Gules* charged with with as many Castles of the first.

3. *HAINAULT*.

HAINAULT is bounded on the East with *Namur*, on the West with *Flanders*, on the North with *Brabant*, on the South with *Picardy* and *Champagne* in *France*. It was anciently called *Saltus Carbonarius*, from the abundance of *Charcoal* made in the Woods and Forests of it; by some Writers of the middle times, the *Lower Picardy*; by the *Latine* Writers of these times called *Hannonia*. It seemeth to have taken this new name from the River *Haine*, or *Hania*, which passeth through it, and the word *Holt*, signifying a Wood, as being overspread in a manner with the Forests of *Normault*, *St. Amand*, *de Faignd*, and that of *Foodsberg*. And then *Hainault* will be *quasi Haine holt*, *i. e.* a Country of Woods and Forests on the River *Haine*. Thus called originally by the *French*, (as the word importeth:) but by the *Dutch* best known by the name of *Henegow*, i. e. the Country bordering on the *Haine*, as the name signifieth in that language.

The length thereof is 60 miles, 48 the breadth; comprehending in that compass 950 Villages, and 24 Towns, in and amongst which there is reckoned one Principate, 10 Earldoms, 12 Peerdoms or *Pairries*, 22 Baronies, 26 Abbeys, one Lord Marshal, (besides other Officers of the Prince) descending by inheritance to the Lords of this Province.

The Air hereof is very good, and the Soil fruitful, by reason the Country is watered with so many Rivers, as the *Scheld*, the *Sambre*, the *Dender*, and several lesser Streams, besides divers Lakes, Marishes, Ponds and Pools, which do much enrich it; the Country abounding in most places with fresh Meadows and sweet Pastures, good Fruits, and profitable Trees, but especially with great plenty of Corn. Here are also in some parts of it notable Mines of Iron and Lead, and excellent Quarries of the best Stone, fit for all kind of Buildings.

The principal of these Towns are 1 *Monts*, situate at the confluence of *Haine* and a little River called *Trulle*, which gives a good natural strength unto it; fortified besides with a very strong Wall, three large deep Ditches, and an ancient Castle. The Town is great, beautiful and rich, adorned with sumptuous buildings, both private and publick, and replenished with wealthy Merchants and men of Trade; the principal of all the Province, erected into an Earldom by *Charles* the Great, and sometimes used for the style of the Earls of *Hainault*. In this Town is the noble Nunnery of *S. Valdrade*, once a Dutchess of *Lorrain*, the Nuns whereof are to be Ladies & Gentlewomen of Noble Families, in the morning apparelled in white, like Nuns, in the afternoons according to their Birth and qualities; who when they please may leave the Cloister, and be married. The Abbess hath Jurisdiction both in the Town and Country about it, and anciently did put the Earls of *Hainault* into possession of the State. Another Nunnery like this (but not of such large Revenues) there is at 2 *Maubeuge* on the *Sambre*, a good Town of Merchandise. 3 *Valenchiennes*, seated on the *Scheld*, and a little River called *Roulle*, which make not only in it many pleasant Isles, but pass almost under every man's house to the great benefit and delight of the place and people. The Site hereof is so strong by Nature, (besides the Fortifications of Art) that on the one side it may be easily made unapproachable by water, and on the other side is so defended by Hills, that it can hardly be belieged but by three Armies at once. A goodly, large, and beautiful Town, especially for publick Buildings: the Chief whereof are the Church of our Lady, built after the ancient

manner of Architecture, with ſumptuous Arches & goodly Pillars of Marble and Porphyry; the Earl's Palace, and the Town-hall, Buildings of great magnificence and excellent workmanſhip. The Birth-place of *Henry* the 7th, Emperour of *Germany*, of *Mary* Daughter of *Charles* the Warlike, and of *Froiſſart* the great *French* Hiſtorian. Finally a Town which, for the eminence thereof, is governed as a State apart by it ſelf, having under the Juriſdiction of it 3 Towns, 132 Villages; which on occaſion of Appeal reſort not to the Provincial Council at *Mons*, but the great Council at *Mechlin*. 4 *Chimay*, upon the River *Blanche*, near a pleaſant Foreſt, which gives the title of a Prince to the eldeſt Son of the Duke of *Aerſchot*, one of the principal Lords of *Brabant*, who hath here a very goodly Palace. 5 *Halle*, ſeated on the *Sinne*, which runs through it, a place of great credit amongſt the Papiſts, by reaſon of an Image of the bleſſed Virgin famed for many Miracles. Of which ſee *Lipſius* on that ſubject. 6 *Beauvais*, or *Bavay*, an old Town, at a Pillar whereof begin all the ways leading into *France*, made of paved-ſtones by *Bruneault* the Wife of *Sigebert* King of *Metz* and *Auſtraſia*, who with *Fridegonde* the Wife of *Chilperick*, and *Katharine Medices*, the Wife of *Henry* the 2d, are ſaid to be the three *Furies* of *France*. 7 *Landrecie*, on the River *Sambre*, famous for the notable reſiſtance which it made to *Charles* the 5th, 1543. 8 *Marienburg*, built by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, Governeſs here for the ſaid *Charles*, *An.* 1524, to ſerve as a Bulwark againſt *France*, on which it frontiereth. 9 *Philip-Ville*, built and well fortified for the ſame reaſon by K. *Philip* the 2d. 19 *Bouchain*, upon the *Scheld*, in the County of *Oſtrinand*, which County is the Title of the firſt Son of *Hainault*: and by that name *William* the eldeſt Son of *Albert* Earl of *Hainault* and *Holland*, was admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2d. 11 *Conde*, a good little Town ſeated on the *Scheld*, the moiety whereof belonged heretofore to the Houſe of *Montpenſier* in *France*, as 12 *Enghien*, a Town of great trade for Tapeſtry, to the Houſe of *Vendoſme*: from whence the Princes of *Conde* and Dukes of *Enghien* do derive their Titles. 13 *Beaumont*, upon the knap of a goodly Hill, whence it hath the name; belonging at the preſent to the Dukes of *Aerſchot*, but anciently the Partage of the ſecond Son of the Earls of *Hainault*. 14 *Bins*, or *Binche*, on a branch of the River, *Hain*, one of the Jointure-Towns of the Counteſſes of *Hainault*, much beautified and made a place of pleaſures by *Mary* Queen of *Hungary*, to whom it was given by *Charles* the fifth, (commonly called the *Queens Paradiſe*) but burnt and utterly deſtroyed by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. 15 *Aeth*, ſeated on both ſides of the *Dender*; a little, but a pleaſant and wealthy Town; here being held the Staple of Linen for all this Country, and the Cloth here ſold amounting to 200000 Crowns *per annum*.

As for the Hiſtory of *Hainault*, the ancient Inhabitants thereof were the *Nervii*, the moſt valiant and moſt potent people of all the *Gauls*, poſſeſſed not only of this Province, but of the whole Earldom of *Namur*, and ſome part of *Flanders*, able to bring, and *de facto* did bring into the field, when the *Belgæ* muſtered up their united forces againſt *Julius Cæſar*, no fewer than 50000 fighting men. Wone from the *Romans* by the *French*, they became a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, continuing ſo till the death of *Brunulph*, diſcomfitted and ſlain in battel by *Dagobert* ſole King of the *French*, whom his Father in his life-time had made Duke of *Ardenne*, and deſigned unto the conqueſt of it. But the fury of the War being over, the parts of *Flanders* and *Brabant* which belonged unto it eſtated upon other Houſes, and the reſt alotted out amongſt his Children, *Alberic*, ſirnamed the *Orphelin*, one of his younger Sons, was by *Sigebert* King of *Metz* or *Auſtraſia* enfeoffed of this Country, by the name & Title of Earl of *Hainault*. Twice this Eſtate was added or united to that of *Flanders*. 1 In the perſon of *Baldwin* 5. Earl of *Flanders*, ſucceeding hereunto in right of *Richild* his Wife, Daughter of *Regnier* the 3d. 2 By the Marriage of *Baldwin* the 6th of *Hainault* with *Margaret* Counteſs of *Flanders*, Siſter and Heir of *Philip* of *Elſaſs*, Earl of *Flanders*. But being divided the firſt time by the uſurpation of *Flanders*, wreſted from *Arnulph* the 3d, by his Uncle *Robert*, and the ſecond time by the intruſion of *John de Aveſnes*, natural ſon of *Margaret* the ſecond Daughter of the Emperour *Baldwin*, into the Eſtate and Earldom of *Hainault*; it was finally annexed to *Holland* by the Marriage of *John de Aveſnes* to *Adelize* or *Aleide*, Daughter and (at the laſt) Heir of *Florence* the 4th, Earl of *Holland*, *Zeland*, &c. from which it never was divided, till they were both incorporated into that of *Burgundy*.

The Earls of *HAINAULT*.

1. *Alberic*, one of the younger Sons of *Brunulph* Earl of *Ardenne*.
2. *Waultier*, Son of *Alberic*.
3. *Waultier* II. Son of *Waultier* the firſt.
4. *Waultier* III. Son of *Waultier* the ſecond.
5. *Albon*, in right of his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *Waultier* the third.
6. *Albon* II. Son of the ſaid *Albon* by that Wife.
7. *Manaſſier*, Son of *Albon* the ſecond.
8. *Regnier*, Son of *Manaſſier*.
9. *Regnier* II. Son of *Regnier* the firſt.
10. *Regnier* III. Son of *Regnier* the ſecond.
11. *Baldwin* V. of *Flanders*, and the firſt of that name in *Hainault*, ſucceeded in right of *Richild* his Wife, the ſole Daughter to *Regnier* the third.

1070 12. *Arnulph*, Son of *Baldwin* and *Richild*, deſpoiled of his Eſtate and life by his Uncle *Robert*, who ſeized on the Earldom of *Flanders*.

1071 13. *Baldwin* II. Brother of *Arnulph*, ſucceeded in *Hainault*:
14. *Baldwin* III. Son of *Baldwin* the ſecond.
15. *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Baldwin* the third.
16. *Baldwin* V. Son of *Baldwin* the fourth.
17. *Baldwin* VI. of *Hainault*, Son of *Baldwin* the fifth, and the eighth of that name in *Flanders*, into which alſo he ſucceeded in right of *Margaret* his Wife, Siſter and Heir of *Philip* of *Elſaſs*, Earl of *Flanders*.

1199 18. *Baldwin* VIII. of *Hainault*, and 9. of *Flanders*, Emperour of *Conſtantinople*.

1205 19. *Joan* Counteſs of *Hainault* and *Flanders*, firſt married to *Ferdinand* of *Portugal*, and then to *Thomas* Earl of *Savoy*.

1244 20. *Margaret* the younger Siſter of *Joan*, married to *William* of *Bourbon* Lord of *Dampierre*, by whom ſhe had *William* and *Guy*, both Earls of *Flanders*.

21. *John de Aveſnes*, baſe Son of *Margaret*, begot before her marriage by *Buſchart* her Guardian, the Prior of St. *Peters* in *L'iſle*, by force and fraud extorted *Hainault* from his Brethren born in lawful wedlock, and married *Aleide* Daughter and Heir of *Florence* the 4th, Earl of *Holland*; whoſe Succeſſors in both Eſtates we ſhall meet with there, and amongſt them with *William* the 2. Father of Queen *Phillippa*, Wife of *Edward* the 3d, one of the moſt conſiderable of all the number.

The Arms hereof are quarterly *Flanders* and *Holland*.

4. The

4. The Bishoprick of *CAMBRAY*.

SOuthward from *Hainault* lieth the Bishoprick of *CAMBRAY*, continuing a goodly Town and Territory, reckoned of anciently as a part of *Hainault*, now a State distinct; rather confederate with the Princes of the *Netherlands*, than subject to them.

The principal City hereof is *Cambray*, (called in *Latine Cameracum*) seated on both sides of the River *Scheld*, a fair, goodly, and mighty City, full of people, many of which are rich Merchants, but all of them industrious, especially in making that fine linen Cloth from hence called *Cameras*, or *Cambrick*. The private Buildings are very fair, but the publick much fairer, especially the Monasteries and other Churches, of which the most remarkable is that of our Lady, an ancient and sumptuous Fabrick, and the See Episcopal. From hence the Country and Territory hereunto adjoining is called *Cambresis*, in which are divers Villages and places of importance. The chief of which are, 1. *Chasteau Cambresis*, six leagues from the City, remarkable for the Treaty held there betwixt *France* and *Spain*, Anno 1559. in which a Peace was happily setled amongst all the chief Princes of Christendom, after a long and tedious War between those Kings and the Confederates of each; and before that, for the Confederacy there made by the said Kings of *France* and *Spain*, the Emperour, the Pope, and many of the Princes of *Italy*, against the Seigniory of *Venice*, Anno 1508. called the *League of Cambray*. 2. *Avesnes le sec*, (so called to distinguish it from *Avesnes* in *Hainault*) near which are digged excellent white Stones for building, little inferior unto Marble.

This Bishoprick was Founded in the person of S. *Diogenes*, a *Grecian* born, *An.* 390, or thereabouts: whose Successors in tract of time became so potent, that at the last the Bishop hereof became both the Lord Spiritual and temporal of the Town and Territory, honoured with the title of a Duke, and Prince of the Empire, and was in the end made an Archbishop by Pope *Paul* the Fourth, *An.* 1562. And as for the City of *Cambray*, it was made Imperial by the *German* Emperours, afterwards by *Henry* the fifth, given in protection to *Robert* of *Jerusalem*, Earl of *Flanders*; and finally setled and confirmed on all his Successors by the Emperour *Frederick*, *An.* 1164. Which notwithstanding, the *French* finding it convenient for them, divers times possessed it: but governing with too great insolence, they were driven out by the people in the time of *Lewis* the 11th, and the Town yielded voluntarily unto *Maximilian*, Governour of these Countries for his Son *Philip*. *Charles* the fifth, in the year 1543, built a strong Citadel in it, pretending that he did it for defence of the Town against the *French*, but indeed to keep it for himself. After this it was taken by the Duke of *Alenzon*, (Brother of *Henry* the 3. of *France*) then Governour of the *Netherlands*, An. 1582. but regained not long after by the *Spaniards*, the Inhabitants giving up the Town for want of victuals. Since that continually possessed by the *Spaniards*, and by them strongly garrisoned; but so, that the people still enjoy their ancient Priviledges, and are governed by their own Laws and Bishops, as in former times.

5. *NAMUR*.

THE Earldom of *NAMUR* hath on the East *Hainault*, on the West the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South *Luxemburg*: so called from *Namur* the chief Town of it; *Namurcum* and *Namurcensis Comitatus* in our *Latin* Writers. The Country is very small, containing only 182 Villages, and four walled Towns, but plentiful of all Commodities, and replenished with a loyal and industrious people. Particularly the Air hereof is very wholesom; the Country watered with many Rivers and pleasant Brooks (amongst which the *Sambre* and the *Maes*) which, besides the benefit of Portage, yield great plenty of Fish. The Hills, whereof it hath not many, are cloathed with Woods, abounding with all kind of Fowl and Venison; the Vallies eminently fruitful of all sorts of Grain, rich Mines of Lead, Quarries of Marble of all colours, as also of Porphyrie or Jasper, and great plenty of Coal. In Mines of Iron so abounding, and that continually hammered by a painful people, that *Vulcan*'s Forge may seem to be restored to the world again, and seated here; which as it makes the people wealthy, so it keeps them from idleness. And as for the Nobility, they are generally valiant, given to all military exercises fit for their degrees, and very affectionate to their Princes, the greatest vertue of a Subject.

Walled Towns it hath but four, as before was said; that is to say, 1. *Namur*, the chief of all the Province, where resideth the Council for the Country, from which lieth no Appeal but to *Mechlin* only. Seated it is between two Hills on both sides of the *Sambre*, which doth there fall into the *Meuse*. The City is rich, inhabited for the most part by the Nobility, defended with a strong Castle, and beautified with a fair Cathedral, Founded here in the Church of S. *Albin*, *Anno* 1559. Not far off in the Villages of *Ardenne* and *Montier* are two Nunneries of Ladies, like those of *Monts* and *Maubuge* spoken of in *Hainault*. 2. *Bovines*, upon the *Meuse*, sacked by the *French*, *Anno* 1554. since repaired and fortified. 3. *Charlemont*, a small Town, but of most exact Fortifications, built by *Charles* the fifth, *An.* 1555. to oppose the *French*, who had then possessed themselves of *Marienburg*, a Town of *Hainault*. 4. *Valencourt*, a little Town, but standing in a goodly and Fruitful Country. Of the Villages the chief is *Done*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maes*, fortified with a strong Castle, and honoured with the title of a Viscountie, 2. *Floren*, 3. *Vascie*. and 4. *Sanson*, of much beauty and greatness.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were a part of the *Nervii*. It was first made an Earldom by some of the Descendents of the Sons of *Clodion*, the second King of the *French*, who being dispossessed of their Father's Kingdom by *Merovens*, the Master of his Horse, (to whom he had committed the Guardianship or Tuition of them) were forced to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the great Forest of *Ardenne* and the parts adjoining, where they Founded the great Earldoms of *Ardenne* and *Moselle*, as before is said, divided in succeeding times into many parcels, of which this is one. By what and how many Earls this Earldom was possessed, I am yet to learn, the Estate being small, and consequently the Princes of it not much considerable. They were allied to the Royal House of *France* by the Marriage of *Albert* Earl hereof with *Irmingrade* Daughter of *Charles* of *France*, the first Duke of *Lorrain*: and after unto the House of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *N.* the Daugher and Heir of *Peter*, the last Earl of that race, to *Henry* the Second, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, and Brother of *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders*, and the first Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*, whom he succeeded in that Empire. After whose death it came by *Yolande* his Daughter to *Peter* Earl of *Auxerre*, who succeeded also in the Empire, and after his decease to *Philip* his younger Son. But he deceasing without Issue, and *Robert* his elder Brother reigning in *Constantinople*, it was seized on by *Philip* the Brother of *Henry*, who, to assure himself thereof, took to Wife *Mary* Daughter of *Philip Augustus* King of *France*. By a Niece

of

or Cousin of this *Philip* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, (the Father by a former Wife of *Henry* the seventh, Emperour and Earl of *Luxemburg*) and finally brought back again to the House of *Flanders*, by the Marriage of *Guy* of *Dampierre* Earl of *Flanders*, with *Isabel* Daughter of that *Henry* by the Heir of *Namur*, and in his Issue it continued (for ought I can find) till it was swallowed up, with the rest of the *Belgick* Provinces, by the House of *Burgundy*. So that the highest we can go in search of the Earls of *Namur*, is to the time of *Hugh Capet* and *Charles* of *Lorrain*, which was 540 years after the coming in of the Sons of *Clodion*. From which time downwards the Succession is confused and broken, and towards the latter end discontinued for 140 years. Such as are left upon Record I have drawn together (not without much trouble) in as good order as I could, and here present them in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *NAMUR*.

1. *Albert*, the Co-temporary of *Hugh Capet*, spoken of before.
2. *Godfrey*, the Son of *Albert*, and Father of *Alice* Wife of *Baldwin* the fifth of *Hainault*, & Mother of *Baldwin* the sixth of *Hainault*, and the eighth of *Flanders*.
3. *Peter* the Son or Brother of *Godfrey*.
4. *Henry* the second, Son of *Baldwin* the eighth of *Flanders*, in right of *N.* his Wife, the Heir of *Peter*, Emp. of *Constantinople* also on the death of *Baldwin* the 9th his elder Brother.

1216 5. *Peter* II. Son-in-Law of *Henry* Emperour of *Constantinople*, and Earl of *Namur*.

6, 7. *Philip* the younger Son of *Peter*, and *John* the elder Brother of *Henry*, both taking to themselves the title of Earl of *Namur*, the one at *Constantinople*, the other in the *Netherlands*, and both deceasing without issue.

8. *Philip* II. Brother of *John* and *Henry*, without Issue also.

9. *John* II. sirnamed of *Dampierre*, the third Son of *William* of *Dampierre* by *Margaret* Countess of *Flanders*, Daughter and Heir of the Emp. *Baldwin*, succeeded by the gift of his Mother, challenging the disposing of it as next Heir of *Philp* the second, or in the right paramount of the Earldom of *Flanders*, enjoyed upon a better Title by

10. *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*, and elder Brother of *John* the second, in right of *Isabel* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg* by the Heir of *Namur*; but I neither find her Name nor Parents.

11. *John* III. Son of *Guy* and *Isabel*.

12. *John* IV. Son of *Guy* by a former Wife, the Brother of *John* the third by the whole blood being absent or unfriended, and so put beside.

13. *Guy* II. the Brother of *John* the Fourth by the same Venter.

14. *John* V. Son of *Guy* the second, who in the year 1307. married a Niece of *Lewis* the ninth of *France* by *Robert* Earl of *Clermount* a younger Son.

15. *John* VI. who in the year 1429. sold his Estate to Duke *Philip* the Good, to be enjoyed by him on the death of *Theodore*, the next Heir hereof, infirm, and (as it seems) without hope of Children.

16. *Theodore*, or *Theodorick*, the last Earl of *Namur*, after whose Death Duke *Philip* entred on this Earldom by the former Contract, and as the next Heir of the House of *Flanders*, it continuing ever since unto his Posterity.

The Arms hereof are *Or*, a Lion *Sable*, debruised with a Bend *Gules*.

6. *LUXEMBURG*.

LUXEMBURG is bounded on the East with the *Mosell* and the Land of *Triers*, on the West with the *Meuse* or *Maes* and a branch of the Forest of *Ardenne*, on the North with *Luyckland*, *Namur*, and a part of *Hainault*, and on the South with the Dutchie of *Lorrain*; so called from the Castle near the Town of *Luxemburg*, selected by *Sigefride* the first Earl hereof for his Seat and Residence.

The whole is divided into parts: the Eastern part being called *Faveune*, Fruitful of Corn, and yielding withal some Wines, some Mines, and many excellent Quarries of goodly Stone; the Western called the *Ardenne*, a remainder of that spatious Forest, which sometimes overshadowed all this Country, barren of Corn, but very plentiful of Venison, and of Foul good store.

The people of this Country are not all of one Language: those nearer *Germany*, as in *Luxemburg*, *Arlun*, *Rodemark*, *Theonville*, and the rest on that side, speaking the *Dutch*; as those of *Montmedy*, *Marville*, *Dampvillers*, with the rest bordering on *France*, do a corrupt or broken *French*. In which regard the Pleadings held before the Council residing in *Luxemburg* are made in both Languages, that so they may be understood by all that have business there. But the Nobility and Gentry (of which there is more in this Province than in any other of the Seventeen) speak both Tongues perfectly. A breed of men full of Vertue, Courtesie and Hospitality towards one another, and of great Truth and Faith to their Prince: but reckoned for the worst Landlords in all these Countries; governing their Subjects and Tenants like the Peasants of *France*, contrary to the use and Liberties of the rest of the *Netherlands*. Both sorts, as well the Nobility as the Commons, hate both Law and Lawyers, and for the most part end their Controversies amongst themselves, without any Process.

The whole Country containeth in compass about 70 leagues, or 200 *Italian* miles; in which are comprehended 23 walled Towns, and 1168 Burroughs and Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Luxemburg* or *Lucemburg*, built in the place where anciently stood the *Augusta Veromanduorum* of *Ptolemy*; and took this new name *quasi Lucis burgum*, from the image of the Sun there worshipped; seated on the *Alsimuntius*, or *Alze*, which runneth through it; large, and of a strong situation, but not very well built, nor yet recovered of the spoils which the long Wars betwixt the *French* and the *Spaniard* brought upon it before the Treaty of *Cambray*. However, it is the chief Town of the Province, honoured with the *Residence* of the Council hereof, and the Sepulchre of *John* King of *Bohemiah*, slain in the Battel of *Cressy* against the *English*, *An.* 1348. 2. *Arlun*, on the top of an high Hill, so called *quasi Ara Lunæ*, from an Altar consecrated to the Moon in the time of Paganism. 3. *Theonville*, on the *Mosell*, over which it hath a goodly Bridge; a Frontier-town near *Metz* and the border of *Lorrain*, and for that cause made marvellous strong; but taken by the *French*, *An.* 1558. and restored the next year by the Peace of *Cambray*. 4. *Bostonack*, a fair Town, and very well traded, commonly called the *Paris* of *Ardenne*, in which part it standeth. 5. *Montmedy*, on an high Hill, at the foot of which runneth the River *Chiers*. 6. *Dampvillers*, once a very strong place also: both taken and ransacked by the *French*, An. 1552.

7. *Marville*,

7. *Marvelle*, upon the *Chiers*, the one half whereof belongeth to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the other to the King of *Spain* as Duke of *Luxemburg* for which cause it is called *la Ville commune*. 8. *Rock di March*, fortified with a strong Castle. 9. *Yvoi*, a place once of great importance, sacked by the *French* An. 1552. and restored by the Treaty of *Cambray*, on condition it should never more be walled. 10. *La Frette* on the *Chiers*, a Town of the same condition.

In the skirts of this Country towards *France* standeth the Principality of *Sedan*, extended all along the banks of the River *Maes*, from the borders of *Lorrain* on the South, to the great Forest of *Ardenne* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* on the North. A small, but very fair Estate, of fruitful Soil, and beautified with many rich Villages, and some Towns of note: the principal whereof are, 1. *Jamais* upon the borders of *Lorrain*, by the Duke whereof it was taken, after a long season, from the Lady *Charlotte*, the last Heir-general of the House of *Mark*, An. 1585. and laid unto that Dukedom as a part thereof. A place of great importance, and therefore much contended for by each Pretender. 2. *Donchiery*, a strong Town of war, bordering on *Tiraske* in *Picardy*, to which by some it is ascribed. 3. *Sedan*. in *Latin* called *Sedunum ad Mosam*, because situate on the banks of the *Maes* or *Mosa*, the usual Residence of the Prince: a fine neat Town, well fortified, and planted with 80 brass pieces of Ordnance; honoured with a seat of Learning, which being of a middle nature betwixt a Grammar School and an University, is in the Criticism of these times called a *Schola illustris*, to which men may send their children to learn good Letters, though they can take in them no Degrees, that being a priviledge reserved only to the Universities. So that these Schools may be somewhat like our Collegiate Churches of *Westminster*, *Winchester* and *Eaton*, but that the younger Students in these last named are more restrained to Rhetorick and Grammar, than in the other, though these more liberally indowed for the encouragement and reward of Learning than all the *Scholæ illustres* of either *Germany*. 4. *Mouson*, a Town of great strength and consequence on the River *Maes*, upon some jealousies of State, garrisoned by the *French*, as also is *Sedan* it self, and most of the other good Towns belonging unto this Principality; but so that the Revenues of it, execution of Justice, and all other rights of Sovereignty, are still enjoyed, as formerly, by the Lords thereof.

This Estate anciently was a part of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, from which it was dismembred for the Portion of some younger Prince, at such time as *Godfrey* Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon* succeeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, after *Charles* and *Otho* the first Dukes; or else excepted and reserved by *Godfrey*, surnamed of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hierusalem*, when he sold the Dukedom of *Bouillon* to the Bishop of *Liege*. By many mean Conveyances and alterations of the Owners it came at last to the House of *Aremberg*, a Family of great wealth and power in *Westphalen*, (a Province of *Germany* not far off) by the Heir-general of which House it was brought in Marriage to *Engelbert* Earl of *Mark* about the year 1338, from whom descended *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, and Sovereign of *Sedan* with the Towns annexed, who succeeding his Mother in the Estates of *Sausi* and *Florenge*, Fiefs holden of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, and eagerly affecting to unite the Estates together, (as they had been anciently) purchased the Town and Title of Duke of *Bouillon* of *Eberhard* Earl of *Mark* his Brother, Bishop and Cardinal of *Liege*, and consequently Duke of *Bouillon* also. Proud of his honour, and being somewhat too stiff in maintaining the Rights of his new Dukedom against a Sentence passed in the Imperial Chamber, in a Suit there depending betwixt two of his Vassals, he took up Arms against the Empire, with far more courage than discretion. For being in the course of that War worsted by *Charles* 5. (for whom he was too weak an enemy) the Town of *Bouillon*, being taken by the conquering Emperor, was afterwards restored to the Bishops, and nothing but the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon* left to the Princes of *Sedan*. And that he might be able to hold *Sedan*, this *Robert* was fain to return again to the protection of the *French*, (as his Ancestors from the time of *Charles* 8. had done before) and died *Anno* 1535, leaving his Titles and Estate unto *Robert* his Son, one of the Marshals of *France*, whose Grandson, called also *Robert*, being a dear friend and companion of *Henry* of *Bourbon* King of *Navarre*, and afterwards of *France* also, dying without Issue at *Geneva*, *Anno* 1588, committed to him the disposal of his Estates, and of the Lady *Charlotte* his only Sister. And he so well discharged his trust, that (having setled his own affairs) he gave the Lady in Marriage to *Henry de la Tour*, Viscount of *Turenne*, in *France*, (one who had done him very good service in the course of his long War, against the Leaguers) and with her the possession of *Sedan*, and the Title of *Bouillon*; whose posterity do still enjoy it. The whole Succession of these Princes we shall find in *Bouillon*, of which more anon.

But to return again to the Dutchie of *Luxemburg*, It was at first a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, dismembred from it in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the first by *Sigefride* the Son of *Ricuinus* Prince thereof, who, in the division of that Estate amongst his Brethren, had this for his Portion, with the Title of Earl. Of his Successors there is little to be found upon good record in a constant order of Succession, until the time of *Henry* 1. Father of *Henry* 2. Emperor of *Germany*. and they of a Royal Progeny of Kings & Princes; two of the which are most considerable, though all of them of eminent quality in their several times, *viz.* 1 *Henry*, elected and crowned Emperor by the name of *Henry* 7. said to be poisoned by a Frier in the holy Chalice, to prevent some designs he had against the Pope, in asserting the Imperial power in *Italy*. 2 *John*, the Son of this *Henry*, chosen K. of *Bohemia*, in regard of his Marriage with *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* King thereof; the possession of which Realm he left unto his posterity, advanced unto a Dukedom by *Charles* 4. the eldest Son of this *John*, in the person of *Wenceslaus* his younger Brother. What else concerns it we shall find in this following Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *LUXEMBURG*.

1. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Ricuine*, Prince of *Ardenne*, the first Earl of *Luxemburg*.
2. *Gilbert*, the Father of *Ogine*, Wife of *Baldwin* the fourth of *Flanders*, but whose Son I find not.
3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Namur*, was also Earl of *Luxemburg* by the right of Marriage, Father of *Agnes* the Wife of *Simon* the second Duke of *Lorrain*.
4. *Conrade*, perhaps the Son of *Godfrey* by the Daughter of *Luxemburg*, Father of *Catharine*, Wife of *Matthew* the second, Duke of *Lorrain*.
5. *Henry* Earl of *Luxemburg*, slain in the quarrel of *Rainold* Earl of *Geldres*, contending with *John* Duke of *Brabant* for the Dutchie of *Limbourg*.
6. *Henry* I. Son of *Henry* the first, by means of his Brother *Baldwin*, Elector of *Triers*, was chosen Emperour of the *Germans*, the seventh of that name, *Anno* 1308, first crowned at

Aken;

Aken, and afterwards at *Rome*; one of the laſt Emperours that meddled in the affairs of *Italy*.

1319 7. *John*, Son of *Henry* II. Earl of *Luxemburg*, married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Wenceſlaus* the elder, K. of *Bohemia*; of which he was upon that Marriage elected and crowned King, *Anno* 1311, in the life of his Father; ſlain by the *Engliſh* in the Battel of *Creſſy*, *Anno* 1346.

1346 8. *Wenceſlaus*, the younger Son of *John*, created Duke of *Luxemburg* by his elder Brother *Charles* the 4th, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*.

1383 9. *Wenceſlaus* II. eldeſt Son of the ſaid *Charles* 4. Emperour and King of *Bohemia* alſo, ſucceeded his Uncle in the Dukedom.

1419 10. *Sigiſmund*, Brother of *Wenceſlaus*, ſucceeded *Wenceſlaus* in all his Eſtates; to which he added the Crown of *Hungary*, by the Marriage of *Mary*, Daughter of King *Lewis* the firſt.

11. *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *John* Duke of *Gorlitz*, (a Town of *Luſatia*) the Brother of *Sigiſmund*, by the gift of *Sigiſmund* her Uncle, being then alive, the better to fit her for the Bed of *Anthony* of *Bourgogn* Duke of *Brabant*; after whoſe deceaſe ſhe married *John* the 3. Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *&c.* But having no Iſſue by either of them, ſhe ſold her intereſt in this Dukedom to Duke *Philip* the Good.

12. *Philip* the Good ſucceeded on the Sale aforeſaid made by the ſaid *Elizabeth*, in purſuance of the Contract and Agreement made at her firſt Marriage, for ſettling this Eſtate in the Houſe of *Burgundy*. Of whom, and his Succeſſors in theſe *Belgick* Provinces, we ſhall ſpeak hereafter.

The Arms are *B.* ſix Barrulets *A.* ſupporting a Lion *G.* crowned and armed *Or*.

7. *LIMBOURG.*

THE greateſt of the Eſtates of *Belgium* for extent of Territory, at the time of their Incorporating in the Houſe of *Burgundy*, was that of *Brabant*, comprehending 5 of the 19 Provinces; that is to ſay, the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and *Brabant*, the Marquiſate of the Holy Empire, and the Seigniory of *Mechlin*, with the Sovereignty of *Liege* or *Luyck-land*.

LIMBOURG hath on the Eaſt the Dukedom of *Gulick* in High *Germany*, on the Weſt the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, on the North *Brabant*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*. The Soil is fruitful of all neceſſary Commodities, excepting Wines, the want whereof is recompenſed with moſt excellent Wheat, great ſtore of Fewel, and plenty of the beſt Iron Mines in all theſe Countries: all which Commodities it hath of ſo great excellency in their ſeveral kinds, that it is ſaid of them proverbially, that *that their Bread is better than Bread, their Fire hotter than Fire*, and *their Iron harder than Iron*. It is alſo well ſtored with medicinal Simples, and enriched with a Mine of Copperas, (by *Pliny* called *Lapis æroſus*, *lib.* 34. *c.* 10.) which being incorporated with Braſs makes Lattin, and increaſeth the Braſs by one third part. *Lapis æroſus multum æris habet, & ex eo fuſo fit æs*, as that Author hath it.

It is one of the leaſt of the *Belgick* Provinces, containing in it but 125 Villages, and no more than five walled Towns or Cities: *viz.* 1 *Limbourg*, which gives name to the whole Eſtate, pleaſantly ſeated on a Hill amongſt thady Woods, under which runneth the River *Weſdo*; which, having watred the whole Country, emptieth it ſelf into the *Maes*; well built, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, mounted upon a ſteep Precipice, of no eaſie acceſs. 2. *Valkenburg*, called by the *French Fauquemont*, a reaſonable fair Town, with a large Territory, two Dutch miles from *Maeſtricht*; conquered from *Reynold*, Lord hereof, by *John* the third Duke of *Brabant*. 3. *Dalem*, a little Town with a Caſtle, the Territory thereof extending beyond the *Maes*; conquered by *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, of that name the ſecond. 4. *Rhode le Duc*, a little old Town with as old a Caſtle, half a league from *Valkengborg*. 5. *Carpen*, ſituate between *Gulick* and *Colen*, beautified with a Collegiate-Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, in which there is a Governour with a good Garriſon for defence of the place. Each of theſe Towns hath Juriſdiction on the parts adjoyning, but with Appeal unto the Chancery at *Brabant*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract, and the Biſhoprick of *Liege* adjoyning, were the *Eburones*. When it was firſt made an Earldom, I am yet to ſeek. Moſt probable it is, that lying within the Verge of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne*, it was at firſt a member of that Earldom alſo, diſmembred from it for the Portion of ſome younger Son, as *Luxemburg* and *Namur* were, or ſeized on by ſome ſtrong Pretender (as *Gulick* was) when *Godfrey* and *Baldwin* Dukes of *Lorrain*, and the direct Heirs of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, were abſent in the Wars of the *Holly Land*. But whenſoever & by whomſoever it was made an Earldom, certain it is, that of an Earldom it was made a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, An. 1172. *Henry*, one of the Dukes hereof, married his Daughter *Margaret* to *Godfrey* the third, Duke of *Brabant*, which gave that Houſe ſome colour to pretend unto it; backed with a better Title on the death of another *Henry*, the laſt Duke of *Limbourg*, whoſe next Heir, *Adolph*, ſold it to *John* Duke of *Brabant*, pretending to it in the right of the former Marriage, *An.* 1293. But *Reynold* Earl of *Geldres*, thinking himſelf to have a better Title than *Adolph* in right of *Ermingrade* his Wife, the Daughter of *Herman*, a late Duke hereof, put in his plea, and challenged it by force of Arms: but being vanquiſhed and taken priſoner by the ſaid Duke *John* in the Battel of *Worancan*, was fain, for his Releaſe, to releaſe all his Claim and Title to the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, after that quietly enjoyed by the Dukes of *Brabant*, till they ſell both together to the Houſe of *Burgundy*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, a Lion Barrie of ten pieces, *Or* and *Gules*.

8. *LUYCK-LAND*, or, the Biſhoprick of *LIEGE*.

WEſtward of *Limbourg*, but a far mightier Eſtate than it, lieth *LUYCK-LAND*, as the *Dutch*, or the Biſhoprick of *LIEGE*, *Leodienſis*, as the *Latin* and *French* Writers call it; anciently under the protection of the Dukes of *Brabant*, and afterwards of the Princes of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, as Lords of that Country. By ſome it is accompted of and deſcribed as a part of *Germany*; but for the reaſons before mentioned I ſhall place it here. It is environed on all ſides with the *Belgick* Provinces, that is to ſay, with the Dukedom of *Limbourg* and the Earldom of *Namur* on the Eaſt, with *Brabant* on the North and Weſt, on the South with *Luxemburg*.

The Air hereof is very wholſom, and the Earth as fruitful, abounding with all kind of Grain and Fruits, with ſome ſtore of Wine; and as for Fleſh, Fiſh, Fowl and Veniſon, it hath very great plenty, and that too of an excellent taſte: leſs fertile it is in ſuch parts hereof as lie towards *Luxemburg*, in which it is moſt ſwelled with Hills, and over-ſpread with ſhady Woods, remainders of the great

great Forest of *Ardenne*, within which it stood. But the chief Riches of this Country is under ground, consisting in Mines of Lead and Iron, and some few of Gold; Quarries of Alabaster, mingled with all sorts of Marble; rich veins of Brimstone, and unexhaustible pits of Coal: which last it hath in such abundance, that there is digged within the compass of one league of the City of *Liege*, not only sufficient for that great City, but so much over-plus as, being sold at mean prices about the Country, amounts unto 100000 Ducats of yearly value. The Coal much sweeter than elsewhere, and of nature contrary to all other Coal, in that it is kindled with water, and quenched with oil, and the strong fervour of it taken off by casting Salt on it.

The whole Country containeth 24 walled Towns, and 1800 Villages. The principal of which are 1. *Liege* or *Luyck*, (in *Latine Leodium*) situate in a pleasant Valley environed with Hills, the *Meuse* entring it in two branches, accompanied with four lesser Riverets, which make in it many delightful Islands. The compass of it is about four miles; the ordinary Buildings very fair, all built of Stone; the Bishop's Palace a magnificent and sumptuous piece; the Churches in number forty, of which eight are Collegiate, 32 Parochial, all of them for their riches and beauty excelling all in any City of *France* or *Germany*. Besides these, there are so many Covents, Monasteries and Religious Houses about the Town, that taking all together they amount to an hundred; all of them of such fair Revenues, so well endowed, and the Religious persons there of so great authority, that it is called the *Paradise of Priests*, and that deservedly. It is also an Universlity of good antiquity, wherein were Students at one time 9 Kings Sons, 24 Dukes Sons, 29 Earls Sons, besides Barons and Gentlemen; the greatest part of which were Canons of the Church of S *Lambert*, which is the Cathedral of the City. Yet notwithstanding it hath tasted of the malice of Fortune as well as others, being first destroyed by the *Danes*, then by the *Normans*, twice taken, and once destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy*, *Anno* 1468. Subject it is unto the Bishop as Lord temporal of it, from whom (being long since made an Imperial City) there lieth an Appeal to the Chamber of *Spire*. 2. *Dinant*, upon the *Meuse*, near *Namur*, of very great Trasfick, till destroyed by *Charles* of *Burgundy* in the same year with *Liege*: hardly recovered of which wounds, it was again sacked by King *Henry* the second of *France*, *Anno* 1554. 3. *Muselck*, upon the *Meuse* or *Maes* also, a league from whence is the fair Nunnery of *Thuren*, of the same nature with that of *Mons* and others spoken of before: the like to which there is near 4. *Bilsen*, another Town of this Bishoprick; the Abbesses of each having the privilege of Coining both Gold and Silver. 5. *Looz*, by the *Dutch* called *Borchlom*, in the County of *Diestein*; made a County in the time of *Charles* the Great, the Title and possession of *Ogier* the *Dane*, so famous in the History of *Gallen* of *France* and others of the old Romances. 6. *Franchimont*, which gives the Title of a Marquess to the Bishop of *Liege*. 7. *Centron*, or S. *Truden*, a fair Town, so called of the Abbey dedicated to that Saint. 8. *Huy* or *Hoy*, so called of a violent River which there runs into the *Meuse*. 9. *Tungres*, the chief City of the *Tongri*, which together with the *Eburones* were once the inhabitants of this Tract; in which are still the ruines of a Temple consecrated to *Hercules*. Anciently it was an Episcopal See, translated hence to *Maestricht*, and at last to *Liege*; and in those times so great and of such renown that *Attila* the *Hun* destroyed in it 100 Churches; now but a very small Town, and not worth the mentioning but for these Antiquities. Eight leagues from hence, amongst the shady Thickets of the Forest of *Ardenne*, is 10. that so celebrated Village and those famous hot Baths frequented from all the places of *Europe*, called the *Spa*; not so pleasant as wholsom, not so wholsom as famous. Yet are they good for sundry diseases, as the Tertian Ague, the Dropsie, the Stone, the Exulceration of the Lungs, the Sciatica, etc. They are of most virtue in *July*, because they are then hotest; and to such as tast them they relish much of Iron, from some Iron Mines, it seemeth, through which the waters run, which feed them. These Baths were of great fame in the time of *Pliny*, who doth thus describe them: *Tungri Civitas fontem habet insignem, plurimis bullis stillantem, ferruginei saporis, quod ipsum non nisi in fine potus intelligitur. Purgat hic corpora, febres tertianas discutit calculorumque vitia.* So he, *lib.* 31. *c.* 2. agreeably to the nature of them at this present time.

This Country (not taking the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, though now reckoned as a part thereof, into this accompt) followed the same Fortunes with the rest of *Belgica*, till the Conquest of it by the *French*, by whom it was made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, in the division of which Kingdom between the Kings of *France* and *Germany*, it fell unto the share of the Kings of *France*, as lying almost wholly on the West or *French* side of the River *Maes*, which parted their possessions in that broken Kingdom. Won from *Lotharius* the *French* King (the last but one of the *Caroline* Race) by *Otho* the 2. it was by him made part of the Dukedom of *Lorrain* then by him erected, and continued as a part thereof, till sold by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrain* to the Bishops of *Liege*, (of which more anon) since which time it hath been the Patrimony of those wealthy Prelates. As for the Bishoprick of *Liege*, it was founded at *Tungres*, as before was said; after the sackage of which City by *Attila* it was removed *Anno* 498 by S. *Servatius* unto *Maestricht*. But the people of *Maestricht* having martyred S. *Lambert* their Bishop, *Anno* 710, by *Hubert*, his designed Successor, with the leave of Pope *Constantine*, it was translated to this place, and a Cathedral Church here founded by the name of S. *Lambert*. His Successors did so well husband their advantages, that they did not only buy the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but the City and Territory of *Liege*, sold unto *Speletus* and *Obertus* successively Bishops of it by *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* Duke of *Lorrain*, at his departure hence to the *Holy Land*; not much increased since that in Lands, though they be in Titles, the Bishop being stiled a Prince of the Empire, Duke of *Bouillon*, Marquess of *Franchimont*, Earl of *Loetz* and *Hasbain*. Yet are not his ordinary Revenues above 300000 Ducats yearly; his Subjects living very well under him, at easie Rents, and growing for the most part unto good estates. An argument whereof may be, that when the *Liegeois* had rebelled against *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, (under whose Clientele they were as Dukes of *Brabant*) they bought their Peace of him at the price of 600000 florens of the *Rhene*, to be paid in six years. After which again rebelling against *Charles* the Warlike, as they have been observed to be the most rebellious City in *Europe*, excepting *Gaunt*) they were able to wage 30000 men; but not being able to withstand the Forces of their Lord Protector, they fell into that miserable destruction spoken of before. Since that time they have lived with more moderation under the protection of the Princes of the House of *Austria*: but were counted Neutrals in the Quarrels betwixt the King of *Spain* and the *States Confederate*, as formerly between the *Spaniard* and the *French*; though many times they suffer in the contestation.

Southward hereof, betwixt it and *Luxemberg*, lieth the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, subject unto the Bishops of *Liege*; but a State distinct, and holden by a different Title. It taketh up a great part of that Country which

more particularly and ſpecially is called the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, with the Woods thereof in many places over-ſhadowed; but not unfurniſhed of fair Towns and wealthy Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Loni*, and 2. *Muſon-Court*, deſtroyed by *Charles* the fifth in his War againſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Duke of *Bouillon*, but on the Peace enſuing repaired again. 3. *Sauſi*, and 4. *Floringe*, Fiefs, as before is ſaid, of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, but poſſeſſed by the Soveraigns of *Sedan*, ſince the time that *Robert* Earl of *Mark* and Soveraign of *Sedan* had them in Marriage with *Joan* his Wife, the right Heir thereof, from whom came *Robert* Earl of *Mark*, the firſt Duke of *Bouillon* of that Family. The laſt a pretty Town, till deſtroyed by the *French*, in the Wars betwixt *Henry* and *Philip* the ſeconds, Kings of *France* and *Spain*, ſince paſſing in account as a principal Village. 5. *Hierk*, in the Foreſt of *Ardenne*, the cauſe of the great War betwixt *Charles* the fifth and *Robert* Duke of *Bouillon*, ſpoken of before; the Emperour having paſſed ſentence in behalf of the *Embries*, who laid claim unto it, and *Robert* favouring the pretenſions of the Houſe of *Chinay*. 6. *Bouillon*, built on the ſide of a Hill near the River *Senoy*, a fair large City, and beautified with a goodly Caſtle on the top of the ſaid Hill, and commanding over a large and goodly Territory, ſo ſtrong, as well by Art as Nature, that before the uſe of great Ordnance it was held impregnable; much ſpoiled in the War betwixt *Charles* the Fifth and *Robert* of *Mark*, and toſſed from one Maſter to another in a little time, for being taken from Earl *Robert* by the power of *Charles*, it was from him gotten by the *French Anno* 1552, and finally reſtored to the Biſhop of *Liege* by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *An.* 1559, but without prejudice to the Claim and Title of the Prince of *Sedan*. So that there are no fewer than three diſtinct Families which at this time enjoy the Title of Dukes of *Bouillon*, that is to ſay, the Biſhop of *Liege*, who hath precedency of Title, and the poſſeſſion of the City, the Houſe of *de la Tour*, who hold *Floringe*, *Sauſi*, and ſome other pieces; and the Heirs-males of the collateral Line of the Houſe of *Mark*, who hold *Lumaigne*, *Rochfort*, and ſome other places, but of leſs importance.

This Dukedom, once a part of the great Earldom of *Ardenne*, in the diviſion of that Eſtate betwixt the Children of *Ricuine*, Prince or Earl thereof, fell to the ſhare of *Godfrey* his eldeſt Son, (*Sedan* with its appurtenances then belonging to it) with the Title of Earl of *Ardenne* and *Bouillon*. By *Godfrey* his Son it was united to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, who ſucceeded into that Eſtate after *Charles* and *Otho*; and by another *Godfrey* the firſt Duke of *Lorrain* diſmembred from it, and given in Dower with his Siſter *Ida*, at her Marriage with *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardy*. Of theſe was born the famous *Godfrey*, commonly called *Godfrey of Bouillon*, either becauſe he was here educated, or in regard he was Duke hereof before he did attain to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*; who, to provide himſelf of neceſſaries for the Wars of the *Holy Land*, (ſo fortunately conveyed and conducted by him) ſold firſt this Dukedom unto *Obert*, as afterwards the whole Country of *Luyck land* to *Speutus*, Biſhops of *Liege* ſucceſſively, and their Succeſſors for ever; which though accounted by moſt Writers for a part of *Luyck land*, or of the Biſhoprick of *Liege*, call it which you will, was notwithſtanding held by thoſe great Prelates as a State diſtinct, and governed under them by the Eſtates of the Country, from whoſe Sentence there lay no Appeal. The maintenance of which Priviledges, on an Appeal made by the *Embries* unto *Charles* the fifth, coſt *Robert* Earl of *Mark* ſo dear, who had not long before purchaſed this Eſtate of his Brother *Eberhard*, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*, as was ſaid before. The reſt of the Story we have had already in our deſcription of *Sedan*: we will now look upon the Princes which have born theſe Titles.

The Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Ardenne*.

1. *Godfrey*, the eldeſt Son of *Ricuine*, Prince or Earl of *Ardenne*, the firſt Earl of *Bouillon*, and Husband of *Matilda*, a Daughter of the Emperour *Otho* the 2.
2. *Godfrey* II. Son of *Godfrey* the 1. who in the year 1004, by adoption of Duke *Otho* his Couſin, and the power of *Henry* the 2. Emperour, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*.
1019 3. *Gozelo*, Brother of *Godfrey* the 2. Duke of *Lorrein* and *Bouillon*.
1044 4. *Godfrey* III. Son of *Gozelo*.
5. *Euſtace*, Earl of *Boulogne*, and *Ida* his Wife, Daughter of *Godfrey* the 3. by him endowed at her Marriage with the Dukedom of *Bouillon*.
6. *Godfrey* IV. ſurnamed *of Bouillon*, Son of *Euſtace* and *Ida*, on the death of his Uncle *Godfrey*, ſucceeded in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, Anno 1078, and died King of *Jeruſalem*. Going unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, he ſold this Dukedom to *Obert* Biſhop of *Liege* and his Succeſſors, *Anno* 1096, who did accordingly enjoy it till the year 1509 or thereabouts; when it was ſold by *Eberhard* of *Mark* to his Brother *Robert*, of whoſe deſcent and Succeſſors you may take this view in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Soveraigns of *Sedan* and Dukes of *Bouillon* of the Houſe of *Mark*.

1. *Engelbert*, the ninth Earl of *Mark* in *Germany*, by marrying with the Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, added *Sedan*, *Jamais*, &c. to the Houſe of *Mark*.
2. *Everhard*, ſecond Son of *Engelbert* by the Heir of *Aremberg*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
3. *John*, Son of *Everhard*, Earl of *Mark*, Lord of *Aremberg*, *Sedan*, &c.
4. *Everhard* II. Brother of *John*, Earl of *Mark*, &c.
5. *John* II. Earl of *Mark*, Son of *Everhard* the 2.
6. *Robert* of *Mark*, the 2. Son of *John* the 2. Lord of *Sedan*, his elder Brother *Everhard* ſucceeding in the Eſtates of *Aremberg*. He added *Florenge* and *Sauſi*, Towns of the Dukedom of *Bouillon*, to his other pieces.
7. *Robert* II. Son of *Robert* the 1. Soveraign of *Sedan*, and Duke of *Bouillon*, which Dukedom he purchaſed of *Everhard* his Brother, Biſhop and Cardinal of *Liege*.
1535 8. *Robert* III. Son of *Robert* the 2. one of the Marſhals of *France*, Soveraign of *Sedan*, and Titulary Duke of *Bouillon*.
1556 9. *Henry-Robert*, Son of *Robert* the 3.
10. *Robert-William*, Son of *Henry-Robert*, zealous in the Reformed Religion, and a great follower of *Henry* of *Vendoſme* King of *Navarre*, to whom, dying at *Geneva An.* 1588, he bequeathed the care of his Eſtates.
11. *Charlotte*, the Siſter of *Robert-William*, married by *Hen.* of *Navarre* (then King of the *French*) to *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne*.
12. *Henry de la Tour*, Viſcount of *Turenne* in *France*, deſcended from the Heirs-general of *Euſtace* Earl of *Boulogne* and Duke of *Bouillon*, by Marriage of the Lady *Charlotte*, and the gift of *Henry* the 4. of *France*, ſucceeded in the Soveraignty of *Sedan* and Title of *Bouillon*; a Proteſtant, and the Founder of the *Schola Illuſtris* in *Sedan*. 13. *De*

13. *De la Tour*, Son of *Henry* by one of the Daughters of *William* Prince of *Orange*, succeeded his Father in his Estates, but not in his Religion also, which, to ingratiate himself with the *French* King, he exchanged for Papistry, made thereupon one of the Marshals of *France*, and now living, *Anno* 1648.

9. BRABANT. 10. The MARQUISATE. and 11. MECHLIN.

THese I have joined together, though distinct Estates, because they have a long time followed the same fortune, and that the two last do no otherwise differ from the first than the parts from the whole; the *Marquisate* and *Mechlin* being now reckoned as parts of *Brabant*, and included in it.

1. *BRABANT* is bounded on the East with *Luyckland*, or the Bishoprick of *Liege*, on the West with the River *Scheld* and a part of *Flanders*, on the North with the *Maes*, which severeth it from *Holland* and *Gelderland*, and on the South with *Hainault*, *Namur*, and a part of *Luyckland*. So called *quasi Brackland*, that is to say, a barren Land as at first it was; or from the old *Bratuspantium*, which *Cæsar* placeth in this Tract; but from whether of the two is not yet determined.

The Air hereof is generally very wholsom and good, and the Soil naturally fruitful, excepting *Kempenland*, (being the parts thereof lying towards the North) which being barren of it self, is made indifferently fertile by keeping Cattel. Soiling the ground, and other arts of good Husbandry. The people live in most freedom, and are the best priviledged of any in *Belgium*. A thing for which they are more beholden to the Prince's goodness, than their own great wits; being noted to be none of the wisest, especially as they grow in age, when most men learn wisdom. *Brabanti, quò magis senescunt, eo magis stulteſcunt*, as *Erasmus*.

The length hereof, from *S Gertruydenberg* to *Gemblours*, North and South, is 22 *Dutch* or *German* miles; from *Helmont* to *Bergen op Zoome*, East and West, 20 of the same miles; the whole compass 80. Within which circuit are contained 26 walled Towns, and Villages with Parish-Churches 718; of which the odd 18, called *Francks* or Market-Towns, enjoy the Priviledges of walled Town or Cities, though unwalled themselves.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Hertogen Bosch*, or the *Bosch*, as the *Dutch*, *Bois le Duc*, or *Bolduc*, as the *French*; and *Sylva Ducis*, or *Boscum Ducis*, as the *Latines* call it: each name derived according to their several Languages, from a pleasant Wood, belonging to the Dukes of *Brabant*, where the Town now stands, situate on a little River called *Dorse*, some two Leagues from the *Maes*, near the borders of *Gelderland*. A large and well-built Town, very strongly fortified, and of great trade for Clothing, here being made yearly in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine* 20000 Clothes, worth 200000 Crowns to the Clothier or Draper: Made an Episcopal See *Anno* 1559, the Cathedral, which is fixed in the Church of Saint *John*, being fair and large, and beautified with one of the goodliest Dials in the Christian world. This is the principal Town of *Brabant*, (properly and distinctly so called) comprehending under it the four Countries of *Kempenland*, *Maesland*, *Peelland*, and *Osterwick*; and was taken by the Confederate *States* from the King of *Spain*, after a long and chargeable Siege, *Anno* 1628. 2. *Tilmont*, on the little River *Geet*, once chief of *Brabant*, but long since decayed. 3. *Aerschot*, on the little River *Demere*, which gives the title of Duke to them of the noble House of *Croy*, descended from the Kings of *Hungary*, (of which we spake before at large when we were in *Picardy*) the Dukes hereof (advanced unto that honour by *Charles* the fifth) being men of greatest Revenue and Authority of any in *Belgium*. 4. *Bergen op Zoome*, so called from the River *Zoome* upon which it is situate, about half a league from the influx of it into the *Scheld*, and not far from the Sea, which gives it a reasonable good Haven. A Town of great strength by nature, but more strongly fortified; famous for being made a Marquisate by *Charles* the fifth *An.* 1553; more for the notable Resistance which it made to the Marquels *Spinola*, *An.* 1622. 5 *Breda*, upon the River *Merck*, a Town pleasantly seated, well fortified, and of great Revenue, having under it the Town and Territory of *Steenberg*, the Franchise of *Rosindale*, and the Seigniory of *Osterhout*; the Residence, Barony, and chief Town of the Princes of *Orange*, from whom being taken by the *Spaniard* in the beginning of those Wars, it was again recovered by some venturous Gentlemen, who, hiding themselves in a Boat covered over with Turf, were conveyed into the Castle, which they easily mastered, and made the Prince Lord of it again; after re-taken by the *Spaniard An.* 1625. but now in the possession of its natural Owners, to whom it came by the right of the House of *Nassau*, by the Marriage of *Engelbert* the 7. Earl of that House, with *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, about the year 1400. 6. *Diest*, on the River *Dennere*, a good Town and invested with a goodly Territory, belonging to the Prince of *Orange*, whose Ancestors of the House of *Nassau* had it in exchange for some other Lands of the Duke of *Cleve*; and in right hereof he is Burgrave of the City of *Antwerp*. 7. *Grinbergen*, an ancient Barony, with a large Jurisdiction, descendible on the youngest Son only, after the manner of *Burg English*, as our Lawyers call it. 8. *Gertruydenberg*, standing on the *Douge*, not far from the influx of it into the *Maes*, the farthest town in the North of *Brabant*, where it joins to *Holland*; which makes it a matter of dispute betwixt those Provinces, to which of them it doth belong. A Town of great trade for Fishing, plenty of Salmons and Sturgeon being taken here, but of Shads especially, whereof 18000 are sometimes caught in a day, salted, and sent abroad into Foreign parts. It acknowledgeth the Prince of *Orange* for the Lord thereof, as doth also. 9. *Grave*, a good Town upon the *Maes*, bought by these Princes of the King of *Spain* without consent of the *States*, without whose approbation no part of the Domain is to be dismembred. 10. *Maestricht*, (in *Latine Trajectum ad Mosam*) so called of a Ferry over the *Maes* in former times; supplied now with a goodly Stone-bridge in the place thereof. A fair and goodly Town, beautified with two Collegiate-Churches, in one of which the Dukes of *Brabant* were always Canons; subject in part to the Bishop of *Liege*, and partly to the Duke of *Brabant*. The Children are subject to that Prince to whom the Mother was subject at the time of the Birth, without relation to the Father; according to that Maxime of the Civil Law, *Partus sequitur ventrem*. And if a Stranger come to live there, he must declare to which of the two he will be subject. Yet is the Duke of *Brabant* the chief Soveraign of it, he only having the power of Coinage, and of granting Pardon to Offenders: and as a Town of this Dukedom it was besieged and taken by the Confederate *States* Anno 1632.

Here is also within the limits of this Dukedom the Town and Seigniory of *Ravestein*, situate on the banks of the *Maes*, held by the Dukes of *Cleve* of the Duke of *Brabant*, but no otherwise subject: and on the same River the Town and Country of *Horn*, a Fief Imperial, beautified with a strong Castle and a goodly Territory, in which is *Wiert*, the Residence of the Earls of *Horn*, descended of the ancient House of *Montmorency* in *France*.

2. The *MARQVISATE OF THE EMPIRE* ſo called becauſe the fartheſt Bounds and Marches of the *German* Empire frontiering on *Flanders*, which appertained unto the Soveraignty of the Crown of *France*, comprehendeth four of the beſt Towns in *Brabant*, with very large and ſpacious Territories adjoining to them: *viz.* 1. *Lovain*, on the River *Dile*, about four *Engliſh* miles in compaſs; but in that compaſs much of the ground is taken up with Vineyards, Gardens, Meadows and pleaſant Fields, which make the ſituation far more delightful than if all built and peopled. It was the Mother-Town of *Brabant*, and ſometimes gave the Title of an Earl to the Dukes hereof: afterwards was made an Univerſity by Duke *John* the 4. *An.* 1426. wherein are contained about 20 Colledges, ſuch as they be, much priviledged, and enriched with Penſions for publick Readers, by King *Philip* the 2. 2ly, *Bruxels*, (*Bruxella*) the Seat of the ancient Dukes of *Brabant*, and of the Dukes of *Burgundy* alſo, after they came to be Lords of thoſe Countries; ſeated upon the *Sinne*, and other ſweet Springs and Riverets, which make it one of the ſweeteſt ſituations in all *Europe*; having withall a goodly Chanel made by Art from *Bruſſels* to the River *Dile*, and from thence to the *Scheld*, the charge whereof amounted unto 500000 Crowns. It is of the ſame compaſs with *Lovain*, the Building ſumptuous, and the Town very rich, not only in regard that it is the ordinary Seat of the Prince or his Regent, and the Chancery for all *Brabant* and the Dutchy of *Limbourg*, but in regard of the rich Manufactures of Armour and Cloth of *Arras*, of Silk, Gold and Silver, which are there induſtriouſly purſued. 3. *Nivelle*, on the borders of *Hainault*, in a very rich and fruitful Soil, remarkable for the abundance of fine Linen which is therein made, but moſt of all for a very rich Nunnery (or rather a Nurſery) of noble Ladies, of the ſame nature with thoſe of *Mons* and others before deſcribed. 4. *Antwerp*, ſituate on a goodly Plain on the River *Scheld*, above 17 leagues from the Sea, but furniſhed with eight Chanels cut out of the River for the tranſport of Commodities, one of the which is capable of 100 great Ships. The private Buildings are very handſom, but the publick ſumptuous; the chief whereof were reckoned the Church of *Noſtre-Dame*, the Burſe, the Town-houſe, and the Houſe of the Eaſterlings or Eaſtern Merchants. Well peopled it is, and of ſo great Trade in former times, that it was held to be the richeſt Empory of the Chriſtian world; the Commodities here bought and ſold amounting to more in one month than thoſe of *Venice* in two years. The cauſes of which ſudden growth and increaſe of Trading are ſaid to be theſe. 1. The two Marts holden here every year, either of them during ſix weeks, in which time no man's perſon could be arreſted, or his goods diſtrained. 2. The King of *Portugal* having in the year 1503 diverted the courſe of Merchandiſe from *Alexandria* and *Venice* to the City of *Lisbon*, kept here his Factories, and ſent hither his Spices and other *Indian* Commodities: for which cauſe the Merchants in the year 1516 forſook *Bruges* in *Flanders*, and ſetled here. And 3. many of the Nobility and Gentry, during the long and bloody Wars betwixt *France* and *Spain*, forſook their Country-houſes, and repaired hither: by means whereof *Antwerp*, in a very little time, grew bigger by 3000 houſes than it had been formerly. But as the growth hereof was ſudden, ſo the fall ſenſible; occaſioned through the yoaking it with a Citadel by the Duke of *Alva* which made Merchants afraid to reſort any longer thither, as a place of little freedom and leſs ſecurity; but chiefly by blocking up the Haven, and intercepting the Trade at Sea, by the more powerful *Hollanders*, which hath removed this great Traffick to *Amſterdam* and other Towns of their Country. So that now the chief ſupport of it is the reputation which it hath of being an Imperial City, the place of receit for the Kings Revenues, and a Biſhops See founded here in the year 1559, which draweth hither ſome reſort of Lawyers and Church-men.

3. The *Seigniory* of *MECHLIN* conſiſteth only of that City and a ſmall Territory of 9 Villages adjoining to it. The City is ſeated on both ſides of the River *Dile*, which ebbeth and floweth to the Town and a league above it, and running through the very midſt, maketh in it a number of ſmall Iſlands, to the great ornament and commodity of it. A goodly Town, containing ſeven Pariſh-Churches, beſides the Cathedral, being the See of an Archbiſhop, founded here in the year 1559. Strong, in regard it may be eaſily drowned on all ſides; and of great wealth, by reaſon of the many Manufactures of Linen, great Artillery of Braſs and Iron, Bells, Painted works, and others of like uſe and ornament. And being ſituate in a manner in the Centre of *Brabant*, diſtant 4 Leagues from *Antwerp*, *Lovain*, and *Bruxels*, it was made by *Charles* the Warlike (who loved the place) the ordinary Seat of the great Council of State, to which Appeals are made from the other Provinces. But yet it was more beautiful in former times than it is at the preſent; the City being much defaced by firing 200 Barrels of Powder *Anno* 1546, and by the Sackage of the *Spaniard*, by whom it was taken by force *Anno* 1572. Moſt memorable at this time for a famous Nunnery, like to that of *Nivelle*, wherein are ſometimes 1600 Nuns, who when they pleaſe may leave their Cloiſter and be married. A Town though in *Brabant*, yet not of it, but a State diſtinct: for which cauſe many Women at the time of their Child-birth uſe to lay down their Bellies in ſome Village of *Brabant*, that their Children may be capable of the Priviledges and Immunities of that Country. The principal of the Villages is named *Leeſt* or *Heyſt*, pleaſantly ſeated on an Hill, the reſidue of the Burroughs lying at the foot thereof. Both Town and Villages were the Patrimony heretofore of the noble Family of the *Bertholds*; which failing in the perſon of *Gaulter*, ſlain in the Battel of *Worancan* by *John* Duke of *Brabant*, it fell the one half to the Biſhop of *Liege*, who ſold his moyety to *John* the 2. Duke of *Brabant*; the other to the Earl of *Geldres*, who in the year 1333 ſold his part unto *Lewis* of *Malain*, Earl of *Flanders*. But he ſold nothing but the Title, *John* the third Duke of *Brabant* having ſeized upon it, and added it to his Eſtate: the occaſion of ſome quarrel between thoſe Princes, compoſed by the Marriage of that *Lewis* with the Heir of *Brabant*.

But to return again unto *Brabant* it ſelf, the ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aduatici* and ſome part of the *Tungri*: it was accompted by the *Romans* a part of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, and by the *French* a Province of the Kingdom of *Eaſt-France* or *Auſtraſia*; the Southern parts thereof towards *Hainault* under the Governance and Command of the Earls of *Ardenne*; the Northern parts lying towards the Sea, and terribly infeſted with the Depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*, committed to the care of ſome principal Officers, whom they called *Lords Wardens of the Marches*. *Theodebert* Son of *Theodorick* the firſt King of *Auſtraſia*, accompanied with *Utilo* a *Boiarian* Prince, having repulſed theſe common Robbers, obtained for *Utilo*, of his Father, the command of thoſe Countries, and poſſeſſion of a great part of them alſo, by the Title of Lord Marqueſs of *Antwerp*: the fourth from whom, called *Arnulph*, was the firſt Maior of the Palace (of this Houſe) to the Kings of *France*, made as it were hereditary unto his Succeſſors. By *Dagobert* the firſt, ſole King of the *French*, that part of this Country which was under the Earls of *Ardenne* being taken from them, the whole Eſtate was conferred on *Anſegiſus*, the Son of *Arnulph*, with the Title of Duke of *Brabant*. The actions and atchievements of ſo many of them as were

Maiors

Maiors of the Palace we have already seen when we were in *France*. The whole Succession follows here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses of *Antwerp* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the *German* or *Boiarian* Race.

1. *Utilo*, Son of *Theodore*, the first Duke, and Nephew of *Aldiagerius*, the last King of the *Boiarians*.
2. *Hugopert*, Son of *Utilo*.
563 3. *Asopert*, the Son of *Hugopert*, and Husband of *Plythilda*, Daughter of *Clotaire* the first of *France*.
579 4. *Arnoldus*, the Son of *Asopert*.
601 5. *Arnulph*, Son of *Arnoldus*, the first Maior of the Palace of this Family.
641 6. *Ansegisus*, Son of *Arnulphus*, Marquess of *Antwerp*, and Maior of the Palace, by *Dagobert* the first made Duke of *Brabant*.
679 7. *Pepin*, surnamed the Fat, Son of *Ansegisus*, Successor to his Father in his Honours, Offices and Estates, and was herein succeeded by
714 8. *Charles*, the base Son of *Pepin*, for his valiant acts surnamed *Martel*, there being no lawful Issue of his Father living.
741 9. *Pepin* II. surnamed the Short, Son of *Charles Martel*, having managed the Affairs of *France* from the death of his Father for the space of ten years, usurped the Kingdom, and was solemnly crowned King at *Soissons* by *Boniface* Archbishop of *Mentz*, on *May day*, *An.* 751. The Dukedom of *Brabant* returning by this means to the Crown of *France*, continued a Province of that Kingdom, till the division of the *French* Empire among the Sons and Nephews of *Lewis* the Godly; when it was made a Member of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*. Not long before the fatal period of that Kingdom, having been many years before divided by the River *Meuse* betwixt the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, (each taking to themselves the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*) it was by *Lotharius* the 3. of *France*, in whose share it lay, conferred on *Charles* his younger Brother, together with the Title of the Duke of *Brabant*. But indeed this Donation proved of little worth, the greatest part hereof, together with the rest of that part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain* which of right belonged unto the *French*, being conquered by the Emperor *Otho* the 2. and by him added to the Empire. And yet this also fell out in fine to the profit of *Charles*, who being Cousin-german to this *Otho* the 2. by the Lady *Gerburg*, (Sister of *Otho* the 1. and Wife of *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, K. of *France*, the Father of *Charles*) was by him invested into the great Dukedom of *Lorrain*, that Dukedom in the full latitude and extent thereof containing the modern Dukedoms of *Lorrain*, *Gulick* and *Brabant*, with the Lands of *Luyck*, with parts of the Lands of *Triers* and *Colen*. *Brabant* at that time had the name of *Bass* (or *Low*) *Lorrain*, and as in memory thereof, there is a Court for criminal and civil Causes held at *Gennap* (one of the Franks or Market-Towns of *Brabant*) called *La Court de Lorrain* to this day. An Estate first erected, as before is said, by the Emperor *Otho* the 2. who giving it to the said *Charles* of *France*, reserved out of it, as a Dower for his said Aunt *Gerburg*, the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Bruxels*, *Nivelle* and *Antwerp*, lying on the Marches of his Dominions towards *France*, which (with reference perhaps to the old Marquisate of *Antwerp*) he honoured with the title of *Marquisate of the holy Empire*. *An.* 981. *Gerburg*, the Sister and Heir of *Otho*, the Son of *Charles* above mentioned, being put besides her hopes of that fair Inheritance by her Brother *Otho*, (who gave it to *Geoffrey* of *Ardenne*) succeeded her Grandmother, the first *Gerburg*, in the Towns and Territories of *Lovain*, *Nivelle*, and *Bruxels*, which she conveyed in Marriage to *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Reyner* of *Hainault*, with the Title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Henry* his Son, having made himself Master of *Antwerp* also, was by that means possessed of the whole Marquisate, but still retained the Title of Earl of *Lovain*. *Godfrey* the 6. Earl, having inlarged the bounds of his Dominions by the Conquest of the rest of this Country, *Godfrey* & *Baldwin*, Dukes of *Lorrain*, being then absent in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, was by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth (whose Sister he married) created the first Duke of *Brabant*. *John*, the first Duke of that name, added hereunto the Dutchie of *Limbourg*; and *John* the third, the Seigniory of *Malines* or *Mechlin*. How it became united to the House of *Burgundy* is to be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *Lovain* and Dukes of *BRABANT* of the Race of *Charlemagne*.

1004 1. *Lambert*, one of the Sons of *Regnier* Earl of *Hainault*, made the first Earl of *Lovain*, in right of *Gerburg*.
1015 2. *Henry* the Son of *Lambert*, who took *Antwerp*, making it the head City of the Marquisate of the holy Empire.
1046 3. *Lambert* II. Son of *Henry*.
1054 4. *Henry* II. Son of *Lambert* the second.
1068 5. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the second.
6. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third.
1096 7. *Godfrey*, surnamed *Barbatus*, Brother of *Henry* the fourth, in right of his descent from *Charles* Duke of *Lorrain* challenged the Country, and recovered it from the House of *Ardenne*; and finally by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth was created the first Duke of *Brabant*, *Anno* 1108. Father of *Adelize*, the second Wife of our *Henry* the first, and of *Josceline de Lovain*, the Progenitor of the (now) Earl of *Northumberland*.
1140 8. *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* II. Son of *Godfrey*.
1143 9. *Godfrey* or *Geofry* III. Son of *Godfrey* the 2.
1183 10. *Henry* V. Son of *Godfrey* the third.
1230 11. *Henry* VI. surnamed the Good, Son of *Henry* the fifth.
1247 12. *Henry* VII. surnamed the Magnanimous, by whose Marriage with *Sophia*, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, the Lantgravedom of *Hassia* came into this House, invested in it in the person of *Henry* his Son by the said *Sophia*.
1260 13. *John*, Son of *Henry* the seventh, took in the Dukedom of *Limbourg*, and destroyed the potent Family of the *Bertholds*: his younger Brother *Henry*, by another *Venter*, succeeding in *Hassia*.
14. *John* II. Son of *John* the first, bought of the Bishop of *Liege* the moyety or one half of *Mechlin*.
1312 15. *John* III. Son of *John* the second, added the whole Estate of *Mechlin* to the Dukedom of *Brabant*.
1355 16. *Joan*, the eldest Daughter of *John* the third, married to *Wenceslaus* the first Duke of *Luxemburg*, but died without Issue.
1406 17. *Anthony* of *Burgogne*, Son of *Philip* the Hardy and the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, daughter of *Lewis de Malain* Earl of *Flanders* and of *Margaret* the Sister and Heir of *Joan*, after the death of the said *Wenceslaus* and *Joan* his Wife, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, his elder

elder Brother *John* giving way unto it, at the request of their great Aunt *Joan*, the Proprietary of it.

1415 18. *John* IV. Son of *Anthony* by his first Wife *Joan*, Daughter of *Waleran* Earl of Saint *Paul*.

1426 19. *Philip*, the second Son of *Anthony*, and Brother of *John* the 4.

1430 20. *Philip* II. called the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son and Heir of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, elder Brother of *Anthony*, on the death of his two Cousin-germans, *John* and *Philip*, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Brabant*, as the direct Heir of the Lady *Margaret*, Wife to *Lewis de Malain*, and Daughter of *John* the third, the last Duke of *Brabant* of the House of *Lovain*. Of whose Successors more in another place.

The Arms hereof are *Sable*, a Lion *Or*.

12. *HOLLAND*. 13. *ZELAND*. 14. *WEST-FRIESLAND*.

HAving thus spoken of those Provinces which still continue in subjection to the K. of *Spain*, (except some few Towns in *Flanders* and *Brabant* before mentioned,) let us next look on those which have withdrawn their Obedience from him; beginning first with *Holland* and its Appendices, as of more power and consideration than all the rest. Which though distinct Provinces, and acting in their several capacities at the present time: yet having been always under the Command of the same Princes, they must be joined together in the Story of them, but shall be severally handled as to the Chorography.

HOLLAND hath on the East the *Zuider-See*, *Utrecht* and some part of *Gelderland*, on the West and North the *German* Ocean, on the South the Islands of *Zeland* and some part of *Brabant*. So called, as some think, but with little reason, *quasi Holt land*, that is to say a woody Country; as others, *quasi Hollow-land*, from the Bogs and Marishes and unsound footing on the same; and some will have it called so *quasi Hoy-land*, from the great quantity of Hay. But the learned *Junius*, not relishing any of the three, conceives that both this Country and the Isles of *Zeland*, being planted by some Colonies of *Danes* and *Normans*, (at the time of the Irruption of those Northern Nations) were called thus with reference to *Seland* and *Oeland*, two Islands of the *Baltick* Sea, out of which they came. The Reader hath good choice, and may please himself.

The Country for the most part lieth very low, insomuch that they are fain to fence it with Banks and Ramparts to keep out the Sea, and to restrain the Rivers within their bounds; so that in many places one may see the Sea far above the Land, and yet repulsed with those Banks: and it is withal so fenny and full of Marishes, that they are forced to trench it with innumerable Dikes and Chanels, to make it firm Land, and fit for dwelling; yet not so firm to bear either Trees or much Grain. But such is the Industry of the people and Trade they drive, that having little or no Corn of their own growth, they do provide themselves elsewhere; not only sufficient for their own spending, but wherewith to supply their neighbours: having no Timber of their own, they spend more Timber in building Ships and fencing their Water-courses than any Country in the World: having no Wine, they drink more than the people of the Country where it groweth naturally: and finally, having neither Flax nor Wool, they make more Cloth of both sorts than all the Countries in the world, except *France* and *England*.

The present Inhabitants are generally given to Seafaring lives, so that it is thought that in *Holland*, *Zeland*, and *West-Frieseland*, there are 2500 Ships of war and burthen. The Women are for the most part laborious in making Stuffs. Nay, you will hardly see a Child of four years of age that is not kept to work, and made to earn its own living; to the great commendation of their Government. The greatest of their natural Commodities is Butter and Cheese; of which, besides that infinite plenty which they spend in their own Houses, and amongst their Garrisons and Ships, they sell as much unto other Countries as comes to 100000 Crowns *per annum*. By which means, and by the greatness of their Fish-trade, spoken of before, they are grown so wealthy on the Land, and so powerful at Sea, that as *Flanders* heretofore was taken for all the *Netherlands*, so now *Holland* is taken generally for all the Provinces confederated in a League against the *Spaniard*.

The whole Compass of it is no more than 180 miles, no part thereof being distant from the Sea above three hours journey: and yet within that narrow Circuit there are contained no fewer than 23 walled Towns and 400 Villages; some situate in *North*, and others in *South-Holland*, as it stands divided. In *South-Holland* (being that part hereof that lieth next to *Zeland* and the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* passing from *Utrecht* unto *Leyden*) the principal Towns are, 1. *Dort*, (in *Latine Dordrectum*) formerly the Staple for *Rhenish* Wines, a large, rich, and well-peopled Town, anciently joined to the firm Land, but in the year 1421 rent from it by the violence of the Sea, and made an Island; of great command upon the Traffick of the *Maes* and the *Wael*, upon whose Confluence it stands, but of most note in these later times for an Assembly of Divines out of divers Countries following *Calvin's* Doctrine, for condemnation of the *Lutheran* or *Arminian* Tenets, concerning Universal Grace and Predestination, *Anno* 1618. 2. *Gorcbum*, situate on the *Wael*, where it meeteth with the *Linge*: a Town of great Trade and Riches, by reason of a daily Market of Cheese and Butter, brought hither in very great quantity; beautified anciently with a strong Castle and a fair Church, from the Steeple whereof one may behold 22 walled Towns, besides an infinite number of Villages. The Country is round about it called by that people *Van Arckel*, or the Land of *Hercules*, from an opinion that *Hercules* the *German* did there appoint his Camp, or rather from some Temple dedicated to him, in the place whereof the Lords of this Tract, who from hence took the name of *Arckel*, (*Arcueli* they are called in our *Latine* Writers) founded a Church unto the honour of the Virgin *Mary*, in the time of *Thierrie* the 2. Earl of *Holland*, by whom they were first setled in this Country. And here they flourished as Lords of *Gorcbum*, *Leerdam*, and the parts adjoining, till the year 1416; when falling to *John* L. of *Egmond*, by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *John* of *Arckellandt*, the last Lord hereof, and Mother of *Arnold* of *Egmond* D. of *Geldres*, it was by him sold to *William* the 6. Earl of *Holland*, and so again united unto that Estate. 3. *Rotterdam*, seated on a Dike or Chanel called the *Rotter*, not far from which at a place named *Rempen*, the *Leck*, one of the three main branches of the *Rhene*, falleth into the *Maes*: a strong, fair, and well-traded Port: the birth-place of the learned *Erasmus*. 4. *Schoonhoven*, situate on the *Leck*, a fair Town, having a commodious Haven. 5. *Goude*, one of the six principal Towns of *Holland*, rich and well fortified, seated on the River called *Issel*, which rising about *Isselstein*, spoken of anon, falleth into the *Leck* at a place called *Isselmond*, and therefore different from the branch of the *Rhene* so called, which giveth name to *Over-Issel*. On the same River also stand. 6. *Oudwater*, and 7. *Isselstein*: this last belonging properly to the Prince of *Orange*; the first of

of great Trade for making Cables and Cords for shipping. 8. *Lyden*, or *Lugdunum Batavorum*, an University, founded *Anno* 1564. The Town consisteth of 41 Islands, to which they pass partly by Boats, partly by Bridges, whereof there are 144, and of them 104 builded with Stone. Here is in this Town a Castle, said to have been built by *Hengist* the *Saxon* at his return out of *England*. And not far off stood the famous Nunnery of *Rainsburg*, of the same nature with those of *Monts* and *Nivelle* before described; so liberally endowed, that 2000 persons did there daily receive relief. 9. *Vianen*, on the *Leck*, a Seignioury distinct from *Holland*, pertaining anciently to the Lords of *Brederode*: And so was also 10. *Hueseden*, a good old Town, once beautified with a fair Castle, and a goodly Territory, but belonging to the Earls of *Cleve*, of which House it had Lords of its own, as knowledging no subjection to the Earls of *Holland*, from the year 850, or thereabouts, to the year 1290, at which time *Thedorick* the 9. of *Cleve* at a merry meeting transferred the Soveraignty thereof to *Florence* Earl of *Holland*, of that name the fifth. Finally, having continued in the possession of 20 Lords of that Family, on the expiration of that Line in the person of *John* the 9. dying without Issue, *Anno* 1334. it was made a member of this Earldom (after some sharp disputes with the Dukes of *Brabant*, claiming it by a Relignation of the last Lord *John*) by *William* of *Bavaria*, Earl of *Holland* and *Hainault*, *Anno* 1361, or thereabouts. 11. *Leerdam*, upon the River *Linge*, which together with *Yselstein*, before mentioned, fell unto *Philip* Prince of *Orange* in right of his descent from the Earls of *Bueren*. 12. *Delf*, a Town of great Trade for Cloathing, but more by reason of the Cloth of *England*, brought thither in great quantities by the *English* Merchants, than for any great store of their own making; by reason of the concourse which that Trade brings with it, rich, large, and well-built, beautified with spacious Streets and goodly Churches; the birth-place of that monstrous Heretick *David George*, who called himself *King*, and *Christ immortal*, as is before said.

In that part thereof which is called *North-Holland*, lying betwixt the middle Chanel of the *Rhene* and the *Zuider-See*, the Towns or Cities of most importance are, 1. *Alkmaer*, encompassed with deep Fens and Marishes; a rich Town, in regard of the great plenty of Butter and Cheese which is made about it, more than in any place of *Holland*, and famous for the defeat which the Duke of *Alva* received before it. For he in the beginning of the *Low-Country* Troubles, having with the loss of 20000 of his own men forced *Harlem*, laid his Siege round about this Town. Had he left any way for the Souldiers to have fled thence, the Town had been abandoned: but having invironed them round, he put them to such a resolution, or desperation, (chuse you whether) that manfully they resisted three of his Assaults, and in the end made him depart with great loss, as well of his Souldiers, as his reputation. 2. *Amsterdam*, a very fair Haven-Town, where divers times at one tide 1000 Ships of all sorts have been seen to go out and in. So truly said a modern Poet,

Quod Tagus *atque* Hermus *vehit*, & Pactolus, *in unum*
Verè hunc congestum dixeris esse locum.

What *Tagus*, *Hermus*, and *Pactolus* bear,
One would conjecture to be heap'd up here.

The people thereby are so rich, that if a Fleet of 300 Sail should come into the Port fraught with all kind of Commodities, in five or six days they would be ready to buy all the Lading. Situate it is on the Gulf called the *Tie*, and the Dike or Chanel called *Amstel*, whence it hath the name of *Amsteldam*, in Latine *Amstelodamum*; built upon Piles like *Venice*, and resembling it in so many points, that it may justly be called the *Northern Venice*. It was first fortified with Towers and Ramperts by *Giselbert* of *Amstel*, about 300 years agone: But being burnt through the envy of its neighbours, it began to be walled *Anno* 1482. Grown to this wealth since the diverting of the Trade from *Antwerp* hither, and for that cause inhabited by men of all Nations and of all Religions; and those not only tolerated and connived at in private, but openly and freely exercised without any dislike. A greater Confusion (in my mind) than that of *Babel*; this being of Religions, that of Languages only. 3. *Harlem*, on the Lake called *Harlem-meer*, the greatest Town of all *Holland*, and the second for dignity; well built, and very pleasantly situated amongst many goodly Meadows, near a delightful Forest, and round about environed with wealthy Villages; famous for the invention of Printing, invented here, but perfected at *Mentz* in Higher *Germany*; the first Book which was ever printed being *Tully's Offices*. 4. *Naerden*, on the *Zuider-See*, fortified with a strong Castle, held of the Earls of *Holland* by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, to whom it anciently belonged. 5. *Enchuisen*, on the very point of the Gulf of *Zuider-See*, opposite to *Friesland*, from which not distant above two leagues. A Town of great consequence to the Prince of *Orange* in the first revolting of these Countries from the King of *Spain*. For siding with him in that war, and standing conveniently to obstruct the passages by Sea unto *Amsterdam*, it compelled that City in short time, by stopping all supply of Victuals and other necessaries, to yield it self unto the Prince. 6. *Horn*, on the same Gulf also, a rich Town, with a very good Haven, and of so great strength by reason of the multitude of Dikes and Chanels which are round about it, that it seems impregnable. 7. *Edam*, upon the same Gulf (of *Zuider-See*,) remarkable for the great number of ships which are built yearly in it, and an incredible number of the best *Holland* Cheeses made in the Country round about it. 8. *Medemblick*, on the Ocean, seated in the best Country of *Holland* for the feeding of Cattel; unwalled, but enjoying all the Priviledges which a walled Town hath, and fortified with a right strong Castle.

The chief of the *Holland* Villages is the *Hague*, or *'s Graven Hague*, in *Latine Haga Comitis*, because formerly the Court and Residence of the Earls of *Holland*, who had here a very large and beautiful Palace founded by Earl *William* King of the *Romans*, and therein a choice and excellent Library gathered together by *John Haire* a Canon Regular of this place, and by him given to *Charles* the fifth. In former time the Retidence of the Council for the Province of *Holland*; as it is now of the Commissioners or Delegates of the Confederate Provinces, called by the name of the *States General*. It is now much increased in Buildings of what it was; and yet so great in the time of *Lewis Guicciardine*, that it then contained 2000 households. The Inhabitants will not wall it, as desiring to have it rather accounted the chief Village in *Europe*, than the second City. The other Villages of note, 2. *Egmond*, 3. *Brederode*, 4. *Wassenaer*, which anciently gave names to three noble Families, of which none so illustrious and renowned as that of *Egmond*, descended lineally from *Radbold*, Son of *Adgillis* the King of the *Frisons*, the first Lord of *Egmond*, who died *Anno* 791. Advanced by Marriages to the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Seigniouries of *Yselstein* and *Bueren*. And finally they were made Earls of *Egmond* by *Maximilian* the Emperour, *Anno* 1592. But both this House and that of *Wassenaer* being now extinct, there is none left but that of *Brederode*, for ought I can learn. Near to the last stood the famous Fortress called *Arx Britannica*, built by *Caligula* in memory of his great Battel upon this Shore. For making shew of a Voyage into *Britain*, to subdue that Island, he borded his Galley, embattelled his Souldiers, caused his Trumpets

Trumpets to ſound, gave them the Signal, and then commanded them to gather Cockles. Which Tower or Fortreſs was at the fall of the *Roman* Empire overwhelmed by the Sea; the Ruines whereof at a dead low water are ſtill to be ſeen.

Beſides theſe places on the firm Land or Continent, there are ſome Iſlands which pertain to the State of *Holland*, called by the general name of *Voorn*, becauſe ſituate directly againſt *Holland*, *Voorn* ſignifying as much as *before*, or in old *Engliſh bevorne*; but known by their diſtinct and more proper names of *Somerſdike*, 2 *Gaurede*, 3. *Pierſebille*, ſo called of their principal Towns, and 4. *Voorn* ſpecially ſo named, the chief of them all, being of a fat and fruitful Soil, and plentiful of moſt ſorts of Grain. The principal Towns whereof are 1. *Briel*, (which we call the *Brill*) a ſtrong Town, and the firſt that revolted againſt the *Spaniard*, *Anno* 1572. Cautionary to the *Engliſh* with the Town of *Fluſhing*; choſen by them in regard of the great command it hath upon the paſſage to *Gertruydenberg* and the reſt of *Brabant*, as alſo to *Delf*, *Dort*, and *Rotterdam*, the greateſt Towns of Trade in the South of *Holland*. 2. *Gervliet*, a ſmall Town, but having a Juriſdiction over many Villages. There are alſo on the North ſide of *Holland* the Iſles of *Wierengen* and *Texel*; of which little memorable, but that the laſt is furniſhed with a ſafe and capacious Bay for receipt of Shipping.

One ſpecial accident concerning *Holland* I cannot over-paſs in ſilence, namely, how *Margaret* Counteſs of *Hennenberg*, and Siſter to *William* King of the *Romans*, being of the age of 42 years, was delivered at one birth of 365 children, the one half Males, the other Females, the odd one an Hermaphrodite; all chriſtned at the Church of *Looſduynen*, not far from the *Hague*, by the names of *John* and *Elizabeth*, in two Baſins ſtill to be ſeen in the ſaid Church, by *Guido* the Suffragan of *Utrecht*; all which immediately after died, and with them the Mother.

The Arms of *Holland* of it ſelf, as a State diſtinct, are *Or*, a Lion *Gules*.

ZELAND conſiſteth of ſeven Iſlands, the remainder of 18, the reſt whereof the Sea hath ſwallowed, and in them 300 inhabited Towns. It is ſevered from *Flanders* with the left branch or arm of the *Scheld*, which they call *Honte*, and on the Eaſt from *Brabant* with the right branch of the ſaid River, which ſtill keeps his name; on the North from *Holland* with the Gulf called the *Vlack*, and on the Weſt with the main Ocean from the Kingdom of *England*. So called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Sea* and *Land*; but, as *Junius* rather thinks, from *Seland*, an Iſland of *Denmark*, as before was noted.

The Country is generally more fruitful than the neighbouring *Brabant*, producing great quantity of excellent Corn, plenty of Coriander, and abundance of Madder, uſed in Dying: the Soil alſo is very rich in Paſture, but low and marſhy, which makes the Air to be very unhealthy: and the whole deſtitute both of Freſh water and Wood; the want of which laſt is ſupplied with Coal out of *England* and *Scotland*, or by Turf digged amongſt themſelves, but very ſparingly, for fear of weakning the Sea-banks.

The whole containeth 8 Towns and 100 Villages. The Iſlands which remain are commonly divided into the Weſtern, and the Eaſtern, according as they lie with reference to the River *Scheld*. The Weſtern Iſlands are four in number: That is to ſay,

1. *WALCHEREN*, (*Valachria* in *Latine*) lying to the North of *Scluys* in *Flanders*, the richeſt and moſt populous of all this Province, in compaſs 10 *Dutch*, or 40 *Italian* miles. The principal Towns of which are 1. *Middleburg*, ſeated on a Creek of the Sea, well walled and fortified, the Streets ſpacious, the Houſes and Churches well built, inhabited by wealthy Merchants and induſtrious Tradeſmen, and of late times (ſince the removing of the *Engliſh* Trade from *Antwerp*) a moſt flouriſhing Empory. So called becauſe built in the midſt of the Iſland; or becauſe built (as ſaith *Ortelius*) by Prince *Zelandus*, of whom this Province was thus named, in honour of his Grandfather *Metellus*, and by him called *Metelli Burgum*. 2. *Fluſhing*, of great note for its good Port and invincible ſtrength. One of the firſt Towns which the *Low-Country* men took from the *Spaniards*, by the diligence of *Voorſt* a Seaman, and Monſieur *de Berland*, then the Bayliff thereof, and not long after put into the hands of the *Engliſh* as a Town of Caution; the firſt Governour of it being the renowned Sir *Philip Sidney*. A poor Town then it was, God wot, now the Key of the *Netherlands*, without whoſe licenſe no Ship can paſs either to or from the City of *Antwerp*; inſomuch that if the Duke of *Alva*, in the beginning of his Government had beſtowed that pains in the fortifying this and others of the Maritime Towns as he did in the ſtrengthning *Antwerp* and ſome Midland Cities, he had in all probability hindred the remedileſs Revolt of theſe flouriſhing Countries. Not far off ſtandeth the Fort called the *Rammekins*, once Cautionary to the *Engliſh* alſo, together with the *Briel*, the chief Town in the Iſle of *Voorn*, (an Iſle of *Holland*) all three being taken from the *Spaniard* Anno 1572, made Cautionary to Queen *Elizabeth* Anno 1585, and finally ſurrendred by King *James* to the *States* United *Anno* 1616. *Robert* Lord *Liſle*, (afterwards created Earl of *Leiceſter*) the Brother of Sir *Philip Sidney*, then Governour of *Fluſhing*. 3. *Ramne*, or *Armuyden*, an unwalled Town, but beautified with one of the goodlieſt and moſt frequented Havens in all the World; out of which one may ſometimes ſee 500 Sail of Ships of great burthen ſet forwards on their Voyages to ſeveral parts. 4. *Vere* or *Camfere*, ſeated in the North part of the Iſland, which once gave Title to a Marqueſs, and from the which the noble Family of the *Veres* (now, and of long time, Earls of *Oxford*) took denomination. So as it is no marvel that ſo many of that Family have ventured their Eſtates and lives in the Wars of this Country, being their Grandmother in a manner, or their primitive Parent, from whence they were tranſplanted into *England*.

2. *SOUTH-BEVERLAND*, ſituate betwixt *Walcheren* and *Brabant*, the greateſt of the Iſles of *Zeland*; heretofore 20 *Dutch* miles in compaſs, but now much diminiſhed by the rage and fury of the Sea, by which the Town and Seigniory of *Borſuſle*, with all the Countries round about it, was ſwallowed up *Anno* 1532. That which remains hath in it many goodly Woods and pleaſant Thickets, full of Fowl and wild Beaſts for Hawking and Hunting. Chief Towns here are 1. *Romerſwale*, ſeated on the Eaſt toward *Bergen op Zoome*, ſevered at the ſame time from the reſt of the Iſland, and made an Iſland of it ſelf, defended with continual charge from following the ſad fate of the Town of *Borſuſle*. 2. *Goes*, or *Tergoes*, on the Northern Coaſt, a ſtrong Town, well priviledged, and the only walled Town in all the Iſland.

3. *NORTH-BEVERLAND*, lying betwixt *South-Beverland* and the Iſle of *Schowen*, in former times eſteemed the Paradiſe of *Zeland*, and having in it a proper Town, called *Chart Cheen*, but ſo deſtroyed by the Sea-breach ſpoken of before, that there is nothing now remaining but a few poor Villages.

4. *WOLFERSDIKE*, lying between the two *Beverlands*, the ſmalleſt of the Weſtern Iſlands, as having in it no more than two Villages, but replenilhed with good ſtore of Paſture.

And

And these are all which fall in the division of the Western Islands, so called because they lie Westward of the River *Scheld*; as those which they call the Eastern Islands, on the East thereof. Of which last there are three in number.

1. *SCHOWEN*, lying on the South-west of *Holland*, so near unto *North Beverland* in former times, that the Inhabitants could talk together from one shore to the other: but now the Sea hath set them at a greater distance. It containeth in compass six *Dutch* miles. Chief Towns wherein are, 1. *Zirickzee*, the ancientest Town of all *Zeland*, once beautified with a fair and commodious Haven, now choaked up with Beach, yet still reputed for the second Town of all the Province: the whole Trade thereof consisting in Salt and Madder, of which it yields good plenty. Most famous for the birth of *Levinus Lemnius*, that renowned Philosopher and Physician. 2. *Brouwers-Haven*, inhabited only by Fishermen, not else remarkable.

2. *DUVELAND*, so named from the multitude of Doves or Pigeons, situate between *Schowen* and *Tolen*, in compass about 4 *Dutch* miles. It hath no good Town in it, but only Country-Villages and Gentlemens Farms. Surrounded by the Sea, *Anno* 1530, but by the industry and diligence of *Adolph* of *Burgundy* and the Lord of *Boforeres* in *Flanders* recovered again, and at the excessive charge of the people hitherto preserved.

3. *TOLEN*, so called from the chief Town of the Island, where the Earls Toll was wont to be paid, whence it had the name, is situate over against the North-west of *Brabant*, from thence disjoyned by a narrow Creek or Arm of the Sea: the second Town of note being called S. *Martins Dike*, walled, but not otherwise considerable.

Agreeable to the quality of this Country of *Zeland* art the Arms thereof, being *Or*, a Lion *Gules* rising out of a Sea wavie *Argent* and *Azur*.

WESTFRIESLAND, hath on the East *Groening-land* and a part of *Westphalen* in High *Germany*, on the South *Over Yssell* and the *Zuider-See*, on the North and West the main Ocean. The Country is generally moorish and full of Fens, unapt for Corn, but yielding great store of Pasturage: which Moorishness of the ground makes the Air very foggy and unhealthy; nor have they any Fewel wherewith to rectifie it, (except in that part of it which they call *Seven-Walden*) but Turf and Cow-dung, which adds but little to the sweetness of an unsound Air. Nor are they better stored with Rivers, here being none proper to this Country, but that of *Leewars*, the want of which is supplied by great Chanels in most places, which do not only drain the Marshes, but supply them with water. Which notwithstanding, their Pastures do afford them a good breed of Horses fit for service; plenty of Beeves both great and sweet, the best in *Europe*, next these of *England*; and those in such a large increase, that their Kine commonly bring two Calves, and their Ewes three Lambs at a time.

The Country is divided into three parts. In the first part, called *WESTERGOE*, lying towards *Holland*, the principal Towns are, 1. *Harlingen*, an Haven-Town upon the Ocean, defended with a very strong Castle. 2. *Hindelopen*, on the same Coast also. 3. *Staveren*, an Hanse-Town, opposite to *Enchuisen* in *Holland*, the Town decayed, but fortified with a strong Castle, which secures the Haven. 4. *Franeker*, a new University, or a *Schola Illustris*, as they call it. 5. *Sneck*, in a low and inconvenient situation; but both for largeness and beauty the best in this part of the Province, and the second in esteem of all the Country. In *OSTERGOE*, or the East part, lying towards *Groening-land*; the Towns of most note are, 6. *Leewarden*, situate on the hinder *Leewars* the prime Town of *West-Friesland*; and honoured with the Supreme Court and Chancery hereof, from which there lieth no Appeal; a rich Town, well built, and strongly fortified. 7. *Dockum*, bordering upon *Groening*, the birth-place of *Gemma Frisius*. In *SEVEN-WOLDEN*, or the Country of Seven Forests, so called from so many small Forests joyning near together, is no Town of note, being long time a Wood-land Country, and not well inhabited till of late. The number of the walled Towns are 11 in all; of the Villages or Burroughs, 345.

To this Province belongeth the Isle of *Schellink*, the Shores whereof are plentifully stored with Dog-fish, took by the Inhabitants in this manner: The men of the Island attire themselves with Beasts Skins, and then fall to dancing; with which sport the Fish being much delighted, make out of the waters towards them; Nets being pitched presently betwixt them and the water. Which done, the men put off their disguises, and the frighted Fish hastning towards the Sea are caught in the Toyls.

Touching the *Frisons*, heretofore possessed of this Country, we shall speak more at large when we come to *East-Friesland*, possessed also by them, and still continuing in the quality of a Free Estate, governed by its own Laws and Princes: here only taking notice that the Arms of this *Friesland* are *Azure*, semy of Billets *Argent*, two Lions *Or*.

The ancient Inhabitants of these three Provinces were the *Batavi* and *Caninefates*, inhabiting the Island of the *Rhene* situate betwixt the middle branch thereof and the *Wael*, which now containeth *South-Holland*, *Utrecht*, and some part of *Geldres*; the *Frisii*, dwelling in *West-Friesland* and the North of *Holand*; and the *Mattiaci*, inhabiting in the Isles of *Zeland*. By *Charles* the Bald these Countries, being almost unpeopled by the *Norman* Piracies, were given to *Thierrie*, Son of *Sigebert*, a Prince of *Aquitain*, with the Title of Earl: his Successors acknowledging the Sovereignty of the Crown of *France*, till the time of *Arnulph* the 4. Earl, who turned Homager to the Empire. In *John* the 2. they became united to the House of *Hainault*, and in *William* the 3. to that of *Bavaria*; added to the Estates of the Dukes of *Burgundy* in the person of Duke *Philip* the good, as appeareth by this Succession of

The Earls of *HOLLAND*, *ZELAND*, and Lords of *WEST-FRIESLAND*.

863 1. *Thierrie* or *Theodarie* of *Aquitain*, the first Earl, &c.
903 2. *Thierrie* II. Son of *Thierrick* the 1.
3. *Thierrie* III. the Son of *Theodorick* the 2.
988 4. *Arnulph*, who made first this Estate to be held of the Empire; slain in a War against the *Frisons*. From *Sigefride* the second Son of this *Arnulph* came the Lords of *Brederode*, advanced by Marriages to the Seigniouries of *Genep* and *Vianen*, and many other fair Estates both in *Brabant* and *Holland*.
993 5. *Thierrie* IV. Son of *Arnulph*.
1039 6 *Thierrie* V. Son of *Theodorick* the 4.
1048 7. *Florence*, Brother of *Thierrie* the 5.
1062 8. *Thierrie* VI. Son of *Florence*, in whose Minority the Estate of *Holland* was usurped by *Godfrey le Bossu* Duke of *Lorrain*, by some accompted of as an Earl hereof.
1092 9. *Florence* II. surnamed the Fat, Son of *Thierrie* the 6.

1123 10. *Thierrie* VII. who tamed the ſtomachs of the *Friſons*.
1163 11. *Florence* III. a companion of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1190 12. *Thierrie* VIII. Son to *Florence* the 3.
1203 13. *William* the Brother of *Thierrie*, and Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland*, which Country he had before ſubdued, ſupplanted his Niece *Ida*, his Brother's Daughter; but after her deceaſe, dying without Iſſue, ſucceeded in his own right unto the Eſtate.
1223 14. *Florence* IV. Son of *William*.
1235 15. *William* II. Son of *Florence* the 4. elected and crowned King of the *Romans*; ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.
1255 16. *Florence* the V. the firſt, as ſome write, who called himſelf Earl of *Zeland*: the Title to thoſe Iſlands, formerly queſtioned by the *Flemings* being relinquiſhed to him on his Marriage with *Beatrix*, the Daughter of *Guy* of *Dampierre*, Earl of *Flanders*.
1296 17. *John*, the Son of *Florence* the 5. ſubdued the rebellious *Friſons*; the laſt of the male-iſſue of *Thierrie* of *Aquitian*.

Earls of *HAINAULT*, *HOLLAND*, &c.

1300 18. *John* of *Aveſnes*, Earl of *Hainault*, Son of *John* of *Aveſnes* Earl of *Hainault*, and of the Lady *Aleide*, Siſter of *William* the 2. and Daughter of *Florence* the 4. ſucceeded as next Heir in the Earldom of *Holland*, &c.
1305 19. *William* III. ſirnamed the Good, Father of the Lady *Philippa*, Wife of our *Edward* the 3.
1337 20. *William* IV. of *Holland*, and the II. of *Hainault*, ſlain in a War againſt the *Friſons*.
1346 21. *Margaret*, Siſter and Heir of *William* the 4. and eldeſt Daughter of *William* the 3. married to *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, Emperour of the *Germans*, forced to relinquiſh *Holland* unto *William* her ſecond Son, and to content her ſelf with *Hainault*.
1351 22. *William* V. ſecond Son of *Lewis* and *Margaret*, (his elder Brother *Steven* ſucceeding in *Bavaria*) in right of *Maud* his Wife, Daughter and Coheir of *Henry* Duke of *Lancaſter*, ſucceeded in the Earldom of *Leiceſter*.
1377 23. *Albert*, the younger Brother of *William* the fifth, fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Friſons*, Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c.
1404 24. *William* VI. Earl of *Oſternand*, and by that name admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2. eldeſt Son of *Albert*.
1417 25. *Jaqueline*, only Daughter of Earl *William* the ſixth, firſt married to *John* the 4. Duke of *Brabant*, the Son of *Anthony* of *Bourgogne*; from whom divorced under colour of Conſanguinity, ſhe was married after to *Humfrey* Duke of *Glouceſter*, and then to *Frank* of *Borſelles*, a private Gentleman: being unworthily handled by Duke *John* of *Burgundy*, ſhe ſurrendred her Eſtates to Duke *Philip* the Good.
26. *Philip* the Good, Duke of *Burgundy*, Son of *John* Duke of *Burgundy*, and of the Lady *Margaret* Siſter of Earl *William* the ſixth, and Daughter of *Albert*, Earls of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. ſucceeded on the Reſignation of the Lady *Jaqueline*, his Couſin-german, tranſporting theſe Eſtates to the Houſe of *Burgundy*. His Succeſſours we ſhall meet with ſhortly in another place.

15. *UTRECHT*. 16. *OVER-YSSELL*.

THE Biſhoprick of *UTRECHT*, I mean the temporal Juriſdiction and Eſtate thereof, contained once all that Tract of ground which now makes up the Provinces of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, and *Groening*. But *Groening* was long ſince diſmembred. *Utrecht* and *Over-Yſſel* remaining parts thereof till the year 1528, then added to the reſt of the *Belgick* Provinces by *Charles* the 5.

UTRECHT hath on the Eaſt *Gelderland*, on the Weſt, North and South, environed with *Holland*. The Country is very fruitful, much drier than *Holland*, and ſo fitter for all ſorts of Grain. It containeth 70 Villages, and 5 walled Towns: that is to ſay, 1. *Wyck at Duerſtede*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, where it diverteth into the *Leck*; well built, and fortified anciently with a good Caſtle; ſuppoſed to be the *Batavodurum* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, the Manſion at that time of the Second Legion. 2. *Rhenen*, upon the ſame branch or Chanel, whence it hath the name: about which is digged abundance of Turf for fewel. 3. *Amersfort*, on the River *Ems*, (called in *Latine Amiſus*) a fair Town, and well peopled. 4. *Montfort*, upon the *Yſſell*, pleaſantly ſeated, and of great ſtrength, as being anciently a Frontier-town againſt the *Hollanders*. 5. *Utrecht*, ſituate on the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*: firſt called *Antonina*, from one of the *Antonines* of *Rome*; but *Dagobert* King of *France* gave it the name of *Trajectum*, (or *Ultrajectum*, we now call it *Utrecht*) becauſe there was at that time the common Ferry over the River. The Town is large, beautiful, and very ſumptuouſly built, having in it many goodly Churches, of which 5 were anciently Collegiate; beſides two famous Monaſteries of noble Women, ſuch as thoſe ſpoken of elſewhere: the private houſes well contrived, moſt of them having goodly Cellers, vaulted with wonderful art and skill, to which the people may reſort in all times of danger. Sometimes the Seat-Royal of *Radbold*, King of the *Friſons*, then of the Biſhops; honoured of old with a Juridical reſort for the parts adjoyning, and now the principal of this Province. A City ſo miraculouſly ſeated amongſt walled Towns, that a man may go from hence in one day to any one of 50 walled Towns or Cities, thence equally diſtant; or to any one of 26 Towns to Dinner, and come home to bed.

OVER-YSSELL, in *Latine Tranſiſalana*, ſo named from its ſituation beyond the *Yſſell*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen*, on the Weſt with the *Zuider-See*, on the North with *Weſt-Frieſland*, on the South with *Gelderland*. The Country is very plain and without Hills, but wet and mooriſh, affording excellent good Paſturage, and not defective in Corn. It is divided into three parts, that is to ſay, *Twent*, confining upon *Weſtphalen*; *Yſſelland*, on the River *Yſſell*; and *Drent*, beyond the River *Vecht*: in all which are contained 11 Towns, and 100 Villages. The principal of which are, 1. *Deventer*, on the River *Yſſell*, ſtrong and well fortified, and withal beautiful and well peopled; an Hanſe-Town, and the chief of all this Province; firſt taken for the States by the Earl of *Leiceſter*, then Governour of thoſe Countries for Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1586, treacherouſly re-yielded to the *Spaniard* by by Sir *William Stanley*, but in the year 1590 again recovered by the States. 2. *Swoll*, ſtanding on a little River which runs into the *Vidre*, anciently fortified with a double Ditch and very ſtrong Ramparts, an Hanſe-Town; as is alſo 3. *Campen*, ſituate on the left Shore and fall of the *Yſſell* into the *Zuider-See*, a fair and large Town, and of very great ſtrength by reaſon of thoſe inacceſſible

Mariſhes

Mariſhes among which it is ſituate. Theſe three are in that part hereof which is called *Yſſel-land*, and by ſome *Saland*, by whom (erroneouſly) it is ſuppoſed to be the Country of the ancient *Salii*. In that part hereof which is called *Twent* we have the Towns of 4. *Oldenzeel*, 5. *Enſchede*, 6. *Delden*, 7. *Almeloo*; of which little memorable. And in that of *Drent*, the Town and Caſtle of *Vallenhoven*, ſtanding upon the *Zuider-See*, well ſerved with all ſorts of Victuals, and for that cauſe made the ordinary Reſidence of the Governour and ſupream Council for the whole Province.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe two Provinces were ſome parts of the *Batavi* and *Friſii minores*, for that of *Utrecht*; the *Bructeri* and (as ſome ſay) the *Salii* in *Over-Yſſel*. Both Provinces belonging anciently to the Epiſcopal See of *Utrecht*, founded by *Dagobert* King of *France*, who endowed it with great Lands and Territories; the firſt Biſhop being *Willibald* an *Engliſh*-man, who converted theſe parts to Chriſtianity. His Succeſſors grew to ſo great power that they were able to bring 40000 men into the Field, and with great courage did maintain their Eſtate and Patrimony againſt the encroaching Earls of *Holland*. But at the laſt, having continued for the ſpace of 900 years, *Henry* of *Bavaria* Biſhop hereof, being extreamly diſtreſſed with War by the Duke of *Geldres*, and driven out of the City of *Utrecht* by his own Subjects, (perhaps upon ſome humour of Reformation) alienated all the Temporalties of his Biſhoprick to *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1527, and the next year the Imperialiſts by one of the Factions were let into *Utrecht*; at what time both the Eſtates of the Country and Pope *Clement* the 7. confirmed the Alienation made by the Biſhop. After which ſolemn Acts of theirs, the Emperour cauſed himſelf to be inveſted in this Eſtate by the States of the Empire, (for *Utrecht* was of old an Imperial Fief,) and, for the better Government and Adminiſtration of it, divided it into two Provinces, as it ſtill continueth. But what this Biſhop loſt in Power, his Succeſſors not long after gained in Title; the Biſhop of *Utrecht* being made an Archbiſhop or Metropolitan *Anno* 1561. But by reaſon of the change of Religion, which was then working, and the falling off of theſe Countries, which ſoon after followed, he had but little joy in his new Preferment.

17. GELDERLAND. 18. ZUTPHEN, and 19. GROENING.

THE Dukedom of *Gelderland*, at ſuch time as it was firſt taken in by *Charles* the fifth, contained under it the Dutchie of *Geldres* properly & ſpecially ſo called, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, & the Town & Seigniory of *Groening*, held by diſtinct Titles, and governed ever ſince their union with the *Belgick* Provinces as diſtinct Eſtates.

GELDERLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Cleveland* and the Earldom of *Zutphen*, on the Weſt with *Holland* and *Utrecht*, on the North with *Over-Yſſel* and the *Zuider-See*, and on the South with *Brabant* and the Land of *Gulick*. The Country is flat, having few Hills in it, but may pleaſant and commodious Woods, eſpecially that called *Echterwaldt*; of Corn and Cattel very fruitful.

The whole Country is generally divided into two parts. 1. The *Veluwe*, contained within the *Zuider-See*, the middle Chanel of the *Rhene*, and the *Yſſel*; the barrener of the two, and the worſe inhabited; the people hereof preferring Health before Wealth, as in other places; but affording a more pure Air, and a pleaſanter dwelling than the other; the Woods and Foreſts well repleniſhed with moſt kinds of Game. The *Betuwe* (ſo called of the *Batavi*, who poſſeſſed theſe parts) intercepted betwixt the ſaid middle Chanel of the *Rhene* and the *Wael*, exceedingly fruitfull in Corn, and of ſo excellent a Paſturage for the feeding of Cattel, that in the year 1570 there was a *Gelderland* Bull ſold in *Antwerp* which weighed 3200 pounds.

In both diviſions (not reckoning in the County of *Zutphen*) are contained 300 Villages, and 16 walled Towns, beſides ſome fortified of late ſince the Wars began. The chief whereof are, 1. *Nimmegen*, (in *Latine Noviomagus*) an Imperial City, ordained by *Charles* the Great to be one of the three Seiges of the Empire for theſe outer parts; the other two being *Theonville* in *Luxemburg*, and *Aix* or *Aken* in the Land of *Gulick*. And as a Town Imperial it had anciently the privilege of Coyning money: for which and other Freedoms or immunities indulged unto it, the people did no other Service to the Emperours than once a year to ſend a man to *Aix* or *Aquiſgrave* with a Glove full of Pepper. But the Town being ſold to the *Gelderois* by *William* Earl of *Holland* and King of the *Romans* for 21000 Marks of Silver *Anno* 1248, the power of Coinage fell to thoſe Princes; and yet the Town was brought to do better ſervice than formerly it had done at *Aken*. The Town is high-mounted on the top of an Hill, the *Wael*, which is there large and deep, running at the foot of it; rich, great, and populous, having beſides the modern Fortifications an ancient Caſtle, with ſo goodly a Proſpect, that from thence one may behold the beſt part of the Country; built, as ſome ſay, by *Julius Cæſar*, to command thoſe parts. Under the Juriſdiction of it are, 2. *Tiel*, and 3. *Bomel*, two walled Towns, both ſituated on the *Wael*, both ſtrong, and having many rich Villages under their command; and 4. *Ghent*, on the *Wael* alſo, an unwalled Town, but having all the Privileges which the walled Towns have. Not far off, at the firſt meeting of the *Wael* and the *Maes*, ſtands the ſtrong Fort of *S. Andrews*, raiſed by the Archduke *Albert* to command the paſſage of thoſe Rivers; but in the year 1600 taken in by *Maurice* Count of *Naſſau*, (after Prince of *Orange*) and ever ſince garriſoned by the *States* to ſecure that paſſage. 5. *Ruermond*, ſeated on the mouth of the *Ruer*, where it falleth into the *Maes*; a beautiful and well-peopled City, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and ſeated in a fruitful Country, heretofore of the Dioceſs of *Liege*, (as *Nimmegen* anciently of *Colen*) but made a See Epiſcopal by King *Philip* the 2. *Anno* 1559. This is the ſecond capital City of *Gelderland*, and hath under the Juriſdicton of it 6. *Venlo*, a ſtrong Town on the *Maes*, in which the Duke of *Cleve* yielded himſelf to *Charles* the fifth, *Anno* 1543. 7. *Geldres*, heretofore of ſuch reputaion, that it gave name to all the Country; and well it doth deſerve to do ſo ſtill, being the only Town in all this Dukedom which neither firſt nor laſt hath been wone by the *Holanders*, but ſtill preſerved themſelves in their Obedience to their natural Princes. 8. *Strael*, or *Straelen*, a well-fortified piece; but which, according to the chances of War, hath often changed its Maſters. 9. *Arnhem*, the *Arenacum* of *Tacitus*, and in thoſe times the Manſion of the tenth Legion, ſituate on the *Rhene*, not above a mile from the great Chanel, which *Druſus* to keep his Souldiers from idleneſs cauſed them to dig, to let the waters of the *Rhene* into thoſe of the *Yſſel*; called therefore by the Ancients *Foſſa Druſiana*, by the Moderns *Yſſel Dort*. The Town is large and well built; the ordinary Reſidence heretofore of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, who had here their Chancery, and other ſupreme Courts of Juſtice. This is the third Capital City of *Gelderland*, (anciently of the Dioceſs of *Utrecht*) and hath under the Juriſdiction of it, beſides divers Villages, 10. *Wageningben* on the *Rhene*, the ſame which *Tacitus* calls *Vada*. 11. *Harderwick* on the *Zuider-See*, burnt to the ground *Anno* 1503, but ſince re-edified, and now more ſtrong

and beautiful than ever formerly. 12. *Hatem*, upon the *Yssell*, a good Town of War, but not else observable.

Within the limits of this Dukedom stands the Town and County of *Culemberg*, erected into a County by King *Philip* the 2. by reason of the fair Territory which belonged unto it; formerly held in Fee of the Dukes of *Gelderland*, but otherwise not reckoned as a Member of it. 2. The Town and Earldom of *Bueren*, situate on the River *Linge*, having a strong Castle anciently, and a goodly Territory, holden immediatly of the Empire, as a Fief Imperial. It was first made an Earldom in the person of *Frederick* Lord of *Egmond*, Brother's Son to *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the sixth Duke of *Geldres*, created Earl of *Bueren* by *Maximilian* the first *Anno* 1492. which *Frederick* was Grandfather of the valiant *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Bueren*, who died *Anno* 1549. after whose death it fell at last to *Philip* of *Nassau*, eldest Son of *William* Prince of *Orange*, and of *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of the said *Maximilian* upon the death of the said *Anne* Anno 1551.

ZUTPHEN, accompted formerly for the fourth capital City of *Gelderland*, now a distinct Province of it self, is bounded on the East with *Westphalen*, on the West with that part of *Gelderland* which is called the *Veluwe*, on the North with *Over-Yssel*, on the South with *Cleveland*. It containeth 8 walled Towns, besides many Villages; that is to say. 1. *Dotecum*, standing on the old *Yssell*, rising out of *Westphalen*. 2. *Doesburg*, where the old *Yssell* falleth into the new *Yssell*, or the Trench called *Fossa Drusiana*, communicating thereunto its name. 3. *Bronchorst*, a County of it self, which anciently had its particular Governour. 4. *Lochem*, upon the River *Berckel*. 5. *Tsheerenberg*, a Town and County. 6. *Groll*, taken by the Prince of *Orange* for the *States* Confederate *Anno* 1627. 7. *Bredervord*, a Town of War, and subject to the change of Masters, as such places are. 8. *Zutphen*, or *Zuidsen*, so called of the Southern situation of it amongst the Fens, on the right Shore of the *Yssel*, where it receiveth into it the River *Berckel*, which runs through the Town. A Town indifferently well built, as well for private as publick Edifices; a distinct State in Civil matters, but in Spiritual subject (in former times) to the Bishop of *Munster*. A thing observable and not to be parallel'd elsewhere, that the four chief Towns and Quarters of one Province only should appertain (as here in *Gelderland*) to four several Dioceses. Of which there may some reason be assigned for *Zutphen*, in regard it is a State more ancient than that of *Gelderland* it self, and not depending anciently on the fortunes of it; united to it by the Marriage of *Otho* of *Nassau*, the first Earl of *Gelderland*, with *Sophia*, Daughter and Heir of *Wickman* the last Earl of *Zutphen*. So as this Earldom ended when that first began. After this it continued subject to the Earls and Dukes of *Geldres*, till the Revolt of *Holland* and the other Provinces from the King of *Spain*; at what time it was besieged for the *States* by the Earl of *Leicester*: at the Siege whereof fell that gallant Gentleman Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom our *British* Epigrammatist thus versifieth;

Digna legi scribis, facis & dignissima scribi;
Scripta probant doctum te tua, facta probum.
Thou writ'st things worthy reading, and dist do
Things worthy writing too:
Thy Acts thy Valour show,
And by thy Works we do thy Learning know.

And though upon the loss of that gallant man (Nephew and Heir unto that Earl) the Siege was raised at the present; yet was it re-inforced again *Anno* 1590, and the Town then taken, continuing ever since in the Confederacy of the *States* United.

GROENING-LAND hath on the East *East-Friesland*, on the West *West-Friesland*, on the North the main Ocean, on the South *Over-Yssel*; so wedged in as it were betwixt both *Friesslands*, that some hold it to be but a part of the West. It containeth under it the Country called the *Ommelands*, (corruptly for the *Emmelands*, as I conjecture, because lying along the River *Ems*) and therein 145 Burroughs and Villages. The chief thereof are. 1. *Dam*, near the *Ems*, bordering on *East-Friesland*. 2. *Keykirk*. 3. *Old-Haven* standing on the Sea. 4. As for the Town of *Groening* it self, it is rich, great, and very well built, situate amongst divers small Streams which run through it, and having also divers Chanels for conveiance of waters, which adds much to the safety and strength thereof. A Town of great Jurisdiction both within and without, judging absolutely without Appeals in causes both Civil and Criminal; in Spirituals subject heretofore to the Bishop of *Munster*, till made one of the new Bishopricks by King *Philip* the second *Anno* 1559. And though the Prince in Civil Causes had his Officer or Lieutenant there, yet in Criminal the Town was Sovereign, and granted Pardons as Sovereign of the whole Estate, paying to the Prince for all Duties yearly but 6000 Crowns. Both Town and Country anciently belonging to the Bishops of *Utrecht*, for whose negligence in defending them they submitted their Estate to the Duke of *Gelderland*. But the Dukes of *Saxony* laying some claim to it, disturbed this agreement for a time; during which *Ezardus* the Earl of *East-Friesland* possessed himself of it; but not able to make good his unjust possession, sold his estate therein to the Duke of *Geldres* Anno 1514, to whom of right it did belong. Afterwards in the year 1536 they put themselves under the command of *Charles* the fifth, but with the reservation of all their Priviledges and ancient Liberties; for preservation of the which, in danger to be over-born by the power of the *Spaniard*, they confederated with the rest of the United *States* Anno 1594, and so still continue.

The ancient Inhabitants of these Countries were the *Menapii* and *Sicambri*, very valiant people, possessing *Gelderland*; and the *majores Frisii*, which were planted in *Groening* and the rest of *Friesland*. Of these the *Sicambri* were accompted the most valiant people, uniting with other Nations in the name of *French*, and by that name possessing with the rest of those Nations the mighty Empire of the West. In the division whereof by the posterity of *Charles* the Great, these Countries were first part of the Kingdom of *Austrasia* or *East-France*, afterwards of the *German* Empire; governed at the first by Guardians or Protectors created by the people in the Reign of *Charles* the Bald, the two first being *Wickard* and *Lupold* (or *Leopold*,) two Brethren, who fixing their chief Seat in the Castle of *Geldres*, occasioned the whole Country to be called *Gelderland*. But they and their Successors, by what name or title soever called, were in effect but Provincial Officers, accomptable to the Emperours for their Administration; the first free prince hereof being *Otho* of *Nassau*, who having to his first Wife the Lady *Alcide*, Daughter of *Wickard*, the last Guardian, was by the Emperour *Henry* the third made first Earl of *Gelderland*, adding thereto the State of *Zutphen* by a second Marriage, as is said before. In *Rainold* the ninth Earl it was made a Dukedom by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1339. Sold by Duke *Arnold* (justly incensed at his ungracious Son *Adolph*) to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* for 92000 Florens of ready money and an annual Pension, *Anno* 1472. But notwithstanding this Agreement, *Adolph* (upon the death of *Charles*) possessed himself of it, and left it unto *Charles* his Son, who finally surrendred it unto *Charles* the fifth *Anno* 1547.

Earls

Earls and Dukes of GELDERLAND.

1079 1. *Otho* of *Nassau*, the first Earl.
2. *Gerard* the Son of *Otho* by his first Wife *Alcide*.
1131 3. *Henry*, the Son of *Gerard*.
1162 4. *Gerard* II. Son of *Henry*.
1180 5. *Otho* II. Brother of *Gerard*.
1202 6. *Gerard* III. Son of *Otho* 2.
1229 7. *Otho* III. Son of *Gerard*, who walled the Towns of *Ruermond*, *Arnhem*, *Bomel*, *Goch*, *Wageningen*, and *Harderwick*.
1271 8. *Rainold*, Son of *Otho* 3. taken and imprisoned till his death by
1326 9. *Rainold* II. his own Son, created the first Duke of *Geldres* by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria* at *Francfort*, *Anno* 1339, liberal to the Poor, and a great Patron of the Muses.
1343 10. *Rainold* III. Son of *Rainold* 2. molested with continual Wars with his Brother *Edward*, by whom he was taken and imprisoned till his dying day.
1371 11. *Edward*, the Son of *Rainold* the 2. by *Eleanor* the Daughter of *Edward* the 3d. of *England*, his second Wife, died the same year with his Brother; the last of the male issue of *Otho* of *Nassau*.
1371 12. *Mary* (by some called *Joan*) Sister of *Edward*, by the same *venter*, and Wife of *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
13. *William*, Son of *William* Duke of *Gulick* and *Mary* of *Geldres*, admitted Knight of the Garter by King *Richard* the 2.
14. *Rainold* IV. the Brother of *William*.
15. *Arnold* of *Egmond*, Son of *John* Lord of *Egmond* and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter of *Joan*, the Sister of *Rainold* and *William*, the two last Dukes, succeeded in the Estate of *Geldres*; the Dukedom of *Gulick* being seized on by *Adolph*, Son of *William* the first Duke of *Berg*, as the next Heir-male to the two last Dukes. Being afterwards taken, imprisoned, and most barbarously handled by his own Son *Adolph*, and delivered by *Charles* the Warlike, Duke of *Burgundy*, he sold to him his Estates of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, to be enjoyed by him after his decease, *Anno* 1472.
1473 16. *Adolph*, the wicked Son of *Arnold*, dispossessed of his Estate by the said Agreement, which D. *Charles* enjoyed for his life, after the death of the said *Charles* was restored to liberty by the *Gauntois*, *An.* 1467, and made the General of their Forces against *Lewis* the 11.
1477 17. *Charles*, Son of *Arnold*, after long Wars with the Princes of the Houses of *Burgundy* and *Austria*, pretending the Sale and Legacy of Duke *Arnold* to *Charles* the Warlike, surrendred his Estates unto *Charles* the 5. to be enjoyed by him after his decease, if he left no Issue. According to which Contract the Emperour *Charles* succeeded him in *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, *Anno* 1538, being the year of his decease; after which time they were accompted in the number of the *Belgick* Provinces.

The Arms hereof were Quarterly, 1 *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, crowned *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gelderland*; 2 *Azure*, a Lion *Gules*, for the Earldom of *Zutphen*.

Thus have we seen a Country which at the first erecting of these Estates was nothing in a manner but Bogs and Marishes, and at the best but a continual Wilderness of Woods and Forests, by the great Providence of the Princes, and extreme industry of the people, made the most populous, best planted, and the wealthiest Estate (for the bigness of it) in the whole habitable world. And we have seen those several Estates and Principalities, by Marriages and other Contracts, reduced into the hands of the House of *Burgundy*: under the Princes of which great and illustrious Family, inferiour to no Kings of Christendom for Power and Riches,) especially under Duke *Philip* the Good) the Subjects hereof did so abound in wealth and plenty, that *Philip de Comines*, who then lived, affirmeth, that this Country seemed like the *Land of Promise*. Some thought there was a purpose in this Duke *Philip* of erecting these States into a Kingdom, from which he was diverted by the difference and variety of Laws and Privileges which those people severally lived under, not to be brought without great difficulty and distaste to one form of Government: yet might he have done it, if he would, as himself openly affirmed to the Embassadours of King *Lewis* 11. But *Charles* his Son, being more bent on the Design, negotiated to that end with the Emperour *Frederick*, whom he met at *Triers*, *An.* 1473: and doubtless had obtained his purpose, upon the *Marriage* of his *Daughter* with *Maximilian Frederick*'s Son, (which was then propounded) had not his rash Engagement against the *Swissers*, and his untimely death therein, broke the course of these Projects: which Projects had they took effect, as in all probability they had but for that Engagement, he had extended his Dominions all along the *Rhene*, and on both sides of it, from the *Alpes* unto the *German* Ocean, and been the most considerable Prince at that time in Christendom; all *Elsass* in High *Germany* being sold or morgaged to him by the Duke of *Austria*, the Dukedom of *Lorrain* at his mercy; besides the hopes he had of the Earldom of *Provence*, intended to him by King *Reny*, which would have opened him a way to the *Mediterranean*. He being dead, the Government continued as before it was; each Province having its distinct Laws, and living according to their ancient Privileges, till the attempt of *Philip* the second, King of *Spain*, most resolutely (but unfortunately) bent to bring them under the command of that Crown, to cancel all their Privileges, and new mould the Estate according to his own will & pleasure; occasioning thereby the Revolt of a great part of the Country, and the setting up of a new Estate opposite unto him, and destructive of his Interest in it. but before we come unto this Change, we will first look upon the Prince's Power, Revenue, and other things considerable touching this Estate, whilest it stood intire under the Princes of the House of *Burgundy* and

Lords of BELGIUM.

1369 1. *Philip* the Hardy, Duke and Earl of *Burgundy*, Earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, the first great raiser of this House.
1404 2. *John* the Proud, Duke of *Burgundy*, &c.
1419 3. *Philip* the Good added to his Estates the Dukedom of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the *Marquisate* and *Mechlin*, by the death of his Cousin *Philip*; the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zeland*, and the Lordship of *West-Friesland*, by the Resignation and death of the Countess *Jaqueline*, whose next Heir he was; the Dukedom of *Luxemburg*, and the Earldom of *Namur*, which he bought for money.
1467 4. *Charles* the Warlike, who bought the Estates

of

of *Geldres* and *Zutphen*, and held them peaceably all his life.

1476 5. *Mary*, the Daughter and Heir of *Charles*, married to *Maximilian*, Son of the Emperour *Frederick*, from whom King *Lewis* the eleventh of *France* took the Dukedom of *Burgundy*, and the greatest parts of the Counties of *Burgundy* and *Artois*, unfortunately killed with a fall from her horse, and an unseasonable Modesty in not suffering the Chirurgion to dress her wound, the hurt which she had taken being on her thigh.

1482 6. *Philip* III. Son of *Mary* and *Maximilian*, to whom *Charles* the 8th. of *France* restored all the places in *Artois* and the County of *Burgundy* taken by his Father, married *Joan*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* and *Isabel* King and Queen of *Spain*.

1506 7. *Charles* II. Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Spain*, and Emperour of that name the fifth, added to his Estate in these Countries the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, the Earldom of *Zutphen*, the Lordships of *Utrecht*, *Over-Yssel* and *Groening*.

1558 8. *Philip* IV. of *Belgium*, and the II. of *Spain*, invading these Countries against their Priviledges, was by a great part of them rejected from being their Prince, *Anno* 1581, which made him, after a long and bloody War to surrender all his Interest in them to

1599 9. *Isabella Clara Eugenia*, his Daughter, and *Albert*, Archduke of *Austria*, whom he married to her; during whose Government a Truce for 12 years was made, and in the Preface to that Truce, the Confederate *Estates* declared to be treated with as a Free State, to whom the Kings of *Spain* could pretend no Title.

10. *Philip* V. of *Belgium*, and the IV. of *Spain*, on the decease of the Archdutchess *Isabella* his Aunt, succeeded in the possession of some, and the Title unto all the *Belgick* Provinces.

The ordinary Revenue of these Countries to the Dukes of *Burgundy*, and after to the Kings of *Spain*, before the Breach, were estimated at three millions of Crowns yearly; which was more than any King in Christendom at those times received, the *French* only excepted; the very measuring of Corn in the City of *Antwerp* being farmed yearly for 100000 Crowns in ready money: but the extraordinary was far greater; the Estates of these Countries in the year 1550 granting to *Charles* the fifth an Aid which they call the *Noventale*, amounting to 150000 Crowns a month; and yet the Provinces of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg*, *Geldres* and *Groening*, were not rated to it. And it is said that *Philip* the 2d, at his first coming to the Estate, was presented with a Grant of 40 millions of Florens, to be paid in few years. So that these Countries were the true Correlative of both his *Indies*: the loss of which, before the making of the Truce, *Anno* 1609, cost him above 100 millions of Crowns, and the loss of 400000 men.

The Forces of these Princes by Land may best be seen in the expedition of *Charles* (then Earl of *Charolois*) against *Lewis* the eleventh, whom Duke *Philip* the Good his Father furnished to that enterprise with 9000 Archers and 14000 men at Arms, every one of which had five or six great horses attending on him; and at his setting forward he was told by his Father, (never accompted for a Braggart) that if he fell into any danger, he should not be abandoned for the want of 100000 fighting men. The said Duke having thus sent away his Son, and being provoked by the indignities of those of *Liege* and *Dinant*, who revolted from him, suddenly raised an Army of 28000 Horse, and a proportionable number of Foot, for the chastisement of that proud and rebellious people. And *Charles* himself, succeeding on the death of his Father, in his unprosperous attempt upon the *Switzers* had no less than 80000 men at the Battel of *Morat*. As for their power at Sea, I find not that they kept any standing Navy, nor needed they so to do, as the case stood with them; considering that when they had occasion of any such service, they used to take up all the Ships which they found in their Harbours, (of which there never wanted good store) employing as many as they pleased, and dismissing the rest.

The principal order of Knighthood ordained by these Princes was that of the *Golden Fleece*, first instituted by Duke *Philip* the Good (in imitation of the order of Saint *George* in *England*) *Anno* 1430. The name and fancie was borrowed, as some conceive, from *Gideons*'s Fleece; from *Jasons*'s Fleece, as others think; but more probably from the Golden Fleeces of *England*, which brought him in so much gold and treasure in the way of Custom. Their Habit is a Collar of Gold interlaced with Irons, seeming to strike fire out of a Flint, (*Ex ferro flammam* being the Word:) at the end whereof hung the *Toison d'Or*, or Fleece of Gold. Their number at the first was but 25, (which is the number of Knights of the *English Garter*) increased afterwards by the same Duke *Philip* unto thirty one. *Charles* the first raised them to fifty one; and now the King of *Spain* hath assumed a liberty of making as many as he pleaseth: this being the only Military or Civil Order of which those Kings have the bestowing; the Orders of *Alcantara*, *Calatrava*, and the rest of *Spanish* institution, being rather Religious & Monastical, at the best but mixt. St. *Andrew*'s day is the day of Installation.

In this great Pomp and Glory did these Princes live as long as they continued in good terms with the subject Provinces, being masters of more goodly Jewels, magnificent Furniture for their Houses and costly Moveables, than any three of the greatest Princes in all *Europe*. And on the other side, the Subjects, whilest they lived in Duty under so great Princes, attained unto the height of all worldly happiness; in their Apparel excessively gorgeous, in their Feasts and Banquets over-sumptuous, in their Manners dissolute; Vices which usually accompany that kind of Felicity. An happiness too great to continue long. By the Ambition and Violence of *Charles* the Warlike they were first plunged into a War against *Lewis* the eleventh, of which they did not only feel the present miseries, but lost all the Towns and Holds which they had in *Picardy*, with the whole Dutchy of *Burgundy*. And by a like, but better-grounded, Ambition of *Charles* the fifth, they were exercised in continual Wars against the *French*, who miserably harrassed and ransacked the Countries of *Luxemburg*, *Hainault* and *Artois*, bordering next unto them. *Charles* at his death commended them to the special care of *Philip* his Son, advising him to use them kindly, as those that were the chief Supporters of his State and Glory; adding, that if he should deal otherwise with them, it would prove the ruin of his Fortunes. And on the other side, the people, to obtain his favour, presented him at his first entrance on the Government with a Grant of 40 Millions of Florens, as before was said. But he, transported with Ambition and a Catholick zeal, not only forgot their Love, but his Father's counsel; & had no sooner concluded a Peace with *France*, effected by the Treaty of *Cambray*, *Anno* 1559, but presently he cast his thoughts on the subjection of this People

ple to his will and pleasure. For they were so fortified with Priviledges, which their former Princes had granted, and the latter had been sworn to observe, that he wanted much of that absolute & uncontrollable command which he strongly aimed at. Some of which Priviledges were, 1. That the Prince could place no *Stranger* amongst them with Jurisdiction over their Estates and Persons, in Offices of War or Justice. 2. The Prince could give nothing to the Clergy; nor 3. Levy any Subsidies without the States of the Country. 4. But the main Prerogative was that of the *Brabanters*, (*viz.*) That if the Prince by violence or wrong did infringe any of the said Charters and *Franchises*, the people, after declaration thereof made, might go to election of a new Prince. This not a little grieved the *Spaniards*, that such base and unworthy people (for so they esteemed them) should in such liberty possess so brave and rich a Country; their King bearing no title of Majesty or absolute command over them. Besides, the Reformation of Religion, which then began to grow to some strength, moved the King to reduce them back to the Church of *Rome* by the power and terror of the *Inquisition*, and by the erecting of some new Episcopal Sees amongst them, (for before there were but three in all) to settle some more constant course of Ecclesiastical Discipline. Against both which when the people violently opposed, he then resolved of bringing them by *Spanish* Rhetorick (that is, by the Sword and the Cannon) to their old Obedience. To these ends he sends the Duke of *Alva*, an old and expert Captain, (as having 60 years been a Souldier) with a puissant Army, to be his Vice-Roy among them. He also gave him a Commission of that large extent, that he might place and displace whom he would, and execute all such as he could find opposite to his Designs. At that time the two chief men among them where the Prince of *Orange* and Count *Egmont*; the first more potent with the *People*, the latter with the *Souldiers*. Had these two joyned together, they might easily have prevented D. *Alva*'s entrance; but *Egmont* was so soothed up with Letters from *Spain*, that he believed not the intelligence which the Prince had concerning the Duke's Commission. The Earl exhorted the Prince to submit himself to the pleasure of the King, and so to prevent the ruine of his House. The Prince desired the Earl to maintain the Liberty of the Country; as for himself, *He had rather be a Prince without a House, than a Count without an Head.* Being thus resolved, the Prince retires to his County of *Nassau* in High *Germany*; the Earl stayeth to congratulate the entrance of the new Governour: who had no sooner setled himself, but he entrapped the Counts of *Horn* and *Egmont*, and beheaded them *An.* 1567. Being thus rid of these two, with divers others of good quality, who living would have much hindred his proceedings, he quartered his *Spaniards* in the Towns and Provinces, spoiled the people not of their Priviledges only, but their Liberty. Amongst the Reformed he brought in the bloudy *Inquisition*; and indeed so tyrannically did he behave himself, that the people were forced to a Defensive War, as well for their Lives as Substance. This was a War of State, not Religion, the most part of the *Hollanders* being Papists at the time of their taking Arms. During these Troubles the Prince of *Orange* was not idle, but but he in one place, and Count *Lodowick* his Brother in another, kept Duke *Alva* imployed; though divers times not with such fortunate success as they did expect. In the year 1572. *Flushing* was surprised by *Voorst* and *Berland*, as we have before said: so also was the *Briel* in *Voorn*, an Island of *Holland*, by the Count *de la March*. And not long after all *Holland*, except *Amsterdam*, followed the fortune and side of the Prince; together with all the Towns of *Zeland*, *Middleburg* excepted. *Anno* 1573, Duke *Alva* being recalled, *Don Lewis de Requisens* was appointed Governour; during whose rule many of the *Belgians* abandoned their Country, some flying into *Germany*, others into *France*, most into *England*. After his death, and before the arrival of *Don John*, the Prince and his Party recovered strength and courage again, till the coming of the Prince of *Parma*, who brought them into worse case than ever. Yet *Anno* 1581. they declare by their Writings directed to all people, that *Philip* of *Spain* was fallen from the Government; and take a new Oath of the People, which bound them never to return to the *Spanish* Obedience. This done, they elect *Francis* Duke of *Anjou*, Heir apparent to the *French* King, and then in no small hopes of marrying Queen *Elizabeth* of *England*, to be their Lord. But he intending rather to settle a tyranny in himself, than to drive it from the *Spaniard*, attempted *Antwerp*, put his men into the Town, but was by the valour of the *Burgers* shamefully repulsed. Shame of this ignoble enterprise, especially grief for its ill success, took him out of the world. About which time the Estates of these Countries were thus by this Hieroglyphick expressed. A Cow represented the Body of *Belgium*: there stood the King of *Spain* spurring her, the Queen of *England* feeding her, the Prince of *Orange* milking her, and Duke *Francis* plucking her back by the tail, but she foul'd his fingers. During his unfortunate Government, *Parma* prevailed in all places, especially after the death of *William* Prince of *Orange*, treacherously slain with a Pistol, *Anno* 1584. Now were the poor *Hollanders* truly miserable, desperate of Pardon from their Prince, and having none to lead them, none to protect them, but such as were likely to regard their own profit more than theirs. *England* was the only Sanctuary they had now left; to which they sue, offering the Queen thereof the Soveraignty of their Provinces, who had, if not a Right, yet a plausible Title to them, as being lineally descended from *Edward* the third and *Philip* his Wife, who was Sister and (as some say) Heir to *William* Earl of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. If *Margaret*, from whom the Right of *Spain* is derived, were Daughter to Earl *William*, then was our Queen to succeed after *Philip*, who was rejected: if that *Margaret* were (as many write) his younger Sister, then was our Queen the undoubted Heir, her Predecessor *Philippa* being Earl *William*'s eldest Sister. But that Heroick Queen not disputing the right of the Title, nor intending to her self any thing save the honour of relieving her distressed Neighbours, and providing for her own Estate by this diversion, took them into her Protection. Under which the *Belgian* Affairs succeeded so prosperously (I will not now stand upon the particulars) that before they would hearken to any Treaty of Peace, they forced the King of *Spain* to this Conclusion, that he treated with them as with a Free Estate, abstracted from all Right and title which he might pretend unto the places which they were possessed of. This Peace was concluded *Anno* 1609. since which time they have kept Garrisons well disciplined, and as well paid: so that these Countries have in these late days been the *Campus Martius*, or School of defence, for all Christendom, to which the youth of all Nations repair to see the manner of Fortifications, and learn the Art of War, and the use of their Weapons. Thus did they for 40 years hold the staff against a most puissant Monarch, and in the end capitulated with great advantage; that it is observed, that whereas all other Nations grow poor by War, these only grow rich. Whereupon it is remarkable to consider into what follies and extremities Princes run by using their people to the War. The Kings of *France* place most of their hopes in their Cavalry, because in policy they would not that the vulgar should be exercised in

Arms;

Arms. *Lycurgus* gave a Law to the *Lacedæmonians*, that they ſhould never fight often with one enemy: the breaking whereof made the *Thebans*, a ſmall Commonwealth, to be their equals in power: whereupon it was tartly ſaid by *Antalcidas* to *Ageſilaus* King of *Sparta*, that by his frequent warring on them and fighting with them *he had made the* Thebans *good Souldiers againſt their wills*. The *Turks* won the vaſt Empire they now poſſeſs by making many and ſpeedy Wars. But now that Policy being worn out of faſhion, we ſee that (to omit *Perſia*) the little and diſtracted Kingdom of *Hungary* hath for 200 years reſiſted their Forces. So was it between the Dukes of *Auſtria* and the *Switzers*, & ſo it is betwixt the *Spaniard* and *Low-country-men*; who formerly being accounted a dull and heavy people, altogether unfit for the Wars, by their continual combating with the *Spaniard*, are become ingenious, full of action, and great managers of cauſes appertaining to Fights, either by Sea or Land. We may hereby alſo perceive what advantage a ſmall State gaineth by fortifying places and paſſages: there being nothing which ſooner breaketh a great Army, and undoeth a great Prince than to beleaguer a well-fortified Town; for that herein he conſumeth his time, and commonly loſeth his men, credit and money; as the *Romans* before *Numantia*, the great *Turk* in *Malta*, and *Charles* of *Burgundy* before *Nancie*. For where War is drawn out of the Field unto the Walls, the Mattock and Spade being more neceſſary than the Sword and Spear, there the valour of the Aſſailant is little available, becauſe it wanteth its proper object.

Thus as before we brought theſe ſeveral Eſtates and Provinces into one hand, ſo now we have broke them into two; the one part continuing in Obedience to the Crown of *Spain*, the other governing themſelves as a State apart. Under the King remain the Dukedoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limbourg* and *Brabant*, (ſome few Towns excepted) the Marquiſate of the Empire, the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Artois* and *Flanders*, (except only *Scluys*) and the Lordſhip or Seigniory of *Mechlin*, with many places of importance in the Dutchie of *Geldres*, to countervail the Towns are held from them in *Flanders* and *Brabant*. This is by far the greater part of the Country, and more fruitful in regard of the Commodities there naturally growing, but as much inferiour to the other in power and riches, by reaſon of their ſtrength in Shipping, by which they have the command at Sea, and thereby draw the whole Trade of Chriſtendom, driven before at *Antwerp*, to *Amſterdam*, and other Towns of their Confederacy.

For the general Government of theſe Provinces, there is a Regent ſent from the Court of *Spain*, whoſe Authority is generally as great as that of the King; ſave that all matters of moment paſs under the King's name, and that all Officers of any great truſt and concernment are appointed by him, and that all Laws, Decrees, Sentences and Negotiations are diſpatched in his name alſo. For the aſſiſtance of the Regent there is a Privy Council, a Council of State, and a Council of Finances, by whom all things are ordered which concern the Publick, the Regent's Authority co-operating and concurring with them, without which, though they may conſult, they can execute nothing. And for the Governance and well-ordering of the ſeveral Provinces, there is in every one of them a Lieutenant or Provincial Government, ſubordinate to the Regent, and accomptable to him; and in each Province a particular Council held in the King's name, conſiſting of more or leſs Counſellours, (as the bigneſs of the Province is) for the moſt part Doctors or Licentiates of the Civil Laws, with a Preſident as the Head thereof; which in ſome places they call the *Parliament*, after the manner of the *French*, and in ſome the *Chancery*. To theſe Courts all the Subjects do reſort for Juſtice, in Cauſes both Criminal and Civil: to theſe are brought Appeals from inferiour Judicatures, ſuch as the Courts of great Towns and particular Franchiſes: and from theſe lieth an Appeal to the great Council at *Mechlin* ſupreme and ſuperintendent unto all the reſt.

When any thing is to be done which concerns the profit of the Prince, or otherwiſe is of publick moment, the Regent ſendeth out Letters in the King's name, to command the Eſtates, that is to ſay, the Clergy, the Nobility, and the principal Towns of every Province, (except thoſe of *Luxemburg*, *Geldres*, *Weſt-Frieſland* and *Over-Yſſel*, who by ſpecial Priviledge cannot be called out of their own Countries) to come before him. The place of their Aſſembly is for the moſt part at *Bruxels*, the Court and Reſidence of the Regent; becauſe the *Brabanters* are alſo priviledged not to be ſummoned out of the Precincts of their own Province. Where being come, the States aſſemble not altogether, but thoſe of one Province at a time, ſo one after another: to whom the Preſident, or ſome one of the Council of State propoſeth in the Prince's name that which he demandeth. To which if any Town oppoſe, then all which the reſt have done is of no effect, nothing being granted by the Deputies or States of any Province, but with this condition, that all the reſt of the Eſtates do agree unto it. Without this punctual conſent of all parties intereſſed, the Prince can impoſe nothing, by their Laws, upon the Subject, nor alter any thing at all in the publick Government.

And as the people are thus priviledged in regard of the Prince, ſo are the Princes and Prelates priviledged in regard of the Pope; it being agreed upon between them.

1. That the Prince is to give Clergy-Benefices, and the Pope to confirm them.
2. That neither Prelate nor Lay-perſon may be cited to *Rome*, but the Pope to ſend his Delegates or Commiſſioners into the Country.
3. The Pope not to give a Benefice, nor grant a Pardon, nor ſend a Bull into the Country, without the leave of the Prince.
4. That no Clergy-man can buy Lands or other immoveables, without the Prince's conſent. And
5. That the Prince hath power to viſit the Clergy, to ſee if they be well governed or not; and if they be not, to reform the Abuſes.

Great Priviledges, if conſidered rightly; greater than which few Proteſtant Princes do pretend to in their own Dominions.

As for the Revenue raiſed by the *Spaniard* out of his part of this Eſtate, it is not eaſie to be gueſſed at; and of that which is, there comes but little to his Coffers. The expences of his Court there is as great as ever under any of the former Regents; and his charge of entertaining Souldiers for his Towns and Garriſons greater than before. Nor doth it now ſtand with reaſon of State to lay any arbitrary Taxes upon the people, leſt he exaſperate them to a ſecond Rebellion, or ſtartle them to ſome new Confederacies againſt his Quiet.

Under the Government of the Confederate *Eſtates* are the Dukedom of *Gelderland*, excepting ſome few Towns in the hands of the *Spaniard*, the entire Earldoms of *Holland*, *Zeland* and *Zutphen*, the Seigniouries of *Weſt-Frieſland*, *Utrecht*, *Over-Yſſel*, *Groening*, the Town of *Scluys*, with the Iſle of *Caſſandt* in *Flanders*, and many pieces of importance in the Dutchy of *Brabant*. This is the leſſer part by far, and far inferiour to the other in regard of the Soil, but the more populous of the two, and by the Induſty

dustry and great Trading of the people the more rich and powerful. They are governed after their own old Laws, by the particular Estates of every Province, not yet united into one entire Body of a Commonwealth; saving that, for the better preservation of their Confederacy, the Commissioners of the several Provinces do consult together, whom they have honoured with the name of the *States General*.

The Estates of the particular Provinces, elected out of the principal Towns and places of most importance, do order the Affairs thereof according to their ancient Priviledges, Rights, and Customs, as well by themselves as by their Collegues and Officers whom they do appoint; and that as well for matters of State, as in point of Justice. For Administration of the which, the Governours, Presidents, and Counsellors of the Provincial Courts, have the cognizance of all Cases, both civil and criminal, and in all Causes of Appeal from inferiour Courts; in each of which they proceed without Appeal, making their Acts and Commissions in the name of the said Governours, Presidents, and Council, but pronouncing Sentence and executing Judgment in right of the Soveraignty of the said Province. And these Provincial States are chosen generally out of the Plebeians or common People, and the Burgers (at the best) of the greater Townships: the Nobility and Gentry being so worn out, that in all *Holland* and *Zeland* there are not left above three Families of Gentlemen, and those compelled to live after the Plebeian fashion for fear of Envy, and to avoid the Insolency of the saucy Clowns, who, out of rudeness and the desire of Equality, hate nothing more among them than the name of a Gentleman.

Out of these *Provincial States*, which hold not for any certain and determinate time, but only during the pleasure of the Community for which they serve, are chosen one or more for each several Province, according to the condition and capacity of those which are chosen, to reside at the *Hague*, there to consult of the Affairs which concern the publick: but so, that be they more or less out of every Province, they make amongst them but one Suffrage, when any thing is put unto the Vote. And these they call the *States General*, first, because a collected Body out of all the Provinces; and, secondly, because they are not properly to deal in any matters of particular concernment, which are determinable absolutely by the States Provincial, but only in such things as concern the general good of the whole Estate, as treating with Ambassadours, making War and Peace, &c. For their assistance in the which, there is a Council of State, made up of the Governours and some eminent men of every Province, (in which the Ambassadour of *England*, as long as we held *Flushing* and the other Cautionary Towns, had his voice or suffrage) by whose advice they dispose of all things which concern the publick: but so, that if any difficulty do appear in the businesses, they conclude nothing, till they have the approbation and consent of the particular Cities and Provinces for which they are chosen, to whom they are accomptable for their Administration, and by whom revocable whensoever they please.

The Revenue of this Estate doubtless is exceeding great, the Army which they keep in continual entertainment consisting of no less than 30000 men; which they can draw into the field, leaving the Forts and Towns very well provided, yet so well paid, that we never read of any Mutiny amongst them for want thereof. The whole Charge, with the entertainment of Captains and superiour Officers, is said to amount to 500000 l. *per annum*, raised on the people by Excise laid upon all Commodities, and many Taxes of like nature, so insupportable in themselves, and amongst men which would be thought to live in a Free State, that should the *Spaniard* or any Prince in Christendom lay but half so much on their Subjects, it would occasion a Revolt. So that whereas one of the first causes of their falling off from the King of *Spain* was to free themselves from Taxes and Impositions, illegally (as they said) enforced upon them; they have drawn upon themselves more arbitrary and illegal Payments than any Nation in the World. So little have they got by the change of Government. Touching their power at Sea, we have spoke already. All I shall now add to it is by way of instance, which is, That in the year 1587 the King of *Denmark*, on pretence of some displeasure, arrested 608 Ships of theirs of all sorts at one time in the *Sound*; and that the next year after they set out, upon very short warning, an hundred good men of War, to join with *England* against the invincible *Armada*, which then threatned both. To conclude, there is nothing wanting to these Countries wherewith the God of all blessings doth enrich a Nation, but a gracious Prince, unity of Religion, and a quiet Government: which if it pleased the Almighty to confer upon them, they would surpass all neighbouring States in Treasure, Potency, Content, and all worldly Happiness.

There are in these Countries.

Archbishops 3.

Bishops 15.

Universities 7. { *Lovain, Liege.* *Doway, Leiden.* *Harderwick, Groening.* *Franeker.*

And thus much for *BELGIUM*.

OF GERMANY.

GERMANY is bounded on the East with *Prussia*, *Poland*, and *Hungary*; on the West with *France*, *Switzerland* and *Belgium*, on the North with the *Baltick* Seas, the Ocean, and some part of *Denmark*: on the South with the *Alpes*, which part it from *Italy*. By which accompt the modern *Germany* much differeth from that described by *Tacitus* and others of the *Roman* Writers: That comprehending the three Kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, with so much of the Kingdom of *Poland* as lieth on this side of the River *Vistula*; but bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, and on the South with the *Danow*: the modern *Germany* containing on the farther banks of those Rivers five whole *Roman* Provinces, that is to say, *Noricum Ripense*, and *Mediterraneum*, *Rhætia secunda*, *Belgica* and *Germania prima*, with some parts of *Rhætia prima* and *Germania secunda*; but terminated with the *Danes* and the *Baltick* Sea.

It was first called thus by the *Romans*, (as some conceive) who seeing the people both in Customs, Speech and course of life so like those of *Gallia*, called them the *Germans* to the *Gauls*; the word *Germanus* in the *Latine* signifying a Brother of the whole blood, (as our Lawyers phrase it) that is to say, a Brother both by Father and Mother; those which have the same Mother, but divers Fathers, being called *Fratres uterini*. And of this mind is *Strabo*, who speaking of the great resemblance which was betwixt these Nations in Manners, Speech, Customs, and way of life, concludes it thus, that the *Romans* did with very good reason call them *Germans*, *cùm fratres eos Gallorum hoc nomine vellent ostendere*; intending to signifie by that name, that they were the Brethren of the *Gauls*. But this is to be understood of those people only which dwelt next to *Gaul*, and not of all the Nations which inhabited in this vast Continent according to the ancient extent thereof; it being very well observed by *Tacitus*, that *Germany* was at first *Nationis*, *non Gentis*, *nomen*, the name of some of the Nations only, not of all the Country; the name in process of time spreading over all that large Tract of ground and those scattered Nations which were either conquered by them or incorporate with them. Others will have the name to be meerly *Dutch*, deriving it from *Ger*, which signifieth *All*, and the word *Man*, signifying in that Language as in ours; whence also they derive the name of *Almans*; by which they would imply that the *Almans* or *Germans* are a very warlike Nation, a people that have in them *nihil nisi virile*, nothing not worthy of a *man*. *Bochartus*, somewhat near to this, telling us that *Ger* in the ancient *Gallick* did signifie as much as *Guerre* in the modern *French*, would have them at their first coming over the *Rhene* to be called *Germans* by the *Gauls*, that is to say, *men of War*, (or *Gens de Armes* in the present *French*) by reason of the great and many Victories obtained by them.

The like diversity I find for the name of *Almans*. For though some gave them the name of *Almans* from the same originals from whence they fetch the name of *Germans*, as was said before, yet others as probably conjecture, that they had that name because they consisted of so many several Nations coming out of the North and North-east hither, that they seemed to be a Hotch-potch of all sorts of men, kneaded into one name and Nation; which is the conceit of *Asinius Quadratus*. But for my part, I do conceive (supposing the name of *Almans* to be *Dutch* originally) that the whole Country was not called *Almain* till such time as the Princes of the Dukedom of *Almain* (since called *Suevia*, or *Schwaben*) did possess the Empire; which continuing in that potent Family near 100 years, might very well occasion them to be called the Emperours of *Almain*, or the *Almain* Race, and so impart that name to the Empire also. And for the *Almans* naturally and properly so called, (of whom we shall speak more when we come to *Suevia*) I see no Etymology more agreeable to true Antiquity, than to derive the name from *Mannus*, the Son of *Tuisco*, one of their Gods, and a principal Founder of this Nation, (*Tuisconem Deum & filium Manuum, originem gentis conditoréque*,) as is said by *Tacitus*: the people being called *Alemanni* (with a double *n*) in all ancient Writers, as men that did derive themselves from this *Mannus*, the Son of *Tuisco*. In like sort as (I think) the *Marcomanni*, inhabiting the Countries of *Moravia*, were so called, as being the *Manni* of the *Marches* or out-borders of *Germany*, and not the *Markmans*, as if they were men of *mark*, the only men of fame and honour of all those Nations; which might as well be pressed from the *Dutch* original as that of *All man*, in the meaning by them pretended. And unto this opinion I am swayed the rather, because I find the *Dutch* Nation generally so much inclined to derive their Original from *Tuisco*, (from whom the *Teutones*, inhabiting about *Brandenburg*, may well fetch their Pedegree;) the name of *Dutchland* or *Dutchmen* coming near in sound to *Tuisc-land* and *Tuisc-men*. In which I shall subscribe to *Verstegan's* opinion, though for the most part I look upon him but as the second part of *Goropius Becanus*.

But being the Etymologies of the names of most ancient Nations are very uncertain, and for the most part founded on Conjectures only; let us leave the Name a while, and survey the Country: the length whereof (according to the truest and exactest measurement) from East to West, that is to say, from the *Vistula* or *Weissell* to the *Rhene*, is estimated at 840 *Italian* miles; the breadth from North to South, that is to say, from the Ocean to the Town of *Brixen* in *Tyrol*, 740 of the same miles. So that the Figure of it being near a Square, it may take up 3160 miles in compass, or thereabouts. Situate in the Northern temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and tenth Climates, the longest day in the most Southern parts being 15 hours and an half, and in the most Northern 17 hours and a quarter.

In this compass and extent of ground are supposed to live 10 millions of people. The men of the poorer sort are laborious, painful, and of a sincere and honest carriage; the Nobles for the most part either Scholars or Souldiers, and true lovers of Honour; though *Tacitus* hath otherwise resolved it, affirming that the *Gauls* fight for Liberty, the *Belgians* for Honour, and the *Germans* for Gain. Which yet is true enough of the common Souldiers, who, if they fail

fail of Pay, fail in Courage presently. Of both sorts they are generally tall and big, of great Bones, much Flesh, and large Sinews, but commonly of such a phlegmatick constitution, that they have not spirit enough to manage such a mass of flesh as they bear about them. Which want of natural heat to concoct that humor makes them for the most part to be men of a bright or light brown Hair, & fair Complexions. They are little addicted to *Venus*, and very much to *Bacchus*; whence the Proverb, *Vivere Germanorum est bibere*, and the old Verses,

Germani possunt cunctos tolerare labores.
O utinam possent tam bene ferre sitim.

The *Dutch* themselves to labour well inure.
O would they Thirst could half so well endure.

This love unto their liquor, together with their natural Temper, maketh them fat and corpulent. Whereupon Pope *Julius* the second, styling the *Spaniards Birds of the Air*, because of their Ambition, the *Venetians* and *Genoeses Fishes of the Sea*, because so much accustomed to Navigation, called the *Germans* by the name of the *Beasts of the Field*. And when *Augustus* was resolved to take unto himself the supreme Government of *Rome*, he was advised by *Agrippa* to chuse a Guard of *Germans* to attend upon him. The reason was, (as *Dion* giveth it) Because in those great Bodies there was little Malice hidden, and less Subtilty; and that they were a people that took more pleasure to be commanded than to command. In matters of War this people have been formerly in a measure famous; yet not so much by the valour or conduct of their Captains, (for they have had but few such) as by their own hardiness. They withstood the *Romans* 210 years, afflicting and troubling them more in that space than either the *Charthaginians*, *Spaniards*, *Gauls*, or *Parthians*; and even at the last (saith *Tacitus*) *Triumphati magis sunt quam victi*. In our times the *Ratters* and *Lansknights* of *Germany* (for so they call their Horse and Foot) have been much employed: but more by reason of their numbers, easily rais'd out of so large a Country, than any opinion of their Valour; being slow of motion, dull of apprehension, fearful of putting any thing to the chance of War. By reason of which fearfulness, as they are very cruel upon all advantages, not sparing either age or sex when they get the Victory; so are they apt to run upon any Alarm, not to be rallied, if once routed, upon any perswasions. Insomuch as *Charles* Count of *Mansfield*, General of an Army of 50000 fighting men, but most of this Nation, was forced to suffer a small Army of 10000 *Turks* to pass by his Trenches, being then strongly encamped before *Strigonium* (now *Gran*) a Town of *Hungary*, and to victual the Town before his face; not daring to set upon them or disturb their purpose, for fear lest, being lustily charged, his *Germans* would give back and indanger all. And yet besides these weaknesses, they have some great faults. One of which is a custom, if their wages be not duly paid, (though it be in the very midst of a Battel) to cry *Guelt*, *Guelt*, throw down their weapons, and suffer themselves to be cut in pieces by the Enemy. And so they served *Frederick* the Electour *Palatine* at the Battel of *Prague*. The other is an extreme humour of Spoil and Plunder: on which they are so bent wheresoever they come, that such as entertain them have just cause to say, that they receive more damage by them than they do by their enemies. Two undeceivable notes of mercenary Valour.

The Women are of a good Complexion, but by reason of their intemperance in eating and drinking, much given to Corpulency; women of a good carriage, (as the saying is) good Beaters, and as fruitful Breeders; servilely obsequious to their Husbands, whom many of good rank serve at the Table with Trenchers and other necessaries, and take away when he hath done, eating the residue apart with and amongst their Maids, scarce sitting down with him once a week, and then too at the lower end, or at some such distance. And though the Women by their Laws have a property in the Goods which they bring with them at their Marriage, or are given them after, (so as the Husband hath but the use of them only) and may dispose of them by their last Will at the time of their death; yet is their condition thereby little better, the Husband being no less churlish and imperious than he would be otherwise. Which made *Caracalla* to say often, that only *that Nation knew how to rule their Wives, which added the Feminine Article to the Sun, and the Masculine to the Moon*, as the *Germans* do. Most of them, as well Wives as Virgins, (except persons of Honour) use to go bare-footed within doors, and seldom put on Shoes or Stockings, but when they are to go abroad on their occasions. A thing that seems the more strange, in regard of the extreme coldness of the Country, which is so fierce, that generally they lodge between two Feather-beds both in Summer and Winter; and in the most houses have their Stoves, of which the doors and windows are kept very close, as well to retain the heat, as to keep out the cold. Which though they may be useful and inoffensive in Gentlemens houses; yet in the Common Inns, where all sorts of people are necessitated to throng together, the ill Smells, never purged by admitting any fresh air, are ready to stifle and choak up the spirits of raw Travellers, not accustomed to them.

The Diet of *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy*, is by a Traveller thus censured: The *Germans* have much meat, but sluttishly dress'd; the *French* little, but neatly cooked; the *Italians* neither the one nor the other. And to say truth, the *Germans* have meat enough; the people being generally of good stomachs, and either by nature or ill custom excessive both in eating and drinking, seldom rising from the Table till they have consumed all which was set before them. Insomuch as in some places it is provided by Law, that in their Feasts they shall not sit above five hours at the Table. During which time, if by Intemperance either in eating or drinking a man disgorge his foul stomach in his fellow's Lap, or piss under the Table, it is no disgrace to him, nor at any time taken notice of to his reproach. Which humour of gormandizing and excessive drinking is not only cherished among the Vulgar, but even amongst their greatest Princes; who, beside what they do in this kind themselves, have their drinking Champions, as well to answer all Challenges, as to challenge all comers, contending with each other, as a point of State, whose Cellar shall afford the greatest and most capable Vessels.

The Title of the Father descends to all the Children; every Son of a Duke being a Duke, and every Daughter a Dutchess: a thing which the *Italians* hold so ridiculous that they put it in the fore-front of this facetious Satyre, The *Dukes* and *Earls* of *Germany*, the *Dons* of *Spain*, the *Monsieurs* of *France*, the *Bishops* of *Italy*, the *Nobility* of *Hungary*, the *Lairds* of *Scotland*, the *Knights* of *Naples*, and the *Younger Brethren* of *England*, make a poor Company. For by this common assuming of the Father's Honour, and the parting his Lands among all the Brethren, the Nobility is beyond reason multiplied, and no less impoverished; there being not long since seventeen Princes of *Anhalt*, and twenty seven Counts of *Mansfield*; to most of which their Arms have been the best part of their Riches, *& nihil nisi arma & manus, & in his omnia*, as *Tacitus* once said of the ancient *Britains*. And yet there is not one of this poor Nobility that will vouchsafe to marry with the Daughter of the wealthiest Merchant, or suffer any of their Sisters to be

married to any under the degree of a Nobleman; nor any juſter cauſe of a Diſheriting their Children than ignoble Marriages: they never permitting the Iſſue of ſuch a Bed to ſucceed in any of their Fees, Eſtates, or Titles: by means whereof, though they debar themſelves of ſuch acceſſions of wealth as Matches of that kind might bring them, yet, to the great honour of their generoſity in this particular, they preſerve the pure Stream of their Blood from running into muddy Chanels, and keep the Spirits of brave men, though they want the Fortunes.

The Languages here ſpoken are, the *French* in *Lorrain*, and in ſome Towns of the Biſhop of *Triers*; the *Italian* in the higheſt part of *Tyrol*, which lie next to the Commonwealth of *Venice*; the *Sclavonian* ſpoken in *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, and ſome part of *Luſatia*; and the *high Dutch* the general Language of the Country. A Language very ancient doubtleſs, (though I am not ſo much a *Goropian* as to think it ſpoke in Paradiſe, or before the Flood) and ſuch as, by reaſon of the little or no impreſſion which the *Roman* Armies made upon this Country, hath leſs commixture with the *Latine* than any which is uſed in theſe Weſtern parts, (the *Welſh* excepted) and is very harſh by reaſon of its many Conſonants.

This Country was eſteemed by *Tacitus* to be rude and barren, containing nothing but unpeopled Foreſts, unprofitable Heaths, and unhealthful Pools. *Germaniam informem terris, aſperam cœlo, triſtem cultu aſpectuque*, as he farther addeth. And ſuch no doubt it was in thoſe times wherein *Tacitus* lived; the people not being civilized, nor the Country cultivated, nor any means found out to rectifie the ſharpneſs of that Northern Air. But he who doth obſerve it now, cannot but confeſs that there is no Country in the World either better planted, or repleniſhed with more goodly and gallant Cities; being alſo in moſt parts both pleaſant, healthy and profitable; abounding with Mines of Silver and inferior Metals, plentiful in Corn and Wines, with which they ſupply the defect of other Nations, as alſo with Fleſh, Fiſh, Linen, Quickſilver, Alume, Saffron, Armour, and other Iron-works. The Arable lands are ſo ſpacious in the Eaſtern parts, that the Husbandman going forward with his Plough in the morning, turneth not back again till noon; ſo making but two Furrows for his whole days work. For this *Verſtegan* is my Authour; and if it be not credible, let him bear the blame.

Souldiers of moſt eminency in the elder times were 1. *Arminius*, the Prince of the *Cheruſci*, who overthrew *Quintilius Varus* and the *Roman* Legions. 2. *Witikind*, the laſt King of the *Saxons*. For the middle Ages, 3. *Otho* the firſt, 4. *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, 5. *Rodulph* of *Habſpurg*, Emperours and Kings of *Germany*; 6. *Henry*, ſurnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*. And in the laſt Century of years, 7. *Frederick* the ſecond, Elector *Palatine*, who made good *Vienna* againſt the *Turks*; 8. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, of whom more hereafter; 9. *Erneſt* Earl of *Mansfield*, 10. *John-George* of *Jagerndorf*, 11. *Albert Wallenſtein* Duke of *Fridland*, and divers others of late days.

Scholars of note the elder times afforded none, nor the middle many; Learning being here ſo rare in the middle of the eighth Century, that *Vigilius* Biſhop of *Saltzburg* was condemned of Hereſie for holding that there were *Antipodes*. In the next Age there flouriſhed *Rabanus Maurus*, *Haimo* of *Halberſtadt*, *Walafridus Strabus*, men learned for the times they lived in. And in the following times, *Ockam*, a ſtout defender of the Rights of the Empire againſt the Encroachments of the Pope, *Otho Friſingenſis* the Hiſtorian, *Albertus Magnus* the Philoſopher, of which laſt it is ſaid, that he made the *Statua* of a Man, which with the help of artificial Engines could ſpeak articulately, and was the work of 50 years. Then in the days of our Grandfathers we have 1. *Martin Luther*, that great inſtrument of the Reformation. 2. *Philip Melanchthon*, his Coadjutor in that work, but of more excellent parts, and far better temper; thence called the *Phœnix* of that Age. 3. *Joachim Camerarius*, a great friend of *Philip*. 4. *Martin Chemnitius*, a ſolid and laborious Writer. 5. *Flacius Illyricus*, the chief Author of the *Magdeburgian* Centuries, and Father of the Rigid *Lutherans*. 6. *Sebaſtian Munſter*, an induſtrious Coſmographer, and a learned Linguiſt. 7. *Silburgius*, and 8. *Buxtorfius*, as great Linguiſts as he. Not to deſcend to farther inſtances in thoſe who have ſo filled the Marts of *Francfort* in theſe latter times.

But the greateſt excellency of this people lieth in the Mechanical part of Learning, as being eminent for many Mathematical Experiments, ſtrange Water-works, Medicinal Extractions, Chymiſtry, the Art of Printing, and inventions of like noble nature, to the no leſs benefit than admiration of the World. Amongſt which I cannot chuſe but inſtance in that work of *Regiomontanus*, an excellent Mathematician, and a cunning Artizan, ſpoken of by *Keckerman*; who, at the coming of the Emperour *Maximilian* to the City of *Nurenberg*, made a wooden Eagle, which flew a quarter of a mile out of the Town to meet him; and being come to the place where he was, returned back of its own accord, and ſo accompanied him to his Lodging. A thing, if true, (as the Relator was a man of too much gravity to abuſe the World with an untruth) exceedingly beyond that Miracle of a flying Dove, for which *Archytas* is ſo famed amongſt the Ancients. Exceeded only by himſelf in a like invention, which was that of an Iron Fly, (the greater Miracle of Art, becauſe leſs in quantity) which at a Feaſt, to which he had invited ſome of his ſpecial Friends, flew from his hand about the Room and returned again, as is affirmed by *Peter Ramus*; expreſſed thus by Divine *Du Bartas*.

Once as this Artiſt, more with mirth than meat,
Feaſted ſome Friends, whom he eſteemed great,
From his learn'd hand an Iron Flie flew out,
And, having flown a perfect Round about,
With wearied wings return'd unto her Maſter,
And as judicious on his arm he plac'd her.
O divine Wit, that in the narrow Womb
Of a ſmall Flie could find ſufficient room
For all thoſe Springs, Wheels, Counterpoiſe and Chains,
Which ſtood inſtead of life, and ſpur, and reins!

And amongſt theſe I reckon *Bertholdus Swart*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, the Inventer (though by accident) of that fatal Inſtrument, the Gun. Studious in Chymiſtry, he mingled dried Earth, Sulphur, and ſome other Ingredients, which he had put into a Mortar covered with a ſtone; and ſtriking fire to light a Candle, as the night came on, a ſpark by chance fell into the Mortar, and catching hold of the Sulphur and other Minerals, with great violence blew up the ſtone wherewith it was covered. Amazed at which, he made trial ſeverally of theſe Ingredients, to find out which of them it was which produced that effect: which having diſcovered, he cauſed an Iron Pipe to be made, crammed it with Sulphur, Saltpeter and Stones; and putting fire to it, ſaw with what violent noiſe and fury it diſcharged it ſelf. This Invention he is ſaid to have firſt communicated to the *Venetians*, *Anno* 1330, or thereabouts, who having been often vanquiſhed by the *Genoeſes*, and driven almoſt to a neceſſity of yielding to them, by the help of their Guns (*Bombards* they were then called) gave unto their enemies a notable diſcomfiture. And this was the firſt Battel that ever thoſe warlike Pieces had a part in; which not long after put to li-

lence

lence all the Engines and Devices wherewith the Ancients were wont to make their Batteries. The next that made use of this instrument were the Inhabitants of the *Baltick* Sea; and not long after them the *English*, at the Siege of *Calice*, Anno 1347; about which time they began also to be used in *France*. The *French*, it seemeth, learned the use of them from the *English*: and the first benefit received by them was the death of that famous Leader, *Thomas Montacute*, Earl of *Salisbury*, who at the Siege of *Orleans* was slain with a great shot *Anno* 1425. Twenty years after this, *Anno* 1446, they were first used in *Spain*, at the Siege of *Setteville*, a Town of the Kingdom of *Granada*, by the *Castilians*, and after by degrees made common to the rest of that Continent. And being grown common in this Continent, as well unto the *Jews* and *Moors* as unto the *Christians*, it was not long before they taught it to the *Turks*. For the *Jews*, being forced to abandon *Spain* Anno 1492, betook themselves to *Greece* and other parts of the *Turks* Dominions, to whom they shewed the Art of making Ordnance, Gunpowder, Harquebusses, sufficiently since used by that people to the hurt of Christendom. But somewhat before this the *Turks* had been in part beholden for them to the Wars they had with the *Venetians*; beholden, I say, for notwithstanding the harm received by them at first, yet afterwards, growing expert in managing of them, they gave unto *Vsan Cassanes* and *Hismael*, two of the most mighty Emperours of *Persia*, two memorable Overthrows by the help of their great Ordnance only. The *Portugals* were in this Art the Tutors to the *Persians*: for, as *Solyman* the *Turkish* Emperour objected against them, they not only aided *Tamas* the *Sophi* with certain Harquebussiers, but also sent him workmen to shew him the use and making of Artillery. These great Pieces at the first invention were rude, unwieldy, and charged with Stone-bullets only: but by degrees they came to that perfection, both for the wall and the hand, which they now have. Whether now Archery or Gunning be to be preferred, I stand not here to determine; only this I am sure of, that Victories have been of late purchased with less expence of blood and life than ever formerly. But of this Theam more perhaps hereafter, when we shall come to take the *Parthian* Archery into consideration.

The Religion of this Country it is not easie to name, considering so many are here allowed; *Jews* being intermixt with *Christians*, and these divided into *Papists* and *Protestants*; the latter also divided into *Lutherans*, *Calvenists*, &c. The *Christian* Faith was first planted here, if *Dorotheus* Bishop of *Tyre* be of any credit, by S. *Thomas* surnamed *Didymus*, one of the Twelve. But being there is little truth unto his Relations, the best were to say with the *Magdeburgians* and the *Martyrologies*, that the *Germans* had not all the same Apostle; that the Gospel was first preached amongst the *Rhetians* and *Vindelici* by S. *Lucius* of *Cyrene*, amongst those of *Noricum* by S. *Mark*, by S. *Crescens* at *Mentz*, S. *Clement* at *Metz* in *Lorrain*, all of them Apostolical men, and of the number of the 70. after that by S. *Maternus* at *Colen*, and by S. *Eucherius* at *Triers*. That the Faith was planted very early in these Countries, *Irenæus*, the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, *Anno* 170, is sufficient evidence, who takes notice of it; and that it prospered very well and took very good root, appeareth by the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Worms*, *Spires*, *Basil*, and *Straesburg*, subscribing to the Council of *Colen* in the Reign of *Constantius* the Son of *Constantine* the Great, *Anno* 347. But the light hereof, being extinguished for a time by those barbarous Nations who fell upon these out-parts of the *Roman* Empire, began to shine again on the Conversion of the *French* in all parts of this Country; the Conquests and example of this puissant Nation giving great incouragement thereunto. In which as those of other Countries do not want their honour, so the greatest part thereof belongs to the *English-Saxons*; *Willibrode* the first Bishop of *Utrecht*; *Willibald* of *Aichstat*, *Swibert* of *Verden*, *Willibald* of *Breme*, and specially *Boniface* the Archbishop of *Mentz*, being most gloriously fortunate in that sacred service. The *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, and others farther off, came not in till afterwards. Not fully converted to the Faith, they began to suck in the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome*; discerned and opposed by *John Husse* and *Hierom* of *Prague* *Bohemian* Divines, who, by reason of the Marriage of King *Richard* the second of *England* with the Daughter of *Wenceslaus* Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, had opportunity to be acquainted with the Preachings of *Wicleff*, the Points of whose Doctrine they approved and propagated. But these two being burnt at *Constance* by the decree of that Council, their followers in *Bohemia* would not so give over, but after many sufferings and much bloodshed, obtained at last a Toleration of the Emperour *Sigismond* their King, more able to make good his word in his own Dominions, than he had been to save the two Martyrs from the fire at *Constance*, to whom he had granted his safe Conduct for their coming and going. In this condition they remained under the name of those of the *Sub utraque* or *Calistini*, because of their administring the Sacraments in both kinds, till the rising of *Luther*; who justly offended at the impious and unwarrantable Assertions of Frier *Tokel*, and others of the Pope's Pardon mongers, first opposed their doings, and after questioned that Authority by which they acted, falling from one Point to another, till he had shaken the Foundations of the *Roman* Fabrick. Of the success of his undertaking we shall speak but little, as in a thing well known to all men of knowledge. Suffice it in this place to say, that his Doctrine was not only received in *Germany*, but generally imbraced in the great Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Swethland*, with the Provinces and Islands appertaining to them, in great part of *Poland*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*, as far almost as to the banks of the *Euxine* Sea; but for the progress of it here, (which we are more especially at this time to enquire into) it was so well approved of, that the Dukes of *Saxony*, *Brunswick*, *Lunenburg*, *Wirtenberg*, *Mecklenberg*, and *Pomerania*, the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, and most of the Free and Imperial Cities, did adhere unto it; who from their Protestation made at *Spires* (the Imperial Chamber) to that effect *Anno* 1529 had the name of *Protestants*. The next year following they delivered in the Confession of their Faith at *Ausburg*, a City of *Suevia*, thence called *Confessio Augustana*; authorized, or tolerated at least, after a long War, with variable success on both sides, by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, at the Pacification made at *Passaw*, *Anno* 1552, and afterwards more fully at *Ausburg*, (where their Confession had first been tendred) *Anno* 1555.

But not to pass over this matter in these generals only, we may know once for all, that in the year 1530 the Protestant Princes having tendred their Confession at *Ausburg*, (as before is said) and finding it not so well received as they did expect, entred into a Confederation at the Town of *Smalcald* (belonging to the Duke of *Saxony*) for defence thereof, and for the defence of one another in pursuance of it. Into this Confederacy first entred *John Frederick* the Duke of *Saxony* and his Son, *Ernest* and *Francis* Dukes of *Lunenburg*, *Philip* the Lantgrave of *Hassia*, *George* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, the Cities of *Straesburg*, *Nurenberg*, *Heilbrun*, *Ruteling*, *Ulme*, *Lindaw*, *Constance*, *Memming*, and *Compedune*. Afterwards, *Anno* 1535, there entred into it *Barnimus* and *Philip* Princes of *Pomeren*, *Ulrick* Duke of *Wirtenberg*, Ro-

bert

bert Duke of *Zweibrucken*, (or *Bipont*, as some Writers call him) *William* Earl of *Nassau*, *George*, and *Joachim* Earls of *Anhalt*, the Cities of *Francford*, *Hamborough*, *Ausburg*, *Hanover*; and not long after the *Palsgrave* and King of *Denmark*. But this Confederacy was like to have dashed the business. For *Charles* the fifth looking upon it as a matter of dangerous consequence to the power and safety of the Empire, and withall instigated thereunto by the Popes of *Rome*, whose interest was no less concerned in it, considering that he could not otherwise untie this *Gordian* knot, resolved to cut it with the Sword. At first the War succeeded luckily with the Protestant Princes, who armed themselves upon the noise of his Preparations: But there being an equality of Command between the Duke *John Frederick* and *Philip* the Lantgrave, the one sometimes not approving, otherwhiles thwarting the others projects, the end proved not answerable. Besides, the politick Emperour, knowing full well that the Forces of confederate States are oftner broken by Delays than Battel, avoided all occasions of fighting, and thereby wearied out this great Army, which without performing any notable exploit disbanded it self, every man hasting home to defend his own. But none had more reason so to do than the Duke Electour: For in his absence his Cousin *Maurice* (forgetting the Education he had under him, and how formerly the Duke had conquered for him and estated him in those parts of *Misnia* (maugre all opposition of the Popish party) which formerly had belonged to Duke *George* his Uncle) combined himself with the Emperour, and invaded the Electour's Country; who notwithstanding recovered not only all his own, but a great part also of those Lands and Territories in which he had before estated his ungrateful Kinsman. But while he was in this Career, the Emperour suddenly falls upon him not far from *Mulberg*, (where the Duke was then hearing a Sermon) and by the suddenness of his coming routed his tumorous unprovided Army; the Duke himself with some few resolute Gentlemen making head against him, till the most of them were slain, and the Duke taken Prisoner. The next morning he was condemned to lose his head, but pardoned at the last upon some Conditions: amongst which it was none of the least, that he should surrender his Estates, and resign the Electoral dignity to be disposed of by the Victor; as also that he should without ransom release Marquess *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, (a busie and unquiet man) who was then his Prisoner. This done, the Emperour fraudulently intrappeth the Lantgrave, as we shall shew more at large hereafter in another place; and carrying on the War from one Free City to another, compelled them to receive the Mass, and to submit to such Composition as he pleased to grant them; insomuch as it was thought that the Emperour gained in this journey a Million and 800000 Crowns, and 500 pieces of great Ordnance. But these Successes were too great and too unjustly grounded to continue long. For *Maurice*, the new Duke Electour, who had married the Lantgrave's Daughter, and engaged himself unto his Children both by Word and Bond and that too at the Emperour's instance) for his safe returning, conceived himself unworthily dealt with so to be made the instrument of his Father's thraldom, and therefore that he was obliged both in love and honour to leave no way untryed which might gain his liberty. And withall, finding cause to fear that the course of the Emperour's great Successes might end at last in the subversion of the common Liberty, he secretly by an under-hand practice called in the *French*, and raising Forces under colour of the Emperour's service, gained Marquess *Albert* before mentioned (who had then a running Army in the field) to associate with him, and fell so suddenly on the Emperour lying then at *Inspruck*, that he compelled him to run away in post-hast by torch-light, and the Prelates to break off the Council of *Trent*, where at that time they were assembled. Upon which turning of the balance a Peace soon ensued, which brought forth the Edicts of *Passaw* and *Ausburg*, spoken of before, the best and surest Pledges of the Peace of *Germany*.

In the mean time, while the *Lutherans* thus played their game, there started up another party, begun at first by *Zuinglius* amongst the *Switzers*, of whose both Doctrine and Success we have spoken there. These not communicating Counsels went two several ways, especially in the Points of Consubstantiation and the Real Presence; not reconciled in their times, nor like to be agreed upon amongst their followers. For *Calvin*, rising into the esteem and place of *Zuinglius*, added some Tenets of his own to the former Doctrines touching Predestination, Free-will, Universal Grace, Final Perseverance, (Points fitter for the Schools than a popular Auditory;) by which the Differences were widened, and the Breach made irreparable: the Cause being followed on both sides with great impatience, as if they did not strive so much for Truth, as Victory. And, of the two, those of the *Lutheran* party seemed more violent, (though the other was altogether as irreconcilable) who could not chuse but stomach it, to see themselves undermined and blown up by a new form of Doctrine not tolerated in the Empire, but under colour of Conformity to the Confession of *Ausburg*. For *Zuinglianism* being entertained amongst the *French*, a busie and active people, spred it self farther in few years than it was propagated by the *Switzers* (men of the same temper with the *Dutch*) in all times before. Insomuch as it did not only prevail in *France*, but by the reputation of *Calvin*, and the diligence of his Followers, was wholly entertained in the Kingdom of *Scotland*, the *Netherlands*, in many parts of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and even in *Germany* it self, in which it got footing in all the Territories of the Counts *Palatines* of the *Rhene*, in some of the Lantgraves of *Hassia*, in the Imperial City of *Straesburg*, many of the *Hanse*-Towns, and amongst other Princes and free Cities of inferiour note. The rest of *Germany*, containing the Patrimonial Estates of the House of *Austria*, the Dukedoms of *Bavaria* and *Lorrain*, the Territories of the three Spiritual Electors, and of all the other Bishopricks in the hands of the Clergy, some of the Marquesses of *Baden*, part of the Subjects of *Cleve*, and but three of the Imperial Cities, (and those small ones too) that is to say, *Gemund*, *Uberlingen*, and *Dinckell-Spyell*, (unless some more be added by the great late Successes of the House of *Austria*) remain in their Obedience to the See of *Rome*; all which together will hardly make up one fifth part of this spacious Country, the other four being in the power and possession of the Protestant party: yet so that there be many Protestants in *Bohemia*, *Austria*, and in other the Estates of the Popish Princes; as there be Papists in the Free Cities of *Frankford*, *Nurenberg*, *Ulm*, *Aken*, and some other places, besides the late increase of them in both the *Palatinates*. Of such a speedy growth was the Reformation, that within the space of 40 years it was not only received in all those Countries which do now profess it, but had also got some footing both in *Spain* and *Italy*.

And here perhaps it will not be improper to look upon the means which were chiefly used for the Promoting of this Work, by which it came to spread so far in so little time, and next upon the Stops and Hinderances which were given unto it, by which it was restrained from spreading farther. 1. For the means used in the Advancement of this Work, (next under the Almighty power of the most wise God) they were these especially. 1. The

transl-

translating of the Scripture into Vulgar Languages, which easily discovered the Corruptions of the Church of *Rome* both in Doctrinals and Forms of Worship. 2. The diligent Preaching of their Ministry, both in Towns and Villages, for the expounding of the Scriptures, and fitting them to the capacities of the meanest Auditors; which gained exceedingly both on the judgment and affections of the common people; the course of Preaching having been formerly neglected by the Parish Curate, and turned off wholly in a manner to the Begging-Friars. 3. The publishing of Books of Practical Piety and Devotions, which mightily inflamed the hearts of all sorts of men; accustomed before to no other Duties than to tell over their *Credo's* and *Pater-nosters*, and to keep a just account of their *Ave-Maries*, and that most commonly in a tongue which they understand not. 4. The Education of youth, especially in Catechisms containing the whole body of Christian Religion; which once well planted in their minds, could not so easily be pulled up and removed thence by any contrary perswasions. 5. Their continual offers of disputation with the adverse party in a publick audience; which being denied (as generally at the first it was) gave great assurance of the truth and soundness of the one side, as of the falshood and weakness of the other. 6. Their compiling of Martyrologies and Histories of the Church, which could not but produce an admirable Zeal and Constancy both in the Readers and the Hearers, animated thereunto by those brave Examples which therein were presented to them. One point of Prudence hath been wanting, which is the calling of a General Council of all the Protestant and Reformed Churches, for the composing of the Differences which have grown between them. And this I look on as the first and greatest Stop to the Reformation from proceeding farther; many men (not improbably) thinking there must be some want of truth in the Foundation of that Building, which had such wide and open breaches in the Superstructures. The Tyranny and terrour of the Inquisition, by which it is kept out of *Spain*, and kept down in *Italy*, and all other parts of the Pope's Obedience, together with those other Policies both to discountenance and suppress it, (which we have spoken of in our description of the Papacy) may come next to this. Then add to these the care and diligence of the *Jesuites* and Seminary Priests, in applying themselves to all those means which they found so effectual on the other side, thereby not only countermining their endeavours, but fighting them upon even ground with the self-same weapons. And last of all, the Plots and Practices of the Papal Ministers, in working on the humours of the opposite parties, thereby inraging them not only into Tongue-combats and velitations of the Pen, but even to try it out by blows in an open War, once I am sure. By these means they have not only stopped the Progress of the Reformation, but would fain give themselves some hopes to destroy it utterly, and thereby to restore the Pope to that power and splendour which formerly he had attained unto in these parts of *Europe*. But of these and such like self-flatteries I shall say with *Seneca*, or rather in his words applied to my own Intention,

——*Hæ manus* Trojam *erigent*?
Parvas habet spes Troja, *si tales habet.*
That is to say,
Shall these small Jars restore the ruin'd Pope?
Small hopes he hath, if this be all his hope.

As for the Government of their Churches, those that continue in Obedience to the See of *Rome* are under the old form of Archbishops and Bishops, coæval in all *Germany* (as in most places else) with the Faith it self. The *Calvinists* (by which name the *Zuinglianist* now also passeth, if not eaten out) submit themselves for Doctrine, Discipline and Forms of Worship, to *Calvin's* Model; whereof we have spoke more at large when we were in *Geneva*. And for the *Lutherans*, they have divided the Episcopal Function from the Revenues; giving these last to some of their younger Princes, with the Title of *Administrators* of such a Bishoprick; the Function or Jurisdiction to some of the more eminent Clergy, with the title of a *Superintendent*, assigning to them a priority both of place and power before other Ministers, which they enjoy for term of life, together with some liberal maintenance in proportion to it. In other things, as Order, Habit, and Title of dignity, they differ not at all from the other Ministers. And over them, in the place of Archbishops, they have their *general Superintendents*; all of them of each sort accomptable to the supreme Ecclesiastical Consistory, (as formerly to the Provincial or National Synod) made up of Counsellors of State and the Heads of the Clergy. So that the Form seems to be much the same as in elder times, but is indeed more different than it seems to be; a great part of the Alteration being in the Names, and that no other in a manner than by changing the old *Greek* word *Episcopus* into the new *Latine* word *Superintendents*, both signifying an *Overseer*, though in different languages. And so *ex Græcis bonis Latinas fecêre non bonas*, in the Poet's words. Which brings into my mind the story of a people of *Africk*, who having received much hurt by Tigers, made a Decree that no man from thenceforth should call them Tigers, but give them a more harmless or less hated name, and then all was well. And as they do conform thus far to the elder times in form of Government, so do they also come up to them in their forms of Worship; retaining still a setled and prescribed Liturgie for all their Churches, most of the Holy-days observed in the former Ages, the Cross in Baptism, Kneeling at the Communion, and many other innocent and significant Ceremonies commended to the Church by most pure Antiquity. In point of Maintenance they are as defective as the *Calvinists* are; few of their Ministers having Tithes, most of them Pensions or Stipends, and those small ones also, seldom exceeding two or 300 Guldens, besides Wood for fewel, Corn, and some other necessaries.

Now because mention hath been made of the *Hanse*-Towns and Imperial Cities, we are to understand that the Cities of this Country are of three sorts. 1. Such as are holden in possession by some of the Princes in way of inheritance, part of their Patrimony and Estates; as *Heidelberg*, *Vienna*, *Munchen*, *Wittenberg*, &c. 2. Such as are held originally of the Empire it self: which are called *Free Cities*, for their great Prerogatives of Coyning money, and Governing themselves by their local Ordinances; *Imperial*, in regard they know no Lord or Protector but the Emperour only, to whom they pay two third parts of such Contributions as are assessed in the Assemblies or general Diets, and 1500 Florens yearly for themselves and their Territories. They are in number about 60, many of which are of a fair and large Estate; such as are *Nurenberg*, *Ausburg*, *Ingolstad*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, &c. Of which thus *Guicciardine*: Those (saith he) are called *Free Cities*, which, acknowledging by a certain determinate Tribute the Authority of the Empire, do notwithstanding in all other things govern themselves after their own Laws, not seeking to amplifie their Territories, but defend their Liberties. 3. The third sort is of those which are called *Hanse*-Towns, or *Hansteden*, that is, (say some) *An zee steden*, Towns upon the Sea; such as those were who first entred into this Confederacy: but at this time the name extends to many in-land Cities, and of no great Trading, joined with them in a League for their

common

common defence and preservation. A League made first against the *Danes* and the Earls of *Holstein* by some of the Maritime Towns bordering next unto them; that is to say, *Lubeck*, *Hamburg*, *Rostock*, *Wismar*, *Stralsund*, and *Lunenburg*: but afterwards many other of the Imperial Cities and Towns of Trade associated with them in an offensive and defensive League against all enemies whatsoever. In number about 72, those of *Livonia* and *Prussia* being taken into the reckoning: many of which are able to put to Sea 150 good sail of Ships; such as lie more within the Land contributing in money or otherwise to the common charge. First handselled by *Waldomar* the 3. of *Denmark*, whom they vanquished in a Naval Battel. After that growing into credit, and driving a great Trade in most parts of Christendom, they enjoyed many large and ample Priviledges wheresoever they came: called amongst us sometimes by the name of *Easterlings*, from their Easterly dwellings; and Merchants of the *Steelyard*, from the place where they stowed their Commodities; and *Guilda Teutonicorum*, in regard of their Nation, for the most part *Dutch*. But the *English* learning so much wit at the last as to make use of their own Shipping, they began here by little and little to decay, and are now almost worn out of memory with us, though still of good esteem and credit in other Countries.

The principal Rivers hereof are 1. *Danubius*, or the *Danow*, which rising out of *Nigra Sylva*, or *Schwartzenwald*, as the *Germans* call it, at a little Village of *Schwaben* called *Den Eschingen*, about two *Dutch* miles from the shores of the *Rhene*; passeth through *Schwaben*, *Bavaria*, *Austria*, &c. by the Cities of *Ulm*, *Regensburg*, *Passaw*, *Vienna*, *Rab*, *Buda*, and *Belgrade*, beyond which it beginneth to be called *Iter*, by that name most generally known amongst the *Grecians*: and receiving into its Chanel, from the long tracts of the *Alps*, the *Sarmatian* and *Carpathian* Mountains, about 60 navigable Rivers, besides lesser Brooks, disgorgeth his full stomach by several mouths (the names whereof we shall find in *Dacia*) into the lap of the *Euxine* Sea; the whole length of his course 1500 miles. Insomuch as we may say with a modern Poet,

Cedere Danubius se tibi, Nile, negat.
O seven-mouth'd *Nile*, I plainly see,
Danow will scarce give way to thee.

2. *Rhene*, (of whose original and course we have spoke more fully when we were in *Belgium*) which running from *Switzerland* through *Germany* and *Belgium*, after a course of 800 miles, emptieth it self into the *German* Ocean. All which shall here be added is, that it gives the Title of the *Rhine-grave* to some Princes of as good Blood as the best in *Germany*, whose Possessions and Estates bodering near unto it, they were from thence so called; but of late times decayed (almost to nothing) in their Estates, and living for the most part on the entertainment of other Princes, whom they serve in their Wars; the Palsgraves of the *Rhene*, and two at the least of the three Bishops Electors, raising themselves upon the ruine of this House. 3. *Elb.* (*Albis*) which springing out of the Mountain of *Risenberg* in the skirts of *Bohemia*, runneth a course of 400 miles, and passeth by the Cities of *Dresden*, *Meisen*, *Torgaw*, *Wittenberg*, *Magdeburg*, and *Lawenburg*, Cities of the Electoral and ancient *Saxony*, and so betwixt the Dukedom of *Holstein* (now part of *Denmark*) and the rest of *Germany*. 4. *Oder*, which hath its Fountain in the hithermost parts of *Moravia*; and after it hath run its course through *Brandenburg* and *Pomerania*, of some 300 miles in length, falleth at last into the *Baltick* Sea. 5. *Visurgis*, or the *Weser*, which issuing out of the Hills of *Thuringia*, runneth through *Hassia* and *Westphalen*, to the City of *Breme*, not far from which it falls into the German Ocean. 6. *Vistula*, or the *Wyssel*, which rising out of the *Carpathian* Mountains betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, first passeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Pole*, then betwixt *Pomeren* and *Prussia*, and so into the *Baltick* Sea; the ancient Boundary of this Country, dividing it from *Sarmatia Europæa*. 7. *Mosele*, which rising out of the Mountain *Vauge*, in the Confines of *Lorrain* and the County of *Burgundy*, passeth directly through *Lorrain*, and the District of *Triers*, by the Cities of *Toul*, *Metz*, and *Triers* it self, beyond which last it falleth into the *Rhene*, at the Town called *Confluentz*. 8. *Sala*, or *Salza*, which rising in the Mountains of *Fitchelberg* in the Borders of the *Upper Palatinate*, and passing by the skirts of *Misnia* and *Saxony* specially so called, falleth into the *Elb* beyond *Wittenberg*, having first watered the Cities of *Naumburg*, *Mersburg*, and *Jene*, very observable for being the most Eastern bounds of the *Saxon* Conquests, by this River parted from the *Sclaves*. 9. *Mænus*, or the *Maine*, which hath its spring in the Mountains of *Bohemia*, and passing by the Cities of *Bamberg* and *Wurtzburg*, is received into the *Rhene* beneath *Frankford*. 10. *Amisus*, or the *Ems*, which hath its Fountain near *Paderborn* in *Westphalia*, and passing between the two *Friselands*, falleth into the *German* Ocean not far from *Emden*.

Chief Mountains of this mighty Country, besides the *Alps* spoken of before, which run in a long tract betwixt it and *Italy*, are 1. *Abnoba*, now called *Schwartzenwald*, (the present name both of this Mountain and the Forest of *Martiana*, which doth overshadow it) out of which rise the Springs of *Danow* and the *Neccar*, two principal Rivers of this Country. 2. The *Sudetæ*, incircling *Bohemia*, covered with the Woods called anciently *Gabreta* and *Luna*, now called the Wolds of *Passaw* and *Behaimer*, from the places adjoining. 3. *Cetius* in *Austria*, now called *Culemberg*, the ancient Bounds betwixt *Pannonia* and *Noricum*, two *Roman* Provinces. 4. *Vogesus*, commonly called *Vauge*, and by some *French* Writers *le Monte de Faucities*, which incircling *Lorrain*, divideth it on the East and South from *Elsass* & the County of *Burgundy*. As for the Forests of this Country, besides those spoken of already, that of most note was the Forest of *Hercynia*, (of which all the rest were but limbs or branches,) the beginning whereof was about the Borders of *Switzerland* and *Alsatia*, from thence running Eastward along the course of the *Danow* unto *Transilvania*, and thence declining on the left hand through the vast Countries of the *Lituanians*, *Moscovites*, and *Russes*, in which last there are still many vast Deserts of it; the greatest part thereof in *Germany* being long since consumed, in place whereof are many goodly Corn-fields and well-built Cities. A Wood so formidable to the *Romans*, that they durst never venture to search the end of it; the length thereof, after the end of 60 days journey, being undiscoverable, and the farther search into it quite laid aside.

These Boundaries and Land-marks being thus described we shall the better follow the Chorography of this great Continent, according to the several Principalities and Estates therein; having first taken a survey of the ancient condition of it, with so much of the Story as concerns the whole, before it came to be divided into so many hands. The Country was first planted by the posterity of *Gomer*, who, descending from the Mountains of *Albania*, their first Seat, in memory thereof first called *Gomerini*, after *Cimmerini*, by that name known to *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and others of the ancient Writers, removed into the more fruitful Plains of *Phrygia*, and there built the City *Cimmeris*, which *Pliny* speaks of. But that small Province proving of too narrow a compass to contain his Offspring, and the adjoining Countries being taken up in the former Plantations, they removed unto the North-west of the *Euxine* Sea, where we find a City of their building

ing

ing called *Cimmerium*, mentioned both by *Pliny* and *Strabo*, and the adjoyning Streight or *Fretum* called by the name of *Bosporus Cimmerius* by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. Driven from these Dwellings by the more powerful *Scythians*, they spred themselves into the West, where they began to be called *Cimbri*, and by that name, and under those of the *Ambrones* and *Teutones*, several Branches of them, intended an Invasion and Conquest both of *Gaul* and *Italy*: wherein they had prevailed in all probability, *nisi isti seculo Marius contigisset*, had not *Marius* happened to have lived in that Age, by whom they were discomfited and destroyed. That these *Gomerians* or *Cimbri* were the first Inhabitants of *Gaul*, *Germany*, and all the Nations of the North and West of *Europe*, is generally agreed upon by all the Learned. Divided they were into several Nations, and those also subdivided into lesser Tribes, and more obscure Families; amongst which those of *Teutones* or *Tuiscones*, from which the *Dutch* do so affect to derive themselves, might be some of the principal. There setled, and not pleased with that desert dwelling, such of them as dwelt neerest to the *Rhene* passed over that River, and beating the *Gauls* farther up into the Country, possessed themselves of their Dwellings, enjoying them (till conquered by *Julius Cæsar*) without any Rival. But *Cæsar*, moved with the complaints of the *Gauls*, and the insolencies of *Arioviſtus* a King of the *Germans*, (for by that name for the reasons aforesaid the *Romans* called them) marched into their Quarters: the *Roman* Legionaries being so afraid of this dreadful Enemy, *ut testamenta passim in principiis scriberentur*, (saith the Historian) that many of them made their Testaments at the Gates of their Camp, before they fell upon the Enemy. Vanquished by *Cæsar*, and *Arioviſtus* being fled over the *Rhene*, the *Romans* by command of their General made a Bridge over the River, and rather terrified than conquered the neighbouring *Germans*; who were more fully brought into subjection by *Drusus*, the adopted Son of *Augustus Cæsar*, from thence called *Germanicus*, by whom not only the *Rhæti* and *Norici*, then lying out of the bounds of *Germany*, now included in it, were subdued in fine, and brought into the form of *Roman* Provinces; but the whole Country in a manner to the very Ocean was forced to yield obedience to the *Roman* Empire. But this was for so short a time, that it was both won and lost during the Reign and Government of *Augustus Cæsar*. So that the whole established *Conquests* of the *Romans* upon this Country, as it is now bounded, contained no more than the Provinces of *Germania* and *Belgica Prima*, with part of *Germania Secunda*, belonging unto the Diocess of *Gaul*; the greatest part of the two *Rhætia*'s being under the Diocess of *Italy*; *Noricum Mediterraneum* and *Ripense*, with some parts of *Pannonia*, parts of the Diocess of *Illyricum*. But none of these (as lying on the West side of the *Rhene*, and the South of the *Danow*) did ever pass in the accompt of the ancient *Germany*, the *Germans* not enduring the yoke so long as to be brought within the number of the *Roman* Provinces. Provoked with the Lust and Insolencies of *Quintilius Varus*, who succeeded *Drusus* in that charge, they set upon him under the conduct of *Arminius*, a chief Prince amongst them, kill him, and utterly cut off three Legions; as we shall see more particularly when we come to *Brunswick*, the ancient Seat of the *Cherusci*, by whom the Forces of that Emperour were driven over the *Rhene*. After which defeat *Augustus* laid aside the Affairs of *Germany*, confining his Empire within the *Rhene*, which *Drusus* had extended to the banks of the Ocean. *Hâc clade factum, ut Imperium quod in littore Oceani non steterat, in ripa* Rheni *fluminis staret*, saith the Historian. Nor did the *Romans* only forbear to revenge this Loss by making a new War upon them, but seemed more careful to defend themselves against their Invasions, than to incur the hazard of a new Defeat; quartering eight Legions with their several Wings and Aids on the shores of the *Rhene*, and four upon the banks of the *Danow*, to keep these people from incroaching on the *Roman* Provinces. But the fatal period of that Empire drawing on apace, the *French*, *Burgundians*, *Almans* and other *Dutch* Nations break through those Guards, dispossess the *Romans* of all *Gaul*, *Rhætia* and *Noricum*, which they share amongst them: till in the end the *French*, prevailing over the rest, extend their Empire over all the modern *Germany*; chiefly performed by the valour of *Charles* the Great, created Emperour of the West by the people of *Rome*, and crowned with the Imperial Crown by Pope *Leo* the 4. on *Christmass* day, *Anno* 801. So that now the old Prophesie of the *Druides*, concerning the removing of the Empire into the West, came to be accomplished; though *Tacitus* in his time accounted it for a vain and idle Prediction. For when *Civilis* raised a Rebellion amongst the *Batavi* (the *Hollanders* and parts adjoyning) against *Vespasian* then newly made Emperour, *possessionem rerum humanarum* Transalpinis *gentibus portendi* Druidæ *canebant*, the *Druides* prophesied of the translation of the Empire to the *Transalpine* Nations: accomplished, as before is said, in the person of *Charles* the Great, King of *France* and *Germany*. By whom it was divided (for the better ordering or Governance of it) into *West-France*, or *West-reick*, in the barbarous *Latine* of those times called *Westrasia*, containing the modern *France*, and so much of the *Netherlands* as lieth on the *French* side of the River *Maes*; and *Ostew-reick*, (*i. e.* the Eastern Kingdom) in the *Latine* of those times *Austrasia*, containing so much of the modern *Germany* and *Pannonia* as was possessed by the *French*, with the rest of the *Netherlands*. This was afterwards subdivided into the Kingdoms of *Lorrain* and *Germany*: whereof the first contained all *Germany* within the *Rhene*, together with the *Belgick* Provinces before described, the Counties of *Flanders* and *Artois* excepted only; the Kingdom of *Germany* taking up the rest. For in the time of *Ludovicus Pius*, the Son of *Charles*, the great Empire of his Father was parcelled out into many members, as *Italy*, *France*, *Burgundy*, *Lorrain*, and *Germany*, distributed amongst his Sons and Nephews with the title of Kings: by means whereof the Kingdoms of *Germany* and *Lorrain*, united in the person of *Lewis* the Ancient, in little time were alien'd from the House of *Charles*, and left off to be *French*, possessed by the great Princes of *Lorrain*, *Saxony*, *Schwaben*, and *Bavaria*; by them dismembred into many Principalities and inferiour States, all passing under the accompt and name of the *Dutch* or *Germans*. The Kings and Emperours of which here follow.

The Kings and Emperours of GERMANY.

A. Ch.

801 1. *Charles* the Great, Emperour, King of *France* and *Germany*.

815 2. *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *France*, *Germany*, and the Emperour of the *Romans*.

841 3. *Lewis*, surnamed the Ancient, second Son of *Ludovicus Pius*, King of *Germany*, to which *Anno* 876. he united that of *Lorrain* also.

4. *Charles* the Gross, Son of *Lewis* the Ancient, reigned at first joyntly with *Carloman* and *Lewis* his elder Brethren, after their deaths sole King of *Germany*. *Anno* 880. he succeeded *Ludovicus Balbus* in the title of Emperour, continued unto his Successors; and during the minority of *Charles* the Simple

by a Faction of the *French* Nobility was chosen King of *France*: the whole Estate of *Charles* the Great becoming once again united in the person of one Soveraign Prince.

891 5. *Arnulph*, the natural Son of *Carloman*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Germany* and Emperour.

903 6. *Lewis* or *Ludovicus* IV. (*Lewis* the Brother of *Charles* and *Carloman* being reckoned for one) King of *Germany* and Emperour, the lawfully begotten Son of *Arnulph*.

913 7. *Conrade*, the Son of *Conrade*, the Brother of *Lewis* the 4. the last Prince of the masculine issue of *Charles* the Great. After whose death the *Francones* and *Saxons*, seeing *Charles* the Simple, King of *France*, overlaid by the *Normans*, or embroyled by the Princes of the House of *Anjou*, took that advantage to transfer the Empire to themselves: and they made choice of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* to be their Emperour. A worthy Prince, by whom some Nations of the *Sclaves*, the *Hungarians* and part of *Lorrain* were subdued or added to the Empire.

929 8. *Henricus*, surnamed *Auceps*, or the Fowler, Duke of *Saxony*, elected by the *German* Princes, but designed by *Conrade*, as being eldest Son of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony* by *Luitgardis* Daughter to the Emperour *Arnulph*, and consequently a branch of the *Caroline* Stock.

938 9. *Otho*, surnamed the Great, the Son of *Henry*, Emperour and King of *Italy*. 36 years.

974 10. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the first, Emperour and King of *Italy*. 10.

984 11. *Otho* III. Son of *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and the last of that House which had the title of Emperour and King of *Italy*. After whose death, all right of Succession being disclaimed, the Emperours became elective; but for the most part the Election was ingrossed or monopolized (since the Faileur of the House of *Saxony*) by the Dukes of *Franconia*, *Suevia*, *Bavaria* and *Austria*, notwithstanding the liberty or freedom of Election pretended to by the Electors. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome*, to make the Emperours less powerful, and distract the *Germans*, whom they feared, into Sides and Factions: confirmed by a Decree of Pope *Gregory* the fifth, being a Native of that Country.

1002 12. *Henry* II. surnamed the Saint, Duke of *Bavaria*, the first Emperour elected according to the Constitution of *Gregory* the fifth, but so elected, that he challenged it in a manner by the right of Bloud, as being the Grandchild of *Henry* surnamed *Rixosus*, the first Duke of *Bavaria* of the *Saxon* race) the second Son of *Henry* the first, and consequently the next Heir-male of that House after *Otho* the 3. compelling some of the Electors, who opposed his Title, by the force of Arms to yield unto it. So that the first Emperour who came in by a clear Election, but not without pretension of a Title also, was

1025 13. *Conrade* II. Duke of *Franconia*, surnamed *Salicus*, Husband to *Luitgardis*, one of the Daughters of *Otho* the first, and consequently not a Stranger to the former Family.

1040 14. *Henry* III. surnamed *Niger*, the Son of *Conrade*.

1056 15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in whose days the Popes began to usurp Authority over the Emperours; insomuch as *Leo* the ninth, having received the Popedom at the Emperour's hands, repented himself of it, put off his Papal Vestments, went to *Rome* as a private person, and was there new chosen by the Clergy. This was done by the perswasion of a Monk called *Hildebrand*, who being afterwards made Pope by the name of *Gregory* the 7. excommunicated this *Henry*, the first Prince that was ever excommunicated by a Pope of *Rome*. From which time till the year 1254. there were continual Wars and Thunders betwixt them and the nine following Emperours, some of them being excommunicated, some forced to put their Necks under the Feet of the Pope, others to quit the care of the Commonwealth, and betake themselves unto the Wars of the *Holy Land*, leaving the Pope to do what he list in *Germany*.

1106 16. *Henry* V. Son of *Henry* the 4. armed by the Pope against his Father; whom he had no sooner succeeded in the Empire, but the Pope excommunicated him, for being too stiff in the business of Investitures, and raised up the *Saxons* against him; by whom being vanquished, and otherwise afflicted by the Pope's Practices, he was forced to submit unto his commands, and was the last Emperour of the House of *Franconia*.

1125 17. *Lotharius*, Duke of *Bavaria*, seizing on the Empire without any Election, was reconciled unto the *German* Princes by the means of St. *Bernard*. He setled the Affairs of *Italy* in two Journies thither. 13.

1139 18. *Conrade* III. Son of *Frederick*, the first hereditary Duke of *Sueve* or *Schwaben*, and Sister's Son unto *Henry* the fifth, vanquished *Henry* surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and going to the holy Wars with *Lewis* King of *France*, discomfited the *Turks* near the Banks of *Meander*. 15.

1153 19. *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, Duke of *Sueve*, crowned at *Rome* by *Adrian* the 4. and not long after excommunicated by Pope *Alexander* the 3. to whom he was fain at last to submit himself, the Pope insolently treading on his Neck. He went after to the *Holy Land*, where he died, having discomfited the *Turks* in three great Battels. 37.

1190 20. *Henry* VI. Son of *Frederick*, and King of *Sicily*, in right of *Constance* his Wife, crowned by Pope *Celestine*, who imployed him in the Wars of the *Holy Land*; in his Journey towards which he died at *Messina*. 8.

1198 21. *Philip*, Duke of *Sueve*, Brother of *Henry* the 6. excommunicated by the Pope, (who loved not this Family) by whose means *Otho*, the Son of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, was set up against him. The occasion of great Wars among the *Germans*, reconciled by Marriage of *Otho* with a Daughter of *Philip*. 9.

1207 22. *Otho* IV. Son of *Henry* surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, crowned at *Rome* by Pope *Innocent* the 3. by whom not long

long after he was excommunicated, for taking into his hands some Towns of *Italy* which belonged to the Empire: vanquished in *Brabant* by the Faction raised up against him, he relinquished the Empire to his Competitor.

1212 23. *Frederick* II. King of *Sicily* and *Naples*, Son of *Henry* the 6. having settled *Germany*, disposed himself for the Wars of the *Holy Land*, where he recovered the possession of the Realm of *Jerusalem*. He was excommunicated by the Pope at his return into *Italy*, and not long after poisoned.

1250 24. *Conrade* IV. Son of *Frederick*, the last Emperour of the House of *Schwaben*. After whose death the Empire being distracted by the Pope's practices into many Factions, each Faction chose an Emperour or King of the *Romans*: so that at one time there were elected *Henry* Earl of *Thuringia*, *William* Earl of *Holland*, *Alfonso* King of *Castile*, the renowned Authour of the *Alfonsine* Tables, and

1254 25. *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall*, Brother of *Henry* the third of *England*, the best monied man of all his time, supposed therewith to buy the Suffrages of the Archbishop of *Colen* and Elector *Palatine*, by whom he was elected and crowned King of the *Romans*, *An.* 1254: and after he had dealt in the affairs of the Empire 6 years, he returned into *England*, where he died. After whose death, or an *Interregnum* of 12 years from his *Exit* rather, the Title was at last accepted by

1273 26. *Rodolph*, Earl of *Habspurg*, a petit Prince, (others of greater Estates and Fortunes not daring to take up the honour) the Raiser of the present *Austrian* Family.

1292 27. *Adolph*, Earl of *Nassau*, who served in person under King *Edward* the 1. of *England* against the *French*; for which being distrelithed by the *Germans*, he was encountred and slain near the City of *Spires*.

1298 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Austria*, Son of *Rodolphus* the Emperour, to whome Pope *Boniface* the 8. gave the Realm of *France*, of which he had deprived King *Philip* the Fair. But *Albert* would not meddle out of *Germany*, and did nothing in it.

1308 29. *Henry*, Earl of *Luxemburg*, who made a Journey into *Italy* to recover the Rights of the Empire, (where an Emperour had not been seen in 60 years:) supposed to be poisoned in the Chalice by a Frier at *Benevent*, a Town of the Pope's. 6.

1314 30. *Lewis*, Duke of *Bavaria*, crowned at *Aix* in the wonted manner; opposed by *Frederick* Duke of *Austria*, chose by another Faction, and crowned at *Bonna*, a Town of the Archbishop of *Colen*: but he being defeated, *Lewis* remained sole Emperour, and was excommunicated by Pope *John* 22. 33.

1346 31. *Charles* IV. Son of *John* King of *Bohemia*, and Grand-son of *Henry* the 7. crowned with the Iron Crown at *Millain* 1354; the framer of the *Golden Bull*. 32.

1378 32. *Wenceslaus*, King of *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, deformed and vicious; deposed by the *German* Princes. 22.

1400 33. *Rupertus*, Elector *Palatine*, passed into *Italy* for the recovery of the Dukedom of *Millain*, sold by *Wenceslaus*; but was well beat by *John Galeazzo*, and so returned. 10.

1410 34. *Jodocus Barbatus*, Marquess of *Moravia*, Uncle to *Wenceslaus*.

1411 35. *Sigismund*, Brother of *Wenceslaus*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Earl of *Luxemburg*, crowned at *Rome* on *Whitsunday* 1432. He travelled exceedingly for establishing the Peace of Christendom, distracted at that time with three Popes at once; and was a great promoter of the Council at *Constance*.

1439 36. *Albert* II. Duke of *Austria*, Son-in-law of *Sigismund*, whom he succeeded in all his Estates and Titles, excepting *Luxemburg*. 1.

1440 37. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Austria*, the Son of *Ernest* of *Austria*, and next Heir of *Albert* the 2. He procured the calling of the Council of *Basil* for the Peace of Christendom, travelling for that cause to *Rome*, where he was declared Emperour, *Anno* 1442. 54.

1494 38. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, Duke of *Austria*, who first united the Estates of *Burgundy* to the House of *Austria*. A Prince that undertook many great Actions, but went through with none. 25.

1519 39. *Charles* V. King of *Spain*, Son of *Philip* King of *Spain* and Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Maximilian* by the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*. A puissant Prince, who had Prisoners at the same time the *French* King and the Pope of *Rome*. He ruined the League made by the Protestants at *Smalcald*, took Prisoners the Electour of *Saxony*, and the Lantgrave of *Hassia*, drave the great *Turk* from *Vienna*, won the Kingdom of *Tunis*, and in the end resigned all his Estates, and died in a Monastery. 39.

1558 40. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, the Brother of *Charles*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, elected King of the *Romans* by the procurement of *Charles*, *Anno* 1531. Upon whose Resignation he was chosen Emperour, *Anno* 1558. 7.

1565 41. *Maximilian*, the Son of *Ferdinand*, elected King of the *Romans* in the life of his Father, *Anno* 1562, succeeding the Empire after his decease.

1577 42. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Maximilian*, had great Wars against the *Turk*, with whom in the year 1600 he concluded a Peace; but being undermined by his Brother *Matthias*, was forced to surrender to him the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and to content himself with *Austria* and the Empire only. These eight last Emperors were all of the Order of the Garter.

1612 43. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Archduke of *Austria*; in whose time were sown the seeds of that terrible War which had almost destroyed the Empire. Having no Children of his own, he procured *Ferdinand* of *Gretz* to be declared Successour into his Estates. 7.

1619 44. *Ferdinand* of *Gretz*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Charles* of *Gretz*, the younger Son of *Ferdinand*, the first, succeeded *Matthias* in all his Estates and Titles. A Prince more zealously affected to the See of *Rome* than any of his Predecessors, and a great enemy

of the Proteſtant Religion, occaſioning thereby that long and bloody War in the Empire of *Germany*, not yet fully ended.

1637 45. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the 2. broke the great power of the *Swedes*, (called in for the ſupport of the *German* Liberty, and againſt the violent reſolutions of his Father at the Battel of *Norlingen*; the twelfth Emperour of the Houſe of *Habſpurg*, and the ninth of the Houſe of *Auſtria* without intermiſſion. The cauſe of which is to be attributed to *Charles* the 5. who procured in his life-time that his Brother might be choſen *Rex Romanorum*, as his Succeſſor in the Empire: a policy which hath been ever ſince continued by his Succeſſors. And the *Germans* are the more willing to hearken to it, becauſe the *Auſtrian* Princes are not only Natives of this Country, but better able to back out the Empire in its complete Majeſty than any of the reſt of that Nation are.

And to ſay truth, it is but need that ſome great Prince or other be elected to it, who by the power and reputation of his own Eſtate may preſerve the Honour of the Empire, confined in a manner within *Germany*, and there ſo weakned by the alienating of whole Countries from it, (ſome Titulary acknowledgment excepted only) that it is nothing in effect but *magni nominis umbra*, the ſhadow of a mighty body, a meer empty Title. For if we look upon the preſent ſtate and condition of it, we ſhall find it otherwiſe too weak to ſupport the great and ſwelling Title of the *Roman* Empire. For as for the Empire it ſelf, it hath ſome Countries reputed as parts of it, which yet acknowledg no Subjection; as *Belgium*, *Switzerland*, and *Denmark*: Some do acknowledge a kind of Subjection, but the Princes of them come not to the Imperial Diets; as the Dukes of *Savoy* & *Lorrain*, and ſome of the *Italian* Potentates: Finally, ſome both confeſs the Emperour to be their Sovereign, and that they owe Service to his Courts, which are the Princes and Cities of *Germany* only; but thoſe ſo priviledged, ſo exempted from his commands, ſo abſolute & incontrollable in their own Eſtates, that they care little for his power, and not much (if any thing) for his perſon; of which we ſhall ſpeak more heraſter, when we come unto the form of the publick Government. In the mean time, if we would know by what occaſions the Empire became ſo infeebled, it may be ſaid, that the reaſons and occaſions of it have been very many. As firſt, The weakneſs and improvidence of the *Caroline* Race, diſmembring from it many powerful and wealthy Provinces, reſerving only a bare Homage and ſome ſlight acknowledgment. 2. The Cunning of the Popes, who from the time of *Henry* the 4. to *Rodolph* of *Habspurg* had by their Excommunications and other practices ſo exerciſed the Emperors with inteſtine troubles, that they forced them in a manner to abandon *Italy*: inſomuch that the ſaid *Rodolph*, finding the inconvenience of it, ſold moſt of his Eſtates there to the faireſt Chapmen. 3. This done, and the Popes knowing well enough that they could not wax ſtrong in *Italy* if they did not weaken the Emperor's eſtate in *Germany*, they firſt wreſted out of their hands the Inveſtiture of the Biſhops, Abbats, and other Eccleſiaſtical Preferments; who being now made their own creatures, were ſo encreaſed both in Revenue and Power by little and little, and fortified with ſo many Immunities, that ſome of them grew in time to be Free Eſtates, all of them Princes of the Empire. 4. But fearing that this might not bring the Emperors low enough, they bated them with continual Factions and perpetual Broils: which put them to a neceſſity of making what Friends they could, though they paid very dearly for them; and taking up what monies they could of the wealthier Cities, paying them in Exemptions and Royal Priviledges, when they could not otherwiſe cancel or diſcharge the Debt. 5. And unto this, the making the Empire Elective gave no little help, few of them looking on the Empire but as Tenants for term of life, and therefore were more likely to diſcharge ſuch Debts by impairing the publick Patrimony, which they had no hold in, than to diminiſh any thing of their own Eſtates. 6. But being the Title of Emperor was the greateſt Honour which any of that Nation could be capable of, and ſuch as by good husbandry might be made beneficial unto their poſterity, (as we ſee what good uſes have been made of it by the *Auſtrian* Family, ever ſince the time of *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*;) who would not part with ſome of the Imperial Rights, to advance his own Houſe to an equal greatneſs? And herein many of the Emperors were exceeding faulty, who, to get the Empire to themſelves, or leave it after them unto their poſterity, diſmembred from the ſame many Towns and fair Poſſeſſions, given by them to the Electors for their Votes and Suffrages. 7. A thing which the Electors underſtood ſufficiently, and therefore were reſolved to make the beſt of the market, knowing that the Commodity could be bought of none but themſelves: as in the Election of *Wenceſlaus* Son of *Charles* the 4th. of whom it was but Ask and have what they have a mind to. By means whereof the Princes grew in time ſo ſtrong, that there were few of them who durſt not undertake a War againſt their Emperours. And this appeareth by the Story of *Charles* the fifth, who, though the moſt puiſſant Emperor which had reigned in *Germany* ſince *Charles* the Great, yet found himſelf ſo over-matched by theſe ruffling Princes, that he was willing to reſign the Empire to his Brother *Ferdinand*.

But to proceed: By theſe and every of theſe means the Body of the Empire came to be divided into many Eſtates, and thoſe Eſtates to be made abſolute and independent, as before is ſaid. The principal whereof, which being deſcribed will make up the Chorography of this great Continent, are thoſe of 1. *Cleveland*, 2. the Eſtates of the three Spiritual Electors, 3. the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, 4. *Alſatia*, 5. *Lorrain*, 6. *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, 7. *Bavaria*, 8. *Auſtria* and its Appendixes, 9. the Confederation of *Wederaw*, 10. *Franconia*, 11. *Wirtenberg*, and 12. *Baden*, 13. the *Palatinate* of *Northgoia*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, 14. *Bohemia* and the incoporate Provinces, 15. *Pomerania*, 16. *Mecklenburg*, 17. the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, 18. *Saxony* and the Members of it, 19. the Dukedoms of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, 20. the Lantgravedom of *Haſſia*, 21. *Weſtphalen*, 22. *Eaſt-Frieſland*. Such leſſer States as, being abſolute and free, are of leſſer moment, ſhall be reduced (together with the Imperial Cities) to thoſe ſeveral Provinces in which they are included, or out of which they were taken. As for the Province of *Holſtein* or *Holſatia*, though it be Imperial, and in this reſpect by ſome accounted as a Province of *Germany*; yet being under the command of the King of *Denmark*, and by all Writers reckoned as a part of that Kingdom, I ſhall there ſpeak of it. Some of theſe are thus cenſured by *Aubanus*, a late Writer. They of *Suevia* (ſaith he) are Whores, they of *Franconia* Raviſhers and Buggers, they of *Bohemiah* Hereticks, thoſe of *Bavaria* Thieves, they of *Saxony* Drunkards, they of *Frieſland* and *Weſtphalia* Swearers, and they of the *Palatinate* Gluttons. But I hope more charitably of them all than ſo. I know there is another diviſion of this Country, made by the Emperor

Maximi-

Maximillian at the Diet of *Colen*, *Anno* 1522. who, for the better raiſing both of men and money for all publick ſervices, cauſed it to be divided into the ten Circles of 1. *Lower Saxony*. 2. *Upper Saxony*. 3. *Weſtphalia*. 4. Of the *Rhene*. 5. Of the *four Electors of that part*. 6. *Franconia*. 7. *Suevia*. 8. *Bavaria*. 9. *Auſtria*, and 10. *Burgundy*. But that before propoſed being the more particular, I ſhall follow that, according to the order before laid down; beginning firſt with thoſe which, together with the *Belgick* Provinces and the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, contained anciently the Provinces of *Belgica* and *Germania Prima*, and ſome part of *Germania Secunda*, and made up the Kingdom of *Auſtraſia* ſtrictly and ſpecially ſo called.

1. *CLEVELAND.*

CLEVELAND, or the Eſtates of the Duke of *Cleve*, before diſmembred and divided betwixt the Competitors for the Dukedom on the death of the laſt Duke hereof, *Anno* 1609, contained the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Guilick* and *Berg*, and the Earldom of *Mark* or *March*, all lying in a ring together. And though theſe two laſt lie on the other ſide of the *Rhene*, and ſo not properly within the old Precincts of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, or any of the *Roman* Provinces before named; yet being they belonged all to the ſame Prince, not parted by the interpoſition of other Countries, they ſhall be handled here together as the ſame Eſtate.

1. The Dukedom of *CLEVE*, properly and diſtinctly ſo called, hath on the Eaſt the Countries of *Mark* and *Berg* with ſome part of *Weſtphalen*, on the Weſt *Gelderland* and ſome part of *Limbourg*, on the North the Earldom of *Zutphen* and the Land of *Over-Yſſel*, and on the South *Gulick* and the Land of *Colen*. So called from *Cleve* the chief Town of it.

The Country is very Fruitful both for Corn and Paſturage, well ſtocked with Cattel of all ſorts for neceſſary uſe and pleaſure; hath good ſtore of Fowl, both tame and wilde; is bleſſed alſo with an healthy Air, and, in a word, with all things needful for the life of man, well watered with the *Rhene*, the *Roer*, the *Duſſel*, the *Ezſat*, and the *Nirſi*, common to this and the reſt of the incorporate Provinces.

The places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Cleve*, (in *Latine Clivia*) ſo called, becauſe built on the ſides of three little Hills (which the *Latines* call *Clivi*) gently deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene*, which not far off divides it ſelf into ſeveral Chanels. An ancient Town, and of great note in former time, as appears by many old Foundations and other monuments of Antiquity continually digged up in the Fields adjoining; but chiefly by an old four-ſquare Tower built on the higheſt of the three Hills, of great height and ſtate, Founded by *Julius Cæſar* as a Bulwark againſt the *Germans* inhabiting the farther ſide of the River. For proof of which, beſides the old Tradition conſtantly maintained, there is an Inſcription on the Gates of the Duke's Palace, near adjoyning to it, which ſaith, *Anno ab Urbe* DCXCIIX. C. Julius Dictator, *his partibus ſubactis, hanc Arcem fundavit*; *i.e.* that in the year 698, from the building of *Rome*, *Julius Cæſar* the *Dictator*, having ſubdued thoſe parts of the Country, cauſed this Tower to be built. 2. *Santen*, on the banks of the *Rhene*, a Town of great Antiquity, as the Ruines of it do declare; ſuppoſed by *Pighius* to be the *Trajana Colonia* of the Ancients. 3. *Weſel*, (in *Latine Veſalia*) a fair and rich Town, ſeated on the Confluence of the *Rhene* with the River of *Lippe*, which, riſing in *Weſtphalia*, doth here loſe it ſelf: of great note for a Colledge of Secular Canons built here by *Eberard* the 9th Earl, *Anno* 840, or thereabouts; and an Hoſpital liberally endowed for old impotent perſons, Founded by *Henry de Baers*, the Duke's Chancellour. A Town not ſubject to theſe Dukes, though within the Dukedom, being reckoned an Imperial City, and one of the *Hanſe*-Towns; now neither ſo Imperial nor ſo free as formerly: poſſeſſed firſt with the *Spaniard* with a Garriſon of 3000 men (at the beginning of the War of *Cleve*) by D. *Lewis Velaſco*, and from them taken by the *States* of the United Provinces, *Anno* 1628. 4. *Burick*, on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Weſel*, amongſt goodly Corn-fields and pleaſant Paſtures. 5. *Duysburg*, or *Tuitchburg*, in *Latine* called *Teutoburgum*, a Town of the ancient *Germans*, (as the name importeth) ſituate on the *Rhene*, betwixt the *Angra* and the *Roer*, two noted Rivers. A Town formerly of great Trading, and notably well built; Imperial, and one of the *Hanſe*: but ceaſed to be Imperial when ſold by *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg* to *Theodorick* the ninth of that name, Earl of *Cleve*; together with 6. *Cranenburg*, another Town of this Dukedom, but of leſſer note. 7. *Emmerick*, on the *Rhene*, a well-frequented Town, remarkable for a very fair School. 8. *Rees*. 9. *Griet*, and 10. *Grietbuiſen*, all upon the *Rhene*. 11. *Calcar*, a Town more within the Land, but not far from the River; grown wealthy by the trade of Cloathing, and the beſt Beer or Ale in all theſe parts, ſold thence abundantly into the Country round about. Not far from whence, at a place called *Auff de Baern*, it is ſuppoſed that *Cæſar Germanicus* built his Bridge over the *Rhene*, when he went from *Vetera Caſtra* againſt the *Marſi*, a Nation of *Germany*. 12. *Gennep*, upon the *Niers* or *Nirſi*, not far from its influx into the *Maes*: which together with *Duiſſele* and *Riexwald* were bought of *Sigiſmund*, the Emperour, by *Adolph* the firſt Duke of *Cleve*, for a great ſum of money.

South of the Land of *Cleve*, betwixt it and *Colen*, lieth the County of *MUERS*, extended all along on the banks of the *Rhene*; a diſtinct State, the Earl of which is ſubject to no other Prince but the Emperour only; ſo called from *Muers*, the chief Town of it, ſituate on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, over againſt *Duysburg*. Next Towns to which are, 2. *Orſey*. 3. *Augur*; of which little memorable. A ſmall Territory, but in a very fruitful Soil. The neighbourhood whereof to the Land of *Colen* (to which it ſerveth as an Outwork upon that ſide) preſerved it in former times from the Dukes of *Cleve*, who otherwiſe, no doubt, either by Arms or Marriage had been maſters of it, as they were of the adjoining Provinces on both ſides of the River.

2. *GULICK-LAND*, or the Dukedom of *Gulick*, hath on the Eaſt the County of *Muers* and the Land of *Colen*, on the Weſt *Gelderland* and *Limbourg*, on the North *Cleve*, and on the South the reſt of the Land of *Colen*. The Air and Soil are much of the ſame nature as in *Cleve*; ſave that here is a greater plenty of Woad for dying, and a better breed of Horſes than in the other. The Seat of the *Menapii* in the times of old.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Guilick*, in *Latine Juliacum*, (whence the *French* call it *Juliers*) known by that name in the Itinerary of *Antoninus*, ſufficient proof for the Antiquity thereof, but not otherwiſe famous; ſeated upon the River *Roer*; the chief Seat heretofore of the Dukes of *Guilick*, before the uniting hereof with *Cleve*; and, ſince the diſſolution of that Eſtate, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *States* of the United Provinces, and ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, called in by the Competitors to aſſert their Titles. 2. *Dueren*, on the ſame River, the *Marcodurum* of the old Writers; and of late memorable for the long Siege which it held againſt *Charles* the fifth;

in

in his Wars againſt *William* Duke of *Cleve* and *Guilick* for the Dukedom of *Geldres*. 3. *Munſter Eyfel*, (in *Latine Monaſterium Eyfaliæ*) ſo called to diſtinguiſh it from *Munſter* of *Weſtphalen*, pleaſantly ſeated in a Valley begirt with Mountains, not far from the ſpring or fountain of the River *Erp*. 4. *Caſter*, ſo called of a ſtately and magnificent Caſtle built for defence of this part of the Country. 5. *Berken*, on the River *Erp*. 6. *Meroden*, beautified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which gives name to an honourable and ancient Family. 7. *Enskirck*. 8. *Berklen*, &c.

There is alſo within the limits of this Dukedom the famous Town of *Aix*, as the *French*, or *Aken*, as the *Germans* call it; famous of old time for the hot Baths both within and without the Town, whence it had the name of *Aix*, or *Aquen*, (in *Latine Aquiſgranum*;) ſituate on the edge of *Limbourg*, in a fruitful Soil, but the Buildings nothing anſwerable to the fame of the place, inhabited for the moſt part by Smiths and Braſiers, who drive the greateſt Trade herein, working continually on Iron and other metals, with which they are ſupplyed abundantly out of *Liege* and *Limbourg*. The Town is Imperial, but under the Protection of the Dukes of *Cleve*: at the expiration of which Family, under colour of ſome quarrels about Religion, it was ſeiſed on and garriſoned by Marqueſs *Spinola* for the King of *Spain*. It was of great fame formerly for the death and ſepulture of *Charls* the Great, by him made one of the three Seats of the Weſtern Empire, and deſigned by him to be the place in which the King of the *Romans* ſhould receive his Crown for the Kingdom of *Germany* at the hands of the Archbiſhop of *Colen*. The Town is ſuppoſed to be formerly the wintering Camp of the *Romans*, called in *Tacitus Vetera*, which was taken by *Civilis* in the beginning of his Rebellion againſt *Veſpaſian*; during which Wars it is often mentioned by the Writers of thoſe times. They were built and ſtrengthened by *Auguſtus*, the better to keep under the *Germans*; *quippe illis hybernis obſideri premique* Germanias Auguſtus *crediderat*, as *Tacitus*. At this day this Town and *Triers*, are reputed famous for holy Reliques; here being ſaid to be amongſt others the Bearing-cloth wherewith our Saviour was wrapt when he was in his Swadling-clouts, which the Emperour ſolemnly worſhippeth at his Inauguration. Concerning the ambition which the Papiſts have to be thought poſſeſſors of theſe Reliques, ſee I beſeech you, how pitifully they have mangled the Head of S. *John Baptiſt*. They of *Amiens* brag that they have his Face, and ſo do they of S. *John d' Angelie*. The reſt of his Head is at *Malta*; yet is the hinder part of his Scull at *Namur*, and his Brain at *Novum Roſtovienſe*: another part of it is at *Maurienne*, another piece at *Paris*; his Jaw at *Weſel*, his Ear at S. *Flowres*, his Forehead and Hair at S. *Salvadore*'s in *Venice*: another part of his Head is at *Noyon*, and another at *Luca*: Yet is his whole head entire and unmaimed in S. *Sylveſter*'s Church at *Rome*. And ſo no doubt is this Bearing-cloth at more places than one.

But to return again to *Gulick*. It was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Dukes of *Lorrain*; whether laid to it at the firſt erection of that Dukedom, as ſome Writers ſay, or added to it by the Princes of the Houſe of *Ardenne*, when they ſucceeded in the ſame, I dare not poſſibly determine; although the lying of this Country within the ancient Verge or Perambulation of the great Foreſt of *Ardenne* makes the laſt in my opinion not to be improbable. It was firſt made an Earldom of it ſelf in the perſon of *Euſtace*, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, who ſeiſed upon it as his part of the Eſtate on the death of *Godfrey*, his elder Brother *Baldwin* being abſent in the *Holy Hand*. In the perſon of *William* the fourth of that name it was made a Marquiſate, advanced unto that honour by the Emperour *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, *Anno* 1329, created not long after Duke of *Guilick* by *Charles* the fourth, *Anno* 1356. His Eſtate was much augmented about that time, or but ſhortly after, by his Marriage with *Mary*, Siſter and Heir of *Rainold* and *Edward* Dukes of *Geldres*, adding thereby that Dukedom unto this of *Gulick*. His two Sons, *William* and *Rainold*, both Dukes ſucceſſively, dying without iſſue, the Eſtate fell to *Adolphus*, Duke of *Berg* or *Monts*, as the next Heir-male, *Anno* 1425; and finally, together with that of *Berg*, was added to the Dukedom of *Cleve*, by the Marriage of *Mary* Heir hereof with *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve*, and with it conjoyned till the expiration of that noble Family; whereof more anon.

As for the Eſtates of *Berg* and *Mark*, they had one original, begun by two Brothers, the Sons of *Theodorick* Lord of *Teiſterbant*, of the Houſe of *Cleve*: out of which Houſe as they deſcended, ſo into that they finally were again reſolved, as their firſt materials. Of theſe two Brothers, *Adolphus*, being the elder, was by the Emperour *Henry*, ſurnamed the Fowler, made Earl of *Altena* *Anno* 930, or thereabouts; and *Eberard*, the younger, by the ſame Emperour made Earl of *Berg*. But *Eberard*, entering a Monaſtery of his own Foundation, left his Eſtate and Earldom of *Berg* to the Elder Brother. United thus into one Eſtate, they became again divided betwixt the Sons of *Adolph*, the 3. of that name, and fourth Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*; *Engelbert* the younger Son enjoying the Eſtate of *Berg*, and *Eberard* the elder ſucceeding his Father in that of *Altena*. How they became united to the Houſe of *Cleve*, we ſhall ſee hereafter, having firſt looked over the Chorography or Deſcription of them.

3. The Dukedom of *BERG* is bounded or the Eaſt with *Weſtphalen* and the Country of *Mark*, on the Weſt with the *Rhene* from *Weſel* up as high as *Colen*, by which 'tis parted from the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the North with the River *Lippe*, which ſeparates it from the reſt of *Cleve*, and on the South with the Land of *Colen*. So called from the Hilline's of the Country, *Berg* in *Dutch* ſignifying an Hill, (as *Burg* doth a Town or Burrough;) from whence the Earls and Dukes hereof are called *Montenſes* in *Latine*, and *les Contes* and *Ducs de Mont* in *French*. The Country for the moſt part, in the Vales eſpecially, yields a great ſtore of the beſt Wheat, and conſequently of the pureſt Bread; and in the Hill-countries rich Mines of Coal, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Duſſeldorp*, ſo called of the River *Duſſel*, upon which it is ſituate, the River not far off falling into the *Rhene*. 2. *Adenburg*, built by *Eberhard* the firſt Earl of *Berg*, the Seat of him and his Succeſſours, till removed to *Duſſeldorp*. 3. *Keiſerſwerd*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, belonging anciently to the Empire, but bought for a great ſum of money of *Charles* the 4. by *John* Earl of *Cleve*. 4. *Mulheim*, on the *Rhene* alſo, juſt againſt *Colen* on the other ſide of the water; fortified in the year 1614, and made the Receptacle of the Proteſtants of that Biſhoprick, prohibited the free exerciſe of Religion in their own dwellings; but razed not long after by Marqueſs *Spinola*, on complaint made by thoſe of *Colen* to the Emperour *Matthias*. 5. *Stelt*, or *Steltium*, on the *Roer*, amongſt the Coal-mines. 6. *Angermond*, on the mouth of the River *Angra*, as the name imports. 7. *Eſſen*, or *Eſſendia*, on the borders of the County of *Mark*, once an Imperial, but under the Protection of the Earls of *Berg*; of moſt note for a Monaſtery here built by *Alfride* the 4. Biſhop of *Hildeſheim*, for 52 Nuns and 20 Canons, liberally endowed, and having great command on the Dorps adjoyning.

How

How *Berg* at first was made an Earldom, how joyned unto *Altena*, and disjoyned again, hath been shewed before. No sooner made a State distinct, but it was added to the Patrimony of the Earls of *Gulick*, by the Marriage of Earl *William* with the Daughter and Heir of *Berg*. Parted again betwixt *William* and *Adolphus*, Sons of *Gerrard* the 2. *An.* 1247. the first succeeding in the Earldom of *Gulick*, and the last in *Berg*. During this Partage it was made a Dukedom in the person of *William* the first of that name by *Wenceslaus*, the Emperour, *Anno* 1389. whose Son *Adolphus*, as next Heir, succeeded in the Dukedom of *Gulick*, *An.* 1423. How both were added unto *Cleve* hath been said already.

The Dukes and Earls of

BERG.		*GULICK.*	
A. Ch.		*A. Ch.*	
	1. *Engelbert*, the first Earl of *Berg* distinct from *Mark*.	1129	1. *Eustace*, the first Earl of *Gulick* distinct from *Lorrain*.
	2. *Adolphus*, Son of *Engelbert*.		2. *Un*, Son of *Eustace*.
	3. *N.* the Sister of *Adolphus*.		3. *William* Earl of *Gulick*.
	4. *Gerrard*, Earl of *Gulick* and *Berg*.		
	5. *William*, II. Son of *Gerrard*.		
	6. *Gerrard*, II. Son of *William* the 2.		
1247	7. *Adolphus* II. younger Son of *Gerrard* the 2. took prisoner by the Archbishop of *Colen*, (whom not long before he had held in custody) shut up in an Iron Vessel daubed with Honey, and most miserably stung to death by Bees.	1247	7. *William* III. eldest Son of *Gerrard* the second.
			8. *Gerrard*, III. Son of *William*.
			9. *Gerrard* IV. Son of *Gerrard* the 2.
1325			10. *William* IV. created first Marquess, after Duke of *Gulick*.
1366			11. *William* V. Duke of *Gulick* and *Geldres*, this last accruing to him in the right of his Mother *Mary*, Heir of that Estate.
1296.	8. *William* III. Son of *Adolphus*.		
1337	9. *Gerrard* III. Son of *William* the 3.		
	10. *William* IV. created the first Duke of *Berg*, Anno 1389, outed of the greatest part of his Estate by his Son *Adolphus*.	1404	12. *Rainold*, Duke of *Gulick* and *Geldres* who died in the year 1423.
	11. *Adolphus* III. the Son of *William* the fourth Duke of *Berg*, succeeded also unto *Rainold* the last Duke of *Gulick*, dying without Issue, as the next Heir-male, the Dukedom of *Gelderland* falling by the Heirs general to the House of *Egmund*.		
1434	12. *Gerrard* IV. of *Berg*, and V. of *Gulick*, Son of *William*, and Brother of *Adolphus*.		
1475	13. *William* V. of *Berg*, and VI. of *Gulick*, Son of *Gerrard*.		
1511	14. *Mary*, Daughter and Heir of *William*, Dutchess of *Gulick* and *Berg*, conveyed the whole Estate in Marriage to *John* the 3. Duke of *Cleve* and Earl of *Mark*, continuing in that Family till the expiration of it in the person of *John-William*, the last Prince hereof, *Anno* 1610.		

4. The Earldom of *MARCH*, or *MARK*, hath on the East and North *Westphalia*, on the West the Dukedom of *Cleve*, on the South that of *Berg* or *Monts*. So called, as being seated in the *Marches* of *Westphalen*, out of which it was taken. The Country for the most part, like the rest of *Westphalen*, is more fit for Pasturage than Corn, woody, and yielding store of Pawnage to those herds of Swine with which it plentifully abounds.

Chief places in it are, 1. *Werden*, upon the River *Ruer*, on the edge of *Westphalia*, the people whereof get great wealth by grazing of Cattel. 2. *Soest*, (in *Latine Susatum*) for wealth and greatness not inferiour to any in *Westphalen*, (except *Munster* only) consisting of ten Parishes, and lording it over many rich and pleasant Villages. Anciently it belonged to the Bishops of *Colen*; but in the year 1454. did voluntarily yield it self to the Duke of *Cleve* (being then Earl of *March* also) and was by Duke *John* the 4. couragiously defended against those Prelates. 3. *Arusberg*, a fine and pleasant site, used for a retiring-place by the Electors of *Colen*, unto whom it belongs. 4. *Dortmund*, (in *Latine Tremonia*) a County anciently of it self, and held immediately of the Empire, possessed by the *Trotmanni*, a Tribe of the *Suevians*, from whence first called *Trotmania*, and at last *Tremonia*. 5. *Blancostein*, built commodiously by *Adolphus* the fifth of that name, and first Earl of *March*; as was also 6. *Hom*, or *Hammone*. 7. *Unna*, of which nothing memorable. 8. *Altena*, the first Title of the Earls of this House, before they assumed that of the Earls of *March*, assumed first by *Adolphus* the 4. on the Conquest of some Lands in the Marches of *Westphalen*, continuing in that Family till united with *Cleve*.

As for the Earldom or Dukedom of *CLEVE*, out of which it was taken, and to which the rest of those Estates did in time accrue; it was one of the most ancient Estates or Principalities in these parts of the world, continuing in a direct line for the space of 900 years, held by them of the Kings of *France*, and afterwards of the Kings of *Lorrain*, till the incorporating of that Kingdom with the *German* Empire. Begun first by *Elias Grallius*, Companion to *Charles Martel* in his Wars against the *Frisons*, *Saxons* and *Bavarians*, whose Son *Theodorick* added hereto by Marriage the County of *Teisterbant*, containing the Towns and Seigniouries of *Altena* in *Westphalen*, as also of *Bornel*, *Heudson*, *Bueron*, *Culemburg*, in the *Belgick* Provinces. By *Baldwin* the sixth Earl was added the Territory of *Twentzen*, (in *Latine Regio Twentana*) given him by *Ludovicus Pius*; by *Theodorick* the fifth, the Town and Seigniory of *Dinslack*, setled upon him on his Marriage with *Matilda* the Heir thereof; by *Theodorick* the 9. the County of *Hulkenrade*, near *Nuys* in the Land of *Colen*, together with the Towns of *Duysburg* and *Culemburg*, bought of *Rodolphus Habspurgensis*, by *John* his Son the Town & Territory of *Keiserswerd*, bought of *Charles* the 4. By *Adolph* the 29. Earl the Earldom of *March*, formerly taken out of it, was again united. By *Adolph* his Successor (made the first Duke hereof by the Emperour *Sigismund*, Anno 1417.) were added the Lordships of *Gennep*, *Duiffele*, and *Ricxwald* bought of the said Emperour; together with the County of *Ravenstein*, the Towns of *Leoburg*, *Limers*, and *Hatteren*, for the ransom of *William* Duke of *Berg*, and other noble persons taken prisoners by him, *An.* 1397; by *John*, the first Duke of that name, the

the Town and Territory of *Soest*; and finally by *John* the 3. the Dukedoms of *Berg* and *Gulick*, as Heir thereof by his Mother *Mary*, sole Daughter and Heir of *William* the fifth and sixth, the last Duke thereof. To which great height this ancient and noble Family had not long attained, and thereby made themselves and their Sons and Daughters fit Matches for the greatest Princes, but it pleased God to bring to its fatal end, and by that means to dissipate this brave Estate in the hands of Strangers, as shall be shewed in the conclusion of this Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *CLEVE*.

A. Ch.

717 1. *Elias Grallius*, Companion in the Wars of *Charles Martell*.

732 2. *Theodorick*, Earl of *Cleve*, and Lord of *Teisterbant*.

755 3. *Rainold*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Cleve*, and *Teisterbant*.

767 4. *Conon*, of great fame in Arms under *Charles* the great.

778 5. *John*, Son of *Conon*, married the Daughter of *Michael Curopalates* Emp. of *Constantinople*.

790 6. *Robert*, the eldest Son of *John*.

798 7. *Baldwin*, the Brother of Earl *Robert*. After whose death, *Anno* 830. the Earldom of *Teisterbant* was taken out of it, and made the portion of *Robert* a younger Son; from whom descended the two Houses of *March* and *Berg*.

830 8. *Ludowick*, Son of *Baldwin*.

834 9. *Eberhard*, Brother of *Ludowick*; who gave *Teisterbant* to his Brother *Robert*

843 10. *Luithardus*, Earl of *Cleve*.

878 11. *Baldwin*. II.

928 12. *Arnold*.

968 13. *Wignan*, Son of *Arnold*.

1004 14. *Conrade*, made an Earl of the Empire in the life of his Father.

1045 15. *Theodorick* II.

1088 16. *Theodorick* III. Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the *Holy Land*.

1114 17. *Arnold* II. Brother of *Theodorick* the third.

1161 18. *Theodorick* IV.

19. *Arnold* III.

1205 20. *Arnold* IV.

1218 21. *Theodorick* V.

1229 22. *Theodorick* VI.

1247 23. *Theodorick* VII.

1255 24. *Theodorick* VIII.

1271 25. *Theodorick* IX.

26. *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick*.

1309 27. *Theodorick* X. Brother of *Otho*.

1325 28. *John*, Brother of *Theodorick*, and Canon of *Colen*; the last of the masculine issue of

29. *Adolphus* the VII. of *March*, Son of *Adolph* the 6. of *March* and *Mary* of *Cleve*, first Archbishop of *Colen*, (as six of this House of *March* had been (almost) successively before him) succeeded on the death of his Uncle *John* to the Earldom of *Cleve*, inaugurated thereunto by *Charles* the Fourth.

Earls of *ALTENA* and *MARCH*.

A. Ch.

834 1. *Robert*, Son of *Baldwin*, to whom the Country of *Teisterbant* was given by *Eberhard*.

2. *Theodorick*, Son of *Robert*, the first Lord of *Altena*.

3. *Adolphus* I. Earl of *Altena*.

4. *Adolphus* II. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

5. *Conrade*, Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

6. *Adolph* III. Earl of *Altena* and *Berg*.

7. *Eberhard*, Earl of *Altena*; his younger brother *Engelbert* succeeding in *Berg*.

8. *Frederick*, Earl of *Altena*.

9. *Adolphus* IV. created the first Earl of *March*.

1249 10. *Engelbert*, Earl of *March* and *Altena*.

11. *Adolphus* V. Son of *Engelbert*.

12. *Engelbert* II. from whom by a second Wife, the *Elias Grallius*. Daughter and Heir of *Aremberg*, descended that branch of the House of *March* which till of late were Soveraigns of *Sedan* and Dukes of *Bouillon*.

13. *Adolph* VI. Husband of *Mary* (or *Margaret*) Daughter and Heir of *Theodorick* the 9. Earl of *Cleve*.

1389 30. *Adolph* II. of *Cleve*, and VIII. of *March*, created the first Duke of *Cleve* by the Emperour *Sigismund* at the Council of *Constance*, Anno 1417.

1443 31. *John* III. Son of *Adolph*, Duke of *Cleve*, Earl of *March*, and Lord of *Ravenstein*.

1481 32. *John* II. of the rank of Dukes, and the IV. of the Earls.

1521 33. *John* III. Duke of *Cleve*, and Earl of *March*, &c. by descent from his Father; and Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg* in right of his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *William* the last Duke thereof.

1539 34. *William*, Son of *John* the 3. and *Mary* his Wife, Daughter and sole Heir of *William* the last Duke of *Gulick* and *Berg*, Father of the Lady *Anne* of *Cleve*, one of the Wives of *Henry* the 8 of *England*. He contended very strongly against *Charles* the fifth for the Dukedom of *Geldres*; but, being two weak for so great an Adversary, made his Submission to him at *Venlo* and so saved his Estates.

1584 35. *John-William*, Son of the former *William*, during the life of *Charles-Frederick*, his elder Brother, was Bishop of *Munster*; on whose death, *Anno* 1575. he resigned that dignity, and in the end succeeded his Father in his whole estates, which he managed with great piety and prudence till the year 1610. and then died issueless; the last of that ancient and noble Family of the Dukes of *Cleve*. After whose death much quarrel and contention grew about the Succession betwixt the several Competitors and Pretenders to it: of which the principal were, 1. *Leopold*, Archduke of *Austria*, pretending an Investiture from the Emperour *Rodolphus* in the Dukedom of *Juliers*, to whom for want of Heirs-males the Estate was said to be escheated. 2. *John-George*, Duke of *Saxony*, descended from *Sibyll*, Daughter of Duke *John* the third; at whose Marriage with *John-Frederick* the Elector of *Saxony*, Anno 1535, it was said to have been solemnly agreed upon, that on the failing of the Heirs-males of *Cleve*, the Issue of that Marriage should succeed therein. 3. *George-William*, Duke of *Prussia*, Son of *John Sigismund* the Elector of *Brandenburg* by the Lady *Anne* his Wife, eldest Daughter of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Prussia*, and of *Maria Eleanora*, the eldest Sister and next Heir of the Duke deceased. 4. *Wolfgangus-Gulielmus*, Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen*, the younger Sister of that *Mary*, who claimed the Estate as nearest Kinsman by one degree to the said last Duke. And though the right seemed most apparently on the side of *Brandenburg*, the Estate in tail, pretended by the Duke of *Saxony*, being formerly cut off by Imperial authority, and that pretended to by the Duke of *Newburg* not of force in *Germany*:

yet

yet being that *Leopold* was in Arms, and had already forced a poſſeſſion of *Juliers* and of moſt parts of that Country, the two Princes of *Brandenburg* and *Newburg* ſoon agreed the controverſie, and by the help of the Proteſtant Princes their Confederates recovered the greateſt part of it from the hands of *Leopold*. But the Palatine of *Newburg*, not content with his Partage, firſt married with a Daughter of the Duke of *Bavaria*, then reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, and called in the *Spaniſh* Arms, under the command of Marqueſs *Spinola*, to abett his Quarrel: which made *George-William*, Son of the Elector of *Brandenburg* and the Lady *Anne*, to call in the Forces of the *States*, under the command of *Maurice* Earl of *Naſſau*, after Prince of *Orange*. The iſſue of which War was this, that *Spinola* poſſeſſed himſelf of *Weſel*, *Aken*, *Mulheim*, *Duſſeldorp*, and moſt other places of importance in *Berg* and *Gulick*; and the *States* got into their power ſome Towns of *Gulick*, with *Rees* and *Emerick* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, and almoſt the whole County of *Marck*. And though moſt parts of theſe Eſtates have been delivered ſince to the rightful Owners, yet other places of importance are detained from them. Which notwithſtanding that they both pretend to keep for the uſe of thoſe Princes in whoſe cauſe they ſtood: yet when ſuch ſtrong parties keep the Stakes, it is moſt eaſie to determine who will win the Game: ſuch Alterations as have happened in the chance of War, by the reciprocal winning and loſing of ſome Towns on both ſides, not much conducing to the benefit of the rightful Owners.

The Arms of theſe Princes were, 1. *Gules*, over an Eſcocheon in Feſſe *Argent*, a Carbuncle pierced, pometted and flowred *Or*, for the Dukedom of *Cleve*. 2. *Or*, a Lion *Azure*, armed *Gules*, for the Dukedom of *Gulick*. The Arms of *Berg* and *Marck* I have no-where found.

2. *The Eſtates of the Three* ELECTOR-BISHOPS.

ADjoyning to the Eſtates of *Cleve* are thoſe of the *Spiritual Electors* of the Empire of *Germany*, *Colen*, *Mentz*, and *Triers*; not ſo contiguous and conterminous as thoſe of *Cleveland*, and therefore to be laid out ſeverally by their Metes and Boundaries. And firſt for

COLEN-Land, or the Eſtate of the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Colen*. It is bounded on the Eaſt with the Dukedom of *Berg*, divided from it by the *Rhene*, on the Weſt with *Gulick*, on the North with *Cleve* it ſelf and the County of *Muers*, and on the South extending to the Land of *Triers*. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Ubii*, in former times poſſeſſed of the Countries of *Berg* and *Marck*; but being warred on by the *Germans* bordering next upon them, they were by the clemency of *Agrippa*, then Lieutenant of *Gaul*, received into protection, and by him placed along the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*, as well for defence of the Borders of the *Roman* Empire, as for their own ſecurity againſt that Enemy. Won from the *Romans* by the *French* in the Reign and under the conduct of *Childerick*, An. 412, or thereabout; and from the *French* by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, *An.* 949. By *Otho* the 2. made a part of the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or at the leaſt given by him unto *Charles* of *France*, the firſt Duke thereof. After whoſe death, deceaſing without Iſſue-male, the Town of *Colen* and many other pieces upon the *Rhene* were ſeized on by *Otho* the 3. and by him reſtored to the Empire. Since that time the City of *Colen* hath remained Imperial, and of late times incorporated amongſt the *Hanſe*-Towns; but the Territory near unto it, and a great part of *Weſtphalen*, ſubject immediately to the Biſhop. The Biſhop's See was firſt founded here by S. *Maternus*, one of the Diſciples of S. *Peter*, as hath been conſtantly affirmed by old Tradition: but howſoever it was an Epiſcopal See, without all queſtion, in the time of *Conſtantine*, *Maternus*, Biſhop hereof, ſubſcribing amongſt others to the Council of *Arles*, Anno 326. And being *Colen* was in thoſe times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Secunda*, the Biſhop had the power of a Metropolitan; according to the rule and obſervation ſo often mentioned. Afterwards when the Empire was made Elective, theſe Biſhops, with their brethren of *Mentz* and *Triers*, were made three of the ſeven which were to nominate and elect the ſucceeding Emperour: after which time it is no wonder that they grew both in Power and Patrimony.

Places of moſt importance within this Electorate are, 1. *Bonn*, ſituate on the banks of the *Rhene*, in the moſt pleaſant and fruitful place of all the Country; the ordinary Reſidence of the Archbiſhop, whoſe Houſe or Palace here is ſaid to be one of the fairеſt in all *Germany*. By *Tacitus* it is called *Bonna*, and ſometimes *Caſtra Bonnenſia*, the Wintering-camp in his time of the Sixth Legion. 2. *Nuys*, by the ſame Writer called *Noveſium*, (*Niveſia* by *Antoninus*) ſeated on the *Erp*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; the break-neck of the glories of *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, who being reſolved to get this Town into his hands, as a convenient paſs into *Germany*, lay ſo long before it, that he loſt the opportunity of joyning with King *Edward* the 4. of *England*, whom he had purpoſely invited to the War of *France*, and yet was fain to go without it. By means whereof he grew ſo low in reputation, that he was undermined by the *French*, defied by the *Lorrainer*, forſook by the *Engliſh*, baffled by the *Switzers*, and at laſt overthrown and ſlain by that beggerly Nation. 3. *Ernace*, or *Andernach*, by *Marcellinus* called *Antenacum*, one of the ten Garriſons erected by the *Romans* on the banks of the *Rhene*, to ſecure their Province from the *Germans*; the other nine being *Confluentz*, *Boppart*, *Worms*, *Bing*, *Zabern*, *Altrip*, *Seltz*, *Straesburg*, and *Waſſenburg*. 4. *Lintz*, ſeated on the ſame River alſo. 5. *Sontina*, a Town of good repute. 6. *Zulp*, now a Village of no eſteem but for the Antiquities of it, by *Tacitus* and *Antoninus* called *Tolliacum*, moſt memorable for the great Victory which *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* (upon a Vow made in the heat of the Fight to embrace the Goſpel) obtained againſt the whole power of the *Almans*, never preſuming after that to invade his Territories. 7. *Rhineberg*, commonly called *Berck*, the moſt Northern Town of all the Biſhoprick, ſituate on the *Rhene*, (as the name imports) there where the Lands of this Biſhop as alſo of the Dukes of *Cleve* and the Earls of *Muers* meet upon a point. A Town which for theſe 60 years hath been of little uſe or profit to the right Owner, poſſeſſed ſometimes by the *Spaniards*, ſometimes by the Confederate *States*; for each commodiouſly ſeated, as opening a paſſage up the River, and receiving great Cuſtoms on all kind of Merchandiſe paſſing to and fro. But having finally been poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard* from the year 1606 till 1633, it was then regained for the *States* by *Henry* of *Naſſau*, Prince of *Orange*, with the loſs of no more then 60 men: there being found in the Town 30 braſs pieces of Ordnance, 70 barrels of Powder, with Victuals and Ammunition of all ſorts thereunto proportionable. 8. *Colen*, ſituate on the *Rhene*, firſt built by the *Ubii* before mentioned, and by them called *Oppidum Ubiorum*, afterwards, in honour of *Agrippina*, (Daughter of *Germanicus*, and Wife of *Claudius*) who was here born, made a *Roman* Colony, and called *Colonia Agrippina*, and ſometimes by way of eminency *Colonia* only; thence the name of *Colen*. A rich, large, populous and magnificent City, containing about five miles in compaſs, in which are numbred

19 Hospitals, 37 Monasteries of both Sexes, 30 Chappels of our Lady, 9 Parishes, and 10 Collegiat Churches, besides the Cathedral, being a Church of vast greatness, but of little beauty, and not yet finished: the Metropolitan whereof is Chancellour of *Italy*, the second of the three Electors, and writes himself Duke of *Westphalen* and *Angrivaria*. Nigh to this Town did *Cæsar* with incredible expedition make a Bridge over the *Rhene*, which more terrified the barbarous enemy than the reports of his valour. So powerful is laborious industry, that it overcometh all disasters, and maketh the most unpassable waters yield to heroick resolutions.

In this Town also is said to lie the bodies of the Three wise men which came from the East to worship our Saviour, vulgarly called *the three Kings of Colen*. The whole Story is at large written in Tables which are fastned unto their Tombs; the pith whereof is this: The first of them, called *Melchior*, an old man with a large Beard, offered Gold, as unto a King; the second, called *Gasper*, a beardless young man, offered Frankincense, as unto God, the third, called *Balthasar*, a *Blackmore* with a spreading Beard, offered Myrrhe, as unto a Man ready for his Sepulchre. That they were of *Arabia*, the Table saith is probable; 1. because they came from the East, and so is *Arabia* in respect of *Hierusalem*; and 2. because it is said in the 72. *Psalm*, *The Kings of Arabia shall bring gifts*. As for their bodies, they are there said to have been translated by *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, unto *Constantinople*; from thence by *Eustorsius*, Bishop of *Millain*, removed unto *Millain*, and finally brought hither by *Rainoldus* Bishop hereof, *Anno* 1164. This is the substance of the History; which for my part I reckon amongst the *Apocrypha*, (except it be their coming from some part of *Arabia*) but have not leisure in this place to refel the Fable.

As for the temporal Estate of the Bishops of *Colen*, it came unto them specially by the munificence of the Emperours of the House of *Saxony*; the Dukedom of *Engern*, containing a good part of *Westphalen*, being acquired unto this See by *Bruno*, once Archbishop hereof, one of the younger Sons of the Emperour *Henry* the first, surnamed the Fowler, with the consent of *Otho* the first, his elder Brother. To which was added not long after the whole Land of *Colen* (as we have formerly described it) by *Otho* the 2. which being formerly a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, was taken out of it, and settled on the Bishops hereof, at such time as the Dukedom of *Lorrain* was erected by him; such pieces only as are found on the other side of the *Rhene* (neither great nor many) being added by the wit and industry of the following Bishops: exceedingly increased both in Power and patrimony by the addition of *Liege* to this Electorate; it being of late the constant custom of the Canons of *Liege* to chuse the Archbishop of *Colen* for their Prince and Pastor.

Next to the Bishoprick of *Colen* lieth the Land of TRIERS, extended all along the course of the *Mosselle*, from the Dukedom of *Lorrain* on the South, beyond the Influx of that River into the *Rhene* at the City of *Confluentz*, where it bordereth on the Land of *Colen*. It is bounded on the East with *Luxenburg*, as on the West with that part of *Franconia* which lieth below the confluence of the said two Rivers, and is now called *Rhinegow*; more Southward on that side with the Country of *West-reich* and the Dukedom of *Zweibruck*, parts of the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*. The Country towards *Lorrain* and *Luxenburg* is somewhat wilde and barren, more fruitful about *Triers* it self and the bank of the *Rhene*; in all parts generally more pleasant than profitable, the greatest Riches of it lying in Woods and Minerals. The Bishop's See was here first erected by *Eucherius*, a Disciple and follower of *S. Peter*. The reality whereof is not only testified by the *Martyrologies*, but by *Methodius*, a Writer of approved credit, who adds *Valerius* and *Maternus* for his next Successors; the line Episcopal continuing till the Council of *Arlees*, Anno 326, *Agritius* Bishop of *Triers* subscribing to the Acts thereof. From this time forwards, and before, the Bishop had the reputation and authority of a Metropolitan, the City of *Triers* being anciently the Metropolis of *Belgica Prima*, within which it stands. It increased exceedingly by being made one of the three Electors of the Spiritualty, though the last in order, and Chancellour to the Emperour for the Realm of *France*: the Fortunes of which Realm it followed, till wrested from it, with the rest of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, by the *German* Emperours.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Confluentz*, or *Coblentz*, the *Confluentes* of *Antoninus*, so called because seated on the Confluence or Meeting of the *Rhene* and the *Mosselle*; the Station anciently of the First Legion. A populous and well-built Town, and seated in a pleasant and fertile Country. 2. *Eerenbretstein*, over against *Coblentz*, on the other side of the *Rhene*, beautified with a strong Castle of the Bishop's, mounted upon a lofty Hill, which not only gives a gallant prospect to the eye, but commands both the Town and River. 3. *Boppart*, seated on the *Rhene*, and called so *quasi Bonport*, from the commodiousness of the Creek (upon which it standeth) for the use of Shipping: one of the Forts (as *Confluentz* before mentioned also was erected by the *Romans* on the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; occasioning in time both Towns. It was once miserably wasted by *Richard* Earl of *Cornwall* and King of the *Romans*, because the Bishop of *Triers* agreed not unto his Election; but soon recovered of those hurts. The ancient name hereof in the *Itinerary* of *Antoninus* is supposed to be *Bodobrica*. It was pawned to the Bishops of *Triers* by *Henry* the 7. and not yet redeemed. 4. *Sarbrucken*, on the edge of *Lorrain*, (by *Antoninus* called *Pons Sarnix*) seated on the River or Brook called *Sar*, (whence it had the name) at the fall thereof into the *Mosselle*: possessed at the present by a Branch of the House of *Nassau*, (but Homagers of this Electour) entituled hence, according to the *Dutch* fashion, Counts of *Nassau* in *Sarbruck*. 5. *Veldentz*, and 6. *Beilstein*, on the *Mosselle*, of which nothing memorable. 7. *Treves*, or *Triers*, in *Latine Augusta Trevirorum*, the principal City of the *Treviri*, who possessed this Tract; seated upon the *Mosselle* also; the Metropolis of the Province of *Belgica Prima*, and honoured with the Residence of the Vicar or Lieutenant-General for the whole Dioces of *Gaul*; by consequence the Seat of a Metropolitan when it submitted to the Gospel. Of such antiquity it is, that it is said to have been founded 150 years before the City of *Rome*: of no great beauty of it self, and as little Trading; the River not being capable of Ships of burthen, and the Air generally so cloudy and incined to rain, that it is by some called merrily *Cloaca Planetarum*. It passed sometimes among the number of Imperial Cities, but now acknowledgeth the Electour for the Lord thereof; by whom it was made an University, one of the ancientest in all *Germany*, and of as much resort for the study of good Arts and Sciences as the best amongst them. 8. *Ober-Wesel*, or *Vesalia superior*, (so called to distinguish it from *Wesel* in the Dukedom of *Cleve*, which is *Vesalia inferior*, or the *Under-Wesel*) the farthest place of this District, seated on the *Rhene*, not far from *Baceharach* a Town of the *Palatinate*; of no great note, but that it is accompted for a Town Imperial.

This Country anciently was part of the great and famous Earldom of *Mosselle*, denominated from the River *Mosselle*, along the Course whereof it was first erected; an

an Estate founded by the disherited Sons of *Clodian*, second King of the *French*, at the same time (and on the same occasion also) in which the Earldom of *Ardenne* was erected by them, of which we have already spoken when we were in *Belgium*: this of the two the more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Mentz*, as lying nearer to the Court, and so more in sight; the other being farther off, in Countries far less cultivate, but more defensible. This Earldom comprehending, besides this of *Triers*, the Countries of *Zweibrucken* and *West-reich*, and so much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lieth on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, occasioned the Princes of it to be much looked after; and they maintained their Port to the very last: insomuch that *Gislebert* or *Gilbert* Earl of *Moselle*, in the time of the Emperour *Henry* the first, surnamed the Fowler, was thought by him a fit Husband for his Daughter *Gerberg*, married after his decease to *Lewis* surnamed *Transmarine*, King of *France*: and *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Theodorick*, who came after *Gilbert*, was married to *Henry* surnamed *Gozelo*, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, and by him made the Mother of another *Henry*, Successour unto *Otho* the 3. in the *Roman* Empire. Impoverished not a little both in Power and Patrimony by the erection of the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, there grew some Feuds between those Houses, occasioning the death of *Albert* another of these Earls, slain (as it is said by *Lazius*) by *Godfrey*, Son of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*: more probably by some other Prince of the House of *Ardenne*, it not being founded in any other approved Authour, that *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was the Father of any Children. But this Difference being reconciled by the Marriage of *Bertha*, Daughter of *Simon* Earl hereof, with *Thierrie* the 9. Duke of *Lorrain*, and the Family of these Earls expiring in a short time after, this part of the Estate was seized on by the Bishops of *Triers*; that part of the *Palatinate* which lieth on the *Gallick* side of the *Rhene*, by the Bishops of *Mentz*, *Spires*, *Wormes*, and the Princes *Palatine*; the rest being taken in by the Dukes of *Lorrain*, who do still enjoy it; the Emperours of those times being either willing to it, or not able to help it.

3. The Bishoprick of *MENTZ* is not laid out by Bounds and Limits, as the other, because the Patrimony & Estate thereof doth not lie together, dispersed for the most part about *Franconia*, intermixed with the Lands & Towns of the Princes *Palatine*, the Bishops of *Wormes*, *Spires*, and others. So that the temporal Estate of this Electour is every way inferiour unto those of *Triers* and *Colen*; superiour unto both in place and dignity, he being the first in rank of the whole Electoral College, Chancellour for the Empire, and in all Meetings sitteth at the right hand of the Emperour. The Bishop's See was first placed here, as some report, by S. *Crescens*, one of the Disciples of S. *Paul*, of whose being sent by him into *Gallia* (for so the ancient Writers understand *Galatia*) the Apostle speaketh 2 *Tim.* 4. Though others with more probability seat him at *Vienna* in *Daulphine*. But whether it were here or there, certain it is, that anciently this City was a See Episcopal, *Martine* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, Anno 347. And if a Bishop, certainly a Metropolitan Bishop, this City being in those times the Metropolis of the Province of *Germania Prima*. But Christianity being worn out of these parts of *Germany* by the conquests of the *French*, *Almans*, and other Infidels, was again restored in this Tract by *Boniface*, an *English*-man, the first Archbishop of *Mentz* of this new Plantation, (in and about the time of *Pepin* surnamed the Gross, Major of the Palace to the *French* Kings, and Father of *C. Martel*) who, for the Orthodoxy of his Doctrine, and the number of Churches planted by him, hath been deservedly honoured with the title of the *Apostle of Germany*.

Towns of most note belonging to the Bishops hereof are, 1. *Mentz* it self, the *Moguntiacum* of the Ancients, so called from the River of *Maine*, formerly *Mogus* and *Moganus* in the *Latine*, (now better known by the name of *Mœnus*) opposite to the fall whereof into the *Rhene* it was built of old, so having the command of both Rivers; and for that cause made the Seat of a *Roman* Officer, commonly called the Duke of *Mentz*, who had a charge of the Frontiers, and especially of those ten Garrisons planted on the banks of the *Rhene*, spoken of before. It is stretched out in great length on the River's side, but not of answerable breadth; well built, and populous towards the water, in other parts not so well inhabited. The publick Buildings generally are very large and beautiful, the Houses built according to the old *Roman* Model; the most magnificent whereof is the Bishop's Palace, who is the immediate Lord both of the Town and Territory, extended on both sides of the *Rhene*, fruitful in all natural Commodities, and abounding with most excellent Wines. Of good note also for an University here founded by *Theodorick*, one of the Electors; but especially for the Art of Printing, which was here invented, or perfected at the least, and made fit for use. 2. *Bing*, seated on the *Rhene*, another of the Garrison-Towns erected by the *Romans* on the banks of that River. In a small Island of which, not far from this Town, is a Tower or Castelet called the *Mouse-turn*, *i. e.* the Tower of Mice, built by one *Hatto* (or *Hanno*) Archbishop of *Mentz*, Anno 900, or thereabouts, who in a year of great Scarcity pretending to relieve the poor people oppressed with Famine, caused them to be gathered together into an old Barn, where he burnt them all, saying, they were the Rats and Mice which devoured the Corn. After which barbarous act he was so persecuted by these Vermin, that, to avoid them, he was fain to build a Palace in the midst of the *Rhene*, whither the Rats and Mice followed him, and at last devoured him. 3. *Lausstein*. 4. *Hasford*, 5. *Oxenford*, 6. *Alderburg*, 7. *Middleburg*, 8. *Carlostadt*, the Birth-place of *Carolostadius*, of great note in the time of *Luther*. 9. *Bischoffstein*. 10. *Koningsberg*, (*Mons regius* in *Latine*) the Birth-place of *Joannes de Monte regio*, a famous Mathematician, as appeareth by his Comment upon *Ptolemie*'s *Almagest*. Most of which Towns being in *Frankenland*, though of his Electorate, were not gained in gross by these Electours, as were the Land of *Colen* and District of *Triers*, but piecemeal in a manner, and by retail; partly upon the failure of the House of *Schwaben*, Dukes of *Franconia* also; partly by the munificence of the *German* Emperours; but specially by making the best use of their Votes and Suffrages in the Choice of Emperours, which they did not part withal for nothing. Such Towns hereof as lie on the *French* side of the *Rhene* were gained by like means upon the expiration of the House of *Moselle*.

3. *The PALATINATE of the RHENE.*

THE *PALATINATE* of the *RHENE* is bounded upon the East with the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg* and some part of *Franconia*, with the residue thereof and the River *Maine* on the North, on the South with *Elsass* or *Alsatia*, and on the West with the Land of *Triers*: extended in length from *Coub* to *Gemersheim*, North and South, 72 miles; and in breadth from *Zweibruken* to *Lauden*, East and West, 90 miles.

It is called also the *Lower Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, which is called the *Upper*; the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene*, because lying on the banks of that famous River. The whole Country is said to be the most pleasant part of all *Germany*, stored with all sorts of Fruits and Metalls, abounding with those cool Wines which,

growing on the banks of the *Rhene*, have the name of *Rheniſh*; adorned with many goodly Towns, both for ſtrength, populouſneſs, and beauty; and finally, watered with the famous River of the *Rhene*, and the *Neccar*.

The Religion of this Country, and that of the *Upper Palatinate*, which depends upon it, hath much varied ſince the firſt Reformation eſtabliſhed by *Frederick* the ſecond according to the Form and Doctrine of the Confeſſion of *Augsburg*; the Doctrine and Diſcipline of *Calvin* being introduced by *Frederick* the third, the *Lutheran* Form reſtored again by *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth, after his death exchanged by *Frederick* the fourth for that of *Calvin*, as more conducing to the ends of ſome needy Statiſts, who could not otherwiſe raiſe their Fortunes than by invading the Tithes and Glebe, and other poor remainders of the Churche's Patrimony; of which the Clergy being univerſally deprived throughout this Country, and reduced to miſerable ſhort Stipends, by the name of a *Competency*, became ſo contemptible, and neglected by all ſorts of men, that at the laſt the Church of the *Palatinate* was in the ſame condition with the Church of *Iſrael* under the reign of *Jeroboam*, when *Prieſts were made out of the meaneſt of the people*. And for the Government of the Churches, though moulded to the *Geneva* Plat-form as near as it might be, yet were thoſe Princes loth to leave too much power in the hands of the Elderſhips, and therefore did appoint ſome ſuperiour Officers to have an eye on them, whom they called *Inſpectores & Præpoſitos*, their Power being much the ſame with that of the particular Superintendent amongſt the *Lutherans*, and over them a ſtanding Conſiſtory conſiſting of three Miniſters and as many Counſellers of State, of the Prince's nominating, who in his name were to take care of all things which concerned the Church. A Temperament for which they were beholden to *Eraſtus*, a Doctor of Phyſick in the Univerſity of *Heidelberg*, who made this Pill, to purge Presbytery of ſome Popiſh humours which ſecretly lay hid in the body of it. But this whole Model and Religion of the Country is much changed of late, and the Religion of the Church of *Rome* reſtored in moſt parts thereof, ſince the Conqueſt of them by the *Spaniards* and *Bavarians*, which before we ſpake of.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Moſpach*, a pretty neat Town on the banks of the *Neccar*, and a Præfecture, not far from the borders of *Wirtenberg*. 2. *Ladenberg*, near the influx of the ſame River into the *Rhene*; the moiety whereof was bought by *Rupertus*, the Emperour and *Palatine*, of the Earls of *Hohenloe*, An. 1571, the other moiety belonging to the Biſhop of *Wormes*. 3. *Weinheim*, a ſmall Town not far from *Ladenberg*, belonging once to the Archbiſhop of *Mentz*, but, on ſome controverſie ariſing about the Title, adjudged unto the ſaid *Rupertus* and his Heirs for ever. 4. *Scrieſſen*, in the ſame Tract, well ſeated, but not very large, ſold with the Caſtle of *Straluberg* to the ſaid *Rupertus* by *Sifride* (or *Sigefride*) of *Straluberg*, the right Heir hereof, *Anno* 1347. 5. *Heidelberg*, on the right ſhore of the *Neccar*, (going down the water) compaſſed on three ſides with Mountains, and lying open only towards the Weſt, which makes the Air hereof to be very unhealthy. The chief Beauty of it lieth in one long Street, extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt: on the South-eaſt ſide whereof is a fair and pleaſant Market-place and not far off a very high Mountain called *Koningſtall*, (that is to ſay, *the Kingly Seat*) upon the middle aſcent whereof is the Caſtle, where the Princes Electours uſe to keep their Courts; and on the very Summit or top thereof, the ruines of an old Tower blown up with Gunpowder. A Town of no great bigneſs, nor very populous, there being but one Church in it, which was uſed in the time of my Authour for Prayer and Preaching: the reſt being either ruined, or employed unto other uſes, if not repaired again, ſince the *Spaniards* became maſters of it, for more frequent Maſſes. Howſoever, it hath the reputation of being the chief City of this *Palatinate*; not long ſince furniſhed with a great and gallant Library, which for choice and number of Books (eſpecially Manuſcripts) was thought not to be fellowed in all *Europe*, till matched, if not over-matched, by the famous *Bodleian* Library of *Oxford*. Moſt of them, to the great prejudice of the proteſtant Cauſe were carried to *Rome*, and other places of that party, when the Town was taken by the *Spaniards*, *Anno* 1620. Finally for the Town it ſelf, it was once part of the poſſeſſions of the Biſhop of *Wormes*, from whom it was taken by the *Palatines*; and it is now famous for being the Seat of the *Palſgraves*, the Sepulchre of *Rodolphus Agricola*, and for an Univerſity founded by the Emperour and Palatine *Rupertus*, An. 1346. 6. *Baccharach*, on the Banks of *Rhene*, ſo called *quaſi Bacchi ara*, for the excellent Wines. 7. *Coub*, on the other ſide of the water; near unto which is the old and fair Caſtle called *Pfalts*, from whence the name *Pfalts-grave*, or *Palſgrave*, ſeemeth to ſome to have been derived. 8. *Openheim*, a ſtrong Town, which togerher with *Keiſers-Lantern* and *Ingelheim* were given to the *Palatines* by *Wenceſlaus*, and after ſettled on them by *Rupertus* the Emperour and *Palatine* for 100000 Florens, *Anno* 1402. 9. *Creutznach*, called anciently *Stauroneſus*. 10. *Frankendale*, lately a Monaſtery only, but being well peopled by ſuch of the *Netherlands* who to avoid the fury of the Duke of *Alva* fled hither, is now a Town of principal ſtrength. 11. *Gemerſheim*; and 12. *Manheim*, a well-fortified Town, ſeated on the Confluence of *Rhene* and *Neccar*.

On the Eaſtern part of the Country ſtandeth 13. *Laden*, ſituate on the little River *Tauber*, the ſartheſt bound of the *Palatinate* towards the North-eaſt, there adjoyning to the reſt of *Frankenland*. And on the Weſt ſide the Towns of 14. *Newſtat*, 15. *Keiſers-Lautern*, in *Latine* called *Cæſarea Lutra*, once a Town Imperial, from which, and from its ſituation on the River *Lauter*, it received this name. 16. *Zweibrucken*, inveſted with a large and ample Territory round about, called the Country of *Zweibruck*, the Patrimony and Title of a younger Houſe of the *Pfaltzgraves*, whom the *Latine* Writers call *Principes Bipontani*, the *French* the Princes of *Deuxponts*. 17. *Simmeren*, on the North-weſt point of it, where it meets with the Diſtrict of *Triers*; the Title of another Branch of the *Palatine* Family, called the Dukes of *Simmeren*, ſituate in that part of the Country which is called *Weſtreich*, of which *Zweibrucken* is alſo part. In all there are contained within the *Palatinate* 24 walled Towns, and 12 fair Palaces of the Prince: moſt of which they have added to their eſtate within little more then 400 years. Such excellent managers have they been of their own Eſtates, ſo potent in ordering the affairs of the Empire both in War and Peace, and ſo ingraffed themſelves into the moſt notable Families of *Germany*, that I may well ſay with *Irenicus*, *Non eſt alia* Germaniæ *Familia cui plus debeat Nobilitas*.

Within the Limits of this Country, and intermingled with the Lands of the Princes *Palatine*, are the Biſhopricks of *Spires* and *Wormes*; both ancient, and of great Revenue, but Feudataries for a great part of their Eſtates to theſe Electors. Of theſe, more towards the head of the *Rhene*, and on the *Gallick* ſide thereof, ſtands the City of *Spires*, by *Ptolemy* called *Neomagus*, from the newneſs of the building when that name was given; by *Antoninus*, *Civitas Nemetum*, from the *Nemetes*, who poſſeſſed this Tract; and ſometimes *Spira*, by which name it doth ſtill con-

continue. A Town Imperial, and anciently a Bishop's See; *Tessis* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen*, *Anno* 347. A neat Town, and very delectably seated; of great resort, by reason of the Imperial Chamber, the sovereign Court of Judicature of all the Empire, capable of Appeals from the Tribunals of all the Princes and free States thereof. A Court which first followed the Emperour in all his Removes, (as anciently the *King's Bench* in *England*) but by *Maximilian* the Emperour first made sedentary, and fixed at *Francford*; removed after to *Wormes*, and finally to this City by *Charles* the fifth. Sufficiently famous in that the name of *Protestants* was here taken up, given to the Princes and free Cities following the Reformed Religion, upon their legal *Protestation* here exhibited. More down the water, and on the same Shore thereof, stands the City of *Wormes*, one of those built upon the *Rhene* for defence of *Gaul* against the *Germans*; by *Ptolemy* called *Borbetomagus*, by *Antonine Civitas Wormensis*, whence the modern name; but generally *Civitas Vangionum*, from the *Vangiones*, the old Inhabitants of those parts, whose chief City it was. A Town Imperial as the former, and a See Episcopal as that is, and as ancient too; *Victor* the Bishop hereof subscribing to the Acts of the Council of *Colen* before mentioned. A Town to be observed for the first appearance which *Luther* made before *Charles* the 5. (the Imperial Chamber then being holden in this City,) who, being dissuaded from that journey by some of his Friends, returned this resolute Answer, That *go he would, though there were as many Devils in the Town as there were Tiles on the Houses.* Chief Towns belonging to these Bishops are, 1 *Udenheim*, a Town belonging to the Bishop of *Spires*, whose Residence it sometimes is; conveniently seated for the command of the Country, and therefore upon some design which was then in hand fortified strongly by the Bishop. But this new Fortification, being begun in a time of Peace, gave great occasion of distrust to the neighbouring Princes, who interposed with *Frederick* the fifth, then Prince *Elector*, (of whom it was held in chief) to cause the Bishop to desist from the finishing of it. Which when he had refused to do, pleading a Placart from the Emperour *Matthias* to compleat the work, the Prince *Elector* with the rest of the Confederates beat it down by force. For this contempt they were cited to *Spires*, the Imperial Chamber, in which it was also resolved to proceed suddenly and severely to their condemnation. One of the chief motives which occasioned that unfortunate Prince to entertain the offer of the Crown of *Bohemia*, and consequently a chief cause of the *German* Wars. In managing whereof this Town was thought so commodious, that Marquess *Spinola* caused the works to be raised again, made it the strongest Hold in all those Countries, and caused it to be called it by the name of *Philipsburg*. 2 *Rottenberg*, originally belonging to the Bishops of *Spires*, but of late times possessed by the Princes *Palatine*. Others of lesser note I forbear to mention.

The first Inhabitants of this Country on the *French* side of the *Rhene* were the *Nemetes* and *Vangiones* spoken of before; on the other side, the *Intuergi*. That on the West side of the River was first conquered by the *Romans*, and from them by the *French*, of whose Empire it remained a part, but so that it was subject more immediately to the Earls of *Moselle*, first under the Sovereignty and Vassalage of the Kings of *Metz*, and after of the Kings of *Lorrain*. In the dividing of which Kingdom between the Emperors of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, it became subject to the Empire, but still possessed by those of *Moselle* as it was before. Escheating to the Empire on the expiration of that Family, partly by force of Arms, partly by paying down ready Money, and partly too by selling of their Voices, as they saw occasion, it was gained by the Electors *Palatine*: and so was also that part of it which lies on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene*, which being anciently and properly a part of *Frankenland*, followed the fortunes of that Country, till the faileur of the House of *Schwaben*, and then devolved unto the Empire, as the other did. By little and little it got into the hands of the Princes *Palatine*, who being originally Officers of the Emperor's Houshold, (such as the Maiors of the Palace to the *French* Kings at the first institution) had first the honour of Counts *Palatine* bestowed upon them, and afterwards the place of an Elector in the choice of the Emperor. But where their Estates then lay, where they fixed their dwelling, and what Provinces or people they had subject to them, *à nullo inveni scriptum*, I could never find any good Record to build on, saith the learned *Munster*; their habitation and possession in and of these parts (acquired for the most part by Arms and Money) not being above 450 years standing at the utmost. Likely it is, they had their residence for the most part in the Emperor's Palace, living upon their Rents, (as other great Officers of Court in these later times) the Dignity and Authority of so great a place seeming sufficient to content them: but were called *Count-Palatines* of the *Rhene*, because their Jurisdiction and Authority lay most especially in those parts of the Empire which were towards that River. Afterwards, on the Marriage of *Otho*, the second of that name, Duke of *Bavaria*, with *Gertrude*, the Daughter of *Henry* the Elector *Palatine*, this Office with the Electoral Dignity fell into that House, possessed at that time of those parts of *Franconia* and the Earldom of *Moselle*, who not long after, on the dividing of that Estate betwixt *Rodolphus* and *Ludovicus*, the Sons of *Ludovick* the 2. Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made up this *Palatinate*. A State which suddenly received a great augmentation, partly by the care and good husbandry of *Rupertus*, Emperor and Elector *Palatine*; partly by the weakness and ambition of *Wenceslaus*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*; and partly by the valour of *Frederick* the Prince Elector. Of these the first bought in the Towns of *Weinheim*, *Ladenberg*, *Scriessen*, and the Castle of *Straluberg*, with their Lands and Territories. The second gave unto the *Palatines*, for their voices in his Election, three strong Towns of the Empire, *viz. Keisers-Lautern*, *Ingelheim*, and *Openheim*. And the last took in Battel, *Anno* 1452, the Earl of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquess of *Baden*, the Bishop of *Spires*, and the Archbishop of *Mentz*, and ransomed them on what condition he pleased. More particularly the Earl of *Wirtenberg* (for it was not yet erected into a Dukedom) payed for his ransom 100000 Florens. The Bishop of *Mentz* redeemed himself for 450000 Florens. The Bishop of *Spires* gave for his liberty the Towns of *Rottenberg* and *Werfaw*. And the Marquess of *Baden* yielded up in lieu of his freedom the Country of *Spanheim*, of which *Crentznach* is a part, the Towns of *Besiken* and *Binheim*, the right which he pretended to *Eppingen*, a Town over against *Gemersheim*, and his Royalties between this *Gemersheim* and *Seltz*, a Town of *Alsatia*, in Fishing and Hunting. So having brought these Princes unto their Estates, let us next take a view of those who have successively enjoyed both the State and Title, as far as we can go by the light of Story.

Electors *Palatine* of the *RHENE*.

A.C.

1. *Henry*, Count *Palatine* in the time of *Otho* the third, by him ordained to be one of the six Electors.
2. *Sigefride*, the Son of *Adelheid*, Wife of this *Henry* the Elector, by a former Husband.

3. *Ezeline*

3. *Ezeline* and *Conrade*, Sons of *Sigefride*.
4. *Ludolphus*, Son to *Ezeline*.
5. *Conrade*, Elector *Palatine* in the time of *Henry* the fifth.
6. *Frederick*, Son to *Frederick* Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew to the Emperour *Conrade* the third.
7. *Henry* II. firnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*.

1195 8. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the Lion, and Husband of *Clementia*, Daughter of *Conrade* D. of *Schwaben* and Elector *Palatine*.

9. *Henry* IV. Son of *Henry* the third, in the life of his Father, the last Elector *Palatine* of the nomination and appointment of the Emperor, the Dignity from hence-forwards becoming hereditary.

10. *Otho*, Duke of *Bavaria*, of that name the second, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene* in right of *Gertrude* his Wife, Sister and next Heir of *Henry* the fourth, whom he succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, confirmed therein by the Emperor *Frederick* the second.

1269 11. *Ludovicus*, Elector *Palatine* and Duke of *Bavaria*, the Son of *Otho*.

1294 12. *Rodolphus*, the eldest Son of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, succeeded his Father in the *Palatinate* and Electoral Dignity; *Northgoia*, or the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, being added to his part, to make even the scale; his younger Brother *Ludovicus* succeeding in *Bavaria*.

1315 13. *Adolphus*, firnamed the Simple, resigned the Electoral Dignity to his Brother *Rodolphus*, as the fitter man to undertake it.

1327 14. *Rodolphus* II. on the Resignation of *Adolphus*.

1337 15. *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Rodolphus* the second, Founder of the University of *Heidelberg*, *Anno* 1346.

1385 16. *Rupertus* II. Son of *Adolphus* the Simple.

1398 17. *Rupertus* III. elected Emperour in the place of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1406, made Knight of the Garter by King *Henry* the fourth.

1410 18. *Ludovicus* II. firnamed *Cæcus* and *Barbatus*, the eldest Son of *Rupertus* the Emperor, married *Blanch*, Daughter to K. *Henry* the fourth of *England*.

1439 19. *Ludovicus* III. Son of *Lewis* the second.

1451 20. *Frederick*, Brother of *Ludovicus*, during the Minority of *Philip* his said Brother's Son, succeeded in the Electoral Dignity, and added much to that Estate by his personal Vertue.

1478 21. *Philip*, the Son of *Lewis* the third, pretended to the Dukedom of *Bavaria* in right of *Margaret* his Wife; but, after a long and bloody War, was forced to go without it.

1508 22. *Ludovicus* IV. Son of *Philip*.

1544 23. *Frederick* II. Brother of *Lewis* the fourth, who first introduced the Reformed Religion into the *Palatinate*.

1556 24. *Otho-Henry*, Son of *Rupertus*, the Brother of *Frederick* and *Lewis*, the last of the direct Line of this House of *Bavaria*.

1559 25. *Frederick* III. Duke of *Simmeren*, descended from *Stephen* Palatine of *Zweibruck* or *Bipont*, younger Son of the Emperor *Rupert*, succeeded on the decease of *Otho-Henry* without Issue.

1576 26. *Ludovicus* V. Son of *Frederick* the third, a munificent Benefactor to the University of *Heidelberg*.

1583 27. *Frederick* IV. Son of *Lewis* the fifth, married *Ludovica*, or *Louisa*, Daughter of *William*, and Sister of *Maurice*, Princes of *Orange*.

1610 28. *Frederick* V. Son of *Frederick* the 4th, married the Princess *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *James* King of *Great Britain*. In danger of being proscribed for demolishing the Works of *Udenheim*, he accepted the Crown of *Bohemia*. But worsted at the Battel of *Pragne*, and warred upon by the *Bavarian* and the *Spaniard*, he lost both that and his own native Estates and Dignities; of which he was deprived by *Ferdinand* the prevailing Emperour: the *Lower Palatinate* being assigned over to and conquered by the King of *Spain*; the *Upper Palatinate*, with the Electoral Dignity, bestowed on the Duke of *Bavaria*. Restored to the possession of the most part of his Country by the power of the *Swedes*, he died at *Mentz*, *November* 29. 1632. the whole Country falling again not long after under the Power and Government of the former Conquerours.

1631 29. *Charles-Ludowick*; the Heir both of his Father's Estates and Misfortunes too; not yet admitted to his Honours, (contrary to the Fundamental Constitutions of the Empire, by which the Sons of the Electors and other Princes are not involved in the guilt of their Fathers offences) but in fair hopes to be restored thereto in part, by the Pacification made at *Munster* this present year 1648: which I pray God to prosper, for the peace of afflicted Christendom.

Now to proceed to the Civil State, and the Concernment of these Princes. The *Palsgrave* hath many Prerogatives above the Electors of either sort. He taketh place of the Duke of *Saxony* and Marques of *Brandenburg*, because *Henry* the *Palatine* was descended of *Charles* the Great: for which cause he is also, in the Vacancy of the Empire, Governour of the Western parts of *Germany*. In which Office he had power to alienate or give Offices, to take Fealty and Homage of the Subjects, and, which is most, to sit in the Imperial Courts, and give Judgment of the Emperor himself. And look whatsoever shall in the Vacancy of the Empire be by the *Palatines* enacted, that the new Emperors are bound by Oath to confirm and ratifie.

The Revenues of these Princes were conceived to be about 100000 *l. per annum*, nor could they be supposed at less: the Silver Mines about *Amberg* only in the *Upper Palatinate* yielding 60000 Crowns a year, and the passage of one Bridge over the *Rhene* about 20000 Crowns more; besides the Demesne Lands and the Lands of the Church, incorporated (since the Reformation) into their Estate.

The Arms hereof are *Diamond*, a Lion *Topaz*, Armed and Crowned *Ruby*.

4. *ALSATIA.*

ALSATIA (or ELSASZ, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the East with the *Rhene*, which parteth it from the Marquisate of *Baden* and some parts of *Schwaben*; on the West with the Mountain *Vauge* or *Vogesus*, which separateth it from *Lorrain*; on the North with the *Palatinate*; on the South (where it groweth very

very narrow) with a point of *Switzerland*. A Country for the Pleasantness and Fertility of it inferiour to none in *Germany*: called therefore *Elsasz*, (as some think) *quasi Edelsasz*, that is to say, a *noble Seat*; derived more probably by others from the River *Ill*, the only River of note in all this Tract, and called so, *quasi Illsasz*, the *Seat* or situation on the River *Ill*.

It is divided generally into the *Lower*, and *Higher*, to which the Country called *Sungow* may come in for a third. The *LOWER ALSATIA* is that which bordereth on the *Palatinate*, so called because farther off from the Mountains, and down the water in respect of the course of the *Rhene*. A Country so abundantly fruitful in Wine and Corn (with which it furnisheth some parts of *Germany*, and not a few of the neighbour-Countries) that it is generally called *Germaniæ Nutrix*, or the Nurse of *Germany*; by *Wimphelegius*, the *Epitome* or Abstract of it. Chief Towns therein are, 1. *Straesburg*, so called from the multitude of Streets, (the *Dutch* call them *Straets*) anciently *Argentoratum*, and then *Argentina*, from the *Roman* Exchequer or Receipt, here kept in the time of their Greatness; or from some Mines of Silver which were found about it. A stately, rich and populous City, well stored with publick Garners and Cellars of Wine against times of Dearth; situate on the two Rivers *Ill* and *Brusch*, where they both fall into the *Rhene*, by which, and by the helps of Art, it is very strongly fortified: designed from the first Foundation for a Town of War, this being another of the Towns which the *Romans* built to defend the *Rhene* against the *Germans*; now an Imperial City, and a See Episcopal, the Bishop whereof is Lord of the *Lower Alsatia*. The Church Cathedral is one of the fairest in all *Germany*, much famed for a clock of most admirable workmanship, and a Steeple of as curious a frame as that, mounted 574 foot in height, the highest of any in Christendom, higher (if the measure of it be not mistaken) by 40 foot than the Steeple of St. *Paul*'s in *London* before the firing of it. Of this thus saith the Poet in *Adrianus*,

Urbs præclara situ, ripis contermina Rheni,
Maxima cui celsæ metiuntur mœnia turris.
Straesburg on *Rhene*'s inamell'd Banks doth lie,
Whose Tower even bids defiance to the Skie.

2. *Zabern*, or *Elsasz Zwern*, the *Tabernæ* of *Antonine* and *Marcellinus*, another of the old *Roman* Garrisons, destroyed by the *Almans*, and repaired again by *Julian* the *Apostate*, then Emperour; now the chief place of Residence for the Bishops of *Straesburg*, and well frequented in regard of the Courts of Justice kept by his Officers in this City for the Lower *Alsatia*. 3. *Altrip*, so called from *Alta ripa*, from the high Banks of the River on which it is seated; another of the Towns or Forts which the *Romans*, like politick Conquerours, built on the Westside of the *Rhene*, to prohibit the Incursions of the barbarous Nations. And so was 4. *Seltz*, seated on the *Rhene*, betwixt *Straesburg* and *Zabern*. And 5. *Weissenburg*, more towards the *Palatinate*, now a Town Imperial, but seated on the River *Lutra*, not far from its fall into the *Rhene*; encompassed with little Hills and delightful Groves, the River gently washing the Walks thereof, and adding much to it both of strength and beauty. 6. *Hagenaw*, between *Seltz* and *Straesburg*, but not so near unto the *Rhene* as either of them; first walled by *Frederick Barbarossa*, Anno 1164, and since that time of great importance for command of the Country, but seated in a sandy and unfruitful Soil; frequented chiefly heretofore by the old Lantgraves of *Elsasz* for the commodities of hunting. More from the *Rhene*, 7. *Stechfelt*, corruptly so called for *Steffansfelt*, from the Monastery of S. *Stephen* there founded. 8. *Hasle*, on the *Brusch*, &c.

Places of most importance in the *HIGHER ALSATIA* are, 1. *Ruffach*, on the River *Ombach*, belonging to the Bishops of *Straesburg*, of old called *Rubeacum*, from the red colour of the earth, well built, inironed with a double Suburb; in ancient times of great resort by the *Roman* Nobility, much taken with the fruitfulness and pleasures of it, and well inhabited at this day, as is all the Country round about it, by reason of their vigorous proceedings against Thieves; from whence the *Germans* have a Proverb, that *the old Gallows* at Ruffach *is made of Oak*. 2. *Ensheim*, or *Ensisheim*, on the River *Ill*, anciently the Station of the Tenth Legion, and then called *Aruncis*; now of most note for the Supreme Court of Justice there held for *Brisgow*, *Sungow*, and this part of *Alsatia*, by the Archdukes of *Austria*, the chief Lords thereof. 3. *Colmar*, an Imperial City, raised out of the Ruines of old *Argentaria* destroyed by *Attila* and the *Huns*; well built, and situate almost in the very Navel of *Alsatia*, not above an hour's journey from the foot of the Mountains, but in a fruitful and rich Soil both for Corn and Pasturage, the Country hereabouts being very well watered with the *Lauch*, *Duro*, *Fech*, and *Ill*. 4. *Schlestad*, in the modern *Latine Selestadium*, but by the Ancients called *Elcebus*, the Station at that time of the 19. Legion; afterwards of great fame for a Church here built by *Hildegardis* Dutchess of *Schwaben*, Anno 1044. according to the pattern of the Temple of *Jerusalem*, which in tract of time became the richest Monastery in all these parts. It is situate in a very fertile and delightful Soil, having the *Rhene* on the one side, and some spurs of the Mountain *Vauge*, shadowed with Groves of Chesnuts, upon the other; walled in the time of *Frederick* the second, about the year 1216, and on the East defended with impassible Fens. 5. *Gebwiler*, and 6 *Watweil*, both seated near the aforesaid Mountains, and both subject to the Abbat of *Murbach*. 7. *Keisersberg*. 8. *Turcheim*, two Imperial Towns, but not otherwise memorable; as neither are many of the rest, but for name and number: there being reckoned within this small Province of *Elsasz*, (not including *Sungow*) 46 Cities and Towns begirt with Walls, besides Castles, Forts and Villages, almost innumerable, and amongst them more Free and Imperial Cities than in any one Province of the Empire, except *Schwaben* only.

The Southern part of *Elsasz*, bordering on the Canton of *Basil*, is commonly called by the name of *SUNGOW*, in *Latine Sungovia* and *Sungoia*; but in former times the Dukedom of *Pfirt*, from *Pfirt* the chief Town of it, and the Dukes's Seat. The Country is very plentiful in Corn and Wine, (as the rest of *Elsasz*) affording good store of each to the neighbouring *Switzers*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Mulhausen*, on the River *Ill*, heretofore under the command of the Bishops of *Straesburg*, as were also *Keisersberg* and *Colmar*; but being taken in by *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*, after his advancement to the Empire, it was made *Imperial*, and is now confederate with the *Switzers*. 2. *Befort*, remarkable for a Collegiate Church there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, in which lie buried 13 Earls and as many Countesses. 3. *Masz-munster*, so called from a Monastery of Nuns there Founded by *Maso*, a Prince of the old *Almans*. 4. *Thann*, a neat Town, beautified with the fair Castle of *Engelburg*, mounted upon the top of a lofty Hill. 5. *Morsz-munster*, so named of an ancient Monastery there founded by the Earls of *Pfirt*, most of them great Builders of Religious Houses. 6. *Altkirk*, not far from the head of the River *Ill*. 7. *Pfirt*, it self, seated on the *Ill*, not far from *Altkirk*, in a Country heretofore overgrown with Woods and Forests, whence it had the name, called by the *French le Pois de Forrette*, (corruptly for *le Pais de Forrest*) by the *Dutch* moulded into *Pfirt*: by which

which name (of the County of *Ferrette*) it is called by *Philip de Comines* and other *French* Writers; and by that name pawned by *Sigismund* the Archduke to *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy*, made by that means too near a neighbour to the *Switzers*, as it proved in fine.

Westward hereof, betwixt it and the County of *Burgundy*, lyeth the Town and Earldom of *MONTBELGARD*, (*Montis Belgardium* in the *Latine*) united by the Marriage of *Henrica*, Daughter and Heir of *Henry* the first Earl hereof, *Anno* 1396, to the House of *Wirtenberg*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Clarewang*, 2. *Passewang*. 3. *Grans*, all anciently beautified with Castles; and 4. *Montbelgard*, a Town of great strength, proud of a Castle-Royal on the top of a fair and lofty Mountain, whence it took that name: once the Seat of its proper Earls, as after of the Princes of the House of *Wirtenberg*; but now both Town and Castle in the power of the *French*, who after their good luck in the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, caused a good Garrison of their own to be put into them, *Anno* 1633, under pretence of keeping them for the Children of a Brother of the Duke of *Wirtenberg*, to whom the Inheritance belonged.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Tract were the *Tribochi*, with parts of the *Nemetes* and *Rauraci*; first conquered by the *Romans*, then subdued by the *Almans*, after by the *French*, and by them made a part of the Kingdom of *Lorrain*; in the fall of which Kingdom it was reckoned for a Province of the *German* Empire. Governed for the Emperours by Provincial Earls, in the *Dutch* language called *Lantgraves*: at first officiary only, and accomptable to the Emperours under whom they served; in the end made hereditary, and successional unto their posterities. The first hereditary Lantgrave is said to be *Theodorick* in the Reign of *Otho* the third: after whose death the Empire being made elective, gave the Provincial Governours some opportunities to provide for themselves. In his Male-Issue it continued till the reign of *Frederick* the 2. who began his Empire, *An.* 1212, and died *An.* 1250; during which interval this Estate was conveyed by Daughters to *Albert* the 2. Earl of *Habspurg*, *Albert* Earl of *Hohenburg*, and *Lewis* Earl of *Oetingen*. *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*, Son of this *Albert*, afterwards Emperour of the Germans, marrying with *Anne* the Daughter of the Earl of *Hohenlhe*, became possessed also of his part of the Country; which added to his own, made up the whole Upper *Elsass*; continued since that time in possession of the House of *Austria*, descended from him. The third part, comprehending all the Lower *Alsatia*, was not long after sold by the Earl of *Oetingen* to the Bishop of *Straesburg*, whose Successors hold it to this day, assuming to themselves the Title of the *Lantgraves* of *Elsass*. But as for *Sungow*, or the County of *Pfirt*, that belonged anciently to the Princes of the House of *Schwaben*: in the expiring of which potent and illustrious Family, by the death of *Conradine* the last Duke, *Anno* 1268. that great Estate being scattered into many hands, it was made a distinct Earldom of it self. And so it continued till the year 1324, when *Ulrick* the last Earl dying without Issue-male, left his Estate betwixt two Daughters: whereof the one, named *Anne*, conveyed her part in Marriage to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, surnamed the Short, Granchild of *Rodolphus* the Emperour before mentioned; the other, named *Ursula*, sold her moiety to the said *Albert* for 8000 Crowns. Since that it hath been always in the possession of the Dukes of *Austria*, (save only for the time in which it was pawned or mortgaged, together with *Alsatia*, to the Duke of *Burgundy*) governed in Civil matters and points of Judicature by the Parliament or Court of *Ensheim* in the Upper *Elsass*.

5. *LORRAIN.*

THE Dukedom of *LORRAIN* is bounded on the East with *Elsass*, and that part of the Lower *Palatinate* which passeth by the name of *West-reich*; on the West with the River *Meuse* or *Maes*, with part of the Country of *Barrois* in *France*, (belonging to the Duke hereof) and part of *Champagne*; on the North with *Luxemburg* and the Land of *Triers*; and on the South with the County of *Burgundy*, from which, and from the Province of *Elsass*, it is parted by the *Vogesus* or *Vauge*, wherewith it is encompassed on those sides. Assigned unto *Lotharius*, second Son of *Lotharius* the Emperour, (who was eldest Son of *Lewis* the Godly) with the style of a Kingdom; from thence called *Lot-reich* by the *Dutch*, *Lot reigne* by the *French*; from which the modern name of *Lorrain* and the *Latine Lotharingia* are to fetch their Pedigree.

The Country is in length about four days journey, almost three in breadth, much over-grown with Forests and swelled with Mountains, the spurs and branches of *Vogesus*, and the once vast Wilderness of *Ardenne*; yet so sufficiently stored with all manner of necessaries, that it needeth no supply out of other places. Some Lakes it hath which yield great quantity of Fish; one more especially 14 miles in compass, the Fish whereof yields to the Duke's Coffers 20000 *l.* yearly. It affordeth also divers Metals, as Silver, Copper, Tin, Iron, Lead, in some places Pearls: Chalcedonians also of such bigness, that whole Drinking-cups are made of them, and a matter of which they make the purest Glasses, not to be parallel'd in *Europe*. They have also a goodly breed of Horses, equal to those of *Barbary*, or the Courser of *Naples*.

The people, by reason of their neighbourhood to and commerce with *France*, strive much to imitate the *French* in garb and fashion; but one may easily see that it is not natural: they have much in them also of the *Dutch* humour of Drinking, but far more moderately than the *Dutch* themselves. Generally they are a politick and an hardy Nation; not otherwise able to have held their Estate so long against the *French* Kings and the Princes of the House of *Burgundy*. They lived very happily in former times under their own Dukes, not being at all oppressed with Taxes; which made them very affectionate towards the Prince, and useful unto one another. Their Language is for the most part *French*, as in *Artois*, *Luxemburg*, *Triers*, and other of the bordering Provinces, members of the *French* Monarchy in former times: not so refined and elegant as is spoke in *France*, nor so corrupt and coorse as that of *Montbelgard* and the County of *Burgundy*.

I know that many, in respect of the *French* language spoken here among them, account this Country among the Provinces of *France*, and usually describe it so in their Charts and Writings: but I have placed it with more reason (as I conceive) amongst those of *Germany*; first, in regard that a Duke hereof is a Prince of the Empire; but especially because that, in the division of the Kingdom of *Lorrain* betwixt the Emperours of *Germany* and the Kings of *France*, whatsoever lay on the East-side of the River *Meuse* (as this Dukedom of *Lorrain* for the most part doth) was reckoned in the share or portion of the *German* Emperours.

The Rivers of chief note are, 1. *Murta*, or the *Meurte*, which receiving into it many Rivers, and passing with a swift stream by the walls of *Nancie*, glides along fairly for a good space within sight of the *Moselle*, into which at last it falls near *Conde*. 2. *Mosa*, the *Meuse*, or

or *Maes*, whose spring and course hath been already described in *Belgium*. 3. *Moselle*, famous for the design which *Lucius Verus*, Governour for the Emperour *Nero*, had once upon it. For whereas it ariseth in the Mountain *Vauge*, not far from the head of the River *Soasne*, and disburtheneth it self into the *Rhene* at *Confluentz*; he intended to have cut a deep Chanel from the head of this unto the other, so to have made a passage from the Ocean to the Mediterranean, the *Soasne* emptying it self into the *Rhosne*, a chief River of *France*, as the *Moselle* doth into the *Rhene*. 4. *Selle*, which mingleth waters with the *Moselle* not far from *Metz*. 5. *Sar*, 6. *Martane*, 7. *Voloy*, with others of less note: all of them plentiful of Salmons, Perches, Tenches, and the best sorts of fish; as in their Lakes are great store of Carps, some of them three foot long, and of excellent taste.

Principal Cities in it are, 1. *Metz*, by *Ptolomy* called *Divodurum*, *Metis* and *Civitas Mediomatricum* by *Antoninus*, the chief City of the *Mediomatrices*, who possessed this Tract. It is seated in a pleasant Plain at the confluence of the *Selle* and *Moselle*; the Royal See, in former times, of the *French* Kings of *Austrasia*, hence called Kings of *Metz*; long before that a Bishop's See, as it still continueth. 2. *Toul*, the *Tullum* of *Ptolomy*, the *Civitas Leucorum* of *Antoninus*, so called from the *Leuci*, the Inhabitants of it and the Tract about it; pleasantly seated on the *Moselle*, and anciently honoured with a See Episcopal. 3. *Verdun*, an ancient Episcopal See also, the *Civitas Verodunensium* of *Antoninus*, seated on the *Meuse* or *Maes*. The Town and Territory adjoining in preceding times belonged to the great Princes of the House of *Ardenne*, at and before the time that they attained the Dukedom of *Lorrain*: but whether they had it in right of their Patrimonial Estate, as lying in the North part of this Country towards *Luxemburg*, as it well might be, or that it came to them in the right of Marriage with some Daughter of the House of *Mosselle*, or other Heirs thereof, I have no where found. But howsoever it came to them, it gave unto this House the Title of Earls of *Verdun*, used in their Style, till swallowed with the rest in that of *Lorrain*. The Bishop whereof, as also those of *Metz* and *Toul*, (being the only ones of this Country of *Lorrain*) acknowledge the Archbishop of *Triers* for their Metropolitan. All of them were in the number (heretofore) of Imperial Cities, possessed of large and goodly Territories and of great Revenue; but taken by the *French* King *Henry* the 2. *Anno* 1552, during the Wars between *Charles* the fifth and the Protestant Princes of *Germany*, under colour of aiding them against the Emperour. And though *Charles* tryed all ways to recover them to the Empire again, and to that end maintained a long and desperate Siege against the City of *Metz*: yet was the Town so gallantly defended by the Duke of *Guise*, that he was fain to raise his Siege, and go off with dishonour. Since that, they have been always under the subjection of *France*; a Parliament being erected at *Metz* for the ease of the people, as in other Provinces of that Kingdom.

Of such Towns as immediately belong to the Duke of *Lorrain*, the principal are *Nancie*, not great, but of a pleasant and commodious site, well watered by the River *Meurte* or *Marta*, and fortified better than before, in the year 1587, on occasion of a great Army of the *Germans* passing into *France* to aid the Protestants: most commonly the Duke's Seat, and famous for the Discomfiture which *Charles* Duke of *Burgundy* here suffered, with the loss of his life. 2. *S. Nicolas*, a Town so populous, well seated, and neatly built, that were it walled, it would hardly yield precedency unto *Nancie* it self; so called from a Church here built to the honour of S. *Nicolas*, Bishop of *Myra* in the lesser *Asia*, whose Body they pretend to be buried here, or at least some part or Relick of it to be here inshrined, occasioning a great resort of Pilgrims and other People. 3. *Pont a Mousson*, about 4 leagues from *Nancie*, so called from a Bridge on the River *Mousson* upon which it standeth, of especial note for a small University lately founded in it, and for giving the Title of a Marquess to the eldest Son of the Dukes of *Lorrain*, called commonly and contractedly Marquess *du Pont*, *Marchio Musso-Pontanus* by our modern Latinists. 4. *Vaucoleur*, the Birth-place of *Joan* the Virgin, to whose Miracles and Valour the *French* attribute the delivery of their Country from the power of the *English*. But being at last taken Prisoner, she was by the Duke of *Bedford*, then Regent of *France*, condemned and burned for a Witch. Of which crime I for my part do conceive her free. Nor can I otherwise conceive of her and her brave exploits, than as of a lusty Lass of *Lorrain*, tutored and trained up by the practice of the Earl of *Dunois*, commonly called the *Bastard of Orleans*, and so presented to *Charles* the seventh, *French* King, as if sent immediately from Heaven. A project carried on of purpose, (as the most intelligent of the *French* Writers say) *pour fairer evenir la courage aux Francois*, to revive the drooping spirits of the beaten *French*, not to be raised again but by help of a Miracle. Upon the sight of her *Statua* on the Bridge of *Orleans*, a friend of mine did adventure on a Copy of Verses in her commendation, too long to be inserted here, but they ended thus;

She dy'd a Virgin: 'Twas because the earth
Bred not a man whose valour and whose birth
Might merit such a Blessing. But above
The Gods provided her an equal Love,
And gave her to Saint *Denys*. She with him
Protects the *Lillies* and their Diadem.
You then about whose Armies she doth watch,
Give her the honour due unto her Match:
And when in field your Standards you advance,
Cry loud, Saint *Denys* and Saint *Joan* for *France*.

Next these we have, 5. *Vaudemont*, which gave the Title of an Earl to a younger Branch of the House of *Ardenne*, succeeding at the last in the Dukedom of *Lorrain* in person of Duke *Rene* 2. and since a Title of the younger Son of the Dukes hereof, 6. *Neuf-Chatteau*, on the edge of the Country towards *Barrois*. 7. *Amante*, seven leagues on the South of *Metz*, sometimes the Chancery of *Lorrain*. 8. *Riebe-Court*, near the Lake called *Garde-lake*, out of which floweth a River which runs into the *Meurte*. 9. *La Mothe*, seated on a River which falls presently into the *Mosselle*. 10. *Charmes*, seated on the *Mosselle*, the place of Treaty between the Duke of *Lorrain* and the Cardinal *Richelieu*; the result whereof was the surrender of the Town of *Nancie*, and by consequence of all the Dukedom, into the hands of the *French*, *September* 1633. 11. *Stenay*, in the extream North of all this Country, a well fortified Town, and of great consequence and importance to the Dukes hereof; but whether properly belonging to the Dukedom of *Lorrain*, or wrested from the Soveraignty of *Sedan*, upon which it bordereth, (as *Jamais* near unto it was) I have no where found. Of less note there are, 1. *Saint Die*, 2. *Saint Hippolite*, 3. *Bouquenon*, and 4. *Saverden*; the first Towns of this Dukedom taken by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633, in the War against *Lorrain*, 5. *Saint Miel*, 6. *Oden Chasteau*, 7. *Mirecour*; all taken the same year by the *French*, in the prosecution of that War, before the Treaty at *Charmes*. 8. *Romberville*, 9. *Espinul*, 10. *Gerbevillier*, &c.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Mediomatrices* and the *Leuci* ſpoken of before, together with the *Viridonenſes*; all of them conquered by the *Romans*, under whom this Country and the Diſtrict of *Triers* made up the whole Province of *Belgica prima*. From them being taken by the *French*, with the reſt of *Gaul*, it was made a Kingdom; the Provinces of *Germania prima* and *ſecunda* (containing all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, and ſo much of the *Netherlands* as lie on the Weſt ſide of the *Rhene*) being added to it: called firſt, from the Eaſtern ſituation, by the name of *Ooſtenreich*, or *Auſtraſia*; the portion of *Theodorick*, the fourth Son of *Clovis*, the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French*, from the chief City of his Kingdom called the King of *Metz*, whoſe Succeſſors follow in this order.

The Kings of *AUSTRASIA*, or *METZ*.

514 1. *Theodorick*, the baſe Son of *Clovis* the Great, vanquiſhed the *Thuringians*, and extended his Kingdom as far as *Heſſia* and *Thuringia*, as we call them now.

537 2. *Theodebert*, the Son of *Theodorick*, repulſed the *Danes* infeſting the Coaſts of the Lower *Germany*, and added *Provence* (taken from the *Gothes* of *Italy*) unto his Eſtates.

548 3. *Theobaldus*, the Son of *Theodebert*, ſubdued the *Almans*, and added much of their Country to his own Dominions.

555 4. *Clotaire*, King of *Soiſſons*, the youngeſt Son of *Clovis* the Great, ſucceeded *Theobald* in this Kingdom, as afterwards his Brother *Childebert* in the Realm of *France*, *Anno* 560, uniting in his perſon the whole *French* Dominion.

565 5. *Sigebert*, the Son of *Clotaire*, vanquiſhed the *Hunns*, then falling into his Eſtates: killed in his Tent by the practices of *Fredegond*, the Wife of *Chilperick* King of *France*.

577 6. *Childebert*, the Son of *Sigebert*, Succeſſour to his Uncle *Guntram* in the Realm of *Orleans*.

598 7. *Theodebert* the II. the Son of *Childebert*, vanquiſhed and outed of his Kingdom by *Clotaire* the ſecond of *France*, from whoſe eldeſt Son *Sigebert* deſcended the illuſtrious Family of the Earls of *Habſpurg*.

617 8. *Clotaire* II. King of *France*, on the death of *Theodebert* King of *Auſtraſia*, and his Brother *Theodorick* King of *Orleans*, the ſole King of the *French*.

9. *Dagobert*, in the life of his Father King of *Metz* or *Auſtraſia*, whom he ſucceeded at his death in the Realm of *France*.

645 10. *Sigebert* II. the eldeſt Son of *Dagobert*, made choice of this Kingdom for his part of the whole *French* Empire; therein preferring it to *Weſt-France*, or *France* it ſelf, which he left to *Clovis* the 2. his younger Brother. He brought the *Suevians* to obedience, and ſubdued the *Selaves*.

656 11. *Childebert* II. Son of *Grimoaldus*, Maior of the Palace to *Sigebert*, was by the power of his Father made King of *Metz*; *Dagobert* the Son of *Sigebert* being ſhorn a Monk, and ſent into *Scotland*.

12. *Clovis* the 2. King of the *French*, having vanquiſhed and beheaded *Grimoald*, diſpoſſeſſed *Childebert* of the Kingdom, which he took to himſelf.

662 13. *Childerick*, the 2. Son of *Clovis*, after the death of *Clotaire* his elder Brother, ſucceeding in the Kingdom of *France*, united all the *French* Dominions into one Eſtate. In which condition it remained (but with ſome inlargement of the Bounds) till the Partition made by and amongſt the Children of *Lewis* the Godly; the name of *Auſtraſia*, or *Eaſt-France*, being extended by *Charles* the Great over all *Pannonia*, and ſo much of *Germany* as was under the command of the *French*. In which diviſion, *Lewis* the ſecond Son, ſurnamed the Ancient, being inveſted in the Kingdom of *Germany*, or ſo much of *Eaſt France* or *Auſtraſia* as lay on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Rhene*; *Lotharius*, the eldeſt Son, had for his ſhare the Title of Emperour, and therewith *Italy*, *Provence*, *Burgundy*, and ſo much of *Auſtraſia* or *Eaſt-France* as lay on the *French* ſide of the River. Afterwards being ſubdivided into three Eſtates, *Italy*, with the Title of *Roman* Emperour, was given to *Lewis* the eldeſt Son; to *Charles*, the youngeſt, *Provence*, with the Kingdom of *Burgundy*; and to *Lothaire*, the ſecond Son, *Auſtraſia* on this ſide of the *Rhene*, from hence called *Lot-reich*, *Lot-reigne*, and *Lotharingia*, as before was ſaid. But *Lothaire* dying without iſſue, the Kingdom of *Lorrain*, containing all the *Netherlands*, (except *Flanders* and *Artois*) and all the parts of *Germany* before deſcribed, became divided betwixt *Charles* the Bald, Emperour and King of *France*, and *Lewis* ſurnamed the Ancient, King of *Germany*; the one calling himſelf King of *Lorrain* on that ſide, the other King of *Lorrain* on this ſide of the *Maes*; the River *Maes* or *Meuſe* parting their Poſſeſſions. But this Partition held not long amongſt their Succeſſors: For *Lewis* and *Carloman* King of *France* (the Sons of *Ludovicus Balbus*) reſigning their part hereof to *Charles* the Groſs, Emperor of the *Romans* and King of *Germany*, the ſaid *Charles*, *Arnulph*, *Lewis* and *Conrade*, ſucceſſively Emperors of the *Romans* and Kings of *Germany*, (together with *Zwentobald* the Baſtard-Son of *Arnulph* interloping in the very middle of them) enjoyed it wholly to themſelves. And ſo did alſo *Charles* the Simple, King of *France*, on the death of *Conrade*, till, forced thereto by *Henry* the firſt, (who ſucceeded *Conrade* in the Empire and Kingdom of *Germany*) he gave way to the old Partition ſpoken of before: the *Germans* after that encroaching more and more on that part hereof which of right belonged unto the *French*, till in the end (after much viciſſitude and interchangeableneſs of affairs) both Princes laid aſide the Title of Kings of *Lorrain*, incorporating ſo much as they held hereof into the reſt of their Eſtates; *Otho* the third of *Germany* and *Lewis* the fifth of *France* being the laſt that pleaſed themſelves with that broken Title. In the mean time this Country of *Lorrain* it ſelf, as it is now bounded, together with the Country of *Luyck land*, a great part of *Brabant*, ſome parts of the Land of *Triers*, *Colen*, and, as ſome ſay, the Country of *Gulick* alſo, (but in this of *Gulick* I demur, as before was ſaid) being taken out of it, were by *Otho* the ſecond made a Dukedom, *Anno* 981, and by him given with the Title of Duke of *Lorrain* to *Charles* of *France*, Son of *Gerberge* his Aunt by *Lewis* the 4. of *France* ſurnamed *Tranſmarine*, Son of *Charles* the Simple. *Charles* thus advanced by his Couſin, and forgetting that he had been made Duke of *Brabant* not long before by *Lothaire* the *French* King, his Brother, ſhewed himſelf ſo alienated from the *French*, and wedded to the *Germans*, than the *French*, after the death of his Nephew *Lewis* the fifth, (whoſe next Heir he was) rejected him, and accepted *Hugh Capet* for their King. *Otho*, the Son of this *Charles*, dying without iſſue, left his Eſtate to *Geofry* Earl of *Ardenne*, *Bouillon*, and *Verdun*, his near Kinſman by the Mothers ſide; from whom the preſent Dukes of *Lorrain* do derive themſelves. From *Hermingrade*,

one

one of the Daughters of this *Charles*, married to *Albert* (some call him *Charles*, and others *Godfrey*) Earl of *Namur*, by *Alice* their Daughter, married *Baldwin* the 5. of *Hainault*, descended *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* and *Hainault*, the Father of the Lady *Isabel* of *Hainault*, Wife of *Philip* the 2. King of *France*, thereby uniting the Blood of *Pepin* and *Hugh Capet*, to the great content of *Lewis* the 9. her Nephew: of whom it is said, that being a man of a tender Conscience, he never joyed in the Crown of *France*, till it was proved that he was lineally descended by his Grandmother from *Charles* of *Lorrain*, whom *Hugh Capet* had so unjustly dispossessed. But to return again to the Dukes of *Lorrain*, I find not any great improvement made of the Estate by any of them, more than the accession of the remaining Patrimony of the Ears of *Ardenne* in the person of *Godfrey* or *Geofrey* the third Duke hereof, and the adding of the Dutchy of *Bar* in *France* by *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*, and titular King of *Naples*; but on the contray, a great weakning and distraction of it by the Dukes hereof: *Luyck-land* and the Dukedom of *Bouillon* being sold unto the Bishops of *Liege* by *Godfrey* sirnamed of *Bouillon*, after King of *Hierusalem*; *Brabant* torn from it by *Geofrey* Earl of *Lovain*, in the time of *Baldwin* Brother of *Godfrey*; and *Gulick-land* by *Eustace* the Brother of *Baldwin*; the Bishops of *Triers* not being negligent all this while of the opportunity. Besides which, somewhat had been done by the Emperour *Otho* the 3. to the diminution of this Estate, seeing that *Otho* the Second Duke, Son of *Charles* of *France*, had no Issue-male, and thinking this Estate, to be great enough without those Additions, and some other pieces on the *Rhene*, by him restored unto the Empire. The rest of this Estate was conferr'd on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne*, and not without good reason neither: it being probable enough that as it was first given by *Otho* the 2. unto *Charles* of *France* with reference to his Mother *Gerberge* that great Emprour's Aunt; so *Otho* of *Lorrain* Son of *Charles* might look on *Godfrey* of *Ardenne* as most capable of it, with reference to his Mother *Matilda*, the same Emperour's Daughter. And unto this he might be moved not only in a noble gratitude to the bloud of *Otho*, from whom his Father had receiv'd so great a benefit, but on the solicitation of the Emperour *Henry* 2. (a Prince of the same House of *Saxony*) to whom the Alienation of it from the Daughters of *Charles* is ascribed by some. Which said, we have no more to do, but to present the Reader with the Catalogue of

The Dukes of *LORRAIN.*

A.Ch.	
981	1. *Charles* of *France*, took prisoner by *Hugh Capet*, in which state he died. He married *Bona*, Daughter of *Ricuine*, and Sister of *Godfrey* the elder, Earls of *Ardenne*.
1001	2. *Otho*, Son of *Charles* and *Bona*.
1004	3. *Godfrey*, Earl of *Ardenne*, Son of *Godfrey* the elder, and Cousin of *Otho* by his Mother, confirmed herein by the power of the Emperour *Henry* the 2.
1019	4. *Gozelo* of *Bouillon*, the Brother of *Godfrey*.
1044	5. *Godfrey* II. Son of *Gozelo*.
1070	6. *Godfrey* III.
1078	7. *Godfrey* IV. of *Bouillon*, Son of *Eustace* Earl of *Boulogne* in *Picardie*, and of *Ida* his Wife, the Daughter of *Godfrey* the 2. created King of *Hierusalem* Anno 1099.
1100	8. *Baldwin*, Brother of *Godfrey*, Duke of *Lorrain*, and King of *Hierusalem*.
1119	9. *Thierrie*, Son of *William* the Brother of *Baldwin*.
1128	10. *Simon*, Son of *Thierrie*.
1141	11. *Matthew*, Son of *Simon*.
1176	12. *Simon* II. Son of *Matthew*.
1207	13. *Frederick*, Brother of *Simon*.
1213	14. *Theobald*, Son of *Frederick*.
1219	15. *Matthew* II. Son of *Theobald*, no great friend of the Popes.
1259	16. *Frederick* II. Son of *Matthew*.
1303	17. *Theobald* II. Son of *Frederick*.
1311	18. *Frederick* III. Son of *Theobald*.
1429	19. *Rodolph*, Son of *Frederick*.
1346	20. *John*, Son of *Rodolph*.
1382	21. *Charles*, Son of *John*.
1430	22. *Rhene*, Duke of *Anjou* and King of *Naples*, &c. in right of *Isabel* his Wife, the Daughter of *Charles*.
1452	23. *John* II. Son of *Rene* and *Isabel*, succeeded on the death of his Mother.
1470	24. *Nicolas*, Son of *John*.
1473	25. *Rene* II. Son of *Frederick* Earl of *Vaudemont*, and of *Violant* or *Yoland*, Daughter of *Isabel* and *Rene* the first; the Vanquisher of *Charles* of *Burgundy* at the Battel of *Nancy*.
1508	26. *Anthony*, Son of *Rene* the 2.
1544	27. *Francis*, Son of *Anthony*.
1545	28. *Charles* II. Son of *Francis*.
	29. *Henry*, Son of *Charles*, married *Katharine*, Sister to *Henry* the 4. of *France*.
1624	30. *Francis*, Brother of *Henry*.
1630	31. *Charles*, Nephew to *Francis* by his Brother the Earl of *Vaudemont*, and Son-in-Law to him by the Marriage of his Daughter and Heir,

succeeded by a mixt Title of Descent and Marriage. Being resolved to hold it in his own right, he put away his Wife, the Daughter of *Francis*, and took another to his Bed, which he better fansied. Punished not long after by the loss of his whole Estate: For immediately he engaged himself in the Wars of *Germany* in behalf of *Ferdinand* the 2. but being beaten by the *Swedes* at the Battel of *Pfaffenhofen* in the County of *Hanaw*, he lost a great part of his Country to the Victors, who pursued him home. And on the other side, *Lewis* the 13. of *France*, picking a quarrel with him for receiving the Monsieur his Brother, and the Marriage of the Monsieur with the Lady *Margaret* the Duke's Sister, deprived him of the Dutchy of *Bar*, and falling into *Lorrain* with a puissant Army at such time as the *Swedes* were there, compelled him to put into his hands the City of *Nancy*, and by consequence all the rest of his Estates, *Septemb.* 1633. Since which time the Duke hath never been restored thereto, nor hath any thing left him in it, for ought I can hear, but the Town of *La Mothe*, (if that) together with a good Cause, many hearts, and an invincible courage.

The Revenues of this Prince are said to be 700000 Crowns; whereof 200000 arise from the Customs of the Salt made in his Country, and the other 500000 from his Coronet-lands. He is an absolute Prince, and giveth for his Device an armed Hand coming as it were from Heaven, and grasping a naked Sword; to shew that he holdeth his Estate by no other Tenure than God and his Sword; the only hope, at this time, of the present Duke. For though he be accompted a Prince of the Empire, and his Dukedom reckoned for a part of the fifth Circle thereof, which is called the *Circle of the Rhene*; yet he neither comes unto the Diets, nor holdeth himself bound by any of the Orders and Decrees which are made therein, as do the rest of the great Princes of *Germany*; his neighbourhood to the *French* formerly securing his Estate against any force which the Empire durst bring against him for those neglects.

The Arms of *Lorrain* are *O*, a Bend *Gules* charged with

3 Larks *Argent*. But herein I find *Bara*, an old *French* Herald, to differ from *Paradine*, the most exact Genealogist of the *French* Nation. For *Bara* chargeth the Bend not with 3 *Allovettes*, Larks, as *Paradine* doth, but with 3 *Allerions*, which are in Blazon small Birds wanting beaks, feet, and legs. Of this last opinion is the most worthy Antiquary *Cambden Clarencieux*; who withal telleth us, that when *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* was at the Siege of *Hierusalem*, shooting at S. *David*'s Tower there, he broached three feetless Birds called *Allerions* upon his Arrow, and thereupon assumed this Arms.

6. *SUEVIA*, or *SCHWABEN*.

THE Dukedom of *SUEVIA* or *SCHWABEN*, according to the ancient limits and extent thereof, was bounded on the North with *Frankenland* and the *Lower Palatinate*, on the South with *Switzerland* and the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, on the East with the River *Leck*, parting it from *Bavaria*, and on the West with the *Rhene*, dividing it from *Sungow* and both *Alsatia's*. But now the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, the Marquisate of *Baden*, and other lesser Estates being taken out of it, it is contracted and restrained within narrower Bounds, having on the East *Bavaria*, on the West the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*, and so much of the *Rhene* as serveth to divide it from *Sungow* and the *Upper Elsass*, on the North *Franconia* or *Frankenland*, and on the South a little of the *Rhene*, with some part of the *Switzers*.

The Country for the most part is mountainous and hilly, overspread with some spurs of the *Alps*, and the Woods of *Nigra Sylva* or *Swartzenwald*: recompensed notwithstanding with great plenty of Springs and Rivers (and amongst them the *Neccar* and the renowned *Danubius*) which do issue from them: which makes the Vales hereof to be very fruitful, sufficiently stored with all necessary provisions. Nor are the Woods and Mountains so unprofitable, but that besides the great plenty of Fewel and the pleasures of Hunting, they do afford some Mines of Iron and other Metals.

The people in regard of their mountainous situation, are more fierce and warlike than the rest of the *Germans*, and so accompted of by *Plutarch* in former times; industrious in several Trades and Manufactures, especially in the weaving of Linen-cloth, which is made here in great abundance: and by reason they have so much in them of the South, they are *supra modum in* Venerem *proni*, as *Aubanus* tells me, at least more given to *Venus* than the other of the *Germans* are; the women also being said to be very forwards in this kind, as tractable and easie as the men could wish them.

The whole is generally divided into the *Hegow*, lying next to the Lake of *Constance*; the *Algow*, extending to *Bavaria*; *Brisgow*, upon the West of the River *Rhene*; and *North-Schwaben*, on the Northern side of *Danubius*. Principal Cities in the *HEGOW* are, 1. *Lindaw*, situate like an Island in the Lake of *Constance*, encompassed almost with the waters thereof, but joined to it with a Causey of 290 paces long: one of the Free or Imperial Cities, made so, for money, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, *Anno* 1166. 2. *Buchorn*, and 3. *Uberlingen*, on the same Lake; both Imperial also. 4. *Scaffhausen*, seated on both sides of the *Rhene*, not far from the efflux thereof out of the Lake *Cell*, (so called from a Town of that name belonging to the Archdukes of *Austria*, but anciently known by the name of *Lacus Venetus*) and near those dreadful falls or Cataracts of that River no less than 50 Cubits downwards, with great noise and violence. For which cause all Vessels that go down the *Rhene* are fain to unlade themselves, and by Carts to carry their goods to this Town, where they imbark them again. Which as it yieldeth great benefit unto the Town by Tolls and Imposts, so doth it always keep it stored with abundance of Barks and other Vessels; whence it hath the name of *Scaff-hausen*, that is to say, the *house of Skiffs*, or the Town of *Skip-boats*. The Town is conveniently seated amongst rich Pastures and sweet Groves on both sides of the River; not without some pleasant Hills, and those well planted with Vines, near adjoining to it: Imperial once, but now a Canton of the *Switzers*, as hath there been shewn. 5. *Arbon*, upon the Lake it self, (the *Arbor Felix* of *Strabo*) belonging to the Bishop of *Constance*. 6. *Mersburg*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Constance*, Lord of the most part of this Tract, on the same Lake also. 7. *Constance* it self, situate on both sides of the *Rhene*, where it issueth out of the Lake, called from hence the *Lake* of *Constance*, but by the *Dutch Boden-zee*, from the Castle of *Bodmen*; by *Pliny* and other Ancients *Lacus Acronius*, and *Brigantinus*, made by the Confluence of the *Rhene* & some other Rivers falling out of *Switzerland*. The Town is Imperial, an Episcopal See, and a flourishing Emporie: famous for the Council here holden *Anno* 1414, of great renown as well for the multitude and quality of the people which were there assembled, as for the importance of the matters which were therein handled. The people of most note there assembled were, *Sigismund* the Emperour, 4 Patriarchs, 29 Cardinals, 346 Archbishops and Bishops, 564 Abbats and Doctors, 10000 secular Princes and Noblemen, 450 common Harlots, 1600 Barbers, and 320 Minstrels and Jesters. The Business there handled was, first the pacifying of a Schism in the Church, there being at that time 3 Popes, (or rather Anti-Popes) *viz. Gregory* the 12. resident at *Rome*, *John* the 23. at *Bononia*, and *Bennet* the 13. in *Spain*; all three deposed by the Council, and *Martin* the 5. made sole Pope by the unanimous consent of the Council, declaring both by matter of fact, and by a publick Constitution here made and ratified, that a *Council is above the Pope*. The other main business was the proceeding against *John Hus* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, (spoken of before) both which, notwithstanding the Emperour's safe conduct, were here condemned of Heresie, degraded, and burnt. Now the manner of degrading a Priest is this: (I hope to be excused for this Digression) The party to be degraded is attired in his Priestly Vestments, holding in the one hand a Chalice full of wine & water, and in the other a gilt Plate (or *Paten*, as they call it) with a Wafer. Then kneeling down, the Bishop's Deputy, 1. taking from him all those things commandshim to say no more Masses for the quick and dead. 2. Scraping his Fingers ends with a piece of Glass, he commandeth him from that time forwards not to hallow any thing. And 3. stripping him of his Priestly Habit, he is clothed in a Lay attire, and so delivered over to the secular Magistrate. But to return again to the City of *Constance*: being proscribed by *Charles* the 5. for refusing the *Interim*, and not able to withstand such Forces as were raised against them, they put themselves under the Protection of *Ferdinand*, then King of the *Romans*, and Brother of *Charles*. But herein they fell out of the Frying-pan into the Fire, as the saying is: For *Ferdinand* being possessed of the Town, seised on the common Treasury, and upon all Records and Writings which belonged unto them; set out an Edict, that all the Ministers within eight days should depart the City; and that no Citizen from thenceforth should wear any Weapon. And so, instead of a Protector, he became their Master.

Chief Cities in the part hereof lying towards *Bavaria*, which is called the *ALGOW*, are, 1. *Buchau*, on the Lake called *Feder-zee*; a Town Imperial. 2. *Ravenspurg*, a Free City, seated amongst Mountains, whereof one hangeth

eth over it, the River *Ach* running by it in a bed so narrow that not able to receive the waters which fall down from the Hills, it much endamageth all the Country by frequent Land-flouds. 3. *Wangen*, (the *Nemavia* of *Antoninus*) Imperial also. 4. *Kempten*, the *Campodunum* of *Strabo*, and 5. *Memmingen*, the *Drusomagus* of *Ptolomy*; both Imperial Cities; the last about three miles in circuit, populous, rich, and very well traded. 6. *Pfullendorf*, 7. *Zeukirk*, 8. *Bibrach*; all three Imperial; the last supposed to be the *Bragodurum* of the Ancients. 9. *Augsburg*, on the River *Lech*, looking into *Bavaria*, first made a *Roman* Colony by *Augustus Cæsar*, and by him called *Augusta Vindelicorum*, the principal City in those times of the *Vindelici*, a potent People of this Tract. A City of great wealth and state, containing about 9 miles in circuit, and very strongly fortified; by Nature on the East and North, where the ground lies low and under water, and on the West and South by Art. The Buildings for three parts of it are of Clay and Timber; but on the West part, seated on an Hill, built of Free-stone, six or seven Stories high; in which are many fair Houses of the principal Citizens, and many stately Palaces, which belong to the *Fuggers*, a Family of very great (almost Princely) Revenues, possessed of many goodly Dwellings both in the City and the Suburbs, and adjoining Territories; who though they have of late obtained the honour of Barons, in regard of their Wealth, still keep themselves (contrary to the custom of *Germany*, where Traffick is counted a disgrace to a Noble-man) to the trade of Merchandise. The publick Edifices of it are very decent, especially the Cathedral-Church, a majestick Building; the other Churches, being ten in number, and the Religious Houses, correspondent to it. Of old time *Ceres* was here worshipped, from whence (or from the fruitfulness of the soil) the City gives a Sheaf of Corn for the Arms thereof. Since their Conversion unto Christianity it was made a Bishops See. Destroyed by *Attila* and his *Huns*, it was after built more beautifully than it had been formerly; at last made Imperial, and the Mistress of as large a Territory as most Cities of *Germany*. Famous for the *Confession of Faith* exhibited in this place to *Charles* the 5. by the Protestant Princes, hence called *Confessio Augustana*, *An.* 1530. 2. For the *Interim*, or mixt form of Doctrine, containing some Points of Protestanism, but most of Popery, here tendred to both parties by the said Emperor, (but received by neither) to be subscribed to and observed till the Differences could be setled by a General Council. And 3. for the publick allowance here given by Decree of all the States of the Empire to the Protestant party, to profess openly their Religion without any impeachment, *An.* 1555. a Limitation only laid on the Ecclesiasticks, that if they changed their Religion, they should lose their preferments, which were to be bestowed on others more addicted to the See of *Rome*.

In the third part hereof, called *BRISGOW*, lying on the East of the River *Rhene*, and the West of *Wirtenberg*, and on the South closed in with the Canton of *Basil*, Places of most importance are, 1. *Friburg*, upon the *Trieße* and other Streams descending from the Mountains of *Swartzen-wald*, under which it lieth: founded by *Berchthold* the third, Earl or Duke of *Zeringen*, (the Castle of *Zeringen*, founded by *Berthold* the first, Son of *Gebizo*, the youngest Son of *Guntram*, the second Earl of *Habspurg*, once the chief Seat of those Princes, being then near adjoining to it) in the reign of *Henry* the Fifth Emperour, *Anno* 1112, or thereabouts. Famous in those days for Silver mines, now for an University here established *Anno* 1459, and being in present estimation the chief of the Country, of which more anon. 2. *Offenbach*, 3. *Gengenbach*, both upon the *Kintrich*, and both Towns Imperial: the first so named from *Offa* an *English Saxon*, the Apostle of these parts of *Germany*. 4. *Hochberg*, which gives the Title of a Marquess to the Marquesses of *Baden*, who are Lords thereof. 5. *Zel*, once Imperial, but of late times belonging, as doth also 6. *Badenwiller*, to the Marquess of *Baden*; this last accruing to them by the Marriage of *Rodolphus* the sixth of that name, Marquess of *Hochberg*, with a Sister of *John* Earl of *Friburg*, the then Lord thereof. 7. *Waldshut*, upon the *Rhene*, in a barren, cold and mountainous Country, but well stored with Woods. 8. *Brisac*, by *Antonine* called *Mons Brisacus*, a Garrison in his time against the encroaching *Almans*, and situate at that time on the *French* side of the *Rhene*, the course of the River being since turned on the other side, where now it runneth. It is built Castle-wise on the top of a round Hill, in which there is also a strong Tower or Fortress, raised by *Berchthold* the third for defence of the place; otherwise strong enough by its own natural situation, and might be made impregnable, but for want of water, which is all drawn from one deep Well in the heart of the Town, or brought with great charge and trouble from the *Rhene* which runs underneath it. The Town is fair, populous, and well built, once of most note in all the Country, from hence called *Brisac-gow*, or *Brise-gow*; but after the building of *Friburg* by *Berchthold* the 4. it grew by little and little to be less frequented, the other being seated more conveniently for Trade and business. Here also, not far off from the Castle of *Zeringen*, stood that of *Kiburg*, somewhat the ancienter of the two; of such authority and repute in those elder times, that the Emperours do still retain the Title of Earls of *Kiburg* in the Style Imperial: descended on the House of *Habspurg* by the Marriage of *Elizabeth*, Daughter and Heir of *Hartman* the last Earl hereof, to *Eberhard* of *Habspurg*, Cousin-german to the Emperour *Rodolph*; on the expiring of which Line, *Anno* 1356, it fell, together with many fair Estates among the *Switzers*, to *Albert* Duke of *Austria*, surnamed the Short.

Finally, in the fourth and last part hereof, called *NORTH-SCHWABEN*, because on the North-side of the *Danow*, the places most observable are, 1. *Gemund*, on the *Rheems*. 2. *Dinckel-Spyel*, on the *Warnitz*, two Imperial Towns; which with *Uberlingen* or *Werlingen*, (all three but mean in Building, Territory, or estimation) spoken of before, are the only three Imperial Cities in all *Germany* which totally adhere unto the Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*. 3. *Bopfingen*, on the *Egra*, an Imperial City. 4. *Norlingen*, on the same River, but in a low and mooriſh ground, yet of great resort, populous, and well traded; most memorable for the Defeat here given the *Sweeds* by *Ferdinand* the third, now Emperour, at his first entrance on the Government; in which *Bannier*, one of the principal Commanders of that Nation, was slain on the place, *Gustavus Horn*, another of as great eminence, taken Prisoner, their whole Forces routed, and thereupon so strange an alteration of the Affairs of *Germany*, which they had almost wholly conquered, (though not for themselves;) that the *Palatinate*, not long before restored to its proper Owner, was again possessed by the *Spaniards*, *Frankendale* by the Imperialists, and the remainder of the *Swedes* forced to withdraw into their Holds on the *Baltick* Seas, *Anno* 1637. 5. *Rotweil*, not far from the head of the *Neccar*, an Imperial City, and a Confederate of the *Switzers*. 6. *Donawert*, seated on the Confluence of the *Donaw* and the *Werdt*, whence it had the name, most commonly called only *Werdt*; an Imperial Town, the habitation of *John de Werdt*, once a Brewer herein, but afterwards a chief Commander of the Forces of the Duke of *Bavaria* in the late *German* Wars. 7. *Villingen*, on the *Bregentz*, a small River falling into the

the *Danow*; a Town belonging to the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*. Not far from which ſtands 8. *Furſtenburg*, an ancient Caſtle. The Earls hereof are Princes of the Empire, and Lords of a great part of the Country, deſcended lineally from *Eginon*, or *Eggon*, the youngeſt Son of the Lady *Judith*, Siſter and Heir of *Berthold* the fifth, the laſt Duke of *Zeringen*, and conſequently a Branch of the illuſtrious Houſe of *Habſpurg*; exceedingly increaſed both in power and Patrimony, by the Marriage of *Frederick* Earl hereof (in the time of *Charles* the fifth, under whom he ſerved in his Wars againſt the Proteſtants) with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Chriſtopher* the laſt Earl of *Werdenberg*, poſſeſſed of many fair Eſtates amongſt the *Switzers* and the adjoining parts of *Schwaben*. In a Village of this Earl, called *Den Eſchingen*, is the Head of *Danubius*. 9. *Ulm*, an Imperial City, ſituate on the meeting of the *Blave*, the *Iler*, and the *Danow*, the principal City of *North Schwaben*; about ſix miles in compaſs, rich, populous, well fortified, and ſtored with an Armory for Ordnance and all manner of Ammunition not inferious to any in *Germany*. The Town is but new taking its firſt riſe from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which after grew to be a great City; and took the name of *Ulm* from the Elms about it. At firſt it belonged unto the Monks; of whom having bought their Freedom in the time of *Frederick* the third, it became Imperial. The *Danow* hereabouts begins to be navigable, having ſo violent a Stream, that the Boats which go down the water uſe to be ſold at the place where they land, it being both difficult and chargeable to bring them back again. Not far hence on the banks of the *Danow* lie the *Suevian Alps*, and amongſt them the old Caſtle of *Hohenberg*; the Lord whereof, on the Ruine of the Houſe of *Schwaben*, became poſſeſſed of a great Eſtate here and in Upper *Elſaſs*; ſold afterwards to *Rodolph* of *Habſpurg*, the Founder of the now *Auſtrian* Family.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Brixentes*, *Suanetes*, *Ruguſci*, and *Calucones*, who, together with the *Vindelici* (of whom more hereafter) and other Tribes of the *Rhæti*, (of whom ſomewhat hath been ſaid before in the *Alpine* Provinces) poſſeſſed themſelves of that Country which lieth betwixt the River *Inn* and the head of the *Rhene*, Eaſt and Weſt, *Danubius* and the *Alps* of *Italy*, North and South. Within which compaſs are the greateſt part of the *Griſons*, the Dukedoms of *Schwaben* and *Bavaria* on this ſide the *Danow*, and part of the County of *Tyrol*, and not a few of the Cantons of *Switzerland*. Subdued by *Druſus* and *Tiberius Nero*, Sons-in-law of *Auguſtus*, they were made a Province of the *Romans*: divided into *Rhætia prima*, taking in all the Countries from the *Rhene* to the *Leck*, or *Lycus*; and *Rhætia ſecunda*, lying betwixt the *Leck* and the River *Inn*, which by another name was called *Vindelicia*. By which accompt all *Schwaben* on the South ſide of the *Danow* was part of the Province of *Rhætia prima*, continuing ſo till vanquiſhed and ſubdued by the *Almans* in the time of *Valentinian* the third, Emperour of the Weſtern parts. As for the *Almans* who ſucceeded in poſſeſſion hereof, they were originally ſome Tribes and Families of the *Suevi*, the moſt warlike Nation of the *Germans*, inhabiting upon the Banks of the Riber of *Albis*: who, jealous of *Cæſar*'s great Succeſſes, brought againſt him 430000 fighting men, of which 80000 were ſlain, and many drowned. They uſed to ſtay at home and go to the War by turns: they which ſtayed at home tilling the Land, to whom the reſt returning brought the Spoil of the Enemies. But after this blow we hear little of them, till the time of *Caracalla* the Son of *Severus*; during whoſe Reign, deſcending towards the Banks of the *Rhene* and the *Danow*, and mingling with other Nations as they paſſed along, they aſſumed firſt the name of *Almans*; either from that promiſcuous mixture of all ſorts of men, or (as I rather think) from *Mannus* the Son of *Tuiſco*, one of the great and national Gods of the *Germans*. And though they were well beaten by him at their firſt coming down, near the River *Mœnus*, and afterwards more broken by *Diocleſian*, who ſlew at leaſt 60000 of them at one time in *Gaul*; yet never left they to infeſt the Provinces of the Empire which lay neareſt to them, till in the end, following the tract of the *Hunns* who had gon before them, and beaten down many of the Forts and Garriſons which were in their way, they made themſelves Maſters of *Rhætia prima*, *Germania prima*, and part of *Maxima Sequanorum*, containing, beſides the Countries ſpoken of before, *Alſatia*, and ſo much of the *Lower Palatinate* as lies on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*. But quarrelling with the *French*, their next neighbours, (of whoſe growth and greatneſs they began to be very ſenſible) they were firſt vanquiſhed by *Clovis* the firſt Chriſtian King of the *French* in that great and memorable Fight at *Zulp* near *Colen*, and afterwards made wholly ſubject to the Conquerour, who oppreſſed them with an heavy and laſting Servitude. About this time they returned again to their old name of *Suevians*, their Eſtate being erected into a Dukedom, called many times the Dukedom of *Almain*; and, when ſo called, divided into the Upper *Almain*, comprehending the Country of the *Griſons*, with ſome parts of *Switzerland* and *Tyrol*, and the Lower or the proper *Almain*, which contained the reſt of the Eſtates of the ancient *Almans*, called for the moſt part by the name of the Dukedom of *Suevia* or *Schwaben*, and finally tranſmitting that name to this Province only, the beſt part thereof. Theſe Dukes were at firſt officiary only, removeable at the will of the Emperour, and accomptable to him; not ſeldom many at one time, eſpecially whileſt under the command of the *French*, ſome of them being Dukes of the Upper, and others of the Lower *Almain*. So that there is no great certainty of their Succeſſion, nor much care to be taken in ſearching after it; though otherwiſe men of great Authority and command in their ſeveral Times. The moſt remarkable amongſt them was *Rodolph*, Earl of *Reinfelden* and Duke of *Schwaben*, (deſcended from the Earls of *Habſpurg*) in the reign of *Henry* the fourth, againſt whom he was choſen Emperour by the practice and procurement of Pope *Hildebrand*, but overcome and wounded at the Battel of *Eyſter*, he died not long after of his wounds, with great Repentance for rebelling againſt his Soveraign. After his death, ſome Provinces being diſmembred from it, and other leſſer Eſtates firſt erected out of it, it was made hereditary in the perſon of *Frederick* Baron of *Hohenſtauffen*, ſurnamed the Ancient, by the munificence and bounty of the ſaid *Henry* the fourth, whoſe Daughter *Agnes* he had married. His Succeſſors follow in this order.

The Dukes of *SCHWABEN*.

1. *Frederick* the Ancient, the firſt hereditary Duke of *Schwaben*.
2. *Frederick* with one eye, Son of *Frederick* the Ancient.
3. *Frederick* III. ſurnamed *Barbaroſſa*, Son of *Frederick* with one eye, Duke of *Schwaben*, and Emperour: he ſucceeded the Emperour *Henry* the fifth in the Dukedom of *Franconia*, and left the ſame unto his Succeſſors.

1190 4. *Frederick* IV. ſecond Son of *Barbaroſſa*; his elder Brother *Henry* ſucceeding in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the ſixth.

5. *Conrade*

5. *Conrade*, Brother of *Frederick* the fourth.
6. *Philip*, Brother of *Conrade*, after the death of *Henry* the 6. elected Emperour.

1207 7. *Frederick* V. Son of *Henry* the sixth, elected Emperour by the name of *Frederick* the second; King of *Naples* and *Sicily* also in the right of his Mother.

1250 8. *Conrade* II. Son of *Frederick* the fifth, King of both *Sicilies*, and Emperour of *Germany* after the death of his Father; poisoned, as was supposed, by his base Brother *Manfred*, who succeeded in his Kingdom of *Sicily*.

1254 9. *Conradine*, the Son of *Conrade*, pursuing his Right unto the Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, was overcome and taken prisoner by *Charles* of *Anjou*, Successour unto *Manfred* in those Estates, and by his command beheaded at *Naples* *Anno* 1268. After whose death (being the last of that powerful and Imperial Family) this vast Estate was brought unto a second dismembring, and divided amongst the Bishops, Princes and Free Cities hereof: of which last there are more within the old Precincts of this Dukedom than in all *Germany* besides. So that beholding it in the first and second Dilapidation, we find many goodly Patrimonies and fair Estates (besides what belongeth to the Cities and Episcopal Sees) to have been raised out of the Ruines of this great Dukedom: that is to say, the Dukedoms of *Zeringen* and *Wirtenberg*, with the Marquisate of *Baden*, dismembred from it when conferred on *Frederick* of *Hohenstauffen*; the Earldoms of *Pfirt*, *Hohenberg* and *Friburg*, (besides a great improvement of the Earldom of *Habspurg*) advanced out of the second Ruine. How *Pfirt* and *Hohenberg* were united to the House of *Austria* hath been shewn already; and what becomes of *Wirtenberg* and *Baden* shall be shewn hereafter. Here it is only to be noted, that the Family of *Zeringen*, possessed of almost all *Brisgow* and a great part of *Switzerland*, owe their Original to *Berthold*, the Son of *Gebizo*, a younger Son of *Guntram* the 2. Earl of *Habspurg*. Which being extinguished after a Succession of seven Princes only in the person of *Berthold* the fifth, (who died the same day in which the Emperour *Rodolph* of *Habspurg* was born) *Anno* 1218, the Rights hereof descended on the Earls of *Friburg*, the principal City of that Country: *Cuno*, the first that bare the Title of Earl of *Friburg*, being the eldest Son of *Judith*, Sister and Heir of *Berthold* the last Duke of *Zeringen*. *Eggon*, the last Earl of which House, being overlaid by his undutiful and rebellious Subjects, sold his Estate therein for 12000 Ducats to *Albert* and *Leopold* Dukes of *Austria*, Sons of *Albert* the Short, whose Successors enjoy all *Brisgow* to this very day.

The Arms of *Schwaben* were *Argent*, 3 Leopards *Sable*, as is said by *Bara*: But *Paradine* will have them to be three Leopards *Sable*, crowned *Gules*, in a Field *Or*.

7. BAVARIA.

BAVARIA is bounded on the East with *Austria*, on the West with the River *Leck* or *Lycus*, which parts it from *Schwaben*, on the North with *Norgoia*, or the Upper *Palatinate*, and on the South with the Earldom of *Tyrol* and *Carinthia*. It containeth the whole Province of *Rhetia secunda*, and so much of *Noricum mediterraneum* as now maketh up the Bishoprick of *Salczburg*, and by a distinct name was called *Vindelicia*, as being the ancient habitation of the *Vindelici*; so named from the two Rivers of *Vindis* and *Lycus*, (now the *Werd* and the *Leck*) upon which they lived. According whereunto it is thus verified by a *German* Poet:

Respicit & latè fluvios Vindimque Licumque
Miscentes Undas, & nomina Littoris, unde
Antiquam Gentem, populumque, Urbemque vocârunt
Vindelicam.———

In *English* thus,

Vindis and *Lycus*, Floods of noted fame,
He next beholds mingling their Streams and Name;
To which the old *Vindelici* do own
The name of both their Nation and their Town.

Meaning by their Town, as I conceive, *Augusta Vindelicorum*, their Metropolis or Capital City. But after such time as the *Boii* or *Boiarians* had driven out the *Romans*, and got possession of this Country, the name of *Vindelicia* and *Rhætia secunda* grew into disuse, that of *Boiaria* succeeding in the place thereof, mollified or corrupted into *Bavaria*, the present name of the Country amongst the *Latines*; but by the *Dutch* called *Bayeren*, by the *French Bavier*.

The whole is divided into three parts: the *Higher*, lying towards the *Alps* of *Tyrol*, the *Lower*, extending all along the banks of the *Danow*; and the District of *Saltzburg*, situate betwixt the *Inn* and the Dukedom of *Austria*: all three much over-spread with Woods and Forests, remainders of the *Hercynian* Forest described before. But more particularly the Higher, lying towards the *Alps*, is cold and barren, affording no Wines, and but little Corn: the Lower being more fruitful, and better planted, for some parts (especially about *Regenspurg* and *Landshut*) inferior unto none in *Germany* for Richness and pleasantness of the situation. Of the District of *Saltzburg* we shall speak by it self, because by some not reckoned as a part hereof. In all there is great quantity of Fewel for the fire, and of Timber for Building; no less of Swine fatted in the Woods, and sent away by numerous Herds into other Countries.

The Christian Faith was first preached here amongst the *Boiarians* by *Rupertus* Bishop of *Wormes*, driven from his See by *Childebert* King of the *French*, *Anno* 540, or thereabouts, and here made the first Bishop of *Saltzburg*: corrupted at this time with the Leven of the Church of *Rome*, to which this Country (setting aside the Imperial Cities) is more entirely devoted than any other in all *Germany*.

Principal Cities in the *HIGHER* are 1. *Munchen*, (in Latine *Monachium*) the Duke's Seat, seated on the *Isar*, or *Isara*, in a very sweet and delightful Soil, among Ponds and Groves, daintily interlaced with pretty Riverets, and enriched with many excellent Gardens; that of the Duke being hardly to be parallel'd in all this Continent: first founded by *Henry* Duke hereof in the time of *Otho* the first, *Anno* 972, now grown a large and populous City; the publick Buildings, as Churches, Turrets, Libraries, the Senate-house, or *Guild-hall*, and common Market-place, of such excellent Structure, that they serve not only for Use and Ornament, but for Admiration. Amongst them none is more eminent than the Library in the Ducal Palace, wherein are conceived to be 11000 Volumes, the most part of them Manuscripts. A Town made choice of by *Maximilian*, the now Duke of *Bavaria*, to be the receptacle of the Spoils got by him in the Wars of *Germany*: here being found (at such time as the Town was taken by the King of *Sweden*) 140 Brass Pieces (besides other great Guns) hidden under the ground, one of the which was charged, instead of Powder and Shot, with 30000 Crowns in Gold. 2. *Landsperg*, upon the *Leck* or *Lycus*, near the *Alps* of *Tyrol*: once of great strength, because a Frontier towards *Schwaben*; but proving a dangerous neighbor to the *Swedish* Garrisons planted in these parts, during that War against the Duke of *Bavaria*, was

by

by them taken and dismantled, and is now an open Village only. 3. *Martenwald*, now a place of no note or beauty, heretofore the *Inutrium* of *Ptolomy*, seated near the *Alps*. 4. *Fridberg*, well fortified by Duke *Ludowick* or *Lewis* the second for a Bulwark against those of *Augsburg*. 5. Here stood also the old Castle of *Schyre*, built by *Arnulph* 2. Son of *Arnulph* the first, Duke of *Bavaria*; the Seat and honorary Title of his posterity, (*Dynastæ Schyrenses* in the *Latine*) till *Otho* of *Wittlesback*, by the favour of *Frederick Barbarossa* and his own good fortune, did attain that Dukedom.

In the *LOWER Bavaria* there first offers it self to consideration the Town of *Rain*, seated on the *Leck*, not far from the fall thereof into the *Danow*; memorable for the Skirmish near to it betwixt the *Swedes* and *Bavarians* at the first passing of the *Swedish* Forces over that River, in which *John* Earl of *Tilly*, so famous for his long and fortunate Conduct of the Imperial Armies, received his death's wound, of which he died at *Ingolstad* within few weeks after. 2. *Newburg*, upon the *Danow*, not far from *Rain*; the first Town of *Bavaria* taken in by the *Swedes* after the said Defeat of *Tilly*. 3. *Ingolstad*, said to be built by a Tribe or Nation of the *Sueves* called *Angeli*, and thence called *Angelostadium*, or *Angelstade*; first made a City by *Ludowick* of *Bavaria* Duke and Emperour, and in the year 1410 made an University, much priviledged by Duke *Lewis* or *Ludowick* the fifth and Pope *Pius* the second. A Town so strongly fortified both by Art and Nature, that it seems impregnable; and indeed proved so to *Gustavus* the late King of *Sweden*, who here found the first check to his prosperous Fortunes, being forced to raise his Siege without endangering it, and find work elsewhere. 4. *Regenspurg*, (in *Latine Ratisbona*) on the *Danow* also, where it receives the River *Regen*, whence it hath its name; built in the place of *Tiberina*, or *Augusta Tiberii*, so called of a Colony brought hither by *Tiberius Cæsar* about the time of our Saviour's Passion; afterwards called *Rhætopolis*, or the City of the *Rhætians*, the chief of *Rhætia secunda*. At this time it is a fair, rich, and populous City, beautified with an infinite number of Churches and Religious Houses: anciently an Episcopal See, and of late made the ordinary place for the general Diets of the Empire. In former times it was the Seat of the Kings and first Dukes of *Bavaria*, then made Imperial, and now mixt, or both: for being still Imperial, at the least in name, it was seized on unexpectedly by the now Duke of *Bavaria*, when the *Swedes* first got footing within his Dominions; held by him with a very strong Garrison, after the loss of *Munchen* his chief place of Residence, till at last won from him by the *Swedes*, *Anno* 1633. 5. *Passaw*, by the modern *Latinists Patavia*, but by some thought to be the *Boiodurum* of *Ptolomy*, then a *Roman* Garrison: seated on the *Danow*, where it meeteth with the *Inn* and the *Iltz*; by which it is divided into three Towns, *Passaw*, *Instadt*, and *Ilstadt*, the whole *Compositum* being a rich, fair, and well traded City: a See Episcopal, and subject immediately to the Bishop as chief Lord hereof, who hath his dwelling in the Castle of *Oberhausen*, adjoining to that part hereof which is called *Ilstadt*. A place remarkable for many Meetings and Consultations of the *German* Princes, especially for that of the year 1552, in which, all former Quarrels being laid aside, the Protestants were first permitted the free Exercise of their Religion, by the consent and Edict of *Charles* the fifth, who had most laboured to suppress it. More in the Land is 6 *Frising*, on the swelling of a fine round Hill near the River *Ambra*, which runs beneath it, called anciently *Fraxinum*, conceived to be built by some of the Presidents or Lieutenants for the *Roman* Emperours; honoured with an Episcopal See about the year 716. One of the Bishops whereof, commonly called *Otho Frisingensis*, was the best Historian of his time. 7. *Landshut*, upon the River of *Iser*, in the richest and most pleasant Country of all *Bavaria*; a beautiful and well built City, the work of *Lewis* Duke hereof, in the year 1208, adorned with a Church of most curious building for the service of God, and a magnificent Palace for the use of the Duke. 8. *Freistat*, the only Imperial Town, (except *Regenspurg*) in all this Dukedom. The whole number of Cities and great Towns in both *Bavaria's* is supposed to be 80; that is to say, 34 Cities, and 46 great Towns, of which these are the principal.

The *Bishoprick* or *District* of *SALTZBURG*, being the third part of *Bayeren* or *Bavaria*, (according to our former division of it) extendeth from the *Inn* or *Oenus* towards the Confines of *Austria*. The Soil hereof is rocky, dry, and barren, excepting some few Vallies only, as seated in the midst of the *Julian Alps*, the habitation heretofore of the *Norici mediterranei*, of whom more hereafter. The principal Town hereof is *Saltzburg*, seated upon the River *Saltzach*, whence it had the name; raised out of the Ruines of *Juvavia*, placed hereabouts by *Antoninus*, the Station of a Cohort of *Roman* Souldiers belonging to the First Legion. An *Alpine* City, strongly situate among the Mountains; but no less beautiful than many of the lower grounds. The Royal Seat of some of the *Bavarian* Kings, after of the Archbishops hereof, the most powerful Prelates for Revenue or Jurisdiction of any in *Germany*. The See was first fixed here by *Rupertus* or *Rutbertus*, the first Apostle of these parts, spoken of before; whose Image or Impress is stamped to this day on the Coins of this Bishoprick. At the time when *Luther* first endeavoured a Reformation, Cardinal *Matthæus Langius* was Bishop here, who did ingenuously confess, that the Mass did not want its faults; that the Court of *Rome* was much corrupted, and the lives of Priests and Friers fit to be reformed: *sed quod misellus Monachus omnia reformet, id non esse tolerabile*; but that such a sorry fellow as *Luther* should attempt the work, was by no means to be endured. 2. *Newkirch*, on the same River, near the head thereof. 3. *Rotenburg*, on the East-side of the *Inn*, bordering on *Bavaria*. 4. *Traunsheim*, upon the *Traun*, rising out of the Lakes. 5. *Wildeshut*, one of the farthest Northwards, and 6. *Bishopsstoffe*, one of the most Southern in all this Tract.

The first Inhabitants of *Bavaria* (excluding the District of *Saltzburg*) were the *Vindelici*, as aforesaid: a people so resolvedly bent to maintain their Freedom against the incroachment of the *Romans*, that when *Drusus*, the Son-in-law of *Augustus*, and Father of *Germanicus Cæsar*, made War upon them, the very Women thereof took the Alarm; *& deficientibus telis, Infantes in ora militum adversa miserunt*, and when their Darts were spent, threw their young Infants (saith the Historian) at the heads of the *Romans*. After them, in the declining of the Empire, succeeded the *Boiarians*, some of the many Tribes of the *Boii*, the most diffused and multitudinous Nation of *Gaul* and *Germany*. Originally they were of *Gaul*, inhabiting the Dukedom of *Bourbon*, from whence some of them passed with the *Senones* and others of the *Gauls* to the farther side of the *Alps* (in respect of them) where they took up the Country between the *Appennine* and the *Po*. Wearied with many Bickerings, at last with sharp and bitter Wars against the *Romans*, and by them depriv'd of half their Country, some of them passed into *Germany*, and mingled themselves with the *Taurisci*, then dwelling in those parts which we now call *Stiermark*: others advancing farther, thrust themselves into the *Norici*, (of whom more anon;) and some retired themselves into the shelters and fast places of the *Hercynian*

Forest

Foreſt. Driven from this laſt by the *Marcomanni*, they fell into the Countries of the *Hermanduri* and *Norici*, (now the Upper *Palatinate*) who, mingled into one Nation with them, took the name of *Boiarians*, and were by that name firſt known in the time of *Clovis* the 5. King of the *French*; by whoſe perſwaſion, in the 17 year of *Anaſtaſius* Emperour of the Eaſt, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and poſſeſſed themſelves of *Vindelicia*, or the ſecond *Rhætia*, with ſome part of *Noricum*, to which they gave the name of *Boiaria*, as before was ſignifyed. They were governed firſt by Kings, (as all Nations were) of whom we meet with none but *Aldigerius*, (and he the laſt of that Race) ſlain fighting on the ſide of the *Almans* againſt the *French*, at the great Battel of *Zulp* near *Colen*. After which they were made ſubject to the Conquerors, as their neighbours and Confederates the *Almans* were, but ſuffered to live under the command and Government of their own Princes, by the name of Dukes. Of theſe, from *Theodo* the Son of *Aldigerius*, to *Taſſilo* the laſt Duke, outed of his Eſtate and Honours by *Charles* the Great, for conſpiring with the *Lombards* againſt him, are reckoned 15 Dukes in all; whoſe names (for there remaineth little of them but the empty names) we ſhall ſubjoyn in the enſuing Catalogue of the

Dukes of the *BOIARIANS*.

493 1. *Theodo*, Son of *Aldigerius* the laſt King; from whoſe younger Brother *Utilo* deſcended *Pepin* the Father of *Charles* the Great.
511 2. *Theodo* II. ſirnamed the Great.
537 3. *Theodebert*.
4. *Theodo* III. the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Boiarians*.
565 5. *Taſſilo* Son of *Theodebert*.
593 6. *Garibaldus*.
612 7. *Theodo* IV.
630 8. *Taſſilo* II.
650 9. *Theodo*. V.
10. *Theodebert* II.
11. *Theodo* VI. Son of *Grimoldus*, the Brother of *Theodebert* the ſecond.
708 12. *Grimold*.
13. *Hugobert*, Brother of *Grimold*.
735 14. *Utilo*.
765 15. *Taſſilo* III. the laſt Duke of the *Boiarians*, of whom more anon.

Amongſt theſe, few were of any note but 1. *Theodo* the firſt, Son of *Aldigerius*, who abandoning the name of King becauſe leſs pleaſing to the *French*, who had newly conquered them, aſſumed that of Duke, and paſſing over the *Danow*, extorted the whole Province of *Rhætia ſecunda*, with part of *Noricum*, from the *Romans*, *Anno* 508. or thereabouts. 2. *Theodo* the ſecond, named the Great, for his great and many Victories againſt the *Romans*, whom he outed of all *Noricum* and *Vindelicia*, and whatſoever they held on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Alps*. 3. *Theodo* the third of that name, and the fourth in number of the Dukes, converted with his people to the Chriſtian Faith by the preaching of *Rupertus* before mentioned, *An.* 580. 4. *Taſſilo* the third of that name, and the laſt of their Dukes of the Race of *Aldigerius*, or of the old *Boiarian* bloud; who being depoſed by *Charles* the Great, the whole *Country* became immediately ſubject to the *French*, governed at firſt by their Lieutenants. Diſmembred from the *French* Empire by *Lewis* the Godly, it was made a Kingdom, (*Pannonia* being added and united to it) by whom it was conferred on *Lotharius* his eldeſt Son, who was afterwards Emperour of the *Romans*: after his death poſſeſſed by the Kings of *Germany*, but as a diſtinct Kingdom both in name and Title, till the deceaſe of *Lewis* the Son of *Arnulph*, the laſt of the direct Line of *Charles* the Great. He being dead, and the *Bavarians* loth to be made a ſubject Province to the Kingdom of *Germany*, one *Arnulph* of the Iſſue of the ſaid *Charles*, with the general liking of the *Boiarians*, took upon himſelf the Title of King; but being oppoſed therein by *Conrade* the Brother of *Lewis*, Emperour and King of *Germany*, and alſo by *Henry* the firſt who ſucceeded, he changed the Title of King into that of Duke: the Founder of the preſent Houſe of

The Dukes of *BAVARIA*.

1. *Arnulph*, of the Houſe of *Charles* the Great, firſt Duke of *Bavaria*.
2. *Eberhard*, Son of *Arnulph*, depoſed by *Otho* the firſt.
3. *Berchthold*, the Brother of *Arnulph*, confirmed in the Eſtate by the ſaid Emperour *Otho*. After whoſe death it was conferred on *Henry*, the Brother of *Otho* the 1. who had married *Judith*, Daughter of *Arnulph* the firſt Duke, and Siſter to *Eberhard*.
4. *Henry*, Brother of *Otho* the firſt, ſirnamed *Rixoſus*, or the Quarrelſom.
5. *Henry* II. Son of the former *Henry*, ſirnamed *Hezelo*.
6. *Henry* III. ſirnamed the Saint, Son of *Henry* the 2. the firſt Emperour who came in by Election, according to the Order made by Pope *Gregory* the 5. After whoſe coming to the Empire this Dukedom was transferred for 14 Succeſſions from one great Family to another, according to the power and pleaſure of the preſent Emperour, in manner following.
7. *Henry* IV. ſirnamed *Hezzel*, Brother to *Cunegund*, the renowned Wife of *Henry* the Saint, by whom he was preferred to this Dukedom, and by him depoſed.
8. *Henry Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*, (of the ſtrange Original of which Family we ſhall ſpeak in *Brunſwick*) made Duke by the Emperour *Conrade* the 2.
9. *Guelpho*, Son of *Henry Guelph*, or *Henry* the 5.
10. *Erneſt*, created Duke hereof by the ſame *Conrade* the 2. and by him depoſed again for conſpiring againſt him.
11. *Henry* VI.
12. *Cuno*, accuſed of conſpiracy, and diſplaced by *Henry* the 3. to make room for
13. *Henry* VII. Son of the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 3. whom he ſucceeded in the Empire by the name of *Henry* the 4.
14. *Agnes*, the Mother of the ſaid *Henry* the 4. by the gift of her Son.
15. *Otho*, by the gift of the Empreſs *Agnes*, depoſed not long after by *Henry* the 4.
16. *Welpho* III. Son of *Coniza*, the Daughter of *Guelph* the 2. by *Azon* an *Italian* Marqueſs, made Duke hereof by the ſaid Emperour *Henry* the 4.
17. *Welpho*, IV. Son to *Welpho* the 3.
18. *Henry* VIII. ſirnamed the Proud, Brother of *Guelpho* the 4. by the Marriage of *Gertrude* Daughter of *Lotharius* the ſecond, Duke of *Saxony* alſo. Deprived of both by the Emperour *Conrade* the 3.
19. *Leopold*, Son to *Leopold* the 4. Marqueſs of

Austria, made Duke by the said *Conrade* the 3.

20. *Henry* IX. Brother of *Leopold*, after Marquels, at last Duke of *Austria*.

21. *Henry* X. sirnamed the Lion, Son of *Henry* the Proud, restored by the Arbitrement of *Frederick Barbarossa*, (the Duke of *Austria* being otherwise satisfied) by whom he was not long after proscribed, and deprived of both his Dukedoms. After which this Estate became fixed and setled in the person and posterity of

1180 22. *Otho* of *Wittlesbach*, so called from the place of his birth or dwelling, descended lineally from *Arnulph* the Lord of *Schyre* in the Upper *Bavaria*, and 2. Son of *Arnulph* the first Duke hereof; advanced unto this honour by *Frederick Barbarossa*, sensible of the too-great power of the former Dukes: the whole extent of this Estate being reduced by this time to the limits of the modern *Bavaria*, and the Palatinate of *Northgoia*.

1183 23. *Ludovick*, or *Lewis* Son of *Otho*.

1231 24. *Otho* II. Son of *Lewis*, who, by marrying *Gertrude*, the sole Daughter of *Henry* Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, brought the Electoral Dignity into the House of *Bavaria*.

1290 25. *Henry*, Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, the Son of *Otho* the 2.

1294 26. *Ludovick* or *Lewis* II. Brother of *Henry* Duke of *Bavaria* and Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*.

1312 27. *Ludovick* or *Lewis* III. second Son of *Lewis* the 2. succeeded in the Dukedom of *Bavaria*; *Rodolph*, the eldest Son, succeeding in both *Palatinates* and the Electoral Dignity. He was afterwards elected and crowned Emperour, known commonly by the name of *Ludovicus Bavarus*.

1347 28. *Stephen*, the eldest Son of *Ludovick* the Emperour; *William* and *Albert*, his two Brethren, successively enjoying the Earldoms of *Hainault*, *Holland*, &c. in right of their Mother.

1375 29. *Stephen*, II Son of *Stephen* the first; his Brothers, *Frederick* and *John*, sharing with him parts of the Estate.

1413 30. *Ludovick* II. sirnamed *Barbatus*, deposed and imprisoned by his own Son *Ludovick*, who yet died before him without Issue.

1447 31. *Henry* II. Son of *Frederick*, the second Brother of *Stephen* the 2. succeeded on the death of *Ludovicus Barbatus*.

1450 32. *Ludovick* V. sirnamed the Rich, the Son of *Henry* the 2. banished the *Jews* out of his Estates, and seised their goods.

1479 33. *George*, sirnamed the Rich also, the Founder of the Vniversity of *Ingolstadt*; whose sole Daughter and Heir was married to *Rupertus* Prince Elector *Palatine*, with the Dukedom of *Bavaria* for her Dower. But *Maximilian* the Emperour, not liking so much greatness in the *German* Princes, confirmed the same on

1503 34. *Albert* III. Son of a former *Albert*, Nephew of *John Munchen* by his Son *Ernestus*: which *John* was youngest Brother to *Stephen* the 2. who by the power and favour of *Maximilian* the Emperour succeeded unto *George* the Rich: the cause of a long and unhappy War betwixt the Electors of the *Rhene* and Dukes of *Bavaria*; the worst whereof, besides the loss of this Estate, fell upon the *Palatines*, proscribed and outed of their Country upon this quarrel; but, upon their Submission, restored again.

1508 35. *William*, the Son of *Albert* the 3.

1577 36. *Albert* IV. a great Champion of the Doctrines and Traditions of the Church of *Rome*; and so extremely affected unto the *Jesuites*, that he built Colledges for them at *Landsberg*, *Ingolstad* and *Munchen*, his three principal Towns.

1579 37. *William* II. Son of *Albert* the 4. as zealous as his Father in the cause of the Church of *Rome*; therein exceeded very much by

38. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *William* the 2. who chiefly out of the same zeal of th with *Ferdinand* the 2. in the Wars of *German* ...es 1620. and took upon him the conduct of the Armie... the said Emperour against *Frederick* Count and Elector-*Palatine*, chosen King of *Bohemia*: in which having done great service to the Imperial and *Romish* Interest, he was by the said *Ferdinand* invested in the Upper *Palatinate*, called anciently (but not more properly than now) the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, together with the *Electoral Dignity*. This last was conferred at first upon him but for term of life in the Diet at *Regenspurg*, 1623. the Electors of *Mentz*, *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* then protesting against it; but afterwards, in the Diet at *Prague*, Anno 1628. conferred upon him and his Heirs for ever, to the great prejudice of the Princes of the *Palatine* Family, who, by reason of their simultaneous Investiture with the first of their House, are not to be deprived of their Estates and Dignities for the offence of their Fathers; the punishment not being to extend beyond the person of the offender. But notwithstanding their Pretensions and Allegations, the Duke is still possessed of the Title and Dignity, and confirmed therein by the Conclusions of the Treaty of *Munster*, a new Electorate being to be erected for the *Palatine* Princes.

The Arms of this Duke are *Lozenges* of 21 pieces in Bend, *Argent* and *Azure*.

8. The Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*.

THE Archdukedom of *AUSTRIA*, reckoning in the incorporate Provinces and the Members of it, is bounded on the East with *Hungary* and part of *Sclavonia* on the West with *Bavaria*, and some parts of the *Switzers* and the *Grisons*, on the North with *Bohemia* and *Moravia*, and on the South with *Istria* and some part of *Friuli* in *Italy*. Within which circuit are contained the several Provinces of *Austria* properly so called, *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, and *Tyrol*. The quality of the whole will be best discerned by the Survey of particulars.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole were the *Norici* of the *Romans*, parted into the lesser Tribes of the *Sevaces*, *Alauni*, *Ambifontii*, *Ambilici*, and *Ambidranni*; subdued by *Drusus*, Son-in-law to *Augustus Cæsar*, and made a Province of the Empire. After by *Constantine* the Great divided into *Noricum Mediterraneum*, comprehending the Countries of *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, *Stiria*, and some parts of *Tyrol*, with the Bishoprick or District of *Saltzburg*; of which *Solva* was the Metropolis or capital City: and *Noricum Ripense*, containing only *Austria*, and those parts of *Bavaria* which lie Eastward of the River *Inn*, extended all along on the banks of the *Danow*. It was known by no other names while possessed by the *Romans*; from whom being conquered by the *Avares* and other Nations, it gained those several names and appellations specified before.

1. *AUSTRIA* properly so called hath on the East the Kingdom of *Hungary*, on the West *Bavaria*, on the North the *Bohemian* Mountains towards the West, and on the other side the *Teye*, which separates it from *Moravia*, on the South *Stiria*, or *Stiermark*. It is called by the

the *Dutch Oſtenreich*, and contractedly *Oſtrich*, that is to ſay, *the Eaſtern Kingdom*, (a part aſſuming to it ſelf the name of the whole) this being the extreme Province of *Eaſt-France*, or the Eaſtern Kingdom of the *French*, in the barbarous *Latine* of thoſe times called by the name of *Auſtraſia*, whence the modern *Auſtria*.

The Air is generally very healthy, and the Earth as fruitful, yielding a plentiful increaſe without help of Compoſt or other Soiling, and of ſo eaſie a Tillage to the Husbandman, that on the North ſide of the *Danow* it is ploughed and managed by one Horſe only. Exceeding plentiful it is of Grain, and abundant in Wine; with which [illegible] eth the defects of *Bavaria*: it hath grea[illegible] ill. Then[illegible]on, ſome proviſion of Salt; and at the foot [illegible] his Ma[illegible]ntains, not far from *Haimburg*, ſome Ginger alſo. Nor wants it Mines of Silver in a large proportion. It is divided by the River *Danow* into the *Lower*, and the *Higher*: that lying on the North ſide of the River, towards *Bohemia* and *Moravia*; this on the South ſide, towards *Stiermark*.

Places of moſt importance in the *HIGHER AUSTRIA* are, 1. *Gmund*, ſeated on a Lake called *Gmunder-See*, bordering on *Bavaria*, at the Efflux of the River *Draun*, which ariſeth out of it. 2. *Lintz*, ſeated on the Confluence of the ſaid *Draun* with the famous *Danow*; the *Aredate* of *Ptolemy*: a Town before the late Wars almoſt wholly Proteſtant; but then being put into the hands of the Duke of *Bavaria*, began to warp a little to the other ſide. 3. *Walkenſtein*, on the *Ens* or *Aniſus*, near the borders of *Stiermark*. 4. *Ens*, on the fall of that River into the *Danow*, raiſed out of the Ruines of *Laureacum*, ſometimes the Metropolis of *Noricum Ripenſe*, the Station at that time of the 2. Legion; afterwards an Archbiſhop's See, made ſuch in the firſt planting of Chriſtianity amongſt this people by S. *Severine*, An. 464. On the Reviver whereof (ſuppreſſed by the *Hunns*, *Boiarians*, and others of the barbarous Nations) by the diligence and preaching of S. *Rupertus*, the Metropolitan dignity was fixt at *Saltzburg*. 5. *Weidhoven*, near the head of the River *Ips*. 6. *Ips*, ſeated at the Influx of that River, and from thence denominated; the *Geſodunum* of *Ptolemy* and other Ancients. 7. *Newſidle*, on a great Lake ſo named. 8. *Wels*, on the main ſtream of the *Danubius*. 9. *Haimburg*, on the Confluence thereof and the River *Markb*. Near to which, at the foot of the Mountains now called *Haimburgerberg*, (from the Town adjoyning) but anciently named *Mons Cognamus*, is ſome ſtore of Ginger: a wonderful great rarity for theſe colder Countries. 10. *Newſtat*, firſt called ſo from the newneſs of it, being built of late. 11. *Vienna*, by the *Dutch Wien*, the principal of all theſe parts, by *Ptolomy* called *Juliobona*, *Vindebona*, by *Antonine*; the Station in their times of the Tenth *Roman* Legion; of whoſe being ſetled here there are many Monuments both within the City & without. Seated it is on the banks of *Danubius*, well built, both in regard of private and publick Edefices; each private houſe having ſuch ſtore of Cellarage for all occaſions, that as much of the City ſeems to be under the ground as is above it. The *Streets* for the moſt part are ſpacious, and all paved with Stone, which makes them very clean and ſweet in the midſt of Winter. It is fenced with a mighty Wall, deep and precipicious Ditches on all parts of it, and many Bulwarks, Towers and Ramparts in all needful places. The Walls hereof were firſt raiſed with ſome part of the money paid unto *Leopold* Duke of *Auſtria*, for the ranſom of K. *Richard* the firſt of *England*, taken Priſoner by him as he paſſed homewards through this Country from the *Holy Land*. Eſteemed to this day the ſtrongeſt hold of Chriſtendom againſt the *Turks*; and proved experimentally ſo to be in that moſt notable and famous Repulſe here given them *An.* 1526. at what time 200000 of them, under the conduct of *Solyman* the Magnificent, beſieged this City; but by the valour of *Frederick* the ſecond, Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and other *German* Princes, were gallantly reſiſted, and compelled to retire, with the loſs of 80000 Souldiers. Nor doth the Strength hereof ſo diminiſh the Beauties of it, but that it is one of the goodlieſt Towns in all the Empire; the Reſidence for theſe laſt Ages of the Emperours: made an Univerſity by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond; revived and much advanced by *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, An. 1356: adorned with an Epiſcopal See, many magnificent Temples, and ſtately Monaſteries: but above all, with a moſt ſumptuous and Princely Palace, wherein the Archdukes and Emperours uſe to keep their Courts; built by *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia*, during the little time he was Duke of *Auſtria*. In the middle Ages, as appears by *Otho Friſingenſis*, it was called *Fabiana*: but being ruined by the *Hunns*, and again re-edified, was firſt called *Biana*, (the firſt ſyllable omitted by miſtake or negligence) from whence the *Dutch Wien*, and the *Latine Vienna*.

We ſhould now take a view of the Towns and Cities in the *LOWER AUSTRIA*, if there were any in it which were worth the looking after. The Country having never been in the hands of the *Romans*, hath no Town of any great Antiquity; nor many new ones built or beautified by the *Auſtrian* Princes, ſince it came into their poſſeſſion: the only one of note being *Crems*, or *Cremis*, on the left-hand ſhoar of *Danubius*, going down the water. 2. *Recz*, on the River *Teye*, bordering on *Moravia*; and 3. *Freiſtat*, at the foot of the Mountains on the skirts of *Bohemia*.

2. *STIRIA*, or *STIERMARK*, is bounded on the North with *Auſtria*, on the South with *Carniola*, on the Eaſt with *Hungary*, and on the Weſt with *Carinthia*; extended in length 110 miles, but in breadth not above 60, or thereabout. For the moſt part mountainous and barren, as being over-ſpread with the Spurs and branches of the *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

Towns of moſt conſequence are, 1. *Gratz*, ſeated upon the River *Mur*, and the chief of the Province, from which the third Branch of the Houſe of *Auſtria* (ſince the time of *Ferdinand* the firſt) was called *de Gratz*, and had the Government of the Country for their part of that *Patrimony*. A Town once full of Proteſtants, and thoſe ſo ſtrong, that they could neither be forced out, nor hindred from the free exerciſe of their Religion, till the year 1598, in which *Margaret*, the late *Queen* of *Spain*, Siſter to the Archduke *Ferdinand de Gratz*, was by the Citizens ſolemnly entertained; with whom entred ſo many Souldiers, that the City was taken, and 14 Miniſters of the Reformed Religion preſently baniſhed. 2. *Rackelſpurg*, and 3. *Pruck*, both ſituate alſo on the *Mur*. 4. *Stechaw*, an Epiſcopal See, ſeated on the *Dra*, or *Dravus*, a well-known River, not far from the fall of the *Mur* into it. 5. *Petaw*, the *Petovia* of *Antonius*, ſeated ſomewhat higher upon the *Dravus*. 6. *Lambach*, the *Ovilabis* of *Antoninus*, on the *Dravus* alſo. 7. *Voitſperg*, upon the River *Kainach*. 8. *Celey*, the *Celeia* of *Pliny*, of great antiquity, as appeareth by many *Roman* Inſcriptions and other evident ſigns of Age which are upon it; for this cauſe thought by ſome to be that *Celia*, or built at leaſt out of the Ruines of it, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. It is ſituate on the River *Savus*, and hath a large juriſdiction over the adjoyning Countries. 9. *Cauiſia*, ſeated in a Mariſh on the edge of this Country: a place of great ſtrength both by art and nature; once one of the ſtrongeſt Bulwarks againſt the *Turks* in all theſe parts, and a great eye-ſore to them for many years; but taken by them at laſt, *An.* 1600, and never ſince regained by the Princes of the Houſe of

Austria, though many times in vain attempted.

The whole Country, being mountainous and hilly, generally over-spread with the spurs and branches of the neighbouring *Alps*, and rich only in Minerals, as before was said, was anciently the Inhabitation of the *Tauriſci*, (part of the *Norici*) from whom it took the name of *Stiermark*, the *Germans* calling that a *Stier* which the *Latins* call *Tauriſcus*, or a little Bullock. By which account *Stiermack* is nothing but the Borders or Marches of the *Tauriſci*, the utmoſt Bounds of their poſſeſſions; as indeed it was. Laid to *Pannonia* in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, it was called *Valeria*, in honour of *Valeria* the Daughter of *Diocletian*. But once diſmembred from the Empire, it fell unto the name of *Stiermark*, with reference to the *Tauriſci* ſpoken of before. Firſt made an Earldom in the perſon of one *Ottacarus* advanced unto that Honour by the Emperour *Conrade* the 2. *Leopold* the 4. from this *Ottacarus* (two other *Ottacars* intervening) was made Marqueſs of *Stiermark*; and his Son, *Ottacar* the 4. was made Duke hereof by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. But being without hope of iſſue, and infected with the incurable diſeaſe of the Leproſie, he ſold his Country to *Leopold* the fifth of *Auſtria*; who bought it with ſome part of that vaſt ſum of money which he extorted for the Ranſom of King *Richard* the firſt. It hath continued ever ſince in the poſſeſſion of this potent Family, but ſo, that it hath many times been aſſigned over for the Portion of the younger Brethren: as, namely, to *Leopold* the ninth of that name, one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; *Erneſt*, the youngeſt Son of that *Leopold*: and, laſtly, to *Charles* the youngeſt Son of *Ferdinand* the firſt, called *Charles* of *Gratz*, Father of *Ferdinand* the ſecond, Succeſſour to *Matthias* in *Auſtria* it ſelf and all the reſt of the Eſtates incorporate with it: not like hereafter to be ſo impolitickly diſmembred from the chief of the Houſe, as in former times.

3. *CARINTHIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Karnten*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Stiermark* and the River *Lavand*, on the Weſt with the Diſtrict of *Saltzburg* and the River *Saltzach*, on the North with *Auſtria* it ſelf, and on the South with *Carniola*, and the River *Dravus*, which, having its original in the skirts hereof, paſſeth through theſe *Auſtrian* Provinces into *Hungary*, and falls at laſt into the *Danow*. The Country, being ſituate in the worſt part of the *Alps*, is generally poor and barren, except only in Minerals; extending all along the *Dravus* for the length of 100 *Engliſh* miles, and 47 in breadth, betwixt that River and the *Mur*, by the which it is bounded.

Places of principal note in it are, 1. S. *Veit*, or *Sancti Viti*, the chief Town of the Country, ſituate at the meeting of the *Glan* & the *Wunics*, two ſmall Rivers, adorned with a ſpacious Market-place and a beautiful Conduit. 2. *Villach*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, in a pleaſant Valley encompaſſed about with Rocks; the Houſes thereof adorned on the out-ſide with painted Stories, very delightful to behold. 3. *Gurck*, a ſmall Town, but an Epiſcopal See. 4. *Clagenfurt*, on the Lake called *Wera-See*, a well-fenced place, called anciently by the name of *Claudia*. 5. *Wolffperg*, upon the *Lavand*, ſo near to *Stiermark*, that it is by ſome reckoned for a Town thereof. 6. *Lavamundt*, on the ſame Border, an Epiſcopal See, ſituate at the Influx of that River into the *Dravus*. 7. *Freiſach*, a Town of much antiquity, ſeated on the *Oleza*. 8. *Spittal*, &c. The Story and Succeſſion of the Dukes hereof, before the uniting of it to the Houſe of *Auſtria* (this *Province* and *Carniola* making but one *Eſtate* between them) we ſhall ſee anon.

4. *CARNIOLA*, by the *Dutch* called *Krain*, is environed with *Sclavonia* Eaſt, *Friuli* Weſt, *Carinthia* and part of *Stiermark* North, and *Iſtria* South. It is in length, from Eaſt to Weſt, (extended along the River *Savus*) 120 *Italian* miles, and about 76 in breadth. The *Alps* here being lower and leſs cold and rocky than more towards the Weſt, maketh it to be the more rich both in Corn and Wine, and other the productions of nature, than it would be otherwiſe.

The chief Towns are, 1. *Newmarkt*. 2. *Eſling*. 3. *Marſpurg*. 4. *Pogoneck*, and 5. *Saxenfelt*, all upon the *Savus*, which, ariſing in this Country, runneth through the very middle of it, and after falleth into the *Danow*. 6. *Laibach*, ſeated on a ſmall River of the ſame name; by *Ptolomy* called *Pamportus*, but by *Pliny Nemportus*, famous in old Mythology for the tranſport of the [illegible] with, called *Argo*, wherein *Jaſon* and his Comrades [illegible] 20. and the Golden Fleece: who coming out of *Pontus*, [illegible] ſaid *Euxine* Sea, took their courſe up the *Danow*, ſo into the *Savus*, then into this Town; hence carried their Ship over land into the *Adriatick*, and from thence ſailed into *Greece*, where they firſt began the undertaking. 7. *Goritz*, called anciently *Noreia*, or ſeated in the place where *Noreia* ſtood, is ſituate on the River *Liſonzo*, an *Italian* water, which not far off falleth into the *Adriatick*. A Town of ſo much note, that anciently it was an Earldom, and in the diviſion of the Eſtate of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (to whom it formerly belonged) was given to *Albert* his ſecond Son, with the ſtyle and Title of Earl of *Goritz*; continuing in his Houſe till the year 1500. when, on the death of *Leonard* the laſt Earl hereof, it deſcended upon *Maximilian* the firſt, as next Heir unto it; whoſe Succeſſors, not only in the Eſtates of *Auſtria*, but the Empire alſo, do ſtill retain the Title of Earls of *Goritz* in their uſual Style.

The firſt Inhabitants of both theſe Provinces of *Krain* and *Karnten*, were the *Carni* of *Pliny* and other Ancients, who made them part of *Venetia*, the Tenth Region of *Italy*; but afterwards, in the diſtribution of the *Roman* Provinces, they were caſt into *Noricum*, and made a Member of the Dioceſe of the Weſtern *Illyricum*, but ſubject, or ſubordinate rather, to the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*. From them not only the *Alps* adjoyning had the name of *Carnice*, but theſe two Countries had the names by which now they go. They were united a long time in the perſons of the Dukes of *Karnten*, of whom the firſt mentioned upon good record was *Henry*, Son to *Berchtbold*, a Nobleman of *Bavaria*, in the time of the Emperour *Otho* the third, by him advanced unto this Honour and Eſtate; diſpoſed of in ſucceeding times at the will of the Emperours, and given from one Family unto another, as their fancies ſerved them; not fixed in any Houſe, till it came to *Henry* the Son of *Engelbert*, Preſident or Præfect of *Iſtria*: in which Family it continued under this *Henry*, and his Brother *Engelbert*, *Ulric* the firſt, *Henry* the ſecond, *Herman*, and *Ulric* the ſecond, the laſt Prince hereof, who, by his Marriage with *Agnes*, Siſter and Heir of *Otho* the ſecond, Duke of *Meran*, added that Eſtate to his former Patrimony. But being old, and without Children, he ſold his whole Eſtate to *Ottacar*, King of *Bohemia* and Duke of *Auſtria*; by whom theſe Countries were ſurrendred unto *Rodolphus* of *Habſpurg*, on the concluſion of the Peace which was made between them. And although *Rodolphus* gave *Carinthia* to *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol*, (in right of whoſe Daughter *Elizabeth Albert* of Son of *Rodolph* was poſſeſſed of *Auſtria*;) yet on the death of *Henry* the Son of *Mainard* without Iſſue-male, it fell (according to the Contract) unto *Albert* the Short, younger Son of *Albert*, and Grandchild of *Rodolphus*; continuing ever ſince in that Family, though not always in the chief Houſe of the Dukes of *Auſtria*.

The ſtrange and obſervable Ceremonies with which the Archdukes of *Auſtria* are acknowledged Dukes of *Carin-*

Carinthia take here out of *Munster*. In the Meadows adjoining to the Town of S. *Veit*, a certain Country-man, to whom that office by inheritance belongeth, sitteth on a Marble-stone there being, holding in his right hand a Cow with a black Calf, and in his left hand a Mare as lean as a Rake. Then cometh the new Duke attired in a plain rustick Habit, his Courtiers attending him in their richest Apparel: at whose approach the Country-man above mentioned demandeth, *What is he that so majestically cometh hitherward?* And the people answer, that *it is the future Duke*. He again asketh, *whether he be a just Judge, and one that will maintain the liberty of the Country, and sincerity of the Religion*. The people answer, *He will*. Then he asketh, *by what right he will displace him of his Marble-seat*. To whom the Steward of the new Duke's House replieth, *He shall give thee 60 pence in Silver, the Cattel now standing by thee, the Clothes which he hath at this time on, and thy House shall ever be free from Tax and Tribute*. The fellow upon this taking the Duke by the hand, and bidding him to be a good Prince, giveth him a gentle cuff on the ear, setteth him on the Marble-stone, and taking away the Cattel departeth. This done, the new Duke goeth to S. *Veit*'s Church, and having done his Devotions, putteth off his rustick weeds, and dresseth himself in Clothes befitting a Prince: for such after their Ceremonies he is acknowledged.

The Arms of these Dukes were *Argent*, 3 Lions Leopards *Sable*.

5. *TYROL* is bounded on the East with *Friuli* and *Marca Trevigiana*, by the interposing of which, or some parts thereof, disjoined from *Carniola*; on the West with the *Grisons* and some part of *Switzerland*, on the North with *Bavaria*, and on the South with *Lombardy*. It is extended over the greatest part of the *Alpes Rhæticæ*, and some part of the *Juliæ*; yet intermixt with many rich and fruitful Vallies, those especially which lie on the banks of the *Inn* and the River of *Adise*. Nor are the Hills so void of profit unto the Inhabitants, but that they afford good store of Metalls digged out of them, especially of Brass and Silver; which last have yielded to the Arch-duke 230000 Crowns yearly.

Towns of most note are, 1 *Oenipons*, or *Inspruck*, so called from a Bridg on the *Inn* or *Oenus*, which gave denomination to the second Branch of *Austria*, descended from *Ferdinand* the second Son of the Emperour *Ferdinand*; the House of *Gratz* issuing from *Charles* the third Son of that Emperour. Most memorable for the hasty Flight of *Charles* the 5. upon the news that D. *Maurice*, whom he had lately made Elector of *Saxony*, was coming against him with his Forces, which so terrified him, that he fled away by Torch-light with some of his followers; the residue of his Court, (most of which were persons of great eminency) trudging in the dark on foot, with the black Guard and the Skullery. The Town hath been many times the Residence of the Dukes of *Austria*; who have here a very Royal and magnificent Palace. And, to say truth, the Town deserveth to be so honoured; amongst pleasant Meadows, spacious Corn-fields and shady Mountains sweetly seated: the Houses fairly built of stone, enriched by the Courts of Judicature here settled for all the Country, and provided of a gallant Armory. 2 *Trent*, (*Tridentum* it is called in *Latine*) situate in the Confines of *Germany* and *Italy*; for which cause the Inhabitants speak both Languages: built on the banks of the River *Athesis*, or *Adise*; honoured with an Episcopal See; but made more famous by the Council which was there begun by Pope *Paul* the third, *An.* 1545, against the *Lutherans*. It was for 22 years together before their meeting dashed by one Pope, and animated by another; advanced by *Charles* the fifth upon worldly Policies, and for as wordly Policies retarded by the Court of *Rome*: for 18 years after this first Convention of it, at sundry times assembled, suspended, and dissolved: and finally, when fixed here seriously by Pope *Pius* the fourth, *Anno* 1562, managed with so much art & cunning by the Papal party, that nothing was determin'd among the Prelates but what had been formerly resolved on in the *Roman* Conclave, and certified accordingly by especial Posts; occasioning that most bitter Jest of one of the *Hungarian* Bishops who was present at it, that the *Holy Ghost was sent unto them in a Cloak bag from Rome*. The effects of which Council, so artificially carried on by the strength of wit, I cannot better describe than in the words of the History of it, which are as followeth. "This Council, desired and procured "by godly men, to re-unite the Church which began to be "divided, hath so established the Schism, and made the "parties so obstinate, that the Discords are irreconcilable; "and being managed by Princes for Reformation of Ec-"clesiastical Discipline, hath caused the greatest Defor-"mation that ever was since Christianity did begin; and "hoped for by the Bishops themselves to regain the Epi-"scopal Authority, for the most part usurped by the Pope, "hath made them lose it altogether, bringing them into "greater servitude: on the contrary, feared and avoided "by the See of *Rome*, as a potent means to moderate the "exorbitant power thereof, mounted from small begin-"nings, by divers degrees, to an unlimited excess; it hath "so established and confirmed the same over that part "which remained subject unto it, that it was never so "great nor soundly rooted. So far the words of the History. The next of note is, 3 *Falkenstein*, remarkable for Mines of Brass; as 4 *Hall* upon the *Inn* for Salt-wiches, and 5 *Schwas*, for the richer Mines of Silver. 6 *Malk*, near the head of the River *Athesis*. 7 *Pollen*, upon the borders of *Italy*, by the people thereof called *Bolgiano*, and *Bolsano*. 8 *Tyrol*, an ancient Castle, the first Seat of the Earls or Governours hereof, and giving name for that reason to the Country adjoining. 9 *Meran*, neighbouring the old Castle of *Tyrol*, which gave the Title of Dukes to a Branch of the *Caroline* Race, descended from *Rathboldus*, a base Son of the Emperour *Arnulph*, possessed of many large Estates in these *Alpine* Countries, now appertaining to the Princes of the House of *Austria*. From one of which Dukes, called *Otho* of *Meran*, married to *Beatrix*, Heir of the County of *Burgundy*, the Earls of *Burgundy* (since that time) do derive themselves.

The Earls hereof were at the first no other than Provincial Officers: when made Proprietaries, I am yet to seek. The first of whom we have any certainty was *Mainard*, Earl of *Tyrol* and *Goritz*, who died in the year 1258, leaving his Earldoms to that *Mainard* who by *Rodolphus Habspurgensis* was infeoffed with the Dukedom of *Karnten*. But *Henry* the second Son of this last *Mainard* dying without Issue-male, his Daughter *Margaret* by the consent of all her people, settled her Estate therein on the Sons of *Albert* called the Short; which continues ever since in the House of *Austria*, though sometimes made the Portion and inheritance of the younger Princes. By *Ferdinand* the first it was given in Apennage to his second Son *Ferdinand*, sirnamed of *Inspruck* for that reason, who, by marrying with *Philippina*, a Burger's Daughter of *Augsburg*, so displeased his Brethren, that, to buy his peace of them, and enjoy his own content with her, it was finally agreed upon amongst them all, that *Tyrol* should not descend upon his Children of that *Venter*. In pursuance whereof, after his decease, *Tyrol* fell to the House of *Gratz*; his eldest Son *Charles* being made Marquess of *Burgh*, and *Andrew* his youngest Cardinal of *Brixia*. Who were the old Inhabitants of the *Roman Austria* we have

seen already. The old Inhabitants of the other part are supposed to be the *Quadi*, in that part which lieth next to *Bohemia*; the *Marcomanni*, in those parts which are next *Moravia*: who intermingled with the *Boii*, and united with them into the name of *Boiarians*, won from the *Romans* the whole Province of the Second *Rhætia*, and so much of *Noricum* as lieth betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens*, leaving the rest to the *Avares*, who possessed that and the two *Pannonia's*, extorted also from the *Romans* in the fall of that great and mighty Empire, as we shall shew more fully when we come to our description of *Hungary*.

But these *Boiarians* being conquered by *Clovis* the Great, and the *Avares* driven out of *Pannonia* by *Charlemaigne*, both Provinces became members of the *French* Empire, till the subduing of *Pannonia* by the *Hungarians*. To oppose whom, and keep in peace and safety these remoter parts, some Guardians, or Lords-Marchers, were appointed by the Kings and Emperors of *Germany*, with the Title of *Marquesses* of *Ostreich*, at first officiary only, but at last hereditary; made so by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who gave this Province to one *Leopold*, sirnamed the Illustrious, the Son of *Henry* Earl of *Bamberg*, of the House of *Schwaben*, and therewithall the Title of Marquess, *Anno* 980. This Marquisate was by *Frederick Barbarossa* raised to a Dukedom 1158; *Henry* being the first Duke, whose Nephew *Leopold* took *Richard* the first of *England* prisoner, in his return from *Palestine*; for whose Ransom he had so much money, that with it he bought *Stiermark*, together with the Counties of *Neoburg* and *Lintz*, and walled *Vienna*. His Son *Fredericus*, sirnamed the Warlike, was made King of *Austria* by the Emperour *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1225. Eleven years he continued in this Dignity; at the end of which he was spoiled of his Royal Ornaments by the same hand, for denying his appearance at the Emperour's Summons, unto whom for some Outrages he had been complain'd of. Finally, he died in the year 1246, discomfited and slain in Battel by the King of *Hungary*. Leaving no Issue of his body, this Estate of right should have descended on *Frederick*, Son of *Hermannus*, Marquess of *Baden*, and of *Gertude* his Wife, the Niece of this *Frederick* the Warlike by his Brother *Henry*, who was afterwards beheaded at *Naples* by *Charles* of *Valois*, *Anno* 1268. But *Ottacar*, Son of *Primislaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending to it in the right of *Margaret* his Wife, one of the Sisters of the said *Frederick* the Warlike, by a strong hand possessed himself of the Dukedom of *Austria*, which he increased by the addition of *Carinthia* & *Trevigiana*; all which he held, together with the Kingdom of *Bohemia*, till the year 1278, in which he was vanquished and slain by *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, not long before advanced to the *German* Empire. *Rodolphus* thus possessed of these great Estates, conferred them on *Albertus* his eldest Son, who had then married *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Mainard* Earl of *Tyrol* by *Elizabeth* (or *Agnes*) his Wife, the Daughter of *Gertrude*, and Sister and sole Heir at last of *Frederick*, so cruelly murthered at *Naples*, as before was said. By means of which Marriage and Investiture *Albert* was quietly possessed of the Dukedoms of *Austria*, *Stiermark*, *Carinthia*, *Carniola*, together with *Marca Trevigiana*; to which the Earldom of *Tyrol* and many other fair Estates in *Schwaben* and *Alsatia* were after added. By whom it was first raised to the Title of Archduke is not yet agreed. Some attribute it to *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg*, at the Investiture of his Son *Albert* into these Estates, *Anno* 1298. Other to *Charles* the fourth, advancing to that Honour *Rodolph* the Ingenuous, *Anno* 1360. Some make it to be first given to *Albert* Duke hereof, in the year 1430: and others post it lower to the Marriage of *Philip*, Son of *Maximilian* of *Austria* and of the Lady *Mary* of *Burgundy*, with *Joan* Princess of *Spain*. But by whomsoever given at first, it is now the constant and hereditary Title of all this Family: the successive Princes whereof from the first Investiture follow in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Marquesses, Dukes, Kings, and Arch-dukes of *AUSTRIA*.

926 1. *Leopold* of *Bamberg*, the first Marquess.
988 2. *Henry*, Son of *Leopold*.
1014 3. *Albert*, Son of *Henry*, sirnamed the Victorious.
1056 4. *Ernestus*, Son of *Albert*.
1075 5. *Leopold* II. Son of *Ernest*, a Companion of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*.
1096 6. *Leopold* III. Son of the second, Founder of the Abby of *Neuburg*.
1116 7. *Leopold* IV. Son of the third, by his Half-brother *Conrade* the third, then Emperor of the *Germans*, made Duke of *Bavaria*.
1141 8. *Henry* II. Brother of *Leopold*, Marquess of *Austria* and Duke of *Bavaria*, made the first Duke of *Austria* by *Frederick Barbarossa*, *Anno* 1158, the whole Country betwixt the *Inn* and the *Ens* being added by the said Emperor unto his Estate, on his relinquishing of *Bavaria* to the Duke of *Saxony*.
1173 9. *Ludovick*, Son of *Henry*, built *Ens* and *Newstat*; of great note in the Wars of the *Holy Land*.
1193 10. *Leopold* V. Son of *Ludovick*, the irreconcilable enemy of our *Richard* the first, taken prisoner by him in his passage homewards, and put unto a grievous Ransom, the Dukedom of *Stiermark* being purchased with a part thereof.
1230 11. *Frederick* the Warlike, Son of *Leopold* the 5. made King of *Austria* by the Emperor *Frederick* the second; the last of the Male-issue of the House of *Bamberg*.
1246 12. *Ottacar*, Son of *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, pretending the right of *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *Frederick*, possessed himself of this Estate, adding thereto the Countries of *Carinthia* and *Carniola*, which he bought of *Ulrick* the last Prince thereof; but was dispossessed of all by *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*.
1283 13. *Albert* II. Son of *Rodolph* of *Habspurg*, by his Father made Duke of *Austria*, married *Elizabeth*, the lineal and direct Heir of *Gertrude*, one of the Nieces and (on the death of that *Frederick* who was slain at *Naples*) the next Heir of *Frederick* King and Duke of *Austria*; after his Father's death chosen Emperor also.
1308 14. *Rodolph* the Ingenuous, his other Brother sharing with him in the Estate.
1315 15. *Albert*, sirnamed the Short, the youngest and surviving Brother of *Rodolph*, succeeded in the whole Estate; a great advancer of this House.
1358 16. *Albert* IV. Son of *Albert* the Short.
1365 17. *Albert* V. Son of *Albert* the fourth.
1404 18. *Albert* VI. Son of *Albert* the fifth, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Sigismund* the King thereof.
1439 19. *Ladislaus*, Son of *Albert* & *Elizabeth*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Austria*.

1457

1457 20. *Frederick* II. on the death of *Ladislaus* without Issue, succeeded into the Dukedom of *Austria*, as the direct Heir of *Leopold* the 6. one of the younger Sons of *Albert* the Short; chosen also Emperor.

1493 21. *Maximilian*, Son of *Frederick*, enriched his House with the Marriage of the Heir of *Burgundy*.

1519 22. *Ferdinand*, Granchild to *Maximilian* by his Son *Philip* King of *Spain* & Archduke of *Austria*, succeeded his Grandfather in this Dukedom, King of *Hungary*, *Bohemia*, and Emperor of *Germany*.

1565 23. *Maximilian* II. Son of *Ferdinand*.

1577 24. *Rodolphus* III. Son of *Maximilian* the 2.

1612 25. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*.

1619 26. *Ferdinand* II. surnamed of *Gratz*, Son of *Charles* Duke of *Austria*, of the House of *Gratz*, the youngest Son of *Ferdinand* the 1. (the numerous Off spring of *Maximilian* the second being all dead without Issue) succeeded in the Estates of *Austria*, chosen Emperour also, King of *Hungary*, and *Bohemia*, &c.

27. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the second, now living, *Anno* 1648, Archduke of *Austria*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, and Emperor of the *Germans*.

The Arms of these Earls when distinct from the House of *Austria* were *Argent*, an Eagle *Sable*, membred *Or*.

Thus have wee seen by what means and under what Princes all these Provinces, belonging unto several Lords, became united and incorporated into one Estate. Besides which, there was added to it by *Rodolph* of *Habspurg* all the *Upper Elsass*, the Castle and Territory of *Habspurg* it self, with many fair Estates amongst the *Switzers*; by *Albert* the Short, the Country of *Sangow*; and by his Sons, the Advocateship of *Friburg*, or the Country of *Brisgow*. So that these Princes are undoubtedly the greatest for Power & Patrimony of any in *Germany*, and would be of a great Revenue, if the ill neighbourhood of the *Turks* did not put them to continual Charges, and make the Borders of the Country to be thinly planted, and not very throughly manured. Howsoever, it is thought that they may yield yearly two millions of Crowns and upwards to the Archduke's Coffers.

The Arms of these Princes are *Gules*, a Fess *Argent*; assumed by Marquess *Leopold* at the Siege of *Acon* or *Ptolomais* in the *Holy Land*, because his whole Armour being covered with blood, his Belt only remained white. The Arms thereof in former times having been six Larks *Or*, in a Field *Azure*; supposed to have been taken by the first Marquesses, because they possessed those six Provinces, for defence of which the Tenth Legion, called *Alauda*, had been fixed at *Vienna*.

And now we are to take our leave of the *Roman* Empire, which we shall meet withal no more till we come to *Hungary*; the Countries on the North side of *Danubus* and the East side of the *Rhene* being almost as soon abandoned as conquered by them. So that in our survey of these Northern Countries we are not like to find such matter of Antiquity as we have before, but must content our selves both with Towns and Villages of a later date, and a lesser continuance. In which we shall begin with those Countries which lie on the other side of the *Rhene*, bordering on the Estates of *Cleveland* and the Bishops-Electors; and so proceed on Eastward till we come to the farthest parts of *Germany*, and the Confines of *Hungary*; afterwards turning to the North, till we meet with *Denmark*, which is next of all to be considered.

9. *VETERAVIA.*

VETERAVIA, or *WETERAW*, is bounded on the West with the Bishoprick of *Colen*, on the East with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Hassia* and *Westphalen*, and on the South with the Lower *Palatinate*. It containeth a Combination of many small Estates, which being joined in a common League for defence of each other in the preservation of their Laws, Liberties and Religion, are called *the Confederation of the Weteraw*. The principal of the States which are thus confederated are the Earls of 1 *Nassau*, 2 *Hanaw*, and 3 *Solms*, 4 the Lord of *Lichteberg*, and the Imperial Cities of 5 *Friberg*, and 6 *Wetzelaer*.

The County of *NASSAU* (for Fruitfulness of Soil and Delightsomness of situation not inferiour to most parts of *France*) lieth at the foot of the Mountains which divide *Hassia* from *Engern* and *Westphalen*, anciently called *Melibocus*; a branch of the long ridge of Mountains which were called *Abnobi*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1 *Nassau*, situate on the South-side of the River *Lon*, not far from the fall of it into the *Rhene*; the first Seat and honourary Title of this famous Family, and still in the possession of the Princes of *Orange*, the first branch hereof. 2 *Dillenburg*, the usual Seat of the Earls of *Nassau* before their settling in the *Low Countries*; whence they are named the Earls of *Nassau* of the House of *Dillenburg*, to difference them from others of the same Family. 2 *Catzenelbogen*, which gives the Title of an Earl to the owners of it; in *Latine Catti Meliboci*, which shews the name to be compounded of the *Catti*, anciently possessed of these parts of *Germany*, and the mountainous parts of *Melibocus*, then inhabited by them. The possession of this Town is much controverted between the Earls of *Nassau* and the Lantgraves of *Hassia*. Concerning which we are to know, that *Henry*, the second Son of *Lewis* Lantgrave of *Hassia* surnamed the Mild, married with *Anne*, Daughter and Heir of *Philip* the last Lord hereof, and by her had a Son called *William*, who died without Issue, and a Daughter named *Elizabeth*, married to *John* the third of *Nassau*, to whom she brought *Henry* and *William* Earls of *Nassau*. *Elizabeth*, on the death of her Brother *William* laid claim to the Estate, as the next Heir to him; followed in the pursuit thereof by *William* Count of *Nassau*, her surviving Son. Against which, *William* the 2. of *Hassia* did alledge a grant or donation of it from his Cousin *William*, the Brother of *Elizabeth*, as before is said, and having possession of the Town, and the members of it, was made thereby the better able to defend his Title. But at the last it was surrendred by Count *William* of *Nassau*, (Father of *William* Prince of *Orange*) unto *Philip* the Lantgrave, in the time of *Charles* the fifth, for the sum of 600000 Crowns: the House of *Nassau* notwithstanding retaining it amongst their Titles. 3 *Herborn*, a small University, or *Schola illustris*, founded of late by the Earls of *Nassau*; in which *Piscator* was Divinity-Reader, and *Alstedius* (both famous in their times) Professor for the Arts and Sciences. 4 *Idstein*, lying South to *Catzenelbogen*; and 5 *Wisbad*, directly South of *Idstein*, betwixt that and the *Maine*: these being the Title and Possessions of the second Branch of this Family. 6 *Weilburg*, on the *Lon*, not far from *Wetzelaer*; which gives Title to the third Branch of this House, called the Earls of *Nassau* in *Sarbruck* and *Weilbrug*.

As for the Princes of the House of *Nassau*, they are very ancient; *Otho* of *Nassau* being made Earl of *Gelderland* in the year 1079. Another *Otho* of this House, but proceeding from a different Branch of it, died *An.* 1190, the Founder of the present Family of the Princes of *Orange*,

Orange, and of the House *Wisbad* and *Idstein*; out of which descended *Adolphus* Earl of *Nassau*, chosen Emperor in the year 1292. By the Marriage of *Engelbert*, the seventh Earl of this House of *Dillenburg*, with *Mary* Daughter of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, they came first to be possessed of Estates in the *Netherlands*: and by the Marriage of *Henry*, great Grand-child of this *Engelbert*, with *Claude* of *Chalons*, they got the Principality of *Orange* in *France*. A Family as much honoured for the personal Merit of the Princes of it as any other in *Europe*; of some of which although we have already given a Catalogue, (in the description and story of *Provence*) as Princes of *Orange*, yet take here the whole Succession of them as

The Counts of *NASSAU*.

1. *Otho*, the Son of *Henry*, and Nephew of *Waleran*, the first Earl of *Nassau* of this Line.

1190 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Otho*, who added *Dillenburg*, *Wisbad* and *Idstein*, unto his Estate; Grandfather, by *Waldradus* his 2. Son, to *Adolphus* the Emperour.

3. *Otho* II. Son of *Henry*.

4. *Henry* II. Son of *Otho* the 2.

5. *Otho* III. Son of *Henry* the 2.

6. *John*, Son of *Otho* the 3.

1362 7. *Engelbert*, the Son of *John* by *Mary* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Philip*, Lord of *Breda* in *Brabant*, added that Town, with many other fair Estates in the *Netherlands*, to his former Patrimony.

8. *John* II. Son of *Engelbert*, Earl of *Nassau*, and Lord of *Breda*, &c.

1475 9. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.

1516 10. *Henry* III. Son of *John* the 3. Knight of the Golden Fleece, married *Claude* of *Chalons*, Sister of *Philibert* Prince of *Orange*.

1536. 11. *Rene*, Son of *Henry* the 3. and of *Claude* of *Chalons*, Successour to his Uncle *Philibert* in the Principality of *Orange*, *Anno* 1530, and to his Father in the Earldom of *Nassau*, *Anno* 1536.

1544 12. *William*, the Son of *John* the 3. by *Elizabeth* his Wife, Daughter of *Henry* Lantgrave of *Hassia*, and of *Anne* Daughter and Heir of *Philip* Earl of *Catzenelbogen*, reformed the Religion in this Country according to the *Lutheran* Doctrines.

1559 13. *William* II. Son of *William* the first, succeeded Prince of *Orange* by the Will of *Rene* his Cousin-german, *An.* 1544, and Earl of *Nassau* by the death of his Father, *Anno* 1559. What else concerns this Prince, we have had before. I only add, that *William* the first, besides this *William*, had three other Sons: that is to say, Count *John*, the Father of *William* of *Nassau* Governour of *West Friesland*; Count *Ludowick*, of great renown in the first Wars of the *Netherlands*, in the course whereof he lost his life, *Anno* 1574; and Count *Adolphus*, slain in the same Wars also, *Anno* 1568.

1584 14. *Philip*, eldest Son of *William* the second and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter and Heir of *Maximilian* of *Egmond*, Earl of *Buren*, succeeded Earl of *Buren* on the death of his Mother, *An.* 1551, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau* by the death of his Father.

15. *Maurice*, Son of *William* the 2. and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Maurice* Duke-Elector of *Saxony*, Prince of *Orange* and Count of *Nassau*: at the age of 10 years made General of all the Forces of the *United Netherlands*, which place he managed for the space of 37 years with great both courage and success.

1625 16. *Henry* IV. Brother of *Maurice*, (but by another *Venter*, the Daughter of *Gasper Coligny*, Admiral of *France*) Count of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and General of the Forces of the *States* United.

1648 17. *William* III. Son of *Henry* the 4. Successor to his Father in all his Honours and Commands. A Prince of great hopes and expectations.

The Arms of the Earls of *Nassau* are quarterly, 1 *Azure*, a Lion *Or*, Armed *Gules*; 2 *Or*, a Lion-Leopard *Gules*, Armed and Crowned *Azure*; 3 *Gules*, a Fess *Argent*; and 4 *Gules*, two Leopards *Or*, Armed and Membred of the first.

Bordering on *Franconia* or *Frankenland* lieth the County of *HANAW*, so called from the chief Town of it: in which the places of most note are, 1 *Hanaw* it self, in *Latine* called *Hanovia*, honoured with a *Schola illustris* also, and much enriched by the trade of Printing, with which they use to furnish annually the Marts of *Francford*, distant from hence about ten *Dutch* miles. 2 *Pfaffenhofen*, of no note formerly, but like to be remembred in the Stories of succeeding times, for the great Defeat there given to the Duke of *Lorrain*, *July* 31. 1633. who lost his whole Forces, all his Ordnance, Ammunition and Baggage, and, which was worst of all, his Country; taken in part from him by the conquering *Swedes*, who followed him close unto his home; but wholly by the *French* King upon that advantage. 3 *Lichteberg*, which gives Title to a second Branch of the House of *Hanaw*, called the Lord of *Lichteberg*. A Family of good esteem, since the time that *Otho* of *Hanaw* was ennobled with the Title of Earl thereof, which was about the year 1392. Before that, Princes of the Empire; and after that advanced unto great Fortunes, by the addition of the Barony of *Mintzeberg* in the person of *Philip* the first Earl; of the County of *Rheinick*, in the person of another *Philip*, the third of that name, great Grandchild of the former *Philip*; and, finally, of the Lordship and Estate of *Lichteberg*, accrewing to this House by the Marriage of a third *Philip*, the youngest Son of *Reinard* the third Earl hereof, with *Anne* the Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* Lord of *Lichteberg*; the Title and possession of the second Branch of the House of *Hanaw*, called Lords of *Lichteberg* and *Hoschenstein*, and Earls of *Bitsch*: this last being an Estate in *Lorrain* accrewing to them by the Marriage of a fourth *Philip*, (the fifth in name and order of the House of *Lichteberg*) with *Margaret* sole Daughter and Heir of *Ludovick* the last Earl thereof.

Betwixt the Counties of *Nassau* and *Hanaw*, on both sides of the River *Lon*, lies the Earldom of *SOLMS*; the first Earl whereof (of whom there is any good *Constat*) was *Henry*, honoured with this Title, *Anno* 1220. But being I find them in the Catalogue of the Counts Imperial, made before that time, I must conclude them to be ancienter than the date aforesaid; though that be sufficient to ennoble a far greater Family. By the Marriage of *Conrade*, the ninth from *Henry*, first with *Elizabeth*, one of the Daughters of *William* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, and after with the Widow of the Earl of *Egmond*, they came to be of such authority amongst the *Netherlands*, as to be privileged with a place and Suffrage in the Council of the States General: there settled at the present in their greatest honour, especially since the Marri-

age

age of *Henry* of *Nassau*, Prince of *Orange*, with a Daughter of Earl *Conrade* by his second Wife, the Mother of *William* of *Nassau*, now Prince of *Orange*, and Husband to the Princess *Mary*, the eldest Daughter of Great *Britain*. But besides their Estates there, they are possessed in this Tract of 1. *Braunfelez*, which gives Title to the first Branch of the House of *Solms*; 2. *Cronenberg*, the possession of the second Branch of this Family; and 3. *Solms*, on the North-side of the *Lon*, the Root of both.

Of the Imperial Cities in this Confederation, the first is *Friburg*, called for distinction sake *Friburg in Weteraw*, to difference it from another Town of that name in *Brisgow*; situate in the middle of delicious and most fruitfull fields, and memorable for the stout resistance which it made to *Adolphus* of *Nassau*, at that time Emperour; who, when he could not get it by force or famine, obtained it by fraud, and put to death no less than 40 of the chief Nobility, whom he found in the Castle. So hated he was for that bloudy fact, that he was shortly after deprived of the Empire, and slain in fight by *Albert* of *Austria*, his Competitor. The second of the two is *Wetzelaer*, seated on the *Lon*, where it meets with the *Dille*, which rising near *Dillenburg*, a Town of the Earl of *Nassau*'s, doth here lose its name into the greater. A Town Imperial, confederate with *Friburg* and the Princes before mentioned, for maintaining their common Liberties, and the Religion publickly professed amongst them, being that of the Reformed Churches of *Calvin*'s Platform.

10. *FRANCONIA.*

FRANCONIA, or *FRANKENLAND*, is bounded on the East with the Upper *Palatinate* and part of *Voitland*, on the West with the Confederates of *Weteraw* and part of the *Rhene*, on the North with *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, on the South with the *Palatinate* of the *Rhene* and some part of *Schwaben*. So called from the *French*, *Franci*, or *Francones*, in whose possession it was when they were first known unto the *Romans*; the Residence of their Dukes or Princes in this noble Province appropriating the name unto it. Called also *Francia Orientalis*, to difference it from the Realm of *France*, which lay more towards the West. At that time of a larger extent than it is at the present, comprehending so much of the Lower *Palatinate* as lieth on the same side of the *Rhene*; since subdued from it, and made a Province of it self in these later Ages.

The Country, on the out-parts overgrown wholly in a manner with Woods and Forests, and environed almost with Mountains, part of the old *Hercynian* Wolds, is within pleasant, plain and fruitful, sufficiently plentifull both of Corn and Wines, but abundantly well stored with Rape and Lycoras, and yielding good Pasture for Cattel. So that we compare it to a fine piece of Cloth, wrought about with a coorse List; or an excellent fine piece of Lawn, with a Canvass Selvage.

Chief Rivers of it are, 1. The *Maine*, or *Mænus*, which, running through the midst of it, is received into the *Rhene* below *Francfort*. 2. The *Sala*, whence the adjoyning *French* had the name of *Salii*, and *Conrade*, Emperour of the *Germans*, the sirname of *Salicus*. 3. *Radiantia*. 4. *Sinus*. 5. *Tubero*. 6. *Altus*, &c.

The people of it are ingenious, patient of labour, strong of body, and very industrious, not suffering any to be idle that can earn his living, of what sort soever. The offspring of the ancient *French*, who, having over-mastered *Gaul* and the parts adjoining, left here the seminary of their strength, and a stock of their ancient Princes; *Marcomir*, Brother of *Pharamond* the first King of the *French*, governing in these parts as Duke, and leaving the Estate and Title unto his Posterity. The Catalogue of which Princes take in order thus.

The Princes of the *FRANKS*, and Dukes of *FRANCONIA*, of the old *French* Race.

A. Ch.

926 1. *Genebaldus*, the Son of *Dagobert*, descended from the old Regal stock of the *Sicambri*, united with other *Dutch* Nations about 60 or 70 years before, in the name of *Franks*, having subdued those parts which lay towards the River *Mænus*, became the first Prince of the Eastern *Franks*, or Lord of *Francia Orientalis*.

356 2. *Dagobert*, the Son of *Genebaldus*, who added the District of *Triers* unto his Estates.

377 3. *Clodoveus*, or *Ludovicus*, the Son of *Dagobert*.

398 4. *Marcomir*, the Son of *Clodoveus*, who extended his Dominion Eastwards towards *Bavaria* and *Bohemia*.

402 5. *Pharamond*, or *Waramond*, the Son of *Marcomir*, the first of this Line which took upon himself the Title of King of the *French*: on the assuming whereof (aiming at matters of more importance) he left *Franconia*, or *East-France*, with the Title of Duke, to his Brother *Marcomir*.

419 6. *Marcomir*, the Brother of *Pharamond*.

423 7. *Prunmesser*, by some called *Priamus*, the Son of *Marcomir*.

435 8. *Genebaldus* II. the Son of *Prunmesser*.

455 9. *Sunno*, the Son of *Genebald* the second.

478 10. *Clodomirus*, or *Lutiomarus*, the Son of *Sunno*.

515 11. *Hygobaldus*, the Son of *Clodomir*, who became a Christian, and added *Wormes* and *Mentz* unto his Estates.

541 12. *Helenus*, by some called *Hermericus*, a Christian also, who, passing over the *Rhene*, subdued that Tract bordering betwixt *Triers* and *Lorrain*, which the *Dutch* call *West-reich*.

571 13. *Gotofridus*, the Son of *Helenus*, a Christian also, but not able to perswade his people to the same belief.

595 14. *Genebaldus* III. the Son of *Gotofride*.

615 15. *Clodomir* II. the Son of *Genebald* the third.

638 16. *Heribert*, the Nephew of *Clodomir* the second.

668 17. *Clodoveus*, or *Clovis* II. the Cousin-german of *Heribert*.

680 18. *Gosbertus* II. the Son of *Clovis* the second.

706 19. *Gosbertus* II. the Son of *Gosbert* the first.

720 20. *Hetanus*, the Son of *Gosbert* the second, the last Duke of *Franconia* of this Line. He dying without Issue-male, *Anno* 740. bequeathed it at his death to *Pepin*, who afterwards was King of *France*, Father of *Charles* the Great, according to a former Contract made between those Princes. And *Charles* no sooner had it in his possession, but he bestowed the greatest part of it on *Burchard*, the first Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, *Anno* 752, made Bishop of that City by *Boniface*, Archbishop of *Mentz*, (the first Apostle of this People) but a year before. The Bishops of *Wurtzburg* by this Grant were possessed hereof as long as any of the House of *Charles* the Great did possess the Empire. But his po-

sterity failing in the person of *Conrade*, *Anno* 910. *Otho* the first (who next but one succeeded *Conrade*) invested *Conrade*, Husband to *Luitgardis* his Daughter, with this Country, giving him withal the Title of Duke of *Franconia*. Four Princes of this House possessed it; that is to say, this *Conrade*, sirnamed *Salicus*; and after him three *Henries*, Father, Son, and Nephew, successively enjoying the Imperial Dignity, by the names of *Henry* the third, fourth, and fifth. This *Henry*, the last Prince of the male Line of *Conrade*, dying without Issue, *Franconia* fell to *Frederick Barbarossa*, Duke of *Schwaben*, as next Heir to *Henry*, by the Lady *Agnes* his Sister, married to *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Schwaben*, the Grandfather of *Barbarossa*. But that House being also extinct in the person of *Conradine*, Anno 1268. and no one Heir pretending to the Rights thereof, the Bishop of *Wurtzburg* challenged it on the former Grants; content to let some great ones have a part of the spoil, that he and his Successors might enjoy the rest. By means whereof it came to be divided betwixt the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*, *Bamberg*, *Mentz*, the Elector *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, (for anciently so much of the *Palatinate* and the Bishoprick of *Mentz* as lay on the *Dutch* side of the *Rhene* were but parts of *Frankenland*) the Marquess of *Onoldsbach*, the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, *Hennenberg*, and *Hohenloe*, and as many of the Free or Imperial Cities as are seated in it. Thus every one did gather sticks when the great Oak fell: the Title of the Duke of *Franconia* remaining notwithstanding to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg*.

1. *WURTZBURG*, the Metropolis of *Franconia*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop, who is Titular Duke hereof, is situate on the *Maine* or *Mœnus*, in a pleasant Plain environed with Meadows, Gardens, and fruitful Mountains; and very well fenced with Walls, Trenches, Bulwarks, and other Arts of modern Fortification; well peopled, and for the most part handsomely and neatly built. Passing over the Bridge built of Free-stone on many large and spacious Arches, you come unto a fair and pompous (though ancient) Castle the ordinary dwelling of the Bishop; and yet so strong, that the many vain attempts of the Boors and Citizens, apt to pick quarrels with their Prince, made it thought impregnable, to which the situation of it on the top of an Hill added some advantage: but it proved otherwise when belieged by the King of *Sweden*, Anno 1631. who after a short, but stout, resistence took it by assault. Other Towns of most note which belong to the Bishops of *Wurtzburg* are, 2. *Forcheim*, where it is said that *Pontius Pilate* was born. 3. *Gemund*, at the meeting of the *Maine* and the *Saltza*, or *Sala*. 4. *Bretta*, upon the *Saltza* or *Sala*, not far from *Gemund*; remarkable enough, if for nothing else, for being the Birth-place of *Melanchthon* that renowned Scholar, the Phœnix of *Germany*, as some call him, and that not unfitly. 5. *Cronach*. 6. *Staffelstein*. 7. *Hockstadt*; of which little memorable.

But to return unto the Bishop as chief Lord of all. He is called in the refined *Latine* of these times *Herbipolitanus*, but commonly *Wurtziburgensis*; differing in sound, but not in sense: for *Wurtzburg* is no other than a *Town of Worts*, situate among Plants and Gardens, as before is said; and *Herbipolis*, made up out of several languages, doth signifie no more than a *City of Herbs*. By whom the Episcopal See was here first erected, and how the Bishops hereof came to be entituled unto their Estates, hath been shewn already. The manner how the new Bishop is admitted, and the old interred, may be worth our knowledge. On the decease of the former Bishop, the Lord Elect, attended with a great train of horse, is to make his entrance. As soon as he comes within the Gates, he alights off his horse, and putteth off his Robes, and being attired in a poor and despicable Habit, begirt about with a Rope, bare-headed also and bare-footed, he is conducted by the Earls of *Hennenberg*, *Castel*, *Werthaim*, and *Rheineck*, to *S. Saviour's* Church, being his Cathedral. The Dean and Canons there meeting him, ask him what he would have: to which he modestly replyeth, that, though unworthily, he is come to discharge the Office unto which he is called. Then the Dean thus, *I admit thee in the name of this Chapter, committing to thy care this Church of* Saint Saviour's, *and the Dukedom thereunto belonging, in the name of the Father, Son, and Holy Ghost.* Which done, he putteth on his Episcopal Habit, sayeth Mass, and from thence passeth to the Castle, where he gives entertainment to all the Company. The living Bishop thus invested, proceed we next unto the Burial of the dead: whose Body being imbowelled, is kept in the Chappel of his Castle; his Heart preserved in a vessel of Glass. The next day he is carried to the Monastery of *Saint James*, holding a Crosier-Staffe in his right hand, and a Sword in his left; buried with them the next day after in the Church of *S. Saviour*. As for the Revenues of the Bishop, they must needs be great; the Bishop hereof in the time of *Charles* the fifth compounding for his peace with *Albert*, Marquess of *Brandenburg*, at the price of 220000 Crowns in ready money, and entring into a Bond to pay all his Debts, which amounted to 350000 Crowns more. By which we may partly guess at the richness of his Exchequer, and partly at the greatness of his Estate.

2. The second great Lord of *Franconie* is the Bishop of *BAMBERG*, a City seated on the *Maine*, not far from *Wurtzburg*, the little River *Rednitz* falling there into it: supposed by *Mercator* to be the *Branionarium* of *Ptolemy*, and to have took this new name from the Hill *Baba* (so called from *Babi*, Daughter of *Otho* Duke of *Saxony*, and Wife of *Albert* once Earl hereof) upon which it is situate, the right name being *Babenberg*, (remember that *Berg* in *Dutch* signifieth an Hill) and contractedly *Bamberg*. A City delectably seated amongst Mountains and pleasant Gardens, and in a soil exceeding fruitful of all necessaries, and yielding Lycoras in great plenty: the Birth-place of *Joachimus Camerarius*, one of the great Lights of *Germany*; and a See Episcopal, the Bishop of which is exempt from the power of the Metropolitan, subject immediately to the Pope, and Lord of many fair Towns and Territories in this Country; but much diminished since the time of *Charles* the fifth: the Bishop thereof then being given to Marquess *Albert*, above mentioned, for a Cessation from Arms, *An.* 1530. no less than 60 of his Lordships, (most of which fall unto the share of the Marquess of *Onoldsbach*) besides the Tutelage or Guardianship of his Wards and Clients. Of those which are remaining in the hands of the Bishops the principal are, 1. *Bragingliae*. 2. *Schleistat*.

3. The third great Lord to be considered is the Marquess of *ONOLDSBACH*, or *Onsbach*, who is Master of no small part of this Country; but his Estate (as those of the other *German* Princes) confused and intermixed with his Neighbours. His chief Towns. 1. *Onoldsbach*, or *Onsbach*, the usual Residence of these Marquesses, and the Birth-place of most of their Children. 2. *Hailbrun*, on the edge of *Wirtenberg*, walled in about the year 1085, and honoured with some publick Schools there founded by Marquess *George-Frederick*, *Anno* 1482. 3. *Pleinfeit*, not far from *Nurenberg*. Such places as they hold in *Voitland*, we shall meet with there.

These Marquesses are of the puissant Family of *Brandenburg*, by whom this fair Estate was wrested from the female Heirs of *Wolframius*, the last Lord hereof. The

first

first who did enjoy this Estate and Title was Marquess *George-Frederick*, the Son of *Albert* Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*, called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, the Father of *Albert* the first Duke of *Prussia*, and of *George* the first Marquess of *Jagerndorff*, and the Grandfather of that Marquess *Albert* who in the days of *Charles* the fifth so haraſſed this Country. But his Male-issue by *Casimir* his eldest son failing in that *Albert*, *Anno* 1557 it returned to the Electoral House; and by *Sigismund*, a late Elector, was given to *Joachim-Ernestus*, one of his younger Brethren, who by the Princes of the Union for defence of the *Palatine* was made chief Commander of their Forces *Anno* 1620. A charge in which it was supposed that he carried himself neither so faithfully nor so valiantly as he should have done; being much condemned for suffering *Spinola* with his Army to pass by unfought with, when he had all advantages that could be wished for to impede his march: the greatest part of the *Palatinate* being lost immediately upon that Neglect, and by degrees the rest of the United Princes either taken off from their Engagement, or ruined for adhering to it with too great a constancy. To him succeeded his Son *Christian*, now possessed hereof.

As for the other secular Princes which have any considerable Estates in this Country, they are the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Hohenloe*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, *Werthaim*, *Horpack* and *Swartzenburg*, together with the Lords of *Limburg* and *Rheichinberg*; all of them named so from the chief Town of their Estates, and all those Towns enriched with some suitable Territory. Of these the Earls of *Henneberg*, *Rheineck*, *Castel*, and *Werthaim*, are Homagers to the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and are to do him service at his Inthronization: the Earldom of *Rheineck* being now united to that of *Hanaw*, as was shewn before; and that of *Henneberg* most famous, in that one of the Earls hereof was Father of that incredible increase of Children (as many as there be days in the year) produced at one birth by the Lady *Margaret* his Wife, Sister of *William* Earl of *Holland*, and King of the *Romans*. A Family of as great Antiquity as most in *Germany*, fetching their Pedigree as high as to *Charles* the Great, without help of the Heralds. But they of greatest power and Parentage amongst them are the Earls of *Swartzenburg*, deriving themselves from one *Wittikindus*, of the House of *Saxony*, who fighting for his Country against the *French*, *Anno* 779, was taken Prisoner, carried into *France*, and there baptized, at the perswasion of *Lewis* the Godly, Son of *Charles* the Great. *Wittikindus*, his Son and Successor, being baptized, at the same time also by the name of *Charles*, was the first Earl of *Swartzenburg*, a Castle of his own building on the edge of *Thuringia*, *An.* 796, whose posterity do still hold the same, but much improved in their Estates by Marriages and other accruments. A race of Princes which have yielded many of great influence in the affairs of *Germany*: amongst them *Gunther* Earl of *Swartzenburg*, elected Emperour of the *Romans* against *Charles* the fourth, by *Rodolph* Elector *Palatine*, *Ericus* Duke of *Saxony*, *Ludovick* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and *Henry* Archbishop of *Mentz*. By which last he was solemnly inaugurated at *Aken* (or *Aquisgrane*) *Anno* 1349. But being unworthily poisoned by his Competitor, though he died not of it, yet he was made so weak and unfit for action, that he was forced to surrender his pretensions to his mortal enemy; receiving in compensation for his charges 22000 marks in Silver, and some Towns in *Thuringia*.

Of the Imperial Cities, which share amongst them the remainders of *Frankenland*, the principal are, 1. *Francford* on the *Maine*, so called from its situation on the River *Maine*, to difference it from *Francford* in the Country of *Brandenburg*. It is divided by the River into two parts, joined together by a Bridg of Stone: the lesser part, situate on the right-hand shore of the River, being called *Saxen hausen*; the greater part, properly called *Francford*, seated on the other. Both are under one Magistrate, and both together make up a fair, rich, populous, and well traded Town; of great both riches and repute by reason of the famous Marts here held in the midst of *Lent* and *September* yearly, and the Election of the Emperour or King of the *Romans*, as occasion is. The City is of a round form, compassed with a double Wall, beautified with some Walks without the Town on the banks of the River, amongst Vineyards, Meadows, and sweet Groves: called thus as some say, from *Francus* the Son of *Marcomir*, supposed to be the Founder of it; or *à Francorum vado*, as the *Foord* of the *Franks*, before the building of the Bridge. 2. *Schweinfurt*, on the *Maine* also, in a fruitful soil. 3. *Rotenburg*, on the River *Tauber*. 4. *Winsheim*. Here is also the Town of 5. *Coburg*, which belongeth to the House of *Saxony*, and gives Title to some of the younger Princes of it, called from hence Dukes of *Saxon Coburg*. And hereto may be added 6. the fair City of *Nurenberg*, conceived by most to be within the Upper *Palatinate*; but by the Emperour *Maximilian* made a member of the Circle of *Franconia*, in regard most of the Estates and Possessions of it lie within this Country. Of which indeed they have so plentiful a share, that when *Maurice* Elector of *Saxony* and his Confederates had driven *Charles* the fifth out of *Germany*, Marquess *Albert*, before mentioned, (whose Sword was his best Revenue) picking a quarrel with this City, burnt no less than an hundred Villages belonging to it, seventy Mannors and Farmhouses appertaining to the wealthier Citizens, 3000 Acres of their Woods; and after all this havock made of their Estate, compelled them to compound with him for 200000 Crowns in Money, and six pieces of Ordnance. But being the City it self seems rather to belong to the other *Palatinate*, we shall there meet with it.

Amongst these Prelates, Princes, and Imperial Cities is the great Dukedom of *Franconia* at this time divided; the Title still remaining in the Bishop of *Wurtzburg*, and some part of the Country: but both the Country and the Title of Duke of *Franconia* not long since otherwise disposed of. For the *Swedes* having taken *Wurtzburg Anno* 1631, as before is said, together with the City of *Bamberg*, and all the Towns and Territories appertaining to them, conferred them upon *Bernard* Duke of *Saxon-Weymer*, with the style and Title of Duke of *Franconia*. He was inaugurated therein in the Cathedral Church of *Wurtzburg*, *July* 19. 1633, the Nobility and Gentry of the Country doing Homage to him, and all the Magistrates and Officers of the several Cities taking the Oaths of Allegiance; the new Duke also making Oath, that he would carefully maintain them in their Rights and Privileges. In the Solemnities of which day, the first great Gun discharged in the way of triumph broke in the going off, without any hurt done, but the wounding of one Souldier only. An Omen that all this solemn Act would prove but a Pageant, and break in pieces at the first giving fire unto it. And so accordingly it did: the Victory at *Norlingen*, which followed not long after this, putting the Bishops once more into their possessions, and leaving nothing to the new Duke but an hungry Title. And therefore leaving both the old and new titular Dukes, we will here add the Catalogue of those who were Dukes indeed, and had, together with the Title, the full Possession of the Country.

Dukes of *FRANCONIA* of the *Dutch* or *German* Race.

974 1. *Conradus*, ſirnamed *Salicus*, created Duke of *Franconia* by *Otho* the firſt, whoſe Daughter *Luitgardis* he had married: after the death of *Henry* the ſecond elected Emperour, by the name of *Conrade* the ſecond, *Anno* 1025.

1040 2. *Henry*, the Son of *Conrade*, Duke of *Franconia* and Emperour, by the name of *Henry* the third.

1056 3. *Henry* II. of *Franconia*, and IV. of the Empire.

1106 4. *Henry* III. of *Franconia*, and V. of the Empire.

1125 5. *Frederick* II. (ſirnamed *Barbaroſſa*) Duke of *Schwaben*, Nephew of *Frederick* the Ancient, Duke of *Suevia*, and of *Agnes* his Wife, the Siſter and next Heir of *Henry*, ſucceeded in the Empire after the death of *Conrade* the 3. his Uncle, *Anno* 1153.

1190 6. *Frederick* II. the ſecond Son of *Barbaroſſa*, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*.

7. *Conrade* II. Brother of *Frederick* the ſecond, ſucceeded in both Eſtates.

8. *Philip*, the younger Brother of *Conrade*, ſucceeded in both Dukedoms after his deceaſe; and on the death of *Henry* the ſixth his eldeſt Brother was elected Emperour, *Anno* 1198.

1207 9. *Frederick* III. of *Franconia*, and the V. of *Suevia*, Son of the Emperour *Henry* the ſixth, whom he ſucceeded in the Kingdom of *Naples* and *Scicily*, *An.* 1202, and on the death of *Otho* the fourth, *Anno* 1212, was elected Emperour, of that name the ſecond.

1250 10. *Conrade* III. of *Franconia*, the II. of *Schwaben*, and the IV. of the Empire, the Son of *Frederick* the third, whom he ſucceeded in all his Titles and Eſtates.

1254 11. *Conradine*, Son of *Conrade* the third, Duke of *Franconia* and *Schwaben*, diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily* by *Manfred* the baſe Brother of his Father, and finally beheaded by *Charles* of *Anjou*, who ſucceeded *Manfred* in thoſe Kingdoms, *Anno* 1268. After whoſe death this Royal Houſe being quite extinguiſhed, the Biſhop of *Wurtzburg* did again reſume the Title of Duke of *Franconia*; content to let ſome of the greater Lords and Prelates, which lived near unto him, to ſhare in the poſſeſſion of it, as before was noted.

The Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, before they were incorporated with the Houſe of *Schwaben*, were *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or*: which why it is now born by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, we ſhall tell you there.

11. *WIRTENBERG*, and 12. *BADEN*.

THeſe I have joyned together, though diſtinct Eſtates, becauſe both of them were taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, erected both about one time, and lie very cloſe, in a round together: bounded upon the Eaſt and South with *Schwaben* properly ſo called, on the North with the *Lower Palatinate*, on the Weſt with the *Rhene*, and that part of *Schawen* which is called *Briſgow*, parted aſunder by the mountainous ridge of Hills called *Swartzwald*; *Wirtenberg* lying on the Eaſt-ſide thereof, and *Baden* betwixt it and the *Rhene*.

And firſt for *WIRTENBERG*. The Air thereof is very healthy, neither two hot in Summer, nor too cold in Winter: the Soil near *Swartzenwald* lying on the Weſt, and the *Alps* of *Suevia* on the South, of it ſelf barren and unprofitable; but in ſome places, by the induſtry of the Plough-man, made to yield good Corn. But in the middle parts thereof which lie towards the *Neccar*, little inferiour for fruitfulneſs both of Corn and Wine unto any in *Germany*; beſides ſome Silver-mines near *Wiltberg*, and about *Puellach*, a ſmall Town, ſuch abundance of Braſs, that the Foundations of the Houſes ſeem to be laid upon it.

It took this name from the Caſtle of *Wirtenberg*, the firſt Seat of the Princes of it; as that did from the *Intuergi*, inhabiting the *Dutch* ſide of the *Rhene*; or from the *Virthungi*, as *Beatus Rhenanus* thinketh, mentioned by *Trebellius Galio* in the Life of *Aurelianus*; to which the word *Berg*, being added for a termination, made it firſt *Tuerginberg*, or *Virthun-berg*, and after *Wirtenberg*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Stutgard*, the Duke's Seat, a fair, rich and populous Town, and the chief of the Dukedom; ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful Plain not far from the *Neccar*, yielding a quantity of Wine almoſt incredible. 2. *Tubingen*, on both ſides of the *Neccar*, united into one with a fair Stone-bridge. A Town well built, ſituate in a very rich Soil, and finally adorned with an Univerſity here founded by *Eberhard* the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1477, in which *Leonardus Fuchſius* that great Herbaliſt and Reſtaurator of Phyſick, was once a Profeſſor of that Faculty. 3. *Canſtat*, upon the *Neccar* alſo; not far from which, on the top of an Hill, ſtands the old Caſtle of *Wirtenberg* before mentioned. 4. *Wiltberg*, of great eſteem for its Mines of Silver. 5. *Archingen*, inhabited chiefly by *Jews*. 6. *Schornadorf*, upon the *Rheems*, much reſorted to by reaſon of the hot Baths there; as is alſo 7. *Newnburg*, on the *Entz*. 8. *Haidenheim*, 9. *Greiningen*, 10. *Marbach*; of which little memorable. There are alſo within the limits of this Dukedom many Towns Imperial. As 1. *Wimpſen*, and 2. *Hailbrun*, on the *Neccar*. 3. *Gepping*, upon the River *Vils*. 4. *Weil*. 5. *Reutling*, on the *Neccar* alſo, made Imperial by *Frederick* the 2. *Anno* 1240, otherwiſe of no great note but for the Paper-mills, 6. *Eſsling*.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chatitni* of *Ptolemy*, and part of the *Intuergi* ſpoken of before. It was made ſubject with the reſt of theſe parts to the *Almans*, after to the *French*, and finally a member of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*. From which diſmembred in the time of *Henry* 4. after the dangerous War raiſed againſt him by Duke *Rodolphus*, advanced by the practice of Pope *Hildebrand* to the Throne Imperial, it came to have Princes of its own: the firſt Earl being *Conrade*, in the year 1100, by the grace and favour of the ſaid Emperour *Henry*. Increaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Montbelgard* and many other Accruments, it was made a Dukedom in the perſon of *Eberhard* the 6. by *Maximilian* the 1. *Anno* 1495. The Earls and Dukes whereof follow thus in order.

The Earls and Dukes of *WIRTENBERG*.

1100 1. *Conrade*, the firſt Earl.
2. *Ulric*, Son of *Conrade*.
3. *John*, Son of *Ulric*.
4. *Lewis*, Son of *John*.
5. *Henry*, Son of *Lewis*.
6. *Eberhard*, Son of *Henry*.
7. *Ulric* II. Son of *Eberhard*.
8. *Eberhard* II. Son of *Ulric*.
1325 9. *Ulric* III. Son of *Eberhard*.

1344 10.

1344 10. *Eberhard* III. Son of *Ulric*.
1394 11. *Ulric* IV. Son of *Eberhard*.
12. *Eberhard* IV. Son of *Ulric*.
1417 13. *Eberhard* V. Son of *Eberhard* the 4. by his Marriage with *Henrica*, or *Henrietta*, Daughter of *Henry* Earl of *Montbelgard*, added that Earldom to his Houſe.
1419 14. *Lewis* or *Ludowick* II. Son of *Eberhard* the 5.
1456 15. *Eberhard* VI. Son of *Lewis*, Founder of the Univerſity of *Tubingen*, created by *Maximilian* the firſt, the firſt Duke of *Wirtenberg*, *Anno* 1495. He deceaſed without Iſſue, *Anno* 1496.
1496 16. *Eberhard* VII. Son of *Ulric*, the younger Brother of *Lewis* the 2. ſucceeded on the death of *Eberhard* his Couſin-german.
1504 17. *Henry* II. the Brother of *Eberhard* the 7.
1519 18. *Ulric* V. Son of *Henry* the 2. expulſed out of his Dukedom by *Charles* the 5. for the Sack of *Reutling* an Imperial City, and his Eſtate conferred on *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, the Brother of *Charles*: but, after 15 years Exile, reſtored to his Dukedom by *Philip* Lantgrave of *Haſſia*, he reformed Religion, and liberally endowed the Univerſity of *Tubingen*. 31.
1550 19. *Chriſtopher*, the Son of *Ulric* the 5. a follower of his Father's ſteps in Reformation of the Church, and Advancement of Learning.
1568 20. *Ludovick* or *Lewis* III. Son of *Chriſtopher*.
21. *Frederick*, Son of *George* Earl of *Montbelgard*, the Brother of *Ulric* the 5. made Knight of the Garter by Queen *Elizabeth*, Anno 1597.
22. *John-Frederick*, Son of *Frederick* the firſt.
23. *John-Eberhard*, eldeſt Son of the former Duke, now living, *Anno* 1648.

The Revenues of this Duke are ſuppoſed to be equal unto thoſe of the Electors *Palatine*, ſpoken of before; and were it not for the Silver-mines in *Saxony*, little inferiour to thoſe of that Duke. But for proviſions of War, (excepting Powder only) he is meanly furniſhed. A main defect, conſidering the ill terms he ſtands in with the Imperial Cities, betwixt whom and the Houſe of *Wirtenberg* there have been always open Wars or ſecret Jealouſies.

His Arms are *Or*, 3 Attires of a Stag born Palie-barrie, *Sable*.

As for the Marquiſate of *BADEN*, lying on the Weſt-ſide of *Schwartzenwald*, betwixt it and the *Rhene*, it is for the moſt part, except towards thoſe Wolds, a very pleaſant and fruitful Country, and much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Wirtenberg*; ſo called from *Baden*, a neat Town, where the Marqueſs keeps his Seat in Winter; and that ſo named from the hot Baths there, as is alſo *Baden* (called, for diſtinction ſake, the *Upper Baden*) amongſt the *Switzers*: in which reſpect the City of *Bath* in *Somerſetſhire* had anciently the name of *Caer-Baden* alſo. Of theſe Baths it is ſuppoſed that there are in this City at leaſt 300, profitable for many Diſeaſes and exulcerate Sores, drawing a great reſort of people from the neighbouring Countries. This is the chief Town of this Marquiſate, from whence the Princes have the Title of Marqueſſes of *Baden*. The next to this is, 2. *Durlach*, or *Turlach*, which gives Title to a ſecond Branch of this Houſe; called alſo ſometimes Marqueſſes of *Durlach* only, but commonly the Marqueſſes of *Baden-Durlach*, 3. *Liebenzel*, amongſt the Hills of *Schwartzenwald*, famous for hot medicinal Springs. 4. *Liechtenaw*, remarkable for a Monaſtery, the Burial-place of the firſt Marqueſſes. 5. *Gerſpach*, in the very heart of that Mountainous tract. 6. *Pfortzheim*, adjoining to the Wood *Hagenſcheis*, a branch of *Schwartzenwald*. 7. *Rotelen*. 8. *Badenwile*, and 9. *Suſenburg*, all ſeated in the Upper *Baden*, being that part hereof which lies next to *Briſgow*. 10. *Milberg*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, the uſual Retiring-place of theſe Princes in the heats of Summer.

This Marquiſate, being alſo taken out of the great Dukedom of *Schwaben*, was founded in the perſon of *Herman* of *Verona* in *Italy*, who deſerving well of the Emperour *Henry* the 5. was by him ſetled in ſome Lands about theſe parts, *An.* 1120. and after marrying with the Daughter of an Earl of *Baden*, was by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa* created the firſt Marqueſs of *Baden*, *Anno* 1155. The Eſtate was after much encreaſed by the addition of the Earldom of *Hochberg* and the Appendixes thereof in *Schwaben*, into which *Chriſtopher* the 13. Marqueſs hereof, ſucceeded on the death of his Couſin *Philip*, the laſt Earl of *Hochberg*: both Princes deſcending originally from two Brothers; of which the eldeſt, in right of the Lady *Judith* his Wife, was Earl of *Hochberg*; the ſecond, by the favour of the ſaid *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, was made Marqueſs of *Baden*. They were Maſters alſo of many fair Eſtates in the Lower *Palatinate*, which the *Palatines* of the *Rhene* (as was there ſaid) are ſince poſſeſſed of. Other particulars ſhall be ſhewn (if occaſion be) in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Marqueſſes of *BADEN*.

1155 1. *Herman*, the firſt Marqueſs.
2. *Herman* II.
3. *Herman* III.
4. *Herman* IV.
1281 5. *Rodolph*, Son of *Herman* the 4.
1295 6. *Herman* V. Son of *Rodolph*.
7. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Herman* the 5.
1356 8. *Frederick*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.
9. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Frederick*.
1372 10. *Bernard*, Son of *Rodolph* the 3.
1431 11. *James*, Son of *Bernard*.
1453 12. *Charles*, Son of *James*, the firſt of theſe Marqueſſes which was poſſeſſed of the County of *Spanheim* in the Lower *Palatinate*, deſcending on this Houſe by *Matild* Wife of *Rodolph* the 2.
1475 13. *Chriſtopher*, Son of *Charles*, who after the death of *Philip*, the laſt Marqueſs of *Hochberg*, ſucceeded alſo in that Eſtate.
1515 14. *Bernard*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, his Brother *Erneſt* ſucceeding in that of *Hochberg*.
15. *Chriſtopher* II. Son of *Bernard*, his elder Brother *Philibert*, and *Philip* Son of *Philibert*, dying in the life of *Bernard*.
16. *Edward*, Son of *Chriſtopher*, intending the ſale of his Eſtates to pay his Debts, was forcibly deprived of all by
17. *Erneſt*, Marqueſs of *Hochberg*, Nephew of *Erneſt* above mentioned; who by that means not only preſerved the Marquiſate of *Baden*, but united that of *Hochberg* again unto it, and removed his ordinary Seat to *Durlach*.
18. *George*, Brother of *Erneſt*, Marqueſs of *Baden* and *Hochberg*.
19. *Frederick*, the Son of *George*, born in the year 1594. ſucceeded his Father in both Eſtates; and (if living) hath a Son called alſo *Frederick*, to enjoy them after his deceaſe.

13. NORTHGOIA, or the UPPER PALATINATE.

THE County of *NORTHGOIA*, so called from the Northern situation of it in regard of *Bavaria*, is sometimes also called the *Palatinate* of *Bavaria*, because anciently belonging to that Estate; but generally *Ober Pfaltz*, or the *Upper Palatinate*, to difference it from the *Lower*. It is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Franconia* and part of *Schwaben*, on the North with *Voitland*, and on the South with *Bavaria*. The Country is for the most part somewhat rough and mountainous, rich principally in Mines of Iron, which it yieldeth in most places, and some of Silver about *Amberg*; extended from *Haimburg*, to the edge of *Bohemia*, 80 miles; and from the Hill *Fichtelberg* in the edge of *Voitland*, to *Weissenburg* near the banks of the *Danow*, 68 miles.

Observable things touching this Province are chiefly two. First, that out of the Mountain *Fichtelberg*, before mentioned, arise 4 Rivers running to the four Quarters of the world; that is to say, the *Egra* towards the East, the *Maine* or *Mœnus* towards the West, the *Sala* or *Saltza* to the North, and the *Nab* or *Nabus* to the South; so that it may be probably thought to be the highest Hill in all *Germany*. 2. That in the South-west corner of it are two little Rivers; the one called *Altmul*, which falleth into the *Danow*, and the other *Rednitz*, which runs into the *Maine*, and finally into the *Rhene*: between the Heads whereof, being not much distant, *Charles* the Great once began to dig a Chanel, for making a passage out of the *Rhene* into the *Danow*. In which work he employed many thousand men. But partly by excess of Rain, and partly by some strange Affrightments, (all which they did in the day being undone in the night) he was fain to desist. Some parts of the intended Water-course are to be seen near *Weissenburg*, spoken of before, which standeth in the middle-way betwixt both Rivers.

Chief places of this Country which belong to the Electoral Family are, 1. *Amberg*, on the River *Vils*, enriched chiefly by the commodity of Iron digged out of the neighbouring Hills, here fashioned into all sorts of Utensils, and hence conveyed in great abundance to the parts adjoyning: but prouder of its Mines of Silver than those veins of Iron, affording to the Prince's Coffers 60000 Crowns yearly. 2. *Manheim*, in the midst of a fruitful Valley, near a Wood of Juniper. 3. *Newburg*, upon the River *Swartzach*, which gives Title to the second Branch of the *Palatine* House, called the Counts *Palatines* of *Newberg*, Competitors with the Marques of *Brandenburg* for the whole Dukedom of *Cleveland*, and finally possessed of *Gulick* and the Members of it. 4. *Kelheim*, at the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Altmul*. 5. *Cham*, on the edge of *Bohemia*, near the River *Regen*; which passing thence falleth into the *Danow* near the City of *Regenspurg*. 6. *Castel*, where the Electors for the most part hold their Residence, when they are in this Country. 7. *Awerbach*, 8. *Saltzbach*, 9. *Weiden*, 10. *Newmarckt*.

There are also in this Country some Towns belonging to the Lantgraves of *Luchtenberg*, one of the four old Lantgraves of the Empire; the other three being *Duringen*, *Hessia*, and *Alsatia*: so called from *Luchtenberg*, an old Castle, situate on a lofty Hill not far from *Pfreimt*, the chief Town and ordinary Seat of these Lantgraves, seated on the River *Nab*. 2. *Gransfelden*, 3. *Schonhoffen*, an ordinary pass and baiting-place in the way from *Prague* to *Nurenberg*.

But the chief City of this Country, and perhaps of *Germany*, is *Nurenberg* it self, *Norimberga* in the modern, but *Norica* in the ancient *Latine*. So called from an ancient Castle called *Castrum Noricum*, the Ruines of which are still remaining, encompassed with a deep, but dry, Ditch, now of no use nor ornament to the City at all, but reverenced for its antiquity, as the Mother of *Nurenberg*. The Castle is said by some to be built in the time of *Claudius Cæsar*. More probably by some of the *Norici*, who, terrified with the Invasion of *Attila*, in the Decline and wane of the *Roman* Empire, relinquished *Bavaria*, where before they dwelt, and passed over the *Danow*, there to provide themselves of a safer dwelling. Conquered by the *Bavarians*, it became, together with their Conquerours, subject to the *French*. In the time of *Lewis* the 3. it became Imperial, and was walled and fortified during the reign of *Charles* the 4. From that time it encreased so fast both in Wealth and Beauty, that it is counted the greatest and wealthiest City in all this Continent, there being reckoned in it 11 Stone-bridges for passage over the *Pegnitz*, which runneth through it, 12 Conduits of fresh water, 13 common Baths, 116 publick Wells, and 128 Streets. Of Figure it is square, environed with a triple Wall of 8 miles in circuit, and plentifully stored with all sorts of Ammunition. The Marquesses of *Brandenburg* in former times were the Burgraves of it; an Office of great power and jurisdiction, but sold for a good sum of money by *Frederick* the 3. *Anno* 1414. *Albert* his Son, attempting to recover the old Office again, besieged the Town, having no less than 17 Princes on his side, and yet could not force it. That for an Argument of its Strength. A proof and evidence of the Wealth of it we have seen before, in that great havock made of their Towns and Villages, and the great Ransom they were put to by another *Albert*, spoken of in *Franconia*. And it adds much unto the commendation of the people, that this great Wealth is gotten by their indefatigable Industry; the Town being situate on a barren and sandy Soil, and destitute of those Helps which commonly a navigable River brings unto a City; those great Possessions which belong unto the State hereof being gotten out of the fire, as the saying is, by their continual working of Iron and other Manufactures, occasioning a resort hither of Merchants from all parts of *Germany*.

Other Towns of chief note within this *Palatinate* are, 1. *Altorff*, where the *Nurenbergers* founded an University for the study of all Arts and Sciences, *Anno* 1575. 2. *Herspruck*, a great Town and well seated, belonging to the State of *Nurenberg* also. 3. *Eystet*, (*Aichstaidium* in the *Latine*) an Episcopal See, situate on the River *Altmul*. 4. *Weissenburg*, an Imperial City on the Borders of *Schwaben*. Here was also in this Province (if not still remaining) the Town *Winsberg*, memorable for the Piety and Gallantry of the Women of it. For the Town being besieged and distressed by the Emperor *Conrade* the 3. for siding against him with the *Guelphs* then Dukes of *Bavaria*, no other conditions could be gotten at the surrendry of it, but that the Women might have leave to depart in safety, and carry all their Jewels with them. Which being obtained, they took their Husbands on their backs, and so left the Town: and by that noble act so moved the affections and compassion of the angry Prince, that he spared the Town, and gave them all a general Pardon. It is said by some, that the odious names of *Guelphs* and *Gibelines* (with which the peace of Christendom was so long distracted) took their beginning at this Siege: the first so called from *Guelpho*, Brother of *Henry* the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, in whose cause they fought; the other from *Veibling*, (the *French* and *Italians* speak it *Gueibling*) a Town of *Frankenland*, in which that Emperor was born. Another original here-

of

of we had in our description of State of *Florence*: but I take this to be the more probable of the two, though neither certain.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Nariſci* of *Tacitus*. Afterwards ſome of the *Norici*, fearful or grown impatient of the *Roman* yoke, came over the *Danubius* to them, and built that famous Caſtle called *Caſtrum Noricum*, where now ſtands *Nurenberg*. Overpowered by the *Boii*, and uniting with them in the name of *Boiarians*, they followed the fortunes of *Bavaria*, till the year 1339, when *Ludovick* the Emperour, and Duke of *Bavaria*, on the partition of the Eſtate betwixt him and *Rodolphus* his elder Brother, relinquiſhed it for ever to the Houſe of the *Palatines*. Returned for the preſent to the Dukes of *Bavaria*, on whom it was conferred, together with the Electoral Dignity, by the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. in recompence of the great ſervice done him by *Maximilian* the now Duke thereof in the War of *Bohemia*, and the great charge he had been at in the reduction of that Kingdom to the Houſe of *Auſtria*. How long it will continue thus is known only to God, the diſpoſer of all things. Yet neither the *Bavarians* formerly, nor the *Palatines* ſince, have been ſo fully Maſters of it, but that the Lantgrave of *Luchtenberg* and the City of *Nurenberg* have put in for a ſhare.

The Arms of which great and puiſſant City are *Azure*, an Harpye diſplayed, crowned, crined and armed, *Or*.

14. The Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*.

THE Kingdom of *BOHEMIA*, containing *Bohemia* it ſelf with the incorporate Provinces, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland* and *Hungary*, on the Weſt with the *Upper Palatinate*, *Voitland* and *Miſnia*, on the North with the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg* and ſome part of *Miſnia*, and on the South with *Auſtria* and *Bavaria*. It comprehends in it, beſides *Bohemia* it ſelf, the Marquiſate of *Moravia*, with the Dukedoms of *Sileſia* and *Luſatia*.

1. *BOHEMIA*, encompaſſed about with woody Mountains, part of the *Hercynian*, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moravia*, on the Weſt with the *Upper Palatinate* and *Voitland*, on the North with *Miſnia*, *Luſatia* and ſome part of *Sileſia*, on the South with parts of *Bavaria* and *Auſtria*.

It took this name from the *Bemi*, or *Boiemi*, the old Inhabitants hereof; by *Pomponius Mela* called *Bemi*, with the addition of *Gens magna*, by *Tacitus Boiemi*; who make them the Deſcendents of the *Boii*, a *Galick* Nation, who to avoid the Servitude which they feared from *Rome*, put themſelves into theſe *Hercynian* Deſarts, which from them was named *Boiohemum*; by which name it occurreth in *Velleius Paterculus*. And though the *Marcomanni* firſt, and the *Sclaves* and *Croatians* afterwards, became Maſters of it, theſe laſt continuing their poſſeſſion to this very day: yet it retaineth ſtill the name of *Bohemia* amongſt the *Latines*, as that *Bebemerland* amongſt the *Dutch*.

It contains in compaſs about 550 *Engliſh* miles. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, and enriched with Mines of all ſorts, except of Gold. Tin they have here in good plenty, the Mines whereof were firſt found out by a *Corniſh*-man, baniſhed out of *England*, Anno 1240. Which diſcovery of Tin in theſe parts was, as ſaith my Authour, *in magnam jacturam* Richardi *Comitis* Cornubiæ, (he meaneth that *Richard* which was afterwards King of the *Romans*:) and no marvel, for in thoſe times there was no Tin in all *Europe* but in *England*. Wood they have here good ſtore; and in ſome of their Foreſts a Beaſt called *Lamie*, which hath hanging under its neck a Bladder full of ſcalding water, with which, when ſhe is hunted, ſhe ſo tortureth the Dogs, that ſhe eaſily eſcapeth them. Of Corn they have ſufficient for their own uſe, and ſometimes alſo an increaſe above their ſpending, wherewith they do ſupply their neighbours of the *Upper Palatinate*: but they want Wine, the Air being too ſharp and piercing to produce a good Vintage. And it yields alſo ſtore of Saffron, no-where to be bettered; with plenty of medicinal Drugs.

The principal Rivers hereof are, 1. the *Elve*, or *Albis*, having here its ſpring; of whoſe courſe we have ſpoken elſewhere. 2. *Egra*, 3. the *Muldaw* or *Multavius*, and 4. the *Wartz*; all three exonerating themſelves into the *Elve*, which runneth through the midſt of the Country.

The Kingdom is not (as others) divided into Counties and Provinces, but into the Territories and poſſeſſions of ſeveral Lords, who have great authority and command over their Vaſſals. The figure of the whole is in a manner Circular, the Diameter whereof reacheth every way ſome 200 miles; containing in that compaſs 700 Cities, walled Towns and Caſtles, and (as ſome ſay) 30000 Villages. It is inhabited by a people given to Drink and Gluttony, and yet valiant and with ſenſe of Honour; this laſt belonging to the Nobility and Gentry, the former to the common people; but more moderately than moſt others of the *German* Nations. All of them, Princes or Plebeians, rich, poor, noble and baſe, uſe the *Sclavonian* Launguage, as their Mother-tongue.

The chief *Bohemian* Captain that ever I read of was *Ziſca*, who, in eleven Battels fought in the defence of the *Huſſites*, againſt the Pope and his Confederates, prevailed and went away victorious: inſomuch that at his death he willed the *Bohemians* to flay him, and make a Drum of his Skin; perſuading himſelf, if they ſo did, they could never be overcome. A fancy like to that of *Scipio Africa*n, and *Vortimer* K. of *Britain*, ſpoken of before. Scholars of moſt note, *John Hus* and *Hierome* of *Prague*, two eminent Divines, of whom more anon.

The *Chriſtian Faith* was firſt here preached by S. *Methodius*, the firſt Biſhop and Apoſtle of the *Moraviant*, *An.* 900 or thereabouts: *Borzivoius*, (whom ſome call *Borſinous*) the 8. Duke from *Crocus*, being the firſt Chriſtian Prince; and next to him *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond. This laſt was moſt cruelly murthered by *Boleſlaus* his Brother, at the inſtigation of *Drahomira*, an obſtinate Heathen, Mother to them both; who having cauſed the Miniſters of the Lord to be butchered, and their Bodies to lie unburied for two years together, was ſwallowed, Coach and all, in that very place where their Bodies lay. Confirmed by this Prodigy, they continued conſtant in the Faith to this very day; though not without the intermixture of ſome notable Vanity. For one *Picardus*, coming out of the *Low-Countries*, drew a great ſort of men and women unto him, pretending to bring them to the ſame ſtate of Perfection that *Adam* was in before his Fall; from whence they were called *Picards* and *Adamites*. They had no reſpect unto Marriage; yet could they not accompany any Woman, until the Man coming to *Adam*, ſaid unto him, *Father Adam, I am inflamed towards this Woman*; and *Adam* made anſwer, *Increaſe and multiply*. They lived in an Iſland which they called *Paradiſe*, and went ſtark naked: but they continued not long; for *Ziſca* hearing of them, entred their Fools Paradiſe, and put them all to the ſword, *Anno* 1416. But to make amends for this Folly, they were exceedingly zealous of the Reformation. For much about the ſame time the Works of *Wickliff* were brought into

into *Bohemia* by a certain Scholar who had been Student in the University of *Oxford*, which hapning into the hands of *John Huſſe* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, (two men whereof this Country doth much boaſt) wrought in their hearts a deſire to reform the Church. A buſineſs which they proſecuted ſo earneſtly, that being ſummoned to the Council of *Conſtance*, they were there condemned for Hereticks, and burnt, *Anno* 1414: yet had their Doctrine ſuch deep root in the hearts of the people, that it could never be deſtroyed by the Tyrannies of War or Perſecution (though both were uſed) to this very day, multitudes of the Profeſſors of it living in this Kingdom under the names of *Caliſtini* and *Sub utraque*, as before is ſaid) but much both ſtrengthened and increaſed by the Writings of *Luther*, *Melanchthon*, *Calvin*, and ſuch other of the Proteſtant Doctors as travelled in the Work of Reformation. But this increaſe of ſtrength and number proved their greateſt weakening. For growing inſolent upon the ſenſe of their ſtrength and power, they formed themſelves into a party, got many of the *Romiſh* Catholicks to adhere unto them, under colour of aſſerting their Civil Rights, and, in the heat of ſome diſputes, cauſed certain of the Emperour's Council to be thrown out of the Windows of the Council-chamber; and finally, about the latter end of the Reign and Empire of *Matthias*, they broke out into open Arms. In the courſe whereof the *Calviniſts* being of moſt power, and having got a King of their own Opinions, ſo diſobliged the *Lutherans* and more moderate Papiſts, who had concurred with them at the firſt, that being invaded on the one ſide with a *Lutheran* Army under the command of the Duke of *Saxony*, and a Popiſh Army on the other by the Duke of *Bavaria*, they were in fine utterly ſuppreſt and made inconſiderable: the conquering and ſucceſsful Emperour (*Ferdinand* the 2.) taking this occaſion, to extirpate the Proteſtant Religion out of his Dominions.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Budweiſs*, (conceived to be the *Marobudum* of *Ptolomy*) a Town towards *Auſtria*. 1. *Auſt*, near the Head of the *Elb*. 3. *Tabor*, a ſtrong Town built by *Ziſca*, to be a Retreat for the *Huſſites*. 4. *Jaromir*, and 5. *Melnick*, both upon the *Elb*. 6. *Littomiſſel*, an Epiſcopal See, bordering on *Moravia*. 7. *Pilſen*, the laſt Town of this Kingdom which yielded to the prevailing Imperialiſts in the late long War about that Crown: and then alſo was it betrayed to Count *Tilly* for a ſum of money, by ſome of the Souldiers of Count *Mansfield*, who was then abſent, and had ſo long defended it againſt the Enemy. 8. *Elnbogen*, much eſteemed for the hot medicinal Bathes; ſituate on the River *Egra*. 9. *Egra*, ſo called of the ſame River, on which (near to the borders of the Upper *Palatinate*) it is ſtrongly ſituate: a large, fair City, containing three miles in compaſs. Imperial once, but ſold by the Emperour *Ludovicus Bavarus* to *John* King of *Bohemia*, for 400000 marks of Silver: in compaſs leſs; for Sweetneſs of the place, Elegancy of the buildings, Pleaſantneſs of ſite, and Richneſs of ſoil, ſuperiour far to *Prague* it ſelf. 10. *Prague*, the Metropolis of the Kingdom, ſituate in the midſt thereof, on the River *Muldaw*; conſiſting of four ſeveral Towns, each of which hath its ſeveral Cuſtoms, Laws, and Magiſtrates. The principal is called the *Old Town*, adorned with many goodly Buildings, a ſpacious Market-place, and a ſtately Council-houſe. The ſecond, called the *New Town*, is ſeparated from the Old by a Ditch of great depth and wideneſs. The third, called the *Little Town*, is divided from the Old by the River *Muldaw*, joined to it by a beautiful Bridge, conſiſting of 24 Arches. And in this part thereof is the Hill *Rachine*, on the ſides of which are many fair and ſtately Houſes belonging to the Nobility, over-looked by the ſtrong Caſtle of S. *Wenceſlaus*, (ſituate on the top thereof) a magnificent Palace, wherein the *Bohemian* Kings and the later Emperours have kept their Reſidence. The fourth Town is that of the *Jews*, who have here five Synagogues, & live according to their own Law. The whole City is rather large than fair, the Streets being in Winter very dirty, of ill ſmell in the Summer; the Buildings for the moſt part of Clay & Timber clapt up together without Art, and of little beauty. And though encompaſſed with Walls and Ditches, it is conceived to be but an open Town, (ſo poor and weak are the Defences;) inſomuch that whoſoever is maſter of the Field, will be maſter of the City alſo. And yet beſides the honour of being the Royal Seat, it hath alſo of long time been an Archbiſhop's See, and was by *Charles* the fourth, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, made an Univerſity. Near unto this Town was fought that memorable Battel between the Duke of *Bavaria* and Count *Bucquoy*, Lieutenant for the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond, with 50000 men, on the one ſide; and *Frederick*, newly elected King of *Bohemia*, which the Prince of *Anhalt*, the Count of *Thurn*, and 30000 men, on the other ſide. It was fought on the eighth of *November ſtylo novo*, wherein (ſuch was the unſearchable will of God) the Victory fell unto the Imperialiſts: the young Prince of *Anhalt*, *Thurn*, and *Saxon-Weimar*, with divers others, being taken priſoners; the *Bohemian* Ordnance all ſurpriſed, *Prague* forced to yield unto the Victor, and King *Frederick* with the Queen compelled to flie unto *Sileſia*. A moſt lamentable and unfortunate Loſs, not to this people only, but to the whole cauſe of the Reformed Religion. Yet it is not unworthy of our obſervation, that this great Battel was fought upon a Sunday, the 8. of *November*, about the time of Morning-prayer, in the Goſpel appointed for which day (being then the 23. after *Trinity*-Sunday) is that famous paſſage, *Reddite CÆSARI, quæ ſunt CÆSARIS*, *i. e.* Render unto *Cæſar* the things which are *Cæſar*'s; which ſeemed to judge the Quarrel on the Emperour's ſide.

But whether of the two Pretendents had the juſter Cauſe, may beſt be ſeen by canvaſſing the Records of that State and Nation, (for the ſucceſs of War is no ſtanding Rule for meaſuring the Equity and Juſtice of the Cauſes of it:) by which it will be clearly ſeen, that ſince the erecting of that Kingdom by the *Sclaves* or *Croatians*, it hath been evermore diſpoſed at the will of the Emperour, or by Election of the States and People. But I intend not at the preſent to diſpute that Point, but only lay down the Story of the Kings and People, as in other places, ſince the firſt coming of the *Sclavi*. A Nation not known by that name till the time of *Juſtinian*; at what time they inhabited on the Banks of the *Iſter*, but no the farther ſide thereof, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, Imperial Provinces. Grown famous by their good Succeſſes againſt that Empire, their name was taken up by the reſt of the *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; who, either wanting room, or not liking of their colder Countries, paſſed on more Weſtward, and by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of thoſe parts of *Germany* which formerly had been inhabited by the *Almans*, *Burgundians* and *Boiarians*; but were then either quite forſaken, or but ill inhabited, by the drawing down of thoſe people to the *Roman* Provinces, which they better liked. They were divided at, or after, their coming thus far Weſt, into four main Bodies: that is to ſay, the *Winithi*, poſſeſſed of the (now) Marquiſates of *Brandenburg*, *Miſnia*, and *Luſatia*, as alſo of the Dukedoms of *Mecklenburg* and *Pomerania*; the *Moravians*, inhabiting in *Moravia*, the Lower *Auſtria*, and the Upper *Hungary*; the *Poles*, poſſeſſed of *Poland*, and the Dukedom of *Sileſia*; and finally the *Bohemian Sclaves*, confined within the limits of that Kingdom only. Under what

what form of Government they lived at their first coming hither, is not certainly known. But being setled in these Countries of *Poland* and *Bohemia*, it was not long before they were erected into several Kingdoms; occationed by the coming of a new Body of *Sclaves*, *Croatians*, and others of those scattered Nations, under the conduct of *Zechius*, a great Prince amongst them, who about the year 640, together with his Brother *Leches*, was banished *Croatia* for a Murther. He being very acceptable to the *Sclaves* of *Bohemia*, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own original Extraction, one of the same Language, Laws or Customs that themselves were of, they admitted him to be their Chief or supreme Governour, by whatsoever name he was called at first: in honour and memory of whom, the *Bohemians* in their own Language do call themselves *Zechians*. After his death, the State relapsed again into a confused Anarchy, till the year 670; at what time, not respecting the Progeny of *Zechius*, the Founder of their Commonwealth and first Estate, they fastned upon *Crocus*, a man of good esteem amongst them, and elected him to be their Duke. *Crocus vir justus, & magnæ apud* Bohemos *opinionis, Princeps electus est*, as *Bertholdus* telleth us. *Crocus* being dead, the *Bohemians* elected *Libussa*, his youngest Daughter; and of her Government soon wearied, they made choice of *Primislaus* for their Prince, and made him Husband to *Libussa*. A man taken from the Plough (as the Stories tell us) to espouse the Princess: it being ordered and agreed on by her many Suitors, that he (whosoever he was,) before whom an Horse, purposely let loose, did first make a stand, should be the Husband of the Lady, and have the Government of the State. The Horse first makes a stand before *Primislaus*, being then at Plough, (having perhaps some Mare in his Team;) and he accordingly is received and admitted their Prince. These, with the other Dukes, from the time of *Crocus*, the first Legislatour of the *Bohemians*, take in order thus.

The Dukes of *BOHEMIA*.

1. *Crocus*, the Law-giver or *Lycurgus* of *Bohemia*.
2. *Libussa*, youngest Daughter to *Crocus*, with *Primislaus* her Husband, (a second *Quinctius*) Founder of *Prague*.
3. *Neramislaus*, Son of *Primislaus* and *Libussa*.
4. *Mnatha*, one of the Sons of *Neramislaus*, co-temporary with *Charles* the Great.
5. *Voricius*, Son of *Mnatha*.
9. *Wenceslaus*.
7. *Bela*.
8. *Nastriccus*, Son of *Bela*.
9. *Borzivoius*, the first Christian Prince of the *Bohemians*, co-temporary with the Emperor *Arnulph*.
10. *Sbitignæus*, Son to *Borzivoius*.
11. *Vladislaus*, Brother to *Sbitignæus*.
12. *Wenceslaus* II. sirnamed the Saint, slain by his Brother *Boleslaus*.
13. *Boleslaus*, a wicked and ungodly Prince.
14. *Boleslaus* II. Son of the former,, a great advancer of Christianity amongst his people.
15. *Boleslaus* III. one of the Sons of *Boleslaus* the second.
16. *Jaromir*, Son to *Boleslaus* the third.
17. *Udalricus*, Brother of *Boleslaus* the third, and Uncle of *Jaromir*.
18. *Predislaus*, Son to *Udalricus*.
19. *Sbitignæus* II. Son to *Predislaus*.

1061 20. *Vratislaus*, Brother of *Sbitignæus*, whom, for his manifold deserts, the Emperor *Henry* the 4. created the first King of *Bohemia*, *Anno* 1086. Whose Successors take thus out of *Bertholdus* and *Dubravius*.

The Kings and Dukes of *BOHEMIA*.

A. C.

1086 1. *Vratislaus*, the Brother of *Sbitignæus*, Duke of *Bohemia*, was by *Henry* the 4. at *Mentz* created King.

2. *Conrade*, Brother to *Vratislaus*, notwithstanding that his Brother had three Sons, was elected Duke of *Bohemia*.

3. *Brecislaus*, Son to *Vratislaus*, the two Sons of *Conrade* being rejected, is by the *Bohemians* chosen Duke.

1100 4. *Borivorius*, the 4. Son of *Brecislaus*, is chosen by the *Bohemians*, his eldest Brothers then all living.

1109 5. *Sutopulcus*, Cousin-german to *Borivorius*, by the consent & favour of the people, deposed *Borivorius*, and caused himself to be elected in his place.

6. *Vladislaus* II. Brother to *Borivorius*, preferred by the people to the Throne before *Otho* the Brother, and *Henry* the Son of *Sutopulcus*, the last Prince.

7. *Sobeslaus*. Brother to *Vladislaus*, promoted to the State before the Son of *Vladislaus*.

1159 8. *Vladislaus* III. Son to *Vladislaus* the 2. (the four Sons of *Sobeslaus* omitted) is chosen and crowned the second King of *Bohemia* by *Frederick* the Emperor; but deposed by the States, because he was not by them formerly elected, according to their Priviledges and Customs.

9. *Uldericus*, the third Son of *Sobeslaus*, his elder Brethren yet living, was by the people elected in the room of *Vladislaus* and his Son *Frederick*, whom the Emperor *Frederick* had by force established in the Throne.

10. *Sobeslaus* II. second Son of *Sobeslaus*, was by *Frederick* above named expelled; and he also by the *Bohemians*.

11. *Conrade*, Grandchild to *Otho*, the Brother of *Sutopulcus*, elected by the *Bohemians* in place of *Frederick*; between which two Princes there was continual War.

12. *Wenceslaus*, Uncle unto *Conrade*, and Son of *Otho* aforesaid, was preferred before many nearer the Succession. Him *Primislaus* expelled, but fearing his return, quitted *Prague*.

13. *Henry*, Bishop of *Prague*, a Stranger to the Blood, was by a general consent elected Duke.

14. *Vladislaus* IV. Brother to *Primislaus*, the Son of *Wenceslaus*, being put by, succeeded *Henry*, and soon after resigned.

1199 15. *Primislaus*, elected by the *Bohemians*, and by the Emperor *Philip* crowned the 3. King of *Bohemia* at *Mentz*, was Brother to *Vladislaus* the 4.

1248 16. *Ottocarus*, notwithstanding that *Wenceslaus* his elder Brother had been crowned in his Father's life-time, was acknowledged King. He was slain in Battel by *Rodolphus* the Emperor, near the *Marh*, a River of *Moravia*, *An.* 1278.

1278 17. *Wenceslaus* II. Son to *Ottocarus*.

1284 18. *Wenceslaus* III. Son to *Wenceslaus* the second,

the last of the *Bohemian* Princes of the masculine race.

1304 19. *Rodolphus*, Son to the Emperor *Albertus*, is by the potency of his Father, and the election of the States, seated on the Throne, being otherwise a Stranger to the Blood-royal of *Bohemia*.

1305 20. *Henry*, Duke of *Carinthia*, the Son of *Meinard* Earl of *Tyrol*, and Husband to *Anne*, the second Daughter of *Wenceslaus* the 2. is chosen by the *Bohemians*: but being weary of his Government, they elect *John* Earl of *Luxenburg*. Finally, *Henry* was murthered by one of his Nephews.

1311 21. *John*, Earl of *Luxenburg*, Son to *Henry* the seventh Emperor, and Husband to *Elizabeth*, youngest Daughter to *Wenceslaus* the 2. is elected, the Lady *Anne* yet living.

1346 22. *Charles*, Son to *John*, and Emperor, of that name the fourth, the Authour of the Golden Bull.

1362 23. *Wenceslaus* IV. Emperor also, in whose time the Troubles of the *Hussites* and the Valour of *Zisca* was famous.

1418 24. *Sigismund*, Brother to *Wenceslaus*, maketh himself King by force; and at his death commendeth *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, the Husband of his Daughter *Elizabeth*, unto the States of the Kingdom.

1437 25. *Albertus*, Duke of *Austria*, elected upon the commendation of *Sigismund* by the *Bohemian* Lords.

1440 26. *Ladislaus*, Son to *Albert*, who, being the Brother of two Sisters, commended yet one *George Pogibrachius* unto the States, as fittest to succeed him.

1458 27. *George Pogibrachius*, neither by Affinity or Consanguinity of the blood, succeeded. And he, though he had three Sons, yet, for the benefit of his Country, advised the Nobles, after his death to elect their King from *Poland*.

1471 28. *Ladislaus* II. Son to *Casimire* King of *Poland*, and to *Elizabeth* the younger Daughter of *Albertus* Duke of *Austria*, the Issue of *Anne* the elder Sister still living, elected King of *Bohemia*.

1516 29. *Ludovicus*, Son to *Ladislaus*, elected and crowned by the means of his Father, then living, King of *Hungary* also.

1526 30. *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Austria*, Brother to *Charles* the 5. and Husband to *Anne*, Sister to *Ludovicus*, by his Letters reversal acknowledged that he was chosen King of *Bohemia* not of any right, but of meer free will, according to the Liberties of that Kingdom.

1565 31. *Maximilian*, eldest Son of *Ferdinand*, was in his Father's life-time, and at his suit, elected King, *Anno* 1540, into which he actually succeeded on his Father's death.

1575 32. *Rodolphus*, Emperor of *Germany*, and the eldest Son to *Maximilian*, elected King.

1610 33. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, was at the joint suit of them both nominated & appointed King of *Bohemia* by the general consent of the States, during his Brother's life-time, *viz. An.* 1610, which nomination they both protest in their Letters reversal should not be to the prejudice of the Liberties and ancient Customs of that Kingdom.

1618 34. *Ferdinand* II. Archduke of *Austria*, and of the House of *Gretz*, was by *Matthias* adopted for his Son, and declared Successour to the Crown of *Bohemia*, but never formally and legally elected: for which cause, amongst others, he was by the States rejected, in like case as *Vladislaus* the 3. had formerly been.

1619 35. *Frederick*, Elector *Palatine*, the strongest *German* Prince of the *Calvinists*, and most potent by his great Alliances, was elected King of *Bohemia*, and crowned at *Prague*, together with his Wife, on the fifth day of *November*. This Prince derived his Descent from the Lady *Sophia*, Sister to *Ladislaus* the 2. King of *Poland* and *Bohemia*; and married *Elizabeth*, Daughter to *James* King of Great *Britain* and *Anne* of *Denmark*, which *Anne* descended from the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albertus* of *Austria*, and elder Sister to *Elizabeth*, Mother to *Ladislaus* the 2. above named, from whom the Claim of *Austria* is derived.

1621 36. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the 2. elected King of *Bohemia* during the life both of his Father and of *Frederick*, the Prince Elector also; after whose death he succeeded in this Kingdom both in right & fact; King of *Hungary* also, Archduke of *Austria*, and Emperour of *Germany*, now living, *Anno* 1648; more moderate in his Counsels than his Father *Ferdinand*, and more inclinable to Peace, (though honoured with a more signal Victory against the *Swedes*, in the Battel of *Norlingen*, than his Father was in all his life) which the Conclusions made at *Munster* are sufficient proof of.

Of the Revenues, Arms, and other things which concern this Kingdom, we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view of the rest of the Provinces which are incorporated into it.

2. *MORAVIA* is bounded on the East with *Hungary*, on the West with *Bohemia*, on the North with *Silesia*, and on the South with the Lower *Austria* and the River *Teya*: fenced on the West by the Woods & Mountains of *Bohemia*, parts of the *Hercynian* Forest; on the North, by some Spurs or Branches of it, called *Asciburgius* by *Ptolemy*; on the two other sides open like an Half-moon or Semicircle. It is the most fruitful place of Corn in all *Germany*, and hath no small store of Frankinscence; which, contrary to the nature of it, groweth not on a Tree, but out of the Earth; and that too (which adds much to the miracle, if *Dubravius* do report it rightly) in the shape and figure of those parts which men and women do most endeavour to conceal.

The former Inhabitants of this Province were the *Marcomanni* and part of the *Quadi*, against whom when *M. Antoninus* the Emperour made War, he had unawares run himself into such a Streight, that his Army was environed with Mountains one way, and Enemies the other. To this (as Calamities seldom go alone) was added the extraordinary heat and drought then being. The the Emperour, thus put to his plunges, came the Captain of his Guard, telling him, that he had in his Army a Legion of *Christians*, (*Melitens* he calleth them) which by Prayer to their own God could obtain any thing. The Emperour sendeth for them, desiring them to make supplication for the Army: which they did, & God Almighty, that never turneth a deaf ear to the Prayers of his Servants, when

when they are either for his Glory, the Churches or their own good, ſcattered and vanquiſhed the *Quadi* with Thunder-ſhot and Artillery from Heaven, and refreſhed the faint and dying *Romans* with many a gentle and pleaſant Showr. This Miracle purchaſed to that Legion the ſirname of κεραυνοβόλος, *i. e.* the *Thunderer*, and induced the Emperour to honour men of that holy profeſſion, and to make an end of the Fourth Perſecution, *An. Ch.* 174. Thus *Xiphilinus* hath it in his *Dion*: which coming from the Pen of an Heathen, as this Author was, is of more credit in a matter of ſuch concernment unto Chriſtianity, than if it had proceeded from *Socrates*, *Sozomen*, or any other Eccleſiaſtical Writer.

Places of moſt note herein are, 1. *Olmuntz*, on the River *Mach* (or *Morava*) the chief Town of the Country, and a ſmall Univerſity; near which, out of the Hill *Odenberg* bordering on *Sileſia*, ſpringeth the great River of *Odera*, whoſe Courſe we have before preſcribed. 2. *Brin*, on the River *Swarta*, the Seat of the ancient Marqueſſes. 3. *Hradiſch*, and 4. *Cremſer*, both upon the *Marh* or *Morava*. 5. *Znaim*, on the *Teya*. 6. *Niclasberg*, (*Mons Nicolai* in the *Latine*) bordering on the *Lower Auſtria*. 7. *Iglaw*. 8. *Newburg*. 9. *Weiskerchen*. 10. *Boſerleitz*, of which little memorable. 11. *Cradiſco*, near to which (and in this place only) the Frankincenſe is found to grow in the ſhape and form beforementioned.

The old Inhabitants hereof (as before is ſaid) were the *Marcomanni* and the *Quadi*: after them that Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who, from their habitation on the River *Morava*, called themſelves *Moravians*, and the Country which they dwelt in by the name of *Moravia*, (the *Dutch* call it *Merberen*.) They were extended at that time over all the Lower *Auſtria*, to the banks of the *Danow* on the South, and as far as to the river *Tibiſcus* (overſpreading a great part of the Upper *Hungary*) towards the Eaſt. Governed at the firſt by their own Kings, the firſt whoſe name occurs being *Raſtai*, in the time of the Emperour *Lewis* the Godly; by him taken Priſoner, and his Realm made tributary to the Empire. After him ſucceeded *Harmodurus*, and then *Suentopulcus*; in whoſe time the *Moravians* and other Nations of the *Sclaves* received the Goſpel by the preaching of *Cyrill* and *Methodius*, two *Græcian* Doctors; officiating all Divine Services in the *Sclavonian* or vulgar Language. For which when they made ſuit to the Pope then being, to whoſe Authority (as Patriarch of the Weſtern Empire) they were made obnoxious, and that the Pope and Cardinals delaid the buſineſs; a voice was heard, as if it had come from Heaven, ſaying theſe words, *Omnis Spiritus laudet Dominum, & omnis Lingua confiteatur ei.* Upon which Miracle their Suit was granted, at the laſt, and a Letter Decretal ſent unto that effect from Pope *John* the 8. to *Suentopulcus* (or *Sfentopulcher*, as ſome call him) above mentioned. A Priviledge by them enjoyed full 200 years, and then reverſed by *Gregory* 7. commonly called Pope *Hildebrand*, in his Letters to *Vratiſlaus* the firſt King of *Bohemia*, *An.* 1086.

But to return unto the Story. *Suantobegius*, Son to *Suentopulcus*, ſucceeded next, depoſed, or rather beaten out of his Country, by the Emperour *Arnulph*, for denying the accuſtomed Tribute. A Prince of great ſpirit, and of as great command; having at one time under him not *Moravia* only, according to the largeſt limits, but *Sileſia*, *Bohemia*, and *Polonia* alſo. *Arnulph* not able otherwiſe to effect his purpoſe, called in the *Hungarians* (though at that time Pagans) by whoſe help the *Moravian* was ſubdued, and his Kingdom ſhattered into pieces; ſeized on by the *Hungarians*, *Poles*, and other Nations, and finally reduced to the preſent Limits. Afterwards it was made a Marquiſate, (but by whom we find not;) one of the Marqueſſes hereof being *Jodocus Barbatus*, elected Emperour *Anno* 1410. After whoſe death, *Sigiſmund*, his next Heir, Emperour and King of *Bohemia*, gave it to his Son-in-law *Albert* Duke of *Auſtria*, *Anno* 1417, who in the end ſucceeded him in all his Eſtates; ſince which time it hath always gone along with the Crown of *Bohemia*.

The Arms of the old Dukes or Princes of it were *Azure*, an Eagle chequered *Or* and *Gules*, membred and langued of the ſame.

3. *SILESIA*, (or *SCHLESIE*, as the *Dutch* call it) is bounded on the Eaſt with *Poland*, on the Weſt with *Luſatia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Moravia*. Wholly encompaſſed with Mountains, except towards the North, which lets in a ſharp Air upon them: the mid-land part being full of Woods, but withal of Minerals.

Chief Cities are, 1. *Jagendorff*, or *Jegerndorff*, of late the Patrimony of *John Georgius* of the Family of *Brandenburg*, commonly called the Marqueſs of *Jagendorff*. The Lands and Eſtates in his poſſeſſion were firſt given by *Ladiſlaus* King of *Bohemia* to *George* ſirnamed *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Frederick* of *Brandenburg*, the firſt Marqueſs of *Onſpach* of this Houſe, for the many good ſervices he had done him. But his poſterity being extinct, they fell to the ſaid *John-Georgius*, Brother to *Sigiſmund* the Elector; proſcribed by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, for adhering to the party of *Frederick* Prince Elector *Palatine*: A Prince of great note and activeneſs in the beginning of the late *German* and *Bohemian* Wars. 2. *Munſterberg*, which gives the title of Duke to the poſterity of *George Pogebrachius*, once King of *Bohemia*, advanced by him unto this Honour and a fair Eſtate. 3. *Glatz*, or *Gletz*, the laſt Town of *Bohemia* which held out for *Frederick* the Elector againſt that Emperour. 4. *Glogaw*, a ſtrong Town on the River *Oder*. 5. *Neiſſe*, on a River ſo named, an Epiſcopal See. 6. *Breſlaw*, in *Latine Vratiſlavia*, ſo called from *Vratiſlaus* the Founder of it, once one of the Dukes of this Province, by whoſe procurement it was made an Epiſcopal See, *Anno* 970, or thereabouts. It is ſituate on the River *Oder*, all the water wherein could not ſave it from being burnt down to the ground, *Anno* 1341, but it was preſently re-edified with a fair Free-ſtone, and is now one of the prettieſt Cities (for the bigneſs of it) in all *Germany*; fair, populous, and well contrived with open and even Streets, the chief of the Country. 7. *Oppelen*, on the *Oder* alſo, well fortified both by Art and Nature, barricadoed by the River on the Weſt, and on the Eaſt with good Out-works, ſtrong Walls, and a fair Caſtle. 8. *Straten*. 9. *Reichenbach*, both made Towns of War ſince the beginning of the *Bohemian* Troubles.

There are alſo within this Province the two Seigniouries of *Prignitz* and *Croſſen*, ſo called from the chief Towns thereof, belonging to the Elector of *Brandenburg*; the two Dukedoms of *Oſwitz* and *Zator*, appertaining to the Crown of *Poland*; as alſo the Dukedom of *Liguitz* and *Sweinitz*, all of them bearing the names of their principal Towns: of which two laſt, *Sweinitz* is in the immediate poſſeſſion of the Kings of *Bohemia*; and *Liguitz* hath a Duke of its own, but an Homager and Tributary of that King.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Marſigni*, *Burii*, *Gothini*, and ſome part of the *Quadi*. In the partition of the Eaſtern parts of *Germany* amongſt the *Sclaves*, it was laid unto the Dukedom or Kingdom of *Poland*, continuing a part thereof till the time of *Vladiſlaus* the 2. who, being driven out of his Kingdom by his Brethren, was by the mediation of *Frederick Barbaroſſa* eſtated in this Country, to be held under the Soveraignty of the King of *Poland*. Divided betwixt his 3 Sons, & afterwards ſubdivided

amongst their posterities, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, it became broke at last into fourteen Dukedoms, of 1 *Breslaw*, 2 *Oppelen*, 3 *Ratibor*, 4 *Cessin*, 5 *Bethom*, 6 *Glogaw*, 7 *Sagan*, 8 *Olentz*, 9 *Steinaw*, 10 *Falkenburg*, 11 *Sweinitz*, 12 *Lignitz*, 13 *Oswitz*, and 14 *Zator*. Of all which only the two last do remain to *Poland*; the five first being made subject to the Kings of *Bohemia* by *Wenceslaus* the second, the five next by King *John* of *Luxemburg*; *Lignitz* remaining in the possession of a Proprietary Duke, (as before was said) and *Sweinitz* given to *Charles* the fourth, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, by the Will and Testament of *Boleslaus* the last Duke: all *Silesia* by this means (except the Dukedoms of *Oswitz*, and *Zator*) being added to the Crown of *Bohemia*, of which it is rather an incorporate than subject Province.

4. *LUSATIA*, by the *Dutch* called *Lausnitz*, is bounded on the East with *Silesia*, on the West with *Misnia*, on the North with *Brandenburg*, and on the South with *Bohemia*. The Country is rough and full of Woods, yet plentiful enough of Corn, and of such Fruits as naturally arise out of the Earth: so populous and thick set with People, that though it be but a little Province, it is able to arm 20000 Foot as good as any in *Germany*. Most commonly it is divided into the *Higher*, and the *Lower*; the first confining on *Bohemia*, the last on *Brandenburg*.

Places of most note in the *Higher Lausnitz* are, 1 *Bautzen*, (*Badissinum* the *Latins* call it) the first Town attempted and taken in by the Duke of *Saxony*, when he took upon him the execution of the Emperor's Bann against *Frederick* Elector *Palatine*, then newly chosen King of *Bohemia*. The poor Prince in the mean time was in an ill condition, the *Saxon* being the Head of the *Lutheran*, and the *Bavarian* chief of the *Popish* party, arming both against him. So jealous are both sides of the active and restless *Calvinian* spirit, as to leave no means unassaied for the suppressing of it. Seated it is upon the *Spre*, and for the most part is the Seat of the Governour for the King of *Bohemia*. 2 *Gorlitz*, upon the River *Neisse*, which gave the Title of Duke to *John*, Brother of *Sigismund*, Emperor and King of *Bohemia*, and Father of *Elizabeth*, the last Dutchess of *Luxemburg*, before it fell into the hands of the Dukes of *Burgundy*. A fine neat Town, well frequented, and strongly fortified; founded about the year 1231, and not long after so consumed by a mercileſs Fire, *Anno* 1301, *ut ne unica domus remanserit*, as my Author hath it, that there was not one House left of the old foundation. But it was presently re-built in a more beautiful form, and of more strong materials, than before it was, both publick and private Buildings very neat and elegant. 3 *Zittaw*, on the same River, bordering on *Bohemia*. 4 *Lawben*, 5 *Lubben*, 6 *Camitz*, of which little memorable, but that together with the former they make up those six Towns which are confederate together in a stricter League for the mutual Defence and preservation, but under the Protection, and with the approbation, of the Kings of *Bohemia*. Then in the *Lower Lusatia* there is 7 *Spremberg*, so named from its situation on the River *Spre*, which runneth through the whole Country, and in ancient times was called *Suevus*; supposed by some (and not improbably) either to give name to the *Suevians*, or to take it from them; that potent Nation inhabiting originally betwixt this and the *Elve*. 8 *Tribel*, upon the *Neisse*. 9 *Cotthuse*, upon the *Spre*, or *Suevus*; which, together with some parts of the *Lower Lusatia*, belongs unto the Marquesses of *Brandenburg*.

The first Inhabitants hereof are by some supposed (and but supposed) to be the *Benones* of *Tacitus*; in the partition of these parts of *Germany* amongst the *Sclaves*, made subject to the *Winithi*, or *Venedi*, the greatest and most spreading Nation of all these People. When and by whom first made a Marquisate, I am not able to say for certain; but sure I am, it hath been very much given to the change of Masters. It had first a Marquess of its own; *Conrade* the Marquess hereof, who died in the year 1156. being by the Emperour *Henry* the fifth made Marquess of *Misnia*, added it unto that Estate: and it remained for some time united to it. After, being seised on by the *Poles*, it was sold to *Frederick* the second, Marquess and Elector of *Brandenburg*; who, keeping *Cotthuse* and some other Towns bordering next upon him in his own possession, surrendred the rest on Composition to *George* King of *Bohemia*, claiming it from a Grant made by *Henry* the fourth to *Vratislaus* the first *Bohemian* King, *An.* 1087. A Grant on which no Possession followed, unless it were the Homage and acknowledgment of the Princes of it, holding it afterwards of that Crown as the Lord in chief.

Thus have we brought these four Provinces into the power and possession of the Kings of *Bohemia*, remaining still distinct in their Laws and Governments, (as several limbs of the great Body of the *Sclaves* made up into one Estate) though joined together in the person of one supream Governour, who is severally admitted & acknowledged by each Province distinctly for it self, and not by any one of them in the name of the rest. Out of all which so laid together there may be raised the summ of three millions of Crowns yearly for the King's Revenues, towards the defrayment of all Charges.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Mars*, a Lion with a forked Tail *Luna*, crowned *Sol*. Which Arms was first given by *Frederick Barbarossa* to *Vladislaus* the third, made by him King of *Bohemia*, in regard of the good Service he had done him at the Siege of *Millain*. And though *Vladislaus* was deposed by the States of that Kingdom, because never formally and legally elected by them; yet his Successors keep those Arms to this very day.

15. *BRANDENBURG.*

THE Marquisate of *BRANDENBURG* is bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Poland*, on the West with the Dukedom of *Saxony*, on the North with *Pomerania* and part of *Mecklenburg*, and on the South with *Misnia*, *Lusatia* and *Silesia*. So called from *Brandenburg*, the chief Town of it, and because once the *Marches* of the Empire against the *Sclaves*: divided afterwards into the *Old*, the *New*, and the *Middle Marches*, according as they were extended farther towards *Poland* by little and little, as the Emperours were able to get ground of those potent people.

The Country containeth in length from East to West 60 *Dutch*, or 240 *Italian*, miles, and is of correspondent breadth; the whole compass making up 540 miles of the last accompt. Within which Tract are comprehended 55 Cities and walled Towns, 80 Towns of trade, (*Mark-Steten*, or Market-Towns, as they commonly call them) 38 Castles or Mansion-houses of Noblemen, 17 Monasteries, and 10 Parks well stored with Beasts of game: the Country otherwise (considering the Extent thereof) being but thinly inhabited, nor well provided of necessaries, excepting Corn, of which these North-East Countries afford very great plenty.

The Religion of this Country is for the most part according to the form and Doctrine of *Luther*; first introduced and authorized by Marquess *Joachim* the first. In which estate it continued till the Breach betwixt *George-William*, the Father of the present Elector, and the *Palatine* of *Newburg*. At which time the *Palatine*, having married

married a Daughter of *Bavaria*, the moſt potent Prince of the Popiſh party, reconciled himſelf to the Church of *Rome*, the better to aſſure himſelf of the Aid of *Spain*: and this Elector, having married a Siſter of *Frederick* the fifth, Prince Elector *Palatine*, the moſt potent Prince of the *Calvinians*, declared himſelf to be of that Party and Opinion, the better to aſſure himſelf to the Aid of *Holland*, Anno 1614. But when on the perſuaſions of his Wife, he ſet out an Edict for ſuppreſſing the *Lutheran* Forms, and authorizing the *Calvinian* only, throughout his Dominions, (which was the year 1615) the people of this Marquiſate roſe in Arms againſt him: the difference being thus compoſed, that the *Lutheran* Forms only ſhould be uſed in all the Churches of the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, for the contentation of the people; and that the Marquiſate ſhould have the exerciſe of his new Religion for himſelf, his Lady, and thoſe of their Opinion, in his private Chappels.

1. *ALTE-MARCK*, or the *OLD MARCK*, ſo called becauſe the ancient *Marches* of the Empire againſt the *Sclaves*, lieth betwixt *Lunenburg* and the *Elb*, withwhich it is bounded on the Eaſt. The chief Towns thereof are, 1. *Tangermund*, on the *Elb*, where it receives the River *Tanagra* or *Angra*; honoured ſometimes with the Reſidence of *Charles* the fourth. 2. *Steindall*, the chief of theſe Old Marches. 3. *Soltwedel*, divided into two Towns, the old and the new. 4. *Gardeleben*, fortified with the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſhimp*. 5. *Oſterburg*, 6. *Senbuſen*, ſaid by ſome, but falſly, to be ſo called from the *Senones*, whom they would make the old Inhabitants, of this Country, (by all good Writers made to be originally a *Gallick* Nation.) 7. *Werb*, of which little memorable.

In the *MIDDLE MARCHES*, or *UPPER-MARCK*, lying betwixt the *Elb* and the River *Oder*, the Towns of moſt note are, 1. *Butzaw*, a Commendatory of the Templers in former times. 2. *Spandaw*, upon the *Spre*, a well-fortified piece. 3. *Oderburg*, called ſo from that River, on which it is ſituate; remarkable for a ſtrong Caſtle built by Marqueſs *Albert* the ſecond, at which all Paſſengers by water are to pay their Toll. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhop's See, the Seat of the Lords Marchers in former times, taking name from hence: by ſome ſaid to be built by *Brennus*, Captain of the *Gauls*; more truly by one *Brando*, a Prince of the *Franconians*, *Anno Ch.* 140. 5. *Franckford* (for diſtinction ſake) named *ad Oderam*, on which River it is ſituate; the Soil about it being ſo plentifully ſtored with Corn and Wines, that it is not eaſie to affirm whether *Bacchus* or *Ceres* be moſt enamoured of it. It was made an Univerſity by Marqueſs *Joachim Anno* 1506. and is alſo a flouriſhing and famous Empory, though not comparable to that of the other *Franckford*, ſeated on the *Maine*. 6. *Berlin*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Marqueſs, ſituate on the River *Spre*, (or *Suevus*) which, riſing in *Luſatia*, falleth into the *Albis*. 7. *Havelburg*, on the River *Havel*, a Biſhop's See, who acknowledgeth the Archbiſhop of *Magdeburg* for his Metropolitan.

3. In the *NEW-MARCK*, extending from the *Oder* to the Borders of *Poland*, and called ſo becauſe laſt conquered, and added to the account of the *German* Empire, there is *Cuſtrin*, a very ſtrong and defenſible Town, ſeated on the two Rivers *Warta* and *Odera*, fortified with great charge by *John*, Son of Marqueſs *Joachim*, and by him intended for his Seat. 2. *Sunnenberg*, and 3. *Landſperg*, both upon the *Warta*. 4. *Soldin*, in former times the chief of this *Marck*. 5. *Berlinch*, or *New Berlin*: and 6. *Falkenburg*, a ſtrong Town, and fortified with as ſtrong a Caſtle, towards *Pomerania*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Varini* and *Naithones*, part of the great Nation of the *Suevians*; and after them the *Helvoldi*, *Wilini*, *Beirani*, and other Tribes of the *Winithi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of it. But *Brandenburg* being wone from them by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt, *An.* 920, (at what time the Goſpel was firſt preached amongſt them) the Country hereabouts was given by him to *Sigefride* Earl of *Rengelheim*, (eldeſt Son of *Theodorick*, the ſecond Earl of *Oldenburg*,) a valiant Gentleman, with the Title of *Marqueſs*, or *Lord Marcher*; *Anno* 927, upon condition that he ſhould defend thoſe Marches (the *Old Mark*, as they now call it) againſt the *Sclaves*. Theſe Marqueſſes were at the firſt Officiary, at the appointment of the Emperor, and to him accomptable. *Sigard*, the fourth from *Sigefride*, governing here for *Otho* the third, was the firſt Elector of theſe Marqueſſes, and *Udo*, the ſecond of that name, and third from *Sigard*, the laſt that held this Honour at the Emperor's pleaſure; that Dignity after his deceaſe being made hereditary in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, ſirnamed *Urſus*, by the Emperor *Frederick Barbaroſſa*. Which *Albert* having very much enlarged his Border by the Conqueſt and extermination of the *Sclaves*, cauſed the unpeopled Country to be planted with new *Dutch* Colonies out of *Holland*, *Zeland*, *Flanders*, and thoſe parts of the *Netherlands*. The Houſe of this *Albert* being extinct in *John* the fourth, it was given by the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria* to *Lewis* his Son; by *Otho*, the Brother of that *Lewis*, ſold for 200000 Ducats unto *Charles* the fourth; by *Sigiſmund*, the Son of *Charles*, to *Jodocus* Marqueſs of *Moravia*: but afterwards being redeemed again, it was by the ſaid *Sigiſmund* conferred on *Frederick* Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, in recompence of his faithful ſervice in the Wars of *Hungary* & *Bohemia*. In his poſterity it remaineth, but much increaſed in power and Patrimony, by the additions of the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Marquiſates of *Onſpach* and *Jagerndorff*, the Earldom of *Marck* in *Weſtphalen*, now a part of *Cleveland*, the Lordſhips of *Priguitz* and *Croſſen* in *Sileſia*, the Towns of *Hoff* and *Culmbach* in *Voitland*, with the County of *Raphin*, and the Town & Territory of *Cottbuſe* in the Lower *Luſatia*. Inſomuch that this is now the moſt powerful Family in all *Germany*. The Marqueſſes hereof from *Sigefride* to *Albert*, the Son of *Urſe*, &c. follow in this order.

The Marqueſſes of *BRANDENBURG*.

A. C.

927 1. *Sigefride*, Earl of *Rengelheim*, made the firſt Marqueſs of this Border by the Emperor *Henry* the firſt.

2. *Gero*, by the appointment of *Otho* the firſt.

3. *Bruno*, Earl of *Within*, created Marqueſs hereof by the ſame Emperor.

4. *Hugh*, the Son of *Bruno*, by the favour of *Otho* the third.

5. *Sigard*, the Brother of *Hugh*, made by the ſame Emperor the firſt Marqueſs-Elector.

6. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Sigard*, outed of his Command by *Miſtivoius*, one of the Princes, of the *Sclaves* named *Obotriti*.

7. *Udo*, Earl of *Soltwedel*, (the *Sclaves* being beaten and expulſed) created Marqueſs and Elector by *Conrade* the 2.

8. *Udo* II. Son of *Udo* the firſt, proſcribed by *Henry* the 4. for joining with *Rodolph* Duke of *Schwaben* in the War againſt him.

9. *Primiſlaus*, King of the *Obotriti*, (the Anceſtor of the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*) was advanced unto theſe Honors by the ſaid *Henry* the 4. and held them unto his death. After which it was made

made hereditary by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, in the perſon of *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the Son of *Urſus*.

1152 10. *Albert* of *Anhalt*, the firſt hereditary Marqueſs, Father of *Bernard*, who was created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, in the place of *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, by the Emperour *Frederick Barbaroſſa*.

11. *Otho*, Son of *Albert*.

12. *Otho* II. Son of *Otho* the 1.

13. *Albert* II. Brother of *Otho* the 2.

14. *John*, Son of *Albert* the 2.

15. *John* II. Son of *John* the 1.

16. *Conrade*, Brother of *John* the 2.

17. *John* III. Son of *Conrade*.

18. *Waldemar*, Brother of *John* the 3.

19. *Waldemar* II. Nephew of *Waldemar* the 1. by his Brother *Henry*.

20. *John* IV. Brother of *Waldemar* the ſecond, the laſt Marqueſs of the Houſe of *Anhalt*; the Marquiſate eſcheating to the Empire for want of Heirs.

21. *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, created Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg* by his Father, the Emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, on the ſaid eſcheat.

22. *Lewis* II. ſirnamed the *Roman*, on the Reſignation of his Brother ſucceeded in the Marquiſate and Electoral Dignity.

23. *Otho*, Brother to *Lewis* the firſt and ſecond, who ſold the Marquiſate & Electoral Dignity to *Charles* the fourth.

24. *Wenceſlaus*, Son of *Charles* the fourth, afterwards King of *Bohemia* and Emperor of the *Romans*.

25. *Sigiſmund*, Brother of *Wenceſlaus*, Emperor of the *Romans*, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Earl of *Luxenburg*; who ſold this Marquiſate to *Jodocus* Marqueſs of *Moravia*, and having afterwards redeemed it, conferred the ſame on

1417 26. *Frederick*, Burgrave of *Nurenberg*, ſolemnly inveſted herein at the Council of *Conſtance Anno* 1414, for which Inveſtiture he paid unto the Emperor the ſum of 400000 Crowns.

1440 27. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the firſt, to whom the Emperor *Frederick* the 3. gave the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

1470 28. *Albert*, Brother of *Frederick* the 2. called the *Achilles* of *Germany*, relinquiſhed to *Bugeſlaus* the 10. the poſſeſſion of *Pomeren*; but his Succeſſors ever ſince have retained the Title, and kept on foot their Pretenſions to it. From *Frederick* his ſecond Son deſcended *Albert* the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Frederick* the firſt Marqueſs of *Onſpach*, *George* the firſt Marqueſs *Jagerndorff*, and *Albert* called the *Alcibiades* of *Germany*, who ſo haraſſed *Franconia* in the days of *Charles* the fifth.

1486 29. *John*, Son of *Albert*.

1499 30. *Joachim*, Son of *John*, who founded the Univerſity of *Francford*, *Anno* 1506, and autho rized the Reformation of Religion in his time begun.

1535 31. *Joachim* II. Son of *Joachim* the firſt.

1571 32. *John-George*, Son of *Joachim* the ſecond.

33. *Joachim-Frederick*, Son of *John-George*.

34. *John-Sigiſmund*, Son of *Joachim-Frederick*, who had to Wife the Lady *Anne*, Daughter of *Albert-Frederick* the ſecond Duke of *Pruſſia*, and of *Mary-Eleanor* his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *William* the firſt, Duke of *Cleve*.

1620 35. *George-William*, Son of *John Sigiſmund* and the Lady *Anne*, claiming in her right the Dukedoms of *Cleve*, *Gulick* and *Berg*, the Earldoms of *Mark* and *Ravenſpurg*, and the Seigniory of *Ravenſtein*; which he poſſeſſed a while, divided with his Couſin *Wolfgangus* Palatine of *Newburg*, Son of *Magdalen* the younger Siſter of *Mary-Eleanor*. But falling out about their Partage, the Palatine of *Newburg* called in the *Spaniard*, and the Father of this Marqueſs, in behalf of his Son, called in the Confederate *States* of the *Netherlands*, to aſſert their Titles. After the death of *Bugeſlaus* the laſt Duke of *Pomerania*, he was to have ſucceeded alſo in that Eſtate, then poſſeſſed by the *Swede*. Of the Agreement made between them, and the great Accrument thereby following to the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, we ſhall ſpeak more there.

36. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William*, now Elector of *Brandenburg*.

The Territories of this Family are the greateſt, as before is ſaid, of any in *Germany*, but a great part thereof is very barren, and his Subjects in thoſe parts as poor as the Country; much of his new acceſſions yielding little but the Titles only. So that neither in Revenue or Power he is able to keep rank with the Duke of *Saxony*: his ordinary Revenue hardly amounting at the utmoſt to 200000 *l. per annum*, which is but half of the Receipts of the Duke of *Saxony*.

The Arms hereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Gules*, membred and beaked *Or*.

16. *POMERANIA*.

POMERANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pruſſia*, from which it is parted by the River *Weyſſel*, or *Viſtula*; on the Weſt with *Mecklenburg*, divided from it by the River *Bartze*; on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, extended on the Coaſt hereof for the ſpace of 200 *Engliſh* miles; and on the South with the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*. So named from the *Pomorizi*, or *Pomerani*, a Nation of the *Sclaves*, to whoſe ſhare it fell; or from the ſituation of it on the Sea-ſhore, as the word in the *Sclavonian* doth ſeem to import.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, abundantly fruitful in Corn, carried hence to *Dantzick*, and tranſported thence to all parts of Chriſtendom in their times of Scarcity: yielding alſo good ſtore of Paſturage, and great Herds of Cattel; with plenty of Butter, Cheeſe, Honey, and ſome reaſonable quantities of Flax. Populous it is, and thoſe people of very ſtrong Conſtitution, as living under a ſharp and piercing Air. The whole is divided into the Continent, and the Iſlands: the Continent into 1. the *Upper Pomeren*, bordering upon *Mecklenburg*, extended from the *Bartze* to the River *Oder*; 2. the *Lower*, reaching from the *Oder* to that part hereof which is now called 3. *Pomerellia*, betwixt it and *Pruſſia*, ſubject of long time to the Crown of *Poland*, and there we ſhall hear farther of it.

Chief places in the *UPPER* are, 1. *Bardt*, at the mouth of the River *Bartze*, taking name from thence; a well-traded Town, and many times the Seat of the Dukes of this hithermoſt *Pomeren*. 2. *Walgaſt*, upon the *Baltick* Sea, over againſt the Iſle of *Uſedom*, the chief of this part of *Pomeren*, from whence the Dukes hereof are called the Dukes of *Pomeren Wolgaſt*; the firſt Town taken in by

by *Gustavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, in his famous War for relief of *Germany*, *Anno* 1630. 3. *Straelsund*, a Town of great Trading and much resort, seated upon the same Sea also, opposite to the Isle of *Rugen*; a Town of great name in the course of the *German* Wars. 4. *Gripswald*, on the same Sea, betwixt *Wolgast* and *Straelsund*, made an University, *Anno* 1456. 5. *Anclam*, upon the River *Pone*. 6. *Tribbesees*, situate on a Lake out of which the said River hath its course.

Then in the *LOWER Pomeren* there is 7. *Camin*, an Episcopal See, situate on the *Baltick* Shore, over against the Isle of *Wollin*. 8. *Colberg*, a strong Town on the same Shore also, at the fall of the *Persant* into the Sea. 9. *Cosslin*, the last Sea-Town of this Tract lying towards *Prussia*. 10. *Stargard*, on the *Ina*, more within the Land; as is also 11. *Griffenberg* upon the *Rega*, and 12. *Stetin* on the *Oder*, once a poor Fisher-Town, now the Metropolis of this part of the Country; rising to this greatness (after the embracing of Christianity) by the fall of *Vineta*, formerly the chief Mart-Town of all these parts; the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of the Lower *Pomerania*, the Dukes of *Pomeren-Stetin*, as for distinction sake they are used to call them.

The Islands hereunto pertaining are those of *Rugen*, *Wollin*, *Usedom*, touched upon before, but now more punctually to be handled. That of most note is *RUGEN*, over against *Straelsund*, from which it is divided only by a narrow Streight, in length seven *Dutch* miles, and as much in breadth; so that the Compass of it, if it were exactly round, would amount to 20 *German*, or 100 *Italian* miles; and yet it was once bigger than it is. But in the year 1309, by the force of an outragious Tempest, a great part of it, lying towards the South-east, as far as to the Isle of *Ruden*, (then conjunct hereto) was torn away, and sunk so deep into the bottom of the Sea, that now the greatest Ships that be sail over it. The Island is plentiful of Corn, the Granary of *Straelsund*, as they call it commonly; and reasonably well stored with Cattel; full of Bays, Creeks, and winding Shores, with many and vast Promontories thrusting into the Sea, which gives them great increase of Fishing. Anciently it belonged to the Crown of *Denmark*, till given by *Waldemar* the third to *Bugislaus* and *Barnimus* Dukes of *Pomeren*: continuing ever since part of that Estate. The chief Town of it is called *Bergen*, situate in the midst of the Island, but not containing above 400 Families. Others of less note and estimation being, 2. *Sagart*. 3. *Wick*. 4. *Bingst*, &c. small Towns compared with Villages upon the Continent, but the best they have. And yet so populous is the Island, that they are able to arm 7000 good fighting men, if there be occasion.

The second of the three, in repute and bigness, is that of *WOLLIN*, situate over against *Camin*: so called from *Wollin* the chief Town, (*Julinum* it is called in *Latine*) made an Episcopal See by *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of this Nation, which on the Sackage of this City was removed to *Camin*. A Town which once so flourished in Trassick, that it gave place to none but *Constantinople*: the *Russians*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, &c. having here their particular Streets. But being miserably sacked by *Waldemar* King of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1170. most of the Trade hereof was removed to *Lubeck*, since which time it never could come near its former glories.

The last in reputation is that of *USEDOM*, seated betwixt both, not far from *Wolgast*; so called from *Usedom* the chief Town in it, of which little observable. All three were the Habitation of the ancient *Rugii*, who under *Odoacer* K. of the *Heruli* subverted the Western Empire, conquered *Italy*, and made themselves Masters of it, till subdued by the *Goths*. Those which remained in these Islands became after subject to the *Sclaves*, and had once Kings of their own: the first whose name occurs in Story being *Crito*, the Son of *Ratze*, a puissant Prince, extending his Dominions into *Holstein*, *Ditmarsh*, and the City of *Lubeck*, which he built about the year 1100, afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Adolph* the 2. Earl of *Holstein*, by some esteemed the Founder of it. But his Issue-male failing in the year 1326, it fell by Compact made between them to the Dukes of *Pomeren*, to whom these Islands ever since have continued subject.

And as for *Pomeren* it self, the old Inhabitants thereof were part of the *Rugii* before mentioned, the *Reudigni*, *Longi-Nani*, and *Longi-Diduni*, with parts of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*; into whose void rooms the *Pomortzi* and other Tribes of the *Winithi* (the most potent Nation of the *Sclaves*) did in fine succeed, extending their Dominions to the Banks of the *Vistula*, the parts adjoining unto which, to difference them from *Pomeren*, were called *Pomerellia*. But that part of it being given by *Mestovinus*, the last Prince thereof, dying without Issue, *Anno* 1295, to *Primislaus* Duke of *Poland*; the name and power of the Princes or Dukes of *Pomerania* became confined within narrower Bounds than at first they had. The first Prince of it whom we meet with on good record was one *Barnimus*, of the noble *Gryphonian* Family, *Anno* 933, whose Grandson *Suantiborus* commanded over all this Tract. But his Dominions being parted betwixt his Sons, *Bugislaus*, who had *Pomerellia*, retained the Language and old Customs of the *Sclavonians*; *Wartislaus*, who possessed the residue, conformed himself to the Laws and Language of the *Saxons*: the Country being by that means accounted for a part of *Germany*, and added unto the Empire an account thereof in the time of *Frederick Barbarossa*, by whom *Bugislaus* and *Casimir*, Sons of *Wartislaus* were made Princes of the Empire and Dukes of *Pomeren*. The Estate being afterwards divided betwixt *Bugislaus* and *Otho*, Sons of *Barnimus* the first, and the Houle of *Otho* failing in the person of *Otho* the third, that part hereof was given by the Emperor *Frederick* the third to *Frederick* the 2. Marques and Elector of *Brandenburg*, the cause of much Contention amongst these Marquesses and the other House of the Dukes of *Pomeren*, which was thus agreed at last, That both Princes should continue the Arms and Title, the Possession of it to be yielded to the Duke of *Pomeren*, on the failing of whose Issue-male it should descend upon the Heirs of the House of *Brandenburg*. The Succession of these Princes followeth in this order.

The Dukes of *POMERANIA*.

1. *Wartislaus*, the first Christian Prince of the *Pomeranians*, Baptized by *Otho* Bishop of *Bamberg*, Anno 1124.

1128 2. *Bugislaus*, Son of *Wartislaus*, created by *Frederick Barbarossa* the first Duke of *Pomeren*.

1188 3. *Bugislaus* II. Son of *Bugislaus*, planted the void parts of *Pomeren* with *Saxon* Colonies.

1222 4. *Barnimus*, Son of *Bugislaus* the second: after whose death *Pomeren* was divided into two Principalities.

Dukes of *WOLGAST*.			Dukes of *STETIN*.	
1277	5. *Bugeslaus* II. Son of *Barnimus*.	1277	1. *Otho*, Duke of *Pomeren-Stetin*.	
1319	6. *Wartislaus*, Son to *Bugislaus*.	1345	2. *Casimir*, Son of *Otho*.	
1326	7. *Barnimus* II.	1368	3. *Casimir* II. Son of *Casimir*.	
1365	8. *Wartislaus* II.			1374

1394 9. *Barnimus* III.
1405 10. *Wartiſlaus* III.
1456 11. *Ericus*, Son of *Wartiſlaus*.
1413 12. *Bugiſlaus* III. commonly called the tenth, the younger Princes of both Houſes making up the tale, ſucceeded
1374 4. *Suantiborus*, Brother of *Caſimir* the 2.
1433 5. *Caſimir* III. Son of *Suantiborus*.
1451 6. *Joachim*, Son of *Caſimir* the 3.
7. *Otho* III. Son of *Joachim*, dyed without Iſſue, *Anno* 1464.

Otho the third in that part of *Pomeren*, uniting ſo the whole into one Eſtate.

1523 13. *George*, Son of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth.
1531 14. *Philip*, Son of *George*, in whoſe time the Reformation made by *Luther* was admitted into *Pomerania*.
1583 15. *Bugiſlaus* IV. but the 13. in the *Dutch* account, Son of *Philip*; his younger Brother *Erneſtus-Ludovicus* having that of *Stetin* for his ſhare.
16. *Bugiſlaus* V. and 14. Son of *Bugiſlaus* the 4. born in the year 1580, ſucceeded in *Pomeren* of *Wolgaſt*; as *Philip-Julius*, Son of *Erneſtus-Ludovicus*, did in that of *Stetin*. After whoſe death *Bugiſlaus* became Lord of all *Pomerania*; in a fair way to have loſt all to the prevailing Imperialiſts, had not the timely coming in of the King of *Sweden* ſtopped their violent Progreſs. But *Bugiſlaus* dying without Iſſue in the time of the War, and in him the Male-iſſue of the Houſe of *Bugiſlaus* the tenth being quite extinguiſhed, *George-William*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, put in his claim for the Eſtate, according to the compact and Agreement ſpoken of before. Betwixt whom & the *Swedes* (who, under colour of aiding the laſt Duke, had poſſeſſed themſelves of all the ſtrongeſt places in the Country) it was accorded and concluded at the Treaty of *Munſter*, that all the Higher *Pomerania*, with the Iſles of *Rugen* and *Wollin*, and the Town of *Stetin*, ſhould from thenceforth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*: the Lower *Pomeren* to be enjoyed by the Houſe of *Brandenburg*, ſo long as the Male-Iſſue laſteth; on default whereof, that alſo to be added unto that Crown: the Arms and Titles to be uſed by both promiſcuouſly. And in regard the Marqueſs of *Brandenburg* was to part with the Upper *Pomeren* for the Contentation of the *Swedes*, (without which no firm Peace could be made in *Germany*;) it was alſo there agreed upon, that the Temporal Eſtates of the Biſhopricks of *Halberſtad*, *Minden* and *Camin*, together with that of *Magdeburg*, (after the deceaſe of the preſent Biſhop) ſhould be for ever added to the poſſeſſions of that Houſe; the Marqueſſes and Electors of it to be thenceforth intituled Dukes of *Magdeburg*, Princes of *Halberſtad* and *Minden*. But what will be the iſſue of theſe Concluſions future Times muſt ſhew.

The Arms of *Pomeren* are a *Gryphon*.

17. *MECKLENBURG.*

THE Dukedom of *MECLENBURG* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Pomerania*, on the Weſt with *Holſtein*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Denmark*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South with *Brandenburg* and *Saxon-Lawenburg*. Só called from *Mecklenburg*, or *Megalopolis*; (both names, in the ſeveral Languages of the *Dutch* and *Greeks*, ſignifying *a great City*,) a great Town of that name here being in the time of the *Heruli* and the *Vandals*, (the old Inhabitants of theſe parts) whoſe chief City it was; but on their leaving of this Country decayed to nothing. The Country is of the ſame nature as *Pomerania*, and as rich in Corn.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Wiſmar*, a noted Port, on a Creek or Bay of the *Baltick* Sea; raiſed out of the Ruines of old *Mecklenburg* before mentioned, about the year 1240. The Haven hereof is capable of the greateſt Veſſels, to which it gives a ſafe and aſſured Station, whence the name of *Wiſmar*; the word ſignifying, in the *Sclavonian* Language, *idem ac Certum mare*, (as my Author hath it) as much as a quiet or ſafe Sea. Now one of the *Hanſe*-Towns, and being it lies conveniently for the uſe of the *Swedes*, allotted to that Crown by the Treaty of *Munſter*; the Duke of *Mecklenburg* being in recompence thereof to have the Temporalities of the Biſhopricks of *Swerin* and *Ratzenburg*. 2. *Swerin*, ſeated upon the South-ſide of the Lake ſo named; an Epiſcopal See, and honoured with giving the Title of a Barony to the Dukes of *Mecklenburg*. 3. *Malchow*, firſt walled by *Niclot* Prince of the *Vandals*, *Anno* 1270. 4. *Ratzenburg*, an Epiſcopal See, ſpoken of before. 5. *Roſtock*, the next in reputation of all the *Hanſe*-Towns to *Lubeck* and *Dantzick*; large, rich, and much frequented by all ſorts of Merchants; in compaſs almoſt ſix *Engliſh* miles; ſituate on the River *Warn*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*; honoured with an Univerſity, here founded by *John* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1419, the firſt Profeſſors in it being brought from *Erfort* in *Saxony*. 6. *Stargard*, which once gave the Title of Duke to the younger Princes of this Houſe. 7. *Sarentine*, memorable for a Nunnery there founded by Duke *Magnus* the ſecond. 8. *Lau*, built and fortified by Duke *Henry* the ſecond, as an Outwork to *Roſtock*, which he had lately bought of *Chriſtopher* then K. of *Denmark*. 9. *Sternberg*, of which little memorable. 10. *Fridland*, on the edge of *Pomeren*, not far from *Stargard*, which gave the Title of Duke to *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, after that called Duke of *Fridland*, that eminent and proſperous Commander of the Imperial Forces in the late War of *Germany*; who was miſerably murthered after all his Services by command of the Emperour. 11. *Fitchtel*, both pleaſantly and ſtrongly ſeated on the edge of a Lake. 12. *Dammin* a ſtrong Town on the Marches of *Brandenburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were the *Vandals*, with the reſt of the *Heruli* and *Burgundians*. But the *Burgundians*, being reckoned as a part of the *Vandals*, were not much took notice of, till their Irruptions on the Borders of the *Roman* Empire made them more conſiderable: the Princes of theſe Nations uſing no other Title than Kings of the *Heruli* and *Vandals*. Of theſe the firſt is ſaid to be one *Anthyrius*, Son of an *Amazonian* Lady, who learned his firſt Rudiments of Warfare under *Alexander* the Great. Out of his Loins deſcended a long Race of Kings, amongſt whom *Rhadaguiſe*, who together with *Alarick* the *Goth* invaded *Italy*, (I know not by what warrant) is accounted one. *Gunderick*, the ſeventeenth of theſe Kings, weary of ſó cold a Dwelling, paſſed towards the South; and, having harraſſed *Gaul* and *Spain*, ſhipped himſelf over the Streights of *Gibralter*, and erected the Kingdom of the *Vandals* in *Africk*; whoſe Succeſſors we ſhall meet with there. By *Vitalaus*, the youngeſt Son of *Genſericus*, the Son of *Gunderick*, the Line of theſe Princes is continued; who after mingling with the *Obotriti* and other of the *Sclaves*, ſucceeding into the void places of the *Vandals*, left off the Title of Kings of the *Vandals*, and called themſelves Kings of the *Heruli* and *Obotriti*; continuing it to *Pribiſlaus* (or *Primiſlaus* the ſecond, who wrote himſelf, *Pribiſlaus, Dei gratiâ, Herulorum, Wagriorum, Circipanorum, Palumborum, Obotritorum, Kiſſinorum, Vandalorúmque Rex*, making herein a general Muſter of thoſe Tribes of the *Sclaves* and *Heruli* which remained under his command. But he being vanquiſhed

quiſhed by *Henry* ſurnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, the Title of *King* was laid aſide; his Succeſſors contenting themſelves with that of *Princes*. The Eſtate was divided betwixt *Henry* and *Niclot*, the Nephews of *Pribiſlaus* by his Son *Henry*, into two Eſtates, *Henry* aſſuming to himſelf the Title of Prince of the *Obotriti*, and *Niclot* that of Prince of the *Vandals*. But the poſterity of *Niclot* failing in *William*, the laſt of that Line, *Anno* 1430, his Title with the Lands thereunto belonging fell to *Henry* the Fat, the fourth Duke of *Meclenburg*, to which Honour *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry* the fourth, deſcended from the elder Houſe, had been advanced by the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, at *Prague*, *Anno* 1348. The Succeſſion of which Family from *Pribiſlaus* take in order thus:

The Princes of the *HERULI*, and Dukes of *MECKLENBURG*.

1158 1. *Pribiſlaus*, the laſt King and firſt Prince of the *Heruli*, after their Subjection to the *Saxons*, reſtored to this Title and his former Eſtate by the bountiful Conquerours, to be held under the Right and Homage of the Houſe of *Saxony*.

1179 2. *Henry*, Son of *Pribiſlaus*, baptized with all his people in his Father's life-time, by the perſwaſion of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, by whom they were reſtored to their Eſtates.

3. *Henry* II. Son of the former *Henry*, dividing the Eſtate with his Brother *Niclot*.

1228 4. *John*, ſurnamed the Divine, ſo called, becauſe created Doctor of Divinity in the Univerſity of *Paris*, whither he was ſent by his Father to learn good Arts.

1260 5. *Henry* III. ſurnamed of *Hieruſalem*, becauſe of his Expedition thither againſt the *Saracens*.

1302 6. *Henry* IV. ſurnamed the Lion, for his Valour and undaunted Conſtancy.

1319 7. *Albert* and *John*, the Sons of *Henry*, going to *Prague* with a Princely Train to attend on the Emperour *Charles* the fourth, were by him created Princes of the Empire, and Dukes of *Mecklenburg*, *Anno* 1348.

1380 8. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert*.

1384 9. *John*, Son of *Magnus*, the Founder of the Univerſity of *Roſtock*, *Anno* 1419.

1423 10. *Henry* V. ſurnamed the Fat, who, on the death of *William* the laſt Prince of the *Vandals*, ſucceeded into his Eſtate.

1447 11. *Magnus* II. Son of *Henry*, Founder of the Cathedral Church of *Roſtock*.

1503 12. *Albert* II. Son of *Magnus* the ſecond.

1547 13. *John Albert*, Son of *Albert* the ſecond, endowed the Univerſity of *Roſtock* with the Lands of ſome diſſolved Monaſteries, and authorized in his Eſtates the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*.

1578 14. *John* III. Son of *John Albert*.

1592 15. *Adolph Frederick* and *John Albert*, Sons of *John* the third, diſpoſſeſſed hereof by the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond, *An.* 1628, their Eſtates, with the Title of Duke of *Mecklenburg*, being conferred on *Albert* of *Wallenſtein*, Duke of *Fridland*; who had not long enjoyed the Title, when *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, the Aſſertor of the Liberties of *Germany*, reſtored it to the proper Owners. The Heir to whoſe Eſt — is *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the only Son and Heir of *John Albert*; the other of theſe two Brothers dying without Iſſue.

18. The Dukedom and Eſtates of *SAXONY*.

THE Dukedom and Eſtates of *SAXONY* (not reckoning thoſe which now paſs under other Names, and ſhall hereafter be deſcribed in their ſeveral places) are bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and parts of *Lunenburg* and *Holſtein*; on the North with other parts of *Brandenburg*, and part of *Mecklenburg*; and on the South with *Franconia*, and ſome parts of the *Upper Palatinate*.

It is (we ſee) an aggregate Body, conſiſting of two general Limbs; 1. the Dukedom of *Saxony*, 2. the Eſtates of *Saxony*, or *Saxony* properly ſo called: the firſt containing the whole Provinces of 1. *Ober-Sax*, or the *Upper Saxony*, the proper Seat of the Duke Elector, 2. *Miſnia*, 3. *Voitland*, and 4. *Thuringia*; the other thoſe of 1. *Anhal*. 2. *Mansfield*, 3. *Meydeburg*, and 4. *Lawenburg*. And as it is an aggregate Body, ſo is it comprehenſive of all thoſe honourary Titles by which the Princes of *Germany* are diſtinguiſhed from one another; that is to ſay, the Electorſhip of *Saxony*, the Dukedom of *Lawenburg*, the Biſhoprick of *Meydeburg*, the Principality of *Anhalt*, the Marquiſate of *Miſnia*, the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, and the Seigniory or Lordſhip of *Voitland*. Of theſe eight Provinces, the 4 firſt mentioned are wholly ſituate without the Limits and Precincts of the ancient *Saxony*; and yet now are, and have been called long before, the Dukedom of *Saxony*, becauſe they make up the whole Patrimony and Eſtate of the Dukes Electors, who, ſince the Proſcription and Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, ſurnamed the Lion, *Anno* 1180, in ſome or other of theſe Countries have had their fixed Seat and Habitation. The four laſt, being parts of the ancient *Saxony*, and heretofore in the poſſeſſion of the Dukes hereof, do ſtill paſs under the account and name of *Saxony*, though in the hands of ſeveral Owners; all which do acknowledge a Superiority in the Duke Elector, if not ſome great Relation to him and Dependence on him: ſo that we have an heterogeneous Body to diſcourſe upon, and therefore muſt conſider ſeverally of the parts thereof, but ſo, that either firſt or laſt we ſhall find them all in the Succeſſion and Affairs of the Dukes of *Saxony*. 1. then,

The *DUKEDOM* of *Saxony* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bohemia*, *Luſatia*, and part of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Haſſia*, and part of the proper *Saxony*; on the North with the proper *Saxony* only; and on the South with *Franconia*, and the Upper *Palatinate*. So called, becauſe the proper Seat and Patrimony of the Duke-Elector: of very different nature both for Air and Soil, but the laſt eſpecially; as we ſhall ſee by looking over the particular Provinces of 1. *Ober-Sax*, 2. *Miſnia*, or *Meiſſen*, 3. *Voitland*, 4. *Thuringia*, by the *Dutch* called *Duringen*.

1. *OBER-SAX*, or the *Upper Saxony*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Marches of *Brandenburg*, on the Weſt with *Mansfield*, from which it is parted by the River *Sala*, on the North with *Meydeburg*, on the South with *Miſnia*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. The Air hereof is ſomewhat ſharp and piercing, the Soil ſufficiently fruitful, but therein not to be compared with *Miſnia*, and much leſs with *Durengen*, being both of them of a richer and more liberal nature.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Torgaw*, by ſome placed in *Miſnia*, but by *Mercator* in this Province; built

on the West side of the *Elve*, in form orbicular, and falling every way from the sides of a Mountain; beautified with a stately and pleasant Castle belonging to the Elector of *Saxony*, who is Lord hereof, built by *John-Frederick* the Elector, *Anno* 1535. Near to the City is a Lake of a mile in compass, for which the Citizens pay yearly to the Duke 500 Guldens. 2. *Worlitz*, upon the *Elve*, once a Commandery of the Templars. 3. *Weissenburg*, lying towards *Brunswick*. 4. *Kemburg*, on the *Elve*. 5. *Bitterfeldt*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Mulda*. And 6. *Wittenberg*, on the *Elve*, in an open Plain, but strongly fenced with Walls, Ramparts, and deep Ditches. The chief beauty of it lieth in one fair Street, extending the whole length of the City: in the midst thereof is the Cathedral-Church, a large Market-place, and the Common-Council-house. In former times it was the Seat of the Dukes Electors, till the Electoral Dignity was conferred on the House of *Meissen*, who, liking better their own Country, kept their Courts at *Dresden*, but so, that *Wittenberg* is still acknowledged for the Head City of the Electorate; and was made an University for Divines by Duke *Frederick* *Anno* 1508. It was called *Wittenberg*, as some conjecture, from *Wittikindus*, once Lord of *Saxony*, when the extent thereof was greatest: famous for the Sepulchres of *Luther* and *Melanchthon*, but chiefly for that here were the Walls of Popery first broken down, and the Reformation of Religion begun by *Luther*, of the wonderful success whereof we have spoke already.

Of the Affairs of this little Country we can say but little, more than the means by which it came into the hands of the Dukes of *Saxony*, and consequently to the name which it still retains. Concerning which we are to know, that on the Deprivation of Duke *Henry*, surnamed the Lion, whose Greatness was grown formidable even to the Emperours themselves, the Dukedom of *Saxony* was dismembred into many parcels; *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg* being given unto the Children of the Duke deprived, the lower Parts of *Westphalen* seized on by *Philip* Archbishop of *Colen*, the parts thereof about the *Weser* by the Bishop of *Paderborn*, *Herman* the Lantgrave of *Thuringia* laying hold of that part of this Estate which was nearest to him, *Lubeck* and many other of the principal Cities made Imperial, or governing themselves as Free Estates, the Ancestors of the Princes of *Anhalt* and the Earls of *Mansfield* endowed with large Possessions also out of this great Patrimony; the Emperour not only conniving at it, but willingly consenting to that Dissipation, the better to reward and content those Princes who had assisted him in his Wars against the Duke. By which means there was nothing left of the ancient *Saxony* to be estated upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, whom *Frederick Barbarossa* had created Duke Elector in the room of *Henry* so deprived. And though Duke *Bernard* for his many good Services to the Empire had been before gratified with the City of *Wittenberg* by *Conrade* the 3. and had conquered from Duke *Henry* the whole Country of *Lawenburg*; yet all being found too little to maintain the Port of a Duke Elector, it pleased the Emperour *Frederick* to bestow upon him all those Lands and Territories which lay between the *Sala* and the *Elve*, on the North of *Misnia*, to make *Wittenberg* the Electoral City, and give unto the County thus united to it the name of *Ober-Sax* or *Upper Saxony*, which it continueth to this day.

2. *MISNIA*, or *Meissen*, is bounded on the East with *Lusatia*, on the West with *Duringen*, on the North with *Saxony* specially so called and some part of *Brandenburg*, on the South with *Voitland* & some part of *Bohemia*. The Country was once overspread with Woods, and full of Bogs, rendring the Air unwholsom, and the Soil unprofitable; both rectified by the care and industry of the people; now yielding some Mines of Silver, and great plenty both of Corn and Pasturage; well watered with the Rivers *Sala*, *Plesse*, *Elster*, and *Mulda*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Dresden*, seated on the *Albis*, having continually on her Walls and Bulwarks 150 Pieces of Ordnance; in it a Stable of the Duke's, in which are 128 Horses of service, and a Magazine, out of which 30000 Horse and Foot may be armed at a day's warning. The Town it self is situate on both sides of the River, by which it is divided into the Old Town and the New, joined into one by a Bridge of 800 paces in length. The Country round about it is very rich and pleasant, able to sustain great multitudes. For that cause it was made the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of *Saxony*, who have here a strong and stately Castle. 2. *Naumburg*, 3. *Mersburg*, both seated on the River *Sala*, two Episcopal Sees. 4. *Leipzick*, as famous an University for Philosophers as *Jene* in *Lorrain* is for Phytitians. It seemeth the Scholars and Citizens will not suffer their Beer to perish, of which here is so much drunk and exported, that the very Custom of it due unto the Duke amounteth to 20000 pounds yearly: yet is this Town of no more than two Churches; but wealthy, populous, and built for the most part of fair Free-stone, and honoured with the Courts of Justice for all the Country: Though seated on the meeting of *Plesse*, *Parde*, and *Elster*, 3. Rivers which lie almost on all sides of it; yet it is not strong, having been thrice taken by the Imperialists in less than 2 years during the late *German* Wars. Sufficiently famous (if for nothing else) for the great Battel fought near it between the late King of *Sweden* and the Count of *Tilly*: the honour whereof falling to the *Swedes* and *Saxons*, (with the death of 15000 on both sides, and the loss of all the Baggage, Arms and Ammunition of the Imperialists) freed all these parts of *Germany* from that civil and spiritual Bondage which was intended by the Emperour to be put upon them. 5. *Mulberg*, on the *Elve*, where *John Frederick* the Elector was discomfited and taken prisoner by *Charles* the fifth, and by him deprived not long after of his Estate and Dignity. 6. *Meissen*, on the West-side of the same River, in a hilly and uneven ground, built by the Emperour *Henry* the first for defence of the Empire against the *Sclaves*: a Bishops See, and the first Seat of the Marquesses of this Country, both which, together with the Burgrave of the Town, had their Palaces or Mansion-houses standing close together on the top of a Hill over-looking both the Town and Country. From this Town the whole Province had the name of *Meissen*. 7. *Friberg*, near the Mountains of *Bohemia*, rich in Mines of Silver. 8. *Roclite*, not far from which are rich Mines of Tin, discovered first in these parts by a *Cornish*-man spoken of before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the *Hermanduri* and *Suardones*, subdued or outed by the *Sorabi*, a great Tribe of the *Sclaves* surnamed *Winithi*: first conquered by the Emperour *Henry* the first, who built the strong Town of *Meissen* to keep them under, and to impede the neighbouring *Sclaves* from any Incroachments on the Empire. Being thus added to the Empire and account of *Germany*, it was a while governed by such Officers as by the Emperours were appointed to guard these Marches: the first proprietary Marquess being one *Echard*, Son of the Earl of *Ostland*, (descended from a younger Son of *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*) by the munificence of *Otho* the third: not made hereditary till the time of *Henry* the fifth, who gave it in Fee to *Conrade* Marquess of *Landsperg* and *Lusatia*, whose Nephew *Theodorick* by his Son *Otho*, surnamed the Rich, married *Judith*, Daughter of *Herman* Lantgrave of *Duringen*; by which Match *Duringen*

gen accrued to the House of *Meissen*, *Henry* their Son succeeding in both Estates. To this *Henry* succeeded *Albert* his Son, and after him successively four *Fredericks*; the last whereof, on the faileur of the House of *Anhalt*, was by the Emperour *Sigismund* created Elector and Duke of *Saxony*, either because descended from the House of *Wittikindus*, or as most able to pay for the Investiture, or else best able to sustain the Estate and Dignity of a Duke-Elector, which had but weakly been supported by the former Family. In his posterity these Honours and Estates do as yet continue; but neither all nor always in the possession of the Dukes-Electors. For in the Partage made between *Ernestus* and *Albert*, the Sons of *Frederick*, (according to the ill Custom of *Germany*) this Country, or the greatest part of it, was assigned to *Albert*, succeeded in the same by *George* and *Henry* his two Sons: which *Henry* was Father of that *Maurice*, who, being setled and confirmed herein by the Duke *John-Frederick*, did after most unworthily take up Arms against him, supplanted him, and finally possessed himself of this whole Electorate; of which more anon.

3. *VOITLAND* is bounded on the East with *Bohemia*, on the West with *Frankenland*, on the North with *Misnia* or *Meissen*, on the South with the Upper *Palatinate*. So called, as some say, from the *Ivites* or *Vites*, (some of that People who, together with the *Saxons* and *Angles*, conquered *Britain*) of whom it had the name of *Viteland*, that is to say, the Land or Country of the *Vites*. But being I find not that the *Saxons* did spread so far Eastward, I rather think that this name was given it by the *Sclaves*, who finding it deserted, or but thinly peopled, at their coming thither, might call it by the name of *Voidland*; from which the alteration unto *Voitland* is both plain and obvious. It is the smallest Province of all *Germany*, and never of such repute as to have any particular Prince, as most others had; but always reckoned as an accessory to some greater Estate. Nor hath it any Town or Cities of great estimation: the chief of those which are being, 1. *Olsnitz*, 2. *Worda*, 3. *Cornab*, 4. *Schneberg*, near the Mountains called *Sudeti* by *Ptolomy*, famed for Silver-Mines. 5. *Gotzberg*, 6. *Culmbach*; and 7. *Hoffe*, not much remarkable, but only for the Princes of it of the House of *Brandenburg*; called formerly *Curia Pegniana*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were parts of the *Nertereates* and *Danduti*, succeeded to by the *French* and *Sclaves*, as they severally descended Southwards into warmer Countries. Possessed and planted by the *Sclaves* it obtained this name. But being a small Nation and a small Estate, it never had the honour of a particular Prince; but did most probably belong to the Lords of *Meissen*, upon which it bordereth, and now, in their right, to the Duke of *Saxony*. But so that the Duke of *Saxony* is not the sole Lord hereof: the Marquesses of *Onspach* of the House of *Brandenburg* possessing the Towns of *Hoffe* and *Culmbach*, and some other parts of it: the Patrimony at present of *Christian*, Son of *Joachim-Ernest* the late Marquess of *Onspach*, who now enjoyeth them, with the Title of Marquess of *Culmbach*.

4. *THURINGIA* is bounded on the East with *Misnia* and the River *Sala*, on the West with *Hassia*, on the North with the Wood *Hartz* and the proper *Saxony*, on the South with the mountainous Forest of *Duringer-wald*, by it parted from *Frankenland*: the Forest and the Country both so called from the *Thuringians*, the ancient Inhabitants hereof, communicating their name to the place they dwelt in.

The Country is environed round about with woody Mountains, but within those Mountains plain and pleasant, fruitful in Corn, and very plentiful of Woods, which yield great profit to the people; not without some Mines of Gold and Silver, and rich pits of Salt; able to furnish out a Feast, but for Wine only, which is the greatest want hereof. The whole length of it is not above 120 miles, and the breadth no more; yet is it so populous and well planted, that there are said to be in it 12 Earldoms, and as many Abbies, 144 Cities, and as many Market-Towns, 150 Castles, and 2000 Villages.

The principal of these are 1. *Jene*, on the River *Sala*, bordering upon *Misnia*, an University chiefly of Physicians, founded in the year 1555 by the Sons of *John-Frederick* the Elector, taken prisoner and deprived by *Charles* the fifth. 2. *Erfurt*, on the River *Gera*, out of which are cut so many Chanels, that every Street almost hath the benefit of it. A rich, populous, and well-built City, accounted amongst the best of *Germany*, and made an University in the time of the Emperour *Wenceslaus*, *Anno* 1382. Many times burnt, but still reviving, as the Phœnix out of the Ashes, into greater glory. It was at first immediately subject to the Archbishops and Electors of *Mentz*, the first Founders of it, as being built by *William*, Son of the Emperour *Otho* the first, and then Archbishop of that City, of whom more anon: but having freed themselves from him, they have since governed themselves as a Free Estate, and are one of the *Hanse*-Towns, not subject to the Duke of *Saxony* as their Lord, but their Patron and good Neighbour only. 3. *Mulhusen*, and 4. *Northusen*, two Imperial Cities, but else not observable. 5. *Smalcald*, famous for the League here made *Anno* 1530 between all the Princes and Cities which maintained the Doctrine of *Luther*, for defence thereof, and of one another in the pursuance of that work: by which famous Confederacy *Luther* not only kept his head on his shoulders, but the Religion by him reformed grew to that strength, that no force or policy could ever root it up. 6. *Kala*, or *Hale*, on the River *Falza*; of great resort for the exceeding quantity of Salt there made, and vended in other places; at which Town *Philip* the Lantgrave was treacherously taken Prisoner, as you shall hear anon. 7. *Weymar*, a Town which, together with the Castle of *Gotha*, were assigned for the Estate and maintenance of that religious, though unfortunate, Prince *John-Frederick* Duke of *Saxony*, after his Discomfiture and Imprisonment by *Charles* the 5. the ordinary Seat of the Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*, who live here in a stately and magnificent Castle made of polished Stone, most artificially contrived; and beautified with Orchards, Gardens, and other pleasures, but made more pleasant by the watering of the River *Ilma*, upon which it standeth. 8. *Gotha*, upon the River *Lon*, said by *Rathaimerus* to be built by the *Goths*, and by them thus named. A place not long since of great importance, and fortified with a very strong Castle, called *Grummenstein*, that being made the Retiring-place of one *Grunbachius* and other seditious persons under the Protection of *John-Frederick*, one of the Sons of the deprived Electors. It was taken after a long Siege by *Augustus* the Elector of *Saxony*, (to whom the strength of this piece being in the hands of the injured Family was a great Eye-sore) and by the command of the Estates of the Empire at the Diet at *Regenspurg*, *Anno* 1567, demolished, and levelled with the ground.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chasuarii* of *Tacitus*, and after them the *Thuringi*, who, with the *Heruli*, under the Conduct of *Odoacer*, conquered *Italy*; called by some *Turcilingi*, by others supposed to be the *Tirangetæ* of *Ptolomy*. Not heard of in this Country till the Reign of *Childerick* the fourth King of the *French*; then

taking up the whole Provinces of *Hassia* and *Thuringia*, under one *Bissinius* their King. Their Arms were at that time, and long after, *Azure*, a Lion Barrie *Argent* and *Gules*, armed and crowned *Or*. Being overcome at the great Battel of *Zulp* near *Colen*, where they joined with the *Almans*, they were afterwards totally subdued by *Theodorick* the *French* King of *Metz*, their King *Hermanfridus* taken, and most perfidiously slain; part of their Country taken from them, and given to the *Saxons*, (who assisted in that War against them) becoming subject for the rest to the Kings of *France*; but so, that for some time after they had Kings of their own, *Baderick* and *Hermanfroy*, two Brothers, Kings hereof successively, being Uncles to *Radegond*, a Princess of great Piety, the Wife of *Clotaire* King of *France*, Anno 559. In following times it was united to the Empire by *Henry* the first; conferred not long after by *Otho* the first (the Son of *Henry*) on *William*, one of his younger Sons, then Archbishop of *Mentz*, which he left to his Successors in that See; governed by their *Vidames* and Provincial Officers, till the time of *Conradus Salicus*, when *Ludovicus Barbatus*, one of these *Vidames* (or *Vicedomini*) made himself the Proprietary of it, and left the same unto his Children after his decease. But in the time of *Conrade* the 2. the Issue of this *Ludovicus* either failing or dispossessed, it was by the Emperour conferred on *Lewis* of *Orleans*, Son to a Sister of his Empress, the Title of *Lantgrave* being given to them of this Family for their greater Honour. Under eight Princes of this Line, whereof five successively had the name of *Lewis*, this Estate continued: next falling to *Herman*, a Brother of the fifth *Lewis*, who, by contributing to the Ruine of *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, surnamed the Lion, in favour of *Frederick Barbarossa*, had for his share (in the dividing of the Spoil) those parts of his Estates which lay neerest to him, called then the *Palatinate* of *Saxony*; recovered for the most part afterward by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*. He being dead, this Country fell to a sixth *Lewis*, and last of all to *Henry* the Brother of that *Lewis*, in whom the Male-issue failed, having continued for the space of 252 years. To please all parties interessed in the Succession, the Estate, before entire, was divided into two Parts or Provinces: of which this now called *Duringen*, or *Thuringia*, was allotted to *Henry* Marques of *Missnia*, Son of *Judith*, the Daughter of *Herman*; the Western part thereof, with the Title of the Lantgravedom of *Hessen*, adjudged to *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, in right of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the sixth: in the description of which Countries we shall hear more of them. United thus to the House of *Meissen* in the person of *Henry* the then Marques, *Anno* 1263, it flourished in long Peace and Happiness under the Princes of that House. Finally, it much increased both in Power and Dignity by the addition of *Ober-Sax* and the Electorship of *Saxony*, conferred on *Frederick* the Fourth, Marques and Lantgrave of these Countries, *Anno* 1423; in which Estate it still continueth, the fourth and fairest of all these Provinces which now make up the Dukedom of *Saxony*, (as for the reasons above mentioned it hath long been called) though none of them, nor any part or parcel of them, within the Bounds and Limits of the ancient *Saxony*, as before was said.

2. *SAXONY* properly so called, or the Proper *SAXONY*, is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the great Wood *Hartz*, part of the old *Hercynian* Forest, and from thence so named; on the East with part of *Missnia*, *Ober-Sax*, and the Marches of *Brandenburg*; upon the North with the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and on the West with those of *Brunswick*, *Lunenburg*, and part of *Holstein*. So called from the *Saxons*, once the Lords hereof, (of whom more anon) and the sole part of all their great and many Conquests which retains their name.

The Air hereof is somewhat sharp, but healthy; the Soil in the South-west parts hilly and uneven, chiefly rich in Minerals, elsewhere sufficiently fruitful. It is divided into 4 Estates; that is to say, 1. the Principality of *Anhalt*, 2. the Earldom of *Mansfield*, 3. the Bishoprick of *Meydeburg*, 4. the Dukedom of *Lawenburg*.

1. The Principate of *ANHALT* is bounded on the South with *Duringen* and the Wood called *Hartz*, on the West and North with the County of *Mansfield*, on the East with *Missnia*; much shaded, if not too much over-grown, with Woods, part of the *Hartz*, or old *Hercynian* Forest, whence it had the name; *Holt* in the *Dutch* signifying a Wood or Forest; and the Princes of this House being created to this Dignity by the Style of *Principes Hercyniæ* in *Anhalt*. Chiefer Towns of it are, 1. *Bernburg*, the Dynastie and usual Title of this House before they were created Princes of *Anhalt*. 2. *Ballenstede*, part of the ancient Patrimony of the first Princes hereof. 3. *Dessaw*, the birth-place of some, and the Burial-place of others, of this Family; beautified with a strong Castle, built by Prince *Albert* the 2. *Anno* 1341. 4. *Sterveft*, the usual place of the Prince's Residence. 5. *Coeten*, a well fortified place, in vain besiged by the joint Forces of the Archbishop of *Meydeburg* and the Earl of *Swartzenwald*. 6. *Candt*. Here sometimes also stood the old Castle of *Ascandt*, the first Seat of these Princes, but long since destroyed, now only to be visited in Records and Histories.

We shall be sent no higher than the first besieging of the *Roman* Capitol by the ancient *Gauls*, to find out the Pedigree and Descent of the Earls of *Lippe*; but we must go as high as the Ark for the Princes of *Anhalt*; some fetching them from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, from whom, and no other, this *Ascanian* Family (for by that name it is called) are to fetch their Pedigree. But to content our selves with more sober thoughts, we are to know, that when *Theodorick* King of *Metz* undertook the Conquest of the *Thuringians*, he was therein aided by the *Saxons* with 9000 men, under the conduct of one *Bernwald*, or *Bernthobald*, a man of great power and rank amongst them. The *Saxons* were recompensed for that service with such parts of the conquered Country as lay neerest to them, and *Bernthobald* himself rewarded with the Towns of *Ascandt*, *Ballenstede*, and the Lands adjoining, *Anno* 524, to be holden by them under the Soveraignty of the *French*. From which Town and the Castle of *Ascandt*, afterwards razed to the ground by *Pepin* King of the *French*, (for denying the accustomed Tributes) *Anno* 747, most probable it is that the name of the *Ascanian Family* was assumed by them. So that we may behold it as a Family of as great antiquity as the most in *Europe*, little inferiour to any of the greatest Monarchs. His Successors were for the most part busied in Wars against their neighbours of *Missnia*; but rather upon hope of Spoil and plunder, than in way of Conquest; their Power & Patrimony being very little improved till the time of *Albert* surnamed *Ursus*, descended by a long succession of Princes from *Bernwald* or *Bernthobald*, before remembred. This *Albert* having done many signal services unto *Conrade* the 3. and his Son *Frederick Barbarossa*, (especially in taking the Cities of *Breme* and *Luenburg*) was by the last created Marques and Elector of *Brandenburg* Anno 1153, the Father of that *Bernard* who, by the munificence and bounty of the same Emperour, was created Duke-Elector of *Saxony* in the room of Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion, *Anno* 1180, becoming so the

Stem

Stem of the two greateſt Princes of all the Empire. *Henry* the 2. Son of this *Bernard*, was by the ſame Emperor not long after enriched with much of the Lands and Territories lying neareſt to him, which had before belonged to Duke *Henry* the Lion, and created the firſt Prince of *Anhalt*, the firſt of all this ancient and illuſtrious Family which had been honoured with that Title, both Lands and Title continuing in his Race to this very day; the two Electorates of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* being in the mean while tranſlated unto other Families. The moſt conſiderable of which Princes, though all men of Eminence, were 1. *Rodolph*, General of the Forces of the Emperour *Maximilian* the firſt againſt the *Venetians*, whom he twice overcame in Battel. 2. *George* the Divine, a great Reformer of the Church by his diligent Preaching; whoſe Sermons and other Tractates (learned for the Times he lived in) are ſtill extant. 3. *Chriſtian*, born in the year 1568, Commander of the Forces of *Frederick*, Prince Elector *Palatine*, in the Wars of *Bohemia*.

2. The Earldom of *MANSFIELD* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Sala*, parting it from *Ober-Sax*; on the Weſt with the River *Wieper*, which divides it from *Brunſwick*; on the North with the Biſhoprick of *Meydeburg*, and on the South with *Anhalt* and part of *Duringen*. So called from *Mansfield*, once the chief Town of it, ſituate on the River *Wieper*, but now much decayed: the other Towns of note herein being, 2. *Iſleben*, more in the middle of the Country; for that cauſe more convenient for the Seats of Juſtice, firſt ſetled here by Earl *Voldradus*, *Anno* 1448, and by that means made the Metropolis of this Earldom: By ſome affirmed to have took this name from the Goddeſs *Iſis*, who, after the death of her Husband, (as is ſaid by *Tacitus*) viſited theſe parts. Famous more certainly for the Birth of *Luther*, tranſplanted hence for the ſtudy of good Arts to *Meydeburg*, and choſen thence to be Divinity-Reader in *Wittenberg*, where he hammered out that great Work of the Reformation, as before was ſaid; born here in the year 1483, and here deceaſing in the houſe of the Earl of *Mansfield*, *Anno* 1546. 3. *Wieper*, (or *Wipra*) ſo called of the River on which it ſtandeth. 4. *Quernfort*, the honourary Title of the Anceſtors of the Earls of *Mansfield*. 5. *Rotenberg*, 6. *Abſted*, 7. *Helderung*, bought of the Earls of *Holſtein*.

Some, who delineate the Pedigree of theſe Earls of *Mansfield*, fetch it out as high as from one *Heger*, one of King *Arthur's* Knights of the *Round-Table*, born at *Mansfield* in *Nottinghamſhire*, who, ſetling himſelf in *Germany*, gave that name to his Houſe: a military original, and very ſutable to ſuch an active and warlike Family. But thoſe that do not ſoar ſo high derive them from the Earls of *Quernfort*, men of authority in theſe parts; made more conſiderable by *Lotharius* Emperour and Duke of *Saxony*, but moſt of all by *Frederick Barbaroſſa*, who conferred many goodly Lordſhips lying hereabout (once part of the Eſtate of Duke *Henry* the Lion) on *Burchard* the fifth Earl thereof, a conſtant Follower of his, not only in his Wars againſt Duke *Henry* before named, but in thoſe alſo which he managed in the *Holy Land*, in the courſe whereof he died at *Antioch* *Anno* 1189. His Nephew *Burchard*, by a Son of the ſame name, was the firſt of this Family that had the Title of Earl of *Mansfield*, about the year 1250; continued ever ſince unto his poſterity, (but under ſome Acknowledgment to the Electors of *Saxony*.) Of theſe the moſt eminent were 1. *Waleradus*, one of the Council of Eſtate to the Emperour *Sigiſmund* Anno 1411, a great improver of the Patrimony of the Earls hereof. 2. *John George*, Lord Deputy or Lieutenant of *Saxony* under Duke *Auguſtus*. 3. *Peter-Erneſt*, Governour of *Luxemburg* under *Charles* the 5. and *Philip* the 2. by them much exerciſed and employed in their Wars with *France* and their *Belgick* Rebels. 4. *Albert*, a conſtant Friend of *Luther*, and a faithful Follower of *John Frederick*, the deprived Elector; in whoſe Quarrel being outed of his Eſtate, he retired to *Meydeburg*, which he moſt gallantly defended againſt the Emperour. And 5. *Erneſtus*, Nephew of that *Albert* by his Son *John*, ſo famous for the War which he maintained in moſt parts of *Germany* againſt *Ferdinand* the 2. in behalf of *Frederick* Prince Elector Palatine and the States of *Bohemia*, with ſo great conſtancy and courage.

3. On the North of *Mansfield* and *Ober-Sax* lieth the Biſhoprick of *MEYDEBURG*, having on the Weſt partsof *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, and on the North and the Eaſt the Marches of *Brandenburg*: So called from the Epiſcopal See founded in *Magdeburg* the chief City, by ſome called *Meydeburg* and *Meydenburg*, whence by a *Greek* name *Parthenopolis*, and *Virginopolis* by a mungrel word made of *Greek* and *Latine*. A City ſeated on the *Elve*, divided into three parts, but all ſtrongly fortified, begirt with high Walls, deep Ditches, and almoſt unconquerable Bulwarks; yet very beautiful withall, (before the laſt Deſolation of it) of elegant Buildings, fair Streets, and magnificent Temples. It was built in the form of a Creſcent by the Emperour *Otho* the firſt, the Founder of it, who, having tranſlated hither the Archiepiſcopal See, for the greater honour of the place built the Cathedral of S. *Maurice*, where his Wife lies buried, *Anno* 948, teſtified by the Inſcription to be the Daughter of *Edmund* King of *England*. A Town which hath long flouriſhed in a great deal of Glory, and taſted of as much Affliction as any other in *Germany*. For refuſing to receive the *Interim*, it was out-lawed by the Emperour *Charles* the fifth, and given to him that could firſt take it. It was firſt hereupon attempted by the Duke of *Mecklenburg*; but he was in a Camiſado taken Priſoner, his Army routed, his Nobles made captive, and 260 Horſe brought into the City. Next, it was beſieged by Duke *Maurice* of *Saxony*, who on honourable terms was after a long Siege received into it, *Anno* 1550, when it had ſtood on its own Guard the ſpace of three years. Which long Oppoſition of one Town taught the *German* Princes what Conſtancy could do; it held up the coals of Rebellion in *Germany*; and indeed proved to be the Fire which burned the Emperor's Trophees. For here Duke *Maurice* coming acquainted with Baron *Hedeck*, hatched that Confederacy by which not long after this great Emperor was driven out of *Germany*. At laſt it yielded to Duke *Maurice*, under the protection of whoſe Succeſſors it hath ſince enjoyed a long courſe of Felicity, till the year 1631, in which it was moſt miſerably burnt and ſacked by the Earl of *Tilly*; of whom it is obſerved, that after that Fact he never proſpered, being ſhortly after totally routed at the Battel of *Leipzick*, and wounded to the death not long after that near the River *Leck*. Other places of note in this Biſhoprick are, 2. *Wormſted*, beautified with a fair Caſtle, not far from *Magdeburg*, the ordinary Seat or Retiring-place of the Biſhop. 3. *Grabaw*, upon the River *Struma*. 4. *Mockeren*, on the ſame River. 5. *Barleben*, beneath *Meydeburg*, on the *Elve*. 6. *Louburg*, betwixt the *Elve* and the *Struma*, not much obſervable.

The Archiepiſcopal See being tranſlated hither from *Valerſleve* and *Vreſe* (places too obſcure for ſo great a dignity) by *Otho* the firſt, and by him endowed with great Revenues and a goodly Territory round about it, the Arch-

Archbishop hereof was also by his procurement made the Primate of *Germany*, acknowledged so by all but the Bishop of *Saltzburg* and the three Spiritual Electors. For the Administration of Justice in matters Criminal and Civil, the said *Otho* did ordain an Officer, whom they called the *Burgrave*; conferring that Office first on *Gero* Marquess of *Lusatia*. Through many hands it came at last to *Burchard* Lord of *Quernfort*, and the Earls of *Mansfield*, many of which enjoyed this Honour, setled at last by the Emperour *Rodolphus* of *Habspurg* on the Dukes of *Saxony*, who by this means came to have great command and influence on the whole Estate. The Archbishops notwithstanding continued Lords of it, and the whole Territory or District adjoining to it, till the Reformation of Religion; when the Revenues, separated from the Jurisdiction, were given to Lay-Princes, (for the most part of the House of *Brandenburg*) with the Title of Administrator. Finally, by the Pacification made at *Munster*, this fair Estate is to be setled for ever on the Electors of that House, to be possessed by them, and their Heirs and Successors, by the Title of the Dukes of *Magdeburg*, the better to content them for the Concession which they made to the Crown of *Sweden* of a great part of their right and Title to the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

4. On the North-west of *Magdeburg*, and on both sides also of the *Elve*, lieth the Dukedom of *LAWENBURG*, bounded on the North with *Mecklenburg*, on the West with part of *Holstein*, and on the South with the River *Elve* and part of *Lunenburg*; so called of *Lawenburg* the chief Town thereof, and the Seat of the Dukes. The Town was first built, as some conceive, by *Henry* Duke of *Saxony*, surnamed the Lion, the better to assure his Conquests on that side of the River, by whom it was called *Leopolis*, or *Leoburgum*, and *Lawenburg* for the same reasons by the *Dutch* or *Germans*: on the Proscription of which Prince, the Country being wasted and the Towns destroyed, *Bernhard* of *Anhalt*, designed his Successor in the Dukedom of *Saxony*, liking the situation of it, caused it to be re-edified in stronger manner than before, a great part of the materials of the Town of *Erdenburg* being carried cross the Water to enlarge this place. Afterwards being razed by the said Duke *Henry* in the course of that War, it was re-built again by D *Bernard*, the new Elector, who is therefore by some Writers made the Founder of it. Other places of note herein are, 2. *Erdenburg*, a well-fortified piece, opposite to *Lawenburg*, on the hither-side of the *Elve*; not so large now as heretofore, the Town of *Lawenburg* being made greater by the lessening of this 3. *Raceburg*, an Episcopal See, founded here by Duke *Henry* surnamed the Lion, upon his gaining of the *Sclaves* to the Christian Faith, and of late times the Sepulture of this Ducal Family. 4. *Molne*, on the farther side of the *Elb*, not far from *Lawenburg*, the cause of much Contention betwixt the Dukes hereof, and the Town of *Hamburg*, who pretend a Title thereunto.

This Country, being for the most part under the Command of the *Sclaves*, was from them conquered (together with the whole Country of *Mecklenburg*) by Duke *Henry* the Lion, and by his care converted to the Christian Faith: but he being proscribed, and this Seigniory extorted from him by Duke *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, his Successor in the Electoral Dignity, it was by *Albert*, Son of this *Bernard*, conferred on *John* his second Son, from whom the Dukes of *Saxony* commonly called Dukes of *Saxon-Lawenburg*, do derive themselves; who being pretermitted by the Emperour *Sigismund* at the death of *Albert* the 3. the last of the direct Line of *Bernard*, or else not caring for a Title which carried with it too great Sail for so small a Vessel as the Estate of the Elector at the present was, have since contented themselves with their ancient Patrimony.

It is now time we should proceed to the Story of *Saxony*, the ancient Inhabitants of which Tract were the *Longobardi* or *Lombards* of *Magdeburg*, and part of the *Cherusci* about *Mansfield* and *Wittenberg*. Overcome by the prevailing *Saxons*, they became part of their name and Country, which in the full extent thereof was once far greater than now it is, containing all the Countries betwixt the *Rhene* and the River *Eyder* in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, and from the River *Sala* to the *German* and *Baltick* Oceans. These are said by some to be a People of *Asia*, and there called the *Sacæ*, who, finding that small Territory (now a part of *Tartaria*) too narrow for them, forsook their Country, and at last fixed themselves in the *Cimbrick Chersonese*; where they first took the names of *Sacasons* (or *Sac-sons*,) that is to say, the Sons of the *Sacæ*. The improbability of this we have there disputed. Omitting therefore that and the like Originations of them, I conceive them (for my part) to be natural *Germans*, some Tribe of that most populous and potent People of the *Suevi*: but for the reason of the name, let every man enjoy the pleasure of his own opinion. Certain I am that in *Ptolomy*'s time they were possessed of those parts beyond the *Elb*, and thence extended to the *Eyder*, part of which Tract is now known by the name of *Holstein*; and were accounted in that time to be no New-comers. Afterwards, as they grew in number, they enlarged their quarters, and passing over the *Elb*, in the time of the later *Roman* Emperours, possessed themselves of the void places which were left by the *French*, then busied in the Conquest of more fruitful Countries; communicating their name to all the Nations which they overcame, as the *French* had formerly done before them. So that in fine they stretcht themselves from the River *Sala* on the East, to the *German* Ocean on the West, and took up the now Dukedoms of *Holstein*, *Lunenburg*, and *Brunswick*, the Bishopricks of *Bremen*, *Verden*, *Hildesheim*, *Halberstadt*, and *Magdeburg*, the *Marches* of *Brandenburg*, the Earldom of *Mansfield*, *Westphalen*, both *Frieslands*, *Over-Yssel*, with as much of *Gelderland* and *Holland* as lay on that side of the *Rhene*. By which account the present Electoral Family hath not one foot of the old *Saxony* in their possession; the Seat and Patrimony of the Electors being removed into other Countries, upon the Alterations and Changes which have happened in that Estate; the name and Title of *Saxony* being given to the Country about *Wittenberg*, for no other reason but because it was the chief Seat of the Dukes-Electors. But to proceed, a stout and valiant Nation questionless they were, the Conquerors of the Isle of *Britain*; and the last People of the *Germans* which yielded up their Country unto *Charles* the Great, by his means gained unto the Gospel *Anno* 785. Their last King was called *Wittikindus*, from whom descend the Kings of *France* since the time of *Hugh Capet*, the present Kings of *Denmark*, of the House of *Oldenburg*, the Dukes of *Burgundy* and *Savoy*, the Marquesses of *Montferrat*, besides many other noble and illustrious Families though of lesser note. The right or direct Line of the Male-issue of *Wittikind* (whom *Charles* the Great created, of a King, the first Duke of *Saxony*) determining in the person of *Otho* the third, Emperour of *Germany*, it was by him conferred on *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenburg*, (but the precise time I find not:) *Henry*, surnamed the Saint, who succeeded this *Otho* in the Empire, the next in the collateral Line, being pretermitted, either because at that time setled in the great Dukedom of *Bavaria*, or because there was no hope of Posterity by him, or for some other private grudge, which I read not of. And it continued in this Line till, on the Forfeiture incurred by his posterity, in the person of Duke

Henry

Henry the Lion, it was bestowed by *Frederick Barbarossa* upon *Bernard* of *Anhalt Anno* 1180; whose Issue in the right Line failing, it was finally estated by the Emperour *Sigismund* on *Frederick* Lantgrave of *Thuringia* and Marquess of *Misnia*, *Anno* 1423. In his Family it hath since continued, but not without a manifest breach in the course of the Succession: which happened when *John-Frederick* being deprived of the Electoral Dignity and Estate, his Cousin Duke *Maurice* was invested in them by *Charles* the fifth. For that religious, but unfortunate, Prince, (if he may justly have the Title of *unfortunate* who suffered in so good a Cause, for so good a Conscience) being discomfited and taken prisoner at the Battel of *Mulberg* before mentioned, was the next day condemned to die; but pardoned at the last, upon the intercession of some powerful Friends, upon condition that he should relign the Electoral Dignity, and all the rest of his Estates, into the power of the Emperour: Which done, the Emperour gave him back again of his own accord the Castle of *Gotha* and the Town of *Weymar*, with all the Lands and Territories thereunto adjoining; from which last place his Posterity are now called Dukes of *Saxon-Weymar*. It was also much insisted on, that he should relinquish his Religion, and reconcile himself to the Church of *Rome*: but thereto he opposed with such Christian stoutnes, that in the end it was omitted. These matters being thus transacted, the Emperour (with the general content of the Electors) invested *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke deprived, in the Electoral Dignity, and all the Lands, Honours and Estates (the Seigniouries of *Gotha* and *Weymar* excepted only) which formerly had belonged to him: which though it were a great wrong both to the Person and Posterity of the Duke *John-Frederick*, yet it is observed by some grave Writers to have fallen out not unhappily for the advancement of the Reformation then contended for. 1. In regard of *John-Frederick*, whose Christian Patience and Magnanimity during the whole time of his Imprisonment added great reputation to the Cause for which he suffered. 2. In respect of Duke *Maurice*, who was a man of far greater parts to advance the work, and every way as zealous in pursuing of it as the other was. And 3. in relation to the Children of the deprived Duke, men not to be relied on in a matter of such weight and moment; insomuch as it was said of him after his decease, *Quòd Filios reliquerit sui dissimillimos.* It is now time we should proceed to the Investiture of the new Elector. And because these Transactions of State be not ordinary, I will briefly relate the Ceremonies thereat used, as I have collected them out of *Sleidan*. There were at *Wittenberg* Scaffolds erected, on which sate the Emperor and the Princes Electors in their Robes. On the back-side of the State were placed the Trumpeters; right against it standeth Duke *Maurice* with two bands of Horsemen: The first in a full career run their Horses up to the Pavilion: out of the second issued *Henry* Duke of *Brunswick*, *Wolfang* Prince of *Bipont*, and *Albert* Duke of *Bavier*. These, when they had in like manner coursed their Horses about, alighted, ascended to the Throne, and humbly requested the Emperour, that for the common good he would advance Duke *Maurice* to the Electorship. He consulted with the Electors, made answer by the Bishop of *Mentz*, that he was content, so Duke *Maurice* would in person come and desire it. Then came forth Duke *Maurice* with the whole Troop: before him were born ten Ensigns bearing the Arms of as many Regions wherein he desired to be invested. When he came before the Throne, he kneeled down on his knees, and humbly desired the Emperour to bestow on him the Electorship of *Saxony*, and all the Lands of *John-Frederick* late Elector. His Petition was granted. Then the Bishop of *Mentz* read unto him the Oath by which the Electors are bound unto the Empire: which Oath when Duke *Maurice* had taken, the Emperour delivered unto him a Sword, which was a sign of his perfect Investiture. Duke *Maurice*, now the Elector of *Saxony*, arose, gave the Emperour thanks, promised his Fidelity, made Obeisance, and took his place amongst the Electors. This Solemnity was on the 24. day of *Febr. Anno* 1548. Which said, we now proceed unto the Catalogue of

The Dukes of *SAXONY*.

785 1. *Wittikind*, the last King of the *Saxons*, vanquished, and created the first Duke by *Charles* the Great.

825 2. *Bruno*, the Brother of *Wittikind*.

843 3. *Luitulphus*, Son of *Bruno*.

855 4. *Bruno* II. Son of *Luitulphus*.

876 5. *Otho*, Brother of *Bruno* the second.

916 6. *Henry*, surnamed the Fowler, Son of *Otho*, Emperour of the *Romans* and King of *Germany*.

938 7. *Otho* II. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* I.

974 8. *Otho* III. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* II.

984 9. *Otho* IV. Duke of *Saxony*, and Emperour, called *Otho* III.

10. *Bernard*, Lord of *Lunenburg*, created Duke of *Saxony*, and the first Elector, by *Otho* the third, who was the last Duke of the Race of *Wittikind*.

1021 11. *Bernard* II. Son of *Bernard* the first.

1063 12. *Ordulphus*, Son of *Bernard* the 2.

1073 13. *Magnus*, Son of *Ordulphus*, who, taking part with *Rodolphus* of *Schwaben* against *Henry* the fourth, was taken prisoner and deprived.

14. *Lotharius*, Earl of *Quernfort*, created Duke of *Saxony* by *Henry* the fourth. He was also Emperour of the *Romans*.

1125 15. *Henry Guelph*, surnamed the Proud, Duke of *Bavaria*, the Husband of *Gertrude*, Daughter of *Lotharius*, by whom he was created Duke-Elector.

1139 16. *Henry* II. surnamed the Lion, Duke of *Saxony* and *Bavaria*, Son of *Henry* the Proud by his first Wife *Walfildis*, the Daughter of *Magnus*, added to this Estate the Countries of *Mecklenburg* and *Lawenburg*, which he had conquered from the *Sclaves*, becoming by that means so great, that neglecting his Duty to the Emperour *Frederick*, surnamed *Barbarossa*, and siding with the Pope against him, he was by him publickly proscribed, his neighbour Princes armed against him, and by their joint Forces outed of all his Estates, every one laying hold of that which lay nearest to him; by means whereof this great Estate being parcelled and divided into many parts, the Title of the Duke Elector of *Saxony* was given by the said Emperour to

1180 17. *Bernard* of *Anhalt*, Son of *Albert* Marquess of *Brandenburg*, and Grandchild of *Elica*, another Daughter of Duke *Magnus*: to whom, for his Seat and Habitation, the Emperour gave the City of *Wittenberg*, the Head since that time of this Electorate.

1212 18. *Albert*, Son of *Bernard*, from whom the Dukes of *Lawenburg* do derive their Pedigree.

1273 19. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert* the first.
1327 20. *Rodolph*, Son of *Albert* the 2.
1356 21. *Rodolph* II. Son of *Rodolph* the first.
1373 22. *Wenceslaus*, Son of *Rodolph* the 2.
1389 23. *Rodolph* III. Son of *Wenceslaus*.
1419 24. *Albert* III. Son of *Rodolph* the third, the last Elector of *Saxony* of the House of *Anhalt*.
1423 25. *Frederick*, Lantgrave of *Duringen*, and Marques of *Misnia*, (on the failing of the House of *Anhalt Anno* 1422) created Duke of *Saxony* by the Emperour *Sigismund*; the House of *Lawenburg* pretermitted for want of putting in their Claim: by the advancement of which Prince, the Title of Duke of *Saxony* returned again to the House of *Wittikind*, (the first King and last Duke hereof) after it had been alienated into other Families for the space of 200 years.
1428 26. *Frederick* II. Son of *Frederick* the first.
1464 27. *Ernest*, Son of *Frederick* the second.
1486 28. *Frederick* III. Son of *Ernest*.
1525 29. *John*, Brother to *Frederick* the third.
1532 30. *John Frederick*, Son of *John* the first; a great advancer of the Reformation of Religion, imprisoned and deprived of his Electorship by *Charles* the fifth.
1547 31. *Maurice*, Cousin-german to the Duke *John-Frederick*, (as being the Grandson or Nephew of *Albert*, the younger Brother of *Ernestus* the Duke Elector) created Duke Elector by *Charles* the fifth, whom afterwards he drave out of *Germany*; and was slain in the Battel of *Siffridhuse*, against Marques *Albert* of *Brandenburg*.
1553 32. *Augustus*, Brother of *Maurice*.
1586 33. *Christian*, Son of *Augustus*.
34. *Christian* II. Son of *Christian* the first.
35. *John George*, Brother of *Christian* the second who first sided with the Emperour *Ferdinand* the second against the Elector *Palatine*, and after with the King of *Sweden* against the Emperour.

The Revenues of this Duke are thought to be the greatest of any one Prince's of *Germany*, (the Imperial Family excepted) amounting at the least to 400000 *l. per annum*; though in multitude of Vassals and greatness of Territory he come short of some of them. And to make up this Sum, (or perhaps a greater) it is conceived that the profit which ariseth to him out of Silver-mines is no less than 130000 *l.* yearly; the Impost laid on Beer in *Leipzick* only, a City but of two Parish-Churches, (by which conjecture at the rest) being farmed at 20000 *l. per annum*. Then hath he the Tenths of all sorts of Increase, as of Corn, Wine, &c. the Salt-houses at *Hall* and some other places, very fair Lands belonging unto his Domain; and besides this, a standing & perpetual Tax laid upon the Subject towards the maintenance of the War against the *Turk*; granted at first in times of Danger and hostility, but gathered ever since in the times of Peace (as to that Enemy,) under colour of being ready and prepared against him. According to the quantity of his Intrado so he keeps his State, well served, and better attended than any other of the Electors: there being at one time in the Court of *Christian*, the Father of the present Duke, three Dukes, three Earls, and five Barons of other Nations, (besides the Nobility of his own) all Pensioners and Servants to him; one of the Princes of *Anhalt* and one of the Earls of *Mansfield*, both Homagers unto the *Saxon*, being two of the number.

The Arms of *Saxony* are Barre-wise of six pieces *Sable* and *Or*, a Bend flowered *Vert*. Which Bend was added to the Coat by the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, when he confirmed *Bernard* of *Anhalt* in this Dukedom. For *Bernard* desiring of the Emperour to have some difference added to the Ducal Coat, (being before only Barry, *Sable* and *Or*) to distinguish him and his Successors from those of the former House; the Emperour took a Chaplet of Rue, which he had then upon his head, and threw it cross his Buckler or Escotcheon of Arms, which was presently painted on the same.

19. *BRUNSWICK*, and 20. *LUNENBURG*.

THE Dukedoms of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*, being both originally taken out of this great Dukedom of *Saxony*, extracted both from the same Root, and many times united in the person of the same one Prince, shall be joined together in the Story, though severed in the Chorography or description of them; bounded on the East with *Magdeburg* and *Mansfield* in the Upper *Saxony*, on the West with *Westphalia*, on the North with *Denmark*, on the South with *Hassia*. The Air in all parts hereof is very cold and comfortless, but sound and healthful: the Soil towards the old *Marches* of *Brandenburg* but meanly fertile, towards *Duringen* and *Hassia* mountainous and woody, in other parts very plentiful of Corn, and well provided also of such other Commodities as usually do grow in those colder Climates.

But to take the Chorography of them severally, *BRUNSWICK* is bounded on the East with the Earldom of *Mansfield*, on the West with *Westphalen*, on the North with *Lunenburg*, on the South with *Hassia*. So called from *Brunswick* the chief City, and the Head of this Dukedom.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Goslar*, upon the River *Gose*, whence it had the name; of a poor Village made a City by *Henry* the first, much beautified and enlarged by *Henry* the third, who founded here two Churches and a stately Palace; now one of the Imperial Cities. 2. *Helmstat*, in the middle way betwixt *Brunswick* and *Magdeburg*; first fortified by *Charles*, Son of *Charles* the Great, for a Bridle to the neighbouring *Sclaves*; and being after given to the Abbots of *Werden*, was by them sold to *William* the Duke of *Brunswick*. 3. *Quedlenburg*, built also by *Henry* the first, much increased since by the neighbourhood of a very rich Nunnery, the Abbess whereof had formerly the Priviledges of a Prince of the Empire. 4. *Hildesheim*, an ancient City, honoured with an Episcopal See by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*. 5. *Grubenhagen*, which gave Title to a younger Branch of the House of *Brunswick*; a Principality, and a Member of the Empire. 6. *Hannover*, on the River *Lein*, well built, very strongly fortified, and not meanly traded. 7. *Brunswick*, upon the River *Onacra*, which passeth through it, passed over by many handsom Bridges; the Metropolis of the ancient *Saxony*, and at this time the chief of this Dukedom, though of it self Imperial, and one of the *Hause*. The City is of a quadrangular form, seated in the midst of a Plain very fruitful of Corn, in compass about two *Dutch*, or eight *English* miles, somewhat larger than *Nurenberg*, and less than *Erfort*; containing in that compass not above twelve Churches, whereof two have Steeples covered with Lead, a third with Brass, all the rest with Tile. It is rich, populous, and strongly fortified, on some sides with a double, on others with a treble Wall; within which Walls are five Cities, distinguished by Priviledges, but united by Laws. The whole first built by *Bruno*, Son to *Ludolphus* Duke

Duke of *Saxony*, and Uncle to the Emperour *Henry* the first, about the year 861; from whence it had the name of *Brunſwick*, or *Brunonis Vicus*, by the more elegant Latiniſts *Brunopolis*. 8. *Hamelen*, on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Weſer* or *Viſurgis*, encompaſſed with a deep Moat, (occaſioned by a ſtream cut out of the River) round about which are divers Fortifications, and planted with Ordnance. Nigh unto this Town is the Mountain called alſo *Hamelen*, unto which the Py'd Piper (as they call him) led the Children of *Halberſtadt*, where they all ſunk, and were never more ſeen. But of this Story more hereafter, when we come to *Tranſylvania*. 9. *Wolfenhaiten*, or *Wolfenbuttel*, where the Duke doth keep his Court. For though *Brunſwick* giveth him his Title, yet will it not yield him any Obedience, but reputeth it ſelf amongſt the *Hanſe*-Towns; for which cauſe there have been great Wars between the Dukes and the Citizens. 10. *Halberſtadt*, a Biſhop's See, the late Biſhop (or Adminiſtrator of the Biſhoprick) being *Chriſtian* Duke of *Brunſwick*, that noble young Souldier, who had vowed his life and fortune to the ſervice of *Elizabeth* Queen of *Bohemia*, his Couſin-german; created by King *James* one of the Knights of the Garter. A Biſhoprick of great Revenue, and a very large Territory; ſince the alteration of Religion, given with the Title of Adminiſtrator to the Sons of *Brunſwick*; but now, by the Concluſions at *Munſter*, aſſigned over to the Elector of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of Prince of *Halberſtadt*, the Family of *Brunſwick* being to be recompenſed with an alternate Succeſſion in the Biſhoprick of *Oſnabrugge*, and ſome other additionals. 11. *Hetfield*, the Seat ſometimes of the old *Palatines* of *Saxony*, but not elſe obſervable. 12. *Amelungsbame*, another Town of the ſaid *Palatines*, by one of which, called *Sigefridus*, it was beautified with a very fair Abby: the principal Towns (in thoſe days) of this *Palatinate*, which, bordering on that part of the *Thuringians* which is now called *Haſſia*, was taken in by *Herman*, one of the Lantgraves of that Country, on the Proſcription of Duke *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion; but on the failure of his Line, recovered for the moſt part by the Dukes of *Brunſwick*, the right Heirs of *Henry*.

The Dukedom of *LUNENBURG* hath on the Eaſt the Dioceſe of *Magdeburg*, on the Weſt the Dioceſe of *Bremen* and part of *Weſtphalia*, on the North the *Elb*, and on the South the Dukedom of *Brunſwick*. So called from *Lunenburg* the chief City, once the Seat of the Dukes.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Lunenburg* it ſelf, ſituate on the River *Elmenaw*, an Imperial City, and one of the principal of the *Hanſe*; ſo called from the Moon here worſhipped in the times of Idolatry. Of a round form it is, and ſeated in a pleaſant Valley, but with Mountains near it: on one of which, called *Calberg*, is a very ſtrong Caſtle, of right belonging to the Duke, but in the power of the Citizens, who without this Fort could not be maſters of their Liberties. The walls about it are of Earth, high and broad, and the Ditches deep: the Buildings generally fair, (for the moſt part of Brick) the chief whereof is the Common-Council-Houſe; the Streets broad and long, with two ſpacious Market-places, but of no very pleaſing ſmell: the whole about a mile and an half in length, half a mile in breadth, containing ſix Pariſh-Churches. But the thing moſt conſiderable in it is the Fountain of Salt, the greateſt riches of this City) and the Houſe in which the Salt is boiled, containing 52 Rooms, and in each Room 8 Leaden Pans, in which are boiled daily 8 Tuns of Salt, every Tun being ſold for 8 *Flemiſh* ſhillings, bought by the *Hamburgers*, *Lubeckers*, and other Merchants; ſome part of the profits of it belonging to the Duke, ſome to the City, the reſt to the Adventurers who employ their Stocks on it. 2. *Cell*, the Seat of the Duke of *Lunenburg*. 3. *Getbern*, of no great bigneſs or eſtimation, but for a ſtrong Caſtle of the Dukes. 4. *Oldendorp*, ſituate betwixt the *Venaw* and the River *Eſca*, memorable for the great Battel fought near unto it, *Anno* 1633, betwixt the Imperialiſts and the *Swedes*; the honour and benefit whereof fell unto the *Swedes*, who killed upon the place 5000 of the Enemy, beſides ſuch as were found dead in the fields and high-ways, all covered over with dead bodies, took 1500 of them priſoners, and got into their hands 13 pieces of Ordnance, good ſtore of Ammunition, and three Mules laden with Silver for the pay of the Army: the reputation of this Victory drawing in *Hamelen* and other places of importance which ſtood out before. 5. *Verden*, an Epiſcopal See, but made a Lay-fee, as moſt other Biſhopricks amongſt the *Lutherans*; the Profits thereof being received commonly by a Son of *Denmark* with the Title of *Adminiſtrator*, and laſtly, by the Treaty of *Munſter* appropriated for ever to the Crown of *Sweden*, the Kings whereof to be entituled Dukes of *Verden*. 6. *Rodenburg*, the chief Seat of the Biſhops of *Verden*.

The ancient Inhabitants of theſe Dukedoms were the *Dugnblini* of *Tacitus*, with ſome parts of the *Chauci* and *Cheruſci*: theſe laſt of moſt fame for the Blow they gave to *Quintilius Varus*, Lieutenant in *Germany* after *Druſus* for *Auguſtus Ceſar*, who, behaving himſelf with great Inſolency towards the Natives, was ſet upon by theſe *Cheruſci* and their Confederates, under the Conduct of *Arminius*, a great Prince amongſt them; himſelf ſlain, and his whole Army, conſiſting of three Legions, miſerably cut off and deſpightfully uſed: which Loſs, and the Shame thereof, ſo diſtracted the Emperour, (not formerly accuſtomed to the like Misfortunes) that he was many times obſerved to tear his Beard, knock his Head againſt the Poſts and cry out in the bitterneſs of his Paſſion, *Redde mihi Legiones, Quintili Vare*. Having long time after this maintained their Liberty, (for the *Romans* kept themſelves from that time forwards on the *French* ſide of the *Rhene*) they were at laſt ſubdued by the *Saxons*, continuing part of that great Dukedom till the time of the 3 *Otho's*, Emperours of the *Romans* and Dukes of *Saxony*; who, looking on the Empire as a ſtate of Inheritance, diminiſhed both the Grandeur and Revenue of their ancient Patrimony, partly by the Donation or Endowment of many Biſhopricks, and partly by the erection of many petie Seigniouries to be holden under them as chief Lords of all. Amongſt which that of *Lunenburg* was none of the leaſt, continuing as a State diſtinct, till ſuch time as *Bernard* Lord of *Lunenburg* was by the Emperour *Otho* the third made Duke of *Saxony*, and created the firſt Duke-Elector, whereby again it was united to the reſt of that Dukedom, the greateſt part whereof he held in his actual poſſeſſion, together with a Superiority or Juriſdiction over all the reſidue, (the great Biſhopricks excepted only) which had been parcelled out, as before is ſaid: and it continued thus united till the Proſcription of *Henry* ſirnamed the Lion, ſpoken of before; whoſe Reconciliation being made by means of *Henry* the ſecond of *England*, whoſe Daughter *Maud* he had formerly married, the Emperour *Barbaroſſa* reſtored to him again the Cities of *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg*, with their ſeveral Territories, of which his two Sons *Henry* and *William* were firſt created Earls, then Dukes, the one of *Brunſwick*, and the other of *Lunenburg*, by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond. Which Honours and Eſtates do ſtill remain unto their Poſterities. Before I come to the Succeſſions of theſe Princes, I ſhall crave leave to ſpeak of the Original of the *Guelphian* Family, Dukes at the ſame time of *Bavaria* and *Saxony*; of which they are at this time the ſole remainders. A Family derived from one *Guelphus*, (whence it had the name) the

Son of *Isenberdus*, Earl of *Altorff* in *Schwaben*; whose Wife, called *Jermintrudis*, having accused a poor woman of Adultery, and caused her to be grievously punished for having 12 Children at a Birth, was afterwards delivered of the like number, and all of them Sons. Her Husband being absent at the time of her Delivery, she commanded the Nurse to kill 11 of them; fearing, it seems, the like shame and punishment as by her instigation was inflicted on the other woman. The Nurse going to perform this ungodly command was met by the old Earl then returning homewards; who asked her what she had in her Apron. She made answer, Whelps. He desired to see them: she denied him. Angry at this refusal, he opened her Apron, and there found eleven of his own Sons, pretty sweet Babes, and of most promising Countenances. Examining the matter, he found out the truth, and injoyning the old Trot to be secret in it, he put the Children out to Nurse. Six years expired, the Earl invited to a Feast most of his own and his Ladies Kindred, and attiring the young Boys all alike, presented them unto their Mother; who suspecting, by the number of them, what the matter was, confessed her offence, is pardoned by the good old Earl, and carefully educates her children: whom the Father commanded to be called by the name of *Guelps*, alluding to the Whelps or Puppies which the Nurse told him she had in her Apron. From the eldest of these *Guelphs* or *Guelps* succeeded that *Henry-Guelph*, Son of *Robert* Earl of *Altorff*, whom *Conrade* the second made Duke of *Bavaria*; many of whose posterity enjoyed that Dukedom: encreased at last by the addition of the Dukedom of *Saxony*, in the person of Duke *Henry* sirnamed the Proud, Father of *Henry* called the Lion, and Grandfather of *Henry* and *William* the first Dukes of *Brunswick* and *Lunenburg*, whose Succession followeth in this Order.

The Dukes of *BRUNSWICK* and *LUNENBURG*.

1. *Henry*, sirnamed the Lion, the last Duke of *Saxony*, and the first of this Title.

	Brunswick.		*Lunenburg.*
1195	2. *Henry* first Earl, after Duke of *Brunswick*.	1195	2. *William*, first Earl, after Duke of *Lunenburg*.
1213	3. *Otho*, Son of *William*, Duke of *Lunenburg*; after the death of *Henry*, Duke of *Brunswick* also.		
1254	4. *Albert*, Son of *Otho*.	1252	4. *John*, Son of *Otho*.
1279	5. *Albert* II. Son of *Albert*.	1261	5. *Otho* II. Son of *John*.
1318	6. *Otho* II. Son of *Albert* the 2.	1330	6. *Otho* III. Son of *Otho* the 2.
1334	7. *Magnus*, Son of *Albert* II. on the failing of the other house, enjoyed both Estates.		
1368	8. *Magnus* II. Son of *Magnus* the first.		
1073	9. *Henry*, Son of *Magnus* the second.		
1416	10. *William*, Son of *Henry*.		10. *Bernard*, Brother of *Magnus* the second.
1482	11. *William* II. Son of *William*.	1434	11. *Frederick* II. Son of *Bernard*.
1503	12. *Henry* II. Son of *William* the second.	1478	12. *Otho* III. Son of *Frederick* the 2.
1514	13. *Henry* III. Son of *Henry* the 2.	1514	13. *Henry* III. Son of *Otho* the 3.
1568	14. *Julius*, Son of *Henry* the 3.	1532	14. *Otho* IV. Son of *Henry* the 3.
1589	15. *Henry* IV. Son of *Julius*, who married the Lady *Elizabeth*, Sister to *Anne* Queen of *England*.		15. *Ernest*, the Brother of *Otho*, succeeded in his Brother's life time, surrendring his Estate for an Annual Pension.
	16. *Frederick-Ulric*, Son of *Elizabeth* of *Denmark*, and of *Henry-Julius*.	1546	16. *Henry* IV. Son of *Ernest*.
1634	17. *Augustus*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Lunenburg*, succeeded, on the death of *Frederick-Ulrick*, and the faileur of the House of *Brunswick* in him, in this Dukedom.	1590	17. *Ernest* II. Son of *Henry* the 4.
			18. *Wolfgangus*, the Brother of *Henry* the 4. and Uncle of *Ernestus* the 2. now Duke of *Lunenburg*, *Anno* 1648.

The Arms of these Dukedoms were first the same, that is to say, *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; which Arms they took by reason of their extraction from the Kings of *England*, then Dukes of *Normandy*; retained to this day by the Dukes of *Brunswick*, without any addition. But those of *Lunenburg* have added three Coats more unto it: the whole bearing being quarterly, 1. *Gules*, two Lions *Or*, Armed *Azure*; 2. *Azure*, Semé of Hearts *Gules*, a Lion of the *first*, Armed and Crowned *Or*; 3. *Azure*, a Lion *Argent*, Crowned *Gules*; and 4 *Gules*, within a Border Componie *Or* and *Azure*, a Lion of the *second*, Armed of the *third*.

20. *HASSIA*.

HASSIA is bounded on the North with *Brunswick*, on the South with *Veteravia* or the State of *Weteraw*, on the East with *Thuringia*, and on the West with *Westphalia*. So called from the *Hessi*, who, having vanquished the *Chatti*, the old Inhabitants of this Country, possessed themselves of it.

The Christian Faith was first preached here by *Boniface*, or *Winefride*, an *English-Saxon*, (afterwards Archbishop of *Mentz*) *Anno* 730, or thereabouts. Of whom I find this memorable Apophthegm, *That in old times there were golden Prelates and wooden Chalices, but in his time wooden Prelates and golden Chalices.* Not much unlike to which I have read another, but of later date, *viz. That once the Christians had blind Churches, and lightsom hearts; but now they have lightsom Churches, and blind hearts.*

The Country is very fruitful of Corn, and affordeth good Pasturage for the feeding of Cattel, of which they have great Droves and Herds in many places; with great abundance of Stags and other Deer for the pleasures of Hunting, harboured in the Woods hereof, with which in many parts of it it is very much shaded. It breedeth also on the Downs good store of Sheep, enriched with the finest Fleece of any in *Germany*; the Staple-Commodity of this Country: and in the mountainous parts hereof there want not rich Mines of Brass, Lead, and other Metals, which yield great profit to the people.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Alendorff*, on the *Weser*, (or *Visurgis*) of much esteem for the Springs or Fountains of Salt which are thereabouts. 2. *Fritzlar*, upon

upon the *Eder*, well walled, and ſituate in a fruitful and pleaſant Soil, belonging to the Archbiſhop and Elector of *Mentz*; but, in regard of the convenient Situation of it, much aimed at, many times attempted, and ſometimes forcibly poſſeſſed, both by the Lantgraves of *Haſſia* and Dukes of *Saxony*. 3. *Fulda*, on a River of that name, remarkable for the Monaſtery there founded by *Boniface* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* by the name of *Saint Saviours*, the Abbat of which is a Prince of the Empire, Chancellour of the Empreſs, and Lord of a goodly Territory in this Country, called from hence *Stift Fuld*. 4. *Frankenberg*, on the *Eder* alſo, ſo called from the *French*, who incamped there in their Wars againſt the *Saxons*; firſt founded by *Theodorick* the *French* King *Anno* 520, but much enlarged by *Charles* the Great about the year 804. 5. *Eſchewege*, on the brow of an Hill, near the River *Wert*; of great trading for Woad, of which the Fields adjoyning yield a rich increaſe. Being deſtroyed by the *Hungarians*, it was re-edified and enlarged by the Emperour *Henry* the 2. and having ſuffered much miſery in the long War between *Adolph* Archbiſhop of *Mentz* and the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, it fell at laſt into the poſſeſſion of the Lantgrave, *Anno* 1387. 6. *Melſingen*, on the River *Fuld*. 7. *Darmſtadt*, lately, if not at the preſent, the Seat and Inheritance of Count *Ludowick*, of the younger Houſe of the Lantgraves, taken priſoner by Count *Mansfield Anno* 1622, and his whole Country expoſed unto ſpoil and rapine, becauſe (beſides many other ill offices) he was the chief perſuader of the Princes of the *Union* to diſband their Forces, provided for defence of themſelves and the *Palatinate*, and to reconcile themſelves to the Emperour. 8. *Marpurg*, the Seat of the ſecond Houſe of the Lantgraves, deſcending from that *Philip* who was Lantgrave in the time of *Charles* the fifth, whom he ſo valiantly withſtood; pleaſantly ſeated on the *Lon*, amongſt Viny Downs and ſhady Mountains; honoured with an Univerſity founded here by *Lewis* Biſhop of *Munſter*, *Anno* 1426, and beautified with a magnificent Caſtle (the ordinary dwelling of thoſe Princes) ſituate on an high Hill ſomewhat out of the Town, wich gives it a very gallant Proſpect over the Town and Country. 9. *Geiſen*, a Town belonging to the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*, and a ſmall Univerſity alſo. 10. *Dietz*, upon the River *Lon*, belonging alſo to the Houſe of *Caſſels*. 11. *Caſſels*, the chief Town and ordinary Reſidence of the Lantgraves of the elder Houſe, who are hence ſometimes called the Lantgraves of *Caſſels*: commodiouſly ſeated in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, and well fortified with ſtrong earthen Walls and deep Ditches; but the Houſes in it of no great beauty, being compoſed for the moſt part of Wood, Thatch and Clay.

Within the limits of this Province is the County of *WALDECK*, not ſubject to the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, though included within the Bounds of it before laid down, taking up the Weſtern parts thereof, where it meets with *Weſtphalia*: in figure very near a ſquare, each ſide of which is of the length of ſix ordinary *Dutch*, or twenty four *Engliſh* miles. The Soil is much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *Haſſia*, ſave that it hath ſome veins of Quick-ſilver and inexhauſtible Mines of Coal, which the other wanteth; theſe laſt in greateſt pleanty about *Wildung* and the ſtrong Caſtle of *Eiſenberg*, two of the beſt Towns and places of it. Others of chief note are, 3. *Waldeck* it ſelf, on the River *Eder*, the firſt Seat of the Earls hereof, who have here an ancient Caſtle, from whence the whole Country takes its name. 4. *Mengerickhuſe*, in a fair Caſtle wherof live the preſent Earls. 5. *Witterberg*, in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, betwixt the Rivers *Twitſche* and *Abra*. 6. *Corbach*, famous in the times of *Albertus Magnus* for its Golden Mines, yielding great profit to theſe Earls. The Pedigree of which Earls is fetched from one *Wittikind* Earl of *Snalenberg*, whom *Charles* the Great made Advocate or Patron of the Church of *Paderborn* in *Weſtphalia*, being an Office in thoſe times of great Juriſdiction. By *Wittikind* the ſecond, one of his Succeſſors, this Office was ſurrendred into the Hands of the Chapter, for the ſum of 300 marks in Silver: and to cut off all farther Claims, *Henry*, the Nephew of this *Wittikind* by his Son *Otho*, was by the Chapter gratified with the Town of *Waldeck*, of which he was the firſt Earl; whoſe Nephew *Henry*, ſirnamed *Ferreus*, ſubdued *Corbach*, *Anno* 1366, and added it to his Eſtate. By a third *Henry*, Grandchild of this *Ferreus*, or Man of Iron, this Earldom, formerly held in Fee of the Church of *Paderborn*, was firſt under the Patronage and Protection of the Lantgraves of *Haſſia*, *Anno* 1428, as it continueth to this day. The Earls hereof content with their own Eſtates, and more addicted to the Book than unto the Sword, have acted little in the Wars to improve their Fortunes.

The ancient Inhabitants of the whole, both *Waldeck* and the reſt of *Haſſia*, and alſo of the County of *Naſſau* in *Veteravia* near adjoining, were the *Catti*, or *Chatti*, mentioned by the Ancients. It was firſt conquered (after the withdrawing of the *Roman* Forces) by the *Heſſi*, and both ſubdued not long after by the *Thuringians*: ſubject unto the Lantgraves of *Duringen*, till the death of *Henry*, the laſt of the Male-iſſue of *Lewis* of *Orleans*. In the diviſion of whoſe Eſtate, the Weſtern moiety of *Duringen* fell to the ſhare of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, one of the Competitors, who, leaving the Title of Lantgrave of *Duringen* to the Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, took to himſelf the Title of the Lantgrave of *Heſſen*, in memory of the *Heſſi* ſpoken of before. Of his Succeſſors the moſt puiſſant was that *Philip* who in the time of *Charles* the fifth much ſwayed the Affairs of *Germany*. *Anno* 1520 he diſcomfitted King *Ferdinand*, and reſtored *Ulrick* to the Dukedom of *Wirtenberg*. *Anno* 1530 he united all the Proteſtant Princes and Cities of *Germany* in a common League at *Smalcald*, for the defence of the Proteſtant Religion. *An.* 1545 he undertook the Cauſe of *Goſlaria* againſt the Duke of *Brunſwick*, whom in a ſet Battel he took priſoner, together with his Son, and poſſeſſed his Country. *Anno* 1548 he united all the Princes and Cities of *Germany* in an offenſive and defenſive League againſt *Charles* the fifth. But that War ſucceeded not proſperouſly. For the Duke of *Saxony*, his perpetual Confederate, being taken Priſoner, he ſubmitted himſelf to the Emperour at *Kala*, or *Hale*, in *Duringen*; his Sons-in-Law, Duke *Maurice*, the Marqueſs of *Brandenburg*, and *Wolfang* Prince of *Deuxponts*, having given their Bonds for his return. The Conditions of his Pardon were, firſt, That he ſhould diſmantle all his Towns, except *Caſſels*. 2. That he ſhould yield up unto the Emperour all his Munition. 3. That he ſhould pay unto the Emperour 150000 Crowns. The ſame night he was by the Duke of *Alva* invited to Supper, his Sons-in-law of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg* accompanying him. After Supper he was, contrary to the Laws of Hoſpitality and the Emperour's exact Promiſe, detained Priſoner. The fallacy ſtood thus: In the Emperour's Compact with the three Princes the words were, that the Lantgrave ſhould be kept, *Nicht in einig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in any priſon*; which the Emperour's Secretary, by a ſmall daſh of his Pen, turned into *Nicht in ewig gefengknes*, that is, *Not in everlaſting priſon*. Well, in Priſon he ſtaid five years; which being expired, he was again ſet at large by Duke *Maurice*, the Over-

thrower and Reſtorer of the *German* Liberty. The reſidue of theſe Lantgraves in their ſeveral times occur in the enſuing Catalogue of

The Lantgraves of *HASSIA.*

1263 1. *Henry* of *Brabant*, Son of *Henry* Duke of *Brabant*, and of *Sophia* his Wife, Daughter of *Lewis* the ſixth, Lantgrave of *Thuringia*, after a nine years War betwixt him and the Marqueſs of *Miſnia*, divided the Eſtate, and took unto himſelf the Title of Lantgrave of *Heſſen.*
1308 2. *Otho* and *John*, Sons of *Henry.*
1323 3. *Henry* II. and *Lewis*, Sons of *Otho.*
1376 4. *Herman*, the Son of *Lewis.*
1414 5. *Lewis* II. Son of *Herman*, ſurnamed the Mild.
1458 6. *Lewis* III. Son of *Lewis* the Mild.
7. *William*, the eldeſt Son of *Lewis* the third, diſpoſſeſſed of his Eſtate by
8. *William* II. his youngeſt Brother.
1509 9. *Philip*, the famous Lantgrave ſpoken of before, Son of *William* the ſecond.
1567 10. *William* III. eldeſt Son of *Philip*, ſucceeded in one moiety of the Eſtate, and reſided at *Caſſels*, the other moiety being divided betwixt his Brethren, *Ludowick* of *Marpurg*, and *George* of *Darmſtadt*, Father of *Ludowick* of *Darmſtadt* before mentioned.
1590 11. *Maurice*, eldeſt Son of *William* the third.
12. *William* IV. Son of *Maurice*, now living, 1648.

The Arms of theſe Lantgraves are *Azure*, a Lion Barry of eight pieces, *Argent* and *Gules*, crowned *Or.* Which, being properly and originally the Arms of the ancient Dukes of *Franconia*, were given by *Conradus Salicus*, Duke of *Fraconia* and Emperour, to *Lewis* of *Orleans*, at ſuch time as he inveſted him in the Lantgravedom of *Thuringia*: on the expiration of whoſe Line they were challenged and born by the Lantgraves of *Heſſia*, as the direct Heirs of *Lewis* the 6. and his Brother *Henry*, the laſt male Princes of that Houſe.

21. *WESTPHALIA.*

WESTPHALIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Heſſia*, *Brunſwick*, and part of *Lunenburg*; on the Weſt with the Biſhoprick of *Colen*, *Cleve*, *Over-Iſſel*, *Weſt* and *Eaſt-Frieſland*, and the *German* Ocean; on the North with the *Elb*, and the Dukedom of *Holſtein*; and on the South with *Weteravia*, and ſome part of *Heſſia.*

It was thus called of the *Waſtphali*, a Tribe or Diviſion of the *Saxons*, diſtinguiſhed heretofore into the *Tranſalbinos*, inhabiting beyond the *Elb* or *Albis*, in the County of *Holſtein*, now a part of *Denmark*, the *Oſtphali*, betwixt the *Elb*, the Ocean, with the River of *Sala* and the *Weſer*, taking up the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Verden*, *Hildeſheim*, *Halberſtadt*, and *Meydeburg*, with the Dukedoms of *Lunenburg* and *Brunſwick*; the *Angrivarians*, taking up the North-weſt part of the modern *Weſtphalen*, betwixt the Biſhoprick of *Breme* and the Earldom of *Oldenburg*; and finally, the *Weſtphali*, or weſtern *Saxons*, inhabiting the reſt of the modern *Weſtphalen*, with the Earldoms of *Marck*, *Berg*, *Zutphen*, the Signiory of *Over-Iſſel*, and ſome parts of *Gelderland* and *Holland.* But the *Saxons* being ſubjugated by the power of the *French*, and ſeveral new Eſtates erected out of that old Stock; the remnant of the *Weſtphali* and *Angrivarians* the Biſhoprick of *Breme* being added unto the account,) were comprehended and united in the name of *WESTPHALEN.*

The Soil, according to the ſeveral parts of it, is of different natures: the parts adjoyning to the *Weſer* being deſart and barren; thoſe towards the Earldoms of *Marck* and *Bergen* mountainous and full of Woods; the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, except towards the *Elb*, full of dry Sands, Heaths and unfruitful Thickets, like the wilde parts of *Windſor* Foreſt betwixt *Staines* and *Fernham.* In other parts it is exceeding plentiful of Corn, and of excellent Paſſurage; ſtored with great plenty of wild Fruits, and (by reaſon of the many Woods) abundance of Acorns; with infinite Herds of Swine (which they breed up with thoſe natural helps) of ſo good a reliſh, that a Gammon of *Weſtphalie* Bacon is reckoned for a principal Diſh at a great man's Table.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci majores* about *Bremen*; the *Chamavi*, *Angrivarii* and *Bructeri*, inhabiting about *Munſter*, *Oſnabrug*, and ſo towards the Land of *Colen*; and part of the *Cheruſci* (before ſpoken of) taking up thoſe parts which lie neareſt unto *Brunſwick* and *Lunenburg.* All of them were vanquiſhed by *Druſus* the Son-in-law of *Auguſtus*, but ſoon reſtored to their former Liberty by the great Overthrow given by the *Cheruſci* and their Aſſociates to *Quintilius Varus.* Afterwards, uniting into one name with the *French*, they expulſed the *Romans* out of *Gaul*, leaving their forſaken and ill-inhabited Seats to be taken by the *Saxons*, with whom the remainders of them did incorporate themſelves both in Name and Nation. Of that great Body it continued a conſiderable Member, (both when a Kingdom and a Dukedom,) till the Proſcription & Deprivation of Duke *Henry* the Lion: at what time the parts beyond the *Weſer* were uſurped by *Bernard* Biſhop of *Paderborn*; thoſe betwixt the *Weſer* and the *Rhene*, by *Philip* Archbiſhop of *Colen*, whoſe Succeſſors ſtill hold the Title of Dukes of *Weſtphalen*: the Biſhopricks of *Breme*, *Munſter*, *Paderborn* and *Minden*, having been formerly endowed with goodly Territories, had ſome Accruments alſo out of this Eſtate, every one catching hold of that which lay neareſt to him. But not to make too many Subdiviſions of it, we will divide it only into theſe two parts, *viz.* 1. *Weſtphalen* ſpecially ſo called, and 2. the Biſhoprick of *Bremen.*

1. In *WESTPHALEN* ſpecially ſo called, which is that part hereof which lieth next to *Cleve*, the places of moſt obſervation are, 1. *Geſeke*, a Town of good repute; 2. *Brala*, a Village of great Beauty; 3. *Arnsberg*, and 4. *Fredeborch*, honoured with the Title of Prefectures. 5. *Wadenborch*: 6. *Homberg*, lording it over fair and ſpacious Territories. All which, with two Lordſhips and eight Prefectures more, diſperſed from the Dukedom of *Engern* and County of *Surland*, belong unto the Biſhop of *Colen*, the titulary Duke of *Weſtphalen*, and really of *Angrivaria*, (*Engern*) as he ſtyles himſelf: the Title and poſſeſſion of Duke of *Engern* being acquired unto this See by *Bruno* Archbiſhop hereof, Son of *Henry* the firſt, Emperour and King of *Germany*, ſirnamed the Fowler, with the conſent of *Otho* the firſt, his elder Brother. 7. *Mountabour*, (perhaps *Mont-Tabor*) ſeated in that part hereof which is called *Weſterwald*; a Town of conſequence, belonging to the Elector of *Triers.* 8. *Rhenen*, 9. *Schamlat*, and 10. *Beckem*; reaſonable good Towns, all of the Biſhoprick of *Munſter.* 11. *Munſter* it ſelf, famous for the Treaty, and Concluſions made upon that Treaty, for the Peace of *Germany*; ſeated upon the River *Ems*, and ſo called from a Monaſtery here founded by *Charles* the Great, which gave beginning to the Town; ſuppoſed to be that *Mediolanum* which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract. A beautiful and well-fortified City, and the See of a Biſhop, who is alſo the Temporal Lord of it: famous for the woful Tragedies here acted by a lawleſs

crue

crue of Anabaptists, who chose themselves a King (that famous Tailor *John* of *Leyden*) whom they called King of *Sion*, as they named the City *New Jerusalem*; proclaimed a Community both of Goods and Women, cut off the heads of all that opposed their doings; and, after many fanatick and desperate actions, were by the care and industry of the Bishop and his Confederates brought to condign punishment. The Story is to be seen at large in *Sleiden*, Mr. *Hooker*'s Preface, and some modern Pamphlets; wherein, as in a Mirrour, we may plainly see the face of the present Times. 12. *Osnabrug*, first built, as some say, by *Julius Cæsar*, as others, by the Earls of *Engern*; but neither so ancient as the one, nor of so late a standing as the others make it. Here is an Episcopal See, founded by *Charles* the Great, who gave it all the Priviledges of an University; liberally endowed at the first erection of the same, and since so well improved both in Power and Patrimony, that an alternate Succession in it by the Dukes of *Brunswick* hath been concluded on in the Treaty of *Munster*, as a fit Compensation for the Bishoprick of *Halberstadt*, (otherwise disposed of by that Treaty) of late enjoyed wholly by that Family. 13. *Quakenburg*, on the River *Hase*. 14. *Warendorp*, and 15. *Wildshusen*; Towns of that Bishoprick. 16. *Paderborn*, an Episcopal See also, founded by *Charles* the Great at the first Conversion of the *Saxons*; more ancient than strong, yet more strong than beautiful. 17. *Ringelenstein*, and 18. *Ossendorf*; belonging to the Bishop of *Paderborn*. 19. *Minden*, upon the *Weser*, another of the Episcopal Sees founded by *Charles* the Great, and by him liberally endowed with a goodly Patrimony: converted to Layuses since the Reformation, under colour of Administration of the Goods of the Bishoprick, and now, by the Conclusions at *Munster*, setled for ever on the Electors of *Brandenburg*, with the Title of *Prince* of *Minden*. 20. *Rintelen*, a strong Town, conveniently seated on the *Weser*, not far from *Minden*, to the Bishop whereof it doth belong.

Hitherto one would think that *Westphalen* had formerly been a part of S. *Peter*'s *Patrimony*, belonging wholly to the Clergy: but there are some Free Cities and Secular Princes which have shares therein. As 1. *Warborg*, a neat Town, but seated on an uneven piece of ground, near the River *Dimula*; a Town which tradeth much in good Ale, brewed here, and sold in all parts of the Country: heretofore a County of it self under the Earls hereof, now governed in the nature of a Free Estate, and reckoned an Imperial City. 2. *Brakel*, accounted of as Imperial also. 3. *Hervorden*, a Town of good strength and note, governed by its own Laws and Magistrates, under the Protection of *Colen*. 4. *Lemgow*, belonging heretofore to the Earls of *Lippe*; but by them so well priviledged and enfranchised, that now it governeth it self as a Free Estate. Here is also 5. the Town and County of *Ravensperg*, belonging anciently to the Dukes of *Cleve*, and now in the Right of that House to the Elector of *Brandenburg*: as also 6. the Town and County of *Lippe*, lying on the West side of the *Weser*; the Pedigree of the Earls whereof some fetch from that *Sp. Manlius* who defended the *Roman* Capitol against the *Gauls*, (they might as well derive it from the Geese which preserved that Capitol;) others with greater modesty look no higher for it than to the times of *Charles* the Great, one of the noble Families of the ancient *Saxons*. 7. Here also stands the Town and Castle of *Aremberg*, commanding over a large and goodly Patrimony thereunto adjoyning; which, being much increased by the accession of *Sedan* in the neighbouring *Belgium*, was by the Heir-general of this House conveyed in Marriage to *Engelbert*, the 9. Earl of *Marck*, whose second Son, called *Eberhard*, (but the only one he had by this *Venter*) succeeded in his Mother's Estates and Honour's, which were kept undivided, till *Eberhard*, the 6. Lord thereof of the House of *Marck*, contenting himself with the Titles and Estates of *Aremberg*, left *Sedan* and the pieces which belonged unto it to his younger brother *Robert*. The great Grandchild of this *Eberhard*, called also *Robert*, created the first Earl of *Aremberg*, left his Estates and Titles to his Sister *Margaret*, married to *John* Lord of *Brabanson*, a person of great note and power in the *Belgick* Provinces, and faithful to the last in the Cause and Quarrel of King *Philip* the 2. in which finally he lost his life, *Anno* 1568, leaving both his Estates and Title unto *Charles* his Son, frequently mentioned by the name of *Charles* Earl of *Aremberg* in the Stories of the *Belgick* Wars, in which he was no less considerable for his eminent Valour, than for his singular Fidelity to his Lord and Master. Some other Lords and Earls here are, but these most considerable: all of them Homagers of the Empire, but their Acknowledgments hereof little more than titular; though since in danger of performing more real Services; the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. after the Surprize of *Holstein* and some part of *Denmark*, Anno 1627, gaining so far upon this Country, that, had not the King of *Sweden* come in so seasonably, he had made himself absolute Master of it, and, by the opportunity of the situation of it on the back of the *Netherlands*, forced the United *States* to some great Extremities. As for the Title of Duke of *Westphalen* and *Engern*, it hath been long used (as before was said) by the Bishops of *Colen*; as also (but with better Right as to that of *Westphalen*) by the House of *Lawenburg*, descended from the ancient Electoral Family, writing themselves in that regard Dukes of *Saxony*, *Westphalen*, and *Angrivaria* or *Engern*.

2. The Bishoprick of BREME lieth on the other side of the *Weser*, extending as far as to the *Elb* and the *German* Ocean. So called of 1. *Breme*, the principal City, seated on the *Weser*, there broad and navigable; the City by that means well traded, populous, and rich, beautified with fair and even Streets, and very strongly fortified against all Invasions both by Art and Nature; the Town being so seated amongst Fens, occasioned by the Over-flowings of the River, that it may be easily drowned on all sides, to keep off an Enemy; adorned also with a spacious Market-place, a fair Council-house, and a large Cathedral, the See of the Archbishop, who is the Temporal Lord of the Town and Territory. Other Towns of special note are 2. *Osenbridge*, not far from *Breme*, from whence great quantity of Linen is brought yearly to *England* and other places. 3. *Arusten*, on the *Weser* also. 4. *Otterendorp*, on the River *Bolla*, not far from the fall thereof into the Ocean. 5. *Boxtebude*, on the *Elb* not far from *Hamburg*, but on the hither side of the water. 6. *Stode*, *Stade*, or *Stadium*, seated on the River *Zwinghe*, near the fall thereof into the *Elb*; accounted the ancientest Town in all *Saxony*, and one of the first which was enrolled amongst the *Hanse*, and by special Priviledge had the pre-emption of all the *Rhenish* Wine that passed by them, and the right also of Coining money. But being over-topped by the Power and Trade of *Hamburg*, (5 *Dutch* miles from it) it grew at length so poor and in such decay, that their yearly Revenues came but to 90 *l. per annum*, so that they were fain to sell their Priviledges to the Town of *Hamburg*, and put themselves under the Protection of the Bishops of *Breme*. It revived again upon the coming thither of the *English* Merchants, who, finding some hard measure from the *Hamburgers*, fixed their Staple here: by means whereof the Citizens in short time grew exceeding wealthy, the Buildings fair

and

and beautiful, the Town ſtrongly fortified. It is ſituate in a place ſo eaſily overwhelmed with water, that the people, in oſtentation of their Strength and Security, uſed to have Ordnance of Stone planted over their Gates. But the late *German* Wars have made them ſenſible of their folly; when, notwithſtanding their new Works, and an *Engliſh* Garriſon under Sir *Charles Morgan*, they were compelled to ſubmit themſelves to the Earl of *Tilly* Anno 1627, recovered after by the *Swedes*, in the courſe of their Victories.

As for the Biſhoprick of *Bremen*, it was firſt founded by *Charl s* the Great, in the perſon of *Willibrode* an *Engliſh Saxon*, one of the firſt Preachers of the Goſpel in theſe parts of this Country. The Town, before that time a poor Village only, being made an Archiepiſcopal See, and the Metropolitan of all the Churches of the North, quickly grew up into eſteem, as the Biſhop did in Power and Patrimony, till they became Lords of this Tract. It was governed ſince the Reformation of Religion by Lay-Biſhops, or Adminiſtrators of the Rents of the Biſhoprick, which under that Title they inverted to their proper uſe. And now of late, by the Concluſions made at *Munſter*, is ſetled as an Inheritance on the Crown of *Sweden*, to be enjoyed; together with the Biſhoprick of *Verden*, by the Kings thereof, with the Title of Dukes of *Breme* and *Verden*: the ancient Liberties of thoſe Cities, formerly granted by their Biſhops, being ſtill preſerved.

22. *EAST-FRIESLAND.*

EAST-FRIESLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Weſer*, by it parted from *Weſtphalen*; on the Weſt with the River *Ems*, which parteth it from *Groeningen* and the reſt of *Weſt-Frieſland*; on the North with the *German* Ocean; and on the South with the Earldom of *Marck*, and part of *Cleveland*. So called from the *Friſii*, who, caſting out the old Inhabitants, poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and called it by their own name, *Frieſland*: divided by the *Ems*, or *Amiſus*, into the Weſtern, ſpoken of amongſt the *Netherlands*, and the Eaſtern or *Eaſt-Frieſland*, in which now we are.

The nature of the Soil we ſhall ſee anon, when we come to the Subdiviſions of it. The chief Rivers (beſides thoſe of 1. *Ems*, and 2. *Weſer*, ſpoken of elſewhere) are 3. *Jada*, which falleth into a great Bay or Arm of the Ocean, called from hence *De Jade*. 4. *Dollaert*, on which ſtandeth the City of *Emden*. 5. *Delm*, and 6. *Honta*, neighboured by *Delmenhorſt* and *Oldenburg*, Towns of this Country. The whole is divided into 1. The County of *Emden*, or *Eaſt-Frieſland* properly ſo called; and 2. The Earldom of *Oldenburg*.

1. *EASTFRIESLAND* ſpecially ſo called hath on the Weſt the River *Ems*, on the North the Ocean, on the Eaſt and South the Earldom of *Oldenburg*: called alſo the County of *EMDEN*, from the fair Town of *Emden*, the chief City of it. The Soil hereof is very fruitful both in Corn and Paſturage, ſending great ſtore of Oxen, Horſes, Wool, Swine, Butter, Cheeſe, and all ſorts of Grain, into other Countries; all of them excellent in their kind, not eaſily to be bettered (if equalled) in any place whatſoever. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Emden*, ſo called from the *Ems*, on which it is ſituate; *Dollaert* a ſmall River falling here into it: a noted and well-traded Town, beautified with a Haven ſo deep and large, that the greateſt Ships with full Sail are admitted into it. The people are rich, affirmed to have 60 ſhips of 100 tuns apiece, and 600 leſſer Barks, of their own; beſides 700 Buſſes and Fiſher-boats, maintained for the moſt part by their Herring-fiſhing on the Coaſts of *England*. The Buildings are generally fair, both private and publick, eſpecially the Church, the Town-Hall, and Earl's Palace. This laſt is a ſtrong and ſtately Caſtle, ſituate at the mouth of the Haven, and on all ſides encompaſſed by the Sea, and yet not ſtrong enough to preſerve the Townſmen in their due Obedience: who in the year 1595, taking advantage of the Abſence of their Earl, kept him out of their Town, becauſe he ſeemed not to approve the *Calvinian* humour; and have ſince governed in the nature of a Commonwealth, confederate with the *States* of the United Provinces, for their better Eſtabliſhment and ſupport. So eaſily is Religion made a mask to diſguiſe Rebellion. 2. *Aurick*, by ſome called *Anſeling*, ſeated in the Inlands, rich and well walled, of great reſort by reaſon of the pleaſure of Hunting, afforded very liberally in the Foreſts and Woods adjoyning, drawing hither the Nobility and Gentry in great abundance. 3. *Eſen*, on the Sea-ſhore, which gives the Title of an Earl to the Lord thereof; as doth alſo, 4. *Jever*, ſituate on the Weſt of the River *Jada*; but both Earls ſubject to the Earl of *Eaſt-Frieſland*. 5. *Vredeburg*, (that is to ſay, the *Free Village*) ſo called from ſome Immunities granted by the Earls; poſſeſſed a while by thoſe of *Brunſwick*, who fenced and garriſoned it for themſelves, but in the end recovered by *Ezard* the 2. Earl. 6. *Broeck*, the Seat and proper Government of the Anceſtors of theſe Earls; from whence the parts adjoyning are called *Broeckmerland*. 7. *Norden*, another Prefecture or Captainſhip of the ſaid Anceſtors. 8. *Dunort*, a ſtrong Caſtle and Retiring-place of the Earls. 9. *Linghen*, upon the *Ems*, a ſtrong Town well fortified, and as well garriſoned; belonging to the King of *Spain*, as Vicar to the Empire over all *Frieſland*, even to *Ditmarſh* and the Confines of *Denmark*. A Dignity procured by *Maximilian*, Grandfather to *Charles* the 5. of the Emperour *Frederick* the 3. in right whereof the King of *Spain*, as Heir of the Houſe of *Burgundy*, hath ſome pre-eminence over *Emden*, of little uſe to him ſince the falling off of the *Belgick* Provinces. More Towns of note I find not in it, but of Caſtles, ſtately Dwelling-houſes, and well-built Villages, an incredible number; ſtanding ſo thick, that in many places they join together: ſome of them being withal ſo large, ſo well peopled, and of Streets ſo ſpacious, that they may compare with many Cities in *Germany*. Of all which the moſt City-like is named *Leere*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Chauci minores*, deſcribed by *Pliny*, to be ſo barbarous a people, and ſo deſtitute of all neceſſary Proviſion for the life of man, that they had no drink but Rain water, preſerved in great Troughs before the doors of their Cottages. Theſe were outed or ſubdued by the *Friſons*, a neighbouring People poſſeſſing *North Holland*, the Diſtrict of *Utrecht*, with the Countries of *Groening* and *Weſt-Frieſland*, who, having once paſſed over the *Ems*, extended their Dominions as far as *Denmark*, governed by Kings, but intermingled with and over-powred by the *Saxons*, till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom the laſt King *Roboald* overcome in fight was perſwaded to receive the Sacrament of Holy Baptiſm: but being told that his Friends and Kinſfolks were in Hell, becauſe no Chriſtians, *Neither will I* (ſaith he) *be of that Profeſſion, for I love to be amongſt my Kindred*. After this, *Frieſland* was a Member of the *French* Kingdom, till the erecting of the Earldom of *Holland* by *Charles* the Bald, *Anno* 893, at which time all *Frieſland* on the Weſt ſide of the *Ems* was conferred upon him; poſſeſſed, but not without much War and Bloudſhed, by his Succeſſors; the *Friſons* ever and anon rebelling againſt them, and killing divers of them in the open field. Thoſe parts of it on the other ſide of the *Ems* remained unto the *German* Empire: governed by Depuſies,

puties, Lieutenants, and Provincial Earls, accomptable to the Emperors for the Administration, till the year 1453, in which *Ulrick*, Governour hereof for the Emperor *Frederick*, having got the Town of *Embden* out of the hands of the *Hamburgers*, was made Earl of *East-Friesland*, transmitting the Estate and Title unto his Posterity.

Earls of *EAST-FRIESLAND.*

1453 1. *Ulricus*, Son of *Enno*, the Son of *Ezardus*, Captains or Governours for the Empire in *Broeck* and *Norden*, made the first Earl of *East-Friesland* by the Emperour *Frederick*.

1466 2. *Ezard*, the Son of *Ulrick*, who got *Vredeburg* from the Citizens of *Brunswick*.

1528 3. *Enno*, the Son of *Ezard*, who regained *Greetzyl*, formerly usurped by the Dukes of *Geldres*.

1540 4. *Ezard* II. Son of *Enno*, who married *Katharine*, Daughter to *Gustavus* the first of *Swedn*.

5. *Enno* II. Son of *Ezard* the 2. and the Lady *Katherine*.

1586 6. *Rodolphus-Christianus*, Son of *Enno* the 2. who, being well affected to the *Lutheran* Forms, (first introduced in the time of *Enno* the first) was by a *Calvinian* party grown up in *Emden*, dispossessed of that City, *Anno* 1595.

1608 7. *Enno-Ludovicus*, Son of *Rodolphus-Christianus*, succeeded in this Earldom on the death of his Father, and is still living, for ought I can hear unto the contrary.

The Arms of the Earls of *East-Friesland* are *Argent*, four Bendlets *Azure*, charged with ten Heurts *Or*, 4, 3, 2, 1.

2. The Earldom of *OLDENBURG* containeth that part of this Country which lieth on the West-side of the *Weser*, betwixt the Bishoprick of *Munster* and *East-Friesland* specially so called, and so extending Northwards to the *German* Ocean. So called from *Oldenburg*, the chief City of it, and the Head of this Earldom.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, but in Pastures specially, which breed them infinite Herds of Cattel, and furnish not this Country only, but some of their *German* Neighbours, and many of the more Northern Nations, with Horses, Beeves, Sheep, Swine, Butter, Cheese. Here is also good store of Pulse, Barley and Oats; plenty of Fruits, and Trees of all sorts; large Woods, and those well stored with Venison, which yield unto the Gentry the delights of Hunting. But the Air is cold and foggy in some extremity; especially in winter, and nigh the Sea.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Oldenburg*, on the River *Honta*, repaired, if not built, by *Otho* the Great, who founded the Church of S. *John Baptist*. A Town of no great state or beauty; the Houses being generally of Clay, but the Castle (the Dwelling-place of the Earls) of well-hewn Stones; of an orbicular form, with deep Ditches of water, the Town and Castle both being strongly fortified. 2. *Delmenhorst*, on the River *Delm*, a strong place and of great importance, built in the year 1247 by *Otho*, Brother of Earl *Christian* the 2. and having been 65 years in possession of the Bishops of *Munster*, was suddenly surprized on *Palm-Sunday* morning by *Anthony* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1547, continuing ever since part of this Estate. 3. *Beckhusen*, on a River which falleth not far off into the great Bay or Arm of the Sea which is called *De Jade*. 4. *Eguarden*. 5. *Ovelgard*; both seated on a long Languet or Demy-Island betwixt the said *De Jade* and the River *Weser*, called *Butiada*: both taken and the last well fortified by *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, Anno 1520, belonging formerly to the Prefecture of *East-Friesland*, but never brought under the command of the Earls thereof. 6. *Westerberg*, the chief Town, of a spacious Territory. 7. *Vriejade*, a strong piece on the River *Jade*, built by Earl *Christiern*, one of the younger Branches of the House of *Oldenburg*, about the year 1400. 8. *Mellum*. 9. *Jadelle*, places of principal importance; the one on the River *Jade*, the other near the Ocean. Here is also within this Earldom the Province of *Amerlander*, supposed by some to have been the Seat of the *Ambrones*, who accompanied the *Cimbri* and *Teutones* in their Expedition towards the *Roman* Provinces, and were slain by *Marius*.

As for the Earls of *Oldenburg*, they derive themselves from *Walpert*, one of the Nephews of *Wittikindus*, the last King and first Duke of the *Saxons*; who having about the year 850, built a strong Castle on the Borders of *Bremen*, in the honour of his Wife *Alteburg*, (whom he dearly loved) called it *Alteburgum*, so called by the *Latinists* to this day, by the *Germans Oldenborch*. But his Male-Issue failing in *Frederick* the 7. Earl, it came to one *Elimar*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Frisian* bloud, who had married *Richsa*, the Daughter of *John*, the fifth Earl of this Family. From him in a direct Line descended *Christian* or *Christiern*, eldest Son of *Theodorick*; who, being fortunately advanced to the Crown of *Denmark*, *An.* 1448, left his Estate in this Earldom (but reserving the Title, according to the fashion of *Germany*) to his Brother *Gerrard*, the better to take him off from his Pretensions to the Dukedom of *Sleswick* and the Earldom of *Holstein*, in which he did pretend a share. The Patrimony of it was much improved by the additions of the Countries of *Rustringen*, *Ostringen*, and *Wangerland*, all lying on the *German* Sea, bequeathed by the last Will and Testament of the Lady *Mary*, Countess of *Jever* in *East-Friesland*, to *John* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the third from *Gerrard*. The Succession of these Earls, in regard the Royal Line of *Denmark*, and by consequence of Great *Britain*, is descended from them, I have here subjoyned in this ensuing Catalogue of

The Earls of *OLDENBURG.*

850 1. *Walpert*, of the Race of *Wittikind*, the first Earl of *Oldenburg*.

856 2. *Theodorick*, the Son of *Walpert*.

3. *Theodorick* II. the Son of *Theodorick* the 1.

4. *Otho*, Son of *Theodorick* the 2.

5. *John*, the Son of *Otho*, accompanied the Emperour *Henry* the 2. in his Wars against the *Greeks* and *Sarazens*, Anno 1007.

6. *Huno*, sirnamed the Glorious, Son of *John*.

7. *Frederick*, Son of *Huno*, fortunate in his Wars against the *Frisians*; the last of the Male-line of this House.

8. *Elimarus*, the Son of *Haio*, a Nobleman of the *Frisian* bloud, and of *Richsa* his Wife, the Daughter of *John* the fifth Earl.

1120 9. *Elimarus* II. Son to *Elimar* the first.

10. *Christianus*, Son of *Elimar* the 2. sirnamed the Courageous, or the Warlike; a professed Enemy of *Henry* the Lion, Duke of *Saxony*, from whom he took the City of *Breme*.

11. *Maurice*, the Son of *Christian*, an Associate of *Arnulph* Earl of *Holstein* in his Wars with *Denmark*.

12. *Christian* II. Son of *Maurice*.

13. *John* II. Son of *Christian* the 2.

14. *John* III. Son of *John* the 2.

15. *Conrade*, the Son of *John* the third.

16. *Christian* III. Son of *Conrade*, a Student in *Colen*,

len, where he was initiated into holy Orders, which he relinquished, much against the will of his Brother *Maurice*, on the death of his Father.

17. *Theodorick*, Son of *Christian* the 3. the first Earl of *Delmenhorst* of this Line; which fell to him at the death of *Nicolas* Archbishop of *Breme*, descended from a younger Son of *John* the second.

1440 18. *Christian* IV. Son of *Theodorick*, and of *Heduigis*, Sister and Heir of *Gerrard* and *Adolphus*, Dukes of *Selswick* and Earls of *Holstein*; elected on the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus* to the Crown of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1448.

1448 19. *Gerrard*, the Brother of *Christian* the 4. a Prince of an unquiet spirit, always in Wars, and always worsted. He lost the Town of *Delmenhorst* to the Bishop of *Munster*.

1500 20. *John* IV. Son of *Gerrard*, repaired the Ruines of his Estate, and settled the Distractions of it in the time of his Father, being then in Exile; and after very much enlarged it by the reduction of *Butiada*.

1526 21. *Anthony*, the Son of *John* the 4. by a sudden Surprise recovered *Delmenhorst* from the Bishop of *Munster*, *Anno* 1547, which he strongly fortified.

1573 22. *John* V. Son of *Anthony*, enlarged this Earldom with the Provinces of *Rustringen*, *Oostringen*, and *Wangerland*, bequeathed to him by the last Will of the Countess of *Jever*, in *East-Friesland*.

23. *Anthony* II. Brother of *John* the 5. in whose life-time he was Earl of *Delmenhorst*, and after his death of *Oldenburg* also: still living, *Anno* 1648, for ought I can learn unto the contrary.

And thus we see the present estate of *Germany*, distracted and divided amongst many Princes, Prelates, and Incorporate Towns, the chief of which are herein mentioned and described. But besides these there are many others of less note and smaller Territories, which yet are absolute and free: insomuch that in one day's riding a Traveller may twice or thrice meet with divers Laws and divers Coins; every Free Prince and Free City (whose Laws the Emperours are sworn to keep inviolable) having power to make what Laws and coin what Money they will. And hence, in the Censure of Kingdoms, the King of *Spain* is said to be *Rex hominum*, because of his Subjects reasonable Obedience; the King of *France*, *Rex Asinorum*, because of their infinite Taxes and Impositions; the King of *England*, *Rex Diabolorum*, because of his Subjects often Insurrection against and Deposition of their Princes: but the Emperour of *Germany* is called *Rex Regum*, because there is such a number of *Reguli* or Free Princes which live under his Command; or rather at their own Command, (for they do even what they list) as the Emperour *Maximilian* the first well noted.

And, to say truth, the publick Government thereof is nothing less then Monarchical; the Emperour being accompted amongst the Princes but as the chief Officer of the Empire; not reckoned of, by *Bodin* and others of our great Statists and Civilians, as an absolute Monarch, such as the King of *England*, *France* and *Spain*, are confessed to be. For the Priviledges of the Free Cities being made perpetual, the great Estates Hereditary, and the Empire Eligible; the Emperours were brought at last to such low condition, as to be made accomptable to the States of the Empire; who if they be perswaded in their Consciences, or but think they be so, that he is likely by his Male-administration to destroy the Empire, or that he will not hearken unto good Advice, *ab Electorum Collegio Cæsareâ majestate privare potest*, (as my Author hath it) he may be deprived by the Electors, and a more fit and able man chosen into the place; and that too, as the Emperour *Jodocus Barbatus* hath declared in one of his Constitutions, *An.* 1410, *sine Infidelitatis vel Rebellionis crimine*, without incurring the crimes of Treason or Disloyalty. So that the supreme Power and Majesty of the Empire seems to reside especially and contractedly in the Electoral Colledge; diffusedly, in the Imperial Diets; by way of Execution, in the chamber of *Spires*, and other the supreme Courts of the several Circles. But that which makes that Body which they call the Empire, is the Assembly of the Prelates, Princes and Commissioners of the Free Cities in their Diets or Parliaments, the Emperour presiding in them: whom he that saw adorned in his Royal Robes, with the Imperial Crown and Scepter, with the Titles of *Cæsar* and *Augustus* given at every word, would think that the whole Action did take life from him; whereas, indeed, he hath not so much Priviledge as a Negative voice, but is to put in execution such Decrees and Sanctions as these Estates assembled have thought fit to make; not able to do any act by his own Authority, which may speak him Emperour. But, on the other side, the Princes take power unto themselves of making Laws for, and imposing Taxes on, their Subjects; of raising War upon one another, or against a third; and doing many other acts of supreme Authority, which in the Emperour would be counted matter of Male-administration. Such Points as these, together with the appointing of Judges and the like chief Magistrates, (as they relate unto the Empire) are not to be concluded of but in general Diets; which may be summoned by or without the Emperor, as occasion serveth. And to this weakning of the Majesty and Power Imperial the neighbouring Princes have afforded their best assistance; jealous of their own Interests and decrease of Power, if that vast Body so well limbed should be strongly jointed, and all the several Members of it united under the command of one supreme Head. Clear proof whereof we have in those solemn Leagues and Confederations made in their several times against *Charles* the fifth and the late Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. as soon as they began to be in some possibility of setling the Imperial Majesty in its proper Splendour, and bringing down the Princes of it to a lower pitch.

As for the means by which the Empire is attained, it is, and hath of long time been, by the way of Election, as before was noted. The business was first projected in the Court of *Rome* by *Gregory* the first, then Pope, who, being a Native of this Country, thought it the most expedient course to continue the Imperial Title among those of his Nation. But whatsoever was pretended, the Design of it chiefly was to make the Emperors less powerful, and distract the *Germans* (whom they feared) into Parts and Factions, that so the Popes might have the better opportunity to grow great in *Italy*. And that the Emperour might be such as the Pope should like of, the matter was so ordered, that the one half of the Electors should be always of the Ecclesiasticks, who, being obnoxious to the Popes, and for the most part driving on their Interest, were very like to serve him on all occations. The Electors only six in number: that is to say, 1. The Archbishop of *Mentz*, Chancellour of the Empire. 2. The Archbishop of *Colen*, Chancellour of *Italy*. 3. The Archbishop of *Triers*, Chancellour of *France*. 4. The Count-*Palatine* of the *Rhene*, Arch-Sewer. 5. The Duke of *Saxony*, Lord Marshal, and 6. the Marquess of *Brandenburg*, Lord Chamberlain. Upon equality of Voices the Duke of *Bohemia* (now King) was to come in for a Seventh; who by Office

fice is to be chief Cup-bearer in all great Solemnities. For upon days of great Solemnities, as Elections, Inaugurations, the first days of the Imperial Diets, and the like to these, these Offices are performed only; and then performed in this manner following, either in person or by Proxy. Before the Palace-Gate stands an heap of Oats, so high that it reacheth to the breast of the Horse on which the Duke of *Saxony* rideth, having in his hand a silver Wand and a silver Measure, both which together are to weigh 200 Marks. The Duke, still sitting on his Horse, filleth up the Measure with Oats, then sticks his Wand in the remainder of the heap, delivereth the measure of Oats unto some of his Servants who stand nearest unto him, and so attends the Emperour into the Court. The Emperour being entred and sate down at the Table, the three Spiritual Electors, standing orderly together, say the Grace before him. Then cometh the Marques of *Brandenburg* on horse-back also, with a Basin of water in his hand, (the Basin being of the weight of 12 Marks of Silver) and a fine clean Towel on his Arm; which, alighting from his Horse, he holds to the Emperour till he wash. Next comes the Palatine of the *Rhene* mounted on his Horse, with four silver Platters full of Meat, every one of the weight of three Marks of Silver; which, descending from his Horse, after due reverence made, he carrieth and placeth on the Table. And finally the Duke (or King) of *Bohemia*, entring the great Hall on Horse-back as the others did, with a Napkin on his Arm, and a covered Cup in his Hand of the weight of 12 Marks in Silver, alighteth from his Horse, and presenteth the Cup unto the Emperour. But we must know, that of late times these Offices are seldom or never performed by the Electors in their own persons. It is enough if they send their Ambassadors, or substitute some one or other of the Emperour's Court to do it for them.

The Election is usually celebrated at *Francford* on the *Maine*, to which place the Electors or their Deputies are to make repair upon the day appointed by the Archbishop of *Mentz*, whose Office it is (as being Chancellour of the Empire) to issue out the Summons for this Assembly. In their passage unto *Francford* they are to be sufficiently guarded by every Prince through whose Territories or Dominions they are to travel; their Attendants not to exceed the number of 200 Horse, of which 50 only to be armed. When they are met, they go into S. *Bartholomew's* Church, the most capacious of that City) where, after the High-Mass is said, the three Spiritual Electors laying their Hands upon their Breasts, and the Temporal Princes on the Book, make Oath to chuse a fit Temporal Head for the People of Christendom. Upon equality of Voices, as it sometimes happeneth, the *Bohemian* hath the casting Voice, and concludes the business. If in the space of 30 days they have not agreed upon a man, then must they have no other allowance but of Bread and Water, nor be suffered to go out of the City, till that necessity compelleth them unto some Agreement. Which being at the last resolved on, and declared accordingly, the Prince so elected is presently saluted by the Title of *King of the Romans*; the Title of Emperour being not properly to be given unto him, until he have received the Imperial Crown at the hands of the Pope: though since the time of *Charles* the fifth, without any such trouble to themselves or the Popes of *Rome*, the Title of both Emperour and Imperial Majesty is usually conferred upon them from their first Election. The Election being finished, and signified to the party chosen, the Inauguration was held anciently at three several places: *viz.* 1. at *Aquisgrane*, or *Aken*, in the Land of *Gulick*, where he received the Silver Crown, for the Kingdom of *Germany*; 2. at *Millain*, by the Archbishop whereof he was crowned with the Iron Crown, for *Lombardy*, or the Realm of *Italy*; 3. at *Rome*, where, at the hands of the Pope himself, he was crowned with a Golden Crown, for the *Roman* Empire. But since, those Journeys unto *Rome* and *Millain* have been long laid by; the Emperours holding their Elections to be strong enough to make good their Title to that Dignity, being meerly titular, and their Inauguration at *Aken* to be as effectual as if they had also visited the two other Cities. The form of which Elections, the Privileges of the Electors, and other fundamental Constitutions of the *German* Empire, we find summed up together in the Golden Bull of *Charles* the 4. by him first promulgated *An.* 1359. But we must know that, since the publishing of that Bull, the business of Election hath received some change as to the number and the persons of the Parties interessed. For, it pleased the Emperour *Ferdinand* the 2. on the Proscription of *Frederick*, the first Elector *Palatine*, to transfer the Electoral Dignity, with the Office of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, from that House to the Duke of *Bavaria*, the Title of Elector of *Bavaria*, with all the Powers and Priviledges which belonged unto it, to be inseoffed upon him and his Heirs for ever. Which action of the Emperour being protested against by some of the Electors, in favour of the *Palatine* Family, and in due care unto themselves, in not admitting such a dangerous precedent for the time to come; it was at last concluded and agreed on by the Pacification made at *Munster Anno* 1648. That the Duke of *Bavaria* and his Heirs enjoying the said Electoral Dignity with the *Upper Palatinate*, according to the Translation of it from the *Palatine* Family spoken of before; an Eighth Electorate should be added to the former number, to be enjoyed together with the *Lower Palatinate* by *Charles Ludowick*, the now Prince Elector *Palatine*, and his Heirs, who also, on the failure of the Line of *Bavaria*, are to be repossessed of their ancient Rights, the Title of *Arch-Treasurer* being given unto them at the present instead of that of *Archidapifer*, or Arch-Sewer, which they had before.

Now as a step unto the Empire, and for the better assurance of the Imperial Dignity to the *Austrian* Family, it was cunningly projected by *Charles* the fifth, (having received the Imperial Crown from Pope *Clement* the 7.) that his Brother *Ferdinand* should be chosen *King of the Romans* whilst himself was living, and by that means be the more certain of the Empire after his decease. Which Policy being followed by all his Successors, the Title of *Rex Romanorum*, or *King of the Romans*, is grown to be the Title of the Heir apparent, or designed Successor, in the present Empire of the *Germans*; as that of *Cæsar* was, from the time of *Adrian*, in the Empire of the ancient *Romans*. Insomuch as *Rex Romanorum* is now defined to be one who is already so far elated in the Empire, that on the Death, Deprivation, or Resignation of the present Emperour, he is immediately to succeed. And so accordingly it hath happened since this Act of *Charles*; who though he laboured under-hand to leave the Empire unto *Philip* his Son and Heir, whom he found capable enough of so high an Honour; yet he could not do it: it being thought by many understanding men, that on notice of this underhand practice, his Brother *Ferdinand*, who had the like mind to transmit the Empire to his own Posterity, did secretly lend Duke *Maurice* his helping hand to drive him out of *Germany*, as in brief he did. As for the reasons, or, to say better, the pretences, upon which *Charles* did institute this *Rex Romanorum*, (for questionless the true reason of it was to perpetuate the Empire in the *Austrian* Family) they were these that follow. 1. Because that, having the command of many Nations, he could not always personally attend the Affairs of *Germany*. 2. The troubled Estate of Christendom, of the Empire especially,

occasioned by the Preachings and Works of *Luther*. 3. The late rural War raised by the Boors of that Country, on the coming out of these new Doctrines, and not yet throughly extinct. 4. The violent Power of the *Turk*, who, by his Conquest of a great part of *Hungary*, was grown too near a neighbour to them. And 5. the imminent Disobedience in all parts of the Empire. All which conjunctly seemed to require some Prince both of Power and Title to assist him in the bearing of so great a Burthen. And by these and the like suggestions he effected his Design herein, though thereby he changed in a manner the Imperial Style. For whereas the first Emperours of the House of *Charles* the Great were Emperors of the *Romans*, and Kings of *Germany*; the later Emperours of the House of *Charles* the fifth may not improperly be called Emperours of *Germany*, and Kings of the *Romans*. It is true indeed, that the wise and understanding Duke of *Saxony* saw farther through these Pretences than the rest of the Electors either did or would, and that the main Plot was no other, than to make *Germany* (as *Galba* said in his Oration unto *Piso* of the Empire of *Rome*) *unius quasi Familiæ Hæreditatem*, hereditary in times following to the House of *Austria*; and thereupon did openly deny his suffrage to the said Election. But finding that the major part of the Electors were resolved upon it, he moved for an Act to pass, prohibiting the continuance of the Imperial Title in any one Family more than three Successions. In which not able to prevail, (as the Game was plaid) he left the Electors to themselves, by whom *Ferdinand* was chosen King of the *Romans*, and not long after crowned at *Aken* with the usual Rites, *Jan.* 16. *An.* 1531. The same course was followed by this *Ferdinand*, when possessed of the Empire, in causing his Son *Maximilian* to be elected *Rex Romanorum*, whilst himself was living; and so by all the rest since then, as before is said.

As for the Forces of the Empire, for by that name we are to measure the Abilities and Power of *Germany*; we may discern them by those Levies which have been raised upon particular occasions, or by the joint consent of the Free Estates assembled in the Imperial Diets. First, for particular Levies made by private persons, we find 12000 Foot and 8000 Horse raised by the Prince *Palatine* of *Zweibruck*, for Aid of the *French Hugonots* against their King; and, on the other side, no fewer than 7000 Horse, under the Conduct of the Duke of *Aumal* and the Earl of *Mansfield*, for the service of that King against the *Hugonots*. And as for Levies made by consent of the States, we find that *Charles* the 5. had under his Ensigns at *Vienna* 90000 Foot, and 35000 Horse; *Maximilian* the 2. at *Javarin* in *Hungary*, 34000 Horse, and full 100000 Foot; and finally, that in the War betwixt *Charles* the 5. and the Protestant Princes, there were no less than 150000 men on both sides: which numbers no one Country in *Europe* is able to equal. In a word, it is generally conceived that the Empire is able to raise 200000 Horse and Foot, with Arms, Cannon, and Ammunition of all sorts proportionable; which the instances before brought do most plainly evidence.

Touching the Revenues of the Empire, I find them estimated by *Boterus*, and some others since, at seven millions of Crowns yearly. Which may be true enough, taking the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia* with the hereditary Estates of *Austria* into the accompt. But since they are not so united unto the Empire but they may at some time or other be disjoined again, no reason they should come into the reckoning, unless it be as the Revenue of the Emperour, though not of the Empire. But as for the Revenue of the Empire it self, taken abstractedly from the personal and Patrimonial Estate of the Emperour, whosoever he be, it can amount to no such sum: the Tribute paid by the Free or Imperial Cities (at least 60 in number) amounting to no more *per ann.* than 15000 Florens, or 1500 *l. English*: and what is that, but like a Peppercorn for a Quit-rent, in that mighty Continent? By this we may conjecture what the rest may come to. And though, in the way of saving Charges, (which may be reckoned as a part of his Income also) the Princes and Free Cities be bound to aid him in the time of War against the *Turk* with 3842 Horse and 16200 Foot, which he may challenge without troubling the Diets for it: yet War is such a great devourer, that if the Diets do not grant him greater helps, he is like to be but a sorry Gainer by the Undertaking; besides the smalness of those Forces considered with the numbers they are able to raise, and the puissance of the enemy whom they are to encounter.

Finally, for the Arms of the Empire, they are *Sol*, an Eagle displayed with two Heads *Saturn*, armed & crowned *Mars*: the two Heads signifying (as some think) the Eastern and the Western Empires. *Cuspinian*, a learned *German*, conceives rather that these Arms are two Eagles conjoined, and not one Eagle with two Heads: and that they were taken up by the *German* Nation, in memory of the three Legions of *Quintilius Varus* discomfited by them; at what time they seized on two of the *Roman* Eagles, (the Military Ensign of that People) the third being cast into the Fens by the Standard-bearer. But whether it be one or two, certain it is that the one Head is quite pulled off, and the whole Body quite stripped of all its Feathers; the Imperial Dignity being little more than titular, despoiled and stript of all authority appertaining to it.

There are in *Germany*

Archbishops 6. Bishops 34.

Universities 21. *viz.*

1. *Colen.*	8. *Herborn.*	15. *Francford.*
2. *Triers.*	9. *Hanaw.*	16. *Rostock.*
3. *Mentz.*	10. *Wirtenberg.*	17. *Gripswald.*
4. *Heidelberg.*	11. *Friburg.*	18. *Jene.*
5. *Tubingen.*	12. *Altorff.*	19. *Leipzick.*
6. *Ingolstadt.*	13. *Prague.*	20. *Wittenberg.*
7. *Vienna.*	14. *Olmuntz.*	21. *Marpurg.*

And so much for *Germany*.

OF

OF

DENMARK.

THE Kingdom of *DENMARK*, or *DANEMARK*, reckoning in the Additions of the Dukedom of *Holstein* and the great Continent of *Norway*, with the Isles thereof, now all united and incorporated into one Estate, is bounded on the East with the *Baltick* Sea and some part of *Sweden*, on the West with the main Western Ocean, on the North-East with a part of *Sweden*, full North with the main Frozen Seas, and on the South with *Germany*, from which it is divided on the South-west by the River *Albis*, and on the South-east by the *Trave*; a little *Isthmus* or Neck of Land uniting it to that Continent.

It took this name from the *Danes*, of long time the Inhabitants and Possessors of it; so called *quasi Danorum Tractus, sive Regio*, (as *Mercator* hath it,) because the Country of that People: but rather *quasi Danorum limes*, the Bounds or Marches of the *Danes*, bordering close upon the *Dutch*; from whom it hath the name of *Danemarch*.

As for the Situation of it in regard of the Heavens, it lieth partly in the Northern temperate Zone, and partly within the *Artick* Circle; extending from the middle Parallel of the tenth Clime, or 55. Degree of Latitude, where it joineth with *Germany*, as far as the 71. Degree, where it hath no other bound but the Frozen Ocean. By which accompt, the longest Day in the most Southern parts hereof is 17 hours and a quarter: but in the parts extremely North, they have no Night for two whole months, three weeks, one day, and some seven hours over; as on the other side, no Day for the like quantity of time, when the Sun is most remote from them, in the other Tropick. The Air hereof by consequence must be sharp and bitter, even in the very warmest places. Of which, and of the nature of the Soil, we shall speak more punctually in the Description and Survey of the several Parts.

The Inhabitants generally are of good Stature, clear of Complexion, well-colouted, for the most part healthful and long-lived; for though they eat and drink beyond measure, they have good Digestions. In Manners they are very severe, crafty and provident in the managing of their Affairs, but proud withall, and (as the Historian said of another person) *Omnium quæ dixerant fecerantve Ostentatores*, great Vaunters of whatsoever they do or say, highly opinionated of their own Actions, and peremptory in maintaining their own Opinions: religious observers of their Words and Contracts, and strict in executing Justice; especially in punishing of Thieves and Pirats. Such of them as do follow the Wars prove reasonable good Souldiers, both by Sea and Land; but fitter for the Sea than Field-service. The Magistrate is wise rather by experience than study, though they love Learning, and easily attain all Languages which they give their minds to. The old men are covetous, the young men thrifty, and the Merchant ambitious. The Nobility and Gentry are generally of as ancient Families as most in Christendom; here being some of those Houses still remaining which were present at the Pacification made betwixt *Charles* the Great and *Hemingus* King of the *Danes*: and, which adds much unto their Honour, they keep their Blood unmixt from Marriages with the Vulgar sort; and reckon it for an high disgrace to change their Arms, or make any addition thereunto. The Women are fair, discreet, and courteous, and knew well how to govern their Housholds; exceeding fruitful in bearing of Children, but delivered of them with great difficulty. Both Sexes speak the *Dutch* or *German*, common (but with some difference in the pronunciation) to all the Northern Nations in *Norway* and *Swethland*.

Of no great note for men of Learning in the former times, it hath been fortunate in these last for 1. *Tycho Brahe*, that renowned Astrononer; 2. *Hemingius*, a well-known Divine; 3. *Bartholinus*, a Physician and Philosopher of good esteem; 4. *John Cluverus*, the Historian, &c. More famous for great Captains and men of War; especially for 1. *Godfrey*, or *Gotricus*, who setled the Government of this Kingdom, and endangered the great Realm of *France*. 2. *Sueno*, and 3. *Canutus*, the fortunate Conquerours of *England*. 4. *Waldemar* the 3. a right-valiant Prince; but unsuccessful in his Wars against the *Hanse*-Towns, then newly entred into League. 5. *Christiern* the 2. a great Commander in the Wars, but of greater Cruelty. 6. *Christiern* the 4. little inferiour unto many of his Predecessors. To whom we may subjoin (though of different Sex) Q. *Margaret*, the *Semiramis* of these Northern Countries; a Lady of a masculine Spirit, and not more fortunate than daring in all Enterprises, as she declared in the Conquest of *Swethland*, and Subjection of *Norway*, by her united to this Crown.

The Christian Faith was first preached to those of *Holstein* (the next-neighbouring Country unto *Germany*) by S. *Angarius*, Bishop of *Bremen*, the general Apostle of those Northern parts, in the year 826, *Lewis* the God'y then being Emperour of the West. In whose time *Harald* King of *Denmark*, being expulsed his Kingdoms by the Sons of *Godfrey* or *Gotricus*, was baptized at *Mentz*, with a great number of that people which attended on him, by the hands of *Ebbo* Archbishop of *Rhemes*, employed by the Emperour in that service; the Conversion of the whole Nation following not long after, by the power and diligence of the Emperour *Otho* the first, assigned by the Ministry of one *Poppo* the first Bishop of *Arthusen*; *Sueno*, or *Swain*, then reigning amongst the *Danes*. The *Norwegians* came not in till after, converted in the reign of *Olaus* the third, *Anno* 1055, or thereabouts: the *English* assisting in the work, and the good King so zealous in it, that he was canonized a Saint after his decease. Relapsing for the most part to their ancient Gentilism, they were finally regained unto Christianity by the means of Pope *Adrian* the fourth, an *English*-man, about the year 1156, before his assuming of the Popedom called *Nicolaus Breakspear*. But by whomsoever first converted, the Popes of *Rome* would needs pretend some Power and Jurisdiction over them. Which when they began to exercise with too much Authority, *Waldemar* the third is said to have returned this Answer, *Naturam habemus à Deo, Regnum à Subditis, Divitias à Parentibus, Religionem à* Romana *Ecclesia*; *quam, si nobis invides, renunciamus per præsentes*: that is to say, We hold our Life from God,

our Crown from our Subjects, our Riches from our Ancestors, our Religion from the Church of *Rome*; which if you envy us, we do here remit it by these presents. But this Renunciation, though then threatned, was not made till afterwards; when the whole mass of Popery was abolished by King *Frederick* the first, using therein the Ministry of *Bugenhage*, a Divine of *Pomeren*, by whom they were reformed according to the Doctrine of the *Lutheran* Churches.

As for the Government of the Church since that Reformation, it continueth as before it was, by Archbishops and Bishops, in number as before; but much abridged of their Revenues, and a great part of their Power. For *Frederick*, though he found it necessary to remove the old Bishops, (not one of which would be perswaded to the change of Religion) yet he substituted others in their places, allowing them a convenient Maintenance, with a power of Presidence in all Church-Assemblies, where they are to take the Advice of other Presbyters along with them; and out of such Assemblies to receive Complaints, to provide remedy against Scandals, and to order all matters, as peculiar Inspectors, which concern the Church. So that in all the Kings Dominions there are two Archbishops and thirteen Bishops: that is to say, the Archbishop of *Lunden*, the Bishops of *Roschilt*, *Odensee*, *Ripen*, *Wiborch*, *Arthusen*, *Sleswick*, and *Haderslove*, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; the Archbishop of *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Anslo*, *Staffanger*, and *Hammar*, for the Realm of *Norway*; and the Bishops of *Halar* and *Schalholt*, for the Isle of *Iseland*: the Churches of *Holstein* (formerly under the Bishops of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*) being governed by Superintendents, as the rest of the *Lutherans*.

The whole Body of the Estate (as appears by this) consisteth chiefly of three Members: *viz.* 1. the Dukedom of *Holstein*; containing *Wagerland*, *Ditmarsh*, *Stormaria*, and *Holstein* specially so called: 2. the Kingdom of *Denmark*; comprehending both *Juitlands*, part of *Scandia*, and the *Hemodes*, or *Baltick* Islands: and 3. the Kingdom of *Norway*; consisting of *Norway* it self, and the Islands of the Northern Ocean. Which parts we shall survey in order, as before laid down; premising first a word or two of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, in which the Dukedom of *Holstein* and the two *Juitlands* are contained.

The *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE.*

THE *CIMBRICK CHERSONESE* hath on the East the *Baltick* Sea, on the West the main *German* Ocean, on the North a part of the Ocean bending into the narrow Streight or *Fretum* which they call the *Sundt*, on the South-west the great River of *Albis*, on the South-East the small River of *Trave*; betwixt which is the Neck or *Isthmus* which unites it to *Germany*. I know that some contract it into narrower bounds, and limit it upon the South with the River *Eyder*: but I have drawn it down to the *Elve* and the *Trave*, which give it more resemblance to a Chersonese or Demy-Island than the other doth, dissenting in this point from the common Opinion. It had the name of *Chersonesus*, ἀπὸ τῆς χέρσου καὶ νήσου, *à Terra & Insula*, it being the same with a *Peninsula* in the *Latin*. Of which name there are 5. most famous: that is to say, 1. *Peloponnesus*, in *Greece*, which is now called *Morea*; 2. *Thracia Chersonesus*, in *Thracia*, near the Sea *Propontis*; 3. *Taurica Chersonesus*, in the *Euxine* Sea, now a part of *Tartary*; 4. *Aurea Chersonesus*, in *India*, which we now call *Malaca*, (of all which we shall speak in their proper places;) and 5. *Cimbrica Chersonesus*, where now we are. This last was so called from the *Cimbri*, the first Inhabitants hereof, originally descended from *Gomer* the son of *Japhet*; thence called *Gomerii* and *Cimmerii*, by contraction *Cimbri*. Leaving the Plains of *Phrygia* as too narrow for them they sought out new Dwellings, and are said to have first dwelt on the banks of *Palus Maeotis*; where they gave name to the *Bosphorus Cimmerius* there being. Being overcome by the *Scythians*, they removed their Seats more Northward, into a Country bounded, according to *Plutarch*, by the great Ocean on the one side, and the Forest of *Hercynia* on the other: within which Bounds is the *Peninsula* or Country where we now are. They were a people of extraordinary big Stature, having blew and red Eyes, and lived most upon Theft: so that, for their sakes, Κίμβρους ἑτονομάζουσι Γέρμανοι τὰς λῃστάς, the *Germans* called all Thieves *Cimbers*. It happened that the Ocean overflowing a great part of their Country, compelled them to seek new Seats: whereupon in great multitudes abandoning their Dwellings, they petitioned the *Romans*, then lording over a great part of the World, for some place to settle in. This request being denied, they proceeded in another manner, winning with their Swords what their Petitions could not obtain. *Manlius*, *Sillanus*, and *Cæpio* all *Roman* Consuls, perished by them, so that now (saith *Florus*) *actum esset de Imperio* Romano, *nisi illi seculo* Marius *contigisset*: for he, as we have elsewhere told you, utterly overthrew them. The next Inhabitants hereof were the *Saxons*, *Juites*, and *Angles*; upon whose Removal into *Britain*, the greatest part of it was peopled by the *Danes*, who still possess it.

It containeth in length about 100 *Italian* miles, and 80 of the same miles in breadth, and comprehendeth in that tract or extent of ground 30 walled Towns, 6 Episcopal Sees, (besides those of *Hamburg* and *Lubeck*, which are under the Archbishop of *Bremen*) and 20 Royal Castles and Palaces, as well for the reception of the Nobles and great men of the Country, as the private Retirements of the King. The Soil is naturally more fit for Pasturage than Tillage, feeding such multitudes of Oxen, that from hence no fewer than 50000 are sent yearly to *Germany*. Divided at the present into the Dukedom of *Holstein*, and the Province of *Juitland*.

1. The Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN.*

THE Dukedom of *HOLSTEIN* taketh up the Southern part of the *Cimbrick Chersonese* where it joins to *Germany*, extending as far North as the River *Eyder*, which divides it from *Juitland*. So called from the *Dutch* word *Holt*, which signifies a Wood or Forest, according to the nature of it; the Country being low, marishy, and full of Woods, as it continueth to this day. It contains in it these four Provinces; 1. *Wagerland*, 2. *Stormaria*, 3. *Ditmarsh*, and 4. *Holst* or *Holstein* specially so called.

1. *WAGERLAND* is that part of *Holstein* which lies on the South-east of this *Chersonese*, bounded on the East with *Mecklenburg* and the *Baltick* Sea, on the West with *Holstein* specially so called, on the North with the Sea *Baltick* also, on the South with some part of *Mecklenburg*. So called from the *Wagrii*, a Tribe or Nation of the *Sclaves*, who possessed this Tract; from whence the name of *Wagria* in our *Latine* Writers.

Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Lubeck*, pleasantly seated on the Confluence of the *Trave* and the *Billow*, near the fall thereof into the *Baltick*, from which it is distant five *Italian* miles. The River is capable of ships of a thousand tun, which commonly they unlade at *Travemund*, the Port-town to the City, seated upon the very brink of the Sea, where the united Rivers have their fall into it. It was first built by *Adolph* the second Earl of *Holstein*, *Anno* 1143; but so well priviledged by him and his next Successors, that in short time it bid defiance to its Founders, (the cause of many Differences betwixt it and those Princes)

and

and was made a Dukedom of it self. By *Frederick* the first it was united to the Empire, after whose death they chose themselves another Duke; who, having governed them five years, was subdued by the *Danes*, and the City made subject to that Kingdom, remaining so till delivered by the Emperour *Frederick* the second; by whom again once infranchised, it became Imperial; afterwards listed amongst the *Hanse*-Towns, and the first in estimation of all the company, having above 600 Ships of all sorts (some of a thousand Tun and upwards) which belong unto it. But being their Trade is for the most part on the *Baltick* Seas, which are generally free from Pirates, they are most of them built for Burthen, and are slow of sail, and little serviceable, if at all, for a Fight at Sea. But to return unto the City: It is built upon all the sides of a rising Hill, on the top whereof standeth the Church of *Saint Mary*, (once the Cathedral of the City, for it was Episcopal) whence is a Descent to all the Gates of the City, affording to the Eye a most pleasing prospect. The Buildings are very beautiful, and all of Brick; the Streets straight and even; the Churches (ten in number) in good repair, adorned with excellent Imagery, and much admired even by skilful Workmen: and unto every private House a Pipe of water is conveyed from the publick Conduit; according to the Pattern whereof, it hath been observed that the Conduits were first made in *London* and other places. In a word, there is not any City of *Germany* or the more Northern Countries which can equallize it, either for the Beauty and Uniformity of the Houses, the pleasant Gardens, fair Streets, delightful Walks without the Walls; or for the Citizens themselves, who are much commended for their Civility to Strangers, and strict execution of Justice without partiality. The whole in compass is about six miles, fortified with a double Wall, deep Ditches, and unfordable Rivers. 2. *Segeberg*, on the River *Trave*, four *Dutch* miles from *Lubeck*, and near the head of that River. 3. *Oldesloe*, on the same River, in the midst betwixt both. 4. *Gronneberg*, and 5. *Newkirk*, on the *Baltick* Shore: and 6. *Stendorp*, more within the Land, near the edge of a Lake, out of which runs the River *Suentin*.

2. South-west of *Wagerland* lieth *STORMARIA*, betwixt the *Elb* and two less Rivers called the *Bille* and the *Stoer*: from which last, and the Marishness of the situation, or from that River and the *Marsi*, once the Inhabitants hereof, comes the name of *Stormarsh*. Places of most importance are, 1. *Crempe*, on a little River so named, which falls not far off into the *Stoer*, and both together not much farther into the *Elb*. A Town well fortified by *Christiern* the fourth, and reckoned one of the Keys of the Kingdom; as well appears by the Resistance which it made to the Duke of *Fridland*, against whom it held out 13 months, and yielded at the last upon good Conditions, *An.* 1628. 2. *Tychenberg*, (*Tychapolis* my Author calls it) a *Dutch* mile from *Crempe*, but on the very Bank of the River *Elb*, where it receives the *Rhin*, a small River upon which it is seated: first built, and afterward well fortified, by *Christiern* the fourth, of purpose to command the *Elb*, and put a stronger Bridle in the mouths of the *Hamburgers*, *Anno* 1603: now held to be the strongest piece of all his Dominions; the only Town of all this Dukedom which yielded not to the prevailing Imperialists in their late Wars against the *Danes*, *Anno* 1628. 3. *Bredeberch*, a strong Town belonging to the *Rantzows*, one of the best pieces of the Kingdom; remarkable for the stout Resistance which it made to *Wallestein* (Duke of *Fridland*) in the War aforesaid: who, at last taking it by Assault, put all the Souldiers to the Sword. 4. *Pinnenberg*, another strong place and of very great consequence. 5. *Jetzeho*, or *Itzeho*, on the River *Stoer*. 6. *Gluckstadt*, upon a Creek or Bay of the *German* Ocean, repaired and fortified by the said *Christiern* the fourth, (who much delighted in the place) to command the Passage up the *Elb*. 7. *Stoer*, 8. *Hamburg*, upon the *Bille*, where it falls into the *Elb*; an ancient City, built in the time of the *Saxons*, repaired by *Charles* the Great, and walled by the Emperour *Henry* the fourth. Accounted since that time an Imperial City, and made one of the *Hanse*, upon the first incorporating of those Towns. Which notwithstanding, on a Controversie arising about that time betwixt the Earl of *Holstein* and the people hereof, it was adjudged to belong to the Earls of *Holstein*; and that Determination ratified by *Charles* the fourth, *Anno* 1374. In pursuance whereof the *Hamburgers* took the Oath of Allegiance to *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the first King of *Denmark* of that House, as Earl of *Holstein*, acknowledging him and his Successors for their lawful Lords: though since they have endeavoured to shake off that Yoak, presuming very much on their power at Sea, and the assistance which they are assured of upon all occasions from the rest of the *Hanse*-Towns. As for the Town it self, it is seated in a large Plain, with fat and rich Pastures round about it, well fortified by Art and Nature, the Haven being shut up with a strong Iron Chain. The Buildings for the most part are of Brick, but more beautiful than well contrived; and the Streets somewhat of the narrowest. The publick Structures are very fair; especially the Council-house, adorned with the Statues of the Nine Worthies carved with very great Art, the Exchange, or Meeting-place for Merchants, and nine large Churches. The Citizens are generally rich, masters of many as great Ships as sail on the Ocean, some of them 1200 Tun in Burthen, which bring in great profit; besides the great resort of Merchants and their Factors from most places else: sometimes the Staple-Town for the Cloth of *England*, removed on some Discontents to *Stade*, and from thence to *Holland*. It is observed, that there were in this Town at one time 177 Brewers, and but 40 Bakers, nor more than one Lawyer and one Physician. The reason of which disproportion was, that a Cup of *Nimis* was their only Physick; their Differences sooner ended over a Can than by order of Law; Bread being accounted but a Binder, and so not to be used but in case of neeessity.

3. Betwixt the Rivers *Stoer* and *Eyder*, coasting along the *German* Ocean, lies the Province of *DITMARSH*, most properly called *Tuitchmarsh*, from the Marishness of the ground and the *Dutch* Inhabitants, or from a mixture of those people with the *Marsi*, spoken of before. The people, being naturally of the *Saxon* Race, retain much of the stomach and animosity of the ancient *Saxons*; never brought under the command of the Earls of *Holstein* (as *Wagerland* and *Stormaria* were) till *Holstein* it self was joined to the Crown of *Denmark*. And though it was aliened from the Empire by *Frederick* the third, and given in Fee to *Christian* Earl of *Oldenburg*, the first King of that House, *Anno* 1474; yet would they not submit unto his Authority, but held it out against him and some of his Successors, whom in the year 1500 they vanquished in the open Field; till broken and made subject by the valour and good fortune of King *Frederick* the second, *Anno* 1550. Chief places in it are, 1. *Meldorp*, upon the Ocean, the chief Town of the Province; the Inhabitants of which are so wealthy, that many of them cover their Houses with Copper. 2. *Lunden*, opposite to a *Peninsula* or Demi-Island called *Eyderstede*, on the West side whereof it standeth. 3. *Heininckstede*, and 4. *Tellinckstede*; of which nothing memorable.

4. And as for *HOLSTEIN* it self, the fourth and last member of this Estate, though the first in power and reputation, it taketh up the Inland parts, betwixt *Stormaria*

maris and *Juitland*, save that it hath an Outlet into the *Baltick* on the North-west of *Wagerland*. Chief places in it are, 1. *Kiel*, (*Chilonium* in *Latine*) seated upon a navigable Arm of the *Baltick* Sea, parting *Wagerland* from the Dukedom of *Sleswick*: a Town well traded, and having a capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping from *Germany*, *Livland*, *Sweden*, and the rest of *Denmark*. 2. *Rensborg*, the best fortified piece in all this Province. 3. *Niemunster*, on the North west of the *Stoer*, not far from the head of it. 4. *Wilster*, on a small River so called. 5. *Bramstede*, 6. *Borsholm*, not much observable, but for a Monastery in which *Henry* one of the Earls hereof (of a younger House) turned Monk, and died *Anno* 1241.

The ancient Inhabitants of this and the other three were the *Saxons*, *Sigulons*, and *Subalingii*, placed here by *Ptolomy*; whom I conceive to be no other than some Tribes of the *Cimbri*, of whom this *Chersonese* took name: the two last of which passing into the name of the first, and in the Declination of the *Roman* Empire marching over the *Elb*, and spreading all along the Coasts of the *German* Ocean, molested with their Piracies and Depredations the Shores of *Britain*, known by that means unto the *Britans*, they were invited to assist them against the *Scots* and *Picts*. Which action, with the Aid of the *Juites* and *Angli*, (Inhabitants together with them of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*) they performed so honestly, as to make themselves Masters of the best part of the Island. Such as remained behind, not being able to defend their own against the *Sclaves*, were fain to quit the parts lying next to *Mecklenburg*; which, being peopled by the *Vagrii*, took the name of *Wagerland*. But the *Saxons* being vanquished by *Charles* the Great, these on the North-side of the *Elb* became a part of the great Dukedom of *Saxony*; and so continued till dismembred by *Lotharius*, both Duke and Emperour, who gave the proper *Holst* (or *Holstein* specially so called) with the Province of *Stormaria* to *Adolph* Earl of *Schaumburg*, who had deserved well of him in his Wars, with the Title of Earl of *Holstein*, *Anno* 1114. By *Adolph* the second, his Successor, it was setled in this House; who, having made a full Conquest of it, caused it to be planted with Colonies of *Dutch* or *Germans* from *Holland*, *Westphalen*, and *Friesland*; by which means the name of *Sclaves* was at last worn out. By *Gerard* the fifth the Dukedom of *Sleswick* was also added; conferred upon him by the bounty of *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark*, in whose Wars he served. *Adolph* the last Earl of this House dying without Issue, the whole Estate fell on *Christiern*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of *Hednigis* his Wife, Sister and Heir to *Adolph* before mentioned; who, being called to the Crown of *Denmark*, compounded with his Brother *Gerrard* for the sum of 50000 Marks; and having gotten *Ditmarsh* also of the Emperour *Frederick* the third, prevailed so far as to have the whole Estate erected into a Dukedom, *Anno* 1474, to be held by him and his Successors of the Sacred Empire. Which said, we will next add the Catalogue of

The Earls and Dukes of *HOLSTEIN*.

1114 1. *Adolph* of *Schaumburg*, by *Lotharius*, Emperour and Duke of *Saxony*, made the first Earl of *Holstein*.

1137 2. *Adolph* II. Son of *Adolph* the first.

1164 3. *Adolph* III. Son of *Adolph* the 2. vanquished by *Canutus* King of the *Danes*, lost himself and his Country.

1232 4. *Adolph* IV. in his Fathers life-time recovered his Estate from *Waldemar* the Successor of *Canutus*, overcome by him in a well fought Battel *Anno* 1226, his Father then Prisoner to the *Danes*.

1261 5. *Gerrard*, the 2. Son of *Adolph* the fourth, his elder Brother *John* making choice of *Wagerland*, succeeded in *Holstein*.

1281 6. *Henry* the Son of *Gerrard*, the first that set up a Custom-house at *Hamburg*, for receipt of his Tolls and Taxes.

1310 7. *Gerrard* II. Son of *Henry*, slain treacherously by the *Danes*.

1339 8. *Henry* II. Son of *Gerrard* the second.

1381 9 *Gerrard* III. Son of *Henry* the second, created the first Duke of *Sleswick* by Queen *Margaret* of *Denmark*.

1404 10. *Henry* III. Son of *Gerrard* the third.

1427 11. *Adolphus* V. commonly called the XII. (those of the younger Houses being reckoned in) the last Earl of this House.

1459 12. *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, Son of *Theodorick* Earl of *Oldenburg*, and of his Wife *Heduigis*, Sister of *Henry* and *Adolphus* the two last Earls, succeeded in the Earldom of *Holstein*, inlarged with the addition of *Ditmarsh*, and erected into a Dukedom by the Emperour *Frederick* the third *Anno* 1474. But seeing that *Otho* Earl of *Schaumburg* pretended a Right unto the whole, as the next Heir-male, according to the Constitutions of the Empire of which it was holden; and *Gerrard* the Brother of *Christiern* put in for his Share, according to the ill Custom of *Germany*, of which it was then counted part: he was fain to buy his peace of both; giving to *Otho* 43000 Florens in ready money, with the Towns of *Pinnenberg*, *Haltzburg*, and *Bramstede*, the ancient possessions of the Earls of *Schaumburg*; and 50000 Marks to his Brother *Gerrard*, besides his whole Interest in the Earldom of *Oldenburg*, as before was said. By this means *Holstein* was united to the Crown of *Denmark*, the Kings thereof, as Dukes of *Holstein*, being counted Princes of the Empire; but neither send unto the Diets, nor contribute any thing at all to the publick Taxes, nor acknowledge any kind of Subjection to it more than meerly titulary. Only it was ordained at the request of the Subjects, when first they were incorporated into that Kingdom, that in case of any grievance or unjust sentence in the ordinary Courts of Justice, wherein they found no remedy in the supreme Council of the Province, it might be lawful for them to appeal to the Imperial Chamber, as they had done formerly. Which as it was granted to content them at the present time, on sufficient Caution; so hath it seldom or never been put in practice; the very Grant or Priviledge (if such it were) being in a manner worn out of memory. But since this uniting of the two Estates, the Title of Duke of *Holstein* and a good part of the Country was given unto *Adolphus*, Brother of *Christiern* the 3. (created by Queen *Elizabeth* one of the Knights of the Garter *Anno* 1560) who governed it interchangeably with the King in their several turns: after whose death, and the death of all his Children dying without Issue-male, the Title of it was conferred on *Ulrick*, Son of *Frederick* the second, and Brother of *Christiern* the fourth, created Knight of the Garter by King *James Anno* 1605, In whose posterity it remains till this present time.

2. The Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

IN which, 1. *JUITLAND* containeth all the rest of the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, divided from the Dukedom of *Holstein* by the River *Eyder*, the ancient Boundary betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*; but principally by a long Trench and Wall from one Sea to the other, of such breadth, that a Chariot or two Horse-men a-breast might ride upon it. First built, in imitation

of

of the *Picts* Wall in *England*, by *Godfrey* King of *Denmark*, in the time of *Charles* the Great; either to hinder the daily Incursions of the *Saxons*, as some, or to stop the current of the Victories of the said *Charles*, as others think. The Tract thereof, still very easie to be seen, is called *Dennewerk* (or the *Danes Work*) to this very day.

It was so called from the *Juites*, who, together with the *Angli* and neighbouring *Saxons*, made a Conquest of the best part of *Britain*. The Country so aboundeth in Cattel, that it sendeth yearly into *Germany* 50000 Oxen, besides great store of Butter, Cheese, Tallow, Hides, and Horses: divided commonly into *North Juitland*, and *South Juitland*, or *Juitland* specially so called, and the Dukedom of *Sleswick*.

SOUTH JUITLAND, or the Dukedom of *SLESWICK*, is that part of the *Cimbrian Chersonese* which lies next to *Holstein*; called *South-Juitland*, from the Southern situation of it; and *Sleswick*, from the chief Town of it, and the Head of this Dukedom. The Country, for the most part, is plain, little swelled with Mountains; the Fields whereof do interchangeably yield both Fish and Corn. For during one three years they sow it constantly, and reap the Fruits of it, and for the next three let the Pools overflow the Land, to the end the Fish may eat up the Grass, (whom they catch as often as they please) and the Mud which is left behind inrich the Soil. But besides their Pools, they have also on the *Baltick* Shores many goodly Bays, not only commodious for Merchants, but well stored with Fish, and with Salmons especially.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Flensborch*, seated among very high Mountains on the Shore of the *Baltick* Sea, where there is a Port so deep, so safe, and so commodious, that all the Inhabitants thereof in a manner may lade and unlade their Ships close to their houses. 2. *Husem*, or *Hussum*, upon the *German* Ocean, not far from the mouth of the River *Eyder*. 3. *Haderslevi*, a Bishop's See, if not rather some Town or Manor of the Bishops of *Sleswick*, seated on a navigable In-let of the *Baltick* Sea, wherewith it is almost encompassed; beautified with the fair Castle of *Hansburg*, begun by *John* the eldest Son of King *Christiern* the first, then Duke of *Holstein*, but finished by *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*. 4. *Londenberg*, in the *Peninsula* called *Eyderstede*, over against *De Strandt*, an Island of the *German* Ocean. 5. *Sternberg*, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the King of *Denmark*. 6. *Gottorp*, a strong Fort or Castle of the Duke of *Sleswick*'s, at the end of a large Bay or In-let of the *Baltick* also: remarkable for the Toll-booth or Custom-house there erected, at which there is Toll paid one year with another for 50000 Oxen sent out of the *North-Juitland* into *Germany*. 7. *Sleswick*, originally by the *Danes* called *Hydebui*, built, as they say, by *Hethe* a Queen of that Nation; but by the *Saxons* called *Sleswick*, as the Town upon the River *Sley*, there running into the *Baltick*, and giving to the Town a fair and commodious Haven. This of long time hath been accounted the chief Town of this Province, honoured with an Episcopal See, and made the Head of the Dukedom, so giving name unto the whole. A Dukedom first erected by King *Henry* of *Denmark*, who gave it to *Waldemar*, great Grandchild of *Abel* a former King *Anno* 1280, to be held by him under the Right and Soveraignty of the Kings thereof. But the Male-issue failing, it returned to the Crown, and was by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* conferred on *Gerrard* Earl of *Holstein*, as before was said, *Anno* 1386. Repenting afterwards of that Act, she extorted it out of the hands of the Widow of *Gerrard*; but it was again recovered by the Valour and good fortune of his Son *Adolphus*. After whose death it fell, together with *Holstein*, upon *Christiern* of *Oldenburg*, King of *Denmark*, as before related, by whom it was incorporated with that Crown, never since alienated, but assigned sometimes in Portion for the younger Princes; the Patrimony at this time of the Sons of *Alexander*, surnamed of *Sunderborg*, (the place of his Nativity) Son of *John*, one of the younger Sons of King *Christiern* the third.

NORTH JUITLAND, the most Northern part of all the *Chersonese*, hath on the South the Dukedom of *Sleswick*, but on all other parts the Sea. Divided commonly, according to the number of the Bishopricks, into four Dioceses or Districts; that is to say,

1. The Diocese of *RIP* or *RIPEN*, bordering next to *Sleswick*, containing 30 Prefectures or Herets, (as they use to call them) seven Cities or walled Towns, and ten Castles. The chief of which are, 1. *Ripen*, the Episcopal See, situate near the *German* Ocean. 2. *Kolding*, on a Creek of the *Baltick* Sea; where *Dorothy* the Dowager of *Christiern* the third built a publick School, (one of my Authors calls it an University.)

2. The Diocese of *ARHUSEN*, lying on the North of *Ripen*, but more towards the *Baltick*, containeth 31 Herets or Prefectures, seven Cities or walled Towns, and five Castles. The chief whereof are, 1. *Arhusen*, the Episcopal See, seated on the *Baltick*, enjoying a commodious Port and well frequented; the first Bishop hereof being that *Poppo* who converted this Nation; Christianity and Episcopacy going for the most part hand in hand together. 2. *Sohanderborg*, on the South of *Arhusen*. 3. *Kallo*, a strong Castle of the Kings, seated in the inmost part of a large Bay, occasioned by the Promontory or Cape of *Hillenis*, extending hence two *Dutch* miles, to the high Hill of *Ellemanberg*. Opposite whereunto, and pertaining to this Jurisdiction, lie the Islands of 1. *Samsoe*, 2. *Hiolm*, 3. *Inen*, 4. *Hiarnee*, (perhaps *Gerno*) 5. *Hilgenes*, and others.

3. The Diocese of *WIBORCH*, on the North of *Arhusen*, containeth sixteen Herets, the Islands of 1. *Jegen*, 2. *Hansholm*, 3. *Osholm*, 4. *Cisland*, & *Egholm*, and 6. *Bodum*; three Cities or walled Towns, and as many Castles. The principal of which is *Wiborch*, the Episcopal See, an Inland City, but situate on a Water which runneth into the Bay of *Limfort*. The ordinary Seat of Judicature for both the *Juitlands*, for all Causes, as well Criminal as Civil: the Court continually sitting from one day to another, unless perhaps the Judges do sometimes adjourn it for their own Refreshments.

4. The Diocese of *BURGLAVE*, or *Vandalia*, lying farther North, is commonly subdivided into four Parts or Members: that is to say, 1. *Thyland*, lying South of the Bay of *Limfort*, on the *Baltick* side, whose chief Town is *Alborch*, the ordinary Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Vandalia*, from hence many times stiled *Alburgensis*, situate on the Bay aforesaid, which, opening into the *Baltick* Sea, extendeth through the main Land Westward almost as far as the *German* Ocean. 2. *Morsee*, lying on the Ocean, and containing three Prefectures or Herets, the Town of *Nieuping*, the Castle of *Lunsted*, and the Isle of *Agerse*. 3. *Hamberer*, on the North west of the Bay of *Limfort*, containing four Herets, the Town of *Thystad*, where *Christiern* the third founded a publick School, or such another University as that of *Kolding*, the Castle of *Orum*, and the Islands of *Oland* and *Oxholm*. There is in this part also the high Rock called *Skaringelint*, a noted Sea-mark, fitly serving to give notice to the Sailour of the Quick-sands which lye underneath it and about this Coast. 4. *Wensyssel*, *Vendilia*, or *Wendlie*, that is (as *Meursius* doth expound it) *Vandalorum sedes*, the Seat of the *Vandals*, taketh up all the rest of the North-

of

of *Juitland*, containing six Prefectures, the Islands of 1. *Groysholm*, 2. *Hertzholm*, and 3. *Tidsholm*, three Towns, and one Castle: the most remarkable of which is *Schagen*, within the most Northerly point of all this *Chersonese*. In this part is a very high Mountain called Mount *Alberg*, in which are found some marks and remainders of the ancient Giants, as the Inhabitants believe, and report accordingly.

The Inhabitants of both *Juitlands*, in the time of *Ptolomy* and before, were the *Cobandi*, *Chali*, *Phunduſi*, *Charudes*, and in the most Northern Tracts the *Cimbri*, of whom the four first were but Tribes or Nations. These moving toward the South in that great Expedition against *Spain*, made by the neighbouring *Vandals* on the *Roman* Empire, occasioned the *Juites* and *Angli* to inlarge or shift their Dwellings, each taking up the parts which lay nearest to them. The *Juites*, or *Gutæ*, being a People of *Scandia*, and there placed by *Ptolomy*, took up the Northern parts thereof, from them named *Juitland*: the other being a People of the *Suevi*, dwelling on the South of the *Elb*, possessed themselves of those parts which lay next the *Saxons*, their old Friends and Confederates, (their chief Town being *Sleswick*) where *Angelen*, now an obscure Village, once of greater note, doth preserve their memory. But these uniting with the *Saxons* in the Conquest of *Britain*, and leaving none behind which were fit for action, or not enough to keep possession of the Country against the new Invaders, gave opportunity to the *Danes* to come in upon them; by whom the Country being conquered as far as to the River *Eyder*, were planted by Colonies of *Danes*, and made a part of that Kingdom: of whom we shall say more in the close of all; first taking a survey of the *Baltick* Islands, and such Provinces on the main Land of *Scandia* as properly make up the Kingdom of *Denmark*.

2. THE *BALTICK ISLANDS* are in number 35, and are so called, because they lie dispersed in the *Baltick* Ocean. At this day it is called by the *Germans De Oost Zee*; anciently by some *Mare Suevicum*, by *Pomponius Mela Sinus Codanus*, by *Strabo Sinus Venedicus*; but generally *Mare Balticum*, because the great *Peninsula* of *Scandia*, within which it is, was by some Writers of the middle and darker Times called *Balthia*. It beginneth at the narrow passage called the *Sound*; and interlacing the Countries of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, *Germany*, and *Poland*, extendeth even to *Livonia* and *Lituania*. The reasons why this Sea, being so large, doth not ebbe and flow, are, 1. the Narrowness of the Streight by which the Ocean is let into it; and 2. the Northern situation of it, whereby the Celestial Influences have lesser power upon it. The principal of this great shole of Islands are, 1. *Seland*, 2. *Funen*, or *Fionia*, 3. *Langland*, 4. *Lawland*, 5. *Falstre*, 6. *Aria*, 7. *Alsen*, 8. *Tusing*, 9. *Ween*, 10. *Femera*, and 11. *Bornholm*. Some others of less note we shall only name, and so pass them over.

1. *SELAND*, the greatest Island of the *Baltick* Seas, is situate near the main Land of *Scandia*, parted from it by a narrow Streight or *Fretum*, not above a *Dutch* mile in breadth, commonly called by the name of the *Sundt* or *Sound*. A Streight through which all Ships which have any trading to or from the *Baltick* must of necessity take their course; all other Passages being barred up with impassable Rocks, or otherwise prohibited by the Kings of *Denmark*, upon Forfeiture of all their Goods. So that being the only safe Passage which these Seas afford, one may sometimes see two or three hundred Ships in a day pass through it: all which pay a Toll or Imposition to the King, according to their Bills of lading. And to secure this Passage, and command all Passengers, there are two strong Castles, the one in *Scandia*, called *Helsinburg*, whereof more anon; the other in this Island, which is called *Cronenburg*.

But before we come to this Castle, we must view the other parts of the Island, being in length two days journey, and almost as much in breadth: the Soil so fertile, that, without any manuring or charge at all, it yieldeth plenty of all Necessaries for the life of man. It was anciently called *Codanonia*, and containeth in it fifteen Cities or walled Towns, and twelve Royal Castles. The principal whereof are, 1. *Haffen*, or *Hafnia*, the Metropolis of the Islands, by the *Dutch* called *Copenhagen*, or the *Haven of Merchants*; situate near the Sea, with an handsom Port; the Isle of *Amager*, which lieth on the East-side of the Town, making a very safe Road for all kinds of Shipping. The Town is of an orbicular form, and reasonably well fortified; but the Buildings mean, for the most part of Clay and Timber, only to be commended for a spacious Market-place. Yet herein, as the chief Town of all the Kingdom, and situate in the heart of those Dominions, is the Palace-Royal; built of Free-stone, in form of a Quadrangle, but of no great Beauty or Magnificence. Most memorable for the University here founded by *Henry*, or *Ericus* the ninth; but perfected by King *Christiern* the first, by him and the succeeding Princes liberally endowed. 2. *Fredericksburg*, amongst Woods of Beech, built for a place of Pleasure by *Frederick* the second, where the King hath a fine House, and a little Park, in which (amongst other foreign Beasts) are some Fallow-Deer transported hither out of *England* in the 24. year of Queen *Elizabeth*. 3. *Roschilt*, not walled, but counted for a City, as a See Episcopal; the Bishops whereof have anciently had the honour of Crowning and Inaugurating the Kings of *Denmark*. In the Cathedral Church hereof are to be seen the Tombs of many of the *Danish* Kings; some of them very fair and sumptuous, the most mean and ordinary. 4. *Sora*, of old times beautified with a goodly Monastery, the Revenues whereof, at the alteration of Religion, were converted to the maintenance of a Free-School built here by *Frederick* the first. But in the year 1623, *Christiern* the fourth, adding hereunto the Revenues of two other dissolved Monasteries, the one in the Isle of *Lawland* and the other in *Juitland*, founded here a new University, for the better supply of learned Ministers for the Churches of *Denmark* and *Norway*, (which before could not be provided for out of *Copenhagen*) and furnished it with men of eminence in all Arts and Sciences for its first Professors. 5. *Elsenore*, or *Helsingore*, a Village only, but much frequented by Seafaring men as their Ships pass by the *Sound*, upon which it is. Near unto which is 6. the strong and magnificent Castle of *Cronenburg*, built with uncredible charge and pains by King *Frederick* the second; the foundation of it being laid on huge Stones sunk into the Sea, and so fastened together, that no Storm or Tempest, how violent soever, is able to shake it; well fortified as well as founded, and mixt of a Palace and a Fort, being since the first building of it the most constant Residence of the Kings of *Denmark*, who from hence may easily discern each Ship which sails through the *Sundt*, each of which addeth more or less unto his Revenues. A profitable and pleasing Prospect. By the Commodity of this and the opposite Castle, the King doth not only secure his Customs, but very much strengthen his Estate: the Castles being so near, and the Streight so narrow, that, by the addition of some few Ships, he may keep the greatest Navy that is from passing by him.

Unto the Government and Jurisdiction of this Island belong many others, the principal whereof are, 1. *Amagria*,

magria, *Amager*, or *Amach*, which helps to make up the Port or Road of *Copenhagen*, spoken of before; planted with *Hollanders* brought hither by the procurement of *Christiern* the second. 2. *Mund*, or *Moen-land*, the chief Town whereof is called *Stekoe*. 3. (2) *HVENE*, or *WEEN*, a little South of *Cronenburg* Castle; a *Dutch* mile in length, but not quite so broad; remarkable only for the Studies of that famous Astronomer *Tycho Brahe*, to whom *Frederick* the second gave this Island, that living in a private and solitary place, removed from all company but his own Family only, he might with more convenience attend his Books. At this day most observable for the Castle of *Uranopolis*, or *Urenborg*, in which the greatest part of his Mathematical Instruments are preserved in safety.

3. *FIONIA*, or *FVNEN*, the second Island of account in all the *Baltick*, is situate betwixt *Seland* and *Juitland*, from which last it is parted by a Streight called *Middelfar Sundt*, so narrow, and of so small a Sea, that the Island and the *Cherſoneſe* seem joined together. A Country of a pleasant and delightful Situation, and as fruitful withal; containing 12 *Dutch* miles in length, and four in breadth; and therein 24 Herets or Pretectures, 16 Towns, and 6 Royal Castles, besides many goodly Villages, and Gentlemens Houses. The chief whereof are, 1. *Odenſee*, or *Othenſche* (called in *Latine Othonia*) an Episcopal See, founded here, at the first conversion of this People, by *Otho* the Great, whence it had the name. The Town is not large, but beautified with two fair Churches, the one dedicated to Saint *Canute*, the other to St. *Francis*: situate in the midst of the Island, from which the residue of the Towns are almost equally distant; and so commodiously seated for Trade and Merchandise, as they do not only traffick in the *Baltick* Sea, but in *Sweden*, *Norway*, *Russia*, *Flanders*, and *Germany*. 2. *Nyborch*, 3. *Foborch*, 4. *Swynborch*, 5. *Middelfar*, whence the Streight is so named, 6. *Bowens*, and 7. *Kartemunde*; all seated on some Haven, or convenient Creek. The principal of the Castles are, 1. *Newborg*, 2. *Hagenſhow*, 3. *Eſcheborg*, 4. *Hinſgagel*, 5. the Court of *Rugard*. In this Island, not far from the Castle of *Hagenſhow*, is the Mountain of *Offenberg*, where *John Ranzovius*, *An.* 1430. discomfited the great Army of *Christopher*, the Brother of *Anthony*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, coming in those unsettled times to invade the Kingdom, under colour of restoring *Christiern* the second, formerly deposed: in which Fight the Earls of *Hoye* and *Teckleborg* were both slain in the place, and the Kingdom after that in quiet from the like Pretenders.

South of *Fionia*, and under the Government hereof, are about 90 lesser Islands, most of them inhabited: the chief of which are,

4. *LANGLAND*, seven *Dutch* miles in length, in which, besides many Villages and Gentlemens Houses, we have the Town of *Rudkoping*, and the Castle of *Franeker*.

5. *LAWLAND*, disjoined from *Seland* by a little narrow Streight called *Grone-ſundt*; so plentiful of Corn and Chesnuts, that Ships full fraighted with them are sent yearly hence. An Island which, besides many Castles, Villages and Mansion-houses of the Gentry, hath five good Towns, *viz.* 1. *Nyſtadt*, 2. *Naſco*, 3. *Togrop*, 4. *Richus*, and 5. *Mariboane*; in which last anciently was a very rich Monastery, the Revenues whereof are now imployed for the endowment of the new University of *Sora*, founded by *Christiern* the fourth, as before was noted.

6. *FALSTRE*, four *German* miles in length, affording plenty of Corn yearly to some neighbouring Islands. Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Nicopen*, which for the Elegancy of the place and Pleasantness of the Situation is called the *Naples* of *Denmark*, 2. *Stubcopen*, from whence there is the ordinary passage into *Germany*, seven *Dutch* miles hence.

7. *TUSING*, not far from *Swynborch*, or *Swineburg*, a Town of *Fionia*; a *Dutch* mile in length, situate in a dangerous and troublesom Sea, from whence is no safe passage either to *Seland*, *Funen*, or *Juitland*, though much distant from neither. Chief places in it are, 1. *Aſſens*, towards *Juitland*; 2. *Niburg*, towards *Seland*, and 3. the Court of *Keltorp*, belonging to the noble Family of *Roſencrantz*.

8. *FEMERA*, or *FEMEREN*, a fruitful and well-peopled Island, having in it the Towns of 1. *Derborch*, 2. *Stabul*, and 3. *Pietterſdorp*. A place of great importance to the Crown of *Denmark*, not so much in danger of being made subject to the *Imperialists* by the taking of *Holstein* and both *Juitlands*, as by planting a strong Garrison in this small Island: and therefore with all diligence recovered by the King again, and better fortified than before, against all Invasions, *Anno* 1628. Of the remaining Islands which pertain unto *Fionia*, we find the names of 1. *Aroe*, 2. *Romſo*, 3. *Endelo*, 4. *Ebelo*, 5. *Boko*, 6. *Brando*, 7. *Zoroe*, 8. *Agernis*, 9. *Hellenis*, 10. *Jerdo*, 11. *Birkholm*; of which nothing memorable.

Amongst these Islands, but not subordinate to *Fionia*, are,

9. *ARIA*, belonging to the Dukedom of *Sleſwick*, consisting of 3. Parishes, some Gentlemens Houses, and the Town and Castle of *Koping*: supposed to be the habitation of the *Arii*, spoken of by *Tacitus*; but a Colony rather of them, as I suppose. And not far off,

10. *ALSEN*, another little Island, but of more repute, callled in *Latine Elyſia*, opposite to the Gulf or Bay of *Flensborg* in the Dukedom of *Sleſwyck*, to which it also appertaineth. Well stored it is with Beasts for profit, and Game for pleasure; so populous, that some thousands of men may be easily and suddenly raised in it; consisting of 13 Parishes and 4 Towns: that is to say, 1. *Gammelgard*, 2. *Oſterholm*, 3. *Norderborg*, and 4. the good Town and Castle of *Sunderborg*, one of the ordinary Residences of the Dukes of *Sleſwick*, and honoured with the Birth of many of their Princes of the Royal Family. Some think it was the Habitation anciently of the *Elyſii*, spoken of by *Tacitus*, and by him placed next unto the *Angli*: But being the *Angli* in those times dwelt about the *Elb*, I rather think, that when some Colonies of the *Angli* seated themselves in the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, as before was said, some of the *Arii* and *Elyſii* might go along for company, and plant themselves near them and these Islands.

11. *BORNHOLM*, the last of all the *Baltick* which belong to *Denmark*, is situate more Eastward, opposite to that part of *Scandia* which is called *Bleking*, betwixt it and *Pomeren*. An Isle of excellent Pasturage, breeding plenty of Cattel, wherewith, as also with Butter, Cheese, Wool, Hides, and some store of Fruits, they supply the wants of some of their neighbours; besides good quantities of powdered Beef & Mutton, which they barrel up and sell to Mariners. It containeth many good Towns and wealthy Villages; the chief whereof is *Bornholm*, which gives name to the Island. Both Town and Island were pawned by some former Kings unto those of *Lubeck*; from them redeemed by King *Frederick* the second for a great sum of money, after it had been in their possession about 50 years.

These Islands in the time of *Pomponius Mela* were by one general name called the *Hemodes*, in number reckoned to be seven; the residue either not inhabited, or not taken notice of, are no-where mentioned in the Ancients. Of these seven, the greatest and best peopled was called *Codanonia*, (supposed to be *Seland*,) in which the said Authour placeth the *Teutoni*. By *Ptolemy* it is called *Scandia*

dia Minor, with reference to the great *Peninſula* of *Scandia*, ſuppoſed by him to be an Iſland. From this, or from the Sea adjoining, called *Sinus Codanus*, the people of theſe Iſlands and the next Eaſtern Continent took the name of *Danes*; ſpreading the name afterwards, as they did their Conqueſts; of which more anon. In the mean time we muſt croſs over the *Sound*, and take notice of ſuch other parts of this Kingdom as lie on the other ſide thereof, in the vaſt Continent or Demy-Iſland (which you will) of *Scandia*: of which ſomewhat muſt be firſt premiſed, in regard that not only ſome parts of *Denmark*, but the whole Country of *Norway* (the Northern Iſlands excepted) are contained in it.

3. SCANDIA, by *Pliny* and *Solinus* called *Scandinavia*, by *Jornandes Scanzia*, hath on the Eaſt that Bay or Branch of the *Baltick* which is called the *Finniſch* and *Bodner* Seas, on the North and Weſt the main Ocean, on the South, where it points towards *Germany*, the *Baltick* or *Ooſt Zee*, as the *Dutch* call it; joined to the main Continent of *Sarmatia* by an *Iſthmus*, or Neck of Land, at the bottom of the *Bodner Zee*, not far from *Wardhuys*. In regard of ſo great Seas on all parts thereof, it was generally by the Ancients thought to be an Iſland, but *incompertæ magnitudinis*, of an unknown greatneſs, as both *Pytheas* and *Xenophon Lampſacenus* do affirm in *Pliny*: by one of which it is called *Baſilia*, by the other *Baltia*; from whence the name of *Baltick* to the Sea adjoining. But later Navigations and Experience have confuted that opinion, by which it is found to be no Iſland, but a part of the Continent, and a great one too; containing the whole Kingdom of *Norway*, the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Sweden*, and ſome part of *Denmark*. That part hereof which belongs to *Denmark* is ſituate in the South of this great *Peninſula*, and divided into the three Provinces of *Hallandia*, *Scania*, and *Bleking*: and in them are 23 Herets or Prefectures, and 15 Cities.

1. *HALLANDIA*, or *HALLAND*, hath on the Eaſt the wild Woods which part it from *Gothland*, on the Weſt the intervening Sea betwixt it and *Juitland*, on the North *Sweden* properly and ſpecially ſo called, on the South *Scandia* or *Schonen*. A Country which for the healthfulneſs of the Air, plainneſs of the Soil, commodiouſneſs of Havens, plenty of Fiſh, pleaſure of Hunting, for inexhauſtible Mines of Braſs and Lead, (with ſome veins of Silver) frequency of well-peopled Towns and Villages, and Civility of the Inhabitants, is not inferiour to any. Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Laholm*, 2. *Halmſtad*, 3. *Falkenborch*; all of them on the Sea, at the mouth of navigable Streams, whoſe names I find not. 4. *Warsberg*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, but fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle on the top of an Hill; taken and garriſoned by the *Swedes Anno* 1569, and not without great difficulty recovered by the *Danes* again *Anno* 1569.

2. *SCANIA*, or *SCHONEN*, hath on the Eaſt *Bleſcida* or *Bleking*, on the Weſt the *Sound*, running along the ſhore hereof for the ſpace of twenty *German* miles, on the North *Halland*, on the South the *Baltick* or *Ooſt Zee*. The Country is of the ſame nature with *Halland*, as before deſcribed; the Character of that pertaining to all the three; this having over and above, as peculiar to it, that the Sea-ſhores are ſtored with ſuch Sholes of Herrings, that ſometimes Ships are ſcarce able with wind and oar to break through them, and row off the Harbour. It is in length 72 miles, 48 in breadth. Chief Towns in which are, 1. *Linden*, an Archbiſhop's See, the Metropolitan of *Denmark* and *Norway*; advanced unto that honour by the means and mediation of *Ericus* the firſt, who purpoſely made a journy to *Rome* to effect that buſineſs; the Church of *Denmark* being before that time ſubject to the Archbiſhops of *Breme*. This was about the year 1100. It is ſituate ſomewhat within the Land; but the Cathedral eaſily diſcernible by Mariners as they ſail along. The City is but mean, and, were it not for the Cathedral, of no beauty at all. But that indeed is affirmed to be a work of much Magnificence and Art; eſpecially for the Clock, the Dial, and ſome outward adjuncts. For in the Dial curiouſly ſet out with divers Colours are to be ſeen diſtinctly the Year, Month, Week-day, and Hour of every day throughout the year; with the Feaſts, both moveable and fixed; together with the Motion of the Sun and Moon, and their paſſage through each Degree of the Zodiack. Then for the Clock, it is ſo framed by artificial Engines, that whenſoever it is to ſtrike, two horſemen encounter one another, giving as many blows apiece as the Bell ſounds hours: and on the opening of a door there appears a Theatre, the Virgin *Mary* on a Throne with *Chriſt* in her Arms, and the three Kings or *Magi* (with their ſeveral Trains) marching in order, doing humble reverence, and preſenting ſeverally their Gifts; two Trumpeters ſounding all the while, to adorn the Pomp of that Proceſſion. 2. *Malmoge*, or *Elbogen*, (called by both names) at the very Southern point hereof, juſt oppoſite to *Copenhagen* in *Seland*, a well-traded Port; the Birth-place of *Gaſpar Bartholinus*, otherwiſe called *Malmogius Danus*, that great Mathematician, ſuppoſed to be the Authour of the Clock and Dial before deſcribed. 3. *Trelleborg*, on the North of *Elbogen*, 4. *Landſcron*, on the Sea-ſide, of great ſtrength and conſequence. 5. *Helſenborg*, a mean Town, but fortified with an impregnable Caſtle, juſt oppoſite to *Helſinore* and *Cronenburg* in *Seland*; the other of the two Keys which openeth into the *Sound*. 6. *Rottenby*, a Frontier-town bordering on *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*. 7. *Chriſtiana*, or *Chriſtiernſtorp*, a ſtrong piece built by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, *An.* 1604, compaſſed by the Sea, and fortified by Fens and Marſhes, thought to be impregnable.

3. *BLESCIDA*, or *BLEKING*, is bounded on the Eaſt and South with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with *Verendia*, a Province of *Swethland*, on the Weſt with *Scania* or *Schonen*; more mountainous and barren than either, but yet partaking ſomewhat of the former Character which we had of *Holland*. Chief Towns hereof are 1. *Uſted*, on the mouth of a River falling into the *Baltick*. 2. *Chriſtiernburg*, in *Latine Chriſtianapolis*, on the borders of *Swethland*; raiſed out of the ground by *Chriſtiern* the fourth, to defend his Kingdom on that ſide, *Anno* 1604, but not long after by a warlike ſtratagem ſurpriſed by the *Swedes*, in the late War betwixt thoſe Kingdoms in the year 1611; deſtroyed and diſpeopled by that Nation, who looked upon it as a dangerous and unpleaſant Object, but ſince repaired and repleniſhed. 3. *Ahuys*, upon the River which divides the Kingdoms not far from *Chriſtiernburg*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Guta* and *Dauciones*, taking up the South-parts of this great *Peninſula*. *Meridionalia tenent Gutæ & Dauciones*, as we find in *Ptolemy*, *Geogr. l.* 2. *c.* 11. which in all probability muſt be meant of theſe Provinces. Of theſe the *Gutes*, paſſing over into the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the North parts of it, ſince from them called *Juitland*. The reſt, uniting with the people of thoſe many Iſlands which lye together in the Bay or Gulf called *Sinus Codanus*, (now the *Baltick* Sea) took the name of *Danes*; and not from *Dan*, I know not what King thereof above 1000 years before the Birth of our Saviour. Firſt taken notice of by that name in *Jornandes de rebus Geticis*, who lived about the time of *Juſtinian* the firſt; about which time, or not long after, it is conceived that they made them-

themselves Masters of so much of the *Cimbrick Chersonese* as had been formerly possessed by the *Juites* and *Angli*, whose forsaken or ill-peopled Seats they possessed themselves of. After this we hear little of them till the time of *Charles* the Great, living in a confused estate, sometimes made subject to the *Norwegians*, sometimes to the *Swedes*, but always without Law and Order; till by the King *Godfrey* or *Gotricus* they were regulated by Laws, and reduced to an orderly kind of life, *Anno* 797. About this time they first began to infest the Coasts of *England*, invaded *Friesland* with a Fleet of 200 Sail; and had much weakened and endangered the great Empire of *France*, if the unseasonable death of *Godfrey*, and the Quarrels which arose about the Succession after his decease, had not kept them off. Their Affairs at home being again well settled, they imployed their whole Forces against *England*, as the weaker Enemy: over which they tyrannized 250 years, and reigned 26, under three Kings of that Nation. Outed of that, and the terrour of their name being over, they have been most busied with their Neighbours of *Sweden* and *Germany*; improving their Estate, but rather by Marriages and civil Contracts, than by force of Arms, with the addition of the Kingdom of *Norway* and the Dukedom of *Holstein*: their Pretensions to, and for a time the possession of, the Crown of *Sweden* getting them nothing in conclusion but Blows and Losses. So that we have no more to do then to sum up a Catalogue of the Kings hereof, till the uniting of the two Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*, leaving the rest that follow to another place.

The Kings of *DENMARK*.

A. Ch.		
797	1.	*Gotricus*, the first Legislator of the *Danes*, and the Establisher of their Kingdom; a prudent and valiant Prince.
	2.	*Olaus* Son of *Gotricus*, or *Godfrey*.
	3.	*Heningus*, Son of *Olaus*.
873	4.	*Siward*, Son to a Daughter of *Godfrey*, by the King of *Norway*.
	5.	*Regnier*, Son of *Siward*.
	6.	*Siward* II.
	7.	*Ericus*, or *Henricus*, baptized at *Mentz* at the same time with his Brother *Harald*, recovered the Kingdom to his House, (of which they had been outed by the Race of *Godfrey*.)
	8.	*Canutus*, the Son of *Ericus*, the Heathenish Son of a Christian and pious Father.
880	9.	*Froto*, the Son of *Canutus*, a professed Christian.
886	10.	*Gormo*, (our *English* Writers call him *Gormund*) Son of *Froto*.
889	11.	*Harald*, the Son of *Gormo*, or *Gormund*.
900	12.	*Gormo* II. Son of *Harald*, an enemy of the Christian Faith.
927	13.	*Harald* II. Son of *Gormo* the second, a good Christian.
975	14.	*Sueno*, or *Swain*, Son of *Harald*, at first a great Enemy of the Gospel, an Usurper of the Throne in his Father's life-time, and a great Scourge unto the *English*. Outed of his Estate by *Ericus* of *Swethland*, he received the Gospel, regained his Kingdom, and established Christianity in this Country; his War on *England* still continuing.
1010	15.	*Olaus*, the eldest Son of *Swain*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*.
1020	16.	*Canutus* II. Brother of *Olaus*, the first King of *England* of the *Danes*, succeeded his Brother in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he added also the Crown of *Sweden*,
1037	17.	*Canutus* III. Son of *Canutus* the second, the last King of *England* of the Race of the *Danes*.
	18.	*Magnus*, Son of *Olaus* King of *Norway*.
1051	19.	*Sueno* II. Sister's Son of *Canutus* the second, by *Ulfo* an *English* Duke.
1074	20.	*Harald* III. base Son of *Sueno* the second.
	21.	*Canutus* IV. another of the base Sons of *Sueno*, murthered at the Altar in the Church of *Odensee* in the Isle of *Fionia*; afterwards canonized a Saint.
1088	22.	*Olaus* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*.
1099	23.	*Ericus* II. another of the base Sons of *Swain*, the Founder of the Archiepiscopal See of *Lunden*.
1102	24.	*Harald* IV. base Son of *Henry* or *Ericus* the second.
1133	25.	*Nicolas*, another of the base Sons of *Swain*.
1135	26.	*Ericus* III. another of the base Sons of *Ericus* the second.
1140	27.	*Ericus* IV. commonly called the fifth, (some one of the younger House being reckoned in) Nephew of *Ericus* the second.
1150	28.	*Sueno* III. Son of *Ericus* the third, and *Canutus* the fifth, Grandchild of *Nicolas*, both Kings; the first reigning in *Scandia*, the other in *Juitland*: both died without Issue; *Canutus* being slain by *Sueno*, and he by *Waldemar*.
1157	29.	*Waldemar*, Son of *Canutus*, the lawful Son of *Ericus* the second, after the interposition of so many Bastards, succeeded at the last in the Throne of his Fathers. By his means the *Rugians* and *Vandals* imbraced the Gospel.
1185	30.	*Canutus* V. Son of *Waldemar*.
1203	31.	*Waldemar* II. Brother of *Canutus*, and Duke of *Sleswick* before his coming to the Crown.
1243	32.	*Ericus* V. called the VII. Son of *Waldemar* the second, slain by the practices and Treason of his Brother *Abel*.
1251	33.	*Abel*, Brother of *Ericus*, slain by the Peasants of *Friesland*.
1252	34.	*Christopher*, Brother of *Abel* and *Ericus*.
1260	35.	*Ericus* VI. (VIII.) Son of *Christopher*.
1287	36.	*Ericus* VII. (IX.) younger Son of *Ericus*, supplanted his eldest Brother *Christopher*.
1327	37.	*Christopher* II. eldest Son of *Ericus*, at first dispossessed of his Birth-right by his Brother *Ericus*; after whose death he succeeded in the Crown, by the help of his Half-brother the Earl of *Holstein*.
1334	38.	*Waldemar* III. Son of *Christopher* the second against whom and his Encroachments the Sea-towns, commonly called the *Hanse*, did first confederate, and vanquished him in many Battels.
1376	39.	*Margaret*, Daughter and Heir of *Waldemar* the third, married with *Aquin* King of *Norway*, so uniting the Kingdoms: of whom and their Successors we shall speak hereafter, when we have took a view also of the Kingdom of *Norway*, and the Appendixes thereof.

3. *NORWAY*.

NORWAY is bounded on the East with *Swethland*, from which it is parted by a perpetual Ridge of rough and wild Mountains, called the *Dofrine* Hills; on all other parts by the Sea: that is to say, by the Frozen Sea upon the North; the *German* or *Norwegian* Ocean upon the West; and on the South with the *Danish*

Sea, interposing betwixt it and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*, being in breadth from *Schagen*, the most Northern point of *Juitland*, to *Congel*, the most Southerly Town of *Norway*, no less then 250 miles.

It is called *Norway quasi Tractus seu Via Septentrionalis*, from the Northern situation of it; containing in length 1300 miles, in breadth not above half so much, inhabited by a People given to Hospitality, Plain-dealing, and abhorring Theft. Anciently they were great Warriers, & became terrible to all the more Southern Nations; by whom they were called *Normans*, (that is to say, *Homines Boreales*, or *North-men*, as *Willielmus Gemiticensis* rightly hath it) being at that time a Mixture of all the Northern Nations together, or of the *Norwegians* and *Swethlanders*, apart from the *Danes*, whose steps they followed in their frequent, or rather continual, Piracies on the Coasts of *England*, *France* and *Ireland*. By *Helmoldus* in the same sense they are called *Nordluidi*, a name made into *Latine* out of the *Dutch* word *Nord*, and the *French* word *Lieu*, signifying men of a Northern Place or Nation.

Of the Position of it in regard of the Heavens we have spoke already; but more particularly it reacheth from the first Parallel of the twelfth Clime, where the Pole is elevated 58 Degrees, 26 Minutes, as far as to the 71. Degree of Latitude. By which accompt the longest Day in the Southern point is but 18 hours; whereas at *Wardhuys*, being situate farthest North of all this Country, they have no Night for almost three whole months together.

The Country is for the most part rocky, mountainous and barren, full of vast Woods, extream cold, and but ill inhabited. In the best parts thereof it affords little Corn, and in the most Northern none at all: insomuch that the common sort of people are fain to use dried Fish (that which we commonly call Stock-fish) in stead of Bread. but the better (that is, the richer) sort buy Corn of such Merchants as come to traffick with them. Their chief Commodities are Stock-fish, rich Furrs, Train-oyl, Pitch, and Tackling for Ships, as Masts, Cables, Deal-boards, and the like; which the Inhabitants exchange for Corn, Wine, Fruits, Beer, and other necessaries for man's life. The Country is exceedingly troubled with certain little Beasts which they call *Lemmers*. They are about the bigness of a Field-Mouse, and are by the Inhabitants said to drop out of the Clouds in tempestuous weather. They devour, like the Locusts, every green thing on the earth; and at a certain time die all in heaps (as it were) together; and with their stench so poison the Air, that the poor people are long after troubled with the Jaundies and with a Giddiness in the Head. But these Beasts come not so often to infect the Land, as the Whales do to terrifie and molest the shores; the Western Seas being very deep, and therefore a fit habitation for those great *Leviathans*: against whose violence and fury the Mariners and people of the Sea-coast have found a Remedy, which is by casting out some water intermixed with the Oyl of Castor; the smell whereof doth force them to retire immediately. Without this help there were no Fishing on these Coasts, which is the greatest Staple-commodity (besides materials for Shipping) which the Country yieldeth.

The Towns here are exceeding thin, and in them the Houses for the most part very poor and miserable; commonly patched up of Dirt and Hurdles, not much unlike our ordinary Cottage-houses in the Fen-Countries. It is distributed into five Prefectures or Governments, according to the number of the Castles which command the same. Of these,

1. The first most towards the South is the Castle of *BAHUYS*: to which are subject the Towns of 1. *Marstrand*, seated in a Demi-Island begirt with Rocks; of most note for the infinite quantity of Herrings caught hereabouts. 2. *Congel*, upon the Sea, a Town of Merchandise, opposite to *Schagen* in *Denmark*. 3. *Oddewald*.

2. *AGGERHUYS*, the second of the five Royal Castles, hath under its Command the Towns of 1. *Anslo*, or *Asloia*, on a Bay or Gullet opposite to *Juitland*, an Episcopal See, and of most esteem of all the Country, by reason of the Courts of Judicature which are therein held. 2. *Tonsberg*, or *Koningsberg*, that is to say, the King's or the Kingly Mountain, formerly a Retiring-place of the Kings of *Norway*. 3. *Frederickstadt*, built by one of the *Fredericks*, Kings of *Denmark*; 4. *Schin* or *Schon*, remarkable for its Mines of Iron and Copper. 5. *Saltzburg*; 6. *Hammar* the greater, and 7. *Hammar* the less, divided by the interposing of the Bay called *Sinus Mæsianus* in former times the See of a Bishop, since removed to *Asloia*, or rather thereunto united in these latter times, as many poor Bishopricks be in *Ireland*.

3. *BERGERHUYS* is the third Castle of Command herein. Subordinate whereunto are, 1. *Bergen*, the principal Town of the Country, an Episcopal See, and the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*, situate amongst high Mountains, at the bottom of a deep Creek or Arm of the Ocean called *Carmesund*. A noted Port, and much resorted to by Merchants of most forein Nations, bringing in Corn, Meal, Bread, Beer, Wine, and *Aqua-vitæ*, to supply the natural wants and defects hereof; and in exchange transporting hence Fish, Furrs, Cordage, and other materials for Shipping. In which regard it was accounted formerly one of the four chief Staple-Towns of the *Dutch* Merchants of the *Hanse*: the other three being *London* in *England*, *Novogrod* in *Muscovie*, and *Bruges* in *Flanders*. But of late time this *Bergen* hath lost most of its Trade, removed hence to *Wardhuys*, nearer unto *Muscovie*: as the great Town of *Novogrod*, by reason of the change of Navigation from the *Baltick* into that of the Northern passage, hath given way to S. *Nicolas*; and *Bruges* was deprived of her Traffick by *Antwerp*, from whence it is removed to *Amsterdam*. For the *Hollanders*, by blocking up the Haven, but especially by keeping *Bergen op Zoon*, have such a command over the River, that no Vessel can pass or repass without their licence. 2. *Staffanger*, an Episcopal See also, but not else observable.

4. The Castle of *TRONDHEIM* is the fourth, situate in the Town of *Trondheim*, or *Dromheim*, formerly called *Tronden*, and in *Latine Nidrosia*; the See of an Archbishop, who is the Metropolitan of *Norway*. A beautiful City heretofore, but since the Subjection of this Country unto the *Danes* reduced to a Burrough. So called of the River *Nider*, upon which it is seated, and *Rosa*, the name then of the principal Church; which in time gave place to the Cathedral for greatness and neatness of the Fabrick, all of polished Stone, not giving place to any in *Europe*, about the year 1530 much defaced with Fire, which began at the Altar, the damage done by it being estimated at 7000 Crowns; a great sum of money in those times, and so poor a Country. So that, by casting up our reckoning, we find in *Norway* one Archbishop and four Bishops; that is to say, the Archbishop of *Trondheim* or *Nidrosia*, the Bishops of *Bergen*, *Anslo*, *Staffangor*, and *Hammar*: of the same Power, Jurisdiction and Revenue, since the Reformation, as those of *Denmark*; whereof, and of the first Conversion of this People to the Christian Faith, we have spoke already.

5. The fifth and last Castle which commands this Country is that of *WARDHUYS*, so called of the Town

Town of *Wardhuys*, as that is from the Isle *Ward*, in which it is seated. A small Castle, and the Town in former times but mean and poor, situate in the extreme North-point of all this Kingdom; but in those times accounted (as easily it might) for the chief of this Prefecture, and honoured in the Summer time with the Seat and Residence of the Governour, retiring more Southwards in the Winter, at what time, by reason of the extremity of the Cold, and long absence of the Sun for some months together (the Town lying within the *Arctick* Circle) it is hardly habitable. But of late time it is much improved both in Wealth and Building, by reason of the removal of the *English* Trading from *Novogrod*, near the *Baltick* Sea, to the Town of *S. Nicolas*, not far from hence; drawing by that means the Trade of *Muscovie* and *Norway* more near together. So that now it is not only useful unto the *Danes*, in regard that it somewhat aweth the neighbouring *Lappians*, and commandeth the Natives, for that cause fortified very strongly by King *Frederick* the second; but made very profitable to him also, by the resort of *Dutch* and *English*, who must of necessity touch at it (if they make no stay there) in their way to *Muscovie*. Other Towns in these two last Prefectures are not worth looking after.

And so much for the Continent or Main-land of *Norway*: let us next look upon the *Islands* in the Northern Ocean which belong unto it.

The *ISLANDS* in the Northern Ocean.

THE *Northern Sea*, so named from its Northern situation, is by some called *Mare Scythicum*, because it coasted along the Shores of *Scythia*; by *Juvenal Oceanus Glacialis*, because often frozen; by *Pliny*, in the same sense, *Mare Amalchium*, the word in the *Scythick* Language signifying *frozen*, or *congealed*; by the *Russes* or *Muscovites Myrmanskoy More*; by the *Cimbrians*, in their Tongue, *Marimorusa*, that is to say, the Dead Sea, because of the slowness of its motion, often clogged with Ice; and, in the same sense, *Mare pigrum*, by *Tacitus*. This *Tacitus* doth best describe, from whom take it thus. "*Trans Sueones Mare aliud pi-*
"*grum & prope immotum*, &c. Beyond the *Swedes* there
"is another Sea, so slow and almost immoveable, that
"many think it to be the Bounds which compass the
"whole World. Some are perswaded that the Sound of
"the Sun is heard as he ariseth out of this Sea; and that
"many shapes of Gods are seen, and the Beams of his
"Head. *Illuc usque (& fama vera) tantùm Natura*; At
"this Sea (the Report is credible) is the end of Nature
"and the World. The *English* were the first of all civil people who adventured to open and discover the Passages of it, under the conduct of *Richard Chancellour*, arriving by this way in *Russia*, *An.* 1553, and tracing out the way; which others of that Nation, together with the *Flemmings*, *Hollanders*, and some Towns of the *Hanse*, have since followed. Of which more in *Muscovie*. The principal Islands dispersed in it are, 1. *Groenland*. 2. *Iseland*. 3. *Freezland*, belonging to the Crown of *Norway*, to be surveyed at the present: *Nova Zemla* and Sir *Hugh Willoughbie*'s Island, appertaining (if to any) to the *Knez*, or great Duke of *Muscovie*; of which more hereafter.

1. *ISELAND* is situate under the *Arctick* Circle; in length 144 *German* miles, 65 in breadth. So called from the abundance of Ice in it and about it; frozen continually for the space of 8 months, and so vehemently chilled with the Northern Winds, that it yieldeth neither Corn nor Trees, except Juniper only: yet there is Grass in such abundance, that the people are of opinion, that if they do not sometimes keep their Cattel from feeding, they are in danger to surfeit and die with fulness. Beasts for Labour here are both Horses and Oxen; the Oxen and Kine without Horns, but the Sheep not so: and they have also here a fine breed of little Dogs, known amongst us by the name of *Iseland Dogs*, the delight of Ladies; as also white Falcons and white Ravens, Eagles with white Tails, with Hares and Bears of the same colour. By reason of their want of Corn, the people eat Stock-fish (as in *Norway*) in stead of Bread: yet notwithstanding, by reason of the benefit of the Sea and access of Strangers, they have all things necessary brought unto them, (even to Wood and Timber) of which the richer sort make use, giving the Merchant in return sometimes the flesh of Beeves and Mutton, but ordinarily Butter, Skins, Horses, Hawks, Brimstone, and Fish especially, the Staple Commodity of the Country; of which they have such plenty, and of so good condition, that a piece of *Iseland* Ling is counted with us as a fit Dish for a Nobleman's Table.

The people for the most part are of a plain and simple nature, living (as in the Golden Age) on that which Nature gives them, without help of Art, more than that of making Cheese and Butter: the Mountains serving them for Towns, and the Rivers for Drink, and their lodging is all under one roof with their Horses and Oxen. They use neither physick nor Physicians, yet live so long (and probably the longer for it) that many of them attain to the age of 150 years and more. The Women are exceeding fair, but they know not how to attire themselves; nor is there any difference in Apparel betwixt the Sexes, so that it not easie to know one from another. Few of them but have some familiar Spirit to do them service: and not withstanding the endeavour of the Ministers to purge them from this Impiety, yet it is so grafted in them that they cannot leave it.

It is observable, that notwithstanding the cold condition of this Island, yet in many places it is full of Heats and Fire under the ground: which, by the *Antiperistasis* of the cold Air stopping the Pores of the Earth, and taking from it the liberty of Evaporation, doth burn more vehemently: insomuch that there are three high Mountains whose Tops are always covered with Snow, and yet continually burning. The names of them are *Hecla*, *Helga*, and *La-Croix*, but the first the principal, by some called *Heclefort*; which sometimes casts out Fire, sometimes flaming Water, then Black Ashes and Pumice-stones in so great abundance that it darkneth the Sun, and makes the Country for six miles round about it to be uninhabited. Stranger things are not spoken of *Ætna* than of these three Mountains: and here the Superstitious people have the same opinion which they have in *Sicily*, viz. That underneath must needs be Hell, and the habitations of the Damned. But to judicious men the natural reason of these Flames is plain and obvious; occasioned by those veins of Brimstone (great quantity whereof they send into forein parts) on which the foundation of the Hills is laid: here being many Bathes and Fountains of hot water, which have Sulphur swimming at the top.

At the first planting of this Island, the people did not trouble themselves with building Towns, but every one seated himself where he thought convenient, dwelling in Cells and Caverns digged in the bottom of the Rocks. By means whereof the Inland parts have not many Houses: but the Sea-coasts, since the coming of so many Strangers to them, begin to be built in many places, the Buildings for the most part being of Timber, roofed with Flags with an Hole on the sides of the roof to let in the Light. So that we are not to expect many fine Towns or Cities: the principal of them which are being, 1. *Holar*, in the North,

North, and 2. *Schalholt*, in the Southern part; both Bishops Sees, having petty Schools, consisting of 24 Scholars apiece, to whom the *Latine* Tongue is taught at the charge of the Bishops. 3. *Haffensfordt*, an Haven Town, where under Tents the *Dutch* Merchants barter their Commodities. And 4. *Bestede*, a Castle, the ordinary Residence of the Governour for the Kings of *Denmark*.

It hath been generally conceived that this Island is that *Thule* which the Poets so often speak of: as *Tibi serviat ultima Thule*, in *Virgil*; *Nec sit terris ultima Thule*, in *Seneca* the *Tragedian*. Nor did there want some reason to perswade them to this opinion; this being indeed the farthest part of the old known World. But greater reasons are against it. For when *Solinus* saith, *Multæ sunt circa* Britannicum *Insulæ, è quibus* Thule *ultima*; I hope *Thule* must be one of the *British* Isles. And when *Tacitus* saith of *Agricola*, *Insulas quas* Orcadas *vocant domuit, despecta est &* Thule; I am sure that *Iseland* is so far from being kenned by any one of the *Orcades*, that it is at least eight Degrees distant. So that *Thule* must be sought for in another place, and where that is hath been shewed already. As for *Iseland*, it was so far from being known unto the Ancients, that it was hardly known unto those of *Norway* till the year 874, when some of the *Norwegians* were driven out of their Country by *Harald* the first, who first suppressing the many petit Kings of the *Norwegians*, made many of them seek new Dwellings; of which some few arrived here; where finding room enough to plant in, and no great loss (if any) by change of their Dwelling, they invited many of their Friends and Countrymen to come unto them. *An.* 1070, they were converted to the Gospel by some Preachers sent hither from *Adelbert* the Archbishop of *Breme*. By whose perswasion and procurement they founded two Episcopal Sees; adding thereto in tract of time eight Religious Houses: that is to say, the Monasteries of *Pingore*, *Remestede*, *Modur*, and *Monkeniere*, under the Government and Jurisdiction of the Bishop of *Halar*; and those of *Videy*, *Pernebar*, *Kirckebur*, and *Skiade*, under the Bishop of *Schalholt*. In the year 1260, it was first brought under the Crown of *Norway*, following since that the Fortunes of it in all Changes both of Church and State; made subject with it to the Kings of *Denmark*, together with it reformed in matters of Religion according to the Confession of *Augsburg*, retaining still their Bishops, with a limited power, and turning the Revenues of their Monasteries unto other uses, as there they did according to the will and pleasure of their Lords of *Denmark*.

2. South-west of *Iseland* lies another, and as cold an Isle, commonly called by the name of *FREEZLAND*, from the continual Frosts unto which it is subject. By the *Latines* it is called *Frizlandia*, to distinguish it from *Frisia* or *Friesland* in *Germany*. It is situate under the North Frigid Zone; but not so much within the *Arctick* as *Iseland* is; the longest Day here in the height of Summer not exceeding 20 hours: and yet the Soil is so cold and barren, that it beareth neither Corn nor Fruit, the Inhabitants living most on Fish; which as it is their only Food, so is it also their chief Commodity wherewith to entertain or invite the Merchant. And hereof there is such abundance caught upon their Coasts, that they are never without the company of *Hanse men*, *Scots*, *Hollanders*, *Danes*, and *English*; by which last it hath been so frequented in these later times, that it hath been called by some *the Western England*. For quantity it is somewhat bigger than *Iseland*; but by reason of the bitter Air, and the Defects above mentioned, very thinly inhabited. The chief Town of it is called *Freezland*, by the name of the Island; situate on the Eastern Shore of it. Besides which, there are some others set down in the Maps; as 2. *Samescot*. 3. *Andefort*. 4. *Sorand*, but not much observable. Westward whereof, as *Zieglerus* (and out of him *Magnus*) telleth us, is a less Island called *Icaria*, giving the name of *Mare Icarium* to the Sea adjoyning: so called (by his mistake or translation of the Fable) from *Icarus* the Son of *Dædalus*, a King of *Scotland*, who did once (but no body knows when) Lord it over these Islands.

III. *GROENLAND*, so called, as some say, from the Greenness of it in the Summer; as others say, by *Antiphrasis*, because never green, by reason of the sharpness of Winter. But the former Etymology is more agreeable to the state of the Country. For though it be continually covered with Snow, except in *June*, *July* and *August*, (insomuch that though the people be always clad with Furs and Skins, yet they feel no heat) yet in those months it is exceeding fresh and green, and affords good Pasturage. It is situate for the greatest part within the *Arctick*, between the 65. and 77. Degrees of Northern Latitude: so that the longest Day in the Southern part is 21 hours and a half; and in the most Northern they have no Night for three months and two weeks. The known length of it is affirmed to be 600 miles, and may be much longer than so for ought that any body knows: there being no perfect discovery made of it hitherto, though much frequented by the *English* and *Hollanders*, (two great Seafaring Nations) for the benefit of the Whale-fishing, much there in use. Their chief Commodities are Fish, white Bears, wild Deer, and some store of Cattel there bred upon their Pastures, but housed for the most part all the Winter. The greatest part of the people dwell in the Caves, and delight in Necromancy, to which they are more wilfully addicted than those in *Iseland*, because less acquainted with the Gospel.

Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Saint Thomas*, (in which there is a Monastery of *Dominican* Frjers) seated in the North-East part of the Island; concerning which *Mercator* speaks of one thing which is very observable, relating that it is not far from a flaming or burning Mountain, seated upon hot scalding springs, conveyed by Pipes of stone into the Monastery, and serving both as a Stove to warm them, and for a Fire to boil their Victuals. The Walls of the Monastery are built of Pumice-stones cast out of that Mountain; which, being tempered with the water of those burning Springs, doth make a glutinous substance, serving instead of Lime, and as long durable. The Gardens of the Convent, in regard of this heat, flourish all the year with Herbs and sweet smelling Flowers; and the adjoyning Sea, for the same reason being never frozen, affords good plenty of Fish and Fowl the whole year about, not only for the Monks, but the neighbouring Islanders. So far and to this purpose he. The second Town of note is *Ilva*, not far from this Monastery: and 3. *Munderpre*, on the South East point. Others, as in a Country not well discovered, we have little notice of: though it be near 300 years since *Nicolas Zeni*, a *Venetian*, cast by Tempest on the Coast of *Freezland*, and by the King thereof imployed upon new Discoveries, *An.* 1380, first made it known to us of *Europe*; it being immediately on that discovery possessed by the *Norwegians*, and made a Member and portion of that Crown.

As for the *Norwegians* themselves, now their Fellow-subjects, they were first known in the time of *Ptolemy* by the name of *Chedini*, possessing then the Western parts of *Scandia*. Uniting with their Neighbours, both *Danes* and *Swithlanders*, they became better known in the flourishing times of the *French* Empire by the name of *Normans*; first called so by *Eginhartus* in his History of the Life of *Charles* the Great, infesting then the Sea-coasts of *France* and *Belgium*. Under this name they fell so heavily

heavily on the *French*, especially in the times of *Charles* the Simple, that they extorted from him that goodly Country, since of them called *Normandy*, conferred on *Rollo*, first Duke thereof, *Anno* 912, whose Successors much increased their glory by the Conquest of *England*; as some private Adventurers of them did by the Conquest of the Kingdoms of *Naples*, *Sicily*, and *Antioch*. Afterwards setling on their own bottom, every one of these Northern Nations acting by it self, they were called *Norwegians*: sometimes, as formerly, commanding over all three Kingdoms, subject successively to each; but most an end governed by their own Kings, till their final Subjugation by the *Danes*. And as a Nation acting solely and by it self, they subdued *Ireland* under the conduct of *Turgesius*, who tyrannized there for a time; as also all the *Orcades* and the Isle of *Man*, sold or surrendred by them upon good conditions to the *English* and *Scots*, who by those Titles still possess them. The Catalogue of their Kings, leaving out all those of the darker times (parallel to our *Brute* and the first *Scotish Fergus*) as meerly fabulous, we will begin with King *Snibdagerus*, who was King of all the three Kingdoms, and at his death divided them again amongst his three Sons; whose Successors *Munster* thus reckoneth.

The Kings of *NORWAY*.

1. *Snibdagerus*.
2. *Haddingus*.
3. *Hetharius*.
4. *Collerus*.
5. *Frogerus*.
6. *Gotarus*.
7. *Rotherus*.
8. *Helga*.
9. *Hasmunus*,
10. *Reginaldus*.
11. *Gumaraus*.
12. *Osmundus*.
13. *Olaus*.
14. *Osmundus* II. not long after whose time, *Anno scil.* 800, the *Normans* began their Irruptions.
15. *Aquinus*.
16. *Haraldus*.
17. *Olaus*.
18. *Sueno*, King of *Denmark* by Birth, and of *Norway* by Conquest.
19. *Olaus* III. Son of *Swain* or *Sueno*, succeeded in the Realms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, *Canutus* his younger Brother being King of *England*. In this King's time the *Norwegians* first received the Gospel.
20. *Canutus*, King of *England*, succeeded his Brother *Olaus* in the Kingdoms of *Denmark* and *Norway*, to which he also added the Crown of *Sweden*.
21. *Sueno* II. by whom the Kingdom was restored to the *Norwegians*.
22. *Canutus* II.
23. *Magnus*.
24. *Harald* II.
25. *Magnus* II. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*.

1326 26. *Magnus* III. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, intending the Crown of *Sweden* for *Ericus* his eldest Son, conferred that of *Norway* on *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, his second Son.

1359 27. *Aquinus*, King of *Norway*, younger Son of *Magnus* the third, married with *Margaret*, eldest Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, King of *Denmark*; so uniting the Kingdom. And though *Olaus*, the only Son of his Bed, died young without any Issue; yet the *Danes*, having once got footing in *Norway*, so assured themselves of it, that they have ever since possessed it as a subject Kingdom, keeping the Natives so poor and low, that they are not able to assert their former Liberties, and not permitting them to use any Shipping, so much as for transporting their own Commodities, for fear they should grow wealthy and strong at Sea. Besides, the strong Garrisons maintained in most parts of the Country keep it in such an absolute Awe, that they dare not stir against the *Danes*, if their stomachs served them. So that now *Norway* being made subject to the Crown of *Denmark*, or both made Fellow-subjects to the same King; we must next look upon these Kings, not as Kings of each distinct and separate from the other, but as they are in Fact and Title.

The Kings of *DENMARK* and *NORWAY*.

1376 1. *Haquin*, or *Aquinus*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*: of this last by Descent, of the other by Marriage.

1380 2. *Olaus*, Son of *Aquinus* and *Margaret*.

1383 3. *Margaret*, Wife of *Aquinus*, Mother of *Olaus*, and Daughter of *Waldemar* the third, after the death of her Son, (in whose time she governed as his Guardian) took upon her the Kingdom in her own Right; not only keeping *Norway* in the state she found it, but adding unto *Denmark* the Crown of *Sweden*, won by the Vanquishment of *Albert* Duke of *Mecklenburg*, then King thereof. A gallant and magnanimous Lady, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*.

1411 4. *Ericus*, Duke of *Pomeren*, and Knight of the Garter, Son of the Lady *Mary*, Dutchess of *Pomeren*, Daughter of *Ingelburgis*, the Sister of *Margaret*, by whom he was adopted for her Heir, succeeded after her decease in all the three Kingdoms: outed of all before his death by a strong Faction made against him, and his Estates conferred on

1439 5. *Christopher*, Count *Palatine* of the *Rhene*, and Duke of *Bavaria*, (but in Title only) the Son of *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*; chosen by the joynt consent of all the States of these Kingdoms. After whose death (without Issue) the *Danes*, considering the great advantage they had gotten by the addition of *Norway*, pitched upon *Adolphus*, Duke of *Sleswick* and Earl of *Holstein*, for the next Successor; that they might get in those Estates to their Kingdom also. Who, excusing himself by reason of his Age and want of Children, commended to them *Christiern* Earl of *Oldenburg*, his Kinsman and next Heir, who was chosen accordingly.

1448 6. *Christiern*, Earl of *Oldenburg*, upon the commendation of his Uncle *Adolphus*, chosen King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, succeeded his said Uncle in the Estates of *Holstein* and *Sleswick*, continuing since united unto that Crown, and added also thereunto by Conquest the Kingdom of *Sweden*.

1482 7. *John*, Son of *Chriſtiern*, ſucceeded in all three Kingdoms; Knight of the Order of the Garter.

1514 8. *Chriſtiern* II. Son of *John*, King of *Denmark*, *Norway* and *Sweden*, which laſt he held under with great cruelty; hated, by reaſon of his Tyranny toward all ſorts of people, and outed of his Kingdoms by his Uncle *Frederick*, *Anno* 1522. by whom at laſt he was taken, and kept in priſon till he died, *Anno* 1559.

1523 9. *Frederick*, Brother of *John*, and Uncle of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, choſen King of *Denmark* and *Norway* on the Abdication of his Nephew, Reformed Religion in both Kingdoms according to the Confeſſion of *Augsburg*.

1535 10. *Chriſtiern* III. ſuppreſſed with great trouble the Party formed againſt him in behalf of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, perfected the Reformation begun in the time of his Father, and was a great Benefactor to the Univerſity of *Copenhagen*.

1559 11. *Frederick* II. Son of *Chriſtiern* the third, ſubdued *Ditmarſh*, before unconquered by the *Danes* or Earls of *Holſtein*, and added it unto that Dukedom, (both being united to that Crown, though held of the Empire;) Knight of the Garter.

1588 12. *Chriſtiern* IV. Son of *Frederick* the ſecond, Brother of *Anne* Queen of Great *Britain*, and Knight of the Garter; who, engaging in a War againſt the Emperour *Ferdinand* the ſecond for the Liberty of *Germany*, was ſuddenly beat out of all the *Cimbrick Cherſoneſe* by the prevailing Imperialiſts, but compounded the buſineſs upon very good terms, and was reſtored to all his own.

1648 13. *Frederick* III. the youngeſt Son of *Chriſtiern* the fourth, his eldeſt Brethren being all dead without Iſſue, ſucceeded in the Crowns of *Denmark* and *Norway*.

Having thus muſtered up the Kings of theſe ſeveral Kingdoms, taken diſtinctly and conjunct; we muſt next look upon the way of their coming to their Regal Throne, their form of Government together with their Powerableneſs and Revenues incident unto it. As for the manner of their coming to the Regal Throne, the *Danes* pretend the Kingdom to be Elective, and not Hereditary; yet ſo as they have always ſet the eldeſt Son on the Throne of his Father, unleſs ſome extraordinary occaſion have diſpoſed it otherwiſe. But they that look upon their Stories in the former times can ſee no ſuch matter, the Kingdom going generally in the way of Succeſſion, unleſs by Faction or Uſurpation ſome popular and powerful Pretender hath interloped; as oftentimes hath happned in ſuch other Eſtates as are Hereditary meerly, without claim or colour of Election. 'Tis true, that the Male-iſſue failing in *Olaus* the Son of *Margaret*, and the Princes which pretended by the Females after her deceaſe not being of ſufficient power to aſſert their Titles; the Kingdom was transferred to the houſe of *Oldenburg*, who held it on no other ground than by that of Election. Which, being an extraordinary caſe, is to make no Precedent, though ſeconded by the outing of King *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, and the advancement of *Frederick* unto that Eſtate: theſe being acts of Violence and Force, and juſtified only by the falſe Topick of Succeſs. But whoſoever loſt by the hand, the *Danes* got well by it; King *Frederick* taking up the Crown upon ſuch Conditions as have made him and his Succeſſors little more than Titulary. For he was fain to ſwear at his Coronation, that he would put none of the Nobility to death or Baniſhment but by the judgment of the Senate, that the Great men ſhould have power of Life and Death over their Tenants or Vaſſals; that no Appeal ſhould lie from them to the King's Tribunal, nor the King be partaker of the Confiſcations, nor, finally, advance any to Commands and Honours but by conſent of his great Council. Which Oath being alſo taken by his Succeſſors, made *Bodinus* ſay, *Non tam re ipsâ quàm appellatione Reges eſſe*; that they were only Kings in Title, but not Kings indeed. Yet in regard that the Nobility (ſo they call their Gentry) have but ſmall Eſtates, none of them above the degree of Knights, (except only the Princes of the Bloud) and that Degree conferred by the King alone; it is not often found that they have dared to croſs or oppoſe their King, but when ſome of the Royal Family (out of private ends) have concurred with them in it: as in the caſe of *Chriſtiern* the 2. depoſed by the People, but thoſe people headed and ſet on by his Uncle *Frederick*, who had an eye upon the Crown.

As for the Senate or great Council, ſpoken of before, it conſiſts wholly of men choſen out of the Nobility, (who are to prove their Gentry by a long Deſcent) ſeldom exceeding the number of 28; to each of which there is allowed a convenient Salary, with ſome fair Caſtle in the Country for his Retirements, during his being of that Body: his whole Eſtate being freed alſo for that time from all publick Payments. Without their counſel and advice the King is neither to determine of Peace or War, or to enter into any new Leagues or Confederacies, nor impoſe any Tax upon the Subject; and unto them and the King jointly is the laſt Appeal: ſuch being the Conſtitution of this Eſtate, that all Cauſes and Controverſies are firſt decided in the Prefecture or Heret (184 in number) where they firſt ariſe; from whence it is lawful to appeal to the Judge of the Province, from him to the Chancellor of the Kingdom, and finally to the King and Council. By the Laws of *Waldemar* the firſt, who firſt reduced the Laws into ſet form and writing, the Biſhops were to ſit with his Council in all Cauſes of moment: but were diſcharged from that employment by King *Chriſtiern* the third, by whom it was alſo ordained, that the Clergy ſhould not ſell any of the Church-lands without leave of the King.

The Forces which this King or Kingdom are able to raiſe may beſt be ſeen by ſome of their particular Undertakings: thoſe ſpecially of *Chriſtiern* the ſecond, who, at the requeſt of *Henry* the ſecond of *France*, ſent a Navy of an hundred Sail into *Scotland* againſt the *Engliſh*, and therein no fewer than 10000 Souldiers; and of *Frederick* then Duke of *Holſtein*, who in his War againſt this *Chriſtiern*, (whoſe removal from the Crown he had then projected) brought 80000 men into the field to make good his Quarrel. And queſtionleſs, conſidering the many Ports and Illands that this Crown is Maſter of, both within the *Baltick* and without, it cannot be but he may ſuddenly raiſe a ſtrong power at Sea. And then conſidering that each of the Nobility, which are here numerous enough, is bound to find a certain number of Horſe upon all occaſions; as are thoſe alſo who hold Lands of the King, which the *Danes* call *Verlehninge*: it will accordingly be concluded, that they are able to make good Levies for a ſudden Service, eſpecially in defence of their own Dominions.

The Revenue of this King conſiſteth principally in the great Impoſt laid upon all Ships which paſs through the *Sound*: the greatneſs whereof may eaſily be conjectured at by the multitude of Ships which of neceſſity muſt paſs

paſs by it in the Trade of the *Baltick*; though of late ſomewhat leſſened of what it was, ſince the *Engliſh* found out and frequented the Northern paſſage into *Moſcovia*. There are alſo ſome Crown-lands, and a great yearly Toll made of the Cattel which paſs into *Germany*; as alſo of the Fiſh tranſported into other Countries. And yet it is conceived that the Treaſures of this King are not very great: partly becauſe there is no other important Commodity but Fiſh to draw Merchants thither; and partly that there is not any one Town of any great Traffick in all his Realms for the entertaining of Commerce.

The chief order of Knighthood in it is that of the *Elephant*, inſtituted by *Frederick* the ſecond. Their Badge, a Collar powdred with Elephants towred, ſupporting the Kings Arms, and having at the end the picture of the Virgin *Mary*.

The Arms hereof are Quarterly, 1. *Or*, three Lions paſſant *Vert*, crowned of the firſt, for the Kingdom of *Denmark*; and ſecondly, *Gules*, a Lion Rampant *Or*, crowned and armed of the firſt, in his Paws a *Danſk* Hatchet *Argent*, for the Kingdom of *Norway*. What Arms belong to him as Duke of *Holſtein* and *Sleſwick* I am yet to ſeek.

There are in *Denmark*

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 13

Univerſities 2. *Viz.*

Copenhagen. *Sora.*

And ſo much for the Kingdom of *DENMARK*.

OF

SWETHLAND.

SWETHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with *Moſcovie*, on the Weſt with the *Dofrine* Hills, which divide it from *Norway*, on the North with the great Frozen Ocean, ſpoken of before; on the South with *Denmark*, *Lieſland*, and the *Baltick* Sea. So called from the *Sueci*, *Suethans*, or *Sucthidi*, and the word *Land* added for a termination; of which more hereafter.

It is in length, from *Stockholm* unto the borders of *Lapland*, above 1000 *Italian* miles; and in breadth from *Stockholm*, lying on the *Bodner* Sea, to the Borders of *Denmark*, about twenty good days journey on horſeback: inſomuch as they which have travelled the length and breadth of it, on this ſide of *Lapland* and the Gulf or Bay of *Bodner*, account it little leſs than all *Italy* and *France* together; but taking in *Lapland*, and the Provinces on the other ſide of the Gulf, bigger than both by the quantity of 900 miles.

The ſituation of it in regard of the Heavenly bodies is the ſame with *Norway*, under the ſame Parallels and Degrees; but of ſo different a temper, both for Soil and Air, as if diſpoſed of under ſeveral and long-diſtant Climes. For the Air here is very pure, but not ſo ſharp and inſupportable as it is in *Norway*: though in ſome places, where the Moors and Waters ſettle, for want of care to open and cleanſe the Water-courſes, they have great Foggs and Miſts, which do ſomewhat putrifie it. And for the Soil, it is more fertile than any of the other Northern Provinces: ſo that beſides thoſe Neceſſaries which they keep for themſelves, they uſually tranſport into other Countries ſtore of Malt and Barley; together with great quantities of Braſs, Lead, Steel, Copper, Iron, the Hides of Goats, Bucks, Oxen, and coſtly Furs. They have alſo ſome Mines of Silver, not mixt with any other Metal; plenty of Fiſh in their Lakes and Rivers; abundance of Pine-trees, Firre, Oaks, both for Ships and Houſes; yielding beſides, among the Woods, good ſtore of Tar and Honey, and ſome other Neceſſaries. But hereof we ſhall ſpeak more punctually in the ſeveral Provinces.

The principal Mountains of this Country are the *Dofrine* Hills, a vaſt and continual Ridge of Mountains which divide it from *Norway*. And though they want not Rivers fit for common uſes, yet partly by reaſon of their great Froſts and flakes of Ice, partly by reaſon of the falling of Trees which lye croſs their Chanels, they have not many navigable, or any of great fame. The principal of ſuch as be are, 1. *Meler*, at the mouth whereof ſtands the City of *Stockholm*, 2. *Luſen*, 3. *Dalacarlie*, giving name to the Province ſo called, or denominated from it. And of the Lakes, whereof here are exceeding many, that of moſt note is the Lake of *Weret*, which, receiving into it 24 Rivers, disburtheneth it ſelf at one mouth into the *Baltick*, with ſuch noiſe and fury, that they call it commonly the *Devil's head*.

The people are naturally ſtrong and active, provident, patient and induſtrious; hoſpitable towards Strangers, whom they entertain with great humanity; ſo healthy, that, if they do not ſhorten their days by Exceſs and Riot, they live commonly to 140 years of age; and ſo laborious, that a Beggar is not ſeen amongſt them. Of no great note for Arts or Arms in the times foregoing: not much addicted to the one; and ſo kept under by the *Danes*, that they could not grow eminent in the other: but much improved in both reſpects in theſe later days: *Ericus*, the firſt King of the preſent Race, who cleared his Country of the *Danes*, and *Guſtavus Adolphus*, the laſt King, who freed the *Germans* from the Yoke of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, not being eaſily to be matched in the Arts of War. And ſince they began to give themſelves to the ſweets of Learning, this Country hath produced (amongſt ſome other learned men) *Olaus Magnus*, Archbiſhop of *Upſal*, of great note for his Hiſtory of the

Goths and *Vandals*; the First-fruits of this Nation in the liberal Sciences. And it is probable, by reason of their late Commerce with the *German* Nations, they will give better testimony to the World hereafter of their proficiency in this kind, as being generally exceeding apt to learn the Arts Mechanical, every man in a manner being his own Artificer, without employing Smith, Mason, Carpenter, or any other manual Trades. Very valiant they are both on foot and horseback, which their long Wars against the *Danes*, and their late Wars in *Germany*, have given good proof of. Their Women are discreet and modest, free from that Intemperance which these Northern parts are subject to. Both Sexes use a corrupt *Dutch*, common to all three Northern Kingdoms; except in *Finland*, and the Provinces on the other side of the *Bodner* Sea, where they partake somewhat of the *Moscovite* or *Russian* Language.

The Christian Religion was first planted amongst them by the care and diligence of *Ansgarius* Archbishop of *Breme*, the Apostle-general of the North. Corrupt with Popish Superstitions, it was reformed, according to the *Augustine* Confession, in the time of *Gustavus Ericus*, the first of the present Royal Family, solicited thereunto by one *Peter Nevicius* a *Lutheran* Divine, and *Laurence* the Archdeacon of *Strengnes*; but chiefly moved (as others say) by a desire to appropriate to himself the Goods of the Church. And this appears to have had some strong influence upon him in it, in that he presently seised upon what he pleased; and made a Law, that Bishops should enjoy no more than the King thought fit: yet having pretty well lessened their Revenues, he was content they should remain as formerly both in power and number; reserving to himself and his Successors the Nomination of the persons; but so as the Approbation of the Clergy (in a kind of Election) doth usually go along with the Kings appointment.

The Bishops are in number seven: that is to say, 1. of *Lincopen*, containing in his Diocese 226 Parishes. 2. Of *Vexime*, under whom are 210. 3. Of *Scara*, ruling over the same number of Churches. 4. Of *Strengnes*, under whom are a hundred only. 5. Of *Abo*, the greatest for extent of all, as comprehending under it 500 Parishes. 6. Of *Wyborg*, and 7. of *Habsay*; whose Dioceses for the most part lie out of the bounds of *Sweden*, in *Moscovie*, *Livonia*, and some other of the out-parts of the Realm of *Poland*. All of them are under the Archbishop of *Upsal*, as their Metropolitan, whose Diocese, extending into *Lapland* and *Finmarck*, containeth 171 Parish-Churches. By which accompt there are in all the Kingdom of *Swethland* but 1417 Parishes; but many of them of a thousand or eight hundred Families: the people being dispersed in Forests and other places, where they have store of Timber to build them houses, and store of Pasturage for their Cattel; which is the reason why they have not so many great Towns, nor so well inhabited, as is usual in far lesser Countries. As for the Authority of these Bishops, they still retain their Voice in Parliament, and with them so many of the inferiour Clergy as are from every *Socken* (a certain number of Parishes, like our *Rural Deanries*) deputed to appear there in the name of the Church: the Affairs whereof the Bishops do direct and order, as well in as out of publick Meetings, according to the Ecclesiastical Constitutions formerly established; and if any great occasion be, they may either advise with their Consistorials, or call a Diocesan Synod, (as they think most fit) and therein make such Laws and Canons as they conceive to be most proper for their own Edification.

The whole Kingdom is divided into two parts, the one lying on the East, the other on the West-side of the Bay or Gulf of *Bodner*, called *Sinus Bodicus* in *Latine*, being a large and spacious Branch of the *Baltick* Sea, extending from the most Southernly Point of *Gothland*, as far as to *Lapland* on the North. According to which division, we have the Provinces of 1. *Gothland*, and 2. *Sweden*, lying on the West-side of the Gulf; 3. *Lapland*, shutting it up upon the North; 4. *Bodia* or *Bodden*, and 5. *Finland*, on the East-side thereof; and 6. the *Swedish* Islands, where it mingleth with the rest of the *Baltick*.

1. GOTHLAND.

GOTHLAND is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the Mountains which divide it from *Norway*, and so much of *Denmark* as lies in the same Continent with it, on the North with *Sweden*, on the South with the Sea *Baltick*. So called either from the *Goths*, whose original Country it is commonly affirmed to be; or *quasi goot Landt*, from the goodness and fertility of the Soil, (*Gootlandia*, *quæ Germanicè* Terra bona *sonat*, as *Maginus* out of *Munster* hath it) the Soil being very fruitful for Corn and Cattel, affording plenty of Mines, with great store of Fish, and generally a better-conditioned Country than any of the rest of these Northern Regions.

It is divided commonly into *Oostrogoth*, or *East-Gothland*; *Wester-goth*, divided from the former by the great Lake of *Weret*, spoken of before; and *South-Gothland*, subdivided into *Smalandia*, *Tuiscia*, and *Verendia*. Chief Towns in *Oostrogoth* are, 1. *Lincopen*, a Bishops See. 2. *Loduse*, adorned with a very fair Haven. In *Wester-goth*, 3. *Scara*, on the Lake *Weret*, a Bishops See also. 4. *Elseborg*, on the Western Sea, betwixt *Denmark* and *Norway*; a place of consequence, and flanker'd with two very strong Castles in the parts adjoining, the one called *Croneberg*, and the other *Goldberg*. 5. *Tragualle*, remarkable for Iron works, occasioned by the Mines adjoining. And finally in *South-Gothland* there is 6. *Vexime*, or *Vexio*, another of the Episcopal Sees. 7. *Walburg*, a reasonable fair Town, with a strong Castle. 8. *Elcholm*, in that part hereof which is called *Verendia*, near the Confines of *Denmark*. 9. *Calmar*, a noted and well traded Port on the *Baltick* Sea, beautified with a Castle not inferiour to that of *Millain*, and so well fortified throughout, that at the taking of it by *Christiern* the fourth of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1611, there were found mounted on the works 108 brass pieces of Ordnance, six Men of War to guard the Haven, with all manner of Ammunition in proportion to them. 10. *Gottenburg*, (or *Gothorum Burgus*) the chief Town of the *Goths* or *Gothland*, as the name importeth, enjoying a commodious Haven, on the *Baltick* also, and very much frequented for the Trade of *Germany*, to which it serves exceeding fitly; the principal Town of all this Province, and for that cause the ordinary Seat or Residence of the Governour for the King of *Sweden*.

The first Inhabitants of these South parts of *Scandia* are commonly affirmed to have been the GOTHS, whom *Jornandes* in his Book *de Rebus Geticis* makes to have issued out of this Country, and to plant themselves on the North Banks of the *Ister*, near the *Euxine* Sea, some time before the *Trojan* War: ascribing to them whatsoever is reported in old Writers of the ancient *Scythians*, as their Encounter with *Vexoris* or *Sesostris* the King of *Ægypt*, the Acts and Atchievements of the *Amazons*, their Congress with *Alexander* the Great in his *Persian* War, and the like to these. In which *Jornandes*, being himself a *Goth*, is no more to be credited than *Geofry* of *Monmouth*, a *Welch* man, in the Story of *Brute* and his Successors, to whom he doth ascribe the taking and sacking of *Rome* under the conduct of *Brennus*, whom he makes to

be

be the Brother of *Belinus* a King of *Britain*. Most probable it is, that they were originally a *Dutch* or *German* people, part of the great Nation of the *Suevi*, called by *Tacitus* the *Gothones*, inhabiting in his time (as it is conceived) in the Land of *Prussia*; who, finding their own Country too narrow for them, might pass over the *Baltick* into the next adjoining Regions; and not well liking that cold Clime, might afterwards in some good numbers go to seek new Dwellings, and at last seat themselves on the Banks of the *Ister*, where *Jornandes* found them. That they were *Dutch* originally, besides the general name of the *Gothones* or *Goths*, and those of *Oostro goths* and *Wisigoths*, into which they were afterwards divided; the particular names of *Alaric*, *Theodoric*, *Riccared*, (the names of their Kings and Captains) seem to me to evidence. That they were once seated in this Country doth appear as plainly, 1. by the name of *Gothland* here still remaining, 2. by the Title of *Rex Gothorum*, which the Kings of *Swetbland* keep in the Royal Style; 3. by some Inscriptions in ancient unknown Characters engraven on the Rocks near *Scara* in the Continent, and in *Wisby* in the Isle of *Gothland*, supposed by learned men to be some monument of that People. And finally, that their fixt Dwelling, when first known by this name amongst the *Romans*, was on the North-side of the *Ister*, is evident by the testimony of all ancient Writers, from the time of *Antoninus Caracalla*, with whom they had some tumultuary Skirmishes in his way towards *Persia*, till their violent Irruption into *Italy* and the Western Provinces: most famous in this Interval for a great Fight with *Decius* the *Roman* Emperour, whom they overcame and slew in a Battel *Anno* 253. In the time of *Valens* and *Valentinian*, the *Roman* Emperours, a Quarrel being grown amongst them, managed by *Phritigernes* and *Athanaricus*, the Leaders of the opposite Factions; *Phritigernes*, overthrown in fight, had recourse to *Valens*, from whom he received such Succours, that giving his Adversary another day for it, he obtained the Victory. Whereupon *Phritigernes* and his Party received the Gospel, but intermixt and corrupt with the Leven of *Arianism*, by the practice of *Valens*, who sent them none but *Arian* Teachers, to whom and their Factions in the Church he was wholly addicted. Afterwards the whole Nation being driven over the *Ister* by the barbarous *Huns*, they obtained of *Valens* the out-parts of *Thrace* for an Habitation, on condition they should serve under the pay of the Emperour, and become Christians: the cause that *Arianism* over-spread the whole Nation generally, which had before infected but one part only. *Ulphilas*, a devout and learned man, was their first Bishop; who, for their better Edification in the way of Godliness, invented a new *Gothick* Character, and translated the Scriptures into that Language: in the study whereof they so well profited, that many of them in the time of their first Conversion suffered death for it at the hands of *Athanaricus*, and were counted Martyrs. Burthened by *Valens*, and denyed their accustomed Pay, they harass and depopulate the rest of *Thrace*, marching towards *Constantinople*; encountred in the way by *Valens*, whom they overcame and killed, after all his Favours. Vanquished by *Theodosius* the succeeding Emperour in many Battels, they became good neighbours, inlarging their Bounds with his leave and licence as far as *Pannonia*, and grown into such estimation with him, that *Ricimer* and *Franita*, two of that Nation, did obtain the Consulship: not to say any thing of that exorbitant power and favour which *Gainas* had attained unto in the Court it self. Made insolent by so great Honours, and apt to pick Quarrels with their Patrons, they invaded *Italy* in two great Bodies, consisting of no fewer than 200000 fighting men. The first whereof, under the Conduct of *Rhadaguisus*, was discomfited and cut in pieces by *Stilico*, Lieutenant to *Honorius* the Western Emperour, at *Fesulæ* in the Streights of the *Apennine*. The other, by his Treachery permitted to pass, sacked *Rome*, and subdued the most part of *Italy*, under the leading of *Alaricus*. He, dying immediately after this great Victory, left the fruits of it to his Son *Athaulfus*; who, marrying with *Galla Placidia*, the Emperour's Sister, relinquished *Italy*, and had all *Gallia Narbonensis*, and a great part of *Hispania Tarraconensis*, assigned unto him, where he erected the Kingdom of the *Wisi Goths* or *Western Goths*, possessed of *Spain* and *Tingitana* for the space of 300 years and upward, when they lost that Kingdom to the *Moors*, as hath there been said. In the mean time the *Goths* which were left in their own Countries, distinguished from these by the name of *Oostro-Goths*, by reason of their more Eastern situation, kept themselves in quiet: being first subdued by the *Huns*, and, when by *Wilamir* freed from that subjection, not intermeddling or attempting any thing against the Empire, till called by *Zeno* Emperor of *Constantinople* into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, who had then subdued it. Which action they managed with so much prudence and good fortune by their King *Theodorick*, that they vanquished *Odoacer*, possessed *Italy*, and held it above 60 years, when, broken in many set Battels by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, Lieutenants for the Emperour *Justinian*, their Kingdom and Name there came unto an end.

As for the Kings of the *Goths*, we have a succession of them in *Jornandes* from *Berig*, who first conducted them out of *Scandia* towards the East, till the going of *Theodorick* into *Italy*; but made up with so little probability, that I dare give no more credit to it than the Stories of *Brute*, *Dan*, *Fergus*, or the Lady *Scota*, *Pharaoh*'s Daughter. Such of whom there is any certain knowledge and succession are these few that follow.

The Kings of the *GOTHS*.

344 1. *Athanaricus*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Constantius* and *Constans*, the Sons of *Constantine* the Great.

357 2. *Alaricus*, the first of that name, in the time of *Constantius*.

3. *Phritigernes*, King of the *Goths* in the time of *Valens*, the first Christian Prince among that People.

370 4. *Athanaricus* II. in the time of the Emperours *Valens*, *Gratian*, and *Valentinian* the second; under whom the *Goths* were first setled on this side of the *Ister*.

379 5. *Rhadaguisus*, who in the time of *Honorius* first led the *Goths* into *Italy*; slain at the Battel of *Fesulæ*.

410 6. *Alaricus* II. who, pursuing the War of *Italy*, sacked *Rome*, subdued *Naples*, and the most of *Italy*.

412 7. *Athaulfus*, the Son of *Alarick* the second, who first erected the Kingdom of the *Wisi-Goths* in *Gaul* and *Spain*, continuing there for the space of 300 years and upwards; the present Kings of *Spain* coming from this Stock.

417 8. *Athalaricus*, King of the *Goths* remaining in the East at the departure of *Rhadaguise* and *Alaricus*, distinguished from their Plantations by the name of *Oostro-Goths*: vanquished by *Attila*, they became Subjects to the *Huns*, in the time of *Theodosius* the second and *Valentinian* the third, Emperours of the East and West.

9. *Wilamir*, one of the Bloud-Royal of the *Goths*, Vassal to *Attila* at the first, whom he assisted, or served rather, in the great Battel near *Tholouse* against the *Romans*: but, taking advantage of some Quarrel amongst the Sons of *Attila*, shook off that Yoke, and recovered the Kingdom of the *Goths*, in the time of the Emperour *Marcianus*.

10. *Theodomir*, Son of *Winithar*, and Brother of *Wilamir*, in the time of *Leo* Emperour of *Constantinople*.

11. *Theodorick*, Son of *Theodomir*, kept at *Constantinople* in his youth as a Pledge or Hostage for his Father, where he was instructed in all the *Greek* and *Roman* Learning, and made the adopted Son (as is said by *Scaliger*) of the Emperour *Zeno*; by whom he was sent into *Italy* against *Odoacer* and the *Heruli*, and erected there the Kingdom of the *Ostrogoths*; which continued till the Reign of *Justinian*, when it was destroyed by *Belisarius* and *Narses*, as before is said: the name of *Goths* in *Italy* being thus extinct, but their Bloud intermixt with the best *Italian*. The sum of their whole Story, for varieties sake, take thus out of *Du Bartas*.

The warlike *Goth*, which whilom issued forth
From the cold frozen Islands of the North,
Incamp'd by *Vistula*: but the Air almost
B'ing there as cold as in the *Baltick* Coast,
He with victorious Arms *Sclavonia* gains,
The *Transylvanian* and *Valachian* Plains;
Then flies to *Thracia*, and then leaving *Greeks*,
Greedy of Spoil, four times he bravely seeks
To pluck from *Rome* (then *Mars* his Minion)
The Plumes which she from all the World had won,
Guided by *Rhadaguise* and *Alarick*,
Bold *Vindimarus* and *Theodorick*, (Legions
Thence flies to *France*; from whence expulst, his
Rest ever since upon the *Spanish* Regions.

The Arms of these Kings are said to have been *Or*, three Ravens with displayed wings *Purple*, membred *Gules*. And let this suffice for the Original, Successes, and final Period of the *Goths*; reserved by me unto this place, because most commonly conceived to be their original Country, at least the place out of which they issued when they first moved towards the East to seek new Dwellings.

2. *SWEDEN.*

SWEDEN is bounded on the East with the *Bodner* Sea, on the West with the *Dofrine* Hills, which part it from *Norway*, on the North with *Lapland*, on the South with *Gothland*. So called from the *Suethans*, or *Suethidi*, the old Inhabitans hereof; of whom more anon. A Country sufficiently fruitful, but for the goodness of the Soil inferiour to *Gothland*; and not so well planted or inhabited as that is, by reason of the vast Woods which they will not suffer to be destroyed, and the greatness of some Marishes hitherto undrained: but might be made as rich and fertile, if the people would; as appeareth by that plenty of Corn growing amongst the Woods, though much hindred by their shade and thickness both from Sun and Rain. But for the Character of this Country, we had it formerly, when we spake of *Swethland* in the general; relating specially to this, as the principal part.

And as the largest and principal part of this great Body, it contains in it many Provinces and Subdivisions: as namely, 1. *Upland*, 2. *Sudermannia*, 3. *Nericia*, 4. *Westmannia*, 5. *Dalecarlie*, 6. *Vermland*, 7. *Coperdale*, 8. *Gestricia*, 9. *Helsingia*, 10. *Middelsar*, 11. *Angermannia*, bordering on *Lapland*, the fartherest of these Provinces towards the North. Many of these have no Towns or Cities of any greatness or beauty, the people living thin and scattered, where they have Wood for Building, Pasturage for their Beasts, and elbow-room enough for themselves and their Cattel. Of these the principal are, 1. *Upsal*, an Archbishops See, and an University, situate not far from the Bay of *Bodner*, beautified with a large Cathedral, wherein many of the ancient Kings of *Swethland* are interred. From this City the Country hereabouts is stiled *Archiepiscopatus Upsalensis*. 2. *Holm*, by the Inhabitants called *Stockholm*, by the *Russians Stecolne*; the Royal Seat of the Kings, a noted and well traded Port, and the chief of the Kingdom; exceeding strong both by Art and Nature, as being situate in the Marishes, like *Venice*, at the mouth of the Lake or River of *Meler*, the passage to it out of the Bay being very narrow, and by consequence easily defended, and yet so deep withall, that the greatest Ships of Burthen may sail up to the City: the Port within the Streight being so safe and capacious, that it is able to receive at one time 300 Sail, which usually ride there without any Anchor. The Castle of this City is conceived to be one of the strongest holds in the world, fortified for the more assurance of it with 400 brass Pieces, many of which are double Cannon. 3. *Nicopen*, a Seatown on the same Bay also. These three are in that part hereof which is called *Upland*. Then there is 4. *Strengnes*, an Episcopal See, and 5. *Telga*, on the Lake of *Meler*, in the Province of *Sudermannia*; the Title and Estate of *Charles*, Father of *Gustavus Adolphus* late King of *Sweden*, before his getting of the Crown called Duke of *Suderman*. Next, in the Province of *Westmannia*, there are 6. *Arboga*, on the West-side of the said Lake of *Meler*; and 7. *Arosia*, rich in Silver-mines, out of which are made the best Dollars of *Sweden*: the Mines here being so rich and profitable, that out of every fifteen pound weight of Silver the workmen draw a pound weight of Gold. 8. *Helsinge*, upon the Bay of *Bodner*, in the Province of *Helsingia*, taking name from hence. 9. *Orebo* or *Orubo*, a strong piece in *Nericia*. And 10. *Lesinger*, on the Bay of *Bodner*, one of the fartherest North of *Sweden* distinctly and specially so called.

3. *LAPLAND.*

LAPLAND, the most Northern part of all *Scandia*, hath on the East *Russia*, on the West the Province or Prefecture of *Wardhuys* in the Kingdom of *Norway*, on the North the main Frozen Ocean, and on the South *Bodia* or *Bodden*, on both sides of the Bay so called.

It is named thus originally from the *Lappi* or *Lappones*, the Inhabitants of it, as they are from their blockish behaviour; the word *Lappon* signifying the same with *ineptus* or *insulsus* in *Latine*; for such they are, rude, barbarous, and without the knowledge of Arts or Letters, as also without Corn and Houses, or any certain Habitations, (except only in *Finmarck*;) feeding for the most part on Fish and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins whereof sowed together they hide their nakedness. Generally they are meer Idolaters, giving Divine honour all the day following to that living Creature, whatsoever it be, which they see at their first setting out in the morning; great Sorcerers, and abhorring the sight of Strangers, whom till of late they used to flee from at their first approach, but within few years past beginning to be more sociable and familiar. In a word, they are the true descendents of the ancient *Finni*, (possessed in old times of all that Tract which lieth between the Bay of *Finland* and the

Frozen

Frozen Ocean) whose natural rudeness and barbarity, unmixt with the condition of more civil people, they do still retain.

It is divided into the Eastern and the Western *Lapland*. The former appertaining to the *Knez* or Great Duke of *Moscovy*, by which people the Inhabitants are called *Dikiloppi*, or the *wild Lappians*, is subdivided into *Biarmia* and *Corelia*; of which, if there be any thing in them worth taking notice of, we shall there speak more. The latter doth belong to the Crown of *Sweden*, subdivided into two parts also, that is to say, 1. *Finmarck*, and 2. *Scricfinnia*.

1. *FINMARCK*, being that part hereof which lieth next unto *Norway*, is the more populous of the two. The people are for the most part idolatrous, but by the neighbourhood of the *Norwegians*, and resort of Strangers unto *Wardhuys* and the parts adjoining, somewhat civilized, and in the Borders of both Kingdoms savouring of Religion, possessed of Sheds or sorry Houses, and those Houses reduced to Parishes under the Jurisdiction of the Archbishop of *Upsal*; the chief of which (if there be any chief amongst them) are named, 1. *Samman*, and 2. *Hielso*. Called *Finmarck*, as the ancient Bounds and Marches of the *Finni*, (of whom more anon) and therefore erroneously by *Maginus* made a part of the Kingdom of *Norway*.

2. *SCRICFINNIA* lieth between *Finmarck* and *Russia*. The name is derived from the *Finni*, a great People of *Scandia*, and *Sckriken*, a *Dutch* word signifying *leaping*, *sliding*, or *bounding*, for such is their gate. An Etymologie not much improbable, in that the Wooden-soled-shoes with sharp bottoms, which they used for their more speedy sliding over the Ice, of which this Country is full, are by the *Germans* (who also use them) called *Scrik-shoenen*, or Sliding-shoes. The ancient Writers call this people *Scricfinni*.

These are indeed the natural and proper *Laplanders*, and unto these the former Character doth of right belong. Of stature very low, little more than Pygmies, but strong and active; well skill'd in Archery, and patient of Cold and Labour; much given to hunting of wild Beasts, whom they kill with their Bows, devour the Flesh, and cloath themselves with their Skins, which they tye at the top of their Heads, and leave no place open but for the Sight; giving thereby occasion unto some to write that they are hairy all over, like Kine or Horses. Such Deer (whereof they have great plenty) as they take unkilled, they make to draw in little Carts, as they shift their Quarters. But having served them for a while, they are killed at last, though perhaps for nothing but their Skins: a certain number of which they pay yearly to the King of *Sweden* in the way of Tribute. Three Companies of these *Laplanders*, so clad and armed as aforesaid, came into *Germany* in the year 1630, to serve *Gustavus Adolphus* in those Wars: looked on with admiration by all Spectators.

Towns we must look for none here, where no Houses be: and yet there are some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea-shore, which Mariners having made for their refreshment when they came on Land, have bestowed some names on, and possibly in time may become good Towns, now not worth the naming.

4. *BODIA.*

BODIA, *BODDEN*, or *BODNER*, is situate on the South of *Scricfinnia*, betwixt it and the Bay or Gulf hence named; extending Southwards on the West side of it, till it joins to *Sweden*, and on the East-side, till it meets with the Province of *Finland*. Hence is the division of this Country into the *Eastern*, *Northern*, and *Western Bodden*, with reference to the Situation of it on the Bay aforesaid. The Country is not very plentiful of Grain or Fruits, but full of great variety of wild Beasts, whose rich Skins yield great profit unto the Inhabitants; and by reason of the commodious Situation on all sides of the Bay, it is well stored with Fish. Anciently it was part of the possessions of the *Finni*; but how or whence it had the name of *Bodia*, or *Bodden*, or *Bodner*, I am yet to learn. But whence soever it had the name, certain I am, that from hence the Gulf adjoining is called *Sinus Bodicus*, the *Bodner Zee* by the *Dutch* or *Germans*.

Chief Towns herein are, 1. *Birkara*, in *West Bodden*, betwixt the Bay and a great navigable Lake. 2. *Toronia*, a well-traded Empory at the very bottom of the Bay, in *North Bodden*. 3. *Helsingeliac*, more North than that, towards the Borders of *Lapland*. And 4. *Kerlabi*, in *East-Bodden*, on the Bank of the Gulf, conveniently seated for a Town of Trade.

5. *FINLAND.*

FINLAND hath on the North *Bodia*, on the South the *Baltick* Sea or *Mare Suevicum*, on the East *Sinus Finnicus*, on the West *Sinus Bodicus*. It is by *Munster* thought to be called *Finland*, *quasi* fine land; *quòd pulchrior & amœnior sit Sueciâ*, because it is a more fine and pleasing Country than *Sweden* it self. But indeed it is so called from the *Finni* or *Fenni*, a potent Nation who have here dwelt, whose Character is thus framed by *Tacitus*; Finnis *mira Feritas*, *fœda Paupertas*, *non Arma*, *non Equi*, *non Penates*, *Victui Herba*, *Vestitui Pelles*, *Cubili Humus*, *sola in Sagittis spes*. The *Finns*, saith he, are wonderfully barbarous, miserably poor, without Arms, Horse, or Houshold-gods; Herbs their Food, the Ground their Bed, and the Skins of Beasts their best Apparel, armed only with their Arrows, and in them their hopes. A Character which agreeth every way with our present *Finlanders*, especially those of *Scricfinnia* and some parts of *Finmarchia*; who are not so well reclaimed to Civility as the other are: but very different from that which *Jornandes* gives them, who, living within 400 years after *Tacitus*, before they had much (if any) entercourse with foreign Nations, telleth us of them, that they were *Scanziæ Cultoribus omnibus mitiores*, more tractable and civil than any of the Inhabitants of *Scandia*, not excepting the *Suethidi* themselves. If so, they did deserve to live in so good a Country, more plentiful and plain than *Sweden*, and neither so hilly nor so mooriſh.

The principal places in it are, 1. *Abo*, an Archbishop's See, situate on the most Southern Point of it, shooting into the *Baltick*. 2. *Wyborg*, a Bishops See also, whose Jurisdiction for the most part is without this Province, on some part of *Russia*, all *Finland* being in the Diocese of the Bishop of *Abo*. A Town conveniently seated at the bottom of the Bay or Gulf of *Finland*, (called *Sinus Finnicus* in *Latine*) which divides this Country from *Livonia*; well fortified, as the chief Bulwark of this Kingdom against the *Moscovite*; and so well garrisoned withall, that the keeping of this Town, and *Rivallia* or *Revel* in the Borders of *Liefland*, do cost the King of *Sweden* 100000 Dollars yearly. 3. *Udden*, on a Point or Promontory of the same Gulf, opposite to *Narva*, another Garrison of this King in *Liefland*. 4. *Verma*, upon the *Bodner Zee*. 5. *Cronaburg*, more within the Land, at the efflux of a River out of the Lake called *Piente*. 6. *Deckala*, on the Banks of the great Lake called *Holela*. 7. *Varta*, more Northwards towards *Lapland*. Of which last four I find not any thing observable in the way of Story.

6. The

6. The *SWEDISH Islands.*

AND now at last I come to the *Swedish Islands*, here and there interspersed in the *Baltick* Seas, betwixt the Isle of *Bornholm*, which belongs to *Denmark*, and *Liefland* or *Livonia*, appertaining to the King of *Poland*: the principal of which are, 1. *Gothia*, or the Isle of *Gothland*; and 2. *Insulæ Vlandæ*, or the Isles of *Oeland*.

1. *GOTHIA*, or the Isle of *GOTHLAND*, is situate over against *Calmar*, a strong Town in the Continent of *Gothland*; in length 18 *Dutch* miles, and five in breadth, of a rich Soil, but more fit for Pasturage than Tillage, yielding great Herds of Cattel, store of Game for Hunting, plenty of Fish, excellent Marble, and abundance of Pitch, which it sends forth to other Countries. There are in it 18 large and wealthy Villages, besides the Haven Town of *Wisby*, heretofore rich and of very great Trading, as much frequented by the Merchant as most in *Europe*; but now much decayed, and neither so well peopled nor so rich as formerly. The Trade removed hither from *Wollin* in *Pomerania* (destroyed by *Waldemar* the first of *Denmark*, *Anno* 1170) made it flourish mightily; the greatest Traffick of the *Baltick* being managed here: but after that, by reason of the long and continual Wars betwixt *Denmark* and *Swethland* for the possession of this Isle, it became unsafe, the Factory was transferred unto other places. For being conveniently seated to annoy the *Swedes*, the *Danes* have much contended for it, and sometimes possessed it; but at the present it is in the hand of the *Swethlander*. By some conceived to be the *Eningia* spoken of by *Pliny*.

2. *OELAND*, or the Isles of *Vlandt*, so called in the plural number, because there are many of them, of which this the principal is situate over against *Abo*, the chief City of *Finland*. Of no great note, but that it is commodiously seated to invade or annoy this Kingdom; and therefore very well fortified and strongly garrisoned: here being the good Towns of 1. *Vibo*, 2. *Vames*, and 3. the strong Castle of *Castrolm*.

Besides which Countries here described, the King of *Sweden* is possessed of the strong Towns of *Narva*, and *Rivallia* or *Revel*, and *Pernaw*, in *Liefland*; of *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in *Corelia*, a Province of *Russia*; with very fair and ample Territories appertaining to them: subdued and added to this Crown by *John* the second, *Anno* 1581; except *Rivallia*, which voluntarily submitted to *Ericus* the second King of this present Race *An.* 1561. But being these Towns and Territories are not within the Bounds of *Swethland*, we shall defer all farther discourse thereof to a place more proper.

The first Inhabitants of this Kingdom, besides the *Gothi* and *Finni* spoken of already, were the *Sitones* and *Suiones*, mentioned in *Tacitus*; together with the *Phasonæ*, the *Phiræsi*, and the *Levoni*, whom we find in *Ptolomy*, placed by him in the East and middle of this great *Peninsula*. Which, being the general names of some mighty Nations, are by *Jornandes* branched into lesser Tribes, of the *Suethans*, *Theustad*, *Vagoth*, *Bergio*, *Hallin*, *Liothida*, *Athelnil*, *Gaurigoth*, *Raumaricæ*, *Rauragnicii*, *Grannii*, *Aganzie*, *Vnixie*, *Arochitamii*, *Enageræ*, *Othingi*, and divers others by him named. But from what root the name of *Sweden*, *Swedes*, or *Swethland*, by which the chief Province of it, the people generally, and the whole Kingdom is now called, is not yet agreed on; nor spoken of at all by *Munster*, or *Crantzius*, which two (but specially the last) have written purposely of this people. *Gasper Peucerus* derivers them from the *Suevi*, who anciently inhabited in the North parts of *Germany*, beyond the *Albis*; from whom the *Baltick* Sea was called *Mare Suevicum*: which people he conceiveth to have been driven by the *Gothi* and *Daci* into this Country, and by the change of one letter only to be called *Sueci*. But this hath no good ground to stand on, though I meet with many others which are more improbable. For when they left those colder Countries, they fell into these parts which are still called *Suevia*, (the *Schwaben* of the Modern *Dutch*) where we find them in the time of *Cæsar*. And after, *in fatali illa Gentium commigratione*, when almost all the Northern Nations did shift their Seats, we find such of them as had staid behind to have accompanied the *Vandals* in their On-falls into *Gaul* and *Spain*. Of any Expedition of theirs cross the *Baltick* Seas, *né gry quidem*, nothing to be found in more ancient Authours. We must therefore refer the original of this People either to the *Suiones*, or the *Suethidi*, or perhaps to both; both being anciently setled in these Northern Regions. Of the *Suiones* we read in the Book of *Tacitus* inscribed *De Moribus Germanorum*; by whom they are reported to be strong in Men, Armour, and Shipping. And that they were Inhabitants of *Scandia*, appears by two Circumstances in that Author. 1. That the people were not permitted to wear Weapons, *quia subitos Hostium Incursus prohibet Oceanus*, because the Ocean was to them a sufficient Rampart; which could not be affirmed of the ancient *Suevians*, but agreeth very well with the situation of this present Country, defended by the *Baltick* and vast Northern Ocean from the sudden Assaults of any Enemy. 2. Because the Sea which hemmed in that people was conceived to be the utmost bounds of the World; *Trans* Suiones *Mare aliud, quo cingi claudique. Terrarum orbis fines*, as his words there are: which we know to hold good of this Country. 3. Add unto these this passage of the old Annals of the Emperour *Lewis* the second, where it is told us of the *Danes, relicta patria apud Suiones exsulabant*, that they were banished into the Country of the *Suiones*; which cannot so well be understood of any place as of this *Sweden*, being next neighbour unto *Denmark*. And 4. that this People, both by *Munster* and *Crantzius*, are as well called *Suiones*, as *Sueci* or *Suedi*; which sheweth what they conceived of their true Original. Then for the *Suethans* or the *Suethidi*, whom *Jornandes* speaks of in his Book *De rebus Geticis*, they are by him placed in the Isle of *Scandia*, (for such this great *Peninsula* was esteemed to be by most ancient Writers.) Now that these *Suethidi* are no other than the present *Swethlanders*, appeareth 1. by the propinquity of the Names. 2. In that he maketh the *Finni* and *Finniathæ* the next neighbours to them. And 3. in that they are affirmed by the same Authour to have furnished the *Romans* with rich Furs, and the Skins of wild Beasts, with which Commodities this Country is abundantly well stored. Now to which of these two Nations, either the *Suiones* or the *Suethidi*, those of *Sweden* are most indebted for their Original, will (I conceive) be no great controversie: the *Suethans* and *Suethidi* of *Jornandes* being no other than a Tribe of the *Suiones*, though the greatest and most powerful of all those Tribes; placed therefore in the Front to command the rest, and so most like to give the name unto the whole.

Their Government was anciently under Kings, affirmed so to be by *Tacitus*, who telleth us also that they were absolute and free, *nullis exceptionibus, non precario jure regnandi*; not bound in Covenant with their people, nor holding their Estates at the will of the Subject. But their Historians have gone for Antiquity hereof beyond the story of *Brute* or the *Trojan* War, (beyond which very few of that strain have dared to pretend) as high as unto *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, reigning here within 90 years after the Floud. But letting pass these Dreams and Dotages

ges of the Monkish times, certain it is that sometimes they were under the *Danes*, sometimes under the *Norwegians*, sometimes had distinct Kings of their own; and finally sometimes were comprehended with the *Danes* and *Norwegians* under the general name of *Normans*, conducted by one King or Captain upon foreign Actions. Omitting therefore the Succession of their former Kings, of whose very being there is cause to make great question; we will begin our Catalogue of them with *Jermanicus*, who entertained *Harald* King of *Denmark* and his Brother *Regenfride*, driven out of that Kingdom by *Gotricus* or *Godfrey*, the Contemporary of *Charlemaign*; of whose Successors *Munster* giveth us more certainty.

The Kings of *SWEDEN*.

1. *Jermanicus*.
2. *Frotho*.
3. *Herotus*.
4. *Sorlus*.
5. *Biornus*.
6. *Wichfertus*.
7. *Ericus*.
8. *Ostenus*.
9. *Sturbiornus*.
10. *Ericus* II.
11. *Olaus*.
12. *Edmundus*.
13. *Stinkalis*.
14. *Halstenus*.
15. *Animander*.
16. *Aquinus*.
17. *Magnus*.

1150 18. *Sberco*. 10.
1160 19. *Carolus*. 8.
1168 20. *Canutus*. 54.
1222 21. *Ericus* III. 27.
1249 22. *Byrgerius*. 2.
1251 23. *Waldemarus*. 26.
1277 24. *Magnus* II. 13.
1290 25. *Byrgerius* II. 23.
1313 26. *Magnus* III. Son to *Ericus* the Brother of *Byrgerius*, was also chosen King of *Norway*.
1326 27. *Magnus* IV. King of *Sweden* and *Norway*, which last he gave in his life time to *Haquin* or *Aquinus*, his second Son; and after the death of *Ericus* his eldest Son (his designed Successor in this Crown) was outed of this Kingdom by the practice of
1363 28. *Albert*, Duke of *Mecklenburg*, Son of *Euphemia*, the Sister of *Magnus* the fourth; to the prejudice of *Aquinus* King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, made King of *Sweden*, on that Quarrel vanquished by *Margaret* Queen of *Denmark* and *Norway*, Widow of *Aquinus*, *Anno* 1387: to whom, desirous of liberty, he resigned his Kingdom, and died in his own Country *Anno* 1407.
1387 29. *Margaret*, Queen of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, the *Semiramis* of *Germany*, having united the three Kingdoms under her Command, caused an Act of State to be passed in *Calmar*, a chief Town of *Swethland*, for the perpetuation of this Union unto her Successors; the Laws and Priviledges of each Kingdom continuing as before they were.
1411 30. *Ericus* IV. Duke of *Pomeren*, adopted by *Margaret*, of whose Sister *Ingelburgis* he was descended, was in her life-time chosen King of the three Kingdoms, into which he succeeded actually after her decease: but outed of them all by a strong Faction raised against him *Anno* 1439, he died in a private estate in *Pomeren*, *Anno* 1459.
1439 31. *Christopher*, Count *Palatine*, and Duke of *Bavier*, (in Title only) Son of the Lady *Margaret*, Sister of *Ericus*, succeeded in all three Kingdoms. After whose death the *Swethlanders*, being weary of the *Danish* Government broke the Agreement made at *Calmar*, for the uniting of the three Kingdoms under one Prince, and chose one *Carolus Canutus* to be their King, *Anno* 1448.
1448 32. *Carolus Canutus*, one of the meanest of the Nobility, and not long pleasing to the Great ones: whose Displeasure when he had incurred, and feared the consequents thereof, he gathered together all the Treasure he could, fled unto *Dantzick*, and there ended his days.
1455 33. *Christiern*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, called in by a party of the *Swedes*, and crowned King of *Swethland*; but outed again under colour that he had not kept Conditions with them: the Kingdom being governed after that (for a time) by Marshals.
1458 34. *John*, King of *Denmark* and *Norway*, the Son of *Christiern*, received King by the *Swedes* then overpowered by the *Moscovite*: but their turn being served, they expelled him again, returning to their former Government under Marshals. Of which Marshals (descended from *Steno Stur*, the Uncle of *Carolus Canutus* by his Mother's side) there were three in number; *viz.* 1. *Steno*, 2. *Suanto*, and 3. *Steno Stur* the second: of which the two first died natural deaths, and the last being by *Christiern* the second slain in Battel, this Kingdom was again possessed by the *Danes*.
1519 35. *Christiern* II. King of all three Kingdoms, used his Victory so cruelly here, and his Subjects so insolently at home, that here he was outed by *Gustavus Ericus*, and driven out of *Denmark* by his Uncle *Frederick*.
1523 36. *Gustavus Ericus*, descended from the ancient Race of the Kings of *Sweden*, having vanquished and expelled the *Danes*, was on the merit of that action chosen King of *Swethland*, which still continueth in his House.
1561 37. *Ericus* V. Son to *Gustavus* 8.
1569 38. *John* II. Brother of *Ericus*, married *Catharine* the Sister of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland*.
1593 39. *Sigismund*, the Son of *John* the second, in the life-time of his Father chosen King of *Poland* *Anno* 1586, but was dispossessed of the Crown of *Sweden* (after a long War) by his Uncle *Charles*.
1607 40. *Charles* II. Duke of *Suderman*, the youngest Son of *Gustavus Ericus*, and Brother of *John* and *Erick* the two former Kings, first governed here as Viceroy for his Nephew *Sigismund*. But having an aim upon the Crown (to which he found the *Lutherans* not very favourable) he raised up a *Calvinian* party within that Realm; according to whose Principles he began first to withdraw his Obedience from his natural Prince, and afterwards to assume the Government to himself: speeding so well in his Design, that after a long War he forced his Nephew to desist from all farther

Enter-

Enterprises, and made himself King, *An.* 1607.

1611 41. *Gustavus Adolphus*, Son of *Charles*, having setled his Affairs in *Sweden*, and made Peace with the King of *Denmark*, with whom his Father was in War at the time of his death, fell first upon his Cousin *Sigismund*, the King of *Poland*, from whom he took many places of importance in *Prussia* and *Livonia*; and in pursuance of that War was made Knight of the Garter. Afterwards, having setled a Truce with him, he passed into *Germany*, then in great danger of being absolutely inthralled to the House of *Austria*. In which he prospered so beyond all expectation, that in one year he passed over the *Elb*, the *Rhene*, and the *Danow*, (which no Conquerour ever did before:) and having twice vanquished the Imperialists led by *Tilly*, and restored many of the *German* Princes unto their Estates, was in the current of his Victories slain in the Battel of *Lutzen*, *Novemb.* 1632; his body royally conveyed to *Swethland*, and there interred.

1632 42. *Christina*, sole Daughter of *Gustavus*, of the age of seven years, acknowledged Queen of *Sweden*; the Estate being governed by the Counsels of the Nobility. After a long War, with variable success, in *Germany*, they came at last to this Accord in the Treaty of *Munster*, That she and her Successours, Kings and Queens of *Swethland*, should peaceably enjoy all the higher *Pomeren*, with the Isles of *Rugia*, *Wollen*, and the Town of *Stetin*, in Lower *Pomerland*; the Town and Port of *Wismar* in the Dukedom of *Mecklenburg*; and the whole Bishoprick of *Bremen* and *Verden*, and the Prefecture of the Town of *Wilchusen*; with the Title of Dukes of *Bremen*, *Pomeren*, and *Verden*, Princes of *Rugia*, and Lords of *Wismar*; and by those Titles to have place, as Princes of the Empire, in all Diets and Assemblies which concern the publick. By which Agreement (if it hold) the *Swedes* have not only got a good footing in *Germany*, a strong Influence upon all the Councils of the Empire, a Door open for more Forces, (if occasion be) and a free passage into the Western Ocean, which before they wanted; but may in time prove absolute Masters of the *Baltick* Sea, and make the *Hamburgers*, those of *Lubeck*, and possibly the Kings of *Denmark* and the Empire it self, be at their devotion.

But leaving these things to the doubtful issue of Contingency, let us next look upon the Forces and Revenues of the Crown of *Sweden* before the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, or as he found them at his Succession to that Crown. For though the *Swedes* pretend their Kingdom to be Elective, especially since the failing of the Royal Line in *Magnus* the fourth and *Albert* of *Mecklenburg*: yet still the eldest Son or next Heir succeedeth; unless put by by Faction and strong hand, as in the case of *Sigismund* and his Uncle *Charles*. Which *Charles* so ordered his affairs, that having engaged the Kingdom in a War against his Nephew, he was solicited at the last to accept of the Crown: to which he would by no means yield, till a law was made for the entailing of the same for ever unto his Posterity, whether male or female, as an Hereditary Crown. But whether Hereditary or Elective, the King once setled in the Throne is an absolute Monarch; having not only a power to levie Taxes on his Subjects, as he seeth occasion, as five, six, seven, eight Dollars, or more, yearly upon every Housholder, according to the proportion of his Estate, but also to grant a certain number of Peasants unto such as he means to favour, to be as Subjects and Vassals to him, according to his well-deserving. And whereas in the Constitution of this Government every Parish hath a Landsman or Consul to decide the Controversies of the same, as every Territory hath its Vicount, and each Province his Lamen; there lieth an Appeal from the Landsman unto the Vicount, and from the Vicount to the Lamen; who if they be supposed not to judge uprightly, then the Appeal lies unto the Council, and from the Council of Estate to the King himself, (in whom is fixed the Soveraignty and *Dernier Resort*) and not unto the King and Council, as before in *Denmark*.

The Forces of this King are either by Sea or Land. By Sea he is Commander wholly of the Bay of *Bodner*, and hath a great Power in all the rest of the *Baltick*; being able to set out 70 good men of War, as *John* the second did in the year 1578; seven of which were good Gallions, and all the rest did carry above 50 cast Pieces of all sorts, besides many other good Vessels fit for Service. And if a Navy of this size will not serve the turn, he is not only furnished with Timber, Cordage, and all other necessaries for the building of Ships, and with good store of Ordnance and Ammunition for present use, but is able to raise upon a sudden 6000 Mariners, and upon little warning as many more; all which he entertaineth at no other charges in a manner than to find Victuals: insomuch as *John* the second, before mentioned, did use to say, that *that which cost the King of* Spain *a million of Crowns, cost not him* 100000 *Dollars*.

For his Land-Forces, they may best be estimated by the Trained Bands (as we may call them) in every Province; there being in all 32 *Vexilles* (or Ensigns) of Foot constantly trained and mustered in the several Provinces, each *Vexille* comprehending 600 or 700 men, amounting in the total to 20000 Foot; all in a manner Musketiers, ready to march whensoever the Kings occasion shall so require. And then for Horse, there are eleven Cornets in continual readiness for *Sweden* and *Gothland*, and two for *Finland*, maintained at the charges of those Countries: to which the King may add at his own charges as many more as he pleaseth. And for an instance of what this King is able to do, without putting his Estates in hazard by draining them too dry of men to make good his Kingdom, we find that *John* the second, in his Navy of 70 Ships spoken of before, had above 18000 Land-Souldiers, besides Mariners. And in the Army which *Gustavus Adolphus*, the late King, brought into *Germany*, there were mustered no fewer at one time than 12000 Horse, and 34000 Foot, all *Finns* and *Swethlanders*. For the accommodating of which Armies with Artillery and the like Engines of War, it is thought that the Kings hereof are Masters of 8000 great Pieces, for the most part Brass, with Mortar-pieces and Granado's in proportion to them.

But that which makes his Land-Forces most considerable is their Hardiness in enduring the extremities of Wind and Weather, (insomuch that it is usual with them to stand Centinel a whole Winters night of 18 hours long without being relieved) their exact Discipline, and Obedience to their Commanders, and finally their indefatigable Industry in making their own Shoes, Apparel, Stocks for Muskets, and all other necessaries. Which doth not only make them fit to endure any labour which is put upon them in the Wars, but keeps them from Idleness and the pride of Mutinies; the ordinary effect, in great Armies, of Sloth and Ease. Nor do they want incouragement on the Kings part neither; who, 1. gives to every Souldier Victuals, which he accompts not in their pay, and that according to his Obedience and desert. 2. If a Souldier

11274.

dier be taken Prisoner, him the King doth usually redeem at his own charges. And 3. if a Souldier's Horse be slain under him, the King supplieth him with another. Which make the Souldiers (very sensible of such Obligations) exceedingly conformable unto his Commands, how dangerous soever they seem to be.

Finally, as for his Revenues, they must needs be great, there being four ways allowed him to amass his Treasures. First the Revenues of the Church, consisting before the Reformation of seven Bishopricks and sixty Monasteries, which enjoyed very great Possessions; all seized on by *Gustavus Ericus*, and by him incorporate to the Crown, excepting only what is given back to maintain the Bishops. Secondly, Mines, which are here of all Metals in very great plenty, except of Gold and Silver, which they have more sparingly; the Tenth whereof in all places belongs to the King, and yields him such a fair *Introdo*, that in the year 1578 the King's part out of two or three Mines of Copper only amounted to 30000 Dollars. Thirdly, Tenths out of all Increase, as Rie, Wheat, Barley, Fish, Oxen, Skins, and the like Commodities; the sum whereof though not certainly known, (because the increase is so uncertain) yet it was once computed, that the Tenth of the Oxen only came in one year to 18000 Dollars, besides Provision for his Houshold. Fourthly and lastly, Customs imposed on Merchandise, and paid in all his Haven-Towns for all Commodities imported or exported, of what sort soever. Besides all which, he hath his Contributions in all times of War, power of imposing Taxes, (though moderately used) as his Necessities require; and on the Marriage of a Daughter, the Kingdom is to provide her Portion, which of late times hath been fixed at the certain sum of 100000 Dollars, besides Plate and Movables. Out of which several *Items* to sum up the Total: It was observed, that in the year 1578 King *John* the second (all Charges, ordinary and extraordinary, being first deducted) did lay up into his Treasury no less then 700000 Dollars; which was a vast sum for those times, considering especially the great Charge which the King had been at that year, in furnishing a Navy of 70 Sail, and raising 18000 Land-Souldiers, (besides Horse) for defence of his Realm against the *Danes*. And yet it is conceived by some knowing men, that his Revenues would be much greater then they are, if he did employ Strangers to work the Mines, which the Natives do not husband to the best advantage; and yet are fearful to discover them to other Nations upon some Jealousies, which they are naturally addicted to: or if he would turn Merchant, and in his own Ships send out Corn and Cordage, with Masts and Timber fit for Building, and in them bring back Salt and other Necessaries which his Kingdom wants, setting them at a far less price than now they go at, and yet gaining very greatly by it too.

The Arms of this Kingdom are *Azure*, three Crowns *Or*.

There are in *Swethland*

Archbishops 2. Bishops 8.

Universities but one, *viz. Upsal.*

And thus much for *SWETHLAND.*

OF RUSSIA.

RUSSIA is bounded on the East by *Tartary* on the West with *Livonia* and *Finland*, from which it is divided by great Mountains and the River *Poln*; on the North by the Frozen Ocean, and some part of *Lapland*; and on the South by *Lituania*, a Province of the Kingdom of *Poland*, and the *Crim-Tartars*, inhabiting on the Banks of *Palus Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. It standeth partly in *Europe*, and partly in *Asia*, the River *Tanais* or *Don* running through it, the common Boundary of those great and noted parts of the World.

It was thus called from the *Rossi* or *Russi*, a People of Mount *Taurus*, or *Taurica Chersonesus*, (if not both) who in the declining times of the *Greek* Empire possessed themselves of some parts of it, and, being the prevailing People, imposed their Name on all the rest. Called also *Russia Alba*, to distinguish it from *Russia Nigra*, a Province of *Poland*; *quòd Incolæ omnium Gentium ipsius imperio subjectarum* (as one observes, discoursing of the Affairs hereof) *Vestibus albis & Pileis plerunque utantur*, because the Inhabitants use to wear white Caps and Vestments. And why not thus? sithence the People of *Margiana* and *Sogdiana* in *Asia* have the name of *Jeselbas* only because they wear green Turbants, as the word importeth. Finally, it is called *Moscovie*, from *Moscovie* the chief Province of it; as that is denominated from the *Moschi*, of whom more anon.

In reference to the Heavenly bodies it is said by some to be situate betwixt the 8. and 20. Climates; the longest Day in the Southern parts being but 16 hours and an half, and almost 22 hours and an half in the Northern parts. But this is to be understood only of the Province of *Moscovie* properly and specially so called, and not of the whole Empire of the *Moscovite* according to the Bounds before laid down. For taking in the Northern Provinces belonging to it, as East-*Lapland*, *Condora* & *Petzora*, lying within the *Arctick* Circle, the longest Day in Summer will be full 6 months, (for so long do those Countries see no Night at all;) which is a mighty disproportion from the length of the longest Day in the most Southern parts, being but 16 hours and a half, as before is said. And by this Rule we are to take the Dimensions also. For though some make the length hereof from North to South, that is to say, from *Cala* in the North to *Astracan* near the *Caspian* Sea, to be no more than 2260 Versts, or 3690 *Italian* miles; yet they confess that, reckoning forwards from *Tromschna*, the farthest point of *Petzora*, the full length thereof will be nigh so much more. And for the breadth, reckoning from *Narva* on the Bay of *Finland*, (now in possession of the *Swedes*) to the Province of *Severia* in the East, it amounteth to 4400 Versts, or 6300 *Italian* miles; each Verst being estimated at three quarters of an *English* mile. Which mighty Territory, if it were peopled answerable to some other parts of the World, would either make it too great for one Prince to hold, or make that Prince too great and puissant for all his neighbours.

The people, as is commonly reported of them, are very perfidious, crafty and deceitful in all their Bargains, False-dealers with all they have to do with, making no reckoning of their Promises, and studying nothing more than ways to evade their Contracts. Vices so generally known and noted in them, that when they are to deal with Strangers, they dissemble their Country, and pretend to be of other Nations, for fear lest no body should trust them. Destitute they are of humane Affections, and so unnatural, that the Father insults on his Son, and he again over his Father and Mother: so malicious one towards another, that you shall have a man hide some of his own Goods in the house of some man whom he hateth, and then accuse him for the stealth of them. They are exceedingly given to drink, in somuch that all heady and intoxicating Drinks are by Law prohibited, and two or three days only in a year allowed them to be drunk in. For the most part they are strong of Body, swift of Foot, of a square Proportion, broad, short, and thick; gray-eyed, broad-bearded, and generally furnished with prominent Panches. The Commons live in miserable subjection to the Nobles, and they again in as great Slavery to the Duke or Emperour; to whom no man of all the vulgar dares immediately exhibit a Petition, or make known his Grievances: nay the mean Lords and Officers are squeamish in this kind, and, but on great submission, will not commend unto the Duke a poor man's Cause. They are altogether unlearned, even the Priests meanly indoctrinated; it being cautionated by the Great Duke, that there be no Schools, lest there should be any Scholars but himself: so that the people use to work commonly on the Lord's day, holding it fit to be kept by none but Gentlemen; and to say in a difficult question, *God and our Great Duke know all this*; and in other talk, *All we enjoy, Health and Life, is all from our Great Duke*; according to whose pleasure every man is prescribed what Habit he shall wear, both for matter and fashion, suitable unto their Condition. In the time of my Authour their Habit was a long Garment without Plaits, which hung down to their heels, commonly of white or blew, with very straight Sleeves; on their Legs wearing Buskins up as high as the calf, for the most part red, high at the heels, and beset with nails of Iron. The stuff and trimming of the Dress is the only difference betwixt the Noble and the Peasant.

The Women are attired also much after this manner; but if great and noble, suffered to set forth themselves with store of Pearls and Precious Sones, which hang so thick about their ears, that they do almost pull their ears from their heads. A second Marriage is conceived no blemish in point of Chastity, but the third condemns them of Incontinence. They are naturally subject enough to the Lusts of the flesh, but private, and fearful to offend; if once lascivious, then most intolerably wanton. It is the fashion of these Women to love that Husband best which beateth them most; and to think themselves neither loved nor regarded, unless they be two or three times a-day well-favouredly swaddled. The Authour of the *Treasury of Times* telleth a Story of a *German* Shoemaker, who, travelling into this Country, and here marrying a Widow, used her with all kindness that a woman could (as he thought) desire; yet did not she seem contented. At last learning where the fault was, and that his not beating her was the cause of her Pensiveness, he took such a vein in cudgelling her sides, that in the end the Hangman was fain to break his Neck for his labour.

They use the *Sclavonian* Language, but so corrupt and mixt with other Languages, that they and the *Sclavonians* understand not one another's meaning but by circumstance only: yet in *Jugria* (out of which the *Hungarians* are thought to have issued) they speak a corrupt *Hungarian*; and in *Petzora* and the Country of the *Czeremissians* they have a Language to themselves, distinct from others.

They first received the Christian Faith in the year 987, or, as some say, *Anno* 942, by the preaching and ministery of the *Greeks* sent hither by the Patriarch of *Constaminople*; of which Church they are constant followers, both for Rites and Doctrine: but not without some Superstitions of their own superadded to them; *viz.* not coming near a Cross, Church or Monastery, but they kneel down, and make the sign of the Cross, saying, *Miloy Hispodi*, i. e. *Lord, have mercy upon us*; nor entring into any Church, untill washed and bathed. They bear a deadly hatred to the *Jews*, whom they suffer not to live amongst them; and so great friendship unto a Calf, that they hold it a great offence to kill one, or to eat his flesh. Their Church is governed by 18 Bishops, and 2 Metropolitans, all of them subordinate to their Archbishop or Patriarch; as he in former times to the *Constantinopolitan*, by whom he used to be confirmed. But about an hundred years ago they withdrew themselves from that subjection; the Patriarch being nominated by the Great Duke, and consecrated by two or three of his own Suffragans. Without the counsel and advice of this Patriarch, the Emperour or Great Duke doth nothing of any moment. The Bishops are all chosen out of the Monastick or Regular Clergy; which makes the Monks (being all of the order of S. *Basil*) to live very religiously, in hope to be advanced to the Episcopal Dignity. And for the Secular Clergy, or Parochial Priests, there is not much required of them, but to say their Masses, (which being in their own Language they may easily do) and to read now and then one of S. *Chrysostom*'s Homilies, translated heretofore for the use of those Churches. After the death of their first Wives they are not permitted to marry; in other things little differing from the rest of the people. Once in the year it is lawful and usual with them to hold a Synod, at which the Patriarch hath his Crosier or Pastoral-staff carried before him, as the Pope's Legate hath the Cross; where they make Constitutions for the publick Government, and the regulating of Divine matters; which are punctually and carefully observed by the Prince himself.

As followers of the *Greek* Church, (but so as to be counted a Church distinct) they differ much both from the *Romish* and reformed. 1. Denying the Holy Ghost to proceed from the Father and the Son. 2. Denying Purgatory, but praying for the Dead. 3. Believing that holy men enjoy not the presence of God before the Resurrection. 4. Communicating in both kinds but using Leavened bread, and mingling warm Water with the Wine, which both together they distribute with a Spoon. 5. Receiving Children of 7 years old to the Sacrament of the Eucharist, because then they begin to sin. 6. Forbidding extreme Unction, Confirmation, and fourth Marriages. 7. Admitting none to Orders but such as are married, and yet prohibiting Marriage to them that are actually in Orders. 8. Rejecting Carved Images, but admitting the Painted. 9. Observing 4 *Lents* in the year. 10. Reputing it unlawful to fast on *Saturday*; or to eat Blood, or any thing that hath been strangled, according to the first Council holden at *Hierusalem*. 11. And finally, dissolving Marriage by Divorcement upon every slight occasion, or conceived displeasure. Which diversity betwixt the *Romanists* & this people in point of Religion hath bred such a difference betwixt them in point of Affection, and made them so ill-conceited of one another, that if a *Moscovite* be known, or but suspected, to have conversed with any of the Church of *Rome*, he is accounted to be a polluted person, and must be solemnly purged and purified, before

before he be admitted to partake of the *bleſſed Sacrament*.

In matters of War the people are indifferent able, as being almoſt in continual Broils with their Neighbours, and have a Cuſtom, that when they go to the Wars, every Souldier giveth to the Emperour or Great Duke a piece of money, which at the end of the War he receiveth again: and by that means the number of the ſlain is exactly known. At their Funerals they uſe to put a Peny into the Mouth of the party deceaſed, a pair of Shoes on his Feet, and a Letter in his Hand, directed (ſuch is their Superſtition) to S. *Nicolas*, whom they deem to be the Porter of Heaven: an opinion doubtleſs very prejudicial to the Pope's and S. *Peter*'s Prerogatives.

This Country is not ſo populous as ſpacious. The Eaſtern parts are vexed with the *Tartars*, who, like *Æſop*'s Dog, will neither dwell there themſelves, nor ſuffer the *Moſcovites* to plant Colonies in them: the Weſtern parts almoſt as much moleſted by the *Swediſh* and *Polonian* Kings; the Southern by the *Turks* and *Precopenſes*; and the Northern by the coldneſs of the Air, which is of ſuch vehemency, that Water thrown up into the air will turn to Ice before it fall to the ground. The better to reſiſt the extremity of this Cold, not only the Clothes of this people, but their very Houſes, are lined with thick Furs. Every Gentleman or man of note hath in his Dwelling-houſe, a Stove or Hot-houſe, in which they keep as it were, to thaw themſelves. Such as travel on the way uſe often to rub their Noſe or Ears with Snow or Ice, to ſettle and recal the motive Spirits into thoſe parts, which otherwiſe they would be in danger to loſe; the ignorance of which preventing Chirurgery was not the leaſt cauſe that, in the year 1598, of 70000 *Turks* which made an Inrode into *Moſcovie*, 40000 were frozen to death. By reaſon of theſe extremities of Froſts and Cold, it is the Cuſtom of this people to lay the Bodies of their dead all the Winter long on heaps in the Belfrees of their Churches, where they lie without putrefying or any ill ſavour to the end of *March*; at what time the Air beginning to wax warm, and the earth to be fit for digging, each Family looks out their dead bodies, and takes care to bury them. This exceſs of Cold in the Air gave occaſion to *Caſtalian* in his *Aulicus* wittily, and not incongruouſly, to feign that if two men being ſomewhat diſtant talk together in the Winter, their words will be ſo frozen that they cannot be heard; but if the parties in the Spring return to the ſame place, their words will melt into the ſame order that they were frozen and ſpoken, and be plainly underſtood. Such is their Winter: neither is their Summer leſs miraculous. For the huge Seas of Ice which in a manner covered the whole ſurface of the Country, are at the firſt approach of the Sun ſuddenly diſſolved, the Water quickly dried up, and the Earth dreſſed in her holy-day Apparel: ſuch a mature growth of Fruits, ſuch flouriſhing of Herbs, ſuch chirping of Birds, as if here were a perpetual Spring. The reaſon of which ſtrange and ſudden alteration is conceived to be the long lying of the Snow on the face of the Earth, keeping it from the rigour of the Winter Froſts; which being diſſolved by the Sun in the beginning of the Spring, doth ſo throughly drench and ſoke the Ground, (being of a light and Sandy mold) and conſequently make it the more penetrable by the beams of the Sun ſhining hotly on it, that it forceth in a manner the Herbs and Plants to ſhoot forth in great plenty, and that too in a ſhorter time then can be imagined.

The whole Country generally is very much over-ſpred with Woods, parts of the great *Hercynian* Foreſt, heretofore over-running all the North, and ſtill more viſible here than in other places: either by reaſon of the Idleneſs of the people, naturally given to Sloth and Eaſe; or for that the Country is not populous enough to overcome them; or that there is already Ground enough for Tillage to ſupply their neceſſary uſes. For here do grow the goodlieſt and talleſt Trees of the World, through which, by reaſon of their thickneſs, the brightneſs of the Sun-beams can hardly pierce; affording ſhelter to great multitudes of Cattel, but of wild Beaſts eſpecially, whoſe Skins are better than their Bodies; as Bears, Marterns, Zibellines, Wolves, Black-Foxes, whoſe skins are of very great eſtimation. Of the Timber of theſe Trees are ſquared all neceſſaries both for Forts and Houſes; the Fortifications in this Country being made of huge Beams fatined together, (the Chinks filled with Earth) not eaſily ſhaken by Battery, though much ſubject to Fire. And out of them iſſueth an unſpeakable quantity of Pitch and Roſin, which are hence diſtilled: beſides an everlaſting Fountain of Wax and Honey; the Bees, without the Midwifery of the Art of Man, building their Hives or Houſes in the hollow Trees. Concerning this there goeth a Story (reported and believed for a certain truth) of a Countryman who accidentally had ſlipped down into a great hollow Tree, where he ſtood up to the breaſt in Honey, continuing there two days without other Suſtenance: at the end whereof a Bear coming to partake of the Booty, he laid hold of his Legs, and ſo terrified him with his Cries, that he made him leap out with the man at his heels. The Country yieldeth alſo great ſtore of Flax and Hemp, which is tranſported yearly into other Countries, (and would make them very excellent Cordage, if the people had any skill in Manufactures or Mechanical Arts) and in ſome places rich Paſtures, and ſuch ſtore of Corn, that therewith they do furniſh *Lapland* and the North parts of *Sweden*. Fiſh they have alſo in good plenty, which they ſalt and dry, and either vent it to the Merchant, or lay it up in ſtore for their Forts and Families. By which account it will appear that the principal Commodities which they ſend abroad are rich Furs, Flax, Hemp, Whales-greace, Honey, Wax, Pitch, Roſin, Nuts, Filberds and the like: which either the *Dutch* and *Engliſh* buy of them at the Port of S. *Nicholas*, or the *Armenians* at *Aſtracan* near the *Caſpian* Sea; giving them in return Cloth, Silks, Tapeſtry, and ſome other Merchandiſe, tranſported to the value of 500000 Rubbles yearly. Particularly of Wax 50000 Poad, (every Poad containing 40 *Engliſh* Pounds) of Tallow 100000 Poad, 100000 Hides, 100 Ships laden with Flax and Hemp, the reſt of their Commodities proportionably in the time of my Author; ſince whoſe time the Trade hereof hath been much increaſed.

This Country not improperly may be called (as by ſome it is) the Mother of Rivers. The chief of which are, 1. The *Don*, called *Tanais* by the old Geographers, and by them thought to be the only Boundary betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*; the Northern parts of this Country being then unknown. It diſburtheneth it ſelf into *Palus Mæotis*; and hath its Fountain not out of the *Riphæan* Mountains, as was thought of old, but out of a great Lake called *Iwanoweſero*, in the Foreſt of *Okonieskilies* or *Jephapinolies*, ſome 20 *Engliſh* miles from the City of *Tulla*; and having run a great way Eaſtward, turneth back again, and then proceedeth Southwards towards the *Mæotis*, as was ſaid before. 2. *Boryſthenes*, now called *Nieper*, whoſe ſpring was unknown unto *Herodotus*, but now diſcovered to be near *Dniperck*, a Village of *Moſcovy* ſpecially ſo called, in the Foreſt of *Wolkoniskie*. Whence paſſing South, and running by the Town of *Smolensko*, it receiveth many other Rivers, and amongſt them that of *Deſna* (by the ancient Writers called *Hypanis*) notwithſtanding, whoſe muddy waters it ſtill retains its natural Clearneſs and ſo falls into the *Euxine* Sea. 3. *Turuntus*, (ſo called

by *Ptolemie*) or *Duina* the leſs, (to difference it from *Duina* the greater) which riſing not far from the Head of *Boryſthenes*, out of the Lake of *Duina*, and waſhing the Walls of *Riga*, the chief Town of *Livonia*, loſeth it ſelf in the *Baltick* Sea. 4. *Duna*, or *Dwine*, (commonly called *Duina* the greater) ſo called from the meeting of two Rivers, the *Juga* and the *Sachan*, (whereof more hereafter) of which that of the longeſt courſe, not known unto the Ancients, hath its Head in the Province of *Permia*, and it falls into the Frozen or Northern Ocean at the Port of *S. Nicolas*. 5. *Occa*, or *Ocyne*, riſing in the Territory of *Miſceneck*, and making all the Country fruitful through which it paſſeth, emptieth it ſelf into the *Volga*. 6. *Volga*, by *Ptolemie* called *Rha*, by the *Tartars Edill*; which riſeth 25 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*, towards *Lituania*, and fetching a great compaſs in and out, after it hath ſwallowed up many leſſer Rivers, diſchargeth it ſelf with 70 Mouths into the *Caſpian* Sea, now called *Mar di Bachu*. Here are beſides theſe Rivers many notable Lakes, as thoſe of *Duina* and *Volga*, out of which the ſaid two Rivers iſſue; that called *Ilmen*, not far from *Novogrod* the great, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; that of *Ladoga*, 100 *Dutch* miles in length and 60 in breadth, in which are many pleaſant Iſlands; and that called *Bieloyeſero*, (*Lacus Albus* in *Latine*) about 12 *German* miles long and as many broad, into which 360 Rivers are ſaid to diſcharge their Streams; in the midſt whereof is a ſtrong Caſtle, ſaid to be impregnable, in which the Great Duke keeps the moſt part of his Treaſure, and into which he doth withdraw in the times of Danger and Sedition.

As for the Mountains of this Country, here are the *Montes Amadoci*, *Riphæi*, and *Hyperborei*, ſo much talked of and ſo little known amongſt the Ancients: a continual and craggy Chain of Hills running croſs *Sarmatia Europæa*, South and North, and thence Eaſtwards into *Aſiatica*. Beginning not far from the fall of *Boryſthenes* into the *Euxine*, they extend directly towards the North, and are there called *Montes Amadoci*; afterwards bending for a long ſpace towards the North-eaſt, they are called *Riphæi*; and then paſſing on directly Eaſt, by reaſon of their Northernly ſituation, called *Hyperborei*. And though Sir *Walter Raleigh* ſays, I know not on what authority, that there are no *Riphæan* Mountains in *rerum natura*: yet *Mercator* placeth them in this Tract, and telleth us, that in regard of their being always covered with Ice and Snow they are hardly paſſible: calling theſe and the ſaid *Hyperborei* (in his *Europa*) by the name of *Cingulum terræ*, or the *Girdle of the Earth*, a great part whereof (though known in divers places by different names) they do ſeem to compaſs.

It is divided, for the better Government hereof, into four parts, (by them termed *Chetfords*) and thoſe governed by four Lieutenants, not reſident upon their Charges, but attending on the Emperour's perſon whereſoever he goeth, and there holding their Courts, but eſpecially at *Moſco*, the prime Seat of the Empire, where from their Under-Deputies they receive the Complaints of their Provinces, and inform the Emperour's Council of the buſineſs, and from them again receive inſtruction for Reformation. But as to the Corography of it, it is divided into the Province of 1. *Muſcovie*, eſpecially ſo called. 2. *Smolensko*. 3. *Muſaiski*. 4. *Pleſcow*. 5. *Novogrod* the great, 6. *Corelia*. 7. *Biarmia*. 8. *Petzora*. 9. *Condora*. 10. *Obdora*. 11. *Jugria*. 12. *Severia*. 13. *Permia*. 14. *Rezan*. 15. *Wiatbka*. 16. *Caſan*. 17. *Aſtracan*. 18. *Novogordia inferior*. 19. The *Mordwits*, or *Mordua*. 20. *Worotine*. 21. *Tuver*. 22. *Wolodomir*. 23. *Dwina*, and 24 the *Ruſſian Iſlands*. Others of leſs note (of which there is no want) are reduced to theſe. In my Deſcription whereof I ſhall not be ſo exact and punctual as I have been hitherto; the Country not being much travelled by Strangers, nor any of the Natives ſuffered to go into Foreign Nations, or permitted (out of Jealouſies of State) to hold diſcourſe with the Embaſſadors of Neighbouring Princes, but only in the Emperour's hearing. By means whereof the Corography of this vaſt Empire is come but lamely to our hands; though the Power, Policy and Revenues of it, being Points diſcernible by the Miniſters of other Princes, and by the courſe and conduct of their Affairs, are as well known as thoſe of leſs diſtance. Which ſaid, we will firſt begin with *Moſcovie*, the prevailing Province, that which gives name to this whole Empire; with reference to which the Situation and Poſition of the reſt of the Provinces is ſet forth unto us in our Authors.

1. *MOSCOVIE.*

MOSCOVIE ſpecially ſo called is ſeated in the very Center of this Eſtate, and ſo more fit to order the Affairs thereof. It is the largeſt Province of the whole, extending from Eaſt to Weſt 600 *Dutch*, or 2400 *Engliſh* miles: ſo populous withal, that beſides 30000 *Boiares* or Gentlemen, bound to ſerve on horſe back at their own charges, (like the *Turks Timariots*) the Great Duke is able to raiſe 70000 Foot, (which is a great matter for a Country ſo little cultivated.)

The Soil hereof is ſtiff and clammy, but might be made more profitable than it is, were it well manured, or ploughed and ordered, as it is in all other Countries. For here, and in moſt parts elſe of this large Dominion, the people are accuſtomed to ſow no more of their Land than what they dig with the Spade, or can break up with a Stick very ſharply pointed; whereof they carry great numbers into the Field, that when one breaks they may uſe another.

Chief places in this Province are, 1. *Moſco*, the Imperial Seat, and the See of the Patriarch, ſo called of the River *Moſco* upon which it is ſituate. Exceedingly improved both in ſtate and beauty ſince the time that *Daniel* the fourth Lord of *Muſcovie*, removed the Seat-Royal hither from *Wolodomir*, where before it was; inſomuch that it was once grown to nine miles in compaſs, containing then 41500 Families: but being fired by the *Tartar Anno* 1571, (at what time there were burnt 80000 perſons) it is reduced to five miles only. The Houſes for the moſt part are of Wood and Dirt, the Streets very miry; without either Ditch, Wall, or Rampart, to defend it againſt an Enemy. Inſtead whereof there are two Caſtles in the outward parts of it, the one called *Kitagorod*, the other *Balſigorod*. It is environed with the River *Moſco*, and another Water called *Neglinna*, which here falls into it. It contains 16 Churches, moſt of them of the ſame materials as the Houſes are; and the Palace of the Great Duke, ſituate in the midſt hereof, (which for the greatneſs of it may be thought a little City:) fortified with 17 Towers, 3 Bulwarks, and a continual Garriſon (if the Great Duke be there) of 25000 men for the Guard of his perſon. 2. *Sloboda*, aa Biſhop's See, North-eaſt to *Moſco*, on the Banks of one of the greateſt Rivers which fall into the *Volga*. 3. *Ruſchow*, the Title of a Dukedom, fortified with a Caſtle of Wood, (of which ſtuff moſt of the Fortreſſes of this Country are made) ſituate 23 leagues from *Moſco* towards the Weſt, on the Banks of the *Volga*, which hath its fountain in the Territory and Precincts hereof. 4. *Jaroſlaw*, on the *Volga* alſo, a Town and Caſtle diſtant about 46 *Dutch* miles from *Moſco*; formerly the Eſtate and Patrimony of the ſecond Sons of the Great Duke, but united to the Royal Domain by *John Waſiliwich*, and by him added alſo to the Style Imperial. It is

alſo

alſo one of the Sees Epiſcopal. 5. *Ruſtow*, the See of one of the two Metropolitans, ſituate in a fruitful Soil, well ſtored with Fiſh, and yielding good plenty of Salt. One of the ancienteſt Principalities of all this Empire, and held accuſtomably by the ſecond Son of the Great Duke as a State diſtinct; but conquered by *John Waſiliwich*, *Anno* 1565, and added to the Style and Patrimony of the Great Duke himſelf, the younger Sons being from thenceforth put off with Penſions. 6. *Vologda*, a Biſhop's See, ſituate in a fenny and woody Country; very ſtrong by nature, and beautified with one of the ſtrongeſt Caſtles of all this Eſtate, where the Great Duke doth ſometime lay a part of his Treaſure; that part eſpecially which is raiſed of the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchandiſe, which, being landed at the Port of S. *Nicolas*, is firſt brought hither, where having paid a new Toll or Cuſtom, it goeth on to *Moſco*. Betwixt this City and that of *Jaroſlaw* before mentioned, for the ſpace of an hundred *Engliſh* miles, where ſtood in former times 50 goodly Villages, (ſome of them of a mile in length) the Country in a manner is left wholly deſolate and without Inhabitant; abandoned by the people by reaſon of the inſupportable Preſſures which were laid upon them.

2. *SMOLENSKO*. 3. *MOSAISKI*. 4. *PLESCOW*.

THE Dukedom of *SMOLENSKO* is ſituate on the courſe of the River *Nieper* or *Boryſthenes*, full of many thick Foreſts, from whence they carry a great number of rich Skins yearly. Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Smolensko*, ſituate on the *Nieper*, a Biſhop's See, about 80 *Polonian* miles from *Moſco*, begirt on every ſide with Mountains and ſpacious Woods. A large Town, and of great eſteem in theſe parts of the Empire, and giving name unto this Province; which hitherto was governed in a free condition under the Patronage and Protection of the King of *Poland*, in the time of *Alexander* a late King thereof; but by *Baſilius* the Great Duke conquered and added unto this Eſtate: taken by the *Polanders* in the year 1610, after a long ſiege of two years, with the ſlaughter of 200000 *Muſcovites*, and the loſs of many of the Beſiegers; but reſtored again to *Michael Fedovitius* the Great Duke, on the making of the Peace between them. 2. *Biela*, a Principality of it ſelf, having the honour of a Caſtle, and reckoned in the uſual Style of the Knez or Emperour.

MOSAISKI hath in length 350 *Italian* miles, and as much in breadth; ſo called from *Moſaiski*, the chief Town hereof, and a Biſhop's See; taken, together with the Territory or Province appertaining to it, from *Alexander* King of *Poland*, by *John* the Great Duke, Father of *Baſilius* before mentioned.

PLESCOW, or *PSKOW*, contains in length 350 *Italian* miles, in breadth 230 or thereabouts, ſo called from *Pleſcow*, or *Pskow*, the chief City of it, and a Biſhop's See, great, powerful, and well walled about, the only walled City of all this Empire: ſo large within the Walls, that when it was beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland*, there were in it for defence thereof 70000 Foot and 7000 Horſe, beſides the natural Inhabitants of it, which in all ordinary computation muſt be many more. It belonged formerly to the *Poles*, in the right of the Dukedom of *Lituania*; taken from them by *Baſilius* the Great Duke of *Muſcovie*, *Anno* 1509, by whom and his Succeſſors it is uſed in the Royal Style.

5. *NOVOGORD*.

NOVOGORD, or *NOVOGROD*, is one of the largeſt Provinces or Dukedoms in all *Ruſſia*, bordering on *Livonia*, towards *Sinus Finnicus* or the Gulf of *Finland*. A colder Country and leſs fruitful than that of *Muſcovy*, becauſe ſituate ſomewhat farther North: the longeſt Summer day in *Moſco* not being above 18 hours; whereas in *Novogrod*, the chief City hereof, it is very near 20. By conſequence, the Winter-nights being of that length muſt make the Air exceeding cold, and the Soil as comfortleſs. Here is in this Province the great lake *Ilmen*, ſpoken of before, 80 *Italian* miles in compaſs; as alſo that called *Ladoga*, before alſo mentioned.

Towns of moſt eſtimation in it are, 1. *Novogrod* it ſelf, the wealthieſt and goodlieſt City of all the North, affirmed to be in greatneſs not inferiour to *Rome*; called therefore *Novogrod the great*, (to difference it from another of the ſame name near unto *Wolodomir*:) an Archbiſhop's See, and one of the four Mart-Towns of the *Hanſe*-Merchants, reſorted to from all parts for the Trade of *Muſcovie*, brought thither by Land, and thence tranſported through the *Baltick* to moſt parts of Chriſtendom. So confident were they in thoſe times of their power and ſtrength, that they uſed to ſay, that *Men could do nothing againſt God and them*: but they found the contrary, when taken from the Crown of *Poland* by the Great Duke of *Muſcovie*. The Trade hereof is ſince much decayed, by the finding out of the North-eaſt paſſage to the Port of *S. Nicolas*, where the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* Merchants barter with the *Muſcovite*. Yet ſtill it keeps the reputation of the principal City; ſituate on the River *Naf*, which the *Dutch* call *Ny*. The Buildings are for the moſt part of Wood and Clay. It is diſtant from *Moſco* 120 *Dutch* miles, and about 200 from the main body of the *Baltick*; betwixt which and this City lieth the whole Bay of *Finland*, the Entrances whereof upon the *Duina* (which leads towards *Novogrod*) are fortified which the ſtrong Towns and Garriſons of *Narva* and *Revel*, both in the hands of the K. of *Sweden*; which is another great hinderance to the Trade of this Town. 2. *Narva*, on the North-Bank of *Duina*, where it falls into the Bay of *Finland* or *Sinus Finnicus*, in the Province or Territory of *Wichidaw*: heretofore reckoned of as a part of *Livonia*; but being taken by *Baſilius* the Great Duke, with the reſt of this Country, and the Town of *Novogrod* it ſelf, *Anno* 1477, it was impregnably fortified by the care of his Son *Waſiliwich*, who for a reward unto the Architect, being a *Polonian*, put out both his Eyes, to diſable him from building the like again. But having left all the Natives in their own Habitations, without abating either their ſtrength or number, the Town and Caſtle not long after was betrayed to the King of *Sweden*, who ſtill holds it. 3. *Pozow*, or *Pozovia*, and 4. *Volocolue*; two ſtrong Pieces, ſituate in the Borders againſt the *Polanders*. 5. *Vobſco*, beſieged by *Stephen* King of *Poland* with an Army of 100000 men; who was forced to retire without taking it, with the loſs of many of his beſt Captains and common Souldiers. It is diſtant from *Novogrod* 28 *Dutch* miles: the Country about it is called *Volki*; where they ſay for certain, that all Cattel which are brought thither, of what hair or colour ſoever they be, upon a little ſtay there become all white. The People of this Tract have a Language (or ſome Dialect rather) peculiar only to themſelves. 6. *Juanogorod*, a ſtrong Caſtle not far from *Vobſco*, 40 miles from *Novogrod*, a Frontier-Caſtle againſt the *Swedes* garriſoned in *Narva*, to repulſe whoſe Inrodes it was built.

In this Country, and not far from the Town of *Novogrod*, was fought that memorable Battel betwixt the

the *Sarmatians* and their Slaves. For when the *Asiatick Scythians* went to plant themſelves in *Media*, and the parts adjoyning, ſome of the *Sarmatians*, then Inhabitants of this Tract, went along for company. Their long ſtay cauſed their Wives, deſpairing of their return, to comfort themſelves with their Slaves both at bed and board; to whom they brought a luſty increaſe of Youths: who being well grown, and hearing that the *Sarmatians* were upon their coming back, joyned together againſt them; the Slaves, to retain their Wealth and Freedom which they were poſſeſſed of, the Women, for fear of the diſpleaſure of their Husbands, and the Young men, for defence of their Fathers and Mothers. With joynt Forces they go out to meet them before their entry into the Country; neither are the Maſters ſlow in their advance, hoping to take them unprovided. At *Novogrod* they have the firſt ſight of each other. The Maſters, ſcorning to defile their Swords on ſo ignoble an Enemy, aſſault them with Whips; and by the terrour thereof got a ſignal Victory. In memory of which Battel, the people of that City have ever ſince ſtamped their money with the figure of an Horſeman ſhaking a Whip in his hands: And it is the Cuſtom of all *Muſcovie*, that the Maids in the time of wooing ſend ſuch a Whip, curiouſly wrought by her own hands, to that Suitor whom ſhe reſolves on for her Husband, in token of her future Subjection to him. But of this more hereafter in another place.

6. *GORELIA.* 7. *BIARMIA.*

SIxty *Dutch* miles from *Novogrod* lieth the Province called *CORELIA*, extending Northwards as far as to a Branch of the Frozen Sea, where the longeſt Day is 20 hours and a half; the Nights proportionable in the Winter make it cold and barren. It bordereth on the Eaſt of *Finland*, from which it is parted by a long and rough ridge of Mountains. By reaſon of which Situation betwixt two great Princes, the people are enforced to pay Tribute to both, though properly the Subjects of the Great Duke of *Muſcovie*. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Kexholm*, or *Hexholm*, in the hands of the *Swedes*, and 2. *Corelnburg*; the chief Towns of the Province, belonging with the reſt of the Country unto the *Moſcovite*. By ſome this Province is made a part of the Eaſtern *Lapland*; but, I think, erroneouſly: the people having ſome good Towns, and ſavouring of ſome Humanity, neither of which are known or heard of amongſt the *Laplanders*. 3. *Nodenburg*, on the mouth of a Lake, which by the River called *Warfuga* emptieth it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Nicolas*.

On the North-ſide of that Branch or Arm of the Frozen Ocean which bounds *Corelia* lieth the Weſtern part of *Lapland*, which by a proper name is called *BIARMIA*: the Country of the *Dikiloppi*, or wild *Lappians*, as the *Moſcovites* call them, to whoſe Duke or Emperour they are ſubject. We had their Character before when we were in *Swethland*, nor ſhall we need to repeat it here: as Barbarous and as rude as the worſt ſort of thoſe mentioned in *Scricfinnia*, and as Idolatrous as they; but more (if more may be) inclined to Luſtfulneſs than the others. In the Winter Solſtice, when the Sun entreth into *Capricorn*, they have Night for three whole months together: during which time, lurking in their Caves, they have leiſure to conſult with the Prince of Darkneſs; being very great Sorcerers, able (as ſome affirm) to raiſe Winds, Clouds, Tempeſts, and do many ſtrange things. Towns there are none. Some Sheds and Cabbins on the Sea-coaſts, patched up by the Sailors of their reception and refreſhment as they come on Land, and named according to their fancies, but not here conſiderable.

8. *PETZORA.* 9. *CONDORA.* 10. *OBDORA.* 11. *JUGRIA.*

OPpoſite to *Biarmia*, or *Weſt-Lapland*, on the other ſide of the Bay, leading towards the Port of S. *Nicolas*, lieth a large Promontory or Head-land, ſtretching out far into the North, beyond the *Arctick*, comprehending in it 4 Provinces of the *Ruſſian* Empire; that is to ſay, *Petzora*, *Condora*, *Obdora*, and *Jugria*: belonging formerly to the *Tartars*, but won from them of late years by the *Ruſſian* Emperours; extending by that means their Territories to the River *Ob*, but not a whit improving them in Power or Patrimony. Howſoever ſomewhat muſt be ſaid of them, becauſe parts of this great Body which we are to diſſect.

PETZORA, ſo called from a River of that name, is fenced on every ſide by Mountains and unpaſſable Rocks, extending Northwards to the Sea, and croſſed with a vaſt Chain of Hills, part of the *Hyperborei*, ſpoken of before: ſo high, that a certain man, having travelled in the aſcent of them 17 days together, is ſaid to have returned back again, deſpairing to attain the top of them: covered in the Winter-time with perpetual Snows, in the Summer with as ſcorching Heats, by the continual lying of the Sun on all parts thereof. The people are of a plain and ſimple nature, and received the *Ruſſian* Faith and Empire at one time together, *Anno* 1518. The chief Town of it is *Petzora*, or *Pechora*, at the fall of that River into the Sea; a ſmall Town, but having three Churches in it: the people whereof, though otherwiſe ſufficiently ſimple, as before is ſaid, do in the Summer-time catch Partridge, Ducks, Swans, Geeſe, and other Fowl, which they ſalt and lay by till the Winter, and then live upon them. So good a Tutor is the Belly, that the Poet did not unfitly give it the titles of *Artis Magiſter* and *Ingenii largitor Venter*: whereof this may ſerve for one example.

CONDORA lieth on the North of *Petzora*, more near the Pole; by conſequence is a colder Country, and of worſe condition; one half of the Year being continual Day, and the other half as long a Night. The people are univerſally Idolaters, worſhipping ſome Images (or Idols) in the ſhape of a Man, others in that of Bears, Wolves, *&c.* which they adorn with the richeſt Furs they can get, and hide them in their Caves for fear of the *Ruſſes*; who, if they chance to light upon them, as they hunt thoſe parts for Sables, Foxes and Bevers, take away their Furs, and beſtow a greater heat upon them in Fires. The chief Town hereof is *Puſtozera*, over againſt *Nova Zemla*; on or near the great Lake called *Ozera*, whence it hath the name; ſituate in the 68. Degree of Northern Latitude, 50 minutes over.

OBDORA, ſo called from the River *Ob*, on both ſides of whoſe Banks it lieth, is the moſt North-eaſtern Province of all theſe Dominions; won to the Obedience of the *Ruſſes* in the Reign of *Theodore* the Son of *John*, Great Duke of *Moſcovie*. At what time the people had no Cities, lived in Hoords or Companies, ate the Beaſts they took, knew no Corn nor Bread. They were then very good Archers, ſharpning their Arrows with Fiſh-bones; with which bones and the Sinews of the Beaſts they ſowed Furs together for their Clothing; which they wear inward in the Winter, outward in the Summer, covering their Houſes with Elk-skins. By this *Theodore* were ſome Caſtles built on the River-ſide, to which he ſent condemned perſons, and brought it into the form of a petit Kingdom. But his Succeſſor *Boris* built *Tooma*, the chief Town hereof, with divers other Towns on both ſides of the Water, not worth naming here. But notwithſtanding this Subjection to the *Moſcovite*, they continue ſtill

in

in their old Idolatry, worshipping an ancient Idol in form of an old Woman, holding in each Arm a Child, and a third at her feet, called by them *Zlata Baba*, or the *Golden old Wife*; to which they offer precious Furs, sacrifice Harts, and therewith do consult touching things to come. But some account this for a Fable, or a meer mistake.

JUGRIA, or *JUHAR*, lieth also on the Northern Seas, but more South than either of the other, betwixt *Petzora* or *Pechora*, and the Province of *Dwina*: the longest Day in Summer being not above 21 hours, or not fully that. The people are for the most part Idolaters, and worship the same Images as do those of *Obdora*: affirmed by some to be the Progenitors of the present *Hungarians*, who, Comming out of this Country, over ran all *Pannonia*, and there fixed their Dwellings. For proof of which it is affirmed that they spake the old *Hungarian* Language, not used but in this Country and the North parts of *Hungary*, betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiscus*: which more learned men affirm to be the *Jazygian*, the Language of the *Jazyges*, who anciently possessed that Country in the times of the *Romans*. But leaving this dispute to another place, certain it is that they are subject to the *Moscovite*, but so poor and miserable a people, that they have few Towns, and not many Houses; and so bare of money, that in stead thereof they pay Furs for Tribute to their Emperour.

12. *SEVERIA*. 13. *PERMIA*.
14. *REZAN*.

SEVERIA, or *SIBIOR*, as the *Moscovites* call it, lieth in a long Tract on the Banks of the River *Ob* or *Oby*, South of *Obdora* and the rest of the four last Provinces. The Country is very fruitful, and abounding with all things necessary, notwithstanding that there be great Desarts, and some Forests also; but those Forests well stored with black Foxes, Ermines, Sables, and the like wild Beasts, which yield more profit by their rich Furs, than any more fertile Country doth by its Corn and Fruits. Insomuch that in the year 1589 there were collected out of this Province only, in the way of Tribute for the Emperour, 466 Timber of Sables, (every Timber containing 40 Skins) five Timber of Marterns, 180 Cases of black Foxes, (every Case containing 40 Skins) besides other Commodities. The Woods also do offer good plenty of Honey, and the Plains of Herbage, well watered with the River *Sem*, which falleth into the *Desna*, and both together into that of the *Nieper*, or *Borysthenes*. There are in it many Towns and Castles, the principal whereof are, 1. *Sibier*, on the West side of the River *Ob*, which gives name to the Province. 2. *Branki*, not far from the great Forest from hence named. 3. *Starodus*, 4. *Potuvolo*, and 5. *Czernigo*. [*Here by mistake the two Provinces of* Siberia *and* Severia *(which differ as the farthest North-east and South-west points of* Muscovia, *betwixt which there is a vast Tract of ground) are confounded, part of the Towns belonging to one, part to the other; as do the two Rivers, the* Ob, *and the* Nieper.]

The people hereof, by reason of their continual Skirmishes with the neighbouring *Tartars*, are the most Warlike Nation of all the *Russes*: heretofore governed by a Duke or Prince of their own, who at the first acknowledged no Superiour; but afterwards was severally and successively tributary to the *Lituanians*, the *Polanders*, and the *Moscovites*; and finally, the last Duke, being falsly accused of Treason, was outed of his Estate by *Basilius* the Great Duke, who added it to the rest of his Dominions, as it hath continued ever since.

PERMIA is situate on the South-west of *Sibior*, or *Severia*, a large Province, distant 250 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*; so called from *Perm*, or *Permia*, the chief Town hereof, situate on the River *Vischore*, or *Vistorna*. The second Town of note is called *Siewiarskey*. The people (as also those of *Sibior*) are of the *Moscovite* Religion, and live most by hunting wild Beasts, whose Flesh they eat, and make good Merchandise of their Skins, many of which they pay yearly to the Great Duke in way of Tribute, who makes a good Commodity of them, selling them to the Merchant at excessive rates. They have no Corn of their own growth, nor will they buy any elsewhere; but, in stead of Bread, eat the flesh of Stags dried and prepared in the Sun; speaking a Language of their own, different from the rest of the *Russes*; and in stead of Horses and Oxen, make use of great Dogs and Stags, whom they train up to draw their Sleds from one place to another. There is good store of Woods amongst them; but they want Cedars, and they have paid dearly for that want. For *John Vasiliwich*, meaning to pick a Quarrel with them, sent to them for certain loads of Cedar-wood, whereof he knew there grew none in their Country; and upon word returned that they had no such Wood, he fined them at 12060 Rubbles.

REZAN, a great and goodly Province, is situate betwixt the River *Tanais* and that of *Occa*; the most fruitful Country of all *Russia*, and (if report be true) of the whole World also: it being credibly affirmed that one grain of Corn doth bring forth six Ears; the Stalks hereof growing so thick, that an Horse can hardly pass through them, or a Quail flie out of them, but with very much difficulty. Here is also great plenty of Fruits, better than are to be found elsewhere in *Russia*; together with good store of Honey, Fish, Fowl, and other Commodities; besides Ermins, Bevers, and the like, common in these Countries. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Tulla*, famous for the Fountain or Spring-head of the River *Tanais*, which ariseth near it. 2. *Colluga*, well garrisoned for fear of the *Crim-Tartar*. 3. *Cossira*, a Bishop's See; as is also 4. *Rezan*, the principal of the Province, which it giveth name to; seated upon the Banks of the River *Occa*. A Country populous and well-planted, affording to the Great Duke 15000 *Boiarei*, or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back, and betwixt 30 and 40000 Foot.

15. *WIATHKA*. 16. *CASAN*.
17. *ASTRACAN*.

South-east of *Rezan*, beyond the banks of the River *Kamme*, and about 150 *Dutch* miles from *Mosco*, lieth the Province called *WIATHKA*; fenny and barren, but well stored with Fish and Honey, and wild Beasts good plenty. Heretofore subject to the *Tartars*, and then the receptacle or retreat of all fugitive Servants, here very gladly entertained: but the *Tartarians* being expulsed, it was made subject by *Basilius* to the Dukes of *Moscovie*. I do not read of any Towns which should be here, which makes me think that they do still retain so much of the *Tartar* with them as to live in Hoords and Companies, without any fixt Dwellings, or at the best in scattered Houses, not hitherto united into Towns and Villages; except it be the Town of *Wiatbka* it self, built since the subjection of it to the *Moscovite*, and made a Garrison, to defend these out-parts of this Empire against the Incursions of the *Tartars*.

CASAN, a Kingdom formerly of *Tartaria deserta*, hath on the South-east of *Wiatbka*, the most civil people of the *Tartars*, but owing much of that Civility to their conversation with the *Muscovites*, (though none of the civillest themselves,) tilling their Lands and building Houses where they may with safety. For although

the

the Soil hereof be tolerably fruitful and fit for Habitation, yet the Country for the most part is desolate and ill inhabited; partly by reason of some vast Desarts, lying betwixt the Cities of *Casan* and *Astracan*; but principally in regard of the *Crim-Tartar*, who will not suffer the *Moscovite* to plant it with Colonies of his own people, nor the Natives to live there in quiet, except only in the Western parts, where they are protected by Garrisons. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Casan*, upon the River *Volga*, which gives name to the Kingdom; since the Subjection of this People to the great Duke, and their Conversion to the Faith, made a Bishop's See. 2. *Surick*, upon the River *Sure*, in the middle of the vast Desarts betwixt *Casan* and *Astracan*; built by *Basilius* the Great Duke, for a Stage or Resting-place for Merchants and Travellers, that there they might repose themselves without fear of the *Tartars*. The people hereof had once a King of their own, as before was said; the last of which named *Chelealcesk*, submitted himself unto *Basilius* the Great Duke, and became tributary; but afterward revolting, he was vanquished *John Vasiliwich*, An. 1553, and this Kingdom thereupon united to the Empire of *Russia*: the Emperours since that time writing themselves *Czar Casanski*, or King of *Casan*. And possible enough it is that *Basilius*, who first made it tributary, might from hence take the name of *Basilius Casan*, according to the custom of the ancient *Romans*.

Under the Government hereof are the *Czeremissi*, a People that live in great Forests without any Houses, living for the most part of Honey and the flesh of wild Beasts, with the Skins of which they are apparelled. Their Language is different from the rest. They are swift of foot, and very good Archers, carrying their Bows in their hands continually, and practising their Children so timely in it, that they give them nothing to eat (after such an age) until they can hit a White which is set before them.

ASTRACAN lieth also South-east of *Casan*, more near unto the *Caspian* Sea; parted from *Casan* by those Desarts spoken of before, but situate on the same Branch of the River *Volga*; which, having run a course of 2000 *Italian* miles, dischargeth it self into this Sea with no less then 70 Mouths or Chanels. It took this name from *Astracan* the chief Town hereof, situate about 20 *Italian* miles from the fall of one of those 70 Mouths or Chanels into the *Caspian*: by the commodiousness whereof it is one of the best Towns of Trade in all these Dominions, the *Armenian* Merchants coming hither, and bartering their Silks and Manufactures for the Furs and other natural Commodities of the *Russes* or *Moscovites*. A Kingdom formerly, but a Kingom of less esteem than that of *Casan*; conquered (together with it) by *Basilius* the Great Duke *Anno* 1494, and by him made Christian. But afterwards revolting, they were more absolutely subdued by *John Vasiliwich*, who brought into the field against them no fewer then 120000 Horse and 200000 Foot, (enough to over-run a far greater Country) and yet had hardly got the better, but for the terrour of his great Ordnance, which the others wanted. Upon that Victory it was made a Member of the Empire of *Russia*, the Emperour whereof hath since styled himself the King of *Astracan*.

18. *NOVOGORDIA Inferior.*
19. The *MORDWITS.*

BUT it is now time we return toward *Europe*, out of which we have wandred up and down in the skirts of *Asia*, in tracing out the several Provinces of this Empire, since our first crossing over the Bay of *Grandvic*, or *Saint Nicolas*, into the Country of *Petzora*. But in our way we must first take a view of the Dukedom of *Novogrod* the *Lower*, so called to difference it from *Novogrod* (surnamed the *Great*) spoken of before; situate almost in the midst betwixt *Casan* and *Mosco*, distant from the last 100 *Polonian* miles, and 60 miles from the Borders of the other; every *Polonian* mile being reckoned at four *Italian*. The Country is generally very rich both for Tillage and Pasturage, inferiour unto none in all this Estate but *Rezan* and *Wolodomir* only. So called from *Novogrod*, the chief Town situate at the Confluence of the *Occa* and *Volga*; besides which it hath the neighbourhood of a very great Lake, which storeth it plentifully with Fish. A City of great esteem in all this Empire, partly for the great number of Houses, in that not easily equalled by any other; partly for an impregnable Castle, cut out of the main Rock with incredible charges in the time of *Basilius* the Great Duke; but principally for a stately and magnificent Temple, built above 600 years ago, in imitation (or emulation, as some say) of the famous Church of S. *Sophia* in *Constantinople*. To this Town the Story of the *Scythian* or *Sarmatian* Slaves ought, in my mind, to be ascribed; though commonly reported of the other *Novogrod*, in the West parts of this Empire. My reason is, because it is not likely that the *Sarmatians* dwelling on the Borders of the *Baltick* Sea should cross all this Country, to join with the *Asiatick Scythians*, so remote from them, in a needless War, which those of this Tract might well do, as near Neighbours to them, if not of the same Nation or Extraction with them: nor is it probable that the Slaves would suffer their Masters to waste all the Country as far as to the *Baltick* Sea, and to increase their strength by the Spoil thereof, before they met them in the Field to give them Battel.

Subject to the Estate hereof are the *MORDWIT Tartars*, lying on the South, betwixt the *Volga* and the *Don* or *Tanais*, where it beginneth to return Westwards towards the *Euxine*. A people much of the same nature with the *Czeremissois*, but that they have some Villages and scattered Houses, which the other either want, or else care not for. They are Idolaters for the most part (and the rest *Mahometans*) carrying their Idols in their Carts whersoever they go; worshipping that Beast all day which they first see in the morning, and swearing by it for that day, as their chiefest Deity.

20. *WOROTINE.* 21. *TUVER.*
22. *WOLODOMIR.*

AND now again we are in *Europe*, where the Great Duke hath almost as many Titles as Towns with Territories. Four of them (besides some before) are either situate in the Province of *Moscovy*, or else so intermingled with the Towns thereof, that they may easily be taken (or mistaken) for Members of it. The principal are,

WOROTINE, seated on the West side of the River *Occa*, a distinct Dukedom of it self; so called from *Worotin* the chief City of it, built upon that River, about 3 *Dutch* miles from *Colluga* in the Province of *Rezen*, lying on the farther Bank thereof; beautified with a strong Castle, and a pleasant Soil. The 2. *Miscenecck*, the next Town of note, remarkable for the Head of the River *Occa*, which ariseth in the fields adjoyning.

TUVER, or *OTUVER*, as some call it, is a large and goodly Country lying along the Banks of the River *Volga*: so populous, that it is said to contain 40000 *Boiares* or Gentlemen fit to serve on horseback, and double that number of the common or inferiour sort. It gives the Title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and is so called from *Tuver* the chief Town thereof, and a Bishop's See; affirmed to be a fairer and more stately City than *Mosco* it self, from which it is distant 36 *Dutch* miles.

WOLO-

WOLODOMIR is one of the most fruitful Countries in all *Russia*, not parallel'd by many Countries in the World; the Soil here (if all be true which is said of it) yielding such an Increase, that many times the Husbandman hath twenty, and sometimes twenty five, for one. It gives the title of a Duke to the *Russian* Emperour, and hath precedency before *Moscovy* in the Style Imperial. So called from *Wolodomir*, the chief City of it, and a Bishop's See, and that so named from the Founder, who probably was the same *Valadomir* (one of the first Kings of the *Russes*) who married *Helena* the Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, Emperour of *Constantinople*. The City is situate 36 *Polonian* miles on the East of *Mosco*, anciently the chief Seat and Residence of the Great Duke, and so continued till the time of *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, who first translated it to *Mosco*, that from thence he might more easily confront and oppose the *Tartars*, with whose Irruptions and Invasions both he and his Predecessors had long been troubled. Under the Government hereof is the City of *Susdali*, of great esteem, and very well peopled as long as the Royal Seat remained at *Wolodomir*, betwixt which and *Mosco* it is seated. After it fell into decay, and being once destroyed by the *Tartars*, could never since recover its ancient Lustre; having now little to uphold its reputation but a Bishop's See.

23. *DWINA.*

DWINA, so called from the chief Town, is situate on the Confluence of two Rivers, *Juch* and *Sachona*, whence it hath the name; *Dwine* in the Language of that Country signifying *two*, as *twain* doth with us amongst Country-people. A Country of great extent, but exceeding barren, which makes the Villages hereof to stand very thin, the Towns (considering the great compass of it) to be very few, and the Inhabitants for the most part to live upon dried Fish and the Flesh of wild Beasts, which they have no want of. The chief Commodity is Salt, with which they use to furnish the neighbouring Provinces, and provide such Necessaries for themselves as they stand in need of. Chief Towns hereof are, 1. *Dwine*, spoken of before, situate in the midst of the Province, on the meeting of the said two Rivers, which here united into one Stream take the name of *Dwine*, or *Dwina*, the greater; known by that name until its fall into the Northern Ocean in the Bay of *Granvic*. 2. *Sagan*, so called of the River (one of the two which makes the *Dwine*) upon which it is seated. 3. *Colmagro*. 4. *Pinnegue*, two strong Castles.

Unto this Province (because I know not else how to dispose of them) I must reduce these four Towns following: that is to say, 1. *Usting*, a Bishop's See, situate on the Western side of the River, over against the Town of *Dwine*, and in a Country so ill furnished with Necessaries, that the people eat dried Fish instead of Bread, but have Salt enough to season it from those of *Dwine*. 2. *Cargapol*, a Bishop's See also, on the same side of the River that *Dwina* is of. 3. S. *Nicolas*, a well-known Port, and a Bishop's See; situate at the influx of *Dwina* into the Gulf of *Granvicus*, or the Bay of S. *Nicolas*, from hence denominated. A Town much traded since the discovery of the North-east passage by the *English*, and the removal of theirs and the *Dutch* Traffick from *Novogrod* hither; from hence dispersed with more ease and speed into all the parts of this vast Empire. 4. *S. Michael*, on the Sea side, commonly called *Archangel*, a Town of great Trade, by the *English* especially, who have of late here fixed their Staple, to the great enriching of the place; by reason whereof the *English* Merchants have not only great Privileges and Immunities (as the Authors of so great a benefit unto this Estate) not granted to others, but the whole Nation have found better and more noble entertainment from them than any others have received. The cause of which was primarily the great opinion which their Emperours had of Q. *Elizabeth*, who held very good correspondence with them, continued ever since by mutual Embassies on both sides; and secondly, the conformable Behaviour of the *English* themselves, so acceptable to those Barbarians (both Prince and People) that when *John Vasilivich* nailed the Hat of another foreign Embassador to his Head, for his too much perverseness, he used our Sir *Thomas Smith* with all kindness imaginable. Another time, when the Jesuite *Possevine* began to perswade with him to approve of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*; upon the information of the *English* Embassador, that the Pope was a proud Prelate, and would make Princes kiss his feet, he grew into such a rage, that the *Jesuite* was afraid he would have beat out his Brains. But to return again to the Port of *S. Nicolas*; it is so called from an Abbey there built unto that Saint, the Tutelary Saint and local Patron of the Nation. Which said, I will set sail from this Port to the *Russian Islands*, and see what may be said of them to our present purpose.

24. The *RUSSIAN Islands.*

THE *RUSSIAN Islands* are but two, both of them in the Northern or Frozen Ocean, on the Coasts of this Country; that is to say, 1. Sir *Hugh Willoughbie's Island*, and *Nova Zemla*; both subject (if to any) to the *Knez*, or Great Duke of *Moscovie*.

1. *WILLOUGHBIE'S ISLAND* was so called from Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, because he first discovered it, *Anno* 1553, and was hereabouts found frozen to death the next year following. For being employed by the Merchants of *London* in the time of King *Edward* the sixth, to find out a new way to *Moscovy*, *Cathaie* and *China*, he proceeded so far as to this Island, (situate almost opposite to the Bay of *S. Nicolas*) where the Weather proved so extreme, and the Frosts so vehement, that his Ship was set fast in the Ice, and all his people with himself frozen to death, in which condition they were found the next year after, with an exact description of their Voyage and Fortunes. Notwithstanding which disastrous beginning, the Enterprise was pursued by some noble Adventurers, as *Jenkinson*, *Burroughs*, *Pet. Jackman*, and others of the *English* Nation, who opened the way as far as to the River *Ob*, (the East Bounder of *Russia*;) but by reason of the length of the way, the vast floating Islands of Ice, and perpetual Nights for many months together in Winter, could advance no farther.

2. *NOVA ZEMLA*, situate on the East of *Willoughbie's Island*, opposite to *Pustozera* in *Condora* before mentioned, was first discovered by such Adventurers as followed *Willoughbie's* Design. Famous for nothing but a race of short-statured men, not above four foot high, a degree above the height of *Pygmies*: not yet so far discovered as to know any thing thereof, but by the relation of the *Russes*, who affirm the Inhabitants to have neither Religion, nor Civility, nor the Prescripts of any Law; but that they worshipped the Sun, Moon, and Northern Star, to which they offer a yearly Sacrifice of their Deer; that the Island is woody, desart, and not easie for travel, having in it neither green Bough nor Grass, yet harbouring great store of Bears, and such ravenous and dangerous Beasts. Found experimentally true by *William Barrentson* and his Associates, employed by the *Hollanders*

for this Discovery, *Anno* 1594, and 1596, in which last year, after many dreadful Combats with huge flakes of Ice, they were forced to winter in this Island, where they built an House, as well to preserve themselves from being buried in Snow, as from being devoured by the Bears, (some of them 13 foot in length) which, with the loss of two of their company devoured by those savage creatures, they at last effected; some of them coming home in safety the *October* following. And though they seemed to give some hope that a way might be found unto *Cathaie* on the North of this Island, (themselves having gone as far North as the 81. Degree of Latitude, within 9 of the Pole) yet it is generally conceived that the undertaking is unprofitable, the success impossible.

And so I leave it, to return to the Story of *Russia*, called anciently by the name of *Sarmatia Europæa*, but known no farther Northwards than the Head of *Tanais*. And for *Sarmatia Europæa*, it was bounded in the time of *Ptolemy* by the *Baltick* Sea and some *Terra Incognita* on the North, the *Jazyges Metanastæ* (now *Transylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*) upon the South, the River *Vistula*, or *Wessel*, which divided it from *Germany*, upon the West, and the *Tanais* upon the East. Beyond that, all along the Banks of the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mare Caspium*, and as far North as any Conquerour had gone, it was called *Sarmatia Asiatica*: the Countries farther Eastward being then called *Scythia*. By which accompt, as *Russia*, containeth not all *Sarmatia Europæa*, of which *Prussia* and the rest of the incorporate Provinces of *Poland* pass for a part; so neither is it totally comprehended in it, extending beyond *Tanais* into *Asiatica*. The ancient Inhabitants, called by a general name *Sarmatæ*, by the *Greeks Sauromatæ*, were subdivided, for so much of this part of it as was then made known, into the *Agathyrsi*, *Rutheni*, *Pagiritæ*, dwelling in the North; the *Osyli*, *Alauni*, *Roxolani*, &c. dwelling in the South. Amongst many other barbarous Nations, these were some of the principal. And from these *Roxolani*, as the principal of all the rest, *Matthias à Michou*, a learned *Polander*, doth derive the Original of the *Rosses*, (which we now call the *Russians*;) seconded herein by the more learned *Bochartus*, who proveth out of ancient Authors, that the Inhabitants of *Taurica Chersonesus* (from which the passage into this Country is both short and easie) have been formerly called *Rhos*. Ταύρους τοὺς Ῥῶς καλουμένους, *Tauros vocari gentes Rhos*, as he saith from *Tzetzes*. Which *Ros*, or *Rhoses*, first mingling with the *Alani*, a *Sarmatian* People, might get the name of *Roxolani*; and afterwards possessing the more Northern Countries, or mingling with the *Rossi*, of Mount *Taurus* (from whom those of *Taurica* descended) in their enterprizes on *Constantinople* and the parts adjoyning, return to their old name of *Rossi*. The *Rossi*, or *Russians*, were then the first Lords of this Country generally, the *Moscovites* possessors of a Province only; so called from the *Moschi*, spoken of by *Lucan* in his *Pharsalia*, and placed by *Pliny* near the head of the River *Phasis*, which, rising from the *Armenian* Mountains, falls into the *Euxine*. Derived no doubt from *Mesech*, (or *Mosoch*, as the Ancients called him) the Son of *Japhet*, placed originally in the North and North-east of *Syria*, on the Confines of *Colchis* and *Armenia*; where *Pliny*, as before is said, hath fixed the *Moschi*, and where there is a long Chain of Hills, which most of the old Writers call *Montes Mischici*. But to return unto the *Rossi*, we hear not of them by this name till the time of *Michael* the third, Emperour of *Constantinople*; in whose Reign they infested the *Euxine* Sea, and had the boldness to attempt the Imperial City, *Anno* 864; said by *Cedrenus* and some other of the Eastern Writers to be a People of Mount *Taurus*, (next neighbours to *Mesech* or the *Moschi*.) Failing in their attempt upon *Constantinople*, and not willing to go home again, they spread themselves, with their Confederates and Associates in this Expedition, upon the North-west Banks of the *Euxine* Sea; enlarging their bounds Northwards with less opposition than they were likely to have done on the Southern parts: *Constantinople* being once again in vain attempted in the Reigns of *Constantine* the 7. and *Henricus Auceps*. Converted to the Christian Faith, or growing into better terms with the Eastern Emperours, *Helena*, Daughter of *Nicephorus Phocas*, is married to *Valodomirus* one of their Kings. From that time forwards they turned their Forces on the *Polanders* and their weaker neighbours; save that, provoked by the death of one of their Country, slain accidentally at *Constantinople* in a private Quarrel, they made another fruitless Journey against that City, in the time of *Michael Calaphates*. Enlarging their Estate to the West and South, they became Masters of a great part of *Sarmatia Europæa*, *Lituania*, *Podolia*, *Nigra*, *Russia*, and other Provinces, now subject to the Crown of *Poland*, being then parts of their Estate. *Anno* 1240 the *Tartars*, under the Conduct of *Bathu*, or *Baydo*, Son of *Occata Chan*, broke in upon them and subdued them: the Country before this entire, under one sole King, being broken afterwards into divers petit and inferiour Governments, according to the will and pleasure of the insolent Victors. The principal of these (descended from the former Kings) were Lords of *Volodomir*, *Mosco*, and some other Cities; held by them with no other Title than that of Lords of *Moscovy*, and for that Tributary to the *Tartars*, as were all the rest. Their Seat was originally at *Volodomir*, till the time that *John*, the Son of *Daniel*, the fifth Lord of the *Russes*, descended of the old Regal Line, taking a good liking of the River and Town of *Mosco*, repaired the Town, being before but mean and ordinary, and made it the chief Seat of his Principality. From whence the residue of the *Russes*, united in succeeding times unto this Estate by Marriages, Fraud and Conquest, had the name of *Moscovites*. But notwithstanding this increase of their Power and Empire, the *Tartars* held them for their Vassals, and tyrannized upon the Country with a barbarous Insolency. Under which Thraldom they long groaned, till the *Tartarians*, being divided amongst themselves, and grown less terrible to their Neighbours, were outed of their Power and Command here by the valour of *John*, son of *Basilius* the second, who thereupon changed the Title of *Lord* into that of *Duke*, and after into that of *Great Duke*, as his Fortunes thrived. Yet not so great, but that he was contented to be an Homager of the *Tartars*: it being finally agreed on at the end of their Wars, that the *Tartars* should relinquish all their Holds in the Country; and on the other side, that once every year, within the Castle of *Mosco*, the Great Duke, standing on foot, should feed the Horse of the *Crim-Tartar* with Oats out of his own Cap. This Homage was by *Basilius* changed into a Tribute of Furs; which being also denied by his Successors, (as they grow in power) occasioned the long Wars betwixt the Nations; the *Tartars* always pressing on them by sudden Inroads, sometimes by Armies of no less than 200000 fighting men. But notwithstanding all their Power, and the Friendship of the *Turk* to boot, the *Moscovite* is not only able to assert his Soveraignty, but hath also wrested from them many goodly Provinces.

As for the Princes of this Country, I shall not trouble my self (as I see some do) in tracing a Succession of them as far as from the times of *Augustus Cæsar*; when neither the *Rossi* nor the *Moschi* had here any footing. We will therefore go no higher than the time of *George*, whose Daughter *Anne* I find to have been married

married to *Henry* the first of *France*. From whom in a direct Line descended another *George*, with whom we do intend to begin our Catalogue, as being the last King of the *Russes* before the coming of the *Tartars*. He, wisely yielding to the Storm, waved the Title of *King*, contented only with the Title of *Lord*, as more safe for him, and less invidious to the *Tartars*. The fifth from whom, called *John*, (as before is said) having removed his Seat to *Mosco*, took to himself the Title of Lord of *Mosco*, the chief seat of that Power and Soveraignty, which he transmitted afterwards to his Posterity; affecting for that cause the Title of *Duke* of *Moscovie* (though all the conquered Towns and Territories have their place also in his Style) as much as that of *Emperour* of *Russia*; which some of them have assumed also since the time of *Basilius*, who stiled himself *Basilius*, by the Grace of God, Emperour and Lord of *Russia*, Great Duke of *Volodomir*, *Moscovie*, *Novogrod the great*, *Plescow*, *Smolensko*, *Tuver*, *Jugar*, *Wiatbka*, *Bulgar*, &c. Lord and Great Prince of the *lower Novogrod*, *Czernigow*, *Rezan*, *Wologda*, *Pscow*, *Biele*, *Rostow*, *Jarossane*, *Poloskie*, *Biellozicre*, *Udore*, *Obdora*, *Condora*, &c. King of *Casan* and *Astracan*. But leaving them to their swelling and voluminous Title, (little inferiour unto that of the Kings of *Spain*) let us next look on the Succession from the time aforesaid of

The Lords of *MOSCOVIE* of the old Royal *RUSSIAN* Line

A. Ch.

1. *George*, the last King of the *Russes*, and first Lord of the *Russes* of the Royal Line.
2. *Jaceslaus*.
3. *Alexander*.
4. *Daniel*.
5. *John*, who transferred the Seat to *Mosco*.
6. *John* II.
7. *Basilius*.
8. *Demetrius*.
9. *Georgius* II.
10. *Basilius* II.

The Great Dukes of *MOSCOVIE*.

1. *John*, the first Great Duke, who shook off the *Tartarian* Bondage.
2. *Basilius Casan*, won the Provinces of *Severia*, *Roscovia*, and *Smolensko*, with the Realms of *Astracan* and *Casan*.
3. *John Basilius*, conquered *Livonia* and *Lituania*. Both which his Successor

1548 4. *Joannes Basilides*, or *Wasiliwich*, lost in his age; though in his youth he had subdued the *Noybacensian Tartars* to his Empire, and vanquished *Selim* Emperour of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1569. With this King the *English* first began to confederate.

1583 5. *Theodorus Johannides*, the last of the old Royal Line of *Moscovie*.

1591 6. *Boris Theodorus*, Brother to the Wife of the last Great Duke, partly by the last Will of his Predecessor, partly by practising with the people, obtained the Empire; but being an unmerciful Tyrant, was dispossessed by the *Polanders* coming in favour of one.

1605 7. *Demetrius*, pretending himself to be the Son of *John Wasiliwich*, (and generally believed to be so) preserved in a Monastery from the Tyranny of *Boris*, in hatred of whom he was brought in by the *Polander*; by whose aid he overcame the Tyrant, and rooted out his Family, and was with great joy crowned Emperour in the City of *Mosco*. But the *Russian* Lords disdaining to have a Prince imposed on them from *Poland*, rose in Arms against him, and at last vanquished and slew him in open Field: his Wife, a noble *Polonian* Lady, being sent poorly home, and the *Polanders* beaten out of the Country.

1606 8. *Basil Juanniwich*, surnamed *Sniskius*, the chief of the Conspirators, was by the rest of his Faction chosen *Knez* or Emperour, and held the State with great Trouble till the year 1610, when

1610 9. *Demetrius* II. another pretender to the State as the Son of *John Wasiliwich* also, in opposition unto *Sniskius*, set up by a stronger Faction, gave occasion to the *Polander* to work upon this Distemper; by whom *Suiskius* was taken Prisoner, *Demetrius* slain, *Smolensko* and other great Towns subdued, and *Vladislaus*, Prince of *Poland*, recommended to the *Russians* to be chosen Emperour. But the *Russes*, loth to fall under the power of the *Polander*; and weary of their own Confusions, made choice at last of

1615 10. *Michael Fedrovitz*, Son of *Theodore* the Patriarch of *Mosco*, who at last setled this vast Empire, and managed it in a more constant way of Peace with the *Turk*, *Tartar*, *Polonian* and *Swethlander*, than any of his Predecessors had done before him.

1646 11. *Alexius Michaeliwitz* (or the Son of *Michael*) succeeded his Father in the Empire, troubled at first with some Distempers in the State, (as in all other Countries about that time) but now quietly setled, *Anno* 1648.

The Formalities with which these great Emperors are invested or setled in the Throne are not many nor stately; such as they be, I here afford you out of the History of the Life of *Johannes Basilides*, written in *Latine* by *Paulus Oderbornius*. On the 2. of *June*, *Anno* 1583, *Theodorus Johannides* went towards the Temple of *S. Michael*, being the principal Church in all *Mosco*; the Streets all covered with Flowers, the Doors of the Citizens crowned with Garlands, the Air echoing with the noise of Flutes and Trumpets, and the people so crowding to behold their Prince, that had not the Guard with naked Swords forced a passage through them, it had been impossible for him to have gone on. Being now come to the Church-door, the Lords of the Country (*Knezes* they there call them) went out to meet him; and the Archbishop of *Mosco*, clad in his *Pontificalibus*, when he was come into the Church, imbraced him. The Pavement of the Church was hidden with Tapestry, and the Stalls adorned with costly Hangings. The Great Duke sate down in his Throne, being attired in a garment of Silk, buttoned down with Golden Buttons: on his Head he wore a Purple Cap spangled with rich Jewels, and on his Fingers abundance of Rings. Being thus seated, the Patriarch made a Prayer to God to bless him, his People, and his Government: which was seconded by the joyful Shouts and Acclamations of his Subjects; amongst whom no small store of Silver-money was flung by the Treasurer, and so they returned to the Palace.

The Government of this Country is meerly Tyrannical, the Emperour being absolute Lord of the Lives, Lands

and Goods of all his Subjects: all of them, the noble as well as the base, subscribing themselves in their Petitions to him by the name of *Keloptery*, that is, Slaves. Whereupon *Mahomet*, a *Turkish Bashaw*, was used to say, that his Master and the *Muscovite* were the two most absolute Princes in all the World. First for their Goods; when any Embassadour returns home, the Great Duke takes from him all the Presents which he hath received, giving him perhaps some small Reward, perhaps none at all: and as for Lands, they pass not from Father to Son, but as he confirms it. But more particularly, (besides the case of *Permia* spoken of before) *John Vasiliwich* sent a Command to *Mosco*, to provide a Coal-pack of live Fleas for a Medicine: and when the Citizens returned answer that it was impossible, he fined them at 700 Rubbles for their Disobedience. Another time he laid a Mulct of 300000 Rubbles upon his Nobility, because he had no good Sport in his Hunting: which they again extorted from the common people; and under colour of want, commanded from some Bishops and Monasteries the sum of 100000 Rubbles, from some 50000, more or less from others, according unto their Revenues. And it is usual with the best of them to cause the *Boiares* (or Gentlemen which serve on horse-back) to pretend themselves robbed, that he may send unto the City to find out the Felon, and, on a *Non est inventus*, fine them at discretion, sometimes 8000, sometimes 10000, and sometimes 20000 Rubbles. Then for their Lives, there is a Story, that *Vasiliwich* having found that one of his Secretaries had received a Goose stuffed full of Silver for a Bribe, caused him to be brought into the Market-place of *Mosco*; where without any legal Trial, he commanded the Executioner first to cut off his Legs about the Shins, and then his Arms about the Elbows, (still asking the miserable man how he liked Goose-flesh) and in the end to cut off his Head; in similitude of a Goose ready for the Spit. And that they may the better preserve this Power, the Great Dukes seldom shew themselves unto the people but in Apparel of inestimable value, joyning the Ornaments of a Bishop unto the Majesty of a King, by wearing a Mitre on their Heads shining with Diamonds and rich Stones: and when they wear it not on their Heads, they place it before the Chair of State, (over which are the Images of *Christ* and the Blessed Virgin) holding in their hands a most rich Crosier-Staff, and all their Fingers full of Rings. And upon solemn Festivals and Entertainments the great Chamber is beset with Cupboards of Plate of infinite value, and filled with men cloathed with Cloth of Gold to the very foot; all of them seeming to be men of the chief Nobility, but many times being no other than the gravest and portliest Citizens of *Mosco*, richly apparelled for the time out of the Emperour's Wardrope; which, to such as do not understand the Fraud, look like so many Princes, and cause no small wonder at his Magnificence. So that the people seeing him in such Royal state, and knowing no more than what they are taught at home, reverence him as Slaves, not Subjects, and look upon him rather as a God than a King.

Having so absolute a Command on their Lives and Goods, it will be easily supposed that he may raise what Forces and amass what Treasures he hath a mind to. First, for his Forces, it is said that he is able to raise 300000 Horse, if occasion be: and that he may come near that number it is more than probable, in that *John Vasiliwich*, in his War against those of *Astracan*, had actually 120000 Horse; and that a great part of the Country is in the hands of the *Boiares*, bound by their Tenure to serve with Horse whensoever he pleaseth; and that there are 110 men chosen by the Emperour, and by him enfeoffed with Lands, (during pleasure only) who for these Lands are to find 65000 Horse with all things necessary for the Wars, and those in a continual readiness fit for present Action. Then for such Horse as he himself doth keep in perpetual pay, there are no fewer than 25000 which attend him as a Guard to his person, all of them well-experienced men and fit for service: which, added to the 65000 spoken of before, make up a standing Body of 90000. Had he Foot answerable unto this proportion of Horse, there were no dealing with him; but therein his *Militia* is defective: *Vasiliwich* to his great Army of 120000 Horse having but 20000 Foot; the Foot-men which he hath in continual pay amounting to 12000 only, far short of such a standing Body of Horse as before we spake of. And this defect hath been the reason why the *Polanders* with far less Armies have prevailed against them: the Great Duke not being able with all his power to hinder King *Stephen* of *Poland* from taking *Villocolne*, or besieging *Plescow* (though his Army was not above 60000 in both Horse and Foot) for want of standing Bands of Foot to make good his ground. Generally both Horse and Foot are very obedient to their Captains and Superiour Officers: patiently enduring all Discommodities of Cold, Rain, and Hunger; (in that regard fitter to keep a Fortress than serve in Field) and so regardless of their Lives in the day of Battel, that they will rather lose themselves than yield themselves Prisoners or demand Quarter.

For his Revenues, they may be what he will himself, considering (besides his extraordinary power of oppressing his Subjects before mentioned) the many ordinary ways he hath of amassing Treasure: *viz.* the Forestalling of home-bred Commodities, and ingrossing the foreign; selling them at what price he list, and hindering all men else from Trade till his own be sold; provision of Rent-corn and Victual, raised in some years to 200000 Rubbles, Rent-wood and Hay to 30000, Poll-money to 400000, Customs on Merchandise to 800000. By which and other means of collecting Monies, and the Domain of his Crown, though he raise vast Sums: yet it is thought that, his Houshold-charges being deducted, there remain not towards all other Expences three millions of Rubbles; every Rubble being as much as an *English* Mark.

The Arms are *Sable*, a Portal open of two Leaves and as many Degrees *Or*.

There are in *RUSSIA*

Patriarch 1. Archbishops 2.

Bishops 18.

And so much for *RUSSIA*.

OF

POLAND.

POLAND is bounded on the East with *Russia* and the *Crim-Tartar*, from whom it is parted by the River *Borysthenes*; on the West with *Germany*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea and some part of *Russia*, on the South with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*, *Transylvania* and *Moldavia*.

It is an aggregate Body, consisting of many distinct Provinces united into one Estate, of which *Poland*, being the predominant, hath given name to the rest, called all together the Realm of *Poland*: and that so named from *Pole*, which in the *Sclavonian* Language (the common Language of the Country) signifieth *plain*; because it is but little swelled with Hills. It is of Figure round, in compass 2600 miles, situate under the eighth and twelfth Climates; so that the longest Day in the Southern part is but 16 hours, and about 18 hours in the parts most North.

This Country is plain, but full of Woods, which serve to rectifie the Air, being naturally so cold that they have neither Wine nor Grapes; instead whereof they use that kind of Drink called Ale, in former times the usual Beverage of *England* and this Country only. Barley they have, and Pulse in such abundant measure, that no small quantities of each are transported yearly: nor yield they any thing at all to *Denmark* or *Hungary* for their plenty of Cattel. But of this more in our description of the several Provinces.

The People are very industrious, and studious of all Languages, especially of the *Latine*; to which they are so devoted, that there is scarce a mean man who is not able in some measure to express himself in it. According to their abilities, they are rather prodigal than truly liberal; and good Souldiers generally. The Peasants live in miserable Servitude unto their Lords; the Lords in such Equality of estate amongst themselves, that none of them (excepting the greater Princes) exceedeth 25000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Proud in their Garb, costly in their Apparel, impatient in their Humours, and delicate in Diet. These last Conditions are common to the Women also, who are for the most part indifferently fair, and rather witty than well spoken. But this, being the peculiar Character of the *Polander* properly so called, is not perhaps communicable to the people of the rest of the Provinces, whom we shall speak of severally in their proper places.

The Christian Faith was first planted in this Kingdom at several times and by several persons, according to the different parts of which it consisteth: in *Poland* specially so called in the time of their Prince *Miecislaus*, Son of *Nemomyslaus*, *Anno* 963; in *Livonia*, by the Preaching of one *Meinardus*, *Anno* 1200, or thereabouts; in *Lituania*, not until the year 1386, at the admission of *Jagello* to the Crown of *Poland*, and then done (as some say) by *Thomas* of *Walden*, (or *Waldensis*) an *English* Frier; in *Samogitia* and *Volhinia* at the same time with *Lituania*; in the rest at other times and on other occasions: yet so that in many places of it Idolatry was never totally rooted out, the seeds and practice whereof in many Points still remain amongst them. Corrupted by the Superstitions of the Church of *Rome*, a Reformation was endeavoured at such a time as *John Hus* flourished in *Bohemia*, the next neighbouring Kingdom: but by the rigour of *Vladislaus* the sixth, then King thereof, assisted by his Bishops and Noblemen, it was at that time hindred. Afterwards in the time of *Luther*, some who had studied at *Leipzick* and *Wittenberg* (Universities of *Saxony*) brought his Opinions home with them into the *Province* of *Poland*; as some *Dutch* Merchants) with the rest of their Commodities) did into *Dantzick*, the chief Town of *Pomerellia*, *Anno* 1525: from whence it spread it self over most part of that Country. According as it was favoured or disliked by the *Palatines*, *Chastellans* and other great men of the Realm, so was its entertainment either good or bad: the *Græcians* in the mean time taking opportunity to win some parts of it to their side, and confirm others in it, who, being originally Members of the Church of *Greece*, because originally converted by the Bishops thereof, did still continue in Conformity and Obedience to it. In the end, by reason of the over-great Liberty of the Nobility and People, and want of Power in the King to controle their doings, every man took up what Religion he best liked, some following the *Augustane* Confession, others the *Helvetian*, others adhering as tenaciously to the Church of *Rome*; and some inclining to new Sects, or rather to old Heresies under new Disguises, have brought in such a Miscellanie or *Babel* of Religions into this Estate, (*Jesuites*, *Lutherans*, *Calvinists*, *Socinians*, *Arians*, *Anabaptists*, and indeed what not? being here all tolerated) that at last it grew into a By-word, that *If any man had lost his Religion, he might find it in* Poland, *or else believe it to be vanished.* A by-ward afterwards applied unto *Amsterdam*, communicable since unto other places, *Libertas prophetandi*, or the Liberty of Prophesying, being now as much allowed of in some parts of Christendom, as *Libertas opinandi* was in *Rome* under *Nerva*'s Government, *ubi & sentire quæ velis, & quæ sentias loqui liceat*, when as a man might think as he listed of the publick, and speak what he thought. But whether this be such a *rara temporum Felicitas*, such a Felicity of these our Times, as *Tacitus* conceived the other to be of those, future times will shew.

But to return again to *Poland*: notwithstanding this mixture of Religions, yet that most publickly allowed and countenanced is the Religion authorized by the Church of *Rome*, asserted here by the Zeal of the Kings unto that Cause, and the great Power of the Bishop's, who seeing how those of their Order have sped in *Germany* and other places, under colour of Reformation of some things amiss, have hitherto upheld the Ecclesiastical Estate in the same form they found it. The Government of the Church is as formerly by 3 Archbishops and 19 Bishops, who challenge a Jurisdiction over all the Kingdom, but exercise it upon those only who submit unto them: those who embrace the Doctrines of *Luther* or *Calvin* following the Forms of Government by them established; as others do some new ones of their own devising. And for those Provinces and people which lie towards *Greece*,

or

or were parts heretofore of the *Ruſſian* Empire, and ſtill hold a Communion with thoſe Churches, they have Archbiſhops and Biſhops of their own Religion; that is to ſay, the Archbiſhops of *Vilne* and *Lemburg*, the Biſhops of *Poloczo*, *Luzko*, *Pinsko*, *Volodomir*, *Preſmil*, and *Kiovia*. Yet amongſt all theſe different Churches and forms of Government there is this Conformity, that whenſoever the Goſpel is read openly in the Congregation, the Nobility and Gentry uſe to draw their Swords, (according to an ancient Cuſtom which they had among them) ſignifying their readineſs to defend it againſt all Oppoſers. Which reaſon doubtleſs gave beginning to the ſtanding up at the Creed and Goſpel in the Primitive times, retained ſtill in the *Church* of *England*, whereby we do declare how prepared and reſolute we are to defend the ſame: though ſome of late, holding it for a Relique of Popery, with greater nicety than wiſdom have refuſed to do it.

Principal Commanders of this Country in the Art of War were. 1. *Caſimir* the third, the great Eſtabliſher of this Kingdom after long Diſſenſions. 2. *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, who firſt brought down the Pride of the *Dutch* Knights in a famous Victory. 3. *Caſimir* the 4. the fortunate Conqueror of the *Knights* of *Pruſſia*, brought by him under the Command of the Kings of *Poland*, 4. *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whoſe Valour and good fortune the *Dutch* Knights were totally ſuppreſſed, and the greateſt part of *Pruſſia* for ever added to that Crown. 5. *Sigiſmund* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Auguſtus*, fortunate in his Wars againſt moſt of them of *Livonia*, by him united to this Kingdom. Of moſt ſpecial note for learning, *Hoſius*, a Divine of the Papal party, whoſe great Abilities advanced him to the ſtate of a Cardinal. 2. *Crellius*, and 3. *Volckelius*, of the contrary party in Religion, men of great parts, but Heterodox and unſound Opinions. 4. *Cromerus*, the Hiſtorian. 5. *Keckerman*, the Profeſſor at *Dansk* or *Dantzick*; a man of univerſal Studies, but of greater induſtry than exactneſs.

Chief Rivers of this Kingdom are, 1. *Viſtula* or the *Weyſſel*, the ancient Boundary betwixt *Germany* and *Sarmatia Europæa*, which, riſing, in the *Carpathian* Mountains, paſſeth by *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and, dividing *Pruſſia* from *Pomerellia*, falleth into the *Baltick* Sea not far from *Dantzick*, and is navigable for the ſpace of 400 miles of old called *Vandalis*. 2. *Warta*, which runneth through the leſſer *Poland*. 3. *Duina* the leſs, watering *Livonia*; and 4. *Boryſthenes*, or the *Nieper*, paſſing through *Podolia*: both ſpoken of before, when we were in *Ruſſia*. 5. *Nieſter*, by *Ptolomy* called *Tyras*, which falleth into the *Euxine* Sea, having firſt parted *Podolia* from *Moldavia*. 6. *Jugra*, by ſome called the leſſer *Tanais*, ariſing in *Lituania*, and falling into the more noted *Tanais*, which is now called *Don*. Of leſs note there are, 1. *Reuben*, or *Reuhon*. 2. *Chronus*, now called *Pregel*. 3. *Bog*, ſaid by ſome to be the *Hypanis* of the Ancients. 4. *Memel*. 5. *Niemen*, the *Mæander* of theſe Northern parts. 6. *Windaw*, a *Livonian* River falling into the *Baltick*. Mountains of note here are not many, the Countries for the moſt part being plain and champain: and thoſe which be are rather Boundaries betwixt this and ſome other Kingdom, than proper unto this alone. The chief of which are thoſe called *Sarmatici*, dividing *Germany* from *Sarmatia Europæa*, by *Solinus* named *Sevo*, by *Ptolemy* the *Carpathian* Mountains; the Boundary at this time betwixt *Poland* and *Hungary*, of which more anon.

The common Metes and Land-marks being thus laid down, we will next take a view of thoſe ſeveral Provinces of which this Kingdom doth conſiſt, being eleven in number; that is to ſay, 1. *Livonia*, 2. *Samegitia*, 3. *Lituania*, 4. *Volhinia*, 5. *Podolia*, 6. *Ruſſia nigra*, 7. *Maſſovia*. 8. *Podlaſſia*. 9. *Pruſſia*. 10. *Pomerellia*; and 11. *Poland* ſpecially ſo called: all of them (except the proper *Poland*) within *Sarmatia Europæa*.

1. *LIVONIA.*

LIVONIA, or *LIEFLAND*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Empire of *Ruſſia*, on the Weſt with the *Baltick* Sea, on the North with the Gulf or Bay of *Finland*, on the South with *Samogitia* and *Lituania*: extended in length along the Shore of the *Baltick* for the ſpace of 125 *Dutch*, or 500 *Italian*, miles, and 40 *Dutch*, or 160 *Italian*, miles in breadth: and called thus perhaps from the *Levoni*, a People of *Germany*, inhabiting not far from the River *Viſtula*.

The Country is for the moſt part plain, without any Mountains; furniſhed with Corn and Fruits in ſo great abundance, that they ſend part thereof into other Countries: and yet there is much Ground untilled in it, by reaſon of the Bogs and Mariſhes; which are very frequent. Here is alſo ſtore of Wax, Honey and Pitch, but they have neither Oyl nor Wine: the want of which laſt is ſupplied by Meth. Of tame Beaſts fit for man's ſervice they are well provided; as alſo of ſuch whoſe Skins are of more value with the Merchant than their Fleſh at the Market; as Ermins, Sables, Caſtors, and others of that kind; beſides good ſtore of Game for Hunting, the Country having in it many large Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*. And as for Rivers, there are few Countries which have more; it being watered by the *Windaw*, the *Beck*, the *Dwine*, the *Reuhon*, all of them falling into the *Baltick*; many great Lakes, whereof the chief is that of *Beybas*, 45 miles long, and full of Fiſh.

The people are much given to Gluttony and Drunkenneſs, eſpecially in rich mens houſes, where it is to be had: for the Peaſants live in want enough, meer Slaves to their Tyrannical Landlords, who ſpend in Riot and exceſs what theſe get by Drudgery: and when at any time the poor Wretch leaves his Landlord to mend his condition with ſome other, the Lord, if he can overtake him, will cut off his Foot, to make him ſure for the future. They are a mixture of many Nations: as the *Eſtones*, which are the natural Inhabitants, (derived from the *Eſtii*, a *Dutch* people, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*) of which Nation are almoſt all the Peaſants; the *Moſcovites*, *Swedes*, *Danes*, *Dutch* and *Polanders*, intermingled with them, coming in upon ſeveral Conqueſts, and planting themſelves in the beſt parts of it, in which they ſtill Lord it over the Native, but the *Dutch* eſpecially, for long time Maſters of the whole.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by *Meinardus* of *Lubeck*, imployed herein (in the time of *Frederick* the firſt) at the perſwaſion of ſome *Dutch* Merchants who traded hither, by the Archbiſhop of *Breme*; by whom he was made the firſt Biſhop of the *Livonians*. The Church hereof at this time is governed by the Archbiſhop of *Riga*, the Biſhops of *Derpt*, *Aſilia*, *Oſel*, *Curland*, and *Rivallia*. In thoſe parts which remain ſubject to the *Polander*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome* is only countenanced. Such parts of it as are under the *Swedes* or *Danes* are for the moſt part of the *Lutheran* Profeſſion, planted with Colonies of that People. But the *Eſtones*, or original Inhabitants, as they have a Language, ſo they have a Religion by themſelves alſo, mixt of the Chriſtian and the Pagan. Extremely well affected unto their Prieſts, to whom they preſent Salt, Candles and Fruits, when they come to them for their Bleſſings; great lovers of Confeſſion, eſteemers of Holy water, and diligent frequenters of their Churches; but ſo extremely ignorant in all Points of Religion, that there is hardly one in a Village that can

ſay

say his *Pater-noster*. When they bury any of their dead, every one drinketh an Health to him, and poureth his part upon him when his turn comes to drink; putting into the Grave with him an Hatchet, Wine, Meat, and a little Money for his Voyage. And in some places they are wholly Idolatrous, (if not converted very lately by the care of the *Jesuites*) some of them worshipping the Sun, others Stocks and Stones, and some Serpents also. The Language of the Country is for the most part the High *Dutch*, being the Language of those Nations who first Lorded over them; the *Estones* having generally a peculiar Language, which none of the others understand.

It was divided formerly into the Provinces of *Curland*, *Estland*, *Semigal*, *Virland*, *Harland* and *Lettenland*; but these six, since the Conquest of it by the *Polanders*, are reduced to three, *Harland* and *Virland* being united unto *Estland*, and *Semigallia* unto *Curland*.

Chief places in *Estland* are, 1. *Rivallia*, or *Revel*, a Bishop's See, and a well-traded Port, situate on the Gulf of *Finland*; a Town belonging to the *Swede*, the keeping whereof, and of *Wiborg* on the Borders of *Moscovy*, stand him yearly in 100000 Dollars. 2. *Habsey*, or *Habsel*, (*Asilia* in *Latine*) a Bishop's See; and 3. *Pernaw*, a well-fortified place, belonging to the *Swethlander* also, ever since the Conquest of these parts of the Country by *John* the second. Places of great importance to the *Crown* of *Sweden*, as all other pieces of this nature are, which, standing in an Enemie's Country, not only do defend our own, but offend our Adversaries. For they are not only Doors, to open a farther passage into their Territories, whensoever we shall see occasion; but whilst the Enemy is besieging thereof, or otherwise busied in recovering them into his power, our own State is preserved in quiet, and time may yield fit opportunity to relieve them, if they be distressed, without wasting of any part of our proper Countries. Of which nature was *Calais* when it was in the hands of the *English*; the Garrisons which the *Spaniards* and *Portugueze* have in *Africk* and *India*: the Charge of keeping them being sufficiently defrayed (if the Charge prove greater than the Income, as sometimes it doth) by the advantages they give unto him which hath them. 4. *Velin*, a strong Town, and fortified with an impregnable Castle; betrayed by the *Dutch* Garrison at that time in it, together with *William* of *Furstenburg*, the Great Master, into the hands of *John Basilius* the Great Duke of *Moscovy*, who still holds it. 5. *Derpt*, or *Derbern*, (in *Latine Tupatum*) a Bishop's See, situate on the *Beck*, or *Embeck*, betwixt two Lakes, in the midst of the Province, and taken at the same time by the *Moscovite*, who, transporting the *Livonians* into other places, planted these parts with Colonies of his own people. 6. *Terveſt*, a Castle of great strength, taken then also by the *Russes*; but being recovered by the *Polander*, was blown up with Gunpowder, that it might no more come into the hands of the Enemy. Hitherto nothing of this Country which belongs to the *Polanders*; these that follow do: that is to say, 7. *Borcholm*, the Seat and Residence of the Bishop of *Rivallia*, since the taking of that Town by the *Swedes*. 8. *Weisenburg*, incommodiously seated betwixt two ill neighbors, *Narva* and *Rivallia*; but serving very well to prohibit the Incursions of those Garrisons farther into the Country. 9. *Wernebeck*, in that part of *Estland*, which is called *Odinpo*; and 10. *Weissenstein*, in that part thereof which is named *Jervia*.

In *LETTENLAND*, lying in the midst betwixt *Estland*, and *Curland*, the places of most note are, 1. *Riga*, (the people call it *Rig*) seated on the Mouth of the River *Dwina*, falling there into the *Baltick*: first built & planted at the charges of the Merchants of *Breme*; after that the Archbishop's See, the ordinary Residence of the Great Master, and the chief City of the whole Province of *Livonia*. A Town well fortified, according to the modern Rules of Fortification, with a strong Wall, large Bulwarks, double Ditches, Palisadoes, and well provided of all manner of Ammunition: a famous Emporie, of great resort for foreign Merchants, who carry hence, Pitch, Wax, Hemp, Flax, and such other Commodities. They are governed (notwithstanding their Subjection to the King of *Poland*) by their own Laws, and such stout defenders of their Liberties, that they will by no means admit of any Foreigner to have Command of the City; obedient in all other things to the will of that King. 2. *Dunamund*, an impregnable Fortress, two *Dutch* miles from *Riga*, well garrisoned by the *Polanders*, who here take Toll of all foreign Merchants. 3. *Blokaws*, a Garrison of the King's betwixt *Riga* and *Dunamund*, where the Merchants are tolled over again. 4. *Wenden*, more within the Land, on the River *Treider*. 5. *Wolmar*, upon the same River. 6. *Kakenhause*, a strong Town on the Banks of the *Dwina*. This Country belongs wholly to the King of *Poland*, and stood firm for him in the War made by *Charles* Duke of *Suderman* against his Nephew *Sigismund* King of *Poland* and *Sweden*, when almost all *Estland* had submitted to him.

CURLAND, the third and last Member of this Division, containing *Semigallia* also, lieth South of *Leitenland*, and North of *Samogitia* and *Lituania*: an entire Dukedom of it self, but holden under the Soveraignty and Homage of the Kings of *Poland*. Places of most importance in it are, 1. *Candow*. 2. *Goldingen*. 3. *Kies*, (the *Dutch* call it *Windaw*) the Seat of the Great Master of the *Teutonick* Order in times past; now most frequented as the place of Parliament or general Assembly for Affairs which concern the publick. 4. *Dubin*. 5. *Grubin*, on the Sea-side, but of no Trade at all. 6. *Hasenpot*. And then in *Semigal*. 7. *Mittaw*, the Court and Residence of the Dukes of *Curland*. 8. *Selburg*. 9. *Bessenburg*, 10. *Dobelin*. There is no Town in all this Dukedom of any Trading, though lying for a great space all along the *Baltick*; because none of them are furnished with commodious Havens. A Dukedom first begun in the person of *Gothardus Ketler*, (of one of the Noble Families of *Denmark*) the last Great Master of the *Dutch* Knights in this Country, who in the year 1562 surrendring his Order, and the whole possession of *Livonia*, to *Sigismund-Augustus* K. of *Poland*, received back again for him, and his Heirs for ever the Dukedom of *Curland* and *Semigal*, to be held by them of that Crown; the Nobility of these Countries doing then presently their Homage and Allegiance to him as their Hereditary Prince. Since which time the Princes of this House have continued Feudataries unto *Poland*, but not reckoned as parts or members of the Body thereof; not coming to the Diets, not liable to the publick Charges, nor having any thing to do in the King's Election; in a word, rather honourable Neighbours of the King's of *Poland*, than Subjects to them. The present Duke is like to be much increased in Estate and Power, if the now Marquess of *Brandenburg* (whose Sister is his Mother) should depart without Issue. For by that means there will be added to this House the great Dukedom of *Prussia*, those of *Cleve* and *Gulick*, together with such other Countries possessed now by that Marquess as he holds by descent from the Heirs-general of those Dukedoms: which makes him cast an eye already upon those Estates.

There belong also to *Livonia* some few Islands situate in the *Baltick* Sea: that is to say, 1. *Osilia*. 2. *Dachden*. 3. *Mona*. 4. *Wormse*. 5. *Wrangen*. and 6. *Keyn*. Of which the four last do belong to the King of *Poland*, *Dachden* to the King of *Swethland*, and *Osilia*, or *Osel*, to the *Danes*. This last is the chief of all the six, distant

distant from the main Land of *Livonia* 12 *Dutch* miles; 14 of the same miles in length, half as much in breadth: the chief Towns hereof being 1 *Osel*, a Bishop's See, which gives name to the Island. 2. *Sunneburg*. The Island was made subject to the *Danes* by *Magnus*, Brother of *Frederick* the second, King of *Denmark*; who, being chosen Administrator of the Bishoprick of *Derpt* in *Estland*, made himself Master of this Island and some other pieces, which, dying without Issue, he bequeathed to the King his Brother, *Anno* 1580.

As for *Livonia* it self, it was first under the *Levoni* and *Estii*, two *German* Nations, from whom the Country had the name of *Livonia*, the People of *Estlanders* or *Estones*. Distracted into many petit Principalities, it was made acquainted with the Christian Faith by the care of the Merchants of *Bremen*, as before was said. *Meinard* their first Bishop being dead, and *Bertold* his Successor slain by such of the people as had not yet received the Gospel; the Knights of the Port-glaive, or the Sword, were sent hither, to defend the Preachers and the Doctrine by the force of Arms. Finding themselves too weak to effect the business, they united with the Order of *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, to whom from that time forwards they became subordinate; the great Master of *Livonia* acknowledging him of *Prussia* for his Superiour. These Knights continued Masters of it without contradiction till the year 1557, (embracing in the mean time the Opinions of *Luther*, *Anno* 1528) then quarelling with the Archbishop of *Riga*, of the House of *Brandenburg*, because he would not adhere unto their Opinions; who, to secure his own Estate was forced to put *Riga* into the hands of the *Polanders*. Afterward being overlaid by the *Moscovite*, who had taken from them almost all their Country, they were fain to put themselves under the Protection of *Sigismund-Augustus* King of *Poland*, *Anno* 1559. But *William* of *Furstenburg*, the Great Master, being betrayed by his own Mercenaries into the hands of the *Moscovite*, *Gothardus* his Successour (following the example of *Albert* the Great Master of *Prussia*) transacted with the said *Sigismund* for the whole Estate, which he surrendred to his use in the Castle of *Riga*, *March* 5. 1562, together with his Cross, the Seal of the Order, the Charters and Grants of many of the Popes and Emperours which concerned the same, as also the Keys of the City and Castle of *Riga*, the Office of Great Master, the Rights of Coinage, and all the Powers and Priviledges appertaining to it: receiving back again from *Ratzivil*, the King's Commissioner, the Dukedom of *Curland* to him and his Heirs for ever, as before is said. By this Transaction the Kings of *Pole* became Masters of *Liefland*, and were more absolutely setled in it after a long War betwixt *Stephen* King of *Poland* and *John Vasilowich* the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, who in the end surrendred all his Claim therein to the said *Stephen* and his Successors, *Anno* 1582, reserving only some few Towns on the Eastern Borders: the *Danes* and *Swethlanders* taking occasion by their Troubles to impatronize themselves of *Narva*, *Rivallia*, *Osel*, and some other pieces.

2. *SAMOGITIA.*

SAMOGITIA is a small Province wedged in betwixt *Livonia* and *Lituania*, having *Livonia* on the North, *Lituania* on the East and South, and the *Baltick* Sea upon the West: in length extending 50 miles from East to West, but not of an answerable breadth. It is so called from the lowlines of the situation, (the word *Samogits* in the Language of the Inhabitants signifying *terram inferiorem*, or the *Low-lands*) by the *Moscovite* in the same tense called *Samotzkaselma*. This lowness of situation makes it very watery, and almost continually frozen: but withal it hath many Forests, which yield unto the people abundance of Honey, better, more pleasing to the taste, and less mixt with Wax, than in other places.

The people are supposed to be of the *Saxon* Race, of a good Stature, well set, bold, and apt for War; but withall boisterous, rude and barbarous: Christians in general, but many of them do still retain their old Idolatries; nourishing amongst them a kind of four-footed Serpents, about three handfulls in length, which they worship as their Household-gods, attending them with fear and reverence when they call them out to their repast: and if any Mischance do happen to any of the Family, it is imputed presently to some want of due observance of these ugly Creatures. They are naturally inclined to Divinations, Charms and Sorceries, and frequently abused (as for the most part such people are) by Diabolical Illusions. Nay, they which profess the name of *Christ* are so ill instructed, that they use to marry many Wives, without consideration of Bloud or Parentage: it being ordinary for a man to marry with his Brother's Widow, and not unusual to marry the Relict of their Fathers, (a Fornication not so much as heard of in S. *Paul's* time amongst the Gentiles.) They have some Customs also as unprofitable as these are heathenish; breaking up their Land, as they do in *Moscovie*, with Spades or Sticks. And when one of their Governours, observing the Husbandry of other Nations, had brought them the use of the Plough; it fortuned that for two or three years, either by the indisposition of the Weather, or some other Accident, they had not so much Corn as they used to have. Which Want the people attributing to the use of the Plough, *nec quicquam aliud in causa esse putantes*, and not believing that there was any other cause of it, grew so much incensed, that the Governour, fearing some Sedition like to follow on it, was forced to leave them to the old way which before they went. An humour like that of the present *Irish*, in ploughing with their Horses tails, spoken of before. So pertinacious for the most part are ignorant and superstitious people, in standing to their ancient Customs, though absurd and hurtful.

Towns they have few, their Houses for the generality being poor and low, covered with Straw or Dirt, with an Hole open in the Roof to let in the light. The principal of those they have (but rather Villages than Towns) are 1. *Bigla*, near the head of the River *Swiote*; 2. *Linkaw*, of which nothing memorable.

This Province hath always followed the fortunes of *Lituania*: subject, when that was so, to the Kings of *Russia*, converted when that was to the Christian Faith, and finally united with it to the Crown of *Poland*.

3. *LITUANIA.*

LITUANIA hath on the East the Empire of *Russia*, on the West *Prussia*, *Massovia* and *Poland*, on the North *Livonia* and *Samogitia*, and on the South *Volhinia* and *Podolia*. So called from *Lituus* the Ceremonial Staff, used anciently by the Augurs in their Divinations; to which the Inhabitants hereof being very much addicted before their receiving of the Gospel, were called *Lituani*. but this is but conjectural only. Yet rather thus, than that it should be peopled by some banished *Italians*, first named *Italia*, then *Litalia*, and after, by a most unlikely Corruption; come to *Lituania*, as *Matthias a Michou* would fain have it.

The Country for the most part is full of Moors, Forests, some great Lakes like a Sea for bigness, and many navigable Rivers; which frozen over in the Winter make the

the ways more travellable at that time of the year than they are in Summer. The Air in most places is exceeding cold, which makes their Wheat (whereof they have some abundance) to be seldom ripe, and other Fruits of the Earth to come slowly forward. Their Forests yield them Bugles, Ermines, Sables, Deer, wild Horses, plenty of Honey, Wax, and Pitch; but their breed of Cattel is less here, and of smaller stature, than it is in *Germany*. These Forests also are the Store-house out of which the *English* and *Hollanders* furnish themselves with Timber, both for Ships and Building; returning to them in exchange Salt, Wine, and other Necessaries which are wanting here.

The people anciently had Fire and Serpents for their Gods, nourishing the last in their houses, and keeping the other continually burning; the Priests and Ministers of the Temple always adding Fewel, that it might not fail. The *Vestal* Fire was not kept more carefully at *Rome*, nor with greater Ceremony. To this God, whom they called *Dishpan*, or the *Lord of the Smoak*, they used to sacrifice young Pullets; to the other, their Cocks. The seed of this Idolatry is so implanted in them, that it is said, that in a Village of the King's called *Lovaniski*, not four miles from *Vilna*, their chief City, they do to this day worship Serpents. Converted with their Prince *Jagello* to the Christian Faith, *Anno* 1386, they yet retained such Customs as are inconsistent with Christianity; marrying, unmarrying, when and as often as they please; no Bond being so soon cancelled as that of Matrimony. For a married man to use the body of an Harlot is accounted (as indeed it is) an opprobious Crime: but for the Wife to have her Stallions and Adulterers is a thing so ordinary and unblameable, that the Husbands call them their Coadjutors, and prize them far above the rest of their Acquaintance. The common people are in a miserable Servitude unto their Lords, pillaged and beaten by them upon any occasion; yet must not come before them with an empty hand. And if any of them have committed a Crime deserving death, he must hang himself as soon as the Sentence is signified to him, or else is beaten and tormented in so cruel a manner, that Death at last is looked on as a better Life.

The Country is divided into ten parts or Provinces, subject unto the Jurisdiction of so many *Palatines*, that is to say, the *Palatine* of 1. *Vilna*. 2. *Trock*. 3. *Minsko*. 4. *Novogrod*. 5. *Brestia*. 6. *Volhinia*. 7. *Kiovia*. 8. *Miestaw*. 9. *Vitebsco*. 10. *Polotzkie*. But *Novogrod* and *Polotzkie* being conquered by the Great Duke of *Moscovie*, and added unto that Estate, and *Volhinia* reckoned (of late times) for a distinct Province of it self, not depending of it; the remaining number is but seven, most of them taking names from their principal Towns. The chief of those, and others which deserve place here, are, 1. *Vilna*, a Bishop's See, equal in bigness to *Cracow*, the chief City of *Poland*; so called of the River *Vil*, or *Viln*, upon which it is seated; built there in the year 1305 by one *Godemin*, a great Prince of these parts; well walled, but the Gates thereof open night and day; large, rich, and well frequented by foreign Merchants, especially by those that drive the Trade of *Moscovie*, who have here their Hall, one of the chief Ornaments of the City. They have in it also some Churches built of Stone, (but the most of Wood) the principal whereof is the Monastery of S. *Bernard*, which is a very comely Structure. The Natives call this Town *Vilenski*, the *Dutch Die Wilde*. It is situate in the very heart of the Country, the longest Day in Summer being here 16 hours and half a quarter; whereas in the most Southern parts of the Country it is but 16, and in the most Northern not fully 18. 2. *Kiovia*, or *Kiof*, situate on the *Nieper*, or *Borysthenes*, where the River *Desna* falls into it: heretofore a beautiful and most stately City, having in it above 300 fair Churches, of which some remain unto this day, the Ruines of the rest to be traced out amongst Shrubs and Bushes, the receptacles of wild Beasts. The Seat at that time of the Metropolitan of the *Russian* Empire, containing also under his Jurisdiction the Countries of *Walachia* in *Dacia*, and *Nigra Russia* in *Poland*. But being destroyed by *Bathu* or *Baydo* the *Tartarian*, in the Conquest of these parts by that People, it never could come near its former Lustre: yet still it holds the reputation of a Bishop's See, acknowledging the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan, and consequently is of the Communion of the *Greek* Churches, not of that of *Rome*. 3. *Grodno*, on the River *Chronus*, the chief Town of the Palatinate of *Trock*, memorable for the death of *Stephen* King of *Poland*. 4. *Grunwald*, more memorable for the great Defeat given near it, by *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania* and King of *Poland*, to the numerous Army of the *Dutch* Knights invading this Province; so confident of their Success in the undertaking, that they brought with them abundance of Chains and Torches; with the one to lead captive the Nobles of *Poland*, and with the other to fire their Cities. But *Jagello*, then newly made a Christian, putting his confidence in God, with an Army of untrained Souldiers so tamed their Pride, that he slew 40000 of them; so that they never recovered of that Blow whilst their Order stood. 5. *Pinsko*, in the Palatinate of *Brzest*. 6. *Klow*, reckoned a Country of it self, and 7. *Strissin*, fortified with a Castle; both under the *Palatine* of *Miestaw*. The rest of the chief Towns may be known by the *Palatinates* which they give their names to, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Aorsi*, *Pagarini*, *Savari*, Tribes of the *Sarmatæ Europæi*. United into this name of *Lituanians*, they became subject to the Kings of *Russia*, till the breaking of that Kingdom by the *Tartars*. At what time *Erdizvil*, then their Prince, (but an Homager and Tributary to the *Russians*) withdrew himself from their Command; as did also many other of the conquered Provinces. Afterwards *Mindoch*, one of the Dukes or Princes of it, being made a Christian, was by Pope *Innocent* the third honoured with the Title of a King; but returning again unto his Vomit, he lost that Title. In the end, *Anno* 1386, *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, marrying with *Hedwigis* Queen of *Poland*, was upon three Conditions chosen King of that Realm. 1. That he should immediately receive the Christian Faith. 2. That he should draw all his Subjects to the same Belief. And 3. that he should unite this Dukedom to the Crown of *Poland*. Of these the two first were performed without any delay; though the second not without some difficulty, the people being obstinate in their old Idolatry, especially in the Religious conceit they had of high Trees, which to cut down was held both unsafe and impious. They could not be weaned from this conceit, till by the authority of the King their loftiest Trees were felled, and their Woods grubbed up: which when they saw done without any danger to the Prince, or any of those whom he employed in that service, *Regis mandato & autoritati cedere coperunt*, they then began to hearken unto his Commands, and generally received the Gospel, and were baptized. In the last point there was a longer time of deliberation: For the Princes of the House of *Jagello*, loth to deprive themselves of their Patrimonial Estate, which was hereditary unto their Posterity, and to subject it to the Election of the *Polanders*, in which it was possible the Princes of their Family might be pretermitted, deferred the accomplishment hereof from one day to another, under colour that the *Lituanians* would

revolt if they went about it. But *Sigismund Augustus*, in whose person the Male-issue of *Jagello* failed, foreseeing what Divisions might ensue after his decease, and fearing that the *Muscovites* would renew their old Pretensions, united it unto the Crown: ordaining that the Bishops, *Palatines*, and a certain number of the *Chastellans* by him established, should have their place and Suffrage in the great Council of *Poland*, power in the chusing of the King, and all other Privileges which the natural *Polonians* have. Since that it is accounted a chief Member of that Body politick, subject to those Corruptions, Changes and Innovations in matters of Religion, which have been predominant in the other; excepting those parts only which relate to the Church of *Greece*, or *Mosco*, adhering pertinaciously to the Rites thereof.

4. VOLHINIA

VOLHINIA, by some accounted one of the *Palatinates* of *Lituania*, (as once it was) but by others a distinct Province of it self, is bounded on the North and East with *Lituania*, on the South with *Podolia*, and on the West with *Russia Nigra* and *Podlassia*. So called, as *Maginus* is of opinion, from the *Volgari*, who, dwelling on the Banks of the River *Volga*, came afterwards into this Country, calling it *Volgaria*, whence by degrees it came unto *Volhonia*, and at last unto *Volhinia*. But this conjecture is improbable, and of no good grounds.

The Country yields good plenty both of Grain and Fruits, Pools which abound with very good Fish, Forests which do afford them store of Game and Honey, and much good Pasturage for their Cattel. That people are of the same nature with the *Lituanians*, but more strong and warlike, & better weaned from their old Superstitions and heathenish customs than the others are. They are of the same Language and Religion with those of *Russia*, to which, together with the rest of *Lituania*, it did once belong. It is divided commonly into three parts or Provinces, all taking name from the three principal Cities of it; that is to say, 1. *Luzke*, in *Latine* called *Lucoria* a Town of above 1000 Families, where 127 only (in the time of my Author) were of the *Romish* Religion; the residue being *Russians*, *Grecians*, and some *Armenians*. The Seat and Residence of two Bishops, of which one, being of the Communion of the Church of *Rome*, is of the Province of the Archbishop of *Lemburg* in *Russia Nigra*; but they which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece* have also a Bishop of their own, who acknowledgeth the Patriarch of *Mosco* for his Metropolitan. 2. *Volodomir*, a Bishop's See also, of the same condition. 3. *Keromenze*, which (as the rest) hath under it many fair Towns and Castles, besides large Villages. The whole was once part of *Lituania*, as before was said; but of late dismembred from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland*, as a State distinct: but so, that the greatest part of it is immediatly subject to the Duke of *Ostrogoye*, who is said to have 4000 Feudataries in this Country; the greatest Prince of those who hold Communion with the Church of *Greece* in the whole Realm of *Poland*.

5. PODOLIA.

PODOLIA hath on the North *Volhinia*, part of *Lituania*, and the great Empire of *Russia*; on the South *Moldavia*, from which it is parted by the River *Tyras*, now called *Niester*; on the West *Russia Nigra*; extending Eastward through vast uninhabited Countries as far as to the *Euxine* Sea. The reason of the name I find no-where guessed at. The people are for the most part of the same nature and original with the *Russians*, to whose Empire it formerly belonged also, till gained (if such a Subjection as they give the King may be called a gaining) to the Crown of *Poland*, at such time as the *Russes* were inthralled to the power of the *Tartars*.

The Country is generally so fertile, that the Husbandman is accustomed to reap an hundred for one, in regard it bears at one Ploughing for three years together; the Countryman being put to no farther trouble, than at the end of the first and second years to shake the Corn a little, as he reaps or loads it; that which so falls serving as Seed for the next year following. The Meadow-ground is so strangely rich and luxuriant, and the Grass so high, that a man can hardly see the Heads or Horns of his Cattel; of so swift a growth, that in three days it will cover a Rod which is thrown into it, and in few more so hide a Plough, that it is not an easie work to find it. If these things seem beyond belief, let *Maginus*, who reporteth them, bear the blame thereof; though better take it on his word, than go so far to disprove him. And yet, which adds much unto the Miracle, the ground is in most places so hard and stony, that there need six yoke of Oxen to break it up; to the great toil both of the Cattel and the men. It is also said that in this Country there are great Flocks of Sheep, many Herds of Oxen, abundance of wild Beasts, and great store of Honey. And yet for all this Plenty and abundance of all things necessary, the Country for the most part, especially towards the East, is but meanly inhabited, by reason of the frequent Incursions of the *Tartars* bordering next unto it, who have so wasted it in times past, and thereby so discouraged the people from Building, Planting, and all other works of Peace and Husbandry, that in so large and rich a Country there is nothing to be seen but some scattered Houses, few Villages, and not above five Towns of note, *viz.* 1. *Orza* above at the Influx of the *Borysthenes* or *Nieper* into the *Euxine* Sea. 2. *Vaszow*, at the fall of the River *Bog* into that of *Nieper*. 3. *Bracław* more high upon the *Bog*. 4. *Camieniecz*, on the Borders of *Russia Nigra*, built by some divine hand, as it were, amongst the Precipices of high and inaccessible Rocks, and so well fortified withal, that it is impregnable; as is apparent by the many and great Repulses which the *Turks*, *Tartarians* and *Valachians* have received before it, with much shame and loss. 5. *Lemburg*, remarkable for the Sawces or Salt-meats which they send thence into other Countries. The former fortunes of this Province, and how it was brought under the Crown of *Poland*, (with which it was incorporated long since) we shall see anon.

6. RUSSIA NIGRA.

RUSSIA NIGRA hath on the East *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and *Moldavia*; on the West *Massovia*, and *Poland* specially so called; on the North *Lituania* and *Podlassia*; and on the South the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains. It is called also *Roxolania*, from the *Roxolani*, a chief People of *Sarmatia Europæa*, and by some *Ruthenia*: but generally *Russia*, from the *Rossi* spoken of before in the Empire of *Russia*, who spread themselves over all these parts. Some hold that it was first called *Rossia*, which signifieth in the *Sclavonian* Language a *scattered Nation*, or a Nation disseminated and dispersed into many parts; and that this was the name generally of all that spake the *Sclavonian* Tongue, and followed the Religion and the Rites of the Church of *Greece*, extended from the Frozen Sea to the *Adriatick*, and from the *Euxine* to the *Baltick*. This and a greater Tract of ground I grant to have been heretofore possessed by divers Nations under the name of *Sclavonians*; a very considerable part of *Germany* and *Poland* being conquered by them. But for the name of *Russia*, given at first to all the *Russian* Empire,

Empire, diſtinguiſhed now into *Ruſſia Alba* and *Ruſſia Nigra*, I adhere unto my former Vote, conceiving that it came from the *Roſſi*, an *Armenian* People, inhabiting about Mount *Taurus*, who in the year 864, or thereabouts, attempted the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and after placed themſelves on the Northern Banks of the *Euxine*, getting ground of the *Sclavonians* to the North and Eaſt, till they had made themſelves Maſters of all *Ruſſia Alba*, *Lituania*, *Volhinia*, *Podolia*, and this *Ruſſia Nigra*. Diſtinguiſhed from the former by the adjunct of *Nigra*, after the deſtruction of that great Empire by the coming in of the *Tartars*, either from the colour of their Garments, or their black and more Southernly Complexion. In which regard it is called alſo *Ruſſia Meridionalis*, or the Southern *Ruſſia*.

The Country is generally fruitful, abounding in Horſes, Oxen, Sheep, Sables, and Foxes: ſuch ſtore of Bees, that they breed not only in Hives and hollow Trees, but in Rocks and Caves. Well watered both with Pools and Rivers, affording them great plenty of Fiſh, more naturally ſpawning here than in other places, inſomuch that if a Pond be digged, and ſpring accordingly, the Fiſh will breed therein of their own accord, without being brought from other waters. The greateſt want hereof is Wine, either ſupplyed with Mede, or from other places. And it is ſaid that in the Territory of *Chelm* the Branches of the Pine-trees, left upon the ground for three years together, will be converted into Stone.

The people are generally valiant, and ſo ſtrong of body, that they uſe Bows of 12 foot long. Being formerly governed by Dukes, they do but ill brook the name of King; which much induced the Kings of *Poland* to ſend Colonies of natural *Polonians* into moſt parts of the Country, inſomuch as moſt of the Knights and Gentry of it are of that Extraction, and follow the Religion of the *Church* of *Rome*; the Peaſants and original Inhabitants of it being more generally affected to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

Places of moſt importance in it are. 1. *Chelm*, in the Territory whereof it is affirmed that the Branches of Pine-trees, left upon the ground for three years together, are converted to Stone. 2. *Premiſlen*. 3. *Halitz*. 4. *Belzo*. 5. *Grodeck*, and 6. *Leopolis*, by the Natives called *Lemburg*, built by one *Leo* a *Moſcovite*; a Town of great Traffick, and an Archbiſhop's See, who is of the Religion of the Church of *Rome*. But the *Patriarch* of *Moſco* hath here alſo an Archbiſhop of his own ordaining, there being Churches both in the City it ſelf, and all *Ruſſia* generally, (as before was ſaid) which are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. There are alſo in this City ſome *Armenian* Merchants, who have a Church, a Biſhop, and ſome Prieſts of their own Religion.

Of the Affairs of this Province, and how it was a part once of the *Ruſſian* Empire, hath been ſaid already. Diſmembred from it by the *Tartars*, it had a while Dukes or Provincial Governours, ſubject and tributary unto thoſe Barbarians: as had alſo *Podolia*, its next neighbour. Both, conquered by the *Polander*, were for a time kept under by ſtrong hand and the power of Garriſons. But being upon all occaſions apt to revolt, by reaſon of the hard hand which the Kings held over them, (by whom they were treated rather like Slaves than Subjects) they were aſſured unto the State, by giving the ſame Liberties and Immunities, both for the Nobility and the Commons, which the natural *Polonians* had; and by that means made Fellow-members of that Commonwealth. The Act of *Ladiſlaus* the 6. the Son of *Jagello*, imitating therein the ancient *Romans*, who much augmented their Forces, and aſſured their Eſtates, by communicating the Freedom of *Rome* and the Priviledges of *Latium* to many of the conquered Provinces: and was imitated by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus* and *Stephen*, his Succeſſors in their incorporating of *Pruſſia*, *Lituania*, and *Livonia*, to the Crown of *Poland*.

7. MASSOVIA.

MASSOVIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Lituania*, on the Weſt with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with *Pruſſia* and *Podlaſſia*, on the South with *Ruſſia Nigra* or *Meridionalis*. So called from *Maſſo*, one of the Dukes hereof, who in the year 1045, being vanquiſhed by *Caſimire* Duke of *Poland*, fled into *Pruſſia*, and there unfortunately died.

The Country is large, and for the moſt part full of Woods, where they find ſtore of Bugles and wild Bulls. The people are ſtrong, valiant, and couragious in War; differing little from the *Polonians* in Speech, Manners, or Apparel, ſave that they uſe a kind of Whiſtling, which the others do not. The principal Towns of it are, 1. *Warſaw*, the chief of the Province, and heretofore the Reſidence of the Duke or Prince; remarkable for the beſt Mede or Metheglin. 2. *Czirsko*. 3. *Poltowskie*. 4. *Gadziek*. 5. *Lozara*. 6. *Droic*, the Seat of a *Palatine*, but not elſe obſervable.

This Province was once ſubject to Princes of its own, not ſubject or ſubordinate unto any Superiour. Of which number that *Maſſo* was one, from whom it was named *Maſſovia*. In the years 1246 and 1260, being ſtrangely waſted and diſtreſſed by *Mindoy* Duke of *Lituania*, they were fain to put themſelves under the power of the *Polander*; by whom they were made the Portion of the ſecond Son of that Kingdom. But *John* and *Staniſlaus*, the two laſt Dukes hereof, dying without Iſſue, it returned unto the Kings of *Poland*, and became incorporate to that Crown, and priviledged in the Election of the King, and all matters which concern the publick, as all others of the *Polonians* are, *Anno* 1526.

8. PODLASSIA.

PODLASSIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Volhinia*, on the Weſt with *Pruſſia*, on the North with *Lituania*, and on the South with *Maſſovia* and *Ruſſia Nigra*. The reaſon of the name I know not. The Country differs not much from thoſe before: the people being a mixt generation of *Ruſſes*, *Moſcovites*, and *Polonians*, partake a little of the Manners and Garb of thoſe ſeveral Nations from which they lineally are deſcended.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Bielsko*. 2. *Bransko*. 3. *Suras*; all of them having fair and ample Territories. 4. *Tycockzyn*, ſtrongly fortified and well garriſoned, as being the place where the King's Treaſures are kept. 5. *Knyſſin*, beautified with a Royal Palace, and a pleaſant Park, wherein are ſtore of wild Beaſts for Hunting, and Fiſh-ponds very well repleniſhed. 6. *Narew*. 7. *Vaſilkow*, and 8. *Auguſtow*, a very ſtrong Town, built and well fortified by *Sigiſmund Auguſtus*, and by him thus named, *Anno* 1569, at what time he diſmembred this Province from *Lituania*, to which before it appertained, uniting it for ever to the Crown of *Poland*.

9. PRUSSIA.

PRUSSIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Lituania* and *Podlaſſia*, on the Weſt with *Pomerania*, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the South

with *Poland* and *Maſſovia*. Called firſt *Boruſſia*, from the *Boruſſi*, who ſubdued it, (of whom more anon) which by an eaſie alteration was changed into *Pruſſia*, by which name it is ſtill called.

The Country is extended all along the *Baltick* Sea, from the City of *Dantzick* in the Weſt, to *Labiaw* on the Mouth of the *Maillank*, Eaſt, for the ſpace of 50 *Poliſh* miles; and from *Torne*, bordering on *Maſſovia*, to *Memel* in the Confines of *Lituania*, 58 miles of the ſame meaſure. The Air thereof is very mild and temperate, the Soil both profitable and pleaſant; full of Lakes and Rivers ſtored with Fiſh, plentiful of Corn and other Neceſſaries, and well clad with Foreſts, which yield them Game for Hunting, rich Skins for profit, and abundance of Honey; of which laſt they make Mede for their own uſe, (their ordinary Drink where there is no Wine) and ſell the reſt unto the Merchant. But the Commodity wherein they do excel their neighbours is their plenty of Amber, which is the juice of a Stone which groweth like a Coral in a Mountain of theſe *Baltick* Seas, covered quite with water, and ſhunned by Marriners three leagues off, for fear of Shipwrack: the Mountain is reaſonable large, about 50 yards high of *Engliſh* meaſure. And when any Tempeſt riſeth in theſe Northern Seas, eſpecially in *September* and *December*, the Liquor by violence thereof is rent from the Rock, and caſt into divers Havens, and on divers Coaſts of this Country, and ſometimes upon thoſe of *Sweden* and *Pomerania*: the people leaping into the Sea when it rageth moſt, whence they take up firſt ſome ſtore of Weeds, after that this Liquor, which being taken out of the water hardeneth like to Coral. Beſides the beauty hereof, and the quality it hath of attracting Straws and Iron, as the Adamant doth, burning like Pitch, and others of this nature; it is excellent good for ſtoping Bloud, all kind of Agues, Falling-ſickneſs, Dropſies, Stone, Cholick, weakneſs of Stomach, Head-ach, and the Yellow-jaundice.

The people, eſpecially the Gentry, deſcend from the *Germans*, and retain much of their nature; having more Art and Induſtry than the other *Polonians*, and being more tenacious of their ancient Cuſtoms. They were Idolaters for long time together, converted firſt unto the Faith in the time of the Emperour *Frederick* the 2. by whoſe ſetting on they were ſubdued by the Order of the *Dutch* Knights, *An.* 1215, and either won or forced to the Chriſtian Faith. As Chriſtians, governed ſince the plantation of the Goſpel by the Biſhops of *Culm*, *Warmia*, *Sambia*, and *Pomeſan*, Suffragans to the Archbiſhop of *Gneſna*; under whom thoſe parts do ſtill continue which have not yet forſaken the Church of *Rome*: the *Lutherans*, *Calvinians*, and other ſeparate Congregations diſtinct from them, having their own Forms both of Doctrine and Diſcipline.

Few Provinces of the North are better watered than this is, both for Lakes and Rivers: ſome of the Lakes being ſeven *Dutch* miles in compaſs, and well ſtored with Fiſh. The Rivers are 12 in number; that is to ſay, 1. the *Viſtula*. 2. *Chronus*. 3. *Nogat*. 4. *Elbing*. 5. *Vaſera*. 6. *Paſſaria*. 7. *Alla*. 8. *Pregel*. 9. *Oſſa*. 10. *Drebnicz*. 11. *Lica*, and 12. *Lavia*, all plentifully ſtored with Fiſh; beſides a large Sea-coaſt both for Trade and Fiſhing, no ſmall commodity to the Natives.

The Country, formerly divided into twelve Dukedoms, (ſo they called the parts and fractions of it) was by the induſtry of the *Dutch* Knights ſo adorned and beautified, (after they had once brought it under their Obedience) that there were no fewer than 72 Caſtles and 62 good Towns of their foundation. Which number being much increaſed in theſe later times, hath made it the moſt flouriſhing part of the whole Kingdom of *Poland*. But the Order of theſe Knights being ſuppreſſed in this Country by an Agreement betwixt *Sigiſmund* the firſt, King of *Poland*, and *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the laſt Great Maſter of the Order; both Town and Country are divided between the Succeſſors of the ſaid *Albert*, as Dukes of *Pruſſia*, and of the ſaid *Sigiſmund*, as Kings of *Pole*: the Dukedoms or Diviſions of *Hogerland*, *Warmia*, *Galindia*, *Michelow*, *Culmigeria*, with the City of *Marienburg*, the Soveraignty of *Dantzick* and *Melving*, with the whole Country of *Pomerellia*, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the *Viſtula*, being allotted to the King; the reſidue, containing the Diviſions of *Schalavonia*, *Sambia*, *Natangia*, *Nadravia*, *Bartonia*, *Sudavia*, and *Pomeſania* (except the City and Territory of *Marienburg*) to the Dukes of *Pruſſia*.

Chief Towns belonging to the Duke are, 1. *Memel*, a well-frequented Port, the Mart-Town for the Commodities of *Lituania*, which are brought hither, and here bought by the foreign Merchant: part of this Province interpoſing betwixt *Lituania* and the *Baltick*. 2. *Koningsberg*, as the *Dutch*, *Regimont*, as the *French*, and *Mons Regius*, as the *Latines* call it; ſituate in the Province of *Sambia*, at the bottom of a Gulf or Bay, where the *Pregel* falleth into the *Baltick* Sea: built by the *Dutch* Knights in the year 1260, and made an Univerſity by *Albert* the firſt Duke hereof 1225, the Seat and principal Reſidence of his Succeſſors; as alſo of the Biſhop of *Sambia*, in *Latine* called *Sambienſis*, by the name of the Province. 3. *Mulmeburg*, founded by the *Dutch* Knights, *Anno* 1279. 4. *Brandenburg*, on the South-ſide of that Bay, but more near the Sea; built, as I gueſs, by ſome of the Great Maſters of that Family. 5. *Ragnitz*, the fartheſt Town of note towards *Lituania*. 6. *Angersburg*, in *Schalavonia*; as was alſo *Ragnitz*. 7. *Nordenburg*, in *Bartonia*. 8. *Ortelsburg*, in *Galindia*: of which little memorable. 9. *Marienwerder*, the fartheſt of the Duke's Eſtate towards the *Viſtula*, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Pomeſan*. Beſides which there are reckoned in this Diviſion 80 good Towns more, and about 54 Caſtles, though not of much obſervation in the courſe of Story.

Chief Towns pertaining to the King are, 1. *Braunsberg*, upon a Bay of the *Baltick* Sea which they call *Friſch-Haffe*; a Town of good Trade by reaſon of the commodious Haven, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Biſhop of *Warmia*. 2. *Frawenberg*, on the ſame Bay, not far from *Braunsberg*. 3. *Reſel*, the chief Town of the Dioceſe and Dukedom of *Warmia*. 4. *Strasburg*, in *Michelow*, confining on *Poland* ſpecially ſo called; at the Siege whereof by *Guſtavus Adolphus* King of *Sweden*, Anno 1628, *Elias Trype*, one of the Engineers of that King, found out the uſe of Leathern Ordnance, which afterwards did that King great ſervice in the Wars of *Germany*. 5. *Culm*, on the River *Viſtula*, a Biſhop's See. 6. *Marienburg*, on the *Nogat*, built by the *Dutch* Knights, *Anno* 1302, and made the Seat of the Great Maſters of their Order, tranſlated firſt from *Ptolemais* or *Acon* in *Syria* to the City of *Venice*, from thence to *Marpurg*, and at laſt to this place by *Sifride* the twelfth Great Maſter of it, whoſe conſtant Reſidence in this Town occaſioned the Biſhop of *Culm* to remove thither alſo. A very fair and well-built City, the chief of thoſe which do belong to the King of *Poland*: by him ſo well garriſoned, and furniſhed with ſuch ſtore of Victuals, Ammunition, and other Neceſſaries, that it was thought able to hold out for a ſix years Siege. But it proved otherwiſe when beſieged by the King of *Sweden*, who took it in leſs ſpace than ſo many months, being on the ſetling of a Peace betwixt the Crowns rendred again unto the King of *Poland*. Beneath this Town, down towards the *Baltick*, is a pleaſant Iſland made by the *Nogat* and the *Weyſſel*, for the fertility of the Soil, and the great number of Houſes, Villages, and People, not equalled (for the muchneſs of it) in all this Country.

To

To this part alſo belongeth the fair Port of *Elbing*, (or *Melving*, as *Maginus* calls it) ſituate on the Bay of the *Baltick* called *Friſch Haſſe*; ſpoken of before, not far from a Fiſhful Lake; well traded, rich, and full of very wealthy Merchants; of great reſort from other Nations, and much frequented by the *Engliſh* Merchants, who have here their Staple for the *Baltick*: a ſmall, but neat and well-built City, and fortified with a very good Wall, governed after the manner of a free Eſtate or Commonwealth, under the Patronage and Protection of the Kings of *Poland*, in like ſort as *Dantzick* alſo is, of which more anon.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Venedi*, the moſt potent Nation of this Tract, extended all along the Coaſt of the *Baltick*, from them by *Ptolemy* called *Sinas Venedicus*: containing under them the *Gythones*, *Phini*, *Sulanes*, *Phrungundiones*, *Avarini*; and more within the Land the *Sodini* and *Galindæ*, whoſe name the Dukedom or Province of *Galindia* doth ſtill retain. But great and potent though they were, they were ſubdued by the *Boruſſi*, inhabiting at the foot of the *Riphæan* Mountains, who, weary of their own cold and barren Dwellings, removed into the Weſtern parts, and, vanquiſhing the *Venedi*, and thoſe other Nations, poſſeſſed themſelves of this Country, which they called *Boruſſia*, now by us named *Pruſſia*. By *Venedus* one of their Princes, having twelve Sons in all, it was divided into 12 Provinces or Dukedoms, one for every Son; continuing by that means diſtracted into divers petit Principalities, till the coming of the *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, ſent hither by *Frederick* the ſecond, *Anno* 1215, by whom the Provinces or Dukedoms of *Sudavia*, *Michelow*, and the greateſt part of *Nadravia*, were laid waſte and deſolate: the reſt ſubmitted to their power, and received the Goſpel. After this it continued ſubject to this Order of Knights till the year 1419, when, weary of their Extortion and the continual change of Maſters, they revolted to the King of *Poland*, to whom they offered their Obedience: ſeconded by the yielding up of *Marienburg*, with many other Towns and Caſtles, ſold to King *Caſimir* by the Garriſon-Souldiers, *Anno* 1457, for 476000 Florens. But the Knights diſdaining to be ſo dealt withall, and refuſing to ſwear Allegiance to the Kings of *Poland*, they brake out into open War, which was managed with variable Succeſs on both ſides; *Ludovicus*, the then Great Maſter, being ſo ſucceſsful at the firſt, that he once beat the King out of the Field, routed his whole Army, ſlew 30000 of his men upon the place, and took 136 of his chief Nobility: nor was he vanquiſhed at laſt, but by the Treachery and Rebellion of his own people. In the end, wearied and worn out on both ſides by continual Wars, *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, then Great Maſter, having for 14 years together couragiouſly maintained the Honour of his Order, and for the four laſt years importuned in vain the Aſſiſtance of the Emperour and Princes of *Germany*, began to think of ſome Expedient to compound the buſineſs. Being inclined to *Luther*'s Doctrines, and willing to advance himſelf unto this Eſtate, he ſecretly practiſed with *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, to end the War to the advantage of both parties. By whom at laſt it was agreed, That *Albert* ſhould relinquiſh his Order, and ſurrender all *Pruſſia* into the hands of the King: That the King, poſſeſſing the Weſtern parts, with the Town of *Marienburg*, and the Soveraignty of *Dansk* and *Melving*, ſhould inveſt *Albert* with the Title of Duke of *Pruſſia*, eſtating on him and the Heirs of his body the whole Eaſtern Moiety, containing the Provinces or Dukedoms before ſpecified: and finally, That *Albert* and his Heirs ſhould hold the ſaid Eſtate as Homagers to the Crown of *Poland*, taking place in all Aſſemblies at the King's right hand. According to this Agreement, *Anno* 1525, *Albert*, attired in the compleat habit of Maſter of the *Dutch* Order, preſents himſelf humbly on his knees before *Sigiſmund* at *Cracow*, the King then ſitting on his Throne. The King, raiſing him from the ground, cauſed him to put off thoſe Robes, and attire himſelf in a Ducal Habit: which done, an Inſtrument was read and publiſhed, whereby the King conferred upon him and the Heirs of his body the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*, to be held of him and his Succeſſors Kings of *Poland*. An Act at which the whole Order were extremely incenſed; but they could not help it, and thereupon retired into *Germany*, where there were ſome good Lands left, to maintain ſuch of them as had no mind to quit that Military honour; leaving their old Eſtates in *Pruſſia* to the King, and the Duke, whoſe Succeſſors have hitherto enjoyed their part of it, with the Title of

Dukes of *PRUSSIA*.

1525 1. *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, Son of *Frederick* Marqueſs of *Onoldsbech*, or *Onsbach*, created Maſter of the Order by the Emperour *Maximilian*, *Anno* 1511, and the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia* by *Sigiſmund* the firſt of *Poland*, *Anno* 1525, founded the Univerſity of *Koningsberg*, *Anno* 1544.

1568 2. *Albert-Frederick*, Son of *Albert* the firſt Duke, married *Mary-Eleanor*, Daughter of *William* Duke of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c.

3. *Anne*, Eldeſt Daughter of Duke *Albert-Frederick*, Ducheſs of *Pruſſia*, brought the Eſtate in Marriage to

4. *John-Sigiſmund*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, who was confirmed therein by *Sigiſmund* the 3. of *Poland*, pretending an Eſcheat thereof for want of Heirs-males of the body of *Albert* the firſt Duke.

5. *George-William*, Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg* in right of his Father, Duke of *Pruſſia* in right of the Lady *Anne* his Mother, and of *Cleve*, *Gulick*, *Berg*, &c. by Deſcent from *Mary-Eleanor* his Grandmother.

6. *Frederick-William*, Son of *George-William* Marqueſs and Elector of *Brandenburg*, Duke of *Pruſſia*, *Cleve*, *Gulick*, and *Berg*; of whoſe Inveſtiture in the Dukedom of *Pomeren* and other large and goodly Seigniouries we have ſpoken elſewhere.

As for the Government of this Province ſtanding thus divided, that of the Duke is more Monarchical than that of the King; the one being abſolute and uncontrollable in his Eſtates, the other ſubject to the great Council of *Poland*. If any difference grow between them, Delegates appointed by the King, but taking a new Oath to do equal Juſtice, either at *Marienburg* or *Elbing*, do compound the buſineſs: who, together with ſome other of the Duke's nomination, receive all Appeals in which the Duke is intereſſed as one of the parties.

The Revenues of this Dukedom are thought to be 120000 Ducats yearly.

The Arms thereof are *Argent*, an Eagle *Vert*, membred and crowned *Or*, langued *Gules*.

10. *POMERELLIA*.

POMERELLIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Viſtula*, by it parted from *Pruſſia*, on the South with *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, on the North with the *Baltick* Sea, and on the Weſt with the Dukedom of *Pomerania*,

meranie, of which it was anciently a part, till ſeparated from it, and united to the Crown of *Poland* under this new name.

The Territory is ſmall, and conſequently not capable of many Towns and Cities of conſideration. Thoſe of moſt note are, 1. *Newenburg*, on the Banks of the *Viſtula*, or *Weſſel*. 2. *Dirſchaw*, or *Darſaw*, (in *Latine Darſovia*) a well-fortified Town and of great importance, at the Siege whereof, *Anno* 1627 *Guſtavus Adolphus*, King of *Sweden*, received the Order of the Garter. 3. *Dantzick*, in *Latine* called *Dantiſcum*, and ſometimes *Gedanum*, ſituate at the Mouth of the ſame River alſo; a fair and well-built City, the Houſes for the moſt part of Brick, and the reſt of Stone raiſed with great beauty and magnificence ſix or ſeven floors high; beautified with a fair Council-houſe for affairs of State, and many publick Gardens for diſport and exerciſe. It conſiſteth of three Cities, governed by as many Senates; the one called *Voorſtat*, or the fore-City; the ſecond *Altſtat*, or the old City, and the third *Reichſtat*, or the Emperour's City: but all incompaſſed with one Wall, and governed by one chief Senate or Common-Council choſen out of all three. A Biſhop's See, and the ſecond in eſteem and rank of all the *Hanſe*-Towns; of ſo great Trade, ſuch a noted Granary of all ſorts of Corn, iſſued from hence to ſupply the wants of other Countries, that 1000 Meaſures of Wheat (beſides other Commodities in proportion) are here daily ſold. Heretofore it was reckoned as Imperial, but now as a Free State, acknowledging the Kings of *Poland* for their Protectors, to whom they allow many Cuſtoms upon their Merchandiſe, and permit their Officers to remain there for receiving them. The firſt Town in the Kingdom of *Poland* which gave entrance to the Doctrines of *Luther*, *An.* 1525, but in ſo tumultuous a manner, that they that favoured his Opinions depoſed the old Common-Council-men, and created new ones of their own, prophaned the Churches, robbed them of their Ornaments, and ſhamefully abuſed the Prieſts and Religious perſons, aboliſhed the Maſs, and altered all things at their pleaſure. But by the coming of the King they grew ſomewhat quieter, leaving one Convent of Black Friers and two of Nuns, who ſtill enjoy the exerciſe of their Religion.

This Country, once a part of the Dukedom of *Pomeren*, was given by *Suantibore*, once Duke thereof, *Anno* 1107, to *Bugiſlaus* his ſecond Son; whoſe Poſterity enjoyed it till the year 1295, when *Meſtevin* 2. dying without Iſſue-male, gave it to *Primiſlaus* Duke of the *Polonians*, whoſe Succeſſors have ever ſince enjoyed it by that Donation. It is called *Pomerellia*, for diſtinction ſake, from the firſt ſeparating of it from the Dukedom of *Pomeren*.

II. POLAND.

POLAND properly and ſpecially ſo called is bounded on the Eaſt with *Maſſovia* and *Podlaſſia*, on the Weſt with *Sileſia* and the Marquiſate of *Brandenburg*, on the North with *Pruſſia* and *Pomerellia*, and on the South with the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Hungary*. It is in length 480 *Italian* miles, 300 of the ſame miles in breadth; and took this name (as afore is ſaid) from the word *Pole*, ſignifying as much as plain, the Country being plain and level, little ſwelled with Hills.

The Air hereof is pure and healthy, but ſharp and cold; the Country plain, ſhaded with thick dark Woods, parts of the *Hercynian*, full of wild Beaſts for Hunting, and of Bees for Honey, which they have here in great abundance, together with ſuch plenty of Grain, but of Rie eſpecially, by reaſon of the continual breaking up of new Grounds gained out of the Foreſts, that it may be called the Granary or Store-houſe of the Weſtern parts of *Europe*: the Grain is ſent down the *Weyſſel* unto *Dantzick*, and thence tranſported by the Merchant into other Countries, according to their ſeveral wants.

The Character of the People we have had before; adding now only, that in matters of War they are ſtout and reſolute; ſo forwards in giving the Charge and Purſuit of the Enemy, that *John Vaſiliwich*, the Great Duke of *Moſcovie*, comparing them with the Souldiers of his own Dominions, was wont to ſay, that the *Moſcovites wanted a Spur to drive them forwards, and the* Polander *had need of a Bridle to hold them back*. Their Language is the *Sclavonian* Tongue; moſt generally ſpoken alſo in the reſt of the Provinces, but with ſome difference in the Dialect or Pronunciation.

It is divided commonly into two parts, the Greater and the leſſer *Poland*. The *GREATER*, lying wholly on the Weſtern ſide of the *Weyſſel*, and ſo accounted anciently as a part of *Germany*, contains 9 Diviſions, under the Juriſdiction of the 9 *Palatines* of 1. *Poſna*. 2. *Kaliſch*. 3. *Siradia*. 4. *Lancicia*. 5. *Vladiſlaw*. 6. *Brzeſtye*. 7. *Rava*. 8. *Ploczko*, and 9. *Dobrzin*; each of them ſo called from ſome Town of note. The chief whereof, and of the reſt contained in them, are, 1. *Poſna*, a Biſhop's See, and the principal of the Greater *Poland*, ſeated amongſt the Hills on the River *Warta*, built of Free-ſtone, with very large Suburbs beyond the River, but much ſubject unto Inundations, which adde much ſtrength unto the place; of great reſort by reaſon of the Marts or Fairs holden twice a year. 2. *Koſcien*, ſituate amongſt Mariſhes, and fortified with a double Wall. 3. *Oſtrezow*, bordering on *Sileſia*, begirt with Woods. 4. *Gneſna*, the ancienteſt Town of *Poland*, founded by *Lechus* their firſt Prince, the Seat of him and his Succeſſors; till removed to *Cracow*; ſituate in *Kaliſch*, and by old preſcription the firſt place for Inauguration of the Kings of *Pole*, in regard that here Prince *Boleſlaus*, the firſt King of this Country, received the Regal Diadem at the hands of *Otho* the third. The Town is well walled, and the See of an Archbiſhop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, by ancient Priviledge the Pope's Legat for all *Sarmatia Europæa*, and in the abſence of the King or *Interregnum*, the Vicar-general of the Kingdom, having power to ſummon the Diets, to conclude and publiſh their Decrees. 5. *Pietrokow*, a walled Town in the *Palatinate* or Diviſion of *Siradia*, ſituate on a mooriſh ſoil; the place in former times of the general Diets, ſince removed to *Warſaw*. 6. *Vladiſlaw*, on the *Weyſſel* or *Viſtula*, a Biſhop's See. 7. *Bedgoſt*, a walled Town on the *Bard*, a navigable River, conveying the Merchandiſe of theſe parts into the *Viſtula*. 8. *Kruſwick*, in *Brzeſtye*, built of Wood, ſtanding on a great Lake named *Gopla*, in the Caſtle whereof *Popielus* the 2. Duke of *Poland*, was after a ſtrange manner devoured with Rats ſwarming out of the Lake. 9. *Ploczko*, upon the *Viſtula*, a walled Town, and a Biſhop's See, with a Caſtle to it. 10. *Warſaw*, upon the Banks of the ſame River; of no great note in former times, but of late grown the beſt frequented and moſt traded Town in all the Province: honoured for the moſt part with the Court of the King, the holding of all publick Diets, (removed from *Pietrokow* to this place) & the Tranſaction of all buſineſſes both of Peace and War, which muſt needs draw to it great reſort of all ſorts of people; the fruitfulneſs of the Soil and commodiouſneſs of the ſituation rendring it very capable of thoſe publick Meetings. 11. *Mlawa*, bordering on the Dukedom of *Pruſſia*.

The *LESSER Poland*, lying on the South of the Greater, and divided by the River *Weyſſel*, comprehendeth only three Diviſions, under the Government of the *Palatines* of 1. *Cracow*. 2. *Sandomir*. and 3. *Lublin*. Principal Cities of

of the which are, 1. *Cracow*, upon the *Weyſſel*, (called in *Latine Cracovia*) a Biſhop's See, the chief of all the Kingdom, the Seat of the Prince, and the Sepulture of the former Kings; by *Ptolemy* called *Carodunum*; fortified with a double Wall (of the old faſhion) a deep Ditch, the Caſtle of *Vanel* ſituate on the top of an high Rock, and beautified with an Univerſity, or general Study of good Arts and Sciences. The Buildings are more fair than elſewhere in *Poland*, of Free-ſtone, and four Stories high; but for the moſt part covered with Shingles, or Tiles of wood: in the midſt is a large Market-place, in form quadrangular; and in the middle of that the Common-Council-houſe, about which are many Shops of Merchants. On one ſide of it ſtandeth the Cathedral Church: and on the Eaſt-ſide of the City the Palace Royal, high ſeated on an Hill overlooking both the Town and Country, fair and well built, of form ſomewhat near a Quadrangle, but lying open to the South without any Buildings above the Wall, affording thereby to the Gallery, being on the North-ſide of the Caſtle, the more excellent Proſpect. 2. *Lelow*, a walled Town with a Caſtle, on the River *Bialo*. 3. *Sandomir*, a walled Town with a Caſtle alſo, ſeated on a Hill, under which runs the *Viſtula* or *Weſſel*. 4. *Wiſliczca*, a walled Town amongſt Mariſhes, encompaſſed with the River *Nid*. 5. *Luhlin*, a walled Town, but more ſtrongly fortified by the Mariſhes and waters with which it is environed; remarkable for three yearly Marts, drawing hither Merchants from moſt parts adjoyning, as alſo *Moſcovites*, *Armenians*, *Turks* and *Graecians*. The *Jews*, inhabiting the greateſt part of the Suburbs, have here their Synagogue; making the Town, eſpecially at the time of thoſe Marts, a Medley of all Nations and Religions. 6. *Caſimiria*, on the *Weyſſel*, ſo named from the Founder of it, a King of *Poland*.

The old Inhabitants of this Country were the *Arii*, *Helveronæ*, *Elyſii*, and the *Naharvali*, parts of the *Suevi Lygii* ſpoken of by *Tacitus*, all of them lying on the *Dutch* ſide of the *Weyſſel*, by conſequence within the Bounds of the ancient *Germany*: the people of all the reſt of the Provinces before deſcribed being of the *Sarmatian* Race, next neighbours to the *Germans*, and not much unlike them in Perſons, Cuſtoms, or Conditions. But theſe diſperſed and ſcattered Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, being united in the common name of *Sclaves*, part of them ſetled in that part which we now call *Poland*, at that time reckoned and accounted of as a part of *Germany*. The time of their firſt coming hither, and the manner of their Government when firſt ſetled here, is not very well known. But for the firſt it is moſt certain, that it was ſome time, and that not long, after the death of *Mauritius* the Eaſtern Emperour: and for the next it is as certain, that on the coming of *Lechus*, a *Croatian* who fled his Country for a Murther, with his Brother *Zechius*, they ſetled into a more conſtant form of Government than before they did. For *Lechus*, ſeeing his Brother's good Succeſs in *Bohemia*, where the *Sclaves* received him for their Prince, paſſed into *Poland*, the next Province, and was as chearfully received by the *Sclaves* thereof, who looked upon him as a Prince of their own Extraction, and without quarrel or competition ſubmitted themſelves to his Commands, *Anno* 650, or thereabouts. Of this there is good *conſtat* amongſt our Authors. But neither the names or number of his Succeſſors do occur in Story till the time of *Crocus*, the Founder of *Cracovia*, the chief City of *Poland*, and the Legiſlator of this People. After this, the Succeſſion of their Princes and the ſucceſs of their Affairs becomes more certain: the Eſtate hereof being much improved by the Conqueſt of many *Sarmatian* Countries, all which together conſtitute and make up the Kingdom of *Poland*, ſo called from this predominating and prevailing Province. The ſum of their Affairs is this. The Poſterity of *Crocus* failing in *Popielus* the ſecond, *Piaſtus* is elected Duke; the Princes from that time forwards becoming Elective, but always with reſpect to the next of bloud. In the time of *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, they received the Goſpel, *Anno* 963. *Boleſlaus* the Son of *Mieciſlaus* was the firſt who had the Title of a King, conferred upon him by the Emperor *Otho* the third about the year 1001, relinquiſhed by *Vladiſlaus* the firſt, and not reſumed again till the time of *Primiſlaus* Duke of *Poſna*, Anno 1300, after which it became perpetual. In the perſon of this *Primiſlaus Pomerellia* is united to the State of *Poland*, Anno 1295; in that of *Jagello*, or *Vladiſlaus* the fifth, the great Dukedom of *Lituania*, incorporated into this Body as a Member of it in the time of *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus*. By *Vladiſlaus* the ſixth, Son of *Jagello*, *Podolia*, and *Ruſſia Nigra* were alſo added; by *Sigiſmund* the firſt, *Pruſſia* and *Maſſovia*; *Podlaſſia* by *Sigiſmund-Auguſtus*, who alſo took *Volhinia* out of *Lituania*; by *Stephen*, the actual poſſeſſion of the greateſt part of *Livonia*; by *Sigiſmund* the third, a Title to the Crown of *Sweden*. The Princes follow in this order.

Dukes and Kings of *POLAND*.

A. Ch.

694 1. *Lechus* of *Croatia*, the firſt Duke; whoſe Poſterity failing, twelve *Palatines* were choſen to direct Affairs, and the State became Ariſtocratical.
2. *Crocus*, the Legiſlator of *Poland*.
3. *Lechus* II. Son of *Crocus*.
4. *Venda*, the Daughter of *Crocus*, and Siſter of *Lechus* the ſecond.
5. *Leſcus* the firſt.
6. *Leſcus* II.
7. *Leſcus* III. Contemporary with *Charles* the Great.
8. *Popielus*, Son of *Leſcus* the third.
9. *Popielus* II. devoured in moſt horrid manner by Rats and Mice, together with his Wife and Children, the laſt of the Poſterity or Houſe of *Crocus*.

800 10. *Piaſtus*, the firſt Duke elected.
11. *Zemovitus*, Son of *Piaſtus*.
12. *Leſcus* IV. Son of *Zemovitus*.
13. *Nemomyſlaus*, Son of *Leſcus* the 4.
14. *Mieciſlaus*, Son of *Nemomyſlaus*, the firſt Chriſtian Prince of the *Polonians*, founded the Biſhopricks of *Cracow* and *Gneſna*.

1000 15. *Boleſlaus*, Son of *Mieciſlaus*, the firſt who had the Title of King conferred on him by *Otho* 3.
1025 16. *Mieciſlaus* II. Son of *Boleſlaus*.
1041 17. *Caſimir*, Son of *Mieciſlaus*.
1059 18. *Boleſlaus* II. Son of *Caſimir*, depoſed, and died an Exile in *Hungary*.
1082 19. *Vladiſlaus*, Brother of *Boleſlaus* the ſecond, abandoned the Title of King, and only uſed that of Prince or Duke.
1203 20. *Boleſlaus* III. Son of *Vladiſlaus*, Duke of *Poland*.
1140 21. *Vladiſlaus* II. Son of *Boleſlaus* the 3. outed by his Brethren, & at laſt eſtated in *Sileſia*, united formerly to *Poland* from the time of *Lechus*.
1146 22. *Boleſlaus* IV. Brother of *Vladiſlaus* the ſecond.
1174 23. *Mieciſlaus* III. Brother of *Boleſlaus* and *Vladiſlaus*, depoſed by his Brother *Caſimir*.
1178 24. *Caſimir* II. Brother of the three laſt Princes.
1195 25. *Leſcus* V. Son of *Caſimir* the ſecond, depoſed by *Mieciſlaus* the third.
1203 26. *Vladiſlaus* III. Son of *Mieciſlaus* the third, depoſed

deposed by *Lescus* the fifth, who again seised on the Estate.

1243 27. *Boleslaus* V. surnamed *Pudicus*.

1280 28. *Lescus* VI. surnamed *Niger*, the adopted Son of *Boleslaus*, and his Cousin-german once removed; after whose death, *An.* 1289, the Estate, being distracted into many Factions, was for some time without a Prince, setled at last on

1295 29. *Primislaus*, surnamed *Posthumus*, Duke of *Posna*, who again assumed the name of King, continued ever since by his Successors.

1296 30. *Vladislaus*, surnamed *Loctícus*, Brother of *Lescus Niger*, outed by *Wenceslaus* King of *Bohemia*, Anno 1300; after whose death, *Anno* 1306, he resumed the Estate.

1333 31. *Casimir* III. surnamed the Great, Son of *Vladislaus* the fourth, the first Establisher of the Kingdom after all those Troubles, died without Issue.

1371 32. *Lewis*, King of *Hungary*, Nephew or Grandson to *Charles* King of *Hungary* by *Elizabeth* the Sister of *Casimir*.

1383 33. *Heduigis*, the youngest Daughter of *Lewis*, her elder Sister *Mary* succeeding in the Realm of *Hungary*, chosen Queen of *Poland*; married to *Jagello* Duke of *Lituania*, Christened, and called *Vladislaus* the fifth.

1386 34. *Vladislaus* V. Duke of *Lituania*, elected King upon his marriage with Queen *Heduigis*.

1435 35. *Vladislaus* VI. Son of *Jagello*, or *Vladislaus* the fifth, by *Sophia*, Daughter of the Duke of *Kiovia*, King of *Hungary* also; slain at the Battel of *Varna* by *Amurath* the second, King of the *Turks*, and without Issue.

1447 36. *Casimir* IV. Brother of *Vladislaus*, first brought the Knights of *Prussia* under his Command; Knight of the Order of the Garter.

1493 37. *John-Albert*, the second Son of *Casimir*; his elder Brother *Vladislaus* being pretermitted, on his accepting of the Crowns of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*.

1502 38. *Alexander*, the third Son of *Casimir*.

1507 39. *Sigismund*, the fourth Son of *Casimir*, his elder Brethren dying without Issue: he suppressed the Order of the *Dutch* Knights in *Prussia*, and added part thereof unto his Estate.

1548 40. *Sigismund* II. surnamed *Augustus*, the last of the Male-issue of *Jagello*.

1574 41. *Henry*, Duke of *Anjou*, Son of *Henry* the second, the *French* King, chosen on the death of *Sigismund-Augustus*, the only Stranger to the Bloud in all this Catalogue. On the death of his Brother *Charles* the ninth, he departed secretly into *France*, where he succeeded by the name of *Henry* the third.

1579 42. *Stephen Bathor*, Vaivod of *Transylvania*, by the recommendation of *Amurath* the third, Emperour of the *Turks*, having first married *Anne*, Sister of *Sigismund* the second, is elected King. He united *Livonia* to the Crown, and had a great hand upon the *Moscovite*.

1587 43. *Sigismund* III. Son of *John* King of *Swethland*, and of *Katharine* his Wife, another of the Sisters of *Sigismund* the second, King of *Poland* and *Sweden*. He valiantly opposed *Osman* the Great *Turk*, invading his Dominions with an Army of 300000 fighting men.

1633 44. *Vladislaus* VII. eldest Son of *Sigismund* the third. After whose death the Kingdom was extremely embroiled by Factions, especially by the mutinous and seditious *Cosacks*, not fully setled by the Election of

1648 45. *Casimir* V. Brother of *Vladislaus* the seventh, now King of *Poland*, Anno 1648.

The Government of this Kingdom is nothing less than Monarchical. For though the first Dukes hereof were absolute Princes, and ruled after a Despotical manner, having power not only of the Estates of their Subjects, but of Life and Death, without Formalities of Law; yet when they once became Elective, they lost much of that power: which decayed so by little and little, that at the last the King is counted little better than a Royal Shadow; *Stat magni nominis umbra*, in the Poet's language. A Diminution which began first in the times of *Lewis* of *Hungary* and *Jagello* of *Lituania*; who, to gain the Succession to the Kingdom, contrary to Law, the one for his Daughter, the other for his Son, departed with many of their Royalties and Prerogatives, to buy the Voices of the Nobility. Since which time, the Nobility in all their Elections have so limited and restrained the King's Authority, and enlarged their own, that without their consent in Council he may neither make a War, nor treat of Peace, nor impose Taxes, nor alienate any of his Demeans, nor do any thing of importance which concerns the Publick: insomuch as *Botérus*, a great Statesman, doth expresly say, That the Government of *Poland* doth rather seem an Aristocracy than a Monarchy, a Commonwealth rather than a Kingdom. Besides, the King not only takes a solemn Oath at his Coronation to confirm all the Rights and Priviledges which have been granted to the Subject by his Predecessors, but adds this Clause, *Quòd si Sacramentum meum violavero, incolæ Regni nullam nobis obedientiam præstare tenebuntur*, that if he violate this Oath, his Subjects shall not be obliged to yield him any Obedience. Which, as *Bodinus* well observeth, doth rather savour of the condition of a Prince of the Senate, than of the Majesty of a King. He is respected accordingly by the Great ones, who look not on him as their King, but their elder Brother, (or perhaps not that) and reckon his Decrees but of three days lasting. Which notwithstanding, the King, once chosen and inthroned, hath sole power in many things without consulting with the Senate; as *viz.* in assembling Diets, chusing the Secular Counsellers, disposing absolutely of his Vassals and the Revenues of the Crown to what use he pleaseth; being sole Judge of the Nobility in Criminal Causes, which is a strong Bridle to rein them in with. By which, and either uniting himself unto the Clergy, or the well-forming of his party amongst the Nobility, he may do many things not allowable in strictness of Law: the power and influence which he hath in the publick Government being proportionable to the strength of his Wit and Brain.

And here it is to be observed, that none but the Clergy and Nobility have any Suffrage in the Election of the King: that is to say, the 26 *Palatines*, and 60 *Chastellans*, with the four *Marshals*, and some others of the principal Officers of State, in behalf of the Nobility; and the Archbishops and Bishops in the name of the Clergy; but of the Commons none at all. Which is the reason why there is so much care taken to preserve the Priviledges of the two first Orders, without obtaining any Immunities for relief of the third; who are most miserably oppressed on all sides, rather as Bondmen than Tenants in respect of their Lords, and not so much Subjects as plain Slaves in regard of the King; whereof somewhat hath before been noted. Nor are the Common people excluded only out of these Elections, but have no place nor Vote in the Council of State, or in any of the general Diets: the first consisting only of the Prelates, *Palatines*, *Chastel-*

Chaſtellans, and principal Officers ſpoken of before, the nominating of which pertaineth to the King alone; the other aggregated of all perſons of thoſe ſeveral Orders, and the Delegates of each Province and principal City, ſent thither for the reſt of the Nobility, whom they repreſent. Yet notwithſtanding this excluſion of the Commons from this Common Council, they there conclude of all matters of publick Intereſt not properly determinable by the great Council or Council of State: in which perhaps (eſpecially in the caſe of Taxes) the Commons may be more concerned than any other.

The Forces of this Kingdom or Commonwealth relate unto Land-Service only. For though they have a large Sea-coaſt upon the *Baltick*, yet the *Danes*, *Swedes* and *Hanſe*-Towns, having got the ſtart of them, keep them from doing much at Sea. And for Land-Forces, they conſiſt of Horſe eſpecially, whereof they are able to raiſe 80000, (that is to ſay, 10000 out of *Poland*, and 60 or 70000 out of *Lituania* and the Eaſtern Provinces) of which one half at leaſt are thought to be for action. And this ſeems probable enough, in regard of thoſe great Bodies of Horſe which *Stephen* and *Sigiſmund* the third had againſt the *Moſcovite*; whereof the one had 40000, and the other 30000, (beſides Draught-horſes) very well appointed. But for their Foot, they are not at ſo good a paſs, their Infantry being for the moſt part *Germans* or *Hungarians*, whom they hire for money; of which two Nations King *Stephen*, in his Enterpriſe upon *Livonia*, had no leſs than 16000 to convey his Ordnance. Upon confidence of this great number of Horſe, and their readineſs to ſerve upon all occaſions, the *Polanders* bear themſelves ſo high, that they neither fear the power of a foreign Eneny, nor regard the fortifying of their Towns, or the building of Fortreſſes on their Frontiers; boaſting that they are able to defend their Country without ſuch Helps againſt any Nation whatſoever, and truſting more to a Caſtle of Bones (as was couragiouſly ſaid by *Savage* an *Engliſh* Gentleman) than to a Caſtle of Stones. And for the raiſing of theſe Horſe, the Gentlemen of the Country are bound by their Tenure, (like the *Turks Timariots*) not only to ſerve in perſon for defence of the Realm, but to maintain a certain number of Horſe in continual readineſs; eſpecially in thoſe parts which lye next the *Tartar*, where their numbers are exceeding great, and with whom many times they join to afflict and harraſs their own Country, though in pay againſt them. Of theſe ſome ſerve in the manner of our Men at Arms, ſome like unto our Light-horſe, others like the *Tartars*. And theſe they call commonly by the name of *Coſſacks*, (or Adventurers:) a race of men trained up to ſteal, waſte, and depopulate, whereſoever they come, having little but their Swords to live by; a murtherous and wicked people, chiefly in their Drunkenneſs, and that not only towards Strangers, but their natural Countrymen. The cauſe of that Sedition which, for ſome years paſt, hath more depopulated and diſtracted that flouriſhing Kingdom than all the Armies of the *Turks*.

As for the Revenues of this King, they are computed at 600000 Crowns *per annum*, drawn chiefly out of Salt and ſome Mines of Silver: the Profits ariſing from the Demeans of the Crown being for the moſt part given away in Penſions and Gratuities to the *Palatines*, *Chaſtellans*, and other great men of the Realm, to make them the more pliant to his deſires. Moſt of which Sum is put up yearly in his Coffers, or expended in the purchaſe of Eſtates for his younger Sons: his Daughters being married at the publick Charge, and the expence of his Houſhold defrayed by the *Lituanians* and moſt part of *Poland*, for the time that he remains amongſt them. Nor do the Wars at any time exhauſt his Treaſure, in which caſe, by Decree of the Diets, he is inabled to lay Impoſitions and Taxes upon the people, levied in the way of Exciſe, or upon their Lands: which do amount to ſuch a Sum, that by means hereof King *Stephen* maintained War three years againſt the *Moſcovite*, without expending any thing of his own Revenue.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom are,

1. The *Marian* or *Dutch* Knights, inſtituted under the Walls of *Acon* or *Ptolemais* in the *Holy Land*; in a Church whereof, dedicated to the bleſſed Virgin, their Order was firſt allowed, from whence they are called *Equites Mariani*. The Inſtitution was in the year 1190. The firſt Great Maſter was *Henry Walpot*. The Chriſtians being beaten out of *Syria*, they firſt removed to *Venice*, and from thence to *Marpurg* in *Haſſia*; where, and in ſome other parts of *Germany*, they were endowed with fair Revenues: hence they were named *Equites Teutonici*, or the *Dutch* Knights. Sent into *Pruſſia* by the Emperour *Frederick* the ſecond *Anno* 1239, or called in, as ſome ſay, by the *Moſcovite* againſt the *Pruſſians*, they fixed their Seat at *Marienburg*, under *Sigifride* the ſecond Great Maſter, *Anno* 1340, or thereabouts. In the time of *Ludovicus*, the 18. Great Maſter, they were forced to ſubmit to *Caſimir* the fourth of *Poland*, *Anno* 1450; which was the occaſion of the long War betwixt them and the *Polanders*, continuing till the time of *Albert* of *Brandenburg*, the 24. and laſt Great Maſter in this Country; who ſurrendred his Order (as before is ſaid) to *Sigiſmund* the firſt, by whom he was created the firſt Duke of *Pruſſia*. Such of the Knights as diſreliſhed this action retired into *Germany*, where they choſe one *Walter Croneberg* Maſter of the Order: the Title being afterwards conferred upon *Maximilian*, one of the younger Sons of *Maximilian* the ſecond; but the Order ſenſibly decaying, and at this time of little eſtimation in the World.

2. Of the *Port glaive*, or *Sword-bearers*, (*Enſiferi* in *Latine*) confirmed by Pope *Innocent* the third, by whom they were ſent into *Livonia*, to defend the Preachers of the Goſpel againſt the Infidels, at the firſt Converſion of that Country. Being too weak to effect that buſineſs, they united themſelves with the *Dutch* Knights by the Popes authority, and, inſtead of *Knights of the Sword*, were called *Knights of the Croſs*. Separated therefrom in the time of *Vnivus* their Great Maſter, *Anno* 1541, the *Dutch* Knights being then diſpoſſeſſed of *Pruſſia*, and theſe inclining wholly to the Opinions of *Luther*, they a while ſubſiſted of themſelves. What became of them afterwards, and how the Order was extinguiſhed, hath been ſhewn already in *Livonia*.

The Arms of this Kingdom are quarterly, 1. *Gules*, an Eagle *Argent*, crowned and armed *Or*, for the Realm of *Poland*; and 2. *Gules*, a Chevalier armed *Cap-a-pee*, advancing his Sword, *Argent*, mounted on a barbed Courſer of the *ſecond*, for the Dukedom of *Lituania*.

There are in the whole Realm of *Poland*

Of the *Romiſh* Church, Archbiſhops 3.	Biſhops 19.
Of the *Greek* Church, Archbiſhops 2.	Biſhops 6.

Univerſities 4.

Viz.

Cracow, *Dantzick*,
Vilna, *Koningsberg*.

And ſo much for *POLAND*.

THE

Carpathian Mountains.

IN our way from *Poland* unto *Hungary* (whither now we go) we muſt of neceſſity paſs over the *CARPATHIAN MOUNTAINS*, the ancient Boundary of *Sarmatia Europæa* from the reſt of *Europe*. A long and craggy Ledge of Hills, which beginning near the City of *Presburg*, and the Borders of *Auſtria*, paſs on in a continual courſe till they come to the very *Euxine* Sea; and by that means not only divide *Hungary* from *Poland* ſpecially ſo called, but part *Tranſylvania* and *Moldavia*, two *Dacian* Regions, from *Ruſſia Nigra* and *Podolia*, Provinces of the *Polonian* Kingdom. By *Ptolomy*, in his ſecond Book, they are called *Montes Sarmatici*, (*Sarmaticæ Rupes* by *Solinus*) becauſe diſterminating the *Sarmatian* Nation (who poſſeſſed the moſt part of it) from *Germany* and the more Southern parts of *Europe*: and in his third Book by one name *Carpates*, or *Mons Carpatus*, ſo called (as ſome think) from the *Greek* word Καρπὸς, ſignifying *Fruit*, from the Fruitfulneſs of it, compared with the other Mountains in thoſe Northern Countries. At the preſent it is known by divers names, according to the Provinces and People which it paſſeth by. By the *Dutch* generally called *Wurtzgarten*, (or *a Garden of Herbs*) which alludeth to the name of *Carpatus*; by the *Hungars*, *Tarchzal*. Betwixt *Moravia* and *Hungaria*, where it is at the higheſt, it is called in the *Sclavonian* Tongue by the name of *Tatri*, in the *German Schneberg*: where it parteth *Tranſylvania* from *Ruſſia Nigra*, the *Ruſſes* call it *Bieſcid*, and the *Dutch*-men *Crapack*. A Chain of Hills of more length than fame; not much obſervable in Story, but for the ſhutting up the *Hungary Sclaves*, and others of thoſe Northern Nations which afterward invaded the *Roman* Provinces: nor of much notice at the preſent, but for giving an Original to many of the principal Rivers which water the Countries lying on both ſides of it. And therefore having nothing more to detain us here, we will paſs them over, and deſcend into the Plains of *Hungary*; where we ſhall meet again with the *Roman* Empire, the Territories and Affairs whereof we ſhall take along without interruption until we come unto the Banks of the great River *Tigris* and the *Caſpian* Sea. And ſo far alſo from this place we ſhall ſurvey the Fortunes and Eſtates of the *Turkiſh* Empire, of which the Realm of *Hungary* is the moſt Weſtern part or Province; not meeting either of them again till we come to *Ægypt*.

OF

HUNGARY.

HUNGARY is bounded on the Eaſt with *Tranſylvania* and *Walachia*, on the Weſt with *Stiria*, *Auſtria*, and *Moravia*; on the North with the *Carpathian* Mountains, which divide it from *Poland*, and on the South with *Sclavonia*, and ſome part of *Dacia*. It extendeth in length, from *Presburg*, along the *Danow*, to the Borders of *Tranſylvania*, for the ſpace of 300 *Engliſh* miles; and 190 of the ſame miles in breadth. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It lieth in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the 7. and 9. Climates, ſo that the longeſt Summers Day in the Southern parts is but 15 hours and a half, and not above 16 hours in the parts moſt North: taking up all that Tract of ground on the North-ſide of *Danubius* poſſeſſed by the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*, a *Sarmatian* People, and part alſo of *Pannonia Superior* and *Pannonia Inferior*, both on the South of that River.

But being it paſſeth generally under the name of *Pannonia*, we are to know that the *Romans*, having made themſelves Maſters of all *Pannonia*, divided it into four Provinces, part of the Dioceſe of *Illyricum Occidentale*: that is to ſay, 1. *Pannonia Superior*, bordering on *Noricum*, and containing part of the Higher *Auſtria*, and the moſt Weſtern parts of the preſent *Hungary*, on the South-ſide of the *Danow*. 2. *Pannonia Inferior*, containing the Eaſtern parts of *Hungary*, on the ſame ſide of the River. 3. *Valeria*, anciently part of *Pannonia Superior*, comprehending *Stiria* or *Stiermark*, in the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*. And 4. *Savia*, ſo called of the Rivers *Savus*, anciently part of *Pannonia Inferior*, now called *Windiſchland*, one of the Provinces or Subdiviſions of *Sclavonia*. But the name of *Pannonia* falling with the *Roman* Empire, and this Country being fallen into the hands of other Maſters, it took a new name from the Nations who poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and was called *Hungaria*, *quaſi Hunn-Avaria*, by a mixt name made of the *Hunni* and *Avares*, two *Scythian* Nations, who either ſucceſſively or conjunctly were poſſeſſed thereof; or from the *Hungari*, another race of *Scythians*, mentioned by *Jornandes* in his Book *De Rebus Geticis*, drawn into this Country by the

the Emperour *Arnulph*, to aid him in his War againſt *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*. This laſt I look on as moſt probable: the firſt as more probable than that of *Aventine*, and others of our later Writers, who finding a poor Province in the moſt North-eaſt point of the *Ruſſian* Empire called *Jugria*, (and by them *Jugaria*) would have the name of *Hungary* to be thence derived.

The people are ſtrong of Body, and rude of Behaviour, reſpecting neither the liberal Arts nor Mechanick Trades. The greateſt Aſperſion is the name of a Coward, which cannot be wiped off without the killing of a *Turk*: after which they are priviledged to wear a Feather, and by the number of their Feathers to ſhew how many *Turks* they have ſlain in Battel. They deſire Wars, and like no Trade better, being naturally ſlothful, (like the *Iriſh*) and therefore beſt approve of that courſe of Life, whereby they may rather live upon other mens Labour than take pains for their living. Extremely covetous they are, yet having rather deſire than art to enrich themſelves, permitting the *Dutch* to ingroſs all their Trading, and manage ſuch Commodities as the Country yieldeth: Which is the cauſe (ſeconded by the Oppreſſions of the *Turk* and the *Auſtrian* Princes, under whom they are) that none of them riſe to any conſiderable Wealth. And for ſuch as have Eſtates in Land, they grow every day more poor than other. For though the Females be excluded from inheriting their Father's Poſſeſſions, (to whom they give no Portion, but new Cloaths on the Wedding-day:) Yet being the Sons do equally inherit the Eſtate, (as ſuch who hold in *Gavelkind* do here in *England*) it muſt needs be that by ſo many Diviſions and Subdiviſions the greateſt Patrimony that is will be brought to nothing. Both Sexes in the way of their Education are inured to Hardneſs, not ſuffered to lie in Beds till the night of their Marriage.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt planted here in the time of *Stephen*, ſurnamed the Saint, the firſt King of this Country; who was invited thereunto by the ſpecial means and procurement of the Emperour *Henry* the ſecond, giving him upon that condition his Siſter *Giſela* in Marriage; and through the preaching and induſtry of *Albert* Archbiſhop of *Prague*, *Anno* 1016, or thereabouts. Since which time Chriſtianity hath continued here without interruption, (defended gallantly and couragiouſly againſt the *Turks*) but broken into Fractions and Subdiviſions among themſelves: Some pertinaciouſly adhering to the Church of *Rome*, ſome following the Doctrine of *Luther*, others that of *Calvin* and ſome new Fancies and Opinions, diſavowed by all the reſt. Free exerciſe of Religion was firſt granted by *Maximilian* the ſecond, and re-obtained in the time of *Rodolphus*, his Son and Succeſſor, by the Pacification at *Vienna*, procured by the power of *Botſcai* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, *Anno* 1606. The violating of which Pacification by *Ferdinand* the ſecond, in the beginning of his Reign occaſioned great Wars and Troubles betwixt him and this People, not quieted in a long time after. Yet all theſe different parties do agree in this, to puniſh Adultery and Fornication with no leſs a puniſhment than death; the Father forcing his Daughter, the Husband his Wife, and the Brother his Siſters, to the place of their Execution.

The Language generally here ſpoken is a kind of *Sclavonian*, differing in Dialect from the *Poles*: but in the parts adjoyning to *Germany* the *Dutch* is ſpoken; as the old *Jazygian* is betwixt *Danubius* and *Tibiſcus*, the ancient Seat of the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*.

The Soil is wonderful fruitful, yielding Corn and Fruits in great abundance; the Graſs in ſome places, (as in the Iſle of *Komara*) if it be ſuffered to grow to its full length before the cutting of it down, being ſaid to exceed the height of a Man: Which doth breed ſuch a number of Cattel, that this Country alone is thought to be able to feed all *Europe* with fleſh. They yearly ſend into *Germany* and *Sclavonia* 80000 Oxen: they have Deer, Partridge, Pheaſants, in ſuch ſuperfluity, that any man that will may kill them; which in other places is utterly prohibited, theſe creatures being preſerved as Game for Gentlemen. For at that great Inſurrection of the Boors in *Germany*, (before the end of which 50000 of them were ſlain in fight) their chief Demands were, 1. That they might chuſe their own Miniſters. 2. That they might pay no Tithes but of Corn. 3. That they might be free from the power of Magiſtrates. 4. That Wood, Timber and Fewel might be common. 5. And eſpecially, that they might hunt and hawk in all times and places. The other Commodities of the Country are Gold and Silver, whereof they have ſome very rich Veins; as alſo of Tin, Lead, Iron; good ſtore of Fiſh, Copper, Wine: this laſt as good as that of *Candia*.

The worthieſt Scholar that ever this Kingdom produced was St. *Hierom*, a worthy Father of the *Latine* Church, born in *Stridon*. The moſt worthy of all their Souldiers were 1. *Johannes Huniades*, who ſo valiantly reſiſted the Incurſions of the *Turks*, and ſlew of them 50000 at the Battel of *Maron*. And 2. *Matthias Corvinus*, his Son, afterward King of *Hungary*; of whom thus *Adrian* out of a Poet,

——— *Patriæ decus, unica Stirpis*
Gloria, Pannonicæ *Cædis fortiſſimus ultor*.
His Countries Pride, the Glory of his Race,
Revenger of th' *Hungarians* late Diſgrace.

The principal Rivers are, 1. *Danubius*, ſpoken of before, when we were in *Germany*. 2. *Savus*, which riſing in *Carniola*, 3. *Dravus*, which riſing in *Carinthia*, and 4. *Tibiſcus*, which riſing in the *Carpathian* Mountains, pay their Tribute to *Danubius*: Of which *Tibiſcus* the *Hungarians* uſe to ſay, that two parts are Water, and the third Fiſh. Beſides which, and ſome others of inferiour note, there is the famous Lake called *Balaton*, (by the *Dutch Platſee*) forty *Italian* miles in length, but of breadth unequal, in ſome places being ten miles broad, and in ſome but three. There be alſo many Medicinal waters, and more hot Baths than any one Country hath in *Europe*: ſome Waters alſo of a ſtrange nature; whereof ſome falling on the ground is turned to Stone; others (about the Town of *Smalnice*) which falling into Ditches make a kind of Mud, out of which tried and melted they make very good Copper; and ſome again which flow in Winter, and freeze in Summer; and near unto *Liſtrice*, or *Menſol*, a Spring or Fountain, out of which cometh a green Water, whereof they make Solder for their Gold.

Principal Mountains of this Country are, 1. *Carpatus*, the *Sarmatian* or *Carpathian* Mountains, ſpoken of before. 2. *Matzan*, near the City of *Agria*, covered with rich Vines. 3. *Erdol*, *omnium ampliſſimus*, the largeſt of the three, ſaith the *Atlas minor*. Which words, if true, muſt needs be underſtood of the height of this Mountain, but neither of the length or breadth; in both which without queſtion it comes ſhort of *Carpatus*.

The Country is commonly divided into the Upper *Hungary*, and the Lower: the *Upper* lying on the North of the River *Danow*, out of the Bounds and Territories of the *Roman* Empire; the *Lower* lying on the South of that River, and comprehending all *Pannonia Inferior*, and part of *Superior*, two *Roman* Provinces. The *Upper* again was ſubdivided (before the coming in of the *Turks*) into 32 Counties or Juridical Reſorts; that is to ſay, 24 on the Weſt-ſide of *Tibiſcus* (or the *Tieſs*,) and 8 on the Eaſt-ſide of it. The *Lower* (at the ſame time) into 16 only; of which ten were betwixt the *Danow* and the River *Dravus*, and the other ſix betwixt the *Dravus* and the *Savus*.

But this Diviſion and the Subdivions depending on it being ſince the coming in of the *Turks* almoſt out of uſe, we will now look upon it as it ſtands divided at the preſent, betwixt the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*, by a mixt Title of Deſcent and Election; and the Great *Turk*, as Lord of the moſt part of it by Arms and Conqueſt, two parts of three at leaſt being forced into his poſſeſſion. But here we are to underſtand, that by reaſon of the great Jealouſies and Diſtruſts betwixt theſe great Princes, every ordinary Town is fortified and garriſoned like a Town of War, and ſo are almoſt all the Houſes of the Nobility and Gentry throughout this Country: ſo that it were an infinite labour to ſpecifie in this place all thoſe Towns and Fortreſſes which do occur in reading the *Hungarian* Hiſtories of theſe later times. Some of the principal for Strength, Antiquity, or other mark of Eſtimation which is ſet upon them, we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

And firſt in the Emperour's part of the Lower *Hungary* we have. 1. *Rab*, on the meeting of the *Danow* with the River *Rab*, coming out of the Lower *Hungary*, whence the modern *Dutch* name; by *Antonine* called *Arabo*, by the *French Javarine*, by our preſent *Latiniſts Javarinum*. Memorable heretofore for being the Boundary of the two *Pannonia's*, Inferiour and Superiour, hereabouts divided: of late moſt principally for a ſtrong Fortreſs againſt the *Turks*, by whom it was once taken *Anno* 1594, but within four years after again recovered by the Induſtry of Monſieur *de Vaudrecourt*, a *French* Gentleman, as the *French*-men ſay; but as the *Germans* write, of the Earl of *Swartzenburg*, at that time Governour of *Komara*. 2. *Alteuburg*, in the Road leading towards *Auſtria*; a ſtrong Town, and the beſt Out-work of *Vienna*, for which cauſe much aimed at by the *Turks*, but without ſucceſs. 3. *Caſtle-Novo*, a new-erected Fortreſs, as the name importeth, but of ſpecial ſtrength, erected purpoſely, in the time of the Emperour *Rodolph*, to confront the *Turks*. 4. *Sabaria*, anciently the Metropolis of *Pannonia Superior*, the Birth-place of S. *Martin* Biſhop of *Tours*; now of leſs accompt; by the *Hungarians* called *Kimarorubath*. Others conceive it to be that which the *Dutch* call *Leibnits*. 5. *Stridon*, the *Sidrona* of *Ptolemy*, in the Confines of of *Hungaria* and *Dalmatia*, by the common people called *Strigman*. A Town of good repute, till deſtroyed by the *Goths*; but after made of more eſteem by the Birth of St. *Hierom*, one of the four chief Fathers of the *Latine* Church, and for all parts af Humane Learning nothing inferiour to the beſt of the *Græcian* Sages. 6. *Sopron*, (*Sopronium* in *Latine*) on the Borders of *Auſtria*. 7. *Komara*, a ſtrong piece, in an Iſland of the ſame name made by the Circling of the *Danow*; oft-times attempted by the *Turk*, but in vain at all times. Then in the Upper *Hungary* we have 8. *Presburg*, on the edge of *Auſtria* alſo, but on the North-ſide of the River, the *Carnuntum* of *Antoninus*, but by the modern *Latines* called *Poſonium*; ſeated in a pleaſant healthful Country on the River *Lyet*, whoſe waters the *Danow* there receiveth: in the Suburbs whereof, on the top of an high Mountain, ſtandeth a goodly Caſtle, the ordinary Reſidence of the Emperours as Kings of *Hungary*. For though it be a little City, and not very beautiful; yet being ſafe by the Neighbourhood of *Auſtria*, it hath been made the Metropolis of this Kingdom, ſince the loſs of *Buda*. Before the Walls hereof died Count *Dampierre*, one of the chief Commanders of *Ferdinand* the ſecond in the Wars of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. 9. *Filleck*, a place of great ſtrength and conſequence, taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent in his firſt Attempts upon this Kingdom, and loſt by *Amurath* the third, the *Turks* in vain attempting the recovery of it. 10. *Nitria*, a Biſhop's See, on the River *Boch*. 11. *Vacia*, a Biſhops See alſo, on the River *Danubius*; once in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, but reſtored again unto the Chriſtians at the making of the Peace between the Emperour *Rodolphus* and Sultan *Achmet*. 12. *Caſſovia*, a ſtrong piece towards *Tranſylvania*. 13. *Lippe*, in the Borders of that Country alſo, commanding the Entrances thereof, and therefore much affected by the Princes or Vaivods of that Province; poſſeſſed by whom in the latter times of the Emperour *Rodolph*, it was by them incorporated into *Tranſylvania*; but how long it continued ſo, I am not able to ſay. 14. *Tokay*, a place of great ſtrength, and as great Fidelity, the people and Garriſon hereof holding out for the Emperour *Rodolphus*, *Anno* 1605. againſt ſome of his rebellious Subjects, in the time of ſo extreme a Famine, that the Souldiers did not only eat two Boys, but many times caſt lots who ſhould eat one another. 15. *Eperies*, a place of no leſs conſequence, and exemplary Loyalty. 16. *Newſol*, or *Newheuſel*, a ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly fortified, not far from the Spring-head of the River *Gran*, which in the year 1621 proved fatal to that great Commander the Count of *Bucquoy*, who at the Siege hereof (the Town being then in Rebellion againſt *Ferdinand* the ſecond, Emperour and King of *Hungary*) loſt his life. For going privately to view ſome places of advantage for a general Aſſault, he fell into an Ambuſh of *Hungarians*, who ſuddenly ſet upon him, diſcomfited his ſmall Party, killed firſt his Horſe under him, and at laſt himſelf, having in that Skirmiſh received 16 wounds. There were ſlain with him at the ſame time alſo *Torquato*, an *Italian* Prince, Count *Verdugo*, a *Spaniſh* Earl, and one of the *Gonzagues* of the Houſe of *Mantua*.

Places of moſt importance in the *Turks* poſſeſſion are, 1. *Buda*, by the *Dutch* called *Offen*, ſuppoſed by ſome to be the *Curia* of *Ptolemy*, by others the *Abrincum* of *Antoninus*; and to have took the name of *Buda*, either from *Buda* the Brother of *Attila*, ſaid to be the Re-founder of it; or from the *Budini*, a *Scythian* People, mentioned in *Herodotus*. It is unevenly ſeated amongſt Hills on the Southern Shore of the *Danow*, but in the moſt fruitfull part of all the Country; exceedingly well fortified, eſpecially by a ſtrong Caſtle, thought to be impregnable, and therefore very carefully guarded by the jealous *Turk*; adorned with many Buildings, both private and publick, and furniſhed with ſome Medicinal Bathes, which owe much of their pomp and ſumptuouſneſs to their new Maſters the *Turks*, who took it from the Chriſtians *Auguſt* 20. 1591, *Solyman* the Magnificent then being preſent at the taking of it. Before that time the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Hungary*, and the chief City of the Kingdom; as now the Seat of the chief *Baſſa* or Lord-Lieutenant for the Grand Seignior. 2. *Alba Regalis*, by the *Dutch* called *Stul-Weiſſenburg*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Dravus*; ſtrongly, but unwholſomly, ſeated, in the midſt of an inacceſſible Mariſh, joyned to the firm Land by three broad Cauſeys, blockt up at the ends with three great Bulwarks; but for all the Situation of it taken by the *Turks Anno* 1543; before that time the uſual place both for the Coronation and Interrment of the Kings of *Hungary*; recovered from the *Turks Anno* 1601, and loſt again unto them in the next year after. 3. *Walpo*, or *Valpo*, on the River *Dravus*, taken by *Solyman* marching towards *Alba Regalis*, to leave no enemies behind him at the Siege of that City. 4. *Gran*, in *Latine* called *Strigonium*, ſeated upon the *Danow*, but oppoſite to the Mouth of *Gran*, which ariſing in the Upper *Hugary* doth there end its courſe, whence this Town hath the name of *Gran*; honoured of a long time with the See of an Arch-biſhop, who is the Primate of the Kingdom, and of great power in all buſineſs which concerns the State; taken by the *Turks Anno* 1534, *Solyman* the Magnificent being in perſon at the Siege, and loſt again *Anno* 1595. at what time Sir

Thomas

Thomas Arundel of *Wardor* Caſtle in *Wiltſhire* carried himſelf ſo gallantly, that forcing the Water-Tower, and taking thence with his own hands the *Turkiſh* Banner, the Emperour *Rodolphus* created him a Count of the Empire, and King *James* afterwards made him Lord *Arundel* of *Wardor*; but the Chriſtians were not ſuffered to keep it long; for being many times after beſieged by the *Turks*, who were reſolved not to end the War without it, it was finally recovered by them *Anno* 1605. 5. *Funfkirchen*, in *Latin* called *Quinque Eccleſiæ*, from five Churches in it, a Biſhop's See, conceived to be the *Teutoburgium* of *Antoninus*; taken by the *Turks Anno* 1566. and giving them a great Command on the River *Dravus*, upon which it is ſeated. 6. *Sirmiſch*, betwixt the *Danow* and the *Saw*, or *Savus*, now noted for a Vein of the beſt Wines, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation at the preſent, though heretofore of moſt account in all this Province; the Metropolis (as I conceive) of *Pannonia Inferior*, the Seat of the *Præfectus Prætorio Illyrici* before the Diviſion of the Empire, honoured with the perſonal Reſidence of many of the Emperours, and made in thoſe reſpects the Stage of many great and memorable Actions. For here *Vetranio*, or *Bretanio*, as others call him, took on himſelf the Purple Robe, and was declared Emperour by the *Illyrian* Souldiers lying here in Garriſon: here, being deſerted by his own Souldiers, he ſubmitted himſelf unto *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine* the Great: here *Gratian* the Emperour, Son of *Valentinian* the firſt, was born: and, finally, here was held a Council againſt *Photinus*, Biſhop of this City, who held that *Chriſt* had no exiſtence of God the Father till he was conceived and born of the Virgin; which Tenet, being contrary as well to that of the *Arian* as the Orthodox Prelates, was here condemned by both parties in the time of the ſaid *Conſtantius*, (who was there in perſon) *Anno* 356. 7. *Zigeth*, a ſtrong Town, ſituate in a Mariſh-ground on the North-ſide of the *Dra*, taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent *Anno* 1566. who there ended his days. 8. *Murſa*, upon the Confluence of the *Dra* and the *Danow*, once a *Roman* Colony, and as remarkable in the Stories of elder times as 9. *Belgrade*, on the Confluence of the *Saw* and the *Danow*, hath been in the later. This laſt being a Town of divers names: Firſt called *Taurunum*, or *Taurunum*; after *Alba Græca*, by the *Dutch* accordingly *Greichs Weiſſenburg*; by the *French* and modern *Latiniſts Belgrade* and *Belgradum*, from the beautiful ſituation of it, hemmed in upon the North with the *Danow*, on the Eaſt with the *Saw*, on the other ſides defended with ſtrong Walls, deep Ditches, and impregnable Rampiers. It belonged anciently to the Deſpots of *Servia*, by whom it was conſigned over to *Sigiſmund* King of *Hungary*, as beſt able to keep it; the Deſpots being ſatisfied with Lands and Territories of a better value. It was the Bulwark heretofore of Chriſtendom againſt the *Turks*, who received before it many great and notable Repulſes, (of which the moſt memorable were thoſe of *Amurath* the ſecond, and *Mahomet* ſurnamed the Great:) but taken at laſt, to the great loſs and ſhame of the Chriſtian World, not ſuccouring the Defendants in convenient time, by *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Anno* 1520. Then on the North-ſide of the River, in the Upper *Hungary*, there is 10. *Peſth*, over againſt *Buda*, on the River *Danow*. 11. *Colocza*, an Archbiſhop's See, on the ſame River alſo. 12. *Zegedin*, on the Weſt-ſide of the River *Tibiſcus*. 13. *Agria*, an old Biſhop's See, and ſtrongly fortified, having a great Command over all thoſe parts of the Country; in vain beſieged by *Haly* the *Baſſa* of *Buda* with an Army of 36000 *Turks* in the time of *Solyman* the Magnificent, *Anno* 1552; but taken by *Mahomet* the third, himſelf lying at the Siege in perſon, *Anno* 1578: not far from which, immediately after the taking of *Agria*, *Mahomet* gave the Chriſtians ſo great an Overthrow, that, if he had purſued his Victory, it is thought that he had finiſhed the Conqueſt of *Hungary*; as on the other ſide the *Turks* were ſo worſted and diſordered at firſt, (*Mahomet* himſelf and moſt of his Commanders flying out of the Field) that, had the Chriſtians followed the chaſe, and not betook themſelves to the Spoil of the Camp, they had in probability for ever freed that Kingdom from the *Turkiſh* Tyranny. This Battel, from a Village near unto which it was fought, was called the Battel of *Kereſture*; a Battel of ſo ſtrange a Fortune, that the Conquerours were driven out of the Field, and the vanquiſhed Army ran away with the Victory. 14. *Hatroan*, a very ſtrong Town, and as ſtrongly garriſoned, recovered by the Chriſtians after two long Sieges, and many ſharp Aſſaults, *Anno* 1558, and preſently again abandoned, upon the noiſe of *Mahomet*'s coming into *Hungary* with a dreadful Army. 15. *Temeſwar*, on the Eaſt of that River towards *Tranſylvania*, the ordinary Reſidence of a *Turkiſh Baſſa*. 16. *Gyula*, a ſtrong Town on the Borders of *Tranſylvania*, betrayed by *Nicholas Keresken*, Governour hereof, in the laſt year of *Solyman*, on a promiſe of ſome great Reward. But *Selimus* the Son of *Solyman* cauſed him to be put into a Barrel ſtuck full of Nails, with the points turned inwards, and ſo to be tumbled up and down till he (moſt miſerably) died: there being on the Barrel this Inſcription written, *viz. Here receive the reward of thy Avarice and Treaſon*; Gyula *thou ſouldeſt for Gold: if thou be not faithful to* Maximilian *thy natural Lord, neither wilt thou be true to me*. 17. *Singidun*, on the South of *Gyula*, betwixt which and *Belgrade* are the Fields of *Maron*, memorable for the ſlaughter of 50000 *Turks*, ſlain here in Battel under the fortunate Conduct of *John Huniades*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, and the Weſt of the *Tieſs*, or *Tibiſcus*, were the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*, and on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Tieſs* the *Daci*, known, but not conquered, by the *Romans*; on the South of the *Danow* the *Pannones*, (by ſome called the *Pæones*) ſubdivided into the *Azuli*, *Latovici*, *Werciani*, *Jaſſii*, *Oſeriates*, and ſome others inhabiting the Weſt parts thereof, or *Pannonia Superior*, and the *Ercuneales*, *Brouci*, *Araviſci*, and *Scordiſci*, dwelling in the Eaſtern parts, or *Pannonia Inferior*. Firſt conquered by the *Romans* Anno *U. C.* 719, *L. Cornificius* and *Sextus Pompeius* being Conſuls; but many times rebelling, and not fully ſubdued till forty years after the Inſurrection of *Bato*, being then cruſhed by *Auguſtus Cæſar*, and thereby the whole Province ſettled in Obedience. Divided firſt into two parts or Provinces, *Superior* and *Inferior*; out of which *Savia* and *Valeria* were after taken, as before is noted. Under the *Romans* it continued, till ſubdued by the *Huns*, a People not heard of in the time of the *Roman* Greatneſs, unleſs we take them, as ſome do, for the *Chuni* of *Ptolemy*. But being thoſe *Chuni* are placed by him betwixt the *Baſtarnæ* and the *Roxolani*, on the South-weſt of *Boryſthenes*, I ſee not how to fit that Dwelling unto the *Huns*, who were ſhut up within the Fens of *Palus Mæotis*, and by all the Writers of thoſe times accounted for a Nation not ſo much as heard of when they firſt ſet footing in *Europe*. Letting that therefore paſs as an improbable and ill-grounded Conjecture, certain it is that from the Fen-Countries of *Aſia*, on the other ſide of the *Tanais*, they came firſt into *Europe*; living in their own Country a poor and miſerable life, till God thought fit to make uſe of them as a Scourge to chaſtiſe the Chriſtians of the Weſt, then grown luxurious, and almoſt incorrigible, by too much Felicity; and to that end miraculouſly opened them a Paſſage never found before. For having neither mind

nor

nor meaning to invade the *Roman* Empire, which possibly they had not heard of, nor knowing how to clear themselves of that uncomfortable Country in which they dwelt; it pleased the great Disposer of all things, by following an Hart or Stag which they had in chase, to shew them a safe passage into *Europe* through the Fens of *Mæotis*, which before they thought to be unpassable. The report made by those Hunters at their coming back, of the rich and pleasant Land which they had so fortunately discovered, invited the chiefe Heads of their Clans, with all the several Rascalities depending on them, to flock into *Europe*: into which they fell so suddenly and unexpectedly, that they forced the *Goths*, then dwelling on the North-side of the *Ister*, to fly over that River, and supplicate to the Emperour *Valens* for new Habitations. This happened in the year 373, *Athanaricus* the second, or *Ermanaricus*, (as *Jornandes* calls him) being then King of the *Goths*, and *Balamir* Captain of the *Hunns*. Fleshed with this Victory, *Balamir*, or *Balhember*, (as *Sigebert* calls him) takes the name of *King*, *Anno* 386, or thereabout; and following the course of the *Ister* towards this *Pannonia*, which he had an aim at, found a great Army raised on the other side of the River, of purpose to encounter with him, commanded by *Detricus* General for the *Roman* Army, and *Macrinus* (or *Matrinus*) Commander in chief of the *Pannonians*. Both Generals presuming too much on the depth and wideness of the River, and knowing well that the *Hunns* had neither Boat nor Ship to pass them over, betook themselves unto their Rest with too much security. But the *Hunns*, to the number of 100000, having crossed the River upon Bladders, fell on the Quarters of the *Romans*, whom they slew like Sheep. *Macrinus* after this fought two Battels with them, in the first whereof he was victorious, there being lost on both sides about 30000 men: but in the second being slain, and his Army routed, the *Hunns* possessed themselves of both *Pannonia's*, buying this Victory with the loss of 40000 men, in the year 401. *Balamir* being dead, *Bleda* and *Attila* his Sons succeeded *Anno* 436; and *Bleda*, dying also in the year 450, left *Attila* sole King of the *Hunns*, that great Scourge of the Christian World; who, having first wasted *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, compelled the Emperour *Theodosius* the second to buy his Peace of him at the price of 6000 pound weight of Gold, and an yearly Tribute. Invited afterwards by *Gensericus* King of the *Vandals* in *Africk* to war upon the *Goths* of *Spain*, (out of which Country they had driven him) he forced his way through all the Nations betwixt him and *Gaul*, and beating down all the Towns and Fortresses on the River *Rhene* on that side of the *Roman* Empire, entered that Province in the Reign of the 3. *Valentinian*, divided at that time betwixt the *Romans*, *French*, *Burgundians*, and the *Goths* of *Spain*. Discomfited by *Aetius* and the Kings of those Nations then in League against him, in that famous Battel near *Tholouse*, spoken of before, (with the loss of 180000 of his men) he went back by the way of *Italy*, where he sacked *Aquileia*, *Millain*, *Vincentia*, *Pavia*; and not without much difficulty was diverted from the Spoil of *Rome*, by the intercession of Pope *Leo*: committing in all places such unspeakable Cruelties, that he was always after called (as he styled himself) *Malleus orbis*, and *Flagellum Dei*. Returning home he picked a Quarrel with *Martianus* the Eastern Emperour, as if the Tribute promised him by *Theodosius* had not been well paid. But being pacified for the present, and mindful of his former project upon the *Goths*, he resolved once again to try his Fortune with that People; and was again defeated by them under the Conduct of *Thorismund*, the third King of the *Visigoths*, or *Goths* of *Spain*, and so returned ingloriously to his Country. Choaked after with his own bloud, violently breaking out at his Nostrils on his Wedding-night, he left *Pannonia* to his Sons, named *Hernac*, *Aladurius* and *Chaba*; who, disagreeing amongst themselves about the Kingdhm, gave an advantage to the *Goths*, then possessed of *Dacia*, to make themselves Masters of this also, who were scarce through-warm in their new Estates, when sent by *Zeno* the Emperour into *Italy* against *Odoacer*, where they finally settled. After this time we hear no more of the *Goths* in *Pannonia*, or any-where of the *Hunns* at all; unless acting under the *Avares*, or joyning with them in the name of *Hun-Avari*, as some think they did.

The Country, being thus left to the next Invader, was presently possessed by the *Longobards*, said to be originally of *Scandia*, and there called *Winnili*, (and of the *Winniloth* in *Scandia Jornandes* speaketh) afterwards, *ob longas barbas*, *Longobardi*. But concerning this last name, take along with you this old Wives Tale, recited, but not approved of, by *Paulus Diaconus*. The *Vandals*, warring upon the *Winnili*, went unto *Goddan*, (he should rather have said *Woden*) to sue for the Victory: which the *Winnili* hearing, wrought by countermine, and sent *Gambata*, the Mother of their King *Aujou*, on the like business to *Frea*, *Goddan's* Wife. So it was that *Goddan* had promised the *Vandals*, that they should be victorious whom he saw first in the morning: Whereupon *Frea*, willing to please *Gambata*, and not loving, as it seemeth, the sight of Men, gave order that all the Women of the *Winnili*, parting their Hair, bringing one half over one Cheek, the other over the other, and tying both under their Chin, should appear betimes before the Window the next morning. This they did, and she shewing them to her Husband, he demanded of her, *Qui sunt isti Longobardi?* Hence the occasion of the name. And like enough they might be called so from the length of their Beards, though otherwise the whole Tale be vain and foolish. Compelled by scarcity of Victuals to seek new Habitations, they seised first on the Island *Rugia* and the adjacent Countries; and settled about the time of *Cornelius Tacitus* in those parts of *Germany* which now make up the Bishopricks of *Meydburg* and *Halberstadt*. Afterwards, finding that Country too narrow for them, they left their Dwellings there, and fell next upon some parts of *Poland*; next on this *Pannonia*: and at last, having tarried in *Pannonia* 42 years, or thereabouts, at the solicitation of *Narses*, (provoked by many Indignities from the Empress *Sophia*, the Wife of *Justinus* the second) *Anno* 568, under the leading of their King *Alboinus*, they went into *Italy*, and there fixt their Kingdom; being at the end of 206 years overthrown by the power of *Charles* the Great, the most mighty Monarch of the West. Of their Kings, before their coming into this Country, I shall only make mention of *Lamissus*, their third King, and of him this Story. *Agilmond*, the second King of the *Lombards*, one morning went a-hunting. As he was riding by a Fish-pond, he espied seven Children sprawling for life, which one, as saith *Paulus Diaconus*, (it may be many Harlots) had been delivered of, and most barbarously thrown into the water. The King, amazed at this spectacle, put his Boar-spear or Hunting-pole among them. One of the Children hand-fasted the Spear, and the King, softly drawing back his hand, wafted the Child to the shore. This Boy he named *Lamissus*, from *Lama*, which in their Language signifieth a Fish-pond. He was in the King's Court carefully brought up; where there appeared in him such tokens of Vertue and Courage, that, after the death of *Agilmond*, he was by the *Lombards* chosen to succeed him. This *Lamissus*, together with his Predecessors and Successors, we find thus recorded.

The

The *LONGOBARDIAN* Kings.

An. C.
383 1. *Aujou.* 10.
393 2. *Agilmond.* 33.
426 3. *Lamiſſus* 3.
429 4. *Labe*, or *Lethe.* 40.
469 5. *Hildehoc.* 4.
473 6. *Godohoc.* 12.
485 7. *Dophon*, or *Claffo.* 5.
490 8. *Thamus* 10.
500 9. *Vacon.* 18.
518 10. *Valcarius* 7.
525 11. *Adoinus*, who firſt brought the *Longobards* into *Hungary*, *Anno* 1526.
543 12. *Alboinus*, who in the year 583, by the ſolicitation of *Narſes* went into *Italy*, and erected there the *Longobardian* Kingdom; which 206 years after was deſtroyed by the Puiſſance of *Charles* the Great.

The Hiſtory of this people epitomized by *Du Bartas* (but with far more of the Poet than the true Hiſtorian) is ſummed up thus.

The *Lombard* ſtrong, who was in *Scowland* nurſt,
On *Rugeland* and *Livonia* ſeiſed firſt.
Then having well reveng'd on the *Bulgarian*
The death of *Agilmond*, the bold *Barbarian*
Surprized *Poland*: thence anon he preſſes
In *Danow*'s Streams to rinſe his Amber Treſſes.
When he ſtraight after had ſurrendred
The double-named *Iſter*'s flowzy bed
To ſcar-fac'd *Hunns*; he hunteth furiouſly
The reſt of *Gauls* from wealthy *Inſubrie*.
There reigns 200 years, triumphing ſo,
That Royal *Teſin* might compare with *Po*.
Which after fell in *French* mens hands again,
Won by the Sword of worthy *Charlemaign*.

The *Longobards* having thus left the Stage, the *Avares* entred. Some ſay they were the *Avarini* of *Ptolemy*, a *Sarmatian* People; but moſt probably (as *Nicetas*) a People of *Scythia*, inhabiting about *Palus Mæotis*. They firſt began to ſtir in the reign of *Tiberius* the 2. (forced by the *Turks*, their next neighbours, to paſs farther Weſtward) and gave that Emperour's Forces a great Overthrow at the Mouth of *Danubius*. *Tiberius* notwithſtanding did ſomewhat quiet them; but he being dead, they took heart again, and with great Courage warred upon *Mauritius*, his next Succeſſor. Their King at that time was called *Caganus*, we may *Engliſh* it *Cham*, as not being the proper name of any one, but the common Attribute of all their Chiefs. This *Caganus* made his firſt Wars upon the *Turks*, which People were about that time firſt made known to the Inhabitants of *Europe*; and, with the help of the remainder of the *Hunns*, invaded and poſſeſſed *Pannonia*, vanquiſhing both the Emperour's Forces, and the *Goths* and *Gepidæ*, who had ſtill kept ſome footing in it, and on the departure of the *Lombards* were of no ſmall power; the name of *Goths* being ſwallowed up in that of the *Gepidæ*, though not quite extinct. After this Blow *Mauritius* raiſed a ſecond War, but more with an intent to revenge himſelf on his own Souldiers, which had formerly offended him, than with hope of prevailing againſt the Enemy. *Comentiolus*, according to the Emperour's directions, betrayeth his Army; 12000 of them were ſlain, and the reſt taken. *Caganus*, an heroick and merciful Conquerour, offers to ranſom them for 8 s. 6 d. apiece, (for ſo much was that *Nummus* or νόμισμα which he demanded for them.) When the Emperour, as much loving his Gold as hating his Souldiers, had denied that Condition; he offered them all for one *Nummus*, and after for half a one: but being alſo here unſatisfied, he put them alſo to the Sword. For this cauſe the reſt of the Souldiers not long after made *Phocas*, one of the Centurions, Emperour; and he moſt barbarouſly ſlewed the Emperor in his own Broath, putting him, his Wife, Friends, and Children to the Sword. After this we find mention of them in the time of *Phocas* and *Heraclius*, foraging *Thrace* to the very Walls of *Conſtantinople*, afterwards ſetled in *Pannonia* and part of *Noricum*, containing now the Upper *Hungary* and ſome part of *Auſtria*, divided from the *Boiarians* by the River *Ems*. They continued poſſeſſed hereof till the time of *Charles* the Great, by whom, after a War of eight years, they were utterly ſubdued, and driven out of theſe parts, their Country being peopled with new *Dutch* Colonies: the remainders of them were forced to betake themſelves into *Tranſylvania*, or that part of *Hungaria* which lieth beyond the River *Tibiſcus*, there ſubject for a time to *Suantibogius*, King of the *Moravians*; in whoſe Overthrow by the *Hungarians* they were ſo broken, that their Name was never heard of.

And ſo we come to the *Hungarians*, the laſt and principal Actors on the Stage of this Kingdom, the givers of the preſent Name: before whoſe coming into this Country it had no other name than that of *Pannonia*, for ought I can find, in any Authors of thoſe Times. A *Scythian* People, as the *Hunns* and *Avares* were, by *Jornandes* called the *Hunugari*; firſt known in *Europe* by their acts in the time of the Emperour *Arnulphus*, when, wandring in *Sarmatia Europæa* without any certain Aboad, they were by him called into this Country againſt *Suantibogius* King of the *Moravians* before mentioned; from whom they took *Tranſylvania*, and ſo much of the modern *Hungary* as lieth on both ſides of *Tibiſcus*, inhabited at that time by the *Sclaves* and ſome ſcattered remnants of the *Avares*, whom they killed up, or forced to ſeek new Habitations, planting themſelves in thoſe places which they took from them, now the Upper *Hungary*. In the right of *Lewis* the 4. Succeſſour to *Arnulphus*, they paſſed over the *Danow*, and ſubdued *Pannonia*, diſmembring it from the Empire and name of *Germany*: after that they ranged with unmerciful Cruelty over all *Germany*, *Italy*, *Greece*, *Sclavonia*, *Dacia*, till, broken by the Forces of the *Dutch* Emperours, and mollified by the ſoftneſs of the Chriſtian Religion, they became more quiet. Their Government at the firſt was under Dukes: *Stephen* the 4. Duke, on his receiving of the Goſpel, being honoured with the Title of King; enjoyed by his Succeſſours to this very day. In the time of *Ladiſlaus* ſurnamed the Saint *Dalmatia* and *Croatia* were added to the Crown of *Hungary*, bequeathed to him by his Siſter *Zelomira*, the Widow of the laſt King. In that of *Bela* the 4. the *Tartarians*, to the number of 500000 fighting men, brake into this Country, and like a violent Whirlwind carried all before them, *Anno* 1248, tyrannizing here for 3 years ſpace, committing mercileſs Maſſacres, and making horrible Spoils wherſoever they came. In that of *Stephen* the 4. *Myſia* and *Bulgaria* were made tributary. By the Daughters of *Bela* and *Stepher*, both the 4. of thoſe names, the Houſes of *Naples* and *Bohemia* came to claim the Kingdom of *Hungary*; as *Lewis* the firſt, by *Elizabeth* his Mother, Siſter of *Caſimir* the 2. did the Kingdom of *Poland*. The reſt of their affairs ſhall be briefly touched at in the following Catalogue of

The Dukes and Kings of *HUNGARIE*.

A. Ch.
1. *Cuſala*, the firſt Duke (or Captain) of the *Hungars*, ſubdued *Tranſylvania* and the *Upper Hungary*, and paſſed over the *Danow*; ſlain in

in his Wars againſt the *Dutch* then poſſeſſed of *Pannonia*.

2. *Toxus*, ſubdued *Pannonia* or the Lower *Hungary*.

3. *Geiſa*, Son of *Toxus*.

1000 4. *Stephen*, the fourth. Duke, and firſt King of *Hungary*.

1039 5. *Peter*, ſurnamed the *Alman*, Nephew of *Stephen*; depoſed by *Andrew* and *Bela*, Sons of *Ladiſlaus*, Son of *Geiſa* the firſt, and Brother of *Stephen* the firſt King.

1047 6. *Andrew*, eldeſt Son of that *Ladiſlaus*.

1059 7. *Bela*, the Brother of *Andrew*.

1062 8. *Solomon*, the Son of *Andrew*, expelled his Kingdom by

1075 9. *Geiſa* II. Son of *Bela*.

1078 10. *Ladiſlaus*, ſurnamed the Saint, Brother of *Geiſa* the ſecond.

1096 11. *Coloman*, Son of *Geiſa* 2.

1114 12. *Stephen* II. Son of *Coloman*.

1132 13. *Bela* II. Nephew of *Geiſa* the 2. by his Son *Almus*.

1142 14. *Geiſa* III. Son of *Bela* the 2.

1162 15. *Stephen* III. Son of *Geiſa* the 3.

1172 16. *Bela* III. Brother of *Stephen* the 3.

1191 17. *Emaricus*, Son of *Bela* the 3.

1201 18. *Ladiſlaus* II. Son of *Emaricus*, reigned but 6 months, being ſlain by Treaſon very young, and without Iſſue.

1201 19. *Andrew* II. Son of *Bela* the 3. and Brother of *Emaricus*.

1236 20. *Bela* IV. Son of *Andrew* the 2.

1271 21. *Stephen* IV. Son of *Bela* the 4.

1273 22. *Ladiſlaus* III. Son of *Stephen* the 4.

1290 23. *Andrew* III. Nephew to *Bela* the 4. by his Brother *Stephen*.

1302 24. *Charles*, ſurnamed *Martel* Son of *Charles* King of *Naples*, by *Mary*, Daughter to *Stephen* the 4. Againſt whom was choſen *Wenceſlaus* King of *Bohemia*, Son of *Wenceſlaus* the ſecond, and of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter of *Bela* the fourth; and after three years *Otho* of *Bavaria*, deſcended from *Elizabeth*, another of the Daughters of *Bela* the fourth, was choſen alſo by a Faction againſt *Wenceſlaus*. But *Wenceſlaus* ſurrendring his Claim to *Otho*, and *Otho* not long after being forced to renounce his Title, *Charles Martel* remained King of the whole.

1343 25. *Ludovicus*, Nephew to *Charles Martel* by his Son *Carlibert*, ſucceeded King of *Poland* alſo, in right of *Elizabeth* his Mother, Siſter of *Caſimir* the 2.

1383 26. *Charles* II. King of *Naples*, deſcended from *Charles* of *Naples*, and *Mary*, Daughter of *Stephen* the 4. before mentioned, by their Son *John* of *Durazzo*, one of the younger Brothers of *Charles Martel*; poiſoned after a ſhort Reign by the Widow of the former King, to make a way for her Daughter to the Crown.

1387 27. *Sigiſmund* Emperour, King of *Bohemia*, and Duke of *Luxemburg*, ſucceeded in right of *Mary* his Wife, eldeſt Daughter of *Lewis* or *Ludovicus*, her younger Siſter *Eduigis* being Queen of *Poland*.

1438 28. *Albert* of *Auſtria*, Emperour, and King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, in right of *Elizabeth* his Wife, the Daughter of *Sigiſmund*.

1440 29. *Ladiſlaus*, or *Vladiſlaus*, Son of *Jagello* King of *Poland*, in the Minority of *Ladiſlaus* the Son of *Albert* choſen King of *Hungary*; unfortunately ſlain at the Battel of *Varna*, with 30000 of his people; and perhaps his Perjury might deſerve it. For having made and ſworn a Truce with the *Turk*, the Pope's Legate, upon a ſeeming advantage, abſolved him of his Oath, and drew him into the Field. At the beginning the Chriſtians had the better: but at the laſt, *Amurath* the 2. againſt whom they fought, lifting up his eyes to Heaven, and deſiring *Chriſt* to look upon the perfidious dealing wherewith his Followers had diſhonoured him, re-encouraged his men, and ſo got the Victory.

1444 30. *Ladiſlaus* V. King of *Bohemia*, the Son of *Albert* by *Elizabeth*, Daughter of *Sigiſmund* and *Mary*.

1458 31. *Matthias Corvinus*, Son of the famous *Huniades*, after the death of *Ladiſlaus* the 5. King of *Hungary*.

1491 32. *Vladiſlaus* II. or *Ladiſlaus* VI. Son of *Caſimir* the 4. of *Poland*, and of *Elizabeth* the Daughter of *Albert*, ſucceeded in the Kingdoms of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*; his three younger Brothers ſucceſſively in that of *Poland*.

1517 33. *Ludovicus* II. King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, both born and dead before the ordinary courſe of nature; being in the 21. year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign, unfortunately drawn unto the Field, to encounter *Solyman* the Magnificent, one of the hardieſt Captains in his time. The Battel was fought at a Village called *Mogachz*, or *Mugace*, juſt betwixt *Belgrade* and *Buda*; in which 19000 of the *Hungarians* were ſlain, and the young King drowned in the Flight. A moſt lamentable Diſcomfiture. *Lewis* thus dead, *John Supuſio*, Vaivod or Governour of *Tranſylvania*, was by the States choſen King of *Hungary*. But *Ferdinand*, Archduke of *Auſtria*, and Brother unto *Charles* the fifth, challenged the Kingdom in right of *Anne* his Wife, Daughter to *Vladiſlaus*, and Siſter to *Lewis* King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*. On this Pretence he invaded the Kingdom, and drove out *John* his Competitor; who, to recover his Right, called *Solyman* the Magnificent into the Country, who took ſo faſt footing in it, that his Succeſſors could never ſince be removed.

1527 34. *John Sepuſio*, Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*, choſen King upon the death of *Ludovicus*, the 2. outed by *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, reſtored by *Solyman* the Great *Turk*, died *Anno* 1540: after whoſe death the *Hungarians* cauſed his Son *Stephen*, an Infant, to be crowned King in his Cradle, of which he was immediately deprived by *Solyman* his pretended Patron, who, under colour of preſerving that Kingdom for him, ſeized *Buda* and other the chief Towns thereof, which he after kept unto himſelf.

1540 35. *Ferdinand* of *Auſtria*, elected King of *Bohemia*, in reſpect to the Lady *Anne* his Wife, Siſter of *Ludovicus* the 2. *Anno* 1527, did in the ſame Right lay Claim to the Crown of *Hungary*; choſen to which by a party prepared for him, he was always in contention with

with *John de Sepusio*; each of them acknowledged King by their several Factions: but he was by both sides received on the death of *John*.

1562 36. *Maximilian*, Emperour, King of *Hungary* and *Bohemia*, Archduke of *Austria*, Son of *Ferdinand*.

1572 37. *Rodolphus*, Emperour, &c. Son of *Maximilian*.

1608 38. *Matthias*, Brother of *Rodolphus*, afterwards Emperour.

1618 39. *Ferdinand* II. of *Gratz*, next Heir unto *Matthias* of the House of *Austria*, afterwards Emperour, &c. against whom a Party of *Hungarians* called in *Bethlem Gabor*, Prince of *Transylvania*, whom they elected for their King, intending (as they said) to crown him also. But the Affairs of *Bohemia* going on the Emperour's side, *Gabor* relinquished his pretensions, and hearkned to a Peace betwixt them.

1625 40. *Ferdinand* III. Son of *Ferdinand* the second, chosen and crowned King in the life of his Father, and in the year 1627 King of *Bohemia* also, succeeding after him in the Empire, and now living, *Anno* 1648.

This Kingdom doth pretend it self to be Elective, and to have special Priviledges indulged them by their former Princes; and anciently indeed it was so in both respects, the last especially; King *Andrew* giving authority to his Prelates, Peers, and other people, *Ut sine nota alicujus Infidelitatis, &c.* that without any imputation of Disloyalty they might contradict, oppose, and resist their King, if he did any thing in violation of their Laws and Sanctions. But both their liberty of Elections and pretence of Priviledges have been so shaken and restrained by their Kings of the House of *Austria*, that the Elections are become a matter of Formality only, and their Priviledges depending wholly on their Prince's pleasure, now grown too potent for them to contend withal, unless they should betray their Country into the hands of the *Turks*. To which some of them have expressed some strong Inclinations, the Oppressions laid upon them by the *Austrian* Family being deemed unsufferable.

The Forces of this Kingdom, when it was entire, may best be seen by those great Armies which they have brought into the Field against the *Turk*. By whom two parts of three being since subdued, that which remains must not be thought able to answer the proportion of former times; though they have done more than could be reasonably expected from it. For at the Battel of *Keresture*, *Anno* 1596, there were 6000 *Hungarian* Horse, and 10000 Foot of this Nation only; besides those of *Germany* and *Transylvania*: and the next year, notwithstanding the Discomfiture of that Army, they raised no less than 20000 Horse and Foot, on the noise of some Preparations among the *Turks*. 'Tis true, their Foot are commonly but meanly armed; the defect wherein is rather to be imputed to the Prince, then unto the people, who can but bring their Bodies (which is all they have) for defence of their Country. And for their Horse, (whom they call *Heyducks*) maintained in continual readiness at the charge of the Nobility and principal Gentry, they are next Cousins to the *Cosacks*, almost as mischievous as they, and hold as strict Intelligence with the *Turks* as those do with the *Tartars*.

The chief Revenues of this Kingdom come from the Silver-Mines, out of which is yearly raised about a million and a half of Guldens. *Maximilian* the second made it up two millions, by seizing on the Lands of Cathedral and Collegiate Churches, and assigning annual Pensions to the Bishops, Canons, and other Religious persons. Most of which Sum comes clearly to the Emperour's Coffers, the Prefidiary Souldiers being paid with Contribution-money raised upon the Country; and the Lieutenant-general, whose entertainment comes to 30000 Dollars yearly, defrayed upon their Purses also.

The chief Order of Knighthood in this Kingdom was that of the *Dragon*, instituted by *Sigismund* Emperour and King hereof, at such time as by the Council of *Constance* against *John Hus* and *Hierom* of *Prague*, and by the sharpness of his Sword proved upon their Followers, he had cast down (as he conceived) the Dragon of Heresie and and Schism. But the Device proved of no long continuance, expiring almost with the Author.

The Arms of *Attila* the *Hunn*, once the King of this Country by the name of *Pannonia*, are said to have been *Gules*, a Falcon displayed *Or*, membred and crowned *Argent*. But the Arms of the Kingdom at this time are Barre-wise of eight pieces, *Gules* and *Argent*.

There are in *HUNGARY*

Archbishops 2. Bishops 13.

And so much for *HUNGARY*.

OF SCLAVONIA.

SCLAVONIA is bounded on the East with *Servia*, *Macedonia*, and *Epirus*, from which it is parted by the River *Drinus*, and a Line drawn from thence unto the *Adriatick*; on the West with *Carniola* in *Germany*, and *Istria* in the Seigniory of *Venice*, from which last it is divided by the River *Arsia*; on the North with *Hungary*, on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. So called from the *Solaves*, or *Sclavi*, a *Sarmatian* People, of whom more anon.

It contains in length from *Arsia* to the River *Drinus*, according to *Pliny*'s Computation, 800 *Italian* miles; the greatest breadth being 325 of the same miles. But others reckon the length of it at no more than 480 miles: who may be reconciled with *Pliny* by supposing this, that these last measure in a straight and direct Line from River to River; and that *Plinj* coasted by the Creeks and Reaches of the *Adriatick*. It is situate in the Northern Temperate Zone, betwixt the middle Parallels of the sixth and seventh Climates; so that the longest Day in Summer is about fifteen hours and an half.

The Country is generally fruitful of all those Commodities which are found in *Italy*, to which it is little inferiour; yielding not only Wine and Oyl in very good plenty, but good store of Cattel; and of wild Beasts of pleasure is no want at all; some rich Veins also of Gold and Silver. The Northern parts are mountainous, cold, for the most part lying under Snows, not capable of Wine, or any the like Productions which require much Heat. But even these mountainous parts afford very good Pasturage, and breed a wealthy race of Sheep, which bring forth young twice a year, and are shorn four times. Nor do the Sea-coasts come behind in advancing the Profit of the people, not only yielding store of Fish, but the benefit of many excellent and convenient Havens.

The People are couragious, proud, stubborn, and untractable, of strong Bodies and able Constitutions, fit for works of Drudgery; and so employed by the *Venetians*, when first brought under their Command: who, using them in all servile Offices both at home and abroad, occasioned the neighbouring Nations to call their Villains or Bond-servants, as they of *Venice* did, by the name of *Sclaves*; that being originally as to this People the name, not of their Condition, but of their Ancestors and Country.

The Christian Faith was here planted, I mean in reference to this People who dow now inhabit it, about the time of *Charles* the Bald, Emperour of the West, *Anno* 877, *Sueropilus* being the first of their Kings who embraced the Gospel. But lying in the mid-way of *Greece* and *Italy*, the Religion of the Church of *Rome*, and that of the *Greek* Church are both allowed of; that of the *Greeks* being as prevalent in the East parts hereof, as that of *Rome* is in the Western. But here it is to be observed, that though this People, according to their Division into East and West, follow the Rites and Ceremonies of those several Churches; yet on both sides it is indulged them to celebrate Divine Offices in their natural Language, contrary to the usage of the Church of *Rome* in all places else. And yet the people are not all of the Christian Faith, the *Turkish* and *Mahometan* prevailing in those Towns and Territories under their Obedience.

But though they be not of one Religion, they are all of one Language, which is the old *Sarmatian* (or *Sclavonian*) Tongue, generally spoken in the Empire of *Russia*, *Livonia*, *Poland*, *Silesia*, *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, some part of *Hungary*, *Istria*, *Sclavonia*, where we now are, *Dacia*, *Epirus*, *Georgia*, *Mengrelia*, (both in *Asia*) and by all the Captains, Officers, and other Souldiers of the *Turkish* Empire: the Language generally spreading over all those Countries which either were *Sarmatian* in their first Original, or made theirs by Conquest under the united name of *Sclaves*, or otherwise intermixt with them by the necessity of Commerce and Trade, or dispatch of their common Businesses. Insomuch as, taking in the Subdivisions of the Provinces and Countries before specified, it is affirmed by *Gesner*, a right learned man, that there are no fewer than threescore Nations which have the *Sclavonian* Tongue for their vulgar Language.

Chief Mountains in this Country are those called *Scardonici*, (from *Scardona*, one of the best Towns of *Illyris*) dividing *Dalmatia* in the midst, and extending along the Coasts thereof; by *Ptolemy* called *Ardium*. Of Rivers those of special note amongst the Ancients were, 1. *Titius*, now *Variecha*, separating *Illyris* from *Dalmatia*. 2. *Arsia*, now *Arsa*, the utmost bound upon the West; as 3. *Drinus* is upon the East: of which the first falleth into the Bay of the *Adriatick*, which is called *Golfo di Quernero*, (*Sinus Flanaticus* by the Ancients;) the other into the *Saw* or *Savus*, somewhat West of *Belgrade*. 4. *Narron*, now *Narento*, running not far from *Epidaurus*.

The Boundaries and Land-Marks being thus set out, I should proceed to the Division of the Country as now it standeth. But I must first look on it as it stood in the time of the *Romans*: in whose time that part of the whole Province which lay from the River *Arsia* to the *Titius* was named *Liburnia* and *Illyris*; that from the *Titius* to the *Drinus* was called *Dalmatia*. But the *Illyrians* being the stouter and more warlike People, and such as created greatest Troubles to the *Romans*, it pleased the Conquerours, when they had fully subdued both Nations, to call the whole Country by the name of *Illyricum*; and not so only, but to extend this name over all their Provinces (the Diocese of *Thrace* excepted) which lay between the *Alps* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Danow*; for so far the Jurisdiction of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Illyricum* did at first extend. *Huic Præfecto* (saith *Zosimus*) Constantinus, *ejus Institutor*, Macedones *attribuit*, Thessalos, Cretenses, Græciam, *& circumjacentes Insulas*, Epirum *utramque*, Illyricos, Dracos, Triballos, *&* Pannonias, Valeriam *usque &* Mysiam *superiorem*. And that all these did then pass by the name of *Illyricum* appeareth as well by that of *Pollio* in the Life of *Claudius* the second, expressly saying, *Illyricum Thracas, Mysos, Dacos,*

Dacos, Dalmatias & Pannonias continebat; as by that of *Socrates* the Hiſtorian, who *lib.* 32. *cap.* 10. calleth *Sirmium*, the chief Town of *Pannonia Inferior*, and *lib.* 5. *cap.* 6. *Theſſalonica*, the chief City of *Macedon*, *Urbes Illyricas*, or *Illyrian* Cities. By which account *Illyricum*, in the largeſt extent of that name, contained no leſs than 18 Provinces of the *Roman* Empire; that is to ſay, 1. *Noricum Mediterranеum*, 2. *Noricum Ripenſe*, 3. *Pannonia Superior*, 4. *Pannonia Inferior*, 5. *Valeria*, 6. *Savia*, 7. *Dalmatia*. 8. *Mœſia Superior*. 9. *Dardania*. 10 *Dacia Mediterranea*, 11. *Dacia Ripenſis*, 12. *Macedonia*, 13. *Theſſaly*, 14. *Achaia*. 15. *Crete*, 16. *Epirus Vetus*, 17. *Epirus Nova*, and 18. *Prævalitana*. Theſe 18 Provinces being caſt or made up into three Dioceſes, *viz.* the Dioceſe of *Illyricum* ſpecialy ſo called, containing the ſeven firſt, 2. the Dioceſe of *Macedon*, containing the ſeven laſt, and 3. the Dioceſe of *Dacia*, comprehending the other four, were governed by the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, who had firſt his chief Seat and Reſidence at *Sirmium* before mentioned. But in the Diviſion of the Empire betwixt the Sons of *Theodoſius* the Great into the Eaſtern and Weſtern, the Dioceſe of *Illyricum* ſpecially ſo called (after that named *Illyricum Occidentale*) was laid unto the Weſtern Empire, under the Governance of the *Præfectus Prætorio* of *Italy*; and thereupon the Seat or Reſidence of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum* removed from *Sirmium* unto *Theſſalonica*. So that we are now to look upon *Illyricum* in a ſtricter Notion, as a Dioceſe of the Weſtern Empire, containing the ſeven Provinces before ſpecified, whereof both *Noricums*, both *Pannonia's*, and *Valeria*, (if at leaſt *Stiermarck* be that *Valeria*, as ſome ſay it is) have been deſcribed already in their proper places. There now remain only *Savia* and *Dalmatia* to be ſpoken of: the firſt containing all thoſe parts of this Country lying on both ſides of the *Savus*, (whence it had the name;) the laſt thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the Sea, known by the ancient name of *Dalmatia*, the Region of *Illyris* properly ſo called being added to it. But as new Lords give new Laws, ſo they give new Names: the Country being divided by the *Sclavi* into two Kingdoms, *viz* of *Croatia*, and *Dalmatia*; of which the firſt contained the Province of *Savia*, the laſt took up the whole Province of *Dalmatia*, bounded as before, but keeping the name of *Sclavonia* to it ſelf alone, being indeed the only Province in which the name and memory of the *Sclavi* is retained amongſt us. Afterwards as it came to be divided (as at laſt it was) betwixt the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice*, we find it ſubdivided into theſe ſix parts; that is to ſay, 1. *Windiſchland*, 2. *Croatia*, 3. *Boſnia*, 4. *Dalmatia*, 5. *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*, and 6. the *Sclavonian* Iſlands.

1. *WINDISCHLAND.*

WINDISCHLAND is bounded on the Eaſt with part of the Lower *Hungary*, from which it is ſeparated by a Line drawn from St. *Nicolas* near the River *Dravus*, to the Town of *Polega*, ſtanding on a little River which falls into the *Savus*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*, or *Krain*, a Province of the Archdukedom of *Auſtria*; on the North with the River *Dravus*, on the South with *Croatia*. It is thus called by the *Dutch*, as the Land or Country of the *Winnithi*, or *Venedi*, the greateſt Nation of the *Sclaves*, whom generally they call by the name *Windiſch*; and anciently, for ſo much of it as lieth on the North of the *Savus*, accounted part of *Pannonia Inferior*, as afterwards of the Province of *Savia*, till conquered by the *Sclaves*, and laid unto their Poſſeſſions, from them named *Windiſchland*, as before.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Windiſch-gratz*, ſeated on the *Dravus*, the *Vinundria* and *Vindomana* of the Ancients. 2. *Sagona*, near unto the *Savus*. 3. *Gradiſkia*, on the South, and 4. *Zagabria*, on the North of the ſame River: from which laſt a great part of this Country is called *Comitatus Zagabrienſis*. 5. *Novigrad*, on the *Savus* alſo, but more near to *Germany*. 6. *Petrowyna*, ſituate at the foot of the Mountains which are between the *Savus* and the *Dravus*, and divide *Hungary* from *Sclavonia*. 7. *Siſſeg*, or *Siſſaken*, (the *Siſſia* of *Pliny* and *Antoninus* ſituate on the *Saw*, over againſt *Zagabria*, where it receiveth the River *Kulp*; famous for the notable Reſiſtance which the *Turks* there found *Anno* 1593, who, hoping by the Conqueſt of this Province to open a free paſſage into *Germany*, entred it with a puiſſant Army, (having in their way taken the Caſtle of *Oſtrowitz*, and the ſtrong Town of *Wihits*, in *Croatia*) and ſate down very ſtrongly intrenched before this Town. But the Town held it out moſt gallantly againſt all their Batteries and Aſſaults, till relieved by a power of *Germans* who came to ſuccour them: by whom 8000 of the *Turks* were ſlain in the place, and moſt of the reſt drowned in the River *Savus*, as they fled haſtily and (through that great haſte) blindly from the Sword of the Conquerour.

This Province, for the moſt part, is under the Princes of the Houſe of *Auſtria*, as Kings of *Hungary*, to which Crown it formerly belonged: thoſe parts of it which lie next to *Hungary*, on the North and Eaſt, groaning under the Tyranny and Bondage of the *Turkiſh* Garriſons.

2. *CROATIA.*

CROATIA is bounded on the North with *Windiſchland*, from which it is parted by the River *Una* or *Wana*; on the Eaſt with *Boſnia*; on the South with *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*; on the Weſt with *Carniola*. The reaſon of the name I find not among my Authors, but only it was impoſed by the *Sclaves* at their firſt coming hither; who comprehended under this name all the Inland parts of *Sclavonia*, from the Mountain *Ardium* to *Pannonia*, including *Boſnia* and *Windiſchland*, though diſtinguiſhed afterwards.

The Country is for the moſt part cold, mountainous and hilly, overſpread by the Branches of the Mountains *Bæbii*, ſpoken of by *Ptolemy*; yet reaſonably fruitful, ſtored with all neceſſary Proviſions for the life of man, and would yield more increaſe and profit both to Lord and Tenant, were it not for the ill neighbourhood of the *Turk*, to whoſe Tyranny and Oppreſſions it hath been and is ſtill expoſed. The people for the general are held to be good Souldiers, mentioned in our modern Stories by the name of *Crabats*.

Chief Towns in it are, 1. *Maſch*, or *Moſth*, bordering upon *Germany*, the *Aleta* of the Ancients. 2. *Oſtrowitz*, a ſtrong Fort on the ſame Frontier. 3 *Wihits*, by the *Dutch* called *Bibigen*, by the Ancients *Funium*, the Metropolis or chief place of the Country, encompaſſed like an Iſland by the River *Una*, and fortified with ſtrong Works by the help of Art; but taken by the *Turk* *Anno* 1592, and all the Souldiers in it cruelly murthered, contrary to the Articles agreed on at the Surrendry. 4. *Zeng*, 5. *Wackat*, 6. *Tarnaw*, 7. *Modriſch*; of which little memorable.

This Country, with the reſt included anciently under this name, was one of the two Kingdoms of *Sclavonia*; the Princes whereof were uſually entituled Kings of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*. In the year 1007 the *Venetians*, having before poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Towns on the Sea-ſide, firſt ſet footing there. How the whole Country of *Sclavonia* came to the Crown of *Hungary*

ſhall be ſhewn anon. It is held part of it, in the right thereof, by the Houſe of *Auſtria*; part of it by the *Turks*, in the way of Conqueſt: the *Venetians* having now no ſhare in it, for ought I can find.

3. BOSNIA.

BOSNIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Servia*, a Province of *Dacia*; on the Weſt with *Croatia*, on the North with the River *Savus* and the Eaſt parts of the Lower *Hungary*, on the South with *Dalmatia*. So called, as ſome think, from the River *Boſna*, which runneth through it; as others, from the *Beſſi*, a People of *Dacia*, driven out of their Country by the *Bulgari*, and removing hither, by the change of a Vowel called *Boſſi*, whence the Country *Boſnia*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Jaicza*, by the *Latines* called *Jazyga*, ſituate on the top of an high Hill, at the bottom whereof it is almoſt encompaſſed with two Rivers, which there uniting paſs from thence unto the *Savus*. The Town, by reaſon of the rocky Precipices of the Hill, the Unfordableneſs of the River, and an inacceſſible Caſtle, is held to be impregnable: the Metropolis in former times of this petit Kingdom, and the ordinary Sepulture for the Kings thereof. 2. *Warboſoni*, at this time the chief Town of the Country, but not walled about. 3. *Cazach*, the uſual Reſidence or Retiring-place of the *Boſnian* Kings. 4. *Schwanica*, not much obſervable. 5. *Dorobiza*, the firſt Town taken by *Mahomet* the Great in his Conqueſt of this Kingdom; as 6. *Cliſſa* was the laſt, the unfortunate King *Stephen* being taken in it.

This Country, anciently accounted of as a part of *Croatia*, together with it was united to the Crown of *Hungary*, under the Patronage and Homage whereof it was erected into a Kingdom; but the preciſe time when, I find not. Some ſay about the year 1420. If ſo a Kingdom of late date, and ſhort continuance. For in the year 1464 *Mahomet* the Great, firſt Emperour of the *Turks*, having taken *Conſtantinople*, and almoſt all the reſt of *Greece*, caſt his eye upon it, ſuddenly ſurpriſed it, and having taken *Stephen* the laſt King hereof, moſt barbarouſly commanded him to be flay'd alive. After whoſe death this Kingdom was converted to a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, and governed by one of the *Baſſa's* of it, as it ſtill continueth.

4. DALMATIA.

DALMATIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Albania*, from which it is parted by the River *Drino*; on the Weſt with the *Titius*, (now *Varieca*) which divides it from *Liburnia*; on the North with *Boſnia*; on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea. This only of all the Provinces of *Sclavonia* retaineth its ancient Name and Bounds. So called from *Dalminium*, the chief Town hereof in the time of the *Romans*, from which the People were called *Dalmatæ*, and the Country *Dalmatia*.

The Country in the time of the *Romans* was full of Woods, and thoſe Woods of Robbers, who from thence iſſued out to make Spoil and Booty. *Dalmatæ ſub Sylvis agunt, indè ad Latrocinia promptiſſimi*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. And by the advantage of theſe Woods they intercepted and diſcomfited *Gabinius*, one of *Cæſar*'s Captains, marching through their Country with 1000 Horſe, and 15 Companies of Foot towards *Macedonia*, to the Aid of his General againſt *Pompey*. But their Woods being deſtroyed, they became more peaceable, and, in ſtead of Robberies by Land, began to exerciſe themſelves at Sea in the way of Merchandizing, to which their large Sea-coaſts and commodious Havens ſerved exceeding fitly.

Places of moſt conſideration in it are, 1. *Sebenico*, on the Sea-ſide, not far from the Influx of *Titius* or *Varieca*; by *Ptolemy* called *Sicum*, in whoſe time a Colony of *Roman* Souldiers was ſent hither by the Emperour *Claudius*. 2. *Salona*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, one of the Juridical Reſorts for theſe parts of the Province, and the ordinary Arſenal for their Natives. Renowned in ancient Stories for the Retreat of *Diocletian*, a native of this Country, who, having governed the *Roman* Empire 20 years with much Felicity, but a great deal of Cruelty, depoſed himſelf, and retired to this City, where he followed the Trade of a Gardener, working with his own hands, and obſerving with great content the productions of Nature. Inſomuch that when *Maximianus Herculeus*, his Aſſociate, (who at his perſwaſion had done the like) invited him to reſume the Empire, he returned this anſwer, *Utinam poſſitis viſere Olera noſtris manibus plantata*, &c. That if he would come unto *Salona*, and ſee how well the Worts which he had planted with his own hands did thrive and proſper, he would never trouble his Head with Crowns, nor his Hands with Scepters. A rare expreſſion of a ſettled and contented mind. The name and ſome of the Ruines do ſtill remain, to preſerve the memory of ſo remarkable a place. 3. *Spalato*, Eaſt of *Sebenico*, a Sea-Town, and an Archbiſhop's See, who writes himſelf Primate of *Dalmatia*; as anciently and of right he was, till the Biſhop of *Venice*, being made a Patriarch by Pope *Eugenius* the fourth, *Anno* 1450. aſſumed that Title to himſelf, together with a Superintendency over all the Churches of this Country, as ſubordinate to him. Of note for many learned Prelates, but for none more than for *Marcus Antonius de Dominis*, who, ſeeming to loath the *Romiſh* Superſtition, came for Refuge into *England Anno* 1616, and having here both by Preaching and Writing laboured to overthrow the Church of *Rome*, upon I know not what Projects he declared himſelf to be of another mind *Anno* 1622, and returned again to *Rome*, where he writ as reproachfully of the Church of *England*. So that we may ſay of him, as *Socrates* in his Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory ſaith of *Ecebolius*, who under *Conſtantius* was a Chriſtian, under *Julian* a Pagan, and a Chriſtian again under *Jovinian*; Τοιοῦτος μὲν ὢν κῦρος ἦν ἀνχαὶς Ἐκβόλιος φοίτιόν τι ἦν ὕστερον, *So wavering and unconſtant a Turn-coat was* Ecebolius *from his begining to his end*. But *Ecebolius* ſped better than *Antonius* did, he being received into the Church upon his Repentance: but this infatuated man was impriſoned in the Caſtle of St. *Angelo*, and his dead Body burnt to aſhes. A juſt reward for ſo great Levity and ſo groſs Apoſtaſie as he had ſhewed unto the World in his going hence. 4. *Almiſſa*, the *Piguntium* of *Ptolemy*, mounted on a high Rock, and defended with an impregnable Caſtle. 5. *Stagno*, upon the point of a long and ſpacious Cherſoneſe, not far from which the River *Naron* (or *Narento*) falls into the *Adriatick*. 6. *Caſtel Novo*, a ſtrong Fortreſs within the Gulf of *Cattaro*, now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*. 7. *Antivari*, on the farther or Eaſtern ſide of the Bay, an Archbiſhop's See; but that and the Sees of his Suffragan Biſhops, being ſeven in number, are now in poſſeſſion of the *Turks*. 8. *Cattara*, on the ſame ſide of the Bay; by *Ptolemy* called *Aſcrivium*, inhabited in his time by *Roman* Citizens; now a ſtrong hold for the *Venetians* againſt the *Turks*, and giving name unto the Gulf, which, formerly called *Sinus Rhizonicus*, from *Rhizana*, (now *Riſine*) ſituate at the bottom of it, is at this time called from this Town *Golfo de Cattaro*. 9. *Dulcigno*, by *Ptolemy* called *Ulcinium*, originally founded by the *Colchians* and therefore called *Colchinium* by ſome ancient Writers. 10. *Scutari*, more within the Land, (the *Scodra* of *Ptolemy* and *Antoninus*) ſtrongly ſeated on a ſteep Rock, memorable for the ſtout Reſiſtance which it made for

for a whole year againſt the whole Puiſſance of *Mahomet* the ſecond, battered for the moſt part of that time with 70 pieces of Ordnance of wondrous bigneſs, eſpecially that called the *Prince's Piece*, which carried a Stone or Bullet of 1200 pound weight; but taken at the laſt, *Anno* 1578. Not far from this Town is the great Lake called by *Strabo Labeatis*, now the Lake of *Scutari*, 130 miles in compaſs, and environed on all ſides with Mountains, except towards the North: out of which iſſueth the *Drinus*, now called *Drino*, or *Drina*, which, parting *Sclavonia*, from *Macedon*, and *Servia*, paſſeth into the *Savus*. 11. *Aleſio*, the *Liſſus* of *Ptolemy*, the farthest Town of all *Dalmatia* towards *Greece*; memorable for the Grave of *Scanderbeg*, who was buried here, whereof more hereafter. 12 *Medon*, raiſed out of the Ruines of *Dioclea*, an ancient and famous City, the Birth-place of the Great Emperour *Diocletian*, ſpoken of before. 13. *Dalminium*, once the Metropolis of this Province, ſituate on the River *Drinus*; firſt ſacked by *Marcus Figulus*, a *Roman* Conſul, *An. V. C.* 689; and after, on a new Revolt, by one *Naſica*, ſpoken of by *Strabo*: not able after two ſuch Ruines to revive again: nothing being now left of it but the name and memory.

Betwixt the Cherſoneſe of *Stagno* and the Gulf of *Cattaro* ſtands the Town and Territory of RAGUSI; not ſubject, as all the reſt are, either to the *Turk* or to the *Venetians*, but governing themſelves by their own Laws and Magiſtrates, as a free Commonwealth: paying only to the *Turk* 14000 Zecchins yearly in a way of Tribute, and as much in Preſents; diſcharged in that regard of Cuſtoms and Impoſitions in all his Dominions. It was anciently called *Epidaurus*, (of which name there were two other Cities in *Peloponneſus*.) But that Town being raſed by the *Goths*, the Inhabitants, (after their departure) not knowing where to retire themſelves, built this in the place of it, at the foot of a ſteep Mountain; enjoying a pleaſant ſituation near the Sea, with a little, but commodious, Port, forced out of the water by the art and induſtry of workmen. The Town is well built, fortified with Walls and a well-furniſhed Caſtle; now an Archbiſhop's See, and a noted Empory; rich, and ſtrong in Shipping, commanding over a ſmall and barren Territory within the Land, and ſome pleaſant Iſlands in the Sea. So that the Riches of it proceed not from their Rents and Revenues riſing out of the Earth, but by the benefit of their Traffick upon the Waters: in which they are ſecured by the Protection of the *Turk*, without which they had fallen before this time into the hands of the *Venetians*; as on the other ſide preſerved by the State of *Venice* from being a Prey to their Protectors. They were of more Wealth heretofore than they are at preſent, at what time they traded to moſt parts of this Weſtern world in thoſe great Veſſels which from hence were called *Raguſes*, but corruptly *Argoſies*; the laſt of which (their number leſſening with their Trade) they lent unto the King of *Spain* for the War of *England* *Anno* 1588, in which Action it was loſt and wrecked on the Coaſt of *Ireland*.

5. CONTADO DI ZARA.

CONTADO DI ZARA, or the County of *Zara*, called anciently *Liburnia*, and *Illyris* ſpecially ſo named, is bounded on the Eaſt with *Dalmatia*, on the Weſt with *Iſtria*, on the North with *Croatia*, and on the South with the *Adriatick* Sea, or Gulf of *Venice*.

It took this latter name (the former being long diſcontinued) from *Zara*, the chief Town thereof, the *Jadera* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients; a *Roman* Colony at that time, now an Archbiſhop's See; enjoying a ſafe and large Port, and ſituate on a low Cherſoneſe thruſting out like a Promontory into the *Adriatick*; belonging to the State of *Venice*, by whom it is well fenced and fortified againſt foreign Invaſions. For the poſſeſſion and command of this Town there have been great Wars betwixt the *Hungarians* and the *Venetians*, to whom it ſeemeth to be of ſuch importance, that being once taken by the *Hungarians*, it was redeemed for 100000 Crowns of *Ladiſlaus* King of *Naples*, pretending againſt *Sigiſmund* of *Luxemburg* to the Crown of *Hungary*. In this Town is the Church of S. *John de Malvaſia*, which was built by a company of Sailers, who, being in a Tempeſt, made a Vow, that, if they eſcaped, they would conſecrate a Temple to S. *John de Malvaſia*, whoſe Morter ſhould be tempered with Malmſey: and accordingly they paid their Vows. Far leſs did another Maſter of a Ship intend to perform his Promiſe, though he ſpoke bigger, who, in a like extremity of Danger, promiſed our Lady to offer at her Altar a Candle as great as the main Maſt of his Ship. For when one of his Mates, jogging him, told him he had promiſed an Impoſſibility: Tuſh, Fool, (replied the Maſter) we muſt ſpeak her fair in time of need; but if ever I come aſhore, I will make her be content with a Candle of Eight to the pound. And in a like fit of Devotion was he who on the ſame occaſion plainly told God, that he was no common Beggar, he never troubled him with Prayers before; and if he would hear him that time, he would never trouble him again.

Other Towns herein conſiderable are, 1. *Albona*, retaining ſtill the old name, (the *Alvona* of *Ptolemy*) ſituate near the River *Arſia*, the Divider of this Province from *Iſtria*. 2. *Flavona*, or *Flanona*, ſituate againſt the Gulf of *Quernero*, of old called *Sinus Flanaticus*, as before was noted: of ill report amongſt Sailers, for frequent Tempeſts raiſed on every Wind. 3. *Zegna*, by *Ptolemy* and *Pliny* called *Senia*, ſituate on a Flat or Level. 4. *Nona*, of old called *Ænona*, compaſſed with the Sea. 5. *Scriſſia*, now a poor Village, in the place where ſtood the *Argyruntum* of *Pliny*. 6. *Scardona*, now a mean Village alſo, heretofore of great note, and the Juridical Reſort for the whole Province; from whence the neighbouring Mountains had the name of *Scardonici*, the Bounds of this Country and *Croatia*.

The ancient name of this Country was *Liburnia*, as before is ſaid, but extending more Northwards beyond the Mountains of *Ardium* or *Scardonici*; this and *Dalmatia* being then the *Membra dividentia* of the whole *Illyricum*. The People hereof, called by one general name *Liburni*, were much given to Piracies; and for the better ſpeed therein, the Authors and Inventors of thoſe ſwift Veſſels which were called *Liburnicæ* and *Liburnæ*. Of which thus *Horace*,

Ibis Liburnis *inter alta navium,*
Amice, propugnacula.
That is to ſay,
In a *Liburnian* ſhalt thou be
Amongſt the ſtouteſt Ships at Sea.

In imitation of which Veſſels, being ſwift and light, the *Romans*, in the time of their Wealth and Pride, invented a kind of Chair or Litter, (ſuch as thoſe we call *Sedans*) wherein they were carried on mens Shoulders with ſuch eaſe and pleaſure, that they could not only ſleep or read, but write in them alſo. The Porters or Bearers of them were of this Nation commonly; from whence, or from the faſhion of the Veſſel which they did reſemble, they were called *Liburni*. Of theſe thus *Juvenal* in his third Satyr,

Si vocat officium, turbâ cedente vehetur
Dives, & ingenti curret ſuper ora Liburno,
Atque obiter leget, aut ſcribet, vel dormiet intus:
Namque facit Somnum clauſâ Lectica feneſtrâ.

Thus

Thus *Engliſhed* by my honoured Friend Sir *Robert Stapleton*, in his excellent Tranſlation of that harſh Satyriſt:

When Buſineſs calls, a Crowd the rich man ſhuns,
And or'e mens Heads in's huge *Sedan* he runs,
Reads, writes, and ſleeps within it, as he goes:
For Sleep will come if he the Curtains cloſe.

Beſides which office of Chair-carriers, or *Sedan*-men, as we call them now, this People being, when once conquered, a ſervile Nation, furniſhed the *Romans* with thoſe Beadles whom they employed in calling the Citizens from the Fields to their publick Buſineſſes: to which the ſame Poet alludeth in the next Satyr, ſaying, *Clamante* Liburno, *Currite, jam ſedit*, &c. But to proceed. The nearneſs of this Country to the *Adriatick* occaſioned the Bay of *Quernero*, or *Cornaro*, as ſome call it, commonly called *Sinus Flanaticus*, to be ſometimes named *Sinus Liburnicus*; the parts of *Italy* on the other ſide of it to be called *Regna Liburnorum* in the Poet *Virgil*; and gave the name of *Liburnades* to a Shole of Iſlands lying on the Coaſt hereof, 60 at leaſt in number, as is ſaid by *Strabo*. To which and other Iſlands of the *Adriatick* we are now to haſten, leaving the Story of *Illyricum* to the cloſe of all.

6. The *SCLAVONIAN Iſlands.*

ALong the Coaſts of *Sclavonia* lie a Cluſter of *Iſlands*, to the number of a thouſand, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, moſt of which (if indeed ſo many) are but Rocks, not Iſlands, or not inhabited at all, nor of any note. The principal whereof, and ſuch as deſerve place place here, are, 1. the *Liburnades* before mentioned. 2. The *Abſyrtides*. 3. The Iſles of *Raguſi*. 4. *Arbe*. 5. *Curzola*. 6. *Zara*. 7. *Liſſa* and *Brazzia*; the reſt not being worth the looking after as to our Deſign. The whole number of the Inhabitants is reckoned in the total to no more than 40000 perſons.

1. The *LIBURNADES*, ſaid by *Strabo* to be 60 in number, lie all along the Coaſt of *Liburnia*, or *Contado di Zara*. The chief whereof are, 1. *Iſſa*, now called *Pago*, containing 100 miles in compaſs, having a Town of the ſame name; but in all that Tract of ground not above 1100 Inhabitants, in the time of my Author, by reaſon of the ſharp Air, and great want of Fewel. The Salt-pits here yield great Commodity not only to the people themſelves, but alſo to the State of *Venice*, ſupreme Lords hereof. 2. *Tragurium*, now *Trau* and *Trahu*, ſo called from the chief Town hereof, built by thoſe of *Iſſa*: ſo near the Continent, that it ſeems to be a part thereof. By *Mela* it is named *Tagurium*, with ſome little difference. 3. *Pharus*, ſo called from the *Pharii*, or *Parii*, of whom it was once a Colony, long ſince come to Ruine. It is now called *Leſina*, the greateſt of all the *Adriatick*, as being 150 miles in compaſs, and very fruitful for the bigneſs. It hath a Town of the ſame name, which enjoys a ſafe and ſpacious Harbour; unwalled, and of no great beauty, but fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, which commandeth both the Harbour and the Shipping in it. The Birth-place of *Demetrius Pharius*, ſo often mentioned in the Stories of *Greece* and *Rome*.

2. The *ABSYRTIDES* are in number many, ſo called from the River *Abſyrtus*, which thereabout falls into the *Adriatick*; according unto that of *Lucan*,

Et cadit Adriacas *ſpumans* Abſyrtus *in undas*.
Abſyrtus foaming with his haſt,
Into the *Adria* falls at laſt.

But whether that River were ſo called by the *Colchians* at their landing there, in memory of *Abſyrtus* the Son of *Æetas* King of *Colchis*, whom they went to ſeek, or for ſome other reaſon, I determine not. Certain I am, it could not be ſo named from the ſcattering of his Limbs hereabouts by *Medea* his unnatural Siſter, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; that cruel fact being done on the Shores of the *Euxine*; the place being called *Tomos* afterwards upon that occaſion. But of theſe Iſlands, being in number many, as before was ſaid, two only are of ſpecial note; that is to ſay, 1. *Vegia*, or *Vegio*, not far from *Segna* on the firm Land, containing in compaſs betwixt 80 and 100 miles, and about 10000 Inhabitants: the moſt populous of all theſe Seas. It hath a Town of the ſame name, with a very fair Harbour: the Iſland by *Pliny* called *Curicta*, the chief Towns of it in his time being *Fulfinium* and *Curicum*. 2. *Abſorus*, as *Ptolemy*, *Abſyrtium*, as *Pliny* calls it, in whoſe time it was one Iſland only, but now divided into two by the *Venetians*, letting in the Sea betwixt them: the one of them is called *Cherſo*, the other *Oſero*; both joyned together by a Bridge made by the *Venetians*, and both together making up 140 miles in compaſs; each of them having one Town only, and that of the ſame name with the Iſland; the Inhabitants in both not exceeding 5000 perſons. Stored with ſufficiency of Corn, plenty of Wine, and abundance of Wood, great quantities whereof are ſent yearly to *Venice*. They have alſo goodly Herds of Cattel, and great Flocks of Sheep, affording by their Fleſh, Wool, Cheeſe and Butter, a good increaſe of profit to the Owners of them.

3. The *Iſlands* of *RAGUSI*, (for ſo I call them which belong to that Commonwealth) are but three in number. 1. *Gravoſa*, a very pleaſant place, full of Gardens of Oranges, Limons, and Pomegranates. 2. *Languſte*, environed about with very high Mountains, in which are the *Raguſians* Farms, made rich by the great Charge and Induſtry of the ſeveral Occupants, ſo as to yield them Wine, Oyl, and moſt excellent Fruits; which they receive more plentifully from a goodly Plain ſituate in the midſt hereof, and naturally more fruitful than the other parts. Near to this laſt Iſland is good fiſhing for Sprats: and in both an Art of making their Trees to bring forth Oiſters, by bending down their Boughs, and ſtaying them under the water with Stones; ſo as in two years there are ſo many Oiſters faſtned unto them as is ſtrange to ſee, and in the third year they are very good meat. 3. *Melyda*, lying betwixt *Raguſi* and the Iſle of *Curzola*, by *Pliny* called *Melita*, and on that ground ſuppoſed by ſome to be that Iſland on which St. *Paul* did ſuffer Shipwreck, *Acts* 26. But the name of *Barbarus*, which the Text joyns to the Inhabitants of it, not proper to an Iſland betwixt *Greece* and *Italy* in the times of St. *Paul*, and his landing, when he parted thence, at *Syracuſe*, an haven of *Sicily* ſo far from this, ſo near unto the other *Melita*, which is now called *Malta*, ſufficiently refel this Fancy, though otherwiſe not improbably grounded.

4. Of thoſe which are known only by one ſingle name the chief are, *ARBE*, ſo called in the time of *Pliny*, from the beſt Town of it; but by *Ptolemy* it is named *Scardona*. A pleaſant Iſland, in compaſs about 30 miles, and containing ſome 3000 Inhabitants; the only Havenleſs Iſle of all the *Adriatick*: but that defect is abundantly recompenſed by the natural Sweetneſs of the place, which ſo enticed certain diſſolute Rovers of *Auſtria*, that they ſeiſed upon it *Anno* 1618, and had like to have occaſioned an heavy War betwixt *Ferdinand*, Archduke, of the Houſe of *Gratz*, (not long after choſen King of the *Romans*) and the State of *Venice*, if *Philip* the third of *Spain* had not made up the Breach.

5. *CURZOLA*, by *Ptolemy* and *Strabo* called *Corcyra*, or *Melæna*, more rightly *Corcyra Melæna*, or *Corcyra Nigra*, to difference it from *Corcyra*, now *Corfu*, in the *Ionian* Sea. The chief Town of it, being of the ſame

ſame name with the Iſland, was founded by the *Gnidians* of the Iſle of *Crete*. It is ſufficiently fruittul, but of Wine eſpecially; forty miles long, in compaſs ninety, and very populous for the bigneſs; notwithſtanding that the people, being Sea-faring men, do much uſe the Seas, and build many Ships. In the year 1571, a little after the taking of *Cyprus*, and before the Battel of *Lepanto*, it was invaded by *Uluz Aly*, General of the *Turkiſh* Fleet, with a Navy of 60 Gallies: for fear of whom *Contarenus*, the *Venetian* Governour, together with the Townſmen and Garriſon Souldiers, abandoned *Curzola*, the chief Town hereof. The ſilly Women thus forſaken, and preferring Death before Diſhonour, defended the Walls, and with Fire, Stones, and ſuch other Weapons as they had, they beat off the Enemy; till at the laſt a violent Tempeſt forced the *Turkiſh* General to remove his Gallies farther off, to a place of ſafety.

6. *ZARA, LISSA, BRAZZIA*, three ſmall Iſles, not otherwiſe memorable but for their Misfortunes, ſpoiled by the *Turks* at their departure from *Curzola*, who carried thence 1600 Chriſtians into cruel Bondage. The reſt I purpoſely omit, being rather Rocks than Iſlands, barren and ſtony for the moſt part, and not much inhabited.

The ancient Inhabitants of *Illyricum*, in the full extent of it, comprehending *Liburnia* and *Dalmatia*, were the *Iapodes*, bordering on *Italy*; the *Scirtones*, or *Scirtarii*, confining upon *Macedon*; the *Mazæi*, in the midſt about *Salona*; the *Peiruſtæ*, lying towards *Pannonia*; the *Derrii*, *Ceraunii*, *Daurſii*, *Vardæ*, *Siculotæ*, *Sardiotæ*, and others of inferiour note: all making up the great and potent Nations of the *Liburni* and the *Dalmatæ*, and comprehended generally in the name of *Illyrians*. Of theſe the *Liburnian Illyrians* (*Illiryci, ſeu Liburni*, as they are indifferently called by *Florus*) were the firſt who felt the Forces of *Rome*: which growing State they had provoked by their frequent Piracies, but more by murthering the Embaſſadours which were ſent unto them to require Satisfaction; *Teuta* their Queen, a proud and imperious Dame, commanding Execution to be done upon them. Warred upon by the *Romans* for ſo many Injuries under the Conduct of *Centimalus*, one of their Conſuls, they were overthrown, (as having more of the Pirate than the Souldier in them) ſome of their chief Nobility executed, in revenge of the Wrong done to the Embaſſadours, an yearly Tribute impoſed on them, and the Queen deprived of the greateſt part of her Kingdom, conferred by the *Romans* on *Demetrius Pharius*, one of their Confederates. But he proving unfaithful to them in their War with *Hannibal*, and *Gentius*, their laſt King, who commanded over *Illyricum*, ſiding againſt them with *Perſeus* King of *Macedonia*, *Anitius* the Prætor is ſent with a ſufficient Army to make an end of that work; who uſed ſuch diligence therein, that *Scodra* the chief Town of the Kingdom was taken, and the King himſelf, together with his Wife and Children, made Priſoners; by conſequence the whole War ended, *antequam geri* Romæ *nunciaretur*, before they knew at *Rome* that it was begun. The *Liburnians* after that became quiet Subjects, the whole Country on the taking of *Gentius* being made a Province of the *Romans* *Anno V.C.* 586, and they employed at *Rome* in many ſervile offices, as before was ſaid: and then the *Dalmatians* began to caſt off the Yoke. But *Dalminium*, their chief City, being firſt ſacked by *Marcus Figulus*, and after by *Naſica* before mentioned, they continued quiet and obedient till the time of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, when they again rebelled at the inſtigation of one *Batto*, a man very potent with the People, who, having ten years together maintained the Liberty of his Country, at laſt, broken and wearied by the Forces of *Germanicus* and *Tiberius*, ſubmitted himſelf unto the two Generals; who, asking the reaſon of his Revolt, were anſwered, becauſe the *Romans* ſent not Shepherds to keep, but Wolves do devour, their Flocks. Thus finally conquered, it continued a *Roman* Province till the coming of *Odoacer* into *Italy*, who brought it under his Command; as the *Goths* alſo did, having vanquiſhed him, and thereby made themſelves Maſters of *Italy* and the reſt of his Purchaſes. But the Kingdom of the *Goths* being brought to an end by the good fortune of *Juſtinian*, and the valour of *Beliſarius* and *Narſes*, two of his Commanders, (but very ill requited by him) *Illyricum* became a part of the Eaſtern Empire; continuing under the power of the *Græcian* Emperours till the time of *Phocas*, that bloudy Tyrant; when it was made a Prey to the *Sclaves*.

Of theſe though we have ſpoken before in ſeveral places, as their Fortunes and Affairs have led us; yet being this is the only Country which preſerves their name, we will here ſpeak more exactly of them then we have done hitherto; eſpecially as to their Manners, Name, and firſt Original, and finally of their Succeſſes in this Country. And firſt for their Original, I take it for a thing paſt queſtion that they were no other than natural *Sarmatians*, inhabiting on the North of the River *Iſter*, uniting themſelves under this Name in their Undertakings and Attempts on the Eaſtern Empire: as the many Nations of *Germany* took the name of *Franks* and *Almans* in their Actions and Atchievements againſt the Weſtern. But why they took this Name rather than another, is not yet agreed on. Some fetch the original of it from *Slowo*, which in the *Sclavonian* Tongue ſignifieth a *Speech* or *Word*, becauſe they were all of one common Language: others from *Slawa*, ſignifying in that Language *Fame* or *Glory*, in regard of that great Fame and Honour which they had atchieved by their Succeſſes on the Empire. But when I find a potent Nation of the *Winnithi*, *Winuli*, or *Venedi*, a *Sarmatian* People, called *Sclavini* by *Jornandes*, poſſeſſed in his time of the farther Shores of the River *Iſter*, oppoſite to *Illyricum* and *Thrace*, and by that Name waſting and foraging theſe Provinces and other parts of that Empire in the time of *Juſtinian*, as we read in *Procopius* that they did; I ſee no reaſon why we ſhould look farther for the name of *Sclaves* than from theſe *Sclavini*. For having in the time of *Phocas* ſubdued this Country, and called it *Sclavinia* or *Sclavonia*, after their own Name; by that and other fortunate Succeſſes on the Eaſtern Empire, and the Honour they had thereby gotten, they might very well induce the reſt of the ſcattered Tribes of the *Sarmatians* to unite together with them both in Name and Action, and try their fortunes in the Conqueſt of the Weſt of *Europe*, as theſe had done already on the Eaſt parts of it. In which Deſign they ſped ſo well, that they became Maſters of almoſt all thoſe Countries which lie betwixt the River *Viſtula* and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Adriatick* and the *Baltick*; communicating their Language unto all the Provinces and Nations conquered by them; and to moſt their Manners, Rites and Cuſtoms. Their Government was at firſt by Kings, but ſo that the Succeſſion ſeldom held in a Race or Family, and thoſe that had the Throne did not long enjoy it. For having a Law amongſt themſelves, that he who killed a Tyrant ſhould ſucceed in his place; they had few Kings whom ſome or other would not vote to be a Tyrant, and then diſpatch him out of the way, that a greater Tyrant than himſelf (as it commonly happeneth in ſuch caſes) might poſſeſs the Power. Inſomuch that they had a new King almoſt every year, none of them for the ſpace of an hundred years dying natural deaths; and all that while the People (as it muſt be) were moſt miſerably torn in pieces by inteſtine Wars. They were not cured of this Diſtemper, till the ſeveral Tribes and Nations of them (as *Poles*, *Moravians*, *Bohemians*, theſe here, and thoſe

of

of other Countrys) had their ſeveral Princes ſucceeding one another in a regular way. Their Religion was Gentiliſm at the firſt. For being originally Heathens, they worſhipped ſuch Gods as others of the Gentiles did; *Jeſſan* for *Jupiter*, *Ladon* for *Pluto*, *Marzim* for *Mars*, *Zievane* for *Venus*, and *Nian* for *Diana*. They had alſo a Goddeſs called *Fagode*, to whom they prayed for Fair weather and a temperate Air. To their Children they uſed to give no Name till they began to grow great, and then they conducted them to the Temple of their Gods; where they cut off their firſt Hair, and offered it as a Pledge of their future Service: at which Solemnity they called together their Friends and Kinsfolk to make merry, with Banquets, Dancing, Singing, and all kind of Sports; offering in ſacrifice an Hog, and Wine mixed with Honey, ſomewhat like Metheglin.

The Goſpel was firſt generally received amongſt them by the Preaching of *Cyrill* and *Methodius*, two right godly men, who had before converted the *Georgians* and *Circaſſians*, two great *Aſian* Nations, employed therein by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, with good Succeſs as to the Work, and with no ſmall Honour and advantage to thoſe Patriarchs alſo. The Eaſtern *Sclaves*, inhabiting thoſe parts of this Country which lie next to *Greece*, and all the *Dacian* Provinces, except *Tranſylvania*, being of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but privileged to officiate all Divine Services in their natural Language. The reſt, as more obnoxious to the power of the Kings of *Hungary* and the *German* Emperours, ſubmitted by degrees to the Popes of *Rome*, who by this means did reap where they never ſowed.

But to return unto the Story. The *Sclaves*, thus ſettled in this Country, (ſince called *Sclavonia*) continued abſolute Maſters of it, under the Title of *Kings* of *Croatia* and *Dalmatia*, till the year 970; when growing unſufferable by their frequent Piracies, and having raviſhed or ſurprized a company of *Venetian* Ladies, they forced that State (as the *Liburnians* did the *Romans*) to make War upon them: which ended in the Loſs of *Leſina* and *Curzola*, two of their beſt Iſlands, and almoſt all the Sea-Towns on the Coaſt of the *Adriatick*, poſſeſſed for the moſt part ſince that time by the State of *Venice*: a Tribute alſo of a hundred Barrels of Wine, and a Preſent to the Duke of 3000 Coney-skins, being laid upon them; *Petro Urſeolo*, being then Duke of *Venice*, and *Marcomir* King of the *Sclavonians*. Afterwards *Zelamirus*, the laſt King, dying without Iſſue, bequeathed the Kingdom to his Wife, and ſhe as freely to her Brother *Vladiſlaus*, King of *Hungary*, ſurnamed the Saint; the Right hereof accruing by this means to the Kings of *Hungary*, but the Poſſeſſion of a great part of it remaining to the State of *Venice*: the cauſe of much War and Bloudſhed betwixt thoſe Princes, till the *Turk* came to part the Fray, and got the greateſt part for himſelf by their Diſagreements. Betwixt theſe three *Sclavonia* at this time doth ſtand thus divided: the *Venetians* poſſeſs the greateſt part of the Iſlands, and all the Sea-coaſts from the River *Arſia* to the Bay of *Cattaro*, (the City and Commonwealth of *Raguſi* excepted only;) the Houſe of *Auſtria*, in Right of the Crown of *Hungary*, the Inland parts of *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*; and the *Turks* (who firſt ſet footing here in the Reign of *Mahomet* the ſecond) the whole Kingdom of *Boſnia*, the Patronage of *Raguſi*, ſome Towns in *Windiſchland* and *Croatia*, and all the reſidue of *Dalmatia*, from the Bay of *Cattaro* to *Albania*.

The Arms of *Sclavonia* were *Argent*, a Cardinal's Hat, the Strings pendant, and platted in a True-love Knot, meeting in the Baſe, *Gules*.

There are in *Sclavonia*

Archbiſhops 4. Biſhops 26.

And thus much for *SCLAVONIA*.

OF DACIA.

DACIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Euxine* Sea and ſome part of *Thrace*, on the Weſt with *Hungary* and *Sclavonia*, on the North with *Podolia* and ſome other Members of the Realm of *Polaud*, on the South with the reſt of *Thrace* and *Macedonia*. So called from the *Daci*, who here firſt inhabited; in *Strabo* better known by the name of *Davi*: who proving, when firſt known to the *Romans*, an officious people, willingly putting themſelves to Service in hope of Gain, occaſioned the *Romans* in their Comedies and common Speech to call a Sycophant or Servant by the name of *Davus*,

It lieth on both ſides of the *Danow*, fronting all along the Upper and the Lower *Hungary*, and ſome part of *Sclavonia*: extended from the 7. Climate to the 10. ſo that the longeſt Summers Day in the moſt Northern parts thereof is near 17 hours, and in the moſt Southern 15 hours, 3 quarters.

By this account, with reference to the other Limits before laid down, it differeth much in Situation and Dimenſions from the ancient *Dacia* deſcribed by *Ptolemy*: that lying wholly on the North-ſide of the *Danow*, but taking in ſo much of the Upper *Hungary* as lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of *Tibiſcus*, this comprehending all the reſt of the ancient *Dacia*, with both the *Myſia's* and *Dardania*, and, in a word, the whole *Dacian* Dioceſe in the largeſt extent thereof, the Province of *Prævalitana* excepted only; which, though a Member of this Dioceſe, was no part of *Dacia*, but rather of *Macedon* or *Albania*. For the clearer underſtanding whereof we may pleaſe to know, that *Dacia* properly ſo called was ſituate on the North ſide of *Danubius*, as before was ſaid, extending as far Weſtward as the River *Tibiſcus*, where it frontiered on the *Jazyges Metanaſtæ*; inhabited by a military and valiant People, who many times, eſpecially when the Froſt did favour them, paſſed over the River, and infeſted the *Roman* Provinces. And though repreſſed and made tributary

butary by *Julius Cæsar*, yet they brake out again in the time of *Augustus*, who sending *Lentulus* against them with a puissant Army, compelled them to retire on the other side of the River, planting the Southern Banks thereof with strong Towns and Garrisons, to restrain them from the like incursions for the time to come. By means whereof, *Si Dacia nunc non victa, saltem ab atque dissita est*, saith the Historian, though *Dacia* was not overcome, yet it was removed somewhat farther off, and the Provinces thereby secured from the attempts of that People. After this, from the time of *Cotiso*, with whom *Augustus* had to deal, we find little of them till the Reign of *Decebalus* their last King, a man both ready in Advice, and quick in Execution. Against him *Domitian* made War by *Julianus* his Lieutenant, who gave *Decebalus* a great Overthrow, and had then utterly vanquished him, if his Wit had not better befriended him then his Sword. For, fearing that the *Romans* making use of their Victory, would enter and take possession of his Countrey, he pitched in the way a great number of Stakes in Battel-array, putting on them the old Corslets of his Souldiers; which, looking like so many men at Arms, frighted the Enemy from approaching the Countrey. *Trajan* was the next that made War against him and brought him to that Exigent, that having with much loss endured some few Skirmishes, he yielded himself, and is acknowledged a Friend to the Senate and People of *Rome*. But being one of a high spirit, and born in a free Air, he once again fell off from the *Romans*; but to his own Destruction: for seeing by the Valour of *Trajan* his Kingdom conquered, and his Palace taken and destroyed, he fell upon his own Sword, and *Dacia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire. Lost in the time of *Gallienus*, it was again recovered by *Aurelianus*; who, finding how difficult and chargeable the keeping of it was like to be, transplanted the *Roman* Colonies, and the more civil sort of the Natives, to the other side of the River, placing them betwixt the two *Mysia's*, (in some part of each) and calling the Countrey given to them by the name of *Dacia*, or *New Dacia*, leaving the *Old* unto the *Goths*, and others of the barbarous Nations, whose Thorough-fare it was in all their Enterprises and Designs upon the *Roman* Empire. It was divided by *Aurelianus* into the two Provinces of *Dacia Mediterranea*, and *Dacia Ripensis*; this lying on the Banks of the *Danow*, the other more within the Land: which, with the Provinces of *Mœsia Superior*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocess of *Dacia* in the times succeeding. It was subject with that of *Macedon* to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, and consequently appertaining (after the Division) to the Eastern Empire. And it continued in this state till the time of *Justinian*, who being a Native of this Countrey, subducted it from the Command of that Præfect, and instituted both a *Præfectus Prætorio* for this Diocess only in Civil matters, and a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, both settled in the City of *Justiniana*, of his own Foundation; enlarging the Jurisdiction of the first by the addition of some part of *Macedonia Secunda* and *Pannonia Secunda*, and giving to the other all those Prehemineneies which had been anciently enjoyed by the greater Patriarchs. But this new Institution was of no continuance. For first the *Sclaves*, and afterwards the *Russians*, *Hungars* and *Bulgarians*, breaking over the *Danow*, dismembred it piece-meal from the Empire, and divided it under new names amongst themselves. Of which, together with the nature of the Soil and People, I shall speak anon, having first took a view of the Rivers, Hills, and other Landmarks, which are to be my chief Guides in the Chorography or Description of them.

The Rivers then of most note are 1. the *Danow*, which here at *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, a Town of *Bulgaria*, takes the name of *Ister*, continuing it from thence to its *Æstuarium*, where it falleth into the *Euxine* Sea with 7. Mouths or Channels; that is to say, 1. *Peuce*. 2. *Naracustoma*. 3. *Calliostoma*. 4. *Plendostoma*. 5. *Spireostoma*. 6. *Boreostoma*: the name of the last I find not amongst my Authours, *quia languidissimum, nec perpetuum*, as it is in *Ptolemy*. 2. *Marulius*, now called *Marisch*. 3. *Termes*. 4. *Aluta*, keeping its old name. 5. *Hierasus*. All of *Old Dacia*, and all falling into the *Danow* or *Ister*: as do also *Ciabrus*, now *Ibar*, a River of *Cervia*. And 6. *Sconia* of *Bulgaria*, or the *Lower Mysia*. Chief Mountains of it are, 1. The *Carpathian*. 2. *Scardus*. 3. *Ozbelus*; whereof the first parteth it from *Sarmatia Europæa*, the second from *Dalmatia*, and the third from *Macedon*.

This said, we will proceed to the description of the several Provinces which we have comprehended under this name of *Dacia*; that is to say, 1. *Transylvania*. 2. *Moldavia*. 3. *Walachia*. 4. *Rascia*. 5. *Servia*. 6. *Bulgaria*: The first four in *Old Dacia*, on the North-side of the *Danow*; the two last in *New Dacia*, on the South thereof.

1. TRANSTLVANIA.

TRANSTLVANIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, on the West with the Upper *Hungary*, on the North with *Russia Nigra*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*, from which it is parted by the *Carpathian* Mountains; on the South with *Rascia* and *Walachia*.

It took this name from the great Woods lying betwixt it and *Hungary*; the name in Latine signifying *the Countrey beyond the Woods*. By the *Dutch* it is called *Siebenbergen*, from seven Castles or strong Holds anciently built in it to defend the Frontiers: *Septemcastrensis* in some Latine Authors upon that occasion. But by the more elegant Latinists it hath been named *Pannodacia*, as that part of *Dacia*, which either was inhabited by the *Pannonians*, or made subject to them.

The Soil doth naturally abound with Wine, Corn, and Fruit; of which it was so plentiful in the time of the *Romans*, that the Emperour *Trajan* caused a piece of Money to be coined, having the Figure of *Ceres*, holding in the one hand a *Cornu-copiæ*, and in the other a plain Tablet with this Inscription, *Abundantia Daciæ*. Particularly, besides great plenty of Wheat and most excellent Wines, it yieldeth great store of Cherries, Damascens, Malacatoons, Musk-melons, not inferiour to those of *Italy*, and also Centaury good store, and many other Medicinal plants; some Mines of Gold and Silver, many of Iron, Brass, Copper, and not a few Veins of Salt and Sulphur. Of Cattel such abundance, that many times large Oxen are sold for a Floren, or half a Crown apiece; and a most notable breed of Horses: not to say any thing of that variety of Wild Beasts which they have in their Woods and Forests, and of all sorts of Fowl both for food and pleasure. So populous withal, (for the most fruitful Countreys are commonly populous also) that *Castaldo*, Governour hereof in the Minority of *Stephen* the fourth Son of *John de Sepusio*, *Anno* 1551. advanced Army of 70000 able men, consisting of the Natives of this Country only, for the Siege of *Lippe*, a strong Town of *Hungary*, but on the Borders of this Countrey.

The People are much of the same nature with the *Hungarians*, to whom they have been a long time subject, but somewhat more stubborn and untractable; speak the same Language that they do, with some difference in the Dialect only; converted at the same time to the Chris-

ſtian Faith, and under the ſame form of Eccleſiaſtical Government. In former times they uſed to read, as the *Jews* do, from the right hand to the left; but of late herein they conform to the Weſtern Nations, from whom they are generally deſcended.

For that the people of this Country are the Progeny of the *Saxons*, is evident 1. by the *Saxon* Language yet in part retained. 2. We find that *Charles* the Great, like a politick Conquerour, placed many of that Nation here, weakning ſo their ſtrength at home, and fortifying the Bounds of his Empire. And 3. by a Story recited by *Verſtegan*, which we touched in our Deſcription of *Brunſwick*; the whole Narration is this. *Halberſtadt* was beyond credit troubled with Rats, which a Muſician, whom they called the *Pyd Piper*, undertaking for a great maſs of mony to deſtroy, they agree: hereupon he tuned his Pipes, and all the Rats in the Town dancing after him are drowned in the next River. This done, he asketh his pay, but is denied: whereupon he ſtriketh up a new fit of Mirth: all the Children, male and female, of the Town, follow him into the Hill *Hamelen*, which preſently cloſed again. The Parents miſs their Children, and could never hear news of them. Now of late ſome have found them in this Country, where I alſo leave them: only telling you this, that this marvellous accident is ſaid to happen the 22. of *July*, 1376. Since which time it is ſaid that the people of *Halberſtadt* permit not any Drum, Pipe, or other Inſtrument to be ſounded in that Street: and eſtabliſhed a Decree, that in all writings of Contract or Bargain, after the Date of our Saviours Nativity, the Date alſo of this their Childrens Tranſmigration ſhould be added *in rei memoriam*. But though the *Dutch* or *Saxons* make up the main Body of them, yet, being conquered by the *Hungars*, they received many of their Colonies; and in the Northern parts there remain ſtill ſome of the old *Scythians* planted there by *Attila*. Out of thoſe Members is the Body of this State compoſed: ſo ſtrong and populous, that it is conceived to be able to raiſe an Army of 90000 men; and actually did arm 6000 Horſe and 12000 Foot for the Battel of *Kereſture*, Anno 1596. being more by 2000 then the whole Realm of *Hungary* ſent unto that Service.

Chief Towns herein of the foundation of the *Dutch* or *Saxons*, are 1. *Hermenſtat*, in Latine *Hermanopolis*, (of old called *Cibinium*, from the River *Cibin*, on which it was ſituate) ſo named of one *Herman* the Founder of it; little inferiour to *Vienna* for ſtrength or greatneſs, well fortified both by Art and Nature. 2. *Cronſtad*, in Latine called *Corona*, by ſome *Braſſovia*, by others *Stephanopolis*; this laſt name being given it by *Stephen* King of *Hungary*, who repaired and beautified it; ſituate on the Borders of *Walachia*, amongſt fruitful Mountains; remarkable for a fair Library and a kind of Academy; and the moſt noted Empory or Mart-Town of all this Country; of great Reſort, eſpecially in the Time of their publick Fairs, by *Turks*, *Arabians*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Polanders*, *Walachians*, and other Nations. 3. *Biſtricia*, (by the *Dutch* called *Noren*) ſo called from the River *Biſtrice*, which runneth through it: ſo pleaſant and ſo ſweet a Town, that there is no dirt or mire to be ſeen at any time; or if there be, the people preſently ſwell up the River, and ſo cleanſe the Streets. 4. *Mediaſus* (by the *Dutch*, *Medwiſch*) ſo called *quaſi medius conſeſſus*, becauſe ſituate in the midſt of the Country; a Town almoſt as neat as *Biſtrice*. 5. *Segoſwaria*, or *Schesburg*, on the declivity of an Hill. 6. *Zabeſus*, or *Laia*, once the chief Town of the *Saxons*, but now much decayed; ſituate in a very deep Valley, well fenced with Waters, and thoſe Waters well ſtored with Fiſh. 7. *Clauſenburg*, or *Coloſwar*, the *Zeugma* of *Ptolemy*, in Latine called *Claudiopolis*, from *Claudius* the II. Emperor, by whom re-edified: at firſt a Colony of the *Saxons* or *Dutch* only, but of late times the *Hungarians*, coming in as Strangers, were at laſt privileged as Citizens, and inhabited it together with them. The Town is well ſeated in the middle of a pleaſant Plain, encompaſſed with an handſome Wall, and beautified with elegant Buildings. 8. *Alba Julia*, now *Weiſſenburg*, the *Apulum* of *Ptolemy*, ſituate on a ſmall Brook then called *Apulus*, (but now *Oratus*) whence it had the name. Built on the ſide of an Hill near the River *Mariſch*, (or *Mariſius*) over-looking a large and fruitful Plain: heretofore a Biſhops See, and the ordinary Reſidence of the Prince or Vaivod of *Tranſylvania*; but now a Garriſon of *Hungarian* Souldiers, holding it for the Emperour, as King of *Hungary*.

Chief Towns belonging to the *Hungarians*, and by them inhabited, are, 1. *Waradin*, much mentioned in the Stories of theſe later times, ſince the Invaſions of the *Turks*; ſituate on the Borders of *Hungary*. 2. *Iharda*, built in or near the place where ſtood the *Saline* of *Ptolemy*, ſo called from the abundance of Salt-pits which were then about it. 3. *Engvedine*, by the *Romans* called *Anuium*, from a Cauſey leading to it, raiſed by one *Annius*, and from him ſo named; ſome Fragments whereof are ſtill remaining. 4. *Deva*, remarkable for a Vein of the beſt Wines. 5. *Fenuſchium*, affording very pleaſant Wines alſo, not inferiour to thoſe of *Venuſium* in *Italy*. 6. *Zilachi*. 7. *Gela*, of which little memorable. 8. *Millenback*, not far from which, betwixt it and the Town of *Bros*, is a very ſtrong Fortreſs, commanding a ſtreight and narrow paſſage leading into this Countrey out of *Hungary*.

In the North part hereof lieth the Province called ZEGKLER, inhabited by the *Siculi*, an old brood of *Scythians*, brought hither by, *Attila*, on his firſt Conqueſt of this Countrey, and here ſtill continuing. A people which have much in them of the ancient *Hunns*, and had heretofore a peculiar Language to themſelves, but now they ſpeak the *Hungarian* generally, differing in the Dialect only. But though, by the neceſſity of Commerce and Cohabitation, they are brought into the ſame Language; they ſtill retain their ancient Cuſtoms, governed by their own Laws, and living after the ſame manner as the *Switzers* do; each of their Cantons (ſeven in number) being abſolute in and of it ſelf, but all united with the *Tranſylvanians*, and with one another, for defence of the whole Countrey againſt the ſeveral Pretenſions of the *German* and *Turkiſh* Emperours. And though they do acknowledge ſome Subjection to the Emperour as King of *Hungary*, yet it is but what they liſt themſelves: being anciently priviledged from all Taxes, more then the paying of a Bull for every Houſhold, in the way of an Heriot, at the Coronation of the new King, when and how oft ſoever it may chance to happen. Their Cantons (*Sedes* they call them) are, 1. *Sepſi*. 2. *Orbay*. 3. *Kyſdi*. 4. *Czyk*. 5. *Gyrgio* or *Uduarhelli*. 6. *Marous-Zeek*. And 7. *Arania-Zeek*; ſo called from the chief Town in each Diviſion. In former times no Nobleman, nor any one of better Means and greater Eminence than other, was known amongſt them: but now of late that Parity (or Confuſion rather) is grown out of credit, and ſome begin to over-top the reſt both in Power and Title, as in other places.

The firſt Inhabitants of the old *Dacia*, whereof this Province was a part, were the *Anarti*, *Tauriſci*, *Rhatacenſii*, *Cauceenſii*, the *Buridenſii*, and *Biephi*, &c. Firſt conquered they were by *Lyſimachus*, the great and mighty King of *Thrace*, one of the renowned Captains of *Alexander* the Great; in token whereof, innumerable Medals in the age of our Grandfathers were found in this Countrey, having his Image on the one ſide, and this word *Victoria* on the other. How they were afterwards ſubdued by the Emperour *Trajan*, and quitted by *Aurelianus*, hath been ſhewn already.

dy. Being forsaken by the *Romans*, it was won by the *Goths*; their constant Dwelling, till forced over the *Danow* by the *Hunns*, the next Possessours of this Countrey; the Road or Thorough-fare from that time of those barbarous Nations which out of *Asia* made their Inroads on the *Europeans*. Having been successively subdued by the *Sclaves* and *Rosses*, this part hereof was conquered by *Stephen*, the first King of *Hungary*, surnamed the Saint; by whose perswasion and inducements they received the Gospel. They were governed after this time, as a Member of that Kingdom, by a Deputy, whom they called the *Vaivod* of *Transylvania*, (the word *Vaivod* signifying as much as *Præfectus Militiæ*, or a Lord-Lieutenant;) a man, by reason of the greatness of his place and power, of most Authority in that Kingdom. The names and Succession of these Vaivods, till the time of *John Huniades*, comes imperfectly to us; but after that more clear and constant, in this order following.

The VAIVODS and PRINCES of *TRANSYLVANIA*.

1. *John*, surnamed *Huniades*, made Vaivod hereof by *Vladislaus* the IV. A man of great Valour and Renown, the great Defender of his Countrey against the *Turks*, whom he overthrew in many Battels, especially in that of *Maron*, where he slew 50000 of them. He died about the year 1458.
2. *Stephen*, of the noble Family of *Cattory*, Vaivod in the time of *Matthias* King of *Hungary*, the Son of *Huniades*.
3. *Stephen* II. surnamed *de Sepusio*, from the place of his Honour or Estate; not so much memorable for any thing as for being Father of *Barbara*, the Wife of *Sigismund* King of *Poland*, and of
4. *John* II. called also *de Sepusio*, after the death of *Lewis* the II. chosen King of *Hungary*, of whom before amongst the Kings of that Realm
1526 5. *Americus*, Bishop of *Veradium*, made Vaivod by *John de Sepusio*, on his taking of the Crown of *Hungary*; treacherously murthered, for not complying with the *Turk*, *Anno* 1534.
1540. 6. *Stephen* III. surnamed *Maylat*, a noble *Hungarian*, but extremely ambitious, having not long after the death of *Americus* usurped the Vaivodship, was in the year 1540 confirmed in that Dignity.
1541 7. *Stephen* IV. Son of *John de Sepusio* the late King of *Hungary*, by *Solyman* the Magnificent made Vaivod of *Transylvania*, being then an Infant, (by whom he had been deprived of his Kingdom of *Hungary* not long before:) being incroached upon not long after by the said *Solyman*, this Countrey was put into the hands of *Ferdinand* King of *Hungary*, other Lands being given to the young Prince in exchange hereof.
1551 8. *Stephen* V. surnamed *Dobus*, for his Valour shewed against the *Turks* in defending *Agria*, made Vaivod of this Countrey by the said King *Ferdinand*. But *Solyman*, not liking that this Countrey should be at the Devotion of the Kings of *Hungary*, conferred the same (under the Vassalage of his Empire) upon one
9. *John* III. whose Family and surname I have no where found; a professed Champion of the *Turks*, and as professed an Enemy to *Ferdinand* and his Successors in the Kingdom of *Hungary*.
10. *Stephen* VI. surnamed *Battory*, (of which House he was) made Vaivod by the *Turk*; and afterwards, on the Commendation of *Amurath* the III. chosen King of *Poland*.
1575 11. *Christopher Battory*, Brother of *Stephen*, on whose Election unto *Poland* he succeeded here, and was the first who, leaving the Title of *Vaivod*, took that of *Prince* of *Transylvania*.
12. *Sigismund*, Son of *Christopher*, shook off the *Turkish* Bondage, defeated many of their Armies, and slew some of their *Bassa's*, (the *Scanderbeg* of the times he lived in.) But not being able to hold out against so potent an Adversary, he resigned his Estate to *Rodolphus* the Emperour, having for it in exchange the Dukedoms of *Oppeln* and *Ratibor* in *Silesia*, and an annual Pension of 50000 *Joachims*. But finding his Pension ill paid, he made a new Resignation of it to
1599 13. *Andrew Battory*, Cousin of *Sigismund*, slain within the year by the Vaivod of *Valachia*. After whose death
1601 14. *Rodolphus*, Emperour and King of *Hungary*, is admitted Prince of *Transylvania*, on the second Resignation of *Sigismund*. But his Souldiers behaving themselves with too great Insolence, *Sigismund* was called back again, but never well settled: so that at last he was fain to leave the Countrey in the power of the Emperour, and retire to *Prague*, where in the year 1613 he died unlamented. In the mean time
1604 15. *Justine*, or *Istivan*, surnamed *Botscay*, a Nobleman of this Countrey, made Prince hereof by the great *Turk*, and supported by him, cleared the Province of the *Germans*: and being followed by great Companies of those of the Reformed Religion, he not only obtained of the Emperour *Rodolphus* a Confirmation of this Estate unto himself, but Liberty of Conscience, and the free Exercise of Religion for both the Nations, presently after which he died, *Decemb.* 30. 1606.
1607 16. *Sigismund* II. of the noble Family of *Ragotzy*, elected in the *February* following by the *Transylvanians*: but finding himself not able to make his Election good against the Emperour, and being unwilling to subject himself unto the *Turks*, after the end of one year he relinquished the Government, and betook himself again to a private life.
1608 17. *Gabriel Battory*, of the Family of the former Princes, succeeded by the favour of *Achmet* the great *Turk*: after whose death, so welcome unto his Neighbours and Subjects,
1613 18. *Bethlem Gabor* by the same *Achmet* was made Prince of *Transylvania*; a professed Enemy of the House of *Austria*, but one that with a great deal of noise did them little hurt.
1630 19. *Stephen* VII. surnamed *Ragotzy*, on the death of *Bethlem Gabor*, succeeded Prince, by the power and favour of the *Turks*, under whose Clientele and Protection he doth still enjoy it, (as his Predecessors did before him) against all Pretensions of the Empire and Realm of *Hungary*: as on the other side he is defended by the Emperour and Crown of *Poland* from being made Thrall unto the *Turks*.

2. MOLDAVIA.

MOLDAVIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, on the West with *Transylvania*, on the North with the River *Nieſter*, the *Tyras* of *Ptolemy* and the Ancients, by which it is parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*: and on the South with *Valachia*.

It is ſo called, as ſome ſay, *quaſi Mæotavia*, from its nearneſs to the Fens of *Mæotis*; or rather from the *Huuns* and other People of thoſe Fens who poſſeſſed the ſame. Others conceive that it was firſt called *Maurdavia*, i. e. *nigrorum Davorum Regio*, the Countrey of the black *Davi*, (for by the name of *Davi* were the *Dacians* called, as we find in *Strabo* and ſome others;) ſo named from their Complexion, or the colour of their Caps and other Garments; as *Nigra Ruſſia*, a near neighbouring Province of the Realm of *Poland*, on the like occaſion. But the more probable opinion (as I take it) is, that it took this name from the River *Moldava*, which runneth through it; as the *Moravians* had that name from the River *Morava*. The Nature and Religion of the People we ſhall find in *Valachia*, whereof anciently it was reckoned for a part.

The Countrey is very fruitful in Corn, Wine, Graſs, and Wood; but more uſed for Paſturage then Tillage, by reaſon of the great want of people to manure the Land: by means whereof it affordeth great plenty of Beef and Mutton, whereby they ſupply ſome parts of *Poland* and the populous City of *Conſtantinople*. And theſe they iſſue out in ſo great a number, that the Tenth peny, exacted by the Prince or Vaivod in the way of Cuſtom, amounteth to 150000 Crowns *per annum*: and yet the Clergy and the Gentry are diſcharged of this Impoſt. But the main Trade of this Countrey is not driven by the Natives: the Port Towns being full of *Armenians*, *Jews*, *Hungarians*, and *Raguſian* Merchants, who foreſtal the Markets, and barter all their Corn and Wine into *Ruſſia* and *Poland*; their Skins, Wax, Honey, powdered Beef, Pulſe and Butter into *Conſtantinople*: it being credibly reported, that from the Ports of this Countrey no fewer then 500 Ships laden with Corn, Victuals, and other Proviſions neceſſary to the life of man, are yearly ſent unto that City.

The Countrey is in a manner round, the Diameter each way being near upon 300 *Engliſh* miles: but ſo ill inhabited, by reaſon of the neighbourhood of the *Turks*, *Tartars*, and *Polonian Coſſacks*, that certain *Engliſh* Gentlemen having in the year 1609. travelled at leaſt 240 miles in the Countrey, could meet with in all the way but nine Towns and Villages; and for an hundred miles together the Graſs ſo high, that it rotted on the ground for want of Cattel to eat it, and of men to order it. So that we are not to expect in it many eminent Cities or Towns of note; though it afford two Archbiſhops and two Biſhops Sees, Followers (as all the reſt of the People are) of the Traditions and Doctrines of the Church of *Greece*.

The principal of thoſe which be, are, 1. *Occazoma*, *Zucconia*, or *Soczava*, the Vaivod's Seat. 2. *Fucciania*. 3. *Fazeling*; of which little memorable. 4. *Kotiim*, a place of great ſtrength, on the Borders of *Poland*; by ſome called *Cochina*; the ordinary Magazine of the Countrey. 5. *Jaſſy*, commonly called *Yas*, the chief Town for Wealth and Trade in all this Province. 6. *Bender*, a ſtrong Town on the *Euxine* Sea. 7. *Polada*, near the *Danow*. 8. *Bialigrad*, ſituate on or near the River *Tyras*, now called *Nieſter*; a ſtrong Town againſt the *Tartars*, and *Polonians*. 9. *Kilia*, anciently called *Achilleia* ſituate on the Shore of the *Euxine* Sea, for the moſt part compaſſed round with the waters of it, and therefore ſaid by *Ptolemy* to be an Iſland. 10. *Ac-Germen*, of old called *Aſprocaſtron*, and *Moncaſtrum*, a very ſtrong Town on the ſame coaſt alſo. Both taken by *Bajazet*, the ſecond Emperour of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1485. But theſe three Towns are not ſo properly in *Moldavia*, at leaſt not in *Moldavia* properly ſo called, as in a little Province called *Beſſarabia*, lying on the *Euxine*, formerly counted part thereof, till conquered by the *Turks*, in the year aforeſaid, it became a Member of that Empire. A Tract inhabited by the *Beſſi* in the times of *Ptolemy*, who being driven out of their Countrey by the *Bulgarians*, ſettled themſelves (as ſome ſay) in that part of *Sclavonia*, which is now called *Boſnia*.

The whole Countrey, following the Fortune of *Tranſylvania* and the reſt of *Dacia*, till the coming of the *Sclaves* and *Roſſes*, was for a while accounted part of the *Ruſſian* Empire, till the diſmembring of that Empire by the *Tartars*. After which it was ſometime Homager to the *Polanders*, ſometime to the *Hungarians*, according as the Vaivods or Princes of it could find beſt Conditions. By *Mahomet* the Great it was made Tributary to the *Turks*; but the Tribute at the firſt was very light and eaſie, not above 2000 Crowns *per annum*: that mighty Emperour, who aimed at more profitable Conqueſts, being loth to ſpend his Forces on ſo poor a Purchaſe as the addition of this Province would have been unto him. But *Bajazet* his Son, finding how fit it lay for the more abſolute Command of the *Euxine* Sea, took in that part hereof which is called *Beſſarabia*, reducing it into the form of a *Turkiſh* Province, *Anno* 1485, as before was ſaid; impoſing on the reſt an increaſe of the former Tribute; and ſo left it unto the diſpoſal of its natural Princes. After which time the Vaivods fearing to be made Vaſſals to the *Turks*, did many times riſe in Arms againſt them, aided therein ſometimes by the *Hungarians*, and ſometimes by the *Polander*; which laſt pretended to the Sovereignty and Chiefage of it. *Bogdanus*, Vaivod hereof in the time of *Selimus* the ſecond, uniting himſelf more cloſely with the *Polonians*, became thereby ſuſpected by the *Turkiſh* Tyrant; who with a great power chaſed him out of his Countrey, and gave the ſame unto one *John*, a *Moldavian* born, but bred up for the moſt part in the *Turkiſh* Court (where he renounced his Faith, and was circumciſed) under the yearly Tribute of 60000 Crowns. But *John* the new-made Vaivod was no ſooner ſettled, but he returned again to his firſt Religion, and for that cauſe grew leſs affected by the *Turks*. Which being obſerved by the then Vaivod of *Valachia*, he practiſed to obtain that Dignity for his Brother *Peter*; offering to double the ſaid Tribute, and to aſſiſt in Subjugation of the Countrey. The *Turk*, accepting of theſe Offers, compounds an Army of 70000 *Valachians*, 30000 *Turks*, and 3000 *Hungarians*, with which they fell into *Moldavia*; and were ſo gallantly received by the noble Vaivod, that few of them eſcaped the Slaughter. But being afterwards betrayed by his old Friend *Czarnieviche*, and, againſt faith given, barbarouſly murthered by the *Turkiſh Baſſa*; *Moldavia* fell into the hands of the *Turks*, and was united to that Empire, *Anno* 1574. the Vaivods from that time forwards being nominated by the *Turkiſh* Emperours, and governing as Subſtitutes and Lieutenants for and under them. And though *Aaron*, one of the ſucceeding Vaivods, did ſhake off this Yoke, and confederated himſelf with *Sigiſmund* Prince of *Tranſylvania*, and *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, for Defence of themſelves and their Eſtates againſt that Enemy: yet being afterwards ſupplanted by *Roſwan*, one of his own ambitious Subjects, and that Confederacy disjoynted, it became ſubject firſt unto the *Polonians*, by the power and pra-

practice of *Zamoiskie*, Chancellour of *Poland*; and then unto *Rodolphus*, Emperour of *Germany*; and finally unto the *Turk*, as before it was. And though the *Polanders* have since made use of some opportunities in imposing Vaivods on this Countrey, in despite of the *Turks*: yet was it commonly to their own Loss, little or no Benefit to the *Moldavians*, and in the end drew the whole Power of the *Turks* upon themselves in the Reign of *Osman*; they never since intermeddling in the Affairs of this Province, but leaving them entirely to the *Turks* disposing; who receive hence some yearly Tribute, but have not hitherto obtained the entire Possession of it, so long since aimed at by those Tyrants.

3 *VALACHIA.*

VALACHIA is bounded on the East with *Moldavia*, and a Branch of the *Ister*, or *Danubius*, bending towards the North; on the West with *Rascia*, on the North with *Transylvania* and some part of *Moldavia*, and on the South with the *Danubius* wholly, by which it is parted from *Servia* and *Bulgaria*. First called *Flaccia*, from one *Flaccus* a Noble *Roman*, who, on the Conquest hereof in the time of *Trajan*, brought hither an *Italian* Colony; afterwards by corruption *Vlachia*, and at last *Valachia*.

But the name of *Flaccia* or *Vlachia* was at first of more large extent then it is at present, comprehending all *Moldavia* also: divided in those times by a Ridge of Mountains into *Cisalpina*, and *Transalpina*; the name of *Moldavia* being afterwards appropriated to the one, and that of *Valachia* (properly and specially so called) unto the other. The people of both, in token of their first Extraction, speak a corrupt *Latine* or *Italian* Language; but in Matters of Religion follow the Dictates of the *Greek* Church, and obey the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, under whom all Ecclesiastical Affairs are governed by one Archbishop, and two Bishops. In other things they partake generally of the Rudeness and Barbarity of those Nations, which have since subdued them; being a rough-hewn people, hardly civilized, ignorant for the most part of Letters and all Liberal Sciences, not weaned perfectly (in so long time of their profession of Christianity) from the Superstitions of the Gentiles, swearing by *Jupiter* and *Venus*, marrying and unmarrying at their pleasures, much given to Magical Charms and Incantations, and burying with their Dead both Cloaths and Victuals, for their Relief in that long Journey to the other World.

It is in length 500, in breadth 120 miles. The Countrey is for the most part plain and very fertile, affording store of Cattel, a breed of excellent Horses, Iron-mines, Salt-pits, and all Provisions necessary to the life of man. Some Vines they also have, and not few Mines of Gold and Silver, more then for fear of the *Turks*, and other ill Neighbours they dare discover. They are begirt about with woody Mountains, which afford them Fewel; and very well watered with the Rivers of 1. *Pruth*, called anciently *Hierasus*. 2. *Stertius*. 3. *Fulmina*. 4. *Teltz*. 5 *Aluta*, all of them falling into 6. the *Danow*, which in this Province, at the Influx of *Fulmina*, takes the name of *Ister*. Yet is it not (at the present) very populous, the Spaciousness and Fertility hereof considered, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Tartars*, *Turks*, and *Polonian Cossacks*: their late long Wars against those Nations and the *Dutch* having much decreased their former numbers, with which they so abounded in the times foregoing, that the Vaivod of this Countrey, in the year 1473, was able upon little warning to bring 70000 men into the Field for present Service.

Places of most note herein are, 1. *Galacz*, on the Influx of the River *Pruth*, or *Hierasus*, into the *Danubius*; the water of which River is so unwholsome, that it causeth the Body to swell. 2. *Trescortum*, not far from which they dig a Bituminous earth, so refined and pure, that usually they make Candles of it instead of Wax. 3. *Prailaba*, by some called *Brailovia*, the Town of most Trade in all this Countrey, situate on the *Danow*, and defended with a very strong Castle, fortified by Art and Nature, and furnished with a strong Garrison of *Turks*, as the Key of this Province, opening the Door unto the rest. The Town was most cruelly destroyed and raised to the ground, with an incredible Slaughter of the Inhabitants of all Sexes and Ages, for the space of four dayes together, by *John* the Vaivod of *Moldavia*, spoken of before, at his first revolting from the *Turks*: but the Castle, in regard of the great strength of it, was scarce attempted by him. 4. *Teina*, a Fortress of great strength, but in the hands of the *Turks* also. 5. *Zorza*, corruptly for *San-Georgio*, seated on the *Danow*, with an Arm whereof the Castle of it is encompassed; garrisoned by the *Turks*, and by them held to be so strong and so safe a place, that at the taking of it by *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, *Anno* 1596, there were found in it 39 great pieces of Ordnance, with such store of Arms and Ammunition as might well have served for a whole Kingdom. 6. *Tergovista*, or *Tervis*, sometimes the chief City of the Province, and the ordinary Residence of the Vaivod, till the taking of it by the *Turks*: once beautified with a fair and famous Monastery, by the *Turks* converted into a Fortress; environed with deep Trenches, strong Bulwarks upon every quarter, and great store of Ordnance; but many times lost and got again, according to the changes and chance of War. 7. *Pineresta*, about a days journey from *Tergovista*, seated on the *Danow*, remarkable for two Bridges built near unto it. The one was of Boats, (the laying whereof took up no less then a whole months time) for the transporting of the Army of *Sinan Bassa* against *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* before mentioned, and broken down by the said *Bassa* in his Flight, having been worsted in all places by the *Transylvanian*. The other was the work of the Emperour *Trajan*, in his War against *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, built all of Stone, and laid on Piles and Arches of a wonderful greatness; 24 Piles or Pillars whereof are yet remaining, to the great admiration of all beholders. 8. *Cebium*, of old called *Lycostomos*, in vain besieged by the Forces of *Mahomet* the Great, coming in person to subdue this petit Province. 9. *Zarmizegethusa*, the Seat-royal of *Decebalus* King of *Dacia*, taken and destroyed by *Trajan* in his War against him; who, causing it to be repaired and more beautified then formerly, gave it the Privileges of *Rome*, and the name of *Vlpia Trajana*, which it retained as long as *Dacia* was a Province of the *Roman* Empire; now a small Village called *Vetzet*. Some stones have been digged up hereabouts with this Inscription, *COLONIA. VLPIA. TRAJANA. AVG. DACIÆ. ZARMIS.* which clearly shew as well the Dignity and esteem as the Antiquity of the place, before *Trajan*'s times.

This Province, as the rest of *Dacia* on that side of the *Danow*, after the coming in of the *Sclaves* and *Rosses* was under Princes of their own, whom they called (as those of *Transylvania* and *Moldavia* did) by the name of *Vaivods*. Protected by the *Hungarian* Kings they lived long in Peace; till, sensible of the approaching Danger which the Conquest of most part of *Servia* and *Bulgaria* by the *Turks* was like to bring them, the Vaivod of it in the time of *Bajazet* the First passed over the *Danow* with his Forces, and having done great Spoil to the *Turkish* Territories, returned again unto his Countrey. Rather provoked then weakened with which Invasion, *Bajazet* comes into *Valachia*, overcomes the Vaivod in a pitched Field, compelling him to sue for Peace, and

to

to pay him Tribute. But *Bajazet* being not long after taken Prisoner by *Tamerlane*, and the Succession controverted amongst his Sons, the imposed Tribute was with-held, till *Mahomet*, the fifth King of the *Turks*, having settled the Affairs of that tottering State, *Anno* 1417 enforced them to a new Composition, and the payment of all former Reckonings. The fortunate Successes of *Huniades* in several Battels, induced them once more to change their Masters, and to put themselves under the Protection of the *Hungarians*, as they had been formerly: but they paid dear for it, their Country being made the Thoroughfare of the *Turkish* Forces in their Attempts upon that Kingdom. But the *Hungarians* being vanquished at the Battel of *Cassova* by *Amurath* the second, the accustomed Tribute was brought in, and the *Turks* satisfied for the present, being then hardly put to it by the famous *Scanderbeg*. Not long after, in the year 1462. *Mahomet* the Great undertook the Conquest of this Countrey, upon advertisement that *Wladus*, the then Vaivod of it, intended to joyn with the *Hungarians* in some War against him: and finding how unprofitably he had spent his Forces in fighting against Woods, Mountains, and a wasted Country, he set up *Dracala*, the younger Brother of *Wladus*, to claim the Government; who, making a Party amongst the people, and having the *Turk* for his Assistance and support, possessed himself of the Estate, to be holden of him as a Vassal to the *Turkish* Empire. And it continued in this state, the Vaivods being after this at the *Turks* appointment, and paying all Exactions imposed upon them, till the Revolt of *Sigismund* the Prince of *Transylvania*, *Anno* 1595. at what time *Michael*, the then Vaivod hereof, taking that opportunity to shake off this Yoke, confederated with him and the *Moldavian* for their common Safety. And though he held out longer against *Turk* and *German* then either of the other did, discomfited the *Turks* by his own proper Forces at the Battel of *Nicopolis*, vanquished the *Transylvanians*, and added that Province for a while unto the Estate: yet, being at last outed of his Countrey by the *Polanders*, and another put into his place, he was shamefully slain in his own Tent, by the privity and consent of *Basta*, Lieutenant of *Rodolphus*, Emperour, and King of *Hungary*. After whose death the Countrey, miserably distracted betwixt two Vaivods, the one placed by the Emperour *Rodolph*, and the other by *Mahomet* the Grand Seignior, endured all the Spoil and Wreck which so calamitous a Competition could bring upon it: till in the end, the fortune of the *Turks* prevailing, the *Valachians* were constrained to submit unto their Disposal, and receive their Vaivods from that Court, as they had done formerly; performing their accustomed Duties, and paying such yearly Tribute as is laid upon them. Which notwithstanding, partly by their own natural Unquietness and partly by the ambition of such persons as contend for that Dignity, they have since been many times embroiled in Wars; never so quietly composed, but that a new Hope, or the Artifices of the *Turkish* Ministers, starts them into Action. By means whereof, when they have tired and spent themselves in their own Combustions, they may in fine be fully conquered, and made the next addition to the *Turkish* Monarchy.

Of what Revenue these Provinces severally were to their natural Lords, and of what severally to the *Turk*, I am not able to determine. But look upon them as conjunct, and as they stood at the time of the Revolt so often mentioned, and they yielded one way with another into the Treasury of the Grand Seignior no less then a million of Ducats yearly. *Knolles* in his *Turkish* History doth report it so. And his Continuator doth affirm that *Moldavia* only, before the said Revolt, did yearly yield unto the *Turk* a whole Tun of Gold, 2000 Horses for service, 10000 great Measures of Wheat, with as much Barley, and a wonderful proportion of Butter, Honey, and other Victuals; adding withal, that the other two Provinces paid as much, or more, for their yearly Tribute. After which rate, the Estimate made by *Knolles* may hold very good. But since the Reduction of these Countries to their former Obedience, the *Turks* having been more moderate in their Exactions then they were before, for fear of startling them to some new Engagement; whom they have brought to this Obedience and Conformity with such a vast expence both of Blood and Treasure as would have purchased the best Kingdom of Christendom in the open Market. Insomuch that the ordinary Tribute of *Moldavia* is now but 40000 Chequins, that of *Valachia* but 24000 of the same Coin; besides 1000 Horses yearly sent from both. Such Bribes and Presents as are given by the Vaivods hereof, either to get or hold their places, being marchantable Ware, and wholly at the *Turks* disposing, not being part of this Accompt.

4. RASCIA.

RASCIA is bounded on the East with *Valachia*, on the West with *Hungary*, on the North with *Transylvania*, and on the South with the River *Danow*; encompassed on three sides with that River, and another now called *Temes*, by the *Latines Samus*; and on the East divided from *Valachia* by the River *Aluta*. Called *Rascia* from the *Rasciani*, a *Sclavonian* People, whom *Ortelius* placeth in this Tract, and from him *Maginus*. But here it is to be observed, that besides this Countrey, the *Rascians* held some Towns and Territories on the other side of the *Danow*, and amongst others the strong Town of *Chrysonicum*; whereof more anon.

The Countrey is poor enough, but the people poorer, oppressed in former times by the *Servians*, and of late by the *Turks*; which makes them valiant and adventurous upon all occasions, as commonly those people are who give themselves the hope of bettering those Fortunes which they cannot make worse. Places of most note here are, 1. *Bodon*, a Town of Trade, on the *Danow*, memorable for the Marts or Fairs which are here held annually. 2. *Zarnovia*. 3. *Covin*. 4. *Novebarde*. 5. *Severin*, not far from which, betwixt it and *Bucaresta*, a Town of *Valachia*, are the remainders of *Trajan*'s Bridge before mentioned. 6. *Colambes*, and 7. *Columbella*; of which little memorable.

These *Rascians*, as before is said, were a Tribe of *Sclaves*, settled in this Countrey, at the time of their first spreading in the East, and here continuing ever since in possession of it. Governed at first by their own Princes, whom, by a name borrowed from the *Grecians*, they called their *Despots*; that being once the Title of the Heir apparent or designed Successor of the Eastern Empire, as *Cæsar* had been formerly in the Empire of *Rome*, and *Monsieur* in the same sense in the Realm of *France*, to signifie the eldest Brother (if Heir apparent to the Crown) of the King in being. But as the following Emperours did affect new Titles, so that of Despot fell from one step to another, till given at last unto the Governours of Provinces; as the Despot of *Epirus*, *Peloponnesus*, &c. and in the end was assumed by the several Princes of *Rascia*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. How this Estate became united unto *Servia*, I am yet to seek: but sure I am, it was united in the person of *George* Despot of *Servia*, and as a part of his Estate surprized by *Amurath* the second, who boasted his Success therein, (in a Speech made unto his Souldiers at the Siege of *Belgrade*) notwithstanding that he had to strive with Hunger, Thirst, Labour, and Desperation. Nor

have

have I found at what time or under whose Conduct they passed over *Danubius*, and there possessed themselves of *Chrysonicum*, and some other Towns and Territories on that side of the River, which they still retain, either surrounded by the *Servians*, or at least intermingled with them; which makes some Writers of opinion that the *Rascians* and the *Servians* are but one and the same People under divers names: to which conjecture their being subject to the same Prince gave some farther ground. But whensoever they passed over, most probable it is, that, proving either troublesom Neighbours, or unwelcome Guests, they gave occasion to the Despots of *Servia* to make War upon them, and, having vanquished them on that side of the River, to carry the War over unto this; till in the end the whole Countrey was made subject to them. Added to *Servia*, they fell together with it into the power of the *Turks*, as was said before. But being more impatient of the Yoke then the *Servians* were, they did the *Turks* much mischief many times, as they came in their way: never so much nor so effectually, as when *Mahomet* the III warred against the *Hungarians*; at what time they frequently distressed his Armies, by cutting off his men, and intercepting the Provisions of Arms and Victuals intended for the great Army of *Sinan Bassa*. After which at the time when *Sigismund* Prince of *Transylvania* had won so many noble Victories against the *Turks*, 10000 of these *Rascians*, casting off that Yoke, offered themselves unto his Service. These are the only memorable Actions which are told us of them; though this last was only the attempt of some private Adventurers, the whole Nation still continuing in Obedience, as before they did. But following (as they did) the Fortunes of *Servia*, and having a Concernment on that side of the Water, we shall there say something farther of them.

Thus have we seen when and by what means the whole Province of *Old Dacia* became in part subject, and in part tributary, to the *Turks*. It is now time to pass over the *Danow*, and look upon the other part of this Province, called *Dacia Nova*, or *New Dacia*; containing after our accompt four Provinces of the *Roman* Empire, that is to say, both *Mysia's*, *Scythia*, and *Dardania*, besides the two *Dacia's*, *Mediterranea* and *Ripensis*, interjected betwixt the two *Mysia's*, as before is said: all now reduced only unto two of the *Turkish* Provinces, namely, the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*.

5. SERVIA.

SERVIA is bounded on the East with *Bulgaria*, on the West with *Bosnia*, and some part of the Lower *Hungary*, on the North with the *Danubius*, by which it is parted from *Rascia* and some part of *Valachia*, on the South with *Albania*, and part of *Macedon*. It containeth all *Mysia Superior*, and a great part of *Dardania*; and took this new name from the *Serbi*, or *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, of whom more hereafter.

This Countrey, with the neigbouring *Rascia* and the modern *Sclavonia*, was first converted to the Faith by the preaching of *Cyril* and *Methodius*, formerly remembred, between the years 860 and 890. of both which there is reserved some special Monuments. For *Methodius*, having obtained both of the Patriarch of *Constantinople* and the Pope of *Rome*, that the Nations by them converted might celebrate all Divine Offices in their natural Language, translated the whole Bible into the *Sclavonian* Tongue, which still they have among them in high esteem. And *Cyril* is said to have devised the *Servian* Character, not used in this Countrey only, (though here originally) but also in *Rascia*, *Bulgaria*, *Bosnia*, *Moldavia*, and most parts of *Russia*: which Character, from this *Cyril*, (or *Chiuril*, as they pronounce it) is still called *Chiurlizze*.

The Countrey was very rich and fruitful before the Conquest of it by the *Turks*, well stored with Mines of Gold and Silver, especially about *Zerbenic*, a strong Town hereof. The people are rude and gros, and much given to Wine; false of their Promises, and that upon slight occasions, so that there is but little trust to be laid upon them.

Chief Rivers of this Countrey, are, 1. *Colubra*, and 2. *Lim*, falling into the *Savus*. 3. *Ibar*, falling into the 4. *Morava*; as that into the *Danow* at *Chrysonicum*, or *Chrysovetlia*, a strong Town of the *Rascians*. Principal Towns hereof, 1. *Nissa*, the *Nessum*, as I take it, of *Ptolemy*, by whom it is said to be a City of the *Dardanians*; now the Metropolis of this Countrey, and the Key thereof: besieged and taken by *Amurath*, the third King of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1367. 2. *Vidina*, by the *Turks* called *Kiratow*, taken by *Ferisbeg*, in the beginning of *Bajazet* the first, and ever since the Seat of a Turkish *Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* of *Temeswar*. 3. *Crassova*, and 4. *Zerbenic*, rich in Silver Mines; a great temptation to the *Turks* to invade this Countrey. 5. *Simandria*, or *Senderovia*, by some called *Spenderobe*, by the *Hungarian Zenderin*, by the *Turks Semender*; situate on the *Danow* not far from *Belgrade*, and taken by *Amurath* the II. *Anno* 1438. since governed by a Turkish *Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Buda*. 6. *Novograd*, in the Borders hereof, fortified with an impregnable Castle. 7. *Stoniburg* (in Latine *Stonibrigadum*) the ordinary Seat of the Despots. 8. *Prisden*, said by *Mercator* to be the Birth-place of the Emperour *Justinian*; most like to be *Taurefium*, a City of the *Dardanians*, mentioned by *Procopius*, who maketh it the Birth-place of that Emperour, by whom it was repaired and fortified with four great Turrets, thence called *Tetrapyrgon*. But others (more probably) make him to be born at *Lochrida*, a Town of *Bulgaria*; of which more hereafter. 9. *Scopi*, by *Ptolemy* called *Scupi*. And 10. *Ulpianum*, first built by *Trajan*, whose forename was *Ulpius*; afterwards re-edified by the said *Justinian*, and called *Secunda Justiniana*, (*Justiniana Prima*, being in *Bulgaria*:) now a poor Village called *Pyrethi*, as *Lazius*, or *Czanadre*, as *Marius Niger* is of opinion. 11. *Rhetiaria*, by *Ptolemy*, for distinction sake, called *Rhetiaria Mysorum*, then the chief City of the *Mœsians*, of which now no Ruines are remaining. 12. *Raveniczen*, the *Vendenis* of *Ptolemy*, but not else observable.

Besides these Towns and many other of less note which properly belong to this Province of *Servia*, the *Rascians* also hold some Towns on this side of *Danubius*, the chief whereof is *Chrysonicum*, or *Chrysovetlia*, an old Town, almost wholly ruinated, till repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1449. who marking the convenient situation of it on the Banks of *Danubius*, near to the Fall or Influx of the River *Morava*, and how commodiously it stood both to command and to annoy the rest of this Countrey, and for transporting of their Forces to the other side of that great River, made it their first work to possess themselves of it, and have held it ever since with a very strong Garrison. Such other Towns as the *Rascians* have on this side of the River, or of lesser note, are looked on by our Authour but as Towns of *Servia*, (by the Despots whereof they were long since conquered) where before we had them.

The old Inhabitants of this Countrey, such as are most considerable in the story of it, were the *Bastarnæ*, the *Dardani*, and the *Mœsi*: the *Tricornesii* and *Picensii*, spoken of by *Ptolemy*, being either Branches of the *Mœsii*, or else an obscure People not worth the looking after. Of these the *Dardanians* were most ancient, inhabi-

inhabiting near Mount *Hæmus*, on the Borders of *Macedon*; a barbarous People, and perpetual Enemies of that Crown; most mischievous in their Attempts and Designs against it in the declining state thereof, making great and frequent inroads into that wealthy Country, with the spoils whereof they enriched themselves. Insomuch that *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, finding no other likely means to be rid of that Trouble, negotiated with the *Bastarnæ*, a strong and hardy Nation that dwelt beyond the *Danubius*, to abandon their own Dwellings, and come to him with their Wives and Children; promising to assist them in rooting out the *Dardanians*, and give them possession of their Countrey. But *Philip* dying as the *Bastarnæ* were in their March through *Thrace*, and no care taken by his Son to pursue the Business, they returned all home again, except 30000, which pierced into *Dardania*, and made their own Fortunes as they could. This practice, as it gave matter of Quarrel to the *Romans* against the *Macedonian*; so it occasioned *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, to make use of these *Bastarnæ* against the *Romans*, at whose request 10000 Horse and as many foot passed over the *Danow*, under the Conduct of *Claudicus*, a King amongst them. But finding that *Perseus* was too strait-laced to part with Money for their pay, they returned again, forraging the Countrey as they passed. But whether they passed over that River, or mingled themselves with the rest of their Nation, who upon *Philip*'s invitation had before come over, that I do not find. Howsoever, coming by this means acquainted with the sweets of this Countrey, divers of them came over hither in the following times, incorporating with the *Dardanians*, or bordering near them; insomuch as *Tacitus* for the most part joyns them both together, either as the same, or neigbouring Nations: first vanquished and added to the *Roman* Empire by *C. Curio Scribonius*, immediately upon the end of the Civil Wars raised by *Spartacus* and the Fencers, or *Gladiatores*; the *Mysians*, or the *Mæsi*, being broken at the same time also, *Anno V. C.* 681. As for the *Mæsi*, being the last and greatest of these Nations, they were most probably a Colony of the *Mysians* of the lesser *Asia*, anciently called *Mysi*, and the Countrey *Mysia*, as those *Asians* were, and as those *Europæans* are by the *Greek* Writers generally, and by *Florus* and some others amongst the Latines; though after, for distinction sake, *Tacitus*, *Pliny*, *Virgil*, and generally most Latine Authours, give them the name of *Mæsi*. A fierce and savage People they were held to be, *Barbari barbarorum*, as my Authour calleth them, more barbarous then commonly the *Barbarians* were: but, for all that, subdued by *M. Licinius Crassus* in the time of *Augustus Cæsar*, who overcame them in two Battels, and after vanquished the *Bastarnæ*, and their King *Deldo*, whom he killed in fight; the Countrey being reckoned after that as a *Roman* Province. It continued in this estate till the Fall of the Eastern Empire, when it was subjected by the *Sclavi* or *Sarmatians* of *Europe*; and in the division of the Spoil fell unto the *Sorabi*, a *Sclavonian* People, contractedly called *Sorbi*, and at last *Serbi*, *Servii*, and the Countrey *Servia*. It was reduced again to the Obedience of the Eastern Emperours by *Basilius Porphyrogenitus*, *Anno Ch.* 1000. or thereabouts; but more absolutely conquered by *John* and *Manuel Comnenus*, two of his Successors: but so as they were suffered to live under their own Princes, whom they called *Despots*, Homagers to the Empire, and depending on it. Inriched with the Conquest and addition of *Rascia*, (the certain time whereof I have no where found) they were first set on by the *Turks* in the time of *Lazarus* the Despot, from whom *Amurath* the first Took the Town of *Nissa*, being the chief of all this Countrey; provoked thereto by the great Forces which the *Servian* and *Bulgarian* Despots had raised against him for the Siege of *Adrianople*. And though *Lazarus*, terrified with this Loss, made his Peace with *Amurath*: yet after he brake out again into open War, in which he was overcome and slain in the Plains of *Cassova*, whereof more anon. To *Lazarus* succeeded *Stephen*, who quietly enjoyed his Dominions here; the *Turks* being in the mean time embroiled in War amongst themselves by the Sons of *Bajazet*. But that Difference being once composed, and *Mahomet* absolutely settled on his Father's Throne; the *Turks* began again to pursue this Quarrel: which *George* the Son of *Stephen* compounded with *Amurath* the second, Son of *Mahamet*, paying the *Turk* an yearly Tribute, and giving him his Daughter *Mary* for a Wife or Concubine. But this Alliance did not so well unite their Affections, (though *George* did many ill Offices in regard thereof to his Christian Neighbours) nor so well settle his Estate, but that *Amurath* in fine dispossessed him first of *Rascia*, and afterwards of *Servia* also, for letting *Huniades* escape, whom he had in his power. And though *Amurath* was necessitated to restore *Servia* again, upon the Peace made with *Vladislaus* the King of *Hungary*; yet *Mahomet* the Great, on the death of *George*, soon possessed himself of it. For *Lazarus*, the youngest of *George*'s Sons, having deprived *Stephen* and *George* his elder Brethren (whose eyes *Amurath* had before put out, to make them uncapable of the Government) of the Principality, compelled them to seek to *Mahomet* for Aid. But dying whilst these matters were in agitation, his Widow put her self and her three Sons, *Peter*, *John*, and *Martin*, under the Protection of the *Hungarians*; and by that means, but with much trouble and many difficulties (the blind Brethren still soliciting the *Turks* against her) held the State awhile; till the people, finding no assurance in that kind of Government, and weary of the daily Harms they received from the *Turks*, yielded themselves absolutely to the Power of *Mahomet*, about the year 1460, continuing ever since a Province of the *Turkish* Empire.

6. BULGARIA.

BULGARIA is bounded on the East with the *Euxine* Sea, on the West with *Servia*, on the North with the River *Danow*, which is here in the East part called *Ister*, on the South with *Thrace*: called formerly by the name of *Mysia Inferior*, as lying lower then the other on the course of that River; as *Servia*, lying up the Water, was called *Mysia Superior*. Afterwards it was reckoned of as a part of *Dacia*, and in that notion was the Birth-place of *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars* in the Empire of *Diocletian*, born in this Countrey near the Borders of *Thrace*, not far from the City *Sardica*; who therefore, in the Martyrologies of the middle Times, was called by the name of *Dacianus*. Finally, it took this name from the *Bulgars*, a *Scythian* People, who in the year 566. possessed themselves of it.

The Countrey for the most part is full of sharp and rugged Hills, Branches of the great Mountain *Hæmus*, which divide it from *Thrace*, and spread themselves over all this Province, insomuch that even the Mid-lands of it are rough and stony: and though the lower parts have some Plains and Valleys, yet are they generally full of Woods and Deserts; the most unpleasant and least peopled part of both the *Dacia*'s. The Inhabitants hereof, in some conformity to the Countrey, are patient of all Toil and Labour, and not easily tired; but nothing is more troublesom then their Conversation: more full of Courage then of Valour; their Courage not proceeding by the rules

rules of Reason, but issuing only out of Brutishness, or a natural Fiercenes.

They first received the Christian Faith towards the latter end of *Justinian* the 2. who died in the year 713, *Trebellius* being then their Prince; afterwards by the persuasion of *Leo* the 4. surnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, about the year 789. But those Conversions being but partial and for private ends, they relapsed shortly after to their former Gentilism; not totally gained unto the Gospel till the Empire of *Michael* and *Theodora*, in the year of Grace 860. Subject since that unto the Jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*; but not without great opposition of the Popes of *Rome*, who laid a Claim unto them.

Places of most note in it are, 1. *Axium*, or *Axiopolis*, on the Banks of *Danubius*, which from this Town begins to take the name of *Ister*. It is now called *Colonamich*, of no great fame otherwise. 2. *Dinogetia*, by *Antonine* called *Dinigutia*, now *Drimago*, situate also on the *Ister*, opposite to the Influx of *Hierasus*, and the Town of *Galacz*. 3. *Mesembria*, situate on the *Euxine*, and still retaining the old name; in *Strabo*, by some errour of the Transcribers, called *Menebria*. 4. *Marcianopolis*, on the *Ister* or *Danubius* also, built by *Trajan* in honour of *Marcia* his Sister, whence it had the name: in vain besieged by the *Goths* at their first Irruptions on this Country; and afterwards much mentioned in the Stories of that warlike People, for many Bickerings and some great Battels they had near it with the Emperour *Claudius*, in one of which they were overthrown by him with a mighty Slaughter. 5. *Nicopolis*, (by the *Turks* called *Nigebol*) built by the same *Trajan* on the *Danow*, at the Fall of the River *Jatre*, at his return from the Conquest of *Dacia*, whence was the occasion of the Name; the word *Nicopolis* signifying the *City of Victory*; sufficiently memorable for the Founder of it, more for the many great Battels fought near unto it; whereof two were principal. The first, that of *Sigismund* the Emperour and King of *Hungary*, besieging it with an Army of 130000 Christians in the time of *Bajazet* the first, (whose Father *Amurath* had taken it from the King of *Bulgaria*:) the issue of which Siege was this, that *Bajazet* coming to raise the Siege obtained the Victorie, with the loss of 60000 *Turks*; the Army of the Christians being wholly routed, 20000 slain, all the rest almost taken Prisoners, and the young Emperour forc'd to flie by Sea to *Thrace*, thence unto *Constantinople*, afterwards to *Rhodes*, and at last, after 18 months absence, to his Realm of *Hungary*. The other (as it were in revenge of this) was fought betwixt *Michael* Vaivod of *Valachia*, and the Forces of *Mahomet* the third, over whom the Vaivod got a remarkable Victorie, and, as the Fruits thereof, sacked the City it self, carrying thence great Spoil and Bootie, and infinite multitudes of People; with some whereof he made up his Army, sending the rest to inhabit and manure the void and desart places of his own Dominions. 6. *Sophia*, called *Tibiscum* in the time of *Ptolemie*, repaired by the Emperour *Justinian*, who gave it this name, from a famous and magnificent Temple founded and dedicated by him unto S. *Sophia*. The ordinary Residence in these late times of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, who hath the chief Command of *Europe* under the Grand Seigniour. Once taken by *Huniades*, and by him at the command of *Vladislaus* King of *Hungary*, burnt to the ground; but afterwards repaired, and more strongly fortified then it had been formerly. 7. *Varna*, anciently called *Dionysiopolis*, situate on the *Euxine* Sea, near the Borders of *Thrace*: remarkable for the great Defeat there given the Christians, the first Flight of *Huniades* from the face of the *Turks*, and the death of *Vladislaus* King of *Hungary*, spoken of before. 8. *Sumium*, 9. *Pezechium*, 10. *Calacrium*, 11. *Galatea*, and 12. *Macropolis*; all taken by the *Hungarians* in their way to *Varna*, and lost again upon the issue of that Battel. 13. *Silistria*, at this time the chief City hereof, and the ordinary Abode of a *Turkish Bassa*: delivered to *Amurath* the first by *Sasmenos*, Prince or King of *Bulgaria*, out of a vain hope to save thereby the rest of his Country. 14. *Parastlaba*, or *Perstlaba*, the ancient Seat of the Kings of *Bulgaria*, till the taking of it by *John Zimisces* Emperour of *Constantinople*, who caused it to be called *Johannopolis*: but it soon lost that new Name, and is now an ordinary Village called *Peretalaw*. 15. *Ternova*, the usual Seat or Residence of the later Princes of this Country at the Conquest of it by the *Turks*. 16. *Budina*, once of great importance, and the chief of this Country; but being taken by *Huniades* in the course of his Victories, it was by him burnt down to the ground, as having been the cause of much War to the Christians there: supposed to be built in or near the place where once stood the old City of *Oescus*, the principal Town of the *Triballi*, called therefore *Oescus Triballorum*; though some will have that City to be now called *Elida*. 17. *Venuzina*, a Town of great strength, and one of the first pieces taken by the *Turks*. 18. *Cassova*, fatal to the Christians, who in the Plains hereof had two main Defeats. The first by *Amurath* the first, who here discomfited *Lazarus* the Despot of *Servia*, and the greatest Army that the Christians ever raised against the *Turks*: *Lazarus* himself being slain in the Fight, and *Amurath* himself shortly after the Battel stabbed in the Belly by one *Miles Cobelitz*, a wounded and half-dead Souldier, as he was taking a view of the dead Bodies which lay there in heaps. The last by *Amurath* the second to the famous *Huniades*, whom he here discomfited after a cruel Fight continuing three days together; in which were slain 17000 Christians, and amongst them the greatest part of the *Hungarian* Nobility; *Huniades* put again to flight, and forced to some Extremities to preserve his life: the *Turks* buying this great Victory with the loss of 40000 men, as themselves confessed. The place in which these Fights were fought, called the *Plains* of *Cassova*, extendeth 20 miles in length and 5 miles in breadth, incompassed round with pleasant Mountains, in the form of an Amphitheatre; as if it were designed by Nature for a Stage of action. 19. *Doroslorum*, by some of the Ancients called *Rhodostolon*, the Seat in *Ptolemie*'s time of the First Legion called *Italica*; afterwards one of the chief Towns which the *Rosses* or *Russians* had in this Country: from whom it was taken by *John Zimisces* the Eastern Emperour, decaying after that time by little and little, and now wholly ruinate. 20. *Achridus*, the Birth place of *Justinian*, by whom it was beautified and enlarged, and called *Justiniana Prima*: who, raising the Diocese of *Dacia* into a Prefecture, placed here a Primate for the Affairs of the Church, (which honour it doth still retain, the Bishop hereof being the Primate of all *Dacia*) and a *Præfectus Prætorio* for Affairs of State. But he being dead, the Town returned to its old name, now called *l' Ochrida*, contracted by *William* of *Tyre* to *Acre*, by the *Turks* called *Giustandil*: a distinct Principate of it self in in the time of *Amurath* the first, and by him made tributary at his first War with this Country.

And here it is to be observed, that those parts of this Country which lie next to the *Euxine* Sea had anciently the name of *Pontus*, as had also some parts of *Asia minor* which bordered on the same Sea also; and that the City of *Tomi*, as *Ptolemie*, or *Tomos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, to which *Ovid* was banished by *Augustus Cæsar*, was a City of this *European Pontus*, and not of the *Asian*, as hath been commonly conceived. For *Tomi* is by *Ptolemie* placed amongst the Cities of *Mœsia inferior*

ferior, and by *Ovid* on the West or left side of the *Euxine*, and not upon the South thereof, as appeareth by these Lines of his:

Cùm Maris Euxini *positos ad læva* Tomitas
Quærere me læsi Principis ira jubet.

That is to say;

My wronged Prince's Wrath commands me 'bide
At Tomos, *on the* Euxine's *Western side.*

The place is at this day called *Tomiswar*, according to *Cælius Calcagninus:* but others would have it to be the same which is now named *Kiovia*, in the same Tract also; not far from which is said to be a Lake called to this day *Owidow Jezcocoor*, the Lake of *Ovid*. For what cause he was hither banished is not yet agreed on. Some say it was for the unlawful Pleasures which he enjoyed with *Julia* the Emperours Daughter, whom he celebrates in his *Amorum* under the borrowed name of *Corinna*. Others imagine that he had seen *Augustus* himself unnaturally using the company of the same *Julia*, his Daughter; for which the offended Prince exiled him: and that he alludeth hereunto in his Book *de Tristibus*, saying, *Cur aliquid vidi? cur noxia lumina feci? &c.* A Crime of which I dare not think that noble Emperour to be any way guilty. But certain it is, that whatsoever was the true reason of it, that which was openly pretended was the writing of those lascivious and inflammatory Books *de Arte amandi*, tending to the Debauchment of Youth and Corruption of Manners, which he in divers places of his Works acknowledgeth for the cause thereof.

But to return unto the business of this Countrey. The ancient Inhabitants hereof were towards the East the *Troglodytæ*, dwelling near the Mouth or Fall of the River *Peuce* into the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*; the *Peucini*, inhabiting on the very Mouth of it; and in a little Island opposite thereunto, called also *Peuce*, now *Pizina*, the *Cribizi*, *Piarensii* and *Dimensii*, the Western parts being wholly taken up by the *Triballi*, the most potent Nation of them all, who alone had the happiness to vanquish *Philip* King of the *Macedonians*. For *Philip* having, or pretending, a Quarrel against *Mataes* a King of the *Sarmatians*, entred his Countrey, overthrew him in a set Fight; carried with him great Booties, and among other things 20000 Mares for Breed, which he took in the Battel; it being the Custom of the *Scythians* and *Sarmatians* to use Mares only in their Wars, because their not stopping in the midst of a Race to piss could be no impediment to them in their Flight. In his return homeward these *Triballi* deny him passage through their Countrey, unless they might partake of the Spoils. This being denied, they fall from words to blows, and next to a pitch'd Field. In which Fight *Philip* was wounded with an Arrow, which, passing through his thigh, nailed him to his Saddle; his Horse being galled with the Wound, falling down to the ground. Which the frighted *Macedonians* seeing, and supposing him dead, fled out of the Field, leaving all their Spoils to the *Triballi*, as if they had been sent out onely to be their Receivers. So true an Observation is it, that the very *Life-blood of an Army runs chiefly in the Veins of the General* or supreme Commander. Over-topped after this by the *Mœsi*, or mingled with them, they were first broken by the *Romans* under the Conduct of *C. Curio Scribonius*, spoken of before; the absolute Conquest of them and the rest of the *Mœsians* being reserved for the times of *Augustus Cæsar*. By him, or his Successors, the whole Countrey of the *Mœsians* being cast into two Provinces, this part of it had the name of *Mœsia inferior*, that, lying Westward up the Water, being called *Mœsia superior*, for distinction sake. By the Emperour *Aurelianus* the *Dacians*, being forced from the other side of the *Danow* by the Barbarous Nations, or by him prudently removed to avoid their Fury, were planted here betwixt both the *Mysia's*, divided afterwards into two Provinces taken out of the other, *Mediterranea*, and *Ripensis*; which, with the help of the higher *Mysia*, *Dardania*, *Prævalitana*, and part of *Macedonia Salutaris*, made up the whole Diocese of *Dacia*, as before was said. The residue hereof, now passing under the name of *Bulgaria*, was afterwards divided into two Provinces also; another Province being taken out of the East parts of the lower *Mœsia*, lying betwixt the River *Phanissus* and the most Northern Branch of the *Ister*, which they called *Scythia*, because the *Aroteres*, a *Scythian* People, did once possess it; the *Romans* ambitiously affecting to be thought the Conquerours of that unconquerable Nation. Successively by the *Goths* and *Hunns* was this Countrey taken from the *Romans:* recovered again in or before the time of *Justinian*, who had here his Officers which were subordinate to the Vicar or Lieutenant of *Thrace*, to which Diocese they properly and of right belonged.

But long they held not in that State; the *Sclavonians* first, and after the *Bulgarians*, being Masters of them. Of the first of these enough hath been said elsewhere. These later being a *Scythian* People, inhabiting on the Banks of the River *Volga*, were at first called *Volgari*, afterwards *Bulgari:* though some conceive they had the name of *Bulgarians* from *Bulgar*, the chief Town of their Nation: but both uncertain. In the time of the Emperour *Anastasius* they made their first Sally into the Provinces of the Empire, foraging *Illyricum* and *Thrace*: afterward, in the Reign of *Heraclius*, they were hired by *Cosrhoes* the *Persian* (with many other Barbarous Nations) to besiege *Constantinople*. In the Reign of *Constantine* surnamed *Pogonatus*, conquering or casting out the *Sclaves*, they planted themselves in these Countries; compelling the Emperour to compound with them for a sum of mony, from making any farther Inroad into his Dominions. From this time forward we find their Princes called by the name of Kings of the *Bulgarians:* the first of which after their settling in these parts was *Trebellius*, or *Trebellis*, as some call him, the first Christian Prince of the *Bulgarians*, by whom *Justinian* the Second was first restored unto the Empire, of which he had been outed by *Absimarus*; and afterwards well beaten by them, and forced to flie unto *Constantinople*, on some Breach between them. Growing into good terms with the Eastern Emperours, they aided them against the *Saracens*, then besieging the Imperial City; of whom they slew 22000 as they were foraging the Country: and in the time of *Leo* the fourth, called *Porphyrogenetus*, they became Homagers to the Empire, by whose perswasion *Telericus* King of the *Bulgarians* received the Sacrament of Baptism; and thereupon was honoured by him with a Wife of the Imperial Family, and the honourable Title of a *Patrician*. After this time the Kings hereof had many Privileges indulged them by the *Constantinopolitans*, not usually communicated unto other Princes, *viz.* their Crown of Gold, their Tiar or Cap of Silk, and their red Shooes, for their Regal (which were also the Imperial) Ornaments. To these Kings also, and to these only, did the *Greek* Emperours allow the Title of Βασιλεὺς, as being merely Imperial. Other Kings they called Ῥῆγες, from the *Latine* word *Reges*. Insomuch that when *Basilius Macedo* had received Letters from Pope *Adrian* the second, wherein *Lewis* the Second the Western Emperour was called *Basileus*; he rased out that Imperial Attribute, and dispatched an Embassie to *Lewis*, wherein he challenged it at his his own peculiar Epithet. Some Quarrels after falling out, *Crunns* the *Bulgarian* King, in the time of *Nicephorus*, Successor to the Empress *Irene*, invadeth *Thrace*, and, taking the City of *Sardica*, killeth that Emperour in his Tent, and worsteth *Michael*

(who

(who ſucceeded) in the open Field; *Meſembria*, a principal City of this Countrey, being taken and ranſacked by him. But *Bogor*, of another temper, not onely did receive the Sacrament of Baptiſm, which many of his Predeceſſors had intermitted; but brought his Subjects (who rebelled on the Change of Religion, and thereupon were fought with and vanquiſhed by him) to the ſame Faith alſo: gratified for that cauſe by *Theodora* the Empreſſe with ſome large Acceſſion unto his Eſtate. After long Wars betwixt the *Bulgarians* and the following Emperours, the Fortune of the *Conſtantinopolitan* did at laſt prevail: *Samuel* King of the *Bulgarians* being overthrown, 15000 of his Souldiers taken and deprived of ſight, and the Country conquered by *Baſilius* the ſecond, ſurnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, *Anno* 1015, from that time Tributary to the Empire; to which they did good ſervice in the time of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, uſing their Help againſt the *Uzi*, a new Swarm of *Scythyans*, paſſing over the *Iſter* with an Army of 60000 fighting men, and waſting *Macedon* and *Greece*. The like did *John*, another of the Kings thereof, aiding the *Greeks* againſt the *Latines*, whom they overthrew with a great Slaughter, *Baldwin* the Emperour of the *Latines* in *Conſtantinople* being taken Priſoner, ſent in Bonds to *Ternova*, and there cruelly murthered, *Anno* 1206. Nor were they wanting to aſſiſt them againſt the *Turks*, when they grew dangerous to that Empire by the taking of *Adrianople*: for the Recovery whereof they raiſed a great and puiſſant Army, unfortunately diſcomfitted by the Forces of *Amurath* the firſt *Anno* 1369. Provoked with which Invaſion, *Amurath*, having ſettled his Affairs in *Aſia*, with an army of 30000 falleth into *Bulgaria*; takes divers Places of importance, and prevailed ſo far, that *Saſmenos* the laſt Prince hereof, wrapping his Winding-ſheet about him, to ſhew that he had deſerved Death, proſtrates himſelf moſt abjectly at the Tyrant's feet, offering to put *Siliſtria* (his ſtrongeſt City) into his poſſeſſion. For not performance of which Offer, his Country is again invaded, and moſt part of it taken from him; he being permitted to enjoy the reſt upon hard Conditions, as Vaſſal and Tributary to the *Turk*. But *Bajazet*, *Amurath*'s Succeſſor, not content herewith, picked a Quarrell with him, and made an abſolute Conqueſt of *Bulgaria*, converting it into a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, *Anno* 1396. In which ſtate it hath ever ſince continued, governed by three *Turkiſh Sanzacks* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*: the *Sanzacks* reſiding at *Nicopolis*, *Siliſtria*, and *Sophia*, in which laſt the *Beglerbeg* himſelf doth ſometimes reſide.

There are in *DACIA*

Archbiſhops. Biſhops.

And ſo much for *DACIA*.

Mount Hæmus.

BEfore we enter into *Greece*, we muſt croſſe *MOUNT HÆMUS*, a Ridge of Hills extending from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Adriatick*, and thereby ſeparating *Greece* both from *Dacia* and *Sclavonia*. They are ſo high and Subject to the Weather, that *Stratonicus*, an old *Grecian*, did uſe to ſay, that *eight moneths of the Year it was always cold, for the other four, Winter*. It was affirmed by ſome of the ancient Writers, that from one of the higheſt Heads hereof as well the *Adriatick* as the *Euxine* might have been diſcerned: the truth of which report, upon very good reaſon, hath been called in queſtion. But out of doubt, from ſome one Top or Summit of it there is ſo full a Proſpect into *Thrace* and *Macedon*, that from hence *Perſeus* taking a ſurvey of the Site of theſe Countries, *poſitis per abrupta Caſtris*, *&c.* as the Storie hath it, was able to make choice of the fitteſt places for Forts and Caſtles, whereby to lock up all the paſſages againſt his Enemies the *Romans*. In the parts bordering upon *Thrace* it is ſo rough and craggy, that it is not to be paſſed but at two places onely. Whereof one was made by the Emperour *Trajan*, where is yet to be ſeen a mighty ſtrong Gate built of great ſqudre Stone, by which the Paſſage that way was either opned or ſhut at the pleaſure of them who had the keeping of the ſame, with a ſmall Force exceeding eaſily defended againſt puiſſant Armies. The other, being ſituate near a little River by the *Bulgarians* called *Saltiza*, not altogether ſo ſtreight and narrow as the other, but riſing high, and full of broken Rocks and dangerous Precipeces, is alike impaſſable; defenſible at eaſe, and without any great danger; as was experimentally found by the famous *Huniades*, when he attempted (but in vain) to have led his Forces this way for the Siege of *Adrianople*. Thoſe parts hereof which border upon *Macedonia*, though ſomewhat openet, are not much eaſier of aſcent; the Paſſages through the broken Rocks and Precipices being very difficult, and not eaſily maſtered: inſomuch that when *Perſeus*, the laſt King of *Macedon*, had fortified the Streights hereof againſt the *Romans*, *non reliquiſſe aditum niſi è Cœlo venientibus videbatur*, it was conceived (ſaith *Florus*) that there was no paſſage left for any Forces, unleſs they fell immediately from the Heavens themſelves.

This great and rockie Chain of Hills, as they were vehemently expoſed to Wind and Weather, ſo were they deſtitute of thoſe Commodities which were either comfortable, or indeed merely neceſſarie to the Life of man: which made the Paſſage over them in a manner impoſſible unto any Armies, but what were very patient both of Cold and Hunger. Yet were they not left deſolate and void of People, eſpecially in theſe ſides hereof which lay next to *Greece*; but moſt eſpecially in thoſe parts which bordered or confined on *Thrace*: where the Spurs and Branches of the Hils ſpreading far and wide and taking up a great part of the Country, occaſioned the *Romans*, in the Diviſion of the Dioceſe of *Thrace* into ſeveral Provinces, to call that part or Province of it which lay next to *Mœſia* by the name of *Hæmimontum*, or *Hæmimontana*. The principal Towns whereof were *Adrianople*, *Uſcudama*, and *Anchialus*: the principal Governour thereof being a *Roman* Preſident. Where, by the way, we may take notice of an Errour in the common Impreſſions

of the *Code*, *Lib.* VII. *Tit.* 62. *Leg.* 23. where we find *Hæmi montem*, for *Hæmimontum*; the first being the name onely of the Mountain, and the latter (which is there meant) of the *Roman* Province.

But to return unto the Mountain. There is another of this name in *Thessalie*, mentioned (or mistook for this) by *Servius* in his Notes on the first Book of the *Georgicks*; on the Top whereof was said to be the Habitation of *Mars*, at the Bottom the most pleasant Valley of *Tempe*: so called from *Hæmus*, the Son of *Boreas* and *Orithyia*, amongst the Poets. And possibly, to distinguish this from that of *Thessalie*, *Ptolemy* and others call it Æmus, without the Aspirate: though it may as well be that there are others of this name, as that this is called in divers places or in divers Authours by other Names; one part hereof being called *Scombrus* by *Aristotle*, another *Scombrus* by *Thucydides*, and by *Laonicus* the whole called *Prasobus*. The like may be observed at the present also, *Pinetus* calling it by the name of *Catena Mundi*, a great part whereof it links together; *Cuspinianus Costegnazzo*, *Lazius Kriviczne*, the *Italians Mont Argentaro*, the *French Monte de Castegnao*, the *Sclavonians Cumoniza*, and the *Turks Balkan*. Which I have therefore here observed for the Reader's sake, that, meeting any of these names in the Stories either of the ancient or modern Times, he may know what Hills or Mountains are intended by them. Which said, I now pass on to *Greece*, the way being thus prepared and laid open to me.

OF GREECE.

GREECE, in the present Latitude and Extent thereof, is bounded on the East with the *Propontick*, *Hellespont*, and *Ægean* Seas; on the West with the *Adriatick*; on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, which parteth it from *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, and some part of *Illyricum*; and on the South with the Sea *Ionian*. So that it is in a manner a *Peninsula* or Demi-Island, environed on three sides by the Sea, on the fourth onely united to the rest of *Europe*.

But this is onely in relation to the present Extent hereof, the name being anciently restrained within narrower Bounds. Confined at first to *Attica* and the parts adjoyning; *ab Isthmi angustiis* Hellas *incipit*, as it is in *Plinie*: and it took the name of *Hellas* from *Hellen*, the Son of *Deucalion*; as that of *Greece*, or *Græcia*, from *Græcus* the Son of *Cecrops*, the first King of *Athens*. Communicated afterwards to *Peloponnesus*, [illegible] *Thessalie* also: and finally, when the *Macedonian* [illegible] had enlarged it self over the petit Commonwealths and Estates hereof, it came to be communicated to that Country also. The People for this cause are known by divers names, by some called *Achivi*, by others *Myrmidones*, sometimes *Pelasgi*, *Danai*, *Argivi*, &c. But the name whereby they are best known in Sacred Writers is that of Ἕλλωνες, so called from *Hellas*, the more proper and genuine name of *Greece* in the strictest notion and acception. A name used frequently and familiarly in the Book of God, both absolutely, to denote this Nation, as where it is said, σοφίαν Ἕλληνες ζητοῦσι, that the *Greeks seek wisedom*, 1 Cor. 1. 22. and relatively, as in opposition to the *Jews* the *Barbarians*, and *Hellenists* or *Græcizing Jews*. First with relation to the *Jews*, and then it signifieth the whole Body of the Gentiles generally, of which the *Græcians* were the most eminent and famous people as Ἰουδαίῳ τε πρῶτον καὶ Ἕλληνι to the *Jew first, and also to the Gentiles*, Rom. 2. 9, 10. *Give none offence*, οὔτε Ἰουδαίοις οὔτε Ἕλλησιν *neither to the Jews nor to the Gentiles*, 1 Cor. 10. 32. and elsewhere frequently. In which, and all other places of that kind, where the *Antithesis* lieth between the *Jews* and other Nations, we are to understand the Gentiles, the whole Body of them; though many times our Translators, I know not why, render it literally the *Greeks*, as Rom. 1. 16. and 10. 12. &c. 2ly. with reference to all other Nations not so well versed in the Learning and Civilities of that Age as the *Græcians* were, whom by a common name of scorn they called *Barbarians*: according unto that of *Strabo*, *Barbaræ sunt omnes Nationes præter* Græcos; the *Romans* themselves, though then the great Lords of the World, being included in the reckoning. And so the word is taken *Rom.* 1. 14. *I am a Debtor*, saith S. *Paul*, Ἕλλησί τε καὶ βαρβάροις *both to the Greeks and the Barbarians, to the wise and unwise*; in which as well the *Romans*, as those of other Nations, have the name of *Barbarians*. Last of all, for the *Græcizing Jews*, whom the Vulgar *Latine* called *Græcos*, and our *English Græcians*: they were such of the *Jews* who, living dispersed amongst the Gentiles, used the Translation of the *Septuagint*, making that the Canon both for Life and Doctrine. which difference betwixt them and the *Jews* inhabiting in *Judæa*, who kept themselves unto the Scriptures in their Mother-tongue, and used the *Hebrew* onely in all Sacred actions, occasioned many Jars amongst them, which sometimes brake out into open Violence; insomuch as R. *Eliezer* brake into the Synagogue of the *Alexandrians* at *Hierusalem*, and therein committed many Outrages. Of this Unfriendliness between them mention is made *Act.* 6. 1. where it is said, that *there arose a murmuring of the Græcians against the Hebrews*, &c. In which place, though the *English* and Vulgar *Latine* use the name of *Græcians*, yet ought they more properly to be rendred *Hellenists*, or *Græcizing Jews*, as in all other places, *viz. Acts* 9. 29. and 11. 20. &c. where they are called Ἑλληνισταί, and not Ἕλληνες, in the *Greek* Originals.

But to proceed to our Discription of the Country: we find it situate in the Northern Temperate Zone, under the fifth and sixth Climates, the longest Day being 15 hours; inhabited by a People which were once brave men of War, sound Scholars, addicted to the love of Vertue and civil Behaviour; a Nation once so excellent, that their Precepts and Examples do still remain as approved Rules and Tutors, to instruct and direct the man that endeavoureth to be vertuous: famous for Government, affectors of Freedom, every-way noble. For which Vertues in themselves, and want of them in others, all their Neighbours and remote Nations were by them scornfully called *Barbarians*

barians: a name now most fit for the *Græcians* themselves, being an unconstant People, destitute of all Learning, and the means to obtain it, Universities; uncivil, riotous, and so lazie, that for the most part they endeavour their Profit no farther then there Belly compells them; and so perfidious withall in all their Dealings, especially towards the Western Christians, that it is grown into a Proverb amongst the *Italians*, *Chi fida in Grego, sara intrigo, i. e.* He that trusts to a *Greek* is sure to be couzened. When they meet at Feasts or Banquets, they drink small Draughts at the beginning; which by degrees they increase, till they come to the height of Intemperancy: at which point when they are arrived, they keep no rule or Order; whereas before to drink out of one's turn was accounted a point of Incivility. Hence as I believe, sprung our By-word, *As merry as a Greek*, and the *Latine* word *Græcari*.

The Women for the most part are brown-complexioned, exceedingly-well-favoured, and excessively amorous. Painting they use very much, to keep themselves in grace with their Husbands; for when they once grow wrinkled, they are put to all the Drudgeries of the House. Both Sexes generally in their Habit and outward Garb apply themselves to the State under which they live; such as are subject to the *Turk* conforming unto the Dress and Fashions of the *Turks*, as those who live under the *Venetians* do to that of *Venice*.

The Christian Faith was first here planted by S. *Paul*, invited by the Spirit to come over into *Macedonia*, Acts 16. 9, 12. passing from thence to *Thessalonica*, the chief City of *Mygdonia*, ch. 17. 1. from thence to *Athens* in *Achaia*, v. 15, 16. then unto *Corinth*, the Metropolis of *Peloponnesus*, ch. 18. 1. watering the greatest part of *Greece* with the Dew of Heaven, and planting Bishops in most Churches where he preached the Gospel; as *Dionysius* (the *Areopagite*) at *Athens*, *Aristarchus* at *Thessalonica*, *Epaphroditus* at *Philippi*, *Silas* at *Corinth*, and *Titus* in the Isle of *Crete*. The like he did in many other Countreys also accounted Members of the *Greek* Church, though not of *Greece*. the name of the *Greek* Church extending over all the Provinces of the Eastern Empire, governed by the 4 Patriarchs, 1. of *Alexandria*, who presided over *Ægypt* and *Arabia*; 2. of *Hierusalem*, whose Patriarchate (erected onely in regard of our Saviour's Passion in that City, and the great opinion which by that means accrued unto it) confined within the Bounds of *Palæstine*; 3. of *Antioch*, whose Jurisdiction contained all *Syria*, *Armenia*, *Cilicia*, and the Isle of *Cyprus*, and whatsoever else was within the Diocese of the Orient; and 4. of *Constantinople*, to whose charge were committed all the other Provinces of the *Greek* Church, as *Greece*, *Russia*, *Dacia*, *Sclavonia*, part of *Poland*, and all the Illands in the *Adriatick*, *Ionian* and *Ægean* Seas, together with all *Asia minor*, and the Isles thereof, (except onely the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Isauria*) and the Countreys lying on both sides of *Pontus Euxinus* and *Palus Mæotis*. The reasons of the large increase of whose Jurisdiction, confined at first within the Diocese of *Thrace*, were, 1. the reputation of being Seated in the Imperial City, which drew after it (by a Decree of the Council of *Chalcedon*) all the Provinces of *Asia*, *minor*, (*Cilicia* and *Isauria* excepted onely;) 2. the voluntary submission of the *Græcians* upon their Separation from the Church of *Rome*. by which all *Greece*, *Macedon*, *Epirus*, the Isle of *Crete*, and all the Islands in the *Ægean* and *Ionian* Seas, which formerly had no Superiour but their own Primate, the Archbishop of *Thessalonica*, became subject unto them; 3. the diligence of the Patriarch hereof in converting by his Suffragan Bishops and other Ministers the *Russians*, *Bulgarians* and *Sclavonians*, to the Faith of *Christ*, which made those people to look upon *Constantinople* as their Mother-Church; and 4. the Piety and Care of the later Patriarchs, in supplying with new Pastors and Ministers those parts and Provinces of the West which, being conquered by the *Turk*, had been forsaken by their old Clergy and left like Sheep without a Shepherd.

And yet this Church, though thus extended and enlarged in the outward Members, is very much streightned and impaired at home; the Country being thinly peopled, and many of those people trained up from their infancy in the *Mahometan* Law. So that it is a greater wonder that there should be any remainders of Christianity left amongst them, then that the open Professors of it should be so few; the Tyrannie of the *Turks* on the one side, and the Temptations of Preferment upon the other, being rightly pondered. For who could look to finde twenty Churches of Christians in *Constantinople* the Seat and ordinary Residence of the *Turkish* Emperours? or that in *Salonichi*, or *Thessalonica*, there should be 30 Christian Churches, and but three *Turkish* Mosquits? that the Primate of this *Salonichi*, should have under him 10 Suffragan Bishops, whereof he of *Philippi* hath no fewer than 150 Churches under his Jurisdiction? or, finally, that under the Metropolitans of *Athens* and *Corinth* there should be as many? So mercifully hath God dealt with this luxurious and perfideous People, as not to take away their Candlestick, though he hath darkned and obscured the Light thereof.

As for the Fathers of this Church, anciently and at this present held in most esteem, they were no other then such as had been Bishops of the greater Sees. That is to say, 1. S. *Chrysostome*, first a Reader of *Antioch*, afterwards Patriarch of *Constantinople*: 2. *Basil*, and the two *Gregories*, 3. *Nyssen*, and 4 *Nazianzen*; all in *Asia minor*; this last of *Constantinople* also: 5, 6. the two *Cyrills*; the one Patriarch of *Alexandria*, the other of *Hierusalem*: 7. *Epiphanius*, Bishop of *Salamis* in the Isle of *Cyprus*: 8. *Theodoret*, Bishop of *Cyprus*, &c. Men of renown and precious memory amongst them to this very day. From whose Writings if they deviate in any material Point of Doctrine, it is in that of the Procession of the Holy Ghost, which they grant to be *per Filium*, but not *à Filio*. And though *Clichtovius*, *Lombard*, and other moderate men of the Church of *Rome*, do grant the difference to be rather *in modo explicandi, quàm in ipsa re*; and that the clause *à Filióque* was added by the *Romanists* to the ancient Creeds, the *Græcians* not being privy nor consenting to it: yet so uncharitable is that Church towards these poor men, languishing under the Tyrannie of *Turkish* Thraldome, as to persecute them with Reproach and Scorn, brand them for Schismaticks and Apostates, and solemnly to anathematize them in *Bulla Cœnæ* every Maundy-Thursday. And it is a very hard measure *to adde, and anathematize too*; as is right well observed by the late Lord Arch Bishop of *Canterbury*, in his notable Discourse against the *Jesuite*. Other particular Tenets in which the *Greek* Church differeth from the *Romish* and Reformed (as in some Points it doth from both) have been already specified in our Discription of *Russia*: the Churches of the *Greeks* and *Moscovites* differing in no material Points, but, 1. the manner of distributing the Sacrament; 2. the exacting of Marriage by the *Moscovite* in the party admitted unto Orders; 3. the frequent admitting of Divorces upon light occasions; and 4 and finally, in being less strict in observing the Lent before *Easter* then in any of the other three. For whereas the *Græcians* account it a damnable sin to eat Flesh or Fish which hath blood in it, in any of their other Lents or times of Abstinence; (they have in both Churches four in all) in that before *Easter*, which of all reason ought to be kept most

most punctually, the Laiety eat all sorts of Fish without any exception, the Bloud of some of which, as the Cuttle by name, is held to be a delicate Food, and in great request.

The Language they spake was of their own, of which there were four Dialects; *viz.* 1. the *Attick*, 2. the *Dorick*, 3. the *Æolick*, 4. the *Ionick*; besides the common phrase of speech most in use among them. A Language of great fame for the Liberal Arts, but more for so great a part of the Holy Scripture first delivered in it: and for the lofty Sound, significant Expressions, genuine Suavity, and happy composition of words, so excelling all others, that even in the flourishing of the *Roman* Empire it so much overtopped the *Latine*, that the Histories of *Rome* it self (as by *Polybius*, *Appian*, *Dion* and *Cassius*) were written in it. It was once also the general Language of *Anatolia*, some parts of *Italy*, *Provence* in *France*, and almost all the Islands of the *Mediterranean*. But now, partly by the mutilation of some words and contraction of others, partly by confusion of the true sound of Vowels, Diphthongs and consonants, and the translating of the Accents, and finally, by the admixture of forein Nations it is not onely fallen from its natural Elegancy, but from its largeness of extent. For it is now shut up within the Limits of *Greece*, and the Sea-coast of the lesser *Asia* opposite unto it; and there not onely much corrupted, but almost quite devoured by the *Turkish* and *Sclavonian* Tongues; but specially by that which they call *Franco*, a mungrell Language, composed of *Italian*, *French*, and some *Spanish* words, used as the ordinary Speech for Commerce and intercourse betwixt *Christians*, *Jews*, *Turks*, and the *Greeks* themselves, who do not understand, and much less speak, the true genuine *Greek*. So that although they still retain for ordinary days S. *Chrysostom*'s Liturgie, and that of S. *Basil* for the Festivals: yet being both written in the ancient and learned *Greek*, they are no more understood by the Vulgar *Græcian*, then the *Latine* Service by the common and illiterate Papist.

The Soil questionless is very fruitfull, and would yield great profit to the Husbandman, if they would take pains in the tilling: but they, knowing nothing certainly to be their own, but all things subject to the Grand Seigniour and his Souldiers, neglect the Tillage of their Lands, on the same grounds with those who said in the Poet's Eclogues.

Impius hæc tam culta novalia Miles habebit?
Barbarus has segetes? En quis consevimus Arva!

Shall misbelieving *Turks* these Acres spoil,
Which I manur'd with so much Cost and Toil?
Shall they enjoy my care? See, neighbours, see
For whom these goodly Corn-fields tilled be!

The more natural and certain Commodities which they transport into other parts are Wines, which, in memory of the Water which our Saviour turned into wine, and on the sixth day of *January*, being that day whereon this Miracle was wrought, they use to baptize: for which cause the *Jews* will drink none of them. They send also into other parts of the World Oil, Copper, Vitriol, some Gold and Silver, Velvet, Damasks, Turkie-Grograms, &c.

This Country hath formerly been famous for the brave Commanders, *Miltiades*, *Aristides* and *Themistocles* of *Athens*, *Lisander* and *Agesilaus* of *Sparta*, *Pelopidas*, and *Epaminondas* of *Thebes*, *Aratus* and *Philopœmen* of *Achaia*, *Pyrrhus* of *Epirus*, *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Subverter of the *Græcian* Liberty, and *Alexander* his Son, (to omit infinite others) the Subverter of the *Persian* Monarchy; for the divine Philosophers, *Plato*, *Socrates*, *Aristotle* and *Theophrastus*; for the most eminent Law-givers, *Solon* and *Lycurgus*; for the most exquisite Poets, *Hesiodus*, *Homer*, *Sophocles* and *Aristophanes*; for the famous Historiographers, *Xenophon* the Condisciple of *Plato*, *Thucydides*, *Plutarch* and *Herodotus*; for the eloquent Orators, *Æschines*, *Demosthenes* and *Isocrates*; and, lastly, for the Authors and Establishers of all humane Learning whatsoever, onely the Mathematicks excepted.

The cheif Rivers are, 1. *Cephisus*, which, arising in the Frontiers of *Epirus*, disburtheneth it self into the *Ægæan* Sea. 2. *Erigon*, and 3. *Aliacmon*; which, beginning their course in the more Northen parts of *Macedon*, end it in *Thermaicus Sinus*. 4. *Strymon* in *Mygdonia*. 5. *Athyras*, and 6. *Nesus*, in *Thrace*. 7. *Stymphalus*, where *Hercules* killed the *Stymphalian* Birds. 8. *Ladon*, in *Arcadia*. 9. *Inachus*, whose Daughter *Io*, turned into a Heifer, was worshipped by the *Ægyptians* under the name of *Isis*. 10. *Achelous*, in *Epirus*, much celebrated by the ancient Poets, especially by *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*. As is also 11. *Peneus*, the cheif River of *Thessaly*, and there arising from Mount *Pindus*, and increased with the waters of many Rivers. *Daphne* the Nymph, whom *Apollo* is fabled to have loved, and turned into a Bay-tree, lived near or on the Banks of this River *Peneus*, and is therefore said to be his Daughter: as *Io* above mentioned was the Daughter of *Inachus*. Of less note,

Populifer 11, *Sperchius*, *& irrequietus* 12. *Enipeus*, 13. *Apidanusque senex*, *lenisque* 14. *Amphrysus*, *&* 15. *Æas*.

That is to say,
Cool *Sperchius*, *Enipeus* that troubled ran,
Smooth *Amphryse*, *Æas*, and old *Apidan*.

The rest of less note, and the most eminant Mountains in each part hereof, shall be remembred in their places, as we see occasion.

Thus much of the whole Countrey in gross. And as for the Division of it with reference to the State of the *Roman* Empire, it contained in a manner two whole Dioceses, *viz.* *Thrace*, and *Macedon*: the first under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*, the latter (together with that of *Dacia*) under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*. Of these the Diocese of *Macedon*, lying wholly within the Bounds of the modern *Greece*, contained the Provinces of *Macedonia Prima*, 2. *Macedonia Secunda*, or *Salutaris*, (now, as in former times, called *Albania*) 3. *Epirus Nova*, taking up the Countreys of *Phocis*, *Locris*, and so much of the *Old Epirus* as was on that side of the River *Achelous*, 4. *Old Epirus*, comprehending all the rest of that Countrey, 5. *Thessaly*, 6. *Achaia*, containing all *Achaia* and *Peloponnesus*, the Countreys of *Locris* and *Phocis* excepted onely, and 7. *Crete* or *Candie*, with the Islands adjoyning. And for the Diocese of *Thrace*, it was divided into the Provinces of, 1. *Thrace* specially so called, 2. *Europa*, 3. *Rhodope*, 4. *Hæmimontum*, 5. *Mœsia Inferior*, and 6. *Scythia*: of which the four first make up the Body of *Thrace*, and shall there be spoken of; the two last, being comprehended in the modern *Dacia*, have been described already in their proper places. But not to bind my self precisely unto this Division, (though I shall look on this as occasion serveth) I shall consider *Greece* in the several Provinces of, 1. *Peloponnesus*, 2. *Achaia*, 3. *Epirus*, 4. *Albania*, 5. *Macedon*, 6. *Thrace*, 7. the Islands of the *Propontick*, 8. *Ægæan*, and 9. the *Ionian* Seas, and 10. finally the Isle of *Crete*.

1. PELOPONNESUS.

PELOPONNESUS is bounded on the East with the *Cretan*, on the West with the *Adriatick* or *Ionian* Seas, on the North-east with *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*, on the North-west with *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now *Golfo di Patras* or *Lepanto*, and on the South with the *Mediterranean*. So that it is almost an Island, properly called a *Peninsula*, rounded with the Sea, except where it is tied to the main Land of *Greece* by an *Isthmus* six miles in breadth, which the *Grecians* and *Venetians* fortified with a great Wall and five Castles. This Wall was called anciently *Hexamilium*, and was overthrown by *Amurath* the Second, who harassed and spoiled all the Countrey. It was afterwards in the year 1453, upon the rumour of a War, built up again by the *Venetians* (who then had the greatest part of this Countrey) in 15 dayes; there being for that time 30000 men employed in the work. This Wall extended from one Sea unto the other; which, had it been as gallantly guarded as it was hastily made up, or as it was well fortified had it been as well manned, might easily have resisted the *Turks*, until more means had been thought on to defend it. Not less observable, but more fruitless, was the Design of some in the elder times, to cut through this *Isthmus*, and make a perfect Island of it. It was attempted by *Demetrius* King of *Macedon*, *Julius Cæsar*, and *Caius Caligula*; by none more eagerly pursued then by the Emperour *Nero*, who, to hearten his Souldiers, loth to attempt so fruitless an Enterprise, took a Spade in hand, and busily began the work. Yet at last the Souldiers, being frighted with the Bloud which abundantly broke forth, with the Groans and Roarings which they continually heard, and with the Hobgoblins and Furies which were always in their sight, perswaded the Emperour, now half out of the humour, to leave this, and enjoyn them some more profitable Service. It was also given over by the former Princes on the like Discouragements. But of this *Isthmus* we shall add no more then these words of *Ovid*, and so pass forwards to the Description of the Countrey; that is to say,

Æquora bina suis oppugnant fluctibus Isthmon,
Et tenuis Tellus audet utrumque Mare.

Which may be thus Englished;

Two Seas assault the *Isthmus* with th ir Waves,
And that thin Neck of Land both Seas out-braves.

As for this Countrey of *Peloponnesus*, it is in compass 600 miles, and was called at first *Ægialia*, from *Ægialus* the first King of *Sicyon*; next *Apia*, from *Apis* the fourth King; after that *Sicyonia*, from *Sicyon* the 19 King thereof: and finally *Peloponnesus*, from *Pelops* the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, and Νῆσος, *Insula*, the word signifying as much as the Isle of *Pelops*. But it is now of late called *Morea*; and that *à Maurorum Incursionibus*, from the Incursions of the *Moors*, as *Mercator* thinketh: but by the *Moors* he means the *Saracens*, as some others also do.

It is conceived to be the most pleasant Countrey in all *Greece*, abounding in all things necessary for the Life of man; and in such also as do serve for Delicacy and Contentment only: adorned with many goodly Plains, swelled with fruitful Hills, well stored with Ports and Havens on all sides thereof. And though no Countrey in the World, for the bigness of it, hath suffered in the Ruine of so many brave and stately Cities; yet is it still the most populous and best inhabited of all the Continent of *Greece*. Near the middle of it, in *Laconia*, is the Mount *Taygetus*, from the top whereof there was no City of note in all this *Peninsula* but might easily be seen. A most gallant Prospect. The whole was divided commonly into these seven Provinces; 1. *Achaia propria*. 2. *Elis*. 3. *Messene*. 4. *Arcadia*. 5. *Laconia*. 6. *Argolis*. and 7. *Corinthia*.

1. *ACHAIA propria* is bounded on the East with *Argolis* and *Corinthia*, on the West with the *Ionian* Sea, on the North with *Sinus Corinthiacus* or the Gulf of *Lepanto*, on the South with *Elis*. So called from the *Achæi*, the Inhabitants of it; the Adjunct *propria* being added to difference it from *Achaia* in the Continent or Mainland of *Greece*.

Places of most consideration in it are, 1. *Dyme*, situate in the most Western point of it, in or near the Promontory called *Araxus*. The Town is now called *Chiarenza*, and the Promontory *Cabo di Chiarenza*. Not far from which is another Promontory or Head-land, of old called *Rhium*, opposite to another in *Ætolia* that was called *Antirrhium*, divided by a very narrow Streight or *Fretum*, which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*; fortified on each side with a Castle for defence thereof, commonly called *Castelli di Lepanto*: both built and fortified by *Bajazet* the second, when he had finished the Conquest of *Peloponnesus*, to secure the entrance of this Bay; both taken and demolished by *Andrew Doria*, Lord Admiral to *Charles* the V. to lay the Bay open to the Christians; and finally, both within few years recovered and repaired by *Solyman* the Magnificent, as they still continue. 2. *Ægium*, where *Jupiter* is said to have been nursed by a Goat, whence it had the name; Αἴξ in *Greek* signifying a *Shee-Goat*: once a strong Town, now ruined and destroyed by the *Turks*; called at this day *Vostiza*, or *Bostizan*. 3. *Ægira*, once the chief City of all this Tract, situate on a steep and inaccessible Hill; now a small Village, called *Xylocastro*. 4. *Olenus*, so named from *Olenus* the Son of *Jupiter* and *Anaxithea*, now called *Chaminisa*. 5. *Patræ*, situate at the very Mouth of the Gulf, opposite to *Lepanto*. First called *Aroe*, but being by one *Patreus* enlarged and walled, took the name of *Patræ*, which name it holdeth to this day, being still called *Patras*; the Town of most note on the bay of *Corinth*, which is called from hence *Golfo di Patras*. A Town of good Trade, and much frequented not long since by the *English* Merchants, who had here their Consul, called the *Consul of Morea*: but formerly more memorable for the death of S. *Andrew* the Apostle, who here suffered Martyrdom. 6. *Pellene*, distant from the Sea about 60 Furlongs: the people whereof being constant to their old Fashions of Apparel, occasioned the Proverb of *Pellenica vestis*, applied to old Cloths out of Fashion. Here were once also the two Cities of 7. *Helice*, and 8. *Buris*, sunk by the violence of a Tempest into the bottom of the Sea, about the time of the Battel of *Leuctra*. Not to say any thing of 9. *Tritæa*, and 10. *Phera*, two other Towns hereof, of note in the former times; so little now remaining of them, as if they had been sunk at the same time also.

But the chief Town of all this Province (if not a Province of it self) is *Sicyon*, situate not far from the *Isthmus*, in the most Eastern parts hereof, and giving to the Territory or adjoyning Countrey (as once unto the whole *Peninsula*) the name of *Sicyonia*. The Territory is rich, especially in Olives, and Works of Iron; the City the most ancient of all *Greece*, built within little time of the general Flood and restauration of mankind. First called *Ægialia*, after *Sicyonia*, by the name of the first and nineteenth King hereof; by whom and their Successors it was much adorned and beautified with Temples, Altars, Statues and Images of their several Gods: the ancientest Kingdom in the World, the *Assyrian* and *Ægyptian* excepted only,

only, and perhaps not those. It took beginning in the person of *Ægialeus*, within 150 years after the Deluge, and 200 years before the death of *Noah*; continuing in a Race of Princes who swayed the Affairs of *Peloponnesus*, till overtopped by the growth and good fortune of the Kings of *Argos*. The names of whom, by reason of the undoubted Antiquity of this Kingdom, I shall here subjoyn in the ensuing Catalogue of

The Kings of *SICYON*.

A. M.		*A. M.*	
1860	1. *Ægialeus*,	2421	14. *Marathus*.
1910	2. *Europs*.	2441	15. *Echireus*.
1950	3. *Telchin*.	2496	16. *Corax*.
1980	4. *Apis*.	2526	17. *Epopeus*.
2004	5. *Telxion*.	2561	18. *Laomedon*.
2055	6. *Ægirus*.	2601	19. *Sicyon*.
2089	7. *Eurymachus*.	2646	20. *Polybus*.
2134	8. *Leuxippus*.	2686	21. *Janischus*.
2187	9. *Messapus*.	2728	22. *Phestus*.
2234	10. *Peatus*,	2736	23. *Adrastus*.
2280	11. *Plemnæus*.	2740	24. *Polyphides*.
2328	12. *Orthoülis*.	2771	25. *Pelasgus*.
2391	13. *Marathon*.	2791	26. *Zeuxippus*,

the last King of *Sicyon*. After whose death, *A. M.* 2812, the Estate hereof was governed by the Priests of *Apollo*, seven of them successively one after another: the first five, only years apiece; *Amphictyon*, who was the sixth, continuing 9 years in the Regency, and *Charidemus*, the last of them, ruling 18 years. After whose death, or departure, I know not which, *A. M.* 2844, the *Heraclidæ*, who about that time returned into *Peloponnesus*, made themselves Masters of this Countrey; there being no Kings of *Sicyon* from this time forwards.

Of these Kings the most memorable were *Ægialeus* and *Apis*, the first and fourth, from whom this *Peninsula* had the names of *Apia* and *Ægialia*; *Ægirus*, the 6 giving name and being to the City *Ægira* spoken of before; *Marathon*, the 13. of whom perhaps the famous Fields of *Marathon* (in the other *Achaia*) took denomination; *Epopeus*, the 17. who founded a Temple to *Minerva*, and therein placed his own Monument or Trophies; *Sicyon*, the 19. the Founder of the City *Sicyon*, or at least the Repairer and Enlarger of it; *Pelasgus*, the 25. from whom perhaps the *Græcians* might be called *Pelasgi*, if not known formerly by that name. After this time I find no man of note who bare sway in *Sicyon*, till the time of *Aratus*, the special Ornament of this Town, (of which a Native) and one of the principal Establishers of the *Achæan* Commonwealth against the *Spartans* and *Macedonians*; of which more hereafter in the general History of *Peloponnesus*.

2. The Countrey of *ELIS* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the West the *Ionian* Sea, on the North *Achaia propria*, on the South *Messenia*. The chief Cities are, 1. *Elis*, which gives name to the whole Province. So called from *Elisha* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who fixt himself in these parts of this Countrey, where he built this City, calling it by his own name, as his posterity in honour of him did the Isles adjoyning, mentioned in the Prophet *Ezekiel* by the name of the Isles of *Elisha*, ch. 27. v. 7. Nigh to this City runneth the River *Alpheus*, of which we have spoken in *Sicilia*: and in this City reigned the King *Augeas*, the cleansing of whose Stable is accounted one of the Wonders or twelve Labours performed by *Hercules*. 2. *Olympia*, famous for the Statue of *Jupiter Olympius*, one of the seven Wonders, being in height 60 Cubits, composed by that excellent Workman *Phidias* of Gold and Ivory. In honour of this *Jupiter* were the *Olympick* Games instituted by *Hercules*, and celebrated on the Plains of this City, *A. M.* 2757. The Exercises in them were for the most part bodily, as Running in Chariots, Running on Foot, Wrestling, Fighting with the Whorlbats, and the like. But so that there repaired thither also Oratours, Poets, and Musicians, and all that thought themselves excellent in any laudable quality, to make triall of their several Abilities: the very Criers, who proclaimed the Victories, contending which should cry loudest, and best play his part. The Rewards given to the Victour were only Garlands of Palm, or such slight remembrances; and yet the *Greeks* no less esteemed that small Sign of conquest and Honour, then the *Romans* did their most magnificent Triumphs: those which were Conquerours herein being met by all the principal men in the City in or under which they lived, and a passage broken in the main Walls thereof for their reception; as if the ordinary Gates were not capable of so high an Honour, or able to afford them entrance. Insomuch that when *Diagoras* had seen his three Sons crowned for their several Victories, a Friend of his came to him with this Gratulation, *Morere*, Diagora, *nunquam enim in Cœlum ascensurus es*, that is to say, Die now, *Diagoras*, for thou shalt never go to Heaven: as if no greater Happiness could befall the man either in this life or that to come, then that which he enjoyed already. The Judges and Presidents of these Games were some of the Citizens of *Elis*, deputed to it; highly commended for their Justice and Integrity in pronouncing who best deserved without Partiality. Of these thus *Horace* in his Odes:

Sunt quos Curriculo pulverem Olympicum
Collegisse juvat; *Metáque fervidis*
Evitata Rotis, *Palmâque nobilis*
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

Quos Elæa *domum reducit*
Palma cœlestes.

That is to say,
Some in *Olympick* Dust take pride
Their Chariots and themselves to hide;
Whom the shunn'd Mark, and Palm so priz'd,
Like to the Gods hath eterniz'd.

Such as like Heav'nly Wights do come
With an *Elæan* Garland home.

But to proceed, after the death of *Hercules* these Games were discontinued for 430 years: at which time one *Iphitus*, warned so to do by the Oracle of *Apollo*, renewed them, causing them to be solemnly exercised every fourth year: from which Custom *Olympias* is sometimes taken for the space of 4 years; as *quinque annorum Olympiades* for 20 years. *Varro* reckoneth the times before the Floud to be Obscure; those before the *Olympiads*, and after the Floud, to be Fabulous; but those that followed these *Olympiads* to be Historical. These *Olympiads* were of long time, even from the restauration of them by *Iphitus* untill the Reign of the Emperour *Theodosius*, the *Græcian Epoche*, by which they reckoned their Account: the first of them being placed in the year of the World 3174, before the building of *Rome* 40 years; the last in the 440. year after *Christ*'s Nativity. According to which reckoning this Account continued for the space of 1214 years; the memory of which remains, though the name of *Olympia* be not found in *Peloponnesus*; the Town

at

at this day being called by the name of *Scouri*. 3. *Pisa*, whose people followed *Nestor* to the Wars of *Troy*; and in their return were by Tempest driven to the Coasts of *Italy*, where they built the City *Pisa* in *Tuscany*. 4. *Tornese*, a new Town, or the new new name of some ancient City; from whence the adjoyning Promontory, of old called *Chelonites*, is now called *Cabo di Tornese*.

3. *MESSENIA* hath on the East *Arcadia*, on the North *Elis*, on the South and West the Sea. It takes its name from the Metropolis *Messene*, situate on *Sinus Messeniacus*, now called *Golfo di Corone*. 2. *Pylos*, where *Nestor* was King, now called *Navarino*; a desolate and poor Village not worth the noting. Of which thus *Ovid* speaking in the name of *Penelope*;

Nos Pylon, *antiqui* Neleïa Nestoris *arva*,
Misimus; *incerta est reddita fama* Pylo.
To *Pylon*, aged *Nestor* s Seat, we sent;
But could not hear from thence how matters went.

3. *Modon*, or *Methone*, seated in the most Southern part of this *Peninsula*, from whence unto the *Isthmus* which joyneth it to the rest of *Greece* are reckoned 175 *Italian* miles. The Town is commodiously seated in a Demi-Island, washed on the one side with the Sea, and so well fortified toward the Land, that in the opinion of most men it is thought impregnable; adorned on the South-side with a large and capacious Bay, about 3 miles wide, secure from all Winds except the North, and shut up with a little Island called anciently *Oenussa*, but now *Sapienza*, which makes it one of the safest Harbours in all these Seas. It was possessed once by the State of *Venice*, but conquered by the *Turk*, after many sharp and fierce Assaults, *Anno* 1500, both *Pylus* and *Corone* yielding on the noise thereof. The best Retreat since that time of the *Turkish* Navies, and the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Sanzack*, who hath the Government of this whole Province of *Morea* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*. 4. *Corone*, or *Coron*, the chief Town on the Bay of *Messene*, called from hence *Golfo di Corone*, and the last which held out against the *Turks* for the State of *Venice*, once Lords of all the Sea-coast of *Peloponnesus*. 5. *Cyparissi*, now called *Arcadia*, from whence the Bay adjoyning hath the name of *Golfo di Arcadia*. Here is also the Promontory called of old *Coryphasium*, now *Cabo Zunchi*.

The people of this small Province had once a great sway in the whole *Peninsula*. At first they were confederate with the *Spartans* in so strict a League, that they mutually sent young Virgins to one another for their publick Sacrifices: but afterwards Corrivals with them for the supreme Power. The *Spartans*, at the last getting the upper hand of them, oppressed them with a miserable Servitude. The occasion this: In the Confines of this Country stood a Temple of *Diana*, common alike to the *Messenians*, *Spartans*, and *Dores*. It happened that some *Spartan* Virgins were by the *Messenians* here ravished: which abuse the *Spartans* pretended to be the ground of their War; the true reason indeed being their Covetousness of the sole Empire. This War broke out three several times. The first continued twenty years: in which space the *Lacedæmonians*, fearing their Absence would hinder the supply of Children in the City, sent a company of their ablest young men home to accompany their Wives. Their Off-spring were called *Parthenii*, who, coming to full growth, abandoned *Sparta*, sailed into *Italy*, and there built *Tarentum*. The second, being of 23 years continuance, was raised and maintained by *Aristomenes*, one of the chief men of the *Messenians*; in which they prospered till *Aristocrates*, King of *Arcadia*, one of their Confederates, revolted to side with *Lacedæmon*. Then began they to decline, and *Aristomenes* was thrice taken Prisoner, still miraculously escaping. His last Imprisonment was in a Dungeon, where by chance espying a Fox devouring a dead body, he caught hold of her Tail. The Fox running away, guided *Aristomenes* after; till the straightness of the Hole by which he went out made him leave his hold, and fall to scraping with his Nails: which exercise he never left till he had made the Hole passable, and so escaped; and having a while upheld his falling Country, died in *Rhodes*. The third War was like Drops after a Tempest; in which the *Messenians* being finally subdued, were forced to abandon their Country, or become Slaves unto the *Spartans*, who put them to all Drudgeries and servile works; as they did the *Helots*, whom they counted as their Bondmen. And to this life some of them did apply themselves with so much Obsequiousness, that at last it grew into a Proverb, *Messenâ servilior*, that such a one was more servile, or more slavishly used, than these poor *Messenians*. But the greatest part of them, not brooking that heavie Yoke, passed into *Sicily*, and there built the City of *Messana*. Others were planted in *Naupactum*, by the State of *Athens*; the rest dispersed up and down in all parts of *Greece*: few of them left in their own Country, till *Epaminondas*, having vanquished the *Lacedæmonians* at the Battel of *Leuctra*, restored them to their ancient Possessions.

4. *ARCADIA* hath on the East *Laconia*, on the West *Elis* and *Messene*, on the North *Achaia propria*, and on the South the Sea. This Country took its name from *Arcas*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Calisto*; but was formerly caled *Pelasgia*: the people whereof thought themselves more ancient than the Moon.

Orta priùs Lunâ, de se si creditur ipsi,
A magno tellus Arcade *nomen habet*.
The Land which of great *Arcas* took its name
Was e're the Moon, if we will credit Fame.

The chief Cities are; 1. *Mantinea*, nigh unto which the *Theban* Army, consisting of 30000 Foot and 3000 Horse, routed the Army of the *Spartans* and *Athenians*, consisting of 25000 Foot and 2000 Horse. In this Battel *Epaminondas*, that famous Leader, received his death's wound, and not long after died. At his last Gaspe one of his Friends bemoaning his untimely death, *Alas*, said he, *thou diest*, Epaminondas, *and leavest behind thee no Children*. Nay, replied he, two Daughters will I leave behind me, the Victory of *Leuctra*, and this other at *Mantinea*. It was afterward called *Antigonia*, in honour of *Antigonus*, Tutour or Protector of *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*, King of *Macedon*; but by command of the Emperour *Adrian* restored to its old name again, and is now called *Mantegna*. 2. *Megalopolis*, the Birth-place of *Polybius*, that excellent Historian. The one half of it had sometimes the name of *Orestia*, from the lodging of *Orestes* in it: the whole is now called *Leontari*, on what cause I know not. 3 *Phialia*, towards the Sea. 4. *Psophis*, so called from *Psophis*, one of the Sons of *Lycaon*, once King of this Country, slain by *Jupiter*. 5. *Stymphalus*, situate near a Lake and River of the same name, where *Hercules* slew the *Stymphalian* Birds; so great in number and in body, that they darkened the Sun-beams, and terribly infested this little Province, till driven thence by *Hercules*. Here was also in this Town a Temple dedicated to *Minerva*, from hence called *Stymphalida*. 6. *Tegea*, famous for the Temple of *Pan* here worshipped, and from hence called *Tegæus*: more for the War made upon the *Tegeates*, or people hereof, by the *Lacedæmonians*; who, thinking themselves assured of Victory, brought with them store of Chains and Fetters, wherewith to lead captive their conquered Enemies; but, being overcome in Battel, were themselves bound with them, and forced as Slaves to till the Grounds of these *Tegeates*. Here is also in this Country the famous River *Styx*,

whose water, for the poisonous taste, was called the water of Hell; by which Poets feign that the Gods use to swear, as may be every where observed; and that what God soever swore by *Styx* falsly, he was banished from Heaven, and prohibited Nectar for 1000 years.

This Country, for the fitness of it for Pasturage and Grazing, hath made it the subject of many worthy and witty Discourses, especially that of Sir *Philip Sidney*, of whom I cannot but make honourable mention: a Book which, besides its excellent Language, rare Contrivances, and delectable Stories, hath in it all the Strains of Poesie, comprehendeth the universal Art of speaking, and, to them which can discern and will observe, affordeth notable Rules for Demeanour, both private and publick. Which noble Gentleman, as he may worthily be called the *English Heliodore*, so the ingenious Author of the History of *Melintus* and *Ariana* may deservedly be called the *French Sidney*.

5. *LACONIA* is bounded on the West with *Arcadia*, on the East and South with the Sea, on the North with *Argolis*. Called first *Lelegia*, from the *Leleges*, by *Strabo* said to be the first Inhabitants of it; afterwards *Oebalia*, from *Oebalus* a King of *Lacedæmon*; and finally *Laconia*, of the *Lacones* who succeeded the *Leleges* in the possession hereof, on their removal into the Islands of the lesser *Asia*. It is by some Writers also called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an hundred Cities which it once had in it.

The Soil hereof is exceeding rich, and the Fields very spacious; yet for the most part not well tilled, in regard of the many Hills and Mountains which overthwart it. Well watered with the River *Eurotas*, and memorable for many fair Bays and Promontories: of which the principall are the Promontories of *Malea* and *Tænaria*, now called *Cabo Malio* and *Cabo Matapan*; and of the Bays, that called *Golfo di Colochina*, the *Sinus Laconicus* of the Ancients, into which the River *Eurotas* (now better known by the name of *Vasilipotamo*, or the *Kingly River*) pours his gentle Streams. The nature of the People we shall find in *Sparta*.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Leuctra*, situate on the Sea-side, near the Bay of *Messene*: of which name were two others in *Greece*, the one in *Arcadia*, the other in *Achaia*; but this last most memorable. 2. *Amyclæ*, so called from *Amyclas*, the third King of *Sparta*, by whom it was first founded: renowned afterwards for the Birth of *Castor* and *Pollux*, the Sons of *Tyndarus*; and of good note for being the Foundress of the City of *Amyclæ* in *Calabria Superior*, at first a Colony of this: distant from *Lacedæmon* about 20 Furlongs. 3. *Thalamæ*, nigh to which is the Lake of *Lerna*, where *Hercules* slew the Monster *Hydra*; and not far off Mount *Taygetus*, near the Promontory *Tænaria*, in which the Natives shew a Cave, (believed in former times to be the Descent into Hell) out of which the Poets feign that *Cerberus* was dragged by *Hercules*. 4. *Salassia*, where *Antigonus* vanquished *Cleomenes*, the last King of *Sparta*. 5. *Epidaurus*, (seated on the Bay named *Golfo di Napoli*) now called *Malvasia*: a Town well built, and very well peopled; remarkable for the sweet Wines called *Malvesey*, or *Malmsey*, sent frm hence into all other parts in great abundance. 6 *Sparta*, So called from *Sparta*, the Son or Brother of *Phoroneus*, the second King of *Argos*, the Founder of it: but afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Lacedæmon*, the second King of this Country, it took that name also; promiscuously known by both in the best Authors. One of the Eyes of *Greece*, and a famous Commonwealth; but at first governed by Kings, as most of the *Greek* Cities in ancient times. *Tyndarus*, the Father of *Castor* and *Pollux*, was once King hereof. After whose death, and the death of the said famous Brethren, *Menelaus* was admitted King of *Sparta*, or *Lacedæmon*, in right of *Helena* his Wife, their Sister. And though *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by another *Venter*, succeeded after his decease; yet the *Spartans* soon rejected them, and received *Orestes* the Son of *Agamemnon* to be their King, marrying him to *Hermione*, the Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, and consequently the Niece of *Tyndarus*. *Tisamenes*, the Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, succeeded next; in whose time the *Heraclidæ*, or posterity of *Hercules*, returned into *Greece*, under the Conduct of *Temenus*, *Ctesiphon*, and *Aristodemus*, Sons of *Aristomachus*: whereof the first possessed himself by force of Arms of the City *Argos*, the second of *Messene*, and the third conquered the City and State of *Sparta*; which, dying very shortly after, he left unto his two Sons, *Eurysthenes* and *Procles*, the Roots of the two Royal Families which joyntly and in common governed the Affairs of *Sparta*; first absolutely as Sovereign Princes, without any controul, afterwards at the direction of the Senate, and finally under the Command and Check of those popular Officers whom they called the *Ephori*. But because these *Spartan* Kings in each several period were for the most part men of action, and often mentioned in the Histories of the elder time; I will first make a Catalogue of them, and then subjoyn such Observations and Remembrances as I think most pertinent.

The Kings of *SPARTA* of the first Family.

A. M.	
	1. *Eurotas*, the first King of *Sparta*, who gave name to the River *Eurotas*.
	2. *Lacedæmon*, Brother of *Eurotas*, from whom the City of *Sparta* was called *Lacedæmon*.
	3. *Amyclas*, Son of *Lacedæmon*, the Founder of *Amyclæ*, a *Laconian* City.
	4. *Argalus*, Son of *Amyclas*.
	5. *Cynorta*, Son of *Argalus*.
	6. *Oebalus*, Son of *Cynorta*, from whom a part of this Country had the name of *Oebalia*.
	7. *Hippocoon*, Son of *Oebalus*.
2700	8. *Tyndarus*, Brother of *Hippocoon*, in whose life he was King of *Oebalia* only.
	9. *Castor* and *Pollux*, Sons of *Tyndarus*, famous amongst the *Argonauts*.
2740	10. *Menelaus*, Son of *Atreus* and Brother of *Agamemnon* Kings of *Mycenæ*, together with *Helena* his Wife, the Daughter of *Tyndarus*, whose Rape occasioned the Destruction of *Troy*.
2770	11. *Nicostratus* and *Megapenthes*, Sons of *Menelaus* by a former Wife.
	12. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, and *Hermione* his Wife, Daughter of *Helena* and *Menelaus*.
	13. *Tisamenes*, Son of *Orestes* and *Hermione*, who, being outed of *Sparta* by the *Heraclidæ*, reigned in *Achaia*, and left his Kingdom there unto his Posterity.

The

The Kings of *SPARTA* of the Race of the *HERACLIDÆ*.

1. *Aristodemus*, The first King of the Race of *Hercules*, left the Kingdom joyntly to his two Sons,

2848	1.	*Eurysthenes.*	2848	1. *Procles.*
2890	2.	*Agis*, from whom this Line were called *Agidæ.*		2. *Euripon*, from whom this Line were called *Euripontidæ.*
2891	3.	*Echestratus.*		3. *Prytanis.*
2926	4.	*Labetas.*		4. *Eunomus.*
2963	5.	*Dryssus.*		5. *Polydectes.*
2992	6.	*Agesilaus.*	3076	6. *Charilaus.*
3046	7.	*Archelaus.*	3140	7. *Nicandrus.*
3096	8.	*Teleclus.*	3176	8. *Theopompus.*
3136	9.	*Alcumenes.*		9 *Archidamus.*
3173	10.	*Polydorus.*		10. *Zeuxidamus.*
	11.	*Eurycrates.*		11. *Anaxidamus.*
	12.	*Anaxandrus.*		12. *Archidamus* II.
	13.	*Eurycrates* II.		13. *Agasides.*
	13.	*Leonidas.*		14. *Ariston.*
	15.	*Anaxandrides.*		15. *Demaratus.*
	16.	*Cleomenes.*	3447	16. *Leontychides.*
	17.	*Leonidas* II.	3478	17. *Archidamus* III.
3470	18.	*Pliſtarchus.*	3520	18. *Agis.*
3471	19.	*Pliſtonax.*	3547	19. *Agesilaus.*
3539	20.	*Pausanias.*	3588	20. *Archidamus* IV.
3553	21.	*Agesipolis.*	3611	21. *Agis* II.
3567	22.	*Cleombrotus.*		22. *Eudamidas.*
3576	23.	*Agesipolis* II.		23. *Archidamus* V.
3577	24.	*Cleomenes* II.		24. *Eudamidas* II.
3611	25.	*Arius.*	3700	25. *Agis* III.
3655	26.	*Acrotatus.*		26. *Eurydamidas*, the last King of the Line of the *Euripontidæ*, slain by *Cleomenes*, the last of the other Line also.
		Arius II.		
		Leonidas III.		
		Cleombrotus II.		
3714	30.	*Cleomenes* III. the last of the Line of the *Agidæ*; who, having slain *Eurydamidas*, the Son of *Agis* the third, substituted his Brother *Epiclides* in his place. But being himself shortly after vanquished by *Antigonus* of *Macedonia*, and forced to fly his Country with his Wife and Children, the Government of the *Heraclidæ* ended, after it had continued here for the space of 908 years, or thereabouts.		

Under these Kings the Government at first was ἄγαν Μεσηκὸν, as *Plutarch* termeth it, sufficiently *Monarchical*, if it were not more. Under *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the second House, the people, finding the Reins of Government let loose, began to mutiny and grow too headstrong. To bridle whom, and to restrain the Kings withall, (should they prove exorbitant) *Lycurgus*, the Protector of *Charilaus*, the sixth King of that House, did ordain the Senate, committing to them the supreme Power in matters Civil, and leaving to the Kings the ordering all Military and Sacred business. To curb the Insolencies of this Senate, who quickly found their own strength, *Theopompus*, the eighth King of that House, with the consent of *Polydorus*, the tenth King of the other, instituted a new Magistracy chosen out of the Common People, whom thy called the *Ephori*; which grew in fine to such an height of Pride and Tyranny, as not only to controll the Senators, but to censure, fine, imprison, depose, and mutually to kill their Kings, as the spirit of Sedition moved them. So that the State of *Lacedæmon* was at first a Monarchy under Kings, then an Aristocracy under the command of the Senate, next a Democracy under the *Ephori*, and finally, by those popular Officers made so plain a Tyranny, that *Aristotle* and *Plato*, two great Commonwealths-men, who died before they had embrued their hands in the bloud of their Kings, call it in plain terms πεγαυίδα and τὸ πεγαυικὸν, a most absolute Tyranny. What think you would these men have called it, had they lived to see *Leonidas* the third deposed, and *Agis* the third of that name also most barbarously murthered by these popular Villains?

But being the Foundation of this Commonwealth was first laid, and the good Laws and Politick Constitutions by which it did so long subsist in great Power and Splendour established, by the Wit and Power of *Lycurgus*, as before was said; we are to know concerning him, that he was the Son of *Eunomus*, the fourth King of the second House, slain in a Popular Tumult by the Common people. Who, finding by this Essay, that the People were become too head strong for the Kings to govern, unless reduced to extreme Bondage by their Kings, which he wished not neither, took the advantage of the Minority of *Charilaus* to new mould the Government; and what he could not do by fair means, to effect by Arms; forcing this *Charilaus*, though his Nephew, when he came to age, to flie for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Juno*. Having ordained what Laws he pleased, and settled such a Form of Government as himself well fancied, the better to decline the Envy of so great a Change, he got leave to travel, binding the people by an Oath to observe all his Laws untill his return; and, being gone, commanded at his death, that his Ashes should be cast into the Sea, lest, being carried back to *Sparta*, the people might conceive themselves released from their Oath. By means whereof his Laws continued in force near 700 years, during which time that Commonwealth did flourish in all Prosperity. The particulars of which Institutions he that lists to see, may find them specified at large by *Plutarch* in the Life of *Lycurgus*. Suffice it that the Discipline was so sharp and strict, that many went into the Wars for no other reason than on a hope to rid themselves from so hard a life; and that *Diogenes*, returning hence to the City of *Athens*, gave out that he returned from Men to Women, ὅτι τὰς ἐν Σπάρτῃ ἐκ τῶν ἀνδρῶν εἰς τὰς γυναῖκας and being asked in what part of *Greece* he had met with the compleatest men, made answer that he could no-where meet with Men, but that he had found some Boys amongst the *Spartans*. A *Cynical* and rugged Answer, but such as carried a great deal of Judgment in it; the *Spartans* being more stout and resolute in all their Actions, and less effeminate in their Lives, than the rest of the *Græcians*. But besides the strictness of the Discipline under which they lived, there was another thing which made them wish for Wars abroad; namely, the little or no power which either the Kings or People had in Civil matters, or Affairs of State, entirely left to the disposing of the Senate and the Power of the *Ephori*. So that the Kings, having by the Laws the Command of their Armies, were willing to engage in War upon all occasions, and the Common people as desirous to attend them in such Employments as the Kings could wish. Upon these grounds War was made a Trade amongst them; beginning with the *Helots*, a neighbouring People, then with the rest of the *Laconians*, afterwards quarrelling the *Messenians*, their old Confederates: all which they severally subdued, and made subject to them. In the War which *Xerxes* made against the City of *Athens*, their King *Leonidas* the first, of the elder House, went forth to aid them; slain at the Streights of *Thermopylæ*, courageously fighting for the Liberty of *Greece*: and when it was thought fit to set upon the *Persian* Fleet, *Eurybiades* the *Spartan* Admiral did command in chief. In pursuit of thir War against the *Persians Pausanias*

and *Ageſilaus* were of moſt renown: the firſt in helping the *Athenians* to drive them out of *Greece*; the other in making War upon them in their own Dominions. Freed from the *Perſians*, they grow jealous of the State of *Athens*, whom they looked on as their Rivals in point of Sovereignty and Glory. Hence the long War betwixt theſe Cities, called *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, managed for the moſt part in *Peloponneſus*, from thence transferred into *Sicily*, and at laſt ended in the taking of *Athens*: the Government whereof they changed into an Ariſtocracie under thirty Magiſtrates of their own appointment, commonly called the *Thirty Tyrants*. Proud of this fortunate Succeſs, their next Quarrel was with the *Bœotians*, the conquered *Athenians* covertly, and the *Perſians* openly, aſſiſting the Enemy. Here their Proſperity began to leave them. For, beſides many ſmall Defeats, *Epaminondas* the *Theban* ſo diſcomfited them at the Overthrows of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that *Sparta* it ſelf was in danger of utter Ruine. Not long after happened the *Holy War*, chiefly undertook againſt the *Phocians*, wherein alſo they made a party: but this War being ended by King *Philip*, they ſcarce breathed more Freedom than he gave air to. But when *Alexander*'s Captains fought for the Empire of their Maſter, all theſe flouriſhing Republicks were either totally ſwallowed into, or much defaced by, the Kingdom of *Macedon*. The *Lacedæmonians* held the chief ſtrength of a Town to conſiſt in the Valour of the people; and therefore would never ſuffer *Sparta* to be walled, till the times immediately following the death of *Alexander* the Great: yet could not thoſe Fortifications then defend them from *Antigonus Doſon*, King of *Macedon*, who, having vanquiſhed *Cleomenes* King of *Sparta*, entred the Town, and was the firſt man that ever was received into it as Conquerour. So much different were the preſent *Spartans* from the Valour and Courage of their Anceſtours. *Cleomenes* being forced to forſake his Country, and the Race of the *Heraclidæ* failing in him, they became a Prey to *Machanidus* and *Nabis*, two wicked Tyrants; from whom they were no ſooner freed, but they were made ſubject (in a manner) to the power of *Rome*: and in the end the Town was ſo weak and inconſiderable, that it was not able to reſiſt the pooreſt Enemy; now a ſmall Burrough called *Miſithra*. And ſo I leave them to the thoughts of their former Glories, having now nothing elſe to boaſt of but the fame and memory of their Actions in former times.

6. *ARGOLIS*, ſo called from the chief City *Argos*, is bounded on the South with *Laconia*, on the Weſt with *Corinthia* and *Achaia propria*, on the Eaſt and North with the Sea. A Territory remarkable for a moſt excellent breed of Horſes, and from thence called *Hippium*.

Places of moſt importance in it are, 1. *Argos*, founded by *Argus*, the fourth King of this Country; the chief of this Kingdom. Memorable, as for other things, ſo 1. for the Death of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*; who, having forced his Entry into it, was here ignobly ſlain, after all his Victories, by the hands of an old Woman, throwing a Tile at him from the top of an Houſe: 2. for the long Race of the Kings hereof, from *Inachus* the contemporary of our Father *Abraham*, Anno 2003, unto *Acriſius* their laſt King: whoſe Daughter *Danaë*, being ſhut up in a Tower of Braſs, was deflowred by *Jupiter*; to whom ſhe bare the renowned *Perſeus*, ſo memorized in ancient Poets. But *Perſeus*, having by misfortune ſlain his Grandfather, the old King *Acriſius* quitted the City of *Argos* as unlucky to him, and transferred the Kingdom to *Mycenæ*, a City of his own Foundation, and ſo better fancied, which was by means hereof the ſecond City of eſteem in this little Province; growing in ſmall time unto ſo great Riches, that it got the name of *dites Mycenæ*, as appeareth by *Horace*, in whom the Horſes of *Argos* and the Wealth of *Mycenæ* are placed in one Verſe together:

Aptum dicit equis Argos, *ditéſque* Mycenas.
For Horſes *Argos* is of fame,
For Wealth *Mycenæ* hath the name.

3. *Trœzen*, ſituate on the *Sinus Saronicus*, (now called *Golfo di Engia*) the Royal Seat of *Pittheus*, the Grandfather of *Theſeus* by the Mothers ſide, who was born herein: from whence the Town in *Ovid* hath ſometime the name of *Pittheïa Trœzen*, and *Theſeus* many times is called *Trœzenius Heros*; as *Hercules* had the name of *Tyrinthius Heros* from 4. *Tyrinthia*, another City of this Province, in which he was nurſed, 5. *Nemea*, where *Hercules* ſlew the dreadful Lion which annoyed this Country. In honour of which noble Act were inſtituted in time following the *Nemean* Games, which continued of great fame in *Greece* for many Ages. The Exerciſes were, Running with ſwift Horſes, Whorlbats, Running on foot, Quoiting, Wreſtling, Darting, Shooting. Some have referred the Original of theſe Games to one *Opheltes*, a *Lacedæmonian*, in whoſe Honour they conceive them inſtituted, and others fetch it higher, from the War of *Thebes*. But this I take to be the more allowable Opinion. 6. *Epidaurus*, on the Sea-ſide famous for the Temple of *Æſculapius*, and the Cure of all ſorts of diſeaſes there; ſo called from *Epidaurus*, the Son of *Argus*, the Founder of it. Of the ſame name, but of a different ſituation from that before mentioned in *Laconia*; that being ſeated on the Bay called *Golfo di Napoli*, this on that of *Engia*. Once called *Meliſſa* and *Æmera*, at that time an Iſland, but by an Earthquake laid unto the Continent; now called *Pigiada*. 7. *Nauplia*, ſo called of *Nauplius* King of *Eubœa*, and Father of *Palamedes*, to whom it anciently belonged. A Station then, as now, for Shipping; in that regard called *Nauplia Navale*, now *Napoli*, or *Napolis*; the richeſt and beſt traded in all this Tract, giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, now called *Golfi di Napoli*, of old *Sinus Argolicus*, into which the famous River *Inachus*, having paſſed through the City of *Argos*, doth diſgorge it ſelf; ſo called from *Inachus* the Father of *Io*, and the Original and Progenitor of

The Kings of *ARGOS* and *MYCENÆ*.

A.M.		
2093	1.	*Inachus*, the ſuppoſed Father of *Io*, from whom the *Græcians* are ſometimes called by the name of *Inachii*.
2143	2.	*Phoroneus*, the Son of *Inachus* and *Meliſſa*, from whom the ſaid *Io* hath the name of *Phoronis* in the Poet.
2223	3.	*Apis*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Niobe* the Daughter of *Phoroneus*, who, leaving *Greece*, went into *Ægypt*, where he taught the people Tillage, and was there worſhipped afterwards in the form of an Ox.
2238	4.	*Argus*, the Son of *Apis*, and the Founder of *Argos*; in whoſe time Agriculture was taken up amongſt the *Græcians*, from him called *Argivi*.
2308	5.	*Criaſus*, by ſome *Peiraſus*, the Son of *Argus*.
2363	6.	*Phorbas*, the Son of *Criaſus*; in whoſe time *Atlas* and *Prometheus* are ſaid to flouriſh.
2397	7.	*Triopas*, the Son of *Phorbas*, and the Brother of another *Phorbas*, who planted himſelf in the Iſle of *Rhodes*.
2442	8.	*Crotopus*.
2464	9.	*Sthenelus*, outed of the Kingdom by
2475	10.	*Danaus*, the Brother of *Ægyptus*; by whom being driven out of *Ægypt*, he was made King

King of *Argos* by consent of the people: the Father of those many Daughters got with child by *Hercules* From him the *Græcians* are called often by the name of *Danai*.

2525 11. *Lynceus*, Son of *Ægyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.

2556 12. *Abas*, the Son of *Lynceus* and *Hypermnestra* the Daughter of *Danaus*.

2566 13. *Prætus*, the Son of *Abas*.

2606 14. *Acrisius*, the Brother of *Prætus*, and the Father of *Danaë*; who being foretold by the Oracle that he should be slain by a Son of that Daughter, shut her up in a brazen Tower. But *Jupiter*, having corrupted the Guards with Gold, got the Ladie's consent, by whom he had *Perseus*, so renowned amongst the Poets and Historians of those elder times.

2637 15. *Perseus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danaë*, exposed by his Grandfather to the Seas, miraculously preserved, and grown into great fame by his brave Exploits. He restored *Acrisius* to his Throne, from which he had been deposed by his Brother *Prætus*. But after having ignorantly and unfortunately slain the said *Acrisius*, he removed his Seat unto *Mycenæ*; where he reigned together with his Son *Sthenelus*.

2645 16. *Eurystheus*, the Son of *Sthenelus*, much spoken of for the difficult Tasks which, at the instigation of *Juno*, he imposed on *Hercules* his Foster-child, and the supposed Son of *Amphitryon* his Cousin-german.

2688 17. *Atreus* and *Thyestes*, Sons of *Pelops*, on the failing of the Line of *Perseus*, succeeded in *Argos* and *Mycenæ*; infamous for their Murthers and Adultery; *Thyestes* abusing the Bed of *Atreus*, and *Atreus* feasting him with the Body of his own Son, whence Θυέστεια δεῖπνα in the Proverb.

2753 18. *Agamemnon*, the Son of *Atreus*, Commander of the *Greeks* at the War of *Troy*, in which action there engaged 69 Kings of the *Græcians*, wafted over with a Navy of 1224 Ships; killed at his coming home by *Ægisthus*, his Cousin-german.

2768 19. *Ægisthus*, the Son of *Thyestes*, having defiled *Clytæmnestra* the Wife of *Agamemnon* in the time of his absence, by her procurement murthered him at his coming home, and usurped the Kingdom

2775 20. *Orestes*, Son of *Agamemnon*, revenged his Father's death on *Ægisthus* and *Clytæmnestra* his own Mother. After which falling mad, and restored again unto his Wits, he married *Hermione*, Daughter of *Menelaus* and *Helena*, by whom he had the Kingdom of *Sparta* also.

2803 21. *Penthilus*, the Son of *Orestes*, and the last King of this Line, outed of his Estate by the *Dores* and *Heraclidæ*, who made themselves Masters of all *Peloponnesus*, which they possessed untill the Conquest of it by the *Macedonians*.

7. *CORINTHIA* is a little Region, lying towards the *Isthmus* or Neck of Land which joyneth *Peloponnesus* to the rest of *Greece*, betwixt *Argolis* and *Achaia propria*. It containeth only the Territory of the City of *Corinth*, not large, nor very fruitful of those Commodities which the rest of this *Peninsula* doth abound withal; as being mountainous and hilly, and, by reason of the nearnes of the Sea, full of craggy Rocks. The chief, and indeed the only, Cities of note in it are, 1. *Cenchreæ*, the naval Road or Station of Ships for *Corinth*, mentioned *Acts* 18. 18. and *Rom.* 16. 1. in both Texts reckoned a distinct Town from *Corinth*, as indeed it was: situate on that Bay which openeth into the *Cretan* Sea, called anciently *Sinus Saronicus*, now *Golfo di Engia*; and consequently opposite to 2. *Lechæum*, the other naval Road for *Corinth*, situate on the Western Bay, called of old *Sinus Corinthiacus*, now the Gulf of *Lepanto*. 3. *Corinth* it self, commodiously situate for the Command of all *Greece*, (had not the Inhabitants been more given to Merchandise than unto the Wars) as being seated on the bottom of the Neck or *Isthmus*, the *Ionian* Sea upon the West, and the *Ægæan* on the East, washing the Walls thereof, and giving it on each side a capacious Haven; in which regard it is called by *Horace bimaris Corinthus*. It is in compass about eleven miles, for Strength impregnable, for Command as powerful, mastering both Seas on which it stood, and cutting off all passage from one half of *Greece* to the other: to which last end the Castle called *Acrocorinthus*, looking into both Seas, served exceeding fitly; and was therefore called one of the *Fetters* of *Greece*. The City is rich, very well traded, and neatly built, most Houses beautified with handsom Pillars, from then called *Corinthian*: more memorable for the Wealth of the people, and the conveniency of the Situation, than for any notable Exploits performed by them, or any great Influence which they had on the States of *Greece*. But in regard of the Wealth, Greatness, and Situation, accounted by the *Romans* one of the three Cities which they held capable of the Empire; *Carthage* and *Capua* being the other two. In this City lived the famous (or infamous) Whore *Thais*, who exacted 10000 *Drachma's* for a single night's Lodging: which made *Demosthenes* cry out, *Non emam tanti pœnitere*, and occasioned the old By-word,

Non cuivis homini contingit adire Corinthum.
'Tis not for every man's avail
Unto *Corinth* for to sail.

Near hereunto stood the *Acrocorinthian* Mountains, at the foot whereof the City, and on the top whereof the Castle called hence *Acrocorinthus*, were seated: out of which flowed the famous Fountain named *Pyrene*, of old consecrated to the Muses; by *Persius* called *Fons Caballinus*, because feigned by the ancient Poets to have been made by the Horse *Pegasus* dashing his foot against the Rock. And on the other side hereof in the *Isthmus* were celebrated yearly the *Isthmian* Games, ordained by *Theseus* in honour of *Neptune*; in imitation of the *Olympick* devised by *Hercules* in honour of *Jupiter*. The Exercises were much the same, and the Reward no other than a Garland of Oaken Boughs: yet they drew yearly a great Resort of people to them; partly to exercise themselves, and behold the Sports; and partly to sacrifice to *Neptune*, who had hard by a famous Temple.

As for the Fortunes of this City, it was at first called *Ephyre*, at that time a small and obscure place; but beautified and repaired by *Corinthus*, the Son of *Pelops*, it took the name of *Corinth*; governed by him and his posterity, till the coming of the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponnesus*, at what time one *Aletes* of the Race of *Hercules* possessed himself hereof, with the name of King, *A. M.* 2849. Twelve Princes of his Line enjoyed it for the space of 220 years and upwards: when the House failing in the person of *Automanes*, they were governed by temporary Officers, like the *Archontes* of *Athens*. Continuing under this Government 124 years, the City was seized on by one *Cypselus*, A. M. 3294, who left it to his Son *Periander*, one of the Seven wise men of *Greece*; counted a Tyrant in those

thoſe times, for no other reaſon than that he had ſuppreſſed the Popular Government. After whoſe death, *Anno* 3364, the City did recover its former Liberty. In the Battle betwixt *Athens* and *Lacedæmon*, and other the Eſtates of *Greece*, for the Superiority, it did little meddle; the aim of this people being Wealth, not Honour; not intereſſed in any Action of renown in all thoſe times, but in the ſending of *Timoleon* to the aid of the *Syracuſans* againſt the Tyrant *Dionyſius*, who did Lord it over them. It was ſubdued, together with the reſt, by the Kings of *Macedon*; and with the reſt reſtored to Liberty by the power of *Rome*: under whom growing ſtill more rich, and withall more inſolent, they abuſed certain *Roman* Embaſſadours. But *iraſci populo* Romano *nemo ſapienter poteſt*, as is ſaid in *Livie*, which the *Corinthians* found too true; the City being beſieged, ſacked, and burnt unto the Ground by *Lucius Mummius*, a *Roman* Conſul, *Anno V. C.* 607. In the burning whereof there were conſumed ſo many goodly Statues of Gold, Silver, Braſs, and other Metals, that, being melted into a Lump, they made up by that fatal chance the ſo-much-eſtimated Metal called *Æs Corinthium*, more highly prized in *Rome* than Gold or Silver. Repaired again, it was of great eſteem in the time of the Emperours, converted by St. *Paul* to the Chriſtian Faith; and having flouriſhed a long time in Pride and Pleaſures, decayed by little and little, till it came to nothing, and is now a ſmall Burrough called *Crato*.

Having thus ſpoken of the ſeveral Eſtates of *Peloponneſus*, it reſteth that we ſpeak ſomewhat of the Eſtate of the whole, varied according to the Fortunes of thoſe particular, which had moſt Influence on the ſame. The Affairs hereof were a long while ſwayed by the Kings of *Sicyon*, whence it had the name of *Sicyonia*, reſtrained afterwards to the Territories of that City only. But when the Kings of *Argos* came in place and power, it depended much upon their pleaſures; from *Apis* the third King whereof, (if not rather from *Apis* the fourth King of *Sicyon*) in the opinion of ſome Writers, it was named *Apia*. But *Pelops*, the Son of *Tantalus* King of *Phrygia*, coming into *Greece*, and marrying *Hippodamia*, Daughter of *Oenomaus* King of *Elis*, became the moſt powerful Prince of all this *Peninſula*, taking from him the name of *Peloponneſus*. The Kingdom of *Mycenæ*, growing into Power and Credit, had the next turn in ſwaying the Affairs hereof for a certain ſeaſon; as after that the *Dores* and *Heraclidæ*, poſſeſſed at once of *Argos*, *Sparta*, *Corinth*, and *Meſſene*. The *Spartans*, getting the Preeminence over all the reſt, were the next who governed the Affairs of it, and they held it long; having firſt conquered *Laconia*, and ſubverted the Eſtate of *Meſſene*; by means whereof, and by their fortunate Succeſs againſt the *Perſians*, they became almoſt abſolute in their Commands, without any Competitor. But their Power being broken by *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas* in the *Theban* War, the petit States hereof began to take heart again, and ſtand upon their own Legs; as they did awhile, till the Kings of *Macedon* ſucceeding *Alexander* the Great brought them once more under, and made them Fellow-ſervants with their *Spartan* Maſters. In the Confuſions which enſued in *Macedon* amongſt the Competitors for that Kingdom, *Patræ* and *Dyme*, two Cities of *Achaia propria*, firſt united them in a ſtrong League of Amity, at ſuch time as *Pyrrhus* firſt went into *Italy*: into which Confederacy the Cities of *Tritæa* and *Pheræ* ſhortly after came; and not long after that of *Ægira*, and the reſt of *Achaia propria*. Their Affairs were firſt governed by two Prætors with Advice of the Senate, as afterwards by one alone with the like Advice; of which *Marcus Carinenſis* was the firſt, and *Aratus* of *Sicyonia* the ſecond. The ground thus laid, and the reputation of this new Commonwealth increaſing by the Vertue of *Aratus*, the *Epidaurians*, *Trœzenians*, *Argives* and *Megarian* became Members of it, maintaining gallantly the Liberties of *Peloponneſus*, till finally maſtered by the *Romans*. In the Diviſion of whoſe Empire it fell, with all the reſt of *Greece*, to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, and in the declining of their Fortunes, when the *Latins* got poſſeſſion of the Imperial City, moſt of the Sea-coaſts of it were allotted to the State of *Venice*; the Inland parts, formerly parcelled out amongſt many Princes, whom they called *Deſpots*, continuing as before they were. By *Iſabel*, a Daughter of one of theſe Deſpots, (and, as it ſeems, the chief among them) married to *Ferdinand*, Son of *James* the firſt, and Father of *James* the ſecond King of *Majorca*, the Title of Prince of *Majorca* came into that Houſe; uſed by them and the reſt of theſe petit Princes, till all together were made a Prey to the *Turkiſh* Tyrants, *Mahomet* the Great and *Bajazet* the ſecond, by whom they were wholly conquered. For howſoever *Thomas* and *Demetrius*, Brethren of that unfortunate Prince *Conſtantinus Palæologus*, had fled hither at the taking of *Conſtantinople*, and were received and obeyed by thoſe petit Princes: yet being unable to hold out againſt the Conquerour, they became his Tributaries. But their falling out amongſt themſelves, and neglecting then to ſend in the Tribute agreed upon, gave *Mahomet* the Great occaſion to invade the Country, and, under colour of aiding one Brother againſt the other, to deſtroy them both, as he did accordingly: *Demetrius* being carried Priſoner to *Conſtantinople*, and *Thomas* forced to abandon *Peloponneſus*, and fly to *Italy*, Anno 1457. Such Towns hereof as belonged to the State of *Venice* followed the ſame Fortune alſo in the time of *Bajazet*, by whom they were all taken at the laſt, and the whole Country brought under his Obedience, *Anno* 1500, or thereabouts. Governed ever ſince that time by a *Turkiſh Sanzack* under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*, who hath his Reſidence at *Modon*, a Regiment of 1000 Horſe to ſecure the Country, and 700000 Aſpers (that is to ſay, 14000 Crowns) a year for his Entertainment.

2. ACHAIA.

ACHAIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the *Ægean* Sea, on the Weſt with *Epirus*, on the North with *Theſſaly*, and on the South with *Peloponneſus* and the Seas thereof. Called anciently *Hellas*, from *Helles*, the Son of *Deucalion*; but whence it had the name of *Achaia* is not yet agreed on: though ſure I am that from hence the Inhabitants of it were called *Achivi*, (a name communicated afterwards to all the *Græcians*) to difference them from the *Achæi* of *Achaia propria*.

The Country is famous in the Authors of the elder times, more for the Gallantry of the Men, than any great goodneſs of the Soil and place: yet that is ſufficiently memorable for the Hill *Hymettus*, ſwarming with Bees, plentiful of the ſweeteſt Honey, and rich in Mines of excellent Marble; as alſo for the River *Cephiſus*, which runneth almoſt through the whole length hereof; divided into two main Streams, of which the one is called *Aſopus*, the other retaineth its firſt name. Upon the Banks hereof ſtood the Temple of *Themis*, to which *Deucalion* did repair to be directed in the Reſtauration of Mankind, as the Poets fable.

It was divided anciently into theſe ſeven Parts; *viz.* 1 *Attica*, 2. *Megaris*, 3. *Bœotia*, 4. *Phocis*, 5. *Locris*, 6. *Doris*, and 7. *Ætolia*. A Diviſion now as much diſuſed as the name of *Achaia*, changed by the *Turks* into that of *Lebadia*, of which more anon.

1. *ATTICA* hath on the Weſt *Megaris* and ſome part

part of *Bœotia*, on all other parts compaſſed with the Sea: ſo called from *Athens*, the chief City. The Soil for the moſt part is very barren and craggy; yet by the Arms and Induſtry of the people made both rich and famous; inſomuch as the yearly Revenues of the State of *Athens* were 1200 Talents. The Money current in this Country was commonly ſtamped with an Ox, whence came the By-word *Bos in lingua*, applied to ſuch Lawyers as were bribed to ſay nothing in their Client's Cauſe. Not much unlike to which was the Proverb riſing from the Coin of *Ægina* (an Iſle adjoyning) ſtamped with the figure of a Snail, *viz. Virtutem & Sapientiam vincunt Teſtudines.*

Places of moſt obſervation in it were, 1. *Phyla*, a ſtrong Fortreſs on the Borders of *Bœotia*, ſurprized by *Thraſibulus* and others of the baniſhed *Athenians*, during the Government of the thirty Tyrants: the taking whereof was the firſt ſtep towards their own and their Country's Liberty, which ſoon after followed. 2. *Eleuſis*, on the Borders of *Megaris*, almoſt impregnably fortified by the thirty Tyrants when they had the command of *Athens*, by whom it was deſigned for their Retreat in all times of Danger. But having withdrawn hither on the taking of *Phyla* and *Piræus* by the *Thraſybulians*, they found ſtrong Walls a weak defence for ſo much Wickedneſs; being trained out as to a Parly, and ſo deprived of the Place and their Power together. It was firſt build by one *Eleuſius*, who entertained *Ceres* as ſhe was in Queſt of her Daughter *Proſerpina*; who, to reward him, taught him the uſe of Agriculture; and he in honour of her built here a Temple. Hence *Ceres* in the Poets is called *Eleuſina*, and her Sacrifices *Sacra Eleuſinia*; and ſometimes the City alſo *Cereälis Eleuſis*, ſo called by *Ovid* in the ſeventh Book of his *Metamorphoſes*. 3. *Rhamnus*, upon the River *Aſopus*, famous for the Temple of *Amphiarus*, and the Statue of the Goddeſs *Nemeſis*, hence called *Rhamnuſia* in the Poets: This *Nemeſis*, or *Rhamnuſia*, being the Goddeſs of Indignation, puniſhed thoſe who made themſelves unworthy of their preſent Fortunes. 4. *Tricorytum*, of more Antiquity than fame. 5. *Marathon*, on the South-ſide of the River *Aſopus*, oppoſite to *Rhamnus*; of great note for the Diſcomfiture given by *Miltiades* the *Athenian* to the numerous Army of *Darius*, conſiſting of 200000 and 10000 Horſe: the Emulation of which noble Victory ſtarted ſuch brave Reſolves in the breaſt of *Themiſtocles*. As memorable in the Poets of thoſe elder times for the *Marathonian* Bull there ſlain by *Theſeus*. 6. *Mopſopia*, the ordinary Dwelling-place of *Theſeus*, before he fixed his Seat at *Athens*, it being at this Town that he reſtored *Helena* (whom he had before ſtoln from her own Country) to her two Brethren *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; of which both Rape and Reſtitution we find mention in *Ovid*, the one in the Epiſtle of *Oenone* to *Paris*, the other in that of *Hermione* to *Oreſtes*; in which laſt it is ſaid expreſly, *Reddita Mopſopiâ Tyndaris urbe Soror*, that is to ſay, that ſhe was delivered to her two Brethren (who had taken much pains in ſeeking for her) in the Town of *Mopſopia*. 7. *Piræus*, the Port-town to *Athens*, and the ordinary Station for their Shipping, the Haven hereof being capable of 400 Sail; diſtant from the City about two miles, but joyned unto it by two long Walls reaching from the one to the other, for ſecuring the conveyance of their Merchandiſe to and from the Sea. The Port it ſelf was impregnably fortified by the Advice of *Themiſtocles*. But as theſe long Walls were broken down by the command of the *Spartans*, when the City of *Athens* was taken by them; ſo were the Fortifications of *Piræus* it ſelf demoliſhed by the command of *Sylla*, in his War againſt *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, the better to keep under the *Athenians*. 8. *Panormus*, a Sea-town alſo, and of very good Trade, but not of ſuch importance as the other was. 9. *Athens*, one of the Eyes of *Greece*, and the chief of *Attica*, ſituate from the Sea two miles, as before was ſaid; the Haven of *Piræus* ſerving it with all Commodities which came from other parts by ſhipping. Firſt built by *Cecrops* the firſt King of it, by whom it was called *Cecropia*, *A. M.* 2409; repaired afterwards by *Theſeus*, and furniſhed with good Laws by *Solon*; and finally thus named from *Minerva*, (whom the *Greeks* called *Athene*) to whom they dedicated, and in whoſe Honour there were yearly kept ſome ſolemn Games, called *Panathenaia*. A City heretofore adorned with all thoſe excellencies of Strength and Beauty which Art or Coſt could add unto it. Renowned, as for many things, ſo for three eſpecially: 1. For the inviolable Faith of the Citizens in all their Leagues, and moſt firm Affection to their Friends: ſo that *Fides Attica* grew in the end unto an Adage. 2. For the famous Scholars which here taught and flouriſhed; this being ſo happy a Nurſery of the choiceſt Wits, and ſo fitly ſeated for the Muſes, that the very Natives, being in other Countries, could ſenſibly perceive ſome want of that natural Vigour which at home was reſiant in their ſpirits. *Ità ut corpora iſtius Gentis ſeparata ſint in alias Regiones, Ingenia verò ſolis* Athenienſium *muris clauſa eſſe exiſtimes*, as *Velleius* hath it. Yea and, to ſay the truth, it was a moſt famous Univerſity, from whoſe great Ciſtern the Conduit-pipes of Learning were diſperſed over all the World. Yet did not Learning ſo effeminate or ſoften the hearts of the people, but that 3. This one City yielded more famous Captains than any in the World beſides, not excepting *Rome*; *Miltiades*, *Ariſtides*, *Themiſtocles*, *Cimon*, *Pericles*, *Alcibiades*, *Phocion*, and divers others of great name. Who though they were the men that both defended and enlarged this Commonwealth, yet were the people ſo ungrateful to them, or they ſo unfortunate in the end, that they either died abroad in Baniſhment, or by ſome violent death at home. *Themiſtocles*, the Champion of *Greece*, died an Exile in *Perſia*, *Phocion* was ſlain by the people, *Demoſthenes* made himſelf away by Poiſon, *Pericles* was many times indangered, *Theſeus* their Founder firſt depoſed, and then deſpitefully impriſoned, *Ariſtides*, *Alcibiades*, *Nicias*, &c. baniſhed for ten years by the Oſtraciſm; a form of Puniſhment, ſo called, becauſe the name of the party baniſhed was writ on an Oyſter-ſhell; and only uſed towards ſuch who either began to grow too popular, or potent among the men of ſervice. Which Device, allowable in a Democracie, where the over-much Powerableneſs of one might hazard the Liberty of all, was exerciſed in ſpight oftner than for deſert. A Country-fellow meeting by chance with *Ariſtides*, deſired him to write *Ariſtides* in his ſhell: and being asked whether the man whoſe Baniſhment he deſired had ever wronged him, he replied, *No, he was only ſorry to hear folk call him a Good man.* We find the like unfortunate end to moſt of the *Romans* ſo redoubted in War. *Coriolanus* was exiled, *Camillus* confined to *Ardea*, *Scipio* murthered, with divers others; only becauſe their Vertue had lifted them above the pitch of ordinary men. *Ventidius* was diſgraced by *Antony*; *Agricola* poyſoned, with the privity of *Domitian*; *Corbulo* murthered by the command of *Nero*: all able men, yet living in an Age wherein it was not lawful to be valiant. In latter times it ſo happened to *Gonſalvo* the great Captain, who, having conquered the Kingdom of *Naples*, driven the *French* beyond the Mountains, and brought all the *Italian* Potentates to ſtand at the *Spaniards* devotion, was by his Maſter called home, where he lived obſcurely, though honoured after his deceaſe with a ſolemn Funeral. Worſe fared the *Guiſes* and *Biron* in *France*; worſe *Eſſex*, and *Dudley* of *Northumberland*, with us in *England*. Neither

will

will I omit *William* Duke of *Suffolk*, who, having ſerved 34 years in our Wars with *France*, and for 17 years together never coming home, at his return was quarrelled, and baſely murthered. It were almoſt impiety to be ſilent of *Joab*, the braveſt Souldier and moſt fortunate Leader that ever fought the Lord's Battels, and yet was killed at the horns of the Altar. Whether it be that ſuch men be born under an unhappy Planet; or that Courtiers, and ſuch as have beſt opportunity to endear men of War unto their Sovereigns, know not the way of commending their great Deſerts; or that Envy, the common Foe to Vertue, be an hinderance to it; I am not able to determine. And yet it may be that Princes naturally are diſtruſtful of men of action, and are not willing to make them greater whoſe name is great enough already. And it may be the fault is in the Souldiers themſelves, by an unſeaſonable over-valuing of their own Performances, as if the Prince or State were not able to reward or prize them: which was the cauſe of the death of *Silius* in the time of *Tiberius*. Concerning which *Tacitus* giveth us this good Note, That Over-merit in great Subjects is exceeding dangerous, and begets Hate in ſtead of Favours. *Beneficia eò uſque læta ſunt, dum videntur exſolvi poſſe; ubi multùm anteverterunt, pro gratia Odium redditur*, ſaith that wiſe Hiſtorian.

But to look back again on *Athens*: it was firſt built by *Cecrops*, the firſt King thereof; governed by him and his Poſterity with no lower Title for 400 years, as is apparent by this following Catalogue of

The Kings of *ATHENS*.

A. M.		
2394	1.	*Cecrops*, who firſt made *Jupiter* a God, and ordained Sacrifices to be offered to him, as *Pauſanias* writeth.
2444	2	*Cranaus*, outed of his Kingdom by
2453	3	*Amphictyon*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and Uncle to that *Amphictyon* who firſt inſtituted the ſupreme Court of the *Amphictyones*, or Common-Council of all *Greece*.
2463	4.	*Erichthonius*, the Son of *Vulcan*.
2513	5.	*Pandion*, the Father of *Progne* and *Philomela*, ſo famous in the old Poets; of whom more hereafter.
2553	6.	*Erichtheus*, whoſe Daughter *Orithyia* was raviſhed by *Boreas* King of *Thrace*.
2603	7.	*Cecrops* II. Brother of *Erichtheus*.
2643	8.	*Pandion* II. Son of *Erichtheus*.
2668	9.	*Ægeus*, Son of *Pandion* the ſecond, of whom the *Ægæan* Sea took name.
2706	10.	*Theſeus*, the Son of *Ægeus*, and Companion of *Hercules*, vanquiſhed the *Minotaur* in *Crete*, collected the People of *Attica* into a body, and incorporated them into the City of *Athens*, which he had beautified and enlarged.
2746	11.	*Mneſtheus*, the Son of *Peteus*, Grandchild of *Erichtheus*, ſerved with the other *Greek* Princes at the War of *Troy*.
2769	12.	*Demophoon*, the Son of *Theſeus*, reſtored unto his Fathers Throne on the death of *Mneſtheus*.
2802	13.	*Oxyntes*, Son or Brother of *Demophoon*.
2814	15.	*Aphydas* Son of *Oxyntes*, ſlain by his Brother.
2815	15.	*Thymades* the laſt of the Line of *Erichtheus*.
2823	16.	*Melanthius* of *Meſſene*, driven out of his own Kingdom by the *Heraclidæ*, obtained that of *Athens*.
2860	17.	*Codrus*, the Son of *Melanthius*, the laſt King of *Athens*; who, in the Wars againſt the *Peloponneſians*, having Intelligence by an Oracle that his Enemies ſhould have the Victory, if they did not kill the *Athenian* King, attired himſelf like a common Beggar, entred the *Peloponneſian* Camp, and there played ſuch Pranks, that at the laſt they were fain to kill him. Which when the Enemy underſtood, they thought themſelves by this means deprived of all hopes of Succeſs, and ſo broke up their Army, and departed homewards. For this the people of *Athens* did ſo honour his memory, that they thought no man worthy to ſucceed as King, and therefore committed the managing of the Eſtate to Governours for term of Life, whom they called *Archontes*: the firſt *Archon* being *Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*. They differed not from the former Kings in point of Power, but only in the manner of their Admiſſion: the former Kings claiming the Government by Succeſſion in right of Bloud; and theſe *Archontes* holding by Election only: whoſe names here follow in this Liſt of

The perpetual *Archontes* in the State of *ATHENS*.

A. M.		
2882.	1.	*Medon*, the Son of *Codrus*.
2902	2.	*Acaſtus*, the Son of *Medon*.
2938	3.	*Archippus*, the Son of *Acaſtus*.
2957	4.	*Therſippus*, the Son of *Archippus*.
2998	5.	*Phorbas*, the Son of *Therſippus*.
3029	6.	*Megacles*, the Son of *Phorbas*.
3059	7.	*Diogenetus*, the Son of *Megacles*.
3087	8.	*Phereclus*, the Son of *Diogenetus*.
3106	9.	*Aritthon*, the Son of *Phereclus*.
3126	10.	*Theſpieus*; in whoſe time began the Kingdom of *Macedon*.
3153	11.	*Agameſtor*.
3173	12.	*Æſchylus*, the Son of *Agameſtor*. After whoſe death, *Anno Mundi* 3195, the *Athenians*, weary of theſe Governours for term of Life, as being leſs obnoxious to the Check and Cenſure of the People, choſe themſelves Officers or *Archontes* for ten years onely: at the end of which time they were to yield up their places, and make room for others. But being a People greedy of Novelties and deſirous of Change, they had only ſeven of thoſe Decennial *Archontes*; their Officers from that time forwards being choſen annually: which Officers, being nine in number, we may call moſt properly the Provoſt, the chief Biſhop, the Marſhal, and the ſix chief Juſtices, all choſen out of the Nobility. And ſo it held for the ſpace of 170 years, till the time of *Solon*; who was the firſt which put the Supreme Authority into the hands of the People; and gave the firſt hint unto that Democracy which afterwards prevailed in *Athens* by the help of *Pericles*, who, being one of the great Council of the *Areopagites*, took from them a great part of their Power in deciding Controverſies and Suits in Law, putting them over to the Judgment of the Common people. A Government ſo dearly loved by the *Athenians*, that in all the Cities which they conquered, or reſtored to Liberty, or won to their Party from the *Spartans*, they cauſed it to be admitted: as on the other ſide the *Spartans* introduced and confirmed an Ariſtocracy (their own beloved Government) in all the places where they proſpered. As for the Court of the *Areopagites*, of much fame in *Athens*, it conſiſted from the firſt beginning ἐκ τῶν κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν Ἀρχόντων, of ſuch as had born ſome of the nine chief Offices; who, being once admitted, held for term of Life. Firſt inſtituted in the time of *Demophoon*, the Son of *Theſeus*, and called by the name of *Areopagites*, either for that they held their Court in the Street of *Mars*, ἐν Ἄρεως πάγῳ, mentioned *Acts* 17. 22. or becauſe *Mars*, being

being accuſed for a Murther, did firſt plead before them. A Court which held in eſtimation under all theſe Changes, and ſo continued till the time of the *Roman* Empire.

But to return again to the Story of *Athens*. In or about the latter end of the life of *Solon*, *Piſiſtratus* altered the Free State, and made himſelf the abſolute Maſter of the City: but he once dead, the People regained their Liberty, driving thence *Hippias* the Son of *Piſiſtratus*; who hereupon fled for Succour to *Darius* the *Perſian* Monarch, occaſioning by that means the firſt coming of the *Perſians* into *Greece*. What Succeſs the *Perſians* had in *Greece* the Hiſtories of thoſe Times abundantly inform us: *Darius* being vanquiſhed by *Miltiades* at *Marathon*, and *Xerxes* by *Themiſtocles* at *Salamis*. Yet did not *Athens* ſcape ſo clear but that it was taken by *Xerxes*, though indeed firſt abandoned and voluntarily diſmantled by the *Athenians*. When the *Perſians* were retired homewards, the People of *Athens* re-edified their Town, and ſtrongly fortified it with high and defenſible Walls: which done, thy put their Fleet to Sea, and ſpoiled the Coaſts of *Perſia* in all quarters, inriching, their City with the Spoiles, and inlarging their Power and Dominion by the addition of many Iſlands and Sea-Towns. Hereby they grew unto that Wealth and Potency, that they were ſuſpected by their weaker Neighbours, and envied by their ſtronger, the *Lacedæmonians* eſpecially; who, fearing to loſe their ancient Priority over *Greece*, but pretending the Surpriſal of *Potidæa*, a City of *Thrace*, from the *Corinthians*, and ſome hard meaſure by them ſhewed upon the *Megarenſes*, made War upon them. In the beginning of this War the *Athenians* not onely reſiſted the whole Power of all *Greece* confederate againſt them, but ſo exceedingly proſpered, that the *Spartans* ſued for Peac, and could not get it. But the Scales of Fortune turned: For after they had held out 28 years, they were compelled to pluck down the Walls of their City, and ſubmit themſelves to the will and pleaſure of the *Spartans*, now by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Lyſander* become their Maſters: by whom the Government was changed, and an Ariſtocracie (or rather Oligarchie) eſtabliſhed under 30 Magiſtrates, known commonly by the name of the 30 *Tyrants*; expelled not long after by the Valour of *Thraſibulus* and his Aſſociates, as hath been touched upon before. Not long after the end of this War, which the Hiſtorians call *Bellum Peloponneſiacum*, the *Perſians*, ſeeing how the *Spartans*, not having now the State of *Athens* to oppoſe them, began to work upon their Empire, furniſhed *Conon*, a noble *Athenian* Gentleman with a Navy ſo well provided, that he overcame the *Lacedæmonians* in a Fight at Sea, and thereby put his Countreymen into ſo good heart, that they made a party in the War called *Bellum Sacrum*; compoſed at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*, who brought not onely the *Thebans*, whom he came to aid, but the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, and the reſt of the adverſe party, under his Command. A Servitude from which they were never freed, till as well *Macedon* as the reſt became Fellow-ſervants unto *Rome*. But though this brave City had then loſt her power in point of Arms, yet ſhe ſtill kept her credit as an Univerſity in point of Arts. *Origen*, *Chryſoſtom*, *Baſil*, and *Gregory Nyſſen*, men of Renown and Eminence in the Primitive times, are ſaid to have ſtudied at *Athens*: the like is affirmed of Pope *Joan*, if the Tale be true, for the middle Ages. And ſo it held, as I conjecture, though not ſo eminently as before, till the year 1440, when taken by *Mahomet* the Great, who wondred much (as my Authour telleth) at the extream Beauty of the Caſtle, and the ſtrength of the Walls, not having loſt in ſo long time their former Excellencies. Since that it is ſenſibly decayed, and is now an ordinary Burrough, (by the *Turks* called *Setines*) but ſtill preſerveth the Reputation of an Epiſcopal See, the Biſhop of it holding up the Title of *Athenienſis*.

2. *MEGARIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Attica*, on the Weſt with the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with *Bœotia*, and on the South with the *Iſthmus* and the Gulf *di Engia*: So called from *Megara*, the cheif City.

This is the leaſt Province of all *Greece*, and not very fruitfull, (the Countrey for the moſt part being hard and rocky) not beautified with many Cities. The principal of thoſe which were are, 1. *Pegæ*, or *Pagæ*, ſituate on the Bay of *Corinth*, and ſpoken of both by *Pliny* and *Ptolemy*; but not otherwiſe memorable. 2. *Megara*, (now *Megra*) firſt built by *Megareus*, the Son of *Apollo*, and from him thus named. Remarkable in former times for a Sect of Philoſophers, called from hence *Secta Megarica*, founded by one *Euclide*, a Diſciple of *Socrates*; of whom ſee *Laertius*. More memorable in the Poets for *Niſus*, once the King of this little Territory on whoſe Head there is ſaid to have grown a purple Hair, on which the preſervation of his Life and Kingdom did depend: Which Jewel his Daughter *Scylla* is ſaid to have delivered unto King *Minos*, her Father's Enemy, of whom, then beſieging this City, upon the ſight of him from an high Turret, ſhe became inamoured. But he rejecting her and her Preſent both, after the taking of the City returned into *Crete*: which the unhappy Woman ſeeing, ſhe threw her ſelf after him into the Sea, and was turned into the Bird called *Ciris*. I leave the morallizing of the Fable unto the Mythologiſts: obſerving onely by the way the antiquity of that politick practice, to *love the Treaſon, and hate the Traitour*. But the glory of this City did not end with *Niſus*: For, ſhaking off the *Cretan* Yoke, it became *ſui juris* once again: and being conveniently ſeated on the very *Iſthmus*, amounted to that height of Proſperity, that they contended with the *Athenians* for the Iſland of *Salamis*. And in this War they ſo cruſhed the power and ſpirit of *Athens* by one fatal Overthrow, that the *Athenians*, to prevent all the like Diſaſters, did ordain by Law, that whoſoever mentioned the Recovery of *Salamis* was to loſe his Life: ſo that *Solon* was compelled to feign himſelf frantick, the better, to propound the Enterpriſe. In which although the State of *Athens* got the Iſle of *Salamis*, yet did the *Megarenſes* continue a Free people, till brought under (with the reſt) by the *Macedonians*, and with them made ſubject unto *Rome*.

3. *BOEOTIA* is bounded on the South with *Megaris* and the Bay of *Corinth*, on the North with the River *Cephiſus*, on the Eaſt with *Attica* and a Branch of the *Ægæan* Sea, and on the Weſt with *Phocis*. Thus named from βοῦς, which in *Greek* ſignifieth an Ox; becauſe when *Cadmus*, weary of ſeeking his Siſter *Europa*, (whom *Jupiter* had ſtoln out of *Phœnicia*) came to the Oracle at *Delphos*, he was commanded to follow the firſt Ox he ſaw, and where the Ox did reſt it ſelf there to build a City.

In the Country is nothing ſingular, but an ancient Cuſtom of burning before the Door of an Houſe in which a new-married Wife was deſigned to dwell, the Axle-tree of the Coach which brought her thither; giving her by that Ceremony to underſtand, (as *Plutarch* telleth us in his Morals) that ſhe muſt frame her ſelf to live and abide with him, without hope of departure. In this Country alſo are the Streights of the Mountain *Oeta*, from the neighbouring Baths called *Thermopylæ*, not above 25 foot in breadth; which in the War that *Xerxes* made againſt

the *Greeks* were valiently defended by *Leonidas* King of *Sparta* with no more then 300 of his men, who, haveing valiantly resisted that Army which in its passage out of *Persia* had drank Rivers dry, and slain at least 30000 of them, died every man upon the place. To hide the greatness of which Loss, lest it should terrifie the rest of his Army which were coming on, *Xerxes* commanded all the slain men to be buried in several Pits, except a thousand; as if no more then they had been lost in that passage.

Places of most observation in it are, 1. *Thespia*, on a River of the same name, at the Fall whereof into the Bay it is pleasantly seated; shadowed on the North with a Branch of the Mountain *Helicon*, and consecrated, as that was, unto the *Muses*, hence called *Thespiades* in the Poets. 2. *Platæa*; nigh to which *Mardonius*, General to the *Persians*, was overcome by the *Greeks*, with the loss of *Mardonius* himself and 160000 men on the *Persian* side; and on the other no more then 31 *Spartans*, 16 *Arcadians*, 52 *Athenians*, and about 600 of the *Megarenses*. In memory of which brave exploit, and to preserve the names and honour of those Worthies who there laid down their Lives for the Liberty of *Greece*, there was a Festival kept anually by the *Platæans* in the month of *September*, with solemn Sacrifices, and a kind of divine acknowledgement unto the deceased; continued from the time of *Aristides* the *Athenian*, who first ordained them, to the days of *Plutarch*, who records it; but how long after I am not able to say. In this great Fight the commander in cheif was a noble *Spartan*, called *Pausanius*, who, afterwards having a Design to make himself Sovereign of all *Greece*, and being discovered in the Practice, fled for Sanctuary to the Temple of *Pallas*. From whence because it was counted Sacrilege to constrain him by violence, it was unanimously resolved to wall up the Entrances; his own Mother laying the first stone. It is recorded that, before the fighting of this Battel, the *Athenians* had been told by the Oracle that they should be Conquerous, if they fought upon their own ground: whereupon the *Platæans*, within whose Territories the *Persians* had prepared to fight, bestowed that Field on the State of *Athens*. In requitall of which noble act, *Alexander* the Great re-edified and enlarged their City, having been first burnt and sacked by the *Persians*, and after levelled with the ground by the *Lacedæmonians*, because confederate with *Athens* in the War against them. 3. *Leuctra*, remarkable for the great Overthrow which the *Thebans*, under the Conduct of *Epaminondas*, gave unto the *Spartans* and their King *Cleombrotus*, who was there slain: by which Victory they did not onely preserve their own Liberty, but brought their Enemies to that fall of Courage and Reputation, that they could never rise again: the divine Vengeance overtaking them in that very place where some of their Nation had deflowred the Daughters of *Scedasius*, who had given them courteous Entertainment. For which when no Reparation could be had from the State of *Sparta*, the unfortunate Damosels slew themselves, to avoid the infamy of consenting to their own Dishonour, and were buried in those very Fields where this Battel was fought. 4. *Aseræa*; the Birth place of *Hesiod*, a man (according to *Paterculus*) *elegantis ingenii, & carminum dulcedine memorabilis*: though it hath pleased that proud Critick, *Julius Scaliger*, intending to deifie *Virgil*, to prefer the worst Verse in the *Georgicks* of the one before the whole Works of the other. 5. *Labadia*, near the River *Cephisus*; the Inhabitants whereof were counted the most superstitious of all the *Græcians*: memorable for the *Trophonian* Den or Cave, and the Oracle there given by *Jupiter*, hence called *Trophonius*: into which Cave none were permitted to enter and receive the Oracle, but after many Ointings, Washings, and the like Superstitious preparations, too long and many to be specified in this place and time. A Town which still preserves so much of its ancient Estimation, that from hence (as I conjecture) the whole Countrey of *Achaia* hath the name of *Livadia*, by which the *Turks* call it at this present. 6. *Chærona*, or *Chæronæa*, the Birth place of *Plutarch*; near unto which was fought that memorable Battel betwixt *L. Sylla* and the *Romans* against *Archelaus*, one of the Lievtenants of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, leading an Army of 120000 Souldiers, of which 10000 onely escaped with life, the *Romans* losing but 14. 7. *Orchomenus*, no less memorable for another Victory, obtained by the same *L. Sylla* against *Dorilaus*, another of that King's Commanders, having an Army of 80000 men, of which 20000 lost their lives that day. After which Victories, when *Sylla* might easily have destroyed that King, he suddenly patched a Peace up with him, that he might hasten unto *Rome*, where *Marius* and *Cinna* had troden his Faction under foot; preferring by that act the pursuit of his own private Quarrels before that of his Countrey, endangered more by *Mithridates* after his return, then it had been formerly. 8. *Aulis*, a Port-Town on the Shores of the *Ægæan* Sea, where the *Græcians* took shipping when they went to the War of *Troy*; here making Oath never to give over the Enterprize untill they had destroyed that City. Concerning which thus she in *Virgil*,

Non ego cum Danais Trojanam *exscindere Gentem*
Aulide *juravi.*

That is to say,

I took no Oath at *Aulis*, to destroy,
As did the *Greeks*, the Town and State of *Troy*.

But the cheif City of this Countrey, and such as had a special Influence over all the rest, was the City of *Thebes*, situate on the Banks of the River *Cephisus*, where it was built by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, after all his wanderings. Famous in old times for the Wars between *Eteocles* and *Polynices*, the Sons of the unfortunate Prince *Oedipus*, and of his Mother and Wife *Jocasta*. The History of which War is the most ancient piece of Storie that we find of all *Greece*, the former times and Writings containing nothing but Fables, little savouring of Humanity, and less of Truth; as of Men changed into Monsters, the Adulteries of the Gods, and the like. In this Town lived *Pelopidas* and *Epaminondas*, who so crushed the *Lacedæmonians* at the Battels of *Leuctra* and *Mantinea*, that they could never after re-obtain their former Puissance. This Commonwelth long flourished, and at last, being over-burthened in the *Phocian* War, was glad to submit it self to the Protection of the *Macedonians*, under the leading of King *Philip*; who by this means first got footing in *Greece*, into which afterwards he thrust his whole body. Upon the death of *Philip*, *Thebes* revolted from the *Macedonians*, but *Alexander* his Successor quickly recovered it: and to dishearten the *Greeks* in the like Attempts, he raised the City, selling all the Inhabitants of age and strength; onely *Pindarus*'s house he commanded to be left standing, in honour of that learned Poet. At the Sack of this Town, one of the *Macedonian* Souldiers entred the house of a principal Woman, named *Timoclea*, ravished her, and rifled her Coffers, but still demanding more Treasure, she shewed him a deep Well, saying, that there all her Money was hidden. The credulous Villain stooping down to behold his Prey, she tumbled him into the Well, and overwhelmed him with Stones. For which noble act, the generous Prince not onely dismissed her unhurt, but most highly commended her. It was after re-edified by *Cassender*, and followed for the most part, as the rest of the *Bœotians* did, the Fortunes of *Macedon*. It

is

is reduced at this time to the ſtate of an ordinary Burrough, and called *Stibes* by the *Turks*.

4. *PHOCIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Bœotia*, on the Weſt with *Doris* and *Locris*, on the North with the River *Cephiſus*, and on the South with the Bay of *Corinth*. A Country ſomewhat ſwelled with Mountains, but thoſe of eminent note in the elder times. The chief wheof are, 1. *Helicon*, 2. *Cithæron* both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, and both contending with *Parnaſſus* for heighth and bigneſs. 3. *Parnaſſus*, of ſo great an heighth, that in that great Deluge in which moſt of theſe parts of *Greece* were over-whelmed with the Waters, *Deucalion* and *Pyrrha* ſaved themſelves and many others on the Top hereof: for which, and for its two Summits reaching to the Clouds, it is of great renown amongſt the Poets; as in *Ovid* thus,

Mons ibi verticibus petit arduus Aſtra duobus,
Nomine Parnaſſus, *ſuperátque cacumine Nubes.*
Parnaſſus there with his two Tops extends
To the toucht Stars, and all the Clouds tranſcends.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Anticyra*, ſituate near the Sea, and famous for the *Helleborum* there growing, an Herb very medicinal for the Phrenſie; whence the Proverb, *Naviget Anticyram*, applied to mad-men. 2. *Pytho*, or *Pythia*, ſaid to be ſeated not only in the middle of *Greece*, but of all the World: *Strabo* relating how *Jupiter*, deſirous to know the exact middle of the Earth, let looſe two Eagles, one from the Eaſt, and the other from the Weſt, which flying with an equal Wing, (ſo we muſt conceive) and meeting at this very place, ſhewed it apparently to be the Navel of the World. By reaſon of which covenient ſituation in the Heart of *Greece*, it was made a Seſſions-Town for all the *Græcians*, and honoured with the Court and general Aſſembly of the *Amphictyones*; men choſen out of the prime Cities of *Greece*, who had power to decide all Controverſies, and to make Laws for the common good. A Court firſt inſtituted by *Acriſius*, as *Strabo* telleth us: or, as *Halicarnaſſæus* more probably, by *Amphictyon* the Son of *Helles*, from whom they ſeem to have their name. The Commiſſioners from the ſeveral Cities, with reference to the places for which they ſerved, had the name of *Phylagoræ*; when aſſembled, they were called the *Amphictyones*: their Meetings were at the beginning of the Spring and Autumn. Some inſtances concerning their Authority will not be amiſs. In the time of *Cimon*, the *Cirrhæans*, having by Piracy wronged the *Theſſalians*, were fined by this Council; and after that the *Lacedæmonians*, for ſurprizing *Cadmea*. And the *Phocians*, for ploughing up the Land of *Cirrha*, which belonged to the Temple of *Delphos*, were by them amerced: and becauſe they continued obſtinate, and paid not their Amercements, their Dominions were adjudged to be confiſcate unto that Temple. But they, diſobeying this Decree alſo, ſpoyled the Temple it ſelf: for which War being proclaimed againſt them by the reſt of the *Græcians*, who by the Aſſiſtance of *Philip* King of *Macedon* brought them to Obedience, the Council was again aſſembled; in which it was decreed that the *Phocians* ſhould raze the Walls of their Cities, that they ſhould pay the yearly Tribute of ſixty Talents, that they ſhould no more keep Horſe and Arms, till they had ſatisfied the Treaſury of the Temple, nor any longer have a Voice in thoſe Conventions. It was alſo then enacted, that the loſt Suffrages of the *Phocians* ſhould be veſted in King *Philip* and his Succeſſors, Kings of *Macedon*; on whom they alſo did confer the perpetual Preſidentſhip, and made them Princes of that Senate. A Court to which the *Sanhedrin* of the ſeventy Elders amongſt the *Jews*, and, in our times, the Diets of the Empire, and the Aſſemblies of the *Switzers*, carry moſt reſemblance. 3. *Cirrha*, on the Sea-ſide, the Port-town to *Delphos*. 4. *Criſſa*, ſo called from *Criſſus* the Son of *Phocus*, and grandchild of *Æacus*, ſituate on the edge of the Bay of *Corinth*; called ſometimes from hence *Criſſæus Sinus*. 5. *Scarphis*, memorable for the Defeat of *Critolaus*, Captain of the *Achæan* Army, by *Metellus* one of the *Roman* Prætors: the Loſs of which Battel drew after it the Deſtruction of *Corinth*. It was obſerved in the ſucceſs of this great Fight, that a Band of *Arcadians*, eſcaping out of the Battel, came unto 6. *Elatea*, another City of this Province, and were there kindly entertained on memory of ſome former Alliances, till news came of the Overthrow of *Critolaus*; when they were ordered by the State of *Phocis* to relinquiſh the Town, (for Adverſity ſeldom meeteth with returns of Friendſhip.) They were ſet upon and all ſlain by the *Romans* in the ſelf-ſame place in which their Anceſtors had unworthily forſaken the reſt of the *Græcians* in their War againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, for the publick Liberty. 7. *Daulis*, a City appertaining to *Tereus* King of *Thrace*, who, having married *Progne*, the Daughter of *Pandion* King of *Athens*, raviſhed her Siſter *Philomela*, and cut out her Tongue, the better to keep his Villany undiſcovered. But *Progne* being made acquainted with the double Injury, firſt made him ignorantly eat his own Son *Itys*, whom ſhe had baked in a Pie; and after killed him, with the help of her raviſhed Siſter. 8. *Delphos*, renowned in old times for the famous Temple of *Apollo*, in which, with that of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Marmarica*, (now reckoned as a part of *Ægypt*) were the moſt famous Oracles of the ancient Gentiles; dark Riddles of the Devil, couched and contrived with ſo much Cunning, that the meaning of them was moſt hidden, when it was thought moſt eaſie to be diſcerned. An Inſtance of which is that given to *Cræſus*, in the War by him projected againſt the *Perſian*, which was thus delivered;

Cræſus Haly *penetrans magnam ſubvertet opum vim.*
When *Cræſus* over *Halys* goes,
A mighty Nation he o'rethrows.

Which he interpreting according to his own hopes, croſſed the River, was vanquiſhed by *Cyrus* King of *Perſia*, and his Kingdom conquered. The like we find of *Pyrrhus* King of *Epirus*, who, before he made War againſt the *Romans*, conſulted with the Oracle, and received this Anſwer;

Aio te, Æacida, Romanos vincere poſſe.

Which doubtful Prediction he thus conſtrued, *Te poſſe vincere Romanos*, That he ſhould overcome the *Romans*; but found it unto his coſt that the meaning was, *Romanos poſſe vincere te*, That the *Romans* ſhould overcome him: as indeed it happened. By another kind of the ſame Fallacy, which the Logicians call *Amphibolia*, did this great Enemy of mankind overthrow another, who, demanding of the Oracle what Succeſs he ſhould have in an Expedition which he was in hand with, received his Anſwer in theſe words,

Ibis redibis nunquam per bella peribis.

Which he thus pointing, *Ibis, redibis, nunquam per, &c.* engaged himſelf in the War, and was therein ſlain. Whereupon his Followers, canvaſſing the Oracle, found the meaning of it to be this, *Ibis, redibis nunquam per, &c.* The like Juggling he alſo uſed in thoſe ſupernatural Dreams which Philoſophers call *ἐνυπνιάσεις*. For *Cæſar*, dreaming that he carnally knew his own Mother the night before he paſſed over the *Rubicon*, became Lord of *Rome*, the common Mother of the *Romans*; and *Hippias*, the Son of *Piſiſtratus* the Tyrant of *Athens*, having upon the ſame projects the ſame Dream, was killed and buried in the Bowels of his Mother the Earth. So that had *Cæſar* miſcarried in his action, and *Hippias* thrived; yet ſtill

had the Devil been reputed his Crafts-master, and the Father of Truths. But as the Ecclesiastical History telleth us, that *Julian* the *Apostata*, consulting with the Devil, was told that he could receive no Answer, because that the Body of *Babylas* the Martyr was entombed nigh his Altar: so neither could the Devils deceive the World, as formerly they had done, after *Christ*, the Truth it self, was manifested in the Flesh, and *tormented* these unclean Spirits, though, as they alledged, *before their time*. *Augustus*, as *Suidas* telleth us, in whose time our Saviour was born, consulting with the Oracle about his Successor, received this not satisfying Answer:

——— Παῖς
Ἑβραῖος κέλεταί με, θεὸς μακάρεσσιν ἀνάσσων,
Τόνδε δόμον θεσπιεπῆ, ἠδ' αὐδὴς ἐκίδας.
Λοιπὸν ἄπειρ ζεφύρου ἐκ βωμοῦ ἡμετέρου.

An *Hebrew* Child, whom the blest Gods adore;
Hath bid me leave these Shrines, and pack to Hell;
So that of Oracles I can no more.
In silence leave our Altar, and farewell.

Whereupon *Augustus*, coming home, in the Capitol erected an Altar, and thereupon in Capital Letters caused this Inscription to be ingraven, HÆC EST ARA PRIMOGENITI DEI. Now as the Devils had by *Christ*'s Birth lost much of their wonted Virtue, so after his Passion they lost it almost altogether. Concerning which *Plutarch*, in a Tract of his Morals called Περὶ τῶν ἐκλελοιπότων χρηστηρίων, *Why Oracles cease to give Answers*, telleth us a notable Story, which was this. Some company, going out of *Greece* into *Italy*, were about the *Echinades* becalmed; when on a sudden there was heard a Voice loudly calling on one *Thamus*, an *Ægyptian* then in the Ship. At the two first calls he made no answer; but to the third he replied, saying, *Here I am*. And the Voice again spake unto him, bidding him, when he came to the *Palodes*, to make it known that the great God *Pan* was dead. When they came unto the *Palodes*, which are certain Shelves and Rocks in the *Ionian* Sea, *Thamus*, standing on the Poop of the Ship, did as the Voice directed him: whereupon was heard a mighty Noise of many together, who all seemed to groan and lament with terrible and hideous shreekings. News hereof coming to *Tiberius*, he caused the learned men in his Empire to enquire out of their Books who that *Pan* should be: by whom it was answered, that he was the Son of *Mercury* and *Penelope*, with Ignorance enough, and little satisfaction to the business propounded to them. Such therefore as more narrowly observed the Circumstances of this accident found it to happen at the time when our Saviour suffered on the Cross; who was indeed the true God *Pan*, the *chief Shepherd and Bishop of our Souls*, as the Scripture calleth him: and that, upon this divulging of his Death and Passion, the Devils, who used to speak in Oracles, did with great Grief and Lamentation forsake that Office, which had been so gainful to them in seducing Mankind. That all Oracles at that instant ceased I dare not say; though it be certain that about that time they began to fail: it being said by *Juvenal*, who lived in the Reign of *Domitian*, Delphis *Oracula cessant*, that the Oracle of *Delphos* was then silent; the rest decaying sensibly in a short time after.

But to proceed. The Temple of *Apollo* being spoiled by the *Phocians*, as before was noted, caused the War betwixt them and the *Thebans*, called the *Holy War*: in which the *Thebans*, being likely to have the worst, sent for *Philip* of *Macedon*, who made an end of the Quarrel by subduing both. The Treasure which the *Phocians* found in the Temple was reckoned at 60 Talents of Gold; but it proved *Aurum Tolosanum*, and brought a sudden Ruine on their State and Nation: Sacrilege being so unpardonable a Crime, even amongst the Heathen, that the fault of some few, countenanced by the rest of a people, hath brought Destruction on them all. It was afterwards with the like ill fortune ransacked by *Brennus* and his *Gauls*, in the wain of the *Macedonian* Empire; all of them miserably perishing who had any hand in it.

5. *LOCRIS* is bounded on the East with *Phocis* and a Branch of the *Ægæan* Sea, on the West with *Ætolia*, on the North with a long Ridge of Hills which part it from *Thessaly*, and on the South with parts of *Achaia*, *Bœotia*, *Phocis*, the Bay of *Corinth*, the Streights of *Antirrhium*, and a part of the *Ionian* Sea. So that for largeness of Extent, and the commodiousness of the Seas, it yieldeth to no Province in *Achaia*, though not so fruitful as some others. Divided into the three Nations, of the *Locri Ozolæ*, lying towards the South, on both sides of the Streights, so called from some ill Smels of the Country or people; 2. the *Epicnemidii*, inhabiting the middle parts, so named from Mount *Cnemis*, not far from *Parnassus*; and 3. the *Opuntii*, so called from *Opus* their chief City, lying on the North-side of the River *Cephisus*, on the Coasts of the *Ægæan* or *Eubœan* Seas.

Chief Cities of the whole, 1. *Opus*, the Head-City of the *Opuntians*, situate on the River *Asopus*, being one of the main Branches of *Cephisus*. 2. *Cynus*, the Port-Town to *Opus*. 3. *Thronium*, the prime Town of the *Epicnemidii*, mentioned by *Polybius*, *Livie*, *Ptolemy*. 4. *Cnemides*, at the foot of Mount *Cnemis*, whence they had their name. 5. *Amphissa*, the chief City of the *Ozolæ*, situate in the inland parts of it: the People whereof, refusing to yield to the Sentence of the *Amphictyones* against their Confederates the *Phocians*, were the cause that *Philip* of *Macedon* returned into *Greece*. Against whom, grievously infesting the *Bœotian*, and manifestly aspiring to the Command of *Greece*, the *Athenians* desperately opposed; not so much with possibility of prevailing, as being urged on by the sharp and biting Orations of *Demosthenes* made against his Procee dings: which being by him called *Philippicks*, occasioned *Tully* to call his bitter Invectives against *M. Antonius* by the same name also. But the Success hereof was such as commonly attendeth a broken Fortune: The *Athenians* being vanquished at *Chæronæa*, and *Philip* declared Captain of *Greece* against the *Persians*, obtained under that Title the Command he sought. 6. *Enantia*, as *Ptolemy*, *Oeanthia*, as *Pliny* and *Pausanias* call it; opposite to *Ægira* in *Achaia propria*. 7. *Molycria*, by *Ptolemy* placed here, and by others reckoned in *Ætolia*: not far from whence is the Promontory of *Antirrhium*, so called because just opposite to that of *Rhium* in *Achaia propria*, between which runneth a narrow Streight, (not so wide as the *Hellespont*) which openeth into the Bay of *Corinth*: each Promontory being for that cause fortified by *Bajazet* the second with a very strong Castle; that on this side being gallantly defended by the *Turks*, when besieged by *Doria*, Anno 1532; for being forced with great Slaughter into a strong Tower which commanded the Castle, they rather chose to blow it up, together with the Ammunition, Victuals, and themselves to boot, than that the Fort should come intire into the hands of the Enemy. Some place this Promontory in *Ætolia* also; but, following the authority of *Ptolemy*, I have placed it here. 8. *Naupactus*, so called from the building of Ships there by the *Heraclidæ*; situate on the *Corinthian* Bay, near the Mouth thereof. Given by the Citizens of *Athens* to the poor *Messenians*, when, after the end of the third War, the *Lacedæmonians*, unwilling to have them troublesom Neighbours, (and they scorning to be quiet Slaves) compelled them to seek new Habitations. It hath of late been called *Lepanto*, giving the name of the Gulf of *Lepanto* to the Bay of *Corinth*; by

that

that name ſubject for a while to the *Venetians*, and from them taken by the *Turks* Anno 1499. Of theſe *Locrians* thoſe of *Italy* were a branch or Colony, whoſe Law-giver was *Zaleucus*, ſpoken of elſewhere.

6, *DORIS* is bounded on the Eaſt with *Phocis*, on the Weſt with *Ætolia*, on the North with the Hill *Oeta*, and other Mountains which divide it from *Theſſaly*, and on the South with *Ætolia* and part of *Locris*. The Air hereof is very healthy, and the Soil ſufficiently fruitful, if well manured; but now the greateſt part lieth waſte for want of Tillage. Firſt peopled by the *Dores* or *Dorienſes*, deſcended from *Dorus* the Son of *Helen*, and Grandchild of *Deucalion*, by whom they were placed in *Theſſaly*, afterwards ſpreading into this Country, which they left their name to, as their proper Dwelling: though many of them, following the *Heraclidæ* into *Peloponneſus*, poſſeſſed themſelves of the greateſt part of *Laconia* alſo; imprinting on the ſame their Dialect or form of Speech, from them called the *Dorick*.

Chief Cities hereof are, 1. *Doris*, ſo called in memory of *Dorus*, the firſt Progenitour of this People. 2. *Erineus*, ſeated at the Foot of *Parnaſſus*, mentioned by *Thucydides*, *Strabo*, *Mela*, *Ptolemy*, and the reſt of the Ancients. 3. *Bium*, as *Ptolemy*; or *Boion*, as *Strabo* and *Pliny* call it. 4. *Cytinum*, near *Parnaſſus* alſo, in the common Impreſſions of *Diodorus Siculus* the Hiſtorian falſly called *Cynthinium*. 5. *Lilæa*, ſituate not far from the Spring or Fountain of the River *Cephiſus*; which, riſing hereabouts, paſſeth through the whole length of *Achaia*, and falls into the *Ægæan* or *Eubœan* Sea.

7. *ÆTOLIA* hath on the Eaſt *Locris*, on the Weſt *Epirus*, on the North *Doris*, on the South the *Ionian* Sea. ſaid to be ſo called from *Ætolus*, the Son of *Mars*, who, being by *Salmoneus* caſt out of *Elis*, fixed himſelf in this Country.

Here is the Foreſt of *Calydon*, where *Meleager* and the Flower of the *Greek* Nobility ſlew the wild Boar. Here is the River *Euenus*, over which the Centaur *Neſſus* having carried *Dejanira*, Wife of *Hercules*, and intending to have raviſhed her, was ſlain by an Arrow which *Hercules* on the other ſide of the River ſhot at him. Here alſo is the River of *Achelous*, of whom the Poets fable many things: as that being Rival with *Hercules* in the love of *Dejanira*, he encountred him in the ſhape of a Bull; and that when *Hercules* had pluck'd off one of his Horns, the Nymphs made of it their ſo-much-celebrated *Cornucopia*.

The people of this Country were the moſt turbulent and unruly people of all *Greece*, never at Peace with their Neighbours, and ſeldom with themſelves. The *Macedonians* could never tame them, by reaſon of the Craggineſs of the Country: yet they brought them to ſuch terms, that they were compelled to let the *Romans* into *Greece*, who quickly made an end of all.

Principal Towns hereof were, 1. *Chalcis*, ſituate near the Spring-head of *Achelous* before mentioned. 2. *Arachthus*, near the River ſo called; which, ariſing hereabouts, paſſeth into *Epirus*, and falleth into the Bay of *Ambracia*, not far from *Nicopolis*. 3. *Olenus*, not far from the Foreſt of *Calydon*. 4. *Pleurone*, giving name to the adjoyning Country, called hence *Pleuronia*, the People whereof had the name of *Curetes* ἀπὸ τῆς κουρᾶς, from their *ſhaving*, it being their cuſtom to ſhave the fore-parts of their Heads, and let the Hair grow on the hinder-parts only, *nè Hoſtes eos cæſarie apprehenderent*, becauſe their Enemies ſhould not lay hold on them by the Fore-tops, and ſo pull them down. 5. *Thermus*, the Parliament-City, or place of general Aſſembly, for all the States of *Ætolia*: which Meeting was called *Panætolium*. It was choſen for thoſe Meetings in regard of the ſituation and ſtrength thereof; as being ſituate well-near in the midſt of the Country, environed with rocky Mountains, of ſteep and difficult aſcent. For that cauſe it was made alſo the receptacle of their Wealth and Treaſure in all times of danger: but taken at the laſt by *Philip* of *Macedon*, with all the Spoil in it, in his War againſt them. 6. *Calydon*, near the Foreſt ſo called, giving name unto it: the royal Seat of *Oeneus*, Father of *Meleager*; divided into two parts by the River *Euenus*, which runneth through it, according unto that of *Ovid*,

Et Meleagræam *maculatus ſanguine* Neſſi
Euenus Calydona *ſecat*.
That is to ſay,
Calydon, *Meleager*'s Town, the Floud
Euen divides, defil'd with *Neſſus* bloud.

Adjoyning hereunto were the *Athamanes*, whom *Pliny* makes a People of it, who gave name unto a little Province called *Athamania*; but ſuch (as little as it was) as gave it the Title of a Kingdom to *Animander*; a Prince whom the *Ætolians* made ſpecial uſe of in their Wars againſt *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perſeus*, ſuggeſting to him and his Children, that they were deſcended of the Houſe of *Alexander* the Great, and ſo engaging them, in hope of that Kingdom, to hazard the quiet of their own. The places of moſt note are, 1 *Dium*, 2. *Athenæum*; both of them taken by *Philip* in that War.

Theſe, as they were the laſt Actors on the Stage of *Achaia*, ſo had they the moſt deſperate part in all the Tragedy of that Country. The Affairs whereof, governed ſucceſſively by that State which was moſt powerful, were for a long time managed by the *Athenians*; whoſe Counſels and Concluſions went for Law amongſt them. But that Eſtate being broken, if not ſubverted, by the Power of *Sparta*, the *Thebans* and *Bœotians*, who came next in play, had the chief Command; uniting almoſt all the reſt in deſign with them againſt the *Spartans*, who now grew terrible to all. Becoming inſolent by the courſe of two much Proſperity, and the many great Victories which they had againſt the *Spartans*, and thereupon quarrelling with the *Phocians*, they were the cauſe of *Philip*'s coming into *Greece*; who, as he had learned amongſt them the uſe of Arms, ſo made he uſe thereof at laſt, and of their Diſſentions, to unite all the States of *Greece* under his Command; *Thebes* it ſelf being taken and ſacked by *Alexander* the Son of *Philip*, as before is ſaid. The *Macedonians* thus prevailing, partly by Force, but eſpecially by Art and Practice, there was no People in *Achaia* that durſt oppoſe them; till theſe *Ætolians*, a reſtleſs and impatient People, took the Cauſe in hand. Who thrived ſo well under *Antigonus* and *Philip*, two of the laſt Kings of *Macedon*, that they took from them many Towns, invaded *Theſſaly*, attempted *Macedon* it ſelf, and, when they could not otherwiſe obtain their purpoſe in the Deſtruction of that Kingdom, opened a paſſage for the *Romans* to effect it for them. But finding no ſuch favour at the *Romans* hands as they did expect, they began to murmur, and afterwards to excite *Antiochus* and the *Greeks* againſt them, drawing thereby thoſe Forces againſt themſelves which they had invited into *Greece*, and were the firſt People of all the *Græcians* that were conquered by them; though, by the Mediation of the *Rhodians* and ſome other Friends, their Country was reſtored unto them, with the loſs only of *Cephalenia*, *Zant*, and ſome other Iſlands, which the *Romans* were reſolved to keep as the fruits of the War. This was about the 564 year of the building of *Rome*, *Fulvius Nobilior* being then Conſul, and chief Commander

mander in this War. After which time the ſeveral Eſtates hereof enjoyed ſo much Liberty as the *Romans*, their new Maſters, thought fit to give them: till they were finally made abſolutely ſubject in the time of *Veſpaſian*, by whom *Achaia* was reduced into the form of a Province, *Peloponneſus* being reckoned as a part thereof. In the Diviſion of the Empire by *Conſtantine* the Great, the Weſt parts hereof being divided from the reſt were called *New Epirus*; but both of them made Provinces of the Dioceſe of *Macedon*, under the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*; the principal Officer of this part being called the Proconſul of *Achaia*: continuing under him and his Succeſſors, Emperours of *Conſtantinople*, till the Deſtruction of that Empire by the power of the *Turks*; but ſo that it remained not always under the Command of one ſole Officer, the Politie of that State being altered, and this Country parcelled out into many Governments, eſpecially after the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the *Latines*, or Weſtern Chriſtians. At that time *Theodorus Angelus*, a noble *Græcian*, and one of the (then) Imperial Family, ſeiſed on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*; part of which laſt, and all the firſt, he left to *Michael* his Son, who held them, though with ſome diſpute betwixt him and *Michael Palæologus*, the firſt Emperour of *Conſtantinople* after the Expulſion of the *Latines*. *Charles*, the laſt Prince of that Family, dying without Iſſue about the year 1430, bequeathed *Ætolia* to another *Charles*, the Son of his Brother; and *Acarnania* (being that part of *Epirus* which the Princes of *Ætolia* held) to his baſe Sons, *Memnon*, *Turnus*, and *Hercules*. But many Quarrels happening upon this Diviſion, *Amurath* the ſecond having then newly conquered *Theſſalonica*, compoſed the Differences by taking all unto himſelf, *Anno* 1432. There were at that time other Princes of like Authority, as of *Athens*, *Phocis*, and *Bœotia*; but the firſt the chiefeſt, as honoured not only with the Title of Dukes of *Athens*, but of Princes of *Achaia* alſo; ſuch being the Fortune of that City, as to have the firſt and laſt great Sway in the Affairs of *Achaia*. For at the Tranſlation of the Empire upon the *Latines*, *Godfrey* of *Troyes*, a *French*-man, was made Duke of *Athens* and Prince of *Achaia*, of whom *Paulus Æmilius* ſpeaketh, *Anno* 1220: which Honour afterwards was conferred on *Walter de Bren*, a Kinſman of *John de Bren*, the laſt King of *Jeruſalem*, Protector of *Baldwin* the ſecond the laſt Emperour of the *Latines*, mentioned by the ſaid *Æmilius*, *Anno* 1288. And though on the Defeat and death of this *Walter* by the *Catalonians*, then ranſacking thoſe parts of *Greece*, the Title of Duke of *Athens* was aſſumed by *Frederick Alphonſo*, the Son of *Frederick* King of *Sicily*, and by other Princes of that Houſe: yet, upon better ground, by the Heir general of this *Walter* it was conveyed in Marriage to *Izaulus di Accio*, a Nobleman of the Realm of *Naples*; whoſe Son *Walter* (commonly called the Duke of *Athens*) for a time obtained the Sovereignty of the State of *Florence*, *Anno* 1342, but loſt it ſuddenly again by his too much Cruelty. *Francis de Acciavol*, the laſt Prince of this Houſe, having been brought up in the Court of *Mahomet* the Great, as one of his Favourites, ſurrendred his Eſtate herein, at the perſuaſion of that Tyrant, in change for the Country of *Bœotia* and the Dukedom of *Thebes*: which he no ſooner had received, but he was ſent by *Mahomet* to *Zoganus* his Lieutenant in *Morea*, by whom at firſt he was courteouſly received, at laſt cruelly murthered. And ſo the whole Country of *Achaia* fell into the poſſeſſion of the *Turks*, *Anno* 1454, or thereabouts.

3. EPIRUS.

EPIRUS is bounded on the Eaſt with *Ætolia*, on the Weſt with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Theſſaly*, *Macedon*, and ſome part of *Albania*, and on the South with the *Ionian* Seas. So called from the Solidity and Firmneſs of it; the word *Epeiros* in the *Greek* Tongue ſignifying as much as *Terra firma*, or the firm Land. But by the *Turks* at this day it is called *Albania*, which name they give to all the Lands and Countries in their poſſeſſion lying upon the *Adriatick* and *Ionian* Seas.

In this Country was born *Olympias*, Mother of *Alexander* the Great; and *Pyrrhus*, who conquered the Realm of *Macedon*, and was the firſt Foreiner who made triall (though to his own Loſs) of the Power and Puiſſance of *Rome*; accounted by *Hannibal*, next to *Alexander*, the ſecond great Souldier of the world. Here is alſo Mount *Pindus*, ſacred to *Apollo* and the *Muſes*, dividing this Country from *Theſſaly*, and therefore common unto both: as alſo the *Acroceraunian* Hills, ſo called, becauſe they are ſo much ſubject unto Thunder and Lightning; eminent for their height, and much feared by Mariners, who, when they ſee a little Cloud riſing on the top hereof, are ſure of a Tempeſt. Finally, here are the famous Rivers *Acheron* and *Cocytus*, which, for their black waters and unſavoury taſte, are ſaid to be the Rivers of Hell: from which laſt the Sacrifices and Solemnities made in honour of *Proſerpine*, whom *Pluto* raviſhed and brought hither, had the name of *Cocytia*. Whence, by a Metonymie, theſe Rivers are taken ſometime for Hell it ſelf; as in that of the Poet,

Flectere ſi nequeo Superos, Acheronta *movebo*.
Since thoſe in Heaven I cannot move,
The Powers of Hell I mean to prove.

The Soil hereof is very barren, and in many places full of Foreſts, and thin of people; but towards the Sea reaſonably fruitful: plentiful of Oxen, Dogs, and Sheep, of more than ordinary bigneſs, and yielding the beſt breed of Horſes. The people uſe a diſtinct Language from the *Græcians*, though of the *Greek* Tongue not utterly ignorant: and, by reaſon of the Barrenneſs of their own Country, become great Wanderers, eſpecially in Summer-time, when they travel into *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Aſia minor*, hiring themſelves to work in Harveſt under the *Turks*, as alſo to threſh, winnow, and make clean their Corn; and in the Winter-time return to their Wives and Children. They are able of body, ſwift of foot, apt to undergo any Toil and Labour; having withall good Courages and high Projections: which makes ſuch of them as delight not in works of Drudgery to look for action in the Wars, and otherwiſe to rob and ſpoil the neighbouring Mountains of *Albania*. Till their Subjection to the *Turks*, they were much uſed both by the Kings of *Hungary* and the State of *Venice* in their ſeveral Wars, ſerving on Horſe or Foot, as occaſion was: as Mercenary as the *Switzers* in the Weſtern parts, but not ſo faithful to the party entertaining them.

Anciently it was divided into *Chaonia*, (which was the proper *Epirus*) lying on the Weſt, and *Acarnania*, bordering on *Ætolia*, from which it is parted by the River *Achelous*: the middle parts hereof being *Amphilochia*, *Theſprotia*, and *Almene*: all very populous in former times, and ſo continued till *Paulus Æmilius*, on the Conqueſt of *Macedon*, overthrew ſeventy of their Cities. Few of which being ſince re-edified, and the Country for a long time languiſhing under the *Turks*, here are not any very fair Towns or well-peopled Cities at the preſent to be ſpoken of; and therefore we muſt look on ſuch as flouriſhed in the times fore-going. The principal whereof were, 1. *Dodona*, one of the Cities of

of *Chaonia*, memorable for the Temple and Oracle of *Jupiter*, hence called *Dodonæus*; situate in a fair Grove, the Trees whereof are said to be Vocal, and to give the Oracle: though others say it was delivered first by a pair of Pigeons, whereof the one afterwards fled to *Delphos*, the other to the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon* in *Ægypt*. It was the ancientest Oracle of all *Greece*: and so perhaps was the Town the ancientest Town also. Said to be first built by *Dodon*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Europa*: more probably so called from *Dodanim*, the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who first inhabited this Region; the whole Countrey (*Greece* I mean) being called *Javan* from the Father, (by which name commonly it occurreth in the *Hebrew* Text) this Town *Dodona* from the Son. 2. *Cassiope*, a Port-Town, with a fair Promontory of the same name adjoyning to it. 3. *Onchesmus*, by *Strabo* called *Onchimus*, and by *Pliny Echinus*, a Port-Town also, now called *Santi Quaranta*. 4. *Panormus*. on the Sea-side also, retaining still the old name, and but little else. 5. *Antigonia*, more within the Land, founded or repaire'd by *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*; now called *Argiro Castro*, as *Niger* thinketh. 6. *Phœnice*, once the cheif Town hereof; which being sacked by the *Illyrians*, under *Teuta* their Queen, gave the *Romans* an occasion of Quarrel with them, upon Complaint made to them by the *Epirots*. 7. *Pelodes*, a Port-Town, the Principal in that part which was called *Thesprotia*; as 8. *Tarona*, on the River *Thyamis*, and 9. *Sybota*, an ancient Haven-Town, (now called *Syvita*) was in that part hereof which was called *Almene*. 10. *Argos*, the cheif City of the *Amphilochians*. This part hereof was first named *Molossia*, from *Molossus* the Son of *Pyrrhus* and *Andromache*, remarkable for the best breed of Mastives, hence called *Molossi*: and afterward *Chaonia*, by *Helenus* the Son of *Priamus*, whom *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles* settled in this Country; who having unfortunately slain his Brother *Chaon*, caused it in memory of him to be called *Chaonia*; Chaoniamque *omnem* Troiano à Chaone *dixit* as it is in *Virgil*. Of these *Molossians*, *Pluto*, the third Son of *Saturn*, was sometimes King, called, from the flat and hollow situation of this Countrey, consisting much of deep Valleys, the King of Hell.

Towns of especiall note in *Acarnania* were, 1. *Anactorium*, on the Bay of *Ambracia*, now called *Vanizza*. 2. *Ambracia*, the Regal Seat or Court of *Pyrrhus*, giving name unto a fair and capacious Bay, now called *Golfo di Larta*, from *Larta* an adjoyning Town, situate in or near the place where *Ambracia* stood. It was once subject unto *Periander*, King or Tyrant of *Corinth*, who being slain by a Woman named *Leonna*, whom he kept as his Concubine, occasioned the Inhabitants from that time forwards, in memory of their Deliverance, to worship a Lion. Afterwards being taken from the Children of *Pyrrhus* by the *Macedonians*, and from them wone by the *Ætolians* in the time of their greatness, it was besieged by *Fulvius*, a *Roman* Consul spoken of before. Who, seeing that he could not force it, was willing, at the Mediation of the *Athenians*, *Rhodians*, and other Friends of both parties, to conclude a Peace; but so that he despoiled this City at his going hence of much excellent Imagery, carrying away with him unto *Rome* the Pictures of the nine *Muses* most admirably well done by the hand of *Zeuxis*, the rarest Painter of his times. 3. *Buthrotum*, a *Roman* Colony, by *Pliny* called *Colonia* simply; now a small Village called *Butrinto*. 4. *Leucas*, situate on the point of a Promontory of the same name also, anciently memorabe for the Temple of *Apollo*. By leaping into the Sea from the top of this Promontory, such as unfortunately loved were cured of that malady: the first triall of that kind being made by *Sappho* that famous Poetresse. At that time it was joyned unto the Land; but since, by the violence of the Sea or the hand of man, it is made into an Iland; according unto that of *Ovid*,

Leucada *continuam veteres habuêre Coloni*,
Nunc Freta circumeunt———

That is to say,

Leucas, in former times joyn'd to the Land,
Environ'd round with Waters now doth stand.

It was called *Leucas*, from the Whiteness of the Rock or Promontory, having before the Seperation or disjunction of it been called *Neritos*; the cheif Town of it varying with the name of the Isle and Promontory. Both Town and Iland at this time is called S. *Maure*, taken by *Bajazet* the second from the State of *Venice*, and by him given unto the *Jews*, (who do still inhabit it) at their expulsion out of *Spain*. 5. *Nicopolis*, a Colony of the *Romans*, of great both Wealth and Beauty in the time of S. *Paul*, who from hence dated his Epistle to *Titus*: called in that Postscript *Nicopolis* of *Macedonia*, because *Epirus* at that time was part of the Province of *Macedon*, though afterwards a distinct Province of it self. It was first built by *Augustus Cæsar* on a Promontory opposit unto *Actium*, on the other side of the Bay: that being the place where his Land-Souldiers were incamped before the Naval Battel betwixt him and *Mark Antony*; and was thus called either in memory of his Victory, or from a poor man and his Ass, whom he met there the day before. For asking the man his name, he told him that his name was *Eutyches*, *i. e.* Fortunate; and that the name of his Ass was *Nicon*, *i. e.* Conquerour: which happy *Omen* made his Souldiers couragious and hopeful of Victory: and he in memory thereof erected here two brazen Images, the one of the Ass, the other of his Master. It is now a small Village called *Prevesa*. 6. *Actium*, on the Sea-shore, nigh unto which *Augustus* and *Antony* fought for the Empire of the World. The Navy of the latter consisted of 500 Galleys; the former had 250 onely, but those crowned with Victory: *Antonius* shamefully deserting his Souldiers to follow after *Cleopatra*, who on the very first Charge fled away for *Ægypt*. The Town being now ruined, the Promontory upon which it stood is called *Capo di Figalo*.

The Countrey was first peopled by *Dodanim* the Son of *Javan*, or at least by some of his Posterity coming hither from the Isle of *Rhodes*; whose Memory was preserved a long time in the Town of *Dodona*, by him, or from him, so denominated. Afterwards, being parted into several Nations, and those Nations united in the common name of *Epirots*, it became a great and powerfull Kingdom; governed by a Race of Kings descending from *Pyrrhus* the Son of *Achilles*, and continuing till the time of *Pyrrhus Æacides*. A man of such Courage and Magnanimity, that he did not onely recover his own Kingdom, of which *Cassander* had deprived his Father; but got the Kingdom of *Macedon* from *Cassander*'s Children: outed of which, he tried his Fortune with the *Romans Anno Mundi* 3683, *V. C.* 471. After his death this Kingdom was shrewdly shaken by the *Macedonians*, and shortly after subdued by *Paulus Æmilius*, who, as we now said, destroyed 70 Cities hereof in one day. For desirous to satisfie his Souldiers after his Victory in *Macedon*, he sent unto the *Epirots* for ten of the principle men of every City. These he commanded to deliver up all the Gold and Silver which they had; and to that end, as he gave out, he sent certain Companies of Souldiers along with them; unto whom he gave secret Instructions, that on a day by him appointed they should fall to sack every one the Town whereunto they were sent. A barbarous and bloudy Decree, 70 Cities confederate with the *Romans* ruined in one day, and no fewer then 150000 *Epirots* made and sold

sold for Slaves. But the chief motive which induced him to so great a Cruelty was, by dispeopling this Countrey, lying with a long and fair Sea-coast overagainst *Italy*, to give the *Romans* oppertunity to land their Armies without any Resistance for the farther Progress of their Forces into *Macedon*, *Thrace*, *Mœsia*, or where else they pleased. Which ungodly Policy was afterwards imitated by *William* the Couquerour, who laid waste all that part of *Hampshire* since called *New Forest*, and therein 36 Parish-Churches, that he might have a safe Landing-place for his *Norman* Forces, if the *English* should at any time endeavour to make head against him. Being made subject to the *Romans*, it was a while part of the Province of *Macedonia*; but afterwards, when *Macedonia* was made a Diocese, it became a distinct Province of it self, called by the name of *Old Epirus*, to difference it from the Province of *New Epirus*, which lay Eastward of it. At the Division of the Empire it belonged to the *Constantinopolitans*, and so continued till the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians: at what time *Theodorus Angelus*, a Prince of the Imperial Family, seised on *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, as before is said, and sped so well in his Designs, that he took the strong City of *Durazzo* from the State of *Venice*, (to whom it fell in the division of that Spoil) and cunningly (if not treacherously) intercepted *Peter* the third Emperour of the *Latins* whom, as some say, he caused to be Murthered at a Banquet. After his death, his whole Estate being divided into two parts, *Ætolia* with that part hereof which is called *Chaonia* continued in his House till the time of *Charles* Prince of *Ætolia* and *Epirus*, spoken of before, after whose death it was subdued by *Amurath* the Second, as before was said. The residue hereof, together with that part of *Macedon* which is called *Albania*, fell to the Family of the *Castriots*: the last of which, named *John*, (the Father of *Scanderbeg*) seeing himself unable to resist that Tyrant, who had already swallowed up all his neighbour-Princes, submitted his Estate unto him, and gave unto him all his Sons for Hostages. No sooner was the old Prince dead, but *Amurath* seised on his Estate, murthered his three eldest Sons, and caused *George*, the youngest, to be train'd up in the Law of *Mahomet*: who afterwards, escaping out of his Power, and recovering all his Father's Countries, assumed also the Style or Title of Prince of *Epirus*. After whose death his Children, not being able to make good their Game, lost it to *Mahomet* the Great; as shall be shewn more fully in the Story and Discription of *Albania*, which is next to follow.

4. *ALBANIA.*

ALBANIA is bounded on the East with *Macedonia*, on the West with the *Adriatick*, on the North with *Sclavonia*, on the South with *Epirus*. The Country is mountainous and barren; watered with few Rivers, and those of no great note amongst the Ancients; as 1. *Laus*, 2. *Apsus*, 3. *Panyasus*, 4. *Celydnus*: all of them falling into the *Adriatick*.

It took this name from the *Albani*, once the Inhabitants of this Tract from whom the cheif City hereof was called *Albanopolis*. Other Towns of most consideration are, 1. *Sfetigrade*, or *Vestigard*, (called by some the *Holy City*) situate in the Borders of *Epirus*, on the top of an Hill, where it is fenced about like an Eagle's Nest: one of the last Towns in all this Conntrey which was taken by *Scanderbeg* at his recovery of his Birthright and Estate herein; but being once taken by him, held good courageously against the *Turk*, the Souldiers neither fainting in their Oppositions, nor corrupted by Money, till at the last subdued by a Superstition. There was in the Town one onely Well, into which a treacherous Christian cast a dead Dog; at the sight of which, being the next day drawn up, the Souldiers gave up the Town; being so unseasonably superstitious, that no persuasion, nor the example of the Captain or the Burgo-masters, could make them drink those (as they thought) defiled waters. 3. *Durazzo*, a Town of great Strength, first called *Epidamnum*, and afterwards *Dyrrhachium*. Under the Walls of which Town was the first bickering between the Souldiers of *Cæsar* and *Pompey*, not onely to the present Loss, but also the utter Discomfiture of *Cæsar*, as he himself confessed, if the Enemie's Captain had known how to have overcome. I must not omit the Valour of *Scæva* at this Siege, who alone so long resisted *Pompey*'s Army, that he had 220 Darts sticking in his Shield, and lost one of his Eys; and yet gave not over till *Cæsar* came to his Rescue.

Parque novum Fortuna videt concurrere, Bellum
Atque Virum----densamque ferens in Pectore Sylvam.
Fortune beholds an unaccustom'd Sight,
An Army and a man together fight,
Whose Breast a Wood of Arrows cover'd quite.

In the Division of the Eastern Empire amongst the *Latines* it fell into the power of *Venice*; taken at last after a long and tedious Siege, by *Amurath* the second, *Anno* 1474. 4. *Dibra*, in the Hill-countries, near *Epirus*; the first Town which submitted to the valient *Scanderbeg* at his revolting from the *Turks*; supposed to be the *Deborus* of *Ptolemy*. 5. *Croia*, conceived to be the *Epicaria* of *Ptolemy*, the chief Town of all this Countrey seated amongst inaccessible Mountains, and made impregnable by Art: not got by *Scanderbeg*, but by a Wile; who, having got into his power, the Secretary of the principal *Bassa*, forced him to write Letters in his Master's name unto the Governour hereof to deliver it unto him; which was done accordingly. Afterwards it was in vain besieged by *Amurath* the second, who under the Walls hereof gave up his wretched Soul to the Devil; and thrice besieged by *Mahomet* his Son and Successor, before he could again possess it: but taken at the last after *Scanderbeg*'s death, as if the *Genius* or Tuteler Deity of the place had departed with him. 6. *Petrella*, a Town of great Strength, seated on the top of an Hill (as almost all the Towns of *Albania* are) about 25 miles from *Croia*; delivered unto *Scanderbeg* at his first sitting down before it: as also was 7. *Petra Alba*, three miles from *Petrella*, near the Borders of *Macedon*, and situate like the other on the top of a Mountain, the River *Emathus* running under the bottom of it. 8. *Stellusa*, fifty miles from *Croia*, built on the top of an high Hill in the middle of a pleasant and fruitfull Valley, with great and spacious Plains about it. 9. *Dagna* or *Dayna*, a place of great importance in the Hill-Countrey towards *Sclavonia*; for the possession whereof rose a War betwixt *Scanderbeg* and the State of *Venice*: but the *Venetians*, being worsted at the Battel of *Drino*, relinquished their Pretentions to it. 10. *Aulon*, a Port-Town, now called *Valona*, situate over against *Hydruntum* or *Otranto* in *Italy*, distant from it about 60 miles. The Town is unwalled, but fortified with a very strong Castle. A Town unfortunately fit for the Invasion of *Italy*, and was accordingly made use by *Achmetes* the cheif *Bassa* under *Mahomet* the Great, who from hence passed his Army over into *Apulia*, took the Town of *Otranto*, and, had not the death of *Mahomet*, and the Combustions thereon following amongst the *Turks*, altered the Design, might have opened them a very fair way for the adding of *Rome* unto *Constantinople*. 11. *Apollonia*, a Town of great note in the time of the *Romans*; a Sea-Town, furnished with a commodious Haven, which they held as their Entrance into *Greece*; to that purpose serving them as commodiously, as *Calais* did the *English* in their Wars with *France*.

This

This Countrey anciently was a part of *Macedon* inhabited by the *Talautii*, *Æstræi* and *Albani*, from which last (but not till these latter times) it had the name of *Albania* but whether these *Albani* were a Colony of the *Albanians* of *Asia*, (though it be very probable) I determine not. When it was made a Province of the Empire it contained all *Prævalitana* and some part of *Macedonia Salutaris*; being under the Diocese of *Dacia* in the time of *Justinian*, but at first of *Macedon*. Dismembred from the main Body of it when the *Latines* had subdued *Constantinople*, it fell unto the noble Family of the *Castriots*; who, though they took unto themselves the Title of Kings or Princes of *Epirus*, (most of which they held) as the Countrey of more Note and Eminence, yet was *Albania* the greatest Strength, and *Croia* the cheif City thereof, the Seat of their Residence: they being called in that respect by some Writers the Kings of *Albania*. *John Castriot*, the Father of *Scanderbeg*, seeing himself unable to resist the *Turks*, became their Homager, and delivered four Sons for Hostages; whom *Amurath* the second in their Father's life time caused to be circumcised, and turn *Mahometans*: and after his decease murthered the three eldest, and seized upon *Croia* the cheif City with the rest of the Countrey. But *George*, the youngest of those Sons, being reserved for better Fortunes, was carefully brought up by *Amurath* (who somewhat passionately affected him) in the Stratagems of War, though some of his Courtiers then told him that he nourished a Serpent in his Bosom, which would one day sting him. *Amurath*, to make triall of his Disposition, offered him on a time the Crown of *Albania*: to which he prudently replied, that he preferred the honour of his Service before all the Kingdoms of the World; and that he held his hand fitter for a Sword, then his Head for a Crown. Satisfied with which Answer the Tyrant preferred him to the place of a *Sanzack* or Provincial Governour, and gave him some office of Command in all those Armies which he set out against the Christians, Escaping out of the Battel wherein *Caramben*, the great *Bassa*, was overthrown and taken Prisoner by *Huniades*, he got the Town of *Croia* by a piece of wit, as before was said; aud in a very short time after made himself Master of *Petrella*, *Petra*, *Alba*, *Stellusa*, and all the rest of the Countrey, by the reputation and terrour of his first Successe. Having recovered his Inheritance out of the hands of the *Turks*, he reconciled himself to the Church of *Christ*, styling himself the *Souldier of CHRIST JESUS* from that time forwards. Invaded by a vast Army of *Turks*, he overcometh *Aly Bassa*, and kills 20000 of his men. With no more then 20 Horse and 50 foot he assaulteth *Mustapha* in his Camp; in which 5000 *Turks* were slain, and 300 taken. With whom encountring not long after in the open Field, he slew 10000 of his men, took many prisoners, and *Mustapha* himself amongst the rest, whom he ransomed for 25000 Ducats. Falling upon the Host of *Amurath*, then besieging *Croia*, he killed *Feris Bassa* hand to hand in a single Combat: and in the time of *Mahomet*, who succeeded *Amurath*, vanquished *Isaac* the great *Bassa*, routed his whole Army, had the Spoil of his Camp, took 20 of his faireſt Ensignes, and slew 30000 of his Souldiers. Not to instance in the rest of his noble Actions it is reported that in the course of his War against the *Turks* he killed no fewer then 3000 of them with his own hands; using a *Turkish* Scimiter in all his Fights, of great weight and bigness. Which when *Mahomet* on a Peace between them had desired to see, and afterwards returned again with this Censure of it, that he *saw nothing in it more then ordinary*: the gallent Prince sent back this Answer, that the *Virtue of the Weapon depended on the Strength of his Arme, which he could not send him, for that he did reserve it for the death of his Enemies*. Finally, having held his Cards against *Amurath* and *Mahomet*, two most fortunate Gamsters, for the space of 24 years, he set up his Rest at last a Winner; dying in Peace at *Lissa*, then belonging to the State of *Venice*, *Jan.* 17. *An.* 1466, and was there honourably interred. At the taking of which Town by the *Turks* about nine years after, his Body was digged up by them, not in spight, but honour; that man accounting himself happy who could get any of his Bones to preserve as a Relick, supposing that as long as he had it about him he should be invincible. But with him died the Liberty of his Countrey also, not long after subdued by the *Turks*, and made a Province of that Empire, as it still continueth; the name of *Albania* being by them extended over all *Epirus*, and so much of *Dalmatia* also as is under their power.

The Armes of this Kingdome (or rather of the Kings thereof) were *Gules*, an Eagle *Sable*.

5. *MACEDONIA.*

MACEDONIA is bounded on the East with the *Ægean* Sea, on the West with *Albania*, on the North with *Mœsia Superior* and a part of *Thrace*, and on the South with *Epirus* and *Achaia*.

It was first called *Æmonia*, from Mount *Hæmus*, which shutteth up that side hereof which is towards *Mœsia*; after *Æmathia*, or *Emathia*, from a King of it called *Æmathus*; *Macedonia*, from *Macedo*, the Son of *Deucalion*, and the Father of *Caranus*, the first King of the Line of *Alexander*; and finally *Kittim*, or the Land of *Kethiim*, whereof see 1. *Macchab.* 1. 1. and 8. 5. from *Kittim* the Son of *Javan*, and Grandchild of *Japhet*, who was planted here. Anciently it was of more large extent then it is at the present, extending from the *Ægean* Sea unto the *Adriatick*, till the taking of *Albania* out of it, which hath streightned it upon that side, but the rest is as formerly.

The Country taking it together, is very fruitfull and pleasent though on the outward parts thereof begirt with rough Mountains and thick Forests: in former times much celebrated for its Mines of Gold and Silver, which are long since exhausted. It contained formerly the Provinces of *Æmathia*, *Pieria*, *Pelasgia*, *Istiæotis*, *Phthiotis*, *Thessalie*, *Mygdonia*, *Amphaxitis*, *Paraxia*, *Edonis*, and many others of less note, inhabited by 152 several Nations: now principally divided (besides *Albania*) into, 1. *Thessalie*, 2. *Macedon* specially so called, and 3. *Migdonia*, which the *Turks* call *Jamboli*.

1. *THESSALIE* hath on the East the *Ægean* Sea, on the West *Albania*, on the North *Macedon* and *Mygdonia*, on the South *Achaia*. A sweet and delectable Country it is, the Pleasures and Delights whereof inclined the People to be very effeminate and dissolute in their course of life, made them in love with Luxury and Ease, and much like the *Persians* in Behaviour, whose Entrance into *Greece* they did therefore favour. Yet notwithstanding this Debauchedness, they were esteemed the best Horsemen of all the *Græcians*: by their excellent managing of which creature, (as if they had been one piece with it, and either lent the Horse their Minds, or borrowed his Body) they gave occasion unto the Fiction of the *Centaurs*, half Men, half Beasts.

It is now called *Comenolitari*, and of old was very famous for many things, especially 1. for the Hill *Olympus* of so great height, that it seemeth to transcend the Clouds and is therefore frequently by the Poets used for Heaven it self. 2. For the Hill *Othrys*, inhabited by the *Lapithæ*, over whom *Piritbous*, was King. 3. for the Mountains of *Pelion* and *Ossa*, the Dwelling-places of the *Centaurs*, who, intending to ravish *Hippodamia*, the new Bride of *Piritbous*, on her Wedding-day, were slain by *Hercules*

and the *Lapithæ*. 4, For the delectable Valley of *Tempe* ſituate betwixt *Oſſa* and *Olympus*, extending in length ſix miles, and five in breadth; ſo beautified with Nature's Gifts, that it was ſuppoſed to be the Garden of the *Muſes*. 5. and laſtly, For the *Dolopes* and *Myrmidones*, (who did here inhabit) over whom *Achilles* had Command at the Siege of *Troy*: theſe laſt, by reaſon that they were a laborious and thrifty People, being fabled by the Poets to have firſt been Emmets, transformed into men at the Prayer of *Æacus*, when he wanted Souldiers.

-------Mores quos ante tenebant
Nunc quoque habent; parcum genus eſt, patiensq; laborum
Quæſitique tenax, & quod quæſita reſervet.
The cuſtome they of Emmets ſtill retain,
A ſparing Folk, and unto Labour ſet,
Strangely addicted to all kind of Gain,
And wary Keepers of what-e're they get.

Places of moſt obſervation in it are, 1. *Tricca*, the Epiſcopal See of *Heliodorus*, the Author of that ingenious Piece called the *Æthiopick Hiſtory*; which he ſo prized, that he choſe rather to looſe his Biſhoprick then conſent to the burning of his Book, which a Provincial Synod had adjudged to the Fire. A Piece indeed of rare Contexture and neat Contrivances, without any touch of looſe or laſcivious Language: honeſt and chaſt Affection being the Subject of it, not ſuch as old or modern Poets ſhew us in their Comedies or other Poems. For here we have no Inceſtuous mixture of Fathers and Daughters, no Pandariſm of old Nurſes, no unſeemly Action ſpecified where heat of Blood and Opportunity do meet; nor indeed any one paſſage unworthy of the chaſteſt Ear. 2. *Lamia*, where the *Athenians*, after the death of *Alexander*, hoping to recover their Freedoms, beſieged *Antipater*: which was the laſt honorable Enterpriſe undertaken by that great and renowned City, known in old Hiſtories by the name of *Bellum Lamiacum*. 3. *Lariſſa*, ſituate on the South of *Demetrias*, but on the ſame Bay; memorable for the Birth of *Achilles*, from hence called frequently in the Poets *Lariſſæus Achilles*, which Birth of his is aſcribed by others to the Town of *Phthia*, (from whence the Region called *Phthiotis* takes the nomination) frequently mentioned in the Poets upon that account: and poſſibly, being neighbouring Cities, the one might be the place of his Birth, and the other of his Habitation. 4. *Demetrias*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus*, (now *Golfo dell' Armiro*) of very great Strength by Art and Nature. Which being held by the *Macedonians*, together with *Chalcis* in the Iſle of *Eubœa*, and the City of *Corinth*, kept all *Greece* in aw, and were therefore commonly called the *Fetters of Greece*; the *Græcians* never thinking themſelves at liberty till thoſe Towns were diſmantled by the *Romans*. 5. *Pharſalus*, nigh to which was fought the great Battel betwixt *Cæſar* and *Pompey* for the Sovereignty of the *Roman* Empire. A Battel more famous then bloudy, 6000 only of 300000 which were in the Field on both ſides, being therein ſlain. A Battel before which the *Pompeians* were in ſuch a miſerable Security, that ſome of them contended for the cheif Prieſthood, which was *Cæſar*'s Office; others diſpoſed of the Conſulſhip and Preferments in the City of *Rome*: *Pompey* himſelf being ſo wretchleſſe, that he neither conſidered into what place it were beſt to flie if he loſt the day, or by what means he might provide for his own Safety, and end the War: as if the War had been made againſt ſome ignoble Enemy, and not againſt that *Cæſar* who had taken 1000 Towns, conquered 300 Nations, took priſoners one million of men, and ſlain as many. 6. *Philippi*, ſo named from *Philip* the *Macedonian*, the firſt Founder of it; ſituate in the farther part of the ſame Plains of *Pharſalia*, and famous for as memorable a Battel as that before, and of no leſs conſequence: that namely betwixt *Auguſtus* and *M. Antonius* on the one ſide, againſt *Brutus* and *Caſſius* on the other; theſe latter being rather overcome by Chance then Valour. For either of them (thinking the other vanquiſhed) ſlew himſelf in the Field; being the two laſt that ever openly ſtood out for the common Liberty, and are therefore called by *Cremutius Cordus Ultimi Romanorum*, or the laſt of the true *Roman* Spirits. 7. *Gomphi*, a very ancient City bordering on *Epirus*. 8. *Pheræ*, in which City *Alexander* the Tyrent reigned, againſt whom that noble Captain *Pelopidas* the *Theban* fighting was ſlain in Battel: the Tyrant being not long after murthered by his Wive's Brother, and by that means all *Theſſalie* recovering Liberty. 9. *Pegaſa*, or *Pagaſa*, ſituate on the Bay called *Sinus Pelaſgicus* which from hence is ſometimes named *Pegaſicus*; in which the Ship called *Argo* was ſaid to be built, ſo famous for the renowned Voiage of the *Argonauts*. The Hill *Pelion* ſpoken of before is not far from hence. 10. *Pythion* or *Pitheum*, of great note (according to ſome) for the *Pythian* Games there celebrated in the honour of *Apollo*, who hereabouts killed the Serpent *Python*: the Conquerours in which Games were crowned at the firſt onely with an Oaken Garland, but afterwards with one of Lawrel. Of which thus the Poet.

Néve operis famam poſſet abolere Vetuſtas,
Inſtituit ſacros celebri certamine Ludos,
Pythia *de domiti Serpentis nomine dictas, &c.*
Thus made to ſpeak *Engliſh* by *G. Sandys*;
Then leſt the well-deſerved memory
Of ſuch an Act in future time ſhould die,
He inſtituted the ſo-famous Games
Of free Contention, which he *Pythia* names.
Who Ran, who Wreſtled beſt, or rak'd the ground
With ſwifteſt Wheels, the Oaken Garland crown'd.

Theſe Games, together with the *Olympick*, *Iſthmian* and *Nemæan*, ſpoken of before, made the four annual Meetings amongſt the *Græcians*, renowned for the univerſal Concourſe of the nobleſt ſpirits. 11. *Doliche*, which, together with *Pytheum*, and 12. *Azorum*, another City of this Tract, ſtanding near together, are called in *Livius* the Hiſtorian by the name of *Tripolis*. 13. *Hypata*, the Metropolis of *Theſſalie*, ſo called by *Heliodorus* in his *Æthiopick* Hiſtory before mentioned, who placeth it near the Bay called *Sinus Maliacus*, now *Golfo di Ziton* and not far from Mount *Oeta*, bordering on the Province of *Doris*: upon which Mountain *Hercules*, being tortured with a poiſoned Shirt ſent by his innocent Wife *Dejanira*, is ſaid to have burned himſelf; thence called *Hercules Oetæus*. Of all which Towns, *Lamia*, *Pagaſa* and *Demetrius*, are in the Region called *Phthiotis*; *Lariſſa*, *Doliche*, *Pytheum* and *Azorum*, in that called *Pelaſgia*; *Gomphi* and *Tricca* in *Iſtiæotis*; the reſt in *Theſſalie* properly and ſpecially ſo named.

This Countrey, at firſt called *Æmonia*, afterwards *Pelaſgia*, then *Pyrrhæa*, from *Pyrrha* the Wife of *Deucalion*, and finally *Theſſalia*, from *Theſſalus* one of the Companians of *Hercules*; by *Plinyis* called *Dryopis*, *Eſtiotis* by *Strabo*, *Pelaſgia* by *Diodorus*, and by *Homer Argos*; the name of ſome cheif City or particular Province being figuratively uſed for the whole. It was divided commonly into four parts, 1. *Theſſaliotis*, 2. *Iſtiæotis*, 3. *Pelaſgiotis*, and 4. *Phthiotis*, the name of *Theſſalie* or *Theſſaliotis* in the end prevailing, and accordingly diſtributed into ſeveral Governments, united finelly in the perſon of *Philip*, the Father of *Alexander*, who partly by Force, but ſpecially by Art and Practice, made himſelf Maſter of the whole. Continuing in a mixt condition betwixt free and ſubject under the *Macedonian* Kings of the 2. Race, it became ſubject with that Kingdom to the ſtate of *Rome*: firſt

reckoned

reckoned as a part of the Province of *Macedon*; after a Province of it self, when *Macedon* was made a Dioceſe, part of which it was. But from a Province of that Dioceſe, and a Member of the Eaſtern Empire, it was made a Kingdom; given with that Title to *Boniface* Marqueſſe of *Montferrat* in exchange for *Candia*, together with the City of *Theſſalonica*, and ſome part of *Peloponneſus*, at the Deviſion of that Empire amongſt the *Latines*. which Title he affected, in regard that *Reiner*, the Brother of *Boniface* his Grandfather, had formerly been created Prince of *Theſſalie* by the Emperour *Emanuel*, whoſe Daughter *Cyri-Maria* (or the Lady *Mary*) he had took to Wife In him as it began, ſo this Title ended; *Theſſalonica* falling to the State of *Venice*, *Theſſalie* reverting to the Empire when the *Greeks* recovered it: from whom it was ſubdued, and added to the *Turkiſh* Empire, in the Reign of *Amurath* the ſecond, *Anno* 1432.

2. *MACEDON* ſpecially ſo called is bounded on the Eaſt with *Migdonia*, on the Weſt with *Albania*, on the North with Mount *Hæmus*, on the South with *Theſſalie*. The Countrey is for the moſt part fruitfull, as before was ſaid, but not ſo ſurfeiting with Delights as to make the people wanton or effeminate in their courſe of life; they being naturally good Souldiers, exact obſervers of military Diſcipline, and inured to Hardneſs, which their many ſignall Victories do moſt clearly evidence both in *Greece* and *Aſia*.

The *Greeks* in the pride of their own wits reckoned them amongſt the barbarous Nations; and yet, by a ſtrange kind of contradiction, aſcribe unto their Countrey the Seats of the *Muſes*. For in this Country was Mount *Pimpla*, with a Fountain of the ſame name at the Foot thereof, both conſecrated to the *Muſes*, from hence called *Pimpleides*. Here alſo was the Hill *Libethrus*, and the Province of *Pieria*; from whence the *Muſes* had the names of *Libethrides* and *Pierides*; by this laſt called more frequently then by any other name what-ever, eſpecially by the *Greeks* themſelves. But the Birth of *Ariſtotle* in this Country doth more convince the *Græcians* of this fooliſh Arrogance then all the *Muſes* in the world. A man ſo admirable in the general courſe of Learning, ſo univerſally comprehenſive of all Arts and Sciences, that the beſt-witted *Græcian* might have been his Scholar, and thought it a great Happineſs, as King *Philip* did, that they had any Children to be tutoured by him.

The principal Rivers hereof (beſides *Erigon* and *Aliacmon*, ſpoken of before) are, 1. *Axius*, at preſent called *Vardari*, riſing out of the Hill *Scardus*, a Branch of Mount *Hæmus*, and paſſing through the whole extent of this Country into *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Theſſalonica*, as it is now named: the faireſt River of theſe parts, and of ſweeteſt Water; but ſuch as maketh all the Cattel black which drink of it. 2. *Chabrius* 3. *Echedorus*; both riſing out of the mid-land Countries, and both falling into the ſame Bay alſo. Beſides which there are three other fair and capacious Bays aſcribed to *Macedon*, though two of them belonging properly to *Mygdonia*; that is to ſay, *Singiticus*, now *Golfo di monte ſanto*, and *Toronaicus*, now the Gulf or Bay of *Aiomana*, and the third, common unto *Thrace* alſo, which is *Sinus Strymonicus*, now the Bay of *Conteſſa*.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, were for the *Almopi*, 1. *Horma*, called afterwards *Scleucia*; 2. *Europus*, of which name there were four in *Macedon*; 3. *Apſalus*, Of *Sintica*, 4. *Triſtolus*, 5. *Paræcopolis*, 6. *Gariſcus*, 7. *Heraclea*, for diſtinction called *Heraclea Sintica*; there being many others of that name in *Greece*. In *Edonis*, bordering toward *Thrace*, 8. *Scotuſa*, 9. *Eerga*, 10. *Amphipolis*, on the River *Strymon*, with which it is encompaſſed, whence it had the name; ſeated ſo cloſe on the edge of *Thrace*, that it is queſtionable to which of them it belongs of right; once garriſoned by the *Athenians*, and from them taken by *Philip* the *Macedonian* in the firſt riſe of his Fortunes. 11. *Crenides*, bordering on *Thrace* alſo, and by ſome Writers laid unto it, but I think erroneouſly: repaired and beautified by *Philip* before mentioned, by whom it was called *Philippi*; and ſituate in a Countrey ſo rich in Mines of Gold, that the ſaid *Philip* drew thence yearly 1000 Talents, which make 600000 *French* Crowns, or 140000 *l.* of our *Engliſh* mony. Afterwards made a *Roman* Colony, and accounted the chief City of *Macedonia*, as appeareth *Acts* 16. 12. to the People of which S. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. Next in *Æmethia* we have 12. *Tyriſſa* in the Mid-lands, bordering upon *Theſſalie*; now called *Ceretſi*. 13. *Ædeſſa*, called afterwards *Ægæa*, and now *Vodena*; the firſt Town of all this Country taken by *Caranaus*, the Founder of the firſt Race of the Kings of *Macedon*. 14. *Beræa*, on *Sinus Thermaicus*, honoured with the preaching of *Paul* and *Silas*; the Citizens whereof are by S. *Luke* commended for their readineſs in receiving the Goſpel. 15. *Pella*, on the ſame Bay alſo; the Birth-place of *Alexander* the Great, from hence called *Juvenis Pellæus*. 16. *Pydna*, upon the ſame Bay, at the Influx of the River *Aliacmon*; in which *Caſſander* beſieged and took *Olympias* the Mother, *Roxane* the Wife, and *Alexander* the Heir apparent of *Alexander*, all whom he barbarouſly murthered. This Cruelty he committed, partly to revenge himſelf of *Alexander*, who had once knocked his Head and the Wall together; and partly to cry quit with *Olympias*, who had before as cruelly murthered *Aridæus* the baſe Son of *Philip*, and *Eurydice* his Wife, with whom *Caſſander* was ſuppoſed to be over-familier. Memorable alſo is this Town for the great Battel fought near it betwixt *Perſeus* the laſt King of *Macedon* and *P. Æmilius* the Conſul, in which *Perſeus*, having ſhamefully deſerted his Army, loſt both the Battel and his Kingdom, with no leſs then 20000 of his foot, which were therein ſlain; the *Romans* having ſo cheap a Victory, that it coſt them not above an hundred or ſixſcore men. 17. *Dium*, not far from the Hill *Olympus*, and about a mile from the Sea, of which mile the River *Helicon*, becoming there a Lake, and called *Baphyrus*, taketh up one half. It is ſituate in the Borders towards *Theſſalie*; the way unto it out of *Tempe* being ſtreight and narrow, and almoſt impaſſable, by reaſon of the Spurs of the Mountains running overthwart it: which, had it been well defended by the *Macedonians*, would have kept their Country from the *Romans*, who that way attempted it. But *Perſeus*, hearing that the Enemy had got into *Tempe*, onely took care to get his Treaſure out of *Dium*, and ſo abandoned both the Paſſage and the Town together. 18. *Phylace*, more within the Land; as is 19. *Eribœa*. But theſe four laſt are in that part hereof which is called *Pieria*.

3. *MYGDONIA* hath on the Eaſt the *Ægæan* Sea, on the Weſt *Macedon* properly and ſpecially ſo called, on the North *Edonis* and *Sinus Strymonicus*, on the South *Sinus Thermaicus*, or the Gulf of *Theſſalonica*; ſo that it is almoſt a *Peninſula*, environed on three ſides with Water.

Here is in this Country the Hill *Athos*, ſtanding in a *Peninſula*, (the *Iſthmus* being once cut through by *Xerxes*, but ſince cloſed again) ſaid to be 70 miles in circuit, 3 days journey long, half a day's in breadth, reſembling the ſhape of a Man lying with his Face upwards: the higheſt point whereof, covered perpetually with Snow, is ſaid to caſt a Shadow as far as *Lemnos*. It is exceeding fruitfull both in Graſſe, Fruit, Oil, and Wine, and wondrous

plentifull in Hares, according to that of *Ovid*,

Quot Lepores in Atho, *quot Apes paſcuntur in* Hybla:
How many Hares on *Athos* feed,
What Swarms of Bees on *Hybla* breed.

It is inhabited onely by *Greek* Monks, whom they call *Caloires*, of the order of S. *Baſil*, to whom the Hill, commonly called the *Holy Mountain*, hath been long ſince dedicated: the place being ſo privileged by the Grand Seigniour, that neither *Turk* nor *Græcian* may inhabit in it, except ſuch *Græcians* onely as profeſs this Life. Of theſe there are about 6000, diſperſed in 42 Monaſteries, built after a military manner, for fear of Thieves and Pirates, wherewith they were much infeſted in times paſt: frequented with great Concourſe of People coming thither to behold and adore ſome Reliques, (for which they are of much eſteem;) the free Oblations of thoſe Pilgrims, and ſome Benevolence from the *Turks*, which do much reſpect them, being the cheif means of their Subſiſtence. The manner of their life is like that of the ancient Eremites: poorly clad, their Shirts of Woollen, which they both ſpin and weave themſelves; none of them idle at any time, doing ſtill ſomewhat for their Livelihood, and the advancement of the Houſe of which they are, as dreſſing Vines, felling Timber, yea and building Ships. Few of them give themſelves to Study, and ſome of them are of ſo groſs an Ignorance, that they can neither write nor reade. They are bound by their Order to lodge and entertain ſuch Strangers as have occaſion to paſs that way, according to their rank and calling; and that of free coſt too, if it be deſired.

Towns of moſt note, according to the ſeveral Regions and parts hereof, are, for *Mygdonia* ſpecially and properly ſo called, 1. *Antigonia*, ſo called from *Antigonus* a King of *Macedon*, the firſt Founder of it, 2. *Xylopolis*. 3. *Terpillus*, 4. *Phyſco*, 5. *Aſſorus*; all mentioned by *Ptolemy*, but not elſe obſervable. 6 *Apollonia*, for diſtinction ſake called *Apollonia Mygdoniæ*, to difference it from *Apollonia* in *Albania*, then a part of *Macedon*: famous for the Studies of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, who here learn'd the *Greek* Tongue. For *Amphaxiis*, there was 7. *Arethuſa*; 8. *Stagira*, now called *Nicalidi*, renowned for the Birth of *Ariſtotle*, hence named *Stagirites*. 9. *Theſſalonica*, ſituate on the bottom of *Sinus Thermaicus*, now called the Bay of *Salonichi*, by the name of the Town. Anciently the Metropolis or Head-City of *Macedon*; the Seat of the *Prefectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, after the removall thereof from *Sirmium*; as alſo of the Primate of the *Greek* Church, who reſided here. To the people of this City did S. *Paul* write two of his Epiſtles. It continued in great power and credit till the Fall of the *Conſtantinopolitan* Empire into the hands of the *Latines*: at which time it was beſtowed firſt on *Boniface* Marques of *Montferrat*, the new King of *Theſſaly*; after whoſe death it fell unto the State of *Venice*, who held it till the year 1432, when it was forced by *Amurath* the 2 to become *Turkiſh*. Which notwithſtanding, it ſtill preſerves the reputation of a beautifull and wealthy City, inhabited by rich Merchants, who drive here a great Trade, eſpecially for the commodities of the *Indies*; for beauty, Riches and Magnificence, little inferiour unto *Naples*: and though the *Turks* and *Jews* make the greateſt number of Inhabitants, yet here are reckoned 30 Churches for the uſe of Chriſtians. As for the *Jews*, they ſwarm here in ſuch great abundance, that in this City and that of *Conſtantinople* onely there are reckoned 160000 of them; but generally hated and contemned by all ſorts of People. 10. *Siderocapſa*, of old called *Chryſites*, remarkable for its Mines of Gold and Silver; ſo beneficiall to the *Turk*, that he receives hence monthly 18000, and ſometimes 30000, Crowns *de claro*. Next for *Chalcidice*, there was 11. *Panormus*, a Port-Town. 12. *Sidonica*, in the *Peninſula* of Mount *Athos*. 13. *Athos*, or *Athoſa*, in the ſame *Peninſula*, with a Promontory of the ſame name, nigh which it ſtood. 14. *Acanthus*, now called *Eriſſo*, on the Bay of the Holy Mountain. And finally in *Paraxia* we have 15. *Ampelus*, 16. *Torona*, giving name to the Bay adjoyning, called anciently *Sinus Toronaicus*, now *Golfo di Aiomana*. 17. *Caſſandra*, on the Sea-ſide, ſo called from *Caſſander* King of *Macedon*, who repaired and beautified it; being before named *Potidæa*. 18. *Derris*, 19. *Merillus*, 20. *Pallene*, ſituate in the Cherſoneſe or Demy-Iſland called *Patalene*, and by ſome *Patalia*: formerly conſecrated to the *Muſes*, but before that infamous for the War which the Giants are fabled to have made here againſt the Gods; at what time it was called *Phlegra*, the Fields adjoyning *Campi Phlegræi*, in which this great Battel is ſuppoſed to be fought. The occaſion of the Fable was, (as both *Theagenes* and *Eudoxus* do expound the ſame) That the Inhabitants hereof in thoſe elder times, being men of a moſt impious and inſolent Life, got the name of Giants; whom when *Hercules* endeavoured to ſubdue and reduce to Reaſon, it happened that there fell a great Tempeſt of Thunder and Lightning, by which they were conſtrained to flie and ſubmit themſelves. Hence the Report that thoſe Giants made War againſt the Gods. Others have placed theſe *Phlegræan* Fields in *Theſſaly*, and perhaps more probably. Certain I am, that ſome place nearer to the Hills of *Pelion*, *Oſſa* and *Olympus*, doth agree beſt with it: if at leaſt *Ovid* were not out in his narration, who makes thoſe Mountains to be heaped upon one another, for their better reaching to the Skies, and fighting upon even ground, as the ſaying is. For thus that Poet;

Affectâſſe ferunt regnum cœleſte Gigantes,
Altâque congeſtos ſtruxiſſe ad Sidera Montes.
At pater omnipotens miſſo perfregit Olympum
Fulmine, & excuſſit ſubjectum Pelion Oſſæ.

Which may be Engliſh in theſe words;

The Giants once the throne of Heaven affected,
And Hills on Hills unto the Stars erected:
Till *Jove* with Thunder high *Olympus* brake,
And *Pelion* did from under *Oſſa* take.

But from thoſe Fables to proceed to more real Stories. This Countrey was firſt peopled by *Cittim*, the Son of *Javan*, paſſing over out of *Aſia minor*: in memory whereof here was not onely a Town called *Citium*, ſpoken of by *Livie l.* 42. but the whole Land of *Macedon* is in the Book of *Maccabees* called the Land of *Chettiim*, 1 *Maccab.* 1. 1. and the Inhabitants hereof called *Citims* in the 8. Chapter of the ſame Book, v. 5. Spreading in tract of time from one Sea to the other, from the *Ægean* to the *Adriatick*, ſome Colonies of them paſſed from hence to *Italy*, and firſt inhabited that Countrey, as hath there been ſaid. Such as continued in theſe parts, divided into ſeveral Tribes, as in all parts elſe, became in time to be united in the name of *Macedons*. A People not much taken notice of in the former times, living a poor and painfull life, Goatherds and Shephards for the moſt part, ſcarce able to defend their own Mountains from the next Invader, much leſs to dream of conquering either *Greece* or *Perſia*: And therefore *Alexander* told them, and not much unfitly, (though by him ſpoken in paſſion, and to their Diſgrace) that *his Father* Philip *had firſt made them Gentlemen*. For *Philip* having learned the Rudiments of War under *Epaminondas*, (being then an Hoſtage with the *Thebans*) and by that means becoming acquainted with the Temper and State of *Greece*, not onely freed his own Kingdom from the *Illyrians*, *Thracians*, and other barbarous Nations, who had gained upon it; but taking advantage of the Factions raiſed amongſt the *Græcians*, (which he knew how to feed and cheriſh for his own improvement)

ment) brought them at first wholy to relly upon him, and after to be subject to him. Insomuch that never any Monarchy had a swifter Growth, nor a more speedy Dissolution: there passing not full 40 years from the first of *Philip* to the last of *Alexander*; in which space it was both begun, perfected, and broken to pieces. For the Foundation being laid in Murther, Perjury and Treason, as at first it was, was never likely to be blessed with a long Continuance.

The Kings of *MACEDON*.

A. M.		*A. M.*	
3155	1. *Caranaus.* 28	3560	13. *Orestes.* 3.
3183	2. *Cœnus.* 12.	3563	14. *Archelaus* II. 4.
3195	3. *Tyrimas.* 38.	3567	15. *Pausanius* 1.
3233	4. *Perdiccas.* 51.	3568	16. *Amyntas* II. 6.
3284	5. *Argeus.* 38.	3574	17. *Argeus* II. 1.
3322	6. *Philippus.* 38.	3575	18. *Amyntas* III. 19.
3360	7. *Europus.* 26.	3594	19. *Alexander* II. 1.
3386	8. *Alcetas* 29.	3595	20. *Alorites* 4.
3415	9. *Amyntas.* 50.	3599	21. *Perdiccas* III. 6.
3465	10. *Alexander.* 43.	3605	22. *Philip* II. 24.
3508	11. *Perdiccas* II. 28.	3629	23. *Alexander* the Great.
3536	12. *Archelaus.* 24.		24. *Aridæus.* 6.

Of these 24 Kings onely 6 are famous: *viz.* 1. *Caranaus*, the first King, originally of *Argos*, of the Race of *Hercules*, and by an Oracle commanded to lead a Colony into this Countrey, and to follow the first Flock of Cattel he saw before him. Being here arrived in a tempestuous stormy day, he espied a Herd of Goats flying the fury of the Weather. These Goats he followed unto *Ædessa*, into which, by reason of the darkness of the Air, he entred undiscovered, wone the Town, and in short space became Lord of all the Countrey. On which occasion as the Goat afterwards became the Armes and Ensign of the Kings of *Macedon*, so by that Beast those Kings were figuratively designed in the Holy Scripture: of which see *Dan.* 8. 5, 21. 2. *Perdiccas*, the fourth King, who at *Ægæ* built a Burial-place for all his Successors, assuring his People, that as long as their Kings were there buried his Race should never fail; and so it hapned. For the Kingdom of *Macedon*, after the death of *Alexander* the Great, who was buried at *Babylon*, was translated to the Sons of *Demetrius*. 3. *Europus*, who in his infancy was carried in a Cradle against the *Illyrians* his Enemies, and returned victorious. This the *Macedons* did, either because they thought they could not be beaten, their King being present; or persuading themselves that there was none so void of Honour and Compassion as to abandon an Infant, no way able to save himself from Distruction but by the Valour and fidelity of his Servants. 4. *Alexander*, the Son of *Amyntas*, famous for a notable Exploit on the *Persian* Embassadours; who, being sent from *Megabyzus*, requested a view of the *Macedonian* Ladies. No sooner were they entered, but *petulantius eas* Persis *contrectantibus*, as *Justine* relateth the Story, they were called back by this *Alexander*, sending in their steads young Springals maidenly attired; who, upon the like Indignities offered slew these effeminate *Asians*. After which he behaved himself so discreetly, that the *Persian* Monarch gave him all *Greece* betweee *Hæmus* and *Olympus*. 5. *Philip*, Father to *Alexander*, who governed first as a Guardian to *Amyntas*, the Son of *Perdiccas* his elder Brother; but afterwards took unto himself both the Kingdom and Title of King; which he continued in the Deposition of his Nephew and natural Sovereign, the Murther of the rest of his Brethren, and the Destruction of all such as opposed his practice. But, being otherwise a man of approved Abilities, he cleared his own Countrey of the *Illyrians*, subdued *Achaia*, *Thrace*, and a great part of *Peloponnesus*, and was chosen General of the *Greeks* against the *Persians*. But as soon as he had made all things ready for this Expedition, he was slain by one *Pausanias*, a young Gentleman whom he had formerly abused in the heat of his unnatural Lusts. 6. *Alexander*, the Son of *Philip*, who recovered such parts of *Greece* as on the death of his Father had betooled themselves with a hope of Liberty. He subdued *Darius* the great King of *Persia*, *Taxiles* and *Porus* Kings of *India*; founded the Monarchy of the *Græcians*; and in the height of his Successes was poisoned at *Babylon* (as it is conceived) by *Cassander*, one of his great Captains: his Revenue at the time of his death amounting to 300000 Talents yearly. After his death his new-got Empire was much controverted in the point of Succession, he himself dying without lawfull Issue, and having at his death bequeathed it to him who was thought most worthy by his Army: and the Souldiers, according to their several affections and Relations, thought their own Leaders most deserving. At last the Title of King (and in effect nothing but the Title) was by consent of the Commanders cast on *Aridæus*, a Bastard of *Philip*, to whom *Perdiccas* was appointed to be protector, (for *Aridæus* was a little crazed in his Brain) and to be General of the Army: by whose design he was also married to *Eurydice*, Daughter to *Amyntas*, whom *Philip* had before dispossessed of that Kingdom. As for the Provinces, they were assigned unto the Government of the cheif Commanders; *viz.* *Ægypt* to *Ptolemy*, *Syria* to *Laomedon*, *Cilicia* to *Philotas*, *Media* to *Pytho*, *Cappadocia* to *Eumenes*, *Pamphylia*, *Lycia* and *Phrygia major* to *Antigonus*, *Caria* to *Cassander*, *Lydia* to *Menander*, *Pontus* and *Phrygia minor* to *Leonatus*, *Assyria* to *Seleucus*, *Persis* to *Peucestes*, *Thrace* to *Lysimachus*, and *Macedon* it self unto *Antipater*: the other parts of the *Persian* Empire being left to them unto whose hands they were committed in the time of *Alexander*. But this Division held not long: for *Perdiccas* being once slain by *Ptolemy*, and *Eumenes* made away by *Antigonus*, these two became quickly too great for the rest; *Ptolemy* adding *Syria* and *Cyprus* to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* bringing under his Command not onely all *Asia minor*, but *Assyria*, *Media*, and almost all the Eastern parts of the *Persian* Empire. *Antipater* in the mean time, succeeding in the Protectorship, banished *Olympias* the Mother of *Alexander* out of *Macedonia*, as bearing but a Step-dame's love unto *Aridæus*. But he being dead, she returned out of *Epirus* (the place of her Banishment) into *Macedonia*, where raising a strong Party amongst the people, she put *Aridæus* and his Wife *Eurydice* to death, proclaiming *Alexander*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Roxane*; both slain not long after by *Cassander* the Son of *Antipater*, who, to make sure work, murthered also with the like Cruelty *Hercules*, the Son of *Alexander* by *Barsine*, (another *Persian* Lady, as *Roxane* was) the last Survivor of that House. And so the Royal Family being rooted out, *Antigonus* took unto himself the Title of King: as did *Seleucus*, who had now recovered all the *Persian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*. The like did *Ptolemy* in *Ægypt*, and *Cassander* in *Macedon*.

The second Race of the *MACEDON* Kings.

A. M.	
3648	1. *Cassander*, Son of *Antipater*, supposed to have been the Poisoner of *Alexander*, rooted out the Bloud-royal of *Macedon*. His Reign was full of Troubles and Difficulties. 19.
3667	2. *Alexander* and *Antipater*, Sons to *Cassander*; but

but not well agreeing, called unto their Aid *Lysimachus* and *Demetrius*, by whom they were both in short time murthered. 4.

3671 3. *Demetrius*, Son to *Antigonus*, the powerfull King of *Asia*, after he had in one Battel against *Seleucus* lost both his Father and all his *Asian* Dominions, settled himself in *Macedon*: but being there outed by *Pyrrhus*, he fled to *Seleucus*, and with him died. 6.

3677 4. *Pyrrhus*, King of *Epirus*, was by the Souldiers, voluntarily forsaking *Demetrius*, made King of *Macedon*: but after 7 months the Souldiers revolted to *Lysimachus*, as being a *Macedonian* born. 1.

3678 5. *Lysimachus*, King of *Thrace*, being thus made King of *Macedon*, was in the end vanquished and slain by *Seleucus*, the last Survivor of *Alexander*'s Captains. 7.

3685 6. *Ceraunus*, or *Ptolemy Ceraunus*, Son to *Ptolemy* of *Ægypt*, having traitourously slain his Friend and Patron *Seleucus*, seased on *Macedon*: but lost it, together with his Life, unto the *Gauls*, who then plagued these Countryes. After whose death this Kingdom, being distracted amongst many Competitours, settled at last upon.

3687 7. *Antigonus Gonatas*, the Son of *Demetrius*, who, for his Valour shewn in expulsing the *Gauls*, was made King of *Macedon*. And though for a while he gave way to *Pyrrhus*, then returning from *Italy*, yet after the death of *Pyrrhus* he again recovered his Estate, but was outed once again by *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 36.

3723 8. *Demetrius* II. Son of *Antigonus*, recovered *Macedon* from the power of *Alexander* the Son of *Pyrrhus*. 10.

3733 9. *Antigonus* II. surnamed *Doson*, left by *Demetrius* as Protectour to his young Son *Philip*, usurped the Kingdom. He divers times vanquished and crushed the *Græcians* beginning then to cast off the Yoak of *Macedon*. 12.

3745 10. *Philip*, the Son of *Demetrius*. 42.

3787 11. *Perseus*, the Son of *Philip*, the last King of *Macedon*. The Subversion of which Estate was first begun in the time of his Father, who had not onely warred upon the *Ætolians* and others of the *Greeks* whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection, but sided with *Hannibal* against them. Upon which grounds they sent first *Titus Qu. Flaminius*, one of their Consuls, by whom *Philip* was vanquished at the Battel of *Cynoscephalos*, and his Kingdom made Tributary unto *Rome*. After which picking a Quarrel against *Perseus* also, managed with variable Success by *Licinius*, *Martius*, and others of their Commanders, they dispatched *Paulus Æmilius* with an Army into *Macedon*, to bring him to absolute Subjection. Who sped so well, that *Macedon* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and *Perseus* led captive unto *Rome* Anno 3789. In which Triumph, besides the Pomp of leading a captive King in Bonds, *Æmilius* caused the ready Money which he brought out of *Greece* to be carried in 750 Vessels, every Vessel containing three Talents; which made so infinite a Sum, that the *Roman* people were free for many years after from all Taxes and Impositions. *A. M.* 3789.

Macedon, thus made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, and afterwards divided into three parts or Provinces, that is to say, *Macedonia Prima*, *Macedonia Secunda* or *Salutaris*, and *Prævalitana*, in the new Modell of *Constantine* became a Dioceſe, the Dioceſe hereof containing the Provinces of *Crete*, *Achaia*, *Old* and *New Epirus*, *Macedonia Prima*, and the greatest part of *Salutaris*; the residue of *Salutaris* and *Prævalitana* (which makes up the Countrey now called *Albania*) being laid to the Dioceſe of *Dacia*. It continued part of the Eastern Empire till towards the last fatal dissolution of it; though many times harassed and depopulated by the *Sclavonians*, *Bulgarians*, *Rossès*, and others of the barbarous People, at their several Invasions of it. Finally, it was conquered by the *Turks*, first, under the Conduct of *Bajazet*, their fourth King, taking *Nicopolis*, a Town hereof bordering on *Thrace*, and lying North of *Sinus Strimonicus* now the Bay of *Contessa*; and after, under *Amurath* the second, their sixth King, making themselves masters of *Thessalonica*, the cheif City of it, and therewith of all the Countrey. By reason of which many Invasions and last Desolation by the *Turks*, there is scarce one of all those many Cities before mentioned now of any eminence, except *Thessalonica* onely; the rest being miserably destroyed. And for the Countrey it self, it is governed by a *Turkish Sanzach*, under the *Beglerbeg* of *Greece*; his annual Revenue being but 8000 Crowns, nor any thing else required of him then to maintain 100 Horse in ordinary pay for defence of his Province, and to finde 400 Horse on extraordinary occasions, as the Grand Seigniour shall command him.

6. THRACE.

THRACE hath on the East *Pontus Euxinus*, *Propontis*, and the *Hellespont*, on the West *Macedon*, on the North the Hill *Hæmus*, on the South the *Ægæan* Sea and part of *Macedon*. It is a very large and goodly Province, extending 20 days journey in length, and 7 days journey in breadth; and, in relation to the Heavens, reaching unto the 44. Degree of the Northern Latitude; so that the longest Day in Summer is about 15 hours, three quarters.

By several men, according to the times they lived in, it hath been called by divers names: by *Stephanus Aria*, by *Suidas Odrisia*, by *Lycophron Crestonia*, by some Writers *Scythia*, by *Josephus* the *Hebrew Thyras*. But generally it is called *Thrace*, or *Thracia*, and that, as some say, from *Thrax* the Son of *Mars*, as others, from *Thracia*, an Inchantress: more probably from the Ferity and barbarous condition of the first Inhabitants, the name in the Original *Greek* bearing that construction: most likely from *Thyras*, the Son of *Japhet*, who first planted here, in memory of whom it did retain the name of *Thyras* in the time of *Josephus*; besides many other foot-steps and remembrances of him in the names of many of their Towns, and some of their Princes; of which we have already spoken in our general Preface. Finally, by the *Turks* it is called *Romania*; either from the many *Roman* Colonies which were planted here, or because *Constantinople*, the cheif City of it, was anciently called *Nova Roma*: and by that name it is now called in most modern Writers.

The Countrey generally is neither of a rich Soil nor a pleasent Air: the Corn and other Fruits, by reason of the coldness of the Climate, leisurely ripening; the Vines yielding more Shade then Juice, and the Trees for the most part more Leaves then Fruit: yet in some parts there be many large and goodly Plains, where they reap good store of Corn, but of Pulse especially; and towards the Sea-side they have plenty of Wine, which *Pliny* much commended both for strength and goodness.

The People anciently were very bold and valient, and called by some Αὐτονόμοι, because every man was *a Law to himself*. So that it was truly said by *Herodotus*, that if they had either been all of one mind, or under one King, they

they had been invincible. Of Manners they were rude and savage, somwhat near to Brutishness; buying their Wives, and selling both their Sons and Daughters, as in open Market: in that since imitated by the *Turks*, who possess their Countrey. The Men were more couragious then comely, wearing Cloaths according to their Conditions, ragged and unseemly. The Married-woman were in love to their Husbands so constant, that they willingly sacrificed themselves at their Funerals. The Virgins were bestowed, not by their own Parents, but the common Fathers of their Cities. Such as brought neither Beauty nor Vertue for their Dowry, were put off according to their Money; most times sold as other Cattel in the Markets. In matters of Religion they worshipped *Mars*, *Bacchus*, *Diana*, *Mercury*, as did other Gentiles: swearing especially by the first, from whom they bragged themselves to have been descended. But their cheif national Deity was one *Zamolxes*, sometimes a Native of this Countrey, who, having been brought up under *Pythagoras*, and returning home, prescribed them good and wholesome Laws; assuring them that, if they did observe the same, they should go unto a place when they left this World in which they should enjoy all manner of Pleasure and Contentment. By this means having gotten some opinion of a Divinity amongst them, he absented himself, and after was worshipped as their God. Upon these Principles, when any one was born amongst them, his Parents and other Friends, sitting round about him, lamented bitterly his coming into the World, ripping up all the Miseries and Afflictions whereto he was to be exposed in this present Life, and so deplored his condition as absolutely miserable and unhappy. But, on the contrary, when any one chanced to die, they buried him with all Joy and Alacrity; highly rejoycing that by this means he was freed from the Crosses and Disasters of this wretched world. Which is expressed thus briefly (after his wonted manner) by my Author, *Lugentur Puerperia; natique deflentur; Funera contrà Festa sunt, & veluti Sacra cantu Insigne celebrantur.* A piece of such sound and orthodox Divinity, that I wonder how they hit upon it in those times of Darkness; and savouring very much of the Primitive Piety, by which the *Obits* of the Saints were kept as Festivals, no notice being taken of the day of their Births. According to that of the good old Writer, *Non Nativitatem, sed Mortem, Sanctorum Ecclesia pretiosam & festam judicat,*

Here lived the Tyrant *Polymnestor*, who villanously murthered *Polydorus*, a younger Son of *Priamus*: for which fact *Hecuba*, the young Prince's Mother, scratched him to death. Here also lived the Tyrant *Tereus*, of whom before in *Phocis*: and *Diomedes*, who, using to feed his Horses with Man's flesh, was slain by *Hercules*, and cast unto his Horses. And, finally, here reigned King *Coтys*, whom I mention not as a Tyrant, but propose as a pattern of rare Temper both in mastering and preventing Passion. For when a neighbour-Prince had sent him a Present of Glasses of the purest Metall, and no less accurate in the Workmanship or Fashion of them, (having dispatched the Messenger with all the due Complements of Majesty and Gratitude) he broak them all to pieces; lest if by mishap any of his Servants should do the like, he might be stirred to an intemperate Choler.

Chief Mountains in this Countrey, besides *Hemus* spoken of already, are, 1. *Rhodope*, the highest next Mount *Hemus* in those parts of the World, craggy and rough, and the Top thereof continually white with Snow: memorable for the Fate and Fable of *Orpheus*, who, in a melancholick humour, (having lost his Wife) betook himself to these Mountains, where with his Musick he affected both Woods and Beasts, who are said to have danced unto unto his Musick: from this place of his Abode called *Rhodopeius*, from his Countrey *Thracius*, *Non me carminibus vincet nec* Thracius Orpheus, &c. as the Shepherd boasteth in the Poet. The truth is, that he was a man of an heavenly Muse, and by his Dictates and good Counsel, laid down in Verse, first of all civillized this People, and weaned them by degrees from their Bestiality. Hence the occasion of the Fable. But for Mount *Rhodope* it self it is in the midst of this Countrey, thwarting it from Mount *Hemus* towards the West; which, with the Spurs and Branches of it, and the Plains adjoyning, lying betwixt the River *Nessus* on the West, and *Melas* or *Niger* on the East, made up that Province of the Empire called *Rhodope*, by the name of the Mountain. 2. *Pangæus*, rich in Mines of Silver. 3. *Melapus*, shooting towards the Sea, full of Rocks and Cliffs. And 4. *Orbelus*, lying towards *Macedon*, where there is a little Region from hence called *Orbelia*.

Principal Rivers hereof, besides *Strymon* spoken of before, the Boundary in some places betwixt this and *Macedon*, are, 1. *Nessus*, by the *Græcians* now called *Mestro*, by the *Turks*, *Charason*, which, rising out of Mount *Hæmus*, falleth into the Sea near the Isle of *Thassus*. 2. *Athyras*, in which name the memory of *Thyras* the Son of *Japhet* seems to be preserved; which, rising in Mount *Hæmus* also, loseth it self in the *Propontick*: as doth 3. *Bathynias*, another River rising from the same Mount *Hæmus*. 4. *Hebrus*, the most noted River of all this Countrey, rising out of *Rhodope*, and falling into the *Ægæan* near the Isle of *Samothracæ*: a River of so slow a Course, that it is not easie to discern which way it goeth; but memorable in the Poets for the Fate of *Orpheus*, who, being torn in pieces by the *Thracian* Women, had his Limbs thrown into it by those Furies. 5. *Thearus*, good against the Scab both in Man and Beast, issuing out of 30 Fountains, some hot, some cold; with the pleasentness of whose Waters *Darius* the King of *Persia* was so delighted, that he erected a Piller in honour of it.

The cheif Towns were, 1. *Abdera*, now called *Polystilo*, situate not far from the Fall of the River *Nessus* into the *Ægæan*, the Birth-place of *Democritus*, who spent his whole Life in laughing at the Follies of others. 2. *Potidæa*, of old a Colony of *Athens*, from whom it revolted, and submitted to the State of *Corinth*. But the *Athenians*, not enduring the Affront, beleaguered it, and after two years Siege, and the expence of 2000 Talents, could not recover it again but on Composition. 3. *Ænos*, on the *Ægæan* Sea; a Town of great Strength and Safety, and therefore used by the later *Constantinopolitan* Emperours for the securing of great persons. For hither *Michael Palæologus* sent *Jathatines*, the *Turkish Sultan*, flying to him for Aid; and hither *Mahomet* the great sent *Demetrius*, Prince of *Peloponnesus*, when he yielded up his Countrey to him: both under colour of providing for their Ease and Safety, but in plain terms to keep them in honourable Prisons. 3. *Lysimachia*, on the Sea-shore; once of great importance, built by *Lysimachus*, who after *Alexander*'s death laid hands on this Countrey: afterwards garrisoned by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*; on the withdrawing of whose Forces for some other Service it was taken and raised to the ground by the barbarous *Thracians*, and all the People of it carried into Captivity; but by *Antiochus* the Great re-edified and new-peopled again, moved thereunto by the convenient situation and former glories of the place. 5. *Philippopolis*, so called from *Philip* King of *Macedon*, the Father of *Alexander*, who built and fortified it as a Bridle to hold in the *Thracians*; called also *Trimontium*, from three Hills on which it was situate: beautified in the time of the *Romans* with a goodly Amphitheatre, continuing entire and whole till

these

theſe latter days, and might have laſted longer by many Ages, did not the *Turks* daily take away the Stones thereof, which are all of Marble, to make money of them. Here are alſo many other ancient Monuments, though the Town be much waſted and deſtroyed, the *Scythians* at one time killing in it above 100000 perſons: which not withſtanding it is populous and well-frequented, by reaſon of the convenient ſituation of it on the River *Hebrus*, which they now call *Mariza*. 6. *Trajanopolis*, ſo called from the Emperour *Trajan*, by whom it was either founded or repaired; indifferently well peopled, and ſtill preſerving its old name. 7. *Selymbria*, on the Coaſt of the *Propontick* Sea; beautified with a commodious Port for receit of ſmall Veſſels, and many Bays adjoyning capable of greater: by *Ptolemy* called *Selybria*, and *Olybria* by *Suidas*. 8. *Apollonia*, upon *Pontus Euxinus* or the *Black Sea*, now *Siſſopoli*. 9. *Phinopolis*, on the ſame Sea alſo. 10. *Nicopolis*, at the foot of the Mount *Hæmus*, there being another of that name near the River *Neſſus*. 11. *Perinthus*, on the *Propontick* Sea, near the Influx of the River *Arſus*. A Town of great note in the ancient Buſineſſes of *Greece*; of great ſtrength, and peopled formerly with men of ſuch reſolutions, that they maintained their Liberty againſt *Philip* of *Macedon* after almoſt all the reſt of *Thrace* had ſubmitted to him. 12. *Heraclea*, at firſt a Colony of the *Thebans*, and afterwards of much requeſt in the time of the *Romans*, as being beautified with the Pallaces of *Veſpaſian*, *Domitian*, and *Antoninus*, Emperours of *Rome*, as alſo with an Amphitheatre cut out of one entire Marble, and accounted one of the World's ſeven Wonders; and, finally, made the Metropolitan City of the Province of *Europe*, one of the Provinces of the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, whereof more anon. 13. *Olynthus*, called by *Xenophon* the greateſt City of *Thrace*; as poſſibly enough it was in Power and Riches, though not in greatneſs of Extent. A Colony of the *Athenians*, rich in Trade, and Miſtreſs of a fair and goodly Territory adjoyning to it: the People whereof had been malicious Enemies to the Kings of *Macedon*, which principally induced *Philip* ſpoken of before, to ſet upon them. In which Attempt he ſped ſo well, that what he could not get by Force he obtained by Money, bribing ſome of the principal Officers to betray it to him. For the recovery whereof *Demoſthenes* oft moved the People of *Athens*, in thoſe elaborate Orations called the *Olynthiacks*. 14. *Seſtos*, in the *Thracian* Cherſoneſe, which, being a *Peninſula* abutting over againſt *Troas* on the *Aſian* ſide, is now called *Saint George's Arm*. Oppoſite whereunto, on the other ſide of the Water, is the Town of *Abydus*; remarkable for the Tragical Loves of *Hero* and *Leander*, celebrated by *Muſæus*, an old *Greek* Poet. 15. *Callipolis*, on the Northern Promontory of this Cherſoneſe, the firſt City of note that ever the *Turks* poſſeſſed in *Europe*; taken by *Solyman*, the Son of *Orchanes* the ſecond King of the *Ottoman* Race, *Anno* 1358; from whence they eaſily and in little time ſpred themſelves all over the reſt of *Thrace*: the ordinary paſſage of late times betwixt *Europe* and *Aſia*, by reaſon of the convenient Harbour and ſafe Anchorage. 16. *Cardia*, ſeated on the Weſtern ſide of it, oppoſit to the Iſle of *Lemnos*; the Birth place of *Eumenes*, who, being a poor Carrier's Son, attained to ſuch an ability in the Art of war, that after the death of *Alexander* the Great, under whom he ſerved, he ſeiſed on the Provinces of *Cappadocia* and *Paphlagonia*, and ſiding (though a Stranger to *Macedon*) with *Olympias* and the Bloud-royal againſt the *Greek* Captains, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Craterus*, and divers times drave *Antigonus* (afterwards Lord of *Aſia*) out of the Field. But being by his own Souldiers betrayed, he was by them delivered to *Antigonus*, and by him ſlain. 17. *Sardica*, ſituate towards Mount *Hæmus*, memorable for the Council there held againſt the *Arians* Anno 351. 18. *Adrianople*, ſeated near the midſt of *Thrace*, called anciently *Uſcudama*; but got this name from *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired and beautified it: made ſubject to the *Turks* by *Bajazet* Anno 1362: from the firſt taking of it made the Seat of the *Turkiſh* Kings, till the taking of *Conſtantinople* by *Mahomet* the Great; by whom it was removed unto that City. 19. *Pera*, oppoſit to *Conſtantinople*, on the farther ſide of the Water, (as the word doth ſignifie in the *Greek*,) by ſome called *Galata*; once peopled by a Colony of *Genoueſes*, as the Mart and Factory of that State; taken by *Mahomet* the Great *Anno* 1453, but ſtill repleniſhed, for the moſt part, with Chriſtian Merchants and Artificers.

But the cheif glory of this Countrey, and of all the Eaſt, is the renowned City of no. *Conſtantinople*, ſeated in ſo commodius a place for Empire, that it overlooks both *Europe* and *Aſia*, and commands not onely the *Propontis* and *Boſporus*, but the *Euxine* Sea. Firſt founded by one *Byza*, and from him named *Byzantium*: but being taken by the *Perſians*, and from them recovered by the *Spartans*, (unwilling that the *Perſians* ſhould grow ſtrong in *Europe*) it was repaired and fortified by *Pauſanias*, one of their Commanders, 663 years before the Birth of our Saviour. In vain it was beſieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and of great ſtreugth in the Flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire. The Walls were of a juſt height, every Stone whereof was ſo joyned with Couplets of Braſs, that the whole ſeemed but one intire Piece; adorned beſides with Turrets, Bulwarks, and other Arts of Fortification. Siding with *Niger* in his War againſt *Severus* the Emperour, it indured a Siege of three years againſt all the Forces of the *Romans*: during which time the people were ſo diſtreſſed by Famine, that men meeting in the Streets would draw and fight, the Conquerour feeding on the Vanquiſhed. For want of Artillery to diſcharge on the Aſſailants, they caſt down upon them whole Statues made of Braſs, and the like curious Imagery Houſes they pulled down to get Timber for Shipping; the Women cutting off their Hair to inch out their Tackle: and having thus patched up a Navy of 500 Sail, it was loſt all by one Tempeſt. Compelled to yeild by this Misfortune, the principal of the Nobility were put to the Sword, the Wealth of the Inhabitants given for a Prey to the Souldiers, the Walls thereof diſmantled, and the Town left in rubbiſh. Yet there appeared ſo much of Majeſty and Beauty in the very Ruines, *Ut mireris utrùm eorum qui primi exſtruxerunt, vel eorum qui deinceps ſunt demoliti, vires ſint potiores*, as *Herodian* hath it. Re-edified afterwards by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, he honoured it with his own name, and made it the cheif Seat of the *Roman* Empire. The City was finiſhed *May* 11. *Anno* 331; and, being ſo finiſhed, was indowed with all the Priviledges of *Rome*, an equal number of Senators, one of the Annual Conſuls, and all other Officers of State, choſen out of both; the Citizens of the one being free of the other, and capable of all places of moſt Truſt and Power. For that cauſe it was called *NOVA ROMA* in ſome following times. This City he adorned alſo with magnificent Buildings, curious Statues, and ſuch like Ornaments, tranſported hither from Old *Rome*: which City he ſpoiled of more coſtly Pieces than any twenty of his Predeceſſours had brought unto it. At this day the cheif Buildings are the *Turk*'s *Seraglio* and the Temple of *Saint Sophia*; which as they differ not much in place and ſituation, ſo as little in Magnificence and State. The Temple of *Saint Sophia* was, if not built, yet re-edified, by the Emperour *Juſtinian*. It is built of an Oval form, ſurrounded with Pillers of admirable workmanſhip, adorned with ſpacious and beautifull Galleries, roofed all over with

with *Moſaick* work, and vaulted underneath; very ſtrong for the Fabrick, and pleaſing for the Eye. The Doors are very curiouſly wrought and plated; one of which by the Superſtitious people is thought to have been made of the planks of *Noah*'s Ark. And yet this Temple is little more then the Chancel of the ancient Church, which contained in length 260 foot, and 180 in breadth; and yet to our Saint *Paul*'s in *London* may ſeem for the bigneſs to have been but a Chappel of Eaſe. But what it wants in Greatneſs, it hath gained in Beauty, and in the Elegancy of the Building, wherein it is thought to exceed all the Fabricks in the whole World. The Sides and Floore are all flagged with excellent Marble; and before the Entrance is a goodly *Portico*, or Porch, in which as well the Chriſtians, who viſit it out of Curioſity, as the *Turks*, who repair thither for Devotion, are to leave their Shoes. By *Mahomet* the Great, after the taking of the City, it was converted to a *Turkiſh* Moſque, as it ſtill continueth; frequented by the Grand Seigniour almoſt every *Friday* which is the Sabbath of that People. Near hereunto ſtandeth the Palace or *Seraglio* of the *Ottoman* Emperours, on the North-eaſt Angel of the City, where formerly ſtood the ancient *Byzantium*; divided from the reſt of the City by a Wall containing three miles in Cercuit, and comprehending goodly Groves of Cypreſſes intermixed with Planes, delicate Gardens, artificial Fountains, and all variety of Pleaſures which Luxury can affect or Treaſure compaſs. The Palace it ſelf, enjoying a goodly proſpect in the Sea, was firſt built by *Juſtinus* the Emperour, afterwards much enlarged by the *Ottoman* Race, containing three great Courts one within another: the Buildings yielding unto thoſe of *France* and *Italy* for the neat contrivances, but far ſurpaſſing them for Coſt and Curiouſneſs.

As for the City it ſelf, it is ſaid to be 18 miles in compaſs, and to contain 700000 living ſouls; yet would be more populous then it is, if the Plague, like a cruel Tertian Ague, did not every third year ſo rage amongſt them. It is fortified towards the Land with three ſtrong and high Wals, the one higher then the other, the outermoſt higheſt of them all: towards the Sea with one Wall onely, built after the old faſhion with many Turrets, which very ſtrongly flanker and defend the ſame. But formerly both the Town and Cherſoneſe in which it ſtandeth were defended from the Incurſions of the barbarous people by a ſtrong Wall built on the very *Iſthmus* of it, ſome ten miles from the City, reaching from one ſide to the other: the work of *Anaſtaſius* who ſucceeded *Zeno*, Anno 494. A City which a far off gives to the Eye a moſt pleaſing object: ſo intermixt with Gardens and beſet with Trees, that it ſeems a City in a Wood; but being entred, it much deceiveth the expectation which it promiſed, the Buildings of it being mean, if not contemptible. The Streets for the moſt part are exceeding narrow, but raiſed on each ſide for the greater Cleanlineſs: the Houſes but of two Stories high, ſome of rough Stone, and ſome of Timber, without any outward Grace or exteriour Garniſhing; in many places nothing but low Sheds or rows of Shops; and in ſome places long dead Walls belonging unto great mens Houſes. The principal Beauty of the whole, next to ſome Monuments of Antiquity, which are ſtill, preſerved, and the Tombs or Sepulchres of ſome of the *Ottoman* Kings, which are very ſumptuous, are the Moſques or Temples of the *Turks*, about eight thouſand in number; and the Port or Haven, ſo conveniently profound, that Ships of greateſt Burthen may ſafely lay their Sides to the Sides thereof, for the receit or diſcharge of their Lading; and ſo commodiouſly ſeated on the *Thracian Boſperus*, that there is no Wind, whatſoever it be, which brings not in ſome Shipping to it. But that which gives the greateſt Pleaſure to the ſight from the Hills adjoyning is the Situation of it on ſeven Mountains, moſt of them crowned with Magnificent Moſques, built all of white Marble, round in form, and finiſhed on the top with gilded Spires, reflecting the Sun-beams with a marvellous Splendour. On the firſt whereof ſtandeth the Ruines of *Conſtantine*'s Palace, exceeding ſtately to behold. On the ſecond, a fair *Turkiſh* Moſque, built on the Palace anciently belonging to the *Greek* Patriarch. On the third ſtands a ſtately Moſque, the Sepulchre of *Mahomet* the ſecond: and a very large Hoſpital, for entertainment of Pilgrims and releif of the poore: the Annual Rents whereof are valued at 200000 Checquines. On the fourth and fifth the Sepultures of *Selimus* the firſt, and *Bajazet* the ſecond. On the ſixth the Moſque and Sepulchre of *Solyman* the Magnificent, numbered amongſt the preſent wonders of the World. And on the ſeventh the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, and the *Turks Seraglio*, ſpoken of already. In which reſpect it is called Πόλις ἑπτάλοφος by *Nicetas*, *Urbs ſepticollis* by *Paulus Diaconus*; and ſo acknowledged to be by *Janus Douſa*, *Phineas Moriſon*, *G. Sandys*, and other of our modern Travellers, the Eye-witneſſes of it. So that if there be any Myſterie in the number of *Seven*, or that the *ſitting of the great Whore on a ſeven-headed Beaſt*, be an aſſured direction to find out the *Antichriſt*; we may as well look for him in *Conſtantinople*, or *Nova Roma*, where the Great *Turk*, the profeſſed Enemy of *Chriſt* and the Chriſtian Faith, hath his Seat and Reſidence, as amongſt the ſeven Hills of Old *Rome*, where the Pope reſideth. Or if his *ſitting in the Temple of God* ſhew us where to find him; we may as well look for him in the Temple of *Saint Sophia*, now a *Turkiſh* Moſque, as in Saint *Peter*'s Church at *Rome*, ſtill a Chriſtian Temple.

But to return again unto *Conſtantinople*. As it was made by *Conſtantine* the Imperial City, and conſequently the cheif City of the Eaſt in all Civil matters; ſo it came in little time to have a great Sway alſo in Affairs of Religion. The Chriſtian Faith is ſaid to be firſt preached in *Byzantium* by Saint *Andrew* the Apoſtle, the Firſt Biſhop thereof. Afterwards ſpreading over *Thrace*, and the Churches thereof being regulated by many Biſhops, the cheif Preeminence in matters which concerned thoſe Churches was given unto the Biſhops of *Heraclea*, *Heraclea* being at that time the Metropolis or principal City of the Province. But after that *Conſtantinople* was built by *Conſtantine*, and made the Imperial City, as before was ſaid, it did not onely over-top *Heraclea*, and draw unto it ſelf the Metropolitan Dignity, but ſtood in Competition with the other Patriarchal Churches for the ſupreme Power: inſomuch as at the ſecond General Council holden in this City it was unanimouſly decreed, that the Patriarch hereof ſhould in degree of Honour be next unto the Biſhop of *Rome*, and above thoſe of *Antioch* and *Alexandria*; the ſame Decree being confirmed in the Council of *Chalcedon* alſo. By which not onely all the Churches in the Dioceſe of *Thrace*, but alſo of *Natolia*, or *Aſia minor*, (except *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, which remained to the Patriarch of *Antioch*) containing no leſs then 28 of the *Roman* Provinces, were made ſubject to him. And though Pope *Leo* the firſt, pretending onely the preſervation of the Privileges of thoſe two great Churches, but indeed fearing leſt New *Rome* might in the end get the Precedency of the Old, did oppoſe this Act, and ſome of his Succeſſours perſiſted in the ſame Reſiſtence: yet they were forced in the end to give way unto it, eſpecially after the Emperour *Juſtinian* had by his Imperial Edict confirmed the ſame; by whom it was finally ordained, *Senioris Romæ Papam primum eſſe omnium Sacerdotum, beatiſſimum autem Archiepiſcopum* Conſtantino-

poleos, *Novæ* Romæ, *ſecundum habere locum*, that is to ſay, That the Pope of *Rome* ſhould have the firſt place in all General Councils, and the Biſhop of *Conſtantinople*, or New *Rome*, ſhould have the ſecond. Encouraged wherewith, and with the countenance and favour of the Emperour *Mauritius*, *John* Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, in the time of *Gregory* the Great, took to himſelf the Title of *Univerſal* or *Oecumenicall Biſhop*, the Paſtor-General (as it were) of the Church of *Chriſt*. And though Pope *Boniface*, by the Grant of that bloudy Tyrant *Phocas*, got that Title from him: yet the Patriarchs of *Conſtantinople* made good their ground, never ſubmitting either themſelves or their Churches to the Pope's Authority; being for that cauſe ſpecially accounted by the Church of *Rome* for Schiſmaticks, and accordingly reviled and perſecuted with all kind of Indignities. how it ſucceeded with theſe Patriarchs in the times enſuing, and by what means their Juriſdiction was extended over all *Greece*, *Moſcovie*, part of *Poland*, and many other Churches in the North and Eaſt, hath been ſaid already. Certain it is, the conſtant Reſidence of the Emperours from the time of *Conſtantine* gave great ground unto it: of whom I ſhould here add the names, but that I muſt firſt ſum up the affairs of *Thrace* before the Building of this mighty and predominant City, and take a brief view of the reſt of thoſe Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Greece*.

Concerning which we are to know, that the ancient Inhabitants of it had the names of *Strymonii*, *Bardi*, *Dolonci*, *Sapæi*, *Sai*, and ſome others, united by moſt Writers in the name of *Thracians*. They were governed at firſt by the Kings or Princes of their ſeveral Tribes, as moſt Nations elſe; diſtinguiſhed from the common People, as in other Pomps, ſo moſt eſpeeially by their Gods, which their Kings had to themſelves apart, and were not to be worſhipped by the beſt of their Subjects. Theſe not agreeing well together for the common good, it gave the *Athenians*, *Spartans*, *Thebans*, and other Nations of the *Greeks*, a good oppertunity to invade their Country, to ſeize on the Sea-Towns thereof, and plant Colonies in them: the Country in thoſe times being meanly peopled, and conſequently giving that advantage unto the *Græcians* as the *Indies* in theſe latter times have to the *Spaniards*, *Portuguezes*, *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, and all other Adventurers. Such of them as lay next to *Macedon*, proving bad Neighbours thereunto upon all occaſions, at laſt provoked *Philip* the Father of *Alexander*, to put in for a ſhare; who, being choſen Arbitrator betwixt two Competitors for that Kingdom, (drawn at laſt into fewer hands) came not unto the Council with ſuch poor Attendants as Juſtice and Piety, but with a great and puiſſant Army; wherewith having vanquiſhed and ſlain the two Pretenders, he pronounced Sentence for himſelf, and made *Thrace* his own, compelling the Inhabitants to pay him the tenth part of their Revenue for his yearly Tribute. After the death of *Alexander* this Countrey was ſeiſed on by *Lyſimachus*, as his part of the Spoil, who here built the City *Lyſimachia*; from hence invading *Dacia*, *Macedon*, and the neighbouring Regions: and he being dead, the *Thracians*, now accuſtomed to a forein Yoak, were either Subjects, or at leaſt Tributaries, to the *Macedonians*. Aiding them in their Wars againſt the *Romans*, they incurred the diſpleaſure of that People; who, having ſettled their Affairs in other places, and repulſed the *Cimbri*, thought it fit time to call the *Thracians* to account for their former Actions: but ſped ſo ill in the Attempt, that *Porcius Cato* loſt his whole Army in the On-ſet, cunningly intercepted in their Woods and Faſtneſſes. *Didius* the *Prætor*, coming in whilſt the *Thracians* were buſie in the Chaſe, gave them ſuch a ſtop, that he deſerved a Triumph for it, and made the Victory more eaſie to *Metellus*, who ſucceeded *Cato* in that Charge, and tryumphed alſo over them; as alſo did *Lucullus* on another Victory *A. V. C.* 680. Broken with ſo many ill Succeſſes, they were finally ſubdued by *Piſo* in the time of *Auguſtus*; and became ſo obſequious to that fortunate Prince, that *Rhiſemalces*, a great and puiſſant King hereof, aided him with a ſtrength of Horſe againſt the *Pannonians* and *Illyrians*, who had then rebelled. Afterwards being made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, in *Conſtantine*'s new Model it became a Dioceſe under the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*; *Thrace* it ſelf being caſt into four Provinces, that is to ſay, *Thrace* ſpecially ſo called *Hæmimontum*, *Rhodope*, and *Europa*; *Scythia* and the Lower *Meſia*, ſpoken of before, being added to it: of which the Preſidents of *Rhodope* and *Hæmimontum* were not to be appealed from to the *Præfectus Prætorio*, as the others were, but onely to the Prefect of *Conſtantinople*, the Emperial City. But as *Alfonſus* King of *Caſtile*, ſurnamed the Wiſe, was once heard to ſay, (never the wiſer for ſo ſaying) That *had he ſtood at the Elbow of Almighty God when he made the World, he would have ſhewed him how ſome things might have been better ordered:* ſo give me leave to play the foole, and to ſay this here, that had I ſtood at *Conſtantine*'s Elbow, I would have counſelled him to lay the Dioceſe of *Thrace* to the Prefect of *Illyricum*, who had originally onely the Dioceſes of *Macedon* and *Illyricum* under his Command; and not have placed it under the Prefect of the Eaſt, who had both *Aſia*'s and all *Ægypt* under his Authority. For being that there lay Appeals from the Vickers or Lieutenants of the ſeveral Dioceſes to their ſeverall and reſpecttive Prefects, how great a trouble muſt it be to the Subjects of *Thrace* on every occaſion of Appeal to poſt to *Antioch*, there to complain unto the Prefect of the Orient, when *Sermium* and *Theſſalonica*, the ordinary Reſidences of the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Illyricum*, were ſo hard at hand? But *Conſtantine* was an abſolute Prince, and might do what he liſted. He had not elſe removed his Seat ſo far towards the Eaſt, and left the Weſtern parts of the Empire open to the Barbarous people, out of a fancy onely to preſerve the Eſtern. For that it was a Fancy onely the event did ſhew: the *Perſians* for all this prevailing more then ever formerly; and *Thrace* it ſelf, though honoured with the Imperial City, and planted with ſo many *Roman* Colonies, ſo ill inhabited, that a great part thereof lay waſte and deſart many Ages after. Inſomuch as the *Goths*, being by the *Hunns* driven over the *Danow*, were by the Emperour *Valens* planted in this Countrey, (the Emperour having a deſign to uſe them in his following Wars;) where not contented with the Portion allotted to them, they bid fair for all, waſting the whole Province, taking divers Towns, and endangering *Conſtantinople* it ſelf, from whence they were not driven (*Valens* himſelf being killed in the War againſt them) but by the comming of ſome *Saracens* to the Aid of the Citizens. Nor could the Reſidence of the Emperours ſo protect this Countrey, but that it was continually haraſſed and depopulated by the *Sclaves*, *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, *Saracens*, and other Barbarous people falling in upon it; nor hinder one *Bryonnius*, in the time of *Michael Ducas* and *Nicephorus Botoniates*, from aſſuming to himſelf the Title of King of *Thrace*; nor finally prevent the *Turks* of the *Ottaman* Race from getting ground every day on the Leſſer *Aſia*, incroaching upon *Thrace* it ſelf, and in the end obtaining the Imperial City.

And here perhaps it is expected, conſidering the *Turks* are now poſſeſſed of *Thrace* and the reſt of *Greece*, that we ſhould make relation of the Nature of that People, their Cuſtomes, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings.

But

But the discourse thereof we will defer till we come to *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia* from whence they made their first Inundations, like to some unresistible Torrent, into *Persia*, and after into the other parts of the World now subject to them. And therefore letting that alone till another time, we will proceed to our Description of the rest of *Greece*, consisting of the Islands scattered in the *Pontick*, *Propontick*, *Ægean*, *Cretan*, and *Ionian* Seas: leaving out such as properly belong to *Asia* till our Description of that Countrey, thought otherwise *Greek* Islands, and so accounted both for their Language and Original.

7. The *Islands* of the *PONTICK* and *PROPONTICK* Seas.

BEfore we come to the Descriptions of these Islands, we must first look upon the Seas in which they lie; beginning with the *PONTICK* first, because the greatest, and that which doth communicate and convey its Waters unto all the rest. A Sea made up originally of the Confluence of those mighty Rivers (the greatest in those parts of the World) which do fall into it, that is to say, the *Danow*, *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, falling out of *Europe*, besides many other fair and large Rivers, (though of lesser note) to the number of at least an hundred, which pay Tribute to it: the whole compass of it being 2700 miles; in form by some resembled to a *Scythian* Bow when it is bended. A Sea not so salt as many others, and therefore much annoyed with Ice in Winter; seldom remitted in the Spring on the Northern Shore. The Traffick of it is wholly in a manner engrossed by the *Turk*, who is Master of all the Sea-coast of it, save what belongs to the *Polonian* and *Crim-Tarter*. At first it was called Ἄξεινος from the *Inhospitableness* of the neighbouring People, which being brought to some Conformity caused the Sea to be called Εὔξεινος. By *Florus* it is called *Mare Sinistrum*, because in the way from *Rome* to *Asia minor* it lay upon the left hand, as the *Mediterranean* did upon the right. It is commonly called at this time *Mare Maggiore*, for its greatness; and the *Black Sea*, because of the great Mists thence arising. Others not unprobably affirm that it is called the *Black Sea* from the dangerous and black Shipwrecks here happening. For it is a very dangerous Shore, full of Rocks and Sands: and for this cause there is on the top of an high Tower a Lantern, in which there is a great Pan full of Pitch, Rosin, Tallow, and the like, in dark nights continually burning, to give warning to Mariners how near they approach unto the Shore. This Sea, being the biggest of all those parts, gave occasion to them which knew no bigger to call all Seas by the name of *Pontus*, as *Ovid*, *Omnia pontus erant, deerant quoque littora ponto*; and in another place of the same Poet, ——— *nil nisi pontus & aer*: a better reason doubtless of the name, then that of the Etymologists, *Pontus, quia ponte caret*. Of this Sea the chief Isles are *Thynnias*, and *Erithinus*, little famous.

From hence the Sea bending Southward is brought into narrower Bounds, not being fully a mile broad, and is called the *Thracian Bosporus*: *Thracian*, for its Site nigh *Thrace*; and *Bosporus*, for that Oxen have swam over it. It hath no Island worth naming. It is fortified on each side with a very strong Castle. That on the *Asian* side, being the elder and the lesser, is by the *Greeks* called *Asio-castron*, by the *Turks* named *Accechisar*; the other, just opposite to it, is by the *Turks* called *Genichisar*, by the *Greeks* named *Neocastron*, or *New Castle*. This last was the work of *Mahomet* surnamed the Great, in the beginning of his Reign; in bigness not inferiour to a little City; built by him in or near the place of the ancient *Damalis*; environed with a Wall 22 foot broad, and containing three great Towers, their Walls exceeding 10 yards in thickness; exceedingly well stored with all sorts of Ordnance and Ammunition. By the *English* they are commonly called the *Black Towers*; partly because seated at the Entrance of the *Euxine* or *Black* Sea, and partly because they serve as a Prison for Malefactors of principal note, who seldom are discharged thence till released by death.

This Streight, having continued 28 miles in length, openeth it self into the *Propontis*, 300 miles in compass; confined with *Thrace* on the one side, and with *Bithynia* on the other; so as they which sail in the middle may descry the Land on all parts. Now called *Mar di Marmora*, from the Island *Marmora*, which, formerly called *Proconnesus*, hath for its abundance of Marble purchased this new name. The Soil is apt for Vines, and not destitute of Corn; yielding also good Pasturage for Goats, whereof here is plenty, with an incredible number of Partridges amongst the Rocks: the Countrey of *Aristeus*, a famous Poet, who flourished in the times of *Crœsus*. Anciently it had in it two Cities of the same name with the Island, called the *Old* and *New Proconnesus*: the former first built by the *Miletians*, an *Asiak* People; the latter by the Natives of this Island. But both these being long since decayed, it hath now only a small Village towards the North, with an Haven to it, inhabited by the *Greeks*, as is all the rest of the Island: such Christian Slaves as are in great numbers employed here by the *Turks* in digging Marble for their Mosques and other Buildings being only Sojourners, not House-keepers, and therefore not accounted amongst the Inhabitants. Here is also in this *Propontick* Sea the Isle of *Cyzicus*: but being it is on *Asia* side, we shall there speak of it.

The Sea having gathered her waters into a lesser Chanel is called *Hellespont*, from *Helle*, Daughter of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*, who was here drowned. Over this famous Streight did *Xerxes*, according to *Herodotus*, make a Bridge of Boats to pass into *Greece*: which when a sudden Tempest had shrewdly batteted, he caused the Sea to be beaten with 300 Stripes, and cast a pair of Fetters into it, to make it know to whom it was subject. *Xerxes* in this Expedition wasted over an Army consisting of two millions and 164710 fighting men, in no less then 2208 Bottoms of all sorts. When all the *Persians* soothed the King in the Unconquerableness of his Forces, *Artabanus* told him that he feared no Enemies but the Sea and the Earth; the one yielding no safe Harbour for such a Navy, the other not yielding sufficient subsistence for so multitudinous an Army. But his return over this *Hellespont* was as dejected as his Passage magnificent; his Fleet being so broken by the Valour of the *Greeks* and the Fury of the Sea, that, for his more speedy Flight, he was compelled to make use of a poor Fisher-boat. Neither yet was his Passage secure: for the Boat, being overburthened, had sunk all, if the *Persians* by casting away themselves had not saved the Life of their King. The loss of which noble spirits so vexed him, that having given the Steersman a golden Coronet for preserving his own Life, he commanded him to Execution as a Co authour of the death of his Servants. It is now called *the Castles*, or *the Sea of the Two Castles*; which two Castles stand one on *Europe*, the other on *Asia* side, in the Towns of *Sestos* and *Abydus*. These Castles, commonly by the *Turks* called *Dardanelli*, are exceedingly well built, and abundantly furnished with Munition. They search and examine all Ships that pass that way; they receive the Grand Seigniour's Customs, and are in effect the principal Strength of *Constantinople*. At these Castles all Ships must stay three days; to the end, that if any Slave be run away from his Master, or Thieves have stoln any thing, they may be in that place pursued

and apprehended. So that these Castles are as it were the Out-works of *Constantinople*, to defend it from all Invasions, and from any Forces which may come unto it by Sea out of the *Mediterranean*; as for the Safety thereof from such as may find passage out of the *Euxine*, there are situate at the very entrance of the *Thracian Bosporus* two strong Castles, the one above *Constantinople* on *Europe* side, the other on the *Asian* Shore, which before we spake of. No *European* Isle of note is in either of the Streights. And therefore we pass on unto

8. The *Islands* of the ÆGÆAN Sea.

HElleſpont, after a forty miles course, exspatiateth its waters in the *Ægæan* Sea: so called either from *Ægeus*, the Father of *Theseus*, who, misdoubting his Son's safe return from the *Minotaur* of *Crete*, here drowned himself; or, secondly, from *Ægæ*, once a principal City in the prime Island *Eubœa*; or, thirdly, because that the Islands lie scattered up and down like the Leaps of a wanton Goat, from the *Greek* αἴγνος.

The chief Islands of it are, 1. *Samothrace*, 2. *Thassus*, 3. *Imbrus*, 4. *Lemnos*, 5. *Eubœa*, 6. *Salamis*, 7. *Ægina*, 8. the *Cyclades*, 9. the *Sporades*, and 10. *Cythera*: all which especially from *Eubœa* Southwards, are called the *Islands of the Arches*; the Sea being by the *Greeks* called the *Archipelago*, in regard of its greatness compared unto the narrow Seas which lie above it.

1. *SAMOTHRACE* is a small Island opposite to the Coasts of *Thrace*, where the *Hebrus* falls into the Sea; so called *quasi Samos Thraciæ*, to difference it from the *Asian Samos*, bordering on *Ionia*. Formerly it was called *Dardania*, from *Dardanus* the *Trojan*, who fled hither when he carried the *Palladium* thence. But *Aristotle*, writing of the Commonweal of these *Samothracians*, telleth us that it was first called *Leucosia*, and afterwards *Samus*, from *Saus* the Son of *Mercury* and *Rhene*, the letter *M* being interposed. It is now called *Samandrachi*, and is plentiful in Honey and Wild Deer, and better stored with commodious Harbours then any other in these Seas. It hath a Town of the same name with the Island, situate on an high Hill on the North part hereof, overlooking a capatious Haven; of late, by the Pirates frequent infesting of these Seas wholly, in a manner, desolate.

2. *THASSUS*, another little Island on the same Coast, opposite to the Influx of the River *Nessus*, lying betwixt that and *Athos* in *Macedonia*, at the Mouth of the *Strymonian* Bay: by *Plini* called *Æria* and *Æthria*, by *Ptolemy Thalassia*, at the present *Tasso*. It is in compass betwixt forty and fifty miles, sufficiently fruitful, well replenished with Woods, and yielding good store of the best Wines; mountainous in some places, but those Mountains fraught with Quarries of excellent Marble, which the *Romans* called *Thassian*, from the Island; and in the times of *Philip* and *Alexander* the Great so rich in Mines of usefull Metalls, that those Kings received yearly 80 Talents for their Customs of them. It hath one Town of the same name with the Island, situate on a large Plain in the North part of it, bordering on a goodly Bay, which serves for an Haven to the Town: and on the South parts, where the Countrey is more mountainous and hilly, there are two Towns more, each of them situate on an Hill; but the names thereof occur not amongst my Authours.

3. *Imbrus*, another small Island, now named *Lembro*, is situate betwixt *Samothrace* and the *Thracian* Chersonese, in compass about thirty miles, but more long then broad, stretching North and South, and distant from *Samothrace* about ten miles. The Island is mountainous for the most part, except towards the West; where it hath some pleasant and well-watered Plains: in it is a Town of the same name, situate at the foot of the Mountains, once sacred unto *Mercury*, but not else observable.

4. *LEMNOS*, an Island of more note, lieth betwixt *Thrace* and *Macedon*, not far from *Imbrus*; memorable amongst the Poets for the fabulous Fall of *Vulcan*, who, being but an homely Brat, hardly worth the owning, was by *Juno* in great Passion thrown out of Heaven, and, falling on this Island, came to get his Halting. However, he was anciently worshipped by the People hereof, and from hence called *Lemnius*. It is in compass about an hundred miles, but more long then broad, extended from the East to the West; on every side well furnished with convenient Creeks and some pretty Havens, by which the want of Rivers is in some sort recompensed.

The Countrey is for the most part plain, if compared unto the adjacent Islands, but otherwise swelled with rising Mountainets; the interposed Valleys being very fruitful of Wheat, Pulse, Wine, Flesh, Cheese, Wooll, Flax, Linen, and all other necessaries; onely Wood is wanting. And though here be no Rivers, as before was said, yet have they good Fishing on the Sea-coast for their use and sustenance; and in some parts hot Baths for Health and Medicine. But the chief Riches of this Island is in a Mineral Earth here digged, of excellent virtue for curing Wounds, stopping of Fluxes, expulsing Poisons, a Preservative against Infections, and the like; called *Terra Lemnia*, from the place, and *Terra Sigillata*, from the Seal or Character imprinted on it. For being made up into small Pellets, and sealed with the *Turk*'s Character or Signet, it is then (not before) sold unto the Merchants; by whom it is dispersed over most parts of the Christian World. Upon the sixth of *August* yearly they goe to gather it; but not without much Ceremony, and many religious Preparations, brought in by the *Venetians*, when they were Lords of this Island, and still continued by the *Greek* Monks or *Caloires*, who are the principal in the work. There is one Hill only where it groweth, the Top whereof being opened, they discover the Vein, resembling the casting up of Worms; and having gathered as much of it that day as the Priests think fit, it is closed again; certain Bags of it being sent to the Grand Seigniour yearly, the residue sealed up, and sold to the forein Merchant.

But to return to the Topography of the place. The Eastern parts hereof are said to be fat and fruitful, the Western very dry and barren: in both containing 57 Towns and Villages, all of them inhabited by the *Greeks*, except only three, and those three garrisoned by the *Turks*, who, being Lords of the whole Island, have new named it *Stalimene*. In former times, from two prime Cities in it, it was called *Dipolis*. Of which the first was called *Lemnos*, by the name of the Island, as large and well-peopled now as ever formerly, but of no great estimation when it was at the best, seated upon an high Hill looking over the Sea, with a handsome Market place, on which Mount *Athos* casts a Shadow, though distant 87 miles from it. It was formerly by another name called *Myrina*; but that held not long, the name of *Lemnos* still remaining. 2. The second of the two Cities was then called *Hephæstias*, memorable for the Temple of *Vulcan*, hence called *Hephæstiades*; since desolate and destroyed,

ſtroyed, and a new Town built in the place of it, being called *Cochino*. This Town is not great, but of a reaſonable ſtrength, memorable for the ſtout Reſiſtence which a notable *Virago*, named *Marulla*, made againſt the *Turks* in the time of *Mahomet* the Great, the *Venetians* then being Lords of the Iſland. For ſuddenly landing, when they were not looked for, with a purpoſe to ſurpriſe this Town, they found more Reſiſtence at the Gates then they did expect: none being more commended then this Maiden, who, ſeeing her Father ſlain, took up ſuch Weapons as lay by him, and manfully made good the place, until the reſt of the Citizens, wakened with the Alarm, came unto her Reſcue, and forced the Enemy to retire. Near hereunto is the Hill on which *Vulcan* is fabled to have fell; more eminent for the Mineral earth here only gathered. And not far hence *Pliny* reports a Labyrinth to have ſtood in the days of old, little inferiour unto thoſe of *Crete* or *Ægypt*; the Ruines of it being ſo decayed, that *Bellonius*, who took great pains in it, was not able to trace them. 3. The third place of note is *Setira*, though an ordinary Village, yet memorable for the Chappel in which the *Greek Caloires* begin their Oriſons on the ſixth day of *Auguſt*, before their gathering of the Earth ſo often mentioned. In this Countrey anciently reigned *Thoas*, the Son of *Bacchus* and *Ariadne*, during whoſe time the Women of the Iſland upon ſome diſpleaſure murthered all the men, the King only excepted, preſerved by *Hypſipyle* his Daughter, whom they made their Queen, and by whom *Jaſon* with the *Argonauts* were ſo kindly entertained for two years together, that they had almoſt forgot their intended Expedition for the Golden Fleece; ſhe her ſelf being got with Child by *Jaſon* at his being there, the other Women probably following her Example. Following the Fortune of the other parts of *Greece*, it came at laſt under the power of the *Conſtantinopolitan* or Eaſtern Emperours. In the Subverſion of that Empire by the *Latines* or Weſtern Chriſtians, (of which more hereafter) it fell to the ſhare of the *Venetians*, who held it till the year 1463, or thereabouts.

Beſides theſe on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, there are alſo ſome of leſs note on the Shores of *Macedon*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Peparethus*, as *Ptolemy*, *Enonus*, as *Pliny* calls it, conteining about 40 miles in compaſs, now called *Saraquino*, as *Caſtaldus*, or *Lemene*, as *Niger* hath it; fortified on the Eaſtern part with a Caſtle built upon a Rock. Others of leſs note are, 2. *Scyathos*, now *Sciati*, 3. *Scopelos*, 4. *Halonneſus*, 5. *Cicynethus*, now *Pontico*, and 6. *Dromus*: of which little memorable. All which, together with thoſe formerly deſcribed on the Coaſt of *Thrace*, being but the Acceſſories of the ſeveral Continents upon which they border, followed the Fortune of the principal, and were conquered in them.

5. *EUBŒA*, known to the Ancients by the names of *Macris* and *Abantis*, to the Moderns by that of *Negropont*, frontiereth all along the Coaſt of *Achaia*, parallel to which it is in Fertility; one part hereof being torn away from it by an Earthquake, and lying ſtill ſo near unto it, that between the Iſland and the Continent is only a little *Euripus*, which ebbeth and floweth ſeven times in one day. The reaſon of which when *Ariſtotle* could not find, it is ſaid that he threw himſelf into the Sea, with theſe words, *Quia ego non capio te, tu capies me.* In this Iſland is the Promontory *Caphreus*, where *Nauplius*, the Father of *Palamedes*, placed his falſe Fires, to the Deſtruction of ſo many *Greeks*. For underſtanding how his Son *Palamedes*, whom he deemed to have been ſlain by the hand of *Paris*, was treacherouſly circumvented by the Policy of *Ulyſſes* and *Diomedes*, he conceived ſuch a Diſpleaſure againſt the whole Hoſt of the *Græcians*, that he intended their general Deſtruction. To this end he cauſed Fires to be made on the tops of the moſt dangerous and unacceſſible Rocks in this whole Iſland: which the *Greeks* taking (according to the Cuſtom of the time) to have been the Marks of ſome ſafe Haven, made thitherward, and were there moſt miſerably caſt away; there periſhing 200 Ships, and many thouſand men. But when *Nauplius* underſtood how *Diomedes* and *Ulyſſes*, whoſe Ruine he principally intended, were eſcaped, he drowned himſelf for very Vexation in this very ſame place. *Palamedes*, this *Nauplius*'s Son, is ſaid to have invented four of the *Greek* Letters, *viz.* Θ, Χ, Ξ, Φ; to have firſt inſtituted Centinels in an Army, and to be the firſt Inventer of the Watch-word.

It is in length 150 miles, ſtretched out from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt; in breadth not above twenty, where it is broadeſt; the whole compaſs 365 *Italian* miles. It is the Queen of the *Ægean* Sea, not only for Greatneſs, but for Fertility and Strength; plentiful in Corn, Wine, Oyl, Fruit, and Wood fit for Shipping; enriched with many fair Harbours and capacious Bays, and thoſe well fortified; watered alſo with the Rivers of *Cireus* and *Melas*, two Rivers of ſo ſtrange a nature, that if a Sheep drink of the former, his Wooll turneth white, but coal-black, if he drink of the latter. For the credit whereof I refer the Reader unto *Strabo*. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Stone called *Amiantus*, which is drawn into thread like Hemp, and good Cloth made of it; which, when it is ſtained, in ſtead of being ſent unto the Fullers, is thrown into the Fire, and ſo cleanſed. But whether this be ſo or not, (for I put it only upon hearſay) certain it is that it was once enriched with Mines both of Braſs and Iron, though thoſe now decayed; and likewiſe with Quarries of pure Marble, which continue ſtill.

The Iſland, before it was conquered by the *Turks*, was very populous: but the people moſt delighted to live in Villages; the Cities and walled Towns being only three. 1. *Caryſto*, anciently *Caryſtus*, with little or no variation, but by *Pliny* called *Ægæa* and *Chironia*; memorable for its Marble Quarries, of which were made the Pillars called *Columnæ Caryſtiæ*. 2. *Chalcis*, now *Negropont*, by the *Turks* named *Eribos*, ſeated on a Plain near the Water's ſide, there growing into a fair and goodly Bay called the Gulf of *Negropont*; a populous, ſtrong and wealthy City, ſo fortified with Walls and Bulwarks, that in the judgement of moſt men it was held invincible when the *Turks* firſt ſate down before it. Nor was it purchaſed by the *Turk* (though *Mahomet*, who had took *Conſtantinople*, undertook the buſineſs) at a lower price than the loſs of forty thouſand men, who were ſpent upon it; but taken at the laſt, and the people put unto the Sword, without conſideration of Sex or Age. A Town in former times of ſo great Wealth and Power, that it ſent Colonies abroad into *Macedonia*, (a principal Region of the which was hence called *Chalcidice*) as alſo into *Sicily* and ſome parts of *Italy*; and had a ſtrong Influence on the Affairs of *Achaia* alſo, as being ſituate ſo near the Continent, that it was joyned to it by a Bridge. When it was in the hands of the Kings of *Macedon*, this Town, together with *Demetrias* in *Theſſaly*, and the Caſtle of *Acrocorinth*, were called the *Feſters of Greece*: inſomuch that when the *Roman* Senate commanded *Philip*, the Father of *Perſeus*, to ſet the *Grecians* at liberty; the *Græcians* made anſwer, that in vain was their Liberty reſtored them, unleſs theſe three Towns were firſt diſmantled. Permitted by the *Romans* to live according to their own Laws, in memory of that Benefit they refuſed to declare againſt them

in

in behalf of *Antiochus*, who thereupon made himself Master of the Town, and consequently of the Island. But forced to leave the place upon the loss of the Battel at *Thermopylæ*, it became free again; till finally made subject unto *Rome*, with the rest of *Greece*, and with it made a part of the Eastern Empire. In the Division whereof amongst the *Latines* it fell to the share of the *Venetians*; who from hence used with their Gallies to infest the Shores of *Turkie*, and disturb their Trade. Provoked wherewith, especially with their taking of *Ænus*, a City of *Thrace*, under the Conduct of *Nicolas Canalis*, the *Venetian* Admiral, who in that Enterprise had taken 2000 *Turks*, which he carried with him into this Island, *Mahomet* the Great resolves upon the Conquest of it, and with a puissant Army sets before the Town. And though it cost him dear, yet at last he got it, and therewith all the Island also, which depended on the Fortunes of it, *An.* 1471.

6. *SALAMIS* is nigh unto *Megaris*, one of the Provinces of *Achaia*; famous for the Overthrow of the populous Navy of *Xerxes* by the *Athenians* and their Confederates. What was the number of the Souldiers and Gallies of the *Persian* side hath been already declared. The whole *Græcian* Fleet consisted of no more then 270 Vessels, whereof 127 were rigged and set forth at the charge of the *Athenians* only, the rest by the Associates. Yet was the Admiralty committed to *Eurybiades* a *Lacedæmonian*; the *Athenians* preferring the main care of the common Safety before an unseasonable contention for Priority. The *Spartans*, seeing the inequality of Forces, intended not to have hazarded the Battel, but with full sail to have retired to *Peloponnesus*, into which Countrey the *Persians* had made Incursions; respecting more the Welfare of their own Countrey yet defensible, then the desperate estate of *Attica*. This Design was by *Themistocles* (as carefull for the estate of *Athens* as they for *Sparta*) signified to *Xerxes*: who, getting between them and home, compelled them to a necessity of fighting, but to his own Ruine. For in the Conflict more than 200 of his Ships were sunk, and most of the rest taken; the Confederates having lost of their Navy forty only. Between the *Athenians* and the *Megarenses* were many Contentions for this Island; the Fortune of the *Athenians* in the end prevailing. It hath in it a City of the same name, the Royal Seat of *Telamon*, the Father of *Ajax*, so famous in the War of *Troy*: more memorable for giving Birth to *Solon* the *Legislator* of *Athens*, one of the seven Wise men of *Greece*.

7. *ÆGINA*, now called *Engia*, an Island situate over against *Sinus Saronicus*, being that Bay of *Corinth* which openeth into the *Ægæan*, hence called *Golfo di Engia*; the Realm of *Æacus*, made for his Justice and Integerity one of the three Judges of Hell; the other two being his Brother *Rhadamanthus*, and *Minos* the King of *Crete*. It had formerly been called *Oenone*, and *Oenope*; but took this name from *Ægina*, the Daughter of *Asopus* a King of *Bœotia*, on whom *Jupiter* is said to have begot both *Æacus* and *Rhadamanthus*. The people hereof are properly called *Æginenses* and *Æginetæ*, much spoken of in the Wars of *Athens*, from which they are distant about 12 miles. The Ground hereof is very stony, but good for Barley, of which it is very plentiful: inhabited in former times by a laborious and thriving People, to whom they gave in those days the name of *Myrmidons*, (the Island being also called *Myrmidonia*) *quòd Formicarum more Terram fodirent*, because Emmet-like they digged up and under the Earth, to make it the more fit for Tillage; who dwelt at first in Caves without any Houses. Hence the occasion of the Fable of turning Emmets into Men at the prayer of *Æacus*. Both Tale and People after (I know not how) were carried into *Thessaly*, where before we found them.

8. The *CYCLADES*, so called because they lie in a Circle round about *Delos*, are in number 53. They are also called the *Islands of the Arches*, because they are in the Sea called *Archipelago*. They stand so close together, that in a clear day a man may see 20 of them at a time; for which cause it is with good reason accounted to be a dangerous place for Sailours in a Storm. The chief of these *Cyclades* are, 1. *DELOS*, *quasi* Δῆλος, signifying *apparent*; because when all the Earth had abjured the receit of *Latona* at the request of *Juno*, this Island, then under water, was by *Jupiter* erected aloft, and fixt to receive her; and in it was she delivered of *Apollo* and *Diana*: of which thus *Ovid*;

——— *Erratica* Delos
Errantem accepit, tunc cùm levis Insula nabat.
Illic incumbens sub Palladis *arbore, Palmâ,*
Edidit invitâ geminos Latona *novercâ.*
Unsettled *Delos* floating on the Wave,
A little Island, Entertainment gave
To wandring *Laton*, spight of *Juno*'s Head,
Under *Minerva*'s Palm-tree brought to Bed.

Notable also is this Island for the Temple of *Apollo*, and a Custom, neither permitting men to die, or Children to be born, in it; but sending sick Men and great-bellied Women to *Rhene*, a small Island, and not much distant. By a more ancient name it is called *Ortygia*; and by that name mentioned in many of the Poets, both *Greek* and *Latine*. The chief Town of it, called also *Delos*, is situate on a Plain environed with Rocks, near the Hill called *Cynthus*, whence *Apollo* had the name of *Cynthius*, and *Diana* of *Cynthia*; as of *Delius*, and *Delia*, from the Island. In this Town had *Apollo* both his Temple and Oracle, delivered here more plainly then in other places, whence (as some say) it was called *Delos*; the word in *Greek* signifying *manifest* or *apparent*: made famous by the resort of people from all places hither, especially from the neighbouring Islands, who sent yearly multitudes of men and troups of Virgins to celebrate his Solemnities with Herds of Sacrifices. More wealthy afterwards by the removing of the Trade of *Corinth* hither; that Town being utterly destroyed by the *Romans*, and this made choice of by the Merchant; partly by reason of the Immunities of the place, but principally in regard of the convenient situation betwixt *Europe* and *Asia*. It continued in great Wealth and Power till *Mithridates* laid it waste; and at last, on the ceasing of the Oracles, was utterly forsaken. Both Town and Island are now called *Sdiles*. By which name also *Rhene*, an adjoyning Island, (before mentioned) is at this day known; chained to the other by *Polycrates* the Tyrant of *Samos*, and now united to it, at the least in name.

2. *TENOS*, by *Aristotle* called *Hydrussa*, by some *Ophiussa*, by the Moderns *Tina*. The chief Town of it is of the same name, so called from one *Tenes* the Builder of it, and giving name unto the Island. Memorable for a Fountain called *Dipnosus*, of which *Aristotle* and *Athenæus* do both affirm, that the Waters will not mix with Wine. The only Island of this Sea which remaineth under the power of the State of *Venice*, the rest being subject to the *Turk*; deserving therefore the first place in our Description of those Islands that incompass *Delos*, though anciently.

3 *ANDROS* (*prima inter Cycladas*,) was reckoned chief amongst the *Cyclades*, or first at least in order, because next to *Delos*: originally called *Cauros*, afterwards *Antandros*, and at last *Andros*; from *Andrus* the Son of *Eurimachus*, who founded the chief Town in it, of the same

ſame name alſo. Memoroble for a pleaſant Fountain mentioned by *Pliny*, the waters whereof on the Nones of *January* yearly had the taſte of Wine. It ſtill retains the name of *Andro*, or *Andri*.

4. *NAXOS*, now *Nicſia*, one of the biggeſt of the Pack, as being about 80 miles in compaſs. In ancient times it was called *Veneris Inſula*, or the Iſland of *Venus*; afterwards *Dionyſia*, by reaſon of its abundance of Wine, and the goodneſs of thoſe Wines together, conſecrated to *Bacchus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Dionyſius*. From its wonderfull plenty of Wheat called by ſome *Sicilia minor*, or the *Leſſer Sicily*; but at laſt *Naxos*, from one *Naxus*, who had the conduct of a Colony of *Carians* hither. But notwithſtanding this new name, *Bacchus* did ſtill retain the honour to be worſhipped in it, in regard of his love unto the place; marriing here *Ariadne*, (as the Poets fable) whom *Theſeus* had left upon the Rocks: whoſe Coronet or Chaplet, being by his means made one of the heavenly Conſtellations, is by *Columella* called *Ardor Naxius*, by the name of the Iſland,; though commonly by Aſtronomers *Corona Ariadnes*, from the name of the Lady. The Women of this Iſland are ſaid by *Pliny* to be delivered generally in the eighth moneth, as *Bacchus* was born within that term. But it is more certainly famous in true Story for the Beauty and Fertility of it, and for a kind of excellent Marble called *Ophites* or *Serpentinus*; the ground whereof is green, diapered with blew or purple Spots, in much eſteem amongſt the *Romans*. When theſe Iſlands fell to the *Venetians*, they conferred this on one *John* [illegible]*rino*, a Patrician or Gentleman of that City, (as they and divers of the reſt on other Undertakers) from whom it came to the Noble Family of the *Criſpo's*, who held it till the year 1572, when *James* the laſt of that Houſe loſt it to *Selymus* the ſecond.

5. *GYAROS*, a little Iſland, into which the *Romans* uſed to baniſh Delinquents. Hence that of *Juvenal*, cited by *G. Sandys*.

Aude aliquid brevibus Gyaris *vel carcere dignum,*
Si vis eſſe aliquid: Probitas laudatur, & alget.
If thou intend'ſt to thrive, do what deſerves
Short *Gyaros* or Gyves: prais'd Vertue ſtarves.

6. *PAROS*, now *Pario*, by ſome of the Ancients called *Pactya*, by others *Minoa*; but it obtained this new name from *Parus*, a Son of *Jaſon*: memorable for Quarries of the whiteſt Marble, of which commonly the Statues of the Gods were made, called from hence *Marmor Parium* by the *Latins*. It is in compaſs about 50 miles, running in a long Plain from Eaſt to Weſt, having once a Town of the ſame name ſeated in the North, once famous, but now utterly ruined. The Inhabitants hereof were noted to be very careleſs of keeping their Promiſes and Contracts: whence ἀναπειάζων grew into a Byword, applied to thoſe who made no reckning of their Promiſes. There is now a Town in it called *Cephalo*, but it is of no great note.

7. *SCYROS*, oppoſit to *Magneſia* in *Aſia Minor*, famous for the Birth of *Neoptolemus* or *Pyrrhus*, and that it was the Lurking-place of *Achilles*. For his Mother *Thetis*, being forewarned by an Oracle that he ſhould be ſlain in the *Trojan* War, ſent him to *Lycomedes* King of this Iſland, where he was brought up in Woman's Attire amongſt the King's Daughters, and deemed a Virgin; till by getting *Pyrrhus* on *Deidamia* the King's Daughter it was proved to be otherwiſe. Others relate that *Ulyſſes* diſcovered him by a Wile, who, coming thither like a Pedler or Peti-merchant with Armes and other Ware, to avoid diſtruſt, expoſed his Merchandiſe to the view of the Damoſels: when the other Ladies falling on the Tires and Laces, *Achilles* took into his hand the Spear aud Shield. Which when *Ulyſſes* had obſerved, he made him leave that Company, and away for *Troy*. The handſomeneſs of the fraud take from *Ovid*, thus:

Conſcia venturi Genitrix Nereia *Fati*
Diſſimulat Cultu Natum; & deceperat omnes
(In quibus Ajacem) ſumptæ fallacis Veſtis.
Arma ego fœmineis animum motura virilem
Mercibus inſerui, &c.

Thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys* in his Tranſlation of the *Metamorphoſes*;

The whole Deſign in order to relate:
Thetis, fore-knowing great *Achilles* Fate,
Diſguis'd her Son, ſo like a Vergin dreſt,
That all miſtook, and *Ajax* with the reſt.
When Arms with Womens Trifles, which might blind
Suſpect, I brought to tempt a manly Mind.
Yet was the *Heros* Virgin-like array'd;
Who taking up the Shield and Spear, I ſaid,
O Goddeſs-born, for thee the Fate of *Troy*
Her Fall reſerves: why doubtſt thon to deſtroy
Great *Pergamus*? then made him d' off thoſe Weeds,
And ſent the Mighty unto mighty Deeds.

There is another of this name betwixt *Negropont* and *Leſbos*, which *Ortelius* conceives to be the Scene of this Action: but the general opinion is for this, (though that be the greater Iſle) to which the ſituation of it amongſt the reſt of thoſe Iſlands where reigned ſo many of the *Greek* Kings intereſſed in the War of *Troy* ſeems to give good countenance; the name and power of *Greece* not reaching in thoſe days ſo much towards the North.

8. *MELOS*, ſituate betwixt *Crete* and *Peloponneſus*, and equally diſtant from them both; The Promontories of *Scylleum* in the one, and that of *Dictynnæum* in the other, ſhooting out againſt it. Inhabited in former times by a Colony of *Phœnicians*, who coming out of *Byblus*, a Town of that Countrey, gave that name unto it: being called *Melos* afterwards by the *Greeks*, from its abundance of *Honey*. The Birth-place of *Diagoras* the Philoſopher, hence ſurnamed *Melius*, but more properly Ἄθεος or the *Atheiſt* the firſt who in thoſe dark times of Ignorance abſolutely denied that there was a God. Protagoras *Deos in dubium vocavit*, Diagoras *excluſit*, ſaith *Lactantius* of him. It is now called *Milo*, round in form, and containing 80 miles in compaſs. The Soil is ſufficiently fruitfull in Corn and Oyl, but defective in Wine. Here is great plenty of Marble curiouſly beſpotted, and no ſmall ſtore of Mill-ſtones; as alſo great quantities of Pitch and Brimſtone, and ſome Sulphury or hot Springs good for many Diſeaſes. The cheif Town of it is called *Milo* alſo

9. *SERIPHUS*, 20 miles from *Delos*, memorable of old for the Education of *Perſeus* the Son of *Danae*. It is reported of this Iſland, that the Frogs bred there are naturally mute; but ſuch as are brought from other places keep their natural tone: from whence, Proverbially, ſilent and ſullen perſons were called *Ranæ Seriphiæ*. It is now called *Serfine* or *Serphone*, a ſtony and rocky Iſland, and hath a Town of the ſame name.

10. *CIA*, by ſome called *CEOS*, and now *Zea*, oppoſit to the Promontory of *Achaia* called *Sunium*, in compaſs about 50 miles; made towards the Weſt, in faſhion of a Creſcent or half-Moon, mountainous and hilly, except towards the North; by *Pliny* ſaid to have been torn from *Eubœa*, by a ſudden violence of the Sea, many men periſhing in the waters. Of old times it was beautified with three fair Towns; 1. *Julis*, 2. *Carthea*, and 3. *Careſſus*: of which there is nothing now remaining.

Others there are whoſe names occur amongſt the Ancients: as 11. *Miconus*, now called *Micole*; 12. *Cythnus*, now *Cauro*; 13. *Siphnus*, now *Siphano*; 14. *Therafia*, now *Santorini*; 15. *Cimolis*, called formerly *Echinuſa*, but now *Polino*; 16. *Oliarus*, now *Quiniminio*; 17. *Si-*

cenus

cenus, now *Sicino*, ; 18. *Polyægos*, now *Falconara*; 19. *Amorgos*, now *Murgo*, one of the biggeſt of them all, but not elſe obſervable.

9. The *SPORADES* are ſo called from σπείρω, *ſpargo*, *eò quòd in Mari ſparſæ ſunt, & non in Circulum coactæ*, becauſe they lie diſperſed and ſcatered, not formed into a Circle, as the *Cyclades* are. They are in number twelve. *viz.* 1. *Anaphe*, ſo called by the *Argonauts*, ἀπὸ τ ἀναφανίσης (ϗοτομένης, becauſe the Moon did ſuddenly, and beyond her natural courſe, appear unto them, then grievouſly diſtreſſed by Tempeſt. *Apollo* worſhipped here is hence called *Anapheus*. It is now uſually called *Namſio*. 2. *Aſtypalæa*, now *Stampalia*, in compaſs 88 miles, by ſome of the Ancients called *Theon Trapeza*, or the *Table of the Gods*. In *Aſtypale*, the cheif Town of it, was *Apollo* worſhipped, from hence ſometimes called *Aſtypaleus*. 3. *Helene*, ſo called from that fair *Greek* Dame, whom *Paris* is here ſaid to have firſt deflowred; now called *Macroniſi*. 4. *Los*, fifteen miles from *Naxos*, where *Homer* is ſaid to have been buried: But others finde his Grave at *Naxos*, and ſome at *Chios*; the difference being almoſt as great about the place of his Burial as the place of his Birth. Then are 5. *Laguſa*, 6. *Phocuſa*, 7. *Phæcaſia*, 8. *Philocandros*, 9. *Schinuſa*, 10. *Strybia*, ; of little note either in Poetry or Story. And finally, 11. *Thera*, not far from *Ægina*, before mentioned, formerly called *Calliſte*; but named thus by *Theras* a *Theban* Gentleman, the Son of *Autesion*, conducting hither a Colony of *Spartans* and *Minyans*, (theſe laſt of *Theſſaly*) caſt out of *Lemnos* by *Pelaſgus*: in memory of whom, as the Founder of their Name and Nation, the Iſlanders uſed to celebrate an annual Feaſt. A Sedition after happening amongſt this People, the weaker party, under the Conduct of one *Battus*, admoniſhed ſo to doe by the Oracle of *Apollo*, paſſed over into *Africk*, and there built *Cyrene*. The Birth-place of the Poet *Callimachus*, who aſcribes his Original to this Iſland, as himſelf thus witneſſeth,

Καλείϛ Θηρηίδα, τὸ δ' ὕϛερον ὄνομα Θήρη,
Μήτηρ ϗυδηλε παιδὸϛ ἐμειτέρε.

That is to ſay,

Calliſte, which men *Thera* now do call,
Of my dear Countrey the Original.

10. *CYTHERA*, now called *Cerigo*, lieth in the bottom of this Sea not above five miles diſtant from *Capo Malio* in *Peloponneſus*; formerly called *Porphyris*, from the abundance of Marble, whereof the Iſland yields good plenty. It is in compaſs about 60 miles, enriched with a delightfull Soil, and having many Havens, but thoſe ſmall and unſafe, and very difficult of entrance. It is environed on all ſides with Rocks, of Themſelves inacceſſible, by which it is defended from the *Turks*, who hitherto have ſuffered the *Venetians* to enjoy it, to whom it fell in the diviſion of the Spoil amongſt the *Latines*, ſo often ſpoken of before. It had a Town of the ſame name: ſome two furlongs from the Haven ſtood the Temple of *Venus*, (the ancienteſt dedicated to that Goddeſs which the *Græcians* had) and therin her *Statua* in compleat Armour, like another *Pallas*. Out of this Temple (the Ruines whereof are ſtill to be ſeen) was *Helen*, the Wife of *Menelaus*, willingly raviſhed by *Paris*, the Son of *Priam*; but not enjoyed by him, till he had brought her to a ſmall Iſland of the *Sporades* by her name called *Helene*, as before is ſaid. From the Devotions of this People paid ſo duely to her, did *Venus* get the Adjunct of *Cytherea*, by which ſhe is often called in the Poets. Thus, for one, in *Virgil*,

Parce metu, Cytherea, *manent immota tuorum*
Fata tibi——

That is to ſay,

Drive Fear, fair *Cytherea*, from thy mind;
Thou thy Son's Fate immovable ſhalt find.

And ſo I paſs from the *Ægæan* to the *Cretan* Sea, obſerving this onely by the way, that moſt of the 69 Kings which accompanied *Agamemnon* in the War of *Troy* were Kings onely of theſe ſmall Iſlands; or elſe of other places as inconſiderable for wealth and Potency: every ſmall Town and Territory having in thoſe early times amongſt the *Græcians* (when Ambition had not taught the Great ones to devour the leſs) a peculier King.

9. The *Iſlands* of the *CRETAN* Sea.

THe *CRETAN Sea* is properly that part of the *Ægæan* or *Ionian* Sea which lyeth about the Shores of *Crete*, and formerly was under the Command and power thereof: as in thoſe times, the Sea about *Carpathus*, another Iſle of the *Ægæan*, had the name of *Carpathian*; and that about *Icaria*, the name of *Icarian*; though ſituate in the *Ægæan* alſo. The Iſles hereof are, 1. *Crete*, 2. *Claude*, 3. *Dia*, and 4. *Letoa*; for *Melos* and *Cimolis*, named by *Ptolemy* againſt the Iſlands which adjoyn on *Crete*, having been already ſpoken of amongſt the *Cyclades*, in the accompt whereof they paſs by conſent of Writers.

1. *CRETA*, now *Candie*, hath on the Eaſt the *Carpathian* Sea, on the Weſt the *Ionian*, on the North the *Ægæan*, on the South the *African* or *Libyck*. In form it extendeth Eaſt and Weſt with three Points or Promontories: whereof that towards the Eaſt, called anciently *Samonium*, is now called *Capo di Salamone*; that on the South-weſt, looking towards *Africk*, formerly named *Hermæa*, is now *Capo Gabraſſe*, and finally, that on the North-Weſt towards *Peloponneſus*, of old called *Cimarus*, is now called *Capo Cheſtin*. This laſt is directly oppoſit to *Malea*, a Promontory of *Laconia*; the Sea betwixt them being ſo troubleſom and tempeſtuous eſpecially on *Laconia* ſide, that at laſt it grew into an ordinary Caveat, *Maleam prætervectus obliviſcatur quæ ſunt domi*, *viz.* that he which was to Sail by the point of *Malea*, ſhould lay aſide the care of all other matters, and attend his preſent Safety onely.

It hath in ſeveral Ages and in ſeveral Authors obtained ſeveral names. By *Homer* and *Auſtathius* it is called *Hecatompolis*, from the number of an *hundred Cities* then contained in it: by *Pliny* and *Solinus*, *Macaros*, and *Macaroneſos*, that is to ſay, the *happy Iſland*, from the goodneſs of the Soil and temper of the Air: by *Stephanus*, *Idæa*, from *Ida* a famous Mountain of it: by *Giraldus*, *Telchinia*, from the *Telchini*, the Prieſts of *Cybele*, who was here had in great requeſt. At the preſent it is called *Candie*, either *à Candore*, from the *Whiteneſs* of the Rocks wherewith it is environed; or from *Candia* the Metropolis or cheif Town thereof. But the general name which hath prevailed moſt in all ſorts of Writers is that of *Crete*, ſo called *quaſi Cureta*, by a Syncope or Abbreviation, from the *Curetes*, the firſt Inhabitants hereof; who, together with the *Corybantes* and *Telchini*, were the Prieſts of *Cybele* the principal Goddeſs of this Iſland: and they ſo called ἀπὸ τῆς κυρᾶς, from their *Tonſure* or *Shaving* of the Head. A Cuſtome much in uſe amongſt the Prieſts of ſome of the Pagan Deities, and poſſibly enough from them tranſmitted to the Church of *Rome*. And to this Etymology I do rather incline, then either to derive the name from *Cretes*, the Son of *Jupiter* and the Nymph *Idæa*; or from *Crete* the Daughter of *Heſperus*, though both theſe have their Authours alſo. Nor dare I to reject the Conceit of *Bochartus*, who,

who, fetching the Etymons of most people from the *Punick* Language or Original, will have the *Cretans* to be descended from the *Cerethites*, a Nation of the *Philistins*, well known in Scripture; the word *Cereth* being abbreviated into *Creth*, from which into *Crete* and *Cretans* is no difficult passage. But in my mind his Conjecture is better then his Proof. For though it may be granted without inconvenience that the chief Arms of the *Philistins* were their Bow and Arrows, as appears 1 *Sam.* 31. 3. and that the *Cretans* anciently were expert at those Weapons also: yet this concludes no more that the *Cretans* are of the Race of the *Philistins*, than that almost all Nations else had the same Original; the Bow and Arrows being the ordinary Weapons of most People formerly, till Custom and Experience trained them up to others of a later date; as he himself acknowledgeth in many places of his excellent and elaborate Tractates.

In reference to the Heavenly Bodies it is situate under the beginning of the fourth Climate, so that the longest Day in Summer is no more then 14 hours and a quarter: and in relation to the Earth, set in the middle of the Sea, at so even a distance from *Europe*, *Asia* and *Africk*, as if naturally designed to be what *Aristotle* hath pleased to call it, the *Lady* and *Mistress of the Sea*. For it is distant from *Peloponnesus* an hundred miles, as many from *Asia* the Less, and not above 150 from the Shores of *Africk*: so verifying that of *Virgil*,

Creta Jovis *magni medio jacet Insula Ponto.*
Jove's Birth-place *Crete*, a fruitful Land,
In th' middle of the Sea doth stand.

It is in length 270, in breadth 50 miles, in compass about 590. The Soil is very fruitful, especially of Wines which we call *Muscadells*, of which they transport yearly 12000 Butts; together with Sugar-Candy, Gums, Honey, Sugar, Olives, Dates, Apples, Orenges, Limons, Raisins, Melons, Citrons, Pomegranats. Yet, as other Countreys of the like hot nature, it is not a little deficient in Corn; the most or greatest part of which is yearly brought hither from *Peloponnesus*.

The Island is very populous, insomuch that it is thought that upon any sudden occasion the Seigniory of *Venice* can raise in it 60000 men able to bear Arms. The people have formerly been good Sea-fairing men; a Vertue commaculated with many Vices, which they yet retain, as Envy, Malice, and Lying: to which last they are so infinitely addicted, that an horrible Lie was called proverbially *Cretense mendacium*. This fault was aimed at by the Poet *Epimenides*, a Native of this Island, whose words are thus cited by S. *Paul* to *Titus*, Chap. 1. v. 12.

Κρῆτες ἀεὶ ψεῦσται, κακὰ θηρία, γαστέρες ἀργαί.

The *Cretans* always Liers are,
Unruly Beasts, of Labour spare.

To which this Proverb may be added, *viz.* Τρία Κάππα κάκιστα, that is to say, There are three Nations whose names begin with the letter *K* worse then any others; *viz.* Καππάδοκες, Κρῆτες, Κίλικες, the *Cappadocians*, *Cretans*, and *Cilicians*: though some, I know, apply this Proverb to the Cities of *Corinth*, *Capua*, and *Carthage*, beginning all with the same Letter, and all conceived to be very dangerous to the State of *Rome*. At this day the are sick of their old Diseases, as great Liers and as Idle as ever formerly; Covetous withal, and very subtile, impatient of Labour, and not caring to learn any Science perfectly: only well practised in Shooting, to which they are accustomed from their youth, and therein thought more expert then the *Turks* themselves.

The Language generally spoken is the *Greek* Tongue; though the Gentleman and Merchant, by reason of their Dependence on the State of *Venice*, speak *Italian* also. Both Languages are used also in Divine Offices: the people being generally of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*; but the *Latine* Service is used also in many places, since the Subjection of this Island to the *Venecians*. They were converted first unto the Faith by S. *Paul* the Apostle, who, having planted the Gospel of Life amongst them, left the watering of it unto *Titus*, whom he made Bishop of this Isle; recommending unto him the Care of the Churches there, with power of Ordination and Ecclesiastical Censure; as appears clearly by the Text Which power that it belonged to *Titus* as Bishop, and not as their Evangelist only, is affirmed expresly not only by the Subscription of the said Epistle, where he is plainly called ὁ Κρήτων ἐκκλησίας πρῶτος ἐπίσκοπος, the first Bishop of the Church of the *Cretans*; but by the concurrent Testimonies of *Euseb. Eccl. Hist. l.* 3. *c.* 4. S. *Ambr. in Præfat ad Tit.* S. *Hieron. in Tit. c.* 1. *v.* 5. and in his Tract *de Scriptor. Ecclesiasticis*, *Theodoret*, cited by *Oecumen. in Præfat. ad Ep. Tit. Oecumenius* himself in *Tit.* 1. and finally by *Theophylact* in his Preface to the same Epistle. All which in plain terms call him *Bishop*, and the Bishop of *Crete*; according to that sense and meaning of the word *Episcopus*, as it was used in their times, distinct from *Presbyter*. The Church hereof, whilst wholly under the *Greek* Patriaches, was governed by four Arch-bishops and 21 Bishops. But since the Subjection of this Island to the State of *Venice*, there is but one Archbishop, which is he of *Candia*, the chief City, and eight Bishops only; besides the titular Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who hath there his Residence; some Prelate of the *Latine* Church having been always honoured with that empty Title ever since the Recovery of that City from the Western Christians.

Famous was this Island amongst the Ancients for many things memorized both by the Poets and old Historians. For here reigned *Saturn* in the first Ages of the World, Father of *Jupiter*, who was born here, and secretly nursed in the Hill called *Ida*. For seeing that, by the Compact betwixt *Saturn* and his Brother *Titan*, *Saturn* was to enjoy the Kingdom for his own Life only, but all his Male-children to be murthered as soon as born; *Jupiter*, by the care of his Mother *Cybele*, was conveyed away, and secretly nursed in Mount *Ida*, as before was said: the Crying of the Infant being drowned by the noise of loud-sounding Cymbals, purposely used by his Rockers to avoid Discovery. Whence afterwards the *Corybantes*, or Priests of *Cybele*, used in her Sacrifices the like musical Instruments, continually sounding, and withal shaking of their Heads, (like Fidlers) in an antick and ridiculous manner. Alluding whereunto thus the Poet *Claudian*;

Non te progenitum Cybeleius *Ære canoro*
Lustravit Corybas.

That is to say,

No *Cybeleian Corybas* that day
That thou was born did on his Cymbal play.

Here also lived *Minos* and *Rhadamanthus*, whose Laws were after imitated in the prime Cities of *Greece*, and who, for their Equity on Earth, are feigned by the Poets to be (together with *Æacus*) the Judges in Hell. In this Island also lived the lewdly-lustful *Pasiphae*, Wife of *Minos*, who is fabled by the Poets (if it be a Fable) to have doated on a white Bull, who, they say, begat on her the *Minotaur*: *Dedalus* having framed for her an artificial Cow, into which she conveyed her self, and by that means obtained her desire. The Fable is thus expounded, that *Pasiphae* was in love with *Taurus*, one of *Minos*'s Secretaries: whose company by the Pandarism of *Dedalus* she enjoying, was delivered of two Sons, one called *Minos*, the other *Taurus*. And whereas it is said that the *Mino-*

taur was slain by *Theseus*; like enough that the annual Tribute of 7 Children, which the *Athenians* paid to *Minos*, was laid up in some Prison, *Minos* and *Taurus* being the Keepers or Gaolers. As for the action of *Pasiphae*, I think it not altogether impossible to be true, considering how *Domitian*, to verifie the old relation, exhibited the like beastly Spectacle in his Amphitheatre at *Rome*: for thus saith *Martial*,

Junctam Pasiphaen Dictæo, *credite*, Tauro
Vidimus; *accepit Fabula prisca fidem.*
Nec se miretur (Cæsar) *longæva Vetustas*:
Quicquid Fama canit, donat Arena tibi.
The Fable's prov'd a Truth, our eyes did see
The *Cretan* Bull sport with *Pasiphae*.
What cause hath then Antiquity to glory?
We saw it done, she only heard the Story.

Finally, here was the so-much-celebrated *Labyrinth*, made by *Dædalus* for the including and safe-keeping of the *Minotaurus*; so full of various Windings and turnings, that when any one was got to the end thereof, it was impossible for him to come out but by the help of a Clew of thread. By this *Minotaur* (half a Man, half a Bull) the Children of the *Athenians* paid yearly to *Minos* in way of Tribute are said to be murthered, till he was killed by *Theseus*, Son of *Ægeus* King of *Athens*, with whom *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* falling in love, taught him a means to kill the Monster, and gave him the Clew of thread, before spoken of, to conduct him out again: the Moral or History whereof hath been shewn before. Nor must it be forgotten, that *Strabo* the Geographer, who flourished in the time of *Tiberius Cæsar*, was of *Cretan* Parents, (though born in the City of *Amasia* in the Realm of *Pontus*:) which adds unto this Island as much true Renown as any of the Fictions or Stories (be which they will) of former times.

Things most observable at the present are these that follow. 1. That it breeds no Serpents, no venemous Worm, or ravenous or hurtful creature; so that their Sheep graze very securely without any Shepherd. 2. If a Woman bite a Man any thing hard, he will hardly be cured of it: which if true, then the last part of the Privilege foregoing (of breeding no hurtful creature) must needs be false. 3. They have an Herb called *Alimos*, which if one chew in his mouth he shall feel no Hunger for that day, if *Quade* may be believed, who speaks it. 4. Here is (besides many other medicinal Herbs) that called *Dictamnum*, or *Dictamnus*, of special virtue against Poison, either by way of Prevention or present Cure, peculiar only to this Island: it affordeth great store of *Landanum*, a Juice or Gum forced with incredible labour out of a certain Tree called *Cistus*, of which the Mountains yield abundance; good to cause Sleep, if moderately and carefully taken; but if not very well prepared and taken with moderation, it brings the last Sleep upon a man, out of which he is not to be awakened till the Sound of the last Trumpet raise him.

Chief Mountains of it are, 1. *Ida*, now *Psiloriti*, situate in the midst of the Island, begirt about with many fair and pleasant Villages, sheltred by it from the violence of Wind and Sun; the Hill being so high, that from the Top hereof both sides of the Island may be easily seen. Here *Jupiter* is said to have been secretly nursed, from hence called *Idæus*. And at the bottom of it the *Cretans* use to shew some tracts of the ancient Labyrinth, being indeed no other then the Ruines of some larger Quarry: the Labyrinth made by *Dædalus* being so defaced in the time of *Pliny*, that he knew not where to find any Ruines of it. 2. *Dicte*, now called *Sethia*, in some places *Lasthi*, so high, that all the Winter long it is covered with Snow; yet all the sides thereof are garnished with Cypress-trees: a Mountain of such fame, that the whole Island sometimes had the name of *Dictæa*, the City *Dictynna*, the Promontory *Dictynnæum*, and the Herb *Dictamnos*, all seeming to take name from hence. 3. *Leuci*, a long Chain of Hills, so named from the Whiteness of them, now called *di Madara*, and by some *La Spachia*.

Rivers of any eminence here are few or none. The principal of those that be are, 1, *Milopotamus*, 2. *Scasinus*, 3. *Epicidnus*, and 4. *Divotro*, towards the North; 5. *Populiar*, towards the East; and 6. *Limens*, towards the West: none of them navigable, or capable of Ships of Burthen, scarce of little Barks. But that defect is supplied by the neighbouring Sea, which affordeth many Creeks and Bays, some capacious Havens, and great store of Fish, among which a kind of bearded Mullet, reckoned among the Delicacies of the ancient *Romans*. By the convenience of which Harbours, their Fish-trade, and the situation of it in the midst of the Sea, the People anciently were esteemed so good Sea-faring men, that when the people of those times did tax a man with any incredible report, they used to say, *Cretensis nescit Pelagus*, meaning thereby the matter to be as improbable as for one of *Crete* to be no Sailour.

In former times there were reckoned in this Island an hundred Cities, whence it was called *Hecatompolis*; of which about 40 were remaining in the time of *Ptolemy*, for so many of their names he gives us. Those of most note were, 1. *Gnossus*, the Seat-royal or Court of *Minos*, whence *Ariadne* the Daughter of *Minos* had the name of *Gnossis*; in former times called *Ceratus*, from a little River of that name running not far off. 2. *Cydon*, or *Cydonia*, a midland City, (as the former) memorable for an excellent kind of Apples, which the *Latines* called *Poma Cydonia*, amongst whom they were in great request, as they are at this day (though by the name of *Adam's Apples*) amongst the *Turks*: the most ancient of all the Cities of *Crete*, many of which were at first Colonies of this; for which reason it was called commonly *Mater urbium*. 3. *Eleuthera*, *as Ptolemy*, *Erythræa*, as the printed Copies of *Florus* corruptly call it; one of the first Cities taken here by the *Romans*. 4. *Miletum*, mentioned by *Strabo*, though omitted by *Ptolemy*; the place in which S. *Paul* left *Trophimus* sick, as is mentioned 2 *Tim.* 4. 20. which happened when the Apostle hovered about that Coast, as is said *Act.* 27. 7, 8. *&c.* For that it could not be that *Miletum* to which he congregated the Elders of *Ephesus*, appeareth by his being at *Hierusalem*, *Act.* 21. 17. and other circumstances of the Story. 5. *Gortyna*, nigh to which stood the Labyrinth made by *Dædalus*: memorable also for a Reed, growing on the River *Lenæus*, (near to which it stood) of which they made their strongest Arrows, by *Virgil Æneid.* 11. called *Spicula Gortynia*; as also for a light Garment much used by Hunters, which *Claudian* calls *Gortyniam vestem*, apparelling *Diana* the great Huntress with it. 6. *Dictamnum*, as *Ptolemy*, or *Dictynna*, as *Pliny* calls it; so named from the Hill *Dicte*, near to which it is situate: one of the chief Cities of the North parts of this Island; as 7. *Ampelus*, so named from its plenty of Vines, was upon the South. 8. *Minoa*, a Port-town, (now *Altemara*) so named from *Minos*, in the East; and 9. *Corycus*, on a Promontory of the same name, in the West side of it.

But these, and almost all the rest spoken of by *Ptolemy*, being so destroyed by Time and Wars that the Ruines of them are hardly visible, we must behold it in the present condition and estate thereof, divided into four parts or Provinces, according to the names and number of the four chief Cities; that is to say, 1. *Sittia*, 2. *Candia*, 3. *Retimo*, and 4. *Canea*.

In the first part, called *SITTIA*, lying towards the East, are 74 Villages, and but 17 Parishes, of which six only are of the Church of *Rome*, the residue holding

ding the Communion of the Church of *Greece*. The principal whereof are, 1. *Sittia*, or *Cytia*, conceived by some to be the *Cytæum* of *Ptolemy*, a small Town, but populous, and very well fortified. 2. *Citrapetra*, betwixt *Sittia* and *Candia*, seated on the Sea-side, on a lofty Rock, at the bottom whereof is said to be a dangerous Whirl-pit, supposed to be the *Panormus* of *Ptolemy*. 3. *S. Macor*, the dwelling-place of one of the Bishops of the *Latines*,

2. In the second part hereof, called the Territory of *CANDIA*, lying directly West of *Sittia*, are reckoned 463 Towns and Villages, making up amongst them 99 Parish Churches; whereof 77 are of the Communion of the Church of *Greece*, the other 22 only of the Church of *Rome*. Of these the principal are, 1. *Candia*, an Archbishop's See, the Metropolis or Head-City of the Island, which takes name from hence. It is situate on the North-coast hereof towards the *Ægæan*, beautified with a safe and commodious Haven, and fortified so strongly, that it seems impregnable; affirmed by some to be the *Matium* of the Ancients: but I find no such place in *Ptolemy*, or in *Ortelius* his *Thesaurus*. The City is fair and large, built for the most part of Free-stone, with low Roofs, after the manner of *Italy*, the Streets broad and spacious from whence a fair and pleasant Plain leadeth to a place called the Cave of *Minos*, reported by the common people to be the Sepulchre of *Jupiter*. 2. *Malvisin*, 3. *Themeni*, 4. *Castel novo*, 5. *Bonifacio*, 6. *Belvedere*, 7. *Mirabello*; of which little memorable.

3. In the third part, being the Territory of *RETIMO*, formerly *Rhithymna*, lying North-west of the Territory of *Candia*, are accounted 265 Towns and Villages, making up 44 Parishes, whereof 36 are *Græcians*, and but 8 of the *Latines*. The chief of which are, 1. *Retimo*, on the Shore of the Northern Sea, as *Candia* is, well fortified, and a Bishop's See; but not else observable. 2. *Milopotamo*, an Episcopal See also, so called of the River *Milopotamus*, on which it is seated. 3. *Agistiman*, 4. *Mandrus*, 5. *Lappa*; hardly worth the naming.

4. In the fourth and last part hereof, being the Territory of *CANEA*, taking up all the West of the Island, are contained 240 Towns and Villages, distributed into 47 Parishes; of which 33 are of the *Greek* Church, and the 14 remaining of the Church of *Rome*. Those of most note are, 1. *Canea*, built by a Colony or Plantation of *Venetian* Gentlemen, on the North Coast also, supposed to stand in the same place where once *Cydon* did; second to none but *Candia* for Wealth and Beauty, but far before it for the commodiousness of the Port, commonly called *Porto della Suda*, capeable of more then a thousand good Gallies at a time, and therefore strongly fortified with two Cittadels or Castles, on each side of the Haven one, as the Door and Entrance of the Country. 2. *Chisamo*, in *Latine* called *Cisamus*, old and decayed, the Walls thereof only holding good against the Ruines of time; situate in a low mooriſh place towards the *Ægæan*. 3. *Selino*, built upon a Hill on the Sea-side, opposite to *Chisamo*. 4. *Sfachia*, or *Spachia*, situate at the foot of the Mountains, of old called *Leuci*, now *della Spachia*, from this Town: unwalled, but fortified with a Castle, built for a place of Refuge against the Incursions of such Pirates as annoied the Coasts, in which the Governour for this part hath his chief Aboad. By which account it will appear that in the whole Island are no more then 1044 Towns and Villages, and 207 Parish-Churches; of which there be but 48 which are accounted Members of the Church of *Rome*, the residue, 159 in number, retaining their Communion with the Church of *Greece*.

As for the Story of this Island, we can ascend as high as the times of *Saturn*, for his Antiquity affirmed to be the Son of *Uranus* and *Vesta*, or of Heaven and Earth; who, better favoured by his Mother, obtained the Kingdom of *Crete*, his elder Brother *Titan* being quite excluded. Hereupon Wars arising betwixt the Brethren, it was ordered thus, That *Saturn* for his own Life should enjoy the Kingdom, which after his decease should return to the *Titans*: and for the performance of this Contract, the Sons of *Saturn* were to be strangled as soon as born. But *Cybele*, the Wife of *Saturn*, unawares to her Husband, preserved first *Jupiter*, and after other of her Sons; which coming to the knowledge of *Titan* and his Sons, they made War against *Saturn*, but in conclusion were subdued by the Aid of *Jupiter*: whence grew the Fable of the *Titans* warring against the Gods, *Saturn* and *Jupiter* his Son being after reckoned in that number. The *Titans* being vanquished, a new War arose betwixt *Saturn* and *Jupiter*, occasioned only (as many unnatural Wars since these times have been) by *Fears* and *Jealousies*: which ending at the last in the Flight of *Saturn*, *Jupiter* became sole King of *Crete*, reigning there in great power and honour till the time of his death; and dying was interred at *Gnossus*, with this Inscription or Epitaph in old *Greek* Letters, ὁ Ζεὺς τῦ Κρόνυ, that is to say, *Jupiter the Son of Saturn*. After his death he was worshipped by the blind Gentiles as the chief of their Gods, and honoured frequently with the title of Πατὴρ ἀνδρῶν τε θεῶν τε *the Father both of Gods and Men*: though most incongruously and absurdly, as *Lactantius* noteth, there being many thousands living in and before the times of *Saturn*, when *Jupiter* was yet unborn. But to proceed; he being dead, *Minos*, begotten by him on *Europa*, succeeded here; who, wisely taking the advantage which the convenient situation of the Island gave him, made himself Master of the Seas, and afterwards enlarged his Dominions by the Conquest of the *Megarenses* and *Athenians*, upon which last he imposed, amongst other hard Conditions, a Tribute of seven male Children yearly to be kept as Hostages; which determined after three years by the Valour and good Fortune of *Theseus*. But *Minos* being slain in *Sicily*, and his Posterity extinct, the *Cretans* would no longer admit of Kings, but governed themselves after the manner of a Commonwealth or Free State: the Laws and Ordinances whereof, first devised by *Minos*, were of such esteem, that they were much imitated by *Lycurgus*, and are at large described by *Aristotle* in the 2. Book of his Politicks, ch. 8. Under this Government it continued till the *Romans*, having taken in all the rest of *Greece*, picked a Quarrel with them. For though it was pretended that they had been aiding unto *Mithridates* in his War against them; yet *Florus* states the matter rightly, affirming that the War was undertaken on no other ground, but *sola nobilem Insulam vincendi cupiditate*, out of a covetous desire only of subduing such a wealthy Island. And to this War they went with so proud a Confidence, that *M. Antony*, who commanded in it, carried more Chains with him to bring home his Prisoners then Arms to conquer them. An Insolence which he paid right dear for, his Navy being vanquished by the *Cretans*, the bodies of his slain Souldiers hanged upon the Masts, and himself perishing in the Action by a fit of Sickness. *Metellus*, who succeeded him in that charge, went on more successfully, first taking *Gnossus*, *Eleuthera*, (or *Erythræa*, as *Florus* calls it) and *Cydon*, their principal Cities, and not long after all the Island; using the vanquished Islanders with such Inhumanity, that most of them poisoned themselves to avoid his Cruelty: rewarded with no other Honour for so great a Victory, then that he got the surname of *Creticus*; his Triumph being denied by the Faction of *Pompey*, against whose will he had put himself upon that Service. Thus being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was after united unto *Cyrenaica* by *Augustus*

Cæsar, both making up one Province only, governed by a Proconsul till the death of *Nero*; afterwards separated from it, but the time I find not. During the Reign of *Constantine*, in 36 years together there fell no Rain, so that this Island was in a manner wholly desolated, But *Helena*, the Mother of *Constantine*, having obtained Rain for it by her Prayers to God, it was again new peopled by several Colonies brought out of *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Greece*, and the parts adjoyning. By *Constantine* made a Province of the Diocese of *Macedonia*, it continued a Member of the Eastern Empire till the time of *Michael Balbus*, when it was subdued by the *Saracens*; from them recovered by the more fortunate Conduct of *Nicephorus Phocas*, who came unto the Empire *Anno* 963. In the division of the Spoil amongst the *Latines*, it was first given to *Boniface*, Marquess of *Montferrat*; by him surrendred willingly to the State of *Venice*, who had a mind to be possessed of all the Islands of that Empire: he being recompensed with the Kingdom of *Thessaly*, the fair and wealthy City of *Thessalonica*, and many Towns and Territories in *Peloponnesus*. Under that State it still continueth, in vain attempted by *Selimus* the second in the year 1571, at what time he invaded and conquered *Cyprus*; and gallantly defended for this year last past against all the Forces of *Ibrahim* the late Grand Seigniour. What the Success of this War will be, we shall see hereafter.

For the Defence hereof against the Insurrections of the Inhabitants, who did at first ill brook the *Venetian* Government, there are some standing Forces kept in constant pay; besides such as are maintained in several Garrisons, the City of *Canea* having in it no fewer then six Companies of Souldiers, *Candia* 2000 Souldiers, and the lesser Cities proportionably: over which there is set so strong a Guard, that a natural *Cretan* is not permitted to enter weaponed into any of them. And for the preservation of their Interest in it from a forein Power, they have furnished the Island with 70 or 80 Gallies for the defence of the Shores; and have exceedingly fortified the Haven of *Suda* with two strong Castles, this Haven being capable of more then 1000 Vessels, and therefore meritoriously reputed the Door and Entry into the Countrey. It is reported that the King of *Spain*, *Philip* the second, did offer unto the *Venetians* for this Haven money more then enough; but it could not be accepted. For though the *Spaniard* seemed only to intend the Retreat and Relief of his own Navy when he should undertake any Expedition against the *Turk*; yet the wise *Venetians* saw, that by this Haven he might at all times awe, and when he listed surprize, the whole Countrey.

II. The other Islands of this Sea, as of lesser note, will be pass'd over in few words. The first of which is called CLAUDE, mentioned *Acts* 27. 16. situate on the South-west of *Crete*, by *Mela* called *Gaulos*; wherein in *Plinie*'s time was a Town or City named *Gaudos*, now called *Gozo*, with the Island. 2. *DIA*, now *Standia*, a very small Island, and of little note. 3. *LETOA*, on the South-east of *Crete*, now called *Christiana*. And 4. *ÆGILIA*, or *Ægialia*, by *Pliny Ægila*, more in the Sea towards *Peloponnesus*; now called *Cecerigo* by *Sophianus*. Of which and others of less note (if less may be) there is no more to be said, but that they have always followed the Fortunes of *Crete*, on which they seem to have their principal Dependence.

10. The *Islands* of the *IONIAN* Sea.

THE *IONIAN* Sea is so called either from *Ionius*, the Son of *Dyrrhachius*, whom *Hercules* having ignorantly killed threw into this Sea, giving that name unto it to preserve his memory, as *Didymus* is of opinion or from *Ionia* a Region in the extremity of *Calabria*, as *Solinus*; or from *Io*, the Daughter of *Inachus*, as *Lycophron* the Poet hath it. It containeth all that part of the *Mediterranean* which lieth from the *Ægæan* or *Cretan* Seas unto the *Adriatick*, from which it is parted about *Epidamnum*, (otherwise called *Dyrrhachium*) as is said by *Ptolemy*; or rather at the shooting out of the *Acroceraunian* Hills, as is affirmed by *Pliny* and other Writers; and so along the Shores of the two *Calabria*'s to the Isle of *Sicily*. Chief Isles whereof which pass in the account of *Greece* (for of those lying on the Coast of *Italy* we have spoken elsewhere) are, 1. the *Strophades*, 2 *Zacynthus*, 3. the *Echinades*, 4. *Cephalenia*, 5. *Corcyra*, and 6. *Ithaca*.

1. The *STROPHADES* are two small Islands, now called *Strivali*, lying against *Messene* in *Peloponnesus*; famous for nothing but the *Harpyes*, ravenous Birds, affirmed to have the Faces of Women, but the Talons of Vultures, sent by the offended Gods (as the Fable goeth) for the punishment of *Phineus* King of *Arcadia*, who had put out the Eyes of his Sons by a former Wife at the instigation of their Stepdame. For which he was so plagued by these *Harpyes*, that he could set no Meat on his Table wheresoever he was, but these ravenous creatures first devoured it, and then bewrayed the Dishes in which it was. Much pitied by the *Argonauts*, whom he had courteously entertained, they sent *Zethes* and *Calais*, the winged Issue of *Boreas* and *Orithyia*, who drave them thence, and having pursued them to those Islands, *turned back* again: whence the name of *Strophades*. Under which Fable was contained the sad condition of ignorant or unhappy Princes, devoured by Flatterers, Informers, and false Accusers, by whom their Name and Government was made distastful; till by good Counsel they had purged their Courts of such ugly Monsters: concerning which *Alphonsus* King of *Naples* was used to say, that these *Harpyes* had left the *Strophades* and dwelt at *Rome*. They are inhabited only by some few *Greek* Friers: and in one of them there is a Spring of fresh Water, which hath his Fountain in *Peloponnesus*, and, passing under the Sea, ariseth here. The *Greek* Priests are called *Caloires*, *quasi* καλοὶ ἱερεῖς, *boni Sacerdotes*; about 30 in number. They wear long Hair, never eat Flesh, and but seldom Fish; feeding usually on Herbs, Olives, Oyl, and the like. They never go out of the Islands, neither do they on any occasion permit Women to come amongst them. They all labour for their Sustenance, some in Tillage, some in Vineyards, some in Fishing; so that among very many of them, three or four only can reade. But of these somewhat hath been said elsewhere already.

2. *ZACYNTHUS*, or *Zant*, is 60 miles in compass, and distant from *Peloponnesus* 20 miles; so called of *Zacynthus*, Son to *Dardanus*. The Countrey is wonderfully stored with Oyl, Wines and Currans: of which last they made yearly 150000 Zecchines for their own Coffers, and 48000 Dollars which they pay for Custom to the Seigniory of *Venice*. They were a very poor people when the *English* used to traffick there first; but now they grow rich and proud. At our Merchants first frequenting the Countrey, they much marvelled to what end they bought so many Currans, and demanded whether they used to dye Cloaths or fat Hogs with them, for so they themselves did: but now they have learned a more profitable use of them. Here are also very good Salt-pits, Fresh water plenty, but little or no Wood, and less Corn: their ground being husbanded, as the case stands with them, to their better advantage; but so that

that many times they are ready to ſtarve, if either the Wind or the Sea prove croſs unto them, and hinder them from fetching their Proviſions both of Fleſh and Corn out of *Peloponeſus*. in which reſpect they are fain to hold fair Quarter with the *Turks*, conſidering how eaſie it is for him to diſtreſs them for want of Victual. The Iſland is much troubled with Earthquakes, commonly once a week; in regard whereof they build their Houſes very low; and when they perceive them coming, the Prieſts are to ring the Bells, to ſtir the people to Prayers. They have a Cuſtom here at Weddings to invite many young men, whom they call *Compeers*, of which every one giveth the Bride a Ring: which done, it is accounted as deteſtable a Sin as Inceſt for them to accompany her in any carnal kind: and therefore they chuſe ſuch to be their *Compeers* who have formerly been ſuſpected of too much Familiarity with her.

The Iſland is very populous and well inhabited, but the people of a ſpitefull and vindicative nature, not to be reconciled, if angred. It containeth in it 48 Towns and Villages, the chief whereof, which paſſeth by the name of a City, is called alſo *Zant*, ſtreched out about the length of a mile on the foot of a mountain, but in breadth not anſwerable; beautified with a fair and convenient Haven opening towards *Greece*, ſafe from the danger of Pirats, though not of Winds, capable of great Fleets of ſhipping both for bulk and number, and ſo frequented from all parts, that he who hath a mind to go out of it need not ſtay for a paſſage. Yet, notwithſtanding this great Concourſe and reſort of Strangers, the Town is rather rich then well-built or beautifull; the Streets hereof being uneven and rugged, and the Buildings by reaſon of the often Earthquakes, very low. On the Eaſt ſide of it, on a round ſteep Mountain, ſtandeth a very ſtrong Caſtle, a little City of it ſelf, well garriſoned, impregnably fortified, and of a very difficult Entrance: which commandeth not the City and Harbour onely, but a great part of the Sea adjoyning. Upon the Wall thereof continually ſtands a Watchman, to deſcry what Shipping is at hand, and hangeth out as many Flags as he diſcovereth Veſſels. And over the Door of the Town-Hall (the better to inſtruct the Magiſtrates in their publick Duty) it is ſaid theſe Verſes are inſcribed:

Hic locus 1. odit, 2. amat, 3. punit, 4. conſervat, 5. honorat,
1. Nequitiam, 2. Pacem, 3. Crimina, 4. Jura, 5. Probos.

Thus *Engliſhed* by *George Sandys*, whence I had the *Latine*,

This place doth 1. hate, 2. love, 3 puniſh, 4. keep, 5. requite,
1. Voluptuous Riot, 2, Peace 3. Crimes, 4. Laws, 5. th' Upright.

In matter of Religion, the people, being generally *Greeks* both in Birth and Language, are for the moſt part of that Church alſo; but ſome adhere unto the *Latine*; each party having their own Biſhop: of which the *Greek* Biſhop hath his Cathedral in the Church of *S. Nicolas*, near unto the Haven which it giveth name to, and therein a Monaſtery of *Caloires*, or Monks of *Baſil*; the *Latine* Biſhop hath his Reſidence and Cathedral within the Caſtle, and therein a Convent of *Franciſcans*. The *Jews* have in this Town their Synagogue alſo: but there are not many of them, if not lately encreaſed. In Civil matters they are ſubject to the State of *Venice*, the Governour hereof (whome they call the *Providore*) having his Reſidence in the Caſtle, aſſiſted by a Chancellour and two Counſellours, (all Gentlemen of *Venice*) whom they change every third year. The Fortunes of this Iſland in former times, and by what means it fell to the *Venetians*, we ſhall ſhew anon.

3. The *ECHINADES* are certain little Iſlands, or rather great Rocks, now called *Curzolari*, famous for nothing but the great Battel of *Lepanto*, fought nigh them betwixt the *Venetians* and the *Turks*; the *Turks* having in their Navy 207 ſail of Ships the *Venetians* and their Confederates but 145 of all ſorts. But it pleaſed God to give the Victory to the weakeſt: the Iſſue of it being ſuch, that the *Turks* loſt 29000 men who were killed in the Fight, 3000 more which were taken priſoners, 140 of their Gallies, 400 pieces of Ordnance, and 200 Chriſtian Captives which were then redeemed: the Chriſtians buying this great Victory with the death of 7656 men or thereabouts; too great a price, could it have been purchaſed with a leſs. A Victory obtained not far from the point of *Actium*, wherein *Auguſtus* overcame the Navy of *Marcus Antonius*, and thereby got the Empire to himſelf alone, of which before he was but Joint-tenant with his Adverſary. So that this place ſeems to be marked out for a Stage of eminent Actions; and that this later Naval fight was but the ſecond part of the firſt.

But to return unto theſe Iſlands. They ſtand juſt againſt the Mouth of the River *Achelous*; of which thus the Poet,

Turbidus objectas Achelous Echinadas *exit.*
Fierce *Achelous* with the Sea is mixt.
Where the *Echinades* (great Rocks) are fixt.

Theſe Iſlands are in number five, feigned by the Poets to be ſo many *Naiades* or Sea Nymphs, whome *Achelous* the River-God upon ſome diſpleaſure metamorphoſed into theſe Rocky Iſlands. But the truth is, that they were cauſed by the Dirt and Mud which this River carried with it into the Sea, where at laſt it ſettled to firm Ground. Of which himſelf ſaith thus in *Ovid*,

——— *Fluctus noſtrique mariſque*
Continuam deducit humum, paritérque revellit
In totidem mediis quot cernis Echinadas *undis.*
The fury of the Sea-waves and mine own
Continual heaps of Mud and Earth drew down,
Which, parted by the inter-running Seas,
Made, as thou ſeeſt, theſe five *Echinades.*

5. *CEPHALENIA*, the moſt populous Iſland of this Sea, is ſituate overagainſt *Acarnania*, part of the Province of *Epirus*; having on the South-eaſt *Zant*, on the North-weſt *Corcyra* or *Corfu*; in length containing 80 miles, 40 in breadth, the whole compaſs being reckoned at 160. Once called *Tetrapolis*, from the number of four Cities in it; but three of them were decayed in the time of *Ptolemy*, who takes notice of no more but one, and that of the ſame name with the Iſland. It is woody and mountainous in moſt places; but the Mountains intermixt with Valleyes and the Woods with Champain: plentifull in Wheat, Honey, Currans, Manna, Oyl, incomparable, though not long-laſting, Muſcadells; as alſo in Cheeſe, Wool, Turkies, and Powder for the dying of Scarlets. So deſtitute of Water, as having no River, and not many Fountains, that when their Cattel would drink, they gape both morning and evening to receive the Dew diſtilling inſenſibly from the Clouds.

The People are for the moſt part *Greeks*; ſome few *Italians*, naturals of the Seigniory of *Venice*, being intermixt: the whole number of the Inhabitants computed at 6000 Families, the number of the Towns and Villages to 200 or thereabouts. The principal whereof are, 1. *Cephalenia*, now *Cefalona*, fortified with good Works and a very ſtrong Caſtle. 2. *Argaſtoli*, a Haven-town, diſtant ſix miles from *Cefalona*: the Port whereof is capable of a ſufficient Navy. 3. *Sidro*, another Port-town alſo, lying towards the South.

As for the Fortunes of this Iſland, it was firſt called *Melæna*, after *Teleboe*: and being known by that name was made ſubject to *Thebes*, by the Valour and good Conduct of *Amphitryo*, the *Theban* General, by whom

Pterelas, the King hereof, was slain in Battel. During which War, and the Stay of *Amphitryo* in this Island, it happened that *Cephalus*, a noble *Athenian*, having by misadventure killed his Wife *Procris* with an Arrow which he shot at a Deer, not daring to abide in his own Countrey, fled unto *Amphitryo* his old Friend, then newly victorious over the *Teleboans*; who, pitying his case, made him the Governour of this Island, since, from his name, called *Cephalenia*. Having continued for some time in the power of the *Thebans*, it passed, together with *Zant* and some other Illands into the hands of the *Macedonians*; from whom, in the declining of their Affairs; the *Achæans* got the Isle of *Zant*, and the *Ætolians Cephalenia*. But long they had not held them when the *Romans* began to look towards *Greece*, who under colour of setting the Continent at liberty, made themselves Masters of both the Islands, that so they might at leisure possess the whole, as in fine they did. In the Division of the Empire they fell, as parts of *Greece*, to the *Constantinopolitans*: and on the takings of that City by the Western Christians, they fell, with almost all the rest of the Islands, to the State of *Venice*, the Governours whereof, retaining *Corfu* and some other of most Importance in the hands of the Seigniour, permitted these (as many other of less note) unto private Adventurers. At the conclusion of the Peace betwixt *Mahomet* the Great and the state of *Venice*, these two, with *Neritos*, or *Leucas*, (spoken of in *Epirus*) were seised on by that Tyrant in despight of that Treaty or Conclusion, as belonging unto private persons, not to the Republick: but were recovered afterwards by the *Venetians* in the Reign of *Bajazet* the second, in the name of the State, and as parts thereof are still governed and defended by them.

5. *CORCYRA*, (now *CORFV*) more anciently was called *Phæacia*; but took this latter name from a Nymph so called, whome *Neptune* is reported to have here deflowred. It is situate over against *Epirus*, from thence 12 miles distant, stretched out from East to West in the form of a Bow, the length thereof being 54 miles, 24 the breadth; and so it is the biggest of these Seas. Commodiously seated for the Trade and Estate of *Venice*, as the Centre of their Dominion and Command by Sea.

The Southern parts hereof are mountainous and defective in Water, much subject to be blasted with Southernly Winds; and therefore they sow little Corn, and plant less Fruits. The Northern parts are level and delightfull, adorned with whole Groves of Limons, Oranges, Figtrees, Olives, and Pomegranates; enriched with plenty of Grain, abundance of Wines, great store of Oyl and Olives, and most excellent Honey; blest with a very temperate and healthfull Air, made odoriferous by most pleasent and sweet-smelling Fruits, which grow most plentifully in each part hereof. *Alcinous*, who so courteously entertained *Ulysses* after his Shipwreck, was once King of this Island; whose Gardens, answerable to the natural Delights and Sweetness of it, are so much celebrated by the Poets. One of which thus;

Quid bifera Alcinoi *referam Pomaria, vòsque*
Qui nunquam vacui prodistis in æthera Rami?

Which may be *Englished* in these words,

Why should I name *Alcinous* fertile Ground,
And Trees which never without Fruit are found?

Towns of most note and strength herein are, 1. *Pagiopoli*, 2. *Castello S. Angelo*, of good esteem in respect of many others, but far short of 3. *Corfu*, the chief and strongest of the Island, which the *Turks* have found by their frequent Repulses to be impregnable For it is situate at the foot of a Mountain, on the top of which are built two inaccessible Fortresses, as being strongly fenced with a natural Rock; the one called *the Old* Fortress, and the other *the New*: justly esteemed the chief Bulwarks of *Venice*, whose Trade and Power would soon decay should these Forts be lost. For which cause the two Governours (for each Fort hath one) are sworn before the State of *Venice*, never to hold Intelligence with one another by word or writing; lest by the Treachery of the one, the other might be wrought also from his Faith and Duty. Neither is their Command here for more then two years; their Commission then terminating, and new Successours being sent them. The Town is inhabited for the most part by *Græcians*, as is all the residue of the Island; beautified with one of the most commodious Havens in all the *Adriatick*, and the Residence of an Archbishop. A Town of such publick Concernment, in regard of the Strength and Situation, that it is accounted of as the Key of *Venice*, and one of the strongest Bulwarks of Christendom against the Encroachment of the *Turks*. The Story of it since dismembred from the Eastern Empire, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, we have had before.

6. *ITHACA*, now called *Val de Compare*, lieth on the North-east of *Cephalenia*, being in compasse 50 miles: most famous for the Birth of *Ulysses*, the Son of *Laertes*, of which thus the Poet;

Effugimus Scopulos Ithacæ Laertia *Regna*,
Et terram altricem sævi exsecramur Ulyssis.
From th' *Ithacan* Rocks, *Laertes* Realm, we fled,
And curs'd the Land which dire *Ulysses* bred.

It was also called *Dulichium*, or else there was some other Island of that name, not far from *Ithaca*, whereof *Ulysses* was also King, who is hence called *Dulichius Heros* among the Poets: and in this Taunt of *Aiax* to him, *Dulichius vertex* signifieth the Head of *Ulysses*,

Sed neque Dulichius, *sub* Achillis *cassîde, Vertex*
Pondera tanta ferret.
Achilles Helm's too great a weight, I trow,
For weak *Ulysses* Head to undergo.

But as weak a man as *Ajax* thought him, he was the Master-Wit of *Greece* for the times he lived in, and one that did as good Service in the War of *Troy* as the best Swordman of them all. A War to which he went somewhat unwillingly, as fearing the sad Consequences and events thereof; insomuch that he feigned himself mad, ploughing the Shore, and sowing Salt instead of Corn. But *Palamedes*, to make triall whether this was real, or but counterfeit onely, cast young *Telemachus*, the Son of *Ulysses*, before the Plough, which he observing, either drove the Plough besides him, or lifted it over him. Discovered by this means, and engaging with the rest in the *Trojan* War, he found out the Design of *Thetis*, and brought *Achilles* to it also: in the course whereof, by his Wit and Courage, he did very good Service; associated with *Diomedes* in the action against *Rhesus* King of *Thrace*, and with *Palamedes* in foraging the Countrey for Provisions. By his Policy was the *Palladium* stoln out of *Troy*, and consequently the City taken and distroyed, whose Fate depended on the preservation of that fatal Relick. After the ending of the War, which held out ten years, he was withheld from *Ithaca* ten years longer by Winds and Tempests and the Displeasure of the Gods which favoured *Troy*: in which he saved himself from the Inchantments of the *Sirens*, the Allurements of *Circe*, the Cruelty of *Polyphemus*; and after many Dangers came home in safety. A man of so compleat a Vertue, that *Homer* maketh him the Pattern of a Temperate and Prudent man in the Books called *Odysses*, (by his name, as the *Greeks* pronounce it;) as he doth *Achilles*, in his *Iliads*, of a compleat and perfect Soulder.

The

The Countrey is generally very rocky and barren, exceeding plentifull of Goats, but no Hares live in it; inhabited for the most part by Pirates and Exiles, men banished out of civil Society, and willingly acknowledging no Superiour over them; but subject, if to any, to the State of *Venice*, which hitherto hath maintained these Islands against the *Turks*, though many times attempted by them in the most prosperous times of their Arms and Victories. For the *Venetians* being gratified, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, with almost all the Islands of the *Ægæan* and *Ionian* Seas, (as being a People strong in Shipping, and so most able to preserve the Possession of them) some of the greatest and most considerable, either for their Riches or commodiousness of Situation, were furnished with convenient Garrisons in the name of the State. The rest they did bestow on the better sort of Citizens, to be defended and made good at their own Cost and Charges; who accordingly possessed themselves of one, two or more of them, as they were of ability to set out their Gallies for the keeping of them: the Seignioury having nevertheless a Care of all, and to that end keeping a Fleet at Sea continually under one of their Admirals; whereby they did not onely preserve those Seas from the *Genoua* Pirats but for long time defended all their Islands also, as well against the *Greeks* as the *Turkish* Emperours. But all the Isles of the *Ægæan* being lost to the *Turk*, except *Cythera* and *Tenos* on the *European*, and *Carpathos* or *Scarpanto* on the *Asian* side; they have now onely *Crete* with the Isles adjoyning, and those of the *Ionian* Sea under their Command, and these (but specially the Isle *Crete*) endangered at the present by the *Turkish* Tyrant.

Thus having taken a view of the several Provinces and Isles which belong to *Greece*, according to the ancient and present state of each particular: let us next take a vew of the *Græcian* Emperours, who have had here their principal Residence, and possessed the whole, (though for a while their Empire was extended over all the East) as they here follow in this ensuing Catalogue of

The *CONSTANTINOPOLITAN*, *GRÆCIAN*, or Eastern Emperours.

A. Ch.

331 1. *Constantine*, surnamed the Great, having reigned 12 years in *Rome*, translated his Imperial Seat to *Constantinople*, which himself had founded.

341 2. *Constantius*, the second Son of *Constantine*, in the Division of the Empire, had for his Partage *Thrace*, *Constantinople*, and all the Provinces of the East. After the death of his two Brethern he remained sole Emperour, but resided for the most part in the East; a great Patron of the *Arians*, and as great a Persecutor of the Orthodox Christians.

366 3. *Julian*, surnamed the Apostate, Son of *Constantius* the Brother of *Constantine* the Great; at first a Christian, afterwards a professed Enemy of the Gospel: fortunate in his Wars against the *Almans*, *Franks*, and other *Transalpine* Nations, whilest he was a Christian; prodigiously slain in the *Persian* War, When become a Persecutor.

368 4. *Jovian*, or *Jovinian*, chosen by the Army, a Religious Prince, made Peace with the *Persian*, and settled the Affairs of the Christian Church: who being dead, *Valentinian*, one of mean Birth; but great Abilities in War, was elected Emperour.

369 5. *Valens*, the Brother of *Valentinian*, made Partner in the Empire with him, ruled in *Constantinople* and the East; *Valentinian* taking more delight in *Rome* and the Western parts. A great Patron of the *Arian* Faction and the first who brought in the *Goths* on this side of the *Danow*, whom he placed in the desart parts of *Thrace*, to the Destruction of the Empire, and himself to boot.

382 6. *Gratian*, the eldest Son of *Valentinian*, succeeded his Father in the West, and his Uncle *Valens* in the East, after whose death he left *Italy* and the West to *Valentinian* his younger Brother. Distressed by the *Goths*, he made *Theodosius* Partner in the Empire with him, and was treacherously murthered by *Andragathius*, at the appointment and command of the Tyrant *Maximus*.

383 7. *Theodosius*, a *Spaniard* born, revenged the death of *Gratian* on the Tyrant *Maximus*, and of *Valentinian* the 2. on the Traitour *Eugenius*. He vanquished the *Goths*, utterly suppresst the Pagan Superstitions, which till his time continued even in *Rome* it self, and strengthened the Church of *Christ* with good Laws and Ordinances.

399 8. *Arcadius*, the eldest Son of *Theodosius*, succeeded his Father in the East, as his Brother *Honorius* did in the West: the *Roman* Empire after this last Division of it being so distracted and torn in pieces, that it was never since united.

412 9. *Theodosius* II. Son of *Arcadius*, made Peace with the *Goths*, whom he employed against the *Hunns* and *Persians*; his more dangerous Enemies, and caused the *Ephesine* Council to be called against *Nestorius*.

454 10 *Martianus*, Lieutenant to *Theodosius*, succeeded his Master, and married with *Pulcheria* his Master's Sister. He called the Council of *Chalcedon* against *Dioscorus*.

461 11. *Leo*, a *Thracian* born, elected by the joynt consent of the Senate and Souldiery, sitting in the Council of *Chalcedon*; the Acts whereof he approved and ratified.

478 12. *Zeno*, the Son-in-law and Lieutenant of *Leo*, sent *Theodorick* and the *Goths* into *Italy* against *Odoacer*. A Tyrant and a great Drinker; in one of his drunken Fits buried quick by his Empress. In his time *Constantinople* was almost wholly destroyed by Fire; in which perished, amongst other things, 120000 Volumes of good Manuscripts.

497 13. *Anastasius*, a mean Officer of the Court, by the power and favour of the Empress created Emperour: a great Patron of *Eutyches*, yet fortunate in his Wars against the *Persians* and *Arabians*. In his time *Constantinople*, besieged by the *Scythians*, was likely to have fallen into great Distress, if *Proclus*, a Famous Mathematician, like another *Archimedes*, had not fired their Gallies.

521 14. *Justin*, the Son of a *Thracian* Shepherd, and Captain of the Guard unto *Anastasius*; a Catholick Prince, and Patron of the Orthodox Clergy, whom he called from Banishment.

528 15. *Justinian*, the Sister's Son of *Justinus*, with whom he was at first Consort in the Empire, recovered *Africk* from the *Vandals* by *Belisa-*

rius

rius, and *Italy* from the *Goths* by *Narſes*; and finally reduced the Laws of *Rome* into form and method.

566 16. *Juſtin* II. Nephew of *Juſtinian*, inſtituted the Exarchate of *Ravenna*, and loſt a great part of *Italy* to the *Lombards*. Unable of himſelf to oppoſe the *Perſian*, he choſe

577 17. *Tiberius*, one of his cheif Commanders, to be Conſort with him, who afterwards ſucceeded in the ſole Command.

584 18. *Maurice*, a *Cappadocian* born, fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Perſians*, from whom he recovered *Meſopotamia* in the time of *Tiberius*, by whom at his return he was married to *Conſtantina* his Daughter, and declared his Succeſſor. Refuſing to ranſom ſome of his Souldiers, taken Priſoners by *Caganus* King of the *Avares*, he loſt the Affections of his Army.

604 19. *Phocas*, a common Souldier, in a military Tumult choſen Emperour, murthered the Emperour *Mauritius*, with his Wife and Children, aud made Pope *Boniface* Supreme Biſhop or Head of the Church: ſlain in a popular Tumult by the Common people for his Luſts and Cruelties.

611 20. *Heraclius*, a Nobleman of *Conſtantinople*, choſen by the general conſent, repaired the Ruines of the Empire, vanquiſhed the *Perſians*, recovered *Hieruſalem* out of their hands: and brought home the Croſs unto *Conſtantinople* in triumphant manner; whence the Feaſt called *Exaltatio Crucis*, September 14. In his time *Mahomet* began to diſperſe his Dotages.

641 21. *Conſtans*, or *Conſtantine* II. Son of *Heraclius*, unfortunate in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*, who prevailed in all places. Picking a Quarrel with the *Romans*, he defaced *Rome*, robbing it of all the choiceſt Ornaments which the *Goths* and other barbarous people had left; and ranſacking the Iſle of *Sicily*, was there ſlain by the Women.

670 22. *Conſtantinus* III. Son of the former *Conſtantine*, from his long or early Beard ſurnamed *Pogonatus*, repulſed the *Saracens* from *Conſtantinople*, but could not hinder the *Bulgarians* from paſſing over the *Danow*.

687 23. *Juſtinian* II. Son of *Conſtantine* the 3. ſubdued *Meſopotamia*, *Armenia*, and ſome part of *Perſia*, forcing the *Saracens* to ſue for Peace, and become his Tributaries. Againſt whom *Leontius* on the one ſide, and *Abſimarus* on the other, ſeverally taking Arms; were declared Emperours. *Juſtinian*, taken by *Leontius*, hath his Noſe cut off, and his perſon commited to Cuſtody: bnt making an Eſcape, by means of *Trebellin* King of the *Bulgarians*, recovered his Imperial Dignity; and being too violent in the purſuit of his Revenge, was finally murthered at the Alter by the command of

713 24. *Philippus Bardanes*, Admiral of his Navy, elected Emperour by the Souldiers, a great enemy of Images, which he cauſed to be caſt out of the Church, thereby incurring the Diſpleaſure of

715 25. *Anaſtaſius* II. called alſo *Artemius*, his principal Secretary, who thruſt himſelf into the Empire; forced to relinquiſh it by that Army which he had raiſed againſt the *Saracens*: in which Tumult the City of *Conſtantinople* was ſacked and ſpoiled.

717 26. *Theodoſius* III. made Emperour in this Tumult by the Souldiers, hearing of the Approch of *Leo*, Commander of the Eaſtern Armies, reſigned the Empire, and took Orders to preſerve his Life.

718 27. *Leo Iſaurus*, in whoſe time *Caliph Zuleiman* beſieged *Conſtantinople* the ſpace of three years, and when by Cold and Famine 300000 of the *Saracens* were deſtroyed, they deſiſted. At this Siege was that Fire invented which we, for the violence of it call *Wild-fire*; and the *Latines*, becauſe the *Greeks* were the Authors of it, *Græcus ignis*: by which the *Saracens* Ships were not a little moleſted. He was alſo a great Enemy to Images, and for this cauſe hated by the Pope and Clergy of *Rome*, who gave him thereupon the Nickname of *Iconomachus*.

741 28. *Conſtantinus* IV. Son of *Leo*, ſurnamed *Copronymus*, for that when he was baptized he bewrayed the Font, followed his Father's Zeal in removing Images, which created him much Trouble, one *Artabardus* being choſen Emperour againſt him, but at laſt defeated.

777 29. *Leo* III. Son of *Conſtantine Copronymus*, honoured with the Adjunct of *Porphyrogenitus*, but commonly called *Leo* the 4. (*Leontius* the Uſurper (as I conjecture) being reckoned for one;) an Enemy to Images, and fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Saracens*.

782 30. *Conſtantine* V. the Son of *Leo* and *Irene*, firſt governed the Empire withhis Mother, by whom at laſt ſupplanted, and deprived of Sight, he died of Melancholy.

798 31. *Irene*, Wife of *Leo* the 3. firſt Conſort with *Conſtantine* her Son, and afterwards ſole Empreſs of *Conſtantinople*: for her better ſupport in which Eſtate ſhe ſided with the Popes of *Rome*, and called the ſecond Council of *Nice* for defence of Images. In her time *Charles*, ſurnamed the Great, was by the Pope and People of *Rome* created Emperour of the Weſt. For the Popes, knowing their own Greatneſs to grow out of the Ruines of the Temporal Power, committed the Empire of the weſt unto the *French* Princes: whereby the *Greek* Emperours became much weakened; and the *French*, being the Pope's Creatures, were in tract of time brought to their Devotion. In following times, when *Frederick Barbaroſſa* was by Pope *Alexander* the 3. pronounced non-Emperour, *Emanuel* of *Conſtantinople* ſued for a Re-union of the Empires: but the crafty Pope returned this anſwer, *Non licere illi conjungere quæ majores ejus de induſtria disjunxerunt*: Let no man preſume to joyn what the God of *Rome*, the Pope, hath put aſunder.

803 32. *Nicephorus*, a Patrician, made Emperour by the Souldiers, perſuaded that *Irene* had made choice of him to be her Succeſſor: ſlain in a pitcht Field againſt the *Bulgarians*.

812 33. *Michael*, ſurnamed *Curopalates*, from his Office, (the *Maior of* the *Palace*, as it were) Husband to *Procopia*, the Daughter of *Nicephorus*, aſſumed the Empire, which, finding his own Weakneſs, he did ſoon relinquiſh, and betook himſelf unto a Monaſtery.

814 34. *Leo* V. ſurnamed *Armenius*, from his Countrey, General of the Horſe to *Michael*, demoliſhed the Images which his Predeceſſors had ſet up. He was ſlain in the Church during the time of Divine Service.

821 35. *Michael* II. ſurnamed *Balbus*, having murthered *Leo*, aſſumed the Empire; unfortunate in his Government, and died of Madneſs.

830 36. *Theophilus*, the Son of *Michael Balbus*, an enemy of Images, like his Father, and as unfortunate as he; loſing many Battels to the *Saracens*, at laſt he died of Melancholy.

842 37. *Michael* III. Son of *Theophilus*, firſt ruling with his Mother *Theodora*, who took unto her ſelf the ſupreme Command; and after of himſelf ſole Emperour, his Mother being made a Nun.

866 38. *Baſilius*, ſurnamed *Macedo*, from the place of his Birth, made Conſort in the Empire by *Michael* the Son of *Theophilus*, whom he baſely and treacherouſly murthered; killed caſually by a Stag.

886 39. *Leo* VI. for his Learning ſurnamed *Philoſophus*, the ſon of *Baſilius*, a vigilant and provident Prince: moſt of his time, with variable Succeſs, was ſpent againſt the *Bulgarians*.

912 40. *Conſtantine* VI. commonly called the VII. Son of *Leo Philoſophus*, firſt under his Uncle *Alexander*, next under *Zoe* his Mother, and after under *Romanus Lacopenus*, governed the Empire; by which laſt he was ſo miſerably depreſſed, that he was fain to get his livelihood by Painting. But *Lacopenus* being depoſed and turned into a Monaſtery by his own Sons, *Conſtantine* at laſt obtained his Rights, and reſtored Learning unto *Greece*.

961 41. *Romanus*, the Son of *Conſtantine*.

963 42. *Nicephorus*, ſurnamed *Phocas*, firſt Governour or Protector of the young Emperour *Romanus*; after whoſe death, created Emperour by the Army, he recovered *Antioch*, *Cilicia*, and the greateſt part of *Aſia minor*, from the power of the *Saracens*: ſlain in the night by *John Zimiſces*, his Wife *Theophania* being privy to it.

971 43. *John Zimiſces*, Emperour in the place of *Nicephorus Phocas*, governed the Empire better then he did obtain it, vanquiſhing the *Bulgarians*, *Roſſes*, and others of the barbarous Nations; and left it at his death to the Sons of *Romanus*.

977 44. *Baſilius* II. ſurnamed *Porphyrogenetus*, as many of the Emperours had been before him, in regard that at their Births they were wrapped in Purple, (which the *Greeks* call *Porphyrie*) the Imperial Colour: he ſubdued the *Bulgarians*, and made them Homagers to the Empire.

1027 45. *Conſtantine* VII. or VIII. Brother of *Baſilius*, and with him Partner in the Empire: after whoſe death he governed three years by himſelf, but did nothing memorable.

1030 46. *Romanus* II. for his Prodigality ſurnamed *Argyropolus*, Husband of *Zoe*, the Daughter of *Conſtantine* the 8. drowned in a Bath by the Treaſon of his Wife and her Adulterer.

1035 47. *Michael* IV. ſurnamed *Paphlago*, from his Countrey, firſt the Adulterer, and afterwards the Husband, of *Zoe*; but died very penitent.

1042 48. *Michael* V. ſurnamed *Calaphates*, a man of obſcure Birth, adopted by *Zoe*, whom he depoſed from the Government, and turned into a Monaſtery. Out of which being again taken in a popular Tumult, ſhe put out the Eyes of *Calaphates*, and, being then 60 years of age, beſtowed both the Empire and her ſelf upon

1043 49. *Conſtantine* IX. ſurnamed *Monomachus*, formerly Husband to a Niece of *Romanus* the 2.

1055 50. *Theodora*, Siſter unto *Zoe*, after the death of *Conſtantine*, managed for two years the Affairs of the Empire with great Contentment of all people. But grown in age he ſurrendred it to

1057 51. *Michael* VI. ſurnamed *Stratioticus*, an old, but military, man, depoſed within 3 years by

1060 52. *Iſaacius*, of the noble Family of the *Comneni*; valiant, of great Courage, and diligent in his Affairs: which having managed for two years, he left it at his death, with conſent of the Senat and people, to

1063 53. *Conſtantine* X. ſurnamed *Ducas*, a great Juſticiar and very devout, but exceeding covetous, whereby he became hated of his Subjects, and contemned by his Enemies.

1071 54. *Romanus* III. ſurnamed *Diogenes*, married *Eudoxia*, the Wife of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, and with her the Empire. Taken priſoner by the *Turks*, and ſent home again, he found a Faction made againſt him; by which *Eudoxia* was expelled, himſelf at his return depoſed, and ſo died in Exile.

1075 55. *Michael* VII. the Son of *Conſtantinus Ducas*, ſurnamed *Parapinatius*, by reaſon of the *Famine* which in his time happened, made Emperour in the aforeſaid Tumult. But being found unable for ſo great an Honour, (the *Turks* prevailing in all places) he was depoſed again, and put into a Monaſtery.

1081 56. *Nicephorus* II. ſurnamed *Botoniates*, of the Houſe of *Phocas*, ſucceeded in the place of *Parapinace*; depoſed within three years by the *Comneni*.

1084 57. *Alexius Comnenus*, Son of the Emperour *Iſaacius Comnenus*, obtained the Empire: in whoſe time the Weſtern Chriſtians with great Forces prepared for the Recovery of the *Holy Land*: of whoſe purpoſes being very jealous, he denied them paſſage through his Countrey; but was in the end forced to find them Victuals and other Neceſſaries.

1113 58. *Calo-Joannes*, the Son of *Alexius*, had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, from whom he took *Laodicea* and ſome other places of Importance. He alſo vanquiſhed the *Scythians* or *Tartars* paſſing over the *Iſter*, moſt of which he either ſlew in Battel, or ſold as Captives; permitting the remainder to abide on this ſide that River. He alſo conquered the *Servians* and *Bulgarians*, tranſporting many of them into *Bithynia*.

1142 59. *Manuel*, or *Emanuel*, the younger Son of *Calo-Joannes*, an under-hand enemy to the Weſtern Chriſtians, and an open enemy to the *Turks*; by whom being entrapped in the dangerous Streights of *Cilicia*, and his Army miſerably cut off, he was on honourable terms permitted to return again.

1180 60. *Alexius* II. Son of *Manuel*, depoſed and barbarouſly murthered by *Andronicus*, the Couſin-

Cousin-german of his Father, with his Wife and Mother.

1183 61. *Andronicus Comnenus*, confined by *Manuel* to *Oenum* in *Paphlagonia*, by reason of his dangerous and ambitious practices, after his death, pretending to reform the State, came unto *Constantinople*: first made Protector, afterwards Consort in the Empire with young *Alexius*: whom having barbarously slain, and got the Empire to himself, he was not long after cruelly torn in pieces in a popular Tumult.

1185 62. *Isaacius Angelus*, a Nobleman of *Constantinople*, and of the same *Comnenian* Race, designed to death by *Andronicus*, was in a popular Election proclaimed his Successour; deposed by *Alexius* his own Brother, and his Eyes put out.

1195 63. *Alexius Angelus*, deprived his Brother, and excluded his Nephew from the Empire; but it held not long.

64. *Alexius Angelus* II. Son of *Isaac Angelus*, who being unjustly thrust out of his Empire by his Uncle *Alexius*, had recourse to *Philip* the Western Emperour, whose Daughter *Mary* he had married; who so prevailed with Pope *Innocent* the 3. (upon a promise for subjecting the Church of *Greece* to the See of *Rome*) that the Army prepared for the *Holy Land* was employed to restore him. On the approch whereof *Alexius* the Usurper fled; *Alexius* the young Emperour is seated in his Father's Throne, and not long after slain by *Alexius Ducas*. In revenge whereof the *Latines* assault and win *Constantinople*, make themselves Masters of the Empire, and divide it amongst themselves: allotting to the *Venetians Candia*, many good Towns of *Peloponnesus*, and most of the Islands; to *Boniface* Marquess of *Montferrat* the Kingdom of *Thessaly*; to the others of the Adventurers other liberal Shares; and, finally, to *Baldwin* Earl of *Flanders* the main Body of the Empire, with the Title of Emperour. The Seat of the Empire of the *Greeks* being transferred unto *Nice*, a City of *Bithynia* in the Lesser *Asia*, by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Son-in-law to *Alexius* the Usurper, continued there till the regaining of *Constantinople* by the *Greeks* again, after it had been 60 years possessed by the Western Christians.

Emperours of the *LATINES* in *CONSTANTINOPLE*.

1200 65. *Baldwin*, Earl of *Flanders*, first Emperour of the *Latines* reigning in *Constantinople*, taken in fight by *John* King of *Bulgaria*, coming to aid the *Greeks*, and sent Prisoner to *Ternova*, where he was cruelly put to death.

1202 66. *Henry*, the Brother of *Baldwin*, repulsed the *Bulgarians* out of *Greece*, and died a Conquerour.

1215 67. *Peter*, Count of *Auxerre* in *France*, the Son of *Peter*, youngest Son to *Lewis* the Gross of *France*, and Husband of *Yolande* the Daughter of *Henry*, succeeded in the Empire after his decease. He was cunningly entrapped by *Theodorus Angelus*, a great Prince in *Epirus*, whom he had besieged in *Dyrrhachium*: but of an Enemy being persuaded to become his Guest, was there murthered by him.

1220 68. *Robert*, the Son of *Peter*, having seen the miserable usage of his beautiful Empress, whom a young *Burgundian*, formerly contracted to her, had most despitefully mangled, cutting off both her Nose and Ears, died of Heart's grief as he was coming back from *Rome*, whither his Melancholy had carried him to consult the Pope in his Affairs.

1227 69. *Baldwin* II. Son of *Robert* by a former Wife, under the Protection of *John de Brenne*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, succeeded in his Father's Throne: which having held for the space of 33 years, he was forced to leave; the City of *Constantinople* being regained by the *Greeks*, and the poor Prince compelled to sue in vain for Succours to the *French*, *Venetians*, and other Princes of the West. And though both *Philip* the Son of this *Baldwin*, and *Charles* of *Valois*, Father of *Philip de Valois* the *French* King, in right of *Catharine* his Wife, Daughter of that *Philip*, did sometimes please themselves with the Title of Emperours of *Constantinople*, yet neither of the two had ever any footing or possession there.

The Empire restored unto the *GREEKS*.

1260 70. *Michael* VIII. surnamed *Palæologus*, extracted from the *Comnenian* Emperours, Emperour of the *Greeks* in the City of *Nice*, most fortunately recovered *Constantinople*; the Town being taken by a party of 50 men secretly put into it by some Countrey-Labourers under the Ruines of a Mine. Present in person at the Council of *Lions*, at the persuasion of the Pope he admitted the *Latine* Ceremonies into the Churches of *Greece*; for which he was greatly hated by his Subjects, and denied the honour of Christian Burial.

1283 71. *Andronicus* II. vexed with unnatural Wars by his Nephew *Andronicus*, who rebelled against him.

1328 72. *Andronicus* III. first Partner with his Grandfather, afterwards sole Emperour.

1341 73. *John Palæologus*, Son of *Andronicus* the 3. In whose Minority *Cantacuzenus* his Protectour usurped the Empire, and held it sometimes from him, and sometimes with him, till the year 1357, and then retired into a Monastery, leaving the Empire unto *John*, during whose Reign the *Turks* first planted themselves in *Europe*.

1384 74. *Andronicus* IV. the Son of *Joannes Palæologus*.

1387 75. *Emanuel Palæologus*, the Son of the said *John*, and Brother of *Andronicus* the 4. In whose time *Bajazet* the sixth King of the *Turks* did besiege *Constantinople*; but found such notable Resistence, that he could not force it.

1417 76. *John* II. Son of *Andronicus* the 4.

1420 77. *John* III. Son of *Emanuel Palæologus*, in person at the Council of *Florence* for reconciling of the Churches, in hope thereby to get some Aid from the Western Christians; but it would not be.

1444 78. *Constantinus Palæologus*, the Brother of *John* the 3. In whose time the famous City of *Constantinople* was taken by *Mahomet* the Great 1452, the miserable Emperour, who had in vain gone from door to door to beg or borrow money to pay his Souldiers, (which the *Turks* found in great abundance when they took the City) being lamentably trod to death in the Throng. Now concerning this Empire of the *Greeks*, we may observe some fatal Contrarieties in one and the same Name. As first, that *Philip* the Father of *Alexander* laid the first Foun-

Foundation of the *Macedonian* Monarchy, and *Philip* the Father of *Perseus* ruined it. Secondly, that *Baldwin* was the first, and *Baldwin* the last Emperour of the *Latines* in *Constantinople*. Thirdly, that this Town was built by a *Constantine*, the Son of *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch; and was lost by a *Constantine*, the Son of a *Helena*, a *Gregory* being Patriarch also. And fourthly, the *Turks* have a Prophecy, that as it was wone by a *Mahomet*, so shall it be lost by a *Mahomet*. So *Augustus* was the first established Emperour of *Rome*, and *Augustulus* the last: *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspes*, the Restorer; and *Darius*, the Son of *Arsamis*, the Overthrower of the *Persian* Monarchie. A like note I shall hereafter tell you of *Hierusalem*. In the mean time I will present you with a fatal Observation of the letter *H*, as I find it thus versed in *Albion's England*.

Not superstitiously I speak, but *H* this letter still
Hath been observed ominous to *England's* Good or Ill.
First *Hercules*, *Hesione* and *Helen* were the cause
of War to *Troy*; *Æneas* Seed becoming so Outlaws.
Humber the *Hun* with forein Arms did first the *Brutes* invade:
Helen to *Rome's* Imperial Throne the *British* Crown convey'd.
Hengist and *Horsus* first did plant the *Saxons* in this Isle:
Hungar and *Hubba* first brought *Danes*, that swayed here long while.
At *Harold* had the *Saxon* end, at *Hardie-Cnute* the *Dane*.
Henries the first and second did restore the *English* Reign.
Fourth *Henry* first for *Lancaster* did *Englands* Crown obtain.
Seventh *Henry* jarring *Lancaster* and *York* unites in Peace.
Henry the eight did happily *Rome's* Irreligion cease.

A strange and ominous Letter, every Mutation in our State being as it were ushered by it.

What were the Revenues of this Empire since the Division of it into the East and West, I could never yet learn. That they were exceeding great may appear by three circumstances. 1. *Zonaras* reporteth that the Emperour *Basilius* had in his Treasury 200000 Talents of Gold, besides infinite Heaps of Silver and other Moneys. 2. *Lipsius* relateth, how *Benjamin* a *Jew* in his discourse of *Europe* saith, that the Custome due to the Emperours out of the Victuals and Merchandize sold at *Constantinople* only did amount to 20000 Crowns daily. 3. We find that at the Sack of *Constantinople* there was found an invaluable mass of Gold, Silver, Plate and Jewels, besides that which was hid in the Earth. For so the covetous Citizens chose rather to employ their Wealth, then afford any part of it to the Emperour, who with Tears in his Eyes went from door to door to beg and borrow Money, wherewith he might wage more Souldiers for the defence of the Town.

The Arms of the Empire were *Mars*, a Cross *Sol* between four *Greek Beta's* of the second: the four *Beta's* signifying (as *Bodin* saith) Βασιλεὺς, Βασιλέων, Βασιλεῦσι, Βασιλεῦσιν.

It may perchance be expected that we should here make an additional Catalogue of those *Turkish* Emperours who have reigned in *Constantinople* since the taking of it; and, being they are possessed of *Greece*, and do now inhabit it, that we should here also speak of the *Turks* themselves, their Customs, Forces, Policies, Original, and Proceedings. But the discourse of those things we intend to reserve for *Turcomania*, a Province of *Asia*, from whence they made their first Inundation into *Persia*, and afterwards into other parts of the World now subject to them, the only Province which retains any thing of their name. And though the *Peninsula* called anciently *Taurica Chersonesus* (now part of *Tartaria Precopensis*) be within the Bounds of *Europe* also; yet we will defer the description and story of it till we come to the Affairs of the *Tartars*; and will here conclude our Discourse of *Europe*, and prepare for *Asia*.

And so much for *GREECE*, the last of the Provinces of *EUROPE*.

A TA-

A TABLE OF THE LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the chief TOWNS and CITIES mentioned in this BOOK.

	Long.	Lat.
A.		
Amsterdam	27.59	52.40
Antwerp	24.30	51.48
Athens	46.10	40
Augspurg	32.30	48.20
Aulona	51.20	41.30
Arras	24	51
Anstj	36.30	59.20
B.		
Bamberg	39.15	50.10
Belgrade	45	47.40
Bergen	34.16	61.25
Bern	29.45	46.25
Brandenburg	35.30	52.36
Breme	30.20	53.23
Bruges	24.36	51.30
Brunswick	32.40	52.30
Brussells	26.42	51 24
Buda	42	47.20
Bodon	52.30	45.30
Bornholm	40.50	55.30
C.		
Cleve	29.35	41.58
Constantinople	56	43.5
Confluentz or Coblentz	27.30	50.30
Constance	28.30	47.30
Copenhagen	34.50	56
Corinth	54.20	39
Colen	27.40	51
Cracow	42.40	50.12
Cefalona	52	38.30
Casan	96.10	35.10
Corfu	42	39.30
D.		
Dantzick	45	54.50
Deventer	33.25	51.50
Dirschaw	63	48.40
Dort	26	52
Dowzy	25	51
Dresden	36	51.3
E.		
Emden	28.26	53.34
Erfurdt	34.30	51.10
Elseneur	36.30	57
F.		
Flensborg	36.40	55
Francker	27	54
Francford ad Mœnum	30	50.30
Francford ad Oderam	24	52.30
Friburg	20	48.1
G.		
Glogaw	43.50	51.25
Gran	42.30	48
Gratz	34	48
Grodesk	56.30	51.30
Gaunt	30.20	50.40
Gnesna	42	52.10
Groeningen	32.10	53
H.		
Hadersleve	35.5	60.50
Hallar	3	67.14
Halberstadt	32.40	52.10
Heidelberg	28	49.35
Hamburg	30	54.30
I.		
Jene	34	52
Ingolstadt	32.10	48.40
Inspruck	32.50	44.55
Juliers	27.30	52
L.		
Lariſſa	70	33
Liege	22	50.50
Leopoles	52.50	49
Leipzick	30.30	51.20
Lubeck	31.20	54.48
Lucern	29.53	46.42
Luneburg	32.18	53.27
Leyden	26	53
Luxemburg	28	50
M.		
Magdeburg	37.40	52.18
Marpurg	30.10	51
Mentz	27.30	50,30
Metz	27.40	49.9.
Middelburg	25	52
Minden	31.30	52.58
Munchen	32.50	48
Munſter	29.10	52
Monts	26	51
Moſco	70.30	55.40
Melvin or Elbing	48	54.50
N.		
Nancie	28.45	49.20
Norlingen	33	49
Nurenberg	31.30	49.30
Nimmegen	28	52
Novogrod Magn.	62.50	60.30
Novogrod Infer.	80	55.20
Nicopolis	56.30	40
Negropont	56.10	41
S. Nicolas	69	64
O.		
Olmuntz	41	40.30
Oſnabrug	29.36	52.29
Oelandt	43.30	57
P.		
Prague	39.15	50.10
Preſlaw	46	51.10
Paſſaw	42	52.48
Presburg	40	48.26
Pleſcow	59.20	59
Pechora	66.50	67
Pernaw	53.30	58.40
Ploczkym	57.30	57.40
R.		
Rab	40.35	48.50
Raguſi	44.40	42.30
Regenſpurg	32.15	48.59
Roſtock	34.18	54.20
Ruſtow	32.50	57
Rugen	49.20	55.10
Riga	53.30	58
Regimont	42.10	55.30
S.		
Saltzburg	35.40	47.40
Schalholt	3. 14	65.42
Sobleſtadt	28.6	48.22
Sleſwick	31.20	55.15
Spires	27.40	49.20
Stetin	37.40	54
Stockholm	42	60.15
Sibior	69.20	58.30
Slowada	86.30	58.50
Straesburg	27.50	48.44
Stagira	55.30	43.30
T.		
Theſſalonica	53.40	44.30
Triers	26	49.30
Trent	33.40	45.20
Tubing	30.30	48.40
Tuver	68.10	57.10
U.		
Valenciennes	26.29	50.10
Ulm	32.30	48.20
Vienna	37.45	48.20
Vilna	54.30	55
Upſal	40.30	60.52
Uſting	79.30	61.30
Utrecht	27.33	52.10
Vicegrad	61.30	51.30
Veſalia	31.30	51.30
W.		
Wardhuys	50.30	70.30
Wiborg	55.58	63.6
Wittenberg	35.10	50.55
Wiſmar	33.30	54.14
Wologda	74.30	60
Wormes	28	49.45
Wurtzburg	30.10	49.57
Z.		
Zara	46.25	45.40
Zemla Nova	83.30	74

The End of the ſecond Book.

COSMO-

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iſles, thereof.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

JUSTIN. HIST. l. 1.

Imperium Aſſyrii *qui poſtea* Syri *dicti ſunt, annos* MCCC *tenuerunt. Imperium ab* Aſſyriis *ad* Medos Arbaces *tranſfert.*

SENECA EPIST. 17.

Omnes quæ uſquam rerum potiuntur urbes, ubi fuerint aliquando quæretur; & varij exitii genere tollentur.

LONDON,

Printed in the Year M. DC. LXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iles, thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

LONDON,

Printed in the Year, M.DC.LXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

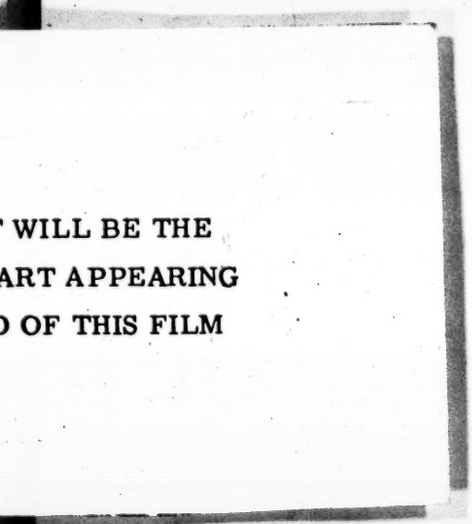
AND ALL

the Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iles, thereof.

THIS CHART WILL
SECOND CHART A
AT THE END OF T

LONDON,

Printed in the Year, M.DC.LXXIII.


WILL BE THE
ART APPEARING
OF THIS FILM

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Third Book,

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY & HISTORY

OF THE

LESSER and GREATER

ASIA,

AND ALL

The Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles, thereof.

Of *ASIA.*

ASIA is bounded on the West, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Ægean* Seas, the *Hellespont*, *Propontis*, *Thracian Bosphorus*, and the *Euxine* Sea, the *Palus Mæotis*, the Rivers *Tanais* and *Dwina*, a line being drawn from the first of the two said Rivers unto the other, by all which parted from *Europe*; on the North, it hath the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East, the Straights of *Anian* (if such there be;) the *Indian* Ocean, and *Mare del Zur*, by which separated from *America*; on the South, the *Mediterranean*, or that part of it which is called the *Carpathian* Sea, washing the shores of *Anatolia*; and the main Southern Ocean, passing along the *Indian*, *Persian*, and *Arabian* Coasts: and finally, on the South-west, the *Red Sea* or Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Africk*. Environed on all sides with the Sea, or some Sea-like Rivers, except a narrow *Isthmus* in the South-west, which joyns it to *Africk*, and the space of ground (whatsoever it be) betwixt *Dwina*, and *Tanais*, on the North-west, which unites it to *Europe*.

It took this name, as some will have it from *Asia*, the Daughter of *Oceanus* and *Thetis*, the wife of *Iapetus*, and (by him) Mother to *Prometheus*: as others say, from *Asius* the Son of *Atis*, a King of *Lydia*, from whence that Country first, afterwards all *Anatolia*, or *Asia minor*, and finally, the whole Continent, had the name of *Asia*. Others again (but more improbably) derive the name from *Asius* the Philosopher, who gave the *Palladium* unto the *Trojans*; in memory whereof that Country first, and after the whole Continent did receive this name: But these *Originations* being very uncertain, *Bochartus* (out of his great affection to the *Punick* or *Phœnician* Language) will have it called so from *Asia*, a *Phœnician* word, signifying *Medium*, or the middle; because *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*, which gives name (as he conceiveth) to the *Greater* also, lieth in the middle, as it were, betwixt some parts of *Europe* and *Africa*. And so far the Conjecture doth find countenance from some ancient Writers, that *Asia* is said by *Pliny* to be *inter Africam & Europam*, to be betwixt *Africa* and *Europe*; by *Mela*, *medium nostris æquoribus excipi*, to be embraced in the *middle* of the two Seas (he meaneth *Pontus Euxinus*, and the *Mediterranean*,) and finally, by *Eustathius* (conceive them all of *Anatolia*, or the *Lesser Asia*) μέσην ἀμφοῖν ἔχειν διάθεσιν, to have a *middle* situation betwixt *Europe* and *Africa*. But by what name, and on what grounds soever it be called by the *Greeks*, and *Latines*, it is otherwise, and with better reason called in holy Scriptures by the name of *Semia*; as being that portion of the world, wherein the whole Posterity of *Sem* had their seats and dwellings, if the observation of *Maginus* be of any weight.

It is situate East and West, from the 52 to the 169 degree of *Longitude*; and North and South, from the 82 degree of *Latitude*, to the very *Æquator*; some only of the Islands lying on the South of that *Circle*: so that the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, is but twelve hours only; but in the most Northern parts hereof, for almost four whole months together no night at all. And for a measurement by miles, it stretches in length 5200 and in bredth 4560 miles.

This Country hath heretofore been had in especial honour, 1. For the Creation of man, who had his first making in this part of the world; 2ly. Because in this part of it stood the Garden of *Eden*, which he had for the first place of his habitation; 3ly. Because here flourished the four first great Monarchies of the *Assyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, and *Persians*; 4ly. Because it was the

Scene of almoſt all the memorable actions, which are recorded by the Pen-men of the Scriptures; 5ly. Becauſe that here our Saviour *CHRIST* was born, here wrought he moſt divine Miracles, and here accompliſhed the great Work of our Redemption; 6ly. And finally. Becauſe from hence all Nations of the World had their firſt beginning, on the diſperſion which was made by the Sons of *Noah*, after there vain attempt of *Babel*.

The chief Mountains of this great Continent, not limited within the bounds of any one Province (for of thoſe we are to ſpeak in their ſeveral places) are 1 Mount *Taurus*, which having its beginning in *Lycia*, a Province of *Anatolia*, paſſeth directly Eaſtwards to the *Indian* Ocean, and reckoning in its ſeveral windings and turnings, with its ſpurs and branches every way, is ſaid to be 6250 miles long, and 357 miles broad. This Mountain, or rather ridge of hills, divideth the *Greater Aſia*, as the *Æquator* doth the World, into North and South: memorable for three difficult paſſages from the one to the other; the firſt out of the reſt of *Anatolia* into *Cilicia*, called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*; the ſecond out of *Scythia*, or *Tartary*, into *Turcomania*, called *Caucaſiæ Portæ*; and the third out of *Scythia* into *Perſia*, called *Portæ Caſpiæ*. Of which, and of the whole courſe of this Mountain, more at large hereafter. 2 *Imaus*, which beginning near the ſhores of the Northern Ocean, runneth directly towards the South; dividing the *Greater Aſia* (as the *Meridian* doth the World) into Eaſt and Weſt, and croſſing Mount *Taurus* in right Angles, in or about the *Longitude* of 140. This on the North of *Taurus* hath no other name among the *Latines*, then *Imaus* only; and by that name divideth *Scythia*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*: but by the *Tartars* is called *Altay*; by ſome Writers, *Belgion*. And on the South-ſide of that Mountain is known in *Ptolomy* by the name of *Bitigo*, extending from Mount *Caucaſus*, or ſome other branch of the *Taurus*, to the Cape of *Comari*, in the Southern Ocean: ſuppoſed by ſome to be Mount *Sephar*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. 30. of which we ſhall ſay more alſo when we come into *India*.

The eſtate of *Chriſtianity* in this vaſt Continent is in ill condition, diſcountenanced and oppreſſed, though not quite extinguiſhed. For all the great Princes and Commanders of it being either *Mahometans* or *Pagans*, the moſt that can be hoped for of the Chriſtian Faith, is a *toleration* or connivence; and that not found but with an intermixture of ſuch afflictions as commonly attend diſcountenanced and diſgraced *Religions*. Yet is not *Chriſtianity* ſo over-powered either by *Mahometaniſm*, or *Paganiſm*, but that in *Aſia* the *Leſſer*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and *Armenia*, a great part of the Inhabitants do retain the *Goſpel*, under their ſeveral Patriarchs and *Metropolitans*: differing in ſome few points from one another; but in many from the Church of *Rome*, with which they hold neither correſpondency nor *Communion*. Nor want there many *Chriſtian* Churches in the Empire of *Perſia*, nor in thoſe of *Tartary*, *China*, and the *Indies*, anciently planted in thoſe Countries; beſides the late increaſe thereof in the *Eaſtern Iſlands* by the diligent preaching of the *Jeſuites*, and ſome late *Factories* there ſettled by the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*: of all which I ſhall write in place convenient.

In reference to the *Roman* Empire, whoſe Dominion did not often extend beyond the River *Euphrates*, this Continent contained only three *Dioceſes*, or *Juridical Circuits*; that is to ſay, the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, *Aſia* properly ſo called, and the *Oriental*: which with the *Dioceſes* of *Thrace* and *Egypt*, were under the Command of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*; the greateſt Officer of power and juriſdiction, next to the Emperours themſelves, in the *Roman* Monarchy. And theſe three *Dioceſes* contained in them to the number of thirty ſeven Provinces, *viz.* the Provinces of *Bithynia*. 2 *Heleſpontus*. 3 *Pontus Polemoniacus*. 4 *Galatia prima*. 5 *Galatia Salutaris*. 6 *Honorius*. 7 *Paphlagonia*. 8 *Cappadocia prima*. 9 *Cappadocia ſecunda*. 10 *Armenia prima*, and 11 *Armenia ſecunda*, contained in the *Dioceſe* of *Pontus*, and governed by the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant thereof. II. The Provinces of *Pamphylia*. 2 *Lycia*. 3 *Caria*. 4 *Piſidia*. 5 *Lycaonia*. 6 *Lydia*. 7 *Phrygia Pacatiana*. 8 *Phrygia Salutaris*. 9 *Aſia* ſpecially ſo called. 10 *Helleſpont*, and 11 the *Iſles* of *Anatolia*, making up the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia*: whereof the three laſt were governed by a peculiar Officer, called the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*; the others by the ordinary Lieutenant or *Vicarius*. III. The Provinces of *Iſauria*. 2 *Cilicia prima*. 3 *Cilicia ſecunda*. 4 *Cyprus*. 5 *Phœnices*. 6 *Phœnices Libani*. 7 *Syria* 8 *Syria Salutaris*. 9 *Paleſtina prima*. 10 *Paleſtina ſecunda*. 11 *Paleſtina Salutaris*. 12 *Euphratenſis*. 13 *Oſroene*. 14 *Meſopotamia*, and 15 *Arabia*, conſtituting the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, under the *Comes Orientis*. The reſt of *Aſia* ſubject unto the *Parthian* or *Perſian* Kings, beſides thoſe of *India* (and of many Regions and Countries not then diſcovered) was never conquered by the *Romans*; and therefore not within the compaſs of this diſtribution.

At this time *Aſia* ſtands divided amongſt ſix great Monarchs; that is to ſay, the *Turk*, commanding all thoſe parts and Provinces, which anciently belonged to the *Roman* Empire. 2ly. The *Perſian*, ruling in all the Provinces beyond *Euphrates*, poſſeſſed by the *Perſian* Kings in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, or the *Aſacidæ* or *Parthians* in the times of the *Romans*. 3ly. The *Great Cham* of *Tartary*, commanding over all the North parts of *Aſia*, anciently known by the name of *Scythia*. 4ly. The King of *China*, governing in that large and populous Country. 5ly. The King of *Barma*, whoſe Dominion comprehends all or the greateſt part of *India* beyond the River *Ganges*. And 6ly. The *Great Magor*, whoſe Empire is extended over all *India* on this ſide of that River. And ſome there be who in the deſcriptions of this great Country, follow this diviſion. But for our parts, for the better underſtanding of the *Greek* and the *Roman* Stories, and the eſtate of the *Aſſyrian*, *Babilonian* and *Perſian* Monarchies, to which the holy Scriptures do ſo much relate; we ſhall conſider it as divided into the Regions of 1 *Anatolia*, or *Aſia Minor*. 2 *Cyprus*. 3 *Syria*. 4 *Paleſtine*. 5 *Arabia*. 6 *Chaldea*. 7 *Aſſyria*. 8 *Meſopotamia*. 9 *Turcomania*. 10 *Media*. 11 *Perſia*. 12 *Tartaria*. 13 *China*. 14 *India*; And 15 The *Oriental Iſlands*.

ANATOLIA, or *ASIA MINOR*.

ANATOLIA, or ASIA MINOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from the greater *Aſia*; on the Weſt, with the *Thracian Boſphorus*, *Propontis*, *Helleſpont*, and the *Ægæan Sea*, by which parted from *Europe*; on the North, with *Pontus Euxinus*, called alſo the *Black Sea*, and *Mare Maggiore*; and on the South, by the *Rhodian*, *Lydian*, and *Pamphylian* Seas, ſeveral parts of the *Mediterranean*. So that it is a demy-Iſland, or *Peninſula*, environed on all ſides with waters, excepting a ſmall *Iſthmus* or neck of Land extending from the head of *Euphrates* to the *Euxine* Sea, by which joyned to the reſt of *Aſia*.

It was anciently called *Aſia Minor*, to difference it from the reſidue of this great *Continent*; afterwards *Anatolia*, ἀπὸ τῆς ἀνατολῆς, from the more Eaſtward ſituation of it, in reſpect of *Greece*; and now *Natolia* by

by the *Turks*, with little deviation from the former name. But here is to be obſerved, that as this *Leſſer Aſia* was a part of the greater; and the *Dioceſe* of *Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* the *Leſs*: ſo was *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, but a part only of the *Aſian Dioceſe*; the *Lydian Aſia*, a part of *Aſia* properly ſo called; and the *Proconſular Aſia*, but a part of that. The limits of *Aſia* the *Leſs*, and the ſeveral Provinces contained in the *Aſian Dioceſe*, have been ſhewn already. And as for that part hereof which had the name of *Aſia* properly and ſpecially ſo called, it containeth only the two *Phrygias*, both the *Myſias*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*, and *Caria*, which falling unto the *Romans*, by the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Attalus*, the laſt King of *Pergamus*, were by them made into one Province, and called *Aſia*, after the name of the whole *Continent*, this being as it were the *earneſt penny*, to make ſure the reſt. So witneſſeth *Strabo*, where he ſaith, Ῥωμαῖοι ἐπαρχίαν ἀπέδειξαν τὴν χωρὰν Ἀσίαν προσαγορεύσαντες, ἐμώνυμον τῇ ἠπείρῳ, *Lib.* 13. And for the *Lydian Aſia*, that contained only ſo much of the *Roman* or *proper Aſia*, as anciently did belong to *Lydia*; that is to ſay, *Lydia* it ſelf, together with *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, and ſome parts of the *Greater Myſia* adjoyning to it. Which as it had originally the name of *Aſia*, from *Aſia* a chief City of it near the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, which both *Suidas*, and the *Great Etymologiſt* have taken notice of, before that name became to be communicated to the greater *Continent*: ſo it retained that name to it ſelf in ſeveral, diſtinct both from the *Greater* and the *Leſſer Aſia*; as alſo from the *Aſia propria* of *Ptolemy*, and others of the ancient Writers. And of this *Aſia* only it is, which the Scriptures ſpeak; both in the Book of the *Acts*, and the *Revelation*: the ſeven Churches mentioned in the one being found in this *Lydian Aſia*, and the paſſages in the other concerning *Aſia*, not to be underſtood of any, but of this alone. For whereas it is ſaid *Acts* 16. that when they had gone throughout *Phrygia*, and the Region of *Galatia*, and were forbidden of the Holy Ghoſt to preach the Word in *Aſia*; after they were come to *Myſia*, they aſſayed to go into *Bithynia*, and came down to *Troas*: moſt clear it is, that neither *Galatia*, nor *Bithynia*, though Regions of the *Leſſer Aſia*; nor *Phrygia*, *Myſia*, or *Troas* all Regions of the *proper Aſia*, were any part of that *Aſia* which the Scripture ſpeaks of. So alſo where it is affirmed, that upon St. *Pauls* preaching and diſputing for two years in *Epheſus*, all *they which dwelt in* Aſia *heard the word of the Lord*, Acts 19 10. it is not to be meant of any but the *Lydian Aſia*, whereof *Epheſus* at that time was the principal City. So alſo *Acts* 19. 22, 26, 31. and *Chap.* 20. 18. Finally, for the *Proconſular Aſia*, which together with *Helleſpont* and the *Iſles*, made up a government apart, exempt from the command of the *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, it contained only *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, with the South part of *Lydia*, or the Countries lying about *Epheſus*. So witneſſeth St. *Hierom* from the *Chriſtian* Writers, where he affirms, that although all the whole *Peninſula* have the name of the *Leſſer Aſia*, *Specialiter ubi* Epheſus *Civitas eſt*, Aſia *Vocatur*; yet more particularly the parts adjoyning unto *Epheſus* have the name of *Aſia*. And this appeareth by the diſtribution of the Provinces before laid down, where *Lydia* is reckoned for a Province of the *Aſian Dioceſe*, diſtinct from the *Proconſular Aſia*, which we now inſiſt on.

So haveing cleared our way in regard of the name, proceed we next unto the Region, or place thus named, according to the notion in the largeſt latitude, extending from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, and from the *Euxine* Sea to the *Mediterranean*. By which account it reacheth from the 51 to the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and from the 36 to the 45 degree of *Latitude*: the length hereof from the *Helleſpont* to the River *Euphrates*, being eſtimated at 630 miles; the breadth from *Sinus Iſſicus* in *Cilicia*, to the City of *Trabezond*, at 210. As for the ſituation of it, in reference to the *Heavenly* Bodies, it lyeth almoſt in the ſame poſition with *Italy*, extending from the middle *Parallel* of the fourth *Clime*, to the middle *Parallel* of the ſixt: So that the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, is about fourteen hours and a half; and one hour longer in thoſe parts which lie moſt towards the North.

The temperature of the air is exceeding ſound, and the ſoil generally exceeding fruitful, abounding in moſt excellent paſtures, which breed a notable race of Horſes, of very good ſervice in the Wars, if backed with *Europæan* Riders; it being a by-word amongſt the *Turks*, that the Horſes of *Aſia*, and the Horſemen of *Europe* are of greateſt action. It was anciently very plentiful of all fruits, both for uſe and pleaſure, as ſtill it would be, were it cultivated as in former times. Once very populous, and repleniſhed with goodly Cities, now in a manner waſte and deſolate, lamenting the diſtruction of 400 Towns: ſome of them deſtroyed by *Earthquakes*, (the falling ſickneſs of moſt great Cities in the Eaſt) but moſt by War, and have little now to boaſt of but the commodiouſneſs of the Havens, which are very many; though moſt of them but meanly traded, as in a Country ill manured, and of little *Manufactures*.

The people anciently, eſpecially thoſe of *Greek* original, and the Nations bordering on the *Euxine*, were very warlike and induſtrious: the reſt, eſpecially the *Lydians*, and thoſe of the greater *Phrygia*, as idle and effeminate, wholly addicted to their pleaſures. All of them at this time affected with the ſame diſeaſe; inſomuch that the *Turks*, (unleſs compelled thereunto by extreme neceſſities) never inrol their Children in the number of *Janizaries*. The greateſt part of them generally profeſs the *Chriſtian* Faith, but overpowered by *Mahometaniſm*, which is here moſt prevalent: all followers of the Church of *Greece*, and ſubject all (except thoſe of *Iſauria* and *Cilicia*) to the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. And as they are of the *Communion* of that Church, ſo they retain the *Greek Liturgies* for Sacred Offices; not ſo well underſtood amongſt them as in former times, when it was more generally ſpoken there than it is at the preſent: now over-topped in moſt places by the *Turkiſh* and *Sclavonian* Tongues. And though in former times, by reaſon of the many *Greek* Colonies planted in this Country, the Conqueſt of it by *Alexander* the *Great*, and the ſubjection of it to the *Syrian* Kings of the *Macedon* Race, that Language became generally underſtood amongſt them; inſomuch as three of the *Greek Dialects*, *viz.* The *Dorick*, the *Ionian*, and the *Æolick*, were ſpoken here: yet did it never ſo prevail, as to become the Vulgar Language of the people, or to extinguiſh any of the Vulgar Tongues. For it is ſaid of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, that he underſtood two and twenty Languages, without any *Interpreter*; which were no other than the Languages of ſo many Nations ſubject to himſelf, whoſe Dominion was contained for the moſt part within *Aſia Minor*.

Principal Mountains of this Country, are *Hermion* in *Pontus*, *Argæus* in *Cappadocia*, *Ida* in the *Leſſer Phrygia*, *Olympus* in *Myſia*, *Tmolus* in *Lydia*, *Amanus* in *Cilicia*, and finally *Antetaurus*, and *Scordiſcus* in *Armenia Minor*: Out of which, for the moſt part, flow the chief Rivers hereof, that is to ſay, 1 *Iris*, (now *Caſilmach.*) 2 *Thermodon*. 3 *Halis* (now *Ottomangruch.*) 4 *Parthenius* (now *Dilop.*) 5 *Sangarius* (now *Sangry.*)

All

All of them falling into the *Euxine Sea*. 6 *Ascanius*. 7 *Rhyndacus*. 8 *Æsapus*, and 9 *Granicus*, passing into the *Propontis*. 10 *Simois*. 11 *Scamander*, called also *Xanthus*, ending their short course in the *Hellespont*. 12 *Caicus*. 13 *Hermus*. 14 *Caystrus*. And 15 *Meander*, losing themselves in the *Ægean*. 16 *Calbis*. 17 *Xanthus*, called also *Lycus*. 18 *Limicus*. 19 *Cataractes*, dischanelling into the *Mediterranean*, and 20 *Melas*, adding to the waters of the great River *Euphrates*. Of most which we shall speak more particularly in their several places.

In reference to the State of *Rome*, it contained the whole Diocese of *Pontus*, except *Armenia* the *Greater*, the *Asian Diocese* intirely, without any exception; and the peculiar jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*, together with the Provinces of *Isauria* and *Cilicia*, parts of the *Diocese* of the East. But because the names of many of those Provinces were of new invention, and some of them of as short continuance, we will consider it according as it stood divided anciently, and before the *Romans* had made any conquests in it, into the Provinces of 1 *Bithynia*. 2 *Pontus*. 3 *Paphlagonia*. 4 *Galatia*. 5 *Cappadocia*. 6 *Armenia Minor*; which (together with *Armenia Major*) made up, though in other names, the *Pontick Diocese*. 7 *Phrygia Minor*. 8 *Phrygia Major*. 9 *Mysia* the greater and the lesser. 10 *Asia*, specially so called, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*. 11 *Lydia*. 12 *Caria*. 13 *Lycia*. 14 *Lycaonia*. 15 *Pisidia*. 16 *Pamphylia*. 17 The Province of the *Rhodes*, all comprehended under the command of the *Vicarius* and *Proconsul* of *Asia*. 18 *Isauria*. 19 *Cilicia*, parts of the *Diocese* of the East, as before was said.

1 BITHYNIA.

BITHYNIA is bounded on the East with *Pontus*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the West, with part of the *Euxine*, the *Thracian Bosphorus*, and part of the *Propontis*; on the North, wholly with the *Euxine*; and on the South, with *Mysia*, and *Phrygia Minor*: Formerly called *Bebrycia*, afterwards *Mygdonia*, and at last *Bithynia*, and that as some say from *Bithynius*, once a King hereof; more probably from the *Thyni*, a people of *Thrace*, who passed over the *Bosphorus*, and subdued it, called therefore by some Writers *Thracia Asiatica*. So witnesseth the Poet *Claudian*, saying.

Thyni *Thraces erant, quæ nunc* Bithynia *fertur.*

By *Justin* the Historian it is called by the name of *Metapontus*, by reason of its neighbourhood to the *Euxine*, and the *Pontick* Regions.

The Country naturally rich, and in those parts hereof which lie next the *Bosphorus*, opposite to *Constantinople*, so plentifully enriched with fruitful hills, and pleasant Orchards, when kept by the more curious *Christians*, that it was thought not to be inferiour to the so much celebrated *Tempe*: now robbed of all those former beauties by the carelesness of the *Turks*, who affect neither art, nor sumptuosity, in their retirements and delights.

Chief Rivers hereof are *Phillis*. 2 *Sangarius*, now called *Sangri*, both falling into the *Euxine* Sea; this last arising from Mount *Dindymus*, in the furthest parts of *Phrygia Major*; and making two long reaches in his journey hither. 3 *Ascanius*, which rising also in *Phrygia Major*, but more near the borders of this Country, falleth into the *Propontis*, making the Bay called *Sinus Ascanius*; Which with a Lake in the same Country, called *Lacus Ascanius*, doth plainly manifest, that the *Bithynians* are derived from *Askenaz*, the Son of *Gomer*, and grand-son of *Japhet*.

The Principal Towns hereof are 1 *Scutari*, over against the Haven of *Constantinople*, called anciently *Chrysopolis*, for that there the *Persians* received their tribute from the other Cities of all these parts of *Asia Minor*. An ample Town, well garrisoned within, and surrounded round about with most pleasant Orchards, and honoured with the neighbourhood of a Royal *Seraglio*. Not far off is a Tower, called the *Maiden-Tower*, serving both for a Fort and Watch-tower; and being furnished for defence with 20 Pieces of Ordnance. 2 *Chalcedon*, on the same shore also, a Colony of the *Megarenses*, called *blind* by the *Oracle*, for neglecting *Byzantium*, and choosing the less convenient place for their habitation. And yet did *Constantine* the *Great* resolve upon the same place also for his *Regal* City; but changed his resolutions on a kind of miracle: it being observed, that when his workmen began to draw the Platform, some *Eagles* conveyed away their Lines to the other side of the *Bosphorus*, and let them fall directly upon *Byzantium*. Memorable after that for the fourth *General Council* there assembled by command of the Emperour *Martianus*, for repressing the Heresie of *Nestorius*; in which were 530 Bishops: now so decayed, that it can only shew some few of the ruines of it; *Scutari* being risen on the fall thereof. 3 *Nicomedia*, so called from *Nicomedes* King of *Bithynia* (the Son of *Zipes*, and Grandchild to that *Bithynian* King, who so valiantly defended his own and his Countries liberty against *Calantus*, one of Great *Alexanders* Captains) by whom founded: Situate on the top of an hill, environed with a pleasant and delightful plain, honoured with the seat and residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, when their affairs called them into the East, before the building of *Constantinople*; on that occasion made the Throne on which many of Gods Saints received the Crown of *Martyrdom*, especially in the persecution under *Diocletian*. In those times wealthy, and of fame, now much decayed; but notwithstanding well inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, for the commodiousness of the fresh springs which are thereabouts. 4 *Libussa*, betwixt *Nicomedia*, and the River *Ascanius*; memorable for the death and sepulture of the famous *Annibal*, who to prevent his being made prisoner to the *Romans*, when *Prusius* King of *Bithynia* intended unworthily to betray him, here made away himself by poyson. 5 *Prusa*, founded by another *Prusius*, whose name it beareth; a large and wealthy City as most in *Asia*: honoured for a long time with the residence of the *Turkish* Kings, till the removal of their seat to *Adrianople*, by *Mahomet* the first; and still ennobled with the sepulture of the Princes of the *Ottoman* Race, except the Emperours themselves. By the *Turks* called *Bursa*. 6 *Nicæ* or *Nicæa*, by the *Turks* called *Neichia*, but most commonly *Isnichs*, situate near the Fens of the River *Ascanius*, occasioned by the frequent overflowings of that River: by some affirmed to be the *Metropolis* of *Bithynia*; but I think *Nicomedia* hath more right to claim that honour. First named *Antigonia*, from *Antigonus* the founder of it; and afterwards *Nicæa*, by the name of *Nica*, Wife unto *Lysimachus*: both of them Captains of the Great *Alexander*; which last had the happiness to survive the overthrow of the former, and was the longest liver of those Great Commanders. Sufficiently famous both in *Ecclesiastical* and *Civil* Story, for the first *General Council* there holden, by the appointment of *Constantine* the Great, *Anno* 314. for settling the peace of the Church, then miserably distracted by the *Arian* Heresie. The number of Bishops there assembled, no more than 318. yet of such high esteem for Learning and Piety, that

that never Council hath been held in so great an honour. Here was also held the Council by the Empress *Irene*, for establishing the veneration of Images; that passing by the name of the *Nicene* Council, the Acts thereof might be of greater reputation amongst ignorant men. In which it was decreed by such doubty Arguments, as *Let us make man after our own Image*, once mainly insisted on by a *Legate* of the Eastern Churches, that they should be reverenced and adored in as ample and religious manner, as the blessed *Trinity* it self. This City was also the *Imperial* City of the *Greek* Emperours, after the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western *Christians*, and there continued till the expulsion of the *Latines*, under these

Emperours of the *GREEKS* residing at *NICE*.

A. Ch.		
1200	1	*Theodorus Lascaris*, Son in-law- to *Alexius Angelus* the Usurper, upon the taking of *Constantinople* by the *Latines*, passed over into *Asia* and fortifying the City of *Nice*, made it the head City of this Kingdom, containing *Bithynia*, both the *Phrygias*, both the *Mysias*, *Lydia*, *Æolas*, and *Ionia*.
1223	2	*John*, sirnamed *Ducas*, the Husband of *Irene*, Daughter of *Theodore Lascaris*, succeeded his Father-in-law in the Empire; to which he added *Pontus*, most of the Isles of the *Ægean*, and not a few places of importance in *Thrace* it self.
1256	3	*Theodorus* II. the son of *Ducas*.
1259	4	*John* II. the son of *Theodore* the second, an Infant of about six years old, supplanted first, and after cruelly deposed and deprived of sight.
1259	5	*Michael Palæologus*, descended from the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*, first took upon him as *Protector* of the Infant-Emperour, and afterwards as his *associate* in the Empire: in which confirmed by many fortunate successes, as well against the *Latines*, as some *Greek* Usurpers in *Thessaly* and *Peloponnesus*, especially the taking of *Constantinople*; he deprived the young Emperour of his sight, made himself sole Emperour, and left it unto his posterity, who held it with a great deal of trouble and continual disquiets, till the year 1452. when conquered by *Mahomet* the Great, as before was said. But this recovery of *Constantinople* was the loss of *Nice*, taken not long after the removal of the *Imperial* seat, by *Sultan Ottoman*, *Anno* 1299. who presently thereupon took on himself the style of *King*, from which before he had abstained.

As for the fortunes of *Bithynia* it self, I look upon the *Bithynians* as a *Thracian* people, whom both *Strabo* and *Herodotus* speak of, as the founders of the name and Nation. Of such a King of theirs as *Bithynius* I find some mention in my Authors; and possibly it might be he who had the leading of the *Thyni*, or *Bithyni* in this expedition, that being the name rather of this Nation, than his proper Family. But for the line of Kings which held out till the flourishing of the *Roman* greatness, they began to reign here some few generations, before the time of *Philip*, and *Alexander*, the *Macedonians*: by which last, having other imployment, and lying out of the road towards *Persia*, they were little troubled. *Calantus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, made an expedition into their Country, and was vanquished by them: and afterwards they had to do with one of the Lieutenants of *Antigonus*, (one of *Alexanders* greatest Princes) who though he humbled them for the present, yet got he neither title nor possession by it. And thus they held it out till the time of *Prusias*, so shuffling with the *Macedonian* and *Syrian* Kings, that betwixt both they still preserved their own estates. This *Prusias*, when the *Romans* became so considerable, as that no danger need be feared from *Greece*, or *Syria*, pieced himself with them; and having aided them in their wars against *Philip*, and *Antiochus* both, and most unworthily promised to deliver *Annibal* (who had fled to him for succour) unto their Embassadours, made all sure to this side. His son and successour *Nicomedes*, being outed of his Kingdom by *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, and restored again unto it by the power of the *Romans*, held it as their *Feudatary*, as did *Nicomedes* his next Successor, sirnamed *Philometor*: who dying without issue in the time of *Augustus*, gave his whole Kingdom to the *Romans*. By them, with the addition of that part of *Pontus* which lay next unto it, it was made a Province of their Empire, by the name of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, continuing so till the division of that Empire into the Eastern and Western; when falling to the share of the *Constantinopolitans*, and with them to the power of the *Turkish* Tyrants, who do still possess it.

2 *PONTUS.*

PONTUS is bounded on the East, with *Colchis*, and *Armenia*; on the West, with *Bithynia*, and the River *Sangarius*; on the North, with the *Euxine* Sea; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, *Paphlagonia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*. So that it taketh up the whole length of *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*, from *Bithynia* to the River *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Armenia Major*, but not of answerable breadth; and gives name to the Sea adjoyning, *à Ponto regione illi adjacente ita appellari*, as *Ortelius* hath it, called from hence *Pontus* by the *Latines*, the adjunct of *Euxinus* coming on another occasion, which we have spoken of before. A Country of a large extent, and therefore divided by the *Romans* (when Masters of it) into these four parts, *viz. Metapontus*, or *Pontus* specially so called, 2 *Pontus Galaticus*, 3 *Polemoniacus*, and 4 *Pontus Cappadocius*.

1 PONTUS, especially so called, or *Metapontus*, bordering on *Bithynia*, and bounded on the East with the River *Parthenius*, which divided it from *Paphlagonia*, had for the chief Cities thereof, 1 *Claudiopolis*, so called in honour of *Claudius*, the *Roman Emperour*; as 2 *Flaviopolis*, in honour of *Flavius Vespacianus*; and 3 *Juliopolis*, in honour of the *Julian* Family; all midland Towns. 4 *Diospolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, so called from a Temple consecrated to *Jupiter*, of great resort. 5 *Heraclea*, a Colony of the *Phocians*, called for distinction sake (there being many of that name) *Heraclea Ponti*: memorable of late times for being the seat or residence of a branch of the *Imperial* family of the *Comneni*; when at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western Christians, *David* and *Alexius Comneni* fled into these parts: the first fixing here his Royal residence, commanded over this part of *Pontus*, and *Paphlagonia*; the other possessing himself of *Cappadocia* and *Galatia*, made *Trabezond* his Regal or Imperial City. But these two Empires, though of the same date, were of different destinies: that of *Heraclea* and *Pontus*, being partly conquered by the *Greek* Emperours residing at *Nice*, and partly seized on by the *Turks* in the beginning and first fortunes of the *Ottoman* family; the other keeping up the Majesty and State of an Empire, till the year 1461. when subdued by *Mahomet* the Great. 6 *Phyllium*, at the mouth or influx of the River *Phyllis*, upon which it is seated. 7 *Amastris*, the farthest Town of this part towards the East, on the Sea-side also, once of great strength; but taken by *Lucullus*, together with *Heraclea*, *Synope*, *Amisus*, and other Towns, in the war against *Mithridates*, the great King of *Pontus*.

2 East-

2 Eaſtward of *Pontus*, ſpecially ſo called; or *Meta-pontus*, as *Juſtin* the Hiſtorian calls it, lyeth PONTUS GALATICUS, ſo named, becauſe added to *Galatia* in the time of the *Romans*. The chief Cities whereof were 1 *Synope*, pleaſantly ſeated on a long point or *Promontory*, ſhooting into the main, remarkable in ancient ſtory for the birth and ſepulture of *Mithridates*, before mentioned; and in the later times for being the chief ſeat of the *Iſſendiars*, a noble family of the *Turks*, who had taken it with the reſt of this Tract from the *Comneni*, and held it till the ſame year in which the Empire of *Trabezond* was ſubdued by *Mahomet*. Firſt built by the *Mileſians*, and continuing in a *free eſtate*, till taken by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*, and made the *Metropolis* of that Kingdom. 2 *Caſtamona*, the head City of the Principality of the *Iſſendiars*, before mentioned; preferred by them for ſtrength and conveniency of ſituation, before *Heraclea*, or *Synope*. 3 *Themiſcyra*, now called *Favagoria*, ſeated on a ſpacious plain near unto the Sea, and anciently giving name to the Province adjoyning. 4. *Amaſia*, the birth-place of *Strabo* the *Geographer*, remarkable in the Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtories for the *Martyrdom* of St. *Theodorus*, and of late times for being the reſidence of the eldeſt Sons of the *Grand Signior*, ſent hither as ſoon as circumciſed, never returning back again till the death of their Father. Accompted now amongſt the Cities of *Cappadocia*, and the chief of that Province: a midland town, as alſo is 5 *Cabira*, called afterward *Dioſpolis*, memorable for the great defeat which *Lucullus* gave there unto *Mithridates*, more for the trick which *Mithridates* there put upon *Lucullus*. For being well acquainted with the covetouſneſs of the *Romans*, he ſaw no better way to ſave himſelf and the reſt of his forces after the defeat, than to ſcatter his treaſures in the way which he was to take; that by that means his enemies might ſlacken the purſuit to collect the ſpoils, and he preſerve himſel to another day; and ſo accordinly it proved. 6 *Comana*, to difference it from another of that name, called *Comana Pontica*; to which other, being of *Cappadocia*, or *Armenia Minor*, *Mithridates* came in ſafety by the trick aforeſaid, and thence eſcaped unto *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King, with 2000 horſe.

3 Eaſtward of *Pontus Galaticus* lies POLEMONIACUS, ſo called by the *Romans* either from *Polemonium* a chief town of this tract, or from *Polemo* the laſt King hereof; after whoſe death this Kingdom came unto the *Romans*. Places of moſt importance in it. 1 *Polemonium* on the Sea-ſide, ſpoken of before. 2 *Hermanaſſa*, a Sea-town alſo. More in the land, 3 *Neo-Ceſarea* (now *Nixaria*) the *Metropolis* of *Polemoniacus*, when made a Province of it ſelf. 4 *Zela*, enlarged by *Pompey*, and called *Megalopolis*; by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Helenopontus*. 5 *Sebaſtia*, ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Sebaſtos*, a place of great ſtrength, and one of the firſt Towns in the *Leſſer Aſia*, which held out againſt *Tamerlane*: in revenge whereof, when he had took it, he cauſed 12000 men, women, and children, to be moſt cruelly buried alive in ſome hollow pits, which he had digged for that purpoſe. Nigh to this City is Mount *Stella*, where *Pompey* gave *Mithridates* his fatal overthrow: where alſo *Tamerlane* with an Army of 800000 of his *Tartars*, encountred with *Bajazet* the *Turk*, coming to the relief of *Sebaſtia*, with an Army of 500000 fighting men. The iſſue of which fight was this, that *Bajazet* having loſt 200000 of his ſouldiers, was himſelf taken priſoner, and carried by the inſolent Conquerour in an iron cage, againſt the bars whereof he beat out his brains. 6 *Barbiniſſa*. 7 *Megaloſſus*. 8 *Gezalvia*, &c. not much obſervable in ſtory.

In this part of *Pontus* is the riſe and fall of the River *Thermodon*, on the banks whereof the *Amazons*, a ſort of warlick women, are ſaid to dwell; ſo called either *quaſi* ἀμάζας, becauſe they uſed to cut off their right papps, that they might not be an impediment to their ſhooting; or from α and μάζα, *fine pane*, becauſe they uſed not to eat bread; or from ἅμα ζῆν, becauſe the uſed to live together. They were originally of *Scythia*, and accompanied their husbands to theſe parts, about the time of the *Scythians* firſt irruptions into *Aſia*, in the time of *Seſoſtris* King of *Ægypt*. The leaders of this people into *Cappadocia* were *Plinoe* and *Scolpythus*, two young men of a great houſe, whom a contrary faction had baniſhed. They held a great hand over the *Themiſcyrii*, who inhabited this Region, and the Nations round about them. At laſt they were by treachery all murdered: But their wives now doubly vexed, both with exile and widowhood, and extremity of grief and fear producing its uſual effect, deſperateneſs, they ſet upon the Conquerours under the conduct of *Lampedo* and *Marpeſia*; and not only overthrew them, but alſo infinitely inlarged their Dominions, and for ſome time continued in great reputation: the names of whom, or of ſo many of them at leaſt as occur in ſtory, we ſhall here ſubjoyn.

The *Amazon Queens*.

1 *Lampedo*, *Marpeſia*, } Firſt *Queens* of the *Amazons* in theſe parts.
2 *Ortara*.
3 *Antiopa*, whoſe ſiſters *Hippolite* and *Menalippe*, challenged *Hercules* and *Theſeus* to ſingle combate, and were at laſt hardly vanquiſhed, to their eternal credits.
4 *Penthefilea*, who came with a troop of brave *Viragos*, to the aid of *Priamus* King of *Troy*: ſhe invented the *Battel-Axe*, and was at laſt ſlain by *Pyrrhus*, ſon to *Achilles*. Long after her death reigned *Thaleſtris*, who came to *Alexander*, being in *Hyrcania*, and plainly told him that ſhe came to be his bedfellow; which done, ſhe returned: and at laſt by little and little this femal Nation was extinct. They uſed in matters of *copulation* to go to their neighbouring men thrice in a year; if they brought forth Males, they ſent them to their fathers; if females, they kept them, and trained them up in all diſcipline of war and courage. Of theſe more elſewhere.

4 The moſt Eaſtern part of *Pontus*, called CAPPADOCIUS, for that it bordered on that Province, and for a time was added to it by the *Romans*; extended from *Polemoniacus* to *Colchis*, and the River *Euphrates*, the utmoſt boundaries of this Country. Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Pharnaeia*, built by *Pharnaces*, a King of *Pontus*. 2 *Ceraſus*, by *Conſtantine* laid unto the Province of *Polemoniacus*, from whence *Cherries* were brought firſt to *Rome*, *An V. C.* 680. called therefore *Ceraſa* by the *Latines*; brought firſt into *Italy* by *Lucullus*, at the end of his war with *Mithridates*, no leſs deſerving for that ſervice to be made a God (as wittily *Tertulian* ſcoffs it) than *Bacchus* was for his tranſplanting of the Vine from the Eaſtern Countries. 3 *Iſcopolis*, on the *Euxine* Sea, as the others are. And ſo is alſo, 4 *Trapezus*, now *Trabezond*, the Imperial City of the *Comneni* here reigning over *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, and theſe parts of *Pontus*. An Empire founded firſt by *Alexius Comnenus* (Nephew of the great Tyrant *Andronicus Comnenus* by his ſon *Emanuel*) who at the taking of *Conſtantinople* by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, fled into theſe parts, which willingly ſubmitted unto his command, *Anno* 1200. Here his poſterity flouriſhed in great proſperity, preſerving the Majeſty of the Empire in a better meaſure, than the *Conſtantinopolitans* themſelves, till the time of *David* the laſt Emperour; in whoſe reign the City of *Trabezond*, and therewith all the whole Dominion belonging to it, was taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*; the

the poor Emperour led prisoner unto *Greece*, and there cruelly murdered. A famous Empory, and specially for the trade of fish, caught by the people on the shores of the *Euxine* Sea; here salted, and from hence transported in great quantities to *Constantinople*, *Caffa*, and other places. And for the better help herein, it is said that there is a Mountain not far from this City, affording a black stone, which being beaten in a Mortar serves instead of salt, wherewith they season the fish which they send abroad. A City honoured heretofore with the residence of the Lord Deputies, or Lieutenants of the *Grecian* Emperour, for defence of the out-parts of the *Euxine* against the *Persians*; and now the Station of such Gallies as are maintained by the *Grand Seigneur*, to scoure the coasts of the *Black sea*, and secure their trade. More in the land stand 5 *Zephiriam.* 6 *Aza.* 7 *Cocalia.* 8 *Cordyle*, and many others named in *Ptolomy*, but not else observable.

The ancient Inhabitants of this Country were called *LEUCOSTRI*, or *White Syrians*, governed by a race of Kings descended from the Royal house of *Achemenes* King of *Persia*. The first of them called *Mithridates*, one of the seven Competitors for the *Persian* Kingdom, on the death of *Cambyses*. But that honour falling on *Darius* (of which more hereafter) he seated himself in these remote parts of *Asia Minor*; the Ancestor of many great and puissant Princes, but none more memorable than one of his own name, *Regum Orientis post* Alexandrum *Magnum Maximus*, the most potent King of all the East since the time of *Alexander* the Great, as my Author hath it. A Prince of great abilities both in war and counsel, and one who longer held it out against the *Romans*, than *Pyrrhus*, *Annibal*, and the great Kings of *Macedon*, and *Syria*, had done together. This was that famous *Mithridates*, who being once a friend and confederate of the *Romans*, took their part against *Aristonicus*; who would not consent to the admission of the *Romans* unto *Pergamus*, according to the will of *Attalus*. Afterwards, conceiving an ambitious hope to obtain the Monarchy of *Asia*, in one night he plotted and effected the death of all the *Roman* Citizens dispersed in *Anatolia*, being in number 150000: in like manner, as in after times the *English*, taught perhaps by this example, murdered all the *Danes* then resident in *England*; and the *Sicilians* massacred all the *Freuch*, inhabiting *Sicilia*, as we have formerly declared. He dispossessed *Nicomedes*, son to *Prusias*, King of *Bithynia*; *Ariobarzanes*, King of *Cappadocia*; and *Philumones*, King of *Paphlagonia*, of their estates; because they persisted faithful to his enemies of *Rome*. He excited the *Grecians* to rebel, possessed himself of *Athens*, and divers places of importance in *Greece*, *Thrace*, and *Asia*; and allured all the Isles, except *Rhodes*, from their obedience to the *Romans*. And finally, having disturbed their victories, and much shaken their estate, for the space of 40 years, he was with much ado vanquished by the valour and felicity of *L. Sylla*, *Lucullus*, and *Pompey* the Great; three of the greatest Souldiers that ever the *Roman* Empire knew. Yet did not the *Roman* puissance so much pluck down his proud heart, as the rebellion of his son *Pharnaces*, against him; which he no sooner heard, but he would have poysoned himself: but having formerly so used his body to a kind of poyson allayed, (which from his inventing of it, we now call *Mithridate*) that the *venome* could not work upon him, he slew himself. He is said to have been an excellent Scholar, and to have spoken perfectly the Languages of 22 Nations; the Languages of so many Nations which were subject to him. But neither his learning nor his courage could preserve him from those common miseries, which ordinarily attend a falling greatness. And so ended this long and tedious war, exceeding troublesome to the *Romans*, but withal very beneficial. For under colour of having given aid to *Mithridates*, they took in *Crete*, *Galatia*, *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and both *Armenia's*: Insomuch as it is truly said by *L. Flor. Totum penè Orientem & Septentrionem involvit*, that in his ruins he involved both the East, and North. But to proceed; after his death the Kingdom continued unto his posterity, but *Tributaries* to the *Romans*, till the time of *Nero*: when *Polemo* the last King hereof dying without issue, it was *cantoned* and divided into many parts, and laid unto the Provinces of *Bithynia*, *Galatia*, and *Cappadocia*; only that part of it which was called *Polemoniacus*, retaining the dignity of a Province, distinct and separate. And so it remained till the reign of *Constantine* the *great*, who changing the names, lessening the bounds, and increasing the number of the Provinces, left only the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia* in the state he found it. And for the rest, he cast it into two new Provinces, that towards the East, retaining the name, but not the bounds of the old *Polemoniacus*, wherein were the Cities of *Trapezus*, *Neo-Cæsarea*, *Cerasus*, *Comana Pontica*, *Palæmonium*, and *Petræorum Civitas*, called afterwards *Justiniana*; of which *Neo-Cæsarea*, was the *Metropolis*. That towards the East, separated from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, by the River *Parthenius*, he caused to be called *Helenopontus*, by the name of *Helena* his Mother: and thereunto assigned the Cities of *Amasia* the *Metropolis* of it, *Ibora*, *Euchaita*, *Zela*, *Andrapus*, *Ægeum*, *Climachus*, *Sinope*, *Amisus*, and *Leontopolis*. But this division held not long, both being united into one, and called *Helenopontus*, by *Justinian*; continuing after that a member of the *Roman* Empire, till the coming of *David* and *Alexius Comneni* from *Constantinople*; whereof the one reigned in *Heraclea*, and the other in *Trabezond*, as before is said. But their estates being overthrown, it remains wholly to the *Turks*, who do now possess it.

The Arms of the Emperours of *Trabezond*, the greatest Princes of these parts, till the *Turks* subdued them, were *Or*, an Eagle volant *Gules*.

3 *PAPHLAGONIA.*

PAPHLAGONIA is bounded on the East, with the River *Halys*, by which parted form *Cappadocia*; on the West, by the River *Parthenius*, which parteth it from the Province of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*; on the North, with that part of the Kingdom of *Pontus* which was named *Galaticus*; and on the South, with *Phrygia Major*, and *Galatia*. So called of *Paphlago* the son of *Phineus*, estated in it by his Father, who had newly conquered it.

The Country was but small, and of little power, and consequently the Cities were not very many, and of no great note. The principal of such as were, were 1 *Gangra*, observable for a Council holden there in the Primitive times, *Anno* 339. commanly called *Synodus Gangrensis*. 2 *Conica*, or *Coniata*, of so convenient a situation, that it was entrenched and fortified by *Mithridates*, when he was Master of this Country. 3 *Pompeiopolis*, raised out of the foundation of some lesser town by *Pompey* the Great, and by him so named. 4 *Germanopolis*. 5 *Xoana*. 6 *Andrapa*, called afterwards *Nova Claudiopolis*, to difference it from another City of that name in *Pontus*.

This Province, though but small in circuit, was heretofore the seat of four different Nations, *viz.* 1 The *Tibareni*, of whom it is said that they never waged war on any enemy, but they faithfully certified them before-hand, of the time and place of their fight. 2 The *Heptacometæ*. 3 The *Mosynæci*, both which were a people so beastly and shameless, that they used to perform the work of generation in publick; not knowing that *Multa sunt honesta facta*,

factu, quæ sunt turpia visu. And 4 The *Heneti*, to whom the *Venetians*, as we have already said, do owe their first original. The Kings which ruled in this Country, derived themselves from *Philomenes*, who assisted *Priamus* King of *Troy* in his defence against the *Greeks*: in memory of whom, this Region for a while was called *Philomenia*. Applying themselves unto the times, they were alwaies favourable to the strongest, serving the *Persian*, and submitting to *Alexander* as he passed that way; and so maintained their estate without much molestation, till the time of *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*: who finding them firm unto the *Romans*, then growing to great power in the *Lesser Asia*, deprived *Philomenes*, then King hereof, and took the Kingdom to himself, fortifying the chief Towns and places of it. Restored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he gave it to them at his death. But the Country being very much wasted, and most of the Cities of it destroyed and desolated in the course of that War, it was not thought worthy a particular care, and therefore laid unto *Galatia*. Not reckoned a distinct Province in the time of St. *Peter*, who writing to the *Jews*, dispersed in *Pontus*, *Cappadocia*, *Galatia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*, takes no notice of this *Paphlagonia*; nor was it otherwise esteemed than as a member of *Galatia*, in the time of *Ptolomy*. Afterwards it was joyned to *Pontus*, by the Emperour *Constantine*; part of it after that, with some parts of *Pontus* and *Bithynia*, being made into a new Province by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and called *Honorius*, in honour of his son *Honorius*; whereof *Claudiopolis*, a City of *Pontus*, properly so called, was made the *Metropolis*. But by *Justinian* the name of *Honorius* being abolished, and that of *Paphlagonia* revived again, the whole Country, as before limited, was governed by an *Imperial* Officer, whom he called *Prætor Justinianus*: continuing under the command of the *Constantinopolitans*, till the taking of that City by the *Latines*. After which made a Member of the Empire of *Trabezond*, till the conquest of it by the *Turks*, by whom called *Rom*.

4 GALATIA.

GALATIA is bounded on the East, with *Cappadocia*; on the West, with the River *Sangarius*, and some part of *Pontus* specially so called, or *Metapontus*; on the North, with *Paphlagonia*, on the South, with *Lycaonia*. So called from the *Galls*, who having ranged over *Greece*, passed into *Asia*, and brought a great part of it under their command: but being broken by *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, and drove out of *Mysia* and the lesser *Phrygia*, were at last confined to this Country. It was also called *Gallo-Græcia*, from that mixture of *Galls* and *Grecians*, who uniting into one body when they came for *Asia*, were commonly called *Gallo-Græci*. By *Suidas*, *Græco-Galli*, and the Country sutably *Græco-Gallia*. Which mixture of *Grecians* notwithstanding, the *Galls* (being both the greater and prevailing Party) not only preserved their own Language, but in short time made it the common Language of the whole Country. And it continued so till S. *Hieroms* days, who telleth us in the Preface to his Commentaries on St. *Pauls* Epistle to this People, that it was *Similima Treverensium*, a language like to that of the *Treveri*, or people of *Triers*. A sure and certain Argument of their first Original.

The Country very plentiful of all manner of fruits, even unto voluptuousnes; and providently provided of the stone called the *Amethyst*, which is said to preserve from drunkenness the man that weareth it. The name doth signifie as much, derived from [a] *privativum*, and μέθυστος, *ebrius*, which cometh from μέθυ, signifying wine.

The people had a custome in their publick funerals, to cast letters fairly written, into that last and fatal fire, wherein the dead body was to be burned; supposing that their friends should read them in the other world. Much given to *Sacrifices*, in the number and frequency whereof they excelled all Nations: insomuch that *Athæneus* telleth us of one *Ariamnes*, a rich *Galatian*, that he feasted the whole Nation for a year together with the *Sacrifices* of Bulls, Sheep, Swine, and other Provisions, boyled in great Caldrons made for that purpose, and distributed amongst them in Tents and Booths erected for that entertainment. A brave flash of vain-glorious hospitality.

Rivers of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with their neighbouring Nations, as *Halys*, *Sangarius*, and some others. The Towns of most consideration in it were, 1 *Ancyra*, on the banks of the River *Sangarius*, the chief City of the *Tectosages*, a *Gallick* Nation, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Country; memorable in Church-story for a *Synod* here held in the Primitive times, *Anno* 399. called *Synodus Ancyrana*, but of most note at the present for the making of *Chamlets*: now called *Angauri*. 2 *Olenus*. 3 *Agrinama*, Cities of the same people also. 4 *Tavium*, or *Tanium*, (for I find both names) the chief City of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmi*, where was a brazen Statue of *Jupiter*, whose Temple there was a priviledged Sanctuary. 5 *Androsia*. 6 *Phabarena*, Cities of that Nation also. 7 *Thermæ*, a *Roman* Colony, so called of the hot Baths there; the chief City of the *Tolibosti*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Tolistobogi*, as *Strabo* nameth them. 8 *Talachbachora*, belonging also to that people.

Besides the Nations above-named, here dwelt also the *Byceni* and *Proseliminitæ*; who had also their peculiar Cities, mentioned by name in *Ptolomy*, but of little or no observation in the course of story. Of all which Nations, only the *Tectosages*, were of *Gallick* Original; who with others of their Country-men under the conduct of *Belgius* and *Brennus*, having ransacked *Pannonea* and *Illyricum*, fell at last into *Macedon*; where having tyrannized a while, and laid waste the Country, they were at last vanquished and expulsed by *Antigonus Gonatas*. After this overthrow, under the conduct of *Lammorius*, and *Lutorius*, they ferried over the *Hellespont*, and subdued almost all *Asia Minor* on this side the *Taurus*; employed there by those petty Kings and States against one another: their reputation grown so great, that no Prince thought himself secure without their alliance, or able to make war without their assistance. The very *Switzers* of that age; as mercenary, but more faithful unto those that hired them. But being over-rigorous in compelling their neighbouring Princes to become their *Tributaries*, and too severe in the exacting of their *Tributes*, they inforced *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by whose favour they had settled about the *Hellespont*, to become their enemy. Vanquished by him, they were constrained to contain themselves within the bounds of this Province, which from them in the following times was called *Galatia*, and *Gallo-Græcia*. Here for a while they kept their ancient courage and estimation, molesting many times their neighbours, and sometimes setting themselves to hire in the wars of others: but in the end they lost both courage and esteem, and were *Galls* only in name, retaining little in them of their Ancestors valour. For as most plants and trees lose much of their vertue, being transplanted into another soil: so these men lost their native courage, strength, and hardines, being weakened by the *Asian* pleasures and delicates. And as *Tully* saith, for a man to be good in other places, is no mastery; but in *Asia* to lead a temperate life, is indeed praise-worthy: so might one have said to the *Galls*, that to be couragious and patient of travel amongst the mountains,

tains, was no whit to be admired; but to have continued so amidst the delights of *Asia*, had been indeed meritorious in them. But these men were so far from assailing the *Romans* in the *Capitol*, that they lost their own Country to *Manlius*, a *Roman* General. A war which *Manlius* undertook for no other cause, but that they had been aiding to *Antiochus* against the *Romans*; nor was there any memorable act performed herein: but that of *Chiomena* the Kings Wife, who being ravished by one of the *Roman* Captains, took her advantage whilst he buried himself in telling the money agreed on for her ransom, to cut off his head, which she presented to her husband. But *Manlius* got little honour by his success, not being welcomed with a *triumph*, at his coming home, according to the *Roman* custom; because he undertook the war of his own accord, without Commission from the *Senate*. And yet the *Senate* was content to enjoy the fruits of it, keeping the *Galatians* as their Subjects, and the Kings their *Feudataries*. This hapned *An. V. C.* 564. After which time I find *Deiotarus*, by consent of the *Romans* to reign here as King: who siding with *Pompey* in his war against *Cæsar*, incurred the anger of the *Victor*; and had died for it, had not *Tully* pleaded his cause, and obtained his pardon. But he being dead, his Country in the time of *Augustus* was made a Province of the Empire; *Lollius Paulinus* being the first President or Governour of it: enlarged afterwards with the addition of *Paphlagonia*, and some part of *Pontus*, from whence called *Galaticus*. Reduced to its first bounds by the Emperour *Constantine*, and divided into two Provinces by *Theodosius*, the one called *Galatia Prima*, the other *Salutaris* from its *medicinal* waters. Of both which *Ancyra* remained the *Metropolis*. In the falling of the *Eastern* Empire, it was partly seized on by the *Turks*; not totally come into their hands, till the subverting of the Empire of *Trabezond*, upon which it depended. By the *Turks* at this day called *Chianger*.

5 CAPPADOCIA.

CAPPADOCIA is bounded on the East, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Armenia Minor*; on the West, with *Galatia*; on the North, with *Pontus Polemoniacus*, and *Cappadocius*; and on the South, with *Lycaonia*, and the rest of *Armenia Minor*. So called of the River, as *Pliny* telleth us, which runneth betwixt it, and *Galatia*.

The Country very plentiful of wine, and most kind of fruits, rich in mines of Silver, Brass, Iron, and Allom; affording also besides a mean sort of *Alabaster*, good store of *Crystal*, *Jasper*, and the *Onyx* stone: But the greatest wealth hereof is their breed of horses, infinite almost in numbers, and fit for any service they can be put to. And this is universal, in all parts of the Country, but not the other; there being some parts of it mountainous and very barren, especially about the spurs and branches of the *Antitaurus*, which is a chain of hills thrusting out of the *Taurus*, and bending themselves unto the North, upon the edges of this Country, and the two *Armenias*. Here is also in this Country the mountain *Argæus*, said to be of so great an height, that from one of the summits or tops thereof, a man of perspicuous eyes may discern the *Euxine* on the one hand, and the *Mediterranean* on the other.

The People of this Country in the time of the *Romans* were of ill report, so vicious and lewd of life, so monstrously addicted to all kind of wickedness; that besides the share they had in the old *Greek* Proverb, of Τεὰ Καππαδοκία, they had some proverbs to themselves, Καππαδόκαι and Καππαδόκιον τέρας, that is to say, a *man of Cappadocia*, and a *Cappadocian Monster*, being used *proverbially*, to signifie a man most extremely wicked. The words so used by *Gregory Nazianzen*, speaking of *Gregory* or *George*, the *Arian* Patriarch of *Alexandria*, if either *Suidas* or *Erasmus*, two right learned *Criticks*, understand him rightly. And they made good the *Proverb* in the times of the Gospel, *Gregory* that bloudy butcher of *Alexandria*, *Auxentius*, *Asterius*, *Eustathius*, principal Patrons of the *Arians*, and that Arch-Heretick *Eunomius*, being all of this Country. Yet such is the influence of *Christianity*, where once entertained, that this lewd disposition of the *Cappadocians* was so corrected and restrained by it, that this Country afforded as many godly Prelates, and couragious Martyrs, as any other whatsoever. Highly commended for it by *Nazianzen* before remembred, who with *Gregory Nyssen*, and St. *Basil*, all learned and religious Bishops, were all *Cappadocians*. And amongst many Martyrs of great faith and constancy, St. *George*, a noble *Cappadocian*, Colonel or Tribune of souldiers under *Diocletian*, more celebrated in the Churches both East and West, than any other Saint in all the *Calendar*, the blessed Apostles and Evangelists excepted only, and for that reason made Patron of the Order of the *Garter* by King *Edward* the third. Finally, it is reported of these *Cappadocians*, that they were not only morally wicked, but naturally venemous also; insomuch that if a Serpent did bite any of them, the mans bloud was a poison to the Snake, and killed him.

Principal Rivers of this Country, were 1 *Halys*, spoken of before, which had here its Fountain and Original; the end of *Crœsus* Empire both in site and fate, the utmost bound of his dominions on that side: which purposing to pass over in his way to *Media*, which he intended to invade, he was encountred with, and vanquished by *Cyrus* the great King of *Persia*. 2 *Iris*, which ariseth in this Country also, and palling thorough it, and a part of *Pontus*, discharnelleth it self, as the other doth, in the *Euxine* Sea.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Mazaca*, beautified and enlarged by the Emperour *Tiberius*, after the uniting of this Province to the *Roman* Empire; and in honour of *Augustus Cæsar*, by him called *Cæsarea*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia*, and the Episcopal See of renounced St. *Basil*. 2 *Nyssa*, the See of *Gregory*, sirnamed *Nyssenus*, the brother of *Basil*. 3 *Nazianzum*, the Episcopal See of another *Gregory*, sirnamed *Nazianzenus*; three men, which as for the piety of their conversation they were not equalled in those times: so for their admirable abilities in all kind of learning, nothing more inferiour to the most eminent of the ancient *Grecians*. 4 *Tyana*, the *Metropolis* of *Cappadocia secunda*, after the subdivision of it by the Emperour *Valens*. 5 *Archelais* in the *Præfecture* of *Gardnacreta*, so called from *Archelaus* a *Cappadocian* King, the founder or repairer of it. 6 *Comana*, for distinctions sake called *Comana Cappadocia*, to difference it from another of that name in *Pontus*; by *Ptolomy* placed, I know not why, in *Armenia Minor*, as is also *Nyssa* before mentioned. Memorable in old times for a Temple consecrated to *Bellona*, whose *Priests* and other inferiour Officers of both Sexes, amounted in the time of *Strabo* to 6000 and upward; for maintenance of whom the *Priests* received the *Revenue* of the Region next adjoyning to it; in honour next unto the King, and commonly of the same kindred also. 7 *Dio Cæsarea*, called formerly *Cabira*, as we find in *Strabo*. 8 *Faustinopolis*, so called in honour of *Faustina*, wife of the Emperour *Antonius*. 9 *Andraca*. 10 *Phiara*. 11 *Salambria*. 12 *Campæ*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*, with many others as obscure, and not worth the naming. Of more note, though not found in the ancient Writers, is 13 *Erzirum*, situate on the very confines of

the *Greater Armenia* for that cauſe made the *Rendezvouz*, or place of meeting for the *Turkiſh* Souldiers when there is any expedition in hand againſt the *Perſian*; at which place alſo after the ending of the war for the preſent year, they are disbanded and ſent home to their ſeveral quarters. And 14 *Pterium*, not named in *Ptolomy*; but memorable for the great battel fought in ſight thereof, between *Cræſus* King of *Lydia*, and *Cyrus* of *Perſia*; in which *Cræſus* having loſt the field, and with it his Kingdom, found the *Oracle* true (though not in the ſenſe which he expected) that *Cræſus* paſſing over the River *Halys*, ſhould overthrow a great eſtate, as indeed he did; but it was his own, and not the *Perſians*.

That the *Cappadocians* are derived from *Togarma*, the Son of *Gomer*, hath been ſo fully proved already in our *General Preface*, that we ſhall not trouble our ſelves to repeat it here: Nor ſhall we need to ſay more in confuting of their opinion, who would fetch *Capthorim* out of *Egypt* from the reſt of his brethren, to plant him in this Country, than hath there been ſaid. Their fortunes in the former times I find little of: ſubjected by the *Perſian*, with the reſt of *Aſia Minor*, after the overthrow of *Cræſus*, who before had given the Law unto it, as to the *Phrygians*, *Paphlagonians*, *Bithynians*, *Myſians*, and others of the neighbouring Nations. By *Cyrus* given together with *Atoſſa* his Siſter, to *Pharnaces* a noble *Perſian*, who had ſaved him from the fury of a ravenous Lion running upon him with full mouth, as he was hunting. A noble loyalty, and no leſs royally rewarded. From him deſcended *Ariarathes* King hereof in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*; continuing ſtedfaſt in his duty to the Crown of *Perſia*, when almoſt all the reſt of the Kings of *Aſia* yielded to the Enemy. Nor did *Alexander* call him to account in his march for *Perſia*. But after his deceaſe, *Perdiccas* having the command of the *Army*, ſet upon him, vanquiſhed him, and moſt cruelly crucified him, together with as many of his kindred as could be found. One of his Sons, who fortunately had eſcaped this ſlaughter, ſpying his time, when the *Macedonians* were at wars amongſt themſelves, recovered his eſtate again, and paſſed it over to his off-ſpring: continuing in his line, without any ſubjection, till the time of that *Ariobarzanes*, who by *Mithridates* was deprived of his dominion, as was told before. Reſtored again unto his Kingdom by the power of the *Romans*, he became their Homager, holding, as did his Succeſſors, by their *curteſie* only: Continuing yet in ſtate of Kings, till the death of *Archelaus* the laſt King hereof; Who having angred *Tiberius* for not attending on him when he lived at *Rhodes*, during the life time of *Auguſtus*, as did others of the *tributary* States and Princes, was by him then poſſeſſed of the Empire, cited unto *Rome* under colour of projecting ſomewhat againſt the State. Where the old Prince, even ſpent with Age, the Gout, and ſome other Diſeaſes, had without queſtion been condemned by the ſervile Senate; but that one of the witneſſes depoſed, that he had ſaid, that *if ever he went back into* Cappadocia, Tiberius *ſhould find*, quales ſibi nervi eſſent, *what a man he was*. Which moved ſuch a laughter in the *Senate*, the old King being neither able to ſit nor ſtand, that he was diſmiſſed; *Tiberius* thinking that he could not puniſh him more effectually, than to let him live. A favour which the old King conſtrued to the beſt, and in the way of gratitude bequeathed his Kingdom at his death to the Empire of *Rome*. Being added to the *Roman* Empire, it was exceedingly inlarged by the addition of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Pontus*: and ſo it ſtood in the time of *Ptolomy*, who reckoneth *Pontus Galaticus*, *Cappadocius*, and *Polemoniacus*, as parts and Members of this Province. Divided beſides thoſe into theſe eight *Præfectures*, that is to ſay, *Clanianienſis*, *Sargaranſene*, *Gardiocreta*, *Cilicia*, *Tyanidis*, *Lycaonia*, *Antiochiana*, and *Cataonia*. But *Pontus*, *Lycaonia*, and *Antiochiana* (he means *Piſidia* as I take it) being made Provinces of themſelves, by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, it returned unto its natural bounds, and made one Province of the Empire, of which *Cæſarea*, as is ſaid before, was the *Metropolitan*; and ſo remained, till the Emperour *Valens*, a great Patron of the *Arian* faction, of purpoſe to deſpight St. *Baſil*, who oppoſed that Hereſie, created another Province out of it, called *Cappadocia ſecunda*, whereof the *Metropolis* was *Tyana*. After this it continued part of the Eaſtern Empire, till the erecting of the new Empire of *Trabezond*; together with which it fell unto the hands of the *Turks*, by whom the whole Province, with the addition of *Pontus*, is now called *Amaſia*, after the name of that City, which the *Beglerbeg* of *Anatolia* honoureth with his reſidence, and is ſaid to yield yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* 60000 Ducats.

6. *ARMENIA MINOR.*

ARMENIA MINOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Major*; on the South, with Mount *Taurus*, which ſeparates it from *Cilicia*; on the Weſt, and North, with a long chain of Hills, called *Mons Scordiſcus*, by ſome called *Mons Amanus*, by others *Anti-Taurus*, according to the change of places; by which divided from *Cappadocia*. Of the reaſon of the name hereafter.

The Country of the ſame nature with *Cappadocia*, before deſcribed; in ſome parts overgrown with Mountains, by which, and by the River *Euphrates* ſo incloſed and fenced, that it is difficult of entrance: in others pleaſant and delightful, well watered with ſweet ſtreams, and ſome fair Rivers iſſuing out of the Mountains, the principal whereof is *Melas*, ſo called from the *blackneſs* of the water thereof, which falleth into the *Euphrates*.

Divided in the time of the *Romans* into theſe four Regions, that is to ſay, *Laviana*, *Aravena*, *Melitene*, lying on the *Euphrates*, *Mariana* more within the land towards *Cappadocia*; each of which had their ſeveral Cities, whoſe names are to be found in *Ptolomy*. The principal 1 *Melitene*, the chief City of the Region ſo called, and the *Metropolis* of the leſſer *Armenia*, called afterwards *Malaxia*, and now *Suur*; the Territory thereof abounding in Oyl and Wine, not inferiour to the beſt of *Greece*. The City ſaid by *Onuphrius* to be a Colony of the *Romans*, much ſpoken of by *Euſebius*, and other Writers of *Eccleſiaſtical* ſtory, for the piety of the *Chriſtians* there inhabiting in the fiery times of *Perſecution*. 2 *Nicopolis*, and 3 *Oromandus* in the Mountain Countries; the former built by *Pompey*, in memory of his victory there obtained againſt the forces of *Tigranes*, King of *Syria*, and both *Armenias*. 4 *Garnace*, a well-fortified Town, mentioned by *Tacitus* in the twelfth book of his *Annals*, and by him called *Gorneas*. 5 *Cucuſun*, and 6 *Arabyſſus*, memorable for the exile of St. *Chryſoſtome*, Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*, confined unto theſe places by the power and malice of the Empreſs *Eudoxia*, by whom hated for his *Orthodoxie* in points of faith; who dying afterwards at *Comana* of *Cappadocia*, was there interred.

This Country was once part of *Cappadocia*, till the *Armenians* by their incurſions and Colonies poſſeſſed themſelves of it, and gave unto it the name of *Armenia Minor*: continuing part of their eſtate till the war of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*; who being diſcomfited by *Lucullus*, fled with two thouſand Horſe to the Court of *Tigranes* the *Armenian*, who had married his daughter. By whom at firſt neglected, and not ſuffered to come into his

his presence; but afterwards on the apprehension of the common danger, more esteemed and set by: insomuch that his royal entertainment there, and the refusal of *Tigranes* to yield him up when required by the *Romans*, occasioned *Lucullus* to bring his forces into these parts, subduing all before him to the banks of *Euphrates*. His Victories being seconded by *Pompey*, and confirmed by *Augustus*, this Country was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire: the greater *Armenia*, lying on the other side of that River, though conquered also in that war, not being taken into the accompt of the *Roman* Provinces, till the time of *Trajan Augustus*, thinking it an high point of wisdom (as no doubt it was) not to extend the Empire beyond those banks. After this it continued *Roman*, till the declining times of the Eastern Empire; when wasted by the *Persians*, and subdued by the *Turks*; by whom called *Genech*, or as some say *Pegia*.

And so much of the Provinces of the *Pontick* Diocese, lying within *Anatolia*, or *Asia Minor*; converted to the *Christian* faith by the two great Apostles of the *Jews* and *Gentiles*, as appeareth by S. *Paul*'s Epistle to the *Galatians*, and St. *Peter*'s to the *Strangers* dispersed in *Pontus*, *Galatia*, *Cappadocia*, *Asia*, and *Bithynia*.

7. *ASIA PROPRIA.*

COme we now to the ASIAN *Diocese*, and first to that part thereof which *Ptolomy* and others (for the reasons spoken of before) call *Asia Propria*. Anciently the most rich and flowrishing part of all this *Peninsula*; and so affirmed to be by *Tully*, who telleth us that the *tributes* which the *Romans* had from other places, hardly sufficed to defray the publick charges for defence thereof, *Asia verò tam opima est & fertilis, ut & ubertate agrorum, & varietate fructuum, & magnitudine pastionis, & multitudine earum rerum quæ exportentur, facilè omnibus terris antecellat.* But as for *Asia* (saith he) it is so fertile and so rich, that for the fruitfulness of the fields, variety of fruits, largeness of pasture-grounds, and quantity of commodities which were brought from thence, it very easily excelled all other Countries. The fortunes of the several Provinces we shall see anon. Brought under the command of the *Persians*, they continued subject to that Crown, for some generations: but at last taken from them by the *Grecians*, under the prosperous ensigns of victorious *Alexander*. After whose decease, the Empire being divided among his Captains, *Asia* fell to the share of *Antigonus*, whose son *Demetrius* seized on the Kingdom of *Macedonia*, and left *Asia* to *Seleucus Nicanor*, King of *Syria* and the East, being also one of *Alexanders* heirs. The sixth from this *Seleucus*, was *Antiochus* called the *Great*, who waging war with young *Ptolomy Philopater*, King of *Egypt*, committed by his father to the protection of the *Romans*, and otherwise practising against their estate, provoked the *Senate* of *Rome* to send *Scipio* (surnamed from his *Asian* victories) *Asiaticus*, against him; who compelled him to forsake *Asia*, which the *Romans* presently took into their possessions. But finding it agreeable to the present estate of their Affairs, (the Kingdom of *Macedonia* standing in their way) to make further use of *Eumenes* King of *Pergamus*, and the people of *Rhodes*, who had been aiding to them in the former war, they gave unto *Eumenes* the Provinces of *Lycaonia*, *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Ionia*, *Lydia*; *Lycia* and *Caria* to the *Rhodians*: knowing full well, that they could easily take them back again, when they saw occasion. More hereof in the story of the Kings of *Pergamus*, on the decease of *Attalus* the last King thereof; these Provinces returning fully to the power of the *Romans*.

It contained only after the accompt of *Cicero*, the Provinces of *Phrygia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Lydia*, as he reckoneth them up in his Oration for *Flaccus*: computing the two *Phrygias* for one Province only, and comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, under that of *Lydia*. But for our more punctual and particular proceeding in it, we will consider it as divided into 1 *Phrygia Minor*. 2 *Phrygia Major*. 3 *Mysia*. 4 *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Asia* more especially so called. 5 *Lydia*, and 6 *Caria*.

8. *PHRYGIA MINOR.*

PHRYGIA MINOR, is bounded on the East, with *Mysia*, interposing betwixt it and the *Greater Phrygia*; on the West, with the *Hellespont*; on the North, with the *Propontis*; on the South, with the *Ægean* Sea. Called *Phrygia* from *Phryx*, a River in the *Greater Phrygia*; or as some say, from *Phryxus*, the son of *Athamas* King of *Thebes*; who flying from the treacherous snares of his Mother-in-law, did here seat himself. *Minor* was added to it to distinguish it from the other *Phrygia*, which being the bigger of the two had the name of *Major*. It was also called *Phrygia Hellespontiaca*, from its situation on that *Streight*: and *Troas*, from *Troas* the chief City of it; by which name it occurreth in the book of the *Acts*. It was called also *Epictetus*, but the reason of the name I find not, except it came from the *Epicteti*, a People dwelling on the East parts of *Bithynia*, and consequently near this place.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *Scamander*, on whose Banks stood the renowned City of *Troy*, honoured by *Hesiod* with the Title of *Divine Scamander*: in which the Virgins of this Country a little before they were to be married, used to bathe themselves, and to say these words, Λάβε τὴν μὴν Σκαμανδρε παρθενίην, that is to say, *Take O Scamander my Virginity*. Which opportunity *Cimon* an *Athenian* taking, clapped a Coronet of Reeds upon his head, like a River-god, and so deflowred *Callirrhoe* a noble Virgin, then betrothed to another; occasioning thereby the leaving off of this foolish custome. It was also called *Xanthus* by the *Poets*, *Xanthumque bibissent*, as in *Virgil*, and watered a little Region called *Lycia*, whence *Ovid* in his first Epistle useth *Lyciam hastam*, (*Sanguine Tlepolemus* Lyciam *tepefecerat hastam*) to signifie a *Trojan* Spear. But of this more anon in the greater *Lycia*. 2 *Æsopus*, parting this little Region from the *Lesser Mysia*, the boundary of it on the North, as the Promontory called *Lectum*, is the furthest point of it towards the South. 3 *Simois*, now called *Simoes*, falling into the *Hellespont*, not far from the Promontory called *Rhæteum* (memorable for the Statue and Sepulchre of *Ajax*;) but rising out of Mount *Ida*, an hill of this Region, on which *Paris* (being by his Father exposed to the fury of wild Beasts) judged the controversie of the golden Ball in favour of *Venus*; respecting neither the great riches of *Juno*, nor the divine wisdom of *Pallas*; but transported with a sensual delight, fatal in the end to the whole Country.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *Dardanum*, or *Dardania*, the Town and Patrimony of *Æneas*, 2 *Assos* mentioned *Acts* 20. 13. by *Pliny* called *Apollonia*; who telleth us that the earth about it is of such a nature, that it will consume a dead body in forty days. 3 *Trajanopolis*, whose name declareth its founder. 4 *Lyrnessus*, on the Sea-side, opposite to the Isle of *Lesbos*, destroyed by *Achilles* and the *Greeks* in the very first beginnings of the *Trojan* war, who brought thence amongst other captives the Lady *Briseis*, reserved by *Achilles* to himself for his part of the booty, and after taken from him by *Agamemnon*, which cauled such a deep displeasure in him, that he would not go into the field, till she were restored.

5 *Sigæum*

5 *Sigæum*, the Port-town to *Troy*, near a noted Promontory of the same name. 6 *Troy*, situate on the River *Scamander*, the beauty and glory of the East, called *Ilium*, and *Pergamus* for the reason to be shewn anon. A famous Town, from the people whereof, all Nations desire to fetch their original. The beauty of it may be (as some write) yet seen in the ruines, which with a kind of Majesty entertain the beholder: the walls of large circuit, consisting of a black hard stone cut four-square; some remnants of the Turrets which stood on the walls, and the fragments of great Marble Tombs and Monuments of curious workmanship. But certainly these are not the ruines of that *Ilium*, which was destroyed by the *Grecians*, but 7 *Troas*, or *New-Troy*, built some four miles from the situation of the old by *Lysimachus*, one of *Alexanders* Captains; who peopled it from the neighbouring Cities, and called it *Alexandria*, or *Troas Alexandri*, in honour of *Alexander* the *Great*, who begun the work, but lived not to bring it to any perfection. In following times called *Troas* only, and by that name mentioned, *Acts* 20. 6. then the *Metropolis* of this Province, now a ruine only; but every day more ruinous than other by the *Turks*, who carry dayly the stones and Pillars of it to *Constantinople*, to adorn the houses of the *Bassas*. 7 *Scamandria*, a strong piece, but of latter foundation, cunningly surprised by *Ottoman* the first King of the *Turks*, in the time of a funeral. Now concerning old *Ilium*, the buildings, glories, and fall of it, take this story with you.

The KINGS of *TROY*.

A. M.

2487 1 *Dardanus*, son to *Corinthus* King of *Corinth*, having killed his brother *Jasius*, fled into this Country, where he built this City, calling it *Dardania*; according to that verse of *Virgil*,

Dardanus Iliacæ *primus pater urbis, & autor.*
Both of *Troy* Town, and *Trojan* race,
Dardanus the first founder was.

2518 2 *Erichthonius*, of whom little memorable. 75.

2593 3 *Tros*, the son of *Erichthonius*, who so much beautified and enlarged the City of *Dardania*, that from thenceforth it was called *Troja*, and the people *Troes*. By supporting the unnatural malice of *Saturn* against his son *Jupiter*, he lost his own son *Ganymedes*: who being taken prisoner by *Jupiter*, who carried the *Eagle* for his Ensign, is by the Poets said to have been snatched up to Heaven by an *Eagle*. 60

2653 4 *Ilus*, the son of *Tros*, who built the Regal Palace called *Ilium*; and did withal so enlarge the City, and added so much Ornament and beauty to it, that it is frequently called *Ilium*, and the People *Iliaci*. The many Towers and Turrets of it, were of his erection, which being by the *Greeks* called Πύργοι, and sometimes Πύργαμα, occasioned the whole City to be called *Pergamus*. 54.

2707 5 *Laomedon*, who new built *Troy*, which afterwards *Hercules* and the *Grecians* (justly conceiving displeasure against the treacherous King) twice took and defaced; *Laomedon* himself being slain the latter time. 36.

2743 6 *Priamus*, who re-edified *Troy*; but giving leave to his son *Paris* to ravish *Helena*, wife to *Menelaus* King of *Sparta*, forced the *Greeks* to renew their ancient quarrel: who, after a ten years siege, forced the Town, having lost of their own men 860000. and killed 666000 of the *Trojans*, and their Associates, *A. M.* 2783. so as that of *Ovid* was most true,

Jam seges est ubi Troja *fuit resecandaque falce*
Luxuriat Phrygio *sanguine pinguis humus.*
Corn fit for sithes now grows where *Troy* once stood,
And the soyl 's fatted with the *Phrygian* blood.

Concerning the taking of this Town, two things are to be considered. First, whether the *Grecians* in these ten years lay continually before it; and it seems they did not: but that rather they did beat up and down, wasting the Country, and robbing the Seas for the first nine years; and in the tenth only laid a formal siege. This is the more probable, because that in the tenth year of the war, *Priam* is recorded by *Homer* in the third of his *Iliads*, to have sat on a high Tower, and to have learned of *Helen* the names and qualities of the *Greek* Commanders: which he could not be thought ignorant of, if they had so long together lain in eye-reach. Secondly, by what means the Town was taken: and here we find a difference. For some Historans tell us, that *Æneas* and *Antenor*, being either weary of the war, or discontented that it was not managed by their sole advice, or otherwise corrupted by the *Grecians*, betrayed it to the Enemy: but this *Virgil* could not brook, as prejudicial to his *Æneas*, whom he intended to make the pattern of a compleat Prince. He therefore telleth of a *Wooden-Horse*, wherein divers of the *Greek Princes* lay hidden, which by *Sinon*, one of the *Grecians*, was brought to *Troy* gates; and that the people desirous of that monument of the Enemies flight, made a breach in their walls, the gate not being high enough to receive it. And that this fiction of *Virgil* might be grounded on History, it is thought by some, that over the *Scæan* Gate where the *Greeks* entred, was the portraicture of a large and stately Horse: and by others, that the walls were battered by a *wooden Engine*, called an *Horse*, as the *Romans* in after ages used a like Engine called a *Ram*. Neither of which is much improbable: but with me perswade not the integrity of *Antenor* or *Æneas*, for whose sakes the fable of the *wooden Horse* was first invented.

The City being thus destroyed, the *Trojans* who remained in the Country, when *Æneas* and *Antenor* had forsaken it, began to think of some other place for their habitation, which having often shifted, they fixed at last by advice of an *Oracle*, some four miles from the former, giving it the name of *Ilium*. A poor and sorry Village when *Alexander* came thither, who in the Temple of *Minerva*, (the only one they had, and a mean one too) offered up his own shield, and took down another, which he used after in his fights against the *Persians*, honouring it with gifts, and promising the people to rebuild and inlarge their City. But what he lived not to make good was performed by *Lysimachus*, who gave it the name of *Alexandria*, next called the *Alexandrian Troas*, at last *Troas* simply. A free City it continued till the war of *Mithridates* against the *Romans*; in the course whereof *Fimbria* a *Roman Quæstor* having seditiously slain the Consul *Valerius Flaccus* in *Bithynia*, and made himself Master of the Army, being refused entrance here as a Thief and a Rebel, besieged the City, and in the space of eleven daies took it. And when he boasted that he had done as much in eleven days as *Agamemnon* and the *Greeks* could do in as many years, one of the *Ilians* tartly answered, *That they wanted an Hector to defend them.* Afterwards *Julius Cæsar*, emulous of *Alexanders* attempts, and descended from *Julius* of *Trojan* race, restored them to their liberty, and inlarged their Territories: a *Colony*, and an *University* of the *Romans* of no mean esteem. But time and war, and the barbarity of the *Turks*, have brought it unto rubbish, as before was said.

In the distributing of the Provinces of the *Roman* Empire,

Empire, this little Region, with that of *Myſia Helleſpontiaca* adjoyning to it, made up the Province called by the name of *Helleſpontus*, ſubject with *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and the *Aſian* Iſles, to the exempt Juriſdiction of the *Proconſul* of *Aſia*. Following the fortunes of *Conſtantinople* till the taking of that City by the *Latines*, it became then ſubject to the *Greek* Emperours reſiding at *Nice*; conquered not long after by the *Turks* of the *Selzucian* family. In the diviſion of whoſe Empire on the death of the ſecond *Aladine*, the whole Province of *Helleſpont*, with part of the greater *Myſia* and *Æolis*, adjoyning to them, and ſome part of *Lydea*, were ſeized upon by *Caraſus*, a man of great power amongſt the *Turks*, who here erected a ſmall Kingdom, called from him *Caraſia*, or *Caraſi-illi*; long ſince ſwallowed up by the *Ottoman* Race, in the time of *Orchanes*, ſon of *Ottaman*, and the ſecond King of that houſe.

8. *PHRYGIA MAJOR.*

PHRYGIA MAJOR is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Galatia*; on the Weſt, with *Myſia*, interpoſed betwixt it and the *Leſſer Phrygia*; on the North, with *Metapontus*, or *Pontus* ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with *Lydia*. Called *Phrygia* for the reaſons before laid down; the word *Major* being added for diſtinctions ſake, becauſe the *greater* of the two.

The People of this Country were anciently more *ſuperſtitious* than the other *Aſians*, as appeareth by the rites uſed in the Sacrifices of *Cybele*, and ſome other Goddeſſes: ſaid to be alſo the Inventors of *Augury*, and other kinds of *Divination*. And yet for the moſt part men of after-wits, and all for *had I wiſt*; whence the Proverb, *Serò ſapiunt Phryges*, applied to thoſe who wanted forcaſt, and knew better to lament misfortunes than to keep them off; and uſed not to bethink themſelves of what would follow, till it was too late. A people noted for effeminacy and lightneſs of converſation; and for fear they ſhould not of themſelves be wanton enough, their very *Muſick* was ſo fitted as to diſpoſe them to *laſciviouſneſs*. Where by the way, I find three ſorts of *Muſick* ſpoken of amongſt the Ancients: the firſt, that which *Ariſtotle* calleth ἠθικὴ, becauſe it ſettled and compoſed the affections; and *Boetius*, the *Lydian Muſick*, becauſe much uſed by that people, before corrupted by long eaſe and ill example. It conſiſted principally of long notes or *Spondees*, ſuch as is that ſuppoſed to be which *Eliſha* called for, 1 *Kings* 3.15. to invite the ſpirit of propheſie to him; and was played by *David* before *Saul*; to drive a way the ill ſpirit from him. And of this ſort was the *Church-Muſick* of the *Primitive* times, fitted to calm mens paſſions, and raiſe their devotions, *Ut per oblectamenta aurium* (as St. *Auguſtine* hath it) *aſſurgat animus ad pietatis affectum*, that by the pleaſure of the ears the paſſions might be calmed, and the ſoul inflamed with pious and devout affections. The ſecond ſort is that which *Ariſtotle* calleth πρακτὴ, or *Active*, (as the other ἠθικὴ or *moral*) commending it before the other in the education of youth, becauſe more ſtirring them to action; conſiſting of *Dactyles*, or one long note, and two ſhort ones, by him and *Boetius* both called *Dorian*, as moſt peculiar to that people. The third and laſt by the Philoſopher called ἐνθουσιαστὴν, or raviſhing, becauſe it unhingeth the affections, and ſtirreth men to laſcivious geſtures, and wanton thoughts; conſiſting of ſhort notes or *Tribrachies*. *Boetius* terms it *Phrygian*, as moſt in uſe amongſt this looſe and ungoverned Nation; ſuch as the *French Muſick* in our age. A ſort of Muſick forbidden to be uſed by *Ariſtotle*, but upon the *Theatre*, for contentation of the rude and unpoliſhed people, by reaſon of that influence which it had upon mens behaviours. *Mutatâ Muſicâ* (ſaith the *Orator*) *mutantur & mores*; *Curandum itaque ut* Muſica *quàm graviſſima & ſedatiſſima retineatur*, that is to ſay, the change of *Muſick* maketh an alteration of manners; care therefore is to be taken in the Common-wealth, that the Muſick be compoſed and grave, and ſuch only uſed. But ſee how this fidling humour hath led me out of the way; I return again.

The Country very rich and pleaſant, well watered with the Rivers *Sangarius* and *Marſyas*. Of which the former hath its Spring or Fountain in this Country, but his fall in the *Euxine*; on the banks whereof ſtandeth the City *Gordium*, and many others of good note. The latter was ſo called from one *Marſyas*, who ſtriving with *Apollo* for preheminence in *Muſick*, was by him flead; which fact (ſay the Poets) was ſo lamented, that from the tears of the mourners grew this River. The chief Towns 1 *Gordion*, the ſeat of *Gordius*, who from a Plowman being raiſed and choſen King of this Kingdom, placed the furniture of his Wain and Oxen in the Temple of *Apollo*, tyed in ſuch a knot, that the Monarchy of the world was promiſed to him that could untie it; which when *Alexander* had tried and could not undo it, he cut it with his Sword. 2 *Midæum*, the ſeat of *Midas*, ſon to this *Gordius*, who being not a little covetous, intreated of *Bacchus*, that what ever he touched ſhould be turned into gold; which Petition granted, he was almoſt ſtarved, his very victuals turned into Gold, till he had repealed his wiſh; and afterward for preferring *Pan*'s Pipe before *Apollo*'s Harp, his head was adorned with a comely pair of Aſſes ears. 3 *Coloſſe*, where dwelt the *Coloſſians*, to whom St. *Paul* writ one of his Epiſtles. 4 *Peſinus*, where the Goddeſs *Cybele* being worſhipped, was called *Dea Peſinuncia*. The *Romans* were once told by an Oracle, that they ſhould be Lords of the world, if they could get this Goddeſs into their poſſeſſion. Hereupon they ſend to the *Phrygians* to demand it. The *Phrygians* willing to pleaſe a potent neighbour, eſpecially the *Romans*, being their Country-men, as deſcended from *Æneas* and his *Trojans*, granted their requeſts, and the Goddeſs is ſhipp'd away for *Rome*. But behold the unluckineſs of fortune: The Ship, Goddeſs and all made a ſtand in *Tiber*; neither could it be advanced forward by force or Art. It hapned that one of the Veſtal Virgins, named *Claudia*, being ſuſpected of unchaſtity, reſolved to put her ſelf upon this experiment: and faſtning her girdle to the Ship, prayed to the Goddeſs, that if ſhe were cauſeleſly ſuſpected, the ſhip might be ſuffered to go forward, which was no ſooner heard than granted, *Claudia* drawing the ſhip up the water to *Rome*; where I leave the people wondering at the miracle, as well they might. But to return unto the City, it ſtands in the borders of *Galatia*, and is by ſome made to be the City of *Gordius*, and the *Gordian* knot placed in it alſo; but neither rightly. Not far off ſtood the Mountain *Dindyme*, overlooking the City, in which the Prieſts of *Cybele* had their uſual reſidence, thence called *Dindymene*. 5 *Apamea*, ſituate not far from the banks of *Mæander*, anciently a moſt flouriſhing Emporie, and the *Metropolis* of the whole Countty, till *Conſtantine* divided it into the two Provinces of *Salutaris*, and *Pacatiana*: making 6 *Symada* the *Metropolis* of the firſt. 7 *Hierapolis*, and 8 *Laodicea*, two noted Cities in thoſe times, the principal of the other Province. 9 *Juliopolis*, and 10 *Tiberiopolis*, ſo called from the Emperour to whoſe honour dedicated. 11 *Dorylæum*, &c. Not known unto the ancient Writers, but of more note in modern ſtories, are 1 *Sagua*, the habitation of *Etrogul*, Father of *Ottoman* the firſt King of the *Turks*. 2 *Charà-chiſar*; by the *Grecians* called *Melampyrgus*; or the *Black Tower*; 3 *Bilexuga*, 4 *Einegiol*;

places

places of consequence and importance, taken by the said *Ottoman* from the Christians, in the first rise of his fortunes.

As for the *Phrygians*, they descended (as was shewn before) from *Gomer* the eldest son of *Japhet*, and *Askenaz*, the eldest son of *Gomer*: of which, *Gomer* first placed himself in the mountainous Countries of *Albania*, and afterwards in the more pleasant Plains of the *Greater Phrygia*, where the City of *Cimmeris* (the posterity of *Gomer* being generally called *Cimmerians*) did preserve his memory. And as for *Askenaz*, he first took up his dwelling in the *Lesser Phryga*, and the banks of the *Hellespont*; where was anciently a City and Territory called *Ascania*, some Isles adjoyning called *Insulæ Ascaniæ*, the name of *Ascanius* also very frequent in *Troy* it self. An ancient people they were doubtless, esteemed the ancientest of the world by *Psamniticus* King of *Egypt*, upon this experiment. Desirous to inform himself to what Nation the priviledge of greatest Antiquity did of right belong, he caused two children to be kept in a fold, where they were suckled by Goats; all mankind being prohibited upon very great penalties to have recourse to them. All the language which the children learned from their speechless nurses, was no more than *Bec*, which in the *Phrygian* language signifieth bread; and being of no signification at all in any other which was then known to the *Egyptians*, gave up the *Verdict* on their side: But other Nations of the world not yielding to this sentence, by a *Writ of Errour*, or an *Ad melius inquirendum*, impannell'd a new *Jurie*; wherein it was pronounced on the *Scythians* side *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*. Where by the way, *Goropius Becanus* makes the like use of this experiment, to prove the *High Dutch* to be the Original or Mother-tongue of the world; because *Becker* in that language signifieth, as with us, a *Baker*, or a maker of *Bread*. In this Country reigned *Niobe*, who preferring her self before *Latina*, the mother of *Phœbus* and *Diana*, had her children slain before her face by an unseen means, and was her self turned into a stone, as the Poets fable. Here also reigned *Tantalus*, who being rich, and wanting wisdom to make use of it, is feigned to stand in Hell up to the chin in water; and that too under a tree whose fruit toucheth his lips: yet both the one and the other flie from him, when he offereth at them. Of which thus *Ovid*,

——— *Tibi* Tantale *nullæ*
Deprenduntur aquæ; quæque imminet, effugit arbor.

In *English* thus,

Thou canst not, *Tantalus*, those waters taste;
The tree just at thy lips, flies off as fast.

But this race of Kings being worn out by the tyranny of time or war, the *Phrygians* were made subject to the Kings of *Lydia*; continuing under their command till the conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*, with which they fell together to the Crown thereof, not made the stronger by the accession of effeminate Subjects. Gained from them by the Sword of *Alexander*, they fell unto *Antigonus* one of his great Captains, and on his overthrow at the battel of *Ipsus*, to *Seleucus* the Conquerour, the first King of that race: following the same fortune after that with the rest of *Asia*, till they came to be possessed by the *Romans*, and made a Province of that Empire. But *Constantine* laying to it the *Greater Mysia*, made two Provinces of it; the one called *Salutaris*, from some miraculous cures there wrought by the *Arch-Angel Michael*, as was then generally believed; the other called *Pacatiana*, from *Pacatianus*, who in the time of the said *Constantine* was *Præfect* for the *Prætorium* of the East, and divers years before had begun his honours with the *Lieutenantship* of *Britain*. In the declining of the *Constantinopolitans*, it became a prey unto the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; possessed by them till the death of *Aladine*, the last King of that race: when seized upon, together with the *Greater Mysia*, and those parts of *Lydia* which lay next unto it, by *Aidin*, a great *Turkish* Prince, and made a peculiar Kingdom, called by his name *Aidinia*, or *Aidinilli*; extorted shortly from his heirs by the house of *Ottoman*.

9. *Mysia*.

INterposed betwixt the two *Phrygias* lyeth the Country of MYSIA, bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*; on the West, with *Phrygia Minor*, and the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with parts of *Bithynia*, *Propontis*, and the *Hellespont*; and on the South, with part of *Lydia*, *Æolis*, and the *Ægean*. So called from the *Mysians*, the Inhabitants of it.

Whether these *Mysians* were originally a *Phrygian* Nation, or some interlopers which thrust in afterwards amongst them, I find not determined. Most probable it is, they were natural *Phrygians*, being as superstitious in the worship of their several *Deities*, as any *Phrygian of them all*; and that they had this name given them by the *Lydians*, from the abundance of *Beech-trees* which grow amongst them, by them called *Mysæ*. A people of so base and contemptible quality, that it grew into a common Proverb to call a fellow of no worth, *Mysiorum postremus*.

The principal Mountain of this Country is that called *Olympus*, situate in the North-parts hereof bordering towards *Bithynia*: which as it is called *Olympus Mysius*, to difference it from *Olympus* in *Greece*; so the people of the *Greater Mysia*, where this Mountain is, are called *Olympeni*, to difference them from the *Mysii* or *Mæsi* of *Europe*. And as for Rivers, those of most note besides *Æsopus*, parting it from *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, are, 1 *Caicus*, on whose banks stands the City of *Pergamus*, and from thence passeth into the *Ægean* Sea, at the Bay of *Elæa*; and 2 the famous River of *Granicus*, which hath his fountain in *Mysia Major*, and passing through *Mysia Minor*, falleth into the *Propontis*. A River memorable for the Victory which *Alexander* obtained on the banks hereof, in his first essay against the *Persians*: by whom upon the first noise of his preparations he was so slighted, that *Darius* King of *Persia*, gave command to his Lieutenants residing in *Asia Minor*, that they should take him alive, whip him with rods, and so convey him to his presence. A notable example of the pride and folly of the *Persians*. But *Alexander* soon taught them another lesson. For though the *Persians* were possessed of the higher banks of the River, with an intent to stop his passage; yet he resolved to charge them in the face of their strength: knowing full well, that if he could beat them on a place of so great advantage, he should not only lessen them in ponit of reputation, but beget an opinion of himself that he was invincible. And so accordingly it proved, the *Persians* being vanquished by him, and all the Kingdoms and Provinces of this *Asia* submitting to him on the noise of the Victory (as an enemy not to be resisted upon equal terms) some few Towns excepted. And therefore it was wisely advised by *Machiavel*, that he who takes upon him to defend a passage, should with his ablest forces oppose the *Assailant*; because in all Invasions where the Nations invaded have been beaten upon a great advantage of place, as defence of Rivers, Streights, and Mountains, they do not only dishearten their Souldiers from dealing afterwards on even ground with that Enemy, but leave no hope unto their fellows and partakers, of being succoured and defended by such weak Protectors. Which caution if the *Persian* Commanders had observed either here, or at *Pylæ Ciliciæ*,

Cilicia, ſpoken of hereafter, *Alexander* had not ſo eaſily ſubverted the *Perſian* Monarchy. But the fatal period of it was now drawing on, and the men either naturally Cowards, or elſe prodigiouſly beſotted.

It is divided commonly into *Myſia Minor*, or the *Leſſer Myſia*, which lying on the Weſt towards *Troas* and the *Helleſpont*, is called ſometimes *Myſia Helleſpontiaca*; and joyned unto *Troas* by the Emperour *Conſtantine*, made up that Province which he called the *Conſular Helleſpont*: and *Myſia Major*, called from *Olympus* which was in it, *Myſia Olympena*, and the Inhabitants *Olympeni*; which joyned by that Emperour to the Weſtern parts of *Phrygia Major*, made up that Province which he cauſed to be called *Phrygia Salutaris*, for the reaſon formerly delivered.

Places of moſt obſervation in the *leſſer Myſia*, were 1 *Abydus*, ſtanding on the narroweſt of the *Helleſpont*, oppoſite unto *Seſtos* in *Thrace*; firſt built by the *Mileſians* with the conſent of *Gyges* King of *Lydia*, to whom the Country then belonged; Memorable both in the ancient and modern ſtories. In ancient ſtory for the famous reſolution of the Inhabitants, when beſieged by *Philip* the father of *Perſeus* King of *Macedon*. For being brought by him into ſome diſtreſs, and hopeleſs of good conditions from him, the young men of the Town who had bound themſelves by oath to die rather than fall into his hands, ſet fire thereof, and barbarouſly ſlew themſelves, with as many of the women and children as could be met with. Which news being brought to *Philip*, moved ſo little compaſſion, that he ſaid he would give the *Abydeni* three daies leiſure to die; and therefore would not ſuffer any of his ſouldiers to enter the Town, then ſet open to him, either to take the ſpoil thereof, or hinder this bloudy execution, till the three daies end. In Modern ſtory no leſs memorable for the taking of it by the *Turks*, in the reign of *Orchanes* the ſon of *Ottoman*, through the treaſon of the Governours Daughter: who bewitched with the perſon and valour of *Abderach-men*, a young *Turkiſh* Gallant, whom ſhe had beheld from the Towers of the Caſtle, threw a Letter to him as he drew near the wall; wherein ſhe manifeſted her affection, and promiſed to make him Maſter of that Fortreſs, if he would perſwade his General to raiſe the ſiege, and come with a ſtrong Party in the dead time of the night to receive it from her, which was done accordingly. The Town continuing ever ſince in the power of the *Turks*, well fortified, and one of the two Caſtles ſpoken of before, which defend *Conſtantinople* on that ſide from all force by Sea. 2 *Cyzicus*, ſeated in the *Propontis*, in an Iſland of the ſame name alſo, but ſo near the Continent, that it joyned to it by two bridges. The *Metropolis* of the *Conſular Helleſpont*, by conſequence an Archbiſhops See in the proſperous times of Chriſtianity; as were all other Cities in the *Roman* Empire, which were the Mother-Cities or *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Province. A Town of wonderful ſtrength and beauty, when firſt known to the *Romans*, called therefore by *L. Florus*, the *Rome* of *Aſia*, who gives this Character alſo of it, *Cyzicum nobilis civitas, arce, mœnibus, portu, turribuſque marmoreis Aſiaticæ plagæ litora illuſtrat*, that is to ſay, that the noble City of *Cyzicum* by the excellency of the Walls, Bulwarks, Haven, and Towers of Marble, doth beautifie and illuſtrate the ſhores of *Aſia*. Honoured amongſt many other goodly and magnificent buildings, with a glorious Temple, the Pillars whereof being 4 Cubits thick, and 50 Cubits high, were each of one intire ſtone only; the whole Fabrick all of poliſhed Marble, every ſtone joyned unto the other with a line of *Gold*. In vain beſieged by *Mithridates* in the time of his war, who loſt before it by the Sword, Peſtilence, and Famine, no fewer than 300000 men, and yet could not force it. Afterwards ruined by an *Earthquake*, the *Falling-Sickneſs* of the Eaſt, as before is ſaid, it could never be reſtored to its former luſtre: the very ruins of it daily made more ruinous, by tranſporting the Stones and Marbles to *Conſtantinople*, for the Embelliſhing of that City. 3 *Lampſacus* on the ſame *Propontis*, in which the beaſtly god *Priapus* was worſhipped in as beaſtly a figure: *Quem non denudo* (as wittily *Lactantius* ſcoffeth it) *ne quid appareat riſu dignum*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame with the *Syrian* or *Phœnician Baal*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures. For this and on ſome other reaſons, *Alexander* had conceived againſt it ſuch an high diſpleaſure when he was in *Aſia*, that he reſolved to raze it to the very ground. And ſeeing *Anaximenes* coming to him as an Embaſſadour from the Town to obtain his favour, commanded him to hold his peace; and ſware as by way of prevention, that he would deny whatſoever he requeſted of him: whereupon *Anaximenes* intreated him to deſtroy the City, which now for his Oaths ſake he could not do; and ſo this wicked City at that time eſcaped. 4 *Parium*, ſo called, as ſome ſay, from *Parius* the ſon of *Jaſon*, a Colony at firſt of the *Myleſians*, of the *Romans* afterwards: *Troas* and this, the only two *Roman* Colonies in all the Province. By *Homer* called *Adraſtia*; as *Lampſacus* in the ſame Author, is called *Pityuſa*. More in the land, are 5 *Scepſis*. 6 *Hiragerme*, both mentioned by *Ptolomy*, but of more antiquity than fame.

Chief Cities in MYSIA MAJOR or OLYMPENA; are 1 *Dainta*, in the North-parts, not far from *Olympus*. 2 *Apollonia*, near a larg Lake ſacred to *Apollo*, in the ſame parts alſo. 3 *Palæ Scepſis*, or *Scepſis Vetus*, on a Bay of the *Ægean* Sea, joyning upon *Troas*, or the *Leſſer Phrygia*. 4 *Adramyttium*, mentioned *Acts* 27. where St. *Paul* took ſhip to go to *Rome*. 5 *Antandrus*, on the ſame Sea alſo, now called St. *Dimitri*; named at firſt *Cimmeris* from the *Gomerites* or *Cimmerians* here inhabiting (which ſheweth that *Myſia* anciently was a part of *Phrygia*) afterward *Edonis*, and at laſt *Antandrus*, and that either becauſe built or repaired rather by the men of *Andros*, an Iſland of the *Ægean*, ſpoken of before, amongſt the *Cyclades*; or becauſe the *Grecians* having taken *Polydorus* the ſon of *Priam*, from the King of *Thrace*, received this City for his ranſom or rather in exchange for him as the word doth intimate. 6 *Protoſelene*, on the ſame coaſt alſo. More in the Land, 7 *Præpemiſſus*, 8 *Trajanopolis*, 9 *Alydda*, of which little memorable. 10 *Pergamus*, the Regal City of this tract, ſituate in a goodly Plain on the banks of the River *Caycus*; of a ſmall Town or Fortreſs made a ſtately City by the Kings hereof, and beautified with an excellent *Library* containing 200000 Volumes; for the writing or tranſcribing whereof, *Parchment* was here firſt invented, which from hence to this day is called *Pergamenum*. Here alſo were thoſe coſtly hangings firſt invented, which we now call *Tapeſtry*; by the *Romans* called firſt *Aulæa*, from *Aula*, ſignifying a Hall; the Hall of *Attalus* King hereof (by whom invented) being the firſt room furniſhed and adorned herewith. Here was born *Galen* the famous *Phyſitian*, living very healthfully to the age of 140 years: his health preſerved to ſo great age, by theſe means eſpecially. 1. Never eating or drinking his fill. 2ly. Never eating any thing that was raw. 3ly. Alwaies carrying about him ſome ſweet Perfumes. Finally, this was one of the *ſeven Churches* to which St. *John* writ his *Revelation*. For though it were originally a City of *Myſia*, yet being near unto the borders of *Lydia*, it was reckoned as a City of *Lydian Aſia*, within the limits whereof thoſe *ſeven Churches* were all comprehended.

As for the Kings hereof which flouriſhed here for

some ages in such wealth and splendor, they came but from a poor and obscure original. The first of them one *Philetærus*, an *Eunuch*, belonging to *Antigonus*, one of the Great *Alexanders* greatest Captains; and after his death to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*, by whom trusted with his money and accompts. Fearing the fury of his Master then grown old and tyrannous, he seized on the Castle of *Pergamus*, and therein on 90000 Talents, which he offered with his service unto *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria*. But both *Lysimachus* and *Seleucus* dying shortly after, he kept the money to himself, and reigned in this City as an absolute King; leaving the Kingdom at his death to his brother *Eumenes*, no better man than a poor Carter, till raised by the fortunes of this *Eunuch*. *Eumenes* furnished with money, though of no great territory, was able by the *Galls* and other Mercenaries, not only to preserve himself against the *Syrian* Kings, who laid claim to his City, but also to enlarge his bounds as he saw occasion. But the main improvement of this Kingdom hapned in the daies of *Eumenes* the second, the son of *Attalus*, the brother and Successor of this *Eumenes*: who being useful to the *Romans* in their wars against *Philip* of *Macedon*, and *Antiochus* the Great, King of *Syria*, was liberally rewarded by them with the Provinces of *Lydia*, *Phrygia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Troas*, and both the *Mysias*; which they had taken from *Antiochus* in the end of that war. The rest of the affairs hereof, till it fell in fine unto the *Romans*, take here in this short Catalogue of

The KINGS of *PERGAMUS*.

A. M.		
3668	1	*Philetærus*, the first King of *Pergamus*, of whom before 20.
3688	2	*Eumenes*, brother, or as some say, the brothers son of *Philetærus*, vanquished *Antiochus*, sirnamed *Hierax*, in a fight near *Sardis*, and awed *Seleucus Callinicus*, both Kings of *Syria*. 22.
3710	3	*Attalus*, brother of *Eumenes*; restored *Ariathes* the *Cappadocian* to his Kingdom, and discomfited the *Galls*, compelling them to keep themselves within the Country since named *Galatia*. A Confederate of the *Romans*, and by them much courted.
3754	4	*Eumenes* II. son of *Attalus*, gratified by the *Romans* with the spoils of *Antiochus*. He was an hereditary Enemy to the Kingdom of *Macedon*, which he laboured the *Romans* to destroy, as in fine they did; and thereby finding no more use of these *Pergamon* Kings, began to grow to less liking with them.
3782	5	*Attalus* II. Brother of *Eumenes*, to whom the Kingdom was offered by the *Romans* in the life of his Brother, then less gratious with them; but he most gallantly refused it, to the great indignation of the *Roman* Senate.
3792	6	*Eumenes* III. Brother of *Attalus* the second, and Tutor or Protector to his Nephew *Attalus*, in whose minority he governed the Estate, as King.
3813	7	*Attalus* III. son of *Attalus* the second, succeeded on the death of his Uncle *Eumenes*, and having held the Kingdom but five years only, deceased without issue, and bequeathed it by his last Will unto the *Romans*. But before the *Romans* had possession of so great a Legacy, *Aristonicus* the base son of *Eumenes*, made himself Master of *Mindus*, *Colophon*, *Samos*, and many other Towns and Estates hereof. Against whom the *Romans* making war were aided by the greatest part of the *Asian* Kings; not seeing their own danger and destruction to draw near unto them, by letting such a potent neighbour come amongst them, to undo them all. But the *Romans* got little by this war, though they had the better of it. For being now made Masters of the Riches and Sweets of *Asia*, they took with them their Vices also: growing thereby to great riot, and unparalleld luxury; which overcame the rigour and severity of their former discipline, and made them apt for Faction, and those bloudy quarrels, which proved the ruine of their State. So truly was it said by *Justine*, *Sic* Asia *facta* Romanorum, *cum opibus suis vitia quoque sua* Romam *transmisit*. This Kingdom, taking it in the largest extent thereof, being thus subdued and settled as a *Roman* Province, had the name of *Asia*, according to the name of the Greater *Continent*; by *Ptolomy*, and others, called *Asia Propria*: continuing under the subjection of the *Roman* Emperours, till the translating of the Imperial seat unto *Constantinople*; as after that unto the Emperours of the East, till conquered piece-meal by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* family. Which being ended in the person of *Aladine* the second, those parts hereof which lay next *Troas*, made up the Kingdom of *Carasan*, or *Carasa-Illi*; as those which had been laid to the Greater *Phrygia*, made up the *Aidinian*: both of them swallowed up long since by the *Ottoman* Kings, the *Accessories* running the same fortune as the *Principals* did.

10. *ASIA SPECIALIUS DICTA.*

BEsides the *Propria Asia* spoken of before, containing all the Provinces of the *Pergamon* Kingdom, there was one part hereof which anciently had the name of *Asia*, before it was communicated to the greater *Continent*, or this whole *Peninsula*. This for distinctions sake the *Romans* called the PROCONSULAR ASIA; because committed to the government of one of their *Pro-consuls* (who had his residence in *Ephesus*, the principal City of this Province) together with the *Consular Hellespont*, and the Province of the *Isles of Asia*. This we have spoken of before, as also how the Country lying about *Ephesus*, had more especially the name of *Asia*, than any other: so specially, that *Erasmus* thereupon inferreth, that by *Asia* in the *New Testament*, (but more particularly in the *Acts*) is meant that part of *Asia* only in which *Ephesus* standeth.

This beeing agreed on for the name, we shall bound it on the East with *Lydia*, whereof it was anciently a part; on the West, with the *Ægean* Sea; on the North, with *Mysia*; and on the South, with *Caria*. And having so bounded it, we shall divide it into the two Regions of ÆOLIS, and IONIA: that of *Æolis* lying on the North, towards *Mysia*; as *Ionia* doth upon the South, towards *Caria*: possessed both of them by *Greek* Nations, and of them so named.

Principal Towns in ÆOLIS, are 1 *Acarnea*, over against the Isle of *Lesbos*, the Royal seat sometimes of the Tyrant *Hermias*; who being once a Scholar of *Aristotles*, but unworthy of so good a Master, seized on this City, and here committed so great cruelties, that at last he was taken by the people, sewed in an Oxes hide, and so baited to death. 2 *Pitane*, on a little River so named, falling into *Caicus*, not far from the influx or fall thereof into the *Ægean*; in which Town they had an Art of making Bricks which would swim on the water. 3 *Elæa*, on the mouth of *Caicus*, the Port-Town to *Pergamus*. 4 *Myrina*, afterwards in honour of *Augustus*, called *Sebastopolis*. 5 *Cene*, by *Strabo* called *Cane*, by *Mela*, *Cannæ*, not far from a *Promontory* of the same name. 6 *Cuma*, the principal and

and greateſt of all *Æolis*, the birth-place of *Ephorus* a learned man of elder times; and the habitation of *Sibylla*, ſirnamed *Cumana*, to difference her from *Sibylla Cumæa*, ſo named from *Cumæ*, a City of the Realm of *Naples*. 7 *Phocæa*, a Colony of the *Athenians*, ſo named from the multitudes of Sea-Calves (the *Greeks* call them *Phocæ*) which thruſt themſelves a ſhore at the building of it. The people hereof over-burdened by the *Perſians*, and impatient of ſo great ſervitude as was laid upon them, forſook their Country, binding themſelves by a fearful Oath, never more to return unto it: and after many and long wanderings came at laſt into *Gaul*, where they founded the famous City of *Marſeilles*.

The Inhabitants of this little Region are by *Joſephus* ſaid to be deſcended of *Eliſha* the ſon of *Javan*, who therefore calleth them by the name of *Eliſæi*. And it is poſſible enough that ſo it was, *Eliſha* being planted in *Greece*, where he gave name to *Elis*, one of the Provinces of *Peloponneſus*; from whence ſome of his race in ſucceeding times might paſs over into *Aſia*, and poſſeſs thoſe coaſts. For that they were a *Greek* people, is confeſſed by all; the *Æolick Dialect* or phraſe of ſpeech, taking name from hence. Not otherwiſe much mentioned in the courſe of ſtory, than as partakers of the ſame fortunes with the reſt of their *Aſian* neighbours before related, and ſo not neceſſary to be now repeated.

IONIA, as a larger tract, requires a more particular and punctual deſcription. For here the River *Lycus* falleth into the *Mæander*, and here *Mæander* and *Cayſtrus*, two of the moſt famous Rivers of *Aſia Minor*, (of which more hereafter) fall into the *Ægean*. Here is the renowned City of *Epheſus*, honoured with one of the worlds *ſeven wonders*, the long abode of St. *Paul*, and the death and ſepulture of St. *John*; the Promontory *Trogyllum*, with a little Iſle adjoyning of the ſame name, mentioned *Acts* 20. 15.

Principal Cities of this tract, are 1 *Myus*, on an arm of the Sea, aſſigned by *Artaxerxes*, together with *Lampſacus*, and *Magneſia*, to *Themiſtocles*; when being baniſhed his own Country, he fled to his greateſt Enemy for entertainment; and there met with more ſafety than *Athens* would, and more honour than it could afford him; So that he well might ſay (as he often did) *Periiſſem niſi periiſſem*. And on the other ſide, the King was ſo overjoyed at his coming to him, (as having now upon his ſide the man who had moſt hindered him in the Conqueſt of *Greece*) that many times in his ſleep he was heard to clap his hands, and ſay, *Habeo Themiſtoclem Athenienſem*. In after-times, the water drawing further off, the ſoyl brought forth ſuch an innumerable multitude of Fleas, that the Inhabitants were fain to forſake the City, and with their bag and baggage to retire to *Miletus*: nothing hereof being left but the name and memory in the time of *Pauſanias*. 2 *Erythra*, memorable for the habitation of one of the *Sibyls* from hence called *Sibylla Erythræa*; of which Propheteſſes we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Africk*. 3 *Lebedus*, of moſt note in the elder times, for thoſe publick Playes which were here annually held in the honour of *Bacchus*. 4 *Clazomene*, ſituate on a ſmall Ilet, near unto the ſhore, of much eſteem amongſt the *Romans* for the wines there growing; and no leſs honoured by the *Aſians* for a beautiful Temple of *Apollo* ſeated near unto it. 5 *Priene*, the birth-place of *Bias*, one of the ſeven *Wiſe-men* of *Greece*. 6 *Ipſus*, renowned for the great battel betwixt *Antigonus* and *Seleucus*, two of *Alexanders* chief Commanders; the Victory wherein falling to *Seleucus*, with the death of his Adverſary, eſtated him in all the Conqueſts of his Maſter, except *Ægypt* only. 7 *Teos*, the birth-place of *Anacreon*, that laſcivious and drunken Poet, hence ſirnamed *Teius*; the *Ovid* of the *Grecians* both for wit and wantonneſs: of both which it may well be doubted, whether the ſmoothneſs of the verſe, or the wantonneſs of their expreſſions, be the more predominant. 8 *Smyrna*, a fair and ancient City, on a Bay thence named the Bay of *Smyrna*: the greateſt part whereof lay towards the Sea, but the faireſt on the ſide of an hill overlooking the waters. Deſtroyed by the *Lydians*, it was re-edified by *Antigonus* and *Lyſimachus*, two of *Alexanders* great Commanders; of good accompt in the time of the *Romans*, and one of the *ſeven* Aſian *Churches*, to which St. *John* inſcribed his *Revelation*. Much traded and frequented to this very day, eſpecially for Chamlets, Grograins, and ſuch Stuffs; made for the moſt part at *Ancyra*, the chief Town of *Galatia*, and here vended to the forein Merchant. For government of the trade whereof, and of other commodities of theſe parts, the *Engliſh* Merchants have an Officer called the *Conſul* of *Smyrna*. In old time there was in it, amongſt others, a goodly Temple dedicated unto *Homer*, ſaid to be born in this City, and to have writ his Poems in a Cave hard by. 9 *Colophon*, moſt memorable for the Inhabitants of it, ſo skilled in Horſe-man-ſhip, that the ſide on which they ſerved in war was ſure of Victory; whereupon *Colophonem addere*, to put a good end to any buſineſs, grew into a Proverb. It was alſo another of thoſe Cities, which ſo ambitiouſly contended for the birth of *Homer*; of which there were ſeven in all, as the old verſes tell us ſaying,

Septem urbes certant de ſtirpe inſignis Homeri,
Smyrna, Rhodus, Colophon, Salamis, Chios, Argos, Athenæ.

Whether *Homer* purpoſely concealed his Country, that all places might challenge him for theirs, I am not able to ſay: but ſure I am, that *Paterculus* ſpeaketh it in the commendation of *Heſiodus* (the next *Greek* Poet after him in courſe of time) that he had ſpecified his birth-place: *Qui ut id vitaret in quod* Homerus *inciderit, patriam & parentes teſtatus eſt.* 10 *Epheſus*, the *Metropolis* of the *Roman Aſia*, and the ſeat of the Primate of the *Aſian* Dioceſe: memorable in the pureſt times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the Epiſcopal See of *Timothy* the Evangeliſt, the firſt Biſhop hereof; 2ly. In that St. *Paul* directed to the people of it one of his Epiſtles; and 3ly. for the burial of St. *John* the Apoſtle, who by ſome learned men of the elder times, is ſaid to have gone alive into his Grave, and that he is not dead, but ſleeping; building that thought upon that ſaying which went abroad among the Brethren, *that that diſciple ſhould not die*, *Joh.* 21. 23. And no leſs memorable amongſt the Gentiles for that ſumptuous and magnificent Temple here conſecrated to *Diana*; which for the largeneſs, furniture, and workmanſhip of it, was accompted one of the wonders of the World. The length thereof ſaid to be 425 foot, 220 foot in breadth; ſupported with 127 Pillars of Marble ſeventy foot in height; of which twenty ſeven were moſt curiouſly engraven, and all the reſt of Marble poliſhed. The model of it contrived by one *Cteſiphon*, and that with ſo much Art and curioſity of Architecture, that it took up two hundred years before it was finiſhed. When finiſhed, it was fired ſeven times, the laſt time by *Eroſtratus*, only to get himſelf a name: which hapning on the ſame night in which *Alexander* the *Great* was born, gave occaſion to that weighty but witty ſcoff, that *Diana* (ſhe was counted one of the Goddeſſes of *Midwifery*) could not attend the preſervation of her Temple, being then buſied at the birth of ſo great a Prince.

As for thoſe *Iones*, or *Ionians*, they were no doubt the deſcendents of *Javan*, the fourth ſon of *Japhet*, as hath been ſhewn before in our *general Preface*: but whether they came hither out of *Græcia*, or paſſed from hence into that Country, hath been made a queſtion. The *Athenians*

boasting of themselves to be *Aborigenes*, men growing as it were out of the Soil it self, without any *Ancestors*, report that those *Ionians* were a Colony of their Plantation. But *Hecataeus* in *Strabo* doth affirm the contrary, Saying, that the *Athenians* or *Iones* of *Greece*, came from those of *Asia*; for that *Attica* was anciently called *Ionia*, *Plutarch* in the life of *Theseus* doth declare expresly. Most probable it is, that *Hecataeus* was in the right; these parts of *Asia* lying so directly in the way from the Valley of *Shinaar* unto *Greece*, that *Javan* may very well be thought to leave some of his company here, when he ferried the rest over to the opposite Continent. I know *Pausanias*, ignorant of their true antiquity, deriveth them from *Ion* the son of *Xuthus*, and grandchild of *Deucalion*: wherein he came so near the truth, though he missed the men, that it was the Grandson of that man who escaped the floud, from whom both the *Athenians* and those *Ionians* had their true original. In regard of which relations betwixt the Nations, the *Athenians* gave aid to those *Ionians* against the *Persians*; who on the overthrow given to *Crœsus*, pretended to the Lordship or Dominion of *Asia*, and conquered them in the time of *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch. Upon which ground, and the sending of fresh aid to them upon their revolt in the time of *Darius*, that King first undertook the invasion of *Greece*: *Xerxes* and the succeeding Kings pursuing that first quarrel with great animosities. After this yielding to the times they followed the fortune of the strongest, subject successively to the *Persians*, *Macedonians*, *Romans*, *Constantinopolitans*, and *Turks*, till the death of *Aladine*, before mentioned: when both *Æolis* and *Ionia* got a new name, and are now called *Sarcan*, from *Saraehan* a *Turkish* Captain, who on the death of that *Aladine* seised upon this Country, and erected here a petit Kingdom, long since subdued by those of the race of *Ottoman*.

II. LYDIA.

LYDIA is bounded on the East, with *Phrygia Major*, and some part of *Pisidia*, from which separated by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with *Æolis* and *Ionia*, or *Asia* specially so called; on the North, with the *Greater Mysia*; on the South, with *Caria*. So called from *Lud*, the son of *Sem*, by some of whose posterity it was first inhabited. In th full Latitude and extent thereof, as anciently, comprehending *Æolis* and *Ionia*, the adjoyning Provinces, it made the *Lydian Asia*, spoken of before; within the verge whereof all the *seven Churches* were contained, mentioned by St. *John* in the *Revelation*.

The people of this Country are said to have been the first Coyners of Money, the first Hucksters and Pedlers, and the first inventers of Dice, Ball, Chess, and the like games: necessity and hunger thereunto enforcing them, according to that of *Persius*, *Artis Magister*, *ingeniique largitor venter*. For being sorely vext with famine, in the time of *Atis*, one of the Progenitors of *Omphale*, they devised these games; and every second day playing at them, beguiled their hungry bellies. Thus for 22 years, they continued playing and eating by turns: but then seeing that themselves were more fruitful in getting and bearing children, than the soil at that time in bringing forth sustenance to maintain them, they sent a Colony into *Italy* under the conduct of *Tyrrhenus*, the son of *Atis*, who planted in that Country, called at first *Tyrrhenia*, and afterward *Tuscany*.

This Country was also called *Mœonia*, and was thought to have been the native soil of *Homer*, in regard that *Colophon* and *Smyrna*, two of the seven contending Cities, and those which seem to have most colour for their claim, were anciently accounted as parts of *Lydia*, as was said before. Hence *Homer* hath the name of *Mœonides* and *Mœonius Vates*: and in some Authors *Carmen Mœonium* is used for *Homers* Poetical abilities, as *Carmine* Mœonio *consurgere*, in *Ovid*. *Bacchus* is also called sometimes by the name of *Mœonius*; but for a very different reason, *viz.* becaus anciently there were no trees in all this Country but the Vine only.

Principal Mountains of this Country are 1 *Sipylus*, and 2 *Tmolus* this last of most accompt in regard of the great fruitfulness of it, covered over with Vines, and yielding abundance of the best *Saffron*. Chief Rivers of it are 1 *Hermus*, which rising out of *Phrygia Major*, passeth only by the skirts hereof, and so falleth into a fair Bay of the *Ægean*, opening towards the Isle of *Clazomene*. 2 *Pactolus*, which rising at the foot of Mount *Tmolus*, falleth not long after into *Hermus*; famous amongst the Poets for its golden Sands. 3 *Cayster*, no less notable for the abundance of Swans which swim thereon, whose Fountain is in *Phrygia Major* also, near the borders hereof; and his fall into the *Ægean* also over against the Isle of *Samos*. 4 *Mœander*, which rising out of a branch of the *Taurus*, in the furtheſt parts of the said *Phrygia*, towards *Lycaonia*, passeth by *Magnesia*, and endeth his course in the same Sea, near the City of *Ephesus*. A River famous for its many turnings in and out, 600 at the least, as *Prusæns* counteth them. Of which in general thus the Poet,

Mœander *toties qui terris errat in iisdem,*
Et lapsas in se, sæpe retorquet aquas.

That is to say,

Mœander wandring in the self same soil,
Whose waters meeting do as oft recoil.

And in another passage thus,

Quique recurvatis ludit Mœander *in undis.*
Mœander playes his watry pranks,
In his so many winding banks.

The Country by reason of these Rivers was exceeding fruitful, abounding in all sorts both of wealth and pleasures, well cultivated and manured above ground, and underneath inriched with prodigal veins of Gold and Silver, and some precious Gems. Which made the people, after their overthrow by *Cyrus*, to become more sensual and voluptuous, and less fit for action, than any plot of their new Masters could have brought them to, had not the natural delicacies of the soil it self contributed to the advancement of their design. And yet before, they were sufficiently infamous for their luxury, and excess of riot, when best seen in wars: so that it is a marvel they were able to prevail on the neighbour Nations, and bring them under their command; as in the times of some of *Crœsus* Predecessors it is said they did. Unless perhaps they did participate of the temper of *Mœcenas*, the great favourite of *Augustus Cæsar*, of whom *Paterculus* hath left this Character: *Ubi res vigiliam exigeret, erat sanè insomnis, providens, & agendi sciens; simulac aliquid ex negotio remitti posset, otio ac mollitie penè ultra fœminam fluens:* No man more vigilant than he in times of business, nor woman more effeminate in his times of leisure.

Principal Cities of this Country were, 1 *Sardis*, on both sides of *Pactolus*, the Seat Royal of *Crœsus*, and the Kings of *Lydia*, till the Conquest of *Lydia* by the *Persians*. After which time, being taken by the *Grecians*, it so startled *Xerxes*, that he commanded one of his Attendants to say aloud every day whilst he was at dinner, That *the Grecians had taken Sardis*; continuing that *Memento* till it was recovered. Which course (I note this only by the way) was commonly observed in the Parliaments of *France*, as long as *Callice* did remain in the hands

hands of the *English*; and might be profitably revived, till again recovered from the *French*. Overthrown by a most terrible *Earth-quake* (to which Disease most of the *Asian* Cities had been very much subject) it was re-edified again at the cost of *Tiberius*; continuing long after the *Metropolis* of this Province, and one of the *seven Churches* of the *Lydian Asia*, of which the Holy Spirit took such special notice. The others (besides *Pergamus*, already mentioned in the *Greater Mysia*, and *Ephesus* and *Smyrna* in the *Proper Asia*) were 2. *Philadelphia*, neer or on the banks of the River *Caystrus*, the second City in accompt next to *Sardis* it self, and honoured with the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, as appeareth by the Acts of the *Constantinopolitan* Council, where *Eustathius* Bishop hereof doth subscribe himself, Ἐπίσκοπος τῆς Φιλαδελφίων Μητροπόλεως, Bishop of the *Metropolis* of *Philadelphia*, in the Province of *Lydia*. 3 *Thyatira*, honoured with the same Priviledge also, as appears by the constant Order, observed as well in the *Civil* as *Ecclesiastical* Catalogues of the Cities belonging to this Province. The reason whereof (for otherwise it was contrary to the practice both of Church and State, to have in one Province more than one *Metropolis*) was the respect had to those several Churchs, in regard of their Primitive Antiquity, and the Foundation of them by St. *John* the Apostle, as it was generally believed. 4. *Laodicea*, by *Ptolomy* placed amongst the Cities of this Province, as it stood in his time, and before: but afterwards laid by *Constantine* to the *Greater Phrygia*, and made the *Metropolis* thereof (which honour *Hierapolis* had before enjoyed) it being well observed by *Strabo*, that the *Romans* did not dispose of their Provinces according to Nations, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕτερον τρόπον διατάξαι τὰς διοικήσεις, ἐν αἷς τὰς πρώτας δικαιοδοσίας, but according to those *Districts*, or Circuits, in which they kept their Courts of Justice. Next unto these, there were of especial consideration, 5 *Magnesia ad Mæandrum*, so called because situate on that River, to difference it from *6 Magnesia penes Sipylum montem*, another of the same name neer the Hill *Sipylus*. The first assigned over to *Themistocles*, together with *Myus* and *Lampsacus*, as was said before. The other memorable for the great Battel fought near unto it, betwixt *Antiochus* and the *Romans*; the loss whereof falling unto *Antiochus*, occasioned the loss of all his *Asian* Provinces on this side of *Taurus*, and the payment of 15000 Talents for the charge of the War, besides some other hard Conditions then imposed upon him. *7. Alabanda*, opposite to *Magnesia* on the other side of *Mæander*, the People whereof, immediately on the overthrow of *Antiochus*, not only sent Embassadours to *Rome* to congratulate with them, as many other Nations did; but built a Temple to it, and appointed *Anniversary* Games to be celebrated in the honour of that new-made *Goddess*. A thing more to be wondered at in the *Roman* Senate for receiving, than in this poor People for bestowing on their City so divine an honour. 8. *Trallis*, on the banks of *Cayster*, to the Inhabitants whereof, *Ignatius* that Reverend Bishop and Godly Martyr writ the Epistle *ad Trallenses*.

That the *Lydians* were derived from *Lud* the Son of *Sem* is testified by the general consent of such ancient Writers, as treat of the dispersions of the Sons of *Noah*; to which opinion the neerness of the Names of *Lud*, *Ludim*, and *Lydi* (or Λύδοι, as the *Grecians* call them) seems to give good countenance. Nor shall I here dispute it further, as a point unquestioned: the tale of *Lydus*, I know not what Nobleman, that should name this Country, being taken up amongst the *Greeks* for want of more certain truths. Once settled here, they grew up suddenly to a Kingdom; amongst the ancient Kings whereof are numbred *Manes* as the first, *Cotis*, and *Atis*, and then *Asius* (from whom *Lydia* first, and after, all the Continent, had the name of *Asia*) as his immediate Successors. After them I find mention of one *Cambletes*, said by *Athenæus* to be so great a Gormandizer, that in his sleep he eat his Wife, and finding her hand in his mouth next morning, slew himself for shame: and of another named *Andramytes*, as infamous for his filthy lusts, as *Cambletes* for his gluttony. But the Race of these Kings ending in *Omphale*, the Mistress of *Hercules*, who made that valiant Champion spin amongst her Damosels, the *Heraclidæ* or Posterity of *Hercules* succeeded next; of whom there is no constant and continued Succession till the time of *Ardisius*, the nineteenth in order of that Line, who began his Reign not long before the building of the City of *Rome*. Under his Successors the Affairs hereof so exceedingly prospered, especially under *Halyates* the Father of *Cræsus*, that *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Mysia*, *Caria*, *Æolis*, *Doris*, and *Ionia*, acknowledged themselves Vassals to this Crown: Conceived both in Wealth and Power to be equal to the *Ægyptian*, *Babylonian*, or *Median* Kingdoms, till the Conquest of *Syria* and *Ægypt* by *Nebuchadnezzar* gave him the preheminence. But being come unto the height, it received a fall in the person of *Cræsus*, the Successor of him who so much advanced it. The Kings hereof, from the time of the said *Ardisius*, take in order following.

The KINGS of *LYDIA*.

A. M.

3190 1 *Ardisius*. 36.

3226 2 *Halyates*. 14.

3240 3 *Melos*, who overcame the people of *Sardis*. 12.

3252 4 *Candaules*, who shewing his Wife naked to *Gyges*, was by him slain; who marrying his Wife, succeeded him in his Kingdom. The whole Story is this: *Candaules* had to Wife a Woman of unparallell'd beauty; and supposing the greatness of his happiness not to consist so much in his own fruition, as the notice which others might take of it, intended to shew her in Natures bravery to *Gyges* the Master of his Herds. *Gyges* at first disswaded him from an attempt so foolish; but seeing no perswasion could prevail, he condescended. When he had seen the naked Queen, and was ready to depart, *Candaules* cried to him, *Esto fidelis Gyges*: Which words the Queen marking, and seeing the back of *Gyges* as he left the Chamber, the next morning sent for him: When holding a ponyard in her hand, she gave him his choice, either presently to be slain, or else to kill the King, and take her to wife, with the Kingdom of *Lydia* for her Dower. Of which two evils he made choice of that which he thought the least, and so killed *Candaules*.

5 *Gyges*, the first of this new line, added *Ionia* to his other dominions. A Prince of so great wisdom, for the time he lived in, that all other Kings his neighbours sate (as it were) in the light to him; and he as in the dark to them: occasioning thereby the fiction of a Ring he had, by which made invisible, when and as often as he pleased.

3305 6 *Ardis* II. the son of *Gyges*. 37.

3342 7 *Sardiattes*. 15.

3357 8 *Halyates*

3357 8 *Halyattes* II. of whom before.
3406 9 *Crœsus*, the last King of *Lydia*, subdued *Doris* and *Æolis*; after which victories, he was overcome by *Cyrus*, King of *Persia*: in which battel, a son of *Crœsus* who had been dumb from his cradle, seeing a Souldier ready to kill his father, suddenly broke out into these words, *Rex est, cave ne occidas.* After his overthrow, and the Captivity of *Crœsus* (one of the richest Kings that ever was of old) *Lydia* was made a *Persian* Province, *A M.* 3420.

The *Lydians* after this rebelled, but being again subdued, *Cyrus* bereaved them of all their horses of service, dispoyled them of all their armour, and trained them up in all manner of loose and effeminate living; weakning by this means a powerful Nation, which before that time had not only maintained its own liberty, but awed all the Provinces adjoyning. After this they continued *Persian* till the Conquest of *Asia* by the *Macedonians*, in the division of whose spoyls they fell to the portion of *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*: following the common fortune of the rest of this *Asia*, till they came under the power of the *Romans*. Made by them one of the Provinces of their Empire, it had the *Lower Mysia*, or *Mysia Olympena* annexed unto it; by means whereof the limits of each became so confounded, that the Towns and Cities of the one, are many times ascribed to the other. In the falling of the Eastern Empire it was made (as all the rest of *Anatolia*) a prey to the *Turks*: that part of it which lyeth next to *Æolis*, subject to the *Carausian* Family; as the other parts towards *Phrygia Major*, were to the *Aidinian*.

12 CARIA.

CARIA is bounded on the East, with *Lycia*; on the North, with *Lydia* and *Ionia*; on the West, with the *Icarian* or *Ægean* Sea; and on the South, with the *Carpathian*. So called from *Cares*, the Son of *Phoroneus* King of *Argos*, once the Lord hereof; who is said to have invented the Science of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Augury*; though others ascribe it to the *Phrygians*, and others unto other Nations, all alike uncertain.

In this Country is the Hill called *Latmus*, the dwelling, or rather retiring place of *Endymion*, who being much addicted to the study of *Astronomy*, found out the changes and courses of the Moon, and is therefore by the Poets feigned to have been her Paramour. Others add, that *Jupiter* hid him in a Cave under this Hill, and cast him into a dead sleep; (which notwithstanding, she descended sometimes to kiss him) whence came the old By-word, of *Endymionis somnum dormit.* Here is also in this Country the River *Salmacis*, said to infeeble all such as either drinke of it, or bath in it: from whence the Poets raise the fiction of *Salmacis* and *Hermaphroditus* described by *Ovid*; and the Proverb of *Salmacida spolia sine sanguine & sudore*, mentioned by *Tully* in his Book of *Offices*, and there used for effeminate and wanton exercises.

Places of most note in it, 1 *Miletus*, not far from the hill *Latmus*, the birth-place of *Thales*, one of the seven Wise-men of *Greece*, from hence called *Milesius*; and the mother of no fewer than 75 (or as *Pliny* saith of 80) Colonies, dispersed in several places of *Greece* and *Asia*: anciently honoured with the Oracle of *Apollo*, sirnamed *Didymæus*, whose Temple being burnt by *Xerxes*, was again rebuilt by the *Milesians*, to so vast a greatness, that it remained without roof; compassed about with a Grove, and dwelling houses, and sumptuously set out with costly workmanship. This is that *Miletus* mentioned *Act.* 20. to which St. *Paul* called together the Bishops of *Ephesus*, and of other the adjoyning Cities, *Ab Epheso & reliquis proximis Civitatibus* saith St. *Irenæus* the renowned Bishop of *Lions*, *lib.* 3. *cap.* 14. Anciently it was called *Lelegis* and *Anactoria.* 2 *Mindus*, which being but a small Town, had so great Gates, that *Diogenes* the *Cynick* cried out, and said, *Ye men of* Mindus, *take heed that your City run not out at your Gates.* 3 *Heraclea ad Latmum*, so called because situate at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from many others of that name. 4 *Borgylia*, or *Borgylos*, as *Pliny* calleth it, where anciently *Diana* had another Temple, though not to be compared with that of *Ephesus.* 5 *Milasa*, in old times famous for two Temples sacred unto *Jupiter*; the way to which for 60 furlongs was paved with stone for the easier travelling of *Pilgrims*, and the better ordering of Processions; the principal of the Citizens serving there as *Priests*, which office they held unto their death. 7 *Primassus*, memorable for the Stratagem by which it was taken by *Philip* of *Macedon*, the Father of *Perseus.* Who meaning to force it by Mine, and finding the earth so stony that it would not work, commanded the *Pioneers* notwithstanding to make a noise under the ground, and caused great Mounts of *Rubbish* to be raised secretly in the night, at the mouth of the Mine, as if the Work went very well forwards. At last he sent word unto the Townsmen, that two parts of their wall stood only upon wooden props, to which if he gave fire, they should find no mercy; which heard, the Citizens yielded up the Town unto him. So useful in the Art of War is a piece of Wit, that it prevailes sometimes more than Mines or Batteries.

In the South-west of the Province, thrusting it self into the Sea like a spacious Promontory, stands the Country of *DORIS*, so called of the *Dores*, a *Greek* People, who there inhabited. The principal Cities whereof were 1 *Cnidus*, not far from a foreland or Promontory of the same name, famous of old times for the Marble Image of *Venus*, called hence *Dea Cnidia.* 2 *Cressa*, a noted Haven-Town in the time of *Ptolomy.* 3 *Halicarnassus* (now called *Nesi*) the birth-place of *Herodotus*, and *Dionysius*, named hence *Halicarnasseus*, two famous Historians, and the seat-Royal of *Artemisia* Queen of the *Carians* (called from hence sometimes the Queen of *Halicarnassus*) who in the honour of her Husband *Mausolus*, built a stately monument, accounted one of the Worlds *seven wonders*; of which thus *Martial*, speaking of the *Roman Amphitheatre* erected by *Domitian*,

Aere nec vacuo pendentia Mausolæa
Laudibus immodicis Cares *ad astra ferant.*
That is to say,
Mausolus Tomb filling the empty Air,
Let not the *Carians* praise beyond compare.

that the *Carians* were so called from *Cares*, the son of *Phoroneus*, King of *Argos*, hath been said before. But *Bochartus* will rather have them so called from *Car*, which in the *Phœnician* language signifieth a Sheep or a Ram; with numerous flocks whereof they did once abound. And this may seem more probable, in regard that the *Ionians* next neighbours to *Caria*, borrowing this word from the *Phœnicians*, called sheep by the name of *Cara*, Κάρα Ἴωνες τὰ πρόβατα, saith *Hesychius*, the old *Grammarian.* But from whomsoever they had their name, certain it is, they were a very warlick people, *Eo armorum pugnaque amantes*, (saith *Pomponius Mela*) *ut aliena etiam bella appeterent*, who when they had no wars at home, would seek out for action. A little before the time of *Xerxes*, *Mausolus* raigned here, whose wife *Artemisia* (lately mentioned) aided that King in his undertakings against *Greece.* Afterwards, in the time of *Alexander* the

the *Great*, we met with *Ada* Queen hereof, who aided him against the *Persians*; adopting him for her son and Successor; Subject after her decease to the *Macedonians*, it followed the same fortune with the rest of these Provinces, till the defeat of *Antiochus* near *Magnesia*: in the division of whose spoyls it was given to the *Rhodians*, incorporated not long after to the State of *Rome*, and made a Province of the Empire. Wrested from the Eastern Emperours by the *Turks* of the *Selzuccian* Family; the greatest part hereof, on the death of *Aladine* II. was raised unto a petit Kingdom by the name of *Mentesia*, so called from *Mendos* (or *Mindus*) the chief City of it; the residue being laid to the *Caramanan* Kingdom, both long ago subdued by the *Ottoman* Family: that of *Mentesia* by *Mahomet* surnamed the *Great*, who dispossessed *Elias* the last Prince thereof, *Anno* 1451.

13 LYCIA.

LYCIA is bounded on the East, with *Pamphylia*; on the West, with *Caria*; on the North, with parts of *Lydia*, and *Phrygia Major*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. Environed on three sides with the Mountain *Taurus*, which part it from the Countries above mentioned, by consequence naturally strong, and not very accessible: the Sea for the space of 20 miles shutting up the fourth. And here is to be observed, that besides this, there was a little Region of the same name, not far from *Troy*, not much observed by our *Geographers* either old or new; but mentioned sometimes by the Poets; as in *Virgil*, *Æneid.* 4. *Qualis ubi hybernam* Lyciam, *Xanthique fluenta Deserit*, &c. which is meant plainly of the *Phrygian*, or *Trojan Lycia*; the word *hybirna* being added because of its Northern situation in respect of this. Of this somewhat hath been said before in *Phrygia Minor*. In which also that there was a River called *Xanthus*, appears not only by those words of *Virgil* which are cited there, but by two passages in *Ovidius* Epistles unto *Paris* no less and evident.

The people hereof were sometimes called *Xanthi*, from *Xanthus* the chief River hereof, which rising in two Springs from the foot of Mount *Cadmus*, passeth by a Town called *Xanthus* also, and falleth into the Sea. But generally they were called *Lycii* and the Country *Lycia*, from *Lycus* the son of *Pandion* King of *Athens*; who either conquered them, or did some memorable act amongst them, which deserved that honour.

The principal Mountain of this Country, and indeed of *Asia*, is the Mountain *Taurus*, which hath his beginning in this Province, extending Eastward to the great *Oriental* Ocean: of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said hereafter, when these hills are grown unto the greatest.

One of the branches of it, and the most notable in this Country, is that called *Chimæra*, vomiting flames of fire like *Sicilian Ætna*: the bottom whereof was infested with *Serpents*, the middle parts grazed upon by *Goats*, and the highest parts made dangerous by the dens of *Lions*. Hence by the Poets made a Monster, having the head of a Lion, the body of a Goat, and the tail of a Serpent; according unto that of *Ovid* in his *Metamorphosis*:

Quoque Chimæra *jugo medio in parvibus Hircum,*
Pectus & ora Leo; caudam Serpentis habebat.

In *English* thus,

Chimæra from a Goat her mid-part takes,
From Lions head and breast, her tail from Snakes.

This dangerous Mountain was first planted and made habitable by the care of *Bellerophon*, a noble *Grecian*, who is therefore fabled by the Poets to have killed this Monster; employed upon this business by *Jobates* the King of *Lycia*, to whom he had been sent by *Proetus* King of *Argos*, who was jealous of him, and sent his Letters to require that King to kill him. Whence came the saying, *Bellerophontis literas portare*; applied to those, who were unawares employed to carry Letters tending to their own destruction: such as those carried by *Uriah* to *Joab* the General, by command of *David*.

This Country was so populous, that anciently there was reckoned threescore Cities in it, of which six and thirty remained in the time of St. *Paul*; now nothing left of them but the names and ruines. Those of chief note were 1 *Myra*, the *Metropolis* of *Lycia*, when a *Roman* Province; by consequence an Archbishops See, when Christian. St. *Nicolas* one of the Bishops hereof in the Primitive times, is said to have been a great Patron of Scholars: his Festival annually holden on the sixth of *December*, is celebrated in the Church of *Rome* with several Pastimes; and still in some Schools here in *England* (as in that of *Burford* in the County of *Oxon*, where I had my breeding and my birth) for a feast and a play-day. Of this City there is mention *Acts* 27. 5. 2 *Telmessus*, the Inhabitants whereof are famous for *South-saying*, and accounted the first Interpreters of dreams. 3 *Patara*, or *Patras*, (formerly called *Sataros*) beautified with a fair Haven, and many Temples; one of them dedicated to *Apollo*, with an *Oracle* in it, for wealth and credit equal unto that of *Delphos*. 4 *Phaselis*, on the Sea-side also, a nest of Pirates in the times of the *Roman* greatness, by whom then haunted and enriched, as *Algier* is now: but taken by *Servilius*, a *Roman* Captain, at such time as *Pompey* scoured the Seas. And unto the *Pirates* of this Town the former ages were indebted for the first invention of those swift Vessels, which the *Romans* called a *Phaselus*, by the name of the Town; we may render it a *Brigantine*. 5 *Cragus*, with the Mountain of the same name, thrusting out eight points or Promontories near to the *Chimæra*. 6 *Rhodia*, or *Rhodiopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it, most probably of the Foundation of the neighbouring *Rhodians*. 7 *Solyma*, on the borders hereof towards *Pisidia*; the people of which were conquered and added unto *Lycia* by the sword of *Bellerophon*, whom *Jobates*, with a mind to kill him, according to the request of *Proetus*, imployed in that service. 8 *Corydalla*, near the Mountain called *Masigrum*, the *Massycites* of *Pliny*. 9 *Podalea*, the chief Town of *Mylias*; as 10 *Œnoanda* is of *Œnoalia*, two little Regions in this Country.

The *Lycians* were in former times a puissant people, extending their power upon the Seas, as far as *Italy*. Subjected to the *Persian* not without great difficulty; the people with such obstinacy defending their liberty, that some of them being besieged by *Harpagus*, Lieutenant unto *Cyrus*, the first *Persian* Monarch, they first burnt their wives, children, servants, and riches, in a common fire; and then made a furious sally upon the Enemy, by whom put all unto the sword. To *Alexander* in his march this way towards *Persia*, they submitted without any resistance. After whose death they fell with the rest of these parts into the hand of *Seleucus*. On the defeat of *Antiochus* at the battel of *Magnesia*, it was given to the *Rhodians* for their assistance of that War; but governed as a Free Estate by a *Common-Council* of 14 Senators, elected out in their principal Cities: over whom was one chief President, or Prince of the Senate, whom they called by the name of *Lyciarchus*. In these remained the sole power of imposing taxes, making War and Peace, appointing *Justiciaries* and inferiour Magistrates, and all things appertaining to the publick Government. A shadow of which power they retained when brought under the *Romans*; and a shadow only: the Supreme power being no longer in the Senate of *Lycia*, but in that

of

of *Rome*. Nor had their *Lyciarchus* any thing but an empty name, and the vain priviledge of ordering and disposing the publick Games, wherein by his Office he presided. When made a Province of the Empire, it had the same fortune as the others had, till it fell into the power of the *Turks*: after the death of the second *Aladine* made a part of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; of which more anon.

14 LYCAONIA.

LYCAONIA is bounded on the East with *Armenia Minor*, from which parted by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*; on the West, with the *Greater Phrygia*; on the North, with *Cappadocia*; and on the South, with *Pisidia*. So called from the *Lycaones* a People of *Lycia*, or from the *Lycaonians*, Inhabitants of *Lycaonia*, a Town of *Phrygia Major*; who enlarging themselves into these parts, gave this name unto it. Either of which I should prefer before their conceit, who derive it from *Lycaon* King of *Arcadia*, dispossessed by *Jupiter* of that Kingdom; or think that *Lycaon* was a King of this Country, and not of that.

Places of note here, 1 *Iconium* (now *Cogni*) the *Metropolis* hereof when a *Roman* Province: A place of great strength and consequence; situated advantageously in the Mountains for defence and safety, and therefore chosen for the Seat of the *Turkish* Kings in *Lesser Asia*, at such time as they were most distressed by the Western *Christians*; who under the Command and presence of the Emperour *Conrade* did in vain besiege it, forced to depart thence with great loss both of men and honour. Afterwards made the Seat-Royal of the *Aladine* Kings, the former Race being extinguished by the *Tartars*; and finally of the Kings of the house of *Caraman*, whose Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Caramania*, contained all the South part of the *Lesser Asia*, that is to say, part of the Province of *Caria*, all *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, *Pisidia*, and this *Lycaonia*. 2 *Lystra*, the birth-place of *Timothy* the Evangelist; where *Paul* and *Barnabas*, having miraculously healed a Cripple, were adored as Gods; and not long after, on the instigation of some *Jews* which came down from *Antioch* and *Iconium*, most despitefully treated; *Paul* being stoned in to the bargain, though it pleased God to raise him to life again, *Acts* 14. *v.* 19, 20. Such was the divine pleasure of Almighty God, that he that did consent to the stoning of St. *Stephen* the *Protomartyr*, and took charge of the cloaths of his Executioners, should suffer in the same kind wherein he had trespassed, and feel some smart remembrance of his former Actions. 3 *Derbe*, honoured by the preaching of the said Apostle. 4 *Laranda*, so called by *Ptolomy*, and still preserving its old name, the second place for reputation next unto *Iconium*. 5 *Adopissus*. 6 *Paralais*. 7 *Canna*. 8 *Caratha*, with others named by *Ptolomy*, but not else observable.

Nor indeed were the *Lycaonians* themselves, from whomsoever they descended, of any great note or observation in the former times: subject to *Cappadocia* when it was a Kingdom, and reckoned as part of it in the time of *Ptolomy*, when made a Province of the Empire. Dismembred from it by some of the following Emperours, either to create new Offices and Preferments for some *Court-Favourite*, or to satisfie the *ambition* of some Prelates, aspiring to the dignity of a *Metropolitan*, it was made a Province of it self. Torn from the Empire by the *Turks*, it was at first a member of the *Selzuccian* Kingdom, as afterwards of the *Caramanian*. Which last founded by *Caraman* a great Prince of the *Turks*, on the death of *Aladine* the second, the last King of the *Selzuccian* Family, was a great eye-sore unto those of the House of *Ottoman* from the time of *Amurath* the first, who first warred upon it, to the Reign of *Bajazet* the second, who in fine subverted it, *Anno* 1486 as shall be shewn hereafter, when we come to *Cilicia*, the last of the Provinces of that Kingdom, in the course of this Work.

15 PISIDIA.

PISIDIA hath on the East, *Armenia Minor*; on the West, some parts of *Lycia* and *Phrygia Major*; on the North, *Lycaonia*; on the South, *Pamphylia*, and some part of *Cilicia*; from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*. So called from the *Pisidæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reason of their name I find not amongst my Authors.

The Country small, but furnished with great plenty of all provisions, as appeareth by that passage of *Livie*, where speaking of the Expedition of *Manlius* into these parts, he telleth us that he came into the Fields of *Sagalassa* (one of the Cities hereof) being of a rich soil, and plentiful of all manner of Fruit, *Inde ventum est* (saith he) *in agrum* Sagalassarum, *uberem fertilemque omni genere frugum*: But this to be understood only of the Plains and Champian, the Mountainous parts hereof being (like others of that nature) poor and barren.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Antioch*, the *Metropolis* hereof, when a Province of the *Roman* Empire, called for distinction sake *Antiochia Pisidiæ*; mention of which is made *Acts* 4. and of the *Jews* Synagogue therein, honoured by St. *Paul*'s preaching, the sum of whose divine Sermon is there repeated. Built by *Seleucus*, the first King of *Syria* of the *Macedon* Race, and by him so called in honour of his Father *Antiochus*. 2 *Seleucia*, the foundation of the same *Seleucus*, called also, to distinguish it from others of that name, *Seleucia Pisidiæ*. 3 *Lysinnia*, on the borders hereof towards *Phrygia*. 4 *Selge*, a Colony of the *Lacedæmonians*. 5 *Sagalassa*, situate in the most fruitful part of all this Country, as appears by that of *Livie* before-mentioned. 6 *Cremna*, which only had the honour of a *Roman* Colony. 7 *Termessus*, strongly situate in the *Streights* of the Mounts, the hilly Country about which hath the name of *Milyes*. 8 *Olbanassa*. 9 *Plutanessus*, of which little memorable.

As for these *Pisidæ*, they were originally descended of the *Solymi*, Inhabitants of the Borders of *Lycia*. A valiant People, and so affirmed to be by *Livie*, who calleth them *longè optimos bello*. Nor did he speak it without cause, this small Nation holding out against the *Persians*, and not conquered by them, when their great neighbours were subdued. Against these, *Cyrus* the brother of *Artaxerxes Mnemon* King of *Persia* did pretend a Quarrel, as if they had trespassed on the borders of his Province. Which though perhaps they had not done, yet this gave him good occasion to levy an Army, pretending revenge on them, but intending to dispossess his Brother of the *Persian* Monarchy: But *Tisaphernes* Lieutenant to the King in *Asia*, seeing greater Preparations than were sufficient to oppose the weak *Pisidians*, made the King aquainted with his suspicions, who accordingly provided for resistance. The Army of *Cyrus* consisting of 12000 *Grecians*, and 100000 *Persians*: the Kings Forces were no fewer than 900000 fighting men. They met at *Cunaxa*, not far from *Babylon*, where *Cyrus* lost both the Victory and his Life. The *Grecians* who had made their side good, and stood in honourable terms of Composition, being by *Tisaphernes* betrayed, lost the best of their Company. The rest under the

the conduct of *Xenophon*, made safe retreat home in despight of 200000 men which followed at their heels. This *Xenophon* was an Agent in, and the Historian of this Expedition; by whose example the *Spartans* first, and after them the *Macedonians*, were encouraged to attempt the Conquest of *Persia*. But to return to these *Pisidians*; they fell, with others of their neighbours, under the power of the *Macedonians*, and were made part of the Dominion of *Seleucus*. Abandoned by *Antiochus* to the will of the *Romans*, and settled in obedience by the Military progress of *Manlius*, spoken of before; they were in *Ptolomie's* time annexed to *Pamphylia*, as a part thereof. Afterwards made a distinct Province of it self, and so continued till those parts of the *Eastern* Empire were subdued by the *Turks*: first part of the *Selzuecian* and *Aladinian* Kingdoms, after of the Kingdom of *Caramania*; whereof more anon.

16 PAMPHYLIA.

PAMPHYLIA is bounded on the East, with *Isauria* and *Cilicia*; on the West, with *Lycia*, from which parted by a branch of the *Taurus*; on the North, with *Pisidia*, separated from it by the main body of that Mountain; and on the South, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, which in those parts which lie next to it, is called *Mare Pamphylium*. The reason of the name I finde not, unless we think with *Metaphrastes*, that it was so named, *quod ex omnibus gentibus conflata esset*, because inhabited by a mixture of many Nations; for so *Pamphylia* in the *Greek* Tongue doth expressly signifie. And probable enough it is, that lying near unto the Sea, with an open Shore, opposite to *Africk*, near *Syria*, and not far from *Greece*, several Nations from those Parts might repair unto it; and from thence the Name.

The Country for the most part is very Mountainous, over-run with the branches of Mount *Taurus*; but these branches feed great store of Goats, of whose hair are made abundance of *Chamlets* and *Grograins*, not inferiour unto Silks for fineness. Towards the Sea, which for the space of an hundred and fifty miles coasts along this shore, more pleasant, populous, and fruitful; well watered, and as well planted. The principal Rivers hereof, being 1 *Cataractius*. 2 *Cestrus*. and 3 *Eurimedon*; nigh to which last, *Cimon* the son of *Miltiades*, Captain General of the *Athenian* Army, overthrew in one day both the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians*. The manner thus; Having by plain force broke their Navy, of which he took and sunk no fewer than forty Ships, and three thousand Gallies, he stowed the *Persian* Vessels with his best men, attired in the Habit, and wearing the Colours of the *Persians* in the tops of their Ships. In their approach the Camp was opened, and all prepared to entertain their victorious Countrymen; but the *Greeks* once in, suddenly put them to the Sword, and took twenty thousand of them Prisoners.

Principal Cities of it, 1 *Attalia*, founded by *Ptolomy Philadelphus* King of *Ægypt*, and for long time the greatest and most flourishing City of all this Province; well fenced, and seated very commodiously for Trade, on a very fair Bay, now called *Golfo di Sattalia*, by the name of the Town, but little altered. And though the *Romans* did confer the honour of the *Metropolitan* City upon *Aspendus*, yet still *Attalia* had the start in point of Riches, and is to this day a wealthy and well-traded *Empory*, the wealthier for the fair Tapestries which are herein made. Of this Town there is mention *Acts* 14. *v.* 25. 2 *Perga*, famous in old times for a Temple of *Diana*, and the yearly Festivals there held in honour of her, from hence called *Diana Pergea*; more famous *in the fulness of time*, for St. *Paul's* Preaching in it, mentioned *Acts* 14. *v.* 25. 3 *Syde*, renowned in times of *Gentilism*, for a Temple of *Pallas*. 4 *Magydis*, on the Sea-side, not far from *Syde*. 5 *Aspendus*, an in-land Town, but strongly situate; made the *Metropolis* of the Province in the time of the *Romans*: remarkable for the Fidlers or Musicians of it, who with one hand both held their Harps and plaid upon them, keeping the other free for more gainful uses; whence the Proverb of *Aspendus Citharista*, an *Aspendian Harper*, by which they signified a Thief. The Town first founded by the *Argives*, the Colony sent thither being led by *Mopsus*, from whom the Country hereabouts had the name of *Mopsia*. 6 *Olbia*, not far from *Attalia*. 7 *Caravensium*, and 8 *Colobrassus*, two of the Towns of that part hereof which had the name of *Cilicia aspera*; as 9 *Cretopolis*, and 10 *Monedemium*, of that part which was called *Carbalia*.

Of these *Pamphylians* there is little to be said in point of story, but that they were for the most part on the suffering hand; subject from time to time to those mightier Princes, who would not let their neighbours rest in quiet by them. Being on the same side of *Taurus*, and of easie access, they became first Vassals to the *Syrian*, and after to the *Persian* Kings. When *Alexander* passed that way, in his March towards *Persia*, he took all the Sea-Towns of it: The whole brought under with the rest of the *Asian* Provinces, by *Antigonus* first, after by *Seleucus* the great King of *Syria*. In the expiration of whose Line, this people and their neighbours of *Cilicia*, being left to themselves, and tempted by *Mithridates* to his Faction, began to be troublesome on the Seas, and proved notable *Pirates*, and were the first Authors or Inventors of those Gallies of an hundred and forty, or an hundred and sixty Oars apiece; which the *Italians* call from hence by the name of *Pamphyli*. But forced to leave this Trade at last, being warred upon by the *Romans* with great Forces both by Sea and Land (a fuller narrative whereof we shall have in *Cilicia*) in the conclusion of that War, they lost that liberty which so small a time they had enjoyed, and were made Vassals unto *Rome*. Afterwards made a Province of the *Asian Diocese*, they ran the same fortune with the rest, till subdued by the *Turks*: and at the death of *Aladine*, were seized on by *Caraman*, and so became a part of his Kingdom; of which we shall hear more when we come to *Cilicia*. And so much for the Provinces of the *Asian Diocese* (the Provinces of the Isles excepted, whereof more anon) converted to the *Christian* Faith by three great Apostles; but most especially by Saint *Paul*, of whose Travels through most Cities and Regions of it, there is such pregnant evidence in the Book of *Acts*. And that Saint *Peter* and Saint *John* had also their parts herein, appears by the *Revelation* of the one, and the first Epistle of the other: *Paul* planting, *John* and *Peter* watering, but *God himself giving the increase*. Pass we on next unto ISAURIA and CILICIA, which though Provinces of the *Diocese* of the *Orient*, were parts of the *Caramanian* Kingdom: of which having taken a Survey, and so cleared our selves of this *Peninsula*, we will then sail about such Islands as make up the remainder of the *Asian Diocese*.

17 ISAURIA. 18 CILICIA.

THese two, though distinct Provinces, I have joyned together, because the first was only a part of the last; *Cilicia* anciently comprehending both: The fortunes of both being the same also in point of Story, which makes the conjunction the more natural.

ISAURIA, a mountainous and hilly Province, ſeated on both ſides of *Taurus*, hath on the East and South, the reſt of *Cilicia*, whereof anciently it was a part; on the North, *Piſidia*; on the Weſt, *Pamphylia*. So called from *Iſaurus*, the chief City of it, when firſt made known unto the *Romans*; which being taken by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, imployed by *Pompey* in that Service, reduced the conquered Country under the command of *Rome*; and gave unto the Conquerour the ſirname of *Iſauricus*.

The quality of the Soil, and whole Eſtate of this ſmall Province, take thus from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who had ſeen theſe Countries. Ciliciæ *lateri dextro adnexa* Iſauria, *uberi palmite viret, & frugibus multis; quam mediam, flumen navigabile* Calicadnus *interſcindit*, &c.. i. e. "On the right hand of *Cilicia* lieth *Iſauria*, a Province of a wealthy Soil, plentiful of Vines, "and much other Fruits, which the River *Calicadnus* "parteth in the very midſt. Beautified, beſides many Towns, with two principal Cities. 1 *Seleucia*, founded by *Seleucus*, and 2 *Claudiopolis*, into which *Claudius* the Emperour brought a *Roman* Colony. For as touching 3 *Iſaurus*, heretofore a walled City, and of moſt eſteem, it hath been long ago deſtroyed, as yielding too ſecure a Refuge to the neighbouring Rebels; inſomuch that now there are ſcarce any viſible Tracts of its former greatneſs. And not much after, *Hæ duæ Provinciæ bello quondam* Piratico *catervis mixtæ Prædonum, à* Servilio *Proconſule miſſæ ſub jugum, factæ ſunt vectigales. i. e.* "Theſe Provinces (*Cilicia* and this) heretofore in the *Pi*"*ratical* War joyning with thoſe Robbers, were brought "under by *Servilius* the *Proconſul*, and made ſubject to "the State of *Rome*. And here we have in brief the nature of the Country, the names of the chief Rivers, and the principal Cities, with ſo much of the Story as relates to the firſt ſubjugation of it. What further doth concern it we ſhall hear in *Cilicia*, upon the which it did depend.

2 CILICIA is bounded on the East with *Syria*, or rather that part thereof which is called *Comagena*, ſeparated from which part by a branch of the Mountain *Taurus*, called *Amanus*; on the Weſt, with *Pamphylia*; on the North, with *Iſauria*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with the *Mediterranean*, and *Syria*, ſpecially ſo called. It was thus named, as the old tradition was, from *Cilice* the Brother of *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*, a near neighbour to it: but as *Bochartus* (of whoſe humour I have told you often) from *Callukim*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying Stones, *quia lapidoſa & Regio*, becauſe in ſome parts, eſpecially in that which is called *Cilicia Trachæa*, or *Cilicia Aſpera*, it was very ſtony. It is now called *Caramania*, as the laſt Province of the *Caramanian* Kingdom, which held out for thoſe falling Princes, when the reſt was conquered by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Race.

The Country ſaid by *Marcellinus* to be *terra dives omnibus bonis*, wealthy and fruitful of all neceſſaries. Which Character holdeth good, chiefly in the Eaſtern parts, which heretofore had the name of *Cilicia Campeſtris*: the Weſtern parts lying towards *Pamphylia*, formerly called *Cilicia Aſpera*, being rough, and ſtony. But generally where the Lands lie in ſeveral, and are duly cultivated, it anſwereth to the former *Character*; being alſo very well watered, and having a fair and large Sea-coaſt for the ſpace of three hundred miles and upwards. Which notwithſtanding, it is not much traded, and but meanly inhabited; a great part of the Country lying in large and common Fields, to which none can lay any proper claim, and therefore planted only with Goats and Sheep; out of which the Commoners on all ſides raiſe good profit by Cheeſe and Butter, by their Fleeces chiefly. Here is alſo a good breed of Horſes, of which ſix hundred yearly are culled out for the ſpecial Service of the *Grand Signeur*. But as they have ſome profitable and uſeful Creatures, ſo they have others as dangerous and hurtful to them; eſpecially thoſe which the vulgar *Grecians* call the *Sqnilachi*, of a mixt making betwixt a Dog and a Wolf; which go in troops, and are ſo bold, and theeviſh withal, as they uſe to ſet upon a man as he is aſleep, and leave him neither Hat, Cloak, nor Fardel, nor any thing they can conveniently get from him.

Chief Rivers hereof are, 1 *Pyramus*, now called *Malmiſtra*, which riſing on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, and forcing his paſſage through that Mountain, makes ſuch a noiſe in falling down the precipices and rocks thereof, as reſemblanceth at a great diſtance a clap of Thunder. 2 *Orymagdus*. 3 *Calicadnus*, ſpoken of before. 4 *Cidnus*, which riſeth in the *Anti-Taurus*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo cold a water, that as *Pliny* writes, it cureth the Gout: the waters of which proved very dangerous to *Alexander* the *Great*, the coldneſs of them ſtriking violently into his ſtomach; and deadly to *Frederick* the firſt Emperour of the *Germans*, as he here bathed himſelf, the violence of the ſtream tripping up his heels, and he not able to recover, was preſently drowned.

Of their chief Hills I need add nothing, having already ſaid that the Country is parted by *Amanus* from *Syria*, and by *Taurus* it ſelf from *Piſidia* and *Armenia Minor*; not eaſie of entrance by the firſt, but very difficult by the laſt: The *Streights* thereof called *Pylæ Ciliciæ*, or the Ports of *Cilicia*, being indeed ſo ſtreight, and almoſt impaſſable, that had they been guarded or regarded by the *Perſians*, as they ſhould have been, the Progreſs of *Alexanders* Victories might have ended there. But *Arſenes*, who had the charge of them, durſt not ſtand his ground, and ſo left them open to the Enemy, whom by thoſe Ports he put into the poſſeſſion of the Kingdom of *Perſia*. With better faith, though no better fortune, did the Souldiers of *Peſcennius Niger* make good theſe *Streights* againſt the Emperor *Severus*; the Monarchy of the World lying the ſecond time at the ſtake, and to be tried for in this Cock-pit. For the *Nigrians* poſſeſſed of theſe *Streights* and Entrances, couragiouſly withſtood the *Severian* party; till at laſt a ſudden Tempeſt of Rain and Thunder continually darting in their faces (as if the very Heavens had been armed againſt them) they were fain to leave the Paſſage, and therewith the Victory to the adverſe Faction: having ſold that at the loſs of 20000 of their own lives, which *Alexander* had the happineſs or the hap to buy for nothing.

In the borders of this Country towards *Pamphylia*, lived a Tribe or Nation called the *Soli*, originally of *Attica*: But in long tract of time diſuſed from converſe and communication with their Countrymen, they ſpake that Language ſo corruptly, that from their barbarous manner of pronunciation, and as rude expreſſion, came the word *Solœciſmus*. Yet amongſt theſe were born three men of eminent note, that is to ſay, *Chryſippus* the Philoſopher, *Philemon* and *Aratus* the Poets; out of the Writings of which laſt, St. *Paul* vouchſafed to uſe this Paſſage, τ γὰς γένος ἐσμέν, i. e. *for we are alſo his off-ſpring*, *Acts* 17. *v.* 28. That bleſſed Apoſtle thought himſelf never the worſe *Preacher*, for being brought up in humane Learning at the feet of *Gamaliel*; nor held it any diſparagement to the Influences of the Holy Ghoſt, to make uſe of it in his *Sermons* and divine Diſcourſes: and therefore to prevent thoſe *Cavils* which ignorance or miſpriſion might chance to make in times ſucceeding, he hath

hath thrice vouchsafed the words and testimony of the Heathen Writers; *viz.* of *Epimenides*, *Tit.* 1 *v.* 12. of *Menander*, 1 *Cor.* 15. *v.* 33. and that of *Aratus* before mentioned. So lawful is it in this kind, for those of the *spiritual Israel* to rob the *Ægyptians*; and to make this *Hagar* serviceable to her Mistris *Sarah*.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1 *Solæ*, the habitation of the *Soli*, before remembred; by some said to be built by *Solon* the *Athenian*: but generally affirmed to have been planted by those of *Rhodes* and *Attica*: mistakingly called *Heliopolis*, by *Qu. Curtius*, which is as much in *Latine* as *Solis Civitas*, or the City of the Sun. On the site hereof then decayed and ruinous (the Town having been destroyed by *Tigranes* the *Armenian* King in his late Wars against the *Romans*) did *Pompey* build his City of *Pompeiopolis* after his victory over the Pirates; who not only Lorded it over the Seas, and consequently obstructed Trade and Merchandize, but wasted and spoyled the Villages of *Italy* it self. *Pompey* being Victor, and having inflicted exemplary punishment on the Ring-leaders, with the rest, peopled this new Town, and the Country adjoyning, allowing them competent possessions, lest want and necessity should again enforce them to the like courses. An action truly commendable, and worthy so great a Captain, rather to take an occasion of offending from the people, than after offence done, to punish them. *Hythlodæus* in the *Utopia*, somewhat bitterly, though perhaps not unjustly, inveigheth against the Laws of *England*, for ordaining death to be the punishment of theft, *Cùm multò potius providendum fuerit, uti aliquis esset proventus vitæ; ne cuipiam sit tam dira furandi primùm, deinde pereundi necessitas.* Whereas (saith he) the Laws ought to make provision for putting men into some orderly course of life, and not let them run upon the necessity of stealing first, and then being hanged for it. 2 *Tarsus*, the birth-place of St. *Paul* the Apostle; for that sufficiently famous, were there nothing else to commend it to consideration: But it was a Town withal of great note and consequence, the *Metropolis* first, of all *Cilicia*, and after the division, of *Cilicia Prima*. The Inhabitants whereof had the priviledge of *Roman* Citizens. Situate in a goodly Plain on the banks of the *Cydnus*, and by some said to be the work of *Sardanapalus* the last King of *Assyria*; it being engraven on a Monument erected to him, that in one day he had built this *Tarsus*. And 3 *Anchiala*, another City of this Country, near the Sea-side, and not far from the Promontory *Zephyrium*. Of the same date (if the said Monument speak truth,) but neither of the same fortune nor continuance, that being utterly decayed, but *Tarsus* still remaining of great wealth and strength. Much spoken of in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, and in the stories of the *Caramanian* and *Ottoman* Kings. And though the *Tarsians* to ingratiate themselves with *Julius Cæsar*, would needs have their Country called *Juliopolis*; yet the old name survived the new, and it is to this day called *Tersia* or *Terassa* by the vulgar *Greeians*: but *Hamsa* by the *Turks*, as *Bellonius* telleth us. 4 *Adena*, the *Adana* of *Ptolomy*, a large Town, but unwalled, instead whereof defended by a very strong Castle. Situate in a fruitful soil, both for Wine and Corn, wherewith the Town is always furnished for the use of those that are to travel over the *Taurus*, who commonly take in here three days provision. 5 *Epiphania*, the birth-place of *George* the *Arian* Bishop of *Alexandria*; thrust on the world of late by some learned men (but of more industry than judgment) for *George* the *Cappadocian* Martyr. 6 *Mopsuestia*, as famous, or infamous rather, for giving title to *Theodorus Mopsuestenus*, Bishop hereof, and a great Patron of the *Nestorian* heresies, in the time of S. *Chrysostome*. The City otherwise of good note, and of great consequence, in the course of the *Roman* Wars, described at large by *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7 *Issus*, upon a spacious Bay, called hence *Sinus Issicus*, near the borders of *Syria*: memorable for the great battel here fought betwixt *Alexander* and an handful (in comparison) of his *Macedonians*, and that vast Army of *Darius*, (himself there in person) consisting of 600000 undisciplined *Asians*; whereof so many lost their lives, that the dead bodies seemed to have buried the ground; For partly by the unskilfulness of the Commanders, who chose so ill a place to fight in, that they could make no use of their mighty numbers: and partly by the effeminateness of the *Asian* Souldiers, unable to endure the charge, there fell that day no fewer than 200000 of the *Persians*, 40000 of them being taken Prisoners, amongst them the Wives and Daughters of *Darius*, and not above 100 of the *Alexandrians*, if *Qu. Curtius* be not partial in relating the Story. A victory which assured *Alexander* of his former purchases, and opened a way unto the rest: the *Persians* not being able to make head again, till he had pierced into the bowels of their Empire, and added *Syria*, and *Ægypt* to his former Conquests. Of so great consequence is one full Victory to the losing and getting of a Kingdom. This Town it self now called *Aiazzo*, and the great Bay on which it standeth *Golfo di Aiazzo*. 8 *Alexandria*, built by command of the Conquerour near the place of battel, commodiously for Trade, as upon the Sea; but otherwise in a Fenny and Boggy soil, which make the air there to be very unwholsom to men not used to it: little now remaining, but a few houses on the Sea-shore built of straw and mud, hardly affording it the reputation of a sorry Village, and would not long continue such, but that it is the nearest Haven to the Town of *Aleppo* (whereof more in *Syria*) which draweth unto it the resort of some *Christian* Factors, whose houses are of Clay and Timber; but of them not many. The Town at first called *Alexandria*, as before was said, diminished first to *Alexandretta*, now called *Scanderone*. 9 *Nicopolis*, another of *Alexanders* foundations, so named in memory of his great Victory before mentioned. 10 *Amavarza*, a City of great Antiquity in the time of *Strabo*, and the *Metropolis*, of the Province of *Cilicia Secunda*. 11 *Heracleæ*, mentioned by *Bellonius*, and by him placed in a fruitful and well-cultivated Plain, at the foot of Mount *Taurus*; a fair and large Town, as he reporteth it, and distant from *Adana* towards the Northwest about three days journey. But I find no such Town in *Strabo*, or *Ptolomy*, or any other of the Ancients. 12 *Scandeloro*, a City of *Cilicia Aspera*, or that part of *Cilicia*, which lieth towards *Pamphylia*, heretofore with the adjoyning Territory governed as a State distinct, when all the rest of this Country was under the Kings of *Caramania*: against whom the Prince hereof, being a *Mahometan*, had preserved his liberties, by the assistance of the Knights of *Rhodes*, and the Kings of *Cyprus*. And when the *Caramanian* Kingdom was subdued by *Bajazet*, he made so good conditions for himself, that he had other lands and estates in the *Lesser Asia* assigned to him in exchange for this, and so surrendred this to the will of the Conquerour.

The first Inhabitants of this Country were of the Progeny of *Tarshish*, the son of *Javan*, by whom, or some of his posterity, to preserve his memory, the City of *Tarsus* was first built. Increased in tract of time by some new Colonies out of the Neighbouring parts of *Syria*, it followed for the most part the fortunes of it; successively together subject to the *Assyrians*, *Persians*, and *Macedonians*. In the declining fortunes of the house of *Seleucus* they began to stand upon their own legs, and might have continued longer in so good a posture, had they not

hearkened to ill Councels. Tempted by *Mithridates* to joyn with him against the *Romans*, of whose greatness all the Eastern States were grown very jealous; and being naturally good Sea-faring men, they began together with the *Pamphylians*, to infest the Seas. At first they ventured no further than the shores adjoyning. But after emboldened with success, and finding that the *Romans* were sufficiently embroyled in *domestick* troubles, and a sharp war with *Mithridates*, fell upon the Coasts of *Greece*, and in fine of *Italy* it self; *Publius Servilius* the *Proconsul* first employed against them, gave them an overthrow at Sea; and following his good fortune, set upon them in their Harbours and retiring places. In which pursuit he not only took from them *Phaselis*, a strong Town in *Lycia*, one of their *Retreats*, and others of their best and strongest *Receptacles*; but wasting the whole Country of *Cilicia*, fell upon *Isaurus*, the most defensible Town thereof, which he took and ransacked. No sooner was *Servilius* departed home, but they broke out more violently than before; filling all the Creeks and Ports of the Eastern Seas with their Frigots, *Brigantines* and other light *Piratical* Vessels, insomuch that *Pompey* himself thought it to be an action not unbecoming his greatness, to undertake the War against them. And he pursued it to such purpose, that having armed 500 sail of all sorts, and stored his ships with 130000 men, he set upon them all at once; and in the space of one sole moneth made an end of the War. An action not sufficiently to be wondred at, if we consider either the speedines of it, done in so little time as a moneth; or the cheapness of the Victory, purchased without the loss of one *Roman* Vessel; or finally, the importance and consequence of it, the Pirates from that time not daring to infest the Seas: and all *Cilicia* subjected to the State of *Rome*. How they were afterwards disposed of, hath been shewn already. After this they did very good service unto *Pompey* in his War against *Cæsar*; of whom thus *Lucan*, reckoning up his Allies and Aids;

Atque Cilix *justa*, *nunc non* Pirata, *carinâ*.
And the reformed *Cilician* now
No *Pirate*, in his fleet did row.

Nor were they pliant unto him only, as unto their Conquerour; but generally so tame and tractable in the time of *Cicero*, one of the first *Proconsuls* or Lord Deputies which were sent to govern them; that he writ merrily to *Rome*, that he found all quiet in his Province: save that the *Panthers* (some of which, one of his Friends had prayed him to send to *Rome*, for the adorning of his triumph) were for fear of him fled into *Pamphylia*. At the first conquest by the *Romans*, it was divided only into *Campestrem* and *Trachæam*, as was said before; of which *Campestris* was reduced immediately to the form of a Province. *Aspera* or *Trachæa* was a while continued under the Government of Kings, till the time of *Vespacian*, and then made a Province as the other. By the succeeding Emperours, on some reasons of State (if not those intimated in *Lycaonia*) the number of Provinces being encreased (though the bounds of the Empire were no larger than they had been formerly) the whole was divided into three: that is to say, *Cilicia prima*, taking up all *Campestris* wholly; *Cilicia secunda*, containing the *Maritime* parts of *Cilicia*, *Aspera*; and *Isauria*, taking up the Mountainous part of this last division. Laid by the Emperour *Constantine* to the *Diocese* of the *Orient*; and consequently subject in spiritual matters to the Patriarch of *Antioch*, where the *Prefectus Prætorio Orientis* had his usual residence. In the falling of the Eastern Empire, it was conquered by the *Saracens* in the time of *Mubaveas* or *Muavi*, the sixth *Caliph*. Continuing under their command till their declination, it was recovered by the *Greek* or *Eastern* Emperours, and from them conquered by the *Turks* in the course of their victories. But the first race of *Turkish* Kings being worn out by the *Tartars*, and the *Aladinian* Kings ending in *Aladine* the second, it was part of the new Kingdom of *Caramanians*, continuing theirs till the destruction of that line by *Bajazet* the second, *Anno* 1486. by whom incorporated with the rest of the *Ottoman* Empire.

Thus having made our progress over all the *Provinces* of the *Lesser Asia*, and shewn how every one of them was made subject to the *Turkish* Tyranny: we must next draw down the succession of such *Turkish* Kings as have raigned herein, till it was wholly conquered by the Princes of the house of *Ottoman*. Concerning which we are to know in the way of Preamble, that the *Turks* having made themselves Masters of the Kingdom of *Persia*, and following their successes into *Syria* also, fell to a breach amongst themselves. For making up whereof it was condescended unto by *Axan*, the then *Persian* Sultan, that *Meloch* and *Ducat*, two of his discontented Kinsmen, should be infeoffed in the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and their several Territories, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, possessed at that time of most part of *Syria*, *Cilicia*, and some of the adjoyning Provinces. It was also then agreed upon, that a third, but nearer Kinsman, called *Cutlu Moses*, another of the *Leaders* of the opposite faction, should have leave to conquer for himself, whatsoever he could win from the *Christian* Princes: And he accordingly being furnished with a competent Army, subdued the Provinces of *Media* and *Armenia* in the *Greater Asia*, with *Cappadocia*, *Pontus*, and *Bithynia* in *Asia Minor*. Which and the rest of their affairs take here in the ensuing Catalogue of

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor* of the *Selzuccian* Family.

1075 1 *Cutlu Moses*, Nephew to *Tangrolipix*, the first *Persian* Sultan of the *Turks*, won *Media*, part of *Armenia Major*, *Cappadocia*, *Pontus* and *Bithynia*.

2 *Solyman*, son of *Cutlu Moses*, for a while dispossessed of most of his estates by the *Western Christians*, in their first passage towards the *Holy Land*; the Northern parts of which by those Christians were restored to the *Grecian* Empire, never recovered afterwards by the Kings of this house.

3 *Mahomet*, the son of *Solyman*, recovered some part of his estates in the *Lesser Asia*; but outed of them, and subdued by

4 *Musat*, Sultan, or Lord Deputy of *Iconium* for the Kings of *Damascus*; but of the same *Selzuccian* Family, who was thereby possessed of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*.

5 *Calisastlan*, the son of *Musat* (to whom his Father left *Iconium*, with the adjacent Provinces) wrested *Amasia*, and *Ancyra*, from his brother *Jagupasan*; *Sebastia*, and *Cæsaria*, from his brother *Dodune*: which with their several Territories were bequeathed unto them, by the will of their Father. He overthrew the Emperour *Emanuel Comnenus*, and united *Phrygia* to his Kingdom.

6 *Reucratine*, the third son of *Calisastlan*, having dispossest his three brethren, *Musat*, *Cappatine*, *Caicosrhoes*, of the estates left them by their Father, became sole Monarch of all the *Turkish* Provinces in the *Lesser Asia*. In the latter end of whose reign, *Occata* the *Tartarian*

Tartarian Cham having driven the *Turks* out of *Persia*, many of them under the conduct of *Aladine*, a Prince of the same *Selzuccian* Family, joyned themselves to their Countrymen here, with whose help they won *Cilicia* from the *Grecian* Emperours, who in the reign of *Calo-Johannes*, (the *Turks* being then embroyled by the Western *Christians*) had not long before regained it; and after the decease of *Reucratine*, advanced him to the whole estate

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia Minor*, of the race of *Aladine*.

7 *Aladine*, descended in a direct line from *Cussanes*, the last *Turkish* Sultan in *Persia*, having with many of his Nation seated himself in *Cilicia*, first made *Sebastia*, one of the Cities thereof, his chief seat or residence: which after the death of *Reucratine*, he removed to *Iconium*, as the ancient Regal City of the former Kings.

8 *Azalide*, by some called *Azadine*, eldest son of *Aladine*, wasted the most part of his reign in wars with his brother *Jathatine*, whom at last he forced into exile.

9 *Jathatine*, on the death of his brother possesseth the Kingdom, slain afterwards in single combate by *Theodorus Lascaris*, Emperour of the *Greeks*, at *Nice*.

10 *Jathatine* II. Son of the former, driven out of his Kingdom by the *Tartars*, and died in exile: the *Turks* becoming Tributaries and Vassals unto the *Tartarian*.

11 *Masut*, and *Cei-cubades*, of the same *Selzuccian* Family (but whether the sons of the second *Jathatine*, I am not able to say) substituted in his place; as Tributaries to the conquering *Tartars*.

12 *Aladine* II son of *Cei-cubades*, succeeded his Father in the Kingdom, but as Vassal and Leigeman to the *Tartars*. After whose death, leaving no issue of his body, the great Princes of his Family, divided amongst them his Dominions. To *Saracban* fell *Æolis*, *Ionia*, and part of *Lydia*, from him named *Sarchan*, *Saracban*, or *Saracha-Illi*; to *Aidin* the rest of *Lydia*, *Phrygia major*, and the greatest part of the *Greater Mysia*, from him called *Aidinia*, or *Aidin-Illi*; to *Carasus*, the *Lesser Phrygia*, with the rest of *Mysia*, from him denominated *Carasan*, or *Caraса-Illi*; to the Family of the *Isfendiars*, the Cities of *Heraclea*, *Sinope*, and that part of *Pontus* which lieth next to *Bithynia*. There were also lesser *Toparchies* or subdivisions, from whence we find a Prince of *Smyrna*, a second of *Amasia*, a third of *Amisus*, a fourth of *Scandeloro*, besides many others. But the main body of the Estate was seized by *Caraman*, who for his share had the whole Provinces of *Lycia*, *Lycaonia*, *Pisidia*, *Pamphylia*, *Isauria*, *Cilicia*, with the Regal City of *Iconium*, the greatest part of *Caria*, (the rest of it appertaining to the Prince of *Mentesia*,) with part of *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*, and some Towns in *Phrygia*, continuing in his Family for as many descents (as either of the former had held before) in great power and lustre, under

The *Turkish* Kings in *Asia minor*, of the house of *Caraman*.

13 *Caraman*, the first raiser of this Family, Contemporary with *Ottoman* the first King of that race.

14 *Aladine*, sone of *Caraman*, and Son-in-law of *Amurath*, the first of the house of *Ottoman*, by whom subdued, but pardoned and restored unto his Estate, on the humble entreaties of his wife.

15 *Aladine* II. son of the former, subdued by *Bajazet* the first, and hanged by *Tertumases*, one of *Bajazets* great Commanders.

16 *Mahomet*, son of *Aladine* the second, recovered his Kingdom on the death of *Bajazet*, vanquished and led captive by the mighty *Tamerlane*. Afterwards warred upon and vanquished by *Mahomet* the son of *Bajazet*, redeemed his peace, by yielding up unto him many of his principal Towns; and was finally slain at the siege of *Attalia*.

17 *Ibrahim*, the son of *Mahomet*, and son-in-law of *Amurath* the second, against whom unadvisedly raising War, he was forced to submit and become his *Tributary*: after whose death, rebelling against *Mahomet* the *Great*, he was then also vanquished, and a reconciliation made betwixt them.

18 *Ibrahim* II. by some called *Pyramus*, the son of *Ibrahim* the first, supported *Zemes*, brother of *Bajazet* the second in his War against him; for which *Bajazet* having settled his affairs, invaded and subdued the Kingdom of *Caramania*, killed the unfortunate King in battel, and so united that Estate unto the rest of the Dominions of the house of *Ottoman*. The strange successes of which house, from the first rising of it to these present times, shall be deferred till we come unto *Turcomania*; from whence this Nation first attempted and atchieved the conquest of *Persia*, and which only of all their large possessions doth retain any thing of their name. In the mean time we will survey the Islands of this *Lesser Asia*, and so proceed to their possessions in the *Greater*, as they lye before us.

19 The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES*.

The Province of the *ASIAN ISLES* comprehendeth all the Islands in *Asia Minor*, from the mouth of the *Hellespont* to the *Rhodes*, reckoning that for one: united first into a Province by the Emperour *Vespasian*, next reckoned as a part of the *Asian Diocese*; and afterwards, together with the Province of the *Hellespont*, and that of *Asia* properly and specially so called, making up the peculiar or exempt jurisdiction of the *Proconsul* of *Asia*. Those of most consideration are, 1 *Tenedos*. 2 *Lesbos*. 3 *Chios*. 4 *Samos*. 5 *Coos*. 6 *Icaria*. 7 *Patmos*. 8 *Claros*. 9 *Carpathos*. 10 *Rhodes*. Others of less note, having nothing memorable but their names, are scarce worth the naming.

1 *TENEDOS*, is situate at the mouth of the *Hellespont*, over against the noted Promontory called of old *Sigeum* (but now *Cape Janizarie*) a Promontory of *Troas*, or the *Lesser Phrygia*, from which distant not above five miles. The Isle it self in circuit no more than ten; swelling with a round Mountain towards the North, in other parts level; in both producing as good Wines as the best of *Greece*. It took name, as the general Tradition was, from *Tenes* the son of *Cycnus*, King of a little City in the *Lesser Phrygia*, who being falsly accused by his Stepdame for soliciting her to that incestuous mixture which she had violently importuned, and he as piously refused, was by the command of his Father put into a chest, exposed to the mercy of the Sea, and here miraculously preserved. Here for a time he is said to raign, with great commendation for his justice; and afterwards going to the aid of the *Trojans*, to have been slain by the hand of *Achilles*: of whom therefore it was not lawful to

make

make mention in any of the Sacrifices offered in the Temples thereof. But *Bochartus* casting off all this as an old Wives Fable, will have it so called from *Tin-edum* a *Phœnician* word, signifying *Red-clay*, which the Potters made use of in their Earthen Vessels. A Town it had of the same name with the Island, in which a Temple sacred to *Apollo Smintheus*; and another called *Asterion* situate near a little River well stored with *Crab-fish*, whose shells were made in the form of an Ax or Hatchet. From which Town as the Islanders have in some Authors the name of *Asterii*; so from the other circumstance, they are said to have the stamp of an Hatchet on their Coin or Money. Memorable for an old Custom observed amongst them which was, That at the back of the Judge their always stood a man with an Ax advanced; as well to terrifie the Witnesses from giving false Evidence to the Judge, as the Judge from pronouncing a false Sentence upon the Evidence: Whence the Proverb, *Tenedia securis*. More memorable for the final destruction of *Troy*, which was plotted here; the *Grecians* withdrawing their Forces hither as if gone in earnest: but from hence setting sail again to surprise the Town, when they saw their plot had took effect. And so I leave it with that Character which the Poet gives it:

Est in conspectu Tenedos, *notissima famâ*
Insula, dives opum Priami *dum Regna manebant*:
Nunc tantùm sinus, & statio male-fida carinis.

In *English* thus;

In sight of *Troy* an Island stands, well known,
Call'd *Tenedos*: rich, and of great renown,
Whilst *Priam*'s Kingdom flouriſh'd; now (they say)
Grown a poor Road, for Ships an unsafe Bay.

2 *LESBOS*, the largest of these *Asian* Isles, is distant from the main Land of *Troas* about seven miles, 168 in compass: reckoned the seventh in bigness of the *Mediterranean*, which *Aristotle* in his Book *de Mundo* ranketh in this order following, Τῶν δὲ περὶ τὴν Ἰταλίαν νήσων, Σικελία, καὶ Σαρδὼ, καὶ Κύρνος, καὶ Κρήτη, καὶ Εὐβοία, καὶ Κύπρος, καὶ Λέσβος. That is to say, The most considerable of these, are *Sicilie*, *Sardinia*, *Corsica*, *Crete*, *Euboea*, *Cyprus*, and *Lesbos*. And though both *Scylax* in his *Periplus*, a nameless Poet in *Eustathius*, *Diodorus Siculus*, *Strabo*, and others of the Ancients, vary in ordering of the rest, according as their information or phancies led them; yet *Lesbos* comes in the seventh place constantly, without change at all. Upon which ground *Bochartus* will have it called *Lesbos* from *Esbuith*, a *Phœnician* word signifying seven: contracted first to *Esbu*, by leaving out the last syllable of it; and then by changing *bu* to *bos*, and prefixing *L* to the beginning. Far enough fetch'd, and were it but as dearly bought, would be good for Ladies: this Island being reckoned in the seventh place for no other reason, but because it lay furthest off, and most North from *Sicilie*, from whence they ordered their account, and not any mystery in the name thereof.

It had then the name from *Lesbos* the chief City of it, as that from *Lesbus* the son of *Lapythus*, who married *Methymna* the daughter of *Macarius*, Prince hereof: from which *Macarius*, it had sometimes the name of *Macaria*; as that of *Mitylene*, by which it is now commonly called, from *Mitylene* another of the Daughters of the said *Macarius*. And that the memory of the whole Family might be preserved in this Island, *Methymna* also had a City called by her name, one of the principal of the Country.

The Country towards the West and South, reported to be mountainous and somewhat barren; the rest level and fruitful. Plentiful of excelent Corn, and abounding in delicious Wines, compared by *Athenæus* to *Ambrosia*, the Liquor of the Gods, as the Poets fable; affording also plenty of Sheep, and store of Horse, these last courageous and strong, though but low of stature. More memorable for the eminent Persons which it hath produced, as 1 *Sappho*, an *Heroick* Woman, whose invention was the *Sapphick* Verse; and therefore called the *tenth Muse*. 2 *Pittacus*, one of the *seven Wisemen of Greece*. 3 *Theophrastus*, that notable Physician and Philosopher. 4 *Alcæus*, the successor of *Orpheus* in the excellency of *Lyrical* Poesie; and 5 *Arion*, the Musician, who was so perfect on his *Harp*, that being cast into the Sea playing on that Instrument, a *Dolphin* took him on his back, and wafted him safe as far as *Corinth*, where he related the whole Story unto *Periander*, attested by the Mariners who had thrown him overboard. And though this be by some rejected as a Poetical Fiction; yet past all doubt, the man was not only an excellent *Musician*, but an eminent *Poet*, the first Inventer of *Tragedies*, a chief *Lyrick*; and the Author of the Verse called *Dithyrambick*.

Principal Towns herein, 1 *Lesbos*, ἀφ' ἧς ἡ ὅλη νῆσος Λέσβος ἐκλήθη. from whom (saith *Stephanus*) the whole Island had the name of *Lesbos*. 2 *Methymna*, so named from *Methymna* one of the daughters of *Macarius*, spoken of before. 3 *Mitylene*, so named from the other daughter, and wife of *Lesbus*, now the chief City of the Island; seated on a *Peninsula*, looking towards the main Land, strong by Nature, and fortified by Art: enjoying on either side a commodious Haven, that on the South most fit for Gallies, the other capable of Ships of burden. Beautified heretofore with magnificent Buildings, and sweetned with variety of delights and pleasures. Little now left of it since subdued by the *Turks*, but a strong Castle manned with an able Garrison, and a well-stored *Arsenal* for Gallies, kept here in readiness to preserve those seas from Pirates, with which much infested. But the two first long since decayed and grown out of knowledge, those of most note next *Mitylene* are. 4 *Vasilica*. 5 *Theodori*. 6 *Castel-Gera*: all of late days, and therefore of no observation in point of Story.

The Island was first inhabited by the *Pelasgians*, conducted hither by *Zanthus* the son of *Triopus*, whence named *Pelasgia*: afterwards by some *Ionians*, and people of sundry Nations, planted here by *Macarius* (the father of *Mitylene* and *Methymna*) who by his prudence, and the reputation of his Justice, obtained a kind of Sovereignty over the neighbouring Islands. *Lesbus* the son of *Lapythus* arriving here with his Family, married *Methymna*, and had the Island for her Dower; though *Mitylene* had the hap to have the predominant City, and the Island consequently called by her name. Made subject to the State of *Athens*, in the time of the *Peloponnesian* War (when almost all *Greece* banded against that City) they revolted from it, and were so straighly besieged by *Paches*, an *Athenian* Captain, that they submitted unto mercy. The General sends to *Athens* to know what should be done with the *Mitylenians*: Answer was sent, That he should put them to the Sword. But the *Senate* on the morrow after, repenting of that cruel Decree, sent a countermand. These latter Messengers made no stay; but eating with one hand, and rowing with the other, came to *Mitylene* just as *Paches* was reading the former Order, by this speed prevented. So near were these miserable people to a fatal destruction. Subdued by the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, they fell together with it to the *Constantinopolitan* Emperours: from whom taken, with *Chios*, *Samos*, *Andros*, and some other of these Isles, *Anno* 1124. by the State of *Venice*, upon a quarrel betwixt them and the *Grecian* Emperour. Confirmed unto that Signeury by the Emperour *Baldwin*, and all the rest of the *Ægean*

added

added to their portion; those above-named were again recovered by the valour and good fortune of *John Ducas*, the *Greek* Emperour then residing at *Nice*. Afterwards in the year 1335. the Emperour *Calo Johannes* gave it to *Franciscus Catalusius*, a Noble Gentleman of *Genoa*, with one of his Sisters, for her Dower. By whose Posterity enjoyed, till the year 1462. when *Mahomet* the *Great* incensed against *Dominicus Catalusius* the then Lord hereof, for the murder of his elder Brother, a Vassal and Tributary of his Empire, (those Princes paying to the *Turk* an annual Tribute of 4000 *Ducats*) but more for harbouring the Pirats of *Spain* and *Italy*, besieges him in *Mitylene* his principal City, which in 27 days (for so long it held) he constrained to submit unto him, and therewith all the Island also. Some of the chief Families being removed unto *Constantinople* upon some reasons of State, the main body of the People were permitted to remain here to till the Land, and so continue to this day, with some few *Turks*, inconsiderable for their strength or numbers, intermixed among them.

3 *CHIOS*, the next to *Lesbos* both in site and bigness, lieth opposite to the Shore of *Ionia*, from which distant not above four Leagues, is in compass about 126 Miles. So called, as some say, from *Chione* a fair Nymph hereof, much sought after by many Suters: as others say, from χίων a *Greek* word signifying *Snow*, wherewith the Mountains of it are sometimes covered. And some again will have it take name from *Chios* the chief City of it, which being built in the form of the *Greek* Letter χ, first got that name unto it self, and afterwards did communicate it to the whole Island. *Isidore* in his *Origines* gives another reason, and will have it called so from a *Siryack* word signifying *Mastick*, whereof there is plenty in this Isle. *Chios Insula* (saith he) *Syrâ linguâ appellatur, eo quod ibi* Mastyx *gignitur*; *Syri enim Masticben* Chion *vocant*. And were it so, that *Chios* in the *Syriack* did signifie *Mastick*, there could no better reason be assigned for the name; this Island being more furnished with that Commodity, than any place in the World besides. A Gum it is, growing out of the *Lentisk* Tree, which in the Months of *July* and *August* the Inhabitants force out of those Trees, by making with sharp Instruments a deep incision into the Barks of them; out of which the Juice dropping, is afterwards hardned like a Gum, and in the *September* following gathered. A Commodity which yieldeth yearly to the Inhabitants 18000 *Sultanies*, every *Sultanie* being valued at the rate of a *Zechine* of *Venice*: and therefore the felling of the *Lentisk* Tree, at the time of the distilling of this precious Juice, interdicted, on the penalty of losing the right hand of him that doth it.

Other Commodities of this Island are Corn and Oyl in indifferent plenty, some *Quarries* of most excellent *Marble*, a certain green Earth like the rust of Brass; some Silks and Cotton-wooll, but short in worth to those of *Smyrna*, and other places; Honey as good as any the World affordeth; and a vein of most delicious Vines, those specially which grow on the Mountain *Arvis*, now called *Amista*. Of which *Pliny* gives this commendation, *In summa gloria fuere* Thasium, Chiumque *ex* Chio, *quod* Arvisium *vocant*. Of all Wines (saith he) those of *Thassus*, and *Chios*, are of best esteem; and of those of *Chios*, the *Arvisian*. *Strabo* extolleth them in the *superlative* degree, and calleth the Wine hereof, οἶνον ἀριστον τῶν Ἑλλήνων, incomparably the best of *Greece*. And *Plutarch*, speaking of an *Epicurean*, or voluptuous Liver, affirms, that he conceived it the Supreme felicity, Λαΐδος συγγενέσθαι, καὶ πιεῖν ὁ τι ὁ Λεσβιος, *to lie with* Lais, *and drink these* Arvisian *Wines*. Here are also infinite store of Partridges, of a red colour, kept tame, and fed in flocks like Geese, in the Streets and *Greenswarths* of their Villages; some little Boy or Girl driving them to field, and calling them home again with a *Whistle*, when the night comes on.

The Island divided commonly into two parts, the *higher*, called *Apanomera*, lying towards the North and West; hilly and rough, but intermixt with fruitful Vales and pleasant Rivers: the *lower*, opposite unto it, called *Catamorea*, swelled here and there with gentle Hillocks, on which groweth the *Lentisk*. The whole inhabited by *Greeks* intermixt with *Genoese*, and (since their Conquest by that People) some few *Turks* amongst them. Which mixture with the *Genoese*, tempereth the levity of the *Greeks* with *Italian* gravity; the better sort of People both in Apparel and Manners coming near the *Genoese*, once the Lords of this Island; the common sort continuing their old *Greek* humour of mirth and jollity (not sensible of the *Turkish* Thraldom under which they suffer) with as much licentiousness as ever. And though this intermixture hath so corrupted their Language, that neither the *Greek* nor the *Italian* be here rightly spoken, but a compound Tongue made up of both; yet keep they their Religions still distinct and separate, as if they had never known another.

Here are reckoned in it six and thirty Towns and Villages, the principal whereof are, 1 S. *Elier*, in the North. 2 *Pigrine*, in the midst hereof; and 3 *Chios* it self, now called *Sio* (as is all the Island) one of the seven Cities contending for the Birth of *Homer*, whose Sepulchre they pretend to shew in an old Castle near the Mount and Town of S. *Elier*, (which were it his, would be a better argument for his Burial here, than it is for his Birth.) The Town situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of the Country, to which both Industry and Art have given great Advantage; there being few Houses with Orchards of excellent Fruits, as Oranges, Lemmons, Pomegranats, Citrons, and a kind of Fig, much praised for their quickness of taste by the ancient *Romans*. It standeth on the East-side, opposite to the Shores of *Asia*, stretched along the bottom of the Haven, and on the West-side backed with a rocky Mountain, upon which it formerly did stand. The Buildings ordinary, the Streets narrow, and the Haven every day decaying; though otherwise secure, once entred: and for directing of the entrance, a Lantern advanced by the *Genoese* (when Lords hereof) to give Light by night, anb serve for a Land-mark in the day. Fortified on the North-side by a large and strong Castle, environed with deep Ditches, well furnished with Munition, and a *Turkish* Garrison. And because the Island is on all parts accessible, not naturally fortified with Rocks and dangerous Precipices, as many others; besides this Castle, they have all along the Coast small *Watch-Towers*, which with smoak by day, and fire by night, give notice unto one another of such Vessels as they see approaching: the *Guards* about the Castle being so intent also about their Charge, that every minute of the night there goeth a word about the Walls, to declare their vigilancy.

The *Chians* were at first a *Free People*, governing themselves as a Common-wealth; and by reason of their many Harbours, able to furnish out a Navy of 80 Sail, which gave them the *Lordship* of those Seas, till eclipsed by the *Rhodians*. Besieged by *Philip* the Father of *Perseus*, with his utmost Power; who when he could not get it by force, proclaimed freedom to the Slaves (of whic here were many) and liberty to marry with their Masters Wives, if they would rebell against their Masters. And when this policy would not do it, the Town being held out with greater heat of indignation, he

gave

gave over the Siege. At last they became subject to the *Romans* with the rest of *Greece*, and followed punctually the same change of fortunes, as did those of *Lesbos*, which we have spoken of before; till given by *Andronicus Palæologus*, one of the last *Greek* Emperours, to the *Justinians*, a noble *Genoesian* Family, assistant to him in his wars. Under them it continued as *Tributaries* to the *Turks* (after the *Turks* had made themselves Masters of *Constantinople*) to whom they annually paid eighteen thousand *Ducats*, till the year 1566. When *Solyman* the *Magnificent* picking a quarrel with them for some suspected correspondency with the Knights of *Malta*, commanded *Pial*, one of his greatest *Bassa's*, to seize the Island. And he accordingly presenting himself before the City, with a strong Fleet of eighty Gallies, did so astonish and amaze the Inhabitants of it, that without any other summons than the sight of his Navy, they surrendered themselves unto his disposing, upon *Easter-day* being the same day he came before it. Since that time it hath continued *Turkish*, all save their *Religion*, enjoyed by them with like liberty, as in former times.

4 *SAMOS*, is on the South-east of *Chios*, distant above five miles from the shores of *Ionia*, about eighty, or eighty seven in compass; environed for the most part, especially on the North-west, with inaccessible rocks, but beautified with a fair and capacious Haven; of little use by reason of *Pirates* which infested those Seas. The soyl sufficiently enriched with most kind of fruits, abundantly plentiful of Oyl and Olives, but of *Vines* altogether unfurnished; which is the more to be admired, in regard all the Islands and shores about it, produce them in so great a plenty. It stretcheth from the East to the West: and on the South part of it stood the City of *Samia*, near unto the Haven before spoken of. In former times populous, and well inhabited, as was the rest of the Island, now wholly desolate in a manner, because of the *Pirates*, and in most places very much over-grown with woods: becoming thereby very useful to those *publick enemies*, who find here Timber enough for Shipping, and can upon the sudden put a ship to Sea, for pursuit of their *Robberies*. The chief commodity it affordeth besides those above, is a *medicinal Earth*, useful for *Chirurgery* and *Physick*: of which in former times were those Vessels made, called *Vasa Samia*, in great request amongst the *Romans*.

Anciently it had the names of *Dryusa*, *Anathemusa*, *Melamphylus*, and *Cyparissa*; outworn by that of *Samos*, which it still retaineth. Memorable in old times for the birth of *Juno*, of one of the *Sibyls*, hence called *Samia*; and finally of the wise-man *Pythagoras* (a wiser than any of the *seven wise Masters* so renowned amongst them) who first brought Philosophy into *Greece*, and from thence into *Italy*. Once a *free Commonwealth* of no small esteem, the institutes whereof are mentioned by *Heraclides*, in his Books of the several Commonwealths then being: afterwards made subject to the Tyrant *Polycrates*, a man so fortunate, that for a long time he never fell into any mischance. Fearing lest such a long calm would bring on a tempest, he let fall into the Sea a most precious Ring, by him deservedly esteemed, that so it might be said he had some mis-fortunes. Which after he had found again in the belly of a fish, brought accidentally to his Table, he was overcome by *Orantes* a *Persian*, and brought to a miserable death. Leaving a notable example, that fortune is certain in nothing but uncertainties; and like a Bee with a sharp sting, hath alwaies some misery following in the train of a long concatenation of felicity. From this time forwards it ran the same fortune with the rest of these Islands; subject successively to the great *Monarchies* in former times, as of late times to the *Venetians*, *Greeks*, and *Turks*, who do now enjoy it.

5 *ICARIA*, (now called *Niceria*) lyeth not far from *Samos*, to the West-ward of it, narrow, but extended out in length; the whole compass seven and thirty miles: neigboured by two great Rocks, or little Islands, of old called *Melanthii*, now the *Fernaces*; formidable at all times to Mariners, in the night especially. Meanly inhabited at the present, though abounding in pasturage, and yielding sufficiency of corn; Havenless, and therefore the less frequented, yet that defect supplyed by commodious Roads. In former times called *Doliche*, then *Macris*, after *Ischsiesa*: which name it held till the flight of *Dædalus* out of *Crete*, who justly fearing the anger of *Minos*, for being *Pandar* to his wife in her loves with *Taurus*, secretly with *Icarus* his son, fled out of that Island. And because he would be sure to out-strip the *Rowers* who pursued him, he added sails unto his Boat, which it is said, he first invented. But *Icarus*, coming after in another Bark, delighted with the new device, clapped on too much Canvass, and bearing too great a sail, was here cast away. Hence the new name both to this Island, and the Seas adjoyning to it, and the occasion of the Fable of *Dædalus* putting wings upon his shoulders, when he fled from *Crete*; and of his flying too high, whereby the wax melted which his wings were fastned with, and so he perished in the water. Of which thus *Ovid*.

Dum petit infirmis nimium sublimia pennis
Icarus, Icariis *nomina fecit aquis*.

In English thus,

Whilst *Icarus* weak wings too high did soar
He fell, and gave name to the *Icarian* shore.

6 *PATMOS*, now called *Palmosa*, is situate on the South of the other two; A little Island, not above 30 miles in compass. Mountainous, but indifferently fruitful, especially of wheat and pulse; of other commodities, and fruits, not so well provided. On one of these Mountains stands a Town of the same name with the Island; having on the top thereof a Monastery of *Greek Caloires*; and on the bottom a fair haven (I mean in reference to the Island.) Forty sail of Ships are said to belong unto it; by the trading whereof they bring in those provisions which the soil affordeth not: the soil about the Town being so incomparably barren, that nothing groweth on or near it, but on such earth as is brought thither from other places. Unto this Island (as to others in other parts of the world) did the *Roman* Emperours use to confine offenders. A punishment laid by *Domitian* on St. *John* the *Divine*, who in this place writ his *Revelation* to the Churches of *Asia*. So much the Text affirms for certain, as to the writing of it in this Island. And the Inhabitants by *tradition* point unto an house on the North-side of the Town, in which it was written, and not far off the *Cave* where it was *revealed*. Both places equally honoured by the *Greeks* and *Latines*. They also shew a dead mans hand, which they affirm to be his, the nails whereof grow again as oft as cut. But the *Turks* (saith *Magnus*) claim it for the hand of one of their *Prophets*. Let them dispute the controversie, whilst we haste to

7 *CLAROS*, another Island not far off, containing about 40 miles in compass. Well stored with commodious Harbours, but very mountainous; some of those hills of such an height, that from the tops thereof, the City of *Ephesus* in *Ionia*, (though distant at least eighty miles) may be easily seen. It is now called *Calamo*. Neighboured by *Lero* (of old called *Ileron*) a little Island not above eighteen miles in circuit, but very populous, inhabited both by *Greeks* and *Turks*, and furnishing the neighbouring Countries

Countries with some store of *Aloes*. Sacred in former times was *Claros* to *Apollo*; reckoned by him amongst his honours, in his brags to *Daphne*: where he declares,

——— *Mihi* Delphica *tellus*,
Et Claros, *&* Tenedos, Patarææque *Regia servit.*

That is to say,

The folk of *Delphos*, *Tenedos*, and *Clare*,
And Royal *Patara*, my Vassals are.

8 *COOS*, *COS*, or *COUS*, for by all these names it was called of old, is situate over against *Caria*, in the very bottom of the *Ægæan*, that is to say, in that part thereof which is called *Mare Myrtoum*, the *Myrtoan* Sea. A Sea so called, as some say, from one *Myrtilus*, Coachman or *Charioter* of *OEnomaus*, who having betrayed his race with *Pelops*, and importunate for his reward, was by *Pelops* precipitated into this Sea. *Pliny* less probably conceiveth that it took name from *Myrtos*, a little Island not far from *Eubœa*, a little too far off to extend its name to the shores of *Caria*. And therefore considering that *Lydia* anciently was called *Myrtus*, and that in those times *Æolis*, and *Ionia*, lying on this Sea, were accompted but as parts thereof, I think we may resolve with more probability, that it derived this name from that *Lydian Myrtus*.

In this Sea stands the Isle of *Coos*, now called *Lange*, affording Saylers as they pass by a most beautiful prospect, lying for the most part flat and level, but swelling towards the East with some graceful Mountains, out of which issue many sweet and pleasant springs to refresh the Island which maketh it more than ordinary fruitful. Productive of *Cypress* trees, *Turpentine*, and sundry other, both delightful and *medicinal*; but most especially celebrated for those rich wines, which the Good fellows of *Rome* so much loved to quaff, called *Vinum Cos*. It is in compass 70 miles, having a Town of the same name, in the suburbs whereof stood anciently the Temple of *Æsculapius*, famous and rich with the offerings of those, who having by his assistance (as they supposed) recovered health, came hither to make payment of their vows, and express their gratitude. It is now fortified with a strong Castle, held by a Garrison of *Turks*: and besides this, two Villages only in the Island, and both inhabited by *Greeks*.

In elder times it had the name of *Merope*, *Caria*, and *Nymphæa*, and at last *Coos*. Memorable in being the Country of many famous men who were here born; *viz*, of *Hippocrates*, the Reviver of *Physick*, then almost decayed, who is heuce called *Hippocrates Cous*. 2 *Sinius*, a Physician also. 3 *Ariston*, a *Peripatetick* Philosopher. 4 *Philetas*, as good an Oratour, as a Poet. 5 *Nicias*, who for a time oppressed the liberty of this people. And 6 of *Apelles*, the famous Painter; who to express his Art in the Picture of *Venus*, (rising naked out of the Sea) assembled together all the most beautiful women of this Island; uniting in that piece their divided perfections. Which famous piece being afterwards hanged up in the Temple of *Stomalimne*, one of the principal of this Island, was thence conveyed to *Rome* by *Augustus*, and their dedicated to *Cæsar*, as the mother of the *Julian* family: the *Coans* in regard hereof, being eased of a great part of their annual tributes. Not much less memorable for that fine thin stuff (such as now called *Taffanies*) so much in use amongst the chief Ladies of *Rome*; which at once shewed them cloathed and naked. *Perlucidâ utuntur veste, ita, ut nudæ conspici possint*, as my Author hath it. These they called *Vestimenta Coa*, and *Vestes Coas*, so often mentioned by the Poets, especially in their *Amatoria*; as *Coa puellis Vestis*, in *Tibullus*; *Induc me Coi*, in *Propertius*; *Sive erit in Coïs*, saith the Poet *Ovid*. So in others also, too many, and too long to be added here. I pass to

9 *CARPATHOS*, situate on the South of *Caria*, in the *Mediterranean*, from this Island, called hereabouts the *Carpathian* Sea. A rugged and unpleasing soil, full of difficult Mountains, but those Mountaines stored with quarries of most excellent Marble. In circuit about 60 miles, extending more in length than breadth. Heretofore beautified with four Cities, and thence named *Tetrapolis*. But three of the four Cities are long since perished, that of *Carpathos* being still remaining, and still the principal of the Island; both now called *Scarpanto*. Some other Towns it hath all along the shore, and every one of them furnished with some Port or Haven; but small, and for the most part very unsafe. Situate in the middle as it were betwixt *Crete* and *Rhodes*. It hath continued hitherto in the possession of the State of *Venice* (if not taken from them very lately:) to whom being given with other of the Islands of these *Grecian* Seas, at the taking of *Constantinople* by the Western forces, it had the fortune or felicity to continue theirs, when almost all the residue were subdued by the *Turks*. The people *Greek*, of the communion of that Church, notwithstanding their subjection to a state of *Italy*.

10 *RHODES*, situate in the *Rhodian* or *Carpathian* Sea, lyeth over-against the coast of *Lycia* in *Asia Minor*, from which distant about 20 miles. Formerly called *Ophiusa*, *Asteria*, *Ethræa*, *Trinacbia*, *Pæessa*, *Corymbia*, *Atabyria*, and at last *Macaria*; it settled finally and fortunately in the name of *Rhodes*. So named by the *Grecians* from the abundance of *Roses*, which the soil produceth, *Rhodes* in that language signifying a *Rose*, the *Isle of Roses*, as it were: but as the Poets say, of *Rhoda*, a Nymph of these Seas, here defloured by *Apollo*; or rather of *Rhoda*, one of the daughters of *Apollo* begot on *Venus*. For so one of them thus declareth;

Insula Dicta Rhodos, *de Sole &* Cypride *nata est*
Rhoda, from whom this Isle took name,
Of *Venus* and *Apollo* came.

The Island 140 miles in compass, enriched with a most temperate air, and a fertil soil, producing fruits in very great plenty, full of excellent pastures, adorned with trees which alwaies do continue green: and in a word, so blest with the gifts of nature, that it gave occasion to the Fable of those *Golden Showers*, which were once said to have fallen upon it. The *wines* hereof so excellent, and so rich of taste, that by the *Romans* they were used in their second courses, or reserved for the sacrifices of the Gods, as too good for mortals, as affirmed by *Virgil* in the *Georgicks*. The cause of which perpetual flourishing, and continual spring, is to be ascribed to the powerful influences of the *Sun*, so dearly cherishing this Island, or so much in love with it, that it is constantly affirmed, that no day passeth wherein he shineth not clarly on it, be the air in all other places never so much over-cast with clouds, or obscured by mists. Feigned for that cause to have been naturally a meer Marish, altogether inhabitable, if not covered with waters; till loved by *Phœbus*, and erected above the waves by his vigorus influences.

Of the People we shall speak anon. Look we in the mean time on the places of most observation. 1 *Lindus*, (now *Lindo*, a petty town but formerly of more esteem:) of note in those times for the Temple consecrated to *Minerva*, by *Danaus* King of *Ægypt*, landing here when he fled out of that Kingdom. As also for the birth of *Charet*, the *Architect* of the huge *Colossus*, whereof more presently; but specially for the nativity of *Cleobulus*, one of the *seven wise-men* of *Greece*: the other six being *Solon* of *Athens*, *Periander* of *Corinth*, *Chilon* of *Sparta*, *Bias* of *Priene*, *Thales* of *Miletum*, and *Pittacus* of *Mitilene*; Seven men of whom the *Grecians* most immensely bragged, as if the

World could neither afford them equals, or an equal number: for which derided handsomly by *Lactantius*, an old *Christian* Writer, who scoffs their paucity, and calleth it a miserable and calamitous age, *In quo septem soli fuerunt qui hominum vocabula meterentur*; in which there were no more than seven who deserved to be accompted men. 2 *Rhodes*, anciently, as now the chief City of it, the Island from hence taking name, and formerly, as well as in latter times, depending on the fortunes and strength hereof. No place in elder times held superiour to it, for the conveniency of the Haven, magnificent buildings, delightful Orchards, and other excellencies. Situate on the East part of the Isle, on the declining of an hill, and near the Sea, where it enjoyeth a safe and common Haven: treble walled, fortified with thirteen Turrets, and five strong Bulwarks, besides divers Sconces, and other out-works; this Town, and *Famagusta* in the Isle of *Cyprus*, being conceived to be the two strongest holds in the *Turkish* Empire. In former times, one of the principal *Universities* of the *Roman* Empire; this *Rhodes*, *Marseilles*, *Tarsus*, *Athens*, and *Alexandria*, being reckoned the old *Academies* of that Monarchy. And to this Town, as a most noted place of Study, *Tiberius* (afterwards Emperour) did withdraw himself, when *Augustus* had declared his two Nephews *Lucius* and *Caius*, for his Heirs: pretending only a desire to improve himself in the ways of *Literature*; whereas the true cause was his envy at their preferment. Honoured in those times with that huge *Colossus*, one of the *seven Wonders* of the World, made by *Chares* of *Lindum*, before mentioned. Composed of Brass, in height seventy *Cubits*, every finger of it being as great as an ordinary man; and consecrated to the Sun, as the proper Deity of the Island. Twelve years in making, and having stood but 66 years was pulled down in an instant by an *Earthquake*, which terribly shook the whole Island. The *Rhodians* being forbid by an *Oracle* to erect it again (or possibly pretending such an *Oracle* to save that charge) yet held the brass and other materials of it (in a manner) sacred. Not medled with, nor sacrilegiously purloined till *Mnavias*, the General of *Osman*, the *Mahometan Caliph*, finding in himself no such scruple of conscience, (after he had subdued this Island) made a prey hereof, loading nine hundred Camels with the very brass of it. From this *Colossus* was the Island sometimes called *Colossa*, and the people *Colossians*: not those *Colossians* (as some have very vainly thought) to whom St. *Paul* writ his Epistle, those being of *Colosse*, a Town of the *Greater Phrygia*, as hath there been noted. Here was also in this City anciently a Temple of *Bacchus*, enriched with many presents both of *Greeks* and *Romans*; or both which People the *Rhodians* were then held in a fair esteem; but the *God* and the *good Wines* in greater. Towns of less note, are 3 *Villanova*, 4 *Rassicare*, and sometimes others, but as little memorable.

This Island was first peopled by *Dodanim* the son of *Javan*, and the Grand-child of *Japhet*, whom the *Greeks* call commonly, but corruptly, *Rhodanim*; mistaking the *Hebrew* Letter *Daleth* for that of *Resh*, letters so like as easily it might draw them to that mistake. Finding this Island too narrow for him, he left here a Colony, and with the main of his people passed into *Greece*; where he planted the Country of *Epirus*, as hath there been said. Those which staid here being mistakingly called *Rhodians* (or called so by the *Grecians*, not looking with too curious eyes into their Antiquities, from the abundance of *Roses* here growing) making the best use of their Haven, and other the advantages of their situation, became so expert in maritime affairs, that by *Florus* they are styled *Populus nauticus*, and that not only in the way of Trade and Merchandize, but of power and government: holding for many years the command of these Seas, and prescribing Laws for the Reiglement of Navigation. Which being called the *Rhodian* Laws, became the general Rule for deciding *marine* causes, and ordering the affairs of Sea, in all the parts and Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: and so continued till supplanted in these Western parts by the Laws of *Oleron*. Fearful of falling under the *Macedonians*, they applied themselves unto the *Romans*; whom first they aided in their wars against *Philip*, the Father of *Perseus*; and afterwards in that also against *Antiochus*. Rewarded for this last service with *Lycia* and *Caria*, two of the *Asian* Provinces, which *Antiochus* was to leave on his composition; they became so faithfully affected to the State of *Rome*, that when all the other Islands of the *Mediterranean* and *Ægean* Seas revolted to *Mithridates* King of *Pontus*, this only adhered unto the *Romans*. Proud either of their strength at Sea, or of those good offices, they began to take upon them as *Mediators*, and thought themselves fit men to advise their *Masters*. Grown troublesome by their frequent interpositions, and losing much of their esteem by such *impertinencies*, they began to grow jealous of the *Romans*, and incline to *Perseus* King of *Macedon*; whose Father they before opposed with their utmost power. A change which *Paterculus* expressed with some admiration. *Rhodii ipsi fidelissimi antea* Romanis, *dubiâ jam fide proniores in* Regis *partes visi sunt*, as his words there are. But yet they held for them against *Mithridates*, as before was said, and served their turn on all occasions, until insensibly they betrayed their libertie to the power of their friends; and of *Confederates* and Allies, became their *Vassals*. Made by *Vespasian* into a Province with the rest of the Isles, the Governour or President of that Province fixing here his residence, as the chief of those Islands; which gave the title of *Metropolitan* to the Bishop of *Rhodes*. Under that Empire it continued (or under that of *Constantinople* after the division) till the year 1124. when taken from the *Grecians* by the State of *Venice*; again recovered by the *Greeks*, in the time of their Emperour *John Ducas*, then residing at *Nice*. Won from the *Grecians* by the *Turks*, the Knights of St. *John* of *Hierusalem*, being utterly driven out of *Asia*, possessed themselves of it, by the favour of *Emanuel* the then Emperour, who aided them in the conquest, *Anno* 1308. Afterwards proving bad neighbours to the *Turkish* Tyrants, whom they ceased not to infest upon all occasions, they were many times in vain invaded; *Mahomet* the *Great*, famous for taking *Constantinople*, and the Empire of *Trabezond*, spending some time before their City, with both loss and shame. At the last *Anno* 1522. it was again besieged by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Lilladamus Villerius* being then great Master, who did as much in defence hereof as policy and puissance could extend unto. But multitude in the end prevailed, and upon *Christmas* day, the *Turk* entred *Rhodes* as Conquerour; though possibly he might have said (as *Pyrrhus* once said of a like victory against the *Romans*) that *such another Victory would have quite undone him*. Since that a Province of the *Turks*, by whom, and by some *Jews* banished out of *Spain*, the City of *Rhodes* is wholly inhabited: the *Christians* which are licenced to dwell in the Country, and have leave to trade there in the day time, not suffered upon pain of death to stay there all night. And so we pass from the Islands of the *Asian Diocese*, to the Isle of *Cyprus*, a near neighbour unto *Anatolia*; but no member of it: the rest of that *Diocese*, and those Seas, as 11 *Possidium*. 12 *Arcesine*. 13 *Engiales*. 14 *Minyus*. 15 *Sirne*, 16 *Cesi*, and the rest, yielding but little matter of observation besides their names.

OF

OF

CYPRUS.

CYPRUS is situate in the the *Syrian* and *Cilician* Seas, extended in length from East to West two hundred miles, in breadth sixty; the whole compass reckoned five hundred and fifty. Distant about sixty miles from the rocky Shores of *Cilicia* in *Asia Minor*, and about an hundred from the main Land of *Syria*; towards which it shooteth it self out with a long sharp Promontory, extending heretofore to the main Land, from which rent in former time by a violent Earthquake, as is said by *Pliny*, and worn unto this narrowness by the continual working of the Sea upon it.

No place hath oftner changed his name, or at least had more names on the By than this. Called at first *Cethin*, or *Cethinia*, from *Ketim* the son of *Javan*, who first planted it. 2 *Cerastis*, from the abundance of Promontories, thrusting like *Horns* into the Sea, (as the word intimates in the *Greek*,) 3 *Amathusia*. 4 *Paphia*. 5 *Salaminia*: These three last from the principal Towns in those parts hereof. 6 *Macaria*, from the fruitfulness and felicities of it. Besides these, it hath in some times had these By-names also; as, 7 *Asperia*, from the roughness of the Soil. 8 *Collinia*, from the frequency of Hills and Mountains. 9 *Æroſa*, from the Mines of Brass, which abound therein. 10 And finally, all those forgotten and laid by, it settled at last in the name of *Cyprus*. So called, say some, from the abundance of *Cypress* Trees, with which most plentifully provided; as others, from *Cryptos* a *Greek* word, signifying *Concealed*, or hidden, because sometimes concealed by the Surges from the eye of Sailers; but most improbably said by others to take name from *Cyrus*, who founded here the City of *Aphrodisia*; whereas indeed six hundred years before *Cyrus* his Birth, we find it by this name in *Homer*. More rightly *Stephanus*, who deriveth it, ἀπὸ Κύπρου τῆς θυγατρὸς Κινύρου, from *Cyprus* daughter of *Cinyras*, one of the Kings hereof, living before the *Trojan* Wars: though in my mind the first comes neareſt to the truth, the *Cypress* Tree not only growing here in so great abundance, but being anciently peculiar in a manner to this Island only.

But on what ground soever it was called *Cyprus*, certain I am it had the name of *Cerastis* upon very good reason; no Island or Region that I know of (for the bigness of it) thrusting out so many sharp Promontories. For on the West there is, 1 The Promontory called *Acamas*, now *Capo S. Pisano*. 2 *Drepanum*, now *Trepano* and *Melechia*. 3 *Zephyrum*, or *Caput Calidoni*, now *Punta Malota*. On the South, 4 *Phrurium*, now *Capo Bianco*. 5 *Curias*, or *Cape della Catte*. 6 *Gades*, or *Capo Chiti*. 7 *Throni*, or *Capo Pilæ*. On the East, 8 *Pendalium*, now *Capo diGriego*. 9 *Clides*, now *Capo S. Andræa*. And on the North, 10 *Coronyon*, now *Capo Cornochiette*; besides some others of less note. Some of the Poets give another reason of this name, as that *Venus* offended with the People of *Amathus* for sacrificing their Guests, should turn them into *horned* Cattel, *Unde etiam nomen traxere* Ceraſtæ, as it is in *Ovid*, But that meerly fabulous; somewhat of kin unto the Legend of *Thomas Becket*, and the *Kentish Long-tails*. Yet so far we may joyn with *Ovid*, that the Island was not only called *Cerastis*, but that the People were also called *Ceraſtæ*, of which there wants not proof from some other Authors; with which we need not trouble our selves, that name being altogether worn out of use, and no other but that of *Cyprus* given it in common Speech. Nor is it a matter of more strangeness, that *Cyprus* should be called so by the *Grecians*, from its abundance of *Cypress* Trees, anciently and originally peculiar to this Island, as before was noted: than that the same *Grecians* should give unto the neighbouring Island the name of *Rhodes*, from its great plenty of *Roses*; or to the neighbouring Continent the name of *Phœnicia*, from its great plenty of *Palm-trees*; the word so signifying in that Language.

It is situate under the fourth *Climate*, so that the longest day in Summer is no more than fourteen hours and a half; and for that cause the Air in Summer time exceeding hot and soultry: The Soil moistned with some few Brooks, meriting rather the name of Torrents than Rivers, which being generated for the most part by rain-water, are not seldom dried up by the heat of the Sun; insomuch that in the Reign of *Constantine* the *Great*, this Island was for 36 years together almost utterly forsaken, no rain falling all that time. These inconveniences notwithstanding, it is stored with such plenty of all things, that without the help of any Forreign Nation, it is of it self able to build and rig a tall Ship from the Keel to the Top-sail, and so put it to Sea furnished with all things needful for a Voyage, or a Sea-fight. It also aboundeth in Wine, Oyl, Corn, Sugar, Cotton, Honey, Wooll, Turpentine, and Allom, Verdegreece, all sorts of Metals, store of Salt, Grograins, and other Commodities, whereupon this Island was once called *Macaria* (i. e. *Happy*.) By reason of which wonderful affluence of all necessaries, and that variety of Pleasures (even to sensuality) which the place afforded, it was anciently consecrated unto *Venus*, who is hence called *Venus Cypria*. and *Dea Cypri*: *Sic te diva potens Cypri*, in *Horace*; and in *Ovid*,

Festa dies Veneris, *totâ celeberrima* Cypro,
Venerat; *ipsa suis aderat* Venus *aurea festis*.
Venus Feasts hallowed through all *Cyprus* came,
And *Venus* with her presence grac'd the same.

The People hereof are war-like, strong, and nimble; of great civility and hospitality to their Neighbours, and love to Strangers of all Nations, *Jews* only excepted. For in the Empire of *Trajan*, the *Jews* inhabiting *Ægypt* and the adjoining Countries, drew themselves together, and chose one *Alexander* for their Captain; under whose

conduct they entred into this Iſland, and laid it deſolate, killing in it 240000 Perſons of all Sexes and Ages; not without much blood ſhed vanquiſhed and ſlain by *Lucius* the Emperours Lieutenant. Since which time the *Cypriots* permit no *Jew* to enter into the Iſland; but come he hither voluntarily, or by force of Tempeſt, they lay hands on him, and lead him preſently to Execution. A hated Nation, that neither innocence can protect, or equity reprieve from that cruel cuſtom.

The Women in former times much noted for their Unchaſtity, to which their worſhipping of *Venus* was no ſmall incentive; it being the cuſtom of theſe Women to proſtitute themſelves on the Shores, to the paſſers by: their very *Virgins* not refuſing to be handſelled there, before their Marriage; either to raiſe their Portions by the ſale of their Bodies, or elſe to pleaſe their Goddeſs with ſuch beaſtly Sacrifices. And if *Volaterranus* may be credited (as I think he may) the Ladies which attended on Queen *Carlotte*, when ſhe came to *Rome*, to ſeek for aid againſt *James* the Baſtard, who had diſpoſſeſſed her of this Kingdom, ſhewed themſelves little chaſter than thoſe ancient *Cypriots*. Somewhat more fortunate in the Men; *Æſclepiades*, the Author of the Verſe ſo named; 2 *Xenophon*, an old Poet; 3 *Zeno*, and 4 *Apollonius*, the Philoſophers; 5 *Epiphanius*, the learned Biſhop of *Salamis*; and 6 above all, Saint *Barnabas*, the dear Aſſociate of Saint *Paul*, being all Natives of this Country.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by Saint *Paul* and *Barnabas*, as the very firſt fruits of their Apoſtleſhip, after they had been ſeparated to the Work of the Miniſtry by the Impoſition of hands, as appeareth *Acts* 13. *v.* 4. &c. The Church hereof, by reaſon of the Antiquity of it, and the honour of this joint Foundation, ſo priviledged in the beſt Ages of Chriſtianity, that the Archbiſhop of this Iſland had all Prerogatives of a *Primate*; conſecrated by his own Suffragan Biſhops and acting in all Sacred and Eccleſiaſtical Affairs, without dependence on, or relation to the See of *Antioch*, whereunto all other Biſhops in the Eaſtern *Dioceſe* were either ſubordinate or ſubject. Which Priviledge being queſtioned in the Council of *Epheſus*, was by the Fathers there aſſembled, on a full hearing of the Cauſe, approved and ratified; confirmed by the Civil Sanction of the Emperour *Juſtinian*, whoſe Wife was a Native of this Iſland; and by the name of *Jus Ciprium*, the Priviledge or Exemption of the *Cyprian* Church, tranſmitted to the Prelates of ſucceeding times. Which notwithſtanding, they continued in good correſpondence with the Eaſtern Churches of the *Greek Communion*, and officiated all Divine Acts after the Rites and Forms thereof, till the *Venetians* became Lords of it, who brought in the *Latin* Service into ſome of their Churches, and appointed Biſhops and other Miniſters of the *Papal* party, for execution of the ſame. And for the Government of theſe Churches, they had at firſt fourteen Biſhops and Archbiſhops; to gratifie Queen *Alice*, (who had a mind to enrich her friends with ſome of the Spoils of them) reduced by *Innocent* the third to four only, that is to ſay, the Archbiſhoprick of *Nicoſia*, the Biſhopricks of *Famaguſta*, *Paphos*, and *Amathus*; but each See furniſhed with two Prelates, the one for the *Greeks*, the other for the *Latins*: of which the Biſhops for the *Latins* have all the Lands, and Annual *Revenues* which of right belong to thoſe Cathedrals; the *Greek* Biſhops living upon Stipends, levied on the Prieſts and Deacons of their Juriſdiction.

Rivers, as formerly was ſaid, here are very few; and of thoſe few, the principal are called *Lycus* and *Lapithus*; the firſt running towards the South, the laſt towards the North; both not ſeldom ſo dried up, that they leave their empty Channels without any water. Both alſo have their Source from the Hill *Olympus* (the higheſt Mountain of the Iſland) garniſhed with Trees and Fruits of all ſorts; in compaſs about eighteen Leagues (which make four and fifty *Italian* miles) and at the end of every League a Monaſtery of *Greek Monks*, or *Caloires*, and a Fountain of freſh water for the uſe of the Houſe. Here are alſo two other little Rivers, the one called 3 *Bodeus*, the other 4 *Tolius*; but of the ſame nature as the former.

By *Ptolomy*, or in his time, divided into four parts or Provinces; but ſince it fell into the hands of the *Luſignian* Family, diſtributed into twelve Counties or *Cantredes*; moſt of them called by the names of their principal Towns: *viz.* 1 *Nicoſia*. 2 *Famaguſta*. 3 *Paphia*. 4 *Audima*. 5 *Limiſſa*. 6 *Maſorum*. 7 *Salines*. 8 *Meſſoria*. 9 *Cruſocus*. 10 *Pentalia*. 11 *Carpaſſus*. 12 *Cerines*. The whole containing, beſides theſe Cities and great Towns, 805 Villages or thereabouts, which they called *Caſales*, whereof the one half anciently belonged unto the *Crown*, the other half divided betwixt the *Lay-Nobility*, and the *Eccleſiaſticks*; the Patrimony of theſe laſt being computed at 80000 Crowns of Annual Rents, beſides Caſualties, and the Vails of the Altar. But becauſe the tracing out of theſe *Cantredes* will be very difficult (as a way which none have gone before me) I will adhere to the diviſion made hereof in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of 1 *Paphia*, 2 *Amathyſia*, 3 *Lapethia*, and 4 *Salamine*.

1 *PAPHIA* ſo called of *Paphos* the chief Town thereof, taketh up the Weſt part of the Iſland; in which the Towns of moſt importance and obſervation are, 1 *Paphos*, on the Sea-ſide, by *Pliny* called *Palæpaphos*, or old *Paphus*, Built, as ſome ſay, by *Cyniras*, the Father of *Myrrha*, and ſo named in memory of *Paphus* his Father; but, as others ſay, by *Paphos*, the ſon of *Pygmalion*, King of *Phœnicia* and *Cyprus*: to which laſt *Ovid* doth agree, who ſpeaking of *Pygmalions*'s Statue, turned into a Woman by the power of *Venus* (or rather of his beautiful Wife, fabled, for the ſurpaſſing whiteneſs of her skin, to be made of *Ivory*) he adds this of her,

Illa Paphium *genuit de quo tenet inſula nomen.*
She *Paphus* bare, from whom the name
Of *Paphia* to the Iſland came.

Here *Venus* had her ſo much celebrated Temple, hence the name of *Paphia*; and here her *Votaries* of both Sexes in their natural nakedneſs, did perform her Sacrifices. Both Town and Temple ruined by a fearful *Earthquake*; or as the *Legends* have it, by the prayers of St. *Barnabas*; the ruines of it ſtill remaining. 2 *Paphos Nova*, or *New Paphos*, now called *Baffo*, five miles from the old, built by *Agapenor*, one of the Nephews of *Lycurgus* the *Spartan* Law-giver, after the Sack of *Troy* forced hither by a violent Tempeſt; conſecrate to the ſame impure Goddeſs, and much frequented, but without injury to the other; thoſe which here offered not thinking they had done her ſufficient ſervice, unleſs they went in a ſolemn manner of Proceſſion, and paid their Vows alſo at the other. 3 *Arſinoe*, ſituate betwixt both; built by, or called ſo in honour of *Arſinoe*, daughter of *Ptolomy* the firſt King of *Ægypt*, and Lord of *Cyprus*, of that Houſe. 4 *Drepanum*, now called *Trepano*, under the Promontory ſo named, a well-traded Port, but miſerably defaced by the *Turks*, when they took this Iſland. 5 *Connelia*, one of the richeſt of the Iſland, by reaſon of the plenty of Sugar and Cotton-wooll, growing thereabout. Built in the place of 6 *Citbera*, dedicated to *Venus* alſo, but differing from the Iſland of that name in the *Ægean* Sea, rather in pronun-

pronunciation than the purity of her oblations; the laſt ſyllable ſave one, in the name of that Iſland, being ſhort in verſe, but this of *Cyprus* ſounding long, as in this of *Virgil*,

Eſt Amathus, *eſt celſa mihi* Paphos, *atque* Cithera.
Cithera, *Amathus* divine,
And lofty *Paphos* are all mine.

2 On the South-Eaſt of *Paphia* lieth the Province or *Diſtrict* of *AMATHYSIA*, taking up the South-parts of the Iſland which look towards *Ægypt*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Amathus*, giving name unto this diviſion, then of moſt note, and much frequented for the annual ſacrifices made unto *Adonis* the darling of *Venus*, who had here another of her Temples: the ruines of both hardly now diſcerned. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Amaſis*, King of *Ægypt*, when he conquered this Iſland; but as others ſay by ſome of the *Anathites*, deſcended from *Anath* one of the ſons of *Canaan*. 2 *Cetium*, or *Citium*, (for I find it called by both names) the birth-place of *Zeno* the *Stoick*, hence called Κιτιεὺς, or *Citienſis*; and memorable for the death of *Simon* the *Athenian* General. A Town whereing the memory of *Cittim*, the ſon of *Javan*, is moſt anciently preſerved. 3 *Epiſcopio*, one of the chief of all the Iſland, built on the place, or out of the decay of 4 *Curias*, not far from the Promontory of the ſame name, founded by the *Argives*, where *Apollo* had both a Grove and a Temple, by the name of *Apollo Hylates*: his Altars in thoſe times held ſo ſacred, that whoſoever preſumed to touch them, was thrown into the Sea from the Promontory or rocks adjoyning. 5 *Salines*, or *Salinæ*, ſo called from the rich Saltpits; one of the chief Towns of this part, and giving name to one of thoſe twelve *Cantredes*, into which the whole is now divided.

3 *LAPETHIA*, the third part of the Iſland, lyeth on the North thereof, oppoſite to *Cilicia* in *Aſia Minor*. Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Nicoſia*, the Regal City of the Kings, the See of the Archbiſhop, and the chief of the Iſland: anciently called *Ledronſis*, and *Lentainis*; but thoſe names long ago laid by. Situate in the middeſt of the Iſle, and in a plain and champain Country abundantly fertile and delightful. Environed with a fair wall, ſo exactly round as if it had been drawn with a pair of Compaſſes; in circuit about five miles, and both for ſituation, numbers of people, and magnificent buildings of all ſorts both publick and private, compared by ſome to the moſt beautiful City of *Florence*. Fortified by the *Venetians*, when in their poſſeſſion, with new walls, deep diches, and eleven ſtrong Bulwarks, with three great Out-works, all of them built according to the Art of modern Fortification. But notwithſtanding all theſe works, and the help of 250 pieces of Cannon planted on the walls, and about the City, it was by the *Turks* taken at the ſecond or third aſſault, *Septemb.* 9. *Anno* 1570. So evident a truth it is, that Fortifications are more ſtrengthened by the gallantry and courage of the Defendants, than the Defendants are by their Fortifications. 2 *Cerines*, ſituate near the Sea, ſtrong by Art and Nature, and furniſhed with all things neceſſary to endure a Siege; but yielded to the *Turks* by *Alphonſus Palacius* the unwarlike Governour, terrified with the great ſlaughter made at the ſack of *Nicoſia*, before the Enemy came near it. At firſt called *Ceurania*, and ſaid to have been built by *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* King, when he firſt ſubdued the nine Kings hereof, and united the Iſland to that Crown; bleſt with a more temperate and wholeſome air, than any other in the Country. 3 *Tremitus*, the birth-place of *Spiridion*, a Biſhop of the *Primitive* times, renowned for miracles; many of which reported by *Sozomen*, *lib.* 1. *chap.* 10. and other *Eccleſiatical* Writers. Wholly decayed, the ruine of it much contributing to the riſe of *Nicoſia*. 4 *Lapithus* (by *Pliny* called *Lapeto*) on the banks of a ſmall Riveret of that name, of ſo great note in former times, that it gave to this Diviſion the name of *Lapethia*, in that part ſtandeth the hill *Olympus*; (now the Mountain of the *holy Croſs*) deſcribed before.

4 *SALAMINE*, the fourth and laſt Province of this Iſland, taketh up the whole Eaſt-parts hereof: So named from 1 *Salamis*, once the chief City of the Iſle, and the See of the *Primate*, or *Metropolitan* hereof in the *Primitive* times. Deſtroyed by the *Jews* in the reign of *Trajan*, and re-built again; but being after that taken, ſacked, and razed unto the ground by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Heraclius*, it never could again recover: the *Metropolitan* See after that ſubverſion, being removed to *Nicoſia*. It was ſometimes, and by ſome Writers, called *Conſtantia* alſo; but that name could give it no more perpetuity than the other of *Salamis*. Memorable whilſt it ſtood for the founder of it, being *Teucer* the ſon of *Telamon* King of *Salamis*, an Iſle of the *Ægean* Sea; baniſhed his Country by his Father, and ſettled in this Iſland by the power of *Belus*, King of *Phœnicia*: as alſo for a famous Temple ſacred unto *Jupiter*, hence called *Salaminius*. Out of the ruines hereof aroſe, 2 *Famaguſta*, now the prime City of theſe parts; built as is ſaid by *Coſta*, the Father of St. *Catharine*; but that uncertain. Situate at the Eaſt end of the Iſland, in a plain and low ground betwixt two Promontories, the one called the *Cape* of St. *Andrew*, and the other *Capo di Griego*, or the head of *Græcia*. In compaſs not above two miles, in form four-ſquare, but that the ſide towards the Eaſt ſtretcheth out more in length than the other three. On two parts beaten on with the Sea, the other parts towards the Land defended with a Ditch not above fifteen foot in breadth, an old ſtone wall, and certain Bulwarks. The Haven (oppoſite to *Tripolis*, a Town of *Syria*) openeth towards the South-eaſt, defended from the injury of the Sea by two great Rocks, betwixt which the Sea commeth in at a narrow paſſage not above forty paces broad, but after opening wider and wider; maketh a convenient Harbour, rather ſafe than large, aſſured both by the difficult entrance, and a chain croſſed over it. The whole Town, when the *Turks* appeared before it, but meanly fortified; the works of it of the old faſhion, generally decayed except one Bulwark, which was but according to the modern Arts of Fortification, with *Paliſadoes*, Curtains, Caſemates, and all other Additaments: moſt gallantly defended by *Bragadine* the noble General, to the wonder and envy of the *Turks*, who ſpent no leſs than 118000 great ſhot upon it; and at laſt yielded upon honourable terms, had they been as punctually performed. 3 *Aphrodiſium*, ſo named of *Venus*, whom the *Greeks* called *Aphrodite*, who had here another of her Temples. 4 *Arſione*, built alſo by one of the *Arſiones* Queens of *Ægypt* there being two others of this name, and the ſame foundation, now called *Leſcare*, and anciently renowned for the Groves of *Jupiter*, 5 *Tamaſſus*, of good note in the time of *Strabo* for rich mines of Braſs, as afterwards for abundance of *Verdegreece* and *Vitriol* found plentifully in the fields adjoyning. 6 *Idalium*, near a Mount of the ſame name, ſo called by accident. For *Chalcenor* the founder of it being told by the *Oracle*, that he ſhould ſeat himſelf, and build a City, where he firſt ſaw the riſing Sun: one of his followers, ſeeing the Sun begin to riſe, cried out Ἴδε ἥλιον, that is to ſay, *Behold the Sun*. Which *Omen* taken by *Chalcenor*, he here built this City. But whether this were ſo or not (as for my part I build not very much upon it) certain it is, that *Venus* had here another Temple, neighboured by the *Idalian Groves*, ſo memorized and chanted by the Ancient Poets. So ſtrong

an

an influence had luſt and ſenſuality on this wretched People, that every corner of the Iſland was defiled with thoſe brutiſh Sacrifices, which day by day were offered to that impure deitie: though to ſay truth, it was no marvel if having made their *Belly their God*, they made in the next place their *glory their ſhame*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Iſland were the poſterity of *Cittim* the ſon of *Javan*, and grand-ſon of *Japhet*: who having ſeen his brother *Tarſhiſh* ſettled in *Cilicia*, (where his memory is ſtill preſerved in the City of *Tarſus*) planted himſelf and his retinue in this oppoſite Iſland. The City of *Cetium*, as *Ptolomy*, or *Citium*, as *Pliny* calleth it, one of the ancienteſt of the Iſland; taking name from him: which with the authority of *Joſephus*, and others of the ancient Writers, put it out of queſtion. But being this Iſland was too narrow to contain his numbers, and willing to ſeek further off for a larger dwelling, he left here ſo many of his followers as might ſerve in time to plant the Country; and with the reſt paſſed into *Macedon*, where we have already ſpoken of him. Made tributary firſt to *Amaſis* King of *Ægypt*, from which diſtant about three or four daies ſayling. Subjected afterwards to the *Phœnicians*, a near neighbour to them, who being a Sea-faring people, made themſelves Maſters of the Sea-coaſts and maritime places. *Cinyras* the Father of *Myrrha*, (by whom both Father and Grand-Father to *Adonis*) is ſaid to have been King of both. The like affirmed of *Belus* one of his Succeſſors, who is ſaid to have been the founder of the City of *Citium*, named ſo (if not rather repaired than new built by him,) with reference no doubt to *Cittim*, the firſt Progenitor of this People. By the power and favour of this *Belus*, *Teucer*, the ſon of *Telamon*, baniſhed his Country, accompanied with many followers from *Salamis*, *Athens*, and *Arcadia*, was ſettled in the Eaſt parts hereof; where the City of *Salamis*, by him built, was his firſt Plantation. Yet ſo that the *Phœnicians* kept their former hold: it being evident in Story that *Elulæus* one of the Succeſſors of this *Belus*, (but a King of *Tyre*,) and a Co-temporary with *Salmanaſſar* King of *Aſſyria*, paſſed over into *Cyprus* with a puiſſant Navy to reduce the *Citiæans* to obedience, who had then rebelled. The Iſland at firſt coming of *Teucer* hither ſo infinitely overgrown with woods, that the people were not able to till the Iſland. Inſomuch, that notwithſtanding the great waſte made of them, both in building ſhips, and caſting metals, a Law was made that every one which would ſhould fell them, and take as much ground in ſeveralty for his own inheritance, as he could overcome and make fit for tillage. Encouraged herewith, the natural *Cypriots*, together with the Colonies of *Grecians*, *Phœnicians*, *Ægyptians*, ſo beſtirred themſelves, that at laſt they brought it unto *Champagn*: parcelled out in ſucceeding times, amongſt nine Kings, for ſo many *Cyrus* the great *Perſian* Monarch found at his coming hither. But *Cyrus*, though he did ſubdue all thoſe petit Princes, yet he took not from them their Eſtates or Titles: contented with the conqueſt of it, and an annual tribute. For after this, in the time of *Artaxerxes Mnemon*, we find *Evagoras*, and *Nicocles*, to whom *Iſocrates* inſcribed two of his Orations, to be Kings hereof. And in the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, *Citium* it ſelf (ſuch was the honour born unto the Mother-City) had a King apart, not ſubject unto any other. The King whereof to indear himſelf with the Conquerour, gave to him a ſword, μαχαίραν δαυμασὴν, ſaith *Plutarch*, an admirable ſword, both for colour and lightneſs, which he after uſed in all his fights. And after the death of *Alexander*, his great Commanders cantoning his eſtates amongſt them, the Princes and People of this Iſland were in great diſtractions, not knowing to whom they might ſubmit for their beſt advantage. But *Ptolomy*, who had ſeized on *Ægypt* for his part of the ſpoil, being ſtrong in ſhipping, ſettled them by a perſonal viſit; and fortifying ſome of the beſt pieces in it, aſſured the Country to himſelf. To him and his poſterity it continued ſubject till the time of *Ptolomy Auletes*, the ninth King of this Line in our Accompt, who gave it for a portion to one of his Brethren: in whoſe time, the *Romans*, without any colour or pretence of quarrel, but only to enrich themſelves with the ſpoil of the Iſland, ſent *Portius Cato* to ſubdue it. Aud he at firſt aſſayed to get it with the Kings concent, offering him in the name of the *Roman* Senate, the Prieſt-hood of the Temple of *Paphos*, being a rich and gainful Office, and of high eſteem among that people. But when *Ptolomy* for fear of worſe miſchief had made away himſelf by poyſon, *Cato* without more ceremonie takes poſſeſſion of it. And becauſe *Ammianus Marcellinus* the Hiſtorian, hath ſo ſignificantly expreſſed this buſineſs, and withal deſcribed ſo punctually the Eſtate of this Iſland; we will add this diſcourſe from him, though ſomewhat be repeated which was ſaid before. *Cyprum inſulam procul à Continente diſtantem, & portuoſam*, &c. "The Iſle of *Cyprus*, far diſtant from "the Continent, and well ſtored with *Harbours*, is fa- "mous, beſides many *Municipal* Towns, for two princi- "pal Cities, that is to ſay, *Salamis*, and *Paphos*; the one "ſacred to *Jupiter*, and the other to *Venus*. An Iſle ſo "admirably fruitful, and with all things furniſhed, that "without the help of any forein Nation, it is able of it "ſelf to build and rig forth a ſhip, from the very keel un- "to the top-ſail, and trim it with all tackle neceſſary for "a preſent voyage. Nor do I ſhame to ſay, that with "greater Avarice than Juſtice, the *Romans* did invade "this Iſland, King *Ptolomy*, our old Confederate and "Ally, being unworthily proſcribed, for no other reaſon, "but that our Treaſury was bare, our *Exchequer* empty. "And he no ſooner had prevented this diſhonour by a "quick and voluntary death, making away himſelf by "poyſon, but the Iſland was forthwith made tributary, "and the riches of it, *Velut hoſtiles exuviæ claſſi impoſitæ & in urbem adductæ per Catonem*, as the ſpoils of "ſome conquered enemy, were brought on Ship-board, "and conveyed by *Cato* unto *Rome*. So far, and to this purpoſe he.

I know there is another cauſe alledged for the ſending of *Cato* on this Errand, *viz.* that *Clodius* who was then *Tribune*, and ſped the *Edict*, might have opportunity by his abſence to revenge himſelf on *Cicero*, and ſome others of the oppoſite faction: but the main buſineſs was the money, as before was ſaid; the prey amounting to 7000 Talents, which comes to two Millions, and one hundred thouſand Crowns of Coin now currant, Which mony and movables, amounting unto ſo vaſt a ſum, he fearing to loſe by Sea, divided it into many ſmall portions, which he put into ſeveral boxes, *viz.* in every Box two *Talents* and fifty *Drachms*. At the end of every Box he faſtned a long rope with a piece of Cork; by which, floating above the water, the money, if by Shipwrack loſt, might be eſpied again: which was not much unlike the *buoys* which Mariners faſten by long ropes to their Anchors, that they may be ſooner found. We ſee by this, that the pretence of the *Romans* to this Country was very weak: *Avariùs magis quàm juſtiùs ſumus aſſecuti*, are the words of *Sextus Rufus* alſo. But being made a *Roman* Province, it was in the diviſion of the Empire aſſigned to the *Conſtantinopolitan* Emperours; under whom it ſuffered, as all other parts of the Empire did by the violent invaſion of the *Saracens*, who ſpoiled and ranſacked it in the time of *Conſtance* the ſecond, deſtroying then the City of *Salamis* or *Conſtantia*. But that tempeſt being

being overblown, they returned again unto that Empire, governed by a succession of Dukes, till the year 1184. At which time *Andronicus Comnenus* usurping the *Greek* Empire, compelled *Isaacius Comnenus*, one of the bloud Royal, to shift for himself: who seizing on this Island made himself King thereof, and ruling till the year 1191. when *Richard* the first of *England*, being denied the common courtesie of taking in fresh water, and seeing his Souldiers abused by the *Cypriots*, not only took the King Prisoner, but subdued the whole Island. And as *Paterculus* telleth us, that when *Marcus Antonius* had captivated *Artamasdes* King of *Armenia*, *Catenis, sed ne quid honori deesset, aureis vinxit*; So did our *Richard* keep a *Decorum* towards this Prisoner, binding him not in bonds of Iron, but Silver. King *Richard* having thus possessed himself of this Country, sold it for ready money, (which for the managing of his intended wars against the *Turks*, he most needed) unto the Templers: and taking it, upon I know not what discontent, again from them, he bestowed it on *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the titular and miserable King of *Hierusalem*; receiving in way of exchange, the title of that lost and shipwracked Kingdom; with which title he and some of his Successors for a time were honoured.

In the posterity of this *Guy*, this Island continued free and absolute, till the year one thousand four hundred twenty three; when *Melechella* (or *Melechnasar*) Sultan of *Ægypt*, invaded this Country, took *John* King hereof Prisoner, ransomed him for 150000 Sultanies, restored him to his Kingdom, and imposed on him and his Successors, the yearly tribute of 40000 Crowns. This *John* was father to another *John*, whose two children were *Carlotte* a legitimate Daughter, and *James* a bastard Son. *James* after the death of his father, dispossessed his sister *Carlotte* of the Crown, by the consent and help of the *Sultan* of *Ægypt*; and the better to strengthen himself against all opposition, he took to wife *Catharine Cornari*, daughter by adoption to the *Venetian Senat*: whom at his death he made his heir, if the child she went withal (having then none by her) should dye without issue, as it did, not long after it was born; and she seeing the factious Nobility too head-strong to be bridled by a female authority, like a good child resigned her Crown and Scepter to the *Venetian State*, *Anno* 1473. These defended it against all claims, (paying only as tribute to the *Ægyptian*, and after to the *Turkish Sultans*, the 40000 Crowns before mentioned) till the year 1570. when *Mustapha*, General of the *Turks*, wrested it from the *Venetians*, to the use of his Master *Selimus* the second, who pretended title to it as Lord of *Ægypt*. The Governour of the *Venetian* Forces at the time of this unfortunate loss was *Signior Bragadino*, who as long as hope of succours, means of resistance, or possibility of prevailing continued, with incredible valour made good the Town of *Famagusta*, in whose defence consisted the welfare of the whole Island. At last he yielded it on honourable conditions, had they been as faithfully kept, as punctually agreed on. But *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General inviting to his Tent the principal men of worth in the Town, caused them all to be murdered: and as for *Bragadin* himself, he commanded his ears to be cut off, his body to be flead alive, and his skin stuffed with straw, to be hanged at the main-yard of his Gally. The chief of the prisoners and spoils were in two tall ships, and one Gallion sent unto *Selimus*; but he never saw them. For a Noble *Cyprian* Lady, destinated to the lust of the *Grand Seigneur*, fired certain barrels of powder; by the violence whereof both the vessels and the booty in them, were in part burned, in part drowned. A famous and heroick act; inferiour unto none of the *Roman Dames*, so much commended in their Stories, though more to be commended in a *Roman* than a *Christian* Lady.

Thus having summed up the affairs of this Island from the first plantation of it, till this last said conquest, I will lay down the succession of the *Cyprian* Kings of the Noble *Lusignan* Family, in this ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of *CYPRUS*.

1 *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the titular King of *Hierusalem*, estated in the Kingdom of *Cyprus*, by *Richard* the first of *England*.
2 *Almericus*, the brother of *Guy*.
3 *Hugh*, the son of *Almericus*.
4 *Henry*, the son of *Hugh*.
5 *Hugh* II. son of *Henry*.
6 *Hugh* III. son of *Hugh* the second.
7 *John*, son of *Hugh* the third.
8 *Henry* II. the brother of *John*.
9 *Hugh* IV. son of *Guido*, the younger brother of *John*, and *Henry* the second.
10 *Peter*, the son of *Hugh* the fourth.
11 *Petrinus*, the son of *Peter*.
12 *James*, younger brother of *Peter*, and Uncle to *Petrinus*.
13 *Janus*, the son of *James*, made Tributary by *Melechnaser*, to the Kingdom of *Ægypt*.
14 *John* II. the son of *Janus*.
15 *Carlotte*, sole daughter and heir of *John* the second, first married to *John* the Prince of *Portugal*, and after to *Lewis* Prince of *Savoy*; outed of her Estate and Kingdom, by
16 *James* II. the bastard son of *John* the second, who by a strong hand seized upon it, and by help of the *Venetians* kept it during life.
17 *James* III. born after the decease of his father, whom he survived not very long. After whose death, being the last of this Family, the *Venetians* possessed themselves of *Cyprus*: which they invaded with no better title, than the *Romans* had done in former times; not likely to be blest with a long fruition, of that which they had so unjustly got into their hands. But of that already.

And here is to be observed, that these *Cyprian* Kings retaining the title of *Hierusalem* (towards which they sometimes cast an eye) bestowed upon their greatest Subjects, and deserving Servitors, both titles of honour and Offices of State, belonging anciently to that Kingdom. So that we find amongst them a Prince of *Antioch*, a Prince of *Galilee*, a Count of *Tripoli*, a Lord of *Cæsarea*, and a Lord of Mount *Tabor*; a Seneschal of *Hierusalem*, a Constable, Marshal, and High-Chamberlain of that Kingdom also. With better reason, though no doubt with as little profit, as the Pope gives Bishopricks and Archbishopricks in *Greece*, or *Ægypt*. But those titular Offices are now quite extinct, though possibly some of the Titles of honour which were took from thence, may be still remaining.

But to return unto the *Turks*, having thus taken *Famagusta* and *Nicosia*, on which the whole Island did depend, all other Cities of it, and the whole by consequence, were forced to submit to the *Turkish* Tyranny. The Noblemen, and Citizens of principal quality, either most cruelly massacred in the Sack of those Towns, or banished for ever their Native Country, as men whose living there might possibly endanger their new Conquest. But the Country people, Artificers, and Perso[ns]

ſons of inferiour rank, permited to enjoy both their Lives and Livelihoods, together with their ſeveral and reſpective Religions, in the ſame manner as before: paying ſuch ordinary Taxes as were laid upon them And ſo this goodly Iſland came into the hands of the *Turks*, who have hitherto enjoyed the poſſeſſion of it: For notwiſtanding that the *Venetians* in the year next following, with the help of the Pope and King of *Spain*, gave the *Turks* that great and memorable overthrow, at the famous Battel of *Lepanto*; yet did they nothing, in purſuit of ſo great a Victory, for the recovery of this Iſland: and indeed they could not, the Confederates returning home, and diſſolving their Fleet, as ſoon as they had ſecured their own Eſtates by the overthrow of the *Turkiſh* Navy. And though the *Venetians*, to put the beſt face they could on ſo great a loſs, ſo highly pleaſed themſelves with the following Victory, that they put the ſame in ballance with the loſs of *Cyprus*; yet an ingenious *Turk*, to let them ſee the folly of ſo vain a boaſting, compared the loſing of *Cyprus* to the loſs of an Arm, which could not without a Miracle be recovered; and the loſs at *Lepanto*, to the ſhaving off of ones beard, which grows the thicker for the cutting, as indeed it proved. For the next year the *Turks* armed out another Navy, no leſs formidable than the other had been before; braving therewith the whole Chriſtian Forces, either not then disbanded, or reaſſembled.

What the Revenues of it were to the Kings hereof, I cannot certainly determine. The profits of Salt only, and that of the Cuſtom-houſe, yielded yearly to the Seigneury of *Venice*, when it was in their hands, a million of Crowns. For the Cuſtoms and Profits of the Salt were farmed for 500000 Crowns *per Annum*, which being turned into the chief *Cyprian* Commodities, were counted double worth that money, when unladed at *Venice*. To which if we ſhould add the Lands of the former Kings, and other ways of raiſing Money on the Subject, I cannot ſee, but the *Intrado* of the Crown muſt needs amount conſtantly to a Million and a half yearly, if it were not more.

The Arms hereof were quarterly, firſt *Argent*, a Croſs *Potent* between four Croſſes *Or*; ſecondly Barre-wiſe of eight pieces, *Arg.* and *Azure*, ſupporting a Lion Paſſant *Azure*, Crowned *Or*; thirdly, a Lion *Gules*; and fourthly, *Argent*, a Lion *Gules*; as *Bara* a *French* Herald hath given the Blazon.

On the Eaſt of *Cyprus* towards *Syria* lie four ſmall Iſlands, which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Clides*, not far from the Promontory of that name; both Promontory and Iſland now called St. *Andrews*: and towards the Weſt another little knot of Iſlets, which he calls *Carpaſiæ*; but nothing memorable in either. So I paſs them over.

There are in *Cyprus*,

Archbiſhops 2. Biſhops 6.

And ſo much for *CYPRUS*.

OF SYRIA.

SYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Meſopotamia*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Cilicia* and *Armenia Minor*, from the laſt parted by Mount *Taurus*; and on the South, with *Paleſtine*, and ſome parts of *Arabia*. The length hereof, from Mount *Taurus* to the edge of *Arabia*, is ſaid to be five hundred twenty and five miles; the breadth, from the *Mediterranean* to the River *Euphrates*, computed at four hundred and ſeventy, drawing ſomewhat near unto a ſquare.

In the Scripture it is called *Aram*, and the People *Aramites*, becauſe firſt peopled and poſſeſſed by *Aram* the Son of *Sem*; though *Hamath*, *Arphad*, and *Sidon*, the Sons of *Canaan*, did alſo put in for a ſhare; and yet not called thus by the Scriptures only, but by ſome of the Heathen Writers alſo: For *Strabo* doth not only acknowledge, that the *Syrians* in his time were called Ἀραμαῖοι, but citeth *Poſſidonius*, a more ancient Writer, for proof that the Σύριοι, which *Homer* ſpeaketh of, muſt be thoſe *Syrians*: further averring, that the *Syrians* called themſelves by the name of *Aramæi*, or plainly *Aramites*. But by the *Greeks* they are called *Syrians*, *Surians*, from the City *Tyre*, called anciently by the name of *Sur*, or *Tſur* (of which more hereafter:) either becauſe the *Tyrians* or *Tſurians*, had in thoſe times the command of the Sea-coaſts of this Country; or elſe that *Tyre* or *Tſer* being the chief Mart-Town of all thoſe parts, was the place where they traded with theſe *Aramites*. Conforming to which ancient Appellations, the City of *Tyre* is again called *Sur*, and this Country *Soria*. Others conceive, that being when the *Greeks* firſt knew it, a part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, the Seat of which was then at *Ninive*, it was called *Syria* for *Aſſyria*; as afterwards *Aſſyria* had the name of *Syria* (of which more anon) when the Seat of that great Empire was removed to *Antioch*. And this may very well be ſo, conſidering that by the like decurtation we have turned *Hiſpania* into *Spain*, as the *Greeks* before us did into *Spania*, by which name it occurs, *Rom.* 15. 28.

But here we are to underſtand, that though the *Syria* of the *Romans*, as it was a member of that Empire, was limited within the bounds before laid down, yet anciently as well the *Aram* of the *Hebrews*, as the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, was of greater Latitude: of which, becauſe it may be uſeful to the underſtanding of *holy Scriptures*, and of ſome *Claſſick* Authors alſo, I ſhall enlarge a little further. For *Aram*, taken in the largeſt acceptation of it, extendeth from the coaſt of *Cilicia*, North,

North, to *Idumæa* towards the South; from the River *Tygris* in the East, to the *Mediterranean* Sea upon the West; containing besides the *Syria* of the *Greeks* and *Romans* (in which *Palestine* also was included) *Arabia* the *Deserti*, and *Petræa*, *Chaldæa*, *Babylonia*, and all those Provinces to which the name *Aram* is either prefixed or subjoyned in the Book of God, as *Aram-Naharaim*, *Aram-Sobah*, *Padan-Aram*, *Aram-Maachah*, *Sede-Aram*, *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, all mentioned in the Holy Scriptures. Some do extend it further yet, and do not only bring *Armenia* within the Latitude of this name, which they derive from *Aram-minni*, whose neighbourhood to *Syria* may give some colour to the errour; but even those People of *Cappadocia* bordering on the *Euxine* Sea, the Inhabitants of which were anciently called *Leuco-Syri*, or *White Syrians*. But this not having any good warrant or authority wherewithal to back it, shall not come under the compass of this consideration. But for the rest, I find it generally agreed upon amongst the Learned, that *Aram-Naharaiim*, is the same with the whole Country of *Mesopotamia*, so named both by the *Jews* and *Græcians*, because it is environed with the two famous Rivers of *Tygris* and *Euphrates*, which *Priscian* by a meer *Latin* name, would have to be called *Medamna* (but *Inter-Amna* by his leave would express it better.) And as for *Padan-Aram* wherein *Laban* dwelt, which is called *Sede-Aram* by the Prophet *Hosea*, *ch.* 12. *ver.* 13. that is a part only of the other; the whole Country of *Aram-Naharaiim*, or *Mesopotamia*, being divided into two parts, whereof the more fruitful lying Northward, is called *Padan-Aram*, or *Sede-Aram*, to whose Inhabitants *Xenophon* gives the name of *Syrians*; the barren and most desart lying towards the South, which by the same Author is called *Arabia*. For *Aram-Maachah*, mentioned 1 *Chron.* 19. 6. it is conceived to be that part of *Syria* which was after named *Comagena*, whereof *Samosata* was the *Metropolis*, or Mother-City. And as for *Aram-Sobah*, of which, and of *Adadezar* the King thereof, there is so frequent mention in the Books of the *Kings* and *Chronicles*, it was the Province lying on the North-East of *Damascus*, and so extending to the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, and is the same with that which afterwards was called *Palmyrena*, from the City of *Palmyra*. South-West of which, amongst the petty Kingdoms on the North of *Gessur* in the Land of *Palestine*, lay the Kingdom of *Aram-Beth-Rehob*, confederate with *Ammon* in the War which they had with *David*, 2 *Sam.* 10. 6. Nor did the *Greeks* less extend the name of *Syria*, than the *Hebrews* did the name of *Aram*, if they stretched it not further. Certain I am, that *Strabo* comprehendeth the *Assyrians* in the name of *Syria*, where he affirmeth, that the *Medes* over-ruled all *Asia* καλανσασα τλω τῶν Συρων ἀρχλω. the Empire of the *Syrians* (he meaneth the *Assyrians*) being overthrown. And in *Herodotus* it is said, that those whom the *Barbarians* call *Assyrians*, ὑπὸ μὲν Ἑλλήνων ἐκαλέοντο Σύριοι, were called *Syrians* by the *Greeks*. And to that purpose *Justine* also, *Imperium* Assyrii, *qui postea* Syri *dicti sunt*, *Annos* 1300 *tenuere*. But these all writ after the time that *Seleucus* and his Race had the possession of the Eastern Empire; who living for the most part in *Syria*, from whence they might more easily furnish themselves with Souldiers out of *Greece* (as they did most commonly for all their Military Expeditions) caused all the other parts of their large Dominions to be called, in tract of time, by the name of *Syria*. But on the other side, as the *Syria* of the *Romans* extended not so far to the East and South, as the *Aram* of the *Hebrews* did; so it contained some other Regions, that is to say, those of *Phœnicia* and *Palestine*, which were not comprehended in the name of *Aram*, as being planted by a People of another Race, and of different Fortunes, till brought together under the command of the *Babylonians*. In which regard we will treat severally of the natures of the Soil and People, their Originals, Government, and Successes, till we have brought them into one hand, and then continue their Affairs as one joint Estate. But first we will survey the ancient and present Fortunes of Christianity, and other Religions herein embraced or tolerated, wherein the whole, according to the bounds and limits before laid down, is alike concerned.

And for Religions in this Country, here is choice enough; those namely of the *Mahometan*, *Christian*, *Pagan*, and one compounded out of all, which is that of the *Drusians*. The *Mahometan* embraced by the generality of the People throughout the whole, and by all that be in any Office or Authority, is only countenanced and approved of, though all the rest be tolerated. The *Pagan* entertained only in the mountainous Countries bordering on *Armenia*, inhabited by a People whom they called *Curdi*, or the *Curdenes*, supposed to be descended from the ancient *Parthians*, as being very expert in Bows and Arrows, their most usual Arms. A Race of People who are said to worship alike both God and the Devil; the one, that they may receive benefits from him; the other, that he may not hurt them. *Se alios deos colere ut prosint, alios ne noceant*, as *Lactantius* doth affirm of the ancient *Græcians*. But their principal Devotions are addressed to the Devil only, and that upon good reasons, as themselves conceive. For God, they say, is a good man, and will do no body no harm; but the Devil is a mischievous fellow, and must be pleased with Sacrifices, that he hurt them not. And for the *Drusians*, they are conceived to be the remainder of those *Franks* (by which name the *Turks* call all Western *Christians*) who driven unto the Mountains (when they lost the Sovereignty and Possession of the *Holy Land*) and defending themselves by the advantage of the place, could never be wholly rooted out by the *Turks*, contented at the length to afford them both peace, and liberty of their Religion. But they have so forgot the Principles of that Religion, that they retain nothing of it but *Baptism*, and not that generally neither; accounting it lawful most unlawfully to marry their own Daughters, Sisters, or Mothers: and yet conform unto the *Turks* in their Habit only, wearing the white *Turbant*, as the *Turks* do; but abhorring Circumcision, and indulging to themselves the liberty of Wine, by Law forbidden to the *Turks*. A people otherwise very warlike, stout, and resolute; with great both constancy and courage, relisting hitherto the attempts of the *Turkish* Sultans. The Country they possess environed with the Confines of *Joppa*, about *Cæsarea Palestinæ*, betwixt the Rivers of *Jordan* and *Orontes*, extending Eastwards as far as the Plains of *Damascus*; so that here is no part of *Syria*, except *Comagena*, unto which their Habitations reach not.

But for the *Christian* Faith, it was first preached here by some of the dispersed Brethren (which fled from the rage of persecution) in *Phœnice*, and the City of *Antiochia*; amongst whom St. *Peter*, *as he passed through all quarters*, Acts 9. 31. is by the Fathers said to have been the chief. The Church more fully planted in it by *Barnabas* first, after by *Paul* and *Barnabas* jointly; who spending there a whole year together, inlarged the Borders of the Church, and gained much People, as is said Acts 11. 19. &c. insomuch that *here the Disciples were first called Christians*, v. 26. Not called so accidentally, as a thing of chance, but on a serious consultation had

amongſt themſelvs, and a devout invocation on the name of God, to direct them in it. The word χρηματίσαι uſed in the Original, importeth ſomewhat of *Oracular* and *Divine* direction. And certainly it ſtandeth with reaſon that it ſhould be ſo. For if upon the giving of a name to *John Baptiſt*, there was not only a conſultation had of the Friends and Mother, but the dumb Father called to adviſe about it; and if we uſe not to admit the pooreſt child of the Pariſh into the Congregation of Chriſts Church by the door of *Baptiſm*, but by the joint invocation of the name of God for his bleſſings on it: with how much more regard of *Ceremony* and *Solemnity*, muſt we conceive that the whole body of Chriſts people were *baptiz'd* into the name of *Chriſtians*? And there is ſome proof of it too, beſides *probability* and *conjectures*. For *Suidas*, and before him *Johannes Antiochenus*, an old *Coſmographer*, do expreſly ſay, that in the days of *Claudius Cæſar*, ten years after the *Aſcenſion* of our Lord and Saviour, *Euodius* received Epiſcopal conſecration, and was made Patriarch of *Antioch* the *Great* in *Syria*, ſucceeding immediately to St. *Peter*: then addeth, that at that time the *Diſciples* were firſt called *Chriſtians*. Τῷ αὐτῷ Ἐπισκόπῳ Εὐοδίῳ προσομιλήσαντῳ αὐτοῖς, ἐπιθήσαντῳ αὐτοῖς τὸ ὄνομα τοῦτο, &c. *i.e. Euodius* their Biſhop calling them to a *Solemn Aſſembly*, and impoſing this new name upon them, whereas before they were called *Nazarites* and *Galilæans*. A people ſo hated by the *Heathen*, that they ceaſed not to ſlander them from the firſt beginning. *For as concerning this Sect, we know that it is every where ſpoken againſt*, ſaid the *Jews* of *Rome* to the Apoſtle, *Act.* 28. 22. *Tacitus*, a *Roman*, but a *Gentile*, goes yet further with them, calling them *Homines per flagitia inviſos, & noviſſima meritos exempla*: the calumny in his time being ſtrong and general, that at their private meetings they devoured Infants, and had carnal company with their Mothers and Siſters. Which defamations notwithſtanding, they grew in few years to ſo great numbers, that they were a terrour to their Enemies; though grievouſly afflicted, tortured, and put to ſeveral kinds of death, under the ten *Famous Perſecutions*, raiſed againſt them, by *Nero*, *Anno* 67. 2 *Domitian*, *Anno* 96. 3 *Trajanus*, *Anno* 110. 4 *Marcus Antoninus*, *Anno* 167. 5 *Severus*, *Anno* 195. 6 *Maximinus*, *Anno* 237. 7 *Decius*, *Anno* 250. 8 *Valerianus*, *Anno* 259. 9 *Aurelianus*, *Anno* 278. 10 By *Dioclesianus*, *Anno* 293. All, but this laſt eſpecially, ſo extreamly raging, that (as St. *Hierom* writeth in one of his Epiſtles) there were martyred 5000 for each day in the year, except the firſt of *January*, on which they uſed not to ſhed blood. But *Sanguis Martyrum, ſemen Eccleſiæ*. This little grain of Muſtard-ſeed, ſowed by God's own hand, and watered by the blood of ſo many holy men, grew ſo great a tree, that the branches of it ſpread themſelves over all the world; and got ſuch footing, even in the *Roman* Army it ſelf, (Men commonly not of the ſtricteſt kind of *Religion*) that when *Julian* the *Apoſtate* had vomited out his ſoul, with *Vicisti tandem Galilæe*, they elected *Jovinian*, though a *Chriſtian*, for his Succeſſor, with this acclamation, *Chriſtiani omnes ſumus*, We are alſo *Chriſtians*. But ſee how the *baptizing* of God's people by the name of *Chriſtians*, in the City of *Antioch*, hath drawn me out of my way. I return again, both to the place, and to the Author. In whoſe evidence, beſides what doth concern the impoſition of the name of *Chriſtian* upon the body of the faithful, we have a teſtimony for St. *Peters* being Biſhop of *Antioch*, the firſt Biſhop thereof (of the Church of the *Jews* therein at leaſt) as is ſaid poſitively by *Euſebius* in his *Chronology*, St. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of Eccleſiaſtical Writers, St. *Chryſoſtom* in his *Homilie de tranſlatione Ignatii*, *Theodoret Dialog.* 1. St. *Gregory Epiſt. lib.* 6. *cap.* 37. and before any of them by *Origen*, in his ſixth *Homily* on St. *Luke*. With reference whereunto, and in reſpect that *Antioch* was accompted always the principal City of the Eaſt-parts of the *Roman* Empire (the *Prefect* of the Eaſt for the moſt part reſiding in it) the Biſhop hereof in the firſt Ages of Chriſtianity, had juriſdiction over all the Churches in the Eaſt, as far as the bounds of that Empire did extend that way. To which by *Conſtantine* the *Great* the Provinces of *Cilicia* and *Iſauria*, with thoſe of *Meſopotamia* and *Oſroene* were after added, containing 15 *Roman* Provinces, or the whole *Dioceſe* of the Orient. And though by the ſubſtracting of the Churches of *Paleſtine*, and the decay of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts by the conqueſts of the *Turks* and *Saracens*, the juriſdiction of this Patriarch hath been very much leſſened; yet *William* of *Tyre*, who flouriſhed in the year 1130. reciteth the names of 13 *Archiepiſcopal*, 21 *Metropolitical*, and 127 *Epiſcopal* Sees, yielding obedience in his time to the See of *Antioch*. Since which that number is much diminiſhed, *Mahometiſm* more and more increaſing, and Chriſtianity divided into Sects and Factions: inſomuch as of three ſorts of Chriſtians living in theſe Countries, *viz.* The *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, and the *Melchites*, only the *Melchites* are ſubordinate to the Church of *Antioch*, the others having Patriarchs of their own Religion.

And firſt for the *Melchites*, who are indeed the true and proper members of the Church of *Antioch*, and the greateſt body of *Chriſtians* in all the Eaſt; they are ſo named in way of ſcorn, by the *Jacobite* and *Maronite Schiſmaticks*, ſeparating without juſt cauſe from their Communion. The name derived from *Melchi*, ſignifying in the *Syriack* Language a King, or Emperour; becauſe adhering to their Primate, they followed the Canons and Deciſions of preceding Councils, ratified by authority of the Emperour *Leo*, by whom ſubſcription was required to the Acts thereof: and were in that reſpect (as we uſe to ſay) of the Kings Religion. Conform in points of Doctrine to the Church of *Greece*, but that they celebrate divine Service as ſolemnly on the *Saturday*, as upon the *Sunday*: ſubject to the true and Original Patriarch, who ſince the deſtruction of *Antioch* doth reſide in *Damaſcus*; and on no terms acknowledging the authority of the Popes of *Rome*.

Next for the *Maronites*, they derive that name either from *Marona*, one of the principal Villages where they firſt inhabited; or from the Monaſtery of St. *Maron*, mentioned in the firſt Act of the Council of *Conſtantinople* holden under *Menuas*, the Monks of which called *Maronites*, were the head of their Sect. Some points they hold, in which they differ from all *Orthodox Chriſtians*; other in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*. Of the firſt ſort, 1 That the *Holy Ghoſt* procedeth from the Father only, without relation to the Son. 2 That the Souls of men were created all together at the firſt beginning. 3 That male Children are not to be baptized together, but at ſeveral times by one and one, 4 That *Heretick*s returning to the Church are to be re-baptized. 5 That the Child is made unclean by the touch of his Mother till her *Purification*; and therefore not baptizing Children till that time be paſt, which after the birth of a *Male-child* muſt be forty days, of a Female eighty. 6 That the *Euchariſt* is to be given to Children preſently after *Baptiſm*. 7 That the fourth Marriage is utterly unlawful. 8 That the Father may diſſolve the Marriage of his Son or Daughter. 9 That young men are not to be ordained *Prieſts* or *Deacons*, except they be married. 10 That nothing ſtrangled, or of blood may be eaten by *Chriſtians*. 11 That Women in their Monthly courſes are not to be admitted to the *Euchariſt*, or to come into the Church. 12 And finally (which was indeed their firſt

diſcrim-

discrimination from the *Orthodox Christians*) that there was but one will and action in *Christ*; the Fautors of which opinion had the name of *Monothelites*. Of the last kind, 1 That the Sacrament of the Lords Supper was to be administred in *both kinds*. 2 And in Leavened bread. 3 That bread to be *broken* to the Communicants (and not each man to have his Wafer to himself) according to the first institution. 4 Not *reserving* that Sacrament. 5 Nor *carrying* any part of the consecrated Elements to sick persons in danger of death. 6 That *Marriage* is nothing inferiour to the single life. 7 That no man entreth the Kingdom of Heaven till the General Judgment. 8 That the *Saturday*, or old *Sabbath* is not to be fasted. 9 Nor the Sacrament upon days of fasting to be administred till the Evening. They withdrew themselves from the See of *Antioch*, and set up a Patriarch of their own, many ages since (but the certain time thereof I find not) conferring on him for the greater credit of their Schism, the honourable title of the Patriarch of *Antioch*. His name perpetually to be *Peter*, as the undoubted Successor of that Apostle in the See thereof. Dispersed about the spurs and branches of Mount *Libanus*, where they have many Townships & scattered Villages, of which four are reported to retain in their common speech the true ancient *Syriack*: that is to say, 1 *Eden*, a small Village, but a Bishops See, by the *Turks* called *Æchera*. 2 *Harchesh*. 3 *Sherry*. 4 *Bolosa*, or *Blousa*, little superiour to the rest in bigness or beauty, but made the seat of their Patriarch, when he comes amongst them. At such time as the Western Christians were possessed of these parts, they submitted to the Church of *Rome*; but upon their expulsion by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, they returned again to the obedience of their own Patriarch, on whom they have ever since depended. His residence for the most part at *Tripolis*, a chief Town of *Syria*; but when he came to visit his Churches, and take an accompt of his suffragan Bishops (who are nine in number) then at *Blousa*, as is said before. Won to the Papacy again by *John Baptist* a Jesuite, in the time of Pope *Gregory* the thirteenth, who sent them a Catechism from *Rome* Printed in the *Arabian* Language (which is generally spoken by them) for their instruction in the Rudiments of that Religion: yet so that their Patriarch still retains his former power, and the Priests still officiate by the old Liturgies of those Churches, in the *Syriack* tongue. So that this reconciliation, upon the matter, is but a matter of complement on the one side, and ostentation on the other; without any increase of Power or Patrimony to the Pope at all. And for the *Jacobites*, though dispersed in many places of this Country; yet since they are more intirely setled in *Mesopotamia*, where their Patriarch also hath his abode or residence, we shall there speak of them.

The Language vulgarly here spoken is the *Arabick* Tongue, continued here ever since the subjugation of these Countries by the *Saracens*. But anciently they spake the *Syrian* and *Phœnician* Languages. Of which, the first (for of the other we shall speak when we come to *Phœnicia*) was the very same with the *Chaldæan*, (as the learned *Brerewood* hath observed) either originally so, or else received by them when first conquered by the *Babylonians*. In which respect the *Jews*, when they returned home from their long Captivity, gave to the Language which they brought with them, the name of *Syriack*, being a compound of the *Hebrew* and *Chaldean* tongues; *Chaldæan* for a great part of it, as to the substance of the words: but *Hebrew* as to the notation of Ponts, Conjugations, Affixes, and other properties of their former and original speech. And of this more hereafter also, when we come to *Palestine*. But whatsoever their language was in former time, it is now so overtopped by the *Arabick*, that it is spoken in four Villages of the *Maronites* only in all these Countries; the *Arabick* being generally used in all the rest, as was said before.

Principal Rivers of these parts, are, 1 *Chorsius*, called *Chison* by the *Hebrews*, which hath its fountain in *Palestine*, but his fall in *Phœnicia*, not far from Mount *Carmel*. 2 *Orontes*, now called *Saldino*, and by some Writers *Jordan* the less, ariseth out of the hills called *Pieria*, not far from Mount *Libanus*; and after a while running under the ground, breaketh forth again about *Apamia* and passing by the great City of *Antioch*, falleth into the Sea not far from it, It was first called *Typhon*, and took this name from one *Orontes*, who built first the Bridg over it, as we find in *Strabo*. 3 *Eleutherus*, which riseth out of some part of *Libanus*, and glided with a speedy course thorow a strangely-intricate Chanel, into the *Mediterranean* Sea: guilty of the death of the Emperour *Frederick Barbarossa*, who falling from his horse as he pursued the *Infidels*, and oppressed with the weight of his Armour, was here drowned, and lyeth buried at *Tyre*. It is now called *Casmer*. 4 *Singas*, by whom said to be called *Marsias* also, which arising in the mountainous parts of *Comagena*, and passing by the City of *Aleppo*, falleth into *Euphrates*. 5 *Euphrates*, the most famous River of the East; of which more hereafter.

Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Carmel*, which being properly of *Phœnicia*, we shall there speak of it. 2 *Pieria*, out of which the River *Orontes* hath its first Original. 3 *Casius*, not far from *Antioch*, said to be four miles high perpendicularly. 4 *Libanus*, famous for its multitude of *Cedars* growing thereupon; affording materials unto *Solomon* for the holy Temple. Besides which it affordeth such store of *Frankincense*, that some derived the name from Λίβανος, signifying Frankincense in the *Greek*: and so replenished with Honey falling from the Heavens, and hanging on the Boughs of the Trees that the Husbandmen used to sing (as *Galen* telleth us) that *God rained honey*; and yearly filled their Pots and Vessels with the sweets thereof. This the most famous and greatest Hill of all these parts, extending in length 150 miles, that is to say, from *Sidon*, a City of *Phœnicia*, to *Smyrna*, one of the Cities of *Cœlo-Syria*: and taking seven hundred miles in compass. Inhabited wholly in a manner by the *Maronite* Christians, who to keep that dwelling to themselves without the intermixture of *Mahometans*, do yearly pay to the *Great Turk* seventeen *Sultanies* a man, for every one above twelve years of Age; each *Sultany* being reckoned at seven shillings & six pence of our mony. And yet those *Maronites*, though intire, without intermixture, are held to be the smallest *Sect*, for numbers, in all the East; not estimated to exceed twelve thousand households, by reason of the indisposition of this Mountain, in most places unfit for habitation. For besides the craggines and steepness of it, which makes many parts hereof to be inaccessible; the higher Ridges of it are in a manner perpetually covered with snow, not melted in so hot a Climate at the neerest approaches of the Sun. And thence no doubt it took this name; the word *Leban*, in the *Hebrew* and *Phœnician* Language, signifying *White*, or *Whiteness*; even as from the like *whiteness* of snow, the highest part of the *Pyrenean* hills had the name of *Canus*; and that perpetual Ridg of Mountains, which parts *Italy* from *France* and *Germany*, had the name of *Alpes*. 5 *Anti-Libanus*, opposite to the former; and from that so called, a rich, but little Valley only being interposed; out of which Valley the *Orontes* hath its Spring or Fountain, the hill *Pieria* there beginning to advance it self. Some make but one Mountain of them both, divided into two great Ledges or Chains of Hills. Of which the main body

lying towards the North, hath the name of *Libanus*; that on the South, being but a branch or excursion of it, called *Anti-Libanus*. And to this the Scripture gives some hint, in which both pass for one, by the name of *Lebanon*.

The whole Country was anciently divided into these six parts, *viz.* 1 *Phœnicia*. 2 *Palestine*. 3 *Syria* specially so called. 4 *Comagena*. 5 *Palmyrene*. And 6 *Cælo-Syria*, or *Syria Cava*. But *Palestine*, coming under a more distinct consideration, we shall now speak only of the rest.

1 PHOENICIA.

PHOENICIA is bounded on the East and South, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Syria*, properly and specially so called; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called by the *Græcians*, from the abundance of *Palm-trees* therein growing, the word φοινιξ in that language signifying a *Palm*. And for a further proof hereof, (for I know there are other *Etymons* and Originations pretended for it) the *Palm* was anciently the special *Cognisance* or Enlign of this Country; as the *Olive-branch* and *Cony* of *Spain*, the *Elephant* of *Africk*, the *Camel* of *Arabia*, and the *Crocodile* of *Ægypt*, being peculiar to those Countries. And in an old Coyn of the Emperor *Vespasian*'s, stamped for a memorial of his conquest of *Judæa*, the Impress is a Woman sitting in a sad and melancholick posture, at the back of *Palm-trees*, with these two words, *Judæa Capta* inscribed thereon; in which, no question may be made, but that the desolate Woman signifieth the Land of *Judæa*, and the Palm *Phœnicia*; *Phœnicia* being seated immediately on the North, at the back of *Jewry*.

But it was thus first called by the *Græcians* only, the *Latins* and other People after them taking up that name. For by themselves, and the people of *Israel* their next Neighbours, they are called *Canaanites*, or the Posterity of *Canaan*, five of whose sons, *viz. Zidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Senari*, and *Chamathi*, were planted here: the other six inhabiting more towards the South and East, in the Land of *Palestine*. For further evidence hereof we may add these reasons; first, that the same Woman which in St. *Matthews* Gospel, *Chap.*15.22. is named a *Canaanite*, is by St. *Mark*, *Chap.*7.26. called a *Syro-Phœnician*. Secondly, where mention is made in the Book of *Joshuah*, of the Kings of *Canaan*; the *Septuagint* (who very well understood the History and Language of their Country) call them βασιλεις της φοινικης, or the Kings of *Phœnicia*. Thirdly, the *Pœni*, or *Carthaginians*, being beyond all dispute a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, when they were asked any thing of their *Original*, would answer that they were *Chanaei*; meaning (as St. *Augustine* that Countryman doth expound their words) that they were Originally *Canaanites*, of the stock of *Canaan*. And lastly, from the language of it, which anciently was the old *Hebrew*, *Canaanitish*, or the Language of *Canaan*; spoken both here and in *Palestine* also, before that Country was possessed by the House of *Jacob*; as appears plainly by those names, by which the places and Cities of *Canaan* were called, when and before the *Israelites* came first to dwell amongst them, which are meerly *Hebrew*. And so much, as unto the Language is acknowledged by *Bochartus* also, who in the entrance of his Book inscribed *Chanaan*, declares what profit may ensue from that undertaking to the *Hebrew* Tongue; *Cujus* Phœnicia *lingua dialectus fuit*, of which the *Phœnician* language was a *dialect* only.

The Country of it self not great, extended in a good length, from the further side of Mount *Carmel*, where it joyns with *Palestine*, to the River *Volanus* on the North, by which parted from *Syria*: but withal so narrow, that it is little more than a bare Sea-coast, and therefore very rightly called *Terrarum angustissima* by a modern Writer. Rich rather by the benefit and increase of trade (to which no Nation under Heaven hath been more addicted) than by the natural commodities which the land afforded: yet for the quantity thereof, no place could be more plentifully furnished with Oyl, Wheat, and the best sort of *Balm*, and most excellent Honey; the lower part hereof being designed for the seat of *Asher*, of whom *Moses* propheſied, *Deut.*33.24. *that he should dip his foot in Oyl*. So that the Country generally, was well-conditioned, lovely to look upon, populous, and adorned with more beautiful Cities, than such a span of earth could be thought to hold. Of which thus writeth *Ammianus*, *Acclivis monti Libano* Phœnicia *Regio, plena gratiarum & venustatis urbibus decorata magnis & pulchris, &c. i.e.* Falling from Mount *Libanus*, lyeth the Country of *Phœnicia*, full of all graces and elegancies, adorned with great and beautiful Cities, of which the most renowned for the fertility of their soil, and the fame of their atchievements, are *Tyre*, *Sidon*, *Berytus*, &c.

The People anciently, by reason of their *Maritime* situation, were great *Adventurers* at Sea, trading in almost all the Ports of the then known World, and sending more Colonies abroad upon forein *Plantations* than any Nations in the Earth. An active and ingenuous people, said to have been the first *Navigators*, the first builders of Ships, the first inventers of Letters, (of which hereafter more on some other occasion) and the first Authors of *Arithmetick*, the first that brought *Astronomy* to an Art or Method, and the first makers of Glass. Defamed in holy Scripture for their gross *Idolatries*, by which they laid a stumbling-block at the feet of the *Israelites*; *Astaroth* (or *Astarte*) the goddess of the *Sidonians* (but whether *Juno*, *Venus*, or some other, I dispute not here) being so highly prized amongst them, that *Solomon* himself, when he fell from God, made this one of his *Idols*. Once yearly, as *Eusebius* telleth us, they sacrificed some of their Sons to *Saturn*, whom in their Language they called *Moloch*; And in the inmost retreats of *Libanus* had a Temple to *Venus*, defiled with the practice of most filthy lusts, intemperately using the natural Sex, and most unnaturally abusing their own. Nor could the purity and piety of the *Christian* faith prevail so far, as to extinguish these ungodly rites, till *Constantine* finally destroyed both the Temples and *Idols*, and left not any thing remaining of them, but the shame and infamy. St. *Austin* addeth, that they did prostitute their Daughters unto *Venus*, before they married them: and it is most likely to be true. For the *Phœnicians* and *Cyprians* being so near neighbours, and subject for a time to the same Princes also, could not but impart their impure Rites and Ceremonies unto one another.

Rivers of note there can be none in so narrow a Region but what are common unto others, and shall there be spoken of. Most proper unto this is the River of *Adonis*, (now called *Canis*,) so named most probably from *Adonis* the Darling of *Venus*, whose Rites are here performed with as much solemnity, as they be in *Cyprus*. His Obsequies celebrated yearly in the month of *June*, with great houlings and lamentations, *Lucian* fabling that the River usually streameth blood upon that Solemnity; (as if *Adonis* were newly wounded in the Mountains of *Libanus*,) to give the better colour to their Superstitions. But the truth is, that this *redness* of the water ariseth only from the Winds; which at that time of the year blowing very vehemently, do thereby carry down the stream a great quantity of *Minium* or *red Earth*, from the sides of those hills, wherewith the waters are discoloured.

discoloured. Such use can *Satan* make of a natural Accident, to blind the eyes and captivate the understandings of besotted People.

Chief Mountains of this Country are, 1 *Libanus*, spoken of before, which hath here its first advance or rising. 2 *Carmel*, which *Ptolomy* placeth in this Country, of which it is the utmost part upon the South, where it joyneth with *Palestine*. Washed on the North side with the Brook *Chison*, on the West with the *Mediterranean* Sea; steep of ascent, and of indifferent altitude; abounding with several sorts of Fruits, Olives, and Vines in good plenty, and stored with Herbs both *medicinable* and sweet of smell. The Retreat sometimes of *Elias*, when he fled from *Jezabel*; whose Habitation here, after his decease, was converted to a *Jewish* Synagogue. To this place (being then in the possession of the Kings of *Israel*) did that Prophet assemble the Priests of *Baal*; and having by a miraculous Experiment confuted their *Idolatrous* follies, caused them to be cut in pieces on the Banks of the River *Chison* near adjoyning to it. Upon this visible declaring of the Power and Presence of the Almighty, the *Gentiles* grew perswaded that *Oracles* were there given by God; by *Suetonius* called the God *Carmelus*. Where speaking of *Vespasian*, who had then newly took upon him the Imperial Dignity, he addeth, *Apud Judeam* Carmeli Dei *Oracula consulentem ita confirmavere sortes, &c.* That consulting in *Judæa* with the *Oracle* of the God *Carmelus*, he was assured that whatsoever he undertook should succeed well with him. In after-times the Order of the *Friars Carmelites*, as Successors unto the *Children of the Prophets* left here by *Elijah*, had their names from hence: the Ruins of whose *Monastery* are still to be seen, with a Temple dedicated to the Blessed *Virgin*; and under that a *Cave* or *Chappel*, said to have been the lurking-place of that Holy Prophet, in the time of his troubles.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Ptolomais*, now nothing but a ruin of what it hath been, but formerly of great strength and consequence. Named *Ace* at the first, a Refuge for the *Persian* Kings in their Wars against *Ægypt*: Enlarged, or rather new built by *Ptolomy*, the first of that Race, by whom called *Ptolomais*, which name still continued, though *Claudius Cæsar* planting there a *Roman* Colony, would fain have had it called *Colonia Claudia*. After the Conquest of it by the *Saracens*, in the time of *Omer* the great *Caliph*, it returned towards its first name, and was called *Acon*, or *Acre*: both names still remaining in *vulgar* speech, as that of *Ptolomais* amongst *Latin* Writers. Situate in the flourish of it on a flat or level, in form of a triangular Shield; on two sides neighboured by the Sea, which comes up close to it; on the third looking towards the *Champaign*: environed with a double Wall, to each Wall a Ditch, fortified on the outside with Towers and Bulwarks; within the Walls so strongly housed, as if the whole Town had been a Conjunction of Fortresses, and not ordained for private dwellings. In the midst of the City was one Tower of great strength and beauty, which had sometimes been the Temple of *Belzebub*, and was therefore called the *Castle of Flies*; on the top whereof was maintain'd a perpetual Light, like the *Pharos* of *Ægypt*, to give comfort and direction in the night to such Mariners as made towards this Port, Took from the *Christians* by the *Saracens* in the time of *Omer*, and from them wrested by the *Turks* with the rest of *Syria*. It became *Christian* again *Anno* 1004. in the Reign of *Baldwin* the first, Brother of the famous *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and second King of *Hierusalem*, by the help of the *Genoese*; who for their pains had the third part of the City assigned unto them. Recovered by *Saladine* to the *Turks*, and from him taken again by the *Western Christians*, under the conduct of *Philip* of *France*, and *Richard* the first of *England*, *Anno* 1191. it continued in the possession of the Kings of *Hierusalem*, notably defended by the *Hospitalers* (now Knights of *Malta*) till the year 1291. When besieged by an Army of an hundred and fifty thousand *Turks*, it was forced to yield, though lost by inches; and the *Turks* fearing lest the *Christians* would again attempt it, razed it to the ground, demolishing the large Walls and Arches of it, which lie like massy Rocks on their old Foundations. Memorable in those times for the brave service here done by the Christians of the Western parts, of which none more renowned than those of our *Richard* the first, and *Edward* the first. This latter here treacherously wounded by an Infidel, with a poysoned Knife, the venom whereof could by no means be asswaged, till his most virtuous Wife (herein proposing a most rare Example of conjugal affection) sucked it out with her mouth. And for the former, he became so terrible and redoubted among the *Turks*, that when their Children began to cry, they would say, *Peace, King* Richard *is coming*: and when their Horses started, they would spur them, saying, *What you Jades, do you think that King* Richard *is here?* By the *Mammalucks*, when Lords of *Syria*, it was patched together, and made fit for habitation rather than defence: not peopled by above 300 Inhabitants, nor would it have so many, but for the Haven adjoyning; which though a small Bay, and of very ill Anchorage, is much frequented by the Merchants of our Western World, trading here for their Cotton Wools, with which the neighbouring Country is abundantly furnished. I have staid the longer in this place, by reason of the great fame and importance of it, as being the last Hold which the Christians had of all their Conquests; with the loss whereof, they laid aside all thoughts of those *Holy Wars*. 2. *Tyre*, seated in a rocky Island, about seventy paces from the main Land; well built, and circular of form, as well by Art as Nature impregnably fortified. A Colony of the *Sidonians*, and therefore by the Prophet *Isa. ch.* 23. *v.* 12. called the *Daughter of Sidon*; but by them built upon an high Hill, the Ruins whereof, by the name of *Palætyrus*, or old *Tyre*, are remaining still. Removed unto the Islands by *Agenor* King of the *Phœnicians*, and by him named *Sor*, or *Tzor*, from the rocky situation of it (as that word importeth.) Mollified by the *Greeks* to *Tyrus*, and from them taken by the *Latins*, though known to them also by the name of *Sarra* (the *Tyrian Purple* being by *Virgil*, and some others of the ancient Poets, called *Sarrarum Ostrum*:) and now at last returned to its first original name, vulgarly at this day called *Sur*. A City in elder times of great Trade and Wealth; the Prophet *Isa. ch.* 27. *v.* 8. calling the Merchants hereof *Princes*, and her Chapmen the *Nobles of the World*. Excelling all others of those times both for Learning, and Manufactures, specially for the dying of *Purple*, first here invented; and that as *Julius Pollux* said, by a very accident; the Dog of *Hercules* or if not his, some Dog or other) whose lips by eating of the Fish called *Conchylis*, or *Purpura*, had been made of that colour. Grown to great pride, by reason of the Wealth and Pleasures, her destruction was foresignified by the holy Prophets, accomplished in God's own time by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who with great industry and toil joyned it to the Continent. But his Works being demolished by the fury of the Sea, and the labour of the *Tyrians*, it was after seventy years again re-edified; and having flourished after that for two hundred years, by *Alexander* the Great was again demolished, to whose indefatigable perseverance nothing was impossible. For having filled the Chanel with the

Stones

Stones and Rubbish of old *Tyre*, and rammed them in with huge Beams brought from *Libanus*, he made a passage for his Army; and having once approached the Walls, so over-topped them with Towers and Frames of Timber, that at last he made himself Master of it, putting to the Sword all such as resisted, and causing two thousand of them to be hanged in cold blood, all along the shore, for a terror to others. This Rendition of the Town was divined by the *Sooth-sayers*, who followed the Camp of *Alexander*, upon a dream which he had not long before; For dreaming that he had disported himself with *Satyrs*, the Diviners only making of one word two, found that Σὰ Τύρος was no more than Σὰ Τύρος, that is, *Tua Tyrus*; and it happened accordingly. Recovering once again both her Riches and Beauties, she became a Confederate of the *Romans* in the growth of their Fortunes; endowed by them with the Priviledges of their City, for her great fidelity. Made in the best times of *Christianity* the *Metropolitan* See for the Province of *Phœnicia*, the Bishop hereof having under him fourteen Suffragan Bishops. Subjected to the *Saracens* in the year six hundred thirty and six, and having groaned under that yoak for the space of four hundred eighty and eight years, was at the last regained by *Guarimund* Patriarch of *Hierusalem*, in the Reign of the second *Baldwin*, the *Venetians* contributing their assistance to it, *Anno* 1124. In vain attempted afterwards by victorious *Saladine*; but finally brought under the *Turkish* thraldom, *Anno* 1289, as it still continueth. Now nothing but an heap of Ruins; but the very Ruins of it of so fair a prospect, as striketh both pity and amazement into the beholders, shewing them an exemplary pattern of our humane frailty. Subject at the present to the *Emir* or Prince of *Sidon*, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, one of the best of the *Levant*, but of no great trading. 3 *Sarepta*, by the *Hebrews* called *Sarphath*, situate on the Sea-coast betwixt *Tyre* and *Sidon*. Memorable in Holy Writ for the Miracle here performed by the Prophet *Elijah*, in raising the poor Widows Son; in Heathen Writers for the purest *Wines*, little inferiour unto those of *Falernum* in *Italy*, or *Chios* in *Greece*: Of which thus the Poet;

Vina mihi non sunt Gazetica, Chia, Falerna,
Quæque Sareptano *palmite missa bibas.*

In *English* thus,

I have no *Chian* or *Falernian* Wines,
Nor those of *Gazus* or *Sareptas* Vines.

4 *Sidon*, the ancientest City of all *Phœnicia*, and the most Northern of all those which were assigned for the Portion of the Sons of *Asser*; beyond which the Country of *Phœnicia* having been hitherto nothing but a bare Sea-coast, beginneth to open towards the East in a fine rich Valley, having *Libanus* upon the North, and the *Anti-Libanus* on the South; once closed up from the rest of *Syria* with a very strong Wall, long since demolished. It was so called from *Zidon*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who first planted here; not (as some say) from *Sida* the Daughter of *Belus*, once a King hereof; this City being mentioned in the Book of *Joshua*, when no such *Belus* was in being. Situate in a fertile and delightful Soil, defended with the Sea on one side, and on the other by the Mountains lying betwixt it and *Libanus*, from whence descended those many Springs with which they watered and enriched their most pleasant Orchards. The Inhabitants hereof are said to be the first makers of *Chrystal Glass*, the Materials of the Work brought hither from the Sands of a River running not far from *Ptolemais*, and only made fusible in this City. And from hence *Solomon* and *Zorobabel* had their principal Work-men, both for Stone and Timber, in their several Buildings of the Temple. The People hereof so flourishing in Arts and Trades, that the Prophet *Zachariah*, *chap.9. v.2.* calleth them the *wise Sidonians*. A City which at several times was both the Mother and Daughter of *Tyre*; the Mother of it in the times of *Heathenism*, *Tyre* being a Colony of this People; and the Daughter of it when instructed in the *Christian* Faith, acknowledging the Church of *Tyre* for its Mother-Church. The City in those times very strong both by *Art* and *Nature*, having on the North-side a Fort or *Citadel* mounted on an inaccessible Rock, and environed on all sides by the Sea; which when it was brought under the command of the *Western Christians*, was held by the Order of the *Dutch Knights*; and another on the South-side of the Port, which the *Templars* guarded. Won by the *Turks*, with the rest of this Country, from the *Christians*, and ruined by those often interchanges of Fortune, it only sheweth now some marks of the ancient greatness; the present *Sidon* standing somewhat *West* of the old, and having little worth a particular Description, in respect of what it was in her ancient Glories. The Haven at this time decayed, or serving at the best for Gallies; with a poor *Blockhouse*, rather for shew than service: The Walls of no greater strength, and as little beauty, and the Buildings ordinary; but that the *Mosque*, the *Bannia* of Bathes, and the *Cane* for Merchants, are somewhat fairer than the rest: yet gives a Title at this time to the *Emir* of *Sidon*, one of the greatest Princes of all this Country, of whom more hereafter. 5 *Berytus*, originally called *Geris*, from *Gergeshi* the fifth Son of *Canaan*, took this new name from *Berith*, a *Phœnician* Idol herein worshipped; and now called *Barutti*. Destroyed by *Tryphon* in the Wars of the *Syrians* against the *Jews*, it was re-edified by the *Romans*, by whom made a Colony, and honoured with the name of *Julia Felix*, *Augustus* giving it the Priviledges of the City of *Rome*. By *Herod* and *Agrippa* Kings of the *Jews*, much adorned and beautified; and of no mean esteem in the time of the Christians, when made an Episcopal See under the *Metropolitan* of *Tyre*. Being a place of no great strength, nor aimed at by every new Invader, it hath sped better than the rest of these Cities (though stronger than this) retaining still her being, though not all her beauties; well stored with Merchandise, and well frequented by the Merchant. Nigh to this Town is a fair and fruitful Valley, which they call St. *Georges*, in which there is a Castle, and in that an Oratory of the same name also: All sacred to St. *George* the Martyr, who hereabouts is fabled to have killed the Dragon, and thereby delivered a Kings Daughter; but what Kings I know not, nor they neither. 6 *Biblis*, sometimes the Habitation of *Hevi*, the fourth Son of *Canaan*, and then called *Hevæa*. Afterwards made the Regal Seat of *Cinyras*, Father and Grandfather of *Adonis* by his Daughter *Myrrha*; whereof we have already spoken when we were in *Cyprus*. Of such esteem in the Primitive Times of Christianity, that it was made a Bishops See; desolate and of no repute since it lost that honour, and became thrall unto the *Turks*. 7 *Orthosia*, called also *Antaradus*, because opposite to *Aradus*, another old City of this Tract; but in after-Ages called *Tortosa*, and by that name well known in the Histories of the Holy Wars, undertaken by the Western Christians: To whom it made such stout and notable resistance, that though besieged on all sides with united Forces (the whole Army formerly divided, sitting down before it) yet after three Months hard siege, they were fain to leave the Town behind them, and content themselves with spoiling the adjoyning Country. 8 *Tripolis*, seated in a rich and delightful Plain, more

fruitful

fruitful than can be imagined; one of which Fruits they called by the name of *Amazza Franchi*, i.e. *Kill Frank*, becauſe the Weſtern Chriſtians, whom they call by the name of *Franks*, died in great numbers by the intemperate eating of them. A Valley which is ſaid to have yielded yearly to the Counts of *Tripolis* no leſs than 200000 Crowns. As for the Town, it ſtandeth about two miles from the Sea, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*; ſo called becauſe built by the joint Purſes of three Cities, that is to ſay, *Tyrus*, *Sidon*, and *Aradus*. Of no great note among the *Romans*, for ought I can find, till made one of the Epiſcopal Sees, belonging to the Archbiſhop of *Tyre* in the Primitive times. But thriving by degrees, it grew to principal Accompt by the time that the Weſtern Chriſtians warred in the *Holy Land*: When conquered by them, it was made one of the Tetrarchies, or Capital Cities for the four Quarters of their Empire, which were *Jeruſalem* for *Paleſtine*, *Edeſſa* for *Comagena* or *Meſopotamia*, *Antioch* for *Syria*, and this for *Phœnicia*. Committed at the firſt taking of it, to the cuſtody of *Raymend* Earl of *Thoulouſe* in *France*; whoſe Poſterity, whilſt it laſted, had from hence the Title of Earls of *Tripolis*. A City, which I know not by what good hap, hath ſped better than any of thoſe parts, retaining ſtill as much in ſtrength and beauty as ever it had, if not grown greater by the ruin of all the reſt. Situate two miles from the Sea, as before is ſaid; but not above half a mile from the Haven, which lieth upon the weſt ſide of it: Compaſſed with a Wall, and fortified with ſeven Towers, of which the fourth is commonly called the Tower of *Love*, becauſe built by an *Italian* Merchant, who was found in Bed with a *Turkiſh* Woman, for which he had forfeited his life, if not thus redeemed it. Before the Haven is an ill-neighbouring bank of Sand, which every day groweth greater and nearer to it; by which in time there is a Propheſie which ſaith it ſhall quite be choaked: On both ſides of it many Storehouſes for the Merchant to ſtow his Goods in, and Shops to ſell them: the way from thence unto the City, having on both ſides very pleaſant Gardens, more curiouſly kept, than uſually amongſt the *Turks*. The Town it ſelf ſtretched out in length from South to North, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, at the foot of *Libanus*, conveying a Brook into the Streets, and many pleaſant ſprings into the Chief of their Gardens: in which, and in thoſe towards the Haven, and on other ſides of the Town, the Inhabitants keep great ſtore of Silk-worms, ſelling their Silks raw unto the *Italians*, and buying them again of them in the Stuff or Manufacture. Their Buildings generally low, and the Streets but narrow, except that leading towards *Aleppo*, which is fair and open. Over the Brook, at the Eaſt-ſide of the City, are built two Bridges; and on the South-ſide a ſtrong Caſtle mounted on an Hill, built by the *French* when they had the Cuſtody hereof: now Garriſonned for the *Grand Seignieur* with two hundred *Janizaries*. At this time it is looked on as the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Phœnicia*, honoured with the Reſidence of the Patriarch of the *Maronites*, for the moſt part dwelling in this Town; and enriched with a great part of the Trade of *Scanderone*, or *Alexandretta*, removed hither ſome forty years ago by the *Turks* appointment; that Haven lying unfenced, and more open to Pirates.

That the *Phœnicians* were deſcended of the Sons of *Canaan*, hath been proved already. And being deſcendants of that Stock, they were at the firſt governed like them, by the *Chiefs* of their Families, whom they honoured (as moſt Nations did) with the Title of Kings. But moſt of the *Canaanitiſh* Kings being overcome and ſlain by *Joſhuah*, *Agenor* a ſtout and prudent man, one of thoſe many Kings which commanded in thoſe parts of the Country, ſeeing how impoſſible it was to reſiſt that Enemy, borrowed ſome Aid from *Ægypt*, where he had his Breeding, to make good the Sea-coaſts of his Country: in which the *Philiſtims*, who interpoſed upon thoſe Coaſts betwixt him and *Ægypt*, concurred alſo with him. By which aſſiſtance, and by the fortifying of *Sidon*, *Tyre*, and *Ace* (or *Ptolemais*) which were all the Cities of this Country that were then in being, he did not only preſerve his own Eſtate from the preſent danger, but left it ſo aſſured to the Kings ſucceeding, that neither *Solomon*, nor *David*, nor any of the Kings of *Iſrael*, durſt attempt upon them. To *Agenor* ſucceeded his Son *Phœnix*, (*Cadmus*, his elder Brother, going into *Greece* in ſearch of his Siſter *Europa*, raviſhed by *Jupiter*, where he built *Thebes*, and therein reigned till his death) from whom, as ſome conceive, this Country had the name of *Phœnicia*. And though I have declared my ſelf for another reaſon of this name, which I like much better; yet I ſhall rather yield to this, or to any other, than to that of *Bochartus*, who will have it derived from *Ben-Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*, (as if the old *Phœnicians* were ſuch Giantly men) which muſt firſt be contracted in *Beanack*, then by the *Græcians* turned into *Pheanae*, and at laſt into *Phœnix*. Such farfetched and extorted Originations never pleaſe my fancy, who had much rather hearken to the old received opinions touching the firſt Originals of Names and Nations, where there is not very pregnant Reaſon to perſwade me otherwiſe; than ſtrain my ſelf ſo far for a new Invention, or hearken unto thoſe that do. But for what cauſe ſoever they were named *Phœnicians*, certain it is, they were a very active and induſtrious People, trading in the moſt parts of the *Mediterranean*, and planting Colonies in many. *Thebes* and *Sephyra* in *Bœotia*, *Nola* in *Italy*, *Gades* in *Spain*; *Utica*, *Leptis*, *Carthage* in *Affrick*, were of their foundation. Nay, if we may believe *Bochartus*, there was no Iſland or Sea-coaſt in the *Mediterranean*, or on the *Cantabrian*, *Gallick*, or *Britiſh* Ocean, wherein they did not keep ſome Factory, or erect ſome *Colony*. What Kings ſucceeded *Phœnix* in a conſtant and continued courſe, I can no where find. Moſt like it is, they were not under the command of any one Prince; and that beſides the Kings of *Sidon*, where *Agenor* reigned, there were ſome others who called themſelves Kings of *Phœnicia* alſo, as well as they. Of which ſort were *Cyniras*, *Paphus*, and *Pigmalion*, who had their Regal Seat at *Biblis*, and Lorded it over a good part of *Cyprus*, as did alſo *Belus*, who gave ſome part of that Iſle to *Teucer*, as is ſaid before. There is alſo found mention of one *Phaſis*, a *Phœnician* King, at ſuch time as the *Græcians* conquered *Troy*. After him none, till the ſubjugation of this Country by the *Babylonians*; *Tetramneſtus*, *Tennes*, and *Strato*, mentioned in ſucceeding times, being Tributaries to the *Perſian*, and no abſolute Princes. Whether it were that the *Phœnicians* were made ſubject to the Kings of *Tyre*, or that the Kings thereof did nothing to preſerve their memory, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that the Kings of *Tyre* came in ſhort time to be of very great repute, and to poſſeſs themſelves of the Coaſts of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*, and a great part of *Cyprus*; whereby, and by the benefit of their Trade and Shipping, they grew rich and powerful, and of great conſideration in Affairs of the World. The Names and Hiſtory of whom I ſhall here ſubjoyn, in this enſuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of TYRE.

A. M.

1 *Abibalus*, as *Joſephus*; *Abemalus*, as *Theophilus*

philus Antiochenus calleth him, Co-temporary with *Samuel*; ſuppoſed to be the ſame which the Son of *Syrach* mentioneth, *Eccl.* 46. 18.

2 *Saron*, the Son of *Abibalus*, whom *David*, as *Euſebius* ſaith, compelled to pay tribute; complained of by that Prophet, *Pſal.* 83. 7.

2931 3 *Hiram*, the Son of *Saron*, confederate with *David*, to whom he ſent Cedars, with Carpenters and Maſons, towards his buildings in *Jeruſalem*, after he had beaten thence the *Jebuſites*; as he did afterwards to *Solomon* when he built the *Temple*. Much mentioned in the Books of *Kings*, and *Chronicles*. 53.

2955 4 *Baleaſtartus*, or *Bazorus*, ſucceeded *Hiram*. 7.

2962 5 *Abdaſtartus*, Son of *Baleaſtartus*, ſlain by the four Sons of his own Nurſe, having reigned nine years; the eldeſt of which four did for the ſpace of twelve years uſurp the Kingdom.

2983 6 *Aſtartus*, brother of *Abdaſtartus*, recovered the Kingdom to his houſe, out of the hands of the *Uſurpers*. 12.

2995 7 *Aſtorinus*, or *Athorinus*, as *Theophilus* calleth him, the younger brother of *Aſtartus*. 9.

3004 8 *Phelles*, the Brother of theſe three Kings, and youngeſt ſon of *Baleaſtartus*, reigned eight months only.

9 *Ithobalus*, called *Ethbaal*, 1 *King.* 16. 13. Son of *Aſtorinus*, ſlew his Uncle *Phelles*, and ſo regained his Fathers Throne; before which he was the *High-Prieſt* of the Goddeſs *Aſtaroth*, or *Aſtarta*, (a dignity next to that of the King.) He was the Father of *Jezebel*, the Wife of *Ahab*, ſo often mentioned in the Scripture. 32.

3037 10 *Badezar*, or *Bazar*, Son of *Ethbaal*. 6.

3043 11 *Mettinus*, by ſome called *Matginus*, Son of *Badezar*, and father of *Eliſa*, whom *Virgil* celebrateth by the name of *Dido*.

3052 12 *Pygmalion*, the Son of *Mettinus*, who ſlew *Sicheus* the Husband of his Siſter *Eliſa* to get his riches; but yet was couſened of his prey: his Siſter *Eliſa* accompanied with her brother *Barca* (the founder of the Noble *Barcine* Family, of which *Annibal* was) and her Siſter *Anna*, flying into *Africk*; where ſhe built the renowned City of *Carthage*. The names of his Succeſſors we find not, till we come to

13 *Elulæus*, deſcended from a Son of *Pygmalion*, who overthrew the Fleet of *Salmanaſſer*, the *Aſſyrian*, in the Port of *Tyre*.

14 *Ethobales*, or *Ethbaal* II. who vaunted himſelf to be as wiſe as *Daniel*, and to know all ſecrets, as ſaith the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *chap.* 28. *v.* 1, 2. And yet not wiſe enough to preſerve his Kingdom from *Nabuchadonoſor*; who after a ſiege of 13 years took the City of *Tyre*, and ſubjected it unto his *Empire*.

15 *Baal*, the ſon and ſucceſſor of *Ethbaal* the ſecond, but a *Tributary* to the *Babylonians*.

After whoſe death the *Tyrians* had no more Kings, but were governed by Judges, or by ſuch titular Kings only as were ſent from *Babylon*. And though *Tyre* and *Sidon* did recover breath in the fall of the *Babylonian* Empire, and the unſetledneſs of the *Perſian*: yet being of the *Perſian* faction, and having dependence on that Crown, they were by *Alexander* held unworthy to continue. Who therefore depoſed *Strato* the King of *Sidon*, and overthrew the City of *Tyre*; in the taking whereof he had ſpent more time, than in forcing all the Cities of *Aſia*.

After this time *Phœnicia*, being reckoned as a part of *Syria*, followed the fortune of the whole, ſubject unto the *Syrian* Kings of the houſe of *Seleucus*, till made a Province of the *Romans*; ſubject to the *Conſtantinopolitans*, till the fatal year 636. when ſubdued by the *Saracens*. Succeſſively conquered by the *Turks*, *Chriſtians*, and after their expulſion by the *Turks* again, then by the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*, and finally with the reſt of *Syria*, by *Selimus* the firſt united to the *Turkiſh* Empire. Subject at this time, or of late, to the *Emir* of the *Druſians*, (commonly called the *Emir* of *Sidon*) of which people we have ſpoken before. A people who in the time of *Amurath* the third, were governed by five *Emirs* or Princes; one of which was *Man-Ogli*, who ſo reſolutely reſiſted *Ibrahim Baſſa*, *Anno* 1585. This *Man-Ogli* then kept his Court or reſidence at *Andirene*, a ſtrong place ſituate on a hill, and was of that wealth, that he ſent to make his peace unto the above-named *Ibrahim*, 320 Arcubuſes, 20 packs of *Andirene* Silks, and 50000 Ducats. At a ſecond time he preſented him with 50000 Ducats more, 480 Arcubuſes, 1000 Goats, 150 Camels, 150 Buffes, 1000 Oxen, and 200 Weathers. By theſe rich gifts we may not a little conjecture of the Revenue of the preſent *Emir* of *Sidon*; who ſince the year 1600. hath reduced almoſt all the Countries belonging once to five Princes, under his own Empire; containing the Towns and Territories of *Gaza*, *Barut*, *Sidon*, *Tyre*, *Acre*, *Saffet*, (or *Tiberias*) his ſeat of reſidence, *Nazareth*, *Cana*, Mount *Tabor*, *Elkiffe*, &c. This preſent *Emir*, by name *Faccardine*, was not long ſince driven out of his Country by the *Turk*, and forced to flie to *Florence*: but he again recovered his own, laid ſiege to *Damaſcus*, and cauſed a notable Rebellion in *Aſia*; not quenched in a long time after. And finally, having poſſeſſed himſelf of the City and Caſtle of *Damaſcus*, prepared for the taking of *Hieruſalem* alſo; threatning to make the Chriſtians once more Maſters of it. This was in the year 1623. How he ſped afterward, and whether his Son, as ſtout and valiant as himſelf, hath ſince his death ſucceeded him in his Eſtates, I am not able to ſay: having of late heard nothing of them.

SYRIA PROPRIA.

SYRIA PROPRIA, or *Syria* eſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Palmyrene*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Cilicia*; on the South, with *Phœnicia*, and ſome part of *Cœlo-Syria*.

This part of *Syria* I take to be the Land of *Hamath*, ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures, the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou*, next neighbour, and ſworn Enemy to *Adadezer* King of *Aram-Sobah*: who hearing of the great diſcomfiture which *David* had given unto that King, ſent his Son *Joram*, or *Adoram*, (for the Scripture calls him by both names) with Preſents to him, as well to congratulate his ſucceſs, as to be aſſured for times to come of his love and amity. So called from *Hamath* one of the Sons of *Canaan*, who fixed his dwelling in theſe parts, and left many Cities of that name in *Syria* and *Paleſtine* (which we ſhall meet with all in the courſe of this work) either built by him or his Poſterity. Now that the Land of *Hamath* was this part of *Syria*, I am perſwaded to believe by theſe following reaſons, *viz.* 1 From the neighbourhood hereof to *Arpad* or *Arphad*, conjoyned together, as in *Iſa.* 10. 9. and *Jer.* 49. 23. So in other places, *viz. Where are the gods of* Hamath *and* Arphad? 2 *King.* 18. 34. *The Kings of* Hamath, *and the King of* Arphad, *Iſa.* 37. 13.

*Isa.*37.13. And we know well that *Arvad* was the name of an Island over-against the mouth of the River *Eleutherus*, one of the Rivers of this Country: so called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, alluded to by the *Greeks* and *Romans* in the name of *Aradus*; by which this Isle was known unto them. 2*ly*. By the vicinity which it hath to *Palmyrene*, the *Aram-Sobah* of the Scriptures, to which it joyneth on the East, with the King whereof (as bordering Princes use to be) the Kings of *Hamath* for the most part were in open War. Of which see 2 *Sam.*8.9.10. and 1 *Chro.*8.9,10. 3*ly*. From the authority of St.*Hierom*, who finding mention in the Prophet *Amos*, *Chap.* 6. 2. of a City named *Hamath* the *Great*, determineth it to be that City which afterwards was called *Antiochia* (the principal City of this part, and indeed of *Syria*:) the title of *Great* being added to it, to difference it from some other Cities of this name of inferiour note. And 4*ly*. from comparing the places in Scripture, with the like passage in *Josephus* the Historiographer. The Scripture telleth us, that *Hierusalem* being forced by the *Babylonians*, *Zedekias* the King was brought Prisoner to *Nebuchadnezzar*, being then at *Riblath*, 2 *King.*2.6. to *Riblath in the Land of Hamath*, *ver.*21. where the poor Prince first saw his Children slain before his face; and then miserably deprived of sight, that he might not see his great misfortunes, was led away to *Babylon*. Ask of *Josephus* where this sad tragedy was acted, and he will tell us that it was at *Reblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*, *Antiq. l.* 10. *c.*10. And if we ask Saint *Hierom* what he thinks of *Reblatha*, he will tell us that it was *Urbs ea quam nunc* Antiochiam *vocant*, the City which in following times was called *Antioch*. On these grounds I conceive this part of *Syria* to be the land of *Hamath* intended in the Texts of Scripture above-cited; though there were other Towns and Territories of the same name also.

The Country is naturally fertile; the hedges on the high-way sides affording very good fruits, and the adjoyning fields affording to the Passenger the shade of Figtrees. Were it not naturally so, it would not be much helped by Art or Industry; as being very meanly peopled and those few people without any encouragement either to plant fruits, or manure the Land. Their Sheep are commonly fair and fat, but so overladed in the tail, both with flesh and fleece, that they hang in long wreaths unto the ground, dragged after them with no small difficulty. *Pliny* observes it in his time, that the tails of the *Syrian* Sheep were a Cubit long, and had good store of wool upon them, *Natur. Hist. l.* 8. *c.*48. and modern Travellers report, that the tails of these sheep do frequently weigh 25 pound weight, and sometimes 30 pounds and upwards. The like hath also been affirmed of the sheep of *Palestine* comprehended in old times in the name of *Syria*. And that may probably be the reason why the rumps and tails of Sheep (and of no beast else) were ordained to be offered up in sacrifice, of which *Lev.* 3.9. But besides the store of Wool which they have from the sheep, they have also great plenty of Cotton Wool, which groweth there abundantly; with the seeds whereof they sow their fields, as we ours with Corn. The stalk no bigger than that of Wheat, but as tough, as a Bean; the head round and bearded, in the size and shape of a *Medlar*. and as hard as a stone: which ripening breaketh, and is delivered of a white soft *Bombast*, intermixed with seeds; which parted with an instrument, they keep the seeds for another sowing, and sell the Wool unto the Merchant: a greater quantity thereof issuing from that little shell, than can be imagined by those who have not seen it.

The people heretofore were very industrious, especially about their Gardens; the fruitful effects whereof they found in the increase of their Herbs, and Plants. Whence the Proverb, *Multa Syrorum Olera*. But withall they were observed to be very gluttonous, spending whole days and nights in feasting; great scoffers, and much given to laughter. Crafty and subtle in their dealings, not easily to be trusted but on good security: and so were the *Phœnicians*, their next neighbours also. Hence came the *Greek* Adage which *Suidas* speaketh of, Σύρος πρὸς Φοίνικα, *Syri contra Phœnices*, used by them when two crafty Knaves endeavored to deceive each other. They were noted also to be superstitious, great Worshippers of the Goddess *Fortune*, but greater of their *Syrian* Goddess, whatsoever she was. Affirmed by *Plutarch* to be a Womanish and effeminate Nation, prone unto tears, and such as on the death of their friends would hide themselves in caves from the sight of the Sun. *Herodian* addeth, that they were wavering and unconstant, lovers of Plays and publick Pastims, and easily stirred up unto Innovations. But at this time, they are almost beaten out of all these humours, having been so often cowed and conquered, that they are now grown servilely officious to them that govern them: not without cause, defective in that part of industry which before enriched them.

Where by the way we must observe, that this Character of the people, and that of the Country belong not to this part alone, exclusively of those which follow; but to all *Syria*, and every part and Province of it, except *Phœnicia*, which being planted by a people of another Stock, hath had its character by it self. The whole by *Ptolomy* divided, besides *Comagena*, *Palmyrene*, and *Cœlo-Syria*, into many petit Regions, and Subdivisions, as 1 *Pieria*. 2 *Casiotis*, from the hills adjoyning. 3 *Seleucis*. 4 *Apamene*, 5 *Laodicene*. 6 *Cyrrhestica*. 7 *Chalcidice*. And 8 *Chalybanotis*, from their principal Cities. Of which in all he musters up the names of an hundred and upwards, then of some note, most of them now grown out of knowledg, and many of them of no mark or observation in the course of business. So that omitting his method, we will follow our own, and take notice only of such places as ancient were, or at this present are, of most observation and importance in the course of Story: with reference notwithstanding to the subdivisions made by *Ptolomy*, as they come in my way, reckoning *Cyrrhestica*, *Chalybanotis*, *Casiotis*, and the Territories of *Seleucus*, *Laodicea*, and *Apamea*, into *Syria Propria*; and *Pieria* into *Comagena*.

First then to begin with those Cities which lye most towards the East, we have in *Cyrrhestica*, 1 *Zeugma*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, memorable for the passage of *Alexander* the *Great*, who there passed over his Army on a Bridg of Boats. 2 *Berræa*, supposed by some both ancient and modern Writers, to be that which is now called *Aleppo*, but the position of the place agreeth not with that supposition; *Aleppo* being placed by our modern *Cosmographers*, in the 72 degree of *Longitude*, and the 38 of *Latitude*: whereas *Berræa* is assigned by *Ptolomy*, to the 36 degree of *Latitude*, and the 71 of *Longitude*. Besides that, the River *Singas*, on which *Aleppo* is situate, keepeth it self almost on an even course in the *Latitude* of 37. between 20 and 30 minutes over: which is more by a degree and a half than the site assigned unto *Berræa*. 3 *Cybros*, as in the *Latin* Copies of *Ptolomy* mistook for *Cyrrhus*, once the chief City of this part, from hence called *Cyrrhestica*. 4 *Heraclea*, near which *Minerva* had a Temple; in which, as in that sacred to her in *Laodicea*, they used once yearly to offer a *Virgin* for a Sacrifice, but afterwards on the sight of that gross impiety, changed it to an *Hart*. 5 *Ragia*, now *Rugia*, two days journey from *Antioch*, took by the Christians in the be-

ginning of the Wars for the *Holy Land*. 6 *Hierapolis*, of great renown in thoſe dark times of Ignorance and Idolatry for the *Syrian Goddeſs* therein worſhipped; from whence it had the name of *Hierapolis*, or the *Holy City*: being formerly by the *Græcians* called *Callinice*; by the *Syrians*, *Magog*; one of the firſt ſeats of *Magog* the Son of *Japhet*, and from him denominated. The *Goddeſs* ſo eſteemed of in thoſe wretched times, that from all parts, *Aſſyria*, *Babylonia*, *Arabia*, *Cilicia*, *Cappadocia*, and indeed what not, they brought her many rich gifts and coſtly offerings. *Nero* himſelf, who ſcoffed at all Religions elſe, being for a while a great Votary of this *Syrian* Idol, though afterwards he grew weary of her, and defiled her with urine. The Temple built by *Stratonice*, the wife of *Seleucus*, in the midſt of the City, compaſſed with a double wall, about the heighth of 300 fathom: the roof thereof inlaid with God, and made of ſuch a fragrant and ſweet-ſmelling wood, that the cloaths of them which came thither retained the ſent thereof for a long time after. Without the Temple there were places incloſed for Oxen, and Beaſts of ſacrifice; and not far off a Lake of 200 fathom in depth, wherein they kept their ſacred fiſhes: the Prieſts attending here for their ſeveral Offices, amounting in number to three hundred, beſides many more ſubſervient Miniſters. The tricks and jugglings of theſe Prieſts to deceive the people, he that liſt to ſee may find them copiouſly deſcribed in the *Metamorphoſis* of *Apuleius*: which, changing but the names and times, may ſerve for a relation of thoſe gulleries and Arts of *Leger-de-main* which the *Friers* and *Pardoners* have practiced in the Church of *Rome*. 7 *Chalyban*, whence the parts adjoyning were called *Chalybanotis*; conceived by *Poſtellus*, and ſome others to be *Chalepium*, or *Aleppo*, but on no good ground; this City having one degree leſs of Northern Latitude, than *Berræa* had. 8 *Barbariſſus*, in the ſame ſubdiviſion, near the banks of *Euphrates*. 9 *Chalcis*, the principal of that part of *Syria Propria*, which is called *Chalcidice*, but not otherwiſe memorable. 10 *Telmediſſa*, another Town of the ſame diviſion, and as little famous. 11 *Seleucia*, ſo named from the Founder of it, the firſt Eaſtern Monarch of that Race, and the greateſt Builder of the World, founding nine Cities of this name, ſixteen in memory of his Father *Antiochus*, ſix by the name of *Laodice* his Mother, and three in honour of *Apamia* his firſt Wife; beſides many others of great note in *Greece* and *Aſia*, either new built, or beautified and repaired by him. From this, the Country hereabouts had the name of *Seleucis*. 12 *Laodicea*, one of the Cities founded by *Seleucus*, in honour of *Laodice* his Mother, from which the Region adjoyning is called *Laodicene*: Built by him in the place where formerly ſtood the City *Rhamantus*, ſo called from a certain Shepherd, who being ſtrook with a flaſh of lightning, cryed out amazedly *Rhamantus*, that is to ſay, *Deus ab excelſo*; before which time it had been named *Leuca Acte*, from the whiteneſs of the Sea-cliffs near to which it is ſituate: the Country round about commended anciently for the beſt Wines, and choice of very excellent Fruits. 13 *Apamea*, ſo named in honour of *Apamia*, the Wife of *Seleucus*; which together with *Laodicea* and *Seleucia* before mentioned, having the ſame Founder, and maintaining a ſtrict League of amity with one another, were commonly called the Three Siſters. From this the Country near is called *Apamene*. 14 *Emeſa*, (now *Hamſe*) the Epiſcopal See of *Euſebius*, hence called *Emeſenus*, who flouriſhed in the time of *Conſtantius*, the Son of *Conſtantine*: in whoſe name are extant certain Homilies, juſtly conceived to be of a later date. The City ſeated in a ſpacious and fruitful Plain of *Apamene*, watered with many pleaſant and cheerful Riverets: once of great note, as may eaſily be conjectured from the walls hereof, which are ſtill perfect and entire, built of poliſhed ſtone, and of very large circuit; but the dwelling-houſes ſo decayed, that it affordeth nothing worthy obſervation. 15 *Epiphania*, in the cantred or ſubdiviſion of *Caſiotis*; called at firſt *Hamath*, from *Hamath* a Son of *Canaan*, the founder of it; and upon that account miſtaken by St. *Hierome* for another Town of the ſame name, in the Tribe of *Naphthali*; ſo different from this place both in Longitude and Latitude (as we ſhall ſhew hereafter when we come to *Paleſtine*) that they can by no means be the ſame. But that old Town being gone to ruin, it was repaired, if not re-edified by *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, who thereupon commanded it to be called *Epiphania*; obeyed therein as *Joſephus* telleth us, by the *Macedonians*, though the *Syrians* ſtill called it *Amatha*, as in former times, *Antiq. l.* 1. *c.* 7. 16 *Lariſſa*, which ſtill preſerveth its old name, being now called *Laris*; much mentioned in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, eſpecially for the death of *Baldwin* the firſt, Brother of *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, and ſecond King of *Hieruſalem*, *Anno* 1118. 17 *Gebal*, the *Gabala* of *Ptolomy*, and others of the ancient Writers, ſituate on the South of *Laodicea*, from which twelve miles diſtant; mentioned *Pſal.* 83. as a confederate with *Tyre*, and other uncircumciſed Nations, in their hatred and deſigns againſt the *Iſraelites*: at this day called *Gabella* (with little difference from the old name of it) and by that name remembred in the Stories of the *Holy Wars*. 18 *Albaria*, diſtant two days march from *Antioch*, remembred alſo in the Wars of the *Holy Land*. 19 *Aradus*, one of the Co-founders of *Tripolis*, ſituate in a rocky Iſland of a mile in compaſs, directly oppoſite to the mouth or influx of the River *Eleutherus*, and diſtant from the Continent about twenty furlongs. So called from *Arvad*, one of the Sons of *Canaan*, and mentioned by that name in the Prophet *Ezek.* 27. 8, 11. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, containing not this Iſland only, but ſome part of the Continent; eſpecially about *Antaradus* (ſo called becauſe built over againſt it) ſituate on the Northern banks of the River *Eleutherus*, of which we have ſpoken in *Phœnicia*. 20 *Daphne*, about five miles from *Antioch*; but afterwards by the continual enlargements of that City, accounted as the Suburb to it; ſo named of *Daphne*, one of the Miſtreſſes of *Apollo*, who was here worſhipped by the name of *Apollo Daphnæus*, and had here his *Oracle* and his *Groves*, with other the Additaments appertaining unto thoſe Idolatries: as much eſteemed of, but more ſumptuous than thoſe of *Delphos*. The Grove about ten miles in circuit, environed round with *Cypreſſes*, and other trees, ſo tall and cloſe to one another, that they ſuffered not the Sun to enter in his greateſt heats: the ground perpetually covered with the choiceſt Tapeſtry of Nature, watered with many a pleaſant ſtream, derived from the *Caſtalian* Fountains as it was given out; and yielding the moſt excellent Fruits both for taſte and tincture, to which the wind and air participating the ſweetneſs of the place, did add a moſt delightful influence.

A place deviſed for pleaſure, but abuſed to luſt; he being held unworthy of the name of a man, who tranſformed not himſelf unto a Beaſt, or trod on this unholy ground without his *Curtezan*, inſomuch as they which had a care of their good names, did forbear to haunt it. A fuller deſcription of it he that liſts to ſee, may find in the firſt Book and eighteenth Chapter of *Sozomen*'s *Eccleſiaſtical* Hiſtory, who is copious in it. The Temple ſaid to have been built by *Seleucus* alſo, renowned for the Oracle there given, by which *Adrian* was foretold of his being Emperour; and therefore much reſorted to by *Julian* the *Apoſtata*, for that purpoſe alſo. But the body of

Babylas

Babylas the *Martyr* and Bishop of *Antioch*, being removed thither by the command of his Brother *Gallus*, then created *Cæsar* by *Constantius*, the Devil and his *Oracles* were both frighted away, as the Devil did himself confess to *Julian*; who being desirous to learn here the success of his intended Expedition into *Persia*, received this Answer, That no *Oracle* could be given so long as those Divine Bones were so near the Shrine. Nor was it long after, before the *Idol* and the *Temple* were consumed by a fire from Heaven, as was avowed by those who observed the fall of it; though *Julian* did impute it to the innocent *Christians*, and in revenge caused many of their Churches to be burned to ashes. 21 *Antioch*, situate in that part hereof which is called *Casiotis*, first built, or began rather by *Antigonus*, when Lord of *Asia*, by whom named *Antigonia*, but finished and enlarged by *Seleucus*, after he had overthrown and slain him at the Battel of *Issus*. Built near the place, and partly out of the Ruins of an ancient City, in the second Book of *Kings* called *Riblah in the Land of Hamath*; *Hamath the Great*, in the sixth of *Amos*; by *Josephus* and the *Syrians*, *Reblata*. Memorable in those days for the Tragedies of *Jehoahas* and *Zedechias*, Kings of *Judah*; the first of which was here deprived of his Crown and Liberty, by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*, 2 *King.* 23. 33. the other of his Eyes and Children, by the command of *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, as was said before. In following times it was by some *Greek* Writers called *Epidaphne*, from the nearness of it to that *Grove:* as afterwards in the times of *Christianity*, by the name of *Theopolis*, or the City of God; either from the many Miracles there done in the Primitive time, or from the great improvement which the *Christian* Faith did here receive, where the *Disciples* first obtained the name of *Christians*. The Royal Seat for many Ages of the Kings of *Syria*; and in the flouriſh and best fortune of the *Roman* Empire, the ordinary Residence of the *Præfect* or Governour of the Eastern Provinces; next, of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, who had not only the superintendency over the *Dioceſe* of the *Orient*, though that large enough; but also of the Dioceses of *Ægypt*, *Asia*, *Pontus*, *Thrace*, extending so his Jurisdiction into all the parts of the then known World. Honoured also with the Residence of many of the *Roman* Emperours, especially of *Verus* and *Valens*, who spent here the greatest part of their times; and from the first dawning of the Gospel, with the seat of the *Patriarch*. A Title of such eminency in all times of the Church, the second in accompt to the See of *Rome* (till *Constantinople* being made the Imperial City, got precedence of it) that there are at this time no less than four great Prelates which pretend unto it; that is to say, the *true Patriarch*, governing the *Christians* of those parts, whom they call *Syrians* or *Melchites*; the *Pseudo-Patriarchs* of the *Jacobite* and *Maronite* Sectaries, both which, for the greater credit to their *Schism*, do assume this Title; and finally, a *titular Patriarch* nominated by the Pope, who since the time that the *Western Christians* were possessed of these *Eastern* Countries, hath assumed a power unto himself of nominating *Patriarchs* for *Alexandria*, *Hierusalem*, and this City of *Antioch*.

The City seated on both sides of the River *Orontes*, about twelve miles distant from the Shores of the *Mediterranean*; the River *Pharfar* passing on the South-side of it. By Art and Nature fortified even to admiration; compassed with a double Wall, the outermost of which was of Stone, the other of Brick, with four hundred and sixty Towers in the Walls, and an impregnable Castle at the East-end thereof; and on the other side defended with big broken Mountains, whereunto was adjoyning a deep Lake, coming out of the River *Pharfar*, before-mentioned. Adorned in former times with many sumptuous Palaces, and magnificent Temples, answerable to the Reputation of so great a City; till taken by the *Saracens*, and after by the *Turks* and *Mamalucks*, men careless of all State and Beauty in their fairest Cities, it began to grow unto decay. Recovered by the *Western Christians* from the power of the *Turks*, after a Siege of seven Months, *June* 3. *Anno* 1098. confirmed in their possession by a great and memorable Victory, got in the very sight hereof within few days after (*June* 28.) obtained against *Corbanas*, Lieutenant to the *Persian Sultan*; in which, with the loss of four thousand and two hundred of their own, they slew a hundred thousand of the Enemy. The Town and Territory given by the Conquerors to *Bohemund* a Noble *Norman*, and Prince of *Tarentum*; who by practising with one *Pyrrhus*, who had the command of one of the chief Towers thereof, afterwards called St. *Georges* Tower, was secretly let into the City, and so made way for all the rest. *Bohemund* thus made the Prince, or as some say, King of *Antioch*, left it to *Bohemund* his Son about ten years after; succeeded in this Principate by *Tancred* and *Roger*, Princes of great Renown in those *Holy Wars*; which last unfortunately slain by the *Turks*, not far from *Aleppo*, in the year 1120. *Baldwin* the second having revenged his death by a signal Victory, joyned this Estate to the Kingdom of *Hierusalem*. Betrayed above sixty years after this, that is to say, in the year 1188. it came into the Power of *Saladine*, the victorious King of *Ægypt* and *Damascus*, and therewithal no fewer than five and twenty Cities which depended on the fortunes of it: the glories of this famous City so declining after this last *Tragedy* (but whether laid desolate of set purpose, or destroyed by the injury of the time, I am not able to declare) that it is grown the Sepulchre of what once it was, and lieth buried in its own sad Ruins, hardly preserving the repute of a sorry Village. Such is the instability of all worldly Glories. Some other Towns there are in this part of *Syria*, but not to be remembred the same day with *Antioch*.

As for the Story of this Province, as a State distinct, we find it had a King of its own, called the King of *Hamath* (the Kingdom of *Toi* or *Tou* before remembred) who together with the King of *Arphad*, commanded in this part of *Syria*, and the Isles adjoyning. Vassals in time succeeding to the Kings of *Tyre*, who lorded it over all the Sea-coasts hereof, and consequently had great influence on the Inlands also. And it continued in this State till the *Assyrian* Kings began to turn their Forces Westward; when added to that Empire by *Tiglath Pileser*, after the subversion of the Kingdom of *Damascus*; or by *Salmanasser*, after the destruction of that of *Israel*. The proud but dreadful vant which *Sennacherib*, the Successor of those mighty Monarchs, made to *Hezekiah*, viz. *Where are the Gods of Hamath and Arphad?* shews clearly, that those Kingdoms had been conquered not long before; and therefore needs by *Salmanasser*, or *Tiglath Pileser*. Afterwards, in the struglings betwixt the *Babylonians* and *Ægyptians*, for the chief Command, it was a while at the devotions of the King of *Ægypt*, it being at *Reblatha* in this Province, that *Jehoahaz* King of *Judah* was put into Bonds, by the command of *Pharaoh Necho*, as was said before. But *Necho* being not long after vanquished by *Nebuchadnezzar* King of *Babylon*, it returned again to that Crown, and after followed the same fortunes with the rest of *Syria*.

3 COMAGENA.

COMAGENA is bounded on the East with the River *Euphrates*, by which parted from *Mesopotamia*; on the West, with the Mountains called *Amanus*, which divide it from *Cilicia*; on the North, with *Taurus*, by which separated from *Armenia Minor*; on the South, with *Palmyrene*. Called also *Euphratensis* and *Euphratesia*, when a *Roman* Province, by reason of its situation bordering on that River.

The reason of the name I find not amongst my Authors: but find that many Learned men conceive it to be that part of *Syria*, which the Scriptures call *Syria Maacah*, mention whereof is made 1 *Chron. chap. 19. ver.6.* gain-sayed by others, because they find a place called *Maacha* in the Tribe of *Manasses*; but with no great reason, as I take it. For being it is joyned (in 1 *Chron. 19. v.6.* above-mentioned) in the same action with *Mesopotamia*, and *Syria Sobah*; and not so only, but placed between them in the Method of that holy Penman, I dare not think but that they were all very near neighbours, and ranked according to the natural situation of them. Which agreeth very well with the site of *Comagena*, having *Mesopotamia* on the East, and *Aram-Sobah* on the South. Nor is it any stronger proof unto the contrary, that *Maacha* is a Town of the Tribe of *Manasses*; than if a man should say, that there is no such Province as *Mansfield* in *High Germany*, because there is a Town of that name in *England*; or no such place as *Savoy* amongst the *Alpes*, because there is a House of that name in *London*.

As for the People hereof, besides what they have common with the rest of the *Syrians*, they were of old much given unto *Divination*, and for that cause derided thus in the sixth *Satyr* of *Juvenal*.

Spondet amatorem tenerum vel divitis orbi
Testamentum ingens, calidæ pulmone Columbæ
Tractato, Armenius *vel* Comagenus *Aruspex*,
Pectora pullorum rimabitur, exta Catelli,
Interdum & pueri. Faciat quod deferat ipse.

Thus Englished by my honoured Friend Sir *Robert Stapylton*.

A childless rich mans Legacy, or young Love,
Are found i'th' Lights of a warm trembling Dove,
By *Comagene* Sooth-sayers; they look into
A dead Chicks breast, the same the *Armenians* do.
They view the Entrails of a Dog, and reach
A Child perhaps: They do it, and then preach.

Chief places of this part, 1 *Samosata*, the *Metropolis* or head City of it, when a *Roman* Province, situate neer the Banks of *Euphrates*, over which it had a Bridg for passage into *Mesopotamia*. Unfortunate for being the birth-place of *Lucian*, that profane Scoffer of *Christianity*, though otherwise a man of a quick Wit, and of great Abilities: as also of *Paulus Samosatenus*, Patriarch of *Antioch*, condemned of *Heresie* in a Council holden in his own City, *Anno* 273. (by the great and most learned Bishops of that Age, there assembled together) for teaching, That our Saviour was no other than a natural man; but neither God, nor the Son of God, as the Scriptures testifie. 2 *Germanicia* (by some called *Germanicopolis*) on the other side of the Country, near the Mountain *Amanus*; no less unfortunate than the former, in being the birth-place of *Nestorius*, Patriarch of *Constantinople*, who troubling the Peace of the Church with *Heterodoxie*, and impertinent nicities about the blessed Mother of Christ, as also about the Nature and Person of Christ himself, was thereupon condemned of *Heresie* in the Council of *Ephesus*, *Anno* 435. In former times called *Adata*, as some write *Adapa*; but took this new name from *Germanicus Cæsar*, in honour of whom it was made a *Roman* Colony by *Augustus*, testified by this Inscription extant in *Onuphrius*, viz. *COLONIA JULIA GERMANICIA, SACRA, AUGUSTA, FOELIX.* 3 *Singa*, so called from the River upon which it is situate. 4 *Antiochiæ penes Taurum*, so called because seated at the foot of that Mountain, to difference it from the other of this name in *Syria*. 5 *Pinara*, one of the chief Cities of that part which is called *Pieria*. 6 *Doliche*, a small Town, but made an Episcopal See in the best times of the Churth, as appeareth by the Acts of the Councils of *Antioch* and *Constantinople*, in which there is some mention of the Bishops of it. 7 *Aleppo*, now the principal of all the Country, supposed by some to be the *Sepharvaim*, mentioned 2 *King.* 17. 24. It was thus called as some say from *Halep*, which in the Language of those parts signifieth Milk, afforded liberally by the rich Pastures round about it: as others more improbably from *Aleph*, the first Letter of the *Hebrew* Alphabet, because the first in estimation of the Cities of *Syria*: Most probably from *Alepius*, Lieutenant here in the time of *Julian* the *Apostata*, who did here many notable Exploits, and amongst others, in or near the Ruins of some old Town of these parts, not yet agreed on (in case it be not *Sepharvaim* before mentioned) advanced this City. Situate on the banks of the River *Singas*, which rising out of the Hill *Pierius*, with many windings and turnings runneth through *Comagena*, and there falleth into *Euphrates*. Destroyed by *Haalon*, King of the *Tartars*, at such time as the Western Christians were possessed of this Country, and the Holy Land: but being repaired and re-peopled, became by reason of the commodious situation of it, to be much frequented by Merchants from all parts of the World. Situate in the midst betwixt *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, and *Alexandretta*, the three prime Ports of *Turkie* on the one side; and the *Persian* Territories on the other: it was made choice of for the Staple of the Eastern Commodities, brought to *Euphrates*, and then boated to this Town by the River *Singas*. A City of great Trade at present, the *English* Merchants (amongst others which frequent the same) having here three Houses for the Stowage and disposing of their Commodities; and a chief Officer or *Superintendent* over the whole *Factory*, whom they call the *Consul* of *Aleppo*. But greater was the Trade hereof in the former times, before the *Portugals* found out a way by Sea to those Eastern Countries, since followed by the *English*, *Hollanders*, and other Nations. The building of it low, but of one Roof high (as in most Towns of *Syria*) with a plain top plaistered to walk upon; and with Arches before their doors or Houses, as well to pass dry under them in time of Rain, as to shew their Wares. Pleasantly seated amongst Gardens, with the sweet smells whereof very much refreshed; the ordinary Residence of a *Turkish Bassa*; safe rather in the remoteness of it from any Enemy, than the strength of the place, as being nothing less than well fortified. Near one of the Gates they shew a Sepulchre, by them affirmed to be Saint *Georges* (whom of all the *Christian* Saints they only worship) before which they maintain a Lamp which burns continually. 8 *Aman*, in the way betwixt *Tripoli* and *Aleppo*, supposed by some to be that *Hamath*, mention whereof is made 2 *King. chap.* 17. 12. A City of a large circuit, pleasantly seated on two Hills, which give it a fair prospect over six of the neighbouring Villages; a thing not to be boasted of, as the World now goeth, by many of the *Syrian* Cities. On a third Hill once stood a Castle, now decayed, ruinous; beneath

it

it a fair River which runs gently by it, environed round about with Orchards of Palm-trees, and very good fruits. 9 *Chalmodora*, ſeated by *Ptolomy* on *Euphrates*, of which no ruins now remaining; unleſs the name be changed to 10 *Byrrha*, as perhaps it may be: that being made by *Ptolomy*, the moſt Northern Town of *Comagena*; this the utmoſt Town which the *Ægyptian Mamalucks* (then Lords of *Syria*) had upon this River, and the boundary betwixt them and the Sultans of *Perſia*. Memorable for an old Ceremony here uſed by thoſe *Mamalucks*, who accounted not themſelves worthy of the name of a Sultan of *Ægypt*, till in this place in ſolemn pomp in the ſight of their Army, they had forced their Horſe into the River, and made him drink of the waters of it: teſtifying by that Ceremony as well the extent of their Dominions, as their readineſs to defend the ſame againſt all Invaders. A Ceremony performed with great State by *Camſon Gaurus*, in the War betwixt him and *Selimus* the firſt. But for all this he loſt the field, and his life to boot in the fight near *Aleppo*: and therewith did not only leave him *Syria*, as the fruits of his victory; but opened him a fair way to the conqueſt of *Egypt*, which ſoon after followed. And hereto I refer the Cities of 11 *Hena*, and 12 *Ivah*, with their ſeveral Territories; mentioned together with the City of *Sepharvaim*, *Iſa.* 37. 13. and 2 *King.* 18. 34. it being probable, that if *Sepharvaim* were the City now called *Aleppo*, as the *Jews* that dwell there ſay it was; that then the other two joyned together with it, muſt be hereabouts, though we find no tract of them in the old *Geographers*.

And if they were (as it ſeems probable to me) we have then more Kings in this Province in the elder times, than the King of *Maacha*; unleſs perhaps it may be ſaid that the Kingdom of *Maacha* (or of *Aram-Maacah*) being broken in pieces, theſe petit States aroſe from the ruins of it. Of little obſervation in the courſe of buſineſs, whether entire or ſubdivided into parcels: but that the King hereof (the King of *Maacha*) aided the *Ammonites* againſt *David* with 1000 men: no very great number I confeſs (as one who lay more out of the danger than the reſt of the *Syrian* Confederates did) but ſufficient to engage him in the quarrel with them. Nor find we anything after this touching their affairs, but that the Kings of *Hena*, *Ivah* and *Sepharvaim* (who ſhared the greateſt part amongſt them) being ſwallowed up by the *Aſſyrians* (as the forementioned Texts do expreſly ſay) ſome Colonies of the people hereof were ſent by *Salmanaſſer* the *Aſſyrian* Monarch, to plant the deſolate dwellings of the Tribes of *Iſrael*, as appeareth plainly in 2 *King.* 17. 24. A courſe in which the Conquerour dealt exceeding wiſely; weakning thereby the great Cities and mightier States of this Country, which otherwiſe might have been apt enough to revolt again; and ſtrengthning therewithal their conqueſts in the Land of *Iſrael*, which otherwiſe had lain open to the next Invader, and yielded little or no profit to the publick Treaſury. More politick in this than the *Babylonians* in the like diſſolution & deſtruction of the Kingdom of *Judah*. After this time it followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Syria*, till *Tigranes* the laſt King hereof was ſubdued by the *Romans*: At what time all the reſt of *Syria* being reduced under the form of a Province, this part being then in the poſſeſſion of *Antiochus*, ſon of that *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Euſebes*, whom *Tigranes* had ſpoiled of his eſtates, was left unto him by the Conquerours with the title of King. Continuing in his Line till the death of another *Antiochus*, the laſt King hereof, when made a Province of the Empire by *Tiberius Cæſar*, as is ſaid by *Tacitus*; *Qu. Servæus* being ſent hither as the firſt *Roman Prætor* for the government of it; though *Sueton* doth refer it to the times of *Veſpaſian*.

4. *PALMYRENE.*

PALMYRENE is bounded on the Eaſt, by the River *Euphrates*; on the Weſt, by *Syria* properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the North, with *Comagena*; and on the South, with Mount *Libanus*, dividing it from the Province of *Cœlo-Syria*, and part of *Arabia Deſerta*.

It took this name from *Palmyra* the chief City of it. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a diſtinct Province of it ſelf, it had the name of *Syria Secunda*, and *Salutaris*: Called *Syria Secunda*, to diſtinguiſh it from *Syria* ſpecially ſo called, which by them was named *Syria Prima*; and *Salutaris*, in regard of the *medicinal* waters ſpringing in many places of it. But before it had any of theſe names, it was in the Scriptures called *Aram-Sobah*, whereof *Adad-ezar* was King in the time of *David*, as we read 2 *Sam.* 8. 3. and 1 *Chron.* 18. 3.

The Country deſtitute of Rivers fit for Navigation, ſave that it bordereth on *Euphrates*; but liberally furniſhed with thoſe hot Springs good for many Diſeaſes, which gave it the name of *Salutaris*. Of which thus writeth *Marcellinus* lib. 14. *In his tractibus navigerum, nuſquam viſitur flumen, at in locis plurimis aquæ ſuapte natura calentes emergunt, ad uſum aptæ multiplicium medelarum.* So he, The ſenſe whereof we had before.

Places of moſt obſervation, are 1 *Palmyra*, ſeated in a Deſart and ſandy Plain, one of the Cities built by *Solomon* in the *Wilderneſs*, mention of which is made 1 *King.* 9. 17, 18. this *Palmyra* being ſuppoſed to be that City which is there called *Tadmar*, or *Tamar* in the *Vulgar Latin*. The cauſe for long time of much contention betwixt the *Parthians* and the *Romans*, as ſituate in the borders of either Empire; not fully ſetled in the *Roman*, till that they had ſubdued *Zenobia*, then the Queen hereof. By *Adrian* the Emperour, who repaired it, it was called *Hadrianople*, but it held not long; the old name in ſhort prevailing above the new. 2 *Gezer*. 3 *Bethhoron* the upper. And 4 *Bethhoron* the neather, ſaid to be fenced Cities with *Walls*, *Gates*, and *Bars*, 2 *Chron.* 8. 4. And 5 *Baalath*, four of the other Towns here built by *Solomon*; but either quite worn out of knowledg, or called by new names in the time of *Ptolomy*, who ſaith nothing of them. 6 *Adada*, built as the name doth intimate, by ſome of the *Adads*, Kings of this Country, or of *Damaſcus*, to which laſt made ſubject. 7 *Sura*, more towards the River *Euphrates*, in the *Notitia*, called *Flavia Firma Sura*; which ſheweth that it was either repaired, or made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, whoſe fore-name was *Flavius*: honoured with an Epiſcopal See alſo in the times next following, as appeareth by the Acts of the Council of *Conſtantinople*. 8 *Alamath*, on the banks of the River *Euphrates*, which if it were lawful for me to *criticize* upon my Author, I ſhould conceive to be that *Hamath* of the Scriptures, which is called *Hamath-Sobah*, 2 *Chro.* 8. 3. againſt which *Solomon* prevailed: the miſtake from *Camatha* to *Alamatha*, being not uneaſie in the *tranſcripts*. Confirmed herein by that paſſage in 2 *Chron.* 18. 3. where it is ſaid, that *David* ſmote *Hadad-ezar* King of *Sobah* unto *Hamath*, *as he went to eſtabliſh his Dominion by the River Euphrates*: By which it ſeemeth that *Hamath* ſtood upon that River, as the *Camatha* or *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* is ſaid ſo do. And if it were the ſame, as I think it was, I ſhould conceive it to be the chief ſeat of thoſe Kings, and the principal City of this Kingdom: the word *Sobah*, being added to it, not only for diſtinctions ſake; but in way of eminency. But if the judicious Reader approve not this criticiſm, I ſhould next think that this *Alamatha* of *Ptolomy* were

that

that *Ælam*, or *Helaus*, next unto which *David* discomfited that great Army of the *Mesopotamians*, mention whereof is made 2 *Sam.*10.16,17. 9 *Rasapha*, a Town of note in the time of *Ptolomy*; but of greater in the holy Scripture, where it is represented to us by the name of *Reseph*, *Isa.*37.20. *Reseph Civitas Syriæ*, as Saint *Hierom* hath it: and if a Town of *Syria*, then most like this. 10 *Betah*, and 11 *Berothai*, two other Cities of this Kingdom, taken by *David* in his War against *Hadadezar*, 2 *Sam.*8.8. the last supposed to be the *Barathene* of *Ptolomy*, though placed by him among the Towns of *Arabia* the *Desart*, to which it seems it was alotted in the change of time.

This part of *Syria*, as the rest, was once a distinct Kingdom of it self, by the name of the Kingdom of *Sobah*, or of *Aram-Sobah*. The first King thereof, whose name occurs in holy Scripture, being *Rehob*, the Co-temporary of *Saul* King of *Israel*, by whom discomfited in battel, as is said 1 *Sam.*14.47. But *Adad-ezar* the Son of *Rehob*, a Prince of greater power and valour than his Father was, having brought all the neighbouring Kings under his command, (as is said 2 *Sam.*10.19.) conceived himself a fit match for *David*, and thereupon opposed his passage, *as he went to recover his border at the River Euphrates.* In which action though he lost a thousand Chariots, and twenty thousand Foot, and seven hundred Horse, yet would he not so end the war; but first with the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, and after with the *Ammonites* and their Confederates, and finally by the aid of the *Mesopotamians*, renewed the quarrel. But being discomfited also in this last enterprize with the loss of forty thousand and seven hundred men, and his life to boot, the Kingdom of *Zobah* was brought under by the Kings of *Damascus*. The story of this war we have in 2 *Sam. ch.* 8. *v.* 10. in 1 *Chron. ch.* 18. and 1 *King.* 11.23,24. yet were not the *Kings* of *Damascus* so well setled in it, but that *David* had possessed himself of *Betah* and *Berothai*, and other pieces of importance: the Regal City of *Hamath Sobah* being won by *Solomon*, and many of the best Towns of it built by him to assure his conquest. But the Kingdom of *Solomon* being rent in pieces in the next Succession, the Kingdom of *Zobah* fell again unto those of *Damascus:* and so continued till *Damascus* it self was conquered by the Kings of *Assyria:* unless perhaps that *Hamath*, which *Jeroboam* the second is said to have subdued (together with *Damascus* it self) to the Crown of *Israel*, 2 *King.* 14.28. were this *Hamath-Sobah*, as perhaps it was.

After this nothing memorable in the affairs of this Country, till the time of *Gallienus* the *Roman* Emperour: during whose reign, amongst the rest who *cantoned* that Empire betwixt themselves (commonly called the Thirty Tyrants) *Odenatus* a man of great power and vertue assumed the Imperial habit, and took unto him the *command* of these parts of *Syria*, together with *Mesopotamia*, and some other Provinces, which he had conquered from *Sapores* the King of *Persia*; against whom he had so good an hand, that he discomfited him in battel, seized upon his Treasures, and took many of his Nobles, and most of his Concubines. For which great acts admitted partner in the Empire by *Gallienus*, he was not long after slain by *Mœonius* his Cosin German. Who by that murder hoped to obtain the Principality of *Palmyrene* (for by that name it was now called) but in that deceived. For after his death, *Zenobia* his unfortunate Widow, a most masculine Lady, not only preserved the principality of *Palmyrene* for the use of her Children; but took upon her both the *Purple habit*, and the command of his Army: which she managed with great wisdom and gallantry, the rest of the time of *Gallienus*, and all the reigns of *Claudius*, and *Quintillius*, his two next Successors. But vanquished and took Prisoner by *Aurelianus* (who had the happiness to unite the broken limbs of that Empire into as strong a body as ever formerly) she was led in triumph through *Rome*. The terrour of her name, and the unusualness of the sight, so heightning the general expectation; *Ut ea specie nihil unquam esset pompabilius*, saith *Trebellius Pollio*, That never any shew was esteemed so glorious. A Lady of so strong a vertue, and of such command upon her self, that she is said never to have made use of her husbands company, when she perceived her self with child. After this nothing singular in the story of *Palmyrene*, but that when all the rest of *Syria* was subdued by the *Christians* of the West, this Province and the next only was made good against them by the *Turkish* Sultans of *Damascus*.

5. *COELO-SYRIA.*

COELO-SYRIA is bounded on the East with *Palmyrene*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with *Palestine*; on the North, with *Palmyrene*, and some part of *Syria Propria*, from which divided by the interposition of Mount *Libanus*; on the South, with *Ituræa*, and *Arabia Deserta* also.

This is the *Syria* so much mentioned in the Books of *Kings* and *Chronicles*, called by the *Greeks*, *Cœlo-Syria*, i.e. *Syria Cava*, because partly situate in the hollow Vallies interjected betwixt *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; and sometimes also *Syro-Phœnicia*, from the intermixture of those people; as the *Phœnicians* which went with *Dido* into *Affrick*, were called *Libo-Phœnices*. By the *Romans*, when made a distinct Province of that Empire, it had the name of *Phœnice Libani*, or *Phœnicia Libanensis*, to difference it from the other *Phœnicia*, which they call *Maritima*. But before all this by the *Hebrews* named *Aram-Damasek*, *Syria-Damascena* in the *Latin*, from *Damascus* the chief City of it: unless perhaps we should rather say, that *Aram-Damasek* contained only that which lay between the Mountains of *Libanus* and *Anti-Libanus*; the rest being added by the *Romans*, out of the neighbouring parts of *Palestine* and *Arabia Deserta*, as perhaps it was.

Chief Rivers hereof, are 1 *Abana*, and 2 *Pharfar*, the Rivers of *Damascus*, as the Scripture calleth them, 2 *King.*5. The one of which is thought to be the River *Adonis*, spoken of already; the other that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chrysorrhoas*, or the Golden flood; which rising in the Hills of this Country, passeth by *Damascus*, and so together with the other into the *Mediterranean* Sea. Chief Mountains of it, 1 *Alsadamus*, by the *Phœnicians* called *Syrion*, by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; a ridge of Hills which beginning at the East-point of *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly Southwards, shutting up on that side the Land of *Israel*, whereof more in *Palestine*. 2 *Hippus*, a ledge of Mountains in the South parts of this Province, where it bordereth on *Arabia Deserta*.

Towns of most consideration in it. 1 *Heliopolis*, so called from an Image of the Sun there worshipped in the time of *Paganism*; now *Bellebec*, or (as some say) *Balbec*. 2 *Chalcis*, more Eastward toward *Damascus*, which gave the title of a King to *Ptolomy Menæus*, and his son *Lysanias*, the Kingdom then extending over the City of *Abila*, and the whole Province of *Ituræa* in *Palestine*. But that Family being either expired, or grown out of favour, and *Abila* with *Ituræa* otherwise disposed of; the title of the King of *Chalcis*, with the Town and Territory, was given to *Herod*, brother of *Agrippa* the first, King of *Jewry*. Erroneously supposed by some learned men to be that *Chalcis*, from which the Country called

Chalcidice

Chalcidice takes denomination; that *Chalcis* being placed by *Ptolomy* a degree and a half more East than *Damascus*, and two degrees more towards the North; whereas this *Chalcis* lieth on the West of that City, in the shades of *Libanus*, and in the very same degree of Northern *Latitude*. 3 *Abila*, seated at the foot of *Libanus*, betwixt *Heliopolis* and *Chalcis*, from whence the Country round about it is called *Abilene*; given to *Lysanias*, the Son of the former *Lysanias*, King of *Chalcis*, with the Title of *Tetrach*, Mentioned *Luk.* 3. 1. with those other Princes which shared *Palestine* amongst them. Not that he was the Son of *Herod*, as anciently *Beda* and *Euthymius*, and of late times some very industrious men have been of opinion: but partly because the Cities of the *Chalcis* and *Abila* of right belonged to those of the Tribe of *Napthalim* (though never conquered or possessed by them) and so to be accompted a part of *Palestine*; and partly because the *Tetrarchy* of *Abilene*, when Saint *Luke* wrote that Gospel, was possessed together with the rest by King *Agrippa*. Restored (as it seemeth) to the former Family, after his decease; for known it was by the name of *Abila Lysaniæ* in the time of *Ptolomy*. 4 *Adida*, memorable for the Victory which *Aretas* King of *Arabia* obtained neer unto it, against *Alexander* King of *Jewry*, the Kingdom of *Syria* then lying open as a prey to the next Invaders. 5 *Hippus*, or *Hippone*, as *Pliny* calleth it, not far from the Mountain of that name. 6 *Capitolias*, now called *Suente*. 7 *Gadara*. 8 *Scythopolis*. 9 *Gerasa*, and 10 *Philadelphia*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* as Cities of *Cœlo-Syria*; but of right belonging unto *Palestine*, where we mean to take notice of them. 11 *Eden*, at the foot of Mount *Libanus*, now a Town of the *Maronites*; and anciently of such esteem, that the whole Country of *Damascus* was called *Beth-Eden*, *Amos* 1. 5. 12 *Damascus*, situate in a large Plain environed with Hills, and watered with the River *Chrysorrhoas*, which with a great noise descendeth from the Mountains, and so abundantly serveth the City, that not only most of the Houses have their Fountains of it, but their Orchards and Gardens have some Rivulets conveyed into them. The Country round about abundantly enrich'd with plenty of most excellent Wines (the Vines hereof bearing Grapes all the year long) and great store of Wheat; as their Orchards with variety of most delicate Fruits: our *Damascens*, (or *Pruna Damascena*, as the *Latins* call them) coming first from hence; as also our *Damask* Roses, but infinite short of their natural sweetness, by the transplantation. A place so surfeiting of Delights, so girt about with odoriferous and curious Gardens, that the vile Impostor *Mahomet* would never be perswaded to come into it, for fear (as himself was used to say) lest being ravished with the ineffable pleasures of it, he should forget the business he was sent about, and make there his Paradise. But *Muhavias*, one of his Successors, having no such scruple, removed the Regal Seat unto it, where it continued (for the most part) till the building of *Bagdat* by *Bugiafer* the twentieth *Caliph*, about an hundred years after this Removal: the Regal Seat before that time being at *Mecca*, *Cufa*, or some other of the best Towns of *Arabia Fœlix*. The chief Buildings of it, of late times (till destroyed by the *Tartars*) were a strong Castle, in the opinion of those times held to be impregnable; and not without great difficulty forced by *Tamarlane*, whom nothing was able to withstand: and as majestical a Church, garnished with forty sumptuous Porches, and no fewer than 9000 Lanterns of Gold and Silver; which with 30000 people in it (who fled thither for Sanctuary) was by the said *Tamarlane* most cruelly and unmerciful burnt, and pulled down unto the ground. Repaired by the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt*, when Lords of *Syria*, it hath since flourished in Trade, the People being industrious, and celebrated for most excellent Artizans; the branching of Satins, and fine Linen, which we call by the name of *Damasks*, being amongst many others, one of their Inventions. Renowned in the Old Testament for the Kings hereof, and the birth of *Eliezer*, *Abraham*'s Steward (so honourably ancient was this City;) and in the New, for the Conversion of St. *Paul*, who first preached the Gospel in this place, and here so narrowly escaped the snares of his Enemies, that he was fain to be let down out of the House in which he was, by the help of a *Basket*.

But ancient and honourable though this City of *Damascus* was, we find nothing of the Story of it, till the time of *David*; the Kings thereof until those days, being conceived to have been Homagers and Tributaries to the Kings of *Zobah*. The first Exploit ascribed unto them in the Holy Scripture, is their coming to the aid of *Adad-ezar*, upon his first defeat by *David*: in which action having lost 22000 men, they were so broken, that they did not only suffer *David* to put Garrisons in the best Cities of *Damascus*, but patiently became his Servants, and brought Presents to him, 2 *Sam.* 8. 5, 6. The name of this unfortunate Prince not made known in Scripture, is by *Josephus* affirmed out of *Nicolaus Damascenus*, to have been *Adad* (a name much cherished and assumed by the Kings Successors) who keeping constant to the party of *Adad-ezar* in his following Wars, was at last slain with him, in that great discomfiture which *David* gave them, mentioned in 2 *Sam. ch.* 10. *v.* 18. In which Text the Scripture telleth us nothing of the death of those Kings, that being supplied to us by *Josephus* out of their Records; who also added, That *Rezin*, one of the chief Commanders of *Adad-ezar*, taking this advantage, not only usurped his Masters Kingdom, but made himself Master of the Kingdom of *Damascus* also. From this time forward the Seat-Royal of the Kings of *Syria*. Nor is this the Tradition of *Josephus* only, but founded plainly on the Scriptures, of which see 1 *King.* 11. *v.* 23, 24. the Scriptures after this taking no notice of any other Kings of *Syria* (by the name of Kings of *Syria*) but of those that reigned in *Damascus*; who in short time had swallowed up the petit Kingdoms of *Gessur*, *Ish-tok*, *Rehob*, besides that of *Sobah* before-mentioned.

The KINGS of *SYRIA* or *DAMASCUS*.

1 *Adad*, the Friend and Confederate of *Adad-ezar* King of *Sobah*, in whose quarrel he was vanquished and slain by *David*.

2 *Rezin*, of whom the Scripture saith, in the 2. of *Chron.* that when *David* slew them of *Sobah*, *he fled from* Adad-ezar *his Lord, and gathered men unto him, and certain Captains over a Band, and went to* Damascus, *and dwelt therein, and reigned in* Damascus.

3 *Adad* II. an *Idumean*, supposed to be of the Family of *Adad-ezar*, but rather as I think of *Adad*, for fear of *David* fled to *Ægypt*, where he married *Taphnes* the Queen's Sister; and hearing that both *David* and *Joab* were dead, returned again into his Country, and as some write, expelled *Rezin* out of *Damascus*, and reigned there as King.

4 *Hezion*, Successor unto *Adad*.

5 *Tabrimon*, the Son of *Hezion*, as is said 2 *King.* 15. 18.

6 *Ben-hadad*, the Son of *Tabrimon*, hired by *Asa* King

King of *Judah*, to aid him in his Wars againſt *Baaſha* of *Iſrael*.

7 *Ben-hadad* II. Son of the former, twice invaded *Iſrael* in the reign of *Achab*, but both times notably repulſed: the firſt time by a Sally of 700 men, at the Siege of *Samaria*; the next at *Aphec*, where with the like number in effect, he was taken Priſoner, and his Army routed.

8 *Hazael*, Captain of the Hoſt to *Ben-hadad*, anointed King of *Syria* by the Prophet *Eliſha*, whom God appointed ſo to do, that by his hands he might avenge himſelf on *Ben-hadad*, whom *Hazael* ſlew; but he proved as ill a neighbour to the Kings of *Iſrael*, as thoſe before him. He attempted upon *Judah* alſo in the time of *Joas*, but bribed with the Treaſures of the Temple, he withdrew his Forces.

9 *Benhadad* III. Son of *Hazael*, diſcomfited in three ſet Battels by *Joas* King of *Iſrael*.

10 *Ben-hadad* IV. Son of *Ben-hadad* the third.

11 *Ben-hadad* V. Son of *Ben-hadad* the fourth.

12 *Ben-hadad* VI. Son of *Ben-hadad* the fifth, in the time of one of which three Kings, but which one we find not for a certain, *Jeroboam* the Son of *Joas* King of *Iſrael* ſubdued both *Chamath*, and *Damaſcus*; of which ſee 2 *King.* 14. *v.* 18.

13 *Rezin* II. Son of *Ben-hadad* the ſixth, and the laſt King of *Damaſcus*, who joyning with *Pekah* King of *Iſrael*, againſt *Ahaz* King of *Judah*, enforced him to call unto his aid *Tiglath Pileſer*, King of *Aſſyria*; by whom *Rezin* was taken and beheaded, and the City of *Damaſcus* won; the Kingdom of *Syria* by that means united to the *Aſſyrian* Empire.

After this time, the *Syrians* continued ſubject to the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Monarchs; and in the overthrow of that Empire by the *Medes* and *Perſians*, became a part of their Eſtate: remaining ſo till the firſt Battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius*, fought near *Iſſus* in *Cilicia*. The Victory wherein falling to the *Macedonians*, gave him without more trouble than the Siege of *Tyre*, the poſſeſſion of *Syria* and *Phœnicia*. He dying not long after his Conqueſt of *Perſia*, this Country lay as it were at ſtake betwixt *Ptolomy* King of *Ægypt*, and *Antigonus* the chief Lord of *Aſia*: but the poſſeſſion of it, together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Empire, in both *Aſia*'s, fell in concluſion to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, for his many great and ſignal Victories ſirnamed *Nicanor*; a man ſtrangely preferred. For being at the firſt Governour of *Chaldæa* only, he was forced to leave *Babylon*, and to forſake his Province for fear of *Antigonus*, then dreadful to all the *Macedonian* Captains; and to fly into *Ægypt*, where he became *Ptolomy*'s Admiral. After which *Ptolomy* fighting a pitched Field with *Demetrius*, Son to *Antigonus*, took *Seleucus* with him, and having won the Battel, gave him aid and licence to recover his former Government. *Seleucus*, well beloved of the People, ſoon made himſelf Maſter not of *Chaldæa* only, but of all the *Perſian* Provinces beyond *Euphrates*: and not long after (being ſeconded by his good Friends *Ptolomy*, *Caſſander*, and *Lyſimachus*) he encountred *Antigonus* at *Ipſus* in *Jonia*, where *Antigonus* himſelf was ſlain, and his whole Army routed. This Victory made *Seleucus* Lord of all *Aſia*, from whence paſſing over into *Europe*, he vanquiſhed and ſlew *Lyſimachus*: Seven Months after which Victory, he was ſlain by *Ptolomy Ceraunus*, whoſe Patron and Protector he had formerly been; being yet the laſt Survivor of all *Alexander*'s Princes, and the only Poſſeſſor of all the Dominions which his Maſter had, by the way of Conqueſt, *Ægypt* excepted. His Succeſſors, although they were Lords of all *Aſia*, yet ſince in *Syria* they kept their reſidence, to the end that they might the better furniſh themſelves with Souldiers out of *Greece* upon all occaſions, as was ſaid before, they were commonly called the Kings of *Syria*. But long they held not in that greatneſs of Eſtate and Power, which *Seleucus* left them; though being a full-bodied Tree, and of ſeveral Limbs, it endured the lopping off of many Branches, and many a ſad blow at the very Root of it, before it fell. For in the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of this Houſe, *Arſaces* a Noble *Parthian* recovered from it all the Provinces of the *Perſian* Empire, lying on that ſide of *Euphrates*; and erected the ſo much celebrated *Parthian* Kingdom, whereof more in *Perſia*. And in the Reign of *Antiochus Magnus*, ſo called for his Victories in *Ægypt*, *Judæa*, and *Babylonia*, the *Romans* extorted from it all the *Aſian* Provinces on this ſide Mount *Taurus*, not wanting many provocations to incite them to it: for he not only had made War againſt *Ptolomy Philopater* King of *Ægypt*, whom the *Romans* had taken into their Protection; but ſtirred up the Cities and States of *Greece* againſt them: invaded *Lyſimachia*, and ſome other parts of *Europe*, in defiance of them, and had received *Annibal* the *Carthaginian*, and *Thoas* the *Ætolian*, their moſt mortal Enemies, into his Dominion, governing his Counſels by the influences which they had upon him. Nor may we think but that Ambition and Avarice, to add to their Fame and Empire by the overthrow of ſo great a Prince, did perſwade much with them. So that the point being brought to a ready iſſue, they pleaded it on both ſides in the Battel of *Magneſia*, a City of *Lydia*, to which *Antiochus* brought an Army of 300000 Foot, and as many armed *Chariots*, beſides ſtore of *Elephants*, if the *Roman* Writers be not over-laviſh in their Reports. But rejecting the Advice of *Annibal*, and committing his Affairs wholly to *Evil-Counſellors*, he was vanquiſhed by no more than four *Legions* of Enemies, and for his Peace compelled to quit all his *Aſian* Provinces on that ſide of *Taurus*, and to pay 15000 *Talents* in ready money for the charge of the War. The reſt of his Eſtates they were content he ſhould enjoy for a longer time, *Et libentius quod tam facile ceſſiſſet* (as *Florus* handſomely puts it on him) becauſe he had ſo eaſily relinquiſhed that. Afterwards in the civil Broils among themſelves, about the Succeſſion of the Kingdom, *Alexander* King of the *Jews* took from them many of their beſt Towns in *Paleſtine*, as *Joppa*, *Gaza*, *Anthedon*, *Azotus*, *Rhinocorura*, almoſt all *Samaria*, and *Gaulonitis*, with *Scythopolis*, *Gadara*, and many other ſtrong Towns in *Cœlo-Syria*. Finally, when they had conſumed almoſt all the Royal Race, and changed their Kings no leſs than ten times in forty years (a ſure ſign of a falling and expiring Kingdom) they were fain to caſt themſelves upon *Tigranes* the King of *Armenia*, a puiſſant and ſucceſsful Prince, till ingaged in the Quarrel of *Mithridates* againſt the *Romans*: by whom ſtripped of all his Eſtates on this ſide *Euphrates*, he was fain to content himſelf with his own *Armenia*, leaving *Syria* to the abſolute diſpoſal of *Pompey*, who preſently reduced it to the form of a Province. This ſaid, we have not much more to do with the Houſe of *Seleucus*, but to lay down their Names, and times of their ſeveral Governments, till we draw towards the laſt end of

The *MACEDONIAN* KINGS of *SYRIA*.

A.M.

3654 1 *Seleucus Nicanor*, the firſt King of this Houſe. 31. 3685

3685 2 *Antiochus*, ſirnamed *Soter*, or the *Saviour*; memorable for nothing ſo much, as marrying with *Stratonice* his Father's Wife, in his Father's life-time.

3704 3 *Antiochus* II. by his flattering Courtiers ſirnamed *Theos*, or the God; but being poyſoned by his Wife, he proved a Mortal.

3719 4 *Seleucus* II. ſirnamed by the like flattery *Callinicus*, or fair Conquerour, becauſe ſhamefully beaten by the *Parthians*.

3739 5 *Seleucus* III. called for the like reaſon *Ceraunus*, or the *Thunderer*; the eldeſt Son of *Callinicus*.

3742 6 *Antiochus* III. ſirnamed *Magnus*, the younger Son of *Callinicus*, a Prince that imbraced many great Actions, and was fortunate in his Succeſſes beyond *Euphrates*: he plagued the *Jews*, but loſt all *Aſia Minor* unto the *Romans*.

3778 7 *Seleucus* IV. called *Philopator*, the Son of *Antiochus*, who firſt began to caſt his eye upon the Riches of the Temple at *Hieruſalem*.

3790 8 *Antiochus* IV. ſirnamed *Epiphanes*, or the *Illuſtrious*; but more truly *Epimanes*, or the *Mad*. The great Scourge of the *Jews*; Brother of *Seleucus Philopator*, with whom beginneth the Story of the firſt Book of the *Maccabees*.

3802 9 *Antiochus* V. called by the name of *Eupator*, the Son of *Epiphanes*; who by *Lyſias* his Captain tyrannized over the poor *Judeans*, for the little time that he reigned; as did alſo

3804 10 *Demetrius*, ſirnamed *Soter*, Son of *Seleucus Philopator*, by the hands of *Nicanor*: having poſſeſſed himſelf of the Diadem, by the death of *Eupator*, ſlain in his favour by the Souldiers who revolted from him. He was afterwards depoſed for a time by *Alexander Bala*, pretending himſelf to be the Son of *Eupator*, ſupported herein by the *Antiochians*.

3814 11 *Alexander Bala*, diſcomfited in his firſt Battel by *Demetrius*, whom he ſlew and vanquiſhed in the ſecond; married *Cleopatra* Daughter of *Ptolomy Philometor*, by whoſe aid he was victorious. But a Quarrel breaking out between them, *Ptolomy* invaded *Syria*, and cauſed himſelf to be crowned King of it; *Alexander* being ſlain by ſome of his Souldiers.

3819 12 *Demetrius* II. ſirnamed *Nicanor*, Son of *Demetrius* the firſt, recovered his Fathers Kingdom, a Friend of the *Maccabees*, but ſo cruel to his own People, that he was driven out of his Kingdom by *Tryphon* General of his Armies.

3821 13 *Antiochus* VI. ſirnamed *Entheus*, the Son of *Alexander* and *Cleopatra*, advanced unto the Throne by *Tryphon*, and after ſlain by him to make way for himſelf unto the Diadem.

3824 14 *Tryphon*, called alſo *Diodorus*, having driven out *Demetrius*, and ſlain *Antiochus*, made himſelf King.

3827 15 *Antiochus* VII. ſirnamed *Sedes*, Brother of *Demetrius*, having overcome and ſlain *Tryphon*, ſucceeded him in the Eſtate; for a while victorious againſt the *Parthians*, but afterwards overcome and ſlain by them. After whoſe death *Demetrius Nicanor* (having lived in *Parthia* ſince the loſs of his Kingdom) was reſtored again unto the Throne; which having held about four years, he was again diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by

3843 16 *Alexander* II. ſirnamed *Zebenna*, an *Ægyptian* of mean birth, ſet up by *Ptolomy Euergetes*, and pretending himſelf to be the adopted Son of *Antiochus*, afterwards vanquiſhed and ſlain by

3845 17 *Antiochus* VIII. from the crookedneſs of his noſe ſirnamed *Gryphus*, Son of *Demetrius*, aided herein by the *Ægyptians*, with whom reconciled: having reigned about eight years in peace; embroyled him in war with his half brother *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Cyzicenus*; which with variable ſucceſſes on both ſides, continued till the time of his death, having reigned 29 years in all.

3874 18 *Seleucus* V. Son of *Antiochus Gryphus*, in the beginning of his reign overcame and ſlew his Uncle *Cyzicenus*: but being vanquiſhed by *Antiochus* ſirnamed *Euſebes* or *Pius*, one of the Sons of *Cyzicenus*, he fled into *Cilicia*, and was there burnt in his Palace.

19 *Antiochus* IX. ſirnamed *Euſebes*, having firſt vanquiſhed *Seleucus*, and afterwards *Antiochus*, another of the Sons of *Gryphus*, was crowned King of *Syria*; but ſlain not long after in the *Perſian* wars.

20 *Philip*, and *Demetrius* III. ſirnamed *Eucerus*, younger Sons of *Gryphus*, joyntly Kings of *Syria*; but reigning in their ſeveral parts. Of which *Demetrius* intending to diſſeize his brother, was himſelf vanquiſhed, and forced to fly into *Parthia*, leaving the whole Kingdom unto *Philip*. During which amongſt themſelves *Syria* was invaded, and in part conquered by *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, and *Alexander* King of the *Jews*.

3884 21 *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, during theſe diſſenſions was by the *Syrians* choſen King, that by his power they might be freed from the *Jews* and *Arabians*: the moſt puiſſant Prince that reigned in *Syria*, ſince the time of *Antiochus* the *Great*, as being King of *Syria* by election, of *Armenia* by ſucceſſion, of *Media* by conqueſt. But ingaging himſelf with *Mithridates* (whoſe daughter he had married) againſt the *Romans*, was vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*: who with the loſs of five *Romans* only, and the wounds of an hundred, is reported to have ſlain of his Enemies above 100000 men. Finally, being again broken and vanquiſhed by *Lucullus*, he yielded himſelf to *Pompey* who being appointed *Lucullus* Succeſſor, deprived him of the honour of ending that War, and retaining to himſelf *Armenia* only, he left all *Syria* to the *Romans*, having reigned eighteen years. And though *Antiochus Comagenus*, the Son of *Euſebes*, petitioned *Pompey* for a reſtitution to the Throne of his Anceſtors, yet it would not be granted: *Pompey* replying, that he would not truſt the Country into ſuch weak hands as were not able to defend it againſt the *Arabians*, *Parthians*, and the like Invaders; and ſo reduced it preſently to the form of a Province. The government of this Country under theſe new Lords, was accompted to be one of the greateſt honours of the Empire: the *Præfect* hereof having almoſt regal juriſdiction over all the Regions on this ſide *Euphrates*, with a ſuper-intendency over *Ægypt*. *Niger*, the concurrent of *Severus* was *Præfect* here; and on the ſtrength hereof preſumed on that competition. So alſo was *Caſſius Syrus*, who being

ing a Native of this Country, and well-beloved by reason of his moderate and plausible demeanour, had almost tumbled *M. Antonius* out of his Throne. On this occasion it was enacted by the Senate, that no man hereafter should have any *military* or *legal* command in the Province where he was born: Lest perhaps supported by the natural propension of the people to one of their own Nation; and heartned by the powerableness of his Friends, he might appropriate that to himself, which was common to the Senate and people of *Rome*. But this was when it was entire, and passed but for one Province only, *Phœnicia* being taken also into the accompt; which made the *Antiochians* so proud and insolent, that *Adrian*, in his time intended to subduct *Phœnicia* from it, *Ne tot civitatum Metropolis* Antiochia *diceretur* (saith *Gallicanus*) that *Antioch* might not be the chief of so many Cities. But what he lived not to accomplish, was performed by *Constantine*, by whom *Phœnicia* was not only taken off, but *Syria* it self divided into four distinct Provinces, as was shewed before, each of them having its *Metropolis* or Mother City; but all subordinate to the command of the *Comes*, or *Præfect* of the East, as he to the command of the *Præfectus Prætorii Orientis*, the greatest Officer of the Empire, of whom we have often spoke already.

For the defence hereof as well against all Forein invasions, as the insurrections of the Natives (a wavering and inconstant People) the *Romans* kept here in continual pay four Legions, with their aids, and other additaments. For so many *Mutianus* had here in the time of *Galba*; and by the strength and reputation of those Forces, was able to transfer the Empire upon *Vespasian*. And though the *Constantinopolitan* Emperors to whose share it fell, in the division of the Empire, rather increased than diminished any part of this strength: yet when the fatal time was come, and that Empire was in the declination, the *Saracens*, under the conduct of *Haumer* their third *Caliph*, *Anno 636.* possessed themselves of it, *Heraclius* then reigning in *Constantinople*. And it continued in their power till *Tangolipix* the *Turk*, having conquered *Persia*, and the Provinces on that side of *Euphrates*, passed over the River into *Syria*, and made himself Master of a great part of that also. A quarrel falling out betwixt him and the nearest Kinsmen, and thereby a great stop made in their furthest progress, was thus composed, by the mediation of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* in the time of *Axon* his Successor. To *Cutlu Moses* was assigned a convenient Army, to be by him imployed against the *Christians*, with Regal power over the Provinces by him gained, without relation or subordination to the *Persian* Sultan: of whose successes and affairs hath been spoke elsewhere. To *Melech* and *Ducat*, two others of his discontented Kinsmen, but all of the same *Selzuccian* family, he gave the fair Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damascus*, and those parts of *Syria*, with whatsoever they could conquer from the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, who then held all *Phœnicia*, and the Sea-coasts of *Palestine*; to be held in fee and vassalage of the Crown of *Persia*. To these two brethren then we are to refer the beginning of the *Turkish* Kingdom in *Syria*: who, with their Successors, by reason that here they held their residence, caused themselves to be called

The *TURKISH* KINGS of *DAMASCUS*.

1075 1 *Melech* and *Ducat*, the first *Turkish* Kings of *Damascus*, by the gift of *Axon*, the second Sultan of the *Turks* in *Persia*, added to their Dominions all the rest of *Syria*, together with part of *Cilicia*, and some neighbouring Provinces in the *Lesser-Asia*.

2 *N. N.* Sultan of *Damascus*, at such times as the *Christians* of the West won the *Holy Land*: against whom he notably defended the City and Territories of *Damascus*; and in a set battel discomfited and slew *Roger* the *Norman*, Prince of *Antioch*.

1146 3 *Noradine*, (the son of *Sanguin*) General of the Armies, and Son-in-law to the former King, succeeded him in the estate. A noble Prince, memorable amongst other things for a gallant answer made to his Commanders, when they perswaded him to take the advantage on the death of *Baldwin* the third, and to invade *Hierusalem* whilest the *Christians* were busie in solemnizing his Funerals. Not so, saith he, *Compassion and regard is to be had of the just sorrow of those* Christians, *who have lost such a King, as could not be equalled in the world.*

1175 4 *Melechsala*, Son of *Noradine*, contemned by reason of his youth, by his Nobles, and Souldiery, who made choice of *Saladine* for their King; by whom dispossessed first, and after vanquished.

1176 5 *Saladine*, the *Turkish* Sultan of *Ægypt*, having vanquished the *Persians*, or *Parthians*, coming under the conduct of *Cacobed*, Uncle to *Melechsala*, to restore that Prince to his estate, remained King of *Damascus*: and by the puissance of his Armies, recovered from the *Christians* all *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* also.

1199 6 *Eladel*, or *El-Aphzel* the eldest Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Damascus*; which he exchanged for that of *Ægypt* with his brother *Elaziz*.

7 *Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded upon this exchange in the Realm of *Damascus*, murdered not long after by his Uncle *Saphradine*.

8 *Saphradine*, the Brother of *Saladine*, having barbarously murdered eight of the Sons of *Saladine*, (the youngest called *Saphradine* escaping only, who was after Sultan of *Aleppo*) possessed himself of the Kingdom of *Damascus*, left at his death to *Corradine*, his Son or Nephew.

9 *Corradine*, Son or Nephew to the Tyrant *Saphradine*, was by him at his death left *Sultan* of *Damascus*; to which all *Syria* and *Palestine* were then made *Provincials*. But the treacheries and murders of *Saphradine* crying loud for vengeance, *Haalon* the *Tartar*, in the year 1262. having taken the King of *Damascus* Prisoner (but whether *Corradine*, or some other, I am not able to say) brought him before the walls of the City; threatning to kill him in the sight of the people, if they did not deliver it unto him. Which the Citizens refusing to do, the wretched King was torn in pieces, and the City taken by assault: the Kingdom taken by the Conquerours conferred upon *Agab* the son of *Haalon*. And so ended the *Selzuccian* Family of the Kings of *Damascus* in the person of *Corradine*, or the son of *Corradine*, most miserably murdered by the *Tartars*; as it had done in *Ægypt* 17 years before, in the person of *Melechsela*, and *Elmutan*, the Son of *Meledine*, as villainously deposed and murdered by the *Mamalucks*. So slippery is the foundation of those Kingdoms that are laid in blood.

Nor did this Kingdom hold long in the hands of the *Tartars*,

Tartars, recovered from them in short time by the *Mamalucks*, then Kings of *Ægypt*; from them once more regained by the furious *Tamarlane*: who in the year 1400 besieged *Damascus* with an Army of 1200000 men, (if the number be not mistaken, and one Cypher added more than should) in pursuit whereof he filled up the ditches with his Prisoners, put all the people to the Sword; and with great Art raised three Towers as a Trophy of his victory, built with the heads of those whom he had so slaughtered. A man so strangely made up of vice and vertues, that it is hard to say which had the predominancy. But the violence of this tempest being overblown, the *Mamalucks*, from whom he had also conquered the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, recovered *Syria* by degrees, and repaired *Damascus*, continuing in their power till the year 1516, when *Selimus* the first discomfited *Campson Gaurus* the *Ægyptian* Sultan in the fields of *Aleppo*. Upon the news whereof the Citizens of *Damascus*, fearing the spoil of their rich City, then of very great trading, set open their Gates unto the *Victors*; as did all the other Cities and Towns of *Syria*, by their example. By means whereof, without any more blows, the *Turks* became Lords of this Country; as the next year of *Ægypt* also, by the vanquishment and death of *Tonombeius* who succeeded *Campson*: so rooting out the name and government of the *Mamalucks*, and adding those rich Kingdoms to the *Turkish* Empire.

And so much for *Syria*.

MOUNT HERMON

IN our passage out of *Cœlo-Syria* into *Palestine*, we must cross Mount *Hermon*; a ledg of Hills; which beginning at the East point of the *Anti-Libanus*, bend directly South: in different places, and by several Nations called by divers names. By *Ptolomy* called *Alsadamus*; by the *Amorites*, *Samir*; by the *Phœnicians*, *Syrion*; and by that name remembred in the Book of *Psalms*. But *Alsadamus* they are called only where they border upon *Cœlo-Syria*. Where they begin to part the Region of *Trachonitis* from *Arabia Deserta*, they are called by *Moses* and the Scriptures *Hermon*, part of the Kingdom of *Og*, the King of *Basan*, as is said, *Joshuah*, *chap.* 12. 6. *Syrion* by the *Sidonians*, as is affirmed, *Deut.* 3. 9. Running further after this unto the South, they are called *Gilead* or *Galaad*; by *Strabo*, *Trachonitæ*, after the name of the Region along which they pass, and are conceived to be the highest part of all Mount *Libanus*, or rather of that long ridg of Mountains which there take beginning. And so we are to understand the words of the Prophet *Jeremy*, saying, *Galaad tu mihi Caput Libani*, as the *Vulgar* readeth it. That is to say, that as the head is the highest part of a man; so these Hills, or this part of them, was the highest of all the branches, or spurs of *Libanus*, called *Galeed* by *Jacob*, from that heap of stones which was there laid by *Laban* and *Jacob*, to be a witness of the *Covenant* which was made betwixt them, *Gen.* 31. 27. the word signifying in the Original, *An heap of Witnesses*. And *Laban* said, *This heap is a Witness betwixt me and thee this day; therefore was the name of it called* Galeed, *ver.* 28. By these Hills, and the main body of the *Anti-Libanus* lying on the North, and the Mountains of *Phœnicia* and *Idumæa* on the West, the Land of *Palestine* is so shut up on every side, that no Fortress can be stronger by Wit or Art, than that Country by Nature: the passages in some parts so narrow, as hardly to afford passage for a single person. *Clauditur undique montibus, hinc abruptis rupibus, & profundis vallibus concursu Torrentium, inde altis & implexis anfractibus sic contractis, ut per angustos colles vix pateat transitus viatori*, as my Author hath it. I had almost forgot to add, that that part of these hills, which is commonly known in Scripture by the name of *Hermon*, is in one place thereof called *Sihon*, as *Deut.* 4. 48. where it is said, that the *Israelites possessed the Land from* Aroer *on the bank of the River* Arnon, *even to Mount* Sihon, which is *Hermon*. As also that one of the highest tops or Summits of it, had the name of *Amana*, alluded to by *Solomon* in the fourth of the *Canticles*; by some mistaken for *Amanus*, a branch of *Taurus*, which divides *Syria* from *Cilicia* in the Lesser *Asia*, with which *Solomon* had but small or no acquaintance. And so having cleared our selves of so much of this Mountain, as lay before us in our way, we pass over to *Palestine*: where we shall meet with it again, (or rather with the Western parts and branches of it) under the names of *Gilead* and *Trachonitis*, as a part of that Country.

OF PALESTINE.

PALESTINE is bounded on the East, with the Hills last mentioned, by which parted from *Cœlo-Syria*, and *Arabia Deserta*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea, and some part of *Phœnicia*; on the North, with the *Anti-Libanus*, which divides it from *Syria*, and the rest of *Phœnicia*; and on the South, with some part of *Arabia Petræa*.

It was first called *Palestine* from the *Philistims*, the most potent Nation of those parts. A name first found in the History of *Herodotus*, but generally used in times succeeding, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*. And this I look on as the proper and adæquate name of the whole Country, according to the bounds before laid down: the others, by which commonly called, being more restrained, and properly belonging to so much hereof, as was in the possession of the Tribes of *Israel*. And of this sort, are 1 *Canaan*, or the Land of *Canaan*, so called from *Canaan* the son of *Cham*, by whom first peopled after the Flood. 2. The *Land of Promise*, because by God promised to *Abraham*, and his seed, for an habitation. 3. *Israel*, from the *Israelites*, or sons of *Jacob*, whose sirname was *Israel*. 4. *Judæa*, and by us *Jewry*, from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, the most prevalent of the Tribes of *Israel*. And 5. *Terra Sancta*, or the *Holy Land*, because the subject of the greatest part of the Holy Scripture; and that the work of our Redemption was herein accomplished by our Lord and Saviour. Which notwithstanding we must know, that though these names do many times by a *Synecdoche*, express the whole Country of *Palestine*; yet neither the *Canaanites* or the *Israelites* were ever Masters of the whole: except only in the time of *David*, and of some of the *Maccabæan* Princes, as also in some part of the reign of *Herod* the Great; all which had the good fortune to command it totally.

But being the most considerable people of it were the Tribes of *Israel*; we will first look upon the Country People under that capacity. And for so much hereof as was held by them, it is situate between the 3*d*. and 4*th*. Climats; the longest day being fourteen hours and a quarter. The whole length but 200 miles, and not above 80 in breadth; yet was of such a fruitful soil, that before the coming in of the *Israelites*, it had 30 Kings: and after the coming in of that people, so extreamly populous, that *David* numbred a Million and 300000 fighting men, besides those of the Tribes of *Levi* and *Benjamin*. But of the fruitfulness hereof more shortly.

As for the People they were by composition of a middle stature, but strong of body: in their best times a murmuring and stiff-necked generation, never well pleased either with God or Man, with their Priests or Princes; seldom conform unto the Commandments of their God, nor very much constant to themselves; So crippled in their goings betwixt Superstitions and Idolatry, that they knew not how to walk uprightly: Idolatrous above measure, and incorrigible in it, till their coming back from the Captivity of *Babylon:* and after that as superstitious and severe, in the point of their Sabbath, as they had formerly been exorbitant in the worship of Idols. No *Medium* on either side, but extream in both. Divided anciently into these four ranks, that is to say, 1 *Jews*, 2 *Hellenists*, 3 *Proselytes*, and 4 *Samaritans*; all of them pretending a right unto this Country, though not all of them dwelling in it.

Of these the first called *Jews*, from *Judah*, the predominant Tribe; and *Hebrews*, from *Heber* the son of *Sela*, grand-son of *Sem*, and one of the Ancestors of *Abraham*, were such as naturally descended of the Tribes of *Israel*, and lived for the most part in their own Country; adhering to the Law of *Moses*, and embracing the whole Canon of the Old Testament, from the Book of *Genesis* to the Book of the Prophet *Malachi*. Called also *Israelites*, because descended from the loyns of their Father *Jacob*, to whom God gave the name of *Israel*, for his great honour. But after the ten Tribes were carried away by *Salmanasser* to an endless captivity: and two Tribes (with the remainder of the rest) returned from that temporary one which they found in *Babylon*, the name of *Israelites* was laid by, and that of *Jews* assumed, as more proper to them. These read the Scriptures, and executed all *Divine Offices* in their natural *Hebrew*.

2. The *Hellenists*, were such as were *Jews* by parentage, but lived dispersed in most Provinces of the *Roman* Empire: called by that name (we may *English* it, the *Græcizing Jews*) because they read the Scriptures in the *Greek* or *Septuagint*'s Translation; and performed all publick Offices in that language also. In other things, as *superstitious* in their Sabbath, as tenacious of their *Circumcision*, and others of the Rites and Ceremonies of the Law of *Moses*, as the *Jews* of *Palestine:* and for that reason, scorned and derided by the *Gentils*, amongst whom they lived; *Credat Judæus appella*, saith one of their Poets, relating to their circumcising; *Recutitaque Sabbata palles*, saith another of them, with scorn enough unto their Sabbaths. *Novi illic ritus & cæteris mortalibus contrarii*, saith *Tacitus*, a graver Author, of the whole body of their *Rituals*, or Acts of worship.

3. The *Proselytes* were such, as not being *Jews* by birth, or descent of Parentage, conformed themselves unto their customs, and desired to be admitted to their Religion. And these were also of two sorts, the one called, *Proselyti Portæ*; and the other, *Proselyti fœderis*. The first of these, admitted by the *Jews* to the worship of God, and instructed in the hopes of the life to come, were only tyed to those Precepts which the *Hebrew* Doctors call the *Precepts of the sons of Noah:* but were neither circumcised, nor otherwise conform to the Law of *Moses*. Which Precepts of the sons of *Noah*, so called, because supposed

to

to be given by *Noah* unto his Sons, when he came out of the *Ark*, were seven in number: that is to say, 1 That they dealt uprightly with every man. 2 That they blessed and magnified the Name of God. 3 That they worshipped not any false Gods, but to abstain from Idolatry. 4 To refrain from all unlawful lusts and copulations. 5 To keep themselves from theft and robbery. 6 And from shedding blood. And 7 Not to eat the Flesh or Member of any Beast, taken from it when it was alive, by which all cruelty was forbidden. These, though they were admitted to the Worship of God, and might repair unto the Temple; yet because of their Uncircumcision, they were not suffered to converse with the *Jews*, not to come into the same Court of the Temple with them: but were accounted as unclean, and had their Court apart assigned them in the Worship of God, which was called *Atrium Gentium*, or *Immundorum*, and was the outermost of all. The other *Proselytes*, which was called *Proselyti fœderis*, conformed in all things to the *Jews*, as in Circumcision, Sabbath-keeping, and all other Ceremonies: and were accounted of as adopted *Jews*; priviledged as they were, to worship in the *Inner Court*; bound as they were, from eating or drinking with a *Gentile*; and in a word, partakers with them in all things both divine and humane, and different in nothing from them but their Race or Parentage. These last in the New Testament called simply *Proselytes*, without any addition: the former by the name of Σεβόμενοι, or the *worshipping Gentiles*, of which see *Act.* 16. *v.* 14. & *ch.* 17. *v.* 4, 17. & *ch.* 18. *v.* 4. &c.

4. As for the *Samaritans*, they possessed a great part of this Country, which the *Proselytes* did not; yet were not so much *Jews* as they. But of these more anon, when we come to *Samaria*, the proper place of their abode.

As for the natural *Jews* themselves, they are divided also into several Sects; as, *viz.* 1 *Esseni*. 2 the *Sadduces*, 3 the *Scribes*, 4 the *Pharisees*, 5 the *Herodians*, and 6 the *Gaulonites*, or *Galilæans*. The *Essenes*, or *Esseni*, derive their name, as some conceive, from *Asca*, which signifieth *facere*, to do, because they laboured with their hands: as others say, from *Asa*, which signifieth θεραπεύειν, or to *cure diseases*, because they were much given to the Study and Practice of *Physick*. Their beginning is not yet agreed on. The first time they were heard of, was in the time of *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, about 150 years before *Christ's* Nativity; then mentioned by *Josephus*, *Antiqu. Judaic. lib.* 13. *cap.* 9. A *Pythagorean* kind of *Jew*, and not much differing in opinion from those old *Philosophers*, professing as they did, 1 Community of Goods, 2 Abstaining even from lawful pleasures, 3 Forbidding of Oaths, 4 Forbearing Wine, and drinking Water, 5 Ascribing the conduct of Affairs to *fate* or *destiny*, And 6 Using only inanimate or unbloody Sacrifices. Some other *Dogmata* they had, but these the principal: *forbidding Marriage* not being common to the *Sect*, but only to some few amongst them. And though we find no mention of them in the *New Testament*, the *Sect* in those times being small and inconsiderable; yet it is thought that St. *Paul* alludeth to their *Tenets*: as where he adviseth *Timothy* to make use of *Wine*, and glanceth upon those who prohibited *Marriage*, 1 *Tim.* 4. 3. or condemned others in the use of *Meat and Drink*, *Coloss.* 2. 16. As for the manner of their life, they lived together as it were in *Monasteries*, or *Colledges*, and in every one had their Σεμνεῖον, or *Oratory*: admitting none into their Fellowships or Society, unless he brought all he had into their common Treasury; and not then neither under a three years *Probationership*. More of them he that listeth to see, may satisfie himself in that Tract of *Philo*, intituled *De Vita contemplativa*, where he most copiously describeth their *Institutes* and course of life: mistakingly applied by *Eusebius* to the *Primitive Christians*, as if that Tract had purposely been composed of them, by that learned *Jew*.

2. The *Sadduces* either derive their name from *Sadoc*, who lived about the time of *Alexander* the *Great*, and is thought to be the first Founder of them; or from *Sadoc* an *Hebrew* word signifying *Justice*; the men pretending to be so exact and strict *Justitiaries*, as if they would justifie themselves before God's Tribunal. The occasion of the Sect or Heresie (for both it was) said to arise from a mistake of *Antigonus*, a right learned man, who teaching, That we ought not to serve God, as Servants do their Masters, for the hope of Reward, occasioned *Sadoc* and *Baitus*, two of his Auditors, to conceive that there was no Reward nor Recompence for a Godly Life; and consequently, no *Resurrection* nor World to come, neither Angels nor Spirits. These were the most capital of their Errors, as appeareth *Act.* 23. 6, 8. *Matth.* 22. 3. *Luk.* 20. 20, 27, *&c.* But other *Dogmata* they had, not mentioned in the Holy Scripture; ascribing nothing unto Fate or Predestination, but all things altogether to a mans free-will; 2 Teaching the Soul to be annihilated at the hour of death; 3 Rejecting all Traditions; and 4 Allowing no more Scripture than the five Books of *Moses*. In most of their opinions contrary to the *Scribes* and *Pharisees*, but joyning with them both in opposing Christ: and though like *Sampson's* Foxes they looked divers ways, and were tyed together by their Tails only; yet in those Tails they carried Firebrands to destroy God's Harvest, and had done it, if they had been able.

3 But indeed the *Pharisees* were the men, who were the Master-wits in the Arts of Mischief, *Homines robustioris impietatis*, in the Father's words. Fellows of such a perfect and concocted malice, that they were almost able to possess the Devil. Their name they derive from *Pharez*, which is to separate. *Separatists* we may rightly call them: For they were first ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸν νόμον, separated to the Study of the Law of God, as *Saul* was brought up to that purpose at the feet of *Gamaliel*: And secondly, ἀφορισμένοι εἰς τὸ ἁγιοσύνῳ, separated from the rest of Mankind, by a more strict profession of sanctity; as the *Pharisee* boasted of himself, that he was not as other men, or as that *Publican*. And that they might so seem unto simple men, they did thirdly separate themselves from the Society and Conversation of others not so pure as themselvs, whom they called *Populum terræ*, or the Sons of the Earth, upbraiding Christ that he kept company with *Publicans* and *Sinners*: and more than so, used a particular kind of Habit, and had a Garb unto themselves which no others had; using it for a by-word amongst themselves, that *Vestes* Populi Terræ, *sunt conculcatio Pharisæorum*. To which end, as their countenances were more clouded and severe than others; so did they wear their *Phylacteries* of a broader size than others did: which, by the way, were *scrolls of Parchment* bound about their Heads, and upon their hands, wherein were writ the Ten Commandments of God; foolishly so interpreting the words of *Deut.* *And they shall be as Frontlets between thine Eyes*, &c. *c.* 6. *v.* 8. They began at the same time with the *Sadduces*, which was about 300 years before Christ's Nativity. As for their *Dogmata*, besides those specified above, which were also practicable, they maintained, 1 A *Pythagorean Metempsychosis*, affirming that the Soul of a Righteous man passed from one into another at the time of his death:

from

from whence the divers opinions touching Christ our Saviour, *Mat.* 16. 14. are supposed to spring; as if his body had been animated with the Soul of *Elias*, *John* the *Baptist*, *Jeremy*, or some other Prophet. 2 They adhered so tenaciously to unwritten Traditions, that in comparison of them they neglected the written Law, as either insufficient or impertinent: And 3 ascribed so much sanctity unto frequent washings, especially when they came from Market, *Mark* 7. 4. (where possibly they might meet with some unclean persons) and before their sitting down to Meat, *Matt.* 15. 2. that if they came unto a place where there was not water enough both to drink and wash, the *Pharisee* would rather chuse to wash than drink, though he died for thirst. More of them he that list to see, may find it copiously set down in the four and twentieth Chapter of Saint *Matthew*; and thither I refer the Reader. By means of which pretentions to so great a *sanctity*, and some other Arts they had to abuse the People, they grew so strong, and had such store of followers and dependants on them, that they became formidable in short time to their Kings and Princes. Insomuch that *Alexandra* durst not enter on the Government in her Childrens nonage, as *Josephus* telleth us, *Antiq. lib.* 13. *cap.* 23. until she had permitted all things unto their disposing; καὶ μηδὲν δίχα τῆς ἐκείνων γνώμης, &c. and promised to do nothing without their advice. And this she did by the direction of King *Alexander*, her dying Husband: whose Government, as she found by too sad experience had in many things proved unsuccessful, διὰ τέτους ὑβρίζεσθαι παρ' αὐτῆ, because she had put some scorns upon them, and otherwise offended that prevailing Faction. A Faction so predominant amongst the People, saith the same *Josephus*, *Antiq. lib.* 19. *cap.* 18. ὡς καὶ χρῆναι βασιλέως πλέγεσθαι, καὶ κατ' Ἀρχιερέως, &c. that whatsoever they pleased to spread abroad, either of the *High Priest*, or the King himself, how false or scandalous soever, it was received for truth without more dispute, or any inquiry made into it.

4 But of the *Pharisees* enough, of the *Scribes* anon. Proceed we now to the *Herodians* and the *Gaulonites*, whom I look not on as either the Authors or Promoters of any Sect of *Religion* in the *Jewish* Church; but as the names of two opposite Factions in the Civil State. The first were such who depending upon *Herod*'s Fortune, as he did on the pleasure of the *Roman* Emperours, solicited the paying of Tribute to the *Romans*; and earnestly pressed upon that point, that *Herod* might be thereby the more indeared to his Masters of *Rome*, and they to him. Upon this ground nick-named *Herodians* by the People, as men that more endeavoured the greatness and Estate of *Herod*, than the prosperity and liberty of their Native Country. And possible enough it is, that some amongst them, seeing the Magnificence of *Herod*'s Palace, and experimentally knowing his Frowes, might fancy him to be the *Messiah* so long looked for, and thereby own this Name with a better Title, than the others did. Opposite unto these, were those called the *Gaulonites* (we may call the one the *Court-Faction*, the other the *Faction* of the *Country*, or Common people: So named from one *Judas* a *Gaulonite*, as *Josephus* calleth him, from the place of his birth; a *Galilæan*, as *Gamaliel* calleth him, *Act.* 5. 37. from the place of his aboad or habitation. By him the *Jews* were practised with to deny this Tribute, telling them that it was a manifest token of their servitude, and that they ought to know no Lord, but the Lord of Heaven: drawing them finally on this ground into open Arms, in which Action he and his Adherents perished, and were brought to nothing. Most of his followers were of *Galilee*, though he had some Disciples in *Hierusalem* and *Samaria* also: and of these *Galilæans* were those poor men, whose blood *Pilate* is said *to mingle with their Sacrifices*, Luk. 13. 1.

The Language of this People, by them called the *Hebrew*, was naturally and originally the same which *Abraham* found in the Land of *Canaan*, at his coming thither; as hath been shewn before when we were in *Phœnicia*. Used by them constantly till their subjugation by the *Babylonians*, when being led captive to that Country, and conforming themselves to the Speech and Dialect of it; they came at last to speak a kind of broken Language, neither true *Chaldæan*, nor good *Hebrew*, but one made of both. *Chaldee* as to the main body of it; but *Hebrew* as to the affixes, points, and Conjugation: being the same with that which we now call the *Syriack*. And at their coming home, after seventy years, had so far lost the knowledg of their Mother-Tongue, that they were not able to understand the words of the Holy Scripture, when *Ezra* read it in their hearing: insomuch that he was forced to employ some learned in that Tongue to expound it to them. To this the *Scribes* so often mentioned in the New Testament, must refer their original: there being no such Office heard of till the time of *Ezra*, though long before that time the Law had ordinarily been read unto them in the Feast of Tabernacles. For this cause they were called *Scribes of the Law*, Ezra 7. 6. *Doctors of the Law*, Luk. 5. 17. and simply by the name of *Lawyers*, Luk. 7. 30. as men whose Office was to expound the Law, and make it intelligible to the People. These we may best resemble to the Canonists in the Church of *Rome*, or the Divinity-Reader in some School or Colledg: and grew to such great estimation in the *Jewish* State, that it was hard to say at last whether the *Pharisees* or they were the better men. For what the *Pharisees* gained on the common people by pretence of sanctity, these got more justifiably by their zeal to the written Word, which they endeavoured to preserve from the common dangers both of corruption and contempt. And though I look on those men especially, as the name of a Function, not a Sect: yet being they held so close to the *Pharisees*, and concurred with them in most of their Superstitions, as appeareth *Mat.* 23. I consider them as a strong and potent Faction, of great authority and influence in affairs of moment.

For matters of *Religion*, the People of this Land were priviledged above all others, had they had the grace to make good use of it: the Law being given to them by God the Father, the Gospel preached amongst them by God the Son, and that Gospel countenanced and confirmed before their eyes, by the miraculous Operations of the Holy Ghost. The Government of that Church in the time of the Law, by a subordination of Priests and Levites to their several Heads; the Priests divided by King *David* into twenty four Ranks or *Classes*, each *Classis* serving in their turns at the Holy Temple: the Chiefs or Heads of which several *Classes*, made but that Body of men which are called *Principes Sacerdotum*, or Chief Priests, so often mentioned in the Writings of the Holy Evangelists. Over all which there was one Supreme, whom they called *Summum Sacerdotum*, or the High Priest, descended lineally from *Aaron*, till the *Romans* out of avarice and reason of State made the Office saleable. And because possibly the High Priest might be under some *pollution*, and so uncapable by Law to perform his Office, he had his *Suffragan* (or *Sagan*) to discharge it for him. Of which sort was *Zephaniah*, the *Sagan* or second Priest to *Semiah*, mentioned *Jer.* 52. 24. And of this sort is *Annas* thought by some to have been

to

to *Caiaphas*; and for that cause the title of High Priest to be given to both, *Luk.*3.2. though others think that *Annas* was High Priest in right, and the other in fact; the one being deposed by the *Romans*, and the other super-induced into the place. In time of *Christianity* they were governed as in other Churches, by a subordination of Priests to Bishops. The first Bishop said to be St. *James*, the son of *Alphæus*, commonly called the *Lord's Brother*; affirmed by *Ignatius*, Scholar to the Apostles, in his Epistle *ad Trallianos*; by *Egesippus*, who lived in the Apostles times, as St. *Hierom* and *Eusebius* cite him; as also by *Clemens* of *Alexandria* cited by *Eusebius*, *Hist. l.*7. *c.*14. by *Cyril* of *Hierusalem*, *Catechism* 4. and 14. *Epiphanius*, *Heref.*78. *n.*7. St. *Ambrose* in *Gal.*1. St. *Chrysost.* on the last of St. *John*'s Gospel; St. *Hierom* in his Catalogue of *Ecclesiastical* Writers; St. *Augustine cont. Cresc. l.*2. *c.*37. To whom there may be added the joynt consent of 289 Prelates, assembled in the sixth General Council holden at *Constantinople*, affirming *James* the *Lord's Brother* to be the first Bishop of *Hierusalem*: all of them, with the Fathers before mentioned, taking the word *Bishop* in that sense, in which it generally passed for the times they lived in. His Successors subject at the first to the Bishop of *Cesarea*, as their *Metropolitan*; though priviledged in their own Diocese, with the rights of *Patriarchs*, as appears evidently by the Acts of the *Nicene* Council. But afterwards for the greater honour of the Holy City, wherein our Saviour wrought the work of our Redemption, it was ordained at *Chalcedon*, that the Bishop of *Hierusalem* should have as well the jurisdiction as the name of a *Patriarch*; the three *Palestines* (for *Constantine* had before divided it into so many Provinces) being subducted from the power of the See of *Antioch*, to make up his *Patriarchate*. So stood it in elder times, but now by the incroachment of *Mahometanism* the Christian faith is obscured, and the beauty of it so eclipsed, that were it not for some Sects of Christians dwelling in Mount *Sinai*, and about *Hierusalem*, it might be said without any manifest untruth, to be quite extinguished.

But to look back upon the Country, it cannot be described more fully and significantly, than *Moses* hath done it to our hands, in *Deut.*8. Where it is said to be *a land of Brooks and Waters, of Fountains and Depths, that spring out of the Vallies and Hills; a Land of Wheat and Barley, and Vines, and Fig-trees, and Pomegranates; Of Oyl-Olive, and Honey: a Land, wherein was bread, without scarceness; a Land whose stones were as Iron, and out of whose Hills one may dig brass.* An ample commendation; and yet in some sort short of the fertility of this flourishing Country, which did not only consist in the choice and plenty, but the perpetuity of its fruits: it being on record in the Epistles of the Emperour *Julian* (sirnamed the *Apostate*) that the Fig-trees, and other fruit-trees herein, were seldom or never without fruits; the old not fully falling off, till the new come on. Which his report, if true, (as certainly he did not love our Saviour so well as to flatter the Country for his sake) we have then an answer to the difficulty, which hath so much perplexed all Commentators of former times; and that is, why our Saviour should curse the Fig-tree for not bearing fruit, when the Text saith, that *the time of fruits was not yet come*, *Mar.*14.13. For though the time for new fruits was not yet come (it being then but early Spring) yet our Saviour being hungry might expect to find some of the old, and failing of his expectation lay that curse upon it. Nor is this solution of the doubt discountenanced, (rather much confirmed) by the Character and condition of the Country, as it stands at present; naturally adorned with beautiful Mountains, and luxurious Valleys, the Rock affording excellent Waters, and the air never pinched with colds, nor scorched with heats. And though either by the negligence of the Inhabitants, or some curse laid upon the Land, far short of that fertility with which once it flourished; Yet still *Figs*, *Olives*, *Pomegranates*, *Palm-trees*, are here very frequently to be seen; some store of *Wine*, with *Oranges*, and the *Apple of Paradise*, which they preserve upon the Trees all the year long (which agrees very well with that of *Julian* spoken of before) as well-furnished with *Honey* and *Sugar-canes*; and also with Goats, Swine, Hares, Quails, and Partridges: but pestered so in many places with Rats and Mice, that if it were not for certain *Birds* which feed upon them, it were not possible for the people to have any Harvest. *Balm* they had anciently, not now. Nor any Nuts, Pears, Plums or Cherries, but what are brought hither from *Damascus*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Chison*, the *Chorsæus* of *Ptolomy*, which riseth out of Mount *Tabor* in *Galilee*, and falleth into the *Mediterranean* Sea, not far from Mount *Carmel* in *Phœnicia*, 2 *Cedron*, a *Torrent* rather than a River, passing betwixt *Hierusalem* and the Mount of *Olives*; but more remarkable for many notable actions, than many others of a greater both name and course. For over this Brook did *David* pass when he fled from *Absalom*; and over this our Saviour, the Son of *David*, passed, when he went to his Passion. On the Banks hereof did *Asa* the King of *Judah* burn his Mothers *Idols*, 1 *King.*15. as *Josiah* did the Vessels which were made for *Baal*, 2 *King.*23. 3 *Zared*. And 4 *Naphthea*, which arising out of the hills of the Tribe of *Judah*, have their fall into the *Mediterranean*. 5 *Arnon*, which hath his spring in the hills so called, and endeth his course in the *Mare Mortuum*. 6 *Jaboc*, oft mentioned in the Scriptures; which issuing out of the Mountains of *Galaad*. And 7 *Hermon*, which springing from the hills so named, lose themselves in *Jordan*. 8 *Jordan*, so called from *Jor* and *Dan*, two neighbouring Fountains, out of which he seems to take his source; though they do also fetch their spring from *Phiala*, a round deep Well at the foot of *Anti-Libanus*, about twenty four miles from these Fountains, into which he maketh his way like a *Mole* under ground. A river of more fame, than length, breadth, or depth, running from North to South, almost in a strait line to the *Dead* Sea, where he endeth his course; not navigably deep, nor above ten yards in breadth, where broadest; shadowed on both sides with *Poplars*, *Tamarisk-trees*, and *Reeds* of many several sorts, of some of which the *Arabians* make Darts and *Javelins*, of others *Arrows*, and some again they fashion into Pens to write with. Passing along it maketh two *Lakes*, the one in the *Upper Galilee*, by the Ancients called *Samachonitis*, dry for the most part in Summer, and then covered with shrubs and sedge; not mentioned in the holy Scriptures: the other in the *Lower Galilee*, about an 100 furlongs in length, and about forty in breadth; called the *Sea* of *Galilee* from the Country, the *Lake of Tiberias*, from a City of that name on the banks thereof, & for the like cause called also the *Lake of Genesareth*. And here it is to be observed, that the River passeth thorow this Lake with so swift a course that it preserves it self distinct from the waters of it both in taste and colour, as is affirmed of *Nilus* for a long space in the *Mediterranean*, and other great Rivers in their falls. Finally, having run thorow the Plains of *Hiericho*, it finisheth its course at last in the *Mare mortuum*, or *Dead Sea*. Honoured with the name of a *Sea*, because salt, and large, seventy miles long, and sixteen broad; furnishing with Salt the whole Land of *Jewry*, but called the *Dead Sea*, either because it had no visible efflux into the *Ocean*; nor is it at all encreased with the waters of this River and many

many other *Torrents* which fall into it; or because no living Creature is nourished in it, suffocated with the *Bituminous* savour which it sendeth forth, from the abundance of which matter it is also called *Lacus Asphaltites*. Nigh hereunto stood the once famous Cities of *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*, with three others more, whence the Valley had the name of *Pentapolis*, destroyed for their abominations by a fire from heaven: now fruitful in shew only, but not in substance; the fruits here growing, being very fair unto the eye, *Sed levi tactu pressa in vagum fatiscunt pulverem*, but if touched, moulder into ashes, as *Solinus* hath it.

Chief Hills and Mountains of it, besides *Anti-Libanus*, and Mount *Hermon*, spoken of already, which be only borderers, are 1 Mount *Sion*, memorable for the *Tower of David*, which was built upon it, called frequently the *Holy Hill of Sion*. 2 Mount *Moriah*, famous for the intended Sacrifice of *Isaac*, and the Temple of *Solomon*. 3 Mount *Calvary*, on which *CHRIST* suffered, supposed to be the burial-place of our Father *Adam*. 4 Mount *Tabor*, on which our Saviour was transfigured. 5 Mount *Olivet*, from which he ascended into Heaven. 6 Mount *Garizim*, whereon stood the *Samaritans* Temple, their ordinary place of Worship, mentioned *Joh.*4.20. 7 The Mountains of *Saron*, stretching with intermixed Valleys from the Sea of *Galilee* to the *Mediterranean*, not far from *Tyre*, there ending in a white cliff, and for that cause called *Capo Bianco* by the Sailer. The whole Mountain pleasantly enriched with the fragrant smells of Rosemary, Sweet Marjoram, Hyssop, Bayes, and other Odoriferous Plants which do grow there naturally; but for all that, destitute of any other Inhabitants than Leopards, Boars, Jaccals, and such savage Creatures. 8 The Mountains of *Gilboa*, the highest on the West of *Jordan*, as 9 those of *Basan*, celebrated for their height in the Book of *Psalms*. And 10 those of *Abarim*, on the East-side of it: from one of the Summits of which last called *Nebo*, by some Writers *Pisgah*, the Lord gave *Moses* a Survey of the *Land of Promise*.

As for this whole Country comprehended in the name of *Palestine*, it hath had divers divisions, according to the quality of the people, or the will of those who have been formerly Masters of it. Divided first betwixt the *Philistines*, *Perezites*, *Hittites*, *Jebusites*, and others of the Sons of *Canaan*, on this side *Jordan*; the *Moabites*, *Ammonites*, *Midianites*, and *Amorites*, dwelling on the other. When conquered by the Sons of *Jacob*, it was divided into the twelve Tribes, of 1 *Judah*, 2 *Benjamin*. 3 *Simeon*, 4 *Dan*, 5 *Aser*, 6 *Nephthali*, 7 *Zabulon*, 8 *Issachar*, 9 *Gad*, 10 *Reuben*, 11 *Ephraim*, and 12 *Manasseth*. When that great breach was made by *Jeroboam*, in the Kingdom of *David*, it was broken into the two Kingdoms of *Judah* and *Israel*; of which the first contained only the two Tribes of *Judah* and *Benjamin*, the latter comprehending the other Ten. When the *Israelites* were led Captive into *Assyria*, and a new set of People planted in their rooms, those new-commers from *Samaria*, their Capital City, had the name of *Samaritans*: and when the men of *Judah* were released of their long captivity, and came back from *Babylon*, they took to themselves the name of *Jews*. After which time, the whole Country of *Palestine* anciently possessed or subdued by the seed of *Abraham*, was divided into 1 *Peræa*, 2 *Iturea*, 3 *Galilee*, 4 *Samaria*, 5 *Judæa*, and 6 *Idumæa*. When conquered by the *Romans*, all these were joyned into one Province, which for a time was reckoned as a part of *Syria*, or at least subordinate. But *Constantine* not liking of the one or the other, went a way by himself, and cast it into three Provinces, *viz.* 1 *Palestina Prima*, 2 *Palestina Secunda*, and 3 *Palestina Salutaris*; the *Metropolis* of the first being *Cæsarea Palestinæ*; of the second, *Samaria*; of the third, *Hierusalem*. But this division of *Constantines* growing out of use, we will adhere unto the former: Beginning first with those parts hereof which lay on the other side of *Jordan*, because first conquered and possessed by the house of *Israel*; who at that Gate found entrance into all the rest; and coming round to *Idumæa*, which last of all these Provinces was added to the State of *Jewry*. In the *Chorography* whereof I must confess my self a Debter to Sir *Walter Rawleigh*, whose industry herein hath saved me a great deal of search, though sometimes I make bold to differ from him, and add to him, as I see occasion.

1 PERÆA.

PERÆA, is that part of *Palestine*, which lyeth betwixt the River *Jordan*, and the Mountains of *Arnon*, (which divide *Palestine* from *Syria* and *Arabia*) East and West; and reacheth from *Pella* in the North, to *Petra* the chief Town of *Arabia Petræa*, in the South. By *Pliny* it is made to bend more towards *Ægypt*, who describes it thus: *Perea* Judæa *pars est ulterior*, Arabiæ, & Ægypto *proxima*, *asperis dispersa montibus*, & *à cæteris* Judæis, Jordane *amne discreta*. *Peræa* (saith he) is the furthest part of *Judæa*, neighbouring *Arabia* and *Ægypt*, interspersed with rough and craggy Mountains, and parted from the rest of the *Jews* by the River *Jordan*. So called from the *Greek* word Περὰν in regard of the situation of it on the other side of that River; and not improperly might be rendred by *Transf-Jordana*. Blessed with a rich soil, and large fields beset with divers Trees, especially of Olives, Vines, and Palms. The habitation in times past of the *Midianites*, *Moabites*, and *Ammonites*, as also of the two Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*. Of all which I shall speak in order, beginning with the *Midianites*, and the Children of *Lot*, as the first occupants hereof; upon the knowledg of whose affairs, the State and Story of the *Israelites* hath so much dependance.

And first the *MADIANITES* inhabited on the South-East of the *Dead* Sea, at the very entrance of the Country; descended from one or more of the five sons of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25.4. who leaving the rest of their brethren to seek themselves new habitations, more towards the Banks of the Red Sea, and the Desarts of *Arabia Petræa*, continued near unto the place of *Abraham*'s dwelling: and mingling with the *Moabites* and *Canaanites* in blood and marriages, came in short time to lose all the knowledg of the true God, and to worship Idols, as the rest of their neighbours did.

Their chief Cities were 1 *Recome*, built by one of the five Kings of the *Midianites*, which was slain by *Joshuah*, afterwards called *Selah*, 2 *King.* 14.7. accounted at that time a City of the *Edomites*; next of the *Ismaelites* or *Arabians*, and by them called *Hagar*. Best known unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*, by the name of *Petra*, and by that name we shall take further notice of it when we come to *Arabia*. 2 *Midian*, on the Banks of the *Dead Sea*, the ordinary residence of their Princes, absolute of themselves at first, as in other places; but at the time when *Moses* and *Joshuah* led the people into their possessions, subjected unto *Sibon* King of the *Amorites*; whose Dukes their five Kings and Princes are said to be, *Josh.* 13. 21. A people whom the *Israelites* had neither Commission or intent to make War upon, if they had not causlesly provoked them, at the request of the *Moabites*, by sending amongst them (as *Balaam* the false Prophet had advised) the most beautiful of all their women,

not

not only to entice them to prohibited mixtures, but to allure them to the worſhip of their Idols alſo. A miſchievous and ſucceſsful plot, but alike dangerous to both parties: God ſending a fierce Plague amongſt the *Iſraelites*, which coſt them the lives of 24000 perſons, beſides ſuch as periſhed by the Sword; and giving a command to *Moſes*, to avenge him of the *Midianites*, who had ſo provoked him. On which Commiſſion, *Moſes* culled out 12000 men, and ſent them under *Phineas* againſt the *Midianites*: by whom all their Princes were ſlain, their Cities and goodly Caſtles burnt with fire, their men, women, and male-children put unto the ſword, as is related in the one and thirtieth Chapter of the Book of *Numb.* Yet notwithſtanding this great ſlaughter, they recovered their former power, if not a greater; and after the death of *Barak* the Judg of *Iſrael*, did for the ſpace of four years ſo afflict that people, that they were fain to hide themſelves in the *Caves and ſtrong holds of the Mountains*, as is ſaid *Judg.* 6.2. their enemies having left them neither Sheep, Oxen, nor Aſs, or any ſuſtenance at all, *v.* 4. But *Gideon* being raiſed up by God for their deliverance, encountred with their four Kings, and put them to flight: of which four, *Oreb* and *Zeeb* were taken and ſlain by the *Ephraimites* at the paſſage of *Jordan*; *Zeba* and *Zalmunna* taken by *Gideon* himſelf, and executed by his own hand, as the Story telleth us. In this War there are ſaid to have periſhed of this people and their Confederates, no fewer than 120000 perſons, by which ſo weakened that we hear no more of them from this time forwards, in any action of importance: their name and Country being firſt incorporated into that of the *Edomites*, and after into that of the *Iſmaelites*, and other the Inhabitants of *Arabia Petræa*.

2 The *MOABITES* poſſeſſed all the Country, from the *Midianites* in the South, as far as to *Eſebon* in the North, on both ſides of the River *Arnon*: having *Jordan* on the Weſt, and the Hills of *Abarin* on the Eaſt. Poſſeſſed at the firſt by the *Emmins*, a race of *Giants*, whoſe chief City was *Sheneth Kiriathaim*. But theſe being vanquiſhed and broken by *Chedorlaomer* and his Aſſociates, of which ſee *Gen.* 14.5. their forlorn ſeats were taken up by the *Moabites*, deſcended from *Moab*, one of the ſons of *Lot*; who lived here in great proſperity till the time of *Vaheb*, Grand-father unto *Balac*, the ſon of *Zippor*; from whom *Sehon* King of the *Amorites* had taken all the parts of *Moab* on the North of the River *Arnon*, and made that River, which before was the middle of *Moab*, to be the North bound or border of it. In which eſtate it ſtood in the time of *Moſes*.

Chief Cities of it at that time, were 1 *Rabbat*, the Regal ſeat of *Balac* the King of *Moab*, the *Rhalmathum* of *Ptolomy*. 2 *Diblatham*, deſtroyed with the reſt of *Moab* by *Nebuchadnezzar*, as is ſaid, *Jer.* 48.22. 3 *Gallim*, the Principality of *Phalti* the ſon of *Laiſh*, to whom *Saul* gave his Daughter *Michal*, formerly married unto *David*, 1 *Sam.* 25.44. 4 *Muthana*, and 5 *Nathaliel*, thorow which the *Iſraelites* paſſed, after they had left the Well called *Beer*. 6 *Bamath*, where *Moſes* was encamped when he ſent to *Sehon* to demand a paſſage through his Country, *Numb.* 21.19, &c. 7 *Mizpah*, the City of Refuge to the Father and Mother of *David*, in the time of his troubles under *Saul*. 8 *Hor*, the chief City of *Moab*, not meddled with by *Moſes* in his march this way, the Lord himſelf forbidding him to touch upon it, or diſtreſs it, becauſe it had been given by him for an inheritance to the children of *Lot*, *Deut.* 2.9. Which prohibition was not only for this place particularly; (though this particularly there mentioned) but for all the Lands and Territories then in their poſſeſſion. 9 *Kir-haſareth*, of chief note for the barbarous and inhumane fact of *Meſha* the *Moabitiſh* King, who being beſieged herein by the Kings of *Judah*, *Iſrael*, and *Edom*, without hope of eſcape, ſacrificed his own eldeſt Son on the wall thereof; which ſo moved the Kings of *Judah*, and *Edom*, that they forſook the King of *Iſrael* whoſe the quarrel was. So the ſiege was raiſed, 2 *King.* 3.17.

Now as *Moſes* did not at the preſent diſobey God's Order, in leaving the *Moabites* in quiet; ſo neither did the *Moabites* on their parts provoke him to any hoſtile act; giving him a free and open paſſage in his march for *Canaan*; out of an hope that when the *Amorites* were ſubdued, they ſhould be put into poſſeſſion of their loſt Eſtates. And though they were deceived of that expectation, the *Iſraelites* looking on that Country which they had conquered, as the ſpoils of the *Amorites*, and giving it for a poſſeſſion to the Tribe of *Reuben*: yet durſt they not do any thing in the way of Arms; but ſent for *Balaam* the falſe Prophet, to caſt them by his Curſes and Incantations into ſome Diſeaſes, whereby their ſtrength and courage might be taken from them. *Balac* the Son of *Zippor* was at this time King. After whom we find not the name of any other, till we come to *Eglon*, who with the help of *Aminon* and *Amalek*, over-maſtered *Iſrael*, and for the ſpace of 18 years tyrannized amongſt them: when ſlain in his own Houſe, and afterwards 10000 of his People, by the hand of *Ehud*. But this indignity was in the times ſucceeding revenged by *Saul* in ſome part, who made War upon them; but more by *David*, who ſubdued them, and made them Tributaries: and not ſo only, but ſubjected them to the vileſt Offices, as is intimated in that form of Speech, *Moab is my waſh-pot*, Pſal. 60.8. Taking their opportunity, they withdrew themſelves from the Houſe of *David*, and put themſelves under the command of the Kings of *Iſrael*, to whom they paid for Tribute in the time of *Ahab*, 100000 Lambs, and 200000 Rams, with their Fleeces on: but quickly weary of thoſe payments, and revolting from the Houſe of *Ahab* alſo, they were invaded by *Jehoram*, aided herein by the Kings of *Judah* and *Idumæa*; by whom being vanquiſhed, *Meſha* their King was fain to ſhut himſelf up in *Kir-haſareth*, as was ſaid before. After this joyning with the *Ammonites*, and the *Idumeans* or ſons of *Edom*, they invaded *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*, to whom God gave a memorable and ſignal Victory, without blow or Battel: the *Ammonites* firſt ſetting upon the *Edomites*, and after upon one another, till they were almoſt all deſtroyed, 2 *Chron.* 20.23. From this time we hear nothing of them; but probably they recovered ſome part of their former Dwellings, when that two Tribes and a half on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, were carried away captive by *Tiglath Pileſer*. Poſſeſſed hereof, and of other their habitations, till the reign of *Zedekias* King of *Judah*; when vanquiſhed, with the reſt of theſe Nations, by the *Babylonians* and *Aſſyrians* under *Nebuchadnezzar*. Nor find we any mention of them in the Ages following; the name of *Moab* being forgotten, or grown out of uſe: the South parts of their Country laid to *Arabia Petræa*, as the Eaſt parts were to that of *Arabia Deſerta*; and all the reſt, as well as that which had been conquered by the *Jews*, ſwallowed up in the general name of *Paleſtinians*.

3 The *AMMONITES* inhabited on the North-Eaſt of the River *Arnon*, and poſſeſſed all that Tract from *Arnon*, on the Head of the River, to the City of *Rabbah*; and on both ſides of the River *Jaboc*, as well within the Mountains of *Galaad* as without the ſame. The Seat in elder times of the *Rephaims*, and *Zanzummims*, a Giant-like Race of men, as the *Emmins* were; but vanquiſhed alſo, as the others, by

Chedorlaomer; *Aſhtaroth*, and *Heth*, being then the principal of their Habitations. Succeeded too in their deſolate and forſaken dwellings, by the Children of *Ammon*, the other Son of *Lot*, and the Brother of *Moab*; both Houſes running the ſame fortune; theſe *Ammonites* being conquered, and deprived of the beſt part of their Country on the South-ſide of *Jaboc*, by *Og* King of *Baſan*; as the *Moabites*, at the ſame time, of theirs by *Sehon*. A Monument of which ſubjection was the Bed of *Og*, found in the City of *Rabba*, the chief City of *Ammon*, there to be ſeen when *Moſes* had ſubdued the Kings of the *Amorites*, as appeareth *Deut.* 3.

Chief Cities at ſuch time as the *Iſraelites* firſt conquered the Land of *Canaan*, were 1 *Rabbah*, the Regal City of their Kings; taken by *Og* of *Baſan*, as is ſaid before; but again quitted as it ſeemeth on the coming of *Moſes*, that he might be better able to keep the Field. Memorable in ſucceeding times for the death of *Uriah*, ſlain here by a deſign of *David*'s when beſieged by *Joab*. Who having brought it to terms of yielding, ſent for the King to come before it, that he might have the honour of taking a place ſo defenſible: environed in a manner with the River *Jaboc*, and therefore called the *City of Waters*, 2 *Sam.* 12. 27. Afterwards repaired and beautified by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, King of *Ægypt*, who having made himſelf Maſter of thoſe parts of *Arabia*, which lie near unto it, and liking the conveniency of the ſituation, honoured it with the name of *Philadelphia*. 2 *Dathema*, ſuppoſed to be *Rithma* by the Learned *Junius*, mentioned *Numb.* 33. 18. (the *Hebrew* Letters *D* and *A* being much alike) a place of great ſtrength amongſt the *Ammonites*. 3 *Minneth*, in the South Border, and 4 *Abel vinearum* in the Eaſt Border of *Ammon*; both mentioned in the purſuit of that People when ſubdued by *Jephthe*. 4 *Mitſpa*, ſometimes one of the Cities of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, and at that time honoured with the reſidence of *Jephthe*; but afterwards recovered by the Children of *Ammon*: in whoſe hands it was, when utterly deſtroyed and burnt by *Judas Macchabeus*, 1 *Mac.* 5. 35. 6 *Magod*, and 7 *Boſor*, two other ſtrong places of the *Ammonites*, there alſo mentioned; but ſaid to be in the *Region* of *Galaad*, by which name, or by that of *Gileadites*, all the Country of the *Ammonites* lying on this ſide of the Mountains, was at that time called.

As for thoſe *Ammonites*, they had nothing at all to do with *Iſrael* as they paſſed towards *Canaan*; neither provoking them, nor being provoked by them, to any acts of hoſtility. Afterwards not well pleaſed that they were not reſtored to the poſſeſſion of thoſe Lands which had been taken from them by *Og* of *Baſan*, (conferred by the Decree of *Moſes* on the Tribe of *Gad*) they joyned with the *Midianites* in their Expedition. But worſted by the puiſſance and good fortune of *Gideon*, they lay ſtill a while, till ſtirred up by ſome ſecret motion from Almighty God, to avenge him on that ſinful and idolatrous People, who by worſhipping the Gods of the Heathen, had provoked him to anger, Proſperous in it for a time, till his wrath was pacified; who having made uſe of them to chaſtiſe his people, delivered up his Rod to be burnt by *Jephthe*, vanquiſhed and driven home by him with a very great ſlaughter. Not ſo much cruſhed by the unſucceſsfulneſs of this attempt, but that in the time of *Saul* they brake out again and beſieged *Jabeſh Gilead*; *Nahaſh*, a cruel Tyrant, being then their King; who having brought the City into great extremity, would give them no other conditions than the loſs of every mans right eye: to the end that uſing to carry a great Target on their left Arms, wherewith the eye on that ſide was wholly ſhadowed, they might by this means be diſabled from all future Service. But *Saul* came time enough to ſave them from that ſhame and loſs; from that cauſe ſo offenſive to *Nahaſh*, that to deſpight him, he ſhewed friendſhip to *David* in the time of his trouble. A courteſie which *David* was ſo mindful of, that he ſent Embaſſadours to *Hanun* the Son of *Nahaſh*, to make acknowledgment of it, and to confirm the amity which he had with his Father: but found ſo ill requital from him, that inſtead of thanks and kind acceptance, his Meſſengers were deſpightfully handled, their Beards half ſhaven, and their Garments cut off by the knee. Incenſed therewith he ſent *Joab* againſt them, by whom the Country was laid waſte, and *Rabbah* their chief City taken; their Kings Crown, weighing a Talent of Gold, ſet on *David*'s Head, and all the Priſoners executed with great ſeverity, ſome of them being caſt into Lime-kilns, and the reſt torn in pieces with Saws and Harrows. Quiet a long while after this, we hear no great news of them till the reign of *Jehoſaphat*, againſt whom confederated with the *Edomites* and *Moabites*, they made open War; but fell by one anothers Swords, as was ſaid before. Not well recovered of this blow, they were ſubdued and made Tributaries by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, and ſo continued in the time of *Joatham* his Son; who ſo increaſed the *Tribute* laid upon them by his Father, that it amounted to an hundred *Talents* of Silver, ten thouſand meaſures of Wheat, and as many of Barley. Taught by this Leſſon how to value the Kings of *Judah*, they continued either quiet Neighbours, or obedient Subjects, though much improved in power and reputation, by regaining the greateſt part of their ancient Dwellings, on the removal of the two Tribes and an half, on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, to the Land of *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Pileſer*. For after this (with reference to the common danger) *Baulis* their King was ſo ſtrict a Confederate with *Zedechias*, that when *Nebuchadnezzar* had taken *Zedechias* with him unto *Babylon*, and left *Gedaliah* as his Deputy to command the Country, *Iſmael*, one of the Blood of the Kings of *Judah*, was ſent by *Baulis* to ſlay him. But he paid dear for his attempt; his Country being ſhortly conquered by the *Babylonians*, and the name of *Ammonite* forgotten: changed by the *Græcians* when they came to Lord it over them, to thoſe of *Geleaditis* and *Philadelphia*; according to the new name of their Principal City, and the old one of the Mountains and Hills adjoyning.

4 The *REUBENITES* took name from *Reuben*, the eldeſt of *Jacob*'s Sons by *Leah*; of whom, in the firſt Muſter which was made of them at Mount *Sinai*, there were found 46000 fighting men; and 43700 at the ſecond Muſter, when they paſſed over *Jordan*. Their dwelling was on the Eaſt of that famous River, having the *Gadites* on the North, the *Deſart Arabia* on the Eaſt, and the Land of *Moab* on the South, from which parted by the River *Arnon*.

Places of moſt obſervation here, 1 *Abel-Sittim*, ſeated in that part of the Country which was called the *Plains of Moab*; the laſt incamping place of *Moſes*: afterwards by the *Jews* called ſimply *Sittim*: Memorable for the *Wood* ſo often mentioned in the Scriptures, of which the *Ark of the Lord* was made. In after-times by the *Greeks* and *Romans* it was called *Abila*, miſtook by ſome for that *Abila* or *Abilene* whereof *Lyſanias* was *Tetrarch*: that Town and Territory, as *Joſephus* doth affirm expreſly, being ſituate amongſt the ſpurs and branches of *Libanus*, far enough from hence. 2 *Bethabarah*, or *Beth-Bara*, where *John* baptized, and *Moſes* made his laſt and moſt divine Exhortations to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, contained in *Deuteronomy*. 3 *Machærus*, the ſtrongeſt

in-land

in-land City and Caſtle in thoſe parts of the World, ſtanding aloft upon a Mountain every way unacceſſible: firſt fortified by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, as a frontire Town againſt the *Arabians*; and afterwards demoliſhed by *Gabinius*, one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenants, in the War againſt *Ariſtobulus*. Unfortunately remarkable for the death of *John Baptiſt*, where murdered by the command of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee*, and Lord of this Country of *Peræa*. 4 *Laſa*, or *Leſhah*, of which *Gen.* 10. 19. by the *Greeks* called *Callirrhoe*, by reaſon of the fair Fountains riſing from the Hills adjoyning, out of which iſſue Springs both of hot and cold Waters, as alſo bitter and ſweet; all which ſoon after joyned into one ſtream, make a wholeſome *Bath*, eſpecially for *Convulſions* and contraction of Sinews. 5 *Medeba*, famous for the defeat given to the *Syrians* and *Ammonites* by the conduct of *Joab*, 1 *Chron.* 19. 7. In the time of the *Greeks* laid with ſome other Towns of this Tract unto *Cœlo-Syria*; but in the declining times of the *Seleucian* Family, regained unto the Crown of *Jewry* by *Alexander*, the ſecond King of the Race of the *Maccabees*; and finally, with eleven others in thoſe parts, delivered by *Antipater* the Father of *Herod* into the hands of *Aretas* King of the *Arabians*, hoping thereby to gain him to the ſide of *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Alexander*, whoſe cauſe *Antipater* moſt favoured. 6 *Boſor*, or *Bozra*, a City of *Refuge*, and one of thoſe that were aſſigned unto the *Levites* on that ſide of the Water. 7 *Livias*, a Town new built by *Herod*, in honour of *Livia*, the Mother of *Tiberius Cæſar*: different from that which the *Geographers* call 8 *Libias* (though by ſome confounded) the ſame with *Laban*, mentioned *Deut.* 1. 1. 9 *Kedemoth*, another City of the *Levites*, giving name unto the adjoyning Deſart, from whence *Moſes* ſent his Ambaſſage to *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 10 *Bamath-Baal*, the chief City of the worſhippers of *Baal*, to which *Balaam* was brought by *Balac* to curſe the *Iſraelites*. 11 *Heſhbon*, the Regal City of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*. 12 *Adam*, or the City *Adam* (*Joſ.* 3. 17.) where the Tribes paſſed dry-foot over *Jordan*, oppoſite unto *Gilgal* in the Tribe of *Benjamin*. Within this Tribe is the Mountain *Nebo*, from which *Moſes* took a view of the Land of *Canaan*: an Hill as it ſeemeth of two tops, whereof that which looketh towards *Jerico*, is called *Piſgah*: that which looketh toward *Moab* being called *Hur*. Here is alſo a high Hill named *Peor*, where the filthy Idol *Baal* was worſhipped alſo, who hath hence the addition of *Baal-Peor*.

5 The *GADITES* were ſo called from *Gad* the ſeventh Son of *Jacob*, begot on *Zilpah* the Hand-maid of *Leah*; of whom were found at the firſt Muſter when they came out of *Ægypt*, forty five thouſand, five hundred and fifty fighting men; and at the ſecond, when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, forty five thouſand bearing Arms. Their ſituation was betwixt the *Reubenites* on the South, and the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* upon the North; the River *Jordan* on the Weſt, and the Mountains of *Arnon* on the Eaſt; by which laſt parted from the dwellings of the Children of *Ammon*.

Cities of moſt obſervation, 1 *Aroer*, on the Banks of the *River Arnon*, the principal City of the *Gadites*. 2 *Dibon*, more towards *Jordan*; of great note in the time of *Joſhua*, and of no ſmall account in the time of Saint *Hierom*. 3 *Beth-nimrah*, of which *Eſay* propheſied that the Waters thereof ſhould be dried up; ſeated upon the *Arnon* alſo. 4 *Nattoroth*, more in the body of the Tribe. 5 *Beth-haram*, mentioned by *Joſhuah*, *chap.* 13. *v.* 27. by *Joſephus* called *Betaramptha*; new built by *Herod Antipas*, and called *Livias*, in honour of *Livia* the Wife of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, tranſlated into the *Julian* Family; who alſo laid unto it fourteen Villages, to make it of the greater Power and Juriſdiction. 6 *Beth-ezob*, by *Joſephus* called *Vetezabra*, the habitation of *Miriam*, who in the Siege of *Hieruſalem*, when deſtroyed by *Titus*, was compelled by Famine to eat her own Son. 7 *Succoth*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from the Tents or Booths which *Jacob* ſet up there, in his paſſage from *Meſopotamia* to the Land of *Canaan*: the People of which Town having denied relief to *Gideon*, as he followed the chaſe of *Zebah* and *Zalmunna*, were by him miſerably tortured at his return, under a *Tribulum* or *Threſhing-Car*, wherewith he tore their fleſh, and bruiſed their bodies. 8 *Jabzor*, another of the Regal Seats of *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*; firſt taken by *Moſes*, after recovered by the *Moabites* (as appeareth *Iſa.* 16. 8.) then poſſeſſed by the *Ammonites*; and finally from them regained by *Judas Macchabeus*, 1 *Mac.* 5. 8. 9 *Mahanaim*, ſo called from the Army of *Angels* which appeared to *Jacob* (*Gen.* 32. 2.) as ready to defend him againſt all his Enemies, the word in the Original importing a *double Army*. A place of very great ſtrength and ſafety, and therefore made by *Abner* the Seat Royal of *Iſhboſheth*, the Son of *Saul*, during the War he had with *David*; as afterwards the retiring place of *David*, during the Rebellion of his Son *Abſalom*. 10 *Rogelim*, the City of *Barzillai* the *Gileadite*, ſo faithful to *David* in that War. 11 *Ramoth*, or *Ramoth Gilead* ſo called from the ſituation of it near the Mountains of *Gilead*; a Town of ſpecial note in the Book of God: particularly, for the Pacification here made betwixt *Jacob* and *Laban*; for the death of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*, who loſt his life in the recovery of it from the hands of the *Syrians*; and finally, for the Election of *Jehu* to the Crown of *Iſrael*, Anointed at the Siege hereof, by a Son of the *Prophets*. 12 *Penuel*, ſo called from the interview which the Lord pleaſed to beſtow there on his Servant *Jacob*, at his return out of *Meſopotamia*, mentioned *Gen.* 32. 32. the word ſignifying the place of the *face* or viſion of *God*: defaced by *Gideon* for their churliſh uſage of him, when he craved relief of them againſt the *Midianites*; to whom, together with the *Moabites* and *Ammonites*, the whole Territory appertaining to theſe two Tribes, did once belong. But being from them taken by *Og* King of *Baſan*, and *Sehon* King of the *Amorites*, it came by the overthrow of thoſe Kings to the hands of *Moſes*; by whom aſſigned unto the Tribes of *Gad* and *Reuben*, for their habitation. Continuing theirs till the fatal period of the Kingdom of *Iſrael* began to approach; at what time theſe two Tribes, with the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* lying on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, being carried captive into *Aſſyria*, by *Tiglath Pileſer*, the *Moabites* and *Ammonites* recovered a great part of their ancient dwellings. Of which poſſeſſed, till their ſubverſion by the *Babylonians*. Afterwards this whole Country coming into the hands of the Kings of *Syria*, had the name of *Perea*, for the reaſon formerly delivered. And being won piece-meal by the *Maccabeans*, came with the reſt of the Kingdom of *Judah*, to the poſſeſſion of *Herod* the *Great*; by whom bequeathed at his death unto *Herod Antipas*, one of his Sons, who held it, together with both *Galilee*'s, under the name of *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Perea*, as *Joſephus*; or of *Galilee* only, as Saint *Luke*; who being dead, it was beſtowed on *Agrippa* King of the *Jews*, of whom more hereafter.

2 ITURÆA.

ITURÆA hath on the East and North, *Cœlo-Syria*; on the West, the River *Jordan*; and on the South, *Peræa*. So called from *Ietur* one of the sons of *Ismael*, seated in this Tract; though lost by his Posterity to the *Amorites*, one of the most powerful Tribes amongst the *Canaanites*; and by them made the Patrimony of the Kings of *Basan*. The Race of which King ending in *Og*, the wealthiest and best parts hereof, were given by *Moses* to the half Tribe of *Manasses*; such parts of it as lay towards *Damascus* being seized on by the neighbouring *Aramites*, and made a Kingdom of it self, called the Kingdom of *Gessur*; and the more mountainous and unpleasant left to the first Inhabitants, as not worth the conquering. But both the Kingdom of *Gessur*, and those of the half Tribe of *Manasses*, shifting from one Lord to another, till they came into the hands of the *Græcians*; the name of *Iturea* revived again and grew into very good esteem: the *Ituræans* being reputed for good Soldiers, especially at the Bow and Arrows; of which thus the Poet in his *Georgicks*, *lib.* 2.

——Ituræas *taxi torquentur in Arcus.*
Of the best Ewe that can be had
The *Ituræan* Bows are made.

The whole Country in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, divided into *Trachonitis*, and *Ituræa* specially so called: this last again being subdivided into *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*. For whereas it is said in St. *Luke*'s Gospel, that *Philip* the Brother of *Herod* was *Tetrarch* of *Ituræa*, and the Region of *Trachonitis*; and by *Josephus*, that for his *Tetrarchy* he had the Provinces of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, *Auranitis*, and *Paneas*: it must needs be that the four last mentioned Provinces make up that one, which by St. *Luke* is comprehended in the name of *Ituræa*; distinct from that of *Trachonitis*, though a part thereof. Inhabited in the time of *Josephus*, as in those of *Joshuah* and *David*, both by *Jews* and *Syrians*; the *Syrians* dwelling in the mountainous and more barren parts, the *Jews* in that which was assigned them in the time of *Moses*; the whole not yielding unto *Galilee* for extent of ground, but far inferiour to it for wealth and fruitfulness; not well inhabited where best, and in some places which are desart and very barren, hardly inhabited at all, or bearing any thing but wild fruits. Such was it in the time of *Josephus*, and not bettered since.

1 *TRACHONITIS* is that mountainous and hilly Country, which beginning at the borders of the *Ammonites*, where the Hills are called the Mountains of *Gilead*, extendeth it self Northwards as far as *Libanus*: the Hills in those parts being by the *Jews* called *Galeed*, *Syrion*, and *Hermon*; but by the *Græcians*, for the craggedness and roughness of them, by the name of *Trachones*. The people mischievously bent and much given to Witchcraft, as we find in *Strabo*. *Montanam regionem incolunt* Ituræi & Arabes, *malefici omnes*. So he, or his Translator rather, for I have not the original by me. Where by *Arabians* he meaneth those of *Trachonitis*, which every where he maketh to be the same with *Ituræa*, though differing from it as the *Cotswold* Countries do from the rest of *Gloucestershire*, or as a part doth from the whole, because united by that name into one Estate, at the time he lived in. *Solet &* Trachonitis Ituræa *nomine appellari*, saith the learned *Grotius*, according to the general consent of the ancient Writers. A people generally addicted to spoil and robbery, living especially on the spoil of those Merchants which traded to and from *Damascus*: till with some difficulty restrained to a more orderly life by *Herod*, on whom *Augustus Cæsar* had bestowed the Country, to the end that by strong hand he might hold them in.

The People and the Country by *Josephus* are thus described. "The *Trachonites* (saith he) have neither Towns, "nor Lands, nor Heritage, nor any other possessions, but "only certain Retreats and Caves under the ground, "where they lived like Beasts: and having made abun- "dant provision of water and victuals, were able to hold "out a long time against any Assailant. For the doors of "their Caves were made so narrow, that they could be "entred but by one at once; and the way to them not "direct, but full of turnings and windings, not possibly "to be found out but by the help of a Guide: The "whole Country naturally consisting of craggy Rocks. "the passages of the Caves once entred, they were found "to be very large and spacious; sufficient to contain great "multitudes of those Thievish people, who when they "had not opportunity to spoil their Neighbours, would "rob one another, and omitted no kind of wickedness; "being so accustomed to theft, that they could not live "otherwise. So he. But I conceive this is not meant generally of all the people, but only of some body of Theeves or Out-laws, which possessed themselves of the streights of the Mountains; and from thence issued to assault and spoil the Passengers. For it is afterwards expressed, that revolting upon the news of *Herod*'s death, and committing new outrages; they no sooner heard of his recovery but they fled the Country, and betook themselves unto a strong Castle in *Arabia*, where they increased to the number of 1000 persons. So that there is no question to be made at all, but they had Villages & Lands, and Heritages, in the more civil parts hereof, though not amongst those Mountainers which *Josephus* speaks of. And amongst those, I reckon, 1 *Gerra*, 2 *Elere*, 3 *Nelaza*, 4 *Adrama*; all named by *Ptolomy*, and all placed by him in the Longitude of 70 degrees or upwards: more towards the East than well agreeth with the position of this Country, or with any part of *Batanea*, lying more towards the West than *Trachonitis*, though to that part of *Ituræa*, by him ascribed. Hither also I refer the City of 5 *Tishbe*, the Country of old *Tobit*, and of the Prophet *Elias*. 6 *Tob*, where *Jephthe* lived in exile, when oppressed by his brethren, till the necessities of his Country called him to the publick Government. 7 *Hippus*, at the foot of those Mountains, reckoned amongst the Cities of *Cœlo-Syria*, differing in soil as well as Etymology from another of the same name in *Batanea*: this being so named from the Mountain *Hippus*, under which it standeth; that from a Garrison of Horse there placed, as shall there be shewn. 8 *Bathira*, on the borders of this Country towards *Batanea*, built there by *Herod*, and planted with a Colony of the *Jews* which came thither from *Babylon*; the better to suppress the insolencies, and prevent the Robberies of this theevish people, accustomed (as before is said) unto spoil and rapine.

2 *BATANEA* is that part of *Ituræa* which anciently made up the best and greatest part of the Kingdom of *Basan*, whence it had this name: the changing of *S.* to *T.* as *Assyria* into *Attyria*, and the like, being usual among the *Greeks*. But that Kingdom being brought to an end by *Moses*, it was given to the half Tribe of *Manasses*, so called of *Manasses* the son of *Joseph*; of whom there were found at the first muster near Mount *Sinai*, 32200 men able to bear arms; which though consumed in the Desarts, yet were they of such a swift increase, that there were found 52700 fighting men of them, when they passed over *Jordan*. Their Territory on that side of the River, stretching from *Jaboc* on the South, to the Realm of *Gessur* on the North; and from the Mountains unto

unto *Jordan*, East and West, was exceeding fertile: repleniſhed with all ſorts of Cattel, and adorned with the goodlieſt woods in that part of the world; the Oaks of *Baſan* being celebrated in the holy Scriptures.

It had in it ſixty fenced Cities when firſt conquered by thoſe of this Tribe. The principal of which, 1 *Pella*, formerly called *Butis*, but being rebuilt by *Seleucus*, the great King of *Syria*, was by him called *Pella*; with reference to a City of that name in *Macedon*, the birth-place of *Alexander*, to whom *Seleucus* owed his greatneſs and whole eſtate. Deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*, becauſe not willing to admit of the Law of *Moſes*, it was afterwards reſtored by *Pompey* to its former luſtre. Memorable in Church ſtory for the Admonition or premoniſhment, given by a voice from Heaven, to the Chriſtians dwelling at *Hieruſalem*, to remove thence and dwell at *Pella*, that ſo they might eſcape that deſtruction, which the *Roman* Army under *Titus* was to bring upon it. 2 *Edrey*, the Seat-royal of the Kings of *Baſan*. 3 *Carnaim*, on the banks of *Jaboc*, taken by *Judas Maccabæus*, who ſet fire on the Temple of the Idols there, and burnt therein all ſuch as fled thither for Sanctuary. 4 *Ephron*, a ſtrong City upon *Jordan*, taken and burnt by the ſame *Judas Maccabæus*, for refuſing to give a paſſage to his Army. 5 *Jabeſh-Gilead*, more near unto the Mountains, whence it had that *Adjunct*; memorable in the Scriptures, for the ſiege of *Nahaſh* King of the *Ammonites*, the raiſing of that ſiege by *Saul*, and the gratitude of the people towards him again, in taking down, embalming, and the entombing the bodies of him and his ſons, which the *Philiſtines* had moſt deſpightfully hanged on the walls of *Bethſan*. 6 *Aſtaroth*, a City of great note in the elder times: the ſeat of the *Rephaims*, a Giant-like Race of men, of whom deſcended *Og* of *Baſan*; from whence the Country adjoyning had the name of the *Land of Giants*. *Aſtaroth*, the Goddeſs of the *Sidonians*, had here her Worſhippers. 7 *Gaulon*, ſometimes poſſeſſed by *Og* of *Baſan*, and afterwards made one of the Cities of Refuge; of ſuch eſteem in the times of the *Greeks* and *Romans*, that the North part of *Baſanitis* or *Batanea* was called *Gaulonitis*; divided into *Superiour* and *Inferiour*, ſo often mentioned by *Joſephus*. And of this City or Country was that *Judas* of *Galilee*, ſpoken of in the fifth of the *Acts*, the Founder of the *Gaulonites*, or *Anti-Herodians*. 8 *Gamala* in the lower *Gaulonitis*, ſo called becauſe the Hill upon which it ſtood was faſhioned like the back of a Camel: invincibly ſituate, ſtrengthened both by Art and Nature; and at the laſt with ſo great difficulty and hazard of *Veſpaſian's* perſon, ſtormed by *Titus*, that the *Romans* in the heat of the execution, ſpared neither Women nor Children; Inſomuch that all the Inhabitants periſhed, except ſome few women which had hid themſelves. 9 *Gadara*, after ten months ſiege, taken and deſtroyed by *Alexander Jannæus* King of the *Jews*; repaired by *Pompey*, and by *Gabinius* made one of the five ſeats of Juſtice for the whole Country of *Paleſtine*: the other four being *Hieruſalem*, *Jericho*, *Hamath*, and *Sepphorah*. 10 *Geraſa*, or *Gergeſa*, the chief City of the *Gergeſites*, the people whereof on the loſs of their Swine intreated our Saviour to depart out of their Coaſt, as St. *Matthew* hath it. St. *Luke*, and St. *Marke* aſcribe it to the people of *Gadara*. Not that the Cities were both one, or the Evangeliſts at odds in their Relation; but becauſe they were two neighbouring Cities, and their fields lay in common *pour cauſe de vicinage*, as our Lawyers phraſe it; and ſo the ſtory might be common to both alike. 11 *Hippus*, not far from the River *Jordan*, ſo called from a Garriſon of Horſe there placed by *Herod*: not far from the Mountain *Hippus*, as ſome ſuppoſe, which is too far off to have any influence upon it. 12 *Julias*, built by *Philip* the *Tetrarch* of *Iturea*, in the Southern border of his eſtate, in imitation of the like work of *Herod* the *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Perea*; to ingratiate himſelf with *Julia*, the Wife of *Tiberius Cæſar*. 13 *Abel*, by *Joſephus* called *Abel Maacha*, for diſtinctions ſake: where *Sheba* that grand Rebel beſieged by *Joab*, and the City brought into ſome danger, had his head cut off, and thrown over the Wall, at the perſwaſion of a wiſe Woman of the Town. So the rebellion ended, and the City was ſaved.

North of *Baſanitis*, or *Batanea*, lyeth the Kingdom of GESSUR, by a latter name called AURANITIS, from *Hauran*, a chief City of it, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezechiel*, *Chap.* 16. 18. A Kingdom ſpoken of by *Moſes* as the Northern bound of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*, *Deut.* 4. 14. by *Joſhuah* as the Northern border of the Kingdom of *Baſan*, *Chap.* 12. 5. but reckoned as a part of *Syria* becauſe held by the *Aramites*, 2 *Sam.* 15. 8. A Kingdom, though of no great Territory, yet of ſome conſideration in the eye of the World: *David* eſteeming the alliance of the Kings hereof of ſome uſe unto him; and therefore marrying *Maacha* the daughter of *Tolmai* King of *Geſſur*, by whom he had *Abſalom* and *Tamar*. And to this King it was that *Abſalom* fled on the killing of *Ammon*, abiding here three years, as the ſtory telleth us.

Conterminous to this, or at leaſt not very much diſtant from it was the petit Kingdom of *Iſh-tob*, which ſent 12000 men to the aid of the *Ammonites* againſt *David*: and not far of, but more towards *Palmyrene*, or *Aram-Zobah*, that of *Beth-Rehob*, Confederate in the ſame War alſo with the other *Syrians*, mention whereof is made in the ſecond Book of *Samuel*, *Chap.* 10. 6. Which whether they belonged to *Syria*, or to thoſe North parts of *Iturea*, is of no great certainty, and as little conſequence. For after this their greateſt and laſt exploit we hear no more news of them; ſwallowed up not long after (as it ſeems) by the Kings of *Damaſcus*.

To return therefore into *Geſſur*, as more certainly within the limits of *Paleſtine*, the places of moſt obſervation in it, were 1 *Geſſur*, then the chief City of it, and giving name unto the whole. 2 *Mahacath*, or *Macuti*, as ſome call it: conceived to be that *Maacha* mentioned 1 *Chro.* 19. 6. But of this we have already ſpoken in *Comagena*. 3 *Chauran*, or *Hauran*, mentioned by the Prophet *Ezekiel*, *Chap.* 47. whence theſe Northern parts of *Paleſtine* were called *Auranitis*. 4 *Chatſar-Hevan*, there mentioned by that Prophet alſo. 5 *Uz*, near the borders of *Damaſcus*, the firſt habitation of *Uz* the ſon of *Aram*, and Grandchild of *Sem*, by whoſe name ſo called: ſuppoſed to be the Founder of *Damaſcus* alſo, and that more probably, than that the Country thereabouts ſhould be the Land of *Hus* enobled by the dwelling and ſtory of *Job*. 6 *Sueta*, mentioned by *Bochartus*, and by ſome conceived to be the habitation of *Bildad*, ſirnamed the *Shuchite*, one of *Job*'s three Friends, mentioned in that ſtory: but both of him, and *Job* himſelf, and the Land of *Hus*, we ſhall ſpeak more at large when we come to *Arabia*. More certainly remarkable for a Fort of great ſtrength and uſe, for the commanding of the Country; recovered from the *Turks* in the time of *Baldwin* the ſecond, by digging with incredible labour through the very Rock upon which it was ſeated.

As for the fortunes of this part, after the Tribes on that ſide of *Jordan* were led captive into *Aſſyria*, and the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* ſubverted by *Tiglath-Pileſer*; it followed the fortune of the *Babylonian* and *Perſian* Empires, together with which it came to the *Macedonian* Kings of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of which Houſe it was conquered (or at leaſt the greateſt part thereof) by *Alexander* the ſecond, King of the *Jews* of the Race

Race of the *Maccabees*; but loſt again for the moſt part in the time of *Hircanus* the ſon of *Alexander*; yet afterwards made up the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Chalcis*; poſſeſſed by *Ptolomy* the ſon of *Mennæus*, in the beginning of *Herod*'s greatneſs: who dying left it to *Lyſanias* his eldeſt ſon, murdered about ſeven years after by *Marc. Antonie*, on the ſuggeſtions of *Cleopatra*, who preſently ſeized on his Eſtates. But *Antony* and *Cleopatra*, having left the Stage, *Lyſanias* a ſon of the murdered Prince entereth next upon it, by the permiſſion of *Auguſtus*. During whoſe time *Zenodorus*, Lord of the Town and Territory of *Paneas*, farming his Demeſnes, and paying a very great rent for them; not only ſuffered the *Trachonites* to play the *Robbers*, and infeſt the Merchants of *Damaſcus*: but received part of the booty with them. *Auguſtus*, on complaint hereof, giveth the whole Country of *Trachonitis*, *Batanea*, *Gaulonitis*, and *Auranitis*, to *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, before created King of *Jewry*; that by his puiſſance and power he might quell thoſe Robbers, and reduce the Country into order: Leaving unto *Lyſanias* nothing but the City of *Abila*, (of which he was the natural Lord) whereof and of the adjoyning Territory, he was afterwards created *Tetrarch*, by the name of the *Tetrarch* of *Abilene*, mentioned *Luke* 3. Nor did *Herod*'s good fortune end in this. For preſently on the death of *Zenodorus*, not long after following, *Auguſtus* gave him alſo the Diſtrict of *Paneas* (of which we ſhall ſpeak more when we come to *Galilee*) which with the Countries formerly taken from *Lyſanias*, made up the *Tetrarchy* of *Philip* his youngeſt Son; affording him the yearly Revenue of 100 *Talents*, which make 37500 *l.* of *Engliſh* Money. On *Philip*'s death, his *Tetrarchy* was by *Caius Caligula* conferred on *Agrippa* the Nephew of *Herod* by his ſon *Ariſtobulus*; whom he had alſo dignified with the title of King: after whoſe death, and the death of *Agrippa Minor*, who next ſucceeded, his eſtates eſcheated to the *Romans*, and have ſince had the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

3 *GALILEE*.

GALILEE is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Batanea*, and part of the half Tribe of *Manaſſes* on that ſide of *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the Sea-coaſt of *Phœnicia*, on the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Anti-Libanus*; on the South, with *Samaria*. So called, as ſome ſay, from *Geliloth*, a *Phœnician* word ſignifying as much as *borders*; becauſe the bordering Country betwixt them and the *Jews*,

The Country not ſo large as that on the other ſide of the River, but far more fertile; naturally fertile of it ſelf, every where producing excellent fruits without much pains to the Husbandman, and ſo well cultivated in old times, that there was hardly any waſte ground to be found in it. Thick ſet with Cities, Towns, and Villages in the time of *Joſephus*, and thoſe ſo populous and rich, that the ſmalleſt Village in it is affirmed by that Author, to comprehend no fewer than 15000 Inhabitants. A number beyond all parallel, if reported rightly, and not miſtaken in the tranſcripts. The people from their childhood very ſtout and warlike, not daunted for fear of want, or dread of penury: which ſeconded by their vaſt and almoſt incredible numbers, made them experimentally known for a tough piece of imployment when ſubdued by *Titus*. And this, together with their zeal to the *Jewiſh* Religion, makes it more than probable, that there was ſomething in them of the ancient *Iſraelite*; and that they were not meerly of an *Aſſyrian*, either ſtock or ſpirit; but intermixt with ſuch remainders of the Tribes as had ſaved themſelves, either by flying to the Mountains, or hiding themſelves in Caves and Deſarts, or otherwiſe were inconſiderable for ſtrength and numbers; in the great tranſplantation of them made by *Salmanaſſer*. And in this I am the more confirmed by their ſpeech or language, which was the ſame with that of the natural *Jews*, differing no otherwiſe from it than in tone, and dialect; as our Northern *Engliſh* doth from that which is ſpoke in *London*: as appeareth by the communication which the Damoſel had with St. *Peter*, in the High Prieſts Hall; in which ſhe plainly underſtood him, but ſo, that ſhe pronounced him for a *Galilean*. For had the *Tranſplantation* been ſo univerſal, as ſome think it was, and that both ſick and ſound, old and young had been carried away, and none but Colonies of the *Aſſyrians* to fill up their places; it muſt needs be that thoſe Newcomers would have planted their own language there, as the *Saxons* did on the extirpation of the *Britains*, on this ſide of the *Severn*. The like may be affirmed of the other Tribes on this ſide of *Jordan*, eſpecially *Simeon* and *Dan*, which either bordering upon *Judah*, or having their Lands and Cities intermingled with it, continued in great numbers in their former dwellings, under the Patronage or ſubjection of the Kings thereof.

Divided it was anciently into the *Higher* and *Lower*. The *Higher* ſo called from its ſituation more amongſt the Mountains, had alſo the name of *Galilea Gentium*, or *Galilee* of the *Gentiles*; and that either becauſe it lay betwixt the *Gentiles* and the reſt of the *Jews*; or becauſe a great part of it had been given by *Solomon* to the Kings of *Tyre*. But for what cauſe ſoever it was called ſo firſt, certain it is, it held this name unto the laſt; known by it in the time of the Apoſtles, as appeareth by St. *Matthew*'s Goſpel, *Chap.* 4. 15. The *Lower Galilee* is ſituate on the South of the other, memorable for the Birth and Education of our bleſſed Saviour, whom *Julian* the *Apoſtate* called for this cauſe, in ſcorn, the *Galilean*: as for the ſame, the Diſciples generally had the name of *Galileans* impoſed upon them, till that of Chriſtian, (being a name of their own chooſing) did in fine prevail. Both, or the greateſt part of both, known in the New Teſtament by the name of *Decapolis*, or *Regio Decapolitana*, mentioned *Mat.* 4. 25. *Mark* 7. 31. So called from the ten principal Cities of it, that is to ſay, 1 *Cæſarea Philippi*. 2 *Aſer*. 3 *Cedes-Nephthalim*. 4 *Sephet*. 5 *Chorazim*. 6 *Capernaum*. 7 *Bethſaida*. 8 *Jotopata*. 9 *Tiberias*. And 10 *Scythopolis*. By which accompt it ſtretched from the *Mediterranean* to the head of *Jordan*, Eaſt and Weſt; and from *Libanus* to the hills of *Gilboa*, North and South; which might make up a ſquare of forty miles. With reference to the Tribes of *Iſrael*, the whole *Galilee* was ſo diſpoſed of, that *Aſer*, *Nephthali*, and a part of the Tribe of *Dan*, had their habitation in the Higher; *Zabulun*, and *Iſſachar* in the Lower: according to which diſtribution we will now deſcribe them.

1 The Tribe of *NAPHTHALI*, was ſo called from *NAPHTHALI* the ſixth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*; of whom at their firſt muſter were found 53400 fighting men, and at the ſecond 44540 able to bear arms. The Land allotted to them lay on the Weſt ſide of the River *Jordan*, oppoſite unto the Northern parts of *Iturea*; where before we left: having on the Weſt, the Tribe of *Aſer*, and that of *Zabulun* on the South. Within which Tract were certain Cities which they never conquered; and one which appertained to the Tribe of *Dan*: the chief of thoſe which were with-holden by the Gentiles, being *Chalcis*, *Abila*, *Heliopolis*, Cities accompted of as belonging to *Cœlo-Syria*; where they have been ſpoken of already.

That which did appertain to the Tribe of *DAN*, lay on the North-eaſt part hereof, confronting the moſt Northern

Northern parts of *Iturea*, as before was said; where the the *Danites* held one Town of moment, besides many other of less note. And it seemed destined to this Tribe by some old Presage; the Eastern fountain of *Jordan* (which hath its original in this Tract, being called *Dan*, at the time of the defeat which *Abraham* gave to *Chedorlaomer* and his Associates, hundreds of years before this Tribe had ever a possession in it. Of which see *Gen.* 14.14. The Town of moment first called *Leshem*, by some Writers *Laish*; afterwards subject or allied to the Kings of *Sidon*, and upon strength thereof made good against those of *Naphthali*; but taken by some adventurers of the Tribe of *Dan*. Of whom it is said, *Josh.* 19. 47. That finding their own Country too little for them, *they went up and fought against* Leshem, *which they took, and called* DAN. Accompted after this exploit, the utmost bound Northward of the Land of *Canaan*, the length thereof being measured from *Dan* in the North, unto *Beersheba* in the South: remarkable for one of the *Golden Calves* which was placed here by *Jeroboam*, and for the two spring-heads of *Jordan*, rising near unto it. When conquered by the *Romans*, it was called *Paneas*, from a fountain adjoyning of that name: which with the Territory about it, after the death of *Zenodorus*, who held it of the *Roman* Empire, as before is said, was given by *Augustus Cæsar*, unto *Herod* the Great: and by him at his decease to *Philip* his youngest Son, with the *Tetrarchy* of *Iturea* and *Trachonitis*. By him repaired and beautified, it was called *Cæsarea Philippi*, partly to curry favour with *Tiberius Cæsar*; partly to preserve the memory of his own name: and partly to distinguish it from another *Cæsarea*, situate on the shore of the *Mediterranean*, and called *Cæsarea Palestine*: and being so repaired by him, it was made the *Metropolis* of that *Tetrarchy*. Mentioned by that name, *Mat.* 16.13. when St. *Peter* made that confession or acknowledgment of his Lord and Master, *That he was* CHRIST *the Son of the living God*. By King *Agrippa*, who succeeded him in his Estates, in honour of the Emperour *Nero*, it was called *Neronia*. But that, and the Adjunct of *Philippi*, were of no continuance: the Town being called *Cæsarea Paneæ* in the time of *Ptolomy*; and simply *Paneas*, as before, in the time of St. *Hierom*. Of this *Cæsarea* was that woman whom our Savior cured of the bloody Flux, by touching but the Hem of his Garment: who in a pious gratitude of so great a mercy, erected two *Statues* in this place, representing CHRIST, and her self kneeling at his feet; remaining here entire till the time of *Julian* the *Apostate*, by whose command it was cast down, and a *Statue* of his own set up in the place thereof, miraculously destroyed by a fire from Heaven. The City being at that time, and long before, an Episcopal See. Of less note there were, 1 *Haleb*, and 2 *Reccath*, both situate in the confines of it. And not far off the strong Town and Castle of 3 *Magdala*, (the habitation as some say of *Mary Magdalen*) where the *Pharisees* desired a sign of our Saviour CHRIST, as is said *Mat.* 15.39. & 16.1. the same, or some place near unto it, being by St. *Mark* (reporting the same part of the Story) called *Dalmanutha*, *Chap.* 8. 10, 11. But whether this Castle did anciently belong to these *Danites*, or to those of *Naphthali*, or to the Half Tribe of *Manasses* beyond the River, I am not able to determine.

Of those which were in the possession of the Tribe of NAPHTHALI, the Cities of most eminent observation were, 1 *Hazor*, or *Azor*, by *Junius* and *Tremelius* called *Chatzar*, the Regal City and Metropolis of all the *Canaanites*: memorable for the *Rendezvous* of 24 *Canaanitish* Kings in the War with *Josuah*; by whom it was taken notwithstanding, and burnt to ashes. But being afterwards re-built, it became the Regal Seat of *Jabin* the King of the *Canaanites*, who so grievously for the space of 20 years, afflicted *Israel*; till vanquished by *Deborah* and *Barak*. Destroyed in that War, and repaired by *Solomon*, it continued in so good estate in our Saviours time, that it was then one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*; it being so still, but known by the name of *Antiopia*. 2 *Capernaum*, seated on the River *Jordan*, where it falleth into the Sea of *Galilee*; of which Country it was accompted the *Metropolis*, in the time of our Saviour, with whose presence and preaching often honoured, and one of the principal of the *Decapolitans*. Some marks of its former greatness it retained when St. *Hierom* lived, who confesseth it to be a Town of some good capacity; but so decayed in the time of *Breidenbach* and *Brochardus* that it consisted but of six poor Fishermens Houses. 3 *Hamath*, so called from *Hamathi* the son of *Canaan*, planted in these parts; a Town of such esteem in the elder times, that it was reckoned one of the Gates of the Land of *Canaan*; and therefore called in Scripture, *Introitum Hamath*, or the *entrance of Hamath*; as *Num.* 34.8. *Josh.* 13.5. *Judg.* 3.3, &c. Mistaken by St. *Hierom* for another of the same name in *Syria*, by the *Greeks* and *Romans* after them, called *Epiphania*. And in this I say he is mistaken; *Epiphania* being placed by *Ptolomy* two degrees more Eastward than *Cæsarea Philippi*, the most Eastern City of all *Galilee*; and two degrees more North than that, though the most Northern City of all *Palestine*. The ground of this mistake we have seen before. Won by the *Syrians* of *Damascus*, it was again recovered to the Crown of *Israel*, by *Jeroboam* the second Son of *Joas*: and after added by the *Romans* (as were *Scythopolis*, *Pella*, *Gadara*, and some others of this tract) unto *Cœlo-Syria*. 4 *Kadesh*, to difference it from others of the same name, called *Kadesh-Naphthalim*, high seated on the top of an Hill, as is said, *Jos.* 20.7. the King whereof being taken and slain by *Josuah*, it was made one of the Cities of *Refuge*, and given to the *Levites*. Most memorable for the Birth of *Barak*, who discomfited *Sisera*, Lieutenant of the Host of *Jabin* before mentioned, in the infancy of the *Jewish* State; one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, in the time of the *Romans*; and an Episcopal See in the first ages of Christianity. 5 *Riblah*, watered with the fountain of *Daphnis*, a little Riveret, which hereabouts falleth into *Jordan*: to which City, as some say (but I think erroneously) *Zedechias* the unfortunate King of the *Jews* was brought Prisoner unto *Nebuchadnezzar*, who caused his Children to be slain before his face, and then put out his eyes. But this I look on as an Error in them that say it, the Scene of this sad Tragedy being by *Josephus* laid in *Riblatha* (or *Riblah*) a City of *Syria*; the same which in succeeding times had the name of *Antioch*. And certainly *Josephus*, who for so long was Governour of both the *Galilees*, cannot be conceived to be so ignorant of the State of this Province, as to transfer that bloody execution to a City of *Syria*, if it had been acted in this Country. Nor can I think that this *Riblah*, none of the greatest Towns in the Tribe of *Naphthali*, should be capable of the Court and Train of that mighty Monarch; especially for so long a time, as he is said to have attended in that place, the success of his Forces then before *Hierusalem*, and the disposal of the State when the Town was taken. 6 *Saphet*, another of the *Decapolitan* Cities, strongly if not impregnably seated; one of the strongest Fortresses of the Western *Christians*, as it was after their expulsion of the *Turks* and *Saracens*; who from hence wasted and subdued all the neighbouring Country, as far as to the very Sea. The only place, not of this Country only, but of all the East, in which the *Jews* (who possessed a third part of this Town) have any shew or shadow of a

Common-

Common-wealth. 7 *Bethſhemeſh*, mentioned *Joſ.* 19. 38. made tributary unto thoſe of this Tribe; though otherwiſe poſſeſſed by the *Canaanites* who held out againſt them. 8 *Carthan*, or *Kiriathaim*, ſituate near the Mountain which in following times was called *Mons Chriſti*, becauſe much frequented by our Saviour; who here made choice of his Apoſtles, as is ſaid *Mark* 3. 13. and where he made alſo that divine Sermon, recited in the 5. 6. and 7. Chapters of Saint *Matthew*'s Goſpel. 9 *Maſcoloth*, a place of great ſtrength, but forced by *Bacchides* General of the Armies of the Kings of *Syria*, in the time of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Cinnereth*, a ſtrong City, after called *Genneſareth*; whence the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*, neighbouring near unto it, is ſometimes called the Lake of *Genneſareth*, as *Luke* 5. 1. &c.

2 The Tribe of *A S E R*, was ſo called from *Aſer*, the eighth Son of *Jacob*, begotten on *Zilpah* the handmaid of *Leah*; of whom at their firſt Muſter when they came out of *Ægypt*, were found 41500 perſons able to bear Arms, all above twenty years of age; and at the ſecond Muſter when they entred the Land of *Canaan*, 53400 fighting men of the new increaſe. The portion of the Land allotted for their habitation was plentiful in Wine, Oyl, and Wheat, with great ſtore of *Balſam*; extending from the Coaſt of *Sidon* to *Ptolemais*, thirty miles in length; and from the *Mediterranean* Eaſtward, to the Tribe of *Naphthali*, ſome twelve miles in breadth. And though they never were of power to reduce the maritime Cities of *Ptolemais*, *Tyre*, *Sarepta*, and *Sidon*, under their command; yet had they in this narrow compaſs many beautiful Cities, and Towns of note; which they were quietly poſſeſſed of, till their ſubjugation by the King of *Aſſyria*.

The principal of thoſe, and others which have ſince been founded, 1 *Aphek*, memorable for the great ſlaughter there made of the *Syrians*, when beſieged by *Ben-hadad*; of whom 100000 were ſlain by the *Iſraelites* under the leading of *Ahab*, and 27000 killed by the fall of a Wall. 2 *Gabala*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* amongſt the mid-land Cities of *Phœnicia*; but belonging properly to this Tribe: one of thoſe twenty which were offered by *Solomon* unto *Hiram*, and upon his refuſal peopled by the *Iſraelites*. Fallen to decay, it was afterwards rebuilt and ſtrongly fortified by *Herod* the *Great*. 3 *Giſcala*, a Town of great ſtrength and conſequence; the birth-place of *John* or *Jehocanan*, one of the three ſeditious in *Hieruſalem* when beſieged by *Titus*, where he did more miſchief than the Enemy. Attempting to betray this City to the Power of the *Romans*, he gave the *Tyrians* an opportunity to be Maſters of it, by whom it was burnt unto the ground. But being rebuilt by the Authority of *Joſephus*, then Governour of *Galilee* for the *Jews*, it was afterwards yielded to *Titus* upon compoſition. 4 *Cana*, for diſtinction ſake called *Cana-Major*, to difference it from another of that name in the *Lower Galilee*, affirmed for the dwelling of that Woman, whoſe Daughter *Chriſt* delivered of an evil Spirit; called by Saint *Matthew* a Woman of *Canaan*, *chap.* 15. a *Syro-Phœnician* by Saint *Mark*, *chap.* 7. the *Syro-Phœnicians* of this Tract, being originally of the Race of *Canaan*, as was ſaid before. 5 *Hethlan*, or *Cethlan*, the furtheſt City of the North; as 6 *Meſſal*, or *Maſheal*, to the South, of the Tribe of *Aſer*. Of later date there are 7 *Thoron*, a ſtrong piece built by the *Chriſtians* on the Hills near *Tyre*, to hinder the excurſions of the *Turks*, when they held that City. Situate in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil, of great importance in the Wars of the *Holy-Land*, and giving name to the Noble Family of the Lords of *Thoron*; one of which being Conſtable to King *Baldwin* the third, lieth buried in the Chappel adjoyning to it; a curious piece of workmanſhip, and Dedicated by the name of the Bleſſed Virgin. 8 *Belfort*, ſo named from the ſtrength and beauty of it; ſeated on the high grounds near the River *Naar*, and memorable for the great Repulſe which *Saladine* the Victorious King of the *Turks* received before it; being forced to raiſe his Siege with diſhonour and loſs, on the coming of the *Chriſtians* Armies. Some other Forts here are of the ſame erection, as 9 *Montfort*, and 10 *Mount-Royal* (or *Caſtrum Regium*) belonging to the *Dutch* Knights (of whom more hereafter) and by them valiantly defended againſt the Infidels.

3 The Tribe of *Z A B U L O N*, was ſo called from *Zabulon* the tenth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*; of whom there muſtered near Mount *Sinai* 57400 able men; and 65000 at their ſecond Muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Their Territory lay on the South of *Aſer* and *Naphthalim*, and the North of *Zabulon*, extending from the Lake of *Tiberias*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Jokneham*, the King whereof was ſlain by *Joſhuah*, and the City given unto the *Levites*. 2 *Zabulon*, or the *City of Men*; a ſtately and magnificent City, till burnt to the ground by *Ceſtius* a *Roman* Preſident. 3 *Cana-Minor*, ſo called to difference it from the other in the Tribe of *Aſer*, the birth-place of *Nathanael*, and as ſome ſay of *Simon Zelotes*: memorable for the Marriage at which our *Saviour* wrought his *firſt Miracle*, of turning Water into Wine: Called in Saint *John*'s Goſpel *Cana* of *Galilee*. 4 *Berſabe*, ſtanding in the Border betwixt both *Galilees*, and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Joſephus* againſt the *Romans*. 5 *Dothan*, where *Joſeph* found his Brethren as they fed their Flocks; and where the Prophet *Eliſha* ſtrook blind the *Syrians*, who beſieged him in it. 6 *Bethſaida*, ſituate on the Sea of *Galilee*, one of the ten Cities of *Decapolis*, the birth-place of *Peter*, *Andrew*, and *Philip*; but moſt renowned for the *Miracles* and *Preaching* of our Lord and Saviour. 7 *Nazareth*, now a ſmall Village, ſeated in a Vale betwixt two Hills, not far from *Ptolemais* or *Acon*; upon one of which two Hills it was formerly built, where ſtill are to be ſeen the Ruins of many Churches here founded by the *Chriſtians*; it being in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity* an *Archbiſhops* See. Of great eſteem for being, if not the birth-place, yet the habitation of the Virgin *Mary*; who was here ſaluted with thoſe joyful Tydings by an *Angel*, as ſhe ſate in her Chamber. Of which Chamber it is ſaid in the Popiſh Legends, That it was after the *Virgin*'s death had in great reverence by the *Chriſtians*, and remained in this Town, till the *Holy Land* was ſubdued by the *Turks* and *Saracens*, *Anno* 1291. Then moſt miraculouſly tranſported into *Sclavonia*; but that place being unworthy of the *Virgin*'s Divine Preſence, it was by the *Angels* carried over into the Sea-coaſt of *Italy*, *Anno* 1294. That place alſo being infeſted with Thieves and Pirates, the *Angels* removed it to the little Village of *Loretto*, where her *Miracles* were quickly divulged; inſomuch that *Paul* the ſecond built a moſt ſtately Church over this *Chamber*, and *Xiſtus* the fifth made the Village a City. And thus we have the beginning of our famous Lady of *Loretto*. Here did our Bleſſed Saviour ſpend a great part of his Life before his *Baptiſm*; from whence both he and his Diſciples had for many years the name of *Nazarites*. 8 *Jotopata*, ſtrongly ſeated on the top of a Mountain, near the Lake of *Genneſareth*, fortified by *Joſephus* in the War with the *Romans*, but after a long Siege taken by *Veſpaſian*, and in it *Joſephus* the Hiſtorian, chief Governour of the City, and of both the *Galilees*. 9 *Tiberias*, raiſed out of the

the ground by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, and named thus in honour of *Tiberius Cæsar*. Situate in a fruitful Soil, on the edge of the Lake, which afterwards took the name of the Lake or Sea of *Tiberias*: this City being held to be the greatest of the *Lower Galilee*, and the *Metropolis* of the *Decapolitan* Region. In this City it was that our Saviour *CHRIST* called Saint *Matthew* from the Receipts of the *Custom-house*; and near unto it, that he raised the Daughter of *Jairus*. 10 *Bethulia*, more within the Land, seated on an high Hill, and of very great strength, as appears by the story of *Judith* and *Holofernes*. 11 *Japha*, a place of like strength, but forced by *Titus*; who in the fury of the Storm slew in it above 15000 persons, and carried away with him 2000 Prisoners. 12 *Sephoris*, or *Sippora*, the habitation of *Joachim* and *Anna*, the Parents of the Blessed Virgin; fortified with strong Walls by *Herod* the *Tetrarch*, who made it his Regal seat for the *Lower Galilee*. Before that time, it had been made by *Gabinius*, one of the five *Juridical Resorts* for the *Palestinians*: after that not without great difficulty forced by *Vespasian*; and is nothing now but a Castle known by the name of *Zaphet*, or *Saffet*. The ordinary Residence, for the most part, of the *Turkish Zanziak*, who hath the Government of this Province; and lately, if not still, of the *Emirs* of *Sidon*; *Faccardine* the late *Emir* having been made the *Sanziak* of it, before his falling off from the *Turks*. Not far off is Mount *Tabor*, famous for the transfiguration of our Saviour; for a sumptuous Chappel built on the top of the Hill in memory of it, by the Empress *Helen*, Mother of *Constantine* the Great: and for the Fountain of the Brook *Chison*, which presently divided into two Streams, runneth Eastward with the one to the Sea of *Tiberias*; and Westward with the other to the *Mediterranean*.

4 The Tribe of *ISSACHAR* is so called from *Issachar* the ninth Son of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*, of whom were found at the first Muster 54400 fighting men, and 64300 at the second Muster. Their Lot, in the partition of the Land amongst the *Tribes*, fell betwixt *Zabulon*, and the half Tribe of *Manasses* on this side *Jordan*, North and South; extending from that River, to the *Mid-land* Sea. A Territory not so well repleniſhed with strong and eminent Cities, as was that before; nor yielding so much matter of observation in the course of business.

Those of most note in it, 1 *Tarichæa*, on the side of the *Lake*, about eight miles from *Tiberias*, of great strength both by Art and Nature; as witnessed the notable resistance which *Vespasian* found when he besieged it, by whom taken with great difficulty and incredible slaughter. 2 *Cishion*, a City of the *Levites*. 3 *Remeth*, called also *Jarmuth*, another City of the *Levites*; where the Hills of *Gilboa* take beginning, and thence range as far as the *Mediterranean* Westward, and the City of *Jezreel* towards the East. 4 *En-hadda*, near which *Saul* being discomfited by the *Philistims*, slew himself for grief; or else for fear of falling into the hands of those mercileſs Enemies, against whom he had so often returned victorious. 5 *Naim*, on the Banks of the River *Chison*, where *CHRIST* raised to life the Widow's Son. 6 *Hapharaim*, or *Aphraim*, on the Banks of the same River also. 7 *Endor*, of chief note for the *Witch* with whom *Saul* consulted; and the discomfiture of the *Midianites* by *Gideon*, who perished at *Endor*, and *became as the dung of the earth*, saith the Royal *Psalmist*. 8 *Dabarath*, one of the *Cities of Refuge*. 9 *Arbela*, not far from the Cave of the two Thieves, which so greatly infested *Galilee* in the time of *Herod*. And 10 of a later date the Castle of *Pilgrims* (*Castrum Peregrinorum* in *Latine* Writers) built by *Raymund* Earl of *Tholouse*, and after fortified by the *Templars*, for the security of such as travelled to the *Holy Land*; and for long time the *Magazine* or *Store-house* of the *Western Christians*: now called *Tortora*. Situate on the Shores of the *Mediterranean*, near a spacious Bay; on the North-side whereof Mount *Carmel*, described already.

As for those *Galileans* which succeed in the place of these Tribes, they were for the most part originally such as were sent hither by *Salmanassar* to inhabit there, when the *Israelites* were led away into endless thraldom; but intermixed with some Remainders of the ten Tribes, as was said before. And yet as if they had been wholly of the same extraction, with the rest of the *Samaritan* Nations, they were as much despised by the *Jews* (as witnesseth that scornful by-word, *Can there any good come out of Galilee?*) as the others were: though these as *Orthodox* in *Religion* as the *Jews* themselves. In which so zealously affected, that neither threats nor force could make them offer Sacrifice for the health of the *Roman* Emperours, whom they looked on as the Enemies of their Law and Liberty. Brought under the command of the King of *Jewry* by the *Maccabæans*, and with the rest of that Kingdom bestowed on *Herod* by the *Romans*. Left by him at his death to *Herod* sirnamed *Antipas*, the second of his Sons then living, with the Title of *Tetrarch*, which he enjoyed till the death of our *Saviour*: and on his deprivation (being banished to *Lyons* in *France* by the Emperour *Caligula*) bestowed upon *Agrippa* his Brothers Son, the first King of the *Jews* so named. Under him, and his Son *Agrippa* the second, it continued till the general Revolt of the *Jewish* Nation. Subjected by the Sword of *Titus* to the Power of the *Romans*, it hath since followed the same fortune with the rest of *Palestine*.

4 *SAMARIA.*

SAMARIA is bounded on the East with the River *Jordan*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the North, with *Galilee*; and on the South, with *Judæa*. So called from *Samaria*, the chief City of it, of which more hereafter.

The Country interchangably composed of Fields and Mountains, excellent good for Tillage, and full of Trees, yielding variety of Fruits; watered both with the Dew of Heaven, and many fresh Springs which the Earth affordeth it; occasioning thereby abundance of Grass, and consequently of Milch-beasts exceeding plenty. Heretofore very wealthy, and no less populous; but now famed for neither.

The People for the most part were originally the descendents of those *Assyrians* whom *Salmanassar* sent hither to possess the dwellings of the captive *Israelites*. Gentiles at first, till better instructed by the *Lyons* whom God sent amongst them, and after by the Priests sent hither by the Kings of *Assyria*; they entertained the five Books of *Moses*, and out of them learned *the manner of the God of the Land*, 2 *Kings* 17. Further than this they would not go, rejecting all the rest of the Sacred *Canon*; and no strict observers of this neither. And though at first they so embraced the Worship of God, as that they still adhered to the gods of the Nations where before they dwelt, as *Nergal*, *Ashimach*, *Nibhas*, *Tartak*, and the rest of that rabble, mentioned 2 *Kings* 17. yet they were soon taken off from those impieties, and became zealous in the worship of one only God; erroneous chiefly in the place which was destined to it. The wicked policy of *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, was

as natural to them, as if they could not have poſſeſſed his Eſtates without it; and therefore would not ſuffer their people to go up to *Hieruſalem* to worſhip, as the Law required. More pious in this than their Predeceſſors, that they erected no *Golden Calves* in *Dan* and *Bethel*, or any other parts of their Dominions: though to divert the People from the *Temple of God*, they would have a *Temple* of their own. Mount *Garizim*, and the Temple there (of which more anon) as ſacred unto them, as that of *Solomon* to the *Jews*. *Schiſmatical* enough in this, but not Idolatrous and *Schiſmatical* too, as the others were; yet ſo conceited of themſelves, and their own perfections, that they imagined themſelves defiled by any company but their own. If therefore they had viſited any of their neighbour Nations, at their return they uſed to ſprinkle themſelves with Urine: but if by negligence, or the neceſſity of buſineſs, they had touched any not of their own Sect, they drenched themſelves, cloaths and all, in the next Fountain. But in this the *Jews* cried quittance with them, not ſo much as eating or drinking with them, nor having with them any kind of commerce or dealing, as appeareth *John* 4.9. but loading them, on the other ſide, with all the bitterneſs of reproach and hatred. *There are two manner of people* (ſaith the Son of *Sirach*) *which mine heart abhorreth, and the third is no people: they that ſit on the Mountains of* Samaria, *the* Philiſtims, *and the fooliſh People that dwell at* Sichem *Eccluſ.* 50. And this continued to the times of our *Bleſſed Saviour*, whom when the *Jews* endeavoured to reproach with their heavieſt calumnies, they could find out none ſo great, as to ſay that he was a *Samaritan*, and (which they thought came all to one) a man that had converſe with *Devils* and familiar Spirits.

Of theſe there were ſome Sects alſo, as amongſt the *Jews*, 1 The *Doſitheans*, ſo called from *Doſitheus* or *Doſthai*, ſuppoſed to be the firſt Prieſt who was ſent thither by the King of *Aſſyria:* agreeing with the *Jews* in *Circumciſion*, and the *Sabbath*, and the Doctrine of the *Reſurrection*, (in which laſt they differed from the common *Samaritan*, who was a *Sadducee* in that point) but differing from them in ſome points of as ſignal conſequence. For they rejected the Writings of all the *Prophets*, as not θεοπνευστοι, inſpired by the *Holy Ghoſt*; they ate of nothing that had life, like the *Pythagoreans*; abſtained from Marriage, like the *Eſſenes*; and in the point of *Sabbath-keeping* out-went the *Phariſees*; it being reſolved upon amongſt them, That in what poſture ſoever a man was found on the *Sabbath-day morning*, in the ſame he was to continue without alteration the whole day after. 2 The *Selvians*, ſo called from *Sebva*, or *Sebviah*, one of the Companions of that *Doſthai*; who though they kept all the publick *Feſtivals*, as the *Jews* and the other *Samaritans* did, yet they kept them not at the ſame time: transferring the *Paſſeover* to *Auguſt*, the *Pentecoſt* to *Autumn*, and the Feaſt of *Tabernacles* to the time of the *Paſſeover*; not ſuffered for that cauſe to worſhip in the Temple of *Garizim*. 3. The *Gortheni*, who kept the ſame *Feſtivals*, and obſerved the ſame times of thoſe Solemnities, as the *Law* required; but kept only one of the *ſeven days* of thoſe great *Feſtivals*, and laid by the reſt, as days of ordinary labour. In other points not differing from the other *Samaritans*, who though at firſt poſſeſſed of all the Land belonging to the *Ten Tribes* of *Iſrael*, were yet reduced at laſt to a narrower compaſs: ſhut up betwixt *Galilee* and *Judæa*, within the ancient Territories of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, and the other half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on this ſide of the Water.

1 The *half Tribe* of *MANASSES* on this ſide of *Jordan*, was ſituate betwixt *Iſſachar* on the North, and the Tribe of *Ephraim* on the South; extending from the *Mediterranean*, to the Banks of that River. In which the places of moſt conſequence and conſideration, 1 *Beth-ſan*, environed almoſt with the Land of *Iſſachar*, ſituate near the Banks of *Jordan*, where it begin-neth again to ſtreighten and be like it ſelf, having been almoſt loſt in the Sea of *Galilee*; firſt called *Niſa*, and ſo called by *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Founder of it, in memory of his Nurſe there buried; but the Children of *Manaſſes* not being able to expell the Natives out of it, as in other places, gave it the name of *Beth-ſan*, or the *Houſe* of an *Enemy*. Afterwards when the *Scythians* invaded thoſe parts of *Aſia*, and compelled ſome of the *Jews* to ſerve them againſt the reſt (whom notwithſtanding their good Service they put all to the Sword) they new-built this City: called therefore by the *Græcians*, *Scythopolis*, or the City of *Scythians*; and by them reckoned as a City of *Cœlo-Syria*. Memorable in the *Old Teſtament* for the hanging of the dead bodies of *Saul* and his Sons on the Walls hereof, by the barbarous *Philiſtims*; in the time of our *Saviour*, for being the greateſt of all the *Decapolitan* Region; as afterwards in the flouriſhing times of *Chriſtianity*, for being the See of an Archbiſhop: now nothing but a deſolate Village, and an heap of Rubbiſh, out of which many goodly Pillars, and other pieces of excellent Marble, are often digged. 2 *Terzah*, uſed by the Kings of *Iſrael* for their Regal Seat, till the building of *Samaria*, and the removal of it thither. 3 *Acrabata*, the Territory whereof called *Acrabatena*, was afterwards made one of the ten *Toparchies* of *Judæa*. 4 *Thebes*, not far from *Samaria*, where the Baſtard *Abimelech* was wounded with a Stone which a Woman threw at him from the Wall; and perceiving his death to be drawing on, commanded his Page to ſlay him, that it might not be ſaid he periſhed by the hands of a Woman. 5 *Ephra*, or *Hophra*, in which *Gideon* dwelt: near whereunto there ſtood an Altar conſecrated to *Baal*, defaced by *Gideon*: and not far off, the fatal Stone on which *Abimelech* ſlew 70 of his Brethren. An heatheniſh cruelty, and at this day practiſed amongſt the *Turks*. 6 *Aſophon*, an ignoble Village, made famous only for the great and notable defeat which *Ptolomy Lathurus* here gave to *Alexander* the King of the *Jews:* which Victory he uſed with ſo great barbarity, that he ſlew all the Women as he paſſed along, and cauſed young Children to be ſod in *Caldrons*. 7 *Bezek*, the City of the bloody Tyrant *Adoni-Bezek*, whoſe Story (touched upon before) ſee at large in *Judges*, chap. 1. By *Joſephus* it is called *Bala*, and ſeemeth to be the place in which *Saul* aſſembled the chief ſtrength of *Iſrael* and *Judah*, to the number of 33000 men, for the relief of *Jabeſh-Gilead*, then diſtreſſed by the *Ammonites*. 8 *Jezreel*, the Royal City of *Ahab*, and the Kings of his Race, ſituate on the foot of the Mountains of *Gilboa:* So near unto the Borders of *Iſſachar*, that ſome have placed it in that Tribe. Memorable in ſacred Story for the ſtoning of *Naboth* by the procurement of *Jezebel*, and the breaking of *Jezebel's* neck, by command of *Jehu*. A City which gave name to the Plains adjoyning, called the Valley or *Plains of Jezreel* (but by the name of *Campus Magnus* in the Book of *Macchabees*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 10.) extending from *Scythopolis* to the *Mediterranean:* famous for the great and many Battels which have been fought in it; as namely, of *Gideon* againſt the *Midianites*, of *Saul* againſt the *Philiſtims*, of *Ahab* againſt the *Syrians*, of *Jehu* againſt *Jehoram*; and finally, of the *Chriſtians* againſt the *Saracens*. 9 *Megiddo*, unfortunately obſervable for the death of the good King *Joſiah*, ſlain hereabouts in a Battel againſt

againſt *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*; and before that, of *Ahaziah* King of *Judah*, who received his death-wound at *Gaber*, a Town adjoyning, when purſued by *Jehu*. 10 *Dora*, or *Dor* as the Scripture calls it, on the *Mediterranean*, not far from the Caſtle of *Pilgrims* in the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. A very ſtrong and powerful City, and therefore choſe by *Tryphon* for his City of Refuge, who having firſt treacherouſly taken, and barbarouſly murdered *Jonathan* the *Maccabæan*, after he had received 200 Talents for his Ranſom; and no leſs vilanouſly ſlain *Antiochus* the ſixth of *Syria*, his Lord and Maſter whom he ſucceeded in his Throne, was by *Antiochus* the ſeventh, with an Army of 120000 Foot, and 8000 Horſe, beſieged in this City, and moſt deſervedly put to death. 11 *Cæſarea*, anciently called the Tower of *Straton*, from *Straton* a King of the *Zidonians*; new-built by *Herod*, and by him not only beautified with a large *Theatre* and *Amphitheatre*, both of poliſhed Marble, with a fair and capacious Haven, which with incredible charge and pains he forced out of the Sea. And having in twelve years brought it to perfection, in honour of *Druſus Cæſar*, Son-in-law of *Auguſtus*, he cauſed one of the chief Towers thereof to be called *Druſus*, the City it ſelf to be called *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*. The ſtatelineſs and magnificence of which City (when firſt built by *Herod*) he that liſts to ſee, may find the ſame deſcribed at large by *Joſephus* the *Jew*, in the 15*th*. Book of *Antiq. cap.* 13. In this City was *Cornelius* baptized by Saint *Peter*: Here did Saint *Paul* plead in defence of *Chriſtianity*, before *Feſtus* then the *Roman* Preſident: and finally, Here *Herod Agrippa* was ſmitten by an Angel, and devoured by Worms, after his *Rhetorical* Oration, which his *Paraſites* called the *voice of God, and not of man*. The *Metropolis* of all *Paleſtine*, when one Province only; as afterwards of *Paleſtina Prima*, when by *Conſtantine*, or ſome of his Succeſſors, Cantoned into three: the firſt Biſhop hereof being ſaid to be that *Cornelius*, whom Saint *Peter* here initiated in the Faith of *CHRIST*. 12 *Antipatris*, another City of *Herod*'s building, in the place where *Kapharſalama*, mentioned 1 *Maccab.* 7. 31. had ſometimes ſtood; who in honour of his Father *Antipater*, gave it this new name. Near hereunto did *Judas Maccabæus* overthrow a part of *Nicanor*'s Army: and not far off, the Mountain where *Obadiah* the Steward of *Ahab* hid the hundred Prophets, whom he preſerved againſt the fury of *Jezebel*: Finally, To this City it was that Saint *Paul* was conveyed by the command of *Lyſias* to ſave him from the *Jews*, who lay in wait to deſtroy him.

2 The Tribe of *EPHRAIM* was ſo called from *Ephraim*, the ſecond and youngeſt Son of *Joſeph*; of whom were muſtered in the *Deſarts* 45000 fighting men, and 32500 in the Land of *Canaan*; where their Lot fell betwixt this half Tribe of *Manaſſes*, on the North; and the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*, upon the South; extending from the River *Jordan*, to the *Mediterranean*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1 *Saron*, on the *Mediterranean*, to the South of *Antipatris*, mentioned *Acts* 9. 35. and giving name unto that fruitful Valley which reacheth from *Cæſarea Paleſtinæ*, as far as *Joppa*. 2 *Lydda*, upon the ſame Shores, where Saint *Peter* (*virtute Chriſti, non ſua*) cured *Æneas* of the *Palſey*. By the *Gentiles* it was called *Dioſpolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; but by the *Chriſtians*, in the time of the *holy Wars*, it had the name of Saint *George*'s; partly from a magnificent Temple which the Emperor *Juſtinian* there erected to the honour of that bleſſed *Martyr*; but principally from an opinion which they had amongſt them, that he ſuffered Martyrdom in that place. An opinion founded on miſtakes, firſt of a *Cænotaphium*, or an empty Monument erected in this City to preſerve his memory, for the Grave, in which he was interred: the other, in taking the word *Paſſio*, uſed in the *Martyrologies*, for the place of his ſuffering, which is meant only of the Story or *Celebration*. But howſoever they entituled it by the name of Saint *George*'s, as was ſaid before, and made it on that account alſo an *Epiſcopal* See. 3 *Ramatha*, or *Arimathea*, a City of the *Levites*, ſuppoſed to be the dwelling of *Joſeph*, who begged of *Pilate* the Body of *CHRIST*. 4 *Helon*, or *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo; by ſome placed, and perhaps more fitly, in the Tribe of *Dan*, and there we ſhall hear further of it. 5 *Themnath-Cares*, given by the *Iſraelites* to *Joſhuah*, who enlarged the ſame, and made it a ſtrong and goodly City; honoured with the Sepulchre of that brave Commander, one of the Nine *Worthies* of the World; and afterwards made one of the *Prefectures* of *Judæa*, by the name of *Thamnitica*. 6 *Adaſa*, or *Adarſa*, where *Judas Maccabæus* with 3000 *Jews* overthrew the Army of *Nicanor*. 7 *Jefleti*, called otherwiſe *Pelethi*, which gave name and birth unto the *Pelethites*, part of *David*'s Guard, under the governance of *Benaiah*. 8 *Silo*, ſituate on the top of a lofty Mountain; the Receptacle of the *Ark*, till taken and carried thence by the *Philiſtims*. 9 *Michmaſh*, the habitation of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabean* Brethren, ſituate in the middle way from *Samaria* to *Hieruſalem*, now called *Byra*. 10 *Naioth*, where *Saul* propheſied. 11 *Bethoron*, a City of the *Levites*, beautified by *Solomon*, but made more famous by the great and notable overthrow which *Judas Maccabæus* here gave to *Lyſias*. 12 *Pirhathon*, on the Mountain *Amelec*, the City of *Abdon* the Judg of *Iſrael*. 13 *Sichem*, called alſo *Sichor*, the habitation in the old times of *Sichem* the Father of that *Hamor*, who deflowred *Dinah* the Daughter of *Jacob*; the City for that cauſe deſtroyed by *Simeon* and *Levi*; repaired again, and afterwards by *Abimelech* levelled with the ground; a third time re-edified by *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*, and a third time ruined by the Kings of *Damaſcus*: yet notwithſtanding theſe blows, it was of good eſteem in the time of our Saviour, who abode in it two days, and converted many. Memorable for *Jacob*'s Well, which was very near it; more for its neighbourhood to Mount *Garizim*, where the Bleſſings were to be read to the People (of which ſee *Deut.* 11. 27. and *Joſ.* 8. 23.) and where afterwards was built a magnificent Temple for the uſe of the *Samaritan* Nation, at the coſt and charge of *Sanballat*, a great Prince amongſt them. Who having married his Daughter to *Manaſſes*, Brother of *Jaddus* the *High Prieſt* of the *Jews*, and fearing he would put her away, to avoid the Sentence of Excommunication, which he was involved in for that Match, promiſed him, that if he would retain her, he would build a Temple anſwerable unto that of *Hieruſalem*, and make him the *High Prieſt* thereof, which was done accordingly. But this Temple had not ſtood above two hundred years, when deſtroyed by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*; the place remaining notwithſtanding a place of worſhip, as appeareth *John* 4. 20. As for the City of *Sichem*, or *Sichor*, it was by the *Grecians* called *Nicopolis*, afterwards made a Colony by the Emperour *Veſpaſian*, who cauſed it to be called *Flavia Cæſarea*: of which Colony was that renowned *Juſtin Martyr*. 14 *Samaria*, the *Metropolis* of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*, founded by *Omri* one of the Kings thereof, on the top of the Mountain *Samron* (which overlooketh all the bottom as far as the Sea-coaſt) whence it had the name. A ſtately and magnificent City, conjectured by *Brochardus*, who had traced the ancient Ruins of it, to be bigger than *Hieruſalem*, Deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians* when they

carried away the Ten Tribes; but afterwards repaired again, and again beaten to the ground by the Sons of *Hyrcanus* above-mentioned. But *Herod* the *Great*, who was pleaſed with the ſituation of it, did again re-edifie it, in more ſtately manner than before; as appeareth by the great ſtore of goodly Marble Pillars, and other carved Stones, in great abundance found amongſt the Rubbiſh: and having rebuilt it to his mind, incloſed it with a ſtrong wall, and beautified it with a goodly Temple; in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebaſtos*, he cauſed it to be called *Sebaſte*. Memorable after this new erection from the Sepulcre of *John Baptiſt*, and being made the *Metropolis* of *Paleſtina Secunda*, (by conſequence an *Archbiſhops See*) now nothing but a few cottages filled with *Grecian* Monks.

Nor were the *Samaritans* themſelves (ſo called from this their principal City) leſs ſubject to the viciſſitudes and change of fortune, than the City was. Deſcended for the moſt part from the *Aſſyrians*, and ſuch other Nations, as were ſent thither to fill up the empty places of the Captive Tribes: but called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, either becauſe moſt of them were of *Cuth*, a Region of *Perſia*, as *Joſephus* telleth us, which is now called *Chuzeſtan*; or elſe by way of ſcorn, for *Chuſites*, as being of the Poſterity of the accurſed *Cham*, by *Chus* his ſon. Having imbraced the Law of *Moſes*, they began to think better of the *Jews* than the other Nations, but fitted their affections to the change of times: it being the obſervation of the ſaid *Joſephus*, that as often as the *Jews* were in any proſperity, then they called them *Cozins*, and would be of the ſame Nation with them; but when their fortunes were on the declining hand, then they were ſtrangers which came thither out of forrein Nations, and no kin at all. Nor doth he wrong them in that *Character*. For when *Alexander* the *Great* had granted the *Jews* a releaſe of the ſeventh years tribute, the *Samaritans* deſiring the like exemption, pleaded for themſelves Ἐβραῖοι μὲν ἐσμεν, &c. that they indeed were very *Hebrews*, though it pleaſed the *Sidonians* to call them *Sichemites*. But when *Antiochus* raged againſt them with fire and ſword, the *Samaritans* ſent Letters to him, diſclaiming all relation to thoſe of *Judah*, and challenging their deſcent from the *Medes* and *Perſians*. Nor were they content only to diſclaim all kindred with the *Jews*, in the times of trouble, when any perſecution roſe againſt them for the Law of God; but did them alſo all ill Offices, and joyned with their Enemies to their deſtruction: eſpecially after the *Jews* had refuſed to admit of their aſſiſtance, in the re-building of the Temple; which after that they hindred with great malice, and no leſs perverſeneſs. But the fortune of the *Jews* did at laſt prevail, the whole Nation being ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the *Maccabæan*, who deſtroyed their *Schiſmatical* Temple alſo, and levelled *Samaria* it ſelf to the very ground. After this, ſubject to the *Jews*, who poſſeſſed themſelves of moſt of their Cities, and contracted them into a narrower compaſs than they were in formerly: but ſtill ſo hated and contemned, that nothing was able to appeaſe that inveterate malice, which they had conceived; till both Nations were extirpated in the time of *Adrian*, and made to ſeek their dwellings in other Countries. Made afterwards a Province of the *Roman* Empire, by the name of *Paleſtina Secunda*; ſucceſſively ſubject with the reſt, to the *Perſians*, *Saracens*, and *Turks*, who do now poſſeſs it.

5 JUDÆA.

JUDÆA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Dead Sea*, and the River *Jordan*; on the Weſt, with the *Mediterranean*; on the North, with *Samaria*; and on the South with *Idumæa*. So called from the *Jews*, or people of the Tribe of *Judah*, who after their return from the Captivity of *Babylon*, communicated the name of *Iew* unto all the Nation, as they did that of *Iudæa* to this part of the Country.

The Soil of the ſame nature with that of *Samaria*, before deſcribed; but that it is more ſwelled with Hills, and more ſtored with Rivers, though of no great fame. And therefore we ſhall ſay no more, as to the general character and deſcription of it; but look on the particular parts as it ſtood divided betwixt the *Philiſtims*, the Tribes of *Dan*, *Simeon*, *Judah*, and *Benjamin*.

And firſt, the PHILISTIMS commanded all the Sea-coaſts from the South of *Phœnicia*, to the North of *Idumæa*; or from the *Caſtle of Pilgrims*, to the City of *Gaza*, taking both into the accompt. But *Joppa*, and all the Towns on the North of that, being taken in by the *Iſraelites*, they held no more than ſix Towns of any importance, with the Countries and Territories adjoyning to them: but thoſe ſo populous and ſtrong, that by their own power, and the aſſiſtance of the *Edomites*, and the reſt of their neighbours, not well affected to the *Tribes*, they kept them under terms, and lay more heavy on them than all the *Canaanites* together; as will appear when we ſum up the ſtory and ſucceſſes of their affairs.

In the mean time let us ſurvey the Country which was holden by them, notwithſtanding all that could be done againſt them by the Kings of *Iſrael*: and therein we ſhall find worth our obſervation, 1 *Geth*, or *Gath*, the birth-place of the huge Giant *Goliah*, ſlain by *David*; as alſo of many others of the like Gigantine proportion, ſlain by *David*'s Worthies. Deſtroyed by *David*, or rather ſlighted and diſmantled, it was re-built by *Rehoboam* the ſon of *Solomon*; but again razed by *Ozias* King of *Judah*, who found the *Philiſtims* there garriſoned but ill neighbours to him, and finally laid waſte by *Hazael* the King of *Syria*. Not much regarded after that, though it kept the name of *Gath* in St. *Hierom*'s time; till in theſe laſt Ages *Fulk* the King of *Hieruſalem* erected there a new Caſtle, from the ancient ruins. From hence, as I conceive, the *Idol-Dagon*, ſo much worſhipped by theſe *Philiſtims*, was by the *Syrians* and *Phœnicians* called *Ater-Gatis*; and not from *Gatis* a *Syrian* Queen, as is ſaid by many. 2 *Accaron*, on the South of *Gath*, of great wealth and power, and one that held out notably againſt the *Danites* and *Judæans*. Much ſpoken of in the holy Scriptures, but for nothing more than their Idolatrous worſhip of *Belzebub*, that is to ſay, *the Lord of Flies*: ſo called by the *Jews*, either in contempt of the *Idolatries* committed to him, or becauſe of that great multitude of *Flies* which attended his Sacrifices, whereof ſome ſay, the Temple of *Hieruſalem* was wholy free. But whatſoever he was, or for what cauſe ſo named, certain it is that he was here had in eſpecial honour, and therefore called in Scripture the God of *Accaron*: and hither *Ahaziah* the King of *Iſrael* ſent his Meſſenger, to enquire of this *Idol*, concerning his health. 3 *Aſhdod*, (by the *Græcians* called *Azotus*) memorable in Holy Writ for the Temple of *Dagon*, into which the *Ark* of the Lord was brought; that *Idol* falling down before it, as not able to ſtand upright when the *Ark* ſo near. Near to this Town was *Judas Maccabæus* overcome and ſlain by *Bacchides*, Lieutenant to *Demetrius* the King of *Syria*; and not long after, the Town it ſelf was taken by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas*, who put the Citizens to the ſword, and burnt all ſuch as fled into the Temple of *Dagon*, together with the very *Idol*, conſumed in the ſame fire with the *Idolaters*. Re-built by *Gabinius* a *Roman* General, in the times of *Chriſtianity* it was

was made an *Episcopal* See; and continued a fair Village till the days of St. *Hierom*. 4 *Ascalon*, on the Sea-side also, said to be built by *Ascalus* a noble *Lydian*, employed by his King in a War against the *Syrians*; but this very uncertain. One of the chief and strongest Cities of the *Philistims*, of great note amongst the *Gentiles* for a Temple dedicated to *Dirceto*, the Mother of *Semiramis*, here worshipped in the form of a *Mermaid*: and for another of *Apollo*, wherein *Herod* the Father of *Antipater*, and Grandfather of *Herod* the *Great* (from his birth in this City called *Herod* the *Ascalonite*) is said to have served as the *Priest*. It had in the first times of *Christianity*, an Episcopal See; and in the course of the *holy Wars*, was beautified with a new wall, and many fair buildings by King *Richard* the first. 5 *Gaza*, more within the Land, on the River *Besor*; a fair and strong Town, formerly called *Assa*, from whence perhaps the name of *Gaza* was derived by the *Heathens*; or else it was so called by the *Persians*, in regard that *Cambyses* here laid up the Treasure which he had provided for the War of *Ægypt*, the word *Gaza*, in the *Persian* Language, signifying treasures. Of which *Cambyses* it is said by *Pomponius Mela*, *Cum armis Ægyptum peteret, huc belli opes & pecuniam invehi curavit*. After which it was made the Receipt of Treasury, in which the *Persians* laid the *Tributes* of the Western Provinces, whence all riches had in time the name of *Gaze*. Once *Caleb* took it, but not able to hold it against the *Philistims*, he again deserted it. Destroyed by *Alexander* the *Great*, and re-built again, it made notable resistance against the *Maccabees*; till at last forced by *Simon*, the brother of *Judas*, who liked the place so well, tha he intended to have made it his place of residence: not so decayed in length of time, but that it was a goodly City in the days of *Brochardus*. And it is still the best of all this Coast, built on an hill encompassed with rich and pleasant Vallies; the buildings low and mean, as in other places: but some of them adorned with Pillars of fair *Parian* Marble, digged out of the remaining ruins. 6 *Maioma*, the Port Town of *Gaza*, but made a City of it self by *Constantine*, by whom called *Constantia*: but restored again by *Julian* unto those of *Gaza*, and by him commanded to be called *Gaza Maritima*.

These were the chief places holden by the *Philistims*, a strong and Giantlike race of men, such as the Scripture calls by the name of *Anak*, or the Sons of *Anak*. Originally descended from *Casluhim*, and *Copthorim*, of the Race of *Mizraim* the son of *Cham*: as appeareth both by the common consent of ancient Writers, and plain Texts of Scripture, *Jer.* 47. 4. and *Amos* 9. 7. These being setled first in the borders of *Ægypt* and *Idumæa*, where the *Casluhim* gave name unto the Province of *Casiotis*, and the Mountain *Casius*; proceeded Northwards and subdued the *Avim*, a *Canaanitish* people, planting themselves in their habitations, as is said expressly *Deut.* 2. 23. Here *Abraham* found them in his time, and here they were when *Isaac* went down to *Gerar*. Governed at first by one King whom they called always by the name of *Abimelech*, as the *Ægyptians* theirs by the name of *Pharaoh*; sometimes by five, according to the number of their principal Cities; but still united in the times of approaching dangers. Too strong to be subdued by the Tribes of *Israel*, they made head against them, and mastered them at several times, for above 150 years, Tyrannizing over them, till broken by *Sampson*, and for a time kept off by *Samuel*. Recovering again, they vanquished the *Israelites* in the time of *Saul*, whom they discomfited, and hanged his dead body barbarously on the Walls of *Bethsan*. But *David*, a more fortunate Prince, overthrew them in many set battels, and at length took the Town of *Gath*, one of the strongest Towns they had; and by that means so weakned them, that they durst not stir all the time of *David*, nor a long while after. Beginning to be troublesome in the days of *Ozias* King of *Judah*, they were warred on by him, their Army overthrown, *Ita* and *Amcia*, two of their strong Forts, took and razed; and the Town of *Gath* again dismantled. In the time of the *Idolatrous Achaz* associating with the *Edomites*, (who evermore attended the destruction of *Judah*) they brake out again; took *Bethsemes*, *Ajalon*, *Timnah*, and some other Towns; carried away many Prisoners, and slew much People: But the good King *Ezekiah* made them pay dear for it, taking from them the greatest part of their Country, betwixt *Gath* and *Gaza*. Which notwithstanding, they recovered to so great esteem, that the whole Country had from them the name of *Palestine*. But broken by degrees by the *Maccabæans*, they lost both their power and reputation, passing in common estimate as a part of *Jewry*; the fortunes of which it followed for the times succeeding.

2 The Tribe of *DAN* is so called from *Dan* the fifth son of *Jacob*, by *Bilhah* the hand-maid of *Rachel*, of whom were mustered at Mount *Sinai* 62700 fighting men; and 66400 at the second muster, in the Land of *Canaan*: where their lot fell betwixt *Ephraim*, on the North; *Simeon*, on the *South*, the Tribe of *Benjamin*, on the East; and the *Mediterranean* on the West.

Places of most note in it, 1 *Joppa* (now called *Jaffa*) once a famous Mart-Town, and the only Haven to *Judæa* in foregoing times: the Town where *Jonah* took ship to fly unto *Tarshish*; where *Peter* raised *Dorcas* from death to life; and where he lying in the house of one *Simon* a Tanner, was in a Vision taught the conversion of the *Gentiles*. This City they report to have been built before the *flood*. And here they say reigned *Cepheus*, whose Daughter *Andromeda* was by *Perseus* delivered from a Sea-monster; some of whose bones the people used to shew to *strangers*, even to the flourishing of the *Romans*. Just as our Citizens of *Coventry* and *Warwick*, shew the bones of the *Dun-Cow* of *Dunsmeur* heath, and the bones of I know not what Giant, slain by *Guy* Earl of *Warwick*. In the time of the *Maccabees* it was garrisoned by the *Syrians*; who having in the Port a Fleet of good power and strength, invited 200 of the chief Citizens to go aboard with them, and there drowned them all: for which their Fleet was fired by *Judas*, and such as did escape the Fire, fell upon the Sword. Twice taken by the *Romans*, and the second time burnt unto the ground: new walled, and fortified with Towers, by King *Lewis* of *France*, in the year 1250. the *Holy Wars* then drawing to their finall end. Now nothing standing of it but two little Turrets where are certain *Harquebusses* for defence of the Haven, none of the best; defended from the South and West winds with eminent Rocks, but exposed to the fury of the North; which makes it more unsafe than the open Seas, when enraged by Tempests. Not much frequented by the Merchants, who trade here but for Cottons only; and hold their Factory not far off in a Town called 2 *Rama*, by the *Moors* called *Ramula*, situate in a sandy plain, on the rising of a little Hill; built of Free-stone, but the Streets thereof narrow, and the Houses contemptible. More beautiful in the ruins of some Christian Churches, and a Monastery built by *Philip the Good* of *Burgundy*, where the house of *Nicodemus* stood, than in any of the remaining Edifices. 3 *Jamnia*, near *Joppa*, where *Judas* burnt the rest of the *Syrian* Fleet, the flame whereof was seen to *Hierusalem*, 240 Furlongs off: mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and in the times of *Christianity* an Episcopal See; now not discernable in the ruins. 4 *Cedar* or *Cedron*, fortified against the *Jews* by *Cendebæus* one of the Lieutenants of *Antiochus*, who hereabouts was overthrown

thrown by the *Maccabees*. 5 *Modin*, a ſmall Town, but honoured with the birth and ſepulchre of thoſe *Maccabæans*; the Sepulchre being ſeven Marble Pillars of ſo great an height, that they ſerved as a mark for Sea-men. 6 *Gibbethon*, in the Country called *Makats*, a City of the *Levites*, but afterwards poſſeſſed by the *Philiſtims*, at the ſiege whereof *Nadab*, the ſon of *Jeroboam* King of *Iſrael*, was ſlain by *Baaſha*, who ſucceeded; and *Omri* choſen King on the death of *Zimri*. 7 *Cariathiarim*, where the *Ark* of the Lord was kept for 20 years, in the houſe of *Aminadab*; that is to ſay, from the ſending it home by the *Philiſtims*, till brought to *Hieruſalem* by *David*. 8 *Beth-ſemes*, to which the *Ark* was brought by a yoke of Kine, turned looſe by the *Philiſtims*: for irreverent looking into which there were ſlain by the immediate hand of God, no fewer than 50070 perſons of this City. 9 *Iſarab*, near which is a fountain, called the fountain of *Ethiopia*, becauſe *Philip* there baptized the *Ethiopian Eunuch*. 10 *Caſpin*, taken with great ſlaughter by *Judas Maccabæus*. 11 *Lachis*, remarkable for the death of *Amaziah* King of *Judah*. 12 *Ajalon*, a City of the *Levites* alſo, touched upon before in the tribe of *Ephraim*, in the borders whereof we find it ſituated; and therefore by ſome Authors reckoned to the ſame Tribe, and by ſome to the other, in the Valley whereof the Moon is ſaid to have ſtood ſtill at the prayers of *Joſhuah*, as the Sun did over the City of *Gibeon*: the motion of the Heavens being ſtaid, that he might have the more time for execution on the Kings of the *Canaanites*. To this Tribe alſo belonged the Town and Territory of *Dan*, or *Leſhem*, afterwards called *Cæſarea Philippi*, in the Tribe of *NEPHTHALIM*; whereof we have there ſpoke already.

3. The Tribe of *SIMEON* was ſo called from *Simeon* the ſecond Son of *Jacob*, by his firſt Wife *Leah*: of whom were found at the firſt Muſter 59300 able men; and but 22200 at the ſecond Muſter, when they came into *Canaan*. Where they enjoyed but a ſmall Territory to themſelves, their lot falling amongſt the *Philiſtims*, whom they were not able to expell: and therefore they were taken into the Tribe of *Judah*, where they were permitted to enjoy ſome Towns and Villages, intermixed with that more potent Tribe. Afterwards, in the reign of King *Hezekiah*, ſome of them poſſeſſed themſelves of *Gedar*, belonging to the Children of *Ham*; and others paſſing Southwards into *Idumæa*, ſmote the *Amalekites* which inhabited in the mountains thereof, and dwelt in the places by them conquered. But for all this, wanting room for themſelves and their Children, many of them undertook the Office of *Scribes* or *Scriveners*, and diſperſed themſelves amongſt the reſt of the *Tribes*, teaching their Children to write, and giving themſelves to the employment of *Publick Notaries*: God herein verifying the Curſe which *Jacob* had denounced on *Simeon*, that he *ſhould be divided and ſcattered in* Iſrael. But for their fixed habitation which fell to them by Lot, it lay betwixt *Dan* upon the North, and *Idumæa* on the South; the Tribe of *Judah* on the Eaſt, and the *Philiſtims* upon the Weſt.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Gerar*, the Royal ſeat of the two *Abimelechs*, Kings of the *Philiſtims*, with whom *Abraham* and *Iſaac* had to do; and probably of ſome other of their Kings and Princes, till ſubdued by the *Iſraelites*. Situate in the South border of *Canaan*, not far from the wilderneſs of *Beerſheba*, but in a very healthful air; called therefore *Regio Salutaris* in the times ſucceeding. 2 *Siceleg*, or *Ziglag*, belonging to the *Philiſtims* till the time of *David*, to whom given by *Achiſh* King of *Gath*, for his place of retreat, when perſecuted by *Saul*; from whom flying he lodged here all his goods and carriages; ſacked by the *Amalekites*, but the booty recovered from them ſpeedily by the diligence and good fortune of *David*. 3 *Haim*, a City of the *Levites*. 4 *Cariath-Sepher*, that is to ſay, the *City of Books*, ſeated within the bounds of *Simeon*, but belonging to *Judah*: which ſome hold to be the Univerſity or *Academy* of old *Paleſtine*. A City of the *Levites* alſo, and at firſt poſſeſſed by the Sons of *Anak*, or men of a *Gigantine* ſtature, but taken by *Othniel*, the ſon of *Kenan*, on the promiſe and encouragement which was given by *Caleb*, that whoſoever took it ſhould have his Daughter *Achſah* to Wife. Afterwards it was called *Debir*, Judg. 1. 11. known in the time of St. *Hierom* by the name of *Daema*. 5 *Chorma*, conceived by ſome to be that place mentioned *Num.* 14. 45. to which the *Canaanites* and *Amalekites* purſued thoſe of *Iſrael*. 6 *Beerſheba*, or *Puteus juramenti*; ſo called of the Well of waters, and the Oath which was there ſworn betwixt *Abraham* and *Abimelech*, *Gen.* 21. 31. Memorable in the Scripture for the *Grove* which *Abraham* there planted, the wandring of *Hagar* thereabouts, when ſhe was caſt out of *Abraham*'s houſe with her young Son *Iſmael*; and the dwelling of *Iſaac*, for which cauſe called the City of *Iſaac*. Situate in the extreme South border of the Land of *Canaan*, the length whereof is often meaſured in the Scripture from this Town to *Dan*; and for that cauſe well fortified by the Weſtern *Chriſtians*, when they were poſſeſſed of this Country; as ſtanding on the borders of *Idumæa*, and the *Deſarts* of *Arabia*, in the way from *Ægypt*.

4. The Tribe of *JUDAH* was ſo called from *Judah* the fourth ſon of *Jacob*, by his Wife *Leah*: of whom there were numbred at the firſt general Muſter taken near Mount *Sinai*, 76600 fighting men; and no fewer than 76500 at their entrance into the Land of *Canaan*. The greateſt Tribe, and therefore anſwerably fitted with the largeſt Territory, bordering on the *Dead Sea*, Eaſt; upon *Simeon* Weſt; the Tribe of *Benjamin* on the North; and the *Idumæans* on the South. Comparatively large, with reference to the other Tribes; but otherwiſe unable to contain or feed thoſe infinite multitudes, without the extraordinary providence of Almighty God, which are recorded to be in it: King *David* muſtering 470000 fighting men of this Tribe alone; which was more than half the number found in the reſt of the Tribes. A Tribe which had a native Soveraignty over all the others; the *Scepter*, the *Legiſlative* power, and the Worlds *Meſſiah* being all promiſed unto this.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Arad*, ſituate in the entrance of *Judæa*, in the way from the Wilderneſs of *Edom*. 2 *Hebron*, one of the ancienteſt Cities of *Canaan*; the ſeat of the *Giants*, called *Anakim*, or the Sons of *Anak*. This word *Anak* ſignifieth a Chain worn for Ornament; and it ſeemeth that this *Anak* enriched with the ſpoils of his enemies, wore a Chain of Gold, leaving both the cuſtom and name to his poſterity. We read the like of *Manlius Torquatus* in the *Roman* Hiſtories. This Town did *Abraham* buy for a burial-place for his dead; in which his Wife *Sarah* was firſt buried, and after her, four of the *Patriarchs*. Adjoyning to this Town is the Plain of *Mamre*, where *Abraham*, the Father of the Faithful, ſitting in his Tent, was viſited from Heaven by God in the ſhape of a man. Here *David* kept his Court before the winning of *Hieruſalem*; to this place came the Tribes to anoint him King over *Iſrael*; and hither came *Abſalon*, under the pretence of paying his vows, to uſurp the Kingdom of his Father. 3 *Tecoa*, the City of *Amos* the Prophet; and alſo of that woman, who by the words which *Joab* put into her mouth, perſwaded the King to call *Abſalon* from exile. In the Wilderneſs of this *Tecoa*, there aſſembled the Inhabitants of *Moab*, *Ammon*, and

Mount

Mount Seir, to overthrow *Judah*. But the Lord being appeased by the *publick Fast* proclaimed and kept by *Jehoshaphat* and the people, sowed dissensions amongst them: So that *the children of* Ammon and Moab *stood up against the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *utterly to slay and destroy them; and when they had made an end of the Inhabitants of* Mount Seir, *every one helped to destroy one another.* 4 *Cerioth*, or *Carioth*, the birth-place of *Judas*, hence sirnamed *Iscariot* (or the man of *Carioth*) who betrayed our Saviour. 5 *Jether*, or *Jatter*, in the North border of this Tribe, towards *Eleutheropolis*, a City anciently of the *Levites*, and called in St. *Jerom*'s time *Jethira*, and then altogether repleniſhed with *Christians*, now nothing but the name remaining. 6 *Maresa*, the native Soil of the Prophet *Micah*, near whereunto first *Asa* King of *Judah* discomfited the vast Army of *Terah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, consisting of above a Million of men; and afterwards *Gorgias* was overthrown by *Judas Maccabæus*. 7 *Emaus* (after called *Nicopolis*) memorable for the third overthrow which *Judas* gave to the said *Gorgias*, for our Redeemers shewing himself after his *Resurrection* to *Cleophas* and another of his Disciples; and for the *hot Bathes* hereabouts, which gave the name of *Salutaris* to this part of *Palestine*. The Sovereign vertue of which waters *Sozomen*, a *Christian*, attributes to the washing of *Christs* feet in them, as he passed by at that time; but *Josephus* a *Jew*, ascribes (as it is most likely) unto natural causes. 8 *Hasor*, or *Chatsor*, one of the frontier Towns towards *Idumæa*. 9 *Odalla*, or *Hadullan*, an ancient and magnificent City, taken and destroyed by *Joshua*, and long after much enlarged and beautified by *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabees*. 10 *Ceila*, or *Keila*, where *David* sometimes hid himself when he fled from *Saul*; by him delivered afterwards from the assaults of the *Philistims*. 11 *Eleutheropolis*, or the *Free City*, not far from *Hebron*; a City of later date than any of *Judah*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, and much remembred by St. *Hierom*. 12 *Azecha*, not far from *Emaus*, to which *Joshuah* followed *Dabir* the King of *Eglon*, and his four Associates, whom he discomfited in the cause and quarrel of the *Gibeonites*; molested by them for submitting to their common Enemy. Seated in the Valley of *Terebinth*, and of very great strength; presuming upon which, it revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the same time that *Libna* and the *Edomites* had revolted from him. 13 *Beth-Sur*, or (*Beth-Sora*) that is to say, the *house* on the *Rock*, so called from the situation on a rocky hill, one of the strongest places of *Judah*: Fortified first by *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, after by *Judas Maccabæus*; and finally made impregnable by his brother *Simeon*. 14 *Adoram*, bordering on the *Dead Sea*, beautified also by *Rehoboam*. 15 *Zoar*, in former times called *Bela*, but took its name from the words of *Lot*, alledging that it was but a little one, *Gen.* 19.20. as the word *Tsohor* doth import, in whose escape it was preserved, being otherwise one of the five Cities of the Region called *Pentapolis*, doomed unto destruction; the other four, *Sodom*, *Gomorrah*, *Adama*, and *Seboim*, being at the same time destroyed by fire and brimstone. 16 *Missida*, frequently mentioned by *Josephus*, as a place of great strength both by Art and Nature, and as it is by him described (in the seventh Book *de Bello Jud.* cap. 28.) to be thought impregnable; and therefore made by *Herod* (in the time of his troubles) the place of refuge, in which he disposed of *Mariamne* his betroathed Wife, her Mother *Alexandra*, with divers honourable Ladies; and where they were preserved in safety against all his Enemies, till he came armed with power from *Rome*, to dislodg their Forces, which was done accordingly. First built by *Jonathan* the brother of *Judas Maccabæus*, as a sure place of Refuge against the *Syrians*; and afterwards so esteemed by *Herod* for the reason above mentioned, that he not only much enlarged it, with all the requisite additions of strength and beauty, but built within the verge thereof, a magnificent Palace. The whole environed with a wall of 7 furlongs compass, 12 cubits high, and 8 cubits broad, built of white stone, and situate on an high Mountain called *Collis Achillæ*, washed on the East-side by the *Dead Sea*, or *Lacus Asphaltites*, and by that secured; on the other sides fenced with such deep ditches, that it was a terror to any man to look down into them: besides which natural situation, it was fortified by *Herod* with 27 Turrets, who left therein, as in a place impregnable and inaccessible, a *Magazine* of Arms and all warlike furniture, for an Army of 10000 men, all sorts of Victuals to sustain them, and ground enough within the Walls to yield corn sufficient, when time and a long siege should consume those Victuals. A place of such strength and so great concernment, that it held out against the *Romans* (when *Vespasian* and his Son *Titus* managed that great War) after all the rest of *Judæa* had been conquered by them. 17 *Libna*, a strong City seated in a Corner of *Judah*, running between the Tribes of *Dan* and *Benjamin*. This City revolted from *Joram* King of *Judah*, at the same time the *Edomites* did, and continued a *Free State*, even as long as *Judah* continued a Kingdom. 18 *Ziph*, in the Wilderness, wherein *David* hid himself from the fury of *Saul*. Hither, when *Saul* pursued him, *David* came into his Camp (the Watch being all asleep) and took thence his Spear, and a *Cruse* of oyl, and departed. *Abishai* indeed would fain have killed him: but *David*, though he knew that *Samuel* had by God's command abdicated *Saul* from the Kingdom, and that himself was appointed in his stead, would not touch him; but left him to the judgment of the Lord, whose anointed he was. 19 *Bethlehem*, or (to distinguish it from another of this name of *Zabulon* so called) *Bethlehem-Judah*, where Christ was born; and the *Innocents* suffered for him, before he had suffered for them. In this general Massacre of young Children, a son of *Herod*'s, which was at nurse, was also slain; which being told unto *Augustus*, he replied, *He had rather be* Herod's *Swine than his Son*, His *Swine* being safe in regard the *Jews* were forbidden hog-meat; but his *Sons* frequently made away, upon *fears* and *jealousies*. A Town for this cause had in great respect by the Primitive *Christians*, beautified by *Helen* with a stately Temple, which yet standeth entire; by the Lady *Paula* (much extolled by St. *Hierom*) with some goodly Monasteries, in one of which the body of that father lieth; and by the *Western Christians*, with a See Episcopal. 20 On the frontier of this Country towards the *Philistims*, was that strong Castle which *Herod* repairing, called *Herodium*; seated on a hill, the ascent unto which was made with 200 steps of *Marble*, exceeding fair and large. In this Country also are the hills of *Engaddi*, in a Cave of which *David* cut off the Lap of *Saul*'s Garment; and all along the bottoms whereof were the Gardens of *Balsamum* or *Opobalsamum*, the trees of which, were by *Cleopatra* (at such time as she governed *M. Antony*, and the East) sent for to be replanted in *Heliopolis* of *Ægypt*; and *Herod*, who durst not deny them, plucked them up by the roots, and sent them to her.

5. The Tribe of *BENJAMIN* took name from the twelfth and yongest Son of *Jacob*, by *Rachel* his best beloved Wife, who died in that Child-birth: of which at the first muster near unto Mount *Sinai*, were numbred 35000 able men; and at the second muster, when they entred the *Promised Land*, there were found of them fit for Arms, 45600 persons. A Tribe in great danger to have been utterly cut off, by the folly of the men of *Gibeah*,

Gibeah, all *Iſrael* arming againſt it as one man. For beſides thoſe that periſhed in the former Battels, there fell in one day 25000 men that drew the Sword: the fury of the Conquerours after that great Victory ſparing neither Man nor Beaſt, nor any thing that came to hand, and burning down all their Cities alſo which they came unto. So great an havock was there made even of innocent Maidens, that when the edge of this diſpleaſure was taken off, there were not Wives enough found for thoſe young men which had eſcaped; The other Tribes having bound themſelves by a ſolemn Oath, not to beſtow their Daughters on them: inſomuch that they were fain to provide themſelves of Wives of the Daughters of *Jabeſh-Gilead*, a Town of the *Manaſſites* beyond *Jordan*, whom they took by aſſault; and of the Daughters of *Shilo*, whom they took by ſtratagem. The whole Story ſee at large in the Book of *Judges*, c.19,20,21.

The Territories of this Tribe lay betwixt thoſe of *Ephraim* on the North and *Judah* on the South; having the *Dead-Sea* to the Eaſt, and the Tribe of *Dan* to the Weſtward of them. The chief of their Towns and Cities were, 1 *Michmas*, the incamping place of *Saul*, 1 *Sam.* 13. 2. and the abiding place of *Jonathan*, one of the *Maccabæan* Brethren, 1 *Maccab.* 9. 73. 2 *Miſpah*, famous in being the ordinary place of aſſembly for the whole Body of the People, in matters of War or Peace: as alſo in that ſtanding in the midſt of *Canaan*, it was (together with *Gilgal*) made the Seat of *Juſtice*, to which *Samuel* went yearly to give Judgment to the People. 3 *Gebah*, the North Border of the Kingdom of *Judah* toward *Iſrael*. 4 *Gibeah*, the Country of *Saul*, the firſt King; where the abuſing of the *Levite*'s Wife by the young men of this Town, had almoſt rooted the Tribe of *Benjamin* out of the Garden of *Iſrael*. 5 *Ai*, a great and ſtrong City, in the Siege of which the *Iſraelites* were firſt diſcomfited: but when by the death of *Achan*, who had ſtollen the *accurſed* thing, the Camp was purged, *Joſhuah* by a war-like Stratagem ſurpriſed it. 6 *Gibeon*, the mother-City of the *Gibeonites*, who preſaging the unreſiſtable Victories of the *Iſraelites*, came to the Camp of *Joſhuah*, and by a wile obtained peace of him and the People: Employed by them in hewing Wood, and drawing Water for the uſe of the *Tabernacle*, after the fraud was made known unto them; called *Nethinims*, *Ezra* 4. 3. from *Nathan*, which ſignifies to *give*, becauſe they were *given* to the Service of the *Tabernacle* firſt, of the *Temple* after. *Saul* about four hundred years after, ſlew ſome of them, for which fact the Lord cauſed a Famine on the Land; which could not be taken away till ſeven of *Saul*'s Sons were by *David* delivered unto the *Gibeonites*, and by them hanged. This Famine did God ſend, becauſe in killing thoſe poor *Gibeonites*, the Oath was broken which *Joſhua* and the Princes ſwore concerning them. In defence of thoſe *Gibeonites* it was that *Joſhuah* waged War againſt the Kings of the *Canaanites*, and ſtayed the motion of the Sun by his fervent Prayers. 7 *Jericho*, deſtroyed by the ſound of *Rams-Horns*, was not only levelled by *Joſhuah* to the ground, but a Curſe inflicted on him that ſhould attempt the re-building of it. This Curſe notwithſtanding, at the time when *Ahab* reigned in *Iſrael* (which was about five hundred years after the ruin of it) *Hiel* a *Bethelite*, delighted with the pleaſantneſs of the place, re-edified it. But (as it was foretold by *Joſhuah*) as he laid the Foundation of the Walls, he loſt his eldeſt Son; and when he had finiſhed it, and was ſetting up the Gates thereof, he loſt alſo the younger. It may be *Hiel* when he began this Work, minded not the Propheſie; it may be he believed it not: peradventure he thought the words of *Joſhuah* not ſo much to proceed from the ſpirit of Propheſie, as from an angry and vexed heart; they being ſpoken in way of wiſh, or execration. And it is poſſible, it may be, he choſe rather to build the eternity of his name on ſo pleaſant and beautiful a City, than on the uncertain lives and iſſues of two young men. 8 *Anathoth*, the birth-place of the Prophet *Jeremy*, and the Patrimony of *Abiathar* the *High-Prieſt*, ſent hither by the command of *Solomon*, as to a place of his own, when depoſed from his Office by that King. 9 *Nob*, called 1 *Sam.* 22. 19. the *City* of the *Prieſts*, deſtroyed by *Saul*, for the relief which *Abimelech* the High Prieſt had given to *David*; the *Ark* of the Lord then reſiding there. 14 *Gilgal*, upon the bank of *Jordan*, where *Joſhuah* did firſt eat of the Fruits of the Land, and kept his firſt *Paſſeover*; where he *circumciſed* ſuch of the People as were born during their wandring in the Wilderneſs; and nigh to which he ſet up twelve Stones, for a Memorial to Poſterity, that the Waters of *Jordan* did there divide themſelves, to give paſſage to the twelve Tribes of *Iſrael*. Here *Agag*, King of the *Amalekites*, was hewn in pieces by *Samuel*; and here *Samuel* once every year adminiſtred Juſtice to the People. For being ſeated in the midſt of the Land of *Iſrael*, betwixt North and South, and on the Eaſt-ſide of the Country near the Banks of *Jordan*, it ſerved very fitly for that purpoſe: as *Miſpah* alſo did, which ſtood in the ſame diſtance, in regard of the length of the Land of *Canaan*, but ſituate towards the Weſt-Sea, near the Land of the *Philiſtims*: uſed therefore interchangeably for the eaſe of the People. 11 *Bethel*, at the firſt called *Luz*, but took this new name in remembrance of the Viſion which *Jacob* ſaw here, at going towards *Meſopotamia*, as is ſaid *Gen.* 28. 19. It ſignified the Houſe of God, and was therefore choſen by *Jeroboam*, for the ſetting up of one of his *Golden Calves*; though thereby (as the Prophet ſaid) he made it to be *Beth-aven*, the *Houſe of Vanity*, Hoſ. 4. 15. & 10. 5. For then it was a part of the Kingdom of the *ten Tribes*, and the Southern border of that Kingdom on the Coaſt of *Ephraim*: but taken from it by *Abijah* the King of *Judah*, and after that accounted as a member of his Kingdom, till the deſtruction of it by the *Chaldæans*. Called with the reſt of thoſe parts, in the time of the *Maccabees*, by the name of *Aphærema*, which ſignifieth a thing taken away; becauſe taken away from the *ten Tribes*, to which once it belonged, 1 *Macc.* 11. 34. where it is ſaid, to have been taken from the Country of *Samaria*, and added unto the Borders of *Judæa*. 12 *Ramath*, another place there mentioned, and ſaid to have been added to the Realm of *Judah*, having been formerly the South Border of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*; and therefore ſtrongly fortified by *Baaſha*, in the time of *Aſa* King of *Judah*. 13 *Chadid*, or *Hadid*, one of the three Cities (the other two being 14 *Lod*, and 15 *Ono*) which were inhabited by the *Benjamites* after the Captivity. Deſtroyed in the Wars with the Kings of *Syria*, and afterwards re-built by *Simon* the *Maccabæan*.

But the chief Glory of this Tribe, and of all the reſt, and not ſo only, but of all the whole World beſides, was the famous City of *Hieruſalem*; ſeated upon a rocky Mountain, every way to be aſcended with ſteep and difficult Aſcents (except towards the North) environed on all other ſides alſo with ſome neighbouring Mountains, as if placed in the midſt of an *Amphitheatre*. It conſiſted in the time of its greateſt flouriſh of four parts, ſeparated by their ſeveral Walls, as if ſeveral Cities; we may call them, the *Upper City*, the *Lower City*, the *New City*, and the *City of Herod*: all of them but the *Lower City*, ſeated upon their ſeveral Hills. Of theſe, that which we call the City of *Herod*, had formerly been beautified with the Houſes of many of the *Prophets*, as

in

in our Saviours time with that of *Mary* the Mother of *John Mark*, mentioned *Acts* 15. 37. converted to a Church by the *Primitive Christians:* the Western part whereof was wholly taken up by the Palace of *Herod*, (a wicked but magnificent Prince) for cost excessive, and for strength invincible; containing Gardens, Groves, Fishponds, places devised for pleasures, besides those for exercise. Fortified with three Towers at the corners of it; that on the South-East of the Wall, fifty Cubits high, of excellent workmanship, called *Mariamne*'s *Tower*, in memory of his beloved but insolent Wife, rashly murdered by him. Opposite to which, on the South-West corner, stood the Tower of *Phaseolus*, so called by the name of his Brother, seventy Cubits high, and in form resembling that so much celebrated *Ægyptian Pharos:* and on the North Wall, on an high Hill, the Tower of *Hippick*, exceeding both the rest in height by fourteen Cubits, and having on the top two *Spires*; in memory of the two *Hippici*, his very dear friends, slain in his Service in the Wars.

2 On the South side stood that part which was called the *Old City*, possessed if not built by the *Jebusites*, and therein both the Mountain and Fort of *Sion*: but after called the City of *David*, because taken by him; who thereon built a strong and magnificent Castle, the Royal Court and Mansion of the Kings succeeding. In the West part hereof stood the *Tower of David*; a double Palace built by *Herod*,, the one part whereof he named *Agrippa*, and the other *Cæsar*, composed of Marble; and everywhere enterlaid with Gold; and not far off, the House of *Annas* and *Caiphas*, to which the Conspirators led our Saviour to receive his Tryal.

3 That which was called the *Lower City*, because it had more in it of the *Valley*, was also called the *Daughter of Sion*, because built after it, and did in Majesty and greatness exceed the *Mother*. For therein upon Mount *Moriah*, stood the Temple of *Solomon* (whereof more anon) and betwixt it and Mount *Sion*, on another Hill, the Palace which he built for his Wife the Daughter of *Ægypt*; and that which he founded for himself, from which by an high Bridge he had a way unto the *Temple*. West hereof, on a lofty Rock over-looking the City, stood the Royal Palace of the Princes of the *Maccabæans*, re-edified and dwelt in by King *Agrippa* (though of *Herod*'s Race) and not far off the *Theatre* of *Herod*'s building, adorned with admirable Pictures, expressing the many Victories and Triumphs of *Augustus Cæsar*. In this part also stood Mount *Acra*, and on that once a *Citadel* built by *Antiochus* King of *Syria*; but razed by *Simon* one of the *Maccabæan* Brothers, because it over-topped the Temple; the House of *Helena* Queen of *Adiabene*, who converted from *Paganism* to *Judaism*, had here her dwelling, and here died: and finally, *Herod*'s *Amphitheatre*, capacious enough to contain 80000 people, whom he entertained sometimes with such Shews and Spectacles, as were in use amongst the *Romans*. And in this part also, on a high and craggy Rock, not far from the Temple, stood the *Tower of Baris*, whereon the same *Herod* built a strong and impregnable *Citadel*, in honour of *Mark Antony*, whose Creature he first was, called by the name of *Antonius*, having a fair and large Tower at every corner, two of them fifty Cubits high, and the other seventy; afterwards garisoned by the *Romans*, for fear the *Jews* presuming on the strength of the Temple, might take occasion to rebel.

4 As for the *New City*, which lay North to the City of *Herod*, it was once a Suburb only unto all the rest; inhabited by none but mechanical persons, and the meanest Tradesmen; but after incompassed by *Agrippa* with a Wall of 25 Cubits high, and fortified with ninety Turrets. The whole City fenced with a wonderful circumvallation on all parts thereof; having a Ditch cut out of the same Rock, as *Josephus* an eye-witness writeth, sixty foot deep, and no less than two hundred and fifty foot in breadth. First built, say some, by *Melchisedeck* the King of *Salem*; by the *Jebusites* themselves say others: by whomsoever built, called at first *Jebusalem*, afterwards *Jerusalem*, with the change of one Letter only: inlarged in time, when made the Royal Seat of the House of *David*, to the magnificence and greatness before described, til it attained unto the compass of sixty furlongs, or seven miles and an half. Unconquered for the first four hundred years after the entrance of the Children of *Israel*; and when *David* attempted it, the people presumed so much on the strength of the place, that they told him in the way of scorn, that *the Blind and the Lame* which they had amongst them (as the Text is generally expounded) should defend it against him. But as I think, the late learned Mr. *Gregory* of *Christ-Church* in *Oxon*, hath found out a more likely meaning of the Text than this, who telleth us, That the *Jebusites* by the *Blind and Lame* (as they knew well what the *Israelites* called *Blind and Lame*) did understand those *Tutelar Idols*, on whose protection they relied (as the *Trojans* did on their *Palladium*) for defence thereof: and then the meaning must be this, Those gods whom you of *Israel* call *blind and lame*, shall defend our Walls. Why else should *David* say (had they meant it literally) that his soul hated *the lame and the blind?* 2 *Sam.* 5. 8. or why should the People of *Israel* be so uncharitable as to say, That the *blind and lame should not come into the House* (or the Temple of God) were it meant no otherwise? But notwithstanding these vain hopes, the Town was carried under the conduct of *Joab*, that fortunate and couragious Leader; and made the Royal Seat of the Kings of *Judah*.

Proceed we now unto the Temple built by *Solomon*, in providing the materials whereof there were in *Lebanon* 30000 Workmen, which wrought by 10000 every Month; 70000 Labourers, which carried Burdens; 80000 Quarry-men, that hewed Stones in the Mountains; and of Officers and Overseers of the Work, no less than 3300 men. The Description of this stately Fabrick, we have in the first of Kings, *cap.* 6. 7. In the year of the World 2350. it was destroyed by *Nebuchadnezzar* at the taking of *Hierusalem*: re-built again after the return from the Captivity; but with such opposition of the *Samaritans*, that the Workmen were fain to hold their Tools in one hand, and their Swords in the other, to repulse, if need were, those malicious Enemies. But yet this Temple was not answerable to the magnificence of the former; so that the Prophet *Haggai* had good occasion to say to the People, *cap.* 1. *ver.* 3. *Who is left amongst you that saw this House in her first glory? is it not in your eyes as nothing in comparison of it?* Nor fell it short thereof only in the outward Structure, but some inward *Additaments:* For it wanted, 1 The *Pot* of *Manna*, which the Lord commanded *Moses* to lay up before the *Testimony for a Memorial*, *Exod.* 16. 32, *&c.* 2 The *Rod of Aaron*, which only budded of all the Rods of the Princes of *Israel*, and was commanded to be kept before the Ark of the *Testimony*, for a token against *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, *Numb.* 17. 10. 3 The *Ark of the Covenant*, the making whereof we have *Exod.* 25. 10. and the placing of it in the *Oracle*, or *Sanctum Sanctorum*, 1 *Kings* 6. 19. 4 The *two Tables of the Law*, writ by God's own finger, and by *Moses* laid up in the Ark of the Covenant, *Exod.* 40. 20. and *Deut.* 10. 5. And 5 *The fire of Sacrifice*, which came down from Heaven, mentioned *Lev.* 9. 24. 2 *Chron.* 17. 1.

which by the Priest was to be kept continually burning never to go out. This second Temple, partly because it was grown ruinous, partly because it seemed not magnificent enough, but principally to curry favour with the *Jews*, *Herod* the *Ascalonite* pulled down, and set up another in the place; making it not much inferiour (if at all) unto that of *Solomon*, but far superiour to the other *Immensæ opulentiæ Templum*, as *Tacitus* most truly called it. And this was it to which our Saviour did sometimes vouchsafe his presence.

But here we are to understand, that by the Temple it is not meant the *Fabrick* only, or the house it self; but also all those several *Courts* with which encompassed, being four in number. That is to say, *Atrium Sacerdotum*, or the *Priests Court*, which was next unto the *Temple*; wherein stood the *Brazen Altar* for the daily Sacrifice, and the *Laver* for the washing of the Priests and the Sacrifice also: into which *Court* might none enter but the Priests alone. 2 Then there was *Atrium populi*, or the *Peoples Court*, separated from the other by a Wall of three Cubits height; to which the people did repair to perform their Sacrifices, to say their prayers, and to make payment of their vows. In the middle of this *Court*, did *Solomon* make a *brazen* Scaffold for the Kings his Successors, 2 *Chron.*6.13. and afterwards in imitation of his *Porch* built before the *Temple*, were many *Porches* built about it, for the people to repair into in rainy weather; which gave to this whole Court the name of *Solomon*'s *Porch*, whereof see *John* 10.23. *Acts* 3.11. Without that stood 3 *Atrium Fœminarum*, or the *Womens Court*, divided from the other, as is collected out of 2 *Chron.* 20.5. in the time of *Jehosaphat* King of *Judah*; in which stood the Treasury, or poor mans Box, mentioned in the one and twentieth Chapter of St. *Lukes* Gospel: from whence this whole Court had sometimes the name of Treasury, as appeareth *John* 8. 20. where it is said, that *these words spake* JESUS *in the Treasury*, that is to say, in the *Womens Court*, where the *Treasury* or *Alms-box* stood. Betwixt these last was an ascent of 15 steps, on which the *Levites* used to sing those 15 *Psalms*, which do immediately follow the hundred nineteenth *Psalm*; upon each step one: from whence they had the name of *Psalmi Graduales*, or *Cantica Graduum*, *i.e.* the *Psalm* or Songs of *degrees*. And so far all was counted *Holy Ground*, upon which none might tread but either natural *Jews*, or *circumcised* Proselytes, whom they called *Proselyti fœderis*, as before was said; or such of the other *Sex* (not natural *Jewesses*) who having received all outward *initiations*, had bound themselves unto the observation of the Law of *Moses*. 4 So was it not with the fourth and last Court called *Artium Gentium*, or the Court of the *Gentiles*; designed for the use of those *Gentiles*, whom they called *Proselytæ Portæ*, bound only unto the keeping of the *Precepts* given the Sons of *Noah*. For in that, as unsanctified ground (though counted part of the *Temple* also) did they permit a Market of Sheep and Oxen, the sale of Doves and Pigeons, and the Tables of money-changers, for the Oblations of the people: stabling the poor *Gentiles* amongst their Cattle, and ranking them with the worst of them. And out of this *Temple*, or *Court of the Temple*, did *CHRIST* our Saviour cast the *buyers* and *sellers*, and overthrew the *Tables of the money-changers*; asserting it to its primitive and original use, which was to be an house of *prayer for all the Nations*. This last *Court* separate the other by a wall of three Cubits height, adorned with certain pillars of equal distance, bearing this Inscription, Μὴ δεῖν ἀλλόφυλον ἐντὸς τοῦ Ἁγίου παρεῖναι, *i, e. Let no Alien* (or one that is no *Jew*) *enter into the holy place*: And to this wall it is that the Apostle alludeth, saying, *He hath broken down the middle wall of partition between us* (*i. e.* between the *Jews* and *Gentiles*) *making one of twain*, *Eph.* 2.14,15. inferring hereupon, that the *Gentiles* are no more *strangers and foreigners, but fellow-Citizens with the Saints, and of the houshold of God*, v. 19.

But to go forwards with the Temple, having continued in the glories to which *Herod* brought it, not above 85 years, it was finally destroyed by *Titus* the son of *Vespasian*, in the 69 year after *Christ's* Nativity. At what time the Temple of *Delphos* was utterly overthrow by *Earthquakes*, and *Thunderbolts* from Heaven; neither of them ever since repaired, though much endeavoured. The concurrence of which two miracles evidently sheweth, that the time was then come in which God would put an end both to the *Jewish* Ceremonies, and *Heathen-Idolatries*, that so the Kingdom of his Son might be all in all. For this destruction of the *Temple* of *Hierusalem* I may call a miracle, in regard it was done against the command of *Titus*; who was not only careful to preserve it, before his Souldiers had put fire to it, but did all that possibly might be to quench it. His reason was, Ῥωμαίων γὰρ ἔσεσθαι τὴν βλάβην, as *Josephus* hath it, because thereof would redound so highly to the prejudice of the *Roman* Empire, in being deprived of such a glorious and magnificent structure. But do he what he could with his utmost industry, there was no quenching of it till it was consumed. And it adds somewhat to the marvel, that this should happen on the tenth day of *August*, on which day the first Temple had been burnt by *Nebuchadnezzar*. And certainly it is worth the noting (I hope shall not be accounted superstitious for this observation) to see how happy or unfortunate, one or the same day hath been found unto divers persons. In the Wars betwixt the *French* and *Spaniards* for the *Realm* of *Naples*, *Friday* was observed to be very lucky to that great Captain *Gonsalvo*; he having on that day given the *French* many notable overthrows. *Wednesday* is said to have been fortunate to Pope *Sixtus* the Fifth, for on that day he was born; on the same made a Monk; on that day created *General* of his Order; on the same day made a Cardinal, then chosen to be Pope; and finally on the same inaugurated. To *Henry* the seventh of *England*, *Saturday* was observed to be very fortunate in all his actions; as was the 24 of *February* unto *Charles* the Fifth, on what day soever: for on that he came into the world, and in that he took King *Francis* Prisoner at the Battel of *Pavie*, and on the same received the imperial Crown. But to return unto the Temple, we find that on the Sabbath, or *Saturday*, it was taken by *Pompey*, on the same by *Herod*, and on that also by *Titus*.

But go we forwards to *Hierusalem* as now it standeth, it lay in rubbish and unbuilt (after the destruction of it by *Titus*) till repaired by *Adrian*: and then the Temple not so much as thought of, till out of an ungodly policy, in the Reign of *Julian* that Politick Enemy of the Church; who to diminish the infinite number of *Christians* by the increase of the *Jews*, began again to build this Temple. But no sooner were the foundations laid, but a terrible *Earthquake* cast them up again, and fire from Heaven consumed the Tools of the Workmen, together with the Stones, Timber, and other materials. As for the City it self, after the desolation in it which was made by *Titus*, it was re-edified by the Emperour *Ælius Adrianus*, who named it *Ælia*, drave thence the *Jews*, and gave it to the *Christians*. But this new City was not built in the place of the old. For within this, Mount *Calvary* is comprehended which was not in the old before. As on the other side, a great part of Mount *Sion*, part of the City of *Herod*, and the soyl were the *New City* stood, are left out of this: the ruins of the other still remaining

ing

ing visible, to shew the ancient greatness and magnificence of it. To look upon it then as it stands at present, it is now only famous for the Temple of the *Sepulchre*, built by *Helena* (whom most report to have been daughter to *Coylus* a *British* King) Mother to *Constantine* the Great. Much adò had the good Lady to find the place where the Lords body had been laid; for the *Jews* and *Heathens* had raised great hillocks on the place and built there a Temple of *Venus*. This Temple being plucked down, and the earth digged away, she found the three *Crosses*, whereon our blessed *Saviour*, and the two *Thieves* had suffered. To know which of these was the right *Cross*, they were all carried to a woman, who had been long visited with sickness, and now lay at the point of death. The *Crosses* of the two *Thieves* did the weak woman no good, but as soon as they laid her on the *Cross* on which the *Lord* died, she leaped up and was restored to her former health: the occasion of the Festival on the third of *May*, by the *Latines* called *Inventio sanctæ Crucis*. This Temple of the *Sepulchre*, even at the first building, was highly reverenced and esteemed by the *Christians* of these parts. And even until our dayes, it is much resorted to, both by *Pilgrims* from all the parts of the *Romish* Church, who fondly and superstitiously hope to to merit by their journey: and also by divers Gentlemen of the *Reformed Churches*, who travel hitherwards, partly for curiosity, partly for love to the antiquity of the place, and partly because their generous spirits imitate the Heaven, and delight in motion. Whosoever is aided to the sight of this *Sepulchre*, payeth nine Crowns to the *Turkish* Officers, so that this tribute only is worth to the *Grand Seigneur*, eighty thousand Ducats yearly. The other building generally very mean and poor, if not contemptible. Built of flint stones, low, and but one roof high; flat on the top for men to walk on, and fenced with Battlements of a yard in height to preserve them from falling: the under-rooms no better than vaults, where they repose themselves in the heat of the day. Some houses near the *Temple* of *Solomon*, and the Palace of *Herod*, adorned with Arches towards the Street; where Passengers may walk dry in a shower of rain; but not many such; nor any thing but the ruines left of the ancient buildings. The whole circuit of it reduced to two or three miles; and yet to those that take a survey thereof from some Hills adjoyning, where the ruins are not well discerned from the standing edifices, it affordeth to the eye no unpleasing prospect. And as the place is, such is the people, inhabited for the most part by *Artizans* of the meanest quality, gathered together of the scum of divers Nations: the greatest part consisting of *Moors*, and *Arabians*; a few poor *Christians*, of all the *Oriental* Sects, which dwell there for *devotion*; and some *Turks*, who for the profit which they make of *Christians*, are content to stay in it. Insomuch that when *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, being then not cured of his wounds, was carried into this City on the backs of some of this rascal people, he called to a Gentleman of his, who was going for *England*, and bad him say, that *he saw Duke* Robert *carried into Heaven on the backs of Devils*.

Come we now to the *Tribe* of *LEVI*, though indeed not reckoned for a *Tribe*, because not planted close together as the other were; nor had whole Provinces to themselves, but mingled and dispersed amongst the rest of the people; having forty eight Cities assigned them for their habitation, proportionably taken out of the other *Tribes*. So was it ordered by the Lord, partly that they being set apart for his service, might be at hand in every place to instruct the People; and partly to fulfil the Prophesie which he had spoken by *Jacob*, who had foresignified to *Levi* at the time of his death, that he should *be divided in* Jacob, *and scattered in* Israel. The like fortune he had Prophesied of *Simeon* also of the accomplishment whereof, so far as it referred to him, and the dispersion of his *Tribe*, we have spoke before. Now to make up the number of the *twelve Tribes*, *Joseph* was divided into *Ephraim* and *Manasses*; and the *Levites* were reckoned to belong unto that *Tribe*, within whose Territory, that City which they dwelt in, stood. Their maintenance was from the *Tenths* or *Tithes*, the first Fruits, Offerings, and Sacrifices of the people: and as it is in *Josh.* 11. 17. *The Priesthood of the Lord was their Inheritance*. There were of then four kinds: 1 *Punies* or *Tyrones*, which from their childhood, till the five and twentieth year of their age, learned the duty of their Offices. 2 *Graduates* which having spent four years in the study of the Law, were able to answer and oppose in it. 3 *Licentiates*, who did actually exercise the *Priestly* Function. And 4 *Doctors* (*Rabines* they use to call them) who were the highest in degree. For maintenance of whom, they had (as before is said) the *Tithes*, first Fruits, and Offerings of all the rest of the People besides the 48 Cities assigned for their Habitation: which last, with the several Territories appertaining to them, extending every way for the space of two thousand *Cubits*, seem to have been a greater proportion of it self, than any of the other *Tribes* (with reference to the small number of *Levites*) had in their possessions. Then for the *Tithes*, there was not only a full *tenth* set out of all kinds of increase; but such an imposition laid upon all sorts of grain, as came to more than a sixth part of the Crop it self. For first, out of six thousand bushels (and so accordingly in all after that proportion) a sixtieth part at least, (and that they termed the *Therumah* of the *evil eye*, or the *niggards* first fruits) was to be set forth as the *first fruits* of the threshing floor; which was an hundred in the total. Out of the residue being five thousand and nine hundred bushels; the *first tithe* paid unto the *Levites*, came to five hundred and ninety Bushels; and of the residue, being five thousand three hundred and thirty Bushels, five hundred thirty and one were paid for the *second tithe*, unto the *Priest*, which ministred in the *holy Temple*; yet so, that such as would decline the trouble of carrying it in kind unto *Hierusalem*, must pay the price thereof at the *Priests* own Estimate. Laying which several sums together, it appears demonstrably, that of six thousand Bushels (*& sic de cæteris*) there will accrew one thousand two hundred seventy and one Bushels to the *Priests* and *Levites*; and but four thousand seven hundred seventy and nine to the Lord or Tenant; which is not fully a sixth part, as was said before. Then had they the first born of mankind and all unclean beasts, redeemed at a certain rate; the *first fruits* of Wine, Oyl, and Wool; the *first fruits* of the dough, and of the firstlings of clean Beasts (their blood being sprinkled on the *Altar*, and the fat offered for a burnt offering, the *Flesh* remained unto the *Priest*. They had also the meat-offerings, the sin-offerings, the trespass-offerings, the shake offerings, the heave-offerings, and the Shew-bread: as also of all *Eucharistical* Sacrifices the breast and the shoulder; of others the shoulder; the two cheeks, and the maw; and of the whole burnt-offering they received the Skin, besides the free gifts of the people, appearing thrice yearly before the Lord: and all this brought in unto them without charge or trouble. Which makes it evident, that they were far more liberally provided for, than the rest of the *Tribes*, though they had no whole Country alotted to them, as the others had. And so much for such parts of the Land of *Palestine* as were possessed in part, or wholly by the Sons of *Jacob*; proceed we now to the Inheritance of the Sons of *Esau*.

6 IDUMÆA.

IDUMÆA, or the Land of EDOM, is bounded on the East and South, with *Arabia Petræa*; on the North with *Judæa*; on the West, with the *Mediterranean* Sea. So called from the *Edomites*, or Children of *Esau*, whose name is *Edom*, *Gen.* 36. 1. the Father of the *Edomites*, *ver.* 43. by whom it was planted and possessed; or as others say, from the *Idumæi*, a people of *Arabia*; who in a mutiny being forced for to forsake their Country, came and setled here. The first the more certain of the two, and therefore I adhere to that.

The Country towards the Sea side very fat and fruitful; but where it bendeth towards *Arabia*, exceeding mountainous and barren. Heretofore it afforded *Balm*, not now: but still it hath some store of *Palmtrees*, for which much celebrated by some Writers of ancient times as *Arbusto* Palmarum *dives Idume*, in the Poet *Lucan*. Sandy, and full of vast desarts, for which, and for the want of water, it is thought unconquerable. For though they have many wells there for the use of the Natives, yet to them only are they known, and not obvious at all to the eyes of strangers, no not upon the strictest search that can be imagined. But all places are not so well furnished, as appeareth by the sad condition which the Kings of *Judah*, *Israel*, and *Edom* were fallen into, when they led their Armies through the Desarts of this Country, against the *Moabites*, finding herein no water for man or beast: insomuch that the King of *Israel* said, *Alas, that the Lord hath called these three Kings together, to deliver them into the hand of Moab*, 2 *Kings* 3. 10. Not otherwise delivered out of this perplexity, but by a miracle from Heaven: God sending them the next day an abundance of water, without wind or rain, or any other visible means, *ver.* 17. 20.

The people anciently rude and barbarous; greedy of change in government, easily stirred to insurrections, and in love with tumults. Professed enemies to the *Jews*, till conquered by them: and when compelled by *Hyrcanus* to the *Jewish* Religion, they were at the best but false friends; and in the siege of *Hierusalem* by *Titus*, did them more mischief than the *Romans*. At this time subject to the *Turk*, and differ not much in life and custom from the wild *Arabians*.

Rivers of note there can be none, where so little waters. One Lake it hath, though possibly it had been better, had they been without it, now small, and every day growing less; the passage being long since barred, which it had to the Sea. Anciently, though then narrow, it was two hundred furlongs, or five and twenty miles long: bordered on each side by hills of sand, which born by the winds into the water did so thicken the same, that it was not easie to be discerned from the dry Land; insomuch as whole Armies have been swallowed up in it. Thence called *Barathrum* by the *Latines*; The true name of it formerly was the Lake of *Syrbon*. By the *Italians* it is now called *Lago di Teveso*, by the Natives *Bayrema*; the utmost bound of *Palestine*, where it joyneth on *Ægypt*.

The chief Mountains of it, are, 1 Mount *Seir*, the first habitation of *Esau*, after he left his dwelling in the Land of *Canaan*, to make room for *Jacob*, as is said *Gen.* 36. 7, 8. Not called so, unless by *Anticipation* (a thing not unusual in the Scriptures) till the coming of *Esau* thither; the word *Seir* signifying *hairy*, or *brisled*, such as *Esau* is described to be, *Gen.* 27. 11. To this St. *Hierom* doth accord, deriving the name of *Seir* from *Esau*, *Sumpta ab Autore nomine*. His reason is, *Seir quippe interpretatur hispidus & pilosus qualis Esau fuit*. So he in his Comment on *Isaiah*, *Chap.* 21. For the same cause, is the whole Country of *Edom*, sometimes called Mount *Seir* in Scripture, by the name of this Mountain, as 2 *Chron.* 20 10. 23. The second hill of note is that called *Cassius*, not far from the Lake of *Syrbon*, now nothing but an huge heap of sand; formerly famous for a temple of *Jupiter*, and the Sepulchre of *Pompey* the Great; Who being basely murdered here (after his defeat near *Pharsalia* by *Julius Cæsar*) by the command of *Ptolomy* the younger, King of *Ægypt*, unto whom he fled (or rather by the command of *Achillus* who then governed his Counsels) by the piety of a private Souldier was here interred in an obscure and homely, but honest Sepulchre. The Sepulchre afterwards re-edified, and made more sutable to the man, by the Emperour *Adrian*. The piety of the Souldier not a whit the less for the cost of the Emperour; in whose name *Lucan* had bestowed this *Epitaph*, on that first Monument.

Hic situs Est Magnus, *placet hoc, Fortuna Sepulchrum*
Dicere Pompeii; *quo condi maluit illum,*
Quam terra caruisse Socer.

Which may be *Englished* to this purpose.

Here *Magnus* lies, Such, Fortune, is thy doom
That this vile earth should be great *Pompey's* Tomb.
In which even *Cæsar's* self would rather have
His Son-in-Law interr'd, than want a Grave.

Places of most consideration in it, 1 *Dinhabath*, the City of *Bela*, the first King of *Edom*. 2 *Anith*, the City of *Hadad*. And 3 *Pan*, the City of *Hadar*, two others of the Kings hereof: which three are mentioned *Gen.* 36. 32, 35, 39, 4 *Berzamna*, placed here by *Ptolomy*, supposed to be the same with *Beersheba* in the tribe of *Simeon* the utmost border Southwards of the Land of *Canaan*, of which more there. 5 *Caparorsa*. 6 *Gammararis*. And 7 *Elasa*, all of them mentioned by *Ptolomy*; which sheweth them to be of some consideration in those times, though now forgotten with the former. 8 *Anthedon*, on the South side of the River *Besor*, opposite to *Gaza* in the tribe of *Simeon*, which is situate on the Northern bank. A Port Town, once of good repute, till defaced by *Alexander* King of the *Jews*, re-edified afterwards by *Herod* the Great, and named *Agrippias*, in honour of *Agrippa* the Favourite and Son-in-law to *Augustus Cæsar*. 9 *Rossa* a Fort of consequence, not far from *Massada*, before mentioned, when we were in *Judæa*; taken by *Herod* in his way to relieve that Castle. 10 *Raphia*, memorable for the great defeat which *Ptolomy Philopater* there gave unto *Antiochus* sirnamed *Magnus*. 11 *Rhinocurura*, so called from a mishap which befel the Inhabitants hereof, by mangling and defacing their noses. By *Pliny* and *Strabo* called *Rhinocurula*; and at this time *Pharamica*. Memorable for an old but ill-grounded *tradition*, that here the World was divided by Lots, betwixt the Posterity of *Noah*: and so considerable in the Wars of the *Holy Land*, that it was strongly fortified by *Baldwin* the first, to obstruct the passage of such Forces as usually came out of *Ægypt*, to aid the *Turks*. 12 *Ostracine*, now *Stagioni*, on the Sea-side beneath *Anthedon*, and that part of the country which from Mount *Casius* hath the name of *Casiotis*, ascribed by *Ptolomy* to *Ægypt*: but being they are both on the North of the Lake of *Syrbon*, more properly belonging to *Palestina*. But most of these being now buried in their ruins, there are left none but a few Castles and scattered Villages: the Villages inhabited for the most part by *Arabians*, the Castles Garrisoned by *Turks*. The chief of which lying on the Sea, in the Road to *Ægypt*, are 13 *Hamones*, a small Castle not far from *Gaza*, used chiefly for a *Toll-booth*, to receive custom of such Merchants as pass that way. 14 *Harisa*, a small Castle also, serving specially for the same

ſame uſe; but ſtronger, and of more importance, becauſe near the Sea, from which not above two miles diſtant; and for that cauſe Garriſoned with an hundred Souldiers: Environed with a few Houſes, by reaſon of the commodity of the water, which is ſweet and wholeſom; elſe little better than a Deſart. 15 *Catio*, another Caſtle or rather *Toll-booth*, with a Garriſon of about ſixty Souldiers in it, ſeated in a place ſo deſart and unfruitful, that nothing vegetable groweth in it, but a few ſtarved *Palm-trees*. The water which they have there, ſo bad and brackiſh, though eſteem'd good enough for the Common-Souldiers; that all which the Captain drinketh is brought from 16 *Tina*, a Town upon the Sea-ſhore, about twelve miles diſtant, and the laſt upon this Coaſt towards *Ægypt*.

The firſt Inhabitants of this Country were the *Horites*, the *Horites which dwelt in Mount Seir*, as we read in *Geneſis* 14. 6. that is to ſay, which dwelt in that hilly Country which afterwards was called Mount *Seir*. But whether it was ſo called from *Eſau*'s dwelling here, as is ſaid before, or from *Seir* the *Horite*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 20. as perhaps may probably be ſuppoſed, need not now come into diſpute. Broken by *Chedorlaomer*, and his Aſſociates, they were the more eaſily ſubdued by *Eſau*. Who leaving the land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, *Gen.* 6. 7, 8. becauſe thoſe parts in which they dwelt did not afford them room enough for their ſeveral Cattel, came into this Country; and having *deſtroyed the* Horites *from before them*, ſucceeded in their Habitations, *and dwelt there in their ſtead even unto this day*, *Deut.* 2. 22. 'Tis true, we find *Eſau* in *Mount Seir*, before this remove: for it is ſaid, that *Jacob* at his firſt coming out of *Meſopotamia*, ſent Meſſengers before him to *Eſau* his Brother, unto the *Land of Seir*, the *Country of Edom*, *Gen.* 32. 3. And hence a Queſtion hath been moved, How *Eſau* dwelling there before *Jacobs* coming, can be ſaid to remove thither to make room for him. To this Sir *Walter Raleigh* and ſome others anſwer, That at the time when *Jacob* came out of *Padan-Aram*, *Eſau* dwelt in thoſe parts of the Mountains which lye on the Eaſt of *Jordan*, called afterwards *Galaad* and *Mount Hermon*, by which *Jacob* muſt needs paſs in his way to *Canaan*; which Mountains then were called by the name of *Seir*, and from thence *Syrion* by the *Zidonians*, or *Phœnicians* in the Ages following: from whence driven by the *Amorites*, at ſuch time as they vanquiſhed thoſe of *Moab* and *Ammon*, they were forced to ſeat themſelves on the South of *Canaan*, where *Moſes* found them. But with this I am by no means ſatisfied. For beſides that it maketh *Eſau* to carry a *Mount Seir* with him whitherſoever he went; it doth expreſly differ from the plain words of Scripture, both in occaſion, and the time of his ſetling there: the Victories which the *Amorites* had over the *Ammonites* and *Moabites*, being then freſh and newly gotten, when *Moſes* with the Children of *Iſrael* came into theſe parts; which was at the leaſt 200 years after *Eſau* did withdraw himſelf, to the Land of *Edom*. And therefore I ſhould rather think, that *Eſau* finding himſelf diſtaſted by his Father and Mother, in regard of his *Canaanitiſh* Marriages, and the hatred which he bare to *Jacob*, departed from thence, and ſojourned in the South parts amongſt the *Horites* of *Mount Seir*; That thither *Jacob* ſent his Meſſengers, to make Peace between them; That the Reconciliation being made, *Eſau* returned unto the place where before he ſojourned; and having brought thence his Children, Cattel, and the reſt of his Subſtance, fixed himſelf again near the Houſe of his *Fathers*: and finally, That on *Iſaac*'s death, finding his Family increaſed, his Heards and Flocks augmented, and the reſt of his Subſtance alſo doubled by the da th of his Father, he thought it fit alſo to enlarge his dwelling, and ſo removed once more to *Edom*. A thing not needful to be done, had he dwelt in *Galaad*, *Hermon*, or any other part of that Mountainous Tract, conſidering the great diſtance betwixt thoſe Mountains and the City of *Hebron*, in which *Iſaac* dwelt; nigh to which *Jacob* alſo had ſet up his dwelling.

But on what ground ſoever *Eſau* left the poſſeſſion of the Land of *Canaan* to his Brother *Jacob*, certain it is, he did it not without ſome ſtrong impulſions from the Spirit of God, by whom the poſſeſſion of that Land was deſigned for *Jacob*, to whom the Bleſſing and the Birth-right had been both preferred. And though *Eſau* over-ruled by Almighty God, ſeemed to have forgotten all Diſpleaſure againſt his Brother; yet the quarrel begun by them in the womb of *Rebecca*, brake out more violently in the time of their Poſterity. Inſomuch that *Moſes* could by no means obtain a paſſage through *Edom* into the *Promiſed Land*, though he ſought it by fair addreſſes, and preſſed it by all thoſe motives and inducements, which a wiſe and an underſtanding man could have ſet before them. For though the King of *Edom* then being, ſeemed to pretend nothing but the ſafety of himſelf and his People; both which he might have hazarded (in all humane reaſon) by opening the cloſures of his Mountains, and letting in a Nation mightier than his own: yet it is poſſible there might be as much of ſtomach, as worldly Policy; and that as well the buying of the Birth-right for ſo ſleight a trifle, as the getting of the Bleſſing by ſuch fraudulent means, might not be forgotten. For he not only denied them paſſage, and ſent word expreſly they ſhould not go thorow; but came againſt them with much people and a ſtrong band, as is ſaid *Numb.* 20. 20. But the *Edomites* could not for all this prevent their Deſtiny, or make the Word of God to be ineffectual; by which it had been ſignified, when they were yet in their Mothers womb, that the *elder ſhould ſerve the younger*. Nor verified in *Eſau*'s perſon; for *Jacob* called him his *Lord Eſau*, profeſſed himſelf to be his Servant, and willingly ſubmitted to his Superiority, but in the Iſſues of them both: then ſpecially when *David* had ſubdued the *Edomites*, and made them Homagers and Vaſſals to the Crown of *Judah*, 2 Sam. 8. 14. Nor is leſs intimated in thoſe words of the 60 *Pſalm*, where it is ſaid, *Over Edom will I caſt my ſhooe*; it being a cuſtom of old times to fling their ſhooes upon a Country conquered, or deſigned for Conqueſt, *Projectio calceamenti ſuper Regionem aliquam, denotat ſubjicere*, as my Author hath it. And in alluſion unto this, there is a Story in the Chronicles of the Kings of *Man*, how *Magnus* King of the *Iſles* ſent his Embaſſadours to *Murchard* a *King* in *Ireland*, commanding him on the next *Chriſtmas* day, to carry openly the Shoos of King *Magnus* upon his ſhoulders; in teſtimony, ſaith the Story, that he was his Vaſſal. The caſting of the Shooe on a Conquered Country, or the treading of it under feet, another Ceremony of this nature, mentioned *Deut.* 33. 29. do come both to one, and ſignifie that Vaſſalage or bondage, which ſuch a captivated Country was reduced unto.

But on the other ſide, there was another part of the Heavenly *Oracle*, which made for *Edom*. *Iſaac* had ſignified to *Eſau*, that though the Bleſſing given to *Jacob* could not be revoked, and that he muſt content himſelf with being a ſervant to his Brother for a certain ſeaſon: yet there ſhould one day come a time, in which he ſhould not only break that yoak from off his neck, but obtain the Dominion over him, *Gen.* 27. 40. The firſt part verified, when the *Edomites* revolted from the Kings of *Judah*, in the time of *Joram*, or *Jehoram*, the Son of *Jeho-*

Jehoſaphat: and in ſtead of a *Vice-Roy* ſent unto them from the Court of *Hieruſalem*, ſet up a King of their own Nation; never returning after that to the Houſe of *David*. For though *Joram* made War preſently upon them, and got the Victory; yet he did not proſecute it unto any effect, nor beat them out of any of their ſtrong Holds, nor reduce any of their Cities unto his obedience: as if he had got honor enough in the Eye of the World, by being Maſter of the Field; or ſhewing his Abilities in command of a greater Army, than the *Edomites* could bring againſt him. The like errour was committed by *Amaziah*, who by a vaſt Army of 300000 fighting men, did no greater wonders than the killing of 10000, and the taking of as many *Edomites*; but neither left Garriſons in any of their defenſible places, nor reduced any part of their Country under his obedience. And for the latter part there of, it was as punctually fulfilled in the time of *Antipater* an *Idumæan*, *Herod* the *Aſcalonite* his Son, and their Succeſſors; who in the decrepit age of the Houſe of *Jacob*, became King of the *Jews*, and Lorded over them with inſolence and contempt enough.

Mean time to look upon the intermediate paſſage of their State and Story. It ſeemeth that at firſt they were governed by Dukes, each having the command of thoſe ſeveral Families, of which they were the Heads or Princes. But as Ambition and Power did prevail among them, the more potent having vanquiſhed or awed the reſt, took to himſelf the name of King: which by the names of their Fathers, and their ſeveral Cities in which they reigned, ſeem to have been choſen by Election; or otherwiſe to come in by ſtrong hand, as the Sword could carry it. The Names of which are thus ſet down in the Book of *Geneſis*.

The KINGS of *EDOM*.

1 *Bela* the Son of *Beor*.
2 *Jobab*, the Son of *Zerah*.
3 *Haſham*, of the Land of *Temani*.
4 *Hadad*, the Son of *Bedad*, who warred againſt the *Midianites*, and vanquiſhed them in the Fields of *Moab*, Gen. 36. 35.
5 *Samlah*, of *Maſrekah*.
6 *Saul*, of *Rehoboth*, by the River *Euphrates*.
7 *Baal-Hanan*, the Son of *Achbor*.
8 *Hadar*, the Son perhaps of *Baal-Hanan*, for I find no mention of his Father. After whoſe death, the Heads of the ſeveral Families reſumed the Government again; ruling over their own *Tribes*, without any one *Sovereign* or Supreme. And all theſe Kings they had, before there reigned any King in *Iſrael*, *Gen.* 36. 31. that is to ſay, before any form of *Supreme* Government was eſtabliſhed amongſt them in the Perſon of *Moſes*, called by the name of a King in the Book of *Deuteronomy*, ch. 35. v. 5. But this diſtracted Government did not long continue, the *Edomites* being under a King again, at ſuch a time as the Children of *Iſrael* came out of *Ægypt:* for it was unto the King of *Edom* that *Moſes* ſent Meſſengers from *Kadeſh*, to deſire a paſſage thorow his Country. Which being denied, and the *Edomites* in Arms to defend their Paſſes, *Moſes* forbore to force his way, though the neareſt for him: partly becauſe he had no mind to ſpend thoſe Forces in fighting with Hills and Deſarts, which were deſigned for the conqueſt of another Country; but principally, becauſe God commanded him not to meddle with them, or to take ſo much as a foot of their Country from them, *Deut.* 2. 5. But *David*, upon whom lay no ſuch *obligation*, having vanquiſhed the *Syrians*, and other Nations round about him, followed his fortunes unto *Edom*, whom he overcame, and put Garriſons into all their Cities, and the *Edomites became his Servants*. Governed from thenceforth by a Deputy or *Vice-Roy* (as is ſaid before) till the time of *Joram* the Son of *Jehoſaphat* King of *Judah*; in whoſe Reign they revolted, as before was ſaid. Never regained to that Crown, and but twice endeavoured; that ſo the Word of God might be all in all. Only the *Simeonites* in the Reign of *Hezekiah*, wanting Paſture for their Cattel, and room for themſelves, ſeized on the parts that lay neareſt to them, deſtroyed the Inhabitants thereof, and dwelt in their Habitations, becauſe there was paſture for their Flocks, 1 *Chron.* 4. 39. Provoked wherewith, and with the natural *Antipathy* which was between them, no People were more miſchievouſly bent againſt *Judah*, than theſe *Edomites* were: no men ſo forward of themſelves, to aſſiſt *Nebuchadonezer* againſt *Hieruſalem*; none that ſo vehemently cried *Down with it, down unto the ground*; none half ſo ready to ſet fire on the *Holy Temple*. But they got little by this Service to the *Babylonians*, their own thraldom following cloſe upon that of *Judah*, with whom made fellow-Subjects to the *Chaldæans*; as afterwards to the *Perſians*, and Kings of *Syria* of the Race of *Seleucus*. In the declining of that Houſe, ſubdued by *Hyrcanus* the Son of *Simon*, the fourth of the *Maccabæan* Princes; by whom they were compelled to be circumciſed, and to receive the Law of *Moſes:* not only reckoned after that, as a Province of the *Jewiſh* Kingdom, but as natural *Jews*. Which notwithſtanding, and that the ſetting of that Crown on the Head of *Herod* and his Houſe, being originally *Idumæans*, might in all reaſon have extinguiſhed their inveterate malice: yet was their hatred of that Nation as great as ever. Forgetting therefore how they had been rewarded by the *Babylonians*, they would needs aid the *Romans* againſt them alſo: putting themſelves into *Hieruſalem*, when beſieged by *Titus*, only of purpoſe to betray it; joyning with the *ſeditious* there, doing more miſchief in the City than the Enemy had done without: and finally, ſetting fire to the *Second Temple*, as they had done unto the *firſt*. Subjected afterwards by the *Romans*, they followed the ſame fortune with the reſt of *Paleſtine*.

Having thus gone thorow with the ſtory of thoſe neighbouring Nations which encompaſſed *Canaan*, it will be ſeaſonable to look on the Affairs of the *Canaanites* firſt, and after on the Houſe of *Jacob*, who poſſeſſed their Country. Firſt for the *Canaanites*, they deſcended from *Canaan* the Son of *Cham*, who with his eleven Sons were here ſettled immediately after the Confuſion at *Babel*. Of thoſe twelve (taking in the Father) five planted in *Phœnicia*, and the Coaſts of *Syria*; that is to ſay, *Sidon*, *Harki*, *Arvadi*, *Semari*, and *Hamathi:* the other ſeven in thoſe parts which we now call *Paleſtine*, though not all of that; the *Edomites*, *Moabites*, *Midianites*, *Ammonites*, and *Ituræans*; being Occupants or Tenants with them. And of thoſe ſeven came thoſe ſeven Nations, which by Gods appointment were totally to be rooted out, *viz.* the *Canaanites*, the *Amorites*, the *Hittites*, the *Jebuſites*, the *Hivites*, the *Gergeſhites*, and the *Perizzites*. But from which of the Sons of *Canaan* theſe laſt deſcended, is not yet agreed on; unleſs perhaps they were deſcended of the *Sinites* (not otherwiſe reckoned in this Muſter) and got the name of *Perizzites* on ſome new occaſion. Governed at firſt by the *Chiefeſt* of their ſeveral Families, with the Names of Kings; the number of which increaſed, as their Families were ſubdivided into ſmaller Branches: inſomuch as *Joſhuah* found 31 Kings of the *Canaanites* only, beſides what might deſcend from thoſe who were ſettled in *Phœnicia*, and the Borders

ders of *Syria*. The moſt potent of theſe Nations were the *Amorites*, the *Jebuſites*, and the *Canaanites* properly ſo called. Of which the *Amorites* had not only enlarged their Borders beyond *Jordan*, but in the Reigns of *Og* and *Sihon*, ruling at the ſame time in their ſeveral parts, had thruſt the *Ituræans*, *Ammonites*, and *Moabites*, out of moſt of their Countries; and ſo reſtored the ſame again to the Race of the *Emmims* and *Zanzummims* (of which Line *Og* and the Kings of *Baſan* were) who had been diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the Sons of *Lot*. Theſe vanquiſhed in the time of *Moſes*, and their Habitations aſſigned over to the Tribes of *Reuben*, *Gad*, and the one half Tribe of *Manaſſes*. The *Canaanites* properly ſo called, as they were the firſt which fought with the Houſe of *Jacob*; ſo they were the laſt of all theſe People that contended with them. The firſt fought with them under the Conduct of *Arad* their King, who thinking it more ſafe and prudent to encounter the Enemy in another mans Country, than to expect them in his own, gave Battel unto *Moſes* in the *Deſarts* of *Moab*; and having cut off ſome of the outparts of his Army, and taken a few Priſoners, he went home again. But *Jabin*, under whom they make their ſecond on-ſet, went to work more reſolutely; and taking a time when the Iniquities of that People cried aloud for vengeance, ſo prevailed againſt them, that he tyrannized over them for the ſpace of twenty years. After which time, his Army being diſcomfited by *Barak*, in the time of *Debora*, *Siſera*, his great Captain, ſlain by *Jael* the Wife of *Heber* the *Kenite*, and moſt of his Cities taken and poſſeſſed by the *Iſraelites*, he periſhed himſelf in the cloſe of that War; for it is ſaid, That they prevailed againſt *Jabin the King of* Canaan, *till they had deſtroyed him*, Judg. 4. 24. As for the *Jebuſites*, they were grown ſo formidable (at the time of the coming of the *Hebrews*) to the reſt of their Neighbours, that their King *Adonibezek* bragged, that he had cut off the Thumbs and great Toes of 70 Kings, and made them eat the crums which fell under his Table. But being vanquiſhed by *Judah*, he was ſerved in the ſame kind himſelf by *Judah* and *Simeon*, and carried to *Hieruſalem*, where he died: the whole Country of the *Jebuſites*, and the City of *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, the Fortreſs of *Mount Zion* excepted only, being made a prey unto the Victor. And though the *Jebuſites* held that Fortreſs till the time of *David*; yet being they were only on the defenſive ſide, and made no open War againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, I reckon the *Canaanites* as the laſt which did contend with them for the chief Command.

The *Canaanites* thus conquered, and for the moſt part worn out of the Country, the *Iſraelites* ſucceeded in their Poſſeſſions; according to the promiſe of God made to *Abraham*, renewed to *Iſaac*, and confirmed to *Jacob*. Governed after the death of *Moſes* and *Joſhuah*, by the *Congregation of the Elders*, as appears by many paſſages in the Book of *Judges*; the *Judges* (as the Scripture calleth them) not being the *ordinary* Magiſtrates, but raiſed up *occaſionally* by God for ſome ſpecial purpoſe, according to the exigence of their Affairs; Carrying in this a likeneſs unto the *Dictators* in the State of *Rome*, So that the Government at the firſt was an *Ariſtocracy*; though, to ſay truth, it rather was a *Theocracy*, as the Fathers call it; that is to ſay, a Government wherein G O D preſided more immediately, than in other Nations. And thereupon when the the People cried out to *Samuel* to have a King, God ſaid unto him, *Hearken unto the voice of the people, for they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I ſhould not reign over them*, 1 *Sam.* 8. 7. God was their King, and he had mightily reigned over them ſince they came out of *Ægypt*; but they deſired to have *a King like other Nations*, to go in and out before them, and to fight their Battels; a King whom they might ſee with their bodily eyes, and converſe with him in ſuch manner as the People did, which dwelt round about them. And ſo came in the *Monarchy* or Kingly Government, begun in *Saul*, but confirmed in *David*; the firſt a *Benjamite*, the ſecond of the Tribe of *Judah*; of which *Jacob* had foretold at the time of his death, that the Kingdom of his People ſhould be veſted in it. But there were only three in all, reckoning *Saul* for one, who had Dominion over the whole Houſe of *Iſrael*; the Kingdom after *Solomon*'s death, being rent in twain: ten of the twelve *Tribes* revolting unto *Jeroboam* the Son of *Nebat*; and only *Benjamin* and *Judah*, and ſo much of the Tribes of *Dan* and *Simeon* as lay intermingled with and in the Tribe of *Judah*, remaining firm to *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*, who miſguided by ſome *evil Counſellors* which were about him, had given occaſion to the breach. A breach that could never be ſoldered or made up again, notwithſtanding the fair opportunities which were after offered, of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael* (for ſo the two Kingdoms were diſtinguiſhed in the time of *Joas*; and rejoyning *Iſrael* to *Judah*, in the time of *Aſa*. The opportunity offered to *Aſa* King of *Judah*, for regaining the revolted Tribes, was the confuſions which in his time had fallen out amongſt them, by ſeveral Factions; each challenging the priviledge of making a King unto it ſelf: *Nadab* the Son of *Jeroboam* being ſlain by *Baaſha*, *Ela* the Son of *Baaſha* murdered by *Zimri*, *Zimri* depoſed by *Omri* the Father of *Ahab*, and *Tibni* a Competitor againſt *Omri* alſo. During which time, as the People muſt needs ſuffer many great Oppreſſions, which might make them think of their Allegiance to the Houſe of *David*: ſo could not *Aſa* have wanted many fair advantages (had he made his beſt uſe of them) of working on that divided Kingdom, and reducing it back unto this Houſe. But there were two Reaſons which prevailed more againſt this re-union, than any that could be preſented to invite them to it. Firſt, the imperiouſneſs and arbitrary Government of the Kings of *Judah*, putting to death, without formality of Law, thoſe that had diſpleaſed them, as in the caſe of *Shimei*, *Joab*, and *Adonijah*, in the days of *Solomon*: and raiſing on the Subject what Sums they pleaſed, though more for oſtentation of their own magnificence, than the neceſſities of the State. Of which Exactions *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon* was ſo far from promiſing a releaſe, or ſome mitigation at leaſt, that he threatened to make them more than double what they had been formerly: And how knew they, but that *Aſa*, and all ſuch as deſcended from him, might be of the ſame temper alſo, and act according to thoſe Principles which their Fathers left them. Whereas the Kings of *Iſrael* holding by no other Title than the Love of their People, and the moderate and regular form of their Government over them, had put their mouths into ſuch a taſte of the ſweets of Liberty, and made them ſo much Maſters of their own both Lives and Fortunes, that *Naboth* durſt deny his Vineyard to *Ahab*, though offering full compenſation for it; and *Ahab* durſt not queſtion the life of *Naboth*, but by ſuborning Witneſſes to accuſe him of Blaſphemy. So that the preſent confuſions under which they ſuffered, by the change and violent death of ſo many Kings one after another, being only temporary, and not likely to continue long, were no perſwaſions unto them to accept of *Aſa*, and much leſs to offer themſelves unto him; who conceiv'd all adverſity to be far more tolerable, than the weighty Scepter of that Houſe. And there was ſomething alſo of preceding profit, which ſwayed the

buſineſs

buſineſs. The people were obliged by the Law of *Moſes* to make three chargeable Journeys yearly to *Hieruſalem*, to worſhip there in the Holy Temple; and to pay a double Tenth yearly out of their Eſtates (beſide Offerings and other Caſualties) to the *Prieſts* and *Levites*. *Jeroboam* out of an ungodly policy, fearing theſe frequent Journeys unto *Hieruſalem* might be an occaſion of reducing them to the Houſe of *David*, releaſed them of that charge and trouble, by ſetting up a new form of Worſhip; erecting golden Calves for them in *Dan* and *Bethel*; and leaving every man unto the liberty of his own opinion, ſo it ended not to the Eſtabliſhment of the *old Religion*. And on the other ſide, the *Levites* which dwelt amongſt them, and received their *Tithes*, not willing to conform to theſe new impieties, and finding that their Miniſtry was no longer uſeful, withdrew themſelves into the Kingdom of *Judah*, and left the ancient places of their Habitations: by means whereof, the people were releaſed of thoſe payments alſo. If they returned again to their old obedience, and accepted *Aſa* for their King, they muſt return again alſo to their old Religion; the golden Calves of their own Imaginations and Inventions, muſt no more be worſhipped: and (which no doubt prevailed moſt on the common people, who like that Religion beſt which coſts them nothing) the ancient payments to the *Prieſts* and *Levites* muſt come up again. Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to ſuffer yet a little longer, to pleaſe themſelves in expectation of more ſetled times: and ſo no falling off to *Aſa*, though as moderate and religious a Prince as they could have wiſhed for, had they had power of faſhioning a King to their own deſires. Now as this opportunity of rejoyning *Iſrael* unto *Judah*, proved unſucceſsful unto *Aſa*; ſo did the like of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*, prove as unprofitable unto *Joas* the Son of *Jehoaaz*, and Grand-child of *Jehu* King of *Iſrael*, who being provoked by *Amaziah* King of *Judah*, made War upon him; and not only diſcomfited him without Battel, and took him Priſoner without blows, but led him captive to the very Walls of *Hieruſalem*; and by his Authority, got the Gates thereof to be opened to him. But not contented with this Honour (greater than ever had befallen to the Kings of *Iſrael*) he cauſed 400 Cubits of the Wall to be broken down; through which breach he entred triumphantly in his Chariot, carrying the unhappy Prince before him: and being entred, ſacked both the Royal Palace and the Holy Temple. This was the opportunity which was given to *Joas*, of uniting *Judah* unto *Iſrael*; and this the loſs of it. For the People, otherwiſe like enough to have accepted him for their King, as a Prince of whoſe noble acts they had heard much ſpeech, were ſo exaſperated by theſe raſh and unſeaſonable outrages, that they looked upon him as a *Sacrilegious Church-Robber*, whom the *Holy Altars* were not ſafe from; and as a covetous and ungoverned Tyrant, not able to concoct the fulneſs of his own proſperities. If he were thus unſatiable in his covetouſneſs, and inſupportable in his pride, when he was a *Candidate* for their Kingdom; when in all common prudence he would have ſought their love, and inſinuated into their good opinions, by eaſing them of former Taxes, and ſhewing them fair hopes of his moderate Government: what muſt they look for when their Towns were filled with Garriſons, *Hieruſalem* ſtuffed with armed Troops, and all the Princes of the Houſe of *David*, from whom they might expect Redemption from cruel Bondage, deſtroyed or baniſhed, or otherwiſe made unable to afford them ſuccours? Rather than ſo, they were reſolved to riſe as one man againſt him, and let him ſee, that neither their Army was ſo ſcattered, nor themſelves ſo cowed, but that they durſt adventure it to a further tryal. The fear of which made *Joas* ſenſible of the loſs of his opportunity: and ſo content with Hoſtages for his ſafe retreat, he returned home again without other benefit of his Victory than the Spoil and Honour. And that this poſſibly might be the motive of his going back, without putting the ſucceſs of the Affair to a further hazard, may be made probable by the like occurrence in the Story of *Guicciardine*, which in brief is this. *Peter de Medicis* had very weakly opened the Gates of *Florence* to *Charles* the Eighth, then in his paſſage towards *Naples*. *Charles* entreth it *triumphantly* as a conquered City, armed in compleat manner, and his Lance on his Thigh; his whole Army with him. Many inſolencies being committed by the *French*, the Citizens prepare to fight in defence of their Liberties. *Charles* willing to go forwards on his March towards *Naples*, propounds Conditions in writing: but ſo intolerable, that *Peter Capponi*, one of the chief Citizens, catching the Papers out of the King's Secretaries hands, and tearing them before his face, *Do you* (ſaith he) *ſound your Trumpets, we will ring our Bells, and ſee what will follow*. Which ſtout and peremptory dealing did ſo daunt the *French*, that they condeſcended upon very eaſie terms to abandon the City, and reſtore all the places appertaining unto their Eſtate, which were then in his power. The like conſideration probably might prevail with *Joas*, as did then with *Charles*; and prompt him not to fight with an inraged Multitude in the Streets of a City, where he could make no uſe of his Horſe; and where he might be more galled with Women and Children, throwing Stones or Darts out of their Windows, and from the tops of their Houſes; than with an armed Enemy in the open Field. Nor wanted *Joas* an example of this kind, in the times before him; even that of *Abimelech*, in the Book of *Judges*: who having taken the Town of *Thebet*, and forced all the Men and Women into the *Caſtle*, was ſlain there by a piece of a Mill-ſtone, thrown at his head from one of the Turrets of it by the hands of a Woman.

To proceed further in the Story of theſe ſeveral Kings, or recapitulate the ſum of their principal Actions (as in other places we have done) may be thought unneceſſary: the Scripture being in the hands of all ſorts of Perſons, in which their Actions and Succeſſions are at large contained. So that I only ſhall ſubjoyn their Names, with the time of their Reigns, and the year of the World in which they did begin their Empire: leaving the reſt unto induſtry and ſearch of the Chriſtian Reader, of whoſe acquaintance with the Scriptures I dare make no queſtion. This only I premiſe as concerning the *Judges*, That the time of their continuance in that Authority, is not to be meaſured from the time of their coming to it, till the entrance of the next Succeſſor, as in that of the Kings: theſe being occaſionally raiſed by Almighty God, for ſome preſent Service, and no ſtanding or eſtabliſhed *Magiſtrates*; except *Moſes* and *Joſhuah* only, who held the Government during life, and managed it as abſolute Princes.

The Judges and Captains of the *HEBREWS*.

A.	*M.*	
2454	1	*Moſes*, a *Levite*, the Law-giver of the *Hebrews*, brought by him out of the Land of *Ægypt*. 40.
2494	2	*Joſhua*, an *Ephramite*, who ſetled them in the Land of *Canaan*. 33.
2526	3	*Othniel*, of *Judah*, by whom they were delivered from the *Meſopotamians*.

2530

2530 4 *Ehud*, a *Benjamite*, who reſcued them from the hand of *Eglon* King of *Moab*.
2610 5 *Deborah* the Propheteſs, and *Barack* the *Naphthalite*, who diſcomfited the Hoſt of *Jabin* King of the *Canaanites*.
2650 6 *Gideon*, a *Manaſſite*, who ranſomed them from the power of the *Midianites*. 40.
2690 7 *Abimelech*, the baſe Son of *Gideon*. 3.
2693 8 *Tola*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*. 23.
2716 9 *Jair*, a *Gileadite*. 22.
2760 10 *Jephtah*, a *Gileadite*, by whom the people were redeemed from the hand of the *Ammonites*.
2766 11 *Ibſan*, of *Bethlehem*. 7.
2773 12 *Elon*, a *Zebulonite*. 10.
2783 13 *Abdon*, an *Ephramite*. 8.
2790 14 *Samſon*, a *Danite*, the avenger of the People upon the *Philiſtims*.
2809 15 *Eli*, the High-Prieſt, in whoſe time the Ark was taken by the *Philiſtims*.
2849 16 *Samuel* the Prophet, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, in the latter end of whoſe Government, the People being weary of the Command of their former Rulers, deſired to have a King to go in and out before them, like other Nations.

The Kings of the *HEBREWS*.

A.M.

2878 1 *Saul*, of the Tribe of *Benjamin*, the firſt King of the *Hebrews*, and an unlucky one to begin withal. 17.
2890 2 *David*, the Son of *Jeſſe*, of the Tribe of *Judah*, the moſt Victorious King of the *Hebrew* Nation. 40.
2930 3 *Solomon*, the Son of *David*, renowned for buildlng of the Temple. The Kingdom afterward divided into

JUDAH and ISRAEL

The Kings of *JUDAH*.

A.M.

2971 1 *Rehoboam*, the Son of *Solomon*, the firſt King of *Judah*. 17.
2988 2 *Abijah*, the Son of *Rehoboam*. 3.
2991 3 *Aſa*, the Son of *Abijah*, diſcomfited the numerous Army of *Zerah*, the *Ethiopian* or *Arabian* King.
3031 4 *Jehoſaphat*, the Son of *Aſa*, a great Reformer of the State, both Eccleſiaſtical and Civil. 35.
3056 5 *Jeboram*, the Son of *Jehoſaphat*. 8.
3064 6 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Jeboram* by *Athalia* his Wife, the Siſter of *Ahab* King of *Iſrael*. 1.
3065 7 *Athaliah*, the Daughter of *Omri*, and Siſter of *Ahab*, having deſtroyed the Regal Race of the Houſe of *David*, uſurped the Kingdom for ſeven years.
3072 8 *Joaſh*, the only ſurviving Heir of the Houſe of *David*, reſtored by *Jehoiadah* the Prieſt, to the Throne of his Anceſtors. 40.
3112 9 *Amaziah*, the Son of *Joaſh*, vanquiſhed by *Joaſh* King of *Iſrael*, and a breach forced thorow the Walls of *Hieruſalem*. 29.
3141 10 *Azariah*, the Son of *Amaziah* called alſo *Uzziah*; ſmote with a *Leproſie* by the Lord. 52.
3192 11 *Jotham*, the Son of *Uzziah*, or *Azariah*. 16.
3208 12 *Ahaz*, the Son of *Jotham*, in whoſe time, and on whoſe occaſion, the Kingdom of *Damaſcus* was ruin'd by *Tiglath Pileſer* King of *Aſſyria*, and the Tribes on the farther ſide of *Jordan* led into Captivity. 16.
3224 13 *Hezekiah*, the Son of *Ahaz*, a Religious Prince; in whoſe time the Kingdom of the ten Tribes was deſtroyed by the *Aſſyrians*, and that of *Aſſyria* by the *Babylonians*.
3253 14 *Manaſſes*, the wicked Son of the good King *Hezekiah*, reſtored *Idolatry*, and put to death the Prophet *Iſaiah*, for oppoſing his irreligious courſes. 55.
3308 15 *Amon*, the Son of *Manaſſes*, and as bad as

The Kings of *ISRAEL*.

A.M.

2971 1 *Jeroboam*, the Son of *Nebat*, of the Tribe of *Ephraim*, the firſt King of *Iſrael*. 22.
2993 2 *Nadab*, the Son of *Jeroboam*. 2.
2995 3 *Baaſha*, of the Tribe of *Iſſachar*, having ſlain *Nadab*, reigned in his ſtead. 24.
3019 4 *Ela*, the Son of *Baaſha*. 2.
3021 5 *Zimri*, a King of 7 days only, the murderer of *Ela*, and his own Executioner.
6 *Omri*, the Captain of the Hoſt, who removed the Regal Seat from *Tirzah* to *Samaria*. 8.
3029 7 *Ahab*, the Son of *Omri*, and Husband of *Jezebel*, a *Phœnician* Princeſs.
3051 8 *Ahaziah*, the Son of *Ahab*. 2.
3053 9 *Jeboram*, the Brother of *Ahaziah*. 12.
3065 10 *Jehu*, the Captain of the Hoſt, vanquiſhed and ſlew *Jeboram*, reigning in his ſtead. 28.
3093 11 *Jehoahaz*, the Son of *Jehu*. 17.
3110 12 *Joaſh*, the Son of *Jehoahaz*. 16.
3126 13 *Jeroboam* II. the Son of *Joaſh*. 41.
3178 14 *Zachariah*, the Son of *Jeroboam* the Second, after an *Interregnum* of eleven years, ſucceeded in the Throne of his Father: ſlain at the end of ſix Months by
15 *Shallum*, who at the Months end was ſlain by
3178 16 *Menahem*, the Son of *Gadi*. 10.
3188 17 *Pekahiah*, the Son of *Menahem*, ſlain by
3190 18 *Pekah*, the Son of *Remaliah*; ſerved in the ſame kind, after a Reign of twenty years, by
3210 19 *Hoſeah*, the Son of *Ela*; in the fifth year of whoſe Reign, and the eighteenth year from the death of *Pekah*, *Salmanaſſer* King of *Aſſyria*, having by a Siege of three years carried the City of *Samaria*, deſtroyed the Kindgdom of *Iſrael*, and led the greateſt part of the People into Captivity.

he was slain by a Conspiracy of his Servants, when he had reigned but two years only.

3310 16 *Josiah*, the Son of *Amon*, a right godly King; unfortunately slain by *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*, at the Battel of *Megiddo*. 31.

3341 17 *Jehoahaz*, the Son of *Josiah*, a King of three months only; deposed and sent Prisoner by *Pharaoh Necho*, to *Riblah* in the Land of *Hamath*, since called *Antiochia*.

18 *Jehoiakim*, the Son of *Josiah*, and half Brother of *Jehoahaz*, advanced unto the Throne by *Necho*, who changed his name from *Eliakim*, by which he formerly was called, into that of *Jehoiakim*. 11.

3351 19 *Jehoiachim*, or *Jechoniah*, the Son of *Jehoiakim*, at the end of three Months led captive unto *Babylon*, with his Wives and Mother, and the Great Officers of the Realm, by *Nebuchadnezzar*.

20 *Zedekiah*, another of the Sons of *Josiah*, and Brother by the whole blood of *Jehoahaz*, made King by *Nebuchadnezzar* in the place of *Jehoiachin*, or *Jechoniah*; his name being changed from *Mattaniah*, by which called before. But rebelling against his Benefactor, contrary to the counsel of the Prophet *Jeremy*, he was taken Prisoner in the eleventh year of his Reign, *Hierusalem* destroyed, the Temple ruinated, and the People carried captive to the Land of *Babylon*, *A.M.* 3362. where they lived in exile 70 years. Which time expired, *Cyrus* the King of the *Persians* gave them leave to return to their Country, and to re-edifie their City and Temple. Which work being finished, by the encouragement of *Ezra*, *Nehemiah* and *Zorobabel*; and the Nation again setled in some part of their old Possessions, they were after governed by their *High-Priests*, and the *Council of their Elders*, which they called the *Sanhedrim*, the *High-Priest* bearing the chief stroke, and being looked on as a man of the greatest Power. And therefore I will here subjoyn the Catalogue of so many of them as governed the Affairs of this Country, from the Return of the People from the Captivity of *Babylon*, till the time of the *Maccabees*; who managed the Estate hereof both as *Priests* and *Princes*, till their Subjection by the *Romans*.

The High-Priests of the JEWS after the Captivity.

A.M.

3427 1 *Joshuah*, the *High-Priest* at the time of the Return, assistant to *Zorobabel* in rebuilding the Temple, which he lived not to finish; though continuing (as some say) in the Government 100 years. But I believe rather, that the Names of his Successors being lost, the whole time is ascribed to him.

3530 2 *Jehoiakim*, said to be the Son of *Joshuah*, in whose time, by the diligence of *Ezra* and *Nehemiah*, the Temple was finished, and the Worship of God restored.

3580 3 *Jonathan*, or *Johanan*. 30.

3610 4 *Jaddus*, who entertained *Alexander* the *Great* coming to *Hierusalem*, (of whom more anon) the Brother of that *Manasses*, for whose sake, and on whose occasion, the Temple on Mount *Gerizim* was built by *Sanballat*, with the leave of *Alexander*. 20.

3630 5 *Onias* succeded *Jaddus*, as *Jaddus* had done *Jonathan*; not by Birth (as formerly) but by Election of the People.

3651 6 *Simon*, sirnamed *Justus*. 9.

3660 7 *Eleazer*, the Brother of *Simon*. 32.

3692 8 *Menelaus*, the Brother of *Eleazer* and *Simon*.

3718 9 *Onias* II. 14.

3732 10 *Simon* II. 10.

3742 11 *Onias* III. the Son of *Simon* the 2d.

3787 12 *Jason*, the Brother of *Onias* the 3d.

3789 13 *Menelaus* II. the Brother of *Jason*, in whose time the Temple was prophaned by the *Syrians*, at the Command of *Antiochus Epiphanes*.

3794 14 *Alcimus*, under whose Government the *Maccabees* began to appear in defence of their Country and Religion, by whom succeeded in the Office of High-Priest, after his decease. Among these none of greater note than *Jaddus*, High-Priest at such time as *Alexander* the Great having conquered *Syria*, marched towards *Hierusalem*, and was encountred by this *Jaddus* in his Priestly Vestments; assuring him in the Name of the most High God, and making it demonstrable from the Propheste of *Daniel*, That he should prosper in his Enterprize against the *Persians*. An hope which *Alexander* did embrace with the greater confidence, because (as he affirmed to *Parmenio* his chief Commander) he had once at *Diu*, a City of *Macedon*, seen in a Dream or Vision such a Person as *Jaddus* was, so habited, and professing the same one God; by whom he was encouraged to pursue the Action which he had in hand, with assurance of Victory. And upon this the Jews were so much favoured by him, that he gave them leave to live according to their own Laws, and to enjoy with Freedom their own Religion. But it held only for his own time: For shortly after his decease, they were on both sides plagued by the Kings of *Ægypt* and *Syria*, who ransacked their Cities, slaughtered their People, made havock of their Goods, and compelled many of them both to eat of forbidden Meats and offer Sacrifice unto Idols. At the last God raised up *Mattathias* (descended from *Asmoneus* a Priest of the rank of *Joarib*) and his five Sons, to resist these Insolencies; who in the Reign of *Antiochus Epiphanes* King of *Syria*, undertook the Protection of the People, and gave unto the *Syrians* many notable overthrows; insomuch that the *Jews* made choice of *Judas* sirnamed *Maccabæus* (the eldest of the five Brethren) for their Prince or Governour.

The ASMONEAN Princes of JEWRY.

A.M.

3799 1 *Judas Maccabæus*, the third Son of *Mattathias* above-mentioned, one of the nine Worthies, vanquished three great and puissant Armies of the *Syrians*, conducted by *Apollonius*, *Gorgias*, and *Lysias*, men of great renown, being Commanders of the Forces of *Antiochus Epiphanes*, before mentioned.

3805 2 *Jonathan*, the Brother of *Judas*, vanquished the Forces of *Bacchides* and *Alcimus*, Captains of *Demetrius* King of *Syria*; and after many notable exploits and deeds of Arms, was treacherously murdered by *Tryphon* aspiring at that time to the *Syrian* Diadem.

3823 3 *Simon* the elder, brother of *Judas* and *Jonathan*, subdued the Cities of *Gaza*, *Joppe*, and *Jamnia*, and cleared *Judea* of the *Syrians*; perfidiously slain in the course of his fortune, by his Son-in-law *Ptolomy*. 8.

3831 4 *Johannes Hyrcanus*, the third Son of *Simon* his

two

two other Brethren being in the power of *Ptolomy*) ſucceeded in the Government. He deſtroyed the Temple on Mount *Garizim*, conquered *Alſamaria*, and ſubdued the *Idumæans*, compelling them to be *Circumciſed*; transferred the War into *Syria*; and dying, left the Soveraignty to his eldeſt Son *Ariſtobulus*.

The *ASMONÆAN* Kings of *JUDAH*.

3862 1 *Ariſtobulus*, cauſed himſelf to be Crowned, and was the firſt King of *Judah* after the *Babylonian* Captivity; he ſtarved his Mother, and ſlew *Antigonus* his Brother.

3863 2 *Alexander*, the Brother of *Ariſtobulus*, exceedingly inlarged the Kingdom of *Jury* by the conqueſt of *Ituræa*, and ſome parts of *Syria*; but was withal ſo great a Tyrant, that he cauſeleſly ſlew of his own Subjects fifty thouſand in battel; and commanded 800 of his principal enemies to be hanged before his face. He left behind him two ſons, *Hyrcanus* who was at laſt ſlain by *Herod* after all his troubles, leaving no iſſue Male behind him; and *Ariſtobulus* the father of *Alexander*, and of *Antigonus*, of whom more anon: of which two *Alexander* was the Father of another *Ariſtobulus*, the moſt beautiful Prince of all his time, and of *Mariamne* the wife of *Herod*, by whoſe command they were moſt villanouſly murdered.

3890 3 *Alexandra*, by ſome called *Salome*, the wife of *Alexander*, and following the counſel of her husband at the time of his death, committed her ſelf and her Children into the hands of the *Phariſees*, then in great power and credit amongſt the people; by means whereof ſhe procured an honourable burial for her husband, obtained the Kingdom for her ſelf, and finally left it to her Children, whoſe diſagreements cauſed the ruine of this famous Family.

3899 4 *Ariſtobulus* II. the younger Son of *Alexander*, an active Prince, and beloved of the Military Men, having preſently after the death of his Mother poſſeſt himſelf of the greateſt part of the Forts and Caſtles by the forced conſent of *Hircanus* his elder Brother, ſucceeded in the Kingdom and High-Prieſthood alſo; both which he held with great trouble and oppoſition both from his brother and the *Romans*, whom moſt imprudently they called in to decide the Controverſie. By *Pompey* ſent Priſoner unto *Rome* (with *Alexander* and *Antigonus* his two Sons) he eſcaped thence and raiſed a new Army for the recovery of his Kingdom; but being forced to yield himſelf to *Gabinius* one of *Pompey*'s Lieutenants, he was ſent back again to *Rome*, where he died in Priſon, having reigned three years and ſix months.

3903 5 *Hircanus* II. a Prince of weak parts, and not fit for Government, was made High-Prieſt in the firſt year of his Mothers reign, but diſpoſſeſt of that dignity by *Ariſtobulus* his younger brother. Reſtored again by the favour of *Pompey*, he was again diſturb'd in his poſſeſſion by *Alexander* the eldeſt Son of *Ariſtobulus*; who eſcaping out of *Rome*, had raiſed ſome Forces, and began to diſpute the Title with him: but was ſoon after diſcomfited by *Gabinius* afore-mentioned, and ſlain by *Scipio*, another of *Pompey*'s Captains. After the death of *Ariſtobulus*, which hapned in the year 3903. *Hircanus* was lookt on by the People, not only as their High-Prieſt, but as their Prince and King, commonly called ſo by *Joſephus* in the courſe of his Hiſtory. His affairs managed for the moſt part by *Antipater* (an *Idumæan* born, and the Father of *Herod*) his conſtant and moſt faithful friend in all his troubles, who governed the Eſtate with great care and prudence. But he being made away by Poyſon, *Antigonus* the younger Son of *Ariſtobulus*, ſet on foot his Title to the Kingdom, and drew in an Army of the *Parthians* to make it good; by whoſe aid, having treacherouſly inſnared *Hircanus*, he cut off his ears (to make him uncapable of the Prieſthood for the time to come) and ſent him Priſoner to *Babylon*; taking upon himſelf the Title of King, though never acknowledged for ſuch by the Jewiſh Nation. But long he did not pleaſe himſelf with that Title neither, for being beſieged in *Jeruſalem* by *Herod*, then newly created King of the *Jews* by the *Roman* Senate, and by him taken Priſoner in the ſack of that City, he was ſent in bonds to *Mark Anthony*, and by him beheaded. As for *Hircanus* the rightful Prince of this Country, he remained Priſoner for a time amongſt the *Parthians* till hearing of the death of *Antigonus*, he returned into *Jewry* and lived contentedly under the Government of *Herod*, of whoſe greatneſs he had laid the firſt foundation, and was by him in fine wickedly murdered.

The *Idumæan* Kings and Princes of *Jewry*.

A. M.

3940 1 *Herod* the *Aſcalonite*, ſirnamed the *Great*, ſon to *Antipater* the *Idumæan*, was by the power of *Mark Antony* created, and by *Auguſtus* confirmed King of *Jewry*; under whom that Kingdom was more enlarged, and in greater ſplendor than ever it had been in ſince the time of *David*. A Prince of great Magnificence, but of greater Vices. During his Reign, the *Scepter being now departed from* Judah, the Lord *CHRIST* was born.

A. Chriſti.

6 2 *Archelaus*, eldeſt ſon of *Herod* at the time of his death, ſucceeded with the Title of King; but in truth and reality poſſeſſed only a *Tetrarchy*, or fourth part of the Kingdom, though the beſt and largeſt of the four, containing *Judea*, *Samaria*, and *Idumea*. The reſt of *Herods* Kingdom was divided into three other *Tetrarchies*, i. e. the *Tetrarchy* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, given *Herod Antipas*; Secondly, that of *Ituræa*, given to *Philip*, another of the Sons of *Herod*; And thirdly, That of *Abilene*, conferred on *Lyſanias*. Baniſhed into *France*, his *Tetrarchy* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; governed by *Pontius Pilate*, at our Saviours Paſſion.

16 3 *Herod* II. ſirnamed *Antipas*, *Tetrarch* of *Galilee* and *Petræa*, on the baniſhment of *Archelaus*, ſucceeded him, as chief of the *Herodian* Family, but not in his *Tetrarchy*; and at laſt followed him in his baniſhment alſo. This is he who murdered *John Baptiſt*, and in whoſe time CHRIST ſuffered.

40 4 *Herod* III. ſirnamed *Agrippa*, in honour of *Agrippa* the Son-in-law, and moſt truſty Favorite of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, Nephew to *Herod*

rod the *Great*, by his Son *Ariſtobulus* begotten on *Mariamne* of the Race of the *Aſmonees*, was by *Caligula* firſt inveſted in the *Tetrarchy* of his Uncle *Philip*, with the Title of King; and next, in that of *Antipas* alſo; and finally by *Claudius*, in that alſo of *Lyſanias*, ſome part of the *Tetrarchy* of *Archelaus* being added unto his Dominions. This was the man that murdered *James*, and impriſoned *Peter*; and in the end was ſtricken by an Angel, and devoured by Worms.

47 5 *Agrippa Minor*, ſon of *Herod Agrippa*, was he before whom St. *Paul* pleaded in defence of the Goſpel; and the laſt which had the Title of King of the *Jews*: for in his time the City of *Hieruſalem* was deſtroyed by *Titus*, and the whole Kingdom made a Province of the *Roman* Empire, *Anno* 73.

And here it is to be obſerved, that when *Salmanaſſar* had ſubdued and captivated the ten Tribes of *Iſrael*, he ſent new Colonies of his own to plant this Country; that ſo fruitful and well-ſituate a part of his Empire might yield its juſt tribute, and not lye open to the fury of the next Invader. But the *Romans* not having (it ſeemeth) ſo much policy or providence, as thoſe whom they counted barbarous; having laid the Country deſolate, leſt it unfurniſhed of new Colonies: whereby the *Perſians*, next the *Saracens*, and after them the *Turks*, entring the *Roman* Empire at this door, have ſucceſſively driven the *Romans* out of the whole houſe. Now that we may the better perceive how the *Romans* had weakened, and almoſt utterly rooted out the Jewiſh Nation, we will relate ſome of their particular *Maſſacres*, which were not more cruelly inflicted on them by the Enemy, than juſtly deſerved by themſelves; they wiſhing, though (I ſuppoſe) not deſiring, that the innocent Blood of our Saviour ſhould *be on them and their Children*. Firſt then the Inhabitants of *Cæſarea* ſlew of the *Jews* in one day, about 20000, and ſuch as fled were took and impriſoned by *Florus* the *Roman* Lieutenant of *Judæa*. To revenge this ſlaughter, the *Jews* ſet upon the *Syrians*; in which skirmiſh 13000 of them were ſlain. The people of *Alexandria* put 50000 of them to the ſword; they of *Damaſcus*, 10000; *Antonius*, a *Roman* Captain, ſlew in *Aſcalon* 10000 of them; and *Ceſtius* another Captain, 8040 perſons. Now to come to the wars here managed by *Veſpaſian*; This *Veſpaſian* in the ſiege of *Aphaca*, ſlew and took priſoner, 17130 perſons; In *Samaria*, 11600 perſons; In *Jotopata*, 42200 perſons; In *Joppa* ſo many killed and drowned themſelves, that the Sea threw up again 4200 dead bodies; and the reſt ſo totally periſhed, that there remained none to carry tidings unto *Hieruſalem* of the loſs of the Town. In the City of *Tarichea*, were ſlain, and made captives, 45000 perſons, beſides thoſe which were given to the King *Agrippa*. In *Gamala* there periſhed 90000, and none left alive but only two women; In *Gaſcala* 5000 men dyed by the Sword; in the City of *Gadera* there were ſlain 32200, beſides an infinite number which had drowned themſelves. In *Hieruſalem* it ſelf, there died 1100000 of them, partly by the Sword, and partly by the Famine; the worſer Enemy of the two; there were found 2000 in Privies and Sinks; and 9700 taken priſoners, inſomuch that 30 *Jews* were ſold for a Penny. So punctual was the *Divine Juſtice* in *retaliating* to this wretched people, according to the meaſure of their Iniquities, that they who bought their Saviour for 30 *pence*, ſhould be ſold at thirty for a penny in the open Market.

Now that *Jeruſalem* was able to contain ſuch a number of people, is evident, in that when *Ceſtius* was Lieutenant of *Jewry*, the *High-Prieſt* did at his requeſt, number the people which came thither to eat the *Paſchal Lamb*; and found them to be two millions and ſeven hundred thouſand living ſouls, all ſound and purified: For to Lepers, or men having a flux of Seed, or women in their monthly terms, or to ſtrangers, it was not lawful to eat of it. And when *Titus* laid Siege to the City, it was in the Feaſt of the *Paſſeover*, when moſt of the people were there aſſembled; God (as it were) having thus impriſoned them. All theſe Maſſacres, beſides divers others which I have omitted, and infinite numbers which were ſlain in the Fields and Villages, which drowned themſelves, & which were privately made away, amounting all to almoſt 2000000 of people, hapned in the compaſs of four years; beginning at the 12th of *Nero*, and ending at the 2d of *Veſpaſian*; yet was not the whole Nation rooted out, till the year 136. For then this miſerable people, having ſtirred two notable rebellions; the one under *Trajan*, and the laſt under *Adrian* the Emperours, were generally baniſhed their native Country, and never again permitted to inhabit it, otherwiſe than as ſtrangers. After this diſſolution, the *Jews* were diſperſed all over the World, and eſpecially in *Spain*, where *Adrian* commanded many of them to dwel; yet they found everywhere ſo little favour, that having divers times been put to grievous mulcts and ranſoms, they were at laſt thruſt out of moſt of the Kingdoms of *Europe* alſo. They were baniſhed out of *England* by *Edward* the firſt, *Anno* 1290. Out of *France* by *Philip* the *Fair*, 1307. Out of *Spain* by *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, 1492. Out of *Portugal* by *Emmanuel*, 1497. Out of *Naples*, and *Sicily*, by *Charles* the Fifth, 1539, Yet are they found in great numbers in the *Romiſh* parts of *Germany* and *Poland*; in moſt Cities of *Italy*, eſpecially *Rome* it ſelf, where are no leſs than 15000 or 20000 of them; and alſo in the Popes Country of *Avignon*. The reaſon why they are permitted to live thus under the Popes noſe, is pretended to be an expectation of their Converſion, which is a meer pretence indeed; the true reaſon being the benefit hence ariſing to his Holineſs Coffers; the hopes of their Converſion being very ſmall, and the means leſs. For beſides the ſcandal, *Datum & acceptum*, by the *Papiſts* fond worſhipping of Images, ſo peremptorily contrary to the firſt Table of the Law: they are not permitted to ſee any Book of Chriſtian Religion, no not ſo much as the New Teſtament. And (which worketh much upon men of their metal) becauſe at their Converſion they muſt quit all their goods unto the Church, as being ill gotten, and by conſequence the works of the Devil, which in their Baptiſm they promiſe to renounce. They have alſo a Synagogue at *Amſterdam*, and are pretty thick ſpred over the Dominions of the *Turks*: who, notwithſtanding ſo hate them for crucifying of *CHRIST*, that they uſed to ſay in the deteſtation of a thing, *I would I might dye a Jew*. Neither will they permit a *Jew* to turn *Turk*, unleſs he be firſt baptized. And though their multitudes be ſo great both in *Theſſalonica* & *Conſtantinople*, that it is conceiv'd they do amount to the number of 160000 perſons; yet they are not only contemned but hated: but there, and in all other places of their habitation, upon every tumultuous aſſembly of the Common people, and conſtantly every *Eaſter*, whereſoever they be, in danger of death. Inſomuch that if a *Jew* do but ſtir out of doors betwixt *Maundy Thurſday* at noon, and *Eaſter Eve* at night, the *Chriſtians* of the Eaſt, amongſt whom they dwell (though far fewer in number) will be ſure to ſtone them; becauſe at that time, they buffetted, derided, and in fine crucified their Saviour. Hated in all the parts of the *Turks* Dominions, becauſe employed as *Publicans* in gathering and enhauncing

enhauncing the publick tributes, which they exact with all severity that may be, and improve unto the most. And no less hated in all parts of the *Christian* world, as Enemies to the *Cross of CHRIST*: so unreclaimably addicted to their ancient *Judaism*, and so abhorring from the conversation of other men; that it is not possible they should reap any other harvest, than contempt and scorn from those amongst whom they dwell.

To give you their Character in brief; They are a people which know how to comply with the times, and the condition which they live in; especially if their profit be concerned in it: reviled like Dogs, and used like Slaves, yet never shew so much as an Angry countenance. A Nation which will thrive wheresoever they come, but most by *Usury* and *Brokage*; not lending any thing but on pawns, and those once forfeited, never more redeemable. The best of both *Sexes* said to have an unsavory rankness, not incident (if not caused by sluttishness) to other people: from whom as different in their habit, as in their *Religion*. And as for that, they retain still *Circumcision*, as the badge and cognizance of their Nation; but mingled with many Ceremonies not prescribed by the Law, nor observed by the Ancients: placing a void Chair for the Prophet *Elias*, whom they believe to be present, though unseen at the Solemnity. And upon this they are so besotted, that they conceive the Female Sex uncapable of eternal life, because not capable of *Circumcision*; and therefore use to name them with no other Ceremony than at six weeks end to have some young Wenches lift up the Cradle with the Child in it; which she that standeth at the head, giveth the name unto. Of their *Sabbath* so extremely doating, that they have added to the *Superstitions* left them by the *Pharisees*: And herein they are so precise, that if a *Jew* travel on the *Friday*, and in the Evening fall so short of his Journeys end, that it amounts to more than to 2000 Cubits, or six Furlongs, which they account a *Sabbath-days* journey, there must he sit him down and keep his *Sabbath*, though in a wood, or field, or the high-way side, without fear of wind or weather, of Thieves or Robbers, and without taking order for meat or drink: *Periculo latronum prædonumque omni, penuriâ item omni cibi potûsque neglectis*, as *Buxtorfius* hath it. And so far have they gone in despight of Christ, as to declare it unlawful to lift the *Ox or Ass out of a ditch*; permitted in the strictest times of *Pharisaical* rigour. So pertinacious in retaining the *difference of meats and drinks*, that they will by no means sit at the Table with other men, and so precise in the dressing of it, that they will eat of no flesh but of their own killing only; and that too with such cautions and reservations that if any of the entrails be corrupt or dislocated, they will sell the whole beast to the *Christians* for a very trifle. Beneficial in that only to the neighbouring Christians. Wine they forbear except it be of their own planting, not so much out of dislike of that Liquor, for they are generally good fellows, and love their bellies, as for fear the Wine should be baptized: a Ceremony much used in the Eastern parts. Of the coming of their *Messiah* so full of hopes, that there is no great Warrier stirring, but they look upon him as the man; till some sad Tragedy or other, which they suffer under that perswasion, makes them see their error: promising to themselves whensoever he cometh, a restitution of their Kingdom: and such felicities therein, in the literal sence of some Texts of Scripture, which carry in them a more *mystical* and sacred meaning, That in good time (but Gods, not theirs) they shall be made partakers of the several blessings which those Texts do speak of, is both the hope and wish of all pious men; who cannot chuse but grieve to behold the *natural branches*, so long dismembred and cut off from the *tree of life*. And this they neither hope nor wish for but on some fair grounds, presented to them by St. *Paul*: who said expresly, that when the *fulness of the* Gentiles *is once come in, that then all* Israel *shall be saved*, *Rom.* 11.25,26 The words are so plainly positive that they need no Commentary. Or if they did, we have the general consent of the Ancients, besides the constant current of most modern Writers; who cherish the glad hopes of their *conversion to the Gospel*, which the Apostle doth there aim at. *Origen*, *Athanasius*, *Hierom*, *Augustine*, *Chrysostome*, for the primitive times; *Beda* and *Hugo Cardinalis*, in the times succeeding; *Gorran*, and *Thomas Aquinas*, for those of *Rome*; *Calvin*, *Beza*, *Bullinger*, and *Peter Martyr* for the *Reformed* Churches; besides divers others of great note, so expound that Text. Nor want there other Texts of Scripture to affirm as much; which he that doth desire to see, may find with the Expositions of most *Christian* Writers, in a Book writ by Doctor *Willet*, Entituled, *De generali & novissima* Judæorum *vocatione*; and thither I refer the more curious Reader. Out of all I shall take these words of *Peter Martyr*, written on that passage of St. *Paul* to the *Romans*, viz. *Non ita* Judæi *perierunt ut nulla de illorum salute spes superfit*; The *Jews* (saith he) are not so wholly fallen from the favour of God, but that there still remains some hopes of their salvation. Of their *Salvation* then by the Gospel of *Christ*, when the *fulness of the Gentiles* is once come in, we conceive good hopes: but whether there be any of their restitution to their *temporal* Kingdom, is a further question; and not so clearly evidenced in the Book of God, though there be somewhat in that Book which may seem to imitate it. That the opinion of being restored to the *Messiah* to that Temporal power which was taken from them by the *Romans*, was prevalent as well amongst *Christ's Disciples*, as the rest of the *Jews*, is, I take it, clear enough in the holy Gospel. In such a Kingdom, and no other, did the two Sons of *Zebedee* desire to sit on both hands of their Master; and the same was it, and no other, which all of them expected, as appeared by the words of *Cleophas*, *Luke* 25.21. that *Christ should have restored unto them. We thought*, said he, that this would have proved the man, that should have *redeemed Israel*. Redeemed *Israel*? From what? From sin and Satan, or the curse and bondage of the Law? Not so, Ἀλλ' ἀπὸ τῦ ζύγυ τῆς δελείας; but from the yoke of Vassallage, which the *Romans* had so lately imposed on them, say the Fathers rightly. Touching the same it was that they moved him saying; *Lord, wilt thou at this time restore again the Kingdom of Israel*, *Acts* 1.6. In answer whereunto, our Saviour makes them no denial, as unto the *thing*, nor tells them that they never must expect such a *restauration*; but only puts them off as unto the *time*, and bids them rest themselves on the pleasure of God the Father, in whose hands the disposing of all *Kingdoms* was: *It is not for you* (saith he) *to know the times and seasons, which the Father hath in his own power*, ver. 7. By which answer (as it seems to me) there is a possibility of restoring them to their *Kingdom* also; though not in the τὸ νῦν, at that very instant when they were most desirous to have it done, or at any other time fit for them to know; that being a secret, which the Father hath reserved to himself alone.

But leaving these Speculations of a Restitution of the Throne of *Israel*, and the great Power and Priviledges it may then enjoy, let us look back on the Estate in which it flourished in the former times, when the Forces and Revenue of it were at the highest. And first for the *Revenues*, they amounted in the time of *Solomon* (as is said 2 *Chron.* 9.13.) to 666 *Talents* of Gold, besides the benefits of his *Customs* and *Impositions*, which

cometh

cometh to 2997000 pounds of yearly income. A vast Sum for such a little Kingdom. Nor can we reckon them at less, if they were not greater in the time of *David*; of whom it is affirmed, 1 *Chron.* 22. 14. That he left to *Solomon* 100000 *Talents* of Gold, and 1000000 *Talents* of Silver towards the building of the Temple, besides 3000 *Talents* of Gold, and 7000 *Talents* of Silver, formerly deposited for that purpose, as is said 1 *Chron.* 29. 4. Which if it be computed at the ordinary rate of a *Jews Talent*, reckoning a *Talent* of Gold at 4500 pound, and a *Talent* of Silver at 375 pound, will amount in our money to 840125000 pounds. So vast a Sum, that it had been sufficient to have built a *Temple* of pure Gold and Silver, far greater than the *Temple* of *Solomon*, without other Materials. I conceive therefore with our learned and industrious *Brerewood*, that by the *Talent* in those places we are to understand a far lesser sum than the ordinary *Hebrew Talents*: which whether it doth there signifie a *Sicle* only, which is half a Crown of *English* money, as *Eupolemus*, cited by *Eusebius*, was of opinion; or that every *Talent* of Gold came to three Golden Crowns of *Athens*, which maketh forty five shillings of *English* money, as *Julius Pollux* hath it in his *Onomasticon*, I am not able to determine. But measuring it by the last estimate, which I more approve of, it will amount to two millions and two hundred ninety and five thousand pounds: a vast sum for a King to leave in ready money, which was always exercised in war. And though I do not find expresly what the *Revenues* of *Judah* might amount unto, after the division: yet by one circumstance I find them to be very great. For it is written, 2 *Kings* 18. 14. that the yearly *tribute* imposed upon *Hezekiah*, by the King of *Assyria*, was three hundred *Talents* of Silver, and thirty *Talents* of Gold; amounting (according to the ordinary *Hebrew Talent*, which questionless is there intended) to two hundred forty seven thousand and five hundred pounds of *English* money: and therefore probably his ordinary *Revenue* must be thrice as much, above that tribute; Else the *Assyrian* had not left him a subsistence for a King to live on. Nor can I think that the *Revenues* of this Crown were less to *Herod*, than formerly to *Solomon*, or *David*; considering his vast expences, the many and magnificent Structures which he brought to perfection, the immeasurable donatives bestowed upon *Augustus*, *Livia*, and the Court of *Rome*, together with the large *Legacies* he gave at the time of his death: not paralell'd by any King before or since, though of a more large and more ample Territority than he stood possessed of.

What forces the Kings of the *Hebrews*, were able to bring into the field, may best be estimated by the Muster which *David* made, when he numbred the People; the enrolment of such as were able to bear arms, and fit for service coming in all to five hundred thousand fighting men, in *Judah* only, and eight hundred thousand men in the Tribes of *Israel*. 'Tis true, that *David* never brought into the field so vast a multitude; but when the Kingdoms were divided, and war denounced betwixt *Jeroboam* and *Abijah*, we find almost the whole number brought into the field: that is to say, 800 thousand on the side of *Jeroboam*, the King of *Israel* and four hundred thousand by *Abijah*, the King of *Judah*. After this, out of that small Kingdom, *Asa* the Son of *Abijah*, being invaded by *Zarah* the *Arabian* or *Ethiopian*, advanced an Army of five hundred and eighty thousand men, which was more than the enrolment made in the time of *David*. An infinite proportion for so small a Kingdom; and were it not avouched in the holy Scriptures, far above belief, had not that God who said to *Abraham*, that his *Seed should be as the Stars of Heaven for multitude*, been able to have made it good.

As for the story and affairs of this Country since the time of *Adrian*, the *Jews* being all expelled their native Soyl, and *Christianity* in fine prevailing over all those parts; it was inhabited as the rest of the Empire was, by men of that *Religion* only: in this Country so advanced and countenanced, that *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*, is reported to have built in it no less than two hundred Temples and Monasteries, in places of most note for the Miracles of *Christ* our Saviour, or the dwelling of some of his *Disciples*. In the year 615. the *Persians*, under the Conduct of *Chosroes* their King, became Masters of it; and possessed themselves of *Hierusalem* also: expelled thence by the valour and good fortune of the Emperour *Heraclius*, who recovering the *Cross* on which *Christ* suffered, out of the hands of the *Pagans*, carried it with as great a triumph into *Constantinople*, as *David* once did the *Ark* into *Hierusalem*; occasioning thereby the annual Festival on the fourth of *September*, called *Holy-Cross-day*, or *Exaltatio Sanctæ Crucis*. But this glory and rejoycing did not long continue; For within twenty years after the recovery of this City from the power of the *Persians*, it was again conquerred and subdued by *Homar*, or *Aumar*, *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, *Anno* 637. Under this yoke the captivated *Christians* had long suffered, when they changed the Tyrant, but not the tyranny, the *Turks* about the year 1079. overcoming the *Saracens*, and domineering in their stead. Twenty years did the *Christians* languish under this oppression, when one Peter an *Hermite*, travelling for devotion to the *holy Land*, and being an eye-witness of the miseries under which they groaned; at his return, made his addresses to Pope *Urban*, the second, acquainting him with the sad conditions of the poor *Christians* in those Countries. A *Council* thereupon is called at *Clermont* in *France*, where the Pope (willing to imploy the *Christian* Princes farther off, that he might the better play his game at home,) did so effectually advance and endear the business, that no fewer than three hundred thousand fighting men, under several Leaders, undertook the service. And it prospered so well with them in the first beginning, that having beaten the *Turks* out of *Asia Minor*, taken the great City of *Antioch*, and most of the strong Towns of *Syria*, they incamped before *Hierusalem*, and in short time took it, *Anno* 1099 after it had been four hundred years and upwards in the power of the *Infidels*. The City being thus gained, was offered with the title of King, to *Robert* Duke of *Normandy*, Son of *William* the *Conqueror*: but he upon the hopes of the Kingdom of *England*, refused that honour; never prospering, as it was observed, after that refusal. *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*, had the next offer of it, which with a religious joy he accepted of; though on the day of his inauguration he refused the Crown: affirming that it was not fit for a *Christian* Prince to wear in that City a *Crown of Gold*, where the Redeemer of the World wore a *Crown of Thorns*.

The Kings of *Hierusalem*

1099 1 *Godfrey* of *Bouillon*, Duke of *Lorrain*.
1100 2 *Baldwin* of *Lorrain*, brother of *Godfrey*, won *Ptolemais*, and many other Cities of *Syria*.
1118 3 *Baldwin* II. sirnamed of *Bruges*, Cousin of *Godfrey*, and *Baldwin*, the Former Kings, overcame the Sultan of *Damascus*; and inlarged his Kingdom by the addition of *Tyre*.
1131 4 *Fulk*, Earl of *Anjou*, having married *Millisent*, the daughter of *Baldwin* the second, succeeded

succeeded after his decease; unfortunately killed with a fall from his Horse.

1142 5 *Baldwin* III. Son of *Fulk* and *Millescent*, fortified *Gaza* against the *Caliph* of *Ægypt*; and recovered *Paneade* from the King of *Damascus*.

1164 6 *Almericus*, the Brother of *Baldwin* the third, so distressed the Great *Caliph* of *Ægypt*, that he was forced to call in the *Turks* to aid him; by whom slain, and his Kingdom transferred on *Saracon* the *Turkish* General.

1174 7 *Baldwin* IV. Son of *Almericus*, overthrew *Saladine* the victorious King of the *Turks* in a Fight near *Ascalon*, and valiantly defended his Dominions.

1185 8 *Baldwin* V Son of *Sybil* the Sister of *Baldwin* the fourth, by *William* Marques of *Montferrat*; unnaturally poysoned by his own Mother, having reigned only five Months to make way for her second Husband, called

1185 9 *Guy* of *Lusignan*, the last King of *Hierusalem*, that had the possession of the City: during whose time *Saladine* the Sultan of *Ægypt* won that Kingdom, *Anno* 1187, which his successors defended against all invasions, till the year 1517. in which *Selimus* the first, Emperour of the *Turks*, added the *Holy Land*, together with *Ægypt*, to his Empire. When *Hierusalem* was taken by the *Christians*, it is said that the *German* Emperours name was *Fredericus*; the Pope's, *Urbanus*; the *Hierosolymitan* Patriarch, *Heraclius*; and that so also were they called, when the *Christians* again lost it. This is the conceit of *Roger Hoveden*, in the Life of *Henry* the Second; but how it can agree with Chronology, I do not see.

After the taking of *Hierusalem* by Sultan *Saladine*, the *Christians* retired their Forces into some of the other Towns of the *Holy-Land*; which they made good against the Enemy, and defended them under the Government of these three Kings following, *viz.*

10 *Conrade* Marques of *Montferrat*, Husband of *Isabel* the Daughter of *Almericus* King of *Hierusalem*.

11 *Henry* Earl of *Compagne*, second Husband of *Isabel*.

12 *John di Brenne*, Husband of *Mary*, or *Yoland* as some call her, Daughter of *Conrade* and *Isabel*, the last *Christian* King that ever had possession in *Syria* or *Palestine*: inhabited ever since by *Moors* and *Arabians*; few *Christians*, and not many *Turks* but such as be in Garrisons only. *Yoland* the Daughter of this *John di Brenne*, was Wife to *Frederick* King of *Naples*, who in her right intituled himself King of *Hierusalem*: and so now do the Kings of *Spain*, as Heirs unto and Possessors of the Kingdom of *Naples*. Concerning which Title, it would not be amiss to insert this Story. When the Wars in Queen *Elizabeth's* time were hot between *England* and *Spain*, there were *Commissioners* of both sides appointed to Treat of Peace. They met at a Town of the *French* Kings, and first it was debated in what Tongue the Negotiations should be handled. A *Spaniard* thinking to give the *English* Commissioners a shrewd gird, proposed the *French* Tongue as most fit; it being a Language which the *Spaniards* were well skilled in: and for these Gentlemen of *England*, I suppose (saith he) that they cannot be ignorant of the Language of their fellow-Subjects; their Queen is Queen of *France*, as well as of *England*. Nay in faith my Masters, replied Doctor *Dale* (a Civil Lawyer, and one of the Masters of Requests) the *French* Tongue is too vulgar for a business of this secresy and importance, especially in a *French* Town: We will therefore rather treat in *Hebrew*, the Language of *Hierusalem*, whereof your Master is King; and I suppose you are therein as well skilled, as we in the *French*. And thus much for this Title.

The Arms of the Christian Kings in *Hierusalem* was *Luna*, a Cross Crosset crossed, *Sol*; which was commonly called the *Hierusalem Cross*. But for their Forces and Revenues, I cannot see how any estimate may be made hereof, in regard they subsisted not by their own proper strength, but by the Purses and the Forces of the *Western* Christians; more or less active in that Service, as zeal, or emulation, or desire of glory, were predominant in them.

Chief Orders of Knighthood in this Kingdom, after the Recovery thereof from the power of the *Turks*, were,

1. Of the *Sepulchre*, said to be instituted originally by Queen *Helena*. The Mother of *Constantine* the *Great*, by whom the Temple of the *Sepulchre* was indeed first built: but more truly, by *Philip* King of *France*, *Anno* 1099. at such time as that temple was regained from the *Turks*. Their Arms the same with that of the Kings before *blazoned*, representing the five Wounds of our Saviour *CHRIST*. At the first conferred on none but Gentlemen of Blood and Fortune; now saleable to any that will buy it of the *Pater-Guardian*, who with a Convent of *Franciscans* doth reside near that Temple.

2. Of *Saint John of Hierusalem*, begun by one *Gerard*, *Anno* 1114. and confirmed by Pope *Paschalis* the second. Their Badge or Cognizance is a White Cross of eight points. Their duty, to defend the *Holy-Land*, relieve Pilgrims, and succour *Christian* Princes against the Infidels. They were to be of noble Parentage and Extraction; and grew in time to such infinite Riches, especially after the suppression of the *Templars* (most of whose Lands were after given unto this Order) that they had at one time in the several parts of *Christendom*, no fewer than 20000 Manours; and of such reputation in all *Christian* Kingdoms, that in *England* the Lord Prior of this Order, was accompted the Prince Baron in the Realm. But now their Revenue is not a little diminished, by the withdrawing of the Kings of *England*, and other Protestant Princes, from the Church of *Rome*: who on that change, seized on all the Lands of this Order in their several Countries; and either kept them to themselves, or disposed them to others as they pleased. Of these we shall speak more when we are in *Malta* where they now reside: advertising only at the present, that their first *Great Master*, was that *Gerrard* by whom they were founded; the last that had his residence in the *Holy-Land*, one *John de Villiers*, in whose time being driven out of *Palestine*, they removed unto *Cyprus*, and in the time of *Fulk de Villaret*. *Anno* 1309, to the Isle of *Rhodes*; Out of which expelled by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*; *Anno* 1522. they removed from one place to another, till at last by the magnificence of *Charles* the fifth *Anno* 1530. they were setled in *Malta*: and there we shall speak further of them.

3. Of the *Templars*, instituted by *Hugh* of *Payennes*: *Anno* 1113. and confirmed by Pope *Eugenius*. Their Ensign was a *Red Cross*, in token that they should shed their blood to defend *Christ*'s Temple. They were buried *cross-legged*, and wore on their backs the figure of the Cross; for which they were by the common people called Cross backs, or Crouch-backs, and by corruption Crook-backs. *Edmund* Earl of *Lancaster*, second Son to our *Henry* the third, being of this Order, was vulgarly called *Edmund Crook-back*; Which gave *Henry* the fourth a foolish occasion to feign, that this *Edmund* (from whom he

he was deſcended) was indeed the eldeſt Son of King *Henry* the third; but for his *crookedneſs* and deformity, his younger Brother was preferred to the Crown before him. Theſe Knights had in all Provinces of *Europe* their ſubordinate Governours, in which they poſſeſſed no leſs than 16000 Lordſhips: the greatneſs of which Revenue was not the leaſt cauſe of diſſolving the Order. For *Philip* the Fair, King of *France*, had a plot to inveſt one of his Sons with the title of *King of Hieruſalem*, and hoped to procure of the *Pope* the Revenue of this Order, to be laid unto that Kingdom, for ſupport of the Title: which he thought he might the better do, becauſe *Clement* the fifth then Pope, for the love he bare to *France*, had transferred his Seat from *Rome* to *Avignion*. But herein his hopes deceived him; for this Order being diſſolved, the Lands thereto belonging were given to the Knights *Hoſpitallers*, or of St. *John*. The Crimes objected againſt this Order were, Firſt, Their Revolt from their profeſſed Obedience unto the Patriarch of *Jeruſalem*, who was their Viſitor: Secondly, Their unſpeakable Pride: and Thirdly, Their ſins againſt Nature. The Houſe of our Law-Students in *London*, called the *Temple*, was the chief Houſe of the Knights of this Order in *England*; and was by the Knights of St. *John*, whoſe principal Manſion was in *Smithfield*, ſold unto the Students of the Law, for the yearly Rent of 10 *l.* about the middle of the Reign of *Edward* the third.

Theſe three Orders Mr. *Selden* (and deſervedly) putteth not in his *Titles of Honour*, in that they were prohibited to kiſs a Woman; honourary Knight-hood, and the Love of Ladies, going together like Vertue and Reward.

Thus much for *Paleſtine*.

OF ARABIA.

ARABIA hath on the Eaſt *Chaldæa*, and the Bay or *Gulff* of *Perſia*; on the Weſt, *Paleſtine*, ſome part of *Ægypt*, and the whole courſe of the *Red-Sea*; on the North the River *Euphrates*, with ſome parts of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; and on the South, the main Southern Ocean. But at ſome times the name extended ſome what further. *Pliny* enlargeth it as far as *Comagena*, the North part of *Syria*; in regard that many *Arabian* Colonies had been there planted by *Tygranes*: and *Xenophon* comprehended in it the greateſt part alſo of *Meſopotamia*; becauſe ſituate on the Weſt of the River *Tigris*, and conſequently the Weſtern part of the *Aſſyrian* Empire, as the word *Ereb* doth import, from whence ſome derive the *Etymon*, and name hereof. Which notwithſtanding, in the general eſteem of Authors, it is bounded only as before.

As for the Name, there be ſome that derive it from *Arabus*, a ſuppoſed Son of *Apollo* and *Babylonia*; others from three ſuppoſititious Sons of *Janus Pater*, one of the pretended Grandſons of *Cham*, who is fabled to have ſent his Son *Arabus* into *Arabia Deſerta*; *Petreius*, into *Arabia Petræa*; and *Sabus*, into *Arabia Fœlix*, the dwelling place of the *Sabæans*. And for this trim conceit, we are beholden to the *Beroſus* of *Friar Annius*. More probable is their conjecture, who derive the name from the *Hebrew*, *Arab*, ſignifying *black*; by reaſon of the ſwarth or tawny complexion of the Inhabitants who are *inter nigrum & fulvum*, as *Vertomannus* an eye-witneſs hath informed us of them; on the ſame reaſon as one of the Provinces of *Africa*, is commonly entituled the *Land of Negroes*. But the moſt likely origination of it, as I conceive, is from *Harabi*, which ſignifieth in the *Hebrew* a Thief or Robber, ſuch as the *Arabians* in all Ages have been known to be. According unto that of the Prophet *Jeremy*: *In the ways thou haſt ſate for them, as an Arabian in the wilderneſs*, as our *Engliſh* reads it: *Tanquam Latro inſidians in ſolitudine*, ſaith the Vulgar Latin, *Jer.* 32. St. *Hierom*, though he render it *quaſi Latro*, as the Vulgar doth, yet in his Commentary he informs us, that the word doth alſo ſignifie an *Arabian quæ gens latrociniis dedita uſque hodie incurſat Paleſtinæ fines, &c.* which being addicted to Theft and Robbery do to this day (ſaith he) infeſt the Coaſts of *Paleſtine*, which border near them, and lay in wait for thoſe which had any occaſion to travel thither. Agreeable hereunto is the obſervation of *Martin del Rio*, *Adeo latrociniis infames ſunt, ut Hebræis Arabs latronem denotat, ſicut Chananæus Mercatorem, Chaldæus Mathematicum; i. e.* So infamous were they for their Theft and frequent Robberies, that it was familiar with the *Jews* to call a Thief by the name *Arabian*, as by *Chanaanite* to ſignifie a Merchant, or to uſe the word *Chaldæan* for a *Mathematician*. In the ſame ſenſe they came in the ſucceeding times to be called *Saracens*, from *Sarak*, or *Saraka*, an Arabian word, which ſignifieth to ſteal; whereof more anon: No otherwiſe than one of the *American* Iſlands had the name of *Ladrones*, or *Inſula Latronum*, given by *Magellanus*, from the thieviſhneſs of the Inhabitants, who had ſtoln his Cock-boat.

I have ſtaid the longer on the Name, becauſe it doth expreſs ſo much of the Character of the People alſo; living for the moſt part upon Spoil and Robbery, as all that travel that way know by ſad experience. Of mean ſtatures, raw-boned, tawny or ſwarth complexioned, having feminine voices; of ſwift but noiſeleſs gate, and upon you ere you are aware. Of no ſet-dwellings (except only in *Arabia Fœlix*) living in Tents, which they remove like walking Cities, for the benefit of Paſturage, and hope of Booty: for this laſt cauſe hanging about the skirts of more habitable Countries, and having robbed, retire with a marvellous ſpeed; Mounted on *Dromedaries* for that purpoſe, a Beaſt of moſt incredible ſwiftneſs, ſatisfied with little Food, though without Water to it, and will eaſily carry a man an hundred miles a day, without any refreſhing. Nor are ſuch Horſes as they have, though but poor and lean, of leſs ſpeed, or leſs patient of travel; whom they feed twice a day with the Milk of Camels, and think them not worth keeping, if not able to out-go an *Oſtrich*. As

now,

now, ſo formerly, all Horſemen, and but ill-appointed; fitter to rob and ſpoil, than to deal with Souldiers; as riding ſtark naked, and truſting rather to the ſwiftneſs of their Horſes, than any other reſiſtance, where they were oppoſed.

Their Language is the *Arabick*, ſo called from this Country, but not proper to this Country only; Spoken in all places where *Mahometaniſm* hath got any footing: The *Alcoran* being written in it, the publick Offices of their Religion performed in it, and the Tongue taught in Schools as generally, as with us the *Latin:* but made the natural Language in *Meſopotamia*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, the three *Arabia*'s, *Ægypt*, and all *Barbary*, except the Kingdom of *Morocco*. A great extent, but ſhort of that which ſome give to it, who will have it ſpoken in two parts of the whole habitable World.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt here planted by S. *Paul*, of whoſe being in *Arabia*, after his Converſion, he telleth us, *Gal.* 1. 17. to which the coming in of the *Saracens* gave a great increaſe, in the time of *Mavia* their Queen; during the Empire of *Valentinian* the firſt, *Moſes*, a man of exemplary piety, and famed for many Miracles, being created their firſt Biſhop; after more generally propagated over all the Country, by the King *Alamandarus*, *Anaſtaſius* then reigning in the Eaſt. But long it had not been received, when ſupplanted by *Mahometaniſm*, which had its firſt beginning here; and hath ſo univerſally overſpread the whole face hereof, that now there are no *Chriſtians* left in all the Country, except only in *Eltor*, a Port Town in the Bay of *Arabia Felix*; in *Arabia Petræa*, the chief City of *Arabia Petræa*, and in two ſmall Monaſteries about Mount *Sinai*.

It is in circuit about 4000 miles; but of ſo unequal and *heterogeneous* compoſition, that no general *Character*, can be given of it: and therefore we muſt look upon it, as it ſtands divided into *Arabia Deſerta*, 2 *Arabia Petræa*, 3 *Arabia Felix*, and 4 The *Arabick Iſlands*.

1 *ARABIA DESERTA.*

ARABIA DESERTA (called *Beriara* by the *Turks*) is bounded on the Eaſt with *Babylonia*; on the Weſt, with parts of *Paleſtine*, and *Arabia Petræa*; on the North, with *Palmyrene* and *Meſopotamia*, from which laſt it is parted by *Euphrates*; and on the South, by ſome parts of *Petræa*, and *Arabia Felix*.

It hath the name of *Deſerta*, from the vaſt Deſarts which are in it, and the inhabitedneſs thereof; called alſo by *Ariſtides*, *Aſpera*, from the roughneſs; by *Servius*, *Inferior*, or the lower, in regard of the ſituation of it more towards the River; by *Lucian*, from the frequent bottoms and Vallies in it, *Arabia Cava*; and finally, by the *Jews* it was called *Kedar*, from the *blackneſs* or ſwarthineſs of the People, the word in *Hebrew* ſignifying as much as *Sun-burnt*; whence the People are by ſome Writers called *Kedareni*, and by *Pliny*, *Cedræi*.

But the common and moſt uſual name of it, is *Arabia Deſerta*, agreeable to the nature of it, being generally a ſandy Country, full of vaſt *Deſarts*; in which all ſuch as travel, uſe to carry their Proviſions with them, and to guide themſelves in their Journey by the courſe of the *Stars*, though in ſome parts which lie near *Euphrates*, and the Mountains of *Arabia Felix*, it hath ſome few Towns, and thoſe reſorted to by Merchants. But this is only in thoſe parts, the reſidue of he Country being ſo deſolate and waſte, that one who had travelled in it, doth deſcribe it to be ſo wild a place, *Ut nec homines nec beſtiæ videantur, nec aves; imo, nec arbores, nec germen aliquod, ſed non niſi montes ſaxoſi, altiſſimi, aſperrimi:* A Country, ſaith *Guilandinus Melchior*, where are found neither Men nor Beaſts, no not ſo much as Birds or Trees, nor Graſs, nor Paſture, but only ſtony, high, and moſt craggy Mountains.

The People for the moſt part uſed to dwell in Tents, alluded to by *David*, *Pſal.* 120. *v.* 5. which they removed from place to place, as the Paſture for their Cattel failed them: taking no other care for Houſes, than the Boughs of Palm-trees, to keep them from the heat of the Sun, and other extremities of Weather. Hence by the Ancients called *Scænitæ*, or men dwelling in Tents (in which reſpect the *Jews* call the *Kartarians* *Kedarim*, from the like courſe of life which theſe *Ledareni* or *Arabians* lived:) but the name reaching into the other parts of *Arabia* alſo, where they uſe the ſame kind of living: of whom more anon.

Yet notwithſtanding, moſt memorable is this Country in Sacred Story, both for the dwelling place of *Job*, and the Habitation of thoſe Wiſe-men, who came out of the Eaſt unto *Hieruſalem*, to worſhip *Chriſt*, the new-born King of the *Jews*. That *Job* was an Inhabitant here, appeareth by the ſituation of his dwelling, being in the Eaſt, as is ſaid in the Story of him, *chap.* 1. *v.* 3. that is to ſay, the Country lying Eaſt to the Land of *Canaan*, as this part of it doth; and therefore called ſimply by the name of the *Eaſt*, as *Judg.* 6. 3. where by the *Children of the Eaſt*, are meant expreſly the Inhabitants of *Arabia the Deſart*, who together with the *Midianites* and *Amalekites* oppreſſed thoſe of *Iſrael*. Secondly, by the ill-neighbourhood which he found from the *Sabæans*, who inhabited in this part alſo; and of the *Chaldæans*, mentioned *v.* 17. the next Borderers to it: and thirdly, by the inconſequences which needs muſt follow, if we place him, as ſome do, in the Land of *Vs*, near unto *Damaſcus*. For how improbable muſt it be for the *Sabæans* of the *Red Sea*, or the *Perſian Gulf*, or the *Chaldæans* dwelling on the Banks of the River *Euphrates*, to fall upon *Job*'s Cattel grazing near *Damaſcus*, the Countries being disjoyned by ſuch vaſt *Deſarts*, and huge Mountains, that it is impoſſible for any Strangers to paſs them, eſpecially with any numbers of Cattel, in reſpect of thoſe large Mountains, deep Sands, and the extreme want of Water in all that paſſage? And how impoſſible muſt we think it, that the Pen-man of the Story of *Job*, who certainly was guided in it by the *Holy Ghoſt*, ſhould be ſo miſtaken, as to place *Job*'s dwelling in the *Eaſt*, if the *Land of Vs*, wherein he dwelt, bordered on *Damaſcus*, which lay not on the Eaſt, but the North of *Canaan*? A City called *Vs*, or *Vz*, there was, ſituate near *Damaſcus*, ſo called from *Vs*, the Son of *Aram*, *Gen.* 10. 23. A *Land of Vs* alſo amongſt the *Edomites*, ſpoken of in the *Lamentations* of the Prophet *Jeremy*, *c.* 4. *v.* 21. ſo called from *Vz*, one of the Poſterity of *Eſau*, mentioned *Gen.* 36. 28. And finally, a *Land of Vs* or *Vz*, ſo called from *Huz* the Son of *Nachor*, the Brother of *Abraham*, mentioned *Gen.* 22. 21. which is that ſituate in this Tract, the Habitation and Poſſeſſion of that Righteous man: the Country hereabouts being called *Auſitis*, and the People *Auſitæ*; though by miſtaking in the *tranſcripts*, we find them named *Aeſlat* or *Æſitæ*, in the fifth of *Ptolomy*. The like I ſay alſo of the *Wiſe-men*, or *Magi*, who came to *Hieruſalem* from the *Eaſt*, That they dwelt in this Country, where the ſaid *Ptolomy* placeth the City of *Saba*; according unto that fore-ſignified by the Royal *Pſalmiſt*, That the *Kings of* Arabia *and* Saba *ſhould bring their gifts*, *Pſal.* 72. 10. Confirmed herein by the ſituation of the Country, lying Eaſt of *Canaan*; the Authority of thoſe Fathers who lived neareſt to the time of our Saviour's Birth, *Juſtin Martyr*, *Tertullian*, *Cyprian*; and by the teſtimony of *Guilandinus*

landinus Melchior above-mentioned, affirming on the credible report of the People hereof, that they came neither out of *Mesopotamia*, or *Arabia Felix*, as many wisemen do believe, but out of *Saba* in *Arabia* the *Desart*, which City (saith he) when my self was there, was, as I judged, called *Semiscasac*.

Cities of note, in a Country so desart and uninhabited, we must look for few; yet some there are, inhabited by a more civil sort of People, whom they call by the name of *Moors*, giving that of *Arabian* to those only, who living roming and robbing up and down. *Ptolomy* gives the names of forty Cities and Villages in it (*Civitates & vicos*, saith the *Latine*) the memory of most of which is now utterly perished. Those of most observation, 1 *Sabe*, or *Saba*, the habitation of those *Sabeans* who pillaged *Job*; so called from *Sheba*, the Grand-son of *Abraham* by *Keturah*, mentioned *Gen.* 25. 3. of whom, and of the rest of that Line, it is said, in the sixth verse of that chapter, that *Abraham gave them gifts, and sent them away from* Isaac *Eastward, unto the East Country:* now called *Semiscasac*, as is thought by *Melchior*. 2 *Theman*, which possibly may be the Country of *Eliphaz* the *Themanite*, one of the *Visitants* of *Job*. As 3 *Shuah*, on the North hereof, was probably of *Bildad*, another of them, hence sirnamed the *Shuite*. 4 *Tharsacas*, by *Pliny* called *Aphipolis*. 5 *Zagmais*, near the *Persian* Gulf, in the Country of the *Raubeni*, supposed to be descended from *Mishma*, the fourth Son of *Ismael*. 6 *Phunton*, the 36th. 7 *Oboth*, the 37th. Mansion of the Children of *Israel*. 8 *Rheganna*, another of those named by *Ptolomy*, in the Greek Copies called *Beganna*. Of any Town of note now being, more than *Semiscasac*, beforenamed, I find nothing certain.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, of whom there is any certain Constat, where the Posterity of *Huz*, the Son of *Nachor*, and the Sons of *Abraham* by *Keturah*; of whose being setled in these parts, we had before good testimony from the Book of God: and intermix'd with them lived some of the Descendents of *Ismael* also. For if the *Adubeni*, whom *Ptolomy* calleth the *Agubeni*, fetch their original from *Adheel* the third, and the *Raubeni* from *Mishmai* the fifth Son of *Ismael*, as some say they do, I see no reason but the whole Country might be called *Kedar*, from *Kedar* the second Son, as well as from the tawny complexions of the People of it. From them descended the Tribes or Nations spoken of by *Ptolomy*, that is to say, the *Orcheni*, *Chaucabeni*, *Ausitæ*, *Masceni*, *Materni*, and *Agræi*, besides the *Adubeni*, and *Raubeni*, already specified. But being a dis-joynted People, not under any setled form of Government, not possessed of any thing worth looking after, they were either held not worth the conquering, in regard of their penury; or else unconquerable, in respect of their Country, impassable for great Armies, by reason of the rolling Sands, and want of all things. Yet I conceive, that lying so near to the *Chaldæans*, they followed the Fortunes of that mighty Monarchy: Subjects unto it whilst it stood, and after Tributaries unto those who successively possessed themselves of the Supreme Power. Not looked at by the *Romans*, or regarded by them, who aimed at Wealth as well as Honour in their Expedition: nor otherwise subject to the *Turk* at this present time, than as they make use of him and his protection in their frequent Robberies: but counted of as a part of the *Turkish* Empire, because the more civil *Arabians* are indeed his Subjects.

2 *ARABIA PETRÆA.*

ARABIA PETRÆA (now called *Baraab*, and *Barthalaba*) hath on the East *Arabia Deserta*, and part of *Sinus Persicus*, or the Bay of *Persia*; on the West, the *Isthmus* which joyneth *Africa* to *Asia*, and part of the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; on the North, *Palestine*; and on the South a long Ridge of Mountains, which divide it from *Arabia Felix*.

It had this name either from the rockiness of the Soil hereof, or more properly from *Petra*, the chief City of it, called also by *Æthicus*, *Sicaria*, but I know not why: by the *Hebrews*, *Chus*, generally translated *Æthiopia*; by *William* of *Tyre*, *Arabia secunda*, *Felix* being reckoned for the first. By *Strabo*, *Ptolomy*, and *Pliny*, it is called *Nabathæa*, which name it had from *Nabiaoth*, the eldest of the twelve Sons of *Ismael*; though properly that name belonged only to those parts of it which lay next *Judæa*: fruitful, though joyning to the Desarts: and thus remembred by the Poet, as an Eastern Country.

Eurus ad Auroram, Nabathæaque regna recessit.
Eurus unto the East did flie,
Where fruitful *Nabathe* doth lie.

The Country much of the same nature with the other, but in some parts thereof more fertile, if well manured: and in the time of *Marcellinus*, affirmed to be a rich Land, flourishing with variety of Trade and Traffick. But for the most part full of untravellable Desarts, except to those which carry their provisions with them for fear of starving, and go in great Companies, or *Caravans*, for fear of robbing: and yet much travelled by Merchants who traffick into *Ægypt* and *Babylonia*; the Commodities whereof they lay on *Camels*, which are the Ships of *Arabia*, as their Seas, the Desarts. For upon one of these *Camels*, they will lay ordinarily 600 and sometimes 1000 pound weight: yet not afford him water above once in four days, not oftner in fourteen, if there be occasion. So that the *Camel* carrying so great a burden, and seldom fewer than 500 going in one Voyage, the Merchant, if he scapeth robbing, makes a rich Return. Of these Desarts, the most memorable are those of *Sin* and *Pharan*, in which the *Israelites* so long wandred: not beautified with Grass, nor adorned with Trees, the Palm only excepted; nor furnished with Water, but by Rain or Miracle.

The People of it, for the most part, descended of the Sons of *Chus* and *Ismael*, intermixed with the *Madianites*, descending from *Abraham* by *Keturah*, and the *Amalekites*, descended probably from *Amaleck*, the Grand-son of *Esau*, mentioned *Gen.* 3. 6. but all united at the last in the name of *Saracens*. This name derived, as some think, from *Sarra* signifying a Desart, and *saken* which signifieth to inhabit, because they live for the most part in these desart places: as others say, from *Sarak*, signifying a Thief or Robber, agreeable to that of *Arabia*, before delivered. This last most sutable to their nature, and best likeed by *Scaliger*. *Saraceni à vicinis dicuntur ab Elsarak*; i. e. λησρικοὶ ληιαδικοὶ, *quod rapinis victitent*. So he, in his second Book *de Emend. Temp.* A People not reckoned in the former times, till made remarkable by their Conquest of a great part of the World; but always counted warlike and Martial men. Of whom take this Character out of *Marcellinus*. "The "*Saracens* (saith he) whom we are neither to wish for "our Friends nor Enemies, are a Martial People, half "naked, clad as far as the groin with painted Cassocks, "ranging up and down on *Camels*, and swift Horses, as "well in peace as troublesome times. Not used unto the "Plough, to plant Trees, or get their living by Tillage; "they wander from one place to another, without house "or home, or any constant dwelling place, or the use "of Laws; nor can they long endure the same either "Air or Soil, the manner of their Lives being always "flitting,

"flitting, like ravenous Kites; which if they chance to "spy a prey, snatch it up in their flight: or if they chance "to fasten on it as it lieth on the ground, they make no "long stay. Their food is chiefly upon Venison, and "store of Milk, herbs which they gather from the "ground, and birds which they get by fowling; but "altogether ignorant of Corn and Wine. Their Wives "they only hire for a time, though for a shew of Matri-"mony they present their Husbands with a Spear and a "Tent, as in way of Dowry; but they part with them "when they please. Both Sexes most extremely given "to carnal lusts, the women as rambling as the men, "married in one place, and brought to bed in another; "leaving their Children where they fall, without more care of them. So far, and to this purpose he.

Rivers of note here are not many. The principal are, 1 That called *Trajanus amnis*, or the River of *Trajan*, which passing through this Country endeth his course in the *Red Sea*. 2 *Rhinocorura*, called in Scripture the *torrent* of *Ægypt*, which rising in this Country, and passing by the borders of *Idumæa*, hath its fall in the Lake of *Sirbon*; and together with the waters thereof loseth it self at last in the *Mediterranean*.

With Mountains it is better stored, and those of eminent observation, as 1 Mount *Sinai*, famous in all Ages for the promulgation of the Law; and of late times, for a Monastery of *Maronites* on the top thereof. The hill so high, that both shores of the *Red Sea* may be thence seen; but easie of ascent, by reason of steps cut out of the rock: which notwithstanding, he that beginneth to go up it at the break of day, will hardly overcome the top of it till the afternoon. The Monastery made an Episcopal See, and formerly very well endowed, as appeareth by the Letters of *Eugenius* Bishop thereof to the Arch-Duke *Charls*, *Anno* 1569. complaining that the *Turk* had sold all their Lands, and that himself and the Monks were fain to pawn their holy Vessels, and take up money on Usury. Here is also a *Mesque*, or *Mesquit* of *Turks*, who resort in pilgrimage to this hill, as well as the Christian. 2 Mount *Horeb*, where the *Israelites* worshipped the *Molten Calf*, about a mile and a half distant from Mount *Sinai*, but not so high: on the top of which is a Church also; and a Monastery of *Coloires*, or *Greek Monks*, at the bottom, exceeding hospitable to strangers, whom they entertain of free cost, and cheerfully shew them all the places worth observation, which the Scripture mentioneth in that tract. Both hills by *Ptolomy* called *Melani*, or the Black Mountains; the last now called *Orel*. 3 Mount *Hor*, bordering on *Idumæa*; and memorable for the death of *Aaron*.

Places of most observation, 1 *Petra*, the name given to this part, at first called *Recem*, and at that time belonging to *Midian*: afterwards called *Sela*, when pertaining to the *Idumæans*. But falling under the power of the *Arabians*, it is now called *Crat*. Best known in holy Scriptures by the name of *Selah*, beforementioned, which signifies the same with the *Latine Petra*. A City of great note and strength in all times foregoing, taken by *Amaziah* the King of *Judah*, 2 *Kings* 14. 7. and by him called *Jock-heel*; but in vain besieged by *Scaurus*, a *Roman* General, who finding the place to be impregnable, was content by the perswasion of *Antipater*, to take a sum of money and raise his siege. Nor did the Emperour *Trajan* speed much better at it, his Souldiers being still beat off in all their assaults, the very next man to him slain with a Dart, and himself forced to cast away his *Imperial* habit, and flie for his life; the heavens themselves, if *Dion* (who is never sparing of the like prodigies) may be believed, fighting against the *Romans* with thunder, lightning, whirlwinds, and tempests, as often as they made any approaches to it: But in the end subdued with the rest of the Country. In such esteem, by reason of the strength of it, by the *Soldans* of *Ægypt*, that they kept here their choicest treasures; and in the course of the *Holy Wars*, much aimed at by the *Turks* and *Christians*, as the Key that opened the Gates of *Palestine*; on the South border whereof, not far from Mount *Hor*, beforementioned, the Town is situate. The *Metropolis* of the Province when first under the *Romans*; and made the Seat of a *Latine* Bishop, when the Christians of the West were the Lords thereof. 2 *Bosra*, said to have been built by *Augustus Cæsar*, because by him repaired, when decayed and ruined; afterwards by *Alexander Severus* made a Colony of the *Romans*. This last most certain, and for such testified by this ancient inscription, in an ancient Coyn, *COL. BOSTRAIN. T. R. ALEXANDRIANÆ.* Memorable also for the birth of *Philip* the Emperour, one of that *Alexander*'s next Successours; by whom it was caused for a time to be called *Philippus*; for the *Metropolitan* dignity removed hither from *Petra*, somewhat before the time of *Justinian*, but by whom I find not; and for being the Episcopal See of *Titus* (hence sirnamed) *Bostrenus*, a reverend Father of the Church in the time of *Julian* the *Apostate*. A City of as great antiquity as the most that be, mentioned, *Gen.* 36. 33. though there accounted of as a City of *Edom*, to which at that time it did belong, and is still remaining, and well known by the name of *Bussereth*. 3 *Elama*, on a bay of the *Red Sea*, called hence *Sinus Elamiticus*. 4 *Phara*, reckoned by *Ptolomy* for a chief Town of this Tract, from whence the Wilderness of *Paran* seems to take its name. 5 *Berenice*, so called from some of the Queens of *Ægypt*, but better known by the name of *Ezion-geber*, one of the Stations or Incampings of the Children of *Israel*; and made by *Solomon* the ordinary harbour for his Ships, which sailed to *Ophir* in the *East-Indies*. 6 *Sur*, the chief City of the *Amalekites*, giving name to the Wilderness or Desart of *Sur*, coming close up to it: remarkable for the first incamping of the Tribes of *Israel* after their miraculous passage over the *Red Sea*; and the defeat which *Saul* gave to the *Amalekites*, whom he smote from *Havilah*, to this place. 7 *Havilah*, so called from *Havilah* the son of *Chus*, being the furthest border of these *Amalekites* and *Ismaelites*, on the Gulf of *Persia*, as *Sur* was on the *Red Sea* or Gulf of *Arabia*. 1 *Madian*, so called of *Madian*, the son of *Abraham* by *Ketura*, situate towards the *Red Sea* also; the City of *Jethro*, whose Daughter *Zipporah* was the Wife of *Moses*: who flying from the Court of *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*, was by Gods secret providence directed hither: that keeping the Flocks of *Jethro* in the Desarts adjoyning, he might acquaint himself with the ways and passages, through which he was after to lead the house of *Israel*. 9 *Rephaim*, the encamping place of *Moses*, where he discomfited the *Amalekites*; and to which the said *Jethro* came to him with his Wife and Children, advising him to ease himself of some part of that burden, which the Government of so great a People would else bring upon him. 10 *Kadesh-barnea*, the station of the Tribes, when the Spies which were sent to discover the Land of *Canaan*, returned back unto them; memorable for the death of *Miriam* the Prophetess. And 11 *Thara*, no less memorable for the mutiny and punishment of *Corah*, *Dathan*, and *Abiram*, the place remembred *Numb.* 33. 27. But others will have 12 *Mahbelah*, mentioned *v.* 25. of that Chapter, to be the stage of that action, the Scriptures being silent in this particular. The rest of their encamping places, being most of them in this part of *Arabia*, I omit of purpose, as obvious in the Scripture unto every Reader: as I do also some of the Cities of *Moab* and *Ammon*, accounted of by *Ptolomy*,

lomy, as Cities of this Province; but ſpoken of already in our Deſcription of *Paleſtine*, to which more properly belonging.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Midianites*, the *Iſmaelites*, the *Amalekites*, and the Children of *Chus*; who dwelling promiſcuouſly together, are ſometimes uſed for one another: the Merchants which bought *Joſeph* of his Brethren, being indifferently called *Midianites*, and *Iſmaelites*, *Gen.*37.28. and *Zipporah* the wife of *Moſes*, who queſtionleſs was a Daughter of *Madian*, being by *Miriam*, and *Aaron*, called an *Ethiopian* or *Chuſite*, as in way of reproach, *Numb.*12.1. But being they were different Nations, and ſuch as had ſome ſpecial engagement with or againſt the Children of *Iſrael*, we will conſider them by themſelves, till we have brought them into one body, by the name of *Chuſites*, *Ethiopians*, or *Arabians*, which are all the ſame.

And firſt, the *MADIANITES* were ſuch of the poſterity of *Madian*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Ketura*, who preſerving the knowledg of the true God, withdrew themſelves from all communion with the Idolatrous *Canaanites*, at ſuch time as the reſt of their brethren did aſſociate with them; and ſetled themſelves more towards the banks of the *Red Sea*, where they did all good offices to the Children of *Iſrael*, as they paſſed through their Country. Of theſe the *Kenites* were a branch, as appeareth *Judg.*1.16. where *Jethro* the Prince or Prieſt of *Madian*, is called a *Kenite:* ſome of which turned *Proſelytes*, and dwelt with the *Iſraelites* in *Canaan*; of which Race *Heber* the *Kenite*, the husband of *Jael*, who ſlew *Siſera*, was undoubtedly one. The reſt, continuing mingled with the *Amalekites*, till the time of *Saul*, were by him warned (in memory of former courteſies) to withdraw themſelves from them, leſt they ſhould periſh with them in the ſame deſtruction. Afterwards we hear little of either people, loſing their name in the greater Nation of the *Iſmaelites*, with whom intermingled, or paſſing with them in the ſame common notion of *Arabians*, *Chuſites*, or *Ethiopians*.

Secondly, Nor were the *AMALEKITES*, though a greater and more powerful Nation, of much more continuance; deſcended, as it is conceived, from *Amalek*, the Grand-ſon of *Eſau* (though I deny not but there are ſome reaſons to be urged againſt that opinion) and planted on the back of the *Edomites*, as their Guard or *Out-work*. A people miſchievouſly bent againſt thoſe of *Iſrael*, as if they had inherited the hatred which *Eſau* their fore-father did bear to *Jacob*, whom they violently ſet on at *Rephidim*, when they ſuppoſed them ſpent and wearied with their flight from *Ægypt*. And though diſcomfited in that battel, yet they continued in their malice againſt the *Tribes*, joyning firſt with the *Canaanites* againſt them when they were in their March; and after with the *Midianites*, when not well ſetled in their new poſſeſſion. A provocation ſo ill taken by the *Lord of Hoſts*, becauſe unnatural, and ill grounded, that he declared his reſolution from the time of the Battel of *Rephidim*, to put *out the remembrance of Amalek from under Heaven*, *Exod.*17.14. Accordingly, when the Children of *Iſrael* were provided for it, he commanded *Saul* to ſet upon them, and to ſlay both man and woman, infant and ſuckling, yea, their ſheep and cattel. But ſome of them eſcaped this ſlaughter, and fell not long after upon *Ziglag*, the retiring place of *David*, which they took and ranſacked; but being by him followed on the firſt intelligence, they were eaſily overthrown, and the prey recovered. Their malice yet ſurvived their power; and what they could not do by their Forces, they endeavoured to effect by joyning with the *Ammonites*, *Moabites*, and other Enemies of *David*, in their Wars againſt him. And this was *ultimum conamen*, one of the laſt flaſhes of their dying light: nothing done by them worth remembrance of the times ſucceeding, moſt of the Nation being worn out, and thoſe few which were left, retiring to the Mountains of *Edom*, but thereof alſo diſpoſſeſſed by the *Simeonites*, during the reign of *Hezekiah*.

Thirdly, The *ISMAELITES*, deſcending from *Iſmael*, the ſon of *Abraham* by *Hagar*, branched into twelve great Nations, and grown wondrous populous, ſpred themſelves over a great part of theſe three *Arabia*'s: all of them either *Thieves* or *Merchants*; trading to *Ægypt* in *Spicery*, and *Balm*, and *Myrrhe*, or robbing thoſe which traded in the like commodities. Called alſo *Hagarens* in the Scripture, as *1 Chron.*5.10. *Pſal.*83.6, &c. and by that name well known to many of the ancient Writers. A people for the moſt part of a vagabond and roguiſh life, more given to ſpoil, than any honeſt courſe of living, which made every Traveller and Merchant to be armed againſt them; ſo verifying the prediction which was given to *Iſmael*, that he ſhould be a wild man, *having his hand againſt every man, and every mans hand againſt him.* St. *Hierom* ſo conceives that Prophecy to have been accompliſhed. More fitly verifyed perhaps, when in and under the name of *Saracens*, (by which, and by the name of *Scenites*, they were moſt generally known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*) they made ſuch foul havock in the world, and were eſteemed the common Enemies of all Civil Nations. Never ſo governable in their beſt and moſt orderly times, as to acknowledge King or Law, till made one body with the *Chuſites*, and the reſt of thoſe Nations: and then no further, than it ſtood with their luſt or liking.

Fourthly, As for the *Chuſites*, though they permitted the Nations above ſpecified, to inhabit in thoſe Deſarts and waſte places, which themſelves either could not people, or cared not for; yet were they always of moſt power, and gave name to that whole tract of ground, containing now all *Petræa*, the South part of *Deſerta*, and the Mountains which divide *Petræa* from *Arabia Felix*; which from them was called *Chus*, or the Land of *Chus*. Rendred in all places of the *Old Teſtament*, by the name of *Ethiopia*, firſt by the *Septuagint*, and afterwards by all the Fathers *Greek* and *Latine*, the *Vulgar* Tranſlation of the Bible, and almoſt all the other Tranſlations at this day extant. And rendred right enough at firſt, as in all times ſince, though by ſome miſtaken: who having never heard of any other *Ethiopia* than that in *Affrick*, have transferred thither all thoſe actions and Texts of Scripture, which are meant of this. The *Septuagint*, no doubt, were not ſo ignorant of the affairs of their next neighbouring Nation, as not to know by what name they were called by the *Greeks*, their then Lords and Maſters. And he that looks into the Hiſtory of *Herodotus*, who lived 150 years before that Tranſlation, will find, that by the *Grecians* they were called *Ethiopians*; and called ſo queſtionleſs from the ſelf ſame reaſon; that is to ſay, the ſwarthineſs, or Sun-burntneſs of their complexion, as the *Ethiops* of *Affrick* were, that name being framed of the *Greek* word Αἴθω, ſignifying to burn; and Ὤψ, a countenance, by reaſon of their tawny and Sun-burnt Countenances. For ſpeaking of the huge Army of *Xerxes* againſt the *Greeks*, he doth thus proceed, Ἀραβίων δὲ καὶ Αἰθιόπων τῶν ὑπὸ Αἴγυπτον ἐστρατήγεε Ἀρσάμης, &c. "*Arſames*, (ſaith he) was Captain of the "*Arabians*, (he meaneth the *Troglodites*) and *Ethiopians*, "which are beyond *Ægypt*: but the Eaſtern *Ethiopians* "were ranked with the *Indians*, nothing differing from "the other in the ſtructure of their bodies, but their "hair and voice only; the *Eaſtern Ethiopians* wearing "their hair ſmooth, thoſe of *Lybia* curled. The *Ethiops*

"of

" of *Asia* were armed like the *Indians*, but the *Ethiops of* " *Africa* were arayed with the skins of beasts. Here then we have an *Asian Ethiopia* in the time of *Herodotus*; the same acknowledged by *Pausanias* an old *Greek* Writer, and by *Philostratus* after him, though they look for it in the wrong place: the first among the *Seres*, in the North of *Asia*; the other on the River *Ganges*, too much in the East. Nor doth *Æthicus*, one of the old *Cosmographers*, published by *Simlerus*, shoot more near the mark, who speaking of the River *Tigris*, saith that it burieth it self, and runneth under the ground in *Ethiopia*. Which though *Simler* doth interpret of these parts of *Arabia*; yet questionless that Author meaneth it of the Country about Mount *Taurus*, where that River doth indeed run under ground, and having passed under those vast Mountains, riseth up again.

But what need further search be made to find out the situation of this *Ethiopia*, when it is bounded out so plainly in the holy Scriptures? For when it is said of *Zipporah* the Wife of *Moses*, that she was an *Ethiopian* woman, *Numb.* 12. 1. who is well known to have been a Native of this Country; and when it is said in 2 *Chron.* 21. 16. that *the Lord stirred up against Jehoram the spirit of the Philistims, and of the Arabians that were near the Ethiopians*, it must needs be that the *Ethiopia* there spoken, must be conterminous to the rest of *Arabia*, and be intended of that Country wherein *Madian* was. So where God threatneth by the mouth of the Prophet *Ezekiel*, that he *would lay waste the Land of Ægypt, from the Tower of Syene, even unto the borders of Ethiopia*, Chap. 29. 10. that is to say, from one end thereof unto the other, it followeth necessarily, that *Ethiopia* there meant, must be this part of *Arabia*, or the Land of *Chus*, as the bound of *Ægypt* most remote from the Tower of *Syene*, which all *Geographers* acknowledg to be in the extreme South parts thereof, towards the *Cataracts* of *Nilus*. For to expound it, as some do, of *Ethiopia* in *Affrick*, on the borders whereof *Syene* stood; and stood so indifferently betwixt it and *Ægypt*, that *Stephanus*, an ancient Writer, makes it very doubtful to which of the two it did belong, were to make the Scripture speak plain *non-sense*: as plain as if a man should say, that the *French* conquered all the *Netherlands* from *Graveling* to *Flanders*; or that the Sword hath ranged over all *England*, from *Berwick* to *Scotland*. As then we have found this *Ethiopia* of the *Old Testament* to be near the *Philistims* on the one side, and the Land of *Ægypt* on the other; so may we find it to be bounded also on the East, with *Babylonia* or *Chaldea*: the River *Gihon*, which is said to compass the whole Land of *Ethiopia*, (or the Land of *Chus*) *Gen.* 2. 13. being no other than a branch of the River *Euphrates*, which falleth into the Lakes of *Chaldea*. So that the Translation of the *Septuagint* in reading *Chusites*, or the Land of *Chus*, by *Ethiopia*, needs no such alteration or emendation as some men suppose. The mistakes (whereof there have been many) which arise from hence, not being to be charged on them, or on their *Translation*, but on the *Ignorance* of the *Reader*, or *Error* of such *Expositors*, who dreaming of no other *Ethiopia* than *of that in Affrick*, have made the Scriptures speak such things as it never meant, and carried these *Chusites* into the *African Ethiopia*, where they never were. And yet perhaps it may be said, that the Posterity of *Chus*, being straitened in their own possessions, or willing to seek new adventures, might have crossed over the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia* (being but seven miles broad where narrowest) and mingling with the Sons of *Ludim* on the other side, might either give the name of *Ethiopians* to them, or receive it from them.

Now to go forwards with the story, the first great action attributed to these *Chusites*, or *Arabian Ethiops*, incorporated with the rest of those mingled Nations, is the expedition of *Zerah*, the King hereof, against *Asa* King of *Judah*, drawing after him an Army of a *Million*, and three hundred Chariots of War (the greatest Army ever read of in unquestioned story) but for all that, discomfited by the *Lord of Hosts*, on the prayers of *Asa*; and all the spoyl of that huge Army carried to *Hierusalem*. After this *Tirhakah*, another of these *Ethiopian* Kings, finding how dangerous the great growth of the *Assyrian* Kingdom might prove unto him, prepared a puissant Army against *Sennacherib*, then besieging *Libna*, threatning the conquest of all *Judah*, and invading *Ægypt*: upon the news of whose approach, *Sennacheribs* forces, which were even upon the gaining of *Pelusium*, the Gate of *Ægypt*, were fain to dislodge and provide for their safety. For though *Herodotus* call *Sennacherib* King of *Arabia*, and *Assyria*, yet was he Master only of those parts of *Arabia*, which had been formerly possessed by the Kings of *Israel*, being no more than some few Cities of *Petræa*, bordering next unto them: or perhaps called so only in respect of those parts of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*, which were sometimes comprehended under the name of *Arabia*, as before is said. What part they after took in the great War betwixt *Nebuchadnezzar*, and *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*, is not hard to say. For besides that the same *Reasons of State*, obliging them to side with the *Ægyptian*, were stil in force; their giving *Necho* leave to pass through their Country with his Army, to invade the *Babylonians* on the banks of *Euphrates*, make that plain enough. Now that both *Tirhakah* and *Zera* were Kings of this *Asian*, and not of the *African Ethiopia*, is most clear and evident; partly in regard the Kings of *Ægypt* would never suffer such huge Armies to pass thorough the whole length of their Dominions: but principally because it is said in the holy Scriptures, that *Asa* having overthrown that vast Army of *Zerah*, smote all the Cities about *Gerar*, which formerly had belonged unto the *Philistims*, but were then possessed by these *Chusites* and their Associates. After this, either as *Confederates* or Subjects, we find them aiding unto *Xerxes*, in his war on *Greece*: and like enough it was, that in *Alexander*'s March from *Ægypt* towards *Persia*, they submitted to him, as did all the other Countries thorow which he passed. He being dead, *Antigonus*, one of his great Commanders, sent *Athenæus* with an Army to bring them in, who being trained into an ambush was discomfited by them; *Demetrius* the son of *Antigonus*, thinking that he had done enough in revenge of that overthrow, by compelling them to sue for peace. In the time of the *Seleucian* Race in *Syria*, we find them governed by Kings of their own, most of them called by the name of *Aretas*; of which one was of special note in the declining fortunes of the *Seleucidans*, for bidding very fair for the Crown of that Country; and being a stickler in the Wars of *Jewry*, in the time of *Hircanus* the fourth King of the Race of the *Maccabees*, to whom, at the request of *Antipater*, the Father of *Herod*, he gave hopes of aid; and on those hopes was possessed of *Medaba*, and other Towns of good importance, which *Alexander* the Father of *Hircanus* had regained from the *Syrians*, and laid unto the Crown of *Jewry*, to which as parts of *Iturea*, and anciently possessed by the Tribes of *Israel*, he might make some claim. Another there was of the same name, and of no less power, whom we find to have been warred upon by *Herod*, about the time of the battel of *Actium*, and for the most part vanquished by him; and finally a third of more power than either, mentioned by St. *Paul*, 2 *Cor.* 11. 32. as Lord of *Damascus*. In the flourishing of the *Roman* fortunes, the King hereof having first aided

aided *Mithridates* and *Tigranes*, in the War againſt them, ſubmitted themſelves unto *Lucullus*, being then no nearer to them than *Armenia Major*. The like they did to *Pompey* alſo, being then in *Judæa*. Firſt vanquiſhed by *Ælius Gallus* in the time of *Auguſtus*; but the victory not improved to an abſolute conqueſt, till the time of *Trajan*, when partly by his perſonal preſence, and partly by the valour and good fortune of *Palma*, his Lieutenant, they were fully vanquiſhed, and brought into the form of a *Roman* Province: but ſo, that they had Kings of their own (*Vaſſals* and *Feudataries*, of the Empire) as in former times; continuing in that condition till the riſe of *Mahomet*. Of which more hereafter.

3 *ARABIA FELIX.*

ARABIA FELIX, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the *Perſian*; on the Weſt, with the *Arabian* Gulf; on the North, with a long ridge of Mountains, which part it from *Deſerta* and *Petræa*; and on the South, with the boundleſs Ocean. Environed on three parts with the Sea, on the fourth with rough, impaſſable Mountains; in ſituation and figure much reſembling *Italy*.

It had the name of *Arabia Felix* from the fertility and happy condition of it, being eſteemed the moſt fruitful & pleaſant Country in all *Aſia*, abounding with *Myrrhe*, *Balſamum*, *Frankincenſe*, *Gold*, and *Precious Stones*: by *Curtius* called *Odorum fertilitate nobilis Regio*, from the abundance of *Frankincenſe*, wherewith enriched beyond all others. Concerning which there goeth a ſtory, that when *Alexander* in his Adolecency or Voyage, was ſacrificing to the gods, and caſt into the fire with both hands great ſtore of *Frankincenſe* and *Myrrhe*, *Leonidas* his Governour, bid him be more ſparing of thoſe precious and dear Commodities, till he was Maſter of the Country in which they grew. Which *Alexander* remembring, when he had brought almoſt all the Eaſt under his obedience, he ſent unto *Leonidas* a Ship-laden with *Frankincenſe*, bidding him from thenceforth ſerve the gods more liberally. But as well for the reaſon of this adjunct, as a more perfect character and deſcription of it, take along this of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who deſcribes it thus: "On the Eaſt and South hereof (ſaith he) "are the *Happy Arabians*: ſo called becauſe ſo rich in "Corn; as well as plenteous in Cattel, Vines, and *Odo-* "*riferous Spices* of all kinds; ſhut up betwixt the *Red* "*Sea*, and the *Perſian* Gulf, and ſo acquainted with all "bleſſings which either Element can afford: well furni- "ſhed with *Roads*, and quiet Harbours for Shipping, the "Towns of Trade and Merchandize ſtanding very "thick; the retiring Houſes of the Kings, paſſing neat "and ſumptuous. Beſides moſt wholſom fountains of "*medicinal* waters, they enjoy divers Brooks and Rivers "very clear and pure, and a temperature of Air exceed- "ding healthy; ſo that whoſoever conſidereth all things "aright, may well conclude, that there is nothing want- "ing to the accompliſhment of its felicity in the higheſt "degree. So *Ammianus Marcelinus*. To which we need add nothing more to ſet forth its happineſs, than that *Danæus* in his Comment on St. *Auguſtin's Enchiridion ad Laurentium*, is perſwaded that it was the *local* place of *Paradiſe*. *Dicitur* (ſaith he) *Paradiſi terreſtris Regio pars quædam eſſe* Arabiæ, *quæ nunc dicitur* Fœlix. But it hath other names beſides this of *Felix*. By the *Arabians* themſelves called *Jeman*, and *Al-jeman* (*Ayaman* corruptly by the *Turks*) which in that tongue ſignifieth the South, or *Southern Region*. By *Virgil* it is named *Panchaia*, *quaſi tota debiſcens*, becauſe of the many chops and chinks which the ardour of the Sun makes in the Sands thereof, though by him much extolled alſo for its plenty of *Frankincenſe*.

Totaque thuriferis Panchaia *pingis arenis.*
Famed are the whole *Panchaian* Lands,
For rich and Incenſe-bearing ſands.

The People anciently, though more civil than the reſt of the *Arabians*, had yet many ſtrange and barbarous cuſtoms. *Adultery* amongſt them was puniſhed with death, as in other places; but only he was held an *Adulterer*, which enjoyed any that was not his own kinſwoman, be ſhe his Siſter or his Mother; and ſo they kept themſelves in their own Families; Community of wives or women was eſteemed no crime. And of this there is a Tale in *Strabo*, that the King of this Country had fifteen Sons, and but one Daughter, who according to the Cuſtoms hereof, was the common Wife of all her Brethren; every of which had a *Staff* of like making, which when he went in unto his Siſter he did leave at the door; and by ſo doing did bid entrance unto the reſt, till it were removed. The young Lady, wearied with a continual exceſs of dalliance, ſecretly procured a *Staff* like unto the reſt, which when ſhe was deſirous to prohibit their acceſſes to her, ſhe left at her Chamber door; and by that means did many times enjoy her deſired privacy. At laſt it hapned that all the Brothers being together, one of them departed towards his Siſters Lodging, where finding a *Staff* before the door, and knowing that he had his Brethren in one place together, he accuſed her of *Adultery*: but the truth being made known, the Lady was quitted, and their viſits afterwards reſtrained. Of *dead bodies* they took no care, not ſo much as of their *Chiefs* or *Princes*; but left them to the cuſtody of the next *dung-hill*. They bragged much of their deſcent from *Jupiter*; and neglected all Sciences and Arts, as diſparagements to ſo great Nobility. Commendable only in the keeping of their faith and promiſes, and in that moſt punctual. Much of the ſame condition are the preſent Inhabitants, ſave that leſs faithful in their Contracts; and by their Law reſtrained from medling with the wives of others, permitted many of their own. Some there are of them which apply themſelves to the grazing of Cattel, and the reſt to Merchandize, wherein very cautious and cunning; but hating to this day all *Mechanical* Arts. A Nation from the beginning unmixed with others, till the coming of the *Turks* amongſt them, of which but few, and thoſe diſpoſed of in Garriſons: boaſting of their Nobility, and *glorying* in nothing more than their greateſt ſhame, namely that the falſe Prophet *Mahomet* was their Country-man; whole impieties are here generally embraced, and followed.

Amongſt the rarities of this Country, ſome account the *Phœnix*, which growing old burneth her ſelf in a neſt of *Spices*, and from thence a young one ingendered; one of them only at a time, which after a life of five or ſix hundred years, thus reneweth her kind. But this *tradition*, queſtioned in former times by *Pliny* & ſome others, is now proved a *Fiction*, contrary both unto divinity and natural reaſon: though ſome of the Fathers made uſe of it as an argument to prove the *Reſurrection* againſt the *Gentiles*, by whom the *tradition* was believed. More common, but of no leſs obſervation, is the *Oſtrich*, a Bird which ſwalloweth all it findeth, be it Stones or Iron. They delight chiefly in the *Deſarts*, in the ſands whereof they lay their Eggs, and then forgetting where they left them, ſit on thoſe they meet next. In that reſpect acounted for a ſimple Fowl, though otherwiſe of wit enough to preſerve themſelves; keeping in flocks, and oftentimes with their fearful ſhreeches affrighting *Paſſengers*, to whom they do appear afar off like a Troop of Horſmen. Their wings, too little for their bodies, ſerve them not

for

or flight, but to run more ſpeedily; and by that means not eaſily caught, though much laid in wait for, for their Skins, which the People ſell unto the Merchant with their Feathers on them. Nor of leſs note is the *Frankincenſe*, though of common uſe; almoſt peculiar to this Country, and here but to thoſe parts thereof which we formerly poſſeſſed by the *Sabæi*: the Wood out of which the *Gum* proceedeth, being about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; gathered only in *Spring* and *Autumn*. More of this anon.

The Country is much commended by *Ammianus* for plenty of Rivers, the principal whereof are ſaid by *Ptolomy* to be, 1 *Betius*, 2 *Prion*, 3 *Harman*, 4 *Lar*; but the modern names thereof I find not. Many fair *Lakes*, and ſtore of large capacious *Bays* on each coaſt of the Sea, 1 *Sinus Elaniticus*. 2 *Sachalites*. 3 *Leanites*. 4 *Sinus Magorum*. 5 *Sinus Jebthyphagorum*. 6 *Meſſanites*. 7 *Sacer Sinus*, or the Holy Bay; and 8 The Road or *Naval Station* called *Neogilla*. Mountains of moſt note, 1 Thoſe which are called *Melanes*, at the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf. 2 *Cabubuthra*, at the entrance of the *Red Sea* or *Gulf* of *Arabia*. 3 *Hippus*. 4 *Prionotus*, not far from the River *Prion*, from whence ſo denominated. 5 *Climax*. 6 The Mountains called *Didymi*, &c.

Towns of good note in ancient times it had very many, no Region affording unto *Ptolomy* the names of more; and amongſt thoſe, many commodious Ports for Traffick, the Sea begirting it for the ſpace of 3000 miles and upwards. Of moſt importance and obſervation in thoſe times, were, 1 *Zebrum*, 2 *Badeo*, 3 *Rhabana*, 4 *Carman*, 5 *Manambis*, 6 *Sabe*, 7 *Are*; The Royal Seats of ſo many ſeveral Kingdoms, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the Title of *Regiæ*. Then there are, 1 *Maocoſmos*, 2 *Meara*, 3 *Negara*, 4 *Sabbatha*, 5 *Mapha*, and 6 *Saphar*, which he called *Metropoles*; as being the head Cities of ſome ſeveral Nations. Amongſt the Ports he reckoneth, 1 *Soſippus*, 2 *Trulla*, 3 *Treſtos*, 4 *Cryptus*, 5 *Iſamos*, and 6 *Moſcha*: amongſt the moſt noted *Empories* or Towns of Traffick, 1 *Muſa*, 2 *Oceanus*, 3 *Arabia*, 4 *Cane*. Beſides which, there are ſome which do preſerve the memory of their firſt Plantations, as 1 *Saphta*, upon the *Perſian* Gulf; ſo called from *Sabta*, the third Son of *Chus*. 2 *Rhegama*, or *Regma* (as the *Greek* Copies of *Ptolomy* have it) ſo named from *Regma* or *Raama* the ſixth Son; on the ſame Gulf alſo. 3. *Sabe*, on the Shores of the *Red Sea*. And 4 *Sabe Regia*, more within the Land, ſo named from *Sheba* the eldeſt Son of the ſame *Chus*, from whom the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabæans* are to be derived. Out of all which, and many others by him named, we ſhall take more particular notice of ſome that follow. 1 *Muſa*, a noted Port on the entrance of the *Red Sea*, frequented anciently by the *Ethiopian* and *Ægyptian* Merchants: who there laded their Ships with *Frankincenſe*, *Myrrhe*, *Spices*, and other Commodities of this Country, bringing in, in exchange thereof, Saffron, Corn, Wine, Ointments, Purple Dies, &c. 2 *Sabe*, the Regal Seat of the Kings of the *Sabæans*, particularly of that Queen ſo memorized in holy Scripture; called in the Old Teſtament the *Queen of Sheba*, from her Country and place of dwelling; in the New Teſtament the *Queen of the South*, becauſe of the Southern ſituation of it in reſpect of *Judæa*: ſaid there to come from the furtheſt parts of the World, becauſe there was no part of the World which lay South to the Country of the *Sabæans*, over which ſhe reigned. Situate on a little Mountain, affirmed by *Agatharcides* to be πολὺ κάλλιστον τῶν κατὰ τὴν Ἀραβίαν, the moſt beautiful by far in all *Arabia*, and the *Metropolis* of the rich and potent Nation of the *Sabæans*: rich in all the excellencies of *Nature*, eſpecially in *Frankincenſe*, a Gum peculiar to them only, and growing here in a Wood of about 100 miles long, and 50 broad; not gathered but in the Spring and Autumn, nor then without great care, and many ceremonies. The Country hereabouts from hence called *Thurifera*, and this ſweet Gum appropriated ſolely to it. Sabæi Arabum *propter thura clariſſimi*, as we find in *Pliny*; *Solis eſt thurea virga* Sabæis, as it is in *Virgil*: and finally, ---- *Thuriferos, fœlicia regna*, Sabæos, in the *Argonauticks* of *Valerius Flaccus*. It was called alſo *Mariaba*, and by that name occurreth in ſome ancient Writers. 3 *Saphar*, more towards the *Perſian* Gulf, on the South ſide of the Mountain *Climax*, the chief City of the *Homeritæ*; adorned in times of Chriſtianity with a beautiful Temple. 4 *Sabatha*, or *Sabota*, as *Pliny* calleth it, ſeated about the midſt of the Country, on the top of an high and lofty Hill, from whence it had a gallant proſpect on the Fields adjoyning: anciently large and populous, and ſtrongly fortified, having no fewer than 60 Temples within the Walls; the principal conſecrated unto *Sabis*, the god of their Nation, to whom they offered the Tithe of their *Frankincenſe*, *ubi decimas Deo quem* Sabin *vocant*, *menſura non pondere capiunt Sacerdotes*, as we read in *Pliny*.

But theſe and almoſt all the reſt being grown out of knowledg, there have riſen in their rooms, 1 *Egra*, on the Shore of the *Red Sea*, near the Bay called *Sinus Elaniticus*; by *Ptolomy* called *Arga*, by the *Arabians* themſelves *Algiar*: the Port-Town to *Medina*, from which about three days Journey diſtant. 2 *Jathrib*, or *Jatrib*, in the way betwixt *Algiar* and *Medina*, the birth-place of *Mahomet*; by whom fortified with a mud-wall, as his place of retreat in the firſt beginnings of his Fortunes. 3 *Medina*, commonly called *Medina Talmabi*, corruptly for *Medinathalnabi*, that is to ſay, the City of the *Prophet*; ſo called from the Sepulchre of *Mahomet*, that vile *Impoſtor*, which is there to be ſeen; although not in ſuch an Iron Coffin, or drawn up to the roof of the Temple by vertue of an *Adamant* there placed, as ſome deliver. The Town ſituate in a deſolate and barren place, bordering on *Arabia Petræa*; but of great Trade, rich, and well inhabited: the Sepulchre of that falſe Prophet drawing thither a continual reſort of *Pilgrims*. The Temple gorgeous, having 3000 Lamps in it, which burn continually. The Sepulchre or Tomb encloſed with an Iron Grate, but of no magnificence or beauty: covered with a Carpet of Green Velvet, which is ſent hither yearly by the *Grand Signeur*; the old one being taken off, and cut into innumerable ſhreds or pieces, and ſold for *Relicks* by the Prieſts (to ſuch as come in Pilgrimage thither) to their great enriching. 4 *Cufa*, the ordinary Reſidence of the firſt *Caliphs*, till the removing of the Imperial Seat to *Damaſcus* in *Syria*; and after that, the uſual place of meeting for conſultation in Affairs of State, relating to the peace of this Country, and the Common Intereſt of this People: as memorable for the Sepulchre of *Mortis Hali*, the Progenitor of the *Perſian Sophies*, as *Medina* is for that of *Mahomet*. 5 *Mecca*, ſuppoſed to be the *Mechara* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate in the like barren Soil, not far from *Medina*, but of far greater reſort and traffick: the whole wealth in a manner of this Country, together with the Commodities of *Perſia* and *India*, being firſt brought hither; and from hence on Camels backs tranſported into *Ægypt*, *Syria*, *Paleſtine*, and other parts of the *Turkiſh* Empire. Unwalled, and either for that cauſe, or for concealment of their ſopperies from the eyes of Chriſtians, it is made death for any Chriſtian to come within five miles of it. Utterly deſtitute of Water, but what they keep in Ciſterns, from one ſhowr of rain

to

to another, or else brought thither with great charge; otherwise pleasantly seated, rich, and containing about 6000 Families: Every year visited with three *Caravans*, or Troops of Merchants and Pilgrims, from *India*, *Damascus*, and *Grand Caire*; who having done their business and devotions there, go afterwards in *Pilgrimage* to *Medina* also, to the great enriching of both places. 6 *Ziden*, the Haven-Town to *Meccha*, from which distant about 40 miles, situate on the *Red Sea*, in a sandy soil, unwalled, and much exposed to wind and weather; but wealthy, well-built, and of great resort. 7 *Zebit*, now the *Metropolis* of the Country, situate about half a days Journey from the *Red Sea*, in a large Plain, between two Mountains; a Riveret of the same name passing by it: well-traded for Sugars, Spice and Fruits: the ordinary Residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom taken not long after *Eden*. 8 *Eltor*, a Port Town of this Country, and the only Town where the Christians are suffered to inhabit. 9 *Aden*, on the very entrance of the *Red Sea*, near the Streights called *Babel-Mandel*; supposed by some to be the *Madoce* of *Ptolomy*, but more agreeing in situation with the famous Empory by him called *Arabia*. The faireſt Town of the whole *Peninsula*, of great strength, both by Art and Nature: well-traded, and well-fortified, having a large capacious Haven, seldom without good store of Shipping, and containing to the number of six thousand persons. Once a distinct Kingdom of it self, but treacherously surprised by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1538. and therewith all the rest of the Country: made afterwards the Seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, under whom, and him of *Zebit*, are supposed to be no fewer than 3000 *Timariots*. 10 *Oran*, the Lock and Key of the Southern Ocean. 11 *Thema*, or *Theman*, the same, I take it, which our later Travellers call *Zeman*, situate more within the Land: affirmed by *Benjamin* the *Jew*, surnamed *Teudelensis*, to be a Town of 15 miles square, but to have within the Walls thereof great quantity of Ground for Tillage. 12 *Zarval*, a retiring place of the *Caliphs*, when they lived in this Country. 13 *Hor*, on the point or Promontory called *Chorodemus*, a Garrison not long since of the Kings of *Ormus*. 14 *Muskahat*, on the *Persian* Gulf near the point of Land called *Cape Roxel gate*: opposite to *Surrat* in the *East India*, and possessed by the *Portugals*, who have fortified it with a well-built Castle, for defence of their Ships and Frigots which frequent those Seas. Of no great note till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Persians*, many of the Inhabitants whereof were since settled here. Of the Affairs of this Country we shall speak anon; having first took a brief view of the Islands which belong unto it.

4 The *ARABICK ISLANDS*.

THe *ISLANDS* which lie round about the Shores of *Arabia Felix*, and have been anciently accounted as parts thereof, are dispersed either in the 1 *Red Sea*, 2 *Southern Sea*, or, 3 The Gulf of *Persia*.

I. The *RED-SEA* (called also by the Ancients *Sinus Arabicus*, and now *Golfo di Mecca*) is that part or branch of the Southern *Ocean*, which interposeth it self betwixt *Ægypt* on the West; *Arabia Felix*, and some parts of *Petræa*, on the East; the North-East bound of it touching upon *Idumea*, or the Coast of *Edom*. Extended in length from the Town of *Suez*, anciently called *Arsinoe*, in the bottom of it, to the Streights of *Babel-Mandel*, where it openeth into the Southern Ocean, for the space of one thousand and four hundred miles: in breadth, for the most part, but one hundred, but in some places almost two; the Streights themselves not being above a mile and an half, anciently chained by the Kings of *Ægypt*, as is said by *Strabo*; but now left open by the *Turk*, who is Lord hereof. A violent and inquiet Sea, full of Sands and Shelves; insomuch as they who pass in and out, are fain to make use of *Pilots* which dwell thereabouts, and are experienced in the chanel. Sufficiently famous in all times and Stories, for the miraculous passage of the Children of *Israel*, and the drowning *Pharaoh* King of *Ægypt*.

It took the name of the *Red-Sea*, as some conceived, from the *redness* of the Sands; as others have delivered, from the *redness* of the Waters: but latter Observations have discovered the weakness and absurdity of these *Etymologies*; the Sea and Sands being coloured here, as in other places. By the *Grecians* it was called *Erythræum*, which in that Tongue signifieth *Red* also, not from the colour either of the Sands or Waters, but from one *Erythras*, supposed to be the Son of *Perseus* and *Andromeda*, who commanded the Eastern Shores hereof. And these come nearer to the mark than the others did. For the truth is, it was originally called the Sea of *Edom*, because it took beginning on the Coasts of that Country: which word in the *Hebrew* signifying *Red*, as appeareth *Gen.*25.30. first given as a nick-name to *Esau*, and from him afterwards to *Mount Seir*, or the Land of *Edom*, *Gen.* 36.31. was by the *Greeks* rendred *Erythræum*, and *Mare Rubrum* by the *Latins*. Whence the name of the *Red Sea* became known to all, but the reason of the name to few.

Of the great traffique which was anciently driven up this Sea, we shall speak hereafter, when we are in *Ægypt*, on the other side of it. Look we now on the Islands which belong to *Arabia*, as they all generally do. Known in the times of *Ptolomy* by the names of 1 *Adani*, 2 *Æni*, 3 *Are*, 4 *Cardamine*, 5 *Combusta*, 6 *Damanum*, 7 *Hieracum*, or the *Isle of Hawks*, 8 *Maliaci*, 9 *Polybii*, 10 *Socratis*, 11 *Timagenis*, and 12 *Zygana*. But by what names now called, and of what note then, is a thing so doubtful, that I dare not offer a conjecture. Late Travellers report almost all of them to be small, desolate, or but meanly inhabited, described by them under other names. One there is of indifferent largeness, said to be an hundred twenty and five miles long, though but twelve broad, called *Dalaqua*; with a City in it of that name, where they gather Pearls. 2 Then there is *Camaran*, most extremely hot, of most note for the many Spoils there made by the *Portugals*. 3 *Xamoa*, the Earth whereof is said to be *Red* (perhaps to countenance the vulgar Tradition, of calling this the *Red Sea* from the colour of the Sands or Shores) and the King a *Moor*. 4 The *Samaritan Island*, spoken of by *Scaliger*, inhabited by a remainder of that People; who as soon as they saw any Stranger land upon their Coasts, would most religiously desire him not to touch them. Such other Islands as lie upon the opposite Shores, and seem to appertain unto *Æthiopia*, shall find their place in our Description of the *African* Islands.

II. The *SOUTHERN OCEAN*, comprehendeth that vast body of Waters, which from the Eastern Banks of both *Æthiopia's*, coast along on the South of *Arabia Felix*, and so directly Eastward, to the furthest *India*: in this regard called by some Writers *Oceanus Indicus*, by others *Mare Australe*, from the situation; and by some also *Mare Rubrum*, or the *Red Sea*, from *Erythras* a great King (as they suppose) reigning hereabouts, and giving name not only to the *Red-Sea* (or Gulf of *Arabia*) strictly and specially so called, but to all the Sea-coasts also, from the opening of the Bay of *Arabia*, to the Coasts of *India*, by them called *Mare Erythræum*.

In

In this vaſt Ocean *Ptolomy* placeth many Iſlands which belong to *Arabia*, but of little note, *viz.* two Iſlands by the name of *Inſulæ Agathoclis*. 2 Three more by the name of *Cocconati*. 3 *Dioſcoris*, by *Pliny* called *Dioſcurias*, with a City of the ſame name in it. 4 Seven others in the Bay called *Sinus Sachalites*, by the name of *Zenobii*. 5 *Organa*, by *Strabo* called *Tyrrina*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Erythras* before-mentioned, being a great Hill planted with Trees. 6 *Serapias*, by *Ammianus Marcellinus* called *Turgana*, famed for a Temple of *Serapis*, the *Ægyptian* Idol. None of them now of any credit, nor formerly of any great note, the two laſt excepted.

III. On the Eaſt ſide of *Arabia Felix*, betwixt it and *Perſia*, lieth another large Arm of the *Southern* Ocean, anciently called *Sinus Perſicus*, or the Bay of *Perſia*, now *Golfo di Elkatiffe*. A turbulent and unruly Sea, the Southern Ocean breaking in at the one end, and the River *Euphrates* at the other: the continual combating or claſhing of which two great Waters, make it ſo unquiet. *Ptolomy* placeth in this Bay (but as parts or members of *Arabia*) 1 *Tylus*, which *Arianus* ſets at the mouth of *Euphrates*, *Solinus* in the *Indian* Seas, affirming it to be well ſtored with Vines and Olives: another of this name being placed by *Theophraſtus* in the Bay of *Arabia* (but probably the place miſtaken) affording good Materials for Shipping. 2 *Apphana*. 3 *Tharo*. 4 *Ichara*; of which nothing memorable. To theſe ſome late Travellers have adjoyned two others, if not ſome of the former under theſe new names, that is to ſay, 5 *Bayren*, and 6 *Gonfiar*, where they take the beſt *Pearls* in the World, in beds of *Oyſters*. Other Iſlands of this *Bay* (if any) belong to *Perſia*; where, if occaſion ſo require, we ſhall ſpeak more of them.

To return therefore to the main Land of *Arabia Felix* the firſt Inhabitants thereof were the Sons of *Chus*, and the Families which they brought with them. Their memories preſerved in the names of ſome of the chief Tows and Nations, till the days of *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and ſome other of the ancient Writers. Divided afterwards into the ſeveral Tribes or Septs of the *Caſſanitæ*, *Cinædocolpitæ*, *Homeritæ*, *Adramitæ*, *Eleſari*, *Sachalitæ*, *Anaritæ*, *Gerræi*, *Ægei*, *Sabæi*, *Mineï*, *Leanitæ*, *Cattabani*, *Abiſeni*, and divers others: each governed ſeparately and apart by their ſeveral *Chiefs*; whom they honoured, as in other places, with the name of Kings. One of which ſpoken of by *Juſtine*, named *Hierotimus*, is ſaid to be the Father of 500 Children. Eaſie to have been overcome, becauſe ſo divided, if any potent Neighbour had attempted the Conqueſt of them: as it is wondrous ſtrange they did not, conſidering the richneſs of the Country, and the many temptations which they had to invite them to it. More worthily deſerving the name of *Felix*, in that never conquered, than in all the other Rarities and Delights thereof. By *Alexander* once deſigned for the Seat of his Empire, who probably had endeavoured the Conqueſt of it, having finiſhed his War againſt the *Perſians*, had he not died in *Babylon* at his coming back. Nor did the *Romans* ever extend their Empire beyond *Petræa*, though once *Auguſtus* did attempt it; employing in that action *Largus*, his Lieutenant in *Ægypt*: one *Sames* being then King of thoſe parts which lay neareſt to him. The *Romans* at their firſt entry found no reſiſtance: But when by the extraordinary heat of the air, and drinking ſalt Waters, they began to grow diſeaſed and ſickly, the *Arabians* fell luſtily upon them, and made them return back both with loſs and ſhame. After this nothing done by the *Romans*, to diſturb their quiet; nor much done by the *Chriſtians*, to advance their glories: the whole divided into almoſt as many *Religions*, as Principalities and Eſtates. Moſt of them Gentiles, but *circumſed*, as the *Iſmaelites* and other *Arabians* had been of old; many *Jews* intermingled with them, and ſome ſtore of *Chriſtians*, but thoſe divided alſo into *Sects* and *Factions*. And in this ſtate it ſtood, when *Mahomet* firſt began to broach his blaſphemous dotage. By birth of *Jathrip*, an obſcure Village then not far from *Medina*: his Father called *Abdalla*, an Idolatrous *Pagan*; his Mother named *Hemina*, as perverſe a *Jeweſs*. Deprived of both his Parents when but two years old, he was left unto the care of an Uncle: who not able to give him education nor willing to be at the charge to keep him longer, ſold him at ſixteen years of age to the *Iſmaelites*; by whom expoſed to ſale in the open Markets, he was bought by one *Abdalmutalif*, a wealthy Merchant. By him employed at firſt in *drudgery*, and ſervile Offices, till noting his great wit, and fitneſs for better Services, he at laſt uſed him as his *Factor*: ſending him with his *Camels* and Loads of Merchandiſe into *Syria*, *Perſia*, *Ægypt*, and other places wherein he did behave himſelf with ſuch dexterity, that he much encreaſed his Maſter's wealth, and his own eſtimation. Of perſon he is ſaid to be low, and withal ſcald-headed; but otherwiſe comely to the eye, and of good aſpect. Much troubled with the *Falling ſickneſs*, which infirmity he made good uſe of afterwards; affirming that thoſe Fits were nothing but *heavenly Raptures*, in which he did converſe with the Angel *Gabriel*. He is ſaid to have been alſo well skilled in *Magick*, by which he taught a *white Pidgeon* to feed at his ear, which he gave out to be the *Holy Ghoſt*, by whom he was inſtructed in the Law which he was to publiſh: but this not till afterwards. By Sorceries, comelineſs of Perſon, and the great knowledg which he had in his Maſter's Buſineſs, he gained ſo far on the Affections of his Miſtreſs, that on the death of *Abdalmutalif*, ſhe made him her Husband. Poſſeſſed of all his Maſter's Wealth, he affected eaſe: and being till then of no Religion, or at beſt a *Pagan*; he began to hearken unto *Sergius*, a *Neſtorian* Monk: who flying out of *Syria* for fear of puniſhment (the Hereſies of *Neſtorius* being newly both revived and cenſured) came into *Arabia*; where he found entertainment in the Houſe of *Abdalmutalif*, the Maſter of *Mahomet*. By his perſwaſions, who found him a fit Inſtrument for the *Devil* to work on, he began to entertain the thoughts of hammering out a *New Religion*, which might unite all Parties in ſome *common Principles*, and bring the *Chriſtians*, *Jews*, and *Gentiles* (into which the World was then divided) under one *Profeſſion*. Reſolved on this, he retired himſelf unto a Cave not far from *Meccha*, as if he there attended nothing but *Meditations*: *Sergius* in the mean time ſounding in the ears of the People, both his Parts and Piety. The People being thus prepared to behold the *Pageant*, out comes the principal *Actor* with ſome parts of his *Alcoran* (pleaſing enough to ſenſual minds) which he profeſſed to have received from the Angel *Gabriel*. And finding that this edified to his expectation, he next proclaimed Liberty to all *Slaves* and *Servants*, as a thing commanded him by God, by whom the *Natural Liberty* of Mankind was moſt dearly tendred: which drew unto him ſuch a rabble of unruly People, that without fear or oppoſition, he diſperſed his Doctrines, reducing them at laſt to a Book or Method.

The Book of this Religion he calleth the *Alcoran*, that is to ſay, the *Collection of Precepts*: the Original whereof they feign to be written on a Table which is kept in Heaven, and the Copy of it brought to *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. A Book ſo highly reverenced by the *Mahometans*, that they write upon the Cover

of it, *Let none touch this but he that is clean.* The body of it (as it now ſtandeth) was compoſed by *Oſman* the fourth *Caliph*, who ſeeing the *Saracens* daily enclining to divers *Hereſies*, by reaſon of ſome falſe Copies of *Mahomet*'s Laws; and that the Empire by the ſame means was likely to fall into civil diſſention; by the help of his Wife, who was *Mahomet*'s Daughter, he got a ſight of all *Mahomet*'s Papers, which he reduced into four *Volumes*, and divided into one hundred twenty and four Chapters; commanding expreſly upon pain of death, That that Book, and that only, ſhould be received as *Canonical* through his Dominion. The whole body of it is but an Expoſition and Gloſs on theſe eight Commandments.

1 *Every one ought to believe that God is a great God, and one only God, and* Mahomet *is his Prophet.* They hold *Abraham* to be the *Friend* of God; *Moſes*, the *Meſſenger* of God; and *Chriſt*, the *Breath* of God: whom they deny to be conceived by the *Holy Ghoſt*, affirming that the Virgin *Mary* grew with child of him by ſmelling to a Roſe, and was delivered of him at her Breaſts. They deny the Myſtery of the *Trinity*; but puniſh ſuch as ſpeak againſt *Chriſt*, whoſe Religion was not (ſay they) taken away, but mended by *Mahomet*. And he who in his Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, doth not, coming or going, viſit the Sepulchre of *Chriſt*, is reputed not to have *merited*, or bettered himſelf any thing by his Journey.

2 *Every man muſt marry, to encreaſe the Sectaries of Mahomet.* Four Wives he alloweth to every man, and as many Concubines as he will; between whom the Husband ſetteth no difference, either in Affection or Apparel; but that his Wives only can enjoy his *Sabbaths* Benevolence. The Women are not admitted in the time of their lives to come into their Churches; nor after death, to Paradiſe: And whereas in moſt or all other Countries, Fathers give ſome Portions with their Daughters, the *Mahometans* give money for their Wives, which being once paid, the Contract is regiſtred in the *Cadie's* Book, and this is all their formality of Marriage. More of this Theme we ſhall ſpeak hereafter, when we are in *TURCOMANIA*, and among the *Turks*.

3 *Every one muſt give of his wealth to the poor.* Hence you ſhall have ſome buy Slaves, and then manumit them; Buy Birds, and then let them fly. They uſe commonly to free Priſoners, releaſe Bond-ſlaves, build Caves or Lodgings in the ways for the relief of Paſſengers, repair Bridges, and mend High-ways. But their moſt ordinary Alms conſiſt in Sacrifices of Sheep or Oxen, which, when the Solemnity is performed, they diſtribute among the poor; to whom alſo, on the firſt day of every year, they are bound to give the Tithe or tenth part of their Gettings in the year foregoing: inſomuch that you ſhall hardly find any Beggars amongſt them.

4 *Every one muſt make his Prayers five times a day.* When they pray, they turn their bodies towards *Mecca*, but their faces ſometimes one way, ſometimes another way, believing that *Mahomet* ſhall come behind them, being at their devotions. The firſt time is an hour before Sun-riſing; the ſecond, at noon-day; the third at three of the clock after-noon; the fourth at Sun-ſetting; the fifth and laſt, before they go to ſleep. At all theſe times the Cryers kept a bauling in the Steeples (for the *Turks* and *Saracens* have no Bells) for the People to come to Church. And ſuch as cannot come, muſt when they hear the voice of the Criers, fall down in the place where they are, do their devotions, and kiſs the ground thrice.

5 *Every one muſt keep a Lent one month in a year.* This Lent is called *Ramazan*, in which they ſuppoſe the *Alcoran* was given unto *Mahomet* by the Angel *Gabriel*. This Faſt is only intended in the day time, the Law giving leave to frollick it in the night as they beſt pleaſe, ſo they abſtain from Wine, and Swines fleſh; prohibited in their Law at all times, but never ſo punctually abſtained from, as in the time of their Lent.

6 *Be obedient to thy Parents.* Which Law is the moſt neglected of any in all the *Alcoran*, never any Children being ſo unnatural as the *Turkiſh*.

7 *Thou ſhalt not kill.* And this they keep inviolated among themſelves; but the poor Chriſtians are ſure to feel the ſmart of their fury. And as if by this Law, the actual ſhedding of blood only were prohibited, they have invented puniſhments for their Offenders, worſe than death it ſelf. As firſt, the *Strappado*, which is hanging of them by the Arms drawn backwards: when they are ſo bound, they are drawn up on high, and let down again with a violent ſwing, which unjoynteth all their back and Arms. Secondly, They uſe to hoiſe up their heels, and with a great Cudgel to give them three or four hundred blows on the ſoles of their feet. Thirdly, It is ordinary to draw them naked up to the top of a Gibbet or Tower, full of hooks, and cutting the Rope, to let them fall down again; and by the way they are caught by ſome of the hooks, where they commonly hang till they die for hunger.

8 *Do unto others as thou wouldſt be done unto thy ſelf.* To thoſe that keep theſe Laws he promiſeth Paradiſe, a place of all Delights, adorned with flowry Fields, watered with Chryſtaline Rivers, beautified with Trees of Gold, under whoſe cool ſhade they ſhall ſpend their time with amorous Virgins, whoſe Manſion ſhall not be far diſtant. The men ſhall never exceed the age of thirty, nor the women of fifteen; and thoſe to have their Virginities renewed, as faſt as loſt.

Friday he ordained to be the Sabbath day, partly to diſtinguiſh his Followers from the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, who ſolemnize the days enſuing; but principally, becauſe he was on that day proclaimed *King* or *Emperour*, and ſolemnly ſo created. Wine and Swines-fleſh are the principal things forbidden by the *Alcoran*: from the laſt whereof they all unanimouſly refrain; but on the firſt they are ſo ſotted, that when they come at it, they ſeldom go home again unled; inſomuch that all the Wines in *Conſtantinople* have been thrown about the Streets, and death made the penalty for any that will preſume to bring any more into the City. *Mahomet* taught them, That every one ſhould be ſaved by his own Religion; him only excepted, that revolted from the *Alcoran* unto another Law: but ſo, that under the notion of Religion, he means only ſuch as worſhip the one and only God, excluding by that means the old Idolaters of the Gentiles from the hopes of Salvation. And he taught too, That at the end of the World, all men that profeſſed any ſuch Religion, ſhould go into *Paradiſe*; the *Jews* under the Banner of *Moſes*, the *Chriſtians* under the Banner of *Chriſt*, and the *Saracens* under the Banner of *Mahomet*. They compel no man therefore to abjure the Faith in which he was born, but commend and approve ſecretly ſuch as they find zealous and conſtant in their own Religion; yet holding it an eſpecial honour to have daily new *Proſelytes*, they incite them by hope of Freedom and Preferment, which with many are motives too much prevailing. Hence I have heard many ſay, That it is better for a man that would enjoy Liberty of Conſcience, to live in the Countries profeſſing *Mahometaniſm*, than *Papiſtry*: for in the one he ſhall never be free from the bloody *Inquiſition*; in the other he is never moleſted, if he meddle not with their *Law*, their *Women*, or their *Slaves*.

The Opinions which they hold concerning the end of the World, are very ridiculous; as that at the winding

of

of a Horn, not all flesh only, but the *Angels* themselves shall die; that the Earth with an Earthquake shall be kneaded together like a lump of dough; that a second blast of the same Horn, shall after forty days restore all again; that *Cain* shall be the Captain or Ringleader of the damned, who shall have the countenance of dogs and swine; that they shall pass over the bridge of Justice, laden with their sins in satchels; that the great sinners shall fall into hell, the lesser into Purgatory only; with a thousand the like fopperies: which it is needless to add here, considering that the *Alcoran* it self is now extant in *English*, and every one that lists may read it. A thing so full of *Tautologies*, inchohærencies, and such gross absurdities, of so impure and carnal mixture, that he must lay aside the use of his natural reason, who is taken by it, if force, ambition, or the want of Christian education do not lead him on. For if we seriously look into the causes of the deplorable increase and long continuance of this Religion, we shall find them to be chiefly these, 1 The greatness of the Victories gotten by the *Saracens*, who easily compelled the conquered Nations to receive their Law. 2 The great zeal and diligence of the *Arabians* themselves, who being a numerous people, and much given to Merchandize, have possessed themselves of all the Sea-Coasts of *Africk*, from the streights of *Babel Mandel*, almost as far as to the *Cape of Good Hope*; of all the Islands in those Seas, and many *Factories* and good Towns on the Coasts of *India*: in all which they have setled their Religion also, as a thing inseparable from their Nation. 3 A peremptory restraint of all disputation in any point of Religion whatsoever it be. 4 The suppressing of Philosophy, and the study of Humane Sciences; the light whereof might easily detect the grossness of their Superstitions. 5 The sensual liberty allowed of having variety of Wives, and as many Concubines as they are able to keep. 6 The promise of the like sensual pleasures in the other world, with which a sense not illuminated with the Spirit of God, doth for the most part use to be more affected, than with the speculative hope of spiritul happiness. 7 The forbidding of *Printing* and printed Books, by which the people might come to see the verity and purity of the *Christian* Faith; the falshood and impurity of the Law of *Mahomet*. These last not useful, or at least not able to induce belief, if the first had not opened and prepared the way.

For indeed force of Arms was the strongest Argument by which *Mahomet* himself confirmed, and his Successors in their times have since propagated and dispersed his Doctrine. Strengthened by the resort of that *rascal Rabble*, which repaired to him, he assaults *Medina*, pretending a quarrel to the *Jews*, who had there a *Synagogue*. Repulsed at first with loss of men, and a wound in his face, by which some of his fore-teeth were beaten out; there likely to have made an end of his new *Religion*, if not recovered by his Souldiers for a further mischief. At the next onset he prevailed, the Battel being fought near a place called *Bedez*, situate betwixt *Mecca* and *Medina*, frequently mentioned in the *Alcoran*. After which fight he took the City, converting the *Synagogue* to a Temple for his own impieties: the news whereof so startled the *Phylarchæ*, or Nobility of *Mecca*, that they armed all their Powers against him, and sped so well in the beginning of the War, that they drove him forcibly from their Territories; which not long after he subdued, and set his chief seat at *Mecca*. From that his flight, the *Saracens* began their Computation of years (as we from CHRIST'S Nativity) which they call the *Hegira*; which beginneth about the year of our Redemption 617. Concerning which time, I cannot but observe, that *Mahomet* compelled his devilish Doctrine, beginning his Empire; and *Bonifface* the third assumed his *Antichristian* title, beginning his unlimited Supremacy nigh about the same year. It was called the *Hegira*, from the *Arabick Hegirathi*, which by the Learned in that Tongue, is rendred by διωγμὸς ὑπὲρ τῆς θρησκείας, i. e. *the persecution raised about Religion*. *Joseph Scaliger* in the first Edition of his most glorious work *De emendatione temporum*, casteth off this *Etymology* with *purum putum mendacium*. He will not have it called *Æra fugæ* or *persecutionis*, but *Æra Hagarenæ*; because forsooth the *Arabians* were by some called *Hagarens*. I believe it would have puzled *Joseph*, with all his reading, to shew unto us any *Epoche* or *Æra*, which is taken from the name of a Nation. And therefore other reason he giveth us none but this; *Nos autem scimus vocem illam primogeniâ significatione ab* Hagarenis, *non à fuga duci*. But time and opposition, at the last reclaimed him from this Errour: and in the second Edition of his Work, he is content to follow the common opinion of those men, whom in the first he whistled off with the infamous appellation of *mendaces*.

But to proceed, It hapned much about this time, that the *Saracens* revolting from *Heraclius* the Eastern Emperour, joyned themselves unto him. They had long been displeased with their condition, and now hoped to mend it. Exasperated by *Julian* the *Apostate*, when they served in his Wars against the *Persian*, for telling them when they demanded their pay, that he *had more store of Steel than Gold*: but then they wanted a fit head to resort unto. Now serving *Heraclius* in the same War, they were used by his Officers in the same ill manner. Asking their pay, the *Treasurer* of the *Army* made them this churlish answer, that *there was scarce money enough to pay the* Roman *and* Grecian *Souldiers*; *and must those* Dogs *be so importunate for their Wages?* Provoked herewith, and hearing the fame of *Mahomet*, they betook themselves to him: who strengthned by their Forces, and the coming in of the rest of their Country-men soon brought the three *Arabias* under his subjection. To which, having defeated the Emperours Forces sent against him, he added some parts of *Syria* and *Ægypt*; and returning to *Mecca*, there died frantick and distempered, in the seventieth year of his Age, and three and twentieth of his *Impostures*: of which he had spent thirteen at *Medina*, and the rest at *Mecca*. His dead body being kept four days in expectation of a Resurrection, which he promised to perform at the end of three; grown full of stench and putrefaction, was carried to *Medina*, and there interred: his Successors out of wicked and worldly policy, keeping up the reputation of that *Religion* after his decease, which they derided in his life; and calling themselves *Caliphs*, and *Vicars* General, to him, their Prophet, to the Catalogue of which we hasten; made intricate, not more by their own *confusions*, than by the difference of those names by which they are presented to us by several Writers; according to the times and Languages in which they writ.

The *Caliphs* or Emperours of the *Saracens*.

A.C.	*A.H.*		
622	5	1	*Mahomet* the Impostor, of whom before.
632	15	2	*Ebubezer*, or *Uquebar*, *Mahomet*'s Father in-law, and one of his Great Captains, supplanted *Ali*, to whom the Empire was designed by the will of *Mahomet*; and took unto himself the name of *Caliph*. 2.
634	17	3	*Haumar*, the second of *Mahomet*'s Great Captains, having the Command of the Army under *Ebubezer*, succeeded him in the Estate; and added to it *Persia*,

Ægypt, Paleſtine, with great part of Syria and Meſopotamia. 12.

947 30 4 *Oſman*, the third of *Mahomet*'s Great Captains, Husband of *Zeineb*, his ſecond Daughter; ſucceeded under that pretence, and added all *Barbary* to his Empire. Diſtreſſed by the faction of *Hali*, and beſieged in his own houſe, he ſlew himſelf in the eighty ſeventh year of his Age, and the tenth of his Reign.

657 40 5 *Hali*, the Kinſman and next heir of *Mahomet*, and the husband of *Fatime* his eldeſt Daughter, ſucceeded on the death of *Oſman*: murdered by the procurement of *Muhavias*, near *Cufa*, in *Arabia Felix*.

660 43 6 *Muhavias*, having murdered *Hali*, his Son *Haſem*, or *Oſſan*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Haſem*, the twelfth only eſcaping with life (from whom deſcended the Family of the *Alaveci*, and the *Perſian Sophies*) aſſumed the Government as rightful Succeſſor to *Oſman*, whoſe Widow, the daughter of *Mahomet*, he had took to wife. He conquered *Rhodes*, *Cyprus*, and a great part of *Aſia Minor*, and was the Founder of the Family of *Aben Humeya*.

681 64 7 *Gizid*, the Son of *Muhavias*, morke skilled in Poetry than in Arms.

8 *Habdalla* and *Marvan*, Competitors for the Supreme Dignity; but carried at laſt by *Marvan*.

685 68 9 *Abimelech*, the Son of *Marvan*, eſtabliſhed the begun Conqueſts of *Armenia*, and *Meſopotamia*. 22

707 90 10 *Vlidor Vlit*, under whom the *Saracens* or *Moors* firſt conquered *Spain*. 9

716 99 11 *Zulcimin*, Brother to *Vlit*, whoſe Captain *Mulſamas* beſieged *Conſtantinople*, till his Ships were burnt, and his men conſumed with the Plague. 3

719 102 12 *Homar*, or *Haumar* II. Son of *Vlidor Vlit*. 2

721 104 13 *Izid*, or *Gizid* II. the brother of *Haumar* with whom during his life he was joynt *Caliph*, and after dis deceaſe enjoyed it wholly to himſelf.

725 107 14 *Evelid*, by ſome called *Iſcham*, in whoſe time *Charls Martel* made ſuch havock of the *Moors* in *France*, *Anno* 734. their General then named *Abderamen*. 18

743 125 15 *Gizid* III. the ſon of *Gizid* the ſecond.

744 126 16 *Hyces*, by ſomd called *Ibrahim*, the brother of *Gizid* the third, ſlain by *Marvan*.

745 127 17 *Marvan* II. the laſt of the houſe of *Benhumeya*, ſlain by *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Fatime* and *Hali*.

752 134 18 *Abdalla*, of the houſe of *Alaveci*, or *Alabeci*, deſcended from *Hali* and *Fatime*, the eldeſt daughter of *Mahomet*; called alſo the Family of *Abas*, becauſe of their deſcent from *Abas* the Uncle of *Mahomet*, and perhaps Father unto *Hali*.

756 138 1 *Abdalla* II.

20 *Mahomet* II. ſirnamed *Bugiafer*, or *Abugefer*, who built the City of *Bagdet*, made from that time the conſtant ſeat of his Succeſſors till their fatal period.

777 156 21 *Mahadi*. 9

786 168 22 *Muſa*, or *Moyſes*. 1

787 169 23 *Aron*, or *Arachid*, who compelled *Irene* Empreſs of *Conſtantinople*, to pay him tribute. 23

810 193 24 *Mahamad*, or *Mahomet* III.

825 198 25 *Abdalla* III. who took and ſpoyled *Crete*, and overthrew the *Greeks*; he alſo ſpoyled *Sicilia*, *Sardinia*, and *Corſica*. 17

832 215 26 *Mahomet* IV. waſted *Italy*, burnt the Suburbs of *Rome*, and haraſſed the forenamed Iſlands. 40

Others reckon theſe *Caliphs* to have ſucceeded *Mahomet* the ſecond.

815 198 25 *Mamon*. 12

827 210 26 *Mutetzam*. 8

835 218 27 *Wacek*. 4

839 222 28 *Methucal*. 12

851 234 29 *Montacer*. 1

852 352 30 *Abul Hamet*. 6

858 241 31 *Almatez*. 4

863 245 39 *Motadi Bila*. 7. After whoſe death, the *Ægyptians* withdrew themſelves from their obedience due to the *Babylonian Caliph*, and choſe one of their own, to whom all the *Arabians*, and thoſe of the *Mahumetan* Religion, in *Africa* and *Europe*, ſubmitted themſelves. Of the *Ægyptian Caliphs*, when we come into that Country. Take now with you the names only of the *Syrian* and *Babylonian Caliphs*; for ſtory of them I find little or none, the power being totally in the hands of the *Sultans* of the ſeveral Provinces, and nothing left unto the *Caliphs* but an airy title, the ſhadow of that mighty Tree, which formerly had ſpread it ſelf over moſt part of the World.

The *Babylonian Caliphs* after the diviſion.

A.C.	*A.H.*		
870	251	1	*Mutemah*. 21
891	273	2	*Mutezad*. 8
897	281	3	*Muchtaphi*. 8
907	389	4	*Muchtedar*. 24
931	313	5	*Elkaher*. 1
932	314	6	*Ratze*. 7
939	321	7	*Muctade*. 4
943	325	8	*Muſteraphe*. 2.
947	324	9	*Macia*, and *Taia*. 44
989	361	10	*Kadar*. 41
1030	412	11	*Kaim*. 5
1035	417	12	*Muctadi*. 60
1095	477	13	*Muſtetaher*. 22
1117	499	14	*Muſteraſchad*. 18
1135	517	15	*Raſchied*. 25
1160	542	16	*Muſteneged*, 9
1169	551	17	*Muſtazi*. 10
1179	561	19	*Narzi*. 39
12P5	597	19	*Taher*.
		20	*Muſtenatzar*.
1255	638	21	*Muſtatzem*, the laſt *Caliph*, or High Prieſt of the *Sarcens* of *Bagdet*, or *Babylon*, living in the account of a Prince or Emperour; or looked on as the Supreme Lord of the *Saracen* Empire: ſtarved in his Caſtle of *Bagdet*, and his whole poſterity rooted out by *Allan*, or *Haallon* the *Tartar*, in the firſt year of his reign. Yet there is ſtill remaining a carcaſs of the old body, one whom they call *Caliph*, at whoſe hands the neighbour Princes uſe to receive their *Diadems* and Regalities; for ſo we find that *Solyman* the *magnificent*, after his conqueſt of *Chaldea*, *Meſopotamia*, and *Aſſyria*,

to

to have been by one of these poor titular *Caliphs*, Crowned King of *Babylon*, *Anno* 1513.

This unweildy body of the *Saracen* Empire, having thus two heads, began apparently to decline: losing to the Kings of *Oviedo* and *Navarre*, a great part of *Spain*; to the *Genoese*, *Sardinia*, and *Coasica*; to the *Norman*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and finally most of their Empire, with their very names, to the *Turks* and *Tartars*. For *Allan*, or *Haalon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, starved *Mustatzem* the *Babylonian Caliph*, in his Tower of *Bagdet*, and rooted out all his Posterity, (as before was said:) and *Sarracon* the first *Turkish* King of *Ægypt*, brained the last *Ægyptian Caliph* with his Horsemans Mace; leaving not one of Issue or Kindred surviving. The office of the *Caliphs* (as to matters which concern their irreligion, and the supreme determination of the doubts and controversies which occur therein) being now executed in the *Turks* Dominion, by the *Mufty*, or Chief Priest of the *Turkish Mahometans*.

As *Mars* shewed himself a friend unto those *Saracens*, in their wars and triumphs; so also did *Phœbus* pour down no less Cœlestial influence, on such as addicted themselves to Scholarship. *Bagdet* in *Chaldæa*, *Cairoan*, *Fes*, *Morocco*, in *Barbary*; and *Corduba* in *Spain*, were their *Universities*: out of which came the Philosophers, *Avicene*, and *Averroes*; the *Physicians*, *Rhasis*, and *Mesue*; the *Geographers*, *Leo* and *Abulfada*; and almost all the *Textuaries* and profound Writers, (as *Hali*, *Algazel*, *Albumazar*, &c.) in *Astrology*, from whom a great part of our *Astronomical* and *Astrological* terms are borrowed.

There is now no Kingdom, Island, or Province which acknowledgeth the Empire of the *Saracens*, but the Kingdom of *Fess* and *Morocco* only: *Arabia* it self, the very first seat of their power, acknowledging a subjection to the *Turkish* Empire. For first *Petræa*, and *Deserta*, being subdued by the *Turks*, when they conquered *Persia*, or otherwise following the fortunes of the present Victor, were afterwards accounted of as subject unto the *Mamaluks* of *Ægypt*, who out of that Country and all *Syria*, had by degrees disseized the *Selzuccian* Family. And as the Vassals of that Crown, though but Subjects at will, they more molested *Selimus* in his march towards *Ægypt*, by falling on his Rear, and terrifying him with their night-Alarms, than all the Forces of the *Mamaluks*, in the field against him. But *Ægypt* being subdued, and the *Mamaluks* utterly destroyed, some of their *Chiefs* being gained by money, and the rest by promise of preferment; the whole Nation of these wild *Arabs* swore *allegiance* to him: continuing in account as subject unto his Successors, but in effect doing what they list; governed as formerly by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clannes*, and in their Robberies taking no more notice of the *Turk* than they do of the *Christians*. And as for *Fœlix*, it continued also in a *free condition*, in respect of any forrein power; till of late times the *Turks* and *Portugals* entrenched upon them. For in the year 1538. *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral of the *Turkish* Fleet against the *Portugals*, who had diverted the trade of the *Red Sea*, and otherwise given offence to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, by aiding the *Persians*, went with a strong Army to take *Diu*, a Town and Island of *East India*, then in their possession. But being unable to effect it, at his coming back he called in at *Aden*, one of the best traded Ports of *Arabia Felix*, invited the King thereof aboard, most treacherously hanged him, and surprized the City. The like he also did to the King of *Zibet*, the Port Town to *Mecca*: and by that means got possession of all the Coasts of this Country, bordering on the *Red Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*; of which the *Turks* still continue Masters. But in the Inland parts, and towards the *Persian* Gulf, of no power at all; not suffered to travel up and down without a *Pass* from some of the *Arabian* Chiefs; or if they do, in danger to be set upon by the *Natives*, who brook them not. Some parts hereof which lie next unto the Isle of *Ormus*, made one Kingdom with it; but the Kings originally of this Country, by whom the City of *Ormus* was first builded: and so continued till the taking of *Ormus* by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1622. who since the taking of that Isle by the King of *Persia*, hold *Muskahat*, and some other pieces upon this Continent. The residue of the Country *cantoned* amongst a company of petit Princes, as in former times; before ambition taught them to devour one another.

And so much for *ARABIA*.

CHALDEA.

6 CHALDEA. 7 ASSYRIA. 8 MESOPOTAMIA.

THese Provinces, which properly and originally constituted the *Assyrian* Empire, I have joyned together in the Title, because united in the Story and Affairs thereof; though severally to be considered in the Description and *Chorography* of them.

6 CHALDEA.

CHALDEA is bounded on the East, with *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; on the West, with *Arabia Deserta*; on the North, with *Mesopotamia*; and on the South, with the *Persian* Bay, and the rest of *Deserta*. Originally called *Chasdim* from *Chesed* the fourth Son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*. *Chesed quoque quartus est, à quo Chasdim, id est, Chaldæi postea vocati sunt*, as St. *Hierome* hath it. But why the *Chaldeans* should derive their name from *Chesed*, being a People long before *Chesed*'s birth, I am not able to determine: unless he taught them the first Principles of the Art of *Astronomy*; or was the Author of some signal benefit unto them, which we know not of. It was called afterwards *Babylonia*, from *Babylon* the chief City of it; and at this day by *Bellonius*, *Azania*; by the *Arabians*, *Keldan*; by the *Turks*, *Curdistan*.

But the name of *Chaldea* sometimes went beyond those bounds, taking in some part also of *Mesopotamia*, as appeareth by that passage of St. *Stephen*, saying, *Acts* 7. 2, 3, 4. That *the God of glory appeared to our Father* Abraham, *when he was in* Mesopotamia, *before he dwelt in* Charran; *and said unto him, Get thee out of this Country, and from thy Kindred, and come into the Land which I shall shew thee. Then came he out of the Land of the* Chaldees, *and dwelt in* Charran, *&c.* Where clearly that part of *Mesopotamia*, which lay next unto *Assyria*, where then *Abraham* was, is included under the name of *Chaldea*, or the Land of the *Chaldees*. Which I desire the Reader to take notice of, because I must make use of this observation in another place.

The Country of *Herodotus* said to be so fruitful, that it yielded ordinarily *two hundred*, and in some places *three hundred fold*; the blades of Wheat and Barley being (as he affirmeth) four fingers broad. By *Pliny* it is said of the *Babylonians*, that they mowed their Corn twice, and seeded it a third time, or else it would be nothing but blades: and yet so, that the worst of their Land yielded fifty, and their best an hundred-fold encrease. Nor is the nature of the soyl so altered in long tract of time, but that (as late Travellers have observed) it would in all likelihood attain to its first fertility, if it were ordered with like care and diligence, as in former times. But what need more be said as to the natural fruitfulness and delights of this Country, than that it pleased God Almighty to make choice of some part hereof for the *Terrestrial Paradise* or *Garden of Eden*, in which he placed our Father *Adam*, at his first Creation. For there that *Paradise*, by men both skilled in Divinity and Geography, is affirmed to have stood. Yet amongst all sorts of Writers we find different opinions. Some make *Paradise* to be a place of pleasure, and the four Rivers to be the four Cardinal Vertues; but these Allegories on the Scripture are unwarrantable. Others place it in the air, under the Circle of the Moon; and tell us that the four Rivers in the Scriptures mentioned, fall down from thence, and running all under the Ocean, rise up again in those places where they are now found: but this is so vain a foppery, that I will not honour it with a confutation. Such as make *Paradise* local, are divided also into three ranks (for I omit the rest) whereof some place it under the *Æquator*; but this agreeth not with the bounds prescribed by the Holy Ghost. Some conceive the four Rivers to be *Tigris*, *Euphrates*, *Nilus*, and *Ganges*; and that *Paradise* was the whole world; but this cannot be: for then when *Adam* was driven out of *Paradise*, it must also follow that he was driven out of the world, which were most absurd. Those of the soundest judgments place it here, in an Island which is made by the Rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and some branches running from them both: the uppermost of which is called *Pison*, (falsly rendred *Ganges*) which watereth the Land of *Havilah*, or that part of the Land of *Havilah*, which is now called *Chusestan*, or *Susiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and the lowermost is named *Gihon*, (improperly by some translated *Nilus* which compasseth the East parts of *Arabia Petræa*, by the *Septuagint* for the reasons above mentioned, rendred *Ethiopia*. And this agreeth both with the position of this Country, and the course of those Rivers. For that *Tigris* and *Euphrates* (which the *Hebrew* Text called *Hiddekel*, and *Perah*) do here joyn their streams, is confessed on all sides. Then as for *Pison*, it is no other than that River by *Ptolomy*, called *Basilius*, or *Regius*; by *Curtius* more nearly *Piso-Tigris*, or *Pasi-Tigris*, *Pervenit ad fluvium, Pasitigrin incolæ vocant*, as his own words are. A little stream, which watering the Land of *Havilah*, or the Country of the *Chavelei*, or *Chaulasei*, or *Chaulotæi* (for by these several names they are called amongst the Ancients, who place them betwixt the *Babylonians*, and the *Nabatheans* an *Arabian* people) poureth it self into the *Tigris*, and falls together with it into the Gulf of *Persia*. And finally for *Gihon*, by *Ptolomy* called *Maarsares*, and by others *Marsyrus*, it is no other than a branch of *Euphrates*, which watering the Land of *Chus*, or *Ethiopia Asiatica*, take which name you will, loseth it self at last in the Lakes of *Chaldea*.

But though in general the Country was extremely fruitful, yet in some places was it covered with a slimy matter, which the overflowing of the waters, and the nature of the soil together, did bring forth abundantly. Used by them in their buildings, instead of Mortar, than which

more

more durable and binding; and therefore choſen for the Cement of the Tower of *Babel*, *Gen.* 11. 3. Some alſo tell of a Cliff, which opening ſendeth out ſuch a ſtink, that it killeth Birds as they fly over it; and others, of a like open place near a Town called *Ait*, which continually throweth out boyling pitch (named therefore *Hell-mouth* by the *Moors*) filling therewith the adjoyning Fields; and that herewith the People uſe to pitch their Boats. But this in ſome places only, the Country generally being both healthy and delightful, as before was ſaid.

The People anciently were much addicted unto Sooth-ſaying and Divinations, and no leſs noted for being Authors of the firſt Idolatry that was ever practiſed in the World. Induced unto the laſt perhaps by the Power of their Kings, who would needs confer Divine Honours upon ſome of their Anceſtors. But to the firſt inclined by their own diſpoſition, and the ſituation of their Country, yielding a fair ſenſible *Horizon* (for the *Rational* is alike in all places, both in Hills and Vallies) and conſequently profitable to the obſervation of the riſing and ſetting of the Stars, whether *Heliacal*, *Acronical*, *Matutine*, or *Veſpertine*, as the *Artiſts* phraſe it. Whereunto may be added the length of Life in thoſe elder times, furniſhing them with the greater meaſure of experience, concerning the diſtinct Motions of each ſeveral *Orb*, and the full period of the courſes of each ſeveral Planet. Certain it is, that they grew ſo noted in this Art, that at the laſt every *Aſtrologaſter*, or Figure-flinger, was called a *Chaldæan*, *Gentis nomine ad eos homines tranſlato, qui Jeſe illius ſapientiæ ſpecie venditabant*, as *Beza* hath obſerved in his *Annotations*. For giving too much credit to them, the People thus flouted by the *Satyriſt*,

Chaldæis ſed major erit fiducia, quicquid
Dixerit Aſtrologus, credent à fonte relatum
Ammonis, &c.

That is to ſay,

Joves Oracles no greater credit have,
Than *Sooth-ſayings* of a *Chaldee* cozening Knave.

The Language which was ſpoken here, had the name of the *Chaldee*, or *Chaldæan* Tongue; of great antiquity, and ſanctified by the *Holy Ghoſt*, ſome Chapters of the Propheſie of *Daniel* being written in it. So different from the *Hebrew* in its primitive purity, that the *Jews* did not underſtand it, as appeareth by the words of the Officers of *Hezekiah*, 2 *Kings* 18. 26. deſiring *Rabſhekah* to ſpeak to them in the *Chaldee* Tongue, that the common people of the *Jews* might not hear his Blaſphemies. A further proof may be, That a man may have ſome knowledg in the *Hebrew*, and yet be ignorant of the *Chaldee*; as many are, no doubt, at this preſent day. But whatſoever it was in its primitive purity, it altered afterwards when the *Jews* came to live amongſt them, during the Captivity: out of whoſe long commerce with them, both Nations loſt their proper Languages, and fell upon a third, made out of both, which was called the *Syriack*. Of this we ſpake before, when we were in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*. And this is now the natural Language of this Country, and its neighbour *Aſſyria*; but with a little mixture of the *Greek* and *Arabick*: Not vulgarly ſpoken elſewhere, for ought I can find; but uſed by many others in their Sacred Offices, by whom not commonly underſtood. For in this Language, all the Sects of the Eaſtern Chriſtians do aſſociate their Publick *Liturgies*; that is to ſay, the *Neſtorians*, *Jacobites*, *Maronites*, (for I reckon not the *Melchites*, who uſe the *Greek Liturgie*, amongſt the Sectaries.) The like do alſo the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas*, the *Cophties* or *Chriſtians* of *Ægypt*, and the poor remainder of the Chriſtians in the Iſle of *Zocataria*, an Iſland on the Coaſt of *Africk*. Uſed to thoſe *Liturgies*, when the Language was more underſtood amongſt them; though now worn out of *Vulgar* knowledg, by the overſpreading of the *Arabick*, *Tartarian*, and *Turkiſh* Conqueſts. In which the Prelates of theſe Churches have fallen into the great errour of the Church of *Rome*: and without taking notice of the alterations, happning in the *Vulgar* Tongues of thoſe ſeveral Nations, which are united under them into one opinion, keep up a Language in their *Liturgies* which they underſtand not; as if the capacities of the People could be ſooner raiſed to the underſtanding of an unknown Language, than the publick *Liturgies* be fitted unto their capacities. The ancient piety of the Church, and the modern Languages of Gods People, are not inconſiſtent; though out of private ends ſome have taught us otherwiſe. But I fear this errour (as ſome others) will not be ſo eaſily remedied, as apprehended. From the Tongue in which they celebrate the Divine Offices of their Religion, paſs we to the Religion it ſelf, whoſe Sacred Offices are ſo celebrated.

The Chriſtian Faith was firſt preached in this Country by Saint *Peter*, of whoſe being in *Babylon* (the chief City hereof) himſelf aſſureth us in the laſt words almoſt of his firſt Epiſtle: and other buſineſs he had none here, but to preach the Goſpel. Much perſecuted by the *Perſians* (who were then poſſeſſed of all theſe parts) it prevailed at laſt; *Chriſtianity* growing up the faſter for the cutting down. The *Patriarchal* See, originally planted in *Seleucia*, ſucceſſor unto *Babylon* in repute and greatneſs, if not alſo in name; the Biſhop whereof, by order of the *Nicene* Council, had the Eccleſiaſtical Juriſdiction of theſe parts, with the name of *Catholique*; and the next place in *Seſſion*, at all publick Aſſemblies of the Church, next after the *Patriarch* of *Hieruſalem*. And beſides this, the *Indians* or *Chriſtians* of Saint *Thomas* acknowledg him for their *Primate* or *Metropolitan*; as they did afterwards in his right the Patriarch of *Mazal*. At this preſent here are ſome remainders of *Chriſtianity*, part of them *Jacobites*, but the moſt *Neſtorians*; of whom more anon.

Of the chief Rivers hereof we have ſpoken already; and Mountains there are none to hinder us in our paſſage forwards: So that without more delay, we may take a view of their principal places. And in the firſt place we meet with *Babel* (in the *Hebrew* ſignifying Confuſion) famous for Confuſion of Languages which here happened. For immediately after the Univerſal Deluge, *Nimrod* the Son of *Chus*, the Son of *Cham*, perſwaded the People to ſecure themſelves from the like after-claps, by building ſome ſtupendious Edifice, which might reſiſt the fury of a ſecond Deluge. This Counſel was generally embraced, *Heber* only and his Family (as tradition goeth) contradicting ſuch an unlawful attempt. The major part prevailing, the Tower began to rear a head of Majeſty, 5146 paces from the ground; having its *baſis* and circumference equal to the height. The paſſage to go up, went winding about the outſide, and was of an exceeding great breadth; there being not only room for Horſes, Carts, and the like means of Carriage, to meet and turn: but Lodging for Man and Beaſt, and (as *Verſtegan* reporteth) Graſs and Corn-fields for their nouriſhment. But God beholding from on high this fond attempt, ſent amongſt them (who before were of one *Language*) a confuſion of Tongues; which hindred the proceeding of this Building, one being not able to underſtand what his fellow called for.

2 *Babylon*, on the Bank of *Euphrates*, the ancienteſt City in the World, on this ſide of the Flood; firſt built by *Nimrod*, in the place deſtinated to the raiſing of the

Tower

Tower of *Babel*, and by him made the Seat of his Kingdom: afterwards beautified and enlarged by *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*, one of his Successors; and finally, much encreased both in bulk and beauty by *Nebuchadnezzar*, who therefore arrogated to himself the whole glory of it, saying in his pride, *Is not this the great Babel that I have builded? Dan.* 4. 30. A City of great fame and State, accounted one of the Worlds nine wonders, and deservedly too.

The compass of the Walls 365 furlongs (or 46 miles) according to the number of the days in the year; in height fifty Cubits, and of so great breadth, that Carts and Carriages might meet on the top of them; finished in one year, by the hands of 200000 Workmen, employed daily in it. Situate on both sides of *Euphrates*, over which there was a sumptuous Bridge, and at each end of that Bridge a magnificent Palace: beautified also with the Temple of the Idol *Bel*, and famous for the *Pensile Gardens*, made with great charge, and born up with most stately Arches. In a word, so great and vast it was, that *Aristotle* saith, That it ought rather to be called a Country, than a City: adding withall, That when the Town was taken, it was three days before the furthest parts of the Town could take notice of it. Which taking of the Town must be understood of the surprise hereof by the *Medes* and *Persians*; and not of the taking of it by the *Macedonians*, as *Pet. Ramus* (as great a Clerk as he was) in his marginal Notes upon the *Politicks* of that Author, hath most vainly told us. Which, whether it were that there were Gates at the end of every Street, which made it be so long in taking; or that the *Babylonians* were not wakened from their drunken Feast, in the time whereof it was surprised, I determine not. Revolting in the time of *Semiramis*, the news came to her as she was ordering her Hair: whereupon leaving her Head half-dress'd, she went and besieged it; never ordering the rest of her Hair, till she had recovered it. How it fell into the hands of *Cyrus*, we learn out of *Xenophon*'s *Cyri-paideia*, which was in this manner. The River *Euphrates* ran quite thorow the Town, round about whose Banks the politick Prince cut many deep Chanels; into which when the *Babylonians* were securely merry at a general Feast, he suddenly drained and emptied the River, conveyed his own Forces into the Town all along the dry and yielding Chanel, and in a little time made himself Master of it. From the *Persians* it revolted in the Reign of *Darius Hystaspes*; and that Sustenance might not be wanting to the Men of War, they strangled the most part of the Women, being thought in Actions of this quality, not so much as necessary evils. When they had for twenty Months so obstinately defended the Town, that the *Persians* had less hope than ever of prevailing; *Zophyrus*, one of *Darius* Captains, mangling his body, and disfiguring his face by cutting off his nose and ears, fled to the *Babylonians*, complaining of the tyranny of his King. They crediting his words, and knowing his proweſs, committed the charge of the whole Army unto him, as a man to whom such barbarous usage had made the King irreconcileable. But he taking the best opportunity, delivered both the Town and Souldiers into the hands of his Sovereign. which made *Darius* often say, That he had rather have one *Zophyrus*, than twenty *Babylons*. Here died *Alexander* the Great, after whose death the *Grecian* Captains, regardful rather of their own ambitions, than the common Loyalty, divided the Empire among themselves; leaving the Body of the King eight days unburied. A wonderful change of fortune, that he who living thought the World too small for his Valour, being dead should find no place big enough for his Body. After this taking of it by the *Macedonians*, the Glories and Magnificence hereof began to decline; lessened unto a fourth part in the time of *Q. Curtius* the Historian; *in solitudinem redacta*, reduced to desolation in the days of *Pliny*; and being turned into a *Park*, in which the Kings of *Persia* did use to hunt, in the time of Saint *Hierom.* That wondrous change occasioned partly by the injury of the time, partly by the neglect of the *Macedonians*, who removed the Seat-Royal of their Empire more towards *Greece*: but principally by *Seleucus Nicanor*, who offended with the *Babylonians*, built the City of *Seleucia*.

3 *Seleucia*, the second City of note in all this Country, situate in a place more commodious and healthy, near the meeting of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, and about forty miles more North than *Babylon*; out of which he drew 500000 persons for the peopling of it. Nor did this new City rob the old only of its Power and Greatness, but also of its very Name; being called *Babylon* in some of the ancient Authors, Βαβύλων περσικὴ πόλις, Μητρόπολις, Σελευκία καλουμένη, as (for one) by *Stephanus*. In the Primitive times of *Christianity*, the Bishop of this See was accounted for the Primate of the *Chaldeans*; with a superintendency over the *Christians of India* also, as before was said. But this *Supplanter* was in time brought to ruine also. And

4 *Bagdad*, a new City raised from the Ruins of it: built near the Foundations of *Seleucia* by *Bugiafer* the 20th. *Caliph* of the *Mahometans*, at the expence (as some write) of eighteen Millions of Crowns; which, because of the many Gardens contained in it, had the name of *Bagdad*, the word so signifying in the *Arabick* Tongue. First built upon the Western Bank of the River *Tigris*, near to its confluence with *Euphrates*; but in the year 1095. removed to the other side of the River, by *Mustetaher*, the 45th. *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, because less subject to the Inundations of that furious River. But it was reckoned still for the same City, as if built by *Bugiafer*: By whom being made the Seat of his Royal Residence (whose Successors were from hence called the *Caliphs of Babylon*) it flourish'd in great pride and splendor: till taken and sacked by *Allan*, or *Haalon*, a *Tartarian* Captain, who here starved *Musteatzem*, the last *Caliph* of it, and rooted out his whole Posterity; as if the *Caliphate* and the City were to end together. But the Town revived again, though the *Caliph* could not; continuing to this day a City of great Wealth and Traffick, but nothing comparable unto what it was both for beauty and bigness; being not above seven miles in compass, and having nothing in the Buildings to be justly bragged of. Taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* with the rest of the Country, it became subject to the *Turks*; from them recovered by *Abas* the King of *Persia*, *Anno* 1625. and again recovered by the *Turks* about the year 1640. In which changes it can be no marvel, that she hath lost much of her former splendour. Maintained especially at the present by the Trade of *Aleppo*, to which, besides such Goods as go up the Water, there pass yearly many *Caravans*, or Troops of Merchants, each of them having in it some hundreds (if not thousands) of *Camels* laden with Commodities. For whose safe Lodgings, as they pass (the ways being generally ill-provided for Travellers in these Eastern Countries) there are some Houses of Receipt built at the publick charge, or by some special Benefactor, to preserve his memory: most of them strong, and many very fair and lovely, which in the Dominions of the *Persians* they call *Caravane Rawes*; in the *Turkish*, *Canes*. And for communicating the success of their business unto the place from whence they came, the make use of *Pigeons*, which is done in this manner. When the *Hen-Pigeon* sitteth, or hath any young, they take

take the *Cock*, and ſet him in an open Cage; whom, when they have travelled a days journey, they let go at liberty, and he ſtraight flieth home to his Mate. When they have trained them thus from one place to another, and that there be occaſion to ſend any Advertiſement, they tie a Letter about one of their necks, which at their return home is taken off by ſome of the Houſe, advertiſed thereby of the Eſtate of the *Caravan*. The like is alſo uſed betwixt *Ormus* and *Balſora*. But of this enough.

5 *Cteſiphon*, on the River *Tigris*, not far from *Seleucia*, by whoſe fall it roſe; occaſioning the decay thereof, as that did of *Babylon*. So *Pliny*, ſpeaking of the fall of *Babylon*, by the building of *Seleucia* ſo near unto it; then adding, *invicem ad hanc exhauriendam*, Cteſiphontem *juxta tertium ab ea Lapidem condidere Parthi*. Firſt built, ſaith *Marcellinus*, by *Vardanes*; afterwards beautified and walled by *Pacorus*, a *Parthian* King; and by him made the Seat-Royal of the *Perſian* Kingdom. Many times beſieged and aſſaulted by the *Roman* Emperors; but moſt commonly without ſucceſs: and amongſt others, by *Julian* the *Apoſtate*, that bitter enemy of the Goſpel, who here breathed out his Soul to Satan, in theſe dying words, *Viciſti tandem Galilæe*. But *Vardanes* (whoſoever he was) cannot of right be called the firſt Founder of it, who raiſed it rather from the rubbiſh of an old Foundation: this City being the ſame with that which *Moſes* calleth *Calne*, and *Ezekiel*, *Canneh*, *Gen.* 11. and *Ezek.* 27. 23. and therefore rightly ſaid by *Pliny* to be built in *Chalanitide*, or the Region of *Chalne*.

6 *Sipparum*, remarkable for the great Trench made neer it, to receive the overflowings of *Euphrates*, which otherwiſe might have annoyed the City of *Babylon*: in compaſs 1280 Furlongs, or 160 miles; in depth 20 fathoms. A vaſt and expenceful work; but that nothing was to be admired, when *Babylon* it ſelf was up and in full proſperity.

7 *Apamia*, a City of *Seleucus*'s foundation alſo, ſituate at the fall of *Piſon* into the River of *Tigris*.

8 *Vologeſia*, placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Cities of *Chaldæa*, but by *Marcellinus* in *Aſſyria*: built or repaired by one of the *Vologeſes*, Kings of *Perſia*, and from him denominated.

9 *Borſippa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Barſita*, memorable for the great Victory which *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, obtained here againſt *Nabonidus* the King of *Babylon*, by *Scaliger* called *Darius Medus*, (of which more anon) whom having vanquiſhed, he pardoned him (as he ſaith) his Life, and gave him the Government of *Carmania*.

10 *Balſora*, a Port-Town to *Babylon*, ſituate at the fall of *Euphrates* into *Sinus Perſicus*, and conſequently of great wealth and trading: the riches of *Arabia*, *Perſia*, and ſome parts of *India*, being landed here, and ſo carried to *BABYLON*, and thence up the Water to *Aleppo*. Supposed to be the City of *Theredon*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*; built or repaired by *Nebuchadnezzar*, and not long ſince taken from the *Turk* by *Abas*, the *Perſian*.

7 *ASSYRIA.*

ASSYRIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Media*, from which parted by the Mountain called *Coathras*; on the Weſt, with *Meſopotamia*, from which divided by the River *Tigris*; on the South, with *Suſiana*; and on the North, with ſome part of *Turcomania*: So called from *Aſſur* the Son of *Sem*, by whom firſt inhabited. But having long ſince loſt that name, as to vulgar ſpeech, it is by *Niger* called *Adrinſa*; by *Mercator*, *Sarh*; by the *Turks*, *Arzerum*.

The Country very plain and level, exceeding fruitful and abounding in Rivers. For beſides *Tigris*, which waſheth one whole ſide thereof, *Ptolomy* aſſigneth to this Country the Rivers of 2 *Lycus*, 3 *Cyprus*, and 4 *Gorgos*; all of good note, and all of them increaſing, with their tributary Streams, the greatneſs of *Tigris*.

The People were anciently great Warriers, and together with the *Babylonians* or *Chaldeans*, commanded a great part of the Eaſt; extending their Dominion from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*: inſomuch that not the People of this Province only, but of all the Provinces almoſt of this ſpacious Empire, had the name of *Aſſyrians*. The men for all this exceeding formal in their Habit, wearing long Robes which trailed on the very ground, their Hair long, their Hats or *Caps Piramidal*, like the *Perſian Miters*; not ſtirring out of doors but perfumed with Musk, Rings on their fingers, and a Scepter in their hands: and very frequent in their waſhings, eſpecially after copulation. As for their Women it was an ancient cuſtom with them, to expoſe the faireſt unto Sale in the open Market; and the Money given for thoſe, to put off ſuch as were deformed, and not ſo amiable. And hence perhaps the Fathers of our times have learnt this Leſſon, of giving leſs Portions with ſuch Daughters as will ſell themſelves; but greaſing the fat Sow (as the ſaying is) with the addition of ſome hundreds: which made the merry fellow ſay, *That the money were a good match, if the Wench were away.*

The *Chriſtian*'s Faith was firſt here planted by Saint *Jude*, and took ſuch deep root in that Plantation, that it could never be pulled up; notwithſtanding the cruel perſecutions raiſed againſt it, by the Kings of *Perſia*: who when they ſaw there was no means to deſtroy it by violence, attempted in the next place to corrupt it with Hereſie. And to that end, as alſo to revenge himſelf upon the Emperour *Heraclius*, as Great Champion of the *Orthodox* Belief againſt *Neſtorianiſm*, *Choſroes* the great King of *Perſia* inforced all the *Chriſtians* of his Empire unto thoſe Opinions, which he knew that Emperour condemned; permitting none who were counted *Catholicks*, within his Dominions. By means whereof, and afterwards for want of Preachers to inſtruct them otherwiſe (the *Saracens* having conquered the *Perſian* Empire) *Neſtorianiſm* prevailed ſo far, that it extended over all the Countries Eaſt of *Tigris*, as far as *India*; and Northwards too amongſt the *Tartars*, of which more hereafter. Governed by their own *Patriarch*, who reſideth at *Meſul*, now the chief City of this Country; and honoured by his People with the Title of *Jacelich*, miſtaken or pronounced amiſs for *Catholique*: an attribute given anciently to all *Orthodox* Prelates.

The Opinions held by them as *Neſtorians*, were, 1 That there were two Perſons in our Saviour, as well as two Natures; but yet confeſſing that *CHRIST* from the firſt inſtant of his Conception, was both God and Man. 2 That the *Bleſſed Virgin* ought not to be called Θεοτόκος, or the *Mother of God*; but yet acknowledging her to be the *Mother of God the Son*. 3 That *Neſtorius* condemned for theſe Opinions in the third and fourth *General Councils*, was an holy man; for whoſe ſake they condemn Saint *Cyril* his profeſſed *Antagoniſt*, and all thoſe Councils wherein any Cenſure was laid upon him. In other points, though differing from the Church of *Rome*, they are right enough (their rejecting *Epiſcopal Confirmation* excepted only.) As 1 In celebrating the Sacrament of the Lord's Supper with leavened bread, 2 Communicating in both kinds. 3 Enjoyning no neceſſity of *Auricular* Confeſſion. 4 Contracting Marriages in the ſecond degree of Conſanguinity. 5 Permitting ſecond and third Marriages unto men in *Orders*, after the death

of their first Wives. 6 Not praying before the *Cross*, nor giving religious worship to the *Crucifix*, or other Images. So much for these *Nestorian Sectaries*, if so named aright, considering the qualifications added unto their opinions; now (but corruptly) called *Nostranes*: the greatest Sect of *Christians* in all the East.

The solemnities which these Christians use in contracting marriage, because not very usual, I will here relate. Their wives they never see till the day of their marriage, but hearing a good report of the young Woman, negotiate with her parents for her. Agreed upon the business, they meet in the Chancel of the Church, wherein there is a partition with an hole in it: the *Bridegroom* and his friends standing on the one side; the *Bride* and her kindred, on the other. When there, the *Cassisse* or Churchman biddeth the *Bridegroom* to put his hand thorow the hole into the Partition, and take his *Bride* by the hand, which he doth accordingly: the Mother of the *Bride*, with a sharp-pointed instrument, made of purpose, pricking the *Bridegroom's* hand all over, with sufficient eagerness. If when he feeleth the smart, he lets go her hand, they take it for a sign that he will not love her; but if he hold her fast, and wring her hand till he cry again, they take it for a very good *Omen*, and are glad they have so well bestowed her. After the Marriage is consummate, if a Male-child be born unto them, the Father loseth his own name, and is called by the name of his eldest Son: so as if the Fathers name be *Moses*, and his Sons name *Joseph*; the Father is no more called *Moses*, but *Abba Joseph*, or the Father of *Joseph*. So highly did they reverence Marriage, and the fruit thereof, Posterity.

It was anciently divided into these six parts, 1 *Arraphachitis* bordering on *Armenia Major*; so called for *Arphaxaditis*, or the plantation of *Arphaxad*, the Son of *Sem*. 2 *Adiabene*, bordering on *Mesopotamia*, so called, *quasi* Ἀδιάβατος, or inaccessible, because fenced with such unfordable Rivers, *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, that there was no easie coming to it, Διὰ δυσχωρίαν τῶν διάβασιν, as it is in *Suidas*: or rather for *Adiavena*, from *Diavas*, and *Adiavas*, the chief Rivers of it (the same which *Ptolomy* called *Lycus*, and *Caprus*) as in *Marcellinus*. 3 *Calacine*, and *Sitacene* from *Sittace*, and *Calach*, two chief Cities of it; of which more anon. 5 *Arbelites*, and 6 *Apolloniates*, from *Apollonia* and *Arbela*, two other of the principal Cities.

Here then we have four of the Cities of *Assyria* brought unto our hand, 1 *Calach*, one of those four which *Nimrod* built in the Land of *Assur*, *Gen.* 10. 11. and one of them to which the *Ten Tribes* were transplanted by *Salmanassar*, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. and 18. 11. of such esteem in those elder days, that *Calacine* as *Ptolomy*, or *Calachene* as *Strabo* most rightly calleth it, did take name from hence. 2 *Sittace*, situate about two miles from the banks of *Tigris*, in the way from *Babylon* to *Susa*. A City, when it gave name to the parts adjoyning, both great and populous; well seated, in a fruitful soyl, and well shaded with trees of several sorts; supposed by the situation of it to be that *Accad*, (or rather built in or near the place of it) which was one of the first four Cities of *Nimrod's* Kingdom. 3 *Arbela*, on the banks of the River *Caprus*, built as some say by *Belus*, (or *Belochus*) *Priscus*, an *Assyrian* King, whence it had the name. Near unto which there is a place which *Strabo* calleth Κυπρήσσον, or *Cupressum*, conceived by some to be the place where *Noah* framed the *Ark*. 4 *Apollonia*, built after the *Macedonian* conquest, as appeareth by the name, which is wholly *Greek*: not otherwise observable, but for giving the name of *Appoloniates* to the Country adjacent. Add unto these, 5 *Gegnamela*, situate in the middle space betwixt *Lycus*, and *Caprus* memorable for the last and greatest battel betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* the King of *Persia*; who had he made good the Eastern banks of the River *Tigris*, might easily have hindred the *Macedonians* from coming over, the River being so extremely swift and violent, that the *Macedonians* were not able to pass it, but by linking their hands and arms together, and making one entire body to oppose the Current; and therewithal of so great depth, that the Footmen were fain to hold their Bows & Arrows over their heads, to keep them from being moistned and made unserviceable. But having miserably lost this opportunity by the cowardise of *Mazeus*, who had the keeping of this Pass, he was inforced to venture all upon a Battel; drawing unto this place an Army of 50000 Horse, 200000 Foot, in their accompt who speak least of it (for *Arrianus* makes it above a Million) opposed by *Alexander* with no more than 40000 foot, & 7000 Horse of his *Europeans*; but those victoriously successful: 40000 of the *Persians* slain, (but *Diodorus Siculus* speaks of 90000) with the loss of 300 *Macedonians* only, as is said by *Curtius*. In memory of which notable victory, a Mountain near the place of the Battel, was by *Alexander* called *Nicator*, known by that name to *Strabo*, and some other Ancients. 6 *Rehoboth*, another of the four Cities, which *Nimrod* is said to have built in *Assur*; by some supposed to be *Birrha*, an ancient City upon *Tigris*, and bordering so near unto *Mesopotamia*, that by *Ptolomy* it is placed in it. Of which more anon. 7 *Rhesen*, another of the Cities of *Nimrod's* building, seated by *Moses* between *Calach* and *Nineve*, *Gen.* 10. 12. and there commended for *a great City*. Which *Character* with the site thereof, have induced some learned men to think it to be the same, which is by *Xenophon* called *Larissa*; seated by him on the River *Tigris*, much about this place, and said to be a City of such strength and greatness, that it was no less than two *Parasangs*, or four miles in compass: the Walls in height a hundred foot, twenty five in breadth; so strongly cemented, that *Cyrus*, who besieged it, could have never taken it, if a casual Eclipse of the Sun had not discouraged the defendants. But whether this conjecture be good or not, we have here *Larissa* for another of the principal Cities. 8 *Nineve*, by the *Greeks* and *Latines* called *Ninus*; first built by *Nimrod*, and called *Ninive* with relation unto *Ninus*, his Son or Nephew, after the example of *Cain* whose steps he followed; of whom it is said, that he *built a City, and called it after the name of his Son*, Enoch, *Gen.* 4. 17. I know the building of this City is by some ascribed to *Assur*, grounding themselves on that of *Moses*, *Gen.* 10. 11. *Out of that Land went forth* Assur, *and built* Ninive, *&c.* But I like better of their judgment, who take *Assur* in this place for the name of the Country, and not of the man; making the Text to speak of *Nimrod*, aud to say of him, *Et egressus est in* Assur, &c. that is to say, *And he went forth to* Assur *or the Land of* Assyria, *and there built* Ninive, Rhehoboth, *and the rest* there named. A City so enlarged by some of the succeeding Kings, that it came at last to be bigger than *Babylon*, in compass 480 furlongs, or 60 miles; and therefore said in the Book of *Jonah*, to be a City of three days journey, in circuit, as indeed it was: accompting 20 miles for a days journey, according to the common estimate of those elder times; as also of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, in the times succeeding. Nor was it of less strength than greatness, the walls an hundred foot high, and so broad that three Carts might go abrest on the top thereof: and in those walls 1500 Turrets, each of 200 foot in height: So strong, that it was thought to have been impregnable especially because of an ancient *Prophecy*, which signified that the Town should never be taken, till the River became an enemy to it. A Prophecy which

which induced *Sardanapalus* to make it the ſeat of his war againſt *Belochus*, and *Arbaces*, then in arms againſt him; who having beſieged it three years without hope of ſucceſs, at laſt the River overflowing, carried before it twenty furlongs of the Wall. Which accident ſo terrified the effeminate King, that he burnt himſelf in the midſt of his treaſures, and left the Town to the Beſiegers. Threatned deſtruction by the preaching of the Prophet *Jonah*, it eſcaped then upon repentance. But the people going on in their wicked courſes, it was deſtroyed by *Aſtyages* King of the *Medes*, that it might no longer be an encouragement to the *Aſſyrians* to rebel againſt him, as formerly againſt ſome of his Predeceſſors: and ſo deſtroyed, that in the time of Saint *Cyril* of *Alexandria*, as himſelf affirmeth in his Comment on the Prophet *Nahum*, ὡς μηδὲ ὅπου ποτὲ γέγονεν ὁρᾶσθαι λοιπὸν, that one could ſcarce diſcern in what place it ſtood. 9 *Moſul* at this time, and for long ſince, the chief of *Aſſyria*; ſeated on the *Tigris*, and raiſed out of the ruins of *Ninive*: of moſt note for being the ordinary abiding place of the *Neſtorian* Patriarch, who either in this City it ſelf, or the Monaſtery of St. *Hermes* near adjoyning to it, hath his conſtant reſidence. The *Neſtorians* in this City ſo conſiderable, both in power and number, that though it be in the hands of *Mahometans*, either *Turks* or *Perſians*; yet there are numbred in it fifteen *Chriſtian Churches*, and at leaſt 40000 Souls. A *Sect* ſo maligned by the Pope, (whom they commonly call the *Reprobate Biſhop*) for the greatneſs of the juriſdiction which this Patriarch hath: that not contented to withdraw the *Indians* from him, (whereof more hereafter) Pope *Julius* the third, ſet up an *Anti-Patriarch* againſt him, to whom he gave the title of the *Catholick* of *Muſal* alſo; to whom the *Neſtorians* dwelling in the Northern parts of *Meſopotamia*, (if ſome Writers of the *Papal* Party may be believed) do ſubmit themſelves. 10 *Arzeri*, of greater ſtrength than *Moſul*, though of leſs antiquity than repute; from which the whole Province of *Aſſyria*, is now called *Arzirum*. And 11 *Scheheruzal*, at this time of the greateſt note, as being the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg* or *Baſſa*; who hath 10000 *Timariots*, under his command, to defend this Country, and be ready for any ſervice, as occaſion is.

8 *MESOPOTAMIA.*

MESOPOTAMIA, is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Tigris*, by whom parted from *Aſſyria*; on the Weſt, with *Euphrates*, which divideth it from *Comagena*, a Province of *Syria*; on the North, with Mount *Taurus*, by which ſeparated from *Armenia Major*; and on the South, with *Chaldæa*, and *Arabia Deſerta*, from which laſt it is parted by the bendings of *Euphrates* alſo.

In the Scripture it is called moſt commonly by the name of *Padan Aram*, that is *Syria Culta*; but that name properly belonging to the North-parts of it; *Aram* or *Syria*, becauſe inhabited originally by the *Aramites*, whom the *Greeks* call *Syri*; and *Padan*, or *Culta*, from the fruitfulneſs and riches of it, exceeding plentifully ſtored both with corn and wine, and furniſhed with all neceſſaries for the life of man; in that regard by *Strabo* called *Meſopotamia Fœlix*. The Southern parts hereof being barren and full of Deſarts, not having any herbage in them, ὑλὴ ἄλλο δένδρον, nor any kind of Tree, as we read in *Xenophon*; amongſt ſome of the ancient Writers, had the name of *Arabia*, partly becauſe ſo like in nature to *Arabia Deſerta*, and partly being planted with *Arabian Colonies*. The name which comprehends both parts is ſometimes *Syria Tranſ-fluvialis*, or *Syria* beyond the River (*Euphrates*,) of which ſee 2 *Sam.* 10. 16. But generally in the *Hebrew* it is called *Aram-Naharajim*, which the *Greeks* render properly by *Meſopotamia*, or the Country in the middle of Rivers: environed by *Tigris* on the Eaſt, and *Euphrates* on the Weſt and South; the River *Chaboras*, or *Aloras*, paſſing alſo through it. The *Latines* generally call it by the ſame name which the *Greeks* had given it; *Priſcian* only to ſhew his faculty in *Grammar*, calling it *Medamna*; By the *Turks* it is now called *Diarbech*.

As is the Country, ſuch the People, the moſt *Adjective* of any we have met with hitherto; able at no time to ſtand by themſelves, but ſtill requiring the addition of ſome neighbour Nation to be joyned unto them. Nothing that they can call their own, their Name, their Language, nor their Country. Beholding for their *Name* in the North, to *Syria*; in the South, to *Arabia*: the *Chaldæans* alſo putting in for a ſhare, and challenging thoſe parts which lie next *Aſſyria*, to belong to them. Their *Language* anciently the *Syriack*, at this day the *Arabick*. Their Country ſucceſſively ſubjected to the *Babylonians*, *Aſſyrians*, *Medes*, and *Perſians*. From them firſt conquered by the *Romans*, under the conduct of *Pompey*; reduced into the form of a Province, by the Emperour *Trajan*; more fully ſettled and confirmed by *Aurelianus*. But being recovered by the *Perſians*, they fell together into the power of the *Saracens*, and are now commanded by the *Turks*. Never appearing of themſelves on the Stage of action, but when once God ſhewed his mighty power in their many weakneſſes; and raiſed them up to be a Scourge to the houſe of *Iſrael*, of which ſee *Judges* 3. 8. Hired afterwards by *Adadezer*, King of *Syria Zobah*, in his war againſt *David*; by whom moſt ſhamefully defeated, 2 *Sam.* 10. 16, 18. Yet notwithſtanding memorable in the Book of God, for the birth of *Abraham* and *Rebecca*; the long abode of *Jacob*, and the birth of his Children, in that reſpect affording an *Original* to the *Hebrew* Nation.

The *Chriſtian* faith was firſt preached here by St. *Thaddæus*, one of the 70 Diſciples; *Anno* 43. upon this occaſion. *Abgarus* the *Toparch*, or Prince of *Edeſſa*, one of the chief Cities of this Country, having been long afflicted with an incurable infirmity, and hearing of the fame of *JESUS*, beſeeched him by a ſpecial meſſage to come and help him: whereunto our *Saviour* made this Anſwer, *That he could not viſit him in perſon, the things he was to do, whilſt upon the earth, being to be performed only in the Land of* Canaan; *but that he would take care of his health in convenient time.* Accordingly, not long after his *Aſcenſion*, St. *Thomas* the Apoſtle, by immediate revelation from our Saviour, ſent *Thaddæus* thither; by whom the Prince was cured, and the Goſpel preached, and many of the Nation converted to it: the *Acts* whereof, together with the Copies of the ſeveral Letters from *Abgarus* to CHRIST, and from CHRIST to him, preſerved in the *Archieves* of *Edeſſa*, were by *Euſebius* tranſlated out of the *Syriack*, and inſerted into the body of his *Eccleſiaſtical Hiſtory*, *lib.* 1. *cap.* 14. Once planted, it found good increaſe, continuing in the purity of it till about the year 530. at what time one *Jacobus Syrus* (ſo called from his birth and abode in *Syria*) took upon him the defence of the Errors of *Eutyches*, touching the unity of natures in CHRIST our Saviour. Whoſe followers finding the Patriarchs of *Antioch* too vigilant over them, removed for the moſt part further off, ſettling themſelves in *Babylonia*, and *Meſopotamia*, where they continued in great numbers. Governed by their own Patriarch, to whom the *Jacobites* in *Syria* are alſo ſubject, who takes unto himſelf the Title of Patriarch of *Antioch*, and is ſucceſſively called *Ignatius*, as if the undoubted

Succeſſor of that Saint and Martyr; ſuperior in that regard, to the Patriarch of *Hieruſalem*, who is alſo a *Jacobite*. The Patriarchal See, fixt in the Monaſtery of *Saphran*, near the City of *Merdin*; but the reſidence of the *Patriarchs* for the moſt part, at *Caramit*. The number of *Chriſtians* under his obedience, computed formerly at 160000 Families, reduced ſince unto 50000. That which they hold as *Jacobites*, diſtinct from all other *Chriſtians* is, 1 The acknowledgment but of one nature, one will, and one operation (as there is but one perſon) in Chriſt our Saviour. 2 In ſigning their Children before Baptiſm, in the Face or Arm, with the ſign of the Croſs imprinted with a burning Iron. 3 Retaining *Circumciſion*, and uſing it in both Sexes. 4 Affirming the Angels to conſiſt of two ſubſtances, Fire and Light. And 5 Honouring the memory of *Dioſcorus* (of *Alexandria*) and *Jacobus Syrus*, condemned by the ancient Councils. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*.

1 Not enjoyning the People the neceſſity of *Confeſſion* to a Prieſt, before they admit them to communicate.

2 Not admitting Purgatory, nor Prayers for the Dead.

3 Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt* in both kinds.

4 Allowing the marriage of Prieſts; And

5 Teaching that the ſouls of men deceaſed, are not admitted preſently to the *Viſion* of *God*, but remain ſomewhere in the Earth, to expect Chriſt's coming. In which laſt, (ſetting aſide the determination of the place) as they have many of the Fathers concurring with them; ſo to the firſt (touching the unity of natures in our Saviour Chriſt) they have of late added ſuch qualifications, as poſſibly may make it capable of an *Orthodox* ſenſe.

Chief Rivers of this Country (beſides *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, of which more hereafter,) 1 *Chaboras*, which riſing in Mount *Maſius*, paſſing directly South, falleth into *Euphrates*; as alſo doth 2 *Syngarus*, by *Pliny*, called *Maſca*, ariſing out of the Mountain *Syngarus*; which is but the more Weſtern part of the ſaid Mount *Maſius*. Which names of *Maſca*, *Maſius*, and the *Maſieni* (being the name of a People dwelling thereabouts) ſhew plainly that they go upon very good grounds who place *Maſch*, or *Meſech*, one of the Sons of *Aram*, in theſe parts of the Country.

It was divided anciently into, 1 *Anthemaſia*. 2 *Chalcitis*. 3 *Caulanitis*. 4 *Accabene*. 5 *Ancorabitis*. And 6 *Ingine*: each part containing ſeveral Cities or Towns of note. Theſe ſix when conquered by the *Romans*, reduced unto two Provinces only, *viz.* 1 *Meſopotamia*, lying on the South of Mount *Maſius*, or the head of *Chaboras*; and 2 *Oſrhoene* on the North: this laſt ſo named from one *Oſrhoes*, the Prince or Governour of theſe parts in the time of the *Perſians*, as *Procopius* telleth us.

Chief places of the whole, 1 *Edeſſa*, the Metropolis of *Oſrhoene*, ſituate on the River *Scirtas*, which runneth thorow the middeſt of it, not far from the fall thereof into *Euphrates*. Memorable for the Story of *Abgarus*, before related, amongſt Church-Hiſtorians: and in the *Roman* Hiſtories, for the death of the Emperour *Caracalla*, ſlain here by the appointment of *Macrinus*, Captain of his Guard. The occaſion this. The Emperour conſcious to himſelf of his own unworthineſs, employed one *Maternianus* to enquire amongſt the Magicians in the Empire, who was moſt likely to ſucceed him: by whom accordingly advertiſed that *Macrinus* was to be the man; The Letters being brought unto *Caracalla*, as he was in his Chariot, were by him delivered with the reſt of the Packets to the hands of *Macrinus*, (who by his Office was to be attendant on the Emperours perſon) that he might open them, and ſignifie unto him the contents thereof at his better leiſure. Finding by this the danger in which he ſtood, he reſolved to ſtrike the firſt blow; and to that end entruſted *Martialis*, one of his *Centurions*, with the execution; by whom the Emperour was here killed, as he withdrew himſelf, *Levandæ veſicæ gratiâ*, as my Author hath it. So impoſſible a thing it is to avoid ones Deſtiny; ſo vain a thing for any Prince to think of deſtroying his Succeſſor: and therefore it was very well ſaid to *Nero* in the times of his tyranny, *Omnes licet occideris, Succeſſorem tuum occidere non potes*, that though he cauſed all the men of eminence to be forthwith murdered; yet his Succeſſor would ſurvive him, and eſcape the blow. But to return unto *Edeſſa*, in following times it was made one of the four *Tetrachies* of the Weſtern Chriſtians, when they firſt conquered *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*; the two firſt Governours or *Tetrarches*, ſucceſſively ſucceeding *Godfrey* of *Bouillon* in the Kingdom of *Hieruſalem*. But in the year 1142. it was again recovered by *Sanguin* the *Turk*, Father of *Noradine* Sultan of *Damaſcus*; and by the loſs thereof, no fewer than three Archbiſhopricks withdrawn from the obedience of the See of *Antioch*.

2 *Cologenbar*, another ſtrong piece adjoyning, beſieged on the taking of *Edeſſa*, by the ſame *Sanguin*, who was here ſtabbed in a drunken quarrel by one of his familiar friends; and the Fort ſaved for that time.

3 *Niſibis*, ſituate ſomewhat to the Eaſt of Mount *Maſius*, called alſo *Antiochia Mygdoniæ*, from the River *Mygdonius*, which runneth thorow it; and afterwards *Conſtantia*, from *Conſtantius* the Son of *Conſtantine*. A City of great note in thoſe elder times, a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Meſopotamia*, properly and ſpecially ſo called: which being beſieged by *Sapores* the King of *Perſia*, (*Conſtantius* ruling in the Eaſt) and in no ſmall danger to be loſt, was gallantly defended by *James* the then *Biſhop* of it, whom *Theodoret* calls not only, *Epiſcopum Civitatis, ſed Principem & Ducem*, not the Biſhop only of the City, but the Prince and Captain of it, *lib. 2. cap. 31*. So little inconſiſtency was there found in thoſe early days, betwixt the *Epiſcopal* Function and civil buſineſs, that the biſhops were not interdicted from the Acts of war, when the neceſſities of the State did invite them to it. The City not long after moſt unworthily delivered to the ſaid *Sapores*, by the Emperor *Jovinian*; which drew along with it, in ſhort time, the loſs of the Province.

4 *Ur*, ſeated on the Eaſt of *Niſibis*, betwixt it and *Tigris*; and ſo placed by *Ammianus* who had travelled this Country. Conceived to be the Birth-place of *Abraham*, and called *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Gen.* 11.28. either becauſe the *Chaldees* were in thoſe days poſſeſſed of the place; or becauſe the name of *Chaldea* did comprehend alſo thoſe parts of this Country which lay towards *Tigris*, as was ſhewn before. For that the place from which *Terah* the Father of *Abraham* did return to *Haran* in *Meſopotamia*, was rather ſituate in this Coaſt where *Ur* is placed by *Ammianus*, then betwixt the Lakes of *Chaldæa* and the *Perſian* Gulf, where moſt Writers place it, may appear probable for the reaſons which are here ſubjoyned. 1 Becauſe it is ſaid *Joſhua*, Chap. 24.12. That *Terah* the *Father of Abraham*, and the Father of *Nachor*, dwelt *on the other ſide of the Flood*; that is to ſay, on the further ſide of the River *Euphrates*, and that too ἀπ' ἀρχῆς, as the *Septuagint*; *ab initio*, as the *Vulgar Latine*, in the firſt beginning. Which cannot be underſtood of any *Ur*, placed on or near the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, thoſe being on this ſide of that River. 2 Becauſe all the reſt of *Abraham's*

ham's Ancestors from *Phaleg* downward, were seated in the Northern parts of *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia*; and it were strange that *Terah* should be planted so far from the rest of his kindred. 3 Because from *Ur* in *Mesopotamia*, near the banks of *Tigris*, the way to *Canaan* (to which *Terah* did intend to go) was directly by *Haran*: whereas if he had dwelt (as some say he did) by the Lakes of *Chaldæa*, his way had been directly West thorow *Arabia Deserta*, and not to have travelled, with is family, so far North as *Haran*; and then to have fallen back as much Southward, as he had gone Northward, crossing *Euphrates* twice with his Herds and Cattel. 5 *Haran*, the place to which *Terah* did remove, when he went from *Ur*; and from which *Abraham* did remove, when he went towards *Canaan*, so named in memory of *Haran* the son of *Terah*: but called afterwards by the name of *Carræ*, and by that name well known to the *Roman* Writers for the death of *Crassus* that wealthy *Roman*. Whose estate (besides the tenth which he offered to *Hercules*, and three months corn distributed amongst the poor) amounted to 7100 Talents, which comes in our money, to one Million, 331250 *l*. But all his wealth could not preserve him from the slaughter, slain near this City with the routing of his Army also, by *Herodes* King of *Parthia*: of which briefly *Lucan*,

------ *miserando funere Crassus*
Assyrius Latio maculavit sanguine Carras.
Which may be *Englished* to this purpose,
By a defeat lamented *Crassus* stains
With *Roman* bloud the *Assyrian Carras* Plains.

Called the *Assyrian Carræ* by Poetical licence, because the *Assyrians* formerly had been Lords thereof. And no less memorable was it in the times foregoing, for a famous Temple of the *Moon*, (worshipped here (but in no place else) under both *Sexes*: some honouring it as a Female Deity, then called *Dea Luna*; and others in the shape and dress of a man, and called *Deus Lunus*. But with this fortune and success, as saith *Spartianus*, *qui Lunam fœmineo nomine putabat nuncupandam, is mulieribus semper inserviat*; that they who worshipped it in the form of a *Woman*, should be always subject to their Wives (I trow there were but few of that Religion) *qui verò Marem deum crederet, is uxori dominetur*: but he that worshipped it as a Man, should preserve the Mastery. 6 *Amida*, near the River *Tigris*, the Metropolis of *Mesopotamia*, when one Province only, and before it fell into the hands of the *Romans*; much beautified by *Constantius* the son of *Constantine*, by whom named *Constantia*. But that new name dying with him, the old revived: of great strength, as a frontier Town against the *Persians*, and by them much aimed at. Honoured of late times with the Residence of the Patriarch of the *Jacobite Christians*, as the chief City of this Province; for this cause also made the dwelling of the *Pseudo-Patriarch* of the *Nestorians* (or *Nostranes*) of the Popes erection; and the chief Seat also of the *Bassa* or other Officer, governing this Country for the *Turks*, by whom called *Caramit*, or *Kara Amidi*, that is to say, *Amida the black*, because it was walled with black stone. 7 *Phalga*, or *Phaliga*, at the meeting of *Chaborus* with *Euphrates* not far from *Carræ*, mentioned by *Stephanus*, and *Arianus*; and by *Ptolomy* mistakingly called *Phanga*: the seat or first plantation of *Phaleg*, one of *Abraham*'s Ancestors. *Serug*, another of them giving name to 8 *Sarug*, about a days journey off from *Haran*, spoken of by some latter Writers. 9. *Syngara*, on the River so named, a fortified City in the time of *Ammianus*, by whom mentioned, *lib.* 20. 10 *Bezabde*, mentined by the same Author, by whom said to have been a very strong Fort, seated on a pretty high hill, and bending towards the banks of *Tigris*, before whose times it had anciently been called *Phœnicha*. 11 *Virta*, supposed to have been the work of *Alexander* the *Great*, circled with Walls, environed with Half-moons and Bulwarks, and made unaccessible; in vain besieged by *Sapores* the *Persian* King, after the taking of *Bezabde*. The same perhaps with the *Birtha* of *Ptolomy*. 12 *Merdin*, not far from which in the Monastery of *Saphran*, is the *Patriarchal* See of the *Jacobite Sectaries*.

The first Inhabitants of these Countries, though united from the first beginning under the same Princes and form of Government, came from several Families: all the three sons of *Noah* concurring as it were in this Plantation. From *Nimrod*, *Havilah*, and others of the Posterity of *Chus* the son of *Ham*, came the *Babylonians*; with whom *Chesed* the son of *Nachor*, of the House of *Sem*, intermingling families: or being the Author of their Language, or of some other signal benefit, gave to them the name of *Casdim*, whence came that of *Chaldeans*. From *Assur*, *Arphaxad*, and those of *Arphaxad*'s Posterity, intermingled with the sons of *Mash*, the son of *Aram*, came the *Mesopotamians* and *Assyrians*. And that *Japhet* also and his children may put in for a part, the neighbourhood of the *Medes*, and *Albanese*, descended from him, makes it somewhat probable.

But whatsoever Parents they descended from, *Nimrod*, the son of *Chus*, made so bold with them, as to bring them under his command: planting in *Chaldea*, the Cities of *Babylon*, and *Calne*; in *Assyria*, *Ninive*, *Rhesem*, and *Calach*; and finally *Rehoboth* (if that were *Birtha*, as some think it was) in *Mesopotamia*. By these strong Forts he curbed the Native, and assured his power; being the first that altered the Paternal form of Government, and drew unto himself the Government of several Nations, not having any dependance upon one another. The foundation thus laid by him, his Successors soon raised the building to a wondrous height; advancing the *Assyrian* Empire, from the *Mediterranean* Sea, to the River *Indus*: and that too in a shorter time than could be imagined, but that the world was then divided into petit States, not cemented together with the ligaments of power and policy. For though there be little found of *Belus* the Son of *Nimrod*, but that he spent most part of his time in draining the Marishes, and making firm ground of those vast Fens which lay near to *Babylon*, which were works of peace: yet by those and the like works of peace, he so settled his affairs at home, that he gave his Son *Ninus* the better opportunity to look abroad: who mightily improved his Empire, and was the greatest and most powerful of all that Line, extending his dominions from the River *Indus*, to the *Mediterranean*; and from the *Caspian* Sea, to the Southern Ocean. His Successors we shall find in the following Catalogue of

The *Assyrian* Monarchs.

A. M.		
1798	1	*Nimrod*, called by some *Saturnus Babylonius* the son of *Chus*, and Nephew of *Cham*, was the first who altered the Paternal Government, and usurped dominion over others; making *Babylon* his Imperial City. 47
1845	2	*Belus*, or *Jupiter Babylonius*, the Son of *Nimrod*, whose Image was worshipped by the old Idolaters under the names of *Bel*, and *Baal*. 62
1907	3	*Ninus*, the Son of *Belus*, conquered *Armenia*, *Syria*, *Media*, *Bactria*, and the *Persian* Provinces; and removed the Imperial Seat to *Nineve*, by him much beautified and enlarged. 52

1959 4 *Semi-*

1959 4 *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus* ſubdued the *Arabians*; but invading the *Indians* alſo, ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain by their King *Staurobates*. Of this great Lady it is ſaid, that ſhe was born in *Ascalon*, a Town of *Syria*, and expoſed to the fury of wild beaſts. But being born not to die ſo ingloriouſly, ſhe was brought up by ſhepherds, and at full age preſented to the *Syrian* Vice-roy, who gave her in marriage to his only Son. Going with him to the wars, ſhe fell in acquaintance with *Ninus*, who liking her perſon and ſpirit, took her to his bed. This bred in him a greater affection towards her, ſo that he granted her at her requeſt, the command of the Empire for five days; making a *Decree*, that her will in all things ſhould be punctually performed: which boon being gotten, ſhe put on the Royal Robes, and (as ſome Writers do report) commanded the King to be ſlain. Having thus gotten the *Empire*, ſhe exceedingly enlarged it, leading with her an Army conſiſting of one hundred thouſand Chariots of war, three millions of Foot, and half a million of Horſe. A woman in whom there was nothing not to be honoured or applauded, but her inſatiable luſt: in which, if the *Greek* Writers ſay true (as we have no reaſon to believe it of ſo gallant a woman) ſhe was very guilty.

2001 5 *Ninus* II. the Son of *Ninus* and *Semiramis*.
2039 6 *Arius* 30.
2069 7 *Arabius* 40.
2109 8 *Belus* II. 30.
2139 9 *Amamitrites*.
2177 10 *Belochus Priſcus* 35.
2212 11 *Belochus Jun.* called alſo *Balæus* 52.
2264 12 *Altades* 32.
2296 13 *Mamitus* 30.
2356 14 *Mancaleus* 30.
2326 15 *Spherus* 20.
2376 16 *Mancaleus* II. 30.
2406 17 *Sparetus* 40.
2446 18 *Aſcatades* 40.
2486 19 *Amintes* 45.
2511 20 *Belochus Jun.* 45.
2556 21 *Bellopares* 30.
2586 22 *Lamprides* 22.
2618 23 *Saſares* 20.
2638 24 *Lampares* 20.
2668 25 *Panmas* 45.
2713 26 *Scromas* 19.
2732 27 *Mitreus* 27.
2759 28 *Tatanes* 32.
2791 29 *Tautes* 40.
2831 30 *Tineus* 30.
2861 31 *Dercillus* 40.
2901 32 *Eupales* 38.
2939 33 *Loaſtines* 45.
2984 34 *Pyrithiades* 30.
3014 35 *Ophrateus* 20.
3084 36 *Ophraganeus* 50.
3084 27 *Aſcraſapes* 24.
3126 38 *Sardanapalus*, by *Euſebius* called *Tonoſcoes*, the laſt King of this Race. Of which, being 38 in all, there is ſcarce any thing remaining but the very names: regiſtred in this order by *Beroſus*, or rather by Frier *Annius* a Monk of *Viterbium* in *Tuſcany*, who hath thruſt upon the world, the fancies of his own brain, under the name of that ancient Hiſtorian. The chief Kings of note after *Semiramis*, were,

1 *Ninus*, or *Zameis* her Son; who by his Deputies and Lieutenants ſubdued the *Arians*, *Bactrians*, and *Caſpians*: but was otherwiſe a man of effeminate and unkingly carriage. And therefore is conceived to be the elder *Bacchus*, ſo much celebrated amongſt the *Grecians*.

2 *Belus* the ſecond, who recovered that Country which afterwards was called *Judæa*, to the *Aſſyrian* Empire, from which it had revolted in the time of his Predeceſſor, (on the defeat of *Amraphel*, one of his Lieutenants, by the Sword of *Abraham*,) and ſubdued many other Nations.

3 *Belochus Priſcus*, the tenth King, who by ſome Writers is ſaid to be the author of *Divination* by the flying of Birds, called *Auſpicium*. For of Sooth-ſaying there were in all four kinds.

1. This *Auſpicium*, *quaſi Aviſpicium*, taken from the flight of Birds, either on the right hand, or on the left; (and hence the Proverb cometh, *Avi ſiniſtrâ*, good luck, becauſe in giving, the right hand is oppoſite to the receivers left) or from the number of Birds, whence *Romulus* had promiſed to him the Empire before his Brother, becauſe he had ſeen the double number of Vultures: or laſtly, from the nature of them, whence the ſame *Romulus*, ſeeing the *Vultures*, was (ſaith *Florus*) *ſpei plenus urbem bellatricem fore, ita illi ſanguini & prædæ aſſuetæ aves pollicebantur.*

2. *Aruſpicium*, *ab Aras inſpiciendo*, in which the *Sooth-ſayers* obſerved whether the Beaſt to be ſacrificed came to the Altars willingly, or not: whether the entrails were of natural colour, exulcerate, &c. or whether any part were wanting. All Hiſtories afford variety of examples in this kind; I need give no particular inſtance. A kind of *Divination* ſaid to be practiſed firſt by the *Tuſcans*, or *Hetrurians*; inſtructed in the knowledg thereof by one called *Tages*, who appearing to certain Plough-men out of a Furrow, taught them this myſtery, and ſo vaniſhed.

3. *Tripudium*, ſo called *quaſi Terripudium*, and *Terripavium*, from the trembling or ſhaking of the Earth, was a conjecture of future ſucceſſes, by the rebounding of crumbs caſt unto Chickens. We have an inſtance of this in the life of *Tiberius Gracchus*, who being ſeditiouſly buſie in promoting the Law *Agraria*, was fore-warned by the keeper of his Chickens to deſiſt from that enterprize; becauſe when he had thrown the crumbs to the Coop, there came out but one of the Chickens only, and the ſame without eating went back again; which was taken for a ſign of ill luck, as the greedy devouring of them had been good. But *Tiberius* ſlighting the advertiſement, and purſuing his deſign, was the ſame day ſlain.

4. *Augurium*, ſo called *ab avium garritu*, was a Prediction from the chirping or chattering of birds; as alſo from the ſound & voices heard they knew not whence, nor on what occaſion. In which latter kind the death of *Cæſar* was divined from the clattering of Armour in his houſe; and the poyſoning of *Germanicus* by the ſounding of a Trumpet of its own accord. In the former, an Owl ſcreeching in the Senate-houſe, was deemed ominous to *Auguſtus*; and a company of Crows following *Sejanus* to his houſe, with great noiſe and clamor, was judged to be fatal to that great favorite: and ſo it proved.

4. *Manitus*, the thirteenth King; who revived again the ancient Diſcipline, corrupted by the ſloathfulneſs and effeminacy of his Predeceſſors; and by the terror of his name awed the *Ægyptians*.

5. *Aſcades*, the eighteenth King, more abſolute in *Syria* and the Weſtern parts, than any of the Kings before him.

6. *Sardana-*

6 *Sardanapalus*, the last King of this Race, who being wondrous effeminate, and utterly unable to govern so great an Empire, gave opportunity to *Arbaces*, his Lieutenant in *Media*, to conspire against him. By whom, associated with *Belochus* Governour of *Babylon*, he was besieged in his City of *Nineve*; and there reduced unto such extremities, that gathering his Treasures all together, he burnt himself and them in one funeral Pile, *Eo solùm facto virum imitatus*, as is said by *Justine*. The Treasure which he is said to have burnt with him, amounted to one hundred Millions of Talents of *Gold*, and a thousand Millions of Tallents of Silver: which in our *English* Money comes to twenty thousand and five hundred Millions of pounds. A mass of Money, which as it must be long in gathering, so probably it had not seen the Sun in many years, and therefore grown rusty, might require a fire to purge it. This *Sardanapalus* afforded it, it may be, to end his life with that, in which he placed his *Summum Bonum*. It may be in spight unto his enemies, and it is possible it might be in policy, that so great a treasure not falling to the possession of his Foes, might so much the more disable them from making resistance against, or detaining the Empire from his next rightful Successors. For it is of all things most foolish, both to lose our Treasure, and with it to enrich our Adversaries. On which consideration the *Spaniards* fired their *Indian Fleet* at *Gades*, and the *Genoese* theirs at *Tripolis*, that their Lading might not come into the possession of their enemies, the *English* and *Mahometans*. After the death of this *Sardanapalus*, *Arbaces* took *Media*, & *Persia*, with the confining Provinces; *Belochus* strengthened himself in *Assyria*, *Chaldea*, and the adjacent Regions, his Kingdom being called the new Kingdom of *Assyria*.

The new Kings of *Assyria*, and *Chaldea*.

A. M.

3146 1 *Phul Belochus*, the beginner of this new *Monarchy*, or Race of Monarchs.

3194 2 *Phul Assur*, destroyed *Galilee*, and subdued the Kingdom of *Damascus*; the same who is called *Tiglath Pileser* in the holy Scriptures.

3217 3 *Salmanassar*, who destroyed *Samaria*, and ruined the Kingdom of *Israel*, and carried the ten Tribes to perpetual Captivity. This is the *Nabonassar* of the *Chronologers*.

3227 4 *Sennacherib*, whose blasphemous host was vanquished by Angels from Heaven, and he himself murdered by his two sons, *Adramelech* and *Sharezer*. 7

3233 5 *Assarhaddon*, who revenging his Fathers death on his Brothers, was deposed by his Deputy of *Chaldea*, and the Seat-Royal transferred from *Ninive* to *Babylon*. 10

3243 6 *Merodach Baladan*, Governour of *Babylon*, succeeded his Master in the Throne, conceived by some, to be the *Mardocempades of Ptolomy*; by others, to be also the same King, who by his Captain *Holofernes* did so plague *Judæa*.

3283 7 *Ben Merodach*, the Son of *Merodach Baladan*. 21

3304 8 *Nabopullassar*, who vanquished *Pharaoh Necho* King of *Ægypt*. 25

3339 9 *Nabucchadonosor* the great, by some called the *Hercules* of the East, who conquered *Ægypt* in the life of his Father; with whom he reigned for a time, and mightily enlarged the City of *Babylon*. He joyned also with *Astyages* King of *Medes*, in subverting the proud City of *Ninive*; and in the eighteenth year of his Reign destroyed *Hierusalem*, and carried the people captive unto *Babylon*. But in the last seven years of his Reign he was so distracted, that he lived not much unlike the Beasts of the field; according to the Word of God spoken by *Daniel*, *Chap.* 4. during which time his son *Evilmerodach*, his daughter *Nicocris*, with *Nigliſſat* her husband, and *Laborasoradach* their son, governed his Empire as *Protectors*; and therefore are by some reckon'd as Kings. Finally, *Nebuchadnezzar* having recovered his senses, was again restored unto the Throne; and died, when he had reigned in all 44 years.

3383 10 *Evilmerodach*, the son *Nebuchadnezzar*, slain by *Astyages*, King of the *Medes*. 26

3409 11 *Balthassar*, son of *Evilmerodach* (the *Nabonidus* of *Berosus*) a Prince of a dissolute and cruel nature, was in the latter end of his reign assailed by *Cyaxares* the son of *Astyages* (whom the Scriptures call *Darius Medus*) and by *Cyrus* the *Persian*: by whom he was slain in the seventeenth year of his reign; and the Empire of the *Babylonians* was transferred to the *Medes* and *Persians*.

A. M. 3426.

That this was the end of *Belthassar*, is the common opinion. But *Josephus Scaliger* in his learned and industrious work, *De emendatione temporum*, maketh him to be slain in a tumult by his own people: who elected into the Empire a Nobleman of the *Medes*, called in prophane stories, *Nabonidus*; in divine, *Darius Medus*, who after a 17 years reign was slain by *Cyrus* King of the *Persians*. But by the leave of so worthy a man, this cannot hold good. For the Lord by his Prophet *Jeremy*, had pronounced (*Chap.* 27.) *That all Nations should serve* Nebuchadnezzar, *and his son, and his sons son*; whereas *Nabonidus* was a Prince of strange bloud, and so the Nations were not to serve him: and in *Balthassar*, the sons son of *Nebuchadnezzar*, was this word accomplished. But let us examine his argument, and withal the scoffs, which very prodigally he bestoweth on such as maintain the contrary opinion: *Natio Chronologorum*, the whole rout of *Chronologers*; *boni & diligentes viri*, good simple meaning men; *& addunt alia nihil veriora*, are his first Complements. *Ut igitur*, *quod Chronologorum est*, *omnes resipiscant*, &c. therefore that they may repent their ever being *Chronologers*, he bringeth in *Berosus*, cited by *Josephus*, in his first Book against *Appion*. But *Berosus* there maketh *Nabonidus* (to whom he saith the Kingdom of *Balthassar* was by the people delivered) to be a *Babylonian*, and not as *Scaliger* would have him say, a Nobleman of the *Medes*; neither can the authority of *Berosus* countervail that of *Daniel*, who in *Chap.* 6. telleth *Balthassar*, that his Kingdom should be *divided among the Medes and Persians*. His second argument is drawn from the nature of the word, ἀναδέξατο ὁ Δαρεῖος ὁ Μῆδος ἀναδέξατο τὴν ἀρχὴν, as it is in the same Chapter, *and* Darius *the* Mede *took the Empire*, by which word *took* is implied (saith he) not a forcible invasion, but a willing acceptance of the Empire offered. To this we answer that *Darius* indeed took the Empire quietly and willingly, being offered unto him in *Cyrus*, and his Army consisting of *Medes* and *Persians*, who according to the Word of God, had taken it from *Balthassar*, *Darius* being then absent. *Quid si probavero* (saith he) *eum cognominatum fuisse Medum?* He hath yet one trick more than all these; and *Medus* must not be the *national* name,

name, but the ſirname of *Darius*, which he proveth out of a fragment of *Megaſthenes*, cited by *Euſebius*, in his work *De Præparatione Evangelica*, where he is called Μήδης (συναίτιος ἔτει Μήδης) &c. an argument of all others the moſt ſlight and trivial. For beſides that Μήδης may there as well be the name of his Nation, as of his Family; and beſides that, it thwarteth the places of *Jeremy* and *Daniel*, already quoted; it is Diametrally oppoſite to another place of the ſame *Daniel*, in his ninth Chapter; where he is called *Darius, of the ſeed of the Medes*. Of this *Darius* more anon when we come into *Media*. As for *Nabonidus*, queſtionleſs he was the ſame with *Balthaſſar*. For beſides that, *Joſephus*, and *Beroſus*, attribute to either of them the reign of 17 years, the ſame *Joſephus* (who might beſt know the truth in this caſe) telleth us that *Balthaſſar* was by the *Babylonians* called *Naboandel*, a name not ſo great a ſtranger to *Nabonidus*, as *Scaliger*'s *Darius*, or *Herodotus* his *Labinitus*. But in this we muſt pardon *Joſeph*. Scorn and contradiction was a part of his eſſence. For had he not been in ſome things ſingular, in all, peremptory, he had neither been a *Scaliger*, nor the ſon of *Julius*.

But leaving *Joſeph* to the ſingularity of his own conceits, we find nothing done by the *Aſſyrians* or *Chaldeans* after this ſubjection, which might denote them to have been once the Lords of ſo great an Empire. Succeſſively inſlaved by the *Medes*, *Perſians*, and *Macedonians*; then by the *Perſians* again, afterwards by the *Saracens*, next by the *Turks*, a third time by the *Perſians*, once again by the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Family, unto whom now ſubject: never endeavouring to aſſert in the way of war, or oppoſition, either their ancient reputation, or their native liberties; but ſuffering themſelves to be won, loſt, fought for, and again recovered by their quarrelſom Maſters, as if they had not title to their own Country, but were born to follow the fortunes of all pretenders. The reaſon of which is principally to be aſcribed to the form of Government uſed among the *Perſians*, which was ſo *Deſpotical* and abſolute, if not tyrannical, that they held all the people conquered by them in the nature of ſlaves; not ſuffering any to grow great in a ſtate of inheritance, or to enjoy any place of power and profit under them in the conquered Provinces, but at the pleaſure of the Prince; as it is now uſed amongſt the *Turks* of the *Ottoman* Empire. By means whereof, the great men having no alliances amongſt themſelves, and as few dependants amongſt the people, were never able to make head againſt the Conquerour; but in the fall of the preſent Prince fell together with him: it being a good rule of *Machiavel*, that where the ancient Nobility is in good regard, linked in alliances with themſelves, and well reſpected by the common and inferiour people; there it is difficult for the Invader, though a Conquerour, to win a Country, and harder to keep it being conquered. But on the other ſide, where the Nobility is quite worn out, and the Prince doth hold his Subjects in the nature of ſlaves, there both the Conqueſt will be eaſie, and ſoon aſſured. For to what purpoſe ſhould the Subjects reſiſt the Conquerour, or ſtand any longer to their King, than he ſtands to himſelf, when they are ſure the Conquerour can lay upon them no heavier burdens, than they were accuſtomed to before, and have withal a flatering hope, that their new Maſters may be gentler to them, than their former were? It fares no otherwiſe with them than with *Eſops Aß*, which refuſed to take the opportunity of an eſcape from the hands of the enemy, by which he was taken, becauſe he knew it was not poſſible they ſhould lay more load upon his back, than his old Maſter made him bear. To which condition the *Chaldeans* and *Aſſyrians* being brought by the *Perſians*, and never accuſtomed to the taſte of a better fortune, have followed the ſame ſucceſſes as the *Perſians* did, falling together with them from one hand to another; the particular accompt of whoſe eſtate we ſhall find in *Perſia*, taking this only for the *cloſe*, that when *Solyman*, the *Magnificent* had diſcomfited *Tamas* King of *Perſia*, and taken the great City of *Bagdat*, *Caramit*, *Merdin*, and the reſt both in *Aſſyria*, *Chaldea*, and *Meſopotamia*, ſubmitted to him without any reſiſtance, and received his Garriſons. And for a confirmation of his Eſtate, he received at the hand of the *Caliph* of *Babylon* (who by an old *Prerogative* had the nomination or confirmation, at the leaſt, of the Kings of *Aſſyria*, and the Sultans of *Ægypt*) the Royal Ornaments and Enſigns, *Anno* 1534. incorporating by that means thoſe Regions into his Eſtates, and making them Provinces of his Empire; in which he left a *Beglerbeg* at Bagdat to command in Chief, and divers *Sanziacks* in their ſeveral and reſpective Provinces. And though the *Perſian* Kings have ſince taken, and are ſtill poſſeſſed of ſome places of importance in them; yet I account them in regard of the ſaid inveſtiture, and the long poſſeſſion following on it, for Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire: as I do *Media* of the *Perſian*, though *Tauris* and ſome other pieces of it be poſſeſſed by the *Turks*.

MOUNT

MOUNT TAURUS.

MOUNT-TAURUS is a conſtant and continual ridge of hills, which extend from the *Mediterranean* to the *Indian* Seas; running thorow the whole length of *Aſia* from weſt to Eaſt, and dividing it, as the *Æquator* doth the *Globe*, into North and South. It was called *Taurus* from the word *Tur* or *Taur*, which in the *Syriac* and *Chaldean* ſignifieth a Mountain; the common name of all high Mountains being made peculiar unto this, by reaſon of its greatneſs and continued length; yet ſo, that it had other names alſo in ſome parts thereof, according to the Regions and Nations by which it paſſed, and on which it bordered. The courſe whereof is thus ſet down by Sir *Walter Raleigh*: premiſing only, that it beginneth in the Province of *Lycia*, a Region of *Aſia Minor*, near the *Mediterranean*. "Theſe Mountains (ſaith he) which "ſunder *Cilicia* from the reſt of *Aſia* the leſs, on the "North thereof are called *Taurus*; and where they part "it from *Comagena* a Province of *Syria*, they are called "*Amanus*. On the Eaſt ſide of the River *Euphrates* "(which forceth it ſelf a way thorow it) it ſometimes re-"ſumeth the name of *Taurus*, as in *Ptolomies* three firſt "Tables of *Aſia*, and ſometimes taketh the name of *Ni-"phathes*, as in the fourth: retaining that uncertain ap-"pellation, ſo long as they bound *Armenia* from *Meſo-"potamia*. After the River *Tigris* hath alſo cut them "aſunder, they continue the name of *Niphathes* altoge-"ther, until they ſeparate *Aſſyria* and *Media*, but then "they call themſelves *Coatras*: although between the up-"per and lower *Media*, they appear not alwaies, but are "ſeen diſcontinued, and broke in pieces: ſuch parts of "it as are found in the middle of that Country, being "called *Orantes*; thoſe which lie more towards the Eaſt "being named *Coronus*, out of the Southern parts where-"of iſſueth the River of *Bagradus*, which divideth the an-"cient *Perſia* from *Caramania*. Continuing further Eaſt-"ward by the name of *Coronus*, they give unto the *Par-"thians* and *Hyrcanians*, their proper Countries; and "afterwards change themſelves into the *Mountains* of "*Seriphi*, out of which riſeth the River *Maurgus*. And "now beginning to draw towards the end of their courſe, "they firſt make themſelves the South border of *Bactria*, "and are then known by the name of *Parapamiſus*; and "after take unto themſelves the name of *Caucaſus*, where "the famous Rivers *Indus*, *Hydaſpis*, and *Zaræbrus*, have "their firſt beginnings. In this point do they hold their "heads exceeding high, to equal the Mountains of "*Imaus*; whom they encounter within the 35, 36, and "37 Degrees of *Latitude*, and the 140 Degree of *Lon-"gitude*: known by no other name than this, till final-"ly they terminate their courſe in the *Indian* Seas. So far, and to this purpoſe, that noble Gentleman. It may be added hereunto, that though the ancient Writers could trace the courſe of this Mountain, no further than the meeting of it with *Imaus*; yet later obſervations follow it to the wall of *China*: the parts beyond *Caucaſus* being now known by the names of *Delanguer*, and *Naugrocot*. But this is to be underſtood only of the main body of theſe Mountains, which hold on in an even courſe from Weſt to Eaſt; not of thoſe ſpurs and branches of it, which ſhoot either to the North, or South: ſuch as are the *Anti-Taurus* in ſome parts of the *leſſer Aſia*; the *Gordiæan* hills, and the *Montes Moſchici*, with thoſe which *Pliny* calleth *Pariedri*, others *Pariardri*, in *Armenia Major*; and that of *Caborus*, which ſheweth it ſelf on the North-eaſt of *Aſſyria*, with divers others.

In ſuch a continual courſe of Mountains it muſt needs be that Many fierce Nations did inhabit in former times, not eaſily ſubdued, nor ſo ſoon reduced unto civility, as ſuch who were poſſeſſed of places leſs defenſible, and fitter for commerce and traffick with the reſt of mankind. And they continued in theſe late times, the laſt which were brought under by the *Turk* and *Perſians*, the mightieſt Monarchs of thoſe parts; though bordering on, or totally environed with their dominions. Two Kingdoms they afforded of long continuance: one towards the Weſt, where it cloſeth with the Mountains of *Anti-Taurus*, and divideth *Syria Comagena* from *Armenia Major*; the other towards the Eaſt, ſeparating *Media* from *Hyrcania*. For want of other names to deſcribe them by, we will call the firſt the Kingdom of *Aladeules*, and the laſt the Kingdom of *Bahaman*; according to the names of the two laſt Kings.

1 The Kingdom of *ALADEULES* contained that part of this Mountainous tract, which beginning in or about *Anti-Taurus*, extended it ſelf as far towards the Eaſt, as to the banks of the River *Tigris*, where they part *Meſopotamia* from *Armenia Major*. Inhabited by a people naturally very fierce and warlike, more famous for nothing then their want of all things; who as men dwelling in a rough and barren Country, could little profit themſelves by *husbandry*: and therefore gave themſelves to *grazing*, breeding on their paſtures ſome ſtore of horſe and Camels, which they ſold to others, but eſpecially maintaining themſelves and their families by hunting and ſtealing. Suppoſed to come originally from the *Cappadocians*, and *Armenians* of the *leſſer Aſia*, which by long and continual wars in the former Ages, were forced to forſake their dwellings, and for ſafety of their lives to fly to theſe unpeopled and deſolate Mountains. Where ſearching every hill and dale, and following the opportunity of Springs and Rivers, but chiefly the mildeſt *Temperature* of the Air, and moſt chearful aſpect of the Sun, they built in many places poor Villages; and afterwards ſome better Towns. The principal of which is named *Maras*, ſo called as it is conceived from the River *Marſias*, which riſing out of the Mountain *Cœlen*,

passeth by the same, and not far off falleth into the River *Euphrates*.

When it was made a Kingdom first, it is hard to say, the Kings hereof being mean and inconsiderable in the eye of the world, not worth the conquering; and wanting power to conquer others and enlarge their territories: nor indeed worthy any King but one of their own, who could content himself with reigning over Rocks and Mountains. The last was *Aladeules*, so much spoken of in the *Turkish* Histories, and by them called the *Mountain King*. Conceived by some Writers to have been the Author of such a *Paradise*, as we shall find described when we come to *Drangiana*, a Province of *Persia*; and by that means grown formidable to his neighbouring Princes. But that which made him most really and truly known, in the stories of the former times, was the stout opposition which he made against the *Turks*, in their wars with *Persia*. He had before given no small check to the proceedings of *Bajazet*, the second, in his conquest of the *Caramanian* Kingdom; and no less troubled *Selimus* the Son of *Bajazet*, in his *Persian* wars, impeaching what he could the greatness of the *Ottoman* Family. Fought with by *Selimus*, he made good his ground with a great deal of courage, till betrayed by *Alis Beg*, General of his horse; and seeing his Army terrified by the shot of the *Turks*, he was fain to flie. But being at last taken, and put to death by the command of *Selimus*, his Kingdom was converted to a *Turkish* Province, *Anno* 1515. and so continueth to this day.

2 The Kingdom of *BAHAMAN* was situate more towards the East, amongst the Mountains which divide *Media* from *Hyrcania*, as before was said. The Mountains in those parts so high, that Travellers at the end of a two daies journey, may discern the *middle Region* of the Air to be beneath them: exceeding troublesom to ascend, about 50 miles in height when once got to the top; but more dangerous by reason of the Rocks and *Precipices*, in the going down: full of inhospitable streights, and so cold and barren, that were not *Sovereignty* a temptation above all resistance, no man would take upon him the command of so poor a Kingdom. And yet in this extremity of height and cold, there is great quantity of *Sulphur*, which makes it sparkle in the night, like the hill *Vesuvius*, in *Italy*, by means whereof here are many *Hot-Bathes*, three of them walled about, two open; to which resort unsound and decrepit people, in very great multitudes. The chief Town of it *Larry-Joon*, in the ordinary Road or Pass betwixt *Omael*, the last Town of *Hyrcania*, and *Damoan* the first of *Media*: But the Kings Seat was in a Village called *Reyna*, where he had a Castle so built upon the best advantages of Art and Nature, that it seemed invincible: adorned above, with gardens, flowers, and most pleasant fruits; and furnished beneath with a Rivulet of purest water, which pleasantly passing thorow the Castle, fell into the *Vallies*. A Castle of so large a circuit, that besides the Kings Family or Court, it was able to admit a garrison of 10000 men.

The last King hereof was the foresaid *Bahaman*, derived from a long descent of Royal Ancestors, comparing for antiquity with the *Persian Sophies*: who though ill-neighboured on both sides, by the *Tartarian* on the one, and the Kings of *Persia* on the other; yet had they with great fortune, policy, and valour, maintained their *Royalties* against all pretenders. But *Abas* the late *Persian Sophy*, having either conquered or reduced *Hyrcania*, picked a quarrel with *Bahaman*; pretending that by the opportunity of his situation he might rob his *Carwans*, hinder his progress towards the *Hyrcanian* Sea, and turn into other Channels all the Streams or Rivers, which rising from Mount *Taurus* watered and enriched his *Persian* Territories. And though *Bahaman* never had attempted any of the things objected; yet it was cause enough of quarrel that he might so do: and therefore is besieged in his Castle of *Reyna*, with an Army of 30000 men. Finding no possibility to prevail by force, the General of the *Persians* proceeds by *treachery*, invites the old King into his Camp under colour of Parley, and by this means drew his two Sons out of the Castle to the *Parley* also. Whom having got into his power, he first caused their heads to be cut off; and after making use of their Seals and Signets, obtains a surrender of the place: and with it the possession of this mountainous Kingdom, *Anno* 1601. or thereabouts, united ever since to the Crown of *Persia*.

OF

OF TURCOMANIA.

TURCOMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, *Cappadocia*, and *Armenia Minor*; on the North, with *Tartary*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and *Assyria*. So called from the *Turcomans* or *Turks*; who from hence made their first expedition for the conquest of *Persia*, and after spread themselves over all those parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africk*, now in their possession. A Country which consisteth of four several Provinces, each Province having to its self its particular story; and therefore we must look upon it, as it is now divided into those four parts, that is to say, 1 *Armenia Major*, or *Turcomania* properly and specially so called; 2 *Colchis*, now called *Mengrelia*; 3 *Iberia*, now named *Georgia*; and 4 *Albania*, which they now term *Zuiria*.

1 ARMENIA MAJOR.

ARMENIA MAJOR is bounded on the East, with *Media*, and some part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with the River *Euphrates*, which parteth it from *Armenia Minor*, in the *lesser Asia*; on the North, with *Colchis*, or *Mengrelia*; and on the South, with *Mesopotamia*, and some part of *Assyria*.

It was called *Armenia*, as some say, *quasi Aram-Mini*, or the *Minni* of *Syria*: but as others say, *quasi Har-mini*, that is to say, *Mons Mini*, or *Montana Miniadis*: the *Mini*, or *Minni*, being a Region of this tract, mentioned by *Jeremy* the Prophet, *Chap.* 51. 27. and by him placed betwixt *Ararat*, and *Askenaz*, which shew the situation of it to be hereabouts. *Major* was added to it for distinction sake, to difference it from *Armenia Minor*: and now it is called *Turcomania*, as the first seat in which the *Turcomans* or *Turks* did fix themselves, after their eruption out of *Scythia*.

The Country in the most part overspread with hills, branches of those huge mountains of *Taurus*, and *Anti-Taurus*; but intermixt with fertile and delightful Vallies, liberally furnished with Cattel, and good store of fruits, though much subject to deep snows, which do much annoy it. The Riches of it not to be better estimated than by the frankness of *Tigranes*, once King hereof. Who being fined by *Pompey* at 6000 Talents, not only very readily laid down that sum; but added of his own accord to every *Roman* Souldier 50 *Drachmas* of Silver, 1000 *Drachmas* to each Captain, and to every *Colonel* a Talent. For though *Tigranes* had added some part of *Media*, and the whole Kingdom of *Syria*, unto his Estate: yet those being new Acquests, and not fully settled, were not much likely, for the present, to enrich his Coffers: new conquered Provinces being for the most part more chargeable than beneficial to the *Victor*.

The people are generally great bodied, of comely personage, and patient of all kind of labour; good Archers, when put to it, But careless of honour got by war; merry, desirous to be at ease, and apt to be soothed. The women tall, but homely, of a manly look, most of them skilful at their Bow, or some other weapon. Their Families for the most part great, the Father, and all his Posterity to the third and fourth generation, living under a roof; after whose death the eldest, whether Son or Brother hath the chiefest Rule. In diet and cloathing all alike; and in most places they are said to be very industrious; painful in tillage, and well seen in *Manufactures*, especially rich *Tapestries*, *Grograins*, and watered *Chamlets*: with which they traffick into most Cities of the *Turks* and other *Mahometans*; priviledged, as they say, by a *Charter under Mahomet's* own hand, above other *Christians*, and upon that occasion more dispersed in the Eastern Countries than any Nation in the world, the *Jews* excepted.

They have a Language of their own, which they call the *Armenian*, not only used amongst them in common talk, but in sacred offices: the Scriptures being translated into that language also; and that, as the people do affirm, by the hand of St. *Chrysostom*, at such time as (on the solicitation of the Empress *Eudoxia*, his most eager enemy) he was confined to the lesser *Armenia*, by the Emperour *Arcadius*: to whom also they ascribe the invention of the *Armenian Characters*, or Letters, still in use amongst them.

They received the *Christian* Faith by the preaching of St. *Bartholomew*, and were anciently of the jurisdiction of the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, as a Province of the *Pontick Diocese*; which together with the *Asian Diocese*, and that of *Thrace*, were by the *Council* of *Chalcedon* laid unto that *Patriarchat*. But falling into the opinions of *Eutyches*, touching one nature only in CHRIST our Saviour, they withdrew themselves long since, from the communion of the *Greeks*, whom they hold in greater detestation than all other *Christians*; and chose two Patriarchs of their own, of whom more anon. Other opinions which they hold besides those of *Eutyches*, (which yet they labour to make capable of an *Orthodox* sense;) and those wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, as 1 Denying *Purgatory*, and prayers for the dead. 2 Admitting none to be made *Priests*, except those that be married. 3 Denying the body of Christ to be really under the *species* of bread and wine. And 4 *Rebaptizing* such as come to their *Communion* from the *Latine* Churches, Are these that follow, in which they differ also from most Churches else, *viz.* 1 In receiving *Infants* to the *Lord's Table*, immediately after *Baptism*. 2 In abstaining from *unclean* beasts. 3 In fasting on *Christmas* day. And 4 In holding their Children over the fire, as a necessary circumstance in *Baptism*; because *John the Baptist* told the people which followed him, that CHRIST would baptize them with the *Holy Ghost*,

and with fire; in which place he meaneth not *material fire*, but the lively purgation of the *Holy Ghost*, according to the nature of fire. The Church of this Sect is governed by two *Patriarchs*; whereof the one hath under his jurisdiction this *Turcomania*, comprehending 150000 Families, besides very many *Monasteries*: and the other hath under him the two Provinces of *Armenia* the Lesser, and *Cilicia*, comprehending 20000 Families, or thereabouts: The first residing anciently in *Sebastia*, the *Metropolis* of the greater *Armenia*; the second originally at *Melitene*, the *Metropolis* of *Armenia Minor*; but of late at *Sis*, a small City, not far from *Tarsus* in *Cilicia*. Both honoured with the title of *Catholiques*, and having under them to the number of 30 Bishops.

Chief Rivers of this Country, 1 *Araxes*, which rising out of Mount *Abos*, an *Armenian* Mountain, first runneth Eastward as far as *Media*, and then bendeth it self towards the *North*: and after a long course is divided into two Branches; whereof the one falleth into the *Caspian* Sea, the other into, 2 *Cyrus*, another great River of this Country. The fountain of this last in Mount *Caucasus* in the furthest North of *Turcomania*; and falling into a Lake, there meeteth with 3 *Cambyses*, another great River of these parts; and so together hasten to the *Caspian* also. 4 *Euphrates*, by the *Turks* called *Frat*, by the *Hebrews*, *Perah*, famous in Scripture for its watering the Garden of *Eden*, hath its fountain in the hills which they call *Niphates*, as is said by *Strabo*. A River of great length and swiftness. For having forced it self a passage through the Mountains of *Taurus*, it runeth in the West of *Mesopotamia*, with a stream so violent, that they who go by water from *Bir* to *Birrah*, a Town on the North-west of *Mesopotamia*, to the City of *Bagdat*, are fain to come back again by land; selling those boats for eight Crowns which they bought for 50. At *Apamia*, a City of *Chaldea* it is joyned with *Tigris*, with which the greatest branch of it passeth thorow the City of *Babylon*, and so into the *Persian* Gulf: the rest of it being cut into many *Channels*, for fear it should overflow and drown the Country, are quite lost in the *Lakes* of *Chaldea*. 5 *Tigris*, a swifter stream than that, whence it had the name; the word in the *Median* Tongue signifying an *Arrow*. A River of so strong a course, that it passeth thorow the Lake *Thonitis*, without mixture of Waters, and affordeth the *Armenians* an easie passage to *Bagdat*: who on a few *Rafts* borne up with *Goat-skins* blown full of wind, and boards laid upon them, make their voyage thither. It is called *Hiddekel* in the Scripture, one of the four Rivers which watered the Garden of *Paradise*; situate in an Island made by the embracement of this River and *Euphrates*, with their several Branches. Rising originally out of the Lake of *Thelpitis*, in *Armenia Major*, where now we are. It is presently almost swallowed by the gaping Earth; and passing under the huge bulk of *Taurus*, breaketh forth again; and compassing the East parts of *Mesopotamia*, which it divides from *Assyria*, meets with *Euphrates*, as before. Of which its first and second birth, thus the Poet *Lucan*,

At Tigrin subitò tellus absorbet hiatu,
Occultoque tegit cursus; rursusque renatum
Fonte novo flumen pelagi non abnegat undas.

That is to say,

Tigris, soon swallowed by the thirsty earth,
Finds there a burial where it had its birth:
But breaking out at a new spring, vouchsafes
With the salt Seas to mix its sweeter waves.

Mountains of most note, are, 1 *Abos*, glorying in the fountains of the great River *Araxes*. 2 *Periardes*, or *Periarges*, as *Ptolomy*, *Pariedri*, as *Pliny* calleth it, a branch or spur of the great Mountain *Taurus*. 3 *Udacespes*, another branch of that great Mountain. 4 Some part of *Anti-Taurus*. 5 The Mountains called *Montes Moschici*, more towards the North, abutting upon *Cappadocia*, and the *Euxine* Sea: which name they took from *Mesech*, or *Mosoch* the Son of *Japhet*, preserving the remembrance of his planting there. 6 *Niphates*, one of the spurs of *Taurus*, out of which the famous River *Euphrates* is said to issue. 7 The *Gordiæan* Mountains, conceived by many learned men to be the Mountains of *Ararat*, on one of the tops whereof called *Baris*, the Ark of *Noah* is most generally affirmed to rest. Affirmed by many ancient Writers of the Christian Church, and countenanced not only by *Josephus* and some others of the Elder Historians; but by the *Septuagint* themselves: who in the 37 Chap. of *Isa. v.* 38. and 2 *Kings* 19. 37. have rendred *Ararat* by *Armenia*. And be it so, let *Ararat* be *Armenia*, and consequently the Mountains of *Ararat* be *Armenian* Mountains: yet doth it not follow hereupon, that the Ark rested on the *Gordiæan* Mountains, or any other of this Country, as they would conclude. We may infer as *Logically*, for ought I can see, that the Garden of *Eden* must be looked for in *Armenia* also; because situate in the circlings of *Euphrates*, and *Tigris*, two *Armenian* Rivers. Those Rivers have indeed their fountains in *Armenia Major*, but compass not the Garden of *Eden*, till after a long course they encounter each other in the spacious Plains of *Babylonia*. And so those mountains, though they have the name of the Mountains of *Ararat* or *Armenia*, because there first grown to a discernable and super-eminent height above all the mountains of those parts, became not the resting place of the Ark, till after a further course towards the East, they were grown to their fullest height; which is in those parts of it betwixt *Scythia* and *Persia*, which are called Mount *Caucasus*: not that Mount *Caucasus* which lieth on the North of *Colchis*, and *Iberia*, out of which the River *Cyrus* is said to rise; but that which lieth on the East-side of the *Caspian* Sea, where Mount *Taurus* and *Imaus* do cross each other. But of this elsewhere.

It was divided heretofore into many Provinces, the principal whereof had (I grant) its name from the *Gordiæan* Mountains, called in some Writers, *Cordiæi*; from whence the Province had the name of *Gordiena*, but most commonly called *Corduene*, bordering on *Assyria*. The Kingdom once of *Zarbienus*, who siding with *Lucullus* against *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*, was by *Tigranes* murdered with his Wife and Children; but honoured by *Lucullus* with a stately and magnificent funeral. 2 The second Province of note is called *Cotacene*, near the *Montes Moschici*. 3 *Tosarene* bordering on the River *Cyrus*. 4 *Colthene* on the banks of *Araxes*. 5 *Sophene*, near the turnings of the River *Euphrates*; mistook by some industrious and knowing men, to be the *Syria Soba* of the Holy Scriptures. 6 *Basisine*, on the Northwest, near the Springs of that River. But what Cities did belong to each, I find no where specified.

Those of most consequence in the whole, 1 *Artaxata*, by *Florus* called *Caput Gentis*: of most esteem in those times, and the Seat-royal of the Kings of *Armenia* from its first foundation. Built by *Artaxes*, one of the Progenitors of *Tigranes*, at the perswasion of *Annibal*, whilest he abode in this Country: who liking the situation of the place, drew for it the model of a strong and gallant City, according to which Plat-form it was presently built. Taken and sacked by the *Romans*, as a daughter of *Carthage*, by *Corbulo* in the time of *Nero*, it never could revive again to its former splendour. In the middle ages called *Esechia*, and at this day *Coy*, or *Coims* if not built rather out of the ruins of it. A City memorable for two great battels near unto it; the first between *Lucullus* on

the

the one side, against *Mithridates* and *Tigranes* on the other; wherein the *Romans* were Victors: the second between *Selimus* Emperour of the *Turks*, and *Hysmael* the *Persian* Sophy; wherein the *Turks* were Conquerours, *Anno* 1514. A Victory which he bought with the loss of 30000 of his best men, and such a terrour to the whole Army, that the *Turks* to this day call it the only day of doom. The fields adjoyning to the Town wherein this cruel battel was fought, called the *Chalderan fields*. 2 *Sebastia*, now *Suassia*, seated on *Euphrates*, where it meeteth with the *Mountain Taurus*; the residence of the Patriarch of the *Armenians*, at their first separation from the See of *Constantinople*; the Metropolis at that time of all *Armenia*: so named in honour of *Augustus*, whom the *Greeks* call *Sebastos*. But of late divested of that dignity, the *Patriarchal* See, by reason of the fierce wars raging in this Country, betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*, being removed to the Monastery of *Eomeazin*, near the City of *Ervan* in *Persia*; in the dominions of which King these *Armenian Christians* live in great abundance, by the name of *Jelphelins*. 3 *Tigranocerta*, beautified and enlarged, if not first founded, by *Tigranes* above mentioned; by whom replenished with people of several Nations, whose Countries he had taken from them and enriched in a manner with the wealth of all his Kingdom: there being no *Armenian*, either Prince or Peasant, who sent not somewhat towards the adorning of it. But taken by *Lucullus* without great resistance, those several Nations not agreeing amongst themselves: and therein besides other Treasure, no less than 8000 Talents in ready money. The City situate near a River, which *Tacitus* calleth *Nicephorius*. 4 *Arsamosata*, by *Pliny* called *Arsinote*, on the banks of *Euphrates*. 5 *Cholna*, so called in memory of *Hul*, or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, one of the first Planters of this Country. 6 *Baraza*, by the Emperour *Leo* much enlarged and beautified; dignified with the new name of *Leontopolis*, and for a while made the Metropolis of the Province. 7 *Arsamata*, by *Strabo* called *Arxata*, 8 *Theodosiopolis*, built on the foundation of some of the more ancient Cities, by the Emperour *Theodosius*, and of him thus named. 9 *Colonia*, the strongest and most defensible City hereof, when possessed by the *Romans*. 10 *Clamassum*, a strong Town on the banks of *Euphrates*, taken by *Selimus* the first in his way towards *Persia*, and therewith *Iviry* and *Selsin* of the rest of this Country, since wholly conquered by his Successors. 12 *Chars*, not far from the same River also, supposed to be the *Chorsa* of *Ptolomy*, of which not long since the ruins only; but in three weeks so repaired and fortified by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1579. that it is thought to be impregnable. 13 *Thespia*, giving name of old to the Lake *Thespitis*, and to the Region called *Thespies*; but now not in being. 14 *Armiathe*, now of greatest name, and esteemed the *Metropolis* of this Country: situate in that part of the Lake of *Vastan* (the *Martiana palus* of the ancient Writers) which lieth next to this Country: and by that well fortified: the only City of *Armenia* possessed by the *Persians*, who are the Lords of all that Lake, of which more hereafter. 15 *Van*, both for natural situation, and the works of Art, accompted by the *Turks* for their strongest Bulwark in these parts against the *Persians*; and for that cause well garrisoned, and as well munitioned.

This Country was first planted by *Hul* or *Chul* the Son of *Aram*, and by *Mesech* one of the Sons of *Japhet*, who with their Families or Colonies possessed the same: the one leaving the remainder of his name, in the *Montes Moschici*; the other in the Town called *Cholna*, and the Region called *Colchene* by *Ptolomy*, *Cholobatene* by *Stephanus*. Advanced to the honour of a Kingdom as soon as any, that of *Babel* excepted: *Ninus* the third from *Nimrod* finding *Barzanes* King hereof, whom he forced to acknowledge his superiority, and to aid him in his wars against *Zoroaster* the King of *Bactria*. Kings of most note in times succeeding, (for we have no constant Catalogue of them) were 1 *Araxes*, who being warred on by the *Persians*, was promised victory by the *Oracle*, on the sacrifice of his two fair Daughters. Willing to satisfie the Gods, and yet spare his Children, he sacrificed two of the daughters of *Miesalcus*, a Nobleman of this Country: by whom in revenge hereof his own daughters were slain, and himself so solely followed, that swimming the River then called *Helmus*, he was therein drowned, and thereby gave unto that River the name of *Araxes*. 2 *Artaxa*, the founder of the great City *Artaxata*; spoken of before. 3 *Tigranes*, the most mighty King that ever reigned in *Armenia*, to which he added by his prowess, *Galatia*, and a great part of *Cilicia*, in *Asia Minor*, the whole Countries of *Media*, *Syria*, and *Phœnicia*: But siding with *Mithridates*, whose daughter he had married, against the *Romans*, he was by *Lucullus* overthrown in two great battels, and outed of the greatest part of his dominions. Hearing that *Pompey* had succeeded *Lucullus* in command of the Army, and trusting more unto his goodness than a wise man would, he put himself into his power: by whom condemned in a great sum of money for the charge of the War, and stripped of all the rest of his Estates, he was suffered to enjoy *Armenia Major*, *Syria* being made a Province, *Sophene* given to *Ariobarzanes* King of *Cappadocia*, *Media* left unto it self, and the lesser *Armenia* conferred on one of his Sons, who being found guilty of some practice with the King of *Parthia*, was carried prisoner unto *Rome*, and his Country brought into the form of a Province. 4 *Artavasdes*, circumvented by *Marc Antony*, who led him Prisoner to *Rome*, but (*catenis, ne quid honori ejus decesset, aureis*, as the Historian tells us of him) it was in Chains of Gold for his great honour; giving *Armenia* to one of the Sons of *Cleopatra*. And though, 5 *Artaxias* recovered his Fathers Kingdom, yet he and his Successors held it but as Vassals of the *Roman* Empire: the Senate after that confirming, and sometimes nominating the *Armenian* Kings. Continuing in this Estate till the time of *Trajan*, it was by him reduced to the form of a Province (made after that a part of the *Pontick Diocese*) who adding *Mesopotamia* also unto his Dominions, made *Tigris* the Eastern border of his Empire, which *Augustus* thought fit to limit with the banks of *Euphrates*. But long it held not in that form, being governed by its own Kings, as it was before *Trajan*'s time, in the reign of *Constantius*, *Julian*, and the Emperours following; whom they acknowledged and revered as their Lords in chief, till the time of *Justinian* the second (he began his Empire, *Anno* 687.) when subdued by the *Saracens*. Recovered by that Emperour, but soon lost again, it continued subject to the *Saracens* till the breaking in of the *Turks*, *Anno* 844. of whom more anon. The greatest part of the *Turks* emptying themselves into *Persia*, and other Countries which they took from the Eastern Emperours; the Christians of *Armenia* began to take heart again, and to have Kings of their own, by whom governed, till again subdued by *Occadan*, or *Heccata* the Son of *Cingis*, the first *Cham* of the *Tartars*. Nor did the *Tartars* make so absolute a conquest of it, as to extinguish either Christianity, or the race of the Kings, *Haithon*, sirnamed *Armenius*, reigning after this, and going in person to *Mongo*, the great *Cham* of *Tartary*, 1257. And in our own *Chronicles*, in the Reign of King *Richard* the Second, we find mention of one *Leon* an *Armenian* King, who came hither to sue for aid against the *Turks*; by whom

then

then dispossessed of his Estates. By *Ussan-Cassanes*, one of the Princes of this Country, (of whom more hereafter) who had the fortune to obtain the Crown of *Persia*, *Anno* 1472. it was made a Province of that Kingdom: and so continued till the year 1515. when conquered by *Selimus* the first, and by him made a part of the *Turkish* Empire; more fully settled and assured in the Reign of *Amurath* the third, who by causing many Forts and Garrisons to be planted in it, made the conquest absolute.

The Arms of this Kingdom, when a Kingdom, governed by Princes of its own of the Christian faith, were *Gules*, three heads of a Buck *Argent*, Crowned *Or*.

2. COLCHIS.

COLCHIS is bounded on the East, with *Iberia*; on the West, with the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Tartars Precopenses*; on the North, with *Tartary*, from which parted by those vast hills, which the *Romans* called *Caucasi*; and on the South, with *Armenia Major*, from which separated by the *Montes Moschici*.

The reason of the name I find not. Nor can yield unto *Bochartus*, who fetcheth the original of the name and Nation, from *Casluhim*, one of the Sons of *Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, the *Etymology* of the name being too much wrested, and *Ægypt* too far off to give a being to *Colchis* in those early daies; though possibly in times succeeding, the *Ægyptians* hearing by the *Greeks*, of the wealth of the Country, might send Colonies of their people thither, as to other places. It is now called *Mengrelia*.

The Country said to be very fruitful, if the care of the husbandman were not wanting. Their Vines they plant at the feet of great trees, which twining about the arms thereof lade them full of Grapes: with which, and other fruits rising from the Earth, they used of late times to furnish the Store-houses of their Kings, for want of ready mony to fill his Coffers, their tributes being paid in such commodities. Formerly of great fame for abundance of Gold, found in the sands of their Rivers issuing from the *Caucasian* Mountains. The thing affirmed by *Appianus* in his *Mithridatica*; χρυσοφορῶν ἢ ὄν τῷ Καυκάσῳ πολλαὶ μὲν ἄλλαι ἀῤῥυγαὶ ἀφορμαὶ, Many of their springs, saith he, which come out of *Caucasus*, carry veins of Gold. The like saith *Strabo* also, and some other Antients. With which, and out of their rich Mines both of Gold and Silver, the Kings hereof were so well furnished with those Metals, that the furniture of their Chambers were all of Gold, and the beams of their Lodgings were made of Silver. But now so destitute of both, that the people for want of money to buy and sell with, are inforced to barter their commodities, and change one for another.

The people at the present very rude and barbarous; so inhumane and void of natural affection, that they sell their children to the *Turks*. The better sort of them much given to belly-chear, dancing, and singing loose Sonnets of love and dalliance; using much wine in their entertainments, which the more their guests drink, the better welcome; inflamed wherewith they offer them for a cooler their Wives or Sisters, with charge to yield them all content, esteeming it no small credit to them if it be accepted. Nor are the women much averse from the entertainment, whether to please themselves, or obey their husbands, let them tell that can.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted in the time of the Emperour *Justinus*, by whose perswasion *Tzanes* Prince of the *Colchi*, then at the Court in *Constantinople*, became a Christian; and being baptized, was returned back into his Country with the title of King. But *Cabades*, the King of *Persia*, much offended at it, proclaimed war against him; which hindred the further progress of the Gospel, till the year 860. About which time *Methodius* and *Cyril*, two reverend men, were by the Patriarch of *Constantinople* employed in this service; which they successfully effected. In that regard they hold to the communion of the Church of *Greece*, and belong to the jurisdiction of that Patriarch, to whom conform in most dogmatical points of their Religion, and in many practical. And though they have a distinct language of their own, which hath no affinity with the *Greek*, yet do they celebrate Divine Offices in the *Greek* Tongue, and follow the *Rituals* of that Church; which few of them understand any better than the *Vulgar Papists* of *France*, *Spain*, or *Germany*, do the *Latine* Service. Whether it be that they have no learned men amongst them, either to translate their old *Liturgy*, or to compose a new; or that they hold all alterations in Religion to be matters of danger; or that ignorance is the best mother of devotion (as is thought by others) I am not able to determine.

The chief Rivers of this Country, are 1 *Hippus*. 2 *Cyaneus*, 3 *Cherisius*, all rising out of the *Caucasian* Mountains, and falling into the *Euxine*. 4 *Phasis*, the principal of all, rising out of the *Montes Moschici*, or *Armenian* Mountains, and there called *Boas*. Navigable with smaller Vessels a great way up into the Country, and with great ships 18 miles from the Sea. Memorable amongst the Ancients for the landing of the *Argonauts* in the mouth thereof; and those delicate Fowl called from hence *Phasides*, or *Phasiani* (*Phesants*) which they brought with them into *Europe*.

As for this expedition of the *Argonauts*, being the most remarkable action in those elder ages of the world, when Piracy and depredations were accounted for *Heroical* vertues; it was no other than the adventure of some noble *Grecians*, for the Gold of *Colchos*. The age wherein it hapned, was about the 11 year of *Gideon*, the Judge of *Israel*. The chief Adventurers, *Jason*, *Orpheus* the famous Poet, *Castor* and *Pollux* the sons of *Tindarus*, *Telamon* and *Peleus*, the sons of *Æacus*, and Fathers of *Ajax* and *Achilles*, *Laertes* the Father of *Ulysses*, *Amphiarans* the South-sayer, *Hercules*, *Theseus*, *Meleager*, with many others of like note. These moved with the great noyse of the wealth of *Colchos*, and the riches of King *Ætes*, then therein reigning, resolved upon a voyage thither, embarked in a ship called *Argo*, (whence the name of *Argonauts*) whereof one *Typhis* was chief Pilot. Passing the *Hellespont*, *Propontick* and *Thracian Bosphorus*, they came into the *Euxine* Sea: and after many difficulties and strange Adventures (which such *Knights Errants* could not choose but encounter with) they landed in the River *Phasis*, and came to the Kings Court, and there were kindly entertained. But finding the Kings Treasures to be too well guarded to be took by force (said by the Poets to be kept by a *Dragon* alwaies waking) they practiced with *Medea*, the daughter of *Ætes*, to assist them in robbing her Father. Who being in love with *Jason*, on promise of marriage with him, assented to it: By whose Artifices (which the Poets call *Magical* Charms) the *Guardians* being circumvented, and the treasure gotten, they all, together with *Media*, imbarked again, and after a long and dangerous voyage returned into *Greece*. This is the substance of the Story; which being the greatest and most notable voyage which the *Grecians* in those early days had undertaken, occasioned the Poets to advance it to the highest pitch, and to disguise it with many Fictions, and ingenious fancies: But not without some ground entituled to the *Golden Fleece* (which they make the end of the design.) For the Rivers,

Rivers, as before was said, having Golden sands, which fell down from the Mountains (as in many other parts of the world they are found to have) It was the custome of the people to lay many Fleeces of wooll in the descent of those Rivers, in which the grains of Gold remained; though the water passed through; which *Strabo* witnesseth to be true.

But leaving these *Adventurers* to pursue their fortunes, let us go forward to survey the *Colchian* Cities; the principal whereof, 1 *Dioscurias*, a Town of great wealth and trade, founded by *Amphitus*, and *Telchius*, two *Spartans*, the Charioters of *Castor* and *Pollux*, and so named in honour of their Masters, whom the *Greeks* call Ἡνίοχοι: which two *Spartans* passing further East, were afterwards the founders of the Nation from them called *Heniochi*, or the Chariot-drivers. A Town of such resort by Merchants from most parts of the world, that here were spoken 300 different Languages; insomuch that the *Romans* (as *Pliny* saith) were fain to maintain here 130 Interpreters for dispatch of business, and negotiating with those Merchants. 2 *Sybaris*, the Seat-Royal of the *Colchian* Kings, about nine miles from which was the Temple of *Mars*, to which *Medea* is reported to have brought the *Argonauts*. 3 *Siganum*, near the mouth of the River *Cyaneus*: as is also, 4 *Æa*, by *Ptolomy* called *Æapolis*, an *Ægyptian* Colony, planted here by *Sesostris* (in the time of *Rehoboam* the Son of *Solomon*) at what time he attempted, but without success, the conquest of *Colchis*. 5 *Neapolis*, so called from the newness or foundation of it when that name was given. 6 *Phasis*, so called from the River upon which it is situate, retaining both the site and name to this very day: the ordinary residence of the *Turkish Beglerbeg*, by whom called *Phassum*. 7 *Alvati*, a well fortified place. More in the Land are placed by *Ptolomy*. 8 *Mechelessus*. 9 *Sirace*. 10 *Zadris*. 11 *Surium*, &c. not much observable in old Story, nor now known at all.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, most probably, came out of the neighbouring *Armenia*, and therefore the Posterity of *Hul* or *Chul*, from whence perhaps the name of *Colchis*; to whom in tract of time, some Colonies out of *Ægypt*, (a sea-faring people) moved with the great fame of the riches and wealth hereof, did adjoyn themselves: the *Colchians* on that ground, (or from some part of his Army left there by *Sesostris*) being said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, to be the ancient off-spring of the *Ægyptians*. The most antient of their Kings was *Æetes*, spoken of before; who entertaining *Phryxus* flying out of *Greece* from the fury of his Stepdame *Ino*, with great store of treasure, occasioned the *Argonauts*, as well in way of revenge, as in hope of booty, to make that famous expedition for the Gold of *Colchos*, disguised under the fiction of the *Golden Fleece*. Of most note after him, *Seleucus*, and *Esubopes*, who first discovered the rich Mines of Gold and Silver; of which Metals they made all their *Utensils*, even the beams of their Chambers. The fame whereof drew thither *Sesostris*, the great King of *Ægypt*, who being vanquished in the field was fain to lay aside all those hopes which he brought with him thither, and return back to *Ægypt* in worse state than he came; but that he left behind him an *Ægyptian* Colony in the City of *Æa*, which after occasioned others of that Country to repaire hither also. Living in peace and unmolested from this time forwards, they were unhappily ingaged by *Tigranes* of *Armenia*, to side with him against the *Romans*; and in his overthrow gave such advantage to the Victor, that *Orodes* the King of *Colchis* was fain to submit himself to *Pompey*, to dismiss his Forces, leave his fastnesses, and finally to redeem his peace, by sending to him a Bedstead of purest Gold, and many other rich presents. After this, the *Romans* had here their Agents, and received hence some annual profits, but never brought it to the form of a Province. Distressed between the *Persians* and *Constantinopolitans*, they had much ado to stand upright; though betwixt both they kept themselves in a kind of liberty: as of late times, betwixt the *Persians*, *Turks*, and *Tartars*, their too potent Neighbours. But at the last, *Anno* 1579. *Amurath* the third, to make the safer passage for his Forces into *Georgia*, sent *Uluzales* his Admiral, with a great Fleet into the *Euxine* Sea: who coming up the River *Phasis* took the City of *Fassum*, fortified it, and laid so certain a foundation of future conquest; that though the *Mengrelians* did not long after demolish some of his fortifications: yet they were afterwards repaired, and *Fassum* made the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, as it still continueth.

3. *IBERIA.*

IBERIA is bounded on the East, with *Albania*; on the West, with *Colchos*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; and on the South, with the *Montes Moschici*; by the first mountains parted from *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and by the last from *Armenia Major*.

It was so called from the River *Iberus*, which running thorow it, falleth at last into the more noted River *Cyrus*. But is now called *Georgia*; and that as some say from St. *George* the *Cappadocian Martyr*, whom here they have in very great reverence, as their tutelary Saint and Patron; as others say, from *George* a *Cappadocian* Bishop, by whose preaching they were brought unto *Christianity*; and some again will have them called properly *Gurdians*, and corruptly *Georgians*, from their near neighbourhood to those mountains: But the most probable opinion is, as I conceive, that they took this name from the *Georgi*, whom *Pliny* reckoneth amongst other of the *Caspian* Nations. Though to say truth, the name of *Georgia* extendeth somewhat further than that of *Iberia*, as comprehending also that part of *Armenia Major* which lies next to *Media*, and the whole Country of *Albania*, if I guess aright.

The Country for the greatest part, is covered with Mountains, Woods, and Thickets; and in that regard unconquerable for the difficulty of the mountainous passages: yet notwithstanding it is very fruitful in many places, having many fertile Plains, and wealthy Vallies, well watered, and of greater increase to the husbandman, if he be not wanting to himself in care and industry.

Of the old *Iberians* it is written, that they were a very warlike Nation, and used to set as many Pillars about the grave of a dead man, as he had slain Enemies in his life: as also that those of the same Tribe or Family had all things common, he being the Ruler, which was eldest: and that some of them did derive themselves from the Children of *David* begotten on the wife of *Uriah*, for that cause never marrying out of their own kindred. The present *Georgians* very warlike, strong of body, and valourous in fight, for a long time defended themselves and Country from the *Turks* and *Persians*, with great prudence making use of the one against the other; But overpowred by the vast multitude of *Turks* breaking in upon them, they have lost many of their best Forts, and much of their liberty.

The Christian Faith was first here planted in the time of *Constantine* the *Great*, by means of a Christian captive woman (such extraordinary waies doth God find out to promote his Gospel) Who being of a most devout life, and exemplary piety, had by her Prayers to CHRIST restored a young child to health which was thought past cure: and healed the Queen hereof of a desperate malady, when no help of *Physick* would prevail. Whereupon the

the King sent Embassadours to *Constantine*, desiring Ministers and Preachers to be sent to *Iberia*, to instruct the people in the Faith, which was done accordingly. Since that time Christianity hath flourished in this Country without interruption; though by *Mahometans*, and *Pagans*, on all sides encompassed: agreeable in doctrinal points to the Church of *Greece*, whose *Rituals* also the *People* do to this day follow. Not subject for all that to the Patriarch of *Constantinople*, (though of his Communion) but to their own *Metropolitan* only: who hath under him about 18 Bishops, and resideth for the most part, in St. *Katherines* Monastery on Mount *Sinai* By means of which remote dwelling of their principal Pastor, *Mahometanism* hath got some footing, and *Jesuitism* began to creep in amongst them. The occasion of which last was this.

About the year 1614. the *Persians* making an inrode into this Country, took the City of *Cremen*, and therein *Cetaba*, the mother of Prince *Teimurazes*; whom, leading her captive into *Persia*, and not able to prevail with her to turn *Mahometan*, they most cruelly murdered. Some of the *Jesuites* then travelling in those Countries, and willing out of that sad accident to advance the fame of their Society, together with the Catholick cause, cut off the head of a dead man whom they found in the way, anointed it with oyl and odours, brought it into *Georgia*, and signified unto the Prince, that they had with them the head of the blessed Martyr *Cetaba*: desiring leave to live in some Monastery, and have the keeping of the holy *Relique* committed to them. This easily believed, and granted, the head was placed with great honour in the Church of St. *George*, at *Aberdall*; much resort to it from all parts by diseased persons: whom if past cure, the *Jesuites* sent home again, prescribing them in the way of preparation a long time of repentance; if curable by outward means which they applied, the cure was presently ascribed to the holy *Relique*. Grown famous by this means, they gained many *Proselytes* to themselves; and had no small hope of prevailing on Prince *Teimurazes* to submit himself to the Pope, as the *Vicar of CHRIST*. When in the heat of all their glories, a Letter cometh from *Maacla*, a Lady attendant on the Princess; (but then living in *Persia*; as a slave or bondmaid) signifying that her Master by her perswasion, had got into his power the body of his mother *Cetaba*; which he might ransom if he pleased: two Travellers withal, who came out of *Persia* with the *Jesuites*, reporting what they see them do with the dead man's head. By which means the *Imposture* being discovered, the body of the Queen was sent for, the false *Relique* was cast out of the Church, and the falser *Jesuites* into Prison, and next out of the Country.

Rivers of note I find not any, either in *Ptolomy*, or any of our modern Writers, but what are touched upon before, except only the River of *Iberus* spoken of already, from which the Country is thus named. The whole in general so destitute of wathers, that *Pompey* in his march this way against the *Albanians*, was fain to carry 10000 bladders filled with water, for the use of his Army.

Places of most antiquity and importance in it, 1 *Artaxissa*, 2 *Vasada*, 3 *Lubium*, 4 *Armastica*, all named by *Ptolomy*; this last by *Pliny* called *Harmastis*. 5 *Cremen*, the chief City now possessed by the *Georgians*. 6 *Cachete*, honoured with a fair Church, the most beautiful of all the Country, dedicated by the name of Saint *George*. 7 *Triala*, where are to be seen the ruins of a large City, and many Churches; by what name anciently called, I find not. 8 *Altunsala*, or the *Golden Castle*, a strong Fortress, and the ordinary residence of the *Georgian* Princes, since the time of the wars betwixt the *Persians* and the *Turks*. 9 *Archichelech*, a strong Castle taken by *Solyman* the *Magnificent* in his wars against *Tamas* King of *Persia*, and ever since holden by the *Turks*. 10 *Teflis*, a large and capacious Town, forsaken by the *Georgians* at the coming of *Mustapha*, General of *Amurath* the third against the *Persians*: who liking the situation of it, caused it to be repaired and fortified, planted thereon an hundred Pieces of Ordnance, and left therein a Garrison of 6000 Souldiers. 11 *Lori*, distant from *Teflis* about two daies journey of a Carrier's pace, strengthned with a lofty Castle, environed with deep ditches, and a thick wall, amounting to a mile in compass. Seized on by *Ferat Bassa*, the Successor of *Mustapha*, who repaired the Walls, planted thereon 200 small Pieces of Ordnance, and garrisoned it with 7000 *Turks* for defence thereof. 12 *Tomanis*, a short daies march from *Lori*, the Country lying betwixt both, full of rich fields and pastures, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel. Nigh unto which the said *Ferat* raised a new Fortress, for the better command of the Streights and Passages, leading from thence to *Lori*, and so to *Teflis* (the Key of *Media* or *Sirvan*) the Wall whereof being 1700 yards in compass, he caused to be planted with 200 Pieces of Artillery, and with incredible diligence cut down a thick Wood which lay before it, which otherwise would have been a receptacle of Thieves, or Enemies. 13 *Glisca*, 14 *Bascapan*, possessed and fortified by the *Turks*, to make good their footing in this Country. But possibly most of these strong holds now possessed by the *Turks* may be within the bounds of *Armenia Major*, and *Albania*, though within the Country of the *Georgians*; the name not being limited to *Iberia*, as was said before.

The first Inhabitants hereof were such who were brought hither by *Tubal*, the Son of *Japhet*, from whom this people at the first, as *Josephus* hath it, had the name of *Thobeli*. But that name growing out of knowledge, the Nations in it of most note were the *Tibareni*, *Mosynœci*, *Chalybes*; and of less esteem, the *Biseries*, *Sapires*, *Macrones*. *&c.* united at the last in the name of *Iberi*, from the River *Iberus*, of which *Pliny* speaketh, the principal of all this Country. Too fruitful of increase for so narrow a dwelling, some of them put themselves to seek their fortunes; when after long wandring they fell upon the Coast of *Spain* next the *Pyrenees*, where they staid themselves; giving the name of *Iberus* to the chief River there, and of *Iberia* to the Country; Of which more before. Such of them as remained behind continued an unconquered people, under the government of their own Kings, till the time of *Tigranes* King of *Armenia*. By whom invited to his aid against the *Romans*, they came in accordingly; and in his fall discomfited by *Lucullus* in three several battels, were fain to stand upon their guard as well as they could: first holding fair with *Pompey*, who succeeded *Lucullus* in his charge; But breaking out again on a new temptation, they were encountred by him. In which battel 9000 of their men being slain, and 10000 taken, they were constrained to sue for peace; not otherwise to be obtained till *Artaces*, the King of these *Iberians*, gave his Sons for Pledges. After this *Feudataries* to the *Roman*, and *Grecian* Emperours, till the fatal inundation of the *Saracens* had so weakned that Empire, that the Kings hereof acknowledged no more subjection to those of *Constantinople*, till *Constantinople* it self became the Imperial seat of the *Ottoman* Family; in whose quarrels with the *Persian Sophies*, this Country began to suffer a new invasion; some Towns and forts of it being taken by *Solyman*, in his march or passage against *Tamas*. Afterwards in the time of *Amurath* the third, who set his mind most eagerly on the war with *Persia*, a great part of it was subdued by

Mustapha

Mustapha, the *Turkish* General: who inviting the widow Princess and her two Sons to come to his Tent, sent the young Princes to *Constantinople*: and by that means had opportunity to assure his purchases. And though the *Persians* did their best to assist the *Georgians*; yet proved they but a kind of miserable comforters, as much punishing or plaguing this poor Country with their aids, as the *Turks* by their Armies. So that now it stands divided betwixt the *Grand Seigneur*, and its natural Princes, the *Georgian* Princes holding the greatest part, but the *Turks* being in possession of the strongest holds; kept by them under colour of securing their way to *Persia*, for which this Country is indeed but unhappily seated.

4. *ALBANIA.*

ALBANIA is bounded on the East, with the *Caspian* Sea; on the West, with *Iberia*; on the North, with the *Caucasian* Mountains; on the South, with the *Moschici*. So named from the *Albani*, who did once inhabit it; and of late called *Suiria*, but reckoned in these last ages as a part of *Georgia*.

The Country of so rich a Soil, that without the least labour of the Husbandman, the Earth doth naturally and liberally afford her store; and where it is but once sown, will yield two or three reapings. But being ill husbands on it in former times, they occasioned *Strabo* to give them this Note for a remembrance, That they *needed not the use of the Sea, who knew no better how to make use of the Land.* The people anciently so simple, that they could not reckon above one hundred; ignorant of weights, measures, and the use of money. Old age they had in high esteem, but held it utterly unlawful to make speech of the dead. And of these *Pliny* doth report, That they were gray-headed from their very youth, and could see as well by night as by day; the verity of which last may be somewhat questionable. But withal they are affirmed to have been a stout and couragious people, strong bodies, patient of toil and labour, as they are at this day. And well the men may be couragious and stout, when the Women are so truly masculine. Of whom it is affirmed by Authors of undoubted credit, that they were exercised in Arms and martial feats, as if descended lineally from the ancient *Amazons*, whom *Plutarch* placed in this Tract; reporting some of them to be aiding to these *Albanians*, in their War with *Pompey*: which possibly might be no other, than some the more noble *Albanian* Dames.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1. *Soana* giving name to the *Soani*, one of the Nations of these parts mentioned by *Pliny*. 2. *Cæsius*. 3. *Gerrus*. 4. *Albanus*, whence perhaps the name of *Albani* came unto this people. 5. *Cyrus*, (by *Plutarch* called *Cyrnus*) spoken of in *Armenia Major*, but more properly belonging to this Country; because herein it hath its spring, and the greatest part of its course also. For rising out of the Mountain *Caucasus*, which shuts up this Province on the North, it passeth thorow the midst of it, till it come to the borders of *Armenia*, where it beginneth to bend more towards the East; and having received into its Chanel all the former Rivers, besides many others of less note, falleth with twelve mouths into the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Mountains of note here are not any, but what are common unto them with other Nations: the *Montes Moschici* on the South, and *Caucasus* upon the North, being rather common boundaries betwixt several Nations, than peculiar unto any one; though from the last the *Iberians*, and these *Albanians*, be in some Writers called *Caucasiæ Gentes*.

Cities and Towns I find many in it, but little of them more than their very names: 1. *Chabata*, by *Pliny* called *Cabalaca*, and honoured with the Character of *Insignior Albaniæ urbs*, the most noted City of this Country. 2. *Albana*, so called from the River *Albanus*, upon which it was seated. 3. *Teleba*. 4. *Namechia*. 5. *Thelbis*. 6. *Getara*, near unto the Influx of the River *Cyrus*. How these are called, or whether any thing be remaining of them, I am not able to say. The chief now being, and worthy to be so accounted, is the City of *Derbent*, situate near the *Caspian* Sea; from which to *Teflis* a City spoken of before, remain the foundations of a high and thick wall: affirmed to have been built by *Alexander* the *Great*, to defend these parts, against the irruptions of the Northern unconquered Nations. The Town environed with two walls, and so defended by difficult and narrow passages of the Rocks, that it is not easily accessible: but taken for all that, by *Mustapha* the *Turkish* General *Anno* 1587. and made the ordinary residence of a *Turkish Bassa*. Conceived to be the *Caucasiæ Portæ* of the Ancients, which *Pliny* honoureth with the title of *Ingens naturæ miraculum*: by *Egesippus*, for the strength of it called *Porta Ferrea*; with reference to which by the *Turks* called *Demir-can*, the word signifying in their Language, *A Gate of Iron*. The other places of this Tract are either of no account and estimation, or else are specified before amongst the Cities and good Towns of the *Georgians*, of whose Country this is now a part: yet we may add 2. *Sabran*, upon the borders of *Media*. 3. *Sancta Maria*, North of *Derbent*; both of them on, or near the banks of the *Caspian* Sea.

The first Inhabitants of this Country, seem to have been of the Plantation of *Gecher* the Son of *Aram*, and Nephew of *Japhet*, whose memory was long preserved in the City of *Getara* before mentioned: So called by him, or some of his Posterity, in remembrance of him. The People living somewhat out of the common road, were little troubled with Invaders from foreign parts; neither the *Persians*, nor *Macedonians*, looking so far North. Nor possibly had the Romans taken notice of them, had they not engaged themselves with *Tigranes* first, and afterwards with *Mithridates*. Falling on *Pompey* with an Army of 40000. and well beaten by him, they were content to sue for peace. But finding that the *Iberians* also had took up Arms, they engaged again; levying an Army of 12000 Horse, and 90000 Foot, in which *Oroezes* their King, with his Brother *Cosis*, were in person present. And though they had made good the banks of the River *Cyrus*; yet being ill armed, and for the most part only with skins of beasts, they made but small resistance against the *Romans*: notwithstanding the gallant charge of *Cosis*, who assaulted *Pompey*, and had the honour to be slain by him in the place. After this overthrow, and their giving pledges unto *Pompey* for their good behaviour, we find little mention of them in the Stories of the *Roman* Empire, till the time of *Trajan*, who having conquered, and reduced *Armenia Major* to the Form of a Province, resolved to shew his power to these neighbouring Nations; and to that end imposed a King on the *Albani*, of his own appointment, and made the Kings of *Colchis*, and *Iberia* do their homage to him. In times succeeding no news of them; either because remote from the stage of Action, or serving under the command of some greater Nation, where their name occurs not. Conquered by *Octaidan*, or *Hoccata* the *Cham* of *Tartary*, together with *Iberia*, and *Armenia*, they were a while subject to that Empire: and passing in succeeding times by the name of *Georgians*, did partake of the same fortunes with them. Now at the mercy of the *Turk*, who by reason of the strong footing which he hath gotten amongst them, is become a dreadful neighbour to them; if not acknowledged by them for their Lord in chief.

Thus having taken a ſurvey of all the Provinces of the *Turkiſh* Empire, both in *Europe* and *Aſia*, and touched upon the means by which they are poſſeſſed of *Ægypt*, whereunto all the reſt of their hold in *Africk*, ſerves but for an acceſſory, we will now look upon the ſtory of this people, their firſt original, the great ſucceſs of their affairs, the Princes under whoſe command they have made theſe conqueſts: Which having done, we will proceed to a Deſcription of the Perſons, Manners, and Conditions of the Turks themſelves, their power and policy, with other things conſiderable in ſo great an Empire.

And firſt for the original of the *Turkiſh* Nation, they were moſt probably the deſcendants of thoſe *Turcæ*, whom *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* place about the Fens of *Mæotis*. Of whom thus *Mela*, ſpeaking of the *Gelani*, a *Scythian* people, *Juxtà* Thyrſagetæ, Turcæque, *vaſtas ſylvas occupant, aluntúrque venando*, &c. Next unto them (ſaith he) live the *Thyrſagetæ*, and the *Turcæ*, poſſeſſed of vaſt Woods, and maintained by hunting; and then a rough and deſart Country with continual rocks, as far as to the *Arympheians*. And *Pliny* muſtering up the barbarous Nations of thoſe parts, joyns the *Tuſſagetæ* (or *Thyrſagetæ*) with the *Turks*, and placeth them next the *Arympheians*, as *Mela* doth, *uſque ad ſolitudines ſaltuoſis vallibus aſperas*, ſpreading themſelves unto the rough deſarts and woody Vallies. Not known by action (though by name) till the time of *Tiberius* the ſecond, who began his Empire *Anno* 577. when preſſing hard on the *Avares*, a neighbouring Nation, they compelled them to forſake their ſeats, and paſs into *Europe*; where they made themſelves Maſters of *Pannonia*, now called *Hungary*. In the time of *Heraclius*, we find them, with other barbarous Nations, at the Siege of *Conſtantinople*, but under the command of the *Perſians*. After which they began to ſet up for themſelves, and in the year 763 made a road into thoſe Countries which we laſt deſcribed; and loading themſelves with prey and booty, returned home again. But liking better of theſe parts than their own poor dwellings, in the year 844. they brake once more thorow the *Caſpian* Streights; and paſſing through *Iberia*, ſeized on *Armenia Major*, and there fixed themſelves, giving it the name of *Turcomania*. In which wide and ſpacious Country they roamed up and down, without any certain habitation, removing their herds and families from one place to another, as they had formerly been uſed to do in the fens of *Mæotis*; and as the Tartars and wild Arabs do until this day. And ſo they lived, a poor and contemptible Nation, till *Mahomet* the *Sultan* of *Perſia*, rebelling againſt his Lord and Maſter, the *Caliph* of *Babylon*, called in theſe *Turks* unto his aid; and by their help obtained a ſignal Victory. The Victory obtained, the *Turks* deſire their Wages, and a fair diſmiſſion; but could ſpeed in neither, the *Sultan* being loth to part with ſuch a neceſſary miſchief, till his Affairs were better ſettled; and therefore ſhutting up the paſſages of the River *Araxes*, which he before had opened for them. Provoked wherewith, under the conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader, they began to ſpoil and waſte the Country; a multitude of needy people, and ſome of the diſcontented Souldiers, coming daily to them. Aſſaulted by the *Perſians*, in the firſt battel they not only got a notable Victory, but ſuch ſtore of Armour, Horſes, and other neceſſaries, as made them able to encounter with the *Sultan* himſelf: whom having overthrown and ſlain in the ſecond fight, *Tangrolipix* is by both Armies proclaimed *Sultan* or King of *Perſia*, in the year 1030. or thereabouts.

There were at this time amongſt the *Turks* two moſt noted Tribes; the *Selzuccian*, and the *Oguzian*. Of the *Selzuccian*, *Tangrolipix*, *Cutlu Moſes*, *Melech*, and *Ducat* were the Heads; of which, *Tangrolipix* as the chief of that *Clan* or Family, was ſettled in the Throne of *Perſia*: *Cutlu Moſes* furniſhed with an Army againſt the Chriſtians, poſſeſſed himſelf of a great part of *Aſia Minor*: *Melech* and *Ducat*, by the like favour of their Couſin the *Perſian* Sultan, were veſted into the Cities of *Aleppo* and *Damaſcus*, with their ſeveral Territories. But the Line of *Tangrolipix* and the reſt being all worn out, as hath been ſhewn in our deſcriptions of *Syria*, and *Anatolia*, the man of moſt Nobility amongſt the *Turks*, was *Ottoman* the chief of the *Oguzian* Family; Nephew of *Solyman* Prince of *Machan*, a ſmall Territory in the Realm of *Perſia*. Which *Solyman*, flying the fury of the *Tartars* when they conquered *Perſia*, was drowned in croſſing the River *Euphrates*, as he paſſed with his few Subjects towards *Aſia Minor*, the beſt place of refuge for his Nation; leaving the chief-ſhip of his Tribe to *Ethrogul* his Son, who obtained of the laſt *Aladine* of the *Selzuccian* Family, the Village of *Saguta* in *Bithynia*, for himſelf and his ſmall handful of people. To him ſucceeded his Son *Ottoman*, in the year 1280. who to revenge ſome injuries done unto his people by the improvident Chriſtians, took from them Caſtle after Caſtle; and in the end poſſeſſed himſelf of the City of *Nice*, not long before the Imperial Seat of the Grecian Emperours. Emboldened with ſuch great ſucceſſes, and hearing of the death of *Aladine* the ſecond, whom he acknowledged for his Lord, he took unto himſelf the Title of *Sultan*, *Anno* 1300. from which before he had abſtained. To this time, and theſe ſmall beginnings we muſt reduce the firſt foundation of the *Ottoman* Empire; increaſed unto its preſent greatneſs, by the courage and good fortune of theſe Princes following.

The Kings of the *Turks* of the *Oguzian*, or *Ottoman* Family.

1300 1 *Ottoman*, or *Oſman* the Son of *Ethrogul*, the firſt *Turkiſh* Sultan of this Line, added to his ſmall Territory the greateſt part of *Phrygia*, *Bithynia*, and ſome part of *Pontus*. 28.

1328 2 *Orchanes*, took the City *Pruſa*, and made it his reſidence; and was the firſt that had footing in *Europe*, where he got *Gallipolis*, and other pieces.

1350 3 *Amurath* won the *Thracian Cherſoneſe*, the ſtrong City of *Adrianople*, with the Countries of *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*; where he was ſlain by a common Souldier in the fields of *Coſſova* 23.

1373 4 *Bajazet*, made himſelf Maſter of a great part of *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*. He was taken Priſoner by *Tamerlane*, and brained himſelf in an Iron Cage, in which the inſolent Conquerour uſed to carry him. 26.

1399 5 *Solyman*, the eldeſt Son of *Bajazet*, ſucceeded in the peaceable poſſeſſion of the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Europe*; but paſſing with an Army into *Aſia*, for the recovery of thoſe parts thereof uſurped by *Mahomet* his youngeſt Brother, he was forced again into *Europe*, to make head againſt *Muſa Bajazet* his third Son (employed by *Mahomet* in that diverſion) who having there vanquiſhed and ſlain him, *Anno* 1406. ſucceeded for a time in the Throne at *Adrianople*.

1404 6 *Mahomet*, the youngeſt Son of *Bajazet*, a vigilant and active Prince firſt wreſted from his brother *Iſa* (*Bajazet*'s ſecond Son then living)

living) the City of *Prusa* with the Dominions thereunto belonging, thereupon taking to himself the Title of King or *Sultan*, by degrees recovered all which his Father had lost unto the *Tartars*: Afterwards making use of *Musa*, for the supplanting of *Solyman*, he followed him presently into *Europe*, where he fought with him, vanquished and slew him about the year 1416. Thereby uniting in his own Person the whole *Turkish* Kingdom, which he inlarged with the more absolute Conquest of *Dacia*, part of *Sclavonia*, and the rest of *Macedon*. 17.

1416 7 *Amurath* II. subdued from the *Constantinopolitan* Empire, all *Achaia*, *Thessaly*, *Epirus*; he shaked the State of *Hungary*, and died before the Walls of *Croy*. 34.

The *Ottoman* Emperours.

1450 8 *Mahomet* II. sirnamed the Great, and first Emperour of the *Turks*, conquered the Two Empires of *Constantinople* and *Trabezond*, Twelve Kingdoms, and Two hundred Cities. 31.

1481 9 *Bajazet* II. subdued the *Caramanian* Kingdom, and part of *Armenia*, and drove the *Venetians* from *Morea*, and their part of *Dalmatia*. 31.

1512 10 *Selimus*, having poysoned his Father, subverted the *Mamalucks* of *Egypt*; bringing it, together with *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia*, under the yoke of the *Turks*. 7

1519 11 *Solyman* II. sirnamed the *Magnificent*, surprized *Rhodes*, *Belgrade*, *Buda*; with a great part of *Hungary*, *Babylon*, *Assyria*, *Mesopotamia*. 48.

1567 12 *Selimus* II. an Idle and Effeminate Emperour, by his Deputies took from the *Venetians* the Isle of *Cyprus*; and from the *Moors*, the Kingdom of *Tunis* and *Algiers*. 8.

1575 13 *Amurath* III. took from the disagreeing *Persian*, *Armenia*, *Media*, and the City *Taurus*; and the Fort *Guarino* from the *Hungarians*. 20.

1575 14 *Mahomet* III. took *Agria* in *Hungary*; which Kingdom in all likelyhood had been lost, if he had pursued his Victory at the Battel of *Keresture*. Never but then in any Battel, and then so frighted, that he durst never see the face of an Army afterwards.

1603 15 *Achmet*, who the better to enjoy his pleasures, made peace with the *German* Emperour, and added nothing to his Empire. 15.

1618 16 *Mustapha*, Brother to *Achmet* succeeded, which was a novelty, never before heard of in this Kingdom; it being the *Grand Seigniors* common policy to strangle all the younger Brothers: howsoever, this *Mustapha* was preserved, either because *Achmet* being once a younger Brother took pity on him; or because he had no issue of his own Body, and so was not permitted to kill him.

1618 17 *Osman*, or *Ottoman* II. succeeded his Uncle *Mustapha*; and being unsuccessful in his War against *Poland*, was by the *Janizaries* slain in an uproar, and *Mustapha* again restored: yet long enjoyed he not his Throne; for the same hand that raised him, plucked him down again, and seated young *Amurath* in the place.

1623 18 *Morat* (or *Amurath* the IV.) Brother of *Osman*, of the age of 13 years, succeeded on the second deposition of his Uncle *Mustapha*; who proved a stout and Masculine Prince, and bent himself to the reviving of the ancient Discipline. To the great good of *Christendom*, he spent his stomach on the *Persians*, from whom he recovered *Babylon*.

19 *Ibrahim*, the Brother of *Morat*, preserved by the *Sultanness* his Mother in his Brothers Life; and by her power deposed again for interdicting her the Court. He spent a great part of his Reign in the War of *Crete*, against the *Venetians*; but without any great success.

1648 20 *Mahomet* IV. Son of *Ibrahim*, now reigning: Lord of all this vast Empire, containing all *Dacia* and *Greece*, the greatest part of *Sclavonia* and *Hungary*, the Isles of the *Ægean* Sea, and a great part of the *Taurican Chersonese* in *Europe*; of all the Isles, and Provinces which we have hitherto described in *Asia*; and in *Africk* of all *Egypt*, the Kingdoms of *Tunis* and *Algiers*, with the Ports of *Suachem* and *Erocco*. Nor is their stile inferiour to so vast an Empire, *Solyman* thus styling himself in his Letter to *Villerius*, Great Master of the *Rhodes*, at such time as he intended to invade that Island: *i. e.* Solyman *King of Kings*, *Lord of Lords*, *most high Emperour of* Constantinople *and* Trabezond, *the most mighty King of* Persia, Syria, Arabia, *and the* Holy Land; *Lord of* Europe, Asia *and* Africa; *Prince of* Mecca *and* Aleppo, *Ruler of* Jerusalem, *and Soveraign Lord of all the Seas and Isles thereof.*

As for the persons of the *Turks*, they are generally well-complexioned, of good stature, proportionably compacted, no idle talkers, nor doers of things superfluous; hot and venereous, servile to their Prince, and zealous in their Religion. They nourish no hair upon their Heads, except it be a Tuft on the top of their Crowns, by which they think that *Mahomet* will snatch them up into Paradise at the day of Judgment. For which reason they keep on of all sides, though never so poor, accounting it an opprobrious thing to see any men uncover their heads; saying, when they dislike of any thing which they see, or hear, *I had as lief thou hadst shewn me thy bare Skull.* In their familiar salutation they lay their hands on their bosoms, and a little incline their Bodies; but when they accost a Person of Rank, they bow almost to the Ground, and kiss the hem of his Garment. Walking up and down they never use, and much wonder at the often walking of Christians. *Biddulph* relateth, that being at his ambulatory Exercise with his Companion, a *Turk* demanded of them whether they were out of their way, or their wits? If your way (quoth the *Turk*) lay toward the upper end of the Cloister, why come you downwards? If to the nether end, why go you back again? Shooting is their chief Recreation, which they also follow with much lasiness, sitting on Carpets in the shadow, and sending some of their Slaves to fetch their Arrows. They prefer, as they pass the streets, the left hand before the right, as being thereby made Master of his Sword with whom they walk. As they shave their heads, so they wear their beards long, as a sign of freedom; but their Slaves keep theirs shaven and close cut.

The Women are of small stature, for the most part ruddy, clear, and smooth as the polished Ivory; as neither afflicted with the Weather, and often frequenting the Baths: of a very good Complexion, seldom going abroad, and then masked; lascivious within doors, pleasing in

matters of incontinency, and they are accounted most beautiful which have the greatest Eyes, and are of the blackest hue. Every *Turk* is permitted to have four Wives, and as many Slaves as he is able to keep; yet are they to meddle with none but their own, the offending woman being drowned, and the man dismembred. These Women live in great awe and respect of their Husband, never sitting with him at the Table, but waiting till he hath done, and then withdrawing into some Room. If their Husband hath been abroad, at his coming in they all rise from the stools whereon they sate, kiss his hand, and make an obeysance, and stand as long as he is in presence. The Children which they have, they carry not in their Arms, as we do, but astride on their Shoulders; they live immured from the sight of the World: and permit not their Male Children, no not their own Sons, to come among them, after they are twelve years old. From their Husbands they cannot be divorced, but on special occasion: but the Husbands may put away their Wives, or give them to their Slaves, when and as often as they list. Far better is it with the Sisters or the Daughter of the *Sultan*; to whom when her Father or Brother bestoweth her on one of the *Bassaes*, he giveth her a Dagger, saying, *I give thee this man to be thy Slave or Bedfellow; if he be not Loving, Obedient, and Dutiful unto thee, I give thee here this* Canzharre *or Dagger, to cut off his head.* When they are married, their Husbands come not to bed unto them, till they are sent for, and then also they creep in at the beds feet. That ever any of their Ladies made use of their Daggers, I could never read. Only I find, that *Luizis Bassa*, the chief man of the Empire next the *Sultan* himself, and of him very much beloved, having given his Wife, which was Sister to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, a box on the Ear, was upon complaint by her made, thrust from all his honours, banished into *Macedon*; and had doubtless been slain, if the Emperours love, and his own merits had not pleaded for him. And this is all the Prerogative of the *Sultan*'s Daughter; her Sons being accounted as meer and ordinary Turks onely, and never being preferred above the rank of a common Captain, for fear they should be apt to harbour some aspiring thoughts.

The better sort of the *Turks* use the *Sclavonian* Tongue, the Vulgar speak the *Turkish* Language; which being originally the *Tartarian*, borrowed from the *Persians* their words of State; from the *Arabick*, their words of Religion; from the *Græcians*, their words or terms of War; and from the *Italians*, their terms of Navigation.

They were formerly Idolatrous Pagans, and were first initiated in *Mahometanism*; when they got the Soveraignty of the *Persian* Scepter. The degrees in their Religion, are 1 The *Saffi* or *Novices*. 2 The *Calfi*, or Readers. 3 The *Hogi*, or Writers of Books; for Printing they use not. 4 The *Napi*, or young Doctors. 5 The *Caddi*, whereof there is at least one in every City to judge of offences. 6 The *Mudrossi*, who use to oversee the *Caddis*. 7 The *Medlis*, or principal Church-Governour under the *Mufti*. 8 The *Cadeleſcais*, whereof there are onely three; one of *Greece*, the other for *Anatolia*, the third for *Egypt* and *Syria*; and these sit with the *Bassaes* in the *Divano*, to determine of temporal suits. 9 The *Mufti*, whose Sentence in Law and Religion is uncontroulable. He abaseth not himself to sit in the *Divano*, nor affordeth more Reverence to the Emperour, than he doth to him.

His forces are either for the Sea, or the Land. His Sea-forces are great in regard of his spacious Sea-coasts, vast Woods, and number of Subjects. He never suffered but one memorable defeat, which was that at *Lepanto*; yet the next year he shewed his Navy whole and entire. Gallies are his onely Vessels, which being unable to cope with Ships of any bigness, were not onely the occasion of that overthrow, but also have heartned the *Florentine*, with six great Ships of War only, to swagger in the Seas; so that for more safety, the tribute of *Egypt* is of late sent to *Constantinople* by Land. The Captain *Bassa*, or Admiral, notwithstanding, with a Navy of 60 Sail, makes a yearly progress about the Seas and Sea-Towns, to annoy the enemy, suppress Pirates, collect his tributes, and to redress the abuses committed in the maritime Towns, belonging to the Admiralty. Which annual circuit is begun in *May*, and ended in *October*.

Their Land-Forces are either Horse or Foot. They which serve on Horse-back, are either the *Spahi*, or *Asapi*: these latter serving to weary the Enemies, and dull their Swords with their multitudes; of whose Bodies the *Janizaries* use to make Mounts, whereon to assault the Wall of a besieged Town; and are by them so contemned, that a *Janizary* once sold two of them for a sheeps-head. As for the *Spahi*, they, till they are inrolled into pay, are of the same Original and Education with the *Janizaries*; and called by the same name, *Azamoglans*. Their pay is ten Aspers a day. The *Turk* is able and doth maintain 150000 Horse at little or no cost, which no other Prince can do with 14 Millions of Gold. For whersoever any Parcel of Land is conquered, it is divided into divers parts, and committed to the manuring of divers men; whom they call *Timariots*. These are to pay unto the Emperour certain Rents; and at their own charges, to send to his Wars so many Horse, excellently appointed for the field: and which is the chief point of their service, to keep in awe the subjects, in all parts of his Empire. For being, as they are, dispersed in all quarters of his Dominions, the people can no sooner stir, but these will be assembled, and fall upon them. These *Timariots* are in all accounted 719000 fighting men, whereof 257000 have their abode in *Europe*; and 402000 in *Asia* and *Africa*. Were it not for these *Timariots*, as the *Turks* saying is, no Grass would grow where the *Grand Seignior's* Horse hath once set his hoof; for if the care of manuring the ground were committed to the Peasants, and not to Military men, the greatest part of this Empire would grow waste and desolate. These *Timariots* were instituted by *Ottoman*, the first *Turkish* King of this Family; and a curse by him laid on them that should annihilate the Institution. The name is derived from the *Turkish* word *Timay*, signifying a stipend.

But the Nerves and Sinews of this warlike Body, are the *Janizaries*; who by Original being Christians, are chosen by the *Turkish* Officers, every five years, out of his *European* Dominions: and so distributed abroad to learn the Language, Customs, and Religion of the *Turks*; afterward according to their strength, will, or disposition, placed in divers Chambers. They of the first Chamber are preferred, some to be *Chiaufies*, such as go on Embassies, and execute Judgments; others to *Sanziacks*, or Governours of Cities; some to be *Bassaes*, or Commanders of Horsemen; and others to be *Beglerbegs*, (*id est*, Lord of Lords) to command the rest in general. They of the other Chambers, are the *Janizaries*, or *Prætorian* Souldiers of the Guard; to whose Faith and Trust the care of the Emperours Person is committed. The tithing of these young Springals is, as we have said, every fifth year; and oftner sometimes, as occasions serve. By which means he not only disarmeth his own Subjects, and keepeth them from attempting any stir or innovation in his Empire: but spoileth all the Provinces he most feareth, of the Flower, Sinews, and Strength of their People; choice being made of the strongest Youths only, and fittest for War. These, before they are inrolled in pay, are called *Azamoglans*, and behave themselves with much submissive-

ſubmiſſiveneſs towards their Seniors and Governours: but when once they are honoured with the title of *Janizaries*, they grow by degrees into an intollerable pride and haughtineſs. Till of late they were not permitted to marry, neither now can any of their Sons be accounted any other than a natural *Turk*, (whom of all the reſt they account the baſeſt) the eldeſt only excepted: to whom this priviledge was granted by *Amurath* the Third, when he came to the Crown. They are in number 40000, of which 16000 are always reſident in *Conſtantinople*. In this City they are diverſly imployed, being as Conſtables to ſee the peace kept; as Clerks of the Market, to ſee to the weights and meaſures; as Officers, to arreſt common Offenders; as Warders, to look to the Gates, to guard the Houſes of Embaſſadours, and to travel with Strangers for their more ſafety; in which charge they are very faithful. Their pay is but five *Aſpers* a day, and two Gowns yearly; neither are their hopes great, the command of 10, 20, or 100 men being their greateſt preferment: yet are they very obſequious to their Captain or *Aga*, who is in place inferiour to the meaneſt *Baſſa*, though in power perhaps above the chiefeſt. For the crafty *Turks* joyn not Power and Authority; and if they obſerve the *Janizaries* to love and reſpect their *Aga*, they quickly deprive him of Life and Office. The Founder of this Order was *Amurath* the firſt, *Anno* 1365. their greateſt Eſtabliſher, *Amurath* the ſecond: the name ſignifieth young Souldiers.

Now concerning theſe *Janizaries*, we will farther conſider, 1. The ſway they bear in deſigning the Succeſſor. 2. Their Inſolency towards the Emperour and his Officers. 3. Their behaviour in the vacancy of the Throne. And 4. Their Puniſhments.

1. Concerning the firſt, I never find any particular ſway the *Janizaries* carried, in the deſignation of their Emperour, till the death of *Mahomet* the *Great*: when the *Baſſaes* having choſen *Corcut* the Son of *Bajazet*, were over-ruled by the *Aga* and his *Janizaries*, who more inclined to *Bajazet* his Father, and Son to *Mahomet*. Though I am not ignorant that when this *Mahomet* ſucceeded in the Throne, the joyful acclamations made by the Souldiers, was accounted the chiefeſt ſign of his ſecure and perpetuated Eſtabliſhment. But the chief Inſtance of their power herein, was the inthronizing of *Selimus* the Firſt, who being but the Seventh Son of this *Bajazet*, was not onely preferred by them before his Brethren in his Fathers Life-time; bnt by their aids alſo he ſeverally maſtered them, and in the end poyſoned his Father. To omit other Examples, even of late, *Anno* 1622. they ſlew the young Emperour *Oſman*, drew his Uncle *Muſtapha* out of Priſon, and eſtabliſhed him in the Royalty.

2. As for the next, the firſt Example in which I find them peccant toward their Prince, was at the beginning of the Reign of the above-mentioned *Bajazet*; when hearing of the intended death of *Achmet Baſſa* whom they loved, they broke open the Court Gates, and told the Emperour, *They would teach him, like a Drunkard, a Beaſt, and a Raſcal as he was, to uſe his Great Place and Calling with more Sobriety and Diſcretion*. Not long after, conceiving further diſpleaſure againſt the ſaid *Bajazet*, they ſhook their Weapons againſt him, and refuſed to take him into the midſt amongſt them; and were not, without great and vile ſubmiſſion on his part, appeaſed. Againſt *Selimus* the Firſt they alſo mutined; when being reſolved to winter in *Armenia*, for the better purſuit of his Victories againſt the *Perſian*, he was by them forced to turn home unto *Conſtantinople*. Againſt *Solyman* they mutined ſo violently, that they compelled him to diſplace *Ruſtan*, his chief *Baſſa* or Favourite. Againſt *Amurath* the third, for placing over them a new *Aga*, they ſo ſtrongly oppoſed themſelves, that firſt they ſet fire on *Conſtantinople*, and burnt therein, beſides Shops and Warehouſes, twenty five great Inns, ſeven Temples, and 15000 Houſes: and in the end conſtrained him to give them money, and to yield alſo into their hands two of his chief Counſellours, by them ſuppoſed to be their Adverſaries, whom they drew about the ſtreets. Finally, (to omit the tumult 1622. above-named) in the year 1600. they grew ſo diſcontented with *Mahomet* the Third, that they not onely threatned to deſtroy the principal Officers of the Court, and the baniſhment of the *Sultanneſs* his Mother, but the depoſing of himſelf alſo.

3. Now for the third, I find it to have been the cuſtom of theſe *Janizaries*, between the Death of an Old Emperour, and the Beginning of a New, to commit divers Inſolencies; as the rifling of the Houſes of the *Jews* and *Chriſtians*, among whom they dwell; the murdering of the *Baſſaes*, and principal men about the Court, whom they ſuſpected not to have favoured them; and a number of the like outragious miſchiefs. Of theſe we find frequent mention, as after the Death of *Amurath* the Second, and *Mahomet* the *Great*: at which laſt time the Merchants of *Conſtantinople*, being natural *Turks*, eſcaped not their ravenous hands; neither could *Mahomet-Baſſa* avoid the fury of their Swords. This ſpoil they took for ſo certain a due, that if they were diſappointed of it, they would preſently raiſe Commotions both in Court, Field and City; unleſs ſome preſent ſatisfaction were made them. To this end, *Achmet* diſtributed among them two millions and a half of Ducats; *Selimus* the firſt, two millions; others made an increaſe of their daily pay. But *Selimus* the ſecond, diſtributing among them 100000 *Sultanies* onely, was by them prohibited to enter into his *Seraglio*, till he had enlarged his bounty: and the Great Baſſaes were rapped about the Pate with their Calivers, for perſwading them to quietneſs. Now to prevent the dangerous and factious Liberty, which in the Vacancy of the Empire was uſually committed, the Death of the old Emperour was with all ſecrecy concealed, till the arrival of the New. To omit others, I will inſtance in the deaths of *Mahomet* the firſt, and *Solyman* onely. This *Solyman* died at the ſiege of *Sigeth* in *Hungary*, which was ſo cunningly concealed by *Mahomet-Baſſa* the ſpace of twenty days; that before the *Janizaries* knew of it, his Son *Selimus* had poſſeſſed himſelf of *Conſtantinople*, and came alſo to their Army then in retreat homewards. For this *Mahomet* privately ſtrangled the Phyſicians and Apothecaries, which knew of his death; commanded the Souldiers to go on in their ſiege; and divers times ſhewed them the Emperour ſitting in his Horſe-litter, as (being troubled with the Gout) he uſed to do: and when the City was taken, marched home with his dead Body, ſitting ſtill in the ſame manner. So after the death of *Mahomet* the Firſt, the *Baſſaes* of the Court called their *Divanos* as formerly they uſed; gave order for the levying of an Army, as if ſome War were intended; and the Kings Phyſicians went up and down with their Potions, as if they had him ſtill in cure. But the Penſioners and *Janizaries* miſdoubting the matter, with all eagerneſs deſired to ſee him; which when the *Baſſaes* durſt not deny, they appointed the next day for their viſit. The next day, the body was apparelled in Royal large Robes; placed in a Chair at the end of a long Gallery, and a little Boy cunningly ſet behind him, to move the Kings hand to his head, as if he ſhould ſtroke his beard, as his manner was: which ſigns of life and ſtrength the Soulders ſeeing, held themſelves contented, and ſo was his death concealed the ſpace of 41 days.

4. As for the laſt, Theſe inſolent and unſufferable pranks

pranks committed ſo commonly by theſe maſterful ſlaves ſo exceedingly ſtomached *Bajazet* the ſecond, that he ſecretly purpoſed with himſelf, for curing ſo dangerous a diſeaſe, to uſe a deſperate remedy; which was to kill and deſtroy ſuddenly all the *Janizaries*. It is like that this *Bajazet*, being a Scholar, had read how *Conſtantine* the *Great* had caſſed the *Prætorian* Souldiers, and deſtroyed their Camp, as men that were the cauſes of all the ſtirs in his Empire, and whoſe pride was come to an intolerable heighth: and having the ſame cauſe to deſtroy his *Janizaries*, hoped to have done it with as much eaſe and ſafety as the other did. But they having notice of the Plot, for the time continued ſo united and linked together, that he durſt not then attempt it; and afterward ſiding with his Son *Selimus*, caſt him out of his Throne into his grave. Since which time the Emperours never durſt puniſh them openly; but when any of them proveth delinquent, he is ſent privately in the night time to *Pera* over againſt *Conſtantinople*: where, by the way he is drowned, and a Piece of Ordnance ſhot off, to ſignifie the performing of the *Sultans* command.

Now for the Emperours themſelves, we will conſider them in matters of pleaſure, in matters of Ceremony, and in matters of State; the laſt being conſiderable in three main points which are the murdering of their bretheren, the removing of their Sons, there revenue, and therein a touch of their Government. To theſe we will add, what apparent *ſymptomes* may be obſerved to prognoſticate the ſtanding, decreaſing, and increaſing of this puiſſant Monarchy.

1. For the firſt, he hath not ſo few as 500 (ſometimes 1000) choice Virgins kept in a *Seraglio* by themſelves, all Slaves born of Chriſtian Parents, and indeed the Rareſt Beauties of his Empire. When he is diſpoſed to take his pleaſure with any of them, they are all ranked in a Gallery; and ſhe is by the *Aga* of the Women prepared for his Bed, to whom he giveth his Handkercher. She that beareth him the firſt Son, is honoured with the title of *Sultanneſs* (Queen Mother we may call her) neither can he make any of them free, unleſs he marry them. When the *Sultan* dieth, all his Women are carried into another *Seraglio*, where they are ſtrictly looked to, and liberally provided for, and not ſeldom times are beſtowed by the ſucceeding *Sultan*, on his Great *Baſſaes*, and ſuch as he chiefly favoureth, which is a principal honour. They are attended on by Women and Eunuchs; theſe being not gelded only, but deprived of all their Genitals, and ſupplying the uſes of Nature with a Silver Quill: Which inhumane Cuſtom was brought in among them by *Selimus* the Second, becauſe he had ſeen a Gelding cover a Mare.

2. Theſe Ceremonies are either performed by them, which is for the moſt part the building of a *Moſche* onely to help to the Salvation of their Souls; or towards them by others, which are moſt apparent in the entertainment of Embaſſadors. For when ſuch come to his preſence, they are led between two of his Courtiers, and coming before the Throne (on both ſides whereof the *Baſſaes* ſit with admirable ſilence, reſembling rather *Statues* than men) they bow themſelves to the ground with all humility: laying their hands on their breſt, but never uncovering their heads, which (as we noted before) is counted an undecency. When they are to depart, they go all backwards; it being accounted very irreverent to turn their back-parts towards a Prince ſo glorious. The reaſon why they are thus brought in between two, is ſaid to be for their greater honour: but is indeed a fear they have, leſt the *Grand Seigneur*, under the pretence of a Salutation, or the delivery of an Embaſſie, ſhould be ſtabbed. Which warineſs they have uſed, ever ſince the time that *Miles Cobelitz*, a *Servian*, ſcrambling from among the ſlain at the battel of *Caſſova*, and being admitted to the ſpeech of *Amurath* the firſt, the Author of that overthrow, ſtabbed him into the belly with his Dagger.

3. Amongſt all the Jars and Diſcontents that be, none have been with more Unkindneſs begun, or more Eagerneſs proſecuted, than thoſe of Brothers; and that not only in private Families, but in the ſtems of Princes: the multitude of Pretenders, being the Original of moſt *Civil Wars*. To prevent theſe publick Emotions, the Emperours of *Habaſſia* uſe to immure up all their younger Children in the Hill *Amara*; the *Perſians* do put out the Eyes of their younger Brothers; and the Turks do murder them. Strange and horrid courſes, whereby to avoid the fear of a War in the State, they ſtir up a War in their own Bowels. The firſt amongſt the *Turks* that began this barbarous Cruelty, was *Bajazet* the firſt, on his Brother *Jacup*; whom immediately after his Fathers death, he ſtrangled with a Bow ſtring: this being the onely inſtrument of their *Fratricide*, becauſe thereby none of the bloud-royal of *Ottoman* is ſpilt on the ground. After him, *Mahomet* the *Great* cauſed his young brother then at nurſe, to die the death; and was not without much ado perſwaded from being the Executioner himſelf. *Amurath* the third, cauſed his five brethren to be at once ſtrangled before his face; and *Mahomet*, his Son, no fewer than nineteen in one day. By this courſe they imagine their own Eſtate to be infinitely ſecured, as knowing that *Muſtapha* a younger Son, ſtirred a Rebellion againſt *Amurath*, and *Zemes*, againſt *Bajazet*; both the ſecond of thoſe names: that *Solyman*, *Muſa*, and *Iſa*, ſeverally afflicted *Mahomet* the firſt; and *Corcut*, *Selimus*, the firſt of theſe names alſo. But yet they will not know, that nothing ſooner putteth their younger Brothers into theſe acts of Hoſtility, than an inevitable Certainty of a violent and unnatural Death: Whereas were they but ſure of Life, and a Liberal and Princely Maintenance, it is more than probable, they would reſt content, as in other Kingdoms the younger Princes do. And notwithſtanding their barbarous Policy, they are not quite free from fear, as knowing the *Counterfeits* have heretofore much diſturbed the quiet of their Predeceſſors: for thus we find *Amurath* the ſecond to have been vexed by one, that took upon him the name of *Muſtapha*, elder brother to *Mahomet*, then late deceaſed; who was much furthered and aided by the *Greek* Princes. This hath been one of the vulgar policies of Princes to kindle flames of ſedition in their neighbours Countreys. In the infancy of the *Roman* Empire, we find a counterfeit *Agrippa*; after that a counterfeit *Nero*; and before them, two counterfeit *Alexanders* in *Syria*. But never was Realm ſo often troubled with theſe *Mock-Kings*, as *England*: a counterfeit *Richard* the Second, being made in the time of *Henry* the Fourth; a counterfeit *Mortimer*, in the time of *Henry* the Sixth; a counterfeit Duke of *York*, a counterfeit Earl of *Warwick*, under *Henry* the Seventh; and a counterfeit *Edward* the Sixth under Queen *Mary*. To prevent theſe walking Spirits, *Mahomet* the Third laid out the dead Bodies of his Father and nineteen Brethren, as a common Spectacle for all that paſſed by, or would come to behold them. Of late indeed the *Grand Seignior Muſtapha* miraculouſly eſcaped the Bow-ſtring twice; 1 When his Brother *Achmet*, and 2 When *Oſman* his young Nephew were made *Sultans*; and was the firſt in this Empire that ever did ſucceed in the collateral Line, as *Ibrahim* the late *Sultan* was the Second, on the death of *Morat* or *Amurath* the Fourth, his Elder Brother.

4. The removing of the young Princes is done for three Reaſons: 1. To wean them from the pleaſures of the Court. 2. To train them up in Arms, and inure them to hardneſs.

hardneſs. 3. And principally to avoid the danger of a Competitor, whereof old Princes are eſpecially jealous. The common places deſtinated to this Princely exile, are *Amaſia*, in *Cappadocia*; *Magneſia*, in *Lydia*; and ſuch like Towns of *Natolia*. Neither do the old *Sultans* by ſuch a great diſtance think themſelves ſecure altogether; but carry a vigilant eye over their Sons actions, and have intelligence of almoſt every particular thought, the leaſt ſuſpicion being cauſe ſufficient to deſtroy them. So we find *Muſtapha*, Son to *Solyman*, the hopefulleſt branch that ever ſprang from the *Ottoman* tree, to have been ſhamefully ſtrangled by the command of his Father; upon a rumor only of a Marriage, which he was ſaid to have negotiated with the *Perſian* King's Daughter. When theſe Princes are once ſettled in their Government, it is a crime meriting no leſs puniſhment then death, to depart thence and come unto *Conſtantinople*, before their Fathers Death; or unleſs they are by their Fathers ſent for. Of this we have a Tragical example in *Mahomet*, a Prince of great hope, Son to *Bajazet* the ſecond: who deſiring to ſee the faſhion of his Fathers Court, left *Magneſia*, to which he was by his Father confined; and attended by two or three Gentlemen, came in the habit of a Seafaring man to *Conſtantinople*, and having obtained his deſire, he returned to his charge. This ſtrange action being quickly divulged abroad, and by divers variouſly interpreted, ſtirred ſuch jealouſies in the ſuſpicious head of his old Father, that he took order not long after to have him ſecretly poiſoned.

5. As for the ordinary revenue, it conſiſteth either in money received, or in money ſaved. The money ſaved, is firſt by the *Tartars*, of whom he commands continually 60000 to attend him in his Wars, without any pay but the Spoil of the Enemy. And ſecondly by the *Timariots*, who nouriſh and bring into the Field more Horſe, than any Prince in Chriſtendom can keep (as we have already ſaid) for 14 millions of Gold. The money received (according to *Boterus*) is only 15 millions of Sultanies, which is nothing in reſpect of ſo great an Empire. The chief reaſon whereof is the tyrannical government of the *Turk*, which deters men from tillage, merchandize, and other improvements of their eſtates; as knowing all their gettings to lie at the *Grand Seigneur*'s mercy. His extraordinary revenue is incredible. For beſides that no Embaſſadour cometh before him empty-handed; no man is Maſter of his own wealth, further then it ſtands with the Emperours liking: ſo that his great *Baſſaes* are but as ſpunges, to ſuck up riches till their Coffers ſwell; and then to be ſqueezed into his Treaſury. Theſe men, as he advanceth without envy, ſo can he deſtroy without danger: no man here hoping for partakers, if he ſhould reſiſt, as not being ignorant that one mans fortune is built on the deſired overthrow of another. Such riches as they gain, if they hap to die naturally, return to the Emperour's Coffers; who giveth only what he pleaſeth to the Children of the deceaſed. Theſe *Baſſaes* have in their particular Provinces, their *Divanoes*, or Law-Courts, where juſtice hath been adminiſtred formerly with great integrity, but now not a little corrupted; yet the comfort is, that ſuch as miſcarry in their right, ſhall without delay know what to truſt to: and the *Baſſaes* upon complaint to the Emperour, are ſure to die for it. Over theſe *Baſſaes* (the chief of whom is the *Vizier Baſſa*, or Preſident of the Council) preſide two *Beglerbegs*, one for *Greece*, the other for *Natolia*.

6. Concerning the preſent ſtate of the Empire, many judge it to be rather in the wane, then the increaſe, which judgment they ground upon good reaſons, whereof theſe are the chief.

1. The body is grown too monſtrous for the head, the *Sultans* ſince the death of *Solyman* never accompanying their Armies in perſon (except *Morat*, or *Amuraih* the fourth) but rioting and waſting their bodies and treaſures at home.

2. The *Janizaries*, who have been accounted the principal ſtrength of this Empire, are grown more factious in the Court, than valiant in the Camp: corrupted with eaſe and liberty, drowned in prohibited wines, enfeebled with the continual converſe of women, and fallen from their former auſterity of diſcipline.

3. They have of late given no increaſe unto their Dominions; and as in the paths of virtue, *Non progredi eſt regredi*, ſo in Empires, by violence gotten, when they ceaſe to be augmented, they begin to be diminiſhed.

4. Rebellions have in theſe later times been in this Empire ſtrangely raiſed, and mightily ſupported; which commotions the former *Sultans* were never acquainted with.

5. The greatneſs of this Empire is ſuch, that it labours with nothing more then the weightineſs of it ſelf; ſo that it muſt in a manner needs decline, *Pondere preſſa ſuo*, overburdened with its own mightineſs. For as in a natural body, a ſurfeit killeth more then faſting; ſo in the body Politick alſo, too much extent of Empire doth ſooner draw on a ruine, than either too little or a mediocrity.

6. The Sons of the *Grand Seignour*, whoſe bravery of mind is ever ſuſpected by their Fathers, are nurſed up (contrary ſometimes to their natural inclinations) in all effeminacy; which once rooted in them in their youth, doth always after ſubject them to the ſoftneſs and baſeneſs of libidinous pleaſures.

7. They have loſt much of that fear and terror, which formerly their very name did carry with it: inſomuch that not the *Venetians* only have by Sea often mated, and once overthrown them; the *Hungarians* withſtood their greateſt forces, for the ſpace of 200 years, by land; the *Polonians* forced them to diſhonourable retreat and compoſition: but the poor Prince of *Tranſylvania* did divers times diſcomfit them, with the death of many of their *Baſſaes*: the *Florentines* with ſix ſhips only, intercepteth their trade; and the poor *Emir* of *Sidon* held it out againſt them many years together.

8. By the Avarice and corruption reigning in the Court, all Peace and War, all Counſels and Informations, all Injuries and Favours, being now made ſaleable. And

9. It is viſible and apparent, that their Empire was long ſince at the higheſt. *Et naturaliter quod procedere non poteſt, recedit*, as *Vellius* hath it, when an Empire can aſcend no higher, by the ordinary courſe of nature it muſt have a fall. All theſe are more than probable Prognoſticks of a ſinking Monarchy: and yet there is a greater then any of theſe, that is to ſay, the preſent ſtate of Affairs. The young Emperour *Mahomet* the fourth, now reigning, is but a weak ſtaff to ſupport ſo vaſt an Empire; conſidering not only the infinite caſualties, to which children are naturally ſubject: but the dangers which he may juſtly fear from a Rebellious Souldiery, and a Factious Court. Who by the Murder of one Emperour, and the depoſition of two, have made themſelves ſo formidable, but withal ſo odious in the ſight of the Imperial Houſe, that there is no way left to ſave them from a merited vengeance, but to tranſlate the Empire to ſome other Family; though by the rooting out of this. Which whenſoever it ſhall happen, either by the natural death or unnatural deſtruction of the preſent *Sultan*, it will draw with it an extermination of the *Ottoman* Race, which I look on as a matter not to be avoided, except by miracle. Suppoſing then the Line of *Ottoman* to fail, (as it is moſt probable that it will) what will become of this vaſt Empire? Three there will be to offer

at

at it, *viz.* the *Crim-Tartars*, the *Janizaries*, and the *Bassaes*. And first the *Crim-Tartar* may plead a composition, made by his Ancestors, with the Princes of the *Ottoman* Family; which is, that he supplying them with 60000 men at his own charges, when their occasions so require, should on the failer of the heirs males succeed in this Empire. Besides which, he may hope for no small succours, not only from the rest of the *Tartarian* Princes, but even from the *Great Cham* himself, to recover his Estate herein, if withholden from him: thereby to add to the present greatness and renown of the *Tartars*, the access of such a spacious Empire. 2. The *Bassaes* may conceive no small possibilities, of dividing this great Empire among themselves, partly by the example of *Alexander*'s Captains, who after their Masters death (there being yet some of the Blood Royal remaining) parted amongst themselves not only the new-gotten Provinces, which they had conquered from the *Persians*; but even the Kingdom of *Macedon*, his old Inheritance: partly by an example in their own Histories, by which it appeareth, that after the death of *Aladine* the second, *Caraman*, *Sarachan*, *Cridin*, *Carasus*, and the rest of the more powerful Commanders, divided among them the whole *Turkish* Kingdom in the *Lesser Asia*: and partly by the opportunity which they have as Governours in their several Provinces, and having so many bands of Souldiers under their command; which may easily invest them as Proprietaries in those Estates, of which they have already such a fair possession. And so we find the *Sultans*, or Provincial Governours, or the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*, to have done before them. 3. The *Janizaries* may also build their hopes on as fair foundations, as being the Sword and Buckler of the *Ottoman* Empire; got, and maintained by their valour chiefly. Who to excite them to the enterprize, have the example of the *Pretorian* Guards of the *Roman* Empire (a body far more Politick and better compacted than this is;) who out of their own company created the far greater part of the *Roman* Emperours, neither the Provinces or Senate daring to oppose them in it. But above all examples, that of the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt* doth make fairest for them; who were born of Christian Parents, as these are; appointed for the Guard of the *Sultans*, as these are: purposely entertained and inured to the Wars, to take from the natural Subjects, the use of Arms, as these are; men of approved Valour, and the chief Bulwark of that Kingdom against the Christians, as these are; and then why may they not be like them in this last attempt, for sitting in their Masters Throne, as these *Mamalucks* did? Add hereunto, that they are already (in a manner) possessed of *Constantinople*, the head Town and heart of the Empire; and their hopes are not vain. For my part I hold them to be the men most like to carry it, unless the Princes of Christendom laying aside private malice, joyn all in Arms to strip this proud Peacock of his feathers: and (upon so blessed an advantage) to break in pieces with a rod of Iron, this insolent and burdensom Monarchy. A thing rather to be desired then expected. But this by way of supposition, and as in a dream, I awake again.

The Ensign of this Empire (or Arms of it) is the *Croissant*, or half Moon; but how blazoned I cannot tell you: nor are the Learned yet resolved on the beginnings of that bearing. Some derive it to them, from the Eastern Gentiles, who worshipped the Moon under both Sexes, as we learn in *Spartianus*. Some make it common to them with the other Mahumetans; and they derive it from a pretended miracle of *Mahomet*; who to shew his power, is said to have made the Moon fall into his lap in two pieces, and to have restored her whole again to the heavens. Others are of opinion, that it was taken by the *Grand Seigneur* at the winning of *Constantinople*; *Ut signum victæ gentis penes quam Orientis imperium esset.* And of this mind is *Justus Lipsius*, induced thereto as it seemeth, by the figure of the *Croissant*, born in some old *Byzantine* Coins. A pretty plausible conceit; and therefore till we have a better, may pass as currant as the money.

And thus much I thought convenient to insert in this place, concerning the original, proceeding, and continuance; the natural dispositions, policies, and forces of the *Turks*: this being as the only Province which retaineth their name; so both the first they were possessed of, and the last which they have fully conquered, of all their Dominions. Which said, we must here take our leave of the *Turkish* Empire, and once again of the *Roman* also, of which the River *Tigris* and the *Caspian* Sea were the utmost bounds; not meeting again with either of them, unless by accident (or some unprofitable expeditions) till we come to *Egypt*, and there we shall hear farther of them.

And thus much for *TURCOMANIA*.

OF

OF

MEDIA and PERSIA.

THese I have joyned together also, because the affairs thereof have been so united, in making up the second of the four great *Monarchies*, and running the same fortunes ever since; that they are hardly to be parted in course of story, though each must have unto it self a distinct *Chorography*. First then, we begin with *MEDIA*.

MEDIA is bounded on the East, with *Parthia*, and some part of *Hyrcania*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; on the West, with *Armenia Major*, and some part of *Assyria*; on the North, with the *Caspian* Sea, and those parts of *Armenia Major*, which now pass in the accompt of *Georgia*; and on the South, with *Persia*. So called from *Madai* the Son of *Japhet*, by whom first planted and possessed, after that general dispersion made at *Babel*. Known by this name amongst the ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; but at this time *Sheirvan* by the *Turks* and *Persians*: the word signifying in the language of this Country, a *Milkie-Plain*.

The Country of a large extent, and of so different nature, as one would think it not the same. The North parts lying betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Hyrcanian* Sea, very cold and comfortless: so barren, that for the most part they make their bread of dried *Almonds*, and their drink of the juyce of certain herbs. Fruit-trees they have but few, and those but of Apples; nor any droves of tame Cattel, as in other places, their food being generally on *Venison*, or the flesh of wild beasts took in hunting. But on the South-side of the *Taurus*, the soyl is very rich, and the Country pleasant, plentiful both of Corn and Wine, and all things necessary; full of fat Pastures, some of them so large in compass, that 50000 Horses do graze upon them.

The people anciently great Warriers, as those who ruined the great Empire of the *Babylonians*; and laid upon themselves and their own vertue, the foundation of the second *Monarchy*. But being not long after incorporated into the same Empire with the *Persians*, have not only ever since followed the same fortunes with them, but participate of their nature also: and therefore we shall hear more of their *Character*, when we come to *Persia*. *Polygamy* anciently amongst them, so far from being esteemed a sin or an inconvenience, that it was a punishment for the common *Villager* to have less than seven Wives; or the Woman, if of noble birth, fewer than five Husbands. In their Wars they use commonly to envenom their Arrows with an oyl or liquor, made of a *bituminous* water called *Naphta*, whereof there is great plenty both here, in *Persia*, and *Assyria*. The Oyl called *Oleum Mediacum*, from this people only, because their invention; and by them most mischievously used. The Arrow which was anointed with it, being shot from a slacker bow (for a swift and strong motion took away its vertue) did burn the flesh wherein it fastned, with so great a violence, that nothing but dust could mitigate the fury of it; water increasing rather than diminishing that malignant flame.

The *Christian Religion* was first here planted by S. *Thomas*, but never had the happiness to be so universally embraced, as in other places; alwaies opposed and suppressed, either by *Paganism*, in the time of the old *Persian* Kings: or by *Mahometanism*, since the first conquest of this Country by the power of the *Saracens*. Some *Christians* yet there be amongst them either of the *Armenian*, or *Nestorian* Sects, (as in all other parts of the *Persian* Empire) the specialties of whose *Religion* have been elsewhere spoke of. Here live also very many *Jews*, indulged the free exercise of their *Religion*: many of which are Descendants of those *Tribes*, which were transplanted hither by *Salmanasser*. But the *Religion* generally embraced and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, according to the *Sophian* or *Persian* Sects; the Language of which Nation they do also speak, though they had a Language of their own, different from that of the *Parthian*, *Elamite*, or *Persian*, as appeareth, *Acts* 2. 9. where they are reckoned as distinct.

Mountains of chief note, 1 *Orontes*, 2 *Coronus*, 3 *Chaboras*, the boundary betwixt *Media* and *Assyria*, 4 *Jasonium*, 5 *Lagoas*; all of them (except *Chaboras* only) the disjoynted branches of Mount *Taurus*: which is here more broken and divided, than in any part of his course besides.

Out of these flow their principal Rivers, 1 *Amandus*, 2 *Strata*, and 3 *Carindas*; of greatest eminence in this Country, in the time of *Ptolomy*, but otherwise of no great account or observation. 4 *Canae*, the Divider of this Province from *Armenia Major*, but whether any of the former under this new name, I am not able to affirm. Add hereunto the great Lake, now called *Argis* (by the *Persians Vastblan*) but by *Strabo* named *Martiana Palus*, situate in the Confines of *Assyria*, *Media*, and *Armenia*; of the fish whereof dryed by the Sun and wind, and sold into divers other Countries, the people of these parts raise a great commodity.

In former times it was divided into many *Provinces*, the principal of which 1 *Tropatene*, 2 *Charomithrene*, 3 *Darites*, 4 *Marciane*, 5 *Amariace*, and 6 *Syro-Media*: these and the rest reduced to two in the latter reckonings, viz. *Atropatia*, and 2 *Media Major*.

1. *ATROPATIA* is that part hereof, which lieth betwixt Mount *Taurus* and the *Caspian* Sea. So called from that *Atropatus*, Governour of these parts in the time of *Darius*, the last *Persian* Monarch; who so valiantly held out against the *Macedonians*. The *Tropatene*, (as I take it) of the ancient Writers. A barren, cold, and unhospitable Country, as before described; and for that cause allotted for the dwelling of many of the Captive *Israelites*, brought hither by *Salmanassar* when he conquered that Kingdom: their numbers being found so

great in this Northern Region, that *Bejamin* the *Jew*, reckoned no fewer than 50000 of them in one City only, which he calleth by the name of *Madai*. And that great numbers of them were transplanted hither, appeareth by that passage, 2 *Kings* 17. 6. where it is said, that they were placed in *Halah* and *Habor* by the River of *Gozan*, and *in the Cities of the* Medes. Now *Halah* or *Chalah* seems most probably to be that Region of *Assyria* which *Ptolomy* calleth *Chalatene*, in the North of that Country, towards *Media*, *Habor*, or *Chabor*, to be that Mount *Chaberus*, which parteth this Country from *Assyria*, in which Mountainous tract there was in those times a City of the same name also. Betwixt which City and the banks of the *Caspian* Sea, I find in *Ptolomy* the City *Gauzania*, in the 40th. and 40 *minutes* of the Northern *Latitude*: in which there are apparent footsteps of the name of the River *Gozan*, upon whose banks it was most likely to be seated.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Hamadum* by *Benjamin* the *Jew* called *Madai*, repleniſhed in his time with families of the captive *Israelites*. 2 *Gauzania*, another dwelling of those Tribes, spoken of before. 3 *Mandagarsis*, of which nothing extant but the name. 4 *Gelan*, inhabited by *Gelæ* of the Ancients, whom the *Greeks* call *Cadusii*. 5 *Bochu*, more towards the *Caspian* Sea, hence called *Mare de Bochu*. 6 *Eres*, a place of great strength, but possessed by the *Turks*, and made the residence of some of their principal Officers: taken by *Mustapha* General of the *Turkish* Forces in the time of *Amurath* the third, and by him fortified as the Gate and entrance of this Country. 7 *Sumachia*, or *Shamaki*, betwixt *Eres* and *Derbent*, taken by *Osman Bassa*, at the same, *Anno* 1578. and made the residence of a *Beglerbeg*, *Anno* 1583. Conceived to be the *Cyropolis* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Persians* called *Cyreckbata*; bearing the name of *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch, by whom built or beautified. Remarkable at the present for a Pillar of flint-stones, inter-woven with the heads of many of the *Persian* Nobility, most barbarously slain by one of the late *Sultans*, and this Pillar here erected for a terrour to others.

2. *MAJOR MEDIA*, or *MEDIA* specially so called, is that part hereof, which lieth on the South of the Mountain *Taurus*. Commended by the Ancients, for one of the goodliest Countries in all *Asia*: the fields (saith *Ammianus*) yielding abundance of Corn and Wine, for their fatness and fertility very rich, and no less pleasant for fresh Springs and clear veins of water: where one may see plenty of green Meadows; and in them a breed of generous Horses, which they call *Nisæi*, mounted by as valiant and generous Riders, who with great jollity use to go unto the wars, and charge furiously upon the Enemy. The men commended by *Polybius* (χ᾽ τὰς ἀρετὰς ἀνδρῶν, &c.) as well as the Country.

Cities of most note in it, 1 *Ecbatana* of as great antiquity as *Babylon*; for we find that *Semiramis* the wife of *Ninus* in a war made against the *Medes*, who had then rebelled, taking an affection to the place, caused water-courses to be made to it from the further side of the Mountain *Orontes*, digging a passage through the hills, with great charge and labour. Destroyed by the injury of time, it was re-edified by *Deioces* the sixth King of the *Medes*; and afterwards much beautified and enlarged by *Seleucus Nicanor*, Successor unto *Alexander* in his *Asian* Conquests. For beauty and magnificence little inferiour to *Babylon*, or *Ninive*, before described. In compass 180 or 200 Furlongs, which make about 24 *Italian* miles. The walls thereof affirmed in the Book of *Judith*, to be 70 *Cubits* high, 50 *Cubits* broad, and the Towers upon the Gates 100 *Cubits* higher; all built of hewn and polished stone, each stone being six *Cubits* in length, and three in breadth. But this is to be understood only of the innermost wall, there being seven in all about it; each of them higher than the other, and each distinguished by the colour of their several Pinnacles, which gave unto the eye a most gallant *Prospect*. From which variety of coulours, it is thought to have the name of *Agbatha*, or *Agbathana*. In former times, the ordinary residence of the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*, in the heats of the Summer; as *Susa* (the chief City of *Susiana*) in the cold of Winter. The Royal Palace being about a mile in compass, was built with all the cost and cunning that a stately Mansion did require: some of the beams thereof of *Silver*, and the rest of *Cedar*; but those of *Cedar* strengthned with Plates of *Gold*. Said by *Josephus* to be built by the Prophet *Daniel*. Which must be understood no otherwise in the truth of Story, than that he oversaw the Workmen, or contrived the *Model*; appointed to that office by *Darius Medus*, to whom the building of the same is ascribed by others. Neglected by the Kings of the *Parthian* Race, it became a ruine. 2 *Tauris*, situate in or near the place of *Ecbatana*, out of whose rubbish it was built. Distant 150 miles from the *Caspian* Sea, under the shadow of *Orontes*, now called *Baronta*; but opening Southwards, towards a large and spacious *Campagn*, in compass about six miles, and beautified on the South-west within a large and pleasant Garden, the work of *Sultan Tamas*, who resided here often: the buildings for the most part of brick, with flat Roofs (as generally in all the East) well peopled, as containing 200000 persons of all sorts and Sects. Of great trading, till subdued by the *Turks*, by whom it was thrice taken within very few years, viz. by *Selimus* the first, *Anno* 1514. by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *Anno* 1530. and by *Osman Bassa*, general of *Amurath* the third, *Anno* 1585. But this last finding it too chargeable to be alwaies garrisoned, and not otherwise tenable but by force, pulled down the Walls, and built a large and capacious *Citadel*: both Town and Citadel recovered by *Emir-Hamze Mirza*, Prince of *Persia*, and Father of *Sultan Sophy*, *Anno* 1614. after it had been for an hundred years a continual prey unto the *Turks*. 3 *Arsatia*, so named by *Ptolomy*, and by the name conjectured to be built by some of the *Parthian* Race. Ruined long since, but more beautifully revived than ever in the present 4 *Casbin*, raised from the ruins of that Town. Situate in a fair and open place on the banks of a little River, which serveth it for household uses, but not for traffick. Exceedingly enriched by the removal of the Court from *Tauris* hither, in the time of *Tamas*; partly invited thereunto by the richness of the soyl, and the commodiousness of the place; but chiefly that he might without danger attend the *Turks*, who began to encroach on his Dominions. In compass about seven miles, beautified with a large Market-place, many stately *Mosques*, and the *Sultans* Palace: this last adjoyning to the first, convenient enough, but neither of great state nor beauty. 5 *Rages*, or *Raga*, mentioned in the book of *Tobit*, so called from *Reu* or *Ragau* the son of *Phaleg*, the founder of it: situate near the spacious Plain, so memorable for the great breed of Horses spoken of before; and therefore in that Book called the *Plain of Rages*. Repaired afterwards by the *Greeks*, it was named *Europus*, and so stands in *Ptolomy*. 6 *Nassivan*, supposed by some to be the *Artasata*, more probably the *Nasuana*, of the Ancient Writers: a place much aimed at by the *Turks* in their *Persian* Wars. 7 *Ardoville*, on or near the banks of the great Lake *Argis*, spoken of before: the birth-place and chief Seat of *Guine*, and *Aider*, the first Authors of the *Sophian* Sect; and the burial place of *Sultan Hysmael* the first *Persian Sultan* of that Line. 8 *Sultania*,

tania, about six daies journey from *Tauris*, environed with high Mountains; the tops of which continually covered with Snow, may be seen far off: founded by *Alyaptu*, the eighth King of the Sixth or *Tartarian* Dynasty, and by him made the Royal Seat of the *Persian Sultans*, whence it had the name. But ruinated by the *Tartars*, it retaineth nothing now of its former splendour, but the *Mosques*, or Temples (one of them, the fairest in the East) which the *Tartars* spared. 9 *Troyan*, in the Territory of *Sultania*, situate in a large Plain, but not far from the Mountains; beautified with a fair Market-place many pleasant Gardens of private men; and one belonging to the King, environed with a Wall of greater Circuit than the City. 10 *Turcoman*, in the middle way betwixt *Tauris* and *Casbin*. 11 *Damoan*, at the foot of *Taurus*, a Town of 200 houses, not here considerable but for the signification of the name; which is said to signifie a *Second Plantation*: and being situate at the foot of so high a Mountain, occasioned some of the *Jews* to think, that the *Ark* rested not far off, as perhaps it did. 12 *Marant*, in the Extremity of the Country, but of lesser note.

The first Inhabitants hereof were the Posterity of *Madai*, as before was said; *Ragau* the Son of *Phaleg* taking up those parts, which lay next *Assyria*. Divided in long tract of time into several *Tribes*, as the *Caduſii*, *Amavia-cli*, *Margasi*, *Sagartii*, *Delryces*, *Tapyri*, and some others. Governed by *Kings* immediately from the first *Plantation*; for we find that *Pharnus* King hereof, was overthrown and slain by *Ninus* the Grand-son of *Nimrod*. After this made subject to the *Assyrians*, there Kings were only *Titular*, at the best but *Homagers*, perhaps no better than *Provincial* Governours, under that great Monarchy. Of most esteem amongst them was that *Arseus*, who with an Army of 800000 men (if the number be not mistaken) incountred the *Caduſii*, by whom discomfited and slain. But the *Caduſii* so broken, that they were fain to put themselves under the power of the *Persians*; and so continued till the time of *Arbaces*, the last of these *Provincials*, and the first Monarch of the *Medes*. He living in the time of *Sardanapalus*, had the chance to see his Lord and Master in a womans dress, spinning among his Concubines, and otherwise behaving himself in a brutish manner; which so moved him, that he resolved to be no longer subject to so vile a Monster. Communicating his thoughts unto *Belochus*, Governour of *Babylon*, and well seen in *Astrology*, he was incouraged to proceed; and sped so well, that having made themselves Masters of *Ninive*, the Imperial City (though *Sardanapalus* for a time put them shrewdly to it) they divided betwixt them his Estates. To *Belochus* fell *Assyria*, and *Babylonia*, with the Provinces on the West of *Tigris*: To *Arbaces*, *Media*, and the rest, which now make up the Kingdom of *Persia*. But being a mild Prince, and desirous by fair and gentle means to assure his Empire, he confirmed the *Persian Satrapaes* in their former Governments; reserving nothing to himself but a *titular Soveraignity*. Of whom and his Successors more, when we have taken in the rest of the Provinces.

PERSIA.

PERSIA is bounded on the East, with *India*; on the West, with *Media*, *Assyria*, and *Chaldea*; on the North, with *Tartary*; on the South, with the main Ocean. So called from *Perſis* the predominant Province of it, that which gave Law to all the rest: as that is said to do from *Perseus*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*; affirmed by the *Grecians* to have conquered these *Eastern* Countries, and to have left his name to this. Of which thus *Isidore*, Persæ *populi à* Perseo *Rege sunt vocati, qui à* Græcia *in* Asiam *transiens ibi barbaras gentes gravi diuturnoque bello perdomuit, & victor nomen subactæ Genti imposuit.* In the Scripture it is constantly called *Elam*, till the time of *Daniel* the Prophet, from *Elam*, the Son of *Sem*, who was planted there. But after that the *Medes* and *Persians* had subdued *Babylon*, and transferred the supreme Monarchy to themselves, we find this people called by the name of *Paras*, (whence the name of *Persian* seems to come) the word *Paras*, (or *Pharas*) signifying as much as Horsemen. Given therefore to this Nation, as it is supposed, from an Edict of *Cyrus*, who not only taught them the art of *Horsemanship*, but set forth a Law, that it should be a reproach to any man to go on foot, *Sive multum sive parum itineris esset conficiendum*, whether the journey that he had to go were long or little. Called sometimes also *Achæmenides*, from *Achæmenides* the Son of *Perses*, one of the first known Kings hereof; and by that name, (*Non tot* Achæmeniis *armantur* Susa *Sagittis*) they occur in the second of *Propertius*. Where by *Achæmeniæ Sagittæ*, he means *Persian* Arrows.

It is of very great extent, streched out in length from the 82 degree of *Longitude*, to the 120. being 38 degrees in all; and in breadth from the 23 degree of Northern *Latitude*, to the 43. being 20 more. According unto which position, with reference to the heavenly bodies, we shall find it seated under the third, fourth, fifth, and sixth *Climates*: the longest Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours almost three quarters; and fifteen hours one quarter in the parts most Northwards.

The Country not alike in all places, as it is impossible it should in so great a compass. But generally it is of a pure and wholesome air, the high hills shading it on the one side from the heat of the *Clime* under which it lieth; and the warmth of the Sea, wherewith encompassed, cherishing a great part thereof. And so it is affirmed to be by *Quintus Curtius*; *Regio non alia in tota Asia salubrior habetur; temperatum cœlum; hinc perpetuum jugum opacum & umbrosum, quod æstus levat; illinc mare adjunctum, quod modico tepore terras fovet.* Then for the Earth, it is, by reason of the great heat of the Sun, very dry and sandy, in many places destitute of water; in the South parts thereof few Rivers, and not many Lakes; by consequence neither well peopled, nor manured, for the greatness of it: men loving to inhabit (and I cannot blame them) where they may have the use of water. Which notwithstanding, it is furnished with all necessaries both for life and pleasure; one part affording that which the other wanteth, as shall be shewed in the description of the several Provinces.

The people anciently were trained up to the Wars, but chiefly unto *Archery*, from their very childhood. Indulged the liberty of having as many Wives as they pleased; they never saw the children begotten of them, until five years old. At that age sent unto their Fathers, they were taught presently to handle the *Bow* and *Arrows*. Upon this ground we find the *Bow of Elam* mentioned by the Prophet *Jeremy*, Chap. 4. and the *Quiver of Elam* by the Prophet *Isaiah*, Chap. 22. 6. as the Arms peculiar to that Nation, or most used amongst them. They were good *horsemen* also, and well skilled at their Dart and Slings, till wealth and ease, and the pride of so great an Empire, made them wholly feminine: depriving them of those abilities both of mind and body, wherein they did excel most Nations in their harder times. In all their fortunes very obsequious, if not servile, to their Kings and Princes; in whose presence it was a crime to spit: but to deny obedience unto his Commands an offence so hainous, as was not to be punished with less than

the loss of life, and want of burial. In this observance of their Kings followed, if not out-stripped, by the modern *Persian*. A race of men, affirmed to be *cunctorum hominum mitissimi*, the most meek or patient of the world, especially compared with those of the same Religion, the *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not haters of Learning, as the *Turks*; but studious, many of them in *Physick* and *Astrology*; most of the better sort much delighted in *Poetry*, which they give their minds to. For the most part addicted to *hospitality*, magnificent in expence, Lordly in their complements, fantastical in their Apparel, maintainers of *Nobility*, and desirous of peace. Such as apply themselves to *Trades*, and Mechanick Arts, prove excellent in the making of Silks, and Cloth of Gold: those which betake themselves to war, proving very good Souldiers, as the *Turks* have found unto their cost, who by their long Wars against them have got nothing but blows. The women said to be neat and cleanly, truly loving, gorgeous in Attire, and delightful in the sequestrations of pleasure.

Their *Religion* at the first was *Paganism*, wherein directed principally by their Priests or *Magi*, Men of a strict austere life, forbidding outward ornaments, and the use of Gold; making the ground their bed, and the herbs their food; their whole time spent in offering to the Gods the Prayers and Sacrifices of the people, as if they only might be heard; or else in Divinations, and foretelling of things to come, from whence the names of *Magick* and *Magician* are derived unto us. Studious in the knowledge of God and Nature, and therefore called by *Suidas*, not only *Philosophi*, lovers of Wisdom; but *Philotbei*, the lovers of God. Of such esteem, that as *Cicero* telleth us, the *Persian* Kings were not admitted to the Throne, till they were trained up in the Discipline of the *Magi*: and of such power and intimacy in the Royal Court, that one of those *Magi*, on the death of *Cambyses*, possessed himself of the *Persian* Monarchy. In a word, such as the *Druides* were to the *Galls* and *Britains*, the *Gymnosophists* or *Brachmans* to the ancient *Indians*, and the *Chaldeans* in the Empire of *Babylon*; the same, if not of greater sway in affairs of moment, were the *Persian Magi*. And *Persians* they must be if *Magi*; none but the Natives of that Country being to be admitted of that Society; though by a *Metaphor*, applyed to the Professors of the same Arts, though of other Countries, as those which came from the East to worship *Christ*, are by St. *Matthew* called *Magi* (*Mat.* 2. 1.) though they came from *Arabia*.

The people then were *Gentiles* as to their Religion; and besides other Gods which the *Gentiles* worshipped, they were great *Idolaters* of the *Fire*; which they offered Sacrifice unto in time of peace, and carried it with them as their *Tutelar Deity*, in the time of war. At what time (especially if the King were there in person) it was borne in the very front of their Army, attended on by their *Priests*, and followed by a train of boys all cloathed in Scarlet, to the number of 365. according to the number of the daies of the year. In this equipage, with a great deal of pomp besides, did *Darius* set forwards to fight with *Alexander*, at the battel of *Issus* in *Cilicia*. A superstition derived from them to the *Medes* and *Assyrians*, their next neighbouring Nations, and not extinguished to this day in some parts of this Country; in which many of these *Fire-worshippers* are still remaining. But from a God, it grew in time to be a *Gentleman-Usher*, and to attend on Kings and persons of greatest eminence: used to be borne before the Emperours of *Rome*, as a point of *State*. Insomuch that *Commodus*, though fallen out with his Sister *Lucilla*, permitted her notwithstanding to enjoy her Seat in the publick *Theatre*, ἐν πύρ φορεμένου αὐτῷ, a fire to be borne before her, as in former times, as we are told by *Herodian*.

The Christian Faith was first planted in the Provinces of the *Persian* Kingdom, by St. *Thomas* the Apostle, and held in all points answerable to those of the *Catholick* Church; till *Sapores* to despight the Emperour *Heraclius* a right *Orthodox* Prince, commanded that all the Christians in his Dominions should conform themselves to the opinions and tendries of the *Nestorian* Sect, by that means universally spread over all these Provinces. With whom here live now intermingled some *Armenian* Christians, who with their Patriarch removed hither, when their own Country was made the seat of a long and miserable war betwixt the *Persian* and the *Turk*; but found not here so safe a dwelling as they did expect: 1200 of them being slain by *Abas* the late *Persian Sultan*, on a suspicion that they went about to reconcile themselves to the Pope of *Rome* (whom he held to be more inclinable to the *Turk* than to him) in the year 1609. Which notwithstanding (so miserable a condition do these Christians live in) he suffered two Convents of *Augustine* and *Carmelite* Friers, to be settled at the same time, even in *Spawn-hawn* it self, and many *Jesuites* to live peaceably up and down the Country, which serve for little else than to give intelligence. Here are also many *Jews* dispersed over all the Provinces of this Empire, allowed their *Synagogues*, and Publick Places of Assembly. But the Religion publickly authorized and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*, imposed on this Country by the *Saracens*, when by them subdued: differing in some points from the *Turks*, especially about the true Successor of that false Seducer (of whom more anon;) the cause of the long wars betwixt those Nations.

As for the *Persian* Language, it is very ancient, supposed to be as old as the Confusion at *Babel*: some words whereof, by *Daniel* and *Ezra* which lived in the *Persian* Court, have been made use of in some parts of the holy Scripture. A Tongue which still hath left some remainders of it, in the Language of the modern *Persian* (as those of judgment in this tongue have delivered to us) notwithstanding so long tract of time, and the conquest of this Country by the *Greeks*, *Arabians*, *Turks* and *Tartars*. Not spoken only in this Country, nor limited within the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; but used also in the Court and Camp of the *Great Mongul*, and some parts of *Zagathay*; and where not *vulgar* unto all, studied and understood by persons of more eminent sort, as the *Latine* by the Gentry of these Western parts. Insomuch as he that hath this Language, may travel over all the East without an *Interpreter*.

Rivers in the South parts there are but few, as before was said, and those few not navigable; by consequence of little note or estimation. The principal of those that be, are 1 *Eulæus*, the chief River of *Susiana*, emptying it self into *Sinus Persicus*: a River of so pure a stream, that the great *Persian* Kings would drink of no other water. The Northern parts more plentifully stored with that commodity, as having in it the famous Rivers of 2 *Oebus* in *Bactria*, a River of the greater note amongst the Ancients, because it was navigable; opening with a fair Channel into the *Caspian* Sea, to which it hasteneth from *Mount Taurus*: and so doth also, 3 *Oxus* in *Margiana*, a fatal bound to these great neighbours. A River which the *Persians* have seldom passed to inlarge their Dominions, but they received some notable overthrow at the hand of the *Scythians*; and when the *Tartars* made over it under the conduct of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*, for the invasion of *Persia*, they were shamefully beat back again by *Hysmael Sophy*. Nor is it less memorable in old stories, for the famous passage of *Alexander* over it, in pursuit

purſuit of the murderers of *Darius*. For having followed *Beſſus* to the banks of this River, and not knowing how to paſs over his men, there being neither Ships upon it, nor timber near at hand to build them, he cauſed a great number of bags and bladders to be ſtuffed with ſtraw, and ſo in three daies tranſported his Army. So that I may truly ſay with his own Hiſtorian, *Unum id Conſilium quod neceſſitas ſuggeſſerat, iniit*; Neceſſity is the beſt Author of fine inventions. 4 *Zioberis* in *Hyrcania*, which riſing out of the ſame mountainous tract (as the two laſt mentioned) after a long courſe above ground in the open light, hideth himſelf again for the ſpace of 38 miles, and then breaketh out at a new Fountain, and falleth into 5 *Rhadaga*, another chief River of thoſe parts. And this *Alexander* the *Great* found to be true, by caſting two Oxen into the River *Zioberis*, which by the current of the ſtream were carryed under the ground, and brought to light where the River had its riſe again. 6 *Hidero*, by what name known unto the Ancients I am not able to ſay, but of great note amongſt modern *Travellers*, for the fall thereof into the Sea: ſo ſteep and ſtrong, that the people are ſaid to ſacrifice or banket under the fall thereof, the ſtream ſo violently ſhooting over their heads, that it never wetteth them.

Mountains of moſte note, are thoſe which paſs by the name of *Taurus*; which having left *Medi* on the Weſt, paſſeth through the Northern Provinces of the *Perſian*, Empire, dividing *Parthia* from *Hyrcania*, and *Paropamiſus* from *Bactria*, and *Aria* from *Margiana*. Known by the names of *Coronus*, the *Seriphian* hills, *Paropamiſus*, *Caucaſus*; whereof more as occaſion ſerveth in their proper places.

It is divided into the paticular Provinces of 1 *Suſiana*. 2 *Perſis*. 3 *Ormuz*. 4 *Carmania*. 5 *Gedroſia*. 6 *Drangiana*. 7 *Arachoſia*. 8 *Paropamiſus*. 9 *Aria*. 10 *Parthia*. 11 *Hyrcania*. 12 *Margiana*. 13 *Bactria*. Which we will ſeverally ſurvey in the *Chorography* and ſtory, till we have joyned them all together in the *Perſian* Monarchy; and then purſue the Hiſtory as conjunct and faſhioned into the body of one Empire.

1. *SUSIANA.*

SUSIANA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Perſis*; on the Weſt, with *Babylonia*, or *Chaldæa*; on the North, with *Aſſyria*; on the South, with a branch of the River *Tigris*, and ſome part of the Gulf of *Perſia*.

It was ſo called *quaſi Cuſiana*, or the Land of the *Chuſites*, from *Chus* the eldeſt Son of *Ham*, and the Grandſon of *Noah*, by whoſe Son *Havilah* it was firſt peopled; and therefore called in Scripture the Land of *Havilah*, this being that Land of *Havilah*, which the River *Piſon* is ſaid to incompaſs, in the Book of *Geneſis*. The difference betwixt them is, that that Land of *Havilah* lay on both ſides of the River *Euphrates* (which the Country of *Suſiana* doth not) and was the Eaſtern bound of the *Iſmaelites*, *Amalekites*, and other Nations intermingled in thoſe parts of *Arabia*. For whereas *Saul* is ſaid in 1 *Sam.* 15. 7. *to have ſmitten the* Amalekites *from* Sur *to* Havilah, that is to ſay, from the *Red Sea* to the Gulf of *Perſia*, it muſt be underſtood of *Havilah* in the firſt extent; but neither of *Havilah* in the *Eaſt Indies* (ſo called from a Son of *Joctan*) or of that part of *Havilah* which lay on the Eaſt ſide of *Euphrates*, and is that *Suſiana*, in which now we are: it being no where found that *Saul* was ſo great a Traveller as to ſee the *Indies*; or of ſuch puiſſance as to force a paſſage through the Countries of the *Chaldeans* and *Babylonians*. But the name of *Havilah* being loſt, that of *Cuſiana* or *Suſiana* did ſtill remain; preſerved to this day in that of *Chuſiſtan*, by which now called.

The Country memorable in the Scriptures for *Gold*, *Bdellium*, and the *Onyx*-ſtone; which doth abundantly ſet forth the richneſs and commodities of it: *Bdellium* being a Tree (for of the other two nothing need be ſaid) about the bigneſs of an *Olive*, yielding a certain *Gum* very ſweet to ſmell to, but bitter of taſte; which in time hardneth to a *Pearl*, as *Engubinus* and *Beroaldus* have dilivered to us.

Divided anciently into many particular Regions, or at leaſt known by ſeveral names in its ſeveral quarters. For where it bordered upon *Tigris*, it was called *Melitene*; *Gabandene*, where it touched upon *Perſis*, where it confined on the *Elymæans*, it had the name of *Ciſſia*; and near the Wall or Dich called *Vallum Paſini*, it was called *Characene*. Watered beſides *Eulæus*, and *Tigris* before ſpoken of, with the Rivers *Orontes* and *Maſæus*; with that branch of the River *Tigris* which *Ptolomy* called *Baſilæus*; *Curtius*, *Paſi-Tigris*, and the Scriptures, *Piſon*.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Arucca*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, the ſame which the Scriptures call *Erech*, and one of the four which *Nimrod* built in the firſt beginning of his Empire, *Gen.* 11. Remembred by *Tibullus* for the Fountains of *Naphta* (of which the *Medians* made their Oyl ſpoken of before) a bituminous liquor, eaſily taking fire, but not eaſily quenched. Of which thus the Poet;

Ardet Areccæis *aut unda perhoſpita Campis.*

Where by *unda perhoſpita*, he meaneth that *bituminous* liquor called *Naphta*, iſſuing from the fields of *Erech*, as the learned *Salmaſius* hath obſerved in his Notes on *Solinus*. 2 *Suſa*, the *Shuſan* of the Book of *Heſter*, and *Nehemia*; honoured with the reſidence of the *Perſian* Monarchs in Winter, as *Ecbatana* in Summer. Situate on the River *Eulæus*, by the Prophet *Daniel* called *Ulai*. Built, as ſome ſay, by *Memnon* the Son of *Tithonus*, ſlain by the *Theſſalians* in the *Trojan* Wars: the Walls whereof, as *Caſſiodorus* hath reported, cemented with Gold. But howſoever, it was doubtleſs a magnificent City, and of infinite wealth: *Alexander* finding in it 50000 *Talents* of Gold uncoined, beſides Silver Wedges, and Jewels of ineſtimable value. Memorable for the great Feaſt here made by *Abaſuerus*, of 183 days continuance, for his Lords and Princes: imitated by the *Perſian Sultans* to this very day, who with a Royal Feaſt of the like continuance, do annually entertain their Nobles. Now nothing but a ruine, and perhaps not that. 3 *Elymais*, the chief City of the *Elimai*, by *Ptolomy* (unleſs his Copies be corrupted) miſtakingly called *Eldimæi*. Situate on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo, near the border of *Perſis* (the Nation of the *Elamites* or *Elymei* taking part of both Provinces.) Of great Note anciently for a ſumptuous Temple of *Diana* ſacrilegiouſly ranſacked by *Antiochus*, of which ſee 1 *Mac.* 6. 2. and of ſuch wealth, by reaſon of the concourſe of *Pilgrims* thither, that *Severus Sulpitius* calleth it *Oppidum opulentiſſimum*, a moſt opulent City. 4 *Sela*, on the banks of *Eulæus* alſo; reckoned by *Ammianus* amongſt the moſt eminent of this Province: ſo named from *Selah*, the Son of *Arphaxad*, who firſt planted there. To whom the building of the City of *Suſa* is aſcribed by *Euſtathius*, in his *Hexameron*, Σελὰ δὲ ὁ Σουσανὶς, are that Authors words; perhaps more truly than to *Memnon*: and unto whom the Original of the *Coſſæi*, whom *Ptolomy* placeth in this Tract, is referred by *Euſebius*. 5 *Tarſiana*, another of the Cities mentioned by *Ammianus* (who takes notice only of the chiefeſt,) the ſame no doubt which *Ptolomy* calls *Tariana*, and joyns next to *Sela*. 6 *Agra*, upon the banks of *Tigris*, not far from *Erech*. But there is little left of theſe, but what is to be found in the ancient Writers; now hardly viſible in

their

their Ruins. The Towns of moſt note now remaining, being 7 *Jaaroone*, inhabited for the moſt part by *Jews*, of which here are no fewer than a thouſand Families; ſuppoſed to be the deſcendants of thoſe whom *Salmanaſſer* tranſplanted out of the Kingdom of *Iſrael*. 8 *Saum*. 9 *Caſa*, of which little memorable.

The firſt Inhabitants hereof were the *Chuſites* of the houſe of *Havilah*, the Son of *Chus*; an evident footſtep of whoſe name we have in the *Chavilæi*, whom *Pliny* placeth in this Tract, by other Writers called the *Chaulotæi & Chaulaſii*, as before was noted, with whom were joyned in the firſt plantings of this Country, the *Coſſæi* and the *Suſiani*, deſcended from *Sala* the Son of *Arphaxad*; and the *Elymæi*, the poſterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*. Betwixt the two laſt Nations long and frequent wars, till the Kings of *Babylon* or *Aſſyria* compoſed the differences, by making both ſubject to their Empire. After this, nothing memorable in the ſtory of it, till the tranſplanting of the *ten Tribes* into the Regions of *Aſſyria*, and the Cities of *Media*. At which time, as many of the *Iſraelites* were removed hither; ſo many of this Nation were ſent out (with others) to poſſeſs themſelves of the void places of thoſe *Tribes*. Called *Cutheans* by the *Jews*, becauſe the moſt conſiderable number of them came from this Province, called in the Scriptures *Cuſh*, by *Joſephus Cutha*; and by him reckoned for a Region of *Perſia*, as indeed it was, the time when he lived conſidered; different only in the Dialect or form of ſpeech: that Country which the *Hebrews* called *Chus*, being named *Cuth* by the *Chaldeans*; by the *Perſians*, *Chuzeſtan*: that name continuing to this day.

2. *PERSIS.*

PERSIS hath on the Eaſt, *Carmania*; on the Weſt, *Suſiana*; on the North, *Media*; and on the South, ſome part of the *Perſian* Bay, or *Sinus Perſicus*, which took name from hence. The reaſon of the name we have had before; this being the predominant Province which in fine gave both Name and Law to the reſt of this Empire. It had anciently been called *Cephene*, but now moſt commonly by the name of *Fars*, or *Pharſiſtan*; more near to *Pharas*, the old name of it, both in the *Arabick* and *Hebrew*.

Such parts hereof as lie toward the North are cold and hilly, not apt to bear either Fruit or Corn, in any plenty. Some *Emeralds* they find there, but not very clear. Thoſe parts which lie towards the *Perſian* Gulf, of as bad a nature, though of different quality; ſandy, and hot, and beareth little fruit but *Dates*, and few trees but *Palm*. But betwixt both there lyeth a rich and pleaſant Country, abounding with Corn, Fruit, and Cattel; great ſtore of Roſes, of Roſe-water conſequently: wherewith, and with thoſe skins which we call commonly by the name of *Cordovans* from another occaſion, they uſe to furniſh all the adjoyning Provinces. And to make up the *Character* of a happy Country, to which nothing wanteth, it is well ſtored with Lakes and Rivers; the chief whereof are 1 *Bagradas*, which divideth this Province from *Carmania*. 2 *Rhogomanes*, by ſome called *Araxes*, now *Binaimir*, on whoſe banks ſtood the renowned *Perſepolis*. 3 *Orontes*, dividing *Perſis* from *Suſiana*, where it falls into the Bay. 4 *Briſoana*, ending its courſe in the ſame Sea alſo.

Mountains of Note I find not any, but thoſe which part this Region from *Suſiana*. Not known by any ſpecial name (for ought I can find;) but of ſufficient Note for the difficult paſſages out of one Country into the other, called *Pylæ Perſidis*, defended by *Ariobarzanes*, a Noble *Perſian*, againſt *Alexander* the *Great*, who was here very handſomely beaten, and forced to ſave himſelf by a cloſe retreat. And though *Alexander* was ſhewed a By-path afterwards, whereby he fell on *Ariobarzanes* ere he was aware: yet he was taught by this hard Leſſon, that if thoſe who kept the ſtraits of *Cilicia*, and the banks of *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, had made like reſiſtance, he had not bought the *Perſian* Monarchy in ſo cheap a Market.

It was divided anciently into *Paraticine*, bordering on *Media*. 2 *Mardiene*, joyning on the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*. 3 *Miſdia*, lying betwixt both. Each of which, with the ſeveral Nations intermingled here as in other places, had their ſeveral Cities. The chief whereof 1 *Auſiaza*, ſeated on the Bay betwixt the mouths of *Bagradas*, and *Briſoana*. 2 *Jonacapolis*, on the ſame Bay alſo, near the influx of *Rhogomanes*, or *Araxes*. 3 *Axima*, more within the Land, now called *Lanſilla*. 4 *Marraſium*, 5 *Obroatis*, or *Orebatis*, as ſome Copies have it. 6 *Paſarracha*, in the *Greek* Text of *Ptolomy* called *Paſacgada*, and *Paſagrada* by *Qu. Curtius*. Memorable for the Sepulchre of *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch. Which violated by a Souldier of *Alexander*'s, in hope of finding ſome rich booty, he met with nothing but this modeſt Inſcription, *Cyrus ego ſum qui* Perſicum *regnum conſtitui: quicunque ades mortalium, ne mihi tantillum telluris invideas, qua corpus meum obtegitur.* The Sacrilegious Souldeir, though a *Macedonian*, put to death by *Alexander*. 7 *Perſepolis*, the chief City of this Province, and of all the Eaſt, called therefore *Regia Orientis* by *Qu. Curtius*; ſituate near the banks of the River *Araxes*, and built for the moſt part of *Cypres* wood, the walls of the houſes being made of Marble, digged out of an adjoyning Mountain. Affirmed by *Diodorus Siculus*, who at large deſcribes it, to be the richeſt and goodlieſt City in all the world. And well we may believe him for the richneſs of it, *Alexander* finding here 120000 *Talents* in ready money for his own ſhare, after the Souldiers had made what ſpoil they liſted of Coin, Plate, Bullion, Images of Gold and Silver, and Jewels of unſpeakable value. But the chief beauty of it was the Royal Palace, built on an Hill, environed with a treble Wall, the firſt of 16 Cubits height, the ſecond of thirty, and third of ſixty, all of them of black poliſhed Marble, with ſtately Battlements, and in the Circuit of the whole Palace an hundred Turrets; which gave to the beholders far and near a moſt goodly Proſpect. Nor was the inſide of leſs beauty, than the outſide of Majeſty: the Roof thereof ſhining with Ivory, Silver, Gold, and Amber; and the Kings Throne being wholly compoſed of Gold, and the richeſt Pearls. But rich and ſtately though it were, and one of the greateſt Ornaments of the Eaſtern world, it was by *Alexander* in a drunken fit conſumed with fire, at the inſtigation of *Lais* that infamous ſtrumpet; as in revenge for ſo many Cities of the *Greeks*, which the *Perſians* formerly had burnt in the *Grecians* wars. And though *Alexander* in his ſober ſenſe did repent him of it, and gave order that it ſhould be re-edified; yet did it never riſe to its former height, the Conquerour dying ſhortly after, and that purpoſe with him. So ruined in the Age of *Qu. Curtius*, (who lived in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*) that he profeſſeth *veſtigium ejus non inveniri niſi* Araxes *amnis oſtenderet*, that no footſteps of it had been found, if not ſhewn and pointed out by the River *Araxes*, on whoſe banks it ſtood. But by the fall thereof roſe 8 *Shiras*, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate in a fair large Plain hemmed about with Mountains, under one of which it is pleaſantly ſeated; in compaſs about nine miles, well built and beautified with fair Gardens and magnificent *Moſques*: two of which larger than the reſt, are made more eminent by the addition of two *Spires* or Steeples

Steeples covered with a painting of *Gold* and *Azure*; the Fabricks for the most part of *Mosaick* work, as light also by night as day, by reason of a thousand Lamps burning nightly in them. A City (as is said by a modern *Traveller*) which for *good Wine, pretty Women, pleasant Fruits, and a gallent People*, may hold comparison with the best in *Persia*. 9 *Moyown*, on the North-east of *Shiras*, delightfully situate amongst the Woods and fruitful Pastures, and blessed not only with good Wine, but wholesome Waters; of which last, few parts of *Persia* have much cause to brag. 10 *Bannaraw*, on the South-west of *Shiras* towards *Carmania*, chiefly remarkable for the ruins of an ancient Castle, situate on the top of a lofty Mountain. 11 *Goyaam*, a Town of a thousand houses. 12 *Berry*, of no great bigness, but of most esteem, by reason of a fair *Mosque*, a School for the *Arabick* Tongue, and the Sepulchre of one of their false Prophets; of which the *Persians*, besides *Mahomet*, and *Mortis-Ali*, do acknowledge many.

The first Inhabitants here were of the posterity of *Elam* the Son of *Sem*, and such who under his conduct were settled here; called from hence *Elamites* in the usual style of holy Scriptures by the *Greeks* and *Latines*, *Elymæi*: who spreading themselves into *Susiana*, and by degrees also into other Provinces, became so considerable, that the name of *Elamite* and *Elam* were of great renown: having a language to themselves distinct from that of the *Medes* and *Parthians*, as is apparent *Acts* 2. and comprehending under that appellation, the adjoyning Regions, as appears plainly in the eighth of the Prophet *Daniel*, where *Susa* is said to be in the Province of *Elam*. How the name was changed into that of *Persia*, hath been shewn before. Such as continued in this Province, divided into the Tribes of the *Mesabatæ*, *Rapsii*, *Hippophagi*, *Suzæi*, *Megorcs*, and *Stabæi*, were at first under the command of their own Princes only: amongst which *Chedorlaomer* is of greatest fame, who having the conduct of some *Adventurers* of this Nation, associated himself with *Amraphel* the Leader of some *Assyrian* Troops: and by the name of the Kings of *Elam* and *Assyria* invaded *Palestine*, subdued the City of *Sodom*, took *Lot* prisoner, and in the end were overthrown by the Forces of *Abraham*. Of no Note after this Expedition, till the time of *Perses* the Father of *Achæmenes*, who being *Provincial* Governour of these Countries under *Sardanapalus*, joyned with *Arbaces* and *Belochus* in the War against him: and by the victory, got for himself the dominion over those Estates, which he had formerly ruled for the *Assyrians*; with reference to the Kings of *Media* as the *Supreme Lords*. Whose Successors, till the time of *Cyrus*, take in order thus:

The KINGS of *PERSIS*.

1 *Persis*, from whom perhaps the name of *Persis* may be more properly derived, than either from *Perseus* the Son of *Danae*; or the Son of *Perseus* by *Andromeda*.

2 *Achæmenes*, from whom the *Persians* had the name of *Achæmenii*, and the succeeding Kings were called *Achæmenides*.

3 *Cambyses*, in some places of *Herodotus* called also *Darius*.

4 *Cyrus*, from whose second son named *Teispeus*, descended that *Darius*, the Son of *Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, who got the Kingdom on the expiration of the present Line, and the extirpation of the *Magi*; of which more hereafter.

5 *Cambyses* II. the Son of *Cyrus*.

6 *Cyrus* II. sirnamed the *Great*, son of *Cambyses*, and of *Mandane* the daughter of *Astyages* King of *Media*: who joyning with *Cyaxares*, or *Darius Medus*, overthrew the *Babylonian* Empire; and translated thereby the Supreme power to the *Medes* and *Persians*. Of which more hereafter.

3 *CARMANIA*.

CARMANIA is bounded on the East, with *Gedrosia*, and some part of *Aria*; on the West, with part of *Persis*, and the Gulf of *Persia*, from hence called also by the name of *Sinus Carmanicus*; on the North, with *Parthia*; and on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. So called from the *Carmani*, a chief people of it: but the reason of that name I find not. It is now generally called *Chyrman*; those parts of it which lie next to *Parthia*, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being now named *Mingia*, and by some *Dulcinde*.

The Country for the most part barren, and but ill inhabited. That part which *Ptolomy* calleth *Carmania Deserta*, being truly such; a Wilderness or very *Desart*, having in it neither Town nor Village, but some scattered houses, and those but ill provided of food and necessaries, full of unprofitable Sands, destitute of Water, and of a very hot and unhealthy Air. And though the other part hereof which lieth towards the Ocean, hath a Sea-coast of above 200 Leagues in length, and many Rivers emptying themselves into it, yet are they not the richer by it, the shores being full of Rocks, and the Rivers small; so that they neither have good Port, nor safe coming to it. The best Commodities hereof (besides their *Manufactures*) are *Dates*, *Myrrhe*, *Arsenic*, some few Mines of Silver, more of Brass and Iron, and good store of Alabastar. The Inhabitans hereof were anciently called *Ichthyophagi*, because they lived wholly upon *Fish*, the Country yielding little else for the life of man. *Carmani sine veste ac fruge, sine pecore ac sedibus, piscium cute se velant, carne vescuntur, præter capita toto corpore hirsuti.* The *Carmans* (saith *Pomponius Mela*) have neither fruits, nor raiment, nor house, nor cattel; but cloath themselves with the skins, and feed themselves with the flesh of Fishes; hairy, not only on their heads, but over all their bodies also. Where by the way, *Ammianus Marcellinus* must be out in his informations, who telleth us of these very *Carmans*, that their Country, though far less than that of *Arabia Felix*, and far more obscure, was as well replenished with Rivers; and for fertility of soil not inferiour to it. But we must understand the one of the best parts of *Carmania*; the other of *Desarta* only.

Amongst the Rivers which he reckoneth of greater name than the rest, he mentioneth, 1 *Saganis*. 2 *Sagareus*, and 3 *Hydriacus*. Of which *Saganis* only is named by *Ptolomy*, the other Rivers, or the same under divers names, being 1 *Dara*. 2 *Andanius*. 3 *Catbrarpis*. 4 *Achindana*. 5 *Salarus*, (the *Sagareus*, as I take it of *Ammianus*.) 6 *Caudriaces*. 7 *Zoramba*. And 8 *Samidace*, most of them falling into the Gulf of *Persia*, few Navigable, or of any use in the way of Trading.

Mountains of most Note, 1 that called *Semiramis*, from some exploit of that great Lady. 2 *Strongilus*, so named from the roundness of it; and 3 a continued ridge of Hills, dividing this Country from *Gedrosia*.

Places of most observation it it, 1 *Cantharis*. 2 *Agris*. 3 *Tisa*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the names of Cities. 4 *Cyrza*, and 5 *Gocharta*, two Port-Towns. 6 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of that great Conquerour, who here or hereabouts kept his *Bacchanalia*, whereof more anon.

anon. 7 *Portoſpana*, by *Ammianus* called *Ortoſpana*, and by him reckoned amongſt the faireſt and richeſt of all the Country. 8 *Armuza*, (or *Armuzium* as *Pliny* calleth it,) on the ſhore of the Gulf, giving name to a Promontory near adjoyning, and to the noble Iſle of *Ormus*, of which more anon. 9 *Gunbroone*, not long ſince a poor Village; but ſince the fall of *Ormus* (from which not above nine miles diſtant) grown a populous Town, conſiſting at the leaſt of a thouſand houſes. 10 *Jaſques*, at the opening of the *Perſian* Gulf into which it looketh, whence the Promontory of it, called *Carpella*, is of late named *Capo di Jaſques*. 11 *Carmania*, the *Metropolis* or mother City of the Province, in former times of good eſteem; and now of paſſing good repute both for Cloth of Gold, and the making of the beſt *Scymitars*. A weapon (whereſoever made) of ſuch value amongſt the *Mahometans*, and ſo eſteemed of by the *Turks*, that at the overthrow of the Navy at the battel of *Corfu*, *Anno* 1574. moſt of them who were taken *Priſoners* threw their *Scymitars* into the Sea, for fear the *Chriſtians* ſhould be maſters of ſuch excellent weapons. It is now called *Chyrman*, by the name of the Province, as in former times; with very little difference from the ancient name. 12 *Lar*, more within the Land towards *Perſis*, ſeated in a barren and inhoſpirable Country, full of huge heaps of ſand, both looſe and dangerous, moved and removed as the wind ſitteth, into Plains and Mountains: without Graſs, Water, Herbs, or any other neceſſary for the uſe of Travellers; the City being ſerved with rain-water only, entertained with great joy when it falleth, and kept in Ciſterns. The City notwithſtanding large, and of good capacity, containing not long ſince to the number of 5000 houſes: of which the greateſt part, in the year 1590. were thrown down by an Earthquake: now moſt remarkable for a fair Market-place of about 180 paces ſquare; a goodly *Moſque*, adorned with *Moſaick* work, and a ſtrong Caſtle ſeated on the top of an hill, furniſhed with great plenty of Ordnance brought hither from *Ormuz*. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, or the head City of a Kingdom, acknowledging no ſubjection to the *Perſian Sophies*: till conquered to that Crown by *Emangoli Chawn* Duke of *Shiras*, who ſent hence as much treaſure as was ſaid to load 700 Camels; and put to death the poor King with his whole Poſterity, *Anno* 1604. or thereabouts. 13 *Tecoa*, or *Pea-chow*, a Town of the juriſdiction of *Lar*, not far from which is a huge Wall cut out of the ſolid Rock by incredible labour, which ſerved formerly both for the boundary and defence of that ſandy Kingdom againſt the *Perſians*.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof, were the Poſterity of *Sabta*, the Son of *Chus*, who wanting room on the Coaſt of *Arabia Felix*, where they were firſt planted, paſſed over into *Sophta* (from them ſo named) an Iſland of the *Perſian Gulf*, and afterwards into the main Land of *Carmania*, where they built and gave name unto the City of *Sabis*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. Divided in ſome tract of time into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sazotæ*, *Aræ*, *Charadræ*, *Chelonophagi*, *Cabadinæ*, and *Paſagardæ*.

Neither the People nor the Country memorable in the way of ſtory; but by Accident only: it being here that *Alexander* being returned out of *India*, kept his *Bacchanalia*, in imitation of *Bacchus*, who firſt conquered that Nation. Night and day he was continually feaſting with his friends, on a Scaffold drawn with eight horſes; his Companions following in their Chariots: ſome adorned with Purple and Silk; others with Flowers and green Boughs; themſelves wearing Garlands on their heads, and carrying their carowſing Cups in their hands. In this Army there was neither Helmet, Sword, Arrow, or Buckler ſeen: all their Armour, was Cups, Barrels, and Flagons; their Skirmiſhing, Eating, Drinking, Laughing, and Singing. Attended they were by Minſtrels, playing on their Flutes; by Women dancing, Boyes ſhouting, all playing the drunken fools moſt naturally. Thus march they through the Country of *Carmania*, in as great diſſoluteneſs as if *BACCHUS* himſelf had indeed been there, and led the Mummery; and for ſeven whole days this ſottiſhneſs continued. So that *Curtius* well obſerveth, *Si quid victis ſaltem adverſus comeſſantes animi fuiſſet, mille hercule viri, modò & ſobrii, ſeptem dierum crapulâ graves in ſuo triumpho capere potuerunt*: a thouſand *Perſians*, ſober and well provided, had their hearts been anſwerable to ſo good an opportunity, might have deſtroyed this drunken Army, and redeemed at once the honour of their Country, and their own liberty.

4. *ORMUZ.*

ORMUZ, not ſo much memorable for the greatneſs, as the wealth, and the conveniency of the ſituation of it, is an Iſland ſituate in the entrance of the *Perſian* Gulf: commanding not long ſince, over ſome part of the Continent of *Carmania*, and ſome few Towns of *Arabia Felix*, and moſt of the Iſlands of the Bay. And therfore before we come to ſpeak of the Iſle it ſelf, we muſt take a brief ſurvey of the Sea or Bay called *Sinus Perſicus*, according to our method in other places.

SINUS PERSICUS, the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, ſo famous, ſo full of Iſlands, and ſo much frequented (I uſe the words of *Ammianus Marcellinus*) beginneth at *Harmozonta*, (the ſame which *Ptolomy* calls *Armuza*) a Cape or Promontory of *Carmania*: from which unto a Cape or Foreland of *Arabia Felix*, which the Inhabitants call *Maces*, the paſſage is ſo ſtrait and narrow, that one may very eaſily ſee to the oppoſite ſhore. The Strait once paſſed, the Bay beginneth to open and enlarge it ſelf, as far as the City of *Teredon* (now called *Balſora*) where *Euphrates* after many downfals is loſt in the Sea. The whole Gulf meaſured by the ſhores, of *Orbicular* form, in compaſs 20000 Furlongs, (or 2500 *Italian* miles) in all the Coaſts and ſides whereof the Villages and Towns ſtand exceeding thick, affording frequent paſſage to and fro for ſhipping. So far, and to this purpoſe he. To which deſcription of his, ſo exact and punctual, our late *Navigations* have not added much but the change of names: the whole Bay being now called *Mare Elkariffe*, and the entrances thereunto the Straits of *Balſora*; theſe laſt ſo called becauſe they opened the way to the Town of *Balſora*, the moſt noted Empory of thoſe parts in the times foregoing.

Chief Iſles hereof, beſides thoſe on the *Arabian* ſhore, of which we have already ſpoken, are 1 *Taxiana*, on the Coaſt of *Suſiana*. 2 *Tabiana*. 3 *Sophtha*, and 4 *Alexandria*, or the Iſle of *Alexander*, on the ſhores of *Perſis*. Of which that which is called *Sophtha*, ſeems to take name from *Sabta* the Son of *Chus*, planted upon the oppoſite ſhore of *Arabia Felix*; and therein giving name to the City of *Saphta*, which we find in *Ptolomy*: And finally joyning to *Carmania*, there are the Iſlands called, 5 *Sagdana*, the chief Town whereof was anciently named *Miltus*; and 6 *Vorochtha*, ſituate at the very mouth of the Straits, now called *ORMUS*, by the name of the Town and Promontory of *Armuza*, in *Carmania*, near adjoyning to it, and unto which it did in former times belong.

This Iſland ſituate as is ſaid at the mouth of the Gulf or Bay of *Perſia*, is in compaſs about 20 miles, ſtony, and full of Rocks, in a manner barren of all neceſſaries except

except ſalt, wherewith their very rocks are covered, and of ſalt-ſtones many houſes built. So deſtitute of all things fitting for the life of man, that the Inhabitants had all their victuals, even the very water which they drank, from ſome of the adjoyning Countries. The air ſo hot in time of Summer, that the people reſt themſelves in Caves covered over with wood, where they ſtand or ſit in water up to the chin; and have loop-holes in the tops of their houſes to let in the wind. Which notwithſtanding, in regard of the ſituation, it was of late one of the richeſt *Empories* in all the world; the wealth of *Perſia* and *Eaſt-India* being brought hither, and conveyed hence up by water to the River *Euphrates*, and ſo by Boats, or on Camels backs to *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, *Tripolis*; from whence diſperſed into all the Countries on the *Mediterranean*, and to ſome beyond.

The people hereof in their perſons, habit, and Religion, participate ſomewhat of the *Arabians*, but moſt of the *Perſians*. *Mahometans* for the moſt part, of the *Sophian Sect*: the reſt, but few in number, of the *Chriſtian*; to which converted by the preaching of Father *Gaſper*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, ſince the ſettling of that Nation there.

The chief and only City was of the ſame name with the Iſland, founded ſome ſeven hundred years ago by one *Mahomet Dranku*, deſcended from the Kings of *Saba* in *Arabia Felix*: who with many Families of the *Sabæans*, paſſed over the Straits into *Carmania*, and the Iſles adjoyning, and liking the ſituation of this Iſland, built this City in it; which he called *Ormus*, or *Armuzium*, according to the name of the Town and Promontory, upon which it lieth. The City ſeated at one end of the Iſle, about two miles in compaſs, well built, and adorned with a fair Market-place, ſome Churches, and a well fortified Caſtle furniſhed with all neceſſaries to maintain a Siege. By reaſon of its wealth and reſort of Merchants, grown to ſuch eſteem, that it gave occaſion to this *Diſtich*;

Si terrarum Orbis quaqua patet annulus eſſet,
Illius Ormuſium *gemma decuſque foret.*

That is to ſay,

Were all the World a Ring, this Iſle alone
Might of that Ring be thought to be the Stone.

It was firſt under its own King, whoſe Dominion extended alſo into ſome part of the Continent on either ſide, and over all the reſt of the Iſlands within the Gulf. His *Revenue* of no great yearly value till the coming of the *Portugals* hither, by whom it was diſcovered under the conduct of *Albukerque*, *Anno* 1506. Who having fortified ſome part of it for their own defence, and made it the Staple of their Trade for the *Indian Merchandiſe*, ſo enriched the ſame, that the *Revenues* of thoſe Kings (though *Vaſſals* and Tributaries to the *Portugals*) amounted to 140000 *Seriffs* yearly. In this flouriſhing ſtate it ſtood till the year 1622. when *Abas* the Sultan of *Perſia* having received ſome affront at the hands of the *Portugueze*; or deſirous to remove the trade of *Ormuz*, to ſome Port of his own, gave order to *Emangoli Chawn*, the Duke of *Shiras*, to lay ſiege unto it, with an Army of 15000 men. Who ſeeing no hopes of maſtering it by his Land-forces only, furniſhed himſelf with the Ships ard Cannon of ſome *Engliſh* Merchants, to whom he promiſed many things which he never performed. For being once Maſter of the City, he deſtroyed it utterly, removing the Ordnance to *Lar*, the wealth thereof to his own Treaſury of *Shiras*, the materials of the houſes to *Gombroon*, ſpoken of before: the *Portugueze* and *Chriſtian* Natives paſſing over unto *Muskahat*, in *Arabia Felix*. Since which time though the *Engliſh* Captains that ventured in it, were diſappointed of the ſpoil which they did expect; yet ſo much honour hath been given by the King of *Perſia* to the *Engliſh* Nation, that their *Agent* who reſideth at *Gombroon* takes Cuſtom of all ſtrangers which do traffick thither.

5. GEDROSIA.

GEDROSIA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Carmania*; on the Eaſt, with *Cambaia* or *Guzarat*, a Province of *India*; on the South, with the main *Indian* Ocean, on the North, with *Drangiana*, and *Arachoſia*. The reaſon of the name I find not. Now by *Mercator*, called *Geſt*; by *Caſtaldus*, *Circan*.

The Country deſolate and barren; like the worſt part of *Carmania*, much deſtitute of freſh water, and covered over with looſe ſands, dangerous to the native and ſtranger both. Some rain they have, but not ſufficient to allay the heat and drought which they ſuffer under; and yet by reaſon of that heat it affordeth in ſome places *Nard* and *Myrrhe*, with ſome other Spices. Some *Brooks* here are, or rather *Torrents*, which falling from the hills do ſomewhat qualifie the indiſpoſition of the ſoil, and make it habitable; The chief of which was called *Arbius* anciently; the chief Mountain, *Bætius*.

Towns of moſt name in it, 1 *Rhagiana*, honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of a City; and 2 a Port or Harbour called *Mulierum Portus*, or the *Haven of Women*. 3 *Arbis*, upon the banks of the River *Arbius*, preſented to us alſo by the name of a City. 4 *Muſarna*, the chief of the *Muſarnæ*, a chief Tribe of this Country. 5 *Parſis*, or rather *Eaſis*, as the *Greek* Text hath it, the Metropolis of the whole Province in the time of *Ptolomy*. 6 *Geſt*, the chief City at the preſent; but for nothing memorable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Maſarnæ*, bordering on *Arachoſia*, the *Parſiræ* towards *Carmania*, the *Rhamnæ* on the borders of *India*, and the *Orbitæ*, or *Arbiturі*, on the ſhores of the Ocean. The Country of no note in preceding times, till made famous by the follies of *Alexander*: Who finding by the hard bout which he had with *Porus*, that there was little hopes of the Conqueſt of *India*, would needs make a fruitleſs voyage to ſee the Ocean. And having ſatisfied himſelf with the ſight of that furious Element (as if his very ſeeing it had ſufficiently ſubdued it to him) landed his Army on this Coaſt. Where in his march, for want of Victuals, water, and other neceſſaries, he loſt more men in the vaſt and uncomfortable Deſarts of this Country, than in all the military ſervices he had put them to; the Army which he carried with him into *India*, amounting unto 15000 Horſe, and 120000 Foot; whereof hardly the fourth part came back to *Babylon*. So dearly did he pay for his indiſcretion.

6. DRANGIANA.

DRANGIANA hath on the South, *Gedroſia*; on the North and Weſt, bounded with *Aria*; on the Eaſt, with *Arachoſia*. So called from *Drangius*, now *Ilment*, the chief River of it; the modern name thereof being *Sigeſtan*, from *Sige*, the now principal City.

The Country very hilly, and ſo cloſed with Mountains, that the River above named is ſcarce able to force its paſſage thorow them. Of no great beauty to invite, or reward a Conquerour, yet with the reſt, brought under the great *Perſian* Monarchs; the fortunes of which Crown they have alwaies followed. So meanly planted, that *Ptolomy* findeth in it but ten Towns of name; the chief whereof, 1 *Ariaſpe*, miſtook perhaps for *Agriaſpe*; and if ſo, then the Mother-City of the *Agriaſpæ*, whom *Curtius* placeth in this Tract. 2 *Propthaſia*, by ſome of the

Ancients called *Phradag*, the Metropolis of this poor Province: much boaſted of by the old Inhabitants hereof, who had ſeen no better, (as Country-Villagers uſe to brag of the next Market-Town) and ſaid by *Ammianus* to be rich, and of high renown, the quality of the place conſidered. Still of ſome Note amongſt the Natives, by whom called *Siſtan*. 3 *Arivada*. 4 *Pharaza*, of which nothing memorable. 5 *Sige*, now of moſt credit in this Country, from hence called *Sigeſtan*. 6 *Timocani*. 7 *Mulebet*, the chief ſeat of the Kingdom of *Aladine*, or *Aleadine*, who had here a *Fools-Paradiſe* of his own, of which more anon.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Batrii*, and the *Darandæ*, from which laſt, the greateſt of the two, the Country might perhaps be called originally *Darandiana*; abbreviated to *Drandiana*, and at laſt corrupted eaſily into *Drangiana*. But I offer this only as a conjectural. They were called alſo by ſome Writers by the name of *Arabians*; and that as *Ammianus* thinks, becauſe they deſcended from that people: but I think rather from a branch of the River *Arabius*, which parteth this Country from *Gedroſia*. For I conceive the *Arabians* were too wiſe to forſake their own Country, and go ſo far, to get ſo little by the bargain. Together with the reſt of the *Perſian* Provinces, ſubdued by *Alexander*; who being in this Country, hapned on the diſcovery of the treaſon intended againſt him by *Philotas* the ſon of *Parmenio*, the moſt renowned of all his Captains. After this little memorable till theſe latter daies, when it grew famous by means of *Aladine* a ſeditious *Perſian*, Lord of the valley of *Mulebet*, ſpoken of before; who there made a *terreſtrial Paradiſe*, which he promiſed to all his *Partizans*: but the Company growing too great for the ſafety of the Kingdom, they were quickly diſperſed; and *Aladine*, with his *Fools-Paradiſe*, both taken away together, *Anno* 1262. Some attribute this fiction of *Paradiſe* to *Aladeules*, the Mountain King of *Taurus*, vanquiſhed by *Selim* the firſt. The whole ſtory is this, out of *Paulus Venetus*. *Aladine* inhabited a Valley in this Country, the entrance into which he fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle, called *Tigado*. Hither he brought all the luſty Youths, and *beautiful Maidens* of the adjoyning Provinces. The women were confined to their Chambers, the men to Priſon; where having endured much ſorrow, they were ſeverally caſt into dead ſleeps, and conveyed to the women: by whom they were entertained with all the pleaſures youth and luſt could deſire, or a ſenſual mind affect. Having enjoyed this happineſs a whole day, they were in a like ſleep conveyed to their Irons. Then would *Aladine* inform them how they had been in *Paradiſe*, and that he could ſeat them there eternally, if they durſt hazard themſelves in his quarrels. This when they had ſworn to do, they were deſtinated to the *maſſacre* of ſuch Princes as were like to prove his bad neighbours; and they accordingly did execution. But neither he, nor *Aladeules*, were the firſt who trained up their followers in the Arts of murder. One there was before either of them, whom the Writers of thoſe times call the *Old man of the Mountains*, inhabiting the Mountainous parts of *Tyre* and *Sidon*; and from thence ſending his Diſciples on the like *Temptations*, to make away the Weſtern Princes whom he ſtood in fear of, during the courſe of the *Holy Wars*. For out of his *School* came thoſe wretches who murdered the Count of *Tripolis*, being in the Church at his Devotions; and deſperately ſlew *Conrade* Marqueſs of *Montferrat*, walking openly in the Market-place at *Tyre*; and with like careleſſneſs of their own lives, dangerouſly wounded Prince *Edward* (after King of *England*) ſitting in his Tent. Theſe the *Italians* call *Aſſaſſines* (whence the word to *Aſſaſſinate*) intimating thereby a deſperate *Cut-throat*, but the reaſon of that name is not yet agreed on: miſtakingly by ſome *Latine* Writers of the darker times, called *Arſacidæ*, and their commander *Rex Arſacidarum*; as if deſcended from *Arſaces*, the founder of the *Arſacidan* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

7. *ARACHOSIA.*

ARACHOSIA hath on the Weſt, *Drangiana*; on the Eaſt, a branch of the great River *Indus*; on the South, *Gedroſia*; and *Paropamiſus*, on the North. So called from *Arachoſia* the chief City of it; but now beſt known by the name of *Cabul*, the name of the chief City at this preſent.

Of the Country I find little ſpoken, but that it is watered with a branch of the River *Indus*, or rather with ſome nameleſs River which falleth into it. By the overflowings whereof is made a Lake, which *Ammianus* calleth *Arachotoſcrene*, by *Ptolomy* called *Arachotos*; after the name of *Arachotos* the chief town of it, near to which it is.

Towns here were once thirteen, whoſe names and ſituation we find in *Ptolomy*; but little or nothing of them in other Writers. The principal 1 *Arachotos*, on the Lake ſo named, ſaid to be built by *Semiramis* in her march towards *India*, and by her to have been named *Cephene*. 2 *Alexandria*, or (for diſtinctions ſake) *Alexandria Arachoſiæ*, the work of *Alexander* the *Great*, in his like march againſt the *Indians*: built at the foot of one of the branches of Mount *Taurus* ſhooting towards the South, and peopled with a Colony of 7000 old *Macedonian* Souldiers, foreſpent with age, and with the travel of the Wars, whom he left there to inhabit it, his Army being here recruited with the Forces which had ſerved under *Parmenio*, conſiſting of 12000 *Grecians* and *Macedonians*. It is now called *Cabul*, accounted the chief City of it, and in that capacity gives the name of *Cabul* unto all the Province. 3 *Arbaca*, ſeeming by the name, to be the work of one *Arbaces*; but whether of *Arbaces* the great King of the *Medes*, I am not able to ſay. 4 *Choaſpa*, near ſome River of that name, as I conjecture; there being beſides *Choaſpes* the chief River of *Media*, another of that name alſo in *India*: and probably another hereabouts to give name ro this Town. 5 *Phoclis*. 6 *Sigara*. 7 *Dammana*, of which I find nothing but the names. 8 *Sin*, now a Town of name amongſt them, but not much obſervable.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Pargyetæ*, called alſo *Arimaſpæ*, and *Euergetæ*, a powerful Nation of themſelves, brought under the command of *Alexander* by means of *Ammenides*, ſometimes the Secretary of *Darius*, whom he made their Governour. And beſides them the *Syeri*, *Rophitæ*, and the *Eoritæ*; which three made up the main body of the *Arachoſians*, committed by *Alexander* to the Government and command of *Menon*. Following after this the fortunes of the *Perſian* Empire, they changed their Maſters as that did, till the coming of the *Tartars*. Since that time governed for the moſt part, by a King of their own, eſpecially ſince that dividing of the Kingdom of *Perſia* amongſt *Tamerlane*'s Children. Some of which held it as a diſtinct Eſtate, by the names of the Kings of *Cabul*; till growing great by the Conqueſt of ſome parts of *India*, they took unto themſelves the name of the *Great Mongul*: Now Lords not only of this Country, but of the greateſt part of *India* on this ſide of *Ganges*; of whom we ſhall ſpeak more when we are in *India*, that being the chief Seat of their Power and Empire.

8. PAROPAMISUS.

PAROPAMISUS is bounded on the South, with *Arachoſia*; on the North, with *Bactria*, from which parted by the main body of Mount *Taurus*, which is here called *Paropamiſus*, by the name of the Country: on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *India*; on the Weſt, with *Aria*. So called *quaſi Paropaneſus*, from the reſemblance which it hath to an Iſland, begirt on all ſides almoſt with Rivers: in which reſpect by *Ptolomy* called *Paropaniſus*, and not *Paropamiſus*; by which laſt name the *Latines* for the moſt part call it; ſome of them *Paropamiſſus*, with a double *ſſ*. But that name being loſt long ſince, it is now by ſome called *Dache*, by others, *Candahor*, but moſt commonly *Subleſtan*.

The Country Mountainous and hilly, here and there intermixt with Valleys: the Mountains of great height, and exceeding barren; the Valleys indifferent fruitful, but ſo over-ſhadowed with thoſe hills, that the cleareſt day in ſome places ſeems but like a twilight. The people as obſcure as their Country, ſcarce known to any of their Neighbours in the time of *Alexander*; the barbarous Nations neareſt to them eſteeming them unworthy of their acquaintance. *Agreſte hominum genus, & inter Barbaros maximè inconditum*, as it is in *Curtius*.

Rivers of moſt Note herein, 1 *Oxus*, (of which before) which riſing out of Mount *Caucaſus*, paſſeth Northwards, and after wards divideth *Bactria* from *Sogdiana*. 2 *Dargamanis*. 3 *Coacus*, both owing their original to ſome of the branches of Mount *Taurus*. Which chain of hills beginning hereabouts to draw towards their height, are towards the Weſt called *Paroetes*, where they give being to the River *Dargamanis*, before named: more Eaſtward they have the name of *Paropamiſus*; and *Caucaſus* they are properly called where they are thwarted by *Imaus*, in the very point, as it were, where *Scythia*, *India*, and the *Perſian* Territories do encounter each other. The hills in that place mounted to ſo great an height, that from the tops thereof, the Stars appear much greater than in other places; the riſing and ſetting of which are from hence eaſily diſcerned. Made memorable by the Fable of *Prometheus*, who is ſaid to have been bound here by command of *Jupiter*; on which, *Vinctum Promethea fuiſſe antiquitas tradit*, ſaith the Hiſtorian. *Prometheus* is indeed by the Poets feigned to have ſtoln fire from Heaven, and to have made a man of clay: for which preſumptuous fact, *Jupiter* bound him on the hill *Caucaſus*, where a *Vulture* continually fed on his Liver. But according either to the truth of Story, or their gheſs at leaſt, who make ſome Story the ground of every Fable, *Prometheus* being a very wiſe man, inſtructed the dead and clayie carcaſſes of others in wiſdom; and that being very deſirous to learn the nature of the Stars, (which is the fire he ſtole from Heaven) he made the higheſt part of Mount *Caucaſus* his ſtudy: where the inward care he had to accompliſh his deſire, might juſtly have been compared to a *Vulture* gnawing on his entrails; and of this opinion is St. *Auguſtine*. But far more memorable is it made for being the reſting place of the Ark of *Noah*, whereof we have already ſpoken in our General Preface.

Places of moſt conſideration in it, 1 *Naulibis*, and 2 *Ortoſpana*, both named by *Ptolomy*, and reckoned by *Ammianus* for the moſt famous of this Country. But in what their fame conſiſted I cannot find. 3 *Parſiana*, 4 *Gazaca*, 5 *Doroacana*, 6 *Bagarda*, all named by *Ptolomy*, but not elſe obſervable. 7 *Candahor*, now the *Metropolis* of the Country, a Town of great Trade, by reaſon of the ſituation of it on the borders of *India*; in that reſpect giving to the whole Country the name of *Candahor*. By which name reckoned for a Kingdom, and uſed amongſt the many titles in the *Style Imperial*. Nothing conſiderable of it in the courſe of Story, but that being once brought under by the *Perſian* Monarchs, it followed the fortune of the reſt till theſe latter times; when the *Perſians* being over-laid by the *Tartars*, it became ſubject to ſome Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, raigning in this *Province*, till brought under by the Kings of *Cabul*, of the ſame extraction. Finding thoſe Kings intent on the Conqueſt of *India*, they freed themſelves from all ſubjection to that Crown, and had Kings of their own, till the year 1600. or thereabouts; when the laſt King, unable to defend himſelf againſt *Abduxa*, King of the *Usbeques* (a *Tartarian* People, but ſubject in ſome ſort to the Crown of *Perſia*) ſurrendred his Kingdom to *Echebar* the *Great Mongul* (deſcended from the old Kings of *Cabul*) whoſe Dominions border cloſe upon it. Recovered to the *Perſian* Crown by *Mirza* the Son of *Abas*, and the Father of *Sophy* the now *Sultan*; a Prince of much gallantry, but of more misfortunes: the *Perſian Sophies*, ſince that Conqueſt, uſing the title of Kings of *Candahor* in the Regal ſtyle.

9. ARIA.

ARIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Paropamiſus*; on the Weſt, with *Parthia*; on the North, with *Margiana*; and on the South, with *Drangiana*, from which laſt parted by the Mountain *Bagoas*. A name in old times given to the Province of *Media*, eſpecially by the *Grecians*; till changed (as they ſay) into *Media*, on the coming thither of *Medea*, For ſo *Pauſanias*, amongſt others, Παρεγγυσθέντι δὲ εἰς τὴν λεγομένην τότε Ἀρείαν, τοῖς ἀνθρώποις ἔδοξε τὸ ὄνομα κεκλῆσθαι Μήδους ἀπ' αὐτῆς, *i. e.* coming into the Country then called *Aria*, ſhe cauſed it after her own name to be called *Media*. But the name of *Aria* was not loſt though it were removed; remaining proper to this Country till theſe later Ages, now changed with little alteration, into that of *Eri*.

The Country much ſubject unto heats, environed with Deſarts, Heaths, and Foreſts; yet near the Mountains which defend them from the heat of the Sun, they have ſome fruitful *Champagnes*, bearing very good fruits; and amongſt others, a ſtrong wine, and of long continuance; keeping both taſte and colour above 80 years. They have alſo here a *Drug* ſome what like to *Myrrhe*, and a kind of *Saphyr*, but not right.

Rivers of Note I meet with none but that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Arias*, by the name of the Province, making a *Lake* of the ſame name. The Fountain of which River he maketh to be in *Paropamiſus*, and the fall thereof in the ſaid *Lake*: the waters of it firſt increaſed by a nameleſs Stream, falling from the Mountains called *Seriphi*, being that part of *Taurus* which divideth this Country from *Margiana*.

Anciently it was populous and well-inhabited, containing above 30 Towns of name and note. Thoſe of moſt conſequence, 1 *Aria*, on the banks of the River *Arias*, the ſeat of the *Arii*, whom *Pliny* ſpeaketh of in this Tract: but whether they received this name from the Province, or beſtowed their own name upon it, I determine not. 2 *Bataxa*, 3 *Sotera*, 4 *Orbitana*, 5 *Sarmagana*, 6 *Artacanda*, by *Strabo* called *Artacana*, 7 *Niſibis*, mentioned both by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*. 8 *Alexandria*, bearing the name of the *Great Conqueror*, by whom planted and made a Colony of his *Macedonians*, for the better awing of the Country, which by ſome former rebellions had been troubleſome to him. But theſe, and moſt of thoſe remembred by *Ptolomy*, being grown out of knowledge; there remain now of ſpecial Note, 9 *Heri*, or *Eri*, ſeated

not far from the place of the ancient *Aria*, but much ſuperiour to it in ſtrength and greatneſs. Said by *Maginus* to be in compaſs 13 miles, and ſo plentifully ſtored with *Roſes*, that the inhabitants of the Country call it the *City of Roſes*. Naturally of a ſtrong ſituation, compaſſed about with a very good Wall, and watered with deep Channels, conveyed unto it by *Tamerlane*, that moſt puiſſant *Tartar*, by whom either founded or repaired. 10 *Saſuar*, a place of good importance, and the ſecond in eſteem next to *Heri* it ſelf.

The old Inhabitants were the *Maſdarami*, *Niſæi*, *Aſtareni*, the *Caſſirotæ*, *Obares*, *Drachamæ*, *Borgi*, *Paranti*, &c. united altogether in the name of *Arians*, by that name ſubject to the *Perſians*, and ſubdued by *Alexander*. Againſt whom when they had rebelled and were worſted by him, they were compelled to betake themſelves to the ſtrength of a Cave, ſeated upon the top of an inacceſſible Rock, and with ſmall force eaſily defended. But to *Alexander* nothing was impoſſible. For piling up a great maſs of Timber equal unto the mouth of the Cave, when the wind ſerved opportunely, he put fire unto it; and by that means ſo filled the Cave with fire and ſmoak, that ſome of them were ſtifled, ſome half-burnt, and the reſt forced to yield to the Victor's mercy. Nor was this the only action of Note during that Rebellion, though it was the greateſt. The Common-Souldiers alſo had this honour in it. *Sarlibarzanes*, a *Perſian*, whom *Alexander* had truſted with the Command of this Province, had drawn them unto this *Revolt*, and became their Head. Who to expreſs his courage in the ſight of the *Arians*, challenged the proudeſt He of the *Macedonians*, to a ſingle combate. The challenge chearfully accepted by one *Eriguis*, one of the moſt aged in the Army: and ſaying aloud, *Oſtendam quales milites* Alexander *habet*, he valiantly charged upon the Rebel, and at the ſecond *venew* ſlew him. The *Arians* after this trial of their diſabilities, remained in quiet, taking the ſame fortunes as the reſt of the *Perſians* did, in their change of Maſters. Of late, by *Mahomet Codubanda*, it was aliened for a time from the Crown of *Perſia*, and given to Sultan *Abas*, his ſecond Son; who took unto himſelf in his Fathers life-time the Title of the King of *Heri*. But coming to the Crown by the murder of his elder Brother, and the death of his Father, he united *Heri* once again to the *Regal Diadem*; but kept it as a diſtinct Title in the *Royal Style*.

10. *PARTHIA.*

PARTHIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Aria*; on the Weſt, with *Media*; on the North, with *Hyrcania*; and on the South, with that part of *Carmania*, which by *Ptolomy* and others of the Ancients, was called *Deſerta*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall ſee anon. But that name being laid aſide, it is now called *Arach*.

The Country walled as it were round with Mountains, and in moſt parts overgrown with *Woods*: by which defended from thoſe heats to which otherwiſe it would be ſubject, it produceth many things of neceſſary uſe for the life of the people; but nothing for riot and exceſs. In other places where the ſhade of the Wood is wanting, the whole Country is in a manner but a *Sandy Deſart*, dangerous to Travellers, and impaſſable even with the help of *Guides*; the ſands continually driven from one place to another, taking away all tracts of a beaten way. For which cauſe there be certain Caſiles at each three miles end, built at the Kings charge, as well for the direction as the reception of Paſſengers; and Cauſeys of many miles in length, in ſome other places, for their better travelling; the ſands of each ſide of them ſo looſe and light, that if a man ſhould fall aſide, he were loſt remedileſs.

The people anciently were very couragious and ſtout, as commonly they are in all barren Countries, and were withal of a *Scythian* extract and original. Exceeding ſpare of diet, and good reaſon for it, the Country not affording any ſuperfluities; but otherwiſe much given to pleaſures, allowing themſelves plurality of Wives and Concubines. Good Horſemen, and to that ſo uſed, that they conſulted of all buſineſs, both private and publick, when they were on horſe-back. Such lovers of the Wars, that they accompted no man happy after his deceaſe, but who died in Battel; eſteeming of all others but as fools or Cowards. Their Souldiers for the moſt part *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto their weapons, and to manage horſes: inſomuch as of 50000 Horſe which the *Parthian* King had in the field againſt *Marcus Antonius*, there were not above 800 *Free-men*. But their greateſt fame conſiſted in the handling of their *Bow* and *Arrows*, eſteemed the beſt *Archers* in the world, and not undeſervedly; having the Art of ſhooting backwards, and making their Retreat or Flight more terrible than their charge or onſet. Whence that of *Seneca*;

Terga converſi metuenda Parthi.
The *Parthians* flight
Doth moſt affright.

Which, with the manner of their fight, more copiouſly deſcribed by *Lucan* thus:

Pugna levis, bellumque fugax, turmæque fugaces,
Et melior ceſſiſſe loco quàm pellere miles.
Ilita terra dolis, nec Martem *comminus unquam*
Auſa pati virtus, ſed longè tendere nervos.

Which I find thus *Engliſhed* to my hand:

Light skirmiſh, fleeing war, and ſcattered bands,
And better Souldiers when they run away,
Than to cut off an Enemy that ſtands.
Their crafty *Gall-thraps* on the ground they lay,
Nor dares their courage come to down-right blows,
But fight beſt fartheſt off, moſt truſting to their bows.

From hence it was that *M. Craſſus*, in his expedition againſt them, being told by an *Aſtrologer*, that his enterpriſe would prove unproſperous, by reaſon of ſome *ill aſpect* which he had found in *Scorpio*; *Tuſh man* (ſaid he) *I fear not* Scorpio, *but* Sagittarius. And to theſe warlike exerciſes of Horſe and Archery, the temper of the air and ſoil gave no ſmall advantages; the dry air ſeaſoning their Bow-ſtrings, and their large fields affording them ſufficient room to train their horſes. *Cœlum enim quod ſiccum eſt, nervos intentos facit; Regio tota plana eſt, & ob eam rem equis accommodata*, as it is in *Dion*. But this is to be underſtood not of *Parthia* only, but the whole Country of *Perſia*; ſubject at that time to the power of the *Parthian* Kings. Next to theſe *Parthians*, the *Engliſh* have been looked on formerly, as the ableſt Bow-men; having gotten by their *Bow* and *Arrows* as many notable Victories over the *French*, as the *Parthians*, ever did obtain upon the *Romans*. But at this time *Archery* both here, and elſewhere, is quite laid aſide, the *Gun* ſilencing all offenſive weapons; how juſtly I determine not. The point hath been long ſince debated betwixt Sir *John Smith* and Sir *Roger Williams*; many great Wits appearing upon either ſide; and the ſum of their ſeveral Arguments drawn up together by Sir *Clement Edmunds*, in his judicious obſervations upon *Cæſar's Commentaries*, to which the Reader may repair for his ſatisfaction. All I ſhall ſay is only this, that Victories as great as any in thoſe elder dayes, have been obtained with far leſs blood-ſhed, ſince the *Gun* came up, than in any of the times before it.

The *Religion* of this People hath ſuffered under the ſame changes with the reſt of *Perſia*, but they have a Language of their own, mixt of *Mede* and *Scythian*. For which

which befides the teſtimony of humane Authors, we have the authority of Scriptures; where the *Parthians*, *Elamites*, and *Medes*, are named as Nations of a ſeveral Language, or a different *Dialect* at the leaſt, *Acts* 2.

Rivers of Note I find not any, nor any Mountains proper and peculiar to them: *Coronus*, part of the great Mountain *Taurus*, lying in common betwixt them and *Hyrcania*; as *Maſdoramus* doth betwixt them and *Aria*, and the hills called *Parchoatras*, betwixt them and the *Deſarts* of *Carmania*. So that for want of ſuch known Land-marks, the finding out of their ancient Cities would be very difficult, if any learned *Antiquary* ſhould undertake it.

The Country anciently more populous, the Towns and Villages thicker ſet, than they be at the preſent, many Cities, and 2000 Villages having been overthrown with *Earth-quakes*. In *Ptolomy* we find the names of 25 of the Cities, diſtributed into the four Provinces or *Tetrarchies* of *Camiſene* towards *Hyrcania*; *Parthiene*, bordering on *Media*; *Paracanticene*, confining on *Aria*; *Tabiene*, neighbouring *Carmania*. The principal of which, and of thoſe that are now in being, 1 *Genonia*. 2 *Charax*. 3 *Artacana*. 4 *Apamia*, which by the name ſeems to have been of the foundation of *Seleucus*. 5 *Dardamana*. 6 *Syndaga*. 7 *Paſacarta*. 8 *Hecatompyle*, the Royal City, ſo called from the number of an hundred Gates in the walls thereof, by which we may conjecture at the ancient greatneſs: the *Parthians*, which had ſeen no greater, calling it by the glorious name of *Half the World*. 9 *Hiſpaan*, commonly called *Saphan*, or *Spawhawn*, raiſed out of the ruins of *Hecatompyle*; and as that was, the Regal City for theſe parts. In compaſs about nine miles, of figure round, and ſeated in the midſt of a large and capacious Plain, beautified with many pleaſant Gardens, goodly Bathes, and handſome *Moſques*. But the greateſt glory of it lieth in the Market-place or *Median*, quadrangular in form, but the ſides unequal; cloiſtered about, and well ſtored with Merchandiſe of all ſorts, but drugs eſpecially: the Court or *Quadrangle*, ſerving for horſe-races, and other warlike exerciſes which are done on horſe-back. On the Weſt ſide a magnificent *Moſque*, built of white Marble five yards high, and the reſt above that of Brick; curiouſly interwoven with *Arabick* Poeſies. In the midſt a fair Conduit, wherewith they purifie themſelves when they go to their prayers. On another ſide the *Royal Palace*, wrought in the Front with *Antique* works; the Floors on the inſide covered with rich *Perſian* Carpets, and the Roofs chargeably emboſſed with Gold and Azure. 10 *Jelphea*, on the other ſide of the River on which *Spawhawn* is ſeated, as the Burgh of *Southwark* is to *London*; wholly inhabited (at this time) by *Armenian* Chriſtians, from hence called *Jelphelines*; who live here in great freedom, both for perſon, and conſcience, but that their *Poll-money* is taxed at an higher rate. 11 *Croom*, a right pleaſant and healthy City, well built, of large ſtreets, and ſeated on the banks of a ſmall but delightful River, iſſuing out of the *Coronian* Mountains, near to which it ſtandeth. Conſiſting at the preſent of 2000 Families, but anciently, as may be gathered from ſome ruins, of far greater compaſs. Much honoured by the *Perſians* for the Sepulchre of *Fatima*, the daughter of *Mahomet* from whom the *Sophian* Sect and Princes do derive their Pedegree. 12 *Caſham*, a rich and pleaſant City, about 60 miles from *Spawhawn*, well-built, and peopled by a number of *Artizans*; who for the making of Silks, Sattins, and Cloth of Gold, are in great eſteem. Beautified amongſt other things with a ſtately and magnificent *Caravans-Raw*, built by Sultan *Abas*, for the reception of ſtrangers, whether Merchants or other Travellers, but fit to entertain any Prince of *Aſia*. The City of no great age, the work either of *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, the *Armenian*, who got the Crown of *Perſia*, in the year 1470: or at the higheſt of *Caſſam*, the Son of *Axan*, and Grandſon of *Tangrolipix*, the firſt *Turk* here reigning; from one of which it had this name. 13 *Tawgebawt*, where the *Perſian* Kings have a houſe of pleaſure, of no great receipt; but for the coſt and ornaments of it, and the delectableneſs of the Gardens adjoyning to it, not yielding to any in this large Empire: and for *Grots*, *Eccboes*, *Labyrinths*, and the other excellencies of Art, perhaps not followed in the World; eſpecially conſidering that it ſtandeth in the middle of a ſandy Deſart.

The *Parthians* were originally a *Scythian* Nation baniſhed their own Country, and glad to plant themſelves in this barren Region; calling themſelves by the name of *Parthians*, which in their Language ſignifieth as much as *Exiles*. A people ſo obſcure and poor, either not knowing or not caring for the uſe of Money, that none of *Alexander*'s great Captains would vouchſafe to be their Governour; but let it lie as an Appendix of *Media*, to the Kings whereof it had originally been ſubject; till one *Philip*, a man of ſmall regard, took the place upon him. Falling at laſt, with the reſt of *Alexander*'s *Aſian* purchaſes, into the hands of *Seleucus*, it was governed by the Lieutenants of the *Syrian* Kings, till the time of *Seleucus Callinicus*, the fourth of that Houſe. During whoſe reign, *Arſaces* a noble *Parthian*, provoked by ſome indignities, ſlew the Governour, and took the Eſtate upon himſelf; perſwading all the reſt of the Provinces to do the like: and thrived ſo well in his deſign, that he not only gained the Kingdom of *Parthia*, but united to it all the Provinces lying on the Eaſt of *Euphrates*. Of whom and his Succeſſors more in the ſtory of *Perſia*. After this nothing ſingular which concerns this Province, but that as this *Arſaces* did recover the *Perſian* liberty from the power of the *Greeks*; ſo *Gempſas*, one of the *Sultans* of this Province alſo, redeemed (though but for a little time) this *Parthia* and the parts adjoyning, from the yoke of the *Tartars*; as ſhall be ſhewn in proſecution of the *Perſian* Hiſtory.

II. *HYRCANIA.*

HYRCANIA is bounded on the South, with *Parthia*; on the North, with the *Hyrcanian*, or *Caſpian* Sea; on the Eaſt, with *Margiana*; and on the Weſt, with *Atropatia*, or *Atropatene* (as *Ammianus* calleth it,) the North part of *Media*. Divided from *Parthia* by the interpoſition of *Coronus*, part of the main body of Mount *Taurus*. The way thorow which, ſaid by the *Perſians* to be cut out at one blow, by the *Scymitar* of *Mortis Hali*, their ſecond *Mahomet*, is not above forty yards in breadth, in the broadeſt parts of it; the hills on both ſides towring to the very clouds: With ſmall ſtrength eaſily defended againſt mighty Armies, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the Ancients called *Portæ Caſpiæ*, before deſcribed.

It took the name of *Hyrcania*, from *Hyrcana*, a large and ſpacious Foreſt betwixt it and *Scythia*; ſometimes called *Caſpia* alſo, from the *Caſpii*, a chief People of it: of whom it is reported, that when their Parents came to the age of 70 years, they uſed to ſhut them up, and ſtarve them; as being then no longer uſeful to the Commonwealth. But both thoſe names growing out of uſe, it is by *Mercator* called *Diargument*; by ſome late Travellers *Mezondrum*; by ſome others, *Corcam*.

Thoſe parts hereof which lie towards the South, are ſaid to yield abundance of Wheat, Wines, Figs, and Fruit: thoſe toward the *Caſpian* Sea, as plentiful of Graſs and Paſture. But betwixt both, nothing in a manner but con-

tinual

tinual Foreſts; and thoſe ſo intricate and thick, that it is a matter of no ſmall difficulty to find paſſage thorow them. Full, as moſt other Foreſts are in thoſe Eaſtern parts, of *Panthers*, *Leopards*, *Lions*, *Tigers*: theſe laſt of ſuch an horrible fierceneſs, that it grew into a Common Proverb uſed of cruel men, that they had ſucked an *Hyrcanian* Tiger, *Hyrcanæque admorunt ubera Tigres*, as it is in *Virgil*.

Principal Rivers of this Country, 1 *Zioberis*, ſpoken of before. 2 *Maxera*, or *Mazeras*, mentioned by *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and *Ammianus*. And 3 *Secanda*; all falling into the *Caſpian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. A Sea which had the names of *Caſpian* and *Hyrcanian*, from the *Caſpii* and *Hyrcani* bordering next unto it; now from the Town of *Bachu* in *Atropatia*, called *Mare di Bachu*. Faſhioned in an *Oval* form, the length thereof from North to South 700 miles, and 600 miles from Eaſt to Weſt. Stormy and troubleſome, by reaſon of thoſe many great Rivers which fall into it from all the Provinces adjoyning: which notwithſtanding it hath no viſible commerce with the *Ocean*, nor doth it at any time overflow its banks, finding ſome paſſage under ground to diſcharge it ſelf of thoſe vaſt ſtreams of water which are poured into it. Well traded by the *Muſcovite* Merchants, who having the command of the River *Volga* (which with 70 mouths doth open into this Sea) ſail over it, and land at *Farabant*, or ſome other of the Port-Towns, where they trade for Silks. Some Illands here are in it, but not many, or of any great Fame; but only that they ſerved the Nations which lay near it for a place of retreat, in time of the *Tartarian* tempeſt under *Tamerlane*; as the Iſles of *Venice* did to the *Italians*, at the coming of *Attila*.

Places of moſt conſideration, 1 *Hyrcania*, once the *Metropolis* of the Province, and ſo called by *Ptolomy*; ſtill extant, but of leſs eſteem, and ſtill called *Hyrcan*. 2 *Tambrace*, in old times of the greateſt ſtrength, and moſt defenſible; but taken by *Antiochus Magnus* in the War againſt *Arſaces* the *Parthian*, for the recovery of thoſe Countries then revolted from him. 3 *Adrapſa*. 4 *Maſaca*. 5 *Anaroſa*. Of which we find the names, amongſt others, in the ancient Writers. 6 *Aſharaffe*, two miles from the Sea, in a ſpacious Plain, containing about 2000 Houſes; and now of moſt reputation of all this Province, by the long Reſidence therein of *Abas*, the late *Perſian* Sultan, who built there a magnificent Palace, and another two miles off at a place called *Abaſſebant*. The furniture whereof, beſides coſtly Carpets, in Plate and Jewels, at ſuch time as Sir *Dodmore Cotton* was there Embaſſadour, is ſaid to have been valued by a knowing Merchant, at 20 millions of pounds. But I fear the Merchant had more skill in Silks than Jewels: ſuch a vaſt ſum to be expended on the furniture of one Palace only, being beyond the poſſibility of the Revenue of the *Perſian Sophies*; hardly amounting towards all charges to five millions of Crowns. 7 *Farabant*, on a navigable Arm of the *Caſpian* Sea; for beauty, wealth, and greatneſs, of moſt note in this Country. Well traded from all parts of this Inland Sea, eſpecially by the *Ruſſian* Merchants, as before is ſaid, whoſe ſhips come hither in *March*, and return in *July*; it being from hence to *Aſtrachan* but ten daies ſail. Beautified with goodly Gardens, a Royal Manſion of the Kings, and a ſpacious Market-place. 8 *Chiacoporo*, near the Sea alſo, but on the banks of a River; the water whereof is ſaid for eleven months to be freſh and ſweet, and for the twelfth month very ſalt. 9 *Barfrushdee*, twelve miles from the Sea, well furniſhed with wood and water. 10 *Oroul*, a Town of about 3000 houſes, ſeated on the North ſide of the *Taurus*, in a pleaſant and fruitful ſoil; reſorted to by the people of ſo many Nations, that ſeven Languages are there commonly ſpoken. Once larger, as appeareth by ſome ruins than it is at the preſent, by ſome conceived to be the *Nabarca* of the Ancients, honoured in thoſe times with an Oracle. 11 *Strava*, a Town of great Traffick, for raw Silks eſpecially. 12 *Meſandra*, whence the whole Province (or rather the parts adjoyning to it) hath the name of *Mezendrum*.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Caſpii*, were the *Maxeræ*, *Aſtabeni*, *Chrindi*, and the *Arſitenſes*, united in the name of *Hyrcans*, in the time of the *Perſians*; and by that name well known at the coming of *Alexander*. Againſt whom they ſo defended themſelves, by tying the boughs and twigs of their trees together, that it was impoſſible for him to come at them; till with incredible pains and labour he had cauſed their Woods to be cut down: at ſight whereof the people, who ſuppoſed the King had too much other buſineſs, and of more importance, than to put himſelf unto that trouble, did ſubmit unto him. Falling to the ſhare of *Seleucus*, they were the firſt people that were gained by *Arſaces*, and joyned with him in recovering their former liberty; though they got nothing by the bargain but the change of their *Maſter*. In all times ſince, they have been looked upon as Members of the *Perſian* Empire, till the conqueſt of it by the *Tartars*; in the diſtractions of whoſe great Empire after *Tamerlane*'s death, it fell to ſome Princes of his Houſe, who governed here under the vaſſallage and protection of the *Tartars* of *Zagathay*. Recovered not long ſince to their old obedience by Sultan *Abas*; who for the better ſettling the affairs hereof, removed the Seat Royal from *Spawhawn*, to which before he had transferred it from the City of *Casbin* to *Aſharaffe*, then a ſmall Town, now the chief of this Country.

12. *MARGIANA.*

MARGIANA is bounded on the Weſt, with *Hyrcania*; on the Eaſt, with *Bactria*; on the North, with part of *Tartary*, from which ſevered by the River *Oxus*; on the South, with *Aria*, divided from it by the Mountains. So called from the River *Margus*, which runs thorow the Country: but is now named *Tremigen*.

The Country environed with Mountains, and in moſt places of it full of ſandy Deſarts. But where it is watered with the Rivers, *Arias* and *Margus*, it is very fruitful, ſtretching it ſelf into a large and ſpacious Plain, containing in the circuit near 200 miles. The Plain once compaſſed with a Wall by *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*; more memorable for the huge ſtocks of *Vines* which are ſaid to be in it, as big in bulk as two men can fathom, and ſometimes bearing branches of Grapes two Cubits long. The more to be admired, in regard there is no other place near unto it, where the Vine will grow. And if the *Ark* reſted on the top of Mount *Caucaſus*, as it is moſt probable it did; why may not this be ſome of the remainder of that firſt *Vineyard* which was planted by *Noah*, when he deſcended from theſe Mountains, as is affirmed by the conſtant tradition of the people which inhabit here?

The people mixt of *Scythian* and *Perſian* breed, partaking of the fierceneſs of the one, and the behaviour of the other, conform unto the *Perſians* in Religion, Language, and Apparel; diſtinguiſhed from them in the colour of their *Turbants* only, which are commonly *Green*: and therefore by the *Perſians* called *Jeſelbas*, or *Green-caps*; the *Turbants* of the *Perſian* being alwaies red.

Chief Rivers of this Country are, 1 *Margus*, the peculiar River of it, which riſing out of the foot of the Mountains, and paſſing thorow the midſt of the Province, receiveth

receiveth into its Channel the River. 2 *Arias*, hastning out of *Aria*; and so together lose themselves in 3 *Oxus*, dividing the *Margians* from the *Tartars*. Out of the joynt streams of which several Rivers, is made a large Lake now called *Sabacamber*, but anciently *Palus Oxiana*, from the principal River.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Alexandria*, or *Alexandria Margianæ*, for distinction sake; one of the six Towns built by *Alexander* for defence of this Country: called afterwards *Seleucia* from *Seleucus*; next *Antiochia* from *Antiochus Soter*, King of *Syria*, by whom fortified with a very strong Wall. It is now called *Indion*, and esteemed for the chief of the Country. 2 *Jasonium*, seated on the confluence of *Margus* with a nameless River issuing from the *Seriphian* Mountains. 3 *Nigæa*, as the Printed Books of *Ptolomy* call it, but mistook for *Nissa*, or *Nysæa*. 4 *Argadina*. 5 *Rhea*, of which nothing memorable. 6 *Maran*, near to which *Ismael* the first of the *Sophian* Race, discomfited the Forces of *Saba* the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Massagetes*, and the *Parni*, taking up the mid-lands; the *Derbiccæ* bordering upon *Oxus*; and the *Tapyri*, dwelling towards the East. United by the name of *Margians*, they were subdued by the Kings of *Persia*, from whom won by *Alexander* to his Empire: who to assure himself hereof built six Cities in it, two towards the South, and four towards the East; all situate on the tops of hills, and built at such convenient nearness that they might afford succour to each other, as occasion served. After this nothing singular in the story of them; involved in the same fortunes with the rest of *Persia*, till *Persia* was conquered by the *Tartars*. Since which time, though the rest of the *Persian* Provinces were freed from the *Tartarian* yoke by *Gempsus*, the Soldan of *Parthia*, and King of *Persia* for a time; yet part of this Province, and of *Bactria*, are still subject to them.

13 *BACTRIA.*

BACTRIA or *BACTRIANA* is bounded on the West, with *Margiana*; on the East and North, with the River *Oxus*, dividing it from *Sogdiana*; on the South, with *Paropamisus*, from which parted by the hills so named, and the Mountain *Caucasus*. It took this name from *Bactra*, the chief City of it; and is now called *Chorassin*, but by some named *Batter*.

The Country towards the River *Oxus*, is for the most part well manured, and affordeth plenty of Wheat, and all sorts of fruits, excepting Olives; rich Metals, and some precious Stones, as *Emeralds*, *Chrisolytes*, and *Jacinths*. Plenty of Pastures there be also, well stored with Cattel, and those of bigger bulk than in other places. But the greatest part hereof to the South and West, is nothing but a sandy Desart; and by reason that the sands are driven up and down by contrary winds, no tract or beaten way is to be discerned: insomuch as Travellers rest all day, and take their journey in the night, that they may guide themselves by the course of the Stars, as upon the Sea; not without great danger of being lost or buried, whilest alive, in that sandy Ocean.

The people heretofore a puissant and warlike Nation, not without great difficulty conquered by the *Assyrians*, nor with less by the *Persians*; alwaies in Arms, cruel, and resembling the *Scythians*, whose near neighbours they were: and (which may very well pass for their greatest vertue) *Multum à* Persarum *luxu abhorrentes*, abhorring naturally from the *Persian* Luxuries. But withal unnatural to their Parents, whom when old they cast unto their dogs, kept for that purpose, and called *Canes Sepulchrales*, or burial dogs. The women gorgeous in Apparel, and proud of Gesture, but prodigal of their bodies to their meanest slaves. The men to this day do retain their ancient stoutness; but hard beset betwixt the *Persians* and the *Tartars*, who severally pretend a dominion over them.

No Province of the *Persian* Empire hath so many Rivers. The principal of which are 1 *Artamis*, and 2 *Zariaspes*, mingling streams together, as do also 3 *Ochus*, and 4 *Orgomanes*; all four contributing their waters to the River *Oxus*. Of *Oxus*, being rather a bondary betwixt the *Persian* and the *Tartar*, than rightly proper unto either, we have spoken already.

Towns of most observation in it, 1 *Bactria*, the *Metropolis*, or the chief City of it, situate at the foot of the Mountain *Sogdii*, giving the name of *Bactria* unto all the Province. It is now called *Bochor*, and still keeps the dignity of the *Metropolitan*: the seat of the Chief Priest or Bishop of the *Mahometans* of *Zagathay* (to which this City, and great part of the Country also doth now belong) having here his residence, in power and reputation equal to the King himself. Well fortified, and stored with all military Provisions: the birth-place (as *Maginus* saith) in these latter Ages of *Avicenna*, that learned Philosopher and Physician; and in the first Ages, of *Zoroaster* the more learned *Astrologer*. 2 *Eubusmi*, once the Regal seat, and therefore honoured by *Ptolomy* with the name of *Regia*. 3 *Zarispe*, or *Charispe*, the chief City of the *Charispæ*, a great Tribe of this Country. 4 *Charracharta*, mentioned by *Ptolomy* and *Ammianus*: these two, upon the River *Oxus*. 5 *Eucratidia*, built or repaired by the *Macedonians*; as the name, being meerly *Greek*, doth seem to imitate. 6 *Alicodra*, as ancient as the rest, but of no great note in the course of business. 7 *Itigias*, of a later date, but of greater beauty than any of those before spoken of: superiour to *Bochor* in Elegancy, State, and Greatness, though not in Dignity; and held by some to be the pleasantest of the East.

This Country was as soon peopled as any since the general *Deluge*. It had not else been possible that *Zoroaster*, King hereof in the time of *Ninus*, and by him assaulted, should bring into the field an Army of 400000 men of this, and perhaps some other of the neighbouring Provinces, as most credible Writers say he did. Encountring *Ninus*, with this Army he prevailed at first, and slew of the *Assyrians* near an hundred thousand. But *Ninus* having better opportunities of recruiting his Forces, invaded him a second time with an Army of 1700000 Foot, and 20000 Horse (the greatest on record in all Ages since that time, except that of *Semiramis*:) with which he overcame *Zoroaster*, slew him in the field, and united *Bactria* to his Empire. Unto this *Zoroaster* is ascribed the invention of *Astronomy*, but on no good ground; that Art or Science being studied before the flood, (if *Seth*'s Pillars, mentioned by *Josephus*, be of any credit:) and therefore probably no otherwise to be ascribed to *Zoroaster*, than as to the *Reviver* of it; or because he first committed that unto writing, which he had received by *tradition*; or because he brought those confused notions which he had received from others, into rule and method. He being slain, and *Bactria* his chief City taken by the wit of *Semiramis*, then the wife of *Menon* (but on the merit of that service made the wife of *Ninus*) the *Bactrians* became subject unto the *Assyrian* Kings, after to the Monarchs of the *Medes* and *Persians*. In the expiring of which great Monarchy, *Bessus* a false and cruel Traitor, did command this Province: and having villainously slain *Darius*, his Lord and Master, assumed unto himself the title of King of *Persia*, under the name of *Artaxerxes*. But being betraied by *Spitamenes*, one of his

Confederates,

Confederates, by him delivered unto *Alexander*, and by *Alexander* put to a cruel death: the *Bactrians* became subject to the *Macedonians*, and in that right unto *Seleucus* and the Kings of *Syria*. But long it held not in that State; one *Theodatus*, who formerly had the government of it for the *Syrian* Kings, taking unto himself the title of King, and the possession of the Country, about the same time that *Arsaces* and the *Parthians* made the like revolt. Wrested from his posterity by one *Euthydemus*, the recovery of it was attempted by *Antiochus Magnus*: and the whole cause put to the trial of a battel. In which, though *Antiochus* had the better, and shewed more personal valour in it than any time after: yet he was glad to come to a composition, and left to *Euthydemus*, both the Crown and the Country. Made not long after an accession to the *Parthian* Kingdom, it continued part thereof whilest that Kingdom stood; and in the time of *Ptolomy* (as long time before) had for the chief tribes or nations of it, the *Salatarae*, and *Zariaspae* towards the North; the *Camani*, or *Coamoni* (as *Pliny* calleth them) dwelling in the South, the middle parts being taken up by the *Thocari*, said to be *gens magna*; the *Scordae*, *Savadii*, *Marixae*, *Tambyzi*, *Amarispae*, and others of as little note. In the often changes and alterations of the *Persian* State, one of the last Nations which submitted to the new *Pretenders*: and at this time so nutral betwixt the *Persians*, and the *Cham* of *Tartary*, that it is not wholly under the power of either. More averse from the *Persian* Government, since the alteration of *Religion* made there by *Hysmael*, and the rest of the Sect of *Mortis Hali*: these *Bactrians* being of the old Race of *Mahometans*, which adhered to *Haumar*, *Osman*, and *Abubecher*, as the true Successors of their false Prophet; and therefore ill-affected to the *Sophian* Faction, whom they call commonly *Caphers*, or *Hereticks*, for the innovations by them made in the Law of *Mahomet*.

Thus having taken a survey of those several Provinces, which constitute the *Persian* Empire, and shewn by what means they were first united into one estate, we must next look upon the names and actions of those mighty Monarchs, who have successively, and from time to time enjoyed the Soveraignty. By what good chance *Arbaces* from a deputy or Lieutenant of *Media*, obtained the Diadem for himself, we have shewn before: and we have shewn how liberally he enfeoffed the *Vice-Roys* of the several Provinces (which in the division made betwixt him and *Belochus*, fell unto his share) in the propriety and command of those Countries, which before they held. Nothing reserved unto himself, and his Posterity, but the title only; and perhaps some acknowledgements made to them, as the Lords in chief. Nor left he less liberty to his own *Medians*, than to the rest of the Provinces; which turning to licentiousness was so hurtful to them, that they were glad at last of that wholsome severity, which *Deioces* a more Lordly King, began to exercise: who taking to himself a guard, building the Royal City of *Ecbatana*, and fortifying some other places of importance, first brought the people under the command of Law; in that regard not unfitly called by *Herodotus*, the first King of the *Medes*.

KINGS of the *MEDES*.

A. M.

3146 1 *Arbaces*, at first Governour of the *Medes*, under *Sardanapalus* the *Assyrian*; but joyning with *Belochus*, overcame his Master, and was the first Founder of the *Median* Monarchy.

3174 2 *Mandanes*, the son of *Arbaces*. 50

3224 3 *Sisarmus*. 30.

3254 4 *Medidus*, by some called *Artyras*. 25.

3279 5 *Cadicenus*, whom some call *Arbianes*. 13.

3292 6 *Deioces*, the Founder of *Ecbatana*, and the *Legislator* of the *Medes*, whom he first brought under the command of Law and a Regal Government; the former Kings having left the reins so loose on the necks of the people, that they seemed to reign by curtesie only; and had no more authority amongst their Subjects, than any of the mean Lords had upon their Vassals.

3303 7 *Phraortes*, a man of great prowess and fortune. He made all *Asia* stand in fear, and compelled the *Persians* to be his Tributaries; but was after overtopped by the *Scythians*, 22.

3331 8 *Cyaxares*, united to his Empire the *Saracens*, and the *Parthians*. The King was so overlaid by the *Scythians*, who in the reign of *Phraortes*, had broke into *Media*, that he was little better than their rent-gatherer. But having endured them for above two years he plotted their final extirpation, and committed his design to the Nobles, who willingly gave ear to it. One night they invited the chief of the *Scythians* to a banquet; where having well liquored them, and put them all to the sword, the baser sort willingly returned homewards. 40.

3371 9 *Astyages*, the Son of *Cyaxares*, who having married his daughter *Mandane*, to *Cambyses* the Tributary King of *Persia*, dreamed that she had made as much water as drowned all *Asia*: hereupon he commanded *Harpagus*, one of his Noble men, to see the Child killed; but he loathing so cruel a fact, committed the charge of executing the Kings Commandment, to *Mithridates* the King's heardsman. He preserved the life of the young Infant, to whom he gave the name of *Cyrus*, whose fortune at last lifted him up to the Kingdom of *Persia*: when abhorring his Grandfather for that intended cruelty, he both bereft him of his Kingdom, and confined him to *Hyrcania*; when he had reigned thirty five years, *A. M.* 3406.

3406 10 *Cyaxares* II. in the Scripture called *Darius Medus*, Son to *Astyages*, at the age of 52 years succeeded his Father. For *Cyrus*, pretending no quarrel to his Uncle who had never wronged him, left him the Kindom of *Media*, and took unto himself the Soveraignty of *Persia*, which before was Tributary to the *Medes*; not making any other alteration in the State of *Media*.

At this division of the *Median* Empire, as *Torniellus* in his *Annals*, (and that not improbably) is of opinion, it was also agreed on, that *Cyrus* should take the daughter and only child of *Cyaxares* to wife; that they should both joyn together, in subduing of their neighbours; that whatsoever they won, should belong to *Cyaxares*, (who was even then an old Prince) during his life; and that *Cyrus* should be his heir. In the twentieth year of their several reigns, they took *Babylon*, slew *Baltazar*, and destroyed the Empire of the *Chaldeans*. This action the Scriptures attribute wholly to *Cyaxares*, who is by them called *Darius Medus*; whereof S. *Hierom* alledgeth three reasons: 1 *Ordo ætatis*. 2 *Regni*. 3 *Propinquitatis*. 1 *Darius* was the elder. 2 The Empire of the *Medes* was more

more famous than that of the *Persians*; and 3 the Uncle ought to be preferred before the Nephew. We may add to these three, the composition above mentioned, made between these Princes, at the beginning of their Reigns on the death of *Astyages*. The *Greek* Writers attribute the Victory only to *Cyrus*, and that on three reasons also. The *Persians* desirous to magnifie *Cyrus* their own Country-man, gave him all the glory of the action; and from the *Persians* the *Greeks* had it. Secondly, *Cyrus* was only imployed in the Siege, (*Darius* then being absent) and by his valour and conduct was the Empire of the *Chaldæans* ruined. And thirdly, *Darius* lived not fully two years after this great Victory; so that before remote Nations had taken notice of the conquest, *Cyrus* was actually in the Throne. *Josephus* only in the 11 Chapter of his Book, cutteth the thred even between these two Princes; and telleth us that *Darius, with* Cyrus *his Allie, destroyed the Estate of the Babylonians.* That this *Darius Medus* of *Daniel*, is the *Cyaxares* of the *Greeks*, is more than manifest. For *Josephus* in the place above cited, telleth us. Ὃς ἦν Ἀστυάγους υἱὸς ὁ παρὰ τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἐκαλεῖτο ὄνομα *That he was* Astyages *Son and is otherwise called by the* Greeks: now ask the *Greeks* what was the name of the Son of *Astyages*, and *Xenophon* will tell you, that it was *Cyaxares*. As for the name of *Nabonidus*, which *Joseph Scaliger* in spight of reason, and the whole world of Chronologers, would thrust upon this *Darius Medus*; we have already refelled it: though we are not ignorant that *Helvicus* and *Calvisius*, two most worthy Writers, have followed him, as in all his *Canon*, so also in this particular Error. But to proceed unto the course of the *Persian* History; after the death of this *Cyaxares*, *Cyrus* succeeded in his Throne, and the Empire of the *Medes* was Incorporated into that of the *Persians*, (as it hath ever since continued) if not subject to it.

The first *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Monarchs, of the House of *Achæmenes*.

3406 1 *Cyrus*, who having vanquished *Astyages*, united to the Empire of *Persia* the whole Kingdom of *Media*; the Countries of *Armenia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia*, some part of *Arabia*, and all the Provinces possessed by the *Babylonian* and *Assyrian* Monarchs. After which Victories, he was slain by *Tomyris* a Queen of the *Scythians*, as some Writers say: others affirming, that he escaped alive (but wounded) out of the Battel, died in his own Kingdom, and was buried at *Pasagarda*, a Town of *Persis*. This *Cyrus* is magnified by *Xenophon*, as *Æneas* by *Virgil*, and *Ulysses* by *Homer* 29.

3434 2 *Cambyses*, the Son of *Cyrus*, subdued *Psamniticus* King of *Ægypt*, which Country he united to his Empire. Having a mind to marry his own Sister; he was told by his Lawyers that they knew no Law which admitted such Marriages; but that there was a Law, that the *Persian* Kings might do what they listed. This King was a very bloudy Tyrant.

The *Inter-regnum* of the *Magi*.

Cambyses, at his Expedition into *Ægypt*, constituted *Patizithes*, one of the *Magi*, Vice-Roy in his absence. He hearing of the Kings death, conferred the Kingdom on his own Son *Smerdis*, making the people believe, that he was the Brother of *Cambyses*: A matter of no difficulty, considering, how retirement from the publick view, was a chief point of the *Persian* Majesty. But the Nobles either knowing the true *Smerdis* to be slain, or suspecting the overmuch retiredness of the new King, began to search out the matter. *Otanes* had a Daughter, which was one of the Kings Concubines. Her he commanded when the King took next his pleasure with her, to feel whether he had any Ears; for *Cambyses* (in I know not what humour) had cut off the Ears of this *Magus*. This commandment she obeying, found out the falshood. The *seven Princes* informed of this imposture, joyn'd together, and slew this *Pseudo-Smerdis*, in the eighth month of his Reign. This done, to avoid contention, they agreed among themselves, that the *seven Princes*, meeting on the Palace-green, should acknowledge him for King, whose Horse before the rising of the Sun first neighed. The evening before the day appointed, the Horse-keeper of *Darius* the Son of *Hystaspis*, brought his Masters Horse into the Green, together with a Mare, which the Horse then covered. In the morning the Princes met; and *Darius* his Horse knowing the place, and longing for his Mare, neighed lustily: on which the Princes presently acknowledge *Darius* for their King.

The restoring of the Kingdom.

3443 3 *Darius Hystaspis*, one of the seven *Persian* Princes, descended from *Cyrus* the fourth King of the *Persians*, thus Elected King, took *Babylon* (which had revolted) by the ingenious fetches of *Zopyrus*, and over-ran all *Asia*, and some part of *Greece*, where he was overthrown at the Battel of *Marathon*. 36.

3479 4 *Xerxes*, to revenge the overthrow at *Marathon*, attempted to subdue the *Greeks*: by whom he was overthrown in the naval Battel of *Salamis*; and that famous and honourable exploit of the *Græcians*, at *Thermopylæ* 21.

3500 5 *Artaxerxes Longimanus*, was he who sent *Esdras* to re-build the Temple of the Lord; and received *Themistocles*, being banished from *Athens*. This also was he, as some would have it, whom the Scriptures call *Ahasuerus*, the Husband of *Hester*; though others choose rather to place that story in the time of *Xerxes*. 44.

3544 6 *Darius* II. sirnamed *Nothus*, in whose time the *Ægyptians* revolted, and chose a King of their own. 19.

3563 7 *Artaxerxes* II. from the greatness of his memory sirnamed *Mnemon*; under whom hapned that famous retreat of *Xenophon*, with an handful of his *Græcians*, through most of the Provinces of this Empire; by which they shewed the way to the *Macedonians*, how easie a Conquest they might make of that mighty Empire. 46.

3599 8 *Ochus*, a great Tyrant, but a valiant Prince, recovered *Ægypt*, subdued *Syria*, *Cyprus*, and some part of *India*, and was at last slain by *Bagoas*, one of the *Eunuchs* of his Chamber.

3625 9 *Arses*, the Son of *Ochus*, most villainously murdered by the same *Eunuch*, for fear he should revenge the death of his Father.

3629 10 *Darius* III. Governour of *Armenia*, and Cousin German of *Ochus*, before his coming to the Crown named *Codomanus*; by the means

of the said *Bagoas* made Sole Monarch of *Persia*. But being vanquished by *Alexander* the *Great* in the three Battels of *Granicus*, *Cilicia*, and *Arbela*, the Empire of the *Persians* was transferred to the *Græcians*, *A. M.* 3635.

The certain Revenues of this great Monarchy, seem to have been 14560 Talents; for so much the last *Darius* received yearly. But what the casual and extraordinary *Introdo* was, is not easie to say; though manifest it is, and demonstrable by many strong and evident reasons, that they far exceeded the *certain*. For first, the *Persian* Monarchs were Kings of 127 Provinces. Secondly, *Darius* offered to *Alexander* for the Ransom of his Mother and two daughters, 30000 Talents of Gold. Thirdly, *Alexander* found in the Treasury of *Damascus*, 2600 Talents; in that of *Susa*, 50000 Talents of Gold uncoyn'd; in that of *Pasagardis*, 60000 Talents; in that of *Ecbatana*, 26000 Talents; in that of *Persepolis*, 120000 Talents; in all 204600 Talents; besides the infinite riches of the Treasury of *Babylon*, yielded into his hands by *Bagophanes*, and other places of note, not particularly specified: An huge and most unspeakable sum! Fourthly, in that the Gold and Riches which *Alexander*, now a Conquerour, sent from *Persia* to *Macedon* and *Greece*, (besides which every Captain and common Souldier had provided and laid up for his own maintenance) loaded ten thousand Mules, and five thousand Camels.

After this overthrow of the *Persian* Monarchy, the *Persian* Nation lay obscure 535 years, *viz.* from the 3635 year of the world, to the 228 year of *CHRIST*: of which time they were 83 years under the *Syrian* Successors of *Alexander*; and 452 years under the *Arsacidan* Kings of *Parthia*. Μετὰ γὰρ Δαρεῖον, &c. as *Herodian*. "For after *Darius* had lost his Kingdom to *Alexander* "the *Macedonian*, and after the Victor himself was "dead also, the more Potent Captains Divided *Asia* "among them. But discords often arising, and the *Ma*"*cedonians* puissance, by these often broils, not small"y broken, *Arsaces*, one of the *Parthian* Nobility, per"swaded the barbarous people of the East, and among "them the *Persians*, to cast off the *Greek* yoke, and stand "for their Liberty: he himself taking upon him the "Title of King, and investing himself with a Diadem, "*A. M.* 3718. The *Persians* by this revolt got little or nothing, having indeed not changed the *Tyranny*, but the *Tyrant* only: these *Parthian* Princes Lording it with as high an insolency, as ever the old *Persian* Monarchs, or the Kings of *Syria* did before. From this *Arsaces*, all the rest of his Successors, and those too of the Family of *Artabanus*, or second Race of *Parthian* Kings, took that name upon them: as the *Roman* Emperors that of *Cæsar*, or the old *Ægyptian* Kings the name of *Pharaoh*. Their usual Style was *Rex Regum*, or *King of Kings*: and by that Style with arrogance and insolence enough, *Vologeses* thus Inscribed his Letters to *Vespasian* the *Roman* Emperor, *viz. Arsaces*, *Rex Regum*, *Flavio Vespasiano*: giving himself the Title of *King of Kings*, but the other nothing but his bare names only. To which, *Vespasian* without taking notice of the *Parthian's* pride, returned his answer to him with this Superscription, *Fl. Vespasianus Regi Regum Arsacidi*: whether with more scorn or modesty, it is hard to say. They also called themselves the Brethren of the *Sun* and *Moon*, which were the chiefest Gods they worshipped. Great Princes questionless they were, and kept the *Romans* harder to it, than all the Kings and States in the world besides: whose names and acts occur in these following Catalogues of

2. The *Arsacidan* or *Parthian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

A. M.		
3718	1	*Arsaces*, the Founder of the *Parthian* Family.
3741	2	*Mithridates*, or *Arsaces* the second, assaulted by *Antiochus Magnus* with an Army of 120000 men, but without success.
3761	3	*Pampatius*.
3773	4	*Phraartes*, the Son of *Pampatius*.
3783	5	*Mithridates* II. Brother of *Phraartes*, subdued the *Medes*, and extended his Empire to *Euphrates*.
	6	*Phraartes* II. slain in a War against the *Scythians*.
3857	7	*Artabanus*, Uncle to *Phraartes* the second.
	8	*Pacorus*, the Son of *Artabanus*.
	9	*Mithridates* III. Brother of *Pacorus*.
3903	10	*Horodes*, Brother of *Mithridates*, whom he overcame, and caused to be slain in his own sight. He also vanquished *M. Crassus*, and slew 20000 *Romans*; and because *Crassus* was reported to be wondrous covetous, he caused Molten Gold to be poured down his Throat. A miserable death, but in respect of the divine Providence, a most just Revenge upon him for his Sacriledge, in Robbing the Temple of *Hierusalem*, as he marched towards the *Parthians*. The overthrow, and the disgrace which thereby hapned to the *Romans*, was not long afterwards recompensed by *Ventidius*, one of the Lieutenants of *Mark Antony* the *Triumvir*, who slew great numbers of them in a pitched Field, and amongst others, *Pacorus* the Kings Son: the day of the Battel being the same, in which *Crassus* had before been vanquished. After this Victory, for which *Ventidius* had the honour of a *Triumph* (and the first Triumph that ever the *Romans* had held for a *Parthian* Victory) he was in a fair way to have ruined this Kingdom, to have shrewdly shaken it at the least, had not *Antony* in an envious humour called him from that service. Finally, *Horodes* was slain by his Son *Phraartes*.
	11	*Phraartes* III. a valiant Prince, but wicked and cruel, as the Murther of his own Father and many of his Brethren doth clearly evidence. Against him marched *Marcus Antonius* with a populous Army, which wanted little of an absolute overthrow; of 16 Legions, scarce six returning home in safety. This King submitted himself and Kingdom unto *Augustus*, restoring the *Roman* Enlignes, and freeing the Captives taken at the defeat of *Crassus*. The only mark of the *Parthians* Subjection, was their receiving Kings at the appointment of the Senate and Emperors of *Rome*; which also was of no long continuance.
	12	*Phraartes* IV. Son of *Phraartes* the third, whom he slew and Succeeded.
	13	*Horodes* II. Son of *Phraartes* the fourth, slain in a conspiracy.
	14	*Vonon*, substituted in the place of *Horodes*, but outed by
	15	*Tiridates*, who was also dispossessed of his life and

and Kingdom by *Artabanus*, the people flocking to him as a man of courage, and being offended with the two last Kings, because they either had received the Kingdom, or at least the Confirmation in it, from the *Roman* Emperors. Which *Artabanus*, though descended either from a Female, or some of the Collateral line of the former Family; yet being not direct Heir thereof, he is looked on as a Stranger to the Bloud of the *Arsacidæ* the Family of *Arsaces*, giving place to that of this *Artabanus*, of which Family we have the names of twelve Kings successively Reigning: the most considerable of them being *Chosroes*, the eighth King of this Line, from whom the Emperor *Trajan* gained *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, adding them to the *Roman* Empire. Members whereof they did continue till regained to the *Persian* Crown, by *Sapores* the ninth King of the next *Persian* Dynasty. But for those twelve Kings of this house, they are these.

The third Dynasty of the Kings of *Persia*, and the second of the *Parthian* Race.

1 *Artabanus.*
2 *Bardanes.*
3 *Goteres.*
4 *Vonones,*
5 *Vologeses.*
6 *Artabanus* II.
7 *Pacorus.*
8 *Chosroes.*
9 *Parmaspates.*
10 *Vologeses* II.
11 *Vologeses* III.
12 *Artabanus* III. the last King of this new Race of the *Parthians*, whose overthrow by the valour of *Artaxerxes* the first *Persian* King of the fourth *Dynasty*, occasioned the Translation of the Diadem to the natural *Persians*; after it had continued in two *Parthian* Families for the space of 470 years. Which Translation, as it was wrought by the unresistable power of God, who only hath the disposing of Crowns and Scepters; so in the way of second causes it may be principally referred to the Barbarous Massacre of this people, by *Antonius Caracalla* the *Roman* Emperor; Who having Negotiated a Marriage with the Daughter of this *Artabanus*, and going (as he gave it out) to solemnize the Nuptials, was met by the old King accompanied with the flower of his Nobility, and the choicest of his Souldiers, and other Subjects, in Triumphal Ornaments. Which honourable Train was no sooner come near his Army, but he commanded his Souldiers (on a Watch-word given) to put them all to the Sword, the King himself hardly escaping with his life. *Caracalla* being dead, and *Macrinus* succeeding in the Throne, the *Parthians* set upon him to Reveng that slaughter. But understanding after a long fight of three days continuance, that *Macrinus* had slain *Caracalla*, they made Peace winh him; but were so weakned and unable to hold their own, that it made the *Persians* once more think of recovering to their own Nation, the Regal power. For *Artaxerxes*, a noble and generous *Persian* (his name perhaps suggesting some high thoughts unto him) did so well husband the opportunity, that he slew *Artabanus* the last King of the *Parthians*, and once more brought the Royal Seat into *Persia*. Yet was not this so easily effected, the *Parthians* notwithstanding their former losses, maintaining another cruel fight for three days together; so difficult was it to vanquish that Nation, when their Forces were broken; impossible when they were entire. *Artaxerxes*, proud of this success, sent a peremptory Embassy to *Alexander Severus*, the then *Roman* Emperor, to have all the Provinces of *Asia*, which had formerly belonged to the *Persian* Monarchy, re-delivered to him: a matter not so easily granted as demanded. For *Severus* to suppress so insolent an Enemy, Marched towards *Persia* with an Army *Romanly* appointed; which, to find his Enemy more work, he Divided into three parts: whereof the first was to march into *Media*; the second into *Persia*, the third himself Led in the mid-way between both, to succour both, or be succoured by both, as occasion required. But his device succeeded not happily; for his two Armies being by the *Persians* broken, he with much danger and haste retired back with the third. This was a good beginning for the *Persian* Kingdom; the Establishment followed not long after: *Valerianus* the Emperor being vanquished, and taken Prisoner by *Sapores*, the second King of this Race. So that now the name of the *Persian* grew so terrible to the *Romans*, that *Constantine* the *Great* Transplanted many of the Colonies and Garrisons of the North-west part of the Empire, into the East, to keep the *Persian* from growing too far upon the *Roman* Provinces; and removed also the Seat of the Empire nigher unto them, from *Rome* to *Constantinople*. And thus having shown the beginning and Establishment, the Foundation and Building of the new Kingdom of the *Persians*, take along with you the Catalogue of their Kings, untill they once more lost the Soveraignty of their own Nation, and became Slaves again to more barbarous Masters.

The fourth *Dynasty*, or Race of the *Persian* Kings.

228 1 *Artaxerxes* 15.
243 2 *Sapores* 31.
272 3 *Ormisdates* 1.
275 4 *Vararanes* 3.
278 5 *Vararanes* II. 16.
294 6 *Vararanes* III.
294 7 *Narses* 7.
302 8 *Misdates* 7.
310 9 *Sapores* II. 70.
380 10 *Artaxerxes* II. 11.
391 11 *Sapores* III. 5.
396 12 *Vararanes* IV. 10.
406 13 *Isdigertes* 21.
427 14 *Vararanes* V. 20.
447 15 *Vararanes* VI. 17.
464 16 *Perozes* 20.
484 17 *Valens* 4.
488 18 *Cabades*, dispossessed by
499 19 *Lambases* 4.
503 20 *Cabades*, again restored.
533 21 *Cosroes Magnus* 48.
581 22 *Hormisda* 8.
589 23 *Cosroes* II. 39.
628 24 *Siroes* 1.
629 25 *Adhesir.*
26 *Sarbatus.*
27 *Barnarius.*
630 28 *Hormisda* II. the 28 and last King of the Race of *Artaxerxes*, or the fourth *Dynasty*: of whom besides the two first Kings, whose Acts are spoken of before, the most remarkable were, 1 *Vararanes* the second, in whose time *Carus* the Emperor passing over *Euphrates*, and laying Siege to *Ctesiphon*, was there slain by a Thunderbolt. 2 *Narses*, the Son of *Vararanes*, who first discomfited *Galerius*, one of the *Cæsars*, in the Empire of *Diocletian*, and totally ruined his Army: for which *Galerius* being forced to Lacquey it by the Emperor's Chariot in his Purple Robes, was so highly shamed, that to recover his credit he set upon *Narses* once again, routed him, and took Prisoners his Wives and Children.

3 *Sapores* the second, the Son of *Misdates*, who began his Reign before his Birth. For his Father dying without Issue, left his Wife with Child: which Child the *Magi* having signified by their Art to be a Male, the *Persian* Princes caused the Crown and Royal Ornaments to be set upon his Mothers belly, acknowledging him thereby for their future King. A great and puissant Prince he proved, holding continual War with *Constantine*, and his Successors, till the Death of *Valens*; and gaining from them the best parts of *Mesopotamia*: but withal a great Persecutor of the *Christians*, of whom no fewer than 20000 are said to have suffered in his time. 4 *Isdigertes*, a Prince so esteemed of by *Arcadius*, the Eastern Emperor, that he made him Protector of his Empire, during the minority of his Son *Theodosius*: which trust he Royally performed, and was a great friend unto the *Christians* in his own Dominions. 5 *Cabades*, first outed of his Kingdom by *Zamaspes*, and restored again, was the first *Persian* King who permitted the free exercise of the *Christian* Religion. He slew *Zeliobes*, a King of the *Huns*, coming to his Aid against the *Romans*, because he had before promised to assist the Emperor; and rooted the *Manichean* Sect out of his Estate. 6 *Cosroes* the Son of *Cabades*, surnamed the *Great*, a constant Enemy to the *Romans*; from whom he Conquered a great part of *Syria*, and took and sacked the City of *Antioch*. But finding the War brought home to his own door, by *Mauritius*, who was afterwards Emperor, and his own Countries in a flame, he took such thought of it, that he died of a Fevor. 7 *Cosroes* the second, as great an Enemy to the Emperor *Heraclius*; from whom he took all that was left of *Mesopotamia*, *Syria*, and the *Holy Land*, with the City of *Hierusalem* it self; most of it recover'd by *Heraclius*: in despight of whom he caused all the *Christians* in his Kingdom to turn *Nestorians*. 8 *Hormisda* the second, the last of the *Dynasty*, who being first weakned by Civil and Domestick dissentions, was vanquished by *Haumar* and his *Saracens*, *Anno* 634. burying so the glory of this renowned Nation in the grave of oblivion, or at least subjection.

The *Saracenical Caliphs*, having added this Kingdom to their huge Empire, appointed here their Deputies, whom they honoured with the name of *Sultans*; not one Supreme for the whole Kingdom, but several Governours or *Sultans* for each several Province: called by new names, and moulded into many *Toparchies* as *Chorazan*, *Mozenabar*, *Usbeck*, and I wot not what; the *Sultans* acting of themselves, and warring upon one another, as their humours led them, without relation to the *Caliph*, or Lord in chief. During which bustles it so hapned, that *Mahomet*, the *Sultan* of *Persia* (so called because he was the chief in Command and Power) picking a quarrel with his Neighbour the *Sultan* of *Babylon*, (*Pisasiris* he is called in some *Christian* Writers, by whom taken or mistaken for the *Caliph* himself) made War upon him. But finding him countenanced and supported by the Power of the *Caliph*, invited the *Turks*, then possessed of some part of *Armenia Major*, to come to his Aid: by whose means he overthrew the *Caliph's* Forces, and might have got the Soveraignty of *Persia* unto himself, if he had used his Victory and his Friends, with any tolerable discretion. But denying to pay these *Turks* their Wages, and send them home, he occasioned them to make head against him, under the Conduct of *Tangrolipix*, their principal Leader; to whom being once in Arms, several discontented persons of the natural *Persians*, did unite themselves. Encouraged with which additions, and being furnished with Horse and Armour, and other necessaries, by the Spoil of the Country, they give Battel to the *Sultan* himself: whom having vanquished and slain, *Tangrolipix* by the joynt consent of both Armies is made King of *Persia*, the Founder of

The fifth *Dynasty*, or the *Turkish* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1030 1 *Tangrolipix*, of whom sufficiently before.

2 *Axan*, the Son of *Tangrolipix*, by whom *Cutlu Moses*, his near Kinsman, was sent with great Forces against the *Christians*; whom he dispossessed of a great part of *Asia Minor*.

3 *Balak*, *Sultan* of *Persia*, in the beginning of the Wars in the *Holy Land*, undertaken by the Western *Christians*; against whom he is reported to have sent his Forces. Of whose Successors I find nothing till the time of

1198 3 *Cassanes*, the last King or *Sultan* of the *Turks*, vanquished in the year 1202. by the *Cham* of *Tartary*. Which makes me very apt to think, that after the Death of *Axan*, or his next Successor, the *Turks* lost the Soveraignty of *Persia*, though they kept the possession of some parts of it; the Soveraignty thereof being recovered by the *Caliphs* of *Babylon*: and that it was so held by both, till the *Tartars* dispossessed the one, and destroyed the whole Progeny of the other, as before was noted. And this I find to be the Opinion of *Benjamin Tudelensis*, a Learned *Jew*, which had Travelled most part of the East; to whose judgment herein I subscribe, as most sound and rational.

The Sixth *Dynasty*, or the *Tartarian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1260 1 *Haalon*, or *Ulab-Kubkan*, by *Occata* the great *Cham*, made King of *Persia*; exterminated the whole Race of the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*.

1266 2 *Habkakaihon*, the Son of *Haalon*.

1282 3 *Nicador Oglan*, by *Haiton* call'd *Taugador*, who made himself a *Mahometan*, and was named *Hamed*, the Brother of *Habkakaihon*.

1284 4 *Argon-Khon*, the eldest Son of *Habkakaihon*.

1292 5 *Geniotukhon*, Brother of *Argon-Khon*.

1295 6 *Badukhon*, the Uncle of the last, of which three there is little memorable.

1296 7 *Gazun*, the Son of *Argon-Khon*, who made *Casbin* his Imperial Seat.

1305 8 *Alyaptu*, who transferred the Court to *Tauris*, and is said to have been the Founder of *Sultania*, a chief City of *Media*; the Brother of *Gazun*.

1317 9 *Abusaid*, Son of *Alyaptu* the last of the Race of *Haalon*, that Raigned in *Persia*. After whose death, *Anno* 1337. (being the 736. of the *Mahometan Hegira*) the more Potent Princes of the *Tartars* seized on the several parts and Provinces of it; every one calling himself King of that part or Province, which he was possessed of. And amongst them *Gempsas* the *Sultan* or *Soldan* of *Parthia*, (though a *Persian* born) put in for a share, and made himself Master of his own Province, and some parts adjoyning: made on that ground by some of our Christian Writers (who very imperfectly have transmitted to us the affairs of this Country) the sole King of *Persia*. In this confusion it continued till the coming of *Tamerlane*, who like a furious Whirlwind, driving

driving all before him composed the differences, by getting all unto himself. But as Philosophy doth teach us, that no violent motion is of long continuance; so the course of business and the success of actions may instruct us also, that a Kingdom forced to bow under the command of a prosperous Army, is not so well assured to the Victor, but that fury of the War once past, it may return again to its former liberty, or open a more easie passage to some new Invader. And so it fared with the Conquests and Successes of *Tamerlane*, whose Issue quickly lost this Kingdom, and almost all the rest of his other Purchases: leaving but little memory of their names and actions. For partly by his own imprudence, in cantoning his Estates amongst his Children; and partly by the weakness of his Successors in the Realm of *Persia*, this Kingdom did relapse immediately to the same confusions in which he found it; having almost as many Soveraign Kings as Provinces. Most of them Homagers perhaps to the Kings of the House of *Tamerlane*, and those who afterwards Succeeded in the Title of Kings of *Persia*, of the *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Dynasty: not yet reduced unto this Crown, notwithstanding the great and prosperous successes of the *Sophian* Family. But for the Kings of the Race of *Tamerlane*, who only in their times had the honour to be called Kings of *Persia*, (and well enough content with that:) such as they were, we find them in this order following:

1405 10 *Mirza Charock*, the fourth Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in his appointment in the Realm of *Persia*.

1447 11 *Oleghbegh*, Son of *Mirza Charok*, vanquished and slain by his own Son.

1450 12 *Abdalatife*, slain not long after by his own Souldiers.

1451 13 *Abdulla*, the Son of *Oleghbegh*, and Brother of *Abdalatife*, vanquished by.

1453 14 *Abusaid* II, descended from *Moroncha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded on the death of *Abdulla*.

1461 15 *Zeuzes*, whom some call *Jooncha*, others, *Malaonchres*, discomfited and slain in battel by *Ussan-Cassanes*, *Anno* 1472. which was about 70 years from the death of *Tamerlane*.

The seventh *Dynasty* of the *Turcoman*, or the *Armenian* Race of the Kings of *Persia*.

1472 1 *Ussan-Cassanes*, by some call'd *Assymbeius*, by others more truly *Ozem-Azambec*, was the Son of *Tracheton*, one of those poor *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Princes, dispossessed by *Bajazet* the first, and restored by *Tamerlane*. Encroaching on his Neighbours, he was warned to desist by *Zeuzes* last *Persian* King; with whom encountring in a pitched Field he overcame him, and got that Kingdom by the Victory.

1478 2 *Jacub*, the second Son of *Ussan-Cassanes*, having put by his elder Brother, attained the Throne, and repulsed the *Mamalucks* out of *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*, which they had invaded. He was after Poysoned by his Wife.

1490 3 *Julaver*, a Kinsman of *Jacub's*, succeeded him in the Estate, which he held only three years, and then left it to

1493 4 *Baisinger*, a Prince of the same Bloud; who living in Adultery with the Wife of *Jacub*, had conspired his death. 2.

1495 5 *Rustan*, assaulted by *Aider*, or *Secaider*, of the *Sophian* Faction, who then began to be of power.

1498 6 *Alamat*, or *Hagaret*, the last King of this *Turcoman* or *Armenian* Race; first vanquished *Secaider* at the Battel of *Derbent*, and cut off his head: but was after overthrown and slain by *Hysmael* the Son of *Aider*, upon the quarrel and occasion which here followeth.

Mahomet the Impostor and first Emperor of the *Saracens*, by his last Will and Testament, bequeathed the succession unto that Estate, to *Hali* his near-Kinsman, and Husband of *Fatime* his Eldest Daughter. But *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Osman*, three powerful men, and the chief Commanders of the Army in the time of *Mahomet*, successively followed one another in the Supreme Dignity. After their death, *Hali* enjoyed that honour for a little while, supplanted first, and afterwards vanquished and slain by *Muhavias*, a great man of War, who succeeded in it: and to secure himself therein, slew *Hasem* or *Ossan*, the Son of *Hali*, and eleven of the Sons of that *Ossan*; the twelfth, called *Musa Ceredine*, escaping with life. From him descended lineally one *Guine*, the Lord of *Ardoville* in *Media*; who considering that there had been no *Caliph* in long time before, began to plot the Establishing of that high honour in his own Family, as the right Hiers to it. A man of so great reputation among the people, that *Tamerlane* having made a Conquest of *Persia*, thought it no dishonour to his Greatness to bestow a friendly visit on him. Dying, he left his hopes and projects to his Son, call'd *Aider*, who afterward for the Purity of Religion pretended by him, had the adjunct of *Izophy*; the word so signifying in that Language: who also proved of such esteem and power with all sorts of men, that *Ussan-Cassanes*, the first King of the *Armenian* or *Turcoman* Race, thought fit to make him Husband unto one of his Daughters. But on the contrary, *Jacub* the Son of *Ussan*, and some of his Successors, seeing him grow unto such power and estimation with the common people; and fearing what he could do, and not what he would do, endeavoured to depress him by all means that might be. Which he not able to remedy, as the Case then stood, practiced to add unto his Party under the popular pretence of reforming things that were amiss in their Religion; and grew so powerful in the end, that he gave Battel unto *Rustan* and *Alamat*, the two last Kings of the former Race. But *Alamat* having got the Victory, caused him to be slain; and delivered *Hysmael* and *Solyman* his two Sons, into the hands of *Amazar*, a chief Commander of his own, by him to be kept in perpetual Prison. But *Amazar*, a man of a more ingenious disposition, afforded them not only liberty, but also good Education: insomuch that *Hysmael Sophi*, a towardly young Gentleman, undertook Revenge for the death of his Father, which work he fulfilled, having overcom and slain King *Alamat*, and his Son *Elvan*. After this Victory, he being Crowned King, or *Shaugh* of *Persia*, altered the Form of Religion: making *Hali*, and himself the true Successors of *Mahomet*, but condemning *Abudezer*, *Haumar*, and *Osman*, with the *Turks*, as Rebels and *Schismaticks*.

Hence proceeded the bloudy Wars, which to the *Persians* loss, have hapned between them and the *Turks*: the *Persians* burning whatsoever Book or Monument they find concerning those three; and the *Turks* holding it more Meritorious to kill one *Persian*, than seventy Christians. *Surius* in his Commentaries, writing purposely of the acts of *Hysmael*, saith, that the *Jews* on some fond conceit, were perswaded that he was the *Messiah*, they had

had ſo long looked for: But it proved quite contrary, there never being Prince that more vexed and grieved them.

The eighth *Dynaſty*, or *Sophian* Race of the Kings of *Perſia*.

1505 1 *Hyſmael Sophi*, the Founder of this Family, overthrown by *Selimus* the firſt, in the *Calderan* Fields. 20.

1525 2 *Tamas*, the Son of *Hyſmael*, vanquiſhed by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, who took from him the Countries of *Chaldæa*, *Aſſyria*, and *Meſopotamia*, with ſome part of *Media*. 13.

1578 3 *Aider*, the ſecond Son of *Tamas*, obtained the Kingdom, impriſoning his Elder Brother; but his cruelty being much feared, he was made away by the practice of *Periancona*, his own Siſter, having only Reigned 15 days.

4 *Hyſmael* II. Eldeſt Son of *Tamas*, reſtored unto his Father's Throne; but Murdered with the privity of his Siſter alſo, who found him of too rough a nature for her to Govern; having Reigned near two years.

1579 5 *Mahomet Codabanda*, advanced unto the Throne by his Siſters Faction, (as being of a milder and more tractable nature) at his firſt entrance cauſed her to be Beheaded for the former Murders. During his time, not fully ſettled in the State, *Amurath* the third, by his Lieutenants won from him almoſt all *Armenia*, *Media*, and great part of *Georgia*. 7.

1585 6 *Abas*, the ſecond Son of *Mahomet*, having Treacherouſly practiced the death of *Mirza*, his Elder Brother, ſucceeded his Father, recovered almoſt all which the *Turks* had gained, and added the Kingdoms of *Ormus*, *Heri*, *Candahor*, and *Hyrcania*, to the Crown of *Perſia*.

7 *Sophy*, the Nephew of *Abas* by his Son *Mirza*, (whoſe Eyes he cauſed to be put out on a falſe ſuſpicion) at the Age of fifteen years ſucceeded: committed by his Grandfather during his Minority to the Protection of *Emangoli*, *Chawn*, or Duke of *Shiras*. A Prince, who ſince he came to Age, hath had a good hand againſt the *Turks*, attempting the recovery of *Bagdat* and other places, which had been taken from them in time of *Abas*.

The Government of theſe *Perſian* Kings, though it be *deſpotical* and ſevere, hath a great deal leſs of the *Tyrant* in it, than any other of the *Mahometan* Kings or Princes: theſe cheriſhing their Brethren, maintaining *Nobility* amongſt them, and encouraging induſtry; which makes them to be better ſerved than the *Turk*, or *Tartar*; to both whom they are far inferiour both in power and Treaſure. Their Officers of State, and men of principal Imployment, for the moſt part, *Eunuchs* (as generally in all the Empires of the Eaſt:) ſuch perſons being thought moſt truſty, becauſe abſtracted from the obligations of Wife and Children, they ſtudy more the Princes Service than their own Advantages. Their Forces conſiſt moſt of *Horſe*, to which they are inclined more generally, than to ſerve on *Foot*; and yet the greateſt Body of Horſe which they have brought at any time into the Field, came not to above 30000; but thoſe well furniſhed and appointed, maintained on Lordſhips and Eſtates after the manner of the *Turkiſh Timariots*. The *Foot-Souldiers* of his own Countries, but poor and raw, and very ſeldom ſtand their ground; that defect being for the moſt part ſupplied by *Mercenaries*. The inconveniency of which being found by *Sultan Abas*, he ſerved himſelf of Children bought of *Chriſtian* Parents near the *Euxine* Sea (from whence the *Ægyptian Sultans* had their *Mamalucks*) whom they call by the name *Cozal-Baſſas*, or *Red-Caps*, ſo named from the Colour of their *Turbants* trained up by them in their Religion and Warlike-Diſcipline, as the *Turks* their *Janizaries*; yet far inferiour to the *Turks*, againſt whom if they have prevailed ſince the time of *Abas*, they may aſcribe the greateſt part of their good fortune to thoſe Diviſions and Rebellions, which in theſe late times have been frequent in the *Turkiſh* Empire. And as for their Sea-Forces, they are inconſiderable. For though they have large Sea-coaſt both on the *Perſian* Bay, the *Caſpian* Sea, and the Southern Ocean; yet are they very poor in Shipping: ſuffering the *Muſcovite* to ingroſs the Trade of the *Caſpian* Sea; the *Portugals*, to manage that of the Southern Ocean; as formerly that alſo of the *Perſian* Bay, till the taking of *Ormuz*.

The Revenues of this Kingdom in the time of *Hyſmael* the firſt *Sophy*, were exceeding great: inſomuch that *Tamas* his Succeſſor, to ingratiate himſelf with all ſorts of people, releaſed them of all kinds of Cuſtoms impoſed on Marchandiſe, either imported or exported. And this they ſay amounted to the ſum of 90000 *Tomans* yearly: which, reckoning every *Toman* at 20 Crowns, made up a Million and 800000 Crowns of annual income. Which notwithſtanding, his Revenue was computed at four or five Millions of Crowns yearly; raiſed out of *Demain* Lands, the *tenth* of Fruits, the profit of *Mines*, and the *Fine* pay'd by every Subject when he ſets up Shop. But *Tamas* finding this not to be ſufficient to maintain his Royalty, doubled the value of his money, and thereby for the preſent his Revenue alſo. Since that they have been much impaired by the Conqueſt made upon them by the *Turks*, who had got from them ſo much Land as maintained 40000 *Timariots*; and yielded to the Grand *Seigneur* one Million of yearly income: whether improved again or not to their former height, I am not able to determine.

And ſo much for *Perſia*.

OF

OF

TARTARY.

TARTARIA is bounded on the East, with *China*, the *Oriental* Ocean, and the Streights of *Anian* (if such Streights there be) by which parted from *America*; on the West, with *Russia*, and *Podolia*, a Province of the Realm of *Poland*; on the North, with the main *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean: and on the South, with part of *China*, from which separated by a mighty Wall, some part of *India*, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Bactria*, and *Margiana*, two *Persian* Provences; the *Caspian* Sea, which separates it from *Media*, and *Hyrcania*; the *Caucasian* Mountains interposing betwixt it and *Turcomania*; and the *Euxine*, which divideth it from *Anatolia*, and *Thrace*. So called from the *Tartars*, a puissant and mighty people now possessed hereof; the reason of whose name we shall shew hereafter.

It containeth all those great and spacious Provinces, which the Ancients called *Seres*, *Scythia extra Imaum*, *Scythia intra Imaum*, *Sacæ*, *Sogdiana*, the greatest part of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, and part of *Sarmatia Europæa*: extending it self the whole length of *Asia*, from the River *Tanais*, to the *Eastern* Ocean; taking in *Taurica Chersonesus*, and some other parts of *Europe* also. So that if we measure it by miles, it is said to contain 5400 from East to West, and 3600 from North to South: a greater quantity of ground than the *Turkish* Empire, but of less fertility and accompt.

In measuring by the Way of Degrees, it reacheth from the 50 Degree of *Longitude*, to the 195. which is 145. Degrees from West to East: and from the 40th. Degree of Northern *Latitude*, unto the 8th. which is within ten Degrees of the *Pole* it self. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the sixth *Clime*, where the longest day in Summer is 15 hours, till they cease measuring by *Climates*; the longest day in the most Northern parts hereof, being full six months; and in the Winter half of the year, the night as long.

The Country lying under such different *Meridians*, and such distant *Climes*, must needs be such, as no general *Character* can be given of it; and therefore we shall defer that with the names of the Rivers, and chief Mountains, to the discription of the several and particular Provinces. But for the people, being much of the same nature in every part, we may take the measure of them here. Affirmed to be of square Stature, broad faces, hollow eyes, thin beards, thick lips, flat noses, ugly countenances, swart of complexion, not so much by the heat of the Sun, (which keeps far enough off) as their natural sluttishness. Barbarous every where in behaviour, especially in those parts which they call *Asiatica*, and *Antiqua*: but withal very strong of body, swift of footmanship, vigilant in time of service, and patient of all extremities both of cold and hunger. The women sutable to the men, scorning or wanting Ornaments to set themselves out; or when they do, they seldom go beyond Copper, Feathers, or such precious *Gew-gaws*.

In behaviour they are rude and barbarous, as before was said; eating their *Enemies* when they take them, as in way of Revenge; first letting out their bloud, which they receive into *Cups*, and use it as Wine unto the feast. Though swift of foot, yet generally they love to ride, though it be but on Oxen; about whose necks, as about Horses, when they Travel, they use little Bells, with which *Musick* they are much delighted. Their *Speech*, even in their common talk, is a kind of *whining*, and their singing little better than the *howling* of Wolves. They eat commonly with unwashed hands, the dirt and grease about their fingers serving as a sauce for their meat, which they devour greedily, and with little chewing; and for their ordinary drink use Mares milk. Homely of habit, made of the courset stuff, and reaching no lower than the knee: and if they go to the charge of Furs, contrary to the custom of other people, they wear the hairy side outwards, and the skin next their own bodies; only to shew the richness of their Apparel. And yet so proud in this beggery that they account the *Christians* but as Dogs, contemn all the rest of the world, and think their *Cham* the only considerable Prince; by whose name they *swear*, as by their Gods.

In matter of *Religion* it is hard to say, whether *Mahometanism* or *Paganism*, be of most extent: some parts hereof being wholly *Pagan*, some wholly *Mahometan*, and some mixt of both. But of the two the *Pagan* is the better *Gentleman*, as being of the *elder* house, and of more Antiquity: the Sect of *Mahomet* not being entertained amongst them, till the year 1246.

And yet these have not so prevailed, as to extinguish the remainders of *Christianity*, of which there are amongst them many several *Churches*. The *Christian* Faith first planted amongst the *Scythians*, by the preaching of S. *Andrew*, and S. *Philip*, two of the Apostles. Overgrown in these latter Ages by the Sect of *Nestorians*, either by the diligence of their Preachers, or for want of others to instruct them in more *Orthodox* Tenets. Before the prevailing of the *Tartars*, besides the *Circassian* Christians, of whom more anon, there are in the most remote parts of *Tartary*, whole Kingdoms of that *Religion*; as namely that of *Tenduc*, then the chief of all: besides some numbers of them in *Tanguth*, *Cauchinteles*, *Cassar*, *Samarchan*, *Karthim*, *Suchair*, *Erginul*, and *Caraiam*; where in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who surveyed these parts about the year 1270. they lived intermingled with the *Pagans*. Not so diminished since the Conquest of those Countries by the *Tartars*, but that they are of a considerable number, especially in *Cathay* it self: where they are said to have a *Metropolitan* in the City of *Cambalu* (the principal City of that Empire) and he so honoured by the

Great

Great Cham, that for a time they receive their Crowns from no hands but his.

As for the *Tartars*, they are by the Chronologer *Genebrard*, said to be the off-spring of the *Ten Tribes*, whom *Salmanassar* led away Captive; and that especially for three reasons. The first is, that the word *Tatari*, by which name (saith he) they ought rather to be called, than by that of *Tartari*, signifieth in the *Syriack* and *Hebrew* Tongues, a *Remnant*. But unto this it is answered, that the name of this people is derived from the River *Tartar*, as some; or from the Region called *Tartar*, where they first dwelt, as most think: and again, that though the *Hebrew* word הרחר signifie a *Remnant*, yet can it not properly be applied to the *Tartars*; who so infinitely exceed the *Jews*, that they cannot be thought to be a remainder of them. Secondly, He alledgeth for proof hereof, that this people use *Circumcision*, the Character of the *Jewish* Nation. And hereunto it is replyed, that *Circumcision* was common to many people, besides the *Jews*, as to the *Ægyptians*, *Æthiopians*, &c. and that rather as a National Custom, than a Religious Ordinance; and again, that the *Tartars* cannot be proved to have received *Circumcision*, before they received *Mahometanism*. Thirdly, There is brought to confirm this Opinion, a place of *Esdras*, *cap.* 13. *lib.* 2. where it is said, that the Ten Tribes (that they might the better keep God's Statutes) passed over the River *Euphrates*; and after a journey of one year and a half, came into a Country called *Arsareth*. To refell which, those of the contrary Opinion find no better course, than by shewing the impossibilities of it. For the *Tartars* (when their name was first known) were meer Idolaters, had no remembrance of the Law, observed not the Sabbath, nor any other point of *Jewish* Religion: and so the Ten Tribes retired not hither to keep Gods Statutes. Secondly, *Euphrates* lyeth quite West from *Assyria*, and those places to which *Salmanassar* Transplanted the *Israelites*; and so it could not be passed over in a journey towards the North. And thirdly, It is very improbable, that the Ten Tribes should either be so simple, as to leave *Assyria*, where they were peacably settled, or so Valiant, as to force a passage through those Countries of *Scythia*, which neither *Persians*, *Greeks*, or *Romans* were able to withstand in the best of their Fortunes.

To let pass therefore all imaginations of a Forein Pedegree, the truth is, that they were no other than a Ruder and more Northern brood of *Scythians*; who pressed by want, or otherwise oppressed by the King of *Tenduc*, unto whom they were subject, Armed themselves against him, obtained a memorable Victory, and settled *Cingis* their chief Captain in the Royal Throne, *Anno* 1162. After which, growing of more power, and inlarging their Dominions further, they united in the name of *Tartars* all the *Scythian* Nations; as *Mahomet* did those of the three *Arabia's*, in the name of *Saracens*; or as in former times, the many several Tribes of the *German* Nations, were united in the names of *Franks*, or *Alemans*. Not known in *Europe* by this name, till their many great and signal Victories had made them formidable; which was about the year 1212. within very little of which time they had made themselves Masters of a larger Empire, than that of *Macedon*, or *Rome*, in their greatest glories. But being of a hasty growth, it decayed as suddenly; the greatest part of their *Europæan* purchases, being conquered from them by the Dukes of *Moscovy*, and the Kings of *Poland*, as their acquests in *Asia*, and *Africk*, by the *Turks* and *Persians*. Yet still are they possessed of so large a Territory, that were they not distracted into several States; or did those several States depend upon one *Supreme*, that one *Supreme* might very easily give Law unto all his Neighbours, and make the *Turks* and *Persians* Tributaries, as in former times. But laying aside these speculations of what they might do if united under one command, let us now look upon them as they are divided into these five parts, that is to say, 1 *Tartaria Precopensis*, 2 *Asiatica*, 3 *Antiqua*, 4 *Zagathay*, and 5 *Cathay*.

1 TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS.

TARTARIA PRECOPENSIS is bounded on the East, with the River *Tanais*, now *Don*; on the West, with the River *Borysthenes*, now call'd *Nieper*, by which last parted from *Podolia*, a Province of *Poland*; on the North, with part of *Russia*; and on the South, with some part of the *Euxine* Sea: by this accompt lying totally within *Europe*.

It had the name of *Precopensis* from *Precopia*, a chiefe Town thereof. By some called *Tartaria Minor*, to distinguish it from the greater body of that People: the Inhabitants hereof most commonly passing by the name of *Crim-Tartars*, from the Town of *Crim*, in which their *Cham* or Emperor doth reside most usually. The Country by them now possessed, part Anciently of *Sarmatia Europæa*, was Inhabited by a Warlike Nation, called the *Tauri*: from whom those parts hereof which lye betwixt the Empire of *Russia*, and the two Rivers *Tanais*, and *Borysthenes*, were call'd *Tauro-Scythia*; that which shooteth out into the Sea, encompassed with the *Euxine* on the one side, and *Palus Mœotis* on the other, being called *Taurica Chersonesus*. In the Description whereof at this place and time, as formerly I made bold with some part of *Asia*, to lay together the Estate of the *Russian* Empire: so now to satisfie for that trespass, I shall make bold with part of *Europe* to lay together the discourse and affairs of *Tartary*.

The whole Country plentiful of Fruits, and the Soil indifferently disposed to Tillage and Grazing, though more accustomed unto the last: the people more delighting in their Herds of Cattel, than in the fulness of their Garners. Camels, Horse, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats they have plenty of; great store of delicate Fowl, and abundance of Fish, bred in the large Fens of *Mœotis*: and in their Forests plenty of all sorts of Venison. Which *Character* as it belongeth generally to all the Country, so most especially to the *Chersonese*, or Demy-Island. United to the main Land with so narrow an *Isthmus*, that the *Tartars* once went about to dig it thorow; from whence some say they had the name of *Precopenses*, *Precoph* in the *Sclavonian* Tongue, signifying a deep Trench, or digging through. In Length not above 24 *German*, or 96 *Italian* Miles; in Breadth but 60 of the one, or 15 of the other. Blest with a very temperate Air, and a gentle Winter: which beginning with the last of *December*, ends the first of *March*. Never extreme; and when the frosts are at the sharpest, but of short continuance. Divided in the midst with a Chain of Hills, extended from the East to the West; the boundray of the Dominions of the *Turk* and *Tartar*.

The people of the same complexion and composition as the rest of the *Tartars*; and not much different in manners. Their Diet, Roots, Cheese, Garlick; and of the poorer sort, for the most part Horse-flesh (none but the better sort presuming upon Beef or Venison, though of both abundance) which they eat without Bread, or any thing else: and therefore when they go to the Wars, every Souldier takes two Horses with him, the one to serve upon, and the other to kill. And yet for all this havock which they make of Horse-flesh, there are few years in which they sell not 40 or 50 thousand in the Fairs of

Mosco.

Mosco. Towns they built none, scarce willing to maintain those which were built to their hands. Nor have they (except men of Trades and *Manufactures*) any standing houses; removing up and down with their Droves of Cattel, moving their houses with them, (which they build on Wheels) from one place to another. Of money they make no esteem, preferring Brass and Steel before other Metals; because more useful to them for Swords and Knives. Good Souldiers for the most part, especially at the *Bow* and *Arrows*; to which so accustomed from their child-hood, that they can shoot as readily backward as forward. Trained also of late times to the *Harquebuse*, well skilled in handling the *Turkish Scymetars*, and their Horsemens Staves. Not to be vanquished but by death, as men that are resolved rather to die than be taken *Prisoners*: and if victorious, more intent upon taking Captives (especially young Boys and Girls, whom they sell to the *Turks*) than upon any other booty or spoils of war.

The *Religion* most embraced and countenanced is that of *Mahomet*, mingled with some of their old Principles of *Christianity*: for they confess that CHRIST shall be the *Judge both of the quick and dead* in the day of Judgment; and punish those that speak irreverently of him. In that regard more favourable to the *Christians* than other *Mahometans*; which makes great store of *Grecian* and *Armenian* Christians to dwell amongst them. The Language which they speak is their own *Tartarian*, but intermixt with much of the *Arabick* and *Turkish* Tongues; and when they write, they use either *Chaldæan*, or *Arabian* Characters.

Rivers of most note in it, are 1 *Borysthenes*, and 2 *Tanais*, which though they have their spring-heads in the Empire of *Russia* (as was there declared) have their falls in this: the first in the *Euxine* Sea, in the 57th. the other into *Palus Mæotis* in the 67th. degree of *Longitude*; by which we may conjecture somewhat of the length of the Country. 3 *Hipanes*. 4 *Carcimitis*, falling into the *Euxine*. 5 *Agaris*, and 6 *Byces*, which lose themselves in the Fens of *Mæotis*; as do also 7 *Pasiascus*, 8 *Gerus*, 9 *Lycus*, from the main Land; and 10 *Istrianus* from the *Taurican Chersonese*. By the confluence of which waters, and many others falling into the *Asian* side, the Lake or Fens of *Mæotis* are of great extent, in compass at least a thousand miles; well stored with Fish, and still retaining somewhat of the sweetness of those many Rivers which are emptied into it. So called from the *Mæotæ*, who formerly inhabited on the banks hereof; and giving name to an excellent kind of Fish which were called *Mæotides* by the Ancients. At this day generally called *Mar delle Zabahe*, by the *Italians* commonly *Mar della Tana*, the Sea of *Tanais*, and sometimes also *Mer Bianco*, or the *White Sea*, to difference it from the *Euxine*, which they call the *Black*, for the reasons formerly delivered. Passing directly towards the South, it is streightned by a narrow Channel, not above four miles in breadth, though about 24. in length, called anciently by the name of *Bosphorus Cimmerius*; *Bosphorus*, because Oxen did use to swim over it; *Cimmerius* from the *Cimmerii* who possessed the adjoyning Country, on the *Asian* side: but known at this day by the name of *Stretto di Caffa*, from the City *Capha* near unto it; and by the Inhabitants, *Vospero*, more near the Original. Out of this Streight that confluence of waters which do meet in the *Mæotick* Fens, do make their way into the *Euxine*, according to that of *Lucan*;

Quaque Fretum currens Mæotidas *egerit undas.*
Where the *Mæotick* Pools at last
Thorow a narrow Streight make haste.

Chief Cities of it at the present, 1 *Capha*, or *Caffa*, in the *Chersonese*, not far from the Streight called hence *Stretto di Caffa*; a flourishing Empory, and furnished with a large and capacious Haven. Heretofore possessed by the *Genoese*, who by the benefit of this Port, and the Plantation which they had in *Perah* on the North side of *Constantinople*, engrossed into their own hands the whole Trade of the *Euxine*. Taken by *Mahomet* the *Great*, *Anno* 1475. it became subject to the *Turks*, and drew into that thraldom all the Southern parts of the *Chersonese*, which depended on it: deprived thereby of the greatest part of its former lustre, the *Christian* Churches being destroyed, the Towers and publick buildings razed; the houses of the *Genoa* Merchants which were fair and beautiful, destroyed and ruined: yet still the principal of this *Biland*, or Demy-Island; and anciently better known by the name of *Theodosia*, and by that name remembred in *Ammianus*. 2 *Precopb*, in *Latine* called *Precopia*; a Town and Castle situate in or near the place, where stood the *Eupateria* of the Ancients, called also *Pompeiopolis*, *Heraclea*, and *Achillis Cursus*. 3 *Corsunum*, the *Chersonesus* of *Ptolomy*, anciently a *Greek Colony*; and then accompted for the chief of the whole *Peninsula*: rich, populous, and well-traded, by reason of the Haven which was safe and large; and of great beauty and magnificence, as the ruins testifie. By the *Turks* at this day called *Sari-Germanum*, or the *yellow Tower*, the soyl about it being of a *Saffron* colour. 4 *German*, or *Crim*, the ancient Seat of the *Chams*, or Princes of these *Tartars*; and at that time the fairest and greatest of this *Biland*: Situate in the midst thereof, and fortified with a strong Castle, for the height of the Walls, and depth of the Ditch esteemed impregnable: supposed to be the *Taphræ* of *Pliny*, or the *Taphros* of *Ptolomy*: Mentioned by *Florus*, as then lately taken by some *Roman* Emperour, and so most likely to be *Trajan*, the first that ever extended the *Roman* Empire beyond *Danubius*, and the *Euxine*: Situate in the very *Isthmus*, and so commanding both the *Euxine*, and the Lakes of *Mæotis*; as *Corinth* betwixt the *Ægæan* and *Ionian* Seas. 5 *Panticapæum*, situate on the very *Bosphorus*, and now called *Vospero* by the Natives: the ancientest City of this *Peninsula*, and said by *Ammianus* to be the mother of all the *Greek* Colonies, which were planted in it. 9 *Tanais*, the *Tanais* of *Ptolomy* and other Ancients, because situate on the mouth of that River; or rather betwixt the two mouths of it, distant from one another a degree of *Longitude*. A Town of great Trade, and well frequented by the Merchants of all those Countries, which border on the *Euxine* Sea: but subject to the *Turks*, who have there a Garrison, and by them called *Azac*. 7 *Ingermenum*, situate on a large and lofty Mountain, and fortified with a Tower or Castle of stone; under which there is a Church, with great Charge and Art cut out of the Rock: formerly of great wealth and fame, now decayed and ruinous. 8 *Jamboli*, by some called *Belachium*. 9 *Mancopia*, by the *Turks* called *Mangutum*. 10 *Circum*; all boasting of their several Castles. 11 *Oczakow*, or *Oczacovia*, situate near the influx of the great River *Borysthenes*, into the Bay of *Carcimitis*; and so most like to be built in the place of that, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Olbiah*; *Pliny*, *Olbiopolis*: Honoured of late times (since the taking of *Taurica* by the *Turks*) with the residence of the *Great Cham*: from whence these *Tartars* are by some called *Olsanenses*. 12 *Metropolis*, as *Ptolomy*, or rather *Melitopolis*, as *Pliny* calleth it; a Colony in old times of the *Milesians*, not far from *Olbia*. Besides all which, and many others mentioned by the ancient Writers, of which there is nothing now remaining; the Court of the Great *Cham* in Summer time makes a movable City, built upon *Wheel houses*, and transported from one place to another, as occasion serveth: which houses at every

ſtation are orderly diſpoſed of into Streets, and Lanes, and by the *Tartars* are called *Agara*, or a Town of Carts.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were of *Scythian* Race; for by that name ſo elder Writers call not only the true and proper *Scythians*, lying on both ſides of *Imaus*: but even the *Sauromatæ* or *Sarmatians* alſo; and thoſe not only of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*, bordering next unto them: but even ſuch *Europæan* Nations, as lived on the Northern banks of *Iſter*, and the *Euxine* Sea. And ſo they are affirmed to be by *Ptolomy* himſelf; though otherwiſe more exact than any, in diſtinguiſhing *Sarmatia Europæa*, from *Aſiatica*; and *Aſiatica* from the *Scythians*. For ſpeaking of the Nations of *Sarmatia Europæa*, inhabiting on the *Palus Mæotis*, he ranks them thus, Καὶ πα' ὅλην τὴν πλευρὰν τῆς Μαιώτιδος, &c. *i. e.* And all along the Coaſts of *Mæotis*, dwell the *Jazyges* (diſtinct from thoſe called *Metanaſtæ*) and the *Rhoxolani*; and more within the Land, the *Himaxobii* and *Alani*, *Scythians*. More towards the banks of the *Euxine*, and in the *Cherſoneſe* it ſelf, dwell the ancient *Tauri*, ſubdivided into the ſeveral Nations of the *Sinchi*, *Napæi*, and *Arinchi*, by the ſaid *Ptolomy* included in the general name of *Tauro-Scythæ*. To none but theſe, of all the *Europæan Sarmatians* doth he give this name. And therefore I conceive them to have been thoſe *Scythians*, againſt whom *Darius* King of *Perſia* made his fruitleſs war. Picking a quarrel with this People, becauſe their King had denied to give him one of his Daughters to Wife; or to revenge, as others more probably ſay, the inrode which the *Scythians* formerly had made into *Aſia*, he drew together an Army of 700 thouſand. Paſſing over the *Thracian Boſphorus*, he came at laſt to the banks of the *Iſther*, where it parteth *Moldavia* and *Bulgaria*; and there for the paſſage of his men cauſed a Bridge to be built, to the keepers whereof he left a Cord of 60 knots commanding them every day to untie one knot; and if he came not back before all were untied, to return to their houſes. This done, he marched towards his enemies, who ſtill fled before him; leading him into the moſt deſert and unhabitable parts of their Country; and when they had brought him into a ſtreight, ſent Embaſſadours to him with a *Bird*, a *Mouſe*, a *Frog*, and an handful of *Arrows*; willing the *Perſians*, if they could, to expound that *Riddle*. *Darius*, willing to hope the beſt of his deſign, conjectured that the *Scythians* did ſubmit unto him, by delivering into his hands their *Air*, *Earth*, *Water*, and *Arms*, *Hieroglyphically* ſignified in their Preſent: But *Gobrias*, one of the *ſeven Princes*, made this Expoſition, That if the *Perſians* could not fly like a *Bird* thorow the Air, or like a *Mouſe* creep under the Earth, or like a *Frog* ſwim over the Water, they could by no means eſcape the *Scythian* Arrows. And to ſay truth, this *Commentary* beſt agreed with the *Text*. For theſe *Scythians* following cloſe upon him, or rather driving him before, and vexing him with continual skirmiſhes, forced him to make ſuch haſte to get over the River, that he loſt 80000 of his men in the fight and flight. This was the only memorable Action of theſe *Europæan Scythians* in thoſe Elder Ages: more memorable in the times ſucceeding for their horrid cruelty, than any argument of their valour. For it is ſaid of theſe *Tauri*, or *Tauro-Scythæ*, that for the pleaſing of their Gods, eſpecially of *Diana*, whom they called *Orſiloche*, they uſed to ſacrifice all ſuch ſtrangers as they could lay hands on; and with their heads moſt barbarouſly adorned the Walls of her Temples. An inhumanity with which the *Chriſtian* Advocates of the Primitive times did much uſe to upbraid the *Gentiles*; taunting them with the Sacrifices of *Diana Taurica* (ſo named from hence) as inconſiſtent with the nature of a God or goodneſs; moſt rightly giving them this brand or cenſure, that they were not *Sacra*, but *Sacrilegia*. *Et præſtat profanus eſſe quàm ſic religioſus.* Better it was to be of no Religion, than of one ſo cruel.

But to go forwards with the ſtory, In the actions of the *Greeks* and *Romans* we hear nothing of them, unleſs it were that the Emperour *Trajan* (as *Florus* ſeems to intimate) took the City of *Taphre*: Which if he did, he added by that action ſomewhat to his own honour, but nothing to the *Roman* Empire: this people being never reckoned amongſt their Provinces. Nor hear we any thing by name of their infeſting the *Roman* Territories (as the other barbarous Nations did:) except they paſſed in the account of the *Goths*, *Alani*, *Hunns*, *Avares*, or other of the *Scythian*, or *Sarmatian* People; by which the Majeſty of that Empire was trod under foot. But what the *Perſians*, *Greeks*, and *Romans* were not able to do, was with eaſe effected by the *Tartars*: who in the time of *Jocchata*, or *Hoccata*, the next to *Cingis*, under the conduct of *Bathu*, or *Roydo*, one of their moſt renowned Commanders, ſubdued all theſe parts; together with *Ruſſia* on the North, *Bulgaria*, and *Hungarie* on the Eaſt. Subject at firſt to the Command of the Great *Cham* of *Cathaia*, as the reſt of the *Tartarians* were, they came at laſt to have a Prince of their own; one *Lochtan Cham*, deſcended from the aforeſaid *Bathu*, and (as it was pretended) of the bloud of *Cingis*. They grew at laſt of ſo great power, by conquering the *Aſiatick Tartars* which lay neareſt to them, that *Mahomet* the *Great* thought fit to keep them down before grown too ſtrong for him: and therefore under colour of taking in the City of *Capha*, then poſſeſſed by the *Genoeſe*, made himſelf Maſter of the greateſt part of the *Taurican Cherſoneſe*, and the Port of *Tanais*; thereby commanding both *Mæotis* and the *Euxine* Sea. In the time of *Selimus* the firſt, who had married a Daughter of this *Crim-Tartar*, (for ſo they call him) and was aided by him with an Army of 15000 men againſt his Father, the *Turks* and theſe *Tartarians* grew into a League. The chief conditions of it were, that the *Tartar* ſhould aid the *Turk* upon all occaſions, with 60000 horſe, if it were required; that they ſhall not make war with any of their neighbours, (except the *Muſcovite*) without leave of the *Turk*; that they ſhall pay yearly to the *Grand Seigneur* in the way of Tribute 300 Chriſtians; that the new *Cham*, upon the death or depoſition of his Predeceſſor, ſhall receive from the *Great Turk* a Royal Banner, in token of his Confirmation in that eſtate; that in reward of theſe ſervices, the *Crim-Tartar* ſhall have yearly from the *Grand Seigneur* 5500 *Ducats*, in the way of Penſion; and ſucceed finally in the *Turkiſh* Empire, if ever the male Iſſue of the Houſe of *Ottoman* ſhould chance to fail. According unto this agreement, the *Tartars* have been aiding to the *Turks* from time to time, againſt the *Perſians*, *Polanders*, *Hungarians*, *Moldavians*, and indeed whom not? And that with great and puiſſant Armies; the Great *Cham* ſometimes arming 150000 of his own Subjects (leaving but one man in an houſe to attend their Cattel;) and ſometimes adding 50000 *Circaſſians* and others of the *Aſian Tartars*. And for the *Moſcovite*, whom he is left at liberty to aſſault by this *Capitulation*, he hath had ſo hard an hand upon him, that in the year 1571. they pierced as far as to the City of *Moſco*, and ſet fire on the Suburbs: which flaming into the City built moſt of wood, and then reckoned to be 30 miles in compaſs, within the ſpace of four hours burnt the greateſt part of it; and therein no fewer than 800000 of all ſorts of people. A quarrel not to be compoſed; the *Tartar* not only laying claim to the Kingdoms of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan*, which the *Ruſſe* poſſeſſeth; but even to *Moſcovie* it ſelf, as hath there been

ſhewn.

shewn. Nothing so punctual is the *Turk* on his part, to perform the Contract; who not content to have the *Tartar* for his friend, or at the worst his *Homager*, hath of late times attempted to make him his Slave or *Vassal*. For *Amurath* the third, quarrelling *Mahomet* the *Crim-Tartar* for a design to intercept *Osman-Bassa*, in his way from *Persia* to *Constantinople*, authorized the said *Osman* to war upon him: by whom the poor *Crim* and his two Sons, betrayed by some of his own Counsellors (corrupted with *Turkish* Gold) were strangled with a Bow-string; *Islan* a brother of the *Crims*, first sworn a *Vassal* to the *Turk*, put into the place; and over him a *Turkish Beglerbeg* or *Bassa*, to command in chief. What hopes he hath of succeeding in the *Turkish* Empire, if the House of *Ottoman* should fail, hath been already taken into consideration, in our discourse upon that subject.

What the *Revenue* of this Prince is, it is hard to say; his Subjects having little money, and living most upon the bartery of their Cattel. But besides what he hath in Lands or Customs, and the 5500 *Ducats* yearly which he receiveth from the *Turk*, he hath the *tenth* of all the spoils which are got in the wars, and a *Cheekine* for every Captive, for some two or three (whosoever taketh them) according unto their estates.

As for his power, what he can do in Horse, we have seen already; and as for Foot, and Ammunition, and other necessaries, he is supplied with them by the *Turk*, (who doth sometimes espouse his quarrels:) by whose assistance they have brought the *Moscovites* to some extremities, And upon confidence of the favour and protection of the *Grand Seigneur*, the *Cham* then being, upon the death of *Stephen Bathori*, (whom *Amurath* the third, commended to the Crown of *Poland*) sent Embassadours to negotiate his Election to that Kingdom; and to enduce them thereunto, promised them in his Letters amongst other things, that their *Pope* should be his *Pope*, their *Luther* his *Luther*: and that rather than put them unto any charge to find his Table, he could live with *Horse-flesh*. His Embassie entertained with *Laughter*, as it well deserved.

2. *TARTARIA DESERTA.*

TARTARIA DESERTA is bounded on the West, with *Precopensis*, and the Empire of *Russia*; on the East, with *Antiqua*, and *Zagathay*; from which last parted by the River *Spane*, which falleth into the *Caspian* Sea about the middle of it, and with the great Lake of *Kitay*, from East to West: on the North, with the *Scythic* or frozen Ocean; and on the South, with part of the *Euxine* Sea, the *Caucasian* Mountains, and some part of the *Caspian*.

It took this name from the many *Deserts* which are in it; and is called also *Asiatica*, to difference it from *Precopensis*, which is wholly in *Europe*: or because it taketh up the whole Continent of *Sarmatia Asiatica*, according to the bounds thereof laid down by *Ptolomy*, except some part hereof incorporated to the *Russian* Empire.

The Country of it self sufficiently fruitful, if well manured; and were it in the hands of a laborious and industrious people, would yield large increase: as appears by the ill-husbandry of the *Tartars*, who sow nothing on it but *Mill* and *Punicum* (grains unknown to us) and yet without giving it any tillage, receiving very plentiful returns of both. But the *Tartar* being a Nation that hateth *Agriculture*, and laugheth at *Christians* for living on the tops of *Reeds*, (so they call our bread) neglect all that which is not of a rank Pasture for their Herds and Cattel: moving from one place to another, as the Grass faileth them; which maketh it so full of *Deserts*, and so empty of Towns, as to deserve the name of *Tartaria Deserta*.

The People or Inhabitants of it are of several sorts, derived from three several Originals, and disposed of in three several parts. 1 The *Samoyeds*, dwelling towards the Northern Ocean, who are wholly Idolaters, now reckoned as a part of *Zagathay*, and there we shall hear further of them. 2 The *Circassians*, bordering on the *Euxine*, for the the most part *Christians*; and 3 the *Tartars*, planted betwixt both, being all *Mahometans*. These again subdivided into several Tribes, which they call their *Hordes*: of which the most considerable are, 1 the *Nagaian Tartars*, 2 the *Zavolhenses*, 3 the *Thumenenses*, 4 the *Kirgessi*; besides the *Hordes* or Kingdoms of *Casan*, and *Astrachan*, added unto the Empire of *Russia*, where described already; and others of inferiour note, not here considerable.

But before we come to speak of these People in their several places, we must first look upon the whole Country, as presented to us under the name of *Sarmatia Asiatica*: bounded by *Ptolomy* as before, save that it did extend more Westwards; and was unknown to him in the Northern parts of it: now possessed by the *Moscovite*. So populous in the time of that Author, that he giveth us the names of forty several Nations which did then inhabite it; and of about as many Towns of good estimation. Of which there are but few or none remaining; and for the names of some of the principal of them, we shall have them presently.

Rivers of most note in it, 1 *Marabius*. 2 *Rhombitus*, the Greater, and 3 the Less; 4 *Anticus*, 5 *Theophanius*, 6 *Psathis*, 7 *Thesyris*, 8 *Corax*, and 9 *Vardanes*; all of them falling into the *Euxine*, and *Mœotic* Fens. 10 *Vidonis*, 11 *Alnata*, and 12 *Rha*, paying their Tributes to the *Caspian* or *Hyrcanian* Sea. Of these the principal is *Rha*, by the modern *Latines* called *Volgo*; by the *Tartars*, *Edi*; rising in *Russia*, not far from the City of *Mosco*, (where we have described it.) Most memorable, besides the seventy Mouths or Channels, wherewith it openeth into the *Caspian*, for a *Medicinable* and wholsome root growing on both sides thereof; which the Physicians call *Rha*, by the name of the River; and for distinctions sake, *Rha Pontick*, to difference it from *Rhubarb*, or *Rha Barbarum*, as of a different nature from it; this last being purgative, and the other more apt to bind. 13 *Ob*, a River unknown to *Ptolomy*, rising out of the Lake of *Kitay*, a Lake in bigness like the Sea, and full of many little Islands (most of them inhabited.) Which River at its first parting from this Lake, is said to be of 8 miles breadth; and growing still bigger and bigger, emptieth it self at last in the *Northern* Ocean: the present boundary betwixt the *Russian*, and the people in the North of this Country.

Principal Mountains of this part 1 *Corax*, giving name unto the River issuing out of it, 2 *Montes Hippici*, extended towards the *Caspian* Sea. 3 *Montes Ceraunii* lying in the furthest parts hereof (then known unto my Author) to the North and East. 4 *Caucasus*, or *Cauciſii Montes*, extended from the *Euxine* to the *Caspian* Seas; and parting *Sarmatia Asiatica* from *Colchis*, *Iberia*, and *Albania*. A chain of Hills of which *Aristotle* saith, *Acumine & latitudine omnium maximi*, &c. that for height and breadth they are the greatest of the East; the tops whereof are lightned by the Sun beams in midnight till almost day-break, when it is dark night in the valleys beneath. Not passable for horse or foot (except they creep along by the *Euxine* shore) but at one place only, called *Sarmatiæ Pylæ*, or the Gates of *Sarmatia*; by others named *Caucasiæ Portæ*, from the Hills adjoyning. Situate in the 81 degree

of *Latitude*; and not far from the *Caſpian* Sea: but that ſo intricate and narrow, that very ſmall force may keep it againſt ſtrong Armies. So carefully did Almighty God in his Heavenly Providence, ſhut up this fierce and barbarous People, from the reſt of Mankind, by ſuch unfordable Waters, and unpaſſable Mountains: not to be freed out of this Priſon, till he thought good to uſe them, as the Executioners of his wrath and vengeance, for the puniſhment of ſinful and impenitent Nations. This ſaid, we will conſider thoſe particular Nations, which before we named, and are now poſſeſſed of it in their ſeveral places.

1. Oppoſite to the *Precopenſes* lie the *CIRCASSIANS*, extended from the *Cimmerian Boſphorus* and the Fens of *Mæotis*, towards the Eaſtern ſhores of the *Euxine* Sea for the ſpace of 500 miles; and reaching 200 miles towards the North. The name impoſed on them by the *Tartars*, whereas before they were called by *Pliny*, *Zigæ*; by ſome Writers, *Zychi*, conceived to be the *Zinchi* of *Ptolomy*.

The Country very fitly ſeated for Trade and Merchandiſe, as having a fair and large Sea coaſt, with many Rivers opening into it (nine of thoſe ſpoken of before, paſſing thorow theſe Tracts:) and not a few capacious Bays, and commodious Havens. Of which the principal were *Sinus Cerceticus*, or the Bay of *Cercetis*, *Synda*, and *Bata*, two known Havens, and ſpecified by my Author with the adjunct of *Portus*. But theſe conveniences not much looked after by the preſent Inhabitants, who are more inclined to the Wars, than to Trades, or *Merchandiſe*. A ſtout and Military People, trained to their Weapons from their Childhood; and ſold as ſoon as trained to it by unnatural Parents. For from theſe parts did the *Mamalucks* of *Ægypt* fetch their firſt *Original*; and from hence ſupply themſelves with a perpetual *Seminary* of Slaves and Souldiers, raiſed by degrees unto the higheſt dignities of that ſlaviſh Empire; And from theſe parts the *Perſian Sophies* are ſupplied with their *Cozzel-Baſſis*, diſciplined and inſtructed by them like the *Turkiſh Janizaries*.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was here planted in the year 860. or thereabouts, by the Miniſtry of *Cyrill* (or *Chiurill*) and *Methodius*; employed in that Service by the Patriarch of *Conſtantinople*. In which reſpect their Churches are of the *Greek* Communion, conforming thereto in Rites and Doctrine, and of the juriſdiction of that Patriarch: but differing from them very much in matters *practical*. For it is ordinary with theſe half *Chriſtians*, not to baptize their Children tell eight years old; to hear Divine Service ſtanding without their Churches, into which they very ſeldom enter (eſpecially the Gentlemen) till the fortieth, or (as ſome ſay) the ſixtieth year of their age: dividing the whole courſe of their life betwixt *God* and the *Devil*, in dedicating their youth unto Theft and Robbery, their old Age (when they can no longer commit thoſe villanies) to the difficult buſineſs of repentance.

Places of moſt obſervation amongſt the Ancients, 1 *Cimmerium*, a Town and Promontory, ſo called from the *Cimmerii*, once the chief People of theſe parts, of whom more anon; ſituate on the very ſhore of the *Boſphorus*, from hence denominated. 2 *Phanagoria*, in old times a well-traded Empory; ſituate on a little Iſland raiſed out of the Sea, by the care and induſtry of the *Greeks*, who had here a Factory. 3 *Apathurgus*, by *Pliny* called *Apaturum*, memorable for a Temple of *Venus* ſirnamed *Apaturia* (which name ſhe gave unto this place,) becauſe (ſaith *Strabo*) when the Giants aſſaulted her, ſhe craved help of *Hercules*, who ſlew them all one after another. 4 *Geruſa*, by *Ptolomy* honoured with the title of *Civitas*, the *Gargaza* of *Diodorus*, now called S. *George's*. 5 *Oenuntia*, near the mouth of the River *Theſyris*. 6 *Araza*, more within the Land, which with 7 *Ampſacis*, hath the name of a City alſo. The names of their chief Havens we have ſeen before. But few of theſe, or any other mentioned by the ancient Authors, being now viſible in their ruins: the chief of thoſe which are now extant, are 1 *Locoppa*, 2 *Conioce*; but of no great note.

The People anciently though divided into the ſeveral Tribes of the *Thyrſagetæ*, *Zigæ*, *Turcæ*, the *Huns*, *Avares*, and *Mæotæ*, all noted Nations; beſides the *Coaxtræ*, *Zinchi*, *Tyrambæ*, *Pſelii*, and others as obſcure as they, were better known by the name of *Cimmerians*, in which thoſe ſeveral Tribes concentred. Deſcended in the right of that common original, from *Gomer* the Son of *Japhet*, firſt planted in the Mountainous places of *Albania*: his Poſterity known by the name of *Gomerii*, afterwards *Cimmerii*, left there a memorial of themſelves in the Mountains called *Cimmerini*. But that Country proving both too barren, and too narrow for them, ſome of them paſſed into *Phrygia Major*, where they built the City *Cimmeris*, not unknown to *Pliny*, in whoſe time it was extant: and others in ſome Tract of time, keeping the *Euxine* on their left hand, fixed themſelves in theſe parts; here giving name to the Town and Promontory *Cimmerion*, to the *Cimmerian Boſphorus*, and generally to all the people deſcended of them. From theſe particularly, as the ſtout and valiant Nation of the *Cimbri*, do derive their Pedigree; ſo from theſe and the Children of *Meſech*, *Magog* and *Tubal*, the *Sarmatians* both of *Europe* and *Aſia*, the *Moſcovites*, and perhaps the *Scythians*, are to fetch their Original: all of them great and puiſſant Nations, and all involved promiſcuouſly in the name of *Scythians*. Renowned for no other action more than the memorable expedition, which they made into *Media* in the *Greater*, and *Lydia* in the *Leſſer Aſia*: the *Cimmerians* by themſelves alone, or by them as principal; the reſt of theſe *Sarmatians* in a body together as a *Scythian* People. Diſtreſſed with want, or to diſburden their ſmall Country of ſuperfluous multitudes, theſe *Cimmerii* in the time of *Nabulaſſar*, or *Salmanaſſar*, King of *Aſſyria*, communicating their deſign with the reſt of the *Scythians*, to enlarge their quarters; holding along the courſe of the *Euxine* Sea, and paſſing thorow the Country of *Colchis*, firſt ſeized on ſome parts of *Pontus* and *Paphlagonia*. Where having fortified the Promontory on which *Sinope* was after built; and leaving there their Carriages, and the weakeſt of their Train with ſufficient guards, they marched into *Lydia*, reputed (as it was indeed) for a wealthy Region. There they poſſeſſed themſelves of *Sardis*, the Royal City; and after of the reſt of the Country, or the moſt part of it, *Ardis*, the Son of *Giges*, who then reigned in *Lydia*, not being able to withſtand them. Both beſides being wearied with long War, and grown more pliant by degrees unto one another (as in like caſe betwixt the *Saxons* and the *Danes*) it proved no difficult matter for *Halyattes*, the Grand-child of *Ardis*, to compound the buſineſs: aſſigning to the *Cimmerians* all thoſe parts of his Dominions, which lay beyond the River *Halys*; and ſettling his *Lydians* in the reſt. By this tranſaction there were ſo good correſpondences betwixt the Nations, that when *Cyaxares*, King of the *Medes*, invaded the Country of theſe *Cimmerians*, under colour of the invaſion which the *Scythians* had made in *Media*, *Halyattes* did eſpouſe the quarrel, and appeared in their aid. In following times, growing into confidence of one another, and mixt in Marriages and bloud, they became one People; or at leaſt paſſed not under the accompt of ſtrangers, or the name of *Aliens*. Such end had this moſt notable

notable expedition of these *Cimmerians*; not much remembred after this, for the like undertakings. Yet here they held their own, though in other names, governed by many petit Princes, but all associated with *Mithridates* against the *Romans*: that King being so great amongst them, that his Son *Machares* having married into some of their Families, was made King of *Bosphorus*. But *Machares* having made his peace with *Lucullus*, the *Romans* never looked this way. Nor hear we much of them in succeeding times, till the invasion of the *Tartars*; by whom subdued, they acknowledge at first the Great *Cham* for their Soveraign Lord: whose power declining, they have successively been subject to the *Crim-Tartar*, the *Turk*, and *Moscovite*; but most commonly to the *Crim-Tartar*, as their nearest neighbour, and most able to hurt them. And him they furnished on command with 50000 horse for the *Grand Seigneur's* Service: yet so that they supply the *Persian* with his *Cozzel-Bassis*, and sometimes serve under him for pay, as they do under any which will entertain them. Governed like the *Suissers*, by their several *Commonalties*: yet so, that every *Commonalty* hath some principal man (which the *Suissers* have not) whom they call *Morseys*, (that is Dukes) to direct and order them.

2. Betwixt these and the River *Volga* dwell the *ZAVOLHENSES*, one of the greatest *Hords* or *Tribes* of all the *Tartars*; and therefore called *Horda Magna*. Of these the *Crims*, or *Precopenses* were a *Castling* only; proceeding out of this great Swarm or Nest of Hornets, though afterwards they became their Masters. Of the Country or the People we say nothing here, having sufficiently spoken of both already. Their chief Town hath the name of *Bolgar*, situate on the River *Volga*, and from thence so named: *Volgar* and *Bolgar* differing but little in *Orthography*, and not much in sound.

This Country, as I take it by the situation, should be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Mithridatis Regio*: whether so called in honour of him by the Princes of the neighbouring *Cimmerians*, with whom he had contracted alliance; or that he had made any *Conquests* there; or from some other Prince of the same name, I determine not. And in this Tract were those two Pillars, advanced unto the honour of *Alexander*, in *Ptolomy* called *Columnæ Alexandri*, in whose time they stood without defacement: there being also *Altars* erected to him, or in memory of him, near the Banks of *Tanais*, occurring in the same Author by the name of *Aræ Alexandri*. Which probably occasioned the error of *Qu. Curtius*, who brings *Alexander* in pursuit of the *Scythian* war, as far as *Tanais*: whereas it is apparent by the course of his actions, that he never got beyond the River *Jaxartes*; distant from *Tanais* no less than 2000 miles.

This Tribe first governed by its own King, whom they called *Ulu-Cham*, or the *Great Cham*, was in the year 1506. subdued by the *Crim-Tartar*, and made subject to him. Afterwards conquered by *Basilius* the *Great Duke* of *Moscovy*, who thereupon assumed the Title of King of *Bolgar*: which his Successors still preserve, with the Town it self; well garrisoned to keep open the whole course of the River *Volga*, by which they manage the great trade of the *Caspian* Sea. But for the main body of this people, they returned again to their obedience to the *Crim*, as being a Limb of the same body with him; and are subject unto his Commands: though by reason of their neighbourhood to the *Moscovite*, and commerce with that Nation, they frame themselves both to their language, habit, and behaviour.

3. East of the *Zavolhenses*, on the other side of the *Volga*, dwell the *NOIHACENSES*, or *NAGAIANS*, spreading as far as the borders of *Zagathay*, and declining Southward towards the *Caspian* Sea, and the *Montes Hippici*: Accompted the best men of war of all the *Tartars*, but more fierce and cruel than the rest; void of all Arts, not having, or contemning Money, or the use of Corn. *Horse-flesh* and *Mares milk* their best diet: the flesh either roasted by the Sun, or heated by continual hanging at the Saddle-bow. And with such cheer (nor worse nor better) did *Azim Can*, one of the Princes of this Tribe, entertain *Jenkinson* and other *English* men in their travels to the *Caspian*, from the River *Volga*. Their chief Town, if possibly it deserve that name, is called *Scharayirzik*, the Residence of one of their Princes; and the next, *Sellisture*, where the said *Jenkinson* found the *Cham*, as in the prime place of his abode. The Government is by several *Morseys*, the Heads or *Chiefs*, no doubt, of their several *Clans*: agreeing well enough together against the *Moscovite*; whom they infest with frequent inrodes, and put him to the charge of continul Garrisons, at *Casan*, *Astrachan*, and *Viatka*. Their Wars for the most part only *Prædatory*, rather to get some present booty, than out of any hope to enlarge their Dominion; and therefore commonly pacified, and sent home with Presents. The *Great Duke* is so good a Statesman, as to think the expense of Money cheaper than that of Blood; especially when he hath to deal with such an Enemy, who hath neither any Town of consequence, or fixt place of dwelling, and consequently nothing to be got but blows. Their *Morseys*, formerly more in number, were of late times reduced unto three; of which he of *Scharayirzik* was the chief: to whose direction, and appointment (especially in matters which concerned the publick) the other two do commonly submit themselves.

4. Betwixt these *Nagaians*, and the *Circassians*, lie those Tribes which they call the *KIRGESSI*, spreading as far as to the mouths or influx of the River *Volga*: but intermixt with the *Heselites*, and *Baschurides*, two other of the *Tartarian* Tribes, but of less power. Their life, for the most part in continual motion, removing with their Wives and Families from one place to another; and governing themselves in their removes, by the sight of the *Pole-star*. Partly *Mahometan*, partly *Gentile*; but the *Gentiles* make the greater number; not burying their dead bodies, as in other places, but hanging them upon a Tree, though they stink again: certain enough that they will be devoured or sweetned, before they return back to the same Station. Much reverence yet they give their *Priests*, by whom sanctified and besprinkled in their publick meeting, with a certain mixture, compounded of Blood, Milk, Earth, and Cow-dung, a most sweet *Confection*, but good enough for them that desire no better. And yet with these the *Moscovite* is fain to hold fair compliance, and to send them every year some Presents; for fear they should joyn with the *Nagaians*: or otherwise disturb him in his *Caspian* Trade down the River *Volga*.

5. The *THUMENSES* or *THUMEN TARTARS* lie more North than any of these *Tartarians*; having on the South, the *Zavolhenses*, and the Territory of *Viatka* in the Empire of *Russia*. A warlike People, and living near a dangerous neighbour; for which cause they do not straggle so abroad in petit companies, as the others do, but keep together in great bodies: For the most part much delighted in *Negromancy*, and *Conjurations*. In which the Devil so befools them, that he suffereth them to raise tempests; and sometimes, by *Diabolical* illusions, to defeat their enemies. The only *Hord* of all *Deserta*, which still continue in obedience to their natural Lord, the Great *Cham* of *Cathay* (if such *Cham* there be.) And unto these we may adjoyn the

Molgomo-

Molgomozans, all *Gentiles*, and the moſt barbarous of all: living in Caves, and feeding upon Worms, and Mice, and Serpents, and ſuch other vermine as would be poyſon unto any but ſuch *Molgomozans*, who are more poyſonous than thoſe Creatures.

Theſe *Hords*, together with the Kingdoms of *Caſan*, and *Aſtrachan* and ſuch of the *Ruſſian* Provinces as lie on the Eaſt of *Tanais*, and the River of *Duina*, make up that Country which anciently paſſed under the name of *Sarmatia Aſiatica*: inhabited originally by the Deſcendants of *Gomer*, *Meſech*, *Tubal*, *Magog*, the Sons of *Japhet*, ſpreading themſelves more Northwards as they grew in numbers, out of *Albania*, *Iberia*, *Colchis*, and the *Pontick*, or *Cimerian* Nations. Divided into the Tribes or Families of the *Olandæ*, *Gerri*, *Samocolchi*, *Socani*, *Seci*, *Scimnitæ*, *Agaritæ*, *Merdi*, *Canapſeni*, *Chænides*, *Baſilici*, *Hyperborei*, *Hippophagi*, and others of as little note: theſe laſt ſo called from their eating of horſes, which diet they have left unto their Succeſſours. So like in manners and conditions, to the neighbouring *Scythians*, that they paſſed commonly by that name; and by that name are memorable for the great expedition by them made into *Aſia* the *Greater*, at ſuch time as the *Cimmerians* fell into *Aſia Minor*. For paſſing without oppoſition thorow the *Sarmatian Streights*, where they might have been eaſily kept out; and leaving behind them the more barren Country of *Albania*, they fell into *Media*: where they were incountered (but victorious) by *Phraartes*, then King of the *Medes*: Who finding that he was not able to remove them by force, aſſayed it by cunning; and firſt perſwaded them to look towards the South, as into richer Countries, and more like to yield them full content. Hereupon, full of Prey and Preſents, they marched towards *Ægypt*, but were met in *Syria* by *Pſamniticus* the *Ægyptian* King, who had heard of their coming; and thought it beſt to entertain them on the way, and not to bid them welcome at home to his greater coſt. Outvying the *Median* (as of the two the richer Prince) he loaded them with gifts and treaſures, and ſo ſent them back again into *Media*, from whence they came: where for many years they afflicted that People, and the neighbouring Provinces, doubling their Tributes, and uſing all kind of Inſolencies: till in the end, *Cyaxares*, the Son and Succeſſour of *Phraartes*, acquainting ſome of his moſt faithful Subjects with his deſign, cauſed the better part of them to be plentifully feaſted, made them drunk, and ſlew them; recovering thereby the poſſeſſion of his whole Eſtate. Afterwards imitated by the *Engliſh* in their *Hock-tide* ſlaughter. Such of them as eſcaped this blow, and were not willing to be ſubject to the Kings of *Media* (as many of them were) were ſuffered to return home by the ſame way they came; where at their coming, they found foul work made by their Wives and their Slaves, the ſtory whereof we had when we were in *Ruſſia*. After this we hear nothing of them in the ſtories of the *Greeks*, and *Romans*, unleſs thoſe *Amazons*, who attended their Queen *Thaleſtris*, when ſhe beſtowed a viſit on *Alexander*, were rather of theſe *Sarmatian Amazons*, than of thoſe of *Pontus* and *Thermodon*, as I think they were: the nearneſs of their dwelling to *Hyrcania*, in which place they found him, inducing me to this opinion. But poſſible enough it is, (though it be not certain) that ſome of theſe *Sarmatian* Tribes, though by other names, hearing of the ſucceſſes of the *Huns*, *Avares*, and other barbarous Nations, which made havock of the *Roman* Empire, might joyn themſelves unto them, and make up their numbers: thoſe Nations being elſe too ſmall to compound ſuch Armies, as by them were brought into the field againſt the *Romans*, without ſuch like helps. What their eſtate hath been ſince ſubdued by the *Tartars*, hath been ſhewn already.

3. ZAGATHAY.

ZAGATHAY is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Mountan *Imaus*, by which it is parted from *Cathay*; on the North, with the main *Scythic* or *Frozen Ocean*; on the Weſt, with *Tartaria Deſerta*, from which ſeparated by the River *Soane*, and the Lake of *Kitay*; and on the South, with the *Caſpian* Sea, and the River *Oxus*, by which divided from the Empire of *Perſia*. So called from *Zagathay*, a brother of one of the Great *Chams*, on whom it was conferred for his better maintenance; the *Scythia intra montem Imaum* of the ancient Writers.

The Country ſpreading out ſo far, on all ſides, as before appeareth, comprehendeth all thoſe Provinces and tracts of ground, which anciently were called, 1 The Country of the *Sacæ*, 2 *Sogdiana*, with 3 *Zagathay*, ſpecially ſo called, 4 and *Turcheſtan*, included anciently in the name of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and 5 the *Terra Incognita*, which *Ptolomy* makes to be the Northern boundary of that part of *Scythia*. By taking a ſurvey of all which particulars, we ſhall find the temper of the whole.

1. SACÆ, or the Country of the *Sacans*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Mountain *Imaus*; on the Weſt, with *Sogdiana*; on the North, with *Zagathay*, properly and ſpecially ſo called; on the South, with the River *Oxus*, by which parted from *Bactria*. So called from the *Sacæ*, the Inhabitants of it; but the reaſon of their name I find not.

The Country anciently either barren, or ill manured; full of vaſt Foreſts, wide Deſarts, and the like unhabitable places, Few or no Cities in it, and not many villages (*Civitates autem non habent*, as my Author hath it) the people living moſt part in Caves, or orherwiſe wandring up and down with their droves of Cattel; Called for that reaſon *Nomades* by ſome ancient Writers. The name not proper to theſe only, but common to all thoſe who followed the like roving life, as the *Sarmatians*, wild *Arabians*, *Saracens*, and the Inhabitants of *Libya* and *Numidia* in *Africk*. Only one fortified place they had, which from the materials of it had the name of *Turris Lapidea*, (λιθινὸς πύργος, in the *Greek*) or the Caſtle of Stones; Part hereof being peopled for the moſt part by *Camels*, or travellable only with thoſe Creatures, had the name of *Camelorum Regio*.

Divided it was anciently into many Tribes, the *Caratæ*, and *Comari*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Maſſagetæ*, and *Comedæ*, near the hills called *Aſcatanas*; the *Bylcæ*, and *Grynæi*, more within the Country. All joyned in one by the name of *Sacæ*; and by that name made a very fortunate Progreſs into *Armenia* (to which they had an eaſie paſſage by the Northern banks of the *Caſpian* Sea) and therein gave name unto the Province called *Sacaſena*. But proceeding into *Cappadocia*, and there ſlain by the *Perſians* in the midſt of their Feaſtings, they left there alſo ſome reſemblance of their name, in an annual Feſtival called *Sacæ*; celebrated by the *Perſians*, in memorial of their good ſucceſs in the war againſt them. Such as ſtaid here, being overcome by *Cyrus* the firſt *Perſian* Monarch, did ſo good ſervice to that Prince, that *Amorges* the King of theſe *Sacæ*, is ſaid to have reſcued him from the hands of the *Scythians*, by whom otherwiſe he had been ſlain, or taken Priſoner. In the declining of that Kingdom, they were ſubdued by *Alexander* at the end of his *Scythian*, and *Sogdian* wars; who hereabouts, by *Cohortanes* a noble *Perſian*, was preſented with a Bevy of beautiful Ladies; one of the which was that *Barſine*, whom he made his Wife, and had by her that *Hercules*,

Hercules, whom *Polysperchon* and his Faction proclaimed King of *Macedon*. Not memorable in the following times for any thing which they did or suffered; as they have been made by the opinion or mistake of others; who building *Castles* in the *Air*, will needs derive the *Saxons* (our famous Ancestors) from this Original: as if they were called *Saxons*, *quasi Sacæ sones*, or the Sons of the *Sacæ*. A fancy in my poor conceit, of no ground at all. For either the number of these *Sacæ*, when they left these parts, must be great, or little. If little, how can we conceive it possible, they should force their way through those valiant Nations of both *Sarmatia's*, who to the last maintained their Liberties and Estate against the *Romans*? If great enough to force their passage (for stout and provident Nations use not to give passage to great Armies, but they pay dear for it) how can we think it possible they should be shut up in a corner of *Germany*, betwixt the River *Albis* and the *Cimbrick Chersonese*? The *Saxons* then, whatsoever they were, were no Sons of the *Sacæ*; and what in likelihood they were, hath been elsewhere shewn.

2. *SOGDIANA* hath on the East, the *Sacæ*; on the North and West, *Zagathay* specially so called; on the South, the River *Oxus*, parting it from *Margiana*. So called from a chain of Mountains named *Montes Sogdii*, being the chief of all this Country, though of themselves a spur or branch of the Mountain *Caucasus*.

The Country indifferently fruitful, and very rich in Pasturage, because very well watered. For besides *Oxus*, and *Jaxartes*, which are common unto them and others; they have many Rivers of their own. The principal of which, 1 *Dymus*, and 2 *Araxates*, both navigable, and capable of very good ships; both also running down the hills with a headlong course, and passing through the Champion Country, empty themselves at last in the Lake called *Oxiana*; as is affirmed by *Ammianus*, but as *Ptolomy* saith, into *Jaxartes*.

Places of most consideration are, 1 *Drepsa*, the *Metropolis* or Mother-City of this people. By *Pliny* called *Panda*, by *Solinus Darapsa*: situate on the River *Oxus*. 2 *Oxiana*, on the same River, and from thence denominated. 3 *Maruca*, on the same River also. 4 *Alexandria*, called for distinction sake, *Alexandria Oxianæ*, which name declareth both the founder and the situation. 5 *Alexandria*, for the same cause of distinction, named *Alexandria ultima*: either because the last City which he built in these parts: or because it lay furthest off on the borders of the *Scythians*, against whose invasions or irruptions it was said to be built. 6 *Tribarra*, one of the chief hereof in the time of *Ammianus Marcellinus*. 7 *Cyroschata*, more memorable, and not less ancient, than any of those named before, by *Qu. Curtius* called *Cyropolis*, built by *Cyrus*, to fortifie his borders against the *Scythians*. It held out against the great *Macedonian*, a long time; and he himself coming nigher to the Walls than discretion would permit an ordinary General, had such a blow on the neck with a stone, that he fell to the ground, his eyes swimming in his head, and his whole Army giving him for slain: But reviving, he took the Town by a Mine, and levell'd it with the ground, in revenge of so great a danger.

The ancient Inhabitants hereof were the *Oxydracæ*, and *Candari*, dwelling at the foot of the *Sogdian* Mountains; the *Oxiani*, and *Cherasmii*, near the banks of *Oxus*; the *Jasii*, and *Tachori*, near the River *Jaxartes*; the *Drepsianii* in the East parts bordering on the *Sacæ*; whose chief City was *Drepsa*: descended from their several roots but all called *Sogdians*. Conquered by *Alexander*, not without danger to his own person, as before was said; at the solicitation of *Spitamenes* a noble *Persian*, it rebelled again. Who being suppressed, and the Country in some measure quieted, *Arimazes*, a Native of the Province, renewed the war. Who followed with 30000 men, encamped upon the top of an hill, in a place of such notable advantage, that *Alexander*, neither by force nor fair words, could get him out of it. He therefore dealt with 3000 of his youngest and most active men, on the promise of great reward, to climb the hill; and without any noise to shew themselves at the back of the Enemy: Which having performed with the loss of 30 of their company, *Alexander* sent one *Cophes* to *Arimazes*, to let him know that the whole Army of *Macedon* was at his back; who terrified with what he saw, more with what he feared, gave up the place, and was scourged and crucified for his labour. So necessary in the Art of warfare is a piece of wit. After this time, it ran the same alterations and change of fortunes, as the *Persians* did; till they were conquered by the *Tartars*, unto whom still subject.

3. *ZAGATHAY* specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *Cathay*; on the West, with *Turchestan*, and part of the *Caspian* Sea; on the North, with the Country of the *Samoyeds*, the *Terra Incognita* of the Ancients; on the South, with the *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*. Anciently part of *Scythia intra montem Imaum*; and took this new name from *Zagathay*, the first Prince hereof, since the time of the *Tartars*.

The Country reasonably fruitful, but not so rich in the natural temper of the soyl, as the industriousness of the people, more civil far than any other of the *Tartars*; studious of good Letters, lovers of Arts, as well ingenious as *Mechanick*; well skilled in *Manufactures*, and very seldom without the confluence of forein Merchants. Populous, and well-stored with Towns and Villages; both for their own more handsome dwelling, and the entertainment of others.

Chief Rivers of it, 1 *Jaxartes*, now called *Chesel*, the principal of all this Country: great of it self, but made much greater by the waters of 2 *Daix*, another River of good note, rising out of the Mountain called *Norosus*, and falling with many others into *Jaxartes*; mixt with those streams they are dischannelled in the *Caspian* Sea. 3 *Jartus*, and 4 *Polytimetas*, falling into *Oxus*. Others there are whose names I find not in my Authors, descending from the Mountains of this Northern Region, which are great and many: As viz. 1 *Norosus*, spoken of before. 2 *Aspisii*, on the North of that. 3 *Toporus*, more unto the North. 4 The Mountains called *Sychi*, more Northward still. 5 Those called *Anarei*, besides 6 *Imaus*, of most name, but common unto *Cathay* as well as to *Zagathay*, and there we shall hear further of it.

Cities of most observation in it, 1 *Aspabota*, the only Town ascribed by *Ptolomy* to this Country, and by him honoured with the title of *Civitas*. 2 *Zabaspia*, of less antiquity, but of greater estimation at the present time. Situate on the mouth of the River *Oxus* (now called *Abias*) on the brink of the *Caspian*; and much frequented by the Merchants of forein Countries, chiefly from *India*, and *Cathay*. 3 *Marachanda*, ancient, and of fame, but placed by *Ptolomy* (why I know not) amongst the Cities of *Bactria*: differing herein from the common and received opinion of other Authors, by whom this City is affirmed to be on the North side of *Oxus*, and consequently not within that Province. Made good by *Spitamenes*, (who having delivered the Traitor *Bessus* into the hands of *Alexander*, revolted from him) against the *Macedonian* Army; by which besieged under the command of *Menedemus*. But *Menedemus* being slain, with some of his Souldiers, *Spitamenes* escaped hence to *Bactria*, where he was slain by his own Wife, and his head presented

ſentedt to the Conquerour. Here was it alſo that *Alexander*, being then Maſter of the Town, in a drunken fit ſlew his dear friend *Clytus*; who at the battel of *Granicus* had ſaved his life, by receiving a blow which was aimed at him. It was afterwards called *Samarchand*, the ſeat-Royal of *Tamerlane*, by whom enriched with all the ſpoils and treaſures he got in the Wars; there being brought hither from *Damaſcus* only (and by that one inſtance we may gueſs at the reſt) 8000 *Camels* laden with the choiceſt movables. Still the chief Reſidence of the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, but far ſhort of that magnificence which once it held. 4 *Bichend*, of no Antiquity, nor of ſuch great name as the Regal *Samarchand*, but at this time of greater wealth: ſituate ſomewhat in the mid-land, but populous, and a well-traded Town. 5 *Azara*, memorable for being made the *Rendezvouz* of that mighty Army, which *Tamerlane* raiſed againſt the *Turks*, conſiſting in the total of 1200000 fighting men when it was at the biggeſt. 6 *Maranis*, from which place the ſaid *Tamerlane*, having received his aids from *China*, began his march.

Theſe *Tartars*, called *Zagathayans*, by the name of their Country, are of a different government from that of the Great *Cham* of *Cathay*, though ſubject to him at the firſt: and have ſo been ever ſince the time of *Zaicham* or *Bathu*, the third Great *Cham*; who gave it unto *Zagathay*, a younger Son, whence it had the name. To *Zagathay* ſucceeded *Og*, by ſome called *Zain Cham*; (the Father of *Tamerlane*) a peaceable and quiet Prince, who rather ſtudied to preſerve than enlarge his Empire. But *Tamerlane* being of a fierce and more warlike nature, made the firſt proof of his valour and good fortune againſt the *Moſcovite* (for ſpoyling a City which had put it ſelf under his protection) whom he overthrew with the ſlaughter of 25000 foot; and 15000 of his horſe. Moved with this notable exploit, and the hopes of greater, *Gino Cham*, the Great Emperour of the *Tartars* gave him to Wife his only Daughter, and therewithal declared him his heir apparent. Encouraged and enabled with this advancement, he firſt brake down the Wall of *China*, encountred with the King thereof, overcame him in battel, and impoſed on him the ſum of 300000 Crowns of yearly Tribute. Having left things quiet at his back, and taking with him a great part of the Forces of *China*, he advanced forwards againſt *Bajazet*, the fourth King of the *Turks*; of the greatneſs of whoſe growing Empire he began to be jealous. Paſſing along the left hand ſhores of the *Caſpian* Sea, and ſo through *Albania*, and the reſt of the Provinces which lay in his way (which he took and conquered as he went) he came at laſt into *Aſia Minor*: where near the City of *Sebaſtia*, he encountred with *Bajazet*: vanquiſhed him, ſlew 200000 of his men, and carried him away Captive in an Iron Cage. Reſtoring thoſe Princes diſpoſſeſſed by *Bajazet* unto theſe Eſtates, and taking to himſelf all the *Turkiſh* Provinces in *Anatolia*; he beſtowed a private viſit on *Conſtantinople*: which ſeen, he marched towards *Syria*, ſubdued both that Province and the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, then poſſeſſed by the *Mamalucks*; viſited *Hieruſalem*, and did honour to the *Holy Sepulchre*; returned by *Babylon*, and won it, and with it the whole Countries of *Babylonia*, and *Aſſyria*. And taking *Perſia* in his way impatronized himſelf of that Kingdom alſo; and ſuch parts of *India*, as either lay near *Perſia*, or his own Dominions; now made the *Soveraign Lord* of all the Regions and Kingdoms in both *Aſia*'s, excepting *India*; for which the rich Kingdom of *Ægypt*, may be put in balance. Come home at laſt to *Samarchand*, he there died in peace. A Prince of ſtrong body, but lovely lineaments, his eyes bearing in them ſuch rayes of Majeſty, that ordinary men could ſcarce endure to look upon them. His hair long, contrary to the cuſtome of the *Mahometans*, (for the moſt part ſhaved on their heads) for which he pretended a deſcent from *Sampſon*. Perfect in the *Arabian* Learning, and a lover of all learned men, a hater of *Idols*, and *Polytheiſm*, and a great friend to the *Chriſtians*. More fortunate in the conquering of ſo many Kingdoms, than in laying any ſure foundation to maintain his conqueſt. For by holding his ſeat Royal in *Samarchand*, *Cambalu*, and others the chief Cities of *Cathay*, he gave the remote Provinces the opportunity of returning to their former Governours; and by parcelling his Eſtates amongſt his Children, and kindred, this mighty flood which had ſo quickly overflown both *Aſia*'s, returned in very little time within its own proper and original banks. Even *Zagathay* it ſelf, divided from the Empire of *Cathay*, had its King apart (hardly acknowledging the great *Cham* for the *Lord in Chief*) the moſt conſiderable of whom was that *Saba*, who in the new beginnings and unſettledneſs of the *Sophian* Empire, invaded *Perſia*; But inſtead of recovering that Kingdom into the power of the *Tartars*, he loſt ſome Provinces of his own: *Hyrcania*, *Margiana*, and ſome part of *Bactria*, being ſince ſubdued by *Abas* the late *Sultan*. Nothing ſince memorable, that I meet with, in the affairs of this part of the Empire of *Tartary*.

4. *TURCHESTAN* is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Zagathay* ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, with the River *Zoane*, parting it from *Deſerta*; on the North, with thoſe deſarts which *Ptolomy* blindeth under the name of *Terra Incognita*; and on the South with the *Caſpian* Sea. So called from the *Turks*; ſome of which people when they left their firſt Seats near the Fens of *Mæotis*, ſettled in this Country, and here ſtill continue.

The Country as deſert and ill planted, as the reſt of *Tartary*, not ſo much out of any defect in the ſoil it ſelf, as in the humour of the people: who though originally *Turks*, do yet compoſe themſelves unto the lives of the *Scythian* or *Tartarian Nomades*, neglecting tillage, and abiding in no place longer than that place affords them paſturage for their Cattel: huge herds of which they keep as their greateſt treaſure, but more to cloath their backs with the skins, than to fill their bellies with the fleſh.

Amongſt the Rivers of moſt note we may reckon, 1 *Rhymnus*, mentioned by *Ptolomy*, which by the poſition of it in the 91 degree of Longitude, ſeems to be of this Tract. It riſeth out of the Mountains called *Montes Rhymnici*, giving name to the River, or taking name from it. 2 *Ardock*, not known by that name amongſt the Ancients, and whether known at all or not, I am not able to ſay. Shaping its courſe towards the North, and weary of ſo cold a Clime, and ſuch barbarous people; after a long and ſwift courſe of a thouſand miles, it hideth it ſelf under the ground for five hundred more: but breaking out again, and finding little or no hope of a better fortune, loſeth it ſelf for ever in the great Lake of *Kitay*.

To look for Towns amongſt a people which delight not in ſettled houſes, were a labour loſt: yet ſome I find aſcribed unto them. The principal, but of no great note, 1 *Calba*, and 2 *Ocerra*. Then there is 3 *Cruſtina*, ſituate on or near the Lake or *Kitay*, never without the company of *Ruſſian* and *Tartarian* Merchants: the *Ruſſians* ſayling to it by the River *Ob*; and the *Zagathayan Tartars* travelling to it by Land. By theſe two Nations more peopled, to maintain their Traffick, than by the *Turcomans* themſelves, in whoſe Land it ſtandeth.

Theſe *Turcomans* are of the Poſterity of ſome of thoſe *Turcæ*, who wanting room, or otherwiſe oppreſſed with want, forſook their ancient dwelling near the Fens of *Mæotis*,

Mœotis, and the Coasts of the *Euxine* Sea, to seek new seats, *Anno* 844. That their whole body settled here, and from hence made their conquest of *Persia*, as some very industrious men are of opinion, I by no means grant. For when the *Sultan* of *Persia*, having by the means of *Taugrolipix* and those Mercenary *Turks* whom he invited to his aid, obtained the Victory; and thought it fit for his affairs to detain them longer in his Service: it is said he shut up the River *Araxes*, to hinder them from returning to their habitations. The shutting up of which River, and fortifying against them all the passages and bridges of it, had not served his turn, if the *Turks* had come from this place: for then he must have manned against them the River *Oxus*, and such as lay betwixt them and him in the common road. Nor is it probable, that the *Turcomans* dwelling in this Province, on the East-side of the River *Volga*, would undertake the boarding of that dangerous and violent Water; and force themselves a way thorow *Albania* and *Armenia*, with no greater numbers, than 3000 men, which was the whole strength that they carried with them. So that it is not to be doubted, but that they came first into *Persia* out of *Turcomania*, and not out of *Turchestan*: and probable enough, that when they first left their own abode, and came unto the Northwest shores of the *Caspian* Sea, they might there divide themselves. Some of which leaving that Sea on the left hand, and passing thorow the *Sarmatian* or *Albanian* Streights, made their way into *Armenia*, and those parts of *Iberia*, which from them are now called *Turcomania*. The residue keeping that Sea on the right hand, and crossing the *Volga*, where they found the passage most easie for them, settled themselves in these parts of *Scythia* which they found less peopled, now from them named *Turchestan*. Some of which hearing of the good success of their Country-men in the Conquest of *Persia*, might afterward joyn with them to assure that purchase. Governed since their first coming hither, by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clans*, whom they honour with the title of *Chams*; but all of them Tributaries and Vassals of the *Cham* of *Zagathay*.

5. That part of the Kingdom of *Zagathay*, which anciently passed under the name of *TERRA INCOGNITA*, and was accompted the Northern limit of *Scythia intra Imaum*, hath on the South, *Turchestan*, and part of *Zagathay*, strictly and specially so called: extending Northwards to the *Scythick* or *Frozen* Ocean, and bounded on the West, with the River *Ob*.

The Inhabitants of this Northern Tract are now called by the name of *Samoyeds*; neither the people nor the Country known to the ancient *Romans*: and indeed neither of them worth the knowing. The men black-haired, naturally *Beardless*, and not to be discerned from women, but that the women wear a long Lock down to their ears. Clad from the head to the feet in *Deer*-skins, or *Seil*-skins, with the hairy side outwards; (nothing more wise in that than the other *Tartars*.) Their kind of life more rude than theirs, if more rude may be, ranging from place to place, without any propriety of house or dwelling; the Leader of each Company their Priest, whom they call their *Popa*, who at every one of their Removes is to offer Sacrifice. *Idolaters* they are all, and most of them *Witches*; especially such as live most towards the East, and furthest off from the *Moscovite*, who many times destroy their Idols, and rob them of the skins of *Bevers*, black *Foxes*, and *Sables*, wherewith those Idols are set forth to the publick view: but bestow on them greater heats in a good Fire, into which they commonly use to cast them.

These *Zagathayan* Provinces, with those of *Margiana*, and *Bactria*, before described, made that part of *Scythia*, which anciently was called *Scythia intra montem Imaum*: though in the time of *Ptolomy*, when *Margiana*, *Bactria*, *Sacæ*, and *Sogdiana*, were reckoned of as Provinces of the Kingdom of *Persia*, this *Scythia* was restrained within narrower bounds, and comprehended only *Turchestan* and the *Special Zagathay*. Inhabited, besides the several Nations dwelling in the four *Persian* Provinces, by many fierce and savage Tribes, as the *Alani*, *Alanoesi*, *Saubeni*, and *Massei*, towards *Terra incognita*; the *Tectosages*, and *Asiatæ*, near the Mountain *Imaus*; the *Jaxartæ* on the banks of the River so called; and the *Mologeni*, not far off; the *Zaratæ*, and *Susones*, near the Mountains *Alani*; the *Galactophagi*, or milk-eaters, more towards the East; the *Taporæi*, and the *Sychi*, by the Hills so named: and many others not material to be here remembred. All now united under the general name of *Tartars*, by whom first subdued.

And now we are at last come to *Scythia*, truly so named; *Sarmatia Europæa* and *Asiatica* being called so only by way of participation and resemblance; because the inhabitants thereof had so much in them of the manners and conditions of these natural *Scythians*. Here therefore we intend to speak something of them, their name, Antiquity, disposition, customs, and the most memorable actions relating to them, as far as we can go by the light of story.

First, for the name, the *Græcian* Fables have derived it from one *Scythes*, the Son of *Hercules*, begotten by him on a Monster, half Woman, half Viper. The *Grammarians* ἀπὸ τῆ σκυζεσθαι, signifying to be fierce and angry; whence it is said of the *Jewish Puritans*, who *fasted to be seen of men*, Σκυθρωπὰ ἀφανίζουσι, that they looked with a sower, severe, and a disfigured Countenance. *Goropius Becanus* doth derive it rather from the *Dutch* word *Schutten*, signifying to shoot: agreeable enough to the custom and exercise of the *Scythians*, who are observed by *Herodotus*, *Pliny*, *Lucian*, and other of the ancient Writers, to be very good Archers. But that the word *Schutten* signifieth the same in the ancient *Scythick*; or that the *High-Dutch* was originally the Tongue of the *Scythians*, will not so easily appear.

Letting that pass therefore as a matter not to be defined, let us look on the Antiquity of these *Scythian* Nations: and we shall find it to be great, if not greatest of all. *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*, That the *Scythians* were of all others, the most ancient people, was received for an *Oracle*, in the elder ages of the world: and so resolved by way of Verdict, when the great Controversie touching the *Antiquity* of those Nations, was to be determined, betwixt the *Ægyptian* and the *Scythian*, who contended for it. And this hath passed with such a general approbation, that it is not now to be disputed. In which regard I am so far of the judgment of *Becanus* in that particular, as to conceive that the Countries lying on the North of Mount *Caucasus* (on which the *Ark* is thought most probably to have rested) were peopled by the Sons of *Noah* before they travelled towards the West, or set themselves on building the Tower of *Babel*. We had else no doubt heard somewhat amongst our Antiquaries, of the settling of some of those *Adventurers* in these Northern Regions; when giving off that enterprise, and falling upon new Plantations, they either went themselves, or sent forth their *Colonies* into all places of the world. But of any such Plantations, *ne gry quidem*, not one word say they. Nor can it probably be supposed, that *Zorooster*, the King of *Bactria*, could have raised 400000 fighting men out of that one Province (though some of the adjoyning Provinces were took into the reckoning) in those early days, in which he did encounter *Ninus* the

great *Assyrian*; had the *Bactrians*, and the rest of these *Scythian* Nations, been but a *Castling* as it were of some second swarm, and not *coæval* with the first. But besides these presumptions we have other proofs: *viz.* An old and constant tradition on this side the Mountains, that the great *Vineyard* of *Margiana* was of *Noah's* planting; and 2 the affirmation of *Portius Cato*, (though one of the Writers of Frier *Annius*) *in Scythia Saga renatum mortale genus*, that mankind was repaired in these parts of *Scythia*, so called from *Sabatius Saga*, an *Armenian* King, whose Dominions did extend thus far. So that I look upon it as a matter of strong presumption, if not demonstrably concludent, that these people were of the first Plantation which was made after the Floud; before the rest of the world was peopled by the *Confusion* of *Languages*: *Scytharum gens semper antiquissima*, could not else hold good.

As for their dispositions, and natural inclinations, they are said by *Trogus*, or his *Epitomator Justine*, to be *Gens & laboribus & bellis aspera*, "A Nation patient of labours, and fierce in War; of bodily strength immense "and vast; yet so much Masters of their affections, that "they made no further use of their greatest victories than "the augmentation of their fame. Theft they esteemed "the greatest crime, and that they punished so severely, "that their Flocks and Herds might and did safely wan"der from one place to another, without fear of stealing. "In them they placed their greatest wealth, feeding "themselves with the Milk thereof, and making their "Rayment of the Skin. Silver and Gold they contemned "as much as it was coveted by others; there being no de"sire of Riches where there was no use. *Meum*, and *Tu*"*um*, those common *Barretours*, and authors of debate "amongst other men, were not known amongst them: "and therefore did not care for tillage, or made any in"closures, nor troubled themselves with the care of build"ing. But putting their Wives and Children upon "Wains, or Waggons, covered with Hides against the "weather, they removed from one place to another, no "longer staying upon one than they found grass and her"bage to sustain their Cattel. So just in all their actions, "that they needed not the restraint of Laws; and had "attained to such an eminent degree of humane perfecti"on, as not to covet. In a word, that moderation which "the *Greeks* endeavoured to attain unto by the help of "Learning and Philosophy, was to these so natural, that "the ignorance of Vice did as much contribute to their "welfare, as the knowledge of Vertue. Such are the ancient *Scythians* affirmed to be. And being such, it was a wonder that the great Monarchs of the world, who had wealth at will, should make war upon them; amongst whom there was nothing to invite an Army, or reward a Conquerour. Yet either on desire of glory, or to add unto the former multitudes over whom he reigned, they were first invaded by *Cyrus* the great *Persian* Monarch: who quarrelling with *Tomyris* Queen of the *Massagetes*, a warlike Nation, inhabiting on both sides of the River *Oxus*, discomfited her Army, and slew her Son *Spargapises*, who commanded it. In revenge whereof, the Queen having in a second battel obtained the Victory, and took *Cyrus* prisoner, is said to have cut off his head, and cast it into a boul of blood, with this scornful taunt, *Satia te sanguine quem sitiisti*, Now drink thy fill of blood which thou hast so thirsted. But others tell us otherwise of the success of this fight. By whom it is reported that the Horse of *Cyrus* being disordered on the sight of some *Elephants*, which came from *India* to her aid, and himself dangerously wounded, the *Scythians* had won the victory but for the coming in of *Amorges* King of the *Sacans*, (who of a conquered enemy was become his Confederate:) by whom he was rescued, and by the 20000 fresh men which he brought with him, obtained the honour of the day; though long he lived not to enjoy it, dying not long after of the wounds he had received. With *Alexander* they are said to begin the war, as loath to be behind hand with him; arming themselves upon the building of *Alexandria ultima*, so near their borders, which they conceived rather intended for a curb to hold them down, than for a bridle to keep them in. But being repulsed, and wise enough to suffer what they could not hinder, they sued for peace, and had it granted; *Alexander* being called away by the revolt of the *Bactrians*, a matter of more consequence than these *Scythian* brabbles. With *Alexander's* Successors they had nothing to do, nor with the *Persian* Kings of the *Parthian* Race; the *Parthians* being their *Allies*, and of *Scythian* breed. And for the *Romans*, it is well observed by the *Historian*, *Romanorum arma audivere magis quàm sensere*. that they had heard much of their valour, but never felt it: Remaining undisturbed in their honest poverty, till the *Tartars*, an obscure and beggerly people brake out of their *Prison*, and carried out the whole World before them.

As for their Kings, I find some of their names laid down, but without any note of time in which their reigns might be supposed to begin or end. Nor can I think that the Kings occurring in that Catalogue, did either reign in the same place, or over the same Nations; or that they succeeded one another. Howsoever we will take their names as they come before us, in this list of.

The Kings of *Scythia*.

1 *Scythes*.
2 *Napis*.
3 *Phitra*.
4 *Sagillus*.
5 *Targitana*.
6 *Plinus*.
7 *Scholypethus*.
8 *Panaxagora*.
9 *Tanais*.
10 *Indathyrsus*.
11 *Saulius*.
12 *Spargapises*.
13 *Tomyris*.
14 *Aripethes*.
15 *Seiles*.
16 *Ocimasdes*.
17 *Lanthinus*, the last of all those *Scythian* Kings who are conceived to have the Government of these warlike Nations. But for my part I dare not say that ever any one King did command the whole people generally; each *Tribe* or Nation having their particular Kings, as in other places not reduced into form and order. And therefore for those Kings, if such Kings there were (as for some of them I durst venture to swear the contrary) they must be such as in their several Countries were of greatest fame, most taken notice of in the world, or imployed in the conduct of their joynt and united forces; and so conceived to be the Kings of the whole *Scythian* Nation: as *Cassibelane*, King of the *Trinobantes*, and perhaps not that, is by some Writers said to be the King of the *Britains*; because he had the conduct of their forces against *Julius Cæsar*..

4. CATHAY.

CATHAY is bounded on the west, with *Zagathay*, from which parted by the Mountain *Imaus*; on the East, with the *Oriental* Sea, and some part of *China*;

China; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South, with part of *India*. So called from the *proper* or *special Cathay*, the principal Province of the whole, the other parts into which it is commonly divided being 2 *Altay*, 3 the Countries of the *Eastern Tartars*.

1. *CATHAY*, more properly and specially so called, is bounded on the East, with *China*; on the West, with the Mountain *Imaus*, by which parted from *Zagathay*; on the North, with *Altay*; and on the South, with *India extra Gangem*: So called from the *Chate*, an old *Scythian* people, who having conquered the *Seres*, and the rest of the neighbouring Nations, gave their own name unto the whole, according to the Custome of victorious people.

This Country is exceeding long, if it be measured by the Scale, and Rules laid down by *Ptolomy*, who placeth *Auzacia*, the most Western Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Longitude* of 144 degrees, and *Sera* the Metropolis and most Eastern City of *Serica*, in the *Longitude* of 177 degrees and 15 Minutes; as on the other side he placeth *Seta*, the most Southern Town of *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, in the *Latitude* of 35 degrees, and 20 minutes, and *Damna* the most Northern Town of *Serica* in the *Latitude* of 51 degrees, and 40 minutes. By which account, supposing these four Towns to be placed in the very extremities and out-parts of this Country, it must extend from North to South 960 miles and somewhat upwards, and about 1500 miles from East to West in the length thereof; which as it sheweth the dimensions and extent of it to be very great, so it may probably infer that the Country is not in all places of the like fertility; the West parts of it being very mountainous and barren, and consequently not very fruitful, as being overgrown in most places with the spurs and branches of *Imaus*. But in those parts thereof which lie towards the East, it is said to be abounding in Wheat, Rice, Wooll, Hemp, Silk, and Musk; Great store of that medicinal Root called *Rhubarb*, or *Rha-Barbarum*, to difference it from the *Rha-Pontick*, growing on the banks of *Volga*. They have also very great Herds of *Camels*, of whose hair they make those stuffs which are hence called *Camelets*, or, *Chamlets*; and such an infinite breed of Horses, as besides those which they preserve for their own use, they furnish the whole Realm of *China* with such multitudes of them, that at one time there were sent no fewer than 80000 for a Present to the King of that Realm by the Princes of these Western *Tartars*, as the *Chinois* call them; of which he that writ the Book called *Bellum Tartaricum*, affirmeth himself to have been an eye-witness, and to his credit I refer it, that the great *Cham* feedeth yearly 10000 white Mares, which he keeps for their Milk. Some of their Rivers are reported also to yield *Golden Sands*. But whether it be so or not, certain it is, that it is so well provided of all things both for necessary use, and the pleasures of life, that it is thought to be inferiour to few Countries of *Europe*. The Air indeed not so temperate, as in many places; in Summer-times extreamly hot, and in Winter miserably cold: the thunders and lightnings being here so terrible, that in Summer many men die for fear, when they hear it. The winds no less violent than the thunder, do sometimes tear up Trees by the roots, and beat men from their horses; but seldom bring with them any storm of rain: the greatest showers which they have, hardly wetting the ground.

The people are generally very warlike, strong of body, quick of action, fearless of the greatest dangers, patient both of want and labour: of mean stature, little eyes, sharp-sight, and thin beards. Industrious they are in several *Manufactures*; of a good wit for dispatch of business: more honourable than the rest of the *Tartars*, as loving to dress themselves gorgeously, to fare sumptuously (if there be occation) to live in handsome houses, and to frequent the most populous and best-traded Cities. All which civilities or effeminacies, call them which you will, together with the greatest part of their Arts and Manufactures, they first learned of the *Chineses*, during the time that the *Chinois* lived as Subjects under the great *Cham*, and the Nations had continual entercourse with one another. They account not any for a Wife till she bear them Children, nor till then do meddle with their Dowries; but repudiate them at a certain time, if they find them barren. They reverence their *Cham*, or Emperour, even to *Adoration*; not suffering any Stranger to come in his presence, except he be first *purged*: if any otherwise presume, it is present death.

The *Religion* publickly allowed and countenanced, is that of *Mahomet*; but so that they retain the *Pentateuch* of *Moses*, and observe many things therein commanded. It was much laboured by Pope *Innocent*, and King *Lewis* of *France*, that they should receive the *Christian* Faith; and they found some inclinations in the People, and chief Princes to it. But finding by the *Mahometan* Agents, who then laboured to bring them to their *Superstition*, that *Mahomet* allowed of many Wives, and other things more agreeable to their fleshly lusts, they conformed to that; Yet so, that there are many *Idolaters* in *Cathay* it self (I mean *Cathay* strictly so called) and some *Christians* also; the state of whose affairs we have shewn before.

Chief Rivers of the whole. 1 *Polysanga*, which falling into the Eastern Ocean is navigable up to the City of *Cambalu*, to which it is a means of conveying great store of Merchandise. 2 *Caromoram*, so broad and deep that no Bridge can be made over it. 3 *Quiam*, one of the greatest in the world; in length about an hundred daies journey; for breadth, in most places six miles, in many eight, and in some ten. 4 *Quiantu*, about half a mile over, and well stored with fish; of all which we shall speak more fully when we come to *China*. Here are also very many *Lakes*, both large, and useful, as 1 The Lake of *Caniclu*, in which are said to be so many Pearls as would make them of no value, if every man might have leave to fish for them; which is therefore interdicted (without special licence) upon pain of death. 2 The Lake of *Carami*, about an hundred miles in circuit, and so full of fish as might suffice for all the Country, did they love to eat of it. The Mountains we shall climb over in their several places.

Principal Cities of the whole at this present time, under the notion of *Cathay*, are 1 *Cambalu*, supposed to be the *Issedon Serica* of the Ancients, and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable resistance unto *Cingis* the first King of the *Tartars*, in his first attempts upon this Country, of which more anon. Made afterwards, in regard of the pleasantness of the situation, and extreme fertility of the soyl, the chief Seat of his Empire; and being exceedingly enlarged and beautified had the name of *Cambalu*, that is to say, the Seat or City of the *Cham*, in the same sense as the chief City of *China* had the name of *Pequin*, signifying in that Language the Court or *City of the King*. Built of Free-stone, and situate in the midst of the Country as the heart and center to the rest. It is seated on the River *Polysanga*, honoured with the Great *Cham's* residence, and enriched with a mighty confluence of Merchants of all sorts. Besides other Merchandizes there are every year 10000 Carts loaded with Silk sent thither from *China*. Affirmed to be in compass 28 miles besides the Suburbs, in which, besides other Inhabitants of all sorts, are said to

be 50000 Aſtrologers or rather Fortune-tellers. 2 *Xaindu* the Royal Palace of the Emperour, of a fourſquare figure, every ſide extending eight miles in length: within this Quadrant is another, whoſe ſides are ſix miles long, and within that another of four miles ſquare, which is the Palace it ſelf; between thoſe ſeveral Walls are Walks, Gardens, Orchards, Fiſh-ponds, places for all manner of exerciſe, and Parks, Foreſts, and Chaſes for all manner of Game. 3 *Caraio*, where the women are ſaid to guild their Teeth. 4 *Gonza* a fair City and a great, adorned with many Idol Monaſteries. 5 *Careanſu*, near which there groweth an herb called *Chiny-Cathay*, of admirable effect againſt many Diſeaſes, and ſo eſteemed of by the Natives, that they value an ounce of this at a ſack of *Rubard*. 6 *Segni*, the reſidence of a *Neſtorian* Biſhop.

Having thus took as good a view of the preſent face of this Country, as the time affords us, we will next look upon it in thoſe integral parts, of which it ſpecially conſiſteth comprehending (as before was intimated) thoſe two long and ample Provinces, which the Ancients called, 1 *Serica*, and 2 *Scythia extra montem Imaum*, according to thoſe Bounds and Characters which are given us of them.

1 *SERICA*, hath on the East, ſome part of *China*; on the South, *India extra Gangem*, and ſome part of the Country then inhabited by the ancient *Sinæ*; on the North, *Altay*; on the Weſt, *Scythia* beyond the Mountains of *Imaus*. In which I follow not the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, who for want of that knowledge in theſe remote Countries which theſe later Ages have afforded, is fain to ſhut it up on the North and East with a *Terra Incognita*. At the preſent it is called *CATHAY*, and that moſt probably from the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* People, who ſubduing the old Inhabitants, became Maſters of it.

But for the name of *Serica*, it was derived originally from *Sera* the chief City of it; whence the people had the name of *Seres*, very induſtrious in their times, and amongſt other things in the making of *Silks* (made of a fine wooll growing on the leaves of Trees) from hence named *Serica*. Of great eſteem amongſt the *Romans*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*, *Tam multiplici opere, tam longinquo orbe petitur, ut in publico* matrona *tranſluceat*; being far fetched and dear bought, they were good for Ladies. Nor were they induſtrious only, but chaſte and temperate. The names of Thieves and Whores were not known amongſt them. They eat not any unclean fleſh, nor uſed the company of their Wives either after Conception, or during their Menſtrual Purgations. So moderate of diet, that they lived commonly to the age of 200 years; the quietneſs and mildneſs of their diſpoſition helping much thereto. Of yellow hair, watchet or Sea-green eyes, and good compoſure. Men of few words, but very juſt in all which they ſaid or did. Governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the uſe of the State.

If you will take the Character both of the Country and People from *Ammianus Marcellinus*, he will give it thus. "First of the Country, that it is plentiful and "large, circled about with a chain of Mountains, the "two famous Rivers *Oechardes* and *Banthiſis* with a ſtill "and ſlow ſtream running thorow the middle of the in-"cloſed Plain, ſpaciouſly ſtretched out to the ſides of the "*precipices*: in one place large and open, in another ly-"ing flat and low with an eaſie deſcent; in which re-"gard they have abundance of Corn, ſtore of Cattel, "and plenty of *Orchards*. The temperature of the Air "pleaſant and wholſome, the conſtitution of the weather "clear and pure, the blowing of gentle winds moſt commodious, and the Woods with a pretty glimmering of "light, both within and under them: from whence the "people with much ſprinkling of water, ſoftening that "which the Trees bring forth like a kind of *Fleece*, kemb "a moſt fine and tender matter, which they ſpin into "*Silk*, ſerving in former times for the Nobility and Gen-"try, now become common to thoſe alſo of inferiour "rank. Then for the People, he ſaith, that they are a fru-"gal Nation, lovers of quiet, not troubleſome unto their "Neighbours, without the uſe of Arms, and the know-"ledge of battels, declining the company of Strangers, "and ſo far from covetouſneſs, or curioſities, that when "any Merchants come unto them to buy their *Silks*, "without much beating of the price, they let them "have ſuch things as are bred amongſt them, without "looking after the Commodities of other Countries. So he. And if he did over act the *Panegyriſt* (as I ſee no reaſon why he ſhould) never were people happier in the place of their dwelling, nor Country happier in its people.

Chief Mountains of it (and Mountains they had very many) were 1 the *Montes Caſii*, and 2 *Auzacii* towards the East. 3 The *Annibæ*, environing a great part of the Country. 4 The *Aſmarei*, 5 and thoſe called *Serici*, near the City *Sera*. 6 *Tagurus*. 7 *Enuodorus*, and 8 *Ottorocorus*: But all of them probably the ſpurs and branches of the great Mountain *Imaus*; But by what names now called it is hard to ſay; and no leſs hard to ſay how to accommodate the names of the Rivers ſpoken of before, to thoſe which we find mentioned in the ancient Writers; the principal of which (all flowing out of theſe great Mountains) are, 1 *Oechardes*, by *Pliny* called *Cambris*, riſing out of the *Montes Auzacii*; 2 *Pſitara*, iſſuing out of the *Aſmiri*. 3 *Bautiſus*, whoſe Fountain is in the *Montes Caſii*. And 4 *Lanos*.

Towns of chief note amongſt them, 1 *Sera*, which gave the name of *Serica*, and *Seres*, to the Province and People. 2 *Ottorocora*, near the Hills ſo called; whence it had the name. 3 *Iſſedon*, for diſtinction ſake called *Iſſedon Serica*, to difference it from another of that name in *Scythia*, called *Iſſedon Scythica*; the chief City of the *Iſſedones*, *gens magna*, one of the greateſt Nations in all the Country, as is ſaid by *Ptolomy*; and like enough to be that City of the *Cathayans*, which made that notable reſiſtance unto *Cingis* (which before I ſpake of) in his firſt attempts upon this Country. 4 *Oroſana*, 5 *Droſache*, 6 *Daxata*, of which little memorable. Some other Cities there were in it (about nine more being named by *Ptolomy*) of which we find nothing but the names, and therefore I ſhall paſs them over without further mention.

But here it is to be obſerved, 1 That *Ptolomy* gives unto this Country, and to ſome of the Towns or Cities of it, ſuch a Northernly Latitude (ranging the furtheſt parts thereof in the ſame *Parallel* with the Iſle of *Thyle*) as cannot poſſibly agree with that fertility of ſoyl, and delightful temper of the Air, which is given to *Serica*. 2 That he tells us of a *Promontory* called *Tabyn*, ſituate *in Extrema terræ*, in the extremities of the Country between North and East, which I cannot but extreamly wonder at, conſidering that he ſhuts up this Country on the East and North with a *Terra Incognita*, and extends not any part thereof towards the Sea, rendering it thereby uncapable of any ſuch *Promontory*. 3 That ſome of our late Writers, both in their Tables and their Maps, have placed the Regal City of *Cambalu* ſo far towards the North, as very ill agreeth with that pleaſantneſs and ſweetneſs of ſituation, which induced the great *Chams* to make choice thereof for the Seat Royal of their Empire. But as we may eaſily pardon theſe miſtakes of *Ptolomy* in places ſo far

far distant from him, and then but little known to the *Greeks* and *Romans*; so we may as easily pardon these of the later times, who grounding on the authority of so eminent an Author, have in some things been misguided by him: it hapning very many times (which I find somewhere mentioned on the like occasion) *Magnos errores, magnorum virorum authoritate, transmissos*, that great errors are often entertained upon the credit of their Authors.

The old Inhabitants hereof, in those parts which lay next the *Scythians*, are said to have been *Anthropophagi*, or Man-eaters, most probably a *Scythian* Nation, that Custome being so abhorrent from the mildness of the *Serican* temper. Or else, we must correct the Copies of *Ptolomy*, by the History of *Ammianus Marcellinus*, who instead of *Anthropophagi*, placeth the *Alitrophagi* in the self same Tract. The other Nations not distained with the like reproaches, are the *Sizyges*, and *Anabi*, not far off the *Auzacian* Mountains; the *Piala* near the River *Oechardes*; the *Geranei*, and *Rhabbanei*, their neerest neighbours; the *Throani* dwelling towards the East, the *Batæ* and *Ottocorovæ* more towards the South. These with the residue, governed by a Common-Council of 5000 men, every one of which was to find an *Elephant* for the service of the Common-wealth, as was said before. And more than this we hear not of them in the way of Story; the Natives never going abroad with their wares, and having little speech with Strangers, when they come amongst them. Being vanquished by the *Chatæ*, a *Scythian* Nation, from whom it is like that it took the name of CATHAY; (for in this we go but by conjecture) they continued under Kings of their own, till subdued by the *Tartars*, against whom they made such stout resistance, being besieged by *Cingis* in their principal City, that when they wanted stones to cast out of their Engines, they supplyed that want with molten silver; and held it out so long, that *Cingis* finding Victuals to grow short in his Camp, commanded that every tenth man should be eaten. But at the last being undermined, the Town was taken, the Citizens massacred, and their King or Emperour (as some calle him) slain: after whose death, and not before, *Cingis* assumed the Title of the *Cham*, or Emperour. The residue of their Story we shall have hereafter.

SCYTHIA EXTRA IMAUM was bounded on the East, with *Serica*; on the West, with *Imaus*; on the South with *India extra Gangen*; and on the North, with the Countries comprehended in the name of *Altay*, which *Ptolomy* hath given us in the notion of the *Terra Incognita*. Called *Scythia* because planted by a brood of the *Scythians*. *Extra Imaum* was put to it, to difference it from that part of *Scythia* which lay on the West side of that Mountain, neerest unto the *Greeks* and *Romans*. But now the Mountain, and the Country, have the name of *Altay*.

To look upon it as it standeth by the name of *Scythia extra Imaum*, we find not any thing delivered of the Rivers or Mountains of it, but what is common unto them with the neighbouring Nations: the Mountains called *Auzacii*, and *Casii*, and *Ennodorus*, being common unto this with *Serica*; as *Imaus* jointly to both the *Scythia's*, which it divided anciently the one from the other: though now this last be reckoned to belong to *Cathay* alone, because the *Tartars* on both sides of it profess themselves subjects to that *Cham*. This the most famous Mountain in the East of *Asia*, beginning at the shores of the *Scythick* or Frozen Ocean, and extending thence directly Southwards unto Cape *Comari*, a Promontory of the Southern or *Indian* Seas. By which account it divideth the *Greater Asia* into East and West, as *Taurus* doth into North and South, which Mountain it crosseth in right Angles, about the Longitude of 140. as before was said. That part hereof which lyeth on the South of *Taurus*, was by the Ancients called *Bitigo*; and by the modern is named *Gates*: of which we shall speak more when we come to *India*. That on the North of *Taurus*, called *Imaus* properly, was anciently most memorable for dividing the vast Countries of the *Scythians*, into *Scythia intra Imaum*, and *Scythia extra Imaum*; a division much observed by the old Geographers: now chiefly memorable for being the Sepulchre of some of the *Chams* of *Tartary*; most generally known by the Name of *Altay*, but by some called *Belgion*.

Chief Towns hereof were 1 *Auzacia*, at the foot of the hills so named. 2 *Chaurana*, the chief City of the *Chaurqnæi*. 3 *Seta*. 4 *Issedon Scythica*, so called to difference it from the other of that name in *Serica*. These with the rest, and all the Country, as far as it was known in the days of *Ptolomy*, inhabited by the *Abii*, *Hippophagi*, or horse-eaters, a diet still used by the *Tartars* or modern *Scythians*. 2 The *Issedones*, who are said by *Pomponius Mela* to make carousing cups of their Fathers heads, first trimmed and gilded. 3 The *Cauranei*, and 4 the *Chatæ*, who being (as it seemeth) the most potent Nation, caused all the rest to be called by the name of *Cathay*, communicating that name also to the conquered *Seres*. Besides the possessions of which Tribes, there was also the Regions of *Achassa*, *Cusia*, and *Auxuatis*; these last so called from the Mountains upon which they stand. More than this we have not to say of this Country by the name of *Scythia*, there being nothing memorable of it in the course of story, or worth the observation in the way of Chorography.

ALTAY is bounded on the South, with *Cathay*, specially so called, and part of *China*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; on the West, with the great Mountain *Imaus*; and on the East, with the Nations or Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*. So called from its neighbourhood to that mighty Mountain, which the *Tartars* in their Language call by the name of *Altay*.

The Country utterly unknown to the ancient Writers, and not much canvassed or travelled by our Modern Pens. In which respect I shall now trouble my self no further, than by giving a brief touch on the several parts of it. Of which the most that can be said, will be but little for the information of the judicious Readers; who are not to be bettered by the names of places, if there be not something in them of further use. Now for these Provinces the principal of them are, *Cascar*, 2 *Chesmur*, 3 *Lop*, 4 *Camul*, 5 *Tainfu*, 6 *Caindu*, 7 *Carazan*, 8 *Cardandan*, 9 *Erginul*, 10 *Tanguth*.

1. CASCAR, bordering on the North-West of *China*, a *Mahometan* Country, but admitting of some Christians also; the largest Kingdom in all *Altay*, except *Tanguth* only, and furnished with many Towns or Cities both of Trade and Note, the principal whereof are 1 *Hiachan*, the Royal City of this Country, and Mart famous for concourse of Merchants; and variety of Merchandises. 2 *Cialie*, the chief Town of a Province or Kingdom so named, but subject to the King of *Cascar*, who in the year 1603 was called *Mahomet Chan*, a Prince of credit in those parts, but neither equal in Fort or Power to the King of *Tanguth*. The people generally rude and barbarous, in so much that some parts here of both Sexes do indulge themselves this mutual priviledge, that if the Husband or the Wife be absent above twenty daies, the other party is at liberty to marry again.

2. CHESMUR, the Inhabitants whereof are generally both *Idolaters* and *Inchanters*, causing the dumb *Idols* to speak, the winds to rise, and the Sun to be dark-

darkned. For ſtudying which *black Arts* (if they come to them by ſtudy) they have many *Monaſteries*, in which their *Hermites* or *Monaſticks* live a ſtrict kind of life, and are very abſtemious.

3. *LOP*, memorable for a great Deſart of thirty days journey; ſo true a *Deſart*, that whoſoever doth not mean to be ſtarved, muſt carry all his victuals with him. Dangerous to Travellers, if not before-hand made acquainted with their danger: the *evil ſpirits* uſing to call men by their names, and make them go aſtray from their company, where they periſh with famine, or are devoured with wild beaſts. The chief Town hereof called *Lop*, giving name to both.

4. *CAMUL*, an Idolatrous Country, the people whereof account it a great honour to them to have their Wives and Siſters at the pleaſure of ſuch as they entertain. From which brutiſh cuſtome when reſtrained by *Mango Cham*, they petitioned him at three years end to be reſtored again to their former liberty; *proteſting* they could never thrive, ſince they left that cuſtome. Which deſire of theirs was at laſt granted, and is ſtill in uſe.

5. *TAINFU*, more civil than the reſt, the people being very induſtrious and good Artificers; making the moſt part of the Arms which are uſed by the *Cham*; and ſome alſo which they ſell to Merchants.

6. *CAINDU*, with a Town in it of the ſame name, of great reſort by Merchants (ſuch as we commonly call *petit Chapmen*) for *Womens Veils* here made, with very great Art, of the Barks of Trees. And it is well that they have Veils to hide their ſhameleſsneſs, the Women of this Tract being proſtituted unto every Traveller.

7. *CARAZAN*, inhabited by a barbarous and ſavage people, who in the day time live in Dens for fear of Serpents, with which (and ſome of them 10 paces long, and ten ſpans in thickneſs) they are much infeſted; and in the night go forth to prey upon Wolves and Lions. They have an uſe, that when any ſtranger cometh into their houſes, of an handſome ſhape, to kill him in the night: not out of deſire of ſpoil, or to eat his body: but that the ſoul of ſuch a comely body might remain amongſt them.

8. *CARDANDAN*, near *Carazan*, and as ſavage as that. The people whereof draw black lines on their bodies, which they count for the greateſt Ornament. In caſe of ſickneſs they ſend not to the *Phyſitian* but the next *Inchanters*, who taking Counſel of the Devil, apply ſome remedy; or if they think the man paſt cure they tell him that his offences are grown too great to admit of help; and ſo put him off.

9. *ERGIMUL* poſſeſſed by an Idolatrous people, but mixed with ſome *Mahometans*; and *Neſtorian Chriſtians*. In which Country they have certain *Bulls* as big as *Elephants*, with Mains of fine *white hair*, like ſilk; ſome of which they tame; and betwixt them and their Kine engender a Race of ſtrong and laborious beaſts, not inferiour in that kind to Oxen. Here is alſo found a beaſt of an exquiſite ſhape, but not bigger than a *Goat*, which at every Full Moon hath a ſwelling under the belly; which being cut off by the Hunters, and dried in the Sun, proveth to be the beſt *Muſk* in the World.

10. *TANGUTH*, the greateſt and moſt potent of all the reſt, bordering on the North of *Cathay*, ſpecially ſo called, and (like to that) inhabited by an induſtrious and laborious people, amongſt whom the Art of Printing is ſaid to have been extant a thouſand years. Bleſſed heretofore with a great increaſe of *Chriſtianity*; but now the *Gentiles* or *Idolaters* make the greateſt part, with ſome *Mahometans* amongſt them. And for the ſerving of thoſe Idols, they have not only many large and beautiful Temples, built in the manner of *Chriſtian* Churches, and capable of 4 or 5000 perſons: but alſo many fair *Monaſteries* for the uſe of their *Votaries*, and *Recluces*. They are poſſeſſed of many Towns, moſt of them well fortified, and planted with good ſtore of Artillery. The chief of which, 1 *Sacbian*, bordering on the *Deſart* of *Lop*, inhabited by ſome of all three Religions; in which it is affirmed that they firſt uſed the *Art of Printing*. 2 *Campion*, the *Metropolis*, or Mother City of this Country; where the Chriſtians in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, had three fair *Churches*: now over-numbred by the *Gentiles*, who have here many *Monaſteries* for the uſe of their *Idols*, and many Religious perſons dedicated to their ſervice only. Who though they live more honeſtly than the reſt of their *Order*, and hold it an impiety to tempt a woman to the act of Luſt; yet if the woman make the offer, they hold it no ſmall ſin to refuſe her curteſie. 3 *Sauta*, a Town in the middle way betwixt *Campion* and *Succuir*, as being five daies journey from the one, and ſix daies journey from the other; by which we may conjecture at the long extent of this King's Dominions. 4 *Succuir*, ſituate amongſt Mountains cloathed with *Rhubarb*, from whence conveyed by Merchants over all the world; but ſo neglected by the Natitives, that did not the foreign Merchant bring it into requeſt, they would ſcorn to gather it. This once a Kingdom of it ſelf, made ſubject afterwards with *Tanguth*, to the *Cham* of *Cathay*, or the great *Cham* of *Tartary*. But the fury of this *Tartarian* tempeſt, being overblown, the Kings of *Tanguth* did not only recover their ancient Royalty, but by degrees poſſeſſed themſelves of the moſt part of the reſt of *Altay*, and perhaps part of *Cathay* alſo, being looked on at the preſent as the greateſt and moſt puiſſant Prince betwixt the Mountains of *Imaus* and the Eaſtern *Tartars*, to the deſcription of whoſe Countries we do next proceed.

The Countries of the Eaſtern *Tartars* are bounded on the Weſt, with *Altay*; on the Eaſt, with the *Oriental Ocean*; on the North, with *Tartaria Antiqua*; and on the South, with *China*; ſo called from their Eaſtern ſituation, in regard of thoſe of *Cathay* and *Altay*, which by the *Chineſes* are called commonly the Weſtern *Tartars*.

The Country not very fruitful, becauſe ill cultivated, ſo that the chief commodities which they ſend abroad, are, the Root called *Ginſem*, ſo much eſteemed amongſt the *Chineſes*, and all ſorts of precious ſkins, as thoſe of *Caſtor*, *Martron*, and *Zibellins*; and alſo Horſe-hair, of which the *Chineſes* make their Nets, and the men (though madly) uſe it in tying up their hair, as the handſomeſt dreſs they can appear in. With theſe Commodities they traffique into *Leaotong*, a Province of the Northeaſt of *China* (from which they are parted only by an Arm of the Sea) where commonly they make good Markets, their Merchandiſe being thence diſperſed into all parts of that Kingdom. The people are generally of broad Faces, their colour White, but their Noſe is not ſo flat, nor their Eyes ſo little as the *Chineſes* are, ſparing of ſpeech, and ſomewhat penſive, but neither ſo unſociable as their neighbours of *China*, or ſo barbarous and rude as the *Tartars* of *Europe*. They ſhave both the head and beard, reſerving only the *Muſtaboes*, which they extend to a great length, and in the hinder part of their head they leave a Tuft, which being curiouſly woven and plated, they let hang down careleſly below their ſhoulders; they have a round and low Cap, which is alwaies garniſhed round with ſome precious ſkin three fingers broad, of *Caſtor* or *Zibellin*, and ſerveth to defend their Temples, Ears, and Foreheads from Colds, and other Tempeſts. That which

appears

appears above the skin being covered over either with curious red Silk, or else with black and purple Horse-hair, which they dye and dress most curiously; so as their appurtenances being handsomly joyned together makes the Cap both commodious and handsome. Their garments are long Robes falling down to the very foot, but their Sleeves are not so long and large as the *Chineses* use, but rather such as are used in *Poland* and *Hungary*, only with this difference, that they fashion the extremity of the sleeve ever like a Horse's Hoof. At their Girdle there hangs on either side two Handkerchiefs to wipe their face and hands, besides there hangs a Knife for all necessary uses; with two Purses, in which they carry *Tobacco*, or such like commodities. On their left side they hang their Scymitars, but so as the Point goeth before, and the Handle behind; and therefore when they fight they draw it out with the right hand behind them without holding the Scabbard with the other. They seldom wear shooes, and use no Spurs to their Boots, which they make either of Silk or of Horse-skin very neatly dressed; but they often use fair Pattens, which they make three fingers high. In riding they use Stirrups, but their Saddles are both lower and broader than ours. In matters of War they are very nimble, never carrying any baggage with them, nor taking care for provision, but filling themselves with what they find; yet commonly they eat flesh, though half washed or half boyled: and if they find none, they fall upon their Horses and Camels. The earth covered with their Horse-cloth is their bed, for they care not for houses and chambers; but if they be forced to dwell in houses, their horses must lodge with them, and they must have many holes beaten in the walls to let in the air; but yet their Tents are most beautiful, which they fix and remove with such Art and dexterity, as they never retard the speedy march of an Army.

They inhabit amongst many other Provinces, those of *Sumahania*, *Tanin*, *Gupi*, *Niulhan*, and *Niuche*; of which I am able to say nothing in the way of *Chorography*, or of the four first in way of *History*; only I find that those of *Niulhan* were aiding to the King of *Niuche*, in the Conquest of *China*: and of the *Gupi* it is written, that they are so called, by reason they make their Coats of defence or Brest-plates of Fishes skins, which grow (as is affirmed) in a manner impregnable. None of which Nations count themselves originally of *Tartarian* Race. Yet either terrified by the noise of their great successes, or willing to partake of some part of their fortunes, they not only aided them in their Wars on that side of *Imaus*, but were content to take their very name upon them. Never invaded nor subdued till the time of *Hombu* King of *China*, who having driven the Western *Tartars*, then Lording it over that Kingdom, from one part of it to another, compelled them finally to betake themselves unto those parts and Provinces of the Eastern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom or Province of *Niuche*, where the War followed after them also, till by little and little they became more quiet; compelled to beg their Peace of the Conquering Enemy; divided into seven *Hordes* or Tribes, and governed for a long time by their several *Chiefs*, they became at last united into one Kingdom called the Kingdom of *Niuche*, *Anno* 1550. or thereabout. Oppressed by the *Prefects* of *Leaotong* in the way of their Trade, and suffering amongst many other indignities the death of their King, whom those *Prefects* had entrapped and murdered, they make complaint of these outrages to the King of *China*; and finding no remedy at his hands, put themselves into Arms, invade the Province of *Leaotong*, take the City of *Leaotong*: and having besieged the King himself in the Royal or Imperial City of *Peking*, they returned home (finding no hope of taking it at that time) with the spoil and plunder of all those parts through which they marched. The War thus first begun was managed for many years with great loss on both sides, the *Tartars* having got nothing by it, but the Eastern parts of the Province of *Leaotong*, and the honour of having shewed themselves twice more at the Walls of *Peking*, till in the year 1614. being invited into *China* by *Usangueius* to support the then falling fortune of the Royal Family, they husbanded the opportunity so well, as to make themselves the absolute Masters of that mighty Kingdom. The whole story and successes of which notable action, we shall sum up in brief when we come to *China*. In the mean time take here the Catalogue of

The KINGS of *NIUCHE*.

1550 1, 2 *N. N.* advanced unto this Kingdom after the reducing of the several *Hordes* into one main body, and Father of the King succeeding, who was slain at last by the treachery of the *Prefects* of *Leaotong*, as before was said.

1616 3 *Theienmingus*, who to revenge his Father's death, invaded *China*, took the City of *Leaotong*, braved the great Emperour at the Walls of the Regal City, and having enriched himself with the spoils of the Country returned home again.

1627 4 *Theienzungus*, the Son of *Theienmingus*, followed the War with the same fortune as his Father did, both of them growing greater in Renown and Riches than in Power and Patrimony.

1636 5 *Zungteus*, the Son of *Theienzungus*, secretly brought up amongst the *Chineſe*, by means whereof he grew not only acquainted with the conditions of that people, but their weaknesses also; and consequently was the better prepared to lay the foundation of that greatness to which the *Tartars* have attained by the Conquest of it. Called into *China* by *Usangueius*, as before is said, he possessed himself of the City of *Peking*; and though he died as soon as he was Master of that City only: yet left he such instructions to his Brothers, and the rest of his Council, that very easily and speedily they possessed themselves of all the Kingdom.

1644 6. *Xunchius* the Son of the former, of the age of nine years only at the death of his Father, the management of his affairs both for War and Peace being committed to his Uncles, but chiefly unto *Amavangus* the eldest of them, by whom so prudently conducted, that within the space of four years he was quietly settled in that Throne, all opposition and pretenders to the Royal succession, being beaten down, of which more hereafter.

5. *TARTARIA ANTIQUA.*

TARTARIA ANTIQUA hath on the South, *Altay*, and the Countries of the Eastern *Tartars*; on the West and North, the main *Scythick* Ocean; on the East, the Streights of *Anian*, (if such Streights there be) by which parted from *America*. So called, because the first habitation of the *Tartars*; who from this Den or Goal,

Goal, made their first eruptions, and have since overgrown so much of *Asia*.

The Country cold and comfortless, as lying under the *Polar Circle*, and in part beyond it; not fit for any but such as can live no where else: yet heretofore a receptacle of many Christians (though those of the *Nestorian* Sect) who here enjoyed that liberty of their Religion, which the *Persians* and *Saracens* denied them in more pleasing Countries. It containeth many Regions, some not considerable. Those of most note, are 1 *Thebet*, 2 *Tabor*, 3 *Tenduc*, 4 *Barbu*, 5 *Anian*, and 6 *Tartar*.

1. *THEBET*, a fenny *Region*, and full of Woods, rich in *Coral*, which they find on the Sea-shore, and use it instead of money. So named from the chief City of it, the ordinary Seat of the *Abassie*, or Pope of this Idolatrous People; much reverenced, and having in his power the disposing of all Offices, which concern the service of their *Idols*. They have also some good store of *Musk*, and abundance of wild beasts which are bred in their Forests: But no beasts wilder than the People, who in times past (if not at the present also) used to bury their Parents in their own bowels, and to make drinking cups of their sculls; for fear lest in the midst of their jollity they should forget their Progenitors. Yet not more barbarous than immodest; it being contrary to their custom to take a Wife that is a Virgin. And therefore the Mothers use to prostitute their Daughters to the Merchant-Strangers, who having had their pleasure of them, gratifie them with a Jewel, or some other Present, which they wear on their Wedding-day: she being the most acceptable Bride to her husband, who bringeth the greatest *Dowry* with her of those base rewards. It contained once several petit Kingdoms, (*Homagers* to the Kings of *Tenduc*) with many Cities; but now laid desolate by the *Tartar*.

2. *TABOR*, once a distinct Kingdom also. One of the Kings whereof in the year 1540. came to the Courts of *Charles* the Fifth, and *Francis* the First; where he found Princely entertainment. But upon proof that he was a *Factor* for the *Jews*, and secretly solicited many unto that Religion; by the command of *Charles* he was burnt at *Mantua*.

3. *TENDUC*, a populous Kingdom of it self, but greater in name and power; the Kings hereof commanding all these Northeast parts, as far as the borders of *Cathay*. *Christian* in Religion, till the Conquest of it by the *Tartars*, though according to the *Nestorian* tendries: but now *Mahometan* for the most part, with some remainders, and but few of Christianity. Divided into many large and spacious Provinces, as *Chinchintales*, *Cerguth*, *Egrigaia*, *Cercham*, others of less note; so called according to the names of their principal Towns, or having some Towns in them of the name of the Provinces.

Those of most note in *Tenduc* it self, 1 *Coras*, the ordinary sepulture of the Kings of *Tenduc*, before it was subdued by the *Tartars*, and since that also. 2 *Caracoras*, where *Cingis* was first honoured with the Title of King. the Kings hereof bearing the Port of Kings, and the Office of Priests, were anciently called by the name of *Presbyter Johannes*, or *Prester John*: a Title now erroneously conferred by some on the Emperour of the *Abassines*, or *Æthiopians* in *Africk*. Concerning which it is a wonder, that *Joseph Scaliger*, a man of such infinite reading, should be so deceived: and by the Authority of his judgment deceive so many. For finding that there was a *Presbyter Johannes* in the North of *Asia*, and hearing vulgarly that Title given unto him in *Africk*, he fell upon a fancy that this *Abassine* Emperour was formerly of so great power, as to extend his Empire over *India*, and the North of *Asia*; and in this last, for the assurance of his Conquests, to hold his residence. A monstrous, and undefensible fancy! For besides that, all Histories, even those of the *Abassines* themselves, are silent in it: how improbable is it, that a King reigning in the heart of *Africk*, should subdue the most remote parts of *Asia*; and there keep his Court, so many great States and most puissant Nations, being interposed; or that so memorable an exploit should be buried in silence, and found in no record but in *Scaliger's* head! Besides it is well known, and generally granted, that the *Presbyter John* of *Asia*, was by Sect a *Nestorian*; but he that is so called in *Africk*, of the Sect of the *Jacobites*: and further, that the *Christians* of *Æthiopia* are circumcised, which never was reported of those of *Asia*.

Letting this pass therefore as an unwarrantable, and ill grounded fancy, we are to know that formerly this Province of *Tenduc*, was under the old Kings of *Cathay*, till the time of *Cin Cham*, the King thereof. After whose death a certain *Nestorian* Shepherd (that is to say, the Master of great flocks of sheep) being Governour of the *Naymans*, a People of *Tenduc*, took to himself the Title of King of *Tenduc*; whom they called by the name of *Prest John*, or Prince *John* (the same word in their Language, as in the *Hebrew*, signifieth both *Priest* and *Prince*.) Dying he bequeathed his Estate and Flocks to his Brother *Unt-Cham*, (commonly called in one word *Uncham*) a greater Sheep-Master than he; whose Flocks ranged over all the Pastures of the *Moles*, or *Mongul Tartars*, though dwelling fourteen daies journey off, whom he had in subjection: the Title of *Priest John*, or *Presbyter Johannes*, going along with the dignity and Royal estate. And though afterwards this *Uncham* was subdued by the *Tartars*, yet his Posterity for long time were suffered to enjoy the Title of Kings and Presbyters; (but Vassals and *Homagers* to the Great *Cham*,) the Great *Chams*, in regard of their Nobility and Royal Parentage, bestowing their Daughters on them in Marriage; as is said by *William de Rubraquis*, who travelled in these Countries, *Anno* 1253. the King hereof being then named *George* (the fourth from *Uncham*) but commonly called *Presbyter Johannes*, as his Fathers were.

4. *BARGU*, on the extreme Northwest, bordering on both those sides the cold *Scythick* Ocean, situate under the North-star; of the same nature, both for the Soil and People as that of the *Tartars*. And

5. *ANIAN*, on the Northeast, opposite unto it, giving name unto the *Streights* of *Anian*, lying betwixt *Tartary* and *America*; which Streights (if any such Streights there be) the *Tartars*, and some other of these Northern Nations, are thought to have passed over, and to plant that Country.

6. *TARTAR*, so called of the great River *Tartar*, the principal of this Northern Tract, and giving name unto the *Tartars*: this being their Original Country, where they lived like beasts, having neither Faith, nor Letters, nor Habitation, nor the use of Arms, nor any Reputation amongst their Neighbours. In matter of *Religion*, the worst sort of *Gentiles*, worshipping the Sun, Moon, Fire, and the very Earth: to which they offered in the morning fasting, the first of their meats and drinks.

Their *Idols* made of *Felt*, and placed on both sides of the doors of their Tents or Booths, as the preservers of their Cattel, and the Authors of Milk. Divided into five *Clans* or Tribes, denominating so many Towns and Territories in which they dwelt, that is to say, 1 *Mongul*, 2 *Yeka Mongul* (or the *Great Mongul*,) 3 *Sommongul*, or the *Water-Mongul*, 4 *Mercat*, 5 *Metrit*: each of them governed by its *Chief*, as commonly it is amongst barbarous Nations; though all those *Chiefs* subordinate

to

to some higher power. Oppressed by *Uncham*, or *Untcham*, the King of *Tenduc*, who invaded their Pastures, and compelled them to pay unto him the tenth of their Cattel; with joynt consent they removed somewhat further off, and denyed their *Tribute*. This opportunity was taken by *Cingis*, one of the Tribe of the *Teka-Monguls*, and so well husbanded, that they admitted him for their King. For publishing abroad amongst the credulous people, that an armed man appeared to him in his sleep, with a white Horse, and said, *O Cangius*, or *Cingis*, *it is the will of immortal God, that thou be Governour of the* Tartars, *and free them from bondage and paying tribute*, he found a general belief; especially amongst those of his own *Clan*, who joyning themselves to him, followed him, as their *Ring-leader*, in all his actions. Thus backed and strengthened, he made war against the *Sommonguls*, slew their Commander, and subdued them: and by their help successively assaulted the *Mercats*, and *Metrits* whom he also vanquished. And having thus subdued all the *Clans* of the *Tartars*, and added the estates of *Thebet* and *Tanguth*, unto his Dominions, he was by the consent of the *seven Princes* or *Chiefs* of their *Clans*, (*Thebet*, and *Tanguth* being added to the former number) placed on a Seat on a peece of *Felt*, (the best Throne they had or could afford) and saluted King; with as great reverence and solemnity as their State could yield. And first to make tryal of his power, and their obedience, he commanded the *seven Chiefs*, or Princes to surrender their places, and each of them to cut off the head of his eldest Son: which was done accordingly. Had *John of Leyden* been a *Scholar*, as he was but a *Botcher*, I should think he had studyed the acts of *Cingis*, and proceeded by them. Assured by this of their fidelity and obedience, he set upon the *Naymans*, a People of the Kingdom of *Tenduc*, whom he overcame. And now conceiving himself fit for some great alliance, he sent to *Uncham*, and demanded one of his Daughters for his Wife; Which *Uncham* with some threats, but more scorn, denying, he marched against him, slew him in the field, and possessed his Daughter, and with her also his Estate. Proud with this good success, and encouraged by so great an increase of power, he invaded the Kingdom of *Cathay*; pretending for that also the authority of an *Heavenly Vision*, in the name of the *Immortal God*: in which attempt, discomfited at first with a very great overthrow, but at last victorious; conquering the several Nations of it one by one, till in the end he brought the War to the chief City of that Kingdom, which at last he took, and therewithal the Title of *Cham* or Emperour. Continuing in this Dignity for the space of six years, and every year adding somewhat to his Dominions he was at last woundeded in the Knee at the Castle of *Thaygin*; of which wound he dyed, and was honourably buried in Mount *Altay*.

This is the best account I am able to give of the beginning of this great Empire, the original of this spreading Nation, and the description of the Countrey of their first habitation. They that have *Christned* some of the most Northern parts of it, by the means of the *Tribes* of *Dan* and *Naphthalim*, and accordingly placed them in their Maps, might with more credit have supplied those vacant places, which they knew not otherwise how to fill, with the Pictures of wild beasts, or monstrous fishes; which might well enough have pleased the eye, without betraying the judgment of the looker on. Of his successors I am able to make no certain Catalogue; their names being doubtfully delivered, and the Succession much confounded amongst our Writers: the names of the *Provincial Sultans* being many times imposed upon us, instead of those of the *Chams* themselves. But we will wade through those difficulties as well as we can, and exhibit as perfect a Catalogue of them, as the light of Story will direct me: first adding (what should have been before remembred) that it is recorded, that *Cingis* before he joyned battel with *Uncham*, cosulted with his *Diviners* and *Astrologers* of the success They taking a green Reed, cleft it assunder; writ on the one the name of *Cingis*, and *Uncham* on the other: and placed them not far asunder. Then fell they to reading their *Charms* and Conjurations and the Reeds fell a fighting in the sight of the whole Army, *Cingis* Reed overcoming the other: whereby they foretold the joyful news of Victory to the *Tartars*, which accordingly hapned. And this was the first step, by which this base and beggerly Nation began to mount unto the Chair of Empire and Soveraignty, whereas before they lived like beasts, having neither Letters, nor faith, nor dwelling, nor reputation, nor valour, nor indeed any thing befitting a man, as before was said.

The Great CHAMS of the *TARTARS*.

A. C.

1162 1 *Cingis*, *Cinchius*, *Zingis*, or *Changius*, *was made* King or *Cham* of the *Tartars*; he subdued *Tenduc*, and *Cathaia*, changing the name of *Scythians* and *Scythia*, to *Tartarians* and *Tartaria*. 6.

1168 2 *Jocusban Cham*, or *Hoccata*, succeeded. In his time the name of *Tartar* was first known in *Europe*, *Anno*. 1212. in which year they drove the *Polesockie* from the banks of the *Euxine* Sea. By his Captain *Batbu*, or *Roide*, he subdued *Moscovia*, or *Russia*; planted his *Tartars* in *Taurica Chersonesus*; wasted *Hungaria*, *Bosnia*, *Servia*, *Bulgaria*; and by his other Captains took *Persia* from the *Turks*.

3 *Zaincham*, *Batbu*, or *Barchum*, ruined the *Turks* Kingdom of *Damascus*, and *Asia* the less.

4 *Gino Cham*, whose Daughter conveyed the Empire unto her husband *Tamerlane*, or *Tamberlane*.

1370 5 *Tamir-Cutlu*, *Tamir Cham*, or *Tamerlane*, a great Tyrant, but withall an excellent Souldier. It is thought, that he subdued more Provinces in his life time, than the *Romans* had done in 800 years. Of whose acts we have spoke at large. Dying, he divided his great Empire amongst his Children, as *Persia* to *Mirza Charock* his fourth Son, *Zagathay* to another, (perhaps unto *Santochus* his eldest Son) and so to others.

1405 6 *Lutrochin*, the second Son of *Tamerlane*, succeeded in *Cathay*, though the eldest was at first proclaimed, which his Father had before prognosticated: who when his Sons came to him before his death, laid his hand on the head of *Santochus*, who was the eldest, but lifting up the Chin of *Lutrochin*, who was the second. He lived not long, succeeded to by

7 *Allan*, who added little to his Estate.

8 *Mango Cham*, to whom *Haiton* an *Armenian* Prince (and the chief Compiler of the *Tartarian* History) went for aid against the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. By whose perswasion the said *Mango Cham* is said to have been *christned*, with all his Houshold, and many Nobles of both Sexes.

9 *Cublay Cham*, the Son of *Mango*.
10 *Tamor Cham*, the Nephew of *Cublay* by his Son *Cingis*.
11 *Demyr Cham*, the Great *Cham* of *Cathay* in the year 1540 or thereabouts. What the names of the *Chams* are who have since reigned, we cannot learn; nor what memorable acts have been done among them. The great distance of Countreys, and difficulty of the journey have hindred further discoveries. For the great *Cham*, and his next neighbour the King of *China*, will neither suffer any of their subjects to travel abroad, nor permit any Forreigners to veiw their Dominions, or enter into them: unless their Embassadours or Merchants, and those but sparingly, and under very great restraints, to avoid all giving of intelligence touching their affairs; saving that in these later times the Jesuites have found some footing in *China*, by whom notwithstanding, we have received little or no intelligence in matters which concern this Countrey.

The Government is tyrannical, the great *Cham* being Lord of all; and in his *tongue* (besides which they have almost no Laws) consisteth the power of life or death. He is called by the simple Vulgar, *The shadow of Spirits, and Son of the Immortal God*: and by himself is reputed to be the *Monarch* of the whole world. For this cause every day as soon as he hath dined, he causeth his Trumpets to be sounded, by that sign giving leave to the other Kings and Princes of the earth to go to dinner. A fine dream of Universal Monarchy. At the death of the *Cham*, the seven chief Princes assemble to crown his Son, whom they place on a black course cloth: telling him, if he reign well, Heaven shall be his reward; if ill, he shall not have so much as a corner of that black cloth to rest his body on: then they put the Crown on his head, and kissing his feet, swear unto him fealty and homage. And at the Funeral of these great Monarchs, they use to kill some of his *Guard Souldiers*, whereof he hath 12000 in continual pay; saying unto them, *Ite & domino nostro servite in alia vita. Paulus Venetus* reporteth, that at the obsequies of *Mango Cham*, no fewer then 10000 were slain on this occasion.

These *Chams* are for the most part severe Justicers, and punish almost every small fact with sudden death; but theft especially: Insomuch that a man in *Cambalu* taking a pail of milk from a womans head, and beginning to drink thereof, upon the womans out-cry was apprehended, and cut asunder with a sword; so that the bloud and the milk came out together. Nor are *Adultery* or *Lying* punished with less than death, and so ordained to be by the Laws of *Cingis*, their first Emperour. A wiser man, than possibly could be expected from so rude a Countrey, and of so little breeding in the knowledge of Books or Business; the *Tartars* being utterly without the use of Letters, till the conquest of the *Huyri*, a *Cathayan* nation but of Christian Faith.

What forces the *Great Chams*, in the height of their power, were able to draw into the field, may be conjectured at by the Army of *Tamerlane*, consisting of 1200000 Horse and Foot, as was said before. And looking on them as confined within *Cathay*, we shall find them not inferiour to the greatest Princes. For *Cublay Cham*, long after the division of this great Estate, which was made by *Tamerlane*, had in the field against *Naian* his Uncle, and one *Caiadus*, who had then rebelled, an Army of 100000 Foot, and 360000 Horse: their being 500000 Horse on the other side. Which made almost a million of men in both armies. And this is probable enough, if report be true touching the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, and those of *Turchestan*, (before reduced under the obedience of the other) of which the first is said to have been able to raise 300000 Horse, and the last an hundred thousand more. For standing Forces, he maintains 12000 Horse, distributed amongst four Captains, for the guard of his Person; besides which he hath great Forces in every Province, and within four miles of every City, ready to come upon a call, if occasion be: so that he need not fear any outward invasion, and much less any homebred Rebellions. But on the other side, admitting this for truth which before is said, we find him of no power at Sea, without which great Princes are exposed most commonly to the invasions and affronts of such as are strong in Shipping: For either the Eastern *Tartars* interposed betwixt him and the main Ocean, whereby he is Land-locked (as it were) from all Trade at Sea; or if he have any Port in the North-east parts of this long Countrey, where it joyneth on *Tartarea Antiqua*, it is so far off, and so much out of the way, that it adds nothing to his power, and not much to his purse.

Of the *Revennes* of the *Cham*, I can make no estimate, but may conclude them to be what he list himself: he being the absolute Lord of all, the Subject without any thing he can call his own. But that which ordinarily doth accrew unto him, is the tenth of Wool, Silk, Hemp, Corn, and Cattel. Then doth he draw into his own hands all the Gold and Silver which is brought into the Countrey; which he causeth to be melted, and preserved in his Treasury: imposing on his people instead of money, in some places *Cockl-shells*: in others, a black coin, made of the bark of trees, with his stamp upon it. And besides this he hath to himself the whole trade of *Pearl-fishing*, which no body upon pain of death dare fish for, but by leave from him. So that his treasury is conceived to be very rich, though his Annual in-come be uncertain, or not certainly known.

Hitherto I have prosecuted the affairs of this mighty Monarch upon the common credit of approved Authors yet must confess I am not very well satisfyed in the truth and reality of the thing it self: it being rather my opinion, that there is no such man at this present time as a great *Cham* of *Tartary* with Soveraign Power and Jurisdiction over all the other Members of that vast body; but that this Empire being broken in pieces by the Sons of *Tamerlane*, the conquered Countreys did by little and little return again to their former Governments, or else were seized on by the *Visi Chams* or Governours of the several Provinces. For first I consider it as impossible that there should be such a mighty Monarch, of such absolute authority, such an infinite power, and such unlimited Revenue; and yet that for the space of an hundred years and more we should hear neither tale nor tidings of them, no not so much as of their names, especially in an active age, and when this great building of the world hath such Casements in it. For it must needs seem strange to a rational man, that neither *Jenkinson* who passed into *Persia* by the *Caspain* Sea, nor Sir *Robert Sburley* who spent much time in the *Persian* Court, nor Sir *Thomas Roe*, or Sir *Dodmore Cotton* (the first Embassadour to the great *Mogul*, the other to the *Persian Sophy*) should tell us any thing of this Prince, if such Prince there be; or that the Travellers of our Nation who have rambled over all parts of *India*, the next neighbouring Countrey, should bring us home no tidings of him; or the *Jesuites* with all their diligence should not find him out. Secondly, I consider it is a thing improbable, that if there were any such mighty Prince, keeping his Royal Court in the City of *Cambalu*, so near unto the Kingdom of *China*, he should permit the beggerly Nations of the Eastern *Tartars* to conquer that rich and mighty Empire in so short a time, he in the mean season sitting still as a dull spectator, neither considering his own danger, nor putting in

for

for a ſhare of ſo great a booty. Thirdly, I obſerve that in the treating of a Marriage between *Xunchius* the great King of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, now reigning in *China*, with a Daughter of the King of *Tanguth*; the King of *Tanguth* is called Prince of the *Occidental*, or Weſtern *Tartars*, by which name the *Chineſes* call all the *Tartars* inhabiting the vaſt Countries of *Altay* and *Cathay*, ſpecially ſo called, (as being Weſtward of themſelves, and the Eaſtern *Tartars*,) which Title the King of *Tanguth* had not merited or durſt have aſſumed unto himſelf, if there had been any ſuch great *Cham* then raigning in *Cathay*, and reſiding in *Cambalu*, as our Authors ſpeak of. And fourthly, I obſerve it as a matter probable, that as at the breaking of this Empire into pieces upon the death of *Tamerlane*, the *Precopenſes*, or *Europæan Tartars* ſubmitted to a Prince of their own Nation, under the Power and Government of whoſe Succeſſours, they do ſtill continue: and much of the *Aſiatick Tartary* being ſubdued by the *Moſcovites*, the neigbouring *Tartars* did return to their ancient Government by *Hordes* or Tribes; that ſo the Kings of *Tanguth* might not only recover their own Inheritance, but by degrees poſſeſs themſelves of the greateſt part of all *Altay*, if not of ſome part of the *Proper Cathay* alſo. And therefore that ſome of the laſt great *Chams* mentioned in the former Catalogue, are no other than the Kings of *Tanguth*, or the *Chams* of *Zagathy*, in whom (if any where) remaineth the Succeſſion of the Houſe of *Cingis*.

From theſe Premiſes I conclude, that all which hath before been ſpoken touching the great power, authority, and revenue of the great *Chams* of *Tartary*, muſt either be referred unto the times of their greateſt glory, when their Empire was entire; or not much diſmembred; or elſe relate, with ſome qualifications, to the *Chams* of *Zagathay*, or the Kings of *Tanguth*. But theſe my *obſervations* and *conſiderations*, with the concluſion iſſuing from them I willingly ſubmit unto better Judgments.

And thus much for *TARTARY*.

OF CHINA.

CHINA is bounded on the North, with *Altay*, and the Eaſtern *Tartars*, from which ſeparated by a continued chain of hills, part of thoſe of *Ararat*; and where that chain is broken off, or interrupted, with a great Wall extended 400 Leagues in length; built as they ſay, by *Tziantzon*, the 117 King hereof; on the South, partly with *Cauchin-China*, a Province of *India*, partly with the Ocean; on the Eaſt, with the Oriental Ocean; and on the Weſt, with part of *India*, and *Cathay*; from which no otherwiſe ſeparated than by ſuch natural bounds, and Ramparts as commonly divide great Countries from one another.

The Northern parts hereof were utterly unknown unto the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*; But for the Southern parts hereof, they make up that Country which *Ptolomy* called *Sinæ*, or *Sinarum Regio*, by which name the whole Country is called at the preſent by our modern *Latiniſts*; and from whence that of *China* ſeems to be derived. By *Paulus Venetus* called *Mangi*, by the neighbouring Countries *Sanglai*, by the Natives *Taine*, and *Taybinco*: which laſt, ſignifies no other than a Realm; or by way of excellence, *the Realm*. By the *Arabians* it is called *Tzinin*; and the Inhabitants call themſelves by the name of *Tangis*.

It is ſaid to contain in circuit *69516 Diez* of *China* meaſure, which reduced to our *Europæan* meaſure, will make a compaſs in the whole of 3000 Leagues: the length thereof extended from the borders of *India*, to the moſt *Northern* Provinces of this Continent, 1800 Leagues. But they that ſay ſo, ſpeak at random. For beſides that 1800 Leagues in length, muſt needs carry a greater compaſs than 3000 Leagues, they make it by this reckoning to be bigger than *Europe*, which I think no ſober man will grant. And anſwerable to this vaſt compaſs, it is ſaid alſo to contain no fewer than 15 Provinces, every one of which is made to be of a greater Continent than the greateſt Realm we know in *Europe*: Yet not a Continent of waſte ground, or full of unhabitable Deſarts, as in other places; but full of goodly Towns and Cities. The names of which Provinces, and the number of their Towns and Cities, I have thought fit once for all, to lay down in this *Diagram* following.

The Provinces, Cities, and Towns in *China*.

	Prov.	Cit.	Tow.
1	*Canton*	37	190
2	*Foquien*	33	99
3	*Olam*	90	130
4	*Siſnam*	44	150
5	*Tolenchia*	51	155
6	*Canſay*	24	122
7	*Minchian*	25	29
8	*Ochian*	19	74
9	*Honan*	20	102
10	*Pagnia*	47	150
11	*Taitan*	47	78
12	*Quinchen*	45	113
13	*Chagnian*	43	95
14	*Suſnam*	41	105
15	*Quinſay*	31	114

By which it doth appear, that in theſe fifteen Provinces there are 591 Cities; 1593 walled Towns; and beſides them 1154 Caſtles, 4200 Towns unwalled; and ſuch an infinite number of Villages, that the whole Country ſeems to be but one City only. But here we are to underſtand that theſe great Provinces are divided into many leſſer, and ſome of them preſented to us (in late ſtories) under other names, according to the Languages and Appellations of thoſe ſeveral Nations, which either have recourſe unto them, or do traffique with them; which the Reader may take notice of with leſs doubt

or wonder, in regard that the main Country of *China* it ſelf is called by ſo many ſeveral names, as before was ſhewn.

It reacheth from the 130th. to the 160th. Degree of *Longitude*: and from the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, to the 53 Degree of *Latitude*. So that it lieth under all the *Climes* from the third to the ninth, inclusively: the longeſt Summers day in the Southern parts, being thirteen hours, and forty minutes; increaſed in the moſt Northern parts, to 16 hours and 3 quarters. Enjoying by this ſite an air ſomewhat of the hotteſt, eſpecially in thoſe parts which lie under the *Tropick*; but withal very ſound and healthy, and fit for the production of the choiceſt Fruits.

The Country very rich and fertile, inſomuch that in many places they have two, and in ſome three Harveſts in a year: well cultivated, and ſowed with all manner of Grain, and planted with the beſt kind of Fruits; which do not only come to a ſpeedy maturity, but to more excellency and perfection than any of theſe Weſtern parts. The like is alſo ſaid of their *Pearls* and *Bezoar*; fairer and of greater vertue than thoſe of *America*, or any other part of the world beſides. Particularly it aboundeth with Wheat, Barley, Rice, Wool, Cotton, Olives, Vines, Flax, Silk, all kind of Metals, Fruits, Cattel, Sugar, Honey, Rhubarb, Camphire, Ginger, all kinds of Spices, *medicinal wood*, call'd *China wood*, by the name of the Country, Musk, and Salt: the Cuſtom for which laſt in one City only, which is that of *Cantan*, amounteth to the yearly value of 180000 Crowns. It yieldeth alſo an *Herb*, out of which they preſs a delicate juyce, which doth not only ſerve them in ſtead of Wine, but preſerveth their health, and freeth them from many of thoſe inconveniencies, which the immoderate uſe of Wine doth breed to others. Such ſtore of Poultry of all ſorts, but of Ducks eſpecially, that in the Town of *Cantan* only before mentioned, it is thought there are 12000 eaten every day, one day with another.

The people are for the moſt part of ſwart complexion, but more or leſs, according to their nearneſs to the heat of the Sun, ſhort noſed, black eyed, and of very thin beards. They wear their Garments very long, with long looſe ſleeves, and their Hair much longer than the neighbouring *Tartars*, who wear their Hair exceeding ſhort, and their cloaths much cloſer; to which two Faſhions ſo addicted that more of them took up Arms for their Hair and Habit (when required to conform in thoſe particulars to the will of the Conquerour) than had done either for their King, or their common liberty. So much delighted with their own faſhion and compoſure, that as the *Negroes* uſe to paint the Devil White, as a Colour contrary to their own: ſo when theſe *Chinois* uſe to draw the Picture of a deformed perſon, they ſet him forth in a ſhort coat, broad eyes, long noſe, and a buſhy beard. They are much given unto their bellies, and eat thrice a day, but then not immoderately: drink their drink hot, and eat their meat with two ſticks of Ivory, Ebony, or the like, not touching their meat with their hands at all, and therefore no great foulers of Linnen. The uſe of Silver Forks with us, by ſome of our ſpruce Gallants taken up of late, came from hence into *Italy*, and from thence into *England*. Their Marriages they celebrate moſt commonly in the *New Moon*, and many times put them off till *March*, when the year beginneth with them as it doth with us: in which ſolemnity they ſpare for no coſt nor charge, Muſick, and Stage-plaies, and good chear many days together. Yet doth not this take them off a jot from their natural induſtry, and their proficiency in *Manufactures* and *Mechanick* Arts. For the Son is bound to follow his Father's occupation: which Law, preventing the roaving about of idle people, and exciting in each breſt an emulation in every Art, maketh the Inhabitants excellent Artificers. In giving Alms they are bountiful to the maimed, and the lame; but reject the blind, as being ſufficiently able to get ſuſtenance for themſelves by corporal labour, as grinding of Corn, *&c.* They have long enjoyed the benefit of *Printing* before it was known in *Europe*, but Print not as we do, from the left hand to the right; nor as the *Jews*, from the right hand to the left; but from the top of the leaf downward to the bottom. *Guns* alſo have been uſed among them time out of mind: whence they are ſo well conceited of themſelves, that they uſe to ſay, They themſelves have two eyes, the *Europæans* one, and the reſt of the people of the world not one. A pretty flouriſh of ſelf-praiſing. Now that *Guns* were in uſe in theſe Eaſtern Countries, and conſequently alſo amongſt them, even when *Bacchus* made his Expedition into *India* (which was ſome three or four years before, or after the departure of *Iſrael* out of *Ægypt*,) Sir *Walter Rawligh* ſeemeth to affirm: becauſe *Philoſtratus*, in the life of *Apollonius Tyaneus*, telleth us how *Bacchus* was beaten from a City of the *Oxydracæ*, by thunder and lightning; which he interpreteth to be the *Cannon*. But certainly himſelf in another place of his moſt excellent book, acknowledgeth this *Philoſtratus* to have written fabulouſly; and therefore no fit foundation for a conceit ſo contrary to probability, and the opinion of all times. Beſides, whereas *Dion* telleth us, that by the benefit of thunder and lightning from Heaven *Severus* diſcomfited *Peſcennius Niger*; and by the ſame means, was himſelf repulſed from the Walls of *Petra* in *Arabia*: we may (if this interpretation hold good) as eaſily maintain, that *Severus* had great Ordnance in his Camp; and the *Arabians* in their Town. As for *Printing*, whether *John Guttenberg* learned it of the *Chinois*; or whether good inventions, like good wits, do ſometimes jump, I dare not determine: ſure I am that he firſt taught it in *Europe*; and as ſome ſay, in the year 1440. At *Harlem* a Town of *Holland*, it is firſt ſaid to be practiced; and at *Mentz* perfected. Now whereas it is by ſome doubted, whether the Art of *Printing* be available to the proficiency and advancement of Learning, or not; I muſt not herein be both a Judge, and a party: but muſt leave the deciſion of the point to men unintereſſed. Only this I dare boldly ſay, that this moſt excellent Invention hath been much abuſed, and proſtituted to the luſt of every fooliſh and idle paper-blurrer: the Treaſury of Learning being never ſo full, and yet never more emty; over-charged ſo with the froth and ſcum of fooliſh and unneceſſary diſcourſes. In which (though all Nations have their ſhare therein, and we of late as much as any) the *Dutch* have been accounted the moſt blameworthy: who not content to ſcatter their *poor conceptions* amongſt themſelves, and Print them in their own Tongue only (as our *Engliſh Paper-blurrers* do) publiſh them in the *Latine* to the eye of others, and ſend them twice a year to the publick *Marts*, though neither worth the Readers eye, nor the Printers hand. *Scriptorum plus eſt hodie quàm muſcarum olim cùm caletur maximè*; the complaint once of an old *Comedian*, was never truer than at the preſent.

But not to dive too deep into this diſpute, the people, as before was ſaid, are good *Artificers*, Ingenious and excellent in all things which they take in hand: the *Porcellan* Diſhes, curious Carvings, and the fine Painted Works which we have in Tables, Leather, Stuffs, being brought from thence. Effeminated with much eaſe and pleaſure, they are not much given unto the Wars which make them the more eaſie prey to the Neighbouring *Tartars*, whoſe very name hath bred more terrours in them than their

Arms

Arms or Conqueſts. Inſomuch that when *Uſangueius*, requeſted Aid of *Zungteus* King of the *Eaſtern Tartars*, againſt *Lycunſtzus*, and his rabble of Rogues, which ſacked the City of *Peking*, and placed himſelf in the Throne Imperial; the *Tartarian* having bu few men in readineſs, adviſed him to array a good part of his own Souldiers with the Arms and Colours of the *Tartars*, that on the Terrour of that ſight he might obtain the cheaper, and more certain Victory; which prudent Counſel was purſued, and it proved accordingly: but what they want in courage, they ſupply with Wit, being ſaid to be a politick and judicious people; but withal very jealous of their women, and great Tyrants over them, not ſuffering them to go abroad, or ſit down at the Table if any ſtranger be invited, unleſs he be ſome very near Kinſman. A Tyranny or reſtraint, which the poor women give no cauſe for, being ſaid to be very honeſt and much reſerved; not ſo much as ſhewing themſelves at a window for fear of offence: and if they uſe painting, as moſt of them do, it is rather to preſerve themſelves in the good affections of their Husbands, than for any other lewd reſpects. For the moſt part of a fair Hair, whereof very curious, binding it about their heads with Ribbands of Silk, and garniſhed with Pearls and precious Stones. Neat in their dreſs, and very coſtly in their apparel, with reference to their eſtates, and the degree of their Husbands: the richer ſort wearing Sattin ſtrip'd with Gold, and interlaced with very rich Jewels; the poorer in Serge, and razed Velvets. They have moſt of them little feet, which they take great pride in, and for this cauſe bind them up hard from their very Infancy; which they indure patiently though it be very painful, becauſe a ſmall foot is accounted for ſo great a grace. And yet it is conceived that this proceedeth not ſo much ſtom their own curioſity, as from the jealouſie of the men, who have brought it in, to the end that they ſhould not be able to go but with a great deal of pain; and that going with ſo ill a grace, and ſo little eaſe, they ſhould have no deſire to ſtir much abroad. A cuſtom ſo Ancient and received, that it hath got the force of Law; and if any Mother ſhould do otherwiſe in breeding their Daughters, they would undergo ſome cenſure or mark of infamy. If a deſire to ſee their Parents get them the freedom of a viſit, they are carried to them in cloſe Chai s, and attended by ſo many waiters, that it is not poſſible for any man either to ſee them, or hold any diſcourſe with them.

Of both Sexes it is thought that this Country contaiſneth no fewer than 70 Millions. Which though it ſeem to be a number beyond all belief; yet it is knowingly averred, and may be thought probable enough, if we conſider the ſpaciouſneſs of the Country. 2 The ſecret goodneſs of the Stars, and temperature of the Air. 3 The abundance of all things neceſſary to life. 4 That it is not lawful for the King to make any War, but meerly defenſive, and ſo they enjoy perpetual peace. 5 That it is not lawful for any *Chinois* to go out of the Country. And 6 That here the Sea is as well peopled as whole Provinces elſewhere. For the Ships do reſemble a City, in which they buy, ſell, are born, and die. And on the ſeveral Rivers which water the Walls of *Nanquin*, and *Pequin*, for no leſs than 300 Leagues, the Ships are ſaid to be ſo thick ranked, that it ſeemeth to be a continual Street.

The people hereof in matters of Religion, are generally all *Gentiles*, and conceive thus of the Creation; *viz.* That there was one *Taine*, who created *Panzon*, and *Panzina*, whoſe Poſterity remained 90000 years; but they for their wickedneſs being deſtroyed, *Taine* created *Lutitzam*, who had two horns, from the right came men, from the left came women. When any of them dieth, they cloath him in his beſt apparel, all perfumed, ſet him in his beſt Chair, and their all his neareſt Kindred kneeling before him, take their leave with tears. When he is Coffin'd, they place him in a room richly furniſhed, and ſet by him a Table full of viands and good cheer, with Candles continually burning on it. Not much unlike to which Ceremonies, we find, how whileſt the funeral was preparing for *Francis* the *French* King, his Statue apparelled in Royal Robes, with the Crown, Scepter, *&c.* was laid on his Bed; whither Dinner and Supper was daily ſerved in, with the like State and Solemnity as when he was living. But to return again to my dead *Chinois*; when he has lain, as is above ſaid, fifteen days, he is carried forth to his Funeral, the place whereof is in the Fields; for to be buried within the Walls, were a thing of all others the moſt wretched. Hither, when they are in the manner of a Proceſſion, come; they burn his body, and with it Men, Cattel, and other proviſion, for his attendance and ſuſtenance in the other world: as they uſe in the Funerals of *Tartary*. As great *Idolaters* as any, ſacrificing to the very Devil, and that upon the ſame reaſon, as the moſt ignorant ſort of the *Gentiles* do; becauſe forſooth he is a wicked and miſchievous creature, and would otherwiſe hurt them.

Yet in the middle of this darkneſs there appeareth ſome light, whereby we may perceive that Chriſtianity had ſome footing here, in the times foregoing; for they believe, that *God* is an *immortal Spirit*; that by him the firſt man was made of nothing; that the Soul dieth not with the Body, but is capable of reward and puniſhment in another life, according to the works it hath done in this. Which leſt they ſhould be thought to be only ſome remainders of the light of nature, (the learned men amongſt the Ancient *Greeks* and *Romans*, having ſo much Divinity as this, without the *Goſpel*) we may here add, that the *Idol* moſt generally worſhipped by them, is painted with three heads looking one on another; ſignifying, as themſelves affirm, that they have all but one *will*, which makes ſome think they had been Anciently inſtructed in the Doctrine of the *Holy Trinity*. They have alſo the Picture of a very *fair Woman* holding a *Child* in her Arms, who, as they ſay, was Daughter of ſome great King; and that ſhe was delivered of that Infant when ſhe was a *Virgin*. And as ſome add, they have portraitures of the Faſhion, and with the marks or Characters of the twelve Apoſtles (as uſually painted in ſome part of the *Chriſtian* Church:) of whom they are able to ſay nothing, but that they were great *Philoſophers* who lived vertuouſly here, and were therefore made Angels in Heaven. And finally they hold, that there is a great number of Saints, or men Eſtated in an eminent degree of Happineſs, who in their times exceeded others in knowledge, induſtry, or valour, or lived an auſtere life without wronging any man: or otherwiſe deſerved nobly of the Common-wealth, as the Authors of ſome ſignal benefit unto their Country. Theſe I conceive to be ſome evident remainders of *Chriſtianity*, or the Remembrances rather of that *Chriſtianity*, which formerly was known amongſt them: firſt planted here (as may be probably collected) by St. *Thomas*, or ſome of his Diſciples; an Ancient *Breviary* or *Liturgy* of the *Indian* Churches, giving good hint to it: Where it is ſaid, *Per D.* Thomam *regnum cœlorum volavit, & aſcendit ad Sinas*: *i. e.* that by St *Thomas* the Kingdom of Heaven was Preached unto thoſe of *China*. Some *Characters* here were alſo of it, in the time of the *Tartars*, though now obliterated, and not viſible but in theſe defacements; And in this ſtate it ſtood till the time of our Fathers, in which the *Jeſuites* (commendably induſtrious in the propagation of the *Chriſtian Faith*) not without great danger to themſelves, have endeavoured, and in part

part effected, their *Converſion*. For though they have gained but few *Proſelytes*, (in regard of thoſe infinite numbers of people which are ſaid to live here) yet ſome *Converts* they have made amongſt them; and thereby ſown thoſe ſeeds of that ſaving Truth, (though mingled with ſome *tares* of their own) which may in time increaſe and ſpread over all the Country. For at the preſent they have not only got footing in the Ports and Sea-Towns; but alſo in many mid-land Cities, and in ſome alſo very far diſtant from the Sea, in all of which, they have both Churches for their followers; and Cells or Monaſteries for themſelves; and finally, have gained ſo far upon the Court, as not only to have their doings well approved of by Authority Royal; but have alſo gained unto the Faith, the Mother, Wife, and eldeſt Son of *Jungly* the laſt declared Emperour of the *Chineſes*, which eldeſt Son they have baptized (and be it an *happy Omen*; for the good of Chriſtendom) by the name of *Conſtantine*.

Hills of great Note here are not many, here being but one Mountain touched upon by *Ptolomy*, in his deſcription of the Country called *Sinarum Regio*, which we conceive to be the Southern part of this *China*: agreeable unto the obſervation of Modern Writers, by whom it is affirmed to be ſo plain and level, and ſo unſwelled with hills at all; that they have *Carts* and *Coaches* driven with *ſails* as ordinarily as drawn with horſes, in theſe parts. Not the leſs deſtitute of Rivers for this want of Mountains, *Ptollomy* naming in it, 1 *Aſpthara*, 2 *Senus*, 3 *Ambaſtus*, and 4 *Cotiaris*; all which had here there fount and fall: and yet he knew the out-skirts of the Country only. But becauſe the Country of the *Sinæ*, of which *Ptolomy* ſpeaks, make but a South part of this great Country, and the Rivers which before we mentioned in *Serica*, paſs into it alſo, it's poſſible enough, that we may find them all, amongſt the chief Rivers of this Country, whenſoever we ſhall come to have a more perfect Chorographie hereof than former times have given unto us. In the mean ſeaſon we may know, that the names by which the principal Rivers are now called, are 1 *Talo*, which riſing in the North-eaſt parts of the Country, and paſſing by the Southern skirts of *Leaotong*, falleth into the Ocean over-againſt the Iſland of *Corea*, making a little Iſlet at the Influx of it, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle called *Xainghai*, to ſecure that entrance. 2 *Croceus*, which ariſing in the Weſt borders hereof, firſt bendeth its courſe to the North-eaſt, watering the City of *Kaiangchen*, and after paſſeth directly Eaſtward, till it falls at laſt into the *Talo*. 3 *Polyſanga*, which iſſuing out of ſome of the branches of Mount *Imaus*, firſt paſſeth by the great City of *Cambalu*, and falls at laſt into the mighty Lake of *Quinſay*, and finally again contracted to its proper Channel, doth either loſe it ſelf in the Eaſtern Ocean, or in the great River of *Kiang*, of which more anon. 4 *Cacamacan*, another of theſe great Rivers which falleth into the Lake of *Quinſay*, and poſſibly may be the ſame which the *Chatayan Tartars* call by the name of *Caromoram*. 5 *Kiang*, (or *Quiam* as the *Tartars* call it) which having its original from Mount *Imaus*, and paſſing thorow the whole breadth of *Cathay*, cutteth thorow the middle of this Country which it divideth (like an Æquator) into North and South, watering therein the ſtately Cities of *Nanquin* and *Caifung* where it is no leſs than 4 miles broad, encreaſing more and more in breadth by the falling in of other principal Rivers, till it come at laſt to be 10 miles over, and caſting up ſuch Mountains of Water, that the *Chineſes* call it not undeſervedly, *The Son of the Sea*. 6 *Cianthang*, the ſame (I think) which the *Tartars* call *Quiantu*, which riſing out of ſome other ſpurs or branches of the Mount *Imaus*, falleth at laſt into this Country, and paſſing by the goodly City of *Hangchcu* on the North, and the fair Town of *Xaoking* on the South, endeth its courſe at laſt in the Eaſtern Ocean. 7 *Queio*, a River of the Southern parts, but not much obſervable. Here are alſo many great *Lakes* not inferiour to ſome Seas in bigneſs; ſo plentiful in fiſh, as if they contended with the ſoyl, which ſhould be moſt profitable: and yet ſo ſwelled with winds (though the winds many times blow ſtrongly) that both upon theſe *Lakes*, and on the Rivers and Sea-coaſts, they paſs up and down in ſmall Barks, with no other Sail than a Bough ſet up an end in the midſt of them; by the help whereof they make good ſpeed in their Navigations. Nor do theſe *Lakes* or Rivers uſe to overflow their banks, or endamage the Country: but when they do, it brings ſome fatal ruine with it; as in the year 1527. when the *Lake* of *Sancey* breaking out overwhelmed ſeven Cities, many Towns and Villages, and Country people, almoſt infinite numbers.

Towns of moſt Note amongſt the *Sinæ*, though nothing but the names be remaining of them, 1 *Bramna*; and 2 *Rhabana*, honoured with the title of *Civitates*, 3 *Aſpithra*, 4 *Achatara*, more within the Land; but all four under ſome degree of Northern *Latitude*. 5 *Thine*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, by ſome called *Sinæ*, 6 *Sarata*, 7 *Cateranagara*; theſe on the South ſide of the Line. But in this *Ptolomy* was miſtaken; it being found by the more certain obſervations of our later Writers, that no part of *China* comes within 20 degrees of the *Æquinoctial*; and ſo not capable of having any Towns or Cities of a *Southern* Latitude. Here was alſo a large Bay called *Sinarum Sinus*, a Promontory named *Notium*, in the fourth degree of Northern *Latitude*; and another named *Satyrorum*, lying under the *Æquinox*. More than this of the Cities of the ancient *Sinæ*, I have nothing to ſay, which I dare offer to the Reader.

But to behold them as they are preſented to our view in the Modern *China*, it hath been ſaid, that for number there are no fewer than 591 Cities; and thoſe ſo uniformly built; ſo conformable to one another, that they differ not in form and faſhion, but in quantity only. Much like the Cities of *Utopia*, mentioned by Sir *Thomas More*, *Idem ſitus omnibus; eadem, quatenus per locum licet, rerum facies*; ſo near reſembling one another, that he who knoweth but one of them, may conjecture at all. And this is the manner of their building. Moſt of their Cities have the benefit of ſome navigable River, near which they ſtand: the waters whereof ſerve them both for navigation, and domeſtick uſes. Two great Streets croſſing one another in the very midſt, ſo broad, that ten horſemen may ride a breſt in the narroweſt of them; ſo ſtrait, that a man ſtanding in the middle, may ſee either end; each end being ſhut up with a gate of great ſtrength and beauty; and thoſe Gates fortified and ſtrengthened with thick plates of Iron. Generally greater and more ſtately than thoſe of *Europe*, but defective in that point of elegancy which the *Magnificent* Churches, and more ſumptuous buildings for the diſpatch of publick buſineſſes, in theſe parts abound with. Their private houſes for the moſt part are alſo low, and deſtitute of Porches, Windows, Galleries, the principal ornaments and graces of *Architecture*. Nor are their Cities built only for reſort, or trade, but for ſtrength and ſafety, environed with deep and broad ditches, the Walls of brick or ſtone, ſtrong above beliefe, planted with Ordnance and Artillery in convenient places: and every night the Gates not only locked but ſealed; not to be opened till unſealed by the principal Magiſtrate. So like they are to one another that we may ſay with *Ovid* on the like occaſion.

——— *Facies non omnibus una,*
Nec diverſa tamen, qualem decet eſſe ſororum.

Which

Which I find thus Engliſhed by *G. Sandys*,

Amongſt them all no two appear the ſame,
Nor differed more than Siſters wellbecame.

But not to reſt our ſelves on this general *Character*, let us take a more particular view of ſome of the principal. And in that liſt we find, 1 *Quinſay*, called *Suntien* by the Natives, ſituate ſomewhat towards the ſouth, on the Weſtern borders of this Kingdom, where it confineth on *Cathay*; of this Town many things are reported beyond all belief, as namely, that it contained once in circuit an hundred miles, and had in the middeſt of it a *Lake* of 30 miles compaſs; in which *Lake* were two goodly Iſlands, and in them two magnificent Palaces, adorned with all neceſſaries, either for majeſty, or convenience; in which are celebrated the publick Feaſts, and the marriages of the better ſort; The *Lake* nouriſhed with divers Rivers, the chief being *Polyſanga*, and *Cacamacan*; on which Rivers 12000 Bridges are ſaid to have lifted up their ſtately heads: and under whoſe immenſe Arches, great Ships with Sails ſpread abroad, and *top* and *top gallant*, might and did uſually paſs. It is alſo ſaid to have had ten Market-places, each of them four miles aſunder, and every one in form *quadrangular*, the ſides thereof half a mile in length. Here were ſaid alſo to be twelve *Companies* of Tradeſmen or Artizans, each Company having 12000 Shops, and in all a million and 600000 Families. But whatſoever it was in the former times, certain it is that at this time (if it hath at this time any being at all) partly on the removal of the Court from hence to *Cambalu* by the *Tartars*; and ſince to *Nanquin* and *Pequin* by the *Princes* of the houſe of *Hombu*, and partly the fury of Wars, and partly by the violence of Earthquakes, it hath loſt no ſmall part of her ancient beauty and renown. 2 *Unguen*, famous for the abundance of *Sugar* there made. 3 *Nanquin*, ſeated 9 Leagues from the Sea, on the great River of *Kiang*, whereon ride for the moſt part no fewer than 10000 of the Kings Ships, beſides ſuch as belong to privat men. The Town in compaſs 30 miles, being girt with three fair brick walls, having large and ſtately Gates: The ſtreets in length two Leagues, wide and paved; the number of houſes is about 200000 ſo that it may equal four of the faireſt Cities of *Europe*. 4 *Pequin*, or *Pagnia*, in the middle of the Province ſo named (being one of the four Northern Provinces, which take up the whole breadth of this mighty Kingdom) where the King continually reſideth; and that, either becauſe the air hereof is more healthful and pleaſant, than any of the other, or becauſe it lieth near unto the *Tartars*, with whom the *Chinois* are in perpetual War: ſo that from hence the dangers which may by their invaſions happen unto the Countrey, may with more convenience be either prevented, or reſiſted. The City ſaid to be inferiour to *Nanquin* for bulk and beauty, but to exceed it in multitude of Inhabitants, Souldiers, and Magiſtrates, occaſioned by the King's abode. Environed on the South with two Walls, of ſo great breadth, that twelve horſemen may run abreſt upon them; on the North, with one Wall only, but that ſo ſtrong and vigilantly guarded, that they fear as little annoyance on that ſide as they do on the other. But the greateſt Ornament hereof is the Royal Palace, compaſſed about with a triple Wall, the outwardmoſt of which would well environ a large City; within which ſpace, beſides the many Lodgings for *Eunuchs*, and other Courtiers, are Groves, Hills, Fountains, Rivers, and the like places of pleaſure, larger in circuit, but not comparable for the Arts of *Architecture* to the Royal Palaces of *Europe*: Firſt built by ſome of the *Tartar* Kings of this Countrey in imitation of the Royal Palace of *Xaindu*, mentioned in *Cathay*, honoured ſometimes with the reſidence of the *Chams* themſelves, which as it gave unto the City the name of *Pequin*, that is to ſay, the Court or *City of the King*, in the Language of *China*, ſo gave it occaſion unto ſome Writers to make this and *Cambalu* the ſame, both names being of the ſame ſignification, though in divers Languages. 5 *Cantan*, ſuppoſed to be the *Cattigara* of *Ptolomy*, by the *Chinois* called *Quamcheu*, the leaſt of the *Metropolitan* Cities of this Countrey, but beautified with many triumphant Arches, a navigable River, large ſtreets, and many goodly Bridges. Fortified with deep Trenches, 83 Bulwarks, and ſeated in ſo rich a ſoil, both for Fowl and Cattel, that here are ſaid to be eaten daily 6000 Hogs, and 12000 Ducks, beſides proportionable quantity of other victuals. If this be one of the leaſt of their *Metropolitans*, what may we fancy of the greateſt? A Town in which the *Portugals* drive a wealthy trade, being permitted in the day-time to come within the City it ſelf, but at night excluded, and forced to find lodging in the Suburbs. By reaſon of which reſtraint they have ſetled their Mart at *Macao* the Port Town to this, where they have their Factor, and many families; the Town being almoſt wholly peopled by them. 6 *Leaotong*, the chief City of *Leaotong*, (another of the four Northern Provinces) and the firſt Town taken by the Eaſtern *Tartars* in their attempts upon this Kingdom, by this door making themſelves an entrance into all the reſt. 7 *Ninguiven* made the *Metropolis* of *Leaotong* after the taking of *Leangang* by the Eaſtern *Tartars*. 8 *Sigan*, or *Singan*, the chief City of *Xenſi*, another of the four Northern Provinces, and honoured ſometimes with the Kings reſidence. 9 *Xaoking*, on the Southſide of the River *Cienthang*, one of the faireſt Cities of *China*, ſo environed with ſweet waters, as a man may contemplate its beauty, as rounding it in a Boat; conſiſting of large and fair ſtreets paved on both ſides with white ſquare ſtones, and in the middle of them all runs a Navigable Channel whoſe ſides are garniſhed with the like ornament; and of the ſame ſtone there is alſo built many fair Bridges, and triumphant Arches; the houſes being all of the ſame ſtone alſo, which render it the neateſt (though not the biggeſt) City in this mighty Kingdom. 10 *Sucheau*, about two days journey from the Sea, ſeated in Mariſhes like *Venice*, but more commodiouſly, becauſe thoſe Mariſhes are of freſh water; the ſtreets and houſes founded upon Piles of *Pine-tree*; with many Bridges, and conveniences for paſſage both by land and Water. Well traded, as the fitteſt *Center* for diſperſion of Merchandiſe from all the other Ports of the Kingdom: by the multitude and frequency of ſhips, almoſt denying faith to the eyes, which would think all the Ships of *China* to be here aſſembled. So infinitely rich, that the ſmall Region whereof it is the Head, containing but eight Cities more, payeth 12 millions to the King of yearly incom. 11 *Hamſeu*, or *Hangcheu*, on the North ſide of the River *Cienthang*; out of which furniſhed with a Channel of great length and breadth, by which it trades into the Northern parts of this Kingdom; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Chequian*, about two days journey from the Sea, in compaſs leſs than *Nanquin*, but better builded: no places in it taken up with Gardens, Orchards, or other pleaſures; but all employed for Shops, Houſes, and other Edifices. So beautified with *Triumphant Arches*, erected to the honour of deſerving Magiſtrates, that in one ſtreet there are 300 of great maſs, of workmanſhip. The Temples magnificent and many; the bank-ſides of the Channels watring every ſtreet, beſet with trees of ſhade, and moſt excellent fruits: and in the middle of the City a round high Mountain, which gives the eye a gallant proſpect into every ſtreet. And not far off a pleaſant *Lake* of great breadth and length, the banks whereof are beautified with Groves and Gardens, and the *Lake*

it

it self even cloathed with Vessels of all sorts, on which the Citizens use to feast, and entertain their idle time with Plays and Spectacles. Two Cities so replenished with all kind of pleasures, that the *Chinois* use it for a Proverb, *Thien Xam, thien thum, ti Xamsu hum*, that is to say, Look what the Hall or Presence-Chamber is in Heaven, that *Hamseu* and *Sucheau* are on earth. 12 *Fochea*, beautifyed amongst many other stately Structures, with a Magnificent Tower erected on 40 Marble Pillars, of great elegancy, cost, and bigness, every Pillar being 40 spans in height, and 12 in breadth: not to be parrallel'd, as some say, by any the like work in *Europe*. 13 *Lochiau*, in which are 70000 Families. 14 *Colans*, famous for the best *Porcellane*. 15 *Scianhay*, by some called *Thiencin*, a station to which an incredible number of Ships resort, both by Sea and River from all parts of this Kingdom; seated within 24 hours sail of the Isle of *Japan*, and therefore defended with a strong Garrison, and a Navy. Situate in a pleasant and wholesom soyl, the whole Countrey so set forth with trees, as if it were one continued Orchard. So populous, that it containeth 40000. Housholds, most of which get their livelihood by weaving Cottons, it being supposed that here are 200000 persons which attend that Manufacture. 16 *Chinchiamsu*, whence by a River made by hand, there is a passage to *Sucheau*; the water of which never freezeth, and for that cause so clogged with Ships in time of Winter, that the passage is stopped with the multitudes of them. 17 *Zuancheu* a most rich and beautiful City environed with large waters, and the only Southern Port within the Land to which Ships or Boats may have access. 18 *Caiton* or *Caifung*, seated upon the River *Ciang*, a City once of three Leagues in compass, whose Harbour was seldom without 500 Ships, and sometimes honoured with the Seat or Residence of the Kings themselves; most miserably destroyed *Anno* 1642. by *Zunchinius* the late King of this Countrey, who breaking down the dams and sluces to let in the River, for the dislodging of some Thieves and out-laws, who had then besieged it, gave it so great and forcible a passage towards the Town, that it bare down the greatest part of the houses of it, and therein drowned above 300000 of the Natural Citizens; before which time the *Metropolis* or chief City of the Province of *Honan*. 19 *Kaingcheu*, on the South-side of the River *Croceus*, the richest and the fairest City in these parts of the Countrey, commodiously seated to command that River. 20 *Chuking*, the head City of the Province of *Quamtung*, for the strength and conveniency of its situation thought fittest for the seat of *Jungly*, the last declared Emperour of the *Chinese* against the *Tartars*. 21 *Queilin* the cheif City of the Province of *Quangsi*. 22 *Taitung*, the *Metropolis* or chief City of *Xansi* or *Cansay*, another of the four Northern Provinces, but not else observable for any thing I find of it, either in point of Trade or Story. 23 *Manchang*, a chief City of the Province of *Kiansi*, of which little memorable; and less of 24 *Cergiron*, but that it is like unto the rest in form an structure.

Besides the Provinces before mentioned, there are three others not directly under the dominion of the Kings of *China* though depending on it, that is to say, 1 The Province of *Suchuen*, 2 The Island of *Corea*, 3 The Island of *Cheuxan*.

1. The Province of *Suchuen*, lyeth on the Southwest of this Kingdom, of the same nature both for *soyl* and *air* with the rest of *China*, but possessed by a more warlike people; the women here being trained up to feats of *Arms*, and so well practiced on their weapons, that when the Queen hereof went to the aid of the Emperour *Vanley* against the *Tartars*, *Anno* 1618. she took with her a small Army of 3000 women, performing actions not unworthy the bravest men: the chief City hereof is called *Cingtu*, of great capaciey, and so exceeding populous withal, that *Changhienchungus* (that most barbarous Tyrant) caused no fewer than 600000 of them (men, women, and children, all indifferently) to be slaughtered in one day before his face. The whole Country governed for a long time by its own Kings of the same *Taimingian* Race with the Kings of *China*, from whom having received their investiture, they were afterwards of absolute authority over their own Subjects, who acknowledg no other King but him. And in this state it did continue till the year 1644. when *Changhienchungus*, whom before I named, entring into this Countrey with his rabble of Rogues made a Conquest of it, murdered the young King, Son to the *Amazonian* Queen, which before we spake of: dispeopled the great City of *Cingtu*, butchered at one time twenty thousand Priests, at another time eighteen thousand Students; and finally committed such unspeakable outrages, that the *Tartars* in meer pitty to that wretched people, sent an Army against him, by which he was vanquished, and slain; this Province thereupon submitting to the *Tartars* as their great deliverers.

2. *Corea*, is an Island of the *Eastern Ocean*, not far from the Northeast of *China*, over-against the fall of the River *Talo*. The quality of the soyl, the dimensions of it, and what Cities it containeth in it, I have no where found. The people far more warlike than those of *China*, by reason of the ill neighbourhood of the *Japonites*, with whom they have always either open wars, or uncertain peace. Invaded by those Islanders and in danger to be conquered by them, they made an offer of their Countrey to the King of *China*; who having repulsed the Invaders, restored their Countrey freely to them, without laying any other Imposition on them, than of love and gratitude, which obligations those of *Corea* have discharged most fully. For when *Vanley*, the late Emperour of *China*, was first invaded by the *Tartars*, they sent unto his aid twelve thousand men well Armed, and exercised in the Wars; increasing their supplies in the time of *Theinkins*, who next but one succeeded *Vanley*. Drawing the whole storm upon themselves by those friendly aids, they were accordingly assisted by the King of *China*, whose forces came so seasonably in the heat of a Battel between the *Coreans* and the *Tartars*, that the *Tartars* after a long and terrible fight, were driven out of the Island, but with such incredible loss on all sides, that few or none escaped of the Army of *China*, seventy thousand of the *Coreans* slain, and the *Tartars* leaving fifty thousand of their men behind them; after this they were unmolested, till the fatal and final Conquest of the Kingdom of *China*, when seeing the *Tartars* Lords of all, And no possibility of resistance, they submitted to them, about the year 1648. upon condition of retaining their Hair and Habit, which no extremity of personal danger, or fear of publick desolation, could compel them to alter.

3. *Cheuxan*, is an Island of the same Seas, on the South of *Corea* opposite to the City of *Nympus* in the main Land of *China*, an Island which being heretofore a dwelling place of poor Clowns and Fishermen only, is now become a potent Kingdom. For *Liu. Regulus*, chosen by a party of his own to succeed to the broken Crown of *China*, and finding no hopes of withstanding the great power of the *Tartars*, retired himself into this Island with his friends and followers, followed not long after by great multitudes of the natural *Chineſe*, who chose rather to forsake their Countrey, than to Conform in hair and habit to the will of the *Tartars*; Insomuch that there are

now

now found in this Iſland threeſcore and ten Cities, with a ſtrong and formidable Army, which hitherto hath contemned all the *Tartarian* Power and Forces, and watch for ſome happy occaſion to advance again their Kingdom in *China*.

The ancient Inhabitants of the *Sinæ*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, were towards the North, the *Semantini* bordering a mountain of that name, and the only one remembred in all this Country: more Southward, the *Acadræ*, and *Aſpithræ*; Towards the Sea *Anabaſtæ*, and *Ichthyophagi* (theſe laſt ſo called from living wholly upon Fiſh.) United into one body by the name of *Sinæ*, and known by that name to the *Romans*, in the time of *Ptolomy*, who boundeth them on the North with *Serica*, on the Weſt with *India extra Gangem*, and on the Eaſt and South with a *Terra Incognita*: which though it make up the leaſt part of the Modern *China*, *Serica* touching only on a Corner of the Northweſt of it, and the main Ocean waſhing it on the Eaſt and South: yet the *Arabians* in their *Tzinin*, and our late *Latine* Writers in their *Sina* and *Sinenſium Regnum*, do from hence give the denomination to this mighty Kingdom. How far they ſtretched beyond the bounds laid down by *Ptolomy*, and whether they ſubdued the Eaſtern and more Northern Nations, or were Conquered by them, it is hard to ſay; nor is it eaſie to reſolve, from what original theſe and the reſt of the Inhabitants do derive themſelves, whether from the *Indians*, or the *Scythes*: or that it was primitively planted by ſome of the Poſterity of *Noah*, before the enterpriſe of *Babel*: which laſt may probably be concluded from the extreme populouſneſs of the Country, the many magnificent Cities; their Induſtry and Ingenuity in all Arts and Sciences, not to be taught them by their neighbours, more ignorant in thoſe things than themſelves. And hereunto the *Chronicles* of *China* ſeem to give ſome ground, which tell us of three hundred and forty Kings, which for the ſpace of four thouſand years have therein reigned. For as their *Chronicles* inform us, (if they may be credited) the Country being without Rule or ſettled Government, was firſt reduced into order by one *Vitey*, the Son of *Ezolem*; by whom the people were inſtructed in *Phyſick*, *Aſtrology*, *Divination*, and the Art of Tillage: to which, this *Vitey*, having found out the way of cutting or ſawing Timber, added the uſe of *Ships* and *Houſes*, and many other the effects of *Mechanical* hands. Having by the valour of *Lincheon* one of his Commanders, ſubdued a great part of the Country, he drew them into Towns and Villages; diſtributed them into Offices, and ſeveral Trades, diſpoſing thoſe of the ſame Trade into Streets by themſelves; and commanding that no man without leave from himſelf, or his Officers, ſhould follow any other Trade than that of his Father. He preſcribed them alſo the faſhion of their Garments, taught them the Art of making and dying Silks: and having reigned an hundred years, left the Kingdom well eſtabliſhed unto his Poſterity. Of this Race there are ſaid to have been 217 Kings, who held the State 2257 years.

The laſt of them was that *Tzaintzon*, who being ill-neighboured by the *Scythians* (not yet called *Tartars*) is ſaid to have built that vaſt Wall ſpoken of before: extended 400 Leagues in length, and at the end of every League a ſtrong *Rampart* or *Bulwark*, continually garriſoned, and well furniſhed with all warlike neceſſaries. He being ſlain by ſome of his Subjects, burdened and waſted with his work, the Race of *Vitey* ended; and that of *Anchoſan* ſucceeded, a Prince of much prudence, but greater courage. In his Line it continued under 25 Kings, but ſhrewdly ſhaken towards the cloſe by a Civil War, betwixt *Trunthey*, the 23 of his Houſe, and his Nephew *Laupy*. Hardly well ſettled under *Quiontey*, the laſt of this Houſe, when *Tzobu*, a great Tyrant of the other Faction, ſet upon him, and ſlew him. And ſo the Majeſty of the Blood-Royal being trod under foot, the Crown was alſo toſſed from one hand to another, and made a Prey unto the ſtrongeſt: there being of the Race of this *Tzobu*, eight Kings, reigning 62 years; Of the Race of *Dian*, five Kings, who reigned thirty one; Of the Race of *Tzoy*, three only, who reigned thirty ſeven; Of the Race of *Tenco*, one and twenty, who held the Crown 294 years, and eight there were who reigned 120 years, of the Houſe of *Tantzom*. Of other upſtart Families to the number of five, were fourteen Kings alſo, who governed only for the ſpace of 66 years: And then one *Zaitzon*, deriving himſelf from *Vitey*, the firſt King of this Country, obtained the Kingdom; which he and ſeventeen of his Poſterity, for the ſpace of 320 years, governed with much peace and honour. *Forſar*, the laſt King of that Royal Family, foretold by Prophecy that he ſhould be deprived of his Kingdom by one who had *an hundred eyes*, neglected the *Advertiſment*, as unworthy credit: but it fell out agreeable to that Prediction, when vanquiſhed by *Chiſan-baan* (which word ſignifieth *an hundred eyes*) Lieutenant unto *Uſan*, a *Tartarian* Prince, but *Feudatary* and Vaſſal to the *Great Cham*. *China* thus made a Province of the *Tartarians*, was governed for the ſpace of 93 years, under nine *Tartar* Kings, Tributaries to the Great *Cham*, and dependants on him: the *Chams* themſelves many times paſſing into *China*, and abiding there according as their pleaſures or affairs did invite them to it, which occaſioned ſuch a continual entercourſe betwixt thoſe of *China* and *Cathay*, that they have much participated ever ſince that time of the manners and cuſtoms of each other. But here it is to be obſerved, that the *Tartars* ſpent almoſt as much time in the Conqueſt of *China*, as they did in the poſſeſſion of it; the war being firſt begun *Anno* 1206. finiſhed 1268. the *Tartars* being totally outed when they had reigned here 90 years only, that is to ſay, *Anno* 1358. or thereabouts. For then it hapened that a mean perſon called *Hugh*, conſidering with himſelf the diſcontentedneſs of the *Chineſe* under ſo long Bondage, the luxury of the *Tartars*, effeminated with the pleaſures of that Country, and the unwarlike temper of *Gino Cham*, then reigning over all in the City of *Cambalu*, raiſed to himſelf ſo ſtrong a Party, that in ſhort time he drave the *Tartars* out of all; forcing them to betake themſelves to thoſe parts of the Eaſtern *Tartars*, which now make up the Kingdom of *Niuche*.

1. Finally turning towards the Weſt, he not only recovered back to *China* ſuch parts thereof (as had been layed unto *Cathay*, and incorporated with it by the *Tartars*; but growing thereby a formidable neighbour to the *Cham* himſelf; Advanced for this great Service to the Crown of *China*, *Anno* 1269. he took unto himſelf the name of *Hungus* (our late Writers commonly call him *Hombu*) which ſignifieth as much as the *famous Warrior*, and gave unto his Children, and their Poſterity, the name of the *Taingian* Family; which they ſtill continue. For the recovery of this Country, great *Tamerlane* muſtereth up his Forces, and though *Hombu* brought into the field 350000 Horſe and Foot, yet nothing could reſiſt the powerful genius of that mighty Conquerour, who obtained here a ſignal Victory with the death of 60000 *Chineſe*: But wiſely moderating his proſperity, and mainly bent upon his war againſt the *Turks*, he thought it his beſt and ſafeſt way to let the people of *China* have a King of their own, impoſing on him a Fine of 300000 Crowns in ready money, a certain Annual Tribute (long time after paid) with certain other conditions,

which as they were pleasing to the Victor, so they were not destructive to the vanquished. By means hereof it came to pass, that such a long communication in affairs of state, having passed between *China* and *Cathay* (those of *China* in old times Lording it over part of the *Cathayans*, as the *Cathayans* in late times did over the *Chinese*) there grew a great resemblance between both Nations, in Manners, Conditions, Arts and Manufactures, as before is said, which circumstances layed together, may afford some reason why in some Writers, easily misguided by such probabilities, *Cathay* and *China* have been reckoned to be one and the same. Nor did the Empire of the *Chinois* extend in old times, only over part of *Scythia*, but also over part of *India*, and some of the *Oriental* Islands. But the Princes of the House of *Hombu*, finding their own Kingdom large enough to content their desires, abandoned all the *Accessories* and Out-parts of their Dominions; prompted thereunto, not only by their own moderation, but by some misfortunes which befell them. For as we find that the *Romans* having by the fury of two violent tempests, lost no fewer than 206 of their Ships and Gallies, resolved to abandon (and for a long time did forbear) the *Seas*, which had used them so unkindly: So the *Chinois* having received a great overthrow, and loss of 800 Ships, nigh unto *Zeilan*, they freed all the Islands from obedience unto them, and contented themselves with the bounds which nature had bestowed on them. And of their moderation herein we have a very rare example. For when the people of *Corea*, a small Island abutting on the Confines of *China*, were invaded by the *Japonites*, they submitted themselves unto the King of *China*; who having repulsed the enemy, and thereby freed his own Country from danger, presently redelivers over unto the *Coreans*, their Town and liberty. A rare fact of a contented people. Which whether it savoured of greater moderation or magnanimity, I am not able to determine. In this Family hath the Realm continued under 15 Kings, for the space of 266 years and upward, reckoning from *Hombu* unto *Boneg*: who being the twelfth of this Line, succeeded his elder brother, unfortunately slain with a fall from an horse. Reported for a Prince of good disposition, great judgement, and a severe Justitiary. This *Boneg* (otherwise called *Vanly*) begun his Reign, *Anno* 1573. governing this Kingdom in great prosperity and glory for the space of 40 years and upwards; when cauling the Christian Subjects and the *Jesuites* their Converters to be hardly dealt with, and denying Justice to the *Eastern Tartars* for the many wrongs done them by his Prefects in the Province of *Leaotong*, he drew that people into Arms, as if marked out for Executioners of Divine displeasure. Stript by them in the year 1618. of a part of *Leaotong*, and braved by their Forces within sight of *Pekin*, he contracted some melancholick distempers, of which he died about two years after, leaving the Crown to his Son *Taichangus*, who having held it but four months left it, and all the troubles of it to his Son *Theinkius*, a valiant Prince and fortunate against the *Tartars*, but of short continuance. For dying in the year 1627. he was succeeded in that Kingdom by his Brother *Zunchinius*, a Prince of contrary disposition, cruelly bent, a great Oppressour of his Subjects, and for these causes ill beloved; yet they continued in obedience (though for fear rather of the *Tartars*, than for love of him) until the year 1640. or thereabouts. At what time the people in many places oppressed with Taxes, and in the Northern parts with Famine, arise in 8 Companies or Armies, which growing wanton by success, and warring upon one another, they are at last reduced under two chief Leaders, that is to say, *Lycungzus* and *Changbienchungzus*.

These two being come to an agreement took their several wayes, the last of them falling into *Suchuen*, whose villanies and deserved destruction we have there related. *Lycungzus* the more fortunate villain, in the year 1641. besieged *Chifang* the chief City of the Province of *Honan*, a place of great strength, but far greater riches, on the ruine whereof by the King's improvidence, and his subduing the whole Province of *Xensi*, he took to himself the title of King, and would be called *Lycungzus* the *Prosperous*; and not long after easing the people of the Taxes which the avaritious King had imposed upon them, putting the Tax-masters to death, and gaining upon all sorts of men by his courteous usage, he took unto himself the name of Emperour. *Zunchinius* succeeds his Brother, hindred by Factions in the Court, from sending seasonable Forces against the Rebels, who passing over the great River *Croceus* without any resistance prevailed in all places where they came, even to the taking of the great City of *Peking*, and the Palace Royal; at the hearing whereof, the Emperour seeing no way to escape their hands, hanged himself in his own Orchard, *Anno* 1644. his example therein followed by the Empress and his principal Servants. The body of the Emperour cut in pieces, his two younger Sons beheaded, the principal Magistrates murdered, and that great City sacked by command of the Victor. Forced to remove back again to *Xensi* by *Vsangueius* Commander of the Army in *Leaotong*, who called in the *Tartars* to revenge these Outrages, the Rebels taking with them all the wealth and treasure which the Emperours of the *Tamingian* Family had amassed together in the space of 260 years and upwards. *Zungteus* the King of the *Tartars* having thus got the City of *Peking*, died presently after, leaving his Son at nine years old to succeed him in that glorious fortune. By him commended to the care and protection of Uncles, who very faithfully discharged the trust reposed in them; Infinite numbers of *Tartars* thronging into *China* upon this occasion, and those not only of the Eastern but the Western Nations.

By these the Infant-King was proclaimed Emperour of *China*, by the name of *Xaunchius*, styling the new Imperial Family by the name of *Tailing*, the eldest of the Uncles whom the *Tartars* called *Amavangus*, having the chief conduct of Affairs.

Vsangueius by the *Tartars* not long after is declared King of *Xensi*, out of which he shortly drove the Rebels, and possessed himself of it; *Lycungzus* being either killed in the fight, or else otherwise lost. *Hunquangus* Nephew to *Vanley*, and Cousin German to *Zunchinius*, elected Emperour by the *Chineses* of the Southern parts, is opposed herein by one that pretended himself to be the eldest Son of *Zunchinius*; which division gave the *Tartars* a notable victory over all their Forces, and the great City of *Nanquin* in reward thereof.

The new Emperour being shortly after betrayed into the hands of the *Tartars* is by them hanged on the Walls of *Peking*; which death the *Tartars* count most noble. The pretended Son of *Zunchinius* discovered, and served in the same sort also. And though *Loangus* first, and afterwards *Jungly*, and *Lu. Regulus*, were chosen and declared Emperours by their several parties, *Anno* 1648. yet nothing could prevail against the fortune of the *Tartars*, *Loangus* being forced to put himself into their power, *Jungly* to fly into the Mountains, and *Lu. Regulus* to secure himself in the Isle of *Cheuxan*.

What hath succeeded since that year, future times will shew.

The Government of this Kingdom is meerly *tyrannical*; there being no other Lord but the King, no title of dignity or nobility ever known amongst them; nor Toll or Duty

Duty paid unto any but to him: the younger Princes of the bloud being maintained by *Stipends*, and *annual Pensions*, large enough to support their Trains, but without any Lands or *Tenants*, for fear of drawing on them any great *dependances*. The King alone is the general Landlord, and him the Subjects do not only reverence as a Prince, but adore like a God. For in the chief City of every Province, they have the Kings protraiture made of Gold, which is alwaies covered with a veil: and at every New-moon, the Magistrate and other inferiour Officers use to kneel before it, as if it were the King himself. By these and other Artifices of like contrivement the Common People are kept in such awe and fear, that they are rather Slaves than Subjects: calling their King the *Lamp of the World, and Son of the everlasting Sun*, without whose light they were able to see nothing.

In every Province, except *Pequin* and *Tolenchia* only, he hath his Deputies or *Vice-Royes*, maintained by liberal stipends from the publick Treasury: but those he governeth by himself. Some Laws they have, and those affirmed to have been written 2000 years since, as is like enough they were. So strongly do they savour of the ignorance and *Atheism* of the darkest times: the manner of life by them allowed, most *obscene* and shamless; their *Idolatries* most gross and palpable; their *Exorcisms* ridiculous, and the prostitution of their *Virgins* most abominable; and the variety of sensual prophanations, to an illuminated mind most base and contemptible. In a word, nothing commendable in their course of life (notwithstanding the brags which they make of themselves) but their Arts and industry.

The *Forces* which this King is able to draw into the Field must needs be infinite, considering that incredible number of Subjects under his command. For whereas *France* is thought to contain 15 millions of people; *Italy*, with the Isles, as many; *Germany*, with the *Switzers* and *Belgick* Provinces, about that proportion; *Spain* not above seven millions; and the Kingdom of *England* about four: this Country only is computed at 70 millions; which is more by 15 millions than all together. Proportionably his Levies must be so much greater, than can be ordinarily raised out of those Countries. But because it may be thought that his Subjects, though more in number, may be less trained to the wars than those of *Europe*; the contrary is affirmed by such as have taken an estimate of the Forces, which every Province is bound to entertain in continual readiness. And by that estimate it appeareth, that in the year 1557. (though a time of peace) there were dispersed in the fifteen Provinces of this Realm, to the number of five millions, 846500 Foot, and 948350 Horse. Which notwithstanding it may be said, and not unfitly, that he is able to bring into the field, amongst such multitudes of men, but few good Souldiers, the people being generally unwarlike, and of no great courage, as was before observed of them in that general *Character*. Nor is he less powerful for *Sea-service*, having continually great *Fleets* for the guard of his Coasts, in continual attendance; and many more ready to set out when there is occasion: insomuch that the *Chinois* use to say in the way of a *Proverb*, That their King is able to make a Bridge of Ships from *China* to *Malaca*, which are 500 Leagues asunder. Some of these Ships (whereof the King hath above a thousand of his own, besides those of his Subjects) of great magnificence and beauty: the Officers and Souldiers in all which are exceeding well paid, and rewarded answerably to their merits. And as this King is able to raise greater forces than any, from his own estates; so doth he also *de facto* do it, when the urgency of his affairs doth require it of him: his ordinary stint being 300000 Foot, and 200000 Horse; without which compleat number (not only in the *muster-rolls*, but in bodies of men) he vouchsafes not to go into the field.

Answerable unto these great *Levies* of men, must be his *Revenue*: which they who have travelled in this search if they tell us true, and do not build upon an hope of not being confuted, as for my part I fear they do) affirm to be 120 millions of Crowns, answered unto him out of the profit of the *Mines* of Gold, Silver, and other metals: the *tenth* of all commodities which the Earth brings forth; the *tolls* imposed on that unspeakable quantity of Merchandise, which passeth on so many navigable Rivers from one Town to another; the *Customes* taken of all those rich wares which are brought into *Europe*, and the *Gabel* laid on Salt in all parts of his Kingdom. Out of which sum, the payment of his Fleet discharged, the entertainment of the Souldiers satisfied, and his Court defrayed, there remaineth 40 millions of Crowns *de claro* to be disposed of, either in his treasury, or private pleasures, or the works of magnificence and ostentation.

And thus far also according to the general current of received opinions have I followed the description and affairs of *China*, as a distinct Country from *Cathay*; not ignorant that there are many probable reasons which might incline us to believe them to be one and the same; for first it is alledged in favour of this opinion that it is neither new nor strange, for one and the same Country, to be called by divers names, according to the languages and fancies of several Nations; that Country which we call *Germany*, being by the Natives called *Dutch-land*, not long since known most commonly by the name of *Almaine*; that part of *Britain* which we call *Wales*, being by the *French* called *Galles*, and *Cambria* by the *Latine* Writers; those mountainous people which the *Romans* know by the name of *Rhœti*, being by some of our Northern *Latinists* called *Confœderati Cani*, *Campi Camini* by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, *Grauntpuntnor* by the neighbouring *Dutch*, and finally *Grisons* by the *French*, which four last names do carry all the same sense and signification, though in different words; that *China* it self, is by the Natives called *Tabinco*, *Tzinin* by the *Arabians*, *Mangi* by *Paulus Venetus*, and by the neighbouring Nations *Sanglag*; that as it cannot be inforced from the like diversity of appellations that *Almany*, *Germany*, and *Dutch-land*, make three several Countries, (*& sic de cæteris*) so neither can it be concluded on the same grounds that *China* and *Cathay* make two several Empires. In the next place it is alledged that since by later voyages and navigations, this mighty Kingdom hath been discovered, and made known unto us of *Europe* by the name of *China*, the name and Empire of *Cathay* hath grown out of knowledge. For proof whereof they bring in the *Itinerarie* of *Benedictus* a *Goes*, a *Jesuite*, who in the year 1605. crossing from the North-east parts of *Persia* to the Realm of *China*, and naming all the several Countries and Towns of any note which lay in his way, makes no mention of any such Country as *Cathay*, nor any such Prince as the Great *Cham* thereof: telling us also that *Martin Martinius*, who had lived long in *China*, in his Books entituled *Bellum Tartaricum*, comprehendeth all the Countries betwixt *China* and Mount *Imaus*, under the general name and Notion of the Western *Tartars*, not taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*; nor of any greater Prince amongst them, than the King of *Tanguth*; and that *Ramusio* in his notes on *Paulus Venetus*, reporteth some conference which he had with *Chaggimemet* a *Persian* Merchant, who told him that he had seen *Campion* and *Succuir* Cities of *Cathay*, in the reign of *Demercan*, which must be understood of *Cathay*

in the general Notion, as it comprehendeth all the *Tartarian* Countries beyond *Imaus*, it being well known that *Campion* and *Succuir* are two Cities of *Tanguth*, and not of the *proper Cathay*, or *Cathay* especially so called. In the third rank of proofs they instance in the similitudes, or resemblances betwixt both Countries, and both people, which are so great and visible in temperature of Air, fertility of soyl, and pleasantness of situation, in customs, in ingenuity, Arts and Manufactures, as may be thought to carry an Identity, or sameness with them; which sameness or Identity they do also find in *Pequin* the chief City of *China*, and *Cambalu*, the supposed chief City of *Cathay*, being two words of the same sense and signification, though of divers sounds; for *Pequin* signifieth the Court or City of the King in the *Chinian* Language, and *Cambalu* signifieth the Court or City of the *Cham*, in the Language of *Tartary*. The like they also have observed of the Royal Palaces, adjoyning to the said two Cities, so like in the vast greatness and extent of the outer Walls, the Parks and Forrests intermingled, the magnificent form and structure of the inner Palaces, with all the rest of the particulars before recited, that a man might very well conclude them to be one and the same, adding withal that such an immense, and unparalleld a work, as the great *Cham's* Palace called *Xaindu*, must needs require more hands and a longer time, than the great *Chams* (considering their continual wars, and little intervals of leisure) could bestow upon it. But their foure head-proofs, which seem indeed to be the strongest, they derive first from the Testimony of *Benedicta Goes* above mentioned, who without taking notice of any such Country as *Cathay*, in so long a journey, telleth us that at *Ciales* a City of the Kingdom of *Cascar*, and not far from *China*, he was first informed that *Cathay* and *China* were the same. 2ly. From the Testimony of an old *Mahometan* Pilgrim, who returning from *Meccha* by *Labor* (the Royal Seat and City of the great *Mongul*) affirmed there that he had lived long in *Cambalu*, the chief City of *Cathay*, which Kingdom had in it one thousand and fifty Cities, the King thereof being a very mighty Prince, and having a strength of 400 Elephants brought thither from *Malaca* and *Pegu*, and that much Merchandize was brought into that Country by Sea: which if it be not meant of *China* (to which the story may agree in all particulars) must needs be one of the loudest lies that ever came from the mouth of a *Mahometan*, or a *Pilgrim* either; our Geographers finding very few Cities or Towns of note in *Cathay* specially so called, no access thither by Sea for any Merchandize, nor any way to bring those Elephants from *Pegu* and *Malaca*, which the Pilgrim dreamt of. 3ly. A clearer Testimony of some other *Mahometans* repairing to *Pequin* every fifth year, either as Merchants or Embassadours, or as both together; by whom the Jesuites there living were informed, that in the Dominions of the *Persian*, and the great *Mongul*, from whence they came, the Kingdom of *China* was called by no other name, than by that of *Cathay*, they knowing no other Country of that name, but *China* only. And 4ly. from the asseverance of *Pantoja*, another *Jesuite*; who in his Letters dated from *Pequin* much blamed our ordinary Maps for placing *Cathay* next to *China*, whereas (saith he) *China* or *Sinai* is *Cathay*, as this *Pequin* where we now are is the City of *Cambalu*; which two last evidences coming from the Pen of one who had lived many years in *China*; and not conducing any way to the advancement of the *Catholick* cause, must needs be thought to carry some great credit and authority with them.

These reasons if they be of force and moment to the point in hand, we must then act *Penelope's* part, unravelling all the Web which before was woven, *Atque iterum in lanas omne redibit opus*, in the Poet's Language; which that we may the better do, and with as little defacements to the whole piece as possibly we can, I shall thus proceed. First then it is to be conceived that *Cathay* specially so called, was an aggregate body, containing many several Kingdoms, and distinct Estates, though Homagers to the Kings of *Cathay*, or dependants on them: as anciently in the Realm of *France* besides the Kings of *France* themselves, there was a King of *Burgundy*, a King of *Metz*, a King of *Soissons*, a King of *Orleans*; and after that a Duke of *Normandy*, a Duke of *Bretagne*, a Duke of *Aquitain*, and Earl of *Champagne*, and Earl of *Tholouse*, all absolute and uncontroulable in their own Estates. And then the Kingdom of *Tanguth*, which we placed in the Southern parts of *Altay*, must be made one of the Kingdoms of *Cathay*; and *Demercan*, whom we ranked in the Catalogue of the *Chams* of *Tartary*, must be brought a peg lower, and looked on as a King of *Tanguth* only, and no more than so. 2ly. It must be taken for granted, that the *Tartars* having conquered the Realm of *Cathay*, and afterwards, by the help of that people, subdued *China* also, caused all the Northern parts of *China* to be called *Cathay*, as being in the same Latitude and parallels with it, and much of the same nature and complexion, both for Soyl and Air; giving unto the Southern parts (which was the true and proper Country of the *Sinæ*) the name of *Mangi*, transferred afterwards by some Authors to the Country generally: and having thus extended the name and Territory of *Cathay*, the first foundation of their greatness, they fixed their Regal Seat in the City of *Pequin*, which by a new *Tartarian* name (but of the same sense and signification) was from thence called *Cambalu*. Thus in the first place the *French* Kings of the *Caroline* Family, communicated the name of *France* (East *France* it was most commonly called) to the greatest part of *Germany*, then conquered by them; the *Castilians* of *Spain* extended the name of *Castile* on every side, as they gat ground upon the *Moors*, till it became the largest Province of any one name in all that Continent; and *Roger* Earl of *Sicily*, having conquered the Eastern parts of *Italy* (which now make up the Kingdom of *Naples*) commanded it to be called the further *Sicily*, and himself to be crowned King of both, by the name of King of both the *Sicilies*. And in the second place, the Dukes of *Zweibrucken* in high *Germany* are by the *French* called Dukes *De Deux-ponts*, by the late *Latine* Writers *Duces Bipontani*, all in the same sense and signification; the Town of *Sbertzogen Bosch* is by the *French* called *Bois le Duc*, by the *Latine* Writers, *Sylva Ducis*; and here at home the Military Towns or Stations of *Lectoduru*m, *Colonia*, *Præsidium*, *ad Lapidem*, and *Portus Magnus*, were turned by the conquering *Saxons* (the former significations being still retained) into *Bedford*, *Colchester*, *Warwick*, *Stoneham*, and *Portzmuch*, commonly now called *Portsmouth*; *Castrum Alatum* into *Edenburg* by the *Picts* or unconquered *Britains*. 3ly. We may take it for a truth unquestioned, that *Hombu* having expulsed the *Tartars* out of *Mangi*, or the Southern parts, and fixed his Royal Seat at *Nanquin*, on the South side of the River *Kiang* (though paying both fine and tribute to victorious *Tamerlane*) did afterwards on *Tamerlane's* engagements beyond the Mountains, and the cantonizing of that great Empire amongst his children, expell them out of the North parts also; his Successours thereupon removing the Court to *Pequin* (from henceforth known again by its true, proper, and *Chinian* name) the better to attend the motion of that dangerous Enemy. *Jerusalem*, commanded to be called *Elir* by the Emperour *Adrian*, and *London* named *Augusta Trinobantum* by some other of the *Roman* Emperours; returned to their old names

names again, as ſoon as that authority failed which impoſed the new. And 4^ly. as from this time forwards the Northern parts of *China* might ſtill retain the name of *Cathay*, and being moſt traded by the *Perſian* and *Indian* Merchants, might be beſt known by that name in their ſeveral Countries: ſo by dividing this great Empire into ſo many parts, removing the Imperial Seat to *Samercand*, on the other ſide of the Mountains, erecting many new Eſtates out of the ancient Prefectures, and Governments of *Cathay* it ſelf, and parcelling the remainder of it between the Kings of *Tanguth*, *Caſcar*, and ſuch other Princes of the *Tartars*, as were not wanting to themſelves in thoſe opportunities, the true *Cathay* might loſe that name by little and little, which formerly it had communicated to thoſe parts of *China*. Thus the *Burgundian*, *Lombards*, *Vandals*, *Hungars*, loſt thoſe names at home, in their ancient and native habitations, which ſtill remain unto thoſe Countries that were conquered by them. Theſe reaſons and conſiderations I willingly ſubmit to the Reader's Judgment, being my ſelf ſo great a *Sceptick* in this point that I dare determine nothing poſitively on either ſide. It is enough that I have layed the cauſe open without partiality, or byaſſing on either hand, before the Jurors; let them give up their verdict in it as they like the evidence.

OF INDIA.

INDIA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the Oriental Ocean, and ſome part of *China*, or as ſome others ſay, with a great Country called *Mauge* (not much known unto us of *Europe*) interjected betwixt it and *China*; on the Weſt, with the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, with ſome branches of Mount *Taurus*, which divide it from *Tartary*; and on the South, with the *Indian* Ocean. So called from the River *Indus*, the neareſt of eſteem and note in all the Country, towards theſe parts of the world.

It is conceived to be the largeſt Country, of any one name in the world, except *China* and *Tartaria*; affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, to be of ſuch a great extent on the Sea-coaſts of it, that it was as much as a Ship could ſail in 40 days. Extended from 106, to 159 degrees of *Longitude*; and from the *Æquator* to the 44^th. degree of Northern *Latitude*. By which accompt it lieth from the beginning of the firſt, to the end of the ſixth *Clime*: the longeſt Summers-day in the Southern parts being 12 hours only, and in the parts moſt North, 15 hours and an half.

Concerning the monſtrous Fables which the Ages foregoing have delivered to us of this Country, give me leave to ſay, that as the Poets uſed of old to fill up the times of which they were ignorant, with ſtrange Fictions, and prodigious *Metamorphoſes*; or as our modern *Geographers*, in the Maps of the World, fill up thoſe unknown parts thereof, of which they can give us no certain deſcription, with ſtrange Pictures and uncouth ſhapes of beaſts and trees; ſo alſo the Writers in former Ages have filled the more remote Countries, of which they knew little, with ſuch impoſſible and incredible relations. Hence there have been attributed to this *India*, the Fables of men with dogs heads, of men with one leg only, yet of great ſwiftneſs; of ſuch as live by ſent; of men that had but one eye, and that in their foreheads; and of others, whoſe ears did reach unto the ground. It is reported alſo that this people by eating a Dragon's heart and liver, attain to the underſtanding of the languages of beaſts; that they can make themſelves, when they liſt, inviſible; that they have two tubs, whereof the one opened yields wind, the other rain, and the like. But theſe relations, and the reſt of this ſtrain, I doubt not but the underſtanding Reader knoweth how to judge of, and what to believe. For my part I am of the ſame mind with *Curtius*, *Plura equidem tranſcribo quàm credo; nec enim affirmare auſus ſum quæ dubito, nec ſubducere ſuſtineo quæ accepi*: I may perhaps relate ſome things which I do not credit, but ſhall not let them paſs without ſome cenſure; that ſo I neither may impoſe any thing on the Reader's belief, nor defraud him of any thing conducible to his contentation.

The Country (to report no more of it than it doth deſerve) enjoyeth an exact temperature of the air, two Summers, (or one as long as two) and a double encreaſe; bleſt with all things which are either neceſſary to the life of man, or of convenience and delight; particularly with Mines of Gold and Silver, and with precious Stones; with ſpices of all ſorts, and Civets; with the beſt *medicinable* Drugs; Metals of all kinds, except *Copper* and *Lead*; abundance of all ſorts of Cattel, except Horſes. Somewhat defective alſo in Wheat and Vines, that ſo this Country might be beholding unto others, as well as others to this. Famed alſo for abundance of Camels, Apes, Dragons, Serpents, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants. Theſe laſt more ſavouring of reaſon and humane ingenuity, or elſe more tractable and docile, than any brute creature whatſoever. Of this we have a fair inſtance in the Story of the Acts of *Alexander*. the Elephant which King *Porus* ſate on, finding his Maſter ſtrong and luſty, ruſhed boldly into the thickeſt of the Enemies Army: but when he once perceived him to be faint and weary, he withdrew himſelf out of the Battel, kneeled down, and into his Trunk received all the Arrows which were directed at his Maſter. The greatneſs of the Creature makes it yet more admirable, that either he ſhould have ſoul enough of his own, to actuate ſo vaſt a body; or being of ſuch ſtrength and bigneſs, ſhould ſubmit himſelf to the inſtructions of another: ſome of theſe *Indian* Elephants, as *Ælianus* hath affirmed, being nine *Cubits* high, and as many long; and in breadth or thickneſs about five *Cubits*. Nor doth the Sea afford leſs plenty or variety, than we find on ſhore: yielding abundance of the richeſt and faireſt Pearls, huge ſholes of fiſh, and amongſt them the Whale or great *Leviathan*; exceeding the proportion of that Land monſter the *Elephant*. For though the ordinary dimenſion of the Whale be but 36

Cubits

Cubits in length, and eight in thickneſs: yet *Nearchus* in *Arianus* is ſaid to have meaſured one, in theſe *Indian* Seas, which was of the length of 50 *Cubits*, and of breadth proportionable: not to ſay any thing of that incredible report of *Pliny*, who ſpeaketh of ſome *Indian* Whales, which were nine hundred and threeſcore Foot, or four Acres long.

The people are of five ſorts, and as many *Religions*; that is to ſay the Natural *Indians*, derived from the Original Inhabitants of it. 2ly. *Moors*, or *Arabians*, who more than two hundred years ago, poſſeſſed themſelves of ſome Sea-Towns, driving the Natives up higher into the Country. 3ly. *Jews*, ſcattered and diſperſed (as in other places) into all parts of it. 4ly. *Tartars*; in thoſe parts and Provinces which are under the *Great Mongul*. And 5ly. *Portuguez*, who have many Colonies and *Factories* in the Ports and Iſlands, but brag as if they had made a conqueſt of all the Country. Which notwithſtanding, conſidering that the Natural *Indians* are by far the greateſt number, we muſt relate to them only in the *Character* which is made of this people. Affirmed to be tall of ſtature, ſtrong of body, and of complexion inclining to that of the *Negroes*: of manners civil and ingenuous; free from fraud in their dealings, and exact keepers of their words. The common ſort but meanly clad, for the moſt part naked, content with no more covering than to hide their ſhame. But thoſe of greater Eſtates and Fortunes (as they have amongſt them many ancient and Noble Families) obſerve a Majeſty in both Sexes, both in their Attendants and Apparel; ſweetning the laſt with Oyls, and Perfumes, and adorning themſelves with Jewels, Pearls, and other Ornaments befitting. They eat no fleſh, but live on Barly, Rice, Milk, Hony, and other things without life.

The *Women* not of much fairer complexion than the men, yet of lovely countenances, wear their hair long and looſe, but covered with a thin Veil of *Calicut Lawn*. Their ears hung with many rings, ſo great and heavy, that they are torn, and ſtretched to much diſproportion; their noſes alſo ringed, and behung with Jewels according to their eſtate and quality. Servilely obſequious to their husbands, whoſe affections they divide amongſt them without jar or jealouſie: the men allowed here, as in all the Eaſt, the uſe of many wives, whom they buy of their Parents for a yoke of Oxen; and may marry as often as they liſt. In which they have too great a priviledg above the women, who after the deceaſe of their common huſband, do either burn in the ſame flame with him, or elſe are forced to doom themſelves to perpetual Widow-hood. But of this we may ſpeak more hereafter, when we come to the particulars.

The *Chriſtian* Faith was firſt planted in theſe Countries by St. *Thomas*, from whom the remainders of *Chriſtianity* take denomination; and unto whom the Records and *Monuments* of that Church do aſcribe their converſion. For in one of their *Breviaries* written in the *Chaldæan* Tongue, and tranſlated into *Latine* by Father *John Maria Campanin* a *Jeſuite*, we find it thus, *Per D. Thomam evanuit error Idololatriæ ab Indis*, &c. i.e. By St. *Thomas* the errors of Idolatry vaniſhed out of the *Indies*; by St. *Thomas*, they received the Sacrament of *Baptiſm*, and the Adoption of Sons; by St. *Thomas*, they believed and confeſſed the Father, the Son, and Holy Ghoſt; by St. *Thomas*, they kept the faith received of one God; And finally, by St. *Thomas*, the ſplendour of ſaving Doctrine did appear to all *India*. His body, as they ſay, intombed in the City of *Maliapar*, upon the Coaſt of *Choromandel*; the truth of which tradition I diſpute not here. But this Plantation of the Goſpel by the hand of St. *Thomas* was not univerſal over all the Country, but in ſome parts and Provinces only: or elſe was forced to give ground a while to prevailing *Heatheniſm*. For in the Reign of *Conſtantine*, we read how the *Indians* living on the further-ſide of the River *Ganges* (for ſo I underſtand the *Indi interiores* of my Author) were converted to the Faith by the Miniſtery of one *Frumentius*, of the City of *Tyre*; who having ſpent the greateſt part of his time amongſt them, was employed in that ſervice, and conſecrated the firſt Biſhop (for thoſe Churches) by the great *Athanaſius* of *Alexandria*. But being the foundation of this building was laid by St. *Thomas*, the remainder of *Chriſtians* here being, aſcribe the whole work to him; called therefore *Chriſtians* of St. *Thomas*. Governed originally by their own Biſhops, ſubordinate to an Archbiſhop of their own alſo, reſiding at *Guagamale* fifteen miles from *Cochin*; one of the chief Cities of this Country; who for a long time acknowledged obedience to the Patriarch of *Muſal*, by the name of the Patriarch of *Babylon*, as by theſe *Chriſtians* of *India* he is ſtill termed. The number of the *Chriſtians* computed at 15 or 16 thouſand Families; or at 70000 perſons in the accompt of others; inhabiting for the moſt part in that large tract of ground, which beginning at the outlets of *Indus* and *Ganges*, ſtretcheth unto the Cape or Promontory called Cape *Comari*. The Points wherein they differed from the Church of *Rome*, 1 Their adminiſtring the Sacrament of the Euchariſt in bread ſeaſoned with ſalt; 2 Adminiſtring in both kinds, but uſing inſtead of Wine (which is ſcarce, or not at all, to be had in this Country) the juyce of Raſins ſoftned in water over night, and ſo preſſed forth; 3 Not baptizing Children untill 40 days old, except it be in danger of death; 4 Permitting no Images in their Churches, but that of the Croſs; 5 Allowing one marriage to their Prieſts, but debarring the ſecond; 6 In painting God with three heads on one body, to denote the Trinity; 7 Denying the Uſe of *extreme Unction*; And 8 not acknowledging the Pope's Supremacy; but beſides theſe remainders of thoſe ancient *Chriſtians*, there are ſome others now of late of a new Plantation, by the pains and travel of the *Jeſuites*, though not with ſuch ſucceſs here, as they found in *China*: many of the Inhabitants, partly by the diligence of the *Arabians*, and partly by the power of the great *Mongul*, having embraced *Mahometaniſm*; and being conſequently leſs inclinable to admit the Goſpel, than when they were in the condition of their natural *Gentiliſm*. Yet have they made ſuch good progreſs in it, that *Echebar* the *Mongul*, not only founded a fair Church for the uſe of the *Chriſtians* in the City of *Agra* (the Regal City of that Empire) but committed to the care of the *Jeſuites* the Education of two Princes of the Regal Family. And poſſibly they might have made a great increaſe of *Chriſtians* before this time, had they not been oppoſed therein by Sultan *Curroon*, a bitter Enemy to their proceeding, in the Reign of his Father, and no great favourer of them ſince. Inſomuch that hearing a *Jeſuite*, called *Franciſco Carfi*, report unto his Father how miraculouſly a wooden Croſs of his had eſcaped the fire, he was very urgent with his Father to have a great fire preſently made, and the ſame Croſs to be thrown into it, upon theſe conditions, that if the Croſs conſumed not, his Father and himſelf would become *Chriſtians*; but if it did, the *Jeſuite* ſhould be burned in the ſame fire with it. A fiery trial which the poor *Jeſuite* had much ado to put off, and preſerve his credit. Howſoever by their practicing amongſt the old Chriſtians they have gained one point of very great conſequence and importance to the Church of *Rome*. For in the year 1599. by the ſolicitation of the *Jeſuites* and others, the *Indian* Chriſtians renounced their obedience to the *Patriarch* of *Muſal*, and ſubmitted their Churches

Churches to the Jurisdiction of the *Pope* of *Rome*, in a *National Synod* held at *Liamper*, not far from *Maliapar*, by the Archbishop of *Goa* (the Primate of the *Portugals* in those parts) not only rejecting all opinions contrary to the *Romish* Tenets, but delivering all their Books and *Liturgies* to be altered and reformed by the said Archbishop, according to the Rites and Doctrines of the Church of *Rome*, which was done accordingly.

But these comparatively to the rest, come not to an handful; the main body of the People wallowing in their *Gentilism*; and still retaining many of those ancient Customs, which they used of old: as *viz.* 1 Not knowing their Wives after they have borne them two children: 2 Nor keeping them, if after five years *cohabitation* they can raise no issue by them, but then exchanging them for others: Rewarding none for any military exploit, if they bring not with them in their hands the head of an enemy: 4 Killing their Friends, before they were withered or decayed by Age, or sickness. To these they have since added others of a later invention, perhaps more barbarous; of which we may have opportunity to speak anon. Their Priests or learned men, in the time of old were called *Brachmanes* from one *Brachman*, the prescriber of their Rites and Laws, by whom instructed in the *Rudiments* of their *Philosophy*; some of which, from their going naked, had the name of *Gymnosophists*; who were to them as the *Chaldæi* to the *Assyrians*; the *Magi* to the *Persians*; and the *Druides*, to the antient *Britains*. Had in great Reverence by the People, and living for the most part an austere and solitary life, in Caves, and Desarts; feeding on herbs, poorly apparelled, and for a time abstaining from all carnal pleasures; but that time past, they may indulge themselves more liberty, and admit the company of women. Others of them live together with the common people, as being their ordinary Priests. Of these, the great *Alexander*, when he was in this Country surprized ten; one of them called by the name of *Calanus*, with whom he had a great deal of communication: propounding to him many strange questions, and receiving back to many of them, (as himself confessed) some not unsatisfying though strange, answers. To these *Gymnosophists*, or *Brachmans*, the *Bramines* do now succeed, both in place and authority; but differ from them most extremely in point of learning, and the civilities of their lives: these *Bramines* being the most impure, libidinous, and sensual beasts in all the Country; priviledged with the first nights lodging of every Bride, which when sated with their filthy lust, they sell, or traffick with, to strangers, serving as *Stallions* to old men, and as *Panders* to young; so fleshed in wickedness, and ignorant of all good Letters, that they have nothing of a man but the voice and shape. *Mahometanism* is also entertained in a great part of the Country, first brought in by the *Tartars*, and neighbouring *Persians*, unto whom conterminous; but much increased by the victories of the *Great Mongul*: who being originally a *Tartar*, and of that Religion, hath caused it to be propagated in most parts of his large dominions.

Mountains of most note in it, besides *Caucasus*, and some other of the branches of *Taurus*, or *Ararat*, common to this, and the *Tartarian* and *Persian* Empires, 1 *Sardonix*, full of Mines of those precious Stones which are called after the name of the Mountain. 2 *Vindius*, 3 *Bittigo*, 4 *Adisathrus*. 5 Those called *Apocopi*, and 6 Those named *Orodii*. And on the further side of *Ganges*. 7 *Bepyrrhus*. 8 *Meanderus*. 9 Those called *Damisi*, and 10 *Semanthinus*; part of this last extending also unto *China*. All of them very fruitful in the production of Mines, and Rivers, as will appear by looking over the particulars when we come unto them.

But the Mountain of chief note of all, is that which *Ptolomy* called *Bittigo*, and is now named *Gates*; the Southern part of the great Mountain *Imaus* spoken of before: extended from Mount *Caucasus*, where it crosseth the *Taurus* in right Angles, to Cape *Comari*, a known Promontory of *Industan*, or the hither *India* (which it divideth into East and West) for the space of 400 leagues and upwards. Conceived by *Postellus*, a Learned Writer, to be that Mount *Sephar*, mention whereof is made in the tenth of *Genesis*, where it is said to be the utmost Eastern limit of the Sons of *Joktan*, *Gen.* 10. 30. With probability enough, for ought I can see; the Sons of *Joktan* being settled in these parts of *India*, and the Provinces of the *Persian* Empire which lie nearest to them. And so far *Stephanus* doth concur with *Postell*, as to affirme of this Mount *Sephar*, that it is *Mons Indiæ*, an *Indian* Mountain: both of them grounding on St. *Hierom*, who expressly saith, *Sophera mons Orientis in* India, *juxta quam habitaverunt filii* Joctan, *i. e.* That *Sephar*, or *Sopher*, is the name of a Mountain of the East in *India*; near to which dwelt the Sons of *Joktan*. More probably, without doubt, than that we should transfer it into *America*, as I see some do; and make it there to be the great Mountain of the *Andes*, which runneth the whole length of *Peru*, from one end to the other, and thence, as some will have it, to the Streights of *Magellan*. Which should we grant, we must not look for *Joktan*, or the Sons of *Joktan*, either in *Arabia Fœlix*, where *Bochartus* placeth them; nor in the Eastern parts of *Asia*, where most probably they may be found; but we must cross the vast Oriental Ocean, and look for them in a place where they never were; besides, that granting this for true, we must allow *America* to have been known in the time of *Moses*, which no Author that I ever met with, did so much as dream of.

Rivers of most note are, 1 *Indus*, which ariseth out of that part of *Taurus*, which the Ancients called *Paropamisus*, the Moderns, *Naugrocot*; and having received into it 19 other Rivers, after a course of 900 miles, falleth into the Ocean at seven Mouths, that is to say, 1 *Sagappa*, being the most Western: 2 *Sinthum*, 3 *Anreum*, 4 *Cariphi*, 5 *Sappara*, 6 *Sabalassa*, 7 *Lonibare*, the most Eastward. But five of these being choaked with Sands, or drawn into the neighbouring Channels, there now remains but only two. A River famous in Records and ancient Stories, for giving name unto the Country, and that so celebrated Voyage of *Alexander*, who sailed down it towards the *Indian* Ocean: the voyage holding above five months, of which there is said to have passed no day wherein he sailed not 15 miles, or 600 Furlongs. 2 *Ganges* which riseth, as some say, from the Mountain *Imaus*, (or rather from that part of *Taurus*, where *Imaus* falleth right upon it,) and falling headlong down the Rocks, is first collected into a Lake, or Pool (supposed by others for the fountain and original of it) whence with a gentler pace it passeth towards the Ocean; taking in by the way, as is said by *Pliny*, 30 navigable Rivers. In the narrowest place of eight miles breadth, in the broadest 20, seldom so shallow but that the depth thereof is 100 foot, or 20 *Geometrical* paces. Parted into five great Channels it falleth at last into the Sea; the first of which most towards the West, is called *Cambysum*, 2 *Magnum*, 3 *Camberychum*, 4 *Pseudostomum*, and 5 that which lieth furthest towards the East, called *Antiboli*. This River erroneously supposed to be that *Pison* which watered *Paradise*: and to encrease the reputation of the error, we find it countenanced by *Josephus*, and other no less eminent names; and also backed by some traditions of the people which inhabit near it. By whom it is affirmed, that one of the *Bengalan* Kings sent men up the River, who came

at last to a pleasant place, blest with a fragrant Earth, sweet air, and quiet waters; beyond which they could go no further. The truth and reality whereof doth so possess them, that at the mouth of this River called *Gangasagie*, such as are weary of this world use to cast themselves into the Current, and are presently devoured by a fish, called *Sea-dogs*, by whom they hope to find a quick passage to *Paradise*. The occasion of which error among the Ancients, proceeded from those words of the Scripture, in which it is affirmed of *Pison*, that it compassed the land of *Havilah*: which granting that it did, inferreth not that either this River must be *Pison*, or that *India* is intended by that *Havilah*. For besides *Havilah* the Son of *Joktan*, planted in some part of *India*, there was another *Havilah* the Son of *Chus*, settled in the Land of *Havilah* or *Chusiana*, not far from *Babylon*: this last indeed watered by the River *Pison*, and the first by *Ganges*; too far a sunder, and divided by too many Nations, to be taken or mistaken one for another. But not less famous, because none of those which neighboured the Garden of *Eden*, perhaps of greater fame than any of those which did. For to this River do the superstitious *Indians* make their solemn Pilgrimages, vainly conceiving that they shall be sure of their Eternity, if at the time of their death they may drink of this water. To the overflowings of this River do the people ascribe the fertility of the Countries adjoyning, as the *Ægyptians* do to *Nilus*. And finally, by this River was the whole Country anciently, and at this present is, divided into two main parts, (each subdivided into many particular provinces) viz. 1 *India intra Gangem*, 2 *India extra Gangem*. Of each of which we will first take a brief survey, with reference to the state and story of it in preceding times; and then consider them with reference to the present Age.

1. *INDIA INTRA GANGEM.*

INDIA INTRA GANGEM is bounded on the East, with the River *Ganges*, till the fall thereof into the Sea; and after that with that large and spacious Bay, called anciently *Sinus Gangeticus*, now the Gulf of *Bengala*; on the West, with *Paropamisus*, *Arachosia*, *Gedrosia*, Provinces of the *Persian* Empire; and part of the *Arabian* Seas; on the North, where it is broadest, with Mount *Taurus*, branched into *Paropamisus*, *Caucasus*, and other parts: and on the South, where it endeth in a sharp point or Promontory, by *Ptolomy* called *Commaria extrema*, but now Cape *Commari*, with the *Indian* Ocean. So named from being situate on this side of *Ganges*; by the Moderns, *Indostan*.

The Country of the same nature formerly, as it is at the present, not altered but by changing of the Channels of *Indus*; which being shifted by an *Earthquake*, turned a great part of the once neighbouring Region to a sandy Desart: *Indus* (as many other of the *Indian* Rivers) fatning and enriching all the Land which it overfloweth. The people of those elder times, much like the *Scythians*, especially in their course of life, living without Cities, Temples, Houses, in their movable Tents; their food the bark of a tree, called *Tala*, which served for bread; and the flesh of Bucks, Does, and other Venison, with the skins whereof they made their Garments. All of them *Free-men*, but no *Slaves* to be found amongst them. Less warlike than the *Scythians*, but as great contemners of death as they; the very women contending eagerly amongst themselves, which should accompany their Husband (one Husband having many Wives) to his Funeral Pile. Of which thus St. *Hierom*, *He igitur contendunt de amore viri, & ambitio summa certantium est ac testimonium castitatis, dignum morte censeri.* A Custom still retained amongst them; of which somewhat hath been said already, and more is to be said in another place.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1 *Hydaspes*, by *Ptolomy* (and by him only) called *Bidaspes*, one of the furthest bounds of *Alexander's* Conquests. 2 *Suastus*, 3 *Coa*, 4 *Acesines*, very memorable in the Gests of *Alexander*. 5 *Sandabilis*, 6 *Zaradrus*: all coming from the Northern Mountains, and all falling (*Hydaspes* with three other Rivers first received into it) into the great bed of *Indus*. 7 *Diamna*, 8 *Sorabus*, and 9 *Soa*, falling from the like Northern Mountains, into the main Channel of *Ganges*. 10 *Naragonas*, issuing from Mount *Vindius*. 11 *Baris*, from *Bittigo*. 12 *Chaberis*, from *Adisathris*. 13 *Tindis*, from the hill called *Vxentius*: and 14 *Tina*, from the *Orodian* Mountains, with many others of less note. By what names called at the present, I determine not; nor find I any which have dared to adventure on it. But doubtless to be found in 1 *Catamul*, 2 *Cebcha*, 3 *Ray*, 4 *Chenao*, 5 *Rebeth*, all Tributaries unto *Indus*, which is now called *Schind*. 6 *Taphi*, 7 *Harunda*, 8 *Chambel*, 9 *Jamena*, which empty their waters into *Ganges*; the which, with such others of the principal Rivers as are now known by name to us, shall occasionally be touched on in that which followeth. Besides which Rivers, here is a famous Lake mentioned in the Gests of *Alexander*, (but the name occurreth not) not much above a mile in circuit, but exceeding pleasant, shaded on every side with woods; memorable for the great refreshment which it gave to *Alexander's* Army, when even pined with thirst.

The Country so exceeding populous in the time of *Ptolomy*, that it affordeth him the names of more noted Cities, than any one Country in the world. Of which 1 *Cotiara* 2 *Nigama*, 3 *Sageda*, 4 *Rarassa*, 5 *Masopelle*, and 6 *Pityndra* are honoured with the name of *Metropoles*; as being the head-Cities of their several and respective Nations. 7 *Ozene*, 8 *Sora*, 9 *Palibothra*, 10 *Gange*, 11 *Batana*, 12 *Hippocura*, 13 *Carara*, 14 *Modura*, 15 *Orthura*, and 16 *Malanga*, mentioned as the Royal Seats of several Princes, by the name of *Regiæ*. 17 *Bardaxema*, 18 *Tyndis*, 19 *Argari*, 20 *Cunula*, 21 *Chaberis*, on the River so called. 22 *Palura*, on the shores of the Gulf of *Bengala*, and 23 *Palura*, on the banks of *Cambysum*. 24 *Tilegramocum*, marked out above the rest with the name of *Civitates*, (Cities) and therefore probably of more note than others not so distinguished. And finally, 25 *Manogsassum*, 26 *Simylla*, near a Promontory of the same name, 27 *Nitra*, 28 *Maziris*, 29 *Elanchorum*, 30 *Colchi*, 31 *Salur*, 32 *Sobura*, 33 *Poduca*, 34 *Melange*, 35 *Maliarpha*, 36 *Contacissyla*, 37 *Nosygue*, 38 *Barygaza*, specified as the most noted and celebrious *Empories*; besides 39 *Canthymus*, 40 *Stathmus*, (and 41 a Road opposite to *Chrysas*) two commodious *Stations* or Roads for shipping. The names and situation of these places is the most we find of them, which makes me pass them over with a bare recital, only to shew how populous and well planted this Country was in the time of my Author.

Of less name, but of more note in the course of story, 1 *Nysa*, built by *Bacchus* at the time of his *Indian* Conquest, and called thus by the name of his *Nurse*, to preserve her memory, his Mother dying in Child-birth of him. Replenished by him with his sick and wounded Souldiers, whose Posterity continued here till the time of *Alexander*, who spared the City and the people for his love to *Bacchus*, who was therein worshipped in a Temple of his own foundation, planted about with Bays, Vines, and Ivy, whose shady branches covered the roof of it. In the midst thereof an Image, with all the Instruments belonging to a plentiful *Vintage*, all of Gold or Silver.

Silver. 2 *Taxilla*, or *Taxiala*, as *Ptolomy* calleth it, ſeated betwixt *Indus* and *Hydaſpes*, in the Region called *Verſa*; and built moſt probably by *Taxiles*, a puiſſant King of *India*, in the time of *Alexander*. Adorned in elder times with a Temple dedicated to the *Sun*, and therein with an Ivory Image of *Ajax*, a Golden Statue of *Alexander*, and the portraiture of King *Porus* made in Copper. The floor of *Moſaical* work pouldred with Pearls, the Walls of red Marble interlayed with Gold, which made it ſhine a far off, like a flaſh of lightning. 3 *Nagara*, called alſo *Dionyſiopolis*, in memory of *Bacchus*, who was alſo called *Dionyſius*, and *Liber Pater*. 4 *Adorne*, by *Diodorus* called *Aornos*, and *Avernus* by *Strabo*; ſo ſtrongly ſeated on a rock, that *Hercules* was not able to force it: which made *Alexander*, imitating, and therein out-going the Acts of *Hercules*, aſſault it with the greater force, and at laſt he carryed it. 5 *Bucephala*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Hydaſpes*, and named thus in memory of *Bucephalus*, his beloved horſe; which had ſerved him in all the courſe of his Fortunes, and dyed hereabouts, being then thirty years old. 6 *Pireta*, another of his foundations, ſo called by the name of his Dog whom he dearly loved. 7 *Alexandria*, on the banks of *Indus*, another of his foundations alſo. 8 *Mazage*, on the Weſt of *Indus*, one of the firſt Towns of *India*, taken by the *Macedonians*, though garriſoned within, and invironed without by an Hoſt of 300000 men: but yielded after ſome reſiſtance, with the uſe of her own body, by *Cleophe* the Queen thereof, who received it back with other favours, from the hands of the Conquerour. 9 *Nora*, a ſtrong City on the ſame ſide of *Indus*, taken by *Polyſperchon*, one of his Commanders. 10 *Samus*, on the banks of the ſame River, taken by *Alexander* in the courſe of his Navigation down that Sea of Waters; the Inhabitants whereof fought againſt him with poyſoned Arrows, with one of which *Ptolomy*, afterward King of *Ægypt*, was dangerouſly wounded, and cured with an herb which *Alexander* dreamt he had ſeen in the mouth of a Serpent. 11 *Oxydrace*, the chief City of the *Oxydracans*; at the Siege whereof *Alexander* is ſaid to be the firſt that ſcaled the Walls, and the laſt that could do ſo, the Ladder breaking as ſoon as he was at the top. Standing thus alone as a mark to all their Darts, he was by the Souldiers deſired to leap down amongſt them; he in a daring *bravado* leaped into the Town among his Enemies: where it was not only his good hap to light upon his feet, but to have an old Tree at his back to defend him behind. In this poſture he is ſaid to have maintained the fight a long time, againſt all the Souldiers of the Town; killing two of them with his own hands, and by that example teaching the reſt to be more mannerly; till being wearyed, and dangerouſly wounded, he was forced to leave his feet, and commit the weight of his body to his knees. In this caſe *Leonatus*, *Peuceſtes*, and ſome other of his Captains, came to aſſiſt him; who defended their dying Maſter, till the whole Army entred the Town, and put all the people to the ſword, in revenge of their King, whoſe life they had little hope to enjoy: though he with much danger did afterward recover. For my part I give little or no credence to this ſtory, ranging it in the ſame Catalogue of truth with the Adventures of *Donzel del Phœbo*, *Roſicleer*, *Belianis*, *Amadis*, and the reſt of the rabble of *Knights Errant*. Neither is this the firſt time that *Curtius* hath diſgraced the ſoundneſs of *Alexander's* Judgment, and the truth of his Actions, with the like idle and impoſſible Fables: though indeed in that particular, he ſaith that it was *multo magis ad temeritatis quam ad gloriæ famam*. And 12 *Nicæa*, built by *Alexander* on the banks of *Aceſines*, in memory of his many great and ſignal Victories. Not far from which, finding how unwilling his Souldiers were to paſs further Eaſt, he purpoſed to leave behind him ſome Monument of his great Exploits, and to make his fame immortal amongſt the *Indians*. And to that end he cauſed the form of his Camp to be enlarged, and the *Cabbins* to be made bigger than ſufficed for his men to lodge in; the *Mangers* to be ſet higher than his Horſes could reach; *Armets* and *Bitts* for Horſes of too great a ſize (made not for uſe, but oſtentation of his might) to be ſcattered up and down the Camp, for the ſavage people to wonder at in the times to come. By means whereof he got nothing amongſt knowing men, but a ſuſpicion that his Actions were intended leſs memorable, than they are reported to have been; ſince he ſo vainly laboured to have them thought greater, than indeed they were.

The old Inhabitants hereof, were the *Indo-Scythæ*, inhabiting on the North-Weſt of *Indus*, the *Mazagæ*, *Sadam*, *Piratæ*, *Limyrices*, *Aii*, the *Soringi*, *Aruari*, *Oxydracæ*, *Malli*, and *Lambatæ*, the *Gandarides*, or *Gangarides*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, the *Caſpirei*, under the ſhades of Mount *Vindius*. The *Muſicani*, *Chatzirei*, *Polindæ*, *Phyllitæ*, *Bitigi*, *Chadramitiæ*, *Pezuari*, *Adiſanbri*, *Mandalæ*, *Drylphita*, *Sabaræ*, *Pandioni*, with many others, to the number of 122. ſeveral Nations, if *Megaſthenes* be not out in his reckoning, too many and too impertinent to be muſtered here.

Originally deſcended from the Sons of *Noah*, before they left theſe Eaſtern parts to go towards the unfortunate Valley of *Shinaar*. We could not elſe have found this Countrey ſo full of people in the days of *Semiramis*, the Wife of *Ninus*: who leading an Army compounded of ſeveral Nations, to the number of four Millions and upwards (if *Cteſias*, and *Diodorus Siculus*, who reports it from him, be of any credit; but certainly the greateſt Army that ever was raiſed) was encountered by *Staurobates*, a King of *India*, with greater force made up of natural *Indians* only; by whom ſhe was vanquiſhed and ſlain. A matter beyond all belief, though neither Army could make up a fourth part of that number, if the *Indians* had been no other than ſome one of thoſe Colonies, which were ſent from *BABEL*; or rather a ſecond or third *Swarm* of thoſe former Colonies, which went thence under the command of the firſt *Adventurers*, For that any of the firſt *Adventurers*, who were preſent at the building of the Tower of *BABEL*, travelled ſo far Eaſt, is not affirmed by any who have laboured in the ſearch of their *Plantations*. So that I take it for a matter undeniable, that the Plantation of *India* preceded the attempt of *BABEL*; though by whom made, there is nothing to be ſaid for certain: Yet if I might have liberty to expreſs my own conceptions, I am inclinable to believe that all the Eaſtern parts of *Perſia*, with *China*, and both the *Indiaes* were peopled by ſuch of the Sons of *Sem*, as went not with the reſt to the valley of *Shinaar*. For otherwiſe I can ſee no reaſon, that the Poſterity of *Japhet* ſhould plant the greateſt part of the Leſſer *Aſia*, and the whole Continent of *Europe*, with the Iſles thereof; and that the Sons of *Cham* ſhould ſpread themſelves over *Babylonia*, *Paleſtina*, the three *Arabiaes*, and the whole continent of *Affrick*: the Poſterity of *Sem* being ſhut up in a corner, the Greater *Aſia*, hardly ſo big as ſome one of the Provinces taken up by the other *Adventurers*. And therefore that I may allow to the Sons of *Sem* an equal Latitude, I think it not improbable to fix them in theſe Eaſtern Countreys; ſpreading themſelves this way as they grew in numbers, before the reſt of the *Adventurers* went to ſeek new fortunes at the Tower of *BABEL*. And being that the Countrey was large and wealthy, and might have room enough to ſpare for ſome ſecond comming (eſpecially deſcending from the ſame root with them) I

doubt not but place here all the Sons of *Joktan*, *Havilah*, *Chatſarmaveth*, *Saba*, *Abimail*, who have left here ſome tract or monument of themſelves, as hath been ſhewn at large in our *GENERAL PREFACE*; and as concerning *Ophir*, ſhall be ſhewed hereafter. To proceed therefore to our Story, the next who made any invaſion on this Countrey, after that of *Semiramis*, was *Bacchus*, or *Liber Pater*, the Son of *Jupiter* and *Semele*, accompanied with *Hercules Ægyptius*, not much more fortunate than ſhe: the forces of *Bacchus* being defeated, and *Hercules* forced to throw away his Golden Shield. But what they could not do by *Arms*, they effected by *Arts*. *Bacchus* inſtructing them in the uſe of *Wine*, Oyl, Sacrifices, and the Art of *Architecture*, and drawing them into Towns and Cities; for that cauſe honoured as a GOD. To *Hercules* they aſcribe the Nation of the *Pandioni*, proceeding from a Daughter of his called *PANDÆA*: the memory of both preſerved in Statues and Pillars erected by them.

After this, unattempted till the time of *Alexander*, who having made a full Conqueſt of the *Perſian* Empire, invaded *India* with an Army of 120000 fighting men. Beginning with *CLEOPHE*, Queen of the *Magazæ*, a people of *Indo-Scythia*, he brought her to conformity, poſſeſſed himſelf both of her Perſon and Eſtate; on whom he begat a Son called *Alexander*, who is ſaid to have ſucceeded in her Dominions. Being paſſed over the River *Indus*, *Taxiles* (by ſome called *Omphis*) a prudent Prince, whoſe Kingdom is affirmed to be bigger than *Ægypt*, ſubmitted of his own accord: offering his ſervice and aſſiſtance to promote his Conqueſt, and preſenting him with a Crown of Gold, and 80 Talents of ready money. This King made welcom, but his money not ſo much as looked on; the *Macedonian* being ſo far from fingering of this *Indian* Gold, that he gave him a thouſand Talents of his own Treaſure. Encouraged by this Royal dealing, *Abiſares*, another puiſſant Prince of the oppoſite Faction unto *Taxiles*, ſubmitted alſo, and was as graciouſly received. *Porus*, whoſe Kingdom lay on the other ſide of the *Hydaſpes*, would not be ſo conquered; and therefore muſtereth up his Forces, and valiantly made good the banks of the River. But vanquiſhed at laſt, not without much difficulty, he was made a Priſoner to the Victor; who honouring the man for his brave reſiſtance, gave him his liberty and Kingdom, with a great enlargement. The Conquerour had a great deſire to go further Eaſt, but the Souldiers would not be perſwaded: ſufficiently taught by *Porus*, what they were to look for, if the *Indians* ſhould unite their Forces. Unable to prevail, he erected in the place twelve *Altars*, as high as *Towers*, where he obſerved many ſolemn Games and Sacrifices: and having ſacrificed to *Hydaſpes*, *Indus*, and *Aceſines*, he ſailed down *Indus*, towards the Southern Ocean; which ſeen at diſtance, he turned towards *Gedroſia*, and thence to *Babylon*, where he dyed.

After his death *Eumenes* raiſed ſome part of his Forces hence, but the *Macedonians* being plunged in a *Civil* War, one *Andracottus* ſtirred up the *Indians* to recover their freedoms, making himſelf at firſt their Captain, but at laſt their King. Poſſeſſed of all that had been conquered by the *Greeks*, he was encountered by *Seleucus*, who had then got the command of *Aſia*: againſt whom he brought an Army of 600000 fighting men. Frighted wherewith, *Seleucus* made peace with him, and contracted a ſolemn League betwixt them, continued with the interchange of friendly Offices amongſt their Poſterity; and more confirmed by an interview betwixt *Antiochus* the *Great*, and *Saphragaſenus*, one of the Succeſſors of *Andracottus*; by whom *Antiochus* was preſented with 150 Elephants, and the promiſe of ſome treaſure to be ſent after him. By the Poſterity of *Andracottus* was the Kingdom held, till the proſperity and full height of the *ROMAN* Empire. The power whereof though they rather knew by report than tryal, yet was it not amiſs to entertain a potent, though remote Seat, in terms of amity. Therefore they ſent Embaſſadours unto *Auguſtus*, who preſented him with a number of *Tigers*, (which Beaſts, ſaith *Dion*, till then, the *Roman* people had never ſeen) and which was the moſt pleaſing, a little Boy born without arms, who with his feet could bend a Bow, ſhoot, and play on wind-inſtruments, as exactly as others with their hands. *Trajan* the Emperour had a great deſire to ſee this Countrey, but was diverted from that purpoſe by matters of more neceſſary importance to the State of his Empire. Moved with the fame of *Antoninus* the *Roman* Emperour, they ſent a ſolemn Embaſſie unto him, making him Umpire in ſome Controverſies which they had with the *Bactrians*: from which Embaſſadours it is probable that *Ptolomy* the *Geographer* who then lived, might receive his informations of the Eſtate of this Countrey. The like they did to *Julian* the *Apoſtate* alſo, then ſetting forwards on his Expedition againſt the *Perſians*, deſiring his friendſhip and alliance. How it was with them in the time of *Conſtantine* and *Juſtinian*, hath been ſhewn already. After theſe times by little and little, Hiſtories have in a manner been ſilent concerning the affairs hereof; but for ſome conqueſts made on the parts next *Perſia*, by the *Caliphs* of *Bagdat*. For notwithſtanding that there was continual traffick from the *Red Sea* hither; and between the *Perſians*, *Turkiſh*, and *Indian* Merchants for Spices, and the other Commodities of this Region: yet were not theſe Merchants acquainted with the ſtate of the Countrey, becauſe they entred not into it; but were met by the *Indian* Merchants at *Samarchand*, being as it were the common Emporie. Neither did the *Ægyptians* at all enter into *India*, but were met by the *Indians* at *Ormus*, or ſome other Iſland: even as now the *Chinois* make ſome of the *Philippine*, the Staple of their Trade with the *Spaniards*, whom they licence not to come into the *Continent* among them. But our modern Travellers and Navigators have withdrawn this maſk of obſcurity, and ſhew us her lively portraiture in as lively colours. One of the firſt which brake the Ice, and gave us any certainty of their affairs, was Sir *John Mandeville*; accompted at his coming back for the greateſt *Fabler* in the World: ſo incredible ſeemed his reports of the magnificence of thoſe Kings, and the wealth of their Countreys, and the many rarities which he found amongſt them. But better thought of by our neighbours, he obtained a Monument in a Convent at *Leige* (where he ended the long courſe of his Life and Travels, 1372) the Friers of which keep ſome things of his, *Comme pour honourable memoire de ſon excellence*, for an honourable memorial of his Excellence. Many of his *Relations* ſince confirmed by the *Portugals*, who under the conduct of *Vazques de Gama* firſt diſcovered this Countrey, by the new way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, *Anno* 1499. or thereabouts. For ſo it hapned, that the *Portugals* having diſcovered all the Coaſts of *Africk*, as far as to *Cape Verd*, by the encouragement, and at the charge of *Henry* Duke of *Viſea*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the firſt, began to think upon ſome way to the wealth of *India*, and getting into their own hands the rich trade of that Countrey. To which end it was firſt thought, that *Pedro di Cannanilla*, and *Alphonſo de Pagua*, ſhould make a journey into the Eaſt parts, to learn the certainty of the Spice trade, and make report of ſuch other Commodities as theſe Countreys yielded. Being come at laſt by long journeys to the City of *Calicute*, and having ſatisfied themſelves in the inquiry which they came about, they prepare for their return

return to *Portugal*. *Pagua* dying in the Journey, and *Cannanilla*, though detained by the *Habaſſine* Emperour (commonly, but corruptly, called *Preſter John*) ſends home a full relation of his ſucceſſes; inflamed with which, King *John* the ſecond ſends out *Bartholomew Diaz*. *Anno* 1587. to find out a way into the *Indies* by the back of *Africa*: who having ſailed as far as the *Cape of good Hope*, without giving end to the Adventure, returned back to *Portugal*. Undertaken with better fortune 10 years after, at the command of King *Emanuel*, by *Vaſquez de Gama*, above mentioned; who doubling the Cape, and ſailing Northward, all along the ſhores of *Africk*, as far as the Kingdom of *Melinde*, received from the King thereof both *Pilots* and inſtructions to bring him to *Calicute*, where he found all true which *Cannanilla* had before reported. Full of good news at the end of 26 Months from his firſt ſetting out, he returns to *Liſbone*, received for the preſent with joy and triumph, and about two years after (that is to ſay 1502) furniſhed with 13 Ships and three Caravels, he ſets forward again, followed by *Stephen de Gama* the ſame year with 5 ſhips more, by which great ſtrength he made himſelf Maſter of ſome Ports; and by that means laid the foundation of that great Command, which the *Portugals* have attained unto in theſe Eaſtern Countreys. Seconded in this great enterpriſe by *Ferdinando de Almeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and other noble Adventurers of the Realm of *Portugal*, as after them by ſuch of the *European* Nations as had the benefit and trade of the weſtern Ocean.

If it be asked, why the *Caſtilians*, or *Spaniards*, being ſtrong in ſhiping, bent not themſelves to the diſcovery of theſe wealthy Countreys; it may be anſwered, 1 That they were buſied at the ſame time in the diſcovery and conqueſt of the *New World*, which they looked on as a nearer, and no leſs profitable booty than this of *India*. 2 The Commodities of this Countrey, being brought home by the *Portugals*, were ſold to them at far cheaper rates, than they could have fetched them in their own bottoms. 3 And chiefly becauſe by the definitive ſentence of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth, both the *Caſtilians*, and the *Portugals*, were ſo limited in their Navigations, that the *Caſtilians* might not intermeddle in the Eaſtern, nor the *Portugals* in the diſcovery or Conqueſt of the Weſtern parts, beyond the bounds which he had ſet to thoſe ſeveral Nations before mentioned; and by ſome latter obſervations who have been informed, that in this part of *India* were no fewer than 47 Kingdoms, whereof ſome few have ſtill their own natural Kings, the reſt all ſubject to the power of the *Great Mongul*, contracted into a leſſer number by joyning many leſſer Territories into one Diviſion. We ſhall look on it as diſtributed into 15 Provinces. Some have reduced them unto five, but give us neither the bounds nor extent of any of them. And others in the deſcription of their travels, ramble up and down with ſuch uncertainties, (moſt of them being men of trades and ignorance) that though they tell us where they lodged, and what entertainments they did meet with, yet we ſhall hardly know by them (for I think they did not know themſelves) in what Province they were, or to what part the ſeveral Towns, thorow which they paſſed did of right belong. So that our paſſage thorow theſe Countreys (having ſuch blind guids to follow) will be full of difficulty, and not ſo ſatisfactory to the Reader as he might expect. Howſoever, I deſire him to bear me company, whilſt I take the beſt ſurvey I can of theſe 15 Provinces, to which the whole may be moſt handſomely reduced: that is to ſay, 1 *Dulſinda*, 2 *Pengab*, 3 *Mandao*, 4 *Delly*, 5 *Agra*, 6 *Sanga*, 7 *Cambaia*, 8 *Decan*, 9 *Canara*, 10 *Malabar*, 11 *Narſinga*, 12 *Oriſſan*, 13 *Botanter*, 14 *Pantenam*, and 15 *Bengala*.

1 DULSINDA.

DULSINDA is bounded on the Eaſt, with the River *Indus*; on the Weſt, with *Paropamiſus*, and *Arachoſia*, two *Perſian* Provinces, but for the moſt part under the command of the *Great Mongul*; on the North, with *Caucaſus*, by which parted from *Tartary*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Cambaia*. So that it taketh up all the Northern parts of this Eſtate, which lye upon the Weſt of the River *Indus*; from which River called by the Natives *Sinda*, moſt probable it is that it took this name: and therefore I have written it with an *s*, *Dulſinda* and not *Dulcinda* with a *c*, as I ſee ſome do, but on no good reaſon, for any thing that I am able to underſtand.

The Countrey, by the reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, more temperate, but leſs fruitful than the reſt of *India*. The Seat, in ancient times, of the *Mazagæ* and *Indo-Scythæ*, when ſubdued by *Alexander*. Made up at preſent, of many leſſer Kingdoms, and ſmaller Provinces, denominated, for the moſt part, from the principal Towns and Cities of them, as in other places.

Amongſt which thoſe of moſt eſteem, are 1 *Caximir*, *Caſcimir*, or *Chaſmur*, (for by all theſe names it is called) the chief of a Kingdom once, unto which it gave name, till ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*; who in a pleaſant Iſland, (in the midſt of a great and deep Lake, about three Leagues off the City) beſet round with Trees, built a Royal Palace: which he honoured ſometimes with his Court, removed hither from *Labor*, partly the better to aſſure this new conquered Kingdom; but principally becauſe his Palace at *Labor*, and therein an infinite deal of Treaſure, had but newly been conſumed by fire. The City it ſelf ſituate in the moſt healthy Countrey of all *India*, encompaſſed with high Mountains, covered for the moſt part of the year with ſnow, the reſt a delicate, goodly Plain, diverſified with Paſtures, Woods, Cornfields, Meadows, Parks, Gardens, and Rivers, even to admiration. The Air hereof, and of the Countrey round about, by reaſon of the Northern ſituation of it, and the ſnowy Mountains, very cool and temperate. The ſoil abundantly Productive of Wheat, Rice, and Vines; which laſt they plant at the foot of the Mulbery tree, which ſeemeth by this means to bear double fruits. Both Town and Kingdom ſubdued by *Echebar*, the *Mongul*, about the year 1597. their own diſſentions more conducing to that ſubjugation, than any viſible force which he brought before it. 2 *Rorée*, a Fort of the *Monguls* towards *Paropamiſus*; but bordering upon the Countrey of *Multan*, to which people it properly belongeth: Garriſoned not ſo much for fear of the *Perſian*, (for *Paropamiſus*, now called *Cabal*, is his ancient Patrimony,) but to preſerve the People from the ſpoil of Thieves, who always hang about the Mountains. 3 In the moſt Northern parts hereof, ſtood the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*; miſtook by ſome for the modern *Agra*, of which more anon. 4 *Seſtan*, the chief City, as I take it, of the Kingdom of *Rebat*; ſituate on the Eaſt of *Caximir*, betwixt it and the *Indus*: in the ſame Latitude with that, but not of ſo temperate an air; the ſnowy Mountains much conducing to the temperature of the Realm of *Caximir*. 5 *Multan*, a great and ancient City, and the chief of a Kingdom, on the South of *Caximir*, or *Chaſmur*; and about three *French* Leagues from the banks of the River *Indus*. The ordinary thorow-fare of the *Caravans* in the way from *Labor* to *Spahan*, (the chief Seat of the *Sophy*, or King of *Perſia*) forced to abide there divers days, ſometimes ten or twelve to enrich the Town; which of it ſelf is of no great trading, nor otherwiſe able to ſubſiſt but by this,

device; famed moſt eſpecially for many excellent Bows and Arrows made in it. The Bows made of Horn, excellently glewed and put together; the Arrows of ſmall Cains or Reeds, both of them ſet off by rich *Paint* and *Varniſh*. They which are made here being more neat and good than in any part of *Eaſt India* beſides. There is another Town or Kingdom of or near this name on the other ſide of the River *Indus*, of which we ſhall ſpeak more in its proper place. *6 Duckee*, a Fort or Garriſon, ſituate in theSt reights of the Mountains to ſecure the *Caravans*, and protect other Paſſengers from the danger of Robbers, hovering in theſe Hill-Countreys, the out-parts of this Empire

2 PENGAB.

OPoſite to *Dulſinda*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Indus*, but more inclining towards the South, lieth the Countrey, or diviſion rather, which my Authour calleth by the name of *PENGAB:* bounded on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which divideth it from *Dulſinda*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Mandao*; on the North, and Eaſt, with thoſe many Kingdoms, which we have comprehended under the name of *Botanter*.

The reaſon of the name I find not, nor any thing memorable of the Countrey; but that it was divided in the time of *Ptolomy*, into the Provinces of the *Lambatæ*, *Caſpiria*, *Cylindrine*, and *Sauſtene*: ſubdued by *Alexander* in his Expedition into *India*: the famous Rivers of *Aceſines* and *Hydaſpis* (but by what names now called I find not) having here their ſours. So that it ſeemeth to have been a part of the Kingdom of *Porus*, or that the Kingdom of *Porus* was a part of this.

Places of moſt importance in it. 1 *Labor*, on the Eaſtern banks of *Indus*, affirmed to be the faireſt and moſt ancient City in both the *Indies*; of moſt eſteem for wealth and greatneſs. In compaſs about ſixteen miles, and honoured for a while with the ordinary Reſidence of the Great *Mongul*; till on the burning of his Palace, ſpoken of before, he removed his Court to *Caſcimir*, from thence to *Fatipore*, and at laſt to *Agra*. Since that time made the Seat of the eldeſt Son, or Heir apparent, ſent hither for avoiding all occaſion of Factions, which their living in the Court might breed. A City of exceeding Trade, as being the chief Staple for the Spices in theſe parts, and other commodities of *India*, from hence tranſported into *Perſia* by the way of *Candahor*, the principal Town of *Arachoſia*; and ſo to *Spahan*, the chief City of the *Sophian* Empire; where they are ſold, by reaſon of ſo long and chargeable a journey, at exceſſive rates. It is ſaid that 12000 Camels at the leaſt, paſs every year thorow it with their ladeing; beſides what is ferried down the River, and brought up by the *Portugals*, who therewith traded unto *Ormus*, till that Town was taken. By this we may conjecture at the wealth hereof, but more by that great maſs of Treaſure which a late Governour hereof did leave behind him. At whoſe death *Echebar* the *Mongul* (for the *Mongul* is the Heir General unto all mens Wealth) found in his Coffers three Millions of Gold ready coyned, great quantity of Gold and Silver uncoyned, and ſome ſtore of Jewels; beſides Horſes, Elephants, Houſhold-furniture, and other goods almoſt invaluable. 2 *Sultan-puare*, of more antiquity than beauty; yet of good eſteem. 3 *Athec*, in the common Road from *Labor* to *China*; reported in the deſcription of the Travels of *Benedictus a Goes*, a *Portugal Jeſuite*, to be a months Journey from *Labor*, and yet in the ſame Province with it. Which if it be true, either the province muſt be large, or his journeys ſhort: or if not true, we muſt remember that we had it from the Pen of a *Jeſuit*. And yet as great as this Province or Diviſion is affirmed to be, we do not find the names of any more Towns of conſideration, which may be ſaid with confidence to belong unto it; unleſs perhaps we may reduce under this Diviſion the Kingdoms of *Haiacan* and *Buchor*, of which laſt the chief City is called *Bucorſuecor*, enriched by the neighborhood of the *Indus*, but not elſe obſervable.

3 MANDAO.

THE Kingdom of *MANDAO* is bounded on the North, with *Pengab*; on the South, with the Realm of *Agra*; on the Eaſt, with *Dilly*; and on the Weſt, with the River *Indus*. So called from *Mandao*, the chief City of it.

The Countrey more Mountainous and rugged than the reſt of theſe Provinces, by reaſon of the many branches of Mount *Bittigo* (the Southern part of the *Imaus*) which do over-run it: in other things partaking of the riches of *India*. The men, as moſt of thoſe who live in ſuch Mountainous Tracts, of a warlike temper, comparatively with the reſt of the *Indians*: the women here anciently as valiant as the men in other places; riding aſtride, and practiced in the Arts of Horſemanſhip; for that cauſe called *Amazons*; ſome of which are ſaid to be ſtill remaining. Inſomuch as it is written in the ſtories hereof, that the King of this Countrey not long ſince going to the Wars, was accompanied by the Queen his Wife, marching in the Front of two thouſand women, all well mounted and prepared for ſervice.

Chief Cities hereof, 1 *Mandao*, ſeated on the banks of the River *Mandavo*, (the *Manda* of *Ptolomy* and the Ancients) whence it had the name. A City of great note, ſaid to be 30 miles in compaſs; yet ſo well fortified and furniſhed with all manner of neceſſaries for defence and reſiſtance, that it held out twelve years againſt *Mirumudius*, or *Merhamed* the *Great Mongul*, who then beſieged it. Surrendered at the laſt, and with it the Kingdom. Memorable for the great battel fought before it, betwixt the ſaid *Merhamed*, then coming to the relief thereof, and *Badurius* King of *Cambaia*, who had then diſtreſſed it: in which *Badurius* loſt his Tents and Treaſures, and was fain to fly diſguiſed unto *Diu*, to crave aid of the *Portugals*. 2 *Moltan*, which being miſtaken for another Town, of or near the ſame name, on the Weſtern ſide of the *Indus*, is by ſome Writers, ſaid to have been once the chief City of a Kingdom, or a Kingdom rather of it ſelf, but of no great note: the women whereof, though not ſo good Souldiers as their Anceſtors of the Female Sex, yet to come as near them as they can, uſe boots and ſpurs when they take a journey, and ſo fitted ſit aſtride the ſaddle. 3 *Scernus*, on the River ſo called, of more antiquity than greatneſs, as is alſo, 4 *Polymbothie*, the *Palibothra* of *Ptolomy* and others of the ancient Writers; then the chief Town of the *Palibothei* (by *Plini* and *Strabo* called *Praſii*) a People of as great authority and power as any in *India*.

This once a Kingdom of it ſelf of great power and wealth, till *Badurius* King of *Cambaia* having conquered the Realm of *Cior*, and therewith a great part of *Sanga*, made an attempt upon this alſo. *Galgee*, then King of *Mandao*, finding himſelf too weak for ſo ſtrong an Enemy, craved aid of *Merhamed* (or *Miramudius* as the *Latines*) the *Mongul Tartar*, then reigning in *Chabul*, or *Arachoſia*, and poſſeſſed of ſome parts of *India* alſo, ſince the times of *Tamerlane*. Who compounding an Army of his own Subjects, ſome mercenary *Perſians*, and a great body of *Zagathaian Tartars*, from whom originally deſcended, came in accordingly: diſcomfited the vaſt Army of *Badurius*, conſiſting of 150000 Horſe, and

and 500000 foot, in two ſet battels, the firſt at *Doceti*, the next and *Mandao*, and following his blow, poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Kingdom of *Cambaia*. But not content with that ſucceſs, quarrelled the *Mandoan* King in whoſe aid he came, beſieged him in his principal City, which at laſt he won, and therewithal the Kingdom alſo: the wretched King ſhewing hereby both a fair evidence and example to ſucceeding Ages, that the eaſieſt way for a Prince to ruine his own Eſtate, and endanger his neighbours, is to admit a Foreign power into his own Dominions; which he cannot as eaſily thruſt out, as he hath brought them in.

4 DELLY.

DELLY is bounded on the Weſt, with *Mandao*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdom of *Botantur*; on the North, with the Eaſtern parts of *Penjab*; on the South with the Eaſtern parts alſo of the Kingdom of *Agra*. So named from DELLY, the chief City of it, by ſome called *Delin*.

The Countrey, beſides what is common to it with the reſt of *Indi*a, is ſaid to be more abundantly ſtored than any other part of it, with Horſes, Elephants, and *Dromedaries*. Of the people nothing ſingular, Except it be that many of them taking more delight in thievery than honeſt trades live for the moſt part upon ſpoil; but thoſe eſpecially whom they call by the name of *Belemi*, being ſuch of the Nobility or better ſort, who ſince the Conqueſt of their Countrey by the *Great Mongul*, have lived like *Out-laws* on the Mountains. Of the ſame temper with the *Resbutes* in *Cambaia*, and the *Agwans* in *Sanga* and *Dulſinda*; who rather than ſubmit themſelves to a Foreign yoke, (as they count that of the *Mongul*) chuſe to forſake their proper dwellings; and all honeſt ways and means of living.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Delly*, a city not only honoured heretofore with the reſidence of the *Great Monguls*, who from hence paſs in common appellation, by the names of the Kings of *Delly*, and that amongſt their moſt knowing Subjects; but beautified with many Sepulchres of their ancient Kings, whoſe Funerals and Coronations were herein celebrated. And though deſerted of late times, by the *Great Monguls*, moving their Courts from place to place, as they enlarged their Empire, and encreaſed their Conqueſts: yet ſtill a great many of the Nobles, and not a few Captains and Commanders, do frequent the ſame, and have their houſes of pleaſure and retirement in it. 2 *Tremel*, upon the Weſtern ſide of the River *Mandao*; but not much obſervable. 3 *Doceti*, memorable for the great battel fought near unto it, in which *Merhamed* the *Mongul* overthrew the forces of *Badurius*, and thereby opened a fair way to the Realm of *Cambaia*.

This Countrey governed a long time by its natural Princes, was at laſt conquered by ſome *Moors*, or *Saracens* coming from *Perſia* and *Arabia*, but I find not which; who grew to ſo great power and wealth, that *Sanoſaradine* a *Mahometan*, one of their *Deſcendants*, dreamt of no leſs than the conqueſt of all *India*, if not of the whole Continent of *Aſia* alſo. Having about the year 1300 (memorable for beginning of the *Ottoman* Empire) ſubdued by little and little all the neigbouring Princes which made head againſt him; he pierced at laſt into *Canora*, now called *Decan*: and conquering a great part of it, returned back to *Delly*. The purſuit of his victories he left unto one *Abideſſa* his Lieutenant there, who added the reſt of that Countrey to his Maſters Teritories, but kept the poſſeſſion to himſelf; confirmed therein by *Sanoſaradine*, with the title of *Regent*. But *Sanoſaradine* dying in a War againſt the *Perſians*, left for his Succeſſor a Son ſo unlike his Father, that the conquered Provinces revolted from him unto other *Maſters*, more able to govern and protect them. Confined unto its former bounds, it remained notwithſtanding of ſufficient power to preſerve it ſelf, from any of their equal neighbours, till the riſing of the *Great Monguls*: whoſe puiſſance being unable to withſtand, it ſubmitted at the laſt to *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, the ſecond Emperour of this Line: who to aſſure himſelf of the peoples loyalty, and conqueſts, ſettled his Court a while at *Delly*, the chief City of it; from whence removed on the next proſperous emergency, as before was noted.

5 AGRA.

THE Realm of *AGRA* is bounded on the North with *Delly*, and *Mandao*; on the South with *Sanga* and *Cambaia*; on the Weſt, with *Indus*, which parteth it from the Province of *Sinda*, a part of the Kingdom of *Cambaia*; on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*, or *Orixa*. So called from *Agra* the chief City of it, and the ſeat Royal of late times of the *Great Monguls*.

The Countrey ſaid to be the beſt and moſt pleaſant of *India*, plentiful in all things, and ſuch a delicate even piece of ground, as the like is hardly to be ſeen. Well watered, as with other Rivers, ſo moſt eſpecially with thoſe of *Tamlico* and *Jemena*; which laſt runeth thorow the midſt of it, North and South, or rather from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, from whence bending more directly Eaſtwards, it falleth at laſt into the *Ganges*, or that which is ſuppoſed to be *Ganges*; for the head of that great River is not certainly known. The people for the moſt part Gentiles, *Mahometaniſm* coming in with the *Great Mongul*; and generally inclining ſomewhat to the *Pythagorean*. For ſuch as live upon the banks of the River *Jemena*, neither eat fleſh, nor kill any thing. The waters of which River they eſteem ſo ſacred, that thereof they uſually make their Temple, and ſay their Prayers therein, but naked (in which poſture they both dreſs their meat and eat it) lodging upon the ground, being impoſed by them as penance, and ſo conceived.

Places of moſt eſteem herein, 1 *Fatepore*, or *Fettibarri*, on the Weſt ſide of the River, a very fair and goodly City, once beautified with a Royal Palace here built by *Echebar* (after the removal of his Court from *Caſcimer*) with many ſpacious Gardens belonging to it; but much decayed, ſince the fixing of the Court at *Agra*, to which moſt of the ſtones are carryed, and no ſmall quantity of Corn ſowed within the Walls. 2 *Agra*, on the North bank of the River *Jemena*, inferiour to *Labor* for wealth and greatneſs, but far more populous: the conſtant reſidence of the Court here in theſe latter times, drawing to it great reſort of all ſorts of people. By ſome ſuppoſed to be the *Nagara* of *Ptolomy*, but ſuch a ſuppoſition as is built on no better ground, than ſome reſemblance of the names. For *Ptolomi's Nagara* is by him placed on the Weſtern ſide of *Indus*, in the Latitude of 33, whereas this *Agra* ſtandeth on the Eaſt of the River *Jemena*, five degrees more Southwards, in the Latitude of 28. But what it loſeth in antiquity, it hath got in honour: the Town and Territory being a peculiar Kingdom, till *Echebar* the *Mongul* ſubdued it, *Anno* 1598. in his paſſage from *Labor* to *Decan*. But it loſt nothing by the hand; for *Echebar* delighted in the ſituation of it (and that withal it ſtood in the midſt of his Kingdoms) made it the Seat Royal of his Empire; fixt there, for the moſt part ever ſince: by means whereof exceedingly increaſed in wealth, beauty, and greatneſs; the very Caſtle in which the *Mongul* uſually reſideth, being two miles in compaſs, invironed

invironed with moſt high and unſcaleable Walls, and fortified with great ſtore of Ordnance. The whole ſpace betwixt it and *Fatipore*, being 18 miles, beautified with many *Mahometan* Temples, and with one alſo built by *Echebar*, for the uſe of ſuch *Chriſtians* as had been gained unto the faith, by the care and diligence of the *Jeſuites*. For the ſupply hereof with Victuals, and other neceſſary proviſions, and the ſecurity of ſuch as reſort unto it, affirmed to be a continual Market: and all the *Interval* from hence to the Town of *Labor* (from which diſtant 400 miles towards the South) adorned with continual Rows of Trees on both ſides of the ways, moſt of them bearing a kind of Mulbery; and at every ten miles end, houſes erected by the King or ſome of the Nobles, for beautifying the way to the Regal City, for preſerving their own memory, and the ſafe lodging of Paſſengers, in danger otherwiſe by night of Thieves and Cut-throats. 3 *Hendee*, a Town more towards the South, beautified with a fair Caſtle of the Kings, cut out of the main Rock, and wrought with carved work round about; fortified with 50 Pieces of Ordnance, and thought impregnable: for that cauſe made a Priſon for great Perſons. Here are alſo two Hoſpitals for ſuch Captains (and Captains only) as are maimed in the Wars. 4 *Biani*, twelve courſe or 18 miles from *Pattipore*; the moſt noted place for *Indico* in all the *Indies*; for the making whereof they have here twelve Mills. Which *Indico* (by the way) groweth on a a ſmall ſhrub like our Gooſebery buſhes, bearing ſeed like a Cabbage ſeed: which being cut down, are laid in heaps for half a year, and when rotten, brought into a Vault to be trodden with Oxen from the ſtalks; and being ground ſmall and fine at the Mills, is laſt of all boyled in Furnaces, refined, and ſorted, and ſo ſold to the Merchants.

To this diviſion alſo we may reduce the Kingdom of *Gwaliar*, ſo called of *Gwaliar* the chief City, where the *Mongul* hath a very rich Treaſury of Gold and Silver; kept in a ſtrong Caſtle, wherein his Priſoners are ſecured likewiſe; and for thoſe reaſons, continually guarded by a ſtrong Company of ſtout and well appointed Souldiers.

6 SANGA.

SANGA is bounded on the North, with the Eaſt parts of the Realm of *Agra*; on the South, and Weſt, with *Cambaia*; from which parted on the Weſt, by the Mountain *Gate*; and on the Eaſt, with *Oriſtan*. The reaſon of the name I find not: this Countrey being too far South to be ſo called from *Sangalaſſa*, a Town of chief note near the Fountains of *Indus* where placed by *Arianus* lib. 5.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Azimere*, or *Agimer* 180 miles from *Agra*. At the end of every courſe (each courſe a mile and a half) a fair Pillar erected, and at every tenth courſe a fair *Seraglio*, (ſuch as we call Inns) for the entertainment of Travellers. All built by *Echebar*, who wanting children, is ſaid to have gone in Pilgrimage on foot from *Ayra* to *Azimere*; ſaying his Prayers at the end of every courſe, and lodging all night at the tenth. 2 *Citor*, the chief City of *Sanga*, and once a Kingdom of it ſelf, or the chief of that Kingdom. Situate in the middle way betwixt *Surat*, a known Port of *Cambaia* and *Agra* ſpoken of before: and moſt magnificently built on the top of a rocky hill, to which the paſſage is ſo narrow, and ſo well fortified, (there being in it three Gates, at the top, the middle, and the bottom) that thereby, and by other advantages of *Art* and *Nature*, it was thought impregnable. Affirmed to be 12 miles in compaſs, beautified with many good buildings both publick and private; but once more glorious than it is; here being to be ſeen the ruins of 100 Temples, and above 100000 houſes, either demoliſhed by the Wars, or ſuffered to decay by the *Great Monguls*, who would not willingly have any thing in the *Indies* of more Antiquity than themſelves; and therefore are rather inclined to build new Cities, than uphold the old. The greatneſs and antiquity of it have made ſome men think, that it was the Royal Seat of *Porus*. Others affirm the ſame of *Delly*, but neither rightly: the Kingdom of *Porus* lying more towards the River *Indus*, and not ſo far South. Governed not long ſince by a Queen called *Crementina*, not more fair than valiant, who revolting from *Baburius* King of *Cambaia*, to whom ſhe formerly had paid tribute, was diſpoſſeſſed of the Town of *Citor*, where ſhe had fortified her ſelf with 30000 Foot, and 2000 Horſe: the people in a deſperate reſolution, laying all their Treaſure on a heap, which they burnt together with themſelves; in which flame it is ſaid that there periſhed 70000 perſons. But the *Cambaian* did not long enjoy his Victory, for not long after both the City and a great part of the Countrey was conquered by the *Great Mongul*; the mountainous parts hereof being held againſt him by *Ramee*, the Son or Succeſſor of Queen *Crementina*: till ſeeing himſelf deſtitute of all better helps, he put himſelf into the hands of one of the Sons of the late Sultan, by whom reconciled unto his Father. Some other Towns there are in this Province, and in the reſt before mentioned; and thoſe of good eſteem perhaps amongſt the Natives: but of no obſervation or importance in the courſe of buſineſs. Under this name we may alſo comprehend the Kingdom of *Nagracol*, ſo called of the chief City of it; and that moſt memorable for a rich and ſumptuous Chappel, ſieled and paved with Plate of pure Silver, moſt curiouſly imboſſed over-head in ſeveral figures, which they keep exceeding bright, with often rubbing, and continual burniſhing. *Malway*, another of theſe Kingdoms, for its near neighbourhood to *Citor*, may be placed here alſo, affirmed to be a fruitful Province, and the chief City of it to be called *Rantipore*.

7 CAMBAIA.

CAMBAIA hath on the Eaſt, *Delly*, and part of *Mandao*; on the Weſt, *Gedroſia*, a Province of the *Perſian* Empire; on the North, *Dulſinda*, and the reſt of *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and ſome part of *Decan*. It lieth on both ſides of the *Indus*; and is ſo called from *Cambaia*, the chief Province of it. The whole divided into, 1 *Sinda*, 2 *Guzarate*, and 3 *Cambaia*, eſpecially ſo called.

1. SINDA, (by ſome called the Kingdom of *Tutta*, from *Tutta* the chief City of it) hath on the Eaſt, the River *Indus*, by which ſeperated from *Mandao*; on the North, that part of *India* which is called *Dulſinda*; on the Weſt, part of *Gedroſia* and *Guzarate*, and on the South, the reſt of *Guzarate* only: coaſting along the Weſtern banks of the River *Indus*, whence it had the name; that River being now called *Schind*, as was ſaid before. And for this reaſon, as I take it, the Weſtern part of *India* lying North of this took the name of *Dulſinda*, and not *Dulcinda* (with a C) as moſt commonly written.

The Countrey for the generality very rich and fertile; but in ſome places nothing but a ſandy *Deſart*, inhabited for the moſt part by wild Aſſes, Foxes, Deer, and ſome wilder beaſts; but none ſo wild as the *Celies*, a robbing Nation, ſo numerous withal, that they ſometimes rob whole *Caravans* as they paſs that way; notwithſtanding the

teh many Forts and Castles built of purpose to secure those passages.

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Tutta* (*Gutu Negar Tuta*) on the banks of *Indus*, a Town of grat Trade, but most frequented by the *Portugals*, who here receive such *Indian* commodities as come down the water from *Labor*, returning Pepper in exchange, which they bring up the River from their other *Factories*. 2 *Lawribander*, at the mouth or out-let of the *Indus*, three days journey from *Tutta*, the Port-Town unto which it is, notwithstanding that distance. Supposed to be situate in or near the place of that *Alexandria* which *Alexander* built in memory of his Navigation down this River to the *Indian* Ocean. An Haven much frequented, because free from Worms; which at *Surat*, and other Havens on these Seas, so infest the Ships, that without much cost and care bestowed upon them, they make them unable to return. 3 *Calwalla*, memorable for the *Tenure*, as given by *Echebar* the *Mougul* to a company of women and their posterity for ever, to bring up their Daughters to dancing, and more wanton exercises. 4 *Radempoore*, a great Town with a strong Castle, seated at the edge of the *Desarts*: thorow which those that are to pass, use here to provide themselves of water and other necessaries for their journey. 5 *Nuraquemire*, a pretty Town on the further side of the Desarts, esteemed a *Paradise* by such as have passed thorow those uncomfortable and dangerous Sands, for the space of ten or twelve days journey. 6 *Sarrama*, a large Town, twenty miles from *Tutta*, the Center in which all Lines meet; and from whence the distances of all Towns of *Sinda* are accustomably measured.

The Countrey anciently subject to the King of *Cambaia*, and in the right of that Crown to the *Great Mongul*: but the people for the most part so untamed and masterful, that except in some of the greater Towns, they pay no *Tributes*; and in some places, even within half a days journey of *Tutta*, will acknowledge no King, but rob and spare whom they please. If at any time the *Mongul* sends a force against them, (as he doth sometimes) they fire their houses, made like a *Bee-Hive* of Straw and Mortar, which are soon rebuilded, and retire themselves unto the Mountains. Yet one good quality they have amongst many ill ones: When they have robbed a *Traveller*, took money of him in the way of Toll or Custom for his passage by them, they will conduct him honestly to the end of the Desarts, lest any should rob him but themselves.

2 *GUZARATE* hath on the North, *Sinda*; on the South, the main-Ocean; the River *Indus* on the East; on the West, *Gedrosia*, which the *Indians* call *Nawatacos*, but the *Persians*, *Circam*.

The soyl of the same temper and fertilty with that of *Cambaia*, especially so called; and there we shall speak further of it. The Common people, whom they call *Guzarates*, of the same disposition generally with the rest of the *Indians*: but the greatest part of the Countrey is possessed by the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches*, the ancient Inhabitants of this Tract. Who when their Countrey was subdued by the *Moors* or *Saracens*, retired unto the Mountains or Fastnesses of it, standing upon their guard; and were never yet subdued by the *Great Monguls*. Who though possessed of the Sea-shores, and most Towns of consequence, are fain to leave the In-land parts and open Countreys to the power of the *Out-laws*: who either prey upon the people, or force them to compound for their peace and quiet at uncertain prices. Their Arms most commonly a Sword, Buckler, and Lance; well horsed, and resolute in any thing which they undertake; which made one of the *Monguls* say of them, *That no men in the world knew to dye, but they.*

Places of most importance in it, 1 *Diu*, in a *Peninsula* looking towards *Persia*, but on the East side thereof, near the mouth of *Indus*. Possessed by the *Portugal*, and by them fortified with a strong and impregnable Citadel, built with the leave and liking of King *Badurius*, thereby to buy their aid against *Merhamed* the *Mongul*; who had newly vanquished him. A matter of such consequence to the Crown of *Portugal*, that *John Botelius*, confined to *India* for some crimes by him committed, undertook (in hope by the merit of that service to obtain his pardon) to carry the first news of it in a small Vessel, not above 18 foot long, and but 6 foot broad (the best which for the present could be provided:) Which with great courage he performed, and through that large, wide, and tempestuous Ocean came in safety with his news to *Lisbon*, to the great joy of the King; but greater admiration of all sorts of people. Scarce setled in their new possession, when besieged by *Solyman Bassa*, Admiral to *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, with a Fleet of 80 Ships and Gallies, *Anno* 1537 offended with the *Portugals* for aiding the King of *Persia*, more for diverting the Spice-trade from *Alexandria*. In which he had so ill success, that having assaulted it in vain with his Land forces, he was fain to raise his siege in such hast and tumult, that he left his great Ordnance behind him. 2 *Sauran*, a Town and Castle of the *Resbutes*, spoken of before; and by them held against the power of the *Great Mongul*. 3 *Boldra*, a very fair and beautyful City, but of no great Compass. 4 *Ardovat*, not far from the banks of the *Indus*, on the North of this Region towards *Sinda*. 5 *Madabat*, by some called *Amadabat*, affirmed to be both for wealth and greatness the chief of *Guzarate*, near as big as *London*; well walled, and situate on a Plain near the Rivers side: seldom without Merchants of all Religions, *Jews*, *Gentiles*, *Christians*, *Moors*, some of all, and neither. 6 *Saringa*, 7 *Periano*, 8 *Serkesse*; this last remarkable for the Sepulchres of the old Kings of *Cambaia*; fair, and well kept; and visited from all parts of the Kingdom.

Nothing considerable in this part of the Countrey as to point of story, but what is common to them with the rest of *Cambaia*; but that the *Resbutes*, or *Rasbooches* still remain unconquered. Possessed not only of the Hills and Mountains, but of some strong holds; and governed by the heads of their *Casts* or tribes, all which acknowledge the *Mongul* for their *Superiour*, in regard of his power, but none of them obey him as their Lord or Sovereign: conceiving it to be some abasement of their own authority, if they admit him as an Umpire to compose their differences, which they sometimes do.

3 *CAMBAIA* specially so called, hath on the North, *Mandao*; on the South, the main Ocean, and some part of *Decan*; on the East, *Surat*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains; on the West, the Main Ocean, with some part of *Guzarate*. It standeth on the East sides of the out-lets of *Indus*, running along the Sea-shore for 500 miles, and took this name from *Cambaia* the chief City of it.

The Countrey said to be the most fruitful of all *India*, abounding in Rice, Wheat, Sugar, Spices of all sorts, and choicest fruits: of Silk and Cotton so great plenty, that they fraught yearly forty or fifty ships with those commodities. In the Mountains they find *Diamonds*, *Chalcedonies*, and a kind of *Onyx* stone, which are called *Cornelines*, and corruptly *Cornelians*. Amongst the rarities hereof, they reckon the *Abades*, a great beast, twice as big as a Bull, having on their snouts a little horn, and the Hide so hard, as no man can pierce it with a thrust; which is the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients.

The people effeminate and unwarlike, and therefore not much used by the *Monguls* in a war of consequence;

to

to ſupply which defect he furniſheth himſelf with Souldiers out of *Perſia*, of which his ſtanding bands conſiſt; moſt of their Sultans and Commanders of that Nation alſo. More given to Merchandiſe than War, and therein thought to be as cunning (if not deceitful withal) as any people in the world: treacherous in their truſt, proud in their carriage, bloudy upon advantage, and much given to *Venerie*; ignorant of Letters, but well practiced in *Mechanical* Arts. In matters of Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, not knowing or contemning the Law of *Mahomet*; but very punctual in their own heatheniſh ſuperſtitions. The *Bannians* in this Countrey, being natural *Indians*, nuſled in Paganiſm, and ſo wedded to their old Idolatries, that no perſwaſions can prevail with them, make the greateſt number; and ſeem to be all *Pythagoreans* in ſome opinions, for they eat not any thing that hath bloud or life, but feed on Rice, Roots, Plantons, and ſuch natural fruits: paying a large *Revenue* yearly to the *Great Mongul*, that no Oxen may be killed amongſt them. And becauſe new Opinions ſhould not grow amongſt them, they marry in their own *Tribes* only, and never out of their own *Trades*; ſecure thereby as they conceive from all *innovations*.

Cities of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Cambaia*, three miles from the *Indus*, and as many in compaſs, one of the neateſt and beſt built in all the East. So populous withal, that it is thought to contain 130000 Families; and is therefore called the *Caire* of the *Indies*. Of moſt eſteem in all this Kingdom (though far leſs than *Madabat*) to which it doth impart its name. 2 *Baracho*, Southwards of *Cambaia* on the top of an hill, with a fair River underneath it; well-walled, and noted for the beſt *Calicuts* (a kind of linnen Cloath ſo called from the City of *Calicut*, where it was firſt made) not to be matched in all the *Indies*. 3 *Swalley*, ſtill more unto the South, and about a mile from the Sea-ſhore; but giving name unto a large and capacious Bay, where the ſhips ride which trade at *Surat*. 4 *Surat*, about ten miles from the Bay of *Swalley*, from whence the River navigable but by Boats and Shallops, fortifyed with a Caſtle of ſtone, well ſtored with Ordnance. The houſes for the moſt part of Sun-dryed Briks, very large and laſting: built with flat Roofs, but Battlementd on all ſides for fear of falling; and beautifyed with goodly Gardens of Pomgranates, Melons, Figs, and Limons, enterlaced with Riverets and Springs. Made of late years a Factory for the *Engliſh* Merchants, who have here their Preſident, and a magnificent houſe for their reception, and ſtaple of their Commodities. 5 *Neriand*, a great Town, and as remarkable for the making of *Indico*, of the matter and making whereof we have ſpoke already, when we were at *Biani*, a Town or City of the Kingdom, or Diviſion of *Agra*; as memorable for that Commodity as this *Neriand*, or any other of *India*. 6 *Daman*, upon the Sea-ſide over-againſt *Diu*; and poſſeſſed as that is by the *Portugals*. A beautiful and pleaſant Town, fortified with a ſtrong Caſtle at the North end of it, of white chalky ſtone, well planted with Ordnance: oppoſite whereunto on the South Side of the Town a goodly Church, edged on the top with white. Which with the houſes for the moſt part of the ſame colour alſo, afford a pleaſant proſpect to the Sailors by 7 *Campanel*, ſituate on the top of an high Mountain, and environed with a ſeven-fold wall, once the Seat Royal of the Kings of *Cambaia*. 8 *Dacaiotote*, a place of ſuch ſtrength, that the *Great Monguls* could never get it by force. Rendred at the laſt upon compoſition, conditioned they ſhould ſtill be governed by a King of their own. 9 *Netherby*, a great Market of brazen ware, Beaſts, and Armour. 10 *Bandora*. 11 *Tanai*, &c.

This Kingdom taking in *Guzarate* and *Sinda*, as parts hereof, is extremely Populous; ſaid to contain 60000 Towns and Villages, very well inhabited: but the people not accuſtomed to, or unfit for wars. Anciently governed by Kings of their own, it was firſt ſubdued by the *Arabians* or *Moors*, *Anno* 1423. under the conduct of one *Mahomet* or *Machamut*; who having forced the *Resbutes* or Naturals of the Country to betake themſelves unto the Mountains, was made King hereof. To him ſucceeded his Son *Mamudius*, one of no great action. But what he wanted was ſupplyed by his Son *Baduius*, who having conquered the Kingdom of *Citor*, invaded that of *Mandao* alſo. His Army for that War conſiſted of 500000 Foot, 150000 Horſe, 1000 great Pieces of Ordnance, 500 Wagons loaded with Powder and Shot, and as many Wain-loads of Gold and Silver to pay his Army. But being diſcomfited in two great Battels by *Merhamed* the *Mongul Tartar*, whom *Galgee* the *Mandoan* King had called in to his aid, he ſhaved his beard, and fled in a diſguiſe to *Diu*, then poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*; whom he licenſed in that diſtreſs to build the *Cittadel*: ſlain afterwards by a mean Mariner, at his return from the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, whom he had viſited on ſhipbord. And though *Mamudius* his ſucceſſor endeavoured to free his Kingdom from both pretenders; yet weakned with the loſs of ſo great an Army, he was not able to effect it. Firſt driven from *Diu*, which he had beſieged both by Sea and Land, to his great diſhonour; and after vanquiſhed in battel by *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, not far from *Serkeſſe*, the ancient burial-place of the Kings of *Cambaia*, but then the Sepulchre of the Kingdom; which by that victory fell to the *Great Monguls*, who have ſince enjoyed it.

4 DECAN.

DECAN is bounded on the East, with *Narſinga*; on the Weſt, with the *Indian* Ocean; on the North, with *Cambaia*; on the South, with *Malavar* and *Canara*. The reaſon of the name we ſhall have anon.

It lieth along the Sea-coaſt for the ſpace of 250 miles, betwixt *Aliga* and *Bate*, two noted Rivers; extending East, as far as the Mountain *Gates*, and afterwards thruſting into the North betwixt *Cambaia* and thoſe Mountains till it meet with *Cambaia*. The ſoil much of the ſame nature with the reſt of *India*, but not ſo flouriſhing as *Cambaia*. The people for the moſt part *Mahometans*, which Religion was firſt planted there by the Conqueſts of *Sanaſaradine*, 350 years ago; yet not without ſome intermixture of their ancient *Gentiliſm*.

Places of moſt importance in it. 1 *Bider*, the Seat Royal of *Mamudza*, once ſole King of this Countrey; who to beautifie and adorn this City, commanded every one of his *Prefects*, or ſubordinate Governours, being eighteen in number, to build here a Palace, and to reſide therein certain months in the year: each one to leave a Son there in perpetual hoſtage. Situate in the moſt Northern parts of the Countrey more near the borders of *Delly*: from the King whereof *Mamudza* had then newly revolted; and therefore would make ſure of this place, as moſt in danger. 2 *Viſapote*, bordering on *Cambaia*, the Princely Seat of *Idalcan*, one of the Kings of *Decan*, after it was diſmembred into ſeveral Kingdoms. 3 *Danager*, confining on *Canara*, a beautiful and flouriſhing City, once the chief Seat of *Niſalamocon*, or *Nizalmuza*, another of the Kings hereof, after that diviſion. 4 *Decan*, ſo called by the name of the Province; of which the chief City next to *Bider*, the Imperial Seat. Six miles from which there is an Hill encompaſſed with an high wall, and kept by a ſtrong Garriſon, becauſe of the great ſtore of *Diamonds* which are digged out of it. The Town ſo wealthy, that

that the people generally are attired in silks, or the purest *Tiffany*. 5 *Sintacora*, on the mouth of the River *Aliga*, where it falleth into the Sea. 6 *Goa*, a Sea Town also, situate in a little but most pleasant Island, called *Tienarinum*, fifteen miles in compass; opposite to the mouth or out-let of the River *Mandavo*. A noted Empory, and one of the chief keys which unlock the *Indies*; for number of Inhabitants, magnificent buildings, and pleasantness of situation, one of most note in all this Country. Possessed by the *Portugals*, who have here their *Arsenal*, and harbour for their *Indian* Fleet; by which they do command these Seas. So strongly fortified withal, that though *beleaguered* by *Idalcan* (of whom before) with 35000 Horse, 6000 Elephants, and 250 Piece of Ordnance, *Anno* 1573. yet he could not force it. Made in regard of the convenient situation and strength thereof, the ordinary Residence of the *Portugal* Vice-Roy, who hath here his Council, Chancellour, and other Officers, for the government of such parts of *India* as belong to that Crown: as also of the Archbishop or Primate of the *Indian* Churches planted by that Nation, who is hence called the Archbishop of *Goa*. 7 *Chaul*, a Sea Town, in the hands of the *Portugals* also, and by them well fortified: Insomuch as *Nisamalocco* assaulting it at the very same time with a very great Army, was fain to leave it as he found it. 8 *Balaguate*, in the up-lands or Hill-Country, whence it had the name: *Bala* in the *Persian* Language signifying a top, or summit of a Mountain; and *Guate* an Hill. 9 *Brampore*, once the chief Seat of another Kingdom, called the Kingdom of *Chandis*, now the chief City of those parts of *Decan* which are subject to the *Great Mongul*. Situate on a great River in the midst of a spacious Plain, beautiful, and of very great Trading; in bigness equal unto *Paris*, yet yielded to *Echebar* the *Mongul*, without any resistance, *Anno* 1600. *Miram* then the King thereof forsaking it, and betaking himself to 10 *Syra*, a strong Hold both by Art and Nature; Situate on the top of an hill, which is in compass five Leagues, and environed with a triple Wall: furnished with Victuals, and all other necessary Provisions, sufficient to maintain 60000 men many years; 3000 great Pieces of Ordnance planted on the Walls. Besieged herein by *Echebar* with an Army of 200000 fighting men, he held out against him; till overcome by promises of fair correspondence, drawn out of his Hold (some of his Counsellors being bribed to perswade him to it) he was detained by the *Mongul*: and the Commanders won by rewards and hopes yielded up the Fort, and thereing all the Princes of the Royal Family, accustomably kept therein when the *Throne* was full; which vacant, the next Heir was taken hence, to succeed unto it. Of the same nature, as it seemeth, with the hill *Amara* in *Æthiopia*, or the *Abassine* Empire.

The Country formerly inhabited by a people called *Venazarari*, by Religion *Gentiles*, and held by them till the year 1300, when overcome by *Sa Nosaradine*, a *Mahometan*, and King of *Dely*: who driving the Inhabitants into the Hill-Countries, possessed himself of a great part of it, compelling them to submit unto his Religion. The residue hereof subdued by *Abdessa*, whom *Sa Nosaradine* left here to pursue the War, was by him governed with great justice for 20 years; when dying he left his Government to his Son *Mamudza*, confirmed by the Successor of *Sa Nosaradine* in his Father's *Regency*, on the payment of an annual Tribute. *Mamudza* soon finding that the young King was of no great spirit, not only refused to pay the Tribute imposed upon him, but took unto himself the title of King of *Decan*, giving this name unto the Country (before called *Canara*) in regard that he had filled it with a Mungrel body of *Christians*, *Mahometans*, and *Gentiles*, acknowledging no common Parent, nor agreeing in Language, Customs, or Religion; the word *Decan* signifying in that Tongue, as much as an illegirimate brood, or a body of Bastards. Out of these he made choice of twelve (others say eighteen) whom he appointed Governours of so many Provinces: not daring to trust any of the old Nobility, or of the Natives of the Country; and hoping that these *Slaves*, so promoted by him, would be more subject to command. But here his silly hopes deceived him. For these *Slaves* either governed by their Master's example, who had done the like unto the Son and Heir of *Sa Nosaradine*; or presuming on their own strength, and some Foreign Aids, left to their Master nothing but an empty Title; each one becoming absolute in his several Province. Nor did his Successors for any long time enjoy that Title: *Daquem*, the last of them, being taken at *Bider* his chief City; and thereupon the name of King usurped by every one of those petit Tyrants, reduced at last into fewer hands. Such of them as were left, became considerable Princes, as appeareth by the great Army raised by *Idalcan* for the siege of *Goa*: But in the end, distressed on the one side by the *Portugals*, who embarred their Trade, and invaded on the other side by the *Great Mongul* with most puissant Armies, *Melic* entituled King of *Decan*, and *Miram* King of *Brampore*, were in fine subdued by *Echebar*, about the year 1600. Against whom and his Successors, though the *Venazarari* still hold but, as the *Resbutes* or *Rasbooches* do in the Realm of *Cambaia*; and that the King of *Amdanager*, and perhaps some other petit Princes, are not yet brought under: yet we may look on the *Mongul* as the Lord of this Country, the residue of these *Roytelets*, and petit Princes (if any of them be remaining) being *Homagers* or Vassals to him. Against whose further Progress to the Cape of *Comari*, which *Echebar* so greedily aimed at, the puissant Kings of *Narsinga*, and those of *Malabar* have opposed their power; whose Kingdoms and Estates we must next survey, before we take a view of those other Provinces which are now under the command of that mighty Monarch.

9 CANARA.

CANARA is bounded on the North, with *Decan* (whereof anciently it was a part;) on the South, with *Malabar*; on the East, with *Narsinga*, from which separated by the Mountain *Gates*; on the West, with the Ocean. The reason of the name I find not, nor much worth the searching.

The Country hath a fair Sea-coast, with many capacious Harbours to it, which cannot but add much to the wealth thereof; as liberally furnished in the in-land parts with Rice, Figs, and Sugars: but destitute of Wheat, Pulse, and Barley. Nor much the poorer for that want, the people either not knowing, or not regarding the use of bread; but living on such fruits as the earth produceth of it self, without the charge or care of the husbandman. In other things but little differing, if at all, from the rest of the *Indians*: their Religion for the most part *Paganish*, but intermixt with *Mahometans*.

Principal Towns and Cities of it, 1 *Melinde*, a commodious Haven. 2 *Onor*, a Port Town of good note, sometimes held by the *Portugals*. 3 *Batticalia*, situate in the richest part of all this Country; never possessed by the *Portugals*, but under contribution to them. 4 *Mangalor*, a Town of great wealth and trade; fortified with a strong Castle, once destroyed by the *Portugues*, but recovered and repaired by the King of *Narsinga*, who is Lord of this Country. 5 *Mayendre*, more within the land. And so is also. 6 *Lissor*, famous for her Quarries of

Adamant. 7 *Salsette*, in a *Peninsula* of 20 miles compass, containing 36 Villages, and 80000 Inhabitants; the Town about 9 miles from *Goa*, and subject with the whole *Peninsula* to the *Portugals*.

This Country is now subject to the Kings of *Narsinga*, but formerly under the command of its own Princes: the name of *Canara*, comprehending in those times all that Country also, which is now called *Decan*. Conquered by *Sa Nosaradine* and *Abdessa*, and by *Mamudza* cantoned into many *Prefectures*, this part reverting to its old name, fell to the *Narsingan*, who taking his advantages, in the Minority of one of their Princes, became Master of it. And when the *Idalcan* (for I take that not so much for the name of a man, as a Title of dignity) quarrelled his possession of it, as appertaining properly to the Kingdom of *Decan*; *Chrismarao*, then King of *Narsinga*, brought a powerful *Advocate* to defend his right; that is to say, an Army of 606000 Foot, 29650 Horse, and 537 Elephants; every Elephant having a Tower on his back with four men in it. With which strong *Argument* the *Idalcan* being confuted in the *Schools* of War, with much difficulty saved himself though he lost his cause; the *Narsingan* ever since continuing quiet in the possession of this Country, except only some of the Sea Towns in the power of the *Portugals*: Who in the year 1567 destroyed in those few places by them possessed, no fewer than 200 of their *Idol Temples*, with many of their *Pagodes*, or *Idols* in them, converting the Rents and Lands which belonged unto them, with the *Revenues* raised from the several Ports which they hold herein, to the maintenance of a Colledge of *Jesuites* in *Salsette*, and other *Religious* houses founded by them in their other Cities.

10 MALABAR.

MALABAR is bounded on the North, with *Canara*, from which parted by the River *Gangeraco*; on the East, with the great Mountain *Gates*, by which divided from the Realm of *Narsinga* South-east; on the West and South, with the main *Indian* Ocean. On the Coast whereof it doth extend for the space of 300 miles; that is to say, from the River *Gangeraco*, to the Cape *Conmari*: which I conceive to be the *Commaria Extrema* of *Ptolomy*, though others take it for the Promontory by him called *Cory*. But the breadth hereof is nothing answerable to the length, not above 50 miles where broadest, and ending towards the Cape in a point or *Cornu*.

The Country more populous, for the bigness, than any in *India*, enjoying a very temperate Air, and a fruitful soil; well watered, and indented with many *Creeks*: unfit for Corn, but plentiful in Rice, and all manner of Spices, as Ginger, Cinamon, *Cassia*, Pepper, and most excellent fruits. Amongst their Trees, there is one whose name my Author speaks not, which bears Dates like unto the Palm; out of which they have not only Wood for fewel, but they draw from it Wine, Sugar, Oyl, fine Cloth, and Cordage; another Tree, which beareth Cotton, and Cypress, or Cobweb-lawn, of the Leaves whereof they make a fine Stuff like to *Satin* or *Taffatie*. They have also great store of Apes, and Monkies, Parats, Paraquettoes, and other Creatures not known in these parts but from thence: not to say any thing of their Lions, Elephants, Bears, Bugles, common to them with others of their *Indian* Neighbours. The flowers there always in their *Verdure*, and the Trees perpetually green, by reason that the Air is so sweet and temperate.

The people are of coal-black colour (differing therein from the rest of the *Indians*, swarth and complexioned like the *Olive*) well limbed, and wearing their hair long and curled: about their heads an handkerchief wrought with Gold and Silver; and about their middle a cloth, which hangeth down to conceal their nakedness. Of manners treacherous and bloudy, more properly to be termed desperate than stout and valiant; and for more surety in their Wars, they use poysoned Arrows, as they do also in their thieving both by Sea and Land, to which more addicted. In *Religion* for the most part *Gentiles*, and more besotted generally on their Idolatries, than the rest of these Nations. The *Pagode*, or Idol which they worship, seated upon a brazen Trone, and crowned with a rich Diadem; From his head issue out four horns; from his mouth four tusks; his eyes fiery like a Glow-worm, his nose flat and ugly, his visage terrible; his hands like claws, his legs and thighs like those of a Lion. In a word, we cannot paint the Devil in a more ugly figure than they do their *God*. Unto this *Pagode* or his *Priest*, they offer the Virginity of all their Daughters: the *Pagode* having in the place of his privy parts a *Bodkin* of Gold or Silver, upon which the *Bride* (married most commonly at ten or twelve years of age) is forcibly set; the sharpness of it being such, that it forceth out the blood in great abundance: and if she prove with child that year, it is said to be of his begetting, and more esteemed. Others with more humanity, instead of torturing their daughters on this wretched *Idol* (parallel almost to the offering of their Sons to *Moloch* amongst the *Syrians*) present them to the *Bramini*, or *Idol-Priest*, to be defloured the first night of the Wedding: and without one of these two handsels no man is suffered to enjoy the use of his Wife, not their Kings themselves. More priviledged yet than many women neighbouring on them, in that they are not compelled to burn themselves with their husbands bodies; but may have many husbands either successively or at once, as they list themselves: and if at once, she sends her children to that husband (as we know who did) who she thinks to have the best right to them.

The Country very well watered, as we said before, and parted by large Rivers into many Provinces; as if intended naturally to be *cantoned* into many Kingdoms. Divided at present, and long since, into those of 1 *Cononor*, 2 *Calicut*, 3 *Graganor*, 4 *Cochin*, 5 *Cai-Colam*, 6 *Coulan*, and 7 *Travancor*.

1 *CONONOR* joyneth to *Canara*, extending Southward on the shore about 20 miles, where it bordereth on the Kingdom of *Calicute*. The chief Cities of which, 1 *Cononor*, giving name to the whole Kingdom, well built and beautified with a very fair Haven, no more safe than spacious, capacious of the greatest Vessels, and for that cause much frequented by foreign Merchants; but especially by the *Portugals*, who for the assuring of their Trade have here a *Cittadel*, erected and well garrisoned with the King's consent. 2 *Cota*, not far from *Cangerucco*, the border betwixt this and *Canara*. 3 *Peripatan*, on the Confines of *Calicute*. 4 *Marabia*, 5 *Tramopatan*, 6 *Main*, intermediate Towns, but not much observable.

2 *CALICUTE*, South from *Cononor*, extending on the Sea-shore 25 Leagues, and situate in the most pleasant and fruitful part of all *Malabar*. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Pandarane*, on the skirts of *Cononor*. 2 *Tanor*, a retiring place of the Kings. 3 *Partangale*. 4 *Chatua*, on the borders of *Cranganor*. 5 *Chale*, a strong piece, once in the hands of the *Portugues*; but in the year 1601 recovered by the King of *Calicute*, who had besieged it with an Army of 90000 men. 6 *Capacote*, the Haven of *Calicute*. 7 *Calicute*, the chief City of the Kingdom, to which it gives name, in length upon the Sea three miles, and a mile in breadth; containing about 6000 houses,

but

but ſtanding ſome of them far aſunder; mean and low built, few of them exceeding the height of a man on horſe-back; the ſoil being ſo hollow and full of water, that it is not capable of the foundation of an heavier building; for that cauſe unwalled. Inſomuch that Merchants houſes are here valued but at 20 Crowns, thoſe of the common ſort at no more than ten. Which notwithſtanding, of great trading, and much frequented by *Arabians*, *Perſians*, *Syrians*, *Indians*, yea the very *Tartars*; theſe laſt from the furtheſt parts of *Cathay* (taking *Cathay* in that general ſenſe, as it comprehendeth all the Countries of the *Tartars*, between the Mount of *Imaus*, and the Eaſtern *Ocean*) being 6000 miles diſtant from it, inſomuch that it is ſaid by ſome of the *Spaniſh* Writers, that when *Vaſques di Gama*, the firſt diſcoverer of the way to the Eaſt Countries by the *Cape of Good Hope*, firſt arrived in this Haven, he found in it no fewer than 1500 Merchants Ships of all ſorts, but without Anchors and the Compaſs, few of them fit for a Sea-fight, nor able to ſail (in regard they had not the uſe of the Compaſs) but by four-winds only. The common Staple in thoſe times of all *Indian* Merchandiſe, till diſtracted into ſeveral Ports by the power of the *Portugals*: who being more induſtrious, and better *Architects*, have forced a foundation on the Shore for a very ſtrong Caſtle; by which they do command the Haven, and receive Cuſtom of all Merchandiſe going in and out. The inconvenience whereof being found by the King of *Calicute*, he beſieged it with 100000 men; and though the *Portugals* held it out a whole Winter together, yet in the end they were fain to quit it; but firſt demoliſhed it to the ground, that it might not be made uſeful to thoſe of *Calicute*. A City of exceeding wealth, and of no leſs wantonneſs; the men here uſing to change Wives with one another, to confirm their Amities: and the women ſpending their whole time in adorning themſelves with Rings and Jewels about their ears, necks, legs, arms, and upon their breaſts; though going naked for the moſt part, one would think that a little dreſſing might ſuffice them. If covered, it is only with a Smock of *Calicute*, a kind of linnen cloth here made, and from hence ſo called: and that not uſed but by thoſe of the better ſort.

3 *CRANGANOR* lieth on the South of *Calecute*, a ſmall Kingdom, and affording little worth the ſpeaking of; but that a great part of the Inhabitants of it are of thoſe old *Chriſtians*, whom they call *Chriſtians* of St. *Thomas*. *Cranganor*, the chief City, which gives name to the whole, affirmed to be ſo full of them, that they amount unto the number of 70000; vexed and expoſed to publick ſcorn both by the *Idolaters* and *Mahometans*, amongſt whom they live. The City rich, commodiouſly built for trade, at the mouth of a River, which watering with his crooked ſtreams the moſt part of the Country, makes it fat and flouriſhing.

4 *COCHIN*, more South than *Cranganor*, extended on the ſhore for the ſpace of 40 leagues; and therein many *Chriſtians* of the firſt Plantation, beſides ſome *Converts* made of later times by the *Jeſuites*. Towns of moſt note herein, 1 *Angamale*, the Archbiſhops See of thoſe ancient *Chriſtians*, fifteen miles from *Cochin*. 2 *Cochin*, a Biſhops See, but of later erection, and the chief City of this Kingdom, which takes name from hence. Situate on the mouth or out-let of the River *Maugat*, by which almoſt encompaſſed like a *Demy Iſland*. Of great trade in regard of its Haven, very ſafe and ſpacious; as alſo by the friendſhip of the *Portugal* Nation. By whoſe power and favour they have not only freed themſelves from the King of *Calicute*, to whom before they did acknowledge ſome ſubjection; but drawn from thence a great part of the traffick alſo: this King permitting them to erect a Caſtle on the Haven, to ſecure their trade, which the other on good reaſons of State forced them to deſtroy. The King hereof in ſome reſpect *ſuperiour* unto him of *Calicute*, when a *Vaſſal* to him: this King being the *Pope*, or chief *Biſhop*, as it were, of all the *Bramines*: for which cauſe reverenced by all the Kings of *Malabar*, (as the Pope by many Princes of theſe Weſtern parts) who look upon him as the head of their *ſuperſtition*, and pay him many annual duties.

5 *CAI-COLAM* is on the South of *Cochin*, with which agreeing both in the temper of the Air, and fertility of the Earth: which notwithſtanding, the King hereof is not ſo rich as his other neighbours. Here live alſo many of the old *Chriſtians*, taking name from St. *Thomas*: but thoſe ſo deſtitute of *Prieſts* and Miniſters to inſtruct them in the Principles of Chriſtianity, that once in three years there came ſome formerly from the *Patriarch* of *Muzal* in *Aſſyria* to baptize their children. Better I hope provided for in theſe later daies, ſince their emboſoming and reconcilment to the Church of *Rome*. Their chief Town of the ſame name with the Country, hath a very fair haven, in the faſhion of a *Semi-Circle*; well traded till deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, but ſince that re-edified. Of leſs note there are many both towns and villages, but ſuch as do deſerve here no particular mention.

6 *COULAN*, upon the South of *Cai-Colam*, extended 20 Leagues more Southwards upon the Shores, is ſaid to be deſtitute of Corn, but plentiful of *Pepper*, and moſt ſort of Spices. So ſtored with Horſes, and fit Riders to ſerve upon them, that the King hereof keeps 20000 Horſe in continual readineſs either for invaſion or defence. This Kingdom, as the reſt before, takes name from the chief City of it, which is called *Coulan*, 24 miles from *Cochin*, and once a Member of that Kingdom; of great reſort by foreign Merchants, by reaſon of the fair and commodious Haven. In former times the ordinary ſeat of the *Cobritin*, or chief *Prieſt of the Bramines*, till moved to *Cochin*; and held to be the *Metropolis* or Mother City of all *Malabar* the reſt being thought to be but *Colonies* of this. Both in the City and the Country there are many *Chriſtians*, as well of the original foundation of *Chriſtianity*, as of the late improvements which are made by the *Jeſuites*.

7 *TRAVANCOR*, called alſo *TRANCANOR*, reacheth from the Kingdom of *Coulan*, to the Cape of *Comari*, and turning towards the Eaſt, bendeth again unto the North, as far as *Cael* in the Kingdom of *Biſnagar* or *Narſinga*. By which accompt it hath the benefit of the Sea on all ſides except towards the North: reaching in breadth from the Weſt Seas unto the Eaſt about 90 miles. The Country as the Reſt before, inhabited by many with the name of *Chriſtians*, if they may be called ſo which want *Sacraments*: the condition of theſe *Thomaan* Chriſtians in former times being ſo unhappy, that in 50 years before the coming of the *Jeſuites*, (if the *Jeſuites* may be believed from whom we have it) they had ſeen no Prieſt, nor other Miniſter of the Goſpel. Chief Towns hereof, (for of thoſe many others of leſs note I ſhall make no mention) are 1 *Travancor*, the chief City, which gives name to the Province, but neither well built, nor of very much trading. 2 *Quilacare*, the head City of a Signeury, but held of the Kings of *Trancanor*, as their next and immediate Lords; though all thoſe Kings alſo *Feudataries* of the Crown of *Narſinga*. And were that the worſt *Tenure* by which they hold, it might be tolerable; but there is a matter of worſe conſequence which attendeth theſe beſotted Princes. The Kingdom here is but a pomp of 12 years continuance, and then endeth in a ſad *Cataſtrophe*. For at the end of thoſe twelve years, the King repairs to *Quilacare*, prayeth before the *Idol* above mentioned, then

mounteth on a Scaffold covered with Silk or Tapestry; and in the sight of all his People, gathered together to behold this strange solemnity, cutteth off his nose, ears, lips, and other parts, which he casts towards the *Idol*, and in conclusion cuts his own throat for his final Sacrifice: his designed Successor being present at this bloody Sacrifice, who at the twelve years end is to do the like. Never was *Scepter* bought at so dear a rate: For though all *Crowns* be lined with *thorns*, yet here the pomps of Sovereinty be less lasting than in other places; the *entrance* full of fears, and the end of horrors.

These Kingdoms heretofore but one, till the year 900. or thereabouts, were branched and cantoned into these seven, by *Sarama Pereimal*, the sole Monarch. He by the solicitation of some *Arabians*, trading to his Ports, became *Mahometan*; and therein so devout, that he resolved upon a Pilgrimage to *Meccha*, there to end his days. At his departure he divided his Estates into these seven parts, distributing them amongst the neareſt of his Kindred; assigning unto him of *Coulan* the preheminence in sacred matters: and the *Imperial* dignity unto him of *Calicute*, with the title of *Samorin*, that is to say, *Chief Emperour*, or as some write, a God on Earth. He only priviledged with the right and power of *Coinage*; the rest to be subordinate, if not subject to him. From *Pereimal's* setting towards to the City of *Meccha*, the *Malabars* accompt their reckonings, and begin their years; as the Christians from the birth of their Lord and Saviour. And for a time his Hests were punctually observed. But the Kingdom of *Calicute* being weakned by the power of the *Portugals*, the other Kings began to free themselves from that subjection; and in the end to cast off all relation to him, and to his *Prerogatives*. Yet still he is esteemed of more Power and Majesty than any of the rest of the Kings of *Malabar*; and looked on with more reverence than any of them. The certainty of his *Revenues* I have no where met with, but conjecture them to be very great; first in regard of that infinite trading which is managed from most parts of the World in his Port of *Calicute*, the Customs and Imposts upon which must needs be of exceeding value; and secondly in reference to the wealth of private Merchants, many of which are said to equal some Kings in *Africk*, and Dukes in *Europe* not a few.

Quid Domini facient? audent cùm talia Fures.
And if the man such riches have,
Then what must he that keeps the Knave?

What *Forces* he is able to raise may be fully seen by that which hath been said before; wherein we find him with an Army of 90000 men besieging and taking in the Fort of *Chalen*, wtih another of 100000 beleaguering the Castle which the *Portugals* had built near the City of *Calicute*. And when the said *Portugals* stirred up the King of *Cochin* to make head against him, he fell upon them suddenly, both by Sea and Land, with 60000 Land-Souldiers, and 200 good Vessels of War for his Service at Sea. Sufficient Force to reduce the rest of these petit Kings to their old acknowledgments, but that some of them to avoid the danger, have put themselves under the *Vassalage*, or protection at the least, of the *Great Mongul*: others by suffering the *Portugals* to build Forts in their Kingdoms, have engaged them in defence of their Estate against this pretender. His Forces consist most of Foot, Horse being unserviceable in these countries, by reason of those many Rivers which interlace it, and these Foot are compounded most of Gentry, which they there call *Nairos*, trained to their Weapons when they are but seven years of Age; every one to that weapon which he most delighteth in, which makes them very expert and nimble at them: much priviledged for that cause by the Laws of the Country, and so esteemed of by the King, that out of them his Sisters chuse what men they please to their *Husbands*, some of them by that means being made the Fathers of the King succeeding.

Nothing else memorable touching the affairs of *Calicute*, but the way of succession to the Kingdom; the Crown descending upon none of the Kings Children, but on the Son of his eldest Sister, or neareſt Kinswoman. For being that one of the *Bramines* hath always the maiden-head of his Queens, and that some of these *Stallions* are continually allowed to keep them company, it is presumed, or very probably supposed, that the Queens Children are the *Bramines*, and not the Kings.

8 *NARSINGA.*

NARSINGA is bounded on the South, with *Travancer*; on the West, with the Mountain *Gates*; on the North, with *Oriſtan*, or *Orixa*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Narsinga* the chief City of it, and the Royal Residence of the King.

The Country is said to be in length 600 miles, or as some say, of as much extent as can be travelled in six months, plentiful in the same Commodities which the rest of *India* doth afford, except *Pepper* and some other Spices which are proper to *Malabar*. Not so well furnished with Rivers as some other places: which want is liberally supplied by water falling from the Mountains and received into trenches, meers, and *Lakes*, which do wonderfuly cool, moisten and enrich the Land, causing the Corn and Cattel to prosper above all imagination. Most destitute in this kind is the Province of *Choromandel*, in which if any year passeth without rain, they fall into such extremities, that they are fain to sell their children.

The People in Religion *Gentiles*, so worshipping one God, as the Lord of all, which is taught them by the light of nature, that they joyn the *Devil* or their *Pagodes* in Commission with him, whereto induced by the perswasion of their beastly *Bramines*, who thereout suck no small advantage. Some Christians there are intermixt of the *old Plantation*; especially in *Maliapur*, and the Region of *Choromandel*: but not so well instructed in the *Principles* of their own belief, as to be able to convince or convert the *Gentiles*, nor to disswade them from the use of some *Heathenish* Customs though barbarous, inhumane, and against all reason; not used in any place, but amongst the *Indians*. Amongst which I reckon for most savage, the forcing of poor women to burn themselves with their husbands bodies, the womens kindred, not the husbands, thrusting them on these hard conditions; who reckon it a disgrace to their Family, if she should refuse. And because they will be sure not to have that infamy stick upon them, they have ordered that the woman who shall so refuse, must shave her head, and break her Jewels, and not be suffered to eat, drink, or sleep, or company with any body till her death. A life more miserable than the Flames which they seek to shun. This makes them leap into the fire with joy and greedineſs, and to contend which shall be formost; she being thought to have been most loving during his life, which is now most willing to accompany him in his death, and offer her self to his *Manes*, at the Funeral Pile: whereunto thus alludeth the Poet:

Et certamen habent, lethi, quæ viva ſequatur
Conjugium; pudor eſt non licuiſſe mori.
Ardent victrices, & præbent pectora flammæ;
Imponuntque ſuis ora peruſta viris.
A shame 'tis not to dye; they therefore strive,
Who may be fam'd to follow him alive

The

The Victor burns, yields to the flame her breſt;
And her burnt face doth on her husband reſt.

Chief Cities of this Countrey, 1 *Cael*, on the borders of *Travancer*, belonging anciently to the Kings of *Coulan*, now to thoſe of *Narſinga*; the people whereabout called *Paravi*, are a kind of *Chriſtians*, who live for the moſt part by fiſhing for *Pearl*, which they ſell to the *Portugals*, and *Bengalan* Merchants. 2 *Golconda*, the chief City of the Province called *Muſulipatan*, the Lord whereof is a *Moor*, of the *Sophian* Sect; but a Vaſſal to the Kings of *Narſinga*. 3 *Chamdagrin*, one of the Seat-Royals of the King. 4 *Prepeti*, three miles from *Chamdagrin*, memorable for a yearly Feaſt here celebrated in honour of *Pereimal* (once ſole King of *Malabar*) reckoned for a Saint at leaſt in theſe parts of *India*: the offerings at which accuſtomably amount unto 200000 Crowns. 5 *Chadambaram*, the mother-City of thoſe *Pagan* Solemnities, which are done to *Pereimal*; who hath here a Temple endowed with 30000 Ducats of Annual Rent, all conſumed by the *Bramines* belonging to it, who pretend to have been born out of *Pereimal's* head. 6 *Madura*, honoured with the reſidence of the *Chochanada*, or the chief *Prelate* of the *Bramines* of this Kingdom; ſo numerous, that in this Town, and the Territories of it only, are thought to be no fewer than an hundred thouſand. The ſeat alſo of one of three *Naichi*, or Tributary Kings of the Crown of *Narſinga*; the other two reſiding at 7 *Gingi*, and 8 *Tanajor*, the chief Towns of their Principalities, but not elſe obſervable. 9 *Maliapur*, called alſo St. *Thomas*, from an opinion that the body of the Apoſtle was here interred: martyred here by the *Idolatrous Indians*, whoſe Poſterity in other things like unto other men, are ſaid to have one leg and foot as big as an *Elephant's*: a puniſhment inflicted on the whole Generation for the ſin of their Anceſtors. How true this is I cannot ſay, but ſure I am that *Dorotheus* ſaith, that he reſteth at *Calamina*, where he was ſlain with a Dart. However the *Portugals*, to make ſome uſe of the old Tradition, removed ſome bones from this place, which were ſaid to be his, and enſhrined them in *Goa*, their own City; much viſited by profitable *Pilgrims*, to their great enriching. The City once ſo large and populous, that it contained 330 Temples, for the uſe of divers Nations which reſorted thither. In theſe latter daies deſolate and forlorn, inhabited only by ſome old Chriſtians, till the *Portuguez* began to people it with new Colonies. 10 *Choromandel* giving name to a large Sea-Coaſt, lying on the Weſt-ſide of the Gulf of *Bengala*. 11 *Caſta*, a Town of *Choromandel*, in which the woman is not burned with her Husband, as in other places of this Country, but buried quick in the ſame grave with him. 12 *Negapatan*, in the ſame Region, inhabited for the moſt part by St. *Thomas Chriſtians*. 13 *Tarnaſſari*, once the head City of a Kingdom ſo called, the King whereof was able to bring into the field 100000 Horſe and Foot, and 100 armed Elephants, but now ſubject to the King of *Narſinga*. The people black, but ſo out of love with their own colour, that they willingly proſtitute their Wives or Daughters, to any people of a whiter and more clear complexion. 14 *Biſnagar*, once the chief City of this Kingdom, whence the King is ſometimes called the King of *Biſnagar*. In thoſe times 24 miles in compaſs, with nine Gates in it, (amongſt others) continually guarded with Souldiers; and a magnificent Palace, not elſewhere equalled. In the year 1565 ſacked by four of the *Mahometan* Kings of *Decan*, who with their joynt Forces had invaded this Kingdom, it became deſolate and forſaken; and the Court removed to 15 *Penegardo*, eight days journey within the Land (*Biſnagar* being ſeated on the borders of *Decan*) but long it had not ſtaid there when removed to 16 *Narſinga*, where it hath ever ſince been fixed, which is now the chief City of this Kingdom, unto which it gives name; though the King many times calls himſelf by the name of that City where he reſideth for the preſent.

Of the Antiquity of this Kingdom I have little to ſay, theſe Eaſtern parts not being known at all till theſe later times, nor well known in theſe. About the year 1550. their King then reigning was impriſoned by three of his Captains or Commanders; who ſhewed him only once a year to his Subjects, parting the power and government amongſt themſelves. He being dead, and his Son kept in the like reſtraint, *Romaragio* the firſt Captain aſcended the Throne, *Timaragio* managed the Eſtate, and *Bengabe* commanded the Army. But theſe Uſurpers being overthrown by the Kings of *Decan*, in the year 1565. *Timaragio* the Survivor took the charge of all; whoſe Son, to make himſelf ſure of the Kingdom, murdered his impriſoned Soveraign (the life and liberty of Kings being much of a date) whence followed many broils and troubles touching the ſucceſſion, till ſettled in the perſon of *Chriſmarao*, the undoubted Heir: who did not only reſtore peace and quiet to *Narſinga* it ſelf, but recovered *Canara* out of the hands of the *Idalcan*, who had before endangered his eſtate therein. Of the great Army which he led againſt this *Idalcan*, we have ſpoke already; adding here only, that before he went upon this enterpriſe (called the journey of *Rachiol*) he ſacrificed in nine days 2036 Beaſts to the Country Idols, the fleſh whereof he cauſed to be diſtributed amongſt the poor. Routed at firſt, and being perſwaded by ſome about him to go out of the field, he is ſaid to have made this Noble Anſwer, That *he had rather the* Idalcan *ſhould boaſt that he had ſlain him, than vanquiſhed him.* And thereupon leaping into the thickeſt of his Enemies, and well followed by the valianteſt of his Friends, he obtained the victory. But this vaſt Army of 600000 Foot, 30000 Horſe, 537 Elephants, with neceſſaries anſwerable to ſuch infinite multitudes, ſpeaks only what he can do on extreme neceſſity, or when he had ſome long time of preparation, as he had in that Action. The power of Kings is better meaſured by their ſtanding Forces, than by neceſſitated *Levies*. And herein this Prince comes not much ſhort of his greateſt Neighbours: his ſtanding Bands conſiſting of 40000 *Nairos*, or Gentlemen of his own Kingdom, which ſerve on foot; 20000 Horſe, who are either *Perſians* or *Arabians*, and 200 Elephants; well paid, and kept in continual readineſs; his Foot defrayed out of his *Revenues*, his Horſe maintained like the *Turks Timariots*, out of certain Lands diſtributed amongſt his Captains (ſome of which are ſaid to have a million of Crowns *per annum*) to furniſh him with theſe ſtable Bands of Horſes and Elephants.

As for his *Revenue*, it is reckoned at 12 millions yearly, out of which he is thought to lay up three; defraying with the reſt the expence of his Houſhold, and the entertainment of his Foot. This Sum amaſſed together out of the Lands, Mines, and Forreſts of the Country, which are wholly his; and the waters of ſome Rivers (ſold by him to his Subjects) which he monopolizeth, the common people having nothing but their Arms and Labour. Of which, the Mines, Forreſts, and one third of the Lands, he retaineth to himſelf; the other two being divided amongſt his Captains. So that it is no marvel if ſo rich a Country yield him ſuch an *income*, conſidering it is all his own. I do rather wonder (of the two) it ſhould yield no more.

9 ORISTAN.

ORISTAN or ORIXA, is bounded on the South, with *Narsinga*; on the West, with *Delly* and *Sanga*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Botanter*; on the East, with the Gulf of *Bengala*, and part of *Patanaw* or *Patane*: so called from *Orissa*, the chief City of it.

The Country hath plenty of Rice, cloth of Cotton, and a fine stuff like silk, made of grass, and there called *Terva*; with which, together with *Long Pepper*, *Ginger*, *Myrabolans*, and other Commodities here growing, they use to load 25 or 30 Ships from the Haven of *Orissa* only. The people so well governed, or so hating theft, that in the time of their own Kings, before they came under the *Monguls*, a man might have travelled with Gold in his hand without any danger. In other points, of the same temper and religion with the rest of the *Indians* subject to that Prince.

It is generally well watered, and interlaced with many Rivers, which do much moisten and refresh it; but none so beneficial to the Kings hereof as the River *Guanga* (of old called *Chaberis*) the waters whereof esteemed sacred by the Kings of *Calicute* and *Narsinga*, and much used by them in their sacrifices and superstitious purgations, are wholly ingrossed by this King, who selleth them to those Princes at excessive rates. Besides which Rivers it is watered with a fair Sea-coast, of 350 miles in length; that is to say, from Cape *Guaderino* in the South, which divides it from the Realm of *Narsinga*, to Cape *Leogora* in the East, which parts it from *Bengala*. But for all that not very much traded, because not so well provided of commodious Havens, as many other *Indian* Provinces of a far less Territory.

Towns of most note herein, 1 *Orissa*, on the Sea-side, or not far from it, the best traded Port of all this Kingdom; to which the name thereof is to be ascribed, as the Head-City of the Country. 2 *Catcoba*, six daies journey within the Land, the ordinary residence of their Kings, before it was subdued by the *Great Monguls*. 3 *Angeli*, a well frequented Port, at the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; from whence many Ships are yearly laden with *Indian* Wares. 4 *Bacolli* or *Bacola*, more within the Land, and once the head City of a Kingdom, but a very poor one. 5 *Simergan*, where they held it an impiety to eat flesh, or kill any beast. 6 *Senerpate*, of which little memorable. Nor do I find any thing which deserves much memory in the affairs of this Kingdom, but that the Kings hereof were *Gentiles*, subdued not many years since by the King of *Patanaw*; and both grown weaker by that War, by *Echebar*, the *Great Mongul*.

10 BOTANTER.

BOTANTER (under which name I comprehend all those Petit Kingdoms which are crowded together in the North and North-East of this part of *India*) hath on the South, *Oristan* and *Patanaw*; on the West, the River *Guenga* or *Chaberis*, by which parted from the Realms of *Pengab*; on the North, the *Zagathaian Tartars*, divided from it by some branches of Mount *Taurus*; on the East the famous River *Ganges*. So called from *Rostia*, the principal City of *Botanter*, which is the chief of these small Kingdoms.

The Country great, of three months journey in extent, full of high Mountains, one of which may be seen five days journey off; in which are said to dwell a people with ears of a span long or more, whom otherwise those of the Valleys count as *Apes*. In those parts which are next *Pengab*, they are white, and *Gentiles*; in others, more enclined to the *Olive* colour. Their garments they wear close to their bodies, so streight that one cannot see a pleit or wrinckle; and those they never put off by night nor day whilst they are able to hang on: nor do they wash at any time, for fear of defiling so pure a Creature as the water. Content with one Wife (deserved to be held a miracle in these Eastern parts) and yet *cohabit* not with her after two or three Children. When any of them die, the *South-sayer* is to tell them what to do with his body; according to whose direction (first consulting his books) they burn, bury, or eat it. Few Towns of note there are amongst them. The principal, 1 *Bottia*, the *Metropolis* of it. 2 *Clamur*, of which little memorable. 3 *Kukares*, the second Kingdom of this rank, large, but exceeding mountainous, as being over-run by the branches of Mount *Caucasus*, which divides it from *Tartary*. So named of *Kakares* the chief Town thereof, by some called *Negariot*, their Staples for the sale of their cloth, (most of the people being *Weavers*) bought of them by the *Chinoys*, and *Tartarian* Merchants, who resort frequently to those Markets. This is a distinct Kingdom of it self, the Kings whereof are called *Dermain*, but *Vassals* to the *Great Mongul*. And so is he of 3 COUCHE, another Kingdom of this Tract, frontiering upon *Cauchin-China*, beyond *Ganges*; so called from *Couche*, the chief Town of it. The Country rich, by reason that it may be drowned, and dried up again, when the people will: full of good pastures by that means, and those well stored with Sheep, Goats, Swine, Deer, and other Cattel; though the people neither kill nor eat them, but on the contrary build *Hospitals* for them, in which when lame and old, they are kept while they die. Yet many times they eat their money, and I cannot blame them; their small money being *Almonds*.

4 GOUREN, the most Northern Realm in this general division, so called of *Gor*, or *Goren*, the chief Town of it. The Country in some parts mountainous, out of which springeth the River *Sicilly*, one of the Tributaries unto *Ganges*; the rest a kind of Desart or unpeopled Country, joyneth close to *Couche*. In which are few Villages, grass (or reeds rather) longer than a man, and therein many *Buffs*, Tigers, and other wild Beasts; none wilder than the Thieves, who frequent the Wildernesses.

In this Tract also are the Kingdoms of 5 RAME, and 6 RECON, joyning upon *Zagathay*, or enclining towards it; possessed by the *Mongul Tartars* from the time of *Tamerlane*, if not before: but *Feudataries* to the Kings of *Chabul* or *Arachosia*, who commanded in the North-East of *Persia*, and these North parts of *India*; and from those places drew his Army or the greatest part of it, when called unto the aid of *Galgee*, the King of *Mandao*. Here is also the Kingdom of 7 TIPPURA, naturally fenced with Hills and Mountains; and by that means hitherto defended against the *Mongul Tartars*, their bad Neighbours, with whom they have continual wars. But of these Northern Kingdoms lying towards *Tartary*, there is but little to be said; and that little of no certain knowledge, those parts being hitherto so untravelled, that they may pass in the Accompt of a *Terra Incognita*.

11 PATANAW.

PATANE or PATANAW, is bounded on the North, with the Realms of *Botanter*; on the East, with *Ganges*; on the West, with *Oristan*; and on the South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Patane* the chief City of it. There is another Kingdom

Kingdom of this name in the further *India*: but whether it were ſo called becauſe a Colony of this; or from ſome reſemblances in the nature of the ſeveral Countries, or from the ſignification of the word in the *Indian* Language, I am not able to determine. Certain I am, that though they have the ſame name, yet they are under ſeveral Governments, and ſituate in far diſtant places: no otherwiſe agreeing than in ſome reſemblances, as *Holland* in the *Low-Countries* doth with *Holland* in *Lincolnſhire*.

The Country yieldeth veins of Gold, which they dig out of the pits, and waſh away the earth from it in great Bolls. The people tall, and of ſlender making, many of them old: great Praters, and as great diſſemblers. The women ſo bedecked with Silver and Copper, eſpecially about the feet, that they are not able to endure a ſhooe. Both Sexes uſe much waſhing in the open Rivers, and that too intermixt together in their natural nakedneſs; eſpecially ſuch as live near the banks of the River *Jamena* (eſteemed more holy than the reſt) which from *Agra* paſſing thorow this Country falleth into *Ganges*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Patane*, a large Town and a long one, built with very broad ſtreets; but the houſes very mean and poor, made at the beſt of earth and hurdles, and thatched over head. The *Metropolis* of this Kingdom, becauſe the ancienteſt, and that which gives the name unto it. 2 *Banaras*, a great Town on *Ganges*, to which the Gentiles from remote Countries uſe to come in *Pilgrimage*, to bathe themſelves in the holy waters of that River. The Country betwixt this and *Patanaw*, very fair and flouriſhing, and beautified upon the Rode with handſome Villages. 2 *Siripur*, the chief Seat of one of the old Princes of this Country; not yet ſubdued by the *Great Monguls*. 4 *Ciandecan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*; the Seat of another of their Kings. One of which memorable for a trick put upon the *Jeſuites*, when blamed by them for the worſhip of ſo many *Pagodes*, as contrary both to the Law of God and Nature; For cauſing them to rehearſe the *Decalogue*, he told them that he did offend no more againſt thoſe commandments in worſhipping ſo many *Pagodes*, than they themſelves in worſhipping ſo many *Saints*. 5 *Satagam*, a fair City (for a City of *Moors*) once part of *Patanaw*, ſince aſcribed to *Bengala*.

The people of this Country properly called *Pataneans*, but corruptly *Parthians*, were once of great command and power in theſe parts of *India*. Lords, for a time, of a great part of the Kingdom of *Bengala*, into which driven by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*, the Father of *Emanpaxda*, and Grand-father of *Echebar*. Their laſt King being ſlain in that war, twelve of their chief Princes joyned in an *Ariſtocracy*, and warring upon *Emanpaxda* had the better of him. After this, their Succeſſors attempted *Oriſſan*, and added that alſo to their Eſtate, but they could not long make good their fortunes; ſubdued by *Echebar* the *Mongul*, and made ſubject to him. Three of them, *viz.* the Prince of *Siripur*, the King of *Ciandecan*, and he whom they call *Mauſadalim*, retain, as yet (for ought I can learn unto the contrary) as well their ancient *Paganiſm*, as their natural liberty. The other nine, together with *Mahometaniſm*, have vaſſalled themſelves to the *Great Mongul*, now the Lord *Paramount* of the Country.

12 BENGALA.

BENGALA is bounded on the North, with *Patanaw*; on the Eaſt, with the Kingdoms of *Pegu*; on the South and Weſt, with the Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Bengala* the chief City of it. It containeth in length on the Gulf and River 360 miles, and as much in breadth into the Land. A Country ſtored with all things neceſſary to the life of man, great plenty of Wheat, Rice, Sugar, Ginger, and long Pepper. Such abundance of Silk, and Cotton, and of Fleſh and Fiſh, that it is impoſſible that any Country ſhould exceed it in thoſe commodities. And which crowns all, bleſt with ſo temperate and ſweet an air, that it draws thither people of all ſorts to inhabit it. Here is alſo amongſt other rarities, a Tree, called *Moſes*, which beareth ſo delicate a fruit, that the *Jews* and *Mahometans* who live here, affirm it to be the fruit which made *Adam* to ſin.

The natural Inhabitants for the moſt part are of white complection, like the *Europeans*, ſubtil of wit, and of a curious diſpoſition; well skilled in dealing in the world, much given to traffick, and intelligent in the way of Merchandiſe, if not ſomewhat deceitful. Not ignorant of other Arts, but with ſome ſmattering in *Philoſophy*, *Phyſick*, and *Aſtrology*. Stately and delicate both in their Diet and Apparel: not naked, as in others of theſe *Indian* Provinces, but cloathed in a ſhirt or ſmock reaching to their feet, with ſome upper Garment over that. The women of an ill name for their unchaſtity, though *Adultery* be puniſhed with cutting off of their noſes. Neat, if not curious and too coſtly in this one cuſtom, that they never ſeeth meat twice in the ſame Pot, but for every boyling buy a new one. In *Religion*, for the moſt part *Mahometans*, eſpecially on the Sea-ſhores, which lay moſt open and commodious to the *Arabians*; by whom *Mahometaniſm* was here planted many Ages ſince.

Of Rivers we need take no care, having ſpoken of *Ganges*; That with its many channels may abundantly ſerve to water ſo ſmall a Province. But hereof more anon in a place more proper. Proceed we now unto the Cities. The principal whereof, 1 *Bengala*, which gave name to the whole Kingdom, ſituate on a branch of the River *Ganges*, and reckoned for one of the moſt beautiful Towns of all the *Indies*. Exceedingly enriched by trade, but more by *Pilgrimages*, by reaſon of the holineſs and divine operations aſcribed by the *Indians* to the waters of it: there being few years in which not viſited by three or four hundred thouſand *Pilgrims*. 2 *Gouro*, the Seat Royal of the ancient Kings. 3 *Catigan*, on the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, a well-traded Port. 4 *Taxda*, once a Town of great traffick, and ſituate in thoſe times on the banks of *Ganges*; now by the changing of the Channel (occaſioned by the frequent over-flowing of it) above a League off from the River. 5 *Porto Grande*, and 6 *Porto Pequeno*, two Towns of the *Portugals*; but without Forces for defence, or rules for Governments. Places like the *Aſylum*, which was built by *Romulus*: whereunto ſuch as dare not ſtay in their own Countries, or any well regulated Cities, uſe to make their reſort; priviledged here to live in all kind of licentiouſneſs.

Here is alſo in the North parts of this Province, or adjoyning to it, the City and Kingdom of *ARACHAN*; Lying along the banks of *Ganges*, but ſo remote from the Sea, that it is 50 miles diſtant from the neareſt branch of it. Wealthy, and populous withal; governed heretofore by a King of its own, ſo wallowing in wealth and ſenſual pleaſures, that he had in this City, and the parts adjoyning twelve Royal Palaces or *Seraglio's*, all ſtowed with women for his luſt. Now ſubject with *Bengala* and *Patanaw*, betwixt which it lieth, to the Empire of the *Great Monguls*.

There are ſome ſmall Iſlands in the Gulf of *Bengala*, which I account unto that Kingdom. 1 *Bazacata*, now called *Baſſe*. 2 *Baraſſa*, of which name there are five in *Ptolomy*, three of them by *Mercator* ſaid to be *Mindanao*, *Gailon*, and *Subut*. 3 Two, called the Iſlands of *Good Fortune*,

Fortune, by him placed under the *Æquator*, and ſaid to be inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, or man-eaters; as alſo were three more which he calls 4 *Sadadibæ*, now named *Cainam*. 5 *Inſulæ Satyrorum*, or the Iſles of *Satyrs*, three in number, the people whereof were reported to have tails like *Satyrs*. And 6 thoſe called *Maniolæ*, in number ten, (now *Iſlas de Pracel*) reported by *Ptolomy* to be ſo ſtored with *Adamant* ſtones, that they violently drew to them any ſhips or veſſels which had Iron in them; for which cauſe they which uſed theſe Seas faſtned the planks of their Ships with wooden Pins. But our later *Navigators* find no ſuch matter, unleſs perhaps it may be in the exploits of Sir *Huon* of *Bourdeaux*, where indeed we meet with ſuch an Iſland, in the courſe of his *Errautrie*.

But to return again to the Kingdom of *Bengala*, we find it of a different conſtitution from the reſt of the Kingdoms of theſe parts. Not governed by a Family of Succeſſive Princes, deſcended from the Stem of a Royal Anceſtry, as others are. Chance, or neceſſity, had brought thither many *Habaſſines*, or *Æthiopians*, who made a Conqueſt of the Country; and choſe a King out of themſelves. To keep what they had gotten, and perpetuate the Regal honour to the *Habaſſine* Nation, they procured thence yearly certain thouſands of *Slaves*, whom they trained up unto the wars, advanced unto the higheſt commands in *Civil* and *Military* ſervice; and out of them elected one for their Lord and Soveraign: as the *Mamalucks* in the Kingdom of *Ægypt*, whom herein they followed. By ſome *Arabians* trading with them, they came in time to admit *Mahometaniſm*, amongſt them; on the Sea-coſts eſpecially. Diſpoſſeſſed firſt of ſome part of their Kingdom, lying about *Satagen*, by the *Patanæans*, when driven to ſeek new dwellings by *Baburxa*, the *Mongul Tartar*: and of their whole Kingdom, by the valour and good fortune of *Echebar*, who added it unto the reſt of his Eſtate.

Thus have we drawn together all the *Indian* Provinces on this ſide of *Ganges* (the Kingdoms of *Malabar* and *Narſinga* being but a *Parentheſis* in the conſtruction of this ſentence) into the hands of the *Mongul*. So called for his deſcent from the *Mongul Tartars*, one of five great Tribes or Nations into which that people were divided. Derived orignally from the famous and mighty *Tamerlane*, who having added almoſt all the Greater and Leſſer *Aſia* unto his Eſtates, left *Perſia*, with the parts of *India* which lay neareſt to it on the North, to *Myrza Chorrok*, his fourth Son. But his Iſſue failing in *Abdula*, the fourth of that Line, thoſe Eſtates fell to *Abuſaid*, deſcended from *Meranſha*, the third Son of *Tamerlane*: Whoſe Son and Succeſſor called *Zeuzes*, by ſome *Malaonones*, being diſſeized of the greateſt part of the Kingdom of *Perſia*, by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*: the rights of all, with the poſſeſſion of *Aracboſia* (now called *Cabul*) and *Paropamiſus* (now *Candahor* or *Sableſtan*) together with ſo much of *India* as was held by thoſe Princes, remained in *Hamed*, one of the younger Sons of *Abuſaid*: whoſe Poſterity laying hold on ſuch opportunities as were offered to them, have made themſelves Maſters in few years of this mighty Empire. Whoſe Succeſſors and their atchievements we ſhall here preſent.

The *Great Mongul*

1473 1 *Hamed*, the Son of *Abuſaid*, of the Race of *Tamerlane*, after the Conqueſt of *Perſia* by *Uſſan-Caſſanes*, ſucceeded in *Cabul*, *Candahor*, and the parts of the Realms of *India* ſubject to the *Tartars*.

1500 2 *Babor* or *Baburxa*, in danger to be diſpoſſeſſed of moſt of his Eſtates by the neighbouring *Vsbeques*, living upon the borders of *Perſia*, *Tartary*, and *India*, whom at laſt he quieted; enlarging his dominions by the Conqueſt of ſome part of *Patanæa*, and other Kingdoms in the North.

1532 3 *Humoyon*, the Son of *Babor*, or *Baburxa*, commonly called *Emanpaxda*, vanquiſhed by the *Parthians*, or *Patanæans*, and their confederates, craved aid of *Tamas*, the ſecond *Perſian* Monarch of this Line, on promiſe to conform to the *Sophian Sect*: and by that aid confirmed and ſettled his affairs, but held himſelf to the former Principles of his *Irreligion*.

4 *Merhamed* or *Miramudius*, Son of *Emanpaxda*, called in by *Galgee* the King of *Mandao*, againſt *Badurius* the *Cambaian*, vanquiſhed the *Cambaian* King in two pitched fields; and conquered the Kingdoms of *Mandao*, and *Balaſſia*, with ſome other Provinces.

5 *Adabar*, the Son of *Merhamed*, added the Realms of *Delly* and *Cambaia*, unto his Dominions.

1550 6 *Mahomet Selabdin*, commonly called *Echebar*, brother of *Adabar*, the moſt fortunate and victorious Prince of all this Family, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Cacimir*, *Agra*, *Decan*, *Oriſſa*, *Bengala*, *Patanæa*, and divers other of leſs note.

1605 7 *Selim*, ſurnamed *Jaugheere*, the Son of *Echebar*, who added nothing that I hear of, to his Father's Conqueſts.

1627 8 *Blackie*, the Grand-child of *Selim* by his eldeſt Son, (wickedly murdered by the practice of *Curroon* at *Agra*) proclaimed King on the death of his Grand-father; but ſhortly after made away by *Aſaph Chawn*, ſo to make room for

1627 9 *Curroon*, the third Son of *Selim* or *Jaugheere*, and Son-in-law unto *Aſaph Chawn*; having by his own Miniſters, and the hands of his Father-in-law, murdered the proclaimed King his Nephew, and all the other Princes of the Royal bloud, ſucceeded into the Eſtates, and was crowned at *Agra*. A wicked and bloody Prince, ſtill living for ought I hear to the contrary.

To look a little on theſe Princes, their eſtate and power; in matters of *Religion* they have generally been *Mahometans*, that Religion being long ſince embraced by the *Tartars*, from whom they originally deſcended. But not ſo ſcrupulous or preciſe in that profeſſion, as to endeavour the ſuppreſſing of any other opinions: both *Echebar*, and his Son *Jaugheere*, being ſo inclined unto *Chriſtianity*, that they permitted the *Jeſuites* to build Colledges and Churches in *Agra* it ſelf, the Imperial City, and many other chief Cities in his Dominions. Of *Echebar* it is reported, that being doubtful what *Religion* to adhere unto, he cauſed 30 Infants to be ſo brought up, that neither their Nurſes nor any body elſe ſhould ſpeak unto them; reſolving to addict himſelf to the Religion of that Country, whoſe Language ſhould be ſpoken by them, as moſt agreeable to nature; and he did accordingly. For as thoſe Children ſpake no Language, ſo was he poſitive and reſolved in no Religion; Able to ſee the vanities of *Mahomet*, and the horrible impieties of the *Gentiles*, but not willing to conform unto the ſtrictneſs of *Chriſtianity*. And though *Selim* who ſucceeded, to content his *Mahometan* Subjects, declared himſelf for that *Religion*; yet his affairs being once ſettled, and his Throne confirmed, he became as *Neutral* as his Father; Sultan *Curroon* now Reigning,

Reigning, of the ſame *Neutrality*, and 'tis well he is ſo; there being no Religion ſo impure and bloudy, which he would not diſhonour by his known ungraciouſneſs.

The Language ſpoken by theſe Princes, and their natural ſubjects the *Magores*, or *Mongul-Tartars*, is ſaid by ſome to be the *Turkiſh*. But I think rather, that it is ſome Language near it, than the very ſame: And that the Language which they ſpeak is the ancient *Scythian* or *Tartarian*, from which the *Turks* (a *Scythian* people) differ but in *Dialecti*, a ſprinkling of the *Perſian* intermixt amongſt them. A mixture not to be denyed, in regard of their long dwelling in that Country, the entercourſe which their Subjects of thoſe parts have with theſe of *India*; and that the greateſt part of their Souldiers, Officers, and Commanders, are ſupplyed from thence.

There Government is abſolute, if not *Tyrannical*, the *Great Mongul* being Lord of all, and heir to every man's eſtate which is worth the having: the Perſons and Purſes of his Subjects at his ſole diſpoſing; ſo that he may amaſs what Treaſures, and raiſe what Forces for the Wars his need requireth; or the *Avarice* or *Ambition* of his Miniſters ſhall ſuggeſt unto him. Firſt, for his *Treaſures*, it is conceived that his *Revenue* doth amount yearly to fifty Millions of Crowns; and there are reaſons to perſwade that it may be more. The Countrey very rich, and notably well traded from all parts of the world, the *Impoſt* upon which, is of infinite value; beſides the vaſt ſums of money brought into his Dominions from all Countreys whatſoever, which hold traffick here; their Commodities not being to be parted with but for ready Coyn. The whole Land being alſo his, he eſtates it out for no term certain, retaining a third part of the profits to himſelf, and leaving two thirds to the *Occupants*, to be held by them during pleaſure. Who if they thrive upon their bargains, they thrive not for themſelves, but him: it being in his power, if he want patience to expect the Incumbents death, to enter on the whole eſtate of the *Tenant* by the way of *Eſcheat*: but if he tarry till the death of the *Occupant*, it falls to him of courſe, the Wife and Children of the deceaſed being fairly dealt with, if he content himſelf with the perſonal eſtate, and leave the Land to them to begin a new, for inſtance, of thoſe huge ſums which in ſo rich a Countrey may be had this way, it is ſaid, that when the *Vice Roy* of *Lahor* dyed, he left to *Echebar* three Millions of Gold, beſides Silver, Jewels, Horſes, Elephants, Furniture and goods, almoſt invaluable: And of one *Raga Gagnar*, another of his great Officers, that at his death the *Great Mongul* ſeized of his into his hands 3300 pound weight of Gold, beſides Plate and Jewels. Beſides theſe means of heaping Treaſure, all the Mines of the Countrey are wholly his, and the *Preſents* given by all ſorts of *Suters*, hardly to be numbered; none being admitted to his preſence which comes empty handed. Finally, if *Badurius*, which was King of *Cambaia* only, could bring into the held at once 500 Tun of Gold and Silver to pay his Army; and after the loſs of all that treaſure, advanced upon the ſudden the ſum of 600000 Crowns, which he ſent to *Solyman* the *Magnificent* to come to ſuccour him; both which it is well known he did: What infinite *Treaſures* muſt we think this Prince to be Maſter of, who hath more than four times the eſtate of the King of *Cambaia*, and far more trading now than in former times.

By the like Parallel we may conjecture ſomewhat at his *Forces* alſo; *Badurius* the *Cambaian* brought into the field againſt *Merhamed*, and the King of *Mandao*, as was partly touched upon before, 150000 Horſe, 500000 Foot, 2000 Elephants armed, 2000 Pieces of braſs Ordnance, of which were 4 *Baſiliſks*, each of them drawn with 100 yoke of Oxen: and 500 Carts loaded with Powder and Shot. What then may we conceive of this Prince's who is Lord of ſo much a greater Eſtate than he, but that his *Levies* may be raiſed proportionably to ſo great Dominions? But becauſe poſſibly *Badurius* did extend himſelf to the utmoſt of his power, and having loſt two Battels was never able to recruit again, which no wiſe Prince would do but in great extremities: It is conceived that the *Mongul*, without running any ſuch hazards on the loſs of a Battel, can in an inſtant raiſe 50000 Elephants 300000 Horſe and Foot proportionable; and yet have ſtock enough for an *After-game*, if that he ſhould chance to loſe the firſt. But it is ſeldom that he hath advanced to ſo high a *Muſter*. For in his action upon the Kingdoms of *Decan*, he had but an hundred thouſand men, and a thouſand Elephants for fight; though poſſibly of all ſorts of people there might be more than double that number. For in his ordinary removes in time of *Progreſs*, it is ſaid that his followers of all ſorts amount unto two hundred thouſand; and that his Tents do uſually take up as much ground as the City of *London*. Yet notwithſtanding this great power, the fortunes of this Empire have not only been at a ſtand, ſince the death of *Echebar*; but the *Rasbooches* in *Cambaia*, the *Venazarari* in *Decan*, and other puiſſant Rebels in other parts of his Dominions, hold out ſtill againſt him; ſome of them being ſaid to command as much Land as a pretty good Kingdom, and to have always in readineſs 20000 horſe and 50000 foot, to make good their Mountains. Nature or divine providence have given to Empires, as to men, a determinate growth, beyond which there is no exceeding.

2 *INDIA EXTRA GANGEM.*

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM is that part of the great *Continent* of *India*, which lieth on the further ſide of the River *Ganges*, from the ſpring or fountain of it, whereſoever it be, to the fall thereof into the Sea by the fifth and laſt mouth thereof, which is called *Antiboli*: The other four being reckoned into the other part of *India*, on this ſide of that River. From hence extended Eaſtward as far as *China* and the *Oriental* Ocean, on other parts bounded as before.

The Countrey in thoſe elder times ſo renowned for wealth, that one Tract of it had the name of *The Silver Region*, and another of *The Golden Cherſoneſe*: this laſt ſuppoſed to be the *Ophir* of *Solomon*, of which more hereafter. The people of the ſame nature and diſpoſition, in the elder times, as thoſe which did inhabit on the hither ſide of the *Ganges*; not ſo well known to the *Greeks* or *Romans* as the others were, by reaſon of the remoteneſs of their ſituation; nor ſo well diſcovered ar the preſent. So that the beſt accompt we ſhall be able to give of it (though that lame enough) will not be ſo exact and punctual as of that before; with reference either to the ſtate hereof in the times of the Ancients, or the affairs of it in theſe days.

Mountains of moſt note in it, 1 *Bepyrrus*, 2 *Maandrus*, 3 *Semanthinus*; and 4 thoſe called *Damaſi*, touched upon before, in our general diſcourſe of *India*. Out of which, and from other ſrpings, flow theſe following Rivers, 1 *Catabeda*, 2 *Borſanna*, 3 *Sadus*, 4 *Temala*, 5 *Boſynga*, 6 *Chryſaoras*, 7 *Polandas*, 8 *Attabas*, theſe three laſt in the part hereof called the *Golden Cherſoneſe*, 9 *Daonas*, and 10 *Dorias*, riſing out of the Mountains called *Damaſi*. Others there are whoſe names I meet with in my Author, but of no great note: by what names any of them now diſtinguiſhed, it is hard to ſay. Nor find I any who have dared to adventure on it.

Of the chief Towns, 1 *Balanga*, 2 *Cirtatha*, 3 *Taſale* 4 *Tagma*, and 5 *Malthura*, have the name of being the *Metropolis* of their ſeveral Nations, 6 *Triglyphon*, only

honoured with the name of *Regia*: more memorable perhaps for the *white Crows*, and *bearded Hens*, which are ſaid to have been thereabouts, than for being the Seat Royal of ſome petit Prince. After theſe 1 *Sada* on the banks of the River *Sadus*. 2 *Samba*, 3 *Sabara*, 4 *Coly*, 5 *Zabæ*, and 6 *Sinda*, have the name of Cities. 7 *Baracura*, 8 *Berabonna*, 9 *Bebynga*, 10 *Tacola*, 11 *Sabana*, and 12 *Thibonobaſtus*: are marked out for the moſt noted *Empories*, or Towns of Trade; the memory of *Sabana* being ſtill preſerved in the Frith of *Sabaon*, betwixt this *Cherſoneſe*, and *Sumatra*. Others there are not noted by thoſe ſpecial Adjuncts, of which, 1 *Cocconagora*, and 2 *Balonca*, in the *Golden Cherſoneſe*. 3 *Rhandamarcotta*, in the Midlands. 4 *Pentapolis*, near the mouth of *Ganges*, called *Antibolum*; 5 *Aganagara*, near the Bay called *Sinus Magnus*; and 6 *Corygaza*, one of the principal Towns of the *Marandæ*, may be ſome of the chief.

The old Inhabitants hereof, beſides the *Marandæ* laſt ſpoken of, were the *Gangarides*, and *Gangæni*, inhabiting on the banks of *Ganges*; the *Tacoræi*, bordering on the Mountain *Bepyrrus*; as the *Tilædæ* on *Meandrus*; and the *Animachæ*, and *Cabocæ*, near the hills called *Damaſi*. The *Baſadæ*, ſaid to be crooked, ſhort, and thick; but of a chearful aſpect, and clear complexion: of which compoſition alſo the Inhabitants of the *Golden Cherſoneſe* were obſerved to be: the *Barræ*, and *Cudutæ*, on the Bay called *Sinus magnus*; the *Leſtori*, a thieviſh and Pyratical people, who lived in Caves, and were affirmed to be of ſo hard a skin, that it was not penetrable by an Arrow. Theſe, with the reſt, too many to be here recited, the iſſue in moſt likelyhood of *Chavilah* and *Saba* the Sons of *Jocktan*; of whom we find ſo many footſteps in *Sabara Civitate*, *Sabaraco*, *Siam*, *Sabana Emporio*, *Sobanus Fluvio*; and in the Countreys now called *Ava*, and the Kingdom of *Cavelan*. Of any of their actions we find little in ancient ſtories, or of the power of any of their former Kings, but that it was given out in the time of *Alexander*, that beyond the *Ganges* lived a Prince called *Agramenes* (the moſt powerful King of all thoſe Countreys) able to bring into the field 200000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, 3000 Elephants, and 2000 armed Chariots. With which report though *Alexander* was the more inflamed to try Maſteries with him; yet his Souldiers were ſo terrifyed with it (remembring the hard bout which they had with *Porus*) that no perſwaſions could prevail with them to go further Eaſtward. Nor hear we much of them after this, unleſs the converſion of the *Indians* in the time of *Conſtantine*, may be applyed to thoſe on that ſide of the River, as perhaps it may.

As for the latter obſervations and diſcoveries of it, we find it (as moſt barbarous Contreys elſe till reduced to order) diſmembred and ſubdivided into many Eſtates, almoſt as many Realms as Cities, and diſtinct governments amongſt them, as Tribes and Nations. Moſt of them *Gentiles* in Religion, with whom the name of *Chriſt* and *Chriſtianity* not ſo much as heard of, till the coming of the *Jeſuites* thither; who have not only obtained leave but ſome invitations, for the promoting of the *Goſpel*. And for *Mahometaniſm*, though it had got ſome footing on the Sea-coaſts of the Gulf of *Bengala*, lying moſt convenient for the trade of the *Arabian* Merchants: yet on the North, and midland parts, and thoſe towards *China*, and the *Oriental* Seas, it was as little heard of as *Chriſtianity*. But for the Kingdoms of this part, I mean the chief of them, to which as many of the reſt as are worth the looking after are to be reduced, they are thoſe of, 1 *Brama*, or *Barma*, 2 *Cauchin-China*, 3 *Camboia*, 4 *Jangoma*, 5 *Siam*, and 6 *Pegu*.

1 *BRAMA*.

THE Kingdoms of *BRAMA* or *BARMA* have on the Weſt, the River *Ganges*; on the North, part of *Cathay* in *Tartary*: on the Eaſt, *Cauchin-China*, and on the South, the Kingdom of *Pegu*. So called from the *Brachmanes*, *Bramanes*, or *Brames*, poſſeſſed for many Ages paſt of theſe North-Weſt Countreys. By the tranſpoſing of a Letter, they are now called the Kingdoms of *Barma*.

The Countrey of theſe *Brames* or *Bramanes*, extendeth Northwards from the neareſt of the *Peguan* Kingdoms, for the ſpace of 150 Leagues, but far more from Weſt to Eaſt: watered with many great remarkable Rivers, iſſuing from the Lake *Chiama*, which though 600 miles from Sea, and emptying it ſelf continually into ſo many Channels, contains four hundred miles in compaſs, and is nevertheleſs full of waters for the one or the other.

By the overflowing of which Rivers, and the commodiouſneſs of the Lake, the Countrey is wonderfully enriched, as *Ægypt* by the overflowings of *Nilus*. Which notwithſtanding, there are in it many huge Forreſts, in the Weſt eſpecially; and therein many Lyons, Tygers, Ounces, Serpents, and other Creatures of a miſchievous and hurtful Nature.

The whole Countrey containeth the Kingdom of 1 *Calam*, 2 *Prom*, 3 *Melinta*, 4 *Miranda*, 5 *Bacan*, 6 *Tangu*, 7 *Ava*, and 8 *Brama*.

Of 1 *MELYNTAY*, and 2 *MIRANDA*, I find little written, but that they were conquered with the reſt, by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, in the firſt riſing of his fortunes; becoming the foundation of his following greatneſs. Of 3 *BACAM*, it is ſaid, that it is plentifully enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver. In 4 *CAVILAN*, commonly and contractedly called *CALAM*, we find apparent foot-ſteps of the name of *Cavilah* the Son of *Jocktan*. Of the reſt more is to be ſaid, not much.

5 *PROM*, though it be a little Kingdom, is exceeding populous, and ſtored with a warlike people. Given by the ſecond King of *Pegu* of the *Tangum* Race, to a younger Son; who being by his Father commanded to the ſiege of *Marmolan*, which had then revolted, not only did decline the ſervice, but rebelled againſt him, and by the ſtrength of this ſmall Kingdom held it out three years. But ſeeing his Fathers fortunes in a manner deſperate, he repented of his diſobedience, and went unto his aid, with an Army of 50000 men of his Natural Subjects. Treacherouſly poyſoned on the way by his chiefeſt Counſeller, for fear the Crime of his Revolt would be charged on him.

6 *TANGU*, is the name of one of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms, ſo called from the chief Town thereof: formerly ſubject with the reſt of the Kings of *Pegu*, and governed by their ſeveral Vice-Roys. One of which taking his advantage of the wars between the Kings of *Pegu* and *Siam*, began to ſet up for himſelf; and huſbanded his affairs ſo well, that he became ſole Lord of theſe *Bramain* Kingdoms; as afterwards of all the reſt in this part of *India*. Not long enjoyed by his Succeſſor, when diſpoſſeſſed and ſlain by one whom he marryed to his Siſter, and made Governour of this very Province. In which he bore himſelf ſo ſtiffely, that being ſent for by his King to aid him againſt ſome of his Rebels, and to bring all the Inhabitants of the Countrey with him: he anſwered that he would ſend one half; to ſend all, unreaſonable. Incenſed with which denyal, the King armed againſt him; but he put the Leaders to the ſword, and ſeized their followers. After this being now in Arms, and

deſparing

despairing of reconcilement, he took upon himself the Title of King of *Tangu*; and to secure himself therein, joyned with the King of *Arrachan* against his Sovereign: whom he most barbarously slew (after he had put himself into his hands) with his Wife and Children. Neither enjoyed he long the fruits of his villany, subdued not long after, with the rest of these *Indian* Princes, by the King of *Barma*; of which more hereafter.

7 *AVA*, another of these Kingdoms, and one of the Plantations of *Cavilah* also, is liberally furnished with all things necessary for the life of man. It affordeth also store of *Rubies*, which they dig out of the Mountains, a certain creature which breeds *Musk*, together with great plenty of Horse and Elephants. Their chief City is called *Ava*, which name it giveth to the River upon which it is built, issuing out of the Lake of *Chiamai*, and communicates the same to the whole Province. Subject for many Ages past to the King of *Pegu*, till conquered by the Vice-Roy of *Tangu*, as before is said; and by him given, with the Title of King, unto one of his brothers. Who rebelling against the Son and Successor of his Benefactor, and by him slain in single Combate, this Kingdom was conferred on a Son of the Conquerour. A Prince of more vertue than his Brother, and one which grew at last unto so great power, that in the bustle or combustions of the Kingdom of *Pegu*, he surprized or forced the Fort of *Siriangh*, formerly given unto the *Portugals* by the King of *Arrachan*, slew all the Souldiers, and spitted *Philip de Britto*, who commanded it. After which, gathering together the dispersed *Peguans*, and repairing part of the City for them, he was likely to have made himself a good bargain by it; if the sudden coming of the King of *Barma*, had not spoiled his markets.

8 *BRAMA* or *BARMA*, the most Southern of these *Bramain* Kingdoms, the King whereof was *Feudatarie* to the Kings of *Pegu*, or of their appointment. Of no accompt when the *Portugals* came first acquainted with *India*, nor in many years after; now of most renown. For sitting still when all the rest of their neighbours were embroyled in wars, they gathered so much power and strength, that in the end, one of the later Kings hereof observing how the Forces of his neighbouring Princes were consumed, and their Treasures wasted, levied an Army of 300000 fighting men, 40000 Elephants, with all things sutable. And with this power subdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*; conquered the Cities of *Pegu* and *Odia*, (the two chief Cities of these parts) invaded the Kingdom of *Siam*, and possessed himself of it: making in little time all the lesser Princes to become his *Tributaries*, as they still continue.

2. *CAUCHIN-CHINA.*

CAUCHIN-CHINA is bounded on the West, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the East, with part of the great Realm of *China*; on the North, extending towards *Tartary*; on the south, bordering on *Camboia*.

The Countrey aboundeth with Gold, Silver, *Aloes*, and great store of Silks, of which the Inhabitants make *Taffata*, and other stuffs. It affordeth also plenty of *Porcellane* earth, which being made into Cups, Dishes, and other Utensils of houshold, is sold by the name of *China-ware*; well counterfeited of late amongst us, by putting a white crust on our *Potters* earth, as neat for use and shew as the natural *China*.

The people very stout and warlike, especially for Foot-service; though they have many horses here, and those fit for war. Well-practiced on their *Peeces* also, on which they spend great store of powder; but not so much in War, as in Sports and Triumphs: yet making much more than they spend, the earth in some parts yielding very fit *materials* for that commodity. Trained up to *Manufactures*, especially to the making of Powder, Silks, and *Porcellane*, which they sell to the *Chineses*. *Idolaters* for the most part, as are those of *China*, whose Characters and Language they also use: but so that there appear some inclinations unto *Christianity*, in many of them; who have erected many *Crosses*, and do admit the Pictures of the *blessed Virgin*, and the final Judgment. Men not unlikely to have made a further Progress in the Gospel, if they had met with better Teachers than these *Laymen's* Books.

The chief City hereof is called *Cauchin-China* by the name of the Province, situate on a River coming out of *China*, and passing hence into the bottom of a large and capacious Bay. The whole Countrey divided into three Provinces, and as many kings; over which one *Paramount*: but he and they the tributaries of the King of *China*. Belonging hereunto is a little Island called *Ainao*, ten miles from the Land, where the Inhabitants have a great trade of fishing for *Pearls*. The only Province of the *Indies*, which is wholly subject to the power of a Foreign Prince; the *Portugals* holding in this Continent many Towns and Cities, but no whole Provinces.

3. *CAMBOIA.*

CAMBOIA is bounded on the North, with *Cauchin China*; on the East and South, with the Ocean; on the West, with parts of the Kingdom of *Siam*, and the Realms of *Jangoma*. So called from *Camboia*, the chief City of it. Divided commonly into the Kingdom of *Champa*, and *Camboia* specially so called.

1 *CHAMPA*, the northern part hereof, bordereth on *Cauchin-China*; and is liberally provided of all necessaries: besides which, there is plenty of Gold, and of the wood called *Lignum Aloes*, prized at the weight thereof in Silver, much used in *Bathes*, and at the Funerals of great persons. This a distinct Kingdom of it self, but subject with the rest to the King of *Barma*. The chief City of it, called by the name of *Champa*, which it communicates to the Countrey, is situate near the Sea-side, and of very good traffick.

2 *CAMBOIA* specially so called, lyeth South of *Champa*, a very great and populous Countrey, well stored with Elephants and *Rhinoceros*, which last the *Indians* call *Abades*. It yieldeth also great plenty of a sweet-wood which they call *Calamba*; as precious and as much esteemed of as the wood of *Aloes*, (if not the same, or some *Species* of it as I think it is) together with abundance of Rice, Flesh, and Fish; well-watered with the River *Mecon* which issuing out of *China*, and having received many lesser streams falleth first into a great Lake of 200 miles compass, and thence into the *Indian* Ocean; making betwixt the Lake and that an hundred Islands. By the overflowings of this River the whole Countrey is enriched (as *Ægypt* by the like overflowing of *Nilus*) the Inhabitants at those times betaking themselves to their upper Rooms, and passing altogether by boats from one place to another.

The people are conceived to be strong and warlike, though more enclined to Merchandise and Navigation than to deeds of Arms. *Idolaters* of the worst kind, esteeming Men and Beasts of a like condition in regard of any future judgement: of late, beginning to set up, and adore the *Cross*, which is (it seems) the first *Principle of Religion* in which the *Friers* are wont to instruct their *Converts*. Not weaned as yet by these new Teachers, from burning the women with their Husbands, common to them with many other *Indian* people, nor from burning

their Nobles with the King, uſed any here; but voluntarily to expreſs their loves, not upon conſtraint.

The chief Towns of it, 1 *Camboia*, one of the three prime Cities of this part of *India*; the other two being *Odia* and *Pegu*, of which more anon. Situate on the River *Mecon* before it was deſtroyed: where it hath its fall into the Sea. Well traded, as the Staple for all this Countrey, the Commodities whereof are brought hither, and here ſold to the Merchants. 2 *Cudurmuch*, twelve Leagues from *Camboia*, on the ſame River alſo. 3 *Coul*, on the Sea-ſide in the very South-weſt Angle of all the Countrey. The Kings whereof, once abſolute, and at their own diſpoſing, till invaded by a vaſt Army of the neighbouring *Laos*: in which their King being ſlain, and his forces weakned, his Son and Succeſſor was conſtrained to become a *Vaſſal* to the Crown of *Siam*. But fearing the loſs of his Eſtate, when that Kingdom was made ſubject to the Kings of *Pegu*, in the year 1598. he applyed himſelf unto the *Portugals*, offered them a *Peninſula* (part of his Dominions) extending three Leagues into the Sea; and ſent to the *Jeſuits* for ſome of their *Society* to live and preach amongſt his people. Not able for all theſe honeſt Policies to preſerve himſelf from being made a *Feudatary* of the King of *Barma*.

4 *JANGOMA*.

JANGOMA, or the Countrey of the *LAOS*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Camboia* and *Champa*, from which parted by the River *Menon*; on the Weſt, with the River of *Pegu*, by which divided from that Kingdom; on the South, with the Realm of *Siam*; on the North, with *Brama*.

It took its name from *Jangoma*, the chief Province of it; the other two (for there be three of them in all) being thoſe of *Lavea*, and *Curroy*. All of them joyned together called the Countrey of *Laos*, by the name of the people. A mighty Nation and ſtout, by Religion *Gentiles*, naked from the middle upwards, and truſſing up their hair like a Cap. Their Countrey very rich and level, but very ill neighboured by the *Gueoni* (*Paulus Venetus* giveth them the name *Gaugigu*) who poſſeſs the Mountains; whence falling in great companies to hunt for men, whom they Kill and eat, they commit cruel butcheries amongſt them. Inſomuch as this people, not able to defend themſelves againſt there fury, or rather wanting good Leaders to conduct and order them (for it is ſaid that they can make a Million of men) were fain to put themſelves under the protection of the King of *Siam*, whom they obeyed no further than the humour took them.

Towns they have none of any note, except thoſe three which give name to the ſeveral Provinces, and thoſe of no note neither but for doing that. The people for the moſt part live on the banks of their Rivers, where they have Cottages of Timber; or elſe upon the Rivers in Boats and Shallops, as the *Tartarians* of the Deſarts in their Carts or Wheel-houſes. One of their Rivers (commonly called River of *Laos*) ſaid to extend 400 Leagues within the Land, as far as *Tartary*, and *China*; and from *July* to *September* to invert its courſe, and flow back ſtrongly towards its fountain. Not governed by any certain rule or order, till they ſubmitted to the Patronage of the King of *Siam*; and then no other than they liſted: though for their ſakes, that King engaged himſelf in a War againſt the *Cannibals*, their moſt deadly Enemies, accompanied with 25000 Foot, 20000 Horſe, and 10000 Elephants. Secured by his protection from the teeth of thoſe *Cannibals* (of whom otherwiſe they had been devoured) in the year 1578. they deſcended the River in great multitudes, to the number of 200000; and fell into the Realm of *Camboia*: but they made an unproſperous adventure of it. For though the King of *Camboia* loſt his life in the Battel, yet he gave them ſuch a fatal Blow, that they were almoſt all ſlain, drowned, or captivated in the fight. Weakned wherewith they became an eaſie prey to the *Vice-Roy* of *Tangu*, when he firſt made himſelf ſole Maſter of this part of *India*. Who giving to his Brother the Kingdom of *Ava*, and leaving to his Eldeſt Son the Kingdom of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, conferred this Countrey, with the Title of King of *Jangoma*, on a younger Son. But he, begotten on a Daughter of the King of *Pegu*, and born after his Father had attained this whole Empire, was eaſily perſwaded by the *Talapoies*, (ſo they call their Prieſts) that his Title was better than that of his Elder Brother, who was born before it. Prevented in his claim by the Kings of *Arrachan* and *Tangu*, by whom that King was ſlain, and his Kingdom waſted. How he ſped afterwards I find not: But probable it is, that he ſubmitted with the reſt to the King of *Barma*.

5 *SIAM*.

SIAM is bounded on the North, with *Jangoma*, and part of *Pegu*; on all other parts, with the wide Ocean, ſave that it toucheth on the Eaſt, with a part of *Camboia*; and on the Weſt, with a Point of *Pegu*. So called from *Siam* the chief of all thoſe Kingdoms which paſs under this name, as that from *Siam* the chief City of it.

The Countrey of greater length than breadth, ſtretcheth it ſelf Southwards into the Sea many hundred miles, in form of a *Peninſula* or *Demy-Iſland*, called anciently *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe*: one of the five famous *Cherſoneſes* or *Peninſulaes* of the elder Writers; the other four being *Peloponneſus* in *Greece*, the *Thracian Cherſoneſe* near *Proponis*, the *Taurican Cherſoneſe* in the *Euxine*, and the *Cimbrian Cherſoneſe* in the North of *Germany*; now part of *Denmark*. It had the name of *Aurea*, or the Golden, ſuperadded to it, from its plenty of Gold, for which much celebrated by the Ancients, both *Greeks* and *Romans*, (and therefore not improbably thought by ſome to be *Solomons Ophir*) ſtill famous with the reſt of the Countreys of the Kingdom of *Siam*, for abundance of Gold, Silver, Tin, and other Metals; great quantity of Pepper ſent yearly thence, with ſtore of Elephants, and Horſes. The whole Countrey very fat and fertile, well ſtored with Rice, Corn, Graſs, and all other neceſſaries.

The people generally much addicted to pleaſures, if not to Luxury; delighted much in Muſick and rich Apparel: and ſuch as ſtand much upon their honour. For their inſtruction in good letters they have *publick Schools*, where their own Laws, and the Myſteries of their own Religion, are taught them in their natural Language; all other Sciences in ſtrange Tongues underſtood by none but by the Learned. To tillage they can frame themſelves, and are painful in it; but by no means will follow any *Mechanical* Arts, which they put over to their *Slaves*. In Religion for the moſt part *Gentiles*, worſhiping the four Elements amongſt other Gods; to each of which as they are ſeverally affected, ſo are their bodies to be diſpoſed of: either burnt, buried, hanged, or drowned, after their deceaſe; as in their lives they were moſt devoted to the Fire, Earth, Air, or Water. Some Chriſtians here alſo in and about the parts poſſeſſed by the *Portugals*, but more *Mahometans*; who poſſeſſing two hundred Leagues of the Sea-coaſts of this Countrey, have planted that Religion in moſt part of the Countrey now by them poſſeſſed.

It containeth in it many Kingdoms, ſome of little note; Thoſe of moſt obſervation, 1 *Malaca*, 2 *Patane*, 3 *Jor*, 4 *Muantay*,

4 *Muantay*, and 5 *Siam*, properly and especially so called. Of which *Malaca* is now in the hands of the *Portugals*, *Jor* and *Patane* are possessed by the *Arabians* or *Saracens*, the other two have followed the fortunes of the Kings of *Siam*.

1. The Kingdom of *MALACA* taketh up the South part of the *Golden Chersonese*, extended towards the North from the Cape or Promontory which *Ptolomy* alleth *Malanconia*, in the extreme South point hereof near unto *Sabana*, then a noted *Emporye* for the space of 270 miles. So called from *Malaca* the chief City of it, of old times called *Musicana*, or built very near it; from whence this Tract is called by *Strabo*, *Musicani Terra*. The City seated on the banks of the River *Gaza*, which is here said to be 15 miles in breadth; by the frequent overflowings whereof, and the nearness of it to the *Line* (being but two degrees in the North) the Air hereof, and all the Territory belonging to it, is very unwholsome; and for that cause the Countrey but meanly populous. In compass it is said to be 20 miles; of great wealth, because of almost infinite trading; for spices, *Unguents*, Gold, Silver, Pearls, and precious stones, the most noted *Empory* of the East. Insomuch that it is said by *Ludovico Barthema*, who was there before the *Portugals* knew it, that it was traded by more Ships than any one City in the world; more by far since the coming of the *Portugals* to it, than it was before. The People (as in all this tract) of an Ash-colour, with long hair hanging over their faces, bloudy and murderous; especially when they meet one another in the Night. Few other Towns of any note, in a place so unhealthy, except 2 *Sincapura*, situate East of *Malaca*, near the Promontory of old called *Magnum*; supposed by some to be the *Zabe* of *Ptolomy*: and that more probably, than that it should be his *Palura*, as *Maginus* would have it, *Palura* being a City of the *Hither India*, and different at the least 20 degrees of Longitude from any part of this *Chersonese*. But whatsoever it was called in the former times, it was in these later Ages the mother of *Malaca*; the greatest part of the Trade and people being removed from thence to this newer foundation: before which time it was the best frequented *Empory* in these parts of the East. 3 *Palo Zambilan*, 120 miles on the West of *Malaca*, from whence to *Sincapura*, coasting about the Southern Cape (now called *Cape Liampo*) we have a Sea-shore of 270 miles, as before was said. No other habitation of any reckoning, but a few Sheds upon the shore for the use of Fisher-men, and some scattered Villages in the Land: the People dwelling most on Trees for fear of Tigers.

This Tract in former times possessed by the Kings of *Siam*, about the year 1258. became a Kingdom of it self; founded by *Paramisera*, and some other of the *Javan* Nobility, who flying the tyranny of their own King, came into this Countrey; where they were lovingly received by *Sangesinga*, then reigning under the *Siamite* in *Sincapura*. Him they perfideously slew, and invested *Paramisera* in his Dominion. Outed of which by the King of *Siam*, he was forced to seek a new dwelling; and after two or three Removes, fell upon the place where *Malaca* now standeth: which City, pleased with the commodiousness of the situation, he is said to have built. The trade of *Sincapura* in short time removed hither also, which so increased the wealth and power of the Kings hereof, that joyning with the *Moors*, who began to plant themselves on the shores adjoyning, and receiving withal the Law of *Mahomet*, they began to cast off all subjection to the Kings of *Siam*, to whom the Son and Successor of *Paramisera* had submitted his new-raised Kingdom, and became their *Homager*. Incensed wherewith, the *Siamite* about the year 1500 sent out a Navy of 200 Sail to distress it by Sea; and an Army of 30000 men and 400 Elephants to besiege it by Land. But before he was able to effect any thing, hindred by tempests, and the insolencies of some of his Souldiers, the *Portugals* in the year 1511. under the conduct of *Albuquerque* had possessed themselves of it, who built there a Fortrese and a Church. And though *Alodinus* the Son of the expelled King (whose name was *Mahomet*) endeavoured the regaining of his Estate; and that the *Saracens*, *Hollanders*, and the Kings of *Jor* and *Achen* (two neighbouring Princes) envying the great fortunes of the *Portugals*, have severally and successively laboured to deprive them of it: yet they still keep it in defiance of all oppolition which hath been hitherto made against them.

2 North unto that of *Malaca* lyeth the Kingdom of *TOR*, *JOR*, or *JOHOR*, so called of *Jor*, or *Johor*, the chief City of it. Inhabited for the most part by *Moors*, or *Saracens*, *Mahometanism* by their means prevailing on the Natives of the Countrey also. A Kingdom of no great extent, but of so much power, that joyning his Land-forces with the Navy of the King of *Achen*, he besieged *Malaca*, and built a Royal Fort before it; in which, when taken by *Paul de Lima* by the defeat of this King, were found 900 Pieces of brass Ordnance. After this, picking a quarrel with the King of *Paban*, he burnt his Houses, Barns, Provisions, and the Suburbs of the City it self; but in the course of his affairs was interrupted by the King of *Achen* (one of the Kings in the Isle of *Sumatra*) his old Confederate; who after 29 days siege took the City of *Jor*. What afterwards became of this King or Kingdom, I am not able to resolve. In former times it did acknowledge him of *Siam* for the *Lord* in *Chief*.

3 More Northward yet lyeth the Kingdom of *PATHANE*, denominated from *Patane*, the chief City of it: but different from *Patane* in the other *India*, as *Cleveland* in *York-shire* from *Cleveland* in *Germany*; or *Holland* in the *Low-Countreys* from *Holland* in *Lincolnshire*, as hath been fully shewn before. The City made of Wood and Reed, but artificially wrought and composed together; the *Mesquit* only (most of the people being *Mahometans*) is built of Brick. The *Chinois* make a great part of the Inhabitants of it, insomuch that in this small City there are spoken three Languages, *viz.* The *Chineſe*, used by that people; the *Malayan* (or Language of *Malaca*) which is that of the Natives; and the *Siam*, to the King whereof this small Crown is *Feudatary*. Built of such light stuff and combustible matter, it must needs be in great danger of fire; and was most miserably burnt in the year 1613. by some *Javan* Slaves in revenge of the death of some of their fellows: at which time the whole City was consumed with fire, the *Mesquit*, the *Queens* Court, and some few houses, excepted only. The Countrey governed of late years by Queens, who have been very kind to the *English* and *Hollanders*, granting them leave to erect their *Factories* in *Patane*. Not memorable for any great exploit by them performed, but that a late Queen a little before that dismal fire, offended with the King of *Pan* or *Paban*, who had marryed her Sister, and reigned in a little Island not far off, she sent against him a Fleet of 70 Sail, and 4000 men; by which compelled to correspond with her desires, he brought his Queen and her Children with him to make up the breach.

4 The Kingdom of *Siam*, strictly and specially so called, is situate on the main-land (the rest before described being in the *Chersonese*) betwixt *Camboia* on the East, *Pegu* on the West, the Kingdom of *Muantay* on the North, and the main Ocean on the South. The chief Cities of it, 1 *Socotai*, memorable for a Temple made wholly of metal 80 spans in height, raised by one of the Kings; it being the custom of this Countrey, that every King at his first

coming

coming to the Crown, is to build a *Temple*; which he adorned with high Steeples, and many Idols. 2 *Quedoa*, renowned for the beſt Pepper, and for that cauſe very much frequented by foreign Merchants. 3 *Tavay*, upon the Sea-coaſt where it joyneth to *Pegu*. Whence meaſuring along the ſhores till we come to *Champa* before mentioned, being all within the Dominions of the King of *Siam* (not reckoning the *Cherſoneſe* into this Accompt) we have a Sea-coaſt of the length of 600 Leagues. 4 *Lugor*, upon the Sea-ſide alſo, near that little *Iſthmus*, which joyneth the *Cherſoneſe* to the Land; from whence to *Malaca*, is 600 miles ſail all along the coaſt. 5 *Calantan*, the head City of a little Kingdom, but ſubject to the Crown of *Siam*. 6 *Siam*, the chief City of this part of the Kingdom, which it giveth this name to. A goodly City, and very Commodiouſly ſeated on the River *Menam*, for Trade and Merchandiſe. So populous and frequented by foreign Nations, that beſides the Natives, here are ſaid to be thirty thouſand houſholds of *Arabians*. The houſes of it high built by reaſon of the *Annual* deluge, during which time they live in the Upper-rooms; and unto every houſe a Boat for the uſe of the Family. Thoſe of the poorer ſort dwell in little ſheds, made of Reed and Timber; which they remove from place to place for the beſt convenience of their Markets: And yet ſo ſtrong, that being beſieged by the *Tanguan* Conquerour, then King of *Pegu*, *Anno* 1567. with an Army of fourteen hundred thouſand fighting men, for the ſpace of 20 months together, it reſolutely held good againſt him: not gained at laſt by Force, but Treaſon, one of the Gates being ſet open to him in the dead time of the night, and by that means the City taken. The people hereof are thought to be inclining to Chriſtianity; but hitherto ſo ill inſtructed in the Principles of it, that they maintain, amongſt many other ſtrange opinions, that after the end of 2000 years, (from what time I know not) the World ſhall be conſumed with fire; and that under the aſhes of it ſhall remain two Eggs, out of which ſhall come one man and one woman, who ſhall people the World anew.

5. *MUANTAY*, the laſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth betwixt *Jangoma* and *Siam*; memorable for nothing more than the City of *Odia*, or *Udie*, the principal of all the Kingdoms of *Siam*; and the uſual reſidence of thoſe Kings. Situate on the banks of the River *Caipumo*, and containing in it 400000 Inhabitants, of which 50000 are trained to the Wars, and in continual readineſs for preſent ſervice. For though this King be Lord of nine ſeveral Kingdoms, yet he uſeth none of them in his Wars but the natural *Siamites*, and thoſe of this City, and the reſt of his Subjects of *Muantay*. It is ſaid that for the uſe of this City only (being ſeated like *Venice* upon many little Iſlands, not bridged together) there are no fewer than 200000 Sciffs, and Shallops; ſerving to waft the people from one place to another. By means hereof of great ſtrength, and almoſt impregnable. But being beleaguered by the *Tanguan* or *Bramin* Conquerour with ten hundred thouſand fighting men (an Army big enough to have buryed a greater City than this, if every man had but caſt a ſhovel full of earth upon it) it was won at laſt.

The Government of theſe Kings of *Siam*, was abſolute heretofore, if not tyrannical, he being ſole Lord of all the Land in his Kingdoms; which he either gave to his Nobles, or Farmed out to Husbandmen, during life or pleaſure, but never paſſed over unto any the right of Inheritance. And theſe he grants unto his Subjects, beſide rents in money, upon condition to maintain a determinate number of Horſe, Foot, and Elephants: thereby enabled without further charge unto the Subject, to levy 20000 Horſe, and 250000 Foot for preſent ſervice; beſides far greater numbers out of the reſidue of his people, if occaſion be. And for his ordinary *Guard* he was ſaid to keep 6000 Souldiers, and 200 Elephants, of which Beaſts he is reported to have 30000, of which every tenth Elephant is trained up to the War. By reaſon of ſo great a power he became Maſter of the Realms of *Camboya* and *Campa*; held thoſe of *Malacha*, *Jor*, *Pahan*, and *Patane*, as his Vaſſals and Tributaries; with that of *Jangoma* and the *Laos*, under his protection. But when the fatal time was come, and that his *City* of *Siam* was betrayed to the King of *Pegu*, he poyſoned himſelf upon the news, his Son becoming *Tributary* to the *Pegnan* Victor. This Son of his, too much a Prince to be a ſubject, revolted from a Son of the *Peguan*, a vicious and tyrannical King, degenerating from the gallantries of ſo worthy a Father; by whom he was beſieged in *Siam* with 900000 fighting men. Unable to reſiſt his Army if he had preſently declared ſuch a reſolution, he entertained the King with Treaties, and promiſes of delivering the City to him, till the third month after, (which was *March*;) when ordinarily the River was to overflow all the Countrey, for 120 miles about: by which ſudden and violent inundation and the Sword together (the *Siamites* waiting diligently for the opportunity) there periſhed all of this great Army, except 70000. After this blow, the conquering *Siamite*, *Anno* 1600. beſieged and endangered the City of *Pegu*, of which more anon; and dying in the year 1605 left his Eſtate unto his Brother. Whoſe Son ſucceeding, ſettled a *Factory* in *Siam* of the *Engliſh* Merchants, *Anno* 1612, and was in a fair way of obtaining the Soveraignty of *Pegu*, then deſtroyed and waſted; if the violent and unreſiſtable coming of the King of *Barma* had not croſſed him in it: to whom now ſubject with the reſt of the *Indian* Princes, on that ſide of the River.

6 PEGU.

PEGU is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Jangoma*, and a part of *Siam*; on the North, with the Kingdoms of *Brama*; on the Weſt and South, with the Kingdom and Gulf of *Bengala*. So called from *Pegu* the chief City, as that by the name of the River upon which it ſtandeth. Divided commonly into the Kingdoms and Eſtates of 1 *Verma*, 2 *Macin*, 3 *Orachan*, 4 *Martavan*, and 5 *Pegu*, ſpecially ſo called.

1. *VERMA* is the name of a ſmall Kingdom bordering upon *Bengala*; and ſo denominated from *Verma*, the chief Town thereof. A Kingdom which hath no Port or Haven at all; and therefore wholly freed of *Moors* and *Mahometans*, which can be ſaid of no other of theſe *Indians* Kingdoms.

The People black, naked above the Waſte, and covered beneath it only with a Veil of Cotton; in matter of Religion, *Gentiles*; and in war right valiant. This laſt apparent by the long and frequent Wars which they had with the *Peguans*; to whom made tributary in concluſion, but not fully conquered.

2. *MACHIN*, ſo called from *Macin* the chief City thereof, is another of theſe *Peguan* Kingdoms. Of ſmall eſteem, but for the great quantity of the Sweet-wood, by the *Latines* called *Lignum Vitæ*, by the Natives *Calamba*, ſo much in uſe for Funerals and Bathes, (as was ſaid before) held alſo by the *Indians* for a ſoveraign and unparallell'd *Medicine* againſt many dangerous diſeaſes; great quantities whereof are brought hence yearly by the Merchant. One of the firſt Kingdoms which was conquered by the King of *Barma*, (upon whom it bordereth) in the begining of his Fortunes.

3. *ORACHAN*, or *Arrachan*, lieth on the Weſt of *Macin*, and the South of *Verma*; environed round with

with Mountains, and impaſſable Woods. Chief Towns whereof, 1 *Dianga*, taken and deſtroyed by the *Portugals*, in the quarrels betwixt them and the King of *Arrachan*, *Anno* 1608. 2 *Sundiva*, ſituate in an Iſland unto which it giveth name, ſix Leagues off from the Continent of *Bengala*, to which it formerly belonged. Subdued by the *Portugals*, *Anno*. 1602. and from them taken by this King about two years after, and made a member of his Kingdom. The Iſland 30 Leagues in compaſs, very ſtrong, fruitful, and the Town well fortifyed. 3 *Arrachan*, the head City, which gives name to all, diſtant from the Sea 45 miles, but ſeated on a large and capacious River. The King and Kingdom of no note, till the ruins of *Pegu*, to the Crown whereof it once pertained. In the Deſolation of which State the King hereof combining with him of *Tangu*, beſieged the ſecond *Peguan* King in the Caſtle of *Mecao*; and had betwixt them the whole Pillage of that wealthy City, together with the poſſeſſion of the beſt Towns of it. After this victory, he returned to *Arrachan* in triumph, leading with him the *White Elephant* of the King of *Pegu*, ſumptuouſly adorned; the Brother and two Sons of the *Peguan* following in the *Pageant*. A ſolemn and magnificent entry. The better to aſſure himſelf of his new Dominions, this King beſtowed upon the *Portugals* the Fort of *Siriangh*, on the River *Pegu*. For which favour, ill-requited by the *Portugals*, who had taken his Son, and put him to a grievous ranſom, they brake out into open Wars. In the purſuit whereof, after many loſſes, the King recovered from them the Iſle of *Sundiva*; and manning out a Fleet of 1200 ſail (of which 75 were of ſo great burden, as to carry every one twelve Pieces of Ordnance) and in that Fleet 30000 Souldiers, 8000 hand-guns, and 3500 greater Pieces, beſieged the Fortreſs: aſſiſted in that Action alſo by the King of *Tangu*. And though he failed in his deſign, yet like enough he had prevented the King of *Ava*, who took it in the year 1613. as before is ſaid, had he not been outed in the mean time of his own Kingdom by the King of *Barma*: of whoſe great riſe, the conquering of the Realms of *Macin* and *Arrachan* were the firſt foundation.

4. *MARTAVAN*, the richeſt of theſe Kingdoms, lieth South to *Arrachan*, a little turning towards the Weſt. The ſoyl ſo fertile, that it yieldeth three Harveſts in a year; and ſent annually fifteen Ships to *Cochin*, and as many to *Malaca*, laden with Rice. Rich alſo in Mines of Iron, Lead, Steel, Braſs, Silver, Gold, and *Rubies*, and very liberally provided of Springs and Rivers. The Forreſts well-ſtored with Harts, Bores, and *Buffoles*; ſtore of Pines and Palms: the Woods with *Sugar-Canes*, many excellent fruits; the ordinary herbs and ſhrubs either *Medicinal* or *Odoriferous*. The principal City of it called alſo *Martavan*, ſituate on an Haven open at all times of the year, and not choaked with Sands, as uſually other Havens are in the *Indian Winter*: of great trading, much ſplendour, and a temperate air. Faithful unto the laſt to the Crown of *Pegu*, to the Kings whereof their own were ſubject; and in that conſtancy they twice repulſed the King of *Siam*, who then had conquered the moſt part of the Kingdom of *Pegu*. Angry whereat, the *Siamite* cauſed two of his cowardly Captains to be caſt into a Caldron of ſcalding Oyl; and at the third Aſſault became Maſter of it. *Bannalaius* the old King hereof (99 years old) with his heir apparent, and 200000 of his Subjects being compelled to hide themſelves in the Woods and Deſarts.

5. *PEGU*, the moſt predominant Kingdom, lieth like a *Creſcent* or half-Moon on the Gulf of *Bengala*; extending on the coaſt from *Negrais* unto *Tavan*, the next Town of *Siam*, for the ſpace of three hundred miles, and upwards, but little leſs in breadth, if not quite as much. So called from the River *Pegu*, which runs through the midſt of it, and gives this name alſo unto *Pegu* the moſt noted City.

The Soyl hereof exceeding fruitful, by reaſon of the annual overflowings of the River, which do yearly fatten it, fit to bear Wheat, and of Rice yielding an incredible quantity. It affordeth alſo many *Rubies*, great numbers of *Civet-Cats*, plenty of *Lacca*, (a Gum there made by *Ants*, as here Bees make Wax) ſtore of *Elephants*, and abundance of Parrots, which ſpeak plainer, and are much fairer than in any place elſe.

The people of a mean ſtature, ſomewhat corpulent, and naturally beardleſs. If any ſtragling hair thruſt forth, they always carry Pinſers with them, to pull them out. Nimble and ſtrong, but yet not very fit for War; ſpending too much of their ſtrength in the love of women, to which moſt paſſionately addicted. They black their Teeth, becauſe they ſay that dogs teeth be white; and wear no cloaths but on their heads and about their nakedneſs. Said by the *Jews* to be deſcended from ſome of the *Tribes* of *Iſrael*, confined hither by *Solomon*: but by the *Peguans* themſelves, to be begotten of a Dog and a *China woman*, which were ſaved here upon a Shipwrack. By *Religion* for the moſt part *Gentiles*, imagining innumerable Worlds one after another, and a determinate number of Gods for every World: more *Orthodox*, in aſſigning after this life according to the merits of the party deceaſed, one place of *Torments*, and another of *Delights* and Pleaſures, if they had not added a third alſo for *ſatisfaction*.

Chief Cities of this Kingdom, 1 *Coſmi*, ſeated in a Territory full of woods, as thoſe Woods of Tigers, Wild Bores, Apes, and Parrots; the houſes made of *Canes*, which ſerve here for Timber, (ſome of them being as big as Hogſheads) covered over with Thatch. 2 *Jocabel*, a great City on the River *Pegu*. 3 *Dian*, on the ſame River alſo, where they make Barks or Veſſels as big as *Galeaſſes*; which ſerve both for Trade and Habitation. 4 *Coilan*, a City four-ſquare, and each ſquare four miles. 5 *Lanagon*, a pleaſant Town, and full of *Palm*-trees. 6 *Dala*, in which were the Kings Stables for his ordinary Elephants: his four *White Elephants* (for ſo many he had) being always kept about the Court, not ſeen abroad, but in great ſolemnities, when trapped in Furnitures of Gold; and no leſs honoured by the people, than the King himſelf; called therefore King of the *White-Elephant* by the neighbouring Princes. 7 *Silvanpede*, where many victualling Barks are made to ſerve for dwelling on the Sea. 8 *Meccao*, where they uſe to unload ſuch goods, as are to paſs by Land to *Pegu*. Neighboured by the ſtrongeſt Caſtle in all this Kingdom, and therefore choſen by the King for his place of Retreat, when diſtreſſed by the Kings of *Arrachan*, and *Tangu*. To the laſt of which making choice to yield up his Perſon, with his Wife and Children, becauſe he had marryed him to his Siſter, he was by him perfidiouſly and baſely murdered. 9 *Siriangh*, a ſtrong piece on the mouth of the River, given by the King of *Arrachan* to the *Portugals*, and by them committed to the keeping of *Philip de Britto*, in the year one thouſand ſix hundred, or thereabouts. Who having made it good againſt him, and the King of *Tangu* his aſſociate for the ſpace of thirteen years together, was at laſt forced to yield himſelf Priſoner to the King of *Ava*, by whom cruelly tortured on a Spit. 10 *Pegu*, the glory of theſe parts, great, ſtrong, and beautiful: Divided into two Towns, the *Old* and the *New*; the *Old* inhabited by Merchants, the *New* by the King and his Nobility. The Houſes made of Wood, but covered with Tiles: a *Coco-Tree* before every houſe, yielding a comfortable ſhade, and a pleaſant ſhew. The ſtreets as ſtraight as any line, and ſo broad that ten or twelve men may ride abreſt in

the

the narroweſt of them. In figures ſquare, each ſquare having five Gates, beſides many Turrets; all of them beautifully gilded. The whole well walled with Walls of ſtone environed on all ſides with great Ditches; and in the midſt the Royal Palace, walled and ditched about, moſt ſumptuouſly gilded; but eſpecially the Temple or *Idol-chappel*, the walls whereof were hid with Gold, the Roof tiled with Silver.

In this magnificent Palace lived the *Peguan* Kings, in as much pomp and pleaſure as the World could yield: his Empire not extending only over theſe Kingdoms now deſcribed, but over all the Provinces or Kingdoms of the *Bramines* alſo; which he governed by his ſeveral *Vice-Roys*, or rather *TRIBUTARIE* Kings. A happineſs too great to continue long. For in the year 1567. the *Vice-Roy* or *Tributary* King of *Tangu*, by the aid of his Faction, and reputation of his Vertues, entred into rebellion; and ſlaying the Nobles of the Land, uſurped that Kingdom. After this he ſubdued the Cities and Kingdoms of *Calam*, *Melintay*, *Prom*, *Miranda*, and *Ava*, inhabited all of them by the *Brames* or *Bramines*; and therefore taking to himſelf the Title of the King of *Brama*, becauſe his fame and fortunes took their riſe from his victories over them. Following the courſe of his ſucceſſes he firſt aſſayled the Cities of *Odia*, and *Siam*, but repulſed with loſs. To make amends for which misfortune, he beleaguered *Pegu*, and ſubdued it; and by the reputation which he got in that action, returning to the ſiege of *Siam*, had it yielded to him. Dying he gave the Kingdom of *Ava* unto one of his brothers; that of *Prom*, to one of his Grand-ſons; the Kingdom of *Jangoma* to a younger Son, but born after the time of his obtaining the Crown of *Pegu*; and finally that of *Pegu*, with the Soveraignty over all the reſt, to his eldeſt Son, a Prince of a vicious and tyrannical nature: and not more cruel to his Subjects, than they diſobedient to him. Whereupon preparations are made on both ſides, the people, to defend their liberty; the King, to preſerve his Royalty. During theſe civil diſcords, the titular King of *Siam*, whoſe late overthrow was not yet fully digeſted, came violently into the Countrey of *Pegu*; burning Corn, Graſs, and fruits, killing Man, Woman, and Child: and having ſatisfied his Fury, returned to his home. This ſpoil of the Fruits of the Earth, was but a prologue to an unſupportable Famine, which conſumed all the Inhabitants of this flouriſhing Kingdom, except ſuch whom the *Granaries* of the City of *Pegu* preſerved, *Anno* 1598. For here the Fathers devoured their Children, the ſtronger preyed upon the weaker, not only devouring their more fleſhy parts, but their entrails alſo: nay they broke up the skuls of ſuch as they had ſlain, and ſucked out their brains. This calamity incited another Tributary Prince of *Tangu*, to make his beſt advantage out of his neighbours affliction; though made his Brother-in-Law, and advanced to great honours by his Father. For juſtly fearing the diſpleaſure of his angry Prince, towhoſe aid he had refuſed to come, when ſent for by him, he joined himſelf with the King of *Arrachan*, beſieged his Lord and Sovereign in the Fort of *Meccao*. Brought to extremities, the unfortunate Prince, thought beſt to put himſelf into the hands of his Brother of *Tangu*, who aſſaulted and entred *Pegu*: where he found as much Treaſure as 600 Elephants, and as many Horſes, could conveniently carry away. This havock being made, he villanouſly murdered the King, Queen, and their Children, and departed; leaving the gleaning of his ſpoyl to the King of *Arracan*: who, *Anno* 1600. was expelled by the King of *Siam*, who enjoyed it not long. For the King of *Barma* having with an Army of an hundred thouſand fighting men, and forty thouſand Elephants, ſubdued the Kingdoms of *Macin*, and *Arrachan*, followed the currents of his victories; conquered *Siam*, drove the King thereof from *PEGU*, where he hath built a moſt magnificent Palace: and is now the ſole Monarch of the twelve Kingdoms of this *India*.

A more particular relation of this King, and his new-ſetled eſtate, we cannot yet underſtand: what his *Revenues* are, what his Government, what his Forces. Merchants, whoſe inquiſitiveneſs into the State-Matters of other Princes, is dangerous to their trading, cannot give us any full ſatisfaction: *Scholars* and *Statiſts* are not permitted to obſerve; and ſuch of the Natives as could give us the moſt light, are not ſuffered to travel. Only we may conjecture by the great wealth of thoſe ſeveral Princes, and the vaſt Armies by them raiſed in their ſeveral Territories; that his *Annual Revennes*, *Caſualties*, and united Forces muſt be almoſt infinite.

And ſo much for *INDIA*.

OF

OF

The Oriental Islands.

THE *ORIENTAL ISLANDS*, so called from their situation in the *Oriental*, or Eastern Seas, may be divided into the Islands of 1 *Japan*, 2 the *Philippinæ*, and Isles adjoyning, 3 the Islands of *Bantam*, 4 the *Moluccoes*, 5 those called *Sindæ*, or the *Celebes*, 6 *Java*, 7 *Borneo*, 8 *Sumatra*, 9 *Ceilan*, and 10 certain others of less note.

1 *JAPAN.*

JAPAN is an aggregate body of many Islands, separated by small Gulfs, Streights, and turnings of the Sea; but taking name from *Japan*, the chief of all. Some reckon them to be *66.* in all; others ascribe that number to so many Kingdoms, into which these Islands (be they in number more or less) use to be divided. But whatsoever the number be (the certainty whereof I can no where find) there are three only of accompt, to which the several petit Kingdoms are now reduced: that is to say, 1 *Japan* specially so called, which containeth 53 Kingdoms, of which 26 are under the King of *Meaco*, 12 under the King of *Amagunce*, the other 15 under other Princes of inferiour note. 2 *Ximo*, which containeth in it nine Realms, the principal whereof are those of *Bungo* and *Figen*. 3 *Xicoun*, which comprehendeth four only of these petit *Seigneuries*.

JAPAN, the chief of all these Islands, to which the residue may be accompted of but as *Appurtenances*, is situate over-against the Streights of *Anian* (if such Streights there be) towards which it looketh to the North: distant from *New Spain* on the East 150 Leagues, or 450 *English* miles; and 60 Leagues from *Cantan*, a Province of *China*, opposite to it on the West. On the South it hath the vast Ocean, and those infinite sholes of Islands which are called the *Philippinæ*, and the Isles neighbouring upon them. Extending in length from West to East 200 Leagues, but the breadth not proportionable thereunto: in some places not above ten Leagues over, and in the broadest parts but thirty.

The Country Mountainous and barren, but of a very healthy air, if not too much subject unto cold: yet in some places they have Wheat ripe in the Month of *May*; but their Rice, which is their principal sustenance, they gather not before *September*. The surface of the Earth, cloathed with Woods and Forrests, in which some *Cedars* of so tall and large a body, that one of them only is sufficient to make a Pillar for a Church: the bowels of it stored with divers Metals, and amongst others with such inexhaustible Mines of Gold, that *Paulus Venetus* reporteth some of the Palaces of their Kings to be covered, in his time, with sheets of Gold, as ours in *Europe* are with Lead. But I find no such matter in our latter Travellers. Their Fields and Meadows full of Cattel, but hitherto not made acquainted with the making of *Butter*; their Fens much visited by wild Ducks, as their house-yards with Pigeons, Turtles, Quails, and Pullen.

The People for the most part of good understanding, apt to learn, and of able memories; cunning and subtile in their dealings. Of body vigorous and strong, accustomed to bear Arms until 60 years old. Their complexion of an *Olive-Colour*, their beards thin, and the one half of the hair of their heads shaved off. Patient they are of pain, ambitious of glory, uncapable of suffering wrong, but can withal dissemble their resentments of it till opportunity of revenge. They reproach no man for his poverty, so it come not by his own unthriftiness, for which cause they detest all kinds of *gaming*, as the ways of ill-husbandry; and generally abhor *Slandering*, *Theft*, and *Swearing*. Their mourning commonly is in white, as their feasts in black; their teeth they colour black also, to make them beautiful: they mount on the right side of the horse, and sit (as we are used to rise) when they entertain. In *Physick* they eat salt things, sharp, and raw; and in *their salutations they put off their shoes*. The very *Antipodes* of our world in customs, though not in site, and the true Type or Figure of the *old English Puritan*, opposite to the *Papists* in things fit and decent, though made ridiculous many times by that opposition. In other things they do much resemble those of *China*, if not the more *ceremonious* of the two: washing their Infant-children in the neatest River, as soon as born; and putting off their shooes when they go to meat.

The People have but one *Language*, but that so intermingled with the words of other Nations, that it seems rather to be many Languages than one. They have long used the Art of *Printing*, which probably enough, they might have from *China*: the *Characters* whereof are a kind of *Brachygraphy*, and signifie not only Letters, but some whole words also. In matters of Religion, *Gentiles*, adoring anciently the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven; and giving divine honour to wild beasts, and the Stags of the Forrests: but specially worshipping some of their deceased Priests and Princes, by the names of *Fotoques* and *Cames*; to the first of which they use to pray for goods of the other World, and to the last for *Temporal* blessings. Their Priests they call by the name of *Bonzes*, settled in goodly *Convents* and endowed with very large Revenues: who though divided into eleven different (if not contrary) Sects, do well enough agree in denying the Providence of God, and the Immortality of the soul. Of late times by the care and diligence of the *Jesuites*, *Christianity* hath begun to take footing here; whether with such a large increase as their Letters called *Epistolæ Japanicæ* have been pleased to tell us, I am somewhat doubtful. They tell us there of some Kings of these Islands, whom they have converted and baptized, that within 50 miles of *Meaco* they had 50 Churches, 200 at the least in all; and that in the year 1587. the number of their Converts were two hundred thousand. Of this, if

the one half be true, we have great cauſe to praiſe God for it, and to give them the commendation of their pains and induſtry: not letting paſs the memory of the firſt *Adventurer*, who was Father *Xavier*, one of the firſt foundation of this *Society*, (imployed in this buſineſs by *Ignatius*, the firſt founder of it) who landed here about the year 1556.

Rivers of note I find not any, though the Iſland be generally well-watered, more memorable for two Mountains in it, than for all the Rivers. One of which called *Figenoiama*, is ſaid to tranſcend the clouds in height; the other (but without a name) uſeth to caſt forth dreadful flames, like *Sicilian Ætna*: on the top whereof the *Devil*, environed with a white and ſhining cloud, doth ſometimes ſhew himſelf unto ſuch of his *Votaries*, as live about this hill an abſtemious life, like the ancient *Hermits*.

Chief Cities of the whole Iſlands, 1 *Meaco*, ſeated in *Japan*, and the chief of that Iſland, formerly 21 miles in compaſs, but now by reaſon of their wars, ſcarce a third part of it: The ordinary reſidence of the *Triumviri*, or three principal Magiſtrates, which ſway the affairs of all theſe Iſlands: of whom the firſt, entituled *Zazo*, hath the chief care in *ſacred* matters; the ſecond, named *Voo*, doth preſide in *Civil*; and the third, called *Cabacama*, manageth the concernments of *Peace* and *War*. At this time it is uſed for the common *Empory* of the trade of *China*; that people not permitting Merchants to come amongſt them, but bringing to this place their Merchandize, as the common *Staple*; where they are ſure to meet Chapmen to buy it of them. 2 *Oſſacay*, a great and renowned City, conceived to be the richeſt in all the Eaſt; of ſo great trade, that every ordinary Merchant is ſaid to be worth 30000 Crowns. 3 *Fenoiama*, or *Figenoiama*, at the foot of the hill ſo called, and about nine miles from *Meaco*. An Univerſity of *Bonzes*, for whoſe convenience and ſtudy, one of the Kings of *Japan* is ſaid to have founded in this Town, and about that Mountain 3800 *Convents*, and to endow it with the third part of the *Revenues* of the Kingdom of *Vorn*. Theſe Colledges or Convents now reduced to 800 only: but ſtill the Univerſity of ſuch fame and credit, that they give not the command or government of it unto any but the King's Son, or his neareſt Kinſman. 4 *Banoum*, another of their Univerſities, where they give degrees; affirmed to be as big as *Paris*. 5 *Bongo*, the chief of all that Province, in which the *Jeſuites* have a Colledge; the *Japonites* learn the *Portugal* Language; and the *Europæan* that of *Japan*. 6 *Coia*, the Sepulture of their Princes, or ſome part of them: it being anciently ordained, that if their whole bodies be not here interred, they muſt at leaſt ſend one of their Teeth. 7 *Fiongo*, about 18 Leagues from *Meaco*, the ſubject of many great misfortunes. Deſtroyed in part by *Nabunanga*, one of the Kings of this Iſland, who lived *Anno* 1550. that which he left, terribly ſcattered by an *Earthquake*, *Anno* 1596. moſt of the ruines of it ſince conſumed by fire. 8 *Amangaſaqui*, five Leagues from the Sea. 9 *Surungo*, as big as *London* with the Suburbs. 10 *Edoo*, much fairer than that, and the chief ſeat of one of their Kings. 11 *Firando*, a Seat-Royal alſo of ſome other King, where, in the year 1613. there was a *Factory* eſtabliſhed for the *Engliſh* Merchants. 12 *Ochinoſamanus*, one of their moſt noted Havens. 13 *Toſa*, or *Touſa*, giving name to one of the Iſlands.

Theſe Iſlands utterly unknown to the Ancients, were firſt diſcovered by *Antonio Mota*, a *Portugal*, in the year 1542. I know *Mercator* taketh it for the *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*; and I cannot chooſe but wonder at it: The ſituation of it ſo far diſtant from that of the *Cherſoneſe*, that either *Mercator* muſt be groſly out in his conjecture; or *Ptolomy* as much miſtaken in his informations; which no man hitherto can juſtly accuſe him of. But paſſing by the improbability of *Mercator's* fanſie, we are to know, that in former times theſe Iſlands were ſubject to one Prince, whom they obeyed and reverenced with great affection: which government continued, as themſelves report, 1600 years in great State and Majeſty. But in the end, the *Dairi*, (ſo they call their King) addicting himſelf wholly unto pleaſures, and laying the burden of Government upon other mens ſhoulders; his Deputies, or other inferiour Officers, uſurped *Regal* power, plumed themſelves with the Eagles Feathers, uſed in their ſtyle the name of *Jucatus*, or Kings, and in a word, left nothing but the name of *Dairi* to their Lord and Soveraign. His Iſſue to this day do enjoy that Title, but little elſe: the Princes bordering on *Meaco*, once his Royal Seat, hardly allowing him ſufficient means to find himſelf Victuals and Apparel; but otherwiſe befooling him with as glorious Titles, as if he were poſſeſſed ſtill of his ancient power. Only they let him excecute the place of an *Herald*, in giving Arms, and ſetling Dignities and Honours; which brings him in the greateſt profit he hath to truſt to. Of all theſe Kings, he which can make himſelf Lord of *Coquinai* (which are the five Realms about *Meaco*) is called Prince of *Tenza*, and eſteemed Soverain of the reſt. Which height of dignity, *Nabunanga*, before mentioned, in his time attained to; after him *Faxiba*, and ſince him *Taicoſuma*: that Soveraignty being now in a likely way to become *hereditary*. For *Faxiba* having brought under his command moſt of theſe ſmall Kingdoms, tranſported the vanquiſhed Kings, and the chief of their Nobles out of one Country into another: to the end that being removed out of their own Realms, and amongſt ſtrange Subjects, they ſhould remain without means to revolt againſt him: a merciful and prudent courſe. Having reduced into his power at leaſt 50 of theſe petit Kingdoms, he divided the greateſt part of the conquered Territories amongſt his own faithful friends and followers, binding them to ſupply him with certain numbers of men upon all occaſions. By which, and other politick courſes, he ſo ſettled himſelf in thoſe Eſtates, that *Taicoſuma* his Son ſucceeded without oppoſition, who, had he lived, would have aboliſhed the vain title of the *Dairi*, or took it to himſelf, as he had the power; ſolicited thereto by the King of *China*. But dying in or about the year 1607. *Fereiciſuma* his Son ſucceeded, and may be ſtill alive for ought I can learn.

What the *Revenues* of this King are, it is hard to ſay. I gueſs them to be very great, in regard he maketh two millions of Crowns yearly, of the very Rice which he reſerveth to himſelf from his own Demeſne. The ſtore of Gold and precious Stones which theſe Iſlands yield, being wholly his, muſt needs add much unto his Coffers. And for his power, it is ſaid that *Faxiba* was able to raiſe ſo good an Army out of the Eſtate demiſed by him to his faithful followers, that he reſolved once on the Conqueſt of *China*: and to that end cauſed Timber to be felled for 2000 Veſſels for the tranſporting of his Army. And had he lived a little longer, 'tis probable enough he might have ſhaken that great Kingdom, the *Japonois* being ſo much the better Souldiers, that a ſmall party of them would defeat a good Army of *Chineſe*. The fear whereof made the King of *China*, after his deceaſe, correſpond ſo fairly with his Succeſſour.

2. The PHILIPPINÆ, and Iſles adjoyning.

SOuth of *Japan*, lieth a great fry of Iſlands, which are now called *PHILIPPINÆ*, in honour of *Philip* the Second, King of *Spain*; in whoſe time diſcovered by *Legaſpi*, a *Spaniſh* Captain, *Anno* 1564. Strangely miſtaken by

by *Mercator* for the *Barussæ* of *Ptolomy*, those being placed by him in the bottom of the Gulf of *Bengala*, five degrees South of the *Æquator*; these situate on the East of *China*, in 13. or 14. degrees of Northern Latitude: those being only five in number, these reckoned at above ten thousand.

The Air in all of them generally very milde and temperate, especially in the mid-land parts; that on the shores somewhat inclining unto heat. The soil abundantly fruitful of all Commodities both for necessity and delight; that is to say, Rice, Pulse, Wax, Honey, Sugar-Canes, many pleasant Fruits, the fairest Figs of all the world, plenty of Fish, variety of Birds and Beasts, as well wild as tame, great store of Cotton-Wooll, some Mines of Gold, and of other Metals great abundance.

Of all these Islands there are only forty in possession of the King of *Spain*, belonging properly to *Asia*, but by him placed under the Government of *New Spain* in *America*; because discovered by *Legaspi* at the instigation or procurement of *Don Lewis de Velasco*, who was then Vice-Roy of that Province. In these forty Islands there are thought to be at the least a million of people, subject to that Crown; many of which have been converted by the *Friers* and *Jesuites* unto *Christianity*. Of these the principal in account are, I. *LUSSON*, affirmed to contain in compass 1000 miles; beautified by the *Spaniards* with a fair City, seated on a commodious haven, which they call *Manilla*: in which resides the Deputy or Lieutenant Governour for all these Islands, and the Bishop of the *Philippines* for ordering all affairs of those Churches. II. *MINDANAO*, 380 Leagues in compass; in which are many good Towns, as 1 *Cailon*, 2 *Pavados*, 3 *Subut*, 4 *Dapiro*, and some others. III. *TANDAIR*, more fruitful than any of the rest, and of good extent, 160 Leagues in circuit, more specially called *Philippina*; because first discovered and so named. IV. *PALLOHAN*, as much mistaken by *Mercator* for the *Bazacata* of *Ptolomy*.

These, with the rest, subject in former times to the Kings of *China*, till they did voluntarily abandon them; and confine their Empire within the Continent. On this relinquishment the people fell into Civil Wars, every man getting what he could for himself, and the stronger preying on the weaker: which factions and divisions gave great help to the *Spaniard*, in the conquest of those few which are under their power. Islands of more importance to the *Spaniards*, than is commonly thought; and therefore furnished by them at their first Plantations, with Bulls, Kine, Horses, and Mares, which before they wanted, and do now reasonably abound with. For besides the abundance of victuals, and some plenty of Gold, which they find therein, the situation is very fit to subdue the rest of the neighbouring Islands, to settle the commerce betwixt *China* and *Mexico*, to bring on a continual Trade betwixt the Islands of this Sea, and of those of *America*; and finally, to prevent the *Moors* or *Arabians* from planting their *Mahometanism* any further Eastwards.

Nor far from these, on the South of *Japan* bending towards the West, is another great heap of Rocks and Islands. Some of them rich in Gold, and furnished with very choice fruits, and other necessaries; and peopled with a stout and warlike breed of men, well skilled in *Archery*. The chief whereof have the names of 1 *Lequin Major*, 2 *Lequin Minor*, 3 *Hermosa*, 4 *Reix Magos*, &c. of which little memorable, but that *Hermosa*, as the *Spaniards*, or *Formosa* as the *Latines* call it, hath lately got the name of *New-Holland*; because not long since taken, planted, and strongly fortified by some Adventurers of that Country. And not far off are those called 5 *Ciumbabon*, in which is said to a *Plant-animal* or sensible tree. 6 *Mattan*, unfortunately remarkable for the death of *Magellanus*, slain there in a battel with the Natives, in favour of the King of 7 *Sebat*, an adjoyning Island; by the King whereof he had been kindly entertained; and who by his perswasions he had gained to the Christian Faith, and baptized him by the name of *Charles*, in honour of *Charles* Emperour and King of *Spain*, under whom he served in this present voyage. But long this miscreant King (*Hamabar* he was called before his Baptism) continued not in this good opinion; treacherously killing *John de Serran* chief *Pilot* of *Magellanus*'s small Navy, with about 70 of his men, and probably relapsing to his former *Gentilism*.

3. The Isles of *BANDAN*.

THE Isles of *BANDAN* are in number seven, that is to say 1 *Mira*, 2 *Rosalargium*, 3 *Aii*, 4 *Rom*, 5 *Nerra*, 6 *Gannape*, the last of all, continually burning; and for that cause deserted of its inhabitants: and 7 *Bandan*, bigger than any of the rest, and therefore giving name to all. Situate South of the *Philippines* in the seventh degree of Southern Latitude. More fruitful of *Nutmegs*, than any other of all these parts; for which cause never without the concourse of forein Merchants from *Java*, *Malaca*, and *China*: and of late times from these Northern Countries of *Europe* also. Where by the way, the *Nutmeg-tree* is like a *Peach*, or *Peach-tree*, the innermost part whereof is the *Nutmeg* it self, covered over with a thin film or coat, which we call by the *Arabian* name of *Maciz*, or *Mace*; and over that the fruit it self, as it is in Peaches, *Malacotoons*, and such fruits as those.

The People barbarous and rude, slothful, of weak bodies, and dull of wit; living confusedly together without rule or order. Some of them still continue in their ancient *Paganism*; but the greatest part are thought to be *Mahometans*: in which *Religion* very zealous, and so devout, that they will not go unto their work or worldly businesses, till they have visited the *Mosquits*, and done their devotions. A shame or Pattern shall I say in this, unto many *Christians!* All of them bloody and revengeful; but yet so far from wronging the body of a Dead Enemy, that they use to bury it with sweet Odours.

Some Towns they have, of which the principal, 1 *Nera*, and 2 *Lontore*, joyned in a League against the rest; the quarrel rising from the cutting down of certain trees, proceeding to the butchery of one another, and ending in the loss of their common liberty. Subject in shew to the King of *Botone*, one of the *Moluccoes*, but too much at their own disposing. They had not else entered into quarrels with one another. Which opportunity being taken by the watchful *Hollanders*, they did not only settle four *Factories* there; but for the security of their Trade, and to awe the *Natives*, they have built three Forts. They had also turned one of their *Mosquits* to a *Fortress*; whereat the people were so incensed that they promised liberty to their *Slaves*, to get them out of it, who falling desperately on, fired it over their heads, and killed every man of them. The *English* Merchants have some trading also in these Islands, more acceptable than the other; because not so insolent, and grounding their possession on a better title: the people of *Lantore*, voluntarily submitting themselves to the protection of King *James*, the first Monarch of the *British* Islands, and to his use giving possession of their Country to Captain *Robert Hayes*, *Novem.* 24. 1620. The like done at the same time by the Inhabitants of *Wayre*, and *Rosingen*, two other Islands; which, if they be not the same with those of *Mira*, and *Rosalargium*, spoken of before, are probably some lesser Islands, neighbouring to *Poleron* and *Poolaway*, of which more hereafter.

There is not far off another Island, not in this accompt, called *Timor*, situate in the tenth degree of *Southern* Latitude; the chief of many little Islands which lie round about it: but not else observable, except it be for that abundance of *Sanders* both white and yellow, which growing there, is greedily exchanged by the Inhabitants for Iron, Hatchets, Swords, Knives, and the like commodities.

4. The *MOLUCCOES.*

THE *MOLUCCOES* are in number many; the King of *Terenate* which is one of them, being said to have dominion over 70 Islands: but the *determinate* number of them I do no where find. Situate on both sides of the *Æquator*, and consequently of an hot and intemperate air: the soyl so dry and spongious, that it sucketh up the greatest shower of Rain that doth fall amongst them, before it can pass into the Sea. Not very well furnished with necessaries for the life of man; but that defect supplied with the abundance of Spices which are growing here, *Cinnamon*, *Ginger*, *Nutmegs*, *Mastick*, *Aloes*, *Pepper*, and the like commodities; for which, the Merchants bring them all things that the Country wants. But 'tis the *Clove*, which is the great Riches of these Islands, and peculiar in a manner to them. A Spice, which groweth on Trees, like Bay-trees yielding blossoms, first white, then green, (at which time they yield the pleasantest smell in the world) and last of all red and hard, which are the *Cloves*. Of nature so extreme hot that if a Pail of water should only stand in the room in which they are cleansed and sorted, the *Cloves* in two daies would dry it up. Of which nature the unspun Silks of *China* are affirmed to be.

The People for the most part *Idolaters*, intermixt with some *Mahometans* dwelling on the shores; and of late times with *Christians* in their several *Factories*. Of several *Originals*, and different Languages, but all in general fraudulent, perfidious, treacherous, inhumane, and of noted wickedness. Few of them cloathed, nor much caring to hide their shame. Not civilized by the cohabitation of more modest and civil Nations. Pity such ill conditions should be lodged in such handsome bodies: the people being said to be better proportioned than the other *Indians*; and for strength and valour not fellowed by any of them.

Of all the Islands which pass under this name, there are not above five or six of any reckoning: that is to say, 1 *Terenate*, 2 *Tidor*, 3 *Macir*, 4 *Rachian*, 5 *Machian*, and 6 *Botone*: None of them above six Leagues in compass, many not so much; the whole cluster of them thronged together in a girdle of no more than 25 Leagues in the Circumference: yet of such consequence and importance, that the two famous voyages of *Americus Vesputius*, and *Ferdinand Magellanus*, the first employed by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, the other by *Charles* the Emperour, and King of *Spain*, were undertaken only to find out the next way unto them.

Of the rest, *Machian* and *Tidore* have their proper Kings; so hath *Botone* also, if that be one of them: the King whereof had anciently some title and authority over those of *Bandon*. *Macir*, and *Machian*, are subject to the King of *Terenate*, who is a *Mahometan* in Religion; and said to be the Lord of 70 Islands. This the most puissant Member of this scattered body; and for that cause most aimed at by all Competitors, the *Spaniards* having here one Fortress, and the *Hollanders* three. Both Nations hated by the Natives, whom they consume and waste in the wars betwixt them; but of the two the *Spaniard* looked on by the people as the more a *Gentleman*; the other stomached and despised for their *sordid* dealings. Nothing else memorable in the story of *Chorography* of them, but that they were discovered by the conduct of *Magellanus*, in the Reign of *Charles* the Fifth, who employed him in it, *Anno* 1519; And that there is in *Terenate* a Prodigious Mountain, in height above the Clouds of the Air, and in nature agreeing with the Element of Fire, which it seems to mount to: huge flames whereof, with dreadful thunders, and a dark smoak, it sends forth continually. Reckoned by some amongst these Islands, but how soever neighbouring near them, are those of *Polerone*, and *Poolaway*; the first more plentiful of Cloves, the second more proper for the Nutmeg, but both acknowledging the Soveraignty of the Kings of *England*; for *Polerone*, by the general and voluntary Act of all the chief men of the Country, was surrendred into the power of King *James*, the possession of it being given for his Majesties use to Captain *Courtop*, *Decemb.* 23. *Anno* 1616. no other Nation at that time having any interest in it, or Pretensions to it: which notwithstanding it was not long after seized on by the insolent and ungrateful *Hollanders*, who being to restore it upon composition, cut down all the *Clove-trees*, so to deprive the *English* of the benefit of them. *Poolaway* made the like surrender at the same time also, declared by setting up the *English* Colours on the top of their Castle, giving to *Courtop* a green *turf* (whereby as by Livery and Seisin) to take possession of the Country, promising the annual tribute of a branch of *Nutmegs*; and that they should sell neither *Mace* nor *Nutmegs* to any, but to those of the *English* Nation. The like done at or near the same time, by *Wayre* and *Rosingen*, two other Islands of these Seas; which if they be not those two of *Bandon*, pointed at before, must needs be brought within the number of this scattered Company.

5. The *SINDÆ* or *SELEBES.*

NEar the *Moluccoes*, and almost intermingled with them, are a set of Islands which *Ptolomy* calleth *SINDÆ*, and the Moderns, *SELEBES*; many in *tale*, but not above four of any *weight*; that is to say, 1 *SELEBES*, 2 *Gilolo*, 3 *Amboina*, 4 *Macassar*; of which the two first are situate under the *Æquator*, and the last somwhat on the South of it: all of them in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by *Anthropophagi*, and a long time after; insomuch as the Kings of the *Moluccoes* did use to send their condemned persons into these Islands, there to be devoured. Which said in general, we will take a more particular view of them, as they lie before us.

1. *SELEBES*, which gives name to the rest, and hath under it many lesser Islands, is large and rich. The soyl thereof exceeding fertile, the people tall and comely, and of colour, not so much black as ruddy. Much given to *Piracy*, and all *Idolaters* till of late. Governed by many Kings or petit Princes, the cause of much contention, and many quarrels: three of which are said to have been converted to Christianity; and for that cause much hated by their heathenish Subjects, who thereupon rebelled against them. It is situate West of the *Moluccoes*, and hath therein a Town called *Sion*, honoured with the abode of one of their Christian Kings: but possibly not so called until their conversion; the proper name thereof being *Cian*. 2 *Nibon*, in the South, and 3 *Terolli* in the North parts of it.

2. *GILOLO*, called also *Batachina*, is one of those Islands, which our late Navigators include under the name of *Del Moro*. Of large extent, conceived to be half as big as *Italy*. By that accompt (the truth whereof I do very much doubt) greater than *Zeilan* is in compass, though of less reputation: That being governed by its own Princes; This subject for the most part to the King of *Terenate*.

Terenate. Situate East of the *Moluccoes*, exceeding plentiful of Rice, well stored with wild Hens; and on the shores provided of a kind of *Shell-fish*, which in taste much resembleth Mutton. A tree they have which they call by the name of *Sagu*, of the pith whereof they make their bread; and of the sap or juyce of it they compose a pleasing drink, which serveth them instead of Wine. The air intemperatly hot; the people well proportioned but rude and savage; some of them *Gentiles*, some *Mahometans*, of which last Religion is their King. The chief Town of it is *Batchame*, or *Batachina*, (whence the new name unto the Island) in which the *Hollanders* have a Fort to defend their Factory.

3. *AMBOINA*, South of the *Æquator*, and the third of the *Sindæ*, hath many Islands of less note, which depend upon it, and do communicate in the name. In compass about five hundred miles, said by *Maginus* to be extremely rough and barren; which must be understood with reference to some kinds of Grain. For otherwise it is very fertile, abundantly productive of Rice, Citrons, Limons, Oranges, *Coco-nuts*, *Sugar-Canes*, and other fruits, and very plentiful of *Cloves*. Which last, as it makes some to reckon it amongst the *Moluccoes*; so may it be a reason why the Island is defective in such fruits as require much moisture: the *Clove* being of so hot a temper, as before was noted, that it draweth to it all the moisture of the Earth, which is near unto it.

The people much given to *Piracy*, wherewith they do infest all the neighbouring Islands, Defamed for *Caunibals*, or Man-eaters: it being here a constant custome, that when their Parents were grown old, or sick of any incurable disease, they give them to one another to be eaten by them. They have one Town of more note than other, which they call *Amboina*, by the name of the Island. First, taken by the *Portugals*, and by them secured with a strong Fortress: during whose power here, the *Jesuites*, who had in it their several Residences, converted many to *Christianity*. But in the year 1605. the Island and the Fort both were conquered by *Stephen* of *Hagan*, for the States of the United Provinces: who having cleared the Country of the *Portugal* Forces, possessed themselves of it. Received by the Natives at their first coming with Joy and Triumph: but they go little by the change, as they found soon after: their new Masters being more burdensome, and insufferable, than the old had been. For claiming in the right of Conquest, they think they may oppress the Natives by the Law of Arms; and ingross all trade unto themselves as the true *Proprietaries*. Infamous even amongst the rude and savage *Indians* for their barbarous inhumanity executed upon some of the *English* (the greatest Patrons under God which they have in the world) whom in the year 1618 they most cruelly tortured, and most wickedly murdered; under colour of some plot to betray their Fortress: but in plain truth for no other reason but because they were more beloved by the Inhabitants, and began to gain upon their trade.

4. West of *Amboina*, and South-West of *Selebes*, lieth the fourth of these Islands, called *MACASSAR*, said to contain from East to West 600 miles; plentiful of Rice, Flesh, Fish, Salt, and Cotton-Wooll; not destitute of Gold and Pearls, and well stored with *Saudar* (*Sandalum* it is called in *Latine*) a medicinal wood, growing like a Nut-tree; of several colours, white, red, yellow, but the red, the best: the fruit in making like a Cherry, but of no esteem. In some parts overgrown with woods, in which certain *fiery Flies* make nightly such shining light, as if every twig or bough were a burning Candle. In the middle covered with high Mountains, out of which flow many navigable Rivers.

The people for the most part *Gentiles*, intermixt on the Sea-coasts with some *Mahometans*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Senderem*, the King's Seat, situate near a large *Lake*, very commodiously for traffick. 2 *Macassar*, an *English Factory*, so called according to the name of the Island.

Near to these Islands, and somewhat North to *Batachina* are some other Isles, plentiful of all things necessary for the life of man; but inhabited by a thievish and *Piratical* people: the principal of which 1 *Terrao*, 2 *Sanguin*, 3 *Solor*, 4 *Moratay*, in which last they eat *Battata* Roots instead of bread; besides some others of less note. Most of the people *Gentiles*, except those of *Sanguin*, the King whereof being gained to the Christian Faith, by some of the *Jesuites*, hath brought many of his subjects to the same Religion.

6. BORNEO.

WEst of these *Selebes*, lieth *BORNEO*, of more note and greatness, than any hitherto described, in these *Indian* Seas. In compass, after their accompt who speak most sparingly, 2200 miles; but as some say, no less than three months sail about. Situate under the *Æquator*, which parteth the Dominions of the King of *Borneo*, and the King of *Laus*: opposite on the North to *Camboia*; on the South, to *Java*; on the East, to *Selebes*; on the West, unto the Isle of *Sumatra*.

The Country said to be provided naturally of all things necessary; yet said withal to be unfurnished of Asses, Oxen, Herds of Cattel, except only Horses, and these but of small stature neither: the greatest riches of it being *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and some Mines of *Adamants*, erroneously conceived by *Mercator* to be the *Insulæ bonæ Fortunæ*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*; that being seated opposite to the out-lets of *Ganges*, in the *Latitude* of a hundered forty five Degrees, and fifteen Minutes; this Eastward some degrees of the *Golden Chersonese*, and consequently twenty Degrees distant at the least from that Island in *Ptolomy*.

The people generally more white than the rest of the *Indians*, of good wits, and approved integrity, though all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*. Divided betwixt two Kings, and two *Religions*; the King of *Borneo* and his Subjects being all *Mahometans*; those of *Laus* still remaining in their ancient *Gentilism*. These think the *Sun* and *Moon* to be man and wife, and the *Stars* their children; ascribing to each of them divine honours, to the *Sun* especially; whom they salute at his first rising with great Reverence, saying certain Verses. Their publick businesses are treated of commonly in the night, at which time the *Counsellors* of *State* meet, and ascend some tree, viewing the Heavens till the *Moon* rise, and then go to the *Senate-house*. The same Apparel generally of both *Religions*; but thin, by reason of the great heat of the Air: a shirt of Silk, or of *Calicute*, or some such slight stuff, worn more for modesty than for warmth.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Borneo*, situate in the North-West part of the Island, near a goodly bay, but in the middle of the Fens like the City of *Venice*, and seated as that is, on *Piles*; the building sumptuous, of hewed stones, covered with the leaves of the *Coco-tree*. The Town so large as to contain 25000 Families. 2 *Taiopura*, 3 *Tamavratas*. 4 *Malano*, all of them noted for fair Cities, or commodious Havens. 5 *Sagaduna*, a Factory of *English*. 6 *Lavi* on a large Bay in the South-East part of the Island, the ordinary Seat of the King of *Laus*. 7 *Para*, on another capacious Bay, not far from *Lavi*, and directly opposite to *Borneo*: that being seated on the North-West, and this on the South-East of the Island. Betwixt these two Kings is the whole divided; but so, that he of *Borneo* hath the greatest part of it, and therefore keeps the

the greater State: not to be ſpoken with, but by the mouth of ſome of his own *Interpreters*; and in his Palace ſerved by no other Attendants, than *Maids* or *Women*.

7. JAVA.

OPpoſite to *Borneo* towards the South lie the Iſles of *JAVA*, two in number; both ſituate South of the *Æquator*, both of great Circumference, and commonly diſtinguiſhed into *Major* and *Minor*, or the greater and the leſſer *Java*.

1. *JAVA MAJOR*, the more Northward of the two, and by much the bigger, is ſaid to be in compaſs 3000 miles; and that by them who elſewhere reckon *Borneo* for the biggeſt of theſe Seas. But the truth is, that the South-parts of this Iſland not being perfectly diſcovered, make the ameaſurement thereof to be very uncertain. Conceived moſt probably to be the *Jabadiu* of *Ptolomy*, the moſt Northern part whereof is placed by him in the eight degree of *Southern* Latitude: ſaid by him to afford much Gold and Silver, to be exceeding fruitful of all other neceſſaries; and finally, that the name did ſignifie κριθῆς νῆσος, or the Iſland of Barly. All which agreeth punctually with the preſent Iſland, the word *Jabad*, ſignifying a kind of grain much like our *Barly*; and *Diu* in the *Perſian* and *Indian* Tongues ſignifying an Iſland. And ſo in *Jabadiu*, we have found the Iſland of *Java*, the mutation of B. into V. being ordinary.

Then for the riches and fertility of it, it is ſaid to yield great plenty of Fruits, and Corn, but of *Rice* eſpecially; fleſh of all ſorts, ſalted and ſent from hence into other Countries; great ſtore of Fowl, both wild and tame, plenty of Gold, ſome precious Stones, and the beſt kind of Braſs; Silks in abundance, and great quantities of Pepper, Ginger, Cinnamon, and ſome other Spices. In a word, ſo befriended by the bounty of Nature, that *Scaliger* calleth it *Epitome Mundi*, or the whole World contracted in a leſſer Volume. But withal it is much expoſed unto ſtorms and tempeſts, from which ſeldom free.

The people of a middle Stature, corpulent, and of broad Faces, moſt of them naked or covered only with a ſlight ſilken ſtuff, and that no lower than the knee; accompted the moſt *Civil* people of all the *Indians*, as fetching their deſcent from *China*: but withal treacherous, very proud, much given to lying, and very careleſs of their words, to which ſo uſed, that they count it not amongſt their *Faults*. And therefore when a King of theirs had broke promiſe with the *Hollanders*, and was challenged for it, he anſwered, that *his tongue was not made of bone*. Cruel they are alſo ſaid to be, and implacable, if once offended: accuſtomed of old to eat the bodies of their friends: accounting no burial ſo honourable, nor obſequy ſo applauſive. This alſo a cuſtome amongſt many of the reſt of the *Indians*, and ſo hath it been ever ſince the beginning of the *Perſian* Monarchy. *Herodotus* reporteth how *Darius Hyſtaſpes* underſtanding of this cuſtome; and withal knowing how the *Græcians* uſe to burn their dead, ſent to the *Greeks*, that it was his pleaſure they ſhould eat the bodies of their dead: But they uſed all means of perſwaſion and entreaty, not to be forced to ſo brutiſh and barbarous a cuſtom. Then commanded he the *Indians* to conform themſelves to the faſhion of the *Græcians*; but they all more abhorred to burn the dead, than the *Greeks* did to eat them. So impoſſible it is for a cuſtom either to be ſuddenly left off, or to ſeem undecent and inconvenient if once thorowly ſettled.

In matter of Religion they are all *Mahometans*, or *Gentiles*, according to the fancy of their ſeveral Kings, whereof in this Iſland there are very many; one for every great Tribe, or more powerful Family. Zealous in their Religion which ſo ever it be, as appears by the ſad ſtory of the Daughter of the King of *Ballambua*, murdered by her Husband the King of *Paſſarva*, the ſecond night after her Wedding, with all her Attendants; becauſe they would not be *Mahometans*, which was his Religion. Yet in ſome common *Principles* they agree well enough, puniſhing *Adultery* with death; in which caſe the woman chooſeth her neareſt Kinſman for her *Executioner*: but otherwiſe ſpending the Day and Night in much Sloth and Dalliance. Of the two, *Gentiliſm* is the more diffuſed, becauſe moſt ancient; the Sect of *Mahomet* not being introduced till the year 1560. though of a very ſwift growth, and of a great increaſe for ſo ſhort a time.

Their chief Towns, 1 *Panarucan*, near a burning hill, which in the year 1586. brake forth exceedingly oppreſſed infinite numbers of men, and caſt great ſtones into the City for three daies together. 2 *Jortam*, a Town of 1000 Houſholds, the Inhabitants whereof are *Gentiles*, and have their Temples in the Woods: the *Chief-Prieſt* of whoſe ſuperſtition hath his dwelling here, of great authority and power over all the Iſland. 3 *Ballambua*, 4 *Paſſarva*, 5 *Taban*, 6 *Matara*, 7 *Daunia*, 8 *Taggal*, 9 *Surrabia*, 10 *Gatabaon*; the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings: ſome of them alſo furniſhed of convenient Havens. 11 *BANTAM*, the Seat alſo of a King, but of moſt trade in all the Iſland, ſeldom without the company of *Engliſh*, *Portugals*, and *Hollanders*; the principal *Factory* of the *Engliſh* in all the *Indies*, though they have many beſides this. The Town unwholſomely ſeated in a mooriſh ground, and much ſubject to fire. 12 *Sunda*, ſituate in a place abounding in Pepper. 13 *Agracan*, a convenient Port; Here was alſo in the time of *Ptolomy* a Town called 14 *Argyropolis*, or the *Silver City*, long ago deſtroyed. And now here is, 15 *Sura*, a new Town in the Territories of the King of *Bantam*, built by ſome of the Subjects of the King of *Paſſarva*; who being oppreſſed by their own King, came into this part of the Country, where they got leave to build this City. The people whereof live quietly according to their own Laws, follow their Husbandry abroad, but never marry; and yet do not want a conſtant Succeſſion, adopting ſome of the other *Javans* into their *Society*, as they find their number to diminiſh.

Of the ſtory of this Iſland I can ſay but little. Divided into many petit and inconſiderate Kingdoms; and thoſe divided too by Mountains, croſſing the Iſland in the middle from Weſt to Eaſt, which cut off all commerce and correſpondence betwixt one another. Some of theſe Kings *Mahometans*, ſome *Gentiles*, as before was ſaid; all ſubject or homagers at leaſt to one of the Kings of the *Gentiles*, who hath his dwelling in the midſt of the Iſland. Next him, the King of *Tuban* was conceived to be richeſt, and the King of *Ballambua* of the greateſt Territory; whoſe Family after long war and bloud-ſhed, begun in the murder of his Daughter, is ſaid to be wholly rooted out by the King of *Paſſarva*. Theſe Kings much reverenced by their ſubjects, and ſo well obeyed, that whatſoever they command, is done, be it never ſo dangerous.

2. *JAVA MINOR*, ſituate on the South of the other, is ſaid to be 2000 miles in compaſs, and to be very near the firm Lands of *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Not very well known to any of our late *Adventurers*; but generally affirmed (not ſo much on certain knowledge as uncertain conjecture) to be of the ſame nature and condition with the *greater Java*. The Inhabitants hereof in the time of *Paulus Venetus*, who had travelled in it, reported to be *Cannibals*, *Idolaters*, devourers of their Parents and deareſt friends; and to worſhip all day whatſoever they ſaw firſt in the morning. Divided then into eight Kingdoms, diſtinguiſhed

by

by the names of their principal Towns. Six whereof he had ſeen, which are theſe that follow. 1 *Feleeh*, where the Townſmen were *Moors*, and the Peaſants, *Gentiles*. 2 *Baſma*, which did acknowledge the *Great Cham* of *Tartaria* for Lord in chief; but without paying of any *tribute*. 3 *Samara*, where none of the *North-ſtars* could be ſeen. 4 *Sambri*, in which ſome men were ſaid to have tails like Dogs. 5 *Fanſur*, in which they have a Tree, the wood whereof put in water, will ſink like Iron; of which they uſe to make *Launces* that will pierce an Armour. And 6 *Dragorian*, of which there is nothing memorable or prodigious, but that the people of it uſe to eat their neareſt Kinſmen; and that no *Prodigie* at all, becauſe uſed by others.

To theſe two we may joyn *MADURA*, on the North of the greater *Java*, fertile of *Rice*, but otherwiſe of ſo wateriſh and moiſt a Soil, that the men and Cattel uſe to go knee-deep when they ſow it. The chief Town whereof is called *Arosbay*. And on the Eaſt the ſame *Java* the Iſland *Baly*, exceeding populous for the bigneſs, ſuppoſed to contain 600000 Inhabitants; and very well provided of *Buls*, *Buffals*, Goats, Horſes, Swine, many kind of fruits, and ſome ſtore of metals.

8. *SUMATRA.*

SUMATRA lieth on the North of the greater *Java*, betwixt it and the *Streight* of *Sincapura*, the moſt Southern Town of *Golden Cherſoneſe*. The *Streight* in that place ſo ſtreight and narrow, not above a Musket-ſhot in breadth, that ſome conceive this Iſland to have been formerly joyned unto it by ſome little *Iſthmus*; ſince worn away by the violence and working of the Sea: and that this Iſland, and not the Land of *Malaca*, was that *Golden Cherſoneſe*, which we find in *Ptolomy*. More probably by far, than that we ſhould run after it to the Iſle of *Japan*, ſituate on the Eaſt of *China*, ſo far from any part of *India*, where it is placed by the Author of the *Atlas Minor*.

The length hereof, extended from the North-weſt to the South-eaſt, is ſaid by ſome to be 900. by others but 700. miles the breadth 200. and the whole compaſs 2100. Strangely affirmed by ſome Writers to be the biggeſt of all the Eaſt; who yet aſſign a greater circuit unto *Java*, and as great to *Borneo*. Situate under the *Æquator*, which divideth it into two parts, very near an equality: that on the North-ſide reaching unto five degrees, that on the South-ſide but to ſeven degrees from the line it ſelf. By which account there is little difference betwixt the length of a day and a night; both much at one in all times of the year whatever.

The air hereof by conſequence muſt be very hot, but withal unwholſom: not ſo much in regard of the extreme heats, as by reaſon of the groſs vapours drawn from the many Fens and Rivers, which are found to be in it; and the thick Woods which intercept the free courſe of a purging wind. The ſoil not capable of ſuch grain as in other places, except Rice and *Millet* (for I know not otherwiſe how to render the *Latine*, *Milium*) but yielding Ginger, Pepper, *Camphire*, *Agarick*, and *Caſſia*, in great abundance. It affordeth alſo great plenty of Wax and Honey, ſtore of Silks and Cottons, rich Mines, not only of Tin, Iron, Sulphur, and other Minerals; but of Gold ſuch quantity, that ſome conceive this Iſland to be *Solomon*'s *Ophir*. And if *Pedrunka Sirie*, one of the Kings of this Iſland, in a Letter written to King *James* did not brag too impudently; it may be probable enough. For by that Letter it appeareth that all the furnitures of his houſe, and trappings of his Elephants and Horſes, with all his Armour, were of pure Gold, and that he had in his Dominions a whole Mountain of Gold; King of which *Golden Mountain* he entituleth himſelf in his *Regal Stile*.

The Inhabitants are many of them good *Artificers*, cunning *Merchants*, or expert *Mariners*. All of them *Gentiles* till about two hundered and thirty years ſince, at what time by the diligence of ſome *Arabian* Merchants trading to this Iſland, *Mahometaniſm* began to ſpread upon the Coaſts. But in the Inland parts of the Country they are *Gentiles* ſtill, and ſtill retain amongſt them their old barbarous cuſtoms. The moſt loving men unto their Enemies that were ever known; for otherwiſe they would never eat them. Having eaten, they uſe their ſkuls inſtead of money, which they exchange or barter for ſuch neceſſaries, as their wants require: and he is thought to be the wealthieſt man amongſt them, who hath moſt of this coyn. Thoſe of the other Religion, though in moſt points and cuſtoms they agree with the reſt of the *Mahometans*, have this one ſingular to themſelves: which is, that once every year on a certain day they go ſolemnly unto their *Moſquits* to ſee if *Mahomet* be come, leading a ſpare Horſe for him to ride upon: which (miſſing him) is mounted, at their coming back, by the beſt man in the company. Of any great Progreſs that *Chriſtianity* hath made here, I have no good evidence.

That here are many and great Rivers, hath been ſaid before, but their names I find not. Here are alſo many Mountains, and thoſe great and high; that of moſt note called *Balalvanus*, ſaid to burn continually. Out of which, or not far off do ariſe two Fountains, of which the one is ſaid to run pure Oyl, and the other the beſt *Balſamum*: which I bind no man to believe, but ſuch as have ſeen it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Achen*, the Seat-Royal of that Kingdom, beautified with the Regal Palace, to which they paſs thorow ſeven Gates one after another, with green Courts between the three outtermoſt; thoſe three continually guarded with women expert at their weapons, and uſing both Swords and Guns; the only ordinary guard that he hath for his perſon. The materials of this Palace mean, but the furniture coſtly, the Walls thereof being hanged commonly with *Velvet* and *Damask*, and ſometimes with cloth of Gold. 2 *Pedir*, 3 *Pacom*, 4 *Cambar*, 5 *Menantabo*, 6 *Aura*, and 7 *Andragide*, the ſeats of ſo many of their Kings. 8 *Paſſaman*, a Town of great Trade, but ſituate in a Mooriſh and unhealthy place; found ſo experimentally by too many of the *Engliſh*, who have there their Factory. 9 *Priamon*, and 10 *Tecoo*, of a more healthy air, but not ſo commodious in their Havens as is that of *Paſſaman*: theſe three Towns ſtanding in that part of the Country where the *Pepper* groweth.

All that we know touching the ſtory of this Country, is, that the *Portugals* when they firſt came hither, found in it nine and twenty Kings; reduced ſince to a ſmaller number. For *Abraham*, ſometimes a Slave, afterwards King of *Achen*, having turned *Mahometan*, by the help of the *Turks* and *Arabians* ſubdued the Realms of *Pedir* and *Pacem*. *Aladine* who ſucceeded him, being once a *Fiſherman*, and grown famous for his exploits at Sea, was by this King preferred to the marriage of one of his Kinſwomen, made his Lord *Admiral*, and by him truſted with the protection of his Son and Heir: of whom inſtead of a Protector he became the murtherer, and uſurped the State unto himſelf. When King, he added to his Crown the Kingdom of *Aru*, or *Aura*, and *Manucabo*; and almoſt all the reſt in the North part of the Iſland. In this King's time, the *Engliſh* were firſt ſettled in their Factory there. Grown old (an hundred years at leaſt) he was impriſoned by his eldeſt Son, impatient of a longer ſtay; alledging that his age had made him unfit for

Government,

Government, *Anno* 1604. The name of the New King *Sultan Pedrucka Sirie*, who in his Letter to King *James*, ſpoken of before, ſtiles himſelf the ſole King of *Sumatra*: either with greater brags than truth, or elſe becauſe the Kingdoms of *Tecoo*, *Priaman*, and *Baronſe*, being conquered by him, all the reſt were become his *Tributaries*. Aſſociated with the Forces of the King of *Jor*, or *Johor*, who had married his Siſter, he beſieged *Malaca*, and diſtreſſed it: But being beaten from it by the *Portugals*, he turned the tide of his diſpleaſure upon his *Confederate*, and ſubdued that Kingdom; who with the King of *Siak* (ſome other petit Prince near *Jor*) and two of their brethren, were in the year 1613 brought Priſoners to *Achem*.

The Government of this King is abſolute, and meerly arbitrary, executing what he hath a mind to, without *form of Law*. So cautelous, that without his *Placard* no ſtranger can have *Ingreſs* into his Dominions, or free *Egreſs* out of them. Nor is admittance to his preſence granted unto any whom he firſt ſends not for by an Officer with a *Gilded Staff*. He is conceived to be ſtrong both by Sea and Land, his Country populous, his Elephants many and well trained, able to put to Sea 120 or if need be 200. Gallies and *Frigots* fit for any ſervice, moſt of which carry *Demi-Cannon*, Culverin, Sakar, Minion, and other the like Ordnance of Braſs. So great a Maſter of his Subjects, that in 21 daies he had a goodly Channel drawn about his Palace, from a River which was eight miles off. Off his *Revenues*, I am able to make no conjecture, but think him to be full of Gold, by that great quantity of Golden Furnitures which he hath about him.

And now I am fallen on this King's Gold, I cannot but take notice of ſome Iſlands on the Weſt of *Sumatra*, called *Aureæ Inſulæ*, or the *Golden Iſlands*; the chief of which named *Andramania*, is poſſeſſed by *Cannibals*, or *Man-eaters*. Oppoſite unto which on the Eaſt ſide of this Iſland, are thoſe called *Linga*, *Banca*, and *Bintam*; which laſt is ſaid to be very woody, well watered, and to afford a commodious *Station* for ſhipping. The houſes built of Stone, but tharched, except that of the King (for even theſe ſorry Iſlands love to have a King of their own) whoſe houſe more eminently ſeated, is more handſomely covered.

9 ZEILAN.

WEſt of *Sumatra*, ſomewhat inclining to the North, is the Iſland of ZEILAN, ten degrees diſtant fro the *Æquator*, and near adjoyning to the Promontory in the hither *India* which *Ptolomy* calleth by the name of *Cory*. The length hereof computed at 250 miles, the breadth at 150 miles only, the whole circumference at 700 or 800 miles. Conjectured by the ſituation, and other probable inducements, to be the *Taprobane* of the ancient Writers. *Ortelius* and moſt other intelligent men of theſe later times are of that opinion. Only *Mercator*, who hath carried the *Golden Cherſoneſe* to the Iſle of *Japan*, and fixed *Taprobane* in that of *Sumatra*, (in which laſt I muſt confeſs he hath many Partners) will have this Iſland to be that which *Ptolomy* calls *Nanigeris*, though that be four Degrees more Weſt than the Promontory of *Cory*, to which this Iſle in former times ſeems to have been joyned.

Taking it therefore for an evident and undoubted truth, that this *Zeilan* or *Ceilan* is the *Taprobane* of the Ancients, we will a little look on the ſtate of that Iſland, with reference to the times when thoſe Authors lived. By *Ptolomy* affirmed to be plentiful in Rice, Honey, Ginger, Gold, Silver, Precious Stones, and all kind of Metals. By *Pliny*, that the Gold is purer, and the Gems fairer than any in *India*; that there were alſo Groves of Palm-trees, and great ſtore of Elephants, is declared by *Ælian*, and ſome others. Watered with many fair and pleaſant Rivers, *viz.* 1 *Soana*, 2 *Azanus*, 3 *Baracus*, 4 *Gandes*, 5 *Phaſis*: the Hills in many places having a full proſpect over the adjoyning Valley; the chief of which were *Malea*, and thoſe called *Calibi*, the Vales perpetually enriched with the choiceſt fruits. Exceeding populous for the bigneſs, and ſtored with many Towns of note. Of which *Magrammum* only hath the name of a *Metropolis*. 1 *Margana*, 2 *Jogana*, 3 *Sindocanda*, 4 *Hodoca*, 5 *Nabartha*, 6 *Dogana*, 7 *Dionyſiopolis*, 8 *Bocana*, 9 *Abaratha*, 10 *Procurum*, 11 *Nagadiba*; and 12 *Anubingara*, have the name of Cities. 13 *Meduttum*, and 14 *Talacorum*, noted for the Towns of Traffick. 15 *Priapæ*, 16 *Mardus*. 17 *Rhizala*, 18 *Spatana*, and 19 that of the *Sun*, for commodious Havens. 20 *Anurogrammum* being honoured with the title of *Regia*, or the Royal City. As for the name, it is ſaid by *Ptolomy* to have been firſt called *Taprobane*, then *Simondi Inſula*, and finally in his time *Salice*, and the People *Salæ*; from whence the name of *Selan* or *Seilan* ſeems to be derived.

To take a view of at the preſent, I find it ſaid to be of an *Oval* form, divided from the main Land by a narrow Channel, the Heavens refreſhing it with their dews, the Air with a fragrant freſhneſs, and the waters with their many Rivers and Fountains; the Earth diverſified into lofty hills, and lowly valleys; her inward Chambers filled with Metals, and Jewels, her outward Coat of the pleaſanteſt colour, ſtored with whole Woods of *Cinnamon*, beſides *Fruits*, *Limons*, *Oranges* &c. bettering thoſe of *Spain*. Of *Fowls* and *Beaſts* great plenty both wild and tame; and the beſt breed of Elephants in all the world. Deſtitute only of the *Vine*, the want of which ſupplied with a pleaſant drink made of the juyce of fruits, more natural to them then the other, and ſo preſervative of life that the people are reported to be longer lived than in any other parts. In a word, ſo abounding in all contentments, that the *Indians* hold it to be *Paradiſe*, and take upon them to point out ſome of *Adam's* footings, left for a memorial in ſome parts of it. And to confirm them in their Errour, they have an Hill there which the *Spaniards* call by the name of *Pico de Adam*, affirmed to be ſeven Leagues in height, from whence *Adam* aſcended into Heaven: for that cauſe viſited by the *Moors* or *Arabians*, with continual *Pilgrimages*.

The people for the moſt part tall and ſtrait of body, naked from the girdle upwards, unwarlike, and much given unto eaſe and pleaſures; So queaſie ſtomached that the pooreſt of them will not eat that meat which another hath touched; inclined to bravery, and therefore make wide holes in their ears, which they ſtretch out with *Jewels* to their very ſhoulders. Cunning *Artificers* in all Metals, one of them making a *Crucifix* of ſuch exquiſite workmanſhip, that it ſeemed to give life to the dead; and was ſent by the Archbiſhop of *Goa* to the King of *Spain*, as the rareſt *Jewel* which had ever graced his Royal *Cabinet*. They are alſo very active, and well skilled in *Jugling*, both men and women, travelling thorow *India* with their tricks and *Hobby-horſes*, by which they get themſelves both delight and money. In matter of *Religion*, they are generally *Idolaters*, eſpecially the *Natives*, whom they call *Cingalas*, which live in the In-lands; the Sea-coaſts (as in other Iſlands) being filled with *Mahometans*. No *Chriſtians* that I hear of but in *Columbo*, a Town of the *Portugals*.

Cities of moſt repute amongſt them, 1 *Candie*, the ſeat of one of their Kings, ſuppoſed to be the *Sindocande* of *Ptolomy*, memorable for the *Statue* of their ſuppoſed *Adam*, moſt artificially wrought, of five or ſix Fathoms high, *Symmetrically* proportionable to the print of his foot, which

which they conceive to have amongſt them. 2. *Ventane*, of great renown for an *Idol-Temple*, in compaſs 130 paces, of great height, and all white except the top, which hath the Spires thereof ſo gilded, that when the Sun ſhines, men are not able to look upon them, 3. *Janaſipatan*. 4 *Triqui Lemale*, (ſuppoſed to be the *Tarichi* of *Ptolomy*) 5. *Ratecolom*. 6. *Vilaſſem*. 7. *Tanamaca*. 8. *Laula*. 9. *Galle*, the ſeats of many of their Kings, 10. *Nagavita*, conceived to be the *Nigari*; as 11. *Agena*, the *Iogana* of *Ptolomy*. 12. *Colmuchi*, the ſeat Royal of the chief King of this Iſland, ſituate on a capacious Bay in the Southweſt of it, and of moſt trade in all this Country: many great Ships laden with Cinnamon, Gems, Elephants, and other *Indian* Commodities going yearly hence. Fortified by the *Portugals* (by whom called *Columbo*) with a very ſtrong Caſtle built with the King's leave at firſt, to ſecure their trading; but ſince us'd by them as a curb to hold him in with, and to compel him to pay Tribute.

This Country firſt diſcovered to be an Iſland by *Oneſicritus*, Admiral of *Alexanders* Fleet, was in the time of *Ptolomy* inhabited by ſeveral Nations. The principal of which were the *Galibi*, and *Mudutt*æ dwelling in the North, the *Rhogandani* and *Nanigiri* in the South; the *Sindocand*æ in the Weſt, and the *Tarachi* in the Eaſt, the middle parts being taken up by the *Anurogrammi*, *Magabdi*, *Suani*, *Semni*. But little or nothing is ſaid of them in the way of ſtory, but that they were good *Mimicks*, did imitate the tunes of Birds, and could ſpeak to two at once, as if double tongued; that they were very ſtudious of Aſtrology, and worſhipped the Sun and the Hoſt of Heaven; that ſome of their Embaſſadors coming to *Rome*, in the time of *Claudius Cæſar*, *Solem à Lævâ oriri mirati ſunt*, &c. admired to ſee the Sun riſe on the wrong ſide of them; and finally, that the King was choſen by the people with reſpect had to his age and clemency; who being enthroned, appointed thirty Judges to adminiſter Juſtice to the Subject, without the Major part of whom, ſentence of Death was to paſs on no man. In following times this Monarchy (for ſuch it was in the time of thoſe Authors) was broken into many Pieces: the *Portugals* finding nine Kings in it, at their firſt coming hither, all Homagers or Tributaries to the King of *Colmuchi*. After that, this their chief King was wickedly murdered by his Barber, who drove the other Kings out of the Country, and for a while uſurped the Monarchy to himſelf. Since which time, having once again recovered their Kingdoms, ſix of them (as I have ſomewhere read, but remember not where) put themſelves under the protection of the *Great Mogul*, and became his Feudataries.

Near hereunto on the Coaſts of *Malabar*, are the Iſlands which they call *Maldivæ*, many in number, but ſo called from the principal of them, as that from *Maldiva*, a noted and well-traded Empory, where the King reſideth: Not very plentiful of neceſſaries for the uſe of man, did not the *Palm* alone ſupply them in all other wants. Inhabited by an induſtrious and ſober people, who make themſelves long Garments of Silk or Flax, brought from other places, wherewith more modeſtly adorned than the reſt of the *Indians*: and by their Fiſhing draw up ſhells of ſuch mingled colours, that they ſerve amongſt the *Siametes* inſtead of mony.

10. *ISLANDS* of leſs note.

BEſides theſe Iſlands repreſented to us by their ſeveral names, and ſome who have nothing but their names to take notice of; there be many thouſands of leſs note which we find in groſs: theſe *Indian* Seas being ſo prodigiouſly full of Iſlands, that it is almoſt impoſſible to believe there ſhould be ſuch multitudes; but utterly impoſſible to credit what is told us of them. Some of the moſt remarkable of them we have touched upon, as Acceſſories or Appurtenances to ſome greater Iſlands. The reſt we ſhall preſent only in the general Muſter, together with a taſte of ſome of thoſe ſtrange reports, with which ſome men have fouled their Papers, and abuſed their Readers. Of the *Philippines* there are ſaid to be 11000. though but 40 of them in poſſeſſion of the King of *Spain*. More South, but over againſt *China*, is another *Frie* of them, affirmed by Mariners to be no fewer than 7448. and (as if nature had delighted to diſport her ſelf by ſowing Iſlands in theſe Seas) another Shoal of them about *India*, no fewer in number than 127000. all which laid together would make a Continent as large as three or four parts of *Europe*; and are ſtill groaning under the burthen of Heatheniſm. Theſe *Iſlands* ſtand ſo nigh unto one another, that they ſeem only to ſuch as are afar, to be all but one firm Land; but whoſoever alſo paſſeth between them, may with his hands touch the Boughs of the Trees on the one ſide, and on the other. Of theſe and the other *Indian* Iſlands, Travellers relate many incredible Fables, *viz.* That there be Hogs that have two teeth growing out of their ſnouts, and as many behind their ears, of a ſpan and a half long; a Tree whoſe Weſtern part is rank poyſon; and the Eaſtern part an excellent preſervative againſt it. They tell us alſo of a Fruit, that whoſoever eateth, ſhall for the ſpace of twelve hours be out of his Wits; and of a Stone, on which whoſoever ſitteth, ſhall ſuddenly have a rupture in his body. We are told alſo that hereabouts are taken Tortoiſes of that bigneſs that ten men might ſit and dine within one of the ſhells; and that there is a Tree, which all the day-time hath not a flower on it, but within half an hour after Sun-ſet, is full of them. All huge and monſtrous lyes, and not fit for credit. *Galuano* reporteth alſo, that in ſome of theſe Iſlands there is a Fruit, of which if a Woman that is with child eat, her Child will preſently move; that there is a River plentifully ſtored with Fiſh, whoſe water is yet ſo hot, that it doth immediately ſcald off any skin of the Beaſt that is caſt into it; that ſome of the men have tails; and moſt of their Swine horns; that they have Oyſters which they call braſs, the ſhells whereof are of ſo large compaſs, that they Chriſten Children in them; that in the Sea there are ſtones which grow and increaſe like fiſh, of which the beſt Lime is made: that there is a bird called *Monicodiata*, which having no feet is in a continual motion: and that there is a hole in the back of the Cock, in which the Hen doth lay her eggs, and hatch her young ones. I bid no man to believe theſe Relations: for my part I ſay with *Horace*,

Quodcunque oſtendis mihi ſic, incredulus odi.
Whatever thus thou tell'ſt me, I
Will always hate it as a lye.

And ſo much for theſe *EASTERN ISLANDS*.

An Advertiſement to the Reader touching the ERRATA of this PART.

IN the firſt place the Reader is to be advertiſed that Fol. *I have adventured to prove the* Alamatha *of* Ptolomy *to be the* Chamath, *or* Hamath-Sobab, *of the Holy Scriptures, The place ill pointed, but the judicious Reader will eaſily find out the ſcope and meaning. Yet if this ſhall not be approved of, I ſhould then think it to be that* Elam *or* Helam *where* David *diſcomfited the Army of the* Meſopotamians; *mention whereof is made* 2 Sam. 10. 16, 17. *In the next place he is to know, that Fol.* *within the compaſs of five lines, the Victory which* Aſa *King of* Judah *obtained againſt the numerous Army of* Æthiopians, *is twice repeated: in the firſt place aſcribed to* Jethir, *in the next to* Mareſha, *(though the other alſo hath good Authors) let that of* Jethir *be ſupplied in this manner following.* 5. Jethir *or* Jetthir, *in the North Border of this Tribe towards* Eleutheropolis: *a City anciently of the* Levites *in St.* Hieroms *time called by the name of* Jethira, *and then repleniſhed altogether with* Chriſtians: *now nothing but the name remaining.* 6. Mareſa, *&c. And finally, whereas* Ajalon, *p.* *is placed in the Tribe of* Ephraim, *and p.* *in the Tribes of* Dan, *the reaſon is, becauſe being ſituate in the Borders of both Tribes, it is by ſome Writers aſcribed to* Dan, *and by others to* Ephraim. *The like may be alſo ſaid of* Michpas, *mentioned alſo in two Tribes according as it is diſpoſed on by ſeveral Authors.*

A TABLE OF THE *LONGITUDE* and *LATITUDE* OF THE CHIEF TOWNS and CITIES Mentioned in this BOOK.

	Long.	Lat.
A		
Achem	132.30	3.40
Aden	82. 0	13.50
Agra	118.10	44. 0
Aleppo	72.30	38. 0
Amboina	162.50	4.20 *A*
Amodabat	169.50	23.10
Antioch	72.30	39. 0
Apamea	61.30	43 40
Arachan	129.10	10.24
Ardovat	140.50	25. 0
Arminig	76.	41
Avaa	142.30	27 50
Amastro	66 30	44.30
B		
Babylon	82.20	33. 0
Baccu	88.50	42.
Balfora	82 40	31.10
Banda	164. 0	450 *A*
Baticalla	111.30	12.40
Bengala	125.10	21.20
Bethlehem	65.45	31.50
Bisnagar	114.20	14.10
Bungar	88.30	54.30
C		
Calul	212.20	31. 0
Cainta	137.30	47.40
Calecut	112.40	10.30
Cambalu	161.10	51.40
Camboia	342.20	11.40
Campion	148. 0	57.30
Canenor	112.50	11. 0
Candahor	110.40	33 40
Capha	68.50	48. 0
Calamines	149. 0	9. 0
Cauchin China	140.30	20. 0
Cranganor	113.0	9.40
Ceraso	73. 0	44.40
Chorómandel	115.20	22.30
Chesmur	115.10	3. 0
Chianfu	147.30	27.30
Chirman	98.30	27.30
Cincapura	136.43.	1.20
Cochin	114. 0	9.40
Coimancho	117.30	6.40
Comori	115 10	7.10
Coulan	114.30	7.10
Cantan	149.	25.
Chaul	109.40	17.30
D		
Damascus	74.30	35. 0
Decan	113.20	44. 0
Delly	114. 0	19.10
Derbent	84.53	42.20
Diu	108. 0	20.30
Dornate	137.50	7.50
E		
Ephesus	60.30	39 40
Eres	87.40	40.50
Ergimul	150. 0	58.20
F		
Famagusta	69.20	30.30
Fasso	57.50	45.40
G		
Gabara	80.50	36.10
Gaza	70.50	39.10
Gest	107.30	26.30
Gilolo	161.30	1.10
Goa	112.20	14.40
H		
Heri	99.53	30. 0
Hormuz	165 25	35.10
Hierusalem	72.20	33. 0

	Long.	Lat.
I		
Jesdi	94.40	32. 0
Indio	105.40	38. 0
Jericho	73.	33. 0
Joppa	71.20	34. 0
Istigias	110.30	39.40
L		
Lequin Major	165. 0	28 0.
Liompo	160.20	34.40
Lop	134.20	53. 0
M		
Macao	140.10	23.20
Machan	160.40	0.30
Macin	85.30	25.50
Malaca	136.30	2.50
Maldiva	113. 0	3. 0
Maliapar	118. 0	13.20
Mamora	155.40	0.40
Mandao	121. 0	25. 0
Mangalor	112. 0	11.30
Martavan	134.30	17.10
Meccha	73.30	25. 0
Medina Talnabi	73. 0	27.30
Meaco	170.30	37. 0
Mindanas	160.40	7. 0
Moltan	114.20	24.30
Multan	109.50	29.20
Mongul	159.29	60.40
Musnal	84. 0	34.50
N		
Nagulan	97. 0	53.30
Naim	94.10	33.40
Nayman	140. 0	65.10
Narsinga	119. 0	18. 0
Nazareth	72.40	34.10
Nicomedis	63.10	44.20
Nisabul	102.10	38.40
Nice	57.41	40.
Ninive	82.36	40.
O		
Odia	138.30	12. 0
Onor	111.40	19.10
Orixa	118.40	20.40
Ormus	91.20	27.30
Oxiana	107.41	20.
P		
Pacem	132. 0	4. 0
Pedir	131. 10	4. 0
Pegu	135. 0	20.10
Ptolemais	66.40	29.40
Persepolis	90.40	30.40
Patane	138.10	6.50
Q		
Quinsiu	144.40	42.30
Quinsay	153. 0	40. 0
R		
Rhabana	196.30	47. 0
Rhodes	61.40	37.20
Rages	79.10	28. 0
Regis	82 10	36. 0
S		
Sableſtan	114. 0	30. 0
Sarmachan	130. 0	47. 0
Samaria	72.20	33.40
Sciro	57.30	41.10
Siam	139.10	14.30
Sidon	72.10	36.30
Sind	109.30	27. 0
Sivas	90.40	30.40
Smyrna	60.20	40.30
Sigeſtan	205. 0	31. 0
Sultania	92.40	37.20
Succuit	143.10	56. 0
Sunda	138 86	40. A
Susis	73.40	48.
Scarpanto	62.10	36. 0
T		
Tangu	152. 0	63.30
Talcan	85. 0	47. 0
Tarnassur	119.40	17. 10
Tarsus	71.20	40. 0
Tauris	90.30	38.10
Tenduc	168.30	67.30
Thebet	138.50	44. 0
Trapezond	74.30	44.40
Tripolis	72.20	37. 0
Troy	59. 0	42.30
Tyre	72.10	38. 3
Tidore	160.40	0.
V		
Van	86.30	36.50
Varma	130.20	20.10
X		
Xamdu	168.40	55.40
Xara	130. 0	17. 0
Z		
Zagaspi	101.20	42.30
Zama	74.40	11.40
Zibit	70. 0	22.20

The End of the Third Book.

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF AFRICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

By PETER HEYLYN.

C. JUL. SOLIN. cap. 33.

Ultra hos (Æthiopes) monstrosæ gentium facies Aliæ sine naribus æquali totius oris planitie, informes habent cultus: Aliis concreta Ora sunt modicoq; tantum foramine calamis avenarum pastus hauriunt. Nonnullæ linguis carent, in vicem sermonis utentes nutibus, manibusque.

PTOLOM. GEOG. lib. I. cap. 7.

Constat per ipsas temporum traditiones, quasdam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudininis peragrationem, ad notitiam pervenisse: quasdam vero non tales, ac fertur, esse, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis nostri traditionibus penitus quasi adhæreamus.

LONDON,
Printed for *Anne Seil*, MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

AFRICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Iles thereof.

BY PETER HEYLYN.

PTOLOM. GEOG. lib. 1. cap. 1.

Conflat per ipsa temporum tractiones, quadam partes Continentis terræ quæ à nobis habitatur, nondum propter difficilem magnitudinis peregrinationem, ad notitiam pervenisse: quadam vero non fuisse, ut fieri, &c. necesse ergo est ut ibi novissimis temporis nostri tractationibus penitus quæ adhæremus.

CAPIT. SOLIN. cap. 32.

Africa (exceptis) multiplici genitum luxu alia fine moribus æquali cultus ovis plurimis, aliarum habere cultus: solis concreta diva luxu medicos: tantum formando calamis amœnum pafus bestiam. Nonnulle lingua eorum, in pisces sermonis artifex artifex, multiplex.

LONDON,

Printed for Anne Seil, MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

AFRICA,

AND ALL THE

...lons, Provinces, Seas, and Iles thereof.

THIS CHART WILL

THIRD CHART AP

AT THE END OF T

PETER HEYLYN.

...

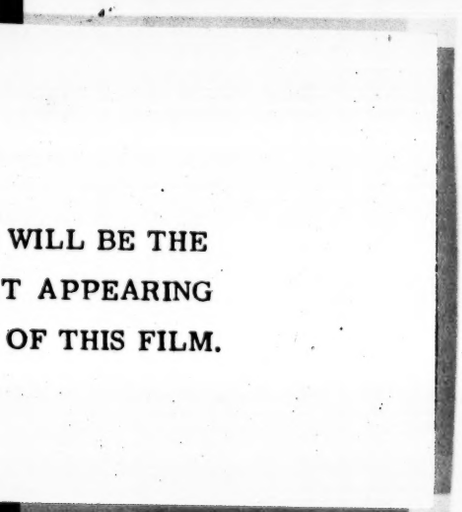
...

...

...

LONDON,

Printed for Hanne Seil, MDCLXXIII.


WILL BE THE
T APPEARING
OF THIS FILM.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Fourth Book.

PART I.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY OF AFRICK,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Isles thereof.

Of *AFRICK.*

AFRICK is bounded on the East by the *Red-Sea*, and Bay of *Arabia*, by which parted from *Asia*; on the West, by the main *Atlantick* Ocean, interposing betwixt it and *America*; on the North, by the *Mediterranian* Sea, which divides it from *Europe* and *Anatolia*: and on the South, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean, separating it from *Terra Australis incognita*, or the Southern Continent. Parted from all the rest of the World, except *Asia* only, to which joyned by a narrow *Isthmus*, not above 60 miles in length, and memorable for the great design which *Cleopatra* the last Queen of *Egypt* had upon it, which in brief was this, when *Mark Anthony* was encountred by *Augustus* in the Naval battel of *Actium*, *Cleopatra* fearing the success, fled through the midst of all his fleet, with the 60 Gallies which were appointed for her Guard. Being come to the North part of this *Isthmus*, she gathered together all her portable treasures, and intended to hoist her shiping out of the *Mediterranian*, and hale them over the Land to the *Red-Sea*, from whence she had purposed to take sail, and together with her sweet-heart *Anthony*, and some other choicest Friends, to seek out some other place of dwelling far enough from the *Romans*: But from this, *Anthony* who fled after her, and vainly hoped for a change of fortunes, did at last dissuade her.

The Form hereof is like a *Pyramis* reversed; the *Basis* of which, from *Tanger* on the Strait of *Gibraltar*, to the point where it joyneth unto *Asia*, is reckoned at the breadth of 1920 *Italian* miles, the *Conus* of it very narrow. But from the *Conus* or *Pyris* to the most Northern part of the *Basis*, it extendeth it self the space of 4155 miles, being much less then *Asia*, and far bigger then *Europe*.

By the *Grecians* it is called most commonly *Libya*, (of which more hereafter) part of it taken for the whole: by the *Ethiopians*, *Alkebu-lan*; by the *Indians*, *Besecath*. But the most noted name thereof is *Africa*, which *Josephus* out of *Cleodemus* and *Polybistor*, deriveth from *Epher* or *Apher*, one of the Nephews of *Abraham*, by *Midian* the son of *Keturah*. The *Arabians*, by whom it is called *Ifrichea*, derive it from the Verb *Faruch*, signifying to divide; because more visibly divided both from their own Countrey, and the rest of the World, than any other part thereof which was known unto them. Some of the *Greek* Fablers fetch it from one *Afer*, a Companion of *Hercules*, whom he attended unto *Spain*, some fetch it out of *Apher*, an Hebrew word, signifying *Dust*, agreable to its sandy and dusty soil: *Festus* an old Gramarian, from *A Privativum*, and the Greek word φρίκη which im-

ports a Countrey void of cold, as suitable to the fiery temper of the Air. By *Bochartus*, who brings all from the old *Phœnician*, it is said to be derived from *Peruc*, *Spica*, an ear of Corn, which mollified into *Feric*, came at last to *Africa*, that is to say, a *Countrey plentiful in Corn*. Which Etymoligy of his may receive some countenance from that great plenty of Corn which was bred in this Country: especially in those parts hereof which the *Romans* called the *Proper Africk*, whereof we shall speak more when we come to *Barbary*: the whole Continent taking from that Province the name of *Africk*. But in my mind, (if that from the *Hebrew Epher* or *Aphar*, be not worth accepting) I should prefer the *Etymon* of *Festus* before any other unless we might be sure that *Carthage* anciently was called *Africa*, as *Suidas* telleth us it was; for then without all peradventure we would seek no further. For other more particular names by which it hath been called in some elder Writers, i. e. *Olympia*, *Oceanica*, *Eschatica*, *Coryphe*, *Ammonis*, *Hesperia*, *Ortygia*, and perhaps some others, it is enough to our design to take notice of them.

It is situate for the most part under the *Torrid Zone*, the *Æquator* crossing it almost in the very midst: and for that cause supposed by many of the Ancients not to be inhabited at all, or but very thinly, in the middle and more Southern parts of it; or if at all, with such strange people, as hardly did deserve to be counted men. *Pomponius* among others was of this opinion, guessing the inward parts thereof to be taken up by such strange Brutes as the *Cynophanes*, who had heads like dogs; 2 The *Scyapodæ*, who with the shadow of their foot, could and did hide themselves from the heat of the Sun; 3 The *Gamosaphantes*, a naked people, ignorant of the use of weapons, and therefore fearfully avoiding the sight of men; 4 The *Blemmyæ*, who being without heads, had their eyes and mouths in their Brests; The *Æripani*, who had no other humane quality to declare them to be men, but the shape and making of their bodies. These people (as they thought) possessed some small portion of the mid-land parts of this great Countrey; the rest they knew not, or conceived to be unhabitable, in regard of the great heats thereof. But late discoveries and navigations have found the contrary; the Countrey proving in most parts to be well inhabited; and the coolness of the nights, by mists, dews, and gentle gales of wind, to mitigate the heat of the day.

Quodque die Solis vehementi excanduit æstu,
Humida nox reficit, paribusque refrigerat horis.

That is to say,

What the Sun burns by day, the Night renews,
And doth as much refresh with moistning dews.

For notwithstanding that it be in some places full of sandy deserts, a disease incident to some parts of *Arabia*, *Persia*, and other Countreys of a more Northernly situation: yet it is said by some, who speak it upon knowledge, that the greatest part of those Regions which lie under the Line or near it, (both in *America* and here) have so many goodly Fountains, Rivers, and little Brooks, such abundance of Cedars and other stately Trees of shade, so many sorts of delicate Fruits ever bearing, and at all times beautified with blossoms; as may make them hold comparison with any others, supposed to be of a more temperate situation.

But as was said before, the Ancients knew not much of this Countrey, and therefore spoke upon conjecture, or more doubtful here-say. For though *Hanno* a noble *Carthaginian* imployed by that State, discovered much of the Western Shores of this great *Peninsula*, yet he ventured not so much into the Land: nor did his *Journal* (either suppressed by the *Romans*, or not much took notice of) give any great light to other Nations to pursue those Voyages; being writ in the *Carthaginian* Tongue, but since translated into Greek, and published at *Basil* by *Sigismund Gelenius*, *Anno* 1533. As little credit did it find in former times, that some *Phœnicians* in the days of *Pharao Neco*, passing down the *Red-Sea*, should sail about the Coasts of *Africk* to the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and so return again to *Egypt* by the *Mediterranean*; as we find in *Herodotus*, that they did. But what those ages disbelieved or esteemed impossible, is now grown ordinary; the *Circumnavigations* about this Countrey being very frequent, since first performed by *Vasques de Gama*, an adventurous *Portugal*, in the year 1647. being 80 years after, or thereabout, from the time that the *Portugals* first attempted the discovery and circumnavigation of the Coasts of *Africk*, which at the last, to the no small glory of their Nation, was accomplished by them. For so it happened that having extended their dominions as far as they could upon the Continent of *Spain*; and having withal a large Sea-coast, and fit for shipping, they turned their Forces on the *Moors* which dwelled in *Africk*, from whom they took many of their best towns which lay along upon the shores of the main *Atlantick*. Encouraged by this good success, *Henry* Duke of *Visco*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* the first, resolved to spend his purse and credit upon new discoveries. And to that purpose, having had some conference with some persons of knowledge and experience in Cosmography, he draweth together the best men of Action, both in *Spain* and *Italy*. By their means, and his own good fortune, he first discovers the Isle of *Madera*, *An.* 1420. The Isle of *Holy Port*, *Anno* 1428. The Islands of *Cape Vead*, *Anno* 1440. the Maritine parts of the Land of *Guinea*, *Anno* 1452. which fair foundations being laid, and the way opened to those great discoveries which after followed; that glorious Prince deceased in a good old Age, *Anno* 1463. leaving this Character behind him, that he was the first that made the *Portugals* in love with the Sea; discontinued after his decease above 20 years, it was resumed again by King *John*, the second of that name, who by the conduct of *Diego Con*, *Anno* 1486. discovered the Realms of *Angola* and *Congo*, with the Isle of St. *George*, and thereupon resolves in the next year following to try his fortunes for compassing the whole Costs of *Africk*, thereby to find a way to the wealth of *India*, in which he employed Captain *Bartholomew Diaz*, who passing beyond *Cape Verd*, discovered first the *Princes* Island, and sayling from thence Southward to the furthest Promontry (since called the *Cape of good Hope*) returned home again; either discouraged by cross Winds, or unruly Seas, or the untractableness of his Mariners, or by altogether. The man to who the honour of this enterprize was reserved, was that *Vasques de Gama* above mentioned, employed in this service by King *Emanuel*, *Anno* 1597. who having in his way discovered the Islands of St. *James* and St. *Hellen*, and after doubled that terrible Cape, which *Bartholomew de Diaz* durst not pass, gave it the name of *Cabo di Buena Esperonza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*, because of the good hope it gave him of finding the desired way to the Trade of *India*; and having so doubted this *Cape*, and got *Africk* on the left hand of him, he kept his course on towards the North, till he discovered the Countreys of *Quiloa*, *Mosambique*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinde*, with the King of which last he contracted an especial friendship, and by his favours and directions, found the Port of *Calicute* in *East-India*, from whence with infinite joy and honour, he returned to *Lisbon*, *Anno* 1500. The design followed

followed the next year by *Alvarez Capralde*, furniſhed with 12 ſhips 1500 Souldiers; but he being caſt upon the Coaſts of *Braſil*, and diverting wholly in a manner on the diſcovery of that large Countrey, it was purſued the next year with greater ſtrength, by *Vaſques* and his Brother *Stephen*, afterwards by *Ferdinand de Olmeda*, and *Alphonſo de Albuquerque*, and divers others of that Nation, and finally by the *Engliſh*, *Hollanders*, Merchants almoſt of every Country which have any Trade upon the Ocean. By means whereof the latter Ages are better inſtructed in the particulars of it, than the former were; who knew not much beyond the limits of the *Roman* Empire, and ſome parts adjoyning upon *Egypt*, more than the ſtrange beaſts and more ſtrange reports which they had from hence; occaſioning hereby the By-word, *Africa ſemper aliquid apportat novi.*

Touching the State of *Chriſtianity* in this great Continent, it is very weak; moſt of thoſe Regions which *Chriſtian Religion* had once gained from *Idolatry*, *Mahometaniſm* having ſince regained from *Chriſtianity*: inſomuch that not onely the North part of *Africk* near the *Mediterranean*, from *Spain* to *Egypt*, where the Goſpel once ſo exceedingly flouriſhed, that three hundred Catholick Biſhops were at one time baniſhed thence by *Genſericus* King of the *Vandals*, is at this preſent utterly void of *Chriſtians*, (except ſome few Towns belonging to the King of *Spain*:) but even in all this vaſt Countrey, thrice as big as *Europe*, there is not any one Region entirely *Chriſtian*, but the Kingdom of *Habaſſia* onely, and perhaps not that; none where the *Chriſtians* are intermingled with *Mahometans*, but onely *Egypt*; nor where mingled with *Idolaters*, but in *Congo* and *Anloga*, and ſome few Towns upon thoſe Coaſts in the hands of the *Portugals*. So little benefit have thoſe Nations gotten by our late Diſcoveries; it being *Gain*, not *Godlineſs*, which the Merchant aims at.

The Nations inhabiting this Countrey, or diſperſed in it, may be reduced to *Africans* properly ſo called, *Egyptians*, *Habaſſines*, *Arabians*, *Jews*, and ſome *European* Chriſtians only in their Forts and Garriſons; the *Jews* in all the good Towns, where Trading is ſtirring; the *Arabians* chiefly on the Sea-Coaſts bordering on the Red-Sea; but wandring in great hords or companies all about the Countrey with their wives and Children: the *Habaſſines* and *Egyptians* in their ſeveral Kingdoms: The *Africans* again ſubdivided into *Moors* and *Caferes*; of which the *Moors* are wholly under the Law of *Mahomet*, the *Caferes* dwelling in the in-land and more Southern parts, not diſcovered anciently in their wonted *Gentiliſm*. Accordingly, the Languages herein ſpoken are different alſo; The *Portugal* or *Spaniſh* being uſed by the *Europeans*; 2 The *Chaldee* or *Syriack* by the *Jews*; 3 The *Arabick* by thoſe of that Nation, and in all *Barbary* except *Morocco* onely; 4 The *Habaſſine*, and 5 The *Egyptian* in thoſe Kingdoms: 6 That called *Aquel-amarig*, or the *Noble Language*, ſuppoſed to be the natural and original language of the *Roman Africans*, intermixt with ſome *Arabian* words, and ſpoken generally in *Morocco*, and ſo amongſt ſome of the Inhabitants of *Barbary*, neareſt to Mount *Atlas*: 7 That named *Sungai*, uſed in *Tombutum*, *Guinea*, and others of the people of the Land of *Negroes*; and 8 That called *Gubeo*, ſpoke by thoſe of *Æthiopia inferior*, and ſuch of the Land of *Negroes* as lie next unto it.

In reference to the State of the Roman Empire, it contained only the *Dioceſs* of *Egypt*, *Africk*, and part of the Dioceſs of *Spain*. The Dioceſs of *Egypt* ſubdivided into the Provinces of, 1 *Lybia ſuperior*, 2 *Lybia inferior*, 3 *Thebais*, 4 *Auguſtanica*, 5 *Arcadia*, and 6 *Ægyptus*, eſpecially ſo called, diſtinguiſhed by other names in the *Nicene* Council: That of *Africk*, *Tripolitana*, 2 *Byzacena*, 3 *Zeugitana*, 4 *Numidia*, 5 *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*, 6 and *Mauritania Sitifenſis*; the other part of *Mauritania*, called *Tingitana*, being laid to the Dioceſs of *Spain*. The reſt of this *Peninſula*, as they never conquered, ſo it never was much taken into conſideration. But being more perfectly diſcovered now than in former times (though not ſo perfectly as that I can be able to promiſe an exact accompt of it) it is divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts; 1 *Egypt*, 2 *Barbary*, or the *Roman Africk*, 3 *Numidia*, 4 *Lybia*, neither of which the ſame with thoſe of the ancient *Romans*; 5 *Terra Nigritarum*, 6 *Æthiopia ſuperior*, and 7 *Æthiopia inferior*. Such of the Iſlands as do not properly belong unto any of theſe, ſhall make up the eighth. In the Deſcriptions whereof we will follow the Method of *Plantatreus*, and begin with *Egypt*, as being peopled and poſſeſſed before all the reſidue.

OF EGYPT.

EGYPT is bounded on the Eaſt with *Idumæa*, and the Bay of *Arabia*; on the Weſt with *Barbaria*, *Numidia*, and part of *Lybia*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* Sea; on the South with *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire.

This Countrey in the holy Scriptures is called *Miſraim*, from *Miſraim* the ſon of *Chus*, and Grandſon of *Cham*, by whom firſt planted after the Flood, the Footſteps of which name do remain amongſt the *Arabians*, who ſtill call it *Miſre*. Named in the ſame regard in the Book of *Pſalms*, the *Land of Ham*: a name retained in ſome of the ſacred Offices of the old *Egyptians* where (as *Plutarch* witneſſeth) it was called *Chemia*, for *Chamia* no doubt; as that from *Cham* or *Ham*, the firſt ſtock of their Nation. In prophane Authors, it hath had the ſeveral names of 1 *Aeria*, from the ſerenity of the Air, which is never clouded; 2 *Potamia*, from the propinquity of the Sea, waſhing two ſides of it; 4 *Ogygia*, from *Ogiges* a ſuppoſed King thereof; 4 *Melampodus*, from the black colour of the ſoyl; 5 *Oſiria*, from their God *Oſiris*, here in high eſteem; 6 and finally it was called *Egyptus*, which in the end prevaild over all the reſt, either from *Egyptus* the Brother of *Danaus* once King hereof (in the ſtories of this Nation better known by the name of *Rameſes*;) or from *Ægyptus* the old name of the River *Nilus*, by whoſe annual over-flowings made both rich and famous; and of the ſoil and rubbiſh which that River brought with it from the higher Countrys, it was by ſome ſuppoſed to have been raiſed into firm land, and gained out of the Sea. Called therefore in ſome Writers by the name of *Nili donum*, or the gift of *Nilus*. Yet ſome there be who would have it called *Ægyptus* for *Aiguphtus*, and that derived from *Ai Coptus*, which ſignifieth the Land or Countrey of *Coptus*, that being ſuppoſed to have been anciently the chief City of it. And ſome again will have the name derived from *Chioth*, by which the *Ægyptians* call themſelves to this very day.

It containeth in length from the *Mediterranean* to the City of *Aſna*, or *Syene*, bordering on *Æthiopia*, 562 *Italian* miles: in breadth (excluſively of *Cyrene* and *Lybia*) from *Roſetta* unto *Dimiata*, or from the moſt Weſterly branch of *Nilus* to the fartheſt Eaſt, 160 of the ſame miles; to which the adding of thoſe two Provinces makes a great aſſeſſion: Situate under the ſecond and fifth *Climates*, ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 13 hours and an half.

By reaſon of this Southernly ſituation of it, the Air is here very hot and offenſive; ſo that to avoid the inſupportable heats thereof, and to have the benefit of ſome freſh wind, the inhabitants are accuſtomed to build high Towers

ers in all their Towns, on which they use to solace and refresh themselves. The soil made fruitful by the overflowings of *Nilus* (whereof more anon) is so exceeding plentiful of all sorts of Grain, that it was called *Horreum Populi Romani*, the *Granarie* or Store-house of the People of *Rome*: which City it did annually furnish with four months provision, insomuch that it was said by *Pliny*, that the greatness of the *Roman* Empire could not long continue without the Corn and Wealth of *Ægypt*, the plenty or famine of that City depending wholly on this Countrey. It abounds also with rich Pastures, in which they feed great store of *Camels*, Horses, Asses, Oxen, Sheep, and Goats, greater of growth than usually in most places else, and by reason of the moorishness of the Countrey, they have great store of Fowls. Of Poultry they have also good numbers about their houses, hatched in a different manner from all other Countreys, not by the sitting of the *Hen*, but the heat of *Furnaces*, or Ovens; in which their eggs are orderly laid in dung, and by a gentle heat brought to animation. It is also liberally furnished with great plenty of Metals, some precious Stones, good Wines, and the choicest Fruits, as Leamons, Oranges, Pomgranates, Citrons, Figgs, Cherries, and such as these, excellent both for taste and colour. Of Palm-trees also great abundance; of which though we have spoke before, yet we shall here more fully declare the nature and strange poperties of them. They grow in couples, Male and Femal, both thrust forth Cods full of seed, but the Female is only fruitful, and that not except growing by the Male, and having his seeds mixt with hers. The pith of these Trees is an excellent Sallad, better than an *Hartichoke*, which in taste it very much resembleth. Of the branches they make Bedsteads, Latices, &c. of the leaves, Baskets, Mats, Pans, &c. of the outward husks of the Cod, Cordage; of the inner Brushes. The fruit it bears best, known by the name of *Dates*, are in taste like Figs: and finally, it is said to yield whatsoever is necessary to the life of Man. It is the nature of this Tree, though never so ponderous a weight were put upon it, not to yield to the burthen; but still to resist the heavines of it, and to endeavour to lift and raise it self the more upwards. For this cause planted in *Church-yards* in the *Eastern* Countreys, as an *Emblem* of the *Resurrection*: in stead whereof we use the *Eve-Tree* in these cold Regions. For the same reason, given to *Conquerours* as a token of *Victory*; it being the Emblem or *Hieroglyphick* of a Souldiers life. Hence *figuratively* used for precedency, as *Huic equidem consilio palmam do*, in *Terence*; sometimes for the victory it self, as *Non auferent tamen hanc palmam*, in *Pliny*; *& Plurimarum palmarum homo*, for a man that had won many prizes in the *Fence-School*, as in *Tully*, *pro Roscio*: more naturally for the sign of Victory, as in that of *Horace*;

——— ——Palmaque nobilis
Terrarum Dominos evehit ad Deos.

That is to say,

The *Palm*, of Victory a sign,
Equals men to the Powers Divine.

The People though the Countrey lye in the same Clime with *Barbary*, are not black, but tawny, or *Olive-coloured*, affirmed by *Pomponius Mela* to weep and mourn over the bodies of their dead, daubed over with dung; to have held it a great impiety to burn or bury them, but having imbalmed them, to lay them in some inward Room of their Houses: the men to keep themselves at home, for the houshold business, the women to follow Merchandise and affairs abroad; the men to carry burthens upon their heads, and the women theirs upon their shoulders: *Antipodes* in these last, to most other Nations. But certainly they were a witty and ingenuous people, the first Inventers of *Geometry*, *Arithmetick*, *Physick*, as also of *Astronomy*, *Necromancy*, and *Sorcery*. The first taught the use of *Letters* to the neighbouring *Phœnicians*, by them imparted to the *Greeks*. Accustomed at the first to express their conceits in the shape of Birds, Beasts, Trees, &c. which they termed *Hieroglyphicks*; of which, two or three Examples out of *Orus* will not be impertinent. For *Eternity* they painted the Sun and Moon, as things which they believed to have had no beginning, nor were likely to have any end: For a *Year*, they painted a snake, with his tail in his mouth, to shew how one year succeeding another, kept the world still in an endless circle. For a *Moneth*, they painted a Palm-Tree, because at every new Moon it sendeth forth a new branch. For *God*, they painted a *Falcon*; as well for that he soareth so high, as that he governeth the lesser Birds. For *Integrity* of life, they painted fire and water, both because these Elements are in themselves most pure, and because all other things are purified by them. For any thing that was *Abominable* to the Gods, they painted a Fish, because in their Sacrifices the Priests never used them; and the like. From this manner of expressing ones self, the invention of *Letters* is thought to have had its original (though learnt by them no question of the children of *Israel*, when they lived amongst them:) "the History whereof take briefly, and "word for word, out of *Tacitus*. *Primi per formas animalium Ægyptii, &c.* The *Egyptians* first of all expressed the conceptions of the mind, by the shapes of "Beasts; and the most ancient Monuments of mans "memory, are seen graven in stones; and they say, that "they are the first inventers of *Letters*. Then the *Phœnicians*, because they were strong at Sea, brought them "into *Greece*; and so they had the glory of that which "they received from others: For there goeth a report, "that *Cadmus* sailing thither in a *Phœnician* ship, was the "Inventer of that Art among the *Greeks*, when they were "yet unexpert and rude. Some report, that *Cecrops* the "*Athenian*, or *Livius* the *Theban*, and *Palamedes* the "*Grecian*, did find out sixteen Characters at the time of "the *Trojan* War; and that afterward *Simonides* added "the rest. But in *Italy* the *Etrurians* learned them of "*Demaratus* the *Corinthian*; and the *Aborigines* of E-"*vander* the *Arcadian*: So far *Tacitus*. That the *Phœnicians* were the first Inventers of Letters, I dare not affirm; and as backward am I to refer the glory hereof to the *Egyptians*; for certainly the *Hebrews* were herein skilled before either: yet that the *Phœnicians* were herein School-masters to the *Greeks*, I think I may with safety maintain, having *Lucan* in consent with *Tacitus*.

Phœnices *primi* (*famæ si creditur*) *ausi*
Mansuram rudibus vocem signare figuris.

Phœnicians *first* (*if fame may credit have*)
Dar'd in rude Characters *our words ingrave.*

Of this mind also is *Isidore* of *Sevil* in the first Book of *Originations*, who also addeth, that for that cause the *Fronts* of Books, and the *Titles* of Chapters were written in *Red-letters*, as it is by some still in use. *Hinc est quod & Phœnicio colore librorum capita describantur, quia ab ipsis literæ initium habuere, cap.* 3. As for this less vulgar Letters, which the *Latines* call *Cyphræ*, and whereof every exercised *State's-man* hath peculiar to himself; they were first invented by *Julius Cæsar*, when he first began to think of the *Roman* Mornachy: and were used by him in his

his Letters to his more private and tried Friends, that if by misfortune they should be intercepted, the contents of them should not be understood; ὅπως ἀγνοεῖσθαι τοῖς πολλοῖς τὰ γεγραμμένα, *ne oliva literarum lectio cuivis esset. Augustus* one of the greatest *Politicians* of the World had another kind of obscure writing; for in his Letters of more secrecy and importance, he always used τὸ διάστημα τοῦ στοιχείου, to put the Letter immediately following in the order of the *Alphabet*, for that which in ordinary Writing he should have used. As for *Brachigraphy*, or the Art of Writing by short *Characters*, so useful for the taking of a Speech or Sermon as it is spoken: I find in *Dion*, that *Mæcenas* that great *Favourite* of *Augustus Cæsar*, and favourer of Learning, did first invent them, *ad celeritatem scribendi*, for the speedier dispatch of Writing; ὑφ' ἡμῶν σημεῖα γραμμάτων τινὰ (they are the very words of my Author) οὐδὲ πάνυ ἐξευρέθη. *Isidor* in the second Chapter of this Book above mentioned, ascribeth it to *Aquila*, the *Libertus* or *Freed man* of his *Mæcenas*; and to *Tertius Persannius*, and *Philargius*, who added to this invention. Yet had all they their chief light in it from *Tullius Tiro*, a *Freed man* of *Cicero's*; who had undertaken and compassed it in the *Prepositions*, but went no further. At the last it was perfected by *Seneca*, who brought this Art into order and method; the whole Volume of his contractions consisting of 5000 words. *Deinde* Seneca *contracto omnium digestoq; & aucto numero, opus efficit in quinque millia.*

So eminent in Arts and Learning were the old *Ægyptians*, that from them *Pythagoras* and *Democritus* learnt their Philosophy; *Lycurgus*, *Solon*, and *Plato*, their forms of Government; *Orpheus* and *Homer* their Poetical fictions of the Gods. Particularly here flourished *Aristarchus* the famous and learned Gramarian; 2 *Herodian* a diligent Student and searcher into curious Arts; 3 *Ammonius*, the Master of *Plotinus*; 4 *Didymus* sirnamed *alceuteres*, for his indefatigable Industry in several Sciences; 5 *Marethon*, an old Historian, of whom we have nothing but some fragments; 6 *Appianus*, an Historian of a later date, whose works are extant; 7 *Didymus* the Grammarian; 8 *Cl. Ptolomæus* the Geographer; 9 *Achiles Statius* the Poet; 10 And before all the profound Philosophers *Mercurius*, sirnamed *Trismegistus*. And after their Conversion to the *Faith* of Christ, 1 *Pantonus* the first Reader of Divinity in the Schools of *Alexandria*; 2 *Origen*, and 3 *Clemens Alexandrius*, both skilled in the Universality of Learning; 4 *Dyonisius*; 5 *Athanasius*, and 6. *Cyril*; all three Bishops of *Alexandria*, and the glories of their several times.

This notwithstanding their Religion before the embracing of *Christianity* was the worst of *Gentilism*; these people not only worshiping the Sun, Moon, and the Stars of Heaven, Creatures of greatest Use and Glory; nor only sacrificing to *Jupiter*, *Hercules*, *Apollo*, and the rest of the Gods, (many of whom were Authors in their several times of some publick benefit to mankind) as did other *Gentiles*; but attributing Divine honours to *Crocodiles*, Snakes, Serpents, Garlick, Leeks and Onions. For which, as worthily condemned by the *Christian* Fathers, so most deservedly exposed unto publick scorn, by the Pens of the Poets;

Porrum & cepe nefas violare, & ladere morsu;
Felices populi, quibus hec nascuntur in Hortis
Numina! —— *Quis nescit quidlia demens*
Ægyptus portenta *colat*, &c.

Which may be rendred to this purpose;

To bite an Onion *or a* Leek, *is more*
Than deadly Sin. The Numen *they adore*
Grows in their Gardens. *And who doth not know*
What monstrous Shapes for gods in Egypt *go?*

But the god most esteemed by them, and by all sorts of the *Egyptians* the most adored, was *Apis*, a coal-black Oxe, with a white star in his forehead, the *Effigies* of an Eagle on his back, and two hairs only in his tail. But it seemeth his *godship* was not so much respected by strangers. For *Cambyses* when he conquered *Egypt*, ran him with his sword thorow the Thigh, and caused all his Priests to be scourged: And *Augustus* being here, would not vouchsafe to see him, saying, Θεὸς ἀλλ' οὐχὶ βοῦς πρόσκυνεῖται ἄνδρα, that the Gods and not the Oxen of *Egypt* were the object of his devotions. A speech most truly worthy so brave an Emperour.

But it is time we should proceed to a survey of these *Egyptians*, as they stand at the present, much differing from the ingenuity and Abilities of their predecessors; nothing but ignorance and Barbarism to be found amongst them. For such as have observed the nature of the Modern *Egyptians*, affirm them to have much degenerated from the worth of their Ancestors; prone to Innovations, devoted to Luxury, Cowardly, Cruel, addicted naturally to cavil; and to detract from whatsoever is good and eminent. In their dealing with other men, more observant then faithful, of a wit much inclining to craftiness, and very eager on their profit. Of person, of a mean stature, Tawny of complexion, and spare of body, but active and quick of foot. Such as inhabit in the Cities, apply themselves to *Merchandice*, grow rich by trading, reasonably well habited, and not much differing from the *Turks* in dress and fashion. Those in the Countrey, who betake themselves to *Husbandry*, affirmed to be a savage and nasty people, crusted over with dirt, and stinking of smoak; fit company for none but those of their own condition. Nothing now left amongst them of the *Arts* of their Ancestors, but an affectation which they have unto *Divinations*; to *Fortune-telling* great pretenders; by which, and some *cheating tricks* in which very well practised, great numbers of them wander from one place to another, and so get their livelyhood; occasioning the *Vagabonds* and straglers of other Nations, who pretend unto the same false Arts, to assume their names. The whole body of the Inhabitants now an *Hochpot* or Medley of many Nations *Moors*, *Arabians*, *Turks*, the natural *Egyptian* making up the least part of the reckoning.

The women of the same complexion with the men, but well formed and featured, did they not too much affect a seeming *Corpulency*; which if they cannot get in Flesh, they will have in Cloths. Very fruitful in Child-bearing, and quick of dispatch when they are in labour: some of them having three or four children at a Birth; those that are born in the eighth moneth living to good Age, and not in danger of death, as in other Countreys. Such of them as dwell in Cities cover their faces with black *Cypres* bespotted with red; their arms and ancles garnished with bracelets and hoops of Gold, Silver or some other Metal. Those in the Countrey for a Vail, use some dirty clout, having holes only for their eyes, which little is too much to see and abstain from loathing. Both in the City and the Countrey, contrary to the custom in all places else, the women use to make water standing, and the men couring on their knees.

The *Christian* Faith was first here planted by S. *Mark*, whom all Antiquity making the first Bishop of *Alexandria*.

His

His Succeſſors, till the time of *Heraclius* and *Dionyſius*, choſen continually out of the *Presbytery* or Cathedral-Clergy; afterwards out of the Clergy at large. Their Juriſdiction ſetled by a Canon of the Council of *Nice*, over all the Churches in the whole *Dioceſs* of *Egypt*, (taking the word *Dioceſs* in the civil Notion) containing *Lybia*, *Pentapolis* and *Egypt* ſpecially ſo called: to which, though *Epiphanius* adds *Thebais*, *Mareotica* and *Ammoniaca*, yet he adds nothing in effect; *Thebays* and *Mareotica* being parts of *Egypt*, as *Ammoniaca* was of *Lybia*. Afterwards the *Æthiopian* or *Abaſſine* Churches became ſubject to this *Patriarch* alſo, and do acknowledge to this day ſome relation to him. By the coming in of the *Saracens*, and the ſubjugation of this Countrey, *Chriſtianity* fell here into great decay; languiſhing ſo ſenſibly ſince thoſe times, eſpecially ſince the conqueſt of it by the *Turks*: that whereas *Borchardus* in his time reckoned three hundred thouſand *Chriſtians*; in the laſt eſtimate which was made of them, they were found to be fifty thouſand. This ſmall remainder of them, commonly called *Cophti*, either from the Greek word κόπτω *Scindo*, becauſe they retained the uſe of *Circumciſion* with their *Chriſtianity*; or from *Coptus* a chief Town in *Egypt*, in which many of them did reſide; or finally by *Abbreviation* from *Ægopthi* corrupted from *Ægyptii*, their own National name. They are all *Jacobites* in Sect, from whom they differ notwithſtanding in ſome particulars, in ſome from all *Chriſtians* Churches, in many from the Church of *Rome*. The points moſt proper to them, 1 Uſing *Circumci on* with their *Baptiſme*, but rather as a *National* than *Religious* cuſtome; though in that ſenſe alſo laid aſide, as is ſaid by ſome, by the perſwaſion of ſome *Legates* from the Pope of *Rome*, in a Synod held in *Caire*, *Anno* 1583. 2*ly*. Conferring all ſacred Orders under the *Prieſthood*, on Infants immediately after Baptiſm; their parents, till they come to ſixteen years of age, performing what they promiſed in their behalf, *viz*. Charity, faſting on Wedneſday and Friday, and four Lents of the year. 3*ly*. Reputing Baptiſm not to be of any efficacy, except miniſtred by the Prieſt, in the open Church, in what extremity ſoever. 4*ly*. And yet not *baptiſing* any children till the fortieth day, though they dye in the *interim*. 5*ly*. Giving to Infants the Sacrament of the *Euchariſt*, aſſoon as Chriſtned; 6*ly*. Contracting Marriages even in the ſecond Degree of Conſanguinity, without diſpenſation; 7*ly*. Obſerving not the *Lords day*, nor any of the *Feſtivals*, except only in *Cities*. 8*ly*. And in their Liturgies, reading the Goſpel written by *Nicodemus*. The points wherein they differ from the Church of *Rome*, 1 Adminiſtring the Sacrament of the *Lords Supper* under both kinds; 2*ly*. Adminiſtring in leavened bread; 3*ly*. Admitting neither *Extreme unction*, nor the uſe of the *Euchariſt*, to thoſe that are ſick; 4*ly*. Nor *Purgatory*, nor Prayer for the dead: 5*ly*. Nor uſing Elevation in the Act of adminiſtring: And 6*ly*. Reckoning the *Roman* Church for *Heretical*, and eſteeming no better of the *Latine*, then they do of the *Jews*. In theſe Opinions they continue hitherto againſt all *Opponents* and perſwaſions. For though *Baronius* in the end of the ſixth Tome of his *Annals*, hath regiſtred an Ambaſſage from *Marcus*, the then Patriarh of *Alexandria*, to Pope *Clement* the 8; wherein he is ſaid to have ſubmitted himſelf and the Churches of *Egypt* to the Pope of *Rome*; yet upon further ſearch made, it was found but a *Cheat*, deviſed to hold up the reputation of a ſinking cauſe. The Patriarch of *Alexandria* ſtill adhereth to his own Authority: though many of late, by the practice and Solicitation of ſome buſie *Friars*, have been drawn to be of the *Religion* of the Church of *Rome*, and to uſe her *Liturgies*.

Among the *Rarities* of this Countrey, ſome were the works of Nature, and ſome of induſtry and magnificence. Of this laſt kind I reckon the *Labyrinth*, the *Pyramides*, and the *Pharos*; all of them admirable in their ſeveral kinds, the envy of the Ages paſt, and the aſtoniſhment of the preſent. Look we firſt on the *Pyramides*, many in number, three more celebrated, and one the Principal of all; ſituate on the South of the City of *Memphis*, and on the Weſtern banks of *Nilus*. This laſt, the chief of the Worlds *ſeven wonders*, ſquare at the bottom, is ſuppoſed to take up eight Acres of ground. Every ſquare 300 ſingle Paces in length, aſcended by 255 ſteps, each ſtep above three foot high, and a breadth proportionable; growing by degrees narrower and narrower till we come to the top, and at the top conſiſting but of three Stones only, yet large enough for 60 men to ſtand upon. No Stone ſo little in the whole as to be drawn by any of our Carriages, yet brought thither from the *Arabian* Mountains. How brought, and by what Engine mounted is an equal wonder. Built for the Sepulcre of *Cheops*, an *Egyptian* King (as were the reſt for others of thoſe mighty Princes) who imployed in it day by day twenty years together, no fewer than 366000 men continually working on it. The charges which they put him to, in no other food than *Garlick*, Radiſhes, and Onions, being computed at a thouſand and eight hundred *Talents*. The next to this in bulk and beauty, is ſaid to be the work of a Daughter of *Cheops*, enabled (as *Herodotus* writeth) both to finiſh her Fathers undertaking, and raiſe her own unto the height, by the proſtitution of her body, requiring but one ſtone towards the Work from each one of her Cuſtomers; but the Tale unlikely. Nor is it of a greater Truth, though affirmed by *Joſephus*, and ſuppoſed by many good *Divines*, that the drudgery put upon the *Iſraelites* did concern theſe *Pyramides*: the *Materials* of theſe works being *Stone*; their imployment *Brick*. But paſt all doubt, advanced by thoſe conſiderate Princes upon good advice, and not for oſtentation only of their power and glories. For by this means they did not only eternize their memory to ſucceeding Ages, but for the preſent kept the Subject from ſloth and idleneſs; who being a people prone unto *Innovations*, were otherwiſe like enough to have fed that ſin in the change of Government, if not thus prudently diverted.

As for the *Labyrinth* it was built by *Pſammiticus* on the banks of the River *Nilus*, ſituate on the South of the *Pyramides*, and North of *Arſinoe*, or the City of *Crocodiles*. It contained within the compaſs of one continued Wall a thouſand Houſes, and twelve Royal Palaces, all covered with Marble; and had only one entrance; but innumerable turnings and returnings, ſometimes one over another; and all in a manner invious to ſuch as were not acquainted with them; the buiding more under ground, then above: the Marble ſtones laid with ſuch Art, that neither Wood nor Cement was employed in any part of the Fabrick; the Chambers ſo diſpoſed, that the doors upon their opening, did give a report no leſs terrible then a crack of Thunder. The main entrance all of white Marble, adorned with ſtately Columns, and moſt curious Imagery. The end at length being attained, a pair of ſtairs of 90 Steps conducted into a gallant *Portico*, ſupported with Pillars of *Theban* ſtone, which was the entrance into a fair and ſpacious Hall, (the place of their general Conventions) all of poliſhed Marble, ſet out with the *Statues* of their Gods. A work which afterwards was imitated by *Dædalus*, in the *Cretane* Labyrinth; though that fell as ſhort of the glories of this, as *Minos* was inferior unto *Pſammiticus* in Power and Riches.

Next unto theſe, I place the Iſle and Tower of *Pharos*, the Iſland oppoſite unto *Alexandria*, once a mile diſtant from the Land, but joyned to the Continent by *Cleopatra*, on this occaſion. The *Rhodians*, then Lords of the Sea,

Sea, uſed to exact ſome tribute or acknowledgment out of every Iſland within thoſe Seas, and conſequently out of this. Their Ambaſſadors ſent unto *Cleopatra* to demand this Tribute, ſhe detained with her ſeven days, under colour of celebrating ſome ſolemn *Feſtivals*; and in the mean time, by making huge dams and banks in the Sea, with incredible both charge and ſpeed; united the Iſland to the ſhore; which finiſhed, ſhe ſent the *Rhodians* away empty-handed, with this witty *Jeer*, telling them, That *they were to take Toll of the Iſlands, and not of the Continent.* A Work of great Rarity and Magnificence, both for the bigneſs of it, taking up ſeven furlongs of Ground, and for that cauſe called *Heptaſtadium*; and that incredible ſpeed wherewith it was finiſhed. As for the *Watch-Tower*, called in *Greek* and *Latine Pharos*, by the name of the Iſland; it was built by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*, for the benefit of Sailers, (the Seas upon that coaſt being very unſafe, and full of Flats) to guide them over the Bar of *Alexandria*. Deſervedly eſteemed another of the Worlds ſeven Wonders; the other five being, 1 the *Mauſolæum*, 2 the Temple of *Epheſus*, 3 the Walls of *Babylon*, 4 the *Coloſſus* of *Rhodes*, and 5 the *Statue* of *Jupiter Olympius*. This Watch-Tower, or *Pharos* was of wonderful height, aſcended by degrees, and having many Lanthorns at the top, wherein Lights burned nightly, as a direction to ſuch as ſailed by Sea. The *Materials* were white Marble; the chief Architect, *Soſtratus* of *Gnidos*, who ingraved on the Work this Inſcription: Soſtratus *of* Gnidos, *the Son of* Dexiphanes, *to the Gods Protectors, for the ſafeguard of Sailers*. This Inſcription he covered with *Plaiſter*, and thereon ingraved the Name and Title of the King, the Founder: to the end that the Kings Name being ſoon waſted and waſhed away, his own, which was written in Marble, might be eternized to Poſterity as the Founder of it. Nigh unto this *Pharos*, *Cæſar* purſuing *Pompey* into *Egypt*, and having diſcontented the King thereof, by demanding pay for his Souldiers, had his Navy which here lay at Anchor, aſſaulted by *Achilles*, one of young *Ptolomies* Servants, *Cæſar* himſelf being then in *Alexandria*. Hearing of the Skirmiſh, he haſted to the *Pharos*, meaning to ſuccour his Navy in perſon: but the *Egyptians* making towards him on all ſides, he was compelled to leap into the Sea, and ſwim for his life. And though (to avoid their Darts) he ſometimes ducked, yet held he ſtill his left hand above the water, and in it divers Books, which he carried ſafe unto his Ships, and animating his men, got the Victory. It is ſaid that *Egypt* hath only two doors; the one by Land, which is the ſtrong Tower of *Peleuſium*, or *Damiata*; the other by Water, which is this *Pharos*: *Tota* Ægyptus *maritimo acceſſu*, Pharo; *pedeſtre vero*, Peluſio, *velut clauſtris munita exiſtimatur*, ſaith *Oppius*.

Amongſt the Rarities of Nature, we may reckon thoſe ſtrange Beaſts and Fiſhes, proper almoſt unto this Country, *i.e.* the *Crocodile*, the *Ichneumon*, the *Hippopotamus* (or Sea-horſe) the *Ibis*, the *Aſpe*, and many ſeveral ſorts of Serpents. To ſpeak of which particularly were a Work more proper to a *Natural* Hiſtory, than a *Geographical*. And yet the *Crocodile*, more proper unto *Egypt* than all the reſt, cannot be parted with in ſilence: A Creature of a ſtrange nature, hatched of an Egg no bigger then that of a *Turkie*, and yet increaſing to the length of thirty foot; his tail as long as all the reſt of his Body, with which he is accuſtomed to inchain his prey, and draw it into the River; his Feet armed with Claws, and his Back with impenetrable Scales; his Mouth ſo wide (of which he moveth only the upper Jaw) that he is able to ſwallow a Heifer; equally uſed to both Elements, but better ſighted in the Water, then on the Land; Cowardly, though a Creature of prey, and ſuch as uſually flies from thoſe which dare ſet upon him; and eaſily vanquiſhed by the *Dolphin*, who ſwimming under the water woundeth him in the belly, where aſſaultable only. Whether ſo eaſily deſtroyed by the *Ichneumon* (a kind of Water-Rat) skipping into his mouth, and gnawing his way out again, as old Writers ſay, hath of late been queſtioned.

Of leſs diſpute, but not leſs *Rarity* in Nature, are theſe that follow: 1 That in all this Country it never raineth; or if a Cloud do ſometimes happen to diſſolve upon them, it bringeth on their Bodies innumerable Sores, and ſtrange Diſeaſes. 2 The annual overflowing of the River *Nilus*, and the many memorable things which are ſaid to follow on the ſame. Of which it is thus ſaid by *Lucan*;

Terra ſuis contenta bonis, non indiga Mercis,
Aut Jovis; *in ſolo tanta eſt fiducia* Nilo:

The Earth content with its own Wealth, doth crave
No Forreign Mart, *nor* Jove *himſelf*; *they have*
Their hopes alone in Nilus *fruitful Wave.*

This *Nilus* from the 15 day of *June*, ſwelleth above his Banks, for the ſpace of 40 days; and in as many more, gathereth his waters again to their proper bounds. If it flow not to the height of fifteen *Cubits*, then the Earth is deficient in her abundance of increaſe, for want of moiſture: and if the waters ſurmounted the *ſuperficies* of the Earth, more than ſeventeen Cubits, then like a drunken man, it cannot produce its natural operation, as having his ſtomach (as it were) overlaid and ſurcharged with too much Liquor: but if the Mean be granted, there is no Country which can brag of the like Fertility; the Corn being all houſed before the 20th of *May*. During this *Inundation*, they keep their Beaſts and Cattel on the tops of ſuch little hills, which either the Providence of Nature, or the Induſtry of Man, hath prepared for them; where they abide till the decreaſe of the Waters: and on theſe Hills alſo ſtand moſt of their Towns and Villages, appearing in the time of the Flood like ſo many Iſlands; and holding a Commerce and continual Traffick by the entercourſe of Boats and Shallops, by which they do tranſport their Marketable Commodities from one place to another. And if it chance at any time, that the River doth not thus over-flow the Country, it is not onely the Fore-runner to a following dearth, but prognoſticateth ſome enſuing miſchief to the Prince and State: Confirmed by the teſtimony of good and creditable Authors, who have told us that in the 10th and 11th years of *Cleopatra*, the River increaſed not at all: and that it was noted as a Fore-teller of the Fall of thoſe two Great, but Unfortunate Princes, *Cleopatra* and her Sweet-heart *Antonius*. A ſecond Commodity which ariſeth from the overflowings of *Nilus*, is health, which it bringeth with it in moſt parts of the Countrey; the Plague, which oftentimes miſerably rageth upon the firſt day of the Flood, abating inſtantly: inſomuch that whereas 500 may die of that Diſeaſe in the City of *Caire* but the day before, there dieth not one of it on the day following. A third wonder in this River is, that keeping its waters united in a Body together, after it falleth into the Sea, it changeth the colour of the *Mediterranean*, further than any part of it can be ſeen from the ſhore. Add unto theſe, the many living Creatures which the ſlime thereof engendereth, on the withdrawing of the River to its natural Channel: whereof *Ovid* thus;

Sic ubi deſeruit madidos Septemfluus *agros*
Nilus, *& antiquo ſua flumina reddidit alvo;*
Plurima Culturæ verſis Animalia *glebis*
Inveniunt.

Which I *English* thus:

So when the Seven-mouth'd Nile *the fields forſakes,*
And to his ancient Channel him betakes;
The Plough-men many living Creatures find,
By turning up the Mud that's left behind.

Amongſt which Creatures ſo engendred, are ſaid to be ſuch innumerable heaps of *Frogs*, that if Nature, or *Divine Providence* rather, did not furniſh this Country with a proportionable number of *Storks*, by whom they are greedily devoured, the *Plague* of *Frogs* would come a ſecond time upon them to their utter deſtruction.

On the Banks of this River alſo grew thoſe ſedgy Weeds called *Pspyri*, of which Paper was made in former times, which I reckon amongſt the Rarities of *Egypt* alſo, but a Rarity of Art and Nature mixed. They divided it into thin flakes, (into which it naturally parteth) then laying them on a Table, and moiſtening them with the glutinous waters of the River, they preſſed them together, and after dried them in the Sun. By means of which invention, Books being eaſier to be tranſcribed and reſerved then formerly, *Ptolomy Philadelphus* made his excellent Library at *Alexandria*: and underſtanding how *Attalus* King of *Pergamus*, by the benefit of this *Egyptian* Paper, ſtrived to exceed him in that kind of Magnificence, prohibited the carrying of it out of *Egypt*. Hereupon *Attalus* invented the uſe of Parchments, made of the Skins of Calves and Sheep; from the materials called *Membranæ*, and *Pergamena* from the place where they were invented. The convenience whereof was the cauſe, that in ſhort time the *Egyptian* Paper was worn out of uſe; in place whereof ſucceeded our Paper made of Rags; the Authors of which excellent Invention, our Progenitors have forgotten to commit to memory. Before the uſe of theſe Papers and Parchments were firſt made known, I obſerve three ways of Writing amongſt the Antients, (I hope I ſhall be pardoned this ſhort digreſſion.) 1. On the inward ſide of the Bark of a Tree, which is in *Latine* called *Liber*; and whence Books have the name of *Libri*. 2*ly*. On Tables framed out of the main body of a Tree, which being called *Caudex*, gave the *Latines* occaſion to call a Book *Codex*. 3*ly*. They uſed to cover their Tables over with Wax, and thereon to write what they had to ſignifie; from whence a Letter-carrier was named *Tabellarius*. The Inſtrument wherewith they wrote, was a ſharp-pointed Iron, which they called *Stylus*; a word now ſignifying (the Original derived from hence) the peculiar kind of *Phraſe* which any man uſeth; as *Negligens ſtylus*, in *Quintilian*; and *Exercitatus ſtylus*, in *Cicero*. I ſhould have alſo noted, that they uſed ſometimes to write in *Leaves*; That the *Sybils* Oracles being ſo written and ſcattered abroad, had the name of *Sybillæ Folia*; and that from thence we have the phraſe of *a Leaf of Paper*. But of this Argument enough.

Now to theſe Rarities of Nature, and Magnificent Induſtry, moſt of them near the River *Nile*, or relating to it, we are to add another of far greater moment, and ſuch as plainly ſeemeth to be ſupernatural, which is, that above five miles from the City of *Caire*, there is a place, in which, on every *Good Friday* yearly, there appear the Heads, Legs, and Armes of Men riſing out of the Ground, to a very great number: which if any man draw near unto them, or touch any of them, will ſhrink again into the Earth. Suppoſed by ſome to be an *Impoſture* of ſome *Water-Men* only; who ſtick them over-night in the Sands, and keeping them ſecret to themſelves, obtain thereby the ferrying over of many thouſands of people to behold the ſight. But *Stephen Duplеis*, a ſober and diſcerning man in the opinion of *Goulartius*, who reports it from him, conceived otherwiſe of it: affirming ſoberly that he was an Eye-witneſs of the wonder, that he had touched divers of theſe riſing Members; and that (as he was once ſo doing to the head of a Child) a man of *Caire* cried out unto him, *Kali, Kali, ants materaſde*; that is to ſay, *Hold, hold, you know not what you do*. A ſtrange *Forerunner* (if it be of undoubted credit) of the *Reſurrection* of the whole Body, preſented yearly, in the *Riſing* of theſe ſeveral parts.

Having thus done with the *Rarities* concerning *Nilus*, and that great increaſe of wealth which accrued thereby to all the Country, in the improvement of the natural Commodities of the Earth: let us next look on the *Red-Sea*, and the great Riches which that brought unto this Kingdom, in the way of *Trading*. A Sea whereof we have ſpoken already, as to the reaſon of the name, the extent thereof, and the ſeveral Iſlands contained in it, and therefore ſhall not need to repeat it here. That which is proper to to this Country, and to this alone, is the fame it hath for the miraculous paſſage of the *Iſraelites* through it as upon dry-land, and the drowning of *Pharaoh Cenchres* and all his people, at large commemorated in the Books of Holy Scriptures: as alſo for that through it the Spices of *India* and *Arabia*, were brought to *Alexandria*; and thence by the *Venetians* diſperſed through all *Europe*, *Africa*, and *Aſia*. I ſuppoſe I ſhall not do amiſs to ſet down Hiſtorically out of *Galuano*, a relation of the beginning, continuance, and period of the Traffick through this Sea, by which all *Europe* formerly received ſo great Commodity. *Know then* (ſaith he) *that* Ptolomy Philadelphus, 277 *years before the* Incarnation, *was the firſt that ſet on foot this Navigation:* Coſir *(of old called* Myos, Hormos*) on the Sea-ſide being the ordinary Haven out of which they hoyſed Sail for* India; *and into which they returned, full fraught with their Commodities. From hence they were by Land conveighed to* Coptus, *and ſo down the* Nile *to* Alexandria, *by which Traffick the City grew exceeding Rich; inſomuch that the Cuſtom-houſe there yielded* Ptol. Auletes 7 *Millions and an half of Gold yearly. The* Romans *being Lords of* Egypt, *enhanſed the Cuſtoms to double that ſum: they ſent into* India *every year (as* Pliny *witneſſeth)* 120 *Ships, whoſe lading was worth* 1200000 *Crowns; and there was made in return of every Crown* 100. *When the* Vandals, Lombards, Goths *and* Moors *had torn in pieces the* Roman *Empire, all Commerce between Nations began to ceaſe. At laſt perceiving the inconvenience, they began anew; conveighing the* Indian *Commodities partly by Land, partly by Water, unto* Capha *in* Taurica Cherſoneſus, *belonging to the* Genoeſe. *Next* Trabezond *was made the Mart-Town, then* Sarmachand *in* Zagataie, *where the* Indian, Turkiſh, *and* Perſian *Merchants meet to barter Wares: the* Turks *conveighing their Merchandiſe to* Damaſcus, Barutti, *and* Aleppo; *from whence the* Venetians *tranſported it to* Venice, *making that the common* Emporium *of* Chriſtendom. *Once again*, viz. *Anno* 1300. *the* Soldans *of* Egypt *reſtored the Paſſage by the* Red-Sea; *which having continued more than* 200 *years, is now diſcontinued by the* Portugal, Spaniards, Engliſh *and* Dutch, *which bring them to their ſeveral homes by the back-ſide of* Africk: *So that not only the Traffick of* Alexandria *is almoſt decayed, and the Riches of the* Venetians *much diminiſhed; but the Drugs and Spices have loſt much of their Vertue, as impaired by too much moiſture in ſo long a Voyage*. So much ſaith he, touching the courſe and alteration of this Trading: to which I ſhall take leave to add, that for the better and more quick return of ſuch Commodities as were uſually brought into this Sea; ſome of the Kings of *Egypt* attempted formerly to cut a main Channel from it to the River *Nilus*, paſſable by Ships of greateſt burden; the marks of whoſe proud attempts are remaining ſtill. *Seſoſtris* was the firſt who deſigned the work, having

before

before with good ſucceſs cut many Trenches from the River, and ſome Navigable, into many places of the Country; by which unprofitable Mariſhes were drained, the Country ſtrengthened, Trade made eaſie, and the People better furniſhed with water than in former times. *Darius* the great *Perſian* Monarch, ſeconded the ſame *Project*; ſo did one of the *Ptolomies*; The like is ſaid of a Capricious *Portugal* in theſe latter times. But they all gave it over on the ſame conſideration; which was a fear, leſt by letting in the *Red-Sea* they might drown the Country, and perhaps make a ſecond Deluge in the parts of *Greece* and *Aſia Minor* which lay neareſt to them: that Sea being found to be much higher than the *Mediterranean*, and the flats of *Egypt*.

But here we are to underſtand, that all which hitherto hath been ſpoken concerning *Egypt*, relates to *Egypt* ſtrictly, and ſpecially ſo called; containing only ſo much of the County of *Egypt* as lieth upon the Banks and Channels of the River *Nilus*: and not to all that tract of ground which lay betwixt the *Red-Sea* and the borders of *Lybia*, which was reckoned in the compaſs of the Kingdom of *Egypt*, much leſs as comprehending *Lybia* and *Cyrene* alſo, though now accounted Members of that Body, and anciently parts or Provinces of the *Dioceſs* of it. For *Egypt*, in the largeſt ſenſe and acception of the word, may be, and generally is divided into theſe three parts, *viz.* 1 *Egypt*, in the general Notion, or the Kingdom of *Egypt*, extended on the *Mediterranean*, from the borders of *Idumea* to the *Roman Lybia*, or *Marmarica*, lying Weſtward of the mouth of *Nilus*, called *Heracleoticum*: and on the borders of *Æthiopia Superior*, from the ſaid *Red-Sea*, to the Country of *Lybia Interior*. 2 *Lybia* or *Marmarica*, lying betwixt *Egypt* properly ſo called, and the Province of *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*. And 3 *Cyrene* or *Pentapolis*, reaching from that *Lybia* to the greater *Syrtis*; where it bordered with that part of the *African Dioceſs*, which is now called the Kingdom of *Tunis*. And in this firſt acception of it we ſhall now proceed to a Survey of the Mountains and chief Cities; which done, we ſhall deſcribe the other in their proper places; and then unite them all in the *General Story*.

As for the Mountains of this Country, there are very many: there were no living elſe for the people in the time of the overflowings of the River. The principal of thoſe, 1 Thoſe called *Montes Lybici*, lying in a long Chain on the Weſt of *Nilus*; 2 *Alabaſtrinus*; 3 *Prophyritus*; 4 *Troicus*; 5 *Baſanitus* on the Eaſt thereof. Betwixt theſe Hills the courſe of the River is ſo hemmed in on both ſides, that at the upper part of the ſtream, where it firſt entreth into *Egypt*, the ſpace betwixt the Mountains, is not above four miles broad; enlarging afterwards to eight, then about *Caire* to thirty ſeven; then opening wider and wider, till we come to the breaches of the *Delta*, as the Country doth increaſe in breadth. On theſe and other of the Mountains and leſſer Hills, ſtand moſt part of the Towns, the receptacles of the Country-people in the time of the Flood, riſing when leaſt, to fifteen *Cubits*, or ſeven yards and an half.

Rivers of Note here are none but *Nilus*, not indeed any one but that; that being ſufficient of it ſelf to enrich this Country, which otherwiſe would be nothing but a *Sandy Deſart*. The Head thereof not in the *Mountains of the Moon*, as was once ſuppoſed, but in the Lake *Zembre* in *Æthiopia interior*; paſſing from thence through the *Higher Æthiopia*, or *Habaſſine* Empire, till it falls at laſt into this Country; and running in one continual *Channel* (excepting where it brancheth into little Iſlands, as it ſometimes doth) before its influx into the Sea, is divided into ſeven great ſtreams, opening into the Sea with ſo many mouths. Namely; 1 *Heracleoticum*; 2 *Bolviticum*; 3 *Sebaniticum*; 4 *Patinicum*; 5 *Mendicum*; 6 *Canopicum*; 7 *Peluſiacum*. The firſt and laſt of theſe Currents (which are the only two now left) being far diſtant from the other, and growing into one at the firſt point of the Rivers diviſion, make that part of *Egypt* which is called *Delta*, becauſe to ſuch as come to this Country out of *Greece*, *Italy*, or *Anatolia*, it reſembleth that Letter in the *Greek Alphabet*. Now becauſe *Nilus* runneth in its certain *Channels*, that the People have no other water to make uſe of for all neceſſities; there are many bye-trenches and deep Ditches cut in convenient places (by the Care and Magnificence of their Kings) to receive its Waters, and to communicate them to the people, who know almoſt no other drink then the Waters thereof, and indeed they need not; the Waters of this River being of ſuch excellent, both taſte and virtue, that when *Peſcennius Niger* ſaw his Souldiers murmur for want of Wine; *What* (ſaid he) *do you grumble for Wine, having the Waters of* Nile *to drink?*

But beſide the Waters of this River, and the Trenches of it, the people are ſupplied with that Commodity by Lakes and artificial *Channels*, which ſerve for watering their Cattel, tempering of Mortar for their Buildings, and other ſuch inferior uſes; ſometimes perhaps for drink for the poorer ſort, who cannot be conveniently furniſhed with the waters of *Nile*. Amongſt the Trenches (which were many, as before was ſaid) thoſe of moſt eſtimation were the Works of *Ptolomy*, and the Emperour *Trajan*: the firſt falling into that branch of the *Nile*, which maketh the Iſle called *Heracleotis*: the other into the main body of it not far from *Caire*. Theſe two, by reaſon of the many freſh Springs which fall into them, have the name of Rivers in old Authors: and betwixt theſe was ſeated the Land of *Goſhen*, extending from *Nilus* to the *Red-Sea* on the Eaſt and Weſt. The chief of Note amongſt the Lakes, were thoſe called, 1 *Mareotis*, not far from *Alexandria*, by *Pliny* called *Arapotes*, *Maria* by *Ptolomy*; all which names are now loſt, and changed into that of *Lago di Antacon*, from a Town of that name near unto it. 2 *Lacous*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which in the Book of *Maccabes* is called *Aſphar*, lib. 1. cap. 9. And 3 *Moeris*, now called *Bucharia*, more memorable than the reſt. In compaſs 3500 furlongs, 50 fatham deep, in the midſt whereof were two *Pyramides*, 50 fathams above the water, and as much beneath in: the fiſh of this Lake for one ſix months in the year, is ſaid to be worth twenty of their pounds a day to the Kings Exchequer; for the other ſix, each day a Talent. 4 The Lakes called *Amari*, into which the Trench, or River called *Ptolomeus*, doth diſcharge its waters, conveyed from thence into the *Red-Sea*.

The whole divided anciently into two parts onely. 1 That called *Delta*, betwixt the two extream branches of the River *Nilus*, the form of which Letter it reſembleth to him who ſtanding on the Sea-ſhore, could take a view of it, as before was ſaid. 2 That called *Thebais* from *Thebe*, the principal City of it, comprehending all the reſt of the courſe of that River, ſhut up on both ſides with the Mountains ſpoken of before. But this Diviſion leaving out all thoſe parts hereof, which lay on the Eaſt-ſide towards the *Arabian Gulfs*, and on the Weſt, as far as to the borders of *Lybia Marmarica*: the *Macedonians* laying it all together, divided it into 18 *Cantreds*, or Diſtricts, by them called *Nomi*; increaſing in the time of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, to 46. *Ortelius* out of divers Authors hath found 20 more. When conquered by the *Romans*, and made a *Dioceſs* of the Empire: it was divided into four Provinces, (not reckoning *Marmarica* and *Cyrene* into the accompt) that is to ſay, 1 *Ægyptus*, ſpecially ſo called, containing all the *Delta*, and the Diſtrict or *Nomus* of *Mareotica*, bordering on *Marmarica*. 2 *Auguſtanica*, ſo called from *Auguſtus Ceſar*, on the Eaſt of the *Delta*, betwixt it and *Arabia Petræa*. 3 *Arcadia*, ſo called from the Emperour *Arcadius*, in whoſe time it was taken out of

Thebais, lying on both sides of the River, from the *Delta* to the City of *Antinous*. 4 *Thebais*, extending on both sides of the River from the borders of *Lybia Marmarica* to the *Red-Sea*, (as the other doth) from *Antinous* unto *Æthiopia*. Divided otherwise by some into *Superiorem*, reaching from *Æthiopia* to the City of *Antinous*, *Mediam*, stretching thence to the point of the *Delta*; and *Inferiorem*, which comprehendeth all the rest. But at this time, that part hereof which lieth on the South and East of *Caire*, is called *Saud*, or *Salid*; honoured heretofore with the dwelling of the ancient *Pharaohs*, because neerest unto *Æthiopia*, their most puissant Neighbour. 2 That betwixt *Caire*, *Rosetta*, and *Alexandria*, hath the name of *Errifia*, wherein the *Ptolomean* Princes did most reside; because most convenient for receiving Supplies of Men from the States of *Greece*. And finally, that from *Caire*, to *Tenese* and *Damista*, is now called *Maremna*, in which the *Turks* and *Mamalucks* made the seat of their Empire; because more neighbouring to the Christians, whom they stood in fear of, as likeliest to invade them upon that side. In the whole Country there was reckoned in the time of *Amasis* the Second, no fewer then 20000 Cities: but if the Towns and Villages be not reckon'd in, I should much doubt of the accompt. By *Diodorus Siculus*, it is said, that there were 3000 in his time: but *Ortelius* on a diligent search, finds 300 only.

Those of most note in the Province of *Augustanica*, 1 *Pelusium*, the most Eastern City of *Egypt* towards *Idumæa*, situate on the most Eastern Channel of *Nilus*, called hence *Pelusiacum*; by *Ammianus* to be the work of *Peleus* the Father of *Achibes*, commanded by the Gods to purge himself in the Lake adjoyning, for the murder of his Brother *Phocus*. Accounted for the chief door of *Egypt* towards the Land, as *Pharos* was to those who came thither by Sea; the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Augustanica*, the birth-place of *Ptolomy* the Geographer, and the Episcopal Sea of St. *Isidore*, surnamed *Peluseotes*, whose eloquent and pious Epistles are still extant. Out of the ruines hereof (if not the same under another Title) arose, 2 *Damiata*, memorable for the often Sieges laid unto it by the Christian Armies; for none more then that under *John de Brenne*, the Titulary King of *Jerusalem*, and the Princes of *Europe*, *Anno* 1220. During which (being of 18 months continuance) the Famine and the Pestilence so extreamly raged, that the Town in a manner was dispeopled, before the Besiegers knew any thing of their condition: till in the end two ventrous Souldiers, admiring the silence and solitude of so great a City, in a Bravado scal'd the Walls; but found no man to make resistance. The next day the whole Army entred, where they found in every house, and every corner of the streets, whole heaps of dead bodies, none to give them burial: A lamentable and ruthful spectacle! 3 *Heroes*, or *Civitas Heroum*, in the *Arabian Isthmus*; at the very bottom of the *Gulf*; remarkable for the first interview betwixt *Jacob* and *Joseph* after his coming into *Egypt*. 4 *Heliopolis*, or the *City of the Sun*, now called *Betsames* in the Scriptures: *On*, of which *Potipher* the Father of *Arsenath* (whom *Pharaoh* married unto *Joseph*) was Priest, or Prince, as is said, *Gen.* 41. 45. Given (as *Josephus* telleth us) for an habitation to the Sons of *Jacob*; by consequence one of the chief Cities of the Land *Rameses*, or *Gosben*: and memorable in times succeeding for a publick Temple built for the *Jews*, with the consent of *Ptolomy*, surnamed *Philadelphus*, by *Onias* the High-Priest, then dispossessed of his Authority and Office by the power of *Antiochus*: a Temple much esteemed by the *Hellenists*, or *Greekish Jews*; and though Schismatical at the best in its first original, yet not Schismatical and Idolatrous too, as was that of Mount *Garizim*. 5 *Bubastis*, somewhat more North then *Heliopolis*, by some of the ancients called *Avaris*, by the Scriptures *Pibeseth*, another City of that tract; now better known by the name of *Zioth*: supposed to be the same which the *Notitia* calleth *Castra Judæorum*; memorable in times of *Paganism*, for a famous Temple of *Diana*. 6 *Arsione*, on the shore of the *Red-Sea*, so called in honour of *Arsinoe*, Sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife to *Lysimachus* King of *Thrace*; afterwards called *Cleopatris* in honour of Queen *Cleopatra*; now better known by the name of *Sues*. Of great commerce and trading in the time of the *Ptolomies*: Now almost abandoned; and would be utterly deserted, were it not made the station of the *Turkish* Gallies, that command the *Gulf*: which being framed at *Caire* of such Timber as is brought thither by Sea from the Woods of *Cilicia*, and sometimes from the shores of the *Euxine* Sea; are again taken in pieces, carried from *Caire* unto this City on the backs of Camels, and here joyned together. Conceived to be the same which in former times was called *Baal-Zephon* (of which see *Exod.* 14. 9.) the last incamping place of the Tribes of *Israel*, who from hence passed through the *Red-Sea*, as upon dry Land. 7 *Gleba Rubra*, by the *Greeks* called *Hiera Bolus*, and sometimes *Erythra Bolus* also, more near the *Latin*; the redness of the soil giving name unto it: situate on the River or Trench of *Tralon*: more memorable for a misfortune that befel it than for any thing else; purposely burnt by *Amenophes* the fifth, upon this occasion. Being blind, he was assured by some of his Wizzards, that if he washed his eyes with the Urine of a Woman, which had never known any but her own Husband, he should be restored unto his sight. After a long search and many vain trials, he met with one whose water cured him; whom he took to Wife: and causing all the rest whom he had made trial of, to be brought together to this Town, he set fire on the City, and burnt both it and all the women there assembled; which Tale, if true, is little to the honour of the Dames of *Egypt*.

Places of most note and observation in the Province of *Egypt*, strictly and specially so called, are 1 *Alexandria*, situate Westward of the *Delta*, over against the Isle of *Pharos*, and built upon a Promontory, thrusting it self into the Sea; with which on the one side, and the Lake *Maretis* on the other, it is exceeding well defended: the Work of *Alexander* the Great, and by him peopled with *Greeks*, immediately after his Conquest of *Egypt*. The Regal Seat of the *Ptolomies*, whilst *Egypt* did maintain the State of a Kingdom: and afterwards the Metropolis of it, when a *Roman* Diocess. Adorned with many stately Buildings; of which most memorable the *Serapium*, (or Temple of their God *Serapis*) for sumptuous workmanship, and the magnificence of the Fabrick, inferiour to none but the *Roman* Capitol: and next to that, the Library erected by *Philadelphus*, who had storied it with 700000 Volumes; unfortunately burnt in the War against *Julius Cæsar*. A City of great Trading, and infinite Riches: μέγιστον ἐμπόριον ἁπάντων the greatest Empory of the World, as is said by *Strabo*. Wanton with which, the Citizens so abounded in all licentiousness both of life and speech, that they spared not the Emperor himself if he came in their way. But they paid dearly for their folly. For *Caracalla* not so patient of a Contumely as some wiser Princes, having felt the lashes of their tongues, when he was amongst them, assembled all the youth of the City, as if out of them he would have chosen some to attend his Person: and suddenly gave command to his Souldiers, to put them all to the Sword. A slaughter so great and universal, that the River *Nilus* coloured with the blood of the slain, might not improperly at that time be called a *Red-Sea*. In this City, *Anno* 180. *Dantenus* read both Divinity and Philosophy to all such as would come to hear him: which as it is conceived to give the first hint to the instituting of

Univer-

Universities in the rest of Christendom; so from that small beginning the Schools of *Alexandria* grew so great and eminent, that *Nazianzen* calleth them πανδεκτας και δημιουργους ἐπιστημων, the Shop, or Work-house, as it were, of all kinds of Learning. Much short of what it was even in point of Trading, especially since the diversion of the Spice Trade from the Bay of *Arabia*; and utterly divested of those beauties which once it had. Inhabited at the present by a mixture of Nations, *Moors*, *Jews*, *Turks*, *Greeks*, and *Christian Cophtives*; more for some little gain which they reap by Traffick, than any pleasure in the place. Now called *Scanderia* by the *Turks*, remarkable only for the house of the Patriarch (though he dwell for the most part in *Caire*) and a Church in which St. *Mark* their first Bishop was said to be buried. 2 *Canopus*, situate East of *Alexandria*, and on the principal branch of the *Nile*, called *Heracleoticum*; so called from *Canopus* the Pilot of *Menelaus*, who having suffered shipwrack upon this Coast, was there interred by his Master. A Town so branded in old times, for varieties of all kind of beastliness, and Luxury, that as *Seneca* very well observed, he that avoided the viciousness and debauchery of it, could not scape the infamy: the very place administring matter for suspicion. 3 *Rosetta*, on the same branch of the River, and not far from *Canopus*, out of whose ruines it arose; built by a Slave of one of the *Egyptian Caliphs*; unwalled, and destitute of all Fortifications, but plentifully accommodated with all sorts of Commodities, and well frequented by the Merchant. 4 *Nicopolis*, now called *Munia*, the Monument of some eminent Victory, and probably of the Conquest of *Egypt* by the *Macedonians*; the name being *Greek*, and the Town standing within 30 Furlongs of *Alexandria*. 5 *Aphrodites* and *Aphroditopolis*, so called from *Venus*, who was here worshipped: situate betwixt the two middle branches of the *Nile*. 6 *Sais*, betwixt the same branches of the River also: whence that *Nomus* or Division had the name of *Saites*. It is now called *Sibnit*, or *Signiti*. 7 *Plinthine*, on the Sea-side; and 8 *Hieras*, more within the Land: the chief Towns of the Region called *Maræotica*.

In *Arcadia*, called also *Heptanomus*, because it contained seven of the *Nomi* or Divisions, into which *Egypt* was distributed by the *Macedonians*, and the places of most note were and are, 1 *Memphis*, on the Western banks of *Nile*, not far from the sharp point of the *Delta*, where the River first beginning to divide it self; the Regal City of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*: by one of which who removed the Seat-Royal from *Thæba* hither, it is said to be built, and called thus by the name of his Daughter. In compass, when it flourished about 20 miles; great, populous, and adorned with a world of Antiquities; amongst others with the Temples of *Apis*, *Venus*, and *Serapis*, beset with *Sphynxes*: now nothing left of the Ruines of it, but the Statutes of some monstrous Resemblances, sufficient to shew what it hath been formerly. The *Pyramides* before described, stood not far from hence; to which the Poet relateth, saying,

Barbara Pyramidum sileat miracula Memphis.

Let barbarous Memphis *brag no more*
Of her Pyramides, *as before.*

2. *Babylon*, called for distinctions-sake, *Babylon Ægyptiorum*, built on the other side of the River, and somewhat more unto the North: said to be founded by *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch, the first that made this Kingdom stoop to the yoke of a Foreigner; and by him peopled with some *Babylonians* or *Chaldæans* transplanted hither. Great, as appeareth by the ruines; amongst which, many of the Christian Temples and Monasteries do lie there in rubbish; the Castle whereof served long after for the Garrison of the three Legions, appointed to defend this Country in the time of the *Romans*. This, thought by some to be the *Babylonian* mentioned by Saint *Peter*, in his first Epistle Chap. *ult.* which the following words, *and Mark my Son*, (Saint *Mark* being the first Bishop of the *Alexandrians*, and the Apostle of *Egypt*) may make somewhat probable, but the truth and reality hereof, I dispute not now. Out of the ruines of this City arose three *Caire*, now, and for many Ages past, the chief of this Country: raised from the ashes of old *Babylon* by the *Chaliphs* of *Egypt*, and by the *Mamalucks* made the Seat-Royal of their Kingdom. In compass not above eight miles; but full of Streets, the number of which said to be 18000. every one of them fortified with a Gate at each end; which being well barred, made every several street an impregnable Fortress. Found so by *Selymus* the first, when he conquered *Egypt*, who spent three days in forcing his way through it with his numerous Army. The private buildings very mean; the publick, especially the *Mosques*, beyond thought magnificent. Visited every seventh year with a dreadful Pestilence; yet still so populous, that it is conceived to be in good health, if there die not above a thousand in a day, or three hundred thousand within that year. Adorned with many delicate Orchards both within the City and without; full of variety of contentments, and neighboured by a pleasant Lake; but made more pleasant by the company which meet there in Boats, for their mutual solace and delights. Fortified at the South end with a stately Castle (the Palace of the *Mamaluck Sultans*) situate on the top of a Mountain; overlooking the City, and a great part of the Country also. So large, that it seemeth a City of it self, immured with high walls, divided into many partitions of several Courts, in times past the places of exercise; and entred by doors of Iron. Destroyed for the most part by *Selimus*, for fear of giving opportunity to some rebellion; or envying the *Mamalucks* the glory of having been the Masters of so brave a Mansion: that which is left, now serving for the habitation of the *Turkish Bassa*, who hath the Government of this Kingdom. 4 *Metared*, or *Matarea*, not far from *Caire*; the soil whereof is said to be so rich and fertile, that the People are fain to cover it with Sand or Gravel, so moderating the extream rankness of it. 5 *Arsinoe*, on the West-side of the *Nile*, and somewhat South of the famous *Labyrinth* before described; called also (to difference it from another of the same name on the shore of the *Red-Sea*) the *City of Crocodiles*, in regard of the divine honours there done that Monster. 6 *Nilopolis*, or *Nili Civitas* in the Island called *Heracleotis*, made by the imbracements of the River; most memorable for being the Episcopal Sea of *Chæremeon*, a right godly Prelate; of whom see *Eusebius* in the 6 Book, and 34 Chapter of his Ecclesiastical History. 7 *Troia*, on the Eastern stream which makes that Island not much observable, but for giving name to the *Montes Troici* lying near unto it; out of which were digged the Stones which made the Pyramides. 8 *Cinopolis* in a little Island upon the water. 9 *Hermopolis*, or the City of *Mercury*; called also *Hermoplis magna*, to difference it from another of that name not far from *Alexandria*, to which they give the Adjunct of *Parva*. 10 *Antonius*, now *Antius*, founded by *Adrian* the Emperour, in honour of *Antinous* his especial Favourite; the most Southern City of this Province, on the banks of the *Nile*. 11 *Dionysias*, or the City of *Bacchus*, situate on the Southern end of the Lake of *Moeris*, in the *Nomus* or Division called *Oasis parva*. 12 *Clysma*, upon the shores of the *Golf*, a *Roman* Garrison.

Cities

Cities of most note in the Province of *Thebais*, 1 *Panopolis*, the *Panos* of *Antoninus*, one of the greatest of this part. 2 *Ptolomais*, the foundation of one of the *Ptolomies*, and the goodliest City of this Province, succeeding unto *Thebe* both in power and greatness. 3 *Saiet*, a fair and large Town, six days Journey from *Caire*, going up the water; but by what name called amongst the Ancients, I do no where find. Affirmed (erroneously, I think) to be the dwelling-place of *Joseph* and *Mary*, when they fled with *CHRIST* our Saviour from the fury of *Herod*. Beautified with a goodly Temple, but now somewhat ruinous, of the foundation of *Helena* the Mother of *Constantine*. This City much resorted to (on the strength of this Tradition only) by many aged *Christian Cophties*, who desire to die there. 4 *Diospolis*, or the City of *Jupiter*; all of them on the banks of the River. 5 *Tentyra*, in a little Isle so called, made by the circlings of the *Nile*: The Inhabitants whereof were the only men who durst encounter the *Crocodile*; A Creature of a terrible name, but a cowardly nature; of which it is said by *Ammianus Marcellinus*, that it assaulteth those which flie from it, and flieth from those who do assault it: In that point very like the Devil, of whom it is said by the Apostle *James* 4. 7. that if he be *resisted, he will flie from us*; Or as the good old Poet hath it,

Est Leo, si fugias; si stas, quasi Musca recedit.

Give ground, a Lyon he will be;
Stand to it, and away flies he.

6 *Coptos*, upon the head of a Trench or Water-course, which falleth into the *Nilus*, on the South of *Tentyra*, but on the other side of the River; in old times, a most noted *Empory* for *Indian* and *Arabian* wares: from whence not only the Christians of this Country are thought to have the name of *Cophties*, but the whole Country to be originally called *Ægyptus*, from *Ai-Coptus*, or the Land of *Coptus*.

7 *Thebæ* the residence and foundation of that great Tyrant *Busiris*, in compass 140 furlongs, or 17 miles and an half; called also *Hecatompylæ*, from the number of an hundred Gates which were said to be in it. So beautified with Colosses, Temples, Palaces; the Sepulchres of the old *Egyptian Pharaohs*, and other Ornaments of State, that it was thought ἀνδρίαν τῆς ὑπὸ τὸν ἥλιον ὅλου κακοσμίας, to be the *Nonesuch* of the World. Decayed on the removing of the Court of *Memphis*, it became a ruine so long since, that there was nothing left of it in the time of *Juvenal*; as he telleth us, saying,

Atque vetus Thebe *centum jacet obruta portis.*

Old Thebe, *yielding to the Fates,*
Lies buried with his hundred Gates.

8 *Abydus*, now called *Abutick*, once the Seat-Royal of *Memnon*, from thence called *Memnonium*, renowned for the Temple of *Osiris*; more for the Statute of *Memnon*, which though made of stone, did at the rising of the Sun yield a vocal sound. 9 *Elephantis*, on the banks of *Nile*; neighbouring by *Crophi* and *Mophi*, two sharp Rocks, betwixt which the River falling down with a violent current, makes the *Lesser Cataract*; of which, and of the greater, we shall speak more fully in *Æthiopia*. The City seated in an Island of the River *Nile*, on the borders of *Æthiopia sub Ægypto*, (as the Ancients called it) known unto *Ptolomy* by the name of *Elephantina*, but to our Ecclesiastical Writers by the name of *Tabenna*. Memorable in times of Heathenism for the Town and Temple of *Onuchis*, wherein stood the *Nilometrium* or standing Pillars, by which they did observe the increase of the River; removed since to the Castle of *Michias*, two miles from *Caire*: in times of Christianity, for the dwellings of infinite numbers of Monks and Hermits, called from this place *Tabenisiotæ*. 10 *Syene*, (now *Asina*) a little North of *Elephantes*, situate directly under the *Tropick* of *Cancer*, and memorable for a deep Well there digged by some Astronomers; which when the Sun entred into that Sign, was wholly enlightned with his beams, without any shadow: so perpendicularly did the body of it stand over the pit. This the last City of *Egypt* towards *Æthiopia*.

And now I should proceed, according to my Method in other places, to the Story of *Egypt*: but being that *Lybia* and *Cyrene*, are now accompted Members of it; the fortunes whereof they have also followed in all or most of the mutations of State and Government; I shall first take a view of them as the limbs of this body, and shew you how they were united under that one Head, by which now directed.

2 *MARMARICA.*

2. LYBIA or *MARMARICA*, hath on the East, *Egypt*, properly so called; on the West *Cyrene*, on the North, that part of the Mediterranean Sea, which was hence called *Mare Lybicum*, and sometimes *Parthenium*; and on the South, some part of *Æthiopia Superior*.

It had the name of *Lybia*, from the old *Greek* word λίβυς, signifying Black, agreeable to the complexion of the people, which is black and swarthy; λίβυς, *antiqua lingua Græca niger*, saith a learned Writer: or possible enough from *Lub*, an *Arabian* word signifying Thirst, as sutable unto the nature of the soil, which is dry and Sandy, in which respect called by the Greeks, *Xero-Lybia*, or *Lybia ficca*. From hence the South-wind, blowing from these Coasts towards *Greece* and *Italy*, had the name of *Lybs*, and the Promontory in *Sicily* opposite unto it, that of *Lilybeum*. It was also called *Marmarica*, perhaps from the *Marmaridæ*, a chief people of it, though placed by *Ptolomy* in *Cyrene*; and sometimes *Barca*, from *Barce* a chief City in it; of late times *Barca Marmarica*, by both names united.

The Country for the most part very dry and barren, and but meanly peopled; insomuch as *Alexander* passing thorow part of it towards the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, in the space of four days, saw neither Man, Beast, Bird, Tree, nor River. Covered over in most places with a thick light sand, which the winds remove up and down continually, turning Vallies into Hills, and Hills into Vallies. Found by *Cambyses* to his cost, who as basely esteeming of the Gods as he did of his Subjects, sent part of his Army into this Country to destroy the Temple above-mentioned: but in the passage towards that prohibited place, fifty thousand of them were overwhelmed and smothered in a storm of Sand; the rest with much ado escaping. Called therefore *Xero-Lybia*, or *Lybia Sicca*, as before was noted; and *Lybia sitiens*, thirsty *Lybia*, (—*per calidus* Lybiæ sitientis *arenas*) in that verse of *Lucan*.

The people, Neighbours unto *Egypt*, and consequently much of the same condition. Said by *Herodotus* (by whom they were called *Adyrnachidæ*) to be governed by the like Laws and Customs as the *Egyptians* were; but do differ from them in their habit. Of colour dark, and black; of constitution, lean and dry, and inclining to Melancholy; angry on every little occasion, very litigious, and eager prosecutors of their dues. By an old Ob-

servation

ſervation among themſelves, they abſtained both from Beef and Hog-meat. So obſtinate in denying their accuſtomed *Tributes*, that he who could not ſhew the marks of his ſufferings for it, either *Black* or *Blew*, was accompted no body: And ſo reſolved to conceal any thing diſgraceful to them, that if any of them were apprehended for a Robbery, no torment could compel him to tell his name. At this time little differing in perſon, temper, or condition, from the *Egyptians*, *Moors*, and *Arabes*, intermixt amongſt them.

Converted to the Faith of *Chriſt*, with, or not long after the reſt of *Egypt*, of which then reckoned for a Province, it became part of the *Patriarchate* of *Alexandria*; whoſe Juriſdiction over it was confirmed by the Council of *Nice*: to the calling of which famous Council, this Country occaſionally concurred, by bringing into the World that wretched *Arius*; who with his *Heterodoxies* and contentious *Cavils*, had diſturbed the Church. His *Hereſie* condemned in that famous Council; but his Perſon, by the Divine Juſtice of God, reſerved to a more remarkable puniſhment. Being ſent for by the Emperour *Conſtantine* to make a *Recantation* of his former *Hereſies*, he firſt writ out a Copy of his own Opinions, which he had in his Boſom; and then writing out the *Recantation* expected from him, took Oath that he did really mean as he had written: which words the Emperour referred to the *Recantation*, he to the Paper in his Boſome. But God would not be ſo cozened, though the Emperour was. For as he paſſed in Triumph through the ſtreets of *Conſtantinople*, he drew aſide into a private houſe of eaſe, where he voided his Guts in the Draught, and ſent his Soul as an *Harbinger* to the Devil, to make room for his Body.

Not more infamous for the Birth of this *Miſcreant*, who denied the *Divinity* of *Chriſt*; then famous for the Birth of one of the *Sibyles*, hence ſirnamed *Lybica*, by whom the ſame had been fore-ſhewn. Which *Sibyles* ſeem to have taken denomination from Διὸς βύλαι, i.e. *Jovis conſiliorum conſciæ*. They were in number Ten, *viz.* 1 *Perſica*, 2 *Lybica*, 3 *Delphica*, 4 *Cumæa*, 5 *Samia*, 6 *Helleſpontiaca*, 7 *Tiburtina*, 8 *Albunea*, 9 *Erythræa*, and 10 *Cumana*; which laſt is affirmed to have written the nine Books of *Sibyls*. They were all preſented by an old Woman to *Tarquinius Superbus*; but he not willing to pay ſo great a ſum of Money as was demanded, denied them; whereupon the old Woman burnt three of them, requiring as much money for the other ſix, as for all: which being denied, ſhe alſo burnt another three, asking as much for the three remaining, as for the reſt; which *Superbus* amazed gave, and the old Trot vaniſhed. Theſe Books contained manifeſt tokens of the Kingdom of *Chriſt*, his Name, his Birth and Death. They were burned by the Arch-Traitor *Stilico*. So that thoſe Prophecies of theirs, which are now extant, are for the moſt part only ſuch as had been extracted out of other Writings, where their Authority had been quoted. Concerning which, though *Cauſabon*, and ſome other of our great *Philologers*, conceive them to be *piæ fraudes*; compoſed of purpoſe by the Fathers of the *Primitive* Times, to win credit to the Faith of CHRIST: yet dare I not ſo far diſparage thoſe moſt godly Men, as to believe they would ſupport ſo ſtrong an *Edifice* with ſo weak a *Prop*; or borrow help from Falſehood to evict a Truth. Or if they durſt have been ſo impudently venturous, how eaſie had it been for their learned Adverſaries, *Porphyrie*, *Julian*, and the reſt of more eminent note, to have detected the *Impoſture*, and ſilenced the Chriſtian *Advocates* with reproach and ſcorn? But of this enough here, more at large elſewhere.

Rivers of Note I find not any. 'Tis well, if in a Country ſo full of *Sands*, there be any at all: ſome *Lakes* I meet with in my Authors; the principal of which, 1 *Lacus*, 2 *Lacus Lacomedis*, now *Linxamo*, 3 *Clzertus*; ſufficient to preſerve their few Cattel from the taint of thirſt. The Mountains of moſt note, thoſe called *Anogambri*, 2 and that named *Azar*; this laſt extended Weſt and Eaſt in a ſtrait line, from the 51 degree of *Longitude*, to the 53. 3 *Aliphus*, 4 *Ogdomus*, 5 *Tmodes*, 6 *Alpis*, not much obſervable, but that they ſerve for *Land-marks* to diſcover the Country.

Towns of note there are none now in it. Of moſt eſteem in former times, 1 *Batrachus*, by ſome called *Menelaus*, an Haven-Town, 2 *Phthia*, and 3 *Aneſisphyra*, two Port-Towns alſo. 4 *Tetrapyrgia*, ſo called from its four Towers, the *Antipyrgus* of *Ptolomy*. 5 *Meſuchis*, more within the Land, 6 *Mazacila*, another midland Town. 7 *Chæreola*, mentioned amongſt the chief Cities of this Tract, by *Ammianus*. 8 *Paratonium*, now *Porto-raſſa*, which with *Peluſium* are by *Florus* called the two *Horns* of *Egypt*; which whoſoever held faſt, would be ſure to maſter it. By ſome old Writers it had formerly been called *Ammonia*, as we read in *Stephanus* and *Strabo*; from the Temple of *Jupiter Hammon*, ſeated very near it. So anciently honoured with an *Oracle*, (if that were any honour to it) that *Semiramis* is ſaid to have come hither to enquire of her death; *Perſeus* and *Hercules*, touching their adventures. The like, but not long after, was done by *Alexander* the Great: but the *Oracle* by that time had learnt to flatter, and puffed him up with a proud conceit of being the Son of that God whom he came to worſhip. The Temple ſeated in the middle of a vaſt ſandy *Deſart*, environed with a pleaſant and delightful *Grove*, about ſix miles or more in circuit; watered with wholſome Springs, refreſhed with a temperate Air, and ſhaded with fruit-bearing Trees, which carried in their leaves a perpetual Spring. Fortified with a Tripple-Wall, within the firſt whereof was a *Royal Palace* of the Kings, within the ſecond a *Seraglio* for his Women, in the third Lodgings for the Officers of Court; The *Oracle* fitly placed (ſo the *Prieſts* would have it) near the *Seraglio* of the Ladies; Before the entrance a fair Fountain, wherein the *Oblations* were firſt waſhed, then offered. A place of great repute in *ſacred* and *civil* eſtimate; all the adjoyning Country taking hence the name of *Ammoniaca*, and by that name reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the Patriarchate of *Alexandria*. 9 *Antiphra*, on the Eaſt border of it towards *Alexandria*. 10 *Barce*, called afterwards *Ptolomais*, by the name of one of the *Ptolomies*, by whom repaired and beautified. Of ſuch accompt, that from hence the whole Country had the name of *Barca*, and the Inhabitants of *Barcæi*, (——*Lateque furentes Barcæi*) as in that of *Virgil*.

The old Inhabitants hereof were the *Libyarchæ* and *Baſſachitæ*, in the North; the *Ogdoni*, *Buzes*, and *Adyrmachidæ*, in the South; the *Goniatæ* and *Proſaditæ*, in the midland parts; the *Libyægyptii*, bordering neareſt unto *Egypt*, with the people whereof ſo intermingled, as to make up betwixt them but one Name and Nation. Others there were of leſs, or as little note, but all deſcended properly of *Naphtuhim*, the Son of *Miſraim*; from whom the Name of *Neptune*, originally a *Libyan* Deity, ſeems to be derived: yet ſo that *Lehabin* his Brother muſt come in for a ſhare; the Founder, as it is conceived, of the *Libyægyptii* before-mentioned. Being then of the ſame original with thoſe of *Egypt*, they followed the ſame fortunes alſo, till the times of the *Ptolomies*; by whom ſometimes given for portion, with the title of a Kingdom, to their younger Children. By the laſt Will and Teſtament of *Apion*, the laſt King hereof, a Baſtard-Son of *Ptolomy* ſirnamed *Euergetes*, the ſeventh King of that Houſe; bequeathed unto the Senate and People of *Rome*. By whom

firſt

first suffered to live under them, as a *Free-Estate*, till the Conquest of *Egypt*; then reckoned as a part of that, and so accordingly described by *Ptolomy*: where *Libya*, *Marmarica*, and *Ammonica*, occur amongst the *Nomi*, or *Divisions* of it. Afterwards made a distinct Province of that *Diocess*, and governed by a *Lord Prefident*, under the *Præfectus Augustalis*, or Supream Commander for the Emperours.

3. CYRENE.

CYRENE is bounded on the East, with *Marmarica*; on the West, with *Africa Propria*, or the Realm of *Tunis*, and some part of the *Mediterranean*, and the Greater *Syrtis*; on the North, with the *Mediterranean* wholly; on the South, with *Libya Inferior*, or the *Desarts* of *Libya*.

It took this name from *Cyrene*, the chief City of it, from whence sometimes also called *Cyrenaica*; by *Pliny* and some other *Roman* Writers it is called *Pentapolis*, from five chief Cities which were in it, *viz.* 1 *Cyrene*, 2 *Ptolomais*, 3 *Arsione*, 4 *Darnice*, 5 *Berenice*: by *Ammianus* for the same reason *Libya Pentapolis*, the name of *Libya* extending over many of these *Roman* Provinces. And finally, at the present, it passeth with that last described by the name of *Barca*, or *Barca Marmarica*: the whole extent whereof in length from the *Greater Syrtis* unto *Egypt*, is no less than 1300 miles, but the breadth not above 200.

The Country in the South parts desolate and barren, stored with few Towns, and not many Villages; the people living up and down in scattered houses, and at such a distance, as if it were in so many Islands. Destitute not of Springs and Rivers only, but of Rain-water too, the Clouds not very often dropping: if any fell, it was dried up presently by the Sands. But within fifteen miles of the Sea, indifferently fruitful and well inhabited.

The people in old times were said to have been utterly ignorant of buying and selling, of fraud and stealing, not knowing, or not caring for the use of Money; content with little, not superfluous in their Coths or Buildings; their Houses for the most part (except only in their greater Cities) made of Osier-Twigs. Much altered in the first part of their *Character*, since the coming of the *Arabians* hither; now a Thieving Nation, given wholly to Robbery and Spoil. So lazy, that they will not Manure or Till their Land, but provide themselves with Corn from *Sicily*; laying their Children to pawn for it, or till by their Thieving they can raise a sufficient sum to discharge the Debt.

One only River I find in it, but of fame enough to serve for many; By *Ptolomy* called *Lubon*, by *Pliny Lethon*, by the Poets *Lethe*. Swallowed by the Earth not far from its first original, it riseth up again about *Berenice*; fained therefore by the Poets to come from *Hell*, and to create *forgetfulness* in all them that drink of it; it being the condition of the dead to remember nothing. Thence the occasion of the fancy. Some *Lakes* I find also in it, whereof one occationed by this River, not far from the Sea; another more within the Land (where indeed more necessary) near *Paliurus*. With Mountains better stored (though not much better for them) the principal whereof, 1 Those called *Hercules Arenæ*, the Sands of *Hercules*, thwarting the Country East and West, 2 *Bucolicus*, on the South of those; and 3 *Volpus*, a long ridge of Hills, bordering upon *Africa Propria*.

Cities of most note in it, 1 *Apollonia*, in the East parts, near the Promontory called *Zephyrium*, in the Confines of *Libya*, or *Marmarica*. 2 *Cyrene*, in the West of that; once of such power, that it contended with *Carthage* for some preheminencies: Then the chief Lady of this Tract, which it gave this name to. The birth-place of *Eratosthenes* the Mathematician, *Callimachus* the Poet, and of that *Simon* of *Cyrene*, whom the *Jews* compelled to carry our *Saviours* Cross. 3 *Ptolomais*, betwixt *Cyrene* and *Arsione*, built or repaired by *Ptolomy Philadelphus*; the Episcopal City of *Synesius*, a learned and religious Bishop of the Primitive times, as appears by his Epistles extant. 4 *Arsione*, on the East-side of the River *Lathon*; so called in honour of *Arsinoe*, the sister of *Philadelphus*, and Wife of *Magus*, once King of this Country. 5 *Berenice*, on the Western Bank of the said River, so called from *Berenice* the Mother, or (another of the same nature) the Daughter of *Magus*: The furthest Town of all this Country, bordering on the Promontory called *Boreum*, and the *Greater Syrtis*. This last a Quick-sand very dangerous to *Mariners*, in compass 635 miles, and by them carefully avoided. 6 *Paliurus*, more within the Land, but on the borders of *Libya* or *Marmarica*, South to *Apollonia*. 7 *Aptungis*, now *Lungisari*, by *Ptolomy* called *Aptuchi Fanum*. 8 *Herculis Turris*, the Tower of *Hercules* near the *Greater Syrtis*; erected in the honour of *Hercules*, his killing of the Dragon, and robbing the Orchards of the *Hesperides* of their golden Apples. Those *Hesperides* said to be *Aegle*, *Arethusa*, and *Hesperethusa*, the three Daughters of *Atlas*: their Orchard placed by *Ptolomy* betwixt this Tower and *Paliurus*; by *Pomponius*, in the *Atlantick* Islands; by *Virgil*, in *Mauritania Tingitania*; by *Pliny*, both in *Mauritania* and this *Cyrene*; and possibly in all alike. 9 *Zemythus*. 10 *Acabis* in the mid-lands; all worn out of memory. 11 *Fessan*, of greatest name now, though scarce worth the naming.

The old Inhabitants of this Country, were the *Asbetæ* on the East, the *Barcitæ* near the *Greater Syrtis*, the *Macatutæ* and *Leganici*, near the Mountains of *Hercules*; all probably descended from *Naphtuhim* the Son of *Mizraim*, of whom there still remain some foot-steps in *Aptuchi Fanum*, the Fane or Temple of *Aptuchus*. This *Aptuchus*, by some mistakingly called *Antuchus*, and by the *Grecians* said to be the Son of *Cyrene*, and the Brother of *Aristæus*: who being sent out to seek their Fortunes, *Aristæus* fell into the Isle named *Ceos*; and *Aptuchus*, or *Antuchus*, into *Libya*, both by them first planted. *Neptune*, the Deity of this Country, by the *Egyptians* called *Neptitim*, seems to come from *Naphtuhim*; most highly worshipped by this People, because he first taught them τὴν τῶν ἁρμάτων ἐλάζευξιν, the Art of training Horses to the Coach or Chariot; in which the *Cyreneans* after grew so expert, that they could drive their *Chariots* in a round, or circle, and always keep their Chariot-wheels in the self-same tract. Of no great power, till *Battus* a noble *Spartan*, landing in this Country, had built the City of *Cyrene*; and founded it in so good a course of Life and Discipline, that in short time it came to have Dominion over the most part of this Country; and to contend with *Carthage* about their Territories. Warred on by *Apryes* King of *Egypt*, they sued unto the *Greeks* for aid, and by their assistance overcame him. Long after which, falling at odds among themselves, they craved aid of *Ptolomy* the first of that Race, by whom they were finally subdued. Left by him at his death to *Magus*, a Son of his last Wife by a former Husband, whom he had married to *Arsinoe*, one of his Daughters; it came again to the Crown of *Egypt*, by the marriage of *Berenice*, the Daughter and Heir of *Magus*, with the Son of *Ptolomy Philadelphus*. Alienated from which Crown again, for the preterment of some of the younger Princes; and in the end given by one of the *Ptolomies*, the last King hereof, to the people of *Rome*. Reduced into the form of a Province by *Augustus Cæsar*, by whom united in one Government with the Isle of *Crete*:

but

but made a Province of it ſelf by the following Emperors never ſince ſeparated from the fortune and affairs of *Egypt*, to which now we halten.

That the Kingdom and Nation of *Egypt* was of great Antiquity, is not a matter to be doubted; the queſtion in this point, betwixt them and the *Scythian*, being not eaſily decided. Whether it were ſo ancient, as the *Egyptians* ſay, may perhaps be controverted. By them it was affirmed, that they had the memory and ſtory of 13000 years; and a ſucceſſion of 330 Kings in the time of *Amaſis* the ſecond, who was Contemporary with *Cyrus*. Which number of years, if underſtood of *Solary* years, meaſured by the courſe of the Sun, muſt not be allowed of; becauſe it maketh them many thouſand years older than the Creation: but if of *Lunary*, which is moſt agreeable unto the accompt of the *Egyptians*, who reckoned their years by moneths; it will amount unto no more than to 1000, or 1100 years, and ſo fall anſwerably to the times following after the Flood. But for their Kings, 330 in their reckonings, and thoſe of 24 or 25 ſeveral *Dynaſties*; the matter is not ſo ſoon made up. For either thoſe Kings, muſt not be all Kings or Supream Lords of *Egypt*, as the *Pharaohs* were, but their ſeveral *Regents*, or *Viceregents*, armed with Regal power; thoſe *Dynaſties* not the ſucceſſions of ſo many Regal Families, but of their Subſtitutes and Lieutenants, many of which might live ſucceſſively under one *Supream*: or elſe we muſt needs look on *Egypt* as diſtracted in thoſe times, into ſeveral Kingdoms, amongſt the Princes of thoſe *Dynaſties* before remembred; or finally, we muſt look for ſome of thoſe Kings and Princes before the Flood. By either of theſe ways, the buſineſs may be well agreed. For if that moſt of them were but the names of ſeveral *Regents*, (as probable enough it is) their might be many ſuch in the Reign of one King; according to the Kings fancy, the merit of particular perſons, or the neceſſities of State: Changes of great Officers, eſpecially if grown too great, are not new nor ſtrange. If they were all Kings, or Supream Rulers, (as is alſo probable) we find not any thing of moment to perſwade the contrary, but that many of them lived and reigned in their ſeveral parts (as in other Countreys in thoſe times) till the greater had devoured the leſs. Or if they were the names of ſuch Soverein Princes, as had the ſole Command of *Egypt* before the Flood, (as ſome think they were) they might amount in all to ſo great a number, and ſo many *Dynaſties*; the iniquity of thoſe times, the ambition of great perſons, and conſequently the ſhort lives of the Kings being duely pondered. That *Egypt*, and moſt part of the World, was peopled before the Flood, hath been already proved in our *General Preface*: If peopled, then no queſtion under ſome form of Government: the names of which Governours (call them Kings or Rulers, or what elſe you pleaſe) might be preſerved in *Egypt* on pillars of braſs or ſtone; or otherwiſe tranſmitted by tradition unto *Cham* the Father of *Miſraim*, by whom this Countrey was firſt planted after the *Confuſion of Babel*. But that old ſtock of Kings and people being deſtroyed in the general Deluge, the Children of *Mizraim* ſucceeded next in their deſolate dwellings: yet ſo, that the poſterity of *Chus* and *Lehabim*, two others of the Sons of *Cham*, had their ſhares therein. From the firſt of which deſcended the Inhabitants of thoſe parts of *Egypt*, which lay along the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, or Gulf of *Arabia*: in which reſpect, not only one of the *Nomi*, or diviſions bordering on the *Iſthmus*, had the name of *Arabia*: but the people dwelling on thoſe ſhores, were called *Arabes*; divided into the *Arabes Azarei*, and *Arabes Adei*. And from the other came that mixture of Nations, called *Lybi-Egyptii*, or *Lybians* and *Egyptians* intermixt together, inhabiting in *Maræotica* and the Weſtern parts. But though theſe people were derived from ſeveral Anceſtors, they made one Nation in the total: Subject to *Mizraim* as their chief, and after his deceaſe, unto his ſucceſſors in the Kingdom of *Egypt*. Concerning whom we may obſerve that in *Cham*, our greateſt Antiquaries find the name of *Jupiter Hammon*: *Mizraim* they gueſs to be *Oſiris*, the great God of *Egypt*. To him ſucceeded *Typhon*, not by right of Blood, but by Uſurpation; who diſpoſſeſſed by *Lehabim*, the brother of *Mizraim* (whom the *Greeks* call *Hercules Egyptius*) the Kingdom was reſtored to *Orus*, the Son of *Oſiris*. During the time of theſe few Princes, happned all thoſe things which are recorded in the Scriptures concerning *Egypt*; from the firſt going down of *Abraham* in the time of *Oſiris*, to the advancement of *Joſeph* in the Reign of *Orus*: in which there paſſed the 15, 16 and 17. *Dynaſties* of Regal Vice--Roys; Lieutenants only, as I take it, to thoſe mighty Princes. The Kings themſelves called generally by the name of *Pharaoh*, though they had all their proper and peculiar names: as afterwards their Succeſſors here had the name of *Ptolomy*, and the *Roman* Emperours, that of *Ceſar*. Few of them famous in the ſtories of other Nations, or of renown for their Atchievements and Exploits abroad, contenting themſelves with the Revenues of their own Dominions, and ſpending the ſurpluſage thereof in building Cities, draining the Mariſhes of the *Nile*, or other works of Oſtentation and Magnificence. Only *Seſoſtris* is of fame for his undertakings; though when he had caſt up his accompt, he got nothing by them: Of whom it is reported, that being a King of great wealth and puiſſance, he had brought under ſubjection all his neighbouring Princes; whom he compelled in turns to draw his Chariot. It hapned that one of theſe unfortunate Princes caſt his eye many times on the Coach-wheel: and being by *Seſoſtris* demanded the cauſe of his ſo doing, he replyed: That the falling of that Spoke loweſt which but juſt before was the higheſt in the wheel, put him in mind of the inſtability of Fortune. The King deeply weighing the Parable, would never after be ſo drawn in his *Chariot*. He alſo was the firſt that encountred the *Scythians* in Battail; having already in conceit conquered them, before he led his Army againſt them. The *Scythians* much marvailed that a King of ſuch great Revenues would wage war againſt a Nation ſo poor, with whom the fight would be doubtful, the Victory unprofitable; but to be vanquiſhed, a perpetual infamy and diſgrace. For their parts they reſolved to meet him, as an Enemy whoſe overthrow would enrich them. When the Armies came to joyn, the *Egyptians* were diſcomfited, and purſued even to their own doors by the Enemy. But the *Scythians* could not enter the Countrey, becauſe of the Fenns, with whoſe paſſage they were unacquainted; and ſo they returned. Which ſaid, without troubling our ſelves with their many *Dynaſties*, we will lay down the Succeſſion of their Kings, as well as we can; the diſagreement of Hiſtorians and Chronologers, touching this Succeſſion, being irreconcileable.

The PHARAOHS, or KINGS of EGYPT of *Egyptian* Race.

A. M.		
	1	*Mizraim*, the Son of *Cham*, by the *Græcians* called *Osiris*: in whose time *Abraham* went into *Egypt*,
	2	*Typhon*, an Usurper.
	3	*Orus*, the Son of *Osiris*, restored unto the Kingdom by his Uncle *Lehabim*; the Advancer of *Joseph*.
2207	4	*Amasis*, *Themosis*, or *Amos*, in whose time *Jacob* went down into *Egypt*. 25.
2233	5	*Cheborn*. 12.
2245	6	*Amenophis*, or *Amenophthis*. 21.
2266	7	*Amærsis*, the Sister of *Amenophthis*. 22.
2288	8	*Mephres*.
2300	9	*Mesipharmuthosis*. 25.
2325	10	*Thamosis*, or *Thuthmosis*. 10.
2335	11	*Amenophthis* II. supposed to be *Memnon* and the *Vocal Statu*, 31.
2366	12	*Orus* II. the *Busiris* of the *Græcians*, a bloody Tyrant; who commanded the male-children of *Israel* to be slain, 37.
2403	13	*Acencheres*, by some called *Thermutis*, the Daughter of *Amenophthis* the second, and afterwards the wife of *Orus*; who preserved *Moses*, and survived her Husband. 13.
2416	14	*Rathosis* the son of *Orus*, 6.
2422	15	*Acencheres*. 12.
2449	16	*Cenchres*, by some called *Arenasis*, *Bocchoris*, by others; drowned in the *Red-Sea*, with his Horses and Chariots, 16.
2453	17	*Acherres*, 8.
2462	18	*Cherres*, 10.
2472	19	*Armais*, by the *Græcians* called *Danaus*, whose 50 Daughters being married to the 50 Sons of his Brother *Egyptus*, murthered their Husbands; for which cause *Danaus* being forced out of *Egypt*, passed into *Greece*; where attaining to the Kingdom of *Argos*, he gave unto the *Græcians*, the name of *Danai*.
2575	20	*Rameses*, sirnamed *Egyptus*, the Brother of *Danaus*.
2580	21	*Amenophthis* III.
2590	22	*Sethos*, or *Sesothis*, 55.
2645	23	*Rhapsaces*, or *Ranses*, 66.
2711	24	*Amenophthis* IV. 40.
2751	25	*Rameses* II. 26.
2777	26	*Thuoris* 7. After whose death succeeded a Race of twelve Kings, called the *Diospolitani*, who held the Kingdom for the space of 177 years. Their names we find not, but that one of the latest of them, whose Daughter *Solomon* married, was called *Vaphra*; and perhaps *Ogdoos*, who removed the Royal Seat from *Thebes* to *Memphis*, might be another, and the eighth, as his name importeth.
2561	39	*Smendes*, the *Sisac* of the Scriptures, who made War upon *Reboboam* the Son of *Solomon*; conceived to be the *Sesostris* of *Herodotus* and others of the ancient Writers, of whom sufficiently before.
2987	40	*Pseucenes* conceived to be the *Cheops* of *Herodotus*, Founder of the vast *Pyramis* before described. 41.
3028	41	*Nepher-Cherres*, 4.
3032	42	*Amnoiphtis* V.
3041	43	*Opsochon* the *Asychis* of *Herodotus*.
3047	44	*Psammuchos*, 9.
3056	45	*Plusennes* II. 14.
3070	46	*Sesonchis*, 21.
3091	47	*Usorthon*, 15.
3106	48	*Takellotis*, 13.
3119	49	*Patubastis*, 40.
3159	50	*Oserchon*, the second *Hercules*, *Ægyptius*, as some will have it, 8.
3167	51	*Psamnis*, 15.
3185	52	*Bochoris*, called by the name of *So*, 2 *Kings* 17. 4. taken and burnt by *Sabacon* the King of *Æthiopia*, 44.
3229	53	*Sabacon* King of *Æthiopia*, 8.
3238	54	*Sevechus* Son of *Sabacon*, 14.
3252	55	*Taracon*, falsly supposed to be the *Zerah* of the Scriptures, 10.
3270	56	*Stephinates*, 7.
3277	57	*Nielupses*, after whose death followed an Aristocraty of 12 Princes, who having governed 15 years, were divested of their Authority by one of their own number called
3288	58	*Psamniticus* who first made the *Græcians* acquainted with *Egypt*, whom he invited to his aid against the *Syrians*: the Founder of the famous *Labrynth* before mentioned, and no less memorable for his prudent preventing of the *Scythians* from breaking into his Countrey, of which we spake before, when we were in *Tartaria*, 54.
3335	59	*Necho*, who slew *Josiah* at the battail of *Megiddo*, 25.
3360	60	*Psamnis* II. 44.
3366	61	*Apries*, called *Hophra*, Jer. 44. subdued by *Nebucadnezzar*, and deposed by *Amasis*, 25.
3391	62	*Amasis* II. 44.
3435	63	*Psamnitas* or *Psamniticus* II. a King of six moneths only; vanquished by *Cambyses* the second Monarch of *Persia*, who united *Egypt* to that Empire, under which it continued till the time of *Darius* the sixth King of the *Medes* and *Persians*: in the 2d. year of whose Reign it revolted from him, and became a Kingdom of it self, as in former times.
3555	64	*Amyrtæus* the first King after the Revolt, 6.
3561	65	*Nepherites*, 6.
3567	66	*Achoris*, 12.
3579	67	*Psamnites* III. 1.
3580	68	*Nepherites* II. a King of two moneths only.
	69	*Nectanebos*, 18.
3598	70	*Teos* or *Tachos*, deposed by
3600	71	*Nectanebos* II. the last King of the natural *Egyptian* Race, that ever governed *Egypt* by the name of a King. For in the 18th. of the Reign of this King, *Egypt* was again recovered by the valour of *Ochus* the eighth Emperour of *Persia*. And when *Alexander* had overthrown *Darius*, he came, and without blows won this fertile Kingdom; which yielded him

him during his life the yearly value of 6000 Talents. After his death this Kingdom fell to the share of *Ptolomeus* the Son of *Lagus*, from whom all the subsequent Kings of *Egypt* were called *Ptolomies*.

The Second DYNASTY, or the *PTOLOMEAN* Kings of *Egypt*.

A. M.		
3461	1	*Ptolomy*, one of *Alexanders* Captains, reputed the Son of *Lagus*; but supposed to be the Son of *Philip* of *Macedon*, half-brother to *Alexander*, 40.
3481	2	*Ptol. Philadelphus*, who filled the Library of *Alexandria* with 700000 *Volumes*, and caused the 72 *Interpreters* to translate the Bible.
3717	3	*Ptol. Euergetes* the Son of *Philadelphus*, vanquished *Seleucus Callinicus* King of *Syria*, and probably had subdued that Kingdom, if not called back by Domestick dissentions, 26.
3743	4	*Ptol. Philopater*, a cruel voluptuous and incestuous Prince; cruelly slew *Cleomenes* the last King of *Sparta*, who had fled to his Father for relief, in the time of his exile, 17.
3760	5	*Ptol. Epiphanes*, at the age of five years succeeded his Father; protected by the *Romans* against *Antiochus* the Great of *Syria*, who had an aim upon his Kingdom, 28.
3784	6	*Ptol. Philometor*, the Son of *Epiphanes*, by *Cleopatra* Daughter of the *Antiochus*; protected in his nonage by the *Romans* also: caused himself to be Crowned King of *Syria*, but again relinquished it. 35.
3829	7	*Ptol. Euergetes* II. for his deformity called *Physcon* the Brother of *Ptol. Philometor*, a wicked Prince, and one that spent the greatest part of his Reign in a causless war against *Cleopatra*, his Wife and Sister, 29.
3858	8	*Ptol. Lathargus* reigned 16 years with *Cleopatra* his Mother, by whom dispossessed of his Estate for the space of ten years; after her death was sole Lord of *Egypt*. His Brother *Alexander* being taken by the Queen-mother as her Associate, in the time of his deprivation, and passing in the accompt of the Kings of *Egypt*.
3892	9	*Ptol. Auletes*, the Son of *Lathurus*, sirnamed also *Dionysius*, whose Brother being setled by him in the Isle of *Cyprus*, was most unjustly stripped of it by the power of the *Romans*: and he himself outed of *Egypt* by his own Subjects, but restored by the aid and love of *Pompey*.
3922	10	*Ptol. Dionysius*, called also *Junior*, or the younger, together with *Cleopatra* his Wife and Sister, succeeded *Auletes* in the Throne, which they held together by the space of three years. In the last of which, *Pompey* was barbarously slain on the shores of *Egypt*, by the command of *Achilles* the young Kings Governour; and the young King himself unfortunately slain in the *Alexandrian* tumult against *Julius Cæsar*.
3945	11	*Cleopatra*, the Wife and Sister of *Dionysius*, restored to the Crown of *Egypt* by the bounty of *Cæsar*; of whom exceedingly beloved for her wit and beauty. After which she governed *Egypt* 19 years in her own sole right, with great pomp and splendor: when being imbarqued in the bed and fortunes of *Marc. Anthony*, she killed her self not long after his fatal Overthrow at the Battel of *Actium*, that she might not be led in triumph through *Rome*.

A. M.

These *Ptolomean* Princes of *Egypt*, were for the most part in wars with the Kings of *Syria*, in which they were by turns Victorious, and vanquished; neither Prince having cause to boast of his bargain. After the death of *Cleopatra*, whose life and love with *Marcus Antonius* I will not now relate, this Countrey fell to the share of the *Roman* Emperours, and was by them highly prized, and warily looked into. The Governour hereof was but a Gentleman of *Rome*; no *Senator* being permitted to come into it; it being a maxim of State, not to suffer men of great Houses to come into that Country, whose revolt may endanger the whole Empire. Of this nature was *Egypt*. For besides the natural situation of the place, very defensible; and besides the abundance of Money with which it was stored; this Countrey alone furnished the City of *Rome* with Corn, for four Moneths yearly. Whence *Vespasian* being chosen Emperour by the *Syrian* Legions, and hearing of the defeat of his concurrent *Vitellius*, hastened hither: to this end only, that detaining the ordinary provision of Victuals, he might by famine compel the City of *Rome* to stand at his devotion: *Ut urbem quoque externæ opis indigam fame urgeret*, as the Historian hath observed. When made a Province of that Empire, it was counted as the Emperours sole *Peculiar*: afterwards made (as well it might) an entire *Dioceſs* of it self, subordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio Orientis*. In the division of the Empire allotted to the *Constantinopolitants*, whose Government being thought to be insupportable by this wanton people, they called in the *Saracens*, by whome the *Greek* Garrisons were cast out, and the Countrey made subject to *Haumar* the third of the *Caliphs*. Afterwards, weary of them also, they would have a *Caliph* of their own, revolting totally from the *Caliph* of *Bagdat*. So that from this time forwards we shall meet with two *Caliphs* at a time; the one residing at *Cair* in *Egypt*, to whom the *Saracens*, or *Moors* of *Spain* and *Africk* did submit themselves: the other at *Bagdat*, who Lorded it over all the rest, at least as to the Supream title, and some chief Prerogatives; though the main power was *cantoned* and disposed of among their Sultans.

The Third DYNASTY, or the CALIPHS of *EGYPT*.

A. C.	*A. H.*		
870	247	1	*Achmades*, or *Achmat*, 10.
880	257	2	*Tolen*, 3.
803	260	3	*Hamaria*, 29.
903	280	4	*Aharun*, slain by *Mustaphi*, the Caliph of *Babylon*.
940	317	5	*Achid Muhamid*, the Son of *Tangi*, 3.
943	320	6	*Abigud*, the Son of *Achid*, 27.
970	347	7	*Meaz Ledin*, *Illahi*, of the race of *Phatime* and *Hali*, 5.
975	352	8	*Aziz*, the Son of *Meaz*, 21.
996	373	9	*Elhachain*, 23.
1019	396	10	*Etaber Leazizdin Illahi*, 16.
1035	412	11	*Musteraizer Billahi*, 60.
1096	372	12	*Musteale*, 5.
1100	477	13	*Elamir Bahacan Illahi*, 35.
1135	512	14	*Elhapit Ladin Illahi*.
		15	*Etzahar*.
		16	*Elphaiz*.
		17	*Etzar Ledin Illahi*, the Son of *Elphaiz*, the last *Caliph*, or King of *Egypt*, of the race of *Phatime*: the *Turkes* succeeding after his death in this opulent Kingdom. Concerning which we are to know, that *Elphaiz* the Father of *Etzar*, being overpowered by *Almericus* King of *Hierusalem*, craved aid of *Norradine* the *Turkish* Sultan of *Damascus*; which he received under the conduct of *Sarracon*, or *Shirachoch*, a right valiant and stout Commander: who taking his advantages, not only cleared the Countrey of *Almericus*, but got the whole Kingdom to himself; dashing out the brains of *Elphais* with his Horsemans Mace. And though *Etzar* his Son assumed for a while the Title of *Caliph*; yet the destruction of himself, and the whole *Phatimean* Family rooted out by *Sarracon*, soon put an end to that claim; and left the Kingdom in the peaceable possession of the *Turkish* Sultans.

The Fourth DYNASTY, or the Race of the *TURKISH* KINGS or CALIPHS of *EGYPT*.

1163	1	*Asereddin*, sirnamed *Shirachoch*, called *Sarracon*, by the Christian Writers; the first of the *Turks* which reigned in *Egypt*: of the Noble Family of *Aiub*.
1186	2	*Zeli-heddin*, called *Saladine* by the Christian Writers, the Son (or as some say, the Nephew) of *Sarracon* or *Shirachoch*; confirmed in his Estate by the *Caliph* of *Bagdet*, under whose jurisdiction he reduced the *Egyptian* Schismaticks. He obtained also the Kingdom of *Damascus*, conquered *Mesopotamia* and *Palestine*; and in the year 1190. regained the City of *Hierusalem*. A Prince who wanted nothing to commend him to succeeding ages, nor to glorifie him in the Kingdom of heaven, but the saving knowledge of *CHRIST JESUS*.
1199	3	*Elaziz*, the second Son of *Saladine*, succeeded in the Realm of *Egypt*; which he exchanged afterwards with his Brother *Eladel* for the Kingdom of *Damasus*.
	4	*Eladel*, or *El-Aphtzel*, by the Christian Writers called *Meledine*, succeeded upon this exchange, in the Kingdom of *Egypt*: and overcame the *Christians*, without the loss of a man, at the siege of *Caire*, by letting loose the Sluces of *Nilus*; which drowned their Army, and forced them to covenant with him at his own pleasure.
1210	5	*Elchamul*.
1237	6	*Melech Assalach*, by the Christian Writers called *Melechsada*, the Son of *Elchamul*, who overcame *Lewis* the 9th. of *France*: and going with that King towards *Damiata*, was slain by the Souldiers of his Guard, called *Mamalucks*.
1242	7	*Elmutan*, the Son of *Malech Essalach*, succeeded for a time in his Fathers Throne. But the *Mamalucks* being resolved to obtain the Kingdom for themselves, inforced him to flie to a Tower of Wood, which they set on fire; the poor Prince, half burned, leaping into a River (which ran close by it) was their drowned: and the *Mamalucks* setled in the Kingdom, *An.* 1245.

These *Mamalucks* were the Off-spring of a People on the banks of the *Euxine* Sea, vulgarly called the *Circassians*: whom *Melechsala* either bought of their Parents, or (at the second hand) of the *Tartars*, then newly Masters of those Countreys, to supply the want of valour in the idle and effeminate people of *Egypt*; and out of them selected a choice Band of Men, for the Guard of his Person. Knowing their strength, and finding their opportunity, they trecherously slew *Melechsada* their Lord and Master; appointing one *Azeddin Ibek*, a *Turcoman* by Nation, and therefore by most Christian Writers called *Tarquimenicus*, (one of their own number) a man of great spirit and valour, to succeed in the Throne. Unwilling to re-give the Supream Authority into the hands of the *Egyptians*; and not permitting their own sons to enjoy the name and priviledge of *Mamalucks*; they bought yearly certain numbers of *Circassian* slaves, whom they committed to the keeping of the *Egyptians*, by them to be instructed in the *Egyptian* Language, and the Law of *Mahomet*. Being thus fitted for Employment, they were taught the Discipline of War, and by degrees advanced unto the highest Offices of Power and Trust; as now the *Janizaries* are in the *Turkish* Empire: in choice and ordering of whom, as the *Ottoman Turks* were Precedented by those of *Egypt*, so it is possible enough that the *Janizaries* may make as great a Change in the *Turkish* Empire,

as

as the *Mamalucks* did in the *Egyptians*. So unsafe a thing it is for a Prince to commit the sole guard of his Person, or the defence of his Dominions, to the hands of such, whom not the sence of natural Duty, but the hopes of Profit or Preferment, may make useful to him. For thus we find, that *Constantinus*, a King of the *Britains*, was murdered by his Guard of *Picts*: most of the *Roman* Emperours, by the hands of those whom they intrusted, either with the guard of their Persons, or the command of their Armies: And I think no man can be ignorant, how many times the Princes and Estates of *Italy* have been brought into the extreamest dangers, by trusting too much to the honesty of mercenary Souldiers and Commanders. Take we for instance the proceedings of *Giacopo Picinino*, who with his Followers first took pay of *Ferdinand* the first of *Naples*; left him, to fight for his vowed Enemy, *John* Duke of *Calabria*, the Son of *Rene* Duke of *Anjou*; whom he also forsook in his greatest need. The like we find of *Francisco Sforza*, first entertained by the Duke of *Millain*, from whom he revolted to the *Florentines*, from them to the *Venetians*; and being again received into the Pay of the State of *Millain*, made use of their own Army to subdue that City. Nor can I speak better of the *Switzers*, or their dealing in this kind with the *French* Kings, the *Sforza*'s Dukes of *Milan*; and with whom not, (to say the truth) that ever trusted or employed them.

Now as it is unsafe for a Prince to commit the custody of his Person, or the defence of his Estates to the Faith of Forciners; so is it dangerous to him to call in such aids, and to commit his Fortunes either wholly, or principally, unto their Fidelity. A moderate supply of men, Money, or Munition, from a confederate King, is, I confess, in most cases convenient, in some necessary: as well to save their Natives from the Sword; as to try a Friend, and interest an Ally in the same cause. But to invite so great a number of Succours, as from *Helpers* may become *Masters*, and oppress the people whom they came to defend; is that Rock on which many *Realms* have suffered shipwrack, and which a good *Pilot* of the State should with all care avoid. For as in the sickness of the body *natural*, it is hurtful to a mans health and life, to take more *Physick* than it may (after the effect thereof be wrought) either digest, or put out again; so in the body *Politick*, it is a perilous matter to receive more succours, than what (after they have done the deed they were sent for) we may either with conveniency reward and settle with us, or at liberty expel. Of all surfeits, this of Foreign supplies is most uncurable; and *Ne quid nimis*, if in nothing else true, is in this case oracle. There is no Kingdom (I am verily perswaded) under the Sun, which hath not been by this means conquered; no Common-wealth, which hath not been by this means ruined. To relate all examples, were infinite and tedious; to infer some, pleasing to the Reader, and to illustrate the point, not unnecessary. To begin with former times, *Philip* of *Macedon*, called into *Greece* to assist the *Thebans* against the *Phocians*, brought all that Countrey, in a manner, under his command. The *Romans* by aiding the *Sicilians* against the *Carthaginians*, possessed themselves of that flourishing Island; by assisting the *Hedui* against the *Sequani*, mastered *Gallia*; by succouring *Androgeus* against *Cassibelan*, seised on *Britain*; by siding with the *Ætolians* against *Perseus*, united to their Empire all the Kingdom of *Macedon*; and by the same course what not? In after-ages, the *Britains* called in the *Saxons*, and were by them thrust out of all; the *Irish* called in the *English*, by whom they were in process of time totally subdued; and the *Indians* called in the *Mongul-Tartars*, who now Lord it over them. These forreign Supplies are invited, or let into a Countrey, commonly in four cases. First, when some one man upon discontent, or desire of revenge, openeth them a way into a Countrey: upon which motives, *Narses* invited the *Lombards* into *Italy*; and Count *Julian* brought the *Moors* into *Spain*; the one to be revenged on the Empress *Sophia*, who had despitefully reviled him; the other to revenge himself on King *Rodorick*, who had ravished his Daughter. Secondly, when a weaker Faction makes way for them, to maintain their cause against a stronger. On which ground, the Duke of *Burgundy* being oppressed by the faction of *Orleans*, made way for *Henry* the fifth to pass into *France*; and the *Leaguers* drew the *Spaniards* in, to hold up their declining cause against *Henry* the 4th. Thirdly, when an ambitious Prince makes use of a forein power, to usurp upon the rights of another man. And for that cause *Ludowick Sforze* perswaded *Charles* the 8th. to undertake the Conquest of the Realm of *Naples*; that by the countenance of his Arms, he might appropriate to himself the Dukedom of *Millain*. Fourthly, when a King overburthened by a forein, or domestick Force, which he is not able to resist, requires the help of a forein Friend: in which case, *Plus a medico quam a morbo mali*, the *Physick* proves many times worse than the *Disease*. For thus the Kings of *Naples* of the house of *Aragon*, being in danger of the *French*, drew in the Aids of *Ferdinand* the *Catholique*, the Cousin-German once removed of the King then being; And the *Caliphs* of *Egypt*, not able to withstand the Forces of *Almericus*, craved aid of the *Turks*: by which means, both those Kingdoms were made a prey to their forein Friends, and by avoiding *Scylla*, fled into *Charybdis*. Nay many times it so happeneth, that these forein Succours join in design with those, against whom they were called, and divide the conquered State between them. And so we find that the *Burgundians* being called by *Stilico* into *Gaul*, to prevent the breaking of the *Franks*, or *French*, joined with them in a common League against the *Romans*, whom they dispossessed at last of all that Countrey. Only amongst so many examples to this purpose, we find the *Low-Countrey-men* to have prospered by these forein aids; who by the assistance of the *English*, ransomed themselves from that yoke of bondage which was intended to be put upon them by the King of *Spain*. This I acknowledge to be true, and look upon it as a great Argument of the integrity and honesty of the *English* Nation; although it be as true withal, that the *English* never had such an Army there, as to be able to subdue them. But give me such another instance, I will quit the cause: for the same *Low-Countrey-men* found it otherwise with the Duke of *Anjou*, Brother to *Henry* the 3d. of *France*, whom they created Duke of *Braband*, and their Governor-General; permitting him to bring in as many of the *French*, as either his Authority, or their own Moneys were able to raise: who was no sooner setled in that command, but he made it his chief business to seize upon their strongest Holds, and to be a more absolute Prince amongst them, than ever the *Spaniards*, or *Burgundians* had been before. So that I think I may conclude, that these forein Succours are the last to be tried, and the least to be trusted, of any remedies in State. But it's now more than time to return to the *Mamalucks*; and in them to

The Fifth DYNASTY of the *EGYPTIAN* KINGS, or the Race of the *MAMALUCKS*.

A. Ch.

1255 1 *Turquimenius*, who being promoted to the Kingdom, releaſed King *Lewis*, whom *Melechſala* his Predeceſſor had taken Priſoner, but performed not half of the conditions agreed upon.

2 *Clothes* (by ſome called *Elmutahaz*) taking advantage of the Miſeries of the *Turks*, then diſtreſſed by the *Tartars*; ſeized on the greateſt part of *Syria* and *Paleſtine*.

12[illegible]0 3 *Bandocader* perfected the begun Conqueſts of *Cloths*, and took from the *Chriſtians* the ſtrong City of *Antioch*; carrying on his Armies as far as *Armenia*, where he did much ſpoil.

4 *Melechſait*, or *Melechſares*, reſtored the power of the *Mamalucks* in *Syria* and *Paleſtine*; where it had been much impaired by *Edward* the Son of *Henry* the 3d. of *England*, and *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, &c.

1286 5 *Elpis*, or *Alphix*, recovered from the diſſenting *Chriſtians* the ſtrong Cities of *Tripolis*, *Berytus*, *Tyre*, and *Sidon*; all which he razed to the ground, that they might not be any more ſerviceable to the affairs of the *Chriſtians*.

1291 6 *Araphus*, or *Euſtrephus*, by birth a *German*, releaſed *Henry* Duke of *Mecklenburgh*, after he had been Priſoner 26 years. He rooted the *Chriſtians* out of *Syria*, took *Ptolomais* the laſt Town they there held: and ſo razed it; that he made it fit to be ploughed.

7 *Melechneſar*, when he was Lieutenant to *Araphus*, was diſcomfitted by *Caſſanes*, a great Prince of the *Tartars*, with the loſs of 40000 *Egyptians*: but *Caſſanes* being departed, he recovered again all *Syria*, and deſtroyed *Hieruſalem*; for which Service he was afterward made Sultan of *Egypt*.

8 *Melechadel*, who I ſuppoſe to be that Sultan that governed *Egypt* when *Tamberlane* with unreſiſtable violence conquered it; but of this I am not certain: neither can I meet with any conſtant and continued *ſeries* (which I dare rely on) of his Succeſſors in this Kingdom, till I come to

9 *Melechaella*, or *Melechnaſar*, who in the year 1423. ſubdued the Iſle of *Cyprus*, and made the Kings thereof to be from thenceforth Tributaries to the *Mamaluch* Sultans.

1465 10 *Cathbeyus*, who much reformed the State of *Egypt*, and was a profeſſed Enemy of *Bajazet* 2d. the 8th. King of the *Ottomans*.

1498 11 *Mahomet* the Son of *Cathbeyus*, depoſed by the *Mamalucks*, for fear the Kingdom might by him be made hereditary; it being againſt their uſual cuſtom, that the Son ſhould ſucceed his Father, in the name and priviledges of a *Mamaluck*.

1499 12 *Campſon Chiarſeſius*, ſucceeded on the depoſing of *Mahomet*.

A. Ch.

13 *Zanballat*, who dethroned *Campſon*, and not long was depoſed by

1500 14 *Tonombeius*; outed of his Eſtate by the joynt-conſent of the *Mamalucks*, ſo to make way for *Campſon Gaurus*.

1501 15 *Campſon* II. ſirnamed *Gaurus*, reformed the diſordered and factious Eſtate both of Court and Countrey; and for the ſpace of 16 years governed very proſperouſly. But ſiding at the laſt with *Hyſmael* the *Perſian Sophy*, againſt *Selimus* the firſt of that name the 3d. Emperour, and tenth King of the *Ottoman* Family; he drew his Kingdom into a War, in which his Armies were overthrown, and himſelf ſlain in battel.

1517 16 *Tonombeius* II. ſucceeded *Campſon Gaurus*, both in his Kingdom and misfortunes: vanquiſhed in his firſt year by the ſaid *Selimus* the firſt, *An.* 1517. Who having conquered this rich Kingdom, was uſed to ſay, *That he had gotten a Farm to feed his* Gemoglans, *or young Souldiers.* So *Egypt* became a Province of the *Turkiſh* Empire, as it ſtill continueth.

What the *Revenues* of it were in the time of the *Pharaohs*, I am not able to affirm. Great they muſt be, beyond the proportion of belief, or elſe they could never have been Maſters of ſufficient Treaſure to finiſh thoſe vaſt Structures which they undertook. Twelve thouſand and five hundred *Talents* they amounted Annually unto, in the time of the *Ptolomies*; which of our Money makes the ſum of two *Millions* and 347750 pounds. Which ſum *Auguſtus Cæſar* (appropriating this Province to himſelf) is ſaid to have doubled: But whether he had it all in Money, or part hereof in Money, and the reſt in Corn, I determine not. Certain it is, that there was yearly ſhipped hence for *Rome*, in the time of that Emperour, Two hundred thouſand Meaſures of Wheat, every Meaſure weighing Twenty hundred pound weight; which cometh to Seven Millions and an hundred forty thouſand of our *Engliſh* Buſhels; ſold by him, or diſtributed *gratis* amongſt the Poor, as he ſaw occaſion. So that there might be very well ſome abatement in Money, conſidering that the Corn amounted to ſo great a ſum. Nor were they much leſs, if ought at all, when the *Mamalucks* ruled in this Countrey. For *Campſon Gaurus*, at his coming to the Throne, gave no leſs than Ten Millions of *Duckats*, at one clap, amongſt his Souldiers. But the *Turks* at this day, partly through their Tyranical Government, and partly through the diſcontinuance of the uſual Traffick through the *Red Sea*, receive no more than Three *Millions* of Crowns; one of which is hoorded in his own Coffers; the ſecond is appropriated unto his Vicegerent *Baſhaw*; for ſupport of this Charge; the third is diſtributed among his Garriſon-Souldiers, and ſuch of them as by Land guard his own Million to *Conſtantinople*; for by Sea he dareth not venture it, for fear of the *Florentine*, who with a few Ships Lordeth in it the *Mediterranean*.

And ſo much for *Egypt*.

Of

OF BARBARY.

BARBARY is bounded on the East, with *Cyrenaica*; on the West, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the north, with the *Mediterranean*, the Straits of *Gibraltar*, and some part of the *Atlantick* also; on the South, with Mount *Atlas*, by which separated from *Lybia Inferior*, or the Desarts of *Lybia*.

It containeth in it the whole *Dioceſs* of *Africk*, and part of the *Dioceſs* of *Spain*: subject in former times to the Commonwealth of *Carthage*, and the great Kings of *Mauritania*, and *Numidia*. When conquered by the *Romans*, they gave to that part of it, which they won from the *Carthaginians*, the name of *Africa*; calling that Province by the name of the whole *Peninſula*, and afterwards extended it over all the rest of the Countrey, on the North of *Atlas*. Which name it held till the subjugation of it by the *Saracens*, by whom called BARBARY: either from *Barbar*, signifying in their Language an uncertain murmur, such as the speech of the *Africans* seemed to them to be; or from the word *Bar*, signifying a *Desart*, which doubled, made up first *Barbar*, and after *Barbary*.

It is situate under the third and fourth *Climates:* so that the longest Summers day in the parts most South, amounteth to thirteen hours three quarters, increased in the most Northern parts to fourteen hours and a quarter. In length extended from the *Atlantick* Ocean to the *greater Syrtis*, for the space of 1500 miles; in breadth from Mount *Atlas* to the *Mediterranean*, where narrowest, 100 miles; but towards the *Straits*, where broadest, almost three hundred.

The Countrey in such parts as lie neerest to the *Mediterranean*, is full of Hills, covered with Woods, and stored with plenty of Wild-beasts; provided reasonably well of most sorts of Fruits, but unfit for Wheat, insomuch that most of the Inhabitants live of *Barley-bread*. Betwixt which and Mount *Atlas* is a Champain Countrey, watered with many pleasant Rivers issuing from that Mountain, and liberally furnished with Cheries, Figgs, Pears, Plumbs, Apples of all kinds; abundance of Oyl, Honey, Sugar; some Mines of Gold, and that for purity and fineness no where to be bettered. Here are also besides large Herds of Cattel, some Elephants, Lyons, Dragons, Leopards, and others of the like savage nature, and of Apes great multitudes; Horses good store, of excellent both strength and beauty. But taking it in the best parts, it falleth extremely short of that infinite fertility, which is ascribed to it by the Writers of elder times. For besides the miracle of five hundred Ears of Corn growing on one stalk, (whereof more anon) *Pliny* reporteth, that not far from the City of *Tacape*, in the way to *Leptis*, a man might see a great Date-Tree overshadowing an Olive, under the Olive a Fig-Tree, under that a Pomgranate, under that a Vine, and under all, Pease, Wheat, and Herbs, all growing and flourishing at one time. It is affirmed also by the same Author, that the Vine beareth twice a year, that some fruits or other are gathered in it at all times of the year; and that a piece of ground of four cubits square, was usually rented out at so many *Denarii*: by which accompt, (as the learned *Budæus* doth compute it) an Acre of that ground must be worth yearly, 1280c of the *Roman Sestertii*, which make 320 Crowns. An infinite and unparrallel'd increase of the Fruits of the Earth, if the Author were not out in his valuation.

The people are of a duskish colour, but inclining to *blackness*: much of the same nature with the *Arabians*, by whose numerous Families formerly they were overspread; but the *Africans* of the two the better: active of body, well skilled in Horsemanship, but impatient of labour, covetous of honour, inconstant, crafty, and unfaithful: studious in matters of their Law, and in some of the *Liberal* Sciences, especially *Philosophy* and the *Mathematicks*, of which in many parts of the *Mahometan* Countreys they are admitted to be Readers: They are also said to be stately of gate, exceeding distrustful, in their hate implacable, and jealous of their Women beyond all compare. The Women of a comely body, and well featured, beautiful in blackness, of delicate soft skins; and in their habit and apparel beyond measure sumptuous: so dress't, to make themselves more amiable in the eyes of their Husbands; for otherwise not permitted to stir abroad, and seldom to see any body but those of their own houses.

The Language spoken at the present in most of the *Maritime* Towns, except those of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, is the *Arabick* Tongue. In those two Kingdoms, and most part of the Countrey-Villages, the *Punick* or old *African*, the ancient languages of the Countrey: the *Punick* spoken in all places where anciently the *Carthaginians* were of any power; the *African* (whatsoever it was) in the parts of *Mauritania*, not subject to them. Of the *Latine* there is no remainder, which though it was the Language of the *Roman* Colonies, yet never could it spread so far as to extinguish or suppress the old natural Tongues: and in the *Colonies* themselves so much degenerated in short time, so barbarously and imperfectly spoken; that a Sister of the Emperour *Severus*, who lived in *Leptis*, a *Roman* Colony, coming to *Rome* to see her Brother, spoke it so incongruously, that the Emperour was ashamed to hear it. And though the Sermons of S. *Augustine*, an *African* Bishop, were preached in *Latine*, because preached in *Hippo* his Episcopal See, which was then a Colony of the *Romans*; yet he confesseth, that he was sometimes fain to use such words as were not *Latine*, to be the better understood of his Congregation.

The *Christian* Faith was first planted in that part hereof, which was called *Africa Propria*, by *Epanetus*, one of the 70 Disciples; by *Dorotheus* in his *Synopsis*, affirmed to be the first Bishop of *Carthage*: In *Mauritania*, by S. *Simon* the Apostle, surnamed *Zelotes*. *Metaphrastes* addeth, that S. *Simon Peter* preached here also, when by the Decree of *Claudius Cæsar* he was forced from *Rome*; and

and at his going hence, left *Crescens* his disciple to promote the work. But by whomsoever planted first, it found good increase, and was so propagated in short time over all this Countrey, that in the year 250, or before, there were in it above 90 Bishops; for so many were assembled in the Synod of *Labestum*: and in the year 398. when the faction of the *Donatists* was of greatest power, we find no fewer than 214 *Catholick* Bishops met together in the Council of *Carthage*. Which as it is an argument of the great increase of *Christianity* in those parts of *Africa*; so it shews also, that the Church was in ill condition; so overpower'd by the violence of that mighty faction, who had at least 270 Bishops of their own Opinion; that the *Orthodox* party was necessitated to encrease the number of Bishops for fear of being over-balanced by the contrary side, if ever the difference should come to be examined in a publick Meeting. These Bishops ranked into six Classes, according to the number of the *African* Provinces: the Bishops of each Province subject to their own *Metropolitan*, who in this *Dioceſs* (contrary to the usage of all other Churches) had the name of *Primates*: but all of them subordinate to the *Primate* of *Carthage*, originally invested with *Patriarchal* jurisdiction over all these parts. *Latius fusa est nostra* Provincia; *Habet enim Numidiam, & Mauritanias duas sibi cohærentes*, are S. *Cyprians* words. Which shew, that *Leo Africanus* was a better *Geographer*, than an Historian or Divine. He would not else have told us in such positive terms, that those of *Barbary* remained in their old *Idolatry*, till 250 years before *Mahomets* birth; at what time they received the *Gospel*, and not before. But the good man mistook the reviving of the *Orthodox* Faith, in the time of *Justinian*, after it had been long suppressed by the *Vandals* of the *Arian* faction (who at one time banished hence 300 *Catholick* Bishops) for the first planting of the Gospel: Otherwise not to be excused. But after this *Reviver*, it held not long, when suppressed by the *Saracens*, and so suppressed, that except it be in some few Towns possessed by the King of *Spain*, and the Crown of *Portugal*, there is no tract of *Christianity* to be discerned in all this Countrey; *Mahometanism* being elsewhere universally embraced amongst them.

Amongst the men of most note for Souldery, which have been born in this Countrey, we may reckon *Amilcar* the *Carthaginian*, and his three Sons: 2 *Annibal*, 3 *Asdrubal*, and 4 *Mago*; men hardly to be parallel'd in any Ages: 5 *Masinissa*, King of the *Numidians*, one of their Cotemporaries: and in the following times, 6 *Septimius Severus*, the *Roman* Emperor. Amongst those addicted to the Muses, those of most note, 1 *Terence*, 2 *Apuleius*. But for Divines, no Region in the World afforded men of more eminent note, nor better deserving of the Church. 1 *Tertullian*, 2 *Cyprian*, 3 *Julius Africanus*, 4 *Arnobius*, 5 *Lactantius*, 6 *Victorinus Afer*, 7 *Optatus*, *Melevitanus*, 8 *Victor Uticensis*, 9 *Fulgentius*, 10 *Primasius*. And above all, the most learned and divine S. *Augustine*; a man of such admirable abilities, and indefatigable industry, so constant a Defender of all Orthodox Doctrines against the *Heretick*s of those times, that he deservedly got the name of *Malleus Hæreticorum*.

Principal Mountains of this Countrey besides Mount *Atlas*, (of which hereafter by it self) 1 *Pborca*, 2 *Heptadelphus*, and 3 *Atlas minor* in *Mauritania Tingitana*; 4 *Cinnaba*, 5 *Garas*, 6 *Madethubadus*, and 7 those called *Gariphi*, in *Cæsaraensis*; 8 *Thambes*, 9 *Mampsarus*, 10 *Usaletus*, and 11 *Zuchabarus*, in *Africa Propria*. Of which, and others, we may speak more, if occasion be, in our discription of the Provinces, in which they are. And for the Rivers of most note, though none of any long course in so narrow a Countrey; we have in *Tingitana*, 1 *Sala*, falling into the *Atlantick*, out of *Atlas minor*; 2 another of the same name, and the same *exit* also, but far more to the North, towards the Streit of *Gibraltar*; 3 *Melochath*, mollified by *Salust* the Historian into *Mulucha*, and by him placed betwixt the *Numidians* and the *Moors*, 4 *Malva*, the boundary at this day, betwixt the Kingdoms of *Fesse* and *Algiers*; 5 *Phthuth*, of more fame than any, of which more anon: in *Cæsariensis*, 6 *Nasabath*, 7 *Sisaris*, and *Sorbetos*: in *Africa Propria*, or the Kingdom of *Tunes*, 8 *Rubicatus*, which issuing out of Mount *Thambes*, falleth into the *Mediterranean* near *Hippo Regius*; 9 *Triton*, which issuing out of the Hill called *Usaletus*, and making the great Fenn called *Tritonia Palus*, endeth its course also in the *Mediterranean*; and finally, 10 *Bagradas*, the greatest in all this tract, which rising out of Mount *Atlas*, first runeth towards the East, and then receiving from the Hill called *Mampsarus*, the addition of another Stream, passeth directly Northward to the City of *Utica*, and there ends his course.

Having thus laid together the chief Metes and *Landmarks*, I should now proceed to the description of the several Provinces hereof, as in other places. But because each part almost hath had for these later times its particular History, and that it is divided at the present into several Governments, and under the command of several Princes: I will here lay down so much of the Story of it as concerns the whole, before such division; and afterwards pursue the *History* and *Chorography* of the several parts. And for the whole we are to know, that this Country was first peopled by *Phut* the third Son of *Cham*: who leaving his Brother *Mizraim* well setled in the Land of *Egypt*, passed towards the West; and leaving *Lehabim* his Nephew betwix him and *Mizraim*, possessed himself of all the rest from the *greater Syrtis* to the *Ocean*. Remainders of whose name we find in the River *Phut*, (by *Ptolomy* called *Phthuth*, with but little difference, save that it savoureth more of the *African* roughness) near which *Josephus* findeth a Region called the Countrey of *Phut*, a Nation called the *Phuteans*: seconded herein by S. *Hierom*, who speaking of this *Regio Phutensis* in *Mauritania*, (where the River *Phuth* is placed by *Ptolomy*) voucheth in general terms the testimony of old Writers, both *Greek* and *Latine*. So that of this there is no question to be made. Such Nations as descended of this Plantation, shall be hereafter spoke of in their several Provinces. Governed at first by the Chiefs of their several Families; but in the end, reduced under the Command of the Kings of *Mauritania* and *Numidia*, and the State of *Carthage*. The two first, Natives of this Countrey, of the Race of *Phut*; the last descended also of the Seed of *Cham*, their common Parent, by the line of *Canaan*: who on the Conquest of their Countrey by the Children of *Israel*, forced to seek new Dwellings, and having store of Ships to transplant themselves and their Families; setled in the maritime parts of *Mauritania*, and *Africa*, properly so called. For, that the people of those parts, though lost into other Namet and Families, were anciently of a *Canaanitish*, or *Phœnician* Race, may be made apparent, 1 By the nearness of their Language, the *Punick*, or *Phœnician*, and old *Hebrew* Tongue, differing only in the Dialect and Pronunciation. 2*ly*, By the name *Pœni*, or *Phœni*, little differing from that of the *Phœnices*. 3*ly*, By this testimony of S. *Augustine*, who telleth us in the Comment on St. *Pauls* Epistle to the *Romans*, begun, but not finished by him; *Interrogati Rustici nostri quid sint, respondent* Punici *Chanani*; that is to say, that when any of

of the Inhabitants of this Country (he himself was one) were asked what they were, they answered, *Chananites*. 4ly, We find in *Herodotus*, how *Cambyses* had totally conquered *Egypt*, intending a War against the *Carthaginians*, who were then a State (it seemeth) of some power: But the *Phœnicians*, being the only Sea-faring men *Cambyses* then had, absolutely denied to be employed in that Service; they being sprung from the same Tree that the *Carthaginians* were. 5ly, We read in *Procopius*, (out of which it is cited by *Evagrius Scholasticus*) how on two Marble-Pillars, situate nigh unto *Tingis*, or *Tanger*, there was in the *Phœnician* Language and Character engraved, *Nos fugimus a facie* Joshuah *prædonis, filii* Nave; that is to say, *We flie from the face of that Robber* Joshuah, *the Son of* Nun. The setling of this people there, a great incitement questionless unto *Dido* to come thither also: who feared as much danger from her Brother *Pygmalion* King of *Tyre*, whose hands had been imbrued in the bloud of her Husband; as the others did from the Sword of *Joshuah*. Gathering together all her Treasures, which were very great, accompanied with her Brother *Barca*, and her Sister *Anna*, she set sail for *Africk*; and landing in the Bay, where after stood the City of *Carthage*, she obtained leave to build a Fort of no greater bigness than she could compass round with an Oxes hide. This the beginning of that City; hence the name of *Byrsa*, which at first it had. First founded in, or about the year of the World 3070, which was about 144 years after the building of *Solomons* Temple; 143 years before the building of *Rome*, and about 290 years from the destruction of *Troy*. By which accompt (I note this only by the way) it is impossible that *Dido*, or *Elisa* (for by both these names we find her called) should ever see the face of *Æneas*, unless it were in picture, or imagination; and therefore as impossible she should either fall in love with him, or be got with Child by him, or finally kill her self on her being forsaken. All which being delivered by *Virgil* in his excellent Poem, did for long time obtain a general belief with most sorts of men. Hereunto consenteth *Ausonius*, who honouring the *Statue* of this abused Princess with an *Epigram* of 18 Verses, among others, gives us these four.

Invide cur in me stimulasti Musa Maronem,
Fingeret ut nostræ damna pudicitiæ?
Vos magis Historicis (*Lectores*) *credite de me,*
Quam qui furta dicm, concubitusque canunt.

Why didst thou stir up *Virgil*, envious *Muse*,
Falsly my name and honour to abuse?
Of me let *Histories* be heard, not those,
Who to the World *Joves* thefts and lusts expose.

Credible it is, *Æneas* being driven on the Coast of *Africk*, was by some Prince there courteously entertained, as a man whose fame had been his *Harbinger*: but why the story should be fastned on *Dido*, I see not. Perhaps the unfortunate death of this Queen, who laid violent hands on her self, gave occasion to the Poet to fain, that it was for the love of *Æneas*: Whereas it was indeed to avoid the lust and fury of *Iarbas*, a potent King of the *Getuli*, a powerful Nation neighbouring those parts of *Africa* in which *Carthage* stood, who violently desired to have his pleasure on her.

But to proceed; This City thus founded in a place commodious for Trade and Merchandise, in short time grew exceeding wealthy. And having wealth enough to hire *Mercenary* Souldiers (of which the needy *Mauritanians*, and *Numidians*, did afford good store) they conquered all the Sea Coasts from *Cyrene* to the Streits of *Hercules* (now called the Srteits of *Gibraltar*:) and so much also towards the South, as was worth the conquering; within which space possessed of 300 Cities. Grown to such height, that all the *African* Kings and Princes, and amongst them the Kings of *Numidia* and *Mauritania* were at their devotion: They began to cast their eyes on *Sicily*, a wealthy Iland, lying near unto their Coast; which questionless they had possessed, if the *Romans*, envious of their greatness, and fearing their Neighbourhood, had not took upon them the defence of the *Mamertines*, and under that pretence got some footing in it. The end of this War, after many brave exploits on both sides, was the driving the *Carthaginians* out of *Sicily*; their abandoning all the Islands betwixt them and *Italy*, and the payment of 3200 *Talents*, amounting to about two Millions of Crowns. And such end had the first *Punick* War, managed for the most part in *Sicily*. During which time, and the first War there managed by the *Carthaginians*, *Africk* it self was twice invaded; first, by *Agathocles* Tyrant of *Syracuse*, (or so commonly called) and afterwards by *Regulus* a *Roman* General, but with no other great success than the spoil of the Country. The second followed not long after, but the *Scene* was altered; begun in *Spain*, prosecuted in *Italy*, and ended in *Africk*. Begun by *Annibal* the Son of *Amilcar*; descended from *Berca* the Brother of *Dido* or *Elisa*: who having conquered a great part of *Spain*, and thereby both increased his reputation and experience, conducted his victorious Army through *Gaul*, and over the *Alpes*, into *Italy* it self; defeated the Armies of the *Romans*, and slew some of their Consuls: So prosperous in the Battel of *Canna*, where the whole strength of *Rome* was broken, that had he followed his good fortune, and made use of his Victory, he might within four or five days after have dined in the *Capitol*. Having for 18 years together held them work in *Italy*, he was called home to defend *Africk* from the Forces of *Scipio*; who having driven the *Carthaginians* out of *Spain*, had very prudently translated the War to *Carthage*. The issue was, that on the loss of the battel of *Nadagara*, the *Carthaginians* were necessitated to submit themselves to the will of the Conquerour: that is to say, to deliver up all their Elephants, together with all their Ships and Gallies excepting ten; to make no War without leave of the *Romans*, to pay for the Charges of the War 10000 *Talents*; and such other extremities. So ended the second *Punick* War, *An. V. C.* 602. And the third followed not long after, not any way occasioned by those of *Carthage*, but out of the inveterate hatred of the People of *Rome*, who would not think themselves safe whilst that City stood: and therefore sent another *Scipio* to lay siege unto it. By whom, after a long and stout resistance, it was at last taken and destroyed: The Treasure which was found in it, notwithstanding their former losses, and the low estate it was reduced to, besides what was consumed by fire, and reserved by the Souldiers, amounting to 470000 pound weight of Silver, which cometh to a Million, four hundred and ten thousand pounds of our *English* Money.

Such end had *Carthage*, and therewith all the rest of the States of *Africa*, who though in hatred to the *Carthaginians* they had armed against her, and aided the *Romans* in these Wars; yet they soon found their own Fortunes buried in the self-same Grave. Subverted one after another, as occasion was, they became all subject unto *Rome*; their Kingdoms and Estates turned to *Roman* Provinces. Of these were reckoned seven in all, that is to say, 1 *Africa Propria*, called also *Zeugitana*, and *Proconsularis*, 2 *Byzacena*, 3 *Tripolitana*, 4 *Numidia*, 5 *Mauritania Cæsariensis*, 6 *Sitifensis*, and 7 *Tingitana*. Of which the last (I know not why) was laid to the *Diocess*

of *Spain*, called therefore *Hiſpania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other ſide of the Sea, by ſome elder Writers: the other ſix made up the *Dioceſs* of *Africk*, ſubordinate to the *Præfectus Prætorio* for *Italy*, who had here his *Vicarius*, or Lieutenant. In this condition it continued, till ſubdued by the *Vandals*, a *German* Nation, inhabiting beyond the *Elb*, on the Coaſt of the *Baltick*; where now lie the Dukedoms of *Mecklenbourg* and *Pomerania*. Their memory ſtill retained there in the ſtile of thoſe Princes, who call themſelves *Duces Vandalorum*; and in the Confederacy of the *Hanſe-towns*, called by ſome *Latine* Writers, *Civitates Vandalicæ*. A Nation of great power, and numbers, (the *Burgundians* being only a part of theſe) one of the five into which *Pliny* doth divide the *Germans*. In the 11th year of the Empire of *Arcadius* and *Honorius*, they were invited into *Gaul*, by the treacherous practices of *Stilico*, Lieutenant of the Weſtern Empire; and after an abode of three years, paſſed into *Spain*, together with the *Suevi*, and *Alani*, their Aſſociates. But after 18 years, the *Goths* made that place too hot for them alſo. So that they could not but willingly accept the offer of *Bonifacius*, the Emperours Vicegerent in *Africa*: who ſtomaching to ſee his Office beſtowed on *Caſtinus*, an unworthy man, and his enemy, betrayed the Country to theſe *Vandals*, in the laſt year of the life and reign of *Gundericus*, an *Arian* in Religion, as were the reſt of the Nation, to which induced by their Neighbourhood and acquaintance with the *Goths*: Which *Hereſie* as they brought with them into *Africk*, driving thence all the Orthodox *Chriſtians*, ſo they continued in it till their extirpation.

The *Vandal* Kings of *AFRICA*.

A.C.		
412	1	*Gundericus*, who firſt invaded *Gaul*, *Spain*, and *Africk*. 16.
428	2	*Genſerius*, who at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, the Widow of *Valentinian*, invaded *Italy*, and ſacked the City of *Rome*, the Spoil whereof for fourteen days he gave to his Souldiers: but at the requeſt of *Eudoxia*, whom he afterwards married, he did not burn it. This *Eudoxia* was Wife to the Weſtern Emperour *Valentinian*; who having a mind to a Lady of *Rome*, the Wife of one *Maximus*, he cunningly ſlipped the Ring of *Maximus* off his finger, and by that token ſent for the Lady to the Court, and when ſhe was come, raviſhed her. To revenge this diſgrace, *Maximus* ſlew *Valentinian*, made himſelf Emperour and forced *Eudoxia* to be his Wife. But ſhe ſtomaching a Match ſo unequal to her high Birth, and having ſome incling of her Huſbands death, ſent for *Genſericus* into *Italy*. This *Genſericus* conquered *Carthage*, and *Hippo*, and reigned 48 years.
476	3	*Honoricus* Son of *Genſericus*. 7.
484	4	*Gundebundus*, Son to *Genzo*, the Brother of *Honoricus*. 15.
499	5	*Traſimundus*, Brother to *Gundebundus*. 24.
523	6	*Hildericus*, the Son of *Honoricus*, depoſed by
530	7	*Gilimir*, the Son of *Genzo*, one of the Deſcendents of *Genſericus*; overcome by *Beliſarius* a worthy and politick Leader, whom the Emperour *Juſtinian* employed in that Service.

And thus ended the Kingdom of the *Vandals*, (having continued in *Spain* and *Africa* 146 years) by the valour of *Beliſarius*. Who after this good Service, was employed by *Juſtinian* againſt the *Goths*, then reigning in *Italy*; againſt whom he proceeded very fortunately: but being, on I know not what envy, called to *Conſtantinople*, his eyes were put out, and he was forced to beg his Bread at the Gate of the Temple of S. *Sophia*. A bad reward for ſo good a Servant. But to go on, *Juſtinian* having regained *Africk*, to honour his new Conqueſt, exempted it from the command of the *Prætorio-Præfectus* of *Italy*, to which formerly ſubject; and encreaſing the number of the *African* Provinces by the addition of the Iſle of *Sardinia*, made it a *Præfecture* of it ſelf: appointing his *Præfectus Prætorio Africæ* to recide in *Carthage*, as the chief City of his Charge; which he then alſo raiſed to a *Conſular* Province, having in former times been *Proconſular* only. But long it held not in this ſtate: For in the year 647. the *Romans* were finally expulſed by *Hucba*, a famous Leader, whom *Oſmen*, the third *Caliph* of the *Saracens*, had deſigned to this Service. *Africk*, from that time forwards, reckoned amongſt the Provinces of the *Saracenical* or *Mahometan* Empire. But in the end, the Authority of the *Caliphs* growing leſs and leſs, and every one of their *Sultans* or *Provincial* Officers, getting what he could for himſelf; this Country was diſtracted in many Kingdoms and Principalities, but all at laſt reduced to four of moſt conſideration: that is to ſay, the Kingdoms of 1 *Tunis*, 2 *Tremeſen* or *Algiers*, 3 *Feſſe*, and 4 *Morocco*. To the *Chorography* and *Hiſtory* whereof we do now proceed; adding hereto in the fifth place, the Iſles of *Barbary*.

1. *TUNIS*.

THE Kingdom of *TUNIS* (in *Latine* called *Regnum Tunitanum*) hath on the Eaſt, *Cyrene*; on the Weſt, the Kingdom of *Algiers*, or *Tremeſen*; on the North, the *Mediterranean*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*. So called from *Tunis*, the chief City of it; extended all along the Coaſt of the *Mediterranean* for the ſpace of 800 miles or thereabout, but the breadth not anſwerable.

The Country towards the Eaſt, barren and deſtitute of water; but in the Weſtern parts, ſufficiently plentiful of Corn and other Fruits, and generally well ſet with Trees. The People more patient of labour than the reſt of *Barbary*, and for that cauſe perhaps more healthy: but queſtionleſs of ſo good conſtitution, that they live commonly to great age, unleſs a violent death prevent them; and are not much afraid of Sickneſs, or much troubled with it.

It contains in it the two whole Provinces of *Africa Propria* (or *Africa Minor*, as ſome call it) and the *Numidia* of the *Romans*; called ſince *Numidia Antiqua*, to difference it from the preſent *Numidia*, lying on the other ſide of Mount *Atlas*. The principal Mountains of which Countries, beſides thoſe ſpoken of already, were 1 *Audas*, 2 *Buzara*, 3 *Cinna*, 4 *Dios*, or the Hills of *Jupiter*, 5 *Gillius*, by ſome named *Gigion*, and 6 thoſe called *Thizibi*. Rivers of moſt eſteem with them, though not much with others, beſides thoſe mentioned before

before. 1 *Ampſage*, now called *Collo*, and by ſome *Sat Gemar*, which divideth this Kingdom from that of *Tremeſen*; 2 *Catuda*; 3 *Cyniphat*, iſſuing from the Hills called *Zuchabarus*, and falling into the Sea, not far from *Tripolis*. Beſides which, there were ſome great *Lakes*; the chief whereof, 1 *Hipponites*, near Mount *Cinna*; 2 The Lake of *Pallas*, or that called *Palus Tritonia*, where *Minerva* was ſaid to have ſhewed her ſelf the Inventreſs of Spinning and of Oyl, and for that much worſhipped by this people; 3 *Sylura*, another great Lake; but not ſo famous as the former, becauſe not honoured by a Goddeſs.

The whole divided by the *Romans* into theſe four parts, *viz.* 1 *Africa* eſpecially ſo called, lying on the Sea, from the River *Ampſage* to the leſſer *Syrtis*; 2 *Tripolitana*, from the leſſer *Syrtis* to the greater; 3 *Numidia*, lying on the Weſt of *Zeugitana*, or *Africa Propria*: And 4 *Byzacena*, ſo called from *Byzacium*, or *Byzacina*, a chief City of it; the Territory whereof ſo extremely fruitful, that 400 Ears of Corn were ſent to *Rome* in the time of *Auguſtus*, and 360 in the time of *Domitius Nero*, growing on one ſtalk. But this diviſion being long ſince worn out of memory, it is divided at the preſent into the Provinces of 1 *Ezzab*, 2 *Tripolis*, 3 *Tunis*, 4 *Conſtantina*, 5 *Bugia*.

1. EZZAB, is that part of this Kingdom which lieth next to *Cyrene*: A ſmall Region, and not very fruitful; yet the Inhabitants hereof are conceived to be rich, (the richer, in regard they are free from *Tributes*:) their wealth not riſing from the Commodities of their own Country, which affordeth them little elſe beſies *Dates* and *Olives*; but from ſuch Merchandice which they buy of the *Venetians*, and ſell to the *Numidians*. The richeſt, thoſe of *Meſrata*, (a little Province of this Tract) which lieth near the Sea. Towns it hath ſome, but none of note: the chief of which, 1 *Meſurata*, 2 *Sibeca*, both upon the Sea; of which the firſt gives name unto that little Province ſpoken of before. Of more note in former times was *Phileni Villa*, ſituate on the greater *Syrtis*, near the Promontory then called *Hippi*, but now *Cabo de Surta*; memorable for the adjoyning *Altars* called *Phileni Aræ*, erected by the *Carthaginians* upon this occaſion. Some Controverſies being grown betwixt thoſe of *Carthage* and *Cyrene*, about their Bounds; it was agreed, that two men at a ſet hour ſhould be ſent out of each City towards the other; and where they met, there to be fixed the *Meer-ſtone* of their ſeveral Territories. The *Phileni*, two Brothers nominated for *Carthage*, were ſo quick of foot, that they had gotten a good way into the Country of the *Cyrenenſes* before they were met; wherewith the *Cyrenians*, much enraged, put to them this choice, either to go ſo much back again, or to die in the place. This laſt accepted by the *Phileni*, who preferred the common good of their Country before their own, for preſervation of whoſe name and honour to ſucceeding Ages, the grateful *Carthaginians* did erect theſe *Altars*.

2. Weſt of the Province of *Ezzab*, lieth that of TRIPOLIS, which together with *Ezzab*, made that Province which the *Romans* called *Tripolitana*. Not much more fruitful than the other, except in Barley, but more commodiouſly ſeated in regard of the Sea, which is here more ſafe for Navigation; the former lying wholly on the *greater Syrtis*. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Leptis Magna*, ſo called, to diſtinguiſh it from another, but of leſs note, and therefore called *Leptis Parva*, ſituate in the (now) Province of *Tunis*. A Town of ſo great wealth and Trade, that it was worth a *Talent* daily to the *Carthaginians*. 2 *Euphranta*, called alſo *Pyrgos Euphrantia*; from ſome ſtrong Tower in it on the Weſtern bank of the *greater Syrtis*. 3 *Cinſterna*, on the Eaſtern ſide of the River *Cyniphus*. 4 *Cabis*, the utmoſt City of this Province Weſtward; the ſame which *Ptolomy* calls *Tacapa*, ſituate at the fall of the River *Triton* into the *leſſer Syrtis*. 5 *Sabratha*; and 6 *Hœa*; not elſe obſervable, but that together with *Leptis Magna* they made up that one City, which the *Romans* called from thence *Tripolis*. 7 *Tripolis*, founded by the *Romans*, and by them peopled with *Colonies* from thoſe three Cities before mentioned. A City of great Name and Riches, till deſtroyed by the *Saracens*. By whom rebuilt, adorned with many fair Temples, Colledges, and Hoſpitals; and flouriſhing in much Wealth and Luſtre; it became a Kingdom of it ſelf, but ſubject to the Kings of *Tunis*, till taken by the *Genoes* with a Fleet of 20 Sail, and by them ſold to the King of *Feſſe*. Recovered not long after by the King of *Tunis*, it came once more to have a King of its own; till by the valour of *Peter* of *Navarr*, it was conquered for *Ferdinand* the *Chatholick*, the firſt Monarch of *Spain*: whoſe Nephew *Charles* the 5th. conferred it on the Knights of St. *John* of *Hieruſalem*, then expelled from *Rhodes*: whom the *Turks* under *Sinan Baſa* General of *Selimus* the Second, diſpoſſeſſed by force, *An.* 1551. Since that the ordinary Reſidence of the *Turkiſh Beglerbeg*, for theſe *African* Provinces; and made an uſual retreat for *Pyrats*, who infeſt theſe Seas, and do much miſchief to the Coaſts of *Sicily*, *Italy*, and others of the *Chriſtian* Countries.

3. The Province of TUNIS, lying Weſtward to that of *Tripolis*, taketh up ſo much of this Kingdom, as anciently contained the Province of *Bizacena*; and ſo much of the *Roman Africk*, as lyeth on the Eaſt of the River called *Gaudilbarbar*, the *Hipponites Lacus* of the ancient Writers. The Country anciently ſo fruitful, that it yieldeth uſually an increaſe of an hundred and fifty fold: For proof of which, beſides the teſtimony of approved Authors, the wonderful, if not prodigious Ears of Corn, which before we heard of, may ſerve ſufficiently. Now indigent, and ſo unprovided of all Grain for the uſe of their Families, that they are fain to furniſh themſelves of other places: the people not daring to manure or ſow their Land, for fear of the *Arabians*, who ever and anon fall into theſe parts, and ſpoil what they meet with.

Places of moſt note in it, in the elder times, 1 *Adrumetum*, or *Adrumyſtus*, now called *Machometta*, once a *Roman* Colony, and the *Metropolis* of the Province of *Byzacena*; by conſequence, in the times of *Chriſtianity*, an Archbiſhops See: walled and repaired by the Emperour *Juſtinian*, and by his Command called *Juſtiniana*. 2 *Zama*, the incamping place of *Annibal*, before his battel with *Scipio*. 3 *Nadagara*, memorable for the great battel betwixt the two renowned *Generals* of *Rome* and *Carthage*; not parallel'd ſince their own times, nor in thoſe before them. In which the great Controverſie between thoſe Cities being to be tried, the fortune of the day fell unto the *Romans*: For though *Annibal* ſhewed his ſingular judgment in ordering his Souldiers, as *Scipio* could not but acknowledge; yet being far the weaker in Horſe, and by an Order of the Senate of *Carthage*, conſtrained to fight in a place of diſadvantage, he could do no marvels: The *Romans*, with the loſs of no more than 1500 of their own men, killing 20000 of the *Carthaginians* in the Fight and Chaſe. 4 *Salera*, the firſt place took by *Scipio*, after the landing of his Army. 5 *Utica*, a *Tyrian* Colony, beautified with an Haven capable of the greateſt Ships; much ſpoke of in the Wars of *Carthage*,

and memorable for the death of *Cato* (hence ſirnamed *Vtican*) who here ſlew himſelf, for fear of falling into the hands of *Cæſar*. It is now called *Biſerta*. 6 *Byzacium*, ſeated in a liberal and fruitful Soil, as was ſhewn before; whence the Province had the name of *Byzacena*. 7 *Ruſpinum*, made by *Cæſar* the Seat of his War in *Africk*, againſt the Sons and Faction of *Pompey*; as memorable in the times ſucceeding, for being the Epiſcopal See of St. *Fulgentius*. 8 *Thyſtrus*, remarkable for the Tragedy of the *Gordiani*: Of which the Father in this City was ſaluted Emperour by the Souldiers, in hatred to *Maximinus* then their Emperour, whoſe *Procurator* they had ſlain in a tumult: but his Party being diſcomfited by *Capellianus*, whom *Maximinus* ſent againſt him, and his Son killed in the defeat; but upon the hearing of the News, he here hanged himſelf. 9 *Hippagreta*, on a great Lake betwixt *Carthage* and *Utica*; one of the Towns which held out longeſt for the *Mercenaries*, in their deſperate Rebellion againſt the *Carthaginians*; by which the Eſtate of that great City was in danger of ruine, at the end of the firſt *Punick* War. 10 *Carthage*, once the Lady and Miſtreſs of *Africk*, ſituate in the bottom of a ſafe and capious Bay, the entrances whereof were very ſtrongly fortified both by Art and Nature, environed with the Sea, except upon one ſide only, where joyned unto the Land by a narrow *Iſthmus*, about two miles and an half in breadth, in compaſs 24 miles, but meaſuring by the outward Wall, it was 45. For without the Wall of the City it ſelf there were three Walls more, betwixt each of which there were three or four Streets, with Vaults under ground of 30 foot deep; wherein they had place for 300 Elephants and all their Fodder, with Stables over them for 4000 Horſe, and all their Provender, and Lodging in thoſe out-ſtreets for the *Riders* of the ſaid Horſe, and for 20000 Foot beſides, which never came within the City to annoy or peſter it. On the South-ſide ſtood the Caſtle called *Byrſa*, which took up two miles and an half in compaſs: Firſt built by *Dido*, on that ground which ſhe obtained of the *Lybians*, when ſhe got leave to buy only ſo much Land of them, as ſhe could compaſs round about with an Oxes Hide. In that, the ſumptuous Temple of their ancient Dieties, *Juno Apollo*, *Æſculapius*, *Belus*, On the Weſt-ſide, a ſtanding Pool made of the Sea-water, let into it by ſo narrow a paſſage, that there was but 70 foot open for the Sea to enter: On which they had a ſtately *Arſenal*, with their Ships and Gallies riding by it. Of the Foundation and Affairs of this mighty City we have ſpoke already. The Government of it firſt by Kings, thoſe *abſolute* enough at firſt, afterwards limited by the *Senate*; and finally made meerly *titularly* by the power of the People: which unproportionable mixture is much condemned by *Ariſtotle*, in the 2. of his *Politicks*. Their Territories, before the ſecond *Punick* War, when they were at the greateſt, extended on the Sea-coaſts of the *Mediterranean*, from the Greater *Syrtis* to the *Streits*, and ſo unto the River *Iberus*, for the ſpace of 2000 miles in length: their *Revenues* anſwerable, and readily brought in, by reaſon of their infinite Trading. Which made the *Roman* People think themſelves unſafe, whilſt this City ſtood. Reſolved on the deſtruction of it, they ſent againſt it L. *Martius*, and M. *Manlius*, their two *Conſuls*, with a puiſſant Army: to whom the *Carthaginians* willingly delivered up their Arms and Shipping, contracting only for the preſervation of the City it ſelf, which was faithfully promiſed. But when they had withal given up the Sons of their Principal men, to be ſent to *Rome* for Pledges of their future Loyalty; they were told, that a *City conſiſted not in Walls, but in Laws and Government*. Theſe, with the *Corporation*, ſhould remain as formerly, the Town to be removed ten miles further off, where there was no Sea to thrive and grow rich upon. Enraged herewith, it was reſolved to abide the utmoſt: but they wanted neceſſaries for reſiſtance. That want ſupplied for want of Iron to make Arms with Gold and Silver; the Houſes pulled down to furniſh them with Timber to build a Navy; the noble Ladies cutting off the hair of their heads, to make Ropes and Cordage; 25000 Women liſted to defend the Walls. But the fatal moment being come, a ſecond *Scipio* is ſent thither to diſpatch the Work; by whom at laſt the Town was taken, and for 17 days together conſumed with fire: The Queen and multitudes of the People burning themſelves in the Temple of *Æſculapius*, becauſe they would not fall into the hands of the *Romans*. Re-edified by *Julius Cæſar*, and made a Colony, it recovered ſome part of her former luſtre; but ſo, that her chief glory was rather to be ſought for in her ancient, than her preſent Fortunes. *Populi Romani* Colonia, *olim Imperii ejus pertinax æmula, & priorum exidio rerum, quam ope præſentium clarior*, was her Character in the times of *Pomponius Mela*. But in the laſt eſtate, accompted for the *Metropolis* of the *Dioceſs* of *Africk*, the Reſidence of the *Vicarius* or Lieutenant-General, and the See of the chief *Primate* of the *African* Churches; who had 164 Biſhops under him in that one Province wherein *Carthage* ſtood. Deſtroyed in the ſucceeding time by the *Vandals*, and after that by the *Saracens*; it revived again, and had the reputation of a City of no mean importance, till the year 1270. at what time being forced by the *French*, under *Lewis* the 9th. and thereupon deſerted by its old Inhabitants, it began to languiſh, and was at laſt reduced to nothing but a few ſcattered Houſes, not above five and twenty Shops, one Temple; all the reſt a ruine. So truly ſaid the ancient Poet:

Sic patet exemplis Oppida poſſe mori.

Thus by Examples do we ſee,
That Towns may dye as well as we.

Of chief note at the preſent, 1. *Tunis*, ſuppoſed to be the *Themiſa*, or *Thuniſa* of *Ptolomy*; of ſmall accompt till the laſt deſtruction of *Carthage*, by whoſe fall it roſe. Situate not far from the Ruines of that famous City, in compaſs above five Miles, and in that compaſs ſaid to contain 10000 houſholds. Of great Traffick, and well frequented by the Merchants of foreign Nations; chiefly from *Genoa* and *Venice*. Remarkable in the Story of the *Holy Wars*, for the Sieges and Succeſſes of two of our *Engliſh* Princes; that, namely, of King *Edward* the Firſt, in his Fathers time; and that of *Henry* the Fourth, then but Earl of *Darby*: by both which (though the laſt ſerved only under the Command of the *French*) the City was compelled to a Compoſition; *Lewis* the 9th. commonly called S. *Lewis*, dying at the firſt Siege of it. 2 *Goletta*, a ſtrong Fort, built for defence of the Haven of *Tunis*, in a Demy-Iſland, divided from the main Land by two narrow paſſages, but ſo that it commands them both. Taken, but not without extreme difficulty by *Charles* the 5th. *An.* 1535. together with the *Turkiſh* Navy riding in the Lake laſt by it; but again recovered by the *Turks* about 40 years after, *An.* 1574. 3 *Cairoan*, built by *Hucbar* who firſt conquered *Africk* for the *Saracens*, in a ſandy Deſart, about 100 miles from *Tunis*, and 36 from any part of the Sea, to ſecure himſelf from any invaſion, which the commodiouſneſs of the Sea might bring upon him. Adorned by the firſt Founder of it, with an admirable Temple raiſed on Pillars of Marble: who placed alſo in it a Colledge of Prieſts, and made it the chief Reſidence of his Poſterity for the ſpace of 170 years, who reigned here under the great *Caliphs* at the *Sultans* of *Africk*. Deſtroyed

ſtroyed by the *Arabians*, in the 424 year of their *Hegira*, but regained from them by the King of *Morocco*, and ſtill of ſuch eſteem amongſt theſe *Mahometans*, that their chief men are brought hither to be buried from all parts of the Country, hoping by the Prayers of thoſe *Prieſts* to find a ſhorter way to Heaven, than in other places.

4. More Weſtward yet lies the Province named *CONSTANTINA*, ſo called from *Conſtantina* the chief City of it. Extended from the Lake *Hipponites*, now named *Guadilharbar*, to *Conſtantine* a Mountain bordering on *Bugia*, which I conceive to be the ſame with *Mons Audus* in *Ptolomy*. The ſoyl hereof ſaid to be very rich and fruitful both for Corn and Cattel, yielding abundance of Fruits, and great ſtore of Butter. *Rubricatus*, by *Oroſius* called *Ordalio*, now *Ludog*, the chief River of it.

Principal Cities of this Province, 1 *Tabraca*, on the Eaſt; and 2 *Hippo Regius*, on the Weſtern bank of *Rubricatus*: both *Roman* Colonies, but this laſt moſt famous, in being the *Epiſcopal* See of renowned St. *Auguſtine*. 3 *Bona*, the birth-place of that Father, built by the *Romans* about an hundred miles from the Sea; but ſituate in a large Plain, containing 40 miles in length, 25 in breadth: ſo Rich and Fertile, that the Town flouriſheth to this day; adorned with a ſumptuous *Moſque*, and never without the Company of Merchants coming from *Genoa*, *Tuxis*, and the Iſle of *Zerby*, for their Fruits and Butter. 4 *Thuburnica*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 5 *Sicca Veneria*, another Town of the ſame nature; by *Solinus* called *Veneria* only, and by *Pliny*, *Sicca*. 6 *Culcua*, another of the *Roman* Colonies, by the *Moors* now called *Cucutina*, but *Conſtantina* by the *Latines*, and moſt Nations elſe, now the chief City of this Province, ſituate near a Mountain of the ſame name, near the edge of *Bugia*. An ancient City, but containing ſtill 8000 Families, many ſumptuous Buildings; amongſt which a large Temple, two Colledges, and three or four Monaſteries: frequently viſited by the Merchants, every Trade having here its peculiar Street; their chief Commodities, Wool, Cloth, Silks, Oyl, and ſome ſorts of Fruits, which they exchange for *Dates*, or *Slaves*, who are here good Merchandiſe. The City for the moſt part fenced about with high craggy Rocks; and where thoſe want, with ſtrong walls, of a great height, and moſt exquiſite workmanſhip, declaring the antiquity of it. A further Argument whereof may be a fair *Triumphal* Arch not far from the City, and ſome *Hot Bathes*, after the manner of the *Romans*.

5. Moſt Weſtward lieth the Province of *BUCIA*, extended from Mount *Conſtantine* to the River *Ampſa*, now called *Chelif*, or *Sef-Gemar*: which with ſo much of *Conſtantina*, as lieth on the Weſt ſide of *Rubricatus*, made up that Province which the *Romans* called by the name of *Numidia*. The length hereof 150 miles on the *Mediterranean*, the breadth not above half ſo much. Narrower than *Mauritania*, as is ſaid by *Pliny*; *Sed ditior & magis culta*, but the richer of the two, and the better peopled. The Country of a fat ſoyl, plentiful both in Fruits and Corn, but moſt fit for Paſturage: to which the people were ſo addicted, that many of them cared not for building Houſes, (inſtead whereof they uſed the *Hold* of a Ship with the Keel turned upwards) but removed from one place to another, as their Paſtures failed them. From thence called *Nomades* by the *Grecians*, ἀπὸ τῆ νέμειν, ſignifying to feed or graze. The people of good metal, ſwift of Foot, and well skilled in Horſemanſhip: but better in the Onſet, and to give a Charge, than in ſtanding to it; ſuch as the wild *Arabians* are now ſaid to be.

Chief Towns hereof (beſides *Thurburnica*, *Culena*, *Bono Hippo*, ſpoken of before, belonging to *Numidia*, though not to *Bugia*) 1 *Bugia*, built by the *Romans* on the ſide of a lofty Mountain looking into the Sea; by ſome conceived to have been the *Thebuaca* of *Ptolomy*, now the chief City of this Province; adorned with many ſumptuous *Moſques*, ſome Monaſteries and Colledges for Students in the Law of *Mahomet*, and many fair *Hoſpitals* for relief of the Poor; fenced alſo with a ſtrong Caſtle. Secured by the ſtrength whereof, and growing rich by the fruitfulneſs of the ſituation, the Citizens began to grow proud and wanton, working much miſchief to the *Spaniards* by their Gallies, which they had at Sea; till taught more modeſty by *Peter* of *Navarr* a *Spaniſh* Captain, *An.* 1508. by whom the Town was taken, and the people plundered. 2. *Cholla*, upon the Sea-ſide, the *Chollops Magna* (as I take it) of *Ptolomy*; reported for a wealthy City. 3 *Nicaus*, ſeated towards Mount *Atlas*, in a pleaſant and delightful Country: which though interſperſed with many Hills, yet being thoſe Hills are clothed with Woods, yield them good ſtore of Goats and Horſes, and feed the Vallies with freſh Springs, which do iſſue from them; they rather add than detract any thing from the pleaſures of it. 4 *Madaura*, by ſome called *Madurus*, the birth-place of *Apulcius*. 5 *Tunudromum*, another of the *Roman* Colonies. 6 *Cirta*, or *Cirta Julia*, the Metropolis of *Numidia*, when a *Roman* Province, and formerly the Seat-Royal of *Syphax* King of the *Maſæſyli*, within whoſe Country it was reckoned in former times, though afterwards laid unto this Province. Situate near the mouth of the River *Ampſaga*, and memorable for the Tragedy of *Sophonisby*, the Daughter of *Aſdrubal* of *Carthage*; a Lady of moſt exquiſite beauty, and yet carried more Charms in her Tongue than in her Eyes. Eſpouſed firſt unto *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, but after, upon the Reaſon of State, married unto *Syphax*; who being took Priſoner by his Rival, and brought to *Cirta*, the Lady upon hopes of liberty and honour both, beſtowed her ſelf on her firſt Lover: but *Scipio* fearing leſt that marriage might withdraw *Maſiniſſa* from the *Roman* party, cauſed the Lady to be ſeized on; which *Maſiniſſa* not being otherwiſe able to prevent or remedy, ſent her a Cup of Poyſon, which ſhe drank, and died.

Of theſe *Numidians* there is much mention in the Stories of *Rome* and *Carthage*; imployed by this laſt City in all their Wars, both in *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Sicil*. Siding at laſt with *Scipio* againſt that State, they did good Service to the *Romans* in the weakning and deſtruction of that City, whoſe fall they did not long ſurvive: firſt conquered in the War of *Jugurth*; after the death of *Juba*, made a *Roman* Province. Their Kings, as far as I can trace the ſucceſſion of them, follow in this Order.

The

The Kings of the NUMIDIANS.

1 *Gala*, the Father of *Maſiniſſa*.

2 *Deſalces*, the Brother of *Gala*; according to the Laws of the Country, which gave the Crown unto the Brother, not the Son of the former King, (like the Law of *Taniſtry* in *Ireland*) ſucceeded *Gala*.

3 *N. N.* a Son of *Deſalces*, in the abſence of *Maſiniſſa*, then ſerving under the *Carthaginians* in the Wars of *Spain*, poſſeſſed himſelf of the Throne: ſlain not long after by a Rebel.

4 *Maſiniſſa*, Son of *Gala*, recovered the Kingdom of his Father; but again outed by *Syphax* and the *Carthaginians*, betwixt whom and *Maſiniſſa*, touching *Sophoniſba*, there was deadly feud. Aided by *Scipio* and the *Romans*, with whom aſſociated againſt *Carthage*, he not only recovered his own Kingdom, but was gratified with the greateſt part of that which belonged to *Syphax*. A profeſſed Enemy to *Carthage*, (the final ruine whereof he lived to ſee) till the time of his death, being then ninety years of Age.

5 *Micipſa*, the Son of *Maſiniſſa*, of whom nothing memorable.

6 *Jugurth*, the Son of *Maſtanabalis*, one of the brethren of *Micipſa*, having wickedly made away the two Sons of *Micipſa*, uſurped the Kingdom, and manifeſtly withſtood the *Romans*, whoſe attempts ſometimes by force, ſometimes by ſubtilty, but chiefly by money and bribes, he overthrew and made fruſtrate: *Et fuit in Jugurtha* (ſaith *Florus*) *quod poſt Annibalem timeretur*. At laſt being broken by *Metellus*, vanquiſhed by *Marius*, and by *Bocchus* delivered into the hands of *Sylla*, he was by *Marius* led in Triumph to *Rome*. In this Triumph was carried 3700 pound weight in Gold; in Silver-wedges, 5775 pound weight; and in ready Coin, 28900 Crowns: it being the cuſtom of the *Romans* in their Triumphs, to have carried before them all the Riches and Money, which they had brought out of the conquered Countries, to put into the common Treaſury.

7 *Hiempſal*, Son of *Bocchus* King of *Mauritania*, gratified for his Fathers treachery in betraying *Jugurth*, with the Kingdom of *Numedi*; Relieved *Marius* in his exile.

8 *Hiarbes*, another of the *Maurian* faction, preferred to the *Numidian* Crown, but vanquiſhed and deprived by *Pompey*, at that time one of *Sylla*'s Captains.

9 *Hiempſal* II. preferred by *Pompey* to this Kingdom.

10 *Juba*, the Son of *Hiempſal* the ſecond, who ſiding with *Pompey* againſt *Cæſar* in the Civil Wars, gave a great Overthrow to *Curio*, one of *Cæſar*'s Lieutenants; *Curio* himſelf ſlain, his whole Army routed, ſuch as were taken Priſoners murdered in cold Blood. But being diſcomfited by *Cæſar*, after *Pompey*'s death, *Numidia* was made a Province of the *Roman* Empire.

Thus by the Fall of *Carthage*, and the death of *Juba*, came the whole Provinces of *Africa Propria*, and *Numidia* (containing the now Kingdom of *Tunis*) into the power of the *Romans*. Of which, the Nations of moſt note were the *Nigitimi*, on the Eaſtern parts of the *Mediterraneau*; the *Machyni*, near the leſſer *Syrtis*; the *Lybiæ-Phœnices*, and *Medini*, bordering upon *Carthage*; the *Jonii*, *Navatræ*, and *Certeſii*, taking up all the Sea-coaſts of *Numidia*. Such as inhabited more Southwards on the back of theſe, not ſo much conſiderable: None of them to be ſtaid upon, but the *Lybiæ-Phœnices*, a mixt people of the old *Lybians*, and new *Phœnicians*, as the *Lybi-Egyptii* were of the ſaid *Lybians* and the neighbouring *Egyptians*. The memory of all them ſo defaced by the violent inundation of the *Arabians*, that there is ſcarce any tract, or footſteps of them in all the Country. When conquered by the *Saracens*, they were at firſt ſubject to the *Caliph*, or *Sultan* of *Cairoan*: after the ſpoil whereof by the *Arabians*, ſubdued by *Abdul Mumen* King of *Morocco*, and by him added to that Kingdom. In the diſtractions of that State, made a peculiar Kingdom by ſome one of the Relicts of the Stock of the *Almobeads*, who took unto himſelf the Title of King of *Tunis*, that City being his chief Seat. By him tranſmitted unto his Poſterity, till the days of our Grand-Fathers; when *Muleaſſes*, one of the youngeſt Sons of *Sultan Mahomet*, having firſt murdered *Maimon* his eldeſt Brother, and put out the eyes of twenty of the reſt, uſurped the Soveraignty. *Roſetta*, the only one of thoſe Princes who eſcaped this Maſſacre, upheld a while by the *Arabians*, and by them deſerted, was feign to put himſelf into the hands of *Barbaroſſa*, King of *Algiers*, and Admiral of the Turkiſh Navy; by whom he was carried to *Conſtantinople*, and ſo preſented to *Solyman*, who under colour of reſtoring him to the Throne of his Fathers, conquered that Kingdom for himſelf; outed thereof not long after by *Charles* the Fifth, appearing in favour of *Muleaſſes*, An. 1535. But the Tyrant did not long enjoy his Ill-gotten Soveraignty, when his eyes were alſo put out by his own Son *Amyda*, and ſo committed to cloſe Priſon: Nor did *Amyda* enjoy it long, diſpoſſeſſed by *Abdamelech* his Fathers brother. To *Abdamelech Mahomet* his Son ſucceeded; who being a Child, and his Affairs ill governed by his Tutors, and other Miniſters of State, gave opportunity to *Amyda* to regain the Kingdom. During which broils the *Turks* again recovered footing, poſſeſſed themſelves of a great part of the Country, and forced *Amyda* into exile, who flying to *Don John* of *Auſtria*, then newly victorious at *Lepanto*, invited him to the Conqueſt of *Tunis*, but he got little by the bargain; for *Don John* having ſubdued the Kingdom, conferred the ſame on *Mahomet* the Brother of *Amyda*, and carried *Amyda* in bonds to the Iſle of *Sicily*, where he after died. Nor did *Mahomet* enjoy it long; for the next year the *Turks* beſieged and took the City of *Tunis*, with the ſtrong Fort of *Galetta*, with all the other Forts and Holds of that Kingdom, made ever ſince a Province of the Turkiſh Empire; The poor King being carried priſoner to *Conſtantinople* at the end of the War, which was in the year 1574. and the laſt of *Selimus* the Second.

2. TREMESEN, or ALGIERS.

THe Kingdom of *TREMESEN* is bounded on the Eaſt with the River *Amſaga*, (now called *Major*) by which parted from the Kingdom of *Tunis*; on the Weſt, with the Kingdom of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, from which ſeparated by the River of *Malutha*, or *Malva*. So called from *Tremeſen*, or *Teleuſine*, the chief City of it. Called alſo the Kingdom of *Algiers*, from the City ſo named, ſometimes the Seat-Royal of their Kings.

In

In the flouriſh of the *Roman* Empire, it had the name of *Mauritania Cæſarienſis*: *Mauritania*, becauſe of the Kingdom of *Juba* King of *Mauritania*, of which more anon; *Cæſarienſis*, from *Cæſarea* the chief City of it, as that ſo called in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, on whom the Kings hereof depended. More anciently the Kingdom of the *Maſæſylia*, one of the moſt powerful Nations in all this tract, over whom reigned *Syphax* before-mentioned, called therefore by *Strabo*, *Maſæſylia*, with good propriety; and corruptedly, *Maſſylia*,

The Kingdom extended in length from Eaſt to Weſt, for the ſpace of 380 miles, but of breadth not anſwerable; is generally of the ſame nature (as to the Soyl and Air) with the reſt of *Barbary*: ſufficiently fruitful towards the Sea, more barren and uncomfortable in the Southern parts. But meanly peopled, by reaſon of the continual ſpoils made by the *Arabians*, who poſſeſs the *Deſarts*; and the Cities of it much waſted by continual Wars. Nor have the People any peculiar *Character*, but what belongeth to others of theſe *Africans* alſo.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1 *Guagyda*, inconveniently ſeated, as paying their accuſtomed Tributes to the King of *Tremeſen*, their natural Prince; and contribution to the *Arabians*, who are here ſo numerous and powerful, that the Kings themſelves of this ſmal Kingdom were fain to buy their peace of them at exceſſive rates. 2 *Tigedent*, ſometimes famous, and abounding with men of learning; now almoſt forſaken, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of theſe *Arabians*. 3 *Tebocrit*, inhabited for the moſt part by Weavers. 4 *Breſch*, the Inhabitants whereof uſe to paint a black Croſs on their Cheek, and another on the Palm of their hands: the reaſon of which Cuſtom they are ignorant of, but ſome conceive it to be a remembrance of their *Chriſtianity*. 5 *Ned-Roma*, built, as the people do pretend, by the ancient *Romans*, as an *Epitome*, or Abridgment of that mighty City, to which it is ſaid to have ſome reſemblance; and that imported by the name, which ſignifieth in their Language, *Like to Rome*. Perhaps the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Novum Oppidum*, or the New-Town, then a *Roman* Colony. 6 *Batha*, once a great City, ſince decayed by Wars. 7 *Oran*, a noted Haven on the *Mediterranean*, ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 Families. Powerful at Sea, and much infeſting with their Gallies the Coaſts of *Spain*; till taken from *Ferdinand* the *Catholick* by *Peter* of *Navarr*, An. 1506. ſince which time peopled and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*: In vain beſieged by the ſaid *Turks*, An. 1562. 8 *Maſalquiver*, a fair and ſpacious Haven on the ſame Sea alſo, and taken by the ſaid *Peter* of *Navarr* about the ſame time. 9 *Harcſgol*, in former times of much eſteem amongſt the *Moors*; but being deſtroyed by the King, or *Sultan* of *Cairoan*, it bequeathed its greatneſs unto *Tremeſen*, which after grew into renown. 10 *Tremeſen*, once adorned with many beautiful *Moſques*, and five ſumptuous *Colledges*, curiouſly wrought with *Moſaick* work. So populous, that there were reckoned in it 16000 Families; and ſo well fortified, that it held out ſeven years againſt *Joſeph* the great King of *Feſſe*: not taken after that, though they were very much weakned by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* his Son and Succeſſor, under a ſiege of 30 Months. By thoſe, and the ſucceeding Troubles it hath undergone, exceedingly impaired both in ſtrength and beauty. More ancient, 11 *Siga*, an *African* City, and a *Roman* Colony; the retiring place of *Syphax* and *Bocchus*, ſometimes Kings of this Country. 12 *Arſenaria*, another Colony of the *Romans*. 13 *Jol*, the Seat-Royal of King *Bocchus*, after ſuch time as this Country was conferred upon him by the *Romans*, on the taking of *Jugurth*: called afterwards *Cæſarea*, in honour of *Auguſtus Cæſar*, whoſe *Fendatories* the Kings hereof were then accounted; or as ſome ſay, in honour of *Claudius Cæſar*, by whom made a Colony: the *Metropolis* of it alſo when a *Roman* Province, which from hence was called *Cæſarienſis*. Situate in, or near the place where *Oran* now ſtands, which ſeemeth to have riſen out of the ruines of it. 14 *Saldæ*, a *Roman* Colony alſo, out of whoſe ruines roſe *Algiers*. 15 *Algiers*, by the *Arabians* called *Gezeir*, now the chief City of this Kingdom, ſituate near the Sea, in the form of a *Triangle*, with an Haven to it; but neither great, nor ſafe from the North-winds, which do much annoy it. The buildings very beautiful; the publick Inns, *Bathes*, and *Moſques*, exceeding ſumptuous; every Trade having a ſeveral place, or Street by it ſelf. But that which is the greateſt grace of it, is the ſituation of the Houſes ſtanding in even ſtreets one above another, upon the riſing of a ſteep Hill; ſo that the Windows of one Street, or row of houſing do all along over-look the tops of the other next beneath, which yieldeth to the Sea a moſt pleaſant Proſpect. A City not ſo large, as ſtrong; and not ſo ſtrong, as famous. Famous for being the receptacle and retreating place of the *Turkiſh* Pirats, who domineer ſo infinitely over the *Mediterranean*, to the great damage of the Merchants of all Nations that frequent thoſe Seas. Famous alſo for the Shipwrack which *Charles* the Fifth here ſuffered, who beſieged this Town, loſt in the Haven of it at one Tempeſt, beſides an infinite number of Karvals and ſmall Boats, divers ſtrong Gallies, 140 Ships, a great many excellent pieces of Ordnance; ſuch a number of gallant Horſes, that in *Spain* the race of Horſes for Service had like to have been loſt for ever; and above half his Men. It long enjoyed the benefit of proprietary Princes, (but *Homagers*, or Tributaries to the Kings of *Tremeſen*) till ſuch time as *Selimes* and *Mahomet*, falling out, made the firſt, and that an irrepairable Breach in the Government. Fo *Selimes*, to ſtrengthen his ſide, implored the aid of *Hairaccius Barbaroſſa*, a noble Pirate; who taking his beſt advantage, ſlew the disjoynted Brethren, and ſetled himſelf in the Kingdom: which he had ſcarce made warm, when he left it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſa* his Brother, An. 1514. This *Hairadine* drove the *Spaniards* out of *Bugia*, and was ſo renowned for Martial proweſs, that *Solyman* the *Magnificent* made him Lord *High-Admiral* of his Fleet: Which Office, when to the prejudice of *Chriſtendom* he had fortunately and for long time undergone, he died lamented, and made the *Turk* the Heir of his Kingdom; the Kingdom of *Tremeſen* being made ſubject to the *Turk* much about that time. 16 *Tetuan*, and 17 *Sargel*, ſituate Weſtward of *Algiers*; Towns of Trade and Pyracy.

The old Inhabitants of this Kingdom, when a *Roman* Province, were the *Herpiditani*, *Taladuſii*, *Thaluſſii*, *Malchubii*, *Maccurebi*, *Chituæ*, and others of as little note; the moſt predominant Nation being the *Maſæſyli*, over whom (and in that over all the reſt) reigned *Syphax*, ſpoken of before, unfortunately famous for his tragical love to *Sophoniſba*: For whoſe ſake, ſiding with the *Carthaginians* againſt the *Romans*, he was vanquiſhed and ſent Priſoner to *Rome*. His Kingdom given to *Maſiniſſa* King of the *Numidians*, continued in his Line till the death of *Jugurth*, and then beſtowed upon the Kings of *Mauritania*; part of whoſe Kingdom it was reckoned in the following times, till made a Province of the Empire by the Emperour *Claudius*. Won from the *Romans* by the *Vandals*, and then by the *Saracens*; it followed the fortunes of theſe laſt, while they ſtood and flouriſhed: But growing into many Diſtractions, and every *Sultan*, or *Provincial* Governour ſhifting for himſelf, it became a Kingdom, under the ſtile and title of the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*. The Majeſty of it much impaired by *Abulthaſen*, or *Albohacen* King of *Feſſe*, who brought it not long after under his Com-

Command. Recovering after ſome ſhort time its former liberty, it became a Kingdom once again, and ſo continued till the time of *Abuchemen*: who incurring the hatred of his People, becauſe by his ſupine neglect the *Spaniards* had ſurpriſed and taken *Oran* and *Maſalquivir*, their two beſt Havens, made an eaſie paſſage for his Brother *Abuzeiden* to the Regal Diadem. *Abuzeiden* ſcarce well ſetled loſt it to *Hairadine Barbaroſſo*, An. 1515. and he to *Charles* the Fifth, by whom *Abuchemen* was reſtored, becoming *Homager* and *Tributary* to the Crown of *Spain*. But his Succeſſour *Abdulla*, weary of the *Spaniſh* Servitude, put himſelf under the protection of *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, as a Prince of his own Religion; to whom at his deceaſe, he left the poſſeſſion of his Kingdom alſo; ever ſince ſubject to the *Turks*: whoſe *Beglerbeg* or Supreme Officer for theſe *African* Provinces, reſides for the moſt part in *Algiers*, and hath 40000 *Timariots* under his Command.

3. FESSE, and 4 MOROCCO.

THeſe Kingdoms I have joyned in title, becauſe united for the moſt part in the ſtory and affairs thereof, and of late times making but one entire Eſtate under the *Xeriffes* of *Morocco*: and therefore handled both together in the point of *Hiſtory*, though of a different conſideration in the way of *Chorography*.

They contain in them the whole Country of *Mauritania*, truly and properly ſo called; divided anciently into *Tingitana* and *Sitifenſis*; *Cæſarienſis* being naturally a *Numidian* Region, the *Maſæſyli* and the reſt of the Inhabitants of it of *Numidian* breed; not laid to *Mauritania*, nor accompted any part thereof, till the death of *Jugurth*; when given to *Bocchus* King hereof, in regard of his Treaſon, for betraying that unhappy Prince into the hands of the *Romans*.

It took this name from the *Mauri*, the Inhabitants of it, when that name was firſt given; the word *Tania*, ſignifying a Nation, being added to it; as in *Britania*, *Luſitania*, *Aquitania*, and perhaps ſome others; and the name of *Mauri* given them ἀπὸ τῆς Μαυρώσεως, which ſignifieth amongſt other things *obſcure* or black, by reaſon of the darkneſs of their Complexion. Accompted in their times an hardy, but a bloudy people; careleſs of life, fearleſs of death; implacable if once offended, their thirſt of Revenge not to be quenched but by Bloud. *Mauri ſunt genus hominum ſuâpte natura cædis avidiſſimum, nihilque non facile audent, & deſperatis ſimiles, contemptu, viz. mortis & periculorum.* A Character given of them in *Herodians* time, and it holds good ſtill: notwithſtanding the intermixture of *Goths* and *Saracens* incorporated into the ſame Nation with them, and paſſing by the ſame name in the Writers of the middle time. *Poſt hæc* Mauri *totam Hiſpaniam & Provinciam Burgundiam, &c. Dominio ſuo mancipârunt*, as my Author hath it; where by *Moors* we are to underſtand the *Saracens*, which came out of *Africk*.

Chief Mountains of this Country, 1 *Atlas Minor*, ſo called, to difference it from the greater Mountain of that name, from which it is ſeven degrees more North, but ſhooteth, as that doth, with a Point or Promontory into the main *Atlantick* Ocean, on the South of *Salla*. 2 *Durdus* extended alſo into *Cæſarienſis*. 3 *Diur*. 4 *Phocra*, of which little memorable. Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Sala*. 2 *Salur*. 3 *Zilia*. 4 *Phuth*. 5 *Diur*. 6 *Cuſa*; all falling into the *Atlantick*: This laſt the ſame, as I conjecture, which our Modern Writers call *Ommirabili*. And for the reſt, we muſt find amongſt them, 1 *Sifelmel*, 2 *Tenſift*, 3 *Niffis*, the names of the chief Rivers, as at this time called.

The old Inhabitants hereof in the time of the *Romans*, were the *Metagonitæ* near the Streits, giving name unto *Metagonitis* an adjoyning Promontory, the *Succoſii*, *Verbicæ*, *Nectiberes*, *Vacuatæ*, *Voli*; and on the Eaſt-ſide the *Maureſii*: Theſe laſt participating of that common name, in which all united. Called by the *Latines*, *Mauri*; by the *Greeks*, *Mauruſii*: The Etymology as before. Their deſcent originally from *Phut*, the Son of *Cham*: whoſe memory preſerved here in the River *Phut*. To that, the coming of the *Chanaanites*, of the ſame extraction, ſerved but as an *Acceſſory*. From thoſe two Fountains ſprang the whole Nation of the *Mauri*. Governed by Kings; the moſt conſiderable of which, when firſt known to the *Romans*, was that *Bocchus*, who betrayed *Jugurth* his Friend and Son-in-law, into the hands of the *Romans*: gratified for that Treachery with the Country of the *Maſæſyli*, (reckoned for part of *Mauritania* from that time forwards) as *Hiempſal* one of his Sons was, not long after, with the Kingdom of *Numidia*. The whole eſtates of *Bocchus*, *Syphax*, and *Maſiniſſa*, united by this means in the perſon of *Juba*, one of his Poſterity, the moſt potent Prince of all theſe parts: who falling in the *African* War againſt *Julius Cæſar*, *Numidia* was forthwith made a Province of the *Roman* Empire; *Criſpus Saluſtus* being made the firſt Governour of it. But *Mauritania*, extending at that time from the Ocean to the River *Ampſagus*, he gave to *Bocchus* and *Bogud*, two of his Confederates, but deſcended of the old Regal Family. *Bogud* unluckily, taking part with *Mark Anthony* againſt *Auguſtus*, was by *Bocchus*, who declared for the other ſide, diſpoſſeſſed of his part, (that which now makes the Kingdom of *Feſſe*) in which confirmed for his good Service, by the conquering Emperour. *Juba*, the Son of the former *Juba*, grown famous for his eminent learning, was of a Priſoner made a Prince: inveſted after the death of *Bocchus* in all the Dominions of his Father, except *Numidia*: and by the bounty of *Auguſtus*, a great Patron of Learning, advanced to the marriage of *Selene*, Daughter of *Anthony* and *Cleopatra*. After whoſe death, and the death of *Ptolomy* their Son, murdered by *Caligula*, *Mauritania* was by *Claudius* added to the Patrimony of the *Roman* Empire: divided into two Provinces, *viz. Cæſarienſis*, betwixt the two Rivers *Malva* and *Ampſaga*, now the Kingdom of *Tremerſen*; and *Tingitana*, from the River *Malva* to the Weſtern Ocean. This laſt divided into *Tingitana* and *Sitifenſis*, (the River now called *Ommirabili* being the boundary betwixt them) by the Emperour *Conſtantine*: who leaving *Sitifenſis* to the Dioceſs of *Africk*, laid *Tingitania* (why, I know not) unto that of *Spain*. Gained from the *Romans* by the *Goths*, after by the *Saracens*, they became Members of thoſe Empires; in the declining of the laſt, divided into the two Kingdoms of *Feſſe* and *Morocco*, to the Deſcription and Hiſtory whereof, we now proceed.

3. MOROCCO.

THe Kingdom of *MOROCCO* hath on the Eaſt, the River *Malva*, by which parted from *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, the Kingdom of *Feſſe*; So called from *Morocco*, the chief City of it; in former times known by the name of *Mauritania Sitifenſis*, from *Sitiphis*, in thoſe times the principal City, as *Procopius* telleth us.

The Country ſaid to be fruitful of all things neceſſary to life, pleaſing to the ſight, and ſweet to ſmell to: particularly, well ſtored with Grain and Pulſe, plentiful of Oyl, Honey, and Sugar, liberally furniſhed with Dates, Grapes, Figs, Apples, Pears, and all ſorts of Fruits: exceedingly

exceedingly well ſtocked with Cattel, but with Goats eſpecially; whoſe skins afford a very excellent kind of Leather, and of their fleece materials for the fineſt Chamlets, which are here made in moſt of their Cities. The whole Countrey divided commonly into theſe ſeven parts, *viz.* 1 *Guzzula*, 2 *Sus*, 3. *Morocco* ſpecially ſo called 4 *Hea*, 5 *Haſcora*, 6 *Duccala*, and 7 *Tedles*.

1. *GUZZULA*, the moſt Southern Province of this Kingdom, hath on the Eaſt, ſome part of *Tremeſen*; on the Weſt, *Sus* or *Suſa*, from which parted by a ridge of Mountains called *Ilda*; on the South, Mount *Atlas*; and on the North, part of the Territory of *Morocco*, and the reſt of *Suſa*. The Countrey rich in Mines of Braſs, Iron and other Metals, of which are made many *Utenſils* for domeſtick uſes, exported hence into other places.

The People Barbarous and rude, not eaſily acknowledging ſubjection to the Kings of *Morocco*, and at continual Wars amongſt themſelves, except only for two moneths in the year; which being the time of their publick Marts, and then much viſited with Strangers from other Countreys, they lay aſide their private quarrels, and chearfully entertain ſuch *Merchants* as repair unto them. Walled Towns here are not any, but ſome very great Villages: the chief whereof, 1 *Guzzula*, on the Northern bank of the River *Sus*, whence the name of the Province. 2 *Tagreſſa*, not far off, but on the other ſide of the water, towards the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3 *Tedza*, inclining towards the borders of *Morocco*. Of theſe nothing memorable.

2. Weſt of *Guzzula*, lieth the Province of *SUS* or *SUSA*, ſo called from the River *Sus*, (with which well watered) or giving name to it. Rich in Gold-Mines, the cauſe of continual Wars amongſt the people: well ſtored with *Sugar-Canes*, which the inhabitants know neither how to boil nor purifie; and on the Sea-ſhores, furniſhed with great plenty of *Amber*, bought by the *Portugals* of the people at an eaſie rate. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Cape D' Aguer*, on a Promontory ſo called; a place of ſuch importance to the *Portugals*, that the taking of it by *Mahomet* then King of *Sus* (after of *Morocco* alſo) made them quit all the Forts which they had in this Countrey. 2 *Tagavaſt*, a rich and wealthy Town; the greateſt in the Province, and ſituate in a large Plain near the foot of Mount *Atlas*. 3 *Teijent*, ſituate in a ſpacious Plain alſo, but on the Banks of the River *Sus*: divided into three parts, each a mile from the other; which joyned together, make the exact figure of a Triangle. 4 *Meſſa*, or *Maſſa*, ſeated at the influx of the ſaid River on the Promontory called *Cape Gilon*; three Towns in one: not much the better for the Sea, and but ill befriended by the Land, as ſeated in a barren and unpleaſing ſoyl; remarkable for a fair Temple, the Beams and Rafters of which are made of the bones of *Whales*, which uſually are left dead on the ſhore. 5 *Taradant*, a large Town, built by the *Africans*, before the conqueſt of this Countrey by the *Goths* or *Saracens*: the Reſidence of the Vice-Roy for the Kings of *Feſſe*, when the Lords of this Kingdom; but more enriched of late by the Merchants of *France* and *England*, who have here a Staple for their Sugars. By this Commerce, the people made more civil than in other parts of this Province: the whole number of them thought to amount to 3000 Families. 6 *Tedza*, more within the Land, bigger than *Taradant*, but leſs wealthy; the chief Ornament of it being a fair *Mahometan* Temple, liberally furniſhed with Prieſts and Readers of that Law, at the common charge. Not far from hence the Hill *Anchiſa*, where it ſnoweth at all ſeaſons of the year, and yet the people go extream thin in the ſharpeſt Winter. Nothing elſe memorable of this Province, but that a little before the *Xeriffe* made himſelf King of *Morocco*, it had the title of a Kingdom; and gave the title of King to *Mahomet* the ſecond *Xeriffe*, made King of *Taradant* or *Sus*, before he diſpoſſeſſed his Brother of the Crown of *Morocco*.

3. Northward of *Sus*, lieth the Province of *MOROCCO*, ſpecially ſo called, the moſt fruitful and beſt peopled part of *Barbary*; not much unlike to *Lombardy* in wealth and pleaſures; the very Hills thereof as fruitful as the Vallies in other places. To which fertility of the ſoyl, the Rivers, 1 *Tenſift*, and 2 *Aſifinuad*, give no ſmall advantage; though much defaced by frequent incurſions of the *Portugals*, who have extreamly ſpoiled this Countrey. Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1 *Delgumba*, built upon a very high Mountain, and environed with many other Hills, at the foot whereof the Fountain of *Aſifinuad*. 2 *Elgiumba*, a ſmall, but ancient Town, on the River *Siſſeva*. 3 *Tefraſt*, a ſmall Town upon *Aſifinuad*. 4 *Inizzemi*, ſituate on a Rock, ſpacious and ſeated near the entrance of a narrow way leading into *Guzzula*. 5 *Tenezze*, an old Town but very well fortified. 6 *Agnet*, upon the River *Tenſift*, all ruined except the Fort, and ſome ſcattered houſes: formerly ſecond unto none but *Morocco* (from which diſtant 24 miles) the Hills and Valleys about it adorned with pleaſant Gardens fruitful Vinyards, a fair River, and Fields ſo fertile, that they yield a fifty-fold increaſe. 7 *Sceſſina*, where they have ſnow at all times of the year. 8 *Temnella*, an *Heretical* Town, differing in opinion from the reſt of the *Mahometan* Sect, and ſo well-grounded in their Tenets, that they challenge all their *Oppoſites* to a Diſputation. 9. *Hanicra*, very full of *Jews*. 10 *Morocco*, the principal of this Province, and of all the Kingdom, ſituate in or near the place where once ſtood the *Bocanum Memerum* of *Ptolomy*. Once reckoned amongſt the greateſt Cities of the World, at what time it was ſaid to contain 100000 Families: ſince ſo defaced and waſted by the depredations of the *Arabians*, and the removal of the Sea-Royal to *Feſſe*, when that Kingdom was in the *Aſcendent*, that it is hardly a third part ſo great as formerly. The Founder of it *Joſeph*, ſirnamed *Teleſſum*, the ſecond King of the Houſe of the *Almoraſides*; but much enlarged and beautified by *Abdul-Mumen*, one of his Succeſſors. The principal Buildings in it, are the Church and the Caſtle: the Church or *Moſque*, one of the greateſt in the World, adorned with many ſumptuous Pillars brought out of *Spain*, when the *Moors* had the poſſeſſion of that Countrey: and beautified with a ſtately Steeple, in compaſs at the bottom an hundred yards, and of ſo great height, that the Hills of *Azati* (one of the branches of the leſſer *Atlas*) being 130 miles diſtant, may be thence eaſily diſcerned: the Caſtle very large and ſtrong, on a Tower whereof ſtand three Globes made of pure Gold, weighing 130000 *Barbary* Ducats: which divers Kings have gone about to take down, and convert into money but all deſiſted in regard of ſome croſs accident or other which befell them in it; inſomuch that the common people think them to be guarded with Spirits.

4. North of *Morocco*, on the further ſide of *Tenſift* and *Aſifinuad*, is the Province of *HEA*: rough, Mountainous, and Woody, yet watered with many pleaſant Rils, and would be plentiful enough in all commodities, if the Induſtry of the people were not wanting to it. A ſort of people little better than meerely barbarous, without all *Arriſts*, either Ingenious or Mechanick; except ſome *Chriſtians*, whom they keep to *circumciſe* their Children; and ſome few Teachers of their Law, which can hardly read. Their Food a Pap, made of Barley-meal, which in ſtead of Spoons, they claw with their Fingers; the Ground they eat on, ſerving for Table, Stools and

Napkins. At endless feud with one another; yet so kind to Strangers, that in one of their chief Towns, called *Tedneſt*, the Gentlemen used to cast lots who should entertain them. A Town of good esteem in former times, situate in a large Plain on the River *Tensift*: but in the year 1514. almost wholly abandoned, upon a rumor, that the *Arabians* had a purpose to sell it to the *Portugals*. 2 *Teculeth* seated on a good Port, and once very well traded, there being in it at that time 1000 Families, some Hospitals, and a beautiful *Mosque*; in the year 1514. destroyed by the *Portugals*. 3 *Tenent*, a Sea-Town in the hands of the *Portugals*. 4 *Elmuridin*, a strong piece, as the name importeth, the word signifying the *Disciples Fort*, so called, because a certain *Heretick* in the Law of *Mahomet* (whereof this Kingdom yields good plenty) retired hither with his *Disciples*, fortified it, and defended it against the King of *Morocco*. 5 *Iguillingiguil*, seated on the top of all, and fortifyed by the Countrey-people (or old *African Moors*) against the *Arabians*. 6 *Tefetbone*, beautified with a pretty Haven, but not capable of any great shipping. 7 *Tagleſs*, a den of Thieves and Cut-Throats. 8 *Teſsegdelt*, as courteous and civil, as the other barbarous. At the Gates whereof a Guard is set for entertainment of Strangers: whom if they have no acquaintance there, they are to provide of Accommodation in some Gentlemans house, where it costs them nothing but thanks, and some kind acknowledgement.

5. Northwards of *Hea*, stands the Province of *DUCALA*, bounded on the West, with the main *Atlantick*; and on the North, with the River *Omnirobili*, by which parted from the Kingdom of *Feſſe*. Of three days journey long, about two in bredth; thrusting into the Ocean with a craggy Promontory, which some of the Ancients called *Vlagium*, others the Promontory of the *Sun*; but by the *Christians* of *Europe* called the Cape of *Cantin*; by the *Moors*, *Gebelelbudie*. Populous enough, the quality of the men considered, ignorant both of Letters and all good manners: Yet not so populous as it hath been in former times, much of the Country being abandoned for fear of the *Portugals*, who have taken all their best Towns on the Sea-coasts, and destroyed the rest. Amongst these, 1 *Azaſi*, at the foot of the Hills so called, surprised by the *Portugals*, under colour of making a Storehouse for their Merchandise. 2 *Azame*, seated at the mouth of the River *Omnirobili*, the furthest Town of this Kingdom towards that of *Feſſe*; the people whereof were extremely addicted unto *Sodomy*, till subdued by the *Portugeze*. 3. *Elmedina*, once the *Metropolis* of this Province; but now for fear of those Invaders, in a manner desolated. 4 *Conte*, of the foundation of the *Gothes*. 5 *Tic*, built by the old *African Moors*, but Possessed by the *Portugals*. 6 *Subeit*, 7 *Tenracoſt*. 8 *Centipain*. 9 *Terga*. 10 *Culahuan*; all sacked and ruined by the same people, when they took *Azamor* (the Key of this Province) which was in the year 1513. At which time it is said, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe* passing through this Province with an Army, to repress these insolencies, at every *Altar* (whereof here are many in the Roads) kneeled, and said unto this effect; *Lord, thou knowest that the cause of my coming into this wild place, is only to free this people of* Duccola *from the rebellious and wicked* Arabians, *and their cruel Enemies the* Christians, *which purpose, if thou doest not approve of, let the punishment fall upon my Person, but not upon my Followers, who deserve it not.* With greater piety than could be looked for from a blind *Mahometan*.

6. Eastward of *Duccala*, along the banks of *Omnirobili*, lieth the Province of *HASCORA*, a fruitful Countrey, intermixt of rich Fields and pleasant Gardens: furnished with most sorts of choicest fruits; and amongst others, Grapes of such extraordinary greatness, that they are said to be as big as a Pullets Egg. Good store of Honey it hath also, and some Mines of Iron: Inhabited by a more civil people than any of the rest, and consequently more deserving so rich a soyl. Places of most importance in it, 1 *Exo*, an old town, situate on a lofty Mountain. 2 *Elvinina*, of a later erection. 3 *Alemdine*, conquered for the King of *Feſſe* by a Merchant, whose Paramour the Prince or Governour hereof had taken from him: Situate in a pleasant, but little valley, but begirt with Hills, and well inhabited by Gentlemen, Merchants, and Artificers. 4 *Togadaſt*, on the top of an Hill, environed with four others of equal height.

7. More East, betwixt *Hascora* and the River *Malva*, is the Province of *TEDLES*, bounded on the East with the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*; and on the North, with that of *Feſſe*, from which last parted by the River *Sebu* which on the North-east border of it meets with *Omnirobili*. The whole Province in form Triangular, of no great either length or breadth, but sufficiently fruitful, and well inhabited for the bigness. Some Towns it hath, and those not meanly populous for so small a Province; the chief whereof, 1 *Teſza*, built by the old *African Moors*, and beautified with many *Mahometan* Mosques; the Walls of which made of a kind of Marble, which they here call *Teſza*, whence the name of the Town. 2 *Eſza*, seated on the River *Omnirobili*, where it receiveth that of *Deyme*; which rising out of *Atlas Minor*, and passing by *Teſza* last mentioned, doth here lose its name. 3 *Cheybite*, renowned for the stout resistance, which it hath made from time to time against those of *Feſſe*. 4 *Ethiad*, abounding in all sorts of Victual.

These Provinces make up the Kingdom of *Morocco*: infested miserably while it remained subject to the Kings of *Feſſe*, by the *Portugals* on the one side, and the wild *Arabians* on the other. Concerning which last people we are to know, that when the *Saracens* conquered *Affrick*, they contented themselves with the Command, and left unto the *Natives* the possession of it, forbidding the *Arabians* (with whose course of life they were well acquainted) to pass over *Nilus*. *Elcain*, the last of the Successors of *Hucha* in the Kingdom of *Cairoan*, having subdued the rest of *Affrick*, and added it unto his Estate, passed forwards into *Egypt*, which he had conquered also, assuming to himself the title of *Caliph*; But in his absence, the Lieutenant, whom he left in *Affrick*, rebelled against him, and acknowledging the *Caliph* of *Bagdet* for his lawful Lord, received of him for his good Service, the Kingdom of *Africa*. *Elcain* thus dispossessed of *Affrick*, despairing to recover his lost Estate, and yet not willing that it should be useful unto his enemies, licensed the *Arabians* for a *Ducat* a man, to pass over the *Nile* with their Tents and Families. On which agreement, almost half the Tribes of *Arabia Deserta*, and many of *Arabia Felix*, went into *Africa*; where they sacked *Tripolis*, *Cairoan*, and the rest of the principal Cities: tyrannizing over all *Barbary*, till restrained at last by *Joſeph* the Founder of *Morocco*, (of whome more hereafter.) Since which time, though they lost their unlimited Empire, yet they still swarm like *Locusts* over all the Countrey, and neither apply themselves to Tillage, or building Houses, or any civil course of life, nor suffer those to live in quiet, who would otherwise manure and improve the Countrey. The rest of the Story of these Kingdoms we shall have anon, when we have taken Survey of the Kingdom of *Feſſe*.

4. FESSE.

THe Kingdom of *FESSE* is bounded on the South, with the Realm of *Morocco*; on the North, with parts of the *Atlantick* and *Mediterranean*; on the East, with *Malva*, parting it from the Kingdom of *Tremesen*; and on the West, with the *Atlantick* wholly.

It takes this name from *Fesse*, the chief City of it. Known to the ancients by the name of *Mauritania Tingitana*, so called from the City of *Tingis* (now *Tanger*) then of greatest note. Called also *Hispania Transfretana*, *Spain* on the other side of the Sea, because a part of that *Diocess*: and by some (*Pliny* amongst others) *Bogudiana*, from *Bogud* one of the Kings hereof, to whom given by *Cæsar*; by others *Ampelusia*, from its abundance of Vines. The Inhabitants of it, by the *Spaniards*, now called *Alarbes*.

The Country of good temperature in regard of the Air, if not in some places of the coldest: but very unequally disposed of in respect of the Earth; here being in it many Desarts and large Forests, not well inhabited; but intermixt with many rich and delightful Fields. So that taking the estimate in the gross, it may be said to be a rich and flourishing Country, hardly inferiour unto any. The particularities of which are to be considered in the *Characters* of the several Provinces, into which it now stands divided, that is to say, 1 *Temesna*. 2 *Fesse*, specially so called, 3 *Elchaus*, or *Chaus*. 4 *Garet*. 5 *Asgara*. 6 *Erriffe*, and 7 *Habat*.

1. *TEMESNA* hath on the South, the River *Ommirobili*; on the West, the Ocean; extended in length from West to East 80 miles, and in breadth 70. A Champain Country, very level; and once so populous, that it contained 40 Cities, and 300 Castles; most of them ruined by the Wars, and the wild *Arabians*, the greater destroyer of the two. The principal of those remaining, 1 *Teyeger*, near the River *Omirobili*, once of greater note, but now inhabited only by poor people, and a few *Smiths* compelled to live there for the making of Iron-Instruments to manure the Land. 2 *Thagia*, on the course of the said River; much visited by those of *Fesse*, for the Sepulchre of an holy Prophet, who was there interred; the *Fessans* going thither in *Pilgrimage* with such numbers of Men, Women, and Children, that their Tents seem sufficient to lodge an Army. 3 *Adendum*, more towards the Sea, but on a small River called *Guirla*; well walled, and fenced on one side by a Lake or Pool. 4 *Amsa*, on the shore of the *Atlantick*, once of great Trade, and well frequented, both by the *English* and the *Portugals*, by which last destroyed. 5 *Munsor*, destroyed in like manner by the wild *Arabians*. 6 *Nuchaida*, situate in so fertile and rich a soyl, that the Inhabitants would have given a Camels burden of Corn for a pair of Shooes. Nothing now left of it but one Steeple, and a piece of the Wall. 7 *Rabat*, or *Rubat*, built by *Mansor*, or *Almonsor*, a King of *Morocco*, near the mouth of the River *Burugrug*; and by him made one of the best peopled Towns in *Africk*: built after the model of *Morocco*, but now so wasted, that there are not in it above 500 Families; most of the ground within the Walls being turned into Meadows, Vineyards, and Gardens. 8 *Fanzara* on the River *Subu*, the *Subur* of *Ptolomy*, falling not far off into the other. *Mahmora*, in the same tract also, once possessed by the *Spaniards*; near which the *Portugals* received a great defeat by the King of *Fesse*, for want of good intelligence betwixt them and the *Castilians*. 10 *Salla*, the *Sala* of *Ptolomy*, by the Inhabitants called *Zale*, or ordinary Maps by mistaking, *Cale*; at the mouth of the River *Rebato*, which the ancient Writers called *Sala*, as they named the Town. Beautified by King *Almansor* (who is here interred) with a stately Palace, a goodly Hospital, a fair Temple, and a Hall of Marble, cut in *Mosaick* works: intended for the burial-place of his Posterity. A Town much traded formerly by the Christian Merchants of *England*, *Flanders*, *Genoa*, and the Gulf of *Venice*. Took by the *Spaniards*, An. 1287. and within ten days lost again: and of late times made a nest of *Pirates*, as dangerous to those which sailed in the Ocean, as the *Pirates* of *Algiers* to the *Mediterranean*. Whose insolencies the King of *Morocco* not able to suppress for want of shipping, desired the aid of his Majesty *Charles*, King of *Great Britain*: by whom the Town being blocked up by Sea, and besieged to the Landward by the King of *Morocco*, it was at last compelled to yield; the works thereof dismantled, the *Pirates* executed, and 300 *Christian* Captives sent unto his Majesty, to be by him restored to their former liberty; to the great honour of his Majesty, and the *English* Nation, *An.* 1632.

As for the Fortunes of this Province, they have been somewhat different from the rest of this Kingdom: trained by a factious Prophet to revolt from the King of *Fesse* and *Morocco*, whose estate they very much endangered; sending an Army of 50000 men to the Gates of *Morocco*. But being discomfited by *Joseph*, surnamed *Telephinus*, he followed them into their own Country, which he wasted with great cruelty for ten months together; consuming above a Million of them, and leaving the Province to the mercy of Wolves and Lions. Repeopled afterwards by *Almansor* with *Arabian* Colonies: Given about fifty years after that, by the Princes of the *Marine* Family, to more civil Inhabitants; by whom the *Arabians* were expelled, and the Province consequently reduced into some good order.

2. Westward of *Temesna* lieth the Province of *FESSE*, properly and specially so called. Extended in length from the River *Burugrug* to the River *Inavis*, for the space of 100 miles. A very fruitful Province, well stored with Cattel, and exceeding populous; the Villages hereof as big as the better sort of Towns in other places; but contrary to the custom of other Countries, better inhabited on the Hills than among the Vallies; the people making choice of the Mountains for their habitation, as places of Defence and Safety, but husbanding the Vallies which lie nearest to them. Places of most consideration in it. 1 *Macarmeda*, on the River *Inavis*, in a goodly Plain, but in a manner all ruined, except the Wall. 2 *Gualili*, memorable for the Sepulchre of *Idris*, the first Founder of *Fesse*. 3 *Peitra Rossa*, where they have some Lions so tame, that they will gather up bones in the Streets like Dogs, without hurting any body. 4 *Agla*, where they have brought their Lions to so strange a cowardise, that they will run away at the voice of a Child; whence a *Bracchadochio* is called proverbially a *Lion* of *Agla*. 5 *Pharao*, by reason of the name, thought by the vulgar to be founded by some King of *Egypt*; but the *Latine* Inscriptions therein found, declare it to have been some work of the ancient *Romans*. 6 *Maquille*, of more antiquity than note. 7 *Fesse*, the Metropolis of this Province, and the chief of the Kingdom, supposed to be the *Volubilis* of *Ptolomy*, but much enlarged and beautified by some new Accessions. Situate for the most part upon little Hillocks, and watered by a pleasant and gentle River (derived by *Aqueducts* and Conducts, into all parts of the City) which they now call the River of *Fesse*, conceived by some learned men to be that which was anciently called *Phuth*, from *Phut* the first Planter of the *African* Nations. A City so beautiful and well seated, as if Nature and Art had plaid the Wantons, and brought this forth as the fruit of their Dalliance. The Founder, or enlarger

of it, one of the Race of the falſe Prophet *Mahomet*, his name *Idris*, who built on the Eaſt-ſide of the River; that on the Weſt-ſide, being the Work of one of his Sons; both ſo increaſing, that at laſt they were joyned together. To theſe the Suburbs being added, have made a third. The whole called *Feſſe*, from *Fez*, an *Arabick* word, ſignifying *Gold*; whereof great quantity was found, when they digged the Foundations. Divided into three parts by the River, all of which contain 28000 houſholds, and 700 *Moſchees*, or *Saracenical* Temples: the chief of which is *Carne*, or *Carnven*, being a mile and a half in compaſs. It hath 31 Gates, great and high; the Roof 150 yards long, and 80 broad: round about, divers Porches, containing 40 yards in length, and 30 in breadth; under which, the publick ſtore-houſes of the Town. About the Walls are Pulpits of divers ſorts, wherein the Maſters of their Law read unto the people ſuch things as they think to pertain to their Salvation. The *Revenue* hereof is 200 Ducats a day of the old Rents; for ſo it was, *An.* 1526. when *Leo Afer* wrote. The Merchants have here a Court, or *Exchange*, incloſed with a ſtrong Wall, with 12 Gates, and 15 Streets. There is alſo a Colledge called *Amarodoc*, a moſt curious and delicate Building. It hath three Cloyſters of admirable beauty, ſupported with eight ſquare Pillars of divers colours: The Roof curiouſly carved, and the Arches of *Moſaique* work, of Gold and Azure. The Gates of Braſs, fair wrought; and the doors of the private Chambers of inlayed work. This Colledge did coſt the Founder, King *Abuchenen*, or *Abu Henen* 380000 Crowns. Here are finally ſaid to be in it many *Hoſpitals*, little inferiour to the Colledges in building and beauty, all very liberally endowed; and about an hundred *Hot Bathes* well built, with four Halls to each, and certain Galleries without, where they put off their Cloaths when they go to bathe themſelves: and beſides theſe 200 Inns, built three ſtories high, each of them having 120 Chambers in it, with Galleries before all the doors for their Gueſts to walk in.

3. Eaſtward of the Territory of *Feſſe*, lieth the Province of *CHAUS*, extended in length from the River *Gurngrut*, or *Gurgugarn*, by which parted from *Tremeſna* and *Feſſe*, to the borders of *Tremeſen*, for the ſpace of 190 miles, and 170 miles in breadth. So that it is thought to contain one third part of the whole Kingdom: but meanly populous for the bigneſs, the Country being poor and barren, and the Inhabitants fierce and warlike; more given to proſecute their quarrels, than to Trade, or Tillage. Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Ham Liſnan*, a Town built in the more Mountainous parts of the Country, by the old *Africans*. Famous for the Temple of an Idol here worſhipped; to which at certain times men and women reſorted in the night; where, after their devotions ended, and the *Candles* put out, every man lay with the woman he firſt touched; the extract platform of the *Family* of *Love*, if all be true which is told us of them; and anciently, but falſly, charged on the *Primitive* Chriſtians. 2 *Tezza*, adorned with three Colledges, many Baths and Hoſpitals, and ſome beautiful Temples; one of them larger, though not fairer than that of *Feſſe*; in both Towns men of the ſame Trade have a Street by themſelves, for greatneſs, wealth, and numbers of people, eſteemed the third City of this Kingdom. 3 *Dubdu*, an ancient Town, but not much obſervable. 4 *Turert*, ſeated on the top of an Hill, in the midſt of a Plain, but compaſſed about with *Deſarts*. 5 *Beni Jeſſeten*, neighboured by Iron Mines, in which their greateſt bravery and wealth conſiſteth: the women here wearing Iron-Rings for Ornaments to their Ears and Fingers. 6 *Tezergui*, ſubject to the *Arabians*. 7 *Adaggia*, the moſt Eaſtern Town of all the Region; ſituate in a *Peninſula*, made by the confluence of *Muluia*, and *Malva*. In this Country is the head of the River *Subur*, which riſing out of a great Lake in the Woods of the Mountain *Seligus*, and receiving many leſſer waters, with a large and Navigable ſtream falleth into the Ocean.

4. Northwards of *Chaus* lieth the Region called *GARET*, extended thence as far as the *Mediterranean*; and reaching Eaſt and Weſt, from the River *Malva*, where it bordereth on *Tremeſen*, to that of *Nochor*, where it toucheth on *Erri* and *Aſgara*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth but twenty. The ſoyl in moſt places dry and deſart, like the Sands of *Numidia*: eſpecially all along the banks of the *Malva*; near unto which from the *Mediterranean* to *Chaus*, it is wholly *Deſart* and unpeopled, not well inhabited in the moſt fruitful parts of it, being full of Mountains; the worſe for the ill neighbourhood of the *Spaniards*, poſſeſſed of 1 *Cheſuſa*, and 2 *Medela*, two chief Towns hereof. 3 *Pennon de Veles*, by ſome called *Velez de Gomera*, ſituate on the ſhore of the *Mediterranean*, betwixt two high Mountains; built by the *Africans* or *Goths*; but now in the poſſeſſion of the *Spaniards* alſo. 4 *Jafferin*, ſituate on the Sea alſo, founded by the *Mahometans* of the *Marine* Family. 5 *Tezzora*, ſtanding on an Hill, to which there is but one paſſage only.

5. Weſtward of *Garet* lieth *ASCARA*, extended from thence unto the Ocean: Shut up on the South-Eaſt-ſide with the great Mountains *Zalaga*, *Zaron*, and *Gomara*, out of which laſt runneth the River *Luccus*, called *Lix* by *Ptolomy*. The Air hereof very temperate, and the ſoyl as fertile; ſupplying with the over-plus of its Commodities the Mountainous parts of *Feſſe*, and the *Deſarts* of *Garet*. Once full of Towns, till ruined and deſtroyed by the wars. A Monument whereof, 1 *Gumba*, built by the ancient *Africans*, of which remains nothing but the Ditches. 2 *Larache*, in *Latine Lariſſe*, the *Lixa* of *Ptolomy*, ſituate at the mouth of the *Lix* or *Luccus*, and furniſhed with a good Port, but of difficult entrance; garriſoned when poſſeſſed by the *Moors* with 300 light Horſe, and 300 *Harcabuſiers*; but better fortified than before, ſince poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, into whoſe hands it was put by *Muley-Sheck* King of *Morocco* and *Feſſe*, when worſted by *Muley Sidan* his younger Brother, in the beginning of the Civil Wars betwixt them. 3 *Cæſar Elcabir*, given by *Almanſer* to a poor Fiſher, who had entertained him unknown, one night in his Cottage, when he loſt his Company in hunting: Adorned with many Temples, one Colledge of Students, and a ſtately Hoſpital.

6. On the North of *Aſcara* is the Province of *ELHABAT*, or *HABAT* coaſting along the *Atlantick* Ocean to the mouth of the *Streits*, in length 100 miles, about 80 in breadth. The Country very plentiful of all manner of neceſſaries, and very well peopled; the Mountains which are here of a great height, being well inhabited. In former times repleniſhed with many Cities, both of the Foundation of the *Goths*, *Romans*, and old *African Moors*, now much diminiſhed by the Wars. Thoſe of moſt note, 1 *Azaggen*, the Inhabitants whereof by an ancient priviledge granted by the Kings of *Feſſe*, were licenced to drink wine, though prohibited by the Law of *Mahomet*. Situate on a Mountain near the River *Guarga*, about 35 Leagues from *Feſſe*; and garriſoned with 400 Horſe for fear of the *Portugals*, who ſometimes make their excurſions thither. 2 *Baſra*, once a walled Town, and the walls ſtill ſtanding, but very little or no Town in them. 3 *Homar*, ſometimes well peopled, but now little inhabited, by reaſon of the ill neighbourhood of the *Portugals*, who command that Coaſt. 4 *Bauirendo*, in a manner deſerted for the ſame reaſon. 5 *Alcazar*, to diſtinguiſh it from another of this name, called *Alcazer Ghir*, taken together with *Arzilla* and *Tangier* by *Alfonſo* the fifth of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1470. Nigh to which Town the three

Kings,

Kings, *Sebastain* of *Portugal*, *Mahomet* and *Abdemelech*, Competitors for this Kingdom, were slain in a day. There was also slain at the same time, the great *English* Rebel *Stuckley*, who fled out of *Ireland* to *Rome*, Anno 1570. Where he was lovingly entertained by the Pope then being, as a good Son of the Church: by whom appointed for the Conquest of *Ireland*, and for that end furnished with 800 Souldiers paid by the King of *Spain*; and by his *Holiness* created Marquiss of *Leinster*, Earl of *Wexford* and *Carterlogh*, Viscount *Marraugh*, and Baron of *Ross*. Thus furnished, he began his Journey towards *Ireland*, Anno 1578. but hearing of these Wars, and desirous to make a party in them, he lost all his honour with his life. *6 Arzilla* a Sea-Town, 70 miles distant from the *Streits*, now possessed by the *Portugals*. *7 Tanger*, a great Town, and very ancient, distant from the *Streits* about 30 miles, belonging to the *Portugals* also. In former times it was called *Tingis*, a Colony of the *Canaanites*, and by them built at their first coming thither, when they fled from the Sword of *Joshuah*; testified by the two Pillars erected near this City, which before we spoke of: and from that name caused all this part of *Mauritania* to be called *Tingitana*. Made afterwards a Colony by the Emperour *Claudius*, who named it *Traducta Julia*; but the old name prevailed, and out-lived the new. Near to this Town, it is said, that *Hercules* overcame *Antæus*, a monstrous Giant of 64 Cubits high, as his Legend telleth us. And not far off was an high Mountain called *Abyla*, opposite to which in the Coast of *Spain*, was another called *Calpe*, on which the said *Hercules* placed his so famous Pillars. *8 Septa*, or *Seuta*, situate on, or near that Mountain, unfortunately memorable for giving the title of an Earl to *Julian*, who first brought the *Saracens* into *Spain*; beautified in the following times with many Temples, Colledges, and Learned men: taken by the *Portugals* with the help of the *English*, An. 1415. and now in the possession of the King of *Spain*. The only Town of all the Estates of *Portugal*, which in the late revolt of that Kingdom doth remain unto him. *9 Julia Constantia*, so called, and made a *Roman* Colony by *Augustus Cæsar*. *10 Laxus*, a *Roman* Colony of the Plantation of *Claudius*, in old times said to have been the Court or Palace of the Giant *Antæus*. Not far from whence (that *Antæus* might not dwell alone) the old *Geographers* have placed the habitation of *Gerion*, as proper a Gentleman as himself, in a small Island of the *Streits*, called *Gerionis Insula*, and by some *Erythia*.

7. Eastward of *Habat* is the Province of ERRIF, extended from the mouth of the *Streits*, where it joyneth to *Habat*, as far as to the River *Nocbor* (supposed to be the *Melochath* of the Ancient Writers) by which parted from *Garet*: A Mountainous and cold Country in respect of the rest of *Barbary*, full of Woods and Forrests; but plentiful enough of Vines, Figs, and Olives; and not without some herds of Goats, though otherwise not well stored with Cattel. In length 140 miles, in breadth 40 only; inhabited by a race of valiant men, but excessive *Drunkards*. The Towns hereof not many, though full of Villages: The chief of which, 1 *Mazagan*, near unto the *Streits*; a very strong Town, and of great importance, but possessed by the *Portugals*: in vain besieged by *Abdalla* the first, with an Army of 200000 men, *An.* 1562. 2 *Mezemme*, seated on a Mountain. 3 *Beni Jerso*, of like situation, once beautified with a goodly Colledge for the Professors of the *Mahometan* Law, who here publickly taught it, as in an University; the Inhabitants whereof were in that regard freed from all exactions. Destroyed together with the *Library* of it, by some wicked Tyrant, *An.* 1509. the books therein being valued at 4000 Ducats. 4 *Terga*, 5 *Togasis*, 6 *Gebbe*; of which little memorable.

Thus having looked over the particular Provinces of these two Kingdoms, we must next look upon them also in the general story, from the time of the *Saracenical* conquest; First let into this Country by the Treason of *Julian*, and for a while subject to the great *Caliph*, or Successor of *Mahomet*: afterwards to the King, or *Caliph*, of *Cairoan*, who extended his Empire to the Ocean. But that Kingdom being overthrown by the coming in of the *Arabians*, these Provinces with the rest were afflicted by them till the rising of the Kingdom of *Fez*; begun in the person of *Idris*, of the bloud of *Mahomet*, by *Hali*, and his Daughter *Fatima*, commonly called the Family of *Alaveci*; who persecuted by the opposite Faction, fled into *Mauritania*; where he grew into such reputation, that in short time he got both Swords into his hands. Dying about the 185 year of the *Hegira*, he left his Power unto his Son, of the same name with his Father, the first Founder of *Fesse*. Opposite whereunto on the other side of the water, one of his Sons (but his name I find not) built another City, which in time grew into emulation with it; and raising by that means a faction in the house of *Idris*, which occasioned the subversion of the Kingdom of *Fesse*, after it had continued in the Family of the *Alavecy*, for the space of 270 years. The estate hereof first weakned by *Abu Tesin*, or *Texifien*, of the house of the *Almoravides*, or *Lantunes*, and so weakned, that he thereby gave an opportunity to *Joseph Aben*, *Teisin*, or *Telephine*, his Son and Successor, then famous for bridling the *Arabians*, and founding the City of *Morocco*, to suppress that Family: Who killing the Princes of that Line, and 30000 of their Subjects, brake down the Walls which parted the two Cities from one another, united them by Bridges, and so made them one. Drawn into *Spain* by the dissention of the *Saracens* there amongst themselves, he added all which they held in that Kingdom unto his Dominions, held by his Successors, as long as they were able to hold *Morocco*: the Catalogue of which Princes, called the House or Family of the *Almoravides*, with that of the Race of the *Almobades* is this which followeth.

The Kings, or *Miramomolins* of *MOROCCO*.

A.Ch.

1068 1 *Teisin*, *Texifien*, or *Telephine*, the first of the *Almoravides* that reigned in *Africk*.

2 *Joseph*, sirnamed *Telesinus*, the Son of *Teisin*, founded *Morocco*, subdued the Kingdom of *Fesse*; and added the Estate of the *Moors* in *Spain* unto his Dominions, *An.* 1091.

3 *Hali*, the Son of *Joseph*.

4 *Albo-Halis*, the Son of *Hali*, supposed to be the Publisher of the Works now extant in the name of *Avicenne*, compiled at his command by some of the most learned *Arabian* Doctors: vanquished and slain by

5 *Addelmon*, or *Abdel-Mumen*, the first of the *Almobades*; of obscure Parentage, but raised to so great power by the practises of *Almohad*, a juggling *Prophet* of those times, that he overthrew the King, and obtained the Kingdom of the *Almoravides* both in *Spain*, and *Africk*, An. 1150. to which he also added the Realm of *Tunis* and *Cairoan*. 6 *Jo-*

6 *Joſeph* II. or *Aben-Joſeph*, the Son of *Abdelmon*.

7 *Jacob*, or *Aben-Jacob*, ſirnamed *Almonſor*, a puiſſant and prudent Prince, of whom much before: Son of *Joſeph* II.

8 *Mahomet*, ſirnamed *Enaſer*, or the *Green*, the Brother of *Almanſor*. Diſcomfited by the *Chriſtians* of *Spain*, at the Battel of *Sierra Morena*, An. 1214. loſt his Dominions, there being ſlain in this Battel 200000 of the *Moors*, as ſome Writers ſay; who add, that the *Spaniards* for two days together burnt no other Fewel but the Pikes, Lances, and Arrows of their ſlaughtered Enemies, yet could not conſume the one half of them.

9 *Caid Arrax*, Nephew of *Mahomet Enaſer*, by his Son *Buxaf*: ſlain at the Siege of *Tremezezir*, a Caſtle of *Tremeſin*, which was held againſt him.

10 *Almorcada*, a Kinſman of *Caid Arrax*, outed of his Eſtate, and ſlain by *Budebuz*, of the ſame houſe of the *Almohades*.

11 *Budebuz*, the laſt of the houſe of the *Almohades*, ſetled in his eſtate by the aid and valour of *Jacob Aben-Joſeph* the new King of *Feſſe*: but dealing faithleſly and ungratefully with him, he was warred on by the ſaid *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, vanquiſhed and ſlain in battel; the ſoveraignty by that means tranſlated unto thoſe of the *Marine* Family, *An.* 1270. or thereabouts.

But before I do proceed further with this *Marine* Family, I muſt again look back upon *Mahomet Enaſer*, whom I conceive (the computation of the time being ſo agreeable) to be the *Admiralius Murmelius* mentioned by *Matthew Paris*, to whom our King *John*, An. 1214. is ſaid to have ſent ſuch a degenerous and unchriſtian Embaſſage. Which ſtrange name of *Admiralius Murmelius*, was by that good Writer unhappily ſtumbled at inſtead of *Miramomolim* (which alſo is corrupted from *Amir Elmumenim*, that is to ſay, *Princeps Fidelium*:) An Attribute which the great Kings of the *Saracen-Moors* did much affect, and retained it long time amongſt them. The Story this, King *John* being overlaid by his *Barons* Wars, and the invaſions of the *French*, ſent Embaſſadors to this great Prince (then ruling over a great part of *Spain* and *Barbary*) for aid againſt them: offering to hold his Kingdom of him, and to receive withal the Law of *Mahomet*. The *Moor* exceedingly offended at it, told the Embaſſadours, that he had lately read the Book of *Paul*'s Epiſtles; which he liked ſo well, that were he now to chooſe a Religion, he would have imbraced *Chriſtianity* before any other: But every man (ſaith he) ought to die in his own Religion; the greateſt thing which he diſliked in that Apoſtle, being (as he ſaid) the changing of the *Faith* in which he was born. This ſaid, he called unto him *Robert* of *London* Clark, one of the Embaſſadours (a man ill choſe for ſuch an Errand, if the Tale be true,) of whom he demanded the Form of the *Engliſh* Government, the ſituation and wealth of the Country, the manners of the People, the life and perſon of the King: in which being ſatisfied, he grew into ſuch a diſlike of that King, that ever after he abhorred the mention of him. This is the ſubſtance of the ſtory in *Matthew Paris*: But you muſt know he was a *Monk*, to which brood of men King *John* was held for a mortal Enemy, and therefore this Relation not to paſs for Goſpel.

But whatſoever opinion King *John* might have of the power of this King (to whom 'tis poſſible enough he might ſend for aid) certain it is, that he was grown ſo low in his Reputation, after the loſs of that great Battel in *Sierra Morena*, that not only the *Spaniſh Moors* withdrew their Obedience from him (as a Prince unable to ſupport them, but thoſe of *Africk* did revolt alſo from the Crown of *Morocco* (extremely weakned by that blow) after his deceaſe. For *Gomoranca Aben Zein* of the houſe of *Abdalnad*, ſeized upon *Tremeſen*, in the time of *Caid Arrax* his Succeſſor; as *Bucar Aben Merin* of the noble *Marine* Family (deſcended from a *Chriſtian* ſtock) did the like at *Fez*. Setled in his eſtate by the vanquiſhment of *Almorcada* the *Miramomolim*, he left it to *Hiaja* his Son, under the Governance and protection of a Brother of his called *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*. But the young Prince dying ſhortly after, left his new Kingdom to his Uncle: who aiding *Budebuz* (before mentioned) diſpoſſeſſed *Almorcada* of the Realm of *Morocco*: and afterwards having juſt cauſe of quarrel againſt this *Budebuz*, invaded his dominions, overcame and ſlew him; and once again transferred the Imperial Seat from *Morocco* to *Fez*. In him began the Empire of the *Marine* Family, who held their Reſidence in *Fez*, as the firſt Seat of their Power; *Morocco* being governed by an under-King, the reſt of the Provinces of that Kingdom *Cantoned* into ſeveral States; the Sea-coaſts in ſome tract of time being gained by the *Portugals*. And in his Line (but with great confuſions) the Royal Dignity remained till the year 1500, and ſomewhat after. Three only were of note in the courſe of buſineſs, that is to ſay, 1 *Jacob Ben-Joſeph*, the Advancer of the *Marine* Family to the Realm of *Morocco*; the Eſtabliſher thereof in that of *Feſſe*; and of great power and influence in the affairs of the *Moors* in *Spain*, where he held *Algazir* and *Tariffe*, Towns of great importance: ſlain treacherouſly by one of his familiar Friends, at the ſiege of *Tremeſen*. 2 *Aben-Joſeph* the ſecond, a younger Son of the firſt *Joſeph* (the iſſue of *Bucalo* his elder Brother being quite extinct) ſucceeded after *Abortade*, the ſixth of the *Marine* Family, in the Throne of his Father; and had added thereunto the Realm of *Tremeſen*, if not diverted by the revolt of *Alboali* his eldeſt Son, continually in Arms againſt him. 3 *Alboacen*, the Son of this *Aben-Joſeph*, and the eighth of the *Marine Family*, who after a ſiege of 30 months took the City of *Tremeſen*, and with that the Kingdom. But not ſo fortunate in his Wars againſt the *Chriſtian* Kings of *Spain*; againſt whom he led an Army of 400000 Foot, and 70000 Horſe, with all other neceſſaries: but vanquiſhed by the two Kings of *Caſtile* and *Portugal*, with far leſſer Forces; (their Army conſiſting but of 25000 Foot, and 14000 Horſe) at the River of *Salado*, not far from *Tariffe*, An. 1340. Depoſed ſoon after his return by his Son *Alboanen*, who loſt all which his Father and the firſt of the *Aben-Joſephs* had gained in *Spain*; their Empire after this declining even in *Africk* it ſelf: the Kingdom of *Tremeſen*, and the greateſt part of the now Kingdom of *Tunis*, withdrawing themſelves from their obedience in the Eaſt parts of *Barbary*, as the *Portugals* prevailed upon them in the Weſt. The Kingdom of the *Marines* thus approaching near its fatal Period, it fortuned about the year 1508. that *Mahomet Ben-Amet*, a Native of *Dara*, in the further *Numidia* or *Bilodulgerid*, pretending a Deſcent from their Prophet *Mahomet*, cauſed himſelf to be called *Xeriffe*, the name by which the Kindred and Succeſſors of that *Impoſtor* uſe to call themſelves; and being a poor *Hermite* only (with which *Mountebanks* and the high opinion of their Sanctity, this people have from time to time been extremely fooled) plotted to make his Sons the chief Princes of *Mauritania*. To this end he ſent them in Pilgrimage to *Mecca*, whence they returned with ſuch an opinion of Sanctity, that *Mahomet* King of *Feſſe*, made *Amet* the ſecond of them Governour of the famous

famous Colledge of *Amadorach*; the youngeſt called *Mahomet*, Tutor to his Children; the eldeſt named *Abdel*, ſtaying at home with his Father, to expect the iſſue; ſlain afterwards in the War undertaken by the other two againſt the *Portugals*. In thoſe days the *Portugals* grievouſly infeſted the Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; to repreſs whoſe inſolencies, *Mahomet* and *Amet* obtained Commiſſion: though much oppoſed therein by *Muley* the Kings Brother, who told him how unſafe to truſt to an armed hypocriſie; aſſuring him, that if they once came unto any power (which under colour of Religion they might quickly raiſe) it would not be eaſie to ſuppreſs them. But this good counſel was rejected, and the War went forward. Furniſhed with an Army, they diſcomfit *Lopes Barriga*, Commander of the *Portugal* Forces under King *Emanuel*; compel that King to abandon all his footing there; they ſubdue *Ducchila*, *Sus*, and *Hea*, three Provinces of the Realm of *Morocco*; enter that City, poyſon the tributary King, and ſalute *Amet* King thereof by the name of the *Xeriff* of *Morocco*, inveſting *Mahomet* the other Brother in the Kingdom of *Sus*. In the carreer of their Succeſſes died the King of *Feſſe*; and *Amet* his Succeſſor, an improvident young Prince, confirms his *Quondam* Tutors in their new Eſtates, conditioned they ſhould hold of him as the Lord in chief, and pay him the accuſtomed Tributes.

The *Xeriffs* of *MOROCCO*.

A. C. 1 *Amet* denied both Tribute and Superiority to the King of *Fez*, whom he overthrew in a ſet Field; and was after vanquiſhed and diſpoſſeſſed of his Kingdom, (upon ſome quarrel breaking out) by his Brother *Mahomet*.

1544 2 *Mahomet* King of *Sus*, having got the Kingdom of *Morocco*, united *Feſſe* unto it alſo by the vanquiſhment of *Amet* the King thereof; ſlain after all his Victories by the *Turks* of his Guard.

1557 3 *Abdalla*, the Son of *Mahomet*.

1572 4 *Abdalla* II. Son of the former, had twelve Brothers, of which he ſlew ten: *Hamet* being ſpared by reaſon of his ſuppoſed ſimplicity, and *Abdelmeleeh* eſcaping to the *Turks*.

5 *Mahomet* II. Son of *Abdalla* the Second, expelled by *Abdelmeleeh* and the *Turks*, fled to *Srbaſtian* King of *Portugal*; who together with the two Competitors were ſlain in one day at the battel of *Alcaſar Quer*, Anno 1578.

1578 6 *Hamet* II. the Brother of *Abdalla* the 2d. who added parts of *Lybia* and *Numidia* to the Realm of *Morocco*, not abſolutely ſubdued before.

1603 7 *Muley Sheek*, the eldeſt Son of *Hamet*, oppoſed in his Succeſſion by *Boferes* and *Sidan*, his two younger Brethren; in which War he died; as did alſo *Boferes* his Brother. From whom *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek* had regained *Morocco*.

1607 8 *Sidan* the third Son of *Hamet*, immediately on the death of his Father, cauſed himſelf to be proclaimed King of *Fez* (where he was with his Father when he died) and having won *Morocco* from *Abdalla*, the Son of *Muley Sheek*, became Maſter of that Kingdom alſo. Stripped afterwards of *Feſſe* and *Morocco* both, by the oppoſite Factions, diſtreſſed by *Hamet Ben Abdelis* a Religious Hermit, who hoped to get all for himſelf, and aided by *Side Hean* one of like hypocriſie, who ſeemed to him but a ſtalking-horſe of that great Eſtate, by whoſe aſſiſtance he was once more poſſeſſed of *Morocco*. Theſe tumults on the Land being pacified in long tract of time, and the Countrey brought to ſome degree of peace and quietneſs, (though never abſolutely reduced under his Command, as in former times) a Rabble of Pyrats neſt themſelves in *Salle*, a Port-Town of the Realm of *Feſſe*; creating thence great miſchief to him both by Sea and Land; and not to him only, but to all the Merchants of other Countreys, whoſe buſineſs led them towards thoſe Seas. Unable to ſuppreſs them for want of Shipping, he craved Aid of King *Charles* of *England*: by whoſe aſſiſtance he became Maſter of the Port, deſtroyed the Pyrats, and ſent Three hundred *Chriſtian* Captives for a Preſent to his Sacred Majeſty, *An.* 1632. Nor ſtaid he there; but aiming at the general good of Trade, and Mankind, he ſent a Letter to his Majeſty to lend him the like Aid againſt thoſe of *Algiers*, who did as much infeſt the *Mediterranean*, as the Pirates of *Salle* did the *Ocean*. The tenor of which Letter, as ſavouring of more piety than could be poſſibly expected from a *Mahometan*; and much conducing to the honour of his Sacred Majeſty, I have hereſubjoyned.

The

The Letter of the King of *MOROCCO* to the King of *ENGLAND.*

WHen these our Letters shall be so happy as to come to your Majesties sight, I wish the Spirit of the righteous God may so direct your mind, that you may joyfully imbrace the Message I send; presenting to you the means of exalting the Majesty of God, and your own Reward amongst men. The Regal power allotted to us, makes us common Servants to our Creator; then, of those People whom we govern: So that observing the duties we owe to God, we deliver Blessings to the World; in providing for the Publick good of our States, we magnifie the honour of God, like the Celestial Bodies, which though they have much veneration, yet serve only to the Benefit of the World. It is the excellency of our Office, to be Instruments, whereby happiness is delivered unto the Nations. Pardon me Sir; This is not to instruct, (for I know I speak to one of a more clear and quick sight than my self) but I speak this, because God hath pleased to grant me a happy Victory over some part of those rebellious Pyrats, *that have so long molested the peaceful Trade of* Europe; *and hath presented further occasion to root out the Generation of those who have been so pernicious to the good of our Nations: I mean, since it hath pleased God to be so auspicious, to our beginnings in the Conquest of* Salla, *that we might join and proceed in hope of like success in the war against* Tunis Algier, *and other places (Dens and Receptacles for the inhumane Villanies of those who abhor Rule and Government.) Herein whilst we interrupt the perception of malignent Spirits of the World, we shall glorifie the great God; and perform a Duty that will shine as glorious as the Sun and Moon, which all the Earth may see and reverence: A work that shall ascend as sweet as the perfume of the most precious Odours, in the Nostrils of the Lord; A work grateful and happy to man. A work whose memory shall be reverenced so long, as there shall be any that delight to hear the Actions of Heroick and magnanimous Spirits; that shall last as long as there be any remaining amongst men that love and honour the piety and vertue of Noble minds. This Action I here willingly present to you, whose piety and vertues equal the greatness of your power, that we, who are Servants to the Great and Mighty* GOD, *may hand in hand triumph in the glory which this Action presents unto us. Now because the Islands which you govern, have been ever famous for the unconquered strength of their Shipping, I have sent this my trusty Servant and Ambassador, to know whether in your Princely wisdom you shall think fit to assist me with such Forces by Sea, as shall be answerable to those I provide by Land: which if you please to grant, I doubt not but the* Lord of Hosts *will protect and assist those that fight in so glorious a Cause. Nor ought you to think this strange, that I, who much reverence the Peace and accord of Nations, should exhort to a War. Your great Prophet* CHRIST JESUS *was the* Lion of the Tribe of JUDAH, *as well as the* Lord *and* Giver of Peace: *which may signifie unto you, that he which is a lover and maintainer of Peace, must always appear with the terror of his Sword, and wading through Seas of blood, must arrive to Tranquility. This made* JAMES *your Father, of glorius memory, so happily renowned amongst all Nations. It was the most noble fame of your Princely vertues, which resounds to the utmost corners of the Earth, that perswaded me to invite you to partake of that blessing, wherein I boast my self most happy. I wish God may heap the Riches of his Blessing on you, increase your happiness with your days, and hereafter perpetuate the greatness of your Name in Ages.*

Such was the Letter of that King; whose motion in all probability might have took effect, had not the Troubles, which not long after brake out in *Scotland*, put off the design. And therefore laying by the thoughts of his future purposes, let us take a view of the *Revenues* and *Forces* of this mighty Empire; before the late distractions made it less considerable. And first for the *Revenues* of it, the *Xeriffes* are the absolute Lords of the whole Estate, and of his Subjects Goods and Bodies. The tenth and first Fruits of all sorts of Fruits, Corn and Cattel, he demands of course; though many times contented in the name of the first Fruits, with one in twenty. The fifth part of a *Ducat* he receiveth for every Acre of Land throughout his Dominions; the other four parts for every Fire, and as much for every Head, whether Male or Female, which is above fifteen years of age. In Merchandise he receiveth of every Native two in the hundred, of an Alien ten; and hath a large Impost also upon every Mill. When any of his greater Officers or Judges die, he is sole Heir of all their Goods; and yet advanceth great sums by the sale of those Offices. And in the levying of such Taxes as are extraordinary, he useth to demand more than he means to take; that the People finding him content to abate somewhat of his Due, may think themselves to be fairly dealt with.

As for their *Forces*, it is evident in matter of Fact, that *Abdulla* the first, at the siege of *Mazagon*, a Town held by the *Portugals*, An. 1562 had no less then 200000 men; and that *Abdel-Melech* at the Battel of *Alcazar Quez*, against King *Sebastian*, had 40000 Horse, and 80000 Foot; besides Voluntaries, and wild *Arabians*; it being supposed that he might have raised 30000 Horse more (notwithstanding the strong part which was made against him) had he thought it necessary. It is said also that *Abdalla* kept in constant pay 60000 Horse, of which 15000 were quartered in the Realm of *Sus*, 25000 in *Morocco*, and the other 20000 in the Kingdom of *Fesse*: out of which he called 5000 of the best and ablest for the guard of his person, well mounted, and as richly furnished. Besides these he hath bodies of Horse in continual readiness, maintained according to the manner of the *Turks Timariots*: and by Pensions given amongst the Chiefs of the *Arabians*, who live like Outlaws in the Mountains, and up and down in the Skirts of this Countrey, is furnished at his need with Supplies from them. Well stored with Ammunition also, there being 46 *Quintals* of Gunpowder laid up monethly in his famous *Arsenal* at *Morocco*: and yet not able to stay long (not above 3 moneths) upon any action, in regard that all his Souldiers live on his daily allowance; which maketh them, when his Provisions are consumed, to dissolve and scatter.

The ISLES of BARBARY.

THE ISLES of *BARBARY*, which make up the fifth and last part thereof, are situate near the *African* shores of the *Mediterranean*, assigned by *Ptolomy* to the Province of *Africa Propria*. In number sixteen: 1 *Hydras*, 2 *Calathe*, 3 *Draconitis*, now called *Chelbi*, 4 *Ægymnus*, by *Strabo* called *Ægynarus*, and now *Guietta*, 5 *Laruneſia*, now *Mollium*, 6 *Lapeduſa*, now *Lampedoſa*, 7 *Meſyrus*, 8 *Pontia*, 9 *Gaia*; all of little note. 10 *Inſula Glauconis*, with a City of the ſame name in it, now called *Goza*, and ſubject to the Knights of *Malta*. 11 *Æthuſa*, by ſome called *Ægnſa*, and conſequently miſtaken for *Ægates*, which lieth near *Sicily*. Of more note are the five that follow: *Viz.*

1. *COSYRA*, now called *Pantalaria*, equally diſtant from *Africk* and the Iſle of *Sicil*, 60 miles from each. In length about thirty miles, and in breadth not above ten: Mountainous for the moſt part, and full of a black kind of Stone; the Soil not very proper for Corn, and void of Rivers; but plentiful of Figs, Melons, and Cotton-Wool; well ſtored with Kine and Oxen, but without Horſes. The people poor; by Religion *Chriſtians*, and ſubject to the King of *Spain*: very good Swimmers of both Sexes, and in their ſpeech and habit coming near the *Moors*. It hath a Town in it of the ſame name with the Iſland, ſituate on the Sea-ſide in the Northern part of it; defended with a very ſtrong Caſtle.

2. *CERCINA*, now with little difference called *Carchana*, ſituate near the Coaſt of *Africk*, at the entrance (as it were) of the leſſer *Syrtis*: in length twenty five miles, in breadth half as much, but in ſome places not above five. Exceeding fruitful in old times, able to furniſh (as they did) the wants of *Cæſar* and his Army, when he warred in *Africk*; *Magno frumenti numero* Cercinæ *invento, naves onerarias, quarum ibi ſatis magna copia, complet, atque in caſtra ad* Cæſarem *mittit*, are the words of the Hiſtory. It hath a Town of the ſame name. Of no great note in way of Story, but for an handſome piece of Wit here ſhewed by *Hannibal*; who flying from *Carthage*, met here ſome Merchants of that City, who had there ſome ſhipping in the Haven; and ſtanding in ſome doubt, leſt by their diſcovery of his flight, he might be purſued, pretended a Sacrifice to *Hercules* the *Tyrian* Deity, to which he invited all the Sailers, and borrowed all their Sails to ſet up a Tent for their Entertainment; which having got into his hands, and leaving them aſleep, he made on for *Aſia*; ſecure enough not to be purſued, until out of danger.

3. *LOTOPHAGITIS*, now called *Zerby*, and by ſome *Gerbe*, is ſituate in the bottom of the Bay of *Tripolis*, divided from the Main Land by a narrow Ford. The Iſland full of Bogs and Mariſhes, without other Water, and in the midſt of it ſomewhat hilly; indifferently fruitful, yielding Dates, Olives, Barley, Mill, and the like Commodities; inhabited by 30000 men, dwelling in low Cottages, and but ſimply apparelled: It had in it anciently two Cities, 1 *Meninx*, which ſometimes gave name unto the Iſland, called *Meninx* by ſome elder Writers. 2 *Gerrapolis*, both now deſtroyed: inſtead whereof there is now one of more note than the reſt, called by the ſame name with the Iſland, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle. Subject unto the *Turks*, but governed by a poor King of its own. Both Fort and Iſland taken by the *Chriſtian* Fleet, in the year 1559. for the King of *Spain*, to whom *Caravanus* the King thereof did ſubmit himſelf; conditioning to pay the yearly Tribute of 6000 Crowns, one Camel, four Oſtriches, four Sparrow-Hawks, and four Faulcons. But the *Chriſtians* were ſcarce warm in their new poſſeſſion, when beſieged in the Caſtle by *Pial Baſſa*, to whom after ſome extremities they were fain to yield; there periſhing in this unfortunate Action, by Sword, Famine, and Sickneſs, 15000 *Chriſtians*.

4. *GAULOS*, or *GAUDUS*, by the Inhabitants called *Gaudica*, is diſtant about five miles from the Iſle of *Malta*; to the Knights whereof it doth belong: given to them by the bounty of *Charles* the Fifth. The Iſland 30 miles in compaſs, well watered, and very fruitful. So great an Enemy to Serpents, and all venomous Creatures, that they neither breed here, nor will live here, brought from other places. The People *Chriſtians*, but they ſpeak the ſame Language with the neighbouring *Saracens*. The chief Town is of the ſame name with the Iſland, beautified with a capacious Haven, lying betwixt the Weſt and South, and ſtrongly fortified. Cruelly pillaged by the *Turks* in the year 1551. who carried hence 3000 Souls into endleſs Thraldom.

5. *MALTA*, the chief of the *African* Iſlands, lieth betwixt *Tripolis* in *Barbary*, and the Iſle of *Sicil*; diſtant from this laſt about 60 miles, and from the other 180. In circuit about 60 miles, in length 20, and in breadth 12. Situate in the beginning of the fourth *Clime*, and eighth *Parallel*; ſo that the longeſt day in Summer is but 14 hours.

Anciently it was called *Melite*, and by that name occurreth not only in *Ptolomy* and other Writers, but alſo in the Book of the *Acts*, in the Story of St. *Paul*'s Shipwrack; this being the place where he and all his company were caſt on Land; in memory whereof was built a little Chappel in the place of his Landing. So called moſt probably, ἀπὸ τοῦ Μέλιτος, from the abundance of Honey which it yielded in former times; *Cicero* charging it on *Verres*, that he came home loaded with 400 meaſures of Honey, and ſtore of *Melitenſian* Rayments; *Jam non quæro unde* 400 *amphoras mellis habueris, unde tantum* Melitenſium *Veſtium*, ſaith that famous Orator. The joyning of which two together, declare that he had robbed the ſame place for both; this Iſland being a near Neighbour of *Sicil*, which *Verres* governed then as Prætor. Nor is it ſtrange, that an Iſland of the Coaſt of *Africk*, and uſing for the moſt part the *Phœnician* or *Punick* Language, ſhould borrow its Appellation from the *Greek*: many of that Nation coming hither from the Iſle of *Sicil*, and inhabiting here; and the whole Iſland ſometimes ſubject to the power of *Sicilian Greeks*, though for the moſt part under the command of the State of *Carthage*.

It is ſituate wholly on a Rock, being not above three foot deep in earth; by conſequence of no great fertility, the want of which is ſupplied with the plenties of *Sicil*. Yet have they here no ſmall ſtore of Pomegranates, Citrons, Oranges, Melons, and other excellent Fruits, both for taſte and colour. They have alſo great abundance of Cotton-Wooll (*Goſſypium* the *Latiniſts* call it) which they ſow as we do our Corn; the growth and ordering of which Wooll, hath been ſhewn already, when we were in *Syria*. For the commodity of this Wool, and the Cloth made of it, the *Romans* had this Iſland in great eſteem, thinking themſelves happy when they gained it from the *Carthaginians*.

The natural Inhabitants of it are ſaid to be churliſh and uncivil; of the *African* Language and complexion, but followers of the Church of *Rome*, the *Religion* whereof theſe Knights are ſworn to defend. The Women fair, but hating company, and going covered. The whole number

of both Sexes, ſuppoſed to be 20000, poſſeſſed of 90 Villages, and four Cities. Places of note, 1 *Malta*, ſo called by the name of the Iſland, in the middle of which it is ſituate; built on an hill, but counted of no great importance, the ſtrength and ſafety of the Iſland lying in defence of the Shores and Havens. 2 St. *Hermes*, a ſtrong Caſtle at the point of a long *Languet*, or tongue of Rock, thruſting out betwixt the two beſt Havens, both which it notably defendeth. Took by the *Turks*, *Anno* 1565. but at no cheaper rate than 20000 ſhot of Cannon, and the loſs of 100000 of their men. 3 *Valette*, ſituate on the ſame Languet, not far from the Caſtle of S. *Hermes*, (or rather lying cloſe unto it) extended the whole breadth of the ſaid Languet, from the one Sea to the other; and ſo commanding both the Havens. Built ſince the departure of the *Turks*, impregnably fortified, and called thus by the name of *Valette* the Great Maſter, who ſo gallantly repulſed their Fury. In this Town the *Great Maſter* hath his Palace, and the Knights their ſeveral *Alberges* or Seminaries; all very fair and handſome Buildings. 4 *Burgo*, a little Town or City on another *Languet*, lying in the Eaſtern Haven; at the extremity of which Promontory in a Demy Iſland ſtands the ſtrong Caſtle of S. *Angelo*, built on a Rock, oppoſite to *Valette*, on the other ſide of the Haven, and found impregnable by the *Turks*; who in vain beſieged it. 6 *Iſola*, a ſmall City, and better deſerving the name of a Town, ſituate in another Promontory on the South of the other, defended on the Weſt-ſide by a ſtrong Platform, at the point of the *Foreland*; and on the Eaſt-ſide, by the impregnable Caſtle of S. *Michael*; in vain aſſaulted by the *Turks*, who on their ill ſucceſs at the Siege hereof, gave over the Enterprize, and ſailed home.

The People of this Iſland originally were a *Tyrian* or *Phœnician* Colony, but intermixt in tract of time with ſome *Greek* Plantations, coming hither out of *Sicil*, as before was ſaid. For the moſt part dependant on the Fortunes of *Carthage*, afterwards of *Rome*, till ſubdued by the *Saracens*: by the *Spaniards* taken from the *Moors*, and by *Charles* the Fifth given to the Knights of *Rhodes*, not long before expelled thence by *Solyman* the *Magnificent*, *An.* 1522. Theſe Knights are in number 1000; of whom 500 are always to be reſident in the Iſland. The other 500 are diſperſed through *Chriſtendom*, at their ſeveral Seminaries in *France*, *Spain*, *Italy*, and *Germany*; and at any Summons, are to make their perſonal appearance. Theſe Seminaries (*Alberges* they call them) are in number ſeven, *viz.* one of *France* in general, one of *Auvergn*, one of *Provence*, one of *Caſtile*, one of *Aragon*, one of *Italy*, and one of *Germany*; over every one of which, they have a *Grand Prior*, who in the Country where he liveth, is of great reputation. An eighth *Seminary* they had in *England*, till the ſuppreſſion of it by *Henry* the Eighth; yet they have ſome one or other, to whom they give the title of *Grand Prior* of *England*. Concerning the original and riches of theſe Knights, we have ſpoken when we were in *Paleſtine*; novv a vvord or tvvo only of their places, and the Election of their *Great Maſter*. None are admitted into the Order, but ſuch as can bring a Teſtimony of their *Gentry* for ſix Deſcents: and vvhen the Ceremonies of their admiſſion (vvhich are many) are performed, they ſvvear to defend the Church of *Rome*, to obey their *Superiors*, to live upon the Revenues of their *Order* only, and withal, to live chaſtly. Of theſe there be 16 of great Authority, (*Counſellors of State* we may fitly call them) called the *Great Croſſes*; out of whom the Officers of their Order, as the *Marſhal*, the *Admiral*, the *Chancellour*, &c. are choſen: and who, together with the *Maſter*, puniſh ſuch as are convict of any Crime, 1. By degrading him. 2. By ſtrangling him. And 3. By throwing him into the Sea. Now when the *Great Maſter* is dead, they ſuffer no Veſſel to go out of this Iſland till another be *Elected*, leſt the *Pope* ſhould intrude on their *Election*; vvhich is performed in this manner: The ſeveral *Seminaries* nominate two Knights, and two alſo are nominated for the *Engliſh*: theſe 16 from amongſt themſelves chooſe eight; theſe eight chooſe a Knight, a Prieſt, and a Frier-ſervant; and they three, out of the 16 *Great Croſſes*, elect the *Great Maſter*. The *Great Maſter* being thus choſen, is ſtiled (though but a Frier) *The moſt Illuſtrious and moſt Reverend Prince, the Lord Frier* N. N. *Great Maſter of the Hoſpital of S.* John of Jeruſalem, *Prince of* Malta, Gaules, *and* Goza. Far different I aſſure you, from that of the firſt Maſters of this Order, who called themſelves only *Servants to the poor Servitors of the Hoſpital of* Jeruſalem; or that of the Maſter of the *Templers*, vvho vvas only entituled, *The humble Miniſter of the poor Knights of the Temple.*

This Iſland is conceived to yield to the *Great Maſter* the yearly Rent of 10000 *Ducats*, the greateſt part vvhereof ariſeth out of *Cotton-wool*; beſides vvhich, he hath towards the maintaining of his Eſtate, the tenth part of the prizes vvhich are vvon from the *Turks*; and certain thouſands of Crowns yearly out of the Treaſure of the Order, vvhich is great and rich; and one of the beſt *Commanderies* in every Nation. And for the ſcovvring of the Seas, and ſecuring of their Harbours, they have many good Gallies, each of them able to contain 500 Souldiers, and to carry 16 pieces of Ordnance, vvith vvhich they make Excurſions many times to the Coaſts of *Greece*.

And ſo much for *BARBARY*.

MOUNT

MOUNT ATLAS.

IN our way from *Barbary* to *Lybia Interior*, we muſt paſs over *Mount Atlas*, a ridge of Hills of exceeding great heighth, and of no ſmall length. So high, that the top, or *Summit* of it is above the Clouds, at leaſt ſo high, that the eye of man is not able to diſcern the top of it. *Extat in hoc Mari mons cui nomen* Atlas, (*ſaith* Herodotus) *ita ſublimis, ut ad illius verticem oculi mortalium pervenire non poſſint.* Yet notwithſtanding, it is always covered with Snow in the heats of Summer. Difficult of aſcent, by reaſon of the ſharp and craggy *precipices*, which occur in many places of it; the reſt were plainer and more even, of ſuch wondrous ſteepneſs, that the *precipices* of the Rocks ſeem the ſafer way. Full of thick Woods, and yielding to the Countrys on the North ſide of it, the greateſt part of the Rivers which refreſh and moiſten them: and vvhere it bordereth on the proper, or *Roman Africa*, of ſuch ſelf-fertility, that it affordeth excellent fruits of its natural growth, not planted, graffed, or innoculated by the hand of man. The beginning of it is on the ſhores of the Weſtern Seas, which from hence have the name of the *Atlantick Ocean*; in the 26 Degree and 30 Minutes of the Northern Latitude: and paſſing on directly Eaſtward, draw near unto the Borders of *Egypt*, part of *Marmarica*, or the *Roman Lybia*, onely interpoſing. It is now called *Anchiſa*, and *Montes Clari*: And took the name of *Atlas*, from *Atlas* King of *Mauritania*, who dwelt at the bottom of this Mountain; fained by the Poets to be turned into this Hill by *Perſeus*, and the head of *Meduſa*. Of the Daughters of this King, their golden Fruit, and the famous Gardens of the *Heſperides*, we have ſpoke already, though ſome remove the place of their habitation more into the Weſt (then by us diſpoſed of) and others into certain Iſlands of the *Weſtern* Ocean, which we ſhall meet withal hereafter. He was ſaid to have been a man of ſuch wondrous height, that the Heavens reſted on his Shoulders; of which, when weary, he diſcharged his burden on the Shoulders of *Hercules*; the ground of the fiction is either taken from the height of the Mountain, the top whereof ſeemeth to touch the Sky; or from his extraordinary knowledge in *Aſtronomy* (as the times then were) whereby he came to be acquainted with the motions of the Stars and Planets; in which Knowledge he inſtructed *Hercules*, when he came unto him. But for the more *Authentick* deſcription of it, take it thus from *Virgil*:

—Jamq; volans apicem & latera ardua cernis
Atlantis *duri, Cœlum qui vertice fulcit.*
Atlantis, *ciuctum aſſidue cui nubibus atris*
Piniferum caput, & vento pulſatur & imbri.
Nix humeros infuſa tegit, tum flamina mento
Præcipiant ſenis, & glacie riget horrida barba.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words:

Then flying, he the top and ſides deſcries
Of *Atlas*, whoſe proud head ſupports the Skies.
Atlas, whoſe Piny head with Clouds incloſed,
Is to the ſtorms of Wind and Rain expoſed.
Now hides the Snow his Arms, now tumbleth down
Upon his Chin; his Beard with Ice o'er-grown.

Of *LYBIA INTERIOR.*

LYBIA INTERIOR is bounded on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, by which parted from *Barbary* and *Cyrenaica*; on the Eaſt, with *Lybia Marmarica*, interpoſed betwixt it and *Egypt*, and part of *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habaſſine* Empire; on the South with *Æthiopia Inferior*, and the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the Weſt with the main *Atlantick* Ocean.

The reaſon of the Name we have ſeen before, given to this Country in regard of its contiguouſneſs and reſemblance to the other *Lybia*; or elſe becauſe deſcended from the Children of *Lehabim*, by which that Country was firſt planted. For of King *Lybs*, or Queen *Lybia* (the Daughter of *Epaphus*, and *Caſſiopea*) and other the like fictions of the *Greeks*, I ſhall take no notice. Diſtinguiſhed from the other by the addition of *Interior*, as lying more within the main Land of *Africa*, the other being partly a *Maritine* Country.

Of the nature of the Soyl and People we ſhall ſpeak anon, when we come to take a view of its ſeveral parts. Look we now on it as it ſtood in the time of the *Romans*: when, though not ſo well travelled, or diſcovered, as in theſe laſt times: yet have we more particulars of it, as to the names and ſituation of the Rivers, Mountains, and chief Towns, than any of our late Writers have preſented to us. The Rivers of moſt note, 1 *Salathus*, 2 *Chuſarus*, 3 *Ophiodus*, 4 *Noiu*, 5 *Maſſa*, 6 *Sobus*, 7 *Daradus*, 8 *Stachiris*, and 9 *Mathiſolus*; all of them paying tribute to the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean. Mountains of moſt note, 1 *Mandrus*, out of which floweth the River *Salatus*, 2 *Sagapola*, which gives being to the River *Sobus*, 3 *Ryſſadius*, from whence *Stachiris*, 4 the Mountain called *Deorum Currus* (of which more anon) whence *Maſſitholus*, and Mount *Capus*, out of which *Daradas* have their firſt Originals. Then there are, 5 Mount *Uſurgala*, and 6 Mount *Girgiris*, from the firſt of which the River *Bagradas*, and from the laſt that of *Cynyphus* do derive their waters: and paſſing through the breaches of *Atlas* (of which theſe Mountains ſeem to be ſome diſmembred Limbs) croſs the whole breadth of the *Roman Africk*, to make themſelves a way to the *Mediterranean*. Beſides theſe, more within the Land, we find the famous Rivers of *Gir* and *Niger*: of which the firſt maketh the two great Lakes of *Nubia* and *Cheloindas*; the ſecond thoſe as great, or greater, called *Nigritis*, and the Lake of *Lybia*. Which makes me wonder by the way, that in a Country ſo well watered as this ſeems to be, our Modern Writers ſhould complain of ſuch want of water: as if there were neither Spring, nor River, nor Pond, nor Lake, nor any thing to moiſten and refreſh the Earth, but the dews of Heaven, or ſome Pits of ſalt and brackiſh water not worth the taſting. *Ptolomy* muſt either be miſtaken, which I hardly think; or our late *Travellers* not ſo punctual in their obſervations, which I rather credit: or elſe the Rivers which were here in the time of my Author, *In his arenarum vaſtitatibus diſperduntur*, muſt be dried

up and ſwallowed in theſe ſandy Deſarts, as *Maginus* telleth us; or finally there hath hapned ſome later conflagration than that of *Phaeton*, to which the want of water may be better attributed than it was to his. Of which thus the Poet:

Hinc facta eſt Lybiæ; *rapiis humoribus eſtu,*
Arida. —— Which *Geo. Sandys* thus rendreth;
A Sandy Deſart *Lybia* then became,
Her full veins emptied by the thirſty flame.

Places of note and name in thoſe elder times, 1 *Salathes*, on the River ſo named, 2 *Bagaxi*, 3 *Jarzitha*, and 4 *Babiba*, all honoured with the name of *Cities*. 5 *Gamara*, 6 *Gira*, and *Nigira*, the *Metropoles* of their ſeveral Nations. Then there were two Havens of ſome good eſteem, the one called *Magnus Portus*, the other *Portus Perphoſius*, beſides 43 other Towns and Cities (twelve of theſe on the banks of the River *Niger*) whoſe names and ſituation do occur in *Ptolomy*, which ſhews the Countrey not to be ſo unhabitable and void of people, as was pretended by ſome other (but leſs diligent) Writers.

Nations of moſt note in it in the former times, were the *Getuli*, on the back of *Mauritania*, a reſolute and unconquered people, *Genus inſuperabile bello*, as we find in *Virgil*: 2 the *Garamantes*, dwelling South of *Cyrenaica*, and giving name to a large and ſpacious Terrirory, called *Vallis Garamantica*, ſuppoſed to be the moſt remote Nation towards the South, as the *Indians* were towards the Eaſt; whence we have *ultra Garamantas & Indos*, in another Poet. 3 the *Pyrrhæi*, an *Ethiopick* Nation, on the South of the River *Gir*: 4 the *Nigritæ*, originally *Ethiopians* alſo, inhabiting on the North of the River *Niger*; 5 the *Odranguli*, of the ſame original extraction, poſſeſſing the Country between the Mountains *Capha* and *Thala*; 6 the *Perorſori*, dwelling near the Hills called *Deorum Currus*; 7 the *Mcinaci*, at the foot of Mount *Thala*; 8 the *Nabæ*, on the Weſt of *Vallis Garamantica*; 9 the *Derbici*, dwelling on the Weſt of the Hill *Aranga*: and 10 the *Pſyli*, placed by *Ptolomy* amongſt the Inhabitants of *Cyrene*: but ſo near the Borders of this Country, and ſo far from the Civilities of thoſe Nations which converſed either with *Rome* or *Carthage*; that they may more properly be thought to belong to this. Of a Nature ſo venomous, that they could poyſon a Snake. Inſomuch, that when their Wives were delivered, they would throw their Children amongſt a Bed of Serpents, ſuppoſing that child to be born of an *adulterate* bed, the very ſmell of whoſe Body would not drive away a whole brood of the like poyſonous Vermine. Others there were of leſs note, which that Author calleth *Minores Gentes*; many in number, of ſmall fame, and therefore not material to be here inſerted; thoſe of moſt note, the *Africerotes*, (whom ſome Authors call the *Gampſaphantes*) honoured with the Attribute of *Gens Magna*, the greateſt as it ſeems of thoſe leſſer Nations. None of them of much note in the way of ſtory, except they were theſe *Lybians*, which are ſo famouſed in *Herodotus* for an expedition they made againſt the *South-Wind*. For when this Wind blowing abroad the Hills and Deſarts of Sand, had dried up thoſe many pools and waters they had among them; they to revenge this injury, by common conſent armed themſelves, and went to fight againſt him. But they took not the *South-Wind* unprepared. For he muſtered up his forces, and encountred them with ſuch a brave volley of Sand, that he overwhelmed and ſlew them all. A better Friend was the North-Wind to the Citizens of *Rhegium* in *Italy*, and better was he rewarded for it: for having ſcattered a mighty Fleet, which *Dionyſius* prepared againſt them, he was by the Common-Councel made free of their City. That part of *Cæſars* war which was managed here, we ſhall hereafter meet with on another occaſion.

Thus having took a view of the ſtate of this Country, as it ſtood of old; we will next look upon it in its preſent condition; as comprehending the whole Provinces of 1 *Biledulgerid* or *Numidia*; 2 *Lybia Deſerta*, or *Sarra*: and 3 a great part of that Country which is now called *Terra Nigritarum*. But becauſe the greateſt part of this laſt Country is to come under another Accompt; we will here only take the two firſt into conſideration.

1. *NUMIDIA.*

1. *NUMIDIA*, is bounded on the Eaſt, with *Egypt*; on the Weſt, with the *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North, with Mount *Atlas*, which parteth it from *Barbary* and *Cyrene*; on the South, with *Lybia Deſerta*.

It was thus firſt called by *John Leo*, an *African* Writer, to whoſe deſcription of all *Africk* we are much beholding; becauſe of that reſemblance which the people of it have to the old *Numidians*; which is after the cuſtom of the *Nomades*, living without Houſes, under their Wagons and Carts, as *Lucan* teſtifieth of them, thus:

Nulla domus, plauſtris habitant, migrare per arva
Mos, atque errantes circumvectare Penates.

They dwell in Wains, not Houſes; and do ſtray
Through Fields, and with them lead their Gods each way.

And worthily may they owe their Names to them, from whom they borrow ſo much of their Nature: for the People to this day ſpend their lives in hunting, and ſtay but three or four days in a place, as long as the graſs will ſerve the *Camels*. This is the cauſe why this Country is ſo ill peopled, the Towns ſo ſmall in themſelves, and ſo remote from others. An example hereof is *Teffet*, a great City in their eſteem, which yet containeth but 400 houſholds, and hath no neighbours within 300 miles of it.

The Country aboundeth with *Dates*, whence it is called *Dactylorum regio*, and in the Arabick *Biledulgerid*, which ſignifieth alſo a *Date-Region*. Theſe *Dates* (to ſpeak properly) the fruit of the Palm-Trees, uſually growing in hot Countries, of which ſome are male, ſome female; the firſt bringing forth only flowers, the other fruit: and yet the male ſo beneficial to the increaſe of the *Dates*, that unleſs a flowred bough of the male be ingrafted into the female, the *Dates* never prove good, in caſe they bear any *Dates* at all, as before was noted. This fruit is the chief diet of the people: but this ſweet Meat hath ſowr Sauce, for it commonly rotteth their Teeth betimes. As for the Stones of theſe *Dates*, they feed their Goats with them, whereby they grow fat, and yield ſtore of Milk. The Air hereof, of ſo ſound a nature, that if a man be troubled with the *French Diſeaſe*, he ſhall there, without any courſe of *Phyſick* find a preſent Remedy.

The natural Inhabitants of this Country are ſaid to be a baſe and vile people, Thieves, Murderers, treacherous, and ignorant of all things; feeding moſt commonly on *Dates*, Barley, and Carrion; accounting Bread a Diet for their Feſtival days. But the *Arabians*, who are intermingled with them, in moſt part of the Country, affirmed to be (comparatively with the Natives) ingenious, liberal, and civil. The Garments of theſe *Numidians*, of the courſeſt Cloth, ſo ſhort, that they cover not half the Body: the richer ſort, diſtinguiſhed by a *Jacket* of *Blue Cotton* with wide Sleeves. Their Steeds are *amels*, which they ride on without *ſtirrop*, or ſo much as a *ſaddle*; a leather, thruſt through

through an hole made in the nose of the *Camel*, serves them for a *Bridle*; and to save the charge of *Spurs*, they make use of a goad. Their Religion, *Mahometism*, to which perverted (*Christianity* having once had some footing here) in the year 710. the *Azanaghi* and other people of those parts then subdued by the *Saracens*: who held them for a Nation of so little reckoning, that no man of accompt amongst them would descend so low as to be their Prince; but left them to be ruled as in former times, by the *Chiefs* or Heads of their several *Clans*.

The chief River which is left, hath the name of *Dara*, and possibly enough may be the *Daradus* of *Ptolomy*. The rest which are mentioned in that Author, rising out of *Mount Atlas*, and falling headily this way, finding these barren Wildernesses to afford them the readiest *Channels*, are trained along by the allurements of the Sands; and are either swallowed up in great Lakes; or being too liberal to the thirsty Sands in their way to the Sea, die at the last for thirst in the midst of the *Desarts*.

The Principal of their Provinces (if capable of a distinction into better and worse) 1 *DARA*; more cultivated than the rest, because of the River running thorow it, whence it hath its name: 250 miles in length, indifferently fruitful, where the River doth overflow and water it; and of so different a nature from all the rest, that here the country people have some scattered Villages, the better sort their several *Castles*. 2 *PESCARA*, so called from the chief Town of it: exceedingly infested with Scorpions; the sting whereof is present death. 3 *FIGHIG*, so called from the chief Town also, inhabited by an industrious and witty people (in respect of the rest) some of which betake themselves to Merchandise; some to the study of their Law, which they study at *Fes*, and grow rich upon it. 4 *TEGORARIN*, a large Region, and well inhabited, better than any except *Dara*; as having in it 50 Castles or Gentlemens Houses, and 100 Villages. The People wealthy, in regard of the great Trade which they drive with the *Negroes*; and pretty good Husbands in manuring their land, on which they are forced to lay much soil; and will therefore let some of it *Rent free* to strangers, reserving only the dung of themselves and their *Camel*. 5 *BILEDULGERID*, specially so called, abundantly fruitful in *Dates*, whence it had the name; but destitute of Corn, by reason of the extream driness of the soil: and yet hath in it many Towns of good note among them. Of less note, 6 *Tesset*, 7 *Segelmes*, 8 *Zeb*, 9 *Tebelbeti*, and 10 *Fessen*, so called from the chiefest of their Towns and Villages.

Towns of most note both now and in former times, besides those spoken of before, 1 *Timugedit*, in the Province of *Dara*, the birth-place of *Mahomet Ben Amet* and his three Sons, the Founders of the *Xeriffian* Empire. 2 *Taffilete*, in the said Province, to which place *Mahomet* the second of these Sons, and second King of *Morocco*, of that Family, confined his elder Brother *Amet*, having took him prisoner, *Anno* 1544. 3 *Teffet*, a great Town of 400 houses, but so poorly neighboured, that there is no other inhabited place within 300 miles of it; but of that before. 4 *Techort*, the Inhabitants whereof are very courteous to strangers, whom they entertain at *free cost*; and choose rather to marry their daughters to them, than to any of the Natives. 5 *Eboacah*, the most Eastern Town in all this Country, distant about 100 miles from the Borders of *Egypt* 6 *Debris*, one of the chief Cities of the *Garamantes*, of great renown in former times for the Wells or *Fountains* of the *Sun*: The Water whereof being lukewarm at the Sun rising, cooled more and more till noon, and was then very cold, and so continued until midnight; afterwards by degrees growing hotter and hotter; as if it had a natural *Antipathy* with the Sun, hottest when that was furthest off; and cold when nearest. 7 *Masuche*, seated on a Rock, garisoned by *Jugurth* for a place of refuge, but taken by *Marius* in the prosecution of that War. 8 *Cupsa*, the chief City of all this Tract, said to be built by *Hercules*; but questionless of very great strength; *anguibus areniſque vallata*, made inaccessible (saith the Historian) by the thick *Sands*, and multitude of *Serpents* which were harboured in them; but easily forced by *Marius* in his wars with *Jugurth*, and utterly destroyed by *Cæsar* in his war against *Juba*.

It seems by this, that those people neighbouring Mount *Atlas*, were much at the disposal of the Kings of *Mauritania*, in the times foregoing, and so they have been also in these latter times. For though neglected by the *Romans*, who thought it an high point of wisdom not to extend their Empire beyond that Mountain; yet the *Saracens* had not long possessed themselves of those parts of *Barbary*, which was in the year 698; but within twelve years (*An.* 710.) they subdued this Country, and planted their *Religion* in it, though not themselves. Nor was *Amet*, the first *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, warm in that estate, when he thought it best for him to secure himself in it by the conquest of this: to whose Successors, the Chiefs of the Tribes hereof render some acknowledgments.

2. *LYBIA DESERTA.*

2. *LYBIA DESERTA*, is bounded on the North with *Numidia*, or *Biledulgerid* to which the South, with the Land of *Negroes* wholly; and on the West with *Gulata*, another Province of these *Negroes*, interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick*.

The reason of the name of *Lybia* we have had before. To which *Deserta* was added upon very good reasons, as well to difference it from the other *Lybia*, a Province of *Egypt*, as to express the barren and sandy condition of it: in which respect by the *Arabians* called *Sarra*, signifying in their language a rude and inhabitable *Desart*, as this Country is. So truly such, that men may travel in it eight days together without finding Water, or seeing any tree, and no grass at all. The water which they have is drawn out of Pits, exceeding brackish; and many times those Pits so covered with the Sands, that men die for thirst: the *Merchants* therefore carrying their water with them on the backs of *Camels*; which if it fail, they kill their *Camels*, & drink a water which they wring out of their guts. And yet as dangerous and uncomfortable as these *Deserts* be, they are very much travelled by the Merchants of *Fes* and *Tremesen*, trading to *Agades* and *Tombutum*, in the Land of *Negroes*.

The People differ not much from the *Numidians* in shape or qualities; but if a worse quality, it must be the *Lybian*. They did once worship a God called *Pasaphon*, who when he lived, taught divers Birds which he caught, and then set at liberty, to say these words, *viz. Pasaphon is a great God*; which the simple people hearing, and admiring at it, afforded him Divine honours. Converted at last to the *Christian* Faith, they remained a while in the profession of the Gospel: exterminated by the *Saracens*, about the year 710. who having added *Numidia* or *Biledulgerid* to their former conquests, planted their *Superstitions* in this Country also.

This Country is divided (as others into *Provinces*) into five great *Deserts*, to which those of less note are to be referred.

1. *ZANHAGA*, beginning at the Borders of *Gualata*, (interposed betwixt it and the *Atlantick* Ocean) and extending Eastward to the Salt-pits of *Tegaza*; having on the South, *Gualata* and *Tombutum* in the Land of *Negroes*; so destitute of water, that there is one pit only at the

end

end of each hundred mile, brackish and unwholesom; and in the *Desarts* of *Azaoad* and *Araoan*, which are parts of this, but one in an 150 or 200 miles riding.

2. *ZUENZIGA*, extended from the Salt-pits of *Tegaza* Eastward, to the *Desart* of *Targa*: bounded on the North with *Segelmess* and *Tebelbaty*, *Numidian* Provinces; and on the South, with the *Desarts* of *Ghir* and *Guber*. So void of water, (especially in that part thereof which is called *Goguden*) that in Nine days Travel there is not so much as one drop to be seen, but what they carry on their Camels.

3. *TARGA*, extended East-ward to the *Desart* of *Ighidi*, and reaching from *Tegerarin* in the North, to the *Desart* of *Agadez* in the South, the best conditioned part of all this Country, well watered, of a temperate Air, and a Soyl reasonably fruitful. In length from North to South 300 miles, and liberally stored with Manna, which they gather into little Vessels, and carry to *Agadez* to sell. Mingled in water, or with Pottage, it is very cooling; and drank of in their Feasts, as a special dainty.

4. *LEMBTA*, extendeth from the Desarts of *Ighidi*, unto that of *Bordea*.

5. *BORDEA*, which reacheth to the borders of *Nubia*. Of these two there is little to be said in several, but that this last was lately discovered by one *Hamar*, a guide to a *Caravan* of Merchants; who blinded with the Sands, wandered out of his way, and causing Sand to be given him at every twenty miles end, found by the smell at last that they begun to draw nigh some inhabited place; and told them of it forty miles before they came to it.

Cities of Note we hope for none, where we find no Water. Of such as go for Cities here, the most considerable, 1 *Tegaza*, rich in veins of Salt, resembling Marble; which the Inhabitants, being twenty days distant from any habitation, and consequently many times in danger to die for famine, exchange Victuals with the Merchants of *Tombutum*, who come hither for it. Much troubled with the *South-Wind*, which doth so drive the Sands upon them, that it causeth many of them to lose their sight. 2 *Huaden*, or *Hoden*, a known resting place, and a great refreshment to the *Merchant* in the midst of these Desarts. 3 *Guargata*, on the brink of a Lake, fed by a River of hot Water; affirmed to be a Town of elegant building, and inhabited by a wealthy people. 4 *Toberaum*, of little note, but that it serveth for a Stage or *baiting-place* to the weary Traveller. Of which kind there are said to be others at the extremities or ends of each several *Desart*; the *Havens* of such men as *sail* in those Sandy *Seas*; but not else observable.

Nor is there much, if any thing observable of them in the way of *Story*, but that not looked after by any of the great *Conquerours*, either *Greeks* or *Romans*, much of the Country was possessed by *Arabian* Colonies, (men fit enough to plant in such barbarous Nations) at such time as the *Saracens* planted their *Religion* here. The Government of the Country since, as it was before, by the *Chiefs* of their several *Clans* or *Families*, who as they know no Law themselves, so do the People shew as much ignorance of it in their lives and actions, differing but little from brute Beasts, more then in shape and speech.

And so much for *LYBIA INTERIOR*.

OF TERRA NIGRITARUM.

TERRA NIGRITARUM, or *THE LAND OF NEGROES*, is bounded on the East, with *Æthiopia Superior*; on the West, with the *Atlantick Ocean*; on the North, with *Lybia Deserta*; and on the South, with the *Æthiopick Ocean*, and part of *Æthiopia Inferior*. So called from the *Nigritæ*, the chief of the Nations here inhabiting in the time of *Ptolomy*, and they so named from the River *Niger*, of which more anon.

The Country very hot by reason of its situation under the *Torrid Zone*; yet very well inhabited, full of people, and in some places always green: well watered, and exceeding fruitful, specially in those parts which lie within the compass of the overflowings of the River *Niger*; and on the further side of the River *Sanaga*: abundantly well stored both with Corn, Cattel, and Garden-ware for the use of their Kitchins; well Wooded, and those Woods well furnished with Elephants and other Beasts, both wild and tame. Their greatest wants (but such a want as may be born with) is the want of *Fruit-Trees*; few of which they have; and those they have, bear one kind of Fruit onely, which is like the *Chesnut*, but somewhat bitterer. Rain here doth neither hurt nor help; their greatest welfare consisting in the overflowings of *Niger*; as that of *Egypt* in the Inundations of *Nile*. In some parts liberally enriched with Mines both of Gold and Silver; very fine and pure: so that had not the *Portugals* affected the honour of discovering *New Worlds*, as much as *Wealth*, they might have made as rich a *Factory* here, as at the *Indies*.

The Inhabitants, till the coming of the *Portugals* thither, were for the most part so rude and barbarous, that they seem to want that use of Reason which is peculiar unto Man; of little Wit, and destitute of all Arts and Sciences; prone to Luxury, and for the greatest part Idolaters, though not without some small admixture of *Mahometans*. When the *Portugals* first sailed into these Coasts, the People hereof took the Ships for great *Birds* with white Wings: and after, upon better acquaintance, they could not be brought to believe, but that the Eyes which were casually painted on the Beaks of the Ships, were the Eyes by which they saw how to direct themselves in their course. *Guns* seemed to them, for their hideous noise, to be the work of the *Devil*; and for *Bag-pipes*, they took them to be living creatures; neither when they had been permitted to feel them, would they be perswaded but that they were the work of *Gods own hands*. The very

ry *Nobles* (if ſo noble a name may without offence be given to ſuch blockiſh people) are ſo dull and ſtupid, that they are ignorant of all things which belong to Civil Society: and yet ſo reverent of their *King*, that when they are in his preſence, they never look him in the face, but ſit flat on their buttock, with their elbows on their knees, and their hands on their faces. They uſe to anoint their hair with the fat of Fiſhes, which makes them ſtink more wretchedly than they would do otherwiſe. Of Complexion they are for the moſt part Cole-black, whence the name of *Negroes*; but on the South-ſide of the River *Senaga*, they are only Tawny: the *Blacks* ſo much in love with their own complexion, that they uſe to paint the Devil *White*; which I find thus verſified:

The Land of Negroes *is not far from thence,*
Never extended to th' Atlantick *Main*;
Wherein the Black Prince *keeps his reſidence,*
Attended by his Jetty-coloured Train:
Who in their Native Beauty moſt delight,
And in contempt do paint the Devil White.

They have tried all *Religions*, but agree in none. *Idolaters* at the firſt, as others the Deſcendants of *Cham*: Afterwards it is ſaid, that they received the *Rites* and *Religion* of the *Jews*, (but the time and occaſion of it I do no where find) in which they continued very long: But that being worn out at the laſt, *Chriſtianity* prevailed in ſome Kingdoms of it. In the year 973. *Mahometiſme* began to get ground amongſt them, by the diligence and zeal of ſome of the Preachers of that Law: the firſt who were ſeduced that way, being thoſe of *Melli*: after which *Tombuto*, and then *Gualata*, were infected with the ſame poyſon alſo. In the end, all the reſt of this Countrey followed their example, except the Kingdom of *Borneo*, ſome part of *Nubia*, and the Coaſts of the *Atlantick* Ocean, which continue in their ancient *Gentiliſm*: *Chriſtianity* being confined to a corner of *Nubia* (if ſtill there remaining) and ſome few Garriſons belonging to the Crown of of *Portugal*. And as they are of different *Religions*, ſo are they alſo of ſeveral *Languages*: thoſe of *Gualata*, *Guinea*, *Tombutum*, *Melli*, and *Gogonsi*, ſpeaking the Language called *Sungai*; the *Guberio*, *Comonei*, *Cheſene*, and *Gangretes*, &c. that called *Guber*: *Gualata*, a language of its own: and thoſe of *Nubia*, once reſembling the *Arabick*, *Chaldean* and *Egyptian*.

Mountains of moſt note in it, in the former times, were thoſe of 1 *Arvalites*, and 2 *Arangus*, and 3 that called *Deorum Currus*; this laſt ſuppoſed to be the ſame which is now called *Puntæ de Lopes Gonſales*, but that more probably, which they now call *Cabo de Sierra Leona*, a large *Promontory*, thruſting it ſelf into the Sea; diſcerned afar off by the Sailer and the Country people, as well by reaſon of his height, reaching to the Clouds, as the continual Lightnings and Thunders which do iſſue thence.

Rivers of moſt note, beſides *Nile*, which watereth it on the Eaſt, 1 *Senaga*, or *Canaga*, which riſeth out of the Lake of *Guoga*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Lacum Chelonidem*. And if ſo, then muſt this be the River *Gir*, of which he ſaith, that having fallen into that *Lake*, and there ſwallowed up, it thence produced another River, whoſe name he telleth not; little inferiour unto *Nilus*, for the length of its courſe, the variety of ſtrange Creatures which are bred therein, or the diſtinction which it maketh in the face of this Country: the people on the one ſide of it being Black, on the other Tawny; the ſoil on the one ſide very barren, on the other fruitful. In the end, having run his race, he falleth into the *Atlantick* by two great Out-lets. 2 *Niger*, a River better known to *Ptolomy* by name than nature; now found to have its riſe from a great Lake, within two degrees of the *Æquinoctial*; whence running Northwards for a time, he hideth himſelf under ground for the ſpace of 60 miles together: when riſing up again, and making a great Lake called the Lake of *Borneo*, he bendeth his courſe directly Weſtward; and taking in many leſs *Channels*, he teareth the Earth into many Iſlands, and at laſt falleth into the Sea. Of as long courſe, and the ſame wondrous nature as the River *Nilus*. For from the fifteenth day of *June* it over-floweth all the adjacent fields, the ſpace of 40 days together; and in ſo many more, recollecteth his Waters into their proper *Channels*: the whole Country being indebted to theſe inundations for its fertility, which otherwiſe could be but ſmall, ſince the drineſs of the Soil can afford no *exhalations*, whereby Clouds may be generated, and the Earth refreſhed with moiſtures, or revived with dews.

Chief Cities of this Country in the time of *Ptolomy*, 1 *Nigira*, the *Metropolis* of the Country, 2 *Panagra*, 3 *Malachath*, 4 *Anygath*, 5 *Thumondacana*, 6 *Sulnce*, and others, to the number of 17 in all; ſituate all along the courſe of the River *Niger*: Of all which we have nothing now remaining but the ſituation and the names, which that Author giveth us. So that the memory of all the ancient Towns and People being quite defaced, we muſt look upon it now as it ſtandeth divided at this time into ſeveral kingdoms, 25 at the leaſt, in all, (ſome ſay many more) the chief of which are theſe that follow.

1 *ORA ANTEROSA*, a large Tract of Ground on the *Weſtern Ocean*, extended from *Cape Blanco* to the River *Carnuga*, ſandy and barren, but reaſonably well peopled. The Inhabitants hereof called *Azanhagi*, were accounted formerly very rude and barbarous, much civilized ſince the *Portugals* and other *Chriſtian* Nations began to trade there; of middle ſtature, complexioned between black and aſh-colour; great liers, very treacherous, poor, and parſimonious, and very patient in extreams both of heat and hunger. The chief Towns, 1 *Porto di Dio* (we may call it *Gods Port*) and 2 *Porto del Riſcatto*, two frequented Havens, thus named occaſionally by the *Portugueze*, at their firſt coming thither. 3 *Arquin*, a ſtrong Fortreſs of the *Portugals*, ſituate on or near the Promontory now called *Cape Blanco*; and giving name unto ſome Iſlands, five or ſix in number, lying near unto it, called the Iſles of *Arquin*; inhabited by a barbarous people, named the *Azanhays*, but of no great note. Theſe Coaſts diſcovered firſt by the *Portugals*, *Anno* 1452. under the Conduct of Prince *Henry*, Son of *John* the Firſt, or by his encouragement and directions.

2 *GUALATA*, diſtant from the Ocean 100 miles, (the Province of *Ora Anteroſa* being interpoſed) is but a ſmall Country, though a Kingdom; containing in it but three Burrough-Towns, with ſome Territories of ground and perty *Hamlets* belonging to them. Fruitful only in *Dates*, Mill, and Pulſe; but of theſe two laſt no great abundance. The Inhabitants Coal-black, hoſpitable towards Strangers to their power, but poor and miſerable; without Laws, ſetled form of Government, Gentry and Judges.

3 *AGADEZ*, bordering on *Targa*, one of the five *Deſarts* of *Lybia*; the people of it generally given to grazing: their Houſes made of green Boughs, which upon every change of Paſture they carry with them. So that we are to look for few Towns among them, but theſe movable Villages. One of good note it hath, called *Agadez*, by the name of the Country, inhabited for the moſt part by *Merchants Strangers*, who drive a great Trade betwixt this and *Tremeſen*. The Town well walled, the Houſes of a better building than the Countrey promiſeth; the people

people civiler, and more fair conditioned than the reſt of the *Negroes*; ſeated commodiouſly on a River which falleth into the *Senaga*, and by that means hath correſpondence with the Ocean alſo. The King hereof a Tributary to the King of *Tombuto*, payeth him 15000 Crowns of Annual Tribute.

4 *CANO*, a large Province on this ſide of the River *Canaga*, full of Woods, Mountainous, and in ſome parts Deſart; but plentiful enough of Corn, Rice, Citrons and Pomegranates, with good ſtore of *Cotton-Wooll*. Well watered, beſides that great River, with ſome leſſer Streams. Sufficiently populous, and ſtored with good Towns and Villages, the habitations of the Shepherds and Husbandmen, as the chief Town called *Cano* is of wealthy Merchants. This the Seat-Royal of their King, a *Tributary* alſo unto him of *Tombuto*, environed with a Wall, built of a Chalk-ſtone, as moſt part of the Houſes are.

5 *CASENA*, on the Eaſt of *Cano*, but leſs fruitful far; the Country over-grown with vaſt Woods, and the ſoil untractable, affording only Mill and Barley, but of that good plenty. The people as black as any Coal, with great Noſes, and moſt prominent Lips. Their Houſes very poor and mean, and their Towns accordingly, none of them numbring more than 300 Families.

6 *SANAGA*, lying on the other ſide of that River, from which thus named; extendeth to the *Atlantick* Ocean, as far as to the Promontory which by *Ptolomy* named *Arſinarium*, is now called *Cape Vert*, or *Caput Viride*. The Country full of rich Paſtures, goodly Trees, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; plentiful enough of Mill and Pulſe, but ill provided of other Corn, and no Grapes at all. Well watered both with Lakes and Rivers. No tame Beaſts about their Fields, but Goats, Cows, and Oxen; of Lyons, Leopards, Wolves, and Elephants, too great a plenty. The people extream black, much given to lying, treacherous, very full of talk, exceſſively venerous, and extream jealous. A King they have, but ſuch a one as holdeth but by *Courteſie* onely, having no certain Rents or Revenues, but what is given by his Nobles.

7 *GAMBRA*, or *GAMBEA*, a ſmall Kingdom on the River ſo named, but bordering in ſome places on the *Atlantick*. In thoſe parts very pleaſant, the Trees always flouriſhing, the Air very hot; in other parts of the ſame nature with *Sanaga*, but that this affords good ſtore of Rice, which the other doth not.

8 *TOMBUTUM*, on the further ſide of the River *Sanaga*: exceeding plentiful of Corn, Cattel, Milk, and Butter. Deſtitute of Salt, but what they buy of foreign Merchants at exceſſive rates; and ſmall ſtore of Horſes. Well watered by a Branch alſo of the River *Niger*, and many Wells of purpoſe made to receive ſuch Waters as by Artificial Dikes and Channels are derived from both. The people courteous, rich and pleaſant, ſpending whole days and nights in ſinging and dancing. Their food, Fleſh, Butter, Milk, and Fiſh, which they mingle together, and make it neither toothſome nor wholſome. The chief Towns, 1 *Tombuto*, which gives name to this Kingdom, ſituate about twelve miles from a branch of the *Niger*, and founded by the *Saracens* or *Arabians* in the 610 year of their *Hegira*. The Houſes all of mud and thatch, except one fair Church, and the Kings Palace, both of Lime and Stone. Inhabited by wealthy Merchants, who manage a great Trade betwixt this and *Feſs*. 2 *Gago*, the reſidence of the King, large, without Walls, the Buildings very poor and mean, except ſuch as belong unto the King, or the chief Nobility. The Merchants rich, and their Wares ſumptuous and precious, but exceſſive dear. The Town about 400 miles diſtant from *Tombuta*, ſituate in a fruitful Country for Rice, Fruits and Fleſh, and well repleniſhed with freſh water. 3 *Cabra*, a large Town, but unwalled, and of no better building than the other two.

9 *MELLI*, lying on the Eaſt of *Tombutum*, is a ſpacious and fruitful Province, ſituate all along on a Branch of the River *Niger*, in breadth 300 miles, and abundantly fertile, eſpecially in Corn, Cattel, and *Cotton-Wooll*: the people generally very wealthy, of greater wit, civility and induſtry, than the reſt of the *Negroes*. The chief Town of it is called *Melli*, unwalled, but large, as containing in it 6000 Families; furniſhed with many Temples, Prieſts, and Readers of the *Mahometan* Law, which thoſe of this Country did firſt unhappily admit of. This the Seat-Royal of their Kings, who are very courteous unto ſtrangers; but *Homagers* and Tributaries to the King of *Tombutum*.

10 *GHENEOA*, ſituate betwixt *Gualata*, *Tombutum*, and *Melli*, but ſo, that it bordereth in one place on the *Ocean* alſo; is a wealthy Country: but hath neither Town or Caſtle in it, except that wherein the King reſideth, who is a Vaſſal alſo to the King of *Tombutum*. That Town the reſidence alſo of their Prieſts, Doctors, and Merchants; of which the Prieſts and Doctors are apparelled in white, but all the reſt in black or *blue Cotton*. The people have great Traffick with the Merchants of *Barbary*; and though made very rich by the overflowings of *Niger*, and the wealth of the Country, they have great ſtore of Gold uncoined; yet in buying and ſelling at home, they uſe iron money.

11 *GUBER* lieth on the Eaſt of the former Provinces; of the ſame length, and naturally well fenced with lofty Mountains. Exceeding populous, and thick ſet with Villages; in which dwell their Husbandmen, and Shepherds; rich in their numerous herds of all ſorts of Cattel, as alſo great quantities of Rice and Pulſe: The people very induſtrious, and good Artificers. Their principal Town is called *Guber* alſo, a Town of 6000 Families, the uſual reſidence of their King; full of wealthy *Merchants*, and rich in *Manufactures*.

12 *GIALOFI* lieth betwixt the two great Rivers of *Sanaga* and *Gambia*. The people whereof are of ſuch admirable dexterity, that they can leap upon an horſe when he is in his full Gallop, ſtand in the Saddle when he runneth faſteſt; turn themſelves about upon his back, and ſuddenly down. Of their Country I find little, of their Story nothing, but that *Bemoin* one of their Kings, being overlaid with Civil Wars, in the year 1489. went for Aid to the King of *Portugal*, and gave great hopes of his converſion to the *Chriſtian Faith*. But being ſhamefully murdered by *Petro de Vaz*, the *Portugal* General, the hopes of *Chriſtianity* in theſe parts fell together with him.

13 *GUINEA*, is a Sea-Coaſt Country, extended from *Siera Leona*, (ſo called from the *Lyon*-like roaring of the Waves beating on that Promontory) in the 10 degree of *Longitude*, to the Borders of *Benin* in the 30. But the *Portugals* comprehend under this name the whole Sea-Coaſt of *Africk* from *Cape Blanco* and the Country of *Ora Anteroſa*, to *Angola* and *Congo*, incluſively, in the *Lower Æthiopia*. But take it in the proper ſenſe, as before-limited, and we ſhall find it to be rich in Gold, Ivory, Rice, Barley, Cotton-Wooll, and a ſort of Pepper, which the *Portugals* call *Pimienta del Rabo*, the Natives *Melegneta*, and we *Guiny-Pepper*, of double the efficacy of the Pepper which comes from *India*; and therefore forbidden to be ſold by the Kings of *Portugal*, for fear their *Indian*-trade ſhould be diſcontinued. Well ſtored with Sheep and Poultry, and of *Dates* good plenty. All other Fruits which

which they want, or care for, are brought thither from *Gualata*. Birds in abundance, and of Elephants and Apes too many. A Tree they have, by them called *Mignolo*, the Bark whereof being cut, doth afford a most excellent Liquor, more pleasant, strong and nourishing then the choicest Wines, which they drink of in their great Feasts even to drunkenness. The people of both Sexes very rude and barbarous, as well in their habit as their manners; yet amongst many barbarous customs, they have one most commendable, which is the breeding of their *Maidens*. When marriagable, they place them in an house severed from the rest of their Cities, like a *Cloyster*, or *Monastery*, where for a space they are trained up by some old man of best estimation. At the years end they are brought out well apparrell'd with *Musick* and *Dances*; where the young men please themselves in the choice of their Wives: for whom having bargained with their Parents, they satisfie the old man for his care and pains in their Education. They keep one day of rest weekly, but therein differ from all Nations in the World besides, that they keep their Sabbath upon the *Tuesday*. Distracted into as many Kingdoms as great *Tribes* or Families; the Kings thereof subordinate unto one another, as they lie more within the Land, till they end all in a subjection to the King of *Mandinga*. Places of most note, 1 *Songus*, the principal of *Mandinga*, about 100 Leagues Eastward from the *Cape* of *Palmes*. 2 *Budomel*, the chief Town of the Kingdom so called. 3 *Uxoo*, in the Center of all the Countrey. 4 *Mina*, a strong hold of the *Portugals*, situate near the Cape called *Cabo de Trois pontas*, the three pointed Cape; named sometimes also S. *George de Mina*, by the name of the *Cappadocian* Martyr, and the *Mines of Gold*, which they hoped to find there. By which, and by the Fort of *Arquin*, which they have upon Cape *Blanco*, in the North part of this Land of the *Negroes*, they command all the Countreys which they call by the name of *Guinea*. This Town not built until the year 1486, in the beginning of the reign of *John* the Second, though the discovery of these Coasts had been made before, *Anno* 1452, under the Conduct of Prince *Henry* Duke of *Viseo*, Son of *John* the first. By whose encouragement the *Portugueze* did first imploy themselves in foreign discoveries, and became enamoured of the Seas. For in this interval, the *Portugals* being more covetous of new discoveries, than of fortifying and securing the old, gave opportunity to the *Castilians* to look after this Countrey, who having took a view of it, in the year 1477. pursued the Enterprize the next year with a Fleet of 35 Ships, under the command of *Pedro de Cobides*, who brought thence great quantity of Gold: but in the year 1479. by an agreement or capitulation between those Princes, the Trade hereof was again left free to the *Portugals*; who thereupon discovering the Isle of St. *George*, and finding it a fit place to secure and command the rest, built in it the strong Fort or Castle of *Mina*, which before we spoke of.

14 *BENIN*, lieth directly East of *Guinea*, by the *Portugals* reckoned for a Province, or Kingdom of it: the King whereof is said to have 600 wives, with all which twice a year he goeth out in Pomp. The Gentlemen (if I abuse not the name) have most of them 80 wives, some more; he that is poorest, ten or twelve, and the more the merrier. The people thereof do cut and raise their skin with three lines drawn to the Navil, esteeming it necessary to salvation. They use all, both men and women, to go naked till they are married; and then to be cloathed only from the waste to the knees; so that had our Sir *Thomas Moor* lived in these parts, he had in some measure had his desire. For he among other strange plots in his *Utopian* Common-wealth, telleth us, how there it is the custom for some reverend *old Sire* to bring in naked the young man; and some *hoary old Matron* to present naked the young woman, between whom a marriage is propounded. For, saith he, in buying a Horse, the Chapman not only vieweth his naked carcase, but taketh off all his trappings and saddle, lest under them some blain or ulcer might be hidden: why then in chusing of a Wife should we take one, of whom we see no more than the face (*unius Palmæ spatium*) and perhaps scarce that. The learned and ingenuous Author of the *New Atlantis*, though he dislike of Marriages made upon such uncertainties yet he would have this discovery made by some friends of the parties, not by them themselves: it being, as he saith, very inconvenient that after such a plain and familiar sight of each others person, there should be a refusal upon either side. But these new *Projects* I refer to your modest censures.

15 *GUANGARA*, lieth on the North of *Benin*, a wealthy and well peopled Country, but their Towns and Villages very mean; except that called by the same name with the Countrey, where the King resideth, which is somewhat better then the rest, well traded and full of rich Merchants. The King hereof of so great Revenues, that he keepeth seven thousand Archers, and five hundred Horse in continual pay; but *Homager* and Tributary to the King of *Bornum*.

16 *BORNUM*, a large and opulent Countrey on the West of *Guangara*, is there extended to the length of 500 miles. Distinguished equally in manner into hills and valleys: the hills inhabited by Neat-heards and Shepherds, breeding great flocks and heards of Cattel, with Mill, and many other fruits to us unknown; the Valleys repleniſhed with many Market Towns, and as full of Corn. The people are of no *Religion*, but live like Beasts; without *propriety* so much as in their wives, or Children: nor are they differenced by names, as in other places but by some Mark upon their bodies. Which though it seem strange to us of this present age, yet was it thus in part with our *Saxon Ancestors*. Whence have we else the names of *White*, *Brown*, *Black*, *Grey*, *Green*, and *Tawny*; or those of *Long*, *Short*, *Low*, *Curl*, *Crisp*, and others, but from such *Originals*? not to say any thing of the names of Trades, and Occupations, so familiar with us. The name of their chief City is *Borneo*, where the King resideth. A potent Prince, who keepeth in continual pay three thousand Horse, and great numbers of Foot, and yet is said to have no other *Revenue*, than what he getteth by strong hand from his Enemies. Which if it be true, those Kings must needs be good Warriours, and have great succels also in their undertakings: it being also said of these Kings of *Borneo*, that all the Furniture of their Horses, all the Dishes, Cups, and Platters which they eat or drink in, yea the very chains for his Dogs, were of finest Gold.

17 *GAOGA* lieth betwixt *Borneo* and the Desarts of *Nubia*: the Countrey almost square, each side thereof extended 500 miles. The people ignorant, rude, uncivil, but specially those which dwell in the Mountains: their houses built most of boughs and leaves, which once dry, easily take fire; but the best is, they are soon repaired: their greatest wealth is in their Cattel, which they keep most tenderly. About the year 1420. they were brought into subjection by a *Negro Slave*, who having slain his Master, by the help of his wealth grew strong enough to encroach on his Neighbours; and selling such Captives as he took, for horses of *Egypt* became King of *Gaoga*, and in fine very gracious with the *Mamaluck* Sultans. His Successors have since so enlarged their Territories, that they are second unto none but the Kings of *Tombutum*.

18 *NUBIA* hath on the West *Gaoga*, bounded on the North with *Egypt*, extended Eastward unto *Nilus*, by which parted from *Æthiopia Superior*, or the *Habassine* Empire, so called from the *Nubæ*, an ancient and potent

People of this Tract, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*: the great Lake, anciently called *Nubæ Palus*, being hence denominated. A diſtinct people from thoſe of the ſame name, dwelling on the ſhores of the *Red-Sea*, near unto *Sinus Avalites*, who from the ſhortneſs of their ſtature paſſed in accompt for *Pygmies*: Νύβαι Πυγμαῖοι ſaith *Heſychius* an old Gramarian: theſe being a ſtrong and potent Nation, and well skilled in Wars. Inſomuch, as *Cyriacus* once a King hereof, underſtanding of ſome preſſures laid upon the *Chriſtians* of *Egypt*, is ſaid to have raiſed 100000 Horſe for their aid and ſuccour; but by the perſwaſions of the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*, went back unfought with. For at that time the Countrey was wholly *Chriſtian*, and had been ſo from the very days of the Apoſtles; but are now fallen off again to their former *Idolatries*, or become *Mahometans*, for want of Miniſters to inſtruct them. It is recorded by *Alvarez*, the Writer of the *Æthiopick* Hiſtory, that at his being in the Court of the *Abaſſine* Emperour, there came Ambaſſadours out of *Nubia* to intreat a ſupply of Paſtors to inſtruct their Nation, and repair *Chriſtianity* amongſt them; but were unchriſtianly rejected.

Here is a *Poyſon* in this Countrey, of which the tenth part of a grain will diſpatch a man in a quarter of an hour, and is ſold for ten Ducats an ounce; the Cuſtome for which unto the King, is as much as the price unto the Merchant. But for this one ill Commodity they have many good; that is to ſay, Corn, Sugar, Civet, Sanders, Ivory, all in great abundance; ſome ſtore of Gold, and other Metals. The Countrey naturally ſandy, but well refreſhed with Lakes and Rivers which do much enrich it; inſomuch as the people generally are very wealthy, and manage a great trade with the Merchants of *Caire* and *Egypt*. Their chief City is called *Dangala*, large and well frequented; ſaid to contain no fewer than 10000 Families, but their houſes built of nothing but Thatch and Mortar. In other parts, eſpecially towards the River *Nilus*, they have many Villages; few or none of them worth the naming.

There are many other Kingdoms in this Land of *Negroes*, beſides theſe in *Guinea*, but of leſſer note; as 19 *BITO*, 20 *TEMIANO*, 21 *ZEGZEG*, 22 *ZANFARA*, 23 *GOTHAN*, 24 *MEDRA*, 25 *DAUM*, Of which there is nothing to be ſpoken, but of their Poverty or Riches, Bleſſings or Curſes, common to them with the reſt of theſe Nations, and therefore I purpoſely omit them.

This Countrey, or a great part of it, was anciently accounted part of *Lybia Interior*, inhabited beſides the *Nubæ* and *Nigritæ* ſpoken of before, by the *Nabathræ* dwelling about the hill *Arvates*, the *Aroncæ*, near the hill *Arangus*, the *Agarginæ*, *Xylinces*, and *Alchalinces*, *Æthiopick* Nations. Not much conſiderable in the buſineſs of former times; not much diſcovered (not very perfectly at this day) till the year 973. at what time certain *Mahometan* Preachers, out of a ſuperſtitious zeal to propagate their Sect, firſt opened the way into theſe Countryes: the people then living like bruit beaſts, without King, Law, or any form of Government, ſcarce knowing how to ſow their Lands, clad in the skins of as very beaſts as themſelves, and challenging no propriety in Wives or Children. Firſt conquered by *Joſeph* King of *Morocco*, of the race of the *Almohades*; and after that by the *Five Nations* of *Lybia Deſerta*, who divided them into fifteen parts, every one of thoſe Five Nations poſſeſſing three of them. One of the Kings of theſe *Lybians*, named *Soni Heli*, being ſlain by *Abuaci Iſchia*, General of his Forces, and the reſt terrified with that blow, *Anno* 1526. the *Negroes* once again recovered their long loſt liberty, and inſtituted divers Kings of their own. Amongſt them, *Iſchia* was moſt deſervedly made king of *Tombutum*, who managed his Affairs ſo well, that he conquered the Kings of *Guber*, *Agadez*, *Cano*, *Melli*, *Zanfora*, *Zegzeg*, *Cheuæoa*, *Gambea*, and *Caſena*, which he made his tributaries. So that his ſucceſſors are now the greateſt of thoſe five Kings who have the ſupreme power over all the reſt. The other four, 1 the King of *Mandinga*, lording it over the Realms of *Benin*, *Gioloſi*, and the Kings of *Guinea*; 2 the King of *Borneo*, the only one that is diſcended of the *Lybian* race, in greatneſs of command next to him of *Tombuto*; 3 the King of *Gualata*, whoſe Kingdom is confined within that one Province, but therein abſolute and ſupreme; and 4 the King of *Goaga*, Paramount over all the reſt of theſe Provinces

But becauſe the greateſt power is in the hands of the King of *Tombuto*, who poſſibly enough may in ſhort time bring all the reſt under his command, we will take a more particular view of his Eſtate: affirmed to be the richeſt Prince in theſe parts of *Africk*, and to have many Plates and Scepters of Gold, ſome of which weigh 1390 pound weight. When any of his Subjects do appear before him they kneel on both their knees, and bowing their heads unto the Ground, caſt ſand over their ſhoulders and upon their head, going forwards ſtill upon their knees. His Court he keeps in a royal manner, continually guarded with 3000 Horſe, but with many more Foot, all armed with Bows and empoyſoned Arrows. To the *Jews* a very bitter Enemy, whom he admitteth not to trade in his Kingdoms, and confiſcateth the goods of all ſuch of his Subjects as hold traffick with them. Zealous of the *Mahometan* Law, and liberal in ſtipends to the Doctors and Profeſſors of it. Of greater power than any other beyond *Atlas*, but the *Habaſſine* Emperour. And though *Amet* the *Xeriffe* of *Morocco*, in the year 1589. had ſome hand upon him, and conquered a great part of this Kingdom, even as far as *Gago*, extending his Empire ſix moneths Journey, by Camels, beyond *Morocco*, yet it held not long; this King again recovering what was taken from him; and being ſince that time in as eminent power, as ever in any times before.

And ſo much for *TERRA NIGRITARUM*.

OF

OF

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red Sea*, and the *Sinus Barbaricus*; on the West with *Lybia Interior*, the Realm of *Nubia*, in the land of the *Negroes*, and part of the Kingdom of *Congo* in the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with *Egypt*, and *Lybia Marmarica*; and on the South with the Mountains of the *Moon*, by which parted from the main body of *Æthiopia Inferior*.

It was first called *Ætheria*, and afterwards *Atlantia*, as *Pliny* telleth us. In the end, the *Grecians* gave it the name of *Æthiopia*, from the *Greek* words Αἴθω, signifying to burn, and ὄψ a *Countenance*; because the violent heats of the Sun had so scorched the Countenances of the Inhabitants. The additions of *Sub Ægypto*, *Superior* and *Interior*, serve only to distinguish it from the other *Æthiopia*, which lyeth further off from *Ægypt*, on the outside of this. It is called also *Regnum Abyssinorum*, from the *Abaseni*, or *Abyssini*, a people of *Arabia Felix*; who passing over the *Red Sea*, (not above seven miles broad in the narrowest place) came and setled here. And in the Scripture it is stiled by the name of *Ludim*, from *Lud* the son of *Mizraim*, who first planted it, as hath been proved by many strong and concluded Arguments in our *General Preface*.

It is situate on both sides of the *Æquinoctial*, extending from the South *Parallel* of seven Degrees, where it meeteth with some part of the other *Æthiopia*, to the Northern end of the Isle of *Meroe*, situate under the fifth *Parallel* on the North of that Circle. And though by this accompt it fall short of the dimensions assigned by some, who extend it from one *Tropick* unto the other; yet is it of a very great length, no less than 1500 miles; the breadth about half as much, the whole circumference amounting to 4300 miles. Yet so, that all this vast Tract of ground, is not to be understood of that part of the Countrey which is under the command of the *Abassine* Emperour, commonly but mistakingly called *Prester John*: but of the whole Countrey of *Æthiopia*, as before limitted and extended; containing besides his Estate, the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*, and the provinces of *Quiloa* and *Melindi*; which two last are now reckoned of as parts of *Æthiopia Inferior*. The Isle of *Meroe* in the North is possessed by *Mahometans*, the most bitter Enemies of this King: all on the West of *Nilus*, betwixt it and the South-east of *Nubia*, inhabited by the *Anzichi*, an *Idolatrous* and man eating Nation, subject to a great Prince of their own: and all the Coasts of the *Red-Sea*, as well within the *Streights* of *Babel Mandel*, as without, except the port of *Erocco* only, enjoyed by *Arabians* and *Moors*, who do acknowledge no subjection unto his Commands but are under the Kings of *Adel* and *Adea*, before mentioned.

But taking in the largest signification and extent hereof (according unto which we must here describe it) it comprehendeth the three Countreys called anciently *Æthiopia Sub Ægypto*, *Trogloditica*, and *Regio Cinnamomifera*. of these, the two last are by some reckoned but as parts of the first; though certainly the *Troglodites* were a different Nation from the *Æthiopians*. For past all doubt the *Troglodites* were originally an *Arabian* People, so called *quia τρώγας subeunt*, from their living in *Caves* and *Dens*, in which respect their part of this Countrey had the name of *Arabia Troglodidica*, in *Dioscorides*, and some others of ancient Writers. Of these it is affirmed by *Pomponius Mela*, that they were not the Masters of any wealth, and that their speech was rather a gnashing of the teeth, than any articulate and intelligible Pronunciation. *Nullarum opum Domini sunt* Troglodítæ, *strident magis quam loquuntur*. As for their houses, they were (saith he) no better than *Caves*, and their food than *Serpents*. With whom concurreth *Pliny* also for their dwelling in Caves, and consequently for the reason of the name, saying positively, *Troglodítæ spelúncas excavant*, Called for the same reason in the holy Scripture, 2 *Chron.* 12. 3. by the name of *Succhæi*, the word *Succoth* (whence that name derived) not only signifying in the *Hebrew*, Tents, or Tabernacles, but Caves and Dens; and so translated *Psal.* 10. *v.* 9. and *Job* 38. *v.* 40. As for that part hereof which was called *Regio Cinnamomifera*, taking up the southern parts in the time of *Ptolomy*, it took that name from the abundance of *Cinnamon*, which was then growing in it; now not a tree of it to be found in all this Countrey, as the *Portugals*, who have looked narrowly for it, have affirmed unto us. Shipped at *Mosylon*, a noted Emporie, placed by *Ptolomy* in the ninth degree of Northern Latitude; it was thence transported into *Egypt*, and other Countries; as is said by *Pliny*, *Portus Mosylitus quo* Cinnamomum *devehitur*: the Spice in some Authors being called *Mosulum*, by the name of the Town. ἄειρει δὲ τὸ λεγόμενον Μόσυλον, τὸ καὶ Μοσύλη πόλεως. Of *Cinnamon* the best is that which is called *Mosulon*, because brought from the City of that name in *Æthiopia*, saith *Simeon Sethi* in his Tract *de Facultatibus Ciborum*. As for this *Cinnamon* (I note this only by the way) it is the inner Bark of a Tree as big as an *Olive*, with Leaves like Bay-leaves: the drying of which maketh it roll together, and every three years is renewed, and stripped off again. Some think it came first from the *Sinæ* or the Countrey which the *Romans* called *Sinarum Regio*, the Moderns *China*; and that it was so called, *quasi Sinæ Amomum* the *Amomum* of the *Sinæ*; *Amomum* being the name of a sweet perfume growing in *Assyria* and *Armenia*. But then it should be written *Sinamomum*, and not *Cinnamomum*: yet to give the greater credit to the former opinion, they of *Ormus* call it *Bar-Chinæ*, or the wood of *China*. But of this enough.

To go on therefore unto *Æthiopia* it self; The people of it in old times were said to have been great *Astrologers*; the first ordainers also of sacred Ceremonies, and in both to be Tutors to the *Egyptians*. They were also noted to be very good *Archers*, and to draw the longest and strongest Bows of any Nation: the *Persian* Bow (though those the greatest of all *Asia*) being only three cubits long; but these of *Æthiopia* four. *Utuntur etiam Æthiopes quatuor cubitorum*

torum arcubus, as we read in *Strabo*; the like is said also by *Herodotus* and *Diodorus*. Their *Arrows* small, but strong, for the most part poysoned; *Æthiopium geminata venenis Vulnera*, as we find in *Claudian*; and for that inhumanity very much condemned. But not to spend our time too much upon these particulars, *Pliny* reciteth two strange things of this Countrey: 1 that the air and Ground are so parching hot, that the people not only dare not go out of dores without shoos, but that they roast their meat also by setting it in the Sun. 2 That there is a *Lake* whose waters are thrice a day, and thrice a night, exceeding salt and unpleasing; but at all other times most sweet and delicate to the Palate.

This Countrey being as big as *Germany*, *France*, and *Italy* laid together, is but meanly populous, the *distemperature* of the *Climate*, and the dry barrenness of the ground, not admitting a multitude. For this cause *Africk* is by *Strabo* compared to a *Leopards* skin, the distance of whose Spots sheweth the dispersedness of the Towns and habitations in those torrid Countreys. A countrey scarce in Wheat, but sufficiently plentiful in Rice, Barly, Beans, Pease, and the like; they have abundance of Sugars, Minerals of all sorts, and infinite herds of Oxen, Sheep, Goats. Finally, there is no Countrey under Heaven fitter for encrease of Plants, and Living Creatures, if industry were not deficient. But in regard of this defect, they are destitute of many necessary things, which otherwise the natural commodities of the Country would supply them with. For they have here great store of *Flax*, but make no *Cloath*; plenty of *Vines*, yet make no *Wine*, except it be to serve the Palaces of the King and the *Patriarch*; abundance of *Sugar-Canes*, and mines of *Iron*, but know not how to make use of either unto any advantage. Rivers and Brooks in many places, but will not take the pains to dig *Channels* or trenches, to drive their waters to the rest of the land which want them; those Rivers almost choaked with *Fish*, their Woods crammed with *Venison*, which they trouble not themselves to catch.

By this we may conjecture somewhat of the people also; Lazie and given vnto their ease, ill cloathed and not much better housed; extreamly inclined to *Barbarism*, destitute of all learning; not to be credited unless they swear by the life of their Emperours; they hate a *Smith* equally with the Devil: their colour is generally Olive-tawny, excepting only their King himself, who is always of a white complexion; a wonderful prerogative, if true. This blackness of their bodies, by the Poet attributed to the burning of the world by *Phaeton*.

Sanguine tum credunt in corpora summa vocato,
Æthiopum populos nigrum traxisse colorem.

Which may be *Englished* thus.

Their blood (it's thought) drawn from the outward part,
The *Æthiopians* grew so black and swart.

But the true cause hereof, whatsoever it be, may perhaps be looked upon hereafter, when we come to *America*.

The *Christian* Faith was first made known in this Countrey, by the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, who was baptized by *Philip* the *Evangelist*, and one of the *Seven*; more generally embraced by the pains and preaching of St. *Matthew* the Apostle hereof, but not totally propagated over all this Empire, till the reign of *Abraham*, *Anno* 470. who in his life entituled himself the Defender and Propagater of the *Religion* of CHRIST, and after his death was generally honoured as a *Saint*. Suppressed in part by the coming in of the *Abassines* and other *Arabians*, it was again revived and more universally received than in former times, in the reign of *David* King of the *Axumite Æthiopians*: who in a War against *Dunmus* King of the *Homerites* in *Arabia Felix*, solemnly vowed to the God of the *Christians* to become one of his Followers, if he got the victory: and so accordingly he did, sending his Ambassadours to the Emperour *Justinian*, for some Bishops and other learned men to instruct his people. The particulars of those Opinions wherewith they have since corrupted the purity of the true Religion, I find thus registred. 1 They use to *circumcise* their Children, both males and females; 2 They baptise the males 40, and the females 80 days after their *circumcision*; 3 After the receit of the Sacrament, they are not to spit till Sun-set; 4 They profess but *one Nature* and *one Will* in CHRIST: 5 They accept only the three first General Councils; 6 Their *Priests* live by the labour of their hands, for they allow them nothing, and permit them not to beg; 7 They *baptise* themselves every *Epiphany* day in *Lakes* and *Ponds*, because that day they suppose *Christ* to have been baptized by *John* in *Jordan*; 8 They eat not of those Beasts, which in the old Law are reckoned for *unclean*. 9 They keep the *Saturday* or *Jewish Sabbath*, equally solemn with the *Lords Day*; 10 They administer the *Eucharist* to Infants presently after Baptism 11 They teach, that the Reasonable soul of man is derived from their parents by *seminal propagation*; 12 That Infants *dying unbaptized*, are sanctified in the womb, by virtue of the *Eucharist* received by the Mother after her *Conception*. And finally, they shew a Book of eight Volumes, writ, as they say, by the Apostles at *Hierusalem* for that purpose, the Contents whereof they observe most solemnly. These are the most material points in which they differ from the Tendries of the *Catholique* Church. And there are other Points in which they differ only from the Church of *Rome*, as *viz.* 1 Administring in *both kinds*; 2 Without either *Elevation*, or *Reservation*; 3 Rejecting massie Images; and 4 *Extream Unction*; 5 Allowing the first marriages to their Priests and Bishops; and 6 In renouncing all relation to the Church of *Rome*; who to the business of these Churches is a very stranger, and so hath been from the very first foundation of them. For it appears by the Canons of the *Nicene* Council, extant in the *Arabick*, and translated into *Latine* by *Pisanus*, that the Patriarch (or *Abuna*, as they called him) of these *Abassine* Churches, was in those times subordinate to the *Alexandrian*, confirmed in that Supremacie by the Fathers, which were there assembled; and constantly ever since approved and practised by these Churches: in the Liturgies whereof, the name of the *Alexandrian* is remembred before their own. To this Patriach, by an ancient priviledge belongeth the seventh place in the *Sessions* of all *General Councils*; the Archbishop of *Seleucia* (or *Babylon*) only interposing betwixt him and the Patriarch of *Hierusalem*. Elected by the *Abassine* Monks of St. *Antonies* Order remaining in *Hierusalem*, and confirmed by the *Patriarch* of *Alexandria*, (of which *Order*, and of whose jurisdiction he must always be) he is sent into this Countrey to take his charge: where in some points of *Civil* nature, he hath equal priviledge with the Emperour himself; and in *Spiritual*, hath the sole power of excommunicating an obstinate sinner. All other *Ecclesiastical* Dignities, from the Bishoprick to the lowest Benefice, are conferred by the Emperour only.

The principal Mountains of it in the former times, had the names of 1 *Prinotus*, 2 *Isius*, 3 *Monodactylus*, 4 *Gaurus*, and 5 *Mons Satyrorum*, all of them in that part which was called *Troglodítica*: 6 *Garbale*. 7 *Elephas*, and 8 *Maste*, in the Isle of *Meroe*: the rest of the Countrey flat and level, or the hills not eminent. Rivers of most note, 1 *Astapus*, (now *Abanni*) arising out of a great Lake called *Coloe*, now the Lake of *Barcena*, 2 *Astaborus*, now

Tacasse;

Tacaſſie; both falling into the River *Nilus*. 3. *Nilus*, of which before when we were in *Egypt*; whoſe Spring unprofitably ſought for in the elder times, it is now ſaid to be out of the Lake *Zembre* in the other *Æthiopia*, eleven Degrees beyond the *Æquator*; whence paſſing through ſpacious *Deſarts*, large Lakes, and many great Kingdoms, he at laſt entreth into this. Here in ſome places ſtrughng amongſt broken Rocks, and leſs free paſſages, he falleth with ſuch a wonderful noiſe into the Vallies beneath, that a Colony planted by the *Perſians* near one of theſe *Cataracts*, (ſo they call thoſe huge falls of his) were ſo dulled and deafned with the noiſe, that they were fain to abandon their habitations. Nor doth it only dull and deafen the neighbouring people, but the very hills do ſeem to tremble at the noiſe it maketh. Of which thus the Poet,

Cuncta tremunt undis, & multo murmure montis,
Spumeus invictis albeſcit fluctibus amnis.

Which may be *Engliſhed* in theſe words;

The noiſe the Mountains ſhakes, who roar for ſpite
To ſee th' unvanquiſh'd Waves cloath'd all in white.

Of theſe *Cataracts* here are two moſt noted: the one called *Cataractes Major*, in the borders of this Countrey towards *Egypt*, but South of both the Cities of *Philæ*, and *Pſelcis*, *Æthiopian* Cities; the other called *Cataractes Minor*, not far from *Elephantis* a City of *Egypt*, neighbouring to *Syene* the laſt City of that Countrey towards this. So turbulent is this River amongſt the Hills. And yet as terrible as theſe Falls are ſuppoſed to be, one may divers times ſee the Countrey people in a little Boat not able to contain above two perſons, to venture down them without fear; appearing after they have been long toſſed in the water, a great diſtance off, as if they had been ſhot out of an *Engine*. Nor is he of ſuch quiet paſſage in the open Countreys, but that the Inhabitants of this Kingdom are fain to cut many Ditches, Sluces, and By-channels to receive his waters, which if not curbed and leſſened by ſuch ways as theſe, might by ſome ſudden overflowing much endanger *Egypt*: in reſpect whereof the *Sultans* of *Egypt* have paid for a long time to the *Abaſſine* Emperours, an annual tribute. Which when the *Great Turk*, ſuppoſing it a needleſs charge, had once denyed: this people, by the command of their Emperour, did open their Sluces, and brake down the Dams: whereby the water fell ſo violently and ſo faſt into *Egypt*, that the *Turk* was not only glad to continue tribute, but to give them great ſums of money to make up their works. But others ſay, that this acknowledgment was paid by the *Egyptian* Kings, not ſo much for keeping up the waters from drowning *Egypt*, as for fear the *Abaſſine* Emperours ſhould divert the Stream, and ſo deprive that Countrey of the benefit of it. But I incline rather to the former. Here are alſo ſaid to be ſome *Lakes* of that poyſonous nature, that whoſoever drinketh of them, doth either immediately fall mad, or elſe is troubled for long time with continual *drowſineſs*. Of which thus *Ovid*:

Æthiopeſque Lacus; quos ſiquis faucibus hauſit,
Aut furit, aut patitur mirum gravitate ſoporem.

Which may be paraphraſed in theſe words:

Who doth not know the Æthiopian *Lake?*
Of which whoever drinks, his thirſt to ſlake,
Either grows mad, *or doth his ſoul oppreſs*
With an unheard of drowſineſs.

To look upon the State as it ſtood in the former times, we find in it beſides the *Lakes* and Rivers before mentioned, three capacious Bays; that is to ſay, *Sinus Adulicus*, 2 *Sinus Avalites*, and 3 *Sinus Barbaricus*; the two laſt neighboured by the now Countrys of *Adel* and *Melinde*. Havens of note and Rodes for Shipping, there were five in all, *viz.* 1 *Bathus*, or the deep Haven; 2 *Dioſcorum Portus*, or the Haven of *Caſtor* and *Pollux*; 3 *Theon Soterum*, or the Haven of the *Saviour-Gods*; 4 *Portus Evangeliorum*, *Goſpel-Port*, or the Port of Good News; and 5 *Serapionis*, the Port of *Serapion*, with a Promontory of the ſame near adjoyning to it. For other Promontories, which in ſo long a tract of Sea muſt needs be many; the Principal were, 1 *Baſium*, 2 *Myemium*, 3 *Dimetris* 4 *Aſpis*, 5 *Ara Amoris*, 6 *Colobon*, 7 the Promontory of *Saturn*, 8 *Moſylon*, with a noted Empory of the ſame name; 9 *Aromata*, near another well frequented *Empory* of the ſame name alſo; and 10 that of *Noticornu*. Then for the Towns of greateſt Trading, beſides thoſe laſt mentioned, we have, 1 *Avalites*, 2 *Malao*, 3 *Mundi*, 4 *Cube*, and 5 *Acane*, in the Bay of *Avalites*; 6 *Opone*, in the Bay of *Barbaria*, 7 *Eſſina*, on the South of the *Æquinoctial*. Then for their Cities, we have amongſt many others, the names of 1 *Epitheria*, by *Ptolomy* called *Ptolemais Ferarum*, 2 *Adulis*, and 3 *Avalites*, giving names unto their ſeveral Bays; 4 *Rapta*, the *Metropolis* of that part of this Countrey which was called *Barbaria*, lying along the ſhores of the *Sinus Barbaricus*; which as it taketh name from the River *Raptus*, upon which it is ſituate; ſo they do both agree in communicating it to the Promontory called *Raptum*; 5 *Meroe*, the chief City of the Iſle ſo called; 6 *Sabath* in the Bay of *Adulis*, which poſſibly might be ſome Colony of the *Sabæans*, in *Arabia Felix*; 7 *Coloe*, by *Pliny* called *Tolen*, not far from the great *Lake* ſo named 8 *Cambuſis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Cambyſi Æravium*, from ſome treaſures laid up here by *Cambyſes* the *Perſian*, in his invaſion of this Countrey. 9 *Auxumi*, the chief City of the *Auxumites*, a moſt potent people of theſe parts, and the Seat Royal of the old *Æthiopian* Kings, 10 *Napata*, as *Ptolomy*; but by moſt others called *Tanape*: of old the reſidence of the *Æthiopian* Emperours, ſacked and ruined by *Petronius*, Preſident of *Egypt*. For when *Candace* (the Predeceſſor, I believe, of her whoſe *Eunuch* was baptized by *Philip*) had ranſacked and waſted *Egypt* with Fire and Sword; *Petronius* Lieutenant to *Auguſtus*, drave them home, harried the whole Countrey, put this City to the ſpoyl; and to prevent the like inroads, fortified the Frontiers of his *Province*. 11 *Philæ*, upon the borders of *Egypt*, Garriſoned by the *Romans* till the time of *Dioclefian*, and by him abandoned. Of ſome of theſe, and others not here mentioned, we may have oppertunity to ſpeak more hereafter, in the ſurvey of ſome of theſe particular Provinces, into which this Countrey ſtands divided at this preſent time.

And for the Provinces comprehended at this time within the bounds and limits of this *Æthiopia*, as before laid down, they are ſaid to make up 70 Kingdoms; moſt of them ſubject to the *Abaſſine* Emperour. The principal of which are, 1 *Guagere*, 2 *Tigremaon*, 3 *Angote*, 4 *Amma*, 5 *Damut*, 6 *Goijami*, 7 *Bagamedrum*, 8 *Barnagaſſum*, 9 *Adel*, 10 *Adea*, 11 *Danſali*, 12 *Dobas*, 13 *Fatigar*, 14 *Xoa*, 15 *Barus*. Concerning which I muſt premiſe, that I find the Relations of them to be very imperfect, many times diſagreeing, ſometimes falſe: So that I muſt profeſs my ſelf to be leſs ſatisfied in the diſcription of this Countrey, than in any of the reſt which have gone before. Such as it is, I here preſent it to the Reader.

1 GUAGERE.

GUAGERE containeth only the Iſland of *Meroe*, an Iſland of much note and fame amongſt the Ancients; made by the confluences of *Nilus* and *Aſtaborus*, the two chief Rivers of this Countrey. The length hereof 350 miles, the bredth 125. abundantly plentiful of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, Ivory, Precious Stones, and an excellent kind of *Mineral* Salt. Well ſtored with moſt ſorts of Beaſts, both tame and wild, and of the laſt ſort with Lyons, Leopards, *Rhinocerots*, Elephants, and Dragons.

The people are of the ſame nature and complexion with the reſt; *Mahometans* by Religion, and the profeſſed Enemies of the *Abaſſine* Emperour againſt whom they do no not only defend themſelves, by the advantages and benefit of their ſituation; but confederating with the *Turks* and *Arabians*, fall many times with great Forces into his Dominions. It is ſaid by *Pliny* of the Inhabitants of this Iſland, that twice a year, *viz.* when the Sun is in the 16 degree of *Taurus*, and the 14 of *Leo*, they have the Sun ſo perpendicular above their heads, that he caſts no ſhadow. More anciently memorable for their long lives, than their great exploits, attaining ordinarily to 120 years of Age; and therefore called *Macrobii* by the old *Greek* writers The women ſaid to be of ſuch great breſts in the former times, that they did ſuckle their children over their ſhouldiers (as ſome women are now ſaid to do near the *Cape of Good Hope*:) the Dug being bigger than the child. Of which thus *Juvenal*,

In Meroe, *craſſo majorem Infante mamillam.*

In *Meroe* the Mothers Pap
Is bigger than the child in lap.

The Principal Cities hereof. 1 *Meroe*, which gave that name unto the Iſland, but took the ſame from *Meroe*, a ſiſter of *Cambyſes* King of *Perſia*; or as *Euſebius* ſaith, from *Merida*, the mother of *Chenephris*, a King of *Egypt*. *Joſephus* telleth us, that in former times it had been called by the name of *Saba*; on authority of whoſe miſtake it hath been made the *Regal* City of that Queen of *Sheba* (the Queen of *Egypt*, and *Æthiopia*, as *Joſeph* calleth her) who came to *Solomon*. An opinion ſo received amongſt theſe Iſlanders, that the name of *Meroe* being laid by, they have reſtored the name of *Saba* to this City, as of greater eminence. The City ſaid by ſome to contain about 5000 houſes, great and ſumptuous; the ſtreets thereof to be large and ſpacious, with Galleries on each ſide before the doors of their houſes, where men walk ſafe from all extremities of heat, or rain. Beautified with four chief Gates, (beſides others of inferiour note) built of *Alabaſter* and *Jaſper*, wrought with *Antick* works: the doors belonging to thoſe Gates of *Cedar*, curiouſly wrought; the ways which lead unto them, for the ſpace of two leagues, beſet with Palms, Orange trees, Cedars, Cypreſſes, and others no leſs uſeful both for ſhade and fruit. In the place where the four ſtreets going from theſe Gates, do croſs each other, a goodly Arch erected upon ſtately Pillars, fairly wrought and gilded, with the Statue of St. *Mathew* made of braſs, but gilded, on the top thereof. Such it is ſaid to be by ſome. Others think there is no ſuch City; it may be not ſo beautiful, as ſome have made it. The other Towns of note and name in it, in former times, 2 *Sacolche*. 3 *Darorum Vicus*. 4 *Eſer*, of which we have little but the names.

This Iſland was once a peculiar Kingdom; he being choſen for their King, who excelled the reſt in ſtrength, perſon, or in ſtock of Cattel; but thoſe Kings ſo ſubject to their *Prieſts*, that by a Meſſenger, or *Herald*, they were ſentenced by them unto death, and others advanced unto the Throne. And thus it ſtood till one of the more provident Kings, forcing the Temple with his Armed Souldiers, ſlew all theſe *Prieſts*; and freed himſelf and his ſucceſſors from ſo great a *ſlavery*. Afterwards made a Province of the Kingdom of *Æthiopia*; honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of thoſe Kings, and memorable in thoſe times for the *Table* of the *Sun*: which was a place near the City of *Meroe*, always furniſhed with variety of roaſted meats, ſet there by night at the charge and command of the King (much taken as it ſeemeth with this coſtly vanity) and eaten in the day time by all that would; called therefore the Table of the Sun, becauſe aſcribed unto his bounty by the ignorant people. In the declining of this Kingdom, occaſioned by the inundation of the *Saracens* and other *Arabians*, this Iſland was ſeized on by that people, and hath been ever ſince kept by them; together with the reſt of the Countrey, lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, in which are contained, as ſome write, the Kingdoms of *Damote*, *Sua*, and *Faſculum*, anciently belonging to this Empire, now diſmembred from it: not much obſervable, but for being a thorow-fare to great troups of *Pilgrims*, which every *Lent* paſs by them out of the *Abaſſine* Dominions, to the *Sepulcre* and other like places in and near *Jeruſalem*.

2. TIGREMAON.

TIGREMAON, hath on the North, *Guagere* and the River *Marabo*, by which laſt parted from *Barnagaſſo*; on the South, the Realm of of *Angote*; on the Weſt, *Nilus*. On the Eaſt it is ſaid to extend to the *Red-Sea*; but the Sea-parts thereof poſſeſſed by the *Turks*, and the adjoyning Coaſt by the *Moors* and *Arabians*; the In-land parts promiſcuouſly inhabited, eſpecially more towards the Sea, by *Chriſtians* and *Ethnicks*. Divided into many inferiour Regions, the principal whereof, 1 *Sabian*, 2 *Torrates*, 3 *Balgada*, ſo called perhaps from the chief Towns of them, and 4 *Tigrai*, the moſt large and ample of all theſe ſubordinate Provinces; as containing in it 17 great Tracts under ſo many Lieutenants, which rule all affairs both of Peace and War. The people black of colour, deformed of ſhape, in condition miſerable, of conditions wicked. Some Rivers they have, but dried up in Summer; yet ſo, that with a little digging they find water in them. Their chief City *Caxumo*, or *Caſſumo*, ſuppoſed to be the ſame which *Ptolomy* calleth *Auxume*; *Stephanus*, *Axomites*; *Procopius*, *Auxomide*: by all of them eſteemed the *Metropolitan* City of *Ethiopia*, and the Seat Royal of their Kings. In witneſs whereof are many ancient buildings yet remaining, ſome Pillars which reſemble the *Egyptian Obeliſks*, admirable for their height and workmanſhip: 60 foot high and full of *Characters*, or Letters engraven on them, which now none can read. The *Æthiopian Auxumites*, the moſt potent Nation of this Countrey, had their name from hence; more probably conceived to be the regal Seat of *Candace*, (mentioned in the *Acts*) than any other in the Kingdom; and ſtill affirmed to be honoured with the Court of their Emperours. Others I know have fixed his Court in *Beimalechi*, but I know not in what part to find it: ſome in a Royal Palace near the lake of *Zembre*, built in the year 1570. by ſome *European Architects* ſent hither by *Francis* Duke of *Florence*: and many will allow him no fixed Seat at all, but tell us that he moveth with his Tents in a *Royal Progreſs* from one place to a nother; which *wandring Court*, or *moving City*, is ſaid to be no leſs than ten miles in compaſs, when the

Pavilions

Pavilions which belong to it, are disposed of into ranck and order.

This Kingdom is governd by a Prince of its own, but one who is an *Homager* and tributary to the *Abassine* Emperour: to whom he payeth yearly 200 horses of the best *Arabian* breed, infinite quantities of Silks, great store of *Cotton-wool*, and abundance of Gold; but the determinate proportion I have no where met with.

3 ANGOTE.

ANGOTE is bounded on the North, with *Tigremaon*, on the West, with *Nilus*; on the South, with the Kingdom of *Amara*; on the East, with *Dancaly*, and *Xoa*. Indifferently compounded of Hills and Vallies, both extreamly fertile, productive of the choicest fruits, and great herds of Cattel. The people eat but once in 24 hours, and for the most part make that meal in the night; their diet raw Venison, or smoked Beef: the money, most in use amongst them, Salt, Pepper, and Iron. Which custom of using Salt, Pepper, and the like, instead, of money, was in former times amongst most people the only bartery, or way of exchange. So in *Homer*, *Glaucus* golden Armour was valued at an Hundred Kine, and *Diomedes* Armour at ten only. Afterward in Justice *Commutative*, it was deemed convenient to have some common Judge, or valuation, of the equality or inequality of goods: the invention of which, the Jews attributed to *Cain*; the *Grecians* to *Hermodice* the wife of *Midas*; the *Romans* to *Janus*. It is called *Nummus*, or νόμισμα from νόμος, because it was ordained by Law: *Pecunia*, either because in elder times the chief of their wealth consisted in Cattel, as now among the *Irish*; or from a *Cow* (*Pecus*) which was stamped on it: and *Moneta*, *a monendo*, as *Suidas* saith, because when the *Romans* stood in need of money, *Juno monebat*, *Juno* admonished them that they should use Justice, and there should be no want of money. To this Goddess, *Dea Pecunia*, the *Romans* erected a Temple, and worshipped it in the figure of a Woman holding a pair of Scales in one hand, and *Cornucopia* in the other: by the *Poet* called *Regina Pecunia*, and not unfitly, the greatness of her power considered.

But to return again to *Angote*, I find not much spoken of the Countrey in the way of story; nor meet I with the names of any of their Towns, or Cities; unless that 1 *Angote* it self, as also 2 *Abugana*, 3 *Giannamora*, two of the principal Provinces of it, may possibly be so called from their principal Towns, as perhaps they are.

4 AMARA.

AMARA hath on the North, *Angote*; on the South, *Damut*; on the West, it stretcheth towards the *Nile*, and on the East, bounded with the Realm of *Xoa*. The Countrey very plain and champaign, little swelled with Hills, sufficiently fruitful, and well stored with all sorts of Cattel. The chief City of it called *Amara*, by the name of the Province, situate in the midst of the Empire, and though not much distant from the *Æquator*, if not plainly under it, yet blessed with such a temperate air, such a fruitful soil, such ravishing pleasures of all sorts, that some have taken (but mistaken) it for the place of *Paradise*: So strangely Heaven, Earth, Nature, and humane industry, have joyned their helps together to enrich and beautifie it.

But that which is the greatest Ornament of this Province, and indeed of the whole Empire of *Æthiopia*, is the Mountain *Amara*, situate in a large and delightful plain: the bottom of the Hill in circuit 90 Miles, and a days journey high; the Rock so smooth and even (but lesser and lesser towards the top) that no wall can be more evenly polished: the way up to it is cut out within the Rock, through which are divers holes forced to let in the light; so easie of ascent, that one may ride up with great pleasure, and in the midst of the Ascent a spacious Hall, as it were to rest in: the top it self is a large plain, 20 leagues in circuit, compassed with an high wall, to the end that neither man nor beast fall down upon any chance; beautifyed towards the South with a rising Hill, out of which issueth a sweet spring, which watering the several Palaces and Gardens of it, uniteth it self into a Lake for the use of Cattel: the plain enriched with all sorts, both of fruit and grain; adorned with two magnificent *Monasteries*, in each of which are found 1500 Knights of the Order of St. *Anthony*, a Religious *Militia*; and honoured with 34 Palaces, in which the younger sons of the Emperour are continually enclosed, to avoid sedition. They enjoy there whatsoever is fit for delight, or *Princely education*; and from hence some one of them, who is most hopeful, or best liked, is again brought out, if the Emperour die Son-less, to be made Successor. This Mountain hath but one ascent up, as before was said, which is impregnably fortified; and was destinate to this use, *Anno* 460. or thereabouts, by the Emperour *Abraham Philip*, advised hereunto as he gave out, by an heavenly vision. In one of these Palaces is a famous *Library*, wherein are said to be many Books, which with us are either in part or totally lost; as the Oracles of *Enoch*, with the mysteries which escaped the flood, being by him engraven on Pillars; the whole works of *Livi*, and others. Which being heretofore translated by the *Saracens* into the *Arabick* Tongue (when having plundred all the most famous *Libraries* of the East and West, they burnt the Originals, out of a Plot to make that Language as renowned and as generally studied, as the *Greek* or *Latine*) are said by some good fortune to be here preserved.

5 DAMUT.

DAMUT hath on the North, *Amara*; on the West *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Goiamy*; and on the East, the great Lake of *Barcena*, and some part of *Zanguebar*, one of the Provinces of *Æthiopia Exterior*. The Countrey plentifully furnished with Gold, Ginger, Grapes, Fruits and living Creatures of all sorts. For none more famed than for their *Slaves*, sold in great numbers into *Arabia*, *Egypt*, *Persia*, *India*; and much esteemed by them who buy them, for their abilities in War, dexterity in business, but specially for their fidelity in all things which they undertake. For this cause placed in Offices of great trust and power, by many of the *Eastern* Princes: who using a tyrannical form of government, and not daring to trust the Sword into the hands of their Subjects, or to advance them unto places of Court, or Council; do for the most part arm these *Slaves*, and trust them also with the conduct of their chief affairs. A trust, in which they never falsified, or failed in a true discharge, but when presumeing on their power, and those advantages which so great a trust and power had presented to them; they got into their hands the Kingdom of *Bengala*; and kept it many years in a succession of the *Abassine Slaves*, wherewith they still made up their numbers, till outed not long since by the *Great Mongul*.

The Oxen of this Country are said to be near as great as Elephants, their Horns so large that they serve as *Tankards* to carry, and as *Barrels* to keep either wine or water. Here is also said to be a kind of *Unicorn*, very fierce and wild, fashioned like an Horse, but no bigger than an Ass; but we must think these *Unicorns* to be but *Rhinocerots*, or else we shall very much mistake the truth of the matter. And for the

the people (to go them both over once again) they are for the most part *Gentiles*; some *Christians* intermixt amongst them, who have sundry Monasteries.

To this Kingdom belongeth the principality of *Couche*, said to have more Gold in it than all *Peru*; a *Mountain all of Gold*, if the *Friers* say true. The people *Gentiles*, but the prince not long since gained to the Christian *Faith*; into which he was baptized by the *Abbot* or chief Governour of the *Monasteries* on the hill *Amara*: *Gradeus* the Emperour being his *Godfather*, by whom named *Andrew*. And here they have an hill of great height, and very difficult assent; from the top whereof they use to cast headlong such of the Nobility, as by the emperours sentence are condemned to dye. What Towns they have either in that Kingdom or their Principallity, I am not able to resolve, unless, 1 *Damut*, and 2 *Couche* may be two, and the two most eminent, as giving name to those Estates.

6 GOIAMY.

GOIAMY hath on the North, *Damut*; on the West, *Bagamedrum*; on the South and East, some Provinces of the other *Æthiopia*. The Countrey in the North parts full of *Desarts* and Rocky Mountains, in the residue plentifully furnished with all things necessary. Great store of Gold they find, but *drosse*; the people not knowing how to refine and purifie it; or loath here (as in other places of this Empire) to take pains that way; for fear of drawing the *Turks* and *Arabians*, to pertake of the Booty.

It containeth in it many Rivers, or rather *Torrents*, which come tumbling down the hills with a mighty violence, and a terrible fall, making a noise, not much inferiour to a clap of Thunder: and amongst other *Lakes* two of special note, which for their greatness seem to be Seas; in which as some report, *Mermaids* and *Tritons*, or Men-fishes use to shew themselves; and out of which it is thought by others, that the Fountains of *Nilus* do arise; and both true alike. But past all doubt the *Abassines* themselves are of this opinion; and therefore in the stile of *Negaz*, (so they call their Emperour) he is termed King of *Goiamy*, with this addition, *In which are found the Fountains of Nilus*. Deceived alike in their opinion touching this particular, the Springs, or Fountains of that River being further South: though possibly having lost himself in these vast *Lakes*, and issuing hence into a more contracted Channel, he may be said to have a second birth from hence, though not the first. And these I take to be the *Lakes* which were discovered by the *Romans* in the time of *Nero*. Who following the design of some other great *Potentates*, *Sesostris*, *Cambyses*, *Alexander*, and *Philadelphus*, in discovering the true *Original* of this famous River; imployed the *Centurions* in that service; who aided in it by the then King of the *Æthiopians*, are said to have come at last unto certain great *Marishes* (most probably the lower and sedgy parts of these *Lakes* now mentioned) of whose extent the inhabitants themselves were ignorant, not possible to be discovered any further, the Weeds having so overgrown the water, that there was no further passage to be made by Boat, and less by wading.

Betwixt this Country and *Damut*, which we last passed thorow, is said to be a Province of *Amazons* warlike and fierce, and very expert at the Bow; whose Queen knoweth no man, and by the rest honoured as a Goddess. These, they say, were first instituted by the Queen of *Saba*; as true, as that which some have added of the *Phœnix* visible in this Countrey, of *Griffons*, and of *Fowls* so big, that they make a shadow like a Cloud. Which strange reports I have here added, to supply the defect of Towns and cities, of which I meet not with so much as the naked names, as undiscovered places in our *Maps* and *Charts*, are filled up with *Monsters*.

7 BAGAMEDRUM.

BAGAMEDRUM, or *SAGAMEDRUM*, (for I find both names) lieth on the West of *Goiamy*, betwixt the Northern parts thereof, and the River *Nilus*: and keeping all along the course of that River, as far as *Guagere*, or *Meroe*, encountreth with the Southern point of *Barnagasso*; Some do extend it also beyond that Island, but making the whole length thereof but 600 miles, do confute themselves. The greatest Province of this Empire it may probably be, *Cæteris hujus Æthiopiæ amplissimum*, as they say it is; but if extended the whole length of it, it must be 1500 miles, not 600 only.

The Countrey plentiful in Mines of the purest *Silver*, which they cannot draw thence but by fire, which makes it run like long rods, or ropes of Metal. And yet as large and as wealthy as they say it is, I am more to seek for Towns and rich Cities in it, than in the *Desarts* of *Lybia*, or the sands of *Arabia*. Merchants and Travellers for the most part go no further than the Sea-coasts of the Countrey, of which they give us more exact and full informations, knowing but little of the In-lands; and of the Natives, such as have travelled abroad into other Kingdoms, rude and ignorant men, know little more of their own Empire than the place they lived in. Or probably their best Cities not containing above 2000 houses, few of them so many, and those patched up of thatch, dirt and hurdles, (unless some of the Nobility, or wealthier Merchants are provided better) they may have no greater reason to speak much of them; or to acquaint us with the names of such sorry places, as are indeed not worth the naming. Which I conceive to be the true condition of most, or all the Inland Towns in this large Estate.

8 BARNAGASSO.

BARNAGNES, or *BARNAGASSUM*, hath on the West *Guagere*, or the Isle of *Meroe*; on the Southwest as some say a point of *Bagamedrum*; on the South, *Dangali* and *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*; on the North it stretcheth towards *Egypt*; the Kingdoms of *Jasculum* and *Sua*, possessed by the *Mahometans*, being interposed.

The Countrey very fertile, full of Towns and Villages, and exceedingly well stored with pleasant Rivulets, besides the neighbourhood of the *Red-Sea* on the one side, *Nile* and *Abanhi* on the other. Remarkable for a *Mountain* in the Western part of it, which being spacious in the begining groweth streight by little and little, and then enlargeth it self again to a League in circuit. On the top thereof a *Royal Palace*, a Church, a Monastery, and two very large Cisterns, with a piece of ground able to entertain and keep 500 men. To be ascended one way only, and that but to a certain mark; to which being come they are drawn up with Cords and Baskets, to the top of all; not to be took by force, by reason of the impossibility of ascent; not by long siege, or any extremity of Famine, in regard it yields provision enough to maintain it self. Accounted therefore the chief Hold of all this Province against *Turks* and *Moors*.

It containeth besides *Barnagasso* it self, the two Provinces of *Canfila*, and *Dafile*; though rather subject to the Governour, or Vice-Roy of it, than parts and members of the same. Towns of most moment in the whole, 1 *Beroa*, or *Barua*, conceived by some to be the *Colony* of *Ptolomy*, the residence of the *Vice-Roy*, situate on a

retiring

pleasant and fishful River. 2 *Zameta*, honoured sometimes also with the *Vice-Roys* presence; but rather as a retiring place in times of leisure, than a Town of strength. 3 *Suachen*, situate in an Island of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, one of the richest Cities of the Eastern parts, and beautified with a goodly and capacious Haven, secured by Nature from all storms, of smooth Tides, sure Anchorage, and able to receive 300 great Ships of Burden. Situate in a little Island, the whole circumference whereof it taketh up; insomuch that Vessels of all sorts, both within the Haven and without, do usually unlade themselves at the doors of the Merchants, to which the Ship-beaks serve for bridges. A wealthy and well-traded Town, both by Sea and Land, to which from the more In-land parts of the *Abassine* Empire, the Mountains open a safe passage for the carriage and re-carriage of their Commodities. Taken by the *Turks* long since, with all the rest of the Countrey lying betwixt it and *Egypt*, and made the seat of a *Turkish Beglerbeg*, or *Bassa*; whom in imitation of the *Romans*, they call the *Beglerbeg* of *Abassia*; as if by the possession of this small part of that Empire, they would entitle the *Grand Seignior* unto all the rest. The Town conceived by some, to be that which *Ptolomy* calleth *Ostium Sebasticum*, or rather *Sebaiticum*, as called by *Strabo*. Others will have it to be the *Ptolomais Ferarum*, or the *Epitheras*, as *Pliny* calleth it, of the Ancient Writers. And some again will have it to be the *Succha* of *Pliny*, by whom reckoned among the Cities of the *Troglodites* (who are called *Succhæi* in the Scriptures, as before was noted) in whose part of the Countrey it is seated; and to which name it hath some resemblance. 4 *Bisam*, not far from *Erocco*, remarkable for a Monastery situate on the top of an high Rock, environed with dreadful Precipices upon every side; in which live 3000 Monks, eating by three and three together, in a common *Refectory*: this being the chief of six others in this Province of *Barnagassa*, the furthest not above 30 miles distant. For maintenance of whom, and a great number of poor Children which they daily feed, besides the tithes of all the Mountain in which it standeth (fruitful and rich, and at least 30 miles in compass) they have many good Farms at the foot of the said Mountain, and an hundred small Villages appertaining to them, out of which they raise yearly great provision of Corn, and above 2000 head of *Cattel*; their Revenues out of *Tigremaon* being reckoned in. A Revenue able to maintain them and their Hospitality, in regard their *Novices*, or young *Monks* are sent abroad to earn their living, or to manure their Lands, and attend the Husbandry of the House: the Elder only being found at the charge of the Monastery, though all alike bound to the performance of Religious Offices. 5 *Erocco*, another noted Port on the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*, to which a passage openeth through the *Streights* of the Mountains, as it doth to *Suachen*, conceived to be the *Adulis* of *Ptolomy*, the *Aduliton* of *Pliny*, now in possession of the *Turks*, or at their command. 6 *Santar*, 7 *Giabel*, 8 *Laccari*, and 9 *Abarach*; these four last in the Province of *Dafila*.

This Country at the present, and for long time past, is subject both to the Great *Neguz*, or the *Prestigian* of *Æthiopia*, and the *Grand Siguior* of the *Turks*; naturally subject to the one, and *tributary* to the other. Governed by a King of their own, whom they call *Barnagassus*, by the name of his Province, a Vassal and an *Homager* to the *Æthiopian*; to whom he payeth the yearly Tribute of 150 of the best breed of Horses, besides some quantities of Silk, and some other Commodities: but so ill-neighboured by the *Turks*, that he is fain to pay also to the *Beglerbeg* or *Bassa* resident at *Suachen*, 1000 ounces of Gold yearly for a Composition. For the *Turks* having by the Conquest of *Egypt* made themselves Masters of those Countries towards *Æthiopia*, which formerly were allied to, or confederate with the *Mamuluck* Sultans; within short time (*viz. An.* 1558.) possessed themselves also of the Town of *Suachen* and the parts adjoyning; made it the residence of one of their *Beglerbegs* or *Bassa*'s, and gave him the title of *Beglerbeg* of *Abassia*, as before was said: Forgot by the industrious Collector of the *Turkish History*, in his enumeration of the *Beglerbegs* or *Bassa*'s of *Africk*. To this they added not long after all the rest of the Sea-Coasts, and the Port of *Erocco*; and not content therewith, after some short breathing made a further inrode; in which they did so waste the Country, that in the end they compelled the *Barnagassian* (not being aided by the *Neguz*) to this *composition*.

9. DANGALI, and 10. DOBAS.

SOuth and South-East of *Barnagasso*, lie the two Kingdoms of *DANGALI* and *DOBAS*; that of *Dangali* bordering on the *Red-Sea*, the other more within the Land: both of them held by the *Mahometans*, or *Arabian Moors*, both in continual enmity with the *Abassine* Emperours, and both of like nature, in regard of the soil and people.

DANGALI hath on the North, *Barnagasso*; on the South, some part of the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the East, the *Red-Sea*, or *Gulf* of *Arabia*; on the West, *Dobas* before-mentioned. It taketh up some part of the *Arabick* Bay, within the Streights of *Babel-Mandel*; and without those Streits, the greatest part of that spacious Bay, which anciently was called *Sinus Avaliticus*, as far as to the Promontory then called *Mosylon*, (neighboured by a noted *Empory* of the same name) now the Cape of *Docono*; near unto which the Sea makes a little Gulf, and suddenly streitneth it self again; so as the Channel cannot be above ten or twelve Leagues broad. And in this Channel are five or six Islands, which hinder the passage; so as Sailers must have good experience to avoid the Rocks which lie near those Illands.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Bebul* or *Babel*, which gives name to the Streits of *Babel-Mandel*, a narrow *Frith*, opening out of the Bay of *Arabia* into the *Æthiopian* or *Indian* Ocean. 2 *Vella*, a well-frequented Port, conceived to be the same which *Strabo* calleth *Antiphila*; not found by that name in *Ptolomy*. 3 *Zagnani*, and 4 *Zama*, in a Province of this Kingdom called *Lacca*. 5 *Docono*, near the Cape so called, and therefore probably the *Mosylon* of the ancient Writers. 6 *Dandali*, not far from the Sea-side, which gives name to the Kingdom. Nothing else memorable of this Kingdom, but that there are in it two great *Lakes*, wherein live *Crocodiles*; as in *Nilus*.

On the South-west of *Dangali* lieth the Realm of *DOBAS*, extended on the West to the borders of *Angote*. The Country large, containing twelve, or as some say, 24 several *Prefectures*: Of so good Pasturage, that the Kine hereof are of greater size than in other places, and those for number not easily matched in all this Empire. The people such professed Enemies of the *Christian* Faith, that they suffer not any man to marry, till he hath killed 12 *Christians*. Some reckon them for *Tributaries* to the *Prete*, or *Negruz*; but it is onely when they list: so far from being *Contributioners* towards the support of his Estate, that they take from him what they can. The chief of their Towns, 1 *Dobas*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom. 2 *Bally*, upon the same River on which *Dobas* standeth, but more near the head.

11. ADEL.

ADEL is bounded on the North, with some parts of *Dangali*, and the *Red-Sea*; on the South, with *Adea*; on the East, with the *Red-Sea*, and the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; on the West, with *Fatigar*: extended on the Sea-Coast from the Cape of *Docono*, to the Cape of *Guardafu*, conceived most probably to be the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, a noted Promontory in his time.

The Country plentiful of Flesh, Honey, Wax, Corn, Gold, and Ivory; great flocks of Sheep, and many of those Sheep of such burdensome Fleeces, that their tails weigh 25 pounds: some Kine they have, which have horns like a Stag: others but one horn only, and that in the forehead, about a foot and an half long, but bending backwards. The people inhabiting on the Sea-Coasts are of *Arabian* Parentage, and of the *Mahometan* Religion: Those towards the Inland Countries, of the old *Æthiopick* Race, and wholly *Gentiles*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1 *Zeila*, a noted Port-Town, situate in or near the place where *Ptolomy* placeth *Avalites*: stored with variety of Merchandise, and yielding some representation of Antiquity in the building thereof, being Lime and Stone; materials not much used amongst them in these latter times. Of great both beauty and esteem, till the year 1516. when sacked and burnt by the *Portugals*; before that time the most noted Empory of all *Æthiopia* for the *Indian* Trade. 2 *Barbora*, seated on the same Sea-Coast, well frequented by Merchants, and possibly may be the *Mundi* or *Malao* of *Ptolomy*; neighboured by a lofty Promontory, which they call *Mount Fellex*. 3 *Mette*, another of the Sea-Towns near the Cape of *Guardafu*, supposed to be the *Acane* of the Ancient Writers. 4 *Assam*, 5 *Selir*, and 6 *Bidar*, on the Sea-Coasts also. 7 *Arar*, the principal of the Kingdom, more within the Land, and about 38 Leagues from *Zeila*.

This Country, formerly a Member of the *Æthiopian* Empire, is of late grown to so great strength and reputation, that the Kings hereof have freed themselves from all signs of subjection to that Crown, and think themselves the mightier Princes of the two. Advanced to this repute and power by *Gradogma*, or *Gradameth*, who reigned here in the year 1540. by whom *Claudius* the *Negus* was so overlaid, and his Country so destroyed by continual Incursions, that he was forced to abandon his Frontiers, retire himself into the heart of his Estates, and crave Aid of the *Portugals*. And though by their assistance, and the help of their shot, he was twice victorious; yet in the third battel he was vanquished, and in the fourth, *Anno* 1559. slain upon the place. This King accounted for a *Saint* by the *Moors* and *Saracens*, in regard of his continual Wars against the *Christians*, did so establish the Affairs of his little Kingdom, and left it so well setled unto his Successors, that the *Abassine* Emperour hath ever since left it out of his *Titles*; though many other of those small Kingdoms are reckoned in the *Imperial Stile*, in which he hath as little power as he hath in this. It is said also, That in the battel wherein *Claudius* was slain, and his Army routed, consisting of 60000 Foot, 5000 Horse of his own Subjects, besides the *Portugals*, the King of *Adel* got into his possession the greatest mass of Coin and Treasure that was ever seen. A Victory obtained as well by Policy as force: the *Abassines* being seldom fought with, or their Countrey wasted and depopulated by the Kings of *Adel*, till by the strict observance of their *Lenten* Fast, they were grown so weak, that they were not able to discharge their domestick businesses, and therefore most unable to resist a prevailing Enemy.

12. ADEA.

ADEA, or ABEX, as some call it, hath on the North, the Kingdom of *Adel*; on the South and West, some parts of the *Abassine* Empire; on the East, the Sea. Extended from the Cape of *Guardafu*, where it joyneth with *Adel*, along the greatest part of the Bay, called of old *Sinus Barbaricus*; of the reason of which name hereafter.

The Country plentifully fertile, shaded with Woods and spacious Forrests, and those Woods liberally furnished both with Fruits and Cattel; the *Champagn* Countrey not less fruitful in Wheat, Barley, and other necessaries, besides a great store of Horses. The people of an *Olive-colour*, in some places more inclined to black: Not cloathed, but from the Girdle downward; nor very well armed in time of War, but with poysoned Arrows; *Mahometans* in Religion, *Arabians* by original Extraction, whose language they retain with some little difference in pronunciation.

Places of most observation in it, 1 *Adea*, which gives name to the whole Kingdom, because the old residence of the Kings. 2 *Carfur*, upon the Sea-Coast, sometimes called *Opone*, then a noted *Empory*, and situate near the Promontory called *Zingis extrema*. 3 *Azun*, and 4 *Zazelle*, supposed to be the *Essina* and *Toxica*, of the Ancient Writers. 5 *Magadazo*, a pettit Kingdom of it self; a wealthy and well traded Town, situate in a fruitful and delightful soil, and neighboured by a safe and capacious Haven: much traded by the *Portugals*, who bring from *Adere* in *Arabia Felix*, and *Cambaia* in *India*, their Spices, Silks, and other *Indian* Commodities; which here they barter and exchange for Honey, Wax, Gold, and *Abassine Slaves*, which last they value as the chiefest Merchandize which this Country yieldeth. First built by some *Arabian Moors*, who flying from the King of *Laza* their Mortal Enemy, under the Conduct of seven Brethren, came into these parts, where they founded this City, and that of *Brava* in the Province of *Barus*, of which more hereafter.

The Inhabitants are originally of *Arabia*, as before was said; who many hundred years ago became Lords of all the Sea-Coasts of both *Æthiopia*'s, as far as to the *Cape Dos Corrientes*, which is somewhat to the South of the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*. The Kings hereof in former times *Vassals* to the *Abassine* Emperour, to whom they paid an yearly *tribute*; this Kingdom still remaining amongst his Titles: but since the taking of *Magadazo*, made so obnoxious to the power and command of the *Portugals*, that the Estate of the *Abassine* in it is but meerly *titular*.

13. FATIGAR, and 14. XOA.

FATIGAR hath on the East *Adel*, and some part of *Adea*; on the West, the little Realm of *Xoa*; on the South, *Barus*, another Province of this Empire. The Country *Champagne*, sufficiently fruitful of Corn and Cattel, not meanly furnished with pleasant & delicious Fruits. Most memorable for a *Lake* of twelve miles in compass, on the top of a Mountain, well stored with Fish; from whence and from the rest of the Mountain issue many Rivers, which much enrich the Vallies and Fields adjoyning. The chief Town hereof, (if any one be better than another) I conceive to be *Fatigar*, giving this name unto the Kingdom, or so called from it.

Westward of *Fatigar*, lieth the little Realm of XOA, bordering West on *Amara*; Southward upon *Damut*; furnished with great store of Corn and Cattel, but not much

much beautified with Towns of any consideration. Nothing observable in the History or Description of it, but that together with *Fatigar*, and others of the Mid-land Provinces, it hath continued constant in obedience to the *Abassine* Emperors, notwithstanding all those *misadventures* which have hapned to that Empire in these latter days.

15. BARUS.

ON the South-East of *Adea* lieth the Province of BARUS, extended Eastward to some part of *Sinus Barbaricus*; and touching at the Western Point, upon that of *Fatigar*. The soyl and people much of the same condition with the rest of *Æthiopia*. *Mahometans* upon the Shores, but *Christians* for the generality in the Mid-land parts. Those *Christians* subject (as the rest) to the *Abassine* Emperour; but he hath neither place of strength or consideration in all the Country; those of most note, 1 *Brava*, once a Free Town, and governed after the manner of a *Commonwealth*, by Twelve Aldermen or *Common-Counsellours*, descended from the Seven *Arabian* Brethren, by whom first built; the Founders of *Magadora* also, as before was said. But now, together with 2 *Pate*, and 3 *Gogia*, all upon the Sea, made subject to the *Portugals*; by whom taken under the Conduct of *Tristran de Cugua*.

Besides these, there are many other Kingdoms mustered in the *Stile Imperial*, (the swelling vanity whereof, we shall see anon) but of so little observation in the course of business, and so obscure in the esteem of such as have spoken of them, that it is enough to tell you where to find their names: and having found their names, to bid you not to seek for more; there being nothing else in them which is worth the knowing.

As for the Body aggregated of these several Members, it was first planted, as is noted and proved elsewhere, by *Ludim* the Son of *Mizraim*, and the Nephew of *Cham*: from whence this Nation in the Scripture hath the name of *Ludim*. A Nation not much taken notice of in the first Ages of time, but by an Error of *Josephus*: who giving too much credit to some *Talmudical* Tales, or willing to advance the reputation of the *Jews* to the highest pitch, telleth us a story, how the *Æthiopians* invaded and endangered *Egypt*, how they were beaten back by *Moses*; the City of *Meroe* besieged and taken by him, or rather delivered to his Hands by *Tharbis*, the Daughter of the King, who had fallen in love with him, and on the betraying of the City was married to him. All this not only questioned, but rejected by discerning men, as a *Jewish* Fable, that hath no ground to stand upon in true Antiquity. With little better fortune, and as little truth do the *Æthiopians* tell the story of their own *Original*. By whom we are informed that *Chus* the Son of *Cham*, first reigned in this *Æthiopia*; to whom succeeded his Son *Regma*, and next after *Dedan*, that from the death of *Dedan*, till the reign of *Aruch* (the certain time whereof they tell not) the people lived in Caves and holes digged under the ground; as did the *Troglodites*, an antient Nation of this Countrey, in the times long after: that *Arac* first built the City of *Aruma*, and by that Pattern taught them the use of Towns and Cities. But the main part of the Legend, is the story of *Maqueda* a Queen hereof, and fourth from *Aruch*; whom they will have to be the Queen of *Sheba*, famous in both Testaments, for the *Royal Visit* which she bestowed upon *Solomon*. Of whom they tell us, that being got with Child by *Solomon* when she was in his Court, she was delivered of a Son, whom she caused to be called *Melech*, or *Melilech*; and at the age of 20 years, to be sent to his Father. By whom instructed in the Law, and *circumcised*, and called by the name of *David*; he was returned into his Countrey, with *Azarias* the Son of *Zadok* the Priest, who had stollen the two Tables of the Law, and carried them with him into *Æthiopia*; where the old Queen resigned the Empire to her Son. His Successors afterwards called *David*, till *Indion* (as they call him) the *Eunuch* of Queen *Candace*, returning home, baptized the young Prince by the name of *Philip*. This is the substance of the *Legend*, as related by them in their own Chronicles (but we know that they are no Gospel.) That *Chus* planted in *Arabia*, hath been shewn already, as also what absurdities must needs arise from supposing the Land of *Chus* to be this *Æthiopia*. Therefore most probable it is, that this Country was first peopled by the Children of *Ludim*, as before was said. To whom the *Abassenes* coming out of *Arabia Felix*, might be after added; and in some tract of time be of such great power as to put their name upon the Countrey. For that the *Abassenes* were originally an *Arabian* people, appears by *Stephanus*, one of the old *Chorographers*, who out of *Uranius* (an ancienter Author than himself) hath told us this, Ἀβασηνοὶ ἔθνος Ἀραβικόν. Another *Stephanus*, and he a very learned Grammarian and *Lexicographer*, hath, as he thinks, decided the Controversie, by making *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, the Progenitor of the *Arabians*; and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, the Father of the *Æthiopians*: and for this cause hath fitted us with this pretty *Criticism*, that *Sheba* when it is written with *Samech*, must be rendred *Æthiopia*; and *Arabia*, when writ with *Shin*. But this by no means will be found to agree the controversie, it being evidently clear, that both *Sheba* the Son of *Chus*, and *Sheba* the Son of *Regma*, were originally setled in *Arabia*, as hath there been shewn; though I deny not but that some of the posterity of *Chus* in those elder times, (before the coming over of the *Abassine* Nations) might either out of too much Populosity, or desire of Change, cross over the *Arabian* Gulf, and take up such part of this Countrey as the *Ludims* had not fully peopled, with whom conjunct at last, both in name and government. And for *Maqueda* (supposing that to be her name) she was doubtless Queen of the *Sabæans* in *Arabia Felix*, not of the *Æthiopians* in the waste of *Africk*. For besides the longsomness of the way, too much for a Woman and a Queen to travel; it is very probable, that the Son of *Solomon* by this Lady, would never have suffered *Egypt* to have lain in quiet, whilest *Sesac* the King thereof made war upon *Reboboam*, the Son of *Solomon* also, and so by consequence his half Brother. But to leave these uncertain Fables, the first action of moment which we meet with in unquestioned Story, touching these *Æthiopians*, is that which hapned betwixt them and *Cambyses* the *Persian* Monarch; who having by force of Arms united *Egypt* to *Persia*, conceived it to be worth his labour to unite *Æthiopia* unto *Egypt* also. Upon this resolution, he sent Embassadors to that King, to search into the passages of his Countrey, and discover his strengths; and by them sent a Tun of Wine, some Bracelets, a Purple Habit, and a Box of sweet Ointments, to present him with. Which Presents being tendred to him, he looked upon the Unguents and the Purple Robe, as too slight and effeminate: the Bracelets he conceived to be Bonds, or Fetters, and openly laugh'd at them, as too weak to hold in a Prisoner: but with the Wine he was very well pleased, and sorrowed that his Countrey yielded no such Liquor. But understanding well enough what this Visit aimed at, he gave the Embassadors at their parting (amongst other Gifts) an *Æthiopian* Bow of great length and strength; requiring them to tell their Master, That until every *Persian* could bend that Bow (the *Æthiopian* Bows being a foot longer than the *Persian*, as before was noted) it would be no safe warring upon his Dominions; and that he had good cause to thank the Gods for giving the *Æthiopians* so

contented minds, as not to think of conquering their Neighbours Kingdoms. Lying far off, and parted from *Egypt* by vaſt Mountains, we find them not looked after by the *Macedonians*. Nor had the *Romans* medled with them, had they not been provoked by *Candace*, the Queen hereof, during the Empire of *Auguſtus*: who having made a War on *Egypt*, was by *Petronius*, Governour of that Province, brought to ſuch conformity, that ſhe was fain to ſue for peace, and to purchaſe it with the loſs of ſome part of her Countrey. To keep them quiet for the future, *Philæ* an *Æthiopian* City, but on the borders of *Egypt*, is made a Garriſon by the *Romans*, and the Seat of their *Deputy* for theſe parts: held by them till the Empire of *Dioclesian*, and by him abandoned, becauſe the charge of keeping it did exceed the profit. After this, growing into power and reputation, the *Æthiopian* Kings were reckoned of as friends to the *Roman* Empire: inſomuch as *Juſtinian* ſent unto *Heliſtheus*, as *Juſtin* his Succeſſor did unto *Archetus*, the then Kings of this Country; to crave their brotherly aſſiſtance againſt the *Perſians*.

Of their Converſion to the Faith in the Reign of a ſecond *Candace*, (unleſs as *Pliny* thinketh, *Candace* was the general Name of all their Queens) we have ſpoke already. To which the *Æthiopians* add, that after the baptizing of their firſt *Philip* (the Son of that *Candace*) by the hands of the *Eunuch*, the Emperors ſucceeding had the name of *Philip*; Till the religious Life of *John*, a Contemporary of the Emperour *Conſtans*, honoured as a Saint after his deceaſe, made them take his name. Some building upon this Tradition, have to the name of *John*, prefixed that of *Presbyter*, becauſe (as they affirm) he executeth as well the *Sacerdotal* as the *Regal Office*; *Rex idem hominum, Divumque Sacerdos*, the very *Anius* of the Poet: And this ſo commonly received, that he is vulgarly called by the name of *Preſter John*, and his Eſtate the Empire of *Preſter John*, with no truth at all. Others more probably conceive, that this vulgar name of *Preſter John*, is but a corruption, or miſtaken for *Prætagian* or *Precious John*, and that the word *Prete* (by which his Subjects call him) importeth no leſs. And yet I more incline to thoſe, who finding that the Word *Preſtegan* ſignifieth an *Apoſtle*, in the *Perſian* tongue, and *Preſtegani* an *Apoſtolical* man; do thereupon infer, that the title of *Padeſcha Preſtigiani*, an *Apoſtolick King*, was given unto him for the *Orthodoxy* of his Belief. Which not being underſtood by ſome, inſtead of *Preſtegian*, they have made *Prieſt John*, in Latin *Presbyter Johannes*: as by a like miſtake one *Pregent* (or *Prægian* as the *French* pronounce it) Commander of ſome Gallies under *Lewis* the XII. was by the *Engliſh* of thoſe times called *Prior John*. *Preſtegian* then, not *Prieſt John*, is his proper adjunct; contractedly, but commonly called the *Prete*, by the Modern *French*, who uſually leave out *ſ* before a *conſonant*. Their Empire greater heretofore, than it is at the preſent, ſhrewdly impaired of late times by the *Turks* and *Arabians*: of which the firſt have taken from him all his Country, from the Iſle of *Mero* unto *Egypt*, with all the Sea-coaſts of *Barnagaſſo*; the latter as much encroaching on them, on the reſt of the *Maritime* parts of his Dominions. But from none have they ſuffered more, than the Kings of *Adel*; who have divers times laid waſte their Country, diſcomfited ſome of them in the open Field, and in the year 1558. ſlain their King in battel: Not cured of thoſe wounds to this very day. For *Adam*, who ſucceeded *Claudius* that was ſlain in battel, was ſo far from being able to revenge the death of his Predeceſſor, that being ſuſpected to incline to *Mahometaniſm*, he was defeated by the *under-King* of *Barnagaſſo*. Since which time they have ſo languiſhed by inteſtine diſſentions, that though *Alexander* the Third (if there were ever ſuch a King, which I find much doubted) is ſaid to have ſettled his affairs by the aid of the *Portugals*; and that ſome ſtrange ſucceſſes have been ſince reported of a later Emperour: yet the truth is, that the Eſtate hereof hath been ſo imbroiled in Civil Wars, and ſo many of their Emperours ſucceſſively murdered, that the power and reputation of it is exceedingly weakened, and the Country made a prey to impuiſſant Enemies. For in the year 603. the Emperour *Meleh Gogad*, who ſucceeded in the Throne by the depoſition and impriſonment of his Predeceſſor, (under colour of Baſtardy) was not long after ſlain by one *Zezelezeus*: and *James*, or *Jacob*, advanced unto the Empire: *James* not long after vanquiſhed, & ſlain in the Fields of *Guera*, by one *Sazinoſius* (contractedly by ſome called *Suſneus*) his three Sons being forced to fly to provide for ſafety. What became of the two Eldeſt, I have no where found. The youngeſt called *Zaga Chriſtos*, after many hazardous wandrings and accidents, arrived at laſt into *Italy*, and thence he came to *Paris*, *Anno* 1638. where he was entertained in the quality of a Prince, but without hope of being reſtored to the Throne of his Fathers; for *Sazinoſius*, or *Suſneus*, immediately upon the victory had poſſeſſed himſelf of the whole Empire; though for a time ſo terribly diſquieted with Treaſons and Conſpiracies, that in the year 1607. he was fain to ſue for aid to the King of *Spain*, and tender a ſubmiſſion of the *Abaſſine* Churches to the Pope of *Rome*. But the ſpirit of Rebellion being conjured up, could not ſo eaſily be laid down (though there followed a long calm between) but that it brake out again within few years after (that is to ſay, about the year 1628.) more violently than it did before: a powerful Rebel ſtarting up, who followed by an Army of 50000. had queſtionleſs diſpoſſeſſed the *Prete* of his whole Dominions, if not prevented & diſcomfited beyond expectation. For it happened that one *Vermeile*, a *Frenchman*, a Jeweller by Trade, but exerciſed in the Wars of *Holland*, underſtanding that the *Abaſſine* Empreſs was much delighted with the Rarities and Jewels of *France*, found means to conveigh himſelf into the Court, where underſtanding the great danger which that great Emperour was in, and the ignorance as well of the good Subjects, as of the Rebels, in the Arts of War, he got leave to have the diſciplining or training of 8000 men, with which ſmall Army, he utterly diſcomfited and routed that vaſt body of Rebels, and was thereupon deſervedly made Commander in Chief of all the Forces of the Empire. This is the laſt News of any certainty that hath come from thence: (it being *An.* 1634. in which that Victory was obtained) but that there hath been a report of ſome new Commotions, *An.* 1648. the particulars and truth whereof, muſt be ſought elſewhere.

Yet notwithſtanding theſe diſaſters, theſe later Emperors have ſtill preſerved their Majeſty amongſt their Subjects whom they hold in Servitude enough, though they keep not ſuch a diſtance as in former Ages, when the *Prete* was honoured as a God, and uſed to ſhew himſelf but thrice in a year, *viz.* on *Chriſtmas*, *Eaſter*, *and Holyrood*-day: by which retiredneſs it was thought that he made his preſence more acceptable; ſome holding nothing to be more derogatory from the Majeſty of a King, than to make himſelf too common an object for the eye of the Vulgar. The like kind of ſtate was once kept by thoſe Kings of *France* of the firſt *Merovignian* line; who withdrawing themſelves from all publick affairs, uſed onely to ſhew themſelves (as we have already ſaid) on *May-day*. A greater retiredneſs than this, was that which *Velleda* Queen of the *Tenſteri*, (a People of the *Rhene*) is reported by *Tacitus* to have uſed; for when the reſt of the *Germans* then in arms, ſent Ambaſſadors to her to inform her of their victory againſt the *Romans*, they were prohibited either to ſpeak to her, or to ſee her; *Arcebantur aſpectu, quo venerationis plus ineſſet.* Such a keeping of ſtate the politick Prince *Tiberius* uſed, when the *German* Legions mutined; for he daigned not himſelf

himself to see them pacified, but sent his Son; the reason was, *quia majestati major e longinquo reverentia.* And no doubt the same keeping of distance swayed much with him, when he forsook *Rome*, and kept Court privately at *Caprea*: though I deny not, but a propension to follow his *unnatural* pleasures the more securely, together with his deformities on his face, had also their powers upon his resolution.

The Title of this great and mighty Emperour, (but neither so great or mighty in power as title) runneth thus: *N. N. Supream of his Kingdoms, and the beloved of* GOD, *the Pillar of Faith, sprung from the Stock of* Judah, *the Son of* David, *the Son of* Solomon, *the Son of the Column of* Sion, *the Son of the Seed of* Jacob, *the Son of the hand of* Mary, *the Son of* Nahu *after the flesh, the Son of St.* Peter *and* Paul *after the Spirit; Emperour of the Higher and Lesser* Æthiopia, *and of the most mighty Kingdoms, Dominions and Countries of* Xoa, Goa, Cassates Fatigar, Angote, Baliguazo, Adea, Vangne, Goyami, *where are the Fountains of* Nile, Amara, Banguamedron, Ambea, Vangucum, Tigremaon, Sabaim, *the birth-place of the Queen of* Saba, Barnagassum; *and the Lord of all the Regions unto the confines of* Egypt.

It seemeth by this Title, that these *Æthiopian* Emperors, however the truth of Story goeth, conceive themselves to be sprung from *Solomon* and *Maqueda*, (or *Nizaule*, as *Joseph* nameth her) the Queen of the South. For better confirmation whereof, it is by some reported, that the Arms of this Kingdom are the same with those of the Tribe of *Judah* which are a *Lyon Rampant* in a Field *Or*: and that the Motto of them is to this effect, *viz. The* Lyon *of the Tribe of* Judah *shall* overcome. But *Bara*, an expert Herauld, giveth this Prince no such Coat-Armour; his Arms, according to him, being *Luna*, a Cross portate *Mars*, charged with a Crucifix *Sol*, between two Scourges of the second. And yet not altogether to discredit the old Tradition so generally received amongst them; it may be probable enough, that when the *Abassens* came into *Æthiopia*, some of the *Sabæans* their next Neighbours, came along for company, and amongst them some of the *Royal Race* of the Queen of *Sheba*; with some of which, by reason of their great Nobility, some of the *Abassine* Emperours might think fit to match. Nor is it any matter of impossibility, but that *Solomon* (considering his course of life) might get a Son upon the Body of that Queen, from whom the *Æthiopian* Princes might be thus descended.

As for the Government of these Emperours, it is absolutely *Regal*, or to say better, perfectly *Despotical*: the people being treated by them more like Slaves than Subjects; taking away *Seignories*, and giving them unto whom he pleaseth, the deprived *party* not daring to express the least discontent. By them so reverenced, that it was anciently a custom, if the King were *blind*, or *lame*, or *maimed*, for the Subject to inflict on his own Body the like *impression*: still had in so much honour by the greatest Subject, that at his bare name they bow their bodies, and touch the ground with one of their fingers; and reverence his *Pavilion* as they pass by, though he be not in it. He on the other side seldom appeareth to his Subjects, but with his *Crown* upon his head, and a *Silver-Crucifix* in his hand; his face then covered with a piece of *Watchet-Taffata*, which he lifteth up and putteth down, according as he is minded to grace the party with whom he talketh.

As for his *Forces* and *Revenues*, some of our late Observators speak nothing but wonders. Some say his Empire reacheth from the *Red-Sea* to the *Atlantick* Ocean, and from one *Tropick* to the other: Some, that he is of so great Riches, that he is able to purchase a *moyety* of all the world, if it were to be sold; others, that he is able to raise for any present service a Million of Men. And he himself is said to have offered to the *Portugals* one million of Money, and another of Men, if they would imploy it in a war against the *Infidels*. But notwithstanding these great brags, I cannot think this Emperour to be such a *Miracle* as some of these Reports have made him. For they that speak most knowingly of his *Revenue*, affirm, that the ordinary expences of his Court and Army being discharged, he coffereth up but three millions of Crowns *per annum*; which is no great matter: and upon extraordinary emergencies of War and Trouble, will be easily wasted, or brought into a narrower compass. And yet to make up this *Revenue*, besides the Crown Lands, or *Demain Imperial*, he layeth some *Tax* or other upon every house, receiveth the *Tenth* of all that is digged out of their Mines, and levieth on the great Lords the Revenue of any one of their Towns, which he pleaseth to chuse, so it be not that in which the Lords themselves inhabit.

This though it be no great *Intrado*, considering the large extent of his *Dominions*, and *Form* of his *Government*; yet it is greater in *proportion* than his *Forces* are. For notwithstanding the report of *Alvarez*, and his own great brag, of raising a Million of Men for present service; it is well known, that he was never able to advance half that number in his greatest necessity; and amongst those whom he can raise, there are but few who can deserve the name of Souldiers. For the People being poor and beggerly, and brought up in a servile and base condition, are naturally destitute of that courage and alacrity of spirit which should be in men professing *Arms*, or fit for Noble Undertakings; and are besides, on certain *jealousies* of State, so disused from War, that they know not how to use their Weapons, when there is occasion. So that for my part, I consider him as a weak and *impuissant* Prince, of no authority or influence out of his *Dominions*; nor able to defend himself from the continual *Incursions* of his Neighbours (some of them mean and petit Princes) which lie neareſt to him. *Land-locked* on every side from Traffick and Commerce with the Seas; incroached upon *Northward* by the *Turks*; confronted on the West, by the King of *Borneo*, who possesseth not a tenth part of the Land of *Negroes*; on the East, continually bearded and baffled by the King of *Adel*, sometimes a *Vassal* of his own; and on the South with the *Galla*, a barbarous Nation of the other *Æthiopia*, who lay all waste before them whersoever they come; and finally in these later times by his own Subjects. Injuries not to be endured, had he power to help it.

But the chief Stay of this Estate, is an *Order of Knighthood*, entituled by the name of St. *Anthony*, to which every Father that is of the Degree of a Gentleman, is to destinate one of his Sons, if he have above two, but not the eldest. And out of these they cull about 12000 Horse, which are to be the standing Guard of the Emperours person: their Oath is, To defend the Frontiers of the Empire, to preserve Religion, and to make head against the Enemies of the Faith. The *Abbots* of this Order (for it is partly *Religious*, partly *Military*) live in the Mountain of *Amara*, where they have two *Monasteries*, as well for the training up of these Knights in the time of their youth, as their *retirement* when grown old, and discharged from service.

The Arms of this Empire we have seen before.

And so much for *ÆTHIOPIA SUPERIOR.*

OF

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR.

ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR is bounded on the East with the *Red-Sea*, (that name extending from the bottom of the Gulph of *Arabia*, to the Southern Ocean) on the West, with the *Æthiopick* Ocean; on the North with *Terra Nigritarum*, and the *Higher Æthiopia*; and on the South, where it endeth in a point or *Conus*, with the Main Ocean, parting it from the Southern undiscovered Continent.

It was called *Æthiopia* for the reason before delivered; *Inferior* was added for distinction sake, because somewhat of a lower situation than the other is. By *Ptolomy* called *Æthiopia Interior*, because lying more within the Land, and remote from knowledge, than the nearer did: and by late Writers, for the contrary reason, called *Æthiopia Exterior*, because situate without and beyond the other.

It comprehendeth all *Ptolomies Æthiopia Interior*, part of his *Æthiopia sub Egypto*, and all those Lands to him unknown, which he giveth us under the name of *Terra Incognita*. The Country so little discovered in those elder times, that we find mention onely of some eminent Mountains, as 1 *Canchis*, 2 *Lon*, 3 *Ziphia*, 4 *Barditis*, 5 *Moschi*; one only Region known by name, called *Agisimba*, and of that nothing but the name, and that it was a Province of a large extent. The People not distinguished here as in other places, by their Tribes and Families; but onely by their kind of diet; some of them being called *Anthropophagi*, from their eating of men; and others *Ichthyophagi*, from their living on fish. Of these, the first inhabited on the Eastern shores, near the Bay of *Barbaria*; the principal of which had the name of *Rapsii*: the last on the shores of the Western Ocean, near *Magnus Sinus*, or the Great Bay; called also from their Western situation, by the name of *Hesperii*. Nothing else told us of these parts by the Ancient Writers, but that the *Lakes* or Fens of *Nilus* were occasioned by the great abundance of Snow, which fell from the *Mountains* of the *Moon*: and that in many parts hereof, there were *Rhinocerots*, Tygers, Elephants, but these last all white.

Such was the face of this Countrey in those elder days. The Character of it at the present, generally and in brief, is thus given by *Aubanus*, viz. That it is *Mountainous* in the West, *Sandy* in the midst, and *Desart* towards the East. But for the several qualities of the soyl and people, being of very different tempers; we shall give the better description of them in their several *Inclosures*, then as presented thus in *common*. In the mean time to take a view of the Hills and Rivers of most reckoning in it; the principal of their Mountains are, 1 those called *Cantaberes* in the Province of *Angola*; 2 *Lunæ Montes*, formerly accounted for the boundary of both *Æthiopia*'s, now found to belong to this alone. A Chain of Hills, but known by no particular name, lying under the *Tropick* of *Capricorn*; full of sharp Rocks, of an incredible height, and inhabited by a barbarous & savage people: the Valleys underneath of so great a *depth*, that they seem to emulate the Mountains.

In this Country is the Lake of *Zembre*, so much renowned for giving birth to the greatest Rivers of the World; though it self but 50 miles in compass. For out of the abundance hereof flow the famous Rivers, 1 *Nilus*, which passing through some part of this Country, and traversing the whole length of the *Abassian* and *Egyptian* Empires, endeth its long course in the *Mediterranean*. 2 *Zaire*, the greatest of all *Africk*, but unknown to the Antients, which running Westward through the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and taking in the lesser Streams of 1 *Vamba*, 2 *Barbela*, 3 *Coanza*, 4 *Lelunda*, makes many Islands in his way, and at the last by a mouth of 28 miles wideness disgorgeth his full stomach in the Western Ocean. 3 *Cuama*, which making his passage towards the East, and much increased by the addition of six great Rivers, after a long course of 700 miles (in all which it is Navigable) loseth it self in the *Indian* or *Arabian* Ocean; and 4 *Fluvius Spiritus Sancti*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*, which shaping a course opposite unto that of *Nilus*, endeth it in conclusion in the Southern Seas. It is divided most properly into these four parts, that is to say, 1 *Zanguebar*, 2 *Monopotapa*, 3 *Cafraria*, 4 *Manicongo*. Some also add the Country of *Aian*, subdivided into the two Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. But these we have ascribed with better reason to the other *Æthiopia*, within the Bounds whereof they are wholly situate.

1. ZANGUEBAR.

ZANGUEBAR, or ZANZIBAR, is bounded on the East with the *Red-Sea*, or the *Indian* Ocean, on the West with the Kingdoms of *Manicongo*, and part of the other *Æthiopia*; on the North with the *Higher Æthiopia* only; on the South with *Monomotapa*. The reason of the name I find not.

It containeth in it the great Province of *Agisimba*, placed by the old Writers in *Æthiopia Interior*, and in so much of the other also as lieth on the South of the River *Raptus*; now called *Quilimanci*, by which parted from the Kingdoms of *Adel* and *Adea*. The Country on both sides of that River, known in old times by the name of *Barbaria*, giveth to a large adjoyning Bay the name of *Sinus Barbaricus*, and was much famed in those Elder Times for the best sort of *Myrrhe*: the *Myrrha Troglodities*, and *Myrrha Barbara*, or *Barbarica*, being used for the same by some of the Ancients, because the *Troglodites*, and the people of this *Barbaria* joyned on one another. Here was also in those Elder Times a good Race of Ginger, of which saith *Dioscorides*, Μάλιστα φύεται ἡ ἀμωμίτις ἐν τῇ Βαρβαρίᾳ, that it is the Bark of a Tree brought out of *Barbaria*. Where by the way, the *Scholiasts* upon that Author, and *Pliny* in the 12. Book, have been much mistaken; of which the first takes this *Barbara* or *Barbaria* for some part of the *Indies*; the other thinketh, that the *Myrrha* of these parts had the name of *Barbara*, from the drossiness and coursiness of it, as if so called

led only becauſe unrefined. The principal Town hereof called *Rapta*, by the name of the River, ſeated not far from the Sea; aud by reaſon of the great Trade of it, eſteemed the *Metropolis* of *Barbaria* in the time of *Ptolomy*. A noted Promontory of the ſame was not far from hence.

To come again to *Zanzibar*, as it is now called; The Country is affirmed to be low and fenny, and very much overflown with unruly Rivers; and withal ſo full of Woods and Forreſts, that for want of paſſage for the wind, the air is generally (as in all Fenny Countries of the like obſtruction) exceeding peſtilent. The People of Complexion black, and of curled hair; *Mahometans* on the Sea-Coaſts; in the Inland-parts *Idolaters*; extreamly given to Witchcraft and Divinations. Naked above the waſte, and beneath covered only with the skins of Beaſts, or ſome ſuch mingled colour ſtuff, as the *Scottiſh Plad*. The *Moors* which dwell on the Sea-Coaſts, uſe to adventure on the Seas in little Veſſels, ſowed together with leathern thongs, and calked with Gum; having no other Sails in them than the leaves of Palm-Trees. Boats of as ſlight making as thoſe uſed anciently by the *Britains*, whereof thus the Poet:

Primum cana ſalix, madefacto vimine parvam
Texitur in puppim; cæſoque induta juvenco
Vectoris patiens, tumidum ſuperenatat Æquor.

Which I find thus rendred to my hand:

The moiſtned *Oſier* of the hoary Willow
Is woven firſt into a little Boat;
Then cloath'd in Bullocks Hides; upon the Billow
Of a proud River lightly doth it float.

It containeth in it to the number of 15 Provinces, that is to ſay, 1 *Melinde*, 2 *Mombaza*, 3 *Quiloa*, 4 *Moſambique*, 5 *Sofala*, all along the Coaſts; 6 *Moembemage*, 7 *Corova*, 8 *Calen*, 9 *Anzuga*, 10 *Monzalo*, 11 *Badin*, 12 *Mombra*, 13 *Mombizo*, 14 *Embroe*, and 15 *Macaos*, more within the Land. Of the nine laſt, not being perfectly diſcovered, and therefore likely to yield nothing of note and credit, we ſhall now be ſilent. But the firſt ſix lying upon the Shores, or near it, and conſequently better known to Merchants, Travellers, and the like Adventurers, ſhall be ſurveyed in order as they lie before us.

1. *MELINDE* is the name of a little Kingdom, on the South of the Realm of *Adea*, in the *Higher Æthiopia*, from which parted by the River *Raptus*, now called *Quilimancy*: ſo named from *Melinde*, the chief City of it, well walled, and ſeated in a fruitful and delightful Soil; abundantly productive of Rice, Mill, Fleſh, Limons, Citrons, and moſt ſorts of Fruits; but not well furniſhed with Corn, the greateſt part whereof is brought out of *Cambaia*, a Province of *India*. The houſes built of Lime and Stone, after the manner of *Europe*. The Inhabitants on the Sea-Coaſts, of *Arabian* breed, and of that Religion; thoſe of the In-lands, which are of the original Natives, for the moſt part *Heathens*. Moſt of them of an *Olive-colour*, but inclining to white; the Women generally of as white complexions as in other places; but they have ſome black people alſo: And all of them more *civil* in their habit, courſe of life, and entertainment in their houſes, than the reſt of this Country. Great Friends unto the *Portugals*, and befriended by them, ever ſince the kind entertainment which they gave unto *Vaſques de Gama*; whom they furniſhed with *Pilots* to direct him in his way to *India*, when firſt diſcovered by that people, *An.* 1497.

2. *MOMBAZA* is the name of another of theſe petit Kingdoms, of the ſame nature for the temper of the ſoil and people, that *Melinde* is. So called from *Mombaza* the chief City of it, ſituate from *Melinde* about 70 miles, in a little Iſland of 12 miles compaſs; but of good influence on ſome part of the *Continent* alſo. The Iſle and City ſaid to have ſome reſemblance unto the *Rhodes*. The Town about a league in circuit, environed with a Wall, and fortified with a Caſtle; the ſtreets thereof very narrow, but well built, moſt of the Houſes being Brick, and the *Moſques* capacious. The King hereof a *Mahometan*, as are moſt of his Subjects, and a bitter Enemy of the *Chriſtians*. For which cauſe, and upon ſome diſcourteſies received from them, the Town was taken by *Vaſques de Gama*, *An.* 1500. but abandoned again by reaſon of the unhealthy air, not well agreeing with the conſtitution of the *Portugals*. Afterwards, having taken in *Alibeg* and five *Turkiſh* Gallies, the better to enable themſelves againſt the *Portugals*; the Town was taken and ruinated by *Thomas de Cotigno*, ſent thither, *Anno* 1589. by the *Portugal* Vice-Roy reſiding in *Goa*, there being taken at that time (beſides the ſpoil of the City) all the *Turkiſh* Gallies, and in them 23 greater, and as many leſſer Pieces of Ordnance. Such of the *Turks* and Citizens as eſcaped the Slaughter, and had the opportunity of coming to them, yielded themſelves into their power, to avoid the fury of the *Imbians*, a man-eating people, who had before beſieged the City; and gathering up ſuch gleanings as were left by the *Portugals*, devoured the King, and as many of the principal Citizens as they could get into their hands. 2 *Ampaza*, the ſecond Town of note, was taken by the *Portugals* about two years after.

3. *QUILOA* lieth on the South of *Mombaza*. The Country rich and pleaſant, the Inhabitants for the moſt part of *Arabian* Anceſtry; of Complexion near unto a white: their Women comely, ſumptuous in attire, and of civil carriage; neat in their houſes which are generally well built, and richly furniſhed. Touching the ordering of this Sex (of whoſe honour they are very tender) the people of this *Quiloa* are ſaid to have a ſtrange cuſtom amongſt them, more to be mentioned for the rarity than the decency of it: which is the ſowing up of the private paſſages of Nature in their Female Children, leaving onely a ſmall vent for their Urine. Thus ſowed, they keep them carefully at home, till they come to be married. And ſhe that is by her Husband found to want this ſign of her perpetual Virginity, is with all kind of ignominy ſent back to her Parents, and by them as diſgracefully received.

It took this name from *Quiloa*, the chief Town thereof, ſituate in a little Iſland, but near the ſhore, from which parted by a narrow *Fryth*, oppoſite to the mouth of the River *Coova*, by ſome called *Quiloa*. Firſt built in the 400 year of the *Hegira*, by *Ali*, the Son of *Soltan Hiſchen*; who not agreeing very well with his other Brethren, becauſe their Mothers were *Perſians*, and his an *Abaſſine*, ſought new Adventures in theſe parts, and bought this Iſland. His Succeſſors grown rich and powerful by the trade of *Sofala*, extended their Dominions far within the Land: and ſo adorned *Quiloa*, the chief Town of their Kingdom, that for ſumptuous and magnificent buildings, there were few like it in thoſe parts. Proud of their many good Succeſſes, they provoked the *Portugals*, by whom under the Conduct of *Vaſques de Gama*, *An.* 1500. the City it ſelf was taken, the King made a Tributary, and with his leave ſome Fortreſſes erected by them in convenient places. Secure and wanton by this means, they pick a Quarrel with *Abraham*, then the King of this Countrey; whom in the year 1505. they depoſed from his Kingdom and placed another in his Throne, under colour of not paying

paying the conditioned Tribute. For which the *Arabians* roſe in Arms, diſplaced their new King, demoliſhed their Fortifications, and ſent them to learn better moderation in their proſperous Fortunes, *An.* 1509. The buſineſs coming after to a compoſition, the *Quiloan* covenanted for the yearly Tribute of 1500 Marks of Gold paid unto the *Portugals*, to live in Peace, and quietly enjoy his own without further trouble.

4. *MOSAMBIQVE* lieth on the South of *Quiloa*. So called of *Moſambique* the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland, the principal of three; oppoſite all of them to the mouth of the River *Moghincats*: and bordering on the Promontory of old called *Praſſam*, ſpoken of by *Ptolomy*, and by him made the furtheſt known place of all this Coaſt. In the Iſland there are ſaid to be Sheep whoſe Tails are 25 pound weight, as in other places of theſe Countries, and ſome parts of *Syria*; Hens, *black* in Feathers, Fleſh and Bone; & if ſodden, make the water as black as Ink, but yet ſweeter in taſte than any other. Of *Pork* good ſtore, the more, becauſe the people are for the moſt part of the Law of *Mahomet*, by which all Hog-meat is forbidden. The in-land parts more barren, but very populous: ſo ignorant and rude when the *Portugals* firſt came among them, that for a Shirt, a Razor, and a little Bell, they ſold fifteen Kine; and then fell out among themſelves, who ſhould have the Bell. The Town conveniently ſeated on a large and capacious Haven, and fortified with a very ſtrong Caſtle, in the hand of the *Portugals*; who in their going to the *Indies*, and returning back, uſe to call in here, and fit themſelves with all things neceſſary to purſue their Voyage. A Town of ſo great wealth and trading, that the Captain of the Caſtle in the time of his Government (which continueth onely for three years) is ſaid to lay up 300000 Ducats for his Lawful Gains, out of the Gold that cometh from *Sofala*. A gain ſo great, that at the end of his three years, he is to ſerve for three years more at ſome place or other of the *Eaſt-Indies*, at his own charge, without any allowance from the King or State of *Portugal*, and then permitted to return into his native Countrey. Such of that Nation as are ſuffered to inhabit here, are enjoyned to be married, to the end the Iſland ſhould be well peopled, and as well maintained; which otherwiſe perhaps might have few elſe in it but the Garriſon-Souldiers, and the Factors of particular Merchants.

5. *SOFALA* lieth on the South of *Moſambique*, from which parted by the River *Cuama*, the greateſt River of thoſe parts, and thence extended to the Mountains which they call *Manica*, by which ſeparated from *Monomotapa*. So called from *Sofala*, the chief City of it, ſituate in a little Iſland (as the former are) but with great influence on the Land adjoyning. Both Town and Iſland ſubject unto the power of the *Portugals*; who have a Fort, the better to ſecure the *Factory* by them here erected, one of the richeſt in the World; the People bringing in hither great quantity of Gold, of which they have moſt plentiful Mines, which they exchange with them for their Cloth and other Commodities. It is ſuppoſed that the Gold brought into this Town amounteth to two *Millions* yearly. The ſuppoſition ſo agreeable to all other circumſtances, that little queſtion need be made of the truth thereof. Inſomuch as this Country for its abundance of *Gold* and *Ivory*, is by ſome thought to be that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon* ſent: And of this Opinion *Ortelius* in his *Theſaurus* was the firſt Author; but in my mind, upon no probable conjectures, and againſt very ſtrong preſumption; For firſt, *Ophir* the ſon of *Jocian*, of whom mention is made *Gen.* 29. *verſ.* 10. and from whom the Land of *Ophir*, in all likelyhood took its name, is inthe next verſe ſaid to have planted in the Eaſt; whereas this *Sofala* is ſituate South-weſt from *Chaldea*, in which the confuſion of Tongues, and diſperſing of the People began. And ſecondly, it is impoſſible for the Navy of *Solomon*, which lay at *Ezion-Geber*, in the Bay of *Arabia*, to have ſpent three years in coming hither and returning: which we find to have been the uſual time of finiſhing the Voyage to *Ophir*, 1 Kings 10. *Ophir* then is ſome part of *India*; But whether it were the Iſland of *Sumatra*, or that of *Zeilan*, or one of the *Moluccoes*, or the Land of *Malaca*, called by the Ancients *Aurea Cherſoneſus*, I dare not determine; conſidering what worthy men maintain theſe ſeveral Opinions.

6. *MOENHEMAGE*, or *MONOEMVG*, the only In-land Province of any note, hath on the Eaſt *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*; on the Weſt, the famous River *Nilus*; on the North, ſome part of the Dominions of the *Abaſſine* Emperors; on the South, *Moſambique*. The Country very plentiful of Mines of Gold, yet the people uſe it not for Money; but barter it in exchange with the *Portugal* Merchants for Silks and Taffataes, with which they uſe to cloath themſelves from the Girdle downwards. Inſtead of Money, they make uſe of Red Counters, much reſembling Glaſs. Governed by a King of their own, who holds Confederacy with the Kings of *Mombaza* and *Quiloa*, for the better ordering of their Trade. To whom are alſo ſubject a wild and cruel people, called *Agag*, inhabiting on the Lake *Zembre*, and the Banks of the *Nilus*; diſperſed about the Fields in their homely Cottages, black, *Cannibals*, and of an horrible aſpect; more horrible than otherwiſe they would be, by drawing lines upon their Cheeks with an Iron-Inſtrument, and forcing their Eye-lids to turn backwards. By the aſſiſtance of this people, the King of *Moenhemage* hath hitherto preſerved his Eſtate againſt the King of *Monomotapa*: and they themſelves by ſome of their own Leaders did ſo diſtreſs the King of *Congo*, that they forced him to retire to a ſmall Iſland, where he hardly eſcaped a violent and untimely death, moſt of his people being ſtarved. Of which, more hereafter.

Touching the reſt of theſe Provinces, we can ſay but little; and that little of no great note or certainty; but that they differ for the moſt part from one another, both in ſpeech & behaviour; each Village under a ſeveral King, and each in continual quarrel with its next Neighbours; whom if they overcome, they eat. At leiſure times they live by hunting, and the fleſh of Elephants. And amongſt theſe, but more upon the Borders of the *Abaſſine* Empire, I place the *Galla*, a Nationleſs Nation as it were, without houſe or dwelling, without Law or Government, as barbarous and horrid as the *Agags* (whom ſome call *Jagge* or *Giacqui*) are affirmed to be, who watching their advantages, and joyned together in ſome Arts of doing miſchief, have made of late ſuch Deſolations in the Countries of the *Preſter-John*.

2. MONOMOPATA.

MONOMOTAPA, BENOMOTANA, or BENOMOTAXA (for by all these names it is called) is bounded on the North, with the River *Cuama*, by which and the Mountain of *Magnice*, it is parted from *Zanzibar*; on the West, and South, by the River of the *Holy Ghost*, by which separated from *Cafraria*; and on the East, by the main Ocean. So that it is almost an Island; said to contain in compass 750 *Spanish* leagues or 3250 *Italian* miles.

The Air hereof is said to be very temperate, and the Countrey very good and pleasant, yet full of Forrests. Well watered, besides the two great Rivers before mentioned, with the Streams of 1 *Panami*, 2 *Luanga*, 3 *Arruga*, 4 *Mangeano*, and certain others, which carry gold with them in their sands. By means whereof it hath not only abundance of Corn, but great store of Pasturage; on which they breed infinite Herds of Cattel, and other Beasts very large and great, such store of Elephants, that they kill 5000 yearly for no other reason, but to make Merchandise of their Teeth: their *Gold*-Mines great and small, reckoned to 3000; some in the hills of *Magnice*, others in the Province of *Matuca* and *Boro*: the places where the Mines are, known without further art in the discovery of them, by the dryness and barrenness of the soil; as if Nature could not hoord up gold in her spacious bosom, but she must needs be barren of all good works.

The People are of mean stature, and black complexions, but strong and active, couragious, and of such footmanship, that they out-run Horses. Their apparel *Cotton-Cloth*, which they make or buy from some other place: their Diet Flesh, Fish, Rice, Mill, and an Oyl called *Susiman*. Their Religion, *Paganism* for the most part; yet they worship not Idols, but believe in one God only, which they call *Mozimo*; and seem not much averse from the *Christian* faith, to which one of their Kings was once converted. They punish nothing more severely than *Witchcraft*, *Adultery*, and *Theft*: and in the punishment of *Delinquents* they use no Prisoners, but execute them as soon as apprehended; which is the reason that the Vulgar have no doors to their houses, that being a priviledge for the Nobles. They may have as many wives as they will, but the first the principal, and her Children only to be heirs: the women here very much respected (as a second *England*) the Emperour himself, if he meeteth any of them in the streets, he giveth them the way. Not to be married, till their *Menstrua* or Natural purgations testifie their ability for conception; and therefore they solemnize the first *Flux* thereof with a liberal Feast.

Provinces of most note in it, and adjoyning to it, but reckoned as Members of this Empire, are

1. *Matuca*, rich in Mines of Gold, the Inhabitants whereof are called *Botonghi*; who though they dwell between the *Line* and the *Tropick*, have in the winter such deep snows on the tops of their Mountains, that if they come not speedily down, they are frozen to death.

2. *TORRA* or *BUTUA*, extended from the mouth of the River of the *Holy Ghost*, or *di Spirito Santo*, to *Cabo Corrientes* (*Caput Curventium* in the *Latines*) wealthy in fat pastures, and great herds of Cattel; more in her unexhaustible Mines of Gold. Mines memorable for a large, and in those times an impregnable Fortress, built formerly by some forrein Prince to secure the Mines; built of square stone, and every stone of marvellous greatness, without any sign of cement or other mortar; the walls hereof 25 spans thick, but the height not answerable; over the Gate certain characters written, which the most learned of the *Moors* could never read. Perhaps the work of some of the *Æthiopian* or *Abassine* Emperours, when their power and Empire was at the highest. By the Inhabitants who conceive it to be a work beyond humane power, it is thought to have been built by Devils: but by those who take *Sofala* for the Land of *Ophir*, ascribed to *Solomon*, though situate 510 miles more Westward than *Sofala*, by their own accompt. The Air here very cold, by reason of the sharp blasts coming from the *Pole-Antartick*; so much the colder, in that they have no wood, or other fewel, but what they make themselves of the dung of their Cattel.

3. *BORO*, and 4 *QUITICUI*, both furnished with Gold also in their Mines and Rivers, but not so pure as that of *Torra* and *Matuca*; yet such as serves their turn so well, as to spoil all industry: the people here being very careless in providing necessaries, which they presume the *Moors* (I mean the *Arabian Moors*) will bring them in exchange hereof.

5 *INHABAN*, governed by a King of its own, but Vassal and Tributary to the Emperour of *Monomotapa*, the King whereof in the year 1560, was Christned by *Gonsalvo Silveria* a *Spanish Jesuite*, by the name of *Constantine*; his Queen baptized by the name of *Mary*: but I find nothing of the further progress of *Christianity*. Touching 6 *Matana*, 7 *Melemba*, 8 *Buinbebe*, 9 *Berteca*, and 10 *Bavagul*, five other Provinces of this Empire, I can meet with little but their names.

Cities of note here are not many, hardly Towns or Villages; the houses being here so thin, that from the border of *Sofala* to the Fort of *Torra*, being 510 miles, as before is said, there is no sign of any building either old or new. The principal of those that be, 1 *Tongum* in the Province of *Inhamban*, and the Seat-royal of those Kings; memorable for the baptism of the King and Queen, which was there performed. 2 *Simbus*, supposed to be so called from the *Agisymba* of *Ptolomy*, the chief Town of the Province of *Torre*, or *Banet*; distant from *Sofala* one and twenty days journey, and neighboured by the remains or ruines of the old Fortress before described. 3 *Benomotaxa*, where the King or Emperour makes his usual residence, giving this name to the whole Kingdom, but taking it from the King himself, whom they call *Benomotaxa* or *Monomotapata*, the word in their language signifying a King or Emperour.

The King hereof accounted one of the greatest of *Africk*, hath under his command, besides the Provinces described, some part of *Cafraria*. Of great Riches in regard of his Mines of Gold, which so abundantly supply all the Royal occasions, that he exacteth no kind of Tribute from his Subjects, but some certain days service in his Works; and from his Nobles Gifts and Presents, without which none of them are to come before him. His Forces great, the multitudes of men considered; but weak for want of skill to train them, and Arms wherewith to fit them for Modern service; the Arms they most use being only Darts and Targets. For which cause, (and in regard the people of the subject Kingdoms are so prone to *Rebellions*, that he is fain to keep the Heirs of the *Tributary* Kings as Hostages of their Fathers Loyalty) he wageth *mercenary* Souldiers of other Nations, whom he distributeth abroad in his several Provinces: and amongst these it is affirmed, that he hath a strong Battalion of *Amazons*, a Warlike Race of Women, who inhabit about the Lake of *Zambre*, and the out-skirts

of *Zanzibar*, compared by ſome for their fidelity and proweſs, to the *Turkiſh Janizaries*. And yet not truſting wholly to the faith of theſe *Mercenaries*, it is ſaid that he keeps 200 *Maſtives* for the Guard of his perſon. Much reverenced by his Subjects, by whom he is ſerved upon the knee; and when he cougheth or drinketh, all thoſe that are about him make ſuch a ſhout, that the Town rings of it. In one particular they differ from moſt Nations elſe, which is, That ſuch as are admitted into his preſence, are bound to ſit down, in token of reverence; to ſtand before him, being a ſign of the greateſt Dignity which can be afforded unto any. Once in a fair way to have advanced *Chriſtianity* in his Dominions, when in the year 1560. the King hereof was baptized by *Gonſalvo* the Jeſuit, by the name of *Sebaſtian*, that being the name of the King of *Portugal* then reigning. But afterwards on the ſuggeſtions of ſome *Arabians* then in great place about him, having cauſed the *Jeſuite* to be ſlain, he was warred upon by the King of *Portugal* with an Army of 1600 men, under the conduct of *Franciſco Barretio*; to whom he offered very honourable amends for the injury done: But *Barretio* having in hope ſwallowed all the *Gold* in the Countrey, would not admit of any peaceable agreement; but referred the buſineſs to a battel; in which being overcome himſelf, and his whole Forces not long after conſumed by ſickneſs, the hopes of *Chriſtianity*, and the *Portugals* intereſt in that Kingdom, fell together with him.

3. *CAFRARIA.*

CAFRARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Rio di Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*; on the South and Weſt, with the main Ocean; on the North, extended to ſome parts of *Manicongo*, and the Province of *Zanzibar*. So called from the word *Cafras*, which in the *Arabian* tongue ſignifieth an *Heretick*; a name by them given to *Chriſtians*, *Heathens*, and thoſe of their own Religion alſo, which differ in *Opinion* from them; but given to this Region by ſome late Writers, becauſe deſtitute of another name.

The Country, for ſo much of it as hath been diſcovered, is ſaid to be full of great Herds of Cattel, and flocks of Sheep, abundance of Deer, *Antilopes*, *Baboons*, Foxes, Hares, Oſtriches, *Pelicans*, Herons, Geeſe, Ducks, Pheſants, Partridges; in a word all things neceſſary for the life of man, were it ſomewhat better ſtored with Corn. Exceedingly well watered, and as liberally ſtored with Woods and Forreſts: the Hills thereof intermixt with glaſſie Vallies, that pity 'tis ſo beautiful and rich a Country ſhould be inhabited by ſo barbarous and rude a people; who being utterly unprovided of Towns and Houſes, live in Woods like Beaſts. Of colour black, thick lips, flat noſes, long ſhaped heads, and moſt monſtrous ears, extended far beneath their ſhoulders, by hanging in them Iron-chains, Glaſs, Bullets, Bells, and ſuch ponderous baubles. Theſe Ornaments common to both Sexes, who alſo uſe (for their greater beauty) moſt hideouſly to ſlaſh themſelves in all parts of their bodies, even their very bellies; as if no lace could better ſort with their naked skins; with which only, except ſome flap of an Hide or other leather to hide their privities, they are here apparelled.

Their beſt habits for the moſt part are the Hides of Beaſts, undreſſed, unfaſhioned, juſt as they tear them from the fleſh; but when they cloath themſelves with Sheep-skins, they have ſo much wit as to wear their fleece next to their bodies in cold weather, which at other times they expoſe (with no ſmall pride and glory) to the open view. Their voice ſo inarticulate, that it is hard to be diſtinguiſhed into words and ſyllables; which being compared with that bruitiſhneſs, which commonly appeareth in all their actions, makes it hard to ſay, whether the people generally may be thought to be men in the skins of beaſts, or beaſts created in the likeneſs and ſhape of men. But they make a greater uſe of their Cattle, than for Garments only, their raw fleſh ſerving them for food, and the Guts for Ornament, which hang about their Necks uncleanſed, and with all the filth in them, in as great a bravery as Ropes of Pearl, or Chains of Gold in more civil Countreys. Gold here ſo vilified, that they exchange it gladly for Braſs, or Iron, and that not only quantity for quantity, and weight for weight, but in ſuch ſenſeleſs diſproportion, as rendreth Braſs and Iron the more excellent metals.

But amongſt all the ſeveral Nations which inhabit this moſt flouriſhing Countrey, none are more barbarous than thoſe whom they call the *Imbians*, dwelling not far from the *Cape of Good Hope*; tall, ſquare, and ſtrong, addicted always to War and *Rapine*, and feeding on the fleſh both of their conquered Enemies, and their dying Friends, whoſe death they haſten for the *Shambles*; The Sculls of whom they uſe for their drinking Cups. Their Weapons poyſoned Arrows, and Poles burnt at the end: And in their Wars they always carry *Fire* before them, menacing thereby to roaſt or boyl all ſuch as they overcome. Their King (if ſuch a ſacred Name become ſuch an impious Monſter) they account for *Lord* of all the Earth; as the *Portugals*, of all the Seas: and he with the old Giant-like Arrogance, not only threatneth the deſtruction of Men, but ſhooteth his poyſoned arrows againſt *Heaven* it ſelf, as often as the rain or heat offends him. In the year 1589. about 80000 of them made an inrode into *Zanzibar*, laid deſolate all the Countrey as far as *Mombaza*, which City they beſieged, ſacked and devoured the people of it; which Tragedy we have heard before, in our deſcription of *Mombaza*, a Realm of *Zanzibar*.

Towns here are none, ſcarce ſo much as Houſes; and thoſe ſo mean, that they deſerve not to be ſo called: except it be ſome ſheds on the Sea-ſides, for the uſe of Saylors. Of moſt note in it, is *Soldania*, a large and capacious Road, about fifteen or ſixteen Leagues on the North-Weſt from the *Cape of Good Hope*: not ſo much noted for the buildings adjoyning to it (if there be any ſuch) as the bay it ſelf; environed on all ſides with a pleaſant Countrey, enriched with variety of Herbs, not only pleaſing to the ſence, but very Medicinal for many diſeaſes, eſpecially for thoſe that are troubled with the *Scorbute* (or *Scurvy*, as we uſe to call it,) the Hills adjoyning, ſtored with great multitudes of Cattel, both Sheep and Cows, though leſs in ſize than thoſe in theſe Northern parts: great helps unto our Sea-men in their Eaſtern Voyages; for here ſuch as are to ſayl towards the *Indies*, uſe to take in freſh water, and make proviſion of things neceſſary for ſo long a Voyage. I have heard that ſome of our *Engliſh* ſhips in their return from the *Eaſt-Indies*, ſeized on two Savages, living near this Bay, whom they brought on Ship-board, with an intent to carry them into *England*, to the end that having learned the *Engliſh* tongue, we might be more particularly informed by them of the Eſtate and Affairs of this Countrey. One of theſe who was called *Goore*, being brought to *London*, (for the other died upon the way) was dieted and cloathed according to the *Engliſh* faſhion, gratified alſo with braſs Rings, Beads and ſuch other things, by which they thought they might moſt gain upon him to affect the change of his condition. But *home is home, though it be but homely*, as the ſaying is. For this poor wretch having learned ſo much *Engliſh* as to bemoan his own misfortunes, would throw himſelf upon the ground, and cry out with great anguiſh and vexation of ſpirit, *Goore home go, Soldania go, Goore home*

home go; out of which unquietneſs of humour, when they could not get him, they ſent him back in the next Ships which were bound for the *Indies*. After which time, as oft as he ſaw any Ship with *Engliſh* Colours, he would joyfully make towards the Bay with Guts and Garbage hanging about his neck (as their cuſtom is) and readily perform all good offices towards them; yet ſo, that it was found withal, that by diſcovering to the Natives how low eſteem the *Engliſh* had of Braſs and Iron, they thenceforth raiſed the value of thoſe richer Metals, which formerly they had parted with for ſuch ſorry trifles, as have been ſpoken of before.

But that which is of moſt conſideration in all this Country, is the *Cape* it ſelf; diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the Conduct of *Bartholomew Diaz*, in their firſt *Indian* undertakings; by whom, for the continual Tempeſts which he found about it, was firſt called *Tormentoſa*. But afterwards the *Portugals* having doubled the *Cape*, and thereby finding good hopes of a proſperous voyage, they cauſed it to be called *Cabo di Bunna Sperauza*, or the *Cape of good Hope*: *Vaſques di Gamma*, the firſt diſcoverer of this way to the wealth of *India*, being then their *Admiral*, *Anno* 1597. It conſiſteth of three great points or headlands, of which that which is neareſt us, is the *Cape of good Hope*: the middlemoſt hath the name of *Cabo Falſo*, becauſe miſtaken for the other, by ſome of the *Portugals*, returning homewards; the third called *Cabo della Guglia* or the *Cape of Needles*, by reaſon of thoſe ſharp points which ſhoot towards the Sea. On the top of the *Cape*, a large and pleaſing Plain, adorned with great variety of flowers, and covered with a Carpet of graſs; it is called the *Table* of the *Cape*, and yieldeth a large proſpect over the Sea on all ſides. The Sea here is very rough and tempeſtuous, and hath to the *Spaniards* proved oftentimes very unkind: whereupon a *Spaniſh* Captain being ſore vexed with a ſtorm, expoſtulated with GOD, why he ſuffered his *good Catholicks* to endure ſuch torments; and permitted the *Engliſh Heretieks*, and Blaſphemers, to paſs ſo eaſily.

The Countrey is not ſubjected to any one Prince, the *Natives* being governed by the *Chiefs* of their ſeveral *Clans*; nor find I hitherto that either the *Portugals* or *Spaniards*, have took poſſeſſion of any one part of it, in the name of the whole. So that for ought I know, the beſt title to it doth belong to the King of *England*; for whom poſſeſſion was taken of it in the Reign of King *James*, by one Captain *Fitz-Herbert*, who called the *Aſcent* unto the *Table* King *James his Mount*. But whether this Act of his beget any good title, or whether the title of a Countrey lying ſo far off be held worth the owning, I leave to be determined of by *Lawyers* and *Stateſmen*.

4 *MANICONGO.*

MANICONGO is bounded on the South with *Cafraria*, and the Mountains of the *Moon*; on the Weſt with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North with the Realm of *Bein*, and other parts of the Land of the *Negroes*; and on the Eaſt with *Zanzibar*, and ſome part of the *Abaſſine* Empire. So called from *Congo* or *Manicongo*, the principal of thoſe many Kingdoms which are united in this Name.

The Air hereof ſo temperate, that their Winter, is like the *Autumn* in *Rome*; inſomuch as the people do not uſe to change their garments, or to make more *fire* then than at other times: the tops of the Mountains free from cold, and the nights ſo equal to the days, that for the greateſt part of the year there is little difference; the Countrey being ſituate under the *Æquator*, though more of it on the North than the South thereof. Not over-hot notwithſtanding in the heats of ſummer, by reaſon of the cool winds which then blow continually; and the great dews; which falling in the night make ſome compenſation for the extream fervour of the day. The ſoyl ſo exceeding fruitful in the production of herbs, plants, fruits, and ſuch ſtore of Paſturage; that they have here great herds of Cattel, large flocks of ſheep, plenty of Goats, Stags, Deer, Hares and Conies: Elephants of that bigneſs, that their teeth weigh 200 pounds; and Serpents of ſo vaſt a bulk, that they will eat a whole Deer at once; not to ſay any thing of their *Fowl*, both wild and tame, which they have here in great abundance.

The people of mean ſtature, black of complexion, thick lips, and having the apple of the eye of divers colours, which makes them ghaſtly to behold; ſtrong and long-lived, with very little hair on their heads, but that all naturally curled. In *Religion* for the moſt part *Heathens*, ſome worſhiping the Sun and Moon, others the Earth, as the Mother and Nurſe of all things; and ſome again, wild Beaſts and Serpents. So populous, that without any ſenſible diminution of their infinite numbers, it is ſuppoſed that they ſell 28000 *Slaves* to the *Portugals* yearly; by whom they are ſent into *Braſil*, there to work in the Mines and Sugar-houſes. The *Chriſtian* faith admitted in ſome few of their Provinces, but ſpecially in that of *Congo*; where firſt preached, in the reign of *John* the 2d, King of *Portugal*, *An.* 1490. by *Gonzalvo de Suſa*; who having converted and baptized the Kings Uncle, and one of his Sons, prevailed ſo far upon the King, that in the end he and his Queen, and many of his principal Subjects, did embrace the *Goſpel*. Received there by the people with ſuch infinite joy, that when their firſt *Biſhop* came to live amongſt them, they cauſed the ways from the Sea-ſide to the City of *Banza* (being 150 miles) to be covered with Mats; and offered to him all the way as he went, Lambs, Chickens, Kids, Partridges, Fiſh, Veniſon, and other neceſſaries, to teſtify their rejoycings in that happy change. And though many of the Subjects, in the other Provinces were *baptized* accordingly, and for a time embraced the Faith; yet after ſome ſmall trial of it they relapſed to their former *Heatheniſm*; either unable, or not willing to conform to ſo ſtrict a Rule.

Principal Rivers of this Countrey. 1 *Bengo*, 2 *Coanza* 3 *Dande*, 4 *Barbela*, 5 *Ambrizi*, 6 *Lana*, 7 *Zaire*. This laſt the greateſt of them all, if not of all *Africk* alſo: Of which, though we have ſpoke already, we ſhall add this here, That it falleth into the *Æthiopick* Sea with ſo great a violence, that for ten miles commonly, for fifteen ſometimes, the waters of it do retain their natural ſweetneſs; not intermingled nor corrupted with the ſalt Sea-waters. Nor can the people ſayl above five miles againſt the ſtream, by reaſon of the *Cataracts*, or huge falls which it hath from the Mountains; more terrible and turbulent than thoſe of *Nile*. And for the Mountains of moſt note, they are 1 *Sierre Complida*, or the long Mountain; 2 *Mons Cryſtalli*, or the *Cryſtalline* Mountain, ſo called from the abundance of *Cryſtal*, which is found therein, 3 *Sierra de Sol*, the Mountain of the *Sun*, of exceſſive height: 4 *Montes Sal Nitri*, ſo called from the abounding in that kinde of Mineral; and 5 the Mountains of *Cabambe*, rich in Mines of Silver.

It containeth in it many large and ample Provinces, of which we have this general muſter in the ſtile Imperial; wherein their King, calleth himſelf King of *Congo*, *Bamba*, *Sango*, *Samdi*, *Bangu*, *Batti*, *Pemba*, *Abundi*, *Motana*, *Quiſſomo*, *Angola*, and *Cacango*; Lord of the *Congimes*, *Amoxale*, *Languelungi*, *Anxuichi*, *Cucchi*, and *Zoanghis*. Many of theſe not ſo well diſcovered, as to afford us any

matter fit for our diſcourſe; the principal of thoſe that be are,

1. *ANGOLA*, bounded on the South with *Cafraria*; on the North, with the Provinces of *Bamba* and *Pemba*; on the Eaſt, with ſome part of *Zanzibar*; on the Weſt, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of *Silver*, and moſt excellent *Copper*; ſome ſtore of Kine and Horſes brought out of *Europe*, which they kill rather for their tails, (the wearing whereof is held for a ſpecial ornament,) than keep for any other uſe: their chiefeſt diet being *Dogs*, which they fat for the *Shambles*; and to that dainty ſo affected, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would give 20 ſlaves and upwards for a good large Dog. By this we may conjecture ſomewhat at the nature of the people, who beſides this, are ſaid to be much given to *ſorcery*, and *divinations* by the flight of Birds; Skilful in *medicinal* herbs and poyſons, and by familiarity with the *Divil*, able to tell things to come. Permitted as moſt *Pagans* are, to have as many wives as they will; who with the reſt of the women, whether maids, or widows, uſe at the firſt ſight of every *New-Moon* to turn up their bare bums in defiance of her, as the cauſe of their troubleſome purgations.

In this countrey are the mountains called *Cantabaries* rich in Mines of Silver; but thoſe Mines not ſuffered to be digged, for fear of drawing ſome unneceſſary war upon them: ſo that they uſe *Glaſſe beads* for Money, and therewith alſo do adorn the perſons of greateſt eminence. Their principal City called *Cabazza*, is about 150 miles from the Sea, and the Royal reſidence of their Kings; but not elſe obſervable.

This Countrey was firſt diſcovered by the *Portugals*, under the conduct of *Diego Can*, *Anno* 1486. the King hereof at that time *Vaſſal* unto him of *Congo*, and ſo continued till that King did embrace the Goſpel: whereupon they revolted from him, and have ſince ſubſiſted of themſelves without ſuch dependance. At firſt they held good correſpondency with the *Portugals*, and allowed them free Traffick in their Dominions: But after ther revolt from the King of *Congo*, with whom the *Portugals*, were in league, they put to death as many as they found in *Cabazza*, *An.* 1578. under colour of ſome pretended treaſon. To be revenged of this foul murder, *Paul Diaz*, Governour of theſe parts for the King of *Portugal*, arming ſuch people as he had, with two Gallies and ſome other Veſſels paſſed up the River of *Coanza*, waſting the Countrey on both ſides. Againſt whom the King of *Angola* raiſed an Army of a *Million* of men (as ſome Writers tell us;) but amongſt thoſe multitudes of men, there were ſo few Souldiers, that an handful of the *Portugals*, aided with ſome of the Forces of the King of *Congo*, gave him a notable defeat, *An.* 1582. Since that, the Trade with *Portugal* was revived again, and the King hereof hath expreſſed ſome good affections unto *Chriſtianity*, ſending unto the King of *Congo* for ſome *Prieſts* to inſtruct him in it, but obtained them not; the ſtate of *Religion* in that Kingdom being then declining. The *Portugals* having thus gotten the uper hand, built, or repaired a ſtrong Fort, ſituate near a convenient Bay, by which they did not only ſecure their Trade, but command a great part of the Countrey, till diſpoſſeſſed thereof by the treachery and falſhood of the *Hollanders*, *An.* 1640. or thereabouts: For the *Portugals* having withdrawn themſelves from the Crown of *Spain*, a Ceſſation from all Hoſtility, with them was proclaimed in *Holland*, and not long after a firm peace made between the Nations; in the Articles whereof it was conditioned, that this peace ſhould not begin in the *Eaſt-Indies*, till the end of the year, nor in *Braſil*, till the end of half a year from the making thereof. Which being obtained, they gave order to their Fleets and Forces which were abroad, to make themſelves Maſters of any thing then belonging to the *Portugals*, which they could lay hold on, who following theſe inſtructions, and Anchoring near the Fort of *Angola*, were by the *Portugals* received with joy into the Caſtles as their ſpecial friends, which preſently they poſſeſſed themſelves of, turning the poor *Portugals* in a very weak Bark to ſeek new adventures. But of this more hereafter in the Iſle of St. *Thomas*.

To this King belong alſo the two Provinces of *Matana*, and *Quiſoma*, though both uſed in the titles of the King of *Congo*: of which the firſt lying towards the Sea, is ſaid to be of a wholſome air, and a fertile ſoil; outwardly furniſhed with fruits, and inwardly with Mines of *Chriſtal* and other metals; but not very rich, for want of ſome convenient Haven to bring on commerce. The other lying towards a great *Lake* called *Aque Lunda*, was once governed after the manner of a *Common-wealth*; but tributary at that time to the King of *Congo*, as of later times to the Kings of *Angola*, by whom brought under this new yoke by reaſon of the aid they had given the *Portugals* in their wars againſt him.

2. *BAMBA* hath on the South the River of *Coanza*, by which parted from *Angola*; on the North, the River *Ambrize*, by which divided from *Sorgo*; on the Eaſt, *Pemba*; on the Weſt, the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean. The Countrey rich in Mines of Silver, well ſtored with Beaſts and Birds, as well tame as wild. Amongſt the Birds, *Parrots* both green and gray, and many which are taught to ſing; not much inferiour for their muſick to the birds of *Canaries*. Amongſt the Beaſts of moſt note, is that called the *Zebra*, ſhaped like a *Mule*; but from the ridge of the back to the belly ſo ſtreaked with lines of white, black, and yellow, and thoſe ſtreaks ſo naturally ſet in ſuch even proportion, as yieldeth to the eye a moſt pleaſing object. But wild, and of ſo ſwift a foot, that *velox ut Zebra*, to be *as ſwift as a Zebra*, is grown into a Proverb amongſt the *Portugals*. The men ſo ſtrong, that it is ſaid of them, that at one blow they will cut off the head of an Ox, or ſtrike a Slave quite thorow the middle, into two pieces; and to be able to carry in their arms a Veſſel of wine, weighing 325 pound weight, containing the fourth part of a But; and hold it ſo till it be quite drawn out. It containeth in it many *Signiories*, moſt of them called by the names of their principal Towns. The chief of which, 1 S. *Paul*, ſituate on the Sea-ſide, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Loanda*; inhabited for the moſt part by *Portugal* Families. 2 *Bamba*, which giveth name to this Province, and is ſituate about 100 miles from the Sea, betwixt the Rivers of *Loſe* and *Ambrizi*.

3. *PEMBA* hath on the Weſt, *Bamba*; on the Eaſt, the Lake *Zombre*, and the River *Barbela*; on the North, *Batta*; and on the South, *Angola*. Eſteemed to be the richeſt and moſt pleaſant Countrey of all *Manicongo*; the Fields in all parts thereof beſet with *Palm-trees*, but intermixt with other fruit-trees, which are always green. The water of ſo good a nature, that it never hurteth any that drink of it: the Air exceeding wholſom, and the earth as fruitful; productive of all ſorts of grain, but ſpecially of that which they call *Luco*, in form like *muſtard-ſeed*, but bigger, which they grinde in an hand-mill, and make thereof a Bread not inferiour to Wheat. The people much reclaimed from their ancient *Barbariſm* ſince the coming of the *Portugals* thither; whom they imitate both in behaviour and apparel. So well skilled in the vertues of *Medicinal* herbs, that every one is his own *Phyſician*, *Chyrurgion*, and *Apothecary*. Anciently cloathed with Mats, and trimmed up with Feathers; retained ſtill

by

by the *Villagers* and poorer sort, in some part of the Countrey. Their chief City formerly had the name of *Banza*, so called, because the Kings Court (as the word doth signifie,) but since the receiving of the *Gospel* it is called S. *Saviours*: distant from the Sea 150 miles, beautified (since it became *Christian*) with a *Bishops* See, and a fair *Cathedral*, in which are 28 *Canons*, with other Officers, and Ornaments accustomably belonging to the like Foundations. The Town it self situate on the side of a large and lofty Mountain; on the top whereof is a spacious Plain, two Dutch miles in compass, full of Villages, Burroughs, and scattered houses; which are thought to have 100000 persons, most of them *Portugals*, and their Servants.

4. *BATTA* hath on the West and South, *Pemba*; on the East, the Mountains of the *Sun*, and those called *Salnitri*; on the North, *Pango*. Of the Soil and People there is nothing singular to be said, but that the Inhabitants hereof are more Military, and better furnished for the Wars than the rest of these Provinces: necessitated thereunto by the ill neighbourhood of a fierce and savage people, dwelling about the spurs and branches of the Mountains before mentioned, whom they call *Jagges* or *Giacchi*. These naturally and originally of the Land of *Negroes*, abandoned the parts about *Sierra Leona*, where before they dwelt, and to the number of 12000 fell into the Mountainous parts of this Region, under the Conduct of one *Elembe*, where they are since grown into a people, and become a terrour to their Neighbours. Greedy devourers of mans flesh, which they prefer before that of Beeves or Mutton; not yet so qualified by the change of their Countrey, as to build houses, sow or plant, or to breed up Cattel; finding it far the easier life, to maintain themselves by the labour and spoil of others. And which is yet most strange of all, though they have each of them many Wives, ten or twenty a peece, yet they have no Children, but strangle them as soon as born, lest they should be an hinderance to their often wandrings. But as *Pliny* once said of the *Esseni*, *Gens æterna est in qua nemo nascitur*; so we may also say of these, that they do not want succession, though they breed no children: selecting out of their Captives and stollen Children, some of either Sex, (but neither steal nor take them captive, under twenty years old) to the *Seminary* (as it were) of a new posterity. Against these *Monsters* those of *Batta* are armed continually, not otherwise able to defend themselves, their Wives and Children, from their hands and teeth: insomuch as this one Province, though none of the biggest, is able to raise 70000 men, well armed, and fit for any service. The principal of their Towns is *Batta*, which gives name to the Province situate on the Banks of the River *Lelanda*, and the Seat of the *Vice-Roy*, who is always of the *Blood Royal*, honoured sometimes with sitting at the Kings own Table, which none else may do; and of so great authority in all *Consultations*, that no body dares to contradict him.

5. *PANGO*, is bounded on the South with *Batta*; on the East, extended to the Mountains of the *Sun*, which close up this Countrey: on the North with *Sunda*: and on the West, with parts of *Pemba*, and *Sango*. Of the people, little singular, of the Countrey less. Neighboured on the North-East towards *Sierra de Christal*, with the *Languelungi*, supposed by some to be the *Æthiopes Hesperii*, spoken of by *Ptolomy*: a barbarous Nation, but of so considerable power, that they are found amongst the rest in the *Stile Imperial*. This once a Kingdom of it self not subject till of late times to the Kings of *Congo*. The chief Town of it called *Pango*, is seated on the Western Bank of the River *Barbele*, the ordinary residence of the *Vice-Roy*, and the name-giver to the whole Province.

6 *SUNDA*, is bounded on the South with *Batta*: on the North with the great River *Zaire*: on the East with *Barbele*: and on the West with part of *Songo*. The Countrey rich in several Metals, but the Inhabitants prefer Iron before any other, because it doth afford them *Materials* for Swords, Knives, and Armour; well furnished also with *Martrons*, *Sables*, and other Furrs of great esteem among Foreign Merchants. This is the best *Region* of this *Kingdom*, not above 40 miles in breadth, betwixt *Batta* and the River of *Zaire*: nor much more in length. Their chief City hath the name of *Sunda*, which it communicateth to the whole.

7. *SONGO*, is bounded on the East with *Batta* and *Anzichana*: on the West with the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean: on the North with the Kingdom of *Loango*: and on the South with the River *Ambrizi*, by which parted from the Realm of *Bamba*. It lieth on both sides of the great River *Zaire*, which is here so turbulent and broad, and so full of *Islands*, that the one part of it hath little or no commerce with the other. The chief Town hereof called *Songo*, gives this name to the Countrey; in which is nothing singular for the Soil or People.

8. *ANZICHANA*, hath on the West, part of *Songo* and *Loango*; extended thence into the East, as far almost as the Lake of *Zembre*; on the North, some part of the Land of *Negroes*: on the South, the *Zaire*. So called from the *Anziqui*, the Inhabitants of it: The cruellest *Caunibals* in the World; for they do not only eat their Enemies, but their Friends and Kinsfolk. And that the may be sure not to want these Dainties, they have *Shambles* of mans flesh, as in other parts of Beef or Mutton. So covetous withal, that if their *Slaves* will yield but a penny more when sold joynt by joynt, than if sold alive; they will cut them out, and sell them so upon the *Shambles*. Yet with these barbarous qualities they have many good. Affirmed to be so cunning at the Bow and Arrows, that they will discharge 28 Arrows (for so many do their *Quivers* hold) before the first of them falls to the ground: and of so great fidelity to their Masters, and to those which trust them, that they will rather chuse to be killed, then either to abuse their trust, or betray their Master: for that cause more esteemed by the *Portugals*, than their other *Slaves*. And for the same, and that only, worthy of so good a Countrey; said to be rich in Mines of Copper, and very plentiful of *Sanders* both red and gray, which tempered with *Vinegar*, is found by the *Portugals* to be a certain remedy against the *Pox*; as the smoak thereof against the *Head-ache*. Towns they have none, or none at least of any reckoning, which deserve place here.

9. *LOANGO* hath on the East *Anziebana*; on the West the *Æthiopick*, or *Atlantick* Ocean; on the North *Benin*, one of the Realms of *Guiena*, in the Land of *Negroes*; and on the South, the Province of *Songo*, from which parted by the River *Loango*, whence it hath its name. The Countrey very hot, as lying under the *Line*, but well peopled, indifferently fruitful, and more stored with Elephants, than any other of these parts; stretching in length 200 miles within the Land, and for the most part very well watered. The Inhabitants, whom they call *Bramaes*, by Religion *Heathens*, but of old accustomed, as the *Anziqui* and others of these barbarous *Africans*) unto *Circumcision*. Governed by a King of their own, once subject to the Kings of *Congo*: but of late times, both he

and

and the King of the *Anziqui* (for they are also under the command of one *Soveraign* Prince) have freed themselves from that subjection; though still the King of *Congo* be called King of both. Their King they call by the name of *Mani Loanga*. Their Towns of note, 1 *Penga*, the Haven to the rest. 2 *Morumba*. 30 Leagues more Northwards, and within the Land; the Inhabitants of which Towns, being more civil than the Rest, apparel themselves with the leaves of *Palm-Trees*; but not so well skilled in the nature of that excellent Tree, as the more civilized people of the Realms of *Congo*, who out of the leaves thereof well cleansed and purged, draw a fine long thred, of which they make Velvets, Damasks, Sattans, Taffaties, Sarcenets, and the like fine Stuffs.

10. Having thus looked upon the chief Provinces of this Kingdom seated on the Continent, let us next look upon the Islands. The principal of which *LOANDA*, situate over against the Town of S. *Paul*, in the province of *Bamba*, said to be first made out of the sands of the Ocean, and the mire of *Coanza*, cast into an heap, and at last made into an Island. Now beautified with a very fair Haven, of the same name with the Island, possessed by the *Portugals*. The Island destitute of Rivers, but so well furnished with waters, that every where within less than half a yard digging, they find sweet and good Waters, so contrary to the Sea from whence they come, that when the Sea ebbs from it, they be salt and brackish; when it floweth towards the Island, then most fresh and sweet. But most remarkable is this Island for the *Cockle-fishing*, which the Women going a little into the Sea, take up together with the sands, in baskets, and part them from the sand, as they lye on the shore; the *shells* of which being naturally distinguished into divers colours, serve over all the Kingdom of *Congo*, instead of *money*; which is a matter of such moment unto this King, that he entertains a Governour in the Island for no other reason, but to take care about this fishing.

Besides this, there are many Islands in the River of *Zaire*, now subject to the Kings of *Congo*, but heretofore in continual Wars against them: fighting in Boats which they made of the bodies of a Tree, by them called *Licande*. The Tree so big, that two or three men or more are not able to fathom it: insomuch that many times a Boat is made of one of the largest of them, able to contain 200 men. Upon the shores of these Islands, and in others of their *Bayes* and *Creeks*, they have so great numbers of *Anobieves*, that in Winter time they will leap upon the Land of their own Accord.

Compacted of these several Members, and of the rest expressed in the *Stile Imperial*, is the Realm of *Congo*: so called from *Congo* the chief Province, but now distinguished from the rest by the name of *Pemba*; which being of more power, or of better fortune, than any of the other, or of all together, hath given both Law and name unto them. Discovered by the *Portugals*, under *Diego Chan*, *An.* 1486. at what times these Kings were at the greatest: called by their Subjects *Mani Congo*, or the Kings of *Congo*, the word *Mani*, signifying in their Language a Prince or Lord; the name communicated since to the Kingdom also. Of their affairs before this time there is nothing certain. What hath since hapned in this Kingdom, may best be seen in the ensuing Catalogue of

The KINGS of CONGO.

1486. 1 *John*, not so called till converted to the Faith of *Christ*; and then *Baptized* by this name, in honour of *John* the Second, King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1490. in whose Reign this discovery and *Conversion* hapned.

2 *Alphonso*, eldest Son of *John*, zealous in the advancement of the *Christian* Faith, and for that opposed by *Panse Aquitine* his younger Brother: whom with a very small Army, zealously invocating the assistance of *Jesus*, he is said to have vanquished. A Prince, who during his long Reign of 50 years did seriously promote the *Gospel*, and caused all *Idols* in his Kingdom to be overthrown: and Churches to be built, and furnished in convenient places.

3 *Pedro*, the Son of *Alphonso*, in whose time was founded the Colledge of 28 *Canons*, in the *Cathedral* Church of S. *Crosse*, in the Town of S. *Saviours*.

4 *Francisco* the Son of *Pedro*, who reigned not long.

5 *Diego*, or *James*, one of the Kinsmen of *Francisco*, in whose time *Religion* growing into discredit, by the scandalous lives of some of the *Secular Clergy*; *John* the Third, King of *Portugal*, sent four *Jesuits* thither; who are said to have converted in five moneths 5000 persons, and to build three Churches.

6 *Henry*, the brother of *Diego*, after a sharp War touching the Succession, in which were slain all the *Portugals* of S. *Saviours*, except the *Priests*, at last succeeded: not long after slain in battel against the *Anziques*.

7 *Alvarez*, the Son of *Henry*, forced by the *Jagges* or *Giacchi* to abandon *Congo*, and betake himself, together with the *Portugal* Priests, to an Island of the River *Zaire*: where he continued, till restored to his Crown by the Aid of *Sebastian* King of *Portugal*, after by Famine he had lost almost all his company.

8 *Alvarez* II. Son of *Alvarez* the first, who much solicited *Sebastian* and *Henry* Kings of *Portugal*, to send him a new supply of preachers; the old store being wasted in the Islands of *Zaire*.

9 *Alvarez* III. Son to *Alvarez* the Second, not being born in Lawful Wedlock, was opposed by one of his Sisters and a younger Brother, both of Lawful birth; whom he overthrew, *Anno* 1587. and in the place of the Victory founded a Church in honour of the *Virgin Mary*.

Touching the *Forces* and *Revenues* of these Kings of *Congo*, I am able to say nothing certain; but that he is a Prince of great Power and Riches. His *Riches* visible by the great Treasures which he draweth from the *Mines* of Silver

Silver, and of other Metals in his Kingdom; from the Trade of *Cockle-shells*, the only Money of his Realm, which he keeps wholy to himself; the great gain which he makes by *Slaves*, and from Elephants Teeth; the Presents which he hath in way of Tribute from the King of *Angola*. And though it be not easie to say what he layeth up yearly, because he hath not his *Revenue* in Coin, as most Princes have; yet it is thought that he is as rich and well furnished with all things, as any Monarch in *Africk*.

As for his *Forces*, they consist most in the multitudes of his Subjects; which were they well armed and used to the Wars, would make him formidable to the rest of the *African* Princes. And though he hath no Garrisons or Towns of War, but must trust, if once invaded, unto *Castles of Bones*; yet he doth rest secure enough from all fear of danger, except out of *Europe*: being able to raise against his *Rebels*, or any of his invading Neighbours, 400000 men out of *Bamba* only; all armed according to their manner, and 70000 men at least, well exercised in Wars against the *Jagges*, from the Province of *Batta*: besides what may be drawn from his other Provinces.

The *Arms* of this King are *Mars*, five Swords meeting in Base *Sol*: Which Coat was taken by *Alphonso*, the second King in this Catalogue, because in the Battel which he fought against *Panse Aquitine*, he and his Souldiers saw (or supposed they saw) such a number of shining Swords hanging in the Air, with their points turned directly upon the Enemy.

And so much for *ÆTHIOPIA INFERIOR*.

OF
The ISLES of AFRICK.

IN tracing out the Isles of *AFRICK*, we must observe another course than that which we have taken in *Europe* and *Asia*: these Islands not belonging to any part of the *Continent*, nor under the command of any great Prince in *Africk*, in the accompt of whose Estates they might be considered; but being all of them *independent* and *sui juris*, and therefore to be handled by themselves apart. In our *Chorography* of which, and the stories of them, (as far forth as my Authors will direct me in it) I am now to travel; beginning first with those that lie in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, and so proceeding by the *Cape of Good Hope*, through the main *Atlantick* Ocean, to the Streits of *Hercules*: that from thence we may have the shorter passage into *America*, and there σὺν Θεῷ ἡ πᾶς Μῶσις conclude our journey. These then we will consider either joynt, or separate, as delivered to us by the names of 1 The *Æthiopick Islands*. 2 *Socotara*. 3 *Madagascar*. 4 *Mohelia*. 5 *Mauritius*. 6 St. *Hellens*. 7 *Ascention*. 8 St. *Thomas*. 9 The *Princes Island*. 10 The *Island of Annobon*. 11 The *Gorgades*, or Islands of *Cape Vird*. 12 The *Canaries*, or the *Fortunate Islands*. 13 *Madera*. 14. The Island of *Holy Port*, and 15. The *HESPERIDES*; of all which, the four first only are dispersed in the *Red-Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, all the rest scattered up and down in the main *Atlantick*, on this side of the famous Promontory, called the *Cape of Good Hope*.

1. THE ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS.

1. THE *ÆTHIOPICK ISLANDS*, so called, because they lie upon the Coast of *Æthiopia Superior*, together with all those which lie on the further side of *the Cape of Good Hope*, or scattered, or dispersed in the *Red Sea*, or *Indian Ocean*, (for by those names these mighty Oriental Seas are most commonly known) of which we have spoke more at large when we were in *Arabia*, and therefore shall say nothing here which concerns the same, but for the Islands of those Seas, such as we comprehend here under the name and notion of *Æthiopick* Islands, which were only known unto the Ancients, they are more in number than in weight: some of them situate within the Streits of the *Red Sea*, or the Gulf of *Arabia*: others without those Streits, in the open Ocean.

1. Of those within the Streits, not reckoning such as lie upon the shores of *Arabia Felix*, of which we have already spoken; there is 1 *Asiarte*, or *Astrata*, now called *Caiussa*. 2 *Ara Palladis*, so called from some Altar of that Goddess which was there erected. 3 *Gypseris*, by *Pliny* called *Cyris*, but *Gypsus* in *Justinians* Code, renowned in former time for its plenty of metals. 4 *Macaria*, or the *Fortunate Islands*, so called from the fertility and pleasures of it. 5 *Orneon*, or the *Isle of Birds*, from the great plenty of Birds which was found therein. 6 *Daphnis*, by *Ptolomy* called *Daphnine*, opposite to a famous Port-Town of the same name in the Continent. 7 *Bacchias*, so called from *Bacchus*, unto whom consecrated. 8 *Anti-Bacchias*, so named, because opposite to it. 9 *Acanthine*, supposed by some to be now called *Anghotina*. 10 *Insula Diodori*, conceived by the Learned to be the same which is now called *Babel Mandel*, and giveth name unto the *Streits*, or entrance of the Bay of *Arabia*, now called the Streits of *Babel Mandel*. 11 *Isidis Insula*, memorable for a Temple dedicated to the Goddess *Isis*; and for a well frequented Port called *Portus Isidis*; the same which is now called *Pascua*, as *Bel-Forest* thinketh. 12 *Mundi*, an Island in the Bay of *Avalites*, opposite to a noted *Empory* of the same name on the shores of that Bay. Besides all which, we find in *Ptolomy* two Islands by the name of *Thrisitides*; two more, called *Chelonitides*, or *Chabrate*, two others passing by the name of *Gomadeo*; together with the Isles of *Myron*, *Pan*, and that called *Insula Magorum*: which make up one and twenty in all, but of no note or observation in the course of business, or the conduct of humane affairs.

Those of most Note in the open Ocean, which still preserveth the name of the *Red Sea*, and is sometimes called the

the *Indian* ſometimes the *Arabian* Ocean, and by a particular name *Pelagus Hypadis*; are but Four in number, that is to ſay, 1 *Myrica*, by the Tranſlator of *Ptolomy* called *Myrſiaca*; 2, 3, two Iſlands called by the name of *Menan*, a degree more Northwards than the other: and 4 *Amicuſia*, as *Stephanus*; or *Amici Inſula*, as called by *Ptolomy*, the moſt North of all; which I conjecture to be that which is now called by the name of *Socotara*, the moſt noted Iſland of this Sea. I know that many Learned men will have this Iſland to be that, which *Ptolomy* and others of the Ancients call *Dioſcoridis*: but becauſe *Dioſcoridis*, by all thoſe Ancients, is made to be an Iſland of *Arabia Felix*, and *Socotara* by all the Moderns affirmed to be an Iſle of *Africk*; I can by no means yield unto it. Again, it is affirmed by our beſt Modern *Geographers*, that *Socctara* lieth over againſt Cape *Guardafu*, (the *Aromata* of *Ptolomy*, as before is ſaid) from which diſtant not above 30 leagues: which ſite and diſtance ſort well with *Amicuſia*, but can by no means be applyed unto *Dioſcoridis*: *Amicuſia* being placed but two Degrees on the Eaſt of that *Promontory*, in the *Longitude* of 85. whereas *Dioſcoridis* is ſituate from it almoſt four degrees, in the *Longitude* of 86. and 40 *Minutes*; beſides as great, or greater difference in their ſeveral *Latitude*. So that ſuppoſing for granted, that *Socotara* is that Iſland which was anciently called *Amicuſia*; and having cleared my way ſo far, I now proceed to the Deſcription and affairs thereof.

2. SOCOTARA.

2. SOCOTARA, the greateſt Iſland of theſe Shores, is ſituate, as before was ſaid, againſt *Cape Guardafu*, from which diſtant about 30 Leagues, *Abadalenry* a ſmall Iſland lying in the midſt, that is to ſay, 15 Leagues from the *Cape*, and 14 from the *Iſland*. The length hereof 60 miles, 25 the breadth; divided in the middle by craggy Mountains of great height, the top of which are for the moſt part covered with ſands. The Iſland extreamly vexed with Winds, and moleſted with dryneſs, inſomuch as it is deſtitute of moſt things neceſſary for the life of man; affording nothing towards it of the growth of the Earth, but ſome ſmall quantity of Mill, Dates, and ſome kind of Fruits. Provided notwithſtanding of ſome good Paſtures for the breed of Cattel, and liberally furniſhed with Medicinal Drugs, as *Cinnabar*, *Dragons Blood*, which is a *red Gum* iſſuing from the bark of a Tree; and the beſt *Aloes* in the World, from hence called *Aloes Socotrina*.

The people of an *Aſh-colour*, very rude and barbarous; their bread for the moſt part of *Dates*; the reſt of their food being milk and butter, their hair long, and their cloathing only enough to hide their nakedneſs. The *Women* as good Souldiers as the men, countenancing, or occaſioning the tradition of the *Arabians*, that they came from the *Amazons*: And the better Husbands of the two, governing all affairs both within and without. All of them by profeſſion *Chriſtians*, governed by a *Biſhop* of their own, with ſome few *Prieſts*; but ignorant enough of all things which concern *Religion*. More generally *Circumciſed* than *Chriſtned*, though both uſed among them. *Jacobites* in Sect, as the *Abaſſines* their Neighbours are; and zealous worſhippers of the *Croſs*, which they always hang about their Necks. So pertinaciouſly addicted unto *Magick* and therein ſo expert, that they bring incredible things to paſs: not to be weaned from thoſe *black Arts*, though the Biſhop excommunicate all ſuch as uſe them. They hold opinion, That St. *Thomas* ſuffered ſhipwrack upon their Coaſts, as he ſayled towards *India*; and that his Ship being drawn to land, was turned into a Church: but it appeareth neither by their life, or Doctrines, that any *Apoſtolical* man hath ſet foot amongſt them.

They live for the moſt part in *Caves* or *Cabbins*, of no other ſtuff than the boughs of Trees; ſo that we are to look for new Towns among them. The principal, 1 *Zocotara*, giving name to the Iſland, the place of the Kings reſidence, and a Biſhops See. 2 *Tamarind*, and 3 *Deliſha*, two Port-Towns, and reaſonably well traded, in the hands of the Natives: as 4 *Coro*, and 5 *Benin*, two other Ports, poſſeſſed and garriſon'd by the *Portugals*. The King hereof a Vaſſal to the King of *Fartac*, one of the petit Princes of *Arabia Felix*, not far from *Aden*: in Habit and Religion *Turkiſh*: Attended on when the *Relater* was there, *Anno* 1614. by five Camels and five Horſes only, yet thoſe all in the Iſland.

Nigh hereunto are two Iſlands, (thoſe poſſibly which *Ptolomy* calleth *Menan*) the one inhabited by men only, and the other by women, who do meet at their accuſtomed times to preſerve their kind, but make no long ſtay; the Air of the one being found unhealthy for the conſtitution of the other Sex. The other Iſlands of theſe Coaſts, ſcattered up and down in the Bay of *Barbaria*, (but not known by any name in the time of *Ptolomy*) as 1 *Don Garcia*. 2 The Three Brethren. 3 St. *Brandon*. 4 *Francis*, 5 *Maſcadenna*. 6 *Comoro*, and many others of as ſmall note, are not worth the ſpeaking of.

3. MADAGASCAR.

3. MADAGASCAR, the greateſt of the world, is ſituate over againſt *Moſambique* in *Æthiopia Inferior* ſuppoſed to be the *Menuthias* of *Ptolomy*, the only Iſland by him named on the Coaſt of that Countrey; but by the *Portugals* called the Iſle of St. *Lawrence*, becauſe diſcovered by them on the day of that Saint, *An.* 1506. The length hereof affirmed to be 1200 miles, (which is longer than *Italy*) and 4000 in compaſs: the middle part hereof oppoſite to the Promontory, which *Ptolomy* calleth *Praſſum*, now the point of *Moſambique*, from which diſtant 170 miles: in reference to the Heavenly bodies, ſituate from the 17 Degree of Southern *Latitude*, to the 26th.

The Countrey plentiful of all things neceſſary for the life of man, particularly of Mill, Rice, Honey, Wax, Cotton-wool, Sugars, Stags, Goats, Deer, and other Creatures both wild and tame; Limons and other cooling Fruits, ſome ſtore of Ginger, Cloves, but little different from thoſe of *India*, red Sandors, Saffron, Amber, and ſome Mines of Silver, Iron, Gold, and Copper: not to ſay any thing of their Beeves and Muttons, ſo large and good, and ſo good cheap, that for a two-penny Bead, or ſome ſuch trifle, they will ſell beeves and Sheep of good taſte and bigneſs: ſuch numbers of Elephants, that they ſend thence yearly great ſtore of *Ivory*. And amongſt other rare Fruits, they have plenty of thoſe which they call *Cocos*, or *Coconuts*; a kind of *Date* as big as a Cabbage: the liquor in it, about the quantity of a pint, taſtes like Wine and Sugar; the Kernel big enough to content two men: and like *good Ale*, it affords not only meat and drink, but cloathing; as alſo furniture for their houſes, tackle for their ſhips, fewel for the fire, and timber for building; the body of the Tree being ſtrait and high, and towards the top diverſified into many branches. A Countrey far too good for ſo bad a people.

For they, as Travellers report, and Moſt Writers teſtifie, are treacherous, inhoſpitable, ignorant, both of Prayers and Feſtivals; deſtitute of the diſtinction of time into years and moneths, not knowing any proper names for the days of the week, nor able to reckon above ten; naked,

except

except their *privities*, which they cover with Cotton; *Idolaters* in the mid-land parts, and *Mahometans* upon the Shores. Commendable only for their hate to *Polygamy*, and restraining themselves to one Wife; the defiling of the Marriage-bed severely punished: but otherwise so eager upon copulation, that their Boys at the age of twelve years, and their Girls at ten, think they stay too long, if they keep their Virginities any longer: some of them, like *Quartilla* in *Petronius Arbiter*, begin so early, *ut nunquam meminerint se Virgines fuisse*, that they remember not the time when they lost their Maidenheads. Of colour they are black, and of strong composition; their Breasts and Faces cut and pinkt, to appear more beautiful. Much given unto the Wars, well armed according to their Country manner, and exceeding good *Archers*. Amongst them there are some white people, said to come from *China*.

It hath in it many fair Rivers, but their names I find not: and at the mouths of those Rivers some convenient Havens, into which they admit the Foreign Merchants, but suffer none to come on Land; which the Merchant hath no cause to be sorry for, finding himself not safe on Shipboard from their treacherous practices. So that we can give but small account of their Towns and Cities, except it be the bare recital of their names: as, *viz.* 1 S. *Augustines*, on a fair Bay in the South-west point, as 2 *Gangomar* in the North-east of it. 3 *Antabosta*. 4 *Point-Antogil*. 5 *Santo-Jacobo*. 6 *Matatana*. 7 *Angoda*. 8 *Herendo*. 9 *Andro-arco*; and 10 *Roma*, or *New-Rome*, so entituled by some zealous *Romanist*, in hope to have it thought that the Popes of *Rome* have got some footing in this Island.

This Island known, but very imperfectly, in the time of *Marcus Paulus Venetus*, who telleth us many strange things of it: but none more strange than that of the Bird called *Ruck*, of such incredible strength and bigness, that it could snatch up an Elephant as easily as a Kite doth a Chicken. Discovered by the *Portugals* in the year 1506. as before was said; and since frequented by the *English* and *Holland* Merchants: by whom we are informed no further touching the Estate and Affairs thereof, but that it is divided into four parts, under so many Kings, each of them in continual Wars against one another, but well enough agreed to defend themselves against the coming in of Strangers. Yet, as some say, they would be well enough content with an *English* Plantation: either in love to our Nation, whom they acknowledge to be more courteous than the *Portugals*, and not so covetous as the *Dutch*; or else by the strength of our Shipping, and the reputation of our *interest* in it, to keep off all others.

4. *MOHELIA*, & 5 *MAURITIUS Island.*

ADjoyning to *Madagascar*, and as it were attending on it, I find divers Islands; some on the North-west we have 1 *Meottey*. 2 *Chamroe*. 3 *Mohelia*. and 4 *Joanna* Island; on the East, 5 the Island of *Mauritius*, and 6 *Englands Forrest*. Of these *Mauritius* is the greatest, but *Mohelia* the best inhabited.

4. *MOHELIA*, situate on the North-west of *Madagascar*, is about 20 miles in length, and 16 in breadth: abounding in Goats, Hens *Coconuts*, Limons, Oranges, Pom-Citrons, Pulse, *Sugar-canes*; store of Fish taken on the Shores, and other necessaries. The people of complexion black, of composition large and strong; couragious, affable, less treacherous than their Neighbours of *Madagascar*. Of the same Language and *Religion* with those of *Arabia*, from whence they seem to have descended; but by reason of their commerce and intercourse with the *Portugals*, they speak that Tongue also. The *Women* of the like complexion, to amend which, and seem more lovely, they pink their arms and faces in several shapes. Both Sexes no otherwise apparelled than their natural garments, with some *Plantane* leaves about their middle to hide their shame.

Their *Religion* that of *Mahomet*, as before is said, their *Priests* in great esteem amongst them; so their *Temples* also: which they keep clean and neatly matted, not suffering any man to enter with his shoes on his feet. Their chief Town *Meriangnea*, at the West end of the Isle, strong and well garrisoned. Heretofore under the command of one King alone; of late divided into two Principalities; one of the last Kings leaving two daughters, the one married to a Native, the other to an *Arabian* Lord.

5. Larger than this, on the East of *Madagascar*, is the Isle of *MAURITIUS*, so called by the *Hollanders* in honour of *Maurice* Prince of *Orange*, in whose time they first set footing in it; but by the *Portugals* called *De Cerne*, and by some *Cygnæa*. In compass about 100 miles; well stored with Beeves, Hogs, Goats, most sorts of Fish: and liberally endowed with all the blessings of Nature, sweet Waters, most delicious Fruits, Woods fit for any use both of food and building; plenty of *Ebony* of all colours, but the best *coal-black*. Yet altogether destitute of humane Inhabitants: insomuch as we may say of this, as the Poet of the World, before Man was made:

> *Sanctus his* Animal, *mentisque capacius altæ*,
> *Deerat adhuc, & quod* dominari *in cætera posset.*

Which may be *Englished* in these words:

> But yet the *Chief*, with Supream power possest,
> Was wanting, he that should *command* the rest.

Of the ATLANTICK OCEAN, *and the Isles therein.*

HAving thus looked upon such Islands as lie on the Eastern side of *Africk* in the *Indian* Ocean, let us come homeward by the *Cape of good Hope*, into the main *Atlantick*, the greatest body of Waters, which is given to us by one name in any of our Cosmographers, either old or new: A name peculiar to that part of the Western Ocean, which lieth between the Streights of *Gibralter* and the Land of *Negroes*, to which Mount *Atlas* sheweth it self with a cloudy top, and gives name to the Seas adjoyning, but generally communicated to all that vast Region of waters which lieth between *Spain* and *Africk* on the one side, and the New World, or *America* on the other side: Extended further by *Strabo*, and some other of the ancient Writers, who not knowing any thing of the interposition of *America*, carry the name of the *Atlantick* to the shores of *India*, which they make to be terminated by this Sea on the East and South. *Macrobius* goeth farther in it, affirming positively, *omnem terram, quæ à nobis colitur, Atlantico mari (quod Oceanum appellamus) circumfundi*, that the whole habitable World (so far as it was then known and peopled) was compassed round about with the *Atlantick* Ocean. The like affirmed by *Julius Firmicus* also, by *Aristotle* in his Book *De Mundo*, and by others, who have took it upon their Authority. And though some parts hereof, which wash the Western shores of *Æthiopia Inferior*, be called the *Æthiopick* Ocean; yet that doth derogate no

more from the great extent that is given formerly to the main *Atlantick*, than that some parts of the *Mediterranean* should be called *Mare Siculum*, *Sardoum*, *Tyrrhenum*, *Creticum*, according to the shores of those several places which it passeth by; which having said in general of the Sea it self, according to our method in other places, we next proceed unto the rest of the *African* Islands, which we named before, but could not meet with but in this Sea, and this side of *Africa*.

6. St. *HELENS*, and 7. *the Isles of* ASCENSION.

AND the first Isle we meet with in this side of *Africk* is, 6. the Isle of St. *Helens*, situate on the West of the *Cape of Good Hope*, and in the 16 degree of the Southernly latitude, no other Island interposing betwixt *Madagascar* and it, except those of *Don Alvarez*, and of *Tristram de Acugna*, near the *Cape it self*; but of so little note, as not worth the naming. The Island very high and hilly, and mounting from the Sea with so steep an ascent, that the Mariners have amongst them a merry saying, that *a man may choose whether he will break his heart going up, or his neck coming down.*

It was thus called, because discovered by the *Portugals* on St. *Helens* day; not then inhabited, nor since; the King of *Spain* suffering none to dwell there, because it had been an unlawful *Receptacle* for *uncustomed* Goods; whereby he lost exceedingly both in Power and Profit. Stored by the *Portugals* at the first discovery, with Goats, Hogs, Hens, and other Creatures: as also with Figs, Limons, Oranges, and the like Fruits, which there thrive exceedingly, and grow all the year long. Intended by them for a Stage in their going and coming to and from the *Indies*: in which they might refresh themselves, and bestow their sick, whence they are taken off by the next years Fleet. Used for the same purpose by the *English* and *Hollanders*, who so domineer about the Island, that the *Portugals* dare not Anchor near it, or own their *Property*, if they see any shipping in the Rode. No buildings in it but the ruines of a little Chappel, destroyed by the *Hollanders*; and some fragment of a little Village begun by some *Portugal* Mariners, but demolished by the King of *Spain*.

7. North-west from hence is the Isle of *Ascension*, so called, because discovered on *Ascension* day, but not inhabited, nor any use at all made of it for ought I can find. Of the same bigness with St. *Helens*, 30 miles in compass, and about 700 *English* miles distant from it.

8. St. *THOMAS*, 9. *The* PRINCES *Island*, and 10. *The Isle of* ANNIBON.

8. THE Island of St. *THOMAS* is situate directly under the *Æquator*; of *Orbicular* form, the *Diameter* being 60 miles, by consequence the *Perimeter* or compass 180, and just so many from the shore of the Realm of *Congo*. At the first discovery nothing but a continual Forest, now very well inhabited both by *Portugals* and *Negroes*; these last brought hither from the opposite Continent: with whom the Air agrees so well, that they attain generally to 110 years of Age, few of the *Portugals* unto fifty. The Air so vehemently hot, that it sorteth not with the constitution of the *Europæans*.

The Country destitute of Wheat, which if sown here, turneth all to *blade*, and brings forth no Ear: nor will any Fruits here prosper, that have any stone in them: but so abundant in *Sugar-canes*, and well stored with Sugars, that 40 Ships are hence loaded yearly with that one Commodity; for making which, they have here 70 *Ingenios*, or Sugar-houses, and in each of them 200 Slaves, in some 300, which belong to the Works. Six days in seven these Slaves work for their Masters, and the seventh for themselves; which they spend in sowing and planting their Seeds, Fruits, and Provisions. Where, by the way, these Sugar-works, or *Ingenios* are a late Invention; the boiling and baking of Sugar (as it is now used) not being above 200 years old; and the refining of it more new than that: first found out by a *Venetian* in the days of our Fathers, who is said to have got above 100000 Crowns by this Invention, and to have left his Son a Knight; who (though he was no Knight of the Post) in very little time brought it all to nothing. Before which Art of boyling and refining Sugars, our Ancestors not having such luxurious Palates, sometimes made use of rough Sugar, as it came from the Canes; but most commonly pleased themselves with honey, more wholesome, because more natural than these forced inventions. But to proceed in the description of this Island, in the midst thereof there is said to be a woody Mountain, over-shadowed continually with *Clouds*: which so moisten the Trees that grow there in a great abundance, that from thence falleth a sufficient quantity of waters to refresh their fields, and feed their Sugar-canes, notwithstanding the extream heat of the Clime and Air.

The *Religion* here allowed of, is the *Christian* only, first preached here by the *Portugals*, or brought hither with them. The Church hereof governed by a *Bishop*, his Title, the Bishop of St. *Thomas*; but his charge extendeth also over all the Churches in the Realm of *Congo*. The principal City of it hath the name of *Pavoasan*, a Colony of *Portugals*, consisting of 700 Families, or about that number: situate on a fine River, and a pleasant Haven: seldom without the company of *Portugal* Merchants, who bring hither in exchange for Sugars, Wheat, Wine, Cheese, Hides, and other things more necessary than those Sugars for the life of Man. Took by the *Hollanders* in the year 1599, but again recovered, or abandoned; and since possessed again by the *Hollanders*, not as before by force of Arms, but by fraud and falshood, at the same time, and by the same dishoneſt Arts by which they made themselves Masters of the Castle of *Angola*, before mentioned. And though the *Portugal* Ambassador presented his injurious dealing to the *States* of *Holland*, yet all the answer he could get at the present, was, that their people had done nothing but what was justified by that clause of the Article, that both sides might take and keep whatsoever they could within such a time: and though the Ambassadour replied very rationally in behalf of his Country, and pressed the restitution both of this Island, and that Castle, by all honest arguments yet he could then get no reason from them: and whether they have done the *Portugals* any Justice since, as to those particulars, I am not able to determine.

9. *THE* PRINCES ISLAND, (*Insula Principis* in the *Latine*) so called, for that the *Revenues* of it were allotted to the Prince of *Portugal*; is situate in three degrees of the Northern *Latitude*. The Country very fruitful for the bigness of it; but not much observable, except it be for being taken for the *Hollanders* by *Julian Clerehagen*, *Anno* 1598. abandoned not long after to the former Owner. Attended as is fit for a *Princes* Island, by a *Mess* of *Chaplains*, *viz.* 1 the Isles of St. *Matthew*. 2 St. *Cross*. 3 St. *Paul*, and 4 St. *Conception*.

ception: and waited on by *seven* ſervants (ſo many Iſlands near *Cape Verd*) all in Coats of *Green*, called by one common name, *Barbacene*. But becauſe the former four yield no matter of *Hiſtory*, and theſe laſt ſeven have no other Inhabitants but *Birds*; we may be thought, having ſaid thus much of them, to have ſaid enough.

10. South-weſt hereof, but on the other ſide of the Line, lieth the Iſle of *Annobon*, (*Inſula Annoboni* as the *Latines* call it.) So named, becauſe diſcovered upon *New-years-day*. Inhabited, and of very good fiſhing all along the Coaſts of it; but that fiſhing made unſafe by *Crocodiles*, and other venomous and hurtful Creatures, which are ſaid to be about the ſhores in great abundance.

11. *The GORGADES, or Iſles of CAPE VERD.*

11. THe *GORGADES*, or Iſlands of *Cape Verd*, (*Inſulæ Capitis Viridis*, as the *Latines* call them) are nine in number; called by the laſt name, becauſe ſituate over againſt *Cape Verd* (*Promontorium Capitis Viridis*) in the Land of *Negroes*. Their names, 1 Saint *Anthony*. 2. Saint *Vincent*. 3. *Buenaviſta*. 4. Saint *Lucies*. 5. *Inſula Salis*, the Iſle of Salt. 6. *Del Fogo*, or the Iſle of *Fire*. 7. Saint *Nicholas*. 8. *Maggio*, or *Majo*. 9. Saint *Jago*. Some add to theſe a tenth, called *Brava*. Diſcovered all in the year 1440. by a *Genoeſe* called *Antonio de Noli*, imployed therein at the charges and direction of *Henry* Duke of *Viſe*, one of the younger Sons of King *John* of *Portugal*, the firſt of that name. Of the moſt, little to be ſaid. The principal, and indeed the only ones which are now inhabited, are *Majo*, *Del Fogo*, St. *Jago*. 1 *Majo*, is of moſt repute for a *Lake* of two Leagues long; the Waters whereof are by the heat of the Sun turned into Salt, which is here made in great abundance. 2. *Del Fogo*, is called from the flakes of fire which it ſends forth uſually; and fell ſo thick upon the Ship of Sir *Anthony Sherley* when he took the Iſland, *Anno* 1596, that one might have writ his name in the aſhes on the upper Deck, with the top of his finger. 3. The principal of all, St. *Jago*, yet but 7. miles long: Rocky and Mountainous, but full of very pleaſant Valleys, and well inhabited. The chief Town of it called *Riblera*, or *Ribiera la Grande*, a Colony of *Portugals*; ſituate on a fine River and a beautiful Haven: taken and ſacked by Sir *Francis Drake*, in the year 1585. and after by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, *Anno* 1596.

The names of *Gorgades*, as the more ancient of the two, is almoſt forgotten. Given to thoſe Iſlands, as ſuppoſed (but I cannot ſee upon what grounds) to be the ſeat of the *Gorgons*; the proper habitation, or dwelling place of *Meduſa* and her two fair Siſters. This *Meduſa*, ſaid or rather fabled by the Poets to have been a Woman of great beauty; who either for ſuffering her body to be abuſed by *Neptune*, in one of the Temples of *Pallas*, or for preferring her ſelf before *Pallas*, had by the ſaid Goddeſs, her hair turned into *Snakes:* and this property annexed unto them, that whoſoever looked on her, ſhould be turned into *Stones*: which quality was retained after ſhe was ſlain, and beheaded by *Perſeus*. Thus and far more fabulouſly the Poets. The Hiſtorians (for as ſome think, *omnis fabula fundatur in hiſtoria*) relate how this *Meduſa* was indeed a Lady of ſuch exceeding beauty, that all men that ſaw her were amazed: and of ſuch a wiſe and ſubtile brain, that for that cauſe only men attributed unto her a *Serpents* head. She abounding in wealth, and by *Piracy* moleſting the Seas of *Europe*, was invaded by an Army of *Grecians*, under the leading of *Perſeus*, who in a ſingle combat ſlew her. *Perſeus* when he plucked off her Helmet, admiring that beauty which he had deſtroyed, cut off her head, and carried it into *Greece*: where the people beyond meaſure wondred at the rare compoſure of her face, and the exceeding beauty of her hair; and are therefore ſaid to have by her head been metamorphoſed into Stones. *Pauſanias* in his *Corinthiacks* ſo reports the Story.

12. *The CANARIES.*

THe *CANARIES* are in number ſeven, ſituate over againſt the Coaſt of *Lybia Interior*; ſo called from *Canaria*, one of the principal of the number. By *Pliny*, *Ptolomy*, and other of the ancient Writers, they were called *Inſulæ Fortunatæ*, the Fortunate Iſlands: and amongſt them of greateſt note, for being made the fixed place of the firſt Meridian; removed ſince to St. *Michaels* one of the *Azores*. But thoſe Ancients knew but ſix of them by name, and in the naming of thoſe ſix do not well agree. By *Pliny*, whom *Solinus* followeth, they are ſaid to be, 1 *Ombrio*, 2 *Junonia Major*, 3 *Junonia Minor*, 4 *Capraria*, 5 *Nivaria*, and 6 *Canaria*. By *Ptolomy* thus reckoned. 1 *Aprofitus*, 2 *Hera*, (or *Junonia*) 3 *Pluitania*, 4 *Caſperia*, 5 *Canaria*, and 6 *Pinenria*. Where we may note alſo to our purpoſe, that though theſe Authors diſagree in all the reſt of the names (*Junonia* being added by the Tranſlator unto *Ptolomies Hera*) yet they agree in making *Canaria* to be one: which ſheweth that one to be of eminence enough, to give the name of *Canary* Iſlands unto all the reſt. Called *Fortunate*, from an opinion which the ancients had of their fruitfulneſs and other excellencies; in which reſpects ſeveral Countries in thoſe times had the names of *Macaria*, *Felix*, *Fortunate*. Now better known by the new names of 1 *Canary*. 2 *Palma*. 3. *Teneriffe*. 4 *Gomero*. 5 *Ferro*. 6 *Lanſerotte*, and 7. *Fuerte Ventura*.

1. *CANARIA*, or *Canaria Magna*, becauſe the biggeſt of the Cluſter is ſaid to be 90 miles in compaſs, and to contain 9000 perſons: Plentiful in Barley, Honey, Wax, *Sugar-canes*, Goats, Kine, and Camels; of which, and of their Cheeſe, and the skins of Beaſts they raiſe great profit: but from nothing more than from their Woad (whereof they have very great abundance) uſed by the Clothier for the well-colouring of his Cloath. From hence and from the other of theſe Iſlands which bear this name, come the fine ſinging Birds called *Canary-birds*; and ſo do alſo thoſe rich Wines, (the fruit of the *Rheniſh* Grape tranſplanted) which we call *Canaries*. A ſort of Wine, if not ſophiſticated and abuſed, which is ſaid to fume leſs into the head, pleaſe the *palate* more, and better help the natural weakneſs of a cold ſtomach (if moderately and diſcreetly uſed) than any other Wines whatſoever. Brought hence in ſuch abundance to ſupply our luxury, that no leſs than 3000 Tuns hereof are vended yearly into *England* and the *Netherlands* only.

2. *PALMA*, one of the leaſt in circuit, but as rich as any; fruitful in Wine and Sugars, abundantly well ſtored with Cattel, and great plenty of Cheeſe; and therefore made the victualling place of the *Spaniſh* Fleets as they paſs to *Braſil* and *Peru*. This Iſland together with *Canary* and *Teneriffe*, make up the Biſhoprick of the *Canaries*. One of the Biſhops whereof was that *Melchior Canus* a *Dominican* Frier; whoſe works now

extant in defence of the Church of *Rome*, ſhew him to have been a moderate and learned man, and Maſter of a perfect *Ciceronean* ſtile. The reſidue of the Iſlands are of the Dioceſs of *Madera*.

3. *TENARIFFE*, ſomewhat leſs than the *Grand Canary*, but of the ſame fertility and condition with it, is moſt remarkable for a Mountain of ſo great an height, that it may be ſeen 90 leagues at Sea, in a fair clear day. Some reckon it 15 miles high, others 15 leagues, and ſome advance it to 60 miles, but with little credit. With truth enough moſt of our Travellers and Geographers hold it to be the higheſt in the whole world. The Form *Pyramidal*, in ſhape agreeing to thoſe Prodigies of Art and Wonder, the *Egyptian Pyramids*. The top whereof ending in a ſharp point, called the *Pike of Tenariffe*, is ſaid to be ſeldom without Snow; and therefore probably conceived to be the *Nivaria* of *Pliny*.

4. *HIERO*, or *FERRI Inſula*, ſo called from the *Iron Mines* therein, is by ſome thought to be the *Pluitalia*, by others the *Aproſitus* of *Ptolomy*; and ſome again more probably the *Ombrio* of *Pliny*, if this and *Ptolomies Pluitalia* be not one and the ſame, as for my part I think they be. And it might poſſibly have thoſe names in the *Greek* and *Latine*, becauſe it hath in it no freſh waters but what they do receive in ſhowers, and preſerve in Ciſterns: it being added by late Writers (which the Ancients knew not) that theſe ſhowers do daily fall upon them from the *Leaves* of a Tree, which alwayes covered with a Cloud doth diſtill theſe waters; preſerved in a large Ciſtern underneath the Tree, for the uſe of Man and Beaſt throughout the Iſland.

5. *GOMERA*, now as civil and well cultivated as any of the reſt, was the moſt barbarous of all, when firſt diſcovered: it being here and here only, the ordinary ſign and evidence of their *Hoſpitality*, to let their friends lie with their wives, and receive theirs in teſtimony of reciprocal kindneſs: for which cauſe here as in ſome places of the *Indies*, the ſiſters Son did uſe accuſtomably to inherit.

6. *LANSAROTE*, the firſt of theſe Iſlands which was made ſubject to the Crown of *Caſtile*, diſcovered by ſome adventurous *Biſcains*, *An.* 1393. by whom ſpoiled and pillaged, and the poor King and Queen thereof, and 170 of their Subjects of better quality, brought away Priſoners into *Spain*. On this diſcovery the Kings of *Caſtile* challenged a propriety in all theſe Iſlands; of which more anon. In this of *Lanſarote* there was an Epiſcopal See erected by Pope *Martin* the fifth, removed unto the Iſle of *Canary* in the time of *Ferdinand* the Catholick.

7. *FUERTE VENTURA*, of the ſame nature with the reſt, ſuppoſed to be the *Capraria* of *Pliny*, and the *Caſperia* of *Ptolomy*; but not elſe obſervable. Near unto theſe, but not within the name and notion of the *Fortunate*, or *Canary* Iſles, are certain others of leſs note; that is to ſay, 1 *Gratioſa*. 2 St. *Clara*. 3 *Roca*. 4 *Lobos*. 5 *Alegranco*; and 6. *Infierno*, ſmall and of no accompt, nor yielding any matter of obſervation.

The knowledge of theſe Iſlands being loſt with the *Roman* Empire, they lay concealed and undiſcovered till the year 1330. or thereabouts, when an *Engliſh*, or as ſome ſay, a *French* Ship, diſtreſſed by tempeſt, did in that misfortune fall upon them. Notice whereof being given in the Court of *Portugal*, in the Reign of King *Alphonſo* the Fourth, *Lewis de Ordo* was deſigned for the Conqueſt of them. Who being repulſed at *Gomera*, *Anno* 1334. gave the enterprize over, though on this ground the *Portugals* build their firſt claim unto theſe Iſlands. But the news ſpreading by degrees to the Court of *Rome*, *Clement* the Sixth thought fit to make a grant of them to Prince *Lewis* of *Spain*, Son of *Alphonſo de la Cerde* the right heir of *Caſtile*, by the old name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*; and to aſſiſt him in the Conqueſt, cauſed Levies of Souldiers to be made both in *France* and *Italy*. Which coming to the Ears of the *Engliſh* Ambaſſadours in the Popes Court, they feared that ſome tranſport had been made of the *Britiſh* Iſlands, (than which they thought that none could better deſerve the name of the *Fortunate Iſlands*) and in all haſte diſpatched a Poſt to the Court of *England*, for the preventing of the danger.

The people at the time of this firſt diſcovery, were ſo rude and ignorant, that they did eat their fleſh raw for want of fire; and tilled, or rather turned up the Earth with the horns of Oxen for want of Ploughs, or tools of Iron, their Beards they ſhaved with a ſharp Flint, and committed the care of their children to the nurſing of Goats. To kill a Beaſt was conceived to be the baſeſt office that could be poſſibly put upon them, and therefore commonly impoſed on Priſoners and condemned perſons; who being thus made the common *Slaughter-men*, were to live ſeparate from the reſt. Their Government by Kings, in each Iſland one; whom at their deaths, they ſet up naked in a Cave, propped againſt the Wall with a Staff in his hand, and a Veſſel of Milk faſt by him, the better to enable him for his Journey to the other World; and leaving him in the Grave with theſe ſolemn words, *Depart in peace, O thou bleſſed Soul*. The like Funeral they beſtowed alſo on the chief of their Nobles. Yet was not the Government in thoſe times ſo purely *Regal*, but that they had a Common-Council (as it were) out of all the Iſlands, conſiſting of 130 perſons: who did not only direct in *Civil* matters, but in Sacred alſo, preſcribing to the people both their Faith and Worſhip; and for their pains were priviledged with the firſt nights lodging with every Bride, which the Husband was to offer to ſome one of them.

But to return unto the Story, nothing being done by *Lewis de la Cerde*, in purſuance of the Popes Donation, it happened in the year 1393. that ſome Adventurers of *Biſcay*, ſetting out certain Ships from *Sevil* to ſeek their Fortunes at Sea, fell amongſt theſe Iſlands. And having pillaged *Lanſarote*, as before was ſaid, and obſerved the number, greatneſs and ſituation of all the reſt, returned into *Spain* with great ſtore of Wax, Hides, and other commodities, with which thoſe Iſlands did abound: extreamly welcome to King *Henry*, who then reigned in *Caſtile*, and did intend from that time forwards to poſſeſs himſelf of them. By *Katharine* one of the Daughters of *John* Duke of *Lancaſter*, the Dowager of this King *Henry*, during the minority of *John* the Second, the conqueſt of them was committed to *John* of *Betancourt*, an adventurous *French* man, (conditioned he ſhould hold them under the Soveraignty of the Crown of *Caſtile*) by whom four of the Iſlands were ſubdued, though he himſelf periſhed in the Action, *Anno* 1417. Young *Betancourt* the Son, not able to ſubdue *Canary*, to which moſt of the Iſlanders had retired, fortified himſelf as well as he could in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*, and took unto himſelf the Title of King; which he left not long after to one *Menault*; in whoſe time the Iſlands under his command

command received the Goſpel, and had a See Epiſcopal in the Iſle of *Lanſarote*. But this new King making money by the ſale of his Subjects, (as well of the new *Chriſtians*, as the old *Idolaters*) complaint was made of him in the Court of *Caſtile*; and *Pedro Barvade Campos* with three Ships of War is ſent againſt him: with whom unable to contend, with the good leave and liking of the King of *Caſtile*, he ſold his intereſt in theſe Iſlands to one *Fernando Peres* a Knight of *Sevil*, who by the wealth and power of that City made good his purchaſe, and left it unto his Succeſſors. But we muſt know, that the poſterity of this *Peres* enjoyed the four leſſer Iſlands only; *Canary* it ſelf, *Tenariffe*, and the Iſle of *Palms*, being under the command of their own Kings. And ſo continued till the reign of *Ferdinand* the *Catholick*, who in the year 1483. under the conduct of *Alphonſo* of *Mexica*, and *Pedro de Vera*, two noble Captains, became Maſter of them; and tranſlated the Epiſcopal See from *Lanſarote* to the great *Canary*. So that although the *Portugals* claim theſe Iſlands in right of the firſt diſcovery, yet the poſſeſſion hath gone always with the Crown of *Caſtile*. Divided at the preſent into two Eſtates, (but the one ſubordinate to the other) *Gomera*, *Lanſarote*, and *Hierra*, being in the hands of ſome private Subjects; thoſe which belong unto the Crown, being *Canaria*, *Palma*, *Tenariffe*, and *Fuerte Ventura*, are ſaid to yield yearly to the King 50000 *Ducats*; the Seat of Juſtice being fixed in the Iſle of *Canaria*, unto which all the reſt reſort as they have occaſion.

13. *MADERA*, and 14. *HOLY-PORT.*

13. *MADERA*, the greateſt Iſland of the *Atlantick*, is ſituate in the Latitude of 32. over againſt the Cape of *Cantin* in *Morocco*; in compaſs 140 miles, ſome add 20 more. So called of the Wilderneſs of Trees there growing, when firſt diſcovered; the *Portugals* naming that *Madera*, which the *Latines* call *Materia*, and we *Engliſh Timber*: with which the Iſle was ſo over-grown, that the beſt way to clear it and make it habitable, was by conſuming them with fire; which raged ſo horribly for the time, that the people imployed in it were fain to go far into the Sea to refreſh themſelves. But the *Husbandry* was well beſtowed, the Aſhes making ſo good *compoſt* to enrich the Soil, (as burning the Turff of barren Lands, and ploughing the Aſhes of it, on ſome grounds with us) that at the firſt it yielded *ſixty-fold* increaſe. And though the firſt vertue of that experiment be long ſince decayed, yet ſtill it yieldeth *thirty-fold* in moſt places of it; fruitful withal of a kind of Plant uſed in dying Clothes, which is hence called *Mader*; and of *Sugarcanes* in ſuch a wonderful manner, that for a time the fifths of the *Sugars* herein made amounted yearly to 60000 *Arrobes*; now not half ſo much. The Iſle wonderfully fruitful alſo of Honey, Wax, rich Fruits, and the choiceſt Wines; the Slips whereof were brought from *Candy*, bringing forth here more Grapes than leaves, and Cluſters of two, three, and four ſpans long. The Hills well ſtored with Goats, the Plains with numerous Herds of Cattle; the Woods with Peacocks, Thruſhes, Pigeons: theſe laſt ſo ignorant of the injury which Man might do them, that at the firſt coming of the *Portugals* thither, they would ſuffer themſelves to be taken up; but now have wit enough to keep out of danger.

The whole Iſland in all parts well watered, having beſides many pleaſant Springs, eight handſom Riverets, wherewith the Earth refreſhed and moiſtned, yields the ſweeter Herbage; which otherwiſe by reaſon of the heat of the Air (never very cool) might not be ſo nouriſhing. The chief City of it hath the name of *Fonchial*, the See of an Archbiſhop, and the Seat of Juſtice: known to the *Romans* by the name of *Junonis*, or *Antolala*, as many learned men conceive, and again forgotten; it was of later times diſcovered by one *Machan*, an *Engliſh* man, who was caſt upon it by a tempeſt, *An.* 1344. who burying there his wife, or ſome other woman which he had in his company, writ on her Tomb his name, and coming thither, with the cauſe thereof; which gave the *Portugals* occaſion to look further after it. Deſolate, and unpeopled at the firſt diſcovery, now exceeding populous: and of no ſmall advantage to the Crown of *Portugal*, to which firſt united, *An.* 1420. under the conduct of Prince *Henry* before mentioned.

14. *INSULA PORTUS SANCTI*, or the Iſle of *HOLY-PORT*, is diſtant from *Madera* about 40 miles; neighbouring the Coaſts of *Mauritania Tingitana*, and therefore probably conceived to be the *Cerne* of *Ptolomy*. So called, becauſe diſcovered by ſome *Portugal* Mariners (by the direction and encouragement of the ſaid P. *Henry*) on *Allhallows* day, *An.* 1428. Deſolate and unhabited at the firſt diſcovery, but now very well peopled. In compaſs about 15 miles; well ſtored with Corn and Fruits, great ſhoals of Fiſh upon their ſhores, plenty enough of Beeves and Goats: but ſuch abundance of Conies (bred of one *Doe Coney* brought thither when great with young) that the Inhabitants were no leſs peſtered with them in theſe later times, than the *Baleares* were of old; inſomuch that they were out of hope to withſtand the miſchief, or repair the damages ſuſtained by them. A little Iſland not far off, breedeth nothing elſe.

The chief Town of it *Porto Santo*, or *Holy-Port*, ſeated on a convenient Rode, but a ſorry Haven, was taken by Sir *Amias Preſton*, in our Wars with *Spain*, *An.* 1596. but being ſacked and ſpoiled, was again abandoned. In former times called *Cerne*, as before was ſaid, and reckoned for the moſt remote *Colony* which the *Carthaginians* or *Phœnicians* had in the Weſtern Ocean; beyond which they conceived the Sea to be unnavigable, (proved otherwiſe by *Hanno*'s Voyage) choaked with mud and weeds. Called therefore *Cerne ultima* (*Æthiopum populos alit ultima Cerne*) by *Feſtus Rufus*, and others of the Ancient Writers.

15. *THE HESPERIDES.*

15. THe *HESPERIDES*, by *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela*, are ſaid to be two in number, ſituate in the *Atlantick* Seas, but we find not where. Much memorized and chanted by the ancient Poets, for giving a ſafe and pleaſant habitation to the Daughters of *Atlas* (which they call by the name of *Heſperides* alſo;) the curious Gardens by them planted, and the Golden Apples of it which were kept by a Dragon, and took hence by *Hercules*. But the *Hiſtorians* remove theſe Gardens out of the Sea, into the main Land of *Africk*, and fix them in *Cyrene*, where already ſpoken of. Which notwithſtanding, it is granted that there were anciently ſome *Iſlands* in the *Atlantick* Ocean, noted by this name, and ſaid to be exceeding fruitful of their own accord: and therefore probably the ſame which *Plutarch* in the life of *Sertorius* calleth *Inſulæ Atlanticæ*, and deſcribes them thus: Αἱ δὲ μάλ' εἰσὶ, λίψῳ πνεύματος πρὸς μεσημβρίαν διαχωρούσαι, &c. They are (ſaith he) two Iſlands parted by a narrow *Streit* of the Sea, diſtant from the main Land of *Africk* 10000 furlongs, which in our accompt cometh to 1250 miles) called alſo the Iſles

"Isles of *Blessed Souls*, and the *Fortunate Islands*. They "have rain there very seldom, but a fine sweet Dew, "which makes the Earth exceeding fruitful both for til-"lage and planting Fruits, which sometimes grow with-"out any care or labour of the Husbandman; sufficient "by their plenty and sweetness to maintain the people, "much given to ease, and hardly troubling themselves "with any business. The Air for the most part very "temperate, never extream in any changes of the Sea-"son; the rigour of the Northern and Eastern Winds, "being by so long a passage thither very much abated; "as on the other side the Western and South-Eastern "Winds, do much refresh it with such Mists as they bring "from the Sea, to the great comfort of the people. A "place so generally sweet, that the Barbarous people in "it have a constant and approved opinion, that these "should be the *Elysian Fields*, the seats of the blessed "Souls departed, described by *Homer*: with the re-"port whereof *Sertorius* was so highly taken, that he in-"tended to have given over the pursuit of the *Civil* "Wars, and there to spend the rest of his days in peace "and happiness; which he had done, if the *Cilicians*, "men accustomed unto spoil and rapine, had not took "him off. So far and to this purpose *Plutarch*. But what these Islands are, and where now to be found, (for in regard of their great distance from the Coast of *Africk*, they cannot be the *Fortunate Islands* spoken of before) I cannot easily determine: unless we should conjecture, as *Ortelius* doth, that they are the Islands of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, on the Coasts of *America*; to the Story and Chorography whereof we are now to hasten.

And so much for the Isles of AFRICK.

A TABLE

A TABLE of the *Longitude* and *Latitude* of the Principal Towns and Cities mentioned in this Part.

	Long.	Lat.
A.		
Gadez	39 20	25 30
Alexandria	67 0	31 20
Algiers	33 0	35 20
Amara	63 30	5 0 *A.*
Angola	45 10	7 0 *A.*
Asna	66 30	25
Azamor	18 30	32 40
Atquin	11 10	20 20
Adrimetum		
B.		
Babel Mandel	80 01	12 50
Begamedrum	62 36	6 0
Barca	62	
Benin	41 0	7 40
Bona	37 10	35 40
Borno	44 30	17 10
Brava	74 30	0 30
Budomel	10 20	14 30
Bugia	34 30	35 10
Babylon Egypt		
C.		
Caire	67 30	30 0
Cyrene	53 30	32 0
Canaria	9 30	27 20
Carthage		
Cirta		
D.		
Damiata	60 0	32 40
Damut	51 0	11 20
Dancali	65 0	17 30
Dara	66 50	12 0
Docono	78 20	12 30
F.		
Fatigar	74 0	2 40 *A.*
Fesse	21 50	32 50
Fierro	6 20	26 30
Forte ventura	11 0	28 0
Fouchial	8 10	31 30
G.		
Gamba	64 49	70 30 *A.*
Guoga	55 0	22 0
Goyami	57 0	14 0 *A.*
Gualata	13 30	23 30
Guber	29 20	10 40
H.		
Holy Port	10 0	32 30
L.		
Lancerot	11 40	29 30
M.		
Madagascar	77 0	19 0 *A.*
Midazo	46 0	5 10
Malta	46 0	45 30
Manicongo	47 20	7 0 *A.*
Morocco	20 0	30 30
Melinde	71 20	3 20 *A.*
Meroe	68 20	16 15
Mezzata	47 40	30 40
Mina	28 50	6 20
Mombaza	72 0	4 50 *A.*
Mosambique	70 20	14 40
Memphis		
N.		
Nubia	60 0	17 40
O.		
Oran	29 40	35 0
P.		
Palma	6 20	28 0
Pascar	59 40	1 20 *A.*
Q.		
Quiloa	69 50	8 56
R.		
Ramses	68 30	30 30
S.		
Sabaim	68 20	8 40
Septa	22 0	35 40
Snachem	72 40	18 40
Sus	27 30	
T.		
Tangier	30 50	35 0
Tefcthne	16 10	30 0
Tegnit	27 40	28 10
Tcient	17 0	30 30
Tenariffe	8 10	27 30
Thesset	20 0	29 10
Telessine	29 0	34 10
Tigremahon	65 0	6 0
Tombuto	20 50	15 0
Tunis	40 0	36 0
Thebes in Egypt		
V.		
Vella	77 0	13 0
Utica		
Z.		
Zacatra	88 0	12 50
Zegreg	36 40	14 40
Zeila	80 0	11 20
Zigec	45 50	40 50
Zimbaus	59 0	25 20 *A.*

A. is the mark of a Southern Latitude

The End of the First Part of the Fourth Book.

COSMOGRAPHY, The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY AND HISTORY OF AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By *PETER HEYLIN.*

MATTH. XXIV. 14.

Et prædicabitur hoc Evangelium regni in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.

S. *Hieronym.* in locum.

Signum Dominici adventus est Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus sit excusabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi cernimus complendum.

LONDON,
Printed in the Year MDCLXXIII.

COSMOGRAPHY,

The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE

CHOROGRAPHY

AND

HISTORY

OF

AMERICA,

AND ALL THE

Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

By PETER HEYLIN.

MATTH. XXIV. 14.

Et prædicabitur hic Evangelium regni in universo orbe, testimonium omnibus Gentibus: & tunc veniet consummatio.

S. Hieronym. in locum.

Signum Dominici adventus est Evangelium in toto Orbe prædicari, ut nullus sit excusabilis: quod aut jam completum, aut brevi certissime completandum.

LONDON,

Printed in the Year MDCLXXIII.

THIS CHART WILL
FOURTH CHART A
AT THE END OF T

WILL BE THE
ART APPEARING
OF THIS FILM.

COSMOGRAPHY,
The Fourth Book.

PART II.

CONTAINING THE
CHOROGRAPHY and HISTORY
OF
AMERICA,
AND ALL THE
Principal Kingdoms, Provinces, Seas, and Islands of it.

Of *AMERICA.*

AMERICA, the fourth and last part of the World, is bounded on the East with the *Atlantick* Ocean and the *Vergivian* Seas, by which parted from *Europe* and *Africa*, which Seas the Mariners call *Mare del Noordt*; on the West, with the *Pacifick Ocean*, by the Mariners called *Mare del Zur*, which divides it from *Asia*; on the South, with some part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, from which separated by a long but narrow *Streight*, called the *Streights of Magellan*: the North bounds of it hitherto not so well discovered, as that we can certainly affirm it to be *Island* or *Continent*.

It is called by some, and that most aptly, *THE NEW WORLD*: *New*, for the Late Discovery; and *World*, for the vast greatness of it. The most usual, and yet somewhat the more improper name, is that of *America*; because *Americus Vespusius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, discovered a great part of the Continent of it. But since the first light he had to find out those Parts came from the Directions and Example of *Columbus*, who first led the way; and that *Sebastian Cabot* touched at many places which *Americus Vespusius* never saw, it might as properly have been called *Columbana*, *Sebastiana*, or *Cabotia*. The most improper name of all, and yet not much less used than that of *America*, is the *West-Indies*: *West*, in regard of the Western situation of it from these parts of *Europe*; and *Indies*, either as mistook for some part of *India*, at the first Discovery, or else because the Seamen used to call all Countries, if remote and rich, by the name of *India*.

Many are of opinion, but rather grounded on conjectural Presumptions, than demonstrative Arguments, that *America* was known long before our late Discoveries. Their Reasons drawn, 1. From the Doctrine of the *Antipodes*, which being maintained by many of the Ancient Writers, inferreth (as they think) a knowledge of these parts of the World which are opposite to us. But unto this it may be answered, that the knowledge of the *Antipodes* amongst the Ancients was by Supposition, at the best by Demonstration only, & not in fact: or thus, that it was known that there were *Antipodes*, but the *Antipodes* were not known. 2. It is said that *Hanno*, a Noble *Carthaginian*, discoverd a great Island in the Western Ocean, and after a long Voiage returned home again, not wanting Sea-room, but Victuals, as he told the Senate. But he that writ the actions of *Hanno* in this famous Voiage, (which some conceive to be *Hanno* himself) informs us that he sailed not West-

wards, but more towards the South: and therefore this *Great Island*, whatsoever it was, (whether *Madera*, or some one of the *Fortunate* Islands, I determine not) could not be *America*. 3. It is alledged that *Plato* in his *Timæus* speaks of a great Island of the *Atlantick* Ocean, *Lybiam & Africam adæquans*, (as out of him *Tertullian* hath it) as big as *Lybia* and *Africk*, properly so called: which he confesseth to be drowned long before his time, and therefore possibly never extant but in some mens fancies. 4. That *Aristotle* in the Book *de Mundo* (if that Book be his) speaks of an Island very fruitful, and full of Navigable Rivers, discovered by the *Carthaginians*, and by them forbidden to be planted upon pain of death. Which Island being affirmed by that Author to be *Multorum dierum itinere à* Gadibus *remota*, hath made some men conceive it to be this *America*, or some of the great Islands of it. As if it might not as well be one of the *Azores*, or perhaps *Madera*, or some other of the Islands in the Road of *Hanno*'s Voyage. Certain I am, that one of the best Friends the *Phœnicians* have, who would not gladly lose such an opportunity of ennobling their performances in Navigation, (could any thing be built upon it) doth wave the whole Relation as of doubtful credit; and knoweth of no such place as is there described by that Author, whosoever he were. 5 Some have produced these Verses of *Seneca*, to infer a knowledge of this Country amongst the Ancients, *viz.*

Veniet annis sæcula seris,
Quibus Oceanus vincula rerum
Laxet, & ingens pateat Tellus,
Novosque Typhis *detegat Orbes,*
Nec sit Terris ultima Thule.

Which may be *Englished* in these words:

In the last days an Age shall come
Wherein the all devouring Foam
Shall lose its former bounds, and shew
Another *Continent* to view.
New Worlds, which Night doth now conceal,
A second *Typhis* shall reveal;
And frozen *Thule* shall no more
Be of the Earth the farthest Shore.

But this Argument can bring no necessary, nor so much as a probable inference, of any such Continent as this, then known to *Seneca*: the Poet in that *Chorus* shewing as well the continual dangers as the possible effects of Navigation; that there might be, not that there were, more Lands discovered then those formerly known. 6 Some hold this Country to be the Land of *Ophir*, to which *Solomon* is said in the holy Scriptures to have sent for Gold. But *Ezion-Geber*, which is there also said to be the station where his Navy lay, was situate in the bottom of the *Red-Sea*, or Bay of *Arabia*: whereas if he had sent this way, his shipping must have lain at *Joppa*, or some other Port of the *Mediterranean*, and from thence set forwards through the Streights of *Gibraltar*, and so plainly Westward. 7 Finally, in the History of *Wales*, writ by *David Powel*, it is reported that *Madoc* the Son of *Owen Gwinedth* Prince of *Wales*, of purpose to decline engaging in a *Civil War* raised in that Estate, in the year 1170. put himself to Sea, and after a long course of Navigation came into this Country: where after he had left his men, and fortified some places of advantage in it, he returned home for more Supplies, which he carried with him in ten Barks; but neither he nor they looked after by the rest of that Nation. To which some add, that here is still some smattering of the *Welch* or *British* tongue to be found amongst them; as that a Bird with a white head is called *Pengwin*, and the like: in which regard some sorry States-men went about to entitle Queen *Elizabeth* unto the Soveraignty of these Countries. Others, more wise, dissuaded from that vain Ambition, considering that *Welch*-men, as well as others, might be cast upon those parts by force of Tempest, and easily implant some few words of their own among the People there inhabiting. And though I must needs say for the honour of *Wales*, that they have more grounds for what they say, then those which look for this New World in the *Atlantis* of *Plato*, the *Atlantick* Islands of *Aristotle* and *Plutarch*, or the Discoveries of *Hanno* the *Carthaginian*: yet am I not so far convinced of the truth thereof, the use of the Mariner's Compass being not so ancient, (without which such a Voyage could not be performed) but that I may conclude with more satisfaction, that this Country was unknown to the former Ages.

But now, as *Mela* the Geographer said once of *Britain*, then newly conquered by the *Romans*, Britannia *qualis sit, quakque progeneret, mox certiora & magis explorata dicentur*; *quippe jam diu clausam aperit ecce Principum maximus*, (he means *Claudius Cæsar*) *nec indomitarum modo sed & incognitarum ante sæ Gentium Victor*: so may we say of *America*, on these late Discoveries. What kind of Countrey it is, and what men it produceth, we do and shall know more certainly then in former times; since those puissant Kings of *Spain* have laid open almost all the parts thereof, inhabited not onely by unvanquished, but even unknown Nations. For God remembring the promise of his Son, that his Gospel before the end of the World should be preached to all Nations, stirred up one *Christopher Colon*, or *Columbus*, born at *Nervy*, in the Seigniory of *Genoa*, to be the Instrument for finding out those parts of the World, to which the sound of the Gospel had not yet arrived. Who being a man of great abilities, and born to undertake great matters, could not perswade himself (the motion of the Sun considered) but that there was another *World* to which that Glorious Planet did impart both his Light and Heat, when he went from us. This *World* he purposed to seek after, and opening his Design to the State of *Genoa*, *Anno* 1486. was by them rejected. On this repulse, he sent his Brother *Bartholomew* to King *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in his way hapned unfortunately into the hands of Pirats, by them detained a long while, but at last inlarged. As soon as he was set at liberty, he repaired to the Court of *England*; where his Proposition found such a chearful entertainment at the hands of the King, that *Christopher Columbus* was sent for to come thither also. But GOD had otherwise disposed of his rich purchase. For *Christopher*, not knowing of his Brothers imprisonment, nor hearing any tidings from him, conceived the offer of his Service to have been neglected; and thereupon made his desires known at the Court of *Castile*: where, after many delays, and six years attendance on the business, he was at last furnished with three Ships onely, and those not for Conquest, but Discovery. With this small strength he sailed on the main Ocean more then 60 days, yet could see no Land, so that the discontented *Spaniards* began to mutiny; & partly out of scorn to be under the Command of a Stranger, partly desirous to return, would not go a Foot forwards. Just at that time it happened that *Columbus* did discern the Clouds to carry a clearer colour than they did before: and probably conceiving that this clearness proceeded from some nigh habitable place, restrained the time of their expectation within the compass of three days, passing his word to return again, if they did not see Land within that time. Toward the end of the third day, one of the Company, called *Rodrigo de Triane* (he deserves to have his name recorded, being no otherwise rewarded for such joyful News) descried Fire, an evident Argument that they

they drew near unto some Shore. The place discovered was an Island on the Coast of *Florida*, by the Natives called *Guahanani*; by *Columbus*, *S. Saviours*; now counted one of the *Lucaios*. Landing his men, and causing a Tree to be cut down, he made a Cross thereof, which he erected near the place where he came on Land; and by that Ceremony took possession of this *NEW WORLD* for the Kings of *Spain*, *Octob.* 11. *Anno* 1492. Afterwards he discovered and took possession of *Hispaniola*; and with much Treasure and Content returned towards *Spain*. Preferred for this good Service by the Kings themselves, first to be Admiral of the *Indies*, and afterwards to a Coat of Arms with this Inscription, *For Castile and Leon* Columbus *hath gotten a* NEW WORLD; and in conclusion unto the Title of Duke *De La Vega*, in the Isle of *Jamaica*. News of this fortunate Discovery being sent to Pope *Alexander* VI. by the Kings of *Castile*, he very liberally bestowed upon them all those Countreys which they already had, or should afterwards discover in the Western World; advising them to use their Diligence and Endeavours for converting those People to the Faith: which was done accordingly. For the next year *Columbus* being furnished with 18 Ships for more Discoveries, and his Brother *Bartholomew* made Governour of the Countreys discovered by him, they took along with them one *Buyl*, a *Benedictine* Monk, as the Popes Vicar-General, accompanied with the learned Clerks which were to be Assistants to him in the converting of that People to the Christian Faith. In this second Voyage, he discovered the Islands of *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and built the *Town* of *Isabella* (afterwards better known by the name of *Domingo*) in *Hispaniola*; from whence, for some Severities used against the mutinous *Spaniards*, he was sent Prisoner into *Castile*, but very honourably entertained, and absolved from all the Crimes imputed to him. In the year 1497. he began his third Voyage, in which he discovered the Countreys of *Paria* and *Cumana*, on the firm Land, with the Islands of *Cubagna* and *Margarita*, with many other Islands, Capes, and Provinces, which shall be touched upon particularly in their several places. In the year 1500 he began his fourth and last Voyage, in the course whereof, coming to *Hispaniola*, he was unworthily denied entrance into the City of *Domingo*, by *Nicholas de Ovendo*, the then Governour of it: after which, scouring along the Sea-coasts as far as *Nombre de Dios*, but adding little to the fortune of his former Discoveries, he returned back to *Cuba* and *Jamaica*, and from thence to *Spain*, where about six years after (that is to say, *Ann.* 1506.) he departed this Life, and was honourably interred at *Sevil*, where to this day remaineth this Epitaph on his Tomb, bald in it self, and otherwise exceeding short of so great a Merit. Of which I must tell you by the way, that the *Philip* whom the *Versifier* (I do not say the Poet) called *Philippus Hispanus*, should rather have been called *Philippus Austriacus*, or *Philippus Burgundus*, as being meant of that *Philip* of *Austria*, Duke of *Burgundy*, who had then married *Joan*, sole Daughter and Heir of the King of *Spain*, and after the death of *Isabella* succeeded in the Realm of *Castile*: or else the Epitaph must be written long after his death, and meant of *Philip* the II. Son of *Charles* the Fifth, who was not born until the year 1527. and came not to the Crown above twenty years after. Now for this Epitaph, such as it is, it is this that followeth:

Christophorus *genuit quem* Genoa *clara* Columbus,
(Numine perculsus quo nescio) primus in altum
Descendens Pelagus, Solem versusque cadentem
Directo cursu, nostro hactenus addita Mundo
Litora detexit, Hispano *parentia* Philippo;
Addenda hinc aliis plura & majora relinquens.

Which may be Englished in these Words:

I Christopher Columbus, *whom the Land*
Of Genoa *first brought forth, first took in hand,*
I know not by what Deity incited,
To scour the Western Seas, and was delighted
To seek for Countreys never known before,
Crown'd with Success, I first descry'd the Shore
Of the NEW WORLD, *then destin'd to sustain*
The future Yoke of Philip *Lord of* Spain.
And yet I greater matters left behind,
For Men of more Means, and a Braver Mind.

Dying he left two Sons behind him: of which the youngest, called *Ferdinand*, died unmarried; the eldest, called *Diego*, succeeded his Father in the Admiralty of the *Indies*, and the Dukedom of *Vega*, and married *Mary* of *Toledo*, Daughter of *Ferdinand* Duke of *Alva*; but having (as it seemeth) no Issue by her, he spent the greatest part of his Estate in founding the Library at *Sevil*, spoken of before, which he furnished with 12000 Volumes, and endowed with a liberal Revenue to maintain the same. But though his Family be extinct, yet his Fame shall live, renowned to all Posterities, as the first Discoverer of this New World, and consequently the greatest and most fortunate Advancer of the *Spanish* Monarchy; though in his life-time so maligned by most part of the *Spaniards*, that *Bobadilla*, being sent into those parts for redress of Grievances, loaded him with Irons, and returned him Prisoner into *Spain*. Nor did they onely stick after his death to deprive him of the honour of this Discovery, (attributing it to I know not what *Spaniard*, whose Charts & Descriptions he had seen) but in his life would often say that it was a matter of no such difficulty to have found these Countreys; and that if he had not done it when he did, some body else might have done it for him. Whose peevishness he confuted by this modest Artifice, desiring some of them, who insolently enough had contended with him touching this Discovery, to make an Egg stand firmly upon one of its ends. Which when they could not do upon many Trials, he gently bruising one end of it, made it stand upright; letting them see without any farther reprehension, how easie it was to do that thing which we see another do before us.

But to proceed, *Columbus* having thus led the way, was seconded by *John Cabot* a *Venetian*, the Father of *Sebastian Cabot*, in behalf of *Henry* the Seventh of *England*; who in the year 1497. discovered all the North-East Coasts hereof, from the Cape of *Florida* in the South, to *Newfound-Land*, and *Terra di Laborador* in the North, causing the Royelets to turn Homagers to that King, and the Crown of *England*. Next after him succeeded *Americus Vespusius*, an adventurous *Florentine*, employed therein by *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*, *Anno* 1501. on a design of finding out a nearer way to the *Molucca's* than by the *Cape of good Hope*, who though he passed not farther than the Cape of S. *Augustines* in *Brasil*, without so much as having a sight of the Great River *de la Plata*, which washeth the South parts of that Country; yet from him (to the great Injury and Neglect of the first Discoverers) the Continent or Main Land of this Countrey hath the name of *America*; by which it is still known, and most commonly called. Followed herein by divers private Adventurers and Undertakers out of all parts of *Europe* bordering on the Ocean. *Ferdinand Magellanus* was the first that compassed the whole World, and found the South passage, called *Fretum Magellanicum* to this day: followed herein by *Drake* and *Cavendish* of *England*. *Frobisher* and *Davis* attempted a Discovery of the North-west passage; *Willoughby* and *Burroughs* of the North-east.

east. So that, according to that elegant saying of the learned *Verulam* in his *Advancement of Learning*, this Great Building, the World, *had never through-Lights made in it, till these our days*: by which, as almost all parts of Learning, so in especial this of Navigation, and by consequence of Cosmography also, hath obtained an incredible Proficiency in these later times.

For in the Infancy and first Ages of the World, (pardon me, I beseech you, this short but not unprofitable Digression) men lived at home, neither intent upon any forreign Merchandise, nor inquisitive after the Lives and Fortunes of their Neighbours; or in the Language of the Poet,

Nondum cæsa suis, peregrinum ut viseret Orbem,
Montibus, in liquidas Pinus, *descenderat undas.*

The Pine left not the Hills on which it stood,
To seek strange Lands, or rove upon the Flood.

But when the Providence of God had instructed *Noah* how to build the Ark, for the preservation of himself and his Children from the general Deluge, the Posterity which descended from him, had thereby a pattern for the making of Ships and other Vessels (perfected in more length of time) whereby to make the Waters passable, and maintain a necessary intercourse betwixt Nation and Nation. 'Tis true, the Heathen Writers, which knew not *Noah*, attribute the invention of Shipping to sundry men, according to such Informations or Traditions as they had received: *Strabo* to *Minos* King of *Crete*; *Diodorus Siculus* to *Neptune*, who was therefore called the God of the Seas; and *Tibullus* to the people of *Tyre*, (a Town indeed of great Wealth and Traffick, and the most famous Empory of the elder times) saying,

Prima Ratem ventis credere dicta Tyrus.

The *Tyrians* first the Art did find
To make Ships travel with the Wind.

And questionless the *Tyrians*, and the rest of the *Phœnicians*, enjoying a large Sea coast, and many safe and capacious Havens, being in these times most strong at Sea, and making so many fortunate Navigations into most parts of the then known World, might give the Poet some good colour for his affirmation. From the *Phœnicians*, the *Egyptians* (their next Neighbours) might derive the Art of Navigation; though being an ingenious people, they did add much to it. For whereas the first Vessels were either made of the body of some great Tree, made hollow by the Art of Man, or else of divers Rods or Twigs fashioned into a Boat, and covered with the Skins of Beasts, (which we have spoken of before, when we were in *Sanguebar*, and which are still in use amongst these *Americans*) the *Phœnicians* brought them first into strength and form; but the *Egyptians* added Decks unto them. By *Danaus* King of *Egypt*, when he fled from his Brother *Rameses*, the use of Shipping was first brought amongst the *Græcians*, who before that time knew no other way of crossing their narrow Seas, but on Beams or Rafters tied to one another. *Nave primus ab Egypto* Danaus *advenit*; *antè enim Ratibus navigabatur*, as it is in *Pliny*: where we may see the true and genuine difference betwixt *Ratis* and *Navis*; though now both be used indifferently for all sorts of Shipping. Amongst the *Græcians*, those of *Crete* were the ablest Sea-men; which gave occasion to *Aristotle* to call *Crete* the *Lady of the Seas*; and to *Strabo*, to make *Minos* the Inventor of Ships. In following times the *Carthaginians*, being a Colony of *Tyre*, were most considerable in this kind, and by the benefit of their Shipping much distressed the *Romans*. But so it hapned (as all things do and must concur to Gods publick purposes in the alteration of Estates) that a Tempest separating a *Quinqueremis*, or Gally of five banks of Oars, from the rest of the *Carthaginian* Fleet, cast it on the Shore of *Italy*; by which accident the *Romans* learning the Art of Ship-wrights, soon became Masters of the Sea. That *France* and *Spain* were taught the use of Shipping by the *Greeks* and *Phœnicians*, is a thing past questioning; *Marseilles* in the one being a *Phocean*, and *Gades* in the other a *Tyrian* Colony. As for the *Belgians* and the *Britains*, it is probable that they first learnt it of the *Romans*, (though formerly they had some way to transport themselves from one Shore to the other) for *Cæsar* telleth us of the *Belgæ*, *Ad eos Mercatores minimè commeant*, that they were not at all visited by foreign Merchants. And the same *Cæsar* found the Seas betwixt *France* and *Britain* so ill furnished with Vessels, that he was fain to make Ships to transport his Army: *Singulari militum studio circiter sexcentas & duodetriginta Naves invenit*, as his own words are.

Having thus brought Navigation to the greatest height which it had in those days; let us look back again on the Inventors of particular Vessels, and the Tackle unto them belonging. That the *Phœnicians* first invented open Vessels, and the *Egyptians* Ships with Decks, hath been said before: and unto them also is referred the Invention of Gallies, with two Banks of Oars upon a side; which kind of Vessels grew so large in the course of time, that *Ptolomy Philopater* is said to have made a Gally of Fifty Banks. Great Ships of Burthen called *Circerus*, we owe to the *Cypriots*; Cock-boats, or Skiffs, (*Scaphus*) to the *Illyrians*, or *Liburnians*; Brigantines, (*Celoces*) to the *Rhodians*; and Frigots or light Barks, (*Lembos*) unto the *Cyrenians*. The *Phaseli* and *Pamphyli* (which we may render *Men of War*) were the Invention of the *Pamphylians*, and the Inhabitants of *Phaselis*, a Town of *Lycia*, in *Asia Minor*. As for Tackle, the *Bœotians* invented the Oar; *Dædalus*, and his Son *Icarus*, the Masts and Sails: Which gave occasion to the Poets to feign, that flying out of *Crete*, they made Wings to their Bodies; and that *Icarus* soaring too high, melted the Wax which fastened his Wings unto his Shoulders, and thereby perished: the truth being, that presuming too much on this new invention, he ran himself upon a Rock, and was cast away. For *Hippagines*, Vessels for transporting of Horse, we are indebted to the *Salaminians*; for Grapling-hooks, to *Anacharsis*; for Anchors, to the *Tuscans*; and for the Rudder, Helm, or Art of Steering, to *Typhis*, the chief Pilot in the famous *Argo*, who noting that a Kite when she flew, guided her whole Body by her Tail, effected that in the devices of Art, which he had observed in the Works of Nature. By these helps some great Voiages were performed in the elder times; the greatest, those of *Jason*, *Ulysses*, and *Alexander*, with the Fleets of *Solomon* and the *Egyptian* Kings. Of these, *Jason* and his Companions sailed in the Ship called *Argo*, through the *Euxine* Sea, and part of the *Mediterranean*; *Ulysses*, through the *Mediterranean* onely; small Gullets, if compared with the Ocean. *Alexander*'s Journey, so famous, and accounted then so hazardous, was but sailing down the River *Indus*, and four hundred furlongs into the Ocean. And for the Fleets of *Solomon*, and the Kings of *Egypt*, it is very apparent that they went with great leisure, and crawled close by the Shore-side: otherwise it had been impossible to have consumed three whole years in going from *Exion-Geber* into *India*, and returning again; which was the usual time of these Voyages, as appeareth in 1 *King*. 10. 22. After the fall of the *Roman* Monarchy, the most potent States by Sea in the *Mediterranean* were the *Genoese* and *Venetians*, in the Ocean the *English* and the

the *Hanse*-Towns, neither of which ever attempted any great Discoveries.

But in the year 1300, one *Flavio* of *Malphi* in the Realm of *Naples* found out the Compass, or *Pyxis Nautica*, consisting of 8 Winds only, the four principal, and four collateral: and not long after, the people of *Bruges* and *Antwerp* perfected that excellent Invention, adding 24 other subordinate Winds or Points. By means of this excellent Instrument, and withal by the good success of *Columbus*, the *Portugals* Eastwards, the *Spaniards* Westwards, and the *English* Northwards, have made many glorious and fortunate Expeditions: which had been utterly impossible to have been performed, and had been foolishly undertaken when that Help was wanting. I know there hath been much pains taken by some Learned men to prove the use of the Mariner's Compass to be far more ancient than is now commonly pretended. *Fuller*, a very learned and industrious man, but better skilled in the *Hebrew* Tongue than the Philologie of the *Greeks* and *Latines*, will have it known to *Solomon*, and by him taught unto the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians*, (the most famous Sea-men of old times:) but he brings no Argument of weight to make good the cause. Nor is it possible that such an Excellent Invention, so beneficial to the common Good of all Mankind, should have been forgotten and discontinued for the space of more than 2000 years, if ever the *Tyrians* and *Phœnicians* had been Masters of it; who could not possibly conceal it (had they been so minded) from the common Mariners, or they not have communicated it for Gain, or desire of Glory, to the *Greeks* and *Romans*, under whom successively they lived. As little moment do I find in some other Arguments; as that the *Lapis Heraclius* of the ancient Writers, or the *Versoria* of *Plautus*, should be by them intended of the Mariner's Compass. For plainly the *Versoria* of *Plautus* is no other than that piece of Tackle which our Mariners now call the *Bolin*; by which they use to turn their Sails, and fit them to the change of every Wind. And so much doth appear by the Poet himself, in the Comedy which he calls *Mercator*, saying, *Hinc ventus nunc secundus est, cape modo Versoriam.* So called from *Verso*, to turn often; or from *Versum*, the first *Supine* of *Verto*: whence *Velum vertere* is a common phrase amongst the *Latines*, used for the shifting of the Sail as the Wind doth vary. As for the Load-stone, it is called indeed *Heraclius Lapis*, Ἡρακλεια λίθος by the *Greeks*: not because *Hercules Tyrius*, whom the *Phœnicians* invocated when they were at Sea, had first found out the Virtue of it, as our *Fuller* thinketh but because first found near *Heraclea*, a City of *Lydia*; Κέκληνται δ' ὅτως ἀπὸ Ἡρακλείας τῆς ἐν Λυδίᾳ πόλεως, saith *Hesychius*, the old Grammarian. Called for the same reason *Magnes*, by the Writers both *Greek* and *Latine*; because first found in the Territory of *Magnesia*, a City of *Lydia* also, whereof *Heraclea* was a part. So *Suidas* telleth us of the *Greeks*, Ἡρακλειαν λίθον τινὲς τῆς Μαγνησίας ἀπὸ χώρας, διὰ τὸ τὴν Ἡράκλειαν τῆς Μαγνησίας εἶναι, Heraclium *Lapidem quidam* Magnesiam *reddiderunt, quia* Heraclea *pars est* Magnesiæ. Called for the very same reason *Lydius Lapis* also, but by them known onely as a Touchstone. Thus old *Lucretius* for the *Latines*,

> *Quem* Magneta *vocant patrio de nomine* Graii,
> Magnetum *quia sit patriis de finibus ortus.*
>
> Which Stone the *Greeks* do *Magnes* name,
> Because it from *Magnesia* came.

But I have rambled farther than I did intend, drawn by the virtue of the Load-stone too much out of my way. It is time now to return again into *America*, where the *Spaniards* at their first arrival found the People without all manner of Apparel, nought skilled in Agriculture, making their Bread either of a Plant called *Maize*, or a kind of Root called *Jucca*: a Root wherein is a venomous Liquor, not inferiour to the most deadly Poysons; but having first squeezed out this Juice, and after dried and prepared the Root, they made their Bread of it. They worshipped Devillish Spirits, whom they called *Zemes*; in remembrance of whom they kept certain Images made of Cotton-wool, like our Childrens Babies; to which they did great Reverence, as supposing the Spirit of the *Zemes* to be in them: and to blind them the more, the Devil would cause these Puppets to seem to move, and to make a noise. They stood also in so great fear of them, that they durst not displease them: for if their wills were not fulfilled, the Devil straight executed vengeance upon some of their Children; so holding this infatuated People in perpetual Thraldom. So ignorant they were of all things which they had not seen, that they thought the Christians to be Immortal: wondring exceedingly at the Sails, Masts, and Tacklings of their Ships; themselves knowing no Ships or other Vessels, but huge Troughs made of some great-bodied Tree. But this opinion of the Christians Immortality (in the sense they meant it) did not long continue: for having taken some of them, they held their heads under the Water till they had quite choaked them; by which they knew them to be mortal, like other men. Quite destitute of all good Learning, they reckoned their time by a confused Observation of the course of the Moon: and strangely admired to see the *Spaniards* know the Health and Affairs of one another, onely by reading of a Letter. Of a plain and honest nature, for the most part, they were found to be; loving and kind in their Entertainments, and apt to do good Offices, both private and publick, according to their Understandings: encouraged thereunto by an opinion which they had, that beyond some certain Hill (but they knew not where) those which lived honestly and justly, or offered up their Lives in defence of their Countrey, should find a place of everlasting Peace and Happiness. So natural is the knowledge of the Souls Immortality, and of some *Ubi* for the future Reception of it, that we find some Tract or other of it in most barbarous Nations. And as for Gold and Silver, which the new-come Christians so adored, they esteemed them no otherwise then as dross: though many times they adorned themselves therewith for the colour's sake; as they did also with Shells, Feathers, and the like fine Gew-gaws.

Of Complexion most of these *Americans* were reasonably fair and clear, little inclining unto Blackness: notwithstanding that a great part of this Country lieth under the same parallel with *Æthiopia*, *Lybia*, and the Land of *Negroes*. So that the extraordinary heat of the Sun is not (as some imagine) the Cause of that Blackness, though accidentally it may turn the Skin into such a Colour; as we see in many Countrey-Lasses, even in colder Climates, whose Faces are continually exposed to the Sun and Weather. Others, more wise in their own Conceits, (but in no bodies else) will have the natural Seed of the *Africans* to be black of Colour; contrary both to Sense and Reason, Experience and true natural Philosophy being both against it. And some will have this Blackness laid as a Curse on *Cham*, (from whose posterity the *African* Nations do derive themselves) because, forsooth, he had carnal knowledge of his Wife when they were in the Ark: a Fancy as ridiculous as the other false. So that we must refer it wholly to Gods secret pleasure; though possibly enough the Curse of God on *Cham* and on his posterity (though for some cause unknown to us) hath an Influence on it.

Touch-

Touching the Original of this People, it is most probable that they descended from the *Tartars*; for which there are some Arguments of special weight. For first, it may be proved in the way of Negation, that they came not from *Europe*; as having no remainders of the Arts, Learning and Civilities of it. And secondly, that they came not from *Africk*; in regard they have no Black-men amongst them, except some few which dwell on the Sea-Coasts over against *Guinea* in the Land of the *Negroes*, from whence they are supposed to have been brought hither by some Tempest or other. Thirdly, that they have not the least token or shew of the Arts and Industry of *China*, *India*, or any civil Region on that side of *Asia*. The Affirmative Arguments prove first, That they came from *Asia*; next in particular from *Tartary*. That they came out of *Asia*, is more than manifest, in that the West side of the Country towards *Asia*, is far more populous then the East towards *Europe*: of which there can be no other reason assigned, than that these parts were first inhabited, and that from hence the rest was peopled. Next, the Idolatry of this People, and the particularities thereof, their Incivility and barbarous qualities, tell us that they are most like the *Tartars* of any. Thirdly, the West-side of *America*, if it be not Continent with *Tartary*, is yet disjoyned by a very small Streight, as may be perceived in all our Maps and Charts, as also in the Description of these Countreys: so that there is thence into these Countreys a very quick and easie passage. And fourthly, The People of *Quivira*, which of all the Provinces of *America* is the nearest unto *Tartary*, are said to follow, in the whole course of their Life, the Seasons and best pasturing of their Cattel, just like the *Scythian Nomades*, or *Tartarian Hordes*: an evident Argument of their Original Descent.

But from what Root soever they did first descend, certain it is, that they had settled here many Ages since, and overspread all the parts and quarters of this spacious Continent; there being no place which the *Spaniards*, or any other Adventurers, found desolate or waste, and without Inhabitants. But their numbers are much diminished since these late Discoveries; the *Spaniards* behaving themselves most inhumanely towards this unarmed and naked People, killing them up like Sheep appointed to the Slaughter, or otherwise consuming them in their Mines and Works of Drudgery. And had not *Charles* the Fifth ordained with most Christian Prudence, that the Natives should not be compelled to work in the Mines against their wills, but that the *Spaniards* should provide themselves of Slaves elsewhere; the Natives in a little longer time had been quite exterminated, to the great reproach of Christianity and the Gospel. For so exceeding barbarous and bloody were they at their first coming thither, that *Hathny*, a Nobleman amongst them, being perswaded to embrace the Christian Faith, demanded first what he should get by being of that Religion? and was answered, That he should get Heaven and the Joys thereof: Then would he know what place was destinate to such as died unbaptized; and was answered, That they went to Hell, and the Torments of it. Finally, asking unto which of these two places the *Spaniards* went, and being told they went to Heaven, he renounced his Baptism: protesting that he would rather go to Hell with the Unbaptized, *than to live in Heaven with so cruel a People.* The rest were driven unto the Font, like so many Horses to the watering place, and received into the Church of *Christ* without any Instruction: insomuch that one old Frier (as himself confessed to *Charles* the Fifth) had Christened 700000 of them, and another of that rank 300000; never acquainting them with any of the Articles of the Christian Faith, or points of Religious Conversation, (except it were to be obedient to their Pastors and Teachers.) Yet here I must confess, (for I am loth to defraud any man of his due) there hath been made a great Improvement of Christianity: the number of Christians in this Countrey being thought by some learned men of the Church of *Rome*, to equal all those of the *Latine* Churches in *Europe*. And though perhaps constrained at first unto it as a new Religion, and of a stricter Rule then that which before they had; yet by long time and Education it is now grown more plausible and familiar to them. The Church hereof is governed by the four Archbishops of, 1 *Mexico*, 2 *Lima*, 3 *S. Foy*, and 4 *Dominico*, who have under them 25 Suffragan Bishops, all liberally endowed and provided for.

When this New World came first acquainted with the Old, *Isabel* Queen of *Castile* would not permit any of her Husband *Ferdinando*'s Subjects to be planted here, *viz. Arragonians* or *Valentians*, but licensed the *Castilians*, *Andaluzians*, *Biscainers*, and the rest of her own people onely, envying the Wealth hereof to the rest. When she was dead, *Ferdinando* licensed generally all the *Spaniards*, excluding onely the *Portugals*. But so rich a Prize could not so warily be fenced, but that the *Portugals*, *French*, *English*, and now of late the *Low-Country-men* have laid in their own Barns part of the *Spaniard*'s Harvest; who well hoped to have had a Monopoly of so Wealthy a Region, and to have enjoyed without any Rival or Competitor the possession (I cannot say the Love) of a Countrey so abundantly fruitful. For though some of the Kings of *Spain* have been used to say, that they loved the *East-Indies* as their Mistress onely, in whose favour they could patiently enough endure a Rival; but esteemed *America* as their Wife, in whose love they could not brook a Competitor without a foul dishonour: yet by his leave (or without it rather) some of his Neighbours have made bold with his Wife in these later times, though in the affections of his Mistress they have greater Interest. But these Attempts of the *English* and *Hollanders* have been an occasion of great strength to the whole Country. For whereas in our first Wars with *Spain*, in Queen *Elizabeth*'s time, our private Adventurers found the Sea-coasts almost naked of Defence, and thereupon made many a rich and prosperous Voyage to these parts: the *Spaniards*, upon sight of that weakness and disadvantage, so strongly fortified their Havens and Sea-Towns, that towards the later end of the Reign of that Queen we were not able to accomplish that with Great and Publick Forces, which before had been performed by Small and Private. Which caused our Captains and Adventurers, failing oftentimes in their Designs upon the Continent, to make up their Market on the Seas, in the return of the *Spanish* Navies, as they yet doe.

This New World is very plentiful of Spices, Fruits, and such Creatures which the Old World never knew; stocked with such store of Kine and Bulls, (brought hither out of *Europe* since the first Discovery) that the *Spaniards* kill thousands of them yearly for their Tallow and Hides onely; blest with such abundance of Gold, that they found in many of their Mines more Gold than Earth: a Metal which the *Americans*, not regarding it, greedily exchanged for Hammers, Knives, Axes, and the like Tools of Iron; for before they were wont to make their Canoes or Boats plain without, and hollow within, by the force of Fire. Other particularities shall be specified in the particular Descriptions of the several Countries. I shall now onely take a brief View of such of their Beasts and Fowls, as either this Old World did not know, or knew not in such shapes and qualities as are there presented. Their Lions less in greatness than those in *Africa*, are said to be of colour gray, and so nimble as to climb Trees; their

Dogs

Dogs ſnowted like Foxes, but deprived of that property which the Logitians call *Proprium quarto modo*, for they could not bark; their Hogs with Talons ſharp as Razors, and the Navil of their bodies on the Ridge of their Backs: their Stags and Deer without Horns; their Sheep (they call them *Lamas*) not only profitable, as with us, for Food and Rayment, but accuſtomed to the carrying of Burthens, ſome of 150 pound weight. Amongſt ſuch ſtrong Beaſts as this Old World knew not, we may reckon that deformed one (whoſe name I find not) whoſe fore-part reſembleth a Fox, the hinder-part an Ape, except the Feet only, which are like a man's: beneath her Belly a receptacle like a Purſe, where ſhe keeps her young, till they be able to ſhift for themſelves; never coming thence but when they ſuck, and then in again. The *Armadilla* is in form like a barbed Horſe, ſeeming to be armed all over, and that with artificial (rather then natural) Plates, which do ſhut and open. The *Vicugne* reſembleth a Goat, but greater and more profitable; of the Fleece whereof they make Ruggs, Coverings, and Stuffs; and in the Belly find the Bezoar, ſometimes two or three, a ſovereign Antidote againſt Poiſons and venemous Diſeaſes. A kind of Hare, reſembling a Want in his Feet and a Cat in his Tail; under whoſe Chin nature hath faſtned a little Bag, which ſhe hath alſo taught him to uſe as a Store-houſe; for in this, having filled his belly, he preſerveth the remnant of his Proviſion. The *Pigritia*, a little Beaſt, (not ſo named for nought) which in fourteen days cannot go ſo far as a man may eaſily throw a ſtone. Then for their Birds, they have them there in ſuch variety of Colours, that the *Indians* will perfectly repreſent in Feathers whatſoever they ſee drawn with Pencils: inſomuch as a Figure of S. *Francis* made of Feathers was preſented to Pope *Sixtus Quintus*; whoſe Eye could not diſcern them to be natural Colours, but thought them Pencil-work, till he made tryal with his Fingers. One called the *Tominejo*, of all Colours, ſo little, that it ſeems no bigger then a Bee or Butter-flie, the mouth thereof no bigger then the eye of a Needle, yet yielding not to the Nightingale in the ſweetneſs of its Note and Muſick; the Bird and Neſt, put into Gold-Scales, not weighing above 24 grains, yet beautified with Feathers of ſo many Colours, eſpecially in the Neck and Breaſt, that the *Indians* make great uſe of them in their Feather-pictures. Others as big, as theſe are little. The *Condores* of ſuch ſtrength and greatneſs, that they will fall upon a Sheep or Calf, open it, and eat it. Like Miracles of Nature have they in their Fruits and Plants, more proper unto natural Hiſtory then to this Diſcourſe; and many medicinal Drugs of rare operation, which I leave to the conſideration of the learned Herbaliſts. I am too *much a Fool to be a Phyſitian*, and therefore will not deal in ſuch things as are out of my Element. Yet ſomewhat of this kind we may chance to meet with in the Deſcription and Survey of the ſeveral Provinces into which this *New World* is divided.

The whole is naturally divided into two great *Peninſula*'s; whereof that towards the North is called *Mexicana*, from *Mexico* the chief City and Province of it, ſuppoſed (for the moſt Northern parts of it are not yet diſcovered) to contain 13000 miles in campaſs. That towards the South hath the name of *Peruana*, from the great Countrey of *Peru*; the Circumnavigation whereof is reckoned to 17000 *Italian* miles. The *Iſthmus* which joyneth theſe two together is very long, but narrow; in ſome places not above 12 miles from Sea to Sea, in many not above ſeventeen. By the *Spaniards* it is called the *Streight* of *Darien*, from a River of that name in *Peruana*, near unto the *Iſthmus*; and is ſo ſmall a Ligament for ſo great a Body, that ſome have thought of turning theſe two *Peninſula*'s into perfect Iſlands. Certain it is, that many have motioned to the Council of *Spain*, the cuting of a navigable Chanel through this ſmall *Iſthmus*, ſo to ſhorten their common Voyages to *China* and the *Molucca*'s. But the Kings of *Spain* have not hitherto attempted it; partly becauſe if he ſhould employ the *Americans* in the work, he ſhould loſe thoſe few of them which his people have ſuffered to live; partly, becauſe the *Slaves* which they yearly buy out of *Africa* do but ſuffice for the Mines and Sugar-houſes; but principally, leſt the paſſage by the *Cape of good hope* being left, thoſe Seas might become a receptacle of Pirates. Which doubtleſs was a very prudent and politick conſideration. Many times I have read of the like attempts begun, but never of any finiſhed. *Seſoſtris* King of *Ægypt*, *Darius* of *Perſia*, one of the *Ptolomies*, and a late capricious *Portugal* had the like Plot, to make a paſſage from the Red Sea to the *Mediterranean*: ſo had *Cæſar*, *Caligula* and *Nero*, Emperours of *Rome*, upon the *Corinthian Iſthmus*. Another of the ſame nature had *Charles* the Great, to let the *Rhene* into the *Danow*: the like had *Lucius Verus*, to joyn the *Rhene* and the *Rhoſne*: all which, in their peculiar places, we have already touched. *Nicanor* alſo, King of *Syria*, intended to have made a Chanel from the *Caſpian* to the *Euxine* Sea, an infinite Project. But neither he nor any of the reſt could finiſh theſe works: God, it ſeemeth, being not pleaſed at ſuch proud and haughty Enterpriſes. And yet perhaps the want of Treaſure hath not been the leaſt cauſe why the like projects have not proceeded: beſides the dreadful Noiſes and Apparitions, which (as we have already ſaid) continually affrighted the Workmen.

Not leſs obſervable then this great, but unſucceſsful, Deſign of cutting a paſſage through the *Iſthmus*, from one Sea to the other, was that notable, but a like ſucceſsleſs Attempt of *John Oxenham*, an adventurous *Engliſh*-man, in a paſſage over it by Land. This man being one of the Followers of Sir *Francis Drake*, arriving in a ſmall Bark, with 70 of his Companions, a little above *Nombre di Dios*, the chiefeſt Town of all the *Iſthmus*, drew his Ship on Land, covered it with Boughs, and marched over the Land with his Company, guided by *Negroes*, till he came to a River. There he cut down Wood, made him a Pinnace, entred the South-Sea, went to the Iſle of *Pearles*, where he ſtayed ten dayes; intercepted in two *Spaniſh* Ships (who feared no Enemy on that ſide) 60000 pound weight of Gold, 200000 pound weight in bars of Silver, and returned in ſafty to the Land. And though by the mutiny of ſome of his own Company,, he neither returned into his own Countrey, nor unto his Ship: yet is it an Adventure not to be forgotten, in that never attempted by any other, and by the *Spaniſh* Writers recorded with much Admiration.

But to return to the Diviſion of this Countrey, and the two main parts thereof which this Streight uniteth. *Mexicana*, or the Northern *Peninſula*, may be moſt properly divided into the Continent, and Iſlands: the Continent again into the ſeveral Provinces of 1. *Eſtotiland*, 2. *Nova Francia*, 3. *Virginia*, 4. *Florida*, 5. *California*, 6. *Nova Gallicia*, 7 *Nova Hiſpania*, 8. *Guatimala*; each of them branched into many Subdiviſions and leſſer Territories. *Peruana*, or the Southern *Peninſula*, taking in ſome part of the *Iſthmus*, as before we did, hath on the Continent the Provinces of 1. *Caſtella Aurea*, 2. *Nova Granada*, 3. *Peru*, 4. *Chile*, 5. *Paraguay*, 6. *Braſil*, 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*; with their ſeveral Members, Parts, and particular Regions. The Iſlands which belong to both, diſperſed either in the Southern Ocean, called *Mar del Zur*; where there is not any one of note but, 1. thoſe called *Los Ladrones*, and 2. the Iſlands of *Solomon*: or in the Northern Ocean, or *Mare del Noords*,

reduced unto 3. the *Caribes*, 4. *Porto Rico*, 5. *Hiſpaniola*, 6 *Cuba*, and 7. *Jamaica*, in the Survey of which particulars we will begin with thoſe which lie on the North-eaſt of this great Continent, not poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; and paſſing through the plantations of ſuch other Nations as have any footing in the ſame, come by degrees to the Eſtates of the King of *Spain*, that we may lay them all together without interruption: beginning with *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern part, and that which (as ſome ſay) was diſcovered firſt.

OF ESTOTILAND.

ESTOTILAND, as under that name we comprehend thoſe Regions of *Mexicana* which lie moſt towards the North and Eaſt, hath on the Eaſt the main Ocean: on the South, *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*; on the Weſt, ſome unknown Tract not yet diſcovered; and on the North, a Bay, or Inlet of the Sea, called *Hudſon's Streights*, and called ſo from *Henry Hudſon* an *Engliſh* man, who by this way endeavoured to find out a more commodious and quick paſſage to *Cathay* and *China* then had been formerly diſcovered. It comprehends, 1 *Eſtotiland* ſpecially ſo called, 2. *Terra Corterialis*, 3. *New-found-Land*, and 4. the Iſles of *Bacalaos*.

1. And firſt *ESTOTILAND*, ſpecially ſo called, is the moſt Northern Region on the Eaſtſide of *America*, lying betwixt *Hudſon's Streights* on the North, and *Terra Corterialis* on the South. The Soil, ſufficiently enriched with natural Endowments, is ſaid to have in it Mines of Gold, and other Metals: but I doubt it lyeth too much North for Gold, whatſoever it may do for Braſs and Iron. The people rude and void of goodneſs; naked, notwithſtanding the extreme cold of the Countrey; not having either the wit, or the care, to cover their bodies with the skins of thoſe Beaſts which they kill by Hunting, though their bellies teach them to keep life by the fleſh thereof: ſaid by the firſt Diſcoverers to ſow Corn, to make Beer, or Ale, and to have many Barks of their own with which they traded into *Greenland*; as alſo to have many Cities and Caſtles ſome Temples conſecrated to their Idols, where they firſt ſacrificed men, and after eat them. The Language which they ſpeak is expreſſed in Characters of their own; but ſome knowledge of the *Latine* Tongue there hab been amongſt them, and *Latine* Books in the Library of one of their Kings, underſtood by few.

Such were the Reports made of this Countrey by the firſt Diſcoverers, who were certain Fiſhermen of *Freezland*, caſt by a Tempeſt on this Coaſt about the year 1350. Six of them only got on Land, where all died ſave one; who after a long wandring from one Prince's Court to another, found means to return into his own Countrey: the King whereof, called *Zichumi*, being a great Adventurer in the feats of Arms, prepared for the farther Diſcovery and Conqueſt of it. Animated thereunto by the opportune coming of *Nicolo* and *Antonio Zeni*, two noble Gentlemen of *Venice*, who, deſiring to ſee the Faſhions of the World, furniſhed a Ship at their own Charges, and paſſing the Streights of *Gibraltar* held their courſe Northward, with an intent to ſee *England* and *Flanders*. But driven by Tempeſt on this Iſland, *An.* 1380, they were kindly welcomed by the King, then newly proſperous in a War againſt thoſe of *Norway*, who liked *Nicolo* ſo well, that he gave him a Command in his Navy, and under his good Conduct wone many Iſlands, diſcovered *Greenland*, and provided for the Conqueſt of *Eſtotiland* alſo. But *Nicolo* in the mean time dying, the buſineſs was purſued by his Brother *Antonio*, the King in perſon making one in the Undertaking: who liked the Countrey ſo well, being once poſſeſſed of it, that he built a city in it, and there determining to ſpend the reſt of his days, ſent back *Antonio* unto *Freezland*, with the moſt of his people.

This is the ſubſtance of the Story of the firſt Diſcovery, publiſhed long ſince by one *Franciſco Marcellino*, out of the Letters of the *Zeni*: which had they been conſidered of as they might have been, we had not ſo long wanted the acquaintance of this part of the world. But whether it were that their Reports were eſteemed as fabulous by the States of *Europe*, or that the time was not yet ripe for this great Diſcovery; there was nothing done in purſuance of it: *Zichumi* never going back to his own Countrey, and *Freezland* not long after conquered by the Kings of *Norway*. So that the knowledge of it was quite loſt again, till theſe later days. Said, in the letters of the *Zeni*, to be well ſtored with Fowl, and the Eggs of Birds, which they found there for there refreſhing; the Haven where they landed, to be called *Cape Trin*: the people to be of ſmall Stature, fearful, and to hide themſelves in Caves at the ſight of the *Freezlanders*: that there was a Mountain always burning, or caſting ſmoak; together with a certain Spring, whence iſſued a water as black as Pitch; but no ſuch Cities, Forts and Temples, as the Fiſhermen ſpeak of. The Countrey Weſt from *Freezland* 1000 miles.

To give you the Face of it as it ſtands at the preſent, it is ſaid to be well cultivated, fruitful of all Neceſſaries for the life of Man, and rich in Metals, but extreme cold; watered with four Rivers, which, riſing out of an high Mountain in the midſt of the Countrey, diſperſe themſelves over all parts of it. The people ſaid to be more ingenious, of better Judgments, and more skilled in moſt Mechanick Arts, then the reſt of the *Americans* were at the firſt Diſcovery; which argueth ſome more Civil people to have been formerly amongſt them. Their Garments of the skins of Beaſts, or Sea-Calves, with which alſo they covered the out-ſide of their Boats, to keep out the water, and make them able to endure the Sea. What Towns they have, and whether the name of *Cape Trin* be ſtill remaining, I am not able to diſcover; this Countrey lying ſtill for the moſt part hidden in a Northern Miſt. All we can ſay is, that ſome *Engliſh* names have been impoſed of late on ſome Capes and Promontories lying on the Northern Shores hereof towards *Hudſon's* Streights, by *Hudſon* and ſuch others of the *Engliſh* Nation who purſued that Enterpriſe. Of which ſort are *Prince Henry's Foreland*, towards the Eaſt, almoſt

moſt at the Entries of thoſe Streights; and then proceeding towards the Weſt, Cape *Charles*, *Kings Foreland*; and laſt of all, Cape *Walſingham*, at the end thereof, where theſe Streights open into a large and capacious Bay, called *Hudſon's Bay*. But of theſe more particularly in another place, where we endeavour the Diſcovery of ſuch parts of the World as are yet unknown, and ſo within the compaſs of a *Terra Incognita*.

2. *TERRA CORTERIALIS* hath on the North *Eſtotiland*; on the South, *Canada*, or *New-France*. So called from *Caſpar Corterialis*; who in the year 1500 left his name unto it. It is called alſo *Terra di Laboradore*, both from the Pains required of the Husbandman, and the great Recompence which it gives him: in the ſame ſenſe as *Campania* in the Realm of *Naples* is named *Terra di Lavoro*. By the *French*, who ſucceeded in the poſſeſſion hereof after the *Spaniard* had forſook it, it was called *New-Bretagne*, with reference to *Bretagne* in *France*, their own natural countrey.

The people at the firſt coming of *Corterialis* were found to be barbarous enough, well coloured, ſwift of Foot, and very good archers: their Cloathing of Beaſts-skins; their Habitations Caves, or ſome ſorry Cottages; their Religion Paganiſm, or none; their Directions Sooth-ſaying. Not ſo forgetful of the Law which nature had planted in them, as not to know the neceſſary uſe of Marriage; but extremely jealous. Better conditioned at the preſent then in former times, by their near neighbourhood to the *French*, and Commerce with Foreiners: affirmed to be very well diſpoſed, to feed moſt generally on Fiſh, and to adorn themſelves with Bracelets of Braſs, or Silver. Their chief Towns, 1. *Breſt*, 2. *Sancta Maria*, 3. *Cabo Marzo*, of which little memorable.

The Countrey firſt diſcovered by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, the Son of *John Cabot* before mentioned: who in the year 1497, at the Charges and Encouragement of King *Henry* 7. ſetting ſail from *Briſtol*, firſt made the Diſcovery of theſe parts, as far as to the Latitude of 67 and an half, (which brings *Eſtotiland* within the compaſs alſo of his Diſcoveries.) The Land which he firſt ſaw he called *Prima Viſta*; and an Iſland lying before it he called *S. John's*, becauſe diſcovered on the day of S. *John Baptiſt*. They found upon the Countrey plenty of white Bears, Stags greater then ours, Scut-fiſhes of a yard long, and ſuch ſtore of Cod-fiſh (which the Inhabitants called *Bacalaos*) that their multitudes ſometimes ſtayed his Ships: hence the occaſion of their name. Returning home, he found great preparations for War in *Scotland*; ſo that nothing elſe was done in this Diſcovery by the *Engliſh* Nation. But three years after, *Caſpar Corterialis* a *Portugueze*, ſetting ſail from *Lisbon*, fell upon thoſe parts of *Cabot's* Diſcoveries, which ſince bear his name: from whence he brought the piece of a gilded Sword of *Italian* workmanſhip, left there moſt probably by one of the *Cabots*. Returning again the next year, he was no more heard of; drowned in the Sea, or ſlain by the Savages on the Land, as was his Brother *Michael* in the year next following. Neglected after this, till the *French* having planted in *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, caſt an Eye upon it; who gave the name of *Breſt* to a Town hereof, (according to the name of a noted Port in *Little Bretaigne*:) but whether they ſetled any Colony in it, or only did reſort unto it in the way of Trading, I am not able to determine.

3. *NEW-FOUND-LAND*, (*Terra Nova*, as the *Latines* call it) is a great Iſland, lying on the South of *Corterialis*, from which parted by a Frith, or Streight, called *Golfe des Caſteaux*. So called from the late diſcovery of it, when diſcovered firſt, though it be ſome ſcores of years ago: as *Wickham's* Colledge in *Oxford* hath the name of *New Colledge*, though founded divers ages paſt; becauſe it was the Neweſt when that name was given.

The dimentions of the Countrey I have nowhere met with. But for the quantity hereof, it is ſaid to be better inhabited in the North-parts, then in the South; though the South the fitter of the two for Habitation. Furniſhed upon the Sea-coaſts with abundance of Cod-fiſh, as alſo with Herrings, Salmons, Thornbacks, Smelts, Oyſters, and Muſcles with Pearls in them. Within the Land a goodly Countrey, naturally beautified with Roſes, ſown with Peaſe, planted with ſtately Trees, and otherwiſe diverſified both for pleaſure and profit: the Air hereof never very extreme, more temperate in the depth of Winter then with us in *England*, the Brooks being never ſo frozen over, that the Ice is able to bear a Dog; and thoſe little Froſts but ſeldom holding three nights together. The people of reaſonabe Stature, full-eyed, broad-faced, but Beardleſs, their Faces coloured with Oker; their Houſes, Poles ſet round meeting together in the top, and covered over with skins, an Hearth, or Fire place, in the midſt: their Boats of Bark, twenty foot long, and four in breadth, not weighing above 100 pound weight; every of which will carry four men, and is by them carryed to all the places of their Removes.

Places of moſt importance in it are the ſeveral Havens (of which it is conceived to have more, and more commodious, then any one Iſland of the World for the bigneſs of it:) not beautified with Towns, or Buildings, but yielding very ſafe ſtations to the greateſt ſhips. The chief whereof, 1. *Rennoſa*, or *Roignenſe*, on the North of the Promontory called *Cape de Raz*, the South-eaſt Angle of the Iſland: of much reſort for Fiſhing, from ſeveral Countreys. 2. *Portus formoſus*, or *Fair-Haven*, three miles North of the other; capable of great Ships, and bearing into the main Land above 40 miles: ſituate in the Latitude of 40, and 40 minutes, 3. *Thornbay*, by the *Portugals* named *Enſeada Grande*. 4. *Trinity* Bay, on the North of Cape *S. Francis*, by the *Portugals* called *Babiade de la Conception*: a large Bay, five miles broad in the narroweſt place; yet ſafe withal, and of very good Anchorage. 5. *Bona Viſta*, the name of a Port and Promontory 6. *White-Bay*, or *Say-Slanche*, as the *French* call it, ſafe and capacious, on the North of the Promontory of *S. John* Betwixt which and *Cape de Grat*, on the North-eaſt Angle of the Iſland, is no Port of note. Then on the South-ſide of the Iſland, and the Weſt of *Cape de Raz*, is 7. *Port Treſpaſſez*, 8. *Port Preſenza*, and 9. *Port des Baſques* (or the *Biſcains* Heaven;) and on the Weſt-ſide, having doubled the *Cape de Raye*, in the South-weſt Angle of the Iſland, there is 10. *S. George's Bay*: all of them ſafe, capacious, and of great reſort.

4. Before the Iſland, at the diſtance of 25 Leagues from *Cape de Raye*, lieth a long Bank, or Ridge of Ground, extended in length many hundred Leagues, in breadth 24 Leagues where broadeſt, in other places but ſixteen: and all about it certain Iſlands, which *Cabot* by one common name called *BACALAOS*, (that name peculiar now unto one alone) from the great multitudes of Cod-fiſh (by the Natives called *Sacalaos*) which ſwarmed here abouts, ſo numerous; that they hindred the paſſage of his Ships, as before was noted; and lay in ſuch Shoals upon the Coaſts, that the Bears caught them with their Claws and drew them on Land. The Government at that time by Kings, before whom the people in the moſt formal expreſſions of Duty and Reverence uſed to rub their Noſes, or ſtroke their Foreheads: which if the King obſerved, or accepted of, and meant to grace the party which had ſo adored him, he turned his Head to his left Shoulder, as a mark of Favour.

The firſt Diſcoverers of this Countrey (but not known

then to be an Island) were the two *Cabots*, *John*, and his Son *Sebastian*, employed herein by *Henry* the 7. 1497. as before was noted. The business being laid aside at his coming back, was afterwards revived by *Thorn* and *Eliot*, two of *Bristol*; who taking a more perfect view of it then was took by the *Cabots*, ascribed to themselves the Discovery of it, and animated King *Henry* the 8. unto the Enterprize: which was done *Anno* 1527, but with ill success. In the mean time the *Normans*, *Portugals*, and *Britans* of *France* had resorted to it, and changed the names which by the *English* had been given to the Bays and Promontories But the *English* would not so relinquish their Pretentions to the Premier Seisin. And therefore in the year 1583, Sir *Humphry Gilbert* took possession of it in the name of the Queen of *England* interdicted all other Nations the use of Fishing, and intended to have setled there an *English* Colony. But being wrecked in his return, the sending of the Colony was discontinued till the year 1608, when undertook by *John Guy* a Merchant of *Bristol*, who most successfully performed it; the Colony so prospering in a little time, that they had Wheat, Rye, Turnips, Coleworts, of their own sowing, some probability of Metals, a certainty of Sables, Musks, and other precious Commodities, besides their Fishing; though that the great occasion of their settling there. Such plenty is there found of Ling and Cod-fish all about the Coasts, that ordinarily our men take 200 or 300 of them within four hours space, which they convey from hence to all parts of *Europe*.

OF CANADA.

CANADA is bounded on the North with *Corterialis*; on the South, with *New-England*; on the East, with the main Ocean: the Countreys lying on the West either not yet discovered, or not perfectly known. So called from the River *Canada*, the greatest, not of this Province only, but of all this *Peninsula*. A River which hath its Fountain in the undiscovered parts of this Northern Tract: sometimes enlarged into great Lakes, and presently reduced to a narrower Chanel, with many great Windings and Reaches in it. Having emboscomed almost all the rest of the Rivers of this Countrey, it emptieth it self into the Great Bay of S. *Laurence*, over against the Isle of *Assumption*, being at the Mouth 40 Leagues in breadth, and 150 Fathom depp.

It is also called *Nova Francia*, from the *French*, who following the Tract of *Cabot* and *Corterialis*, made a further Discovery of these parts, and planted several Colonies in them. The Business first undertaken by *Jaques Cartier*, Anno 1534, received here gladly by the Natives with Singing, Dancing, and expressing much sign of Joy: pursued by *Monsieur Roberval*, sent thither in the year 1542 by King *Francis* the first, not only to discover the Countrey, but to plant some part of it, who built there a fair Fortress for his greater safety; followed therein by divers others of that Nation, in their several times.

The nature of the Soil, and People, we shall best discover in the several parts of it, each differing from one another, and so not easily conformed to a general Character. Look we now only on the principal Rivers of the whole. 1. *Canada*, of which before. 2. *Pemtegouet*, or *Norumbegu*, as some call it, of which more hereafter. 3. *Quimbequi*, falling into the Ocean as the others do, 4. *Rio S. Johan*, ending its course in a large Bay called *Bay Francoise* interposed betwixt *Nova Scotia* and the rest of this Countrey. 5. *Les Trois Riviers*, which rising far North, and passing through two great Lakes, falleth into the *Canada*. 6. *Saguenay*, of the same Original, Course, and Fall. A River of so strong a Current, that it suffereth not the Sea to flow up its Channel; so deep, that in many places it attaineth to 100 Fathoms; and though but narrow at the mouth, yet groweth it broader and broader upwards; and having received many lesser streams, loseth it self at last, where the other doth.

It containeth in it several Regions. 1. *Nova Francia* specially so called, 2. *Nova Scotia*, 3. *Norembegue*, and 4. the *Isles* adjoyning.

1. *NOVA FRANCIA* specially so named is situate on the South of *Corterialis*, and on the North of the great River of *Canada*, towards the East; but on both sides of it, in the Western and more In-land parts. The Countrey is naturally full of Stags, Beares, Hares, Martens and Foxes, whose flesh the people did eat raw (till more civilized) having first dried it either in the smoak or Sun as they do their fish. They have also store of Conies, Fowl and Fish great plenty; one Fish more memorable then the rest, which they call *Adothuel*, whose Body and Head is like that of a Grey-hound. But their greatest Jewels are their Chains of *Esuguie*; a Shell-fish of the whitest colour, excellent for the stanching of Bloud: which they fashion into Beads and Bracelets, and so wear, or sell them. Not very plentiful of Fruits, or fit for Tillage; yet it breedeth some Corn, and of Pulse good plenty. The Air more cold then in other Countreys of like height, partly by reason of the greatness of the River, which being wholy of fresh Water, and so large withall chilleth the Air on both sides of it; partly because of the abundance of Ice, and those hills of Snow which the North-wind passeth over in the way to this Countrey.

The People, when the *French* first discovered them, were very rude and barbarous; few of them furnished with Houses, but removing from one place to another, as their Food decayed; and carrying all their Goods with them (a thing easily done) upon those removes. Such as lived towards the Sea, or the greater Rivers, somewhat better housed. For in the day-time they fish in their Boats, which they draw unto the Land at night, and turning them upside down, sleep under them. As ill apparelled as housed; for they went all naked, except a little piece of skin before their Privities. Some of them had their heads quite shaven, excepting one Bush of hair on the

top

top of the Crown, which they ſuffered to grow to the length of an Horſes Tail, tied up with Leather-ſtrings in a knot. Each man allowed his two or three wives a-piece; and they ſo conſtant to their Husband, that they never marry after his death, but keep themſelves continually in a *mourning habit*, a Vizard as it were, made of Greaſe and Coal-duſt, which they ſpread over all their bodies. The women labour more then the men, both in fiſhing and husbandry; digging the ground in ſtead of Ploughing, with certain pieces of wood, where they ſow their *Maiz*, (a Plant of which they make their Bread in moſt parts of *America*.) Idolaters in general before the coming of the *French*, as they are moſt of them at this day; the *French* and others which have planted in theſe Northern parts having added little more unto Chriſtianity, then by the Colonies they brought with them. Yet in the midſt of this darkneſs they ſaw ſo much light, as to believe that when they dyed they went immediately to the *Stars*; from thence conveyed to certain green and pleaſant fields, full of flowers and fruits. Plain Evidence that they believed the Immortality of the Soul, and that there was ſome place appointed for reception of it.

The chief Towns of it at that time, 1. *Hochelaga* round in figure, compaſſed about with three Courſe of timber Ramparts, one within the other; ſharp at the top, about two Rods high, with one Gate only to give entrance, and that well fortified (in their kind) with Piles and Bars. It had in it 50 great houſes, in the midſt of every one a Court, and in the middle of that Court a place which they made their fire on. Situate far within the Land, about ſix or ſeven Leagues from the banks of the River *Canada*, in the moſt pleaſant part of the Countrey; and therefore made the ſeat of their King, whom they highly reverenced and carried him on their ſhouldiers ſitting on a Carpet of skins. 2 *Stadac*, or *Stadacone*, and 3 *Quebecque*, which the *French* call *S. Croix*, on the courſe of the ſame River alſo; this laſt a Colony of the *French*. 4. *Tadouſac*, a ſafe but ſmall Haven, not capable of above, 20 ſhips, at the mouth of *Saguſna*. 5. *Franco-Roy*, a Caſtle built by *Monſieur Roberval*, when he came firſt into this Countrey. 6. *S. Lewis*, deſigned for a *French* Colony by *Mounſieur de Champlain*, *Ann.* 1611. but never came to great effect: yet ſo much *Champlain* got by the undertaking, that he left his name to a great Lake of this Countrey (full of little Iſlands) in the Lands of the *Vroqueis*, inhabiting on the South of the River *Canada*, into which it emptieth it ſelf at the laſt.

2. *NOVA SCOTIA*, containeth that part of the Countreys of *Canada*, or *Nova Francia*, which the *French* call *Accadie*, or *Cadie*, (being a *Peninſula* or Demy-Iſland;) with ſo much of the main land as lieth between the River *Canada* and the large Bay called *Bay-Francoiſe*, from the River of *S. Croix* upon the Weſt, to the Iſle of *Aſſumption* on the Eaſt. So called by King *James*, in the Grant of theſe Countreys to Sir *William Alexander*, after Lord *Secretary* of *Scotland*, and by King *Charles*, for his approved fidelity, moſt deſervedly created Earl of *Sterling*. The Letters-Patents of which Donation bear date *Anno* 1621. What time the *French* having been outed of their holds here by Sir *Sam. Argal*, Governour of *Virginia*, had abandoned the South-parts of *Canada*, and betook themſelves more into the North, and the higher parts of the Courſe of that River. And in purſuance of this Grant, the ſaid Sir *William Alexander* in the year 1622. ſent a Colony hither: and having procured a new Map to be made of the Countrey, cauſed the *Peninſula*, lying on this ſide of the *Bay Francoiſe*, to be called *Nova Caledonia*, that on the North thereof, to be called *Nova Alexandria*; giving new names alſo unto moſt of the Ports and Promontories. For the better accompliſhment of which buſineſs, he obtained alſo a Patent for advancing a certain number of perſons to the hereditary dignity of *Baronets*, or Knights of *Nova Scotia*, as we call them commonly, diſtinguiſhed from others by a Ribbon of *Orange Tawny*; the money raiſed upon which Patent was to be wholly imployed towards this Plantation. But being unable with thoſe helps, (as certainly Plantations are of too great burthen for a private perſon) or willing to imploy his money to more profit, he ſold *Port-Royal* to the *French*, and after diſcontinued in his endeavours in it.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Port-Royal*, in *Accadie* or *Nova Caledonia*, on the *Bay-Francoiſe*; once made a Colony of the *French* by *Monſieur de Monts*, *An.* 1604. continued with much difficulty till the year 1613. when deſtroyed by Sir *Samuel Argal* then Governour of the *Engliſh* Plantations in *Virginia*, by reaſon that the *Jeſuits*, whoſe neighbourhood he liked not of, had begun to neſt there. Sold ſince again unto the *French*, as before is ſaid, by whom ſtill poſſeſſed. 2. S. *Lukes Bay*, by the *French* called *Port au Monton*. 3 *Gaſpe*, a noted Port in *New-Alexandria*, oppoſite to the Iſle of *Aſſumption*. 4. *Gachepe*, on a fair Bay in the ſame Coaſt alſo.

3. *NORUMBEGA* hath on the North-East *Nova Scotia*; on the South-Weſt, *Virginia*. The air is of a good temper, the ſoil fruitful, and the people indifferently civil; all of them, as well men as women, painting their faces. The men are much affected to hunting, and therefore never give their daughters to any, unleſs he be well skill'd in that game alſo. The Women are here very chaſt, and ſo well love their husbands, that if at any time they chance to be ſlain, the widows will neither marry, nor eat fleſh, till the death of their husbands be revenged. They both dance much; and for more nimbleneſs, ſometimes ſtark naked. The Sea upon the Coaſts ſo ſhallow and ſo full of Sands, that it is very ill ſayling all along theſe ſhores. The Towns, or habitations rather, ſo differently called by the *French*, *Portugals*, and *Spaniard*, that there is not much certainty known of them. Yet moſt have formerly agreed upon *Norumbegue*, or *Arampec*, as the Natives call it; ſaid to be a large, populous and well-built Town, and to be ſituate on a fair and capacious River of the ſame name alſo. But later obſervations tell us there is no ſuch matter; that the River which the firſt Relations did intend is called *Pempegouet*, neither large nor pleaſant; and that the place by them ment is called *Aggancia*, ſo far from being a fair City, that there are only a few Sheds or Cabins, covered with the barks of Trees or the Skins of Beaſts. Howſoever I have let it ſtand on the firſt reports, it being poſſible enough that the Town might fall into decay, deſerted on the coming of ſo many ſeveral Pretenders, and that the Sheds or Cabins which the laſt men ſpeak of may be only the remainders of it.

4. Adjoyning to theſe Countreys of *Canada*, are ſeveral *Iſlands* not joyned in any common name, but yet deſerving ſome conſideration in this place and time. The principal whereof, 1 *NATISCOTEC*, called the Iſle of *Aſſumption*, ſituate in the very mouth of the River, was firſt diſcovered by *Jaques Carter*, *Anno* 1534. in length 35 leagues, ſeven or eight in breadth. The Iſland very plain and level, of a fruitful Soil, beautified with Trees of ſeveral ſorts, repleniſhed with great plenty both of Fowl and Fiſh, and furniſhed with convenient Rodes, though with no good Havens. Not hitherto inhabitted, for ought I can find. 2. *RAMEÆ*, a frie of little Iſlands in the great Gulf of *S. Lawrence* on the South of *Natiſcotec*, firſt found out or frequented by the Citizens of *S. Malo* in *Bretaigne*, *Anno* 1590, of great reſort for the *Morſe-fiſhing*, uſed upon the Coaſts, which is here ſo gainful, that a *French* Bark in a very little time killed 1500 of them. Theſe *Morſes* (take this by the way) are a kind

a kind of Sea-Horſes, or Sea Oxen; with two Teeth of a foot long growing downwards out of the upper Jaw, ſold dearer then Ivory, becauſe eſteemed a ſoveraign Antidote againſt poiſons. They have alſo four Feet, no Ears, the Horns about half an ell in length; the skin, when dreſſed, twice as thick as that of a Bull; their fleſh, when young, as ſweet and tender as Veal. So fat and unctuous, that with the bellies of five of them, there is made uſually an Hogs-Head of Train oil, as good as that of the Whale, 3. *BRION*, a ſmall Iſland on the South of the *Ramea*, about two leagues in length, and as many in breadth; of a rich ſoil, fat paſturage, well ſhaded with tall and lofty Trees; and neighboured by a ſmaller Iſland called *Iſle Blanche*, of the like fertility. 4. *BRITON*, (*Inſula Britonum*) ſo named from *Jaques Briton* a *French*-man, in the time of *Francis* the firſt, called alſo the Iſland of *S. Laurence*, is ſituate on the South-Eaſt of the Iſle of *Brion*: in form triangular, in compaſs about 80 leagues; pleaſant and fruitful, though for the moſt part ſwelled with Hills. Deſtitute of Rivers, but interlaced with great Arms of the Sea, well ſtored with ſhell-fiſh; and in the midſt thereof a great Lake full of little Iſlands: the Woods repleniſhed with plenty of Deer, black Foxes, and a Bird called *Pengwin*. Inhabited by the Natives only, though the *Portugals* did ſometimes endeavour a Plantation in it; but finding the Air too cold for them, they again deſerted it. The chief Haven is by the *Engliſh* called new *Newport*; by the *French Port aux Anglois*, from the great reſort of the *Engliſh* to it, in regard of their fiſhing. 5. *ISLE DE SABEL*, by the *French* ſo called from the Sands which lie high about it; diſtant from the *Briton Iſle* about 30 leagues to the South; 15 leagues in compaſs, but more long then broad, and of unſafe landing. The planting of it, in regard of the ſafety of the place, attempted twice by the *French* and once by the *Portugals*; but without ſucceſs. 6. Others of leſs note, as *Menego*, and *Les Iſles des Oiſeaux*, I paſs over purpoſely, there being nothing, or but little, to be ſpoken of them.

So it appears by this accompt, that though the *French* have given the name of *Nova Francia* to all theſe Countreys; yet they never had the honour of the firſt diſcovery, wherein the *Engliſh* and *Portugueze* had precedency of them: nor are poſſeſſed of any conſiderable part thereof, the *Scots* putting in for a large ſhare; the *Engliſh* Maſters of the beſt Ports, and all the Iſlands of the Countrey in the hands of the Savages. Of theſe ſome great and powerful Nations over-ſway the reſt. The chief whereof are the *Iroquois* on the North-Eaſt of *Norumbegua*, neighboured by the *Ochataignins*, the *Albonmequins*, and the *Nebicerines*, the *Souriquois*, and *Etechimins* of *Accadie*, and *New Alexandria*; the *Montagnets*, and the *Attogovantans*, on the banks of the *Canada*. All of them ſtout and hardy people, falſe of their words, treacherous in their practices, and mercileſs in their revenges. So well acquainted with the Factions and diviſions of *Europe*, that they know how to make uſe of one Nation againſt another; and by that means to keep themſelves in their firſt eſtate, without being ſubject to any. So that the footing which the *Engliſh*, *French*, or *Scots* have obtained amongſt them, ſerv's rather to ſecure themſelves in the way of their Trading, then to entitle them unto any poſſeſſion and command in the Countrey: the *French* being ſhut up in a few weak Forts on the North of the *Canada*; the *Scots* pretending only to a Bay or two in the South of *Accadie*; and the *Engliſh* being only *Tenants at the will* of the Natives, for ſuch conveniency of fiſhing as they have in the adjoyning Iſlands.

OF VIRGINIA.

VIRGINIA hath on the North *Canada*, on the South, *Florida*; on the Eaſt, *Mare del Noort*; the Weſtern boundaries not known, or not well diſcovered. So called in honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, that *Virgin*-Monarch; when diſcovered (to any purpoſe) by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, *Anno* 1584. By the natural Inhabitants called *Apalchen*, from a Town of that name, one of the chief in all the Countrey.

The Inland parts hereof are mountainous and barren, full of thick Woods, a Receptacle for wild Beaſts, and wilder Savages. Towards the Sea more plain and fruitful, as will appear by the Survey of its ſeveral Provinces; premiſing firſt, that *Virginia* in the full latitude thereof extendeth from the 34. Degree, where it joyns with *Florida*, unto the 44. where it quartereth on *Norumbegua*.

The firſt Diſcovery hereof by the two *Cabots*, Father and Son, *An.* 1497, did firſt entitle the Crown of *England* to this Countrey. The Deſign after ſeconded by Mr. *Hare*, bringing thence certain of the petit Kings, or Princes hereof, who did Homage to King *Henry* the 8. then ſitting in his Royal Throne in the Palace of *Weſtminſter*; but nothing farther done in purſuance of it. And though *John Verazzani* a noble *Florentine*, at the incouragement and charge of King *Francis* the firſt, *Anno* 1524, diſcovered more of the Countrey then *Cabot* did; yet the *French* too much in love with the pleaſures of *France*, or intangled in Civil wars amongſt themſelves, looked no farther after it: Inſomuch that the Countrey lying thus neglected, was re-diſcovered, by the charges and direction of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, then *Captain of the Guard*, and in great power and favour with Queen *Elizabeth*, *Anno* 1584, who ſending Maſter *Philip Amadas* and Maſter *Arthur Barlow* upon this employment, did by them take poſſeſſion of it in Queen *Elizabeth*'s name; in honour of whom he cauſed it to be called *Virginia*. The next year he ſent hither a *Colony*, under the conduct of the noble Sir *Richard Grenvile*, who not ſupplied with neceſſaries for their ſubſiſtence, returned home again. In the year 1587, a ſecond *Colony* is ſent hither, but as ſucceſſleſs as the firſt: the buſineſs being undertaken only on a private Purſe, not owned as the Intereſt of the State, or of publick moment, till the year 1606, In the mean time the North parts of this Countrey being more perfectly diſcovered by Captain *Bartholomew Goſnold Anno* 1602. and the

the middle parts being taken up by the *Hollanders* not long after, that is to say, in the year 1609. the whole became divided into these three parts; 1. *New England*, 2. *Novum Belgium*, 3. *Virginia* strictly and specially so called. To which the Isles of the *Bermudas* shall come in for a fourth.

NEW-ENGLAND hath on the North East *Norumbegua*; and on the South-West, *Novum Belgium*. So called by the Adventurers by whom first planted, not so much because opposite to *Nova Albion*, as some men conceive; as in imitation of the like adjuncts of distinction given by the *French* and *Spaniards* to *Nova Francia*, *Nova Hispania*, *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Granada*, and the like.

The Countrey situate in the middle of the Temperate Zone, betwixt the degrees of 41 and 44, equally distant from the Arctick Circle, and the Tropick of *Cancer*; by consequence, naturally of the same degree of heat with *France* or *Italy*, But by reason of the thick mists which arise from the Seas adjoyning, those heats so moderated, that the Air is found to be exceedingly agreeable to an *English* body. The soil not only fruitful of such Commodities as grow there naturally, but also of all sorts of Grain which were brought from *England*. Great store of Woods and Trees, both for fruit and building; plenty of Deer within the Woods, of Salt and Fish upon the Shores; and as for Turkies, Partridges, Swans, Geese, Cranes, Ducks, Pigeous, such a full variety, as serves not only for necessity, but for Pride and Luxury. The Commodities of most note for maintaining of Traffick, rich Furs, and many sorts of Fish, some Amber, Flax, Linen, Iron, Pich, Masts, Cables, Timber fit for shipping: in a word, whatsoever comes to *England* by the way of the *Sound*, might at better rates, and with far less trouble, be supplyed from hence; at least if we believe the Relations of it, published in the year 1622.

The people for the most part well enough disposed, if not roughly handled; hospitable, and more civil then the rest of their Neighbours. So tractable and docile in matters of Religion, that liking well the Rites and Ceremonies of the *English*, at their first setling there, *Anno* 1608. they would use to say that *King* James *was a good King, and his* God *a good* God, *but their* Tanto *naught*. Which *Tanto* was an evil spirit, which did haunt and trouble them every Moon, and therefore they worshipped him for fear. Which notwithstanding, I find not any great increase of Christianity amongst the Natives: our *English* Undertakers thinking it sufficient if *they and their houses served the Lord*, without careing what became of the Souls of the wretched people, which hitherto have *sate in darkness and the shadow of death*, notwithstanding those New Lights which have shined amongst them. And as for those New-comers which have planted there, all *English*, though some immediatly out of *Holland*; I cannot better tell you of what strain they were, then in the words of *John de Laet*, *Novi Orbis lib.* 3. *cap.* 8. where he observeth, *Primos hosce* Colonos, *uti & illos qui postea accesserunt, potissimum aut omnino fuisse ex eorum hominum* Secta, *quos in Anglia* Browniſtas *&* Puritanos *vocant, quales non pauci & in* Belgium *superioribus annis se receperunt, & hinc ad socios sunt profecti*. They were (saith he) either for the most part, or altogether, of that Sect which in *England* are called *Brownists* or *Puritans*; many of which had formerly betaken themselves to *Holland*, but afterwards went thence to joyn with their Bretheren in *New-England*.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Tamesco*, where our men found Oysters of nine inches long. 2. *Nansick*, a River of the *Tarentines*, one of the chief Nations of this Tract. 3. *Sagahadock*, of most note, and deservedly too, a mile and half broad at the mouth or influx, and so upwards for the space of a day's journey, where it maketh a large Lake three days journey broad, with six Islands in it; nourished with two large Chanels, the one from the North-East, the other from the North-West, each of them rising from a Lake; the least of which being four days journey long, two broad, the other doubleth it. Of less note, 4. *Apanawapesk*, 5. *Ramassec*, 6. *Ashamahaga*, &c.

The Countrey on the Sea-side full of notable Havens, populous, and very well inhabited, insomuch as Captain *Smith* reckoned in the space of 70 miles above twenty Havens, some of them capable of 500 or a 1000 sail; most of them sheltered from the furies of Wind and Sea, by the interposition of some Islands, of which about 200 lie upon that Coast. In the space of 70 miles he reckoneth 40 Villages of the Barbarous people; the chief of which are, 1. *Macadacut*, 2. *Segocket*, 3. *Pemmaquid*, 4. *Nusconcus*, 5. *Kennebeque*, &c. all being called by the name of some Brook, or water, upon which they were seated. Since added by the *English*, 1. *S. George's Fort*, the first Plantation of the *English*, built by them at the mouth of the River *Sagahadoc*, in a Demy-Island, *Anno* 1607. 2. *New-Plymouth*, seated in a large and capacious Bay; at the first building (*Anno* 1620.) consisting of nineteen families only, but in short time improved to an handsom Town; which as it was the first Town, so it was the first Church which was setled there, modelled according to the form of Mr. *Robinson*'s Church in *Holland*, (that notorious *Separatist*,) and after made a pattern to the rest of these Churches: each absolute and *Independent* in it self, without subordination unto any superiour. For my part, I behold *Episcopacy* as the Primitive Government of the Church of *Christ*. But If there were no other Pretenders to it then *Presbitery* and *Independency*, I should as soon look for the Scepter and Throne of *Christ* (as they please to phrase it) in the *Co-ordination* of *New-England*, as in the *Presbyteries* of *Geneva*, or the Kirk of *Scotland*. 3. *Bristow*, upon the Seaside also, but more North then *Plimouth*. 4. *Barnstaple*, so called with reference to a noted Sea-Town of that name in *Devonshire*; as 5. *Boston*, with like reference to as noted a Sea-Port in *Lincolnshire*. 6. *Quillipiack*, on the Bay of *Massachusets*; a Town of an old name, but a new Plantation.

This part of *Virginia*, first discovered by Captain *Gosnold*, *Anno* 1602. and the next year more perfectly surveyed by some of *Bristol*, was by King *James An.* 1606. granted unto a certain Corporation of Knights, Gentlemen, and Merchants, to be planted and disposed of for the Publick: Sir *John Popham*, then *Chief Justice* of the *Common Pleas*, being one of the chief also in that Commission. By his encouragement, and principally at his charge, a Colony was sent thither, *Anno* 1607. under the presidency of Captain *George Popham*, and *Raleigh Gilbert*, who built the Fortress of *S. George* at the mouth of *Sagahadoc*. But the President dying the next year, and not long after him the *Chief Justice* also, the Colony, despairing of good success returned home again. Successlesly again attempted *Anno* 1614. the Undertakers were resolved to make farther trial of their fortune; and in the year 1626. sent out eight ships more: but it never setled into form till the year 1610. when by the building of *New-Plimouth*, and some encouragements sent thence to bring others on, it grew in very short time to so swift a growth that no Plantation for the time ever went beyond it. The growth of *Old Rome* and *New-England* had the like foundation; both Sanctuaries, *Ad quæ turba omnis ex finitimis gentibus novarum rerum cupida confluxit*, as *Livy* telleth us of the one; resorted to by such of the neighbouring Nations as longed for Innovations in Church and State.

2. *NOVUM BELGIUM*, or *NIEU-NEDER-*

DERLANT, hath on the North-East *New-England*, on the South-West, *Virginia* specially so called. So named from the *Netherlanders*, who began their Plantation in it *Anno* 1614. the Countrey being then void: and consequently open to the next Pretender, according to that Maxime in the Civil laws, *Quæ nullius sunt in bonis, dantur occupanti.* And yet they had some better title then a bare *Intrusion*, having bought *Hudson*'s Charts and Maps, and otherwise contented him for the charge and pains of his *Discovery*, An. 1609. of which more anon.

This part of the Country extended from the 38. degree and an half, to the 41. 15' of a good temperature both of Air and soil: fruitful of those things which the earth brought forth of its own accord; abundance of wild Grapes, Nuts, and Trees of great height and bulk for shipping; plenty of Herbage, store of Plants, the effects of nature: and where the people did their part, such increase of *Maize* (a plant of which they make their Bread) as shewed their care and industry to be well bestowed. Since the planting of the *Hollanders* there, abundantly well furnished (within their command) with Wheat and other sorts of Grain; as also with Flax, Hemp, and such other Commodities as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Woods replenished with Deer, and the Plains with Fowl; the Rivers not inferiour to any in *Sturgeons*, *Salmons*, and other the best sort of Fish which can swim in the water.

The people, though divided into many Nations, and of different Languages, are much of the same disposition with the other Savages; clad in Beasts-skins, for the most part without certain dwellings; dwelling together many Families of them under one poor roof, made of Poles meeting at the top, and covered with the bark of Trees. Their houshold-stuff a Tobacco-Pipe, a Wooden dish, and an Hatchet made of a broad flint; their Weapons, Bow and Arrows, but their Arrows made or headed with the bones of Fishes. Their Religion Idolatry, or worse; their chief God the Divil, whom they worship under the name of *Menetto*; but with less pomp and Ceremony then is used in *Africk*. Of manners, fearfull and suspicious, (not without good cause) wonderful greedy of revenge; but, if well used, tractable and obedient unto their Superiours; ficle, but very faithful unto those who trust them: conceived to be inclinable to the Christian Faith, if they had fallen into the hands and command of those who had studied godliness more then gain.

Rivers of note they have not many. That want is supplied by many large and capacious Bays, all along the Coast. The principal of those that be, 1. *Manhattes*, by some called *Nassovius*, but by the *Dutch* commonly *Noordt River*, which falleth into the Sea at *May-port*, so called by *Cornelius May*, the Master of a ship of *Holland*, at their first Plantation: another Channel of it, which from the noise thereof they call *Hell-gat*, emptying it self against an Island called the Isle of *Nuts*. The River about 15 or 16 Fathom deep, at the mouth thereof affordeth a safe Road for shipping, but of difficult entrance. 2. *Zuid River*, so called, because more Southerly then the other; as fair as that, but hitherto not so well discovered.

Towns here are few either of the old or new Plantations. The natural inhabitants live together in Tribes, many Families of those Tribes under one Roof, as before was said; but those families so remote from one another, that their Habitations are not capable of the name of a Town, and hardly of a scattered Village. Nor do I find that either the *Hollanders* or the *English* (who now divide the whole among them) are much given to building: The title of the *Dutch* being subject unto some disputes; and the Possession of the *English* not confirmed and setled. *Hudson* an *English-man* had spent some time in the Discovery of this Countrey, and given his name to one of the Rivers of it, With him the *Hollanders*, *Anno* 1609. as before is said, compounded for his Charts and Maps, and whatsoever he could challenge in the right and success of that his Voiage. But they were hardly warm in their new habitations, when Sir *Samuel Argal*, Governour of *Virginia* specially so called, (having dispossessed the *French* of that part of *Canada* now called *Nova Scotia*, *Anno* 1613.) disputed the possession with them; alledging that *Hudson*, under whose Sale they claimed that Countrey, being an *English-man*, and licensed to discover those Northern parts by the King of *England*, could not alienate or dismember it (being but a part or Province of *Virginia*) from the Crown thereof. Hereupon the *Dutch* Governour submits himself and his Plantation to his Majesty of *England*, and the Governour of *Virginia* for and under him. But a new Governour being sent from *Amsterdam* in the year next following, not only failed in paying the conditioned Tributes, but began to fortifie himself, and entitle those of *Amsterdam* to a just propriety. To which end, he gave unto the Country the name of *New-Netherland*, conferred new names on all the Bays and Rivers of it; and possessed himself of a little Island near that Branch of the *Noordt River* which themselves called *Hell-gat*: where he laid the foundation of a Town, called *New-Amsterdam*; and built a Fortress by the name of *Orange Fort*, which he garrisoned, and planted with five pieces of Canon. Complaint whereof being made unto King *Charles*, and by him represented to the *States* of *Holland*: it was declared by the said *States* in a publick Instrument, that they were no ways interessed in it, but that it was a private undertakeing of the *West-Indian* Company of *Amsterdam*; and so referred it wholly to his Majestie's pleasure. Which being declared, a Commission was forthwith granted to Sir *George Calvert*, Lord *Baltimore*, to plant the Southern parts thereof, which lie next *Virginia*, by the name of *MARY-LAND*: the like not long after to Sir *Edmond Ployden*, for planting and possessing the more Northern parts, which lie towards *New-England*, by the name of *New Albion*. And though the *Hollanders* did then seem willing to be gone, and leave all they had there for the sum of 2500 l. yet taking advantage of the Troubles which not long after followed in *England*, they have not only raised their demands to a greater height, but furnished the Native *Indians* with Arms, and taught them how to use their Weapons. A most mischievous and wicked Act; not only tending to the damage and discouragement of the present Adventurers, but even unto the extirpation of all Christians out of all these Countreys. But the best is, they were the first that smarted by it. The Savages, thus armed and trained, fell foul upon them, destroying their Farm-Houses, and forcing them to betake themselves to their Forts and Fastnesses. What hath been since done, (for the giving of new names to some of the old places, I look on as a thing of nothing) either in getting out the *Dutch*, or planting Colonies of the *English*, I can hardly say: but I fear that little will be acted, or to little purpose, till it be made a work of more publick interest.

3. *VIRGINIA* specially so called hath on the North-East *Nieu-Nederlandt*; on the South-west, *Florida*: the name restrained to this part only, since the two last Plantations, which before was common to the whole. The Countrey lieth extended from the 34. to th 38. degree of Northern Latitude: and by consequence the Air is inclined unto heats, if not refreshed and moderated by a constant Gale of Eastern winds, which they call the *Brieze*, and the blasts driving on it from the open Seas. Diversified most pleasantly into Hills and Valleys; the Mountains cloathed with woods, and the Fields with fruits. The soil so fruitful, that an Acre of Land well ordered will

return

return 200 Bushels, or 25 Quarters of Corn. Said also to be rich in veins of Allom, as also Pitch, Turpentine, store of Cedars, Grapes, Oyl, plenty of sweet Gums, several sorts of Plants for the Diers use, some Mines of Iron and Copper, of Timber Trees almost infinite numbers; as also great abundance of Cattel, Fish, Fowl, Fruit, and of Maize no scarcity. Some Crystal is found amongst the Mountains, on the shore some Pearls. Nothing deficient either in the Soil, or Air, for the encouragement and reward of a thriving Nation.

The people are but few in number for so large a Country, and those as different in size as in speech or manners. Some of them, whom they call *Sasques-hanoxi*, of so vast a greatness, that in comparison of the *English* they seemed as Giants; clad with the skins of Bears and Wolves in so strange a manner, that the head of the Beast hung before their Breasts instead of a Jewel: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and a Club. Some on the other side, whom they call *Wigucomoci*, of so low a stature, that in relation to the other they appear as *Pigmies*. But generally they are all of tall stature, well limbed, for the most part without Beards, and the one half of the Head kept shaven; cloathed in loose Mantles made of the skins of Deer, with an Apron of the same to hide their nakedness; the rest of their Bodies painted over with figures of Serpents, or of some other Creature of as horrid shape. Strong and accustomed to the cold, which they patiently endure, or feel not: wavering and inconstant, crafty, and somewhat more industrious then the rest of the Savages; but given to anger, and as greedy of Revenge as any. Gods they have many, for they Worship all things (and them only) which are like to hurt them; as Fire, Water, Lightning, Thunder, &c. So that it may be said of them, as once *Lactantius* said of the ancient *Romans*, (did not the ignorance of these poor Wretches render them excusable, and make them fitter objects for our Prayers and Pity, then our Scorns) *Dignissimi homines qui Deos suos semper haberent præsentes.* One Devil-God above all the rest, (they call him *Oke*) whom they worship, as themselves confess, more for fear then love. Not yet converted from these horrible and gross Idolatries by the long neighbourhood of the *English*; accused in that respect most justly by those of *Rome*.

No Country for the bigness of it can be better watered, or yield fairer Rivers. The principal of which are 1. *Powhatan*, (so called by the name of that petit *Royelet*, whose Territory it passeth through) which having run a course of a hundred miles, and navigable all that way by smaller Vessels, is at his fall into the Sea about three miles broad. 2. *Apamatuck*, 3. *Nansamund*, and 4. *Chikahamania*; all Tributaries to *Powhatan*. 5. *Pamaunke*, fourteen miles more North than *Powhatan*, but of lesser note. 6. *Topahanock*, navigable 130 miles. 7. *Patawomeke*, passable by Boat 140 miles, and six or seven miles broad where it falleth into the Sea; increased by many lesser streams which come out of the Mountains, and generally well stored with Fish. 8. *Powtunxut*, of a shorter Race, but a deeper Channel, then most of the former, (16 or 18 fathom deep) and of more choice of Fish then the others are.

Along the Banks of these Rivers dwell their several Tribes, scarce any one of which make up an hundred men, (that of *Patawomeke* excepted, which is able to arm after their manner 160) many not yielding above 30, and some not so many. Their habitations, not containing above ten or twelve houses apiece, but in those houses sundry particular families, are for the most part covered with the Barks of Trees; so placed, that the common Market-place standeth in the midst, at an equal distance: the houses of their *Weroances*, (or the Chiefs of their Tribes,) and that which serveth them for a Temple, being somewhat finer then the rest. And of these habitations some are presented to us by the names of 1. *Ooanoke* by the *English* called the *Blind Town*. 2. *Pemeoke*. 3. *Shycoake*, said by my Authors to be *Civitas Ampla*, a large City; but we must understand him with Relation to the rest of this Country. 4. *Chowanoak*. 5. *Secatan*. 6. *Mattaken*. 7. *Weopomioke*. 8. *Pyshokonok*, said to be inhabited by none but Women. 9. *Chipano*. 10. *Muscamunge*, both upon the Sea: most of them called by the name of those several Tribes which inhabit in them.

In reference to the *English* and their Plantations, we are to know that they made choice of the South-side of a large and goodly Bay for the place of their dwelling. A Bay which thrusting it self a great way up into this Country, and receiving into it many of the Rivers before mentioned, is by the Natives called *Chesepoack*, and yieldeth the only safe entrance into this part of the Country: the Capes thereof for that cause fortified by the *English*; that on the Southern point being called *Cape Henry*, and the other *Cape Charles*, according to the names of the two young Princes. Towns of most note, which have been either since built, or frequented by them, 1. *James-Town*, (*Jacobipolis*) so named in honour of King *James*, on the South-side of that Bay, not far from the River *Chikahamania*: first founded in the year 1606. at what time it was trenched about, and some Ordnance planted on the Works. 2. *Henries Town*, (*Henricopolis*) so named in honour of Prince *Henry* the eldest Son of King *James*, built in a convenient place more within the Land, 18 miles from *James-Town*. 3. *Dales-gift*, so called, because built and planted at the Charge of Sir *Thomas Dale*, An. 1610. 4. *Bermuda*, an open Burrough five miles from *Henricopolis*. 5. *Ketoughtan*, a noted and frequented Port in the Bay of *Chesepoack*, very much traded by the *English*. 6. *Wicocomoco*, the chief Town of *Powhatan*, one of the Royelets of this Country; much courted by the *English* at their first setting here, and a long time after: a Crown being sent him by King *James*, with many other rich Presents, the better to sweeten and oblige him; but for all that he proved a treacherous and unfaithful Neighbour.

The sum of the affairs of this last Plantation is, that the business being resumed in the year 1606, and a Commission granted to certain Noblemen and Merchants to advance the work; they fell in hand, by the Counsel and incouragement of Captain *Smith*, with the building of *James-Town*, (having first fortified *Cape Henry*) in which Town he fixed a Colony of 100 men. These, being almost consumed by Famine and other miseries, were the next year recruited with 120 more, brought by Captain *Newport*: but a Fire, having casually consumed their Houses, once again discouraged them. But the Houses being re-edified, and a Church added to the Houses, by the industry of *Smith* their Governour, the Colony began to flourish, and to increase in reputation among the Savages: especially having made (as they believed) a friend of *Powhatan*. In the year 1609. the Lord *De la Ware* was appointed Governour, and *Smith* commanded to return; who left here 490 persons, (and of them 200 expert Souldiers) 3 Ships, 7 Boats, 24 great Guns, 300 Musquets, with Victuals and Ammunition necessary; and 39 of their *Weroances*, or Petit-Kings, Tributaries and Contributioners to the *English*. Sir *Thomas Gates*, and Sir *George Summers* sent thither with 9 ships, and 500 men, lost a great part of their numbers in the Isle of *Bermudas*, the rest, not well according with the old Plantation, were at the point of returning home, when happily the Lord *De la Ware* arrived with three ships more, *An.* 1610. But falling into a desperate sickness, and come home to *Eng-*

land, he recommended the estate of the *English* there to Sir *Thomas Dale*, who furnished them with Men, Cattel, and other necessaries; after whom came Sir *Thomas Gates* with 300 men, and some heads of Cattel. And then the Government hereof being conferred on *Henry* Earl of *Southampton*, the Affairs here began to settle in a prosperous way: when unexpectedly in the year 1621. the Savages falling on them (fearing no such treachery) killed 340 of their men; and had then also surprized *James-Town*, if one of the Savages who had received the Christian Faith, had not discovered their intention. Since that, recovered of that Blow, it went happily forwards, and might by this time have been raised to some power and greatness, if the *English* by diverting on some by-Plantations, and by imploying indigent and necessitous persons in so great a work, had not discouraged the design. For certainly one might say of this Plantation, as the Scripture doth of the *Camp* of *David* in the time of *Saul*, that few or none were sent unto it (except the Principals) but such as *were in distress, or debt*, or some way or other discontented; men never likely to advance and pursue a business of such publick Interest. Commendable howsoever in this particular, (though perhaps that commendation do belong to their Governours) that being here, they kept themselves constantly to those Forms of Worship which were established and observed in the Church of *England*.

As for the Natives of the whole, they were divided (as was said) into several Tribes, every Tribe under the command of their several Chiefs: which Chiefs, though many in number, and of little Power, knew well enough how to keep their State unto their Subjects, and to shew it also unto Strangers. For when *Powhatan* was pleased to give audience unto Captain *Newport*, and the rest of the *English* sent from *Smith*, they found him upon a Bed of Mats, his Pillow of Leather, imbroidered with white Beads and Pearl, attired with a Robe of Skins like an *Irish* Mantle: at his head and feet an handsom young woman; on each side of the room twenty others, with their necks and shoulders painted red, and about their necks a great Chain of Beads: his principal men sitting before them in like manner. Yet notwithstanding this great State, (and great it was indeed for such petit Princes) he and the rest became so subject to the *English*, that in *Smith*'s time they did not only pay their Tributes, or Contributions, but at his command would send their Slaves and Subjects to *James-Town*, to receive correction for wrongs done to the Colony. And it is probable enough that those of *New-England*, being the greater and more powerful Plantation, (as followed with the stronger zeal, and carried on by the united purses of a prevalent Faction) were of like influence also among the Natives, though I find it not expressed in so many particulars.

4. The Isles of *BERMUDAZ*, many in number, (some say 400 at the least) are situate directly East from *Virginia*, from which they are distant 500 *English* miles; 3300 of the same miles from the City of *London*. So called from *John Bermudaz* a *Spaniard*, by whom first discovered. Called also the *Summer Islands*, from the Shipwreck of Sir *George Summers* upon that Coast; so much delighted with the sadness of the misadventure, that he endeavoured what he could to settle a Plantation in it.

That of more fame and greatness then all the rest, to which the name is now most properly ascribed, is situate in the Latitude of 32 and 30 minutes. Well stored, when first discovered, with plenty of Hogs, divers Fruits, Mulberries, *Palmites*, Cedars; as also of Silk-worms, Pearls and Amber, and such rich Commodities: of Fowl so infinite an abundance, that our men took a thousand of one sort, as big as a Pigeon, within two or three hours. The Air hereof very sound and healthy, found by experience (the best argument in such a point) to be agreeable to the body of an *English-man*; yet terribly exposed to Tempests of Rain, Thunder and Lightning. For which, and for the many shipwrecks happening on the Coasts thereof, and want of other Inhabitants to be said to own it, the Marriners have pleased to call it the *Island of Devils*. The soil affirmed to be as fertile as any; well watered, plentiful in *Maize*, of which they have two Harvests yearly: that which is sowed in *March* being cut in *July*; and that which is sowed in *August* being mowed in *December*. No venemous Creature to be found in all the Island, or will live brought hither. And besides these Commodities, of so safe a being, so fenced about with Rocks, and Islets, that without knowledge of the passages, a Boat of ten Tuns cannot be brought into the Haven; yet with such knowledge there is enterance for the greatest ships. The *English* have since added to these strengths of nature such additional helps, by Block-houses, Forts and Bulworks in convenient places, as may give it the title of Impregnable.

It was first discovered (but rather accidentally then upon design) by *John Bermudaz*, a *Spaniard*, about the year 1522. and thereupon a Proposition made in the Council of *Spain*, for setling a Plantation in it, as a place not to be avoided by the *Spanish* Fleets, in their return from the Bay of *Mexico*, by the *Streights* of *Bahama*. Neglected notwithstanding, till the like accidental coming of Sir *George Summers*, sent to *Virginia* with some Companies of *English* by the Lord *De la Ware*, An. 1609. Who being shipwracked on this Coast, had the opportunity to survey the Island; which he so well liked, that he endeavoured a Plantation in it at his coming home, *Anno* 1612. The first Colony was sent over under *Richard More*, who in three years erected eight or nine Forts in convenient places, which he planted with Ordnance. *Anno* 1616. a new supply is sent over under Captain *Daniel Tucker*, who applied themselves to sowing Corn, setting of Trees brought thither from other parts of *America*, and planting that gainful weed Tobacco, *Anno* 1619. the business is taken more to heart, and made a matter of the Publick, many great Lords and men of Honour being interested in it; Captain *Butler* sent thither with 500 men; the Isle divided into *Tribes* or *Cantreds*, to each *Tribe* a *Burrough*, the whole reduced to a setled Government both in Church and State, according to the Law of *England*. After this, all things so succeeded, that in the year 1623, here were said to be three thousand *English*, ten Forts, and in those Forts fifty pieces of Ordnance; their numbers since increasing daily, both by Children born within the Island, and supplies from *England*.

OF

OF FLORIDA.

FLORIDA is bounded on the North-East with *Virginia*; on the East, with *Mare del Noordt*; on the South, and some part of the West, with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the rest of the West, with part of New *Gallicia*; and some Countries hitherto not discovered. Extended from the River of *Palms* in the 25 degree of Latitude, to *Rio de Secco* in the 34, which evidently speaketh it for a Country of large Dimensions.

It was first discovered by the *English* under the Conduct of *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1497; afterwards better searched into by *John de Ponce*, a *Spaniard*, who took possession of it in the name of that King, *Anno* 1527, and by him called *Florida:* either because he landed there upon *Palm-Sunday*, which the *Spaniards* called *Pascua di Flores*, or *Pascha Florida*; or else *quia Florida erat Regio*, by reason of that fresh Verdure and flourishing estate in which he found it. But by the Natives it is said to be called *Jaquasa*.

This Country lying parallel to *Castile* in *Spain*, is said to be of the same temper both for Air and Soil, but that is abundantly more fruitful: the heart of the ground not being here worn out by continual Tillage, as perhaps it may be in the other. For here they have great abundance of Maize, (the natural Bread-Corn of the Country) which they sow twice a year: *viz. March* and *June*, and reap in the third month after, laying it in some publick Barns, and thence distribute it to the Necessities of particular persons. Well stored with several sorts of Fruit, as Mulberries, Cherries, Chesnuts, Grapes and Plums, of both excellent taste and colour: Beasts wild and tame, of all kinds which these Countries yield; and of like sorts of Fowl. The Woods and Forests full of the largest Oaks, and the loftiest Cedars; some Cypress Trees, and Bays, of a large proportion: with great plenty of that Wood, which the Inhabitants call *Pavame*, and the *French* name *Sassafras*, the Bark whereof is Medicinal against some Diseases; and another Tree which we call *Esquine*, affirmed to be a soveraign and present Remedy for the *French* Disease. It is also said to be enriched with some Mines of Gold and Silver; neglected by the Natives, till the coming of the *Spaniards* and *French* put a price upon them: and to have in it Emerals of great worth and beauty, with many Turquoises and Pearls. Others report, that all the Gold and Silver which they have amongst them came from some Ships which had been wrecked upon those Coasts: contrary whereunto it is said by the Natives, that in the Hills which they call *Apalatei* there are found great Veins of a reddish Metal, which the *French* concluded to be Gold, though they wanted time and opportunity to search into them.

The people are of an Olive Colour, great Stature, and well proportioned; naked, except their Privities, which they hide with the Skins of Stags: their Arms and Knees stained with divers paintings, not to be washed off; their Hair black, and hanging down as low as their Thighs. Cunning they be, and excellent in the Arts of Dissimulation. So stomachful, that they do naturally love War and Revenge; insomuch that they are continually in War with one or other. They are crafty also, and very intelligent, as appeareth by the Answer they gave to *Ferdinando Soto*, a *Spaniard*, who was here among them, *Anno* 1594. For when he went to perswade the people that he was the Son of God, and came to teach them the Law: *Not so*, replied a *Floridan*; *for God never had thee to kill and slay, and work all kind of mischief against us.* The Women, when their Husbands are dead, use to cut off their Hair close to their Ears, and strew it on his Sepulchre, and cannot marry again till their Hair be grown long enough to cover their shoulders. *Hermophrodites* are here also in great plenty, whom they use as Beasts to carry their luggage, and put them to all kind of Drudgery. They have all a gross belief of the Souls Immortality, but are otherwise Idolaters.

Mountains this Countrey hath not many, as being generally plain and level; the chiefest, those called *Apalatei*, before mentioned, supposed by the Inhabitants to be rich in Mines of Gold. Rivers of most note, 1. *Rio Secco*, 2. *Rio Grande*, 3. *Serrevabi*: the two first named so by the *Spaniards*, and the last by the Natives, 4. *Garunna*, 5. *Ligeris*, 6. *Axona*, 7. *Sequana*, and 8. *Charente*; so called by the *French*, according to the names of the best Rivers in *France:* both *French* and *Spaniards* having had severally and successively the possession of it. Here are also 9. *Rio de Flores*, or the River of Flowers, 10. *Rio de Nieves*, or the River of Snow; and 11. *Rio de Spirito Santo*, or the River of the *Holy Ghost*; all of them falling into the Bay of *Mexico*. A particular description of these Rivers, their Rise, Course, and Greatness, I find not in any of my Authors. Only *Mercator* telleth us of a twelfth River, called *Porte Riale*, reckon'd the chiefest of this Country, the Mouth whereof is three miles broad; where it openeth into the Sea betwixt two Promontories, the one towards the West, and the other pointing to the North. Some of these Rivers are affirmed to be haunted with Crocodiles; a Creature dangerous alike both by Land and Water.

The Countrey, not so well discovered and planted hitherto, as to be divided into Provinces, is commonly distributed into several Tribes, as were all Nations of the World at their first Discovery. The principal of these they reckon the *Quevenes*, *Marianes*, *Canagadi*, *Camoni*, *Avanares*, and *Malicones*, the *Susolas*, *Quitones*, and other names not usual unto us of *Europe*; though these more passable then many which have gone before; mollified perhaps, by the *French* and *Spaniards*, and not presented to us in their natural toughness: all governed by their *Patacouffi* or several Chiefs, and those at deadly Feuds and continual Wars with one another. Some have adventured on the names of particular Provinces, as *Panuca*, *Avanares*, *Abarduosia*, *Joguazia*, *Apalchia*, *Anthia*, *Samovia*, *Colas*; but they acquaint us neither with their Site nor Bounds: except it be that *Panuca* lieth on the borders of *Hispania Nova*, beyond the large and spacious Bay of the *Holy Ghost*; and *Calos* near the Cape called *Cabo di Florida*. Others distinguish it by the names of

the ſeveral Roylets; which varying with the change of the perſon, makes that diviſion to be very variable and uncertain alſo. But it is generally agreed that the *Peninſula* which pointeth on the Iſle of *Cuba* hath the name of *Tegeſta*, or *Florida* ſpecially ſo called; the name of *Florida* being firſt given by *John Ponce* unto this part only, though afterwards Communicated unto all the reſt of this Country. A Demy-Iſland, ſtretching in length, from the South to the North, 100 Leagues; in breadth, where broadeſt, 30 Leagues, and in ſome places 20 only. Well known by the Cape of *Martyrs*, looking into the Iſle of *Cuba*, the River of the *Holy Ghoſt*, and three goodly Bays, the chief whereof, that intituled to *S. Joſeph*, all opening into the Gulf of *Mexico*, or the Bay of *New Spain*. The whole environed about, ſave where it is joyned unto the Continent, with Bars of Sands, and ſcattered Iſlands, which ſerve unto it as the Outworks to ſome notable Fortreſs.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Helens*, on or near a Promontory ſo named, where this Country bordereth on *Virginia*, once fortified and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, but not long ſince abandoned. 2. *Fort de Charles*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*, built by the *French* upon the Banks of the River *Maio*; and ſo called in honour of *Charles* the Ninth, in whoſe time the Conqueſt of this Country was undertaken; but ruined by the *Spaniard* in the War between them. 3. *Port-Royal*, a well frequented Haven, on the mouth of the River of that name; but whether there be any Town now remaining, I am not able to ſay. More in the Land (for theſe lie all upon the Borders towards *Virginia*) *Apalche*, ſuppoſed to be a place of great conſideration, in regard of the opinion which was had of the Wealth thereof; (but found to be a ſmall Town, of but 40 Cottages:) and therefore firſt attempted and took in by the *Spaniard*, in their Invaſion of this Country under *Pamphilus* of *Narvaez*, Anno 1528: recovered by the Natives after his departure. 5. *Ante*, an open Burrough, nine days journey from *Apalche*, where the Savages gave the *Spaniards* a ſharp Encounter, and ſlew many of them; but being vanquiſhed at the laſt, they forſook the Town, of it ſelf not tenable. 6. *Ocalis*, an unwalled Town, but conſiſting of 600 Sheds (for I dare hardly call them Houſes) the chief of the Kingdom of *Acuera*. 7. *Oſacbile*, the chief Seat of the King ſo called; and 8. *Vitacuchus*, a Burrough of 200 Cottages, the principal of the Kingdom of *Vitacuchus*: both taken by the *Spaniards* at the ſame time alſo. 9. *S. Matthews*, on the Eaſtern Shore of the Demi-Iſland above-mentioned, poſſeſſed and fortified by the *Spaniard*. 10. *S. Auguſtines* on the ſame Shore, but more South then the other; ſituate at the mouth of a ſmall River ſo named, fortified by the *Spaniard* with many a ſtrong Caſtle: but for all that taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1585, there being found in the Fort of *S. John*, in which the ſtrength of the Town conſiſted, 18 Braſs Pieces, and 20000 Florens in ready Money, for the pay of the Garriſon. Repaired afterwards more ſtroegly then ever formerly. The *Spaniards* have alſo Garriſons in two other places of this Country, *viz. S. Philip*, and *S. Jago*; but I cannot ſay diſtinctly in what part they are.

The Government of this Country is of one kind only, though managed by ſeveral perſons: the Supreme Power reſiding in the Chiefs of their ſeveral Tribes; at ſuch continual Enmity with one another, that they very ſeldom joyn together in any Counſels wherein the publick is concerned. So that the *Spaniards* may affirm of the preſent *Floridans*, as the *Romans* did of the ancient *Britains*; *Nec quicquam adverſus validiſſimas gentes utilius nobis fuit, quàm quòd in commune non conſulebant*; The not communicating of their Counſels haſtned on their Bondage. Yet in the Government of theſe Chiefs there was ſomewhat of the Parliamentary way uſed with us in *Europe*: For as in all matters of Concernment thoſe Chiefs adviſed with their Council; ſo if it were a buſineſs which concerned the Publick, their Prieſts and others of moſt note for Gravity and Wiſdom were admitted to the Conſultation. But being ſeverally too weak for a ſtrong Invader, and never joyned together to defend themſelves, they made themſelves an eaſie prey to the *French* and *Spaniards*, *Et ſic dum ſinguli pugnabant, univerſi vincebantur*; by truſting to their ſingle Forces, they were all ſubdued. For in the year 1512, *John Ponce*, a Native of *Leon* in *Spain*, ſetting ſail with three Ships from the Iſland of *Porto Rico*, on *Palm-Sunday* fell on the *Peninſula* before deſcribed; and for that cauſe, or from the flouriſhing Verdure of it, called it *Florida*; but did no more then ſcour along upon the Coaſts, and give new names to ſuch of the Promontories and Rivers as he had diſcovered. and having only a ſlight Skirmiſh with ſome of the Savages, returned back again. The Buſineſs eight years after was again revived by *Vaſques de Ayllon*, who ſetting ſail from the Haven of *Plata*, in *Hiſpaniola*, attained unto the North-eaſt parts of this Continent, bordering on *Virginia*, where he left names unto the Promontory of S. *Helen* and the River of *Jordan*: and having treacherouſly enſlaved ſome of the Natives, (whom he had invited to a Feaſt) prepared for *Spain*; where he obtain'd the Kings Patent for a new Plantation. But his Perfidiouſneſs could not proſper. For in the year 1524, coming with his Ships upon this Coaſt, one of them periſhed on the Rocks, and 200 of his men being killed at their landing, he gave over the Enterprize: the *Spaniards* hitherto making no more uſe of theſe Diſcoveries, then wickedly to enrich themſelves by ſtealing men, whom as wickedly they ſold for Slaves. Nor had the Voyage of *Pamphilus de Narvaez*, Anno 1528, any better end; though undertaken with a Band of 400 Foot, and 80 Horſe. For having took poſſeſſion of the Countrey in the name of his Sovereign *Charles* the Fifth, finding ſome hopes of great Treaſures to be had at *Apalche*, (diſtant above a months Journey from the place of his Landing) he would needs march thither. In which Action, though he got that and ſome other Towns, yet he loſt himſelf, few of his men returning ſafe into their Country, and they not knowing what became of their General. As fruitleſs, but more famous, was the Enterprize of *Hernandes à Soto*, begun in the year 1538, and continued till 1543, who with a little Army of 350 Horſe, and 90 Foot overran a great part of the Countrey, and brought many of the petit Princes under the Command of *Spain*. But making only a depredatory War of it, to enrich himſelf, and waſte the Country, without ſetling any Colony, or building any Fortifications in it to make good his gettings; the Action ended with his Life, which he loſt by a Fever: the remnant of his Souldiers, whom the War had ſpared; under the Conduct of *Ludovico Muſcoſo di Alvarado*, recovering *Mexico* not without great difficulties.

And ſo the *Spaniards* leave the Stage, and the *French* enter; ſent on this Voyage by *Gaſpar Coligni*, Admiral of *France*, Anno 1562, under the Conduct of *Ribault*: who falling on that part of the Continent which lieth on the Eaſt-ſide of the *Peninſula*, gave the firſt Promontory which he touched at the name of *Cape Francois*; and after running Northward along that Coaſt, new-named the Rivers thereof by the names of the *Seine*, the *Loire*, the *Somme*, the *Garunne*, and others of moſt note in his own Countrey. Coming as far North as the great River of *Porto Royal*, he there built a little Fortreſs, which he called *Fort Charles*, where he left 26 of his men to keep poſſeſſion, and returned for *France*: his

Soul-

Souldiers following not long after, as well as they could; destitute of Supplies from home, and not able with so small a number to command them there. The Action Reinforced about two years after, under the Conduct of *Landonier*, who had accompanied *Ribault* in the former Voyage: by whom some farther progress was made in this Undertaking, and a little Town built on the Banks of the River *Maio* (so called by *Ribault*, because in that Month discovered by him) which he named *Charles Fort*, *Arx Carolina* in the *Latine*. But a mutiny happening amongst his men, and some Complaints made of him in the Court of *France*, he was called home, and *Ribault* sent again to pursue the Enterprize: who entring on his Charge in *August*, Anno 1565, was presently set on by the *Spaniards*, both by Sea and Land; his Ships forced violently upon the Rocks, the New Town sacked, the Colony put unto the Sword, very few escaping; *Ribault* himself murthered in cold blood by the Enemy, after Faith given him for his life. It was thought that above 600 *French* were slain in this Action. So ended the *French* hopes in *Florida*, the King being then preparing for a new Civil War, and loth to engage himself against the *Spaniard*, till the year 1627; when at the charge of *Dominicus Gurgius*, a private person, out of an honest zeal to the honour of his Country, and to cry quittance with the *Spaniards* for their treacherous Cruelty, it revived again. And though he found the *Spaniards*, after the defeat of *Ribault*, had repaired and fortified *Arx Carolina*, and raised two Castles more on the Banks of the *Maio*, which they had furnished with such Pieces as they took from the *French*, and garrisoned with 400 Souldiers: yet giving a couragious Onset, by the aid of the Savages, (to whom the name and neighbourhood of the *Spaniards* was exceeding odious) he forced them all, demolished the Works, and hanged all such of the Souldiers as the Sword had spared, and so returned into *France*; where, instead of honour and reward for so great a service, he was in danger of losing both his Life and Fortunes, compelled to lurk among his Friends till the times were changed. The *Spaniard* after this, to keep some kind of possession, though not finding it in Riches answerable to their greedy desires, fortified S. *Matthews*, and S. *Augustines*, on the East-side of the Demy-Island, with the Castles of S. *Philip* and S. *Jago*, in other parts of the Country towards the North-East: thinking himself so strong in the Gulf of *Mexico*, that no Forein Forces durst appear on that side of the Country. So that it seems he plays the part of *Æsop*'s Dog in the Manger, neither resolved to plant there himself, nor willing that any others should.

Having thus taken a Survey of the Main-Land of *Florida*, let us next take a view of such Islands as lie dispersed and down in the Seas adjoyning; called by one general name *LUCAIOS*, or *LUCALIÆ INSULÆ*, many in number, but reducible to these three Heads: 1. The *Tortugas*. 2. The *Martyres*. And 3. The *Lucaios* specially so called.

1. The *TORTUGAS* are seven or eight little Islands, lying on an heap at the South-West point of the *Peninsula*, called the Cape of *Florida*, in the height of 25 Degrees; distant from the Port of *Havana*, in the Isle of *Cuba* (opposite unto which they lie) about six Leagues. Well known among the Sailors, because much avoided, or rather avoided because known; the danger of their Company making their farther Acquaintance shunned.

2. The *MARTYRES*, called also the *Caios*, are three great Rocks rather then Islands, covered with a white Sand, and full of Bushes; the middlemost of the three the greatest: situate over against the South-East Promontory of the said *Peninsula*, called from hence *Cabeca de los Martyres*, or *The Cape of Martyrs*. Denominated thus by *John Ponce* the *Spaniard*, in his first Discovery of this Country, because they seemed afar off to have some resemblance to men impaled upon Stakes, as many of the Martyrs were in the Primitive times. Infamous for the many Shipwrecks which have since there hapned; but of great observation amongst Sea-faring men, because they know by leaving these Rocks or Islands, on the left hand of them, that they are already entred in the Streights.

3. The *LUCAIOS* specially so called lie dispersed on the East of the *Peninsula*, many in number, and so called from *Lucaioneque*, the greatest and most Northern of them, situate in the 27 degree of Latitude; of more length then breadth, but hitherto known by name only. Of greater note, though not so big, is that called 2. *Bahama*, in the middle way betwixt *Lucaioneque* and the *Peninsula*; in length 13 Leagues, and eight in breadth; memorable for giving name to the violent Current interposing betwixt it and the Demy-Island, called the Streights of *Bahama*; yet not so streight, but that they are 16 miles in breadth, though of so forcible a Course, that many times neither Wind nor Oars can prevail against it. 3. *Guanahani*, the most famous of all these Islands, because the first that was discovered by *Columbus*, being then almost out of hope of proceeding farther; who thereupon caused it to be called S. *Savieurs*. Well shaded at that time with Trees, full of fresh Springs, and very plentiful of Cotton, now overgrown with Shrubs and Bushes. 4. *Guanima*, by *Columbus*, when first discovered, called S. *Maria de Conception*; begirt about with Rocks and Quick-sands, but otherwise of a pleasant and fruitful Soil, full of delicate Springs. Others there are, to the number of 24, or thereabouts, whose names occur in many of our larger Maps: but being we find nothing of them but their very names, I shall not trouble my self with the Nomenclature.

Of all in general it is said, that they obeyed their King so strictly, (for a King they had) that if he commanded them to leap down from a high Rock, they performed the same; though he gave no reason but his Will. The women of so perfect Beauty, that many of the bordering Nations forsook their own Countries to enjoy their Loves: their shape and Beauty the more discernible, in regard not suffered to wear any thing till their Purgations; nor after that, but Nets of Cotton filled with Leaves of Herbs. But now, and long since, there are neither Men nor Women to be found in any of them: the people being long since wasted by the *Spaniards* in the Mines of *Cuba* and *Hispaniola*, or consumed by Famine and Diseases, or otherwise made away in Prisons and by several Torments, to the number of a Million and 200000, as some have told us. And so we pass unto the other side of those Northern Countries, opposite to *Nova Francia*, *Virginia*, and the main Land of *Florida*; that when we fall into the Countries now possessed by the *Spaniard*, we may not wander out of them till this Work be finished, except it be to take a Progress into some of the Islands, which cannot otherwise be visited but by such a Start.

OF

OF CALIFORNIA.

CALIFORNIA, in the large and general acception of it, containeth all those Provinces of *Mexicana*, which lie on the West-side of that Northern *Peninsula* beyond *Nova Gallicia*, and New *Spain*: though in the stricter, limited to that Province only which lieth on the other side of a long and spacious Gulf, called *Mer Vermiglio*, and from hence the Bay of *California*. But taking it in the largest sense, it hath on the West New *Spain*, and New *Gallicia*, and so on to those undiscovered parts which lie fartheſt North, to the Streights of *Anian*. So witnesseth *John de Laet*, lib. 6. cap. 11. *CALIFORNIA communiter dicitur quicquid terrarum* Novæ Hispaniæ *atque* Galliciæ *ad Occidentem objicitur, ad extremos* Americæ *Septentrionalis terminos, & Fretum quod vulgo* Anian *vocant.* Limited in the stricter sense and acception of it to an Island (as it is now generally conceived to be) extended in a full length from North to South, on the West hereof. So that for our more regular proceeding in the Chorography and Story of it, we must divide it into the Continent, and the Island: the Continent subdivided into the two large Provinces of 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*; the Island into 3. *California* specially so called, and 4. *Nova Albion*.

And first the Continent of this part which we call *California* hath on the East some parts of *Nova Gallicia*; and besides that, those vast and undiscovered Countries which lie on the West-side of *Canada* and *Virginia*, on the opposite Shore: bounded on the North with the unknown parts of this *Mexicana*; on the North-west, with the Streights of *Anian*, if such Streights there be; on the West, with the Sea interposing betwixt it and the Island, called *Mer Virmiglio*; and on the South and South-west, with the rest of *Nova Gallicia*, from which parted by a great River called *Rio del Noordt*. A River which, rising in the 40 degree of Northern Latitude, first parteth *Tignez*, a Province of *Quivira*, from that of New *Mexico*, one of the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*; and after a long course falleth into the Sea, called *Mer Virmiglio*, above *Cinoloa*, another of the Provinces of that Division. Divided, as before was said, into the two great Provinces of 1. *Quivira*, and 2. *Cibola*.

1. *QUIVIRA*, taking up the most Northern parts of this side of *America*, is said to be very plain and level; of few Trees, not many Houses, nor much stored of People; quite destitute of Fruits and Corn, and yielding nothing for Man's life but the flesh of Beasts, which they eat raw, and swallow down in great bits without any chewing. The men apparelled in Bulls skins from the head to the feet; the women, though in a cold Countrey, with no other Garment then their Hair, which they wear so long, that it serveth them instead of a Veil to hide their Nakedness. They live in Hoords and Companies, like the Hoords of the *Tartars*, not having any certain Dwellings, (except some chief men) but remove from one place to another, like the ancient *Nomedes*. Near Neighbours unto *Tartary*, from whence (not being much distant from it) it is supposed that the Inhabitants first came, and from hence by degrees peopled all *America*.

The Country, being full of Herbage, breeds great store of Cattel, differing not much in bigness from those of *Europe*, but that they have an high Bunch betwixt their shoulders; bristled upon the back like Bores, with somewhat which resembleth the Mane in Horses; and the Beard in Goats; their Legs short, and clad with Fetlocks, their Horns short, but sharp: the whole Beast of an aspect so horrid, that an Horse will not venture near them, till well acquainted. Yet in these Beasts lie all their Riches, these being to this People, as we say with us of our Ale to Drunkards, Meat, Drink, and Cloth, and more too. For the Hides yield them Houses, or at least the Covering of them; their Bones, Bodkins; their Hair, Thread; their Sinews, Ropes; their Horns, Maws and Bladders, Vessels; their Dung, Fire; their Calves-Skins Budgets to draw and keep water; their Blood, Drink, and their Flesh, Meat. There is thought to be some Traffick from *China*, or *Cathay*, hither: for when *Vasquez de Coronado* conquered it, he saw in the farther Sea certain Ships, not of common making, which seemed to be well laden, and did bear in their Prows the figure of Pellicans; which could not be conjectured to come from any Country but one of these two. I know, some place this Country more within the Land; and others are so far from letting it look towards any part of the Sea, that they have laid it close unto the back of *Virginia*. For my part, I have laid it along the Coasts, upon good Authority, though I deny not but that some parts hereof may be more remote. Or else to reconcile the difference, it may thus be ended; that the Maritime parts being known by other names, the Inlands might retain more specially the name of *Quivira*, as we have seen in many other Countries before described.

And this I am the rather inclined to think, because I find mention of three Provinces on the North of *Cibola*, but in the way unto *Quivira*; the one called *Seio*, the other called *Cicuic*, and the third *Tiguez*, which I look upon as the Maritime parts of the same one Country, but better peopled and frequented then the Islands are, because lying in the way of Traffick. The principal Towns of which Provinces, are. 1. *Acus*, or *Acuco*, a small Town, but situate in a strong and defensible place, about which groweth some store of Cotton, which from the place the Natives call by the name of *Acuco*. 2. *Tiguex*, on the Banks of a River so called; inhabited by a stout and couragious People; who being resolved not to fall alive into the hands of the *Spaniards*, when besieged by *Vasquez de Coronado*, after they had held out above six weeks, laid all their Housholds-stuff and Treasure in an heap together, which they set on fire; and taking their Wives and Children into the midst of their Ranks, made a desperate Sally on the Enemy. A Resolution worthy of a better Fortune, most of them being slain in the Fight, and the rest trod under the Horses feet, or drowned in passing over the River. Yet would not those few which were left give up the Town, till it was

fired

fired about their ears, and no longer tenable: the *Spaniard* buying this Victory (notwithstanding the great odds of their Arms) with the loss of most of their Horses, the death of seven of their men, and the wounding of eighty. 3. *Cicuick*, a small Burrough, but the chief of that Province, four days journey from *Tiguex*: from whence the whole way unto *Quivira* specially so called, being 90 miles, hath in it neither Stone nor Tree, nor any Land-mark; insomuch as the *Spaniards* were fain to make heaps of Cow-dung to serve for their direction in their coming back.

The first Discovery of this Countrey is to be attributed to the diligence of *Antonio de Mendoza*, Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, who, desirous to get Wealth and Honour by some new Adventures, employed in the discovery of these Northern parts Frier *Marco de Nisa*. By him, and by a *Negro* which he had for his Guide, there was some light gotten of *Cibola*, the next Province to this; but so disguised in lies, and wrapt up in Fictions, that that light was little more then darkness. Yet by that glimmering, *Francisco Vasquez di Coronado*, in the year 1540, undertook the business; and sped so well, that having made his way through *Cibola*, he took the Town of *Tiguex*, as we heard before, and laid his way open to *Quivira*. Moved to a farther journey by the Report of the Savages, (who desired to hasten him out of their Countrey) telling him of the Wealth of *Tatarax*, who reigned in the In-land parts of *Quivira*, a bearded man (those of this Countrey wearing none) of a white Complexion, and one who in his Chappel worshiped a Cross, and the Queen of Heaven; on went the *Spaniards* towards *Quivira*, and found out the *Tatarax*, a poor naked Prince, Master of no more Treasure then a Brazen Plate hanging on his Breast, and without any such sign of Christianity as they did expect. So frustrated of all their hopes, and having got nothing but their labour for their pains, and the Honour of a new Discovery, with the loss of many of their men, they returned to *Mexico*, Anno 1542. Some Friers made bold to stay behind, but were all slain by the people of *Quivira*, except only one, who like *Job*'s Messenger was left to carry news of the Murther, the *Spaniards* never looking into these cold Countries, where nothing else was to be gotten but Blows and Hunger.

2. *CIBOLA* hath on the North *Quivira*; on the South and South-east parts, New *Gallicia*, from which divided by the River called *Rio del Noordt*, as before was said; the West-side of it washed with the *Mer Vermiglio*, interposed betwixt it, and the Island, or *Californīa* specially so called. By the Natives it is called *Zuni*.

The Air hereof indifferently temperate, if not too much subject in the Winter to Frosts and Snows. The Countrey for the most part level, rarely swelled with Hills, but those very Rocky. No Trees that bear them any Fruit; few Trees at all, except it be a Wood of Cedars, from which abundantly supplied both with Fewel and Timber. Plenty of Maize, and small white Pease, which they make their Bread of; great store of Venison, but they kill it only for the skin: some quantities of Sheep, known for such by their Fleeces only, but otherwise as big each of them as an Horse, or Ox, some of their Horns weighing fifty pounds. Of Lions, Bears, and Tigers, so great a number, that they have more then enough for themselves, and could well spare them to their Neighbours.

The people generally well limbed, and tall of Stature, ingenious in respect of some other Savages: and though naked except their Privities only, or covered only with a Mantle, yet those Mantles wrought in divers colours; which, with some quantity of Cotton which they have amongst them, (none of it growing in their Country) shew them to be an industrious Nation, and to maintain a course of Trade with some of their Neighbours. A farther Argument of which is those painted Skins which they have from *Cicuick*, or some other Country which lies towards the Ocean, my Author telling that they travel for them eight days journey towards the North: and probably enough may be some of those Commodities which the Inhabitants of the Maritime Provinces of *Quivira* do receive from *Cathay*, or *China*, with which they are supposed to Traffick, as before was said. Like industry is noted in the Women also, one of which will grind and knead more Maize in a day, then the Women of *Mexico* do in four. In other things not differing from the rest of the Savages.

This Country was first made known to the *Spaniards* by the Travels of Frier *Marco de Nisa*, employed on new Discoveries by *Antonio de Mendoza*, as before was said. Leaving *Couliacan*, the most Northern Province of *Nova Gallicia*, he overcame a tedious Desart four days journey long; at the end of which he met some people, who told him of a pleasant Country four days journey farther, unto which he went. And staying at a place called *Vacapa*, he dispatched the *Negro*, whom he took with him for his Guide, to search towards the North, by whom he was advertised after four days absence, that he had been informed of a large and wealthy Province called *Cibola*, a months journey thence; wherein were seven great Cities under the Government of one Princess, the Houses of which were built of Stone, many Stories high, the Lintels of their Doors adorned with Turquoises; with many other strange Reports of their Markets, Multitudes and Riches. But neither the Frier nor the *Negro* had the hap to see it; the *Negro* being killed on the very Borders and the Frier so terrified with the news, that he thought it better to return, and satisfie the Vice-Roy with some handsome Fiction, then put himself upon the danger of a farther Journey. To that end he enlarged and amplified the Reports which the *Negro* sent him, gave to the Desarts in his way the name of the Kingdoms of *Tonteac* and *Marata*; ascribed unto this last a great City called *Abacu*, once well inhabited, but at that time destroyed by Wars; to the other a more civil and well-cloathed People then in other places. Inflamed with which Reports, *Vasquez de Coronado* undertook the Action, but found the Frier to be a Frier; nothing of moment true in all his Relations: the Kingdom of *Marata* to be found only in the Friers brains; *Tonteac* to be nothing but a great Lake, on whose Banks had once been many Cottages now consumed by Wars. And as for the seven Cities of such Wealth and bigness, he found them to be seven poor Burroughs, all situate within the compass of four Leagues; which made up that so famous Kingdom which the Frier dreamt of. The biggest of them held about 500 Cottages; the rest of them not above half that number. One of them, lest he might be said to return without doing something, he besieged and took, but found it such an hot piece of service, that he was twice beaten down with stones as he scaled the Rampiers: but having taken it at the last, he found in it great plenty of Maize to refresh his Army, and caused the Town (consisting of 200 Houses, or thereabouts) to be called *Granada*, for some resemblance which it had to that City in *Spain*. Such as have since endeavoured the Discovery of these North-west parts, and sailed along the Shores hereof on *Mer Vermiglio*, have added hereunto the names of some Points or Promontories, known in the Maps by the names of 1. *Porto de S. Clara*, not far from the Mouth or Influx of *Rio del Noordt*, 2. *Las Plaias*, 3. *S. Michael*, 4. *Rio de Teron*, 5. *Laques del Oro*, bordering on *Quivira*,

tira, and 6. *Rey Coronado*, on the East of that.

Betwixt this Region and *Quivira*, specially so called, lieth a Country, which the said *Vasquez* names *Tucayan*, memorable for the famous River of *Hucux*; on the Banks whereof for the space of 20 Leagues stand 15 Burroughs well built, and furnished with Stoves, (if he hath not in this part of the Story out-lied the Frier) as in other cold, but more civil Countries, against the extremities of Winter. This Region, stretching seven days journey to the River of *Cicuick*, I reckon to belong to the North-east parts of *Cibola*. As I do also the fruitful Valley of *Aroia de Corazones*, which they passed in their way hither from *Couliacan*; with the Town and Territory of *Chichilticala*, and the Valley of *Nuestra Sennora*, or our *Ladies Dale*, in the South parts of it: not knowing otherwise what Province to refer them to.

Proceed we now unto the Island, the other general part of this Division, parted from *Cibola* and New *Gallicia* by a narrow Sea called *Mer Vermiglio*, and by some the Gulf of *California*; environed on all other parts by the main Ocean. Extended in a great length from the 22 degree of Northern Latitude to the 42, but the breadth not answerable. The most Northern point hereof called *Cabo Blance*, of which little memorable. The most Southern, called the Cape of S. *Lucas*, remarkable for the great Prize there taken from the *Spaniards* by Captain *Cavendish*, in his Circumnavigation of the World, *Anno* 1587. Supposed in former times to have been joyned in the Northern parts of it, above the Latitude of 27, to the rest of the Continent; and so described in most of our later Maps, till the year 1626, and after that in the Chart or Map of *John de Laet*, Anno 1633: which I wonder at; himself affirming, that in many of the old Maps it was made an Island, *lib. 6. cap.* 11. and that he had seen a fair Map in Parchment, a very fair and ancient Draught, *Quâ* Californiam, *in ingentis Insulæ modum, à Continente divideret*, in which it was expressed for a spacious Island, *lib. 6. cap.* 17. The reason of the Error was, that those who first endeavoured the Discovery of it, sailing up the Sea of *Mer Vermiglio*, found it to grow narrower and narrower towards the North, till it seemed to be no bigger then some mighty River; but that of such a violent Current, that no Boat was able to pass upwards with Wind or Oar, unless haled up with Cords by the strength of men. And taking it to be a River, they gave it the name of *Rio de Bona Guia*; known by that name, and continued in the opinion of being a River, till the year 1620, or thereabouts. At what time some Adventurers, beating on these Coasts, fell accidentally upon a straight, but violent passage, on the North hereof, which brought them with a strong current into *Mer Vermiglio*: discovering by that Accident, that the Waters falling into that Sea was not a River, as formerly had been supposed, but a violent breaking in of the Northern Ocean; by consequence, that this part of *California* was not a Demi-Island, or *Peninsula*, but a perfect Island. And looking on it as an Island, we have divided it into *Nova Albion*, and *California*, specially so called.

And first, 3. *CALIFORNIA* specially so called containeth the Southern parts hereof, as far as to the Latitude of 38, where it bordereth on *Nova Albion*. Of which Country, though so near to New *Spain* and New *Gallicia*, and though discovered so long since, we yet know but little: the *Spaniards* either wanting men for new Plantations, or finding small encouragements here to invite them to it. Furnished on the Sea-coasts with great plenty both of Fish and Fowl, which they find in great Islands of Weeds floating on the Seas; and more within the Land, with a kind of Beast haired like a Goat, and with Teats like a Cow, but otherwise resembling Deer, which they kill with their Dogs. Some Mountains in it are said to cast Fire-ashes, which the *Spaniards* for that reason call *Cacofogo*. The people are numerous, and thick set, insomuch that on the Banks of the supposed River of *Bona Guia* were numbred three and twenty Nations, all of several Languages. In their persons like the rest of the Savages, but of different Dresses. Some of them painting their Faces all over, some half way only, others with painted Vizards, resembling Faces: Holes in their Nostrils for their Pendant; the tips of their Ears loaded, if not over-loaded with the bones of Fishes hanging at them; a Girdle about their Waste, to which they fasten a bunch of Feathers that hang down behind them like a Tail: the Women using the like Bunches before them also. Their chief God the *Sun*, (as that of *Cibola* is the *Water*) which they most affectionately Worship, as the cause of the increase of their Fruits and Plants. Joyned in Commission with which God, they were taught by *Alarcon* a *Spaniard* to Worship a wooden Cross (the more irrational Idolatry of the two) which he caused to be erected at his coming away, with instructions to kneel before it every morning, at the first rising of the Sun: so teaching them to worship their two Idols at once, or translate their Devotions from the Sun, a Creature of God, to a plain wooden Cross (of which they knew nothing but the form) the work of a Carpenter. It is also told us of this People, that each Family is ordered by the Father of it, without other Government: yet so well managed, that they allowed but one wife to a man, and punished Adultery with death; the Maids not suffered to converse or talk with men before their Marriage, but to abide at home and work: the Widows not to marry again, till they had mourned at least half a year for the death of their Husbands. Matters more savouring an *Utopian* Commonwealth, then a *Californian*.

Places of most observation in it, 1. the Capes of S. *Clara* and S. *Lucas*: the first on the South-east point of the Island, towards new *Gallicia*; the other on the South-west, towards *Asia*. 2. *S. Crosses*, (*Sinus S. Crucis*) a capacious and convenient Haven near the Cape of S. *Clara*; so called because discovered upon *Holy-Rood*-day. 3. *Cabo di las Plaias*, more within the Bay; so named, because the shore shewed in little Hillocks, without Grass or Shrubs; the Spanish word signifying as much. 4. *Cabo Boxo*, towards the bottom of the Gulf, (from whence the Land on the other side may be easily seen) in the Latitude of 29. 5. S *Andrews*, a convenient Haven, and not far off an Island of the same name, with some Cottages in it. 6. S. *Thome*, an Island of 25 Leagues in compass, at the mouth of the Gulf; rising towards the South in an high Mountain, under which is a convenient Road for Shipping, the Sea being thereabouts 25 Fathoms. Then on the other side towards the Sea, we have 7. S. *Abad*, a convenient Haven, surrounded with a Country which seemed rich and pleasant. 8. *Cape Trinidado*, a Promontory well known to Sea-men. 9. *Cape de Cedro*, so called from the Cedars growing near it, in the Latitude of 28 and 15 minutes; with an Island not far off of the same name also. 10. *Cape Enganno*, in the Latitude of 31. 11. *Puebla de las Canoas*, so named from the multitude of Boats (by themselves called *Canoes*) which the people used, four degrees more Northward then that Cape. And 12. *Cabo de Galera*, so named from the resemblance which it had to an Hat, in the Latitude of 36. But these two are placed by *John de Laet* within the Country of *Seyo*, one of the Provinces of *Quivira*. Understand here, that these are only the names of Places, not of Towns or Villages, (for whether there be any such, I am yet unsatisfied:) and that there are many other Promontories, Bays, Rivers and Islands on both sides of this Region, which I find no names for.

The

The first Discovery of this Countrey we owe to *Ferdinando Cortez*, (of whom more hereafter) who in the year 1534. furnished out two Ships from the Haven of *S. Jago*, on the Western Shores of *Hispania Nova*, to search these Seas: who making some small progress in it, encouraged him the next year to pursue it in person; and passing up the Gulf, as high as to the River of *S. Peter*, and *S. Paul*, (so called, because discovered on the 29 of *June*, the Annual Feast of those Apostles) for want of Victuals and other necessary Provisions, he returned back again. The business having slept a while, was in the year 1539. awakened by *Francisco de Ulloa*, one that had accompanied *Cortez* the time before: who did not onely search to the bottom of the Gulf, but having throughly canvassed all the Eastern Shores, he turned his course, and made as fortunate a Discovery also of the Western Coasts. Landing, he took possession of the Countrey with the wonted Ceremonies, for the King of *Spain*; and in the place set up a Cross to serve as a Remembrance of his being there. After him followed *Ferdinando de Alarcon*, who discovered many Leagues up the course of the supposed River of *Buena Guia*; where *Nagnacatus*, one of the Chiefs of their Clans or Tribes, did submit unto him: advancing so far towards the North, that at the last he heard news of *Cibola*; but was unprovided at that time for a Journey thither. And on the other side, *Roderico Cabrillo*, in the year 1642. coasting along the Western Shores of this Countrey, discovered two small Islands beyond Cape *Galera*; the one of which he called *S. Luke*'s, and the other the Island of *Possession*: and beyond them a fair Haven, which he called *Sardinas*. But yet not finding what they looked for, which was Gold and Silver, and hungry Honour yielding but a poor subsistence; the farther Search of these Countreys was quite laid aside, almost as little known now, as before *Columbus* first set sail upon New Discoveries.

4. *NOVA ALBION*, formerly conceived to be a part of the Continent, hath of late times been found to have taken up but some part of this Island; lying about the 38 degree of Latitude, and so Northwards as far as to Cape *Blanco*, as they call it now. Discovered by Sir *Francis Drake* in his Circumnavigation of the World *Anno* 1577. and by him named *Nova Albion*, in honour of *England* his own Countrey, which was once called *Albion*.

The Countrey is abundantly replenished with Herds of Deer, grasing upon the Hills by thousands: as also with a kind of Conies, in their Feet somewhat like a Want, and on each side a Sack, where they keep such Victuals as they cannot eat. The Flesh of these Conies serves the people for Food; and of their Skins the Kings or Chiefs of their several Tribes make their Royal Robes. The Men go quite naked, the Women with a piece of Mat instead of an Apron; chaste, and obedient to their Husbands. Their Houses made of Turf and Osier, so wrought together, as serves to keep them from the cold: in the midst whereof they have an Hearth where they make Fire, about which they lie along upon Beds of Bulrushes. What Towns they have, or whether they have any or not, and by what names called, if they have any, must be referred to a farther Discovery; there being nothing to that purpose delivered hitherto. And yet not seated so far North, but that it may be capable of a farther light, if any *Noble Undertakers* would adventure on it.

The *English* were no sooner landed, but the Inhabitants presented themselves before the General with Presents of Feathers, and Cauls of Network made of Bull-rushes; which he received, and requited with great humanity. The News of their Arrival being carried farther, one of their Kings thought fit to bestow a visit on them: A Person of a goodly stature, attired in Cony-Skins, with many tall men attending on him; one going before him with a Mace, at which hanged three Crowns, with as many Chains; the Chains of Bone, but the Crowns of Knit-work, made of Feathers, very ingeniously composed. After him followed many of the common sort, every one having his Face painted white, black, and some other colours; and every one with some Present or other in their hands, even the very Boys. Being brought into the General's Presence, the Mace-Bearer made a long Speech, which might be well meant, though not understood: and that being ended, the King caused the Crown to be put upon the General's head, and the three Chains about his Neck; the common people offering Sacrifices about the Fields in great solemnity. Not to be interdicted those Superstitions, though the *English* (whom they took for Gods) seemed to be offended at them. Finally, after much kindness expressed on both sides, the General promising in the Name of the Queen of *England* to take them into his Protection, he caused a Pillar to be erected in the place; on which he fastned the Arms of *England*, the Queen's Name, and his own; and so returned unto his Ships. But the Country lying so far off, that no benefit could redound by it to the *English Nation*, but the honour of the first Discovery; the name of *Nova Albion* by little and little was forgotten, and at last quite left out of the Maps or Charts; only a Point or Promontory, by the name of *Po. de Francisco Draco*, being left unto us to preserve his Memory. And though we have caused the name of *Nova Albion* to be restored unto the Maps, as it was before; yet we must let the Reader know, that the name of *New Albion* hath been given lately with as much propriety, but more hopes of profit and advantage, to that part of *Virginia* which lieth betwixt *Mary-Land* and *New-England*, as before was noted.

Opposite to Cape *Blanco*, and the extream North parts of *America*, the supposed Kingdom of *ANIAN*, from whence the Streights of *Anian*, which are thought by some to part *America* from *Asia*, do derive their Name, is conceived to lie. Supposed, and supposed onely, for not certainly known: the very being of such a Kingdom, and such Streights, being much suspected.

OF NOVA GALLICIA.

NOVA GALLICIA is bounded on the East and South with *Nova Hiſpania*, or *New Spain*; on the Weſt, with *Mer Vermiglio*, better known heretofore by the names of the River *Buena Guia*, and the Gulf of *California*; the Countreys beyond it on the North not diſcovered hitherto. So called becauſe of ſome reſemblance which it was thought to have to *Gallicia*, a Province of *Spain* in *Europe*; the word *Nova* being added to it for diſtinction-ſake.

It is ſituate between the 18 and 28 degrees of the Northern Latitude, which meaſured from the Port of the *Nativity*, (by the *Spaniards* called *Natividad*, and contractedly *Navidad*) where it confineth on *New Spain*, to the moſt Northern border of *Cinoloa*, makes 300 Leagues: the breadth hereof, for ſo much as is poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, being but an hundred onely. But taking in *New Biſcay* and *Nova Mexicana* into the Account, the breadth will be greater than the length.

The Air hereof is generally very temperate, but more inclined to heat then cold; many times ſubject unto Thunders and great Storms of Rain, but for the moſt part of ſo ſound a Conſtitution, that the Inhabitants attain to a good old Age; contagious Diſeaſes ſeldom known amongſt them. The Ground by conſequence ſomewhat of the drieſt, if not moiſtened with the morning Dews, which fall very frequently; and whether by the temperature of the Air, or Soil, apt to produce a kind of Gnat, (which the *Latines* call *Cimices*) affirmed to be as big as a Bean, which by their ſtings do very often plague the people, and raiſe Bliſters on their Bodies as big as Wallnuts.

The Countrey more Mountainous than Plain, and in moſt parts Sandy. Quarries of Stone in many places, but little Marble, or any other Stone of value. Good ſtore of Mines of Braſs and Silver, few of Gold or Iron; and amongſt all their Metals a great mixture of Lead. The Soil ſo rich, that it yields 60 meaſures of Wheat for one; and for one of Maize, above two hundred: The Rivers plentiful of Fiſh, and the Woods of Beaſts: great ſtore of Bees without ſtings, which make their Honey in the Foreſts without other Hives. And as for Apples, Pears, Citrons, Figs, Malacatons, and other *Europæan* Fruits, they thrive better here than they do in *Spain*, except the Cherry and the Olive: of which the laſt is moſt an end undermined by Emmets; and the firſt thruſts out ſuch a Harveſt of Leaves, occaſioned by the natural Rankneſs of the ground, that they ſeldom come to their perfection.

The People are wavering and inconſtant, apt upon any diſcontent to forſake their Houſes, betake themſelves unto the Woods, and many times to return to their Ancient Barbariſm: Crafty, and docile even in matters which concern Religion; but ſlothful and impatient of any labour, to which not to be hired but for very great wages. Much given to ſinging, Dancing, and ſometimes to Drinking; and were it not that they loved their Liquor, few of them would betake themſelves to the cares of Husbandry. Of Stature reaſonably tall; their Garments for the moſt part a Shirt of Cotton, with a Mantle over it, faſtned with two Buckles about their Shoulders. They dwell in Villages and Towns, according to the greatneſs of their ſeveral Tribes: thoſe Tribes commanded by their Chiefs, who ſucceed hereditarily; but ſubject to the Judges and other Officers of the King of *Spain*. As for the *Spaniards* who here dwell, they betake themſelves generally to Merchandize, and the ſearch of Metals; ſome few to Husbandry and Grazing, but make not the beſt uſe which they might of the Country: for though here be great plenty both of Sugar-Canes and of Cochineel, yet they neglect to refine the one, or to attend the ordering of the other; finding perhaps an eaſier or a greater profit in the other Commodities.

The Mountains of moſt note in all this Countrey is that betwixt *Guadalaiara* and *Zacatecas*; a League in height, but of ſuch a Precipice withal, that no Horſe nor Cattel can aſcend it: their other Hills rocky, but cloathed with Woods full of vaſt Pines, large Oaks, and great ſtore of Wolves. The River of moſt name is that called *Bazania*, which, riſing out of the Lake of *Mechuacan* in *Nova Hiſpania*, falls down a Cataract about four Leagues from *Guadalaiara* of Ten Fathoms deep, and ſo tumbleth into *Mare del Zur*: in no place fordable, nor having any paſſage over it but on Reeds and Rafts, on which the Paſſenger ſitteth with his Commodities, his Horſe ſwimming by; not ſafe at any time, and at moſt times dangerous. Some Lakes here be of 20, ſom of 12 Leagues compaſs: environed with rich Paſtures on every ſide. Thoſe of leſs note ſhall be remembred in their proper places.

It comprehends the Provinces of 1 *Cinaloa*, 2 *Couliacan*, 3 *Xaliſco*, and 4 *Guadalaiara*, on the Weſtern Shores: 5 *Zacatecas*, 6 *New Biſcay*, 7 *Nova Mexicana*, more within the Land. Of all theſe ſomewhat ſhall be ſaid, though of each but little.

1. *CINALOA* is the moſt Northern Province of *New Gallicia*, bounded upon the Weſt with the ſuppoſed River of *Buena Guia*, and ſome part of the Bay of *California*; on the Eaſt, with a long chain of Mountains, called the Hills of *Tepeeſuan*; on the North, with the South parts of *Cibola*; on the South with *Couliacan*.

The Air for the moſt part clear and healthy, the Soil fat and fruitful, productive of Maize, Pulſe, a ſort of long Peaſe, which the *Latines* call *Phaſeoli*, but we have no proper *Engliſh* name for; of which abundantly plentiful. Great ſtore of Cotton-wool, wherewith both Sexes are apparelled. Well watered with the Rivers, 1 *Petatlan*, 2 *Tamochala*, 3 *Paſchua*, 4 *Yaquim*; of no long courſe, all of them riſing from the Hills of *Tepeeſuan*, and thoſe but 36 leagues diſtant from the Sea-ſhores. By reaſon of theſe Rivers, here are very rich Paſtures, which breed great ſtore of Kine, Oxen, and other Cattel.

The People are generally tall, higher than the *Spaniards* by an hand-breadth, warlike and ſtrong; not conquered by the *Spaniard* without great difficulty; their Arms a Bow and poiſoned Arrows, with Great Maſty Clubs. Their Garments for the moſt part of Cotton-wool; their Hair nouriſhed to a great length, which the men tie up in a Knot,

Knot, but the Women ſuffer to hang down to the full length of it. Both Sexes, at the firſt coming of the *Spaniards* thither, without Cloaths at all, but to hide their ſhame; moſt miſerably poor; worſhippers of the Sun, and not a few Cannibals amongſt them.

Chief Towns hereof 1. *S. Philip and Jacob*, ſituate on the Bank of a River, about 42 Leagues from the Town of *Couliacan*, but of no great note. 2. *S. Johns de Cinaloa*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, planted here long ſince, and re-inforced by a Supply brought thither in the year 1554. by *Franciſco de Tharra*; ſcarce able to defend themſelves from the old Inhabitants, who ever and anon diſturb them with a freſh Alarm. Beſides theſe, here are onely ſome ſcattered Villages, and thoſe not many: the *Spaniards* finding only 25 old Forts in all the Countrey, when they firſt made themſelves Maſters of it, under the Conduct of *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1542. People everywhere ſubmitting without any reſiſtance, or if they gathered to an Head, ſoon diſperſed again. For what could naked men do againſt an Army?

2. *COULIACAN*, or *CULUCAN*, lieth on the South of *Cinaloa*, coaſting along the Bay of *California*, which it hath on the Weſt, and part of *New Biſcay* on the Eaſt. The Countrey well provided of Fruits, inferiour unto none for all ſorts of Proviſions, and not without ſome Mines of Silver found out by the Spaniards. The chief Rivers of it, 1. *Rio des Mucheras*, or the River of Women, in the North part of the Province; ſo called, becauſe the Spaniards found there more Women than Men, occaſioning the opinion that it was inhabited by *Amazons*. 2. *Rio de Sal*, a goodly River, both ſides whereof are very well peopled. 3. *Piaſtla*, more towards *Xaliſco*.

The People not much different from the reſt of *Gallicia*; ſave that their Women were more handſome, both for Dreſs and Perſonage; all cloathed in Garments of Cotton-Wool, when firſt known to the Spaniards; and yet the men not free from the ſin of *Sodom*. Their Houſes neatly thatched with Straw, and over the Lintels of the Doors ſome Paintings, as ſhameleſs as the very fouleſt of *Arctine*'s Poſtures. Ignorant of Gold, which they had no Mines of; but of late times acquainted to their coſt with Silver, which they are compelled to dig and refine for the Spaniards.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Piaſtla*, on the River ſo called, about a days Journey from the Sea, well built, and artificially contrived in reſpect of others; never recovered of that blow that it had from the *Spaniards*, who in the Conqueſt of this Countrey waſted all before them. 2. *Quinola*, near *Rio de Mucheras*. 3. *Quatrabarrios*, an old Town, but new named by the Spaniards, becauſe it conſiſted of four parts. 4. *El Leon*, an old Burrough, which from a Lion there found had this new name alſo. 5 *Couliacan*, on a River ſo named, once the chief of this Province. 6. *S. Michael*, on the River of Women, built by *Nonnez de Guzman*, in the Latitude of 25. but afterwards deſerted, or removed rather to a fitter place; and now fixed in the Valley of *Harroba*, two Leagues from the Sea, in a flouriſhing and wealthy Soil both of Corn and Paſturage. The whole Countrey conquered by the Spaniards *Anno* 1531. under *Nonnez de Guzman*, moſt barbarouſly burning down the Towns, and deſtroying the people; as if they came not to ſubdue, but root out the Nation.

3. *XALISCO*, or *GALESCO*, as ſome Writers call it, hath on the North *Couliacan*; on the South, *New Spain*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *Guadalaiara*; on the Weſt, the large Bay of *California*. So called from *Xaliſco*, the chief Town of it, when ſubdued by the *Spaniards*.

The Soil hereof very fit for Maize, which it yields good ſtore of, but not often Herbage good for Cattel, which is reckoned for their greateſt want. The North parts, called *Chiametla*, of the two moſt fruitful, and better peopled; having in it ſtore of Wax and Honey, with ſome Mines of Silver. The people formerly Man-eaters, and much given to quarrel; from which reformed ſince their Converſion to the Goſpel. Tenacious ſtill of one of their ancient Cuſtoms, which is, to carry the ſmalleſt Burthen upon their Shoulders, and not under their Arms; which to do, they think very much miſ-becoming.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *S. Sebaſtians*, 2. *Rio de Spiritu Santo*; and 3. the great and famous River of *Barania*, ſpoken of before. Upon the Banks of which are ſituate their moſt principal Towns, *viz.* 1. *Xaliſco*, giving name to the whole Province, and to a large Promontory, called by the Spaniards *Sierra de Xaliſco*, thruſting it ſelf into the Bay of *California*, over againſt the Iſlands called *The Three Maries*: the City taken and deſtroyed by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1530. 2. *Compoſtella*, now the chief City of the Countrey, and a Biſhop's See, founded by the ſaid *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1531. when he had fully conquered the Countrey: by whom peopled with Spaniards, and by him called *Del Spiritu Santo*. But founded in ſo ill a place, and ſo bad an Air, deſtitute both of Food for Men, and Graſs for Horſes, as plainly ſhewed him to have better judgment in Souldiery than in Architecture. 3. *Purification*, a ſmall Burrough on the Sea-ſide, and in the extremity of this Countrey towards *Nova Hiſpania*, near the Port of *Natividad*. 4. *S. Sebaſtian* in *Chiametla*, on the River ſo called, firſt built by *Franciſco de Tharra* above mentioned; who having found hereabouts ſome rich Mines of Silver, brought hither in the year 1554. a new Spaniſh Colony, and building Houſes for his Miners in convenient places, occaſioned the whole Tract to be called *de Tharra*.

4. *GUADALAIARA* hath on the Weſt, *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt and South, ſome parts of *Nova Hiſpania*; on the North, the Province of *Zacatecas*. Well watered with the River *Barania*, which runneth through the midſt thereof, ſome of his by-ſtreams moiſtening the other parts. The Countrey very wealthy in Mines of Silver, plentiful of Maize, and fortunate in the production of Wheat, and ſuch other Fruits as were brought hither out of *Europe*. The Character of the People we have before, applied in general to all the Natives of *New Gallicia*, but moſt peculiar unto theſe.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Guadalaiara*, ſo called with reference to a Town of that Name in *New Caſtile*, and giving name unto the Province, ſituate on the Banks of the River *Barania*, or ſome branch thereof, in a ſweet Air, and a moſt rich and pleaſing Soil; there founded by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1531. when he had perfected his Conqueſt: better adviſed in the choice of the place, then in that of *Compoſtella* before mentioned. A City of ſo good eſteem, that it paſſeth for the Metropolis of all *New Gallicia*; honoured with the Courts of Judicature, the Reſidence of the Kings Treaſurers, and a Biſhops See, removed hither from *Compoſtella*, Anno 1570. Beautified on this laſt occaſion with a fair Cathedral, a Convent of *Franciſcans*, and another of *Auguſtine* Friers. 2. *Del Spiritu Santo*, built by the ſaid *Nonnez* in that part of this Countrey which is called *Tepique*; but not elſe obſervable. 3. *Santa Maria de los Lagos*, built by the ſame Founder, 30 leagues on the Eaſt of *Guadalaiara*; and the beſt defence of all this Province againſt the *Chichimicas*, a barbarous and untamed people on the North and Eaſt parts of this Countrey, who harbouring themſelves in the thickeſt of the Woods, and ſome unknown Caves;

do many times prey upon the Countrey; which they would utterly destroy, if they were not thus represſed.

5. *ZACATECAS* is bounded on the South with *Guadalaiara*; on the North, with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Culucan*, and ſome part of *Xaliſco*; on the Eaſt, with *Panuco*, one of the Provinces of *New Spain*.

The Countrey is of a different nature. In the Weſt parts, called properly *Los Zacatecas*, rich in Mines of Silver (no one Province more) but deſtitute of Wheat, Maize, Water, and all other Proviſions; as if it were deſigned for ſome wealthy Miſer, who could live upon the ſight of Treaſure. The Eaſtern parts, properly called *Uxitipa*, not ſo well furniſhed with Silver, but moſt abundantly provided with all ſorts of Fruits; their Woods repleniſhed with Deer, their Fields with Corn, and every Tree giving Entertainment to ſome Bird or other: In a word, nothing wanting in it either for Neceſſity or Pleaſure. Of the people I find nothing ſingular, but that they are affirmed to be more induſtrious than the moſt of their Neighbours; whether by force or nature, (the *Spaniards* compelling them to drudge in their Silver-Mines) I determine not.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Los Zacatecas*, neighboured by moſt wealthy Mines, 40 Leagues on the North of *Guadalaiara*; inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, who have here a Convent of *Franciſcans*. 2. *S. Martins*, 27 Leagues from *Zacatecas*, the Mines whereof were firſt opened by *Franciſco de Tharra*, before mentioned; who with many Slaves, and all things neceſſary for a War, was ſent upon that Errand by *Lewis de Velaſco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, *Anno* 1554. The Town inhabited by a Colony of 400 *Spaniards*, beſides Women and Children. 3. *S. Lukes*, and 4. *De Avinnon*, built amongſt Mines as wealthy as thoſe before, by the ſame *De Tharra*: as alſo was 5. *Erena*, a ſmall Town, but of the ſame Eſtate for Silver; diſtant from *Zacatecas* 25 Leagues towards the North-weſt. 6. *Nombre di Dios*, in the moſt Northern parts of this Countrey, 68 Leagues from *Guadalaiara*, the foundation of the ſame *De Tharra*. Who having conquered the Natives, and quieted them after ſome Rebellions by gentle uſage, built this Town in a pleaſant and fruitful Soil: and having got the Government of the Countreys which he had diſcovered, drew hither ſo many of the *Spaniards* and chief men of the Natives, by granting them the propriety of ſome Silver Mines, that it became the chief and beſt peopled Town of all this Province. 7. *Durango*, in the Valley of *Guadiana*, about eight Leagues diſtant from *Nombre di Dios*, peopled by a Colony of *Spaniards*, conducted thither by *Alfonſo Pacheco*, at the appointment of *De Tharra*, to whom the *Spaniards* are indebted for all this Treaſure. 8. *Xeres de Frontera*, firſt built for the repreſſing of ſome of the Savages, who uſed to infeſt the Borders towards *Guadalaiara*, during the Regency of the Marqueſs of *Villa Manrique*, who then commanded in *New Spain*.

As for *UXITIPA*, it belonged once unto the Province of *Panuco*, ſubdued by *Lopez de Mendoza*, employed therein by *Nonnez de Guzman*, *Anno* 1529. at that time Governour of that Province. Diſmembred from it ſince the Conqueſt of *Zacatecas*, and made a Member of the Prefecture of *New Gallicia*. The chief Town of it is called *S. Lewis*, built in a pleaſant Valley by the ſaid *Pacheco*, and by him peopled with a Colony of *Spaniards*: The Town not diſtant from *Panuco* above twenty Leagues.

6. *NOVA BISCAIA*, or *New Biſcay*, hath on the South *Los Zacatecas*; on the Weſt, *Cinaloa*; on the North, *Nova Mexicana*; the Countreys towards the Eaſt not diſcovered hitherto. So called by *Franciſco de Tharra*, by whom firſt ſubdued, from the near Neighbourhood which it had unto *Nova Gallicia*, of which it hath been always ſince reckoned for a part.

The Countrey is ſubject in the Winter to great Froſts and Snows; but notwithſtanding well provided of all things neceſſary, and wonderfully enriched with Mines of Silver. They have alſo ſome of Lead, which ſerve very fitly for the melting and purifying of the other; uſed to this purpoſe not alone in theſe Mines of *New Biſcay*, but in thoſe alſo of *New Spain*. The people reſolute and ſtout, not conquered at the firſt Attempt, nor won ſo much by Force, as by fair Perſwaſions.

Places of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *S. Barbara*, and 2. *S. John*'s, about three Leagues diſtant; built onely for the benefit of the Mines adjoyning. 3. *Ende*, the fartheſt Town which the *Spaniards* have towards the North, of whom a Colony was there planted (by reaſon of the adjoyning Mines) by *Roderico del Rio*, who did alſo fortifie it by the direction of *De Tharra*, under whom a Colonel. Diſtant from *S. Barbara* and *S. John's* about 20 Leagues, and 120 Leagues from *Los Zacatecas*. More North by 70 Leagues at leaſt, and within this Region, but not within the power of the *Spaniards*, are ſaid to be thoſe four great Towns which the *Spaniards* call *Las Quatro Cienegas*: but I have nothing of them certain.

This Countrey was firſt ſubdued by *Franciſco de Tharra*, who after he had built *Durango* in the North parts of *Los Zacatecas*, & aſſured that Province, advanced with a Troop of 130 Horſe for the Diſcovery and Conqueſt of his Northern Neighbours. Encountred at the firſt more with hunger and thirſt, than with any oppoſition of the Inhabitants; inſomuch that they were fain to eat their Horſes: and afterwards by the Rebellion of the Natives, who killed the greateſt part of ſuch Horſes as were left uneaten. But not diſcourag'd herewith, nor with the many *difficulties* which he found in his way, being compelled to hew his paſſage through the Woods by the Swords of his Souldiers, he prevailed at laſt; and having ſettled it in peace, returned by the way of *Cinaloa*, which he alſo conquered, and planted there a Colony in the Town of *S. Johns*, as was ſaid before.

7. *NOVA MEXICANA* is bounded on the South with *New Biſcay*; on the Weſt, with *Quivira*; the Countreys on the North and Eaſt, not diſcovered hitherto, though ſome extend it Eaſtwards as far as *Florida*. Extended 250 Leagues from the Town and Mines of *S. Barbara*, and how much beyond that, none can tell; the Relations of this Countrey being ſo uncertain, and indeed incredulous, that I dare ſay nothing poſitively of the Soil or People, but much leſs of the Towns and Cities which are ſaid to be in it. So named by *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Citizen of *Mexico* in *New Spain*, by whom diſcovered and ſubdued.

For firſt, they tell us of the People, that they are of great Stature, and that like enough; but not ſo probable that they have the Art of dreſſing Chamois and other Leather, as well as the beſt Leather-dreſſer in all *Flanders*: or that they have Shoes and Boots ſo well ſowed and ſoaled, that no Shoe-maker in all *S. Martins* could do it better. Then for their Towns, that they are very fair and goodly, the Houſes well built of Lime and Stone, ſome of them four Stories, and in moſt of them Stoves for the Winter ſeaſon. The Streets even and ordered in an excellent manner. Particularly, they tell us of a Town called 1. *Chia*, one of the five chief Towns of the Province of *Cuames*, which is ſaid to contain eight Market-places, and all the Houſes to be plaiſtered and painted in moſt curious manner. 2 Of *Acoma*, that it is ſituate on the top of a Rock, a great Town, yet no way unto it but by Ladders; and in one place a pair of Stairs, but exceeding narrow, hewn out of the Rock; exceedingly well for-

fortified by Nature, (they ſay true in that, if any things are true which they tell us of it) and all their Water kept in Ciſterns, (but no body can tell from whence they have it.) 3. Of *Conibas*, on a Lake ſo called, the City ſeven leagues long, two broad; (a ſecond *Ninive*) but the Houſes ſcatteringly built amongſt Hills and Gardens, which take up a great deal of the Room: Inhabited by a People of ſuch ſtrength and courage, that the *Spaniards* onely faced it, and ſo went away. Much of this ſtuff I could afford you, but by this Taſte we may conjecture of the reſt of the Feaſt.

The Countrey was firſt diſcovered by *Auguſtino Royaz*, a *Franciſcan* Frier, *Anno* 1580. who out of Zeal to plant the Goſpel in the North accompanied with two other Friers of that Order, and eight Souldiers, undertook the Adventure. But one of the Monks being killed by the Savages, the Souldiers plaid the Poltrons, and gave over the Action. On their return, *Beltram*, a Frier of the ſame Order (from whoſe mouth we muſt have the former Fictions) deſirous to preſerve the Lives of his Fellows which ſtaid behind, encouraged one *Antonio de Eſpeio*, a Native of *Corduba*, but a Citizen of *Mexico*, to engage in ſuch an holy Cauſe: who raiſing a Band of 150 Horſe, accompanied with many Slaves and Beaſts of Carriage, undertook the buſineſs. I omit the many Nations of the *Conchi*, *Paſnugates*, *Toboſi*, *Patarabyes*, *Tarrahumares*, *Tepoanes*, and many other as hard names, which he paſſed through in his way. But coming at the laſt to a great River which he called *Del Noords*, there he made a ſtand; cauſed the Countrey on both ſides of it to be called *Nova Mexicana*, and a City to be built which he called *New Mexico*, ſituate in the 37 degree of Northern Latitude, and diſtant from *Old Mexico* five hundred Leagues: the name ſince changed to that of *S. Foy*, but ſtill the Metropolis of that Province, the Reſidence of the Governour, and a pretty Garriſon conſiſting of 250 *Spaniards*. Some other Towns he found at his coming hither, *viz.* 2. *Socorro*, ſo called by the *Spaniards*, becauſe of that Succour and Relief they found there for their half-ſtarved Bodies. 3. *Seneen*, 4. *Pilabo*, and 5. *Seviletta*; old Towns, but new Chriſtened by the *Spaniards*, when the Inhabitants thereof did embrace the Goſpel; each of them beautified with a Church. 6. *S. Johns*, built afterwards in the year 1599. by *John de Onnate*, who with an Army of five thouſand followed the ſame way which *Eſpeio* went, and having got a great deal of Treaſure, laid it up in this place, that it might be no incumbrance to him in his Advance. This is the moſt I dare rely on for this Countrey. And this hath no ſuch Wonders in it, but what an eaſie Faith may give credit to: Though I had rather believe the Frier's whole Relations, then go thither to diſprove any part thereof.

OF
NOVA HISPANIA.

NOVA HISPANIA is bounded on the Eaſt with a fair and large Arm of the Sea, called the Bay of *New Spain*, and the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the Weſt, with parts of *Nova Gallicia*, and *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with the reſt of *New Gallicia*, ſome part of *Florida*, and the Gulf; on the South with *Mare del Zur*, or the South-ſea only. So called with relation to *Spain* in *Europe*, as the chief Province of that Empire in this *New World*; with reference to which, the Kings of *Spain* call themſelves *Reges Hiſpaniarum*, in the plural number.

It extendeth from the 15 degree of Latitude to the 26 excluſively, *i.e.* meaſuring it on the Eaſt-ſide by the Bay of *Mexico*, to the North of *Panuco*; but ſix degrees leſs, meaſuring it on the Weſt ſide to the Port of *Natividad*, where it joyneth with *Gallicia Nova*. Or making our account by miles, it is in breadth from *Panuco* unto *Mare del Zur*, 200 *Spaniſh* Leagues, or 600 *Italian* miles; but hardly half as much on the other ſide. The length hereof, from the Eaſt point of *Jucatan*, to the borders of *Gallicia Nova*, 1200 *Italian* miles, or 400 leagues; which is juſt double to the breadth.

The Air exceeding temperate, though ſituate wholly under the *Torrid Zone*; the heats thereof much qualified by thoſe cooling Blaſts which fan it from the Sea on three ſides of it; and by thoſe frequent Showrs which fall continually in *June*, *July* and *Auguſt*, the hotteſt ſeaſons of the year. Abundantly enriched with inexhauſtible Mines of Gold and Silver, ſome of Braſs and Iron; plenty of *Coco*-Nuts, of which we have ſpoke before; great ſtore of *Caſſia*; ſuch a wonderful encreaſe of *Cochineel*, that 5670 Arrobas of it (each Arroba containing 25 Buſhels of our *Engliſh* meaſure) have been ſhipped for *Europe* in one year. Where by the way, this *Cochineel* groweth on a ſmall Tree or Shrub, having very thick Leaves, which they call a *Tuna*; planted and ordered by them as the *French* do their Vines: out of the Seed whereof ariſeth a ſmall Worm, at firſt no bigger than a Flea, and the greateſt not much bigger than our common Lady-Cows, which they much reſemble; which feeding on the Leaves, and over-ſpreading all the ground in which they are, are gathered by the Natives twice a year, ſtifled with Aſhes, or with Water, (but this laſt the beſt) dried to a powder in the ſhade, and ſo tranſported into *Europe*. Here is alſo great plenty of Wheat, Barley, Pulſe of all ſorts, and of all ſuch Plants and Roots as we ſet in Gardens for the Kitchin; Pomegranates, Oranges, Limons, Citrons, Malacatons, Figs and Cherries, even to ſuperfluity; Apples and Pears in leſs abundance; few Grapes, and thoſe few they have, not fit for Wine; plenty of Maize, and other plants unknown in *Europe*; Birds and Beaſts vvild and tame of all ſorts, and of each no ſcarcity. Not thus in all places of it, nor in all alike; but ſome in one, ſome in another, according to the conſtitution of the Soil and Air: vvhich is ſo different in this Countrey, that in ſuch parts hereof as are hot and dry, their Seed-time is in *April* or *May*, their Harveſt in *October*; but in ſuch places of it as are low and moiſt, they ſow their Corn in *October*, and reap in *May*: thus having two Harveſts in a year, and yet but one.

The People more ingenious than the reſt of the Savages,

ges, exquiſite at ſome Mechanick Arts, eſpecially in the making of their Feather-Pictures; and ſo induſtrious withal, ſo patient both of Thirſt and Hunger, that they will ſit at it an whole day without meat or drink; turning every Feather to the light, upwards and downwards, every way, to ſee in which poſture it will beſt fit the place intended to it. No better Goldſmiths in the World, nor men more expert any where in refining Metals; curious in painting upon Cotton whatſoever was preſented to the Eye. But yet ſo barbarous withall, that they thought the Gods were pleaſed with the blood of men, which ſometimes they ſacrificed unto them. So ignorant, that when they firſt ſaw the *Spaniards* on Horſe-back, they thought the Horſe and Man to have been one Creature; and would ask what the Horſes ſaid, when they heard them neigh. So careleſs of the worth of Gold, that they would part with great quantities of it for Knives, Glaſs Beads, little Bells, and ſuch petit Trifles. But whatſoever they once were, is not now material: the *Spaniards* having made ſuch havock of this wretched People, that in 17 years they deſtroyed above ſix millions of them, roaſting ſome, plucking out the Eyes of others, conſuming them in their Mines, and mercileſly caſting them amongſt wild Beaſts, where they were devoured. As for thoſe who do remain, beſides their own natural ingenioſities, they have ſince learned the Civilities and Arts of *Europe*. What elſe concerns this Soil and People, we ſhall ſhew more particularly, if we find it neceſſary, in their proper places.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Countrey, (though there be many Plants in it of a ſingular nature) I reckon that which they call *Magney*, or *Metl*, ſaid to be one of the principal: a Tree which they both plant and dreſs, as we do our Vines. It hath in it 40 kind of Leaves fit for ſeveral uſes. For when they be tender, they make of them Conſerves, Paper, Flax, Mantles, Mats, Shoes, Girdles, and Cordage: upon them there grow certain Prickles, ſo ſtrong and ſharp, that the People uſe them inſtead of Saws. From the top of the Tree cometh a Juice like Syrup; which, if you ſeethe it, will become Honey; if purified, Sugar: they may make alſo Wine and Vinegar of it. The Bark of it roaſted maketh a good Plaiſter for Hurts and Sores; and from the higheſt of the Boughs comes a kind of Gum; which is a ſoveraign Antidote againſt Poyſons.

Nor is it leſs a Rarity, though leſs uſeful to the good of Mankind (except it be to keep them in continual mind of the Fires of Hell) that they have a Mountain in this Countrey called *Popocampeche*, (ſituate in the Province of *Mexico*) which vomiteth Flames of Fire like *Ætna*: and another in the Province of *Guaxaca*, which ſendeth forth two burning ſtreams, the one of red Pitch, and the other of black; a fit reſemblance of thoſe Fountains of Fire and Brimſtone. Though they have many other Mountains, yet theſe are moſt memorable. And as for Rivers, though very well provided of that watery Commodity; yet here are none remarkable for length or greatneſs, but *Panuco* onely, of which more preſently. The want thereof ſupplied by ſome famous Lakes, and the neighbourhood of the Gulf of *Mexico*. Amongſt the Lakes, the principal are thoſe of *Mexico*, (whereof more anon) and that of *Chapala*, bordering upon *Gallicia Nova*; which for its greatneſs hath the name of *Mare Chapalicum*, out of which there is made yearly great abundance of Salt. But that which is of greateſt beauty is the Gulf of *Mexico*, the greateſt and goodlieſt of the World: in form completely Circular, in compaſs no leſs then 900 miles; environed with the main Land, the *Peninſula's* of *Florida* and *Jucutan*, and the Iſle of *Cuba*. Two only paſſages in and out, and both well fortified: the one betwixt the point of *Jucutan* and the Iſle of *Cuba*, where the Tide with a violent Current entreth; the other betwixt the ſaid Iſland and the Cape of *Florida*, where it makes as violent an Exit: the ſea ſo heady in the midſt, and yet ſafe enough, that ſhips are not to ſail in it directly forwards, but muſt bend either towards the North or South, as their Journey lieth. Upon this Gulf the King of *Spain* hath always ſome Ships in readineſs, by which he more aſſureth his Eſtates in this part of *America*, than by all his Garriſons.

It comprehendeth the Provinces of 1. *Panuco*, 2. *Mechuacan*, 3. *Mexicana*, 4. *Tlaſcala*, 5. *Guaxaca*, 6. *Jucutan*. Some others of leſs note, but reduced to theſe.

1. *PANUCO*, the moſt Northern Province of all *New Spain*, by ſome called *Guaſtecan*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Mexico*; on the Weſt with *Uxitipa*, a Member of the Province of *Zacatecas* in *New Gallicia*; on the North, with *Florida* and ſome Countreys not yet diſcovered, from which parted by the River of *Palms*; on the South-weſt, with *Mechuacan*; and on the South with *Mexicana*. So called from *Panuco* the chief River of it, which riſing out of the Hills of *Tepecſuan*, bordering upon *Cinoloa* and *Couliacan*, and dividing *New Biſcay* from the Province of *Zacatecas*, paſſeth through the middle of this Countrey, and ſo at laſt into the Gulf.

The length hereof is reckoned to be 50 Leagues, and the breadth as much. Divided into three Provinces. That towards *Mexicana*, called *Aiotuxetlan*, of a fruitful Soil, and not without ſome Mines of Gold; once very populous, till in the year 1522. diſpeopled in a manner by *Ferdinando Cortez* in his War againſt them. The other called *Chila*, leſs fruitful, but poſſibly for want of people to improve the Land: for being formerly of a ſtout couragious nature, and truſting over-much to their Fens and Faſtneſſes, they put the *Spaniards* to ſuch trouble when they warred upon them, that the Conquerours, to ſecure themſelves from all future dangers, endeavoured to root them out, and deſtroy them utterly. The third lieth towards the River of *Palms*, inclined to barrenneſs, and unpleaſant: but the name I find not.

Chief Towns hereof, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, 1. *Las Caxas*, 2. *Ixicuyan*, 3. *Nachapatan*, 4. *Taquinite*, 5. *Tuzeteco*, deſolate and laid waſte by the cruel *Spaniards*. Of moſt note now, 6. *Tanchipa*, and 7. *Tameclipa*, two ſmall Burroughs in the Province of the River of *Palms*, (for ſo I call it) inhabited by the Natives onely. 8. *S. Kallap*, another ſmall Town, but in the Province of *Chila*, inhabited by a few Chriſtians, with a Convent of *Auguſtinian* Friers; ſacked by the Savages in the year 1571. 9. *Tampice*, or *S. Lewis de Tampice*, a Colony of the *Spaniards* ſituate on the North Banks of the River *Panuco*, and at the very mouth thereof; where it hath a very large Haven, but ſo barred with Sands, that no Ship of great burthen can make uſe of it: the River otherwiſe ſo deep, that Veſſels of 500 Tun might ſail 60 Leagues at leaſt in it againſt the Stream. 10. *S. Stevan del Puerto*, on the Southern ſide of that River, in the Latitude of 23. about 65 Leagues on the North of *Mexico*, from the Sea eight Leagues; now the Metropolis, and Town of greateſt Trade in all this Countrey. Built by *Ferdinando Cortez* in the place where formerly had ſtood *Panuco*, once the chief City of the Province, but by him deſtroyed. Oppoſite hereunto, on the other ſide of the River lie great ſtore of Salt-pits, out of which the people of this Town raiſe their greateſt profit. 11. *S. Jago de los Valles*, or *S. James* in the Vallies, 25 leagues Weſtward (but inclining to the South withal) from *S. Stevan del Puerto*; ſituate in an open Countrey, and therefore fenced about with a Wall of Earth: To the Inhabitants whereof (all *Spaniards*, as in that before) the King of *Spain* hath granted many fair poſſeſſions, to defend

thoſe

those parts (then being the borders of his Estates) against the Savages.

This Countrey first attempted by *Francisco Garaio*, but the Conquest of it finished by *Cortez*, as before is said: each striving, as it seemeth, who should most deface it, and be enrolled for the greatest Man-slayer of the two. But having carried on the course of their Victories almost as far as to the River of *Palms*, they desisted there; either because already glutted with humane Bloud, or that the conquest of those parts would not quit the charge. Insomuch as in all that Countrey, from the River of *Palms* to the Cape of *Florida*, though lying all along on the Gulf of *Mexico*, the *Spaniards* have not one foot of ground: secure enough, because it lieth all along that Gulf, that no other Nation can possess it.

2 *MECHUACHAN* hath on the North-East *Panuco*; on the East, *Mexicana*; on the South, part of *Tlascala*; on the West, the main Ocean; and on the North, the Province of *Xalisco* in *New Gallicia*. So called from the abundance of Fish, which their Lakes and Rivers did afford them; the word in their own Language signifying *Locum Piscosum*, or a Country of Fish.

The breadth hereof on the Sea-coasts is 80 Leagues, in the borders towards *Mexicana* but sixty onely. The length I find not yet agreed on. Blest with an Air so sound and sweet, that sick Folks come hither out of other Countreys to recover their Health. Well stored with Rivers, some Lakes, innumerable Springs of Running Water, and here and there some hot Baths issuing from the Rocks. The Soil so plentifully productive of all sorts of Grain, (even to admiration) that in some parts hereof four measures of Seed have brought forth 600 measures of the same Grain in the following Harvest. Well wooded, and, by reason of its Springs and Rivers, full of excellent Pastures; and yet not yielding unto any part of all *America* for Medicinal Herbs and Plants, of very soveraign nature for the Good of Mankind. It affordeth also store of Amber, Mulberry-Trees, Silk, Wax, Honey, and such other things as chiefly serve for Pomp and Pleasure.

The People tall of Stature, but strong and active; of a good Wit, and skilled in many excellent Manufactures. They speak four Languages of their own; but that most generally used is by the *Spaniards* called the *Tarascuan* Tongue; which though it be an elegant and copious Language, yet most of them speak the *Spanish* also. More pliant to the Manners and Apparel of that Nation, than the rest of *New Spain*, (the *Mexicans* excepted onely;) and so inclinable to the Gospel, that they are almost all gained from their old Idolatries. Insomuch that the whole Countrey being divided into fifty Parishes, every Parish hath its several Priests and inferiour Ministers, who in the Language of the place do instruct the people in which they preach to them, and hear their Confessions: besides many Convents of *Dominicans* and of *Augustine* Friers.

It containeth in it upwards of 150 Towns or Burroughs, besides scattering Villages; ninety of which have Free Schools in them, and almost every one a Spittle for relief of the Sick. The Principal thereof, 1 *Zinzontza*, the Seat of the old Kings of *Mechuacan*; in the first Times of Christianity in this Countrey made a Bishop's See, till removed to *Pascuar*. The first Bishop, *Vasquez de Quiroga*. 2 *Pascuar*, of no great note at present, but that the Bishop's See was removed thither, because nearer to *Mexico*; from which distant 47 Leagues. 3 *Valladolid*, now the chief City of this Province, and the Bishop's See, removed hither from *Pascuar*, and here finally setled in a Fair Cathedral, *Anno* 1544. situate near a large Lake, (said to be bigger than that of *Mexico*) which doth not onely afford the City great store of Fish, but yieldeth them the opportunity of several pleasures which they take in Boats upon the Water. The Lake and City by the Natives called *Guayangareo*. 4 *S. Michael*, in the way from *Mexico* (from which distant about 40 Leagues) to the Silver Mines of *Zacatecas*. First built by *Lewis de Valasco*, then Vice-Roy of *Mexico*, to defend the People of this Province from the *Chichimechas*, a barbarous, and hitherto an unconquered People, who terribly molest the Nations upon whom they border. 5 *S. Philips*, built at the same time by the said *Velasco*. 6 *Conception de Saylaa*, 17 Leagues from *Valladolid*, 35 from *Mexico*; of the foundation of *Martin Enriquez* the Vice-Roy, *Anno* 1570. to be a Stage for Travellers in their Journeys Northwards. 7 *Guaxanato*, bordering on *Panuco*, and not far from *S. Jago de Los Valles*, rich in Mines of Silver. Then on the Sea we have, 8 *Acatlan*, on the borders of *New Galicia*, two miles from the Ocean; a Town of not above 30 Houses, with a little Church; but neighboured by a large and safe Road for Shipping, (by the *Spaniards* called *Malacca*) which makes it seldom without the company of Sailers. 9 *Natividad*, (or *Portus Nativitatis*) a noted and convenient Haven, from whence they commonly set sail to the *Philippine* Islands; pillaged and burnt by Captain *Cavendish* in his Circumnavigation of the World. 10 *S. Jago*, (or *S. Jago de Buena Speranza*) a little on the South of *Natividad*; the Shores whereof are said to be full of Pearls. 11 *Colima*, ten leagues from the Sea, but more South than the other; built in the year 1522. by *Gonsalvo de Sandovel*. 12 *Zacatula*, by the *Spaniards* called *Conception*; situate on the Banks of a large (but nameless) River, which rising about the City of *Tlascala*, passeth by this Town, and thence with two open mouths runneth into the Sea.

This Province, at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, was a distinct Kingdom of it self, not subject nor subordinate to the Kings of *Mexico*, as were most of the Princes of these parts: the Frontiers of the Kingdom fenced with Stakes of Wood like a Palizado, to hinder any sudden Incursion of the *Mexican* Forces. The last King, called *Tangayvan Bimbicha*, submitted of his own accord to *Cortez*, *An.* 1522. and willingly offered himself to Baptism. But the *Spaniards* were not pleased with either, because deprived thereby of the Spoil of the Countrey. But at last, *Nonnez de Guzman*, then President of the Courts of Justice in *Mexico*, picked a Quarrel with him, accused him falsly (as is said by the very *Spaniards*) of some practices against his King, burnt him alive with most barbarous and unheard-of Cruelty, and so confiscated his Estate.

3 *MEXICANA* is bounded on the East with the Gulf of *New Spain*; on the West, with *Mechuacan*; on the North with *Panuco*, and some part of *Nova Gallicia*; on the South, with *Tlascala*, and part of the Southern Sea. So called from *Mexico*, the chief City, not of this Province only, but of all *America*.

It is in breadth from North to South, measuring by the Bay of *Mexico*, 130 Leagues; thence growing narrower, in the midland parts hardly above sixty; and on the Shores of *Mare del Zur* not above seventeen. The length hereof extendeth from one Sea to the other; that is to say, from the Point of *Lobos* in the Province of *Papantla*, on the Gulf of *Mexico*, to the Haven of *Acapulco* on the Southern Ocean: but the determinate number of Miles I do no-where find. But measuring it from 17 degrees and an half of Latitude, unto the 22, and allowing something for the slope, we may conclude it to be much of the same length as it is in breadth, that is to say, about one hundred and thirty Leagues.

The

The Countrey is inferiour to *Peru* in the plenty and purity of Gold and Silver, but far exceeding it both in the Mechanical and Ingenuous Arts which are here profeſſed, and in the abundance of Fruits and Cattel: of which laſt here is ſuch ſtore, that many a private man hath 40000 Kine and Oxen to himſelf. Fiſh is here alſo in great plenty; that onely which is drawn out of the Lake whereon *Mexico* ſtandeth, being reported worth 20000 Crowns yearly to the Kings Exchequer. The people for the moſt part witty and induſtrious, full of Valour and Courage: good Handicraftsmen, if they ſtoop ſo low as to Trades and Manufactures; rich Merchants, if they give themſelves to more gainful Traffick; and hardy Souldiers, if trained up and employed in ſervice. Their Ancient Arms were Slings and Arrows; ſince the coming of the *Spaniards* practiſed on the *Harquebuſe*. In a word, what was ſaid before of *New Spain* in general, as to the Soil and People of it, is moſt appliable to this.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Los Topes*, which parteth this Province from that of *Tlaſcala*. 2 *Citala*, and 3. *Mitla*, both running Eaſtward towards the Gulf. 4 *Papagaio*, in the way from *Mexico* to *Acapulco*; with a fair Bridge over it. 5. *Las Balſas*, of a violent courſe, and in bigneſs equal unto *Tagus* in *Spain*; paſſable onely by a Bridge made of Rafts and Reeds, not very ſtrongly joyned together. 6. The River of *S. Francis*, both large and ſwift, but in ſome parts fordable. Mountains of note I find not any which require a more particular conſideration; and ſo paſs them over the more eaſily.

Towns of moſt note in it, 1. *Mexico*, the Seat of an Archbiſhop, and of the *Spaniſh* Vice-Roy, who hath the power to make Laws and Ordinances, to give Directions, and determine Controverſies; unleſs it be in ſuch great Cauſes which are thought fit to be referred to the Council of *Spain*. This City was firſt ſituate in the Lakes and Iſlands, like *Venice*; every-where interlaced with the pleaſant Currents of freſh and Sea-waters; and carrying a face of more Civil Government then any of *America*, though nothing, if compared with *Europe*. But the Town being deſtroyed by *Cortez*, it was built afterwards on the firm Land on the edge of the Lake, and bordering on a large and ſpacious Plain. The Plain on which it bordereth is ſaid to be 70 Leagues in compaſs, environed with high Hills, on the tops whereof the Snow lieth continually. In the middle of which Plain are two great Lakes, the leaſt of them forty miles in circuit, the one ſalt, and the other freſh: each of them alternately ebbing and flowing up into the other. On the Banks of the ſalt Lake ſtandeth the City of *Mexico*, with many other goodly Towns and ſtately Houſes: on which Lake alſo 50000 Wherries are continually plying. The Town in compaſs is ſix miles, and containeth 6000 Houſes of *Spaniards*, and 60000 *Indians*. It is a By-word, That at *Mexico* there are four fair things; *viz.* The Women, the Apparel, the Houſes, and the Streets. Here is alſo a Printing-Houſe, an Univerſity, and a Mint, the Cathedral Church, ten Convents of Nuns, ſeveral Houſes of *Jeſuites*, *Dominicans*, *Franciſcans*, *Auguſtinians*, and other Religious Orders; ſome Colleges, many Spittles and Hoſpitals, and other publick Buildings of great ſtate and beauty. By the Natives it was anciently called *Temiſtitan*, the name of *Mexico* being given on a new occaſion, of which more hereafter. Moſt miſerably endammaged by the breaking in of the Waters, *Anno* 1629. which ſwelled ſo high, that they not only overwhelmed the meaner Houſes, but the Vice-Roy's Palace; drowned many thouſands of the People, and deſtroyed the Houſhold-ſtuff of the reſt. Occaſioned by the Avarice of the Kings Miniſters, who had inverted the Money to their private uſe, which ſhould have fortified the Banks. But being a rich and wealthy City it ſoon recovered of that Blow, attaining in a ſhort time to ſuch infinite Riches, that generally the Merchants, Trades-men and Artificers, do brave it in a greater State and more ſplendid Equipage than any people under Heaven of the like condition. 2. *Tezcuco*, ſituate on the ſame Lake, but ſix leagues from *Mexico*; heretofore twice as big as *Sevil*; and for the beauty of the Streets, and elegancy of the Houſes, not inferiour to any. Served with freſh Water from the Hills, brought in Pipes and Conduits, though ſeated on the brink of a ſalt Lake. 3. *Quitlavaca*, built wholly in the Lake, like *Venice*, and therefore by the *Spaniards* called *Venezuela*; a City of 2000 Houſholds: the way unto it over a Cauſey made of Flints, half a League long, and about twenty Spans in breadth. 4. *Uztacpalapa*, half in the Lake, and half without, with many Ponds of freſh Water, and a beautiful Fountain. A City of 10000 Houſholds, ſix Leagues from *Tezcuco*, and two from *Mexico*. 5. *Mexicaltzingo*, a Burrough of 4000, and 6. *Cuyocan*, one of 6000 Families; both upon the Lake: beautified in the Times of their Paganiſm with many Temples, ſo gorgeouſly ſet out to the Eye, that afar off they ſeemed of Silver; moſt of them now converted into Monaſteries and Religious Houſes. 7. *Chulula*, the faireſt of all the Lake, ſcarce excepting *Mexico*, with which it anciently contended both for ſtate and bigneſs; ſaid to contain 20000 Families, and to be beautified with ſo many Temples, that their Turrets equalled the number of the days of the year. The people ſo addicted unto their Idolatries, and ſo barbarous in their bloudy and beaſtly Sacrifices, that no fewer then 6000 Infants of both Sexes were yearly murthered on their Altars. 8 *Meſtitlan*, ſeated on an high Hill, begirt about with moſt pleaſant Groves and ſhady Woods. A Town of about 30000 Inhabitants, the Villages about the Hill being reckoned in: ſituate 14 Leagues or two days Journey from *Mexico*, in the way to the Province of *Panuco*; the High-way on both ſides ſet with fruitful Trees, to the great comfort and refreſhment of the Way-fayring man. 9. *Clantinolleper*, twenty Leagues from *Meſtitlan*, a Mannor to which 40000 of the Natives do owe Suit and Service. 10. *Antepeque*, on the South of the City of *Mexico*, at the foot of the Mountain *Propopampeche*; a Town belonging to the Marqueſs of *Valla*, and ſeated in the moſt delicious place of all *New Spain*. 11. *Acachicha*, on the North-eaſt of *Mexico*, betwixt it and the Gulf, bordering on the Province of *Pepantla*. 12. *Acapulco*, an Haven-Town of the South-ſea, ſituate on a ſafe and capacious Bay, at the entrance of it a league broad, and in the body of it full of convenient Stations and Docks for Shipping: ſo that it is accounted the ſafeſt Haven of all thoſe Seas. At the bottom of it towards the Weſt ſtands the Town and Caſtle; the Caſtle opportunely ſeated on a little Foreland, both to command the Town, and ſecure the Port: well walled, and fortified with four very ſtrong Bulwarks, on which are planted good ſtore of Ordnance; the Garriſon conſiſting ordinarily of 400 Souldiers: ſtrengthened the rather in regard of the uſual intercourſe which is betwixt this Port and the *Philippine* Iſlands.

The original Inhabitants of this Countrey (as far at leaſt as their Records are able to reach) were the *Chichimecas*, now the moſt rude and barbarous Savages of all theſe parts, together with the *Otomies*, ſomewhat more Civil than the reſt, but yet rude enough. By theſe poſſeſſed till about the year 902, as it is conjectured from their Annals, when vanquiſhed and diſſeized by ſome new Comers, whom they called by one Name *Nevatlacos*: iſſuing, as it is conceived, from thoſe parts of *Gallicia Nova*, which are now called *Nova Mexicana*, *Anno* 720. or thereabouts; but lingring in their March, and waſting all the Countreys as they lay before them. Of theſe there were

were seven Tribes in all, i.e. the *Sachimilci*, the *Chalcæ*, the *Tepanecæ*, the *Culvæ*, the *Tlasluici*, the *Tlascaltecæ*; all of them setled in these parts, and the five first about the Lake, before the coming in of the seventh Tribe, which was that of the *Mexicans*, so called from *Mexi*, their chief Captain; who much delighted with the situation and conveniences of *Temistitan*, then a ruined Town, caused it to be re-built and beautified, by the name of *Mexico*. This Town from that time forwards was reputed the Head City of their Common-wealth; the six Tribes governing in common, or the Chiefs rather of those Tribes in the names of the whole, after an Aristocratical manner. But weary at the last of this equal Power, which the prevalency of some Tribes had made very unequal; the *Mexicans*, one of the weakest of the Tribes, oppressed by the rest, resolved to separate themselves, and to commit the ordering of their Affairs to a King of their own, at first elected by themselves, but afterwards, when once they had conquered most of the other Tribes, the choice was entrusted unto six, one for every Tribe, (the *Tlascaltecæ*, which was the seventh of their Tribes, and the Founders of *Tlascala*, governing themselves long before as a State apart:) who in their choice had an especial eye on those which were strong and active, and fit for Military imployments; the People holding it a commendable meritorious act to kill their Kings, if once they were reputed Cowards. The Polity and Institutes of this *Mexican* Kingdom I forbear to write of, farther then as they lie before me in the way of their Story, digested by the Government and succession of their several Kings, whose names and actions do occur in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of *MEXICO*.

A. Ch.

1322 1. *Acamapitzli*, Nephew to the King of *Couliacan*, but of the *Mexican* bloud by the Fathers side, elected for the first King; who joyned *Couliacan* and *Tonganeam* unto his Estate, and setled that Kingdom at his death in the way of Election.

1373 2. *Vitzovitzli*, Son of *Acamapitzli*, subdued the Tribe of the *Suchimilchi*, and others of the neighbouring Nations.

1394 3. *Huizilihuiel*, Son of *Vitzovitzli*, conquered the Tribes of the *Chalcæ* and *Culvæ*, with many other Nations of the old Inhabitants.

1415 4. *Chimalpupuca*, Son of *Huizilihuiel*, won the Town of *Tequixsuiac*, and reduced the rebellious *Chalcæ* under his Command.

1425 5. *Ischoalt*, Brother of *Huizilihuiel*, by the Valour of his Cousin *Tlacaellec* freed himself from the yoke of the *Tepanecæ*, to whom the *Mexicans* had before that been Tributaries, and added their Dominions unto his Estate, conquering all the Nations round about him. After whose death the Electors by a joint consent chose *Tlacaellec* for their King, as a man of whose Vertue they had formerly made trial. But he very nobly refused it, saying, that it was more convenient for the Commonwealth that another should be King, and that he should execute that which was for the necessity of the State, than to lay the whole burden upon his back: and that without being King, he would not leave to labour for the Publick, as well as if he were. Upon this generous refusal they made choice of *Motecuma* the first.

1438 6. *Motecuma*, one of the Brothers of *Chimalpupuca*, brought in the Custom of using no other Sacrifices at their Coronations, but of such Prisoners as the new King should first take in the Wars. By the Valour and good Fortune of *Tlacaellec* he subdued so many of the Nations, (whose names I hold unnecessary to be here repeated) that he extended his Estate from one Sea to the other.

1467 7. *Axayacaci*, the Nephew of *Ischoalt* by his Son *Tecozomoeliqueto*, enlarged his Empire by the Conquest of *Tetentepeque*, 200 miles from *Mexico*, to fit himself with Sacrifices for his Coronation; and brought the Lord of *Tlatelulco*, who rebelled against him, to so hard a streight, that he was forced to break his neck from the top of a Temple.

1479 8. *Ticoicatzi*, the Son of *Axayacaci*, added twelve Cities with their Territories to the *Mexican* Empire.

1484 9. *Abuczozin*, Brother of *Ticoicatzi*, extended his Borders to *Guatimala*, repaired or rebuilt a great part of *Mexico*, and brought thither a Channel of fresh Water.

1502 10. *Motecuma* II. Son of *Axayacaci*, before his Coronation conquered 44 Cities. He ordained that no Plebeian should bear any Office in his Court, and in the 18. year of his Reign was subdued by *Cortez*.

As for this *Cortez*, to whom the *Spaniards* stand indebted for the Kingdom of *Mexico*, he was born in *Medeline*, a Town of *Estremadura*, 1485. and in the nineteenth year of his Age imployed himself in the Trade and busines of *America*, for the improvement of his Fortunes, *Anno* 1511. he went as Clerk unto the Treasurer for the Isle of *Cuba*; where he husbanded his Affairs so well, by carrying over Kine, Sheep and Mares, and bringing Gold for them in Exchange, that in short time he was able to put in 2000 *Castellins* for his stock, as Partner with *Andrew de Duero*, a wealthy Merchant. Grown richer, he was taken to be Partner with *James Velasques*, in the Discovery of *Tabasco* and the parts near *Jucutan*, *Ann.* 1518. And now resolved to venture all his stock both of Friends and Money, he furnished himself of eleven Ships, and with 550 Men, set sail from *Spain*, and arrived at the Island of *Acusamil*, (now called *Sancta Crux*) and sailing up the River of *Tabasco*, sacked the Town of *Potonchon*, the Inhabitants refusing to sell him Victual. After this by the help of his Horse and Ordnance, he discomfited 40000 of the naked Savages, gathered together to revenge themselves for the sack of that Town; and received the King thereof in Vassallage to the Crown of *Spain*. Being told that Westward he should meet with some Mines of Gold, he turned his course for the Haven of *S. John de Ulloa*; where landing he was entertained by *Tendilli*, Governour of the Town and Country for the King of *Mexico*: who understanding of his coming, and that he was the Servant of so great an Emperour, (of which *Tendilla* had informed him by especial Messengers) sent him many rich Presents both of Gold and Silver. Inflamed at the sight hereof, he resolved to go unto the place where such Treasures were, took possession of the Country in the name of *Charles* the fifth, King of *Spain* and Emperour, and building there the Town *de la Vera Crux*, left in it 150 of his men. Attended by no more than 400 Foot, 15 Horse, and six pieces of Ordnance, he pursued his Enterprize; by practice gained unto him those of *Zempoallan* and *Tlascala*, whom he understood to be ill-affected to *Motecuma*: assisted with whose Forces he passed on for *Mexico*, sacked the Town of *Chololla* (a Town of 40000 Households) in his march: kindly received into *Mexico* by the frighted King, whom he

he caused to acknowledge himself a Vassal to *Spain*, and to present him, in the name of a Tribute, with so much Treasure as amounted to 160000 Castellins of Gold. A Quarrel growing not long after, *Motecuma*, the unhappy King was by one of his own Subjects killed in the Tumult, and the *Spaniards* driven out of the Town. But aided with the whole Forces of the *Tlascalans*, and a Recruit of more *Spaniards*, (sent thither on a Design against him) he made up an Army of 100000 Savages, 900 Spanish Foot, 80 Horse, 17 pieces of Ordnance; and having with great diligence made ready a Navy of 13 Galliots, and 6000 Canoes or Boats, laid siege unto the City both by Sea and Land. After a Siege of three months, the City is taken, sacked and burnt *August* 13. 1521. But afterwards re-built more beautifully than it was before. Thus fell this mighty Kingdom into the hands of the *Spaniards* by the valour and good fortune of *Cortez*, a private Adventurer; endowed for that good service by *Charles* the fifth with the Town and Territory of *Tecoantepeque*, in the Province of *Guaxaca*, and many other fair Estates in the Province of *Mexico*, and dignified with the Title of Marquess of *Valla*.

As for the Kings of *Mexico*, they are said to have worn a Crown resembling that which is now used by the Dukes of *Venice*. His Coronation was held with great Pomp, but most bloudy Sacrifices. His Revenues thought to be almost infinite, raised out of all Commodities, and paid in kind, whether Natural, or Artificial only: the King participating of the fruits of all mens Labour, and sharing with them in their wealth: some paying in Cups full of powder of Gold, of two handfuls apiece; some Diadems, and Beads of Gold; Plates of Gold of three quarters of a yard long, and four fingers broad; *Turquois*-stones, Golden Targets, rich Feather-Pictures, &c. not to say any thing of matters of inferiour value. All which in such a wealthy and large Estate, must needs afford him a Revenue equal to the greatest Monarch. And for the encouragement of his Souldiers and Men of War, here were ordained three Orders of Knighthood, (or at least such distinctions of personal merit as had resemblance to such Orders:) the first distinguished by a *Red Ribband*, the second called the *Lion* or *Tigre Knight*, and the third the *Grey Knight*: all priviledged amongst other things to be cloathed in Cotton, wear Breeches, to adorn themselves with Gold and Silver, and to have Vessels gilt or painted; high points, and not permitted unto any else. But it is time that I proceed to the rest of the Provinces.

4. *TLASCALA* lieth betwixt *Mexicana* and *Guaxaca*, extended from one Sea to the other. The length hereof from Sea to Sea an hundred leagues; the breadth along the Shores of the Gulf reckoned 80 leagues, on the South Sea not above eighteen. So called from the abundance of Maize which they make their Bread of; the word in that Language signifying *Locum Panis*, or the Place of Bread, the same with *Bethlehem* in the *Hebrew*.

The Country is very plentiful both of Corn and Cattle, full of rich Pastures, and wonderfully stored with Maize: Level and plain, except towards the Sea, where occurreth a large Chain of craggy Mountains. The richer in the fruits of Nature for those fair and pleasant Rivers wherewith it is watered. The principal of which, 1. *Rio de Grijalva*, so called from *John de Grijalva*, who first discovered it; imployed herein by *James Velasques*, the advancer of *Cortez*. 2. *Rio de Zempoal*, so called from the Town of *Zempoallan*, about which it riseth. 3. *Zahuate*, which makes its way through the Chain of Mountains before mentioned, and falleth with the former into the Gulf. 4. *Rio de Zacatula*, a River of the longest course in all his Province; rising near *Tlascala*, and falling many leagues off into *Mare del Zur*. The people much of the same nature with those of *Mexico*, though upon jealousies of State their most bitter enemies; of which the *Spaniards* made good use to advance their Conquests on that Kingdom.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Tlascala* it-self, which gives name to the Province: in former times governed after the form of a Common-wealth, according to the Democratical Models. Situate on a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, and in the middle of a large, but pleasant Plain, 60 miles in compass. So populous at the coming of the *Spaniards* hither, that it contained 300000 Inhabitants, now scarce 50000. It had four Streets, (or rather Quarters) each of them governed by a Captain in time of War: and in the midst a Market-place so fair and spacious, that 30000 persons might assemble in it to buy and sell, or for any other business. 2. *Puebla de los Angelos*, (the City of Angels) but most commonly *Angelos*: built by *Sebastian Ramirez*, Anno 1531. in the way from *Vera Crux* to the City of *Mexico*, from which last 22 leagues distant. A Bishops See, and thought to contain in it 1500 Families. 3. *Zempoallan*, on the River so named, the Inhabitants whereof did great service to *Ferdinando Cortez* in his Conquest of *Mexico*. 4. *Napuluca*, of great resort for a Fair of Cattle; and such a kind of Court for ordering the Trade thereof, as we call the *Pie-Powders*. 5. *Guaxocingo*, a pleasant and well-peopled Town, situate at the foot of the burning Mountain before mentioned, by the ashes and embers whereof the Fields are many times annoyed. 6. *Segura*, or *Segura de la Frontera*, in the Region of *Tepeac*, built by *Cortez* the next year after the Conquest of *Mexico*, with fair Streets and handsome Houses; by whom peopled with *Spaniards*. 7. *Vera Crux*, the first Town built in this Country by the said *Cortez*, now a Bishops See: situate near unto the Gulf, and a great Thorough-fare from thence to the City of *Mexico*, from which distant about 60 leagues. 8. *S. John de Ulloa*, the most noted Port of all this Province; fenced with a Peer against the fury both of Winds and Sea; defended naturally by Rocks and Quick-sands lying before it, and by two Bulwarks well fortified and manned on both sides of the entrance. 9. *Medellin*, built by *Cortez*, Ann. 1525. and planted with *Spaniards*: so called in memory of a Town of the same name in *Estremadura*, in which he was born: situate on the banks of the River *Almeria*.

The *Tlascalans* were originally one of the seven Tribes which drave the *Chichimeca's* out of their possessions: and either finding no room left for them on the Banks of the Lake, or else willing to subsist alone, withdrew themselves from the rest, founded the City of *Tlascala*, and there erected a Democratical Estate. Stomached for this by the other Tribes, and many times invaded by those of *Mexico*, after they had subdued the rest, they still maintained themselves against all Attempts; and in the end assisted *Cortez* in the destruction of that Kingdom they so deadly hated. Priviledged for that reason by the *Spaniards*, and exempted from all kind of Tribute, (except it be a handful of Wheat for every person) and suffered to live under his Protection in the former Government. The Province given us by this name is said to contain 200 good Towns and Burroughs, 1000 Villages and upwards; and in them 150000 of the Natives, besides *Spanish* Colonies. Distributed into 36 Classes or Rural Deanries for Ecclesiastical Government, in which are thought to be 30 Convents and Religious Houses.

5. *GUAXACA* is bounded on the West with *Tlascala*; on the East with *Jucutan* and *Chiapa*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala*; on the North, with the Bay of *Mexico*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*. Extended

tended on the South-sea to the length of an hundred miles, but on the Bay to 50 only: in breadth from Sea to Sea, where it bordereth on *Tlascala*, 120 leagues; not above 60 where it confineth on *Chiapa*. So called from *Guaxaca*, once the chief Town of these parts, now named *Antequera*.

The Air hereof is very sound and sweet, and the Soil as fruitful: plentiful not only of those Commodities which are common with the other Provinces of this Country; but of such quantities of Silks, and store of Mulberries, that if the Natives paid their Tithes as the *Spaniards* do, that very Revenue, would suffice to endow five Bishopricks, as good as that which they have already. Scarce any River of this Country but hath Sands of Gold: such plenty of *Cochintel*, (a rich Grain used in dying Scarlets, of which before) as also of *Cassia*, Gold, Silver, and other Metals; that if the people did but add some industry to to the wealth of the Country, they might be the richest men in all *America*. But being naturally slothful, and impatient of labour, they lose all opportunities of gathering Riches, and live but from hand to mouth, as we use to say. Docile enough, and so indulgent unto those who take pains to teach them, that here are reckoned 120 Convents of *Dominican* Friers, besides other Schools: these last conceived the greater number.

It is subdivided into many particular Provinces, (we may call them *Wapentakes* or *Hundreds*;) as 1. *Misteca*, 2. *Tutopeque*, 3. *Zapoteca*, 4. *Guazacoalco* 5. *Guextaxatla*, and 6. the *Vale of Guaxaca* this last most memorable, in that it gave the Title of *Marquess del Valle* to the famous *Cortez*. Towns of most observation, 1. *Tezozopotlan*, once the chief Town of *Zapoteca*, and the Seat of their King. 2. *Cuortlavaca*, of great note for a Labyrinth not far off, hewn out of the Rock, but by whom none knoweth. 3. *Antequera*, in the Valley of *Guaxaca*, a stately City and beautified with a fair Cathedral; as that is with Marble pillars of great height and thickness. 4. S. *Illifonso* in the Province of *Zapoteca*. 5. *S. Jago*, in the Valley of *Nexapa*, seated upon a lofty Hill. 6. *Del Spiritu Santo*, distant about three leagues from the shores of the Gulf, in the Province of *Guazacoalco*; the foundation of *Gonsalvo de Sandoval*, Anno 1526. 7. *Aguatulco*, or *Guatulco*, a noted and convenient Port on the South Sea, much used by those which trade from *Peru* to *Mexico*, and from *Mexico* to any Port of the Southern Seas. By consequence rich, and therefore plundered to the purpose both by *Drake* and *Cavendish*, in their Voyages about the World. 8. *Tacoantepeque*, a Port of the same Sea also, but of far less note. Burroughs and Villages in all 650. inhabited by 150000 of the Natives liable to Tribute, besides Women and persons under Age; not reckoning the *Spaniards* in the number.

6. *JUCUTAN*, environed on three parts by the Sea like a Demi-Island, is fastened to the Continent only where it meeteth with *Guaxaca*, the fartherest point of it opposite to the Isle of *Cuba*. Discovered first by *Fernandes de Cordova*, imployed therein by *Don Christopher Morante*, *Anno* 1517. and called *Jucutan*, not as some conceit it, from *Joctan* the son of *Heber*, who they think came out of the East, where the Scripture placeth him, (*Gen.* 10. 30.) to inhabit here; but from *Jucutan*, which in the Language of the Country signifieth, *What say you?* For when the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither asked the name of the place, the Savages, not understanding what they meant, replied, *Jucutan*, that is, *What say you?* whereupon the *Spaniards* always after called it by this name.

The compass of it, taking the Province of *Tabasco* into the account, is said to be 900 miles, or 300 Leagues. The Air hot, and the Country destitute of Rivers; not otherwise provided of Water but by Pits and Trenches, which abundantly supply that want. Sufficiently barren, the Soil not bearing Wheat, or any *European* Fruits, nor many of the growth of *America* in other places. Nor have they Mines of Gold or Silver, or any other Metal, to enrich the people; who must either live by Trades and Labour, or else beg their bread. Nothing remarkable in the Countrey, but that here seemed to be some remnants of Christianity at the *Spaniards* first coming hither: the people constantly observing a kind of Baptism, which they call in their own Language a *second birth*, expressing by that word a Regeneration; not suffering any one to marry untill so initiated. And possible enough it is, that this may be the Countrey upon which *Madoc ap Owen* fell; who though he might by some good fortune be brought back to *Wales*, yet that he should make any such second Voiage hither as is said in their Chronicles, I by no means grant.

Towns of most observation in it, 1. *Merida*, almost in the Navel of it, situate in the 20. degree of Latitude, the ordinary Seat of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop: distant from the Sea on each side about twelve Leagues; and called thus from a Town of that name in *Spain*, with which it is thought to have some resemblance. 2. *Valladolid*, 30. Leagues from *Merida*, beautified with a most sumptuous Monastery of *Franciscan* Friers. 3. *Campeche*, (or *S. Francisco*, as the *Spaniards* call it) situate on the Shore of the Gulf. A Town, when first known to the *Spaniards*, of 3000 Houses, and beautified with such Monuments of Art and industry, as shewed that there was somewhat in this people which was not barbarous: since that no more observeable then for being suddenly surprized by *Parker*, an *English* Captain, *An.* 1596, who carried away with him the Governour, the wealth of the Town, and many Prisoners; besides a great Ship full of Gold, Silver and other the like precious Commodities, designed for the King of *Spain*'s own use. 4. *Tabasco*, situate in the best part of this Countrey, so different from all the rest, that it is made by some a distinct Province from it. By the *Spaniards* called *Villa de Nuestra Sennora de la Victorira*, most commonly *Victoria* only; and that in memory of the first fortunate Victory which *Cortez* had upon this people, arming themselves against him for the Sacking of *Pontonchan*. 5. *Pontonchan*, sacked by *Cortez* for denying to supply him with Victual. 6. *Salamanca*, so called with reference to a Town of that name in *Spain*.

Along the Coast of this Countrey lie many Islands, *viz.* 1. *La Zarza*, 2. *Desconocida*, 3. *Triangulus*, 4. *Vermeia*, 5. *Los Negrillas*, 6. *Los Alacranes*; all within the Gulf. Without it, 7. *Zaratan*, 8. *Pantoia*, 9. *Lamanay*, 10. *De Mugheres*, or the Isle of Women, 11. *Cozamul*, by some called *Acusamil*. This last the biggest, as 15 Leagues long, 5 broad; and the most remarkable, as being the usual way which the *Spaniards* travelled in their Discoveries of this Countrey from the Isle of *Cuba*. For here first landed *Ferdinando de Corduba*, An. 1517, who passing over to *Jucutan* (but four Leagues distant) brought back nothing but Stripes. Here the next year arrived *John de Grijalva*, in the same pursuit; who passing by *Jucutan* to the Province of *Guaxata*, left his name behind him to a River. And finally here landed the most fortunate *Cortez*, who, coasting about the Demi-Island, landed near *Tabasco*, and there first handselled his good fortune with a notable Victory. Yet neither the Island nor *Peninsula* were discovered perfectly till the year 1527, when both subdued by *Francisco de Montejo* to the Crown of *Spain*. The Island is now called *Sancta Crux*.

OF GUATIMALA.

GUATIMALA is bounded on the North by *Jucutan* and the *Gulf* of *Honduras*; on the South, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, (or the South-east rather) with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *New Spain*. Extended 300 Leagues in length, upon the Coasts of *Mare del Zur*; but measuring by a strait line, not above 240. the breadth thereof 180 leagues where broadest; in most places narrower. So called from *Guatimala* the chief Province; as that from the prime City of it, honoured with the Seat of the Governor, and the Courts of Justice.

The nature of the Soil and People (if differing in any material thing from those before) we will consider in the View of those several parts into which this Country is divided. The principal whereof, 1 *Chiapa*, 2. *Verapaz*, 3. *Guatimala*, specially so called, 4. *Honduras*, 5. *Nicaragua*, 6. *Veragua*. The rest of less note easily reduced to these.

1. *CHIAP* hath on the West *New Spain*; on the East, *Verapaz*; on the North, part of *Jucutan*; and *Mare del Zur* on the South. Extended 40 leagues in length, not much less in breadth; and anciently inhabited by four Nations, all of several Languages.

The Soil not very natural for Corn or fruits, though Pot-herbs brought from *Spain* thrive well, as do Beans and Lentils; yet Vines and other richer Fruits seldom come to good. Wood-Vines they have, which yield a very pleasant Pulp; and, if well ordered, might be brought to afford more profit. Their Trees most of them greater then in other places, as Pines, Oaks, Cedars, and the Cypress; whole Woods of Walnuts, but the Nut not so big as those of *Europe*. Some of their Trees yield Rosin, some such precious Gums as in other places are not usual; and some there are whose leaves being dried into a powder, afford a sovereign Plaister for exulcerate Sores. And they have need too often to make use of these Plaisters, the Country being full of Snakes and other venomous Creatures, (some of the Snakes no less then 20 foot in length) whose poison, being strong and deadly, doth require such helps. Of the people nothing singular that I have met with, but that they are more musical and exact in Painting than the rest of the Natives.

Towns of most note in it, 1 *Cividad Real*, built by the *Spaniards* in the Country of the *Chiapenses*, at the foot of an Hill; situate in a round Plain, encompassed about with Mountains like an Amphitheatre: afterwards made a Bishops See, and priviledged by the Kings of *Spain* to be governed by such City-Magistrates as they call *Alcaides*. 2. *Chiapa*, in a Vale adjoining, before the building of the other, of most note in this Province, yet still before it in regard of its situation, this Valley being better fraught with Pears, Apples, Wheat and Maize, than all the rest of the Countrey. 3. *Tecpatlan*, once the chief of the *Zoaques*, possessed of 25 Villages in this Province; now beautified with a Monastery of *Dominican* Friars. 4. *Capanavatzla*, the principal Town of twenty five which the *Quelenes* held in this Tract; remarkable for nothing but a Convent of the same *Dominicans*. 5. S. *Bartholomews*, another Town in the Territory of the same *Quelenes*: near which is said to be a great Pit or opening of the Earth, into which if any man casts a stone, though never so little, there presently followeth a loud and fearful noise like a clap of Thunder. 6. *Guevetlan*, built by *Pedro de Alvaridi* when he was Governour of these parts; the chief Town of a little Province called *Soconusco*. 7. *Casapualca*, a small Burrough, but memorable for a Well in the Fields adjoining, the Waters whereof are noted to rise and fall as the Ocean doth flow or ebb, and at equal distances of time. Of thirteen Townships which the *Zeltales* were possessed of, I find no one named; though painted all of them, and set forth to the Eye of the Traveller, with *Cochineel*, of which their Territory hath good plenty.

And now I am fallen upon these Rarities of Nature; I cannot but take notice (though somewhat out of my Method) of a River by the *Spaniards* called *Rio Blanco*, which turns Wood to Stones: of a Spring in the *Cantred* of *Tafixa*, which in the Summer is full of water, in the Winter dry: of another in the same *Cantred*, which for one three years, though it rain never so little, is full of water, and the next three years hath none at all; and so successively by turns: and finally, that the chief River of the Province, having received into it many lesser streams, is swallowed up near a Village of the *Chiapenses*, called *Otztutan*, never after seen. None of them famed for Golden Sands, as are those of *Guaxaca*; though it be thought there be some Veins of Gold and Silver, but hitherto neglected for want of Slaves to work in the Mines.

2. *VERAPAZ* is bounded on the West with *Chiapa*; on the East, with *Guatimala* and *Hondura*; on the North, with *Jucutan*; and on the South, with the Territory of *Soconusco*. In *Latine* called *Provincia Veræ Pacis*, by the *Spaniards*, *Verapaz*; because not conquered by the Sword, but wone to the obedience of the King of *Spain* by the preaching of the *Dominican* Friars.

The Country is 30 leagues in length, and as much in breadth, full of high Hills and deep Valleys, but no fruitful Plains; generally overgrown with Woods, very large and thick, which so hinder the free passage of the Winds, that the Air hereof is very showry: insomuch that for nine moneths in the year they have always rain, not altogether free from it in the other three. By reason of this moisture much anoyed with *Mosquits*, a kind of Gnats very injurious to their Fruits, with which otherwise (as with Fish and other necessaries) they were well provided. No Mines of Gold or Silver discovered hitherto, though the *Spaniards* have many times in vain attempted it. In stead whereof some of their Trees drop a kind of Amber, which they call *Liquid Amber*; some *Mastick*, and some other Gums: they have also many Medicinal Woods, as *Sarzaparilla*, that called *China*-Wood, and many others.

The People tractable and conform to the *Spanish* Government, except the *Lecandones* and *Pachuteci*, some Remainders of the ancient Savages; who, keeping in the Mountains and craggy Rocks of this Country, have hitherto

therto retained both their native Freedom and their old Idolatries. No Towns herein poſſeſſed by the *Spaniard*, and but fourteen Villages in all, in which they live mingled with the old Inhabitants. The principal of theſe *S. Auguſtines*, not ſo much memorable in it ſelf, as for the neighbourhood of a Cave betwixt two Mountains from which the Rain deſcending turns into Alabaſter, naturally faſhioned into Pillars and other Pourtraitures. Into which alſo many Springs do convey their waters, which there being joyned into a body, make an handſome River, able almoſt at the firſt appearance to bear a Boat. A Port they alſo have at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*: but of ſo little uſe and trading, that I find no name for it, unleſs it ſhould be that *Iztapa* which *Herrera* ſpeaks of, by whom it is placed in *Guatimala*.

3. *GUATIMALA* ſpecially ſo called, is bounded on the Weſt with *Verapaz*, from which parted by the River *Xicalapa*; on the Eaſt, with *Nicaragua*; on the North, with *Honduras*; and on the South, with *Mare del Zur*, or the *Pacifick* Ocean. Extended 30 leagues from the North to the South, and on the ſhores of *Mare del Zur* not above ſeventeen. But reckoning in *Izalcos*, *Chalcheca*, and *S. Saviours*, three adjoyning Regions, by ſome made Provinces diſtinct, the dimenſions of it muſt be much greater both for length and breadth.

The Country is Mountainous, but withal very full of Rivers; by conſequence commodious both for Fiſhing and Hunting. Fruitful of Wheat, Maize and other Proviſions, but thoſe Fruits not laſting. Not ſo much ſubject unto Rain as they are in *Verapaz*, but more troubled with Winds. Full of rich Paſtures, and thoſe Paſtures of great Herds of Cattel: good ſtore of Cotton-wool, ſome *Balſamum*, and other Medicinal liquors, as alſo of the beſt Sulphur, and many Apothecaries Drugs, which I have no skill of. The People puſillanimous and fearful, greater Proficients in Chriſtianity and Civility than moſt of the Savages; but ſo that it is thought they would relapſe again to their ancient Paganiſm, and revive again their old barbarous Cuſtoms, if not held in by the bridle of Fear and the curb of Power. The men affirmed to be good Archers, and the Women good Spinſters.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Guacapa*, a River of a courſe but of 13 leagues, yet of great depth, and navigable half the way, which falleth into *Mare del Zur*. 2. *Lempas*, watering the Burrough of S. *Saviours*; which hath its riſe from a great Lake, and his fall into the ſame Sea alſo. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Lake near the Village of *Iſtepeque*, of the Waters whereof are made both Sulphur and Alum. And here is ſaid to be a *Volcana*, or burning Mountain, which though it hath vomited no Fire of late, the matter of it being ſpent, yet the ſad Monuments of his Furies do remain among them: another not far off which ſtill caſts out ſmoak.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Guatimala*, or S. *Jago de Guatimala*, the chief Town of the Province, ſituate on a little River betwixt both *Volcana's*, by one of which moſt terribly waſted, *Anno* 1541. But being re-edified, it hath ſince exceedingly flouriſhed, by reaſon of the Biſhops See, the reſidence of the Governour, and the Courts of Juſtice. 2. *S. Salvador*, 40 leagues Eaſtward from *Guatimala*, by the Natives called *Guzculan*; ſituate on the River *Guacapa*, ſeven leagues from the Sea, and neighboured by a great Lake of five leagues compaſs. 3. *Acaxutla*, at the mouth of the ſame River, the Port Town to *S. Saviours*. 4. *S. Trinidad*, by the Natives called *Samſonate*, the moſt noted Empory of this Country; the place of Bartery betwixt the Inhabitants of *New Spain* and thoſe of *Peru*. 5. S. *Michaels*, two leagues from the Bay of *Fonſeca*, which ſerves unto it for an Haven. 6. *Xeres de la Fronterà*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Chuluteca*, (by which name it was formerly known) ſituate on the Frontiers towards *Nicaragua*, and to the South-eaſt of the Bay of *Fonſeca*: that Bay ſo named in honour of *Roderico Fonſeca* Biſhop of *Bruges*, and Preſident of the Council for the *Indies*, *Anno* 1532. by *Giles Gonſales de Avila*, who firſt diſcovered it. About and in this Bay are ten little Iſlands, four of them inhabited, and plentifully furniſhed with Wood, Water, and Salt.

4. *HONDURA* hath on the South *Guatimala*, ſpecially ſo called; on the Weſt, the Bay, or Arm of the Sea, called *Golfo Dulce*, by which parted from *Verapaz*: on the North and Eaſt, the Sea called *Mare del Noordt*; on the South-eaſt, *Nicaragua*; on the South, *Guatimala* ſpecially ſo called. In length from Eaſt to Weſt by the banks of that Sea 150 leagues, and about 80 leagues in breadth from North to South. The name of *Honduras*, or *Fonduras*, impoſed upon it from the depth of the Sea about the principal Head-land of it, called the Cape of *Honduras*.

The whole Countrey is either Hills or Valleys, little Champain in it; fruitful of Maize and Wheat, and of very rich Paſturage; made ſo by the conſtant overflowings of their Rivers about *Michaelmas*, which do not only ſoil their Grounds, but water their Gardens. The principal of them, 1. *Hungara*, 2. *Chamalucon*. 3. *Ulna*; all neighboured by fertile Fields and pleaſant Meadows. Some Mines of Gold and Silver are conceived to be here, but not yet diſcovered; the people being ſo ſlothful and given to idleneſs, that they rather live on Roots, than take pains in tilling of their Land; and therefore not eaſily entreated to toil for others, but where neceſſity and ſtrong hand do compell them to it.

Towns of moſt note, 1. *Valladolid*, by the Natives called *Commyagna*, 40 leagues diſtant from the Sea, ſituate in a pleaſant and fruitful Valley, on the banks of the River *Chamalucon*; and honoured with a Biſhops See, fixed here about the year 1558. but built near the place where once *Franciſco de Montejo*, Governour of this Province, had planted a Colony of *Spaniards*, Anno 1530, by the name of S. *Maria de Commyagna*. 2. *Gracios di Dios*, 30 leagues Weſtward of *Valladolid*, built by *Gabriel de Royas*, Anno 1530. to be a place of defence for thoſe who worked in the Mines againſt the Savages. But finding himſelf unable to make it good, he defaced and left it. Re-edified again by *Gonſalvo de Alvaredo*, and ſince well inhabited. 3. S. *Peters*, eleven leagues diſtant from the Port of *Cavallos*, but ſeated in a moſt healthy Air; and therefore made the dwelling-place of the Farmers of the Kings Cuſtoms, who have their houſes in this Town, and follow their buſineſs in the other, as occaſion is. 4. *Porto de Cavallos*, ſo called from ſome Horſes thrown overboard in a violent Tempeſt: the moſt noted Haven of theſe parts, and ſtrong by natural ſituation: but ſo ill guarded and defended, that in the year 1591. it was pillaged by Captain *Chriſtopher Newport*, and *Anno* 1596. by Sir *Anthony Sherley*. Deſerted on theſe ſpoils, and not ſince inhabited. 5. S. *Thomas de Caſtile*, 18 leagues from *Cavallos*, naturally ſtrong, and fortified according to the Rules of Art: to which, as to a place of more ſtrength and ſafety, *Alphonſo Briado de Caſtilla*, Preſident of the Seſſions of *Guatimala*, removed both the Inhabitants and Trade of *Cavallos*. 6. *Traxillo*, ſeated on the riſing of a little Hill betwixt two Rivers, (one of them that which is called *Haguara*) diſtant from *Cavallos* 40 leagues to the Eaſt, and 60 leagues to the North of *Valladolid*; ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1576. Not far hence towards the North-eaſt lieth the Cape of *Honduras*, from whence the ſhore drawing inwards till it join with *Jucutan*, makes up a large and goodly Bay, called the Gulf of *Honduras*. 7. S. *George*

de

de Olancho, ſo named from the Valley *Olancho*, in which it is ſeated; a Valley noted heretofore for ſome golden Sands, which *Guajape*, a River of it, was then ſaid to yield.

5. *NICARAGUA* is bounded on the North with *Honduras*; on the Eaſt, with *Mar del Noordt* and the Province of *Veragua*; on the South, with *Mar del Zur*; on the Weſt, with *Guatimala*. By *Didaco Lopez de Salſedo*, who firſt ſubdued it, it was called the *New Kingdom of Leon*; but the old name by which they found it called at their coming thither would not be ſo loſt.

The Countrey is deſtitute of Rivers, except that part hereof towards *Veragua* called *Coſta Riga*, reckoned a Province of it ſelf. The want hereof is ſupplied by a great Lake, or a little Sea, called the *Lake of Nicaragua*, 120 Leagues in compaſs, ebbing and flowing like the Sea; upon the banks of which ſtand many pleaſant Villages and ſingle Houſes. A Lake well ſtored with Fiſh, but as full of Crocodiles: and having made its way by a mighty Cataract, emptieth it ſelf into the Sea about four Leagues off. Not very rich in Corn, (moſt of which is brought them from *Peru*) but well ſtored with Cattel: level and plain, and ſhadowed with frequent Trees; one amongſt others of that nature, that a man cannot touch any part of it, but it withereth preſently. Affirmed to be as full of Parrots as *England* of Crows; ſtored with great plenty of Cotton-wool, and abundance of Sugar-Canes. In a word ſo pleaſing generally to the Eye, that the *Spaniards* call it by the name of *Mahomet's Paradiſe*.

The People for the moſt part ſpeak the *Spaniſh* Tongue, and willingly conform themſelves to the *Spaniſh* Garb, both of behaviour and apparel: well weaned from their old barbarous Cuſtoms, retained only by ſome Mountainers, whom they call *Chontales*. All of good Stature, and of colour indifferent white. They had before they received Chriſtianity a ſetled and politick form of Government. Only as *Solon* appointed, no Law for a man's killing of his Father, ſo had this people none for the killer of a King; both of them conceiting that men were not ſo unnatural as to commit ſuch Crimes. A Thief they judged not to death, but adjudged him to be a Slave to that man whom he had robbed, till by his Service he made ſatisfaction. A courſe more merciful, and not leſs juſt, then the loſs of Life.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Leon*, or *Leon de Nicaragua*, ſituate on the Lake aforeſaid, the Reſidence of the Governour, and the Biſhop's Seg; built in a Sandy Soil, and begirt with Woods. 2. *Granada*, on the ſame Lake, ſixteen Leagues from *Leon*; beautified with a fair Church and a ſtrong Caſtle, both founded by *Ferdinando de Cordova*: the City ſeated in a liberal and wealthy Soil, well furniſhed with Sugar-Canes; for the refineing of which here are many Work-houſes, which they call *Ingenio's* 3. *Segovia*, diſtant from the former about 30 Leagues, rich in Veins of Silver. 4. *Jaen*, (all called according to the names of ſome Towns in *Spain*) ſituate at the end of the Lake aforeſaid; from whence by a long and narrow Chanel it diſembogueth into the Sea near the Port of S. *John*. 5. *Realio*, about a League diſtant from the Port of *Poſſeſſion*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees and 40 minutes; inhabited for the moſt part by Shipwrights and Mariners. 6. *Nicoia*, giving name to a little Territory, within the bounds whereof ſtandeth 7. *Avarines* alſo. 8. *Cartago*, 40 Leagues from *Nicoia*, equally diſtant from both Seas, on each of which it hath a convenient Port: this Town is the principal of that part which is called *Coſta Rica*.

6. *VERAGUA* hath on the Weſt *Coſta Rica*; on the Eaſt, bounded with the Diſtrict of *Panama*; waſhed on both other ſides by the Sea: extended 50 Leagues in length from Weſt to Eaſt; not above 25, where narroweſt, from one Sea to the other. The name given to it from the River *Veragua*, of greateſt note in it at the firſt Diſcovery.

The Soil hereof is Mountainous and exceeding barren, not fit for Tillage, and leſs uſeful in feeding Cattel; ſufficiently provided of Maize and Pot-herbs, but elſe of little neceſſary for the life of man, unleſs the people could eat Silver, or drink *Aurum Potabile*. Of both which Metals, but eſpecially of Gold, here are ſuch never-periſhing Mines, that the *Spaniards* think them able to ſupply all Wants, and cure all Diſeaſes. Once being asked what made them ſo greedy of that Metal, it was anſwered, *That they were much troubled with Grief of Heart, for which Gold was a moſt ſovereign Medicine.* And as the Countrey, ſuch the People, hardy, couragious, and warlike, and ſuch as bear the *Spaniſh* Yoke with great impatience: the ſtouteſt and moſt untameable people being bred moſt commonly in mountainous and woody Countreys.

Chief Rivers of this little Province, 1. *Veragua*, which gives name unto it. 2. *Belen*, by the old Inhabitants called *Tebra*; at the mouth of which *Columbus* purpoſed to have ſettled a *Spaniſh* Colony, for the better tranſporting of his Gold. But finding that the Chanel, on the ceaſing of ſome Rain which had fallen before, was become ſo ſhallow that no Ship could go in or out, he gave over that purpoſe. 3. *La Trinidad*, 4. *La Conception*; all falling into *Mare del Noordt*. Their chief Towns, 1. *Conception*, upon the Mouth of that River, the Seat of the Governour. 2. *La Trinidad*, on the banks of that River, near the Port of *Belen*, and ſix Leagues Eaſtwards of *La Conception*. 3. S. *Foy*, (*Oppidum S. Fidei*) twelve Leagues from *Conception* on the South; where the *Spaniards* melt and caſt their Gold into Bars and Ingots. 4. *Carlos*, not far from the Shores of *Mare del Zur*. 5. *Philippina*, on the Weſt of *Carlos*. Each ſeated on a large and capacious Bay. Before which Bays lie a Frie of Iſlands, which the *Spaniards* call *Zebaco*, from the chief amongſt them. Thirty in all; the principal, *Zebaco*, *Cabaio*, S. *Marie*, S. *Martha*, inhabited in former times, now not much frequented; the people being dragged into the Continent to work in the Mines.

This Countrey oweth its firſt diſcovery unto divers men according to the ſeveral Members and Diviſions of it. The laſt in order being the firſt that was diſcovered, but the laſt that was conquered had the honour to be viſited by *Columbus* himſelf. Who driving up and down theſe Coaſts in the year 1502, hit on the entrances of the River which afterwards he cauſed to be called *Belen*; where, hearing that there was plenty of Gold in the Mines of *Hurira* not far off, he intended to fortifie. But the River failing him, as was ſaid before, and finding nothing fit to ſuſtain his men; he bent himſelf, though unwillingly, to a farther ſearch. He had before touched upon *Honduras* alſo, but I find not that he landed on it: the ſettling of theſe Countreys being deſtinated to another hand. Twenty years after this the moſt fortunate *Cortez*, having fully quieted and compoſed the affairs of *Mexico*, reſolved to make his Maſter Lord of the reſt of *America*; and to that end ſent out his Officers and Commanders into ſeveral parts. By *Pedro de Alvarado* he ſubdued *Guatimala*; *Hondura*, by *Chriſtopher de Olid*; *Veragua* and *Nicaragua*, by *Gonſalvo de Cordoba*. But fearing leſt the conquered Provinces might revolt again, he reſolved to viſit them in perſon. Attended by a choice Band of 150 Horſe, and as many Foot, and 3000 *Mexicans*, he began his journey in *October* 1524, and held on his Progreſs as far as to *Traxillo*; where finding that *Gonſales de Cordova* had ſo

plai'd

plaid his Game as there was no neceſſity of going farther, he made a ſtand, having marched above 400 leagues with his little Army. Returning back another way, in *April* 1526. he came home to *Mexico*: with whoſe return we conclude alſo our Survey of the Northern *Peninſula*, containing all *America Septentrionalis*, or *Mexicana*.

And ſo much for *MEXICANA*.

OF

PERUANA.

PERUANA, the other of the two great *Peninſula's*, into which the vaſt Continent of the *NEW WORLD* doth now ſtand divided, hath the form of a *Pyramis* reverſed; more anſwerable thereunto than *Africk*, though that be ſo reſembled. Joined to the other by a ſtreight and narrow *Iſthmus*, called the *Streights of Darien*, whereof we ſhall have opportunity to ſpeak more anon: which looks but like a Stone miſlaid in ſo great a Building; or the firſt ſtep by which we are to climb the top, as in other *Pyramids*.

The name is derived from *Peru*, the chief Province of it: the Circumnavigation ſaid to be 1700 miles. Nothing elſe to be ſaid in the general, but what will ſerve more fitly for particular places; except it be the deſcription of ſome prime Mountains and principal Rivers, which being of too long a courſe to be reckoned unto any one particular Province, may more properly deſerve place here. Of theſe the chief are, 1. *Orellana*, or the River of *Amazons*: called by the firſt name from *Franciſco de Orellana*, a *Spaniard*, who firſt diſcovered it; by the ſecond, from the *Amazons*, a kind of ſtout and warlike Women, who are ſaid to have inhabited on the Banks thereof. The Fountain of it in *Peru*, the Fall in the North Sea, or *Mare del Noordt*. A River of ſo long a courſe, that the ſaid *Orellana* is reported to have ſailed in it 5000 miles, the ſeveral windings and turnings of it being reckoned in: and of ſo violent a Current, that it is ſaid to keep its natural taſte and colour above 30 miles after it falleth into the Sea; the Channel of it of that breadth, where it leaveth the Land, that it is accounted 60 leagues from one point to the other. 2. *Orenoque*, navigable 1000 miles by Ships of burthen, and 2000 miles by Boats and Pinnaces. Having received into it an hundred Rivers, it openeth into the ſame Sea with 16 mouths, which part the Earth into many Iſlands, (ſome equal to the Iſle of *Wight*:) the moſt remote of thoſe Channels 300 miles diſtant from one another. By ſome it is called *Raliana*, from Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who took great pains in the Diſcovery and Deſcription of it; or rather in diſcovering it ſo far, as to be able to deſcribe it. 3. *Maragnon*, of a longer courſe than any of the other, affirmed to meaſure at the leaſt 6000 miles from his firſt riſing to his fall; and at his fall into the Sea to be no leſs than 70 leagues from one ſide to the other. More properly to be called a Sea, than many of thoſe great Lakes, or largeſt Bays, which uſually enjoy that name. 4. *Rio de la Plata*, a River of a leſs courſe than the other, but equal unto moſt in the World beſides: in length from its firſt Fountain 2000 miles, in breadth at his fall into the Sea, about 60 leagues; and of ſo violent a Stream, that the Sea for many leagues together altereth not the taſte of it. All theſe, as they do end their race in the *Atlantick*, ſo they begin it from the main body of the *Andes*, or at leaſt ſome ſpur or branch of that great body.

But before we venture farther on more particulars, we are to tell you of theſe *Andes*, that they are the greateſt and moſt noted Mountains of all *America*; beginning at *Timana*, a Town of *Popayan*, in the new Realm of *Granada*, and thence extended Southwards to the Streights of *Magellan*, for the ſpace of 1000 leagues and upwards. In breadth about 20 leagues, where they are at the narroweſt; and of ſo vaſt an height withal, that they are ſaid to be higher than the *Alps*, or the head of *Caucaſus*, or any of the moſt noted Mountains in other parts of the World. Not eaſie of aſcent, but in certain Paths, by reaſon of the thick and unpaſſable Woods, with which covered in all parts thereof which lie towards *Peru* (for how it is on the other ſide, or by what People it is neighboured, is not yet diſcovered:) barren and craggy too withal, but ſo full of venomous Beaſts and poiſonous Serpents, that they are ſaid to have deſtroyed a whole Army of one of the Kings of *Peru*, in his march that way. Inhabited by a People as rude and ſavage as the place, and as little hoſpitable. The moſt noted Mountain of *America*, as before was ſaid, and indeed the greateſt of the World. Of fame ſufficient of themſelves, not to be greatned by the addition of impoſſible Figments, or improbable Fictions. Amongſt which laſt I reckon that of *Abraham Ortelius*, a right learned man, who will have theſe Mountains to be that which the Scripture calleth by the name of *Sephar*, *Gen.* 10. 30. and there affirmed to be the utmoſt Eaſtern limit of the Sons of *Joktan*: the vanity and inconſequences of which ſtrange conceit we have already noted, when we were in *India*.

Proceed we now unto the particular Deſcriptions of this great *Peninſula*, comprehending thoſe large and wealthy Countries which are known to us by the names of, 1. *Caſtella Aurea*, 2. The new Realm of *Granada*. 3. *Peru*. 4. *Chile*. 5. *Paraguay*. 6. *Braſil*. 7. *Guiana*, and 8. *Paria*, with their ſeveral Iſlands. Such other Iſles as fall not properly and naturally under ſome of theſe, muſt be referred unto the general Head of the *American* Iſlands, in the cloſe of all.

OF

OF CASTELLA del ORO.

CASTELLA del ORO, Golden Caſtile, (Aurea Caſtella, as the Latines) is bounded on the East and North with *Mare del Noordt*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*, and ſome part of *Veragua*; on the South, with the new Realm of *Granada*. Called by the name of *Caſtile*, with reference to *Caſtile* in *Spain*, under the favour and good fortune of the Kings whereof it was firſt diſcovered: *Aurea* was added to it, partly for diſtinction ſake, and partly in regard of that plenty of Gold which the firſt Diſcoverers found in it. It is alſo called *Terra Firma*, becauſe one of the firſt parts of *Firm Land* which the *Spaniards* touched at, having before diſcovered nothing but ſome Iſlands only.

The Soil and People being of ſuch ſeveral tempers, as not to be included in one common Character, we will conſider both apart in the ſeveral Provinces of, 1. *Panama*. 2. *Darien*. 3. *Nova Andaluzia*. 4. *S. Martha*, and 5. the little Province *De la Hacha*.

1. PANAMA, or the Diſtrict of *Panama*, is bounded on the Eaſt with the Gulf of *Uraba*, by which parted from the main Land of this large *Peninſula*; on the Weſt, with *Veragua*, one of the Provinces of *Guatimala* in *Mexicana*; waſhed on both the other ſides with the Sea. So called of *Panama*, the Town of moſt eſteem herein, and the Juridical reſort of *Caſtella Aurea*.

It taketh up the narroweſt part of the Streight or *Iſthmus*, which joyns both *Peninſula's* together: not above 7 or 8 leagues over in the narroweſt place, betwixt *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, if meaſured by a ſtraight line from one Town to the other; though 18 leagues according to the courſe of the Road betwixt them, which by reaſon of the Hills and Rivers is full of turnings. Of ſome attempts to dig a Channel through this *Iſthmus*, to let one Sea into the other, and of the memorable expedition of *John Oxenham* over it by Land, we have ſpoken already.

The Air hereof is foggy, but exceeding hot, and conſequently very unhealthy, chiefly from *May* unto *November*: the Soil either Mountainous and barren, or low and miry; naturally ſo unfit for Grain, that it yieldeth nothing but Maize, and that but ſparingly; better for Paſturage, in regard of its Plenty of Graſs, and the goodneſs of it: ſo full of Swine at the *Spaniards* firſt coming hither, that they thought they never ſhould deſtroy them; now they complain as much of their want, or paucity. As for the Inhabitants, whatſoever they were formerly is not now material; moſt of the old ſtock rooted out by the *Spaniards*, and no new ones planted in their room; ſo that the Country in all parts, except towards the Sea, is almoſt deſolated, or forſaken.

The Countrey, as before was ſaid, of little breadth, and yet full of Rivers: the principal whereof, 1. *Chagre*, by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de Lagartos*, or the River of Crocodiles, (many of which are harboured in it) which falleth into *Mare del Noordt* betwixt *Nombre de Dios* and *Porto Beleno*. 2. *Sardinilla*, 3. *Sardina*, 4. *Rio de Colubros*, or the River of Snakes, and 5. *Rio de Comagre*; all falling into the ſame Sea. Then on the other ſide, 6. *Chepo*, whoſe Sands in former times yielded plenty of Gold. 7. *Rio de las Balſas*, on the banks whereof groweth great ſtore of Timber for the building of Ships. 8. *De Congos*, emptying it ſelf into the Bay of S. *Michaels*.

Towns of moſt note, 1. S. *Philip*, ſeated on a ſafe and ſtrong Haven, called *Porto Belo*: built in this place by the appointment of King *Philip* the ſecond, but by the Counſel of *John Baptiſta Antonelli*, to be the Staple of the Trade betwixt *Spain* and *Panama*; partly, in regard of the unhealthineſs of *Nombre de Dios*, where it was before; but chiefly, becauſe that Town was found to have lien too open to the Invaſions of the *Engliſh*. Fortified with two ſtrong Caſtles, (on each ſide of the Haven one;) but for all that ſurprized and pillaged by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, in the year 1601. 2. *Nombre de Dios*, conveniently ſeated in the upper Sea for a Town of Trade; and for that reaſon made the Staple of ſuch Commodities as were trucked betwixt *Peru* and *Spain*: which brought from *Spain*, and landed here, were from hence conveyed over the Land to *Panama*, and there ſhipped for *Peru*; or brought from *Peru*, and landed at *Panama*, were by Land brought unto this place, and here ſhipped for *Spain*. It took this name by *Didaco Niqueſa*, a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, who having been diſtreſſed by Tempeſts was driven in here, and bid his men go on ſhore *en Nombre de Dios*, in the name of God. In reference hereunto by the *Latines*, borrowing a *Greek* word, it is called *Theonyma*. Of great Trade once, on the occaſion before mentioned: but in the year 1584. the Trade was removed unto *Porto Belo*, by the counſel of *Antonelli* before named; and ſome years after that, the Inhabitants alſo. To haſten which, the taking of this Town by Sir *Francis Drake* ſerved exceeding fitly. 3. *Acla*, on the Coaſt of the ſame Sea alſo, but on the South-eaſt of *Nombre de Dios*. 4. *Nata*, or *S. Jago de Nata*, ſituate on the lower Sea on the Borders of *Veragua*, about 30 leagues on the Weſt of *Panama*. 5. *Panama*, the chief City of *Caſtella Aurea*, the Reſidence of the Governour and the Courts of Juſtice, honoured with a Biſhops See, a Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Lima*, and beautified with three fair Monaſteries, and a Colledge of Jeſuites. Seated in the 9. degree of Northern Latitude; and ſo near the Sea that the waves come cloſe unto the Wall. A Town through which the Wealth of *Spain* and *Peru* paſſeth every year; yet not containing above 350 Houſes: the number of the Souldiers greater than that of the Citizens. 6. *S. Crux la Real*, a League from *Panama*, inhabited totally by *Negroes*, brought out of *Guinea*.

This Province was the firſt of thoſe on the *Firm Land* which were diſcovered by *Columbus*. But I find not that he left any name unto it, or to any River or Promontory of it, but only to a little Iſland lying on the Shore near *Porto Belo*, which he cauſed to be called *Los Baſtimentos*; becauſe being caſt hereon by chance, he found good ſtore of Maize and other Proviſions, called *Baſtimentos* by the *Spaniard*. But the chief Iſlands of this Province are thoſe which *Columbus* never ſaw, called the *Iſlands of Pearls*, ſituate in the Southern Sea, oppoſite to *Panama*, from which diſtant 17 leagues, or thereabouts. In number above twenty, but two only inhabited, the one called

led *Tarorequi*, the other *Del Rio*; the reſt of them rather Rocks then Iſlands. Much famed not only for the abundance, but the excellency, of the Pearls there found; fairer then thoſe of *Margarita* and *Cubagua*, ſo much commended. Once very profitable to the *Spaniards*, till by their cruelty and covetouſneſs they unpeopled the Iſlands, and deſtroyed the Pearls. Inhabited now only by a few *Negroes*, and ſome Slaves of *Nicaragua*, who live here to attend the grazing of their Maſters Cattel in the Fields and Paſtures.

2. *DARIEN* hath on the North the Diſtrict of *Panama*; on the South, *New Granada*; on the Eaſt, the River of *Darien*, whence it hath its name, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; and on the Weſt, the main Southern Ocean.

The Country is of a temperate Air, and a fruitful Soil: ſo happy in the production of Melons and ſuch other Fruits, that within twenty days after they are ſown they are fully ripe. With like felicity it bringeth forth Grapes and other Fruits; either natural hereunto, or brought hither from *Europe*. A Tree here is called *Hovo*, not elſewhere known; the Shade of which is conceived to be ſo wholeſom, that the *Spaniards* ſeek them out to ſleep under them. Out of the Bloſſoms of it they diſtil a perfumed Water; of the Bark a Bath or Lavatory, good for the opening of the Pores, and redreſs of Wearineſs; and from the Roots they draw a Liquor which they uſe to drink of. Of Beaſts and Fowl great plenty, whether wild or tame; and ſome of them not heard of in other places.

Principal Rivers hereof, 1. *Darien*, whence it hath the name. A clear Water, and much drank of, but of a ſlow courſe and a narrow Chanel; able to bear no bigger Veſſels then thoſe of one piece of Wood, uſed among the Savages; we may call them Troughs. But with this ſlow courſe it falleth at laſt into the Gulf of *Uraba*, a large Arm of the Sea, which pierceth far into the Land, and at the mouth is ſaid to be eight Leagues over. 2. *Rio de las Redas*, and 3. *De la Trepadera*; both emptying themſelves into the Gulf of *Uraba*. 4. *Corobaci*, on the ſame ſide of the Country alſo. 5. *Bern*, a River of the South-Sea, not much obſervable, but that ſome have laboured to derive the Etymology of *Peru* from thence.

Towns of moſt note, though few of any, 1. *Darien*, on the Bank of the Gulf of *Uraba*; oftentimes ſo unhealthy by the Miſts which do thence ariſe, that the Inhabitants uſe to ſend their ſick people to the freſh Air of *Corobary*. to revive their ſpirits. By the *Spaniards* it was called *S. Maria Antiqua*, afterwards the *Antique* of *Darien*, being new built by one *Enciſus* a *Spaniſh* Adventurer, *Anno* 1510. and grew ſo ſuddenly into Wealth and Reputation, that within four years it was made an Epiſcopal See. But being built too near the Banks of the *Darien*, in a mooriſh and unhealthy place, both the Epiſcopal See and the chief Inhabitants were removed to *Panama*. Some other Colonies of the *Spaniards* have been planted here; but either forſaken by themſelves, or deſtroyed by the Savages; ſo that now from *Acla* to the bottom of the Gulf of *Uraba*, the *Spaniards* have not in their own hands either Town or Village. Nothing but ſome few ſcattered Houſes in all that Tract, for the uſe of the Natives; who formerly made their Neſts like Birds, on the tops of Trees. 2. *Bizu*. 3. *Los Angadeſos*; two ſmall Villages on the other ſide of the Country, poſſeſſed by the Savages. Beſides theſe, and ſome ſorry Sheds here and there diſperſed, all the reſt is a Deſart. So that not being able to maintain the Reputation of a diſtinct Province, the Government hereof hath of late been devolved on the Prefect of *Panama*.

3. *NOVA ANDALUZIA* hath on the Weſt the River *Darien*, and the Gulf of *Uraba*; on the Eaſt, the Province of *S. Martha*; on the North, the main Ocean; and on the South, *the New Realm of Granada*. So called with reference to *Andaluzia*, a Province of *Spain*. Called alſo by ſome Writers *Carthagena*, from *Carthagena* now the chief City of it.

It is in length, from the Gulf of *Uraba* to the River of *Magdalen*, 80 Leagues, and near upon as much in breadth. Mountainous, and very full of Woods; but in thoſe Woods great ſtore of Roſin, Gums, and ſome kinds of Balſams. Here is alſo ſaid to be a Tree, which whoſoever toucheth, is in danger of poiſoning. The Soil, by reaſon of the abundance of Rain which falls upon it, very moiſt and ſpewy; inſomuch that few of our *European* Fruits have proſpered in it. Few Veins of Gold in all the Country, except only in that part hereof which is called *Zena*; where the *Spaniards*, at their firſt coming, found great ſtore of Treaſure. But it was taken out of the Graves and Monuments of the dead, not found in Mines, or digged for, as in other places: ſuch being the Reputation of that Territory in former times, that the Nations far and near did carry the bodies of their Dead, to be buried in it, with great quantity of Gold, Jewels, and other Riches. The Natives very fierce and ſtout, whilſt they were a People: But giving the *Spaniards* many overthrows before fully conquered, they have been ſo conſumed and waſted by little and little, that there are not many of them left.

Chief Rivers hereof, 1. *Rio de los Redos*, and 2. *Rio de los Anades*, both falling into the Bay of *Uraba*. 3. *Zenu*, which paſſing through the Province above-mentioned, to which it gives name, falleth into the Ocean over againſt the Iſland *Fuerte*. 4. *S. Martha*, of long courſe and much eſtimation. For riſing in the moſt Southern parts of the *New Realm of Granada*, near the *Æquinoctial*, it paſſeth through the whole length of that Kingdom, and at the laſt mingleth its ſtream with that of the River *Magdalen*, not far from *Mopox*. By the Natives it is called *Cauca*. And as for Mountains, thoſe of moſt note are a continual ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Cordillera*, by the Natives *Abibe*; craggy and difficult of aſcent; in breadth affirmed to be 20 Leagues, but the length uncertain, the fartheſt ends of them towards the South not diſcovered hitherto.

Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Carthagena*, ſituate in a ſandy *Peninſula*, ten degrees diſtant from the *Æquator*: well built, and for the bigneſs of it of great Wealth and State; conſiſting of 500 Houſes, or thereabout, but thoſe neat and handſom. Beautified with a Cathedral Church, three Monaſteries, and one of the beſt Havens of all *America*. Well fortified on both ſides, ſince the taking of it by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1585. took it by Aſſault, and carried thence, beſides ineſtimable ſums of mony, 240 Braſs pieces of Ordnance. 2. *Tolu*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Jago*, twelve miles from *Carthagena*, memorable for the moſt ſoveraign Balſam of all theſe parts, called the Balſam of *Tolu*; little inferiour, if at all to the Balſam of *Egypt*. 3. *Mopox*, or *Santa Cruz de Mopox*, near the Confluences of the Rivers of *Martha* and *Magdalena*. 4. *Baranca de Malambo*, on the Banks of the River *Magdalen*, ſix Leagues from the Ocean, where ſuch Commodities as are brought by Sea for the *New Realm* of *Granada* uſe to be unſhipped, and carried by Lighters or ſmall Boats up the River. 5. *Sebaſtian de Buena viſta*, built by *Alfonſo de Oieda*, Anno 1508. in the firſt Attempt upon this Country; ſituate on a riſing ground, near the mouth of the Bay of *Uraba*, a League and a half from the Sea. 6. *Villa de Maria*, 30 Leagues South of *Carthagena*, but of no great note.

4. S. *MARTHA* hath on the Weſt *Nova Andaluzia*; on the Eaſt, *Rio de la Hacha*; on the North, the main Ocean; on the South, the *New Realm* of *Granada*: about 70 Leagues in length, and as much in

breadth. So called from *S. Martha* the chief City of it.

The Country is mountainous and barren, not fit for Pasturage or Tillage; productive notwithstanding of Limons, Oranges, Pomegranates, and such other Fruits as are brought hither out of *Spain*. The Air on the Sea-coasts very hot and scalding, and in the mid-land parts as cold, because of the neighbourhood of some Mountains always covered with Snow. The principal of those Mountains, a long ridge of Hills, by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sierras Nievadas*, or the Snowy Mountains; discernable by the Mariners 30 Leagues at Sea, by whom called the Mountains of *Tairona*, from a Valley of that name beneath them, the Inhabitants whereof, by the advantage of those Hills, have hitherto preserved their liberty against the *Spaniards*. The rest, though subject to the *Spaniards*, have their several Kings, affirmed to be an arrogant and ill-natur'd People; made worse perhaps then indeed they are, by reason of their hate to the *Spaniards*, whose Government they live under with great unwillingness.

Chief Rivers of this Province, are, 1. *Rio Grando de la Magdalena*; which hath its Fountain in the Hills of the *New Realm* of *Granada*, not far from the *Æquator*, but its fall into the Ocean betwixt *Carthagena* and *S. Martha*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; where dividing it self, it maketh an Island of five Leagues long, and after openeth into the Sea with two wide mouths; discernable for ten Leagues space from the rest of the Main by the taste and colour of the Water. 2. *Rio de Cazaze*, which falleth into the *Magdalen*; as doth also 3. *Cæsar* by the Natives called *Pompatan*: which having its Fountain near the *City of Kings* in the Vale of *Upar*, passeth directly towards the South, till it meet with 4. *Ayumas*, another River of this Tract; accompanied with whom he runneth Westward for the space of 70 Leagues, and endeth in the great River of *Magdalen*, as before is said, near the Forest of *Alpuerte*. 5. *Bubia*. 6. *Piras*. 7. *Don Diego*. 8. *Palamini*. 9. *Gayza*, falling into the Ocean.

Towns of most observation, 1. *S. Martha*, situate on the Shores of the Ocean, in the Latitude of ten degrees and 30 minutes; neighboured by a safe and convenient Haven, defended from the Winds by an high Mountain near unto it, and honoured with an Episcopal See. Small, and ill-built when it was at the best; nor well recovered of the Spoil it suffered by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1595. and by Sir *Anthony Shirly*, the next year after. 2. *Tenariffe*, on the Banks of the *Magdalen*, 40 Leagues from *S. Martha*. 3. *Tanalameque*, by the *Spaniards* called *Villas de las Palmas*, 20 Leagues to the South of *Tenariffe*. 4. *Cividad de los Reyes*, or the City of the Kings, situate in the Vale of *Upar* on the Banks of a deep and violent River, called *Guatapori*, which not far off falleth into the *Cæsar*: ill neighboured by the Inhabitants of the Vale of *Tairona*, not hitherto reduced under the command of the Kings of *Spain*. 5. *Ramada*, by the *Spaniards* called *New Salamanca*, in the same Valley of *Upar*; as liberally furnished with Veins of Brass, as it is with Stones. 6. *Ocanna*, on the Western Reach of the River *Cæsar*, equally distant from its Confluence with *Aymas*, and its fall into *Magdalen*.

5. *RIO DE LA HACHA* is the name of a little Province lying on the North-east of *S. Martha*, environed on two sides with the main Ocean, and on the third (which is that of the East) with a large and spacious arm of the Sea called *Golfo de Venezuela*, the extremities here of North-west, called *Cabo la Vela*; on the North-east, *Cabo di Coqui boccoa*.

It took this name from the Town and River of *La Hacha*, a small Town, consisting of no more then an hundred Houses, but big enough to give name to so small a Province; built on a little Hill about a mile from the Sea: the Haven inconvenient and exposed to the Northern Winds, but the Soil about very rich, fruitful of all such Plants as are brought from *Spain*, well stored with Veins of Gold, excellent Salt-wiches, and some Gems of great worth and virtue. Distant eight Leagues from *New Salamanca*, and 18 Leagues from the *Cape la Vela*: surprized and sacked by Sir *Francis Drake* Anno 1595. 2. *Rancheria*, six Leagues on the East of *De la Hacha*, inhabited for the most part by such as get their living by Pearl-fishing. 3. *Topia*, five Leagues from *La Hacha*, and almost as much from the Sea: the Fields whereof lying betwixt the Town and *New Salamanca* were terribly wasted by the *English* in the year aforesaid, because the Governour of *New Salamanca*, with whom they had contracted for 4000 Ducats not to burn that Town, would not stand to his Bargain.

These Countries, discovered by *Columbus*, and by him called *Terra Firma*, as before was said, were afterwards brought under the power of *Spain*, by two several men, employed in the subduing of their several parts, *Anno* 1508. To *Didaco Niquesa* was allotted the Government and Conquest of those parts hereof which lie on the West of the Bay of the *Uraba*, containing the Prefectures of *Darien* and *Panama*, by the name of *Castella del Oro*; And to *Alfonso Oieda*, all that lay on the East of that Gulf, by the name of *Nova Andaluzia*. But these two finished not the work, though they first began it: *Encisus* discovering farther on the River of *Darien* then *Niquesa* had done before him; and *Balboa* finding out the way to the South-Sea, where *Panama* and the best of their Trading lieth, which neither of the other had thought upon. Both afterwards joyned into one Province, the Prefectures of *S. Martha*, and *Rio de la Hacha* (when conquered and subdued by the *Spaniard*) being added to it. One of their last Kings which held out against the *Spaniards* was called *Abibeia*, who had his Palace on the top of a Tree, (as most of his Subjects had their Houses;) from which when *Francisco de Vasquez*, a *Spanish* Captain could by no other Rhetorick win him to descend, he laid his Axe to the Root, and began to fell it: which seen, the poor Prince was fain to come down, and compound both for his Life and Palace at the will of his Enemies.

OF

OF NOVA GRANADA.

NOVA GRANADA, or the New Realm of *Granada*, is bounded on the North with *Castella Aurea*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with *Venezuela*. The Countries lying on the South, are not yet discovered, shut up with vast Hills and impassable Mountains, except only in those parts which lie near the Sea, where the way lieth open to *Peru*. Thus called by *Gonsalvo Ximinez*, the first Discoverer; who, being a Native of *Granada* in *Spain*, gave this name unto it.

It is in length 130 Leagues, and as much in breadth; reckoning *Popayana* for a part of it, though by some made a distinct Government. So that we may divide the whole into these two parts, 1. *Granada* specially so called, lying on the West, and 2. *Popayana* lying towards *Mare del Zur*.

1. *GRANADA* specially so called hath an Air for the most part well tempered betwixt heat and cold; with little difference (if any) betwixt Summer and Winter, and not much in the length and shortness of days. The Country is full of Woods, but of great fertility, well stored with Corn and Pasturage, many Herds of Cattel, some Veins of Gold and other Metals, and in that part hereof which is called *Tunia*, great plenty of Emeralds: and amongst their Woods, that called *Guaiacum*, Medicinable for the *French* Disease, grows in great abundance. The People are tall and strong of Body, not very industrious, the greatest part of their time being spent in Songs and Dances. The Women of a White and more clear Complexion then any of their Neighbours, and more handsomely habited, apparelled in black or parti-coloured Mantles girt about their middles; their Hair tied up, and covered most an end with Chaplets intermixt with Flowers, and artificially composed.

Rivers of note I find not any, but those of S. *Martha* and S. *Magdalen*, described before: nor any distinction of it into several Provinces, but by the names of *Tunia*, *Bagota*, *Panches*, *Colymæ*, and *Musi*, by which the Savages were distinguished when first known to the *Spaniards*; with reference to which the Principal of their Towns are by some described.

Towns then of greatest note, 1. *S. Foy de Bagota*, but commonly *S. Foy*, the Metropolis of this new Realm, the See of an Archbishop, and the Seat of the Governour. Built by *Gonsalvo Ximinez de Quesada*, at the foot of the Mountains, not far from the Lake of *Guatavita*, on the banks of which they used to sacrifice to their Idols. The Town inhabited by 600 Families of *Spaniards*, besides those of the Natives; and situate in the fourth degree of Northern Latitude. 2. *S. Michael*, 12 Leagues on the North of *S. Foy*, a well traded Market. 3. *Toycama*, in the Territory of the *Panches*, a barbarous and man-eating people, till reclaimed by the *Spaniards*; and Masters of the richest part of all the Country. The Town is about 15 Leagues from *S. Foy*, toward the North-east; and seated on the banks of *Pati*, a little River, which not far off is swallowed up in the body of *Magdalen*. 4. *Tudela* in the Country of the *Musi* and *Colymæ*, two warlike Nations; situate on the banks of the River *Zarbi*, and made a Colony of the *Spaniards* at their first coming hither; but deserted by them not long after, for fear of the Savages, though the want of Provisions was pretended. 5. *Trinidado*, on the same River, but somewhat lower, and more remote from the Savages, by them notwithstanding much annoyed: the Fields thereof full of Veins of Crystal, Emeralds, Adamants, and Chalcedonians. 6. *La Palma*, built by the *Spaniards* in the same Territory of the *Musi* and *Colymæ*, Anno 1572. 7. *Tunia*, so called according to the name of the Tribe or Province in which it is situate; built on the top of an high Hill, that it might serve for a Retreat and Fortress against the Savages; now a well-traded Empory, and very wealthy, the Inhabitants being able to impress 280 Horse for present service. 8. *Pampelona*, 60 Leagues from *S. Foy* toward the North-east, rich in Mines of Gold, and Herds of Cattel. 9. *Merida*, on the North of *Pompiana*, the fartherest Town of all this Province on the North-east towards *Venezuela*: as 10. *S. John de los Planos*, or *S. John* upon the Plains, is in the South-east, 50 Leagues from *S. Foy*, and seated in a corner full of Veins of Gold.

2. *POPAYANA* lieth on the West of *New Granada* strictly and specially so called; from which parted by the River *Martha*, which hath its original in this Country: on the North bounded with *Nova Andaluzia*, or *Carthagena*; and with *Mare del Zur* upon the West. Extended in length from North to South 130 Leagues at the least; and from the River to the Sea, betwixt 30 and 40.

The Country, over-cloy'd with Rain, breeds but little Maize, less Wheat, and almost no Cattel; though in some places richer then it is in others. The People anciently Man-eaters, and as rude as any; now more industrious and affable then the other *Americans*, especially about *Popayan*, where the Soil is also better tempered then in other places. The Rivers of most note, beside that of *S. Martha*, which we have spoken of already, and some lesser streams which fall into it, are 1. *Rio de S. Juan*. 2. *Rio de Cedros*. 3. *Rio de S. Jago*; all falling into *Mare del Zur*.

Cities and Towns of greatest note, 1. *Popayan*, called by the name of the King hereof, when first known to the *Spaniards*; situate on a nameless, but pleasant, River, in the midst of a Plain, of great Wealth, and healthy Air, in two Degrees and 30 Minutes of Northern Latitude; the ordinary Residence of the Governour, and the See of a Bishop. The Building fair unto the Eye, but slight; excepting the Cathedral, and a Monastery of the Friers called *De Mercede*, which are strong and lasting. 2. *Antiochia*, (or *Sancta Fides de Antiochia*) on the borders of *Nova Andaluzia*, 100 Leagues distant from *Popayan*. Seated upon a little River which falls into the *Martha*, from which twelve Leagues distant. 3. *Caramanta*, on the *Martha* it self. 4. *Pasia*, in a pleasant Valley, on the banks of a small River, but of excellent Water. 5. S. *Anne*,

in the *Cantred* of *Anzerman*, by which name it is some times called: built on a little Hill betwixt two sweet Rivers, and compassed round about with a Grove of most pleasant Fruits. 6. *S. Jago de Arma*, the chief Town of the *Cantred* of *Arma*; situate in a Territory very rich in Gold, but otherwise unprovided of all manner of necessaries; fifty Leagues to the North-east of *Popayan*. 7. *Carthage*, in the Province of *Quimbaia*, 22 Leagues from S. *Jago de Arma*; seated in a Plain betwixt two Torrents, seven Leagues from the River of S. *Martha*. 8. *Cali*, a League from that River, but on the Banks of another, in the Latitude of four degrees: neighboured by a vast and mighty Mountain, at whose foot it standeth; there built by *Sebastian de Betalcazar*, the first Discoverer of this Country. 9. *Bonaventure*, on a Bay so called in the Southern Ocean; a small Town, but of great use for the ready conveyance of the Commodities of *New Spain* unto *Popayan*, and to other Towns of this Province. 10. *Timana*, 80 Leagues from *Popayan* towards the East, at the foot of that vast ridge of Mountains called the *Andes*; which hereabouts taking their beginning, extend as far Southwards as to the Streights of *Magellan*. 11. S. *Juan de Pasto*, situate in a pleasant Valley, but one degree from the *Æquator*. 12. *Sebastian de la Plata*, so called from its Silver Mines in the South-east confines of the Province. 13. *Almagra*, on the sides of a plain, but barren Mountain. 14. *Madrigal*, by the Natives called *Chapan Chicu*; in a barren Soil, were not Gold a Supplement of all wants, which is there found in some abundance.

To this Province belong also some Islands in the Southern Ocean: that is to say, 1. The Isle of *Palmes*, South of the Cape of *Corientes*, so called from the abundance of Palms which are growing in it. 2. *Gorgona*, opposite to the mouth or Outlet of *Rio de S. Juan*, an Island of three Leagues in compass; the Hills so high, the Valleys so extreamly low, the Sun so little seen amongst them, and the Woods so dark, that some have likened it to Hell. Not much observable, but that it did afford a lurking-place unto *Francis Pizarro* in his attempts upon *Peru*, when repulsed from landing on that Coast. 3. *Del Gallo*, a small Island, not a League in Circuit, on the South of *Gorgona*.

This whole Country, thus divided into two Prefectures, but both subordinate to the Juridical Resort in the City of S. *Foy de Bagota*, is indebted for its first Discovery to two several Persons. *Granada* specially so called was first discovered by *Gonsalvo Ximinez de Quesada*, employed therein by *Ferdinando de Lugo*, Admiral of the *Canary Islands*, Anno 1536. who passing up the River of *Magdalen* without molestation (more then the difficulties of the ways through Fens and Forests) as far as the *Cantred* of *Bagota*, was there encountred by that King, whom he easily vanquished, and wasting all his Territories, carried with him thence great quantity of Gold, Emeralds, and other Treasure. The residue of those Petit Princes, which then governed in their several Tribes, either submitted to him without opposition, or else were vanquished at the first rising. Having discovered and subdued every several Province, and miserably murthered *Sangipa* the last King of *Bagota*, of whom he had made use in subduing the *Panches*, he caused it to be called *the New Realm of Granada*, for the reason formerly laid down: and summing up the Spoils he had gotten in this easie War, he found them to amount to 1800 Emralds, 191294 *Pezoes* of the finest Gold, 35000 of a courser and inferiour Allay. In his return he heard the news of *Sebastian de Betalcazar*'s marching on the other side of the River of S. *Martha*; who having at the same time discovered and subdued the Province of *Popayan*, was beating out his way towards the North-Sea, and from thence to *Spain*. This *Betalcazar*, being by *Francisco Pezarro*, the Conquerour of *Peru*, made Governour of the Town and Province of *Quito*, and having secured all the Country to the very Sea, resolved to open a way homewards through those Regions, which lay betwixt his own Province and *Mare del Noordt*. And this he did resolve the rather, in regard that he had been informed, that a rich Country, full of Gold, was in that Tract possessed by *Popayan* and *Columbaz*, two petit Princes, but yet the greatest in those parts. Encountred in his march by the Royelets of *Patia* and *Pasto*, he soon made them weary, and retire themselves into the Woods and impassable Mountains; and passing slowly on, came at last to *Popayan*. Where, though the Savages entertained him with some frequent Skirmishes, yet they grew quieter by degrees; giving the *Spaniards* leave to possess themselves of their best Towns, and to build others in such places as they thought convenient. But this was after the first Conquest, according to the coming over of succeeding Colonies. The first Conquest being finished *Anno* 1536. when the *New Realm of Granada* was subdued by *Ximinez*.

OF PERU.

PERU is bounded on the East with that vast ridge of Mountains which they call the *Andes*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the North, with *Popayan*, an Appendix of the *New Realm of Granada*; on the South, with *Chile*. So called from the River *Peru*, which being one of the first of note which the *Spaniards* met with in this Country, occasioned them to give that name to the whole.

It is in length from North to South 700 leagues, but the breadth not equal. In some places 100 Leagues broad, in others 60, in the rest but 40; more or less, according to the windings of the Seas and Mountains. Divided commonly into three parts, all of so different a nature from one another, as if they were far distant both in Site and Soil. These parts are, the Plains, the Hill-Countries, and the *Andes*: the Plains extend on the Sea-shore, in all places level without Hills; the *Andes*, a continual ridge of Mountains without any Valleys; the *Sierra*, or Hill-Countries, composed of both. Each part stretcheth out from North to South, the whole length of the Country: the Plains from the Sea-shore to the Hill Countries, for the most part ten Leagues broad, in some places more; the Hill-Countries 20 Leagues in breadth, where

where narroweſt, and as much the *Andes*. In the Plains it never raineth, on the *Andes* continually in a manner; in the Hill Countries it raineth from *September* to *April*, being after that fair Weather. In the Hill-Country the Summer beginneth in *April*, and endeth in *September*; in the Plains their Summer beginneth in *October*, and endeth in *April*. So that a man may travel from Summer to Winter in one day; be frozen in the morning at his ſetting forth, and ſcorched with heat before he come to his journeys end. Some other differences there are; as that the *Andes* are covered with Woods and Foreſts, whereas the Hill-Countries are bare and naked; the Plains, where there are ſtore of Rivers, and the benefit of the Sea beſides, ſandy and dry, and in moſt places deſtitute both of Fruits and Corn: in ſome parts of the Hill-Countries, where there are no Rivers, and Rain but ſeldom, plenty of Roots, Maize, Fruits, and all other neceſſaries. In the Plains there never bloweth any but the Southerly Wind, though it bring no Rain with it; and in the Hills, Winds from every Coaſt, and of every nature; ſome bringing Rain, ſome Snow, ſome claps of Thunder, and others fair Weather at the heels of them. Inſomuch that it is obſerved, that ſuch of the Inhabitants of the Plains as go up to the *Sierra*, or Mountains, do find ſuch pains in the Head and Stomach, as freſh-water Souldiers when firſt Sea-ſick.

Not to purſue theſe differences any farther in the ſeveral parts, we will look upon the whole in groſs; which we ſhall find but meanly furniſhed for the bigneſs with thoſe Commodities which ſo large a Country might afford: inſomuch as many of the people live moſt on Roots, here being little Wheat, and not ſuch quantities of Maize (the ordinary Bread-grain of the *Americans*) as to ſerve their multitude. Nor find I that the Cattel of *Europe* have been either brought hither in any great numbers, or are grown to any great increaſe. Inſtead of which they have in their Woods and Paſtures infinite numbers of Beaſts ſomewhat like wild Goats (which they call *Vicagues*) and great ſtore of a kind of Sheep, by them called *Pacos*, profitable both for Fleece and Burthen; as big as a ſmall breed of Horſes, but in taſte as pleaſing as our Mutton, and no leſs nouriſhing, A Creature ſo well acquainted with its own abilities, that when he findeth himſelf over-loaded, no blows or violence ſhall make him move a foot forwards, till his load be leſſened; and of ſo cheap a Diet, that he is content with very little, and ſometimes paſſeth three whole days without any water. The Camels of theſe parts are not much unlike them.

This, as it is by ſome accounted for a Creature proper to this Country only, (though in that miſtaken) ſo may it paſs amongſt the Rarities hereof: many of which it hath both in Beaſts and Plants, and in inanimate Bodies alſo. Amongſt their Plants they have a Fig-tree, the North-part whereof, looking towards the Mountains bringeth forth its Fruits in the Summer only; the Southern part, looking to the Sea, fruitful only in Winter. Some as deſervedly do count the *Coca* for a Wonder, the Leaves whereof being dried, and formed into Lozenges, (or little Pellets) are exceeding uſeful in a Journey. For melting in the mouth, they ſatisfie both hunger and thirſt, and preſerve a man in ſtrength, and his Spirits in vigour; and generally are eſteemed of ſuch Soverain uſe, that it is thought that 100000 Baskets full of the leaves of this Tree are ſold yearly at the Mines of *Potoſi* only, each of which at the Markets of *Cuſco* would yield 12 pence or 18 pence a piece. Another Plant they tell us of, but I find no name for it, which if put into the hands of a ſick perſon, will inſtantly diſcover whether he be like to live or die. For if on the preſſing it in his hand he look merry and chearful, it is an aſſured ſign of his Recovery: as on the other ſide, of Death, if ſad and troubled. Amongſt their Beaſts, beſides thoſe ſpoken of before, they reckon that which they call the *Huanacu*: of which it is obſerved that the Males ſtand Sentinel on the Mountains, while the Females are feeding in the Valleys; and if they ſee any men coming towards them, they ſet out their throats, to give their Females notice of ſome danger near; whom, when they come up to them, they put in the front of the Retreat, interpoſing their own bodies betwixt them and their Enemy. Nor want they Rarities of Nature even in things inanimate: here being ſaid to be a round Lake near the Mines of *Potoſi*, whoſe water is ſo hot, though the Country it ſelf be exceeding cold, that they who bathe themſelves are not able to endure the heats thereof, if they go but a little from the Banks; there being in the midſt thereof a boiling of above twenty foot ſquare. A Lake which never doth decreaſe, though they have drawn a great Stream from it to ſerve their Metal-Mills.

More profitable, though leſs rare, are thoſe Metals which thoſe Mills are made for; and not leſs profitable, one of thoſe Vulgar Plants, I mean Tobacco, growing more abundantly here then in other Countries of *America*: for which cauſe, and the reſemblance which it hath to Henbane, in form and quality, it is called the *Henbane* of *Peru* by *Gerrard*, and ſome other of our Modern Herbaliſts. A Plant; which (though in ſome reſpect, being moderately taken, it may be ſerviceable for Phyſick, yet) beſides the conſumption of the purſe, & impairing of our inwardparts, the immoderate, vain and phantaſtical abuſe of this ſtinking Weed, corrupteth the natural ſweetneſs of the breath, ſtupifieth the Brain; and indeed is ſo prejudicial to the general eſteem of our Country-men, that one ſaith of them, *Anglorum corpora, qui hnic plantæ tantopere indulgent, in Barbarorum naturam degenerasſe videntur.* The two chief Virtues aſcribed unto it (pardon me I beſeech you this ſhort Digreſſion) are, that it voideth Rheume, and is found to be a ſoverain Antidote againſt *Lues Venerea*, that loathſome Diſeaſe of the *French* Pox. For this laſt like enough it is that ſo unclean a Diſeaſe may be helped with ſuch an unſavory Medicine. But for the firſt, it may perhaps conſiſt more in Opinion then truth or reality; the Rheume, which it is ſaid to void, being no more then what it breedeth at the preſent. We may as well conclude, that Bottled Ale is good for the breaking of Wind, (which effect we find commonly to follow on the drinking of it) though indeed it be only the ſame Wind which it ſelf conveyed into the Stomach. But Tobacco is by few now taken as Medicinal; it is of late times grown a good fellow, and fallen from a Phyſician to a Complement. An Humour which had never ſpread ſo far amongſt us, if the ſame means of prevention had been uſed by the Chriſtian Magiſtrates, as was by *Morat Baſſa* among the *Turks*; who commanded a Pipe to be thruſt through the noſe of a *Turk* whom he found taking Tobacco, and him to be carried in deriſion all about *Conſtantinople*. It is obſerved that the taking of Tobacco was firſt brought into *England* by the Mariners of Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1585. And that it hapned not unfitly in the way of an Antidote to that immoderate uſe of Drinking, which our *Low-Country* Souldiers had brought out of the *Netherlands* much about that time, *An.* 1582. Before which time, the *Engliſh* of all Northern people were deemed to be moſt free from that Swiniſh Vice, wherein it is to be feared that they have much out-gone their Teachers, the *Dutch*. Certain it is, that it is taken ſo exceſſively by both theſe Nations, that I may juſtly ſay with a learned *Fleming*, *Herbæ ejus, non dicam uſus, ſed abuſus, non modo in* Anglia, *ſed in* Belgio, *& alibi, inſanum in modum jam adolevit.*

But the greateſt Riches of this Country is moſt out of ſight,

ſight, hid in the Bowels of the Earth, but found in thoſe never-decaying Mines of Gold and Silver, more eminently abounding in this one Province then in all *America*. For inſtance whereof we may take the Silver Mines of *Potoſi*, diſcovered in the year 1545, the fifth of which, payable into the King's Exchequer, amounted in forty years to 111 millions of *Pezoes*, every *Pezo* being valued at ſix ſhillings and ſix pence; and yet a third part of the whole was diſcharged of that payment. By this one we may gueſs ſomewhat of the reſt, as by the proportion of one member the Dimenſions of the whole Body may be probably aimed at: unleſs the riches of theſe Mines be beyond conjecture; of which it is affirmed by ſome knowing men, that they yield in many places more Gold then Earth. Upon which ground it is conceived by *Arius Montanus*, and ſome other very learned men, that this *Peru* is that Land of *Ophir* to which *Solomon*'s Navy went for Gold; induced thereunto by that Text of the *Chronicles*, *lib. 2. cap. 3. ver. 6. That the Gold was the Gold of Parvaim.* A fancy not of ſo ſandy a Foundation as many others of that kind, if *Peru* had been the old name of this Country, and not newly given it by the *Spaniards*. By means whereof, not only *Spain*, but all *Europe* alſo is better furniſhed with Gold and Silver then ever formerly. For in the firſt Ages of the World our Anceſtours, the *Britains* (I muſt digreſs here once again) had no other money then Iron-rings and Braſs-rings, which they uſed for Inſtruments of Exchange; and in the *Roman* Provinces, we read that the moſt uſual materials of their Coin was moſt times Braſs, and ſometimes Leather. *Corium formâ publicâ percuſſum*, as it is in *Seneca*. Of which laſt ſort we find that *Frederick* the Emperour made uſe at the Siege of *Millain*, and the *Engliſh* in the time of the Barons Wars. And why not ſo? conſidering that no longer ſince then in the year 1574, the *Hollanders* being then reduced to ſome Extremities made mony of Paſte-board. But this happeneth only in caſes of Neceſſity, the two Metals of Gold and Silver having for many hundred years (though not in ſuch abundance as in later times) been the chief Inſtruments of Exchange and Bartery betwixt man and man, and queſtionleſs will ſo continue to the end of the World. I know Sir *Thomas More* in the ſecond Book of his *Utopia*, preferreth Iron before Gold, becauſe more neceſſary for all uſes; *Ut ſine quo non magis quàm ſine igne atque aqua vivere Mortales queant:* and that he giveth us there a Plot to bring Gold and Silver into contempt; telling us how the *Utopians* uſe to employ thoſe Metals in making Chamber-pots and Veſſels of more unclean neceſſities, eating and drinking for the moſt part in Glaſs or Earth. He telleth us alſo how they make Chains and Fetters of Gold to hold in their rebellious Slaves and Malefactors; how they puniſh infamous Perſons by putting Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, Jewels of Gold in their Ears, and Chains of Gold about their Necks: how they adorn their little Children with precious Jewels, which Gayeties, when they come to Age, and ſee them worn by none but ſuch little Children, they uſe to caſt away of their own accord; as with us our elder Boys leave off, without conſtraint, their Babies, Cob-nuts, and other *Crepundia*. He farther telleth us, how the Ambaſſadours of the *Anemolii*, (a confederate State of the *Utopians*) coming amongſt them richly and gloriouſly attired, were took for Slaves, by reaſon of their Golden Chains, and the meaneſt of their Followers thought to be the Ambaſſadours: how the elder Boys derided the Strangers for wearing Jewels, as if they had been Children ſtill: and how the people laught at their Chains of Gold, as being too weak to ſhackle ſuch ſturdy Fellows. Now though it pleaſed that wiſe State to have any Gold or Silver at all amongſt them, it was not (as he telleth us) out of any eſteem which themſelves had of it; but therewith to provide themſelves of Forein Aids, and pay their Armies, when the neceſſities of their Affairs or other reaſon of State did require the ſame. How this Device would ſort with the humours of thoſe People whom *Lucian* anciently did Fable, and ſome of later times more really do fanſie, to have their dwelling in the Moon, I am not able to ſay, as having hitherto had no Commerce nor correſpondence with the Inhabitants thereof: though poſſibly I may endeavour it in the end of this Book, and find it to ſort well enough with their Condition. Certain I am, this ſublunary World of ours will never brook it. And ſo I leave it, and look back again on the Mines of *Peru*: the extraordinary plenty of Gold and Silver, which thoſe and the reſt of the *New World* have furniſhed the Old World withal, being conceived by many knowing and judicious men to be the cauſe of the dearneſs of all Commodities at the preſent times, compared unto the cheapneſs of the times foregoing. For where much is, there greater prices will be given then in other places. And yet there want not ſome that add alſo other cauſes of the high prices of our days, *viz.* Monopolies, Combinations of Merchants and Crafts-men, Tranſportation of Grain, pleaſure of great Perſonages, the exceſs of private men, and the like: but theſe laſt I rather take to be Con-cauſes, the firſt being indeed the principal. For (as that excellent Sir *Henry Savil* hath it in the end of his Notes on *Tacitus*) the exceſſive abundance of τὰ νόμῳ μόνον ὄντα, things which conſiſt meerly on the Conſtitution of men, draweth neceſſarily τὰ φύσει ὄντα, thoſe things which Nature requireth, to an higher Rate in the Market. *Captâ ab* Auguſto Alexandriâ, (ſaith *Oroſius*) Roma *in tantum opibus ejus crevit, ut dupla majora quàm antehac rerum venalium pretia ſtatuerentur.* As for that Queſtion, whether of the two Kingdoms be happier, that which ſupplieth it ſelf with money by Traffick and the works of Art, or that which is ſupplied by Mines growing as the gift of Nature; I find it by this Tale in part reſolved. Two Merchants, departing from *Spain* to get Gold, touched upon part of *Barbary*, where the one buyeth *Moors* to dig and delve with, the other fraughteth his Veſſel with Sheep; and being come to the *Indies*, the one finding Mines ſet his Slaves to work; and the other happening in graſſie Ground, put his Sheep to grazing. The Slaves, grown cold and hungry, call for Food and Cloathing; which the Sheep-maſter by the increaſe of his ſtock had in great abundance: ſo that what the one got in Gold with toil, charges, and hazard both of life and health, he gladly gave unto the other in Exchange or Bartery, for the continual ſupply of Victuals, Clothes, and other Neceſſaries for himſelf and his Servants. In the end the Mines being exhauſted, and all the mony thence ariſing exchanged with the Shepherd for ſuch Neceſſaries as his Wants required; home comes the Shepherd in great Triumph, with abundance of Wealth, his Companion bringing nothing with him but the Tale of his Travels. But I dare not take upon me to determine this point. Only I add, that the *Engliſh* and *Hollanders*, by the benefit of their Manufactures and continual Traffick, did in concluſion weary the late King of *Spain*, King *Philip* the ſecond, and out-vied him (as it were) in Wealth and Treaſure; notwithſtanding his many Mines of Gold and Silver in *Barbary*, *India*, *Mexicana*, *Guinea*, ſome in *Spain* and *Italy*, and theſe of *Peruana* which now we handle, and which have given occaſion unto this Diſcourſe, or Digreſſion rather.

It is now time to take a view of the People alſo, affirmed to be (for the moſt part) of great ſimplicity; yet ſome of them (thoſe ſpecially which lie near the *Æquator*)

tor) to be great diſſemblers, and never to diſcover their Conceptions freely. Ignorant of Letters, but of good courage in Wars, well skilled in managing ſuch Weapons as they had been uſed to, and fearleſs of Death: the rather prompted to this laſt by an old opinion held amongſt them, that in the other world they ſhall eat, and drink, and make love to Women. And therefore commonly at the Funeral of any great Perſon who was attended on in his life, they uſe to kill and bury with him one or more of his Servants, to wait upon him after death. In the manner of their living much like the *Jews*; but not in Habit: conform therein to the other Savages, but that thoſe cover their upper parts with ſome decent Garment, and leave the other members bare. But this is only near the *Æquator*; both Sexes elſewhere wearing Mantles to their very Heels. Habited in one faſhion over all the Country, except the dreſſing of their Heads, wherein ſcarce any one doth agree with another, but hath his faſhion to himſelf. The Women leſs eſteemed here then in other places, treated as Slaves, and ſometimes cruelly beaten upon ſlight occaſions: the Men (as S. *Paul* ſaith of the ancient *Gentiles*) *leaving the natural uſe of the Woman, and burning in their luſt towards one another.* For which, if God delivered them into the hands of the *Spaniards*, they received that *recompence which was meet.*

Rivers of moſt note, 1. *S. Jago*, on the borders towards *Popayana*; a River of a violent courſe, and ſo great a depth, that it is 180 Fathoms deep at the influx of it. 2. *Tombez*, opening into a fair and capacious Bay, over againſt the Iſle of *Puna*, on the farther ſide of the *Æquator*; an Iſland of 12 Leagues in compaſs, and exceeding fruitful. 3. *Guagaquil*, of a longer courſe then any of the other two, and falling into *Mare del Zur* on the South of *Tombez*, over againſt the Iſle of *Lobos*. No Iſland after this of note upon all this Coaſt. If any come in our way which runneth towards the Eaſt, we ſhall meet with them in the view of the ſeveral Provinces; and ſo we ſhall with the Hills or Mountains which are moſt conſiderable; the *Andes* having been already touched on. Take we now notice of the great Lake of *Titicaca*, in which twelve Rivers are reported to loſe themſelves; in compaſs 80 Leagues, and uſually Navigable with Ships and Barks. The Waters of it not ſo ſalt as thoſe of the Sea, but ſo thick that no body can drink them; yet on the banks of it many Habitations, as good as any in *Peru*. By a fair Water-courſe or River it paſſeth into a leſs Lake, which they call *Aulaga*; and thence moſt probably findeth a way into the Sea, or elſe is ſwallowed in the Bowels of that thirſty Earth: but the firſt more likely.

It is divided commonly into three Juridical Reſorts; *viz.* of 1. *Quito.* 2. *Lima:* and 3. *Charcos*; each having under it many ſeveral and ſubordinate Provinces, too many and of too ſmall note to be here conſidered. We will therefore look upon the chief, and of greateſt reckoning: 1. *Quito.* 2. *Los Quixos.* 3. *Lima.* 4. *Cuſco.* 5. *Charcos:* and 6. *Collao*; three on the Sea, and the other three in the mid-lands; to which the Iſlands of it ſhall be joyned in the cloſe of all.

1. QUITO is bounded on the North with *Popayana*; on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the South, with the Province of *Lima*; and on the Eaſt, with that of *Los Quixos*. So named from *Quito* the chief Town and Province of the firſt Diviſion.

The Soil is as fertile and as fit for the Fruits of *Europe* as any other in *Peru*: well ſtored with Cattel, eſpecially the *Paco*'s or *Peruvian* Sheep; and plentifully furniſhed both with Fiſh and Fowl. In many parts great ſtore of Nitre, of which they make moſt approved good Gunpowder; and in ſome Rivers, eſpecially that of *S. Barbary*, many veins of Gold. The People generally induſtrious, eſpecially in making of Cloth of Cotton, equal almoſt to Silks for fineneſs: of Conſtitution ſtrong and healthy, but given to lying, drinking, and ſuch other Vices; with which they are ſo much in love; that though they are conceived to be apt of Learning, yet not without great difficulty brought to the Chriſtian Faith, nor willingly reclaimed from their ancient Barbariſm. Extreamly puniſhed with the Pox, an hereditary Diſeaſe amongſt them; the very Girls and untouched Virgins ſo infected with it, that neither Tobacco, *Guaiacum*, nor *Sarſaparilla*, all which this Country doth afford in a great abundance, is able to preſerve them from it.

Towns of moſt obſervation in it, 1. *Carangues*, a large and ſumptuous Palace of the ancient Kings; ſo named, becauſe ſituate in the Territory of the *Carangues*, a barbarous, bloody, and man-eating People; ſubdued by *Guayanacapa*, one of the mightieſt of the Kings of *Peru*; from whom revolting, and withal killing many of his Miniſters and Garriſon Souldiers, they were upon a ſecond Conqueſt brought to the banks of a great Lake, into which 20000 of them being killed, were thrown. The Lake from thenceforth called *Taguarcocha*, or the lake of blood. 2. *Otavallu*, another Palace of the Kings, but far inferiour to the other; yet giving name unto the *Cantred* in which it ſtandeth. 3. *Quito*, the chief of this Reſort, and once the Regal Seat of its proper Kings, (till made ſubject by *Guayanacapa* before mentioned) the Ruines of whoſe Palace are now remaining. By the *Spaniards* it is called *S. Franciſco*: built on the declivity of an Hill, not above 30 minutes from the *Æquinoctial*; well fortified, and as well furniſhed with Ammunition: inhabited by about 500 *Spaniards*, beſides the Natives. The Streets thereof ſtraight and broad; the Buildings decent: the principal of which, the Cathedral Church, the Courts of Juſtice, and two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciſcan* Friers. The Town and Territory much annoyed by a Flaming Mountain, or *Volcano*; which in the year 1560 caſt out ſuch abundance of Cinders, that, if a Rain had not hapned beyond expectation, had made great ſpoil upon the place. 4. *Tacunga*, fifteen Leagues from *Quito*; and 5. *Rhiobamba* in the Territory of the *Purvaſii*, 40 Leagues from that: each of them honoured with another of thoſe ancient Palaces. 6. *Thomebamba*, neighboured by another of the King's Palaces, but more magnificent then the former; ſituate in the Country of the *Canares*, amongſt whom anciently the Women tilled the Land, and did all without doors, whilſt the Men ſtaid at home and ſpun, and attended Houſewifry. 7. *Cuenca*, 64 Leagues from *Quito*, on another Road, ſituate in a Country full of Gold, Silver, Braſs, Iron, and Veins of Sulphur. 8. *Loxa*, ſixteen Leagues Southward of *Cuenca*, ſituate in the fifth degree of Southern Latitude, and in a ſweet and pleaſant Valley called *Guxibamba*, between two fine Rivers. The Citizens well furniſhed with Horſe and Armour, but not otherwiſe wealthy. 9. *Zamora*, twenty Leagues on on the Eaſt of *Loxa*; and 10. *Jaen*, 35 from that: both ſituate in the Province of *Quaichimayo*, and both ſo called in reference to two Cities of thoſe names in *Spain*. Then on the Sea-coaſts there are, 11. *Portus Vetus*, (*Puerto Veio*, as the *Spaniards* call it) not far from the Sea-ſide, but in ſo ill an Air, that it is not very much frequented. Said to be one of the firſt Towns of this Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who digged up hereabouts the bones of a monſtrous Giant, whoſe Cheek-teeth were four fingers broad. 12. *Mantu*, the Port-Town to *Porto Veio*, from whence the Trade is driven betwixt *Panama* and *Peru*; the Town it ſelf ſituate in a rich Vein of Emeralds. 13. *Guayaquil*, or *S. Jago de Guayaquil*, called alſo *Gulata*; ſeated at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, near the Influx of the River *Guayaquil*: a noted and much frequented

ted Empory. 14. *Caſtro*, a Colony of *Spaniards* planted *Anno* 1568, in that part of this Country which they call *Provincia de los Eſmeraldos*, bordering on *Popayana*. 15. S. *Michael*, by the old Natives called *Piura*, the firſt Colony which the *Spaniards* planted in *Peru*, but otherwiſe of no eſtimation. 16. *Payta*, a ſmall Town, but neighboured by the ſafeſt and moſt frequented Haven of all this Country, as guarded from the Wind by the Cape of S. *Helens* on the North, and *Panta Piurina* on the South; two eminent Promontories. The Town burnt, *Anno* 1587. by Captain *Cavendiſh*; who at the ſame time alſo pillaged the Iſle of *Puna*, the moſt noted Iſland of this Tract, ſituate in the Bay of *Tombez*, as was ſaid before. Fruitful of all things neceſſary to the life of man; Parots for pleaſure, *Sarſaparilla* for his health. The people in preceding times ſo ſtout and warlike, that they maintained a long War with thoſe of *Tombez*, till in the end compoſed by the mediation of the King of *Peru*, to whom the King hereof (for a King it had) became an Homager, as ſince their embracing of the Goſpel, to the Kings of *Spain*.

2. *LOS QUIXOS* lieth on the Eaſt of *Quito* and the Weſt of *El Dorado*, (one of the *Cantreds* of *Guiana*, ſo called from its abundance of Gold:) little different in the nature of the Soil and People from the Province of *Quito*; but that this is ſomewhat the more barren, and leſs ſtored with thoſe rich Metals which the *Spaniards* come for. The People have alſo a diſtinct Tongue of their own, though they both underſtand and ſpeak the *Peruvian* Language.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Baeza*, built in the year 1559. (which was within two years of the firſt Diſcovery of this Region) by *Giles Ramirez de Avila*; 18 Leagues from *Quito* towards the Eaſt: now the Seat of the Governour. 2. *Archidona*, 20 Leagues on the South-eaſt of *Baeza*. 3. *Avila*, on the North of *Archidona*; ſo called with reference to *Ramirez de Avila* before-mentioned, or to a Town of that name in *Spain*. 4. *Sevilla del Oro*, a Colony of *Spaniards*, as the others are.

On the Eaſt of this Province lieth the *Cantred* of *Canelam*, inhabited by a blockiſh and ignorant people, and deſtitute of all things neceſſary for the comforts of Life. Moſt mercileſly tormented, and caſt to Dogs to be devoured, by *Pizarro*, becauſe they could not ſhew him the readieſt way to ſome richer Country then their own; this being the moſt barren Region of that part of *Peru* which they call *La Sierra*, or the Hill-Countries. More Eaſtward yet, in that part which they call the *Andes*, lie the *Cantreds* of the *Bracemori*, commonly called *Judan de Salinis*, by the name of the firſt Diſcoverer of it. A Country not inferiour unto many for the quantity of Gold; ſuperiour to any for the pureneſs of it. Chief Towns of which, 1. *Valladolid*. 2. *Loiola*, by the Natives called *Cumbinama*. 3. S. *Jago de las Montanas*, (or S. *James* of the Mountains:) all *Spaniſh* Colonies; and all of the foundation of *John de Salinis à Loiola*, once the Pro-Prefect of the Province, by whom firſt throughly ſubdued to the Crown of *Spain*.

3. *LIMA*, called alſo *LOS REYES*, is bounded on the North with *Quito*; on the South, with *Charcas*, on the Weſt, with *Mare del Zur*; on the Eaſt, with *Colloa* and the Province of *Cuſco*. So named from *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*, the chief City of it. Extended from the ſixth to the ſixteenth Degree of Southern Latitude: or, meaſuring it from the Promontory *del Aguja* North, to *Arequipa* on the South, it reacheth to 250 Leagues. The Soil is of the ſame nature with that of *Quito*, but more diſtributed into Valleys, and better peopled.

Places of moſt obſervation, 1. *Miraflores*, in the Valley of *Zanu*, 110 Leagues on the North of *Lima*, and about 5 Leagues diſtant from the Sea; on which it hath an Haven belonging to it called *Chencepen*. The Town is well ſeated, and inhabited by a wealthy People, made ſuch by the abundance of Sugar-canes in the neighbouring Valley. 2. *Truxillo* in the rich and flouriſhing Valley of *Chimo*, on the Banks of a ſmall, but pleaſant River, and about two Leagues from the Sea, where it hath a large, but unſafe, Haven, which they call *El Azzecife de Trigillo*. The Town it ſelf ſituate in the ſeventh Degree and 30 minutes of Southern Latitude; well built, and rich, one of the principal of *Peru*; inhabited by 1500 *Spaniards*, beſides the Natives, and beautified with four Convents of ſeveral Orders. 3. *La Parilla*, in the Valley of the *Santa*, in which it ſtandeth, and by which it is furniſhed with a ſafe and convenient Road for Shipping: 20 Leagues Southwards of *Truxillo*, and neighboured by rich Mines of Silver, not long ſince diſcovered. 4. *Arnedo*, ſeated amongſt Vineyards in the Valley of *Chancay*, ten Leagues North of *Lima*. 5. *Lima*, by the *Spaniards* called *Ciudad de los Reyes*, or the *City of Kings*, ſituate in the Valley of *Lima*, the moſt fruitful part of all *Peru*, in the Latitude of twelve Degrees and an half. Built with much Art, for all the chief Streets anſwer to the Market-place; ſcarce any private Houſe which hath not Water conveyed into it from the River, environed round about with ſweet Fields, and moſt pleaſant Gardens. The Founder of it *Franciſco Pizarro*, who laid the firſt Stone on *Twelf-day*, (which the *Spaniards* call the *Feaſt of Kings*) whence it had the name, *Anno* 1553. A Town of greater Wealth then bigneſs, the Riches of *Peru* paſſing yearly through it; well Houſed, whether we reſpect the private or publick Edifices: the Cathedral Church made after the model of that of *Sevil*; the Convents of Religious Orders, the Courts of Juſtice, and the Palaces of the Archbiſhop and Vice-Roy, being all fair and goodly Buildings; the Cathedral Church ſo well endowed, that the Revenues of the Archbiſhop do amount yearly to 30000 Ducats, beſides what belongeth to the Canons and other Miniſters. 6. *Callao*, the Haven-town to *Lima*, from which two Leagues diſtant; a Town of 600 Families, for the moſt port Seamen: every Houſe having ſome Cellar in it for the ſtowage of Wine, Tobacco, Cables, Pitch, *&c.* for the uſe of Mariners; beſides thoſe publick Ware-houſes for the ſeveral Commodities which paſs from *Lima* hither, or from hence to *Lima*. Unfortified till the year 1579, when ſacked and ſpoiled of infinite Treaſures by Sir *Francis Drake*; ſince that time ſtrengthened by two Bulwarks and a Wall of Earth, with 30 pieces of Braſs Ordnance planted on the Works. 7. *Pachacama*, in the Valley ſo called, but four Leagues on the South of *Lima*: memorable for a Temple, in which *Pizarro* found above 900000 Ducats of Gold and Silver, not reckoning in thoſe infinite Treaſures which the Souldiers had laid hands on before his coming. 8. *Guarco*, a Colony of 300 *Spaniards*, ſixteen Leagues on the South of *Pachacama*; environed with the beſt Fields for Wheat in all *Peru*. 9. *Valverde* in a Valley of the ſame name, ſo called from the perpetual Greenneſs of it; beſt furniſhed with Vines, and thoſe affording the beſt Wines of all this Country. A large Town, conſiſting of 500 *Spaniards*, beſides Women ond Children, and other Inhabitants of the Country, well Traded, conſidering its diſtance from the Sea, (*Puerto Quemado*, the Haven to it, being ſix Leagues off) and beautified with a fair Church, an Hoſpital, three Frieries, and the handſomeſt Women of theſe parts. Diſtant from *Lima* 35 Leagues. 10. *Caſtro Verreyna*, in the Valley of *Chocolococha*, 60 Leagues from *Lima*, enriched with Mines of the pureſt Silver, digged out of a dry and barren Hill always covered with Snow; and ſtanding in ſo ſharp an Air, that the *Spaniſh* Women will not be delivered

vered in it, but are carryed farther off to be brought to bed. From hence, as I conjecture, comes that vein of Tobacco, which our Good fellows celebrate by the name of the right *Verreinas*. 11. *Arequipa*, in the Valley of *Quilca*, 120 Leagues from *Lima*, a pleasing and delightful Town; which, situate at the foot of a flaming Mountain, (from which in the year 1600 it received much harm) enjoyeth a fresh and temperate Air, and a Soil always flourishing. The Silver of *Plata* and *Potosi* passeth through this Town, and is shipped for *Panama*, at an Haven belonging to it situate at the mouth of the River *Chile*, (upon which *Arequipa* standeth) but distant from the Town about 14 Leagues. 12. *Caxamalca*, more within the Land, but more towards the North, heretofore beautified with a Royal Palace of the Kings of *Peru*; memorable for the imprisonment and murther of *Atabilaba*, or *Athualpa*, the last King of this Countrey, vanquished not far off by *Francisco Pizarro*. 13. *Cachapoyaro*, in the *Cantred* so called; the best inhabited of any one *Cantred* of those parts, supposed to contain in it 20000 of the natural Inhabitants, which pay Duties to the King of *Spain*; and so esteemed for beautiful Women, that from hence the Kings were anciently furnished with their Concubines. 14. *Leon de Guanaco*, (the addition given it, from the Province in which it standeth) a Colony of *Spaniards*, rich, sweet and very pleasantly seated: beautified heretofore with a most magnificent Palace of the Kings; as now with some Religious Houses, a Colledge of *Jesuites*, and the dwellings of many of the Nobility. Many other midland Towns there are, but of no great note, and therefore purposely passed over.

4. *CUSCO* comprehendeth, as the chief, all those several Provinces of the Hill-Countreys, and the *Andes* which lie Southwards of the Province or *Cantred* of *Guanaco*. Blest with a sweet and temperate Air, not overscalded with the Sun, nor dulled with the distempers of the Evening mists: the Countrey full of fresh Rivers, notable good Pasturage, and great Herds of Cattel; well stored with *Coco*, which is gathered here in some abundance, and most excellent Venison.

Places of most repute in it, 1. *Bombon*, in the same Latitude with *Lima*, neighboured by a Lake called *Laguna de Chincha cocha* ten Leagues in compass, begirt about with pleasant Hills, and built upon with many rich and as pleasant Villages: out of which runneth the River *Marannon*, one of the greatest of these parts, supposed by the Inhabitants to end his course in *Mare del Noordt*. 2. *Parcos*, once beautified with a regal Palace, seated on the top of a little Hill, and begert about with craggy Mountains. 3. *Guamanga*, by the *Spaniards* called S. *Juan de la Vittoria*, situate under the 13. degree of Southern Latitude, on the Banks of a fresh and pleasing Stream; well built the Houses being all of Stone, and tiled or slated; three Churches, one of them a Cathedral, besides divers Convents. 4. *Bicar*, supposed to be built in the very Centre of *Peru*; where still remain the Ruines of a sumptuous Palace. 5. *Guancabelica*, a new Town, or but newly raised into esteem, supposed to contain at the present 2000 *Spaniards*, and double that number of the Natives. Increased, since the year 1566, from a beggarly Village to this greatness, by the Mines of Quick-silver then discovered: Mines of such Riches, that the King's part out of them amounteth yearly to above 40000 *Pezoes*, which is about 130000 *l.* of our *English* money. And yet this is not all the benefit he receives from them neither; that Mineral being found so necessary for the purifying and speedy extraction of their Gold, that it is not said without cause by the Chimists, that *Quick-silver gives the matter to* Gold, *and Sulphur the form*. 6. *Cusco*, in the Latitude of 13 Degrees and 30 minutes, about 130 Leagues on the East of *Lima*, and situate in a rugged and unequal Soil, begirt with Mountains, but on both sides of a pleasant and commodious River. Once the Seat-Royal of the *Ingas* or *Peruvian* Kings; who the more to beautifie this City, commanded every one of the Nobility to build here a palace for their continual abode. Still of most credit in this Countrey, both for beauty and bigness, and the multitudes of Inhabitants; here being thought to dwell 3000 *Spaniads*. and 10000 of the Natives, besides Women and Children. The Palace of the King, advanced on a lofty Mountain, was held to be a work of so great magnificence, built of such huge and massie Stones, that the *Spaniards* thought it to have been the work rather of Divels then of men. Now miserably defaced, most of the Stones being tumbled down to build private Houses in the City: some of the Churches raised also by the Ruines of it; and amongst them perhaps both the Bishop's Palace and Cathedral, whose annual Rents are estimated at 20000 Ducats. Yet did not this vast Building yield more luster to the City of *Cusco*, then a spacious Market-place, the Centre in which those Highways did meet together which the *Ingas* had caused to be made cross the Kingdom, both for length and bredth, with most incredible charge and pains for the use of their Subjects. Of which more hereafter. 7. S. *Francisco de la Vittoria*, at the foot of the *Andes*, a *Spanish* Colony, and about 20 Leagues from *Cusco*. 8. *S. Juan del Oro*, in the Valley of *Caravayan*, neighboured with rich Mines of the purest Gold, whence it had the name; a Colony of *Spaniards* also. Beyond the *Andes* lie some Countreys much famed for Wealth; the Discovery whereof hath often been attempted by the *Spaniards*, sometimes with loss, not seldom with some hopes of a better fortune, but hitherto without success.

5. *COLLAO* lieth on the South of those Provinces which we have comprehended under the name of *Cusco*; having on the West the rest of *Lima*: on the South, *Los Charcos*; on the East, those unknown Countreys beyond the *Andes*. Shut up on the East and West by two mountainous Ridges, which keeping in one main body till they come beyond the City of *Cusco*, do there divide themselves, and grow wider and wider, not to meet again.

The Countrey is plain and full of Rivers, well stored with rich Pastures, and those Pastures with great Herds of Cattel, barren of Corn, and not well furnished with Maize; in stead whereof they make their Bread of a Root called *Popa*, dried in the Sun and bruised to powder: of which the *Spaniards* make great gain at the Mines of *Potosi*. Yet notwithstanding this great want, it is thought to be the most populous part of all *Peru*: the soundness and temperature of the Air (which is here very much commended) as much conducing to the populosity of a Countrey, as the richness and plenties of the Soil. The People are also of a clearer and more solld Judgment then the rest of *Peru*; and so well skilled in the observation of the Course of the Moon, that the *Spaniards* at their coming hither, found the Year distinguished into Moneths, Weeks, Days, for each of which they had a proper and significant name. The famous Lake of *Titicaca* is within this Province.

Places of greatest note in it, 1. *Chuquinga*, naturally strong and almost inaccessible, environed either with unfordable Waters, or impassable Mountains; one Causey only leading to it, which for the space of three Leagues is said to be capable but of one at once. 2 *Ayavire*, ennobled with many fair and costly Buildings; especially with Monuments of the dead, which exceed the rest both in cost and number: for that cause by the *Spaniards* called *Las Sepulturas*. The Inhabitants of this

Tract were much wasted by the Civil Wars which the *Spaniards* had among themselves. 3. *Hatuncolla*, the Metropolis or chief Town of this Province, as the name doth signifie: not far from which the famous River *Caravaya*, famous for the abundance of Gold in the Sands thereof, hath its first original. 4. *Chiquita*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the banks of the Lake of *Titicaca*: a Town of so great Trade and Riches, that the Governour hereof is named immediately by the King; his place being estimated at the worth of 50000 Ducats yearly. 5. *Tiaguanaco*, at the mouth or out-let of that Lake; supposed to be the most ancient Burrough of *Peru*: now most remarkable for the Ruines of certain great and stupendious Buildings, some of the Stones whereof are said to be 30 foot long, fifteen foot in breadth, and six in thickness; not to be brought thither without the help of Iron Engines: (which this people had not till of late) but by some strange Arts. 6. *De la Paz*, or *Nuestra Sennora de la Paz*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Pueblo Nuevo*, and by the Natives *Chiquiabo*, according to the name of the *Cantred* in which it standeth, is situate at the foot of a little Mountain, by which defended from the injuries of Wind and Weather, but over-looking a large Plain of great fertility: well watered, and well wooded both for Fruits and Fewel. 7. *Chilane*, 8. *Acos*, 9. *Pomata*, 10 *Cepita*: and some others of as little note.

6. *LOS CHARCAS* on the North is bounded with *Lima* and *Collao*; on the South, with *Chile*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; on the East, with some Countreys not well discovered, interposed betwixt it and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. This is also called by the name of *Plata*, according to the name of the chief City of it.

The Countrey extendeth in lenght from North to South but 300 Leagues, but measuring by the Sea-shores, above 400, Not very rich in Corn or Cattel, though in many places furnished with good Pasture-grounds; but for the inexhaustible Mines of Gold and Silver, not to be equalled in *Peru*. Of these the principal are those of *Porco* and *Potosi*, but these last the chief: out of which comes that Mass of Silver which yieldeth the King so much profit yearly, as before was mentioned. The Mine 200 Fathoms deep, to which they do descend, by Ladders made of raw Hides, 800 steps: some of the Workmen see not the Sun for many moneths together; many fall down with their loads of Silver on their backs, pulling others after them; and many die in the Works for want of Air. For the refineing of this Silver there are 52 Engines, or Silver Mills, upon a River near unto it; 22 more in the Valley of *Tarapia* not far off, besides many which they turn with Horses. The Poet's words never more literally verified then in these deep Mines, where speaking of the Iron Age, he describes it thus:

Nec tantum segetes alimentaque debita dives
Poscebatur humus, sedi tum est in viscera terræ;
Quasque recondiderat Stygiisque *admoverat Umbris,*
Effodiuntur opes, irritamenta malorum.

Which I find thus rendred by *George Sandys*:

Nor with rich Earth s just nourishments content,
For Treasures they her secret Entrails rent.
That powerful evil, which all Power invades,
By her well hid and wrapt in *Stygian* Shades.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Plata*, so called from the rich Mines of Silver found in Mount *Porco* near adjoyning; well emptied by the ancient *Ingas*, but searched into again by *Francisco Pizarro*, who (it is thought) might have raised hence 200000 Ducats of yearly Income, if hopes of greater at *Potosi* had not took him off. The Town is commodiously seated in a fruitful Soil, in the 19. degree of Latitude, and 180 Leagues distant from the City of *Cusco*; honoured with the seat of the Governour and the Courts of Justice, and beautified (besides many Religious Houses) with a fair Cathedral, the See of the best endowed Bishoprick in all *Peru*; his Revenews being estimated at 8000 Ducats of yearly Rents. By the Natives it is called *Chuquisaca*. 2. *Oropesa*, twenty Leagues from *Plata*, built by *Don Francis de Toledo*, when Viceroy here, in the rich and pleasant Valley called *Cochabamba*, Anno 1565. 3. *Potosi*, neighboured by those wealthy Mines already mentioned. Discovered first in the year 1545, before which time this Town was but a sorry Village; now the best peopled and frequented in all the Province: said to be constantly inhabited by four or five thousand *Spaniards*, many more of the Natives: not so few as 30000 Workmen appertaining to it, but lodged in the Villages adjoyning: besides the infinite resort of Merchants in pursuit of profit, and idle Gallants, who come hither for their lusts and pleasures. Situate in the 21. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, in a cold and very barren Soil; yet plentifully furnished with all Commodities both for Necessity and Delight. For as the Money is, so is the Market always. 4. *Misque*, a small Town, but one which furnisheth *Potosi* with good plenty of Wine: as 5. *Lagunilla*, and 6. *Tarixa*, do with Wheat, Maize, Sugar, and choice of Fruits. 7. *Arica*, the most noted Haven of this Countrey, in the Latitude of 19 Degrees and 80 Leagues or thereabouts from the Mines of *Potosi*; the wealth whereof, brought hither on the backs of their Sheep, is here shipped for *Lima*. The truth hereof was experienced by Sir *Fr. Drake*, who seized here on three *Spanish* Ships, in one of which was 57 Bars of Silver, each of them twenty pound weight apiece. Few other Towns, if any, upon all this Coast, which is altogether Rocky, barren, and unfit for Habitation; accordingly but little peopled, or not at all.

Come we now to the *Peruvian* Story, which we shall sum up with as much brevity as we can. The People are generally governed by the chief of their Tribes, as in all Countreys else, where neither the Arms of Foreiners nor the Ambition of some few of the Natives had diminished any thing of those natural Rights. Not subject to any one supreme till these later times; the *Ingas* or Monarchs of *Peru* growing unto their greatness but a little before their fall. Their Territory at the first so small, that it was not above five or six Leagues in compass, situate in that part of the Countrey where the City of *Cusco* now standeth. Opposed at their first Encroachments by the *Cannares*, a valiant Nation, and likely to have had the better, if the *Ingas* had not helped themselves by a piece of Wit; giving it out, that their Family had not only been the Seminary from which Mankind came, but the Authors of that Religion also which was then in use; particularly that the whole World had been destroyed by a Floud, except onely seven, (so far they hit upon the Truth) which seven had hid themselves in a Cave, called *Paticambo*, where having lived in safety till the fury of the Waters had been asswaged, they came abroad at last and re-peopled the Countrey; that *Viracocha*, the Creatour and great God of Nature, had appeared to one of them, and taught him how and with what Rites he would be worshiped, which Rites were afterwards received over all *Peru*; and finally, that the same *Viracocha* had appeared lately to the chief of their Family, assuring him that he would aid him with invisible Forces against all their Enemies. This Tale soon gained belief amongst those *Barbarians*, and that belief drew many to take part with the *Ingas*, by that Aid victorious. This is supposed to have hapned 400 years before the *Spaniards* put an

an end to this flouriſhing Kingdom, which was in the year 1533. Within which time they had brought all this Countrey which we now call *Peru*, and many of the adjoining Provinces, under their Dominion. Their Kings were called *Ingas*, as the *Ægyptians Pharaoh*, the *Tartars Cham*; the word *Inga* ſignifiing an Emperour, as *Capa Ingas* (by which they ſometimes called them) the only Emperours. Much reverenced by their Subjects, and ſo faithfully ſerved, that never any of their Subjects were found guilty of Treaſon: Nor wanted they good Arts whereby to indear their Subjects, and keep them out of leiſure to foment new Factions. The way of indearment, by the fair and ſatisfactory diſtribution of the Spoils gotten in the Wars, whether Lands or Goods; all which they divided into three parts: alloting the firſt unto the ſervice of the Gods; the ſecond, for the maintenance of the King, his Court, and Nobles; the third, to the relief of the common people. A Diſtribution far more equal than that of *Lycurgus*, or the *Lex Agraria* of the *Romans*. But when there was no cauſe of Wars, they kept the People buſied in the works of Magnificence; as building Palaces in every one of the conquered Provinces, which ſerved not only as Forts to aſſure the Conqueſt, but were employed as Store-houſes to lay up Proviſions, diſtributed amongſt the people in times of dearth. But that which was the work as of greater trouble, ſo of chiefeſt uſe, was the Croſs-ways they made over all the Countrey, the one upon the Mountains, and the other on the Plains, extending 500 Leagues in length: a work to be preferred before any both of *Rome* and *Ægypt*. For they were forced to raiſe the ground in many places to the height of the Mountains, and lay the Mountains level with the flatteſt Plains; to cut through ſome Rocks, and underprop others that were ruinous; to make even ſuch ways as were uneaſie, and ſupport the Precipices; and in the Plains to vanquiſh ſo many difficulties as the uncertain foundation of a Sandy Countrey muſt needs carry with it. Kept to theſe Tasks, the people had no leiſure to think of Practices; yet well content to undergo them, in regard they ſaw it tended to the publick benefit. And for the *Caciques*, (ſo they call the Nobility) the *Inga* did not only command them to reſide in *Cuſco*, to be aſſured of their perſons; but cauſed them to ſend their Children to be brought up there, that they might ſerve as Hoſtages for the Fathers Loyalty. They ordered alſo, that all ſuch as repaired to *Cuſco*, the Imperial City, ſhould be attired according to his own Countrey faſhion; ſo to prevent thoſe Leagues and Aſſociations which otherwiſe, without any note or obſervation, might be made amongſt them. Many ſuch Politick Inſtitutions were by them deviſed, which had little of the Barbarous in them; and clearly ſhewed that there were other Nations which had Eyes in their Heads beſides thoſe of *China*. What elſe concerns the Story of them, offereth it ſelf in the following Catalogue of

The Kings of PERU.

1. *Mango-Capac*, deſcended of the chief of the firſt ſeven Families, the firſt who laid the foundation of this puiſſant Monarchy: he ſubdued the *Cannares*, and built the City of *Cuſco*.

2. *Sinchi-Rocha*, eldeſt Son of *Mango*, ſubdued a great part of *Collao*, as far as *Chancara*,

3. *Lonque-Yupanqui*, the Son of *Sinchi*, conquered *Chiquito*, *Ayavire*, the *Canus*, and the Inhabitants about *Titicaca*: the firſt Advancer of the Service of *Viracocha*, from whom he did pretend to have many Viſits.

4. *Mayta-Capac*, the Son of *Yupanqui*, ſubdued all the reſt of *Collao*, the Provinces of *Chuquiapa*, and a great part of the *Charcos*.

5. *Capac-Yupanqui*, or *Yupanqui* II. the Son of *Mayta*, enlarged his Kingdom Weſtward unto *Mare del Zur*.

6. *Rocha* II. or *Ynca-Rocha*, eldeſt Son of *Yupanqui* the ſecond, enlarged his Kingdom towards the North, by the Conqueſt of the great Province of *Antahuyallam*, and many others.

7. *Jahuar-Huacac*, Son of *Rocha* the ſecond, added to his Eſtates (by the Valour of his Brother *Mayta*) all the Southern parts from *Arequipa* to *Tacaman*. Depoſed by the practice of his Son.

8. *Viracocha*, the Son of *Huacac*, having ſetled and enlarged his Empire, raiſed many great and ſtately Works, and amongſt others many *Aquæducts* of great uſe, but charge. For fear of him, *Hancohuala*, King of the *Chuncas*, with many thouſands of his People, forſook their Countrey.

9. *Pachacutec-Ynca*, Son of *Viracocha*, improved his Kingdom by the Conqueſt of many Provinces lying towards the *Andes* and South-ſea; with that of *Caxamalca* Northwards.

10. *Yupanqui* III. or *Ynca-Yupanchi*, Son of *Pachacutec*, ſubdued the *Conches* and *Moxes*, with ſome part of *Chile*.

11. *Yupanqui* IV. or *Tapac Ynca Yupanchi*, Son of *Yupanqui* the third, extended his Dominions as far as *Quito*

12. *Huayna-Capac*, or *Guaynacapac*, Son of *Yupanqui* the fourth, the moſt mighty Monarch of *Peru*, conquered the whole Province of *Quito*; and is ſuppoſed to be the Founder of thoſe two great Roads ſpoken of before.

13. *Huaſcar*, or *Guaſchar-Ynca*, the eldeſt Son of *Guaynacapac*, after a Reign of five years depoſed and ſlain by his Brother.

14. *Atbualpa*, or *Atubaliba*, the third Son of *Guaynacapa*, by the Daughter and Heir of the King of *Quito*; into which Kingdom he ſucceeded by the Will of his Father. Commanded by his Brother to doe Homage for the Kingdom of *Quito*, he came upon him with ſuch Power, that he overcame him, and ſo gained the Kingdom. Vanquiſhed afterwards by *Pizarro* at the battel of *Caxamalca*, he was taken Priſoner. And though he gave him ranſom for his Life and Liberty an Houſe piled up on all ſides with Gold and Silver, valued (as ſome ſay) at ten Millions of Crowns; yet they perfidiouſly ſlew him.

15. *Mango-Capac* II. the ſecond Son of *Guaynacapac*, ſubſtituted by *Pizarro* in his Brother's Throne, after many viciſſitudes of Fortune, was at laſt ſlain in the City of *Cuſco*; and ſo the Kingdom of the *Ingas* began and ended in a Prince of the ſame name, as it hapened formerly to ſome other Eſtates.

Let us next look upon the birth and fortune of that *Pizarro*, who ſubdued this moſt potent and flouriſhing Kingdom, and made it a Member of the *Spaniſh* Empire. And we ſhall find that he was born at *Truſiglio*, a Village of *Navar*; and by the poor Whore his Mother laid in the Church-porch, and ſo left to God's Providence: by whoſe direction (there being none found that would give him the Breaſt) he was nouriſhed for certain days by ſucking a Sow. At laſt one *Gonſales*, a Souldier, acknowledged him for his Son, put him to Nurſe, and, when he was ſomewhat grown, ſet him to keep his Swine: ſome of which being ſtrayed, the Boy durſt not for fear return home, but betook himſelf to his heels, ran unto *Sevil*, and there ſhipped himſelf for *America*; where he attended *Alphonſo de Oieda* in the diſcovery of the Countreys beyond the Gulf of *Uraba*; *Balboa* in his Voyage to the South-ſea; and *Pedro de Avila* in the Conqueſt of *Panama*,

nima. Grown rich by these Adventures, he associated himself with *Diego de Almagro*, and *Fernando Loques* a rich Priest; who betwixt them raised 220 Souldiers, and in the year 1525 went to seek their Fortunes on those Southern Seas which *Balboa* had before discovered. After divers Repulses at his landing, and some hardship which he had endured, *Pizarro* at the length took some of the Inhabitants of *Peru*, of whom he learnt the Wealth of the Countrey; and returning thereupon to *Spain*, obtained the King's Commission for the Conquest of it; excluding his Companions out of the Patent, but taking in *Almagro* of his own accord. Thus furnished and landed in *Peru* again, at such time as the Wars grew hot betwixt the two Brethren for the Kingdom, and taking part with the Faction of *Guascar*, marched against *Atuhaliba*; whom he met with in the plains of *Caxamalca*, but rather prepared for a Parley, then to fight a Battel. *Pizarro* taking this Advantage, picked a Quarrel with him, and suddenly charged upon him with his Horse and Ordnance, slaying his Guard without resistence; and coming near the King's Person, (who was then carryed on mens Shoulders) pulled him down by the Cloaths, and took him Prisoner. With him they took as much Gold as amounted to 80000 Castellans, and as much Silver as amounted to 7000 Marks, (every Mark weighing eight ounces) of his Houshold Plate; and in the spoil of *Caxamalca*, almost infinite Riches. This, with the King's Ransom, came to so great a sum, that besides the fifth part which *Pizarro*, sent to the Emperour, and that which *Pizarro* and his Brethren kept unto themselves, every Footman had 7200 Ducats, and every Horseman twice as much, for their part of the Spoil; besides what they had gotten in the way of plunder. How they dealt afterwards with the miserable King, their prisoner, hath been shewn already. Upon which Act though they put many fair pretences, Yet God declared that he was not pleased with their proceedings; few of the greatest Undertakers going to the Grave in peace. For though *Pizarro*, in reward of so great a Service, was made the first Vice-Roy of *Peru*, and created Marques of *Anatilla*: yet having put to death *Almagro*, his chief Companion, who had raised a strong Faction in that State, he was after slain at *Lima* by some of that Faction, in revenge of the death of their Commander. The like unfortunate end befel all the rest: his Brother *John* slain by the *Peruvians*: *Martin* in *Lima* with himself; *Ferdinando* secretly made away in Prison; and finally, *Gonsales* the fourth Brother, with the Son of *Almagro*, severally executed for their Treasons and Insurrections, which they had acted in this Countrey against their King. So little Joy doth Wealth ill gotten bring along with it to the owners thereof. And here I am to leave *Pizarro*; whose strange both fortunes and misfortunes in the course of his Life are to be parrallel'd only with the like of *Sinan*, a great Bassa in the Court of *Selimus* the first; who being born of base Parentage, as he (being a Child) was sleeping in the Shade, had his Genitals bitten off by a Sow. The *Turkish* Officers which usually provided young Boys for the service of the Grand Seigniour, being in *Epirus*, (for that was *Sinan*'s Countrey) and hearing of this so extraordinary an Eunuch, took him among others along with them to the Court: where under *Mahomet* the Great, *Bajazet* the second, and his Son *Selimus*, he so exceedingly thrived, that he was made the chief Bassa of the Court; and so well deserved it, that he was accounted *Selimus*'s right hand; and was indeed the man to whose Valour especially the *Turks* owe their Kingdom of *Ægypt*: in which Kingdom then not fully settled he was also slain.

But to return to *Peru*. No question but the Forces and Revenues of it were exceeding great. For, though we find no particular musters which they made of their men, or what great Armies they drew with them into the Field; yet by their great Successes, and many Victories, we may conclude them to be Masters of great Bands of men, and skilful in the Arts of Conduct. Nor can we otherwise conjecture at the greatness of their yearly Income, but by the greatness of their Treasure; so infinite and almost incredible, that all the Vessels of the King's House, his Table and Kitchin, were of Gold and Silver: Statues of Giants in his Wardrope, together with the resemblances in proportion and bigness of all the Beasts, Birds, Trees, Plants and Fishes, which were found in that Kingdom, of the purest Gold: Ropes, Budgets, Troughs, Chests, all of Gold or Silver: Billets of Gold piled up together, as if they had been Billets of Wood cut out for the fire; three Houses full of pieces of Gold, and five full of Silver. All which, besides infinite other Treasures, fell into the hands of a few poor *Spaniards*: who grew so wanton hereupon, that they would give 1500 Crowns for an Horse, 60 Crowns for a small Vessel of Wine, and 40 for a pair of Shoes; consuming all upon their lusts, and sacrificing their Gods of Gold to their God the Belly.

OF CHILE.

CHILE is bounded on the North with the Desart of *Alacama*, 90 Leagues in length, interposed betwixt it and *Peru*; on the West, with *Mar del Zur*; on the South, with the Streights of *Magellan*; and on the East, as far as to *Rio de la Plata*, with the main *Atlantick*; the Countreys lying on the East betwixt it and *Paraguay* not well discovered.

This Countrey lieth wholy beyond the Tropick of *Capricorn*, by consequence in the temperate Zone, extended in length, from the borders of *Peru* to the mouth of the Streights, 500 Leagues; but the breadth variable and uncertain. Called *Chile*, from the word *Chil*, (which in more Tongues then ours doth signifie as much as Cold) from the extream coldness of the Air and Clime; so vehement here in our Summer Solstice, that many times both the Horses and the Riders are frozen to death, and hardned like a piece of Marble.

The Soil hereof in the midland parts Mountainous and unfruitful; towards the Seaside level, fertile, and watered

tered with divers Rivers flowing from the Mountains: productive of Maize, Wheat, and most excellent Pasturage; plenty of Gold and Silver, abundance of Honey, store of Cattel and Wine enough for the use of the People; the Vines brought hither out of *Spain* prospering here exceedingly, as do also all the Fruits and Plants, which are sent from thence into this Countrey. The People very tall and warlike, some of them of a Gigantick Stature, affirmed (but I believe it not) to be eleven foot high; yet well conditioned with this greatness, where not much provoked. Their Garments of the Skins of Beasts, their Arms Bow and Arrows: white of Complexion, but as hirsute and shaggy-haired as the rest of the Savages.

Rivers of note there are not any but what will fall within the view of its several Provinces. Divided commonly into 1. *Chile* specially so called, and 2. *Magellanica*.

1. *CHILE* specially so called is bounded on the North with the Desart of *Atacama*; on the South, with *Magellanica*; on the West, with *Mare del Zur*; and on the East, with some unknown Countreys, lying betwixt it and *Paraguay*, or the province of *Rio de la Plata*: not above 20 Leagues in breadth, but in length 300. The reason of the name, together with the nature of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Principal Rivers of this part, 1. *Rio de Copayapo*, giving name unto a Promontory near the Influx of it, in the Northern borders of this Province. 2. *Rio de Coquimbo*, 3. *La Ligua*, 4. *Topocalma*, 5. *Cacapool*, 6. *Cauten*: all falling into *Mare del Zur*. And besides these, a nameless, but more famous, River, which in the day-time runneth with a violent Current, and in the night hath no Water at all. The reason of it is, because this River, having no constant Fountain, is both begun and continued by the Snow falling from the Mountains, which in the heat of the day melted into Water is precipitately carryed into the Sea: but congealed in the coldness of the night yields no Water at all, whereby the Chanel becometh empty.

Places of most observation in it, 1. *Copayapo*, giving name to a fertile Valley in the most Northern Tract hereof; and neighboured by a small, but commodious, Haven. 2. *Serena*, a Colony of the *Spaniards*, on the Sea-side; not far from the Influx of *Rio de Coquimbo*, on whose banks it is seated, there built by *Baldivia*, the Conquerour and first Governour of this Province, *Anno* 1544. The Territory round about it is rich in Mines of Gold: the Town it self of 200 Houses, but so well peopled, that at the landing of some of the *English* under Captain *Drake*, they presently sent out 300 Horse and 200 Foot to compell them back unto their Ships, which they did accordingly. 3. *S. Jago*, the chief of all this Province, (though not above 80 Houses in it) because the Residence of the Governour and the Courts of Justice; adorned with a Cathedral Church, and some Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friers; situate in the 34. Degree of Southern Latitude on the Banks of the River *Topacalma*, at the mouth whereof is the Haven of *Val Paraiso*, the best and most noted of this Countrey; out of which the *English* under *Drake* took a *Spanish* Ship, and therein 25000 *Pezoes* of the purest Gold, besides other Commodities. 4. *Conception*, 70 Leagues on the South of *S. Jago*, situate on the Shores of a large and capacious Bay, (by the Natives called *Penco*) by it and the Mountains on all sides so strongly fenced, that the Governour, when distressed by the Savages, (as sometimes they are) retireth hither for safety. Well fortified in such places as are accessible, and garrisoned with 500 Souldiers, besides the Townsmen. Opposite hereunto lieth the Isle of *S. Mary*, so near the Shore, that it seems to have been rent from it by the force of the Sea: fruitful and very well provided of Swine and Poultrey; but the people so in fear of the *Spaniards* dwelling in *Conception*, that they dare not kill or eat either, but by leave from them. 5. *Auraccoa*, (so I think they call it) a strong Fortress in the Countrey of the *Auracans*, the most potent Nation of these parts; who, weary of the *Spanish* Yoke, revolted against *Baldivia*, overcame him in a set fight, and at last killed him: this piece being thereupon forsaken, and of no more use. 6. *De los Confines*, built by *Baldivia* in the borders of the Countrey of those *Auracans*, to serve for a defence to the Mines of *Ongol* near adjoyning: distant from the Sea-shores about 18 Leagues, enlarged by *Garcias de Mendoza*, and by him called *Villa Nueva de los Infantes*. 7. *Imperiale*, in the 38. Degree and 40 Minutes of Southern Latitude, situate on the banks of the River *Cauten*; an Episcopal See, and the best Fortress of the *Spaniards* in all this Province. Fortified and made a Colony of *Spaniards* in the year 1551, and by *Baldivia* called *Al Imperiale*, because they found an Eagle with two heads made in Wood on the doors of their Houses; a Monument perhaps of some *Germans* who had here been shipwreckt. A Town of so great Wealth and Power, before known to the *Spaniards*, that in a War betwixt them and the *Auracans*, spoken of before, they are said to have brought into the Field 300000 men. 8. *Villa Rica*, another Colony of *Spaniards*, 16 Leagues on the South-East of *Imperiale*, and 25 Leagues from the Shores of *Mare del Zur*. 9. *Baldivia*, the most noted Town of all these parts, situate in the Valley of *Guadallanguen*, in the Latitude of 40 Degrees, or thereabouts: adorned with a safe and capacious Haven, and neighboured by Mines of Gold of such infinite Riches, that *Baldivia* (by whom built for defence of those Mines) received thence daily by the labour of each single Workman 25000 Crowns a man, and sometimes more. Sacked by the Savages *Anno* 1599; since repaired by the *Spaniards*. 10. *Osorno*, on the Banks of the Bay of *Chilve*, (or *Ancud*, as the Savages call it;) situate in a barren Soil, but well stored with Gold, and thought to be more populous then *Baldivia* it self. 11. *Castro*, the most Southern Town of all this Province, in the Latitude of 44: built in a large and fruitful Island of the Bay of *Ancud*, said to be 50 Leagues in length, but the breadth unequal: in some parts nine, in others not above two Leagues. 12 *S. Juan de la Frontera*, on the farther side of the *Andes* towards *Paraguay*, or *Rio de la Plata*.

To this Province there belong also certain Islands lying on the Coasts and shores hereof, 1. *S. Maries*, spoken of before. 2. *Mocha*, upon the South of that, five Leagues from the Continent, fruitful of Grain, and very good Pasturage, sufficient to maintain the Inhabitants of it, who being the descendents of those *Americans* who fled hither to avoid the tyranny of the *Spaniards*, hitherto have made good their Liberty against that Nation: of which they are so jealous, that they would not suffer the *English* under *Drake* and *Cavendish* to land amongst them, for fear they had been *Spaniards*, or some Friends of theirs. 3. *Castro*, which we have spoken of already.

2. *MAGELLANICA* is bounded on the North with *Chile*, and the Province of *Rio de la Plata*: on the South, with *Fretum Magellanicum*, or the Streights of *Magellan*, on the West, with *Mare del Zur*: on the East, with *Mare del Noordt*, or the main *Atlantick*. So called from *Magellanus*, by whom first discovered: of whom we shall speak more hereafter.

It is in length from the borders of *Chile* to the mouth of the Streights 300 Leagues in breadth: from one Sea to the other, where broadest, above 400 Leagues, in some

some but 90 only, and in others less, according as it draweth towards the point of the *Pyramis*. The Inland parts of the Countrey not yet discovered: those on the Sea side observed to be rocky and unfruitful, exposed for the most part of the year to such bitter Colds, that the Snow lyeth always on the Mountains. The People said to be tall of Stature, and some of them of a Gigantick bigness, reported to be ten or eleven foot high: and by the *Spaniards* for that reason are called *Patagous*. Both great and less sufficiently rude and barbarous, quite naked, and unfurnished of any Houses, notwithstanding the rigour of the Cold.

No Houses doth imply no Towns; and therefore we must look for none in so rude a Countrey, as hath not hitherto conversed with more civil Nations. So that the most that we can doe is to coast the Shores, and see what names of Ports or Promontories we can find therein. And first upon the Sea-coasts towards *Mare del Zur* they place (beginning at the North, and so descending) 1. the Promontory called *Cabo de las Islas*. 2. The port or Haven of *S. Stephen*. 3. The Valley of *Nuestra Sennora*, or our Ladies Valley. 4. The Promontory called *Punta Delgado*. 5. *Porto de los Reyes*. 6. *Anchon Sinsalida*, on the banks of a semi-circular Bay, the receptacle of many Rivers, and not a few Islands. 7. *Cabo de la Victoria*, or the Cape of Victory, situate betwixt that Bay and the mouth of the Streights; so called from the name of the Ship, in which some of *Magellan*'s Souldiers did first compass the World. For *Ferdinand Magellan*, a noble *Portugal*, and well skilled in Navigation, at the persuasion or command of *Charles* the fifth, to whom (upon some discontents received in the Court of *Emanuel* King of *Portugal*) he had made offer of his Service, undertook the finding out (if possible) a shorter cut to the *Molucca*'s then discovered formerly. In the year 1520 he began his Voiage, his Fleet consisting but of five Ships, whereof that called S. *Anthonio* forsook him in some great displeasure, and returned to *Spain*; another of them being lost not long after in a storm. Keeping along the Coast to the South of *Rio de la Plata*, about the end of *October* he fell upon the Cape of *Virgins*, at the very entrance of this Streight, which on the doubling of this Cape he was fallen upon; and by the end of *November* (not before) was fully clear of these Narrow Seas, since called *Fretum Magellanicum*, and entered into *Mare del Zur*. Having refreshed himself in a little Island called *Juvaganava*, he passed unto that also, but not far from the *Philippines*: the Prince whereof, called *Hamabar*, he persuaded to become a Christian, baptizing him by the name of *Charles*: and finally engaging in a Quarrel of his against the King of *Mautan*, or *Mattan*, an adjoyning Island, he was there unfortunately slain, *Anno* 1521. After his death *Serran* chief Pilot of the Navy, together with 70 of his men, being treacherously slain by *Hamabar*, the other three Ships departed with no more then 115 men aboard them; which put them to a necessity of burning one of their Ships, that they might have men enough to make good the others. With these two Ships they came at last to the *Molucca*'s, where being kindly entertained by the King of *Tidore*, they divided themselves: that called the *Trinity*, under Captain *Spinosa*, designed for *Panama* in *New Spain*, but from thence driven back by contrary Winds to the Isle of *Tidore*, was seized on and spoiled by *Anthonio Brito*, a Captain commanding there a small Navy of the King of *Portugal*. The other Ship, which by a happy Omen was called *Victoria*, having in her but 47 *Spaniards*, under the command of *Sebastian del Cano*, after a very long and dangerous Voiage, wherein it was thought that he had sailed at the least 14000 Leagues, returned to *Spain* in safety, and brought the welcom news of their good Success.

We use to say that Sir *Francis Drake* was the first that sailed round about the World; which may be true in a qualified sense; *viz.* that he was the first Captain or man of note that atchieved this Enterprize, *Magellanus* perishing in the midst of it: and therefore he is reported to have given for his Device a Globe, with this Motto, *Tu primus circumdedisti me*. This Navigation was begun *Anno* 1577, and in two years and a half with great vicissitude of fortune finished. Concerning which his famous Voiage, a Poet then living directed to him this Epigram:

Drake, *peregrati novit quem terminus Orbis,*
Quemque simul mundi vidit uterque Polus;
Si taceant homines, facient te Sydera notum.
Sol *nescit comitis non memor esse sui.*
Drake, whom th'encompass'd Earth so fully knew,
And whom at once both Poles of Heaven did view;
Should men forget thee *Sol* could not forbear
To Chronicle his fellow Traveller.

This *Fretum Magellanicum*, these *Magellan* Streights, are in the 52. degree; and are by Mr. *John Davis*, who professeth to know every Creek in them, thus described. "For 14 Leagues within the Cape of *S. Mary* lieth the first "Streight, where it ebbeth and floweth with a violent "swiftness: the Streight not being fully half a mile broad, "and the first fall into it very dangerous and doubtful. "Three Leagues this Streight continueth, when it open-"eth into a Sea eight miles long, and as much broad; be-"yond which lieth the second Streight, right West-"South-West from the first, a perillous and unpleasant "passage, three Leagues long, and a mile in breadth. "This Streight openeth it self into another Sea, which "is extended even to the *Cape of Victory*; where is the "Streight properly called the Streight of *Magellan*; a "place of that nature, that which way soever a man bend "his course, he shall be sure to have the Wind against "him. The length hereof is 40 Leagues; the breadth "in some places two Leagues over, in others not fully half "a mile. The Chanel in depth 200 Fathoms, so no hope "of Anchorage; the course of the Water full of turnings "and changings, withal so violent, that when a Ship is "once entred, there is no returning. On both sides of it "are high Mountains continually covered with Snow, "from which proceed those Counter-winds which beat "with equal fury on all parts thereof. A place assuredly "not pleasing to view, and very hazardous to pass. So far, and to this purpose Mr. *Davis*.

But to proceed: the way thus opened was travelled not long after, *Anno* 1525, by *Garcias de Loyasa*; next in the year 1534, by *Simon de Alcazavo*; and four years after by three Ships of the Bishop of *Placenza* in *Spain*: but none of them had the hap or courage to adventure through till undertaken and performed by Sir *Francis Drake*, Anno 1577. after which it grew more familiar amongst the Seamen. Howsoever, we are so much Debtors to the Attempts of others, as that we owe to them the most part of the names of those Bays and Promontories which they discovered in the search: though many of them be since new named by the *English* and *Hollanders*. Those of most note, proceeding from *Cabo de la Victoria*, are 1. *Cabo de Quade*, 2. *Cape Gallant*, 3. *Cordes Bay*, 4. *Cape Froward*, being the very point or *Conus* of this great *Pyramis*. 5. *Porto Famine*, 6. A little Isle called *Elizabeths Island*, and at the Exit of the Streight in *Mare del Noords*, the Cape of *Virgins*. Then bending Northward toward the great River of *Plata*, we find upon the main Ocean, 1. *Rio de la Cruz*, neighboured by a Promontory called *Cabo de las Barreras*, where *Magellan* staid all *September* and the greatest part of *October*, in expectation of an opportunity to discover farther. 2. The Bay of *S. Julian*, out

out of which he ſet ſail for this Adventure about the latter end of *Auguſt*, leaving there two of his Companions condemned of Mutiny. 3. The Port of *Deſire*. 4. A large Promontory, called the Cape of *S. George*. 5. The out-lets of a fair River, named *Rio de los Camerones*. 6. A goodly Haven, entituled *Puerto de los Leones*. 7. The Cape called *Punta de terra plana*. 8. The Bay of *Amegada*, 9. The Promontory called the Cape of *S. Andrews*. And 10. the River of S. *Anne*, beyond which lieth the Province of the River of *Plata*. This is the moſt that I can ſay touching *Magellanica*, as to the Havens, Rivers, Points and Promontories; and this is nothing (as we ſee) but a *Nomenclator*, It muſt be better peopled and more diſcovered before it can afford Diſcourſe of more variety. All we can add is, that the paſſage back again from *Mare del Zur* to the *Atlantick* hath not been found ſo ſafe and eaſie, as from the main *Atlantick* unto *Mare del Zur*. Attempted firſt by *Ladrilliro* a *Spaniard*, at the command of *Garcia de Mendoza*, Governour of *Chile*, and attempted only: performed not long after the Voiage of Sir *Francis Drake* by *D. Pedro Sarmiento*, employed therein by *Francis de Toledo*, Viceroy of *Peru*, with much difficulty, and no leſs danger; ſo much, that few have ſince endeavoured to return that way.

As for the the Fortunes and Affairs of the Province of *Chile*, to which we have made this an Appendix, we are to underſtand that it was firſt diſcovered by *Almagro de Alvarado*, one of *Pizarro*'s chief Friends and Aſſociates. But he having other deſigns in his head about *Peru*, which he intended for himſelf, and to out *Pizarro*, did diſcover it only; the Conqueſt of it being reſerved for *Baldivia*, whom *Pizarro*, on the ſettling of his Affairs by the death of *Almagro*, had employed in that action. He, going Souldier-like to work, not only did ſubdue the People; but, as he gained ground, built ſome Fortreſs, or planted Colonies of *Spaniards*, in convenient places. This done, about the year 1544, his ill luck was to meet with a more ſtubborn and untractable People then either *Cortez* or *Pizarro* had done before him; who, quickly weary of the Yoke, beſieged one of his Forts, encountred *Baldivia* himſelf coming with too ſmall a power to relieve his People. vanquiſhed and ſlew him in the Field. Some add, that they poured Gold into his Throat; (as the *Parthians* are reported to have done to *Craſſus*) bidding him *ſatiate himſelf with that which he ſo much thirſted after*. After this blow given, in the year 1551. The Savages recovered the rich Valleys of *Auranco*, *Tucapel*, and *Purene*; which they keep from them till this day. The Towns of *Los Confines* and *Villa Rica*, both on the boiders of thoſe Valleys, were deſerted alſo. Nor ſtaid they there, though they took time to breath a little. For in the year 1599, (having provided themſelves of 200 Corſlets and ſeventy Muskets) they break out again, ſurpriſed and ſacked the Town of *Baldivia*, forced *Imperiale*, after a whole year's Siege, to ſurrender without any Conditions, and in the year 1604 took *Oſorno* by Famine. Of thirteen Cities which the *Spaniards* had poſſeſſed amongſt them they had taken nine; ſome of them ſince recovered, but the moſt demoliſhed. As ill it thrived with them in *Magellanica*, where *Pedro de Sarmiento* undertook the planting of two Colonies to command thoſe Streights, *Anno* 1584. The one he ſetled near the mouth of the Streight, which he called by the name of *Nombre de Jeſus*, and left therein 150 of his men: the other he intended on the narroweſt place of the Streight, to be called *Cividad del Rey Philip*, which he reſolved to fortifie and plant with Ordnance. But Winder coming on, he left there others of his men, promiſing to relieve them ſhortly with all things neceſſary. But ſuch was his unhappy fate, that after many Shipwrecks and diſappointments which befel unto him in the purſuit of his Deſign, he was at laſt taken by the *Engliſh*, under the command of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, who was there in perſon; and his two Colonies, for want of timely Succours, either ſtarved at home, or eaten by the Savages, as they ranged the Countrey.

And ſo much for *CHILE*.

OF

PARAGUAY.

PARAGUAY is bounded on the South with *Magellanica*; on the Eaſt, with the main *Atlantick*; on the North, with *Braſil*; on the Weſt, with ſome unkown Countreys betwixt it and *Chile*. So called from the River *Paraguay* (one of the greateſt of the World) which runneth through it: the River and the Province both by the *Spaniards* called *Rio de la Plata*, from the great ſtore of Silver they expected from it.

The Countrey (for ſo much as hath been diſcovered) is ſaid to be of a fruitful Soil, capable of Wheat and other of the Fruits of *Europe*, which thrive here exceedinly: nor do the Cattel encreaſe leſs which were brought from *Spain*, both Kine and Horſes multiplying in a wonderful manner. Well ſtored with Sugar-Canes, and not unfurniſhed of Mines both of Braſs and Iron, ſome Veins of Gold and Silver, and great plenty of Amethiſts. Of Stags great plenty, and of Monkies almoſt infinite numbers; not to ſay any thing of Lions, Tigers and ſuch hurtful Creatures, of which a few would be thought too many. Of the People there is nothing ſaid but what hath been obſerved of the other Savages.

Chief Rivers of it, 1. *De la Plata*, whoſe courſe we have deſcribed already. 2. *Rio de Buenos Ayres*, ſo called from the chief Town, by which it runneth. 3 *Zarcarana*, which riſeth in the Countrey of the *Diaguitas*, and falling into a Lake at the end of his courſe, doth from thence paſs into the body of *De la Plata*. 4. *Eſtero*, which riſing in the Valley of *Chalcaqui*, and paſſing through two great Lakes, meets with 5. the *Bermejo*, and both together fall into *De la Plata* near the Town of *S. Foy*. 6. *Pilcomayo*, which hath its Fountain near the Mines of *Potoſi*, in the Province of *Charcos*; but his fall in the ſame River with thoſe before. Then on the North-ſide

of

of that River there is, 7. that of *S. Saviour*, or *S. Salvador*, as the *Spaniards* call it. 8. *Rio Nigro*, or the Black River, of a longer course, but buried in the end, as the other is, in the deeps of *La Plata*. 9. *Tquaan*, and 10. several others, whose united Streams make the great River *Parana*, the second River of esteem in all this Countrey, but swallowed in that of *Plata*. Besides these, 11. *Rio de S. Martin*, and 12. *Rio Grande*, falling into the Ocean.

It comprehendeth the three Provinces of, 1. *Rio de la Plata*, 2. *Tucuman*, and 3. S. *Crux. de Sierra*. The rest not conquered by the *Spaniard*, or not well discovered cannot be properly reduced under any Method.

1. *RIO DE LA PLATA*, or the Province of *De la Plata*, lieth upon both sides of that River, ascending many Leagues up the Water, but not extended much upon either side. The reason of the name, the quality of the Soil and People, we have seen before.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Buenos Ayres*, or *Nuestra Sennora de Buenos Ayres*, by others called *Cividad de la Trinidad*, seated on the Southern bank of the River of *Plata*, there built by *Pedro de Mendoza*, Anno 1535. Deserted by the Inhabitants, and again new-peopled by *Cabesa de Vacca* Anno 1542. It was afterwards again abandoned; and finally, in the year 1582, re-edified and planted with a new Colony. Situate on the rising of a little Hill, in the 34. degree and 45 minutes of the Southern Latitude, and about 64 Leagues from the mouth of the River. Fortified with a Mud-wall and a little Castle, with some pieces of Ordnance: yet neither large, nor much frequented, containing but 200 Inhabitants. 2. S. *Fe*, or S. *Fides*, 50 Leagues up the River from *Buenos Ayres*, on the same side of the Water, near the confluence of it with the River *Estero*: of the same bigness as the other, but somewhat richer; the people here being given to Cloathing, which Manufacture they exchange with the *Brasilians* for Sugar, Rice, and other necessary Commodities. 3. *Nuestra Sennora del Assumption*, but commonly *Assumption* only, higher up the River, from the mouth thereof 300 Leagues distant: situate in the Latitude of 25, and almost in the midst betwixt *Peru* and *Brasil*; well built, and very well frequented, as the chief of the whole Countrey. Inhabitted by three sorts of men: first, natural *Spaniards*, of which here are accounted 400 Families; 2. the *Mestizo*'s, begotten by the *Spaniards* upon the Natives; and 3. *Mulato*'s, born of the *Spaniards* and *Negroes*: of which two last here are thought to be many thousands. Not far off is a great Lake called *Ytupuam*, in the midst whereof is an huge Rock, above 100 Fathom high above the Water. 4. *Cividad Real*, by the *Spaniards* called also *Ontiveros*, by the Natives *Guayra*, 80 Leagues North from the Town of *Assumption*, situate on the banks of the River *Parana*, in a fruitful Soil, but a sickly Air; for which cause, and the frequent Insurrections of the Savages, but meanly peopled. 5. S. *Anne*, on the banks of the same River *Parana*. 6. S. *Salvador*, on a River of the same name. Besides these, there are up the River above *Assumption* three noted Ports, 7. *Puerto de Guaybiamo*, 8. *Puerto de la Candelaria*, and 9. *Puerto de los Reyes*; but whether Towns, or only Havens on that River for dispersing and bartering their Commodities, I am not able to say. The last save one memorable for the defeat of *John de Ayolas*, and the death of 80 of his men by the hands of the Savages.

2. *TUCUMAN* lieth on the West of *Rio de la Plata*, extending towards the Confines of *Chile*, through which they make their way unto *Mare del Zur*, as through the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto *Mare del Noordt*; the exact bounds hereof to the North and South not yet resolved on.

The Countrey, for so much hereof as lieth towards *Chile*, is well manured and fruitful; that towards *Magellanica* barren, untilled, and not well discovered. No Veins of Gold or Silver in it, though situate in a temperate and agreeable Air. Watered by the two Rivers of, 1. *Salado*, so called from the brakishness and saltness of it; and 2. *Del Estero*, spoken of before, so named, because sometimes it breaketh out of his Banks. The Inhabitants now civilized both in manners and Habit, in both which they conform to the Garb of the *Spaniards*.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. S. *Jago del Estero*, on the banks of that River, by the natural Inhabitants called *Varco*, the principal of that small Province, honoured with a Bishop's See, and the Seat of the Governour; and distant about 180 Leagues from *Buenos Ayres*. 2. S. *Michael de Tucuman*, seated at the foot of a Rocky Mountain, but near a very fruitful Soil both for Corn and Pasturage, distant 28 Leagues from S. *Jago*. 3. *Talavera*, or *Nuestra Sennora de Talavera*, but by the Natives called *Esteco*; situate on the River *Salado*, before mentioned, in a fruitful Soil, and inhabited by an industrious People, grown wealthy by their Manufactures of Cotton-wools, which grow hereabouts in great abundance, with which they drive a great Trade at the Mines of *Potosi*, from hence distant but 140 Leagues. 4. *Corduba*, in a convenient place for Trade, as being equally distant from S. *Juan de la Frontera*, in the Prefecture of *Chile*, and S. *Foy*, in *Rio de la Plata*, 50 Leagues from each, and seated in a Road from *Peru* unto *Buenos Ayres*; much travelled consequently by those who go from *Peru* to *Brasil* or *Spain*. 5. *New London*, and 6. *New Corduba*; built at such time as *Garcias de Mendoza*, Son of the Marques of *Cannete*, and Vice-roy of *Peru*, was Governour of this Province: but both abandoned not long after. Besides these, 7. *Morata*, 8, *Chocinoca*, 9. *Sococha*, and 10. *Calabinna*; Townships belonging to the Natives.

3. *S. CRUX DE SIERRA* is the name of a little Territory lying towards *Peru*, on the North of the River *Guapay*. and in the Countrey of the *Chiquitos* and *Cherigunaes*, two Tribes of the Savages. By some accounted to *Peru*, because under the Juridical Resort of *Charcos*, but so far distant from the nearest bounds of that Province, (100 *Spanish* Leagues at least) that I think fitter to account it to the Province of *Paraguay*, betwixt the banks of which River and that of *Guapay* it is wholly seated.

The Soil is abundantly productive of Maize and Wines, plenty of most sorts of *American* Fruits, which I can give no *English* name to, a kind of Palm; of whose Trunk they make great store of Meal, of good taste and nourishment. But neither Soil nor Air agreeable to the Fruits of *Europe*, which ripen slowly, and soon die. So destitute of Rivers, that the Inhabitants were fain to make use of Rain-water preserved in pits: the cause of no small Wants, and of many great Murthers; the people either dying for Thirst, or killing one another for some Water to quench it.

Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Sancta Crux*, situate at the foot of a great Mountain, whence the name of the Province; but situate in an open Field, enlarging it self into many Plains and thirsty Valleys: neighboured by a Brook, or Torrent, breaking from the Rocks, which four Leagues from the Town is become a Pond, and plentifully doth supply the Town with fish. 2. *Baranca*, 60 Leagues from the Mines of *Potosi*. 3. *Tomina*, 4. *Lagunilla*, and 5. *Tarixa*; three Forts erected for defence of this Province against the Incursions and Alarms of the *Cherignanaes*. 6. *Neyva Rioja*, once a Colony of the *Spaniards*, but sacked and dispeopled by the *Cherignanaes*, when the Count of *Neyva* was Vice-roy of *Peru*: at what time *Nuflo de Chaves*, who in the year 1548 first discovered those parts,

parts, was treacherously slain by one of the Savages.

The principal Nations of this Country, when first known to the *Spaniards*, were the *Querandies*, *Timbues*, and *Carcares*, the *Chanes*, *Chiminei*, *Guaranyes*, the *Guayacurves*, *Gucovei*, *Guaxarapi*, &c. on both sides of the River of *Plata*; the *Tucumanes*, *Juries*, and *Diagnitas*, in the *Cantred* of *Tucuman*; more Northward, where the *Spaniards* have as yet no Hold, the *Chunesses*, *Xaquesses*, *Xacoaes*, and the *Xarayes*, great and powerful Nations, hitherto unconquered. The first Discovery of this Country is ascribed to *John Dias de Solis*, a *Spanish* Adventurer; who in the year 1515. passing up the River to the Latitude of 34 Degrees and 40 minutes, and unadvisedly landing with too small a power, was there unfortunately slain. The Design was after prosecuted by *Sebastian Cabot*, Anno 1526. who sailed against the Stream as high as the River *Parana*; at the reception of which, the great River, called till then by the name of *Paraguay*, begins to be called *De la Plata*. Here built he the Fortress called *Fort Cabot*, and 30 Leagues more up the River that called *S. Anne*, (both long since ruined) where *Diego Garcias*, a *Portugal*, found him in the year next following. In the year 1535. the business was resumed by *Pedro de Mendoza*, who built the Town of *Buenos Ayres*, and sent *John de Ayolas* to discover Northwards; of whose unhappy end we have heard before. Not fully settled till the year 1540, when *Alvares Nonnez*, commonly called *Cabesa de Vacca*, made a more full discovery of it, and planted Colonies of *Spaniards* in convenient places. Nothing since done for the farther planting of the Country, though some places have been marked out for new Plantations; here being little Gold and Silver, and consequently not much temptation to draw on the *Spaniards* to the Work.

And so much for *PARAGUAY*.

OF BRASIL.

BRASIL is bounded on the East with *Mare del Noordt*, or the main *Atlantick*; on the West, with some undiscovered Countries lying betwixt it and the *Andes*; on the North, with *Guiana*, from which parted by the great River *Maragnon*; and on the South, with *Paraguay*, or the Province of *Rio de la Plata*. The reason of the name I find not, except it came from the abundance of that Wood called Brasil-wood, which was found amongst them; as the famous Isle of *Cyprus*, from its plenty of Cypresses.

It reacheth from the 29 to the 39 Degree of Southern Latitude; or, measuring it by miles, it is said to be 1500 miles from North to South, and 500 miles in breadth from the Sea to the *Andes*: which must be understood with reference to the whole extent of it; for otherwise all that which is possessed by the *Portugals* under the name of *Brasil* is so short of taking up all the breadth hereof, that they possess nothing but the Sea-coasts, and some few Leagues (comparatively) within the Land; the greatest part of it being so far from being conquered, that it hath not hitherto been discovered.

The Country is full of Mountains, Rivers, and Forests, diversified into Hills and Plains always pleasant and green. The Air for the most part sound and wholesom, by reason of the fresh Winds which do reign amongst them; there being all along the Coasts certain quick Winds rising from the South about 2 hours before Noon, which do much benefit the Inhabitants: yet in regard it is somewhat moist, it is held to be more agreeable to old men then to young. The Soil is in most parts very fruitful, were it not cloyed with too much Rain; but howsoever liberally provided of Sugar-Canes, (no one Country more) for the refining of which they have their *Ingenios*, (as they call them) or Sugar-houses, in most parts of the Country, in which they entertain many thousand Slaves, brought hither yearly from *Guinea* and *Congo*, and other Maritime parts of *Africk*. A Trade in which the *Portugals* are much delighted, and I cannot blame them; there being few years, in each of which they bring not out of *Brasil* to *Portugal* 150000 *Arrobes* of Sugar; every *Arrobe* containing 25 Bushels of our *English* measure. Here is also infinite quantities of that red Wood used in dying Cloath, which we commonly call Brasil-wood; (but whether the Wood took that name from the Country, or the Country rather from the Wood, I determine not:) the Trees whereof are of that incredible greatness, that whole Families live on an Arm of one of them, every Tree being as populous as the most of our Villages. In other Commodities, common to them with the other *Americans*, we need not give particular instance.

Amongst the Rarities hereof are reckoned, 1. the Plant called *Copiba*, the Bark of which being cut doth send out a Balm, the soverain virtue whereof is so well known to the very Beasts, that being bit by venemous Serpents, they resort unto it for their Cure. 2. The Herb called *Sentida*, or *Viva*, which roughly touched will close the Leaves, and not open them again till the man that had offended it be gone out of sight. 3. A kind of Wheat in the Valley near unto S. *Sebastian*, which is continually growing, and always ripe; or never wholly ripe, because always growing: for when one Ear doth grain, another doth Bloom; when one is ripe and yellow, another is green. 4. The Oxe-fish, with Eyes and Eye-lids, two Arms a Cubit long, and at each an Hand with five Fingers and Nails, as in a Man; under the Arms two Teats, Inwards like a Cow, in every Female. 5. A Creature found of late about the Bay of *All-Saints*, which had the Face of an Ape, the Foot of a Lion, and all the rest of a Man; of such a terrible Aspect, that the Souldier who shot him fell down dead. But this I rather look on as an Aberration of Nature, then a Rarity in her. 6. Beasts of such strange shapes, and such several kinds, that it may be said of *Brasil*, as once of *Africk*, *Semper aliquid apportat novi*, every day some new object of Admiration.

The People here are endowed with a pretty understanding; as may seem by him who tartly blamed the Covetousness of the *Spanish*, for coming from the other end of the World to dig for Gold; and holding up a Wedge of Gold, cried out, *Behold the God of the Christians!* But in

most places they are barbarous, the Men and Women go stark naked, and on high Festival days hang Jewels in their Lips. These Festival days are when a company of good Neighbours come together to be merry over the roasted body of a fat Man, whom they cut in Collops, called *Boucon*, and eat with great greedines and much delectation. They have two vile qualities; as being mindful of Injuries, and forgetful of Benefits. The Men Cruel without measure, and the Women infinitely lascivious. They cannot pronounce the Letters *L. F. R.* The reason of which, one being demanded, made answer, because they had amongst them neither Law, Faith, nor Rulers. They are able Swimmers, as well Women as Men; and will stay under Water an hour together. Women in Travel are here delivered without any great pain, and presently go about their business belonging to good Housewives: the good man (according to the fashion of our kinder sorts of Husbands in *England*, who are said to *breed their Wives Children*) being sick in their stead, and keeping their Bed; so far that he hath Broaths made him, is visited by his Gossips, or Neighbours, and hath Junkets sent to comfort him. And amongst these there are some Rarities, if not monstrosities, in nature: it being said of those which live towards the *Andes*, that they are hairy all over like Beasts, such as *Orson* is feigned to have been in the old Romance, and probably so ingendred; also that the *Guaymares* disbowel Women with Child, and roast the Children; and finally, that the Savage Nation of *Camucuiara* have their Paps almost down unto their Knees, which they tie about their waste when they run, or go faster then ordinary.

Rivers of note I find not any till I come to *Maragnon*, though that be a Boundary rather betwixt this and *Guiana*, then proper unto this alone. If any chance to come in our way as we cross the Country, we shall not pass them over without some remembrance. And so proceed we to the Division of the Country, not into Provinces or Nations, as in other places, but into Prefectures, or Captainships, as the *Portugals* call them. Of which there are 13 in all, which we shall severally touch on as we trace the Coast, from the Province of *Rio de la Plata* unto that of *Guiana*; that is to say,

1. The Captainship of S. *VINCENT*, bordering on *Rio de la Plata*, inhabited by the most civil People of all *Brasil*. Chief Towns whereof are, 1. *Santos*, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, capable of good Ships of burthen, but distant from the Main three Leagues. A Town of no more then 120 Houses, yet the best of this Prefecture; beautified with a Parish-Church, and two Convents of Friers. Taken and held two months by Sir *Tho. Cavendish*, Anno 1591; since that environed with a Wall, and fortified with two Castles. 2. S. *Vincents*, better built, but not so well fitted with an Haven, of about 70 Houses, and 100 Inhabitants. 3. *Itange*, and 4. *Cananea*, two open Burroughs, but capable of lesser Vessels. 5. *S. Paul*, upon a little Mountain, at the foot whereof run two pleasant Rivers, which fall not far off into the River of *Iniambis*. A Town of about 100 Houses, one Church, two Convents, and a Colledge of Jesuites; neigboured by Mines of Gold found in the Mountains, called *Pernabiacaba*. 6. *S. Philips*, a small Town on the banks of *Iniambis*, which there begins to enlarge it self and passing thence falleth at last into the River *Parana*, one of the greatest Tributaries to *Rio de la Plata*.

2. Of *RIO DE JANEIRO*, or the River of *January*, so called, because entred into that moneth by *John Diaz de Solis*, Anno 1515; neglected by the *Portugals*, it was seized on by the *French*, under the conduct of *Villegagnone*, employed herin by Admiral *Chastillon*, a great Friend of the *Hugonots*, to whom it was intended for a place of Refuge, (as *New-England* afterwards for the like;) but within three years after their first coming hither (*An.* 1558.) regained by the *Portugals*, and the *French* put unto the Sword. Places of most consideration in it, 1. *Collignia*, the Fort and Colony of the *French*, so named in honour of *Gaspar Colligni*, (commonly called *Chastillon*) by whose encouragement it was founded. Situate on the Bay of the River *Janeiro*, which the *French* called *Ganabara*. 2. *S. Sebastians*, built at the mouth of the same Bay by the *Portugals*, after they had expelled the *French*, and fortified with four strong Bulwarks. 3. *Angra des Reyes*, distant 12 Leagues Westward from the mouth of the Bay; not long since made a *Portugal* Colony. Besides these, there are two great Burroughs of the natural *Brasilians*, in which are said to be above 2000 Inhabitants.

3. Of the *HOLY GHOST*, (*del Spiritu Santo*) one of the most fertile Provinces of all *Brasil*; well stored with Cotton-wool, and watered with the River *Parayba*, large, and full of Fish. The only Town of note in it is *Spiritu Santo*, inhabited by about 200 *Portugals*. The chief building of it, a Church Dedicated to S. *Francis*, a Monastery of Benedictines, and a College of Jesuites: the chief conveniency, a safe and commodious Haven, capable of the greatest Vessels.

4. Of *PORTO SEGURO*, the secure Haven, so called by *Capralis*, who first discovered it, when being tossed at Sea by a terrible Tempest, he had here refreshed himself. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Porto Seguro*, built on the top of a white Cliff, which commands the Haven; of more Antiquity then Fame, of more fame then bigness, as not containing fully 200 Families. 2. *Santa Cruz*, three Leagues from the other, a poor Town, with as poor an Harbour: the Patrimony and Inheritance of the Dukes of *Aveira* in the Realm of *Portugal*. 3. *Santo Amaro*, or S. *Omers*, once of great note for making Sugars, for which use here were five *Ingenios*, or Sugar Engines: deserted by the *Portugals* for fear of the Savages, against whom they had not power enough to make good the place, and the Sugars destroyed of purpose, that they might not come into the hands of the barbarous people.

5. Of *DES ILHEOS*, or of the Isles, so named from certain Islands lying against the Bay on which the principal Town is seated, called also *Ilheos*, or the Island, (with like Analogy as a Town of good note in *Flanders* hath the name of *Insula* or *Lisle*:) the Town consisting of about 150 or 200 Families, situate on a little River, but neighboured by a great Lake of 12 Leagues in compass, (out of which that River doth arise) full of a great, but wholsome Fish, which they call *Monatos*, some of which are affirmed to weigh 28 pounds. This Colony was much endangered by the *Guaymuri*, a Race of Savages more savage then any of their Fellows; who, being driven out of their own Country, fell into this Prefecture, which they had utterly destroyed, if some of S. *George*'s Reliques, as the Jesuites tell us, (but I bind no man to believe it) sent by their General from *Rome*, Anno 1581. had not stayed their fury, and given the *Portugals* the better.

6. Of *TODOS LOS SANTOS*, or *All Saints*, so called from a large Bay of that name, upon which it lyeth, in breadth two Leagues and an half, 18 Fathoms deep, and full of many little Islands; but flourishing and pleasant, and well stored with Cotton-Wool. A Bay in which are many safe Stations and Roads for Shipping, and therefore of great use and consequence in those furious Seas. Memorable for the hardy Enterprize of *Peter Heyns*, a *Dutch-man*, Admiral of the Navy of the *United Provinces*; who, in the year 1627. seized on a Fleet of *Spaniards*, consisting of 26 Sail of Ships, (four of them being Men of War) all lying under the Protection of the Forts and Castles, built for the safety of that Bay. For thrusting in amongst them with his own Ship only (the rest

not

not being able to follow, he ſo laid about him, that having ſunk the Vice-Admiral, he took all the reſt, conditioning only for their lives, notwithſtanding all the ſhot which was made againſt him from the Ships and Caſtles and 40 pieces of Ordnance planted on the ſhore. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *S. Salvador*, built on a little Hill on the North-ſide of the Bay by *Thomas de Souſa*; adorned with many Churches and Religious Houſes, and fortified (beſides the Wall) with three ſtrong Caſtles; the one called S. *Anthony*, the other S. *Philip*, and the third *Tapeſipe*. Yet not to ſtrong by reaſon of ſome Hills adjoyning which command the Town, but that it was taken by the *Hollanders* Anno 1624, recovered by the *Spaniards* the next year after, and ſince loſt again. 2. *Paripe*, more within the Land, four Leagues from S. *Saviours*. 3. *Seregippe del Rey*, a ſmall Town, and ſeated on as ſmall a River, but amongſt many rich Paſtures, and ſome Veins of Silver.

7. Of *FERNAMBUCK*, one of the richeſt Prefectures for Tobacco, Sugar, and the great quantity of Braſil-wood which is brought hence yearly for the Diers, in all this Country; but deſtitute of Corn and moſt other Neceſſaries, with which ſupplied from the *Canaries*, and ſometimes from *Portugal*. Chief Towns hereof, 1. *Olinda*, the largeſt and beſt peopled of all *Braſil*, containing above 2000 perſons; not reckoning in the Church-men, nor taking the great number of Slaves which they keep for their Sugar-works into the account: for whoſe uſe they have here eight Parochial Churches, five Religious Houſes, and ſome Hoſpitals. Situate near the Sea-ſide, but on ſo uneven a piece of ground, as makes it not capable of a regular Fortification; the Haven being little, and not very commodious, but defended at the entrance by a well-built Caſtle, and that well planted with Braſs-pieces. Which notwithſtanding, in the year 1595, the Caſtle and the Suburbs along the Port (wherein they uſed to ſtow all their chief Commodities) were taken by Captain *James Lancaſter* and ſome few of the *Engliſh*; who having tarried in the Haven above a month, brought home with him eight of his own Ships, four *French-men*, and three *Hollanders* which came in by chance, all laden with the choiceſt Merchandiſe of *Braſil* and *India*. 2. *Amatta de Braſil*, ten miles from *Olinda*, the Inhabitants whereof live by ſelling the Braſil-wood. 3. *S. Laurenzo*, a well-frequented Village, but as yet unwalled. 4. *Poincur*, upon a River ſo named. 5. *Antonio de Cabo*, near the Cape of *S. Auguſtines*; both of good note for the great quantity of Sugars which are made in each. 6. *Garaſu*, about five Leagues from *Olinda*, inhabited for the moſt part by poor and Mechanical perſons, till the year 1632, when taken by the *Hollander*, and planted with a people of higher quality. This Prefecture, belonging formerly to the Earls of *Albuquerque*, (a great Houſe in *Spain*) is now wholly in the hands of the States of the *Provinces* united: the Town of *Olinda* being taken by them in the year 1629, the Port and all the Avenues unto it ſo ſtrongly fortified, that they have hitherto enjoyed it.

8. Of *TAMARACA*, ſo called from an Iſland of that name, diſtant about five miles from *Olinda*, of no great note but for the Haven, and an impregnable Caſtle on the top of an Hill for defence thereof. Which when the *Hollanders* could not take, they built a ſtrong Bulwark at the mouth of the Port, and ſo blocked it up, that it hath ſince been of no uſe to the *Spaniard*. This is the leaſt Prefecture in *Braſil*, but withal the ancienteſt; extended three Leagues only in length, and but two in breadth: the Patrimony of the Earls of *Monſanto* in *Portugal*, who received hence yearly, when entire, thirty thouſand Ducats. But his Rents are much diminiſhed, if not quite inverted, ſince the loſs of the Haven.

9. Of *PARAIBA*, ſo called from a River of that name (but by the *Spaniard* called *Domingo*) of moſt note herein, on the banks whereof ſtandeth *Paraiba*, the chief Town of it, at the bottom of an Arm of the Sea, about three Leagues from the Main, but capable of pretty good Ships to the very Town. The Town inhabited not long ſince by 500 *Portugals*, beſides Slaves and *Negroes*. Not walled, till they began to ſtand in fear of the *Hollanders*, on the loſs of *Olinda*; but more ſecured by a ſtrong Caſtle on the Promontory called *Cabo Delo*, which the *Hollanders* have in vain attempted, then by any Works within the Land. A Caſtle which acknowledgeth the *French* for the Founders of it, who for a while were poſſeſſed of this Tract, and gave name to an adjoyning Haven, called *Port Francois*; but outed by the *Portugal*, Anno 1584, who have ſince held their footing in it, but with fear of the *Hollanders*; eſpecially ſince their taking of a little Iſland lying over againſt them, called the Iſle of *Noronha*.

10. Of *RIO GRANDE*, ſo called from the River *Poteingi*, (as the Natives term it) which the *Portugals* call *Rio Grande*, or the great River; not made a Prefecture till of late. For lying open, as it were, to the next Pretender, ſome of the *French* began to fix here *Anno* 1597. But the King of *Spain*, not willing to have any ſuch Neighbour, commanded the Captain of *Paraiba* to drive them thence; which was done accordingly. But then the Savages beginning to riſe up in Arms, the Captain of *Paraiba* was fain to ſeek aid from him of *Fernambuck*; by whoſe help having ſlain five thouſand, and took three thouſand of them, the reſt became Vaſſals to the *Portugals*, who built here an impregnable Caſtle, (which is all the footing they have in it) well manned, and furniſhed with Ammunition and all other Neceſſaries; very few *Portugals*, except thoſe of the Garriſon, being yet come over.

11. Of *SIARA*, a late Prefecture alſo, in which the *Portugals* have no more then a Caſtle, with a dozen Houſes, or thereabouts, beſides that of the Governour adjoyning to it. So named from an Haven called *Siara*, but of no great note, and capable but of little Veſſels. Of ſome Trade in regard of the Cryſtal, Cotton-wool, and ſome precious ſtones found in the Country hereabouts: and certainly would be of greater, if once the *Portugals* would be active and purſue the Conqueſt; here being great plenty of Sugar-canes, but no Works to make it.

12. Of *MARAGNON*, an Iſland lying in the mouth of the great River ſo called, in the fartheſt parts of *Braſil* Northwards, and many Leagues diſtant from *Siara*, the laſt of their Prefectures; the Country intervening not yet diſcovered, or otherwiſe made known unto us, then by the names of the Ports and Promontories found upon the Coaſt. An Iſland of a fruitful Soil, if pains and Huſbandry were not wanting; affording naturally Maize, and a root called *Maniot*, both which the Savages uſe for Bread; good ſtore of Cotton-wools, Saffron, Braſil-wood, and the beſt Tobacco; and in ſome places Balm and Amber. Watered with many freſh Rivers and pleaſant Springs; well wooded both for Timber and Fewel; and, in a word, bleſſed with ſo temperate an Air, (though ſo near the *Æquator*) that no place can be more commodious for the Life of Man. The People ſtrong of body, healthy and long-liv'd; without any baldneſs, induſtrious in their Feather-works and Manufactures of Cotton; the Women curious in ordering their Hair, fruitful in Child-bearing, and that till 80 years old, and ſometimes more. Both Sexes naked till their Marriage, and then apparelled only from the Waſte to their Knees.

The Villages hereof poſſeſſed by the Natives conſiſted but of four great Houſes; each of them two or three hundred foot in length, and twenty or thirty foot in

breadth ſo placed as they reſembled a quadrangular Cloyſter; and in each Houſe ſo many Houſholds, that commonly each of their Villages, or *Taves*, (for ſo they called them) contained three hundred perſons, and ſome twice that number. Of theſe were twenty ſeven in all, whoſe names I hold impertinent to be muſtered here: the total eſtimate of the people when the *French* came thither amounting to 12000 Souls. For the *French* trading in this Iſland, and carrying themſelves courteouſly amongſt the Natives, found them not unwilling to admit a Colony of that Nation, if ſent over to them, by whoſe Aid they might free themſelves from all other Pretenders, and be inſtructed in the Goſpel. Accordingly a Colony and four *Capuchin* Friers are ſent over to them *Anno* 1612, ſome Savages gained unto the Faith, and a ſtrong Caſtle, called *S. Lewis*, commodiouſly built, and planted with 22 pieces of Ordnance; the effect of that Voyage. But long they had not reſted there when diſſeized by the *Portugals*, ſent thither under the conduct of *Hierome de Albuquerque*, Anno 1614. Who to the Caſtle of *S. Lewis*, which the *French* had built, added thoſe of *S. Mary*, and *S. Francis*, planted two Villages in the Iſland by the names of *S. Andrew*, and *S. Jago*, and ever ſince have held it without moleſtation.

13. Of *PARA*, the moſt Northern Prefecture of *Braſil* towards *Guiana*; ſo called from the River of *Para*, (ſuppoſed to be a branch of the River of *Amazons*) which runneth through it. The River at the mouth of it is two miles in breadth, and in the middle of the Chanel fifteen Fathoms deep: on the banks whereof (but on an higher ground then the reſt) the *Portugals* have built the Caſtle of *Para*, in form quadrangular, and well-walled, except towards the River: the Country thereabouts being inhabited by 300 *Portugueze*, beſides the Garriſon.

Now for the Fortunes of the whole, it never did acknowledge any one Supreme. Divided into many Tribes, and each Tribe governed by their Chiefs, as in other Countries. Theſe Tribes ſo many, and the Muſter of their names ſo uſeleſs, that I now forbear it. In this eſtate they lived when diſcovered firſt; but by whom firſt diſcovered will not be agreed on. The *Spaniards*, to get ſome colour of a Title for the Crown of *Caſtile*, aſcribe it to *John Pinſone* and *Diego de Lope*, two of their own Country, who, as they ſay, had landed on it in the year 1500, before the coming of *Capralis*, though the ſame year alſo. The *Portugals* attribute the Diſcovery of it to *Pedro Alverez de Capralis*, ſent by their King *Emanuel* to the *Eaſt-Indies*; who being driven over hither from the Coaſt of *Guinea*, took poſſeſſion of it, and as a Monument thereof, advanced a Croſs, giving the name of *Sanctæ Crucis*, or the Holy Croſs, to this new Diſcovery. That name changed afterwards to *Braſil*, from the abundance of that Wood (as it is conceived) which was found amongſt them. Notice hereof being given to the Court of *Portugal*, *Americus Veſpuſius*, a noble *Florentine*, Anno 1501. and after him *John de Empoli*, another of that Nation, in the year 1503, were by *Emanuel* employed in a farther Diſcovery, Who ſpeeding fortunately in it, the *Portugals* did accordingly ſend over ſome Plantations thither. But a great controverſie growing betwixt them and the *Spaniard*, to whether of the two it of right belonged; the *Spaniard* was content to yield it to the Crown of *Portugal*, though by the Bull or Edict of Pope *Alexander* the ſixth (by whom the whole undiſcovered World was divided betwixt thoſe two Kings) it ſeemed to fall within the Grant made to the Crown of *Caſtile*. Enjoyed by this *Emanuel*, and the Kings ſucceeding, till the death of *Sebaſtian*, (which *Sebaſtian* the Jeſuites look on as the Founder of all their Colledges in this Country) and by the *Spaniards* ſince the death of *Henry*, (whoſe Reign continued but a year) though in the name and right of the Crown of *Portugal*; that Nation being ſo prudently jealous of their Intereſt in it, that they would not ſuffer any of the Subjects of *Spain* to grow great amongſt them. By them poſſeſſed entirely without any Rivals, (I mean, for ſo much of the Country as they had ſubdued) till of late years the *Hollanders* put in for a part, and got the Prefectures of *Fernambuck* and *Todos los Santos* (or the Bay) by the right of War. The reſt with all the other Members of the Crown of *Portugal*, in the late Revolt of that Nation from the King of *Spain*, ſubmitting unto *John* the fourth, of the Houſe of *Braganza*, whom the *Portugueze* had made their King, *Anno* 1639.

And ſo much for *BRASIL*.

OF GUIANA.

GUIANA is bounded on the Eaſt with the main *Atlantick*; on the Weſt, with the Mountains of *Peru*, or rather ſome undiſcovered Countries interpoſed betwixt them; on the North, with the River *Orenoque*, and on the South, with that of the *Amazons*. The reaſon of the name I find not, unleſs it be ſo called from the River *Wia*, of which more anon.

It is ſituate on both ſides of the Line, extended from the fourth Degree of Southern to the 8 of Northern Latitude. The Air, notwithſtanding this ſituation under the *Æquator*, is affirm'd to be temperate, the Eaſtern winds (which they call the *Briezes*) conſtantly blowing about Noon, and mitigating the extreme heats thereof by their cooler blaſts. The Country towards the Sea-ſide flat and level, the inland parts more mountainous and ſwelled with Hills: in all places ſo adorned with Natures Tapeſtry, the boughs and branches of the Trees never uncloathed or left naked, (Fruit either ripe or green growing ſtill upon them) that no Country in the World could be better qualified. The particular Commodities of it we ſhall ſee anon, when the particular parts hereof come into diſcourſe.

Of the People it is ſaid in general, that they have amongſt them no ſetled Government, and though they acknowledge ſome Superiority in the Chiefs of their Tribes,

yet

yet it is only voluntary, as long and as little as they pleaſe. Adultery and Murther, which are only puniſhable, are not otherwiſe expiated but by the death of the Offender. The richer ſort have two or three Wives, and ſometimes more; the poor but one, and hardly able to keep her: they that have more, and they who have but one, alike jealous of them; and if they take them in Adultery, without any farther Ceremony or Formalities of Law they beat out their Brains. Their Wives, eſpecially the elder, they uſe for Servants; and he which hath moſt ſuch is the greateſt man, Without Religion, or any notion of a Godhead; not ſo far onwards on the way to the worſhip of the true God, as to be Idolaters: for though Idolatry be miſtaken in the proper Object, it ſuppoſeth a Deity; and they who have this principle, that there is a God, have learned one, and not the leaſt, of the points of their Catechiſm. Their Accounts amongſt themſelves they keep with a bundle of ſticks, which they diminiſh or encreaſe according to the times of their Contract. Their Funerals they ſolemnize with a Feaſt, but with ſuch diverſity in the deportment of both Sexes, that while the Women houl extreamly, the men perform the Obſequies with ſinging and exceſſive drinking; the one as improper for a Feaſt, as the other for a Funeral.

Rivers of moſt note in it, beſides 1. *Orenoque*, and 2. The River of *Amazons*, and thoſe rather Boundaries betwixt this and the neighbouring Provinces, then proper unto this alone. 3. *Arrawari*. 4. *Conawini*. 5. *Caſpurough*, or *Caſſipure*; all falling into the ſame main *Atlantick*, betwixt the River of *Amazons* and *Wiapoco*: the laſt riſing out of the Lake of the *Arachoſi*, half a mile broad at the mouth or Influx into the Sea, and but five ſpans deep. 6. *Wiapoco*, of which more hereafter. 7. *Wia*. 8. *Cajane*. 9. *Marwine*. 10. *Eſſequebe*, a River of twenty days journey long, betwixt *Wiapoco* and the River of *Orenoque*, or *Raliana*.

The whole divided commonly into theſe four parts: 1. *Rio de las Amazones*, or the River of *Amazons*. 2. *Wiapoco*, or *Guiana* ſpecially ſo called. 3. *Orenoque*. And 4. The Iſles of *Guiana*.

1. *RIO DE LAS AMAZONES*, or the River of *Amazons*, containeth that part of this Country which lieth along the Tract of that famous River. The Soil is in ſome places dry and barren, in others fertile and productive of the choiceſt Fruits; full of large Woods, and in thoſe Woods moſt ſort of Trees which are to be found in *America*: One amongſt others of moſt note, (and perhaps peculiar to *Guiana*) which they call the *Totocke*; a Tree of great bulk, and as great a Fruit; this laſt as big as a man's Head, and ſo hard withal, that when the Fruit grows ripe and ready to fall, the people dare not go into the Woods without an Helmet, or ſome ſuch ſhelter over their Heads, for fear of beating out their Brains. The kernels of it, for the moſt part ten or twelve in number, have the taſte of Almonds, and are ſaid to be provocative in point of Venery. Of which the Savages have this By-word, *Pigue ſecke in Saccowe pingean Totocke*; that is to ſay, Eat *Totocke*, if thou wouldſt be potent in the acts of *Venus*. Here are alſo Sugar-canes in ſome places; and the Plant called *Pita*, the taſte whereof is ſaid to be like Strawberries, Claret Wine, and Sugar.

The principal Inhabitants of this part of the Country, the *Taees*, *Cockettuway*, *Panteeni*, *Tockianes*, *Tomoes*, and *Wackehanes*, dwelling on the Continent; the *Maraons* and *Arowians*, poſſeſſed of the Iſlands. Towns of note I have met with none amongſt them; though every houſe (moſt of them 150 foot in length, 20 in breadth, and entertaining at the leaſt an hundred perſons) might paſs ſufficiently for a Village. Yet they are ſafer houſed then ſo, for otherwiſe their Houſes would afford them but little comfort in the overflowings of the River, which drown all the Country: and therefore they betake themſelves to the tops of Trees, and there remain like Birds, with their ſeveral Families, till the Waters be drawn in again, and the Earth become more comfortable for habitation. Yet I find ſome of theſe their dwellings called by proper Names: as 1. *Matarem*. 2. *Roakery*. 3. *Anarcaprock*. 4. *Haaman*. 5. *Womians*: and 6. *Cogemynne*. But I find nothing but their names, and enough of that.

The firſt Diſcoverer of this River and the parts adjoyning was *Orellana*, the Lieutenant of *Gonſales Pizarro*, whom his Brother *Franciſco Pizarro*, then Vice-roy of *Peru*, had made the Governour of *Quito*. Moved with the noiſe of ſome rich Countries beyond the *Andes*, he raiſed ſufficient Forces, and paſſed over thoſe Mountains; where finding want of all things for the life of man, they made a Boat, and ſent this *Orellana* to bring in Proviſions. But the River which he chanced into was ſo ſwift of courſe, that he was not able to go back; and was therefore of neceſſity to obey his fortune in following the courſe of that ſtrong water. Paſſing along by divers deſolate and unpeopled places, he came at laſt into a Country planted and inhabited; where he firſt heard of the *Amazons*, (by thoſe Savages called *Comapuyaras*) of whom he was bidden to beware as a dangerous people. And in the end, having ſpent his time in paſſing down this River from the beginning of *January*, to the end of *Auguſt* 1540, he came at laſt into the Sea, and getting into the Iſle of *Cubagua*, ſailed into *Spain*. The courſe of his Voyage down the Water he eſtimated at 1800 Leagues, (or 5400 *Engliſh* miles) but found no *Amazons* in his paſſage, as himſelf affirmed; only ſome maſculine Women ſhewed themſelves intermixt with the Men, to oppoſe his landing; and in ſome places he found Men with long Hair like Women: either of which might make theſe parts believed to be held by *Amazons*. But to proceed, arriving at the Court of *Spain*, he got Commiſſion for the Conqueſt of the Countries by him diſcovered; and in the year 1549 he betook himſelf unto the Service. But though he found the mouth of the River, one of them at leaſt, he could never hit upon the Chanel which brought him down, though he attempted often. Which ill ſucceſs, with the conſideration of his loſs both in Fame and Fortunes, brought him to his Grave; having got nothing but the honour of the firſt Diſcovery, and the leaving of his name to that famous River, ſince called *Orellana*. The Enterprize was purſued, but with like ſucceſs, by one *Pedro de Orſua*, Anno 1560, after which the *Spaniards* gave it over. And though the *Engliſh* and the *Hollanders* have endeavoured an exact Diſcovery, and ſeverally begun ſome Plantations in it, yet they proved as unfortunate as the other; their Quarters being beaten up by the neighbouring *Portugals*, before they were ſufficiently fortified to make any reſiſtance.

2. *WIAPOCO*, or *GUIANA* ſpecially ſo called, taketh up the middle of this Country, on both ſides of the River of *Wiapoco*, whence it hath its name. A River of a long Courſe, but not paſſable up the Stream above 16 miles, by reaſon of a Cataract or great fall from the higher ground: in breadth, betwixt that Cataract and the *Æſtuarium*, about the tenth part of a mile; at the *Æſtuarium*, or Influx, a whole mile at leaſt, and there about two Fathoms deep.

The Country on both ſides of this River very rich and fertile; ſo natural for Tobacco, that it groweth to nine handfuls long. Sugar-canes grow here naturally without any planting, and on the Shrubs great ſtore of Cotton, and the Dye by ſome called *Orellana*. Plenty of Veniſon in their Woods, and of Fiſh in their Rivers: their Fields well ſtored with Beaſts, which themſelves call

Moyres;

Moyres; in shape and use resembling Kine, but without any Horns. The People generally of a modest and ingenuous countenance; naked, but would wear Cloaths if they had them, or knew how to make them. Their Bread is made of a Plant called *Cassavi*, of which also being dried and chewed, and then strained through a Wicker-Vessel, they make a kind of Drink, in colour like new Ale, but not so well tasted, and of less continuance. The greatest part of their Food is Fish, which they intoxicate with a strong-scented Wood, and so take them up as they lie floating on the top of the Water. Much troubled with a Worm like a Flea, (by the *Spaniards* called *Niguas*) which get under the nails of their Toes, and multiply there to infinite numbers, and the no less torture of the Patient, without speedy prevention. No better Remedy found out, then to pour Wax melted hot on the place affected; which being pulled off when 'tis cold, draws the Vermin with it, sometimes 800 at a pull. The Women of such easie Child-birth, that they are delivered without help, and presently bring the Child to his Father, (for they have so much natural modesty as to withdraw from company upon that occasion) who washeth it with water, and painteth it with several colours, and so returneth it to the Mother.

Rivers of note here are very many; no Country under Heaven being better watered, nor fuller of more pleasant and goodly Streams. The names of some of them on both sides of the *Wiapoco* we have had before: the chief of which I take to be *Wia*, affirmed to be of a long course, a goodly River all the way, and at the Mouth thereof to be large and broad, which passing through the heart of the Country, in the fourth Degree and 40 Minutes of Northern Latitude, may possibly occasion both the whole and this part more specially to be called *Wiana*, and by the *Dutch*, who cannot pronounce the *W*, *Guiana*. Certain I am, that by the name of *Wiana*, I have found it written in approved Authors. But what need farther search be made after lesser Rivers, (which will offer themselves to us of their own accord) when we have a Lake to pass over like a Sea for bigness, (*magnum, famosum, & vastum, instar maris*, as my Author hath it) by the *Yaos* or *Jaos* called *Raponowinin*, by the *Caribes* (the old Inhabitants of this Country) *Parimen*; situate about a days journey from the River *Essequebo*, and neighboured by the great and famous City *Manoa*, which the *Spaniards* call *El Dorado*, (or the Golden City) from the abundance of Gold, in Coin, Plate, Armour, and other Furniture, which was said to be in it. The greatest City, as some say, not only of *America*, but of all the World. For *Diego de Ordas*, one of the Companions of *Cortez* in his *Mexican* Wars, and by him condemned for a Mutiny, put into a Boat alone without any Victual, and so cast off to seek his Fortune, affirmed at his return; that being taken by some of the *Guianians*, and by them carried to their King, then residing at *Manoa*, he entred the City at high-noon, travelled all the rest of that day, and the next also until night, before he came to the King's Palace; but then he saith that he was led blind-fold all the way: And therefore possibly enough this City might be no such Miracle as the Story makes it; *Don Diego* being either abused by the Reports of the Savages, or willing to abuse the World with such empty Fictions. For though the *Spaniards* and the *English* have severally sought, and that with incredible diligence, to find out this City; yet none of them have hitherto had the fortune to fall upon it. So that I fear it may be said in the Poet's Language.

——*Et quod non invenis usquam,*
Esse putes nusquam —— —— —— i. e.
That which is no where to be found,
Think not to be above the ground.

Nor is there much more credit to be given unto his Relations of the great Court kept here by one of the *Ingas*; who being, forsooth, one of the younger Brethren of *Atabaliba*, the last King of *Peru*, at the Conquest of that Kingdom, with many thousands of his Followers, came into this Country, and subduing the *Caribes*, erected here a second *Peruvian* Monarchy. For, besides that *Atabaliba* had no Brethren but *Guascar* and *Mango*, who both died in *Peru*, how improbable must it needs appear, that this *Guianian* King, knowing so well the thirst of the *Spaniards* after Gold, would either suffer him to return and disclose the Secrets of his State, or send him away loaded with Gold, as 'tis said he did? Who sheweth his Treasure to a Thief, doth deserve to lose it. And therefore letting pass these dreams of an *El Dorado*, let us descend to places of less Magnificence, but of greater Reality. Amongst which I reckon, 1. *Caripo*, most memorable for a Colony of *English* there planted by Captain *Robert Harcourt*, Anno 1600. situate on the Banks of the *Wiapoco*, near the Mouth thereof, on the advantage of a Rock, and that Rock so difficult of access, that they feared no danger from an Enemy. The Air so sound and answerable to the constitution of an *English* body, that of 30, which were left there for three years together, there died but six, and those six rather by misfortune, and some cross accident, then by any Diseases. 2. *Gomeribo*, on the top of an Hill, near the mouth of the Bay of *Wiapoco*; possessed a while by some *Hollanders*, but soon deserted. 3. *Moyemon*, a Village of the *Paragoti*, on the banks of the River *Marwinen*. 4. *Crewinay*, on the other side of the same River, possessed by the *Caribes*. The King of the first (for each Tribe had its several Princes) being named *Maperitaka*, affirmed to be a virtuous man, and kind to Strangers, of the latter, *Minapa*. 5. *Tanparamunen*, about an hundred Leagues from the mouth of that River; and 6. *Moneshego*, four days journey from the other: both possessed by the *Caribes*. The King or *Cacique* of those last, at Captain *Harcourt*'s being there, (of which time we speak) was named *Areminta*; affirmed to have a skin like a piece of Buff.

The principal Families of this part, besides the *Yaos* or *Jaos*, and the *Maraons*, spoken of before, who possess almost all the Sea-Coasts of this Country, are said to be the *Arwacca*, the *Sapayoy*, the *Mayos*, and the *Aracouri*; of different Languages and Customs, though near neighbours unto one another. Originally Inhabitants of the Island of *Trinidado*, and the River of *Orenoque*: whence driven by the *Spaniards* they came into this Tract, and beating the old Inhabitants, whom they call by the common name of *Caribes*, higher into the Country, possessed themselves of the Sea-shores and the parts adjoyning: each Tribe or Family being governed by its several Chief, as before was intimated. The *Netherlanders* for a time had some footing in it, but they quickly left it; endeavouring nothing more in the time of their short stay amongst them, then to make the people disaffected to the *English*, of whose pretensions to these parts, and designs to plant them, they had good intelligence. And so much was confessed by some of the Natives, when they had found by good experience and acquaintance, how much the *English* were abused in those Mis-reports. Afterwards in the year 1604, Captain *Charles Leigh* set sail from *Woolwich* on the *Thames*, and in *May* fell upon the River of *Wiapoco*, where he was kindly entertained, gratified with an House and Garden, and his Aid craved against the *Caribes* and their other Enemies. He took possession of the Country in the name of King *James*, and the Crown of *England*; and caused the River of *Wiapoco* to be called (by his own name) *Caroleigh*: but that name ended with his Life, and that shortly after, he dying in his return on Ship-board. The design went forwards notwith-

withſtanding, and in the year 1608. an *Engliſh* Colony is brought hither by Captain *Harcourt*, a new poſſeſſion taken in the name of King *James*, the Colony planted at *Carpo* before mentioned, the Country farther ſearched into by that noble Gentleman then ever formerly by any or by many ſince. After three years, the Colony, wanting fit ſupply, returned home again; the Plantation never ſince purſued, though by ſome projected. Yet ſo far are theſe Savages beholden to the *Engliſh* Nation, that as they did defend them at their being there againſt the *Caribes*, ſo at their going off they taught them the uſe of Arms, and put them into a poſture of defence, enabling them thereby to preſerve themſelves againſt all their Enemies.

3. *ORENOQUE*, or the Province of the River *Orenoque*, comprehendeth the North parts of *Guiana*, lying upon and towards the Banks of that famous River, of which we have already ſpoken. The Country is very rich and pleaſant, conſiſting of large Plains, many miles in compaſs, adorned with the Embroidery of Flowers and unknown Plants, exceeding pleaſant to the Eye; and ſometimes interlaced with Hills, reported to be furniſhed with rich Mines of Gold and Silver. The Rivers liberally ſtored with Fiſh, and the Foreſts both with Beaſts and Fowls. No Country in *America*, not *Peru* it ſelf, ſaid to be comparable to it for abundance of Treaſure. Some alſo add a whole Mountain of Cryſtal to be ſeen afar off from *Winecaporo*; and tell us (but in general terms) of more goodly Cities then elſewhere in all *Peruana*: but neither the *Spaniards* nor the *Engliſh* could ever ſee them, though they diligently ſearched into moſt parts of this Country.

The People, as of ſeveral Nations, ſo of ſeveral Natures. The *Capuri* and *Macureos*, for the moſt part Carpenters, live by making *Canoas* or Boats, which they ſell into *Guiana* for Gold, and to *Trinidado* for Tobacco, in the immoderate taking whereof they exceed all Nations. When a *Cacique* or Commander dieth, they make great lamentation; and after the Fleſh is putrified and fallen from the Bones, they take up the Skeleton, and hang it up in the Houſe where he dwelt, decking his ſkull with Feathers of all colours, and hanging Gold Plates about the bones of his Arms and Thighs. Of the *Tivitivas*, dwelling upon ſome of the Northern Branches, it is affirmed by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, that they are a goodly and valiant People, and to have the moſt manly and moſt deliberate ſpeech of any Nation in the World. A People which eat of nothing that is ſet or ſown; the Children of Dame Nature, and therefore will not be beholden for their livelihood unto Art or Induſtry; uſing the tops of the *Palmito*-Tree for Bread; Fiſh, Deer, and Swines-fleſh for the reſt of their ſuſtenance. The *Aſſaway*, *Saymæ*, *Wikeri*, and *Aroras*, affirmed to be as black as *Negroes*, but with ſmoother Hair; and to uſe Arrows dipt in ſo ſtrange a poiſon, as doth not only bring death, but death with moſt unſpeakable torments, eſpecially if the wounded party be permitted to drink. Of the *Arwaca* of this Tract I find nothing ſingular, but that when any of their Kings or *Caciques* die, their Wives and neareſt of the Kindred beat their Bones to powder, and mingle it with their drink, like Spice.

Places of moſt importance in it (for to ſpeak any thing particularly of thoſe many Rivers which fall into the *Orenoque* were an endleſs labour) are, 1. *Comolaba*, on the South of *Orenoque*, but ſomewhat diſtant, in which they keep ſome annual Fairs for the ſale of Women. One of our *Engliſh-men*, left by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1595, affirmeth that he bought eight of them (the eldeſt not above eighteen) for a half-peny red-hafted Knife, which he brought from *England*. But withal telleth us, for his credit, that he gave them to ſome Savages of his Acquaintance. 2. *Morequito*, a known Port upon ſome branch of the *Orenoque*; of much uſe to the *Engliſh* in their firſt Diſcovery of theſe parts. 3. *Winecaporo*, ſo called from another branch of that River bearing this name; from whence was ſhewed an high Hill, ſaid to be of Cryſtal, but ſo far off, that it was thought better to believe then to go and ſee. Others report of this Mountain, that above it there is a mighty River, which, falling down this Cataract on the lower grounds, makes a terrible noiſe, as if a thouſand Bells were knocked one againſt another. And poſſible enough it is, that this great fall of Water diſcerned far off may (with the help of Sun-ſhine) carry ſome reſemblance of a Cryſtalline Mountain. 4. S. *Thome*, ſituate on the main Chanel of the River *Orenoque*, a Town of 140 Houſes, ſtretched out in length for half a mile, but ſlightly built; a Pariſh Church in the midſt of it, and at the Weſt end a Convent of *Franciſcan* Friers. The only Town of all *Guiana* poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*; not fortified till againſt the laſt coming of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, Anno 1617. but taken by him at that time, and ſince that by the *Hollanders*, Anno 1629; though by both quitted not long after, it returned to the *Spaniards*.

The ſeveral Nations of this Tract have been named before. Diſcovered firſt by *Diego de Ordas*, Anno 1531, furniſhed with a Patent for the Conqueſt of it by *Charles* the Fifth. But not hitting on the right Chanel, or otherwiſe not able to overcome the difficulties which lay before him, he returned to *Spain*, effecting nothing but the opening of the way to others. Followed herein by *Hieron de Ortal*, Anno 1533, and after by *Herrera*, who proceeded farther then the others, *Anno* 1536. and finally by *Gonſalvo Ximinez de Queſada* and *Antonio Berreo*, with far better fortune: who beginning their journey from the *New Realm of Granada* in the ſearch of *Guiana*, fell caſually into this great River, as *Orellana* did before into that of the *Amazons*. But yet not perfectly diſcovered till the year 1595, in which Sir *Walter Raleigh* having taken Priſoner this *Antonio Berreo*, and learning of him the ſucceſs of his Expedition, reſolved upon the Undertaking; and ſearched ſo far into the Country by the courſe of this River, that ſome have ſince called it *Raliana*. The buſineſs was followed the next year (after his return) by Captain *Lawrence Keymis*, employed by *Raleigh* in that Service, who at his coming found the Country poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, by whom 20 or 30 of the moveable Houſes of the Savages had been laid together like a Town, and all the Natives, who wiſhed well to the *Engliſh*, diſperſed and ſcattered. So that without any other effect of his journy, then the finding out the true mouth of the *Orenoque* (which he firſt diſcovered) he ſet ſail for *England*. In the mean time it had been moved at the Court, that a Colony of *Engliſh* ſhould be planted there, and ſome proportionable Force ſent over to make good the Action. But the motion was upon good advice rejected, firſt in regard of the diſtance of it from the main body of our ſtrength; and ſecondly, becauſe the *Spaniards*, bordering near upon it, might eaſily caſt out ſmall Forces, and make the enterpriſe diſhonourable to the *Engliſh* Nation, who had then the better of him in the point of honourable Atchievements. It was permitted notwithſtanding unto private Adventurers to try their Fortunes on it, without engaging of the State: whereupon followed the Voyages of *Leigh* and *Harcourt*, before ſpoken of. But they, not being able to go through with ſo great a buſineſs, let it fall again. And ſo it reſted till the laſt unfortunate Voyage of Sir *Walter Raleigh*, licenſed by Commiſſion under the Great Seal to ſearch into ſome Mines of Gold and Silver, which he was credibly informed of when he was in this Country. A deſign followed with great hopes by the Undertakers, moſt of them being perſons of honour, and well attended: but ſo unfortunate in the iſſue, (the *Spaniards* being

being made acquainted with it before his coming) that at the taking of *S. Theme* he loſt his own Son, and a great part of his Forces, and after his return (not able with the reſidue to make good his ground againſt the Enemy) was executed on a former Attainder in the old Palace of *Weſtminſter*, Octob. 29. *Anno* 1618. Of whom I cannot chuſe but note what is ſaid by *Camden Clarencieux* in his Annals: *Vir erat nunquam ſatis laudato ſtudio & Regiones remotas detegendi, & Navalem* Angliæ *gloriam promovendi.* And ſo I leave him to his reſt in the Bed of Peace.

4. The *ISLANDS* which properly are accounted of as parts of *Guiana* lie either ſcattered on the Shore, or in the mouths or bodies of the greater Rivers; ſome of them not inhabited, others of no name, and none at all of any reckoning. Only the Iſle of 1. *Trinidado*, and 2. *Tabago*, are of ſome eſteem: which though ſomewhat farther off from the Shores of this Country, yet being that of *Trinidado* lieth in the mouth of the *Orenoque*, and that both of them with *Guiana* paſs but for one Prefecture, or Provincial Government, we ſhall deſcribe them in this place.

1. *TRINIDADO*, or *Inſula S. Trinitatis*, lieth at the mouth of the River *Orenoque*, over againſt *Paria*, from which ſeparated by a Frith, or Streight, by *Columbus*, who firſt diſcovered it, called *Bocca del Drago*, or the Dragons mouth, becauſe of the dangerouſneſs of the paſſage. Extended from the ninth to the tenth Degree of Northern Latitude; the moſt Southern Angle of it called *Punta del Gallo*, as that on the North-eaſt *Punta de Galtera*. The Frith, or Streight but three miles over, yet made more narrow by the Interpoſition of four or five little Iſlands, which the Sea breaketh through with great violence, leaving only two entrances for Shipping into the Gulf, called the *Gulf of Paria*. The length hereof 25 Leagues, the breadth 18. Of a cloudy and unhealthy Air, but a fertile Soil, abundantly well ſtored with ſuch Commodities, as are of the natural growth of *America*, viz. Maize, Sugar-canes, Cotton-wool, and the beſt kind of Tobacco, much celebrated formerly by the name of a *Pipe of Trinidado*. Here is alſo a ſufficiency of Fruits and Cattel for the uſe of the Natives; and here and there ſome Veins of Gold, and other Metals: ſuch ſtore of Pitch, that innumerable Ships might be laden with it; but that it is conceived to be unfit for the calking of Ships, becauſe it ſoftneth in the Sun. The place in which it groweth is by the *Spaniards* called *Terra de Brea*, by the Natives *Pichen*.

The People of the ſame nature and diſpoſition with the other *Americans*, diſtinguiſhed into ſeveral Tribes, but moſt of them reduced under the power of two petit Princes. But the greateſt part of the Inhabitants, to avoid the Tyranny of the *Spaniards*, forſook their Country, and ferried over into *Guiana*, where before we found them. The chief Town of it called S. *Joſephs*, ſituate on the South-ſide of the Iſland, on the banks of a little River which the Natives call *Carone*, the ordinary Reſidence of the Governour, who hath under him beſides this Iſland the Provinces of *Guiana* and *El Dorado*, (for ſo goes his Titles) yet a ſmall Town, conſiſting but of 40 Houſes when it was taken, *Anno* 1595. by Sir *Walter Raleigh*; *Antonio Berreo* the Governour of it being then made Priſoner, who furniſhed his taker with many Notions (and ſome meerly fabulous) towards the Diſcovery of *Guiana*.

This Iſland, firſt diſcovered by *Chriſtopher Columbus*, in his third Voyage, *Anno* 1497. was by him called *La Trinidad*, it may be with ſome reference to the form hereof, ſhooting into the Sea with three points or Promontories. Nothing elſe memorable in the fortunes and Story of it, but what is touched upon before.

2. *TABAGO* lieth on the North-eaſt of *La Trinidad*, from which eight miles diſtant: full of ſafe Harbours for the bigneſs, watered with 18 little Rivers, and well ſtored with Woods; amongſt which ſome *Palmito* Trees, ſome like that of the Braſil-wood, others not elſewhere to be found. Of Fowl and Fiſh ſufficient to maintain it ſelf. Now called *New Walcheren*, with reference to an Iſland of that name in *Zealand*, by ſome of the *Low-Country-men*, who begin to plant there.

And ſo much for *GUIANA*.

OF

PARIA.

PARIA is bounded on the Eaſt with *Guiana*, and the Iſlands in the mouth of the *Orenoque*; on the Weſt, with the Gulf or Bay of *Venezuela*, and part of the new Realm of *Granada*; on the North, with the main *Atlantick* Ocean, or *Mare del Noordt*; the Countries lying on the South not diſcovered hitherto.

It took this name from a miſtake of the *Spaniards*, (as *Peru* and *Yucatan* on the like) who asking, as all men do, the names of thoſe new Regions which they diſcovered, and pointing to the Hills afar off, were anſwered, *Paria*, that is to ſay, high Hills or Mountains, (for here begins the Ledge of Mountains which are thence continued for the ſpace of 3600 miles, to the Streights of *Magellan*:) and ſo hath it ever ſince held the name of *Paria*. By ſome Writers it is called *Nova Andaluzia*; but I adhere unto the former.

The nature of the Soil and People being very different, will be more properly conſidered in the ſeveral parts. The whole divided into the Continent and the Iſlands, which, with their Sub-diviſions may be branched into theſe particulars, *viz.* 1. *Cumana*. 2. *Venezuela*. 3. *S. Margarita*. 4. *Cubagua*; and 5. the leſſer Iſlands.

1. *CUMANA* hath on the Eaſt the Gulf of *Paria*, and the River *Orenoque*; on the Weſt, *Venezuela*; on the North and South bounded as before. So called from *Cumana*, one of the Rivers of it; on the banks whereof ſome *Dominican* Friers (who firſt ſet footing in this Country) built themſelves a Monaſtery; that name being communicated afterwards unto all the reſt of this Tract.

It is extended Eaſt and Weſt to the breadth of 110 Leagues; the length thereof, from North to South, ſaid to be 400. But there is little of it known, and leſs of it planted by the Europeans; except ſome places near the Sea: there being no part of all *America*, the deſcripti-

on

on whereof hath come so imperfectly to our hands, as it hath of this. For except it be the names of some Bays or Promontories, and of two or three most noted Rivers, there is not much that doth require our consideration.

The Countrey, for so much as hath been discovered, neither rich nor pleasant; and consequently the less looked after: covered with Shrubs, and overgrown with unprofitable Briers and Bushes. Heretofore famed for Pearl-fishing all along the Coast, from the Gulf of *Paria* to that of *Venezuela*, called therefore *Costa de las Perlas*; but that gainful Trade hath long since failed it. Now only of esteem for a Vein of most excellent Salt, found near the Promontory of *Araya*, and the Bay of *Cariaco*, gathered and digged up thereabouts in great abundance, and yet never diminishing. The parts adjoyning take from hence the name of *Salina*; the Promontory bordering on the Frith called *Bocca del Drago*, the Title or Appellation of Cape *Salinas*. Of some strange Creatures in this Country, as the Beast called *Capa*, the soles of whose Feet are like a Shoe, a kind of Hog, which lives altogether upon Ants or Pismires, Parrots and Bats of more than ordinary greatness, I forbear to speak.

Of the People I find nothing singular, except it be, that having plenty of good Fruits as of Fish and Flesh, they use themselves to a far worse Diet, feeding on Horse-leeches, Bats, Spiders, Grashoppers, Worms, Lice, and such other Vermin. In other things they seem to have a mixture of all ill Customs used amongst the Savages of *Asia*, *Africa* and *America*: as, multitudes of Wives; prostituting these Wives for the first Night's Lodging to the *Piacos* or Priests, and for any after, to their Guests; taking great pains to black their Teeth, and putting strange colours on their Bodies instead of Garments; high-minded, treacherous, and revengeful; accustomed to the use of poysoned Arrows, which they envenom with Snakes Bloud and other mixtures. In one thing onely differing from the rest of their Neighbours, which is, the fencing of their Grounds or Orchards with a Cotton thred, as high as ones Girdle; and an opinion which they have, that whosoever breaketh it, or goes over or under it, shall die immediately. More safe in that perswasion than by brazen Walls.

Rivers of most note, though of little, 1 *Rio de Canoas*, 2 *Rio de Neveri*, 3 *Cumana de Bardones*. The chief Havens or Roads for Shipping, 1 *Moxino*, 2 *S. Foy*, and 3 that called *Commenagot*. The places of most consideration, 1 *Cumana*, a Colony of *Spaniards* on the Bank of the River of that name, but distant about two miles from the Sea, on which it hath a safe and convenient Harbour: the Town so hedged about with Woods, that nothing can be seen of it till one come into it, except it be the Governour's House, seated upon the top of a lofty Mountain. 2 *S. Jago*, a strong Fortress built by the *Spaniard* for defence of the salt Lake, or *Salinas*, in the year 1622. on some intelligence that the *Hollanders* had a purpose to take them from him; fortified by the Rules of Art, and planted with 30 pieces of Ordnance, the one half of Brass. 3 *S. Michael de Neveri*, on the River so called, a Fort of the *Spaniards*. 4. *Guaniba*, a Village of the Natives.

The Country was first discovered in the third Voiage of *Christopher Columbus*; but the possession of it was first taken by two *Dominicans*, who out of a Religious zeal to plant the Gospel in these parts, founded themselves a little Cell in the place where the Burrough of *Cumana* was after built, *Anno* 1513. and doubtless had sped very well in their holy purpose, if some covetous *Spaniards* had not treacherously seized upon one of the Chiefs of their Tribes; and carried him with his Wife and Train into *Spanish* bondage. For this the poor Monks suffered death; I may call it Martyrdom: which was revenged by *Alfonso de Oieda*, Anno 1520. and he not long after slain by the Savages, who also at the same time destroy'd two Convents of *Dominican* and *Franciscan* Friers, which had been founded in the year 1518. A second Force sent hither under *Gonsalvo de Ocampo*, wasteth a great part of the Countrey, beheads one of their Kings, and hangs some of his People. But that strength being withdrawn or defeated also, *Diego de Castellon* is sent over by the Council resident in *Hispaniola*, to secure the possession of the Countrey; by whom the *Castle* first, and after the *Burrough* of *Cumana* was built and planted. Some other attempts there were for a farther Conquest, but they proved nothing but attempts; except the building of the Castle of *S. Michael de Neveri*, by *Hierom* of *Ortal*, and the Discovery of some of the inland Provinces, 150 Leagues from the Sea-side, by *Antonio Sedenno*, Anno 1537. of which nothing followed, but the Registring of that tedious March.

2. *VENEZUELA* is bounded on the East with *Cumana*; on the West, with the Bay of *Venezuela*, the Lake of *Maracaybo*, and the new Realm of *Granada*. So called by *Alfonso de Oieda*, one of the first Discoverers of it, *Anno* 1599. because he found a Burrough of some of the Savages situate in the midst of the Waters, to which was no passage but by Boat: the word importing as much as *Little Venice*.

It is in length from East to West 130 Leagues; in breadth where broadest about 80. The Soil so plentiful of all sorts both of Fruit and Grain, the Countrey so repleniished with all kind of Cattel, and excellent Pastures to maintain them, that the Neighbouring Nations call it by the name of *the Granary*. Such store there goeth from hence of Wheaten Meal, Bisket, Cheese, Hogs-flesh, Ox-hides, and Cloth of Cotton ready made, as very well deserves that Title. Here is also very great plenty of Fish, wild Beasts for hunting, Mines of Gold and other Metals: besides an infinite deal of *Sarsaparilla* sent to *Europe* yearly.

The People are of the same Nature and Disposition with those of *Cumana*, with whom they do participate in all points of that Character. The Women (which was there omitted) trained up to ride, run, leap, and swim, as well as the men to till the Land; and look to the business of the House, whilst the men hunt or fish to bring in Provision. They count it a great part of Beauty to have very thick Thighs; which they effect by binding their Legs hard below the Knee from their very Childhood. Shameless enough till married, after more reserved; though rather for fear of a Divorce, than for love of Modesty.

Rivers of note I meet with none instead of which are many convenient Harbors and capacious Bays. The chief, that called *Golfo triste*, from some Shipwrecks, or the like misfortune happening to the Namer of it. 2 The Bay of *Coro*, or *Venezuela*, large and spacious, which by the Frith or Streight of half a League over, receiveth the Tribute of 3 The great Lake called the Lake of *Maracaybo*, by the *Spaniards* called *Lago de Nuestra Sennora*, or our Ladie's Lake, in compass about eighty Leagues; on the Banks whereof dwell many Nations of the Savages, and into which there falleth a River from the Realm of *Granada*, by which the two Provinces maintain Commerce with one another.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Maracapana*, the fartheſt Port upon the East, and one of the best on all this Coast; in which the *Spaniards* of *Cubagua* had once a Garrison, under colour of defending the Countrey against the Savages, but in plain truth to use it for an opportunity to seize upon their persons, and carry them away for Slaves. Those parts are hereby unpeopled, or but

meanly populous. 2. *Venezuela*, the moſt Weſtern Town of all the Province, commonly called *Coro*, ſituate in the Latitude of 11 Degrees: built on the Sea, where it hath an Haven on each ſide; the one capacious but not ſafe, the other ſafe enough, but not very capacious. But being built in a ſweet and healthy Air, and neighboured by the richeſt Soil of all the Countrey, it hath been long the ordinary Seat of the Governour, and the See of a Biſhop, (Suffragan to the Archbiſhop of *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*.) Once ſuddenly ſurprized by the *Engliſh*, *Anno* 1595. and burnt to aſhes; but as ſuddenly repaired again. 3. *Caravalleda*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de Caravalleda*, 80 Leagues from *Coro* towards the Eaſt, ſeated upon the Sea near an unſafe Haven, and defended from aſſault by the Caſtle of *Caracas*; ſo called from the name of the Tribe in which it ſtandeth. Near unto which the Hills ariſe to ſo great an height, that they ſeem to equal the *Pike* of *Tenariffe* ſo much talked of. 4. *S. Jago de Leon*, in the ſame Tribe of *Caracas*, taken by the *Engliſh* in the ſame year. 5. *Nova Valentia*, 25 Leagues from *S. Jago de Leon*, and from *Coro* 60. 6. *New Xeres* lately built, fifteen leagues on the South of *New Valentia*. 7. *Nova Segovia*, one league onely from *New Xeres*; ſituate on the Banks of *Baraquicemiti*, the moſt noted River of this Tract. 8. *Tucayo*, in the Valley ſo called; not very large, but plentifully loaded with rich Sugar-canes, for which ſome Sugar-works or *Ingenios* are here lately built. 9. *Truxillo*, or *Nueſtra Sennora de la Paz*, 18 leagues on the South of the great Lake of *Maracaybo*, on which the Inhabitants hereof have a Village which belongs unto it, where they hold a Factory for the ſale of their Wares. 10. *Laguna*, on the bottom of the Lake it ſelf; not elſe obſervable but for the multitude of Tigers which do haunt about it.

This Countrey, diſcovered by *Columbus*, and named by *Alfonſo de Oeida*, as before is ſaid, was firſt pretended to, for Neighbourhood's ſake, by the Spaniards planted in *Cubagna*. Afterwards *John de Anpuez*, by order from the Council reſident at *Domingo* in *Hiſpaniola*, was employed in the Diſcovery of it, *Anno* 1527. But *Charles* the Fifth, having taken up great ſums of money of the *Velſeri*, a wealthy Family of *Augſburg*, pawned this Countrey to them; by whom *Ambroſius Alfinger* was ſent with 400 Foot, and 80 Horſe to take poſſeſſion. But he and his Succeſſors in that Employment not minding ſo much the Conqueſt as the Spoil of the Countrey, the Council of *Domingo* undertook the buſineſs once again; and in the year 1545. ſent over one *John de Caravayal*, who treading in the ſteps of the *Germans*, or rather out-going them in all ſorts of Rapine, was outed on a ſecond Order by one *John Perez de Toloſa*, by whom the Province was reduced into ſome good order. In the year 1550. the *Negroes*, brought hither in great multitudes out of *Africk*, began to mutiny; but their deſign was diſcovered, and themſelves all ſlain. Peace and contentment following after all theſe Troubles, the Countrey was in little time ſo throughly planted, and the Natives ſo encouraged in their ſeveral Tribes, that notwithſtanding the deſtructions made by the *Germans* and *Spaniards*, here were reckoned not long ſince above 100000 of the Savages; not numbring thoſe above fifty, or under 18 years of Age; who, by an Order of the Council of *Spain* for theſe parts of *America*, are exempt from Taxes.

3. *MARGARITA* is an Iſland ſituate over againſt the *Salina* or Salt-Lake in *Cumana*, from the main Land whereof, it is diſtant about ſeven Leagues. So called from the abundance of Pearls which the *Spaniards* found at the firſt Diſcovery, which the *Latiniſts* call *Margaritas*, and from them the *Spaniards*. Which though it ſignifie no other than the vulgar or common Pearl, yet here were alſo ſtore of thoſe of the greater eſtimate, ſuch as the *Romans* by the figure of *Antiphraſis* called *Uniones*, becauſe they always grew in couples. *Nulli duo reperiuntur indiſcreti*, ſaith *Pliny*; *unde nomen* Unionum *ſcilicet* Romanæ *impoſuere delicie*.

The Iſle is affirmed to be 16 Leagues in length, and ſix in breadth; ſituate under the 11 Degree of Northern Latitude. Well ſtored with Pearls upon the Shores, when firſt diſcovered; but even then, when moſt plentifully ſtored with that Commodity, ſhe had not Water of her own to quench her thirſt, compelled to fetch it from *Cumana*. Otherwiſe plentiful enough both of Maize and Fruit. The People obſequiouſly ſervile to their Lords, the *Spaniards*; ſo long accuſtomed unto Bondage, that it is now grown another nature. Places of moſt importance in it, 1. *Monpater*, in the Eaſt corner of the Iſland; a Fort of the *Spaniards*, built for ſecuring their rich Trade of Pearl-fiſhing, and to defend their Ships which lie there at Anchor: within the command whereof is a little Burrough, and the Houſe of the Governour. 2. *El valle de Santa Luzia*, two leagues from the Sea, a *Spaniſh* Colony. 3. *Makanao*, the chief Village of the Natives.

This Iſland, firſt diſcovered in the third Voyage of *Columbus*, *Anno* 1498. grew ſuddenly into great eſteem, by reaſon of the rich Pearl-fiſhing which they found on the Shores thereof. And in regard the Natives were ſo ready to betray their Treaſures, (of which themſelves made little reckoning) they found more favour from the Spaniards, and obtained more Liberties from the King, than the reſt of the Savages. Inſomuch that the Spaniards either could not, or would not compel them to dive into the Sea for Pearl; but bought *Negroe* Slaves from *Guinea* and the Coaſts of *Africk*, whom they inforced with great Torments to dive into the bottom of the Sea, many times ſeven or eight Fathom deep, to bring up the Shels in which that Treaſure was included: where many of them were drowned, and ſome maimed with Sharks and other Fiſhes. But that rich Trade is much diminiſhed of late, if it fail not quite. The cauſe thereof to be imputed to the unſatiable Avarice of the *Spaniards*, ſo greedy upon Pearl, that they deſtroyed the very Seed, and making gain of whatſoever they could meet with, for a little preſent profit, loſt the hopes of the future. The Iſland is ſince leſs famous, and not much frequented. Viſited to its coſt in the year 1601. by the *Engliſh* under Captain *Parker*, who received here 500 *l.* in Pearls for the ranſom of Priſoners; and took a Ship which came from the Coaſt of *Angola*, laden with 370 *Negroes* to be ſold for Slaves.

4. *CUBAGNA* is an Iſland lying betwixt *Margarita* and the Promontory of *Aroya* upon the Continent; from the firſt diſtant but one League, from the other ſix; it ſelf in compaſs about three. Rich on the ſhores by the abundance of Pearls which were found about them, but very beggerly on the Land. Deſtitute both of Graſs and Water, by conſequence of Cattel alſo, except onely Conies, and but few of thoſe. So that like many a Gallant, who ſpend all upon the Back, and nothing on the Belly, ſhe had her out-ſide laced with Pearls, but within nothing to be found but want and hunger. Their Bread and Water brought them out of other Countreys, and their Fruits too, if they deſired to have any; here being very few Trees, and thoſe moſt of *Guaiacum*. But ſo abundant in this Treaſure, that the Kings Fifths for many years amounted to 15000 Ducats yearly out of this poor Iſland.

In this reſpect it was preſently reſorted to and poſſeſſed by the *Spaniards*, who planted here a Colony, which they called *New Cadiz*, and grew in ſhort time unto ſo great power, that they made themſelves Maſters of the Port of *Maracapana* in *Venezuela*, one of the beſt upon thoſe Seas. But in the year 1521. hearing that the Savages of *Cumana* had deſtroyed the Convent of *Franciſcans*

cans on the oppoſite ſhore, they cowardly forſook the Iſland, and fled to *Hiſpaniola*. Sent back again by the Council there, under the Conduct of *James de Caſtellon*, by whom the Town was made more beautiful and ſtrong then ever formerly. In great eſteem as long as the Pearl-fiſhing did continue; now, with that, decayed. Yet ſtill the Iſland doth deſerve ſome conſideration for a Fountain on the Eaſt part of it near unto the Sea, continuing, though the Pearls be gone; which yieldeth a Bituminous ſubſtance like Oyl, medicinable for Diſeaſes, and is found two or three Leagues off floating on the Sea: more profitable for the good of Mankind, and more eaſily found, than the Pearls, which ſunk unto the bottom, and maintained our Pride.

Four miles from hence, but appendent to it, lieth a little Iſland called *Coche*, three miles in compaſs, but ſo abundantly ſtored with Pearls, that it hath been worth in that one Commodity, for ſome months together, above a thouſand pounds a moneth of our Engliſh money. Firſt peopled upon that occaſion, *Anno* 1529. but the occaſion failing, the Plantation ended, the Iſle being now unpeopled, as not worth the looking after.

5. The *LESSER ISLANDS* of this Prefecture, or Provincial Government, lie all along upon the Coaſt of *Venezuela*, from Eaſt to Weſt. The principal of which, 1. *Tortuga*, 12 or 14 miles on the Weſt of *Margarita*: four miles in length, hardly one in breadth; but yielding ſuch good ſtore of Salt, that three or four Ships are laded with it every year. Well furniſhed with Goats and *Guaiacum*, but not elſe conſiderable; except for being naturally fenced about with Rocks, and yielding a convenient Harbour for the uſe of Mariners. 2. *Catelina*, by the *Engliſh* called *The Iſle of Providence*, as the former is by the name of *Aſſociation*; both which, being void of all Inhabitants and tame Beaſts, were poſſeſſed by them about the year 1629. at ſuch time as there was open War between *England* and *Spain*. After which, not being claimed by the *Spaniards* in making up the Peace enſuing, they were granted by King *Charles*, by his Letters Patents under the Great Seal of *England*, to certain Noblemen and Gentlemen, and their Succeſſors, who for the ſpace of 20 years, or thereabouts, have enjoyed them quietly; the Iſlands being planted by them with their ſeveral Colonies, and all things neceſſary to maintain and enrich the ſame. 3. *Bonaire*, oppoſite to the Bay of *Golfo triſte*, in the Latitude of 12 degrees; well furniſhed with Sheep and Goats, and other Cattel brought out of *Spain*, and peopled with ſome Savages out of *Hiſpaniola*, whom the *Spaniards* Chriſtened and ſent thither: ſome *Spaniards* with their Governour intermixt amongſt them. The Iſland 16 miles in compaſs; not fruitful naturally, but in Trees, which are great and numerous. 4. *Curacaos*, nine miles on the Weſt of *Bonaire*, and as many in compaſs; of a more fertile Soil by far, and of very rich Paſtures. The people are given to Grazing, and make good ſtore of Cheeſe, tranſported thence to other places; the Iſland having toward the North a convenient Harbour. 5. *Aruba*, on the North-Eaſt of *Curacaos*, from which nine miles diſtant, in compaſs not above five miles, for the moſt part level. One Hill it hath (amongſt ſome others) faſhioned like a Sugar-loaf. Inhabited by few Savages, and fewer *Spaniards*.

The other Iſlands on this Coaſt, as, 1. the *Toſtigos*, lying Eaſtward of *Margarita*, 2. *Blancha*, 3. *Orchilla*, 4. *Rocca*, and 5. the Iſle of *des Aves*, or of Birds, interpoſed betwixt *Tortuga* and *Bonaire*, ſome of them rather Rocks than Iſlands, few ſtored with any living Creatures for the uſe of men, and none of them at all with men to manure and dreſs them, I paſs over here; and ſo proceed from theſe Iſlands of the Province of *Paria*, to thoſe which are ſubordinate to the Council of *S. Domingo*, and make a Province of themſelves. But firſt we muſt go back, and bring up ſome of the Iſlands of *Mare del Zur*, which could not be reduced to any of the former Provinces.

And ſo much of *PERUANA*.

Of the American Iſlands:

And firſt of thoſe which are in

MARE del ZUR.

THE *AMERICAN ISLANDS* ſcattered up and down the Shores of this *New World*, are commonly divided into thoſe of *Mare del Zur*, or the Pacifick Ocean, and thoſe of the *Atlantick*, or *Mare del Noordt*. The firſt ſo called by *Magellanus*, the firſt Diſcoverer, who, paſſing through thoſe troubleſom and tempeſtuous Streights which now bear his name, found ſuch a change upon his coming into the Main, that he gave it the name of *Mare del Zur*, (*quod à tranquillitate vocavit Mare del Sur*, ſaith the Author of the *Atlas Minor*) from the calm and peaceable temper of it; by the *Latines* called *Mare Pacificum*, in the ſame regard. Called alſo the Southern Ocean, becauſe of its ſituation on the South-ſide of *America*, in reference to ſome part of the Gulf of *Mexico* and the Streights of *Anian*. Not known unto the *Spaniards* till diſcovered by *Nonnius Vaſquez de Balboa*, conducted hither by one of the *Caciques* or petty Kings of the Countrey about *Nombre di Dios*; who ſeeing the Spaniards ſo greedy after Gold, told them that he would bring them to a place where their thirſt ſhould be ſatisfied. Accordingly he brought them to the oppoſite Shore, this *Balboa* being the chief man in that Adventure: who diſcovering farther on the Sea, opened the way unto *Pizarro*, and the reſt that followed, to the golden Treaſures of *Peru*. He was executed notwithſtanding this good ſervice, by *Don Pedro de Avila*, within ſhort time after. But the more full diſcovery of it is to be aſcribed unto *Magellanus*, and ſome later Adventurers, though the Spaniards got nothing by the bargain. For formerly, as long as the Southern Sea was unknown to any but themſelves, they conveyed their Gold and treaſures from one place to another, from *Panama* to *Peru*, from *Peru* to *Panama*, without loſs or charge, and thought their Ports upon that Shore to be unacceſſible

But after the way unto this Sea was found out by *Magellanus*; *Drake*, *Cavendiſh*, and the reſt of our *Engliſh* Adventurers did ſo ſcour theſe Coaſts, that they left them neither Port nor Ship which they did not ranſack; as hath been evidenced before in ſome particulars.

As for the Iſlands of this Sea, they lie moſt of them ſo near the Shores, as if placed there by Nature to ſerve as Outworks to defend the Continent. Many in tale, but few of conſideration; and of thoſe few, ſome of the chief have been deſcribed already in their proper places, as parts and members of the Province upon which they lie. The reſidue, which lie too far off to come under ſuch conſideration, muſt be mentioned here; and thoſe reduced to theſe two Heads, 1. *Los Ladrones*, 2. The Iſlands of *John Fernandes*.

1. *LOS LADRONES* are certain Iſlands ſituate betwixt the main Land of *America* and the *Philippine* Iſlands, in the Latitude of 185. and the 4. Degree of Northern Latitude. So called by *Magellanus*, who firſt diſcovered them, becauſe of the Thieviſhneſs of the Inhabitants, (*Inſulæ Latronum* is their name in *Latine*) who had ſtoln his Cock-boat, which he was forced by main force to recover from them. And they continue ſtill both their name and nature. Found ſuch by *Cavendiſh* and *Noort* in their ſeveral Voyages, to whom they came under colour of buying Iron, (a Commodity which they highly prize) but either cloſely or openly ſtealing whatſoever they met with. The People tall of ſtature, brown of complexion, and inclining to corpulency; extreamly active, and good Divers, continuing a long time under the Water, as if alike fitted to both Elements; inſomuch as the *Hollanders* then with *Noort*, to make trial of it, caſt five pieces of Iron into the Sea, all fetched out by one of them. The Women as good at it as the Men. Both Sexes given to filthy and promiſcuous Luſts; for which branded (many of them) with the marks of their Incontinency, the Pox having eaten up both their Lips and their Noſes.

Their Religion is worſhipping the Devil, whoſe Images they have in Wood on the Head of their Boats; the Chappel and the Saints fit for ſuch Devotions. But for the nature of theſe Iſlands, and what Subjection the Inhabitants of it yield to the King of *Spain*, I am yet to ſeek. But like enough they yield as little as ſome others do, which yet are reckoned by our Authours to be parts of *America*.

2. The *Iſlands* of *John Fernandes* are two in number; ſo called from *John Fernandes*, the firſt Diſcoverer, *Anno* 1574: each of them five or ſix miles in compaſs, and about 300 miles diſtant from the Shores of *Chile*. Situate in the 33 Degree of Southern Latitude; rocky and barren, but well wooded, and thoſe woods repleniſhed with Goats, but their fleſh not ſavoury as in other places. Some ſtore of Sanders there is in them, and of Palms no ſcarcity. Plenty of Fiſh upon the Shores, for which cauſe viſited ſometimes by the *Spaniards* lying in *Peru*, and fitted with commodious Harbours and Roads for ſhipping, which makes them not neglected by other Nations as they paſs this way. None elſe of note in all this Sea, but ſuch as lie upon the Shores of their ſeveral Provinces; which we have looked upon already. And therefore paſſing through the Streights, and coming up unto the Iſlands of *Paria*, where before we left, we will now look on thoſe of *Mare del Noords*, or that part of the *Atlantick* which waſheth the Shores of this New World (the reaſon of which Names we have ſeen before) ſubordinate to the Council or Government of *S. Domingo*; *viz.* 1. the *Caribes*, 2. *Porto Rico*, 3. *Hiſpaniola*, 4. *Cuba*, and 5. *Jamaica*. The reſt are already ſpoken of in their proper places.

1. The *CARIBES*.

THe *CARIBES*, or *Cannibal Iſlands*, are in number many; 27 of them known by their proper names; the reſt of leſs note, (though ſome of theſe of little enough) not yet ſo diſtinguiſhed. Called thus in general, becauſe inhabited by *Cannibals*, & man-eating people (at their diſcovery) as the word *Caribes* doth import. They lie extended like a Bow from the coaſt of *Paria* unto the Iſle of *Rico Porto*: of different temper, as muſt needs be in ſuch variety; & therefore not within the compaſs of *a general Character*. Some of the principal we ſhall conſider more diſtinctly; and for the reſt, 'tis enough to name them, or elſe we will paſs them by.

1. *GRANADA*, the neareſt of this crew to the Main Land of *Cumana*, is ſituate in the Latit. of 20 Deg. and 15 Min. in form like a Creſcent or half Moon, the two horns not a mile aſunder, the whole length but ſix. Shaded all over with thick Woods, but notwithſtanding of a rich and fruitful Soil. A Haven in it of good uſe, but no Town of note. The people of the ſame ill Condition with the other *Savages*, but more wit to hide it; moſt miſchievouſly intended when they ſeem moſt kind, & then moſt to be avoided.

2. *S. VINCENT*, 18 miles on the North of *Granada*, is of ſo bleſſed a Soil, that it brings forth abundance of Sugar-canes without charge to the Husbandman; watered with many pleaſant Rivers, and full of ſafe and convenient Bays for the uſe of Mariners. In figure Circular: the Diameter being 6 miles over; the Circle by conſequence 18. The people but of mean ſtature, ſlothful, and ſtudious only for the Belly: their love to which, makes them adventure in their ſmall Boats, hewn out of the body of a tree, to paſs into the Continent, and return again without help of the Compaſs; though diſtant from it, at the neareſt, above 30 miles.

3. *BARBADOS*, on the North-eaſt of *S. Vincent*, in the Latitude of 13 Deg. and 20 Min. Of an Oval form, 17 or 18 miles in compaſs. The ſoil in ſhew like that of *England*, but far more fruitful. On the Eaſt-ſide thruſting out it ſelf with Points and Angles, which yield ſome Bays; but full of Quick-ſands, and unſafe for ſhipping: on the South furniſhed with a large and commodious Harbour. Not very well provided of for Fruits or Cattel, till made a Colony of the *Engliſh*, who brought thither from their own Country Swine and Kine, Oranges and the like from others. The chief Commodity hitherto made of this Plantation comes by the planting of Tobacco, and by a kind of courſe Sugar called *Barbados Sugar*, which muſt be quickly ſpent, or it will melt to nothing. Were they in ſtock, and not forced to make a quick return of their Commodities, they might make here as good Sugars as in other places. Yet this Plantation is ſaid to be worth all the reſt which are made by the *Engliſh*, who (as I take it) are the ſole Colony in the Iſland; but at the courteſie of the *Spaniard*, without whoſe leave and liking not of force to hold it.

4. *MANTININO*, on the North-weſt of the *Barbados*, by the Savages called *Mandaninam*, with little difference. Everywhere ſwelled with hills: of which 3 are moſt eminent for height: one of them, which way ſoever a man looks upon it, carrying the reſemblance of an Hat. Inhabited in the time of *Peter Martyr*, the Hiſtorian, with none but women; afterwards with a more fierce & barbarous people than the reſt of theſe Iſlands: but neither men or women to be ſeen of late: whether deſtroyed, or removed farther from the ſhores for fear of their deſtruction, is a thing uncertain.

5. *DOMINICA*, ſeated on the North of *Mantinino*,

nino, twelve leagues in length; exceeding fruitful of Tobacco, which they sell unto the *Europæans* for Hatchets, Knives, and other Instruments of Iron. Famed for two Fountains of Hot Water, and a commodious Haven at the West-side of it, into which falleth a River 20 paces broad. The People as barbarous as ever, *Cannibals* or Man-eaters to this very day. At deadly enmity with the *Spaniards*, and to no man trusty, but where they cannot hurt, or dare not. Both Sexes wear their hair long, and colour their bodies over with Oaker. Yet bloudy and barbarous though they be, they are ruled by a King of their own, distinguished from the rest in his dress or habit, whom they most readily obey.

6. *DESEADA*, or the Land of *Desire*, on the North-east of *Dominica*, discovered by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, naked of Trees, and at the first sight afar off not unlike a Galley. Of great use to the Spaniards, who always take it in their way from the *Canaries* to these parts of *America*, and back again at their return.

The like use do they make of 7. The Isle of *GUARDALUPE*, parallel to this, but directly Westward: at which the Fleets which come from *Spain* use to take fresh water, and there disperse themselves to their several Ports. Eight miles in length, and of good Anchorage in most parts of the Sea adjoyning. North-east from hence lieth

8. *S. Maria del Antigua*, commonly called *ANTIGUA* only, and by some mistakingly *ANTEGO*. Seven leagues in length, and as many in breadth; difficult of access, and destitute of fresh water; but well replenished with Woods, and provided of Fens. Of late times made a Colony of the *English*, who do still possess it.

9. S. *CHRISTOPHERS*, on the North-west of *Guardalupe*, in the Lat. of 17 Deg. and 20 Min. The length six miles, the breadth in many places four, and in some but two: much swelled with Hills, and towards the East provided of several Salt wiches. The *French* and *English* had sometimes in it several Colonies, by whom the Natives were destroyed, or otherwise compelled to forsake their Dwellings; convict, as was pretended, of some manifest Treacheries. But the two Colonies did not long enjoy the sole possession; ejected by *Frederick de Toledo*, as he passed this way with his Navy; though suffered to return to their former dwellings, as rather profitable than dangerous to the Crown of *Spain*. Their chief Employment and Commodity lies in their Tobacco, by some much commended. Joyning hereto, or but a league from it at the most, is

10. The Isle of *NEVIS*, which is affirmed to be five leagues in compass; well wooded, and as pleasantly watered; insomuch as the Inhabitants of the Isle of *Dominica* used to come hither for their pleasures, but for Hunting chiefly. Now famed for some Baths or Hot-waters, found out by the *English*, who, in the year 1528. placed a Colony in it. But whether subsisting of it self, or a part of their Plantation in S. *Christophers*, I am yet to learn.

11. *SANCTA CRUX*, by the Inhabitants called *Ayay*, on the North-west of S. *Christophers*, and the South-east of *Porto Rico*, from which last distant 15 Leagues. Woody and Mountainous, not well provided of fresh Waters; but on the west side furnished with a safe and commodious Road, under the covert of the Mountains. Amongst their Fruits are some that resemble a green Apple, which tasted, so inflames the Tongue, that for 24 hours it swelleth in so great extremity, as makes it altogether useless; but after that, by little and little it abates again. The like happeneth also to the Face, if washed before Sun-rising with their Fen-waters, which are very frequent in this Island; after the rising of the Sun, without any harm at all. In this there is a Colony of the *English* also, but of later standing than those of S. *Christophers* and *Barbados*.

Some of the principal of the rest are 1. *Anguilla*, 2. *Barbada*, 3. S. *Bartholomews*, 4. S. *Lucies*, 5. S. *Martins*, 6. *Monserrat*, 7. *Rotunda*, 8. *Saba*, 9. *Virgogorda*, and 10. *Sumbrero*; of which we have little but the names: the rest, though known by several names, are not worth the naming. Only we are to adde concerning the whole Nation of *Caribes*, once here inhabiting, that they did usually hunt for Men, as Men for Beasts, roving as far as *Porto Rico*, to seek after their prey; and what they caught was sure to go to the pot, in the worst sense too. *Columbus*, when he was at the Isle of *Guardalupe*, found 30 Captive Children which were reserved to be eaten, and in their Houses divers Vessels filled with Man's flesh, and some upon the Spit ready to be roasted. Not had they laid aside this Diet till after the year 1564. but how long I know not: For at that time a Spanish Ship coming to Water at the Isle of *Dominica*, they cut her Cables in the night, haled her to the Land, and devoured all that were in her. But the Islands have been of late times well cleared of those Monsters; some of them brought unto better order, but the most destroyed, as the common Enemies of Mankind; the Islands where they dwelt being either totally deserted, or taken up by the *Europæans*, and their several Colonies.

2. *PORTO RICO* and *MONICO*.

PORTO RICO lieth on the North-west of *Sancta Crux*, from which distant about 15 Leagues, and near upon as many from *Hispaniola*; 136 Leagues from the main Land of *Paria*, and not much less from the Cape of *Coquibocco* in *Rio de la Hacha*, a Province of *Castella Aurea*. It took this name from the chief Town and Haven of it; but was called by *Columbus* at the first Discovery S. *Johannis Insula*, or the Isle of S. *John*, by the Natives *Boriguen*.

It is situate under the 18 and 19 Degrees of Northern Latitude; in form quadrangular, but of a greater length than breadth, such as the Geometricians call *oblongam*: the length hereof being 30 Leagues, and the breadth but 20. The Air hereof is very pleasant and temperate, not scorched with furious Heats in Summer, nor made offensive by the fall of continual Rains; exposed sometimes (chiefly in *August* and *September*) to the troublesomness of sudden tempests, called *Hurricanoes*. The Soil is indifferently fruitful, though somewhat Mountainous: here being (besides other Hills of inferiour note) a Ridge of high Hills which run cross the Countrey from the one end unto the other. Their chief Commodities are Sugar-canes, Ginger, *Cassia*, and great store of Hides: the *Europæans* Cattel having so abundantly increased, that they kill thousands for their Skins, leaving the flesh to be a prey unto Dogs and Birds. Some Mines here were of Gold and Silver, but consumed long since. And so are all the Natives also; of whom, in that respect, it is impertinent to give any Character.

Chief Rivers of the Island, 1. *Cairobon*, 2. *Boyaman*; of divers Fountains, and of several and divided Courses. 3. *Luysa*, and 4. *Toa*; two Rivers growing out of one. The Spring of that one is in the Mountains of *Guayamo*, whence running Northwards in one Channel 16 Leagues together, it afterwards divides it self into those two streams. 5. *Guiano*, 6. *Arezibo*, 7. *Guadiabo*, of lesser note; but all of them, as well as all the rest before, concluding in some safe and capacious Haven.

Places of most importance in it, 1. *Porto Rico*, the chief Town, built in a little Island, on the North-side of the greater

greater, but joyned unto it with huge Piles at vast expences, by the command of *Philip* the First, *Anno* 1504. Well built, with large Streets and convenient Houses, according to the Model of the Cities of *Spain*, and beautified with a fair Cathedral; the Bishop one of the Suffragans of the Archbishop of S. *Domingo* in *Hispaniola*. The Town unwalled, but fortified with two strong Castles; the one of which secures the Haven, and the other the Town. In vain attempted, and with the loss of 40 or 50 men, by Sir *Francis Drake*, *Anno* 1595. but taken two years after by *George* Earl of *Cumberland*, who had a purpose to have peopled it with an *English* Colony. Discouraged from it by the death of 400 of his Men, by change of Air, and some intemperance of Diet, he set sail for *England*, doing no other hurt to the Town or Island, but the disfurnishing it of 70 pieces of Ordnance, and some part of their Treasure, which he brought home with him. 2. *S. Germans*, in the Western part of the Island, but four Leagues from the Sea; once the chief of the Island, now both unfortified and small. 3. *Arezibo*, on the River so called. 4. *Luysa*, the most noted Port of the Eastern parts, situate on the mouth of the River so named.

Eastward hereof, betwixt it and *Hispaniola*, lies the Island of *Mona* (might not this, think we, be so called by *Madoc ap Owen Gwinedth*, of whom before?) three leagues in compass; Rocky, and of a brackish Earth, but fit for the production of Limons, Oranges, and such kind of Fruit, which are here in plenty. Not far off, but more towards the West, *Monico*, or *Monetta*, as our *English* call it; where they found such infinite store of Fowl, that they flew over their heads as thick as Hail, and made them almost deaf with the very noise; their Eggs so thick upon the ground that they loaded two Boats with them in three hours, and could hardly pass forwards without treading on them.

But to return to *Porto Rico*, or the Island of S. *Johns*: it was touched upon by *Columbus* in his second Voyage, *Anno* 1493. but first inhabited by *John Ponce* of *Leon*, *Anno* 1510. who being courteously entertained by *Aiguabana*, the chief Prince thereof, planted a Colony of *Spaniards* in the North part of the Island, which he called *Caparra*. The Colony ten years after that removed to *Guanica*, and from thence to *S. Germans*: carrying with it the repute of the chief Town of all the Island, upon every remove, till the building of *Porto Rico*, where it since hath fixed. The Island very populous for the bigness of it when the *Spaniards* came to it: but the Natives were long ago consumed by several Butcheries; and, as some write, not above 1500 *Spaniards* are in all the Countrey. What else concerns the Story of it, we have seen before.

2. *HISPANIOLA.*

HISPANIOLA lieth on the West of *Porto Rico*; the distance we have seen already. By the Inhabitants called *Haity*, and by some *Quisqueia*; but by *Columbus* it was honoured with the name of *Hispaniola*, or *Little Spain*; and of late times beginneth to be called *S. Domingo*, from the chief Town of it.

The form thereof is Triangular, extended in a sharp Angle, called *Cabo del Engano*, towards *Porto Rico*; the Western end fashioned like a Bay or Semicircle; the Northern point of which is named S. *Nicholas*, the Southern, *Cabo de Donna Maria*. The length affirmed to be 150 Leagues, the breadth in some places 60, in some but 30, thence growing less and less, till it come unto the Eastern Angle; the whole compass estimated at 400. Situate betwixt the 18 and 20 Degrees of Northern Latitude. Of an Air much infested with Morning-heats; but cooler in the Afternoon, by the constant blowing of a Sea-Gale, which they there commonly call *Virson*.

The Countrey is for the most part beautiful and flourishing; the Trees always in their Summer-livery, and the Meadows green, as if it did enjoy a perpetual Spring. In many places swelled with high craggy Mountains, whence the name of *Haity*, that word so signifying in the natural Language of the Natives. Of such an excellent Herbage, that the Cattel brought hither out of *Spain* have increased almost beyond Arithmetick; grown wild for want of proper owners, and hunted unto death like the Stags of the Forrest, though onely to rob them of their Skins. The Soil so fertile, that in the space of 16 days Herbs and Roots will grow ripe, and be fit to be eaten. So plentifully stored with Ginger and Sugar-canes, that in the year 1587. there were shipped hence 27500 pound weight of Ginger, and 900 Chests of refined Sugar: an evident argument of the richness and fertility of it. A farther proof hereof may be, 1. The rich Mines of Gold, in which they used to find Gold without mixture of dross or other Metals. 2. The great increase of Sugar, one Cane here filling twenty, sometimes thirty measures. 3. The wonderful yield of Corn, amounting in some places to an hundred-fold. But the Mines were long ago exhausted, insomuch as the Inhabitants are fain to use brass Money: but instead of those of Gold, they have found out others of Brass and Iron, and some few of Silver; but not much searched into of late, for want of Workmen.

The reason of that Want is to be ascribed unto the Covetousness and Cruelty of the Spanish Nation: who, out of an unsatiable thirst for Gold, consumed the people in their Mines; and out of the like thirst for Bloud, killed so many of them, that in few years they destroyed three Millions of the Natives. And it is probably supposed, that had not *Charles* the Fifth restrained them by a penal Edict from compelling the Natives against their wills to those works of Servitude, there had not been one Native left in all this Island, nor in any other part of their Plantations. Such as are left are said to be of low stature, of black hair, and a complexion somewhat inclining to that colour: not differing in Manners, Habit, or Religion, from the Spaniards there.

Rivers of most note are, 1. *Ozama*, on whose Banks stands *Domingo*, the chief Town of the Island capable of the greatest ships to the very Wharf. 2. *Nigua*, which passing through the rich Pastures, or making the Pastures rich by its secret vertue, runneth towards the West: as do also, 3. *Yaquimo*, 4. *Nizao*, and 5. *Neyba*, 6. *Hayna*, of a contrary course to the other three. 7. *Yaqui*, or *Jacho*, which falleth into the Northern Seas. 8. *Nicayagu*, 9. *Cocitemico*, 10. *Xanique*. These three last famous heretofore fore their Sands of Gold. Some speak of 30000 Brooks and Rivers which are found in this Countrey; two parts of which vast number had their golden Sands. A thing so far beyond the charity of the strongest Faith, (though reported by a Grave and Reverend Author) that I know not what interpretation to put upon it, except every Water-course, Ditch, and Gutter, may be reckoned in.

The whole divided when the Spaniards first came amongst them, into several Provinces or Kingdoms: as, 1. *Higuey*, 2. *Jacuagua*, 3. *Samana*, in the Eastern parts: 4. *Yaquimo*, 5. *Boaruco*, and 6. *Xaragua*, towards the South; and 7. *Guahabu*, and 8. *Cabaya*, in the West; and in the North, 9. *Cibao*, rich in Mines of Gold, 10. *Marien*, the Landing-place of *Columbus*, and 11. *Maguana*, in the Centre of the Island, the King whereof in the time of *Columbus* was named *Conabo*, of greatest power of any of those petit Royelets. Another division of it hath been made by Nature, parting it by four Rivers, all rising from one Mountain in the midst of the Island, into four Divisions:

ons; 1. the River *Jacbo*, running towards the North, 2. *Nubiba*, haſtning to the South, 3. *Yuna*, or *Junna*, towards the Eaſt, and 4. *Hatibonico*, to the Weſt. But theſe diviſions being long ſince grown out of uſe, we will ſurvey the chief of the Towns and Cities of it, as they come before us.

And they are, 1. *S. Domingo*, firſt built by *Bartholomew Columbus*, Anno 1494, on the Eaſt Bank of the *Ozama*; and afterwards (in the year 1502) removed by *Nicholas de Obando*, then Governour of the Iſland, to the oppoſite ſhore. Situate in a pleaſant Country among wealthy Paſtures, and neighboured with a ſafe and capacious Haven: the Houſes elegantly built, moſt of them of ſtone, and the whole well walled; beſide a Caſtle at the Weſt end of the Peer to defend the Haven: enriched by the Reſidence of the Governour, the Courts of Juſtice, the See of an Archbiſhop, and (beſides many Convents and Religious Houſes) an Hoſpital endowed with 20000 Ducats of yearly Rent. Eſteemed of greateſt Trade and Concourſe of Merchants, till the taking of *Mexico* and the Diſcovery of *Peru*; ſince that time ſenſibly decaying, and now reduced unto the number of 600 Families of *Spaniards*; the greateſt part of the City, and all the Suburbs, inhabited by *Negroes*, *Mulattos*, and other Strangers. Not yet recovered of the hurt it had by Sir *Francis Drake*, who in the year 1586 took it by force, and held it for the ſpace of a month, burning the greateſt part of the Houſes, and ſuffering the reſt to be redeemed at a certain price. 2. *S. Salvador*, 28 Leagues to the Eaſt of *Domingo*. 3. *Jaguana*, called alſo *Sancta Maria del Porto*, from a ſafe and beautiful Haven adjoyning to it; ſituate in the Weſt part of the Iſland: of no great bigneſs, conſiſting of no more then 150 Houſes when it was at the greateſt; but made much leſs by Captain *Newport*, who, in the year 1591, burnt it to the ground. 4. *Cotuy*, in the North of the Iſland, oppoſite to *Sancta Domingo*, from which diſtant almoſt ſixty Leagues: a little Town, but formerly of great eſteem for its Mines of Gold. 5. *Conception de la Vega*, the foundation of *Chriſtopher Columbus*, for whoſe ſake afterwards adorned with a See Epiſcopal. 6. *Puerto de la Plata*, 40 Leagues from *Domingo* on the Northern ſhore, there built on a commodious Bay by *Nicholas de Obando* before mentioned, by him alſo fortified: the ſecond Town of Wealth and Trade in all the Iſland. 7. *Azua*, now called *Compoſtella*, a noted Haven, and reſorted to for Sugars, which it yields abundantly.

This Iſland was firſt diſcovered by *Columbus*, (for I believe not that it was any of the Fortunate Iſlands which we read of in the life of *Sertorius*) in the firſt Voyage which he made, conducted hither by ſome of the Inhabitants of the Iſle of *Cuba*. Landing, and gaining the good will of the Savages by gentle uſage, he obtained leave of one of their Kings or *Caciques* to build a Fortreſs in his Country, which he called *Navidad*, or *Natividad*, leaving in it 36 *Spaniards* to keep poſſeſſion: whom he found both maſtered and murthered at his coming back. Being now better furniſhed for a new Plantation, he built the Town called *Iſabella*, (in honour of *Iſabella* (Queen of *Caſtile*) near the Mines of *Cibao*; which afterwards was deſerted alſo, and the Colony removed unto *S. Domingo*: the *Spaniards* ſending one Colony after another, till at laſt their number was increaſed to 14000, beſides Women and Children. But having rooted out the Natives by their infinite Cruelties, and exhauſted the Riches of the Countrey with as infinite Covetouſneſs, they betook themſelves to freſher Quarters, abandoning the Iſland to devour the Continent. Once had the Iſlanders rebelled, and fortified themſelves in the Province of *Baoruco*, a place ſo naturally ſtrong, that there was little need of the helps of Art. Not brought to leave that Faſtneſs but on ſuch Conditions as made the *Spaniard* leſs inſolent, and themſelves leſs Slaves.

4. *CUBA.*

CUBA lieth on the Weſt of *Hiſpaniola*, from which parted by a Frith, or narrow Channel, interpoſed betwixt the two Capes of *S. Nicholas* and that of *Mexico*, backed on the North with a Frie of *Iſlands* called the *Lucaies*, and ſome part of the *Peninſula* of *Florida*; extended towards the Eaſt to the extream point or Foreland of *Jucutan*, called *Cape de Cotache*, from which diſtant about 50 Leagues, and neighboured on the South with the Iſle of *Jamaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to Weſt, that is to ſay, from Cape *Maxie* towards *Hiſpaniola* to the Cape of *S. Anthony*, 230 leagues; in breadth where broadeſt hardly 40, but 15 in others. For the fertility of the Soil contending with *Hiſpaniola* for the pre-eminence, but in the temperature of the Air a great deal before it. Liberally ſtored with Ginger, *Caſſia*, Maſtick, Aloes, Cinamon, and Sugar, (not reckoning ſuch Commodities as are common unto this with others) beſides great plenty of Fleſh and Fiſh, and of Fowl no ſcarcity. The Gold more droſſie in the Mine than in *Hiſpaniola*, but the Braſs more perfect. Hilly, and full of lofty Mountains; but thoſe Mountains clad with divers Trees, ſome of which drop the pureſt Roſin, and the Hills ſending to the Valleys many notable Rivers. Peſtered with many ſorts of Serpents, not ſo much out of any ill condition of the Soil and Air, as by an old Superſtition of the Savages, in former times not ſuffered to kill them when they might, (this being a Diſh reſerved for the higher Powers) not able afterwards to deſtroy them, when it would have been ſuffered.

What other ſavage Rites they had, is not now material, the *Spaniards* having took an Order that they ſhould not trouble us in that particular. Yet thus much we may adde in memory of the firſt Inhabitants, that an old man of 80 years, one of the *Caciques* of the Iſland, addreſſed himſelf unto *Columbus* at his firſt coming hither, adviſing him to uſe his Fortune with moderation, and to remember that the Souls of men have two journeys when they leave this World; the one foul and dark, prepared for the injurious and cruel perſon; the other delectable and pleaſant, for the men of Peace. It is ſaid alſo of them, they knew not the uſe of Money, nor underſtood the niceties of *Meum* and *Tuum*; Tenants in common to the Bleſſings which the Earth brought forth, and Coheirs of Nature.

Amongſt the Rarities of this Iſland, they mention a Fountain out of which floweth a pitchy ſubſtance, which is found frequently on the Seas into which it falleth, excellent for the calking of Ships. Secondly a navigable River (but the name not told us) the waters of which were ſo hot, that a man could not indure to hold his hand in them. They tell us alſo, thirdly, of a Valley 15 leagues from *S. Jago*, which produceth ſtones exactly round, as if made for pleaſure; but yet meerly natural. But theſe are no greater Rarities than in other places, nor altogether ſo great as in *Hiſpaniola*. In which they tell us of a fair River whoſe waters are ſalt, and yet none but freſh ſtreams fall into it. Of another Lake (three leagues in compaſs) on the top of the Mountains, into which many Rivers were known to run without any Exit. Neither of theſe ſo ſtrange or rare as the *Cucuyo*, a kind of *Scarabe* or Beetle; the Eyes and Wings whereof, when opened, give ſo great a light in the darkeſt places, that a man may ſee to read and write by it, as well as by a Candle.

Rivers of moſt note, 1. *Cante*, much annoied with Crocodiles, (a Beaſt not common in theſe Iſlands, nor elſewhere in this) exceeding dangerous to ſuch as repoſe them-

themſelves on the Banks of the River. 2. *Arimao*, which disburtheneth it ſelf near the Port of *Xagua*. 3. *Rio di Porcos*, full of Rocks and Quick-ſands at the entrances of it. 4. *Rio Eſcondida*, paſſing betwixt *Habana* and the Port of *Marcanas*. 5 *Marien*, and 6. *Tanne*, of leſs note. Beſides theſe there is *Xagua*, a ſafe Station and Road for Shipping; of a narrow entrance, but large and ſpacious when once entred; above ten Leagues in length, and of breadth proportionable. So fenced on all ſides from the Winds, that Ships lie here in ſafety without any Anchor. Some other Bays there be as uſeful, though not ſo conſiderable.

Towns of moſt conſequence, 1. *S. Jago*, in the South part of the Iſland, ſituate about two Leagues from the Main, but in the bottom of a large and capacious Gulf, the moſt noted Port of all theſe Seas. Built by *Don Diego de Velaſques*, Anno 1514; afterwards made a Biſhop's See: beautified with a Cathedral, ſome Religious Houſes: once not inferiour unto any for numbers of People, though now few enough 2. *Baracao*, 30 Leagues on the Eaſt of *S. Jago*; the ſame foundation as the other, and neighboured by great quantities of *Eben*-wood. 3. *S. Salvador*, by ſome called *Baymo*, according to the old name of the Province in which it ſtandeth; built by *Velaſco* in the moſt pleaſant and richeſt part of all the Iſland, but not ſo fitly as the other for Trade and Merchandiſe. 4. *Porto del Principe*, an Haven-town in the North parts: not far from which is the Fountain of a pitchy or bituminous Liquour, ſpoken of before, which I conceive to be much of the ſame nature with the Fountains of *Naphta* in the Eaſt. 5. *Trinidad*, another of *Velaſco*'s foundations, nine or ten Leagues Eaſtward of the Port of *Xagua*: once well frequented, but now forſaken, and mere nothing. 6. *Havana*, in the North parts, oppoſite to *Florida*, a noted and well traded Port; ſo ſtrongly ſituate and fortified both by Nature and Art, that it ſeems impregnable. The Entrances defended with two notable Caſtles; a greater then either oppoſite to the mouth of the Haven; all ſo commodiouſly built and well planted with Ordnance, that they are able to keep out and ſcatter the greateſt Navy. Near one of them ſtandeth an high Tower, from the top whereof notice is given unto the Guards of every Ship that cometh within view of the Watchmen. The beſt aſſurance not only of this Iſland but the Bay of *Mexico*; and therefore honoured for the moſt part with the Seat of the Governour, and the greateſt Trade of all theſe Seas: the Ships which are bound for *Spain* from all parts of the Gulf tarrying here for one another till all meet together, and ſetting ſail from hence by the Streights of *Bahama*, amongſt the Iſles of the *Lucaios*.

This Iſland was one of the firſt which was diſcovered by *Columbus*: who having almoſt tired the *Spaniards* with the expectation, firſt fell upon the Iſland of *Guahanani*, one of the *Lucaios*, to which he gave the Name of S. *Saviours*. From thence he ſailed to *Baracoa*, on the North of this Iſland, which he cauſed to be called *Fernandina*, in honour of *Ferdinand* the Catholick King of *Caſtile* and *Arragon*, at whoſe charge, and the encouragement of *Iſabella* his Heroick Queen, he purſued this Enterpriſe. Landing, he asked the People if they knew *Cipango*, (by which name *Paulus Venetus* calls the Iſle of *Japan*:) and they conceiving that he enquired after *Cibao*, (of great note for the richeſt Mines in *Hiſpaniola*) pointed towards *Haity*; ſome of them going with him to conduct him thither. *Cuba* was by this means laid aſide, and all the thoughts of *Spain* upon *Hiſpaniola*, where they found many golden Provocations to invite their ſtay; till hungring after more Gold, and ſome new Plantations, they paſſed over hither, and in few years, by the prudent conduct of *Velaſco*, got ſuch footing in it, and made that footing good by ſo many Colonies, that their Title and Poſſeſſion was beyond diſpute, and ſo continues to this day.

5. JAMAICA.

JAMAICA lieth on the South of *Cuba*, from which diſtant 20 Leagues, and as much, or very little more from *Hiſpaniola*. Diſcovered in the ſecond Voiage of *Columbus*, by whom named *S. Jago*; that name changed afterwards to *Jaimaica*.

It is in length from Eaſt to weſt about 50 Leagues, and in breadth 20; the whole compaſs eſtimated at 150: the middle of it under the 18. Degree of Northern Latitude. Of a rich Soil, abundantly provided of all things neceſſary; well ſtocked with Cattel, and no leſs plentifully ſtored with moſt ſorts of Fruits, which either induſtry or Nature have ſupplyed it with. Great ſtore of Cotton-wool, and ſuch abundance of *Jucca*, (a Root whereof the Savages once made their Bread) that it was deemed the Granary of the neighbouring Iſland. And were it not diſfurniſhed of convenient Ports, (which is all the want of it) it would be as much frequented by Sea-fairing men as any other in thoſe parts. Once very populous, now deſtitute of all the natural inhabitants: this Iſland, and that of *Porto Rico*, loſing in few years 60000 by the *Spaniard*'s Cruelties. Cruelties which not only raged upon the Men, but deſtroyed Poſterity: the Women, here and elſewhere, ſo abominating their ſad condition, that they ſtrangled their Children in the Birth, to the end they might not live to ſerve ſuch a cruel Nation.

Chief Towns hereof, (for though it be well watered it hath no great Rivers,) 1. *Sevilla*, in the North part of the Iſland, beautified with a goodly Monaſtery; the Abbot whereof hath all Epiſcopal Juriſdiction, and is priviledged to wear a Mitre: in nothing more ennobled, then that *Peter Martyr* the Hiſtorian (to whoſe Decads all ſucceeding Ages are beholden for the Chorography and Hiſtory of theſe parts of the World) was once Abbot here. 2. *Mellilla*, a ſmall Town; but memorable for the unfortunate Shipwreck of *Columbus* on the Shores adjoyning. 3. *Oriſtan*, on the South of the Iſland, fourteen Leagues from *Sevil*. 4. *De la Vega*, now a Ruine only, once a *Spaniſh* Colony; and of great fame for giving the Tittle of *Dukes* to *Chriſtopher Columbus*, and his Brother *Bartholomew*. Since whoſe time nothing happened prejudicial to the State of this Iſland by the hands of any but the *Spaniards*; till conquered, but not held by Sir *Anthony Sherley*, Anno 1596.

Thus having took a ſhort Survey of the ſeveral parts of this great Body; we now briefly take a view of the Government and Forces of it. The Government is committed chiefly to two great Vice-Roys; the one of *Nova Hiſpania*, who reſides at *Mexico*; the other of *Peru*, who abideth at *Lima*, the principal Cities of thoſe Kingdoms. The firſt hath Juriſdiction over all the Provinces of *Nova Gallicia*, *Nova Hiſpania*, *Guatimala*, *Caſtella Aurea*, and the Provinces of the *Mexican* Iſlands; the other over thoſe of *Peru*, *Chile*, *Rio de la Plata*, and the New Realm of *Granada*. Such ſcattered pieces as they hold in *Guiana*, *Paria* and the *Caribes*, with their Forts in *Florida*, being reduced to ſome of theſe. Of theſe the Vice-Roy of *Peru* is of greateſt power, becauſe he hath the nomination of all the Commanders and Officers within his Government; which in the other are reſerved to the King himſelf. But that of new *Spain* is counted for the better Preferment, becauſe of its nearneſs unto *Spain*, (in reſpect of the other) the Beauties of the City of *Mexico*, and the Civilities of the People. For the adminiſtration of Juſtice, and ordering the Affairs of the ſeveral Provinces, there are ten chief Courts, from which there lieth

no

no appeal: that is to say, 1. *Guadalaiara*, for *Gallicia Nova*; 2. *Mexico*, for *New Spain*; 3. *S. Domingo*, for the Province of the Islands; 4. *Guatimala*, for the Division so named; 5. *Panama*, for *Castella Aurea*. Then for the other Government, 6. *Quitos*, 7. *Lima*, and 8. *Charcas*, in the Realm of *Peru*; 9. *Imperiale*, for *Chile*; 10. *S. Foy*, for the *New Realm* of *Granada*. From these though no Appeal do lie in matter of Justice; yet both from them and the two Vice-Roys an Appeal may lie in affairs of State, or point of Grievance. And to this end there is a standing Council in the Court of *Spain*, which is called the *Council of the Indies*, consisting of a President eight Counsellours, two Proctors Fiscal (which we call the Sollicitors general) and two Secretaries, besides other Officers; to whom it appertaineth to take care of all matters which concern the Government of these Countreys, to appoint the Vice-Roys, to dispose of all the great Offices (except those of the Government of *Peru*) and spiritual Dignities, to appoint Visiters to go into those Provinces for the examining the actions of all Officers hearing the Grievances of the People, and to displace or punish as they find occasion, but with the King's privity and consent.

As for the Estates of private men, they which hold Lands or Royalties from the Crown of *Spain* hold them but for life, (except it be the Marques of *Valla* in *New Spain*, of the race of *Cortez*) after their deaths returning to the King again; who gives them commonly to the eldest Son, or the next of bloud; but so, that they receive it as a mark of his favour, and not for any right of theirs. And though they have many times attempted to make these Commanderies and Estates hereditary, and offered great sums of money for it, both to *Charles* the fifth and *Philip* the second, yet they could never get it done; the Kings most prudently considering, that these great Lords having the command of the Estates and Persons of their several Vassals, would either grind them to powder without any remedy, or upon any Inquisition into their proceedings take an occasion to revolt. Both dangers of no small importance; both by this uncertainty of their present Tenure exceeding happily avoided.

The Revenue which the King receiveth hence is said to be three Millions of Ducats yearly: most of it rising out of the Fifths of the Mines of Gold and Silver; the rest by Customs upon Manufactures and all sorts of Merchandise, and the Acknowledgments reserved upon Lands and Royalties. But out of this there go great Exits: that is to say, to the two Vice-Roys 12000 Ducats; to the President and Officers of the Council of the Indies in *Spain* 20000 Ducats; to the Judges and Officers of the several Courts of Judicature very liberal Pensions; to every Archbishop and Bishop, of which there are 29 in all, 2000 Ducats at the least, and to some much more, to mend their Benefices. Then reckoning in the infinite charges in maintaining Garrisons, and entertaining standing Bands both of Horse and Foot, in several parts of this Estate, and the continual keeping of a strong Armada to conduct his Plate-Fleets to *Spain*; there must be made a great abatement, and the sum will bear it. For howsoever at the first his Revenue came from thence without any great charge, more than the keeping of a few Souldiers to awe the Savages; yet after he fell foul with *England*, and startled the *Hollanders* to Rebellion, he was compelled to fortifie all his Havens, and secure his Ports, and to maintain a strong Armada at the Sea, to convoy his Treasures. Before which time the *English* (as is instanced in several places) did so share in his Harvest, that they left him scarce enough to pay his Workmen; which if they should attempt again upon any Breach, they would find it very difficult, if not impossible, to effect any thing upon the Coasts as in former times; or indeed any other way, but by making themselves too strong for him at Sea, and thereby either intercept his Fleets, or hinder them from coming to him to supply his needs.

And so much for the *AMERICAN Islands.*

Having thus travelled over (with Gods Blessing) the *Known* Parts of the World, and sailed through the most difficult Seas which embrace the same; we should now man our Barque again, and try what Discovery we can make of the Parts *Unknown*, or not so fully known to us as the others are.

——————————— *atqui*
Quo properas, mea cymba? redi, satis ardua Ponti
Navimus; ecce Auster *pluvias jam cogere nubes*
Incipit, hic tutum non est (mihi crede) morari.
Dum licet, in Portum tendamus; nubila clarum
Reddiderint ubi pulsa diem, revocabit ab alto
Nos Triton *Scopulo, atque iterum tentabimus Æquor.*

That is to say,

But whether goes my Bark? Return: for we
Have slic'd the Capering Brine enough: see, see,
The South-wind 'gins to gather Clouds apace;
'Tis no safe tarrying in so fierce a place.
Whilst thou hast time, retire, thou wearied Bark,
Into safe Harbour; when the Clouds which dark
The World's Bright Eye shall be dispell'd away,
And shining *Phœbus* make a lightsome day.
Triton's shrill Trump shall thee recall again,
From the safe Harbour to the foaming Main;
And we with all our Powers will boldly try
What of this *UNKNOWN WORLD* we can descry.

U A TA-

A TABLE of the LONGITUDE and LATITUDE of the chief Towns and Cities mentioned in this Second Part.

	Long.	Lat.	
A			
Capulco	276 0	18 0	
Almeria	272 15	20 0	
Ancon	321 0	6 20	
Anegadas	296 0	50 0	A.
S. Anna Equitum	318 10	27 30	A.
Antigua	339 20	16 10	
Antiochia	300 50	6 40	
Arica	300 30	20 0	A.
Aſcenſion	353 20	18 50	A.
Aravalo	298 10	1 30	
Acuzamil	289 30	19 0	
S. Auguſtin	293 0	29 50	
B.			
Bahama	296 30	27 0	
Bachados	322 0	13 0	
Bovincas	296 50	15 50	
C.			
Campa	351 40	62 50	
Cartagena	300 0	20 10	
Carthago	299 30	3 10	
Caxamalca	298 30	11 30	A.
Cheſſapiake	308 0	38 0	
Chiafmetlan	260 0	25 40	
Chile	299 0	36 30	A.
Colima	267 20	19 50	
Collao	300 0	16 0	A.
Coquimbo	301 20	20 40	A.
Corduba	316 20	33 0	A.
Coano	259 40	31 0	
Couliacan	266 30	27 0	
Cuſco	297 20	13 30	A.
D.			
Darien	295 40	5 30	
Deſeada	320 0	15 20	
Dominica	359 40	14 0	
E. F.			
Eſtade	305 10	47 40	
Fernambuc	351 40	9 20	
G.			
Gorgona	295 10	3 20	
Granada	310 20	11 0	
Guaiaquil	294 30	2 30	A.
Guadalquabal	282 20	31 0	
Guanape	294 50	8 10	A.
Guardalupe	319 20	15 20	
Guatimala	303 0	24 20	
H.			
Hirgnedo	310 30	54 0	
Havana	292 10	20 0	
Hochelaga	300 50	44 10	
Hunedo	324 0	51 30	
I.			
Jabaque	315 15	17 15	
S. Jago	298 10	30 10	
Iſabella	305 20	18 50	
L.			
Lempa	274 10	16 50	
Lima	296 40	23 30	
Loxa	293 30	9 50	A.
M.			
Malagnana	306 0	23 40	
Malones	279 40	13 40	
Maracipana	312 10	8 0	
Margarita	314 10	10 50	
Mexico	283 0	38 30	
Martha	301 20	10 40	
S. Michael	291 40	6 10	
S. Michael	327 10	47 20	
Mona	309 30	18 0	
Monſerrat	319 10	15 40	
Montroyal	301 0	45 40	
Mopox	301 10	10 0	
N.			
Navaca	300 20	17 10	
Nicoia	284 30	10 40	
Nevis	318 40	16 20	
Nombre di Dios	294 30	9 20	
Norumbega	315 40	43 40	
P.			
Paca	302 50	13 10	A.
Paito	290 30	5 10	A.
Panama	294 30	8 30	
Panuco	270 10	22 20	
Paſto	304 0	11 40	A.
Pina	296 20	3 0	
Plata	305 0	9 50	A.
Popayan	297 20	1 50	
Poſſeſſion	241 30	32 20	
Potoſi	315 10	21 10	A.
Q.			
Quicon	298 50	16 30	A.
Quinter	303 40	34 40	A.
Quito	293 10	10 0	
Quivira	233 0	41 40	
R.			
Roca	311 0	11 10	
Roquelay	314 10	50 0	
S.			
Saba	317 30	17 20	
Salinas	321 40	53 0	
S. Salvadore	321 10	5 0	
Sante	294 40	9 30	A.
Saona	309 0	16 50	
Sorana	351 40	61 0	
T.			
Tabaco	322 10	10 40	
Tarnaco	270 15	24 40	
Tavaſco	275 40	18 20	
Teſtigos	316 10	11 0	
Thomebamba	293 40	1 50	A.
Tiquiſana	305 20	16 0	A.
Tochripee	274 40	19 0	
Tortuga	303 50	20 20	
Totonteac	248 20	36 0	
Trinidad	295 50	21 20	
Tumbez	291 40	4 10	A.
V.			
Val paraiſo	300 0	33 0	A.
Ullao	242 10	30 30	
Uraba	297 20	7 30	
Urcos	301 0	14 50	A.
Wococan	307 30	34 0	
Z.			
Zacatula	269 4	20 0	

A. is the mark of Southern Latitude.

The End of the Second Part of the Fourth Book.

AN

AN

APPENDIX

TO THE

FORMER WORK,

Endeavouring a Diſcovery of the

UNKNOWN PARTS

OF THE

WORLD:

ESPECIALLY OF

Terra Auſtralis Incognita,

OR THE

SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

By *PETER HEYLYN.*

Horat. De Arte Poet.

——Pictoribus atque Poetis
Quidlibet audendi ſemper fuit æqua poteſtas.

LONDON:
Printed in the Year MDCLXXIII.

AN

APPENDIX

TO THE

FORMER WORK,

Intitled, Terra Australis, or, A Discovery of the

UNKNOWN PARTS

OF THE

WORLD:

Campa
Cartagena
Carthar

SPECIALLY OF

Terra Australis Incognita,

OR THE

SOUTHERN CONTINENT.

By PETER HEYLYN.

Horat. De Arte Poet.

Quidlibet audendi semper fuit æqua potestas.
Pictoribus atque Poetis

LONDON:

Printed in the Year MDCLXXIII.

AN APPENDIX TO THE FORMER WORK,

Endeavouring a Diſcovery of the

UNKNOWN PARTS of the *WORLD.*

AND here we are upon a new and ſtrange Adventure, which no Knight Errant ever undertook before. Of things unknown, as there is commonly no deſire, ſo leſs Diſcourſe can probably be made upon them. By *unknown* therefore we muſt underſtand *leſs known*, or not well diſcovered; and in that ſenſe we may as well endeavour to ſay ſomewhat of them, as others with more pains and hazard to attempt the Diſcovery. And to ſay truth, even in the known parts of the World there is much unknown; as in the beſt and moſt flouriſhing Kingdoms of the Earth there is ſome waſte ground, either not cultivated at all; or not ſo well inhabited as the reſt of the Countrey. For beſides many vaſt Tracts of ground in the North and North-weſt parts of *Tartary*, and ſuch parts of *India* as lie Northwards towards *Delanguer*, *Naugracot*; the Eaſt parts of *Caucaſus*, and the Realms of *Cathay* it is conceived that the greateſt part of the Midlands of *Affrick* are undiſcovered to this day, or the knowledge of them ſo imperfect as comes near a Neſcience; and for *America*, not reckoning in the Northern Borders, (which are in part to be the Subject of this Enquiry) it is affirmed of the Midlands by *John de Laet*, (who hath made the moſt exact deſcription of it that ever was extant) *minima ſui parte perluſtratum eſſe*, that the leaſt part of them hath been diſcovered hitherto to any purpoſe. Leaving theſe therefore as before without farther ſearch, we will divide the *UNKNOWN WORLD* into theſe two parts: 1. *Terra Incognita Borealis*, and 2. *Terra Incognita Auſtralis*; which with their Subdiviſions we will now purſue.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS.

TERRA INCOGNITA BOREALIS is that part of the *Unknown World* which lieth towards the North; and is to be conſidered in theſe three Notions. 1. As directly under the Pole, which for diſtinction ſake we will call *Orbis Arcticus*; 2. as lying to the North-eaſt on the back of *Europe* and *Aſia*, or 3. on the North-weſt, on the back of *America*.

1. *ORBIS ARCTICUS* is that part of *Terra Borealis Incognita* which lieth under or about the *Artick Pole*; the Situation and Dimenſions of which being taken with the *Aſtrolabe* by an *Oxford* Frier, are by *Mercator* thus deſcribed out of the Itinerary of *Jannes Cnoxe* of *Bois le duc*, or the *Boſche*, a Town of *Brabant*.

"Under the *Artick Pole* (ſaith he) is ſaid to be a "black Rock of wondrous height, about 33 Leagues in "compaſs, the Land adjoyning being torn by the Sea in- "to four great Iſlands. For the Ocean violently break- "ing through it, and diſgorging it ſelf by 19 Chanels, ma- "keth four *Euripi* or fierce Whirl-pools, by which the "Waters are finally carried towards the North, and there "ſwallowed into the Bowels of the Earth. That *Euripus* "or Whirl-pool which is made by the *Scythick* Ocean "hath five Inlets, and by reaſon of his ſtreight paſſage "and violent courſe is never frozen: the other on the back "of *Groenland*, being 37 Leagues long, hath three In- "lets, and remaineth frozen three moneths yearly. Be- "tween theſe two there lieth an Iſland on the North of "*Lappia* and *Biarmia*, inhabited, as they ſay, by *Pigmies*, the "talleſt of them not above four foot high. A certain Sco- "lar of *Oxford* reporteth, that theſe four *Euripi* are car- "ried with ſuch furious violence towards ſome Gulf, in "which they are finally ſwallowed up, that no Ship is able "with never ſo ſtrong a Gale to ſtem the Current, and yet "that there is never ſo ſtrong a Wind as to blow a "Windmil. The like is reported by *Giraldus Cambrenſis* "in his Book *De mirabilibus Hiberniæ*. So far and to this purpoſe he. But *Blundevil* our Countreyman is of another opinion, (as indeed who not?) neither believing that *Pliny* or any other of the *Roman* Writers came hither to deſcribe this Promontory; or that the *Oxford* Frier, without the aſſiſtance of ſome cold Devil of the middle Region of the Air, (and conſequently able to endure all Weathers) could approach ſo near as to meaſure theſe cold Countreys with his *Aſtrolabe*, or take the height of this black Rock with his *Jacob's* Staff. Leaving this therefore as more fit for *Lucian's* Dialogues then any ſerious Diſcourſe, we will proceed to matters of more truth and certainty.

2. The *NORTH-WEST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis* are thoſe which lie on the back of *Eſtotiland*, the moſt Northern Province of *America*; by which it hath been much endeavoured to find out a paſſage to *Cathay* and *China*, and not to go ſo far about as either by the Cape of *Good Hope*, or the Streights of *Magellan*. Attempted firſt by *Sebaſtian Cabot*, Anno 1497, at the charge of *Henry* the 7. of *England*. But having diſcovered as far as to the 67. Degree of Northern Latitude, by the mutiny of his Mariners he was forced to return; when finding great preparations for a War with *Scotland*, that buſineſs for the preſent was laid aſide. Reſumed by *Gaſpar Corterialis* a *Portugal*, Anno 1500, and after by *Stephen Gomez* a *Spaniard*, in the year 1525; but neither of them went ſo far to the North as *Cabot*. The *Spaniards* notwithſtanding would not ſo give over, but firſt with five Ships from the *Groyn*, and afterwards by two from *New Spain*, ſent out by *Cortez*, purſued the Enterpriſe: which

proving as succesless as the former had been, occasioned *Charles* the 5. then preparing for *Italy*, on the payment of 35000 Ducats by King *John* the third, to suspend the prosecution of it. Followed with greater industry, but as bad succes, by Sir *Martin Frobisher*, who made three Voiages for these parts, (the first of them in the year 1579,) and brought home some of the Natives, a Sea-Unicorn's Horn, (still kept in the great Wardrobe of *Windsor* Castle) and a great deal of the Ore of that Countrey, found upon tryal, when in *England*, not to quit the Cost. A great Promontory which he passed by he called Queen *Elizabeth*'s *Foreland*, in whose name he took possession of it; and the Sea running not far off he called *Frobisher*'s *Streights*. The Seas full set with Icy Islands some of them half a mile about, and eighty Fathoms above Water: the People like the *Samoeds*, the worst kind of *Tartars*, in their lives and Habit. *John Davies* followed the Deign *Anno* 1585, at the encouragement of Sir *Francis Walsingham*, then principal Secretary of Estate: and having in three Voyages discovered to the Latitude of 73, by reason of the many difficulties which he found in the Enterprise, and the death of Mr. Secretary, he was fain to give over; leaving unto a narrow Sea on the North of *Estotiland* the name of *Fretum Davies*, in the Latitude of 65 and 20 Minutes, by which name it is still called. After him followed *Weymouth*, *Hall*, *Hudson*, *Button*, *Baffin*, *Smith*; all *English*. The result of whose Endeavours was the finding of some cold Isles and points of Land; which they named King *James* his *Cape*, Queen *Ann*'s *Cape*, Prince *Henrie*'s *Foreland*, *Saddle-Island*, *Barren-Island*, *Red-goose Island*, *Digges* his *Island*; all of them betwixt 80 and 81: and the imposing on some passages and parts of the Sea the names of *Hacklyt*'s *Headland*, *Smith*'s *Bay*, *Hudson*'s *Streights*, *Maudlins Sound*, *Fair Haven*, and the like marks and monuments of their Undertakings. Nothing atchieved of publick moment, but the Discovery of an Island called *Cherry Island* in the Latitude of 74, and the Shores of a large piece of the Continent, which they caused to be called King *James* his *New Land*, most commonly *Greenland*; where they found many white Bears, with white, gray and dun Foxes, Partridges, Geese, and some other Provisions. Sea-Unicorns Horns, great store of *Morses*, (or Sea-Horses) the Oil and Teeth whereof yield no small Commodity. But most considerable for the Trade of Whale-fishing, which our men use yearly upon those Coasts; of whose Oil, Bones and Brain (this last supposed to be the true *Sperma Ceti*, now used as Medicinal) they raised very great profit.

3. The *NORTH-EAST* parts of *Terra Incognita Borealis* are those which lie on the North of *Russia* and *Tartary*, by which the like passage towards *Cathay* and *China* hath been oft attempted; and hitherto with like succes. Endeavoured first by *Sebastian Cabot*, the son of *John Cabot*, so often mentioned before, by him trained up in the Discovery of the North-east parts of *America*. His Employment failing here in *England*, he betook himself unto the service of the King of *Spain*; and coming out of *Spain*, Anno 1549, was by King *Edward* the sixth made grand Pilot of *England*, with an Annual Pension of 166 *l.* 13 *s.* 4 *d.* In the year 1553 he was the chief Dealer and Procurer of the Discovery of *Russia* and the North-east Voiages, undertaken and performed by Sir *Hugh Willoughby*, *Chancellour*, *Burrough*, *Jenkinson*; and after prosecuted by *Pet* and *Jackman*. Some of which perished in the Action, and were frozen to death; their Ship being found the next year hemmed about with Ice, and a particular account of all things which had hapened to them. Others with better fortunes found the way to *Russia*, (since that time made a common Voiage without dread or danger) and passing down the *Volga* to the *Caspian* Sea, and by that to *Persia*, were kindly entertained in the Court of the *Sophie*. The *Hollanders* in the year 1594, and in some years after, tried their Fortune also, under the Conduct and Direction of one *William Barendson* their chief Pilot; but went no farther then the *English* had gone before them; yet gave new names unto all places as they passed, as if they had been the first Discoverers, with Pride and Arrogance enough. Nothing since done of any note or consideration for the opening of this North-east passage, or giving us any better account of the North of *Tartary*, or any Countreys beyond that, but what we had many Ages since out of *Paulus Venetus*; so that we are but where we were, in a *Terra Incognita*. And though I would not willingly discourage any noble Actions, or brave and gallant Undertakings; yet when I look upon the natures of those Shores and Seas, those tedious Winters of ten moneths, with no Summer following, the Winds continually in the North, and the main Ocean paved with Ice so long together; I cannot chuse but rank the hopes of these Northern Passages amongst those Adventures which are only commendable for the Difficulties presented in them.

TERRA AUSTRALIS INCOGNITA.

WIth better hopes we may go forwards on the next Discovery, and try what may be done on *Terra Australis*, or the Southern Continent, (though hitherto *Incognita* also, almost as much unknown as the *Arctick* Islands, which none but my good Frier of *Oxon* had the hap to meet with. A Continent conceived by our Learned *Brerewood* to be as large as *Europe*, *Asia* and *Africa*: and that upon such strength of Reasons as cannot be easily overborn by any opposite. His Arguments in brief are these. 1. That as touching Latitude, some parts thereof come very near to the *Equator*, if they come not also on this side of it: and as for Longitude, it keepeth along, though at several distances, the whole continual course of the other Continents 2. It is clearly known, that in the other two Continents the Land which lieth on the North-side of that Line is four times at the least as large as that which lieth South thereof; and therefore, since the Earth is equally poized on both sides of the Centre, it must needs be that the Earth in answerable measure and proportion must advance it self in some places above the Sea on the South-side of the Line, as it doth in others on the North. By consequence, what is wanting in the South parts of the other two Continents to countervail the North-parts of them, must of necessity be supplied in the Southern Continent.

The Countrey being so large, so free from the Incumbrances of Frosts and Ice and endless Winters, I have oft marvelled with my self that no farther progress hath been made in Discovery of it: considering chiefly by the Site and Position of the Countrey, especially in those parts which lie nearest *Asia*, that there is nothing to be looked for elsewhere, either of profit or of pleasure, but may there be found. Whether it be that there is some *Nil ultra* put to humane endeavours; or that this people are not yet made ripe enough to receive the Gospel; or that the great Princes of the Earth think it no good Policy to engage themselves in new Discoveries, till the old be throughly planted and made sure unto them; or that the Merchant, who in matters of this nature hath a powerful influence, thinks his hands full enough already, and being settled in so many and so wealthy Factories, will not adventure upon more: Which of all these, or whether all these together be the cause of this Stop, I am not able to determine. Certain it is, that here is a large Field, enough for Covetousness, Ambition, or desire of Glory, to

to spend themselves in; enough to satisfie the greatest and most hungry appetite of Empire, Wealth and worldly pleasure; besides the Gallantry and Merit of so brave an Action. Most which hath hitherto been done in it hath been by the encouragement of the Vice-Roys of *New Spain* and *Peru*: by the first of which we came acquainted with the Coasts of *Nova Guinea*; by the latter, with those Countreys called the *Islands* of *Solomon*, but whether Continent or Islands, not yet fully known.

And yet we must not rob *Magellanus* of his part of the Honour, who, passing through the Streights which now bear his name, discovered those parts of it which, from the Fire thence seen, he called *Terra del Fuego*, found by the *Hollanders* of late under *James le Maire* to be an Island. Nor do the *English* or the *Dutch* want their parts herein, though what they did was rather accidental then upon Design. For in the year 1593, Sir *Richard Hawkins*, being bound for the Streights of *Magellan*, was by a cross Wind driven on some parts of this Continent, to which he gave the name of *Hawkins* his *Maiden-land*; a Promontory of it shooting in to the Sea with three Points he called *Point Tremontain*; and a pleasant Isle not far off by the name of *Fair Island*. Sailing along these Coasts in the 50. Degree of Southern Latitude, for the space of sixty miles and upwards, he found the Countrey as he passed to be very pleasant; and by the Fires which he saw in the night, to be well inhabited. By the like accident, *Anno* 1599, *Sibald de Weert*, a *Hollander*, in his return from the Streights of *Magellan*, fell upon some Islands of this Southern Continent, in the Latitude of fifty Degrees and forty Minutes, which he caused to be called *Sibald*'s Islands. And besides these we owe to the *Portugals* the Discovery of such parts hereof as they fell on in their way to the Eastern *Indies*, of which we have little but the names: as 1. *Psittacorum Terra*, so called from the abundance of Parrots which they saw on the Coasts over against the *Cape of good Hope*; 2. *Beach*, a Region yielding Gold, and possessed by Idolaters, with the two Kingdoms of, 3. *Lucach*, and 4. *Maletur*; all three against the Isles of *Java*, from which little distant.

But the greatest light we have to see by into this dark business is by the Voiages and Adventures of the *Spaniards*, employed by the two Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, as before was said. For in the year 1543 the Governour of *New Spain*, then being, sent *Villa Lobos* with a Fleet towards the *Moluccas*, who in that Voiage made a Discovery of a rich and flourishing Countrey, which he named *Nova Guinea*, by others since his time called *Terra de Piccinacoli*: and in the year 1563 *Castro* the Licentiate, then Vice-Roy of *Peru*, sent a Fleet from *Lima*, which under the Conduct of *Lopez Garcia de Castro* discovered the Islands of *Solomon*. To which if we subjoin the success of the *Hollanders* in the Discovery of *Fretum le Maire*, and the Lands adjoyning, the best Description we can make of this Southern Continent must be in the Chorography and History of their Adventures; *viz.* 1. *Terra del Fogo*, 2. *Insulæ Solomonis*. 3. *Nova Guinea*: beginning first with *Terra del Fogo*, because nearest to us.

1. *TERRA DEL FUEGO* lies on the other side of the Streights of *Magellan*, heretofore thought to be a part of *Terra Australis Incognita*, or the Southern Continent, but is now discovered to be an Island by one *Jacob Maire* of *Amsterdam*, accompanied by *Cornelius Schouten* of *Hoorn*, both *Hollanders*. They began their Voiage on the 15. of *June*, Anno 1615, and on the 19. of *January* following they fell even with the Streight of *Magellan*. On the 24. of the same Moneth they had the sight of another Streight, which seemed to seperate this *Terra del Fuego* from the rest of the Southern Continent; and on the 25. they entred into it. That part of the Land which (being entred into the Streights) they had on the West, they called *Terra Mauritii de Nassau*; that on the East, *Statenland*; the Streight it self, *Fretum le Maire*. The entrance into the Streight they found to be in 55 Degrees of Southern Latitude and 50 Minutes; the Water runing into the North Sea with so violent an Eddie, *ut adversum maris æstum difficulter superare possemus*, saith he who in the way of Journal or Ephemerides hath described the whole course of this Voyage. In the whole course thereof nothing so much observable (besides the Discovery) as that they found that at their coming home they had lost a Day, (as must needs happen unto such as in so tedious a Voiage had travelled Westward) that being *Saturday* to them which was *Sunday* to the *Hollanders* and the rest of *Europe*; though they had calculated the Days since their going out with all exactness. So that if there were any such Morality in the Sabbath as some men pretend, these men must either keep their Sabbath on a different day from the rest of their Countreymen, or otherwise, to comply with them, must be guilty of the breach of the Sabbath all the rest of their Lives. But of this more at large elsewhere. To return therefore to this Streight: it is said to be seven *Dutch* miles or 28 of ours in length, and of a fair and equal breadth; plentiful of good Fish, especially of Sea-Calves and Whales. About the inserting of which Streight into the third Edition of my Microcosm, I received a Letter at such time as the Parliament was held in *Oxon* Anno 1625. subscribed *G.. B.* and a little under that, *Sub granda floridus*: which whether it were the Gentlemans Motto, or the Anagram of his name, I am not able to say, having never heard more of him from that time forwards, though his desire were satisfied in the next Edition of that Work. For my encouragement wherein he gave me this direction following. "The News (saith he) of this *New Streight* coming into *Spain*, it pleased the King, in the year 1618, "to send and search whether the truth were answerable "unto the Report. And finding it to be much broader "then the other, and not above seven *Dutch* miles long, "he decreed, that being the more easie and compendious "way for Navigators, and less subject to dangers, his "Auxiliary Forces should be sent that way into the *East-Indies*, to defend the *Philippine* and *Molucca* Islands, and "the way by the *Cape of good Hope* to be left. In regard "that every such Voiage requireth twice as much time; "besides the variety of Winds, and often change of the "Air, not only troublesome, but full of Diseases, consumeth the one half of the men before they return. "Whereas this way gaineth time (and, if need be, they "may dispatch business in the West as they travel into "the East) without any extraordinary danger or loss of "men. So far the very words of my Letter. The Intelligence given me in this Letter I find confirmed in a Relation of the Voiage made by Captain *Don Juan de More*, Anno 1618, at the command and charge of the King of *Spain*, who presently arm'd and furnish'd eight tall Ships to send this new way unto his *Philippines* and *Molucca's*, under the conduct of *Petrus Michaelus de Cordoelen*. Since it hath been found by experience that even from our parts to the *Molucca*'s through this *Fretum de Maire*, is but a passage of eight Moneths, *sine ulla insigni navigantium clade*, saith the Narratour. But of this Streight enough to satisfie my unknown Well-willer's Request, and inform my Reader: being extreamly sorry that the Gentle man was not pleased to impart his name, that so his memory might have lived in these Papers, if they themselves be destinate to a longer Life.

Now for the nature of the Soil, it is said to be very full of Mountains; but those Hills apparelled with Woods

Woods, intermixt with Valleys; the Valleys for the most part full of little Brooks, which fall down from the Mountains, and afford good Pasturage; the Sea-coasts well provided with Bays and Roads, not unsafe for Shiping: though the Air every-where, but chiefly near the Sea, be much subject to Tempests. As for the People, they are said to be of a white Complexion; but their Faces, Arms and Thighs, coloured with a kind of Oker: of full Stature and well-proportioned, their Hair black, which they wear long, to seem more terrible. The Men most generally naked, the Women only shaded on their secret parts with a piece of Leather.

Towns they have none, nor any Habitations which deserve the name of Houses: so that the most which we can do is to coast the Island. In which we find towards *Mare del Noordt*, 1. A large Arm of the Sea called *Entrado de S. Sebastian*. 2. The Cape of *S. Ives*. 3. *Mauritius* Land. 4. *Promontorio de Buen Suscio*, or the Cape of Good Success. Opposite whereunto in another Island is the Cape of *S. Bartholomews*, and betwixt them the Streight called *Fretum le Maire*. Then in the *New South-sea*, as they call it, there are, 5. *Barnevelt*'s Island. 6. The Islands of S. *Ildefonso*. 7. Cape *Horn*, on a fair Promontory, in the South-west *Ande*, which doubled, the Countrey goes along with a straight Shore, on which I find some Bays and Capes, but no names unto them; till we come to the Western entrances of the Streight of *Magellan*, opposite unto Cape *Victoria*, so often mentioned.

2. *INSULÆ SOLOMONIS*, or the Islands of *Solomon*, are situate on the West of *Terra del Fogo*, 11 Degrees on the South of the Æquinoctial. Discovered in the year 1567, by *Lopez Garcia de Castro*, sent by the Vice-Roy of *Peru* to find out new Countreys. By him thus named, in hope that men would be rather induced to inhabit in them; imagining that *Solomon* had his Gold from these Lands of *Ophir*.

In number they are many, but 18 the principal: Some of which 300 miles in compass, others 200, and others of them less, till we come to fifty; and beneath that, none. All liberally furnished with Dogs, Hogs, Hens, Cloves, Ginger, Cinamon, and some Veins of Gold. The chief of these eighteen are, 1. *Guadalcanal*, supposed to be the greatest of them; upon the Coast whereof the *Spaniards* sailed 150 Leagues, where they found a Town which they burned and sacked, because the people of it, by a sudden surprize, had killed fourteen of their men. 2. S. *Isabella*, 150 Leagues in length, and 18 in breadth; the Inhabitants some black, some white, some of brown Complexion. 3. *S. Nicholas*, 100 Leagues in compass, inhabited by a People which are black of hue, but said to be more witty then the other Savages. All of them situate betwixt the Streights of *Magellan* and the Islands of *Thieves*; and yet not well agreed upon amongst our Authors, whether to be accounted Islands, or a part of the Continent; the *Spaniards* having sailed 700 Leagues on the Coasts hereof, and yet not able to attain unto any certainty. But being they pass generally in account for Islands, and by that name are under the Vice-Roy of *Peru*, who appoints their Governours, let them pass so still.

3. *NOVA GUINEA* lieth beyond the Islands of *Solomon* in respect of us, proceeding, as we have begun, from the Land of Fire. Discovered, as before was said, *Anno* 1543, by *Villa Lobos*; (*Herrera* attributes the Discovery of it to *Alvarez de Saavedra*, and sets it higher, in the year 1527,) more perfectly made known, if I guess a right, by *Ferdinando de Quir*, who being sent with two Ships to make a more full Discovery of the Islands of *Solomon*, and taking his course about the height of the *Magellan* Streights, discovered a main Land coming up close to the Æquinoctial, on the Coasts whereof he sailed 800 Leagues, till he found himself at last in the Latitude of 15 Degrees, discovering a large Bay into which fell two great Rivers, where he purposed to settle a Plantation, and to that end presented a Petition to the King of *Spain*. This Countrey I conceive, by the Site and Position of it, to be *Nova Guinea*, coming up close as that doth to the Æquinoctial; and after turning to the South towards the Tropick of *Capricorn*, where it joyneth with *Malatur*. And taking it for granted, as I think I may, I shall afford the Reader this Description of it, out of his memorials, in which it is soberly affirmed to be a Terrestrial Paradise for Wealth and Pleasures. The Countrey is plentiful of Fruits, *Coco*-nuts, Almonds of four sorts, Pome-citrons, Dates, Sugar-canes and Apples; plenty of Swine, Goats, Hens, Partridges, and other Fowl, with some Kine and Buffals. Nothing inferiour (as it seemeth) to *Guinea* in the Land of *Negroes*, and from thence so named. For, as he saith, he saw amongst them Silver and Pearls, and some told him of Gold; the Countreys on the Coast seeming to promise much felicity within the Land. The Air he found to be whole and temperate, the Sea shores to be full of Bays, Havens, and the Exits of Rivers, making shew as of another *China*. The Inhabitants he affirmeth to be innumerable, some white, some like the *Mulattos*, others like the *Negroes*; diversified in Habit as well as Colour. Their Bread made of three sorts of Roots: without Government, but not without Religion; for they had their several Oratories and places of burial, but neither King, nor Laws, nor Arts. Divided by that want, and in dayly Wars with one another: their Arms, Bows, Arrows, and other Weapons, but all made of Wood. Of this Countrey, whatsoever it was (if not *Nova Guinea*) he took possession in the name of the Catholick King, and set up both a Cross and a Chappel in it; the Chappel dedicated to the Lady of *Loretto*.

The precise time of this Discovery I have nowhere found, but that the time spent about it is by him affirmed to be 14 years, to the no small endamagement of his Health and Fortunes. Nor do I find that any care was taken of his Petition, or any thing else done by others in pursuance of his Propositions. Whether it were on any of the Reasons before laid down; or that there was no credit given to his affirmations, I determine not. Nor find I that he gave any names to the Bays or Promontories as he passed along; but he either took such names as were given before, or found not any thing worth the naming. And for such names as were given before, (still taking *Ferdinando Quir*'s new Countrey for *Nova Guinea*) we find a Promontory called Cape *Hermoso*, in the East parts hereof, near the Islands of *Solomon*, and not far from the *Æquator*. 2. Another in the Western part, but as near the *Æquinox*, called *Point Primiro*. 3. A third in the first bendings of the Coast towards the South, called *Capo de Buena Deseada*, or the Cape of *good Desire*. 4. *Rio de Valçanes*, 5. *Rio de Lorenzo*, 6. *Rio de S. Angustino*, on the East of Cape *Formoso* towards the Streights. 7. The Rivers of S. *Peter*, 8. S. *Paul*, 9. S. *Andrew*, and 10. S. *James*, betwixt Cape *Formoso* and *Primiro*.

But being there is little certain of these last Discoveries, and the greatest certainty we have of that little is nothing but a list of names without any thing observable in the state and story of the same, they may still retain the old name of *Terra Incognita*. And therefore I try my fortune, and without troubling the Vice-Roys of *Peru* and *Mexico*, or taking out Commission for a new Discovery, will make a search into this *Terra Australis* for some other Regions, which must be found either here or no-where. The names of which are, 1. *Mundus alter & idem*, 2. *Utopia*, 3. *New Atlantis*, 4. *Fairy Land*, 5. The

Painter's

Painter's Wives Island. 6. The Lands of *Chivalry*, and 7. *The New World in the Moon.*

1. *MUNDUS ALTER ET IDEM*, Another world, and yet the same, is a witty and ingenious Invention of a Learned Prelate, writ by him in his younger days, (but well enough becoming the austerity of the graveſt Head) in which he diſtinguiſheth the Vices, Paſſions, Humours, and ill Affections moſt commonly incident to mankind, into ſeveral Provinces; gives us the Character of each, as in the deſcription of a Country, People, and chief Cities of it; and ſets them forth to the Eye in ſuch lively Colours, that the Vicious man may ſee therein his own Deformities, and the well-minded man his own Imperfections. The Scene of this Deſign is laid by the Reverend Author in this *Terra Auſtralis*; the *Decorum* happily preſerved in the whole Diſcovery; the ſtile acutely clear, the Invention ſingular. Of whom and his *New World* I ſhall give you that Eulogy which the Hiſtorian doth of *Homer*, *Nec ante illum quem ille imitaretur, neque poſt illum qui eum imitari poſſet, inventus eſt.*

2. *UTOPIA* is a Country firſt diſcovered by Sir *Thomas More*, after Lord Chancellour of *England*, and by him made a Scene of a Commonwealth, which neither *Solon*, nor *Lycurgus*, nor any of the Legiſlators of former times did ever dream of; nor had been fanſied by *Plato*, *Ariſtotle*, *Tully*, or any who have written the *Idea's* of a Form of Government, though not reducible to practice. Some of his Plots we have taken notice of already: as *viz.* his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt by making of thoſe Metals Chains and Fetters for their Malefactors, Pans of Cloſe-ſtools, Chamber-pots, and Veſſels of ſuch unclean uſe; by impoſing it as a Penalty on infamous perſons, to wear Gold-Rings upon their Fingers, and the like devices: as alſo his device to prevent miſtakes and diſlikes in Marriages, by giving the parties a full view of each other naked. Many more Projects of this nature, ſome of them poſſible enough, but ſo unpracticable, ſo beyond hope of being looked on in the modelling of a Commonwealth, that we may reckon this device amongſt thoſe ſtrange Fancies, *quæ nunquam antea ſpe concepta, nedum opere tentata erant.* The man indeed (conſidering the times he lived in) was of rare abilities; but this *Utopia* fitted only to the Meridian of this Southern Continent, this *Terra Auſtralis Incognita*, in which now we are, and to no place elſe.

3. *NEW ATLANTIS* is an Iſland of this Southern Continent diſcovered by Sir *Francis Bacon*, the Learned Viſcount of St. *Albans*; one of Sir *Thomas More*'s Succeſſours in the place of Lord Chancellour, but far before him in the excellency and fecibility of his Invention. It had this name with reference to *Atlantis*, an Iſland of the Weſtern or *Atlantick* Ocean, mentioned in the Works of *Plato*, both alike inviſible. But for his falling into this Iſland, his Deſcription of it, the City of *Benſalem*, and the manner of his reception there, ſuch handſome probabilities, and ſo fairly carried, that to one not acquainted with the ſtate of the World it would ſeem a Reality. But above all things, the Inventions and Deſigns of *Solomon*'s Houſe, for perfecting the works of nature, or rather improving Nature to the beſt advantages of Life, and the benefit of mankind, are beyond compariſon. The man I muſt confeſs had his perſonal errors, (I know none without them) of good and bad qualities equally compounded: *Mores ejus vigore & levitate mixtiſſimi*, as *Paterculus* once ſaid of *Piſo*; not one amongſt many thouſand (to purſue that Character) *qui aut otium validius diligat, aut facilius ſuſcipiat negotia.* A man of a moſt ſtrong Brain, and a Chymical Head, Who, if he had been entertained with ſome liberal Salary, abſtracted from all Affairs both of State and Judicature, and furniſhed with ſufficiency both of means and helps for the going on in his Deſign, would, I am confident, have given us ſuch a Body of Natural Philoſophy; and made it ſo ſubſervient to the publick good, that neither *Ariſtotle*, nor *Theophraſtus* amongſt the Ancients, nor *Paracelſus*, or the reſt of our later Chymiſts would have been conſiderable.

4. *FAIRY-LAND* is another part of this *Terra Incognita*, the habitation of the Fairies, a pretty kind of little Fiends or Pigmey-Devils, but more inclined to ſport then miſchief; of which old Women, who remember the times of Popery, tell us many fine Stories. A cleanlier and more innocent Cheat was never put upon poor ignorant People, by the Monks and Friers. Their habitation here or no where; though ſent occaſionally by *Oberon* and their other Kings, to our parts of the world. For not being reckoned amongſt the good Angels, nor having malice enough to make them Devils, (but ſuch a kind of midling Spirits as the Latines call *Lemures* or *Larvæ*) we muſt find out ſome place for them, neither Heaven nor Hell, and moſt likely this. Their Country never more ennobled then by being made the Scene of that excellent Poem called the *Fairy Queen*. Intended to the honour of Queen *Elizabeth*, and the greateſt perſons in her Court: but ſhadowed in ſuch lively colours, framed ſo exactly by the Rules of Poeſie, and repreſenting ſuch *Idea's* of all Moral goodneſs; that as there never was a Poem more artificial, ſo can no Ethical diſcourſe more faſhion and enflame the mind to the love of Virtue. *Inviſurum facilius aliquem quàm imitaturum*, ſhall be *Spencer*'s Motto; and ſo I leave him to his reſt.

5. The *PAINTERS WIVES ISLAND* is an Iſland of this Tract, mentioned by Sir *Walter Raleigh*, in his *Hiſtory of the World*. Of which he was informed by *Don Pedro de Sarmiento*, a *Spaniſh* Gentleman, employed by his King in planting ſome Colonies on the Streights of *Magellan*, (which we have touched upon before) who being taken Priſoner by Sir *Walter* in his going home, was asked of him about ſome Iſland which the Maps preſented in thoſe Streights, and might have been of great uſe to him in his Undertaking. To which he merrily replied, that it was to be called the *Painter's Wives Iſland*, ſaying, that whilſt the Painter drew that Map, his Wife ſitting by, *deſired him to put in one Country for her, that ſhe in her Imagination might have an Iſland of her own.* His meaning was, that there was no ſuch Iſland as the Maps preſented. And I fear the Painter's Wife hath many Iſlands, and ſome Countries too upon the Continent in our common Maps, which are not really to be found on the ſtricteſt ſearch.

6. The *LANDS* of *CHIVALRY* are ſuch Iſlands, Provinces, and Kingdoms, in the Books of *Errantry*, which have no being in any known part of the World, and therefore muſt be ſought in this. A groſs abſurdity, but frequent in thoſe kind of Writers, who, in deſcribing the Adventures of their Knights, in deſpight of Geography, (with which indeed they had no acquaintance) have not only disjoyned Countries which are near together, and laid together Countries which are far remote; but given us the deſcription of many Iſlands, Provinces, and mighty Kingdoms, which, as the ingenious Author of the Hiſtory of *Don Quixot* merrily obſerveth, are not to be found in all the Map. Of this ſort is the Iſle of *Adamants* in Sir *Huon* of *Burdeaux*; the *Firm Iſland*, in the Hiſtory of *Amadis de Gaul*; the *hidden Iſland*, and that of the Sage *Aliart*, in Sir *Palmerin* of *England*; the Iſlands of *Lindaraza*, and the *Deviliſh Fauno*, with the Kingdom of *Lyra*, (of which the *Amazonian* Lady *Archiſilora* was the rightful Queen) and many others of that kind, in the *Mirrour of Knighthood*; and divers of like nature in *Palmerin de Oliva*, *Primaleon*, and *Belianis* of *Greece*, *Pariſmus*, the Romance

mance of Romances, and indeed whom not of all that Rabble? handsomly humoured by *Michael de Cervantes* in his *Island* of *Barutaria*, of which the famous *Sancho Panca* was sometime Governour, and the Kingdom of *Micomicona*. And yet I cannot but confess (for I have been a great Student in these Books of Chivalry) that they may be of very good use to Children or young Boys in their Adolescency. For besides that they divert the mind from worse cogitations, they perfect him that takes pleasure in them in the way of Reading, beget in him an habit of speaking, and animate him many times to such high conceptions as really may make him fit for great Undertakings.

7. The *NEW WORLD IN THE MOON* was first of *Lucian*'s discovering; a man of eminent parts, but as ill a Conscience, apostatizing from the Faith in which he was bred. *Aristophanes* had before told us in one of his Comedies of a *Nephelococcygia*, or a City of Cuckoes in the Clouds. But *Lucian* was the first who found out this *New World in the Moon*; of which, and of the Inhabitants of it, he affordeth us in one of his Dialogues a conceited Character. But of late times, that World which he there fansied, and proposed but as a Fansie only, is become a matter of a more serious Debate; and some have laboured with great pains to make it probable, that there is another *World* in the Moon, inhabited as this is by persons of divers Languages, Customs, Polities and Religions: and more then so, some means and ways proposed to consideration for maintaining an entercourse and Commerce betwixt that and this. But being there are like Endeavours to prove that the Earth may be a Planet, why may not this Southern Continent be that Planet, and more particularly that Moon, in which this other World is supposed to be? Certainly there are stronger hopes of finding a New World in this *Terra Australis* then in the body of that Planet; and such perhaps as might exceed both in profit and pleasure the later Discoveries of *America*.

But I am no discourager of Industry and Ingenuity, which I love and honour wheresoever I find it. I know great Truths have many times been started upon less presumptions. Nor would I be mistook, as if in my pursuit of this *Terra Incognita* I put scorn on any of sublimer thoughts; or that I would have any man so much in love with the present World, as not to look for another world in Heaven above. It is reported, that in some Controversie betwixt the *Polander* and the Duke of *Moscovy*, the King of *Poland* sent the *Moscovite* a curious Globe, representing the whole Heavenly Bodies, with the particular motion of each several Sphere. To which the *Moscovite* returned this unworthy answer, *Tu mihi Cœlum mittis, at redde mihi Terras de quibus contendimus*; You send me Heaven, saith he, but that will not satisfie, unless you give me back those Lands Which are now in question. And much I fear there are too many of this mind, who would not lose their part on earth for all Heaven it self: whom I desire, if any such peruse these Papers, to consider, that as much as the most flourishing Country which is here described doth fall short of that Paradise wherein God placed our Father *Adam*, so much, and infinitely more did that Earthly Paradise fall short of the unspeakable Glories of the Kingdom of Heaven. To the diligent and careful search of which Heavenly Kingdom I heartily commit the Reader: not doubting but the Works of God which are here presented, and that vicissitude of humane Affairs which is herein touched at, may prompt him to some serious thoughts of that mighty God who made all these Works, in whom is no shew nor *shadow of change*; to whom be given all Glory both in this World, and that to come.

Quicquid enim Lunæ *gremio complectitur Orbis,*
Permutat variátque vices, trepidóque tumultu
Æstuat, & nunquam sentit pars una Quietem.
Nam ruit in sese, & civili vulner: semper
Aut cadit, aut perimit; alióque renascitur ore,
Rursus ut intereat: sic non est omnibus unum
Partibus Ingenium, non vis nativa. Sed Orbes
Astriferi, *& nitidi sublimis Regio* Cœli
Immunis sevi, & vultu immutabilis uno,
Perpetuum servant solida & sincera tenorem.

The Verses are *G. Buchanan*'s, in his Book *De Sphæra*, which I thus Translate, and therewithal conclude this Work.

The *World beneath the Moon* its shapes doth vary,
And change from this to that; nor can it tarry
Long in one state, but with it self doth jar,
Kills and is kill'd in endless Civil War.
New form'd again, 'tis but to die; The frame
Neither of Bodies nor of Minds the same.
But *that above the Spheres*, the Heavens on high,
In which GOD reigns in glorious Majesty,
Free from old Age, unchang'd, and of one face,
Always presents it self in equal Grace.

Non nobis, Domine, non nobis, sed Nomini tuo detur Gloria.

FINIS.

A TABLE of some Principal Things herein contained, not properly Reducible to the following INDEX.

A.

Abades, a strange beast, the *Rhinoceros* of the Ancients *lib.* 3. 201
Abasenes, by whom converted *l.* 4. 50 their Heterodoxies and Opinions *ibid.*
Abilene, the Tetrachy of *Lysanias*, where it was *l.* 3. 53, why reckoned, *Luke* 3. amongst the portions of *Herod*'s Children 71
Abydus besieged by *Philip* of *Macedon*, and in distress, is fired by the Inhabitants, who likewise slew themselves *l.* 3. 15. betrayed since to the *Turks*, by the Governors daughter *ibid.*
Adamites, why so called, and what *l.* 2. 77. by whom destroyed *ibid.*
Adolphus II. Earl of *Berg* shut up in an Iron vessel, and miserably stung to death by Bees *l.* 2. 45
Adriatick-Sea, whence it had the name *l.* 1. 105, the great extent thereof in some ancient Writers *ib.* married to the Duke of *Venice* every Holy Thursday *ib.*
Advice of an old Casique to *Columbus* *l.* 4. 151
Æolus why made the god of the Windes *l.* 1. 75
Æs Corinthium, what it was, how highly prized, and how occasioned *l.* 2. 188
Ætna, the violent burnings of it *l.* 1. 72. and the cause thereof *ib.*
Africa, whence it had the name *l.* 4. 1. 2. the state of Christianity in it, how much decayed *ib.* the several languages therein spoken *ib.* The monstrous things reported of it by some of the Ancients *ib.*
Agbarus Prince of *Edessa*, his message to our Saviour *l.* 3. 117
Albigenses, what they were, and why so called *l.* 1. 193. the sum and substance of their story *ib.*
Alcoran, the book of the *Mahometan* Law, why so called *l.* 3. 107. how highly reverenced *ib.* the Doctrinals thereof, *&c.* reduced unto eight Commandments *ib.*
Alfonsine, Tables by whom compiled, and the cost bestowed in the compiling of them *l.* 1. 233
Allusion, of a *French* Gentleman, concerning the cause of their civil broils *l.* 1. 153
Almans, from whence so called *l.* 2. 32 of what several Nations they consisted 63. their affairs and story *ib.*
Almodad, the son of *Jocktan*, where most probably fixed *l.* 1. 10
Aloes, a precious Wood worth its weight in silver *l.* 3. 213. *Aloes Zocotrina*, from what place it comes *l.* 4. 71
Amara, a Mountain in *Æthiopia*, described *l.* 4. 53.
Amazons, why so called *l.* 3. 6. their dwelling place *ib.* the sum and substance of their affairs *l. ibid.*
Amber, where it groweth, how gathered, and the virtues of it *l.* 2. 143.
Amber liquid *l.* 4. 117
America, not known to the Ancients *l.* 4. 83. by whom first discovered, 84, 85. the people of it not so black as the *Africans* 87. that they are descended of the *Tartars*, *ib.* the state of Christianity in it, *ib.* the ingenuity of the people in their feather pictures 86
Amethyst, a precious stone, and the vertues of it *l.* 3. 8.
Amianthus, a stone whereof cloth is made *l.* 2. 211. which stained, is cleansed by fire *ib.*
Amphictynes, what they were, and of their Authority *l.* 2, 193
Amphiscii, why so called, and what they are in Geography *l.* 1. 20
Amyclas silentium perdidit, a by-word, and from whence it came *l.* 1. 67
Amyris insanit, an old proverb, the meaning and occasion of it *ibid.*
Anabaptist cuts off his brothers head *l.* 1. 141. their furies and proceeding in the City of *Munster* 476. their demands in the insurrection of the Boors *l.* 2. 153
Anakim, the name of a *Gigantine* race of men, and why given unto them *l.* 3. 79
Anamim, the father of the *Hamanientes*, an *African* people *l.* 1. 11
Aranei telon, an old by-word, and the meaning of it *l.* 2. 213
Anchorits, whence so called *l.* 1. 100 buried whilest alive *ib.*
Annals, what they are, and how they differ from Histories *l.* 1. 17
Answer, a feeling one of an *English* Captain to a scoffing demand of the *French*, *l.* 1. 118. a smart one of *Spinola* to *Maurice* Prince of *Orange* 60 of *Richard* I. to the Pope, writing for the Releasment of the Bishop of *Beauvois* 157. of the *Conqueror* concerning his imprisoning of *B. Odo* 164. of Dr. *Dale* to the *Spanish* Commissioners *l.* 3. 97
Anticyram naviget, a proverb, and to whom applicable *l.* 2. 193
Antipodes, what they are *l.* 1. 20. the tenet touching them decided by some of the Ancients *ib.* condemned of Heresie in the darker times of the Church *l.* 1. 20
Antioch, the same with *Riblath*, its story *l.* 3. 49
Antoeci, what they are in Geography *l.* 1. 20
Antonius Army in distress, relieved by the prayers of Christians *l.* 2. 81
Apennage, what *l.* 2. 80, 81
Archery, where most practised in elder times *l.* 3. 150. *Cezeremissi*, good Archers *l.* 2. 134. the excellency of the *English* at it. Whether Guns or that to be preferred *l.* 3. 150
Aram the son of *Sem*, the founder of the *Syrians* *l.* 1. 8. *l.* 3 38. the large extent of that name in holy Scripture *ib.*
Areopagites, what they were, and from whence so called *l.* 2. 190
Argonauts, who they were, and whence so denominated *l.* 3. 128. their expedition into *Colchis* *ib.*
Argosies, great ships of burden, whence they had their name *l.* 2. 163
Ariamnes, a *Galatian* feasted the whole Nation for a year together *l.* 3. 8
Aristomenes, strange escape out of prison *l.* 2. 183
Aristotle, the Precursor of Christ, *in rebus naturalibus*, *l.* 1. 2. why he conceived the World to have been eternal *ib.*
Arius, the Hereticks his dissimulation and death *l.* 4. 13
Ark of *Noah*, where made *l.* 3. 116. in what place it rested after the flood *l.* 1. 6, 7. *l.* 3. 152
Armadilla, a strange beast in *America* *l.* 2. 60. the description of it *l.* 4. 86
Armenians, in what point they differ from other Christians, *l.* 3. 125. how and by whom their Church is governed *ib.*
Arms, why first used *l.* 1. 54. by whom first quartered 221. why those of *England* give place in the same *Escocheon* to the Arms of *France* 275
Arphaxad, the father of the *Chaldeans* first settled in the Religion, called *Arapaditis* *l.* 3. 116
Arroba, a *Spanish* measure, the content thereof *l.* 4. 110
Arvisian, Wines much celebrated *l.* 3. 129. in what place they grow *ib.*
Arundel, created a Count of the Empire by the Emperour *Rodolphus*, and afterwards Lord *Arundel* of *Wardour*, by King *James* *l.* 1. 155
Asia, whence so called at first, *l.* 1, 2. the several notions of the word, and in what sense used in holy Scripture *l.* 3. 3. the state of Christianity in it *ib.* among whom divided *ib.*

A TABLE.

Ashenaz, the son of *Gomer*, first settled in *Bithynia* and *Phrygia minor*, *l.* 3 5,7

Aspendus Citharista, a proverb, and the meaning of it *l.*3.23

Assur, the son of *Sem*, where planted *l.*1.7.*l.*3.115. the *Assyrians* descended of him *ib.* why so easily conquered by all Invaders *l.*3.124

Athens *l.* 2. 189

Attila the *Hun*, why called *Flagellum Dei* *l.*2.156. his bloody end *ib.* his Coat of Arms 160

Augur. and *Aruspex*, how they differ, and whence they had their names *l.*3. 120

Augustane Confession, why so called *l.*2. 35. by whom, and where confirmed 63

St. *Augustin*'s tart reply to an Atheistical demand *l.*1. 2. the Order of *Friers* by him founded 99

Augustus, or an Essay of the Means and Councels, by which he reduced the Common wealth of *Rome* to the state of Monarchy *l.*1.38

Avi sinistra, what it meaneth, and the reason of it *l.*3. 120

Aulaa, Tapestries, why so called, and by whom invented *l.*3. 25

Austrasia, what Provinces it contained, when first made a Kingdom *l.* 2. 56 the story and Kings thereof *ib.*

Australis incognita, the vast greatness of it *l.*4 158. why not yet discovered *ib.*

B.

Babel, the attempt only of some bold adventurers, and not of all the sons of *Noah* *l.* 1. 13. the languages occasioned there not 72 in number, as by some supposed 8. the stupendious greatness of the project *l.*3. 113, 114

Babylon *ib.*

Bacchus, called *Mutinus* why *l.*3. 18

Balearis, why so called *l.*1.243

Baltick-Sea, why so called *l.*2. 110. why it doth not ebb and flow like other Seas *ib.*

Bathes not permitted by the Emperour *Adrian* to be used promiscuously by both Sexes *l.* 1. 141. the inconveniency arising from that intermixture *ib.*

Battel at *Mutina*, and the success thereof *l.* 1. 127. between the *Sarmatians* & their slaves *l.* 2. 132, 135. of *Keresture* 155. of *Lepanto* 219. the last betwixt *Alexander* and *Darius* King of *Persia* *l.*3. 115

Bdellium, mentioned *Gen.* 2. 12. what conceived to be *l.* 3. 143

Beaufors, why made the surname of the Children of *John* of *Gaunt* *l.*1.169

Bel and *Baal*, whence the names derived *l.*3. 119. why called *Belzebub*, the Lord of Flies 74

Bellerophontis Littera, a by-word, the occasion of it *l.*3.21

Belga, the valiantest of the *Gauls* in the time of *Cæsar*, and for what reasons *l.* 2. 2, 3

Benedictines, or *Black Monks*, by whom instituted *l.*1. 100. their habit and increase *ib.*

Berrie, abundantly stored with sheep *l.*2.175. *Charles* the 7th. in derision called King of *Berrie* *ib.*

Bezoar, the soveraign nature of it *l.* 4. 89. found in the belly of a beast, called the *Vicugne* ib. that of *China*, and the East more excellent than that of *America* *l.*3.183

Bishop of *Spalato*, his Levity, Apostacy, and death *l.*2. 162

Bishops coæval with Christianity *l.*1. 32, 146, 149, 257. *l.*2. 105, 179. *l.*3.61. how, and why hated by the *Bisoants* *l.*1. 215. and the ill consequences thereof *ibid.* Bishops not anciently interdicted from the acts of War *l.*3.60

Black Fryers, or *Dominicans*, by whom founded, and why so called *l.*1. 99

Blind and *Lame*, mentioned 2 *Sam.* 5.8. what they were most probably *l.*3. 79

Bos in Lingua, a proverb, the meaning and original of it *l.*2. 189

Botelius his strange adventure *l.* 3.201

Brachmans, what they were amongst the *Indians* *l.*3, 193. their authority and course of life *ib.* succeeded in the first by the modern *Bramines* *ib.*

Brachygraphie, or the art of short writing, by whom first invented *l.*4. 5

Britain, from whence the name probably derived *l.* 1. 251. not from *Brutus* ib. that there was no such man, proved *ib.* Southern parts thereof called *England* 252. its plenty and ornaments briefly set forth *ib.* plenty of Mines therein 254 and number of Parks *ib.* its Seas stored with fish 255. quantity of flesh spent in one City thereof 255. Christian faith planted therein by whom 257. first peopled out of *Gaul* 262. counterfeit Kings of *England* *l.*3.136

Burentaure *l.*2. 125

Burgundians, why so called *l.*2. 189 when first converted to the faith *ib.* their affairs and story *ib.*

Biscainers, some of their Customs *l.* 1. 218

C.

Cæsar, the name at first of the *Roman* Emperours *l.*1. 52 after of the designed Successour *ib.* the unfortunate end of most of them 53

Cæsar Borgia, son of Pope *Alexander* the sixth, after divers changes of fortune where slain *l.*1. 215

Calis taken by the *English*, and retaken by the *French* *l.*1.161

Cales taken by the Earl of *Essex* *l.*1. 225

Caliph, the name of the Successors of *Mahomet*, and the succession of them *l.*3.109, 110

Caloirs, what, and where seated, their number and manner of life *l.*2.202

Cambyses his present to the King of *Æthiopia*, with the Kings answer return'd *l.*4.57

Campi Catalaunici, where *l.*1.185

Canes sepulchrales, what *l.*3.153

Capuam esse Cannas Annibali, a by-word, and the occasion of it *l.*1.61

Capuchin Friers, by whom first instituted, and why so called *l.*1. 100

Cappadocians generally so lewd, that they grew a by-word *l.*3. 9. not only morally wicked, but naturally venimous 10

Caracalla the Emperor slain by *Macrinus*, where, and upon what occasion *l.*3. 118

Captherins to be found in *Coptus*, a Town of *Egypt* *l.*1.10. carried against all reason into *Cappadocia* *ib.* & *l.*3.9

Cardinals, by whom first ordain'd, the Election of the Popes assigned to them only, and by whose authority *l.*1.92

Carmel, a Mountain of *Syria* *l.* 3.43. mistook by the *Gentiles* for a god *ib.* the Fryers Carmelites thence named *ib.* & *l.*1. 100

Carthusian Monks, by whom instituted *l.*1. 100. their strait kind of life *ib.*

Castabine, more likely to be found in *Chasiotis* than *Colchis* *l.*1.11

Centaurs, the fable of them, whence it took beginning *l.*2.199

Chaldeans, great Astrologers *l.*3.182. the name communicated unto all who professed that Art *ib.* so called from *Chesed*, the son of *Nachor* *ib.*

Charles the 8th. of *Never* his strange death *l.*1. 216

Chaos, or first matter of the world, expressed by *Moses* in the names of Heaven and Earth *l.* 1, 2. how described by *Ovid* *ib.*

Chatsermaveth, the father of the *Chadromatite*, an *Indian* people *l.* 1.10

Chersoneses, what they are, why so called, and how many of them *l.* 2. 106

Chimera the Monster, what it was, and how tamed by *Bellerophon* *l.*3. 21

Chorography, what it is, and how differeth from *Geography* *l.*1. 24

Christians, where first so called, and with what solemnity *l.* 3. 44. extreamly hated by the *Gentiles* 45. their persecutions and increase *ib.*

Christmas sports in *Twelf-tide*, by whom first instituted *l.* 1. 264

Chronologies, how they differ from History *l.*1, 17. by whom best performed *ib.*

Chus, the Son of *Cham*, first planted in

A TABLE.

in *Arabia* l. 3. 102, his posterity (the *Chusites*) why called *Æthiopians* ib. mistaken for the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* ib.

Chusites, why rendered *Æthiopians* in our *English* Bibles l. 3. 99. the Translation justified ib. the actions ascribed unto them not possible to be understood of the *Æthiopians* of *Africk* l. 4. 71. the mistake laid on the Expositors l. 3. 100.

Cimmerians the posterity of *Gomer* l. 1. 12. 154. first settled in *Albania* and *Phrygia Major* ib. and gave name to *Bosphorus Cimmerius* l. 2. 38. In *Europe* better known by the name of *Cimbri*, the same with the *Cimmerians* l. 1. 12. l. 2 38 the *Cimbrick Chersonese* named from them l. 2. 106. their attempt upon the *Roman* Empire and overthrown by *Marius* l. 1. 187.

Cimon in one day overthrew the Sea and Land Forces of the *Persians* l. 3. 23.

Cinnamon, what it is, where, and how it groweth, and from whence so called l. 4. 69

Ciphers, or private Characters for writing, by whom first invented l. 4. 4.

Circassians, where they dwell, their opinions and practice l. 3. 166

Cisterstians or *White Monks*, whence so called l. 1. 99. by whom ordained ib.

Cities, by whom first built, and on what design l. 1. 5. the causes of the greatness and magnificence of them ib.

Citim, the son of *Japhet*, first settled in the Isle of *Cyprus* l. 3. 35. his posterity spreading into *Macedonia*, l. 2. 199, 204. from thence into *Æolia*, and so into *Italy* l. 1. 32

Climes, what they be, how many, and how distinguished l. 1. 20

Cloves, where they grow most plentifully, and the nature of them l. 3. 222.

Coa, and *Vestis Coa*, a light Garment much used by the Dames of *Rome* l. 3. 30. the *Coan*, Wine (*vinum Cos*) as much cried up by the good-fellows of that City 31.

Coconuts, a most excellent fruit, and of several uses l. 4. 70

Cochinele, a precious Die, how, and where it groweth l. 4. 110

Codrus, his love to his Country l. 2. 190.

Colonies, why planted by the *Romans* l. 1. 185. the number of them, and how distributed ib. whether more useful than a Fortress ib.

Colophonem addere, a proverb, and from whence it came l. 3. 17

Colossus of *Rhodes* l. 3. 35.

Commentaries what they properly are, and how they differ from History l. 1. 17.

Constantine converted to the Faith, and on what occasion l. 1. 53. his new Modelling of the Empire 55. of which one of the chief subverters ib. He caused the Pretorian Guards ib. his Donation forged 94.

Constance, the Council there holden l. 2. 58.

Consuls, when first ordained in *Rome* l. 1. 35. who the first sole Consul ib. when the Office ended ib.

Cophti, the name of the Christians of *Egypt*, whence to be derived l. 4. 5. their Tenets, in matters of Religion, and Estate at the present ib.

Corybantes, the Priests of *Cybele* l. 2. 214.

Cosmography defined l. 1. 24. the general Latitude of the Notion ib.

Cotys his rare temper in mastering and preventing passion l. 2. 205.

Cotton-wooll, where it groweth, and how l. 4. 40. & *passim alibi*. l. 3. 47.

Council of *Trent* l. 2. 67.

Creation of the World. and the Motives, of it l. 1. 1. the concurrence of each person to it 3. the matter of it, and the method ib. how long since done 1, 2.

Crete, things most observable there l. 2. 219

Cretense mendacium l. 2. 217

Cretensis nescit Pelagus, a Proverb, the occasion of it l. 2. 219.

Crocodiles, their monstrous shape, and where most usual l. 4. 7.

Curetes, what they were, and from whence so called l. 2. 217.

Cuspinians happy guess at the Arms of *Germany* l. 2. 104.

Cyprian women their Unchastity l. 3. 34. the *Heroick* Act of a *Cyprian* Lady 37

Cyzicum, besieged in vain by *Mithridates*, its glorious Temple l. 3. 15.

D.

Days observed as lucky, or unlucky unto divers men l. 1. 86

Damascus, how situated l. 3. 171. *Damascen* Plums, *Damask* Roses, and *Damask* Linnen, thence so called 53.

Damiata besieged and taken by the Christians, l. 4. 9.

Darius his fruitless Wars against the *Scythians* l. 3. 164

David George a monstrous Heretick, and what his Tenets l. 2. 3.

Dedan the son of *Regma*, planted on the shores of the *Persian* Gulf l. 1. 12

Delinquents, how to be proceeded with l. 1. 63. gained more by favour than by rigour ib.

Despot the title of Heir apparent in the Eastern Empire l. 2. 165. communicated to inferiour Princes ib. the *Despots* of *Rascia* ib. of *Servia* ib. of *Bulgaria* ib.

Diaries, what they are, and how they differ from History l. 1. 2.

Dictators, what they were in the state of *Rome*, a Catalogue of them l. 1. 38.

Divination, by Birds, and the kinds thereof l. 3. 122.

Diocletian deposes himself, and follows the Trade of a Gardner l. 1. 55

Dodanim, the Son of *Javan*, first setled in *Rhodes* l. 3. 52. his posterity passing into *Epirus* l. 2. 197. and there naming the *Dodanian* Grove 198.

Dog-fish, how taken l. 2. 23.

Dositheans, a *Samaritan* Sect, and their Superstitions l. 3. 72.

Drake Sir *Francis*; how said to be the first that sayled about the World, by whom followed l. 4. 136.

Drahomira, her cruelty, swallowed alive l. 2. 77.

Druides, what they were, and from whence so called; their cheif seat in *France*, in *Britain* l. 1. 275.

Drusians, what they are l. 3. 39. of their power and strength 53.

E.

Ecco la Fico, a scoff used amongst the *Italians* l. 1. 124.

Edgar rowed over *Dee* by eight Kings l. 1. 276.

Edward 3d. his claim unto the Crown of *France*, mistaken in our common Chronicles l. 1. 153. not prejudiced at all by the *Salique* Law ib.

Egypt peopled in probability before the Flood, some of the Dynasties of their Kings to have bin before it l. 4. 15.

Elam the Son of *Sem*, where planted l. 1. 8.

Election of Popes l. 1. 97. of the Dukes of *Venice* l. 1. 109. of the *German* Emperours l. 2. 103. of the great Master of *Malta* l. 4. 39. means for obtaining the Crown of *Bohemia* l. 2. 77.

Electors of *Germany*, how many l. 2. 103. by whom ordained ib. their Officers and how performed ib.

Elephants their vast greatness and docile nature l. 3. 191.

Elisha the son of *Javan*, setled in *Elis* of *Peloponnesus* l. 1. 13. and after in the Isles of *Greece* l. 2. 182. thence called the Isles of *Elisha*, *Ezek.* 27. 7, 15.

Emir of *Sidon*, what he is l. 3. 44. his power and strength 45.

Endymionis somnum dormit, a Proverb the occasion of it l. 3. 20.

Enemies to be licensed flight l. 1. 177. how to be dealt withal when they are in our power l. 1. 63.

Enterviews betwixt great Princes reckoned inconvenient l. 1. 119.

Epeminondas slain at *Mantinea* l. 2. 183

Escurial l. 1. 232.

Esseni, why so called, their opinions and *Dogmata* l. 3. 67.

Etymologies, ridiculous of *Europe* *l.* 1. 28. of the *Hugonots* *l.* 1. 169. of the *Wallons* *l.* 2. 3. of the *Lombards* *l.* 2. 148.
Ephesus, and the Temple there dedicated to *Diana* *l.* 3. 17.
Epoche, what it is in account of time *l.* 1. 20. the several *Epoches* in story *ib.*
Eunuchs, why most employed by the Eastern Monarchs *l.* 3. 160.
Europe, whence so called *l.* 1. 27. the Original languages still in it.
Exarch, what he was, and by whom ordained *l.* 1. 81. his proper Territory *ib.* the Catalogue and succession of them. *ib.*

F.

Fides Attica, a Proverb, the Original of it *l.* 2 189.
Feeds, a barbarous custom among the *Scots* *l.* 1. 283. abrogated by K *James* *ib.*
Fig tree, why cursed by our Saviour *l.* 3. 61.
Fire, worshipped by the *Lituani* *l.* 2 143. and by the *Persians* *l.* 3. 142. carried in state before the *Romans* *ib.*
Fleas drive the Inhabitants from the City *Myus* *l.* 3. 17.
Flight, to be permitted an Enemy, and debarred a Souldier *l.* 1. 177.
Formalities of the homage done by *Edward* the 3. to the *French* King *l.* 1. 184. at the Degradation of Priests *l.* 2. 58. at the Investiture of the Dukes of *Carinthia*, *l.* 2. 67. of *Maurice* Duke of *Saxony* 93. of *Albert* Duke of *Prussia* 137. of the Duke of *Muscovie*, 149. at the admitting the new Du. of *Wurtzburg*, and interring the old *l.* 2. 72. at the mariages, of the Nestorians *l.* 3. 115. at the Coronation of the *Great Cham* 180. at the presenting of Ambassadours to the *Grand* Signieur 136. at the Funerals in *China* 183.
Forein Guard dangerous to a Princes Person *l.* 4. 18. as forein Aids unto a Kingdom 19. on what occasions usually sought, and when most necessary *ib.*
Fornication and Adultery punished with death *l.* 2. 153.
Franks, or *French*, of what Nations they consisted *l.* 1. 188. Their Actions and atchievements *ib.* By whom converted to the faith, and on what occasion *l.* 1. 150. their Character 16. the Antipathy between them and the *Spaniards* 153. the vastness of their Empire, and the reasons of the decay thereof 190, 191. The name of *Franks* given by the *Turks* to all Western Christians *l.* 3. 44.
Frankincense, where it groweth, and how, *l.* 3. 104, 106. offered to the Gods, Frankincense growing out of the Earth *ib.*
Franciscans, or *Grey Friers*, why so called, and by whom founded, by the *French* called Cordeliers *l.* 1. 100.
Free Cities, what they are, how many. and in what Estates *l.* 2. 37.
Friers, and their several Orders 114. *&c.* in what esteem amongst the people *l.* 1. 100.
Fruitfulness of *Rhesan* *l.* 2. 133. and *Podolia* 144.

G.

Gabats, a Leprous kind of people in what parts they dwell *l.* 1. 182.
Galileans, of what stock they were *l.* 3. 68. scorned by the *Jews* 69. Their zeal unto Religion, our Saviour called a *Galilean* *ib.*
Gallican Church, the power and priviledges of it *l.* 1. 151.
Gaulonites, what they were, for what cause named *Galileans* *l.* 3. 60.
Gentlemen of *Venice*, what they are, and in what esteem *l.* 1. 109.
Geography defin'd *l.* 1. 16. the benefit thereof 19.
S. *George* the *Cappadocian*, a famous Martyr, *l.* 3. 9. his *Cenotaphium*, at *Lidda* in the Holy Land *l.* 3. 50. highly esteemed among the *Turks*, his bank in *Genoa*, *l.* 1. 120. made Patron of the most noble Order of the Garter *l.* 1. 274.
Germans, whence so named *l.* 2. 32. how terrible at first to the *Romans*, *l.* 2. 39. their Original extraction *ib.* possessed of the Western Empire, the power of the Emperours impaired, and by what means now meerly titular *l.* 2. 102.
Geter, the son of *Aram* planted in *Albania* *l.* 1. 8. *l.* 3. 130.
Gipsies, from whence they have both their names and feats *l.* 4. 5
Gomer, the son of *Japhet*, first setled in *Albania*, also of his posterity, see *Cimmerians* *l.* 1. 12. *l.* 2. 38.
Gothes, their Original, and first seat *l.* 2. 120. their Kings before they left the East *l.* 2. 121. their successes and affairs in *Italy* *l.* 1. 43, 44. in *France* 185. in *Spain* *l.* 1. 212.
Grecians, in what they differ from the Church of *Rome*, by which maliciously and unjustly persecuted *ib.* their language not of such extent as in former times *l.* 1. 179.
Guelfs and *Gibellines* whence so called and when, the fancy of the *Elfs* and *Goblins* derived from thence *l.* 1. 113. *l.* 2. 76.
Guelphian family, their Original *l.* 2. 96.
Guicciardine yielded by the Inquisition and the substance of him in that place *l.* 1. 94.
Guns where invented, and by whom *l.* 2. 34. not used in *India* at the expedition of *Bacchus* *l.* 3. 181.
Gyges, how he came to be King of *Lydia* *l.* 3. 19. whence said to have a Ring, by which made invisible *ib.*

H.

A Letter Ominous to the State of *England* *l.* 2. 225.
Hamath, or the Land of *Hamath* *l.* 3. 46.
Hanse-Towns, why so called, how many, and of what power at Sea *l.* 2. 37.
Harlots, whence used for the name a common prostitute *l.* 1. 165.
Harpyes, the fable and the Moral *l.* 2. 218.
Hatto, Archbishop of *Mentz*, devoured of Rats and Mice *l.* 2. 49. So also *Popiehus* Duke of *Poland* *l.* 2. 143.
Havilah the son of *Chus*, first planted about *Babylonia* *l.* 1. 10. called thence the Land of *Havilah*, in the second of *Gen.* *l.* 3. 143.
Havilah, the son of *Jocktan*; first seated in *India* *l.* 1. 10. the Kingdoms of *Ava* ond *Chavilah*, so called from him. *l.* 3. 212.
Hebrew, not the primitive language *l.* 1. 17. nor at all peculiar to the *Jews* *ib.*
Hegira, the Mahometan Epoche *l.* 1. 18. from whence so called *l.* 3. 109. the unsteadfastness of *Scaliger* about it *ib.*
Hellenists, what they were, and why so called *l.* 2. 179. *l.* 3. 58. in what differing from the other *Jews* *ib.*
Hercynian Forest; the beginning and extent thereof *l.* 2. 38.
Hermias the Tyrant sewed in an Oxes Hide, and baited to death *l.* 3. 100.
Herodians, what they were, and from whence denominated *l.* 3. 58.
Heteroscii, what they are in *Geography* and from whence so called *l.* 1. 22.
Hieroglyphicks, what they were, and by whom first used *l.* 4. 5. some particulars of them *ib.*
S. *Hierome*, a Father of the Church, where born *l.* 2. 153. the Order of Monks by him instituted *l.* 1. 99.
History defined *l.* 1. 16, 17. the necessary use of it, and to whom, how it differeth from *Annals*, *Commentaries*, &c. *ib.*
Hock-tide sports, the Original of them, and from whence so named *l.* 1. 271.
Hollanders, their great strength at Sea, *l.* 2. 20. the great benefit they make by fishing on the Coast of *England* *l.* 2. 2. Their base cheat upon the *English* at *Polerone* *l.* 3. 222. and bloudy butchery at *Amboyna*, 223.
Holy Oyl of *Rhemes*, in what state attended, not so ancient as the *French* pretend *l.* 1. 159

Homers birth, how contended for *l.*3.17. where born, and why call'd *Mæonides* *ibid.*
Huanacus, a strange beast, and the nature of it *l.*4. 125
Hugonots, whence so called, *l.* 1. 169 Their great power once, and present condition 151
Hul, or *Chul*, the son of *Aram*, in what parts first setled *l.* 1. 8. *l.*3.127
Hydrography what it is, and by whom best written *l*, 1. 26

I.

Jacobites, what they are, and where most numerous, their opinions *l.* 3. 117, 118
Janizaries, their institution and number, *l.* 3. 134. their Office and power, *ib.* their insolencies and punishments, 135. the likeliest men to carry the *Turkish* Empire, if the line of *Ottoman* should fail, *l.* 3. 138
Japhet, how made partaker of the blessing of God, *Gen.* 9. 27. both in the literal sense, and the mystical *l.* 1. 20
Japyx, the name of the North-west wind, and why given unto it, *l.* 1. 65
Jarach, the son of *Jocktan*, more probably to be found in *Arachosia*, than *Insula Hieracum.* *l.* 1. 78
Javan the son of *Japhet*, the father of the *Ionians* and *Athenians* *l.*3. 17
Jealousie, a predominant passion amongst the *Italians*, *l.* 1. 59. as also amongst the *Moors* and *Spaniards* 207. the *English* little subject to it, and the *Dutch* much less, *l.* 1. 2.
Jesuites by whom first instituted, *l.* 1. 100. their vow of *Mission*, *ib.* grown formidable to the Pope, *ibid.* industrious in planting Christianity in the barbarous Nations. *l.*3. 183. Chief Factors for the King of *Spain*, *l.* 1. 210. They and the *Presbyterian* or *Puritan* Preachers the greatest Incendiaries of Christendom 100 expelled *Georgia*, on what occasion *l.* 3. 130
Jetur the son of *Ismael*, the father of the *Itureans* *l.* 3. 66
Jews not suffered to land in *Cyprus* *l.* 3. 34. expulsed out of *England*, *France* and *Spain* 94. in danger to be stoned every *Maunday Thursday*, *ib.* The hopes and hinderance of their conversion, *ib.* the restitution of their Kingdom not denied by Christ 95
Islands how caused, whether better seated than the Continent, *l.* 1. 18. 19
Imperial Chamber, why erected, and where setled, *l.* 2. 50. *Imperial Cities*, v. Free.
Indians, or *Christians* of S. *Thomas*, what they hold in matter of Religion, *l.* 3. 192. The submission of their Churches to the Pope 193
Indies, where and how it groweth, *l.*3. 200
Influence of the Heavenly bodies on particular Countries *l.* 1. 15
Inquisition, when, and why ordained, the manner of proceeding in it not admitted into many of the Papal Countries *l.* 1. 210
Interim of *Germany*, what it was, and how ill liked of all parties *l.* 2. 35
Invention of Clocks and Watches, *l.* 2. 2. of Pictures in Glass, and laying Colours in Oyl, of Printing, 21. of Guns 34. Leather Ordinance 148. of Wild Fire 217. of Battel-ax *l.* 3. 6. of Dice and Chess 18. of Tragedies 28. of Sail for Ships 30. of Arithmetick and Astrology 43. of Purple Die 44. of Chrystal-glass 45. of Pastorals, Hour-glasses, &c. *l.* 1. 72. of Comedies 73. of Mariners Compass 62. of Tackle for Ships, *ib.* of Letters, and Ciphers, *l.* 4. 4. of Brachygraphy *ib.* of Paper, *l.* 4. 8
Ireland, why never Conquered till the reign of King *James* *l.* 1. 296
Irish their barbarous customs 291
Isthmian Games *l.* 2. 187
Israel and *Judah*, when divided the reasons why no more United, though some opportunities were offered *l.* 3. 85
Italians derived from *Citim*, the son of *Japhet*, so called from the *Æstolians*, by whom converted to the faith, their scandalous lives, how punished, and by what instruments, *l.* 1. 33, 34, and 56
Italy, the name at first of the East parts of the Country only communicated after to the whole, the Kings thereof after the ruine of the Empire, abandoned by the Emperours, and for what reasons *l.* 1. 58, 59
Joan the Virgin, not a Witch, as the *English*, not so miraculously sent as the *French* pretend, *ib.* what she was indeed *l.* 2. 55
Jocktan, and his posterity setled originally in the East, *l.* 10. 11. the improbabilities of their fixing in *Arabia Felix* 10. greater of their transplanting in *America*, *l.* 3. 193
John Baptists head, how pitifully mangled by the Papists.
Julius Scaliger his censure of *Hesiodus* controuled by *Velleius*, *l.* 2. 192. his base character of the *English*, *l.* 1. 255
Joseph Scaliger his singularity about *Nabonidus*, and *Darius Medus*, *ib.* His unstedfastness about the *Hegira* *l.* 3. 121
Julian the Apostate where he died *l.* 3. 115
Judges of Hell, what, and who they were, and why so accounted of, *l.* 2. 212, 216
Justus Lipsius his unjust Censure of *Cesars* Commentaries. *l.* 1. 18

K.

Πία κατὰ κάκιςα, a Proverb, and of whom intended *l.* 2. 215
Κατακλιτὴς & Κατακλιτὸν τέγος, proverbially used for a wicked person *l.* 3. 9
Kings called an Ordinance of man, and why, *l.* 1. 216. who of them anciently anointed, how they take precedency 274. not to use their people to the wars, *l.* 2. 30. the Legend of the Kings of *Colen*, 48. Kings but for twelve years, and then must sacrifice themselves, *l.* 3. 206. Kings subject to Priests, where *l.* 4. 62
Kings Evil a disease, *l.* 1. 130. the Cure thereof hereditary to the King of *England* *l.* 1. 271
Knighthood vid. Orders.

L.

Labyrinth of *Egypt*, *l.* 4. 6. imitated by *Minos*, in that of *Crete*, *l.* 2. 216
Lachrymæ Christi, *l.* 1. 118. the expression of a *Dutchman* thereon *ib.*
Lady of *Loretto* her Legend, *l.*3. 70. the sumptuosity of her Temple, *l.* 1. 84
Lamissus thrown an Infant into a fish-pond, found by King *Agilmond*, brought up in Court, and after chosen King of *Longobards*, *l.* 2. 156
Latines, the Inhabitants of *Latium*, and from whence so called, *l.* 1. 30. The *Latine* tongue not the language of *Italy*. The reasons of the spreading and extent thereof *ib.*
Lampsacus, how saved by *Anaximenes* when threatned by *Alexander* *ib.*
Laws of *Oleron* *l.* 1. 203
League between *France* and *Scotland*, *l.* 1. 286. the condition thereof, *ibid.*
Lebabim the Father of the *Lybi-Ægypti* *l.* 1. 10. *l.* 4. 17
Lemmers an infectious beast, *l.* 2. 114
Lemnia, or *Terra Lemnia*, the soveraign vertues of it, *l.* 2. 210. how made and ordered, *ibid.* why called *Terra Sigillata* *ib.*
Letters, the first Original, and History of them *l.* 4. 4
Levites why scattered and divided among the Tribes, *l.*3. 81. The liberal maintenance allowed them *ib.*
Libanus a famous Mountain, why so named, *l.* 3. 41. the length, course and branches of it *ib.*
Libertas prophetandi, what, and where most in use *l.* 2. 139
Liburni the name of a light Vessel, *l.* 2. 163. and of such Chairs as we call *Sedans*, *ib.* and from whence so named *ib.*
Lions, *l.* 192. Its famous Mart, *ib.* in it a Temple dedicated to *Augustus*, *ib.* before whose Altar exercises instituted

tuted of the *Greek* and *Roman* Eloquence *ib.*
Lomi a ſtrange beaſt in *Bohemia* *l.* 2. 77
Lombards their Original and firſt Kings *l.* 2. 156. their affairs in *Italy*, the ſubverſion of their Kingdom there. *l.* 1. 56
Lud the ſon of *Sem*; the father of the *Lydians* in *Aſia minor* *l.* 1. 8
Ludim the Son of *Mizraim*, the father of the *Ethiopians* in *Africk*, *l.* 1. 11. improperly rendred *Lydians* in our *Engliſh* Bibles, *Jer.* 46. 9. 12
Luther his birth, his firſt contention with the Pope, *l.* 2. 35. the ſucceſs and ſpreading of his Doctrine, *ib.* and by what means eſpecially, 37. the Government of the *Lutheran* Churches, *ib.* the condition of their Miniſters 38. their Rites and Ceremonies not much different from thoſe in the Church of *England* *ib.*
Lyſanias the Tetrarch of *Abyline*, whoſe ſon he was *l.* 3. 53. why reckoned, *Luke* 3. among *Herod's* Children *ib.*

M.

Mackbeth his ſtory *l.* 1. 286
Madai the third Son of *Japhet*, *l.* 3. 139. the father of the *Medes* *l.* 1. 13
Magi, what they were in *Perſia*, their eſteem and power *l.* 3. 142
Magnes, why uſed to ſignifie the Load-ſtone by the *Latine* writers *l.* 4. 87
Magog the ſon of *Japhet* ſetled in *Syria propria*, and the borders of *Iberia* *l.* 1. 12. *l.* 3. 47.
Mahomet his birth and breeding, *l.* 3. 107. his deſign to Coyn a new Religion, *ib.* the cauſes of the great growth and increaſe thereof, 109. his ſucceſs and victories *ib.*
Maires of the Palace, their inſtitution and authority, *l.* 1. 149. the Catalogue and ſucceſſion of them *ib.*
Malefactors flying to *Geneva*, how puniſhed *l.* 1. 138
Man, why created unarmed and naked, the Image of God in him what it doth conſiſt in *l.* 1. 3
Manly exerciſes allowed at *Geneva* on the Lords day *l.* 1. 138
Marcheta mulieris, a barbarous cuſtom of the *Scots*, *l.* 1. 283. whence named, and by whom abrogated *ib.*
Mares, why uſed in battel among ſome of the Ancients *l.* 2. 176.
Margaret Counteſs of *Henneberg*, delivered at one birth of 365 Children *l.* 2. 22
Mariners Compaſs, by whom firſt invented, and by whom perfected *l.* 1. 62. erroneouſly aſcribed to *Salomon* *l.* 4. 86
Maronites, whence ſo called, their Tenets and places of dwelling, *l.* 3. 40. Their reconciliation with the Pope, but a matter of complement *l.* 3. 41
Marulla her valour in preſerving *Hephæſtias* from being ſurpriz'd by the *Turks* *l.* 3. 211
Maſſacres of the *Scythians* by the *Medes*, *l.* 3. 154. of the *Romans* by *Mithridrates*, 7. of the *Danes* by the *Engliſh*, 317. of the *French* in *Sicil*, *l.* 1. 76. of the *Hugonots* by the *French* 150
Maſtick, what it is, where growing, and how gathered *l.* 3. 29
Maſtiffe Dogs, why called *Moloſſi*, by the *Latines* *l.* 2. 197
Mamalukes, their Inſtitution, Office, and Power *l.* 4. 18
Meduſa the Fable, and true ſtory thereof *l.* 4. 75
Melchites, what they are, and from whence denominated *l.* 3. 40
Merced, an Order of Religious perſons, their inſtitution and imployment *l.* 2. 197
Meſech the ſon of *Aram* planted about *Mons Maſius* *l.* 3. 118
Meſech, or *Moſoch*, the ſon of *Japhet*, ſetled among the *Montes Moſchici* in *Armenia major* *l.* 3. 127
Meſha, and Mount *Sephir*, mentioned *Gen.* 10. in what place they were *l.* 3. 118
Meſſage of *Waldermar* K. of *Denmark* to the Pope *l.* 2. 105
Meſſene Servilior, a Proverb, the occaſion of it. *l.* 2. 183
Minotaur, the Fable, and true ſtory of it *l.* 2. 215, 216
Mithridates, the Author of the Antidote ſo named, the ſum and ſubſtance of his ſtory *l.* 3. 7
Miramomoline, what the word doth ſignifie, the *Miramomolines* of *Morocco* *l.* 4. 35
Mizraim the ſon of *Cham*, the father of the Nation of *Egypt* *l.* 4. 4
Monarchy the neareſt form of Government to that of God, the Monarchs of *Spain*, *l.* 1. 247. of the *Engliſh Saxons*, 270. of the *Aſſyrians*, *l.* 3. 119. of the *Medes* and *Perſians* 855
Monaſtick life, how accounted of in former times *l.* 1. 100. whether to be preferred before a ſociable 100
Money not only the inſtrument of exchange in ancient times, *l.* 4. 53. by what names called, and why *ibid.* made ſometimes of Leather and Paſt-board 126
Monks their Original and increaſe, *l.* 1. 100. by whom firſt brought under certain rules *ib.* their ſeveral and particular Orders 99, 100
Mongul, a Tribe of the *Tartars*, *l.* 3. 179. The Title of the great Emperours of *India* 210. their Catalogue and Succeſſion *ib.*
Monument of *John* Duke of *Bedford*, with the anſwer of *Charles* the 8th. to a Courtier, who perſwaded him to deface it *l.* 1. 164
Montmorency, the Family extinct *l.* 1. 157
Moors, the luſt of *Roderick* occaſioned their coming into *Spain*, *l.* 1. 213. and the luſt of *Magnuiza* their expulſion thence 220. forced to quit *Spain* 228
Morſes, or Sea-horſes, the deſcription and uſe made of them *l.* 4. 93
Moſaick work, what it is *l.* 1. 107
Muſcovites, by whom converted, and of what opinions in Religion, *l.* 2. 128. from what Original they come 135. their Government Tyrannical 140. the great Dukes habit and Royal ſtate 158
Muſali, or *Mufrones*, a ſtrange beaſt *l.* 1. 120
Muſick, the ſeveral ſorts and effects thereof, *l.* 3. 13. uſed by the Primitive Chriſtians in Gods publick ſervice *ibid.*
Myrtoum Mare, where it was, and from whence ſo named *l.* 3. 32
Myſiorum poſtremus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *l.* 3. 15

N.

NAmes fatal to ſome Kingdoms *l.* 2. 224
Naptha the nature of it, and where moſt uſed *l.* 3. 140, 143
Naphtuchim ſon of *Mizraim*, where firſt planted, *l.* 4. 14. the name of *Neptune*, by ſome ſaid to be thence derived *ib.*
National Animoſities to what cauſe aſcribed *l.* 1. 16
Navigation, the Original and ſtory of it, *l.* 4. 86. what Nations moſt famous for it in former times, and who at preſent 86
Nemæan Games by whom firſt inſtituted, and on what occaſion, *l.* 2. 187
Nethinims, what they were, and in what imployed *l.* 3. 78
Neſtorians, whence ſo called, *l.* 3. 115. their Tenets in Religion *ib.* Solemnities they uſe in contracting marriage, *ibid.* much hated of the Pope, and why 117
Nimrod, the Founder of the *Babylonian* and *Aſſyrian* Kingdoms *l.* 3. 119, 120
Ninive *l.* 3. 116
Noah's ſeven Precepts, or the Precepts of the ſons of *Noah* *l.* 3. 58
Nomades, where they dwelt, and from whence denominated *l.* 3. 168
Noradine's gallant anſwer made to his Commanders *l.* 3. 56
Normans what they were Originally, *l.* 1. 166. *l.* 2. 114. their Actions and Atchievements, *ib.* when firſt fixt in *France* *l.* 1. 166
North East paſſage, by whom attempted and purſued, *l.* 4. 158. of the North-

North-West passage, *ib.* the little probability of doing any good in either *ib.*
Nuns, why so called, and by whom first instituted, *l.* 1. 101. their particular Orders, *ib.* of ill report for their unchastity, *ibid.* Nunnery of *Valdrude* in *Hainalt* *l.* 2. 9
Nutmegs, how they grow and where most plentiful *l.* 3. 222

O

Obits of the Saints kept as Festivals *l.* 2. 205
Ocean, the collection of waters, *l.* 1. 23. the causes of its ebbing and flowing, *ib.* the Etymologie of the name, and vast greatness of it, 249
Offa's Dike *l.* 1. 275
Oleum Mediacum, see *Naptha*
Olympick Games, by whom first instituted and restored *l.* 2. 182. where held, and who were Judges of them *ib.* All the Victors at one time of one City in *Italy* *l.* 1. 56
Ὀνομαντία, a kind of Divination, an experiment of it *l.* 1. 56
Ophir not the Province of *Sophala* in *Ethiopia*, *l.* 4. 62. where it rather was *l.* 1. 10
Oracles which most famous, *l.* 2. 193. their ambiguity and decay *ib.*
Oratorians an Order of Religious persons, by whom first instituted, used for a counterpoise to the *Jesuites* *l.* 1. 99
Orders of Knighthood, of *Avice*, *l.* 1. 239. *Alcantara ib.* of the *Annunciada* 135. of S. *Andrew ib.* of S. *Anthony l.* 3. 113. of the *Blood of the Lord Jesus Christ*, *l.* 1. 126. of the *Bath* 275. of *Baronets* ib. of the *Cressent* 171. of *Calatrava* 234. of *Dutch* Knights, of the *Port-glaive*, *l.* 2. 151. of the *Dragon* 159. of the *Golden Fleece* 28. of the *Gennet l.* 1. 204. of the *Garter ib.* of the *Holy Ghost ib.* of S. *Jago* 234. of S. *John l.* 3. 97. Great Master how chosen, his title *l.* 1. 954. of *Jesus Christ* 239. of S. *Michael* 204. of S. *Mark* 111. of *Merced* 234. of *Montesa* 246. of *Nova Scotia* 274. of the *Pairrie*, or twelve Peers 204. of the *Round Table* 274. of the *Star* 204. of S. *Stephen* 116. of the *Sepulchre l.* 3. 97. of the *Templars*, of S. *Saviour l.* 1. 246. of the *Glorious Virgin* 111. of the *Lilly* 217
Ostracism, what it was, whence called, and with whom in use *l.* 1. 281
Ostrich Feathers, why, and how long the Cognizance of the Princes of *Wales* *l.* 1. 281
Ovation, how it differeth from a Triumph *l.* 1. 35. from whence so called *ib.* in what cases granted *ib.*
Ovid, why banished into *Pontus*, *l.* 2. 176
Oxenham his adventurous attempt *l.* 4. 89
Oysters grow on Trees *l.* 2. 164

P.

Paisants slavery in *Livonia* *l.* 2. 140
Palms anciently used as a sign of victory, set by the Christians in Church-yards, and for what reason, *ib.* of the rare nature of the Tree *l.* 4. 4, 45
Pamphyli, what they were *l.* 1. 118
Paper where first invented, and why so called *l.* 4. 9
Paradise, where it was indeed the several fanlies and opinions touching the particular *l.* 3. 112
Paradise terrestrial of *Aladine l.* 3. 148
Parchment in *Latine* Pergamena, where invented first *l.* 3. 16
Paris never taken by force, why *l.* 1. 158
Pasiphae, how far the Fable of her may be thought historical *l.* 2. 216
Pathrusim first planted in the land of *Pathros* *l.* 1. 11
Partition-wall, alluded to *Ephes.* 2. 14. what, and where it was *l.* 3. 80
Patriarchiatus a new Order devised by *Constantine*, and what it was *l.* 1. 53
Pelithites, who, and why so called 730
Pellenaa vestis, a by-word, and the meaning of it *l.* 2. 181
Persepolis *l.* 3. 144
Petalisme, what it was, and where most in use *l.* 1. 74
Peter-pence, by whom first granted to the Pope *l.* 1. 98
Periscii and *Periaci*, what they are in Geography *l.* 1. 20
Phaleg, where probably first planted *l.* 1. 8.
Pharisees, whence they had their name *l.* 3, 59. Their *Dogmata*, and Authority amongst the people 59
Pharos *l.* 4. 8
Phaselus, whence so named *l.* 3. 21
Phileni aræ *l.* 4. 25
Philippicks given by *Tullie* for the name of his Orations against *M. Antony* *l.* 2. 195
Phut, the son of *Cham*, father of the *Moors*, or *Mauritanians* *l.* 4. 22.
Phryges sero sapiunt *l.* 3. 13
Picts, what they were, and the story of them *l.* 1. 285
Pigritia, a strange Creature in *America* *l.* 4. 89
Pied piper, the story of him *l.* 2. 168
Pigeons Letter-carriers *l.* 3. 114
Pizzarro his birth, breeding, rise, and death *l.* 4. 132
Pledging one another, why first used in *England* *l.* 1. 271
Pluto, why fancied by the Poets for the God of Hell *l.* 2. 197
Pompey's successful War against the *Cilicians* *l.* 3. 24
Polycrates for long time fortunate, dies miserably *l.* 3. 30
Pope, or *Papa*, what it signifieth, *l.* 1. 90 Common at first to other Bishops, *ib.* the opportunities those of *Rome* had to advance their greatness *l.* 1. 90. the means and steps by which they did attain to their temporal power 98. and still keep the same 99. how easie to be made Hereditary, Their Forces and Revenue
Portugals their Character, their Antipathy to the *Castilians*, ib. *Portugals*, *Spaniards*, *French*, *Italians*, compared *l.* 1. 239
Poultry hatched in Ovens by heat *l.* 4. 3
Prædiction of the *Moors* conquering *Spain* *l.* 1. 213
Prætorian guards, by whom instituted, and by whom cashiered, *l.* 1. 53 Their power, the great Authority of their Captains *l.* 1. 45
Presbyter John, the name of the King of *Tendue l.* 3. 178. erroneously ascribed by *Scaliger* to the *Abessine* Emperour *ib.* The ground of the mistake and right name of that Prince *l.* 4. 58
Presbyterian Discipline, by whom first framed, *l.* 1. 137. and how after propagated. The introduction of it into the Seigneury of *Geneva*, and the Realm of *Scotland*, 283. why so importunately desired by some in *England* *l.* 1. 258
Priests of the *Jews* provided of a liberal maintenance, *l.* 3. 81. who they were, whom they called the Chief Priests 60. of the High Priest, and when made a saleable Office, *ib.* How *Annas* and *Caiphas* were High Priests at the same time, *ib.* Their power and succession after the Captivity 92
Printing where first invented, and by whom *l.* 2. 21. how much abused in these latter times, said to have been long used in *China* *l.* 3. 82
Prometheus, why feigned to be tortured by a Vulture *l.* 3. 149
Protestants, where first so called, and why, *l.* 1. 35, 36, 51. the whole story of them 35. the causes of the great increase of their Doctrines, *ibid.* their principal over-sight *ibid.*
Psalms of *Degrees*, how many, and why so named *l.* 3. 180
Pyramides of *Egypt* their vast greatness, by whom built, and why, *l.* 4. 6

Q.

Quivira, a strange beast there which supplies them with most necessaries *l.* 4. 102

R.

Rain falling turns to *Alabaster l.* 4. 17. Rain obtained by the Prayer of *Helena* *l.* 2. 218
Rarities in *Arabia Felix*, *l.* 3. 104. in *Egypt*, *l.* 4. 6. in *America*, 89. in *Nova Hispania*

Hiſpania, *l.* 4. 10. in *Chiſpa*, 118. in *Peru* 129. in *Braſil* 136. in *Cuba* 151

Red Sea, whence it had the name, how far extended by that name, *l.* 3. 106

Regma the ſon of *Chus* firſt planted on the ſhores on the *Perſian* Gulf, *l.* 1. 10

Religion naturally ingraffed in the heart of man *l.* 1. 27, 28. how it ſtandeth in relation to the parts of the World *l.* 1. 27, 28

Retiredneſs from the vulgar eye uſed by divers Princes *l.* 4. 58

Rex Romanorum, what he is, by whom, and for what cauſe ordained, *l.* 2. 103

Richard the firſt, terrible to the *Turks*, *l.* 3. 43. taketh *Cyprus* 37. his ſpeech concerning the Siege of *Verneville*, *l.* 1. 165. is ſlain by a ſhot from an *Arbaliſt*, 178. the man that ſhot him ſet at liberty and rewarded *ib.*

Riphah the ſon of *Gomir*, found in *Paphlagonia* *l.* 1. 10

Rivers, their uſe, and conditions requiſite for Navigation. *l.* 1. 23. the banks of great Rivers how defenſible *l.* 3. 15

Rhabarb, or *Rhubarb*, where it growth *l.* 3. 173, 177

Rhamnuſia, why given for an adjunct unto *Nemeſis*, and what *Nemeſis* was *l.* 2. 189

Rhene, the fountain and courſe thereof, *l.* 2. 4, 5. the ſeveral branches by which it falleth into the Ocean 4, 5

Rochel *l.* 1. 179

Rhodes taken by *Solyman* the Magnificent *l.* 3. 31, 32

Rhodian Laws, the rule in former times of all marine cauſes, and for how long they ſo continued, *l.* 3. 32

Rome, of what circuit in her glory, *l.* 1. 87, 88. the number of its inhabitants, the extent of her Dominions 53. once made a Goddeſs, and by whom, *l.* 3. 19. Her Revenues computed at 150. millions of Crowns, *l.* 1. 53. Her Empire ſubverted by *Conſtantine*, and how *l.* 1. 54

Roman Emperors, the ſucceſſion of them, *l.* 1. 52. cut off by violent deaths till the time of *Conſtantine*, and the cauſe thereof 53. their negligence and degenerate ſloth 54

Roſamond wife to *Albonius*, King of the *Lombards* procures her husband to be murdered, why her death, *l.* 1. 57

Roy d' Ividot, a *French* by-word, the meaning and occaſion of it, *l.* 1. 165

S.

Sabboth-day not ſo moral as ſome pretend *l.* 4. 159

Sabæans of *Arabia Felix*, from what race they came *l.* 3. 105

Sacriledge a crime unpardonable even amongſt Heathens, *l.* 2. 194

Sadduces whence they had their name *l.* 3. 59. their opinions and *dogmata* *ibid.*

Salique Laws what it truly is, not ſo ancient as the *French* pretend, not at all was regarded by them, but to ſerve the turns of ſome Uſurpers, the inconveniences, and injuſtice of it *l.* 1. 152, 153

Salmacida ſpolia, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *l.* 3. 20

Salvages lately found in *Spain*, *l.* 1. 231

Samia vaſa, what, and how highly prized *l.* 3. 30

Samaritans, what they were, their Religion, Tenets, and Sects how hated by the *Jews*, and why *l.* 3. 71, 72

Saracens, why ſo called, their Character in former times, they reſort to *Mahomet*, their ſucceſſes, victories, and Caliphs, *l.* 3. 98. 100, 101

Sardanapalus an effeminate King, why he burnt his Treaſure *l.* 3. 121

Sardonius Riſus, a Proverb, and the meaning of it *l.* 1. 78

Scæva's valour *l.* 3. 198

Scanderbeg his life and ſtory, *l.* 3. 199 what became of his body *ib.*

Sclaves or *Sclavonians*, whence ſo called. Their affairs and ſtory, *ib.* given as a name to Bond-men, and what occaſion *l.* 2. 165

Schola Salerni, by whom written, and by whom decicated *l.* 1. 62

Scots, why ſo called, *l.* 1. 282. their proceedings in their Reformation 28. their Kingdom held in Vaſſalage to the Crown of *England* 289

Scribes, what they were, when inſtituted, and of what Authority, *l.* 3. 71

Scythians, their Original, Antiquity, and Atchievements. Their expedition into *Media*, and ſucceſs in *Lydia* *l.* 3. 166, 171

Sebe the ſon of *Jocktan*, planted upon the River *Indus*, or the *Golden Cherſoneſe* *l.* 1. 10

Sebvians *l.* 3. 72

Sela the ſon of *Arphaxad*, in what parts ſetled *l.* 3. 144

Seleucus a great builder, *l.* 3. 48. his ſtrange riſe and fortunes *l.* 3. 54.

Semiramis *l.* 3. 120

Semenaries for the *Engliſh*, by whom firſt erected, and where *l.* 1. 160

Seneca's happy memory *l.* 1. 209

Seriphiæ Rana, an old proverb, the occaſion and meaning of it *l.* 2. 213

Serpents worſhipped by the *Samogites*, and *Lituani*; the barbarous Cuſtoms of thoſe people *l.* 2. 142

Sforza, his ſtrange riſe and ſtory, *l.* 1. 124

Sheba, *Sabta*, and *Sabteca*, the ſons of *Chus*, all planted in *Arabia Felix*, and there the founders of the puiſſant Nation of the *Sabæans*, *l.* 1. 10, *l.* 3. 105

Sibyls, what they were, how many, and where they dwelt, *l.* 4. 13. not counterfeited by the Fathers *ib.*

Siculæ Gerræ, *l.* 1. 72. *Veſperiæ Siculæ*. *Siculi Tyranni* 76. three by-words, and the meaning of them 75

Silks, why called *Serica* by the *Latines*, *l.* 3. 174

Silver and *Gold* where moſt plentiful, *l.* 4. 126. the rich Mines of *Potoſi*, 129. how vilified by the *Utopian*, 126, the cauſes of the darkneſs of things in our days 127. not ſo advantagious to a State, as Trade and Merchandiſe *ib.*

Simeon the ſon of *Jacob*, how diperſed in *Iſrael*, as his father propheſied *l.* 3. 76

Solœciſmus, whence *l.* 3. 24

Solomon's *Porch*, mentioned, *John* 10. 23. where, and what it was. *l.* 3. 80

Sooth-ſaying, how many kinds thereof *l.* 3. 120

Souldiers and great Commanders unfortunate for the moſt part, and why *l.* 2. 189

Spa, Medicinal waters, where, and for what moſt uſeful *l.* 2. 15

Spaniards from whence they do deſcend, *l.* 1. 211. by whom converted to the Faith, 208. The dependance of the Popes on the Crown thereof 210. their aim at the fift Monarchy, *ib.* the greatneſs of their Empire, and weakneſs of it 248. *Spaniſh* Nobility very ſerviceable to their King, why 249. *Spaniards* their cruelty towards the *Americans*, *l.* 4. 88

Squoachi, a thieviſh beaſt *l.* 3. 24

Sterling money, why ſo called, *l.* 1. 284

Streights of Mountains, not to be abandoned by the Defendants, *l.* 3. 24. the loſing of ſuch Paſſes of what fatal conſequence *l.* 14

Stukely, where and when ſlain, *l.* 4. 35

Styx, a River of *Greece*, the uſual Oath of the gods *l.* 2. 182, 183

Sugars, when, and by whom firſt refined, *l.* 4. 72. what uſed inſtead thereof in elder times, *ib.* the great quantities thereof ſent yearly by the *Portugals* from the Iſle of S. *Thomas*, *ib.* and from the Sugar-works in *Braſil* *l.* 4. 137

Syrian language, what it was, and of what ingredients, *l.* 3. 41. when firſt made vulgar to the *Jews*.

Syrian Goddeſs, what ſhe was, *l.* 3. 48 her magnificent Temple, *ibid.* the deceits and jugling of her Prieſts, *ibid.*

Syrorum multa olera; *Syri contra Phœnices*; two Proverbs, and the meaning of them. *l.* 3. 47

A TABLE.

T.

Tails of Sheep, (and of no beast else) why used in Sacrifice *l.* 3. 47.

Tamerlane his Birth and Parentage *l.* 3. 170. the sum and substance of his story *ib.*

Tarshish the son of *Javan*, planted about *Tarsus* in *Cilicia* *l.* 1. 13. not in *Tartessus*, as some say *ib.*

Tartarians not the Progeny of the Tribes of *Israel* *l.* 3. 162. from whom most probably descended *ib.* their affairs and victories 179.

Taxus, a Tree so called, *&c. l.* 1. 120.

Temple re-edified by *Zorobabel*, in what it differeth from the former *l.* 3. 80. repaired and beautified by *Herod.* ib. the several Courts about it *ib.* all of them in the name of the Temple *ib.* Temple of *Sophia* *l.* 3. 207.

Tendia Securis, a By-word, the occasion of it *l.* 3. 28.

Themistocles banished by his Country flies to, and is entertained by *Artaxerxes* *l.* 3. 17.

Theocratia, or the Government of the *Jews* by *God* himself *l.* 3. 85.

Thyras the father of the *Thracians*, by some called *Thracians* *l.* 2. 204.

Sir *Thomas Moor* no friend to the Friers *l.* 1. 101. his new Plot of wooing not approved of *l.* 4. 47. his device to bring Gold and Silver into contempt, fit for none but *Utopians* *l.* 4. 126.

Thracians their Customs *l.* 2. 204.

Tigranes his frankness *l.* 3. 125.

Timariots, what they be, their institution and number, *l.* 3. 135.

Titus Bishop of *Crete* *l.* 2. 214.

Title of most *Christian* King, why given unto the Kings of *France* *l.* 1. 199. of *Catholick* King to the Kings of *Spain* 247. of *Defender of the Faith* to *England* 273 of *Defenders* of the *Church*, to the *Switzers* 143. of *Basileus*, to the Kings of *Bulgaria* *l.* 1. 176. of *Flagellum Dei*, to *Attila* the King of the *Huns.* *l.* 1. 185.

Tobacco, where most plentiful *l.* 4. 125. why called the Henbane of *Peru.* ibid. the fantastick use thereof condemned, and the vertues ascribed unto it examined *ib.* by whom first brought into *England* *l.* 4. 125.

Togarma, or *Torgama*, the son of *Gomer*, founder of the *Trocmi*, or *Trogmades* in *Cappadocia* *l.* 3. 10.

Tholosanum Aurum, a Proverb, the meaning and occasion of it *l.* 1. 185.

Tominejo, a bird in *America* *l.* 1. 1006.

Topographie, what it is, how it differeth from Geography *l.* 1. 26.

Traffick, and the story of it more advantageous to a State than Mines of Gold and Silver *l.* 4. 126.

Treason how rewarded *l.* 2. 155.

Tragedies, by whom invented *l.* 3. 28.

Tree that withereth if touched *l.* 4. 118.

beneficial Trees in *India*, &c. *l.* 4. 70. 121.

Triumphs, their Original and Majesty, in what they differed from an *Ovation* ib. in what cases denied a Conquerour, when discontinued and laid by *l.* 1. 35, 36.

Troy not besieged ten years together by the *Greeks*, and at last how taken, *Fimbra's* boast of taking *Troy* in eleven days tartly answered *l.* 3. 12.

Tubal the son of *Javan* first planted in *Iberia* *l.* 3. 13. the *Spaniards* how derived from him *l.* 3. 130.

Turks, their Original and Conquests, *l.* 3. 132. their Kings and Emperors 133. their Persons, Customs, and Religion, their Estate and power *l.* 3. 133, 134.

V.

Vaivod, the meaning of the word *l.* 2. 169. the *Vaivods* of *Transylvania* *ib.*

Vandals, their first seat *l.* 4. 24. their affairs, story, and the succession of their Kings *ib.*

Vandois, the same with the *Waldenses* *l.* 1. 193. their life and doctrins *ib.*

Venus, whence called *Erycina*, *l.* 1. 74. whence *Cytherea* *l.* 2. 214. whence *Dea Cypri* *l.* 3. 33. whence *Paphia ib.* whence *Dea Cnidea* 20. the brutishness of the *Cypriots*, both men and women, in their Feasts and Sacrifices 33.

Versoria in *Plautus* what it is, not used there for the Mariners Compass, as by some supposed *l.* 4. 86.

Victory of *Annibal* at *Canne* *l.* 1. 65

Vidames in *France*, how many and what they are *l.* 1. 162.

Vieugne, a strange but profitable Beast among the *Americans*, and the nature of it, *l.* 4. 89. the Bezar found in the belly of it *ib.*

Vina Massica whence so called, and of what esteem *l.* 1. 62.

Virgil's Fable of *Dido* disproved, and his *Æneas* suspected *l.* 3. 12.

Ulysses travelled not so far as *Lisbon*, *l.* 1. 235. the sum and substance of his story *l.* 2. 220.

Ur, the birth-place of *Abraham*, a Town of *Mesopotamia* *l.* 3. 116. that it was not in *Chaldaa*, as by most supposed 119.

Usury, the *Genoese* much addicted to it *l.* 1. 118. the saying of a merry fellow thereon *ib.*

Uz, or *Hus*, the Country and dwelling of *Job*, whereabout it was *l.* 3. 99.

W.

Wallons, what they are, and why so called *l.* 1. 275. *l.* 2. 3.

Whales their dimensions and vast greatness *l.* 3. 191. how driven from the Coast of *Norwey* *l.* 2. 114.

White Friers, from whence so called, and by whom first instituted, called also *Carmelites*, and why *l.* 1. 99, 100.

Wolves destroyed in *England*, how *l.* 1. 254.

World why created *l.* 1. 1. how long since 3. peopled before the general Flood 5. East-parts planted before the attempt at *Babel* 14. *l.* 3. 195. called *Cosmos* by the *Greeks*, and *Mundus* by the *Latins* for the beauties of it, unequally divided in respect of Religion *l.* 1. 28.

Writing the Original of it *l.* 4. 4. 8. and the several forms *ib.*

X.

Xeriffe, why used for the Title of the Kings of *Morocco*, the catalogue and succession of them *l.* 4. 37, 38.

Xerxes his numerous Army *l.* 2. 209.

Y.

Yeugh Trees why planted in Church-yards *l.* 43.

Z.

Zaleucus his Laws *l.* 1. 66.

Zenobia a most masculine Lady, her story *l.* 3. 52.

Zopyrus his act *l.* 3. 114.

A COMPUTATION of the forein COINS herein mentioned with the *ENGLISH.*

	l.	*s.*	*d.*
Hebrew Talent in Gold	4500		
Hebrew Talent in Silver	375		
Alexandrian Talent	375		
Ægyptian Talent	250		
Babylonian Talent	218	15	
Attick Talent	187	10	
Sestertium of Rome	7	16	3
A Shekel	00	2	6
Argenteus Mat. 26. 15	00	2	6
A Drachma	00	00	7 ob
A Rubble	00	13	4
A Sultany	00	7	6
A Ducat	0	6	8
A French Crown	0	6	6
A Xeriffe	0	6	0
A Rix Doller	0	4	8
A Floren	0	3	0
A Frank	0	2	0
A Livre	0	2	0
A Gulden	0	2	0
A Spanish Real	0	0	6
A Sous	0	0	1 qo
A Turkish Asper	0	0	1 q
A Maravidis	0	0	1 q

An

An Alphabetical and exact Table, wherein is set down, the Names (Ancient and Modern) of all the Kingdoms, Provinces, Countries, Inhabitants, People, Cities, Mountains, Rivers, Seas, Islands, Forts, Bayes, Capes, Foresls, *&c. of any Remarque in the Whole World, as they are described and contained in these Four Books of the incomparable Cosmographer* Dr Heylyn.

Lib. I.

AAda, *fl.* 149
Aaz, *fl.* 140
Abavilla, *u.* 161
Abdera, *u.* 247
Abergavenny, *u.* 267
Abdua, *fl.* 123
Aberdon, *u.* 284
Aberfraw, *u.* 300
Abticantes, *p.* 173
Abruzzo, *pr.* 62
Abule, *u.* 231
Abus, *fl.* 249
Acacius, *fl.* 78
Acates, *inf.* 68
Accipitrum, *inf.* 80
Acheſtra, *u.* 75
Acolin, *u.* 176
Acuſiani, *p.* 191
Dr. Acques, *u.* 180
Adige, *fl.* 102
Adour, *fl.* 186
Adria, *u.* 123
Adriaticum *mare*, 105
Adros, *inf.* 289
Ægates, *inf.* 75
Ægilora, *inf.* 112
Ægyde, *u.* 104
Æguſa, *inf.* 75
Ælia Recina, *u.* 84
Æmilia, *p.* 131
Ænariæ, *inf.* 68
Æoliæ, *inf.* 75
Æqui, *p.* 86
Æthalia, 115
Ætna, *m.* 70
Agatha, Agde, *u.* 185
Agathenſes, *p.* *ibid.*
Ageloſis, *u.* 263
Agen, *u.* 183
Agenois, *p.* 180
Agendicum, *u.* 160
Agnes, *inf.* 300
Agrigentum, *u.* 74
Agryllis, *u.* 78
Agillina, *u.* 112
Ajazze, *u.* 120
Aigre, *fl.* 171
Aiqueperſe, *u.* 174
Aique Aquenſis, *u.* 188
Aix, *u.* 187
Alanion, *u.* 165
Alates, *p.* 284
Alax, *fl.* 67
Alba, *u.* 86, 128
Helviorum, 185
Albania, *p.* 227, 282
Albanies, *m.* 283
St. Alban, *u.* 262, 269
Albemarle, *u.* 165
Albegois, *p.* 185
Albion, *inf.* 249
Albon, *u.* 134
Albret, *p.* 180
Alby, *u. fl.* 184
Alcala *de* Henares, *u.* 232
Alcantara, *u.* 225
Alcoraz, *u.* 232
Aldborough, *u.* 262
Alderny, *inf.* 197
Aleria, *u.* 120
Aleth, *u.* 184
Aletium, *u.* 66
Alexia, *u.* 197
Alexandria, *u.* 123
Alfaques, *inf.* 243
Alfatenia, *u.* 85
Algaruc, *p.* 234
Algeziro, *u.* 223
Alghes Boſa, *u.* 78
Alhama, *u.* 229
Alicante, *u.* 240
Alizia, *u.* 194
Allier, *fl.* 173
Allobroges, *p.* 130
Almanca, *u.* 229
Almeria, *u.* 227
Alpes, *m.* 31
Coctiæ *ibid.*
Grajæ *ibid.*
Maritimæ 191
Peninnæ 33
Alpaxaras, *m.* 211
Altavilla, *u.* 66
Altemberg, *u.* 139
Altine, *u.* 103
Altomont, *u.* 67
Amalfi, *u.* 62
St. Amand, *u.* 173
Amballe, *u.* 167
Amballiates, *p.* 167
Ambiani, *p.* 161
Ambrun, *u.* 191
Amboice, *u.* 169
Amiens, *u.* 163
Ampurias, *u.* 241
Ameria, *u.* 87
Ancele, *u.* 67
Ana, *fl.* 211
Anacapræ, *u.* 68
Ancona, *u.* 84
Andaluzia, *p.* 223
Andegaria, *u.* 169
S. Andera, *u.* 220
Andes, *p.* 161
S. Andrews, *inf. u.* 284
Andular, *u.* 257
Anemus, *fl.* 80
St. Angelo, *m.* 64
Angeruille, *u.* 171
Angiers, *u.* 169
Angleſey, *pr. inf.* 299
Anglia, *R.* 251
Angoleſme, *p.* 178
Angra, *u.* 234
L' Anguillado, *inf.* 107
Anguis, *p.* 285
Anguſtoritum, *u.* 171
Aniene, *fl.* 85
Anio, *ibid.*
Anjou, *p.* 169
Anſer, *fl.* 263
Annandale, *p.* 285
Annunciada, *u.* 134
Anlenis, *u.* 167
Ante, *fl.* 164
Anteri, *p.* 295
Anteſiocorum, *u.* 194
Antibi, Antipolis, *u.* 187
Antiquera, *u.* 227
Antium, *u.* 86
Antona, *fl.* 269
Antrigonis, *p.* 218
Antrim, *p.* 293
Anxur, *u.* 87
Aoſt, *u.* 133
Apencenſes, *p.* 192
Apenzel, *p.* 140
Apoſa, *fl.* 80
Aprutium, *p.* 63
Apulia, *p.* 31, 64
Peucetia 64
Daunia *ib.*
Siticuloſa, *p.* 66
Aquæ Auguſtæ, *u.* 180
Calidæ, *u.* 178
Sextiæ, *u.* 189
Solis, *u.* 182
Bellæ, *u.* 234
Aquenſes, *p.* 181
Aquenſis, *u.* 128
Aquilaſtro, *u.* 78
Aquilegia, *u. p.* 103
Aquila, *u.* 63
Aquino, *u.* *ibid.*
Aquitain, *p.* 179
Aquitania *prima*, 179
Aquitania *ſecunda*, *ib.*
Aragon, *pr. fl.* 244
Aracis, *fl.* 293
Araxis, *fl.* *ib.*
Arauſia, *u.* 186
Arbia, *fl.* 114
Arboy., *u.* 195
L' Aarche, *fl.* 134
Ardea, *u.* 86
Ardoa, *p.* 138
Ardres, *u.* 161
Arduarius, *l.* 65
Arecomiſi, *u.* 185
Arelatum, *u.* 187
Arethuſa, *fl.* 73
Aretium, *u.* 113
Arezzo, *u.* *ib.*
Arevacæ, *p.* 232
Arga, *fl.* 214
Argentario, *m.* 86
Argenton, *u.* 160
Argile, *p.* 285
Argow, *p.* 139
Argyrippa, *pr.* 65
Arica, *fl.* 215
Aricomium, *u.* 269
Arilla, *u.* 274
Arlos, *u.* 187
Ariminum, *u. fl.* 79
Armacan, *u.* 193
Armagh, *u.* 293
Armaignac, *p.* 180
Armath, *inf.* 300
Arme, *inf.* 282
Armorica, *p.* 167
Arnon, *fl.* 175
Arnus, *fl.* 31
Aron, *fl.* 173
Arpinum, *u.* 63
Arq, *u.* 160
Arran, *inf.* 294
Arſia, *fl.* 104
Artimetia, *fl.* 115
Arthur, *inf.* 300
Arulat, *fl.* 141
Arverni, *p.* 194
Arundel, *u.* 265
St. Aſaph, *u.* 277
Aſcoli, *u.* 65, 84
Aſculum, *u.* 65
Aſinda Cæſariana, *u.* 201
Aſinaria, *inf.* 79
Aſſiſium, *u.* 89
Aſt, *u.* 128
Aſta, *u.* 223
Aſtorga, *u.* 210
Aſtygi, *u.* 217
Ateſte, *u.* 103
Athanatos, *inf.* 270
Athenry, *u.* 294
Atheſis, *fl.* 102
Athol, *pr.* 284
Athlone, *u.* 294
Atlanticum *mare*, 207
Atrebatii, *p.* 262
Atticum, *u.* 171
Avales, *u.* 190
Avaricum, *u.* 174
Aubigni, *p.* 175
Audematurum, *u.* 160
Aude, *fl.* 185
Aven, *fl.* 166
Avenio, *u.* 188
Averni, *p.* 174
Avernus, *p.* 61
Averſa, *u.* 62
Anſidus, *fl.* 60
Augubio, *u.* 82
Augaunum, *u.* 137
Auguſta, *u.* 74
Auſciorum, 182
Aſturica, 220
Emerita, *u.* 227
Firmia, *u.* 16
Prætoria, *u.* 133
Sueſſionum, *r.* 163
Taurinorum, 133
Trinobantum, 262
Auguſtani, *p.* 216
Auguſtodunum, *u.* 193
Auguſtoritum, *u.* 176
Avia, *fl.* 233
Avignion, *u.* 188
Avila, *u. m.* 231
Aviles, *u.* 220
Aumarl, *u. m.* 165
Auneau, *u.* 171
Avon, *fl.* 260
Auranice, *ſt.* 187
Auranches, *u.* 164
Aurange, 187
Auranius Saltus, *m.* 164, 211
Aurelia, *u.* 171
Aurette, *fl.* 176
Auriacus, *u.* 176
Aurigni, *inf.* 197
Aurney, *inf.* *ib.*
Auſcii, *p.* 180
Auſonium, *p.* 30
Auſtraſia, *p.* 149
Auton, *u.* 175
Avergne, *p.* 174
Auvillar, *u.* 183
Aviduff, *fl.* 292
Aux, *u.* 182
Auzere, *u.* 160, 194
Auxitani, *p.* 241
Auzan, *u.* 183
Axelodunum, *u.* 268
Axophanos, *fl.* 79
Azgow, *p.* 139
Azores, *inf.* 234

Lib. II.

AA, *fl.* 7
Abantis, *inf.* 211
Abdera, *u.* 205
Abnoba, *m.* 38
Abo, *u.* 120
Abra, *fl.* 97
Abrincum, *u.* 154
Abſorus, *inf.* 164
Abſertides, *inf.* *ibid.*
Abſtod, *u.* 91
Abſyrtus, *fl.* 104
Abuys, *u.* 202
Acanthus, *u.* *ibid.*
Ac-Germen, *u.* 170
Acarnania, *pr.* 169
Acce-chiſar, *r.* 209
Ac-Germen, *r.* 170
Ach, *fl.* 59
Achia, *pr.* 188
Propria, *pr.* 181
Achelous, *fl.* 180, 195
Acheron, *fl.* 196
Achilleia, *u.* 170
Achrida, *u.* 175
Acre, *u.* *ibid.*
Acro Corinthus, *m.* 181
Acronius, *l.* 58
Actium, *u.* 197
Adenburg, *u.* 44
Adiſe, *fl.* 67
Adrianople, *u.* 206
Adriaticum *mare*, 181
Aduatica, *p.* 363, 380
Æas, *fl.* 280
Ædiſſa, *u.* 201
Ænſtel, *fl.* 81
Ægra, *u.* 211
Ægras, *u.* 201
Ægrum, *u.* 181
mare, 209
Ægiala, *pr.* 182. *inſ.* 218
Ægilia, *inſ.* 218
Ægira, *inſ.* 181
Ægina, 209
Æmathia, *pr.* 201
Æmera, *u.* 286
Æmonia, *pr.* 200
Æmus, *m.* 178
Ænona, *u.* 163
Ænus, *u.* 205
Æria, *inſ.* 210

Æſtrei,

The TABLE.

Æstrei, p. 199
Æstus, fl. 71
Æth, 10
Æthra, inf. 216
Ætolia, pr. 195
Aganzia, pr. 184
Agathyrsi, p. 135
Agernis, inf. 111
Ageroë, inf. 110
Aggerhuis, r. p. 114
Agistiman, u. 217
Agria, u. 135
Colonia Agrippina, u. 47
Alba, fl. 98
Aichstadium, u. 76
Alomama, f. 201
Aire, u. 8
Aix, Azen, u. 44
Alaicmon, fl. 180
Alanni, p. 64, 198
Alba Græca, u. 155
Julia, 168
Regalis, 154
Albania, pr, 198
Alberg, m. 110
Albis, fl. 177
Alborch, u. 110
Albona, u. 163
Albus, l. 129
Alcmer, u. 21
Alderburg, u. 49
Alesius, u. 163
Aleta, u. 161
Algow, pr. 58
Alla, fl. 146
Allendorf, u. 96
Allonesus, inf. 211
Alluta, fl. 166, 171
Almansi, pr. 62, 396
Almelo, u. 15
Almene, pr. 196
Almissa, u. 162
Almopes, p. 201
Almul, fl. 76
Alost, pr. u. 7
Alpes Juliæ, m. 62
Rheticæ, 67
Suevi, 60
Alphæus, fl. 182
Alsatia, pr. 52
Alsen, inf. 111
Alze fl. 12
snutius,
Alta Ripa, Altrip, u. 53
Altiburgum, u. f. 101
Altemark, pr. 83
Altena, u. 45
Altenburgh, u. 153
Altkirk, u. 53
Altomara, u. 216
Altorf, u. 76
Amadoci, m. 130
Am ager inf. 110
igria,
Amalchium, mare 105
Almance, u. 55
St. Amand, u. 7
Amberg, u. 76
Ambidraunum, pr. 64
Ambilici, p. 64
Ambisontes, p. ib.
Ambra, fl. 62
Ambracia, u. 195
Ambrones, p. 101
Amelungsbame, u. 95
Amerlander, pr. 101
Amesfort, u. 24
Amisius, fl. 383, 216
Ampelas, u. 202
Amphaxatis, pr. 202
Amphilochia, pr. 196
Amphipolis, u. 201
Amphrise, fl. 180
Amphysa, u. 194
Amsterdam, u. 21
Amstelodanum, u. ib.
Amurgos, in. 214
Amycle, u. 184
Anactorium, u. 200
Anaphe, inf. 214
Anarti, p. 168
Anchiola, u. 193
Anclara, u. 85
Andefort, u. 116
Andernach, u. 47
St. Andrews, inf. 29
Andros, inf. 211
Castello St. Angelo, u. 220
Angelostadium, u. 62
Angerburg, u. 145
Angerman, pr. 122
Angermond, u. 44
Anghien, u. 14
Angli, p. 110
Angra, fl. 43
Angrivaria, pr. 98
Anhalt, pr. 90
Anisus, p. 65
Anniuni, u. 168
Ansbach, pr. u. 72
Anseling, u. 100
Anslo, u. 114
Antandros, inf. 212
Anteriacum, u. 47
Antebari, u. 162
Antigonia, u. 197, 202
Antirhium, c. 181
Antonina, u. 24
Antwerp, u. 18
Anticyra, u. 193
Aorsi, p. 143
Apia, p. 181
Apidanus, fl. 180
Apnus, fl. 168
Apollonia, u. 202, 208, 209
Apsalus, u. 201
Apsus, fl. 198
Apulum, u. 168
Aquen, u. 44
Aquisgranum, u. ibid.
Arrabon, u. 154
Aracthus, u. fl. 195
Aranias Zeek, p. 168
Aranasci, p. 155
Araxum, c. 181
Arbe, inf. u. 164
Arbogel, u. 122
Arbo n felix, u. 58
r
Arcadia, pr. 183
Archangel, u. 135
Arches, inf. 212
Archingen, u. 74
Archipelago, 210
Van Arckel, p. 20
Arcudia, u. 183
Arcueli, p. 20
Ardenne, n. 4. p. 5. u. 6
Ardium, m. 163
Aredaro, u. 65
Aremberg, u. 99
Arenacum, u. 24
Arethusa, u. 202
Argentoratum, u. 421, m. 53
Argolis, p. 186
Argos, u. ibid.
Argastolis, u. 219
Argyro Castro, u. 197
Argyrutum, u. 163
Arbusen, u. 109
Aria, inf. 111. pr. 204
Arii, p. 149
Arlun, u. 12
Armena, f. 200
Armentiers, u. 7
Armyden, u. 24
Arnhem, u. 25
Archetamii, p. 124
Aroe, inf. 111
Arose, u. 122
Arras, u. 7
Arschot, u. 17
Arsia, fl. 168
Arsus, fl. 206
Arthusen, pr. u. 109
Artoys, pr. u. 7
Aruncis, u. 53
Arusberg, u. 98
Arusten, r. 99
Arx Britannica, u. 21
Ascandt, u. 173
Ascens, u. 111
Asciburgius, m. 80
Ascræa, u. 192
Ascruvium, u. 162
Asilia, u. 141
Asiocastron, u. 209
Asloia, u. 114
Asprocastron, u. 170
Asopus, fl. 189
Assened, u. 7
Assorus, u. 202
Astragan, pr. u. 134
Astypale, inf. u. 214
Ath, u. 10
Athamanes, p. 195
Athaneum, u. ib.
Athelin, pr. 124
Athens, u. 189
Athesis, fl. 67
Athicus, fl. 181
Athos, m. 201
Athyras, fl. 205, 180
Attica, pr. 188
Attrebates, p. 4
Avares, p. 156
Avarini, p. 147
Audomarus, u. 8
Avesenes ex Hainault, u. 11
Avesnes le sec, u. ibid.
Auf de Berne, u. 43
Augst, u. 78
Augur, u. 43
Augusta Tiberii, 62
Augusta veromanduor, 250
Augustow, u. 145
Aulis, u. 193
Aulon, u. 198
Aurists, u. 100
Ausberg, u. 59
Austrasia, pr. 56
Austria, pr. 64
Awerback, u. 76
Axele, u. 7
Axenus, mare 209
Axius, fl. 201
Axiopolis, u. 175
Axium, u. ibid.
Azorium, u. 200
Azuli, p. 255
Lib. III.
Abanah, fl. 52
Abaras, fl. 82
Abaratha, u. 226
Abardal, u. 130
Abarim, m. 62
Abasselebant, u. 151
Abel, u. 67
Maacha, 65
Sittim, u. 63, 64
Vinearum, 60
Abias, fl. 170
Abii, p. 175
Abela, u. 53
Abos, m. 116
Abuceni, p. 107
Abydos, u. 15
Acadræ, p. 187
Acamas, c. 36
Acarnea, u. 16
Acbassa, pr. 175
Accabene, p. 118
Accad, u. 116
Accarnon, u. 74
Ace, u. 36
Acesines, fl. 194
Achæmenides, p. 141
Achatara, u. 184
Achen, u. 225
Collis Acchillæ, m. 77
Achillis, Cursus, u. 163
Achindana, fl. 145
Acon, u. 36
Acra, m. 79
Acre, u. 36
Acrabata, u. 72
Lenca Acte, u. 47
Adada, u. 51
Adam, u. 65
Adana, u. 24
Adani, inf. 106
Adapa, u. 50
Adara, u. ibid.
Adarsa, u. 73
Aden, u. 106
Adena, u. 25
Adiabene, pr. 116
Adiavas, fl. ib.
Adida, u. 53
Adisathri, m. 862, p. 95
Adonis, fl. 42
Adopissus, u. 22
Adoram, u. 77
Adorn, u. 195
Adrama, u. 66
Adramitæ, p. 107
Adramytium, u. 15
Adrapsia, u. 151
Adrastia, u. 18
Adrinsa, p. 116
Adubeni, p. 100
Æapolis, u. 129
Æchera, u. 40
Ægai, p. 107
Ægeum, u. 8
Ægypti Torrens, 101
Ælam, u. 51
Ælia, u. 80
Æni, inf. 106
Æolis pr. 16
Ærosa, inf. 33
Æscitæ, p. 99
Æsopus, fl. 4, 10
Æthra, inf. 32
Aganagora, u. 212
Agaris, fl. 163
Agaritæ, p. 168
Agathoclis, inf. 107
Agbatha na u. 140
Agemer, u. 200
Agena, u. 217
Agra, u. 43. p. u. 199
Agracan, u. 224
Agraii, p. 100
Agriaspæ, p. 147
Agrinoma, u. 8
Agrippias, u. 82
Agris, u. 145
Agubeni, p. 100
Agwans, pr. 199
Ai, u. 78
Ajalon, u. 73, 76
Aiazzo, u. f. 27
Adini illi a u. 17
Aii, p. inf. 221
Ainao, inf. 201
Alabanda, u. 19
Aladeules, p. 123
Alamatha, u. 51
Alani, p. 164
Alanorsi, p. 164
Albania, pr. 131
Albani, u. ib.
Albanus, fl. ib.
Albaria, u. 48
Aleppo, u. 47, 50
Alexandri, inf. 146
Alexandria, u. 25, 145, 148, 152, 169, 195
Algiar, u. 105
Alicodra, u. 153
Aliga, fl. 202
Alitrophagi, p. 174
Almata, fl. 165
Alsadamus, m. 52
Altay, m. 2. p. 175
Altuncala, u. 130
Aluati, n. 129
Alydda, u. 15
Amadabat, u. 201
Amagance, pr. 219
Amalecs m. 73
Amalekites, p. 102
Aman, u. 50
Amamus, m. 3
Amandus, fl. 139
Amangasaqui, u. 220
Amariace, p. 60
Amariacle, u. 141
Amasia, u. 6
Amastris, u. 6
Amatha, u. 35
Amathysia, inf. 677, p. u. 35
Amaverza, u. 25
Ambastur, fl. 181
Amboina, inf. u. 222
Amdanager, p. 203
Amida, u. 119
Amista, m. 20
Amissus, u. 7
Ammonites, p. 63
Amorites, p. 84
Amnia, C. 73
Ampsacis, u. 166
Anabastæ, p. 187
Anabi, p. 176
Anactoria, u. 108
Anakims, p. 78
Anaræi, m. 169
Anaritæ, p. 107
Anarosa, u. 152
Anathemusa, inf. 21
Anathoth, u. 78
Anatolia, pr. 2
Anchiola, u. 25
Ancorabites, p. 22
Ancyra, u. 8
Andanus, fl. 145
Andirene, u. 46
Andraca, u. 9
Andragide, u. 225
Andramania, inf. ib.
Andrap a, u. 7
us,
St. Andrea, c. 36
Andrasia, u. 8
Angauri, u. ibid.
Angeli, u. 208
Anian, fretum, pr. 178
Animachæ, p. 212
Anith, u. 82
Annibæ, m. 174
Antandrus, u. 10
Antaradus, u. 35
Anthedon, u. 82
Anthemana, pr. 32
Anthropophagi, p. 175
Antiboli, fl. 193
Anticus, fl. 165
Antogonia, u. 4
Antilibanus, m. 41
Antioch, u. 22
Pisidiæ, u. ib.

Migdo-

The TABLE.

Migdoniæ, 29
Antiochia, 153
Penes, Taurum, 150
Antiochiana, p. 10
Antiopia, u. 69
Antipatris, u. 73
Antitaurus, m. 3, 126
Anubingara, u. 126
Anurogrammum, u. ibid.
Aornus, u. 194
Apamia, u. 13, 48, 115
Apamene, p. 48
Apathurum, u. 166
Apanomera, pr. 29
Apheck, u. 70
Aphipolis, u. 81
Aphærema, u. 78
Aphraim, u. 71
Aphrodisium, u. 35
Apollonia, u. 15, 116
Apocopi, m. 192
Apphana, inſ. 107
Arabia, pr. u. 98
Deſerta, 99
Felix, 100
Petrea, ibid
Arabicus, ſ. 116
Arabyſſus, u. 10
Aracca, u. 143
Arach, pr. 150
Arachan, pr. u. 209
Arachoſia, pr. u. 148
Arachatos, u. l. ibid.
Arad, u. 76
Aradus, u. 48
Arææ, p. 146
Aram, pr. 39
Sobati, 52
Damaſeck, p. ibid.
Naharaiim, p. 126
Maachah, ibid.
Aramathea, u. 73
Ararat, m. 126
Aravari, p. 195
Aravena, pr. 10
Araxates, fl. 169
Arazes, fl. 126
Araza, u. 166
Arbaca, u. 148
Arbela, u. 71, 116
Arbelites, u. 114
Arbis, u. 147
Arbituri, p. 148
Arbius, fl. 147
Arceſſine, inſ. 25
Archelaus, u. 9
Archichelech, u. 130
Ardock, fl. 170
Ardovat, u. 201
Ardoville, u. 140
Are, u. 107 inſ. ibid.
Arga, u. 98
Argadina, u. 152
Argari, n. 194
Argentea Regio, 38
Argeus, m. 3
Argis, l. 139
Argyropolis, u. 224
Aria, pr. u. l. fl. 149
Ariaſpe, u. 147
Arimaſpæ, p. 148
Arinchi, p. 164
Arivada, u. 147
Armaſtica, u. 130
Armenia major, 125
minor, 10
Arminig, u. 127
Armuzaa, u. 146
Arnon, fl. m. 61
Aroer, u. 65
Arosbay, u. 159
Arphad, inſ. 49
Arrachan, pr. u. 149, 216
Arraphachilis, pr. 77
Arſacia, u. 140
Arſarata, u. 127
Arſamoſaca, u. 27
Arſimoto, u. 26
Arſing, u. 52
Arſinoe, u. 34
Arſione, u. 35
Arſitenſes, p. 152
Arſonazata, 127
Artacona, u. 151
Artacanda, u. 149
Artamis, fl. 153
Artaſata, u. 141
Artaxata, u. 126
Artaxiſſa, u. 136
Aru, p. 240
Arvad, inſ. 47
Arvari, p. 195
Arvis, m. 114
Arxata, u. 126
Arimphrani, p. 130
Arzerum, pr. 120 u. 121
Aſcalon, u. 75
Aſcanius, fl. ſ. l. 4
Aſcania, p. i. 15
Aſcatanas, m. 172
Aſher, pr. u. 69
Aſharaffe, u. 152
Aſhdod, u. 75
Aſia, pr. 1
Minor, 2
Proconſularis, 16
Propria, 10
Aſiotæ, p. 173
Askenaz, m. 124
Aſmiræi, m. 174
Aſophon, u. 72
Aſpabota, u. 169
Aſpendus, u. 23
Aſperia, inſ. 33
Aſphalites, l. 61
Aſpitii, m. 169
Aſpithra, u. p. 185
Aſpthara, fl. 181
Aſſa, u. 76
Aſſyria, pr. 115
Aſſus, u. 11
Aſtabeni, p. 152
Aſtareni, p. 150
Aſtaroth, u. 67
Aſtareian, u. 30. inſ. 135
Ataberia, inſ. 31
Athec, u. 195
Atropatia, pr. 139
Attabas, fl. 211
Artalia, u. 23
Ava, p. u. fl. 212
Avares, p. 166
Audima, pr. 31
Avernus, u. 194
Augamale, u. 205
Avim, pr. 75
Aura, u. 215
Auranitis, p. 67
Aureæ, inſ. 240
Aureum, fl. 193
Aureus Cherſoneſus, 215
Auſinza, u 144
Auſitis, pr. 100
Auſtrale mare, 106
Auzatia, u. 175. m. 274
Axima, u. 144
Aza, u. 7
Azae, u. 162
Azania, pr. 119
Azara, u. 170
Azannus, fl. 216
Azekah, u. 77
Azmere, u. 200
Azor, u. 69
Azotus, u. 75
Aſtracan, u. 165

Lib. IV.

St. Abad, ſ. 104
Abadalenry, inſ. 76
Abanni, fl. 250
Abrach, u. 54
Abarduoſia, pr. 120
Abaſeni, p. 49
Abex, pr. u. 56
Abibe, m. 124
Abugana, pr. u. 53
Abundi, p. 65
Abutick, u. 12
Abydos, 12
Abyla, m. 34
Acabis, u. 14
Acachica, u. 112
Acano, u. 51
Acanthine, inſ. 69
Acapulco, u. 112
Acatlan, u. 111
Acaxutla, 118
Accadie p. 97
Acla, u. 122
Acoma, u. 108
Acos, u. 119
Acuco, s, u. 103
Accuerra, pr. 100
Triſtiam de Acugna, u. 72
Acuſamil, inſ. 142
Addaggia, u. 34
Adea, pr. 56
Adel, pr. ibid.
Adendum, u. 33
Adrumetum, yſtus, u. 25
Adulacus, ſ. 51
Adulis, u. 51
Adymachydæ, pr. 14
Æginarus, inſ. 39
Ægyptus, R. 3
Ægula, inſ. 39
Ægymnus, inſ. ibid.
Æeria, pr. 3
Æripani, p. 2
Ætheria, pr. 49
Æthiopia ſuperior, 49
inferior, 58
Æthiopicæ, inſ. 69
Æthuſa, inſ. 39
Africa, p. 1
Africerones, p. 42
Agadez. pr. u. 45
Agag, pr. 61
Agargynæ, p. 48
Agguncia, u. 93
Aggyſimba, pr. u. 63
Agla, u. 33
Agnet, u. 31
Agver, c. u. 31
Agvia, c. 129
Aiotuxettan, pr. 110
Aquatulco, r. 115
Alabaſtrinus, m. 9
Alacama, u. 134
Alacranes, inſ. 115
Alarbes, p. 33
Albion Nova, 97, 107
Alboumequins, pr. 94
Alcazaer, u. 34
Alchaliniſes, p. 48
Alagranco, inſ. 74
Alemdine, u. 32
Alexandria, u. 10
Nova, pr. 93
Algiers, pr. u. 28
Aliphus, m. 13
Alſteburlam, pr. 1
Almaguer, u. 124
Alpis, m. 13
Alpuerte, n. 121
All Saints, 138
Alvarez, inſ. 74
Amaro, pr. u. m. 51
Amari, l. 8
St. Amaro, u. 53
Amatha, u. 139
Amazones, pr. 983, 142, fl. 119
Ambrici, fl. 65
Amegada, ſ. 134
America, 80
Amicuſia, inſ. 70
Ammonia, pr. u. 13
Amozake, pr. 66
Ampaza, u. 61
Ampeluſia, pr. 33
Amplage, fl. 25
Amſa, u. 33
New Amſterdam, u. 391
Anades, fl. 121
Anarcaprock, u. 140
Anchiſa, m. 41
Anchon Sincalia, ſ. 133
Ancud, ſ. 133
Nova Andaluſia, pr. 121, 145
Andes, m. i. 24
St Andrews, u. 139 c. 134, ſ. 87
Andro-arco, u. 71
Angedeſos. u. 121
St. Angelo, u. 40
De los Angelo, u. 14
Anghotina, inſ. 71
Port aux Anglois, u. 94
Angoda, u, 71
Angola, pr. 66
Angote, pr. u. 53
Angra des Reyes, u. 138
Anguilla, inſ. 148
Anian, fret. 105
Aniſiphyra, u. 13
St. Ann, u. 125, 136, 158
Annobon, inſ. 72
Annogambri, m. 13
Antaboſta, u. 71
Antacon, l. u. 9
Ante, u. 41
Antegos, igua, inſ. 149
Antequera, u. 115
Ora Anteroſa, pr. 45
Anthia, pr. 41
St. Anthonies, inſ. 73 fl. 139. c. 152
Anthropophagi p. 60
Antibacchias, inſ. 71
Antiochia, u. 124
Antiphila, u. 54
Antiphra, u. 13
Antipyrgus, u. ibid.
Antonius, u. 11
Point Antogil, u. 71
Antolaba, inſ. 75
Antonio de Cabo, u. 134
Anygath, u. 45
Anzerman, pr. 130
Anzichana, pr. 67
Anziqui, p. ibid.
Anzuga, pr. 61
Anzuichi, p. 66
Apaletei, m. 40
Apalchia, pr. u. 100
Apalchen, p. u. 35
Apamatuc, fl. 95
Apanawapesk, pr. 92
Aproſitus, inſ. 73
Apollonia, u. 14
Aphroditces, opolis, u. 11
chi Fanum, u. 14
Aptungis, u. 14
Aque Lunda, l. 67

Ara Amoris, c. 51
Palladis, inſ. 69
Aracoſi, l. 138
Arampec, u. 93
Aranaguas, m. 45
Araoan, deſ. 43
Arapous, l, 9
Arar, u. 59
Aray, c. 143
Arcadia, pr. 9, 11
Archidona, u. 128
Orbii Arcticus, p.
Arequipa, pr. u. 118
Arezibx, fl. u. 150
Arica, u. 131
Arimao, fl. 152
Arma, pr. 124
Herculis, m. 12
Arnedo, u. 129
Aroia de Corazon pr 124
Aromata, c. 51
Aroncæ, pr. 48
Aroras, pr. 142
Arowiani, p. 140
Arquire, inſ. u. 45
Arrawary, fl. 140
Arruga, fl. 63
Arſenaria, u. 28
Arſinarium, c. 45
Arſinos, u. 10, 15
Arvaſtes, m. 45
Aruba, inſ. 147
Arwaccæ, p. 142
Arzilla, u. 35
Asbetæ, p. 14
Aſcentionis, inſ. 72
Aſgara, pr. 34
Aſhamahaga, fl. 95
Afiſinuad, fl. 31
Aſna, u. 12
Aſphar, l. 9
Aſpis, c. 51
Aſſam, u. 56
Aſſawy, p. 142
Aſſociation, inſ. 147
Aſſumption, inſ. 93, 136
Aſtaboras, fl. 50
Aſtapus, fl. 50
Aſtarre, rara, inſ. 69
Atlantia, pr. 49
Atlanticæ, inſ. 76
Atlanticus Oceanus, 71
Atlantis Nova, pr. 161
Atlas, m. 41
minor, m. 22
Attagovantani, p. 94
Avalites, u. ſ. 45, 51, 57
Avares, p. 99
Avarines, u. 118
Avaris, pr. 10
Audes, m. 25, 27
Auguſtania, pr. 9
St. Auguſtine, u. 71, 100, 121, fl. 160
Aves, inſ. 147
Avila, u. 132
De Avinno, u. 108
Aulaga, l. 127
Auracona, u. 137
Auranco, pr. 135
Terra Auſtralis Incognita, pr. 158
Autepſque, u. 112
Auxumi, u. 51
Auzomide, u. 53
Axomite, u. ibid.
Axona, fl. 99
Ayavire, u. 130
Ayay, inſ.
Bueños Ayres, u. fl. 136
Ayumas, fl. 112

Azasi, u. 32
Azame, u. ibid.
Azanaghi, p. 45
Azanhages, p. 46
Azachad, des. 44
Azar, m. 13
Azati, m. 31
Azma, u. 150
Azun, u. 56
Azzeciſe, ſ. 128

Lib. I.

Bachano, u. 86
Bachilo, fl. 102
Badaics, u. 225
Baden, ſuperior, u. 140
Bætica, p. 212
Bætis, fl. 211
Bæturia, pr. 225
Baignoaes, u. 154
Bajæ, u. 62
Bajoux, u. 164
Baiozaſſes, p. ibid.
Baiona, u. 180, 222
Baize, f. pr. 180
Balacuri, u. 298
Balaceleigh, u. 296
Balbeſtro, u. 244
Baldus, m. 192
Balares, fl. 243
Balleum, n. 275
Balſa, u. 234
Baltimore, u. 295
Banatia, u. 285
Banchor, u. 277
Bancornaburg, u. ibid.
Bangor, u. ibid.
Banne, fl. 293
Bannoc, fl. 284
Bar, pr. 160
St. Lucar de Barameda, u. 223
St. Barbara, u. 234
Barcelone, u. 241
Bardſey, inſ. 305
Barganey, u. 288
Barkſhire, 262
Bari, p. u. 65
Barleduc, u. 160
Borlette, u. 65
Barrow, fl. 292
Barwick, u. 284
Barroys, p. 161
Baſa, u. 227
Baſſemus, fl. 60
Baſil, u. 140
St. Baſile, u. 180
Baſilicate, p. 62
Baſſigni, pr. 159
Baſtia, u. 164
Buſtitanes, p. 240
Baſtuli, p. 226
Bath, u. 266
Baugy, u. 169
Baule, u. 62
Bayonne, u. 180
Bazadas, u. ibid.
Bearn, pr. ibid.
St. Beaton, u. 182
Beaucairo, u. 195
Beaufort, u. 109
Beajeu, u. 111
Beajoloys, p. 174
Beauin, u. 194
Beaumaris, u. 299
Beaumoire, u. 177
Beaudregard, u. 174
Beaurpaire, u. 11
Beauois, u. 156
Bebuiacum, u. 103
Bedford, p. 260
Bedii, p. 212
Begorre, p. 180
Beia, u. 253
Belcaſtro, u. 66
Bele, u. 134
Belgæ, p. 202
Belgica prima, pr. 155
secunda, 157
Bellay, u. 192
Belle-Iſle, 157
Belmont, u. 178
Bellevile, u. 174
Bellinzona, u. 140
Bellemont, u. 178
Bellocaſſi, p. 166
Beliovaſi, p. 156
Belſia, pr. 171
Belzale, u. 118
Belzin, p. 165
Benacus, l. 102
Beneacnum, u. 181
Beneventum, u. 63, 210
St. Bennet Le Chaſtow, u. 174
Berehaven, u. 294
Bergamo, u. 103
Bergel, p. 146
Bergerat, u. 178
Berigonium, u. 285
Berkes, 259, 262
St. Bernard minor, m. 133
St. Bernardino, u. 146
St. Bernaud, u. 182
Bern, p. 180. u. 141
Bernao, u. 218
Bernicia, p. 268
Betry, pr. 175
Beſanſon, u. 195
Beſignan, u. 66
Beſons, u. 241
Beterenſes, p. 185
Beverly, 262
Bevio, u. 145
Beziers, u. 185
Biatia, u. 188
Biel, u. 139
Bieterſes, l. 138
Bigerones, p. 182
Bilbilis, u. 244
Billon, u. 174
Bincheſter, u. 259
Birat, u. 178
Birgus, fl. 292
Bitho, u. 218
Biſcay, p. 217
Biſigli, u. 65
Bitortum, u. ibid.
Bituriges Cubi, 174
Ubiſci, 179
Liberi, 175
Blackneſs, C. 162
Blackwater, fl. 292
Blanii, p. 295
Blanos, u. 241
Blaſcon, inſ. 129
Blavet, u. f. 167
Blayc, u. 179
Bloys, u. 170. fl. 151
Boactus, fl. 112
Boanda, fl. 293
Bodenſer, l. 139
Bodetria, fretum, 282
Bochri, u. 243
Bochrum, 243
Bojane, u. 63
Boil, c. 71, 121
Boiſſon, u. 178
Bolonia, u. 79
St. Boniface, u. 121
Boys de St, Pol, u. 188
Bonium, u. 275
Bononia, u. 79
Borgo St Sepulchro u 112
Borders, p. 181
Bormio, u. 145
Boſſa, u. 58
Boyerton, u. 276
Boyium,
Bovianum, u. 63
Boullenberg, C. 162
Boullogne, u. ibid.
Boulogne, u. 79, 162
Bourbon, p. u. 173
Bourdeaux, u. 180
Bourg, u. 192
Bourgſurlamer, u. 179
Bourges, u. 175
Boutonne, fl. 179
Boyne, fl. 292
Boys de St. Pol, 180
Vincennes, C. 185
Boyſſon, u. 178
Bozilia, u. 125
Bracaria Auguſta, u. 233
Bracciani, l.
Bracciano, u. 86
Brading, 300
Braga, u. 223
Bragane, u. ibid.
Braid Albin, p. 282
Branogenium, u. 262
Brocken, m. 276
Brecknock, p. 279
St. Brier, u. 169
Bremenium, u. 262
Bronta, fl. 102
Brengarten, u. 226
Bronnorville, u. 157
Breſcia, u. 103
Breſſi, p. 192
Breſt, u. 167
Bretagne, pr. ibid.
Bretti, p. 67
Brianſon, u. 191
Bridg caſterton, u. 262
Brio, p. 160
Brig, pr. 138
Brigantes, p. 262
Brignoli,
Brienne, u. 141
Briganio, u. 193
Brionde, u. 174
St. Brioci fanum, u. 167
Brixellum, u. 127
Briſtol, u. 261
Britannia, prima & ſecunda, 263
Britannia, inſ. 250
Brittanodunum, u. 285
Brous la Galliard, u. 178
Bruck, u. 142
Brunduſium, u. 66
Bruno, ſ. 193
Brutii, p. 31
Brye, pr. 163
Buche, pr. 192
Buckingham, p. u. 270
Buolth, u. 276
Bugyo, u. 192
Buguham, p. 285
Burgedala, u. 180
Burette, u. 179
Burgos, u. 231
Burgundy { Comit, 189 / Ducat, 193 / Regnum, 193
Burgundia Tranſſurana, 130
Burtina, u. 244
Buſontus, ſ. 67
Buſque, u. 133
Buſhe, inſ. 298
La Butte du Mont, u. 197
Byrſa, ſ. 141

Lib. II.

Baba, 72
Baccharach, u. 50
Merde Bachu, 125
Baden, pr. u. 75
Baden, uil. u. 59, 75
Badiſſinum, u. 82
Bæbii, p. 160
Bæotia, pr. 191
Balaton, l. 153
Balcan, m. 181
Ballenſtede, 90
Balzigorod, C. 130
Balthia, u. 110
Baltia, p. 112
Balticum mare, 106
Bamberg, u. 72
Bapaulme, u. 8
Baphyrus, l. 101
Bard, fl. 148
Bardi, p. 208
Barbara, u. 122
Barleben, u. 91
Barth, u. 84
Bartonia, pr. 146
Bartize, fl. 84
De Baſſie, u. 8
Baſilia, pr. 112
Baſternæ, p. 173
Batavi, p. 4, 21
Batavodunum, u. 25
Bathynias, fl. 205
Bavaria, Bayaren, pr. 79, 61
Bautzen, u. 2
Beaumont, u. 10
Beauois, u. ibid.
Auf de Beaurne, u. 43
Becke, fl. 140
Beckem, u. 98
Beckhuſen, u. 101
Bedgoſt, u. 148
Bedſtede, u. 115
Befort, u. 53
Beggerhuis, p. 113
Behaimet, u. 39
Beirani, p. 83
Belgica, pr. 2
prima, 2, 3
Belgium, pr. 1, 2
Belgrado, u. 155
Bellen, fl. 106
Belſterne, u. 48
Belridero, u. C. 217
Belzo, u. 145
Bemi, p. 77
Bender, u. 170
Benoner, p. 82
Berea, u. 201
Berg, pr. 44
Berga, u. 201
Bergen, u. 114
Ap Zome, u. 17
Bergina, pr. 124
Berbe, u. 49
Berben, u. 44
Berblen: u. ibid.
Berlin, u. 83
Berlind, u. ibid.
Bernberg, u. 90
Beſſarabia, pr. 170
Beſſerburg, u. 141
Beſſi, p. 170
Berhom, u. 81
Betune, u. 8
Betuiwe, pr. 25
Beverland, inſ. 22
Beybar, l. 140
Bialo, fl. 149
Biana, u. 65
Biaolograd, u. 170
Biarmia, pr. 132
Biblus, inſ.
Bibrach, u. 59
Bicla, u. 142
Bideloyſiero, l. 130
Bielſco, u. 145
Biephi, p. 168
Bierulier, u. 6
Berſcid, m. 152
Bigla, u. 140
Bihigen, u. 168
Billew, fl. 107
Biſen, u. 15
Bineche, u. 10
Bing, u. 49
Binget, u. 85
Bipontini, u. 50
Birbholm, inſ. 115
Biſcoffſtain, u. 49
Biſhoppſtoffe, u. 62
Biſtrice, fl. u. 168
Biſterfelt, u. 88
Bium, u. 195
Black Sea, 200
Towers, 210
Blanch, fl. 10
Blaucoſtein, u. 35
Blangis, fl. 7
Blaur, fl. 60
Bleſcing, pr. 112
Blida, u. 175
Blokawes, u. 141
Bodenzee, l. 58
Bodenia, p. 122
Bodmin, C. 142
Bodnerſea, 123
Bodicus, ſ. 119
Bodobuca, u. 48
Bodon, u. 172
Bodum, inſ. 109
Bogens, u. 114
Bogh, fl. 140
Bohemia, R. 77
Bohus, pr. fl. 115
Boiaria, pr. 61
Boiemi, p. 77
Boiodunum, u. 62
Boiohemum, u. 77
Boion, u. 195
Bolduc, u. 17
Bolgiano, u. 67
Bolla, fl. 95
Bolſano, 67
Boko, fl. u. 111
Boleſgrave, u. 217
Bomel, u. 25
Bonifacio, u. 217
Bonn, u. 47
Bopſingon, 59
Boppart, u. 48
Boptingen, u. 59
Borbromagus, u. 50
Borcholm, u. 141
Borelem, u. 15
Boreoſtoma, fl. 166
Bornehem, u. 6
Borneholme, inſ. u. 111
Boreholm, u. 108
Borſule, u. 22
Boruſſi, p. 145
Boryſthines, fl. 129
Boſcum Ducis, u. 17
Boſerlitz, u 80
Boſnia, pr. fl. 162
Boſphorus, 209
Boſtizan, u. 181
Boſtonach, u. 12
Bouchant, u. 10
Bouillon, pr. u. 15
Bouines, u. 11
Bouquinon, u. 55
Bombourg, u. 5
Boxtehude, u. 99
Boys Le Duc, u. 17

The TABLE.

Brabant, pr. 17
Bracant, p. 6
Braclaw, u. 144
Bragingliac, u. 72
Bragodunum, u. 59
Brakel, u. 99
Brala, 98
Bramsted, u. 108
Brandenburg, pr. 146, 87, 82
Brando, inf. 111
Branionarium, u. 72
Branki, u. 133
Brailovia, u. 171
Braſſovia, u. 168
Bratuſpantium, u. 17
Braunsberg, u. 146
Brazia, inf. 164
Breda, u. 17
Bredenberg, u. 107
Bredrode, u. 21
Bredervode, u. 26
Bregen, fl. 59
Breme, pr. u. 99
Breſſaw, u. 81
Breſt, pr. 143
Breſtys, pr. 148
Bretta, 72
Brewers Haven, u. 22
Brill, u. ibid.
Brin, u. 80
Brigartinus, l. 58
Brigantica arx Britannica, c. 21
Briſach chus, u. 59
Briſgow, pr. 58
Brixawes, p. 60
Broick, u. 100
Brookhurſt, u. 26
Bros, u. 168
Brouci, p. 155
Bructeri, p. 3
Brug, fl. 5
Bruges, u. 6
Brunfells, u. 71
Brunsko, u. 145
Brunſwick, pr. u. 94
Bruſch, fl. 53
Bruſſell xella, u. 18
Bucareſta, u. 171
Bucha, u. 58
Bucorne, u. ibid.
Buda, u. 154
Buden, inf. 85
Budina, u. 175
Budweis, u. 78
Bulgaria, pr. 174
Bullenſted, u. 90
Buren, pr. u. 26
Burglaue, pr. 109
Burglave, inf. ibid.
Burgundie, p. 86
Burich, u. 43
Burii, p. 81
Burredentii, p. 168
Buthorum, u. 197
Butringto, u. 157
Butzaw, u. 83
Buxtertrude, u. 99
Byzantium, u. 206

Lib. III.

Baaloth, u. 51
Babel, u. 113
Babelmandel fretum, 106
Babylonia, pr. 113
Babylon, u. ibid.
Bacam, pr. 212
Bacolia, u. 208
Bactria, pr. 153
Badeo, u. 105
Batius, m. 147
Baſto, u. 32
Bagarda, u. 149
Bagdat, u. 114
Bagoas, m. 149
Bagradas, fl. 144
Bahaman, pr. 124
Bala, u. 72
Balachium, u. 163
Balaguata, u. 203
Ballambua, u. 224
Balalvanus, m. 225
Balanga, u. 211
Balbec, Ballebec, u. 50
Balſigovod, c. 64
Balonca, u. 212
Balſora, u. 115
Baily inf. 225
Bamath, u. 63
Bamath Baal, u. 65
Banca, inf. 221
Bandan, inf.
Bandore, u. 201
Bannaras, u. 209
Bannaraw, u. 145
Banoam, u. 220
Bantam, u. 219
Baraab, pr. 102
Barachus, fl. 201
Baracura, u. 212
Baraſſe, inf. 209
Barathene, u. 52
Barathrum, l. 84
Baraza, u. 127
Barbaniſſa, u. 6
Barbariſſus, u. 48
Bardaxema, u. 194
Barfruſhdee, u. 152
Bargu, p. 178
Baris, fl. m. 176
Barma, pr. 212
Barocho, u. 202
Baronſe, pr. 221
Baronta, fl. 52
Barræ, p. 212
Barſita, u. 115
Baruſſæ, inf. 215
Barutti, u. 44
Barygaza, u. 194
Barthaliba, pr. 100
Baſadæ, p. 212
Baſar, m. 62
Baſcapan, u. 40
Baſcurides, p. 167
Baſilici, p. 168
Baſilius, fl. 142
Baſiſine, p. 126
Baſma, u. 225
Baſſe, inf. 209
Bata, ſ. p. 163
Batachina, inf. 217
Batana, u. 194
Batanea, pr, 66
Bataramptha, u. 63
Batax, u. 149
Bate, fl. 202
Batecolom, u. 227
Batchame, u. 222
Bathiras, u. 66
Baticalia, u. 203
Bat, pr. 211
Batri, p. 148
Batter, pr. 153
Bautiſus, fl. 174
Bayrema, l. 82
Bayren, inf. 107
Bazacata, inf. 209
Bebricia, pr. 4
Bebynga, u. 212
Beerſheba, u. u. 76
Beganna, u. 100
Bela, u. 77
Belfort, u. 70
Belgion, m. 2. pr. 170
Bengalæ, ſ. p. u. 209
Benjamin, pr. 78
Bepirrhus, m. 211
Barabonna, u. 212
Berenice, u. 101
Beriara, p. 90
Beritus, u. 4
Berothxi, u. 52
Berrhæa, u. 47
Berry, u. 145
Berſabe, u. 70
Berzamna, u. 82
Befor, fl. 75, 85
Beſynga, fl. 112
Betah, u. 52
Betaramipha, u. 63
Bethabora, u. 64
Bethel, u. 78
Bethezob, u. 65
Berharam, u. ibid.
Eden, pr, 53
Horon, u. 51, 73
Bethlem, u. 77
Nimrah, 65
Rhehob, p. 67
Saida, u. 70
Sin, u. 72
Semeſh, 70, 76
Sora, Sur, u. 77
Bethulia, u. 70
Betius, fl. 103
Bezabde, u. 202
Bezek, u. 72
Bianco, c. 163, 164
Biani, u. 200
Biblis, u. 44
Bichend, u. 170
Bidaſpes, fl. 192
Bider, u. 201
Billezuga, u. 13
Bindimir, fl. 143
Bintam, inf. 226
Birrha, u. 110, 199
Biſeries, p. 115
Biſnagar, u. 207
Bitigo, m. 2, 76
Bithynia, pr. 4
Bittigi, p. 195
Bittigo, m 2
Blacktower, u. 16
Blouſa, u. 40
Boas, fl. 128
Bocaria, u. 226
Bochor, u. 153
Bochu, u. 140
Bodeus, fl. 34
Boldra, u. 201
Bolgar, u. 168
Boloſa, u. 40
Bongo, pr. u. 200
Borgi, p. 150
Borgylia, u. 20
Borneo, inf. u. 210
Borſanna, fl. 211
Borſyppa, u. 115
Boryſthenes, fl. 163
Boſor, u. 54
Boſphorus Cimmerius, 165
Thracius 3
Boſra, u. 101
Botanter, pr. 280
Botone, inf. 122
Bottia, u. 280
Bozra, u. 64, 101
Brama, u. 212
Bramna, u. 184
Brampore, u. 203
Briſoaria, fl. 144
Bucephalus, u. 195
Buchort, pr. 197
Bucorſuccot, ibid.
Bugiales, inf. 29
Burſa, u. 5
Buſſereth, u. 101
Bezabde, 119
Bozinga, 211
Butis, u. 65
Byconi, pr. 6
Byces, fl. 163
Bylcæ, p. 164
Byta. u. 73
Byrra, 51

Lib. IV.

Baalzephon, u. 10
Babel, u. 55
Babel mandel, inf. 69
Babiba, u. 42
Babylon Ægypt, u. 11
Bacalao, p, inf. 91
Bacchias, inf. 69
Badin, pr. 61
Baezà, u. 128
Bagamedeum, pr. 54
Bagaxi, u. 42
Bagota, pr, 123
Bagradas, fl. 22
Bahama, inf. 100
Baldiria, u. 123
Balgada, pr, u. 52
Bally, u. 55
Balſa, fl. 112, 122
Bamba, pr. u. 66
Bangu, pr. 66
Banirendo, u. 34
Banza, u. 67
Baoruco, u. 151
Baranca, u. 121, 135
Barania, fl. 107
Baraquicemiti, fl. 145
Barbacene, inf. 73
Barbados, inf. 148
S. Barbara, u. 108, fl. 128
Barbaricus, ſ. 51
Barbary, pr. 21
Barbola, fl. 60, 65
Barbora, u. 56
Barca, pr, u. 12
Barce, pr. u. 13
Barcena, l. 51
Barcitæ, p. 15
Barditis, m. 60
Bardones, p. 145
Barceras, c. 134
Barna, u. 54
Barnagaſſum, gnes, pr. 54
Barnwelts, inf. 160
Barren, inf. 158
Barſtable, u. 95
St. Bartholomew, u. 116
inf. 119, c. 160
Barus, pr. 57
Baſnithus, m. 9
Baſſium, c. 51
Port, le Baſques, 91
Baſra, u. 24, 34
Baſſachitæ, p. 14
Les Baſtimentos, inf. 122
Batha, u. 29
Bathus, u. 51
Batrachus, u. 13
Batta, pr. u. 63
Bavagul, pr. ibid.
Bayamo, u. 162
Bazania, fl. 106
Bay Blanch, ſ. 91
Beach, pr. 159
Bebul, u. 55
Belmalechi, p. 76
Belen, fl. 113
Belgium Novum, 95
Bengo, fl. 65
Beni Jeſro, u. 35
Jeſſeten, u. 34
Benin, pr. 47 u. 70
Benomatana, p, 68
Berenice, u. 14
Bermeio, fl. 136
Bermuda, u. 97
Bermudaz, inf. 98
Beroa, u. 54
Bertecca, pr. 63
Beru, ſ. 128
Beſecoth, pr. 2
Bathames, u. 11
Bicar, u. 137
Bidar, u. 58
Bileduigered, pr. 43
Biſam, u. 55
Biſcaia Nova, pr. 108
Biſerta, u. 26
Bito, pr. 48
Bizu, u. 133
Blanca, inf. 147
Blance, c. 45, 104
Blanch, ſ. 91. inf. 94
Bleminri, p. 2
Blanco, fl. 127
Blind Town, u. 97
Boaruſco, pr. 94
Bocanum, u. 31
Bogudiania, pr. 32
Bocadel Brago, fret. 144
Boluiticum, ſ. 9
Bolus Erithra, Hiera, u. 11
Bonben, u. 130
Bona, u, 26
Bonæ Spei, c. 65
Bonaire, inf. 147
Bona viſta, c. 91
Bonaventure, u. 124
Bordea, deſ. 44
Borealis Terra incognita, 157
Boreum, c. 14
Boriguen, inf. 147
Borneo, fl. 45. u. 47
Bornum, pr. 47
Boro, pr. 63
Boſton u. 95
Botongi, pr. 63
Boxo, c. 105
Boyaman, fl. 150
Bracomori, p. 127
Bramas, p. 67
St. Brandon, inf. 70
Braſil, pr. 138
Brava, u. 57, inf. 72
Terra de Brea, pr. 144
Breſn, u. 29
Breſt, u. 91
Briſtow, u. 95
Briton, 91
Brion, inf. ibid.
Bubia, fl. 123
Bubaſtis, u. 10
Bubia, fl. 124
Buchira, l. 9
Bucolicus, m. 14
Budomel, c. 47
Buenaviſta, inf. 73
Buenos ayres, fl. u. 130
Bugia, pr. u. 27
Burgo, u. 40
Burugrug, fl. 34
Burna, pr. 63
Buzara, m. 85
Buzes, pr. 13
Byrſa, u. 24
Byzacena, pr. u. 26

C.

Lib. I.

Caballinum, u. 188
Cavallio, on, u. 188, 193
Cabocagli, u. 83
Cabo de Crux, c. 205

Cabo fini, terræ, c. 22
Cabo Ortegal, c. ib.
Cabo derſpinas, c. 218
Cabrera, inſ. 243
Cadis, u. 225
Cadomum, u. 164
Cardurci, p. 178
Caen, u. 164
C ri, u. 113
Caer Cubi, u. 289
Cardigan, u. 276
Caer glowy, u. 261
Caer Javerack, u. 285
Caer-lion, u. 275
Carmarthen, p. u. 277
Caerſeont, u. 276
Cæſarea, inſ. u. 197
Auguſta, u. 244
Cæſaris Burgum, u. 123
Cæſarodunum u. 169
Cæſaromagus, u. 157
Cagedo, fl. 244
Cagliare, c u. 78
Cahoes, u. 178
Cajeta, u. 61
Calabria, pr. 31
inferior, 67
ſuperior, 66
Horra
Cala Gorina } u. 215
Guris, }
Calais, u. 162
Calaris, u. 78
Calataiub, u. 244
Calatum, u. 263
Calatravia, u. 229
Caledonia, pr. 285
Caletes. p. 166
Calliota de Neſquin, u. 194
Calpe, m. 223
Calypſo, inſ. 68
Cam, fl. 267
Camalodunum, u. 283
Camargue, p. 187
Camboritum, u. 26
Cambridge, pr. u. 267
Cameracaſtruſis, u. 157
Camerine, u. 128
Campagna de Roma, 79
Campania, 31
Antiqua, p. 61
Nova, ib.
Campaigne, p. 156
Campi Canini, p. 146
Campi Lapidei, p. 187
Campi Catalaunici, pr. 185
Can, fl. 268
Candale, u. ib.
Cannæ, u. 65
Canus, igo, m, 206
Cantabri, p. 218
Cantabriate, m. 211
Cantabricum Mare, 107
Cantæ, p. 285
Canterbury, u. 265
Cantiani, p. ib.
Cantini, p, ibid.
Cantire, p. 285
Cantium, inſ. 301
Canulium, u. 65
Cape de Iſtrie, u. 104
Capitinate, p. 64
Caport, p 222
Capraria, inſ. 115
Capreæ, inſ. 68
Caprulæ inſ. 107
Capuæ, u. 61
Caraceni. p. 62
Carara, u. 113
Carbantorigum, u. 166
Carcaſone, u. 189
Cardano, u 242
Cardigan, pr. 276
Caribdis, ſ. 71
Cariofergus u. 268
Cariſti, p. 218
Carinthia, pr. 130
Carlat, u. 174
Carlingford, u. 293
Carlile, u. 267
Carlough, p. u. 292
Carmangvogla, u. 133
Carmarden, pr. 276
Carmeſurt, ſ. 302
Carnarvan, pr. u. 277, 278
Carnicæ, m p. 130
Carniola, pr. ib.
Catnutes, p. 111
Caro, c. 71
Carpe tani, p. 232
Carpentoras, u. 188
Carpi, u. 31
Carick, p. 276
Carrion, fl. 220
Carteix. u. 223
Carthagena, u. 228
Carthaginenſis, p. 212
Carthenna, u. 227
Caſar, u. 128
Caſerte, u. 62
Caſſiles, u. 294
Caſſiterides, inſ. 298
Caſtellani. p. 241
Caſtellona, u. 114
Caſtile, pr. 231
Caſtillon, u. 191
Caſtlefrance, u. 103
Caſtles, c. 146
Caſtletown, u. 298
Caſtro, u. 66
Caſtro Giovanni, u. 74
Caſtrolda, u. 114
Caſtres, u. 157
Caſtro villare, u. 67
Caſtrum Alatum, u. 284
Caſtrum Heraldi, u. 176
Caſtrum Theodorici, u. 160
Caſtulo } u. 229
Caſtaon, }
Caſtulonenſis ſaltus, m. 211
Catalaunici Campi, pr. 185
Catalonia, pr. 241
Catana, u. 75
Caterlough, p. u. 292
Catelauni, p. 190
St. Catharines, C. 133
Cathneſſe, pr. 280
Cattieuchlani, p. 262
Cavan, p. 293
Cavari, p. 191
Cauci, p. 295
Caux, u. 164
Ceano, u. 61
Cel[illegible] 139
Cel[illegible] pr. 225
Celtiberia, pr. 240
Celtica pr. 225
Celto Galatia, p. 148
Cenis, m. 114
Cenomani. 121, 169
Cenomanſes, p. 170
Cetum cellæ, u. 86
Centrones, p. 134
Cerdagne, p. 242
Cerretani, p. ib.
Cervia, u. 80
Cervillan, u. 229
Ceſſina, u. 80
Cex, u. 227
Chabannes, u. 179
Chabriers, u. 187
Chalday, inſ. 299
Chalaris, u. 78
Chalon, u. 159, 293
Chaluz, u. 178
Chambarie, u. 123
Champaigne, pr. 159
Chancelle, u. 173
Chantille, u. 158
Chapelle, u. 163
Charboneirs, u. 134
Charento, fl. 177
Charenton, u. 157
Charmis, u, 77
Charolles, u. 294
Charroux, u. 173
Chartres, u. 168
Chaſteau Briant, u.
Dun, u. 172
Moron, 180
Neufe, 178
Portian, u. 163
Rous, 179
Saraſin, 176
Thierry, 160
Chaſteller, u. 164
Chaſtel Chalons u, 195
Herald, 177
Jalone, 183
Neau, ib.
Chaſtillon, u. 162
Chattam, 265
Chaumont, 159, 192
Chaunc, u. 162
Chedlady, fl. 276
Chenil, fl. 223
Cher, fl. 175
Cherſunum. u. 120
Cheſter, u. 261
Cheviot, m. 284
Chianus, fl. 131
Chiarama, u. 146
Chiaurna, p. ib.
Chicheſter, u. 265
Chientus, fl. 84
Chiltern, m. 253
Chioggia, inſ. 106
Chiuſi, u. 114
Chorges, u. 191
Chur, u. 146
Churburg, u. 165
Cilini, p. 222
Cimbri, p. 154
Cimmeni, p. ib.
Cimmerius, m. 86
Cinia, fl. 239
Cinnium, u, 243
Circe, u. 87
Cirenceſter, 262
Ciſſanceſter, u. 265
Ciſtreux Monaſter, 164
Ciſteron, u. 187
Citta de Caſtella, u. 85
Citta del Chieta, u. 63
Cittadella, u. 243
Cita Nova, u. 105
Civitâ Vechia, u. 26
Cibidad de Auſtria, u. 107
Real, u. 220
Roderigo, u. 231
Claerac, u. 183
Clarecounty, 276
Claſſi, u. 80
Clavenna u. 146
Cleri, u. 171
Clermont, u. 174
Clevenertal, u. 146
Clavius in, fl. 177
Cliſſon, u. 168
St. Clode, u. 157
Clonmel, u. 294
Clugni Monaſter, 195
Cluſium, u. 112
Cluyd, fl. 284
Cluydedale, 282
Clonmel, u. 265
Coctix, m. 130
Coignac, u. 178
Coim, u. 227
Coira, u. 146
Colcheſter, 267
Collebræ, u. 242
Coln, fl. 267
Colonnes, c. 68
Colonia London, u. 267
Colrane, pr. 293
Comachia, u. 81
Comacina, inſ. 123
Combraille, p. 173
Cominges, p. 180
Como, u. 123
Compoigne } u. 157
ndium }
Complutum, u. 232
Compoltſchin, pr, 146
Compoſtella, u. 222
Conirela, inſ. 243
Concordia, u 104
Concreſſant, u. 116
Condabora, u. 231
Condate, u. 165
Condivincinum, u. ib.
Condon, u. 183
Confaulat, u. 118
Conflans, u. 134
Conil, u. 223
Conimbre, u. 233
Connacia, pr. 294
Connaught, pr. ib.
Conovium } 275
wey, }
Conqueſt, u. 167
Conſenſia, u. 67
Conſerani, p. 180
Conſerans, p. u. 18
Conſtance, l. 163
Conſtans, u. 134
Conteſtani, p. 240
Contini, p. 285
Convena, p. 182
Cavenares, p. 180
Conwy, fl. 276
Corbeil, u. 157
Corbes, l. 292
Corbie, u. 162
Corcagia, u. 295
Corſinium, u. 61
Corinium, u. 263
Coriondi, p. 295
Corbe, pr. u. 292
Corduba, pr. u. 222
Coritani, p. 262
Cornavii, p. 263
Cornero, ſ. 104
Cornet, c. 197
Cornubii, p. 285
Cornwal, 260
Coro, c. 72
Corſica, inſ. 31, 120
Cortona, u. 113
Corve, fl. 282
Corvo, inſ. 234
Corunna, u. 222
Coſetani, p. 241
Coſmopolis, u. 115
Coſſa, u. ib.
Coſſium, u. 180
Cotſwold, m. 252
Coventry, u, 272
Coure, u. 146
Cournvaille, pr. 167
Cowes, c. 301
Crathii, fl. 67
Crato, fl. 94
La Craux, pr. 187
Crecy, u. 162
Crema, u. 103
Cremera, fl. 86
Cremien, u. 191
Cremona, u. 123
Crevice, fl. 177
Creuſe, fl. 176
Cridington, u. 275
Croiſſir, u. 167
Croſſeto, u. 114
Crotona, u. 67
Crovy, u. 162
St. Crux, u. 237
Cubi, p. 146
Cuenza, u. 232
Cullera, u, 238
Cuma, u. 61
Cumberland, pr. 268
Cumici, u. 243
Cunningham, pr. 283
Curi, fl. 193
Curia, u. 145
Curlew, m. 273
Cyclopes, p. 71.
CyclopumScopuli, inſ. 77
Cyenos, inſ. 120

Lib. II.

Cæſarea Lutra, u. 59
Calacrium, u. 175
Calberg, m. 95
Calcar, u, 43
Calcis, u. 206
Callipolis, u. ib.
Calliſte, inſ. 216
Calmigoria, u. 146
Caloſtoma, fl. 166
Calucones, p. 60
Calydon, n. u. 195
Cambra, pr. u. 11
Chaſteau Cambreſis, ib.
Cameracum, pr. u. ib
Camfore, u. 22
Camienex, u. 144
Camin, u. 85
Camits, u. 82
Valde Campare, inſ. 220
Campen, u. 24
Campodunum, u. 59
Canche, fl. 8
Cancoentii, p. 168
Canden, u. 141
Candt, r. 50
Candy, inſ. u. 214
Canra, pr. u. 212
Caninifater, p. 24
Caniſia, u. 63
Capareus, u. 211
Saltus Carboranicus, 9
Cardia, u. 206
Careſſus, u. 213
Carinthia, pr. 66
Cariſte, u. 211
Carloſtadt, u. 49
Carmefont, ſ.
Carni, p. 66
Carniola, pr. ib.
Carnuntum, u. 154
Carodunum, u. 149
Carpathii, m. 152
Carthea, u. 213
Carpen, u. 14
Calan, pr. u. 133
Caſimir, u. 149
Caſpium Mare, 130
Caſſandria, u. 202
Caſſandt, inſ. u. 6
Caſſels, u. 97
Caſſiope, u. 196
Caſſovia, u. 154
Caſtegnaza, m. 178
Caſtol, u. 76
Novo, u. 154, 162, 217
Caſter, u. 44
Vetera Caſtra. ib.

Argivo,

Argiro Castro. 197
Castrolin, u. 124
Catena, Mundi, m. 178
Catharo s. u. 162
Catti. p. 97, 69
Catzenebbogen, u. 69
Cauron. inf. 212
Cazach, u. 162
Cebium. u. 171
Cecropria, u. 189
Cel. l. ibid.
Celidnus, fl. 198
Cella, u. 95
Celeya, u. 65
Cenchrea, u. 187
Centauri, p. 203
Centron, u. 15
Ceos, inf. 213
Cephalenia, inf u. 219
Cephalo, u. 219
Cephisus, fl. 180
Ceratus, u fl. 215
Ceraunii, p. 201
Ceresi, u. 201
Cerigo, inf. 214
Geronia, u. 192
Ceffine, u. 81
Ceterigo, inf. 219
Cetius, u. 38
Chabris, fl. 201
Chalcidice, p. 211
Chalcis, u. 195, 211
Chali, p. 110
Cham, u. 76
Chaminisa, u. 181
Charrani, p. 98
Chaonia, pr. 196
Charason, fl. 205
La Charbonniere, u. 4
Charitni, p. 74
Charlemonr, u. 11
Charudes, p. 110
Charmes, u. 55
Chausuarii, p. 89
Casnari, p. ibid.
Chatti, p. 97
Chauci, p. 100
Chedini, p. 116
Cheitcheen, u.
Chelmo, pr. u. 145
Cherona, u. 192
Cherso, inf. 164
Cheruſci, p. 92
Cheſtire, c. 214
Chianenza, u. c. 181
Chiers, fl. 12
Chilonite, c. 183
Chilonium, u. 108
Chimay, u. 10
Chironia, u. 211
Chisamo, u. 217
Chriſtenburg, u. 112
Chriſtendorp, u. ibid.
Chriſtiania, u. ib. inf. 218
Chriſtianopolis, u. 112
Chronack, u. 72
Chronus, fl. 140
Chrisites, u. 202
Chryſonicum, u. 173
Chuni, p. 156
Chryſites, u. 202
Cia, inf. 213
Ciabrus, fl. 167
Cibinium, u. fl. 168
Cicynethus, inf. 211
Ciſland, inf. 109
Cimarus, c. 214
Cimbri, p. 110
Cimeris, u. 38
Cimolis, inf. 213
Circus, fl. 211
Ciſamunt, u. 219
Ciſteum, u. 218
Citheron, m. 193
Citium, u. 202
Clarewany, u. 54
Clagnefoot, u. 66
Claude, inf. 218
Clauſenberg, diopolis, u. 168
Cleveland, pr. u. 43
Cleve, ib.
Clivia, ibid.
Clyſſa, u. 162
Cnemis, m. 194
Cobandi, p. 110
Coburg, 73
Cobolentz, u. 48
Cochina, u. 170
Cochinio, u. 210
Cocytus, fl. 196
Codonania, inf. 110
Corten, u 90
Cognamus, m. 65
Colambes, u. 172
Colberg, u. 85
Colen, pr. u. 47
Colchinium, u. 162
Colluga, u. 133
Colmagro, u. 135
Colmar, u. 58
De Cholachino, ſ. 183
Colocza, u. 155
Colonamich, u. 175
Colonia, u. 47
Agrippina, u. 47
Trajana, 48
Colubra, fl. 178
Columbella, u. 172
Comara, inf. 154
Comenolitati, p. 199
Comines, u. 6
Conadus, ſ. 110
Conde, u. 10
Condora, pr. 132
Conſluentes, p. 48
Congel, u. 114
Connigeberg, u. 146
Conſtance, l. u. 58
Conſtantinople, u. 206
Conſtat, u. 74
Conteſſo, ſ. 201
Copenhagen, u. 110
Copperdale, pr. 122
Corbach, u. 97
Corcyra, inf. 219
Corſu, inf. 164
Corelia, pr. 132
Corenberg, u. ibid.
Corinth, pr. u. 186
Coritus, u. c. 216
Cornati, u. 89
Corona, u. 168
Corone, ſ. u. 183
Coronea, u. 192
Corſira, u. 133
Cort Chine, u. 20
Cortina, u. 216
Coryhuſium, c. 183
Coſſova, u. 175
Coſtin, u. 85
Corthuſe, u. 82
Coub, u. 50
Covin, u. 172
Courtray, u. 6
Crabats, pr. 161
Cracovia, u. 148
Carcow, u. ibid
Crapack, m. 152
Cratova, u. 173
Cravenberg, u. 43
Cremia, u. 65
Crems, u. ibid.
Crempe, u. fl. 107
Cremſer, u. 80
Crenides, u. 201
Creſtona, pr. 204
Creta, inf. 214
Cretaniom Mare, 214
Cribizi, p. 175
Criſſa, u. 193
Croatia, pr. 161
Croja, u. 198
La Croix, m. 112
Cronaburg, u. 123
Cronach, u. 72
Croneberg, u. 70, 110
Cronſtadr, u. 168
Cronus, fl. 139
Croſſen, u. 81
Crunitznach, u. 50
Culemberg, m. 404 p. u. 26
Culm, u. 146
Culmback, u. 89
Cumaniza, m. 161
Curetes, p. 196
Curiapegnians, u. 89
Curſicum, u. 164
Curieta, inf. ib
Curland, pr. 141
Curta, u. 154
Curzola, inf. u. 164
Curzolari, inf. 219
Cuſtrine, u. 83
Cyclades, inf. 200
Cydonia, u. 216
Cynthinium, u. 195
Cynthus, m. 212
Cynus, u. 194
Cyparisſi, u. 183
Cyrra, u 193
Cythera, inf. 214
Cythnus, pr. 213
Cytia, u. 217
Cytinum, u. 195
Cyzicus, inf. 209
Czandre, u. 178
Czeremiſſi, p. 134
Czeſnigo, u. 133
Czirbo, u. 145
Czyb, p. 168

Lib. III.

CAbadinæ, p. 146
Cabandone, pr. 143
Cabira, u. 6
Cabecæ, p. 212
Caboras, m. 123
Cabuthuthra, m. 105
Cabul, pr. u. 148
Cacamacon, fl. 184
Cacheto, u. 130
Caduſii, pr. 141
Cael, u. 207
Cælene, m. 123
Cælo Syria, pr. 52
Cæſarea, u. 73
Philippi, u. 68
Dio Cæſarea, u. 9
Flavia Cæſarea, u. 73
Cæſius, fl. 130
Caffa, u. 163
Caicolam, p. u. 204
Caicus, fl. 4, 14
Caifung, u. 186
Cailon, u. 221. inf. 209
Cainaum, inf. 209
Caindu, pr. u. 176
Caipumo, fl. 217
Caiton, u. 186
Calacte, u. 116
Calacine, p. ib
Calani, p. 212
Calamo, inf. 30
Calautan, u. 216
Calba, u. 170
Calbis, fl. 4
Calcedo, u. ib.
Calcadnus, fl. 24
Calibi, m. 226
Calicute, pr. u. 204
Caledoni, caput, 32
Callinice, u. 47
Callirhoe, u. 75
Calne, u. 114
Calvarie, m. 62
Calwalla, u. 201
Camaran, inf. 106
Cambaia, pr. 200. u 202
Cambalu, u. 173
Cambris, ſ. 174
Cambyſis, fl. 120
Cambyſum, fl. 193
Camelorum, Regio, 168
Camiſſene, pr. 151
Campæ, u. 9
Campanel, u. 202
Campion, u. 176
Camul, pr 176
Cana, Major, u. Minor, 70
Canaan, pr. 58
Canac, fl. 139
Canara, pr. 203
Candahor, pr. u. 149
Candari, p. 168
Candie, u. 226
Cane, u. 16
Canic'u, l. 173
Canis, fl. 42
Cannæ, u. 16, 21
Cantharis, u. 145
Canthymus, u. 194
Canton, pr. 185. u. 184
Capacore, u. 204
Caparoſa, u. 82
Capernaum, u. 69
Capitolias, u. 52
Cappadocia, pr. fl. 8
ſecunda, 9
Caprus, ſ. 116
Caput Calidoni, c. 33
Gentis, u. 126
Caracenſium, u. 23
Caracoras, u. 178
Canigu, u. 173
Carami, l. 173
Caramania, pr. 19
Caramit, u. 119
Caratæ, u. 194
Caraſia, pr. 15
Caratæ, p. 168
Carathra, u. 22
Carazan, pr. 176
Carabalia, pr. 18
Carcimitis, fl. 163
Cardimine, inf. 106
Cardandan, 176
Careanſu, u. 174
Caria, p. inf. 20
Cariathiarim, u. 76
Cariath Sephir, 76
Carindas, fl. 139
Carioth, u. 77
Cariphi, fl. 193
Carman, u. 118
Carmania, pr. 145. u. 146
Carmel, m. 41
Carnaim, u. 67
Caromatum, fl. 173
Carpaſiæ, inf. 36
Carpaſſus, pr. 34
Carpathos, inf. u. 31
Carpathium mare, 1
Carpella, c. 145
Cartæ, u. 119
Carthan, u. 70
Caſa, u. 144
Casbin, u. 139
Caſcar, pr. 175
Caſcimir, 197
Caſcan, u. 151
Caſia, p. 77
Caſeii, m.
Caſilmach, fl. 3
Caſiotis, pr. 47
Caſius, m. 41, 82
Caſluim, p. 75
Caſmer, fl. 40
Caſpia, pr. 52
Caſpiæ portæ, m. 2
Caſpir, u. 76
Caſpiræi, p. 195
Caſpiria, pr. 198
Caſpium mare, 112
Caſſanito, pr. 107
Caſſirotæ, p. 149
Caſta, u. 207
Caſtamona, u. 6
Caſtol-Gera, u. 28
Caſtrum Peregrinorum 71
Regium 70
Carabeda, m. 211
Cataamorea, p. 25
Catamul, fl. 194
Cataonia, pr 12
Catarachus, fl. 4, 22
Catecha, u. 208
Cathay, pr. 172
Cathraxpis, fl. 145
Catigai, u. 209
Catio, u. 85
Catararegara, u. 184
Cattabani, p. 107
De La Catti, c. 114
Cattigara, u.
Caucaſiæ portæ, m. 166
Caucaſus, m. 131, 165
Caudriaces, fl. 145
Cauchin China, p. 213
Cavilare, p. 213
Caulanitis, pr. 101
Caximer, u. 197
Cayſtrus, fl. 4, 18
Cebcha, fl 194
Ceder Nepthalin, u. 67
Cedrei, p. 90
Cedron, u. fl. 75
Cedar, u. 16
Ceila, u. 77
Ceilan, inf. 219
Cene, u. 16
Cephene, pr. 145, u. 148
Cepaſtis, inf. 30
Ceraſus, u. 6
Ceraunii, m. 165
Cerertis, f. 167
Cerchane, p. 176
Cergiran, u. 186
Cerguth, pr. 176
Cerines, p. u. 35
Cerioth, u. 77
Ceſi, inf. 29
Ceſtius, fl. 23
Cethinia, inf. 30
Cethlan, u. 69
Cetium u. 34
Ceraunia, u.
Chabala, u. 112
Chabalaca, u. ibid.
Chabalas, fl. 118
Chaberis, fl. 194. u. 194
Chaboras, m. 139
Chabo[illegible] 67
Chad[illegible]um, u. 207
Chad[illegible] 80
Chadeamotitæ, p. 195
Chæanides, p. 168
Chæriſtus, fl. 128
Chagnian, p. 82
Chalato, u. 52
Chalnitides, p. 116
Chalatene, pr. 52
Chalcidice, p. 48
Chalcis, u. 48, 52
Chalcitis, p. 120
Chaldea, pr. 112
Chalderani, Campi 207
Chale, u. 204
Chalipium, u. 38
Chalmodora, u. [illegible] 51

Chorymbia, *inf.* 28
Chalyban. *u.* 48
Chalybanotis *pr.* *ibid.*
Chalybes. *pr.* 211
Chamatha. *u.* 52
Chambel. *fl.* 194
Chamdagrin. *u.* 207
Champa. *p.* 213
Chatha, *u.* 165
Characene. *pr.* 142
Charachiſar. *u.* 13
Charadræ, *p.* 145
Charax. *u.* 151
Themnah Chares. *u.* 73
Chariſpe. *u.* 153
Charomithrene. *p.* 221
Charraccharta. *u.* 153
Chars. *u.* 127
Chaſdim. *pr.* 112
Charæ. *p.* 175
Chathing, *u* 186
Chathrapis *fl.* 144
Chatzarhevam. *u.* 66
Chatua. *u.* 202
Chatzar. *u.* 67
Chatziæi. *p.* 195
Chatzor. *u.* 77
Chaucabeni. *p.* 100
Chau {elei las. *p.* lateni} 142
Chaul. *u.* 203
Chauzana, *u.* 68
Chawchin-china. *p.* 213
Chelonophagi. *p.* 145
Chenao. *fl.* 194
Chequiare. *p.* 186
Cheraſmii, *p.* 169
Cherſoneſus, *u.* 163
Aurea. *pr.* 211
Cheſel *fl.* 169
Cheſmur. *pr.* 176
Chethlan. *u.* 77
Cheuxan. *p.* 186
Chiacoporo. *u.* 152
Chiamy. *l.* 204
Chimæra, *m.* 21
China. *pr.* 181
Chinchintales *p.* 178
Chinchianzu. *u.* 186
Chios. *inf u.* 29
Chiſon. *fl* 61
Chiti. *c.* 30
Choapſa. *u fl.* 148
Cholna. *u.* 127
Cholobatene. *pr.* 207
Choraſſin, *p.* 153
Chorazim. *u.* 67
Chornia. *u.* 76
Chorodamus. *c.* 106
Choromandel. *u.* 207
Chorſa. *u* 29
Chorſeus *fl.* 38
Chrindi. *p.* 152
Chryſopolis. *u.* 5
Chryſorrhas. *fl.* 211
Chus. *pr.* 102
Chuſeſtan *p.* 142
Chuſmur *u.* 200
Chyrman, *pr.* 116. *u.* 145
Cialic. *u.* 175
Cian. *u.* 220
Ciandecan *u.* 209
Cianthang *fl* 184
Cidnus. *fl.* 24
Cilicia aſpera *p.* 10
Cilicia *pr.* 24
Ciliciæ portæ. *m.* *ib.*
Cimmeris. *u.* 15
Cimmerii. *p.* 164
Cimmerium. *u c.* 166
Cinædocolpitæ. *p.* 107
Cingeu *u.* 186
Cinnereth. *u.* 50
Cipariſea. *inf.* 26
Circane. *pr.* 198
Circan. *pr.* 146
Circaſſiani. *p.* 163
Circuni *u.* 163
Cirtatha. *u.* 211
Ciſhion 71
Ciſteion. *u.* 70
Ciſſia *pr.* 142
Cithera. *u.* 34
Citium *u.* *ibid.*
Citer. *u.* 200
Ciumbabon. *inf.* 221
Clamanienſes. *p.* 20
Clamaſſum. *u.* 127
Clamur. *u.* 208
Clatos. *inf.* 30
Claudiopolis *u.* 524
Clazomene. *inf. u.* 17
Clides. *c.* 307. *inf.* 363
Climachus. *u.* 8
Climax. *m.* 105
Cnidus. *u c.* 20
Coa. *fl.* 194
Coacus *fl.* 149
Coa{th f}ras, *m.* 117
Co amni amani, *p.* 154
Coaxtræ. *p.* 166
Cocalia. *u.* 7
Cocconagora. *u.* 212
Cocconati. *inf.* 107
Cochin. *pr. u.* 205
Cogni. *u.* 36
Coia. *u.* 220
Coilan. *u.* 217
Coine. *r.* 207
Colans, *u.* 186
Colchi. *u.* 194
Colchis *pr.* 128
Coli *u.* 212
Collinia. *inf.* 30
Colmuchi. *u.* 227
Colobraſſius. *u.* 23
Cologenber. *u.* 118
Colonia. *u.* 127
Colophon. *u.* 17
Coloſſa. *u.* 13. *inf.* 29
Colthene. *p.* 126
Columbo. *u.* 227
Comagena *pr.* 59
Comana. *u.* 6
Comari. *c.* 168. 196
Combuſta. *inf.* 106
Comodæ. *p.* 168
Commaria *Extrema. c.* 196
Comochiette. *c.*
Conapſoni. *p.* 168
Coniata. *u.* 8
Conica. *u.* 7
Coniocc. *u.* 166
Connelia. *u.* 34
Cononor. *u. pr.* 204
Conſtantia. *u.* 165
Contaciſſyla. *u.* 194
Cons. Cons. *inf.* 31
Copthorim. *p.* 65
Coquinai. *p.* 122
Coras. *u.* 178
Corax. *fl. m.* 165
Corcam. *p.* 152
Cordiæi. *m.* 129
Corduene, *pr.* 126
Cordyle, *u.* 7
Corea. *inf.* 186
Cornaræ *p.*
Coronyum. *c.* 30
Cornochyette. *ib.*
Corotus. *m.* 140. 151
Corſunum. *u.* 163
Cory *c.* 875
Corydalla. *u.* 21
Corygaza. *u.* 212
Coſmi. *u.* 217
Coſſæi. *p.* 142
Cota. *u.* 204
Cotaccne. *p.* 126
Cotiaris. *fl.* 194
Cottiara. *u.* 184
Couche. *pr. u.* 208
Coul. *u.* 114
Coula *pr. u.* 122
Coy. *u.* 129
Cragas. *u. m.* 21
Cranganor. *pr. u.* 205
Crat. *u.* 101
Cremam. *u.* 167
Creme{n t} *u.* 130
Cremna. *u.* 36
Creſſa. *u.* 20
Cretopolis. *u.* 23
Crim. *u. pr.* 163
Croceus. *fl.* 184
Groom. *u.* 151
Cruſocus. *pr.* 50
Cruſtinæ. *u.* 170
Cryptos. *u.* 105
Cryſaoras. *fl.* 211
Cteſyphon. *u.* 115
Cucuſon, *u.* 10
Cudute. *p.* 112
Cuſa. *u.* 105
Cuma *u.* 16
Cumpanel *u.* 199
Cupreſſitum. *u.* 118
Cyprus. *fl.* 117
Curdi *p.* 38
Curdiſtan. *pr.* 32
Curdurmuch. *u.* 114
Curias *c* 677. *u.* 35
Curroy. *p.* 114
Curſus Achillis. *u.* 164
Curula. *u.* 197
Cuſia. *pr.* 175
Cuſh, Cuſha. *pr.* 141
Cuſiana. *pr.* 142
Cutheans. *p.* 74
Cyaneus. *fl.* 128
Cybros. *u.* 47
Cylendrine. *p:* 198
Cyprus. *inf.* 33. *fl.* 115
Cyreckbata. *u.* 52
Cyreſtica. *pr.* 47
Cyrnus. *fl.* 42
Cyropolis. *u.* 169
Cyroſchata. *u.* *ib.*
Cyrrhus. *u.* 48
Cyrus. *fl.* 126, 131
Cyrza. *u.* 145
Cyzicus. *inf. u.* 15

Lib. IV.

CAbaio. *inf.* 118
Cabambe. *m.* 65
Cabaya. *pr.* 151
Cabazza, *u.* 65
Cabis *u.* 25
Cabor. *u.* 136
Cabra. *u.* 46
Cacango. *pr.* 65
Cacapool. *fl.* 131
Cachapiaro. *u.* 129
Cacoſogo. *m.* 104
Cacoues. *p.* 136
Cadiz. *pr.* 93
Cadiz nova, *u.* 146
Cæſar. *fl.* 124
Cæſarea. *u.* 31
Cafraria. *pr.* 64
Cajane. *fl.* 141
Caire. *u.* 11
Cairoan. *u.* 26
Cairoban. *inf.* 150
Cajuſſa. *inf.* 70
Calabinda. *u.* 139
Calathe. *inf.* 39
Cale. *u.* 35
Caledonia Nova. *pr.* 93
Calen. *u.* 61
Cali. *u.* 124
Califormia. *pr.* 120
Calpe. *m.* 37
De los Camerones, *fl.* 133
Cambylis. *u.* 51
Cambyzeranium.
Camolaha. *u.* 133
Camoni. *p.* 92
Campeche. *u.* 114
Camucuiara. *p.* 137
Canada. *pr. fl.* 92
Canaga. *fl.* 45
Canagadi. *pr.* 100
Cananea. *u.* 136
Canaries. *inf.* 73
Canares. *p.* 128
Canchis. *m.* 60
Candelaria. *u.* 135
Canelam. *pr.* 125
Canfila. *pr.* 53
Caniticum. *fl.* 9
Cano. *pr. u.* 46
Canoas, *pr.* 1026. *fl.* 144
Canopus. *u.* 11
Contaberes. *m.* 60
Canten. *fl.* 131
Cantire. *c.* 34
Capanavatzic. *u.* 115
Caparea. *u.* 150
Capas. *m.* 45
Capha. *m.* 42
Capraria. *inf.* 73
Capſa. *u.* 43
Capuri, *p.* 144
Caput Currentium. *c.* 162
Caracas. *u.* 146
Caramanta. *u.* 130
Carangues. *u.* 125
Caravalleda. *u.* 144
Caravaya. *pr.* 126
Carcares. *p.* 135
Carfur. *u.* 56
Carchana. *inf.* 40
Cariache. *f.* 144
Carlos. *u.* 118
Carone. *fl.* 143
Carnuga *fl.* 45
Caribes. *p.* 1071. *inf.* 148
Caripo. *u.* 142
Carthage. *u.* 26. 124
Carthago. *u.* 117
Carthagina. *pr. u.* 121
Caſa pualca. *u.* 816
Caſena. *pr.* 46
Caſperia. *inf.* 73
Caſ turough ſipure, *fl.* 141
Caſſume. *u.* 50
Caſteaux. *f.* 91
Caſtella aurea. *pr.* 119
Caſtra Judæorum. *u:* 11
Caſtro *u.* 128
Cataractus major. 52
minor. 13
Catelina. *inf.* 148
Cathratæ. *inf.* 70
Catuda. *fl.* 25
Porto de Cavalles. *u.* 117
Cauca. *fl.* 122
Caxamalca. *u.* 129
Las Caxas. *u.* 133
Caxumo. *u.* 52
Cazaze. *fl.* 121
De Cedros. *c.* 105. *fl.* 123
Centpuis. *u.* 32
Cepita. *u.* 131
Cercina. *inf. u.* 39
Cerne. *inf* 72, 79
Chagre. *fl.* 120
Chalce. *p.* 113
Chalcaqui. *p:* 138
Chaluteca. *pr.* 117
Chamalucoi. *fl.* *ib.*
Chamnoe. *inf.* 71
Champlaire. *l.* 93
Chancay. *p.* 129
Chanes. *p.* 136
Chapala. *l.* 110
Chapen Chicu. *u.* 124
Charcas. *pr.* 130
Charcana. *i.* 39
Charente. *fl.* 99
Cape Charles. *c.* 91
Fort de Charles. *u.* 100
Golf de Chaſteaux. *ſ.* 92
Chaus *pr.* 34
Chelbi. *inf.* 39
Chelonidas. *l.* 42
Chelonides *l.* 45
Chelonitides. *inf.* 70
Chemia. *pr.* 3
Chepor. *fl.* 120
Chereola. *u.* 13
Cheriguaria *pr.* 136
Cherry. *inf.* 157
Cheſepeacke. *u.* 97
Cheſuſa. *u.* 34
Chia. *u.* 108
Chiameda. *pr.* 124
Chiapa. *pr. u.* 116
Chicahamania. *fl.* 97
Chichemeci. *p.* 111
Chichilticala. *p.* 120
Chila. *p.* 112
Chile. *fl.* 128. *p.* 131
Chilane. *u.* *ibid.*
Chileu. *ſ.* 132
Chimenſes. *p.* 134
Chimo. *pr.* 129
Chinca Cocha. *pr:* 129
Chioth. *pr.* 3
Chiquiabo. *pr. u.* 130
Chiquitos. *pr.* 136
Chipano. *u.* 97
Chiſica Cocha. *l.* 130
Chiticæ. *u.* 29
Chivaldy. *p.* 161
Chocinoca. *u.* 136
Chocolochocha. *pr.* 129
Chollo. *u.* 27
Chollops magnus. *u.* 29
Chontales. *p.* 118
Chowanoake. *u.* 97
Chriſtalli. m. 67
St. Chriſtophers. *inf.* 149
Chuluſa. *u.* 112
Chulutecan. *pr.* 117
Chuneſſes. *p.* 136
Chuquinga. *u.* 131
Chuquiſaca. *u.* 130
Chubarus. *fl.* 41
Chythite. *u.* 32
Le quatre Cienagas. *u.* 107
Cibao. *pr.* 151
Cibola. *pr.* 204
Cicnie. *p.* 103. *u.* 104
Cicuique. *fl.* *ibid.*
Cinaloa. *pr.* 107
Cinna. *m.* 24
Cinnaba. *m.* 22
Cinnamomifera. *pr.* 50
Cinſterna *u.* 25
Cipango. *inf.* 152
Cirta. *u.* 27
Cirtefii. *p.* 28
Citala. *fl.* 112
Cividad Real. *u.* 116
Clantinolleper. *u.* 112
St. *Clara. inf.* 145
c. 104. 105

Clari, *m.* 41
Cleartus, *l.* 13
Cleopatris, *u.* 10
Clysma, *u.* 11
Coanza, *fl.* 60, 65
Coava, *fl.* 61
Chochabamba, *pr.* 130
Choche, *inf.* 146
Cocite muco, *fl.* 151
Cocktuway, *p.* 140
Cogemymne, *u.* *ibid.*
Colas, *p.* 100
Colima, *u.* 128
Collao, *u. pr.* 130
Collignia, *u.* 134
Collo, *fl.* 25
Collobon, *c.* 51
Color, *l.* 51. *fl.* 52
De Colubros, *fl.* 120
Colymæ, *p.* 124
De Comagre, *f.* 120
Comapayras, *pr.* 142
Commenagor, *port.* 146
Commyagna, *u.* 118
Comolalia, *pr.* 143
Comoro, *inf.* 70
Complida, *m.* 65
Compoſtella, *u.* 124, 151
Conawini, *fl.* 141
St. Conception, *inf.* 73
Conception, *f.* 91
fl. 119, *u.* 131
De Salaya, *u.* 111
De la urga, 151
Conchi, *p.* 108
Conſines, *u.* 131
Congemes, *p.* 67
Congo, *pr.* 66
De Congos, *fl.* 120
Conibas, *u. l.* 108
Julia Conſtantia, *u* 40
Conſtantina, *pr. u. m.* 27
Conte, *u.* 32
Conza, *fl.* 67
Copayapa, *fl.* 131
Coprus, *u.* 12
Coquiboccoa, *c.* 122
Coquimba, *fl.* 131
Avoia de Corazanes. *pr.* *f.* 104
Cordes, 133
Cordillera, *m.* 122
Corduba, *u.* 136
Nova Cordura, *u.* *ibid.*
Coro, *u.* 70. *fl.* 147
Corobaci, *fl.* 121
Coronado, *c.* 105
Corova, *pr.* 58
Corrientes, *c.* 125
Corterialis terra 91
Coryphe, *p.* 2
Coſtarica, *pr.* 118
Coſyra, *inf. u.* 39
Corache, *c.* 152
Cotui, *u.* 151
Couche, *pr. u.* 55
Couliacan, *p.* 104
Cozamul, *inf.* 116
Crewinay, *p.* 143
Crocodilorum, *fl.* 122 *u.* 14
St. Croix, *u.* 92
Crophy rupes 13
St. Croſs, *inf.* 71
De la Crux, *fl.* 132 *ſ.* 106
St. Crux, *inf.* 115, *u.* 150 *r.* 122. *u.* 138
De Real, *u.* 121
Sierra 136
Vera Crux, *u.* 114
Cuama, *fl.* 60, 61
Cuames, *p.* 128
Cuba, *inf.* 151
Cubagna, *inf.* 146
Cube, *u.* 51
Cuechi, *p.* 65
Cuentina, *u.* 26
Cuenca, *u.* 128
Cuertlavaca, *u.* 115
Culahuan, *u.* 32
Culcua, *u.* 26
Culican, *pr.* 107
Culvæ, *p.* 112
Cumana, *fl. pr. u.*
Cumbinama, *u.* 129
Curallaos, *inf.* 147
Currentium caput, *c.* 62
Deorum Currus, *m.* 41
Cuſa, *fl.* 30
Cuſco, *pr. u.* 128
Cuyocan, *u.* 111
Cuſar Elcabir, *u.* 34
Cygnea, *inf.* 71
Cyniphus, *fl.* 25
Cyrone, *pr. u.* 14
Cyropolis, *u.* 11
Cyris, *inf.* 69
Cynophanus, *p.* 2

D.

Lib. I.

D'Acqs, *u.* 180
Damnii, *p.* 285
Dandillæ, *u.* 192
Danmonii, *p.* 262
Darby, *pr.* 269
Darien, *inf.* 227
Darnii, *p.* 295
Darwent, *fl.* 269
St. David's, *u.* 277
Daulſine, *pr.* 190
Daulphine, *ibid.*
Daunia, *pr.* 64
Deceans, *p.* 188
Decenſes, *p.* 190
Decenti, *p.* 117
Dedier, *u.* 159
Dedyme, *inf.* 76
Dee, *fl.* 276
Deheubarth, *p.* 219
Deira, *p.* 268
Delvin, *u.* 293
Denbigh, *pr.* 277
Denia, *fl. u.* 240
St. Dennis, *u.* 155
Dervogel, *m.* 145
Deſmond, *pr.* 294
Deva, *fl.* 276
Devana, *u.* 288
Devonſhire, *pr.* 260
Devania, *u.* 262
Dian, Dianium, *u.* 68
Die, *u.* 191
Die Furchen, *p.* 130
Diepe, *u. fl.* 165
Diion, *u.* 192
Dimetæ, *p.* 275
Dinau, *u.* 167
Dinevour, *fl.* 279
St. Deſiderii fanum, *u.* 159
Diomedes, *inf.* 68
Dioſcores, *inf.* *ibid.*
Diſerntis, *u.* 146
Dittani, *p.* 232
Dive, *fl.* 168
Divio, *u.* 193
Dobuni, *p.* 262
Doglian, *u.* 133
Dol, *u.* 167
Dole, *u.* 195
St. Dominico, *inf.* 68
Donne, *fl.* 287
Dorat, *u.* 178
Dorcheſter, *u.* 266
Dorcinia, *u.* 262
Dardonne, *fl.* 154. 180
Dorſetſhire, 26
Dorra, *u.* 237
Dove, *fl.* 193
Dover, 265
Douſenac, *u.* 178
Downe, *pr.* 293
Doux, *fl.* 195
Dragonago, *inf.* 243
Dragonera, *inf.* *ibid.*
Drepanum, *u.* 74
Dreux, *u.* 171
Drogheda, *u.* 293
Droſne, *fl.* 191
Druentus, *fl.* 59
Duarzo, *fl.* 217
Dublin, *pr. u.* 292
Dubris, *u.* 265
Duerus, *fl.* 233
Dumna, *inf.* 287
Dumo, *u.* *ibid.*
Dunbritton, *u.* 285
Dundalk, *u.* 293
Dundee, *u.* 284
Dungal, *u.* 293
Dunholm, *u.* 268
Dunckeran, *u.* 294
Dunois, *p.* 171
Dunſtable, *u.* 262
Dunwich 267
Durance, *fl.* 187
Durham, *u.* 269
Duria, *fl.* 131
Durias, *fl.* 211
Durnovaria, *u.* 262
Durobrivis, *u.* 265
Durocorti, *p.* 159
Durolis, *u.* 262
Durotriges, *p.* 262
Durovernium, *u.* 262

Lib. II.

Dacia, *pr.* 155. 162
Dagna, *u.* 198
Dalearle, *pr.* 122. *fl.* 119
Dalem, *u.* 14
Dalliart, *fl.* 100
Dalmatia, *pr.* 161
Dalminium, *u.* 163
Dam. *u.* 26
Damalis, *u.* 209
Dammin, *u.* 86
Dampuillers, *u.* 13
Dandutii, *p.* 89
Dani, *p.* 166
Dan ow ubius *fl.* 38 iſcum
Dant zick *u.* 148
Danvilliers, *u.* 13
Dardanelli, *c.* 209
Dardania, *pr.* 175 *inf.* 210
Datmſtadt, *u.* 97
Darſhaw, *u.* 148
Daucianes, *p.* 112
Davi, *p.* 172
Daulis, *u.* 193
Daurſii, *p.* 170
Dayna, *u.* 198
Darf ow ovia *u.* 148
Deborus, *u.* 198
Deckala, *u.* 123
Deſe, *fl.* 17
Deden, *u.* 25
Dele *fl.* 18
Delf, *u.* 21
Delm, *fl.* 100
Delmenhorſt, *u.* 102
Delos, *inf. u.* 212
Delphos, *u.* 193
Demetrias, *u.* 200
Dender, *fl.* 7
Dendermond, *u.* *ibid.*
Denmark, *R.* 105
Dennere, *fl.* 19
Derborck, *u.* 111
Der bren pt *u.* 141
Derii, *p.* 165
Derris *u.* 202
Deſna, *fl.* 143
Deſſaw, *u.* 90
Deva, *u.* 168
Deventer, *u.* 24
Deux ponts, *u.* 50
Dia, *inf.* 218
Dſina, *fl.* 130
Dibra, *u.* 198
Dictæa, *inf.* 216
Dicte, *m.* *ib.*
Dict amum *u.* *ib* inna
St. Die, *u.* 55
Dieſt, *u.* 17
Dietz, *u.* 97
Dikilappe, *p.* 132
Diles, *inf.* 213
Dille, *fl.* 73
Dillingbourg, *u.* 69
Dimenſii, *p.* 173
Dimula, *fl.* 99
Dinan, *u.* 15
Dinkelſpuel, *u.* 59
Din igu tia, *u.* 175 oge
Dioclea, *u.* 163
Dionyſia, *inf.* 213
Dionyſipolis, *u.* 175
Dioſopolis, *inf.* 210
Dioſteine, *pr.* 15
Dipnoſus, *fons*, 213
Dirſhaw, *u.* 148
Ditmarch, *pr.* 106
Dium, *u.* 195, 201
Divodurum, *u.* 55
Divotro, *fl.* 216
Dobelein, *u.* 141
Dobezin, *pr.* 148
Doccum, *u.* 23
Dodona, *u.* 196
Doesburg, *u.* 26
Dotecum, *u.* 26
Dofrine, *m.* 119
Dogeden, *inf.* 58
Dolcigno, *u.* 82
Doliche, *u.* 200
Dollaert, *fl.* 100
Dolongi, *p.* 208
Dolopes, *p.* 200
Don, *fl.* 129
Donaire, *p.* 7
Donawert, *u.* 59
Donchiery, *u.* 13
Dor t dreſtum, *u.* 20
Doris, *pr. u.* 195
Dorobiza, *u.* 162
Doroſtorum, *u.* 175
Dornick, *u.* 7
Dortmond, *u.* 45
Doſina, *fl.* 133
Dotricum, *u* 28
Dove, *u.* 11
Donge, *fl.* 18
Doway, *u.* 7
Dray, *fl.* 65
Draun, *fl.* *ib.*
Drauus, *fl.* 65, 161
Drebnicz, *fl.* 146
Drent, *pr.* 24
Dreſden, *u.* 88
Driana, *fl.* 160
Drinus, *fl.* *ib.*
Drimago, *u.* 175
Drionis, *pr.* 209
Droit, *u.* 145
Dromos, *inf.* 211
Druſomagus, *u.* 59
Duacum, *u.* 7
Dubin, *u.* 141
Duerin, *u.* 43
Duerſted *u.* 18
Duglubini, *p.* 95
Duiffele, *u.* 43
Duina, *fl.* 140
Duisberg, *u.* 43
Duiſlake, *u.* 45
Dunamund, *u.* 141
Dulichium, *inf.* 220
Dulſigno, *u.* 162
Durazzo, *u.* 198
Duringen, *pr.* 89
Dunkirk, *u.* 6
Dunort, *u.* 100
Durengerwold, *m. n.* 89
Durrach, *u.* 75
Duro, *fl.* 53
Duſſel *fl.* 43
Duſſeldorp, *u.* 44
Duveland, *inf.* 23
Dwina, *pr. u.* 135 *fl.* 130
Dyctymeum, *c.* 213
Dyle, *fl.* 17
Dyhe, *u.* 181
Dyriachium, *u.* 198

Lib. III.

Dabarath, *u.* 71
Dacaſotore, *u.* 202
Dache, *pr.* 148
Darma, *u.* 76
Daiuta, *u.* 15
Daix, *fl.* 169
Dala, *u.* 217
Dalaque, *inf.* 106
Dalmanutha, *u.* 69
Daman, *u.* 202
Damanum, *inf.* 106
Damaſcus, *u.* 53
Aram Damaſec, *p.* 52
Damaſi, *m.* 211
Dammana, *u.* 148
Damma, *u.* 173
Damoan, *u.* 241
Damuſi, *m.* 193
Dan, *fl.* 61. 78. *pr.* 75
Danager, *u.* 202
Daonas, *fl.* 211
Daphne, *u.* 48
Daphnis, *fl.* 68
Dapiro, *u.* 221
Dara, *fl.* 145
Darandæ, *p.* 147
Darapſa, *u.* 169
Dardamana, *u.* 151
Dardania, *u.* 182
Dargamanis, *fl.* 149
Daritis, *pr.* 144
Dathema, *u.* 64
Daunis, *u.* 224
Daxata, *u.* 174
Dea-chow, *u.* 145
Debir, *u.* 76
Debrices, *p.* 139
Decan, *p. u.* 146, 202
Decapolis, *pr.* 65
Delanguere, *m.* 126
Delaque, *inf.* 106
Delly, *pr. u.* 199
Demerecan, *u.* 135
Derbo, *u.* 22
Derbent, *u.* 131
Derbiciæ, *p.* 153

Diamma, fl. 194
Dian. u. 217
Dianga. u. ib.
Diarbeck. pr. 117
Diargument pr. 152
Dianus. fl. 116
Diblatham. u. 63
Didymi. m. 105
Dihon. u. 65
Dilop. fl. 3
St. Dimitri, u. 15
Dindimus. m. 14
Diahalah. u. 82
Dio Cæsaria. u. 9
Dionyſiopolis. u. 226
Diopolis. u. 24
Dioſcoris. inſ. u. 128
Dioſcuriaſſu. u. 132
Dioſpolis. u. 5
Diu. u. 201
Doceti u. 199
Dogana. u. 226
Doliche. inſ u. 50
Don. fl. 162
Dora. u. 73
Dorias. fl. 211
Doris. pr. 20
Doroacana. u. 149
Doryleum. u. 13
Dothan. u. 70
Drachamæ, p. 150
Dragorian. u. 225
Dragiana. pr. 147
Drangius. fl. ib.
Drepanum. c. 677. u. 34
Drepſa u. 169
Droſack. u. 174
Dryllophitæ. p. 196
Dryuſa. inſ. 36
Duckec. caſt. 198
Dulcinda. pr. 197
Dulſinda. pr. 198
Dymnus fl. 169

Lib. IV.

Dactylorum, Regio. 42
Daſila. pr. 54
Ladies Dale. pr. 104
Daleſgiſt. u. 97
Damiata. u. 10
Damota. pr. 50
Damut. p. u. 53
Dande. fl. 65
Dangala. u. 48
Dangali. pr. u. 55
Daphnis. inſ. 69
Dara. fl. pr. 43
Daradus. fl. 41
Darien. u. pr. fl. 121
Darorum Vicus. u. 52
Davis. fretum. 158
Daum. pr. 48
Debris. u. 43
Delgado. c. 121
Delgumaba. u. 31
Deliſha. u. 70
Delo. c. 138
Delta. pr. 9
Deorum Currus, m. 41
Derbici. p. 42
Deſconoſſida. inſ. 116
Deſire. port. 133
Deſſeada. inſ. 148. c. 160
Deyme. fl. 33
Diagnitas. pr. 135
Diagnitæ. p. 136
Don Diego. fl. 123
Digget. inſ. 107
Dimetris. c. 51
Porto de Dio. u. 45
Diori. inſ. 69
Dionyſius. u. 11
Dios. m. 24
Dioſcoridis. inſ. 70
Dioſcorum, portus. u. 51
Dioſpolis. u. 12
Divels. inſ. 98
Diur. m. fl. 30
Dobas pr. u. 55
Docano. c. u. 55
Docono. c. u. ib.
Dominica. inſ. 148
Domingo. fl. 139
St. Domingo. inſ. u. 151
Doradæ. p. 128
Dracontias. inſ. 39
Boca del Draga. fret. 144
Dubdu. u. 34
Ducala. p. 32
Dulce. ſ. 117
Durango. u. 107
Durdus, m. 30

Lib. I.

East Angles. 266
Saxons. 266
Eblana. u. 292
Ebora. u. 233
Eboracum. u. 162
Ebro. fl. 214
Ebrodunum. u. 91
Ebudæ. inſ. 298
Eburones. p. 165
Ebuſa, inſ. u. 143
Eccia. u. 223
Eclini. inſ. 300
Ecque. fl. 187
Edri. inſ. 300
Eden. fl. 268
Edenburg. u. 284
Editani p. 240
St. Edmunsbury. 262
Egbaud. fl. 184
Egeſta. u. 76
Elba. inſ. 115
Elamites. p. 8
Elizabeth fl. 197
Elvire. m. 227
Elwy. fl. 277
Elwyenſes. p. 275
Ely. inſ. u. 267
Auguſta, Eremita. u. 225
Emonia. u. 105
Emporia. u. 241
Engaden. p. 146
England. R. 251
Engoliſmenſes. p. 179
Enlhy, or Edri, inſ. 300
Enna u. 74
Ens. u. 64
Ephintia. l. 73
Epiacum. u. 262
Epidia. inſ. 298
Eporedia. u. 132
Equilina. inſ. 106
Erdini. p. 295
Eres. inſ. 296
Eresberg. c. 130
Ericoſu. inſ. 76
Eridanus. fl. 24
Erix. u. 74
Erotenus. fl. 102
Eſchas. u. 192
Eſcurial. mon. 232
Eskedan. pr. 284
Eſparrez. u. 180
Eſſex. pr. 266
Eſſiles. u. 191
Eſſons. fl 156
Eſtampes. u. 157
Eſte. u. 108
Eſtelle. u. 215
Eſterac. pr. 181
Eſtienno. u. 174
Eſtrange. u. 188
St. Evaſius. u. 128
Eubariades. p. 118
Eubonia. inſ. 298
Euganei. p. 104
Eugubium. u. 83
St. Euphemia. u. 66
Eunymos. inſ. 76
Eureux. u. fl. 165
Europa. 30
Euſedale. 285
Ewe. u. 165
Ex. fl. u. 266
Exeter. u. ibid.
Extremadura. pr. 225
Eyn. fl. 293

Lib. II.

Ebelo. inſ. 111
Eburones. p. 170
Eegrodzerco. u. 145
Echedorus. fl. 201
Echinades. inſ. 219
Echinu. u. 196
Echinuſa. inſ. 213
Echterwald. n. 2
Edam. u. 21
Eder. fl. 97
Edil. fl. 130
Edonis. pr. 201
Eger. fl. 76
Egholm. inſ. 109
Egmond. u. 21
Egverden. u. 102
Egra fl 77. u. 78
Einbeck. fl. 124
Eiſenbetg. u. 97
Eiſhimp. fl. 88
Eiſted. u. 76
Elatra. u. 193
Elb. fl. 38
Elbering. u. 147
Elbing. fl. 146
Elbogen. u. 78, 112
Elcebas. u. 53
Elcoln u. 120
Elderſtadt. u. 107
Eleuſis. u. 189
Eleuthera, u. 216
Elis. pr. u. 182
Ellemanberg. m. 87
Elſat Savern u. 53
Elſatz. pr. 52
Elſinure. u. 110
Elſter. fl. 88
Elenaw fl. 95
Elyſia. pr. inſ. 149
Elzeburg. u. 120
Emathia. p. 199
Emathus. fl. 198
Embretſtein. u. 48
Embden. pr. u. 100
Ems. fl. 4
Emmerick. u. 43
Enageræ. p. 124
Enchuiſen. u. 21
Endele. inſ. 111
Enge. pr. 48
Engerne pr. u. 98
De Engia ſ. 186
Engie. inſ 212
Enghien. u. 10
Engleberg. caſt. 54
Enguodine. u. 168
Eningia. u. 262
Enipeus. fl. 180
Ens. fl. 65
Enſchide. u. 25
Enſheim. u. 53
Enſiſheim. u. ib.
Ensberch. u. 44
Entz. fl. 75
Eperia. u. 154
Ephyra u. 187
Epicaria. u. 198
Epicidnus. fl. 216
Epicnemidii. p. 193
Epidamnum. u. 198
Epidaurus. u. 184, 186
Epirus. pr. 198
Equarttru. u. 101
Ercunealis. pr. 155
Erdenberg. u. 92
Erdford. u. 89
Erdol. m. 153
Erfrae. fl. 44
Eribos. u. 211
Eribæa. u. 201
Erigon. fl. 180
Erineus. u. 195
Erithinus. inſ. 209
Eritheæ. u. 216
Ernace. u. 48
Erp. fl. 44
Erſpruch. u. 76
Eryſſa. u. 202
Eſca. fl. 97
Eſcheburg. C. 111
Eſchewego. u. 97
Don Eſchingen. u. 63
Eſdan. u.
Eſen. u. 100
Eſling. u. 66, 74
Eſpinal. u. 55
Eſſendia. u. 44
Eſtii. p. 141
Eſtiones. p. ib.
Eſtiotis. pr. 200
Eſtland. pr. 141
Etchterwald. n. 4
Euantia, u. 194
Eubæa. inſ. 210
Euenus. fl. 195
Euonus. inſ. 211
Europus. n. 201
Euroras. fl. 183
Euxinus Portus. 201
Eydore. fl. 107
Eyphalia. pr. 44
Ezfat. fl. 43
Ezling. u. 71

Lib. III.

Eaſis. u. 147
Ebuſmi. u. 153
Ecbatana. u. 140
Eden. u. 53
Edeſſe. u. 118
Edi. fl. 165
Edom. pr. 83
Edonis. u. 14
Edoo. u. 220
Edre. u. 67
Egra. u. 105
Egrigaia. pr. 178
Einegiol. u. 13
Elam. pr. 139
Elama. u. 101
Elancorum. u. 194
Elaſa. u. 82
Eldemæi. p. 142
Elea. u. ſ. 16
Elere. u. 66
Eleſari. p. 107
Eleutheropolis. u. 77
Eleutherus fl. 41
St. Elieroe. 29
Elinticus. ſ. 105
Eliſæi. p. 149
Elkatif. ſ. 107
Eltor. u. 106
Elymæi. p. 142
Elymais. u. 143
Emaus. u. 77
Emeſa. u. 48
Emmines. p. 61
Enhadda. u. 71
Ennodorus. m. 174
Endor. u. 71
Engaddi. m. 76
Eoritæ. p. 148
Epheſus. u. 17
Ephra. u. 67, 72
Ephraim. p. 71
Ephron. u. 63
Epictetus. pr. u. 13
Epidaphne. u. 51
Epiphania. u. 25, 48
Epiſcopio. u. 35
Erech. u. 143
Eres. u. 140
Erethræa. mare. 106
Ergimul. pr. 176
Eri. pr. u. 149
Ervan. u. 128
Erythra. u. 17
Erzyrum. u. 9
Eſechia. u. 128
Eſion-Geber. u. 91
Ethiopia. pr. 89
Ethrea. inſ. 33
Euchatæ. u. 28
Encratidia. u. 153
Euergetæ. p. 148
Eulæus. fl. 142
Eupateria. u. 165
Euphrates. fl. 41, 126
Euphrateneis. pr. 52
Euphrateſia. pr. ib.
Europus. u. 149
Eurymedon. fl. 23
Euxi num. mare. 3

Lib. IV.

Eboacah: u. 43
Egypt. R. 3
Cuſar Elcaber. u. 34
Elephanti. u. 13
Elephas. m. 30
Elgiumuba. u. 31
El-habar. pr. 34
Elizabeth, inſ. 133. c. 158
Elmedina u. 32
Elmuriden. u. ib.
Elvinina, u. ib.
Embroe. pr. 60
Ende. u. 107
Enganno. c. 105, 150
New England. pr. 95
Englands Foreſt. inſ. 71
Enſeada grande. u. 90
Epitheſius. u. 51, 55
Erena. u. 107
Erithea bolus. u. 10
Eroico. u. 55
Erriſia. p. 9
Eriphia. inſ. 34
Eſchatica. pr. 2
Eſcondida. fl. 152
Eſer. u. 52
Eſſequebo. fl. 140
Eſſina. u. 51, 56
Eſtero. u. 136
Eſtero. fl. 135
Eſtotiland. pr. 90
Eſza. u. 32
Etechimines. p. 93
Ethiad. u. 32
Evangeliorum portus. u. 52
Euphrauta. u. 25
Eythia. inſ. 34
Ezaggen. u. ib.
Ezo. u. 32
Ezzab. pr. 25

The TABLE.

Lib. I.

Faenza, *u.* 80
Fage, *fl.* 175
Faigueres, *u.* 182
Faire Foreland, *c.* 293
Faire Iſle, *inſ.* 297
Falaiſe, *u.* 164
Falaris, *u.* 112
Faliſci, *p.* *ibid.*
Falkland, *u.* 284
Falmouth, *u.* 266
Fano, *u.* 83
Fanum S. Brioſi, *u.* 169
Deſiderii, 159
Fortunæ, *u.* 84
Reguli, *u.* 281
Farfarus, *fl.* 83
Farneſe, *u.* 86
Farneſſus, *u.* 243
Faro, *u.* 234
Fauciana, *inſ.* 76
Faventia, *u.* 80
Favognana, *inſ.* 75
Fayal, *inſ.* 237
St. Felix, *u.* 86
Felſina, *u.* 89
Felteia, *u.* 103
La Fere, *u.* 163
Ferentani, *p.* 63
Feriolds, *u.* 187
Ferneze, *u.* 87
Ferrara, *pr.* 79. *u.* 580
Ferraria: *c.* 237
Fermanath, *pr.* 293
La Fert, *u.* 171
Feſulæ, *u* 113, 115
Fienner, *u.* 161
Febres, *u.* 173
Fidenates, *p.* 71
Fife, *pr.* 282
Finale, *u.* 115
Fino, *u.* *ibid.*
Fior, *fl.* 80
Auguſta Firmia, *u.* 223
Firmo, *u.* 84
Flaminia, *pr.* 80
Flannaticus Sinus, 104
Flatholme, *inſ.* 299
Flavia Cæſarienſis, *p* 263
Flaviobriga, *u.* 218
Flavionavie, *u.* 220
Flaviomagentium *u* 222
La Fleſch, *u.* 169
Flint, *pr.* 275
Florence. *pr.* 112. *u.* 113
Flores, *inſ.* 234
Floure, *u.* 174
Fluſcares, *p.* 181
Foglio, *fl.* 79
Foix, *pr. u* 180, 181
Fomenay, *u.* 160
Fonterabia, *u.* 218
Forcelli, *inſ.* 79
Forlimpoli, *u.* 80
Formicæ, *inſ.* 114
Formiæ, *u. fl.* 104
Fornaces, *fl.* 102
De Foro, *c.* 72
Fortore, *inſ.* 63
Forreſt, 114
Forum Cornelii, *u.* 80
Julii, *pr.* 104
Julium, *u.* 183
Livii, *u.* 80
Secuſianorum 192
Sempronii, *u.* 88
Foſſa Claudia, *inſ.* 107
Foſſe-mariana, *fl.* 187
Foſſigni, *p.* 134
Foſſombrune, *u.* 83
Fountainbleau, *u.* 158
Le Foure, *u.* 167
Foy, 183
France, *R.* 148. *inſ.* 158
Franchevile, *u.* 192
Franciſcopolis, *u.* 167
Franks, *p.* 198
Francolino, *fl.* 241
Fraxinetum, *caſt.* 128
Fregou, *u.* 183
French Country, *pr.* 193
Friburg, *u.* 140
Firuli, *p.* 103
Froome, *fl.* 264
Fronſac, *u.* 180
Fronſadaze, *p.* *ibid.*
Frumentaria, *inſ.* 242
Fluentes, *caſt.* 146
Furcæ Caudinæ, 61
Die Furcken, *p.* 136
Furlii, *u.* 80
Fuxium, *u.* 181

Lib. II.

Fabiana, *u.* 65
Faborch, 111
De Fangd, *n.* 9
Falza, *fl.* 83
Falconora, *inſ.* 214
Falkenburgh, *u.* 81
Falkendorch, *u.* 112
Falkenſtein, *u.* 67
Falſtre, *inſ.* 111
Faucities, *m.* 38
Fauverno, *pr.* 4
Fauquemont, *u.* 16
Fazeling, *u.* 170
Fetcht, *fl.* 53
Feder Zee, *l.* 70
Femeren, *inſ.* 111
Fenuſchium, *u.* 168
Feichtelberg, *m.* 76
Ferrete, *pr.* 54
La Ferte, *u.* 13
Fivekerken, *u.* 155
Figulo, *c.* 209
Fineca, *u.* 154
Fimera, *inſ.* 111
Finland, *pr.* 122
Finmarch, *pr.* *ibid.*
Finni *p.* *ibid.*
Finiſh Sea, 111
Fionia, *inſ.* *ibid.*
Fitchtel, *u.* 86
Flaccia, *pr.* 171
Flackgulph, 22
Flanaticus, *ſ.* 160
Flanders, *pr.* 5
Flammegant 6
Gallicant, 7
Imperial, *ib.*
Flavana, *u.* 163
Flensburg, *u.* 109
Floren, *u.* 11
Florenge, *u.* 16
Fluſhing, *u.* 22
Follen, *u.* 67
Forechein. 72
Foſſa Druſiana, 27
Franconia Frankenland, 72
Franchemont, *u.* 15
Franekar, *u.* 23
Frankenberg, *u.* 97
Frankendale, *u.* 50
Frankford, *u.* 73, 83
Frawenberg, *u.* 146
Fraxinum, *u.* 62
Fredeborch, 98
Fredericksberg, *u.* 110
Frederickſtead, *u.* 114
Freezland, *inſ. u.* *ib.*
Freiſtat, 65
Freiſach, *u.* 66
Frieſland Weſt, 23
East 100
Freſtad, *u.* 62
La Frette, 13
Friberg, *u.* 69
Friburg, *u.* 59, 88
Fridburg, *u.* 62
Fridland, *u.* 86
Frilchhaſſe, *ſ.* 147
Friſii, *pr.* 24
Majores, *p.* 26
Minores, 4
Friſing, *u.* 62
Friſlar, *u.* 96
Friſons, *pr.* 23
Fucciania, *u.* 170
Fuinen, *inſ.* 111
Fuld, *u. fl.* 97
Fulmina, *fl.* 171
Funium, *u.* 161
Furſtenburg, *u.* 59

Lib. III.

Famaguſta, *pr. u.* 35
Fanfur, *u.* 225
Farabant, *u.* 152
Faſiſtan, *pr.* *ib.*
Faſſum, *u.* 129
Fatepore, *u.* 199
Favagoria, *u.* 6
Fauſtinopolis, *u.* 9
Felech, *u.* 225
Fenoiama, *u.* 220
Fernathis Rupes, 109
Feutibari, *u.* 199
Figere, *p.* 220
Figenoiam, *m. u.* *ibid.*
Fienga, *u.* *ibid.*
Firande, *u.* *ibid.*
Flavia Cæſaria, *pr.* 74
Firma-ſura, *u.* 51
Flaviopolis, *u.* 5
Focheau, 186
Foquien, *pr.* 182
Formola, *inſ.* 219
Good Fortune, *inſ.* 210
Frat, *inſ.* 126

Lib. IV.

Fairland, *inſ.* 159
Haven. 158
Falſo, *c.* 65
Porto Famine 133
Fanzara, *u.* 32
Fatigar, *pr. u.* 56
Ferarum Ptolemais, *u.* 50
Fernambuck, *pr.* 138
John Fernandes, *inſ.* 148
Fernandina, *inſ.* 152
Ferro, *inſ.* 73
Fell, *c.* 55
Feſſan, *u.* 14
Feſſe, *pr. u.* 30
Feſſen, *pr. u.* 43
St. Fides, *u.* 124, 135
Fighig, *pr. u.* 43
Terra Firma, *pr.* 210
De Flores, *fl.* 99
Florida, *pr.* *ib.*
Del Fogo, *inſ.* 73
Fonduras, *c.* 117
Fonſeca, *ſ.* *ibid.*
Formoſo, *c.* 160
Portus Formoſus, 158
Fortunatæ, *inſ.* 65
Fonchial, *u.* 74
St. Foy, *u.* 135, 108, 110, 126
Port, 146
Nova Francia, 92
St. Francis, *inſ.* 70, 650 *fl.* 112, *u.* 140
St. Franciſco, *u.* 128, 130
Port de Franciſco Draco, *c.* 106
Bay Francois, *ſ.* 91, 139
Franco Roy, *fl.* 93
Tres Fratres, *inſ.* 70
Frobiſhers *freſum.* 158
De Frontera, *u.* 108, 117
Froward, *c.* 133
Terra de Fuego, *inſ.* 158
Fuerte Ventura, *inſ.* 74
Fuerte, *inſ.* 121

G.

Lib. I.

Gabales, *p.* 185
Gabii, *u.* 87
Goda, *fl.* 231
Gadeni, *p.* 285
Gades, *inſ.* 214
Gaditanum, *freſum*, 228
Gaham, *u.* 275
St. Gal, *u.* 141
Gallaici, *p.* 239
Gallankter, *u.* 145
Gallatia, *pr.* 148
Gallego, *fl.* 244
Gallia, *R.* 148
Braccata, *pr.* 156
Celtica, *pr.* 171
Ciſalpina, 122
Comata, *pr.* 155
Togata, *pr.* 124
Tranſalpina, 148
Gallicanum, *m.* 60, 61
Gallicia, *pr.* 212
Gallinaria, *inſ.* 115
Gallipolis, *u.* 66
Gallipſo, *inſ.* 294
Galoway, *p. u.*
Gandia, *u.* 240
Galpe, *m.* 223
Gangani, *p.* 297
Gappe, *u.* 191
Garcia, *fl.* 103
De Garda, *l.* 102
Gardon, *fl.* 174
Garesbrook, *u. f.* 300
Garganes, *m.* 64
Gariglia, *fl.* 60
Garmond *fl.* 154, 180
Garumna,
Garuine, *fl.* 220
Gaſcoign, *pr.* 180
Gaſties, *p.* 192
Gaſtinois, *p.* 157
Gauſonnæ, *u.* 262
Gebenna, *m.* 156
Gela, *u.* 68
Gelo, *fl.* 120
Genabum, *u.* 171
Genueva, *u.* 136
Genoa, *u.* 117
Genſer, *l.* 139
St. Georges, *inſ. u.* 234
Gergenti, *u.* 74
St. Germans, *u.* 158
Gergovia, *u.* 174
Gernſey, *inſ.* 297
Geſſoraicus portus, *u.* 165
Gevio, *p.* 263
Gez, *fl.* 184
Gibralter, *u.* 223
Gigari, *p.* 220
Giglio, *inſ.* 115
St. Gillis, *u.* 187
Giroune, *u.* 241
Giacii, *p.* 266
Giſors, *u.* 164
Glamorgan, *p.* 277
Glanum, *u.* 187
Glaris, *p.* 140
Glaſco, *u.* 284
Glevum, *u.* 261
Gloceſter. 261
Glotra, *fretum*, 283
Gobannium, *u.* 376
Godmancheſter, 262
Godmandin, *u.* 367
Godmanham, *u.* *ibid.*
Golfo de Squillacy, *ſ.* 66
Gombes, *p.* 138
Gorgona, *inſ.* 115
Gothicana, *p.* 184
Govæum, *prom*, 167
La Grace, *u.* 187
Grade, *inſ.* 106
Graffignan, *u.* 81
Graiiæ, *m.* 130
Grampius, *m.* 284
Granada, *pr. u.* 227
Grant, *fl.* 266
Gratianopolis, *u.* 191
Gratioſa, *inſ.* 234
Graunpunter, *pr.* 145
Gray, *u.* 195
Grenade, *u.* 281
Grenoble, *u.* 191
Griſſinaudare, *p.* *ibid.*
Griſons, *p.* 145
Groine, *u.* 222
Guadalander, *fl.* 240
Guadalcanal, *u.* 225
Guadalquioir, *fl.* 210, 223
Guadalupe, *u.* 225
Guadarama, *fl.* *ibid.*
Guadiana, *fl.* 233
Guadix, *u.* 227
Guallena, *u.* 266
Gualne, *u.* 234
St. Gueemier, *u.* 174
Guernica, *u.* 218
Guetaria, *u.* *ibid.*
Guienne, *pr.* 180
Guilford, 265
Guipuſcoa, *pr.* 217
Guiſe, *u.* 163
Guiſnes, *p.* 161, 162
Guiſors, *u.* 165
Guith, *inſ.* 301
Gurdes, *p.* 138
Gymnaſiæ, *inſ.* 244
Gyreſoem, *u.* 229

Lib. II.

Gabraſſe, *c.* 214
Gabreta, *u.* 38
Gadzick, *u.* 145
Galatia, *u.* 175, 204
Galatz, *u.* 171
Galindæ, *p.* 147
Gamelgard, *u.* 111
Gandavum, *u.* 6
Gardlake, *l.* 55
Gargapol, *u.* 135
Gariſcus, *u.* 201
Gaudos, *u.* 218
Gaulos, *inſ.* *ibid.*
Gaunt, *u.* 6
Gaurode, *inſ. u.* 22
Gaurigoth, *pr.* 124
Gebwiler, *u.* 93
Gedanum, *u.* 148
Gelt, *fl.* 17
Geiſen, *u.* 97
Gela, *u.* 168
Gelderland. *pr.* 25
Gerdeleben, 83

The TABLE.

Geldres, u. 25
Gemand, u. 59, 72
Germerſhheim, u. 50
Gemunder Zee, l. 65
Gennappe, u. 19
Gengenbacke, 59
Genechiſar, u. 209
Gergenbael, u. 59
Gennep, u. 43
St. Georges arme, c. 205
St, Georgio, u. 171
Gepping, u. 74
Gerapetra, u. 217
Gerbrevillier, u. 55
Mons Gerhard, u. 7
Germania inferior, 1
prima, 2
ſecunda, 2
Germany, 32
Gernia, u. 123
Gerno, inſ. 116
Gerhard, m. 7
Gers, inſ. 89
Gerſpach, u. 75
Gertrutenberg, u. 17
Gerulits, u. 22
Geſeke, u. 98
Geſoduuum, u. 65
Geſtricia, pr. 122
Gethern, u. 95
Ghent, u. 25
Ginſtandil, u. 175
Glacialis Oceanus, u. 115
Glan, fl. 65
Glatz, u. 81
Glogow, u. ibid.
Glackſtadt, u. 107
Gmand, u. 59
Gmund, u. 65
Gnoſſus, u. 116
Goes, u. 22
Golberg, u. 120
Goldengen, u. 141
Golo, u. inſ. 218
Gomerini, p. 39
Gomphy, u. 200
Gopla, l. 148
Gorichom, u. 20
Goritz, u. 66
Gorlitz, u. 82
Goſe, fl. 96
Goſlar, u. 94
Gotha, u 89
Gothini, p. 81
Gothlani, p. inſ. 120
Gothones, p. 121
Gotenburg, u. ibid.
Gotorp, c. 109
Goteberg, u. 89
Goude, u. 20
Grabatz, u. 91
Gradiſco, u. 80, 161
Gragingliac, u. 72
Gran, u. 154
Granmont, u. 7
Grandric, ſ. 134
Granionarum, u. 72
Granii, p. 124
Grans, u. 54
Grave, u. 17
Graveling, u. 6
Gravenhague, u. 21
Gravoſa, inſ. 164
Gratz, u. 65
Greece, pr. 178
Greenland, inſ. 115
Greek Weſſemburg, ibid.
Grict, ibid.
Grieſthuſen, u. 43
Grienengen, u. 74
Griffenberg, 85
Grinbergen, u. 17
Griſons, p. 60
Gripſwald, u. 85
Grodeck, u. 145
Grodna, u. 143
Groining, pr. u. 26
Grol, u. 26
Groneberg, u. 107
Gronsfolden, u. 76
Groyſholm, inſ. 110
Grubenhagen, u. 94
Grubin, u. 141
Gruminſton, u. 90
Grumwald, u. 143
Guelderland, pr. 25
Guelna, u. 148
Gulike, pr. u. 43
Gurch, u. 66
Gurdleben, u. 83
Gutæ, p. 112
Gyaros, inſ. 213
Gyrgio, pr. 168
Gythones, p. 147
Gyula, u. 155

Lib. III.

Gabala, u. 70
Gabela, u. 47
Gaber, u, 74
Gad, pr. 65
Gadara, u. 53, 67
Gades, c. 50
Gaguamela, u.
Galaad, m. 57
Galactophagi, p. 171
Galatia, pr. 8
Salutaris, pr. 9
Galile, pr. 68
Gentium, ibid.
Galle, u. 227
Gallim, u. 63
Gallo Græcia, pr. 8
Gammala, pr. 68
Galthi, p. 227
Gammararis, u. 85
Gandes, fl. 226
Gandarides, p. 195
Gangæni, p. ibid.
Gangeraco, fl. 206
Ganges, fl. 194
Gangra, u. 7
Gannape, inſ. 221
Garduacrata, pr. 10
Gargaſa, u. 166
Garizim, m. 62
Garnace, u. 10
Gates, m. 176, 194
Gath, u. 77
Gattabaon, u. 224
Gatte, c. 50
Gaulanitis, pr. 118
Gaulon, u. 67
Gaulonitis, pr. 69
Gauzania, u. 140
Gaza, u. 215. fl. 175
Gazaca, u. 149
Gebah, u, 78
Gebala, u. 48
Eſion Geber, u. 199
Gedroſia, pr. 145, 147
Gegiamela, u. 116
Gelan, u. 140
Genech, pr. 11
Geneſareth, u. l. 71, 81
Genonia, u. 151
Caput Gentis, u. 128
St. George, 75, 80
Georgia, pr. 131
Caſtle Gera, u. 44
Geranæi, pr. 175
Gerar, u. 76
Geraſa, u. 53, 67
Gergeſits, p. 68
Geris, u. 37
Germanicia, u. 50
Germanopolis, u. 7
Sari-Germanum, u. 164
German, 163
Gerra, u. 66
Gerræi, p. 67
Gerri, p. 168
Gerrus, fl. 130
Gerus, fl. 163
Geruſa, u. 166
Geſſut, pr. 67. u. 68
Geſt, pr. u. 147
Getarra, u. 131
Geth, u. 74
Gezer, u. 51
Gibbethon, u. 78
Gibeah, u. ibid.
Gibeon, u. ibid.
Gihon, fl. 110
Gilboa, m. 62
Gilead, m. 57
Ramoth, u. 66
Gilgal, u. 78
Gilolo, inſ. 222
Gingi, u. 207
Giſcala, u. 70
Gliſca, u. 130
Goa, u. 203
Gochatta, u. 145
Golchonda, u. 207
Gomorrha, u. 61
Gonſiar, inſ. 107
Gonza, u. 174
Gordiæi, m. 126
Gordiene, pr. 126
Gordium, u. 13
Gorgos, fl. 115
Gorneas, u. 11
Gouren, pr. u. 209
Goure, u. 209
Goyaam, u. 145
Gozalvia, u. 6
Gozan, fl. 141
Porto Grande, u. 208
Granicus, fl. 43, 14
De Griego, c. 50
Grynei, p. 168
Guadarino, c. 208
Guangen, fl. ibid.
Gueone, u. 215
Gunbroone, u. 146
Gupi, p. 175
Guttu-negar-tutta, u. 101
Guzarate, pr. ibid.
Gwaliare, pr. u. 200

Lib. IV.

Gamara, u. 42
Gachepo, u. 93
Gaia, inſ. 39
Gago, u. 46
De Galeza, 106
Galeſcho, pr. 128
Gallæ, p. 63
Gallant Zee, 133
Gallicia Nova, p. 108
Del Galle, inſ. 124. ſ 104
Gambra Cambere, pr. fl. 46
Gamoſaphantis, pr. 2
Gampſaphantis, pr. 42
Ganabra, ſ. 138
Gangomar, u. 71
Gaoga, pr. 47
Garamantes, p. 42
Garas, m. 22
Garaſu, u. 139
Garbala, m. 56
Don Garcea, inſ. 70
Garet, pr. 34
Gariphi, m. 22
Garunna, fl. 99
Gaſpe, u. 93
Gau {ſdus / los / dice} inſ. 39
Gaurus, m. 50
Gayra, fl. 121
Gebbe, u. 35
Gebelelhudic. c. 31
St. Gemar, fl. 25
St. George, fl. 91, 95, c. 133
De Mina, u. 49
Olanco, u. 118
Gerbe, inſ. 39
St. Germans, u. 150
Gerrapolis, u. 39
Geryonis, inſ. 34
Getuli, p. 42
Gevetlan, u. 116
Gezeir, u. 28
Gheneoa, pr. 46
Ghir, deſ. 44
Giabel u. 54
Giacchi, p. 63
Giloſi, p. 46
Ginnamera, pr. u. 52
Gi {gion / llius / eiſon} m. 24 c. 31
Gir, fl. 42
Gira, u. 42
Girgitis, m. ibid.
Giumba, u. 34
Glauconis, inſ. 39
Gleba rubra, u. 10
Gogden, deſ. 44
Gogia, u. 57
Goiamy, pr. 54
Goletta, fl. 25
Golfo trieto, ſ. 145
Gomadeæ, inſ. 69
Gomara, m. 42
Velez de Gomerena, u.
Gomero, inſ. 74
Gomeribo, u. 143
Goniatæ, p. 14
Good Hope, c. 65
Gopiapo, u. 131
Virgo Gordæ, inſ. 149
Gargades, inſ. 73
Gorgona, inſ. 124
Goſhen, pr. 9
Gothan, pr. 48
Goza, u. 37
Granada, u. 103, 118
inſ. 148
Nova, pr. 125
Grande, fl. 99, 134. p. 139
De Grat, c. 98
Gratias de dios, u.
Gratioſa, inſ. 74
Greenland, pr. 158
Grijalva, ſ. 114
Guadiabo, fl. 150
Guacapa, fl. 117
Guadalaira, pr. 108
Guadalcanal, inſ. 150
Guadallanguen, u. 132
Guadalupe, inſ. 149
Guadiana, pr. 110
Guadilharber, l. 25
Guagaquil, fl. 127
Guagere, pr. 52
Guagyda, u. 29
Guahaka, pr. 151
Guahanani, inſ. 152
Gualata, pr. 45
Gualili, u. 33
Guamanga, u. 130
Guanakani, inſ. 101
Guancabelica, u. 130
Guagara, pr. 47
Guaniba, u. 144
Guanica, u. 150
Guanima, inſ. 100
Guanuca, pr. 129
Guaranyes, p. 136
Guardaſu, c. 55
Guarga, fl. 30
Guargata, u. 38
Guaſtecan, pr. 110
Guatopori, fl. 122
Guaiape, fl. 118
Guarco, u. 129
Guapii, fl. 136
Guatemela, pr. 116, 117
Guatulco, u. 114
Guaxaca, pr. u. ibid.
Guaxanato, r. 110
Guaxarapi, p. 136
Guaxocingo, u. 114
Guaya curoes, p. 136
Guayamo, m. 150
Guayngareo, u. l. 111
Guayaquil, u. 128
Guaybiamo, u. 135
Guaymuri, p. 138
Guayra, u. 135
Guazacoalco, pr. 114
Guber, deſ. p u. 46
Guevelthan, u. 116
Gueztaxalta, pr. 114
Guglia, c. 65
De bona Guia, fl. 105
Guiana, p. 140. fl. 150
Guietta, inſ. 39
Guinea, pr. 46
Nova, pr. 160
Guirla, fl. 43
Gulata, u. 128
Guoga, l. 45
Gurguigarn, fl. 33
Gurngrut, fl. ibid.
Guxitamba, pr. 128
Guzculan, u. 117
Guzzula, pr. u. 51
Gypſeris, Gypſus, inſ. 59

H.

Lib. I.

HAbſpurg, u. 141
Hagge, c. 198
Haguſtade, 267
Halifax, ibid.
Hamme, c. 161
Han, u. 163
Hantſhire, pr. 262, 270
Harcourt, u. 165
Harflew, u. ibid.
Hartford, pr. 260, 270
Haſtings, u. 265
Haverford Weſt, 277
Hauredugrace, u. 165
Hebuda, inſ. 294
Hedui, p. 94
St. Helens, inſ. 300
Helna, u. 242
Helvii, p, 184
Heneti, p. 107
Heraclea, u. 72. inſ. 110
Herculanum, u. 60
Hercules, inſ. 79, 242
Herculeum fretum, 301
Hereford, pr. 262. u. 270
Herudford, u. 263
Heruli, u. 133
Heſperia, pr. 206
Heth, inſ. 297
Hetruria, pr. 111
Hurepoix, pr. 257
Hexam, 264
Hextold, ibid.

The TABLE.

Hey, u. 297. inf. 214
Hibernia, inf. 290
Hibrides, inf. 298
Hiero, inf. 75
Hieracum, inf. 79
St. Hilary, u. 197
Himera, fl. 78
Hirpini, p. 62
Hiſpalis, u. 224
Hiſpaniack, 207
Hiſtria, pr. 104
Holy croſs, 294
Holy head, 299
Holy Iſland, 301
St. Honoratus, inf. 106
Honflew, u. 165
Hueſca, u. 245
Huine, fl. 169
Humana, u. 85
Humber, fl. 252
Huntington, pr. 262. u. 270
Hurſt, C. 300
Hybla, u. m. 73
Hydra, fl. 103
Hydruntum, u. 64
Hypſa, fl. 73

Lib. II.

Habcay, u. 120
Haderſlave, u. 109
Hæmimontum, pr. 178
Hæmus, m. 177
Haffen, nia, u. 110
Haffenfort, u. 116
Hagenow, u. 53
Hagenſcheis, m. 74
Hagenſhow, C. 111
Hague, u. 21
Haibrum, u. 74
Hailbrun, 72
Haidenheim, 74
Haimburg, m. u. 65
Haine, fl. 9
Hainault, pr. ibid.
Hal, u. 67
Halar, u. 115
Halberſtadt, u. 95
Hale, u. 89
Halen pot, u. 141
Halitz, u. 145
Hall, u. 10
Hallandia, pr. 112
Hallin, pr. 124
Halmſtadt, u. 112
Hamburg, u. 107
Hamelen, m. u. 95
Hammar, u. 114
Hammone, u. 45
Haneret, p. 109
Hania, fl. 9
Hannoia, pr. ibid.
Hannover, u. 94
Hannow, pr. u. 69
Hanſholm, inf. 109
Haderwick, u. 25
Harland, pr. 241
Harlem, u. 21
Harlengen, u. 23
Harmanduri, pr. 89
Hartz, n. ibid.
Hartzholm, inf. 110
Haſe, fl. 101
Haſford, u. 49
Haſle, u. 53
Haſſia, pr. 96
Hatteren, u. 45
Hattem, u. 26
Hatroan, u. 155
Havel, fl. 83
Havelburg, 83
Hebrus, fl. 205
Hecatompolis, p, inf. 214
Hecke, m. 125
Hedinfort, u. 9
Hegow, pr. 58
Heidelberg, u. 50
Heidenkein, u. 74
Heininkſtre, u. 107
Helderung, u. 91
Helene, inf. 214
Helge, m. 197
Helice, u. 181
Helicon, m. 193
Hellas, pr. 178
Hellenis, inf. 111
Helleſpont, 209
Helmſtat, u. 94
Helſemberg, u. 112
Helſingellac, ne, u. 123
Helſingen, pr. 122
Helſingore, u. 119
Helverenx, p. 149
Helvoldi, p. 83
Hemodes, inf. 311
Henneberg, u. 73
Hennegow, pr. 9
Hephæſtias, u. 230
Heraclea, u. 201
Herbipolis, u. 72
Herborne, u. 69
Hercynia, u. 38
Hermanduri, p. 88
Hermanſtadt, opolis, u. 168
Hernia, c. 214
Herſpruck, 76
Heruli, p. 168
Hervorden, u. 89
Heſdin, u. 8
Heſſi, p. p. 97
Hetfeild, u. 95
Heuſden, u. 21
Hexholm, u. 132
Heydebui, u. 109
Heyſt, u. 26
Hiarance, inf. 109
Hielſo, u. 123
Hieraſus, fl. 167
Hierke, u. 16
Heldeſham, u. 94
Hilgenes, inf. 109
Hillinis, c. ibid.
Hildeloppen, u. 23
Hinſgagel, c. 111
Hiolm, inf. 109
Hipani, fl. 140
Hippium, pr. 186
Hippolit, u. 55
Hobenberg, u. 60
Hochberg, u. 59
Hoeſtadt, u. 72
Hoffe, u. 89
Hoffen, u. 154
Hoey, u. fl. 15
Hohenberg, caſt. 59
Hohenloe, u. 73
Hogerland, pr. 146
Holland, pr. 21
Holm, u. 122
Holſtein, pr. 106
Homberg, u. 98 fl. 100
Honte, inf. 384
Hormia, u. 201
Horne, u. 21
Horpach, u. 73
Hoſtela, l. 124
St. Hubert, u. 3
Huens, inf. 181
Hulbenrade, pr. 45
Huiſt, u. 7
Hungary, R. 152
Hunni, p. 156
Huris, u. 181
Huſem, u. 109
Huy, u. fl. 15
Hydruſa, inf. 212
Hymettus, m. 189
Hypata, u. 200
Hyperbotri, m. 130

Lib. III.

Habor, u. 141
Hadid, u. 82
Hadrinople, u. 52
Hadullan, u. 77
Hajacan, pr. 198
Hajin, u. 76
Halah, u. 141
Haleb, u. 69
Halicarnaſſus, u. 20
Halis, fl. 30 9
Hamadum, u. 139
Hamath, pr. 69. u. 47
Hamaxobii, p. 164
Hamones, 82
Hamſa, u. 38
Hamſe, u. 48
Hamſeu, u. 185
Hangehen, u. ibid.
Hapraraim, u. 71
Haran, u. 119
Hariſa, u. 82
Harman, fl. 163
Harmaſtis, u. 130
Harmozonta, c. 146
Harunda, fl. 194
Haſor, u. 69, 77
Hatchteth, u. 40
Havila, u. 161
Havilah, pr. 101
Hauran, u. 67
Hazor, u. 70
Hebræi, p. 58
Hebron, u. 76
Hecatompyle, u. 151
Helaus, u. 47
Helenopontus, pr. 6
Heliopolis, u. 52
Helleniſtæ, p. 258
Helleſpontus, pr. 14
Helmus, fl. 127
Helon, u. 73
Hena, u. 51
Hendes, u. 200
Heneti, p. 7
Heniochi, p. 126
Heptacometæ, p. 7
Heraclea, u. 5. 47
Hieraclea, ad Latmum, u. 25, 20
Heri, u. 149
Hermanaſſi, u. 6
Hermione, m. 57
Hermon, m. ibid. fl. 61
Hermoſa, inf. 221
Hermus, fl. 4, 18
Herodium, u. 80
Hesbon, u. 65
Heſelitts, pr. 167
Hethlan, u. 70
Heræa, u. 37
Chatiæ Henan, u. 70
Hiddekil, fl. 123
Hidero, fl. 143
Hieracum, inf. 106
Hierageræ, u. 15
Hierapolis, u. 13, 48
Hieruſalem, 78, 82
Hipanes, fl. 163
Hippici, m. 166
Hippocura, u. 194
Hippophagi, p. 168, 175
Hippus, m. 52, 66, 105, 67, fl. 128
Hiſpaan, u. 151
Hittits, pr. 89
Hivites, p. ibid.
Hivir, m. 65
Hodoca, u. 226
Hollandia Nova, inf. 211
Homerita, p. 107
Honan, pr. 170
Honorias, pr. 8
Hophra, u. 74
Hor, u. 63. m. 106
Horeb, m. 101
Horites, p. 87
Hunnes, p. 166
Hydaſpis, fl. 194
Hydriacus, fl. 145
Hyperborei, p. 168
Hyrcania, p. 151
Hippici, m. 165
Hyppophagi, 168. fret. 175

Lib. IV.

Haaman, u. 141
Habat, p. 30
Hacha, fl. pr. u. 122
Hackluits, c. 150
Haguata, fl. 117
Haina, fl. 151
Haity, inf. 150
Ham, pr. 3
Ham-Liſnan, u. 34
Hantera, u. 31
Hareſgol, u. 29
Harroba, pr. 108
Haſcora, pr. 32
Hatibonico, fl. 151
Hatuncolla, u. 130
Havana, u. 152
Hawkins Mayden-land, 159
Hea, pr. 31
St. Helena, inf. 72. u. 100 c. 128
Heliopolis, u. 10
Hemerum, u. 30
Helgate, inf. 96
Hedland, c. 158
Henries, c. ibid.
Henries Town, u. 97
Cape, Henry, c. 98
Heptadelphus, m. 22
Heptanomus, pr. 11
Hera, inf. 73
Herculis, Arenæ, m. 14
Turris, u. 14
Herendo, u. 71
St. Hermes, u. 40
Hermopolis, u. 11
Hermoſco, c. 160
Herocliticum, pr. fl. 9
Heroes, u. 10
Herpiditani, p. 29
Heſperia, pr. 2
Heſperides, p. inf. 730
Heſperii, p. 60
Heva, u. 25
Hiera Bolus, u. 10
Hiero, inf. 74
Hierax, u. 11
Higuey, pr. 152
Hippagreta, u. 26
Hippi, c. 15
Hippo Regius, u. 27
Hiſpania Nova, pr. 109
Transfretana, pr. 15
Hiſpaniola, inf. 150
Hiuſtla, pr. fl. 108
Hochelaga, u. 93
Hoden, u. 44
Holy port, 34
Homar, u. 34
Hondura, pr. 117
Good Hope, c. 65
Myos Hormos, u. 8
Horne, c. 159
Hnaden, u. 44
Hudſons fretum, 90, 168
Hurx, fl. 105
Hungariæ, fl. 117
Hydras, inf. 39
Hypadis pelagus, 69

J.

Lib. I.

JAcca, u. 244
Jaccetani, p. 241
St. Jacamo, u. 146
Jaen, u. 224
St. Jago, u. 222
Jamno, u. 243
Japydia, pr. 105
Japydes, p. 64
Jargeau, u. 179
Jarſey, inf. 197
Iberia, pr. 206
Iberus, fl. 211
Iccius portus, u. 161
Iceni, pr. 262
Ichnuſa, inf. 78
Icola, Roſſa, inf. 80
Idubeda, m. 211
Jearne, fl. 180
Jerna, fl. 250
Jet-how, inf. 197
Iſere, fl. 100
Iglium, pr. 115
Ila, inf. 298
Ilanter, u. 145
Ilienſes, p. 80
Ilerones, p. 240
Ilerda, u. 244
Illiceas, u. 238
Illiberis, u. 227
Illipulus, m. 211
Illium, c. 161
Illiturgis, u. 223
Ilna, inf. 115
Imola, u. 80
Incibilis, u. 242
Indigites, p. 241
Indre, fl. 169
Inis Pir, I. 291
Ingenna, u. 264
Inganni, p. 118
Inn, fl. 139
Inſpruch, u. 129
Inſubres, p. 121
Interamna, u. 63
Inurea, u. 131
St. John de Angeli, u. 179
Luz, 180
Mons, 197
Pied de port, 214
Town, u. 284
Join ville, u. 159
Iolaia, inf. 80
Ionium mare, 32
Jona, inf. 298
Jour, m. 130, 155, 195
Jourdain, f. 73
Ipſwich, 267
Ireland, inf. 290
Iſaurium, u. 262
Iſauris, f. 73
Iſcha Damoniorum, 80, 262
Silurum, u. 263
Iſchia, inf. 68
Iſis, fl. 260
Iſle de Deiu, pr. 197
Iſaudum, u. 176
Iſtead. fl. 261
Iſola Roſſa, inf. 79
Iſtria, pr. 119
Cape de Iſtria, u. ibid.
Iſuvium, u. 84
Italia, pr. 30

Ithan-

The TABLE.

Athanchester, 267
Judecha, *l.* 106
Ivernis, *u.* 292
Juga Asturun, *m.* 211
Jubulda, *m.* *ibid.*
Juginium, *u.* 86
Juidor, *pr.* 165
St. Julian, *m.* 73
Julix, *m.* 130
Julia Libica, *u.* 242
Julio-magus, *u.* 169
Juſtinopolis, *u.* 104
Juſulan, *inſ.* 110
Juremont, *p.* 138
Jura, *m.* 154

Lib. II.

Jada, *fl.* 100
Jadole, *u.* 101
Jadera, *u.* 163
Die Jadie, *S.* 100
Jagendorf, *u.* 81
Jaitza, *u.* 162
Jamais, *u.* 13
Japodes, *p.* 164
Jaromir, *u.* 78
Jaro ſlave, *u.* 130
Jaſſii, *p.* 155
Jaſſii, *u.* 170
Jatre, *fl.* 176
Javen, *p.* 196
Jaurarine, rinum, *u.* 153
Jazyga, *u.* 162
Jazyges, *p.* 133
Metaniſtæ, *pr.* 155
Ibac, *fl.* 173
Icaria, *fl.* 116
Ida, *m.* 216
Idæa, *inſ.* 214
Idſtein, *u* 69
Jegen, *inſ.* 109
Jegendorf, *u.* 81
Jene, *u.* 89
Jephapinolies, 130
Jerde, *inſ.* 111
Jervia, *pr.* 141
Jetzebo, *u.* 107
Jeurre, *u.* 100
Iglaw, *u.* 80
Iler, *fl.* 59
Ill, *fl.* 53
Illyricum Occid, *pr.* 66
Illyris, *pr.* 163
Ilma, *fl.* 90
Ilmen, *l.* 130
Iſtradt, *r.* 62
Ilva, *u.* 116
Imbrus, *inſ. u.* 210
Ina, *fl.* 85
Inachus, *fl.* 180
Ingelheim, *u.* 51
Ingolſtadt, *u.* 62
Inn, *fl.* *ibid.*
Inſpruch, *u.* 67
Inſtadt, *u.* 62
Inſula, *u.* 7
Intuergi, *p.* 74
Imurriam, *u.* 61
Ionium Mare, 218
Ioſtphaly, *p.* 98
Ips, *fl.* *u.* 65
Iſarus, er, *fl.* 62
Iſland, *inſ.* 114
Iſleben, *u.* 91
Iſſa, *fl.* 164
Iſſelmund, *u.* 21
Iſter, *fl.* 166
Ithaca, *inſ.* 219
Juch, *fl.* 119
Jugra, *fl.* 140
Jugria, har, *u.* 132
Juites, *p.* 106
Juitland, *pr.* 108
Juliers, Juliacum, } *u.* 43
Julinum, *l.* *u.* 92
Julio Bona, *u.* 65
Julis, *u.* 213
Juois, *u.* 12
Juſtiniana Prima, 176
Secunda, 173
Juvania, *u.* 62
Juranograd, *u.* 131
Iwanoweſero, *p.* 130

Lib. III.

Jarroone *u.* 144
Jabadiu, *inſ.* 215
Jabeſh Gilead, *u.* 67
Jaboc, *fl.* 61
Jackheel, *r.* 101
Jaffa, *u.* 75
Jahzor, *u.* 65
Jamboli, *u.* 164
Jamema, *fl.* 194, 199
Jamnia, *u.* 75
Janiſapapatan, *u.* 227
Jangoma, *pr.* 214
Janizarie, *c.* 31
Japan, *inſ.* 219
Japha, *u.* 71
Jarmuth, *u.* *ibid.*
Jartus, *fl.* 169
Jaſii, *p.* 169
Jaſonium, *m. r.* 139, 153
Jaſques, *u. c.* 146
Jatter, *u.* 77
Jath rib, *u.* 105
Java, *inſ.* 219
Jaxaetes, *fl.* 169
Jazyges, *p.* 164
Iberia, *pr.* 129
Iberus, *fl.* *ibid.*
Ibera, *u.* 7
Icaria, *inſ.* 33
Ichara, *inſ.* 107
Ichſiæſa, *inſ.* 33
Ichthyophagi, *p. S.* 184, 105
Iconium, *u.* 22
Ida. *m.* 3
Idalium, *u. m.* 35
Idumea, *pr.* 82
Jebuſei, *p.* 84
Jeſſeti, *u.* 73
Jelphra, *u.* 151
Jemene, *fl.* 199
Jepthyphagorum, *S.* 105
Jericho, *u.* 78
Jether, *u.* 77
Jews, *p.* 72
Jezreel, *u.* 72
Ileron, *inſ.* 34
Ilium, *u.* 12
Ilment, *fl.* 148
Imaus, *m.* 2, 169
India, *pr.* 190, 191
intra Gangem, 194
extra, 211
Indicus Oceanus, 106
Indian, *u.* 152
Indo Scythæ, *p.* 194
Indus, *fl.* 193
Ingermenum, *u.* 162
Ingine, *pr.* 118
Joccabel, *u.* 27
Jogana, *u.* 226
Johor, *pr. u.* 216
Joknchem, *u.* 72
Jonacapolis, *u.* 144
Jonia, *pr.* 77
Joppa, *u.* 75
Jor, *fl* 711. *p. u.* 215
Jordan, *fl.* 61
minor, *fl.* 40
Jortam, *u.* 224
Jotopata, *u.* 70
Ipſus, *u.* 17
Iris, *fl.* 3, 9
Iſauria, us, *pr. u.* 23
Iſcaria, 30
Iſcopolis, *u.* 6
Iſhmaelitæ, *p.* 102
Iſhktob, *pr.* 67
Iſnichs, *u.* 4
Iſrael, *p.* 58
Iſſachar, *p.* 72
Iſſedon, *u.* 174
Iſſus, *u.* 25
Iſtigias, *u.* 153
Iſtrianus, *fl.* 163
Ita, *c.* 78
Itamos, *u.* 106
Iturea, *p.* 66
Ivah, *u.* 51
Judah, *pr.* 79
Judæa, *pr.* 74
Julia fælix, *u.* 44
Julias, *u.* 67
Juliopolis, *u.* 50, 130, 227
Juſtiniana, *u.* 7

Lib. IV.

Jacho, *fl.* 151
St. Jacobo, *u.* 71
Jacuaguia, *p.* 151
Jaen, *u.* 118, 128
Jafferin, *u.* 34
Jagges, *p.* 63
St. Jago, *inſ.* 73, *u.* 100, 110, 113, 118, 122, 131, 133, 140, 146, 152, *fl.* 125, 127
St. Jago de Arma, *u.* 124
de Guyaquil, *u.* 128
de Leon, *u.* 148
de Montanos, *u.* 129
de Nata, *u.* 122
de Vallos, *u.* 110
Jaguana, *u.* 151
St. James, *fl.* 160
Jamaica, *I.* 153
James, *u.* 97. *c.* 158
Janeiro, nuary, *fl. p.* 138
Jaos, *p.* 142
Jarzitha, *u.* 42
Jaſculum, *p.* 52
Java, *I.* 159
Ichthyophagi, *p.* 187
Bein Jerzo, *u.* 36
Bein Jeſſiten, *u.* 35
Ifrichia, *p.* 1
Ighidi, *deſert.* 43
Iguillinguiguil, *u.* 32
Ilda, *m.* 31
Ildefonſo, *I.* 161
Ilheos, *I. u.* 138
St. Illefonſo, *u.* 115. *I.* 150
Imbiani, *p.* 61, 65
Imizizim, *u.* 31
Imperiale, *u.* 83
Inavis, *fl.* 34
Les infantes, *u.* 131
Infierno, *I.* 74
Inhaban, *p.* 63
Iniambis, *fl.* 138
Joanna, *I.* 71
Joguazia, *p.* 102
St. Johan, *fl.* 92
St. John, *I.* 91, 150. *u.* 109, 110
St. John de Cinalon, *u.* 108
de los Lianos, *u.* 123
de Ulla, *u.* 113
Iol, *u.* 29
Ionii, *p.* 28
St. Joſeph, *u.* 144
Iſabella, *u.* 150. *I.* 150
Iſidis, *I.* 70
Iſius, *m.* 51
De los Iſlas, *c.* 132
Iſola, *u.* 41
Itange, *u.* 146
St. Ivan, *fl.* 124
de Frontera, *u.* 128
de Oro, *u.* 130
de Paſto, *u.* 124
de Salinus, *p.* 128
de Victoria, *u.* 130
Jucutan, *p.* 115
St. Ives, *c.* 159
Julia, Cirta, *u.* 27
Conſtantia, *u.* 35
Traducta, *u.* *ibid.*
St. Julian, *ſ.* 131
Junna, *fl.* 151
Junonia, *I.* 73
Juries, *p.* 136
Juſtiniana, *u.* 26
Juvaganava, *I.* 130

K.

Lib. I.

KAlin, *fl.* 262
Kantiani, *p.*
KemperCorentin, *u.* 167
Kendal, *u.* 270
Kennet, *fl.* 266
Kent, *pr.* 265
Kerry, *pr.* 294
Kerton. *u.* 292
Kildare, *pr. u.*
Kings County, *pr.* 292
Kingſton in Thames, 265
Kinſale, *u.* 295
Kirckwal, *u.* 296
Knockfetgus, *u.* 292
Kyle, *pr.* 285

Lib. II.

Kinach, *fl.* 65
Kala, *u.* 89
Kaliſh, *pr.* 148
Kalla, *u.* 109
Kamme, *fl.* 133
Karinteri, *p.* 65
Kele, *u.* 170
Kelhaim, *u.* 76
Keltorp, *u.* 111
Kemberg, *u.* 88
Kempenland, *pr.* 17
Kempten, 59
Kereſture, *u.* 155
Kerldbee, *u.* 123
Keromenzee, *u.* 144
Kertominde, *u.* 111
Kethim, *pr.* 199
Keykerks, *u.* 26
Kefars Bery, *u.* 53
Lautern, *u.* 50
Werdt, 44
Kexholm, *u.* 132
Kiburg, *u.* 59
Kien, *inſ.* 141
Kies, *u.* *ibid.*
Kimarorubatk, *u.* 153
Kinbrick, *fl.* 59
Kiovia Kiof, *u.* 143
Kiratow, *u.* 173
Kirtomina, *u.* 111
Kiſdy, *p.* 168
Kitagorod, *c.* 130
Kittim, *pr.* 199
Klow, *pr. u.* 143
Knyffin, *u.* 145
Koburg, *u.* 73
Kokenham, *u.* 148
Koldins, *u.* 109
Kmora, *inſ. u.* 154
Koningsberg, *u.* 49, 114, 146
Konengſtal, *m.* 133
Koping, *u.* 111
Koſcien, *u.* 148
Kotiim, *u.* 170
Krain, *pr.* 66
Krivicne, *m.* 178
Kruſwick, *u.* 148
Kyel, *u.* 108

Lib. III.

Kadeſh, *u.* 69
Barnea, *u.* 101
Kajangchew, *u.* 183
Kapharſalama, *u.* 75
Kara Amida, *u.* 75
Kedar, *pr.* 99
Kedemeth, *u.* 65
Keila, *u.* 80
Keldan, *pr.* 112
Kenitæ, *p.* 102
Kiang, *fl.* 184
Kirgeſſi, *p.* 165
Kirhaſereth, *u.* 63
Kyriathaim, *u.* 69
Shenith Kiriathaim, *u.* 63
Kitay, *l.* 165
Kianſi, *p.* 183
Kukares, 207

Lib. IV.

St. Kallop, *u.* 110
Kennobecque, *u.* 95
Ketaughcan, *n.* 97
Kings foreland. 91

L.

Lib. I.

LA Beauſe, *pr.* 171
Laberus, *u.* 294
Labinia, *u.* 102
Laboria, *pr.* 60
Labrelle, *u.* 192
La Breſſe, *pr.* *ibid.*
La Butte du mont, *u.* 199
Lacetani, *p.* 244
Lacinia, *c.* 68
Lactaxaces, *p.* 180
Lacus verbanus, 36
Ladoure, *fl.* 183
Læſtrigones, *p.* 72
La Fere, *u.* 163
La Fert, *u.* 171
La Flexh, *u.* 169
Lagiere, *fl.* 172
Lafanto, *fl.* 63
Lagenia, *pr.* 290
Lagos, *u.* 234
La Grace, *u.* 187
La March, *p.* 178
L' Amballe, *u.* 167
L' Amballiates, *p.* 168
Lambeſque, *u* 160
Lameticus ſinus, 67
Lamotte, *u.* 160
Lambous, *fl.* 173
Lancaſter,

Lancaſter. p. 260
Lanciano. u. 63
Lancinences. p. 220
Landa. u. 124
Landaffe. u. 277
Lanellum. inf. 115
Langris. u. 160
Languedoc. pr. 184
Langued. p. ib.
Languegotia. p. ib.
L' Anguillade. inf. 196
Lanliano. u. 62
Lanuſi, inf. 115
Laon. u. 163
Laodunum. u. ibid.
Lapidei Campi. 188
La Plaia. u. 240
La Puy. u. 185
Laredo. u. 218
La Roch. u. 191
Lareina. fl. 106
Larius. l. 123
La Roche. u. 178
Larabecua. u. 218
Laetoraces. p. 180
Latium. pr. 86
Lavada fl. 233
La Val. u. 170
Lavant, fl. 266
Lavardin, u. 172
Lauda. u. 123
Laudun. u. 170
Lavinium. u. 86
Lavaro. pr. 60
Laurea. fl. 175
Lauretania. u. 84
Lauron. u. 240
Laurigi, u. 240
Lauſanna. u. 141
Laxoal. u. 195
Leaſe. p. 292
Lebrette. u. 192
Lecci. u. 66
Lectodurum. u. 183
Lectoure. u. ibid.
Le four. c. 167
St. Legier. u. 197
Legeris. fl. 154
Legio. u. 220
Legio viceſima Victrix. u. 262
Leiceſter. pr. 260. u. 262
Leighlin. u. 203
Leith. p. 284
Lemaman. l. 136
Lemavi. p. 222
Lemauſus. u. 184
Lemonices. p. 196
Lemſter. pr. 292
Lennox. l. 284. p. 285
Lentini. u. 74
St. Leon. u. 50. caſt. 86
Leon. pr. u. 83 220
St. Pol de Leon. u. 167
Leontium. u. 72
Lepontiæ. m. 130
Lerida. u. 244
Lerina. inf. 196
Lerigi. u. 118
Lerma. u. 231
Leſcar. u. 181
Leſcina. l. 65
Leſmore. u. 295
Leſtoracium. u. 183
Lethes. fl. 233
Letrim. m. pr. u. 294
Leuco Petra. c. 67
Leucopibia. u. 285
Leuin. fl. ib.
Leuk pr. 136
Lewis-Burg. u. 178
Lezobii. p. 164
Lewis. inf. 298
Leviſſa. inf. 298
Libnius. fl. 292
Libora. u. 229
Liburnum. u. 114
Libici. p. 133
Libourn. u. 180
Lichfield. u. 268
Liddeſdale. pr. 285
Lieran. fl. 184
Lift. fl. 292
Liga Cadi Dio. pr. 145
Ditture. ib.
Griſa. ib.
Ligeris. fl. 155
Ligni. u. 160
Ligorne. u. 114
Liguria. pr. 31
Liguſticæ. m. 130
Lilebeum. c. 72
Limachus. fl. 141
Limagne. fl pr. 174
Limacum. fl. 102
Limerick. pr. 294
Limoger. u. 178
Limoſin. pr. ib.
Limavi. p. 222
Lincoln. p. 262. u. 268
Lindinfern. inf. 267
Lindum. u. 262, 285
Lingones. p. 160
Linlithquo. u. 285
Lionoys. p. 192
Lions. u. ibid.
Lipara. inf. u. 75
Liris fl. 32
Lisbon. u. 233
Liſieux. u. 164
Liſle. fl 180
de Jourdain. u. 183
en Dodon. u. 282
Littleborough. u. 262
Livorne. u. 114
Lixentes fl. 173
Llanes. u. 220
Llanvillin. u. 292
Lobregat. fl. 241
Locarna. u. 141
Loches. u. 169
Locknannier. m. 145
Locris. u. 66
Lodi. u. 124
Logia. l. 292
Logrogne. u. 215
Loir. fl. 154
Lol. u. 239
Lombardy. pr. 120
Lombes. u. 182
London. u. 260
Lon. fl. 267
London Derry. u. 293
Loncaſter. u. 367
Longford. pr. 293
Longovicus. u. 367
Longueville. u. 165
Loquehabre. pr. 285
Lorca. u. 229
Lorette. u. 84
Lorn p. 285
Lot. fl. 180
Lothean. pr. 284
L'ouche. fl. 193
Lough-eaugh. l. 292
Loventium. u. 284
Lougleen. l. 292
Loughfole. l. 292
St. Loup. u. 157
Lourde. u. 181
Loxa. u. 227
Loyr. fl. 154
Louth. pr. 293
Lozaina. u. 140
St. Luca de Barameda. u. 225
Lucani. p. 67
Luceria. u. 65
Luceent. u. 141
Lucca. u. 117
Luciferi furum. u. 223
Lucopibia. u. 285
Lucotetia. u. 158
Lucon. u. 177
Lucus Aſturum. u. 220
Ludlow. 277
Lugano. pr. 140
Lugdunum. u. 192
Lugdunenſis Prima. p. 189
Secunda. 164
Tertia. 170
Quarta. 156, 171
Lugudore. c. 78
Luna. m. u. 117, 171
Lunagiana. pr. 117
Lundy. inf. 299
Luneburg. u. 134
Luparetha. u. 63
Luſignan. u. 177
Luſitania pr. 212
Luſſon u. 177
Lutetia. u. 158
Luzark u. 157
Lymen. I. 300
Lymni. I. ibid

Lib. II.

Labeates. l. 163
Lacedæmon. u. 18
Laconia. p. 183
Laden. u. 50
Ladenberg. u. ibid.
Ladoca. l. 129
Ladon fl. 180
Laguſa. inf. 214
Laholme. u. 112
Laibach. u. fl. 66
Laiz. u. 168
Lamia. u. 200
Lambock. u. 65
Lancitia. pr. 148
Landiſoron. u. 112
Landeſhuit. u. 62
Langeland. inf. 111
Languſte. inf. 164
Landrecy. u. 10
Landsberg. u. 61
Landſperg. 83
Lapithæ. p. 199
Lapland. pr. 122
Lapiones. pr. ibid.
Lappa. u. 217
Lariſſa. u. 200
Larta. u. ſ. 197
Laſti. m. 216
Lau. u. 86
Laus. ſ. 198
Lawland. inf. 111
Lawenburg. pr. u. 90
Lau Ferre. u. 14
Lavamundt. u. 66
Lavand. fl. ibid.
Lavia. fl. 146
Lauben. u. 82
Laureacum. u. 65
Lauſnitz. pr. 85
Lauſtein. u. 49
Lauterne. u. 50
Lebadia. u. 192
Lecre. u. 100
Lecheum. u. 186
Leck. fl. 4
Lecopolis. u. 143
Leeſt. u. 18
Leere. u. 100
Leibnitz. u. 154
Leiden u. 21
Leige. pr. u. 14
Leine fl. 95
Lelegia. pr. 183
Lelow. u. 149
Lemberg. u. 144
Lembro. inf u. 210
Lemgow. u. 99
Lemnos. inf. 210
Lenæus, inf. 216
Lenovi. p. 141
Lens. u. 8
Leoburg. u. 92
Leodium. pr. 15
Leontari. u. 102
Leopolis. u. 145
Lepanto. ſ. 181. u. 114
Lerdam. u. 21
Lerna. l 103
Lettanland, pr. 141
Letua. inf. 218
Levant. fl. 64
Levadia. pr. 112
Leucas. u. inf. c. 197
Leuci. p. 86. u. m. 217
Leucoſia. inf. 210
Leuctra. u. 184
Leuctres. u. 192
Levoni p. 124
Leu warden. u. 23
Leu wars. fl. ibid.
Ley. fl. 4
Lezina. inf. u. 164
Libetris m. 201
Liburnades. inf. 164
Liburnia. pr. 163
Lica, fl. 146
Lichtal. u. 75
Lichteberg. u. 70
Liebenzel, u. 75
Liefland, pr. 140
Lignitz, u. 81
Lilea. u. 195
Lim. fl. 173
Limburg, pr. u. 14
Limene, fl. 216
Limene, inf. 211
Limers, u. 45
Limford, ſ. 109
Lincopen. u. 120
Lindaw, u. 58
Linges, fl. 21
Linghen, u. 100
Linkaw. u 142
Lintz, u. 65
Liothida, pr. 124
Lippe, fl. 409. p. u. 99, 154
Lipſique, u. 88
Lis, fl. 4
Liſontio, fl. 66
Liſſa, inf. 164
Liſſus, u. 163
Liſtle, u. 7
Litomiſſel, u. 78
Lituania. pr. 142
Liughe, fl. 27
Livonia, pr. 140
Liutz, u. 65
Lochen, u. 26
Locris, pr. 194
Loduſe, u. 120
Lon, fl. 69
Londen, u. 107
Londenberg. u. 108
Longi-diduni, u. } 85
Nani, u. }
Longobardi, p. 156
Lon, u. 16
Lootz, u. 15
Lorreine, pr. 54
Los, inf. 214
Loſinger, u. 122
Lotharingia, pr. 54
Lou, fl. 68
Louburg, u. 91
Lovaine, u. 18
Louch, fl. 53
Lozaa, u 145
Lubben, u, 82
Lubeck, u. 106
Lublin, u. 148
Luchtenberg, u. p. 76
Lucemburg, u. 12
Luceozia, u. 144
Lugdunum Batavorum, 21
Luickland, pr. 14
Lumaigne, u. 16
Lumburg, u. 91
Luna, u. 38
Lunden, u. 107, 112
Lunenberg, u. pr. 94
Lunſtod, c. 110
Luſatia, pr. 82
Luſen, fl. 119
Luter, fl. 50
Cæſarea Lutra. u. ib.
Luxenburg, pr. u. 12
Luzke, u. 144
Lycoſtomos, u. 171
Lycus, fl. 61
Lyet, fl. 154
Lyſimachia, u. 205

Lib. III.

Leban, u. 65
Lachis, u. 76
Lagoas, m. 139
Lahor, u. 198
Laiſh, u. 69, 70
Lambatæ, p. 195, 198
Lambri, u. 226
Lampſacus, u. 15
Lanagou, u. 217
Lange, inf. 31
Lanos, fl. 174
Lanſilla, u. 144
Laodicea, u. 13, 19, 48
Laos, fl. pr. 214
Lapethia, pr. 35
Turris Lapidea, caſt. 162
Lapithus, fl. 34
u. 35
Lar, fl. 103, u. 146
Laranda, u. 22
Lariſſa, u. 48
Larry Joon, u. 124
Laſa, u. 65
Latmos, m. 20
Lavia, pr. 214
Lavi, u. 224
Lauiana, p. 10
Laula, u. 227
Lawribander, u. 114
Leanites, l. p. 105
Leaotang, u. 177
Lebedus, u. 17
Lectium. c. 10
Ledeonſis, u. 35
Lelegis, u. 21
Trigui Lemale, u. 227
Lenteinis, u. 35
Leogoræ, c. 209
Leontopolis, u. 646, 127
Lequin, I. 221
Lero, I. 35
Lesbos, I. u. 28
Leſcare, u. 39
Leſha, u. 65
Leſhem, u. 69
Leſtori, p. 212
Leuca-Acte, u. 44
Leuco Syri, p. 7
Liampo, c. 216
Libanus, m. 41, 43
Libias, u, 65
Libna, u. 77
Libuſſa, u. 4
Limiſſa, p. 37
Limuries, p. 195

Limycus, fl. 4
Linduon, 31
Linga, l. 226
Liſpor, u. 203
Livias, u. 65
Lochiau, u. 186
Locopp, u. 166
Lod, u. 82
Lonibare, fl. 193
Lontoor, u. 221
Lop, p. u. 176
Lori, u. 130
Lubium, u. ibid.
Lugor, u. 216
Luſſon, I. 221
Luz, u. 81
Lycaonia, p. 22
Lycia, p. 21
Lycus, fl. 4. 34. 115 163
Lydda, u. 75
Lydia, p. 18
Lyrneſſus, u. 11
Lyſinnia, u. 23
Lyſtra, u. 22

Lib. IV.

Laboradora, p. 91
Lacca, p. 54
Laccari, u. 53
Laccus, l. 9
Lacomedis, I. 13
Los Ladrones, I. 148
Laganici, p. 14
Lagartos, fl. 120
Laguna, u. 146
Lagunilla, u. 130,136
Lamanay, I. 116
Lampedoſa peduſa I. 39
Languelongi, p. 67
Lanſerotti, I. 74
Laques, del Oro, c. 103
Laracht, u. 34
Lariſſa, u. ib.
Laruneſia, I. 39
St. Laurence, I. 91. 92 S. 93
St. Laurenzo, u. 139
Laxus, u. 35
Leanda, I. 68
Lelada, fl. 60
Leluda, fl. ibid.
Lempas, fl. 116
Lempta, deſ. 44
De ſierra Leona, c. 46
De los Leones, port. 135
Leon, u. 117. 128, 145
Leptis, magna, u. 25
Lethes, fl 14
Lethon, fl. ibid.
St. Lewis, u. 93,140
Libia, pr. l. 45
deſerta, p. 44
interior, p. 43
Libyægyptii, p. 14
Libyæ Phœnices, p. 28
Libyarchæ, p. 14
Lybicum, mare. 12
Lygeis, fl. 99
Ligua, fl. 130
Lima, p. 128
Linxamo, l. 13
El Lion, u. 107
Ham. Liſnan, u. 33
Lix, fl. 34
Lixa, u. ibid
Loanda, I. 68
Loango, p. 67
Lobos, I. 74. 127. c. 111
Loiola, u. 128
Lon, m. 60
New London, u. 136
De Lopez Gonzales, m. 45
Lorenzo, fl. 160
Loſe, fl. 66
Lotophagites, I. 39
Loxa, u. 127
Loza, fl. 65
Luanga, fl. 63
Lucach, p. 158
Lucaios, I. 100
S. Lucas, c. 125
Luccus, fl. 34
St. Lucies, I. 73,129
Ludim. p. 49
Ludog, fl. 27
Lugo de nueſtra ſenora, l. 145
St. Lukes, u. 93,130, l. 126
Lunæ montes, 60
Aque Lunda, c. 66
Lungifari, u. 14
Luthon, fl. ib.
Luyſa, fl. u. 150
Lt. Luzia, u. 146
Lybici, m. 9
Lybia, p. 12, 40
Lybicum, mare. 12

Lib. I.

MArcera, u. 66
Macerata, u. 84
Macol cum, u. 197
Maces, fl. 111
Madred, u. 232
Madrit, c. 159
Magia, pr. 141
Magiventum, u. 262
Magliano, u. 85
Magni, u. 267
Magra, fl. 118
Moguelone, inſ. 195
Mago, u. 243
Maidſtone, 264
Mailleſaye, u. 177
Maine, pr. 170
Mainland, inſ. 298
Maio, pr. 294
Majorca, inſ. 242
Maira, fl. 146
Mala, inſ. 298
Maleos, inſ. ibid.
Malaca u. 227
portus. 202
Malomoco, inſ. 106
Malans, u. 146
Molbourquer, u. 183
Malden, 262
Maleventum, 63
Malfi, u. 62
Mallenzay, u. 171
St. Malo, u. 167
Malon, fl. 175
Malucene, m. 265
Man Manning, inſ. 298
Mancheſter, 262
Manduesſedum, u. ib.
Mans, u. 170
Mantua, u. 125, 230
Maon, u. 243
Mar, pr. 285
Marans, u. 180
Marbogi, p. 218
Marca Anconita, pr. 79
Firmiana, ibid.
Terrigiana, 102
St. Marceline, u. 191
March, pr. 278
Marchina, u. 223
Marchia, fl. 80
Margis, u. 28
Mariana, u. 120
Marianus, m. 211
Marieburg, u. 293
Maridunum, u. 277
St. Maries, inſ. 300
u 234
Marignan, u. 123
Maritima, m. 130
Marivola, Caſt. 85
Marmand, u. 183
Marmoſtier, inſ. 197
Martha, fl. 112
Marn, fl. 159
Marſac, u. 198
De Marſan, u. 183
Marſelles, u. 187
Marſo, m. u. 62
Martinacht, u. 138
St. Martins, u. 198
Maſcon, u. 192
Marſerors, u. 181
Maſox, u. 145
Maſſa, m. u. 62. p. u. 112
Maſſilienſes, p. 189
Matera, u. 67
Matraval, u. 277
Matiſcorum, u. 192
St. Maudirs, caſt. 264
Maufredonia, u. 65
St. Maurice, u. 138
inſ. 300
Maurienne, u. 134
Maxacra, u. 227
Maxima Cæſarienſis, pr. 263
Sequanorum, 221,228
Mayenne, fl. 170, u. 169
Mazara, pr. 74. u. 85
Mazieres, u. 169
Mearo, fl. 222
Meatæ, p. 285
Meaux, u. 160,233
Medanched, u. 268
Medena, u. 223
Media, pr. 293
Medilino, u. 225
Medina, u. 223
Cœli, u. 223
Sidonia, ibid.
Mediolanum, u. 123,124
Mediolanium, u. 179
Medoc, pr. 180
Medona, fl 291
Meduacus major & minor } fl. 102
Meduana, u. 170
Medulli, p. 134
Medway, fl. 252
Megaris, u. 74
Meinfield, u. 146
Meine, fl. 187
Mieſac, u. 178
Meldi, p. 169
Melortæ, inſ. 115
Melodunum, u. 157
Melun, u. ibid
Menai, fl. 278
Menapia, u p. 292
Menavia inſ. 299
Menew, u. 267
Mendip, m. 250
Mendriſio, pr. 139
Menteith, pr. 285
Mercaria, u. 126
Merch, pr. 285
Mercia, pr. 269
Merida, u. 225
Merindol, u. 187
Merioneth, pr. 268
Mereville, u. 179
Mervis, p. 278
Meſſana, inſ u. 74
Meſſapia, pr. 65
Metaurus, fl. 33
Meth, pr. 293
Methaucum, inſ. 105
Metremo, fl. 80
St. Michaels, inſ. 234
Middleſex, pr. 262
Milaſe, u. 74
Mileſimo, u. 119
Milford, u. 277
Millan, p. u. 123
Millar, fl. 240
Milly, u. 157
Millengen, u. 140
Minius, fl. 211, 233
Minorca, inſ. u. 243
Minturni, u. 59
Miramont, u. 178
Miranda, u. 233
Mirande, u. 181
Mirandula, u. 127
Mirapenſe, u. 181
Mirepoix, u. ib.
Mirton, l. 197
Miſenus, u. 62
Mineius, fl. 125
Moandus, fl. 293
Modena, u. 127
Modona, u. 292
Modorcum, u. 123
Molæ ſinus, 86
Moia, u. 215
Molfette, u, 65
Molifi, p. 62
Molina, u. 232
Molinga, u. 293
Molins, u. 173
Molon, fl. 175
Momblane, u. 241
Mombrum, u. 191
Mona Monabia, inſ. 290
Momonia, pr. 294
Mona, pr. 74
Monaco, u. 118
Monaghan, pr. 293
Monagha, u. 241
Monceaux, u. 160
Moncolibre, inſ. 243
Mondego, fl. 233
Modeni, u. 133
St. Monhaud, u. 163
Monkcheſter, u 269
Monmouth, pr. u. 277
Monoeda, inſ. 299
Monopolis, u. 65
Monreal, u. 215
Monregeau, u. 182
Monſeguer, u. 180
Mons pepulanus, u. 184
Regis, u. 182
Montaigne, u. 173
Montalban, u. 178
Mont Alcino, u. 114
Argentorati, 114
Argis, u. 157
St. Aubin, C. 197
Briſon, u. 174
Dedior } u. 159
S. Defiderii }
Montelimar. u. 181
Montereau. u. 160
Montfalcon. u. 109,175
Montfeltre. p. 83
Montferraut. u. 174
ferrat. p. 128. m. 211
Montfort, u. 171
Montgibal. m. 71
Montgomery. pr. 275
Monthault. u. 181
Monticella. u. 127
Montleherry. u. 157
Montmelian. u. 134
Montmorancy. pr. 157
Montonus fl. 80
Mont Orgueil. caſt. 147
Montpellier. u. 184
pr. 242
Montpenſier. u. 174
Montpulſiane. u. 113
Montreal. u. 192
Montrille. u. 161
Montrico. u. 218
Montſeguer. u. 180
Montſerrata. m. 242
Moret. u. 151, 182
Morgetes. p. 70
Morici. p. 161
Moriton. u. 166
St. Moritts. u. 138
Morlais. u. 167
Morreal. u. 74
Mortaigne. u. 166
Morvedre. u. 240
Moriſcoes. p. 226
Moſon. u. 244
Mounſter. pr. 293
Mown. pr. ibid.
Mulhuſen. u. 141
Muliades. fl. 233
Mulſio. fl. 85
Munda. u. 228
Munow. fl. 279
Mur Murus: u. 145
Muralia. u. 229
Murat. u. 174
Murcia. pr. 228
Murgis. u. ibid.
Muriana inſ. 106
Murrey. pr. 285
Mutina. u. 127

Lib. II.

Macara. m. 216
Macaroneſus. inſ 214
Macedonia. p. 193, 200
Salutaris. 180
Macchlin, pr. u. 18
St. Macor. r. 217
Macris. inſ. 211
Macroniſco. inſ. 214
Macropolis. u. 175
Mænus, fl. 38,71
Mæſi, p. 173
Mæſianus. S. 114
Maes fl. 4
Matſecke. u. 17
Maeſland. pr. 18
Maſtricht. u. 17
Magdeburg. pr. u. 91
Magiore. mare. 209
Maine. fl. 69,71
Malcaw, u. 86
Malea. c. 183
Maliacus. S. 200
Malk. u. 67
Malmoge. u. 112
Malo. c. 214
Maltz. c. 88
Maluciia. u. 184
Malviſin. u. 217
Mandeus. u. ibid.
Manheim. u. 50. 76
Manſelt. pr. u. 90
Mantegna. u. 183
Mantthra. u. 183
Marathon. u. 189
Marback. u. 74
Marche pr. 65. fl. 454
Marcianapolis. u. 175

Marco-

The TABLE.

Marcodurum, u. 44
Marcommanni, p. 68,80
Maribaane, u. 111
Mariemberg, u. 10
Marienburg, u. 146
Marienwerder, u. ibid.
Marich, fl. 166
Mariza, fl. 205
Mark, p. 44. fl. 65
Marmora, inſ. 209
Marobodurum, u. 98
Maron Campi, u. 155
Marone, Zeek, pr. 168
Marpurg, u. 97
Marquiſatus Imperii, p. 17
Marſhow, u. 145
Marſi, p. 106
Marſigni, p. 81
Marſperg, u. 66
Marſtrand, u. 114
Marta, fl. 55
Martane, fl. ibid.
Martenburg, u. 11
Martenwald, u. 62
Martiana, u. 38
St. Martins Dike, u. 107
Maruch, fl. 167
Marville, 13
Matulius, fl. 166
Maſch, u. 161
Maſz-munſter, u. 53
Maſſovia, pr. 145
Matapan, c. 183
Matium. u. 217
Mattiaci, p. 23
Matzan, m. 153
Mawbuige, u. 9
St. Maure, inſ. u. c. 197
Maxima Sequanorum, p. 2
Mazæi, p. 165
Mecklenburg, pr. u. 86
Medemblick, u. 21
Medwich, u. 168
Mediolanum, u. 56
Mediomatrices, p. 43
Medon, u. 163,183
Megalopolis, u. 183
Megaris, pr. u. 189
Meiſſen, p. u. 88
Melæna, inſ. 164
Melapſus, m. 205
Melas, fl. ibid.
Meldpor, u. 107
Melena, iaſ. 220
Meler, fl. l. 119
Melibocus, m. 69
Melida, inſ. 164
Melipotamos, u. fl. 217
Meliſſa, u. 186
Mellum, u. 101
Melos, inſ. 213
Melſingen, u. 97
Melvin. u. 147
Memmingen, 59
Menapil, p. 10
Menebria, u. 175
Mengerhuiſe, u. 97
Mentz, pr. u. 49
Meran, u. 67
Mecheren, pr. 81
Merellus, u. 202
Merks, fl. 21
Meroden, u. 44
Mersburg, u. 88
Merſpurg, u. 58
Meſſimbria, u. 175
Meſſenia, pr. u. 183
Meſteo, fl. 205
Metaniſtæ p. 155
Methon, u. 183
Mets, u. 55
Metz, pr. 5
Meuſe, fl. 54
Meuter. fl. 54
Meydenburg. u. 90
St. Michaels, u. 135
Micklow, pr. 146
Miconus, inſ. 213
Middelſar, u. 111
Midleburg, u. 22, 49
St. Miel. u. 55
Mieſlaw, pr. 143
Milberg, u. 75
Miletum, u. 216
Millenbach, u. 168
Milo, inſ. u. 213
Milopotamos, u. 216
Mimel, u. 148
Mimmegen, u. 59
Minden, u 95
Minnael, fl. 140
Minoa, u. 218
Minois, inſ. 213
Minsko, pr. 143
Mirabello, u. 217
Mirecour u. 55
Miſceneck, u. 134
Miſnia, pr. 88
Mitaw, u. 141
Mlawa, u. 61
Mockern, u. 91
Modriſh, u. 161
Moeln, u. 176
Moenland, inſ. 111
Mœotis, pal. 170
Mogus, anus, fl. 48
Moguntiacum, u. ibid.
Moldavia, pr. 170
Molmuck, u. 78
Moloſſia, pr. 197
Molyerea, u. 194
Mona, inſ. 141
Monachium, u. 61
Monaſterium Eyphaliæ, 44
Moncaſtrum, u. 170
Monheim, u. 81
Mons Regius, u. 57
Montmedi, u. 12
Montbelgard, pr. u. 54
Montenſes, p. 45
Monſtier, u. 11
De Monte ſacro, ſ. 201
Monfert u. 24
Mont Gerard, u. 7
Monts, u. 9
Mora, fl. 55
Moravia, pr. 80
Morava, fl. 173
Morea, pr. 181
Mordevit Tartars, 134
Morini, p. 4, 5
Morſee, pr. 109
Morville, u. 22
Moruſus, fl. 168
Moſa, fl. 54
Moſaiski, p. u. 131
Moſco, u. fl. 130
Moſelle, fl. 38, 54, 55
Moſon, fl. 53
Moſopia, u. 189
Moſpach, u. 50
Moſtch, u. 161
La Mothe, u. 55
Moubuige, u. 10
Mouchoſit, u. 7
Mountabor, u. 98
Mouſeturne, caſt. 48
Mouſon, u. 13
Muers, pr. u. 43
Muerte, fl. 54
Muldavius, fl. 77
Mulhanſen, u. 53
Mulheim, u. 44
Mulhuiſen. u. 89
Mulmberg. u. 146
Moln. u. 92
Mulsberg. u. 88
Munchen. u. 61
Mund. inſ. 111
Munderpre. u. 116
Munſter. u. 98
Munſterberg u. 81
Munſter Eyphelm u. 44
Mur. fl. 65
Murgo. inſ. 214
Murſa. u. 155
Muſcovia. pr. 130
Muſeck, u. 15
Muſonium. u. 12
Muſon Court. u. 16
Mycenæ, u. 186
Mygdonia. pr. 201
Myrina, u. 110
Myrmansby, marè. 115
Myrmidones, p. 200
Myrmidonia. inſ. 212
Myſia, pr. 173
Inferior. 174

Lib. III.

Maachah, pr. 39, 44
Maarſares, fl. 111
Macaan, u. 175
Macao, u. 187
Macaria, u. inſ. 30,34,36
Macaſſar, inſ. u. 222
Maces. c. 146
Machæus. u. 64
Machian. inſ. 22
Macin, pr. 216
Maeir, inſ. 222
Macris. inſ. 32
Macrones, p. 131
Macuti, u. 68
Madabat, u. 201
Madai, u. 140
Madian, u. 101
Madianites, p. 62
Madoce, fret. 104
Madura, u. 207. inſ. 225
Mæander, fl. 4, 18
Mæandius, m. 211
Mæonia, pr. 17
Mæotis, l. 162
Magdala, u. 69
Magneſia, u. 19
Magnum, fl. 193
Magnus, ſ. 212
Magod, u. 64
Magog, u. 40
Magoram, ſ. 105
Rex Magos, inſ. 190
Magrummum, u. 226
Magydis, u. 23
Mahacath, u. 67
Mahanaim, u. 65
Main, u. 204
Maioma, u. 75
Makats, pr. 78
Makeloth, u. 101
Malabar, pr. u. 204
Malaca, pr. u. 215
Malanchonia, c. ib
Malanga, u. 194
Malano, 223
Malaxia, u. 9
Maldivæ, inſ. 227
Malea, m. 226
Maliaci, inſ. 104
Maliapar, u. 207
Maliarpha, 194
Malli, p. 195
Malmiſtra, fl. 25
Punta Malota, c. 36
Malthura, u. 211
Malway, pr. 205
Mamre Campus, 78
Manambis, u. 105
Manaſſeh, p. 74
Mancopia, u. 163
Mandagarſis, u. 140
Mandalæ, p. 195
Mandao, pr. fl u. 198
Babel Mandel, fret. 104
Mangalor, u. 203
Mangi, p. 181
Mangutum, u. 163
Minilla, u. 225
Maniolæ, inſ. 210
Maocoſmus, u. 105
Mapha, u. ibid
Marebia, u. 204
Marabius, fl. 165
Maracanda, u. 170
Maran. u. 153
Marandæ, p. 214
Marani, u. 170
Maram, u. 141
Maras, u. 124
Marciane, pr. 141
Mardiene, pr. 144
Mardus, u. 220
Mare mortuum, l. 61
Mareſa, u. 77
Margana, u. 226
Margaſi, p 140
Margiana, pr. 152
Margus, fl 152
St. Maria, u. 132
Marianna, p. 10
Mariſcæ, p. 155
Marraſium, u. 144
Marſoa, u. 79
Marſoas, fl. 41
Marſyas, fl. 13
Martavan, pr u. 217
Martiana, S. 139
Maruca, u. 169
Maſaca, u. 152
Maſca, fl. 117
Maſdarami, p. 150
Maſdoramus, m. 151
Maſæus, fl. 118
Maſheal, u. 71
Maſoni, p. 100
Maſopello, u. 194
Maſorum, pr. 37
Maſſada, u. 80
Maſſagetæ, ces, p. 153,168
Miſſei, p. 171
Maſſycetes, p. 22
Matara, u. 224
Materni p. 99
Mattæn, inſ. 221
Maurgus, fl. 123
Maugi, p. 190
Maugat, fl. 20
Mazeræ, as, fl. p. 153
Maiden tower, c. 4
Mayendre, u. 203
Mazaca, u. 9
Mazage, u. 195
Maziris, u. 194
Meaco, p. u. 219
Meara, u. 105
Meccao, u. 217
Mecka, u. 105
Mechara. u. 106
Mechleſſus, u. 139
Mecon, fl. 216
Medeba, u. 65
Media, pr. 139
Major 141
Medina. u. 105
Mediterraneum mare, 2
Megalopolis, u. 6
Megaloſſus, u. ibid
Megarenſes, p 3
Megiddo, u. 72
Megores p. 145
Melamphylas. inſ. 32
Melampurgos. u. 13
Melonge. u. 194
Melant, m. 105
Melanthii, rupes. 32
Melas fl. 4
Melechra. c. 30
Melinda. u. 203
Melintay. p. 212
Melitene pr. u. 10
Menama. fl. 219
Menantabo. u. 220
Menedemum. u. 23
Melitopolis. u. 163
Mengrolia. pr. 128
Menteſia. pr. 21
Mercar. pr. 178
Merdi p. 168
Merdin. u. 119
Merope inſ. 33
Meſabatæ, p. 145
Meſandræ. u. 152
Meſopotamia pr. 117
Meſal. u. 70
Meſſanites. ſ. 105
Meſſora. pr. 37
Metapontus. p. 2, 4
Methymna. u. 28
Metrit. p. 178
Metropolis. u. 163
Mezendram. pr. 153
Michmas. u. 73
Midaium u. 13
Midian. pr. u. 62
Medianites. p. 101
Milaſa u. 20
Milies. p. 23
Miletopolis. u. 163
Miletus. u. 20
Miltus. u. 147
Minæi p. 105
Minchian. pr. 181
Mindanao. inſ. 209. u. 221
Mindus. u. 20
Mingia. pr. 145
Miri. p. 125
Minneth. u. 63
Minyas. inſ. 35
Milta. inſ. 221
Miranda. pr. 212
Miſdia. p. 144
Miſpah. u. 63, 78
Mithridatis Regio. 164
Mitſpah. u. 63
Mitylene. u. 28
Mizpah. u. 64
Moab. pr. ibid.
Modin. u. 76
Modutrum, u. 227
Modura. u. 194
Molgomazone. pr. 168
Mologeni. p. 170
Moltan u. 198
Moluccoes. inſ. 219
Monograſſum. u. 194
Mongul. p. 178
Mons Chriſti. m. 70
Montfort. u. ibid.
Mopſia. p. 24
Mopſuaſtria u. 25
Moratay. inſ. 225
Moriah. m 62
Del Moro. inſ. 224
Moſach. u. 105
Moſchici. m. 126
Moſſyneci. p. 7
Moſul. u. 115
Mount-Roy. 70
Mount-Royal u. ib,
Moyown. u. 145
Miantay. pr. 216
Mudutiæ. p. 217

Muleber, u. 148
Mulierum Portus, u. 147
Multan, pr. u. 197
Muſa, u. 105
Muſarna, u. 147
Muſicana, pr. 195. u. 227
Muſckahat, u. 106
Muſulipatan, pr. 208
Murhana, u. 63
Myas u. 17
Mygdonia, pr. fl. 107
Mylias, pr. 22
Myra, u. 20
Myrina, u. 16
Myrtoum, mare. 33
Myſia, pr. 14
Minor, pr. 15
Helleſpontica, ibid.
Olympena, ibid.

Lib. IV.

Macadacur, u. 95
Macaos, pr. 62
Macaria, inſ. 69
Macarmede, u. 33
Macatutæ, p. 14
Maccurebi, p. 29
Machini, p. ibid.
Machometta, u. 25
Macrobii, p. 52
Macureos, pr. 143
Madagaſcar, inſ. 70
Madaninam, inſ. 146
Madaura, u. 27
Madera, inſ. 75
Madethubada, m, 22
Madrigal, u. 124
Madurus, u. 27
Magaduza, u. 56
Magdalen, fl. 122
Magelianica, p. 133
Maggio, I. 74. fl. 100
Magnice, m. 63
Magnus, u. 43. ſ. 61
Magnana, p. 150
Magorum, I. 70
Mahmora, u. 33
Maier, fl 28
Makanno, u. 146
Malachath, u. 45
Malacca, u. 111
Malambo, pr. 121
Malao, u. 51
Malchubii, p. 29
Maletur, p. 159
Malirones, p. 99
Maltha, inſ. u. 39
Malvæ, p.
Malutha, fl. 28
Mampſarus, m. 22
Babel Mandel, inſ. 70
Mandaninam, I. 148
Mandinga, pr. 43
Mandrus, m. 41
Mangiano, fl. 63
Manhartes, fl. 96
Manica, m. 63
Manicongo, pr. 65
Manoa, u. 141
Mantinino, I. 148
Mantu, u. 127
Maquille, u. 35
Marabo, fl. 53
Maracapan, u. 146
Maracabo, I. 146
Maragnon, fl. 119. p. 139
Marannon, fl. 128
Maraons, p. 140
Marcanas, u. 152
Maremna, pr. 9
Mareotis, l ibid.
Margarita, inſ. 146
Donna Maria, c. 150
St. Maria, u. 91. 121, 122, inſ. 118, 132, 133
del Antigua, inſ. 149
Antiqua, u. 121
de los Lages, 107
del Porta, u. 151
Maria, l. 9
del Coneeption, 99, 101
Marianes, p. 99, 142
Marien, p. 150, fl. 152
Three Maries, inſ 108
Marmarica, p. 12
St. Martha, inſ. 118, p. 121
u fl. 122
St. Martin, u. 108, fl. 136
inſ. 149
Martyrs, inſ. 101
Marwine, fl. 141
Maryland, pr. 96
Cabo Marzo, u. 91
Maſæſyli, p. 29
Maſalquivir, u. ibid.
Maſeadenna, inſ. 70
Maſitholus, fl. 41
Maſſa, u. 31. fl. 41
Maſſachuſets, ſ. 95
Maſſylia, pr. 29
Maſte, m. 50
Maſucha, u. 43
Matana, pr. 68, 71
Matarea, u. 11
Matarem, u. 141
Matatana, u. 63
St. Matthew, inſ. 72. u. 100
Matinino, inſ. 125
Mattaken, u. 97
Mattan, u. 134
Matuca, pr. 63
Maudlins Sound, ſ. 157
Maurifii, p. 30
Mauri, p. ibid.
Mauritania, p. ibid
Cæſarieenſis, pr. 29
Mauritius, inſ. 71
de Naſſaw, pr. 159
Mautan, inſ. 133
Mayos, p. 142
Maxie, c. 150
Mayport, u. 96
Mayre, fretum. 160
Mazacila, u. 13
Mazagon, u. 35
Mecha, inſ. 133
Mechuacan, pr. 111
Medela, u. 34
Medellin, u. 114
Medini, p. 28
Medra, p. 48
Megallanicum, mare. 86
Meinaci, p. 42
Melampodes, p. 3
Melemba, p. 63
Melinde, pr. u. 61
Melite, inſ. 40
Melli, p. u. 46
Mellilla, u. 152
Memnonium, u. 12
Memphis, u. 11
Menan, inſ. 70
Mendicum, fl. 9
Menego, inſ. 94
Menelaus, u. 13
Meninx, inſ. u. 39
Menuthias, inſ. 71
Meotti, inſ. ibid.
Merianguſa, u. ibid.
Merida, u. 115, 123
Meroe, inſ u. 52
Mervermiglio, fl. 102
Meſtitlan, u. 11
Meſtizoes, p. 136
Meſuchis, u. 13
Meſſa, u, 31
Meſurata, u. 25
Meſyus. inſ. 39
Metagonitæ. p. c. 30
Mette. u. 56
Mexicaltzingo. u. 112
Mecicana. p. 111. 114
Nova p. 108
Mexico. u. 112. ſ. 110
Mezemme. u. 35
St. Michael. u. 98, 106, 110, 111, 115, 123, 146
c. 102
Michius, u. 12
Mina u. 47
Mira flores. u. 128
Miſque. u. 130
Miſraim. p. 3
Miſteca p. 115
Mitla. fl. 112
Mneium. c. 51
Mohenhemage. p. 62
Moeris. l. 9
Mogincats. fl. 62
Mohelia, inſ. 72
Mollium. inſ. 39
Molocath. fl. 22
Mombaza. p. u. 61
Mombra. p. ibid.
Mona. inſ. 149
a
Monetta. inſ. 148
ica
Monodactylus. m. 50
Monoemug. pr. 62
Monomopata. pr. 63
Monpater. u. 146
Montagnets. p. 94
Montferrat. inſ. 149
Port au Monton. u. 93
Monzalo. p. 62
Mophi rubes. 12
Mopox. u. 121
Morata. u. 136
Morequito. n. 143
Moreſhigo. u. 142
Morocco. p. 30. u. 32
Morumba. u. 68
Moſambique. p. u. 62
Moſchi. m. 60
Moſylon. u. 51. c. 52
Moxino. port. 145
Moyemon. u. 142
Mucheras. fl. 107. inſ. 115
Muhatos. p. 136
Muſucha. fl. 22
Muluſo. fl. 35
Mundi. u. 51. inſ. 69
Munia. u. 11
Munſor, u. 33
Maſcamunge u. 97
Muſi. p. 129
Mundus alter & idem. p. 161
Myos Hormos. u. 7
Myron. inſ. 70
Myrica fiaca. inſ. 69, 70

N.

Lib. I.

Nagnatæ p. 295
Namonburger. l. 134
Nannetes. p. 168
Nantes. u. ibid.
Napres. u. 60
Napthia. l. 73
Nar. fl. 86
Narbonne. u. 185
Narbonnenſis. pr. 155
Prima. 185
Secunda. 186
Narnia. u. 85
Natiſco fl. 120
Navarre. pr. 214
Navarreux. u. ibid.
Nauportus. fl. 104
Naxos. u. 213
Nazareth. u. 195
Nazarette. u. 119
Naiz. u. 185
Neæ. u. 71
Neara. fl. 84
Nebbia. u. 120
Negro. fl. 87
Nemauſus u. 184
Nemours. u. 157
Neomagus. u. 262
Neptunum. u. 87
Ner. fl. 270
Nerac. u. 183
Nereum. c. 222
Neſtes. u. 183
Nevers. u. 173
Neury. Neorus. fl. 292
Neuidum. u. 134
Neuſtria. pr. 165
Newark on Trent. 262
Newburg. u. 295
Newcaſtle. u. 274
Newhaven. u. 161
Newkirk. 62
Newport. u. 300
Newſidle. 65
Newſtat. ibid.
Nicaſtro. u. 67
Nicea. u. 133
Nicoſia u. 74
Niddeſdale. pr. 284
Niebla. u. 234
Nigre pellice. u. 178
Ninſius. fl. 125
Nirton. l. 283
Niſmes. u. 184
Nivernois. p. ium. u. 173
Nies. pr. 136
Nizze. p. u. 134
Noceria. u 85
Nogent le Retrou. 165
Noironde. u. 174
Nola. u. 61, 119
Nontron. u. 178
Norba Cæſaria. u. 221
Norfolk 262
Noricum Mediterraneum 134
Normandy. pr. 164
North Elmham. u. 267
Hampton. p. 262
Humberland. ibid.
Norwich. 267
Nottingham. p. 262, 268
Noto. p. u. 74
Novantes. p. 285
Novara. u. 123
Novempopulonia pr. 211
Noviodunum, u. 134, 163
Novers. u. 194
Nigon. u. 163
Nuceria u. 63
Numantia. u. 231
Nun. u. 134
Nurſia. p. u. 85
Newenberg. u. 141

Lib. II.

Nabus. fl. 76
Nadravia. pr. 146
Naerden. u. 21
Naf, Nafny. fl. 130
Neharvali. p. 149
Naithones. p. 83
Namfio. inſ. 214
Namur. p. u. 11
Nancey, u. 55
Napoli ſ. 184. u. 186
Naracuſtoua. fl. 167
Narento, fl. 162
Narew. u. 145
Nariſci. p. 77
Narſchow. u. 145
Naumberg. u. 88
Naupactus. u. 194
Nauplia. u. 186
Nauportus. u. 66
Naxos inſ. 213
Neapolis. u. 186
Neauf Charteau. u. 55
Neleus. fl. 211
Neccar, fl. 38, 82
Neglinna. fl. 130
Negropont inſ. u. 211
Neimunſter. u. 108
Nemavia. u. 60
Nemea. u. 186
Nemetes. p. 50, 55
Neoburg. u. 65
Neocaſtion. u. 209
Neomagus. u. 50
Neritos. u. 197
Nertereates. p. 89
Neruli. p. 4.10
Neſſum. u. 173
Neſſus. fl. 205
Netherlands. p. 1
Newbourg. 111, 148
Newburg. u. 62, 76, 80
Newenſol, fol, u. 154
Newful. l. u. 65
Newkirk. u. 107
Newmarkt. u. 66, 76
Newmarck. 83
Newnburg u. 74
Newport. u. 6
Newſtat. u. 50
Nibourch. u. 111
Nibourg u. ibid.
Nicalidi. u. 202
Niclasberg. u. 80
St. Nicolas. u. 52. 135, ſ. 134
Nicopen. u. 111
Nicopolis u. 175, 197, 206
Nicſia. inſ. 214
Nid. fl. 149
Nider. fl. 114
Nidroſia. u. ibid.
Niemen. fl. 140
Niupe. u. 2
Nieper. fl. 129
Nieſſe. u. fl. 81
Nieſter, fl. 140
Nigebol. u. 175
Niger. fl. 205
Nimmegen. u. 25
Nirſi. fl. 43
Niſſa. fl. u. 173
Niſus. fl. 180
Nitri. u. 154
Nivello. u. 18
Niveſia. u. 48
Nogar. fl. 146
Nona. u. 163
Nonven. u. 2
Norborch. u. 111
Norden; u. 100
Nordenburg. u. 132, 146
Nordluidi. p. 114
Noreia. u. 66

Noren. *u.* 168
Noricia. *p.* 64, 122
Noricum Mediterraneum *pr.* 62
Ripenſe, *pr.* 67
Norimbegacum, *u.* 76
Norlingen. *u.* 59
Normault. *u.* 2
Normunſter. *u.* 55
Northern Sea. 114
Northgoia. *pr.* 76
North huiſen. *u.* 89
North Schawben. *pr.* 59
Norway *R.* 112
Novarino. *u.* 183
Novebard. *u.* 172
Novegrad. *u.* 173
Noveſium. *u.* 47
Novigrod. *u.* 161
Noviomagus. *u.* 25
Novogrod, *p. u.* 130, 134
Nuremberg. *u.* 73, 76
Nuys. *u.* 47
Nyſtat, *u.* 111

Lib. III.

Naar. *fl.* 71
Nabarcha. *u.* 153
Nabartha. *u.* 226
Nabathæa. *pr.* 183
Nagadiba. *u.* 226
Nagaian. *p.* 164
Nagara. *u.* 194
Nagarita. *u.* 197
Nagiri. *u.* 227
Nagracol. *p. u.* 200
Aram Naharaiim. *p.* 39
Naim. *u.* 71
Naioth. *u.* 73
Nalaxa. *u.* 66
Namechia. *u.* 131
Nanchang. *u.* 186
Nanigeris. 226, *p.* 227
Nanquin. *u.* 185
Napæi. *p.* 164
Naphthæa. *fl.* 61
Naphthali. *p.* 70
Navagonas, *fl.* 194
Narſinga. *p.* 206. *u.* 207
Nasvana, *u.* 140
Nathaliel. *u.* 63
Natolia. *p.* 2
Natoroth. *u.* 65
Nava Claudiopolis. *u.* 7
Naugrocot. *m.* 192
Naulibis. *u.* 149
Nawatacos. *p.* 201
Naymanes. *p.* 179
Nazareth. *u.* 70
Nazianzum. *u.* 9
Neapolis. *u.* 129
Nebo. *m.* 62
Negapatan. *u.* 207
Negara. *u.* 105
Negariot. *u.* 210
Neicheia. *u.* 3
Nelaxa. *u.* 67
Neo-Cæſarea. *u.* 6
Neogilla. *ſ.* 105
Neva. *u.* 221
Neriand. *u.* 202
Neronia. *u.* 70
Nerra. *inſ.* 221
Nerper. *fl.* 161
Neſi. *u.* 21
Netherby. *u.* 202
Nethinims. *p.* 81
Nibon. *u.* 223
Nicæa. *u.* 4, 195
Nicator. *m.* 115
Niceria. *inſ.* 30
Niceſorius. *fl.* 127
Nicomedia. *p.* 4
Nicopolis. *u.* 10, 25, 76
Nicoſia. *pr. u.* 35
Nieper. *fl.* 161
Nigama. *u.* 194
Nigra. *u.* 154
Nihulhan. *pr.* 177
Nilus. *u.* 110
Ninguiven. *u.* 185
Nimphæa. *inſ.* 33
Ninive. *u.* 116
Niphates. *m.* 126
Niſa. *u.* 74
Niſæi. *p.* 150
Niſibus. *u.* 118. 149
Niſſa. *u.* 208
Nitra. *u.* 194
Niveche. *pr.* 177
Nixaria. *u.* 5
Nob. *u.* 78, 81
Noiacenſes. *p.* 169
Nomades. *p.* 167
Nora. *u.* 195
Noroſus. *m.* 169
Noſygue. *u.* 194
Notium. *c.* 186
Nuraquimere. *u.* 201
Nymphas. *u.* 189
Nyſa. *u.* 194
Nyſea. *u.* 154
Nyſſa. *u.* 9

Lib. IV.

Nabæ. *p.* 42
Nabathræ. *p.* 48
Nacapatan. *u.* 110
Nadagara. *u.* 25
Nanſamund. *fl.* 97
Nanſic. *fl.* 95
Napata. *u.* 51
Napuluca. *u.* 114
Naſabath. *fl.* 22
Naſſovius. *fl.* 95
Nata. *u.* 120
Natiſcotes. *inſ.* 94
Natividad. *u.* 106, 111
Navatlocoes. *p.* 112
Navatræ. *p.* 28
Nebicerines, *p.* 93
Niſtiberes. *p.* 30
Ned-Roma. *u.* 20
Needles. *c.* 68
Negira. *u.* 144
Los Negrillos. *inſ.* 115
Negro's. *p.* 47
Rio de Neives *fl.* 99
Neveri. *fl.* 145
Newfoundland. *p.* 91
Newport. *u.* 93
Nexapa. *pr.* 115
Neyba. *fl.* 150
Neyva-rioya. *u.* 136
Nicaragua. *fl.* 118
Nicæus. *u.* 27
Nicayagua. *fl.* 150
Nicoia. *u.* 118
St. Nicolas. *inſ.* 73. 160
c. 150
Nicopolis. *u.* 11
Nievados. *m.* 122
Nieves. *fl. inſ.* 149
Niſſis. *fl.* 30
Niger. *fl.* 45
Nigira. *u.* 42
Nigitimi. *p.* 28
Nigritæ. *p.* 44. 400
Nigritis. *pr. l.* 40
Nigro. *fl.* 136
Nigua. *fl.* 150
Nilopolis. *u.* 11
Nilus, *fl.* 9
Nivaria, *inſ.* 73
Nizao, *fl.* 150
Nochor. *fl.* 36
Noius, *fl.* 41
Nomades, *p.* 27
Nombre de Dios, *u.* 108, 120
de Jeſus, *u.* 135
Nordt river, 96, 99
Noronha, *inſ.* 139
Norumbegue, *fl.* 92
pr. u. 93
Noticornu, *c.* 52
Novum oppidum, *u.* 29
Nubæ palus, *l.* 48
Nubia, *l.* 47. *pr.* 48
Nubiba, *fl.* 151
Nuchidda, *u.* 33
Nueſtra ſennora, *p.* 103, 133. *l. u.* 145
Numidia, *p.* 42
Nuſconcus, *u.* 95
Nuts, *inſ.* 96

O.

Lib. I.

OBches, *u.* 114
Oca, *m.* 230
Ocaſa, *fl.* 28
Ocaſo, *c.* 206
Occimianum, *u.* 128
Ocetis, *inſ.* 292
Ocriculum, *u.* 86
Octodurus. *u.* 143
Octopitæ, *p.* 275
Odechere, *caſt.* 228
Odier, *fl.* 223
Oenotria, *pr.* 68
Oiarco, *c.* 205
Oiſe, *fl.* 162
Olava, *pr.* 215
Olbia. *u.* 187
Olbion. *u.* 88
Oleron. *u.* 181. *inſ.* 195
Oletana, *u.* 234
Olite, *u.* 215
Olivenza, *u.* 233
Ollius, *fl.* 123
Oltadini, *p.* 262
Olyſcippo, *u.* 233
Onhar, *fl.* 241
Ooſtenrich, *pr.* 133
Ophalie, *p.* 292
Ophiuſa, *inſ.* 241
Orbe, *fl.* 184
Orbitello, *u.* 114
Orcades, *inſ.* 297
ney,
Ordovices, *p.* 275
Orca, *u.* 293
Orenge. *pr.* 187
Oreſtagne, *u.* 78
Oretanie, *p.* 232
Orgeler, *u.* 194
Orgueil, *caſt.* 197
Orgon, *u.* 159
Oria, *fl.* 218
Orivela, *u.* 240
Orius, *u.* 222
Orleanoyſe, *p.* 171
Orleans, *u.* *ibid.*
Orne, *fl.* 164
Oroſpeda, *m.* 211
Ortegal, *c.* 222
Orthes, *u.* 181
Ortona, *u.* 63
Ortygia, *inſ.* 75
Orvietto, *u.* 85, 114
Oſa, *fl.* 112
Oſaniano, *u.* 128
Oſca, *u.* 244
Oſſiſmi, *p.* 168
Oſſonaba, *u.* 234
Oſſuna, *u.* 223
Oſſory, *u.* 295
Oſtia, *u.* 86
Terra d' Otranto, *pr.* 64
Ottadini, *p.* 203
Ottilana, *pr.* 184
Oviedo, *pr. u.* 220
D' Ourlans, *u.* 163
Ouſe, *fl.* 252
Oxford, *u.* 261
Oxilii, *p.* 118
Oyſe, *fl.* 164

Lib. II.

Oby, *fl.* 132
Obdoza, *pr.* *ibid.*
Oberhuſen, *caſt.* 62
Oberſax, *pr.* 87
Obertweſel, *u.* 48
Obotriti, *p.* 86
Occa, *fl.* 130
Occazoma, *u.* 170
Ochenberg, *m.* 111
L' Ochrida, *u.* 175
Ock, *fl.* 49
Ocyne, *fl.* 130
Odenburg, *m.* 85
Oden Chaſteau, *u.* 55
Odenſee, *u.* 111
Odera, *fl.* 38
Oderburg, *u.* 83
Odinpen, *pr.* 141
Odnuſa, *inſ.* 183
Oeantia, *u.* 194
Oebalia, *pr.* 181
Oeland, *inſ.* 124
Oenipens, *u.* 67
Oenope, *inſ.* 212
Oenus, *fl.* 62
Oeſcus, *u.* 175
Oeſel, *inſ. u.* 141
Oeta, *m.* 191
Offenbach, *u.* 59
Okonitzkilies, *u.* 130
Oland, *inſ* 109
Oldenburch, *p. u.* 102
Oldendorp, *u.* 95
Oldenſel, *u.* 25
Oldeſlo, *u.* 107
Oldhaven, *u.* 26
Olents, *u.* 81
Olenus, *u.* 181. 195, 176
Oleza, *fl.* 60
Olibria, *u.* 206
Olinthus. *u.* *ib*
Olmuncs. *u.* 80
Olnits *u.* 89
Olyaros. *inſ.* 213
Olympia. *u.* 182
Olympus. *m.* 199
St. Omar. *u.* 7
Ombach. *fl.* 53
Ommelandts, *pr.* 26
Onacker. *fl.* 95
Onaldsbach. *pr. u.* 72
Oncheſimus. *u.* 196
Ooſtphali. *p.* 99
Ooſt Zee. 109
Openheim. *u.* 50
Ophiuſſa. *inſ.* 212
Oppolen. *u.* 81
Opuntii. *p.* 194
Opus. *u.* *ibid.*
Oratas. *fl.* 168
Orbay. *pr.* *ibid.*
Orbelus. *m.* 205
Orchemus. *u.* 197
Orchies. *u.* 7
Orchomenon. *u.* 192
Oreſtria. *u.* 182
Orozakow. *u.* 144
Orſey. *u.* 43
Ortygia. *inſ.* 213
Orumne. *caſt.* 109
Oſenbridge, *u.* 99
Oſeriates. *p.* 155
Oſero. *inſ.* 164
Oſilia. *inſ.* 141
Oſnaburg. *u.* 99
Oſſa *fl.* 146. *m.* 199
Oſſendorp. *u.* 99
Oſtend. *u.* 6
Oſtenreick. *pr.* 64
Oſterberg. *u.* 83
Oſtergoe. *pr.* 23
Oſterholme. *u.* 111
Oſterhout. *pr.* 20
Oherwicke. *pr.* 18
Oſtholme. *inſ.* 109
Oſtreſow. *u.* 148
Oſtrich. *p.* 65
Oſtrinand. *p.* 10
Ohrowitz. *u.* 161
Oſwitz. *pr.* 82
Oſyli. *p.* 135
Oſterenberg. *u.* 100
Othingii. *p.* 124
Othenſchee, *u.* 111
Othonia,
Othrys. *m.* 199
Ottelberg. *u.* 146
Otterendorpe, 99
Otuver. *pr.* 134
Oudenard. *u.* 6
Oudwater. *u.* 18
Ovelguard *u.* 102
Overweſel *u.* 48
Overyſſel. *pr.* 24
Ovilabis *u.* 65
Ourbo. *u.* 122
Oxenford. *u.* 49
Oxholme. *inſ.* 109
Oyſtinger *pr.* 104
Ozbelus *m.* 167
Ozebo. *m.* 122
Ozera. *l.* 132
Ozolæ. *p.* 194
Ozwitz *pr.* 81

Lib. III.

Ob. *fl.* 165
Obares. *p.* 150
Oboth, *u.* 100
Obrotis. *u.* 144
Oceanus. *u.* 105
Ocelis. *u.* *ibid.*
Ocerra. *u.* 169
Ochian. *p.* 151
Ochinoſamanus. *u.* 220
Ochus. *fl.* 143. *u.* 153
Oczacoviza, *u.* 163
Odalla, *u.* 77
Odia. *u.* 216
Oebalia *pr.* 21
Oechardes. *fl.* 174
Oenoanda. *u.* 21
Oenuntia. *u.* 165
Olam. *pr.* 151
Olandæ. *p.* 168
Olbanaſſa. *u.* 22
Olbia. *u.* 23
Olbiah, *u.* 163
opolis,
Olenus. *u.* 8
Olimpeni. *p.* 14
Olivet. *m.* 62
Olſanenſes. *p.* 163
Olympus. *m.* 3, 14

Omoal, u. 152
Omo, u. 82
Onor, u. 203
Ophir, p. 127
Ophiuſa, inſ. 34
Oran, u. 106
Orbitæ, p. 140
Orbitana, u. 149
Orcheni, p. 99
Orebatis, u. 144
Orel, m. 100
Organa, inſ. 104
Orgomanes, u. 153
Orientalis, pr. 1
Oriſſa, u. 208
Oriſtan, pr. ibid.
Xa,
Ormus, inſ. u. 146
Orodii, m. 192
Oromandus, u. 10
Orontes, fl. 41, 140, 144
Oroſana, u. 174
Orrachan, pr. 150
Orthoſia, u. 44
Orthura, u. 194
Ortoſpana, u. 145
Orymagdus, fl. 24
Oſrhoene, pr. 117
Oſſacay, u. 220
Oſtracine, u. 82
Ottomangruch, fl. 3
Ottorocorus, m. u. 174
Oxiana, u l. 153, 169
Oxus, fl. 143, 153, 149
Oxydrace, pr. 169. u. 195
Ozene, u. 194

Lib. IV.

Oanobe, f. 97
Oaſis, pr. 12
Ocalis, u. 100
Ocanna, u, 122
Octaignini, p. 93
Oceanica, p. 2
Odranguli, p. 42
Ogdomus, m. 13
Ogdoni, p. 15
Ogygia, p. 2
Des Oiſeaux, inſ. 94
Olanco, p. 117
Olinda, u. 139
Olympia, p. 1
Ombryo, inſ. 73
St. Omers, u. 30, 32, 142
Ommirabili, fl.
On, u. 11
Ongol, m. 135
Ontivoros, 136
Ooanoke, u. 97
Ophiodus, fl. 41
Ophir, pr. 62
Opone, u. 81
Ora anteroſa, pr. 73
Oran, u. 29
Orange, u. 96
Orchilla, inſ. 147
Orbis Arcticus, 157
Ordalia, fl. 27
Orellana, fl. 119
Orenoque, fl. 119. pr. 143, 139
Oriſtan, u. 152
Orneon inſ. 71
St. Iuan del Oro, u. 131
Laques del Oro, c. 105
Sevilla del Oro, u. 129
Oropeſa, u. 130
Ortygia, p. 2
Oſachile, u. 100
Oſiria, p. 2
Oſorno, u. 133
Oſtium Sabbaticum, u. 52
Ottavallu, u. 127
Ottomies, p. 112
Otztutan, u. 115
Ozama, fl. 150

P.

Lib. I.

PAchinus. c. 71
Padua. u. 102
Padus. fl. 131
Pæſi. m. 119
Palamos. u. 241
Palentia. u. 220
Palenza. u. ib.
Palermo. u. 74
Palia. fl. 112
Palicoro. l. 73
Paliſſe. u. 173
Pallantium. u. 220
Palma. u. 104, 243
Palmarde. inſ. 53
Pannieres. u. 181
Pampelun. u. 215
Panaro. fl. 79
Panditaria. inſ. 68
Panormus. u. 74
Pap Caſtle. u. 178
Papia. u. 123
Parenze. u. 105
Paris. u. 158
Pariſii. p. 157
Parma. u. 127
Parnieres. u. 181
Parthenope. u. 61
Partheis. p. 160
Paſſora. c. 71
Patrimonium Petri. p. 77
Pau. u. 181
Pavia. u. 123
S. Paul, de Vences, u. 188
Pax Julia. u. 233
Peak. m. 250
Pedeleuco. l. 88
Peligni. p. 63
Pelorus. c. 71
Pembroke. pr. 275
Pendennis. c. 266
Penkridge, u. 263
Penmarch. c. 169
Pennocrium. u. 263
Perch. pr. 165
Periglia. u. 89
Perigott. pr. 178
Perigueux. u. ib.
Peroonne. u. 162
Perpignian, u. 242
Perpinianum,
Pert. u. 159
Pertenſis, ager. ibid.
Perth. u. 284
Perug lia, u. 112
Peruſia,
Peſcara. fl. 60
Peſici. p. 220
Peſt. u. 68
Peſara. u. 82
Petavium. u. 102
Peterburgh. u. 269
St. Peters Port. u. 197
Petilia. u. 67
Petrocorii. p. 179
Petuaria. u. 263
Petula. u. 126
Peucetia pr. 64
Peuplement. u. 214
Phænicuſſæ. inſ. 80
Phæniſſa. u. 244
Phaleria. u. 112
Phintanis. inſ. 79
Phocenſes. p. 184
Philips-Town. u. 293
Philernus, fl. 64
Picardy, pr. 161
Picentini, p. 62
Pico, inſ. 234
Picentes, p. 83
Pictavia, pr. 176
Picti, p. 285
Pictones, p. 176
Pied de Port, u. 114
Piemont, pr. 132
Pienza, u. 114
Piera St. u. ibid.
Pierrefort, u. 159
Pietas Julia, u. 104
Pignarolle, u. 133
Des Pinas, c. 220
Pintia, u. 231
Piombino, u. 114
Piquigni, u. 162
Pira Sancta, u. 113
Piſa, p. u. ibid.
Piſaurum, u. 82
Piſea, fl. 79, 87
Piſſatello, fl. 79
Piſtoia, u. 113
Piſuerga, f. 231
Pityodes, inſ. 243
uſæ,
Pizoria, u. 113
Placentia, u. 127
Placuza, u. 218
Planaſiæ, inſ. 115
Plinlimon, m. 276
Pliun, u. 105
Plura, u. 146
rs,
Plumbino, u. 114
Po, fl 131
Podia, u. 185
Poictiers u. 177
Poictou, pr. 176
Poyſſy, u. 158
St. Pol de Leon, u. 167
Poſa, u. 105
Poleſine, pr. 73
Polignano, u. 65
Poligni, u. 195
Polycaſtro, r. 68
Pomegues, inſ. 197
Pamonia, inſ. 297
Pompeii, u. 61
Pompeiopolis, u. 214
Pont del Arch, u. 165
Pontana, u. 293
Pontevedre, u. 221
Pontheiu, pr. 162
Pontigni, u. 173
Pontia, inſ. 68
Pontius Pilat, m. 141
Pontoyſe, u. 164
Pontremuli, u. 118
Pontſture, u. 128
Populonia, p. 114
St. Porcin, u. 173
Portalegre, u. 233
Port Hercule, u. 114
Telamon, u. ibid.
Porto, u. 120
Berrato, u. 114
Fertaria, u. 115
Gruate, u. 104
Longone, u. 115
Real, u. 225
Urecchio, 120
Portugallia, R. 236
Portugaletre, u. 218
Portus Delphinus, u. 119
Iccius, u. 161
Romatinus, u. 104
Syracuſanus, u. 120
Poſſidonia, u. 68
Potentiæ, fl. 84
Povegia, u. 106
Poville, pr. 64
Piana, pr. 68
Powiſland, pr. 279
Præcatini, p. 68
Prenæſto, u. 87
Prato, u. 113
Praye, u. 234
Prettegowesberg, m. 113
Principate, pr, 62
Privernum, u. 88
Prochita, inſ. 70
Provence, pr. 186
Province, u. 160
Puglia, p. 64
Monte Pulciano, u. 113
Punta del Gada, u. 231
Puteolis, u. 61
Pyrenæi, m. 205
St. Patricks Purgatory, l. 292

Lib. II.

Pactia, inſ. 215
Paderborn, u. 99
Pæones, p. 155
Pægæi, u.
Pagarini, p. 143
Pagaſa, u, 200
Pagiopoli, u. 219
Pagiritæ, p. 135
Pago, inſ. u. 170
Palatinants Inferior, pr. 49
Rheni, pr. ibid.
Superior, pr. 76
Pallene, u. 202
Pamportum, u. 66
Pangæus, m. 205
Paniaſus, fl. 198
Pannodacia, pr. 167
Pannonia, pr. 152
Panormus, u. 18, 196, 202, 220
Paraſtlaba, u. 175
Paraxia, pr. 202
Parde, fl. 88
Paria, inſ. 215
Paros,
Parnaſſus, m. 193
Parocæcopolis, u. 203
Paſſaria, fl. 146
Paſſaw, n. 62
Paſſewang, u. 54
Patavia, u. 62
Patræ, u. 181
Patras, ſ. 180
St. Paul, p. u. 8
Pechora, pr. fl. u. 132
Peeland, p. 18
Pegæ, u. 189
Pegaſa, u. 200
Pegniana curia, u. 93
Peiruſtæ, p. 164
Pelaſgia, pr. 200
Pella, u. 201
Pellene, u. 181
Pelion, m. 199
Pelodes, u. 196
Peloponeſus, pr. 181
Pence, fl. 166
Peneus, fl. 180
Peparinthus, u. 211
Pera, u. 206
Perinthus, u. ibid.
Permia, pr. u. 133
Perne, u. 7
Pernow, u. 14
Perſant, fl. 85
Perſtalaw, u. 176
Perſtlaba, u. 175
Peruli, p. 85
Peſt, u. 155
Petalia, pr. 218
Petavia, u. 65
Petaw. u. 65
Petra alba. u. 198
Petrella. u. ibid.
Petrocow. u. 148
Petrowya. u. 161
Petzora. pr. fl. u. 132
Peuce. fl. 176
Pezechium. u. 175
Pfaffenhoſen. u. 70
Pfirt. u. pr. 53
Pfortheim. u. 75
Pfriemd. u. 76
Phulfinium. u. 164
Pfullendorf. 59
Phæacia. inſ. 220
Phæcacia. inſ. 214
Phænice. u. 196
Pharſalis. u. 209
Pharus. inſ. 164
Phavonæ. p. 124
Pheva. u. 181, 206
Phialia. u. 183
Philac. u. 202
Phile. u. 189
Philippe Ville. u. 10
Philippi. u. 200
Philippolis. u. 205
Philipsberg. u. 51
Philocandros. inſ. 214
Phiniotis. pr. 123
Phini. p. 147
Phinopolis. u. 206
Phiræſi. p. 124
Phlegra. pr. 202
Phocis. pr. 193
Phocuſa. inſ. 214
Phrungudiones. p. 147
Phthyotis. pr. 200
Phunduſii. p. 110
Phylace. u. 201
Phyſco. u. 202
Piarenzii. p. 174
Picardi Inferiour. pr. 9
Picenſii. p. 173
Pieria. pr. 21
Peirſchille. inſ. u. 22
Pietersborn. 111
Pigiada. u. 186
Piguritium. u. 162
Pilſen. u. 78
Pimple. m. 201
Pindus. m. 196
Pinnegue. u. 135
Pippenberg. u. 107
Piræus. u. 189
Pirethi. u. 173
Piſa. u. 183
Pizina. fl. inſ. 174
Platea. u. 192
Platze. l. 153
Pleinfelt. u. 72
Plendoſtoma. fl. 166
Pleurona. pr. u. 195
Pliskow. u. 131
Pliſſes. fl. 88
Plocksko. pr. u. 148
Podlaſſia. pr. 145
Podolia. pr. 144
Pogonock. u. 66
Polada. 170
Poland. p. 139, 148
Polino, inſ. 213
Pollen, u. 67
Poln. fl. 128
Polotskie. pr. 143
Poltovoskie. u. 145
Polyegros. inſ. 214
Polyſtillo. u. 205
Pomerania. pr. 84
Pomerella. pr. 84, 147
Pomeſan. u. 146
Pomortzi. p. 84
Pone, fl. 84
Ponsko, u. 142

Pons,

Pons Sarvix, u. 47
Pondsberg, u. 2
Pont a Moſon, u. 55
Pontico, inſ. 211
Ponticum, mare. 209
Pontus, pr. 175
Populear, fl. 216
Porphyris, inſ. 214
Poſna, u. 148
Poſonium, u. 154
Potidæa, u. 205
Potuvolo, u. 133
Pozo via, w, u. 131
Prague, u. 78
Prailaba, u. 171
Pregel, fl. 140
Premiſten, u. 145
Presburg, u. 154
Prevalitana, pr. 204
Preveſa, u. 197
Prignitz, pr. u. 81
Priſden, u. 173
Proconneſus, inſ. 209
Proponticum, mare, ib.
Propontis, fretum. ib.
Prope of Flanders, pr. 7
Pruck, u. 65
Pruſſia, pr. 145
Pruth, fl. 171
Pſalts, caſt. 50
Pfaffenhoſen, u. 70
Pfiloriti, m. 216
Pfirt, u. 52
Pskow, pr. u. 131
Pſophis, u. 183
Pſullendorf, u. 59
Puente, l. 124
Puellach, u. 52
Puntozrea, u. 131
Pydna, u. 201
Pylos, u. 183
Pyrene, fons. 187
Pyraa, pr. 209
Pythæum, ion, u. 200
Pythia, o, u. 193

Lib. III.

Pacatiana, pr. 13
Pacom, u. 225
Pactolus, fl. 18
Padan Aram, pr. 117
Pæſſa, inſ. 34
Pagnia, pr. u. 185
Palæmonium, u. 6
Palæpharphos, u. 38
Paleſcepſis, u. 15
Paleſtina Secunda, pr. 74
Paleſtine, pr. 58
Palibothra, u. 194, 198
Palmoſa, inſ. 33
Palmyra, u. 44
Palmyrene, pr. 51
Palohan, inſ. 135
Palo-Zambilan, u. 128
Palura, u. 194
Pamphilia, pr. 23
Pan, u. 82
Panarucan, u. 139
Panda, u. 169
Pandarana, u. 204
Pandioni, p. 195
Paneas, pr. u. 68
Panticapeum, u. 163
Pathia, os, inſ. 677. u. 34
Paphlagonia, pr. 7
Paracanticene, pr. 152
Paradiſus, pr. 111
Paralais, u. 22
Parenti, p. 150
Parapamiſus, m. 149
Parapomiſus, pr.
Paras, pr. 140
Paraticene, pr. 144
Paravi, p 205
Parchoatras, m. 151
Parſar, fl. 52
Pargyetæ, p. 148
Pariardi, edri, m. 123
Parium, u. 15
Parni, p. 153
Paro, u. 224
Paroetes, m. 148
Parſiana, u. 149
Parſiræ, p. 148
Parſis, u. 147
Partangale. u. 204
Parthemius, fl. 3
Parthia, pr. 150
Parthiene, pr. 152
Paſacarta, u. 151
Paſagada, grada, u. 144
Paſagardæ, p. 146
Paſarraca, u. 144
Paſiaſcus, fl. 163
Paſini vallum, fl. 143
Paſi-tygris, fl. ibid
Paſſaman, u. 225
Paſſarva, u. 224
Patanaw, pr. u. 208
Patangale, u. 34
Patara, u. 21
Pathane, pr. 209
Patmos, inſ. 30
Patras, u. 22
Patura, u. 128
Pavados, u. 221
Pedir, u. 225
Pegia, pr. 9
Pegu, pr. fl. u. 216
Peitara, fl. 173
Pelaſgia, inſ. 30
Pelethi, u. 73
Pella, u. 67
Pendalium, c. 36
Penegord, u. 207
Pengab, pr. 198
Pentalia, pr. 37
Pentapolis, pr. 711. u. 212
Penuel, u. 65
Peor, m. ibid.
Pequeno porto, u. 208
Pequin, u. 174, 185
Peran, fl. 126
Perea, pr. 62
Pergamus, u. 15
Perge, u. 23
Periano, u. 201
Periardes, m. 123
Peregrinorum, caſt. 73
Perizits, p. 87
Peripatan, u. 204
Perſepolis, u. 144
Perſia, p. 141
Perſicus, S. 146
Perſidis, Pilæ, m. 144
Perſis, pr. ib.
Peſinus, u. 13
Petra, u. 101
Petræorum civitas, 6
Petyndra, 103
Pezuari, p. 195
Phabarena, u. 8
Phœnica, u. 118
Phœnicia, pr. 42
Lybanenſis, pr. 50
Maritima, pr. ibid.
Syro-Pœhnicia, pr. ib.
Phaligga, u. 119
Phanagoria, u. 166
Phara, u, 101
Pharamica, u. 87
Pharan, def. 76
Pharas, pr. 140, 143
Pharazana, u. 148
Pharga, u. 119
Pharnacia, u. 6
Pharphar, fl. 50
Pharſiſtan, pr. 143
Phaſelis, u. 21
Phaſir, fl. u. 128
Phaſſum, u. 109
Phiara, u. 9
Philadelphia, u. 19, 53
Cæſarea Philippi, u. 70
Philippinæ, inſ. 219
Phillis, fl. 4
Phillium, u. 5
Philomenia, pr. 7
Philiſtins, p. 76
Phocea, u. 17
Phoclis, u. 148
Phradag, u. 148
Phrygia major, pr. 13
minor, pr. 11
Phryx, fl. ibid.
Phuntan, u. 100
Phyllitæ, p. 195
Pialæ, p. 57, 174
Pieria, m. pr. 41
St. Piſano, c. 36
Pigrine, u. 29
Pilæ, c. 36
Ciliciæ, m. 2, 39
Perſidis, m. 144
Sarmatiæ, m. 178
Pilgrims, caſt. 73
Pinara, u. 50
Pirathon, u. 73
Piretæ, p. 195
Piſgah, m. 62
Piſidia, pr. 22
Piſon, fl. 193
Piſo tygris, fl. 148
Pitante, u. fl. 16
Pityndra, u. 194
Pityuſa, u. 16
Plutaneſſus, u. 22
Podalia, u. 21
Poduca, u. 194
Polandas, fl. 211
Polemonium, pr. 6
Poleroone, inſ. 137
Polindæ, p. 195
Polybii, inſ. 106
Polymbothy, u. 198
Polyſanga, fl. 172, 176
Polytimetas, pr. 169
Pompeyopolis, u. 7, 162
Pontus, pr. 5
Cappadocius, pr. 6
Gallaticus, pr. ibid.
Polemoniacus, pr. 5
Poolaway, inſ. 137
Portæ Caſpiæ, u. 153
Caucaſiæ, 136
Ferreæ, caſt. ibid.
Porto Grande, u. 209
Pequeno, u. ib.
Portoſpana, u. 146
Poſſidium, inſ. 34
Pracel, inſ. 121
Præpemiſſus, u. 15
Praſii, p. 297
Precopia, u. 163
Prepeti, u. 207
Priamon, u. 225
Priapis, u. 226
Priene, u. 17
Prion, fl. 103
Prionotus, m. 198
Priocurum, u. 228
Prom, p. 212
Propontis, 2
Propthaſia, p. 147
Proſelinitæ, p. 8
Protoſeline, u. 15
Pruſa, u. 4
Pſathis, fl. 165
Pſellii. p. 166
Pſeudoſtomum, fl. 193
Pſitara, fl 174
Pterium, u. 10
Ptolemais, u 43
Punta Maſora, c. 36
Pyramus, fl. 24

Lib. IV.

Pachacama, u. 18
Pacificum, mare. 146
Pæni, p. 24
Painters Wives, inſ. 161
Palamim, fl. 122
Paliurus, u. 14
Pallas, l. 25
Palladis ara, inſ. 71
Palma, inſ. 73. u. 123
Palmarum, c. 963 fl. 124
Palmas, u. 120. inſ 125
Palms, fl. 113
Pamanuke, fl. 97
Pampelone, u. 123
Pan, inſ. 71
Panagra, u. 45
Panama, pr. 120
Panami, fl. 63
Panches, p. 121
Pango, pr. u. 66, 67
Panopolis, u. 12
Pantoia, inſ. 115
Pantilaria, inſ. u. 39
Panuca, pr. 99
Panuco, pr. 110
Papagaio, fl. 112
Papantla, pr. 111
Para, fl. pr. 140
Parætonium, u. 13
Paragoti, p. 142
Paraguay, fl. pr. 125
Paraiba, fl. pr. u. 139
Val Paraiſo, u. 133
Parana, fl. 136
Parcos, u. 129
Paria, pr. 144
Patilla, u. 128
Parimen, l. 141
Paripe, u. 139
Parthenium, mare. 13
Paſcua, u. 990. fl 106
Paſcuar, u. 111
Paſnugates, p. 108
St. Ivan de Paſto, u. 123
Patarabyes, p. 109
Patawomece, fl. 97
Pate, u. 57
Patia, u. 124
Patinicum, fl. 9
Patecui, p. 141
St. Paul, u. 72. 138 inſ. 160
Pavoaſan, u. 74
Pawatan, fl. 97
Pawtunxut, fl. ibid
Payta, u. 128
De la Paz, u. 130
Pearles, inſ. 119
Peitra Roſſa, u. 33
Peluſiacum, fl. 9
Peluſium, u. 10
Pemba, pr. 66
Pemeoke, u. 97
Pemmaquid, u. 95
Pemtegonet, fl. 92
Penco, S. 132
Penge, u. 68
Pennon de veles, u. 34
Pentapolis, pr. 15
Pepantla, pr. 115
De les Perlas, pr. 145
Pernabiacaba, m. 138
Perorſori, m 42
Perphoſius, u. ibid.
Peru, pr. fl. 124
Peruana, pr. 119
Peſcara, pr. u. 43
Petarian, fl. 106
St. Peter, fl. 160. u. 117
Peublo nevuo, u. 129
Pharao, u. 35
Pharos, inſ. caſt. 33
Philæni villa, u. 25
Philæ, u. 51
St. Philip, u. 100, 111, 120, 138
S. Philip, S. Jacob, u. 107
Philippina, u. 118
Phorca, m. 22
Phthia, u. 13
Phthuth, fl. 22
Phut, pr. ibid.
Phuth, fl. 30
Piaſtla, fl. 107
Pibeſeth, pr. 11
Piccinacoli, p. 159
Pichen, pr. 144
Pilabo, u. 108
Pilcomayo, fl. 125
Pincuria, inſ. 13
Piras, fl. 122
Piura, u. 127
De la Plata, fl. 119, 125, u. 151
Las Plaias, c. 103, 104
Plata, pr. u. 130, 136
Sebaſtian de la Plata, u. 123
New Plimouth, u. 95
Plinthine, u. 11
Pluitania, inſ. 73
Poincur, u. fl. 139
Point Antrogil, u. 70
Pomata, u. 130
Pompatao, fl. 122
Pontia, inſ. 35
Pontonchan, u. 115
Popaiana, pr. u. 124
Porco, m. 128
Des Porcos, fl. 152
Porphyrius, m. 9
Porto de Dio, u. 43
del Principe, u. 152
Raſſa, u. 13
Porto Rico, l. 45
del Riſcatto, u. 45
Seguro, u. 138
Sancto, inſ. u. 75
Porto Bello, u. 120
Præſenza, u. 91
Royal, u. 93, 100
fl. 101
Treſpiſſez, u. 91
Portus Dioſcurorum, u. 51
Evangeliorum, u. ibid.
Formoſus, u. 91
Magnus, 40
Perphoſius, u. 40
Vetus, u. 127
Poſſeſſion, inſ. 104
Potamaia, pr. 3
Poteingi, fl. 138
Potoſi, p. u. 130
Powhatan, fl. 97
Praſſum, c. 62
Prima viſta, pr. 91
Primiro, c. 160
Principis, inſ. 72
Prionotus, m. 18
Prophyritus, m. 91

Propocampeche. *m.* 115
Proſaditæ. *p.* 15
Providence. *inſ.* 147
Pſelcis. *u.* 52
Pſittacorum. terra. 159
Pſylli. *p.* 42
Ptolemæus. *fl.* 12
Ptolemais. *u.* 12,15
Ferarum. *u.* 53
Puebba de los Angelos, *u* 113
Puebla de los Canoas, *p.* 104
Puna. *inſ.* 127
Punta de Lopez Gonzales. *m.* 44
De Terra plana. *c.* 125
Purene. *pr.* 135
Purification. *u.* 107
Purzaſii. *p.* 127
Pyramides. 6
Pyrrhæi. *p.* 42
Pyſhokonnock. *u.* 97

Q.

Lib. I.

Queens County, 292
Quercu. *u.* 179
Querco gulphe. 104
Quiers. *u.* 133
Quietus *fl.* 104
Quingey. *u.* 295
Quinq; Pagici. *p.* 141
St. Quintaine. *u.* 163

Lib. II.

Quadi. *p.* 68, 80
Quakenburg. *u.* 99
St. Quaranta. *u.* 197
Quedenberg. *u.* 94
Querv ero. *ſ.* 160
Querfort. *u.* 91
Quiminio. *inſ.* 213
Quinque Eccleſiæ, *u.* 155

Lib. III.

Qangei. *p.* 188
Queilin *u.* 186
Quamtung. *u.* *ibid.*
Queio. *fl.* 184
Quemchen. *u.* 187
Quedea *u.* 216
Quiam. *fl.* 173, 184
Quilacare. *u.* 205
Quinchen. *pr.* 182
Quinſay. *pr. u.* 185

Lib. IV.

Quachimayo. *pr.* 127
Quade. *u.* 133
Quatrabarries. *u.* 107
Quatre Canagas. *u.* 108
Quebecque. *u.* 95
Quelenes. *p.* 116
Quemado. *ſ.* 127
Querandyes. *p.* 137
Quevenes. *p.* 99
Quilca. *pr.* 127
Quillmanci. *fl.* 60
Quillipiacke. *u.* 95
Quiloa. *pr.* 61. *u. fl.* 62
Quimbaia. *pr.* 123
Quimbeque. *fl.* 91
Quimbebe. *pr.* 92
Quinola. *u.* 107
Quiſoma. *pr.* 67
Quiſqueia. *inſ.* 130
Quiticui. *p.* 63
Quito. *pr. u.* 127
Quitones. *p.* 99
Quitlavaca. *u.* 112
Quivira. *pr.* 102
Quixos. *pr.* 128

R.

Lib. I.

Racline. *inſ.* 298
Radnor. *pr. u.* 275
Raiz. *pr.* 169
Rannock *fl.* 285
Ramſey. *Iſl.* 298
Rance. *fl.* 169
Rapaill. *u.* 134
Rapenwel. *u.* 140
Raduvaure. *m.* 276
Ratiaſtum *u.* 208
Ravellie. *u.* 133
Ravenna. *u.* 80
Rawren, *pr.* 140
Re a te, *u.* i 88
Recanali. *u.* 84
Recina. *u.* 97. *inſ.* 298
Reculver. *u.* 264
Redding. 266
Ree. *inſ.* 197
Reggio. *u.* 127
Regio Pedemontana. 131
Regni. *p* 262
Regnum Lepidi. *u.* 127
Reguli fanum. *u.* 285
Reinelle. *fl.* 164
Rela nzon, unos, *fl.* 231
Remes. *u.* 159
Renes. *u.* 167
Renfraw. *u.* 286
Renteria. *u.* 218
St. Reparata. *u.* 78
Retone. *fl* 102
Retraicte. *u.* 179
Reule. *u.* 181
Rhæti. *p.* 145
Rhæge. *u.* 262
Rheba. *u.* 294
Rheban. *u.* 293
Rhedones *p.* 167
Rhegium. *u.* 67
Rhemi. *p.* 159
Rhene. *fl.* 131
Rhetel. *u.* lois, *pr.* } *fl.* 163
Reetice. *p. m.* 130
Rhetico. *m.* 148
Rhigia. *u.* 294
Rhigodunum. *u.* 262
Rhobogni. *p.* 293
Rhodes. *u.* 185
Rho ſne. danus. } *fl.* 131
Rhugo. *u.* 262
Rhurupæ. *u.* *ibid.*
Rialto. *inſ.* 107
Ribadeo *u.* 222
Ribcheſter. *u.* 262
Riblecheſter. *u.* *ibid.*
Richborough. *u.* *ibid.*
Richelieu. *u.* 170
Rimine. *u.* 80
Rion. *u.* 114
Roy. *p.* 215
Ripaille. *u.* 137
Rippon. 268
Rippemont. *u.* 164
Rilano. *fl.* 104
Rivelli. *u.* 62
Robee. *fl.* 165
Rhoboghdium. *u.* 294
Roboretum. *u.* 124
Rochellu. *u.* 180
Rocheſter. *u.* 265
Rochfalcon, *u.* 178
Rochfort, *pr.* 157
Roch ſur-yon, *u.* 177
Cividad Roderigo, *u.* 234
Roffa, *u.* 265
Rochan, *u.* 167
Roma, *u.* 87
Romandiola, *pr.* 79
St. Rombert, *u.* 174
Romons, *u.* 191
Romorantin, *u.* 171
Roncevallis, *u.* 214
Ronchus, *fl.* 81
Ronda, *u.* 227
Roſanna, *u.* 66
Roſas, *u.* 241
Roſeommin, *pr. u.* 294
Roſs, *pr. u.* 275 *inſ.* 293
Roſſillan, *u.* 191
Roſſur, *u.* 351
Rothomagum, *u.* 164
Rothſay, *inſ.* 298
Rotwel, *u.* 142
Rouen, *u.* 164
Rovigno, *u.* 104
Rouvergne, *pr.* 185
Roy, *u.* 162
Rubicon, *fl.* 32
Ruddiſdale, *pr.* 262
Ruel, *caſt.* 156
Rudra, *u.* 65
Ruffis, *u.* 145
Rupella, *u.* 180
Rus, *u.* 228
Ruſcinonenſis, *pr.* 242
Ruſco, *inſ.* 300
Ruſſino, *u.* 242
Ruſſe *fl.* 131, 140
Ruſſin, *u.* 298
Ruteni, *p.* 185
Rutland, *pr.* 260
Rutili, *p.* 65, 86

Lib. II.

Rab. *fl. u.* 154
Raceburg, *u.* 92
Rachelſpurg, *u.* 65
Radiantis, *fl.* 71
Radiſch, *u.* 80
Radneby, *u.* 112
Ragnitz, *u.* 146
Raguſi, *pr. u.* 553. *inſ.* 164
Raidkeping, *u.* 110
Raine, *u.* 62
Rammekins, *caſt.* 22
Ramne, *u.* *ibid.*
Raſcia, *pr.* 172
Ratacenſi, *p.* 168
Ratibor, *u.* 81
Ratisbona, *u.* 62
Ratzenberg, *u.* 86
Rava, *pr.* 148
Raveniczen, *u.* 173
Ravensburg, *pr. u.* 99
Ravenſpurg, *u.* 98
Ravenſtein, *pr.* 45
Raveſtein, *u.* 17
Raumaricæ, *p.* 124
Rauraci, *p.* 55
Rauragnicii, *p.* 174
Rednitz, *fl.* 72
Rees, *u.* 48
Regen, *fl.* 76
Regenberg, *u.* 62
Regiacum, *u.* 7
Regimont, *u.* 146
Regius, *mons*, *u.* 50
Richenbach, *u.* 81
Rempen, *u.* 20
Rendesberg. *u.* 108
Renty, *u.* 8
Reſſel, *u.* 146
Rets, *u.* 65
Reu be bo n, *fl.* 140
Reudigni, *p.* 85
Rutling, *u.* 74
Rha, *fl.* 130
Rhæti, *p.* 58, 60
Rhætia Prima, *pr.* 60
Secunda, *pr.* 63, 71
Rhætiaria, *u.* 173
Rhetopolis, *u.* 62
Rhamnus, *u.* 189
Rheems, *fl.* 60, 85
Rheichesberg, *u.* 73
Rheineck, *u.* *ibid.*
Rhene, *fl. inſ.* 4, 38
Rhenen, *u.* 24, 98
Rhetimo, *pr. u.* 217
Rhezan, *pr. u.* 133
Rhinsberg, *u.* 47
Rhium, *c.* 181
Rhiz ana, ius, *ſ.* 162
Rod le Duke, *u.* 14
Rhodope, *m. pr.* 208
Rhodoſtolon, *u.* 175
Richecourt, *u.* 55
Richus, *u.* 111
Riexwald, *u.* 43
Riga, *u.* 141
Ringtlenſtein, *u.* 99
Rintelen, *u.* *ibid.*
Rip. Ripen, *u.* 109
Riphæi, *m.* 130
Rivallia, *u.* 141
Rochfort, *u.* 16
Rotke de Match, *u.* 13
Roclite, *u.* 88
Rodemburg, *u.* 7
Roer. *fl.* 43
Roga. *fl.* 85
Romania. *pr.* 204
Roma nova. *u.* 26
Romberville, *u.* 55
Romerſwal. *u.* 22
Romſo *inſ.* 111
Roſchild, *u.* 110
Roſindale. *pr.* 18
Roſtoch, *u.* 86
Rotelen, *u.* 75
Rotenberg. *u.* 51, 62, 73 91
Rotterdam. *u.* 20
Rotwel. *u.* 59
Rouelle. *fl.* 11
Roxalani. *p.* 145
Rubeacum, *u.* 53
Ruer. *fl.* 27
Rufach. *u.* 53
Rugard. *Caſt.* 111
Rugen. *inſ.* 85
Rugii. *p.* *ibid.*
Ruguſci. *p.* 60
Rupel. *fl.* 7
Rupelmund. *u.* *ibid.*
Ruremond. *u.* 25
Ruſchow. *u.* 130
Ruſſia. *pr.* 127
Nigra. *pr.* 144
Ruſingen. *pr.* 101
Raſtow. *u.* 131
Rutheni. *pr.* 136, 147

Lib. III.

Rabba. *u.* 64
Rabbat. *u.* 63
Rachian. *inſ.* 222
Rademporre. *u.* 291
Rag a, es, *u.* 149
Rama. *u.* 75
Ramath. *u.* 65, 78
Ramatha. *u.* 78
Rame. *pr.* 208
Ramoth. *u.* 66
Ramula. *u.* 78
Rantipore. *u.* 871
Raphaims *p.* 63
Raphia. *u.* 82
Rapfii. *p.* 144
Ravaſſa. *u.* 194
Raubem. *p.* 99
Ray. *fl.* 194
Rebat. *pr.* 196
Rebeth. *fl.* 194
Reblatha. *u.* 50
Reccath. *u.* 69
Recem. *u.* 100
Recome. *u.* 62
Recon. *pr.* 208
Red Sea. 196
Regia. 47
Orientis. *u.* 144
Regius *fl.* 111
Regma. *u.* 105
Aram-beth Rhehob. *pr.* 39
Rhehoboth. *u.* 116
Reix Magos. *inſ.* 221
Renith. *u.* 71
Rephaim. *u.* 101. *p.* 68
Res apha. eph. *u.* 50
Resburus. *p.* 201
Reuben. *p.* 65
Rha. *fl.* 165
Rhabanah. *u.* 106, 182
Rhabanei. *p.* 175
Rhadaga. *fl.* 143
Rhæteune. *c.* 10
Rhagiana. *u.* 147
Rhalmathum. *u.* 63
Rhamantus. *u.* 47
Rhamnæ. *p.* 148
Rhandamrcotta. *u.* 212
Rhea. *u.* 153
Rheg ama. ima. *u.* 105
Reganna. *u.* 100
Rheſen. *u.* 116
Rhinococura. *u.* 82. *fl.* 100
Rhizala. *u.* 226
Rhodes. *inſ. u.* 31
Rhodi a, opolis, *u.* 21
Rhogandini. *p.* 227
Rhogomants. *fl.* 144
Rhombites. *fl.* 165
Rhoxolani. *p.* 163
Rhmnus. *m. fl.* 170
Rhyndacus. *fl.* 4
Riblah. *u.* 69
Rithma. *u.* 64
Rogelim. *u.* 65
Rom. *pr. inſ.* 221
Rophitæ. *p.* 148
Rorre. *u.* 197
Roſalargium. *inſ.* 221
Roſingen. *inſ.* *ibid.*
Rozelgate. *c.* 103

Rubrum mare, 106
Rugia, u. 47
Ruficare, u. 31
Ryna, u. 124

Lib. IV.

Rabut, u 33
Reliana, fl. 118
Ramada, u. 122
Ramaſſoc. l. 95
Rameæ, inſ. 94
Rameſes, pr. 11
Rancheria, u. 122
Raponowinin, l, 141
Rapſii. p. 62
Rapta, fl. u. c. 51
Raz, c. 91
Cividad, Real, u. 116
Realeio, u. 118
Rebato, fl. 34
Redas, fl. 121
Redgooſe, inſ. 157
Reges, u. 122
Rennoſa, port. 91
Los Reyes, u. 122. port. 91, 134
Rhiobamba, u. 127
Riblera, u. 75
Coſta Rica, pr. 116
Villa Rica, u. 133
Porto Rico, I. u. 147
Del Rio, inſ. 149
Ney va Rioya, u. 45
Porto del Riſcata, u. 92
Les troyes Rivieres, fl. 92
Roakery, u. 141
Roca, inſ. 74
Rocca, inſ. 147
Roigneuſe, port. 91
Ned Roma, u. 29
Roma Nova, u. 71
Roſetta, u. 11
Pietra Roſſa, u. 35
Rotunda, inſ. 149
Rubicatus, fl. 22
Rubra Gleba, u. 11
Rubricatus, fl. 27
Ruſpinum, u. 46
Rubut, u. 34
Ryſſadius, m. 41

S.

Lib. I.

SAbatinus, l. 112
Sabaudia, pr. 134
Sabinia, pr. 79
Sabrina, fl. 252
Sacrum Promontorium, 162
Saguntum, u. 241
Sainctes, u. 179
Saincterre, u. 181
Saineterræ, u. 180
Sainterre, pr. 163
St. Albans, u. 269
St. Amand, u. 174
St. Andera, 220
St. Andre, 191
St. Andrews, l. 68. u. 285
St. Angelo, m. 66
St. Aſaph, u. 277
St. Aubin, caſt. 197
St. Barbara, u. 232
St. Baſilia, 180
St. Beat, u. 182
St. Benn. le chauſau, 174
St. Bernardino, u. 145
St. Bernard, u. 182
St. Boniface, u. 180
St. Bregou, u. 182
St. Brienne, u. 167
St. Brieu, u. ibid.
St. Brioci,
St. Catherines, caſt. 135
St. Clode, u. 158
St. Claudius,
St. Crux, u. 237
St. Davids, u. 277
St. Dennis, 158
St. Dominico, inſ. 68
St. Deſier, u. 159
St. derii,
St. Edmundsbury, u. 264
St. Eſtienne, u. 173
St. Evaſius, u. 110
St. Euphemia, 68
St. Felix, u. 270
St. Florence, 120
St. Floure, u. 174
St. Fregou. u. 181
St. Gal. u. 141
St. George, u. inſ. 237
St. Germans, u. 174
St. Gillis, u. 187
St. Guermier, u. 174
St. Hellens, inſ. 300
St. Hilary, u. 197
St. Jacamo, u. 146
St. Jago, u. 222
St. John de Angelie, 179
St. Luz, 180
St. Pied, Port, 184
St. Mons, 197
St. Johnſtown, 284
St. Julian, m. 76
St. Laurence, m. 232
St. Legier, u. 194
St. Leon, u. 95. caſt. 96
St. Loup, u. 157
St. Lucar de Baramada, 223
St. Malo, u. 167
St. Marceline, u. 191
St. Maria, u. 225
St. Maries, inſ. 68
St. u. 237
St. Martins, u. 200
St. Maudits, c. 265
St. Maurice, u. 174, 138
St. inſ. 300
St. Michael, inſ. 234
St. Monhaud, u. 163
St. Moritts, 140
St. Palæi, u. 214
St. Paul de Vences, 188
St. Peters, inſ. 79
St. Peters port, u. 197
St. Pol de Leon, u. 167
St. Porcin, u. 173
St. Quintain, u. 163
St. Reperata, u. 80
St. Rimberg, u. 174
St. Rombert, u. ibid.
St. Saviours, u. 128
St. Sebaſtians, u. 218
St. Severine, u. 65
St. Stephens, u. 174
St. Vas, u. 113
St. Valeryes, u. 165
St. Vincent, c. 238
St. Urbin, u. 159
Salares, p. 169
Salaſci, p. 116
Salamanca, u. 231
Salduba, u. 245
Salentini, p. 66
Salern, u. 62
Salii, 16, 86
Sallinellus, fl. 60
Salines, u 186
Salisbury, u. 261
Sallien, pr. 138
Salop, pr. 265
Salpe, u. 65
Salſulæ, u. 243
Salſus,
Salui, u. 62
Saluſſi, p. 133
Saluzzes, p. u. ib.
Samathan, u. 182
Samnitæ, p. 171
Samnites, p. 31
Samnium, u. ibid.
Samona, fl. 154
Samſon, inſ. 300
Sana, fl. 142
Sanarre, u. 176
Sandalione, inſ. 79
Sandham, caſt. 301
Sangueſſa, u. 215
Saniſera, u. 143
Santa Crux, u. 220
Santillana, u. ibid.
Santome, p. 179
Saragoſſa, u. 245
Saraval, u. 102
Sarazal, u. 229
Sarca, fl. 102, 118, 125
Sardaigne, pr 242
Sardano, u. ibid.
Sardinia, inſ. 31, 77
Sarenaza, u. 118
Sarezana, caſt. 112
Sargan, u. 131
Sark, inſ. 198
Sarlat, u. 178
Sarnia, inſ. 197
Sarſina, u. 81
Sarte, fl. 169
Sarum, u. 266
Saſſari, u. 80
Savardum, u. 181
Saubize, u. 180
Savillan, u. 133
Sault, fl. 159
Saumur, u. 169
Savona, u. 118
Savoy, pr. 81, 132
Saxole, u.
Scabiliſcus, u. 236
Sceaful, m. 300
Schaffehauſen, u. 141
Shetland, inſ. 298
Scilleticus ſinus, 67
Scombrarii, inſ. 243
Scone, u. 284
Scopuli Cyclopum, inſ. 76
Scotia minor, inſ. 290
Scotland, R. 282
Scultenna, fl. 80
Sealſy, u. 267
Secuſiani, p. 192
Sedani, p. 130
Sedunum, u. 138
Segalauni, p. 191
Segiſta, u. 74
Segiſana, u. 231
Segobriga, u. 240
Segontium, u. 275
Segovia, u. m. 231
Segre, u. 241
Seguria, fl, ibid.
Seguſiani, p. 174
Seile, fl. 55
Seine, fl. 193
Seira Molina, m. 210
Morena, m. ibid.
Selame, inſ. 300
Selgovæ, p. 285
Selinus, u. 72
Semur, u. 194
Semnones, p. 123
Sena Gallica, u. 83
Senones, p. 121
Sens, p. u. 159
Senes, fl. 290
Senga, fl. 258
Sengal, u. 132
Seniſii, p. 180
Senlis, u. 156
Senogalle, u. 85
Sentica, u 231
Sentinus, fl. 84
Sequana, fl. 154
Sequani, p. 195
Sercius, fl. 112
Sergorno, u. 241
Seraval, u. 103
Serum, fl. 193
Seſſa, u. 62
Seſtri, v. 118
Severn, fl. 252
Seugne, fl. 179
Seuri, p. 222
Sex Sexicarum, u. 227
Shanon, fl. 292
Showre, fl. ibid.
Shrewsbury, u. 277
Sibaris, fl. 60
Sicaria, p. l. 73
Sicilia, inſ. 31, 71
Sider, pr. 138
Siena, u. 115
Sierra Molina, 211
Novada, m. ibid.
Morena, ibid.
Sigdiles, inſ. 300
Sigeſtorii, p. 180
Signenca, u. 232
Signi, u. 163
Silarus, u. 60
Silinges, p. 223
Silliers, u. 282
Sillinæ, inſ. 299
ures,
Silly, ibid.
Silimnum, inſ. ibid.
Silvanectus, p. u. 156
Silvis, u. 234
Silures, p. inſ. 275
Silus, fl. 102
Sinnada, pr. u. 146
Sintra, u. 233
Sinueſſa, u. 62
Sion, u. 138
Sione, fl. 290
Sipontum, u. 65
Sitomagus, u. 262
Sitim, u. 138
Swell, u. 224
Skye, inſ.
Slany, fl. 292
Slego, pr. u. 294
Snowdon, m. 276
Soana, u. 114
Soaſne. fl. 154
Sobrarb, p. u. 215
Sodoro, u. 298
Sologne, pr. 171
Solothurnum, u. 140
Solway, fret. 265
Some, fl. 154
Sondrio, u. 146
Sonones, p. 81
Soria, u. 231
Sorlinges, inſ. 301
Solway, fl. 280
Somerſet, pr. 262
Sorbiodunum, u. 263
Soubſterion, u. 178
Soulac, u. ibid.
Souldre, fl. 176
Souri, u. 177
Sourigne. u. 173
Southampton, pr. 266
Southſex, pr. 265
Soyſſons, u. 163
Spain, R. 206
Spartimeute, c. 68
Spey, fl. 204
Spoleto, u. 84
Squilacy, ſ. 67
Stafford, pr. 262
Stalla, u. 146
Stamford, u. 264
Stepholm, inſ. 299
Sterling, pr. u. 284
Stæchades, inſ. 197
Stonax, u. 301
Stowre, fl. ibid.
Strombolo, inſ. 78
Strada Romana, m. 131
Strathern, pr. 285
Strathnavern, p. ibid.
Stromboli, inſ. 96
Sture, fl. 128
Sublanco, u. 220
Sucron, fl. u. 240
Suiſſiones, p. 161
Swevi, p. 222
Suffolk, pr. 262
Suiſſe, u. 62
Sulchi, u. 79
Sulmo, u. 67
Sunderland, 301
Surrey, pr. 262
Surus, fl. 240
Suſe, u. 133
Suſſex, pr. 262
Sutherland, pr. 285
Switz, Switzerland, 139
Sybaris, u. 60, 67
Signi, u. 163
Sylla, rupes. 73
Syracuſa, u. ibid.

Lib. II.

Sabaria, u. 154
Di monte Sacro, ſ. 200
Sachano, u. fl. 135
Sagona, u. 61
Saii, p. 208
St. Amand, u. 7
St. Andrews, inſ. 25
St. Bernardino, u. 146
St. Die, u. 55
St. Georges arm, c. 206
St. Georgio. u. 171
St. Hippolite, u. 55
St. Hubert, u. 4
St. Macor, u. 216
St. Maure, u. inſ. c. 197
St. Michael, u. 135
St. Miel, u. 55
St. Nicolas, u. 55. ſ. 132
St. Omar, u. 8
St. Paul, pr. u. 7
St. Thomas, u. 116
St. Truden, u. 15
St. Veit, Viti, u. 66
Sagats, inſ. 85
Sala, fl. 38, 71, 88
Salamene, c. 214
Salamis, inſ. 210
Saland, pr. 26
Salaſſia, u. 184
Salatz, fl. 52
Salii, p. 71
Salinæ, u. 168
Salona, u. 162
Saloniche, ſ. 202
Saltza. fl. 177
Saltsbach, u. 76
Saltsberg, pr. 62. u. 114
Saltus Carbonarius, pr. 10
Saltzach, fl. 62
Salutaris, pr. 204
Salza fl. 38
Samandrachi. inſ. u. 210
Sambia. pr. 145
Sambre. fl. 9
Sameſcot. u. 116
Samman. u. 123
Samogicia. pr. 142

Samonium, c. 214
Samothrace, inf. 210
Samotz Kaſelma, pr. 142
Samſoe, inf. 109
Samus, fl. 172
Santen, u. 43
Santa Quaranta. u. 197
Santorini, inf. 213
Sapæi, pr. 208
Sar, fl. 131
Sapientia, inf. 183
Sarbrucken, u. 48
Sardica, u. 206
Sardiotæ, p. 165
Sarentine, u. 86
Sarmatia Europæa, pr. 135
Sarmatici, m. 152
Saronicus, ſ. 186
Sarquius, inf. 211
Savari, p. 143
Savarden, u. 55
Saverne, u. 53
Savia, fl. pr. 152
Sauromatæ, p. 135
Sauſi, u. 16
Sauſin, u. 11
Savus, fl. 66
Saxenfelt, u. ibid.
Saxenhauſen, u. 73
Saxenkoburg, u. 69
Saxony, pr. 87,9
Scacinus, fl. 215
Scaffhauſen, u. 58
Scagen, u. 110
Schalavonia, pr. 146
Scaldis, fl. 5
Scalholt, u. 116
Scandia, pr. 112
Scandivania, pr. ibid.
Scania, pr. ibid.
Scanzia, pr. ibid.
Scara, u. 120
Scardius, m. 201
Scardona, u. 163 inf. 164
Scardonici, m. 160
Scardus, m. 167
Scarphia, u. 193
Schamlar, u. 98
Scanderborg, u. 109
Scharpe, fl. 7
Scheld, fl. 4, 9
Schelink, inf. 23
Scheburg, u. 168
Schin, u. 114
Schinuſa, inf. 214
Schleſtad, u. 53, 72
Schleſi, pr. 80
Schneberg, u. m. 89
Schon, u. 114
Schonen, pr. 112
Schonhuffen, u. 76
Schoonehoven, u. 20
Schorndorf, u. 74
Schowen, inf. 23
Schwaben, pr. 58
Schwanica, u. 162
Schwas, u. 67
Schwartz, fl. 80
Schweinford, u. 73
Schyre, pr. 62
Scyathos, inf. 211
Scilleum, c. 213
Scritari, 164
Scritones, p.
Sclavi, p. 77
Sclavonia, pr. 160
Scluſe, u. 6
Scodra, u. 162
Scombrus, m. 177
Scouri, u 184
Scopelos, inf. 211
Scopi, u 173
Scordiſci, p. 155
Scetuſa, u. 201
Scricfinnia, pr. 123
Scrieſſen, u. 50
Scrifia, u. 163
Scupi, u. 173
Scutari, u. 162
Scwanica, u. 161
Scwartzwald, m. 38
Scyculi, p. 170
Scyros, inf. 213
Scythia, pr. 204
Scythicum, mare. 115
Sebenburgen, pr. 167
Sebenic, u. 162
Sedan, unum, pr. u. 13
Segan, u. 67
Segenberg, u. 168
Segolwaria, u.
Seland, inf. 110
Selborch, u. 141
Seleſtadium, u. 53
Seleucia, u. 201
Selimbria, u. 206
Selino, u. 217
Sel.e, fl. 55
Selts, u. 53
Sem, fl. 133
Semigallia, pr. 141
Semunder, u. 173
Senderovia, u. ibid.
Sendomir, pr. u. 149
Senhunſen, u. 83
Senia, u. 103
Senones, p. 82
Senoy, inf. 15
Sepſi, p. 108
Seriphus, inf. 213
Septemcaſtrenſis, pr. 85
Serveſt, u. 90
Servia, pr. 173
Seſtos, u. 206
Sethia, m. 216
Setiri, u. 211
Sevanes, p. 64
Sevenwalden, p. 23
Severia, pr. 133
Severin, u. 172
Sevo, m. 131
Sfachia, u. 217
Sfetigrade, u. 198
Shettogenboſch, u. 17
Sibior, pr. u. 133
Sicambri, p. 5, 26
Sicenus, inf. 214
Sicilia minor, inf. 230
Siculotæ, p. 165
Sicum, u. 162
Sicwiarskey, u. 133
Sicyon, pr. u. 181
Sidion, u. 154
Sidro, u. 219
Sifino, inf. 213
Sigalones, p. 108
Sileſia, pr. 80
Siliſtria, u. 175
Silva ducis, u. 17
Simandria, u. 173
Simeren, u. 50
Singeticus, ſ. 201
Singidon, u 155
Siniſtrum, mare. 209
Sinna, fl. 71, 379
Siradia, pr. 148
Sirickzea, u. 23
Sirmium, akhen, u. 155
Siſſegia, u. 161
Siſſipolis, u. 206
Sitones, p. 124
Sittia, pr, u. 216
Skaringe liut, rupes. 110
Slea. fl. 109
Sleſwick, pr. u. ibid
Slobado, u. 130
Smalandia. pr. 120
Smalcald. u. 89
Smolensko. pr. u. 131
Sneck. u. 23
Soeſt. u. 45
Soldin. u. 83
Solms. pr. u. 69
Soltwedel. u. 83
Somerſdike. inf. u. 22
Sontina. u. 47
Sophia. u. 175
Sopran, onium, u. 154
Sora, fl. 55
Sorabii. p. 89, 173
De Sorants. inf. 109
Sore u. 110
Sorund. u. 116
Sound. freium. 110
Spa. u. 15
Spachia. m. u. 216
Spalato. u. 162
Spandaw. u. 83
Spanhem, pr. 51
Sparta. u. 184
Spenderole, u. 173
Sperchius. fl. 180
Spiras. u. 50
Spireoſtoma, fl. 166
Spittal. u. 66
Sporades. inf. 210
Spre. fl. 82
Sprenberg. u. ibid.
Stabecopen. u. 111
Stabul. ibid.
Stadt, ium. u. 99
Staffanger. u. 114
Stagira. u. 202
Stragno. u. 262
Staliment. inf. 210
Stampalia. inf. 214
Scandia. inf. 218
Staphelſtein. u. 72
Stargard. u. 85, 86
Starodus. u. 133
Staveren. u. 23
Stauroneſus. u. 50
Stechaw. u. 65
Stecholm. u. 122
Steck fan field. u. 53
Steenberg p. u. 9
Stegoe. u. 111
Steinaw. u. 81
Stellusa. u. 198
Steltium. u. 44
Stemberg. u. 110
Stenay. u. 55
Stendal. u. 83
Stendorp. u. 107
Stephanopolis. u. 168
Sternberg. u. 86
Stertius. fl. 171
Sterveſt. u. 90
Stetin. u. 85
Stiermark, ria, pr. 65
Stockholm. u. 122
Stode. u. 99
Stonib rigadum, urg, u. 173
Store. fl. u. 107
Storemarch. pr. ib.
Stracſland. u. 84
Straelen. u. 25
Straluberg. caſt. 50
Strasburg. u. 53
Straten, u. 81
Stratonice, u, 202
Strengnes, u. 120
Strigon, gman, u. 154
Strigonium, u. 154
Strimon, fl. 180
Strimonicus, ſ. 201
Strimonii, p. 208
Striſſen, u. 143
Strivali, inf. 218
Strophades, inf. ib.
Struma, fl. 102
Strybia, inf. 214
Strymon, fl. 201
Studetæ, m. 89
Stul Weſenberg, u. 154
Stutgard u. 74
Strymalus, fl. 180 u.l. 183
Styx, fl. 183
Suanetes, p. 60
Suardones, p, 88
Subalingii, p. 108
Sucoma, fl. 167
Sudavia, pr. 146
Suderman, pr. 122
Sudetæ, m. 38
Sudini, p. 147
Sueci, p. 119
Suenits, u. 89
Suentin, c. 108
Suevia, pr. 58
Suevicum, mare. 110
Suevi Lygii, p. 149
Suevus, fl. 82
Sugart, u. 84
Suiborch, u. 111
Suiones, p. 124
Sulanes, p. 147
Sumium, u. 185
Sunberg, u. 142
Sunderberg, u. 111
Sundt, fret. 110
Sungovia, pr. 53
Sumium, r. 213
Sunnerberg, u. 83
Suras, u. 145
Sure, fl. 134
Surick, u. ibid.
Surland, pr. 98
Suſatum, u. 44
Suſdali, u 134
Suſenberg, u. 75
Swartzach, fl. 81
Swartzemburg, u. 73
Swaim, u. 81
Swecl, p.
Sweden, R. 122
Sweibrucken, u. 50
Swethici, ans, land, 119
Swiote, fl. 142
Swol, u. 24
Swerin, l. 89
Sy bora, oite, u. 196
Syderocaſpæ, u. 202
Syntice, pr. 201
Syphnus, inf. 214

Lib. III.

Sabæ, u. 104
Sabacamber, l. 153
Sabadibæ, inf. 211
Sabei, p. 104
Sabalaſſa, fl. 194
Sabana, u. 212
Sabara, u. ibid.
Sabaræ, p. 194
Sabbatha, u. 105
Sabe, u. ibid.
Sabis, u. 146
Sabota, u. 105
Sabran, u. 111
Sacæ, p. 168, 176
Sacer, finus, 105
Sachalites, ſ. ib.
Sachian, u. 175
Sada, u. 212
Sadani, pr. 194
Sadus, fl. 211
Sæta, u. 176
Saffar, u. 72
Sagadana, u. 121
Sagalaſſa, u. 22
Saganis, fl. 145
Sagappa, fl. 193
Sagareus, fl. 145
Sagartii, p. 140
Sagdana, inf. 146, 223
Sageda, u. 194
Sagua, u. 13
Salæ, p. 227
Salambria, u. 9
Salamine, inf. 35
Salamis, u. ibid.
Salarus, fl. 145
Salatare, p. 155
Salchalite, p. 104
Saldino, fl. 41
Salice, inf. 227
Salinæ, p. u. 35
Salmacis, fl. 20
Salur. u. 194
Salutaris, pr. 164, 699, 79
Samachonitis, l. 61
Samara, u. 225
Samarchand. u. 170
Samaria. pr. u. 71
Samaritan, inf. 106
Samba. u. 212
Sambri. u. 225
Samia. u. 32
Samidace. fl. 145
Samir. m. 52, 58
Samocolchi. p. 168
Samos. inf. 30
Samoſata. u. 50
Samoyedæ. p. 165
Samrom. m. 70
Samus. u. 194
Sancey. l. 11
Sandabilis. inf. 194
Sanga. pr. 200
Sangarius ari. fl. 3:4,13
Saagermanicum. u. 163
Sanglai. pr. 181
Sanguin. inf. 223
Saphan. 151
Saphar. u. 105
Saphet. 69
Saphra. u. 105
Sapires. p. 131
Sappara. fl. 194
Saraceni. p. 199
Sarapias. inf. 114
Sarata. u. 184
Sarcan. pr. 18
Sardis. u. ibid.
Sardonyx. m. 192
Sarepta. u. 44
Sargarenſene. pr. 10
Sath. pr. 114
Saringa. u. 201
Sarmagana. u. 140
Sarmatiæ pylæ. 165
Sarmatia. pr. 11, 40
Aſiatica. pr. 160
Europæa. pr. 155
Saron. m. 62. u. 73
Sarphath. u. 44
Sarra. u. ibid.
Sarama. u. 201
Sorug. 119

Saſones.

The TABLE.

Safones, p. 171
Safvar, u. 150
Saragam, u. 209
Sataros, u. 21
Sattalia, u. f 24
Satyrorum, f. inf. 210
Savadii, p. 155
Saubeni, p. 171
Saum, u. 144
Sauran, u. 201
Sauromatæ, p. 164
Sauſtene, pr. 198
Sauta, u. 176
Sazotæ, p. 140
Scamander, fl. 4, 11
Scamandria, u. 12
Scandeloro, u. 25
Scanderone, u. ibid.
Scaragirzick, u. 167
Scarpanto, inſ. u. 34
Scheheruſal, u. 116
Schenitæ, p. 99
Scepſis, u. 15
Scernus, u. fl. 198
Scind, fl. 194
Scianhay, u. 186
Scimnitæ, p. 168
Scirtas, fl. 117
Scordæ, p. 155
Scordiſcus, m. 3
Scutari, u. 4
Scythia, pr. 169
Extra Imaum, 175
Intra Imaum, ibid.
Scythicus Oceanus, u. 176
Scythopolis, u. 53, 68
Sebaſtia, u. 6, 126
Sebaſtopolis, u. 16
Sebat, inſ. 221
Seboim, u. 78
Secanda, pr. 152
Seci, p. 168
Sede Aram, pr. 38
Segui, u. 174
Seir, m. 82
Sela, u. 143
Selah, u. 101
Selebes, inſ. 222
Selucia, u. 22, 24, 48, 114
Seleucis, pr. 56
Selge, u. 22
Selliſture, u. 167
Semanthinus, m. 211
Semantini, p. m. 187
Semia, pr. 1
Semiramis, m. 145
Semiſcaſach, u. 100
Semni, p. 227
Senderem, u. 225
Senarpate, u. 208
Senus, fl. 181
Sephar, m. 1, 22
Sepharvaim, u. 55
Sephet, u. 69
Sephoris, u. 71
Sera, u. 174
Serapias, inſ. 104
Seres, p. 160
Serica, pr. m. 174
Seriphi, m. 150
Serkeff, u. 201
Seſtan, u. 197
Seta, u. 172
Shamaki, u. 142
Sheirvan, pr. 141
Shenith Kiriathaim, u. 63
Sherrie, u. 41
Shiras, u. 144
Shuah, u. 100
Shuſhan, u. 143
Siam, pr. 214, 216
Sicaria, pr. 100
Siceleg, u. 76
Sichem, or u. 73
Side, u. 23
Sidon, u. 44
Sigæum, u. 12
Sigan, ngan, u. 185
Siganeam, u. 128
Sigara, u. 148
Sige, u. ibid.
Sigeſtan, u. ibid.
Sihon, m. 58
Silo, u. 73
Silvanpede, p. 218
Simeon, p. 78
Simergan, u. 201
Similla, u. 194
Simocis, res, fl. 4, 11
Simondi, inſ. 227
Sin, u. 100. u. 148
Sinæ, p. 178
Sinai, m. 101, 212
Sinda, fl. 200. u. 212
Sindæ, inſ. 219
Sincapura, u. 215
Sinchi, p. 163
Sindocandæ, pr. u. 226
Singara, u. 118
Singas. fl. u. 50
Sintacora, u. 203
Sinthum, fl. 193
Sio, u. 29
Sion, m. 62. u. 224
Sipilas, m. 18
Sipparum, u. 115
Sipphora, u 71
Sirace, u. 116, 129
Sirbon, l. 82
Siriangh, Caſt. 217, 223
Siripur, u. 209
Sirne, inſ. 35
Siſnam, pr. 179
Siſtan, u. 148
Sittacene, pr. 115
Sittim, u. 65
Sizyges, p. 174
Smyrna, u. f. 17
Soa, fl. 194
Soana, fl. pr. 130
Arum Sobab, pr. 39
Sobura, u. 194
Socani, p. 168
Socotai, u. 215
Socratis, inſ. 103
Sodom, u. 61
Sogdiana, pr. 169
Sogdii, m. ibid.
Soli, æ u. pr. 25
Solor, inſ. 225
Solſette, u. 204
Solyma, u. 21
Sommongul, pr. 178
Sophene, pr. 126
Sophtha, inſ. 146
Sor. u. 43
Sora, u. 194
Sorabus, fl. 194
Soria, pr. 38
Soringi, p. 194
Soſippus, u. 105
Sotera, u. 149
Spahan, u. 151
Spawhawn, u.
Spane, fl 164
Spatana, u. 226
Stabæi, u. 145
Stathmus, u. 194
Stella, m. 6
Stomalimne, u. 34
Stragioni, u. 87
Straræ, fl. 139
Straton, u. 75
Strava, u. 152
Strongalus, m. 145
Suaſſia, u. 127
Suaſtus, fl. 194
Subleſtan, pr. 148
Subut, inſ. u. 211
Succoth, u. 65
Succui, u. 176
Sucheau, u. 186
Suchuen, pr. ibid.
Suente, u. 53
Sues, u. 103
Sueta, u. 67
Suiria, pr. 136
Sultane puare, u. 198
Sultania, pr. 140
Sumachia, u. ibid.
Sumahania, pr. 176
Sumatra, inſ. 219
Sun, u. 227
Sunda, u. 224
Sundiva, u. 217
Sunnien, u. 185
Sur, pr. u. 101. u. u. 220
Sura, u. 51, 224
Surat, u. 202
Surium, u. 129
Surrabaia, u. 224
Surungo, u. 220
Suſa, u. 140, 143
Suſiana, pr. 143
Suſnam, pr. 179
Suur, u. 0
Suzæi, u. 145
Swalley, u. 202
Sybaris, u. 128
Sychi, m. p. 169
Syeri, p. 148
Synda, ſ. 165
Syndaga, u. 151
Syngarus, fl. m. 118
Synnada, u. 13
Synope, u. 6
Syra, u. 203
Syria, pr. 38
Damaſcene, pr. 50
Maacha, pr. 51
Salutaris, pr. 53
Secunda, pr. ibid.
Transfluvialis, pr. 116
Propria, pr. 47
Syrion, m. 52, 58
Syro Media, pr. 142
Syro Phœnicia, pr. 52

Lib. IV.

Saba, u. inſ. 149
Sabian, pr. 52
Sabaitticum, u. 55
Sabath, u. 15
De Sable, inſ. 94
Sabratha, u. 25
Sachimilci, p. 113
Sacolche, u. 52
Saddle, inſ. 157
Sagahadoc, fl. 96
Sagamedrum, pr. 53
Sagapola, m. 41
Saguenay, fl. 92
Saiet, u. 12
Sais, u. 11
De Sal, fl. 29, 107
Sala, fl u. 33
Salado, fl. 136
Salamanca, u. 115, 120
Salathus, fl. 41. u. 50
De Salaya, u. 114
Saldæ, u. 29
Ben Salem, u. 161
Salera, u. 25
Salet, u. 15
Salina, pr. 144
De Salinas, pr. 126
Salis, inſ. 73
Salla, u. 34
Sal nitri, m. 66
St. Salvador, fl. u. 139, u. 136, 151, 152
Salud, pr. 10
Samana. pr. 150
Samovia, pr. 99
Samſonate, u. 115
Sanaga, pr. fl. 45
Sandi, pr. 66
Santa, pr. 128
Santar, u. 53
Santos, u. 138
Todos los Sanctos, pr ſ. 138
Sapayoy, p. 142
Sardinia, inſ. 120, 122
Sardinilla, fl. 120
Sargel, u. 29
Sarra, pr. 41
Saſques-hanaxi, p. 96
Sat Gemor, fl. 24
Saturn, c. 51
Satyrorum, m. 50
Saud, pr. 10
St. Saviour, pr. u. 116
fl. 136
Saymæ, p. 142
Scanderia, u. 12
Scaniticum, fl. 10
Scotia Nova, pr. 92
Scyapodæ, p. 2
St. Sebaſtian, fl. u. 107, u. 121. ſ. 138. 160
De la Plata, u. 124
Secatan, u. 97
Sacco, fl. 99
Secſina, u. 31
Segelmeſſe, pr. u. 41
Segocker, u. 95
Segovia, u. 118, 146
Segura, u. 114
Seguro, pr. u. 137
Seio, pr. 102
Seligus, m. 36
Selir, u. 56
Senega, fl. 45
Senecu, u. 109
Neuſtra Sennora, pr. 133
Septa. u. 35
Las Sepulturas. u. 129
Sequana. fl 99
Serapionis. c. 51
Seregippe. u. 139
Serena. u. 133
Serrævatis. fl. 99
Servi. fl. 34
Steviletta. u. 109
Sevilla. u. 153
Del Oro. u. 128
Seuta. u. 36
Shycoake. u. 97
Siara. pr. 139
Sibalds. inſ. 159
Sibeca, u. 25
Sibnit. u. 12
Sicca Venetia, u. 26
Sierra Complida. m. 65
Leona. c. 44
De Sol. m. 65
Siſelmel. fl. 30
Siga. u. 29
Signiti. p. 12
Simbus. u. 64
Sinſalida ſ. 133
Siſaris. fl. 22
Siſſeva fl. 31
Siticenſis pr. ibid.
Sitiphis u. ibid.
Smiths Bay. ſ. 157
Sobus. fl. 41
Sococha. u. 136
Soconuſco. pr. 115
Socorra. u. 109
Socotara inſ. 72
Sofala. pr. u. 62
De Sol. m. 66
Soldania. u. 65
Solis promont. 32
Solomonis. inſ. 160
Songo pr. u. 67
Songus. u. 47
Sorberes. fl. 22
Theon Soterum. u. 51
Souriquois. pr. 94
Spiritus Sancti fl. 99, 127, u. 108, 115, 138
Scachiris. fl. 39
Stadaones. u. 93
Statenland. pr. 159
St. Stephen port. 134
St. Stevan del puerto. u. 119
Sua. pr. 53
Suachen. u. 55
Subeit. u. 32
Subur. u. fl. 29
Suechæ. u. 56
Succhæi. p. 49
Succoſii. p. 30
Sues. u. 9
Suluce u. 45
Sumbrero. inſ. 149
Summer. inſ. 98
Sun. c. 34
Sunda. pr. u. 67
De Surta. ſ. 23
Suſa. fl. pr. 31
De buen Suſcia. u. 160
Suſolas. pr. 99
Syene. u. 13
Syſura. l. 25
Syrtis, major. 14
Minor. 25

T.

Lib. I.

Tænarus. fl. 128
Tævina. fl. 270
Tafalla u. 215
Taffe. fl. 276
Tagus. fl. 211
Talbora. u. 230
Talente. C. 193
Taluera de la Regna. u. 229
Talzali. p. 285
Tame. fl. 269
Tamia. u. 286
Tanaus. u. 146
Tankerville. u. 165
Taodunum. u. 184
Taracina. u. 87
Taraſcon. u. 188
Tardera. fl. 241
Tarentais. u. 134
Tarentum. u. 67
Tariffe. u. 224
Taretta. fl. 73
Tarbe. u. 182
Tartas. u. 183
Tarragon. u. 241
Tarteſſus. inſ. u. 223
Tarraconenſis. p. 212
Tavenſis. u. 275
Tavila. u. 234
Taulon. u. 187
Taurini. p. 133
Tauroentium. u. 187
Tauromenium. u. 75

The TABLE.

Tais, Ty, fl. 284
Techo, fl. 242
Tectosages, p. 185
Teio, u. 146
Port Telamon, u. 115
Temd, fl. 276
Tenos, fl. 223
Teranum, u. 63
Tercera, inf. 234
Tereus, fl. 74
Tergestum, u. f. 103
Ternay, u. 191
Terraciola, u. 114
Terra de La voro, 61
Otranto, 65
Nova, u. 66
Thamisis, 252
Thanet, inf. 300
Thelis, fl. 242
Theo, fl. 175
Thetford, 267
Tholone, u. 186
Tholousa, u. 185
Thorney, u. 267
Thouars, u. 177
Thulenſel, inf. c, 299
Thurles, u. 294
Thraſymene, l. 33
Tibur, u. 87
Tibris, fl. 32
Ticinns, f. u. 32, 123
Tieraſchie, pr. 163
Tiliaventum, fl. 103
Timavo, fl. ibid.
Tine, fl. 251
Tingitana, pr. 212
Timavus, fl. 102
Tinnetio, tzen, u. 146
Tiphendum, u. 85
Tipperary, pr. 294
Tirconnel, pr. 293
Tir Oen, pr. ibid.
Tirolis, pr. 130
Tividale, pr. 285
Tivoli, u. 86
Toam, u. 294
Todi, u. 85
Toledo, pr. u. 229
Toloſates, p. 184
Tolo[s]a, erre, u. 218
Torcella, inf u. 104
Torceſter, u. 263
Tormes, fl. 231
Torney, fl. 193
Toro, u. 220
Tordeſillas, u. 231
Tortoſa, u. 241
Tourein, pr. 169
Tourney, u. 161
Tours, u. 169
Tournus, u. 194
Tramontani, p. 220
Tranum, u. 65
Trapani, u. 74
Travaſede, u. 146
Travignano, inf. 120
Tredagh, u. 293
Treguier, u. 167
Treinac, u. 178
Treiſſa, fl. 115
Tremitana, inf. 68
Trent u. 252. fl. 162
Treport u. 110
Treviſo, u. 102
Tricaſſes, p. 160
Trieaſſin, u. 191
Trieſte, u. 104
Trilenum, u. 222
Trim, u. 293
Trinacria, inf. 72
Trinobants, p. 263
Tripontium, u. ibid.
Troya, u. 65. inf. 115
Tronto, fl. 60, 91
Troys, u. 160
Tude, u. 222
Tudela, u. 215
Tudertum, u. 85
Tueſis, u. 285
Tui, u. 222
Tulles, u. 178
Turduli, p. 226
Turdinati, p. ibid
Turenne, u. 174
Turin, u. 133
Turones, p. 169
Turrita, u. 78
Turſaubica, u. 182
Turi, u. 171
Tuſcany, pr. 111
Tuſci, p. ibid.
Taſculum, u. 86
Twedale, pr. 285
Tweed, fl. 251
Twomond, pr. u. 294
Tyrrenum, mare. 92
Tyvie, fl. 276

Lib. II.

Tabarnæ, u. 54
Tabor, m. u. 78
Tænar[ia], us, m. 184
Tagurimus, inf. 164
Talauſii, p. 199
Tanais, fl. 129
Tangermond, u. 83
Tarchzal, m. 152
Tarnaw, u. 161
Tarona, u. 196
Mordwit Tartari, p. 134
Tatri, m. 152
Taureſium, u. 173
Taurisci, p. 168
Tauri[u]rum, u. 155
Taygetus, m. 181
Tegra, u. 183
Teia, fl. 81
Teina, u: 171
Teiſterbant, 43
Telchionia, inf. 214
Toleboas, inf. 219
Telge, u. 122
Tellinkſt, u. 107
Teln, fl. 171
Ternes, fl. 172
Temeſwar, u. 155
Tempe, pr. 199
Tenos, inf. 212
Tentiburgium, u. 155
Tergoe, u. 23
Tergoviſta, u, 171
Termes, fl. 166
Terneſt, u. 141
Ternova, u. 175
Terpillus, u. 202
Tervana, win, u. 8
Tetrapolis, inf. 219
Terrapurgum, u. 173
Teutoburgum, u. 42
Tutoni, p. 101
Texel, inf. 22
Teya, fl. 64
Thalaſia, inf. 210
Thann, u. 53
Thuſſus, inf. u. 210
Thearus, fl. 205
Thebes, u. 189
Themene, u. 217
Theonville, u. 13
Thon Trapeza, inf. 214
Thera, inf. ibid.
Therafia, inf. 213
Thermaicus, ſ. 201
Thermopylæ, 188
Thermus, u. 195
Theroven, u. 7
Theſpias, u. fl. 192
Threſpotia, pr. 196
Theſſalonica, u. 202
Theſſaly, pr. 199
Theuſia, inf. 213
Theuſtad, pr. 124
Thinnius, inf. 209
St. Thomas, u. 116
Thorda. u. 168
Thrace, pr. 204
Thronium, u. 194
Thulana, u. 184
Thule, inf. 116
Thyamis, fl. 196
Thyland, pr. 109
Thyras, pr. 205
Thyſtad, u. 110
Tiberina, u. 62
Tibiſcus, fl. 153
Tibiſum, u. 175
Tiel, u. 25
Tilmont, u. 17
Tirangetæ, p. 89
Tirolis, pr. 67
Tiſſe, fl. 153
Titius, fl. 160
Tockay, u. 154
Togrop, u. 111
Tolen, inf. u. 23
Tolbiacum, u: 47
Tomiſwar, u. 195
Tomos, u. 176
Tonagra fl. 83
Tongri, p. 4, 17
Tonsberg, u. 114
Tooma, u. 132
Torgow, u. 87
Torneſe, u. 182
Torona. u. 122
Toronicus, ſ. 201
Toul, u. 55
Touaney, u. 7
Trabel, u. 82
Trætzen, u. 186
Traguelle, u. 120
Tra{gurium, hu, n,} u. 164
Trajana-colonia, u. 43
Trajanopolis, u. 206
Trajectum, u. 24
Ad Moſam, 15
Tranſalbini, p. 98
Tranſilvania, pr. 167
Tranſiſulania, pr. 24
Traſobus, m. 96
Trave, fl. 106
Traun, fl. 62
Traunſheim, u. ibid.
Treiden, fl. 141
Trelleberg, u. 112
Tremonia, u. 45
Tremuen, u. 107
Trent, u. 67
Treſcorum, u. 171
Trevers, pr. 363 u. 49
Triballi, p. 175
Tribet, u. 82
Tribochi, p. 55
Tribſca, u. 84
Tricia, u. 200
Tricoritum, u. 180
Tricorneſii, p. 173
Tridentum, 67
Triers, pr. u. 48
Trieſte, fl. 59
Trimontium, u. 207
Tripolis, u. 200
Triſtolus, u. 201
Tritæa, u. 181
Trock, pr. 143
Troglodytæ, p. 176
Trophonium antrum, 192
Trotmanni, p. 45
Trulle, fl. 9
Trundheim, pr. u. 114
Tſheerenburg, pr. u. 26
Tubero. fl. 71, 50
Tubingen, p. 74
Tuen, inf. 109
Tuent, pr. 25
Tuentana regio, 45
Tuſcia, pr. 120
Tuiſcones, p. 38
Tuitchberg, u. 43
Tulla, u. 133
Tullum, u. 55
Tungres, u. 15
Tupatum, u. 141
Turchein, u, 53
Turcilingii, pr. 89
Turingia, pr. 89
Turluch, u 75
Turontus, fl. 129
Tufinge, inf. 111
Tuver, pr. 134
Twentzen, pr. 45
Twerde, u. 135
Twiſt, fl. 97
Tychenberg, opolis, u. 107
Tydſholmes, inf. 110
Tykdiskin, u. 145
Tyna, inf. 212
Tyras, fl. 140
Tyrinthia, u. 186
Tyriſſa, u. 201
Tyrol, pr. u. 67

Lib. III.

Taban, u. 224
Tabiana, inf. 146
Tabiene, pr. 152
Tabor, m. 178. pr. 184
Tabyn, c. 175
Tachori. p, 169
Tacola, u. 212
Tacoræi, p. ibid.
Tadmer, u. 53
Taggal, u. 224
Tagma, u. 211
Tagurus, m. 174
Taine, pr. 181
Tainf, pr. 176
Taiopura, u. 223
Taitan, pr. 184
Taitung, u. 189
Talachbacora, u. 8
Talacorum, u. 227
Tamaoratas, u. 223
Tamaſſus, u. 35
Tambrace, u. 152
Tamer, u. 204
Tamlico, fl. 199
De la Tana, l. 162
Tanai, u. 873
Tainaior. u. 207
Tanais, fl. 163
Tanamaca, u. 227
Tanas, u. 163
Tandair, inf. 221
Tangis, pr. 184
Tangu, pr. u. 212
Tanguth, pr. 176
Tania, pr. 178
Tanium, u. 8
Tanor, u. 205
Taphis, fl. 194
Taphræ, os, u. 165
Taporæi, pr. 172
Taprabone, inf. 226
Tapyri, p. 153
Tarachi, u. pr. 227
Tariana, u. 143
Tarichæa, u. 70
Tarnaſſari, u. 207
Tarſiana, u. 143
Tarſus, u. 25
Tartar, pr. 178
Tartaria, pr. 161
Antiqua, pr. 178
Deſerta, pr. 165
Precopienſis, pr. 162
Taſale, u. 211
Tavai, u. 216
Tavium, u. 8
Tauri, p. 164
Taurica Cherſoneſus, ib.
Tauris, u. 140
Tauro-Scythia, pr. 164
Taurus, m. 2. 21. 106. 123
Tawgebawr, u. 151
Taxda, u. 209
Taxiana, inf. 146
Taxigea, u. 195
Taxilla, u. ibid.
Taybynco, pr. 181
Tecoa, u. 76. 146. 225
Tectoſages, p. 8
Teſlis, u. 130
Teleba, u. 131
Telmediſſa, u. 48
Telmeſus, u. 21
Temela, fl. 211
Tenduc, pr. 178
Tenedus, inf. u. 27
Tenza, pr. 224
Teos, u. 17
Teraſſa, u. 96
Terebinth, vallis, 80
Terenate, inf. 222
Termeſſus, u. 32
Terolli, u. 227
Terra Incognita, 174
Sancta, 59
Terrao, inf. 228
Terſia, u. 25
Terzah, u. 72
Tetrapolis, inf. 34
Teveſa, l. 86
Thamnitina, u. 75
Thara, u. 101
Tharo, inf. 107
Tharſacus, u. 100
Thaygin, caſt. 181
Thebes, u. 72
Thebet, pr. u. 178
Thelbis, u. 131
Thelpitis, l. 126
Theman, u. 106
Themyſcira, pr. u. 6
Themnath Chares, u. 75
Theodori, u. 28
Theodoſia, u. 162
Theodoſiopolis, u. 127
Theophanius, fl. 165
Theopolis, u. 50
Theredon, u. 113
Thermæ, u. 8
Thermodon, fl. 3, 6
Therſageræ, p. 166
Thiſbe, u. 66
Theſiris, fl. 165
Theſpia, u. 127
Thiatyra, u. 19
Thiencin, u. 186
Thine, u. 184
Thini, p. 4
Thobeli, p. 111
Thocari, p. 815
St. Thomas, u. 208
Thonitis, l. 126
Thoron, u. 70
Threani, p. 175
Throni, c. 36
Thumenenſes, p. 165

Thumenſes,

The TABLE.

Thumenſes, p. 167
Thyboncaſtus, u. 212
Thyni, p. 2
Tibareni, p. 7
Tiberias, u. l. 70
Tiberiopolis, u. 13
Ticuarinum, inſ. 203
Tidor, inſ. 222
Tigado, u. 148
Tigrane certa, u. 126
Tigris, fl. 115, 126
Tilæda, pr. 212
Tilegramocum, u. 194
Timagenis, inſ. 103
Timocani, u. 148
Timor, inſ. 226
Tina, u. fl. 194
Tindis, fl. 194
Tiphon, fl. 41
Tippura, pr. 208
Tiſa, u. 145
Tiſhbe, u. 67
Tmolus, m. 3, 18
Tob, u. 66
Tol, pr. 47
Tolenc hia, pr. 184
Toli boſti, ſtobogi, p. 7
Tolius, fl. 34
Tomanis, u. 130
Toporus, m. 169
Torrens Ægypti, fl. 101
Tortora, u. 73
Tortoſa, u. 45
Toſa, inſ. u. 220
Toſarene, pr. 126
Tou, pr. 147
Touſa, inſ. u. 220
Black Tower, 14
Maden Tower, 3
Trabezond, u. 6
Trachonitæ, m. p. 66
Traconitis, pr. 66
Trajanopolis, u. 11, 15
Trajanus, fl. 101
Trallis, u. 20
Tramopatan, u. 204
Trancanor, pr. u. 205
Trapano, c 31. u. 33
Trapezus, u. 6
Travancor, pr. u. 20
Tremelli, u. 89
Tremigen, pr. 150
Tremitus, u. 35
Trequi Lemale, u. 227
Tretos, u. 105
Triala, u. 130
Tribarra, u. 169
Trinnacria, inſ. 34
Tripolis, u. 44
Troas, pr. u. 12
Alexandri, u. ibid.
c
Tro mi, p. 7
g
Trogyllium, inſ. c. 17
Trojanopolis, u. 16
Tropatene, pr. 139
Troy, u. 12
Troyan, u. 141
Trulla, u. 105
Tryglyphon, u. 214
Tſarah, u. 76
Turdæ, p. 166
Turcheſtan, pr. 170
Turcoman, u. 125
Turgana, inſ. 104
Tuſſagetæ, p. 133
Tutta, pr. u. 201
Tyana, u. 9
Tylus, inſ. 107
Tyndis, u. 194
Tyrambe, pr. 166
Tyre, u. 44
Tyrina, inſ. 104
Tzini, pr. 184
Tzor, u

Lib. IV.

Tabago, inſ. 144
Tabaſco, pr. 115
Tabenna, u. 16
Tabraca, u. 27
Tacapa, u. 36
Tacaſſi, fl. 50
Tacoantepeque, u. 115
Tacunga, u. 127
Tadonſac, u. 92
Tafilete, u. 43
Tafixa, pr. 115
Tagavaſt, u. 31
Tagleſſe, u. 32
Tairona, m. 122
Tagreſſa, u. 31
Taladuſii, p. 29
Talaveta, u. 136
Tamachala, fl. 106
Tamaraca, inſ. 139
Tamarind, u. 71
Tameclipa, u. 110
Tameſcot, fl. 95
Tampice, u. 110
Tanalemeque, u. 122
Tanape, u. 52
Tanchipa, u. 110
Tanger, u. 35
Tanne, fl. 152
Tanparamunen, u. 141
Tapeſipe, u. 139
Taquinite, u. 110
Tarapia, pr. 130
Tarentines, p. 96
Targa, *defert.* 42
Tarixa, u. 136
Tarodant, u. 31
Tarorequi, inſ. 121
Tarrahumares, p. 109
Tebelbeti, p. u. 43
Tebocrit, u. 29
Techort, u. 43
Tecoantipeque, u. 114
Tecpatlan, u. 116
Teculeth, u. 32
Tedles, pr. ibid.
Tedneſt, u. ibid.
Tedza, u. 31
Tefethne, u. 32
Teffet, u. 43
Tegaſſa, u. 36
Tegaza, u. 44
Tegeſta, pr. 100
Tegorarin, pr. u. 41
Teijent, u. 31
Teleuſine, u. 29
Temeſna, pr. 33
Temiano, pr. 48
Temeſitan, u. 113
Temnella, u. 31
Tenariffe, inſ. u. 74
Tenent, u. 32
Teneracoſt, u. ibid.
Tenezze, u. 31
Tenterbeley, pr. 160
Tenſiſt, fl. 30
Tentyra, inſ. u. 12
Teozopotlan, u. 115
Tepanecæ, p. 113
Tepecſuan, m. 106
Tepique, pr. 108
Tepoanes, p. 109
Terga, u. 32, 36
Teſſeguelt, u 32
Teſraſt, u. 31
Teſſet, pr. u. 43
Teſza, u. 32
Tetrapyrgia, u. 18
Tetuan, u. 22
Teyeget, u. 35
Tezcuco, u. 112
Tezergui. 34
Tezza, u. 34
Tezzora, u. 34
Thagia, u. 33
Thala, m. 40
Thaluſſii, p. 29
Thambes, m. 22
Thebais, pr. 9
c,
Theb pr. 12
o,
Tharra, pr. 107
Thebuaca, u. 27
Themiſa, u. 26
Theon-Soterum, u. 51
Thizibi, m. 25
Thomebamba, u. 127
St. Thomas, inſ. 72
u. 104, 143
De Caſtille, u. 116
Thornbay. 91
Thriſitides, inſ. 70
Thuburnica, u. 27
Thumondacana, u. 45
Thuniſa, u. 26
Thyſtrus, u. ibid.
Tiaguanaco, u. 128
Tic, u. 32
Tigedent, u. 29
Tigrai, pr u. 52
Tigremaon, pr. ibid.
Tiguez, pr. u. fl. 102
Timana, u. 124
Timbues, p. 137
Timugedit, u. 43
Tingis, u. 35
Tingitana, pr. 32
Titicaea, l. 127
Trivitivas, pr. 143
Tlaſluici, p. 113
Tlaſcalla, pr. u. 114
Tſalcaltecæ, p. 113
Tmodes, m. 13
Toa, fl. 149
Toberaum u. 43
Toboſi, p. 109
Tockaes, p. 141
Todes Sanctos, pr. ſ. 139
Togadſt, u. 32
Toitona, u. 121
Tolen, u. 52
Tolu, u. 121
Tombez, fl. 127
Tombutum, pr. u. 46
Tomina, u. 136
Tomoes, p. 141
Tongum, u. 63
Tonica, u. 52
Tontrac, l. 103
Topia, u. 122
Topocalma, fl. 133
Toppahanoc, fl. 97
Tormentoſa, c. 65
Toron, fl. 103
Torra, pr. 63
Torrates, p. u. 52
Tortuga, inſ. 101, 147
Toſtigos, inſ. 147
Toycania, u. 123
Tradacta, Julia, u. 35
Tralan, fl. 11
Tranſfretana Hiſpania, pr. 33
Traxillo, u. 117
Tremiſen, pr. 27, 70
Tremontein, c. 159
Trapadera, fl. 121
Treſpaſſez, *port.* 91
Triangulus, inſ. 115
Trin, c. 90
Trinidad, u. 117, 118, fl. 117, 123, 136, inſ. 143
Trinidado, c. 104
Trinity Bay. 91
Tripolis, pr. u. 25
Tripolitana, pr. 34
Triſtran de Acugna, inſ. 35
Triton, fl. 22
Troglodytæ, p. 49
Troia, u. 10
Troigus, m. 9
Trois pentas, c. 47
Truxillo, u. 117, 128
Tucaian, pr. 103
Tucapei, pr. 135
Tacuman, u. 104, pr 130
Tucuyo, u. 246
Tudela, u. 124
Tunia, pr. u. ibid.
Tunis, pr. 24. u 26
Tunudromum, u. 27
Turert, u. 34
Turopeque, pr. 117
Tuzeteco, u. 110

V.

Lib. I.

Vaccæi, p. 132
Vacomagi, p. 285
Vacontes, p. 130
Vademedius. l 87
Vaga, fl 267
Valadolio, u. 231
Val de Noro, pr. 73
Valence, u. fl. 191
Valenſes, p. 130
Valentia, pr. 240
Valentini, p. 190
Valeria, pr. 87
Vallage, pr. 159
Vallis Ohtana. 231
Telina, pr. 146
Valois, pr. 156
Valtoline, pr. 146
Vanduara, u. 285
Vannes, u. 167
Varandus, l. 64
Varduli, p 218
Varennes Gatenat, u. 173
Vaſo, fl. 187
Varus, fl. 118
Vaſates, p. 180
Vaſcones, p. 188
Vaſſones, on, p. u. 188
Vaſſe, fl. 159
Vaſſey, u. ibid.
Vauge, m. 114
Ubeda, u. 220
Udena, ina, u. 104
Vicii, u. 86
Vectis, inſ. 300
Vedra, inſ. 243
Veientes, p. 112
Vei, u. 86, 112
Velauni, p. 184
Veles Malaga, u. 227
Velibori, p. 295
Velinus, l. 86
Velitræ, u. ibid.
Vellic, u. 214
Venafre, u. 62
Venaſcine, pr. 188
Venaſque, u. 243
Vencienſes, p. 188
Vendoſme, u. 172
Venelocaſſi, p. 166
Veneris Templum, c. 200
Veneti, p. 166
Venetiæ, pr. 31. u. 101
Venicnii, p. 295
Venieſſinus, pr. 188
Ventramiglic, u. 118
Venteeſter, u. 266
Venta Belgarum, u. 263
Ventones, p. 232
Venoſa, uſia, u. 65
Vera, u. 227
Veragei, p, 130
Verbanus, l. 34
Vercelli, u. 133
Verdun, u. 194
Verine, fl. 156
Vermines, p. 185
Vernoeville, olium, u. 165
Veromandois, p. 163
Veromen, u. 192
Verona, u. 103
Verulamium, 263, 271
Veſcal, u. 195
Veſcontio, u. 197
Veſina, u. 178
Veſtini, p. 63
Veſulus, m. 131
Veſuvius, m. 63
Veſere, fl. 178
Viane, u. 214
Viarron, zon, u. 176
Victoria, u. 214
Vidoza, fl. 218
Vienna, u. 191
Vienne, fl. 168, 176
Viennenſes, pr. 191
Vigilia, u. 64
Villa Faſtini, u. 263
Vilain, fl. 168
Villa Nova, u. 234
Vitioſa, u. 220
Villebois, u. 178
Ville Franche, u. 133, 174
Villeneuſe, u. 183
Vilumbri, p. 86
Vincentia, u. 102
Vindelis, u. 263
Vinderius, u. 296
Vindinum, u. 170
Vindocinum, u. 172
Vinovium, u. 263
Virgivium *mare.* 296
Virgao, u. 228
Viſcaria, pr. 217
Viterbo, u. 86
Vitrey, u. 159
Vitrun, u. 170
Vivieres, u. 185
Ulfie, u. 174
Ultonia, ſter, pr. 293
Ulyſippo, u. 233
Umbria, pr. 31
Underwald, pr. 140
Vocontii, p. 182
Vadii, p. 205
Der Volgel, m. 145
Volca, u. 263
Volcæ, p. 185
Voleinus, l. 112
Volſci, p. 86
Voltera, u. 113
Voluntii, p. 295
Vomanus, fl. 60
Urbin, u. 79, 82
Ure, fl. 261
Uren, pr. 140
Urgel, u. 241
Uriconium, u. 263
Urbe, fl. 265
Uterni, p. 195
Urina, u. 104
Ulcaniæ, inſ. 75
Uzarche, u. 178

Lib.

Lib. II.

Vaceia, *u.* 154
Vada, *u.* 124
Vagoth, *pr.*
Valachia, *pr.* 171
Valacria, *inf.* 120
Valadomine, *u.* 130
Valenciennes, *u.* 9
Valencourt, *u.* 11
Valeria, *pr.* 152
Valerſleve, *u.* 91
Vallenhoven, *u.* 123
Vallorſa, *u.* 198
Valpo, *u. l.* 154
Vames, *u.* 124
Vandalia, *pr.* 109
Vandalis, *fl.* 140
Vandali, *p.* 169
Vangiones, *p.* 51
Vanizza, *u.* 197
Vardæ, *p.* 165
Varadin, *u.* 169
Vardari, *fl.* 201
Varieca, *fl.* 160
Varini, *p.* 83
Varna, *u.* 185
Varta, *u.* 123
Vaſcie, *u.* 11
Vaſera, *fl.* 145
Vaſilkow, *u.* *ibid.*
Vaſilopotomo, *fl.* 183
Vaſzow, *u.* 144
Vaucoleur, *u.* 55
Vaudemont, *u.* *ibid.*
Vauge, *m.* 38, 53
Uberlingen, *u.* 58
Uberlinque, *u.* 59
Ubli, *p.* 47
Udden, *u.* 123
Udenheim, *u.* 51
Uduarhel, *p.* 168
Vecht, *fl.* 25
Vegia, *inf.* 164
St. Veit, *u.* 66
Veldents, *u.* 48
Veldung, *u.* 98
Velin, *u.* 141
Veluwe, *pr.* 25
Vénaw, *fl.* 95
Vendenis, *u.* 173
Venedi, *p.* 147
Venedicus, *ſ.* *ibid.*
Veneris, *inf.* 213
Venetia, *pr.* 68
Venetus, *l.* 58
Venlo, *u.* 25
Vens ilia, yſſel, *pr.* 109
Venuſina, *u.* 175
Venuſium, *u.* 168
Verda, *u.* 95
Verdun, *u.* 55
Vere, *u.* 22
Verendia, *pr.* 110
Verodonenſes, *p.* 54
Veromandui, *u.* 12
Verma, *u.* 123
Veſalia, *u.* 43
Superior, *u.* 48
Veſtigard, *u.* 198
Vetera, *u.* 44
Veteravia, *pr.* 69
Veizet, *u.* 170
Vexi in o, *u.* 120
Vianen, *u.* 21
Viburg, *u.* 124
Vick, *u.* 85
Vidina, *u.* 173
Vidre, *fl.* 25
Vienna, *u.* 65
Vilenskie, *u.* 143
Villengen, *u.* 59
Vilna, *fl. pr. u.* 143
Vindilici, *p.* 62
Vils, *fl.* 75
Vindebona, *u.* 65
Vindis, *fl.* 61
Vin domania, undria, *u.* 161
Virland, *pr.* 141
Viridonenſes, *p.* 55
Virthungi, *p.* 76
Viſchore, *fl.* 133
Viſtoma, *fl.* *ibid.*
Viſtula, *fl.* 38
Viſurgis, *fl.* *ibid.*
Vitebſco, *p.* 143
Vites, *p.* 89
St. Viti, *u.* 66
Vittach, *u.* *ibid.*
Uladiſlaw, *u.* 148
Uland, *l.* 124
Ulcinium, *u.* 162
Ulme, *u.* 59, 60
Ulpianum, *u.* 173
Ulpia Trajana, *u.* 171
Ultrajectum, *u.* 24
Unixæ, *p.* 124
Unna, *u.* 45
Una, *fl.* 161
Vobſco, *u.* 131
Vodena, *u.* 201
Vogeſus, *m.* 38
Voiteland, *pr.* 89
Voitſperg, *u.* 65
Volga, *fl. l.* 130
Volhinia, *pr.* 143
Volocoluc, *u.* 131
Volodomir, *u.* 144
Vologda, *u.* 131
Voloy, *fl.* 55
Volks, *pr.* 131
Voorne, *inf.* 22
Voſtiza, *u.* 181
Upland, *pr.* 122
Upſal, *u.* *ibid.*
Ur anopolis, enburg, *u.* 111
Uraſtiſla via, w, *u.* 81
Uredeberg, *u.* 100
Ureſe, *u.* 91
Urieiade, *u.* 101
Uſcudama, *u.* 25
Uſcudoma, *u.* 170
Uſedome, *inf. u.* 85
Uſted, *u.* 112
Uſting, *u.* 135
Utrect, *pr. u.* 24

Lib. III.

Vallos, *fl.* 124
Vallum Paſini. 143
Van, *u.* 127
Vardanes, *fl.* 165
Varſa, *pr.* 194
Vaſada, *u.* 111
Vaſilica, *u.* 28
Vaſſan, *l.* 127
Vaſthlan, *l.* 141
Udaceſpes, *m.* 120
Udie, *u.* 215
Venazarari, *p.* 204
Ventane, *u.* 227
Verma, *pr. u.* 216
Vetezabra, *u.* 65
Vidonis, *fl.* 165
Vilaſſem, *u.* 227
Villa Nova, *u.* 35
Vindius, *m.* 192
Vitra, *u.* 118
Viſapore, *u.* 202
Ulai *fl.* 143
Unguen, *u.* 185
Volanus, *fl.* 218
Volgo, *fl.* 165
Vologeſia, *u.* 115
Vorn, *pr.* 220
Votochtha, *inf.* 200
Voſpero, *u.* 163
Ur, *u.* 118
Us, *u.* 67
Uxentius, *m.* 193
Uz, *pr.* 99

Lib. IV.

Vacapa, *u.* 103
Vacatæ, *p.* 30
Valcanes, *fl.* 160
Valentia Nova, *u.* 146
Vallette, *u.* 37
Vallidolid, *u.* 111, 115 117, 128. *fl.* 116
Val Paraiſo, *u.* 132
Val-verde, *pr.* 128
Vamba, *fl.* 60
La Vega, *u.* 152, 153
Vela, *c.* 122
Velez de Gomenera, *u.* 34
Vella, *u.* 55
Veneria, *u.* 26
Fuerte Ventura, *inf.* 76
Venezuela, *u. f.* 122. *pr. u.* 146
Vera Crux, *u.* 114
Veragua, *pr. fl.* 118
Verapaz, *pr.* 116
Verbicæ, *p.* 30
Vergivium *mare*, 80
Vermiglio, *ſ.* 104
Vermeia, *inf.* 115
Vetreina, *u.* 128
Vert, *c.* 73. *inf.* 75
Bona Veſta, *c.* 91
Vetus Portus, *u.* 128
Victoria, *u.* 116, 129, *c.* 135
St. Vincent, *inf.* 73, 148 *pr. u.* 138
Virginia, *pr.* 94, 96
Virginum, *c.* 117
Viride, *c.* 73. *inf.* 74
Vitacuchus, *u.* 100
Ulagium, *c.* 32
St John de Ullua, *u.* 114
Ulna *fl.* 117
Voli, *pr.* 30
Volpos, *m.* 14
Volubilis, *u.* 35
Upar, *pr.* 122
Uraba, *ſ.* 121
Uroqueis, *p.* 94
Uſaletus, *m.* 22
Uſurgala, *m.* 40
Utica, *u.* 25
Utopia, *u.* 161
Uxitipa, *pr.* 109
Uxoo, *u.* 47
Uztacpalipa, *u.* 112

W.

Lib. I.

WAgenthal, *u.* 140
Waldſterſee, *l.* 140
Wales, *pr.* 235
Wallingford, 266
Wallifland, *pr.* 138
Warwick, *pr.* 263
Waterford, *pr. u.* 294
Weis, *fl.* 139
Wexford, *u.* 292
Weſtenreick, *pr.* 139
Wells, *u.* 265
Weſtcheſter, *u.* 263
Weſtminſter, *u.* 266
Weſtmerland, *pr.* 262
Weſtſex, axons, *pr.* 265
Weſtraſia, *pr.* 148
Wey, *fl.* 266, 270
Wheallop, *caſt.* 263
Whithorn, *u.* 285
Wiccienſis, *u.* 273
Wiſleſpurg, *p. u.* 138
Wilton, *u.* 266
Wilts, *pr.* 262
Winchelſey, *u.* 266
Wincheſter, *u.* *ibid.*
Wight, *inf.* 300
Wind ſor, leſtone, *u.* 266
Wolds, *m.* 252
Worceſter, *pr. u.* 262
Wroxeter, *u.* 263

Lib. II.

Wackat, *u.* 161
Wadenborch, *u.* 98
Wael, *fl.* 4, 24
Waes, *pr.* 90
Wager ia, land, *pr.* 106
Wagheningen, *u.* 25
Waidhoven, *u.* 65
Walburg, *u.* 120
Walcheren, *inf.* 22
Waldecke, *pr. u.* 97
Waldſhute, *u.* 59
Walkenburg, *u.* 14
Waalkenſteine, *u.* 65
Walpo, *u.* 154
Wana, *fl.* 162
Wangen. 59
Warboſoni, *u.* 162
Warburg, *u.* 99
Ward, *inf.* 114
Wardhuis, *caſt. u.* *ibid.*
Warendorp, *u.* 99
Warfuga, *fl.* 132
Warlitz, *u.* 88
Warmia, *pr.* 146
Warn, *fl.* 86
Warnitz, *fl.* 59
Warſaw, *u.* 145
Warta, *fl.* 140
Warts, *fl.* 77
Waſſenaer, *u.* 21
Waſſenburg, *u.* 76
Watwell, *u.* 53
Weiden, *u.* 76
Weil, *u.* 74
Weilborough, *u.* 69
Weimar, *u.* 89
Weiſenberg, *u.* 76, 88
Weiſenberke, *u.* 141
Weiskorchem, *u.* 80
Weiſſenberg, *u.* 53
Wels, *u.* 65
Welſtre, *u.* 107
Wenden, *u.* 141
Wenſlie, *pr.* 109
Werb, *u.* 83
Werciani, *p.* 155
Werden, *u.* 45
Werdt, *u.* 59. *fl.* 61
Werdzee, *l.* 68
Weret, *l.* 120
Werlingen, *u.* 59
Wernberg, *u.* 141
Werſaw, *u.* 51
Werte, *fl.* 97
Weſdo, *fl.* 14
Weſel, *u.* 43
Weſer, *fl.* 38
Weſterberg, *u.* 101
Weſtergoe, *pr.* 23
Weſtergoth, *pr.* 120
Weſterwald, *pr.* 98
Weſt France, *pr.* 39
Weſtman, *pr.* 122
Weſtphalia, *pr.* 98
Weſtr afia, eich, *pr.* 39
Weſtreich, *pr.* 51
Weteraw, *pr.* 69
Werzel a, ver, *u.* 69
Weymer, *u.* 89
Wheen, *inf.* 110
Wiathka, *pr. u.* 133
Wiberg, *u.* 74
Wiborch, *pr. u.* 109
Wiburg, *u.* 120
Wichidaw, *pr.* 130
Wicke, *u.* 24, 85
Wien, *u.* 65
Wieper, *fl. u.* 91
Wiert, *u.* 18
Wihits, *u.* 161
Die Wielde, *u.* 143
Wildeſmet, *u.* 62
Wildſhuſen, *u.* 99
Wilini, *p.* 83
Wildung, *u.* 97
Willoughbies, *inf.* 135
Wilſtre, *u. fl.* 108
Wiltberg, *u.* 74
Wimpſen, *u.* 74
Winde, *fl.* 142
Windiſhland, *pr.* 161
Windiſch greots. 161
Wineta, *u.* 85
Winheim, *u.* 50
Winithi, *p.* 78
Winili, *p.* 156
Winocksberg, *u.* 6
Winsberg, *u.* 76
Winſheim, *u.* 73
Wirtenberg, *pr. u.* 74
Wisbad, *u.* 69
Wisbich, *u.* 124
Wiſlicza, *u.* 149
Wiſmar, *u.* 86
Wittenberg, *u.* 88
Wittenſtein, *u.* 141
Witterberg, *u.* 97
Wixel, *fl.* 140
Wolfe haiten, n buttel, *u.* 95
Wolferſdik, *inf.* 22
Wolgaſt, *u.* 84
Wolkonsky, *u.* 129
Wollin, *inf.* 141
Wolmar, *u.* 66
Wolodomir, *pr. u.* 134
Wolſperg, *u.* 66
Woongen, *u.* 59
Worda, *u.* 89
Wormes, *u.* 50
Wormland, *pr.* 112
Wormſe, *inf.* 141
Wormſted, *u.* 91
Worotine, *pr. u.* 134
Wortheim, *u.* 73
Wrangen, *inf.* 141
Wunicks, *fl.* 65
Wurtzburg, *pr. u.* 72
Wurtxgarten, *m.* 69
Wyerengeh, *inf.* 22

Lib. III.

Wayre, *inf.* 222

Lib. IV.

Wackehanes, *p.* 141
New Walcheren, *u.* 144
Walſingham, *c.* 90

Wenicapora, fl. u. 149
Weopomioke, u. 97
White-Bay. 91
Wia, fl. 141
Wiapoco, fl. 142
Wigcocomoci, pr. 96
r. 97
Wikeri, p. 143
Winecoporo, m. u. 143
Womiani, u. 141
World in the Moon, 162

Lib. I.

XAlon, fl. 244
Xaintoigne, pr. 179
Xantod or unum, u. 176
Xelua, u. 240
Xeres, u. 223
Xucar, fl. 231, 240

Lib. II.

Xilocastro, u. 181
Xilopolis, u. 201

Lib. III.

Xaindu, u. 174
Xamoa, inf. 106
Xanthus, fl. 411
Xaoking, u. 185
Xensi, p. ibid.
Xiocum, inf. 219
Ximo, inf. ib.
Xoana, u, 7

Lib. IV.

Xacoras, p. 137
Xagua, f. 151
Xalisco, pr. 107
Xanique, fl. 150
Xaquesses, p. 137
Xaragua, pr. 150
Xarages, p. 137
Xeres nova, u. 146
de frontera, u. 116
117
Xerolybia, pr. 13
Xicalapa, fl. 116
Xoa, pr. 56
Xylinces, p. 48

Lib. I.

YAre, fl. 267
Yarmouth, 300
Yeubade, fl. 301
Yeur, fl. 175
Yonne, fl. 195
York, pr. u. 261
Youghal, u. 295
Your, fl. 252
Yssoire, u. 174
Yuica, inf. u. 243
Yurditani, p. 223

Lib. II.

Yaroslave, u. 130
Yas, u. 170
Ypres, u. 6
Yssel, fl. 5, 15
Yssseldort, u. 25
Yssellandt, u. 24
Yssselstein, u. 20
Yuois, u. 13

Lib. III.

Yalo, fl. 184
Yaymans, p. 211
Yeka Mougul, pr. ib.
Yor, pr. 215
Yebu, 178

Lib. IV.

Yaguarcoqua, l. 127
Yaos, pr. 141
Yaqui, fl. 150
Yaquim, fl. 106
Yaquimo, fl. pr. 150
Yebra, fl. 118
Los, Yapes, fl. 112
Yquaan. fl. 131
Yroquois, p. 94
Yestepeque, u. 116
Ytupuam, l. 136
Yuna, fl. 151
Yxicuyan, u. 110
Yzalcos, pr. 116
Yztapa, f. ib.

Lib. I.

ZAmora, u. 231
Zancle, u. 71
Zobia, u. 129
Zoelæ, p. 220
Zug, pr. 140
Zurich, pr. u. l. 140

Lib. II.

Zaberne, u. 53
Zaberus, u. 168
Zacinthus, inf. 218
Zaculeia, pr. 168
Zagabria, u. 161
Zanchio, e. 183
Zant, inf. 218
Zara, pr. u. 163. inf. 164
Zarmigethusa, u. 171
Zarnovia, u. 172
Zator. u. 81
Zea, inf. 213
Zegedin, u. 155
Zegna, u. 163
Zel, u. 59
Zeland, inf. 22
Zemla nova, l. 135
Zendrem, u. 173
Zeng, u. 161
Zeroenic, u. 173
Zerengen, cast. 60
Zeugma. u. 168
Zeukerk, u. 59
Zigoth, u. 155
Zilachi, u. 168
Zirickzee, u. 23
Ziton, f. 200
Zittaw, u. 82
Znaime, 80
Zome, fl. 14
Zoroe, inf. 111
Zorza, u. 172
Zucconia, u. 170
Zuider Sea, 21
Zuidfen, pr. 27
Zulp, u. 47. fl. 161
Zurphen, u. 26
Zwinghe, 100
Zwcibken, u. 50

Lib. III.

Zabæ, u. 216
Zabahe, l. 163
Zabaspia, u. 169
Zabulon, pr. u. 70
Zadris, u. 129
Zagathai, pr. 169
Zagmais, u. 100
Zambilan, u. 214
Zamzummims, p. 63
Zapher, u. 72
Zaradrus, fl. 194
Zarædrus, fl. ib.
Zaratæ, p. 171
Zared, fl. 61
Zariaspe, u. 153
Zariaspis, fl. ibid.
Zarval, u. 106
Zavolhenses, p. 165
Zebit, fl. u. 106
Zebrum, u. ib.
Zeilan, inf. 226
Zela, u. 6
Zeman, u. 105
Zenobii, inf. 104
Zephiriam, u. 6
Zephirium, c. 26, 36
Zeugma, u. 47
Ziden, u. 106
Zigæ, p. 166
Zigæna, inf. 103
Ziglag, 76
Zinchi, p. 166
Zioberis, fl. 143, 151
Zion, m. 82
Ziph, u. 77
Zoar, u. ib.
Zoramba, fl. 145
Zuancheu, u. 186
Del Zur, mare, 1
Zychi, p. 166

Lib. IV.

Zacarecas, p. u. 108
Zacatula, u. 103. fl. 114
Zagnani, u. 55
Zahuate, fl. 114
Zaire, fl. 60, 65
Zalaga, m. 35
Zale, u. 33
Zama, u. 25, 65
Zameta, u. 55
Zamora, u. 127
Zanfara, pr. 48
Zanhaga, pr. 43
Zanguebar, pr. 60
Zanu, pr. 128
Zanzibar, pr. 61
Zapoteca, pr. 114
Zaraban, inf. 115
Zarbi, fl. 124
Zarcaranna, fl. 135
Zaron, m. 35
Zarza, inf. 115
Zazelle, u. 56
Zeb, pr. u. 41
Zebaco, inf. 117
Zegzeg, pr. 48
Zeila, u. 56
Zeltales, p. 115
Zembre, l. 61
Zemithus, u. 14
Zempoal, fl. u. 114
Zena, pr. 121
Zenu, fl. ibid.
Zephirium, c. 14
Baal, Zephon, u. 11
Zerby, inf. 37
Zeugitana, pr. 26
Zilia, fl. 30
Zingis, extrema, c. 55
Zinzoutsa, u. 111
Zioth, u. 11
Zipha, m. 60
Zoanghi, p. 66
Zoaques, p. 115
Zocotara, u. 70
Zuchabarus, m. 22
Zuengia, desert. 43
Zuid, fl. 96
Zuni, p. 95
Del Zur, mare, 115, 147

ADVERTISEMENT.

WHereas there is a mistake committed in the beginning of the Second Book, by continuing the number of the Pages from the First Book; The Reader is desired to begin the Second Book with Folio 1. and so rectifie the rest which are mistaken.

FINIS.

Yellow Jack, n. 149
Yellow Jacket, n. 149
Yellow Jacket, n. 149
Yellow Jacket

EUROPÆ
Descriptio Nova
Impensis
Annæ Seile
16 Rv Vanohan sculp 67

PART OF GRO EN LAND

THE NORTH OCEAN

The Myrmanskoyan Sea

THE DEUCALEDONIAN

THE OCEAN

WEST

OCEAN

THE ATLANTICKE SEA

PART OF BARBARIE

THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

THE EUXINE SEA

THE LESSER ASIA

PART OF ASIA

PART OF AFRICA

RUSSIA

The White Sea

Dwina

WAGA

WOLOGDA

Condora

Wolodimera

CRIMEAN TARTARIE PERECOPENSIS

Tandia et Creta

The Baltick Sea

The German Ocean

East Sea

Fretum Gulph

Straights of Gibraltar

Marocho

Fesa

Asephi

Teculeth

Tedsget

Tesa

Tenduadmi

Messa

Suajula

Capis

Tripoli

Ishdes

Cairo

Egypt

Barca

Now called Natolia

ASIÆ

Descriptio Nova
Impensis
Annæ Seile
Johan Goddard sculp.
1663

EURO PÆ

MARE TARTARICUM

OCEANUS OCCIDENTALIS

PARS EUROPÆ

MARIS MEDITERRANEI PARS

MARE ARABICUM INDICUM

OCEANUS ORIENTALIS

CHINENSIS

RUSSIA

SAMOIEDA

BAIDARIA

TARTARIA

Kalki Tartari

Turch

Mare de Sala Vel Bachu seu Chuleskomore

PERSIA

FARSIA

ARABIA DESERTA

ARABIA FELIX olim YAMAN

INDIA INTRA GANGEM

INDIA EXTRA GANGEM

Mongul

Tartar

Ponthus Euxinus sive Mare Maior

Crimea

Severiensis ducatus

Mare Rubrum

Aethiopia

Africa

Arabia

Caldea

Persia

India

Tartaria

Japan

Corea

Sinarum Regnum

Mare Arabicum

Indicum

Oceanus Orientalis

Oceanus Occidentalis

AFRICAE NOVA DESCRIPTIO

Impensis Annæ Seile. 1663

THE ATLANT ICKE SEA

THE MEDITERRANEAN SEA

NATOLIA

PART OF ASIA

ARABIA

Y ARABIA

AND THE INDIAN SEA

THE AETHIOPIAN OCEAN

THE EAST OCEAN

THE EQUATOR OF THE ÆQUINOCTIAL LINE

THE TROPICKE OF CAPRICORNE

Y Straghts of Gibraltar

The Fortunate Ilas now called the Canaries

Y Iles of Cabo Verde or Hesperides

BARBARIE

Kingd of Zuenziga

NUMIDIA now calle BILEDULGERID

Targa Kingdome

Tempta King

Azanhaga

Gualata Kingd

Arguin

Hoden

Fidli

The People of Guir

THE INNER LYBIA called SARRA or a Desert

Agades Kingd

Cano Lake of Guarda

Canvia Kingd

Tombutum

Mandigna

Caragola

Cassano

Guangara

The Kingdome of Nubia

The Kingdome of zanfara

The desert of Zanfara

Ludayas

Zegzeg

Bauma

Bouir

GUINEA

The Kingdome of Biafra

The Kingdome of Bornou

GARAMANTES

Lake Cofar

The Kingdome of Gogam

Amaien

Ambiani

Medra

Negari

Ambian cantiva

Tigremahon

Bazo

Angote

Bellegu amze

Olabi

Baru

Barbara Zeila

Dancali

Dobas

Dobar

Belli

Dorea

Adel

Bachle

Barbarian Gulfe

Arabian Gulfe

Ethiopian Sea

Sea of Arabia

Mecha

Gidda

Rabon

Gaeta

Cosser

Tor

Amamy

Gubelt

Dancali

Xal

Aden

Babelmandel

Abbassal Curia Zocatora

Zocatora Iland sometimes Dioscuria

Mocowr

Asum

Badwin

Gunaa

Soangi People

Coffa

Gingiro People

Monomotapa

Sofala

Mocaranga

Mozambique

Quiloa

Mombaza

Pemba

Monfia

Zanzibar

Id Matal

Id Arco

Id Juan

Id Comoro

Sant Christoual

Ilhas de Cosmoledo

Juan de Nova

Ilhas do Mascarenhas

Baxos do Padrambos

Baxos de Pero dos banhos

Os sete Irmãos

Abrolho

I. de Francisco

I. de Gale

Saya do Malha

Dos Garcios

S. Brandaon

I. de Diego Ruiz

I. de Mascarenas

MADAGASCAR called also St LAURENCE Iland

S. Apolonia

Baxos dos India

Baxos dos Corantas

Cabo das Corantas

C. de S. Maria

C. de S. Romon

C. de S. Sebastiano

C. de S. Iuba

P. de S. Augustin

Agoa de boapaz

Cape of good hope

C. de S. Francisco

I. Content

Mossel Bay

Fish Bay

Cequos Iland

Angra Pequena

Terra Boa

C. Negro

I. de S. Helena

I. de Ascention

I. de Fernando de Lorenho

I. de Nebon

C. de Caterina

I. de S. Matheo

I. Fernando Po

I. de Principe

I. S. Thomas

Annobon

Magundo

Gabon

Loango

Angola

Congo

Zaire Lake

Zembre Lake

Zembre Bagameiro

The people of Bagamidri

Mataina

Monomotapa

Quiteue

Sofala

Mocaranga

Camur

Gambo

Gaza

Inhambane

Bazaruto

Gaza People of Accas

Tigremahon

Ambian cantiva

Negari

Medra

Amaien

Ambiani

Cenen

Syre

Machada

Belle guanze

Olabi

Baru

Barbara Zeila

Dancali

Dobas

Dobar

Belli

Dorea

Adel

Bachle

Barbarian Gulfe

Arabian Gulfe

Ethiopian Sea

Sea of Arabia

Mecha

Gidda

Rabon

Gaeta

Cosser

Tor

Amamy

Gubelt

Dancali

Xal

Aden

Babelmandel

Abbassal Curia Zocatora

Zocatora Iland sometimes Dioscuria

Mocowr

Asum

Badwin

Gunaa

Soangi People

Coffa

Gingiro People

Monomotapa

Sofala

Mocaranga

Mozambique

Quiloa

Mombaza

Pemba

Monfia

Zanzibar

Id Matal

Id Arco

Id Juan

Id Comoro

Sant Christoual

Ilhas de Cosmoledo

Juan de Nova

Ilhas do Mascarenhas

Baxos de

AMERICÆ
Nova descriptio
Impensis
AÑÆ STEILE
1663

THE ATLANTICK OCEAN

MARE DEL SUR

THE PACIFICK SEA

SOUTHERN OCEAN

THE NOORT OR THE NORTH SEA

MARE DEL

TERRA BOREALIS INCOGNITA

TERRA CORTERIALIS

NOVA FRANCIA

AMERICA MEXICANA

QVIVIRA

NOVA ALBION

New Mexico

THE BAY OF MEXICO

AMERICA

PART OF SPAIN

THE GORGADES OR Ilands of C Verde

Asores or Westerne Ilands

Y Fortunate or Canarie Ilands

THE EQUINOCTIAL CIRCLE

The Artuck Circle

The Tropicke of Capricorne

The Tropick of Capricorne

TER AUSTRAL INCOGNITA

Fretum le Maire

Fretum Magellanica

Rob: Vaughan Sculp.